THE

GENERALL HISTORIE

of the Turkes, from The first beginning of that Nation to the rising of the Othoman Familie: with all the notable expeditions of the Christian Princes against them.

Together with

THE LIVES AND CONquests of the OTHOMAN Kings and Emperours.

vnto the yeare

1621

Written by RICHARD KNOLLES
Somtyme fellowe of LINCOLN
COLLEGE in OXFORD.

The Third edition. printed by
ADAM ISLIP. 1621

Laurence Johnson. Sculpsit.

BRITISH MUSEUM

TO THE HIGH AND MIGHTIE Prince IAMES, by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, *Defendor of the Faith, &c.*

IT may of ſome, and not without juſt cauſe (moſt gracious and dread Soueraigne) be imputed vnto me for no ſmall preſumption, to preſent vnto your royall Majeſtie (a prince of ſo great learning and judgement) theſe homely fruits of mine endeuours and paines taken in the Generall Hiſtorie of the Turkes, and ſtrange ſucceſſe of their great and mightie *Othoman* Empire. Whereunto for all that I was the rather induced, not only by the rare and wonderfull clemencie joyned vnto many other the great and moſt reſplendent vertues of your heroicall mind; the leaſt whereof is ſufficient to haue cheared vp my weake and feeble ſpirits; but alſo by the encouragement of the right Worſhipful my moſt eſpecial good friend Sir *Peter Manwood* knight of the Bath, the firſt mouer of me to take this great worke in hand, and my continuall and only comfort, ſtay, and helper therein. Which to doe, I was alſo the more deſirous, ſeeing diuers little volumes, and ſmall parts of the Hiſtorie preſented vnto the greateſt Princes: as the little Treatiſe of *Paulus Iou. de Rebus Turcicis*, dedicated vnto the great and mightie Emperour *Charles* the fifth, and the ſmall Hiſtorie of *Cœlius Secundus, de Bello Melitenſi*, vnto her late ſacred Maieſtie, of moſt happie and bleſſed memorie, the rare Phœnix of her ſex, who now reſteth in glorie: with diuers others of like ſort by the learned Authors thereof ſtill commended ſome to one great Prince of their times, ſome to others: all filling me with good hope, that this whole and continuat Hiſtorie of that Northren and warlike Nation (which in ſhort time by God his appointment hath brought ſuch fatall mutations vpon a great part of the world, as former times haue ſeldome or neuer ſeene) drawne euen from the firſt beginning thereof (not together to my knowledge by any one before written) ſhould with your moſt noble Maieſtie find no leſſe grace and fauour, than hath almoſt euery part thereof with other the aforeſaid and ſuch like moſt mightie and famous Princes: and the rather, for that your Maieſtie hath not diſdained in your *Lepanto* or *Heroicall Song*, with your learned Muſe to adorne and ſet forth the greateſt and moſt glorious victory that euer was by any the Chriſtian confederate Princes obtained againſt theſe the *Othoman* Kings or Empe-

rors. Beſides that the matter and argument of this Hiſtory and ſuch like (ſo much concerning the ſtate and good of the Chriſtian commonweale in generall, neuer by any ſo much impugned or endangered, as by theſe the naturall & capitall enemies therof) of right vnto non ſo properly belõgeth, as vnto your moſt excellent Maieſty, with the reſt of the chriſtian princes, ſitting at the helme of your eſtates, who only by your vnited forces (the barbarous enemies greateſt terrour) are able to giue remedy therunto: in the chiefeſt ranke of whom, your ſacred Maieſty for glory, honour, ſtrength, and power (God long preſerue the ſame) is now ſecond vnto none. Thus perſuaded and encouraged, I in all humble and dutifull manner do preſent vnto your Maieſty theſe my weake endeauours, according to my abilitie and means continued for ſome few yeres more: which how vnworthy ſoeuer they be of ſo great and princely fauour, as well for the meanneſſe of mee the Author, as for the plainneſſe of the ſtile; yet if for the worthineſſe of the matter, or of your owne great & infinit clemency you vouchſafe them your Maieſties fauourable regard, they ſhall no doubt liue no leſſe fortunat, than if they had bin more happily born or brought to light: ſeruing (if to no other vſe) yet as fair warnings vnto ſuch great ones as God hath heere vpon earth exalted aboue the reſt vnto the higheſt degrees of power and of ſtate, for the good gouernment and defence of his Church and people. Accept them, I beſeech you, moſt mightie monarch, into your gracious protection, ſo ſhal I (if God ſpare life) be comforted and incouraged vnder ſo mightie a fauour to proceed to amend what ſhal be found amiſſe, and adde what future times and better helpe ſhal diſcouer and miniſter vnto me for the perfection of this Hiſtory: and according to my bounden duty inceſſantly in all humilitie pray vnto the great God of all might and power (by whom all kings and princes raigne) to his glory long to preſerue your moſt royall Maieſtie in bleſſed health and peace to rule and raigne ouer vs and theſe your great kingdomes, ſo happily by you vnited: and ſo likewiſe (his will ſo being) your moſt noble poſteritie after you, euen to the worlds end.

Your Maieſties moſt

humble and obedient ſubiect,

Richard Knolles.

The Authors induction to the Christian Reader vnto the Historie following.

THe long and still declining state of the Christian Commonweale, with the vtter ruine and subuersion of the Empire of the East, and many other most glorious kingdomes and prouinces of the Christians, neuer to be sufficiently lamented, might with the due consideration thereof worthily moue euen a right stony heart to ruth: but therwith also to call to remembrance the dishonour done vnto the blessed name of our Sauiour Christ Iesus, the desolation of his Church heere militant vpon earth, the dreadfull danger daily threatned vnto the poore remainder thereof, the millions of soules cast headlong into eternall destruction, the infinite number of wofull Christians (whose grieuous groanings vnder the heauie yoke of infidelitie no tongue is able to expresse) with the carelesnesse of the great for the redresse thereof, might giue iust cause vnto any good Christian to sit downe, and with the heauie Prophet to say as hee did of Hierusalem: O how hath the Lord darkened the daughter of Sion in his wrath? and cast downe from heauen vnto the earth the beautie of Israel, and remembred not his footstoole in the day of his wrath? Lament. Hieremię, cap. 2. *All which miseries (with many others so great, as greater there cannone bee) the prince of darknesse and authour of all mischiefe hath by the persecuting princes of all ages, and auncient heretikes his ministers, laboured from time to time to bring vpon the Church of God, to the obscuring of his blessed name, and vtter subuersion of his most sacred word; but yet by none, no not by them all together so much preuailed, as by the false prophet* Mahomet, *borne in an vnhappie houre, to the great destruction of mankind: whose most grosse and blasphemous doctrine first phantasied by himselfe in Arabia, and so by him obtruded vnto the world; and afterwards by the Sarasin Caliphes (his seduced successors) with greater forces maintained, was by them together with their Empire, dispersed ouer a great part of the face of the earth, to the vnspeakeable ruine and destruction of the Christian Religion and State: especially in Asia and Africke, with some good part of Europe also. But the vnitie of this great Mahometane Monarchie being once dissolued, and it diuided into many kingdomes, and so after the manner of worldly things drawing vnto the fatall period of it selfe, in processe of time became of farre lesse force than before, and so lesse dreadfull vnto the Christian princes of the West, by whom these Sarasins were againe expulsed out of all the parts of Europe, excepting one corner of Spaine, which they yet helde within the remembrance of our fathers, vntill that by their victorious forces they were thence at length happily remooued also, after that they had possessed the same aboue the space of seuen hundred yeares. In this declination of the Sarasins, the first champions of the Mahometane superstition, who though they had lost much, yet held they many kingdomes both in Asia and Africke, taken for the most part from the Christians) arise the Turks, an obscure and base people, before scarce known vnto the world, yet fierce and courragious, who by their valour first aspired vnto the kingdome of Persia, with diuers other large prouinces: from whence they were about 170 yeares after againe expulsed by the Tartars, and enforced to retire themselues into the lesser Asia: where taking the benefit of the discord of the Christian princes of the East, and the carelesnesse of the Christians in generall, they in some good measure repaired their former losses againe, and maintained the state of a kingdome at Iconium in Cilicia (now of them called Caramania) holding in their subiection the greatst part of that fruitfull countrey, still seeking to gaine from the Christians what they had before lost vnto the Tartars. But this kingdome of the Turkes declining also, by the dismembring of the same, there stept vp among the Turkes in* Bythinia, *one* Osman *or* Othoman, *of the* Oguzian *tribe or familie, a man of great spirit and valour, who by little and little growing vp amongst the rest of his countreymen, and other the effeminate Christians on that side of Asia, at last like another* Romulus, *tooke vpon him the name of a Sultan or King, and is right worthily accounted*

Granado in Spain was recouered from the Sarasins by king Ferdinand in the yeare 1491

ted the first founder of the mightie Empire of the Turkes: which continued by many discents directly in the line of himselfe, euen vnto Achmat, who now raigneth, is from a small beginning become the greatest terrour of the world, and holding in subiection many great and mightie kingdomes in Asia, Europe, and Africke, is growne to that height of pride, as that it threatneth destruction vnto the rest of the kingdomes of the earth; labouring with nothing more than with the weight of it selfe. In the greatnesse whereof is swallowed vp both the name and Empire of the Sarasins, the glorious Empire of the Greeks, the renowned kingdomes of Macedonia, Peloponesus, Epirus, Bulgaria, Seruia, Bosna, Armenia, Cyprus, Syria, Ægypt, Iudea, Tunes, Algiers, Media, Mesopotamia, with a great part of Hungarie, as also of the Persian kingdom, and all those churches and places so much spoken of in holy Scripture (the Romanes onely excepted;) and in briefe, so much of Christendome as farre exceedeth that which is thereof at this day left. So that at this present if you consider the beginning, progresse, and perpetuall felicitie of this the Othoman Empire, there is in this world nothing more admirable or strange; if the greatnesse and lustre therof, nothing more magnificent or glorious; if the power and strength thereof, nothing more dreadfull or dangerous: which wondering at nothing but at the beautie of it selfe, and drunke with the pleasant wine of perpetuall felicitie, holdeth all the rest of the world in scorne, thundering out nothing but still bloud and warre, with a full perswasion in time to rule ouer all, prefixing vnto it selfe no other limits than the vttermost bounds of the earth, from the rising of the Sun vnto the going down of the same. The causes whereof are many and right lamentable, but for the most part so shut vp in the counsels of the Great, as that for mee to seeke after them, were great follie: yet amongst the rest, some others there be, so pregnant and manifest, as that the blind world taketh thereof as it were a generall knowledge, and may therefore without offence of the wiser sort (as I hope) euen in these our nice dayes be lightly touched. Whereof the first and greatest, is the iust and secret iudgement of the Almightie, who in iustice deliuereth into the hands of these mercilesse miscreants, nation after nation, and kingdome vpon kingdome, as vnto the most terrible executioners of his dreadfull wrath, to be punished for their sinnes: others in the meane while, no lesse sinfull than they, in his mercie enioying the benefit of a longer time, calling them vnto repentance. Then, the vncertaintie of worldly things, which subiect to perpetuall change, cannot long stay in one state, but as the sea is with the wind, so are they in like sort tossed vp and down with the continual surges and waues of alteration and change; so that being once growne to their height, they there stay not long, but fall againe as fast as euer they rise, and so in time come to nothing: As wee see the greatest Monarchies that euer yet were vpon earth haue done, their course being run; ouer whom Time now triumpheth, as no doubt at length it shall ouer this so great a Monarchie also, when it shall but then liue by fame, as the others now do. Next to these causes from aboue (without offence be it said) is the small care the Christian princes, especially those that dwelt further off, haue had of the common state of the Christian Commonweale, whereof euen the verie greatest are to account themselues but as the principall members of one and the same bodie, and haue, or ought to haue, as sharp a feeling one of anothers harmes, as hath the head of the wrongs done vnto the feet, or rather, as if it were done vnto themselues: in stead of which Christian compassion and vnitie, they haue euer, and euen yet at this time are so diuided among themselues with endlesse quarels, partly for questions of religion (neuer by the sword to be determined,) partly for matters touching their own proper state and soueraigntie, and that with such distrust and implacable hatred, that they neuer could as yet (although it haue been long wished) ioyne their common forces against the common enemie: but turning their weapons one vpon another (the more to be lamented) haue from time to time weakened themselues, and opened a way for him to deuour them one after another: Whereas with their combined forces (the greedie enemies greatest terrour) they might long since not onely haue represſed his furie, and abated his pride, but with small daunger and much glorie (God fauouring their so honourable attempts) haue againe recouered from him most of those famous Christian kingdomes, which he by force against all right holdeth at this day in most miserable subiection and thraldome; many millions of the poore oppressed Christians in the meane time out of the furnace of tribulatian, in the anguish of their soules crying in vaine vnto their Christian brethren for reliefe. By ciuile discord the noble countrey of Græcia perished, when as the father rising against the sonne, and the sonne against the father, and brother against brother, they to the mutuall destruction of themselues, called in the Turke, who like a greedie lyon lurking in his den, lay in wait for them all. So perished the kingdomes of Bulgaria, Seruia, Bosna, and Epirus, with the famous islands of the Rhodes and Cyprus, betrayed as it were by the Christian princes their neighbours, by whom they might haue easily beene releeued. So the most flourishing and strong kingdome of Hungarie (in the reliques whereof the fortune of the Turkish Empire hath longer stucke, than in the conquest of any other kingdome, by it attempted, whatsoeuer) diuided in it selfe by the ambition of princes, and ciuile discord, the weaker still calling vnto his aid the mightie power of the Turke, is long since for the most part become vnto him a prey, the poore remainders thereof being at this day hardly defended by the forces of the Christian Emperour and of

The causes of the greatnesse and encreast of the Turks Empire.

the

the Princes his confederats, ſeldome times meeting together with ſuch cheerefulneſſe or expedition as the neceſſitie of ſo great a matter requireth. Vnto which ſo great a cauſe of the common decay, may be added the euill choice of our ſouldiours employed in thoſe warres, who taken vp hand ouer head out of the promiſcuous vulgar people, are for moſt part vntrained men, ſeruing rather for ſhew, and the filling vp of number, than for vſe, and in no reſpect to be compared with the Turkes Ianizaries, and other his moſt expert ſouldiours, continually euen from their youth exerciſed in feats of armes. Not to ſpeake in the meane time of the want of the auntient martiall diſcipline, the wholeſome preſeruatiue of moſt puiſſant armies, which breedeth in the proud enemie a contempt of the Chriſtian forces, with a full perſwaſion of himſelfe, that he is not by ſuch diſordered and weake meanes to be withſtood. But to come neerer vnto the cauſes of the Turkes greatneſſe, and more proper vnto themſelues, as not depending of the improuident careleſneſſe, weakneſſe, diſcord, or imperfections of others: firſt in them is to be noted an ardent and infinit deſire of ſoueraigntie, wherewith they haue long ſince promiſed vnto themſelues the monarchie of the whole world, a quick motiue vnto their ſo hautie deſignes: Then, ſuch a rare vnitie and agreement amongſt them, as well in the manner of their religion (if it be ſo to be called) as in matters concerning their ſtate (eſpecially in all their enterpriſes to be taken in hand for the augmenting of their Empire) as that thereof they call themſelues Iſlami, that is to ſay, men of one mind, or at peace among themſelues; ſo as it is not to be maruelled, if thereby they grow ſtrong themſelues, and dreadfull to others: ioyne vnto this their courage, conceiued by the wonderfull ſucceſſe of their perpetuall fortune, their notable vigilancie in taking the aduantage of euerie occaſion for the enlarging of their Monarchie, their frugalitie and temperatneſſe in their diet, and other manner of liuing, their ſtrait obſeruing of their auntient militarie diſcipline, their cheerfull and almoſt incredible obedience vnto their Princes and Sultans; ſuch, as in that point no nation in the world was to be worthily compared vnto them: all great cauſes why their Empire hath ſo mightily encreaſed and ſo long continued. Whereunto may be added the two ſtrongeſt ſinews of euery well gouerned commonweale, Reward propounded to the good, and Puniſhment threatned vnto the offendor; where the prize is for vertue and valour ſet vp, and the way laid open for euery common perſon, be he neuer ſo meanely borne, to aſpire vnto the greateſt honours and preferments both of the Court and of the field, yea euen vnto the neereſt affinitie of the great Sultan himſelfe, if his valour or other worth ſhall ſo deſerue: when as on the contrarie part the diſloyall or cowardly is to expect from the ſame ſoueraigne power nothing but diſgrace, death, and torture. And yet theſe great ones not contented by ſuch commendable and lawfull meane, ſtill to extend or eſtabliſh their farre ſpreading Empire, if that point once come in queſtion, they ſticke not in their diuelliſh policy to breake and infringe the lawes both of Nations and Nature. Their leagues grounded vpon the law of Nations, be they with neuer ſo ſtrong capitulations concluded, or ſolemnitie of oath confirmed, haue with them no longer force than ſtandeth with their owne profit, ſeruing indeed but as ſnares to entangle other princes in, vntill they haue ſingled out him whom they purpoſe to deuoure; the reſt faſt bound by their leagues, ſtill looking on, as if their owne turne ſhould neuer come, yet with no more aſſurance of their ſafetie by their leagues, than had the other whom they ſee periſh before their faces. As for the kind law of Nature, what can be thereunto more contrary, than for the father moſt vnnaturally to embrue his hands in the bloud of his owne children? and the brother to become the bloudie executioner of his owne brother? a common matter among the Othoman Emperours. All which moſt execrable and inhumane murthers, they couer with the pretended ſafetie of their ſtate, as thereby freed from the feare of all aſpiring competitors (the greateſt torment of the mightie) and by the preſeruation of the integritie of their Empire, which they thereby keepe whole and entire vnto themſelues, and ſo deliuer it as it were by hand from one to another, in no part diſmembred or impaired. By theſe and ſuch like meanes is this barbarous Empire (of almoſt nothing) growne to that height of maieſtie and power, as that it hath in contempt all the reſt, being it ſelfe not inferiour in greatneſſe and ſtrength vnto the greateſt Monarchies that euer yet were vpon the face of the earth, the Romane Empire onely excepted. Which how farre it ſhall yet further ſpread, none knoweth, but he that holdeth in his hand all the kingdomes of the earth, and with his word boundeth in the raging of the ſea, ſo that it cannot further paſſe. Moued with the greatneſſe and glorie of this ſo mightie and dreadfull an Empire, growne for the moſt part out of the ruine of the Chriſtian commonweale, with the vtter ſubuerſion of many great and flouriſhing kingdomes, and wofull fall of many moe right puiſſant and mightie princes, not without griefe to be remembred: I long ſince (as many others haue) entred into the heauie conſideration thereof, purpoſing ſo to haue contented my ſelfe with a light view of that which might well be for euer of all good Chriſtians lamented, but hardly or neuer remedied; vntill that afterwards led with a more earneſt deſire to know the ſtrange and fatall mutations, by this barbarous nation in former time brought vpon a great part of the world, as alſo ſo much as I might to ſee ſo great a terrour of the preſent time, and in what tearmes it ſtandeth with the reſt, I had with long ſearch and much labor, mixt with ſome pleaſure & mine own reaſonable contentment, paſſed through the

whole

whole melancholly course of their tragicall History: yet without purpose euer to haue commended the same or any part thereof vnto the remembrance of posteritie, as deeming it an argument of too high a reach, and fitter for some more happie wit, better furnished with such helpes both of nature and art as are of necessitie requisite for the vndertaking of so great a charge, than was my selfe, of many thousands the meanest. Not vnmindfull also of that which the Poet (keeping decorum) saith in like case, though farre lesse matter, of himselfe:

Virg. Ecloga sexta.

Cum canerem reges & prælia, Cynthius aurem
Velit, & admonuit: Pastorem Tittere pingues
Pascere oportet oues, deductum ducere carmen.

When I did sing of mightie Kings, or else of bloudie warre,
Apollo pluckt me by the eare, and said I went too farre:
Beseemes a shepheard Titterus his fatlings for to feed,
And for to fit his rurall song vnto his slender reed.

Besides that, so manie difficulties euen at the first presented themselues vnto my view, as to ouercome the same, if I should take the labour in hand, seemed to me almost impossible: for beside the sea and world of matter I was to passe through (requiring both great labour and time) full of the most rare example both of the better and worse fortune in men of all sort and condition, yeelding more pleasure vnto the Reader than facilitie to the Writer, I saw not any (among so many as had taken this argument in hand) whom I might as a sure guide or loadstarre long follow in the course of this so great an Historie: many right worthie and learned men (whose memorie my soule honoureth) contenting themselues to haue with their learned pennes enrolled in the Recordes of neuer-dying Fame, some one great expedition or action, some, another, as in their times they fell out: yea, the Turkish Histories and Chronicles themselues (from whom the greatest light for the continuation of the Historie was in reason to haue beene expected) being in the declaration of their owne affaires (according to their barbarous manner) so sparing and short, as that they may of right bee accounted rather short rude notes, than iust Histories, rather poynting things out, than declaring the same; and that with such obscuritie, by changing the ancient and vsuall names as well of whole kindomes, countreyes, and prouinces, as of cities, townes, riuers, mountaines, and other places, yea, and oftentimes of men themselues, into other strange and barbarous names of their owne deuising, in such sort, as might well stay an intentiue Reader, and depriue him of the pleasure together with the profit hee might otherwise expect by the reading thereof; whereunto to giue order, perspicuitie, and light, would require no small trauell and paine: Not to speake in the meane time of the diuersitie of reports in the course of the whole Historie, such as is oftentimes most hard, if not altogether impossible, to reconcile. Notwithstanding all which difficulties, with many others more proper vnto my selfe, hauing with long labour and diligent search passed through the course of the whole Historie, and so in some reasonable sort satisfied my selfe therein, I thought it not amisse, as well for the worthinesse of the matter, as for the zeale I beare vnto the Christian Commonweale, and for the satisfying also of some others my good friends much desirous of the same, to make proofe if out of the dispersed workes of many right worthie men, I could set downe one orderly and continuate Historie of this so mightie an Empire, with the great and fatall mutation or rather subuersion of manie right strong and flourishing kingdomes and states (the proper worke of all mightie rising Empires, still encreasing by the fall of others) wherewith this proud Monarchie hath alreadie daunted a great part of the world, being so many and so strange, as that moe or more wonderfull were not euer to bee seene in any of the greatest Monarchies of auncient time or memorie, and so together, and as it were vnder one view, and at one shew, to lay open vnto the Christian Reader, what I was glad to seeke for out of the diffused labours of many: a worke so long and laborious, as might well haue deterred a right resolute and constant mind from the vndertaking thereof, being as yet to my knowledge not vndergone or performed by any: wherein among such varieties, or more truely to say, contrarieties of Writers, I contented not my selfe, as a blinde man led by his guide, happily of no better sight than himselfe, to tread the steppes of this or that one man, going for a while before mee, and by and by leauing mee againe stumbling in the darke: but out of the learned and faithfull workes of manie, according to my simple iudgement to make choyce of that was most probable, still supplying with the perfections of the better, what I found wanting or defectiue in the weaker, propounding vnto my selfe no other marke to ayme at, than the verie truth of the Historie; as that which is it selfe of power to giue life vnto the dead letter, and to couer the faults escaped in the homely penning or compiling thereof. Which the better to performe, I collected so much of the Historie as possibly I could, out of the writings of such as were themselues

themſelues preſent, and as it were eie-witneſſes of the greateſt part of that they writ, and ſo, as of all others beſt able, moſt like alſo to haue left vnto vs the very truth. Such is the greateſt part of ſo much of the hiſtory of the Greeke empire as I haue (for the better vnderſtanding of the riſing of the Turkes) in this hiſtorie ſet downe, gathered out of the doings of Nicetas Choniates, Nicephorus, Gregoras, and Laonicus Chalcocondiles, all writing ſuch things as they themſelues ſaw, or were for moſt part in their time, and neere vnto them, done. Such are the wonderfull and almoſt incredible wars betwixt old Amurath the ſecond, and his ſonne, the fortunate prince of Epirus, of the Turks commonly called Scanderbeg, & by that wayward tyrant at his death together with his kingdome deliuered, as it were by inheritance, vnto his ſonne, the great and cruell Sultan Mahomet; all written by Marinus Barletius, himſelfe an Epirot, & in all thoſe troubleſome times then liuing in Scodra, a citie of the Venetians ioyning vpon Epirus. Such is the wofull captiuitie of the imperiall citie of Conſtantinople, with the miſerable death of the Greeke Emperour Conſtantinus Palæologus, and the fatall ruine of the Greeke empire, written by Leonardus Chienſis, Archbiſhop of Mitylene, being himſelfe then preſent, & there taken priſoner. Such is the lamentable hiſtory of the Rhodes, taken for moſt part out of Ia. Fontanus his three bookes de bello Rhodio, a learned man then preſent and in great credit with Villerius the great Maſter, at ſuch time as that famous iſland, after it had by him & the other worthie knights of the Order bin moſt wonderfully long defended, was to the great ruth of Chriſtendom taken by the great Sultan Solyman. Such is the moſt tragicall hiſtory of Baiazet, Solyman his yongeſt ſonne, collected out of the notable Epiſtles of Augerius Buſbequius Legationis Turcicæ, he himſelfe then lying embaſſador for the emperor Ferdinand at Conſtantinoble, & preſent in Solymans camp, at ſuch time as he himſelf in perſon went ouer with his army into Aſia, to countenance his eldeſt ſon Selymus, who ſucceeded him in the empire, againſt his valiant yonger brother Baiazet; and beſide well acquainted with the great Baſſaes, Achmet, Ruſtan, Haly, & others, oftentimes mentioned in the hiſtorie following. Such is alſo the hiſtory of the taking of the ancient citie of Tripolis in Barbarie from the knights of Malta by Sinan the proud Baſſa, written by Nicholas Nicholay lord of Arfeuile, preſent at the ſame time with the lord of Aramont, then embaſſador for the French king vnto Solyman. So might I ſay alſo of the miſerable ſpoile of the fruitfull and pleaſant iſlands of the Mediterranean, made by Lutzis Baſſa, Solyman his brother in law & great Admirall, with the ſubmitting of the iſland of Naxos to the Turkes obeiſance, written by Iohn Criſpe, at that time duke of the ſame iſland. And ſo likewiſe of diuers other parts of the hiſtorie, too long to rehearſe. But for as much as euery great and famous action had not the fortune to haue in it a Cæſar, ſuch as both could and would commend vnto poſteritie by writing that whereof they might truly ſay, They were themſelues a great part; many right excellent Generals contenting themſelues with the honour of the field, and their glorie there woon, leauing the honourable fame therof to be by others reported: for lacke of ſuch moſt certaine Authors, or rather (as I before ſaid) eye-witneſſes, I gathered ſo much as I could of that remained, out of the workes of ſuch, as being themſelues men of great place, and well acquainted with the great and worthy perſonages of their time, might from their mouths as from certaine Oracles report the vndoubted truth of many moſt famous exploits done both by themſelues and others: as might Pau: Iouius from the mouth of Muleaſſes king of Tunes, from Vaſtius the great generall, from Auria the prince of Melphis, Charles the Emperor his Admirall, and ſuch others: or elſe out of the writings of ſuch as were themſelues great trauellers into the Turkes dominions, and withall, diligent obſeruers of their affaires and ſtate, as were the Phyſitians Pantaleon, Minadoie, and Leunclauius (of all others a moſt curious ſearcher of their antiquities and hiſtories) vnto which great Clerkes, and ſome others of that learned profeſſion, we may worthily attribute the greateſt light & certaintie of that is reported of a great part of the Turkiſh affaires. But theſe in the courſe of ſo long an hiſtorie failing alſo (as by conferring that which is hereafter written, together with their hiſtories, is eaſily to bee perceiued) to perfect that I had taken in hand, I tooke my refuge vnto the writings of ſuch other learned and credible authors, as of whoſe integritie and faithfulneſſe the world hath not to my knowledge at any time yet doubted: yea, for theſe few late yeares I was glad out of the Germane and Italian writers in their owne language in part to borrow the knowledge of theſe late affaires; as alſo from the credible and certain report of ſome ſuch honorable minded gentlemen of our owne country, as haue either for their honours ſake ſerued in theſe late warres in Hungarie, or vpon ſome other occaſions ſpent ſome good time in trauelling into the Turks dominions, but eſpecially vnto the imperiall citie of Conſtantinople, the chiefe ſeat of the Turkiſh empire, and place of the great Turkes abode: amongſt whom, I cannot but deſeruedly remember my kind friend and couſin M. Rog. Howe, vnto whoſe diſcreet & curious obſeruations during the time of his late abode at Conſtantinople, I iuſtly account my ſelfe for many things beholden. In which courſe of my proceeding, if the Reader find not himſelfe ſo fully ſatisfied as he could deſire, I would be glad by him my ſelfe to be better informed, as being no leſſe deſirous to learne the truth of that I know not, than willing to impart to others that little which I know.

The order of the Authors proceeding in the writing of this Hiſtorie.

Thus

To the Reader.

Thus much I thought good to set downe, to perswade the Christian Reader of the truth of the history following, wherin he shal find matter ynough to wonder at, and nalesse strange than that whatsoeuer it is that is written of the greatest Monarchies of auncient time, vnto whom for power and maiestie it yeeldeth little: But so much the more worthie our consideration than they, for that their periods alreadie ronn, and so their furie ouerpast, this in our time so flourisheth, and at this present so mightily swelleth, as if it would ouerflow all, were it not for the mercy of God first, and then by the force of some few of the Christian princes neerest vnto so great a danger, with their so great charge, to their immortall glory, & benefit of the Christian commonweale, mightily checked and kept within some bounds and compasse. This Historie for the most part thus as is aforesaid passed through, and brought to some good perfection, was yet by me againe laied aside, and like ynough euen as an abortiue fruit to haue perished in the birth before it was growen to perfection, had I not, many times fainting in the long and painefull trauell therewith, by my especiall good and honourable friend, Sir Peter Manwood *of S.* Stephens *in the countie of Kent, knight of the honourable order of the Bath, a great louer and fauourer of learning (and in whose keeping it so for the most part manie yeares in safetie rested) beene still comforted, and as it were againe reuiued, and finally encouraged to take it in hand, and as at first to perfect it: so now againe to continue it: vnto whom (being the onely furtherer, stay, and helpe of these my labours) thou art for such pleasure as thou findest therin in courtesie beholden, and I for euer bounden. Now, what I for my part haue in this my long trauell performed, I leaue it to thy good discretion to consider, contenting my selfe in so great matter to haue beene willing to haue done something; wishing no longer to liue, than in some measure to bee profitable to the Christian Common weale; which long since in my nursing mother house Lincoln Colledge in Oxford, where I was sometime Fellow, I did purpose to performe, as it should please God in time to giue me meanes and occasion: in which mind I hope by the goodnesse and mercie of Christ my Sauiour so long as I liue to continue. Onely this fauour (to conclude with) I request of thee, That if in this so long and perplexed an Historie (by piece meale of so many diuersly handled) written by me in a world of troubles and cares, in a place that affoorded no meanes of comfort to proceed in so great a worke, thou chaunce to light vpon some things otherwise reported than thou hast elsewhere read them (as I doubt not but thou maiest) not therefore forthwith to condemne what thou here findest, being haply taken from a more certaine reporter than was that whereunto thou giuest more credit; or at least wise not written by mee, as meaning in any thing to preiudice thy better iudgement, but to leaue it to thy good choice in such diuersities of reports to follow that which may seeme vnto thee most true. By which courtesie thou hast already encouraged me to ioyne vnto my former Historie a continuation for some few yeares in this edition, and yet maye it (God giuing mee life and health) hereafter encourage mee to performe some other worke to thy no lesse contentment. So wishing thee all happinesse, I bid thee farewell. From Sandwich the last of March, 1610.*

Thine in all dutifull kindnesse,

R. Knolles.

THE GENERAL HISTORIE OF THE TVRKES, BEFORE THE RISING OF THE OTHOMAN FAMILIE, WITH ALL THE NOTABLE EXPEDITIONS OF THE CHRISTIAN PRINCES AGAINST THEM.

THE glorious Empire of the Turkes, the preſent terrour of the world, hath amongſt other things nothing in it more wonderfull or ſtrange, than the poore beginning of it ſelfe; ſo ſmall and obſcure, as that it is not well knowne vnto themſelues, or agreed vpon euen among the beſt writers of their hiſtories, from whence this barbarous nation that now ſo triumpheth ouer the beſt part of the world, firſt crept out or tooke their beginning. Some (after the manner of moſt nations) deriue them from the Troians, led thereunto by the affinitie of the words *Turci* and *Teucri*, ſuppoſing (but with what probabilitie I know not) the word *Turci* or Turks to haue beene made of the corruption of the word *Teucri*, the common name of the Troians: as alſo for that the Turks haue of long moſt inhabited the leſſer ASIA, wherein the ancient & moſt famous citie of TROY ſometime ſtood. No great reaſon in my deeming: yet giue the authors thereof leaue therewith to pleaſe themſelues, as well as ſome others, which dwelling much farther off, borrow, or rather force their beginning from thence, without any probabilitie at all; and that with ſuch earneſtnes, as if they could not elſewhere haue found any ſo honourable anceſtors. Otherſome report them to haue firſt come out of PERSIA, and of I wot not what citie there, to haue taken their name: neither want there ſome which affirme them to haue taken their beginning out of ARABIA, yea and ſome out of SYRIA, with many other farre fet deuices concerning the beginning and name of this people: all ſeruing to no better purpoſe, than to ſhew the vncertaintie thereof. Amongſt others, *Philip* of MORNAY, the noble and learned Frenchman, in his worthy worke concerning the truneſſe of the Chriſtian religion, ſeemeth (& that not without good reaſon) to deriue the Turks, together with the Tartars, from the Iewes, namely, from the ten Tribes, which were by *Salmanazar* king of ASIRIA, in the time of *Oſeas* king of ISRAEL, carried away into captiuitie, and by him confined into MEDIA, and the other vnpeopled countries of the North, whoſe going thither is not vnaptly deſcribed by *Eſdras*, where among the great Hords of the Tartars in the fartheſt part of the world Northward, euen at this day are found ſome, that ſtill retaine the names of *Dan*, *Zabulon*, and *Nepthaly*, a certaine argument of their deſcent: whereunto alſo the word *Tartar*, or *Tatar*, ſignifying in the Syrian tongue, remnants or leauings; and the word *Turke*, a word of diſgrace, ſignifying in Hebrew, baniſhed men, ſeemeth right well to agree. Beſides that, in the Northern countries of RVSSIA, SARMATIA, & LYTHVANIA, are found greater ſtore of the Iewiſh nation than elſewhere, and ſo neerer vnto the Tartarians ſtill the moe: whereunto *Io. Leunclauius* the moſt curious ſearcher out of the Turkes antiquities and monuments, addeth as a farther coniecture of the deſcent of thoſe barbarous northern people from the Iewes, That in his trauell through LIVONIA into LYTHVANIA in the countrie

Diuers opinions concerning the beginning of the Turkes.

2. King. cap. 17.
4. Eſdr. cap. 13.

Io. Leunclaui. us Pandect. cap. 22.

trie neere vnto the metropoliticall citie of RIGA, he found there the barbarous people of the Lettoes, quite differing in language from the other countrey people of the Curons and Eſtons, no leſſe barbarous than themſelues; who had alwaies in their mouthes as a perpetuall lamentation, which they with dolefull moanes daily repeated abroad in the fields, *Ieru, Ieru, Maſco, Lan:* wherby they were thought to lament ouer IERVSALEM and DAMASCO, as forgetfull of all other things in their ancient country, after ſo many worlds of yeeres, and in a deſolate place ſo farre diſtant thence. And *Munſter* in his deſcription of LIVONIA repeating the like words, reporteth, That this rude people being demanded what they meant by theſe words ſo often and ſo lamentably by them without cauſe vttered: anſwered, That they knew no more than that they had bin ſo of long taught by their anceſtors. But to leaue theſe opinions concerning their beginning, ſo diuers & vncertaine, and to follow greater probabilities as concerning the place from whence they came: it is vpon better ground thought by diuers others, and thoſe of the beſt hiſtoriographers, That this barbarous nation which hath of late brought ſuch fatall mutations vpon ſo great a part, not of Chriſtendome only, but euen of the whole world, tooke their firſt beginning out of the cold and bare country of SCYTHIA: induced thereunto, both by the authority of the greateſt Coſmographers, as by moſt apparant reaſons. *Pomponius Mela*, the deſcriber of the world, reckning vp the people neere vnto the great riuer TANAIS (the bounder of EVROPE from ASIA Eaſtward) amongſt others maketh mention of the Turkes, in theſe words: *Geloni vrbem ligneam habitant. Iuxta Thyrſagetæ Turcæq́ vaſtas ſyluas occupant aluntur q́ venando. Tum continuis rupibus late aſpera & deſerta regio ad Arympheos vſque permittitur.* The Geloni inhabit a citie of wood. And faſt by, the Thyrſagets and Turks poſſeſſe the vaſt forreſts, and liue by hunting. Then, a rough and deſart country with continuall rockes, is ſpaciouſly extended euen as farre as vnto the Arympheians. *Plinie* alſo in like manner reckning vp the nations about the fennes of MÆOTIS, agreeing with that *Mela* reporteth, ſaith: *Deinde Euazæ, Cottæ, Cicimeni, Meſſeniani, Coſtobocci, Choatræ, Zigæ, Dandari, Thuſſagetæ, Turcæ, vſque ad ſolitudines ſaltuoſis conuallibus aſperas, vltra quos Arymphei qui ad Riphæos pertinent montes.* Next vnto them, are the Euazæ, Cottæ, Cicimeni, Meſſeniani, Coſtobocci, Choatræ, Zigæ, Dandari, the Thuſſagets and Turkes, vnto the deſarts rough with wooddie vallies: beyond whom are the Arympheians, which border vnto the Riphean mountaines. And *Ptolomie* in the deſcription of SARMATIA ASIATICA, maketh mention of the Tuſci, whom many learned men ſuppoſe to haue beene the ſame nation with the Turkes. Vnto which ancient teſtimonies of reuerend antiquitie, adde the manners and conditions of the Turkes, their ancient attire, their geſture, their gate, their weapons, and manner of riding and fight, their language and dialect, ſo well agreeing with the Scythians; and a man ſhall finde matter enough ſufficient to perſwade him in reaſon, that the Turkes haue vndoubtedly taken their beginning from the Scythes; whom they in ſo many things reſemble, and with whom of all other nations they beſt agree.

Sebaſt. Múſter. vniuerſalis Coſmograph. lib. 3.

Scythia the native country of the Turkes.

Pomp. Mela lib. 1. cap. vlt.

Plin. ſecundus lib. 6. cap. 7.

The great agreement betwixt the Turks and Scythians.

Now it hath beene no leſſe doubted alſo among the writers of the Turkes hiſtories; at what time, and for what cauſes the Turkes (to the trouble of the world) left their naturall ſeats in the cold countrie of SCYTHIA, to ſeek themſelues others in more pleaſant and temperat countries more Southerly, than it had beene of their originall beginning. *Blondus* and *Platina*, report them, enforced with a generall want, to haue forſaken their natiue countrie and followed their better fortune, in the yeare of our Lord 755: with whom alſo *Segonius* agreeth in the cauſe of their departure, but not in the time or place when or whereby they departed. For they (as he ſaith) iſſued out of their dwelling places in the year of Grace 844, by the ſtraits of the mountaine CAVCASVS: whereas the other with greater probability ſuppoſe them to haue come foorth by the Caſpian ſtraits: which the Turks alſo (as ſaith *Sabellicus*) affirme of themſelues, their anceſtors (as they ſay) being by their neighbours driuen out of the Caſpian mountaines. Some others there be that report them to haue forſaken their natiue countrie, neither enforced thereunto by neceſſitie, or the power of others; but for their valour ſent for by the *Sultan* of PERSIA to aide him in his warres: vnaduiſedly ſuppoſing that to haue beene the cauſe of their firſt comming out, which indeed hapned long time after, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie ſhall appeare. But whatſoeuer the aforeſaid cauſes of want, or of the enemies power, might enforce them vnto, a greater power no doubt it was that ſtirred them vp, euen the hand of the Almightie, who being the author of all kingdoms vpon the earth, as wel thoſe which he hath appointed as ſcourges wherewith to puniſh the world, as others more bleſſed, will haue his worke and purpoſe

When and for what cauſes the Turks left their ancient and naturall ſeats in Scythia, to ſeeke others in the countries more Southerly.

755

844

Sabellicus Ennead. 9. li. 2.

A purpoſe full of diuine maieſtie, to appeare in the ſtirring of them vp from right ſmall beginnings, in the increaſing and eſtabliſhing of their greatneſſe and power, to the aſtoniſhment of the world, and in the ruine and deſtruction of them againe, the courſe of their appointed time once runne. As for the difference of the time of their comming forth, before remembred; it may reaſonably be referred to the diuers emotions of that people, who being not vnder the command of any one, but of their diuers gouernours, as the manner of that people was, are not to be thought to haue come forth all at once, either for one cauſe; but at diuers times, ſome ſooner, ſome later, and that for diuers cauſes. This people thus ſtirred vp, and by the Caſpian ports paſſing thorow the Georgian countrey, then called IBERIA, neere vnto the Caſpian
B ſea; firſt ſeized vpon a part of the greater ARMENIA, and that with ſo ſtrong hand, that it is by their poſteritie yet holden at this day, and of them called TVRCOMANIA; of all other, the moſt true progenie of the ancient Turkes. In which great countrey, they of long, vnder their diuers leaders, in the manner of their liuing moſt reſembling their anceſtors, roamed vp and downe with their families and heards of cattell, after the manner of the Scythian Nomades, their countrey men, without any certaine places of aboad; yet at great vnitie among themſelues, as not hauing much to looſe, or wherefore to ſtriue.

Armenia (now called Turcomania) the firſt ſeat of the Turks after their firſt comming out of Scythia.

C

The firſt kingdome of the Turks erected in PERSIA by *Tangrolipix*, Chieftaine of the Selzuccian familie: *with the ſucceſſe thereof.*

D THis wandring and vnregarded people, but now the terrour of the world, thus firſt ſeated in ARMENIA, long time there liued in that wide country, after their rude and wonted manner (from which the Turcoman nation their poſteritie in that place, euen at this day (as wee ſaid) much differeth not) and not only notably defended the countrey thus by them at the firſt poſſeſſed, but ſtill incroching farther & farther, and gaining by other mens harmes, became at length dreadfull vnto their neighbors, and of ſome fame alſo farther off: whereunto the effeminate cowardiſe of thoſe delicate people of ASIA, with whom they had to doe, gaue no leſſe furtherance than their owne valour; being neuertheleſſe an hardie rough people, though not much skilfull or trained vp in the feats of warre.

The fame of theſe Turkes, together with their fortune, thus daily increaſing, and the mightie
E Empire of the Saraſins as faſt declining, which vnder their Chaliphes the ſucceſſors of the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, hauing in leſſe than the ſpace of two hundred yeeres, ouerſpread not onely the greateſt part of ASIA & AFRICKE, euen vnto GADES & the pillers of *Hercules*, but alſo paſſing ouer that ſtrait, had ouerwhelmed almoſt all SPAINE, & not there ſtaying, but paſſing the Pyrenei, had pierced euen into the heart of FRANCE, & diuers other parts of Chriſtendome, as namely, ITALY, SICILY, the famous Iland of the RHODES, with many others of the MEDITERRANEAN: now diuided in it ſelfe, and rent into many kingdomes, turned their victorious armes from the Chriſtians vpon one another, to the mutuall deſtruction of themſelues & their empire. Amongſt other the Saraſin Sultans, which forgetting their obedience vnto their great Chaliph, tooke vpon them the ſoueraigntie of gouernment (which admitteth no partner)
F was one *Mahomet*, Sultan of PERSIA, a right great Prince, who hardly beſet on the one ſide with the Indians, and on the other with the Chaliph of BABYLON his mortall enemie, praied aid of the Turks his neighbors, who were now come euen to the ſide of ARAXIS, the bounds of his empire: vnto which his requeſt the Turks eaſily granted, in hope therby to find a way for them afterwards to enter into PERSIA, & ſo ſent him three thouſand hardy men, vnder the leading of one *Togra Mucalet*, the ſonne of *Mikeil*, a valiant captaine, and chiefe of the Selzuccian

Togra, otherwiſe called Tangrolipix, ſent to aid the Perſian Sultan.

tribe or familie; whom the Greekes commonly call *Tangrolipix*, and ſome others *Selduck* or *Sadock*, names (as I ſuppoſe) corrupted of the great familie whereof he was deſcended. By the aid of this *Tangrolipix* (for now wee will ſo call him, as by the name moſt vſed) *Mahomet* the Perſian Sultan, ouercame *Piſaſiris* the Chaliph of BABYLON, his Arabians being not able to endure the force of the Turkiſh archers. This warre thus happily ended, the Turks deſiring to returne home, requeſted of the Sultan leaue to depart, and with a ſafe conuoy to be conducted vnto the riuer ARAXIS, and there to haue the paſſage of that ſwift riuer opened vnto them, which was by the Perſians ſtrongly kept by two caſtels built vpon each end of the bridge wherby the riuer was to be paſſed: But *Mahomet* loth to forgoe ſuch neceſſarie men, by whom hee had obtained ſo great a victorie, and purpoſing to employ them further in his ſeruice againſt the Indians, would by no meanes hearken vnto their requeſt; but ſeeming therewith to be diſcontented, commanded them to ſpeake no more thereof, threatning them violence, if they ſhould more preſume to talke of their departure. The Turks therefore doubtfull of their eſtate, and fearing further danger, ſecretly withdrew themſelues into the deſart of CARAVONITIS, and for that they were in number but few, and not able to come into the open field againſt ſo many millions of the Saraſins, liued as they might, by continuall incurſions and roades which they made out of the deſart forreſt into the countries adioyning: wherewith *Mahomet* greatly incenſed, ſent out an armie of twentie thouſand men, vnder the conduct of ten of his beſt captaines againſt them: who for want of water and other neceſſaries, doubting to enter the deſart, encamped themſelues in the ſide of the forreſt, there to conſult what courſe to take. But *Tangrolipix*, who with his Turks lay a great way off in the couert of the woods and mountaines, vnderſtanding of the comming of his enemies, and of the manner of their lying; thought it beſt vpon the ſodaine by night to ſet vpon the Saraſins and Perſians, if ſo happily hee might ouerthrow them by policie, whom he was not able to encounter in plaine battell. Vpon which reſolution hauing trauelled two daies long march in the deſart, the third day at night he ſodainely ſet vpon his enemies, lying negligently in their trenches, and by his vnexpected comming, brought ſuch a feare vpon them, that they without longer ſtay betooke themſelues to flight, euery man ſhifting for himſelfe, without regard of others. This victorie ſo happily gained, and *Tangrolipix* now (beyond his hope) throughly furniſhed, with armour, horſes, and abundance of all things needfull for the wars, kept the woods & forreſts no longer as a theefe or out-law, but ſhewed himſelfe in the open field, where daily repaired vnto him numbers of rogues and vagabonds, ſeeking after ſpoile; with many other deſperate villaines, who for feare of puniſhment were glad of ſuch a refuge: So that in a ſhort ſpace his armie was growne to be fiftie thouſand ſtrong, and ſo much the ſtronger, for that they had nothing to truſt vnto, more than the valour of themſelues. Whileſt *Tangrolipix* thus increaſeth, *Mahomet* inraged with the ouerthrow of his armie, in his furie cauſed all thoſe ten captains that had the leading thereof, to haue their eies pluckt out, threatning alſo to attire all the ſouldiers that fled out of the battell in womens apparell, and ſo diſgraced, to carry them about as cowards: and withall raiſed a great armie for the ſuppreſſing of the Turks. All things being now in readines, he ſet forward: when by the way the ſouldiers whom he had before ſo threatned to diſgrace, ſuddenly fled to the enemy: with whoſe comming, *Tangrolipix* greatly encouraged and ſtrengthned, reſolued to giue the Sultan battell. And ſo boldly comming on, met with him at ISPAHAN, a citie of PERSIA, where was fought betwixt them a moſt terrible battell, with wonderfull ſlaughter on both ſides. In the heat of which battell, *Mahomet* vnaduiſedly riding to and fro to encourage his ſouldiers, falling with his horſe, brake his necke: vpon which miſchance both the armies comming to agreement, by common conſent proclaimed *Tangrolipix* Sultan in his ſtead, & ſo made him king of PERSIA, and of all the other large dominions vnto that kingdome belonging.

Mahomet the Perſian Sultan goeth himſelfe with an armie againſt Tangrolipix.

Tangrolipix by conſent of the ſouldiers, made Sultan of Perſia.

This was the firſt kingdome of the Turks, begun by the good fortune of *Tangrolipix*, about 214 yeares after their comming out of SCYTHIA, in the yeare alſo of our Lord 1030; *Conſtantinus Monomachus* then raigning, or a little before (according to the Turks account) in the raigne of *Romanus Argirus*, *Conſtantine* his predeceſſour. *Tangrolipix* by rare fortune, thus of a meane captaine become king of PERSIA, forthwith commanded the garriſon that kept the bridge ouer the riuer ARAXIS, to be remooued, and ſo free paſſage to be giuen vnto the Turkes his countreymen, at their pleaſure to come ouer: who in great multitudes repaired into PERSIA, where they were by the new Sultan well prouided for, and by little & little promoted vnto the greateſt

Tangrolipix firſt Sultan of the Turks.

greateſt dignities of that kingdome; the Perſians and Saraſins the ancient inhabitants thereof, being by theſe new come gueſts, now kept vnder, and as it were troden vnder foot. Together with this kingdome, the Turks receiued the Mahometane ſuperſtition, from which they before not much abhorred, as men vſing circumciſion: So that hard it is to ſay, whether nation loſt more; the Perſians and Saraſins, by the loſſe of ſo great a kingdome; or the Turks, by embracing ſo great a vanitie. *when the Turks firſt receiued the Mahometane ſuperſtition.*

Tangrolipix with his Turkes thus poſſeſſed of the kingdome of PERSIA, held not himſelfe therewith long content, but made war vpon his neighbor princes, eſpecially againſt *Piſaſiris* the Chaliph of BABYLON, whom hee in diuers battels ouerthrew; and hauing at length ſlaine him, ioyned his kingdome vnto his owne. After that he ſent *Cutlu-Muſes* his couſin, with an armie againſt the Arabians, by whom hee was ouerthrowne and put to flight. But returning by MEDIA, he requeſted of *Stephan* the Greeke Emperors lieutenant, leaue to paſſe with his armie by the confines of his countrey: which his requeſt, *Stephan* not only reiected, but alſo by ſtrong hand ſought to ſtop his paſſage; but ioyning battell with him, was by the Turkes eaſily ouerthrowne and himſelfe taken. So *Cutlu-Muſes* returning to *Tangrolipix*, and recounting vnto him the ſucceſſe of his wars, perſwaded him to turn his forces into MEDIA, as a moſt fruitfull country, and eaſie to be ſubdued. But he highly offended with the ouerthrow giuen by the Arabians, would not hearken vnto him, but raiſing a new armie in hope of better fortune, went againſt the Arabians in perſon himſelfe. *Cutlu-Muſes* in the meane time fearing the Sultans diſpleaſure, fled with his followers and fauorites: and taking for his refuge PASAR, a ſtrong citie of the Choraſmians, reuolted from him: which the Sultan ſeeming not to regard, held on his intended iourney againſt the Arabians, by whom he was alſo put to the worſt, and enforced with diſhonour to returne. After that, he with part of his armie beſieged *Cutlu-Muſes*, who by the ſtrength of the place and valour of the people, for a great while notably defended himſelfe. In the meane time *Tangrolipix* not vnmindfull what *Cutlu-Muſes* had before ſaid vnto him, concerning the eaſineſſe of the conqueſt of MEDIA (a countrey, as he ſaid, defended but by women) ſent *Aſan* his brothers ſonne, ſurnamed the Deafe, with a conuenient armie to inuade the ſame: who entring into the frontiers of that prouince, was there by the Emperors lieutenant ouerthrown, and himſelfe with the greateſt part of his armie ſlaine: with which loſſe the Sultan rather enraged than diſcouraged, ſent *Habramie Alim* his brother, againe with an armie of an hundred thouſand fighting men; with which ſo great a power the Emperors lieutenant thought it not good to encounter, vntill he had procured farther aid from the Emperor, eſpecially out of IBERIA, and therefore kept himſelfe with ſuch power as he had within his ſtrong & fenced places: which *Alim* perceiuing, and out of hope to draw him vnto battell, roaming vp and downe the countrey, at laſt beſieged ARZEN an open towne, but full of rich merchants, by whom it was contrary to his expectation, notably defended for the ſpace of ſix daies; vntill that at length the Turks ſeeing no other way to win it, ſet fire vpon it in diuers places: by force whereof the inhabitants were enforced for ſauegard of their liues to flie, and to leaue the towne with an infinite wealth to the ſpoile of the enemie. By this time was *Liparites* gouernour of IBERIA come with a great power to the aid of the Emperors lieutenant in MEDIA: whereof *Alim* hauing intelligence, without delay haſted with his armie towards his enemies: and meeting with them a little before night, had with them a cruell fight, wherein the victory fell vnto the Chriſtians, who had the Turkes in chace a great part of the night. Neuertheleſſe *Liparites* valiantly fighting in another wing of the battell, was there taken and ſo carried away priſoner: for whoſe ranſome the Emperor ſent a great ſum of mony, with certaine preſents to the Sultan; all which he ſent backe againe, and frankly ſet *Liparites* at libertie, wiſhing him neuer to beare armes more againſt the Turks. And with him ſent the Seriph, a man of great place among the Mahumetans, his embaſſadour vnto the Emperour: who comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, amongſt other things, proudly demanded of the Emperor to become tributary vnto the Sultan, and ſo to be at peace with him for euer. Which his vnreaſonable demand, was by the Emperor with no leſſe diſdaine ſcornfully reiected, and the Seriph ſo diſmiſſed: which contempt of his embaſſadour the Sultan taking in euill part, as alſo not a little mooued with the death of his nephew and loſſe of his armie, with all his power inuaded the Roman prouinces. But being come as far as COIME without any notable harme doing, for that the country people hearing before of his comming, had in time conueighed themſelues with their ſubſtance into their ſtrong holds, whereof there was

Cutlu-Muſes ſent by Tangrolipix againſt the Arabians.

Cutlu-Muſes rebelleth againſt Tangrolipix.

The Turkes embaſſadour contemned of the Emperor.

Tangrolipix inuadeth the Emperours dominions.

was great ſtore in thoſe countries; and hearing alſo that the Greeke Emperour was raiſing a great power to come againſt him at CESAREA; not daring to proceed any further, leauing ſo many enemies behinde him, he fretting in himſelfe, returned into MEDIA, where finding the people all fled into their ſtrong townes, he laid ſiege vnto MANTZICHIERT, a citie ſtanding in a plaine champian countrey, but ſtrongly fortified with a triple wall and deepe ditches. This citie he furiouſly aſſaulted by the ſpace of thirty daies without intermiſſion, but all in vaine, the ſame being ſtill notably defended by *Baſilius* gouernour thereof, and the other Chriſtians therein. The Sultan wearie of this ſiege, and about to haue riſen, was by *Alcan* one of his great captains, perſwaded yet to ſtay one day, for him to make proofe in, what he were able to do for the gaining thereof: whereunto the Sultan yeelding, committed the whole charge of the aſſault vnto him. *Alcan* the next day diuiding the armie into two parts, and placing the one part vpon the higher ground, of purpoſe, with the multitude of their ſhot to haue ouerwhelmed the defendants; with the other part of the armie, furniſhed with all things needfull for the aſſault, approched the wals: the Sultan in the mean time with certain of the chiefe Turks, from an high place beholding all that was done. But this ſo forward a captaine in the middeſt of his endeuour loſt himſelfe, being ſlaine with a great number of his followers in approching the wall. His dead bodie knowne by the beautie of his armour, was by two valiant young men that ſallied out of the gate, drawne by the haire of his head into the citie; and his head being forthwith cut off, was caſt ouer the wall among the Turks: wherewith the Sultan diſcouraged, and out of hope of gaining the citie, roſe with his armie, pretending himſelfe with other his vrgent affaires to be called home, and threatning withall, the next ſpring to returne with greater power, and to do great matters. But not long after, great diſcord aroſe betwixt the Sultan and his brother *Habramie Alim*, in ſo much that the Sultan ſought by diuers meanes to haue taken him out of the way: which *Habramie* perceiuing, fled to his nephew *Cutlu-Muſes*, and ioyning his forces with his, denounced warre vnto the Sultan his brother; who meeting with them not farre from CAESAR, ouercame them in plaine battell, wherin *Habramie* was taken, and preſently by the commandement of his brother put to death. But *Cutlu-Muſes* with his couſin *Melech*, & ſix thouſand Turks fled into ARMENIA; and by meſſengers ſent of purpoſe, requeſted of the Emperor *Conſtantinus Monomachus* to be receiued into his protection. But the Sultan with his armie following them at the heeles, they for their more ſafetie were glad to flie into ARABIA. The Sultan afterwards turning into IBERIA, did there great harme, ſpoiling the countrey before him: againſt whom the Emperour ſent *Michael Acoluthus*, a valiant captaine; of whoſe approach the Sultan hearing, and that he would vndoubtedly ere long giue him battell (deeming it no great honour vnto him to ouercome the Emperours ſeruant, but an eternall diſhonour to be of him ouerthrowne) retired with his armie backe againe to TAVRIS, leauing behinde him one *Samuch* with three thouſand Turks to infeſt the frontiers of the Emperors territories; which both he & other the Turks captaines afterward more eaſily did, for that *Monomachus* the Emperour hauing prodigally ſpent the treaſures of the empire, to increaſe his reuenue, had impoſed a tribute vpon the frontier countries of his empire, wont before to be free from all exactions: in lieu whereof, they were bound to defend the paſſages from all incurſions of the enemies; but now preſſed with new impoſitions, had diſſolued their wonted garriſons, and left an eaſie entrance for the barbarous enemies into the prouinces confining vpon them: Beſides that the Emperors immediatly following, and eſpecially *Conſtantinus Ducas*, abhorring from wars, and giuen altogether to the hoording vp of treaſure, gaue little countenance and leſſe maintenance vnto men of ſeruice, which in ſhort time turned vnto the great weakning, and in fine to the vtter ruine of the Conſtantinopolitane empire. At the ſame time alſo the gouernment of the Conſtantinopolitane empire by the death of *Conſtantinus Ducas* the late Emperor, came to his wife *Eudocia* with her three ſonnes, *Michael*, *Andronicus*, and *Conſtantinus*, all very young; whoſe ſex and tender yeres the barbarous nations hauing in contempt, at their pleaſure grieuouſly ſpoiled the prouinces of the empire, namely, MESOPOTAMIA, CILICIA, CAPADOCIA, yea and ſometime as farre as CŒLESIRIA. The report whereof much troubled the Empreſſe, and gaue occaſion for many that loued her not, to ſay, that ſo troubled an eſtate required the gouernment of ſome worthy man. Wherefore ſhe fearing leſt that the Senate, making choiſe of ſome other, ſhe and her children ſhould be remoued from the gouernment, thought it beſt for the preſeruation of her ſtate & her childrens, to make choiſe of ſome notable and valiant man for her huſband, that

Diſſention betwixt Tangrolipix and his brother Habramie Alim.

Cutlu-Muſes flieth into Arabia.

Couetouſnes & lacke of reward the decay of the Conſtantinopolitane empire.

Eudocia the Empreſſe contrary to her oath deſirous to marrie.

for

A for her & hers ſhould take vpon him the managing of ſo weighty affaires. But to checke this her purpoſe (the onely remedy of her troubled thoughts) ſhe had at the death of the late Emperor *Conſtantine* her husband, at ſuch time as the ſoueraigntie was by the Senate confirmed vnto her and her ſonnes, ſolemnly ſworne neuer more to marrie; which her oath was for the more aſſurance conceiued into writing, and ſo deliuered vnto the Patriarch to keepe. This troubled her more, than to find out the man whom ſhe could thinke worthy of her ſelfe, with ſo great honor. She held then in priſon one *Diogenes Romanus*, a man of great renown & honorably deſcended; whoſe father hauing married the neece of the Emperour *Romanus Argirus*, and aſpiring to the empire, being cõuicted therof, ſlew himſelfe for feare to be enforced by torments to bewray his
B confederats. This *Diogenes* was by the late Emperour *Conſtantine*, for his good ſeruice againſt the Scythes (who then much troubled the empire) highly promoted, with moſt honorable teſtimonie in the charters of his promotions, That ſuch honors were beſtowed vpon him, not of the Emperours meere bountie, but as the due rewards of his worthy deſerts. Notwithſtanding after the death of the Emperour, he ſicke of his fathers diſeaſe, and ſwelling with the pride of ambition, ſought by ſecret meanes to haue aſpired vnto the empire: whereof the Empreſſe hauing intelligence, cauſed him to be apprehended and brought in bonds to CONSTANTINOPLE, where being found guiltie of the foule treaſon, and ſo committed to ſafe keeping, was ſhortly after brought forth to the iudgement ſeat againe, to receiue the heauie ſentence of death. In which wofull plight, ſtanding as a man out of hope and now vtterly forlorne, he moo-
C ued all the beholders with a ſorrowfull compaſſion: for beſide that he was a man of exceeding ſtrength, ſo was he of incomparable feature and beautie, adorned with many other rare qualities and vertues anſwerable thereunto: wherewith the Empreſſe mooued with the reſt, or pierced with a ſecret good liking, is hard to ſay, reuoked the ſentence of condemnation ready to haue beene pronounced vpon him, and gaue him pardon. And ſhortly after hauing ſet him at libertie, ſent for him as he was going into CAPADOCIA his natiue country, and made him generall of all her forces, with a full reſolution in her ſelfe to marry him, & to make him Emperor, if ſhee might by any meanes get the writing out of the Patriarchs hand, wherein her oath for neuer marrying againe was compriſed. For the compaſſing whereof, ſhee entred into a deepe deuice ful of feminine policie with one of her Eunuches, whom ſhe purpoſed to vſe as her pan-
D der for the circumuenting of the Patriarch. This craftie Eunuch inſtructed by his miſtreſſe, comming to the Patriarch *Ioannes Xiliphilinus*, a man both for his place and integritie of life much honoured, told him in great ſecret, that the Empreſſe had ſo far ſet her good liking vpon a yong gentleman, a nephew of his called *Barda* (then a gallant of the court) as that ſhe could be content to take him to her husband and to make him Emperor, if ſhe might by his holineſſe be perſwaded, that ſhe might with ſafe conſcience doe it, & by him be diſcharged of the raſh oath ſhe had vnaduiſedly taken, neuer to marry againe, whereof he had the keeping. The Patriarch, otherwiſe a contemner of worldly honours, yet mooued with ſo great a preferment of his nephew, promiſed the Eunuch to doe therein whatſoeuer the Empreſſe had deſired, which he accordingly performed. And ſo ſending for the Senators one by one, in whoſe good liking the
E matter chiefly reſted, he with much grauitie propounded vnto them the dangerous eſtate of the common-weale, with the troubles daily increaſing, & the continuall feare of forreine enemies, not to be repreſſed by the weake hand of a woman, or the authoritie of young children, but requiring (as hee ſaid) the valiant courage of ſome worthy man. After that, hee began to finde great fault with the raſh oath which the Empreſſe had taken a little before the death of her huſband, neuer to marry; and vtterly condemning the ſame, as contrary to the word of God, & vniuſtly exacted of her, rather to ſatisfie the iealous humor of the Emperor her late husband, than for any good of the common-weale: he in fine perſwaded them, that the vnlawfull oath might be reuoked, and the Empreſſe ſet at libertie at her pleaſure, by their good liking to make choice of ſuch a man for her huſband, as might better vndertake ſo weightie affaires of the empire,
F more fit for a man, than for ſo tender a Lady and three young children. The greater part of the Senate thus perſwaded by the Patriarch, and the reſt with gifts and promiſes ouercome by the Empreſſe, the Patriarch deliuered vnto her the writing ſhe ſo much deſired, and diſcharged her of her oath: whereupon ſhe forthwith calling vnto her certaine of her ſecret friends, married *Diogenes*, whom ſhe cauſed to be proclaimed Emperour. Now thought *Eudocia*, after the manner of women, to haue had her huſband (whom ſhee euen frõ the bottome of deſpaire had exal-

Diogenes Romanus of a priſoner by the Empreſſe made generall of her armie.

Eudocia marrieth Diogenes Romanus and proclaimeth him Emperour.

ted

ted vnto the higheſt type of honour) in all things loyall and pliant: whereunto he for a while at G
the firſt forced himſelfe, but afterwards (being a man of a proud nature, and haughtie ſpirit) be-
came wearie of ſuch obſeruance, and began by little and little to take euery day more and more
vpon him. And for that the imperiall prouinces in the Eaſt, were in ſome part loſt, and the reſt
in no ſmall danger; he, as well for the redreſſe thereof, as for his owne honour, and to ſhew him-
ſelfe an Emperor indeed, and not the ſeruant of the Empreſſe, left the court & paſſed ouer into
ASIA, although it were with a ſmall armie and euill appointed: for why, it was no eaſie mat-
ter for him to furniſh out the armie with all things neceſſary, which by the ſloth and ſparing of
the late Emperors, had, to the great danger and diſhonor of the empire, been vtterly neglected.
Neuertheles the Turkiſh Sultan, who at the ſame time with a great power inuaded the prouin- H
ces of the empire, hearing of his comming, and that he was a man of great valour, and doubting
what power he might bring with him, retired himſelfe; and diuiding his armie, ſent the one part
thereof into the South part of ASIA, and the other into the North, which ſpoiled all the coun-
trey before them as they went, and ſuddenly ſurpriſing the citie of NEO-CESARIA, ſacked it,
and ſo laded with the ſpoile thereof departed. But the Emperor vnderſtanding thereof, and not
a little grieued therewith, drawing out certaine bands and companies of the beſt and moſt rea-
dieſt ſouldiers in his armie, and with them coaſting the countrey to get betwixt the Turks and
home, vſed therein ſuch expedition, that he was vpon them before they were aware, and ſo ſud-
denly charging them, brought ſuch a feare vpon them, that they betooke themſelues to their
heeles, leauing behind them for haſte, their baggage & carriages, with all the priſoners and boo- I
tie they had before taken at NEO-CESARIA, and in their late expedition: yet was there no
great number of them ſlaine, for that the Chriſtians forewearied with long trauel, were not able
farre to follow the chace. From thence taking his way into SYRIA, he ſent part of his armie to
MELITENA, and carried himſelfe from ALEPPO, a great bootie both of men and cattell. At
which time alſo the citie of HIERAPOLIS was yeelded vnto him, where he ſhortly after built
a ſtrong caſtell. But whileſt he there ſtaied, newes was brought vnto him, that the other part of
his armie which he had ſent away, was ouerthrowne by the Turks; for the reliefe of whom, he
roſe with all haſte and marched towards them: but being in number farre inferiour vnto his
enemies, hee was by them as hee lay encamped, encloſed round in ſuch ſort, as that it was
thought almoſt impoſſible for him to haue eſcaped. At which time alſo the gouernour of A- K
LEPPO traiterouſly reuolted from him, and ioyned his forces with the enemie, making now no
other reckoning, but aſſuredly to haue taken him. But whiles the Turks thus dreame of nothing
but of a moſt glorious victorie, and were in minde diuiding the ſpoile, the Emperor without ſo
much as the ſounding of a trumpet, ſuddenly iſſuing out of his trenches, when they leaſt thoght
he durſt ſo haue done, & reſolutely charging them home, put them to flight, & had of them had
a notable victorie, had he throughly proſecuted the ſame. After that, hauing taken diuers towns
he came to ALEXANDRIA in CILICIA, and there all about in the countrey billited his ar-
mie, becauſe of the approach of winter, and ſo returned himſelfe to CONSTANTINOPLE.
The next ſpring the Turks, according to their vſuall manner inuading the frontiers of the em-
pire, did much harme about NEO-CESARIA: whereof the Emperor aduertiſed, went thither L
with his armie, and quickly repreſſing their furie, tooke his iourney to the riuer EVPHRATES,
where leauing part of his armie with *Philaretus* for the keeping of thoſe frontiers, hee himſelfe
retired Northward into CAPADOCIA. But after his departure, the Turkes ſetting vpon *Phila-*
retus, put him to flight with his garriſons: and taking the ſpoile of the frontiers, entred into CA-
PADOCIA, waſting all as they went: & afterwards turning into CILICIA, ſacked ICONIVM
a rich and populous citie. Whereof the Emperor vnderſtanding at SEBASTIA, made towards
them: but hearing by the way that they had ranſackt the citie, and were for feare of his com-
ming already retired, he ſent *Chatagurio* gouernour of ANTIOCH, with part of his armie to
MOPSIPHESTIA to ſtop the Turks of their paſſage. But they in the plains of THARSVS were
before diſtreſſed by the Armenians, and ſtript of all their rich prey: and hearing farther of the M
approach of the Emperors power, fled by night, and ſo eſcaped: which the Emperor vnderſtan-
ding, and hauing now well quieted thoſe prouinces, and the yeere farre ſpent, returned again to
CONSTANTINOPLE. But after his departure, the Turks again inuading the frontier prouin-
ces, hee ſent *Manuel Comnenus*, a valiant young man, generall againſt them; who ſo preuailed,
that the Emperor enuying at his honour, tooke from him a great part of his armie, and ſent him

The prouinces of the empire ſpoiled by the Turkes.

The Turkes diſcomfited by Diogenes the Emperour.

with

A with a ſmall power into SYRIA. But as he was vpon his way, he was by the Turks entrapped neere vnto SEBASTIA, and there taken, moſt part of his armie being at the ſame time ouerthrowne and ſlaine: with which loſſe, the Emperour troubled, made great preparation to goe himſelfe in perſon againſt his enemies; who encouraged with the former victorie, ceaſed not to infeſt his territories. In the meane time, by great fortune came *Manuel Comnenus* home, together with the Turke that tooke him; who being fallen into the diſpleaſure of the Sultan, fled vnto the Emperor with his priſoner, of whom he was honorably entertained. Al things now in a readineſſe for ſo great an expedition as the Emperor had in perſon purpoſed, he ſet forward: and after long trauell hauing paſſed CESAREA, he encamped at a place called CRYAPEGA: *Diogenes goeth with a great armie againſt the Turks.*

B where for ſeuere execution done vpon certaine mutinous ſouldiers, one of the legions of his armie roſe in mutinie againſt him: whom (for all that) he quickly pacified with the terrour of the reſt of his armie, which he threatned to turne vpon them if they proceeded to forget their dutie. After that, remouing to THEODOSOPOLIS, he diuided his armie, and ſent *Ruſelius* one of his beſt captaines, with one part thereof againſt *Chliat*, and another part hee ſent to beſiege MANTZICIERTS, retaining with himſelfe the reſt, being of no great ſtrength. The Turks in MANTZICIERTS finding themſelues not able long to hold out, fell to compoſition, and yeelded the citie. But ſhortly after, the ſouldiers left there in garriſon for the keeping thereof, going out to ſeeke for forrage, were by the Turks ſuddenly oppreſſed: which the Emperour vnderſtanding, ſent thither one *Nicephorus Bryennius*, with certaine companies to releeue the

C citie; who encountring with the Turks, and finding himſelfe too weake, ſent vnto the Emperour for aid: who not knowing the ſtrength of the enemies, blamed him of cowardiſe, yet ſent vnto him *Nicephorus Baſilacius* with part of his armie; who ioyning his forces with *Bryennius*, and giuing the Turks battell, put them to flight. But following too faſt vpon them vnto their trenches, and *Bryennius* making no great haſte after, he had his horſe ſlaine vnder him, and ſo on foot heauily laded with armour, and not able to ſhift for himſelfe, was there taken and brought to the Sultan: who honourably entreated him, and oftentimes queſtioning with him concerning the Emperour, and ſhewing him his owne power, examined him alſo of the Emperours.

Tangrolipix was now dead, and the Sultan now in field againſt the Emperour, was *Axan* his ſonne, a man of great wiſdome & diſcretion: who conſidering the doubtfull euent of battell, ſent *Axan the Sultã ſendeth embaſſadours vnto Diogenes for peace.*

D embaſſadors vnto the Emperour to entreat with him of peace. But he (perſwaded by ſome of his captains, that this motion made by the Sultan for peace, proceeded but of a meere feare and diſtruſt he had in his owne power, or elſe to gaine time vntill ſome greater ſtrength came) had ſmall regard of the embaſſadours or their meſſage, but proudly willed them to tell their maſter, That if he were deſirous of peace, he ſhould get him farther off, and leaue the place wherein he lay encamped, for him to lodge in. And ſo without other anſwere commanded them away. Now had the Emperor (as is before ſaid) ſent away part of his armie by *Ruſelius* againſt *Chliat*, whom he now ſent for in haſte againe: but he hearing of the approch of the Sultan, by the perſwaſion of *Tarchomiates*, one of his captaines, was retired for his more ſafetie backe into the Romane frontiers, leauing the Emperour deſtitute of his helpe. At which time alſo, a companie of

E the Scythians which ſerued in the Emperours campe, reuolted vnto the Turkes; not without ſome ſuſpition, that the reſt of their fellowes which remained, would ere long doe the like. Neuertheleſſe the Emperour preſuming of ſuch ſtrength as he had, or carried headlong with his owne fortune, reſolued to giue the Turks battell, and therefore putting his men in order, ſet vpon them. Who ſomewhat troubled with the Emperours ſo ſudden a reſolution, as being yet in ſome hope of peace: yet hauing put themſelues in order of battel, receiued the enemies charge; ſtill giuing a little ground, as men not greatly deſirous either to fight or to flie. This fight continuing long, and the day now declining, the Emperour doubting leſt the Sultan ſhould ſend part of his armie to aſſault his campe (from which he was now drawne ſomewhat farre, & had left the ſame but weakly manned) cauſed a retrait to be ſounded, and ſo began orderly to retire

F himſelfe with them that were about him: which others a farre off in the battell beholding, and ſuppoſing him to haue fled, began themſelues to flie amaine. Of which ſo ſhamefull flight and ſudden feare *Andronicus* (the ſonne of *Iohn Ducas*, the late Emperour *Conſtantine* his brother, and by him created *Cæſar*, who with his ſonnes ſecretly enuied at the honour of *Diogenes*) was the cauſe. For he commanding a great part of the armie, gaue it firſt out vnto ſuch as were about him, that the Emperor fled: and to increaſe the feare, turning his horſe about, fled towards the *Iohn Ducas a notable Traitor cauſe of the flight of the emperours armie.*

campe

campe as fast as he could: after whom all the rest most disorderly followed: which the Emperor G
beholding, and therewith not a little troubled, made a stand, labouring in vaine to haue staid the
rest. For now the Turks encouraged with the sudden flight of the Christians, began hardly to
pursue them, as men already ouerthrowne by the hand of God: whom for all that, the Emperor
Diogenes the Emperour taken by the Turkes. with such as yet stood with him, for a space notably resisted. But being forsaken by the greater
part of his armie, & oppressed with the multitude of his enemies, being wounded himselfe, and
his horse slaine vnder him, he was there taken all imbrued with his own bloud, and the bloud of
his enemies, of whom he had wounded and slaine many. The Sultan aduertised of his taking, at
the first beleeued it not, supposing it rather to haue beene some other great man: vntill that he
was both by them whom he had but a little before sent embassadour vnto him, & by *Basilacius* H
one of his captains then prisoner with him, assured that it was vndoubtedly he, which *Basilacius*
brought before him to see if he knew him, fel down prostrat at his feet, as before his dread Lord
and Soueraigne. The Emperor brought before the Sultan, and humbling himselfe in such sort
as best beseemed his heauie fortune, the Sultan eprsently tooke him vp, & thus cheerfully spoke
vnto him: *Grieue not noble Emperor* (said he) *at thy mishap, for such is the chance of warre, ouerwhelming sometimes one, and sometimes another: neither feare thou any harme, for I will vse thee not as my prisoner, but as an Emperor.* Which he accordingly did, presently appointing him a princely
pauilion, with all things answerable to his estate, setting him oftentimes at his owne boord,
and for his sake enlarging such prisoners as he required. And after he had thus for certaine daies
honorably vsed him, and discoursed with him of many things, he concluded a perpetuall peace I
with him, vpon promise of a marriage to be made betwixt their children, and so with a safe con-
uoy sent him away with greater honour than was at an enemies hand to haue beene expected.
The Emperor in Turkish attire, which the Sultan had bestowed vpon him, comming to THEO-
DOSOPOLIS, there staid the curing of his wounds, & afterwards accompanied with the Sul-
tans embassadours, set forward toward CONSTANTINOPLE. But all was now there changed:
for vpon the report of his captiuitie, *Iohn* the *Cæsar*, with *Psellus* one of the chiefe Senators, and
others of the same faction, which alwaies enuied at the honour of *Diogenes*, presently tooke the
Eudocia the Empresse deposed by the traitor Iohn Ducas, Psellus, and others. imperiall gouernment from *Eudocia* the Empresse, & thrusting her into a monasterie which she
had built neere vnto PROPONTIS, set vp *Michael Ducas* her eldest sonne, Emperour, in stead
of *Diogenes*: whose simplicitie, *Cæsar* his vncle abusing with the rest, did now what they list. K
And hearing that *Diogenes* was now (contrary to their expectation) set at libertie by the Sultan,
and comming towards the emperiall citie, sent out letters euery way in the new Emperours
name, vnto all the gouernours of the prouinces whereby he was to passe, not to receiue him
as Emperour, or to doe him any honour: which *Diogenes* vnderstanding, staid at the castle of
DOCIA, whither some of his friends with such power as they were able to make, resorted vn-
to him. Against whom, *Cæsar* with the contrary faction first sent his sonne *Constantine*, and
after that *Andronicus* his eldest sonne, both *Diogenes* his mortall enemies, with a great armie:
Diogenes the Emperor taken prisoner by Andronicus. by whom *Diogenes*, with his friends and followers, were ouerthrowne and discomfited. *Dioge-*
nes himselfe flying to the citie of ADANA, was there hardly besieged by *Andronicus*, and in
the end glad to yeeld himselfe, vpon condition, that he should resigne the empire, and so for L
euer after to leade a priuate life. For whose safetie, certaine of the chiefe of the clergie sent of
purpose from *Michael* the Emperour, gaue their faith. So *Diogenes* all attired in blacke, yeelded
himselfe to *Andronicus*: by whom he was brought to COTAI, then the metropoliticall citie of
PHRIGIA, there to expect what further order should be taken for him from the court: during
which time, he fell sicke, being (as many supposed) secretly poisoned. But whilst he there lay
languishing, an heauier doome came from the young Emperour, That he should haue his eies
The miserable death of Diogenes the Emperor put out: which was forthwith in most cruell manner done; the clergie men that had before for
his safetie gaged their faith, crying out in vaine against so horrible a crueltie. Thus depriued of
his sight, he was conueighed into the Iland of PROTA, where his eies for lacke of looking to,
putrifying, and wormes breeding in them, with such an odious smell as that no man could M
abide to come nigh him, he in short time after died, when he had raigned three yeeres, eight
Axan the Sultan seeketh to reuenge the death of Diogenes. months. All which miserie was thought to haue hapned vnto him through the malice of *Cæsar*,
without the knowledge of the young Emperour his nephew.

Axan hearing of the miserable end of the late Emperour *Diogenes*, was therewith much grie-
ued, & the more, for that the league which he had to his good content so lately made with him,

was

A was thereby come to nought: wherefore in reuenge thereof, he with great power inuaded the imperiall prouinces; not for ſpoile and bootie only, as in former time, but now to conquer and to hold the ſame. Againſt whom *Michael* the Emperour ſent *Iſaack Comnenus* his lieutenant, with a great armie: who meeting with the Turks, & ioyning battell, was by them ouerthrowne with all his armie, and taken priſoner: and glad afterwards for a great ſumme of money, to redeeme himſelfe. After which ouerthrow, the Emperour ſent his vncle *Caſar* with another armie againſt them, who was by *Ruſelius*, that had before reuolted from the Emperour, ouerthrowne at the riuer SANGARIVS, and taken priſoner: whom he for all that, ſhortly after ſet at libertie againe, and ioyning with him againſt the Turkes, were both together by them diſcomfited and taken priſoners, but afterwards redeemed; *Caſar* by the Emperor, and *Ruſelius* by his
B wife. This *Ruſelius* was a notable traitour, who ioyning with the Turkes, did what he liſt in the prouinces of the empire in the leſſer ASIA: for the repreſſing of whom, the Emperour ſent *Alexius Comnenus*, a young man, but very politike and couragious; who ſecretly practiſing with the Turks that were great with *Ruſelius*, had him at laſt by them for a ſumme of money betraied into his power: who forthwith ſent him to CONSTANTINOPLE to the Emperor, by whom he was impriſoned, but afterward ſet at libertie and employed againſt *Bryennius* and his brother, then vp in rebellion againſt the Emperour.

But to come neerer vnto the Turkiſh affaires. *Cutlu-Muſes*, who with his couſin *Melech* and others were for feare of *Tangrolipix* their couſin fled into ARABIA, as is before declared, now
C in the beginning of the raigne of *Axan*, returned: and as the enuious competitours of his kingdome, hauing raiſed a great power of their friends and partakers, were now ready to haue tried the matter with him by plaine battell. Againſt whom alſo the Sultan on the other ſide had brought into the field his whole forces, and was now ready likewiſe to haue encountred them neere vnto the citie of ERES. But whileſt the Turks thus diuided, ſtood ready to deſtroy themſelues, the Caliph of BABYLON (from whom though the Turks had taken all temporal ſoueraigntie, yet in matters of religion ſtill held him in great reuerence and eſteeme, as their chiefe Biſhop, and the ſucceſſor of their great Prophet) conſidering that nothing could be more dangerous vnto his ſect and religion, than that ciuill diſſention, the late confuſion and vtter ruine of the Saraſin empire, and authoritie of the Caliphs; and fearing the like effect in theſe new Sara-
D ſins, now the chiefe ſtay of the Mahometane ſuperſtition: ſetting aſide all pontificall formalitie, whereby hee was bound not to goe out of his owne houſe, came with all ſpeed, euen as the armies were now ready to ioyne battell, and thruſting himſelfe into the middeſt betwixt them; what with the reuerence of his perſon, what with his effectuall perſwaſion, wrought ſo much, & preuailed ſo farre with both parties, that they were content to lay downe their weapons, and to ſtand to his order and iudgement: which was, That *Axan* the Sultan ſhould ſtill enioy his kingdome and territories, whole and entire vnto himſelfe as he did: and that *Cutlu-Muſes* and his ſons, aided by him, and ſo inuading the prouinces of the Conſtantinopolitane empire, ſhould thereof ſubdue ſo much as they could vnto themſelues, and to be thereof accounted the onely Lords and gouernours. Which order as it was vnto the Turkes, and for the maintenance of the
E Mahometane ſuperſtition, very wholeſome & commodious; ſo was it vnto the Chriſtian common-weale and religion moſt dangerous and hurtfull, as in proceſſe of time by proofe it appeared. For by this meane, in ſhort time after, *Cutlu-Muſes* with his couſin and ſonnes ſubdued all MEDIA, with a great part of ARMENIA, CAPADOCIA, PONTVS, and BYTHINIA, and ſo a great part of the leſſer ASIA. By the aid of this *Cutlu-Muſes*, and the fauour of the ſouldiers, *Nicephorus Botoniates* aſpiring vnto the empire of CONSTANTINOPLE, diſplaced his maſter the Emperour, *Michael Ducas*, after he had raigned ſix yeeres and ſix moneths, and in the habit of a Monke thruſt him into an Abbey: which vſurper by the iuſt iudgement of God, was at length requited euen with the ſame meaſure, and in like maner ſerued by *Alexius Comnenus*; who thruſting him out, ſucceeded himſelfe in the empire. Much it was that this *Cutlu-Muſes* with his
F ſonnes and kinſmen did for the enlarging of the Turkiſh empire, by the helpe of the great Perſian Sultan: whoſe forces, together with their own, in diuers countries conducted by theſe worthie leaders his nigh kinſmen, and doing great matters, gaue occaſion for themſelues to be accounted Sultans, though indeed they were none, neither their names ſuch as are by ſome ancient writers & ſome others of later time alſo reported; but vnto the Turks themſelues, by thoſe names, either for Sultans, vnknowne. Out of theſe great cõmanders, all borne of the Selzuccian familie,

Cutlu-Muſes with his ſonnes and kinſmen take vp armes againſt Axan the Sultan.

A moſt hurtfull order for the Chriſtian common-weale.

The ground of the errour of diuers writers about the ſucceſſors of Tangrolipix, otherwiſe of them called Sadoth.

family, hath *Aithonus*, and others following his report, deriued their *Dogrisla*, *Aspasalemus*, *Meleclas*, and *Belchiaroc*, whom they suppose to haue orderly succeeded *Zadoc*, otherwise called *Tangrolipix*, in the Turkish empire, and to haue done great matters: whereas both by the report of the Turkes themselues, & the relation of the Greeks, it appears plainly, *Axan* (more truly called *Ax-Han*, that is to say, the White king) to haue beene the sonne of *Tangrolipix*, and to haue succeeded him in the empire: and that by him the emperour *Diogenes* was taken, and not by *Aspasalemus* as they vainely imagine. As for *Aspasalemus*, whom the Turkes by that name know not either any thing of his doings, it seemeth to haue beene a name corrupted of *Aspam Sallarius*, the brother of *Tangrolipix* and *Habrami*, and not his sonnes sonne as they would haue it. In like manner *Meleclas* also seemeth to haue beene forged of *Melech* the sonne of *Habrami*, *Tangrolipix* his brother, and not of *Aspasalemus*, as some without any good ground report. Whom they finding to haue beene all great Men in the Selzuccian familie, with some others also, haue both corrupted their names, and giuen vnto them an imaginarie soueraigntie and succession in the Turks first empire, such as beside that the Turks themselues acknowledge not, is easily to be refelled out of the histories of the Greekes, who had with them still much to doe. Wherefore leauing these supposed princes of the Turkes, with their imaginarie succession, and doings, vnto the authors thereof, following more certainties, to returne againe to the course of our historie. *Axan* the Sultan at the same time that hee had by the mediation of the Chaliph (or not long after) fallen to agreement with his cousin *Cutlu-Muses*: to encrease the honour of his nation and the bounds of his empire, gaue vnto *Ducat* and *Melech*, two of his nigh kinsmen, the gouernement of DAMASCO and ALEPPO, with that part of SIRIA which ioyneth vnto them, of purpose that way to encroch vpon the Ægyptian Chaliph, who then had vnder his iurisdiction, all, as far as LAODICEA in SIRIA; yet not with so large priuileges as had *Cutlu-Muses*, vnto whom and his posteritie hee had yeelded, the absolute honour of a Sultan or King, ouer such countries and prouinces as they should winne from the Christians: but vnto these others his kinsmen, hee gaue the gouernement of the aforesaid cities of DAMASCO and ALEPPO in the frontiers of his dominion in SIRIA, conditionally that they should still remaine his vassals, and hold of him as of their soueraigne, whatsoener they had; who neuertheless in short time mightily preuailed vpon the Egyptian, still increasing the Turkish territorie with the losse of the Sarasins, whose name together with their empire, was now by the Turkes almost quite driuen out of ASIA.

But these proud branches of the Turkish empire, thus ouerspreading the lesser ASIA, with the greatest part of of SIRIA, were in short time after by the mercy of God, and the valour of the most Christian and religious princes of the West, cut shorter, and brought againe into some better order. The full discourse whereof, worthie eternall memorie, by others inrolled in the ancient records of fame, I purpose not at large to follow, but in briefe to touch, for the orderly cotinuation of the present historie, hasting to the doings of this victorious nation of later times, wherein we are to make a longer stay, as more pertinent vnto the dangerous estate of the present time.

Peter a French Hermite goeth on pilgrimage to Ierusalem.

It fortuned that whilest *Cutlu-Muses* and his sonnes, supported by the Sultan *Axan* their kinsman, thus mightily preuailed against the Christians in the lesser ASIA on the one side, and *Melech* with his cousin against the Ægyptian Caliph in SIRIA on the other: that one *Peter* a French Hermite mooued with a denout zeale, according to the manner of that time, went to visit the sepulcher of our Sauiour, with the other holy places at IERVSALEM: who comming into SIRIA, then for the most part possessed by the Turkes and Sarasins, diligently noted by the way as he trauailed, the manners & fashions of these barbarous nations, their gouernment, their cities, their power and strength; but aboue all, the grieuous misiries of the poore oppressed Christians, that there liued in most miserable thraldom amongst them, without hope of release: all which, hee in the habite of a poore pilgrim, at liberty safely viewed, in the midst of these miscreants, being withall a little low hard fauoured fellow, and therefore in shew more to be contemned then feared. Yet vnder such simple & homly feature, lay vnregarded a most subtil sharp and pearching wit, fraught with discretion & sound iudgement, still applying to som good vse what he had in his long and painefull trauell most curiously obserued. He commeth to IERVSALEM, and performing his deuotions there, saw the grieuous misery of the poore deuout Christians, so greatly and heauy, as that greater or more intollerable could none be: wherewith not a little

The description of Peter the Hermite.

A little grieued, he entred into a deepe diſcourſe thereof with *Simon* the Patriarch and Abbot of the monaſterie of the Chriſtians (there before built by certaine deuout Italian merchants) and with the maſter of the Hoſpitalers, by whom he was fully informed thereof, as of whatſoeuer elſe he required. After much graue conference, it was at length agreed vpon amongſt them, that the Patriarch and the Grand-maſter, ſhould in their owne, and the names of the other oppreſſed Chriſtians, write their letters vnto the Pope and the other Chriſtian Princes, concerning their miſeries; and to craue their aid for the recouerie of thoſe holy places out of the hands of thoſe cruell Infidels: of which letters, the deuout hermit promiſed himſelfe to be the truſtie carrier, and of their petitions the moſt carefull ſoliciter. Whereupon the Patriarch and Grand-maſter
B in the name of the poore oppreſſed Chriſtians, wrote their letters vnto this effect.

The letters of Simon Patriarch of Ieruſalem, and of the Grand maſter of the Hoſpitalers vnto the Pope and other Chriſtian Princes, in the behalfe of the oppreſſed Chriſtians in Ieruſalem.

Wee the citizens of the Holy Citie, and countrymen of Chriſt Ieſus, daily ſuffer thoſe things which Chriſt our King ſuffered but once, in the laſt dayes of his mortalitie. Wee are daily buffeted, ſcourged, and pierced: euery day ſome of vs are brained, beheaded, or crucified. Wee would flie from citie to citie, vnto the remoteſt parts of the earth, and remooue out of the middle of that land, where Chriſt our Sauiour wrought our redemption, to leade a poore exiled and vagrant life; were it not impietie to leaue the land (ſacred with the birth, doctrine, death, reſurrection, and aſcenſion of our Sauiour) without inhabitants and Prieſts: and that there ſhould firſt lacke ſuch as would endure death and martyrdome, than ſuch as would inflict the ſame: and that there ſhould not be which would willingly die
C *for Chriſt, as in battell, ſo long as there were any that would fight againſt them. Theſe things truly wee moſt miſerably ſuffer: yet was there a time when as our anceſtors feared no ſuch thing, either to themſelues or their poſteritie. And now perhaps the Chriſtian kingdomes of the Weſt, liue likewiſe without the leaſt ſuſpicion of feare: but let them be mooued by our example and teſtimonie. The ſtrength of the Turkes is daily increaſed, and ours diminiſhed: The continuall gaining of new kingdomes giueth them courage: They haue already deuoured the whole world, in hope. The forces of the Turkes are fiercer and ſtronger than the forces of the Saraſins, their policies deeper, their attempts more deſperate, their endeuours greater, and their ſucceſſe fortunater. Yet haue the Saraſins attempted both* Romes; *they haue beſieged* Constantinople, *and haue waſted not only the Sea coaſts*

Rome and Conſtantinople, which was alſo called Noua Roma, or new Rome.

of Italy, *but euen the heart of the land alſo. Then why ſhould the kingdomes of the Weſt preſume*
D *themſelues to ſtand in ſafetie and out of all perill, when as the chiefe fortreſſes of the world haue beene ſo endangered? What may the reſt of Chriſtendome promiſe vnto it ſelfe, ſeeing that* Ierusalem *(the ſeat and ſpectacle of the Chriſtian religion) hath beene beſieged, taken, ſacked, raſed, and triumphed vpon? Seeing that of the Chriſtian profeſſion, remaine but the poore and weake reliques, in compariſon of the ancient whole entire body? This land, which is daily beſprinkled with our bloud, yea the bloud it ſelfe crieth out for reuenge. And wee your moſt humble ſuppliants, proſtrate at your feet, call vpon the helpe, aid, mercy, faith, and religion, of you moſt bleſſed Father, of the Kings, Princes, and Potentates; Chriſtians not in name and profeſſion only, but in heart, ſoule and ſpirit. Before the tempeſt thunder, before the lightning fall vpon you, auert from you and your children the ſtorme hanging ouer your heads: defend vs your poore ſuppliants: deliuer your religion from moſt wicked and accurſed ſlauerie.*
E *You ſhall in ſo doing, deſerue immortall fame, and God ſhall requite your ſo great valour in this world with terreſtriall kingdomes, and in the world to come with eternall bliſſe, whoſe ſacred inheritance you ſhall haue defended from the rage of hell.*

With theſe letters, and plentie of other ſecret inſtructions, the deuout hermit returning into Italy, and comming to Rome, deliuered his letters vnto *Vrban* the ſecond of that name, then Pope, with a full diſcourſe of the miſeries of the Chriſtians vnder the Turkiſh thraldome, which he had ſeene at Ierusalem, and other places as he trauelled; requeſting his holy care for the redreſſe thereof: with whom he ſo preuailed, that ſhortly after, he calling a Councell at Claremont in France, among other things, propounded the miſerie of the poore op-

The Councell at Claremont in France.

F preſſed Chriſtians at Ierusalem, as an eſpeciall matter to be conſidered of. And hauing cauſed the aforeſaid letters, directed vnto him and the other Chriſtian Princes, to be openly read in the Councell, whereunto three hundred and ten Biſhops were then out of diuers parts of Chriſtendome aſſembled, with the embaſſadours of all countries, much mooued the whole aſſemblie to compaſſion: at which time alſo the hermit, whoſe flowing eloquence fully counteruailed what wanted in his feature, ſtanding vp in the midſt of the Councell, deliuered his

message in the name of the afflicted Christians, with their heauie groanings and teares: which G
as they could not be in letters expressed, so were they not hardly by the religious hermit (as by
him who hauing but lately seene, both the miserie of the men, and desolation of the places, and
at the heart touched with the griefe thereof) so liuely represented, as that it mooued the whole
assemblie with the like simpathie of heauinesse and griefe. Which the Pope perceiuing, tooke
thereupon occasion to enter into a large discourse concerning that matter, with many effectu-
all reasons perswading the Fathers and Princes there present, of the necessitie of so religious a
warre to be taken in hand, for the deliuerance of their oppressed brethren out of the thraldome
of the Infidels; and now as well with their present decree, as afterwards at their returne home
into their countries, by all meanes to further the same. Which notable perswasion, with the H
heauie complaint of the hermit, and the equitie of the cause, so much mooued the whole coun-
sell and the rest there present, that they all as men inspired with one spirit, declared their con-
sent by their often crying out, *Deus vult, Deus vult*, God willeth it, God willeth it: which words
so then vttered by way of applause, were in the great and most sacred expedition following,
much vsed of the deuout Christians, as the fortunate signall of their cheerefull forwardnesse,
euen in their most dangerous enterprises. Strange it were to tell, and hardly to be beleeued
(but that the ancient histories beare witnesse of the like) how farre in one dayes space the report
of this religious decreed warre, was by flying fame dispersed.

An expedition agreed vpon by the Counsell, for the relieſe of the Christians oppreſſed in the Holy Land.

The Counsell dissolued, and the reuerend Fathers returning euery man home into his owne
countrey; it pleased God by their effectuall perswasions so to worke with the rest of the Chri- I
stian Princes, and people in generall, that in all countries and prouinces in Christendome, were
shortly to be seene men of all sorts in great number, with red crosses on their brests, (the cogni-
sance of that sacred expedition) readie of themselues to spend both life and goods for the de-
fence of the Christian religion, and recouerie of the Holy Land. The number of whom is of
diuers diuersly reported, but of most supposed to haue beene three hundred thousand fighting
men: of whom the chiefe commanders were *Godfrey* Duke of LORRAINE, with his two bre-
thren, *Eustace* and *Baldwin*, all of the honourable house of BVILLON; *Hugh* surnamed the
Great, brother to *Philip* then the French King; *Raymond* and *Robert*, Earles of FLANDERS;
Robert Duke of NORMANDIE, *William* the Conquerours sonne; *Stephan de Valois* Earle of
CHARTIERS; *Ademar* Bishop of PODIE, the Popes Legat; and *Peter* the hermit, not to be K
numbred amongst the least, as chiefe author of this most famous expedition: vnto whom many
other honourable Princes ioyned themselues as partakers of their trauels, though not with like
charge.

The chiefe commanders of the Christians in their expedition into the Holy Land.

The first that set forward in this expedition, was one *Gualter Sensauier*, a noble gentleman,
with a great band of men: not long after whom, followed *Peter* the hermit, with fortie thou-
sand moe: who both, trauelling thorow GERMANIE, HVNGARIE, and BVLGARIA, were
glad oftentimes, especially in the further part of HVNGARIE & BVLGARIA, to open them-
selues a way with the sword; and so with much labour, and no lesse losse, came at length to
CONSTANTINOPLE: where they were not greatly welcome vnto the Emperour *Alexius*
Comnenus, who guiltie vnto himselfe of the vnlawfull meanes whereby he had extorted the em- L
pire from *Nicephorus* his predecessour, had that expedition of the Christians into the East, in
distrust, as purposed against himselfe: vntill that fully resolued to the contrarie, by the hermit
and others, and that a far greater power was comming after, for the inuasion of the Turks and
recouerie of the Holy Land, he was content to relieue them now weary of their long trauell:
and afterward to make roome for them that were to come, shipped them ouer the strait of Bos-
PHORVS into ASIA; who marching forward into BYTHINIA, encamped their armie in the
countrey not farre from the citie of NICE. In the meane time *Godfrey* with his brethren, and
diuers other Princes that had ioyned themselues vnto him, with the Germaines and Loranois,
and the greatest part of the armie, followed the same way that the hermit had taken before him.
At which time also *Hugh* the French Kings brother, with the Legate, the two *Roberts* (the one M
Duke of NORMANDIE, and the other Earle of FLANDERS) and the rest of the French
commanders, passing ouer the mountaines into ITALY, came to ROME, with a wonderfull
great armie: where taking their leaue of the Pope, because they would be lesse troublesome
vnto the cities and countries whereby they were to passe, they diuided their great armie into
three parts; whereof the one part went to BRVNDVSIVM, and the other to BARY, and
the

A the third to HYDRVNTVM, vnto whom alſo *Bohemund*, one of the great Princes of APVLIA, ioyned himſelfe with twelue thouſand good ſouldiers that followed him. From theſe three ports the Chriſtian armie departing, and croſſing the ADRIATIKE, arriued in ſafetie at DIRRACHIVM, and nigh thereabout, vpon the coaſt of DALMATIA: from whence they trauelled by land thorow MACEDONIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, where they met with the Duke *Godfrey*, and the reſt of the armie: whom alſo at the firſt, *Alexius* the Emperour is reported to haue but coldly entertained, as iealous of his owne ſtate; vntill that better perſwaded of their deſignements and good meaning towards him, confirmed by many rich preſents ſent vnto him from theſe ſtrange Princes, he ioyned with them in league: wherein it was agreed, That the
B Emperour during the time of this expedition, ſhould furniſh them with new ſupplies of men, armour, victuals, and whatſoeuer elſe they ſhould want: in regard whereof, the Princes on the other ſide, promiſed to reſtore againe vnto the empire, what prouinces, countries, or cities they ſhould happily gaine out of the hands of the Turks and Saraſins, the citie of IERVSALEM only excepted: which agreement was afterward on the ſuſpicious Emperours part, but ſlenderly performed. Neuertheleſſe this league ſo made, he granted them paſſage, and ſo tranſported them ouer the ſtrait into ASIA; only *Bohemund*, for an old grudge betwixt the Emperour *Alexius* and his father, would not come to CONSTANTINOPLE, but marching with his armie thorow the vpper MISIA and THRACIA, came ſooner than any man had thought vnto the ſtrait of HELLESPONTVS, and ſo paſſed.

Godfrey duke of Buillon and the other Chriſtian princes meet together at Conſtantinople.

C Now had *Gualter*, and the hermit *Peter*, with their armie, lien two moneths in the countrey about NICE, expecting the comming of the reſt of the Chriſtian Princes: for why, they thought it not good, before their comming, to attempt any thing againſt the enemie, whom they knew to lie not farre off very ſtrong. But the common ſouldiers, wearie of ſo long lying, and nought doing, and pinched with ſome wants; and withall diſliking of *Gualter* their chiefe commander, and the hermit *Peter*, of whoſe integritie and holineſſe they had a greater opinion than of his proweſſe and direction; riſe vp in mutinie, and diſplacing *Gualter*, made choiſe of one *Raymund*, a valiant Germaine captaine, for their Generall: by whoſe conduct they tooke EXORGVM, a towne of purpoſe forſaken of the Turks. For they long before vnderſtanding what a tempeſt of warre was growing vpon them out of EVROPE, ſought by all meanes to cut off
D theſe that were already come ouer, as the forerunners of a greater armie following, and therefore had left them this towne, as a bait to traine them out of their trenches. And after that the Chriſtians were thus poſſeſſed of the towne, hauing laid certaine ſtrong ambuſhes, they draue out certaine heards of cattell, the more to allure them: all which, certaine companies of the Chriſtians brought in, without any loſſe, the Turkes ſtill winking thereat. With which bootie the Chriſtians encouraged, went out (three thouſand of them) to take in a little towne not farre off, who were by the Turkes cut off and ſlaine euery mothers ſonne, as they were about to haue diuided the ſpoile: which ouerthrow reported into the towne, diſcouraged euen the chiefe commanders of the armie, ſo that they reſolued no more to trie the fortune of the field, before the comming of their friends. Neuertheleſſe the common ſouldiers, condemning them of
E cowardiſe, choſe them a new Generall, one *Godfrey Burell*, whom they now requeſted not, but enforced to goe out to reuenge the death of their fellowes: which their raſhneſſe not long after turned to their owne deſtruction. For ten thouſand of them going out of EXORGVM, to forrage the countrey, were by the Turkes entrapped, and almoſt all ſlaine, except ſome few which by ſpeedie flight eſcaped. The Turks proſecuting their victorie, laid hard ſiege to them in the towne alſo, vntill they had partly with famine, and partly with the ſword conſumed the moſt part of them. The hermit with the poore remainder of his armie, tooke his refuge to CINITE, a towne not farre off, before abandoned by the Turkes; where with much adoe he defended himſelfe, vntill the comming of Duke *Godfrey*, and the reſt of the Princes.

Cutlu-Muſes the Turke was now dead, hauing left vnto his ſon *Sultan Solyman* many large
F countries & prouinces, altogether gained from the Chriſtians in ASIA, whom he held in great ſubiection & thraldome. This warlike Prince hauing diſcomfited, & almoſt brought to nought the hermits forces, was no leſſe carefull for the withſtanding of the great army following: which now being come into BYTHINIA, and lying before NICOMEDIA, remouing thence, laid ſiege to the citie of NICE, called in ancient time ANTIGONIA of *Antigonus*, the ſon of *Philip* that built it, and afterwards NICEA, of *Nicea* the wife of King *Liſimachus*. In this citie dwelt many

Nice beſieged by the Chriſtians.

deuout Greekes, Christians; but in such thraldome vnto the Turks, as that they could not doe G
any thing for the deliuerie of themselues. This siege endured longer than the Christian Princes had at the first supposed: who although they to the vttermost of their power, forced the citie on three sides, yet was it still notably defended; new supplies still comming from the Turks by the lake of ASCANIVS ioyning vpon the other side of the citie. But after that the Christians, possessed of the lake, began on that side also to lay hardly vnto the citie, the Turkes discouraged, and seeing themselues beset round with their enemies, yeelded vp the citie the fift
1097 of Iuly, in the yeere 1097, after it had beene fiftie daies besieged. But whilest the Christians thus lay at the siege, the Turks assailed that quarter of the campe where the Legat lay; by whom they were notably repulsed, and with great losse enforced to retire vnto the mountaines. In H
this citie, amongst the rest of the Turkes, was taken *Solymans* wife, with two of her children, whom the Princes sent prisoners to CONSTANTINOPLE. This citie so won, was according to the agreement before made, restored vnto *Alexius* the Emperour, whose fleet had in that siege done good seruice, by taking the lake from the Turkes.

The citie of NICE thus won, the Christian Princes remouing thence with their armie, and marching thorow the country, came the fourth day after vnto a riuer which watred many rich pastures: where, as they were about to haue encamped for the commodiousnesse of the place, and refreshing of the armie, suddenly newes was brought into the quarter where *Bohemund* lay, now busie in casting vp his trenches, that the Turks with a great armie were ready euen at hand to charge him. For *Solyman* hauing raised a great power of his owne, and aided by the Sultan of I
PERSIA his kinsman, was now come with an armie of threescore thousand strong, to giue the Christians battell: of whose approch *Bohemund* aduertised, left the fortifying of his trenches, and putting his souldiers in array, set forward to meet him, sending word to the rest of the Princes that lay a far off, to be ready as occasion should require, to relieue him. These two armies conducted by their most resolute chieftaines, meeting together, ioyned a most fierce & terrible battell, where in a short space the Turks lay slaine vpon heaps, in such sort that they serued the Christians in stead of bulwarks. But whilest *Bohemund* thus preuaileth in the battell, certaine of the Turks horsemen wheeling about, brake into *Bohemunds* campe; (not as then altogether fortified, & but slenderly manned) where among the women, & other weake persons there left, they raised a great tumult & outcry, to the great appalling of them that were fighting in the bat- K
tell: which *Bohemund* perceiuing, withdrew himselfe with certaine companies vnto the campe, from whence he with great slaughter repulsed the enemie. But returning againe into the battell, he found there a great alteration: for his souldiers whom before he had left, as it were in possession of a most glorious victorie, were now so hardly laid vnto by the Turkes, as that they were ready to haue turned their backs and fled. Neuertheless by his comming in, the battell was notably restored, and againe made doubtfull: when the enemie perceiuing how much the assaulting of the campe had troubled the Christians in battell, sent out certaine troupes of horsemen againe to assault the same: and had not failed vndoubtedly to haue taken it, being as aforesaid not yet fortified, had not *Hugh* the French Kings brother come in good time to the rescue: who comming in with thirty thousand horsemen, after he had relieued the campe, entring directly L
into the battell, was notably encountred by a squadron of fresh souldiers of the Turks, by them of purpose reserued for such euent. There began a battell more terrible than the first, with most doubtfull victorie. But at the length, the Turkes wearie of the long and cruell fight, and seeing most of their fellowes slaine, began by little and little to giue ground, and so retired into the mountains, which were not far off. In this battell, which continued a great part of the day, were slaine of the Turks fortie thousand, and of the Christians about two thousand. The next morning *Bohemund* with the French Kings brother, came againe into the field, in such order, as if they should presently haue giuen or receiued battell: where after they had staid a great while, and saw no enemie to appeare, they fell to the honest buriall of their dead: which were easily knowne from the Turks, by the red crosses vpon their garments, the cognisance of their sacred M
Solyman flieth. warfare. *Solyman* flying with the remainder of his armie, notably dissembled his losse, giuing it out that he had got the victorie: yet by the way as he went, he burnt vp the countrey villages, and destroied or carried away whatsoeuer else he thought might stand the Christians in any stead, if they should further follow after him, leauing nothing for them but the bare ground.

A cruell battell fought betwixt the Turkes and the Christians.

After this victorie, *Bohemund* and the Christian Princes, without resistance marching through

A through the hot & drie countries of the leſſer Asia, came to Antiochia, a citie of Pisidia, which they tooke with ſmall labour: & ſo marching vnto Iconivm the principall citie of Cilicia, neere vnto the mountaine Tavrvs, were there alſo of the citizens courteouſly receiued, where they ſtaid certaine dayes for the refreſhing of the armie. From thence they ſet forward toward Heraclea, where a great power of the Turks were reported to be aſſembled. But they, together with the garriſon ſouldiers, vpon the approch of the victorious armie of the Chriſtians, forſooke the citie and fled. The citizens being Chriſtians (as they were yet generally in all the prouinces of the leſſer Asia, but in great ſubiection to the Turks) and now rid of their cruel maſters the Turkiſh garriſons, came forth, and meeting the Princes, gladly yeelded themſelues with their citie vnto them, as vnto their deliuerers. Here the Chriſtian Princes fully inſtructed of the great feare & deſperation of the Turks, who now in no place durſt abide their comming; for the more ſpeedie taking in of thoſe countries but lately oppreſſed by the Turks, diuided their armie into two parts, leauing the one part thereof with *Baldwin* and *Tancred* in Cilicia, for the full ſubduing thereof (who in ſhort time tooke the cities of Tarsvs, Edessa, and Manvssa, with all the reſt of the countrey, the Turkes not daring any where to abide their comming:) the other part of the armie in the meane time entring into the leſſer Armenia, tooke the ſame from the Turkes, which the Princes gaue to one *Palmurus* an Armenian, who had in that expedition done them great ſeruice. From thence they tooke their way into Cappadocia, which they alſo ſubdued, driuing out the Turks in euery place, and tooke the cities of C Cesarea and Socor, where they ſtaid a few dayes for the refreſhing of the armie: with like ſucceſſe they paſſed thorow the reſt of the prouinces of the leſſer Asia, of late poſſeſſed by the Turks, ſtill chaſing them out before them, and ſetting at libertie the poore oppreſſed Chriſtians of thoſe countries. Whereof *Solyman* (crauing aid of *Axan* the Perſian Sultan his couſin) grieuouſly complained by his letters to him directed in this ſort. *The famous citie of* Nice, *with the countrey of* Romania, *which we by your aid and power haue gotten from the kingdome of the Greekes, and of your bountie poſſeſſed: the Chriſtians of the kingdome of* France *haue againe taken from vs.* Thus was the late erected kingdome of the Turks in the leſſer Asia, by theſe valiant Chriſtian champions againe brought low, and they glad to retire themſelues farther off into the mountaines and more Eaſterne countries, vntill this heat was ouerpaſt; and that they, taking D the benefit of the troubled ſtate of the Greeke empire (afterwards rent in ſunder by ambition and ciuill diſcord, the ruine of the greateſt monarchies) recouered not onely their former ſtate, but became alſo dreadfull vnto the Greeke Emperours themſelues: vpon whom they daily gained in one corner or other, ſtill maintaining the honour of their eſtate, vntill the riſing of the *Othoman* familie, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie ſhall God willing be declared.

Antioch in Piſidia taken by the Chriſtians.

Heraclea yeelded.

Sultan Solyman his letters vnto the Perſian Sultan Axan.

Theſe victorious Princes then, and to the worlds end famous, not contented to their immortall praiſe, to haue thus driuen the Turks out of the leſſer Asia, and recouered ſo many countries; bound themſelues, as well the Princes as the common ſouldiers, by ſolemne oath, neuer to return again into their countries, vntil they had accompliſhed that ſacred war, with the conqueſt of the Holy citie. So mounting together the high mountaine Tavrvs, and deſcending thence E as into another world, they came to the citie Maresia, which they tooke without reſiſtance, the Turks there in garriſon, being by night before for feare fled: where the Chriſtians for the refreſhing of themſelues, certaine dayes ſtaid. In the meane time *Robert* Earle of Flanders with a thouſand men at armes, was ſent out to giue ſummons vnto a citie called Artasia, about fifteene miles diſtant from Antioch: when as the citizens beholding the enſignes of the Chriſtians, ſuddenly tooke vp armes againſt the Turks there in garriſon, which had of long holden them in ſubiection, and preuailing vpon them, ſlew them euery mothers ſonne: whoſe heads they preſented vnto the Earle, and receiued him into their citie. The Turks to reuenge the death of their friends, and to recouer againe the citie before the comming of the reſt of the armie, ſent out about ten thouſand men out of Antioch; for thither was aſſembled a great power of F them to haue hindred the farther proceedings of the Chriſtians: and being come neere to Artasia, they ſent before certaine ſtragling companies, of purpoſe to draw the new come Chriſtians out of the citie, lying in the mean time in ambuſh with the reſt, of purpoſe to entrap them. With theſe ſtragling companies, the Flemings ſallying out luſtily, encountred, & eaſily put thē to flight; the Turks indeed flying of purpoſe to bring them within the danger of the other, lying in ambuſh. After whom the Flemings eagerly following, were before they were aware en-

The Chriſtians bind themſelues by oath, neuer to returne vntill they had wonne the Holy citie.

closed round with their enemies, and there had vndoubtedly perished, had not the citizens (be- G
ing Christians) presently sallied out, and right worthily relieued them.

Shortly after, the Christian Princes marching forward with their armie, were encountred by the Turke at the riuer ORONTES, who had there thought to haue staid their farther passage: with whom *Robert* Duke of NORMANDIE, who had the leading of the vantgard, had a hard conflict, vntill that the Turkes, discouraged with the sight of the armie still comming on, forsooke the bridge, and betooke themselues to flight. So the Christians passing the riuer, came and encamped with their armie before the famous citie of ANTIOCH, the one and twentieth day of October, in the yeere 1097: the gouernour whereof vnder the Persian Sultan, was one *Cassianus*, (of some also honoured with the name of a King) who at the comming of the Christi- H
ans, had with him in the citie seuen thousand horsemen, and twentie thousand foot of the Turkes, with great store of victuals, and all manner of other prouisions necessarie for the defence thereof. This citie, called in ancient time EPIDAPHANE, or EPIPHANE, and of the Hebrewes, REBLATHA, sometime the seat of the Syrian Kings, and afterwards the Metropoliticall citie of SYRIA, hauing vnder it an hundred and fiftie Bishops (famous for many things, and amongst others, for that it was the seat of the blessed Apostle *S. Peter*, and first place whereas the professours of the Christian religion tooke the name of Christians) is situate vpon the riuer ORONTES, about twelue miles from the sea, and was then strongly fortified both by Nature and Art, being compassed about with a double wall; the vttermost whereof was of hard stone, and the other of bricke, with 460 towers in the same, and an inpregnable castle at the East I
end thereof, whereunto was ioyning a deepe lake, comming out of the great riuer which watred the South side of the citie. Round about this strong citie (one of the most assured refuges of the Turkes) although it were in circuit great, lay the Christian Princes encamped, except on that side which being defended with the high broken mountaines, is not there to be besieged. Vpon whom the Turks out of the citie, during the time of the siege, made many a fierce and desperate sallie, being still by the Christians most valiantly repulsed: especially at the bridge which the Christians had made of boats for their more commodious passage too and fro ouer the riuer. In this sort was the siege continued, vntill the beginning of Februarie, with many a bloudie skirmish. At which time such abundance of raine fell, as that hardly could a man finde any place to lie drie in: and the scarcitie of victuall grew so great in the campe, that many (horrible it is to K
say) to asswage their hunger, were glad to eat the dead bodies of their late slaine enemies. In these extremities, many died of hunger & cold; yea their horses also perished for want of meat, so that in the whole campe were scarcely left two thousand horses fit for seruice, the rest being either all dead, or brought so low, as that they were altogether vnseruiceable. These miseries daily increasing, diuers men of great account, whom no terrour of the enemie could haue dismaid, began secretly to withdraw themselues out of the campe, with purpose to haue stolne home; among whom were *Peter* the hermit, author of this warre, and *Tancred* the nephew of *Bohemund*, who taken by the way, and brought backe with the rest as fugitiues, were sharply reproued by *Hugh* the French Kings brother, as cowards, and traitors to their brethren & fellow souldiers, and so enforced to take a new oath for their fidelitie and perseuerance. *Bohemund* in L
the meane time going to ARETHVSA, a towne not far off, by good fortune cut off a great part of the Turks there in garrison: who after their vsuall manner sallying out to haue cut off the forrages of the Christians, were now themselues caught tardie: whereby the countrey for a time was more open for the distressed Christian souldiers to seeke abroad for reliefe. But this libertie so lately gained, lasted not long, when newes was brought vnto the campe, that the Turks in great number out of the prouinces about ALEPPO and DAMASCO, were comming to the reliefe of their besieged friends in ANTIOCH. Neuertheless the Christians trusting vnto their owne strength, and the strength of the place wherein they were encamped, lay still, and at their comming so encountred them, that they slew 2000 of them, and put the rest to flight: In which conflict the Christians got great store of prouision and victuals, which the Turkes had thought to M
haue put into the citie. The heads of the slaine Turkes the Christians set vpon stakes before the citie, to the more terrour of the defendants. This ouerthrow of the Turkes, wherein *Cassianus* had lost his eldest sonne, with others of his best captaines, so daunted the besieged, that they requested a truce for a time of the Christian Princes: which granted, they of the citie came oftentimes into the campe, and they of the campe likewise into the citie: *Cassianus* still expecting reliefe

Antioch in Syria besieged by the Christians.

The description of the famous citie of Antioch.

A liefe from the Perſian Sultan. Whileſt the Chriſtian Princes were thus buſie in ASIA, the Venetians with a great fleet of two hundred gallies ſcowring the ſeas, vnder the condct of *Henrie Contarenus* the Biſhop, and of *Vitalis* the Dukes ſonne, meeting with the gallies of *Piſa* at the RHODES, and falling out with them, had with them a great fight, wherein the Venetians hauing the vpper hand, tooke eighteene of their gallies, & in them fiue thouſand ſouldiers: whom they ſeeing to be marked with the red croſſe, the cogniſance of the ſacred warre, they preſently ſet at libertie, together with the gallies, detaining only thirtie of the better ſort as hoſtages. After that, the Venetians ſailing into IONIA, tooke the citie of SMYRNA, and ſpoiled all along the coaſts of LYCIA, PAMPHILIA, and CILICIA, before for feare abandoned by the Turkes.

B The truce before taken betweene the Turks and the Chriſtians at the ſiege of ANTIOCH, being in ſhort time after broken by the death of one *Vollo* a Frenchman, ſlaine by the Turkes: the warre was againe begun, and the citie more hardly laid vnto than before. At which time the gouernor, who in the time of this long ſiege, which had now continued nine months, had loſt moſt part of his beſt ſouldiers, was glad for the defence of ſo great a citie, to vſe the ſeruice of diuers Chriſtians, then dwelling in the citie. Amongſt whom was one *Pirrhus*, a citizen of great reputation, vnto whom he had cõmitted the guarding of a tower, called the two Siſters, but afterward *S. Georges* tower. This *Pirrhus* had ſecret intelligence with *Bohemund* Prince of TARENTVM, with whom he agreed to giue him there entrance into the citie, vpon condition, that he ſhould of the other Chriſtian Princes procure the gouernment of the citie vnto himſelfe; and that he, with

Antioch betraied vnto the Chriſtians.

C the reſt of the Chriſtian citizens in the citie, might be at his hands well vſed: which thing being eaſily obtained, and all things agreed vpon, *Bohemund* with his ſouldiers were by night by *Pyrrhus* let into the citie, who made way for the reſt of the armie to enter. The citie thus taken, many of the Turks fled into the caſtle, the reſt were put vnto the ſword, man, woman, and childe; and amongſt them alſo many of the Chriſtians, the furious ſouldiers taking of them no knowledge. Great wealth was there found, but ſmall ſtore of victuals. *Caſſianus* the late gouernour flying out of the citie to ſaue himſelfe, in wandring thorow the mountaines, fell into the hands of the Chriſtian Armenians, who lately thruſt out of IERVSALEM, were fled thither for refuge, by whom he was there ſlaine. In the citie were ſlaine about ten thouſand perſons. Thus was the famous citie of ANTIOCH, which the Turks had long before by famine taken from the

Caſſianus gouernour of Antioch in flying ſlaine.

D Chriſtians, againe recouered the third day of Iune, in the yeere of our Lord God 1098. The poore oppreſſed Chriſtians in IERVSALEM hearing of this ſo notable a victorie, gaue ſecret thanks vnto God therefore, and began to lift vp their heads in hope that their deliuerie was now at hand. Of this victorie, the Princes of the armie by ſpeedie meſſengers and letters certified their friends in all countries, ſo that in ſhort time the fame thereof had filled a great part of the world. Amongſt others, *Bohemund* Prince of TARENTVM, vnto whom the citie was deliuered, ſent the ioyfull newes thereof vnto *Roger* his brother Prince of APVLIA: whoſe letters, as the moſt certain witneſſes of the hiſtorie before reported, I thought it not amiſſe here to ſet downe.

1098

The letters of Bohemund Prince of Tarentum, to his brother Roger Prince of Apulia, concerning the winning of Antioch.

E *I ſuppoſe you to haue vnderſtood by the letters of your ſonne* Tancred, *both of the great feare of ſome of vs, and the battels which wee haue of late with our great glorie fought. But concerning the truce, and the proceeding of the whole action, I had rather you ſhould be certified by my letters, than the letters of others. King* Caſſianus *had required a time of truce: during which, our ſouldiers had free recourſe into the citie without danger, vntill that by the death of* Vollo *a Frenchman, ſlaine by the enemie, the truce was broken. But whilſt it yet ſeemed an hard matter to winne the citie, one* Pyrrhus *a citizen of* ANTIOCH, *of great authoritie and much deuoted vnto mee, had conference with mee concerning the yeelding vp of the citie; yet vpon condition, That the gouernment thereof ſhould be committed to me, in whom he had repoſed an eſpeciall truſt. I conferred of the whole matter with the Princes and great commanders of the armie, and eaſily obtained that the gouernment of the citie was by their generall conſent allotted vnto me. So our armie entring by a gate opened by* Pyrrhus, *tooke the*

F *citie. Within a few dayes after, the towne* ARETVM *was by vs aſſaulted, but not without ſome loſſe and danger to our perſon, by reaſon of a wound I there receiued. I aſſure you much of the valour of your ſonne* Tancred, *of whom I and the whole armie make ſuch account and reckoning, as is to be made of a moſt valiant and reſolute generall. Farewell. From* ANTIOCH.

Whilſt the Chriſtians thus lay at the ſiege of ANTIOCH, *Corbanas* (the Perſian Sultan his lieutenant)

Edessa in vaine besieged by the Turks.

lieutenant) with a great armie besieged EDESSA, with purpose after the taking thereof, to haue C
relieued the citie of ANTIOCH. But this citie being notably defended by *Baldwin* left there of
purpose with a strong garrison for the defence thereof; the Turke fearing in the meane time to
lose ANTIOCH, the safest refuge of the Turks in all those parts, rise with his armie and set for-
ward against the Christians: where by the way it was his fortune to meet with *Sansadolus*, *Cas-*
sianus his sonne, but lately fled from ANTIOCH, by whom he vnderstood of the losse of the
citie, and by what meanes the same was most like to be againe recouered: vpon which hope,
Corbanas with his mightie armie kept on his way, with a full resolution to set all vpon the for-
tune of a battell. Whose comming much troubled the Christians; for that although they were
possessed of the citie, yet was the castle still holden by the Turks. Neuertheless leauing the Earle H
of THOLOVS in the citie, with a competent power for the keeping in of them in the castle,
they tooke the field with the whole strength of the armie, and so in order of battell expected the
comming of their enemies: who couragiously comming on, as men before resolued to fight,
ioyned with them a most terrible and bloudie battell. Neither were they in the citie in the
meane time idle; for that the Turks in the castle hauing receiued in vnto them certaine supplies
Corbanas the Sultans lieutenant, with a great armie commeth to recouer againe the citie of Antioch.
from *Corbanas*, sallied out vpon them that were left for the safegard of the citie, and had with
them a cruell conflict. Thus both within the citie and without was to be seene a most dreadfull
fight of resolute men, with great slaughter on both sides: yet after long fight and much effusion
of bloud, the fortune of the Christians preuailing, the Turks began to giue ground, and after-
wards betooke themselues to plaine flight, whom the Christians hardly pursuing, made of them I
a wonderfull slaughter. In this battell were slaine of the Turks aboue an hundred thousand,
and of the Christians about foure thousand two hundred. There was also taken a great prey:
for besides horses and other beasts for burden, were taken also fiue thousand camels with their
lading. The next day, being the 28 of Iune, the castle was by the Turks (now despairing of re-
liefe) yeelded vp vnto the Christians.

ANTIOCH thus taken, *Hugh* the French Kings brother, surnamed the Great, was sent from
the rest of the Princes to CONSTANTINOPLE, to haue deliuered the citie vnto *Alexius* the
Emperour, according to the agreement before made. But he, guiltie in conscience of his owne
foule dealing with them, vnto whom he had sent no reliefe at all during the long and hard siege
of ANTIOCH; neither performed any thing of that he had further promised, and therefore K
knowing himselfe hated of them, had in distrust so great an offer of the Princes, so euill deser-
Bohemund chosen Prince of Antioch.
ued, and therefore refused to accept thereof. Whereupon *Bohemund* by the generall consent of
the whole armie was chosen Prince, or (as some call him) King of ANTIOCH.

The plague in the Christian armie.
After this long siege and want of victuals, ensued a great plague in the armie of the Christi-
ans, the Autumne following, whereof it is reported fiftie thousand men to haue died, and
amongst them many of great account. But the mortalitie ceasing, the Christians, in Nouember
following, by force tooke RVGIA, and ALBARIA, two cities, about two dayes iourney from
Discord arising vpon emulation betwixt Bohemund and Raimund.
ANTIOCH: where dissention arising betwixt *Bohemund* & *Raimund*, who of all others only en-
uied at his preferment vnto the principalitie of ANTIOCH: *Bohemund* for the common causes
sake, gaue way vnto his aduersarie, & retired with his souldiers backe againe to ANTIOCH; after L
whom followed the Duke *Godfrey*, and the Earle of FLANDERS with their regiments. The rest
of the Princes wintred some at RVGIA, some at ALBARIA, from whence *Raimund* made sun-
drie light expeditions further into the enemies country: But the spring approching, the Christi-
an Princes with all their power tooke the field againe. *Bohemund* with them that remained with
him, departing from ANTIOCH, besieged TORTOSA. *Raimund* in the meane time with the
rest, besieging the citie of TRIPOLIS: who become much more insolent than before, by rea-
son of some fortunate roads he had made vpon the enemies the last winter, ceased not still to ma-
ligne *Bohemund* and his proceedings: matter enough to haue diuided the whole power of the
Christians, & to haue turned their weapons vpō themselues: which *Bohemund* well considering,
rise with his armie; and because he would not with his presence trouble the proceeding of the M
religious warre, retired himselfe to ANTIOCH. After whose departure, *Godfrey* and the Earle of
FLANDERS, tooke GABELLA, a citie about twelue miles from LAODICIA, & from thence
returned againe to the siege of TORTOSA, whither *Raimund* came also with his armie, hauing
before driuen the gouernour of TRIPOLIS to such composition as pleased himselfe, and to
furnish him with such things as he wanted. Thus was TORTOSA hardly on three sides besieged

by

A by the Christians, but so notably defended by the Turkes, that after three moneths hard siege, the Christians were glad to depart thence: and marching alongst the sea side, spoiled the countrey about SIDON. But forasmuch as that citie was not easily to be won, they left it, and encamped before PTOLEMAIS, which they also passed by: the gouernor thereof sending them out victuals, with such other things as they wanted; and vpon summons giuen, promising to yeeld the citie after they had once won the citie of IERVSALEM. From thence they came to CESARIA in PALESTINE, where they solemnly kept the feast of Whitsontide, and so to RAMA, which they found for feare forsaken of the Infidels. Marching from RAMA, and drawing neere to IERVSALEM, they in the vantgard of the armie, vpon the first descrying of
B the Holy citie, gaue for ioy diuers great shouts and outcries, which with the like applause of the whole armie was so doubled and redoubled, as if therewith they would haue rent the very mountaines, and pierced the higheſt heauens. There might a man haue seene the deuout passions of these most worthy and zealous Christians, vttered in right diuers manners: Some, with their eies and hands cast vp towards heauen, called aloud vpon the name and helpe of Christ Iesus; some, prostrate vpon their faces, kissed the ground, as that whereon the Redeemer of the world sometime walked; others, ioyfully saluted those holy places which they had heard so much of, and then first beheld: In briefe, euery man in some sort expressed the ioy he had conceiued of the sight of the Holy citie, as the end of their long trauell.

The exceeding ioy of the Christians vpon the first descrying of the Holy citie.

This most ancient and famous citie, so much renowned in holy writ, is situate in an hillie
C countrey; not watred with any riuer or fresh springs, as other famous cities for most part be; neither yet was it well seated for wood, or pasture ground: But what wanted in these, and such other benefits of nature, was by the extraordinary blessings of the most higheſt so supplied, as that the Iewes there dwelling, so long as they kept the ordinances of the Lord, were of all other people in the world iustly accounted the most happie and fortunate. Yet in those so blessed times, was this citie for the sinne of the people oftentimes deliuered into the enemies hand, and the glorie thereof defaced; as well appeareth by the whole course of the historie of holy Scripture, as also by the ancient and approoued histories as well of the Iewes themselues, as others. Neuertheleſſe, it still rise againe (though not in like glory as before in the time of King *Dauid*, *Salomon*, & the other next succeeding Kings) and so was still repeopled by the Iewes, vntill that
D at last according to the foretelling of our Sauiour Christ, it was with a great and of all others most lamentable destruction, vtterly rased and destroied by the Romans, vnder the leading of *Vespatian* the Emperour, and his noble sonne *Titus*, fortie yeeres after our Sauiour his pretious death and passion. Sithence which time, it was neuer vntill this day againe repaired, or yet well inhabited, by the Iewes; but lying buried in the ruines of it selfe, all the raigne of *Domitian*, *Nerua*, and *Traian*, vntill the time of the great Emperour *Aelius Adrianus*, it was againe by him reedified about the yeere 136, and after the name of him called ÆLIA; who together with the name changed also in some part the ancient situation of the citie. For whereas before it was seated vpon the steepe rising of an hill, in such sort that towards the East and the South it ouerlooked the whole ground, hauing only the Temple and the Castle called ANTONIA, in the higheſt
E part of the citie: *Adrian* translated the whole citie vnto the very top of the hill, so that the place where our blessed Sauiour suffered his most bitter passion, with the Sepulchre wherein he was also laid, and from whence he in glorie rise againe, before without the citie, were then enclosed within the walles thereof, as they are at this day to be seene. Yet for all that the Emperour being dead, in processe of time this new built citie recouered againe the ancient name of IERVSALEM, whereby it hath euer since, and is at this day yet knowne. This citie so reedified, the Emperour first gaue vnto the Iewes, whom he afterwards againe thrust out for their rebellion, and gaue it to the Christians to inhabit: ouer whom, one *Marke*, first Bishop of the Gentiles there, had the charge. But forasmuch as the Romane Emperours were at that time altogether Idolaters and persecutors of the poore Christians, the Church also at IERVSALEM, with others endured
F sundrie and many grieuous persecutions, vnder the Emperours *Antoninus*, *Commodus*, *Seuerus*, *Maximinus*, *Valerianus*, *Aurelianus*, *Diocleſianus*, and *Maxentius*, vntill that at length *Conſtantine* the Great conuerted vnto the faith of Christ, about the yeere of Grace 320, suppressing the Pagan Idolatry, gaue general peace vnto the afflicted Church: wherby the Christian Church at IERVSALEM, for the space of three hundred yeeres after, happily flouriſhed vnder the Greeke Emperors, vntill the time of the Emperor *Phocas*; who hauing most cruelly slaine the good Empe-

Ieruſalem reedified by the great Emperour Aelius Adrianus.

A briefe discourse of the state & fortune of the Holy citie of Ieruſalem, from the destruction thereof, vnder Veſpatianus the Emperor and Titus his ſonne, vntill it was now againe recouered out of the hands of the Infidels by Godfrey of Buillon and the other Christian Princes of the Weſt.

rour

rour *Maurice* with his children, and ſo poſſeſſed himſelfe of the empire, gaue occaſion thereby G
vnto *Choſroe* the Perſian King, in reuenge of the death of *Maurice* his father in law, with all his
power to inuade SYRIA: who as a tempeſt bearing downe all before him, tooke alſo by force
the citie of IERVSALEM, hauing that yeere, which was about the yeere ſix hundred and ten,
ſlain almoſt an hundred thouſand Chriſtians. But *Phocas* the vſurper being by them of his guard
moſt cruelly ſlaine, and *Heraclius* ſucceeding in his ſtead, *Choſroe* was by him againe driuen out
of SYRIA, and the Holy citie againe recouered, about the yeere 624. In theſe great wars againſt
the Perſians, *Heraclius* had vſed the helpe of the Arabians, called Scenite, a warlike people of
ARABIA DESERTA, altogether giuen to the ſpoile: who, the wars now ended, expecting to
haue receiued their pay, were contrary to their expectation, and without all reaſon reiected by H
them that ſhould haue paid them, with very foule and contumelious words; as, that there was
not mony enough to pay the Chriſtian ſouldiers of the Latines & the Greekes, much leſſe thoſe
vile dogs (whom they ſo called, for that they had but a little before receiued the damnable do-
ctrine of the falſe prophet *Mahomet*, the great ſeducer of the world, who euen in that time flou-
riſhed.) Vpon which diſcontentment they at their returne reuolted from the empire, and ioined
themſelues vnto their great prophet, and ſo afterwards vnto the Caliphs his ſucceſſors, exten-
ding his doctrine, together with his ſoueraigntie, to the vttermoſt of their power: and that with
ſo good ſucceſſe, that in ſhort time they had ouerrun all ÆGYPT, SYRIA, the land of pro-
miſe, and taken the Holy citie. With theſe (the diſciples of *Mahomet* and his ſucceſſors, the Sa-
raſins, for ſo now they would be called) the Greeke Emperours enſuing, had for certain yeeres I
diuers conflicts, with diuers fortune, for the poſſeſſion of SYRIA. But at length wearied out,
and by them ouercome, they left the aforeſaid countries wholly vnto their deuotion. Hereby
it came to paſſe, that the Saraſins for the ſpace of 370 yeeres following held thoſe countries,
with many others, *in* great ſubiection, oppreſſing ſtill the poore Chriſtians in IERVSALEM
with moſt grieuous tributes and exactions: vnto whom they yet left a third part of the citie for
them to dwell in, with the Temple of the Sepulchre of our Sauiour, and mount SION; not for
any deuotion, either vnto them, or thoſe places, but for that it yeelded them a great profit by the
recourſe of deuout Chriſtians trauelling thither: reſeruing in the meane time vnto themſelues,
the other two parts of the citie, with the Temple of *Salomon*, before reedified by the Chriſtians.
Now whileſt the Saraſins thus triumph it in the Eaſt, and not in the Eaſt onely, but ouer a great K
part of the Weſt alſo, contenting themſelues with ſuch tributes as they had impoſed vpon the
ſubdued nations and countries: vp ſtart the Turks, a vagrant, fierce, and cruell people; who firſt
breaking into ASIA (as is before declared) and by rare fortune aſpiring vnto the kingdome of
PERSIA, ſubdued the countries of MESOPOTAMIA, SYRIA, with the greateſt part of the
leſſer ASIA, and IVDEA, together with the Holy citie: who both there and in all other places
held the poore oppreſſed Chriſtians in ſuch ſubiection and thraldome, as that the former go-
uernment of the Saraſins ſeemed in compariſon of this to haue beene but light and eaſie. Nei-
ther was there any end or releaſe of theſe ſo great miſeries to haue beene expected, had not God
in mercy by the weake meanes of a poore hermit, ſtirred vp theſe moſt worthy Princes of the
Weſt to take vp armes in their defence, who hauing with their victorious armies recouered the L
leſſer ASIA, with a great part of SYRIA, were now come vnto this Holy citie.

Ieruſalem beſieged by the Chriſtians.

The gouernour of IERVSALEM vnderſtanding by his eſpials, of the proceedings of the
Chriſtians, had before their approch, got into the citie a very ſtrong garriſon of right valiant
ſouldiers, with good ſtore of all things neceſſarie for the holding out of a long ſiege. The Chri-
ſtians with their armie approching the citie, encamped before it on the North; for that towards
the Eaſt & the South, it was not well to be beſieged, by reaſon of the broken rocks and moun-
taines. Next vnto the citie lay *Godfrey* the Duke, with the Germans and Loranois: neere vnto
him lay the Earle of FLANDERS, and *Robert* the Norman: before the Weſt gate lay *Tancred*,
and the Earle of THOLOVS: *Bohemund* and *Baldwin* were both abſent, the one at ANTIOCH,
the other at EDESSA. The Chriſtians thus ſtrongly encamped, the fift day after gaue vnto the M
citie a fierce aſſault, with ſuch cheerfulneſſe, as that it was verily ſuppoſed, it might haue beene
euen then won, had they beene ſufficiently furniſhed with ſcaling ladders: for want whereof,
they were glad to giue ouer the aſſault, and retire. But within a few daies after, hauing ſupplied
that defect, & prouided all things neceſſarie, they came on againe afreſh, and with all their po-
wer gaue vnto the citie a moſt terrible aſſault, wherein was on both ſides ſeene great valour, po-

licie,

A licie, and cunning, with much ſlaughter, vntill that at length the Chriſtians wearie of the long fight, and in that hot countrey, and moſt feruent time of the yeere, fainting for lacke of water, were glad againe to forſake the aſſault, and to retire into their trenches: only the well of *Siloe* yeelded them water, and that not ſufficient for the whole campe; the reſt of the wels, which were but few, being before by the enemie either filled vp or elſe poiſoned.

Whileſt the Chriſtians thus lay at the ſiege of IERVSALEM, a fleet of the Genowaies arriued at IOPPA; at which time alſo a great fleet of the Ægyptian Sultans lay at ASCALON, to haue brought reliefe to the beſieged Turks in IERVSALEM, wherof the Genowaies vnderſtanding, and knowing themſelues too weake to encounter them at ſea, tooke all ſuch things out of their B ſhips as they thought good, and ſo ſinking them, marched by land vnto the campe. There was amongſt theſe Genowaies diuers enginers, men (after the manner of that time) cunning in making of all manner of engines fit for the beſieging of cities: by whoſe deuice, a great mouing tower was framed of timber and thicke plancks, couered ouer with raw hides, to ſaue the ſame from fire: out of which the Chriſtians might in ſafetie greatly annoy the defendants. This tower being by night brought cloſe vnto the wall, ſerued the Chriſtians in ſtead of a moſt ſure fortreſſe in the aſſault the next day: where whilſt they ſtriue with like valour & doubtfull victorie on both ſides, from morning vntill midday, by chance the winde fauouring the Chriſtians, carried the flame of the fire into the face of the Turks, wherewith they had thought to haue burnt the tower, with ſuch violence, that the Chriſtians taking the benefit thereof, and holpen by the tower, C gained the top of the wall: which was firſt footed by the Duke *Godfrey*, and his brother *Euſtace*, with their followers, & the enſignes of the Duke there firſt ſet vp, to the great encouraging of the Chriſtians; who now preſſing in on euery ſide, like a violent riuer that had broken ouer the banks, bare downe all before them. All were ſlaine that came to hand, men, women, & children, without reſpect of age, ſex, or condition: the ſlaughter was great, and the ſight lamentable, all the ſtreets were filled with bloud, and the bodies of the dead, death triumphing in euery place.

The Genowaies come to the ſiege.

Yet in this confuſion, a wonderfull number of the better ſort of the Turks, retiring vnto *Salomons* Temple, there to doe their laſt deuoire, made there a great and terrible fight, armed with deſpaire to endure any thing; and the victorious Chriſtians no leſſe diſdaining, after the winning of the citie, to finde there ſo great reſiſtance. In this deſperate conflict, fought with won- D derfull obſtinacie of minde, many fell on both ſides: but the Chriſtians came on ſo fiercely, with deſire of bloud, that breaking into the Temple, the foremoſt of them were by the preſſe of them that followed after, violently thruſt vpon the weapons of their enemies, and ſo miſerably ſlaine. Neither did the Turks thus oppreſſed, giue it ouer, but as men reſolued to die, deſperately fought it out with inuincible courage, not at the gates of the Temple only, but euen in the middeſt thereof alſo, where was to be ſeene great heaps, both of the victors and the vanquiſhed, ſlaine indifferently together. All the pauement of the Temple ſwam with bloud, in ſuch ſort, that a man could not ſet his foot, but either vpon ſome dead man, or ouer the ſhooes in bloud. Yet for all that, the obſtinate enemie ſtill held the vaults and top of the Temple, when as the darkneſſe of the night came ſo faſt on, that the Chriſtians were glad to make an end of the E ſlaughter, and to ſound a retrait. The next day (for that proclamation was made, for mercy to be ſhewed vnto all ſuch as ſhould lay downe their weapons) the Turkes that yet held the vpper part of the Temple, came downe and yeelded themſelues. Thus was the famous citie of IERVSALEM with great bloudſhed, but farre greater honour, recouered by theſe worthy Chriſtians, in the yeere 1099, after it had beene in the hands of the Infidels aboue foure hundred yeeres. 1099

A moſt cruell and bloudie fight betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turks, euen in the Temple of Ieruſalem.

The next day after, hauing buried the dead and cleanſed the citie, they gaue thankes to God with publike praiers, and great reioycing. The poore Chriſtians before oppreſſed, now ouercome with vnexpected ioy, welcomed their victorious brethren with great ioy and praiſe; and the ſouldiers embracing one another, ſparing to ſpeake of themſelues, freely commended each others valor. Eight daies after, the princes of the army meeting together, began to conſult about F the choice of their King: amongſt whom was no ſuch difference, as might well ſhew which was to be preferred before the others. And although euery one of them for proweſſe and deſert, ſeemed worthy of ſo great an honour; yet by the generall conſent of all, it was giuen to *Robert* Duke of NORMANDIE: who about the ſame time hearing of the death of the Conquerour his father, and more in loue with his fathers new gotten kingdome in ENGLAND, in hope thereof, refuſed the kingdome of IERVSALEM, then offered vnto him: which at his returne he found

found poſſeſſed by *William Rufus* his younger brother, and ſo in hope of a better refuſing the worſe, vpon the matter loſt both. G

Godfrey Duke of Buillon by the generall conſent of the Chriſtian armie choſen firſt king of Ieruſalem.

After whoſe departure, *Godfrey* of BVILLON Duke of LORAINE (whoſe enſigne was firſt diſplaid vpon the wals) was by the generall conſent both of the Princes and the armie, ſaluted King. He was a great ſouldier, and endued with many heroicall vertues, brought vp in the court of the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, and by him much emploied. At the time of his inauguration, hee refuſed to be crowned with a crowne of gold: ſaying, That it became not a Chriſtian man, there to weare a crowne of gold, where Chriſt the Sonne of God had for the ſaluation of mankinde, ſometime worne a crowne of thorne. Of the greateſt part of theſe proceedings of the Chriſtians, from the time of their departure from ANTIOCH vntill the winning of the Holy Citie, *Godfrey* by letters briefly certified *Bohemund*, as followeth. H

Godfrey *of Buillon to* Bohemund *King of Antioch, greeting.*

After long trauell, hauing firſt taken certaine townes, wee came to IERVSALEM: *which citie is enuironed with high hils, without riuers or fountaines, excepting onely that of* Salomons, *and that a very little one. In it are many ceſternes, wherein water is kept, both in the citie and the countrey thereabout. On the Eaſt are the Arabians, the Moabits, and Ammonits: on the South, the Idumeans, Ægyptians, and Philiſtians: Weſtward alongſt the ſea coaſt lie the cities of* PTOLEMAIS, TYRVS, I *and* TRIPOLIS: *and Northward,* TIBERIAS, CESAREA, PHILIPPI, *with the countrey* DECAPOLIS *and* DAMASCO. *In the aſſault of the citie, I firſt gained that part of the wall that fell to my lot to aſſaile, and commanded* Baldwin *to enter the citie: who hauing ſlaine certaine companies of the enemies, broke open one of the gates for the Chriſtians to enter.* Raymond *had the citie of* Dauid, *with much rich ſpoile, yeelded vnto him. But when wee came vnto the Temple of* Salomon, *there wee had a great conflict, with ſo great ſlaughter of the enemie, that our men ſtood in bloud aboue the ancles: the night approching, wee could not take the vpper part of the Temple, which the next day was yeelded, the Turkes pitifully crying out for mercie: and ſo the citie of* IERVSALEM *was by vs taken, the fifteenth of Iuly, in the yeere of our redemption* 1099, *39 dayes after the beginning of the ſiege, 409 yeeres after it fell into the hands of the Saraſins in the time of* Heraclius *the Emperour. Beſides this, the Princes with one conſent ſaluted mee (againſt my will) King of* IERVSALEM: *who although I feare to take vpon mee ſo great a kingdome, yet I will doe my deuoire, that they ſhall eaſily know me for a Chriſtian King, and well deſeruing of the vniuerſall Faith. But loue you mee as you doe. And ſo farewell. From* IERVSALEM. K

Whileſt theſe things were in doing at IERVSALEM, ſuch a multitude of the Turkes, and Saraſins their confederates (now in their common calamitie all as one) were aſſembled at ASCALON (a citie about fiue and twentie miles from IERVSALEM) to reuenge the iniuries they had before receiued, as had not before met together in all the time of this ſacred warre. Againſt whom, *Godfrey* (the late Duke, and now King) aſſembled the whole forces of the Chriſtians in L thoſe countries, and leauing a ſtrong garriſon in the new won citie, ſet forward: and meeting with them, ioined a moſt dreadfull and cruell battell, wherein (as moſt report) were ſlaine of the Infidels an hundred thouſand men, and the reſt put to flight. The ſpoile there taken, farre exceeded all that the Chriſtians had before taken in this long expedition. *Godfrey* after ſo great a victorie, returning to IERVSALEM, gaue vnto God moſt humble thankes. The reſt of the Princes returned either to their charge, as did *Bohemund* to ANTIOCH, *Baldwin* to EDESSA, *Tancred* into GALLILEY, whereof he was created Prince: or elſe hauing now performed the vttermoſt of their vowes, returned with honour into their owne countries. This was of all others the moſt honourable expedition that euer the Chriſtians tooke in hand againſt the Infidels, and with the greateſt reſolution performed, for the moſt part, by ſuch voluntary men, as moued with M a deuout zeale, to their immortal praiſe, ſpared neither life nor liuing in defence of the Chriſtian faith and religion; all men worthy eternall fame and memorie. Not long after enſued a great peſtilence (the ready attendant of long war & want) whereof infinite numbers of people died, and among the reſt *Godfrey*, the firſt Chriſtian King of IERVSALEM, neuer to be ſufficiently commended: who with the generall lamentation of all good Chriſtians, was honourably buried

An hundred thouſand Turks and Saraſins ſlaine.

Godfrey of Buillon firſt Chriſtian King of Ieruſalem, dieth of the plague.

A ried in the church of the ſepulchre of our Sauiour on the mount CALVARIE, where our Sauiour ſuffered his paſſion: in which the Chriſtian kings ſucceeding him, were alſo afterwards buried. He departed this life the eighteenth of Iuly, in the yeere of our Lord 1100, when he had yet ſcarce raigned a full yeere. Whoſe tombe is yet at this day there to be ſeene, with an honourable inſcription thereupon. 1100

After the death of *Godfrey*, the Chriſtians made choice of *Baldwin* his brother, countie of EDESSA; who leauing his former gouernment to *Baldwin* ſurnamed *Burgenſis*, his neere kinſman, came to IERVSALEM honorably accompanied, and was there by the Patriarch on Chriſtmas day with all ſolemnitie crowned king, in the yeere 1101. He aided by the Venetians and Genowaies at ſea, and by *Bohemund* king of ANTIOCH by land, tooke from the Infidels the citie of CESAREA STRATONIS, ſtanding vpon the ſea ſide; & ouerthrew certaine companies of the Ægyptian Sultans at RAMA. But vnderſtanding that the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt were comming to his aid with a new power; he glad thereof, went to meet them, & ſafely conducted them to IERVSALEM alongſt the ſea coaſt, by the cities of BERYTVS, SIDON, TIRE, and PTOLEMAIS, all yet holden by the enemies. At which time the Turkes at ASCALON hauing receiued great aid from the Arabians and Ægyptians, inuaded the country about RAMA: where betwixt them and the Chriſtians was fought a moſt cruell battell, wherein the Chriſtians receiued a moſt notable ouerthrow; many of their great commanders being there ſlaine, and among the reſt *Stephen* Earle of CHARTERS (but lately returned home from the former expedition, & now come backe againe) and *Stephen* Earle of BVRGVNDIE and THOLOVS: yea the king himſelfe hardly eſcaped the enemies hands, and after many dangers, came at length to IOPPA, after it had been conſtantly before reported him to haue been in that battell alſo ſlaine. Who hauing there in haſte repaired his armie, came again ſpeedily vpon his enemies, fearing as then nothing leſſe; and ouerthrew them with ſuch a ſlaughter, as that they had ſmall cauſe to reioyce of the former victorie. Neither were the reſt of the Chriſtian Princes in the other parts of SIRIA & PALESTINE, in the meane time idle, but ſought by all meanes to enlarge their territories. *Tancred* Prince of GALLILIE, hauing raiſed a great power, tooke APAMEA, the Metropoliticall citie of Cœleſyria, and after much toile, won alſo the citie of LAODICEA. *Baldwin* alſo gouernor of EDESSA beſieging the citie of CARRAS, had brought the beſieged Turkes to ſuch extremitie, that they were about to haue yeelded the citie: when ſuddenly he was ſet vpon by a great armie of the Turks ſent frõ the Perſian Sultan, for the reliefe of the beſieged; and being there ouerthrown, was himſelfe there taken, with *Benedict* the Biſhop, & one *Ioſcelin* his kinſman: who after fiue yeeres captiuity, found means with the Turke that had taken them, to redeeme themſelues, to the great offence of the Perſian Sultan, & of the Sultan *Solyman*.

Baldwin county of Edeſſa, and brother to Godfrey ſecond king of Ieruſalem.

1101

King *Baldwin* after the late victorie, liued for a ſeaſon at ſome good reſt in IERVSALEM, vnmoleſted by his enemies: but knowing his greateſt ſafetie among ſuch warlike people, to conſiſt in armes, he vpon the ſudden raiſed the whole ſtrength of his kingdome, and laid ſiege to PTOLEMAIS, otherwiſe called ACON, a citie of PHŒNICIA, ſtanding vpon the riuage of the ſea; where he found ſuch reſiſtance, that he was glad to raiſe his ſiege & depart, hauing done nothing more than ſpoiled the pleaſant places without the citie. By the way in his return backe againe, it fortuned him to meet with certaine companies of the enemies aduenturers, by whom he was in a skirmiſh mortally wounded, although he died not thereof in long time after: for albeit that the wound was by his ſurgeons healed vp, yet was the griefe thereof ſo great, that at length it brought him to his end. Yet he notwithſtanding the former repulſe, the next yeere encouraged by the comming of the Genua fleet, laid hard ſiege againe to PTOLEMAIS both by ſea and land, which after twenty dayes ſiege was by compoſition yeelded vnto him.

King Baldwin mortally wounded.

Ptolemais woon by K. Baldwin.

Shortly after, the gouernour of ALEPPO, with certaine other of the Turks great captaines in thoſe quarters, hauing ioyned their forces together, and ſo inuaded the countrey about ANTIOCH, were by *Tancred* (whom *Bohemund* at his departure into ITALIE, had left gouernour of that citie) notably encountred and put to flight. At which time alſo the Caliph of ÆGYPT ſending great forces both by ſea and land againſt the king of IERVSALEM, was in both places diſcomfited, at land by the Chriſtians, and at ſea by tempeſt.

Bohemund in the meane time, with a great armie of voluntary men, and others (wherein he is reported to haue had fiue thouſand horſe, and fortie thouſand foot) returning towards the Holy Land, in reuenge of many iniuries done by *Alexius* the Emperour, vnto the ſouldiers of

this sacred war, contrarie to his faith and promise to them before giuen; by the way landed his G
men in EPIRVS, and grieuously spoyled the countrey about DIRRACHIVM, part of the Em-
rors dominion. Neither made he an end of spoyling, vntill he had enforced the Emperour for
redresse of so great harmes, to make peace with him; and againe by solemne oath to promise all
securitie and kindnesse, vnto all such Christian souldiers as should haue occasion to trauell to or
fro through his countries, during the time of this religious war. After which agreement he put
to sea again, and so returned for IERVSALEM. But whilst he staied at ANTIOCH, he short-
Bohemund dieth at Antioch. ly after there died in the yeare 1108, leauing the principalitie therof vnto his yong sonne *Bohe-*
mund, a child vnder the tuition of his nephew *Tancred*.

Yet were the cites of BERYTVS, SIDON, and TIRE, alongst the sea coast, in the enemies
possession: for the gaining whereof, *Baldwin* the king raised a great armie and so came and layd H
siege to BERITVS, which after many sharpe assaults he at length woon, the 23 day of April in
IIII the yeare 1111, & put to sword most part of them that he found therein. The same yere also he,
Sidon woon. assisted by a fleet sent vnto him out of NORVVAY, besieged the citie of SIDON: which the ci-
tizens seeing themselues now beset both by sea and land, at length yeelded vnto him by com-
positiõ, the 19 day of December. After which victorie he dismissed the fleet, & returned himselfe
in triumph to IERVSALEM. Now of all the famous cities alongst the sea coast of PHŒNI-
CIA and PALESTINE, from LAODICEA to ASCALON, was only the citie of TYRE
that remained in the hands of the enemies: which citie *Baldwin* also hardly besieged; neuerthe-
lesse, it was so well defended by the Turkes, that after he had all in vaine lyen before it by the
space of foure moneths, he was glad to rise with his armie and depart. I

It fortuned, that within two yeres after, the Turks with a mightie armie sent from the Persian
Sultan, inuaded the countrey of CŒLISYRIA, where spoyling all before them as they went, they
came and encamped vpon the sea coast neere vnto TYBERIAS. Against whom *Baldwin* gathe-
red the whole strength of his kingdome, with whom also *Tancred* (who now raigned in ANTI-
OCH, the young *Bohemund* being dead) with the countie of TRIPOLIS, and the rest of the Chri-
stian princes, joyned their forces: who altogether marching forward, came and encamped, not
far from the enemie, being in number far more than they. *Mendus* generall of The Turks armie
(for so I find him called) vnderstanding of their approch, sent out certaine companies of his men
to skirmish with them: against whom the Christians also sent out others; who encountring them,
easily put them to flight, being before commanded so to do of purpose to draw the Christians K
into the danger of a great strength, lying in ambush to entrap thẽ: which according to the Turks
desire fell out. For the Christians fiercely pursuing the flying enemie, fell into the ambush, and
so before they were well aware, were beset on euerie side with their enemies: vnto the rescue of
whom, other companies of the Christians comming in, & others likewise from the Turks, both
the great armies were at length drawne into the field, where betwixt them was ioyned a most
fierce and terrible battell, with great slaughter on both sides. But at length the multitude of the
Turks preuailing, the Christians were put to the worse, and so glad to flie: after whom the fierce
enemie hardly followed, not without great slaughter. In which flight the King himselfe hardly
escaped, with *Arnolphus* the Patriarch. Whilest *Baldwin* was thus busied abroad, the Turks, and
Sarasins from ASCALON, came and besieged IERVSALEM, being then but weakly manned: L
but hearing of the Kings comming, and that the armie of the Christians daily increased with
new supplies out of the West by sea, they retired home againe, hauing burnt certaine storehou-
ses full of corne, and spoiled such things as was subiect to their furie.

Long it were to recount all the hard conflicts and combats this king had with the Sarasins
and Turks, which for breuitie I passe ouer, contented to haue briefly touched the greatest. In
the last yeare of his raigne, hauing for certaine yeares before liued in some reasonable peace, he
made an expediton into ÆGYPT, wheare he with much difficultie woon PHARAMIA, a strong
citie vpon the sea coast, which he ioined vnto his owne kingdome. After that hee went to the
mouth of the riuer NILVS, and with great admiration, learned the nature of that strange riuer.
And hauing therein taken abundance of fish, returned into the citie, and there with the same fea- M
sted himselfe with his friends. But after dinner he began to feele the griefe of his old wound, and
growing therof sicker and sicker, returned with his armie toward IERVSALEM, where by the
way neere vnto a citie called LARIS, he died (to the great griefe of all the Christians) in the
1118 yeare 1118. His dead bodie being brought backe vnto IERVSALEM, was there royally buried,

neere

A neere vnto his brother *Godfrey*, after he had raigned eighteene yeeres: whose ſepulchre is yet there alſo to be ſeene, faſt by the ſepulchre of his brother.

The late King thus dead and buried, the Chriſtians with one conſent made choiſe of his couſin *Baldwin*, ſurnamed *Brugenſis*, gouernour of EDESSA: who by the name of *Baldwin* the ſecond, was the ſecond of Aprill in the yeere 1118, ſolemnly crowned King of IERVSALEM. He was of ſtature tall and well proportioned, of countenance comely & gratious, hauing his haire thinne and yellow, his beard mingled with ſome gray haires hanging downe to his breaſt, his colour freſh and liuely for one of his yeeres. He was a man of great courage, and therefore no leſſe redoubted of his enemies than beloued of his ſubiects, who had in him repoſed great hope
B both for the defence and enlarging of that new gained kingdome. Againſt him the ſame Summer the Caliph of ÆGYPT, aided by the King of DAMASCO and the Turks, in reuenge of the loſſe he had in the expedition the yeere before receiued, raiſed a great power to inuade him both by ſea and land. Againſt whom *Baldwin* alſo oppoſed himſelfe with his whole ſtrength, and ſo came and encamped within the ſight of his enemies. In which ſort, when both armies had lien the one facing the other by the ſpace of three months, they both riſe: the Chriſtians fearing the multitude of the Turks, and the Turks the valour of the Chriſtians, and ſo retired without any notable thing doing.

Baldwin Brugenſis choſen King of Ieruſalem.

1118

This yeere died *Alexius* the Greeke Emperour, who euen from the beginning of this ſacred warre, ſecretly repined at the good ſucceſſe of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, although his empire
C were thereby greatly enlarged: after whom ſucceeded *Calo Ioannes* his ſonne, who all the time of his raigne right worthily defended his territories in the leſſer ASIA, againſt the inuaſion of the Turks.

Not long after, *Gazi* one of the greateſt Princes of the Turks in the leſſer ASIA, with the King of DAMASCO, and *Debeis* King of ARABIA, ioyning their forces together, with a great armie inuading the countrey about ANTIOCH, came and encamped not far from ALEPPO: againſt whom *Roger* Prince of ANTIOCH, not expecting the comming of *Baldwin* and the other Chriſtian Princes his confederats, but preſuming of his owne ſtrength, went forth with greater courage than diſcretion, whereunto his ſucceſſe was anſwerable: for encountring with them at too much ods, he was by them in a great battell ouerthrowne, wherein he himſelfe was ſlaine with
D moſt part of his armie. Of which ſo great a ſlaughter, the place wherein this battell was fought, was afterward called, The field of bloud. But whilſt the Turks after ſo great a victorie, careleſly and at pleaſure roame vp and downe the country, *Baldwin* ſetting vpon them, ouerthrew them with a great ſlaughter, and ſo put them to flight. After this victorie gained by the Chriſtians the fourteenth of Auguſt, in the yeere 1120, King *Baldwin* in great triumph entred into ANTIOCH, and ſo ioyned that principalitie vnto his owne kingdome.

1120

The yeere following, the Turks with another armie inuaded the ſame countrey againe: for repreſſing of whom, whilſt *Baldwin* with the other Chriſtian Princes were making their preparations, it fortuned that *Gazi* their great commander ſuddenly died of an Apoplexie; vpon whoſe death they retired without further harme doing. Neuertheleſſe the next Spring, the King
E of DAMASCO aided by the Arabians, entred againe with a great power into the countrey about ANTIOCH, and there did ſome harme: for the Antiochians now deſtitute of their owne Prince, and *Baldwin* (who had taken vpon him their protection) being farre off, and otherwiſe buſied at IERVSALEM, were much more ſubiect vnto the inrodes of their enemies (ſtill at hand) than before when they had a Prince of their owne ſtill preſent amongſt them. But *Baldwin* aduertiſed thereof, was making towards them with a puiſſant armie, ſooner than they had thought it could haue beene poſſible. Of whoſe approch the Turks vnderſtanding, retired againe out of the countrey: after whom, the King thinking it not good to make further purſuit, turned a little out of the way, and tooke by force GARAZE, one of the ſtrongeſt caſtles of the Kings of DAMASCO, built but the yeere before; which becauſe it was not without great
F charge and danger to be holden, he raſed downe to the ground.

1122

Baldwin notwithſtanding that he had many times thus honourably repulſed his enemies, wiſely conſidering how he was on the one ſide beſet with the Turks, and on the other ſide with the Saraſins (which yet raigned in ÆGYPT, the kingdome of IERVSALEM lying as it were in the mouth of them both) thought it good betime to pray aid of the Chriſtian Princes of EVROPE, and to that purpoſe had ſent diuers his embaſſadors vnto diuers of them, but eſpecially

vnto the Venetians; whom of all others he thought fitteſt at his need to yeeld him reliefe by ſea. It fortuned in the meane time, that *Balac* the Perſian Sultan with a great armie of the Turks, inuaded the countrey about ANTIOCH, whereof *Baldwin* vnderſtanding (although he certainly knew he ſhould ere long receiue aid from the other Chriſtian Princes his friends, but eſpecially from the Venetians, and might therefore with great reaſon haue protracted the warre vntill their comming, yet being therewith much mooued, or elſe his deſtinie ſo requiring) raiſed ſuch forces as he had of his owne, and without longer ſtaying for his friends, with greater courage than good ſpeed, ſet forward: and ſo ioyning battell with the enemie, was therein ouerthrowne, with the greateſt part of his armie, & himſelfe taken priſoner in the fight, with certaine other of his beſt commanders; who all together were carried away captiues vnto CARRAS. G H

Ioppa beſieged by the Saraſins.

Vpon the report of this ouerthrow, and taking of the King, the Caliph of ÆGYPT on the other ſide tooke occaſion with all his power to inuade the kingdome of IERVSALEM; and hauing in himſelfe purpoſed the vtter ruine thereof, beſide the great armie which he ſent thither by land, which lay encamped not far from ASCALON, he put to ſea an huge fleet alſo, of ſeuen hundred ſaile, for the diſtreſſing of the ſea townes, which he well knew were not otherwiſe to be woon. This fleet of the Saraſin kings (for ÆGYPT with the kindomes of TVNES and MOROCCO were yet in poſſeſſion of the Saraſins) arriuing at IOPPA, there put a ſhore their land forces, and hardly beſieged the towne both by ſea and land. But whilſt they thus lay in great hope to haue wonne the towne, *Dominicus Michael*, duke of VENICE, ſtirred vp by *Calixtus* then Biſhop of ROME, was come to CIPRVS with a fleet of two hundred ſaile, for the I. reliefe of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, and the Holy land: And hearing of the diſtreſſe of IOPPA, nothing diſmaid with the number of the enemies fleet, haſted thither, and came ſo ſuddenly vpon them, that he had (as ſome report) ouerthrowne them, before they could put themſelues in order, or be in readineſſe to fight: or as ſome others ſay, after a great and doubtfull fight, hauing ſunke or taken a great number of them, and put the reſt to flight, he obtained of them a moſt glorious victorie. With like good fortune alſo, were the Saraſins ouerthrown in a notable battell at land, neere vnto ASCALON, by the lord *Euſtace*, vnto whom the defence of the kingdome was committed after the taking of the King, who not long after ſo great a victorie died.

IOPPA relieued (as is aforeſaid) the duke of VENICE trauelled by land to IERVSALEM, where he was honourably receiued by *Guarimund* the Patriarch, and the confederation before K made betwixt king *Baldwin* & the Venetians, vpon the ſame conditions ſolemnly again renued.

Tyre beſieged by the Chriſtians.

The Saraſins thus notably diſcomfited both by ſea and land, and the Chriſtians thereby not a little encouraged, and joining their forces together with the Venetians, came and the firſt of March laid ſiege vnto the antient and ſtrong citie of TYRE: which they hauing beſet both by ſea and land, gaue thereunto many a ſharpe aſſault: which the Turks as men fighting for their liues, and wiues, right valiantly repulſed. In which ſort the ſiege was continued longer than the Chriſtians had at the firſt thought ſhould haue needed: yet at length, after foure moneths ſiege, the Turks ſore weakned with often aſſaults, and hardly pinched with want of food, all their ſtore being ſpent, yeelded the citie by compoſition. Thus was the citie of TYRE (the moſt famous port of PHŒNICIA) yeelded vnto the Chriſtians the nine and twentieth of Iune, in L

1124 the yeere 1124. The third part of this citie was giuen vnto the Venetians, according to the compoſition made betwixt them and the Kings of IERVSALEM, That of all ſuch cities as were by their helpe won from the Infidels in SYRIA, they ſhould haue a third part, with one ſtreet, and free trafficke in all the reſt of the cities of the kingdome of IERVSALEM. Shortly after was King *Baldwin* ſet at libertie for the ranſome of an hundred thouſand ducats, after hee had beene eighteene moneths priſoner among the Turks.

The Duke of VENICE hauing now ſpent almoſt three yeeres in this ſacred expedition, and well confirmed the ſtate of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, returning home, by the way tooke the Iſlands of CHIOS, RHODVS, SAMOS, MITYLEN, and ANDRVS, with the citie of MODON in PELOPONESVS; all, places belonging vnto the Greekes empire. Which he did in M reuenge of the iniuries done by the Emperour, in the time of his abſence, who enuying at the ſucceſſe of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, as had his father *Alexius* before him, had in the abſence of the Duke, infeſted the territories of the Venetians, for the which hee was now iuſtly requited with the loſſe of a good part of his owne.

Baldwin alſo not vnmindfull of the iniuries vnto him before done by the Turks, in requitall thereof,

A thereof, inuaded the countrey abou DAMASCO, and there in three notable battels ouerthrew the king, and ſpoiled the countrey: wherin he tooke ſo great a prey, that therewith he redeemed his daughter, whome he had at the time of his deliuerance left in hoſtage with the Turks for the payment of his ranſom. He alſo ouerthrew the Saraſins at ASCALON, who aided by the Caliph of ÆGYPT, had ſundrie times inuaded the countrey about IERVSALEM. And ſo hauing well repreſſed his enemies, for a ſpace liued in peace.

Damaſco in vaine beſieged by the Chriſtians.

Not long after, *Hugh Paganus* firſt maſter of the Templars, (an order of knights firſt begun in the raigne of this *Baldwin*) before ſent to craue aid of the Chriſtians princes of the Weſt, againſt the Turks and Saraſins, returned with a great number of zealous chriſtians, readie to lay down
B their liues for defence of the Chriſtian faith and religion: with whom *Baldwin* and the other Chriſtian Princes of SYRIA joyning their forces, ſet forward and beſieged DAMASCO, the regall ſeat of the Turks in thoſe quarters. But ſuch was the ſtrength of this citie, with the valour of the defendants, and contagiouſneſſe of the aire, that the Chriſtians (the heauens as it were then fighting againſt them) were glad to raiſe their ſiege in vaine begun, and ſo to retire.

Whilſt things thus paſſed in SYRIA, *Fulke* countie of TVRIN, MAYN, and ANIOV, a man almoſt of threeſcore yeeres, hauing as he thought beſt diſpoſed of his things at home, had for deuotion ſake taken vpon him an expedition into the Holy land. In the time of which his preparations, embaſſadours came vnto him from king *Baldwin*, offring him in marriage *Meliſſenda* (or as ſome call her *Margaret*) his eldeſt daughter, with the ſucceſſion into the kingdome
C of IERVSALEM in dowrie, if hee ſhould ſuruiue the king; and in the meane time to content himſelfe with the cities of TYRE and PTOLEMAIS: of which offer he accepted, and ſo held on his journey before intended. It fortuned about three yeeres after, that the king fell dangerouſly ſicke, and feeling his death drawing on, hauing laid aſide al regall dignity, cauſed himſelfe to be remooued out of his owne palace, into the Patriarchs houſe, which was neerer vnto the temple of the Sepulchre: and there calling vnto him *Fulke* the countie, his ſonne in law, with his daughter and his ſonne *Baldwin*, then but two yeeres old, in the preſence of the Patriarch, and diuers other princes & great commanders, commended vnto them the gouernment & defence of the kingdome, appointing *Fulke* to ſucceed him. And taking vnto himſelfe the habit and profeſſion of a Monke, if hee ſhould haue longer liued, preſently after gaue vp the ghoſt the two and
D twentith day of Auguſt, in the yeere 1131; whereof hee raigned with much trouble thirteene yeeres, and was ſollemnly buried in the temple vpon mount CALVARIE, with the other two kings *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, his predeceſſors. 1131

The death of Baldwin the ſecond, the third King of Ieruſalem.

The kings funeral ended, the princes of the kingdome with one accord made choiſe of *Fulke* the old countie, earle of ANIOV, for their king: who the ſixteenth day of September, was with all ſollemnitie by *William* the Patriarch crowned in IERVSALEM. This man in the beginning of his raigne, beſides his troubles abroad, was alſo vext with domeſticall and inteſtine diſcord: *Pontius* countie of TRIPOLIS, ſeeking by force of armes to haue rent the dukedome of ANTIOCH from the kingdome: and *Hugh* countie of IOPPA, for feare of due puniſhment for his treaſon, joyning himſelfe with the Saraſins of ASCALON, and ſo with them infeſting the terri-
E tories of IERVSALEM, to the great hurt of the Chriſtian ſtate, and aduantage of the infidels. Which troubleſome broiles were yet afterwards by the king, partly by force, partly by the mediation of the Patriarch & other princes (who ſeeing the danger thereof like to enſue, had enterpoſed themſelues) well againe appeaſed. Vengeance yet neuertheleſſe ſtill following both the aforeſaid traitors: *Pontius* being ſhortly after ſlaine by the Turks, and *Hugh* dying in exile.

Beſides theſe domeſtical troubles, the Turks alſo inuaded the countrey about ANTIOCH, where they were by the ſudden comming of the king ouerthrowne, with the loſſe of their tents, & exceeding great riches. And that nothing might be wanting vnto the diſquieting of the ſtate of that new erected kingdome, not long after, *Iohn* the Conſtantinopolitan emperour (together with the empire, inheritour alſo of his fathes malice, againſt the proceeding of the Chriſtians
F in SYRIA) with a puiſſant armie paſſing through the leſſer ASIA, and by the way taking by force TARSVS the metropoliticall citie of CILICIA, with the whole prouince thereunto belonging, came and beſieged ANTIOCH; which *Fulke* but a little before had together with *Conſtance*, the daughter and heire of the late duke of ANTIOCH, giuen in marriage to *Raymund* countie of POITOV, for that purpoſe ſent out of FRANCE. But in this ſo dangerous a ſtate of that Chriſtian kingdome, the other zealous Chriſtian princes interpoſed themſelues as me-

diatours betwixt the Emperour (pretending the ſame to belong vnto his empire) and *Raymund* G
that was in poſſeſſion thereof. And in fine brought it to this end, that *Raymund* for the preſent ſubmitting himſelfe vnto the Emperour, ſhould from thenceforth hold his dukedome of him as of his Lord and Soueraigne: vpon which agreement the Emperour returned vnto TARSVS, where he wintred, and ſo afterwards vnto CONSTANTINOPLE.

Much about the ſame time, *Sanguin* one of the Turks great Princes, inuading the countrey about TRIPOLIS, beſieged the caſtle of MONTE-FERRAND: vnto the reliefe whereof, *Fulke* comming with his armie, was by the Turks ouerthrowne; and for the ſafegard of his life, glad to take the refuge of the caſtle, the Countie himſelfe being in that battell taken priſoner. After which victorie, the Turks laid harder ſiege vnto the caſtle than before: the beſieged in the H
meane time being no leſſe pinched within with famine, than preſſed without by the enemie. In this the Kings hard diſtreſſe, the other Princes hauing raiſed the whole power of the kingdome, were comming to his reliefe: whereof the Turke vnderſtanding, offred of himſelfe to giue them all leaue freely to depart, and to ſet the Countie at libertie, ſo that they would deliuer vnto him the caſtle: of which his offer they gladly accepting, yeelded vp the ſtrong hold, and ſo departed. The King by the way meeting with the armie, thanked his friends for their forwardneſſe, and ſo returned to IERVSALEM.

Calo Ioannes the Greeke Emperour ſeeketh in vaine to haue ſurpriſed the citie of Antioch.

About foure yeeres after, *Iohn* the Conſtantinopolitan Emperour, with a great armie came againe into SYRIA, with purpoſe to haue vnited the famous citie of ANTIOCH vnto his empire, and ſo to haue made a way into the kingdome of IERVSALEM, whereafter he had now I
a good while longed. But comming thither, in hope to haue found the Cilicians and Syrians ready to haue receiued him, he was deceiued of his expectation, being ſhut out by the Latines, and not ſuffered to enter, but vpon his oath, and that with ſome few of his followers; and ſo after due reuerence done vnto him, quietly to depart without any ſtirre or innouation in the citie. In reuenge of which diſgrace, at his departure he gaue the ſuburbs of the citie as a prey vnto his greedie ſouldiers; pretending the ſame to be done for want of victuals: who made hauocke of whatſoeuer came to hand, not ſparing the very fruit trees, but cutting them downe to dreſſe their meat withall. Hauing thus vnder colour of neceſſitie, reuenged the diſgrace receiued, hee returned into CILICIA, and there wintred: where one day for his diſport, hunting of the wild boare, and hauing wounded him with his boare ſpeare, the wild beaſt therewith inraged, and K
with all his force bearing forward vpon the weapon, forced the Emperors hand backward vpon the point of a poiſoned arrow, that was hanging in a quiuer at his backe, and ſo was therewith lightly wounded. Neuertheleſſe, as light as the wound was, ſuch was the ſtrength of the poiſon, that the griefe thereof ſtill increaſing, and his hand and arme more and more ſwelling,

The death of Calo Ioannes the Greeke Emperour.

there was no remedie to be found, but that his arme muſt be cut off; which deſperate and vncertaine cure he abhorring, and in the extremitie of his paine oftentimes pleaſantly ſaying, that the Greeke empire was not to be gouerned with one hand: ouercome with the ſtrength of the poiſon died. In whoſe place ſucceeded his youngeſt ſonne *Emanuel*, *Alexius* and *Andronicus* his two elder ſonnes being both dead at his ſetting forth vnto this ſo vnhappie an expedition.

The miſerable death of Fulke, fourth King of Ieruſalem.

It fortuned about this time alſo, the kingdome of IERVSALEM being now at peace, that L
Fulke the King with the Queene his wife, lying at the citie of PTOLEMAIS in the time of Autumne, it pleaſed the Queene for her diſport, to walke out of the citie, vnto certaine pleaſant fountaines there by in the countrey; for whoſe companie the King would needs goe alſo, with certaine of his courtiers, where by the way it chanced that certaine boyes running along the field, put vp an hare that was ſitting in a furrow: after which, all the courtiers on horſebacke galloped a maine, with notable outcrie and hallowing. Amongſt the reſt, the King to be partaker of the ſport, forcing his horſe to the vttermoſt of his power, in the midſt of his courſe fell, together with his horſe foundring vnder him, and in falling, chanced to fall with his head vnder the horſe: with whoſe waight, and the hardneſſe of his ſaddle, he was ſo cruſhed, that the braines came out both at his noſe and eares. In this pitifull caſe being taken vp for dead, and M
with great heauineſſe carried backe, he yet breathing, lay ſpeechleſſe three dayes, and ſo died the thirteenth of Nouember, in the yeere of Grace 1142. His dead body afterwards brought to IERVSALEM, was there with great magnificence, and the generall lamentation of all his ſubiects, buried with the other Kings his predeceſſours.

Now had the late King left behinde him two ſons, *Baldwin* about the age of thirteene yeeres, and

A and *Almerike* about the age of ſeuen. Of the elder of theſe two, the Chriſtian Princes made choice, who by the name of *Baldwin* the third, was together with *Meleſinda* his mother, partner with him in the kingdome, vpon Chriſtmas day with great ſolemnitie crowned King of HIERVSALEM, in the yeere 1142. About which time, *Sanguin* the Turke, taking hold of the diſcord betwixt *Raymund* Prince of ANTIOCH, and *Ioſcelin* Countie of EDESSA, came and with a great power beſieged EDESSA, the Countie being at the ſame time abſent: and did ſo much, that at length he tooke the citie by vndermining of it, where the bloudie Turke exerciſed all manner of crueltie vpon the poore Chriſtians in the citie. By the loſſe of this famous citie, ſo large a territorie fell againe into the hands of the Turkes, as that three Archbiſhopricks
B were thereby drawne from the Church of ANTIOCH. The Turke encouraged with this victorie, ſtraightwaies after beſieged COLOGENBAR, another ſtrong towne of the Chriſtians: one night drinking liberally with his friends, he was by one of them in his drunkenneſſe ſtabbed, and ſo ſlaine, and the ſiege raiſed. In whoſe ſtead *Noradin* his ſonne ſucceeded.

Baldwin, in the firſt yeere of his raigne, recouered from the Turkes the caſtle of SOBAL, a ſtrong hold beyond IORDAN, which he notably fortified, for the defence of that ſide of his kingdome againſt the incurſions of the Turks. But the next yeere vndertaking an expedition againſt the King of DAMASCO, he was by *Noradin* the Turke, the Kings ſonne in law, ſo hardly beſet in his returne, as that it was accounted a thing miraculous, how he with his armie eſcaped his hands.

C The report of the loſſe of EDESSA, with the miſeries there endured by the Chriſtians, being bruted thorow all parts of Chriſtendome, greatly mooued the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt. Whom *Eugenius* the third, then Biſhop of ROME, ceaſed not both by himſelfe and by his Legates to ſtirre vp to take that ſacred warre in hand. And therein wrought ſo effectually, that almoſt in euery prouince of Chriſtendome preparation was made for the reliefe of the diſtreſſed Chriſtians in SYRIA. Of all others, *Conrade* the third then Emperour of GERMANIE, was moſt forward, who aided by the Germane Princes and others, with an incredible number of voluntarie men out of all parts of Chriſtendome, had raiſed a moſt puiſſant armie, and therewith ſet forward on this ſacred expedition. Of this his deuout purpoſe he had before certified *Emanuel* the Greeke Emperour, thorow whoſe countries he was to paſſe, crauing that he might by his
D good fauour ſo doe, and for his money to be relieued with victuals, and other ſuch things as he ſhould haue need of for himſelfe or his people; promiſing in moſt quiet and peaceable manner to paſſe, without any harme doing vnto his territories or ſubiects. All which the Greeke Emperor, commending his zeale, ſeemed in moſt large tearmes willingly to condeſcend vnto. Neuertheleſſe he inwardly repined therat, wiſhing indeed no better ſucceſſe vnto the Chriſtians in this ſo honorable an expedition, than did the Infidels themſelues, as by the ſequel of his doings well appeared. For *Conrade* with his populous armie, indeed a terrour vnto the Greekes, entring into the frontiers of the Conſtantinopolitan empire, found al things in ſhew friendly (for why, *Emanuel* had before giuen out ſtrait command, that good ſtore of victuals and all other neceſſaries ſhould be ready at all places to be ſold as the armie was to paſſe:) but they were not farre come
E into the countrey, but that in the taile of the armie ſtill followed certaine ſtrong companies of the Greeks, to keepe the ſouldiers from ſtragling frō their enſignes, roaming about in the country, now and then cutting them ſhort, as they tooke them at aduantage. And ſtill the further that they trauelled, the more it was to be ſeene in the countenances of the diſcontented Greeks, how vnwelcome gueſts they were. Yet ſtill on they went thorow the countries of their diſſembling friends, little differing from open enemies, vntill they came to PHILIPPOPOLIS: in departing from whence, ſuch contention riſe betweene them that were in the rereward of the armie, and the Greekes that followed them, that it was like to haue come to plaine battell, had not thoſe broiles, by the diſcretion of ſome of the wiſer ſort, been in good time appeaſed. So marching on they came to ADRIANOPLE, & in a few dayes after to the plaine called CHERROBACHI, thorow
F which the riuer MELAS hath his courſe; which in Summer being almoſt drie, in Winter or any other great downefall of water, right ſuddenly ouerfloweth his bankes, and ſo drowneth the whole country, that then it ſeemeth no more a riuer, but a ſea; and ſwelling with the winde, is not to be paſſed ouer, but by great boats. This riuer then ſuddenly riſing by night, by reaſon of the great rain that then fell, in ſuch abundance, as if the floud-gates of heauen had been opened, ſo ouerflowed the place wherein the armie lay encamped vpon the ſide thereof, that with the violence

Baldwin the third of that name, firſt King of Ieruſalem. 1142

Conrade third Emperour of Germanie taketh vpon him an expedition into the Holy Land.

violence of the water were carried away not only many weapons, ſaddles, garments, and ſuch other the ſouldiers neceſſaries; but euen the horſes and mules, with their burdens, yea and great numbers of armed men themſelues alſo, a moſt miſerable & lamentable thing to behold. Many valiant men there fell without fight, and died no man killing them: to be tall, helped not; neither did valour ſtand them in any ſtead: they periſhed like hay, & were carried away like chaffe, with ſuch outcries and lamentation, that they which ſaw it, verily ſaid, That the wrath of God was broke into the campe: ſuch a ſudden inundation had ouerwhelmed all, that happie was hee could make ſhift for himſelfe, without regarding one another. This misfortune ſore troubled the Emperour with his whole armie. Neuertheleſſe, the water being againe fallen, and all put in ſo good order, as in ſuch a confuſion was poſſible, he marched on vnto the imperial citie: which the ſuſpicious and malicious Greeke had before notably fortified and ſo ſtrongly manned with armed men gliſtring vpon the wals, in ſuch ſort as if it ſhould haue preſently beene aſſaulted. G H

Conrade the Emperour not ſuffered to enter into Conſtantinople.

Conrade approching the citie, was not ſuffered to enter, but perſwaded by the Greeke Emperour forthwith to tranſport his armie ouer the ſtrait, with promiſe to ſupplie his wants with whatſoeuer he ſhould require. Which was done with ſuch haſte, as if nothing had beene farther to haue beene regarded, but only to haue them ſhipped ouer: in which ſeruice the Greekes ſpared no labour, or kinde of veſſell, that might ſerue to tranſport them. The Greeke Emperour in the meane time, by men ſecretly appointed for that purpoſe, keeping account of the number that paſſed, vntill that they wearied with the multitude, ceaſed farther to number them. But when they were once ſhipped ouer, then began the couert malice of the Greeke Emperor forthwith to appeare. For beſides that they truſting vnto his promiſes, had brought little or no prouiſions ouer with them, the countrey people by his appointment brought nothing vnto them to ſell, as before: and they of the townes and cities ſhut their gates againſt them as they marched, not affoording them any thing, but at an extreme rate, for which they would firſt receiue their money by ropes caſt downe from the wals, and then deliuer them what they pleaſed therefore, yea and oftentimes nought at all. Amongſt many other vile practiſes, not beſeeming Chriſtians, the miſchieuous Greekes, to poiſon the ſouldiers, mingled lime with the meale which they ſold vnto the armie, whereof many of the hungrie ſouldiers greedily feeding, died. Whether the Greeke Emperour were priuie thereunto, or no, is not certainly knowne; but certaine it is, that he cauſed counterfeit money to be coined, of purpoſe to deceiue them: and in briefe, that there was no kinde of miſchiefe to be practiſed againſt them, which either he himſelfe deuiſed not, or ſet not others to deuiſe; to the intent that their poſteritie, terrified by this ſo vnfortunate an expedition, might for euer be afraid to take the like in hand againe. And that nothing might be wanting that malice could deuiſe, hee had ſecret intelligence with the Turks themſelues, concerning the ſtrength of the armie, plotting vnto them the means how the ſame might beſt be defeated: whereby it came to paſſe, that ſome part thereof was by *Pamplano*, a captaine of the Turks, ouerthrowne neere BATHIS, and many ſlaine. But attempting to haue done the like vnto that part of the armie that marched thorow PHRYGIA, they were themſelues ouertaken in their owne deuice, and ouerthrowne, with a great ſlaughter. After which, the Turks in great number, to ſtay the Chriſtians further paſſage, kept the riuer of MŒANDER, encamping vpon the farther banke of that winding riuer, with a moſt huge armie. There theſe worthy Chriſtians right well declared, that it was but their patience, that the Grecian legions that had before ſo long followed them, with their countries and cities they had paſſed by, were not vnto them become a prey. For the Emperour comming vnto the riuer ſide, where was neither bridge nor boat to paſſe ouer, and finding the great armie of the Turks on the other ſide, ready to giue him battell if he ſhould aduenture the riuer, with their archers ſtanding vpon the very banke ſide: he retired a little out of the danger of the ſhot, and there encamping, commanded his ſouldiers to refreſh themſelues and their horſes that night, and to be ready againſt the next morning to ioyne battell with their enemies they were ſo farre come to ſeeke for. Little reſt ſerued him that night; early in the morning before day he aroſe, and arming himſelfe, put his whole armie in order of battell: as did alſo the enemie on the other ſide of the riuer, with their battalions orderly placed, and their archers vpon the banke ſide, ready to giue the firſt charge vpon the Chriſtians, if they ſhould aduenture to come ouer. Both armies thus ſtanding in readineſſe the one in ſight of the other, and nothing but the winding riuer betwixt them, the Emperour before reſolued to fight, with cheerefull countenance and ſpeech encouraged his men as followeth. I K L M

The Turks with a great armie ſeeke to ſtay Conrade his farther paſſage at the riuer Mœander.

That

A *That this expedition was of vs taken in hand, for Christ his sake, and for the glorie of God, and not of man, you know right well fellow souldiers. For, for this cause hauing contemned a pleasant life at home, voluntarily separated from our neereſt and deereſt friends, wee endure miſeries in forraine countries; wee are expoſed vnto dangers; weepine with hunger; wee quake with cold; wee languiſh with heat; wee haue the earth our bed, the heauen our couering: and although we be noble, famous, renowmed, rich, ruling ouer many nations; yet weare wee alwayes our gorgets as neceſſarie bonds, and are with them and our armour loaded, as was the greateſt ſeruant of Christ,* Peter, *ſurcharged with two chaines, and kept with foure quaternions of ſouldiers. But theſe Barbarians (diuided from vs by this riuer) to be the enemies of the croſſe of Christ, whom wee of long haue deſired to encounter withall, in whoſe*

B *bloud (as* Dauid *ſaith) wee haue vowed to waſh our ſelues: who is there that knoweth not, except he be altogether blockiſh, and will not with open eyes ſee, nor open eares heare? If we wiſh to aſcend ſtraight way into heauen, (for neither is God vniuſt, that he knoweth not the cauſe of this our iourney, or will not in recompence giue vnto vs the immortall fields, and ſhadie dwellings of Paradice, which hauing forſaken our owne dwellings, haue choſe rather for his ſake to die than to liue) if wee call to remembrance what things theſe men of vncircumciſed hearts doe commit againſt our friends and countreymen, if wee remember what grieuous tortures they inflict vpon them, or if wee be any thing touched with the compaſſion of their innocent bloud, vnworthily ſpilt; ſtand now couragiouſly, and fight valiantly, and let not any feare or terrour daunt vs. Let theſe Barbarians know, that by how much Christ our maſter and inſtructer doth excell their falſe prophet and ſeducer, author of their vaine impietie; ſo*

C *much are wee ſuperiours vnto them in all things. Seeing therefore wee are an holy campe, and an armie gathered by the power of God, let vs not cowardly loſe our ſelues, or feare for Christ his ſake honourably to aduenture our liues. For if Christ died for vs, how much more right is it that we for him ſhould die alſo? Vnto this ſo honourable an expedition, let vs alſo giue an honourable end: let vs fight in Christs name, with a moſt aſſured hope of an eaſie victorie. For none of them (I truſt) ſhall be able to abide our force, but ſhall all giue way, euen to our firſt charge. But if wee ſhall die (which God forbid) there ſhall be an honourable place of our buriall, whereſoeuer wee ſhall for Christ fall. Let the Perſian archer for Christ his ſake, ſtrike me, I will die in an aſſured hope; and with that arrow, as with a chariot, I will come vnto that reſt, which ſhall be to me deerer than if I ſhould with a baſe ordinarie kinde of*

D *death in my ſinnes end my dayes in my bed. Now at length let vs take reuenge of them, with whoſe impure feet our kinſmen and Christian brethren troden downe, are gone into that common ſanctuarie, in which Christ our Sauiour, equall and aſſociate to his Father, is become a companion of the dead. Wee are thoſe mightie men, we all haue drawne our ſwords, which ſtand about the liuely and diuine ſepulchre, as about* Salomons *bed. Wherefore wee that be free borne, let vs take out of the way theſe Agarens, the children of the bondwoman; and let vs remooue them as ſtones of offence out of the way of Christ: whom (I know not why) the Grecians feed vp as greedie wolues to their owne deſtruction, and with ſhame fat them with their bloud; when as with couragious mindes and thoughts beſeeming wiſe men, they ought ſo to haue beene driuen from their prouinces and cities, as rauening wilde beaſts from their flocks. Now for as much as this riuer, as it ſeemeth, is not, but by ſome aduenture to be paſſed ouer, I my ſelfe will ſhew you the way, and be the firſt that ſhall take it. Let vs, ſerred together, forci-*

E *bly breake into the riuer, and we ſhall well enough ride thorow it. I know that the water beaten backe by our force, will be at a ſtand, and breake the courſe, returning as it were backward. By not vnlike meanes the Iſraelites in ancient time on foot paſſed ouer* Iordan, *the courſe of the riuer being ſtaid. This attempt ſhall be ſpoken of in all poſteritie, it ſhall by no tract of time be worne out or forgotten, but ſtill remaine in freſh remembrance, to the great diſhonour of the Turks, whoſe dead bodies ouerthrowne at this riuer, ſhall lie like a mountaine, and be ſeene as a Trophey of our victorie, vnto the worlds end, and our immortall praiſe and glorie.*

A notable ſpeech of Conrade the Emperour to encourage his ſouldiers to aduenture the riuer Meander.

Hauing thus ſaid, and the ſignall of battell giuen, euery man hauing before by deuout praier commended himſelfe vnto almightie God: he was the firſt that put ſpurs to his horſe, and tooke

F the riuer; after whom followed the reſt, ſo cloſe and ſo forcibly, with ſuch a terrible outcrie, that the courſe of the water, being by the force of their horſes ſtaid, and as it were beaten backe towards the fountaine, the whole armie paſſed ouer with leſſe trouble than was feared. And then charging the Turks, already diſcouraged to haue ſeene them ſo deſperatly, & contrary to their expectation, to haue paſſed the riuer; after ſome ſmall reſiſtance put them to flight, wherein ſuch infinite numbers of them fell, the Chriſtians like fierce Lions purſuing the chace, that all the valies

The Turks ouerthrowne by the Chriſtians with a wonderfull ſlaughter.

lies ran with bloud, and the fields were couered with the bodies of the dead. Many of the Italians were wounded with the Turks arrowes, and but few or none slaine. But what a multitude of the enemies there fell, the sundrie and hugie heapes of bones, to be compared vnto great hils, did long time after well declare; whereat euery man that trauelled that way did worthily wonder, as did I my selfe (saith *Nicetas Choniates*) in reporting this historie. Not much vnlike that, is reported of the Cimbers, slaine by *Marius* in such number, that of their bones the countrey people about MARCELLIS where the field was fought, long time after made wals for the defence of their vineyards. G

Nicetas Choniates Annali primo rerum a Manuele Comneno Imperatore gestar. fol. 139.

After this so great a victorie, the Christians without resistance came to ICONIVM, the chiefe seat of the Turkish Kings in the lesser ASIA, which they hardly besieged. Neuertheless, such was the strength of the citie, being strongly fortified both by Nature and Art, together with the valour of the defendants; that lying there long, they little preuailed, pressed in the meane time with greater extremities and wants in the campe, than were the besieged in the citie: whereupon ensued such a mortalitie, people daily without number dying in the armie, that the Emperour was glad to raise his siege and to returne into his countrey. The chiefe cause as well of this so great a mortalitie, as of the ouerthrow of so notable an action, most men ascribe vnto the malice of the Greekes; who not without the priuitie of their Emperour (as it was commonly bruited) mingled lime with the meale which they brought to sell into the armie, whereof the hungrie souldiers desirously feeding, were therewith poisoned, and so miserably died. Of the certaine time of this iourney of the Emperours into ASIA, Authors agree not; howbeit most referre it vnto the yeere 1146. H

Iconium in vaine besieged by the Christians.

1146 I

This expedition, though not so fortunate as was at the first well hoped of, yet profited the Christian common weale in this, That the Turks therewith throughly busied, and doubtfull of the euent thereof, *Baldwin* in the meane time fortified GAZA (sometimes a famous citie of the Philistines, but as then ruinous) which serued as a most sure bulwarke for the defence of that part of his kingdome towards ÆGYPT; and also for the distressing of ASCALON, the onely refuge of the Ægyptians, then left in that countrey: which strong citie standing vpon the sea side, he with all the power of his kingdome afterward besieged both by sea and land; vnto the reliefe whereof, the Caliph of ÆGYPT, after it had beene fiue moneths by the Christians besieged, sent a strong fleet of threescore and ten gallies. At which time also on the other side *Noradin* the Turke, who had now got into his hand all the kingdome of DAMASCO, to withdraw the Christians from the siege of ASCALON, besieged PANEADA, from whence he was by the valour of the citizens repulsed, as was also the Caliphs fleet at sea, and the siege at ASCALON continued. Where at length the Christians after long batterie had made a breach in the wall, but giuing thereunto an assault, they were with great losse of their men repulsed, and the breach againe by the enemie repaired; who to the greater despight of the Christians, hanged ouer the wals in roaps the dead bodies of their slaine: with which spectacle, the chiefe commanders of the armie were so moued, that they with all their power returned againe to the assault, with a full resolution to gage thereon their whole forces: which they so couragiously performed, that the besieged discouraged with the great slaughter of their men, and now with true valour ouercome, craued parley; and so couenanting that they might with their liues in safetie depart, agreed to yeeld vp the citie, which they accordingly performed. The spoile of the citie was giuen to the souldiers, and the gouernment thereof vnto *Almericke* the Kings brother, Earle of IOPPA. By this victorie, great securitie was gained vnto that side of the kingdome, the enemie hauing now no place left in those parts whereon to set his foot. K L

The honourable expedition of Lewis the French King, by the malice of the Greekes, and enuie of other Christian Princes of Syria frustrated and brought to nought.

About the same time also (or as some write, euen at the same time together with the Emperour) *Lewis* the French King, the eight of that name, tooke vpon him the like expedition for the reliefe of the Christians in the Holy Land: who setting forward with all the chiualrie of FRANCE, and accompanied with diuers other great Princes, with a right puissant armie came to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was by *Emanuel* the Emperour honourably receiued, with all the outward shewes of faigned courtesie that could be deuised. But hauing passed the strait, and landed in ASIA, he found nothing answerable to that the dissembling Greeke had before most largely promised. And to distresse him the more, was by false guides before corrupted by the Emperor, conducted thorow the most desolate and barren countries, where by the way a wonderfull number of his souldiers perished of hunger and thirst: many of them also being cut off in M

the

A the ſtrait and difficult paſſages, or as they ſtraied from the armie by the Greekes themſelues, appointed by the malicious Emperour for that purpoſe. Yet after many dangers paſſed, and his armie ſore waſted, he came at length into SYRIA, and laid ſiege vnto DAMASCO, the royall ſeat of *Noradin* the Turkiſh king; which he ſo notably impugned, that the defendants were almoſt out of hope to be able for any long time to hold out. Neither had it otherwiſe happened, had not enuie, the inſeparable attendant of all honourable actions, fruſtrated ſo great an hope: for the beſieged Turkes being brought to great extremitie, and now euen at the point to haue yeelded the citie, certaine of the Chriſtian Princes of that countrey, vnderſtanding that the king had promiſed the gouernment of that ſo famous a citie, vnto *Philip* Earle of FLANDERS, if it

Damaſco in vaine beſieged by Lewis the French king.

B ſhould be won; & ſecretly grudging to haue a ſtranger preferred before themſelues, corrupted alſo (as ſome ſay) with the Turks gold, fraudulently perſwaded the King to remoue from that part of the citie where he lay, and might in fine haue taken the ſame, vnto another farre ſtronger: where, after hee had lien a great while, ſtriuing with no ſmall extremities, hee was inforced for want of victuals to raiſe his ſiege and to depart. And ſo without any thing done worth the remembrance, returned againe into FRANCE, deteſting the very name of *Emanuell* the Greeke Emperor; by whoſe ſiniſter dealing ſo notable an expedition was brought to be of none effect, to the great diſcouraging of all other Chriſtian Princes for taking the like againe in hand.

1147

Now had the ſtate of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, for certaine yeeres after the aforeſaid expeditions, reſted in good peace: when *Noradin* the Turke (moued with ſome iniuries done by the

C Chriſtians vnto the Turks and Arabians, who by the leaue of King *Baldwin* dwelt in the forreſt of LYBANVS) came and ſtraitly beſieged PANEADE, a citie of the Chriſtians there by: vpon whom the Chriſtians in the citie, now brought vnto great extremitie, made a moſt deſperate ſallie, and had with the Turkes a ſharpe and cruell fight: but oppreſſed with the multitude, and inforced to retire, they were ſo hardly purſued, that the Turkes together with them entred the citie, and put to ſword all that came in their way. Neuertheleſſe, the greater part of the citizens (by good fortune) had in good time before retired themſelues into the caſtle, which was of great ſtrength, and there ſtood vpon their guard. Of whoſe diſtreſſe, with the taking of the citie, *Baldwin* hearing, raiſed a great armie, and ſo ſet forward to relieue them. But *Noradin* hearing of his comming, and doubtfull of his owne ſtrength, after he had taken the ſpoile of what he could, ſet

Paneade taken and ſacked by the Turks.

D fire on the citie, and ſo departed. The citizens thus deliuered, repaired againe the wals of the citie, the Kings power ſtill defending them. *Noradin* with his power all the while lying cloſe in the woods not farre off, ſtill awaiting the offer of ſome good opportunitie to take the Chriſtians at aduantage, which ſhortly after fell out according to his owne deſire: for the King doubting no ſuch matter, but ſuppoſing him to haue beene quite gone, hauing at his returne ſent away all his footmen, followed after himſelfe, accompanied only with his horſemen, and they alſo not very ſtrong: but as he was paſſing the riuer IORDAN, he was ſuddenly ſet vpon by *Noradin* and the Turks, and after a ſharpe conflict ouerthrowne. The King himſelfe with ſome few hardly eſcaped to SAPHET, a towne there by; moſt part of his nobilitie being there either ſlaine or taken priſoners: amongſt the reſt, *Bertrand* of BLANQVEFORT, maſter of the Templars, with diuers

Paneade again repaired by the Chriſtians.

E others of great name, fell at that time into the enemies hands, & ſo were carried away priſoners.

After this victorie, *Noradin* ſtrengthned with new ſupplies from DAMASCO, came againe and beſieged PANEADE, in good hope, that the citizens diſcouraged with ſo great an ouerthrow of the King, and out of hope to be by him relieued, would now either yeeld the citie, or elſe not be able long to hold it out. But the King, contrary to his expectation, had in ſhorter time than was thought poſſible, raiſed a great power; and aided by the Prince of ANTIOCH, and the countie of TRIPOLIS, was marching to the reliefe of his citie: of whoſe approach *Noradin* vnderſtanding, although he had made diuers breaches in the wals, and brought the citizens almoſt vnto vtter deſpaire, roſe with his armie and departed. And ſo *Baldwin* hauing now twice relieued the beſieged citie, returned alſo to HIERVSALEM.

F Many an hard conflict with the Turks had this young King afterwards, during the fortunate time of his raigne: wherein that troubleſome kingdome happily flouriſhed amidſt the miſcreants; all which to recount, were long and tedious. Yet among other things, it is worth the remembrance, how that *Noradin* the Turke, then King of DAMASCO, beſieging SVETA, a caſtle belonging to the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, was in a ſet battell by *Baldwin* ouerthrowne and put to flight, with the loſſe of the greateſt part of his armie. King *Baldwin* had before married

ried *Emanuell* the Greeke Emperours neece: and now the ſame Emperour by *Guido Stephanus*, G
and *Triſillus* his embaſſadours, requeſted to haue giuen him againe in marriage one of the kings
nigh kinſwomen. Vnto whom the king after mature deliberation had concerning that matter,
offered him *Matilde*, an honourable Lady, the ſiſter of the countie of TRIPOLIS; whom the
Emperour refuſed: and afterward by the conſent of the king, made choice of *Mary* the daugh-
ter of *Raymund* prince of ANTIOCH lately dead. Which the countie of TRIPOLIS taking
in euill part, in reuenge thereof, by certaine men of warre whom he put to ſea, grieuouſly infe-
ſted the frontiers of the Emperours dominions. Now during the time that the marriage was in
ſolemnizing, the king made his abode at ANTIOCH, at which time hee fortified the caſtle of
PONTISFER vpon the riuer ORONTES, againſt the incurſions of the enemies. But lying H
there, he according to his wonted manner, to preuent ſickneſſe, vpon the approach of Winter
tooke phyſicke of *Barac* a Iew, the countie of TRIPOLIS his phyſitian. After the taking
whereof, he fell preſently into the bloudy flix, and afterward into a conſumption: whereby it
was verily ſuppoſed, that he was poiſoned by the Iew, and the rather, for that ſome little part of
the ſame medicine that was left, being giuen to a dogge, he thereof in ſhort time died. The king
thus languiſhing in paine, to change the aire, remoued firſt to TRIPOLIS, and afterward to
BERYTVS, where he departed this troubleſome life, to liue with his Sauiour Chriſt in bliſſe for
euer. His dead body was afterward with the generall mourning of his ſubiects conueied to
HIERVSALEM, and there ſolemnly enterred by the body of his father. He departed the 13.
The death of king Baldwin lamented by his enemies. of Februarie, in the yeere of grace 1163, when he had raigned 21. yeeres. Hee was a man ſo I
gracious, that not only his friends, but euen the Infidels themſelues (as it is reported) lamented
his death. Inſomuch that *Noradin* king of DAMASCO, his ancient enemie, being incited by
1164 ſome of his captaines to inuade his kingdome at ſuch time as his funerals were in ſolemnizing,
refuſed ſo to doe, anſwering, That compaſſion and regard was to be had of the iuſt ſorrow of
the Chriſtians his ſubiects; for that they had loſt ſuch a king, as the like was hardly againe to be
found in the world.

But leauing the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, with the greater part of SYRIA, thus victo-
rioully gained from the Infidels: let vs for the orderly continuation of our hiſtorie, againe re-
turne to ſee the proceedings of the Turkes at the ſame time in the leſſer ASIA alſo: wherein
they yet held the ſtate of a kingdome, though not ſo great as before the comming of the Prin- K
ces of the Weſt into thoſe countries. After the death of *Sultan Solyman* (with whom Duke
Godfrey and the other Chriſtian Princes had much to doe as they paſſed into SYRIA) as is
aforeſaid, one *Muhamet* ſucceeded him: betwixt whom and *Maſut*, Sultan of ICONIVM,
Diſcord amongſt the Turkes in the leſſer Aſia. great diſcord aroſe, which at length broke out into open warre, to the farther weakning of that
late ſhaken kingdome. For the maintenance of which quarrell, as profitable for his ſtate, *Iohn
Comnenus* the Greeke Emperor, gaue aid to *Maſut* againſt his enemie *Muhamet*. Neuertheleſſe in
ſhort time the two Infidels (profeſſing both one ſuperſtition) became friends, and ioyning their
forces, ouerthrew the Emperour with his whole armie, as he lay at the ſiege of ICONIVM, at
Maſut the Sultan diuideth his kingdome amongſt his three ſonnes. which time he himſelfe with much adoe eſcaped by flight. *Maſut* afterwards hauing got into
his hands the whole kingdome of the Turks, at the time of his death diuided the ſame amongſt L
his three ſonnes: vnto *Clizaſthlan* his eldeſt ſonne he gaue ICONIVM his chiefe citie, with the
townes & prouinces ſubiect thereunto: Vnto *Iagupaſan* his other ſonne (or rather as ſome will
haue it, his ſonne in law) he allotted AMASIA and ANCYRA, with the fruitfull countrey of
CAPPADOCIA, and the places adioyning: But vnto *Dadune* his other ſonne (or ſonne in law)
he gaue the great cities of CESAREA and SEBASTIA, with the large countries thereabouts,
all ſometime a part of the Greeke empire, but then the portions of the Turks. Long it was not af-
ter this diuiſion of the kingdome, but that theſe brethren after the maner of ambitious men, for-
getfull of the bonds both of loue & nature, fell at diſcord among themſelues; the *Sultan* ſeeking
the deſtruction of *Iagupaſan*, and he likewiſe of him, and that not by ſecret meanes, but euen by
open force of armes. *Emanuell* the Greeke Emperour in the meane time wiſhing the deſtru- M
ction of them both, heartily reioycing thereat, and by his embaſſadours ſecretly animating the
one againſt the other, yet in open ſhew more fauoring of the part of *Iagupaſan* thã of the *Sultan*,
by whoſe aid he obtained againſt him many notable and bloudie victories: in ſo much that the
Sultan wearie of the quarrell, was glad not only by his embaſſadours to ſeeke the Emperors fa-
uour, but euen in perſon himſelfe to goe and meet him, as he came with his army out of SIRIA,

and

A and ſo to accompanie him vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was together with the Emperour moſt honorably receiued, with all the ſignes of ioy and triumph that could poſſibly be deuiſed. The Emperour no leſſe reioycing to be ſued vnto by ſo great a Prince, than did the Sultan at his ſo honourable entertainment.

Among other queint deuices of many, for the ſolemnizing of ſo great a triumph, there was an actiue Turke, who had openly giuen it out, That againſt an appointed time hee would from the top of an high tower in the tilt-yard, flie by the ſpace of a furlong: the report whereof had filled the citie with a wonderfull expectation of ſo ſtrange a noueltie. The time prefixed being come, and the people without number aſſembled, the Turke according to his promiſe, vpon the
B top of the high tower ſhewed himſelfe, girt in a long and large white garment, gathered into many pleites and foldings, made of purpoſe for the gathering of the winde: wherewith the fooliſh man had vainly perſwaded himſelfe to haue houered in the aire, as doe birds vpon their wings, or to haue guided himſelfe as are ſhips with their ſailes. Standing thus houering a great while, as ready to take his flight; the beholders ſtill laughing, and crying out, Flie Turke, flie, how long ſhall we expect thy flight? The Emperour in the meane time diſſwading him from ſo deſperate an attempt: and the Sultan betwixt feare and hope hanging in doubtfull ſuſpence what might happen to his countryman. The Turke, after he had a great while houered with his armes abroad, (the better to haue gathered the winde, as birds doe with their wings) and long deluded the expectation of the beholders; at length finding the winde fit, as he thought, for his
C purpoſe, committed himſelfe with his vaine hope vnto the aire: But in ſtead of mounting aloft, this fooliſh *Icarus* came tumbling downe headlong with ſuch violence, that he brake his necke, his armes, and legs, with almoſt all the bones of his body. This fooliſh flight of the Turke gaue ſuch occaſion of ſport and laughter vnto the vulgar people, alwaies ready to ſcoffe and ieſt at ſuch ridiculous matters, that the Turkes attending vpon the Sultan could not walke in the ſtreets vnderided; the artificers in their ſhops ſhaking their armes, with their tooles in their hands, as did the Turke, and ſtill crying out, Flie Turke, flie: whereof the Emperour hearing, although he could not chuſe but thereat ſmile himſelfe, as not ignorant of the ſcoffes & taunts of the vulgar people; yet in fauour of the Sultan, who was not a little grieued therewith, he commanded ſuch their inſolencie to be reſtrained.

Another fooliſh Icarus.

Nicetas Choniates rerum ab imper. Manuele Comneno geſtar. lib 3. fol. 143.

D The ſolemnitie of the triumph ouerpaſſed (which by an ominous earthquake at the ſame time happning, was ſomewhat obſcured) the Emperor to ſhew his wealth, and to gratifie the Sultan, gaue vnto him many rich & royall preſents, with ſuch a maſſe of treaſure, as that he much wondered thereat. In requitall whereof, and in token of his thankfulneſſe, he againe honoured the Emperour with the name of his father, and tearming himſelfe by the name of his ſonne, promiſed to reſtore vnto him the citie of SEBASTIA, with the territorie thereunto belonging, then part of *Dadune* his inheritance. Neuertheleſſe, all this was nothing elſe but meere diſſimulation, as afterward by proofe appeared. For returning home, hee thruſt *Dadune* indeed out of SEBASTIA, which he ſpoiled, with the country thereabout: but forgetfull of his promiſe, kept it wholly to himſelfe; and by force tooke alſo from him the citie of CÆSAREA, with the coun-
E try of AMASIA, by him before but lately poſſeſſed. In like manner, he bent his forces alſo vpon *Iagupaſan* his other brother, who in the very preparation of thoſe warres died: by whoſe vntimely death the citie of ANCYRA, (with all his dominions in CAPADOCIA, fell into the Sultans hands. Who now poſſeſſed of all his fathers kingdome, and ſwelling with pride, forgetting all former courteſies, inuaded the Emperors territories, & tooke from him the citie of LAODICEA in PHRYGIA, where he did great harme, as alſo in the country thereabouts, killing the people as he went, or elſe carrying them away with him captiues. For the repreſſing of which outrages, the Emperour with a ſtrong armie paſſed ouer into ASIA, and there in the frontiers of his territories fortified DORILEVM againſt the incurſions of the Turks. In performing whereof, he, to the example and ſtirring vp of others, carried the firſt basket of ſtones himſelfe vpon his
F ſhoulders; & vſed ſuch farther diligence, that in ſhort time the citie was compaſſed about with ſtrong walls, and deepe ditches, maugre the Turks, who ceaſed not with continuall alarmes and skirmiſhes to haue hindered the worke. With like care and for like purpoſe hee alſo fortified SYNNAVM, another ſtronghold: and leauing in either place a ſtrong garriſon, returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE. Neuertheleſſe the Turkes ceaſed not with continuall inrodes to doe what harmes they might vpon the frontiers of the empire, though not altogether

with ſo good ſucceſſe as before, being many times cut off by the garriſons of the late fortified townes: which grieuances ſtill increaſing, cauſed the Emperor to expoſtulate with the Sultan, as with an vnthankfull man, and forgetfull of ſo great kindneſſe before done vnto him, as the eſtabliſhment of him in his kingdome came vnto: who with no leſſe vehemencie vpbraided him againe with vnconſtancie and breach of promiſe, as well for fortifying the aforeſaid places contrary to the league betwixt them, as for that hauing promiſed much more, hee had thereof performed nothing. Thus vnkindneſſe daily growing vpon euery trifle, as it commonly falleth out among men of great ſpirit, and iealous of their owne honours: it was daily expected when the matter ſhould fall out into open and bloudie warre; both of them being men of great valour, and apt to reuenge the leaſt iniurie to them offred. Yet was it the Sultans manner warily to manage his warres by his politike and expert captaines: whereas the Emperour being of an hotter nature, and couragious aboue meaſure, commonly in all his great expeditions aduentured his owne perſon, without reſpect what danger might therof enſue vnto himſelfe or his ſtate. Long it was not but that the Emperor, fully reſolued to be reuenged of ſo many wrongs done vnto him and his ſubiects by the Turkes, raiſed the whole power of his empire both in EVROPE and ASIA, in ſuch ſort, as if he had therewith purpoſed, not only to haue raſed to the ground ICONIVM, the regall ſeat of the Turkiſh Sultan, but euen vtterly to haue deſtroied the whole nation of the Turkes. Thus with a moſt puiſſant and populous armie, well appointed of all things neceſſary, he paſſed ouer into ASIA, and ſo in good order marching through PHRYGIA, LAODICEA, CHONAS, (called in ancient time PASSAS) S. ARCHANGEL, LAMPIS, CÆNAS, (where the head of the great and famous riuer MÆANDER riſeth, whereinto the riuer MARSYAS falleth) and from thence to CHONIA, he with euill lucke, and worſe ſpeed, paſſed by MYRIOCEPHALON, an old ruinous caſtle, ominous by the name thereof, as by the euent in ſhort time after it prooued. And albeit that hee marched very circumſpectly, ſtill intrenching his armie in euery place where he lodged; yet could hee make but ſmall ſpeed, by reaſon of the multitude of his carriages, and of the baſe people that attended the ſame. The Turkes in the meane while oftentimes ſhewing themſelues in troupes, and in places of aduantage, skirmiſhing ſometime with one part of the armie, and ſometime with another, but neuer daring to aduenture the fortune of a iuſt battell: yet by ſuch meanes were the victuallers of the armie oftentimes cut off, and the paſſages for the Emperor made very dangerous. And the more to diſtreſſe the Chriſtians in their long trauell, they found the countrey before them of purpoſe deſtroied by the Turks, and the water in many places poiſoned, whereof the Chriſtians vnadviſedly drinking, fell into many grieuous diſeaſes, eſpecially the flix, and thereof died in great number. The Sultan in the meane time, although he had in readineſſe a right puiſſant armie of his owne, and had procured great aid from the Perſian Sultan his kinſman & chiefe ſupporter: yet fearing the doubtfull euent of warre, & loth to aduenture his whole eſtate vpon the fortune of a battell, ſought by his embaſſadours (ſent for that purpoſe) to grow to ſome peace with the Emperor, and that vpon ſuch honourable conditions, as by the wiſer ſort were thought not to be at any hand refuſed: which large offers, the Sultan as deſirous of peace, made vnto him not once, but againe and againe; which the Emperor neuertheleſſe (repoſing great confidence in his owne power, and prickt forward by the gallants of the court, better acquainted with the braue triumphs of peace, than the hard warres of the Turkes) proudly reiected; and ſo diſmiſſing the embaſſadours, ſcornfully willed them to tell their maſter, That he would giue him anſwer vnto his requeſts vnder the wals of ICONIVM. Which cauſed the Sultan, now out of all hope of any reconciliation to be made betwixt the Emperour and him, with all his power to take the ſtraits of ZIZRICA; whereby the armie of the Chriſtians, departing from MYRIOCEPHALON, muſt of neceſſitie paſſe. The entrance into theſe ſtraits was by a long valley, on either ſide encloſed with high mountaines, which toward the North riſing and falling, according as the hils gaue leaue, opened into diuers large vallies, which by little and little growing againe ſtraiter and ſtraiter, with high and craggie rockes hanging ouer on either ſide, and almoſt touching one another, gaue vnto the painfull traueller a moſt hard and difficult paſſage.

Vnkindneſſe betwixt the Emperour and the Sultan.

A great ouerſight of the Emperour.

Into this ſo dangerous a valley, the Emperour not fearing the enemies force, deſperately entred with his army, hauing neither prouided for the cleering of the paſſages, or ſafetie of his carriages, in no other order than as if he had marched through the plaine and champaine countrey, although it were before told him (that which hee ſhortly after, but too late, ſaw) that the ene-

A enemie had ſtrongly poſſeſſed both the ſtraits and the mountains, to hinder his farther paſſage. The Vauward of his armie was conducted by *Iohn* and *Andronicus*, the ſonnes of *Angelus Conſtantine*, accompanied with *Macroducas Conſtantine* and *Lapardas Andronicus*: In the right wing was *Baldwin*, the Emperours brother in law; and in the left *Maurozomes Theodorus*: After them followed the drudges and ſcullions, with an infinit number of carters and other baſe people, attending vpon the carriages, with the baggage of the whole armie: Next vnto theſe came the emperour with the maine battell, conſiſting for the moſt part of right valiant and worthie ſouldiers: The rereward was ſhut vp by *Andronicus Contoſtephanus*, with a number of moſt reſolute men. They were not farre entred into theſe ſtraits, but that the Turks from the mountains
B & broken cliffes, ſhewed themſelues on euery ſide, deliuering their deadly ſhot from the vpper ground vpon the Chriſtians below, as thicke as haile. Neuertheleſſe the ſonnes of *Angelus* with *Macroducas* and *Lapardas*, and the Vauntguard, caſting themſelues into a three ſquare battell in forme of a wedge, with their targuets in manner of a penthouſe caſt cloſe together ouer their heads, and their archers on euerie ſide luſtely beſtowing their ſhot amongſt the thickeſt of their enemies, by plaine force driue them out of the ſtraits they had before poſſeſſed, and cauſed them to retire farther off into the mountains; and ſo hauing made themſelues way, with litle or no loſſe paſſed thoſe dangerous ſtraits: vntill that at length hauing recouered the top of an hil, very commodious for their purpoſe, as the caſe ſtood, they there ſtaied, & preſently encamped themſelues. And happely, with like good fortune might the reſt of the armie haue paſſed alſo, had
C they in like order, and with like courage, preſently followed after. But failing ſo to do, and troubled with the multitude of their carriages, which could not poſſibly make any way through thoſe ſtrait and rough paſſages (but troubled themſelues one another, as alſo the whole armie) they were from the vpper ground miſerably ouerwhelmed with the multitude of the Turkiſh archers, whoſe arrowes fell as thicke vpon them from the mountaines, as if it had been a perpetuall tempeſt or ſhoure of haile, to the great diſordering & diſmaying of the whole armie: which the Turks quickly perceiuing, and therewith encouraged, in great numbers came downe from the mountaines where they had before houered ouer the heads of the Chriſtians, and forcibly entring the plaine ground, & comming to handie blowes, firſt ouerthrew the right wing; where *Baldwin* himſelfe ſeeking to reſtore his diſordered companies, and to ſtay the fury of the enemy,
D (now raging in the bloud of the Chriſtians) with a troupe of valiant horſemen breaking into the thickeſt of them, as became a worthy captaine, was there compaſſed in with the multitude of his enemies, and ſlaine, together with all his followers, and the greateſt part of the whole wing by him commanded. With this victorie the Turks were ſo encouraged, that comming downe with all their power, they ſtopped all the waies whereby the Chriſtians were to paſſe, who as men couped vp in thoſe dangerous ſtraits, were not able either to defend themſelues, or to help one another: but incloſed as deere in a toyle, and one troubling another, were the cauſe both of the deſtruction of themſelues and others. For by reaſon of the ſtraitneſſe of the place, neither could they that were before, retire, neither they that were behind in the rereward, come forward to relieue the one the other, as need required: the carriages alſo, which were many, and in the
E middle of the armie, ſeruing them to no other purpoſe than to the hurt of themſelues. There were the beaſts that ſerued for burden, together with the ſouldiers, ouerwhelmed with the Turks ſhot, the vallies lay full of dead bodies, the riuers ran mingled with the bloud of men and beaſts, in ſuch terrible manner, as is not by pen to be expreſſed. For the Chriſtians not able either to goe forward, or retire, were there in thoſe ſtraits ſlaine like ſheepe: if any courage or ſparke of valour were by any ſhewed againſt the enemie, fighting at ſo great aduantage, it was but loſt, ſeruing to little or no purpoſe. And to increaſe theſe miſeries, the Turks in ſcorn ſhewed vpon the point of a launce the head of *Andronicus Bataza*, the Emperors nephew, who comming with an armie out of Paphlagonia, and Heraclea Pontica, againſt the Turks of Amasia, was now by the way by them ouerthrowne and ſlaine. The report whereof, confir-
F med by the ſight of his head, and the conſideration of the deſperate danger wherein the whole armie preſently ſtood, ſo troubled the Emperour, that he was at his wits end: and with drie teares (if it may be ſo ſaid) diſſembling his inward griefe, as one out of comfort, ſtood doubtfull which way to turne himſelfe. For the Turks hauing ſuffered the vantguard to paſſe, with al their power charged the Emperours maine battell, as his chiefe ſtrength, nothing doubting, but that hauing once ouerthrowne it, they ſhould eaſily and at pleaſure ouerthrow the reſt. Oftentimes

Baldwin ſlaine.

The miſerie of the Chriſtians by the Turks incloſed in the ſtraits.

The Emperour in great perplexitie.

had the Emperour attempted to haue driuen the enemie out of thoſe ſtraits, and ſo to haue ope- G
ned a way for his armie to haue paſſed, but all in vaine, the power of the Turks ſtill increaſing,
and they at great aduantage notably maintaining the paſſages before by them taken. Neuerthe-
The deſperate reſolution of the Emperour. leſſe, ſeeing no leſſe danger in ſtaying ſtill, than in going forward, he with a few of his beſt ſouldi-
ers, armed with deſpaire, and reſolued to die, (vnto which kinde of men nothing is terrible) ſet
forward directly vpon his enemies, willing the reſt with like reſolution euery man to make for
himſelfe the beſt ſhift he could. And ſo with many wounds and ſturdie blowes both giuen and
receiued, he by plaine force and might of hand brake thorow the thickeſt of his enemies, and ſo
eſcaped out of thoſe ſtraits, as out of a trap. But yet not without many wounds receiued in his
perſon, and himſelfe ſo wearied as that he was not able to lift vp his helmet, being beaten cloſe H
to his head, and in his target were found ſticking thirtie of the Turks arrowes or thereabouts, the
manifeſt tokens of his danger. The other legions ſeeking to follow the Emperor (for other way
they had none) were on euery ſide hardly aſſailed by the Turks, and infinite numbers of them
ſlaine, beſide many others that periſhed in thoſe ſtraits, ouerborne and troden to death by their
owne fellowes. Yea ſuch as had the fortune to eſcape out of one of theſe perillous ſtraits, were
forthwith ſlaine in the next: for this ſo dangerous a paſſage thorow the mountaines, was diui-
ded (as is aforeſaid) into ſeuen vallies, which giuing faire and broad entrances, the farther a man
went, grew ſtill ſtraiter and ſtraiter, all which ſtraits the Turks had before ſtrongly poſſeſſed. At
which time alſo, the more to increaſe the terrour of the day, the light ſand raiſed with the feet of
the men & horſes, was with the violence of a moſt tempeſtuous winde which then blew, carried I
ſo forcibly and thicke, that both the armies grapling together, as if it had beene in the darkneſſe
of the night, killed whomſoeuer they met withall, without reſpect of friend or foe; by which er-
rour many were euen of their owne friends ſlaine. In euery place lay great heapes of the Turks
ſlaine together with the Chriſtians, and with them great numbers of horſes and other beaſts for
carriage, ſo that thoſe vallies where this bloudie conflict was, ſeemed to be nothing elſe but a
large burying place of the Turks and Chriſtians with their horſes: but the greater number was
of the Chriſtians that periſhed, and they not altogether of the common ſort, but euen of the
A moſt miſera- braueſt captaines, and the Emperours neereſt kinſmen. The violence of the winde ceaſing, and
ble ſpectacle. the day cleering vp, there was of all others to be ſeene (a moſt wofull ſpectacle) men yet aliue,
ſome wounded, ſome whole, couered ſome to the middle, ſome to the necke, with dead carkaſ- K
ſes, in ſuch ſort, as that they were not able with any ſtrugling to get out: who with their hands
caſt vp towards heauen, with ruthfull voices cried out for helpe to ſuch as paſſed by; but all in
vaine, for euery man poſſeſſed with the common feare, and by their danger meaſuring their
owne, paſſed by them without compaſſion, as more carefull of their owne ſafetie, leauing them
yet liuing as men to be numbred among the dead.

The Emperour in danger to haue beene taken, notably defendeth himſelfe. The Emperor himſelfe, as a man almoſt now ſpent, being got out of the danger, ſtood a while
to breathe himſelfe vnder the ſhadow of a wilde peare tree, without any page or man to attend
him; whom a poore common ſouldier eſpying, and moued with compaſſion, came vnto him,
and offring him the beſt ſeruice he could, helped him vp with his helmet, and buckled vp his ar-
mour, which before hung dangling here and there about him: when in the meane while a Turke L
cõming in vpon him, had taken his horſe by the bridle, in hope to haue led him away priſoner:
whom for all that, the Emperour as wearie as he was, with the trunchion of his broken launce
which he had yet in his hand, ſtrucke downe to the ground, and ſo cleered himſelfe of him. Pre-
ſently after came alſo another ſort of the ſtragling Turks, ready alſo to haue ſeized vpon him,
and to haue taken him priſoner, of whom he ſlew one with the aforeſaid horſemans ſtaffe, and
with his ſword ſtrucke off the head of another of them, and ſo kept them off vntill that by the
comming in of ten of his owne ſouldiers he was releeued. Departing thence with purpoſe to
haue ioyned himſelfe vnto the legions that were gone before in the vauward, hee had not gone
farre but that hee was much troubled by other Turks that hee met, and the heapes of the dead
bodies that lay in his way: yet at laſt, hauing with much labour and more danger paſſed thoſe M
ſtraits, & a riuer running thereby, being glad in many places to ride ouer the dead bodies of his
owne people, and ſome other of his owne ſouldiers now reſorting vnto him, he there ſaw *Iohn Cataeuzene*, a noble & right valiant gentleman that had maried his neece, fighting alone againſt
a great number of the Turks, to be compaſſed in and ſlaine; whom he was no way able to re-
lieue. Which Turks alſo ſeeing him paſſe by, followed after him as after a moſt rich prey, in
hope

A hope to haue either presently taken or slaine him : whom neuertheless hee (encouraging the small company he had about him) notably repulsed; and so sometime marching forward, and againe as occasion required, making a stand, came at length long looked for, but most welcome, vnto the legions that were gone before, not so sorrie for their owne hard estate, as carefull of his danger.

But before he could come to those his Legions, he ready to faint for thirst, commanded water to be brought him out of the riuer that ran fast by; which after he had tasted, and by the vnpleasant taste thereof perceiued the same to be infected, he fetching a deepe sigh, said, *O how vnfortunately haue I tasted Christian bloud !* whereunto an audacious and malapert souldier there

B present, and more bitter than the cruell time it selfe, replied ; *Emperour, thou didst not now, thou didst not now, I say, first, but long since, and oftentimes, drinke the bloud of the Christians, euen vntill thou wast drunke againe, at such time as thou didst with most grieuous exactions vex and deuoure thy poore subiects.* Which reproachfull speech the Emperour put vp in silence, making as if hee had not heard it. With like patience he also forbare the same railing companion, at such time as he seeing his treasures hardly beset, and in danger to be taken by the Turkes, to animate his souldiers, willed them to doe what they could to rescue the same, and to take it for their labour. *This treasure* (said this impudent fellow) *should before haue beene giuen vnto thy souldiers, rather than now, when as it cannot be recouered but with great danger and bloudshed : and therefore, if thou be a man of valour, as thou wouldest be accounted, and as the present case requireth, valiantly charge the Turks (now*

C *ready to carry it away) thy selfe, and so recouer thine euill gotten goods.* Whereunto the Emperour answered no more, but, *Good words souldier*, and so put it vp, as did *Dauid* the railings of *Shimei*. Shortly after the comming of the Emperour vnto those Legions of his vauntguard (the onely remainder of his armie that was left whole & vnbroken) came also *Andronicus Contostephanus*, who had the leading of the rereward, with diuers others of great place, who had by good fortune escaped the furie of the Turkes. The miseries of that day (not well to be expressed) being ended by the comming on of the night, the Christians sate in the campe oppressed with a generall heauinesse, leaning their heads vpon their elbowes, and considering the present danger wherein they were, scarcely accounted themselues among the liuing : the Turkes in the meane time to increase their feare, all the night running about the campe, and crying aloud vnto such

D of their countrymen in the campe, as had abiured their religion, or for other respects had taken part with the imperials, that they should that night get them out of the campe, whereas otherwise, if they staied vnto the morning, they should be all but lost men. In this so great an extremitie the Emperor not knowing what to doe, calling together his chiefe commanders, declared vnto them the desperate danger they were in, together with his resolution : which was, secretly himselfe to flie, and to leaue the rest, euery man to make what shift he could for himselfe. Which his base determination, so foule as fouler could not be, they all wondering at, as proceeding from a distraughted minde: and by chance ouerheard by one of the common souldiers, that stood without the tent, the same souldier fetching a deepe sigh, in detestation thereof cried out with a loud voice, *What meanes the Emperour ?* and so turning himselfe vnto him, said :

The malapert speech of an insolent souldier to the Emperor.

The great patience of the Emperour.

The fearfull resolution of the Emperour.

E *Art not thou he that hast thrust vs into this desolate and strait way, and cast vs headlong into destruction ? and hast as it were in a morter enclosed vs in these rockes and mountaines, ready as it were to ouerwhelme vs. What had we to doe with this vaile of mourning, and mouth of hell ? Wherefore came we into these mischieuous & rough straits ? What can we particularly complaine of the Barbarians, which in these inextricable windings and straits haue thus entangled and beset vs ? Was it not thou that brought'st vs hither ? And wilt thou now, as sheepe appointed to the slaughter, thy selfe betray vs ?* With which so sharpe a reprehension the Emperour throughly pierced, changed his former determination for flight, resoluing now to stand by it, whatsoeuer happened. But what should he now doe, beset with his enemies, still ready to deuoure him ? Helpe he saw none, either in himselfe, or to be expected from others; nought remained but death and despaire. In this extremitie, all mans helpe

F now failing, it pleased the most mighty (which chastiseth and healeth againe, which striketh and yet giueth life, and suffereth not the staffe of the sinners alwayes to rage into the portion of the iust) with mercifull eye to looke downe vpon these distressed men, and with an vnwonted kind of clemencie to touch the Sultans heart, in such sort, as that hee which but the other day stood in dread of the Emperour, and now hauing him as it were in his power, was ouercome with his miserie : or as in times past he by *Husai* ouerthrew the counsell of *Achitophel*, and

A sharpe reprehension of a common souldier vnto the Emperour.

changed the minde of *Abſolon* to follow ſuch aduice as ſhould bring him to deſtruction: ſo then G
alſo he turned the minde of the Turkiſh Sultan, that (perſwaded by certaine of the chiefe men
about him, who in time of peace had vſed to receiue great gifts and preſents from the Emperor)
he of his owne accord by his embaſſadours offered peace vnto the Emperor, before that he in ſo
great diſtreſſe ſued vnto him for any; & that vpon the ſelfeſame conditions they had made their
leagues before. The Turkes in the meane time ignorant of the Sultans reſolution, early in the
morning were ready to aſſault the Emperours campe, in hope at once to haue ouerthrowne his
whole power; and with a barbarous outcrie ſtill riding about it, came ſo nigh, that with their ar-
rowes they ſlew diuers of the Chriſtians within their owne trenches: Againſt whom the Em-
peror ſent out *Iohn* the ſonne of *Conſtantinus Angelus*, and after him *Macroducas Conſtantinus*, but
to little or no purpoſe. In the meane time came one *Gabras*, a man of the greateſt reputation H
among the Turkes, embaſſadour from the Sultan, by whoſe commandement the Turkes ceaſed farther to aſſault the campe. This *Gabras* comming vnto the Emperour, and after the manner of the Barbarians, honouring him with reuerence done euen downe to the ground: Firſt preſented him with a goodly horſe, whoſe furniture was all of ſiluer, as if it had beene for triumph, & a faire two edged ſword. Afterwards falling into a large diſcourſe concerning a peace to be made, & with many kinde words, as with an enchantment, appeaſing the Emperours heauineſſe conceiued of his late loſſe; hee among other pleaſant conceits then vttered, ſeeing the Emperor in a rich roabe of yellow ouer his armour, told him, that the colour was not fit for war, as ominous and portending euill lucke: whereat the Emperor a little ſmiling, gaue it him, with the fortune thereof: and receiuing the horſe and ſword ſent him from the Sultan, ſigned the I
peace. Amongſt other conditions of the peace (which the dangerouſneſſe of the time ſuffered not the Emperor curiouſly to examine; one was, That DORILEVM and SVBLEVM, before by him fortified, and the ground of this vnfortunate warre, ſhould be againe raſed. Peace thus beyond all hope being concluded, & the Emperor deliuered of a great feare, purpoſed another way to return home, to auoid the ſight of the ſlaine: yet was he by his guides, euen of purpoſe as it was thought, lead back the ſame way, to behold with his eies thoſe miſerable ſpectacles of the ſlain, which could not with any teares be ſufficiently lamented: for the ſtraits were made plaine, the vallies were raiſed into hils, and the forreſt lay couered with the carkaſſes of the ſlaine: no man paſſed by, but with heauineſſe and griefe, calling by name vpon their friends and familiars there loſt. Hauing againe paſſed thoſe dolefull ſtraits, the Turkes were againe in the taile of the K
armie: for it was reported, that the Sultan repenting himſelfe to haue ſuffered his enemies ſo to eſcape out of his hands, had giuen leaue vnto ſuch as would, to purſue them, but followed not himſelfe with his whole power as before; for moſt of the better ſort of his ſouldiers loaded with the ſpoile, were now returned home. Yet theſe that followed after the armie, ſlew many, eſpecially ſuch as were weake or wounded, and ſo vnable to follow the reſt: although the Emperor to helpe the matter, had for the repulſing of them placed the beſt of his captaines and ſouldiers in the rereward. Being come to CHONAS, and now out of feare of his enemies, he gaue vnto euery one of his hurt ſouldiers mony to pay for the curing of their wounds, and to bring them into their countries. And comming to PHILADELPHIA, there ſtaied for the refreſhing of himſelfe after ſo great miſeries. In his return he raſed SVBLEVM according to his promiſe, but not DO- L
RILEVM: whereof the Sultan by his embaſſadours complaining, he anſwered, That what he had, enforced thereunto by neceſſitie, promiſed, he greatly forced not to performe. In reuenge wherof, the Sultan ſent out one of his moſt valiant captains, called *Atapacke*, with foure & twentie thouſand good ſouldiers, choſen out of his whole armie, with ſtrait charge to waſt & deſtroy all the Emperors prouinces and townes, euen vnto the ſea ſide, without ſparing man, woman or childe; and in token thereof, to bring with him ſome of the ſea water, an oare, and ſome of the ſea ſand: who according to his charge, ſpoiled PHRYGIA, with the cities along the riuer MEANDER, euen vnto the ſea ſide. And ſo returning with a rich prey, by the way ſpoiled what before he had left vntouched. But in paſſing the riuer MEANDER, when he feared leaſt, he fell into the hands of *Iohn Bataza* the Emperours nephew, and of *Ducas Conſtantine*, a moſt valiant M
captaine, of purpoſe ſent againſt him by the Emperour with a great power; where hee was by them ſlaine, together with all his armie, and the rich bootie he had taken all againe recouered. Many other hard conflicts paſſed after this betwixt the Imperials and the Turkes, the one continually ſeeking to annoy the other; all which, for that therein nothing fell out much worth the

The Emperour returneth.

The Emperour altogether performeth not what he had promiſed to the Sultan.

Atapacke with all his armie ſlaine.

remembrance,

A remembrance, I for breuitie willingly paſſe ouer. In theſe endleſſe troubles died *Emanuell* the Greeke Emperour, when he had by the ſpace of eight and thirtie yeeres worthily gouerned that great empire, hauing in the time of his ſickneſſe but a little before his death taken vpon him the habit of a Monke, in token he had forſaken the world. All the time of his raigne he was no leſſe iealous of the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt, than of the Turkes in the Eaſt, and therefore euer dealt with them vnkindly. In time of warre he was ſo laborious, as if he had neuer taken felicitie but in paine; and againe in peace ſo giuen ouer to his pleaſure, as if he had neuer thought of any thing elſe. After whoſe death the Turkiſh Sultan, without reſiſtance inuading the frontiers of the empire, tooke SOZOPOLIS, with diuers towns thereabout in PHRYGIA, and long beſie-
B ged the famous citie of ATTALIA, and ſo daily encroched more & more vpon the prouinces of the empire, ioyning the ſame vnto his owne, which was no great matter for him to doe, the Greeke empire being then no better gouerned than was the chariot of the Sunne (as the Poets faigne) by *Phaeton*, farre vnfit for ſo great a charge: for *Alexius Comnenus*, otherwiſe called *Porphyrogenitus*, being then but a childe of about 12. yeeres old, ſucceeding his graue father in the empire, after the manner of children altogether following his pleaſure; his mother with his fathers kinſmen & friends, who aboue all things ought to haue had an eſpeciall care of his education, neglecting the old Emperours truſt in them repoſed, followed alſo their owne delights, without regard of the ruine of the commonweale. Some enamoured with the beautie of the young Empreſſe, gaue themſelues all to brauerie, & the courting of her: otherſome in great au-
C thoritie, with no leſſe deſire in the meane time, with the common treaſures filled their emptie cofers: and a third ſort there was (of all the reſt moſt dangerous) who neither reſpecting their ſenſual pleaſure, neither the heaping vp of wealth, looked not ſo low, aiming at the very empire it ſelfe. As for the cõmon good, that was of all other things of them all leaſt regarded. Amongſt theſe third ſort of the ambitious, was one *Andronicus*, the couſin of the late Emperor *Emanuell*, a man of an haughtie & troubleſome ſpirit, whom he the ſaid Emperor *Emanuell* had for his aſpiring, moſt part of the time of his raigne kept in priſon, or elſe in exile, as he now was, being by him not long before, for feare of raiſing of new troubles, confined to liue farre off frõ the court at ORNVM: who now hearing of the death of the Emperor *Emanuell*, of the factions in court, of the childiſhneſſe of the young Emperor *Alexius*, giuen wholly to his ſports; and the great men *Andronicus aſpireth.*
D put in truſt to haue ſeene to his bringing vp, and to the gouernment of the empire, ſome like Bees to flie abroad into the country, ſeeking after mony as the Bees doe for hony; ſome others in the meane time like hogs, lying ſtill and fatting themſelues with great and gainfull offices, wallowing in all exceſſe and pleaſure, to haue no regard of the honour or profit of the common weale: thought it now a fit time (in ſuch diſorder of the ſtate) for him to aſpire vnto the empire, after which he had all his life time longed. That he was generally beloued of the Conſtantinopolitans, yea and of ſome of the nobilitie alſo, he doubted not: for them he had long before by his popular behauiour gained, together with the diſtruſt of the late Emperour, iealous of his eſtate; which as it coſt him his libertie, ſo miſſed it not much but that it had coſt him his life alſo: but now that he was dead, wanted nothing more than ſome faire colour for the ſhadowing of
E his foule purpoſe. Amongſt many and right diuers things by him thought vpon, was a clauſe in the oath of obedience which he had giuen vnto the Emperour *Emanuell* and *Alexius* his ſonne, (which oath he had deliuered vnto him in writing) That if he ſhould ſee, heare, or vnderſtand of any thing dangerous or hurtfull to their honour, empire, or perſons, he ſhould forthwith bewray it, and to the vttermoſt of his power withſtand it: which words (not ſo to haue beene wreſted) as beſt ſeruing for his purpoſe, he tooke firſt occaſion for to worke vpon. And as he was a ſtout and imperious man, thereupon writ diuers letters vnto the young Emperour his couſin, vnto *Theodoſius* the Patriarch, and other ſuch as he knew well affected vnto the late Emperour *Emanuell*: wherein among other things which he wiſhed to be amended in the preſent gouernment, he ſeemed moſt to complaine of the immoderate power and authoritie of *Alexius*, then
F preſident of the Counſell: who in great fauour with the young Emperour, and more inward with the Empreſſe his mother than was ſuppoſed to ſtand with her honor, ruled all things at his pleaſure, in ſo much, as that nothing done by any the great officers of the empire, or by the Emperor himſelfe, was accounted of any force, except his approbation were thereunto annexed: whereby he was growne vnto ſuch an exceſſiue pride, hauing all things in his power, as that no man could without danger, as vpon the venemous Baſiliske, looke vpon him. Of which his ſo

Ambition couered with the zeale of the commonweale.

exceſſiue

excessiue and insolent power *Andronicus* by his letters now greatly complained, moued there- G
unto (as he would haue it beleeued) with the care he had of the young Emperors safety, which
could not (as he said) long stand with the others so great power, which he therefore (as in duty
bound) wished to be abridged: aggrauating withall the infamous report of *Alexius* his too much
familiarity with the Empresse, which first muttred in court, afterwards flew (as he said) through-
out the whole world. The reformation of which things, as tending to the danger of the person
of the Emperor, and dishonour of the estate; he forsooth as one in conscience bound, with great
grauity and eloquence (being a very learned man) both in open speech and writing most ear-
nestly desired: and thereby so wrought, as that hee was generally accounted for a man of great
experience (as indeed he was) and a faithfull counsellor to the state, a thing much to haue been H
wished. Wherefore leauing OENVM, the place whereto he was by the Emperour *Emanuell* in
a sort banished, trauelling towards CONSTANTINOPLE, he gaue it out in euery place where
he came, what he had sworne, and what he would for his oathes sake do: vnto whom men desi-
rous of the change of the state, & such as gaue credit vnto the report long before giuen out, That
he should at length become Emperor; flockt in great numbers, as birds about an owle to see
him, and with vaine praises to chatter about him. In this sort he came as farre as PAPHLAGO-
NIA; in euery place honourably receiued, as if hee had beene a deliuerer of his countrie sent
from God. And in the imperiall citie he was not longed for of the vulgar people only, as their
light and load star: but diuers of the nobility also by secret messengers & letters, perswaded him
to hasten his comming, and to take vpon him the gouernment; assuring him that there would be I
none to resist him, or to oppose themselues against his shadow, but all ready to receiue him: E-
specially *Mary* the young Emperours sister by the fathers side, with her husband *Cæsar* (who
being a woman of great spirit, and grieuing much to see her fathers empire made a prey vnto *A-
lexius* the president, and the Empresse her stepmother, whom she naturally hated) had raised a
great and dangerous tumult in the citie against them both, which was not without much blood-
shead appeased: and now ceased not by often and most earnest letters (to her owne destruction
and her husbands, as it afterwards fell out) to pricke forward *Andronicus* and to hasten his com-
ming: who by letters and messengers daily comming vnto him from the court, still more and
more encouraged, leauing behind him the countrey of PAPHLAGONIA, came to HERACLEA
in PONTVS, and still on towards the imperiall citie, with great cnnning & dissimulation win- K
ning the hearts of the people as he went. For who was so stonie hearted, whom his sweet words
and abundant teares flowing from his gracious eyes, as from two plentifull fountaines downe
by his hoary cheekes, might not haue mooued? All that hee did or desired, was (as hee saide)
for the common good and liberty of the Emperour. By which meanes hee had drawne vnto
him a wonderfull number of the rude countrey people by the way as hee came. But comming
into BYTHINIA, hee was by *Iohn Ducas* gouenour of the great citie of NICE, shut out as
an enemy to the state, and so at NICOMEDIA also. Neuertheless, passing by those cities,
he held still on his way, vntill at length hee was neere vnto a castle called CHARACE, encountred
by *Andronicus Angelus*, sent with a great power against him, by the great president *Alexius*; who
otherwise as an effeminat man, giuen ouer to his pleasure, spending the greatest part of the night L
in rioting by candle light, and most part of the day in his bed, with curtaines close drawne as if
it had been night; yet doubtfull now of the comming of his enemy, left nothing vndone which
hee thought might helpe for the assuring of his estate. Many of the nobility of whom he stood
in doubt, hee gained vnto him by meanes of the Emperors mother; who by her rare beautie,
sweet words, and gracious behauior, as with a line drew all men vnto her: Other some he ouer-
came with gifts and great summes of money, whereof hee now made no spare: And so
wrought the matter that no man of any account or marke, went ouer to *Andronicus*. Who ne-
uertheless with such followers as he had, ioyning battell with *Angelus* (sent against him, as is
before saide) ouerthrew him and put him to flight. Wherewith *Alexius* much troubled) in
great displeasure and without reason, called *Angelus* (now fled to CONSTANTINOPLE) to an M
account for the money deliuered vnto him for the defraying of the charges of that vnfortunate
war: who seeing his misfortune to be so taken as if he had framed it himselfe, & of purpose be-
trayed the armie committed to his charge; by the counsell of his sixe sonnes, being all men of
great valour and wisedome, first tooke the refuge of his owne house: but finding himselfe there
in no safety, with is wife and his said sonnes (two of which came afterwards to be Emperours)

Andronicus departeth from Oenum towards Constantinople.

presently

A preſently fled ouer the ſtrait to *Andronicus*: who ſeeing of him comming towards him, is reported to haue vſed this text of Scripture, *Behold I will ſend mine Angell before thy face, to prepare thy wayes*, alluding to his name of *Angelus*, as the preſage of his good ſucceſſe. Wherefore encouraged with the comming of theſe noblemen his kinſmen, he without longer ſtay marched directly vnto the ſea ſide, and there a little aboue CHALCEDON encamped almoſt right ouer againſt CONSTANTINOPLE: cauſing many great fires (moe than needed) to be made in his armie, to make it ſeeme vnto them of the citie greater than indeed it was; and with the ſight thereof to keepe the citizens in ſuſpence, with the doubtfull expectation of ſome great matter to enſue. Wherein he was no whit deceiued, for they hauing him now as it were in ſight, leauing
B their worke, ran ſome to the ſea ſide, ſome vp to the hils and high towers to behold his armie a farre off, willing with their friendly lookes, if it had beene poſſible, to haue drawne him ouer the ſtrait into the citie. *Alexius* knowing himſelfe not able by land to encounter with ſo ſtrong an enemie, (for now ſome which on foot could not goe ouer to *Andronicus*, were ſecretly in heart alreadie with him, otherſome thought themſelues ſufficiently to ſhew their fidelitie vnto the Emperour, if ſitting ſtill at home, they ſhould take part with neither: for ſo haue ſubtill heads and aſpiring mindes, for the furtherance of their deſires, taught the common people both to ſay and thinke) thought it beſt by ſea to auert the preſent danger: and therefore commanded all the Emperours gallies (being before rigged vp and readie) to be ſtrongly manned and put to ſea, for the keeping of PROPONTIS and the ſtrait of BOSPHORVS, that *Andronicus* ſhould not that
C way paſſe. Now had he determined to haue made eſpeciall choice of ſome aſſured friend of his owne for to be Generall of this fleet, as he had done of the captaines and maſters, being all his own kinſmen or domeſticall ſeruants: but as he was about to haue ſo done, *Contoſtephanus* (ſurnamed the great captaine) oppoſed himſelfe againſt it, challenging that place as due vnto himſelfe, before all others: So that ouercome by his authoritie (which it was no time for *Alexius* now to diſpute) he was glad to commit the charge & truſt of the whole fleet vnto him, as Generall. Thus hauing (as he thought) made the ſea ſure, he ſent ouer vnto *Andronicus*, as from the Emperour, (for all was done in his name) one *George Xiphilinus*, with letters and other inſtructi-
Andronicus encampeth in ſight ouer againſt Conſtantinople.

ons, whereof the effect was, to command him forthwith in peace to returne vnto the place from whence he came, & not farther to trouble the ſtate: promiſing him in ſo doing, the Emperors fa-
D uour, with many great honours and preferments to be afterward beſtowed vpon him; which otherwiſe might turne to his vtter deſtruction. Which letters *Xiphilinus* hauing deliuered, and done his meſſage, is reported to haue ſecretly aduiſed *Andronicus* to proceed in his purpoſe, and not in any caſe to yeeld to that which was of him required: wherewith *Andronicus* encouraged, proudly reiected the graces offred, & willed the meſſenger to tell them that ſent him, that if they would haue him to returne vnto the place from whence he came, they ſhould firſt diſplace the proud preſident *Alexius*, & cal him vnto an account for the villanies he had done; then the Emperors mother they ſhould depriue of her honours, & ſhut her vp as a Nun into ſome cloyſter, there to learne to amend her life; and laſt of all, that the Emperor according to his fathers will,
E ſhould take vpon himſelfe the gouernment, and not be ouertopt by others, by whoſe too much authoritie, his maieſtie & honor was (as he ſaid) too much impaired. But within a few daies after, *Contoſtephanus*, the great captaine & generall, carried ouer all the gallies to *Andronicus*, leauing nothing but their names for the preſident in his rols to looke vpon: whoſe reuolt aboue al other things encouraged *Andronicus*, & caſt *Alexius* euen into the bottome of deſpaire. For now *Andronicus* his friends flocked together in the citie, not ſecretly as before, but openly in all places: and ſuch as wiſhed a change in the ſtate, impudently ſcoffing at *Alexius*, paſſed ouer the ſtrait to CALCEDON in great numbers to *Andronicus*, where hauing filled their eies with the beholding of his goodly perſon, his cheerefull countenance, & reuerend age, and their eares with his ſweet words & great promiſes, returned home merrie & ioyfull, as if they had been in ſome terreſtriall paradice, filling the citie with his praiſes. After that, *Andronicus* his two ſons, *Iohn* and *Manuel*,
F with diuers others, whom the preſident had caſt in priſon, were ſet at libertie, and other of his chiefe fauorits laid faſt in their roomes. As for *Alexius*, the preſident himſelfe, with all his friends and faction in the court, they were taken and committed to the keeping of the guard: a right ſtrange alteration. But about midnight, *Alexius* himſelfe was ſecretly conueyed out of the court vnto the Patriarchs houſe, & there kept with a ſtronger guard than before. A wonderful change, and worth the marking, a man ſo honorably borne, but yeſterday in greateſt honour attended

Xiphilinus ſent ouer to Andronicus, dealeth vnfaithfully in doing his meſſage.

The proud anſwer of Andronicus.

Contoſtephanus reuolteth to Andronicus. Alexius in deſpaire.

Alexius and his friends apprehended.

A ſtrange alteration.

vpon

vpon with many thouſands, all at his command, hauing the power to ſpill or ſaue: to day in bonds, in diſgrace, in miſerie and deſpaire, and not ſo much as a page to wait vpon him. Which he taking very grieuouſly, yet complained of nothing more, than that they which had the keeping of him, would not ſuffer him to ſleepe nor take any reſt. Of whoſe miſerie, the Patriarch taking pitie (although he had of him very euill deſerued) yet cheered him vp with comfortable words, perſwading him with patience to endure his hard fortune, and not with ſuch ſpeeches as fitted not his preſent ſtate, to prouoke his keepers to vſe him euill. Within a few dayes after early in a morning, he was brought out of the Patriarchs houſe, and ſet vpon a very little bad Iade, and ſo with a ragged clout vpon the top of a reed in manner of an enſigne, carried before him in deriſion, was brought to the ſea ſide, and there caſt into a little boat, was ſo brought to *Andronicus*, by whoſe commandement, with the generall conſent of the nobilitie, he for his euill gouernment ſhortly after had his eyes put out. This was the miſerable end of the immoderate power, or rather of the inſolent ſoueraignetie of *Alexius*: who, had he with more moderation and vigilancie gouerned, might both haue kept *Andronicus* out of the citie, and himſelfe from ſo great miſerie; hauing at his command all the Emperours treaſure, his gallies, with moſt part of the ſtrength of the empire. Now came the noble men ouer apace to *Andronicus*: the laſt that came, was the reuerend Patriarch *Theodoſius*, with the chiefe of the Clergie: of whoſe approch, *Andronicus* hearing, went out of his tent to meet him, and falling downe (as great as he was) flat at his horſes feet, and in a while after ariſing againe, kiſſed the Patriarchs foot, calling him, The Emperours Sauiour, The louer of vertue, The defender of the truth; and comparing him with the famous Father *Iohn Chryſoſtome*, omitted not any honourable title he could poſſibly deuiſe to giue him. But the deuout Patriarch, that had neuer ſeene *Andronicus* before, hauing now well viewed him, and marked his ſterne countenance, his ſubtill nature, his craftie and diſſembling manners, his exceeding ſtature, being almoſt ten foot high, his ſtately gate, his proud looke, his continuall ſeueritie, and melancholie ſilence: as it were pitying them that to their owne deſtruction had called ſuch a man in, ſaid: *Hitherto I haue heard, but now I haue alſo ſeene, and plainly knowne*: and fetching a deepe ſigh, adioyned thereunto that ſaying of the Prophet *Dauid*: *As we haue heard, ſo haue we alſo ſeene.* In which words, he couertly quipped the diſſembled meeting and ſubmiſſion of *Andronicus*: and withall called to remembrance the words of the Emperour *Emanuel*, wherewith he had many times ſo painted forth *Andronicus* vnto the Patriarch, as if he would moſt liuely haue repreſented him vnto his view.

Alexius broght to Andronicus, hath his eyes put out.

The meeting of the Patriarch & Andronicus

All things in the citie and in the pallace ſet in order according to *Andronicus* his mind, by his two ſonnes, and leaue giuen vnto the Emperours friends to come ouer vnto him, and to be acquainted with him; at length *Andronicus* himſelfe departing from DAMALVM, in a gallie croſſed the ſtrait, oftentimes by the way merrily ſinging that ſaying of the heauenly Pſalmiſt: *Returne my ſoule into thy reſt, becauſe the Lord hath done well vnto thee, hauing deliuered my life from death, mine eyes from teares, and my feet from falling.* The Emperour with his mother *Xene*, then lay not in the pallace at CONSTANTINOPLE, but at another princely houſe of his in the countrey neere vnto PHILOPATIVM, as *Andronicus* had appointed: whither *Andronicus* firſt went, and comming vnto his preſence, moſt humbly proſtrate before him, with ſobbing and teares, as his deceitfull manner was, kiſſed his feet. As for the Empreſſe his mother, he lightly ſaluted her, and as it were but for faſhion ſake, not diſſembling in his countenance the old grudge he bare againſt her. And ſo without longer ſtay went vnto his tent prouided for him not farre off, round about which, all the great noble men had pitched their tents alſo, flocking vnto him as chickens ſeeking for refuge vnder the hens wings. Hauing there ſtaied with the Emperour a good while, he was deſirous to goe vnto the imperiall citie, and to ſee the late Emperour *Emanuel* his couſins graue. Where entring into the monaſterie of our Lady, where he was buried, and comming to his tombe, hee wept bitterly, and roared as it were mainely out. So that diuers of the ſtanders by, ignorant of his diſſembling nature, by way of admiration ſaid: *O what a wonderfull thing is this! O how hee loued the Emperour, his couſin, although his fierce and cruell perſecutor!* And when one of his kinſmen would haue pulled him from the tombe, ſaying that he had ſorrowed for him enough; he would not be remoued, but requeſted them to ſuffer him yet a little to tarrie by the tombe, for that he had ſomething in ſecret to ſay vnto the dead. And ſo with his hands caſt vp and cloſe together, as if he had praied, and his eyes faſt fixed vpon the tombe, he moued his lips, and ſecretly ſaid ſomething, but what, no man could tell. Some ſaid it

Andronicus paſſeth ouer the ſtrait.

was

A was ſome charme or incantation. But others more pleaſantly conceited, ſaid, and (as it afterward appeared) more truly, that *Andronicus* did triumph ouer the dead Emperour *Emanuell*, and reuell with his ghoſt, with theſe or like words: *I haue thee now faſt, my cruell perſecutor, by whom I haue beene driuen vnto many great extremities: and hauing wandred almoſt all the world ouer, haue thereunto beene made by thee a common by-word. But now this tombe riſing vp with ſeuen tops, and priſon, out of which thou canſt not ſtart, holdeth thee oppreſſed with a dead ſleepe, out of which thou ſhalt not be awaked, but by the ſounding of the laſt trumpe. And now will I be reuenged of thy poſteritie, and ſatisfie my ſelfe as a Lion with a fat prey, and take ſharpe reuenge of all the wrongs thou haſt done me, when I haue once poſſeſſed my ſelfe of this royall citie.*

B After that, viſiting all the Emperors ſtately houſes, but ſtaying in no place long, he diſpoſed of all matters of ſtate, according to his owne pleaſure. Vnto the yong Emperor he allowed hunting, and other his vaine delights, with keepers ioyned vnto him, to watch not only his going in & out, but alſo that no man ſhould talke with him of any matter of importance. For all the gouernment of the ſtate he tooke vnto himſelfe: not for that he wiſhed ſo well therunto, aboue others, but ſo to driue from the court all them of the contrary faction to himſelfe, that were able to do any thing, & had before born ſome ſway. The ſouldiers, whoſe help he had vſed in aſpiring to the gouernement, hee rewarded with great bountie; all their offices and preferments he beſtowed either vpon his owne children, or other his great fauourits; diuers of the nobilitie of whom he liked not, were by him in ſhort time driuen into exile: ſome were by him depriued of
C their ſight, & ſome others caſt in priſon, not knowing any cauſe why, more than that they were by him ſecretly cõdemned for that they were of the nobilitie, or had done ſome good ſeruice for the ſtate, or exiled for their perſonage, or ſome other thing that grieued *Andronicus*, or elſe for the ſparke of ſome old diſpleaſure which yet lay hidden as fire raked vp in the aſhes. So that the ſtate of that time began to grow moſt miſerable: and the treacherie, euen of men neareſt in blood, ſeeking the deſtructiõ one of another, for to ſerue their own turns, or to gratifie *Andronicus*, moſt horrible: not only one brother betraied another, but euen the father his ſon, & the ſon his father, if *Andronicus* wold haue it ſo. Some accuſed their neereſt kinſmen, that they had derided *Andronicus* his proceedings; or that without regard of him, they more fauoured *Alexius* the yong Emperor, then, a great offence. Yea (ſuch was the miſchief of the time) that many in accu-
D ſing others, were theſelues accuſed; & charging others of treaſon againſt *Andronicus*, were theſelues charged by them whom they accuſed, & ſo clapt vp both together in one priſon. Neither were they of the nobility only, which were enemies to *Andronicus*, thus hardly delt withall, but euen ſome of his great fauourits & followers alſo: For ſome who but yeſterday he had vſed moſt kindly, and enrolled amongſt his beſt friends, vpon them to day he frowned & tyrannized moſt cruelly: ſo that you might haue ſeene the ſame man the ſame day (as it is reported of *Xerxes* his admirall) to be crowned and beheaded, to be graced & diſgraced: Inſomuch, that the wiſer ſort deemed *Andronicus* his praiſings, to be the beginning of a mans diſgrace; his bounty, his vndoing; and his kindneſſe, his death. The firſt that taſted of his tyrannie, was *Mary*, the daughter of *Emanuell* the Emperor, who for the hatred ſhe bare vnto *Alexius* the late preſident, and the Em-
E preſſe her mother in law, had (as is afore ſaid) aboue all other, wiſhed for his comming: but was now by one *Pterigionites* (ſometime an Eunuch of her fathers, corrupted by *Andronicus*, hauing in his aſpiring mind purpoſed the vtter deſtruction of all *Emanuels* poſteritie) cunningly poiſoned; as was her husband *Cæſar*, who liued not long after her, poyſoned alſo (as was ſuppoſed) with the ſame cup that his wife was. Now amongſt others of the late Emperors houſe, none had euer ſtood more in his light, than had the faire Empreſſe *Xene*, the yong Emperors mother, who now hee ceaſed not moſt bitterly (though wrongfully) to accuſe, as an vtter enemie both vnto the Emperour and the ſtate; making as if he would leaue all, and againe depart, if ſhee were not remooued from the Emperor her ſonne: and by his cunning ſo incenſed the giddy headed vul-
F gar people againſt her, that they came flocking vnto *Theodoſius* the good Patriarch, readie to teare him out of his clothes, if he conſented not vnto the remooving of the Empreſſe, as *Andronicus* had deſired. So a counſell being called of ſuch his fauorits & others, as were not like indifferently to heare her cauſe, but aſſuredly to condemne her; the guiltleſſe Empreſſe after many things falſely laid to her charge, was accuſed of treaſon: as that ſhe ſhold by her letters haue ſolicited *Bela* king of HVNGARIE, her brother in law, to inuade BRANIZORA and BELLIGRADE, two ſtrong places belonging to the empire. Whereupon ſhee was condemned, and ſhamefully caſt

Andronicus taketh vpon him the gouernment

Andronicus tyrannizeth.

A miſerable ſtate of a commonweale.

Mary the daughter of Emanuel with her husband Cæſar, poyſoned by Andronicus.

Xene the Empreſſe accuſed of treaſon, and condemned.

caſt into a moſt filthie priſon neere vnto the monaſterie of S. DIOMEDE. Amongſt other no- G
blemen called vnto this wicked counſell, where *Leo Monaſteriotes*, *Demetrius Tornicius*, and *Conſtantius Petrenus*: who not yet altogether deuoted to *Andronicus*, being asked their opinions concerning the empreſſe, ſaide, They would be glad firſt to knowe, Whether that counſell a gainſt his mother, were called by the emperors conſent or not? With which ſpeech, *Andronicus* pearced to the heart as with a ſword, in great rage ſtart vp and ſaid, Theſe are they which encouraged the wicked preſident to all his villanies, lay hands vpon them. Whereupon they of his guard in threatning manner ſhooke their weapons & ſwords at them, as if they would euen preſently haue ſlaine them: And the tumultuous common people, catching them by their cloaks as they came out, pulling them ſome one way ſome another, were ſo fierce vpon them, H
as that they had much adoe to eſcape out of their hands with life. Now lay the faire empreſſe (but the other day one of the greateſt princes of the Eaſt, and honoured of all her ſubiects) in great miſerie and diſpaire, ſcorned euen of her baſe keepers, euery houre expecting the deadly blow of the hangman. Yet was not the crueltie of *Andronicus* againſt her, ſo any thing aſſwaged, but greeuing that ſhe yet breathed, ſhortly after aſſembled the former counſell, the miniſters of his wrath, demanding of them, What puniſhment was by law appointed for ſuch as betraied any towne or prouince of the empire? whereunto anſwer being giuen in writing, That it was by the law, death: hee could no longer hold, but that he muſt in great choller breake out againſt the poore empreſſe, as if it had bin ſhe that had done it: And thereupon the wicked counſellers crying out with one voyce, That ſhe was to be taken out of the way, as they had before I
agreed; by and by without longer ſtay, a damned writing was ſubſcribed by the young emperour her ſon, as if it had been with the blood of his owne mother, whereby ſhee was (I abhor to write it) moſt vnworthily condemned to die. The men appointed to ſee this moſt horrible and cruell execution done, were *Manuel*, *andronicus* his eldeſt ſon, and *Georgius Auguſtus*, his neere kinſman; who both diſmaid at the very mentioning of the matter, not regarding the emperors command, ſaid plainly, That they neuer before conſented vnto the death of empreſſe, but had cleane hands of ſo hainous an offence, and therfore would now much leſſe ſee her innocent bodie diſmembred in their ſight. At which vnexpected anſwer *Andronicus* much troubled, with his fingers oftentimes pluckt himſelfe by the hoarie beard, and with burning eyes caſting ſometime vp his head, & ſometime downe, ſighed at his owne moſt miſerable tyrannicall eſtate, fret- K
ting inwardly that they which were neereſt vnto him, whom hee thought he might euen with a beck haue commanded to haue done any miſchiefe, abhorring his cruelty, ſhould refuſe to doe the thing he ſo much deſired to haue done: yet repreſſing his anger for a while, within a few dayes after he again commanded her to be ſtrangled; which was accordingly done by *Conſtantinus Tripſycus*, and *Pterigionites* the vngracious eunuch, by whoſe helpe hee had before poiſoned *Mary* the emperors daughter, with *Cæſar* her husband, as is before declared. Thus periſhed this great empreſſe, cruelly ſtrangled in priſon, by theſe two wicked men, the mercileſſe executioners of *Andronicus* his wrath. Her dead bodie lately adorned with all the graces of nature, euen to the admiration of the beholders, was without more adoe ſecretly raked vp in the ſand faſt by the ſea-ſide: a poore ſepulcher for ſo great a perſon. L

Dangerous to ſpeake the truth to a tyrant.

A wicked counſell.

The miſerable death of the empreſſe.

What might not *Andronicus* now do to others, that durſt thus cruelly to deale with the yong emperors owne mother, & neereſt friends? yet was all couered vnder the pretence of the common good, and ſafety of the ſtate and empire. And the more to ſhadow *Andronicus* his ſecret purpoſes, as not proceeding of any priuate or hidden malice, or aſpiring humor, from which he of all men would ſeeme moſt free; and the more to manifeſt his deuotion and loyalty vnto the young emperour his couſin, he was the only perſwader vnto the reſt of the nobilitie, to haue him ſolemnely crowned (which as yet by reaſon of his tender age hee was not;) and at the time of his coronation, with his owne ſhouldees ſupported him vp, as he was (after the maner of that ſolemnitie) carried vnto the great church, and ſo backe againe; the Crocodiles teares ſtill plenteouſly running downe his aged face, as if it had beene for exceeding ioy: which many of the M
meaner ſort beholding, and deeming therof the beſt, highly commended his kindneſſe, accounting the young emperour thrice happie, in ſo graue a gouernour, and faithfull counſellour; who in loue and kinde affection towards him, ſeemed not inferiour to his naturall father: ſo cunningly had he vnder the vaile of pietie, ſhadowed his moſt execrable treacherie, as that in the very plotting thereof, he was accounted moſt louing and kinde. But hidden treaſon, be it neuer

ſo

A ſo well diſſembled, muſt at length ſhew it ſelfe. So *Andronicus* hauing got into his power both the Emperor and the empire, and the chiefe friends of the late Emperor *Emanuel* being taken out of the way, or elſe driuen into exile, thought it now high time for himſelf to aſpire vnto that high ſoueraigntie, after which hee had ſo many yeeres longed. Wherefore calling together a Counſell of his flatterers and fauourites, whom hee had for ſuch purpoſe promoted vnto the higheſt places of ſtate (all or moſt part of the graue Counſellors and friends of the late Emperor *Emanuel* being now diſplaced, or otherwiſe taken out of the way) he as a man only carefull of the common good, declared vnto them the dangerous ſtate of the empire, by reaſon of a rebellion raiſed in BYTHINIA at NICE, by *Iſaack Angelus*, and *Theodorus Catacuzenus*; and
B another at PRVSA, by *Theodorus Angelus*; requiring their graue aduice for the ſuppreſſing thereof: who not ignorant of their Lords purpoſe, (as thereof before ſufficiently inſtructed) anſwered with one conſent, That of ſuch great miſchiefes there would be no end, except hee were ioyned in fellowſhip of the empire together with *Alexius*, by his grauitie and deepe wiſdome to ſupplie what wanted for the good gouernment of the ſtate in the young Emperour his couſin. At which ſpeech, the by-ſtanders (being in number many, and for the moſt part the followers of *Andronicus* his flatterers) gaue a great ſhout, and as if it had beene already granted, with one applauſe cried out, *Long liue Alexius and Andronicus the Greeke Emperours*; and that with ſuch a vehemencie, as if they would therewith haue rent the very heauens. The bruit thereof flying abroad into the citie, forthwith you might haue ſeene euery ſtreet and corner of the ci-
C tie full of the vulgar people, with ſome alſo of better ſort, ſwarming together like Bees, & ſounding the praiſes of *Andronicus* (who now was come out of his houſe into the court, with a world of people following him) and crying out, *Long liue the Emperours Alexius and Andronicus*: with which loud acclamation, mixt with the heauie ſighings of many good men, (for all were not mad of that frenzie) the young Emperour awaked, and ſeeing the court full of people, and *Andronicus* by them ſaluted his fellow in the empire: knowing now no other remedie, thought it beſt to yeeld vnto the time, & ſo with the reſt flattering the old tyrant, welcommed him full ſore againſt his will, by the name of his fellow & companion in the empire: which he now in diſſembling manner ſeeming vnwilling to take vpon him, & refuſing the place offered, was by the rout of his flattering fauourites enforced to his owne great contentment, to yeeld to their requeſt:
D ſome of them with both their hands carrying him vp, vntill they had as it were againſt his will placed him in the imperial ſeat, prepared for him faſt by the yong Emperor: others in the mean time no leſſe buſied in pulling off his priuate attire, and putting vpon him the imperiall roabes.

The ſlie practiſes of Andronicus in aſpiring to the empire.

The next day, when this participation of the empire ſhould be publiſhed, and they both proclaimed Emperors, the name of *Andronicus* was ſet before the name of *Alexius*: whereof his fauorits (though ſome others interpreted it otherwiſe) gaue this reaſon, That it fitted not with the maieſtie of the empire, that the name of a boy ſhould be ſet before the name of ſo reuerend, graue, wiſe, and excellent a man as was *Andronicus* his companion in the empire. Shortly after, *Andronicus* being broght into the great temple to be crowned, then firſt began to ſhew vnto the people a cheerefull countenance, & ſetting aſide his ſterne looke, after his long deuotion done,
E filled the vain peoples heads with many large promiſes of a more happy forme of gouernment than before. All which proued nothing but meere diſſimulation and deepe deceit, that cheerefulneſſe of countenance & ſpeech ſeruing but for a while to couer his inward, ſecret, and moſt inhumane crueltie. And the more to deceiue the world, the ceremonies of his coronatiõ paſt, at ſuch time as he ſhould for the conſummation & confirmation of al, receiue the ſacred & dreadfull myſterie, the pledge of our redemption, not without due reuerence to be named, much leſſe with impure hands touched: after he had receiued the bread, and taken the cup in his hand, he with a moſt deuout countenance, framed of purpoſe to deceiue, & his eyes caſt vp to heauen, as if his ſoule had there already been (the faireſt maske of hypocriſie) ſwore by thoſe dreadfull myſteries, & moſt deeply proteſted in the hearing of the people ſtanding by, that he had taken vp-
F on him the fellowſhip of the empire, for no other end or purpoſe but to aſſiſt *Alexius* his couſin in the gouernment, & to ſtrengthen his power: whereas his ſecret meaning was nothing leſſe, as ſhortly after appeared. For after a few dayes ſpent in faigned deuotions for the proſperous beginning of his empire, hee forthwith turned his minde vnto other his more ſecret, but moſt wicked and execrable deſignes. And hauing aboue all things purpoſed the death of the young Emperour, hee called together them of the Counſell, his owne creatures and corrupt mini-

ſters of his wickedneſſe, who had now oftentimes in their mouthes that ſaying of the Poet: G

Eſt mala res multos dominarier: vnicus eſto
Rex dominuſq;.

An euill thing it is to be ruled by many:
One King and one Lord, if there be any.

and that the old age of an Eagle was better than the youth of a Larke. So by the generall conſent of that wicked aſſemblie, vnworthy the name of a graue counſell, a decree was made, That H
Alexius deprived of the empire. *Alexius* ſhould (as a man vnfit for the gouernment of the ſtate) be depriued of all imperiall dignitie, and commanded to liue a priuate life. Which diſloyall decree of the conſpirators was yet ſcarcely publiſhed, but that another more cruell came out of the ſame forge, That he ſhould
Alexius condemned. forthwith be put to death, as one vnworthy longer to liue. For the execution of which ſo horrible a ſentence, *Stephanus Hagiochriſtophorites* (one of the chiefe miniſters of *Andronicus* his villanies, and by him promoted euen vnto the higheſt degrees of the honours of the court) with *Conſtantinus Trypſicus*, and one *Theodorus Badibrenus*, captaine of the tormentors, were ſent out;
Alexius the Emperour cruelly ſtrangled. who entring his chamber by night, without compaſſion of his tender age, or regard of his honour or innocencie, cruelly ſtrangled him with a bow-ſtring: which deteſtable murther ſo performed, *Andronicus* ſhortly after comming in, ſpurned the dead body with his foot, railing at I
his father, the late Emperour *Emanuell*, as a forſworne and iniurious man; and at his mother, as a common whore. The head was forthwith ſtrucke off from this miſerable carkaſſe (the mirrour of honours vnſtabilitie) and left for the monſtrous tyrant to feed his eyes vpon: the body wrapped vp in lead, was in a boat carried to ſea by *Io. Camaterius* and *Theodoſius Chumenus*, two of *Andronicus* his noble fauourites; who with great ioy and glee returned with the ſame boat to the court, as if they had done ſome notable exploit. But long continueth not the ioy of the miſchieuous, vengeance ſtill following them at the heeles, as it did theſe two; who not long after, with the reſt that conſpired the innocent Emperors death, all or moſt part of them, came to ſhamefull or miſerable ends. Thus periſhed *Alexius* the Emperor, not yet full fifteene yeeres old, in the third yeere of his raigne: which time he liued more like a ſeruant than an Emperour, K
firſt vnder the cõmand of his mother, & afterwards of the tyrant, which brought him to his end.

An vnequall marriage. Who ioyeth now but old *Andronicus*, made young again, as ſhould ſeeme, by his new gained honors? For immediatly after the murther cõmitted, he maried *Anne* the French Kings daughter (as ſome report) before betrothed to yong *Alexius*, a tender & moſt beautifull Lady, not yet full eleuen yeeres old, an vnfit match for threeſcore and ten. And in ſome ſort as it were to purge himſelfe & his partakers of the ſhamefull murther by them committed, and to ſtop the mouths of the people, he by much flattery & large promiſes procured of the Biſhops a generall abſolution for them all, from the oath of obedience which they had before giuen vnto the Emperour *Emanuell* & *Alexius* his ſonne: which obtained, he for a while had the ſame Biſhops in great honour, and ſhortly after in greater contempt, as men forgetfull of their duties and calling. After L
Andronicus ſetteth by tyrannie to eſtabliſh his eſtate. that, he gaue himſelfe wholly vnto the eſtabliſhing of his eſtate, neuer reckoning himſelfe therof aſſured, ſo long as he ſaw any of the nobilitie or famous captains that fauoured *Emanuell* the late Emperor or *Alexius* his ſonne, aliue: of whom, ſome he ſecretly poiſoned, as *Mary*, the Emperor *Emanuels* daughter, with her huſband *Cæſar*; ſome for light occaſions he depriued of their ſight, as he did *Emanuell* and *Alexius*, the ſons of the great and noble captaine *Iohn Comnenus*; *Andronicus Lapardas*, whoſe good ſeruice he had oftentimes vſed; *Theodorus Angelus*; *Alexius Comnenus*, the Emperor *Emanuell* his baſe ſon: ſome he hanged, as *Leo Syneſius*, *Manuel Lachanas*, with diuers others: ſome he burnt, as *Mamalus*, one of the Emperour *Alexius* his principall ſecretaries; all men of great honour and place. For colour whereof, he pretended himſelfe to be ſorry for them, deepely proteſting, that they died by the ſeueritie of the law, not by his will, M
and by the iuſt doome of the Iudges, whereunto he was himſelfe (as he ſaid) to giue place; and that with teares plentifully running downe his aged cheekes, as if hee had beene the moſt ſorrowfull man aliue. O deepe diſſimulation, and Crocodiles teares, by nature ordained to expreſſe the heauineſſe of the heart, flowing from the eies as ſhowers of raine out of the clouds: in good men the moſt certaine ſignes of greateſt griefe, and ſureſt teſtimonies of inward torment:

but

A but in *Andronicus* you are not ſo, you are far of another nature, you proceed of ioy, you promiſe not vnto the diſtreſſed pitie or compaſſion, but death & deſtruction! how many mens eies haue you put out? how many haue you drowned? how many haue you deuoured? Moſt of the nobilitie that fauoured the late Emperour *Emanuel* & *Alexius* his ſon, thus taken out of the way by *Andronicus*, ſtrook ſuch a feare into the reſt, that for ſafegard of their liues they betook themſelues to flight, ſome one way ſome another, neuer thinking themſelues in ſafetie ſo long as they were within the greedie tyrants reach; whereof ſhortly after enſued no ſmall troubles, to the ſhaking of the ſtate of the whole empire. *Iſaack Comnenus*, the Emperor *Emanuels* nigh kinſman, tooke his refuge into CYPRVS, and kept that Iſland to himſelfe. *Alexius Comnenus*, *Emanuels* brothers
B ſon, fled into SICILIA, & there ſtirred vp *William* King of that Iſland, againſt *Andronicus*: who with a great armie landing at DYRRACHIVM, tooke the citie, & ſo frō thence without reſiſtance paſſing thorow the heart of MACEDONIA, ſpoiling the countrey before him as he went, met his fleet at THESALONICA; which famous citie he alſo tooke by force, & moſt miſerably ſpoiled it with all the countrey thereabout, in ſuch ſort, as that he brought a great feare euen vpon the imperiall citie it ſelfe: vnto which ſo great euils *Andronicus* (entangled with domeſticall troubles, & not knowing whō to truſt) was not able to giue remedie, although for ſhew he had (to no purpoſe) ſent out certain of his moſt truſtie miniſters with ſuch forces as he could ſpare. For the maieſtie of his authoritie growing ſtill leſſe & leſſe, & the number of his enemies both at home and abroad daily increaſing, & the fauor of the vnconſtant people (who now began to ſpeak hardly
C of him) declining: he vncertaine which way to turn himſelfe, reſted wholly vpon tyrannie, proſcribing in his feare, not only the friends of ſuch as were fled, & whō he diſtruſted, but ſomtimes whole families together, yea & that for light occaſions, ſometime thoſe who were the beſt of his fauorites, whoſe ſeruice he had many times vſed in the execution of his crueltie. So that now no day paſſed, wherin he did not put to death, impriſon, or torture one great man or other. Whereby it came to paſſe, that the imperiall citie was filled with ſorrow & heauines, euery man hanging the head, and with ſilence couering his inward griefe, not without danger to haue been theu vttered. Amongſt many others appointed to this ſlaughter, was one *Iſaack Angelus*, a man of great nobilitie, whom *Hagiochriſtophorites* (the chiefe miniſter of *Andronicus* his tyrannie, and for the ſame by him highly promoted) ſuſpecting, as one that bare no good will to the Emperour,
D (cauſe enough of death) came to his houſe to apprehend him; & finding him at home, after ſome few hot words, commanded him to follow him. Whereat the noble man making ſome ſtay, & abhorring the very ſight of the wretch, as vnto him ominous & fatall: *Hagiochriſtophorites* himſelfe began to lay hands on him, reuiling his followers, that they had not forthwith drawne him out of his houſe by the haire of his head, vnto the priſon by him appointed. For they touched with the honour of the man, and moued with compaſſion, forced him not, but ſtood ſtill as beholders. *Iſaack* ſeeing himſelfe thus beſet, & no way now left for him to eſcape, reſoluing rather there preſently to die, than ſhortly after to be murdred in priſon, drew his ſword as the reſt were about to haue laid hands vpon him, and at the firſt blow cleft the wicked head of *Hagiochriſtophorites* downe to his ſhoulders: & ſo leauing him wallowing in his owne bloud, and like a de-
E ſperat man laying about him amongſt the reſt, made himſelfe way thorow the middeſt of them. And ſo embrued with bloud, with his bloudie ſword yet in his hand, running thorow the middeſt of the citie, told the people what he had done; and crying vnto them for helpe in defence of his innocencie, fled into the great Temple, there to take the refuge of the ſanctuarie: where he had not long ſit, in the place where the guiltie flying thither for refuge, vſed to ſit, and confeſſing their offence, craue pardon of ſuch as goe in & out; but that the Temple was filled with the multitude of people flocking thither out of all parts of the citie, ſome to ſee the nobleman, ſome to behold what ſhould become of him: for all men thought that he would before the going down of the Sun (notwithſtanding the reuerence of the place) be drawne thence by *Andronicus*, & put to ſome ſhameful death. Thither came alſo *Iohn Ducas*, *Iſaacks* vncle, & his ſon *Iſaack* to increaſe
F the tumult; not for that they were any thing guiltie of the death of *Hagiochriſtophorites*, but for that they had before become ſureties vnto the ſuſpicious tyrant for their kinſman *Iſaack*, and he likewiſe for them; by whoſe treſpas they well knew themſelues now brought into no leſſe danger than if they had been abettors thereunto. And beſide thē alſo, many other there were, which ſtanding in doubt of their own eſtate, & fearing the like might happen to themſelues, prickt forward with hard ſpeeches, the cōmon people flocking thither, inſtantly requeſting them to ſtay

Exceeding cruelties.

Iſaack Angelus taketh ſanctuarie.

there,and to ſtand by them now at their need,being ſo jniuriouſly wronged,whoſe pittiful com- C
plaints moued right many to take part with them. At which time alſo,no man yet comming frō
the emperor(being as then out of the city)to repreſſe the ſedition,nor any of the nobilitie oppo-
ſing themſelues, no friend of *Andronicus* appearing, none of his bloodie miniſters or officers
ſhewing themſelues,nor any that did ſo much as ſpeake a good word in his behalfe,or in diſlike
of the tumult,the boldneſſe of the ſeditious people increaſed, euery man in ſo great libertie, ſay-
ing what hee liſt, and after their rude manner one encouraging another. So ſpent *Iſaack* that
long night, not thinking (God wot) of an empire, but ſtill expecting the deadly ſtroake of
Andronicus. Yet had he with great intreating,ſo preuailed, that diuers of the aſſembly ſhutting
the church dores,and bringing lights into the church,ſtaied there with him all night, & by their H
example cauſed ſome others to ſtay alſo. The next morning by break of the the day were al the
citizens flockt againe vnto the temple,curſing the tyrant to the deuill, as the commō enemy of
mankind,wiſhing vnto him a ſhamefull death, & the hononr of the empire vnto *Iſaack*. At that
time by fortune,or rather God ſo appointing it, *Andronicus* was out of the citie at his pallace of
MELVDINVM,on the eaſt ſide of PROPONTIS,where he was by nine a clocke at night cer-
tified of the death of *Hagiochriſtophorites*, and of the tumult of the people: yet that night ſtirred
he not, either did any thing more, but by ſhort letters aduiſed the people to pacifie themſelues,
and not by fooliſh rebellion to caſt themſelues into farther danger. In the morning, *Andronicus*
his fauorits began to ſhew themſelues, and to do what they might to haue appeaſed the tumul-
tuous multitude;yea and preſently after came *Andronicus* himſelfe, and landed with his imperi- I
all gally at the great pallace in the citie. But with the inraged people,naught preuailed either the
perſwaſions of the one,or report of the preſence of the other: for they al as vpon a ſignall giuen,
and as men inſpired with one ſpirit,or ſtirred vp with the ſame furie, flocked together into the
temple of S. SOPHIA,one encouraging another, & ſcoffing at ſuch as ſtood by as idle lookers
on, without weapons in their hands,reuiling them, and calling them rotten lyms that had no
feeling of the common harme. After that they broke open the priſons, & ſet at libertie the pri-
ſoners,as fitteſt inſtruments for the increaſing of the tumult,who were not all notable offenders
of the dregs of the people,but many of them borne of good houſes,and for ſome light fault, or
inconſiderat word(wherof euery man was in thoſe times bound to giue an accoūt) or for ſome
friends offence againſt *Andronicus*,there laid faſt: theſe of all others moſt animated the people, K
in ſuch ſort,as that they which before for feare of the danger, did but ſoftly murmure vnto thē-
ſelues againſt *Andronicus*, did now openly joyne themſelues with the reſt of the baſe ſeditious.
Then might you haue ſeene ſome with their ſwords and targuets,ſome alſo in their armour,but
the greateſt part armed but with clubs and ſtaues and other ſuch like rude weapons, armes of
furie,haſtely taken vp in their ſhops as by chance they came firſt to hand,running forth in euery
place. By this aſſembly of the moſt furious and promiſcuous people,was *Iſaack* hoyſed vp, and
with a generall applauſe ſaluted emperour. At which time one of the ſextons of the church,with
a ladder,tooke downe *Conſtantine* the Great his crowne of gold (which for a monument hung
ouer the holy altar) and ſet it vpon *Iſaack* his head: Which hee at the firſt ſeemed vnwilling to
weare,not for that he was not deſirous ynough of the empire, but for that he feared the extream L
danger of the matter,and thought thoſe things that were then done, to bee but as it were a ſicke
mans dream, like ynough ſtrait way to vaniſh; beſide that,he feared in ſo doing,the more to
exaſperat *Andronicus*:which his vncle *Iohn Ducas* (of whom wee haue before ſpoken,ſtanding
by him) perceiuing, plucking of his owne cap, and ſhewing his old bald head, requeſted the
people,that if his nephew did refuſe it, they would ſet it vpon his. Whereunto the people with a
great outcrie anſwered,that they would no more yeeld their obedience vnto an old bald man,
as hauing receiued many harmes from the hoarie haires of old *Andronicus*;& therefore for his
ſake,hated euery old man,more fit for *Charons* boat & his coffin,than for the empire, and eſpe-
cially if he had a forked beard or bald head, as had *Andronicus* and this *Ducas*. Thus was *Iſaack*
by the tumultuous multitude inueſted in the empire. And ſo royally mounted vpon one of the M
emperors horſes,richly furniſhed with a ſaddle & trappings of gold,which they had by chance
gotten, was by them brought from the temple vnto the court; *Baſilius Camaterus* the Patriarch
waiting vpon him,whom the headſtrong people had enforced againſt his will,to confirme with
his authoritie what was by them done for the eſtabliſhing of *Iſaack* in the empire. *Andronicus*
at his comming to the great pallace,perceiuing firſt by the confuſed crie of the tumultuous mul-

titude,

The people in a tumult reſort vnto Angelus.

Andronicus in vaine ſeeketh to appeaſe the tumultuous people

Iſaack Angelus by the people in a tumult ſaluted Emperour.

titude, and afterward by that which he ſaw with his eyes, how the world went; calling vpon his old friends and flattering fauorits, thought firſt by their helpe to haue repreſſed the furie of the rebellious: who as friends of his better fortune, and not of himſelfe, were now for the moſt part ſhrunke from him; and thoſe which were left, ſo faintly comming on, as if in his quarrell they had had no mind to ſpend their liues: with which heartleſſe companie *Andronicus* fearing to oppoſe himſelfe againſt the furie of the multitude, with his bow and arrowes in his hand got him vp into the higheſt tower of the pallace (called CENTENARIA) and from thence beſtowed certaine ſhot amongſt the people. But ſeeing that to be to no purpoſe, and better perſwaded to doe more with them with faire words than ſuch vaine force, he from the top of the tower cryed alowd vnto them, That if they would hold themſelues contented, and depart, he would by their conſent reſigne the empire vnto his ſonne *Manuell*: whereat the people more enraged, ſpared not to poure forth moſt reprochfull words in contempt both of himſelfe and his ſonne. And ſo furiouſly brake into the court, by one of the gates called CAREA: Which *Andronicus* beholding, and now out of all hope, caſting from him all his habiliments of honour, and diſguiſing himſelfe, fled againe vnto his galley, accompanied onely with *Anna* his wife, and *Maraptica* his minion, and ſo returned to MELVDIVM, his place from whence he came. *Iſaack* but yeſterday in the bottome of diſpaire, and ſhadowed as it were with the hand of death, by the ſtrange change of fortune to day mounted vnto the higheſt type of worldly honor, entering the palace, was there againe, with the greateſt applauſe of the people that might bee, ſaluted emperour. From whence he forthwith ſent out certaine companies of his moſt aſſured friends and followers, to apprehend *Andronicus*: who now as a man at once forſaken both of his frinds and of his better fortune, ſecretly fled with his wife and his paragon, before remembred to CHELE, attended vpon onely with a few of his truſty ſeruants, which had of long time ſerued him, before he was emperour. There taking ſhip, with purpoſe to haue fled vnto the Tauroſcythes (as not thinking himſelfe ſafe in any prouince of the empire) hee was twice or thrice by foule weather put backe againe, the wrought ſea abhorring (as it ſeemed) to carry him that had ſo polluted it with their dead bodies of the innocent by him ſlaine; and ſtill threatning (as it were) to deuour him. Thus ſtrangely ſtayed by foule weather, or more truly to ſay, by the reuenging hand of the higheſt, he was found by ſuch as were ſent out to ſeeke after him, and being by them apprehended, was with two great yron chaines faſt locked about his prowd necke, and heauie gyues vpon his legges, caſt into the caſtle of AMENA: and in that miſerable habite ſhortly after preſented to the emperor *Iſaack*, yet buſied in appeaſing and reforming of the diſordered citie: where by the way as hee went, hee was by the people moſt ſhamefully reuiled, and injuriouſly vſed; ſome plucking him by the beard, ſome by the haire of his head, ſome other in the meane time playing with his noſe, and bobbing him in the face, with a thouſand other deſpights done vnto him; eſpecially by ſuch women, as whoſe husbands he had before murthered or depriued of their ſight. Afterward being committed to the hatefull furie of the people, hee had his right hand cut off, and was againe committed to the ſame caſtle, without meat, drinke, or other comfort: where after hee had layne a few daies, hauing one of his eyes put out, hee was ſet vpon a foule leane cammell, with his face toward the tayle thereof, and ſo (as it were in triumph) led through the market place, his bald head all bare, as if it had beene a dead mans ſcull taken out of a charnell houſe, in a ſhort old coat; ſo miſerable a ſpectacle, as might haue expreſſed a fountaine of teares out of the eyes of a right hard hearted man. But the bedlam and moſt inſolent citizens, eſpecially they of the baſer ſort, as cookes, coblers, curriours, and ſuch like, flocking about him like bees (without regard that he had but the other day worne vpon his head the imperiall crowne, then honoured by them as a god, and extolled vnto the heauens, that they had not long before ſollemnely ſworne vnto him obedience and loyaltie) ran now as men out of their wits, omitting no kind of villanie they could deuiſe to do vnto him: Some thruſt nayles into his head, ſome caſt durt in his face, ſome the dung both of men and beaſts, ſome prickt him in the ſides with ſpits, ſome caſt ſtones at him as at a mad dog, and otherſome opprobious and deſpightfull words, no leſſe grieuous vnto him than the reſt. Amonſt others, an impudent drab comming out of the kitchin, caſt a pot full of ſcalding water in his face. And in briefe, their outrage ſo exceeded, as if they had ſtriuen among themſelues who ſhould do him the greateſt villanie. Hauing thus ſhamefully, as in a ridiculous triumph, brought him into the theatre, they there betwixt two pillars hanged him vp by the heeles: where hauing ſuffered all theſe deſpightfull indignities,

Andronicus forſaken of his flattering fauorits.

A ſtrange chãge

Andronicus the emperour taken and brought in bonds to Angelus.

Andronicus the emperor hanged vp by the heeles.

dignities, with many moe, not without offence to be named, he with an inuincible courage yet G
ſtill held his patience, not giuing one euill word; but ſometimes ſaying, *Lord haue mercy vpon mee*; and otherwhiles, *Why doe you breake a bruiſed reed?* Yet the furious people nothing moued with the calamitie of ſo great a man, of all others now the moſt miſerable, ſtripped him of his bad clothes as he hung, and cut off his priuities. One among the reſt, to make an end of him, thruſt his ſword in at his throat vp to the twiſt as he hung: other two with their long ſwords proued their ſtrength, who could ſtrike fartheſt into his buttocks. Thus miſerably periſhed this famous Emperour, after he had raigned two yeeres. That which was left of his body (for many had carried away ſome pieces thereof) being taken downe from the place where he hung, was caſt into a baſe vault in the Theatre: where it for a ſpace lay, as the loathſome carkaſſe of ſome H
wilde beaſt, and the miſerable ſpectacle of mans fragilitie: for *Iſaack* the Emperour would not ſuffer it to be buried. Howbeit, afterwards the furie of the people ouerpaſſed, it was by ſome more charitable men remoued thence, and laid in a low vault neere vnto the monaſterie of the *Ephori*: which as *Nicetas Choniates* (author of this hiſtorie, ſpeaking of the time wherin he liued) ſaith, is yet there vndiſſolued to be ſeene. He was a man moſt honourably deſcended; of ſtature tall, and well proportioned: in his countenance ſate a certaine reuerend maieſtie, adorned with ſuch notable vertues, as might haue made him worthily to haue beene compared vnto the greateſt Emperours of his ſtocke and familie, had he not obſcured the ſame with too much ambition and crueltie, whereof the one cauſed him to lead the greateſt part of his life in priſon or exile, the other brought vnto him ſuch a moſt ſhamefull end. I

Nicetas Choniates Annal. lib. 1. fol. 161. col. 4.

Iſaack Angelus his ſucceſſour, by the fauour of the people, thus exalted vnto the empire, at the firſt gouerned the ſame with great lenitie and moderation, as if he had altogether abhorred from the effuſion of his ſubiects bloud. But afterwards not a little troubled both with forraine enemies, and domeſticall rebellion, beſieged in the imperiall citie by ſuch of the nobilitie as thought themſelues no leſſe worthy of the empire than himſelfe: for repreſſing of which inſolencies, and the aſſuring of his ſtate, he became ſo ſeuere in chaſtiſing the offendors, and ſuch others as he had in diſtruſt, that he was counted of moſt men not inferiour in crueltie to *Andronicus* his predeceſſor, few dayes paſſing without the condemnation or execution of one great man or other, beſides them of the meaner ſort, of whom he ſeemed to make no great reckoning: whereby he in few yeeres loſt the loue and fauour of his ſubiects, who before had him in great K
honour, and became vnto them no leſſe odious than was before *Andronicus*. Vpon which generall diſlike of the people, his ingratefull younger brother *Alexius* (by him before for a great ſumme of money redeemed from the Turkes) tooke occaſion to riſe vp againſt him, and by the fauour of the ſouldiers depriued him together both of the empire and his ſight: and hauing put out his eyes, thruſt him into a monaſterie, there to liue as it were out of the world, as a man condemned to perpetuall darkneſſe, after he had raigned nine yeeres and eight moneths, being not yet full fortie yeeres old. Whether it were the reuenging hand of God, for the hard meaſure vſed to *Andronicus*, or not, I leaue it to the wiſer to conſider; who in his deepe prouidence, wherewith he beſt gouerneth all things, would haue a moderation vſed in puniſhment of our moſt capitall enemies, as hauing alwayes before our eyes the ſlipperie ſtate of power and au- L
thoritie: and that as all worldly things are ſubiect to change, ſo by the iuſt iudgement of God it oftentimes falleth out, that what hurt wee doe vnto others, the ſame wee may receiue againe from others. In theſe ſo great and ſtrange mutations of the Conſtantinopolitane empire (which I haue ſomewhat more at large proſecuted, not ſo much for the noueltie of the matter, although it were right ſtrange, as for that out of the loſſes and ruine thereof, the greatneſſe of the Turkes for the moſt part grew) *Clizaſthlan* Sultan of ICONIVM, after the death of the Emperour *Emanuel*, found meanes to take from the empire diuers ſtrong townes and caſtles in the leſſer ASIA, together with a great part of the countrey of PHRYGIA: *Alexius*, *Andronicus*, and *Iſaack*, the ſucceeding Emperours, troubled with dangers neerer home, hauing nothing to oppoſe againſt him, but faire intreatie, and rich preſents; ſo redeeming for a while an vnſure peace, with M
no leſſe charge, in ſhort time to be renewed againe. This great victorious Sultan (for ſo he may of right be called) holding in his ſubiection a great part of the leſſer ASIA, now a man of great yeeres, dying, left behinde him foure ſonnes, *Maſut*, *Coppatine*, *Reucratine*, and *Caichoſroes*, all men growne. Amongſt whom hee diuided his kingdome. Vnto *Maſut* hee bequeathed AMASIA, ANCYRA, DORYLEVM, with diuers other pleaſant cities of PONTVS: vnto

Iſaack the Emperour tyrannizeth.

Clizaſthlan the Turks Sultan encrocheth vpõ the Grecke empire in the leſſer Aſia.

Iſaack the Emperour thruſt frõ the empire, and depriued of his ſight by his brother Alexius.

Clizaſthlan diuideth his kingdome amongſt his foure ſons.

A vnto *Coppatine* he assigned MELYTENE, CESAREA, and the colonie now called TAXARA: vnto *Reucratine* he allotted AMINSVM, DOCEA, with some other cities vpon the sea coast: but vnto *Caichosroes*, he left ICONIVM his regall seat, and with it LYCAONIA, PAMPHILIA, and all the countries thereabouts as farre as COTTIANYVM. Of these foure, *Coppatine* long liued not after his father, for whose inheritance *Reucratine* Prince of DOCEA, and *Masut* Prince of ANCYRA (his two brethren) fell at variance, and so at last into open warre: But *Masut* finding himselfe too weake for his warlike brother *Reucratine*, yeelded vnto him the territories, which he saw he must needs forgoe; and glad now to keepe his owne, so made peace with him. *Reucratine* being a man of an ambitious and haughtie spirit, with his forces thus doubled, denounced warre vnto his brother *Caichosroes*; who doubting his owne strength, fled vnto the Emperour *Alexius Angelus* for aid, as had his father done before him vnto the Emperour *Manuel*, although not with like good fortune. For the Emperour but of late hauing obtained the empire by the deposing of his brother, and altogether giuen to pleasure, reputing also those domesticall warres of the Turkes, some part of his owne safetie; sent him home without comfort, as one strong enough of himselfe to defend his owne quarrell against his brother.

The sonnes of Clizasthlan at variance among themselues.

B

Howbeit, hee was scarcely come to ICONIVM, but that hee was by *Reucratine* expulsed thence, and driuen to flie into ARMENIA, where he was by *Zebune* King of that countrey, a Turke also, honourably receiued and courteously vsed, but yet denied of the aid he requested: the King pretending that he was already in league with *Reucratine*, and therefore could not; or

C as some thought, fearing the dangerousnesse of the matter, would not intermeddle therein. Wherewith the poore Sultan vtterly discouraged, returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there in poore estate, as a man forlorne, passed out the rest of his dayes.

Now hauing thus passed through the Turkish affaires in the lesser ASIA, together with the troubled estate of the Constantinopolitan empire, no small cause of the Turkes greatnesse; the course of time calleth vs backe againe before wee passe any further, to remember their proceedings also at the same time, and shortly after, in SYRIA, IVDEA, ÆGYPT, and those more Southerly countries, where these restlesse people ceased not by all meanes to enlarge their empire, vntill they had brought all those great kingdomes vnder their obeysance.

After the death of *Baldwin* King of IERVSALEM, of whom we haue before spoken, *Almericus* his younger brother, Earle of IOPPA and ASCALON, being then about seuen and twen-

Almericus fixt King of Ierusalem.

D tie yeeres old, was by the better good liking of the clergie and people, than of the nobilitie, elected King: not for that there wanted in him any good parts worthy of a kingdome, but for that some of them enuied vnto him so great an honour. Neuertheless he was (as wee said) by the generall consent of the people elected, proclaimed, and by *Almericus* the Patriarch with all solemnitie crowned, the 17. day of Februarie, in the yeere of Grace 1163. To begin whose troubled raigne, the Ægyptians first of all denied to pay vnto him their wonted tribute: In reuenge whereof, he in person himselfe with a puissant armie entred into ÆGYPT; and meeting with *Dargan* the Sultan, ouerthrew him in plaine battell, and put him to flight: who to stay the further pursuit and passage of the Christians, cut the bankes of the riuer NILVS; and so drowned

E the countrey, that the King was glad to content himselfe with the victorie he had already gotten, and so to returne to IERVSALEM.

The next yeere *Almericus* was againe drawne downe with his power into ÆGYPT, by *Dargan* the Sultan, to aid him against *Saracon*; whom *Noradin* the Turke, King of DAMASCO, had sent as generall with an armie, to restore *Sanar* the Sultan before expulsed, & to depose *Dargan*. In which expedition *Dargan* being slaine, and *Saracon* hauing won certaine townes, kept them to himselfe: *Sanar* doubtfull of his good meaning, ioyned his forces with *Almericus*, and by his helpe expulsed *Saracon* out of ÆGYPT. But whilest *Almericus* was thus busied in ÆGYPT, *Noradin* the Turke making an inroad into the frontiers of the Christians neere vnto TRIPOLIS, was by *Gilbert Lacy*, master of the Templars in those quarters, and the other Christians,

Noradin the Turke discomfited by the Christians.

F when he least feared, so suddenly set vpon, that he had much ado by flight to saue himselfe, halfe naked for haste, most of his followers being at the same time slain. In reuenge of which disgrace, he not long after with a greater power came and besieged ARETHVSA: for reliefe whereof, *Bohemund* Prince of ANTIOCH, *Raymund* the yonger, Earle of TRIPOLIS, *Calaman* gouernour of CILICIA, and *Toros* Prince of ARMENIA, came with their power. Of whose comming the Turke hearing, raised his siege and departed. After whom these Christian Princes eagerly

gerly following, were by the Turkes ſhut vp in certaine deepe and rotten fennes (whereinto they had vnaduiſedly too farre entred) and there with a great ſlaughter ouerthrowne. In which conflict, all the chiefe commanders of the armie were taken, except the Prince of ARMENIA, who fore-caſting the danger, had retired, after he had in vaine diſſwaded the reſt from the further purſuit of the flying enemie. The Prince of ANTIOCH there taken, was about a yeere after for a great ſumme of money redeemed, but the Countie of TRIPOLIS was after eight yeeres ſtrait captiuitie hardly deliuered. *Noradin* after this victorie returning againe to the ſiege of ARETHVSA, in few dayes won the towne: and encouraged with ſo good ſucceſſe, and the abſence of the King, laid ſiege to the citie of PANEADE, which was alſo deliuered vnto him, vpon condition that the citizens might at their pleaſure in ſafetie depart. G H

At the ſame time *Saracon* generall of *Noradin* his forces, tooke from the Chriſtians two caſtels; the one in the countrey of SIDON, the other beyond IORDAN vpon the borders of ARABIA, both in the cuſtodie of the Templars: twelue of whom the King at his returne hanged vp for treaſon.

Shortly after *Saracon*, King *Noradin* his great man of warre, with all the power of the Turks, came downe againe into ÆGYPT, with purpoſe to haue fully ſubdued all that notable kingdome vnto his Lord and maſter. Of whoſe power, *Sanar* the Sultan ſtanding in dread, praied aid of *Almericus*, promiſing vnto him beſide his yeerely tribute, the ſumme of forty thouſand ducats for his paines. The matter fully agreed vpon, and all things now in readineſſe, *Almericus* ſet forward with his armie, and encountring with *Saracon* and his Turkes at the riuer NILVS, I ouerthrew him in a great battell: yet not without ſome loſſe, for the Turkes in their flight lighting vpon the Kings carriages with the whole baggage of the armie, and ouerrunning them that had the charge thereof, carried away with them a moſt rich prey: whereby it came to paſſe, that as the Chriſtians had the victorie, ſo the Turkes enioyed the ſpoile.

Saracon after this ouerthrow hauing againe gathered together his diſperſed ſouldiers, tooke his way to ALEXANDRIA, where he was by the citizens receiued: after whom the King following, gaue no attempt vnto the citie, for that he knew to be but vaine, but encamped cloſe by the ſide of the riuer NILVS, from whence the citie was chiefly to be victualled. Whoſe purpoſe *Saracon* perceiuing, and betime foreſeeing the diſtreſſe of his whole armie for want of victuals, if he ſhould there long ſtay: leauing there his ſonne *Saladin* (or as ſome call him his nephew) with a thouſand horſemen for the keeping of the citie, ſecretly by night departed thence himſelfe with the reſt of his armie: and paſſing through the deſerts, did great harme in the vpper parts of ÆGYPT. Of whoſe departure *Almericus* vnderſtanding, was about to haue followed him, but that he was otherwiſe perſwaded by the Ægyptian captaines to continue his former purpoſe for the gaining of the citie. Wherefore now after the departure of *Saracon*, he began to approach the wals, and with diuers engines of warre to diſturbe the defendants: wherewith the citizens (better acquainted with the trade of marchandize, than the feats of warre) diſcouraged, began now to conſult among themſelues for the turning out of thoſe troubleſome gueſts whom they had ſo lately receiued: which *Saladin* perceiuing, certified *Saracon* his vncle thereof, requeſting his ſpeedie reliefe in that his ſo dangerous eſtate, and with much intreatie perſwaded the citizens for a while to hold it out, vntill he might from him receiue anſwer: of all which the Chriſtians and Ægyptians without, hauing intelligence, laid ſo much the harder vnto the citie. Gladly would *Saracon* haue done what he was by his nephew requeſted: but perceiuing it to be a matter of no leſſe danger than difficultie, he by the meanes of *Hugh*, Countie of CESAREA, and one *Arnolphus* another noble Chriſtian, both then priſoners with him, concluded a peace with the King: whereupon the citie was forthwith yeelded vp, and *Saladin* with his Turkes ſuffered in ſafetie to depart. At which time alſo all priſoners were on both ſides freely and without ranſome ſet at libertie. Thus *Saracon* for this time diſappointed of his purpoſe for the conqueſt of ÆGYPT, returned backe againe to DAMASCO: and *Almericus* with great glory to ASCALON, where he arriued with his armie the 21 of September in the yeere 1167. K L M

Saladin left in Alexandria by Saracon, craueth aid.

Alexandria yeelded to Almericus.

1167

In this late expedition, K. *Almericus* on the one ſide enflamed with the wealth of ÆGYPT, and on the other, encouraged with the weakneſſe of that effeminate people: reſting for the moſt part vpon forraine ſtrength, had purpoſed himſelfe to inuade the kingdome, & ſo if poſſibly he might, to ioyne it to his owne. For colour whereof, it was pretended that the Sultan contrary to his faith before giuen, had ſecretly ſought to ioyne in league & amitie with *Noradin* the Turke,

King

A King of DAMASCO. The chiefe ſtirrer vp of the King vnto this warre, was one *Gerbert* maſter of the Templars; who in reſpect of the aid by them of his order to be giuen, had obtained of the King, after the victorie gained, to haue the citie of PELVSIVM with all the rich countrey about the ſame, giuen vnto him and his brethren the Knights of the order for euer: vpon which hope, he contrary to the minde of many of the Knights, for the furtherance of that warre, gaged his whole wealth and credit, with all the treaſure of his houſe. So all things now in readineſſe, for ſo great an enterpriſe, *Almericus* with his armie ſet forward in October, and hauing in ten dayes paſſed the ſandie deſert, came to PELVSIVM; which citie he (after three dayes ſiege) tooke by force, and put to ſword all them that were therein, without reſpect of age, ſex, or condition: *Peluſium taken by Almericus.*

B which citie he according to his promiſe before made, gaue vnto the Templars. After that, he began alſo to beſiege CAIRE, at which time his fleet ſacked the citie of TAPIVM. In the meane time, *Sanar* the Ægyptian Sultan, conſidering the danger he was in, to ſatisfie *Almericus* his greedie deſire, offred to pay him twentie hundred thouſand duckats to withdraw his forces: and forthwith ſent him one hundred thouſand, for the ranſome of his ſonne and his nephew taken priſoners at PELVSIVM: and for the reſt to be paid within few dayes after, he gaue two of his nephewes hoſtages. Neuertheleſſe the paiment he deferred from day to day, of purpoſe in the meane time to raiſe the whole power of ÆGYPT, as alſo to receiue aid from the Turks by *Saracon*, which he daily expected: of whoſe ſpeedie comming *Almericus* vnderſtanding, left part of his armie at PELVSIVM, and with the reſt went to haue met him: but miſſing him by

C the way, *Saracon* with his Turks came in ſafetie to CAIRE vnto the Sultan, as he had deſired. Wherefore *Almericus* diſmaid with the multitude of two ſo great armies now ioined together, retired backe againe to PELVSIVM, and there taking with him the garriſon before left, returned home to HIERVSALEM: hauing in that expedition (begun with the breach of faith) laid the foundation of the ruine of his kingdome, as in few yeeres after, it by proofe appeared, by the euill neighbourhood of the Turks, by that meanes brought downe into ÆGYPT.

Saracon the Turke after the departure of *Almericus*, eaſily perceiuing a moſt fit time and opportunitie to be offred for him now to obtaine that, which he had in vaine before both ſought and fought for; encamped with his armie neere vnto CAIRE, and notably counterfeited himſelfe of all others the moſt deuoted friend of the Sultans: ſo that betwixt them two paſſed all *The Sultan of Aegypt vnder the colour of friendſhip ſlain by Saracon.*

D the kinde tokens of loue and friendſhip, that could poſſibly be deuiſed; the Sultan oftentimes feaſting the Turke, and in kindneſſe likewiſe being feaſted of him: but at length going as his manner was, vnto the campe to viſit him, hee was by the Turkes ſlaine. So *Saracon* hauing brought to paſſe what hee deſired, and entring the citie with his armie, was by the great Caliph (from whom the Ægyptian Sultans, as from their ſuperiours, the true ſucceſſours of their great Prophet *Mahomet*, tooke their authoritie) appointed Sultan, the firſt of the Turks that euer enioyed the ſame: which royall dignitie he had not poſſeſſed fully a yeere, but that he was taken away by death. In whoſe ſtead *Saladine* his brothers ſonne, by and by ſtept vp: who altogether a martiall man, not regarding the reuerend maieſtie of the Caliph (as had his vncle *Saracon*, and all the Ægyptian Sultans before him) with his horſemans maſe ſtrucke out his braines;

E and not ſo contented, vtterly rooted out all his poſteritie, the better to aſſure himſelfe and his ſucceſſours the Turks in the poſſeſſion of his new gotten kingdome: and after that diuided the great treaſures of the Ægyptians among his Turks, to encourage them the more to follow him in his warres againſt the Chriſtians.

This glorious kingdome ſo much ſpoken of in holy Scripture, & renowned of the learned hiſtoriographers of al ages, after the ruine of the Roman empire, was ſomtime part of the Conſtantinopolitane empire, and a notable member of the Chriſtian common weale; vntill that about the yeere of our Lord 704, the Ægyptians wearie of the pride & couetouſnes of the Grecians, reuolted from them vnto the Saraſins, whoſe ſuperſtition they alſo receiued: & ſo vnder the gouernment of the Saraſin Caliphs, the ſucceſſors of the falſe prophet *Mahomet* liued about 464 *How the kingdome of Aegypt firſt fell into the hands of the Saraſins, with the notable alterations thereof.*

F yeeres, vntill that now being inuaded by *Almericus*, they praid aid of *Noradin* the Turke, Sultan of DAMASCO: who vnto their reliefe ſending *Saracon* with an armie, repulſed indeed the Chriſtians, but oppreſſing their libertie, tooke vnto himſelfe the kingdome, which he left vnto his nephew *Saladine*, in whoſe poſteritie it remained vntill it was from them againe taken by the Circaſſian ſlaues the Mamalukes: vnder whoſe ſeruile gouernment it was holden of long time, vntill that by the great Emperor of the Turks *Selymus* the firſt, it was againe conquered, and the

Mamalukes

Mamalukes vtterly deſtroied: In the gouernment of whoſe poſteritie, the mightie Emperours of the Turks, it hath euer ſince remained as part of their empire, vntill this day, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie God willing ſhall appeare. G

1170 *Saladin* thus poſſeſſed of the great kingdome of ÆGYPT, and all things ſet in ſuch order as he thought beſt for the newneſſe of his ſtate, with a great armie entred into the land of PALESTINE, in the yeere 1170, and there beſieged DARON; which towne he won, and ouerthrew ſuch as were ſent by King *Almericus* to haue releeued the ſame: with which ſmall victorie contenting himſelfe, as with the good beginning of his riſing fortune, hee returned backe againe into his kingdome. Yet was his armie ſo great and populous, as that the like armie of the Turks had neuer before beene ſeene in the Holy Land. Wherefore *Almericus* conſidering in what great danger he ſtood, his kingdome now being on both ſides beſet by the Turks, ſent out his embaſſadours vnto the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt, to craue their aid for the defence of that kingdome which their fathers had won. And for the ſame purpoſe went himſelfe in perſon vnto the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, of whom he was royally entertained, and afterwards ſent backe loaded with the promiſes of great matters, as were alſo his embaſſadours from the Princes of the Weſt. All which for all that ſorted vnto nothing, but vaniſhed into ſmoake. H

1171 The yeere following, *viz.* 1171, *Saladin* beſieged PETRRA, the metropoliticall citie of ARABIA: but hearing that *Almericus* with a great power was comming to the reliefe thereof, he raiſed his ſiege and retired. As he did alſo the next yeere after, hauing in vaine attempted the ſtrong caſtle of MONT-ROYALL, on the further ſide of IORDAN. In like manner alſo the third yeere he came againe into the Holy Land, and ſpoiled the countrey beyond IORDAN: but hearing of the Kings comming againſt him, he forthwith returned againe into ÆGYPT. All theſe light expeditions, this politike Prince made not ſo much for hope of victorie, or to proue his enemies ſtrength, as to traine his ſouldiers, eſpecially the effeminate Ægyptians, and to make them fitter to ſerue him in his greater deſignes. I

1173 Shortly after died *Noradin* Sultan of DAMASCO, and in his time a moſt notable champion of the Turks, after he had raigned nine and twentie yeeres. Vpon whoſe death *Almericus* forthwith beſieged the citie of PANEADE, in hope to haue againe recouered the ſame: but he was by the widow of the late dead Sultan, for a great ſumme of money and the deliuerie of certaine noble priſoners, intreated to raiſe his ſiege and depart. So hauing ſent away his armie, and trauelling with his ordinarie retinue to TIBERIAS, where hee had the Summer before beene ſicke of the flix, feeling himſelfe not well, he returned on horſebacke by NAZARETH and NEAPOLIS to HIERVSALEM, where his old diſeaſe increaſing vpon him, he was alſo taken with a feuer: wherewith after he had beene ſome few dayes grieuouſly tormented, hee requeſted his Phyſitians with ſome gentle potion to looſe his bellie, which was now ſomewhat ſtaied: which they refuſing to doe, he commanded the potion to be giuen him vpon his owne perill, hap thereon what hap ſhould: which being giuen him, and his bellie againe looſed, he ſeemed therewith to haue beene at the firſt well eaſed, but his wonted feuer with great vehemencie returning, before his weake and ſpent bodie could be with conuenient meats refreſhed, he ſuddenly died the tenth of Iuly, in the yeere 1173, when he had raigned about ten yeeres. His dead bodie was with the great lamentation of all his ſubiects, ſolemnly buried by his brothers. He was a moſt wiſe Prince, and withall right valiant, amongſt many moſt fit for the gouernment and defence of that troubleſome kingdome, ſo hardly beſet with the Infidels, if it had pleaſed God to haue giuen him longer life. K L

Baldwin the fourth of that name, ſeuenth King of Hieruſalem.

Foure dayes after the death of *Almericus*, was *Baldwin* his ſonne, then a youth about thirteene yeeres old, by the generall conſent of the nobilitie choſen King, and by *Almericus* the Patriarch in the Temple with great ſolemnitie crowned in the yeere 1173: vnto whom, as not yet by reaſon of his tender age, fit himſelfe to mannage the waightie affaires of the kingdome, *Raymund* Countie of TRIPOLIS, was by the whole conſent of the nobilitie appointed Tutor, to ſupplie what was wanting in the young King. M

Noradin, Sultan of DAMASCO (dead as is aforeſaid) left behinde him *Melechſala* his ſonne, yet but a youth, to ſucceed him in his kingdome. Whoſe gouernment the nobilitie diſdaining, ſent ſecretly for *Saladin* Sultan of ÆGYPT, vnto whom at his comming they betraied the citie of DAMASCO, the regall ſeat of the Turks in SYRIA. Whereof *Saladin* poſſeſſed, and entring into CELESIRIA without reſiſtance, tooke HELIOPOLIS, EMISSA, with the great citie of

CESAREA;

A CESAREA; and in fine, all the whole kingdome of DAMASCO, the citie of ARETHVSA onely excepted. But thus to ſuffer *Melechſala* the young Prince to be wronged, and the kingdome of DAMASCO to be ioyned vnto the kingdome of ÆGYPT, was of the wiſer ſort thought not to ſtand with the ſafetie of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, lying in the middle betwixt them both. Wherefore the Countie of TRIPOLIS, gouernor of that kingdome, made out certaine forces to haue hindred his proceedings. At which time alſo, *Cotobed* Prince of PARTHIA and *Melechſalas* vncle, ſent certaine troupes of Parthian horſemen to haue aided his diſtreſſed nephew, who were by *Saladin* ouerthrowne and almoſt all ſlaine, neere vnto ALEPPO where *Melechſala* lay. As for the Countie of TRIPOLIS and the other Chriſtian Princes, with
B whom *Saladin* in the newneſſe of his kingdome had no deſire to fall out; he appeaſed them with faire intreatie, and rewards: vnto the Countie he ſent freely the hoſtages, which yet lay for his ranſome at EMISSA: vnto the other Princes he ſent rich preſents; and therewith ſo contented them all, that they returned without any thing doing againſt him. After which time, three or foure yeeres paſſed in great quietneſſe, to the great ſtrengthning of him in thoſe new gotten kingdomes. At length vpon the comming ouer of *Philip* Earle of FLANDERS, the Chriſtian Princes in SYRIA encouraged, conſulted of an expedition to be made into ÆGYPT, whereof *Saladin* hauing intelligence, drew downe into that country the greateſt part of his ſtrength. But *Philip* diſliking of that expedition, and the rather for that he ſaw no great cheerefulneſſe in the Countie of TRIPOLIS and the reſt, thereunto; they with one conſent changed their purpoſe
C for ÆGYPT, and turning their forces a quite contrary way, miſerably and without reſiſtance waſted the countrey about EMISSA and CESAREA.

Saladin ouerthrown by king Baldwin.

Whileſt the Chriſtians were thus buſied in CÆLISIRIA, *Saladin* on the other ſide tooke occaſion out of ÆGYPT to inuade the kingdome of HIERVSALEM: of whoſe comming King *Baldwin* hauing intelligence, with ſuch ſmall forces as he had left, haſtened himſelfe to ASCALON. In the meane time *Saladin* with a great armie was entred into the Holy Land, where burning the country before him, and raging in the bloud of the poore Chriſtians, hee came and encamped not farre from ASCALON: and ſtrucke ſuch a feare vpon the whole country, that they which dwelt in HIERVSALEM, were about to haue forſaken the citie: As for the King himſelfe, he lay cloſe within the citie of ASCALON, not daring to aduenture vp-
D on ſo ſtrong an enemie. Wherewith *Saladin* encouraged, and out of feare of his enemies, diſperſed his armie, ſome one way, ſome another, to forrage the country. Which the King perceiuing, ſecretly with all his power iſſued out of the citie, if happily ſo he might ouertake the Sultan vnawares. Neither was he deceiued in his expectation: for comming ſuddenly vpon him, and ſecretly charging him, he had with him for a good ſpace an hard and doubtfull battell, vntill that the victorie by the power of God, at length inclining to the Chriſtians, *Saladin* with his Turkes fled, ouerthrowne with a great ſlaughter, moſt part of his great armie being either there ſlaine, or loſt afterward with hunger and cold. This victorie fell vnto the Chriſtians the 25. day of Nouember, in the yeere 1177, not without the mightie hand of God, the Turke hauing in his armie 1177
aboue 26. thouſand horſemen, and the King not paſt foure hundred horſe, with ſome few foot-
E men. After which victorie, *Baldwin* in great triumph returned to HIERVSALEM, and there ſhortly after with great care and diligence repaired the decaied wals of the citie.

The chriſtians diuiding the ſpoile, ouerthrowne by the Turkes.

Saladin in reuenge of this ouerthrow, made diuers incurſions into the frontiers of the Chriſtians, and did great harme, eſpecially in the countrey about SIDON. For the repreſſing whereof, the King put himſelfe in armes, and going againſt him, ouerthrew part of his armie, as they were carrying away a great bootie. Of which ouerthrow *Saladin* vnderſtanding, came in ſuch haſte with the reſt of his armie, as if it had been a ſudden tempeſt, vpon the Chriſtians, then in great ſecuritie diuiding the ſpoile; of whom they ſlew a great number, and put the reſt to flight: In which ſo ſudden a confuſion, *Otto*, grand maſter of the Templars, and *Hugh* the Earle of TRIPOLIS his ſon in law, were both taken priſoners. The Earle himſelfe with a few fled to TYRE: the
F King alſo at the ſame time was glad to ſhift for himſelfe, & by flight to ſaue himſelfe as he might. After which victorie, *Saladin* beſieged a ſtrong caſtle which the King but the yeere before had built vpon the banke of the riuer of IORDAN, and giuen it to the Templars, with the countrey round about; which caſtle *Saladin* tooke by force, and put to ſword all that were therein, except ſome few whom he carried away priſoners. By this victorie *Saladin* became dreadfull vnto the Chriſtians in SYRIA, which cauſed them, eſpecially ſuch as had any charge, with more vigilancie

cie to looke about them. Yet ſhortly after, a peace was for a time concluded betwixt the Sultan and the King; whereby their troubled eſtates breathed themſelues almoſt the ſpace of two yeeres. G

But this ſo welcome a calme was by domeſticall troubles againe by the Kings friends ſuddenly troubled. For the Countie of TRIPOLIS, to whom the gouernment of the kingdome was committed, comming towards HIERVSALEM, being by the ſuggeſtion of his enemies brought into ſuſpition with the King, as if he had affected the kingdome, was to his great diſgrace by the way commanded to ſtay. The chiefe authors of which diſcontentment, were the Kings mother, a woman of a turbulent nature, and her brother the Kings ſteward; who in the abſence of the Earle, had wrought the Kings ſicke minde according to their owne appetites. H But the reſt of the nobilitie wiſely foreſeeing vnto what great danger that diſcord might tend; in deſpight of them, with much labour, cauſed him to be ſent for againe, and ſo reconciled vnto the King: by which means, that dangerous fire of diſſention was for that time appeaſed, which afterwards brake out againe, to the vtter ruine of that kingdome.

Saladin goeth out of Aegypt to Damaſco.

Saladin now wearie of the league he had before made with King *Baldwin*, as no longer ſtanding with his haughtie deſignes, renounced the ſame, and raiſing a great power in ÆGYPT, ſet forward toward DAMASCO. Of whoſe comming King *Baldwin* hauing knowledge, with the whole power of his kingdome went to haue met him, not farre from the dead Sea, and there encamped at an old towne called PETRA. But *Saladin* turning out of the way, into the Kings territorie, came and encamped before MOVNT-ROIALL, a caſtle which *Baldwin* had giuen I vnto the Templars, about three dayes march from the place where the King lay.

Galiley ſpoiled, and the caſtle of Burie taken by the Turkes.

There *Saladin* with the ſpoile of the country refreſhing his armie, now weary of long trauell, ſet forward again, and ſo without reſiſtance arriued with his armie at DAMASCO. At the ſame time the Turks captaines about DAMASCO, BOSTRVM, and EMISSA, perceiuing the frontiers of the Chriſtians thereabout, to be kept but with ſmall ſtrength, paſſed ouer IORDAN, and ſpoiling a great part of GALILEY, beſieged the caſtle of BVRIE, at the foot of mount TABOR, not farre from the citie of NAIM; which caſtle they in few dayes tooke, and hauing there made a great ſlaughter, carried away with them about fiue hundred priſoners. *Saladin* being come to DAMASCO, called together all the garriſons of that kingdome, and ioyning them vnto the forces he brought out of ÆGYPT, entred into the Holy Land: at which time the Countie of K TRIPOLIS, gouernour of the kingdome, lay ſicke of a burning feauer. Neuertheleſſe the King encouraged by the Knights of the order, went out with his armie againſt him; and encountring with him neere vnto a village called FROBOLET, ouerthrew him in a great battell, wherein, and afterward in the flight, moſt part of the Sultans armie periſhed: *Saladin* himſelfe being glad by ſpeedie flight to eſcape the danger, and ſo by long marches to get him againe to DAMASCO.

Berytus in vaine beſieged by the Turkes.

In reuenge of this ouerthrow, *Saladin* hauing repaired his armie, and ſent for his fleet out of ÆGYPT, came and beſieged BERYTVS both by ſea and land: at which time alſo his brother, whom he had left gouernour in ÆGYPT, beſieged DARVM, a ſtrong towne in the vttermoſt bounds of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM towards ÆGYPT. Both whoſe forces *Baldwin* L being not able at once to repreſſe, by the counſell of his nobilitie, thought it beſt firſt to releeue BERYTVS, as the place of greater importance. And for that purpoſe ſet forward with his armie by land, hauing alſo rigged vp three and thirty gallies at TYRE, for the reliefe thereof by ſea. Of which preparation *Saladin* vnderſtanding, as alſo of the Kings comming (by letters intercepted by his ſcouts, directed to the beſieged, for the holding out of the ſiege, with promiſe of ſpeedie reliefe) he preſently roſe with his armie, and departed: whereof the King being aduertiſed, retired to SEPHOR.

Saladin inuading Meſopotamia, is himſelfe inuaded by the King of Hieruſalem.

Not long after, *Saladin* according to his ambitious nature, deſirous aboue meaſure to extend the bounds of his kingdome, and ſeeing the ſucceſſe of his attempts againſt the King of HIERVSALEM not anſwerable to his deſire, conuerted his forces vnto the countries more Eaſt- M ward: and paſſing the riuer EVPHRATES, and entring into MESOPOTAMIA, partly by force, partly by corruption, got into his hands the cities of EDESSA, CARRAS, and diuers others. In which time the king of HIERVSALEM tooke occaſion firſt to ſpoile the country about DAMASCO, & after that, diuers other places of the Sultans kingdome, making hauocke of whatſoeuer came in his way, and ſo laded with the ſpoile of the Turks, retired to HIERVSALEM.

Saladin

A *Saladin* with victorie returning out of MESOPOTAMIA, in reuenge of the iniuries done vnto him in his absence, marched directly to ALEPPO, the strongest citie of the Christians in that part of SYRIA, which aboue all other he longed after: where hee had not long lien, but that it was by the treason of the gouernour deliuered into his hands, with all the country thereabouts: wherewith the Christian Princes were so discouraged, that they euen then began to feare greater matters to ensue. The Prince of ANTIOCH sold TARSVS the metropoliticall citie of CILICIA, to *Rupinus* Prince of ARMENIA; for that he saw it was not without great charge and danger to be by him defended, being so farre from him, and *Saladin* as it were now stept in betwixt him and it. *Aleppo betraied vnto the Turks.*

B At the same time King *Baldwin*, at NAZARETH fell sicke of a feuer; the leprosie also his old disease growing daily more and more vpon him: insomuch that despairing of his life, he called vnto him *Guy Lusignan*, Countie of IOPPA and ASCALON, vnto whom he had before espoused *Sybil* his eldest sister, and in the presence of his mother, the Patriarch, and all the chiefe commanders of the souldiers of the sacred warre, appointed him gouernour of the kingdome, reseruing vnto himselfe only the title of a King, with the citie of HIERVSALEM, and a yeerely pension of ten thousand duckats: all which was done to the great disgrace and discontentment of the Countie of TRIPOLIS the old gouernour.

It was not long, but that *Saladin* hauing breathed himselfe a little, after so great labours, came againe into the Holy Land, where he tooke many castles, and did infinite harme; insomuch
C that the countrey people were glad for feare to forsake their houses and to flie into cities. The Christian armie in the meane time lying fast by at SEPHOR, not once mouing, although many a faire occasion were offered: for the chiefe commanders affectionated vnto the Countie of TRIPOLIS, and enuying at the preferment of *Guy* the new gouernour, were vnwilling to fight, but finding one excuse or other, suffered the enemie at his pleasure to spoile the countrey, and so in safetie to depart, which he had neuer before done in those quarters.

Within lesse then a moneth after, *Saladin* with a great armie well appointed with all the habiliments of war, needfull for the besieging of a citie or strong castle, came againe into the land of PALESTINE; and passing thorow the countrey beyond IORDAN, sat downe at last before PETRA, in hope by the taking thereof, to haue made his passage betweene ÆGYPT and DA-
D MASCO more safe. Of which his purpose King *Baldwin* hauing knowledge, and taught by the euill successe of late, to what small purpose it was to commit the managing of his wars vnto a Generall so euill beloued, and lesse regarded, as was *Guy* his brother in law; sent against him with his armie *Raymund* the Countie of TRIPOLIS, the old gouernour, whom he had againe restored vnto the gouernment, and displaced *Guy*. Of whose comming *Saladin* hearing, raised his siege after he had lien there a moneth, and so departed. *Petra in vaine besieged by the Turks.*

A little before this expedition, the King still growing sicker and sicker, his foule disease still increasing, by the common consent of the nobilitie, appointed *Baldwin* his nephew by his sister *Sybylla*, a childe but of fiue yeeres old, to succeed him in the kingdome; and the Countie of TRIPOLIS to haue the gouernment of the state during the time of his minoritie. This *Sybylla*
E the Kings sister, was first married to *William* the younger, Marquesse of MOVNT-FERRAT, who dying within three moneths after, left her with childe with this his posthumus sonne *Baldwin*, now by his vncle deputed vnto the hope of the kingdome. After whose death she was married to *Guy Lusignan*, Countie of IOPPA and ASCALON, the late gouernour: who taking in euill part this the Kings designement, especially for the gouernment of the kingdome by the Countie of TRIPOLIS, departed from the Court as a man discontented, vnto his citie of ASCALON: whereof the Patriarch and the Princes of the sacred warre, fearing (and that not without cause) great danger to ensue, came to the King, then holding a Parlament at the citie of ACON, most humbly requesting him for auoiding of further danger, and the safetie of his kingdome, to receiue againe into his fauour the Countie *Guy* his brother in law, and to make
F an attonement betwixt him and the Countie of TRIPOLIS. But this their request sorted to no purpose, so that the Parlament was dissolued without any thing for the good of the commonweale in that point concluded. *Discord in the court of Hierusalem.*

After that time the kingdome of HIERVSALEM began still more and more to decline. In the old King *Baldwin* (sicke both in body & mind) was almost no hope: in the young King (yet vnfit for so great a burthen) much lesse: and the dissention betwixt the two Counties *Guy* and

Raymund with their fauorites, was like enough to bring great harme vnto the ſtate. Beſides that, G
the Countie of TRIPOLIS fearing the power of *Guy* his enemy, was thought to haue ſecret intelligence with *Saladin* the Turke, inſomuch that the King was almoſt in purpoſe to haue proclaimed him traitor. Wherfore the King now reſted only vpon the counſell of *William* Archbiſhop of TYRE, and the maſters of the Knights of the ſacred warre: by whoſe aduice he ſent *Heraclius* Patriarch of HIERVSALEM, *Roger Molins* maſter of the Knights of S. IOHNS, and *Arnold* maſter of the Templars, embaſſadours vnto *Lucius* the third, then Pope, vnto *Fredericke* the Emperor, *Philip* the French King, and *Henry* the ſecond King of ENGLAND; to declare vnto them the dangerous ſtate of that Chriſtian kingdome, and to craue their aid againſt the Infidels. Theſe embaſſadours comming to the Councell then holden at VERONA, with great grauitie and dili- H
gence in the preſence of the Pope and of the Emperour, declared the hard eſtate of the Chriſtians of the Eaſt, with their humble requeſt vnto them for aid: in ſuch ſort that they moued them, with all the Princes there preſent, to compaſſion. From thence they were by the Pope directed vnto *Philip* the French King, with whom hauing diſpatched their affaires, they from him paſſed ouer into ENGLAND, and afterward into GERMANIE: and had at length brought their negotiation to ſo good paſſe, that in euery place great preparation was made for a great expedition to be vndertaken againſt the Turks, for the reliefe of the Chriſtians in the Eaſt: with which good newes, the embaſſadours returning to HIERVSALEM, filled the ſicke King with the hope of great matters. But greater quarrels ſhortly after ariſing betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, and ſharpe warre likewiſe betwixt the French King and the King of ENGLAND, and I
the other Chriſtian Princes alſo being at no better quiet, the notable expedition that had with the expectation thereof ſo filled the world, was againe laid aſide and quite daſhed. Whereof King *Baldwin* vnderſtanding both by meſſengers and letters from his friends, oppreſſed with griefe and heauineſſe, more than with the force of his diſeaſe (a man for his proweſſe and painefulneſſe not inferiour to any his predeceſſors) died without iſſue the 16 day of May, in the yeere
1185 1185, being but fiue and twentie yeeres old, whereof he had raigned twelue. His bodie was afterward with the generall mourning of his ſubiects, ſolemnly buried in the Temple neere vnto the mount CALVARIE, together with his predeceſſours the Kings of HIERVSALEM.

King Baldwin ſendeth embaſſadours vnto the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt for aid.

King *Baldwin* thus buried, *Baldwin* the fift of that name, yet but a boy, was crowned King. But then began the ſparks, which had of long lien raked vp and hidden in the aſhes, to breake K
out into a great fire: for *Raymund* Countie of TRIPOLIS, contended the whole gouernment of the kingdome, and tuition of the King, to be due vnto him, by the appointment of the late King and conſent of the nobilitie; and did ſo much, that he had almoſt obtained it to haue beene confirmed vnto him in open Parlament. But *Sybylla*, a woman of a moſt haughtie ſpirit (ſiſter vnto the late King, and mother vnto the young King yet liuing) prickt forward her huſband *Guy*, in no caſe to giue place vnto his competitour *Raymund*; and ſo animated him, that by the helpe of his owne fauourites, and the countenance of *Boniface* Marqueſſe of MOVNT-FERRAT, who euen then was come with a great power into SYRIA, hee extorted from the nobilitie whatſoeuer hee deſired. But ſeuen moneths were ſcarce well paſſed, but that this young King *Baldwin* was dead and buried; poiſoned (as was reported) by his mother, for the deſire ſhe had of the king- L
dome her ſelfe: whoſe death ſhe with all ſecrecie concealed, vntill ſhe had obtained of the Patriarch and other Princes of the kingdome, that *Guy* her huſband might be proclaimed King: So by her meanes it was ſo wrought, that vpon one and the ſelfe ſame day, the young King *Baldwin* was buried by his vncle, and *Guy* the Countie crowned. This young King *Baldwin* by reaſon of his tender yeeres & ſhort raigne, is of ſome not reckoned amongſt the Kings of HIERVSALEM: howbeit, ſeeing he was by his vncle and the Princes of that time, thought worthy of the kingdome, let him alſo haue his place amongſt the reſt, as the eight King of HIERVSALEM.

Guy the ninth and laſt King of Hieruſalem.

When *Guy* was thus poſſeſſed of the kingdome, the Countie of TRIPOLIS ſeeing himſelfe out of all hope of the gouernment, and highly therewith diſcontented, did what he might by all meanes to croſſe the doings of the King: whoſe ſicke and aſpiring minde *Saladin* prickt daily M
more and more forward, promiſing him his helping hand whenſoeuer he ſhould need; which courteſie the Countie deſirouſly embraced. For now the fatall period of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM drew faſt on, and all things tended to deſtruction, diſcord raigning in euery place: which *Saladin* well perceiuing (after that he had cõpacted with the Countie) by meſſengers ſent of purpoſe, inuited the Turks, Saraſins, & Ægyptians, as men agreeing in one and the ſame religion,

A gion, generally to take vp armes in ſo fit an opportunitie of the diſcord of the Chriſtians, aſſuring them of great prey and ſpoile, beſides the honour of the conqueſt. The citie of PTOLEMAIS was the place by him appointed, where all this power ſhould meet: whither ſuch a multitude of the barbarous Mahometans (partly for the hatred of the Chriſtian religion, partly for the hope of the rich ſpoile which *Saladin* had promiſed them) came flocking out of al places, that in ſhort time there was met together about fiftie thouſand horſemen, beſides an infinit number of foot. And vnto ſuch as could not ſafely paſſe by the borders of HIERVSALEM, to them the falſe Countie gaue ſafe conduct, by the countries of TIBERIAS, NAZARETH, and GALILEY.

Saladin vpõ the diſcord of the Chriſtians, taketh occaſion to inuade the Holy Land.

All the power of the Infidels thus aſſembled, *Saladin* laid ſiege vnto the citie of PTOLEMAIS:

Ptolemais beſieged by Saladin.

B which the Templars and the Knights Hoſpitallers had notably fortified and ſtrongly manned, (as before vnto them giuen by the Kings of HIERVSALEM to defend againſt the Infidel) and therein now were both the maſters of both thoſe honourable orders, with the whole flower of the Knights of their profeſſion. Vnto this citie, *Saladin* gaue a moſt terrible aſſault vpon May day in the morning, in the yeere 1187; which was by the Chriſtians notably defended, and the enemy with great ſlaughter ſtill beaten downe. In the heat of this aſſault, the two great maſters ſallying out, with certaine troupes of their moſt ready horſemen, aſſailed the enemies campe, and bearing downe all before them, raiſed there a great tumult: and by and by turning vpon the backes of them, that were aſſaulting the citie, made there an exceeding great ſlaughter. Inſomuch, that *Saladin* diſmaied, firſt with the confuſion in his campe, and now with the ſudden

1187

C danger behinde him, was glad to giue ouer the aſſault, and to turne his whole forces vpon them: where was fought a moſt bloudie and terrible battell. Amongſt others that there fought, the Countie of TRIPOLIS, now an enemie vnto God and his countrey, diſguiſed in the habit of a Turke, notably helped the Infidels, and meeting with the great maſter of the Knights Hoſpitalers, vnhorſed him, who ſurcharged with the waight of his armour, and oppreſſed with the multitude of his enemies, there died. Neuertheleſſe, ſuch was the valour of theſe worthy men, and new ſuccour ſtill comming out of the citie, that *Saladin* hauing in that battell, and at the aſſault, loſt fifteene thouſand of his Turks, was glad with the reſt to betake him ſelfe to flight. Neither was this ſo notable a victorie gained by the Chriſtians without bloud, moſt part of the worthy Knights Hoſpitalers being together with their grand maſter there ſlaine.

D *Saladin* by this ouerthrow perceiuing, that by open force he ſhould not be able to doe much againſt the Chriſtians, thought it good vnto his forces to ioyne alſo policie. Wherein the falſe Countie of TRIPOLIS was the man he thought beſt to make choice of, as his fitteſt inſtrument to worke by. Him hee compacted withall to ſeeke for grace at the King of HIERVSALEM his hands, as of his dread Soueraigne, and after ſo long diſcord, to ſue to be reconciled vnto him, as now wearie of the Turkes amitie, with whom he ſhould make ſhew to be vtterly fallen out. At which time alſo (to giue the matter the better grace) *Saladin* of purpoſe with a great armie came and beſieged TIBERIAS, a citie of the Counties iuriſdiction: for the reliefe whereof, the traiterous Countie craued aid of the King & the other Princes of the ſacred warre. Who with an armie, though not great, yet very well appointed, came according to his deſire,

E and encamped neere vnto the fountaine of SOPHOR: where they had not long ſtaied, but that they met with the huge armie of the Turkes, being in number one hundred and twenty thouſand horſe, and one hundred and ſixtie thouſand foot: with whom they ioyned a moſt ſharpe and terrible battell; which by reaſon of the extremitie of the heat of the weather (it then being the twelfth of Iuly) and the approach of the night, was againe giuen ouer; both armies (as if it had beene by conſent) retiring. The next day the battell was againe begun, wherein the Turks, by the treaſon and ſhamefull flight of the falſe Countie of TRIPOLIS, gained the victorie. In this battell *Guy* the King himſelfe, with *Gerard* maſter of the Templars, *Boniface* Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, and diuers others, men of great marke, were taken priſoners. And to ſay the truth, in this battell was broken the whole ſtrength of the Chriſtians in the Eaſt.

Guy King of Hieruſalem taken priſoner.

F The Chriſtian cõmon-weale by the treaſon of the falſe Countie thus betraied vnto the Infidels, *Saladin* without any great reſiſtance had the cities of PTOLEMAIS, BIBLIS, & BERITHVS deliuered vnto him: in all which places, he vſed his victorie with great moderation, not enforcing any Chriſtian (more than the Latines) to depart thence, but ſuffering them there ſtill to remain, as before, yeelding vnto him their obedience, with ſuch tribute as he had impoſed vpon them. With like good fortune, he within the ſpace of one moneth tooke all the port townes

betwixt SIDON and ASCALON, alongſt the ſea coaſt, excepting only the ancient citie of TYRE; vnto the citie of ASCALON alſo he laid ſiege by the ſpace of nine dayes: but loth to ſtay the courſe of his victorie, by the valour of the defendants reſolued there to ſpend their liues, he departed thence, and marched directly vnto HIERVSALEM, the chiefe citie of that kingdome. And approaching the ſame, gaue ſummons thereunto, perſwading the citizens yet whiles they had time, to yeeld themſelues, together with the citie, vnto his mercy. Which they refuſing to doe, he incloſed the ſame with his armie, and by the ſpace of foureteene dayes laid hard ſiege vnto it, leauing nothing vndone or vnattempted, that might helpe for the gaining thereof. At which time, the citizens conſidering the danger they were in, and that the ſtrength of the kingdome, with the flower of their chiualrie, were in the late battell loſt, and that they were not now to expect any forraine aid, agreed vpon certaine conditions to yeeld vp the citie: which were, That ſuch Chriſtians as would, might remaine ſtill, with their libertie and goods; and that ſuch as would not, might in ſafetie depart, with ſo much of their goods as they could carrie vpon their backes. Theſe conditions being by *Saladin* granted, the holy citie was vnto him deliuered the ſecond of October in the yeere 1187; after it had beene by the Chriſtians holden from the time that it was by *Godfrey* of BVILLON and other Chriſtians won, about 89. yeeres. *Saladin* entring into the citie, prophaned firſt the Temple of the Lord, conuerting it vnto the vſe of his Mahometane ſuperſtition, the other Churches hee vſed as ſtables for his horſes; only the Temple of the Sepulchre was by the Chriſtians for a great ſumme of money redeemed, and ſo kept vndefiled. The Latine Chriſtians he thruſt out of the citie, yet with leaue to carrie with them ſuch things as they were able themſelues to beare: who trauelling with heauie burdens, but much more heauie hearts, ſome to TRIPOLIS, ſome to TYRE, ſome to ANTIOCH, (for only theſe three cities were now left vnto the Chriſtians in SYRIA) were by the falſe Countie of TRIPOLIS by the way lightened of their burdens, to the increaſing of the heauineſſe of their hearts, moſt of them being by him and his followers ſpoiled of that little they had by the mercy of their enemies ſaued in the ruine of their ſtate.

Hierusalem beſieged.

Hierusalem taken by Saladin.

Vnto the other Chriſtians that were naturall Syrians, Greekes, Armenians, Georgians, and ſuch like, *Saladin* appointed certaine places of the citie for them to dwell in, where ſome of their poſteritie were long time after to be found. All the monuments of the Chriſtians were by the barbarous Mahometanes and Turkes defaced, only the Sepulchre of our bleſſed Sauiour Chriſt, with the monument of *Godfrey* of BVILLON, and his brother *Baldwin*, for the reuerence of the men, were by them ſpared. In theſe ſo great troubles, aboue twentie thouſand of the Chriſtians periſhed: amongſt the reſt, the Countie of TRIPOLIS was ſhortly after found dead in his bed, and (as ſome ſay) circumciſed; a manifeſt token of his reuolt, not from the King only, but from the Chriſtian faith alſo.

The death of Raymund, the traiterous Countie of Tripolis.

HIERVSALEM thus won, *Saladin* returned againe to the ſiege of ASCALON, which after he had by the ſpace of ten dayes moſt ſtraitly beſieged, was vnto him by compoſition deliuered: wherein amongſt other things agreed vpon for the ſafe departure of the citizens, was compriſed alſo, that he ſhould freely ſet at libertie *Guy* the king, and *Gerard* maſter of the Templars, both before taken priſoners, as is before declared; which he afterward performed.

Thus the victorious Turke ſtill vrging his good fortune, departing thence, attempted to haue taken TRIPOLIS; but hauing made ſome proofe of his owne forces, and the valour of the defendants, he was glad to giue ouer the ſiege, and to depart as he came. Marching thence with his armie, becauſe he would leaue no place vnattempted, he laid ſiege vnto the citie of TIRE, where *Conrade* Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT was a little before arriued with *Iſaack Angelus* the Greeke Emperours fleet, and a ſupplie of certaine companies of good ſouldiers. Vnto which place were come great numbers of the poore diſtreſſed Chriſtians, fled from HIERVSALEM, and other places, ſo that the citie was full of men.

This citie *Saladin* moſt furiouſly aſſaulted, but was by the Chriſtians notably repulſed, not without the great loſſe of his beſt ſouldiers. At which time alſo the Admirall of SICILIA diſcomfited his fleet at ſea, and landing his forces, came vnlooked for vpon the backe of him: ſo that hauing his hands full before by them of the towne, and charged behind by theſe newcome enemies, he was glad to retire in ſuch haſte, as that he left his tents with all that therein was, vnto the ſpoile of the Chriſtians.

Within a few dayes after, *Saladin* hauing againe repaired his armie, inuaded the countrey about

A about ANTIOCH: with fire and ſword deſtroying whatſoeuer was ſubiect to his furie, euen to the gates of the citie; but knowing that ſo ſtrong a citie was not without great charge and long ſiege to be won, he thought it good to make proofe if it might by policie or corruption be gained. Wherein he ſo cunningly dealt with the Patriarch, that hee had by his meanes, the caſtle (otherwiſe almoſt impregnable) for gold betraied vnto him. By meanes whereof, hee in ſhort time became Lord and maſter of that famous citie, (about ninetie yeeres before hardly gained by the whole power of the Chriſtians, after eleuen moneths ſiege) and with it fiue and twentie cities moe that depended of the fortune thereof, with all the prouinces belonging thereunto, alwayes deemed to haue beene the third part of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM.

The famous citie of Antioch betraied vnto the Turks.

B The loſſe of this ſo great a citie, together with the ruine of the whole kingdome, had in ſhort ſpace filled euery corner of Chriſtendome with the heauie report thereof. Wherewith the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt (namely *Frederick* the Germane Emperour, with *Frederick* his ſonne Duke of SVEVIA, *Philip* the French King, *Henry* the ſecond, King of ENGLAND, *Otto* Duke of BVRGVNDIE, *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, with many other great Princes and Prelates of GERMANIE, ITALIE, and other places) not a little moued, as alſo with the pitifull complaints of the embaſſadours at the ſame time ſent from the diſtreſſed Chriſtians; and the effectuall perſwaſions of *Clement* the third then Pope: promiſed, and all, or moſt part, indeed made great preparations; which they afterwards, though not all at once (as letted by other occaſions) but at diuers times imployed for the moſt part, with the danger of their owne perſons,
C againſt the Turks, for the reliefe of the poore oppreſſed Chriſtians, and recouerie of the Holy Land: but with what ſucceſſe, ſhall hereafter (God willing) be declared.

Of which ſo great preparations made againſt him, *Saladin* not ignorant, ſet at libertie *Guy* the King of HIERVSALEM, whom contrary to his promiſe made at ASCALON, he had now detained a yeere in priſon; yet before his enlargement exacting of him an oath, Neuer by force of armes afterwards to ſeeke to recouer his kingdome, or to reuenge the wrongs hee had ſuſtained: hoping thereby to ſtay the comming of the other Princes in his quarrell. Which oath for all that, the Pope diſpenſed withall, as extorted by conſtraint from him, at ſuch time as *Saladin* had longer detained him in priſon than of right he ſhould.

Guy now at libertie, & yet in minde a King, came to TYRE, but could not be there receiued,
D the citizens hauing before ſworne their obedience vnto *Conrade* Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, by whom they had beene notably defended againſt the furie of *Saladin*. Wherefore departing thence with ſuch power as he had, and the diſperſed Chriſtians daily repairing vnto him out of all parts of SYRIA, he came and beſieged PTOLEMAIS: where he had not long lien, but that firſt came vnto him the Venetian fleet, with them alſo of PISA, and after them the Flemings with a fleet of fiftie ſaile, who all ioyned their forces together for the winning of the citie. But whileſt the Chriſtians thus lay at the ſiege of PTOLEMAIS, came *Saladin* with a great armie to the reliefe of the beſieged: where betwixt him and the Chriſtians was fought a great battell, wherein the Chriſtians at the firſt had the better; but afterward fainting, and readie to flie, had there vndoubtedly receiued a notable ouerthrow, had not *Geffrey Lyſignan*, the Kings brother, (left for
E the guarding of the campe) in good time come in with new ſupplies: and not onely ſtaied their flight, but alſo repreſſed the farther purſute of the fierce enemie, now almoſt in poſſeſſion of the deſired victorie. Neuertheleſſe, there were two thouſand Chriſtians there ſlaine, and amongſt them *Gerard*, maſter of the Templars. *Saladin* by that which was now done, perceiuing how hard a matter it would be for him by land to relieue his citie, ſent for the fleet which hee had ſtrongly rigged vp at ALEXANDRIA, and ſo by force put new ſupplies both of men and victuals into the beſieged citie. Wherewith the Turks encouraged, made often ſallies vpon the Chriſtians; & in deſpight of the Chriſtian religion, whipped the image of Chriſt crucified, which they had for that purpoſe, in the ſight of the Chriſtians ſet vp vpon the top of the wall. With the ſame fleet alſo he ſo ſcoured the ſeas, that no victuals or new ſupplies of men could that way without
F great danger be brought vnto the campe; whereby ſuch ſcarcitie and want of all things began ſhortly after to ariſe among the Chriſtians, that ſome of them not able longer to endure the famine, fled vnto the Turks campe, then lying not farre off, crying out for bread. Of which diſtreſſe in the campe of the Chriſtians, *Saladin* knowing right well, both by ſuch fugitiues as daily came ouer vnto him, and by his owne eſpials, yet made ſhew as if he vnderſtood nothing thereof: but ſuddenly riſing with his armie (as doubtfull of his owne ſtrength) departed, leauing

his campe full of all manner of victuals. Whereof the Christians vnderstanding, and supposing him to haue for feare beene gone indeed, in great numbers hasted vnto the forsaken campe, as vnto a most desired prey: where, whilest they were gorging themselues, *Saladin* suddenly returning, and getting betwixt them and home, made of them a great slaughter. Neuertheless, the Christians hauing now lien before the citie six moneths, continued the siege all the Winter, ouercomming with patience the hardest difficulties, in hope of aid from the other Christian Princes, whose comming they expected with the first of the next Spring: during which time, many an hot skirmish passed betwixt them and the Turks both by sea and land. G

1160 *Fredericke the Emperour setteth forward towards the Holy Land.*

Whilest the Christians thus lay at the siege of PTOLEMAIS, *Frederick* the Emperour with diuers of the great Germane Princes, and others, before resolued vpon an expedition for the recouerie of the Holy Land, and the relieue of the distressed Christians in SYRIA: hauing now raised a great armie, furnished with all things necessarie for so long a iourney, set forward from RATISBONE, and so comming to VIENNA, and passing thorow HVNGARIA, BVLGARIA, and THRACIA, arriued at length at CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was by *Isaack Angelus* the Emperour that then raigned, honourably entertained: but indeed more for feare and fashion sake, than for any loue or good will: for that he after the suspicious manner of the Greekes, hauing in distrust so great a power of the Latine Emperours, wished rather for his absence, than his presence. And therefore ceased not in what he might to hasten his passage ouer into ASIA, pretending for the colour thereof, the necessitie the Christians had of his present aid. So the Emperour with his armie passing ouer the strait, and without resistance marching thorow the greatest part of the lesser ASIA, entred into LYCAONIA, where meeting with a great power of the Turks, that were come from the Sultan of ICONIVM to stay his farther passage, he ouerthrew them in a great battell; and so marching directly on to ICONIVM, tooke it by force, and gaue the spoile thereof vnto his souldiers, in reuenge of the iniuries before done vnto his vncle the Emperour *Conrade*, by the Sultan of that citie. Departing thence, and marching thorow CILICIA, he in another battell ouerthrew the Turks, that hauing taken the straits of the mountaines, had thought to haue staied his farther passage into SYRIA. After that hee tooke the citie PHILOMELA, which the Sultan had strongly fortified, which hee rased to the ground, and put to sword all the people therein, for that they contrary to the law of nations, had slaine such messengers as he had sent vnto them for the summoning of the citie. In like manner he entred into the lesser ARMENIA, where he tooke the citie MELITENE, and subdued all the countrey thereabouts: vnto the reliefe whereof, the Turks comming with a most huge armie, were by him with an exceeding great slaughter ouerthrowne and put to flight. After that, entring into COMAGENA, and meeting with *Saphadin*, *Saladin* his sonne, with a great armie of the Turks, he ouerthrew him in the plaine field, and discomfited his whole armie. But whilest he too eagerly pursueth the enemie he had then in chace, his horse foundring vnder him, as he passed the riuer SALEPH, he was so ouerthrowne, and his foot hanging fast in his stirrop, drawne thorow the deepe riuer, and almost drowned; and at the farther side of the riuer was so plunged by his horse, at his landing, that he was taken vp for dead. Yet breathing a little, and casting his eyes vp to heauen, with much adoe he vttered these few words, *Lord receiue my soule:* and so in the hands of them that tooke him vp, gaue vp the ghost, vnto the great griefe and hindrance of the Christian common-weale: for *Saladin* hearing of his approch, was so afraid of him, as that he began to doubt, not how to keepe that he had before won in SYRIA, but how to defend himselfe in ÆGYPT. Thus miserably perished this worthy Emperour, the tenth of Iune, in the yeere of grace 1190, being then of the age of seuentie yeeres, whereof hee had with much trouble raigned eight and thirtie. His dead bodie was carried along with the armie, and afterward with all funerall pompe buried in the cathedrall church at TYRE. H I K L

Frederick the Emperor thus dead, *Frederick* his sonne Duke of SVEVIA, was by the generall consent of the Princes in the armie chosen Generall in his stead: vpon whom with the rest of the armie, yet mourning for the death of the Emperour, the Turks gaue a sudden and fierce charge, in hope so to haue ouerthrowne them: but finding greater resistance than they had before supposed, and hauing lost some of their men, they with like speed that they came, retired againe. Now began famine (one of the ordinarie attendants of great armies) to increase in the campe: for why, the Turks for that purpose had before destroied, or carried away all that was in the countrey, leauing nothing for the Christians more than the bare ground. Wherefore M

Frederick the Emperors sonne chosen generall of the Christian armie.

Frederick

A *Frederick* turning a little out of the way, came to ANTIOCH, which was eaſily deliuered vnto him, and his hungrie ſouldiers wel refreſhed by the citizens, being as yet for the moſt part Chriſtians. But he had not there ſtaied paſt fifteene dayes for the refreſhing of his armie, but that the plague (the handmaid of famine and another ſcourge of the greateſt multitudes) began to rage among his ſouldiers, in ſuch ſort, that he was glad with his armie to forſake the citie, and to get him abroad againe into the open field: where forthwith newes was brought vnto him, that *Dodequin* Generall of ſuch forces as *Saladin* had ſent for out of ÆGYPT (which were not ſmall) was by great iourneyes comming towards him: againſt whom hee in good order ſet forward, with his fathers corſe ſtill carried in the middeſt of his armie. Theſe two armies meeting toge-

B ther, and both willing to fight, ioyned a great and doubtfull battell, fortune inclining now to the one ſide, and by and by to the other; the Chriſtians exceeding their enemies in valour, and they them againe in number. At length the Chriſtians in the vauntguard began to retire, and they that ſeconded them were alſo hardly charged: when *Frederick* mindfull of his fathers valour, with a troupe of valiant horſemen brake into the enemies battell, with ſuch force, that the Turks were glad to giue ground: after whom *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA comming preſently on with his footmen, brought ſuch a feare vpon the whole armie of the Turks, that they betooke themſelues to ſpeedie flight. In this battell were foure thouſand of the enemies ſlaine, with ſmall loſſe of the Chriſtians; and about one thouſand moe taken priſoners, with fifteene of their enſignes. After which victorie, *Frederick* marching further in CÆLO-SYRIA, pacified

C LAODICEA then in mutinie, and like to haue beene deliuered vnto the Turks. He alſo with a little labour tooke BERYTHVS, with diuers other cities of SYRIA, which before belonging vnto the Kings of HIERVSALEM, were now reuolted vnto the Turks. So afterward comming to TYRE, he there ſolemnly buried his father, (dead, as is before ſaid:) and from thence certified *Guy* the King (ſtill lying with the other Chriſtian Princes at the ſiege of PTOLEMAIS) of his comming: who forthwith ſent the Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, with part of the fleet to tranſport him with his people that were left, by ſea: for that by land hee could not ſo ſafely haue come, being now but weake, for meeting with *Saladin*; who with a great armie lay ſtill houering about his beſieged citie, intentiue to all opportunitie. So was Duke *Frederick* with his ſouldiers yet left, ſafely by ſea conducted from TYRE to the campe at PTOLEMAIS, & there ioyfully

D receiued by the King and the other Princes, with the generall applauſe of the whole campe.

A great battell betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians.

In the meane time the Turks ſailing out of the citie of PTOLEMAIS, had done great harme among the Chriſtians, by whom they were not without ſome loſſe againe repulſed. But after the comming of Duke *Frederick* and his Germains, it was thought good by the generall conſent of all the great commanders in the armie, that the citie ſhould be aſſaulted round: and to that purpoſe was euery mans regiment appointed what place to aſſaile. The King himſelfe with the Templars and the Italians from PISA, vndertooke that part of the citie which was toward the ſea: vnto Duke *Frederick* and his Germains was allotted all betwixt the bridge ouer the riuer BELE, and the Biſhops palace: the Venetians, Genowaies, and Knights Hoſpitalers, were appointed vnto the reſt of the wall as farre as the court of *Raymund*: the Friſelanders, Flemings,

E and Hollanders, tooke vp all the reſt of the wall vnto the ſea ſide. Thus was the citie at once in euery ſide aſſailed by the Chriſtians, with ſuch furie, as if they had thereon purpoſed to gage their whole forces; ſeeking by a thouſand wounds, and a thouſand kinds of death to haue by their ſcaling ladders, gained the top of the wals; the Turks with no leſſe courage ſtill beating them downe againe. But in the heat of this ſo dreadfull and deſperate an aſſault, *Saladin* ſtill houering aloofe, came now vpon the ſudden and aſſailed the campe of the Chriſtians, filling the ſame with feare and tumult: whoſe charge they that were left for the defence of the ſame, at the firſt notably receiued, but finding themſelues too weake, began to giue ground; by which meanes the Turks tooke certaine tents with ſome enſignes, and fired ſome other of the pauilions of the Chriſtians, hauing ſlaine ſomewhat moe than an hundred of the defendants.

Ptolemais aſſaulted by the Chriſtians.

F The Chriſtians in the meane time little preuailing in the aſſault, and troubled with the danger of their campe, retired to the reliefe thereof. But the Turke perceiuing himſelfe too weake for the whole power of the Chriſtians, retired alſo; yet not with ſuch haſte, but that he had there almoſt loſt himſelfe. This notable aſſault was giuen the fourteenth of October: after which many light skirmiſhes paſſed betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turks, but more for bootie, than for any other great purpoſe.

In

In the meane time, diuers great Princes of the West that had vowed themselues vnto this sa- G
cred warre, came thither, whose number rather increased the want of victuals, than furthered the seruice. At which time also the discord betwixt *Guy* the King (whose wife and children were now dead) and *Conrade* Marquesse of MONT-FERRAT (who had maried *Isabel* the late Queenes sister, by whom he pretended a claime vnto the title of the imaginarie kingdome) did much harme vnto the proceedings of the Christians: so pleasing a thing these haughtie stiles be vnto the loftie mindes of the ambitious. Shortly after the Christians yet lying at the siege, the contagion and famine still increasing, it fortuned that Duke *Frederick* fell sicke of the plague, whereof he died: and with the great mourning of the whole armie, was afterward solemnly buried fast by his father in the cathedrall church at TYRE. After whose death the Christians attempted no H
great matter against the citie, although they were oftentimes by the Turks prouoked, but lay still strongly entrenched, expecting some greater aid from the Princes of the West.

Now all the hope of the Christian affaires in SYRIA, and in the land of PALESTINE, rested vpon the comming of the two mightie Princes, *Philip* the second of that name, King of FRANCE, and *Richard* the first, King of ENGLAND: who hauing agreed betwixt themselues, with their combined forces to relieue the distressed Christians of the East; and againe (if it were possible) to repaire the broken state of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, were now met together at MARSEILLES in PROVENCE. From whence the French King first departing with his fleet for CICILIA, and with a prosperous gale for certaine dayes holding on his course, and now come nigh vnto the Island; was by force of a furious tempest suddenly arising, so tos- I
sed and tumbled in the deepe, that many of his ships there perished, eaten vp of the sea; others by force of weather driuen vpon the sands and rocks, were there broken all to peeces; and the rest some with their masts broken, some with their tacklings and sailes rent, and all in generall sore weather-beaten, with much adoe arriued at MESSANA the desired port: at which place King *Richard* afterwards (but with better fortune) arriued with his fleet also. Both the Kings now met together, resolued there to winter: the French King enforced by necessitie so to doe, for the repairing of the late losses he had receiued, as well in his people and prouision, as in his shipping; all which was to be relieued by new supplies out of FRANCE: and the King of ENGLAND staying to take order for the dowrie of his sister *Ioan* (widow of *William* the late King of CICILIA) with *Tancred* the base sonne of *Roger*, that had now aspired vnto the kingdome K
of that Island. About which matter great stirs arise betwixt King *Richard* the Queenes brother, and *Tancred* the new King, insomuch that it was like to haue broken out into open warre, had it not to the good contentment of King *Richard* beene otherwise taken vp, and so the controuersie ended. But whilst these two great Kings thus wintred in this fruitfull Island, and oftentimes as good friends met together, sometime for their disport, and sometime to conferre of their so waightie affaires; the way (as was thought) to haue appeased all former displeasure, and to haue increased loue: it fell out cleane contrary, iealousie and distrust, not only reuiuing the old, but also still raising new quarrels betwixt them, to the great hinderance of the common good by them intended: which may serue for a warning to all great Princes, willing to continue in amitie, and to hold a good opinion one of another, Neuer to see one the other; or com- L
ming so to an interuiew, not to conuerse or stay long together: which as it is not often done without the danger of their persons, so can it not possibly be long continued, but that it will engender in themselues as well as in their followers, iealousie, enuie, hatred, and mistrust, as wee haue before said, and hereafter in the course of this historie may appeare.

An old grudge betwixt Philip the French King, and Richard King of England.

There was an old quarrell betwixt these two great Kings, *Richard* and *Philip*, about *Adela* the French Kings sister; whom *Richard* hauing before (his father yet liuing) affianced, had now reiected, as her whom his aged father *Henry* the second had too familiarly vsed: and in stead of her, to the great disgrace of the French, espoused the Lady *Berengaria*, daughter to the King of NAVAR: which indignitie with diuers others, then arising betwixt the French and the English, as then with great heartburning smouldred vp in respect of the common cause then in hand, af- M
terwards brake out againe, to the shamefull ouerthrow of this most honourable expedition, and lamentable disturbance of both realmes.

Winter past, & the Spring now come, the French King not altogether the best pleased: first loosed from MESSANA, and with his fleet in safetie arriued at PTOLEMAIS, where he was by the Christians, now the third yeere lying at the siege, so ioyfully receiued, as if he had beene

to

A to them ſent with ſuccours from heauen. After whom, ſhortly after followed alſo King *Richard:* of whoſe fleet (by force of weather ſore beaten and diſperſed) two ſhips by the rage of the tempeſt driuen a ground vpon the coaſt of CYPRVS, were by the Iſland people ſpoiled, and the men that in them had hardly eſcaped the danger of the ſea, with moſt barbarous inhumanitie, ſome ſlaine, and ſome taken priſoners: the reſt of the fleet arriuing there alſo, were with like inciuilitie forbidden to land; the Cipriots ready at hand in all places to keepe them off. With which ſo great an indignitie the King iuſtly moued, and by force landing his people, with incredible celeritie and ſucceſſe ouerran the whole Iſland, neuer ceaſing vntill hee had made a full conqueſt thereof, and taken *Iſaack Comnenus*, commonly called the King of that Iſland, and
B of ſome (for what reaſon I know not) Emperour of the Griffons, priſoner: yet was he indeed neither King nor Emperour, but being a man of great nobilitie and power, and of the honourable ſtocke of the *Comneni*, had in the troubleſome raigne of *Andronicus Comnenus* the Emperour, his couſin, laid hold vpon that fruitfull Iſland, and there tyrannized as a reputed King; vntill that now he was by King *Richard* taken priſoner, and for his vnfaithfull dealing ſent faſt bound in chaines of ſiluer into SIRIA. The King thus poſſeſſed of the whole Iſland, there at LIMOZIN married the Lady *Berengaria* the King of NAVARS daughter, brought thither by *Ioan* late Queene of CICILIA, the Kings ſiſter. And ſo diſpoſing as he thought beſt of all things for the ſafe keeping of the Iſland, ſet forward againe with his fleet towards SIRIA. Where by the way he light vpon a great ſhip of the Sultans, laded with victuals and other war-
C like prouiſions for the reliefe of the beſieged; all which became a prey vnto him. So holding on his courſe, he at length arriued at PTOLEMAIS, where he was by the French King, and the reſt of the Chriſtians there lying, moſt honourably receiued.

King Richard reuengeth the iniury done vnto his people by the Cipriots.

King Richard arriueth at Ptolemais.

Now had the citie of PTOLEMAIS beene three yeeres beſieged by the Chriſtians, and notably defended by the Turks: during which time many an hot aſſault and bloudie skirmiſh had paſſed betwixt them. And now the eies of all men were fixed vpon the two Kings of ENGLAND and FRANCE, vnto whom all the reſt offred their obedience and ſeruice. The Chriſtian campe was great, compoſed eſpecially of Engliſhmen, Frenchmen, Italians, and Almaines; not them that were left of the Emperour *Frederick* his armie (for they were for the moſt part dead, or elſe returned home againe into their countries) but of ſuch as (moued with the zeale they bare vnto
D this religious warre) came daily in great numbers thither: as did alſo many others of diuers nations, deſirous in ſome meaſure to be partakers of ſo honourable a warre.

Theſe religious and venterous Chriſtians thus lying at the ſiege, had with much painfull labour vndermined one of the greateſt towres of the citie, called the Accurſed Towre, with ſome part of the wall alſo, by meanes whereof they were in hope to find a way into the citie. Wherefore all things being now in a readineſſe for the fiering of the mine, it was thought good by generall conſent, that an aſſault ſhould alſo at the ſame time be giuen vnto the citie. And thereupon euery regiment was by lot appointed which part of the wall to aſſaile, which they all with great courage vndertooke. In the heat of which aſſault, the aforeſaid vndermined towre, with ſome part of the wall (the timber whereon it ſtaied, now burnt) fell downe with a great fall, laying
E open a faire breach for the Chriſtians to enter. Wherewith the Turkes diſmaied, forthwith craued to come to parle: which granted, they for ſafegard of their liues yeelded forthwith to giue vp the citie, and to reſtore vnto the Chriſtians the Holy Croſſe, with two thouſand captiues, and two hundred horſemen, ſuch as they ſhould require of all them that were in the power of *Saladin*; beſides 200000 Conſtantinopolitane duckats, to be by him giuen vnto the two Kings, for the coſt by them beſtowed in the ſiege. For paiment whereof, the Turkes in the citie were to remaine as hoſtages vnder the ſafe keeping of the Chriſtians, ſo that if all the couenants aforeſaid were not within fortie daies performed by *Saladin*, they ſhould all for their liues be at the Kings mercy. So was this ſtrong citie, after it had beene almoſt three yeeres beſieged, deliuered vp vnto the Chriſtians the 12. of Iulie, in the yeere 1191. The firſt that entred were the Germanes of 1191
F AVSTRIA, who as if they had beene the only men by whoſe valour the citie had beene won, at their firſt entrie preſumptuouſly aduanced their enſignes vpon the top of the wals, to the great offence of all the reſt of the Chriſtian Princes, but eſpecially of King *Richard*, who not vnworthily for his princely courage was commonly called *Richard Cueur de Lyon*, not brooking ſo proud an indignitie, cauſed the enſignes of *Leopold* their Duke to be puld downe, and foiled vnder foot; which ſhortly after gaue him occaſion of repentance, as ſhall be hereafter ſeene.

The

The two Kings poſſeſſed of the citie, diuided the ſame, with all the people and ſpoile there- G
of, betwixt them, without regard of the reſt of the other noble Chriſtians, that had ſuſtained the whole trauell of that long ſiege: for which cauſe moſt part of them, ſeeing themſelues ſo deluded, withdrew themſelues from them, and with one conſent ſent them word, That they would forſake them, except they were made partakers of the gaines, as they had beene of the paines. Which the two Kings to content them, promiſed they ſhould. Howbeit, they delaied ſo long their promiſes, that many worthy men, conſtrained by pouertie, departed diſcontented from them into their countries.

But long it was not, that this one citie, ſo lately gained, could containe theſe two great kings; whom two large kingdomes could not retaine in peace. For albeit that they were in body to- H
gether preſent, and in one, and that a moſt honorable action, combined; yet were they in hearts farre aſunder, and their ſecret deſignes much different: enuie and diſtruſt ſtill reuiuing vnkindneſſe paſt, and miniſtring new matter of greater diſcontentments. King *Richard*, according to his noble nature, was of nothing more deſirous, than to haue the warre continued, vntill they had made a full conqueſt of SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE; and for that cauſe requeſted the French King to bind himſelfe together with him by ſolemne oath, there to ſtay yet three yeeres, for the regaining of thoſe countries. But he in minde long before eſtranged from King *Richard*, and in his deepe conceit plotting matters neerer home better fitting his purpoſe, would by no meanes be perſwaded ſo to doe; but ſtill found one occaſion or other for to colour his departure. And ſhortly after (as the French Chronicles report) falling extremely ſicke, I
he requeſted King *Richard* and the other Chriſtian Princes to come vnto him: vnto whom being come, he in few words declared his purpoſe of returne, as followeth:

I cannot (my Lords) longer endure the inclemencie and intemperature of the aire in this extreame hot ſeaſon. If my death might profit the Chriſtian Religion, or any one of you, or the Chriſtian Commonweale; there ſhould be no diſtemperature whatſoeuer, that could ſeparate me from you, or withdraw me from hence. But more may the life of one abſent, ſerue and profit you, than the death of him preſent. I muſt of neceſsitie depart, yet at my departure I will leaue you fiue hundred men at armes, and ten thouſand footmen, the flower and choice of all the forces of FRANCE, *vnder the conduct of my couſin* Odo, *Duke of* BVRGVNDIE, *vnto whom I will giue pay and entertainment, with a continuall ſupplie of all* K
things for them neceſſary.

The French king ſweareth vnto king Richard, in his abſence not to inuade his territories in France.

This excuſe of the French Kings, King *Richard* could not take in good part: but ſaid, That it was apparant to all men, that he abandoned the warres in SYRIA, to returne into FRANCE, for no other end or purpoſe, but the more eaſily to inuade the prouinces of GVIENN and NORMANDIE, now diſfurniſhed of their garriſons, and ſo ſubiect to his malice. Which point he ſo vrged, that the French King could haue no leaue with his honour to depart, vntill ſuch time as he had by ſolemne oath bound himſelfe vnto King *Richard*, not to attempt any thing either by force or fraud againſt him, or any thing of his, vntill fiftie daies were expired after King *Richard* his returne home. Which how well it was by the French King obſerued, I leaue it to the report L
of the hiſtories of that time. And ſo the French King, not to be intreated longer to ſtay, leauing behinde him the aforeſaid number of men he had promiſed, embarking the reſt of his armie, and accompanied with three tall ſhips of the Genowaies his friends, and *Ruffin Volta* their admirall, departed from PTOLEMAIS to TYRE, the firſt of Auguſt; and two dayes after, looſing thence, ſailed alongſt the coaſt of ASIA, & cutting through the Mediterranean, arriued at length in the mouth of the riuer of TYBER, and from thence went to ROME: where after he had viſited Pope *Celeſtine*, and the famous places of that moſt renowned citie, he returned againe to his fleet, and ſo by ſea arriued in ſafetie in FRANCE; hauing in that great expedition, ſo honorably by him entertained, performed nothing anſwerable to that the world looked for.

After the French King, followed *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, with his Germans: & not long M
after him, the Venetians alſo, with them of PISA & GENVA. Of whoſe departure *Saladin* vnderſtanding, & that the Chriſtian forces were thereby much empaired, refuſed either to pay the money, or to reſtore the priſoners, as was promiſed at the giuing vp of PTOLEMAIS: threatning moreouer to chop off the heads of all ſuch Chriſtian captiues as he had in his power, if the King ſhould ſhew any extremitie vnto the pledges of the citie. Neuertheleſſe, ſhortly after he ſent his

embaſſa-

A embaſſadours with great preſents vnto the King, requeſting a longer time for the ſparing of his pledges; which his requeſt, together with his gifts, the King refuſed to grant or accept. Whereupon *Saladin* forthwith cauſed ſuch Chriſtian captiues as were in his power, to be beheaded: which albeit King *Richard* vnderſtood, yet would hee not preuent the time before agreed vpon for the execution of his priſoners, being the 20 day of Auguſt: vpon which day he cauſed the Turks priſoners, to the number of 2500 (or as the French and Germans write, to the number of 7000) in the ſight of *Saladines* armie to be executed.

The loſſe of the ſtrong towne of PTOLEMAIS, much empaired the reputation of *Saladin*, euen among his owne people; as it commonly falleth out, that the euill ſucceſſe of a great com-
B mander in his affaires, altereth the good will, affection, & opinion, eſpecially of the vulgar ſort, which iudge of all things by the euent. And albeit that his loſſes were great, and ſuch as much daunted him: yet he thought it beſt, as the caſe then ſtood, to make them greater, and with his owne hands (as it were) to ruinate and ouerthrow ſuch townes and cities as he ſaw he could not keepe, rather than to ſuffer them whole and vndefaced to fall into the enemies hand. So carried headlong with deſpaire, hee cauſed all the townes hee had alongſt the ſea coaſt in SYRIA and PALESTINE, to be ſacked and ruinated, and their wals ouerthrowne; eſpecially ſuch as were of moſt importance, and like to ſtand the Chriſtians in ſtead, namely PORPHIRIA, CESAREA, IOPPA, ASCALON, GAZA, and ELAM, with diuers other caſtles and citadels in the countries thereabouts; moſt part whereof were againe by King *Richard* and the Templars fortified and
C repeopled, although *Saladin* in the meane time did what he might to haue letted the ſame.

Nothing more hindred the good proceeding of the Chriſtian Princes, in this & other their moſt honourable expeditions againſt the Infidels, than the diſcord among themſelues; one ſtill enuying at anothers honour, and euery one iealous of his owne. Great ſtrife and heart-burning there had beene betweene the two Kings of FRANCE and ENGLAND, during the time they were together in this ſacred expedition, to the great hindrance of the ſame. No leſſe contention had there beene betwixt *Guy* the late King of HIERVSALEM, and *Conrade* Marqueſſe of MONTFERRAT, about the title of that loſt kingdome: whereby the whole power of the Chriſtians in SYRIA was diuided into two factions. *Richard* King of ENGLAND, *Baldwin* Earle of FLANDERS, *Henry* Earle of CHAMPAINE, the Knights Hoſpitalers of *S. Iohn*, the Venetians and
D Piſans, taking part with *Guy*: And *Philip* the French King, *Odo* Duke of BVRGVNDIE, *Rodolph* Earle of CLAREMONT, the Templars, the Genowayes, the Lantgraue of THVRIN, *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, and *Robert* Countie of NASSAV, taking part with *Conrade* the Marqueſſe. But *Conrade* ſhortly after the taking of PTOLEMAIS being ſlaine, by two of the deſperate Aſſaſſins, or (as ſome others ſay) by two deſperate ruffians, (ſuborned thereunto by the Prince of TORONE, in reuenge of the deſpight done vnto him by the ſaid Marqueſſe, by taking from him *Iſabel* his eſpouſed wife) as he was walking in his citie of TYRE, and doubting no ſuch treaſon: King *Richard* ſeeing now a fit occaſion offered for the vtter extinguiſhing of that claime, and how to intitle himſelfe vnto that kingdome; perſwaded the aforeſaid *Iſabel* (the widow of the late Marqueſſe, and in whoſe right he had laid claime vnto the kingdome) to
E relinquiſh that ſo troubleſome a title, and to take to her huſband *Henry* Earle of CHAMPAINE, his nephew, vnto whom he gaue the citie of TYRE: *Guy* the King exclaiming to the contrary, as of a wrong done vnto himſelfe. Shortly after he began alſo to temper with *Guy*, perſwading him to reſigne vnto him that little right and intereſt he had in the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, and in lieu thereof to receiue at his hands the kingdome of CYPRVS. Which his offer the poore King was glad to accept. By which exchange, *Guy* became King of CYPRVS; and *Richard*, King of HIERVSALEM; which honourable title he afterwards, as ſome report, vſed in his ſtile, as did ſome others his ſucceſſours the Kings of ENGLAND after him. So *Guy* with all his wealth paſſing ouer into CYPRVS, tooke poſſeſſion of the kingdome, where he long liued not. Neuertheleſſe, that pleaſant kingdome continued in his familie of the Luſignans, by the ſpace
F of about 283 yeeres afterwards: vntill that at length that familie failing in the poſthumus ſon of *Iames* the baſtard, laſt King of that Iſland, it fell into the hands of the Venetians: by whom it was holden as a part of their ſeignorie almoſt an hundred yeeres, vntill that it was in our freſh remembrance againe from them taken by *Selymus* the ſecond, great Emperour of the Turks, in the yeere 1571, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie ſhall in due place (God willing) be declared.

King Richard marcheth with his armie towards Hieruſalem.

Now was K. *Richard*, for the increaſe of his honour, more deſirous than before of the citie of

The two Kings poſſeſſed of the citie, diuided the ſame, with all the people and ſpoile there- C
of, betwixt them, without regard of the reſt of the other noble Chriſtians, that had ſuſtained the whole trauell of that long ſiege: for which cauſe moſt part of them, ſeeing themſelues ſo deluded, withdrew themſelues from them, and with one conſent ſent them word, That they would forſake them, except they were made partakers of the gaines, as they had beene of the paines. Which the two Kings to content them, promiſed they ſhould. Howbeit, they delaied ſo long their promiſes, that many worthy men, conſtrained by pouertie, departed diſcontented from them into their countries.

But long it was not, that this one citie, ſo lately gained, could containe theſe two great kings; whom two large kingdomes could not retaine in peace. For albeit that they were in body to- H
gether preſent, and in one, and that a moſt honorable action, combined; yet were they in hearts farre aſunder, and their ſecret deſignes much different: enuie and diſtruſt ſtill reuiuing vnkindneſſe paſt, and miniſtring new matter of greater diſcontentments. King *Richard*, according to his noble nature, was of nothing more deſirous, than to haue the warre continued, vntill they had made a full conqueſt of SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE; and for that cauſe requeſted the French King to bind himſelfe together with him by ſolemne oath, there to ſtay yet three yeeres, for the regaining of thoſe countries. But he in minde long before eſtranged from King *Richard*, and in his deepe conceit plotting matters neerer home better fitting his purpoſe, would by no meanes be perſwaded ſo to doe; but ſtill found one occaſion or other for to co-
lour his departure. And ſhortly after (as the French Chronicles report) falling extremely ſicke, I
he requeſted King *Richard* and the other Chriſtian Princes to come vnto him: vnto whom being come, he in few words declared his purpoſe of returne, as followeth:

I cannot (my Lords) longer endure the inclemencie and intemperature of the aire in this extreame hot ſeaſon. If my death might profit the Chriſtian Religion, or any one of you, or the Chriſtian Commonweale; there ſhould be no diſtemperature whatſoeuer, that could ſeparate me from you, or withdraw me from hence. But more may the life of one abſent, ſerue and profit you, than the death of him preſent. I muſt of neceſſitie depart, yet at my departure I will leaue you fiue hundred men at armes, and ten thouſand footmen, the flower and choice of all the forces of FRANCE, *vnder the conduct of my couſin* Odo, *Duke of* BVRGVNDIE, *vnto whom I will giue pay and entertainment, with a continuall ſupplie of all* K
things for them neceſſary.

The French king ſweareth vnto king Richard, in his abſence not to inuade his territories in France.

This excuſe of the French Kings, King *Richard* could not take in good part: but ſaid, That it was apparant to all men, that he abandoned the warres in SYRIA, to returne into FRANCE, for no other end or purpoſe, but the more eaſily to inuade the prouinces of GVIEN and NORMANDIE, now diſfurniſhed of their garriſons, and ſo ſubiect to his malice. Which point he ſo vrged, that the French King could haue no leaue with his honour to depart, vntill ſuch time as he had by ſolemne oath bound himſelfe vnto King *Richard*, not to attempt any thing either by force or fraud againſt him, or any thing of his, vntill fiftie daies were expired after King *Richard* his returne home. Which how well it was by the French King obſerued, I leaue it to the report L
of the hiſtories of that time. And ſo the French King, not to be intreated longer to ſtay, leauing behinde him the aforeſaid number of men he had promiſed, embarking the reſt of his armie, and accompanied with three tall ſhips of the Genowaies his friends, and *Ruffin Volta* their admirall, departed from PTOLEMAIS to TYRE, the firſt of Auguſt; and two dayes after, looſing thence, ſailed alongſt the coaſt of ASIA, & cutting through the Mediterranean, arriued at length in the mouth of the riuer of TYBER, and from thence went to ROME: where after he had viſited Pope *Celeſtine*, and the famous places of that moſt renowned citie, he returned againe to his fleet, and ſo by ſea arriued in ſafetie in FRANCE; hauing in that great expedition, ſo honorably by him entertained, performed nothing anſwerable to that the world looked for.

After the French King, followed *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, with his Germans: & not long M
after him, the Venetians alſo, with them of PISA & GENVA. Of whoſe departure *Saladin* vnderſtanding, & that the Chriſtian forces were thereby much empaired, refuſed either to pay the money, or to reſtore the priſoners, as was promiſed at the giuing vp of PTOLEMAIS: threatning moreouer to chop off the heads of all ſuch Chriſtian captiues as he had in his power, if the King ſhould ſhew any extremitie vnto the pledges of the citie. Neuertheleſſe, ſhortly after he ſent his

embaſſa-

A embaſſadours with great preſents vnto the King, requeſting a longer time for the ſparing of his pledges; which his requeſt, together with his gifts, the King refuſed to grant or accept. Whereupon *Saladin* forthwith cauſed ſuch Chriſtian captiues as were in his power, to be beheaded: which albeit King *Richard* vnderſtood, yet would hee not preuent the time before agreed vpon for the execution of his priſoners, being the 20 day of Auguſt: vpon which day he cauſed the Turks priſoners, to the number of 2500 (or as the French and Germans write, to the number of 7000) in the ſight of *Saladines* armie to be executed.

The loſſe of the ſtrong towne of PTOLEMAIS, much empaired the reputation of *Saladin*, euen among his owne people; as it commonly falleth out, that the euill ſucceſſe of a great com-
B mander in his affaires, altereth the good will, affection, & opinion, eſpecially of the vulgar ſort, which iudge of all things by the euent. And albeit that his loſſes were great, and ſuch as much daunted him: yet he thought it beſt, as the caſe then ſtood, to make them greater, and with his owne hands (as it were) to ruinate and ouerthrow ſuch townes and cities as he ſaw he could not keepe, rather than to ſuffer them whole and vndefaced to fall into the enemies hand. So carried headlong with deſpaire, hee cauſed all the townes hee had alongſt the ſea coaſt in SYRIA and PALESTINE, to be ſacked and ruinated, and their wals ouerthrowne; eſpecially ſuch as were of moſt importance, and like to ſtand the Chriſtians in ſtead, namely PORPHIRIA, CESAREA, IOPPA, ASCALON, GAZA, and ELAM, with diuers other caſtles and citadels in the countries thereabouts; moſt part whereof were againe by King *Richard* and the Templars fortified and
C repeopled, although *Saladin* in the meane time did what he might to haue letted the ſame.

Nothing more hindred the good proceeding of the Chriſtian Princes, in this & other their moſt honourable expeditions againſt the Infidels, than the diſcord among themſelues; one ſtill enuying at anothers honour, and euery one iealous of his owne. Great ſtrife and heart-burning there had beene betweene the two Kings of FRANCE and ENGLAND, during the time they were together in this ſacred expedition, to the great hindrance of the ſame. No leſſe contention had there beene betwixt *Guy* the late King of HIERVSALEM, and *Conrade* Marqueſſe of MONTFERRAT, about the title of that loſt kingdome: whereby the whole power of the Chriſtians in SYRIA was diuided into two factions. *Richard* King of ENGLAND, *Baldwin* Earle of FLANDERS, *Henry* Earle of CHAMPAINE, the Knights Hoſpitalers of *S. Iohn*, the Venetians and
D Piſans, taking part with *Guy*: And *Philip* the French King, *Odo* Duke of BVRGVNDIE, *Rodolph* Earle of CLAREMONT, the Templars, the Genowayes, the Lantgraue of THVRIN, *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, and *Robert* Countie of NASSAV, taking part with *Conrade* the Marqueſſe. But *Conrade* ſhortly after the taking of PTOLEMAIS being ſlaine, by two of the deſperate Aſſaſſins, or (as ſome others ſay) by two deſperate ruffians, (ſuborned thereunto by the Prince of TORONE, in reuenge of the deſpight done vnto him by the ſaid Marqueſſe, by taking from him *Iſabel* his eſpouſed wife) as he was walking in his citie of TYRE, and doubting no ſuch treaſon: King *Richard* ſeeing now a fit occaſion offered for the vtter extinguiſhing of that claime, and how to intitle himſelfe vnto that kingdome; perſwaded the aforeſaid *Iſabel* (the widow of the late Marqueſſe, and in whoſe right he had laid claime vnto the kingdome) to
E relinquiſh that ſo troubleſome a title, and to take to her huſband *Henry* Earle of CHAMPAINE, his nephew, vnto whom he gaue the citie of TYRE: *Guy* the King exclaiming to the contrary, as of a wrong done vnto himſelfe. Shortly after he began alſo to temper with *Guy*, perſwading him to reſigne vnto him that little right and intereſt he had in the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, and in lieu thereof to receiue at his hands the kingdome of CYPRVS. Which his offer the poore King was glad to accept. By which exchange, *Guy* became King of CYPRVS; and *Richard*, King of HIERVSALEM; which honourable title he afterwards, as ſome report, vſed in his ſtile, as did ſome others his ſucceſſours the Kings of ENGLAND after him. So *Guy* with all his wealth paſſing ouer into CYPRVS, tooke poſſeſſion of the kingdome, where he long liued not. Neuertheleſſe, that pleaſant kingdome continued in his familie of the Luſignans, by the ſpace
F of about 283 yeeres afterwards: vntill that at length that familie failing in the poſthumus ſon of *Iames* the baſtard, laſt King of that Iſland, it fell into the hands of the Venetians: by whom it was holden as a part of their ſeignorie almoſt an hundred yeeres, vntill that it was in our freſh remembrance againe from them taken by *Selymus* the ſecond, great Emperour of the Turks, in the yeere 1571, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie ſhall in due place (God willing) be declared.

King Richard marcheth with his armie towards Hieruſalem.

Now was K. *Richard*, for the increaſe of his honour, more deſirous than before of the citie of

of HIERVSALEM, as the moſt precious and honourable prize of all that religious warre. And thereupon with all the power of the Chriſtians then at his command, ſet forward from PTOLEMAIS, and was come on his way as farre as ARSVA, a towne ſituate betwixt CESAREA and IOPPE. In the vauward was King *Richard* himſelfe, with the Engliſhmen: after whom followed *Odo*, Duke of BVRGVNDIE, with his French: and in the rereward *Iaques de Auenes*, with the Flemings, Brabanders, and Wallons, who after the death of their Countie *Philip* at the ſiege of PTOLEMAIS, had put themſelues all vnder his regiment. *Saladin* with a great armie ſtill at hand, and as it were attending vpon them, firſt with certaine ambuſcadoes charged the rereward, and ſo afterward came on with his whole power: vpon whom *Iaques* turning himſelfe, with his Flemings, receiued the charge with great aſſurance, and ſo long themſelues endured the ſame, vntill the French came in to their ſuccours, and after them the Engliſh alſo. There was fought a notable battell, and great valour ſhewed both on the one ſide and the other, but eſpecially by them of the Turks part; who knew well the purpoſe of the Chriſtians for the beſieging of HIERVSALEM, and that thereon depended their only hope, and that he that could hold the ſame, might almoſt aſſure himſelfe to carrie away the glory of that warre. The French and Engliſh in that battell honourably ſtroue who might ſhew the greateſt valour: neither would the Low countrey men vnder *Iaques* their Generall, ſeeme to be any thing behind them. This ſharpe conflict began about noone, and continued vntill the going downe of the Sunne. King *Richard* (as ſome write) was there wounded with an arrow; and *Iaques* valiantly there fighting, was ſlaine, hauing ſold his life deere, to the great admiration of the Infidels, and dying left the victorie vnto the Chriſtians. It is reported, that in this battell were ſlaine moe Turks and Saraſins, than in any one battell within the memorie of man before: of the Chriſtians were not loſt any great number, either any man of name, more than the aforeſaid *Iaques*, the valiant Generall of the Flemings.

A notable battell fought betwixt King Richard and Saladin.

The next day the Chriſtians remoued to BETHLEM, a towne about the mid way betwixt IOPPE and HIERVSALEM. But Winter now comming faſt on, and want of victuals like enough to increaſe, the King changing his minde for the ſiege, returned with the greateſt part of the armie to ASCALON, which he that Winter new fortified, the wals thereof being before by *Saladin* in his deſpaire demoliſhed: the Duke of BVRGVNDIE, with his Frenchmen, all that while quietly wintring at TYRE. In the meane time, the power of the Chriſtians was that Winter greatly diminiſhed, ſome one way departing from the campe, and ſome another. The Italians for the moſt part, with them of PISA (who in theſe three yeeres warres had ſtriuen with the Venetians for the honour of their ſeruice) were now returned home, as were the Venetians themſelues alſo. Neuertheleſſe, Winter now paſt, and the Spring time come, King *Richard* tooke the field againe, and came to BETHLEM: where by the way he met with an exceeding great number of cammels, charged with great ſtore of victuals and munition, ſent by *Saladin* out of ÆGYPT to HIERVSALEM, all which he tooke. But purpoſing to haue gone on to the ſiege of HIERVSALEM, he was by the backwardneſſe of the French glad to change his purpoſe, and to returne to PTOLEMAIS: for the Frenchmen, perſwaded by the Duke their Generall (who well knew the French Kings minde) that if any thing worth remembrance were done, it was to be done by them, and that the glorie thereof ſhould wholly redound vnto the King of ENGLAND, as there in perſon preſent, and to his Engliſhmen; ſhewed themſelues ſo vnwilling to the ſiege, as that therein was nothing done, to the great griefe of that worthy Prince. At which time alſo newes was brought vnto K. *Richard*, how that *Philip* the French King (forgetfull of his ſolemne promiſe made before his departure out of SYRIA) had now inuaded the countrey of NORMANDIE, & excited Earle *Iohn* (the Kings brother, a man of an hautie & aſpiring nature) to take vpon him the kingdome of ENGLAND in his abſence: as had before in like caſe *William* the yonger brother ſerued Duke *Robert* his elder brother, then abſent at his father the Conquerors death, in the firſt ſacred expedition vnder *Godfrey* of BVILLON. Wherefore K. *Richard*, beſide the preſent difficulties, fearing leſt while he was ſo farre off in wars for defence of the Chriſtian common weale, he might loſe his kingdome at home; thought it beſt to grow to ſome good end with *Saladin*, & ſo to make his returne. But the politicke & warie Sultan, not ignorant of the diſcord of the Chriſtians, & that their forces daily decaied in SYRIA; either of the troubled eſtate of the Kings affaires at home in his kingdome, or of his deſire to return; would not hearken to any other conditions of peace, but ſuch as might both for the preſent, weaken the forces of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, & diſcourage

King Richard purpoſing to haue beſieged Hieruſalem, is by the backwardneſſe of the French enforced to retire.

King Richard glad vpon hard conditions to conclude a peace with Saladin.

A diſcourage others that had a minde to come thither afterward, when they ſhould ſee that for naught they ſhould trauel to cõquer that, which in the end they muſt of neceſſity reſtore againe. The conditions he offered, were, That the Chriſtians ſhould forthwith reſtore whatſoeuer they had woon in thoſe three yeares wars, PTOLEMAIS only excepted; and that from thenceforth for the ſpace of fiue yeares the Turks ſhould not in any thing moleſt the Chriſtians, but to ſuffer them in peace to liue by them: which hard conditions (for that no better could be had) the king was glad to accept, and ſo concluded a peace. Whereby the labour and trauell of the two great kings, and ſo many nations with them, were all become fruſtrat and vaine; hauing now to no purpoſe loſt their men, their money, their time, their hope, their blood, their long trauell, to
B gaine that they muſt now in one houre forgo; nothing more left vnto the poore Chriſtians in SYRIA, then the cities of ANTIOCH, TYRE, and PTOLEMAIS.

King Richard returning out of the Holy Land, taken priſoner by Leopold duke of Auſtria.

This done, king *Richard* leauing the affaires of ASIA vnto the charge of *Henrie* countie of
C CHAMPAGNE his nephew, ſhipping the greateſt part of his people, with his wife *Berengaria*, firſt for SICILIA and from thence for ENGLAND, were they in ſafetie at length arriued, followed ſhortly after with ſome few himſelfe, where by the way by extremitie of weather, he was in the Adriatique driuen to land vpon the coaſt of HISTRIA: where trauelling with a ſmall retinue homewards in the habit of a Templar, he was diſcouered & taken priſoner by *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, whom he had before diſgraced at the winning of PTOLEMAIS (as is before declared:) who now glad to haue him in his power, made prize of him, and ſold him to *Henry* the Emperor, for fortie thouſand pounds, by whom he was kept priſoner by the ſpace of a yeere & three months, and then ranſomed for the ſumme of an hundred and fiftie thouſand pounds.

About this time died the great Sultan *Saladin*, the greateſt terrour of the Chriſtians: who mindfull of mans fragilitie and the vanitie of worldly honours, commanded at the time of his death no ſolemnitie to be vſed at his buriall, but onely his ſhirt in manner of an enſigne, made faſt vnto the point of a launce, to be carried before his dead bodie as an enſigne, a plaine Prieſt going before, and crying aloud vnto the people in this ſort: *Saladin Conquerour of the Eaſt, of all the greatneſſe and riches he had in his life, carrieth not with him after his death any thing more than his ſhirt.* A ſight worthie ſo great a King, as wanted nothing to his eternall commendation, more than the true knowledge of his ſaluation in Chriſt Ieſus. Hee raigned about ſixteene yeeres
D with great honour, and dying, left nine ſonnes, which were all murthered by *Saphradin* their vncle, excepting one called alſo *Saphradin* Sultan of ALEPPO, who by the fauour and ſupport of his fathers good friends, ſaued himſelfe from the treacherous practiſes of his vncle. Of this *Saphradin* the vncle, deſcended *Meledin* Sultan of ÆGYPT, and *Coradin* Sultan of D'AMASCO and HIERVSALEM: *Saladin* his great kingdome being by them now againe rent in peeces.

The death of *Saladin* in ſhort time bruited abroad, with the diſcord amongſt the Turks and Saraſins, about his dominions, put *Celeſtinus* (then Pope) in good hope, that the citie of HIERVSALEM might in that change and hurle, be eaſily againe recouered, and that kingdome eſtabliſhed. But when he had in vaine dealt to that purpoſe with the Kings of FRANCE and
E ENGLAND (then altogether buſied in their wars the one againſt the other) he perſwaded *Henrie* the ſixt, then Emperour, to take the matter in hand: who (for that he well could not, or elſe would not himſelfe in perſon vndertake that long expedition) ſent *Henrie* Duke of SAXONIE his lieutenant with a great armie into ASIA: vnto whom were ioyned two Legates, *Conradus* Archbiſhop of MOGVNSIA another of the electours, and *Conradus* the Biſhop of HERBIPOLIS. At which time alſo many other great Princes tooke vpon them that holy warre, namely, *Herman* Lantgraue of THURIN, *Henrie* Palatine of RHENE, *Henrie* Duke of BRABANT, *Conrade* Marqueſſe of MORAVIA, *Frederick* Duke of AVSTRIA, and *Albertus Hapſpurgenſis*, with ſome others: vnto whom alſo ioyned themſelues the Biſhops of BREME, HALBERSTAT, and RATISBON, with diuers other great Prelates. Who hauing paſſed thorow HVNGARIE and
F THRACIA, and by the Greeke Emperour *Alexius Angelus* relieued with all things neceſſarie, were by the Grecian ſhips tranſported vnto ANTIOCH, and ſo by land came to TYRE, and from thence to PTOLEMAIS, with purpoſe to haue gone to relieue the Germains beſieged in IOPPE; who before their comming were all by treaſon ſlaine and the citie raſed, wherefore being come to the ruines thereof, they departed thence to SIDON, which they found alſo abandoned by the Turks. After that they tooke BERITHVS, which citie they fortified, and ſo went to

beſiege TORONE; which citie when they had brought vnto the extremitie, as that it muſt needs (as it was thought) either yeeld or be taken, the Turks came on ſo faſt to the reliefe thereof, that the Chriſtians were glad to raiſe their ſiege and to be gone: which they in garriſon at BERITHVS perceiuing, and ſeeing the enemie to approch them, they abandoned the citie, and ioyning themſelues vnto the reſt of the armie, marched all together to IOPPE, a little before ruinated, which they now againe fortified. But the enemie comming to BERITHVS, and finding it forſaken, raſed it downe to the ground, and ſo in few moneths ſpace was BERITHVS both repaired and raſed, in the yeere 1197. C

1197

The Turks ouerthrowne by the Chriſtians.

But whileſt the Chriſtians were repairing the citie of IOPPE, the Turks proud of that they had done at BERITHVS, came now to diſturbe alſo the fortifying of that place. Of whoſe comming the Chriſtians vnderſtanding, remoued by night about fiue miles from the citie, of purpoſe to draw the Turks vnto a conuenient place for battell. The Turks thinking them to haue beene fled for feare, ſent part of their armie to aſſaile the citie: and with the other followed after them diſorderedly, as if it had beene after men they had had in chace. Vpon whom the Chriſtians turning, had with them at the firſt a ſharpe encounter, but afterwards put them to flight: in which conflict certaine thouſands of the Turks fell; of whom the Chriſtians taking the ſpoile, and hauing put the reſt to flight, returned againe vnto the fortifying of the citie. But the ioy of this victorie was by the ſudden death of two of the greateſt Princes in the armie, greatly diminiſhed: for the Duke of SAXONIE hauing in the battell taken great paines in performing the parts both of a worthy Generall and valiant ſouldier, had ouer-heated himſelfe, and thereupon without regard of his health taking cold, died of a feuer the fourth day after. The Duke of AVSTRIA mortally wounded in the battell, died alſo the night following. H

Ioppe repaired by the Chriſtians

I

About this time, or not long after, died *Celeſtinus* the Pope, author of this expedition; and *Henry* alſo the Germaine Emperour: after whoſe death great troubles began to ariſe in GERMANIE about the chuſing of a new Emperour. Whereof the Biſhop of MOGVNSIA, then chiefe commander of the armie of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, one of the electors, and the other Germaine Princes with him hauing intelligence, could not by any perſwaſion or praiers of the poore Chriſtians (in whoſe quarrell they were come) be perſwaded longer to ſtay, but that needs home they would, and indeed home they went the ſame way that they came. After whoſe departure the Turks tooke IOPPE, hauing one of the ports betraied vnto them by one of the citie, at ſuch time as the Germaines there in garriſon, after the manner of their countrey, vpon *S. Martins* day were careleſly making merrie together in their pots: vpon whom ſo ſurcharged with wine, the Turks entring by the port giuen vnto them, put them all with the reſt of the Chriſtians to the ſword, and ſo afterward raſed the citie downe to the ground. Of which victorie they became ſo proud, that they had thought without ſtop to haue driuen the Chriſtians quite out of SYRIA: but by the comming of *Simon* Countie of MONT-FORT (a moſt valiant and expert captaine, ſent thither by *Philip* the French King with a regiment of tall ſouldiers, at the inſtance of *Innocentius Tertius*, that ſucceeded *Celeſtinus* in the papacie) and by ciuill diſcord then raigning among the Turks themſelues for ſoueraignte, their furie was repreſſed, and a peace betwixt them and the Chriſtians concluded for the ſpace of ten yeeres; during which time the Turks promiſed, not to moleſt the Chriſtians in TYRE or PTOLEMAIS: which hapned in the yeere 1199 (or as ſome others ſay, 1198.) After which peace ſo concluded, the worthie Countie returned againe with his ſouldiers into FRANCE: with whom wee alſo will repaire into the leſſer ASIA (whither the courſe both of the time and of the hiſtorie now calleth vs) to ſee the other greater affaires of the Turks in thoſe Eaſterne countries; leauing for a ſeaſon theſe poore remainders of ſo many Chriſtians in TYRE and PTOLEMAIS, now for a while in peace, but to be ere long deuoured of the Infidels their enemies, as in the proceſſe of this Hiſtorie ſhall in due time and place appeare. K

The Germaine Princes returne home.

1199

L

M

The ruine of the Turks firſt Empire in PERSIA: with the ſucceſſe of their ſecond kingdome in the leſſer ASIA vnder the Aladin Kings.

Kingdomes after the manner of other things haue but their time to flouriſh in, and ſo againe decay.

IS no kingdome or empire vpon earth (were it neuer ſo flouriſhing or great) was euer yet ſo aſſured, but that in the reuolution of time, after the manner of other worldly things, it hath as a ſicke bodie been ſubiect vnto many ſtrange innouations and changes, and at length come to nothing: ſo fared it now with the Turkiſh empire, which firſt planted by *Tangrolipix* in PERSIA and the other farre Eaſterne countries, increaſed by *Axan* his ſonne, and ſo by the Turkiſh Sultans their ſucceſſors (although their names and doings, as too farre off, be not vnto vs all knowne) for the ſpace of one hundred and ſeuentie yeeres continued, muſt now (I ſay) giue place vnto a greater power, and ſettle it ſelfe elſewhere, the ineuitable deſtinie thereof ſo requiring. It fortuned that about this time (when in the ſpace of a few yeeres, ſuch mutations as had not before of long beene ſeene, chanced in diuers great monarchies and ſtates) that the Tartars, or rather Tattars, inhabiting the large, cold, and bare countries in the North ſide of ASIA (of all others a moſt barbarous, fierce, and needie nation) ſtirred vp by their owne wants, and the perſwaſion of one *Zingis* (or as ſome call him, *Cangis*) holden amongſt them for a great Prophet, and now by them made their leader, and honoured with the name of *Vlu-Chan*, that is to ſay, the mightie King (commonly called the great *Cham*) flocking together in number like the ſand of the ſea; and conquering firſt their poore neighbours of condition and qualitie like themſelues, and eaſie enough to be intreated with them to ſeeke their better fortune, like ſwarmes of graſhoppers ſent out to deuoure the world: paſſed the high mountaine CAVCASVS, part of the mountaine TAVRVS, of all the mountaines in the world the greateſt, which beginning neere vnto the ARCHIPELAGO, and ending vpon the orientall OCEAN, and running thorow many great and famous kingdomes, diuideth ASIA into two parts: ouer which great mountaine, one of the moſt aſſured bounders of nature, that had ſo many worlds of yeeres ſhut vp this rough and ſauage people, they now paſſing without number, and comming downe (as it were) into another world, full of ſuch natures pleaſant delights, as neuer were to them before ſeene, bare downe all before them as they went, nothing being now able to ſtand in their way. Old *Zingis* their fortunate leader dead in this ſo great an expedition, *Hoccata* his ſonne, eldeſt of his twelue brethren, a man of great wiſdome and courage, tooke vpon him his fathers place: who ſending part of his great armie for the ſubduing of the countries Weſtward, turned himſelfe with a world of people towards the Eaſt: where hauing ſubdued the Bactrians and Sogdians with diuers others, he entred into INDIA, and ſubduing that rich countrey on both ſides the riuer INDVS, euen to the Eaſt OCEAN, there in the countrey of CATHAI built the famous citie of CAMBALV, in circuit eight and twentie miles about; for pleaſure and plentie of all things neceſſarie for the life of man, of all the cities of ASIA the chiefe: where the great *Cham* of TARTARIE ſtill reſiant as in his emperiall citie, commandeth ouer one of the greateſt and ſtrongeſt empires of the world. In whoſe kingdome alſo, in the prouince of MANGY more towards the Eaſt, hee hath another moſt famous citie called QVINSAY, of all the cities in the world the greateſt, in circuit an hundred miles about, as *M. Paulus Venetus* writeth, who himſelfe dwelt therein about the yeere 1260. It is ſituate in a lake of freſh water, and hath in it twelue thouſand bridges: of which, ſome are of ſuch an height, that tall ſhips with their ſailes vp may eaſily paſſe vnder them. In this populous citie the great *Cham* hath for the keeping thereof, alwayes thirtie thouſand men in garriſon. The Tartar kingdome thus planted in CAMBALV, *Hoccata* contenting

ting himſelfe with the rich pleaſures of INDIA, afterward mannaged his wars by his liutenants, G
being for the moſt part his brethren, or other his nigh kinſmen; of whom hee ſent out with his armies ſome Northward, ſome Weſtward, and ſome toward the South: by whom he ſubdued the Arachoſians, Margians, and diuers other great nations; & entring into PERSIA, ſubdued the countrey, with all PARTHIA, ASSYRIA, MESOPOTAMIA, & MEDIA. At this time in the citie BALCH or BELCH, in the countrey of CHORASAN in the fartheſt part of PERSIA, raigned ouer the Turks one *Curſumes*, of the Greekes called *Corſantes*; who finding himſelfe far too weake to ſtand before the Tartarians, fled with all his people, leauing vnto them both the citie and the countrey, which he and the Turks his predeceſſours had euer ſince the time of *Tangrolipix* poſſeſſed: which citie the Tartars raſed and tooke the countrey to themſelues. In this gene- H
rall flight of the Turks, when as euery man was glad to make what ſhift he might for himſelfe, *Curſumes* their Sultan died, the laſt of the Kings of the *Selzuccian* family that raigned ouer the Turks in PERSIA: whoſe ſonne *Vgnan Chan* taking vpon him the leading of ſuch multitudes of Turks as followed his father, ceized vpon the great citie of BABYLON, now called BAGADAT, neere vnto the ruines of the old BABYLON: where hauing put to the ſword all the inhabitants therof, he there, and in the countrey thereabout ſeated himſelfe with the Turks his followers: but long he had not there reſted, but that the Tartars hearing thereof, purſued him, tooke him priſoner, and expulſed thence all his people. There was at the ſame time alſo another kingdome of the Turks at NACHAN a citie in PERSIA, giuing name vnto the countrey wherein it ſtood, not farre from CHORASAN: wherein then raigned one *Solyman* of the *Oguzian* family, I
as had diuers other of his progenitors before him, who terrified with this dreadfull ſtorme ſo ſuddenly riſen out of the North, and warned by the ſudden fall of the *Selzuccian* Sultan and his kingdome, of farre greater fame and dower than himſelfe or his, fled alſo with ſuch his ſubjects as would follow him into the leſſer ASIA. But of him and his proceedings more ſhall be ſaid hereafter in the riſing of the victorious *Othoman* family, as lineally from him diſcended. After this the Tartars together with their good fortune ſtill extending the bounds of their empire, conquered ARMENIA the greater, with the countries of CHOLCHIS and IBERIA: ſo that now their empire was become of all others the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing. This great conquerour (the Tartar) had in his proud conceit purpoſed to haue ſubdued all ASIA, and to haue made the ſea the onely bounder of his empire: but ouercome with the delicacies of INDIA, ha- K
uing diuided amongſt his people thoſe great prouinces and fruitfull countries, with the rich cities and pleaſant fields, he ſo reſted, embracing the maners and ſuperſtition of the people he had ouercome. Long it were and farre from our purpoſe to recount all the famous victories and conqueſt of this bare Northren people; ſufficeth it to the hiſtorie wee haue in hand, that the Turks were by them then driuen out of PERSIA, with the countries thereabouts, and their *Togran* kingdome (as they call it) firſt founded by *Tangrolipix*, there extinguiſhed, about the yeare of our Lord 1202. The Turkes thus driuen out of PERSIA and their kingdome ouerthrown, retired themſelues into the leſſer ASIA, poſſeſſed by the Turkes their countreymen, long before brought thither by *Cutlu-Muſes* and his ſonnes (as is before declared) and by them euer ſince in ſome part, though with diuers fortune, holden. Where theſe Turkes now arriuing out L
of PERSIA vnder the leading of *Aladin*, the ſonne of *Kei Huſreu*, diſcended alſo of the *Selzuccian* family in PERSIA, and taking the opportunitie offred them by the mortall diſcord of the Latines with the Greekes, and the Greekes among themſelues, ceized vpon CILICIA with the countries thereabouts, and there firſt at SEBASTIA, and afterward at ICONIVM, erected their new kingdome; which of this *Aladin* is by the Turks called the kingdome of the *Aladin* Kings, although their names were not all ſo.

The Turks driuen out of Perſia by the Tartars.

1202

The beginning of the Aladinian kingdome in the leſſer Aſia, at Sabaſtia and Iconium.

Now about this time, and within the courſe of ſome few yeares after, ſuch great and ſtrange mutations happened in the Conſtantinopolitane empire, as had not therein at any time before beene ſeene: whereby the whole eſtate of that great empire which ſometime commanded ouer a great part of the world, was almoſt vtterly ſubuerted, and a fit opportunitie giuen vnto the M
Turks & infidels for the ſure ſetling of themſelues, and eſtabliſhing of their kingdomes both in SYRIA and the leſſer ASIA: which briefly to run thorow ſhall not be from our purpoſe; their affaires proſpering by theſe troubles, and their proud and ſtately empire that now braueth all the reſt of the world, being raiſed out of the ruines of that Chriſtian empire; and at this preſent triumphing euen in the ſame imperiall citie wherein theſe ſo great innouations hapned through the

A the working of ambitious heads, to the lamentable ruine and deſtruction of a great part of the Chriſtian commonweale.

Alexius the vſurper, but now Emperour, not contented (as is before declared) traiterouſly to haue depriued *Iſaack* his elder brother of his empire and ſight together: ſought alſo after the life of the young Prince *Alexius*, his brothers ſonne, and heire apparent of the empire: who ſeeing the villanie committed in the perſon of his father, ſaued himſelfe by flight from the furie of his vncle, and ſo accompanied with certaine great Lords of the Greekes, his fathers friends, fled to craue aid of the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt, whom the Grecians commonly call the Latines. And firſt he tooke his way to *Philip* the Germane Emperour, who had married *Irene* his ſiſter,

Alexius the young Prince craueth aid of Philip the Emperour and the Latine Princes againſt his vncle the vſurper.

B the Emperour *Iſaack* his daughter, by whom he was moſt honorably receiued and entertained. This great Lady, not a little moued with the miſerie of her father, and the flight of her brother, ceaſed not moſt inſtantly to ſolicite the Emperor her huſband, not to leaue vnreuenged ſo great a villanie, by the example thereof, dangerous vnto himſelfe & others of like maieſtie and ſtate. She declared vnto him, what an execrable indignitie it was, to ſee her father the Emperour vnworthily impriſoned, depriued of his empire, & ſight, and of the ſocietie of men, by his brother, that had by him receiued and recouered his life, his light, and his libertie: and to ſee the heire apparent of the empire baniſhed by the wickedneſſe of his vncle, to wander vp and downe here and there like a beggar: a great part of which diſgrace, as ſhe ſaid, redounded vnto her ſelfe, the daughter of *Iſaack*, and ſiſter to the young wandering Prince, and to himſelfe alſo the ſon in law

C vnto the vnfortunate Emperour her father. Moreouer ſhe ſaid, that the murderer *Alexius* durſt neuer haue beene ſo hardie as to commit ſo great and deteſtable a villanie, if he had not lightly regarded & contemned the maieſtie of the ſaid *Philip*; whom if he had had in any reuerence or honour, or at all feared, he durſt not haue attempted ſo villanous an act. This Greeke Lady, moued with iuſt griefe, with theſe and ſuch like complaints ſo preuailed with her huſband, that hee promiſed her to be in ſome part thereof reuenged, which he could not for the preſent performe, letted by the wars he then had with *Otho* his competitour of the empire. At the ſame time it fortuned, that great preparations were in making in France and Italie, and diuers other places of Chriſtendome, for an expedition to be made againſt the Turks into the Holy Land. The chiefe men wherein, were *Theobald* Countie of Champagne (a man of great fame, and Generall

Great preparation made by the Chriſtians for an expedition into the Holy Land.

D of the Chriſtian armie) *Boniface* Marqueſſe of Mont-Ferrat, *Baldwin* Earle of Flanders and Henavlt, and *Henry* his brother Earle of *S. Paul*, *Henry* Duke of Lovaine, *Gualter* Earle of Breame, with diuers other noble gentlemen, which to name were tedious; vnto whom reſorted alſo many valiant & deuout Chriſtians out of diuers parts of Chriſtendome, ready to haue ſpent their liues in that ſo religious a war: ſo that now the number of them was great, and the armie right populous. But being thus aſſembled together, they thought it not beſt to take their way to Constantinople, thorow Hvngarie and Thrace, and ſo to paſſe ouer into Bythinia; for that the Greekes had ſtill in all former times ſhewed great vncourteſie vnto the Latines, in paſſing with their armies that way: & therfore they thought it much better now, by the way of Italie to take their iourney by ſea into the Holy Land; & for their tranſportation, eſpecially

E to vſe the help of the Venetians, whō they found much the eaſier to be intreated, for that by the meanes of ſo great an armie, they were in hope to ſcoure the Adriaticke (then much infeſted by the Dalmatians) as alſo to recouer Iadera, with ſome other cities vpon the coaſt of Sclavonia before reuolted frō their ſtate to the Hungarians, as indeed they afterward did. But by the way as this armie was marching out of France, & come into Piemont, the noble Countie of Champagne, generall therof, there fell ſicke & died, to the exceeding griefe & ſorrow of the whole armie: in whoſe ſtead, the Marqueſſe of Mont-Ferrat, a man of great nobilitie, & wel acquainted with the wars of the Eaſt, was choſen generall. This great armie, tranſported by the Venetians into Sclavonia, took Iadera, with diuers other port towns along the ſea coaſt, & hauing there done what the Venetians moſt deſired, was about again to haue bin embarked for Syria, & ſo in-

F to the holy land. But the yong Prince *Alexius* in the mean time had by himſelf & the noble Grecians (fled with him for feare of the tyrant) ſo wrought the matter with the Latin Princes of the Weſt, eſpecially with *Innocentius tertius* the Pope, with *Philip* the Emperor his brother in law, & *Philip* the French King, that they pitying his eſtate, & induced alſo with ſome other conſiderations more proper vnto themſelues, tooke him as it were into their protection, commending by letters & meſſēgers for that purpoſe ſent vnto the armie (which they might cōmand) the defence

Alexius commeth vnto the armie.

both of himselfe & his cause: who with the commendation of three so great Princes, comming G
to the armie yet lying at IADERA (expecting but a faire wind for to haue passed into SYRIA)
was there of them all most honourably receiued, as the son of an Emperour, and as became one
vnto them so highly commended. And he himselfe also, as one that knew his good, was not in
any thing wanting vnto himselfe, but recõmended himselfe to their protection, as a poore exi-
led Prince in distresse, yet of a good and liuely spirit, gracious in speech, beautiful to behold, and
very young; and withall, fully instructed by the noble Grecians that were with him, in all things
that might serue to further his purpose. And forasmuch as this great armie was composed of di-
uers nations, especially of the French, Italians, & Venetians, not all to be by one meane moued,
he fitted euery one of them with such motiues as he thought might most preuaile with them: H
Vnto the French he promised to pay the great sums of money they had borrowed of the Vene-
tians, for the furnishing of themselues in this warre: Vnto the Venetians he promised to recom-
pence thẽ for al the iniuries they had sustained by the late Constantinopolitan Emperors, especi-
ally by the Emperor *Emanuel* (who for that they had refused to aid him in his wars against *Wil-
liam* King of SICILIE, did in one day confiscat al the goods of the Venetian merchants within his
empire, of a wonderful value: & afterwards contrary to the law of nations, shamefully intreated
their embassadors sent vnto him, amongst whom was *Henry Dandulus*, now by fortune generall
for the Venetians in the armie: who moued as well with the wrong in particular done vnto him-
selfe, as with the common, desired to be reuenged both of the one and of the other; which al-
though he could not haue of *Emanuel* himselfe, being long before dead, yet was he still desirous I
to haue it of some one of the Greeke Emperours, whosoeuer he were:) Vnto the Pope and the
Italians, both he and the noblemen with him, had before promised, that the Greeke Church
should for euer acknowledge the supremacie of the Church of ROME, and from thenceforth
submit it selfe therunto, as vnto the soueraign Iudge of al the churches of Christendome: which
caused the Pope *Innocentius* by letters, by legates, by embassadors, and by all other meanes pos-
sible, to further the cause of the young Prince *Alexius*, so combined with his owne: alleadging
the diuersitie of opinions in matters of religion, betwixt the Greekes and the Latines, to haue
been the chiefe cause that the Mahometanes had not been long agoe by their vnited forces sub-
dued, or vtterly rooted out. In briefe, the young Prince spared not to promise most bountifull
rewards in generall to all that should take his part against his vncle the vsurping Emperour. K

By this meanes, the deuout warre, taken in hand for the relieue of the poore Christians in SY-
RIA, was laid aside, and the same forces that should haue beene therein employed, now conuer-
ted against the Greeke empire, to the great weakening of that side of the Christian common-
weale, and aduantage of the common enemie; who might then easily haue been oppressed, had
he with the vnited forces of the Christians been on this side charged home, as he was on the far-
ther by the Tartars. The Grecian warre thus resolued vpon, it seemed best vntõ the great com-
manders of the armie, to march directly to CONSTANTINOPLE, as to the head of the Grecian
state, and place where the tyrant whom they sought after, was resiant. In the meane time it was
by them giuen out thorow all the Greeke cities which the Emperour had strongly manned and
fortified for the staying of their passage, that their purpose was not to make warre against the L
Grecians their friends, but only to restore their lawfull Emperour vnto his former state and ho-
nour: And that forasmuch as euery citie and towne in ancient GREECE had appointed rewards,
& almost diuine honours vnto such as had deliuered them from tyrants, they should now more
fauourably receiue and intreat them that came to restore vnto euery citie, and to euery man in
generall, their former libertie & honour. And so vpon the resolution for CONSTANTINOPLE,
embarking their armie, and passing thorow the Ionian sea into the Ægeum, and so without let
thorow the straits of HELESPONTVS into PROPONTIS, and entring the straits of BOSPHORVS
THRACIVS, which diuide EVROPE from ASIA, they came to an anker euen in the face of the
A great fleet of the Latines before Constantinople. citie. In this fleet were two hundred and fortie saile of tall ships, sixtie gallies, seuentie ships for
burden, and one hundred and twentie saile of victuallers: which all together made a most braue M
shew, couering that strait in such sort, as that it seemed rather a wood than a part of the sea. Thus
for a space they lay facing the citie, attending if happily vpon the comming & sight of so great
a fleet, & the report of so puissant an armie as the young Prince *Alexius* had brought with him,
any tumult or sedition might arise in the citie. But the warie tyrant had so well prouided there-
fore beforehand, that the citizens although they in heart fauoured the young Prince, and wished

him

A him well, yet durſt they not once moue or ſtirre in his quarrell. Whileſt the fleet thus lay, embaſſadours came from the iſle of CRETE, in two great gallies, with three banks of oares, yeelding vnto the yong prince that goodly iſland, with all the townes & cities therein: which he foorthwith gaue vnto the marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, generall of the armie, thereby to encourage the other great commanders of the armie to do the vttermoſt of their deuoire, in hope of recompence and rewards anſwerable to their deſerts and valour.

Before the arriuall of this fleet, *Alexius* the emperour had with a great chaine made faſt the entrance of the hauen betwixt CONSTANTINOPLE and PERA, and appointed twentie great gallies well manned for the keeping thereof: but a great gale of wind ariſing, the generall ſent B out the greateſt and ſtrongeſt ſhip in the fleet (of her greatneſſe and ſwiftneſſe called the Eagle) which with all her ſailes vp, carried with a full gale of wind, by maine force brake the chain, and made away for the reſt of the fleet to enter; which the Greekes in the gallies ſeeing, for feare fled, leauing the gallies for a ſpoile vnto the Venetians, by whom they were all taken, but not a man found in them. The hauen thus gained, *Theodorus Laſcaris* the Emperours ſonne in law, was preſently readie vpon the ſhore with a ſelect companie of the braueſt gallants of the citie and of the court, to haue hindered the Latines from landing; who running their ſhips a ground, landed with ſuch cheerefulneſſe and courage, and with ſuch haſt, that in one moment you might haue ſeene them leape out of their ſhips, take land, enter into the battell, and lay about them like mad men. This hote skirmiſh endured a great while, for that they were onely footmen that ſuſtained C this brunt, for the horſes could not ſo ſoone be landed, and the Greekes were brauely mounted. All this great fight the Conſtantinopolitanes beheld, with doubtfull hearts expecting what ſhould bee the euent thereof. There were in the citie ſixtie thouſand of the flower of Greece, which brauely ſallying out, made the battell much more doubtfull; yet ſuch was the valour and reſolution of the Latines, that in fine the Greekes diſcomfited, were glad to retire themſelues againe into the citie, but with what loſſe, was not certainely knowne: eaſie it were to gueſſe, that it was right great, for that the old tyrant *Alexius* diſcouraged therewith, and doubtfull of his owne ſtate, with *Theodorus Laſcaris* his ſonne in law, and ſome few others of his truſtie friends (hard to be found in ſo dangerous a caſe) the next night following ſecretly fled out of the citie, carrying away with him a wonderfull maſſe of treaſure (which hee againſt all ſuch euents had D cauſed to bee ſecretly hidden by his daughter *Irene*, in a monaſterie of Nuns within the citie, whereof ſhe was the abbeſſe) and ſo ſaued himſelfe.

The Latines by force enter the hauen of Conſtantinople.

A hot skirmiſh betwixt the Greekes & the Latines at their landing.

The flight of the tyrant once bruted, the next morning the Conſtantinopolitanes taking the old emperour *Iſaack* out of priſon, ſaluted him againe for their emperour, rejoycing greatly for his deliuerance, and the ſafegard of his life: and after that opened the gates of the citie vnto the Latines, calling and ſaluting them by the names of the reuengers and ſauiours of the libertie of the Greekes, as alſo of the life and majeſtie of their emperour; they requeſted them that they might ſee and ſalute *Alexius* their young prince, whom they had ſo long deſired: and ſo was the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, by the ſubmiſſion of the citizens, for that time ſaued from ſaccage and ſpoile. The old emperour thus deliuered, and together with his ſonne *Alexius* again E placed in the imperiall ſeat, gaue the moſt heartie thanks that poſsibly he could vnto the Latine princes, for that by their bountie, charitie, and valour, the Greeke empire had been deliuered out of a long and miſerable ſeruitude: and for his owne particular, that he had receiued of them ſo great good, that albeit his ſight could not be reſtored to him againe, neuertheleſſe, hee acknowledged his life, his libertie, his empire, his countrey, his ſonne, to haue been vnto him by them reſtored, and he likewiſe to them: for which their ſo great deſerts he could not (as he ſaid) render them condigne thanks, or deuiſe rewards or honours anſwerable to their demerits and valour: and that therefore he did ratefie and confirme whatſoeuer his ſonne had before promiſed vnto them for his deliuerance: and not onely that, but farther promiſed, That if they were not therewith contented, hee would of his owne bountie giue them better contentment, not meaning F they ſhould goe diſcontented, that had ſaued his life, and otherwiſe ſo highly pleaſured him. Hereupon this good old emperour began to conſult with his friends about the meanes wherby he might ſatisfie and content the Latines in ſuch things as the young prince his ſonne had vnto them promiſed. And to the intent that the citizens of CONSTANTINOPLE might the more willingly doe that he was to command them, and the more cheerefully pay ſuch impoſitions as hee was to lay vpon them, hee intreated all the Latines to retire themſelues out of the citie into their

Iſaack the old emperour taken out of priſon, & againe ſaluted emperour, together with young Alexius his ſon.

their campe or about their ſhips, which they accordingly did. But the impoſition being ſet G
downe, and what euery man was to pay, ſeemed vnto the Greeks (as men of long accuſtomed to
receiue tribute of others, and not to pay tribute to others) a matter moſt heauie and intollerable.
In this verie inſtant that this exaction was required, died the old Emperour *Iſaack*, who hauing
of long been kept in a darke and ſtinking priſon in continuall feare of death, and now deliuered
and reſtored to his Empire, could not endure ſo ſudden and vnexpected a change, both of the
aire and of his manner of liuing, but ſo ſuddenly died.

At this exaction impoſed for the contentment of the Latines, the light Conſtantinopolitans
grieuouſly murmured and exclaimed, ſaying, That it was a villanous thing to ſee the Greeke
Empire engaged and bound (by a yong boy) vnto a couetous and proud nation, and ſo to bee H
ſpoiled and bare of coyne: That the great and rich iſland of CRETE lying in the midſt of the
ſea, was by him giuen as a gift vnto the Latines: That the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE and
the Greeke church, had by him beene enforced and conſtrained to yeeld vnto the See of
ROME, to receiue the opinions of the Latine church, to ſubmit it ſelfe vnto the obeiſance of
old ROME, from whence it had once happily departed euer ſince the time that the empire was
by *Conſtantine* the Great tranſlated thence to them. Thus euerie one ſaid for himſelfe in parti-
cular: thus all men ſaid in generall. And therof the noble men in their aſſemblies, and the vulgar
people in their meetings, grieuouſly complained: whereupon a great ſedition and tumult was
raiſed in the citie. Some preſently tooke vp armes, and the common people all enraged ran fu-
riouſly diſordered vnto the palace, with a purpoſe to haue committed ſome great outrage vpon I
the perſon of the yong Emperour *Alexius*: who in that ſo ſudden an inſurrection, as might well
haue troubled a right conſtant man, without longer ſtay reſolued vpon a moſt wholeſome and
neceſſarie point for the appeaſing of the peoples furie; vnto whom (aſſembled in a woonderful
multitude) he ſhewed himſelfe from aboue in his palace, promiſing them to remaine in their po-
wer, and not from thencefoorth to doe any thing without their aduice and liking, but wholy to
depend vpon them: with which good words the people held themſelues well content, and ſo
was the tumult for that time appeaſed. But foorthwith the young Emperour conſidering the in-
jurie done vnto him, began to burne with the deſire of reuenge and to change his purpoſe. He
could not together ſatisfie the citizens and the Latines: for if he would keepe his promiſe with
the Latines, he muſt of neceſſitie offend his owne people; neither was there any meanes to bee K
found to ſatisfie both the one and the other. But thinking himſelfe more bound to keepe his
promiſe with the Latines, whoſe forces he knew not how to withſtand, he ſent ſecretly to requeſt
the marques of MONT-FERRAT, generall of the armie, to ſend him about midnight certaine
companies of ſouldiers into the citie, aſſuring him to receiue them in by a gate neere vnto the
palace, which ſhould bee opened vnto them by certaine of his truſtie ſeruants there left for that
purpoſe. Of this plot *Alexius Ducas* (of his bittle browes ſurnamed *Murzuſle*, whom of a
baſe fellow the emperour *Iſaack* had promoted vnto the greateſt honours of the court) was not
ignorant, who being a man of an aſpiring mind, and in theſe troubleſome times hauing long
thirſted after the Empire, tooke now this occaſion to worke vpon.

Alexius ſeeketh to bring the Latines againe into the citie.

The Conſtantinopolitans again in an vprore.

The night following, he by his agents, men inſtructed for the purpoſe, raiſed a tumult in the L
citie, not inferiour vnto that which had happened the day before: and at the ſame inſtant, as if he
had had nothing to do in the matter, came ſuddenly vnto the young emperour in the dead time
of the night (which he might at all times do, by reaſon of the great confidence the emperour had
in him) and with a ſad countenance told him, That the people were vp againe in an vprore, and
eſpecially they of his guard, and that they were comming toward him to do him ſome violence
for the loue hee bare vnto the Latines. With which vnexpected newes the young Emperour
terrified, demaunded of him as of his moſt faithfull counſellor, what were beſt in that caſe for
him to doe? Who preſently embracing him in his night gowne, lead him out by a ſecret doore
into a tent he had of his owne in the court, as if hee would there haue kept him ſafe: but far was
that from his traiteous thoughts; who departing from him, as if he had gone to appeaſe the tu- M
mult, had before taken order, That he ſhould preſently after his departure, be caſt in bonds, & ſo
be clapt vp into a cloſe ſtinking priſon. Which done, the falſe traitor openly ſhewing himſelfe,
made an oration vnto the people, wherein he ſhewed himſelfe to haue great compaſſion of the
Greeke empire, & of the Greeks his countrymen themſelues, eſpecially in that they were gouer-
ned by a youth vnfit for the gouernment, who ſuffered himſelf to be miſſe-led according to the
pleaſure

A pleasure of the Latines. And that it was high time for the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, the seat of the Greek empire, to looke about it, and to haue an eie vnto it selfe, sith it was betraied and sold by them which ought to preserue and keepe the same: that they had now need of a man that loued his countrey and countreymen, before that which yet remained of the Grecian name were vtterly extinguished by the Latines.

This his speech, fitted of purpose vnto the humour of the seditious, was receiued with the great outcrie and applause of the windie headed people. Some cried out that he, and none but he, was to be made chiefe of the common weale that was by them to be established: other some cried as loud to haue him made generall of the armies and forces of the state: but the greatest
B crie was to haue him chosen and created Emperour; whereunto the rest giuing place, hee was by the generall consent of the tumultuous people, without longer stay, chosen and proclaimed Emperour.

Alexius the traitour, by no lawfull election or rightfull succession, but onely by the furie of the tumultuous people, thus created Emperour; was of nothing more carefull than how to breake the forces of the Latines, of whom onely he now stood in dread. And therefore to begin withall, he first attempted by certaine gallies filled with pitch, flax, brimstone, and such like matter apt to take fire, to haue burnt the Venetian fleet: which gallies so set on fire & carried with a faire gale of wind amongst the fleet, had been like enough to haue done great harme, had it not by the warinesse of the Venetians been preuented: who being good sea men, & not vnacquainted with such deuises, easily & without danger auoided the same, by keeping themselues aloofe
C one from another in the sea. This finenes sorting to no purpose, he to colour the matter sent certaine messengers to the generall, and other commanders of the armie, to giue them to vnderstand that that which was done for the firing of the fleet, had been done without his priuitie, by the malice of the tumultuous people, and that for his part he would be glad of their fauour and friendship, assuring them likewise of his, and promising them to aid them both with men and money, and whatsoeuer else they should haue need of in their wars against the infidels. Whereunto an answer was giuen by *Dandulus* the Venetian generall, That he would beleeue it, when *Alexis* the sonne of the Emperor *Isaack*, whom the Latines had placed in the empire, should assure them thereof, and intreat for the people, vpon whom the fault of that outrage was laid:
D which answere the more mooued the traiterous tyrant, to rid himselfe cleane of the feare of the yong prince, by taking him out of the way; to the intent to hinder the people of the hope and great desire they had to grow to some peace with the Latines, by taking him out of prison, and receiuing him againe for their Emperour: For the people (by nature mutable, and not desirous of the good of themselues, but according to the occurrents present, without any great regard of that they haue alreadie done, or ought to haue done) began now to repent themselues of that they had done against the yong Emperor *Alexis* in the fauour of the tyrant, and commonly said, That they must find some meanes, whatsoeuer it were, to remedie their fault together with their troubles. Wherefore *Murzufle* fearing this sudden mutation of the people, with his owne hands most villanously strangled the yoong Prince *Alexis* in prison, hauing as yet not
E raigned much aboue six months, and immediately after caused it to be bruited abroad, That the said yoong prince dispairing of his estate, had as a man desperate hanged himselfe.

Murzufle attempteth to burne the Venetian fleet.

The tyrant in vaine hauing thus attempted the burning of the fleet, & still fearing the reuenging sword of the Latines, resolued now by plaine force to meet them in the field, and there to dare them battell. So hauing made readie and armed the whole strength of the imperiall citie, he with cheerefull speech encouraged his souldiers, requesting them valiantly to maintaine and defend their countrey of Greece, the monuments of their fathers, the glorie of their ancestors, their present honour, and the future hope of their posteritie: that hauing before their eyes the wals of their citie, within which they were borne, nourished, and brought vp in hope of great matters, they would haue pitie and compassion of their temples, their wiues, their children,
F and in no case to suffer them to fall again into so miserable and wretched a seruitude, but rather to die a thousand deaths. And the more to grace this his enterprise taken in hand for the defence of his countrey (as hee would haue the world to beleeue it) with the colour of a superstitious deuotion also, he caused the Priests in their ecclesiastike attire and ornaments, to march forth in the armie, with an ensigne, hauing in it displaied the picture of the Virgin *Marie*. So couragiously marching forward, he first charged that quarter of the campe where *Baldwin* the

Murzufle encourageth his souldiers.

the Countie of FLANDERS lay, where at the firſt was fought a right fierce and doubtfull bat- G
tell. But afterward the alarum running thorowout all the campe of the Latines, and new ſup-
plies comming in on euery ſide, the Greekes were put to the worſe, and enforced againe to re-
tire into the citie, hauing loſt a great number of men, together with their ſuperſtitious enſigne. It
was a wonderfull thing to ſee, with what rare agreement the Latines, being of diuers nations,
continued this expedition vndertaken againſt the Greekes. Seuentie two dayes was the citie of
Conſtantinople hardly beſieged. CONSTANTINOPLE ſtraightly beſieged by the Latines both by ſea and land, without gi-
uing any time of reſt or repoſe day or night vnto the beſieged, freſh men comming ſtill on to
the aſſault, as the other fell off, and in ſuch ſort troubled the Greekes in the citie, that they knew
Conſtantinople ſet on fire. not well what to doe or which way to turne themſelues. The Venetians, vnto whom was com- H
mitted the charge to aſſault that ſide of the citie which was toward the hauen, vpon two great
gallies made faſt together, built a ſtrong tower of wood, higher than the wals and rampiers of
the towne, out of which they both with ſhot and fire-workes much troubled the defendants,
wherewith they in the time of the aſſault approching the wall, by their fine deuices fired that
ſide of the citie: by the rage whereof, a great number of houſes were burnt, with many other
ſtately buildings and ancient monuments of that famous citie: and had at that preſent gained
a great tower neere vnto the port, deſtitute of defenders, had not the tyrant himſelfe in good
time come with new ſupplies to the reſcue thereof. In like manner, the French, with the reſt, aſ-
ſailed the other ſide of the citie by land, where they were to fight not againſt the defendants on-
ly, but againſt deepe ditches, high and ſtrong wals, and bulwarkes alſo: neuertheleſſe, ſuch was I
the valour and furie of the Latines, with the deſire of victorie, as that they were not with any
difficulties to be diſmaied; but preſſing ſtill on, by a thouſand dangers, at length after a moſt
ſharpe aſſault they gained one of the greateſt baſtillions on that ſide of the citie, called the An-
gels tower, and ſo by plaine force opened a way both for themſelues and the reſt into the citie.
Whereof *Alexius* vnderſtanding, and ſtrucke with preſent deſpaire both of his ſtate and life, the
night now comming on, fled with *Euphroſina* the Emperour *Alexius* his wife, and *Eudocia* her
daughter, whom he had maried when he had raigned about a moneth and 16 dayes.

The tyrant, author of all this miſchiefe, and of the calamities enſuing, thus fled, and the La-
tines furiouſly entring; the Prieſts and religious men in their ſurplices, and other eccleſiaſtike
ornaments, with their croſſes and banners (as in ſolemne proceſſion) met the Latines, & falling K
downe at the ſouldiers feet, with flouds of teares abundantly running down their heauie coun-
tenances, beſought them, but eſpecially the captains and commanders, to remember the condi-
tion of worldly things, and contenting themſelues with the victorie, the glorie, the honour, the
empire, the immortalitie of their name, to abſtaine from ſlaughter, from burning, from ſpoiling
& ranſacking of ſo beautifull a citie: And that ſeeing they were themſelues men, they would alſo
haue pitie of men: and being themſelues captaines and ſouldiers, they ſhould alſo haue com-
paſſion vpon captaines and ſouldiers; who although they were not ſo valiant and fortunate as
they were, yet neuertheleſſe were both captaines and ſouldiers: And that they would keepe and
preſerue their citie, whereof (if they ruinated it not) they might haue much more pleaſure and
commoditie, than if they ſhould deſtroy the ſame, which as it had been the principall ſeat of the L
Greeke empire, ſo might it now be of the Latines: That ſeeing they had thereof had a careſull
regard, as then belonging to another man, they ought now vpon better reaſon to haue more
care thereof, being their owne: That the authors of all theſe troubles and miſchiefes, *Alexius* the
elder, and *Murzuſle*, had already receiued a reward anſwerable to their follies, in that they were
driuen into exile: That they would haue pitie and compaſſion of an innocent and vnfortunate
multitude of poore people, oppreſſed & grieuouſly tormented with the often tyrannies of their
murderous lords & gouernours: That in ſo doing, God the Lord of hoaſts, the giuer and gui-
der of battels, the God of mercy, would therefore reward them: To conclude, they humbly be-
ſought them to pardon their citizens, to put on the hearts of gracious & mercifull lords and fa-
thers, not of enemies and rough maſters; of forgiuers, not of reuengers: and to vnderſtand by M
their teares, their miſerable eſtate and woes paſſed. With this ſo humble a ſubmiſſion and com-
plaint of the religious, ſome of the better ſort were happily moued: but with the common ſoul-
diers, breathing nothing but victorie, with their weapons in their hands, and the ſpoile of an em-
pire in their power, what auailed praiers or teares? Euery man fell to the ſpoile, and in ſo great
choice & libertie of all things, fitted his owne diſordered appetite, without reſpect of the wrong

or

A or iniurie done to others: only from the effuſion of innocent bloud they abſtained; they whoſe liues they ſought after, being alreadie fled, together with the tyrant. Other iniuries and outrages (ſo great, as that greater could none be) were in euery place ſo rife, that euery ſtreet, euery lane, euery corner of the citie was filled with mourning and heauineſſe. There might a man haue ſeene noble men earſt of great honour, and reuerend for their hoarie haires, with other citizens of great wealth, thruſt out of all they had, walking vp and downe the citie weeping and wringing their hands, as men forlorne, not knowing where to ſhroud their heads. Neither ſtaied the greedie rage of the inſolent ſouldiers within the wals of mens priuate houſes, but brake out into the ſtately palaces, temples, and churches of the Greekes alſo, where all was good prize, and no-
B thing dedicated to the ſeruice of God, left vnpolluted and defaced, no place vnſought, no corner vnrifled: right lamentable and almoſt incredible it were to report all the miſeries of that time. Some of the Greeke Hiſtoriographers, men of great marke and place, and themſelues eye-witneſſes and partakers of thoſe euils, haue by their writings complained to all poſteritie, of the inſolencie of the Latines at the winning of the citie, to their eternall diſhonour: but that diſordered ſouldiers in all ages in the libertie of their inſolent victorie, haue done ſuch outrages, as honeſt mindes abhorre to thinke vpon. Thus CONSTANTINOPLE, the moſt famous citie of the Eaſt, the ſeat and glorie of the Greeke empire, by the miſerable ambition and diſſention of the Greekes for ſoueraigntie, fell into the hands of the Latines the twelfth of Aprill, in the yeere 1204, or after the account of others, 1200. 1204

Nicetas Choinates, annalium fol. 180.

C CONSTANTINOPLE thus taken, and the tyrants put to flight, the Princes and great commanders of the armie held a counſell, to conſider what were beſt to be done concerning the citie and the new gained empire: for after ſo great a victorie, they thought it not good to raſe ſo ancient and important a citie, ſeated as it were a watch tower vpon the theatre of the world, ouerlooking both ASIA and EVROPE from the one to the other, as an eye of the vniuerſall; and ſo commodiouſly planted, as was no other citie of the world, for the keeping vnder of the enemies of the Chriſtian Religion: but that it were much better to place there a Latine gouernour, to eſtabliſh there the Latine lawes and cuſtomes, and to vnite the Greeke church as a member vnto the church of ROME. In which conſultation, ſome were of opinion, not to haue any moe Emperours in Chriſtendome but one, and therefore to make choice of *Philip* the
D Germane Emperour, author of this warre, whoſe wife *Irene* was the only daughter and heire of the late Emperour *Iſaack Angelus*, vnto whom by all right the inheritance of her fathers empire belonged. But the greater part, conſidering that the troubled affaires of GREECE, in ſo great a change and newneſſe of the empire, had need of the perſonall preſence of a Prince, thought it better to make choice of one among themſelues, who there ſtill reſiant in that place, might at all times giue aid vnto the Latines in their ſacred wars, taken in hand againſt the Infidels: which opinion as the better, was approued of them all. The chiefe men in this election of the new Emperour, were *Baldwin* Countie of FLAVNDERS and HAINAVLT, *Henry* his brother, *Lewis* Countie of BLOYS, *Symon de Montfort*, *Iohn de Dammartin*, *Gualter de Brienne*, *Hugh* Countie of *S. Paul*, *Iohn* Countie of BRENNE, *Boniface* Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, *Ste-*
E *phen* Countie of PERCH, and fiue gentlemen of VENICE: vnto whom alſo were ioyned two Biſhops of SYRIA, the one of BETHLEM, the other of PTOLEMAIS, who had oftentimes come to the campe of the Latines, to ſtirre them vp for the taking in hand of the ſacred warre in SYRIA; with two Biſhops of FRANCE alſo, namely of SOISSON and TROY in CHAMPAGNE, and the Abbot of LEMELY. Theſe great Lords and Prelates aſſembled into the church of the holy Apoſtles, after they had there with great deuotion craued of God to inſpire them with his ſpirit, for the choice of a good and iuſt Prince fit for ſo great a charge; with one conſent made choice of *Baldwin* Countie of FLAVNDERS and HAINAVLT, for Emperor of GREECE: a braue and valiant Prince, about two and thirtie yeeres old, who was afterward the ſixteenth day of May in the yeere 1204 (or after the computation of others, in the
F yeere 1205) in the great Temple of *S. Sophia* ſolemnly crowned by *Thomas Maurocenus* a Venetian, firſt Patriarch of the Latines in CONSTANTINOPLE. From which time the Greeke church in CONSTANTINOPLE began to receiue the rites and ceremonies of the Latines, and to acknowledge the ſupremacie of the church of ROME.

The Greeke empire deuided amongſt the Latines.

It was not long after that CONSTANTINOPLE was thus taken by the Latines, but that they diuiding their forces without any reſiſtance, tooke in the moſt part of the great countries and

and prouinces on EVROPE ſide, belonging to the Greeke empire in the time of *Iſaack Angelus* the late Emperour: the fortune of the whole empire, as it were following the fortune of the imperiall citie. Which large countries ſo gained from the Greekes, the Latines diuided amongſt themſelues, as good prize taken from their enemies. Vnto *Baldwin* the Emperor and his ſucceſſors in the empire, was aſſigned the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, and the countrey of THRACIA, with a limited ſoueraignetie ouer all the reſt of the prouinces by the Latines alreadie or afterwards to be gained: Vnto the Venetians in this diuiſion of the empire, was allotted for their ſhare all the rich Iſlands of the ÆGEVM, and IONIAN, with the famous Iſland of CANDIE alſo; which although it were before by the young Emperour *Alexis* in the beginning of theſe warres, giuen vnto the Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, yet in this diuiſion of the empire, it was taken from him (not without his good liking) and giuen to the Venetians, as for them more fit: in ſtead and lieu whereof, the Marqueſſe had the citie of THESSALONICA with all the kingdome of THESSALIE, and a great part of PELOPONESVS aſſigned vnto him, with the royall title of a King. Of the aforeſaid Iſlands (in number many and exceeding rich) the Venetians in the name of the ſtate fortified ſome few of the greateſt with conuenient garriſons, the reſt they left to be poſſeſſed and defended by the better ſort of the citizens at their priuate coſt and charges; who according to their abilitie, tooke into their poſſeſſion, ſome one Iſland, ſome another, and ſome two or three, one, as they were able to ſet out their gallies, one, two, or moe, for the keeping of the ſame: ouer all which, the ſeigniorie neuertheleſſe had a generall care, ſtill keeping a fleet with one of their admirals at ſea; by whom they not onely repreſſed the Genua pirats then buſie in thoſe ſeas, but alſo tooke in certaine ſtrong townes in the maine vpon the coaſt of PELOPONESVS, namely MODON and CORONE; all which they of long time after held as a part of their ſeigniorie. Some other particular places, yet parts alſo of the empire, were giuen vnto particular men; as the dukedome of ATHENS vnto one *Geffrey* of TROY in CHAMPAIGNE, a Frenchman, a valiant captaine, whom they alſo made Prince of ACHAIA: Another dukedome was alſo giuen to the Countie of BLOYS; as were diuers other countries and townes alſo vnto other more priuate men: who neuertheleſſe were bound to hold the ſame of the Emperour, as of their Lord, and to pay him yeerely a fourth part of the reuenue ariſing thereof towards the maintenance of his ſtate. Yea the Greekes themſelues in this ſhipwracke of their ſtate and empire, although they diſdained nothing more than the ſtrange gouernment of the Latines, yet could they not be perſwaded to ioyne together in ſo common a calamitie, but after their wonted manner ſought euery man how to ſhare out ſomething for himſelfe, without regard of the common good: one ſeized vpon one ſtrong towne or citie, and ſo likewiſe another; which for all that they held not long, driuen thence for the moſt part by a greater power, either of the Latines, or of their owne countreymen.

The man whom the diſcontented Greekes moſt looked after, was *Theodorus Laſcaris*, the Emperour *Alexius Angelus* his ſonne in law: who at the taking of the citie, fled to ADRIANOPLE, and afterward into BYTHINIA, where he was of the people, not of that countrey only, but of others alſo farther off, ioyfully receiued and honoured as their Emperour. So taking into his hands the countries of BYTHINIA, PHRYGIA, MISIA, IONIA, and LYDIA, euen from the windings of the famous riuer MÆANDER Southward, vnto the EVXINE ſea Northward; he with the generall good liking of the people, tooke vpon him the ſtate of an Emperour, and ſo in the renowmed citie of NICE made the ſeat of his empire. At the ſame time alſo *Dauid*, and *Alexius Comneni*, the nephewes of the tyrant *Andronicus* (ſometime Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE) by his ſonne *Manuel*, poſſeſſing the more Eaſterne countries of PONTVS, GALATIA, and CAPADOCIA, erected vnto themſelues another empire in TRAPEZOND, where their poſteritie of the honourable houſe of the *Comneni* raigned in great glorie many yeeres after, vntill their empire, together with the empire of CONSTANTINOPLE, was by the great Emperour of the Turks, *Mahomet* the ſecond, ſubuerted and brought to nought, as ſhall be afterward in due time and place declared. Thus the Greeke empire expoſed (as it were) to the generall ſpoile, was no longer one, but many empires: *Baldwin* raigning in CONSTANTINOPLE, the Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT in THESSALIE, *Theodorus Laſcaris* at NICE, *Alexius Comnenus* in TRAPEZOND, and the Venetians in the Iſlands; all in royall dignitie. Beſides whom were many other leſſer Princes, which had here and there according to their abilitie ſeized vpon ſome one or other part of the empire, and there erected their Toparchies, raigning therein as

The beginning of the empire of Trapezond by the Comneni.

pettie

A pettie Kings: as did *Aldebrandinus* in ATTALIA, *Michael Angelus* in EPIRVS, with diuers others too long to rehearse.

Baldwin (as is aforesaid) created Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, by the helpe of the Venetian Admirall *Dandulus*, and other great commanders of the armie, in short time brought vnder his obeisance all the cities of THRACIA, excepting the citie of ADRIANOPLE, whereunto the better sort of the discontented Greekes, together with *Theodorus Lascaris* (disdaining the gouernment of the Latines) were fled, as vnto a most safe sanctuarie: which *Baldwin* knowing, and withall desiring whilest yet he had his friends about him, to set his new empire in some good stay, without farther delay came and laid hard siege to the same. Now the Greekes gene- *Hadrianople besieged by the Emperour Baldwin.*
B rally euill intreated by the Latines, and grieued to be gouerned by them, were some of them fled into other their neighbour Princes countries, but especially into BVLGARIA, otherwise called MISIA, a large kingdome, lying betwixt the great mountain ÆMVS and DANVBIVS: by whose perswasion, *Iohn* King of that countrey, aided by the Scythians (a fierce Northerne people, but lately come into those quarters) and by the fugitiue Greekes themselues, tooke vpon him to relieue the besieged citie: and so with a great armie approching the same, sent before certaine troupes of the Scythian archers on horsebacke, to fetch in such booties of horses or cattell as they should finde neere vnto the Emperours campe: and withall commanded them that being charged by the imperials, they should forthwith retire, so to draw them out of their trenches, into the place where the King with the greatest part of his armie lay couertly to entrap
C them. Which the Scythians (well acquainted with such seruice) so well performed vnder the leading of one *Cozus* their Generall, that hauing once or twice drawne their enemies vnto some light skirmishes, and so retiring, and ere long againe with a greater number returning, they at length cunningly drew the Emperour with all his armie, in hope to doe some great matter vpon them, euen as they wished, into the place whereas the King with his armie lay in wait among the woods and mountaines for them; where they wearied and out of breath in the former pursuit, and now on euery side beset with fresh enemies, were ouerthrowne with a great slaughter. In which conflict, to increase the losse, *Baldwin* the Emperour himselfe was taken and sent prisoner in bonds to TERNOVA: where afterwards by the commandement of the barbarous King he was most cruelly put to death, hauing his hands and feet cut off, and so dismembred
D was cast out into a deepe valley, where he yet lay miserably breathing three dayes after, and so died; leauing his body as fortunes scorne, for a prey vnto the wilde beasts and birds of the aire; no man vouchsafing to burie it. Thus perished this worthy Prince, for his vertues commended euen of the Greekes themselues, being about the age of three and thirtie yeeres, and not hauing raigned yet a full yeere, in the yeere of our Lord 1206. 1206

The victorie thus gained, and the citie relieued, the barbarous King with his sauage souldiers hauing tasted the wealth of the Latines, ouerthrowne in the late battell, and the pleasures of THRACIA, now subiect to their lust; greedily pursued their good fortune, without respect of all humanitie: the open countrey they ouerran, spoiling whatsoeuer came to hand, the rich and famous cities they rifled, and afterward rased them downe to the ground, namely SERRÆ,
E PHILIPPOPOLIS, APRI, RHEDESTVM, PERINTHVS, DAONIVM, ARCADIOPOLIS, MESENA, ZVRVLVS, and ATHYRA: the citizens and countrey people fled into the cities for refuge, they put all to the sword, without respect of age, sex, or condition, except some few whom they carried away with them prisoners, so that of all the prouinces of that rent and ruinated empire, the countrey of THRACE was most miserable; as first spoiled by the Latines, and now laid desolate by the Bulgarians & Scythians. Only some few of the strongest cities, as DIDYMOTICHVM and ADRIANOPLE, valiantly defended by the Greekes and Latines, escaped this furie of the Barbarians, all the rest that fell into their hands being laid waste and desolate.

In this so troubled a State of the new erected Empire of the Latines in CONSTANTINO- *Henry second Emperor of the Latines in Constantinople.*
F PLE, the Latines made choise of *Henry* the late Emperour *Baldwins* brother, as of all others the fittest to succeed him in the Empire; who aided by the Marquesse, now King of THESSALIE, and the other Latine Princes, notably repulsed the Barbarians, and left them not vntill that at length he had recouered from them all such towns and cities as they had before taken, and driuen them quite out of the countrey, and so well established himselfe in his new empire.

But to leaue this dismembred empire, now in the hands of many, and to come neerer vnto our purpose: *Alexius Angelus* the vsurper, driuen out of the imperiall citie by the Latines, to saue

himselfe, fled into THESSALIE, and from thence vnto *Leo Scurus* (then a man of great fame among the Greekes) who tyrannizing at NAVPLVS, as had his father before him, was in these troublesome times growne greater by surprising of the two famous cities of ARGOS and CORINTH: by whose meanes he cunningly entrapped *Alexius Ducas*, surnamed *Murzufle* the traitor, and for a secret grudge not commonly knowne, put out his eyes: himselfe an exiled man being a most heauie enemie vnto the other also exiled; and himselfe thrust out of the empire, a deadly foe vnto the other, oppressed with the like calamitie. Shortly after which losse of his sight he was by chance taken by the Latines, and so brought backe to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was for murdering the young Emperour *Alexius*, worthily condemned vnto a strange & horrible kinde of death: for, cast off from an high tower, and tumbling heeles ouer head downeward, he was with the waight of himselfe, and violence of the fall, crushed all to pieces, and so miserably died: a death too good for such a traitor. Not long after it fortuned also, that *Alexius* himselfe wandering vp and downe in THRACIA, was by the Marquesse of MONT-FERRAT, going against *Scurus*, taken and stript of his great treasure, and whatsoeuer else he had; and so sent away naked, long time after in beggers estate wandered about in ACHAIA and PELOPONESVS, now farre vnlike that *Alexius* which sometime proudly raigned in CONSTANTINOPLE: but such is the assurance of euill gotten honour. He hearing that *Theodorus Lascaris*, his sonne in law, raigned in ASIA, and there held the state of an Emperour, reioyced not thereat as a kinde father in law, but inwardly grieued thereat as an enemie, sorrie that any other but himselfe should be honoured with the title of the Greeke Emperour: in which malicious humour he sailing out of GREECE into ASIA ouer the Ægeum, came secretly vnto the Turks Sultan *Iathatines* his old acquaintance, then lying at ATTALIA, (which famous citie he had not long before taken from the Christians) vnto whom he declared his heauie estate, and how his empire had beene rent from him, as well by the Greekes as the Latines; requesting, that by his meanes he might be restored againe into some part thereof, especially that in the lesser ASIA, which was by *Theodorus Lascaris*, together with the honour of the Greeke Emperour, vniustly (as he said) detained from him. This *Iathatines*, now Sultan of ICONIVM, was the younger sonne of Sultan *Aladin*; who not long suruiuing his father *Cai-Chosroe*, left his kingdome vnto his two sonnes, *Azadin* and *Iassadin*, of the Greekes called *Azatines* and *Iathatines*: where long it was not, but that these two brethren falling out for the soueraignetie (which admitteth no equalitie) *Iathatines* was by *Azatines* his elder brother driuen into exile, and for the safegard of his life glad to flie vnto this *Alexius*, then raigning at CONSTANTINOPLE, by whom he was honourably entertained, and as some write, conuerted and baptized. But *Azatines* the Sultan shortly after dying, this *Iathatines* returning home againe, and renouncing the Christian religion, was by the Turks receiued for their Sultan: of whom the Emperour *Alexius* in like extremitie now craueth aid. The Sultan not forgetfull of his owne troubles before passed, or of the kindnesse he had receiued, and moued with the pitifull complaint of his old friend, together with his large offers, beside that he was in hope to share out some good part of whatsoeuer he got for himselfe; tooke him into his protection, and forthwith sent embassadours to *Lascaris*, threatening vnto him all extremities, except he did forthwith giue place vnto *Alexius* his father in law, vnto whom as vnto the Greeke Emperor, those countries which were by him possessed, of right (as he said) appertained. With which vnexpected message, *Theodorus* was not a little troubled, as fearing both the Sultans power, and the inclination of the people to their old Emperour. Neuertheless, hauing propounded the matter in counsell, and finding the minds of his subiects well affected towards him, & a readinesse in them in his quarrell to aduenture their liues; he encouraged therewith, accompanied onely with two thousand choise horsemen, together with the Sultans embassadour, without farther stay set forward to PHILADELPHIA: the Sultan at the same time with *Alexius* (whom he carried with him as a bait to deceiue the people withall) and twentie thousand Turks, besieging the citie of ANTIOCH, situate vpon the winding banks of the riuer MEANDER. Which the Emperour *Theodorus* well vnderstanding, and that the Sultan by gaining that strong citie (standing vpon the passage of the great riuer, the bounder of his empire) should open a faire way for himselfe into the heart of ROMANIA ASIATICA, to the great hazard of his whole empire, resolued with those few he had, to doe what he might to relieue his citie. And so setting forward vpon the spurre, carrying nothing with him more than a little victuall: and now come neere vnto the citie, sent before the Sultans embassador, following him

Antioch besieged by Iathatines.

at

A at the heeles. Who comming vnto the Sultan, and telling him of the Emperours approach with ſo ſmall a power, could hardly perſwade him that it was ſo, although he bound it with many oathes: yet at length perſwaded of the truth of the matter, and that indeed it was ſo, hee in all haſte put his armie in the beſt order he could vpon ſuch a ſudden, but not to his beſt aduantage, being hindred ſo to doe, by the ſtraitneſſe of the place wherein he lay. Of the two thouſand ſelect horſemen in the Emperours armie, were eight hundred Italians, all moſt reſolute men, who giuing the firſt charge, brake through the midſt of the Sultans armie, diſordering his whole battell as they went; after whom followed alſo the Greekes, though not with like courage: but thoſe Italian horſemen now diuided from the reſt, and in number but few, in comming backe
B againe, were by the diſordered Turkes, ſome on horſebacke, ſome on foot, ſo beſet on euery ſide, as that there was no way left for them to paſſe, but there valiantly fighting, were all together ſlaine, hauing both before & at the time of their death, made ſuch a ſlaughter of the Turks, as is hardly to be beleeued to haue beene poſſible for ſo few men to haue made. The Greekes alſo hardly laied to by the Turkes, and diſcouraged by the ſlaughter of the Latines, were euen vpon the point to haue fled: when as the Sultan, now almoſt in poſſeſſion of a certaine victorie, diſcrying the Greeke Emperour, and truſting to his owne great ſtrength, ſingled him out, being as ready as himſelfe to meet him; when as at the firſt encounter, the Sultan with his horſemans maſe gaue him ſuch a blow vpon the head, as might haue killed a bull, ſo that the Emperour therewith aſtonied, fell downe from his horſe: who yet euen in the fall comming
C ſomething againe vnto himſelfe, and although diſmounted, yet quickly recouering his feet, with his faulchion hoxed the hinder legs of the mare whereon the Sultan rid, being a moſt beautifull beaſt, and of a wonderfull height; which now ſuddenly faultring vnder him, and ſo the Sultan tumbling downe as from an high tower, before he could recouer himſelfe, had his head cut off by the Emperour: which by and by put vpon a launce, and ſo holden vp, with the ſight thereof ſo diſmaied the Turkes, that ſtrucken with a ſudden feare, they preſently fled, leauing the victorie vnto the Emperour, before more than halfe ouercome: who for all that conſidering his ſmall number, durſt no farther purſue them, but entring the citie, gaue thankes to God for ſo great a victorie. Vnto whom the Turkes ſhortly after ſent their embaſſadours, and ſo vpon ſuch reaſonable conditions as it pleaſed him to ſet downe, concluded with him a peace.

Iathanes the Sultan ſlaine by Theodorus Laſcaris the Greeke Emperour.

D *Alexius* himſelfe, author of theſe troubles, taken in this battell and carried to NICE, was by the Emperour his ſonne in law, notwithſtanding his euill deſerts, well intreated and vſed.

Whileſt the Latins thus ſpend thoſe forces in ſubuerting of the Greeke empire, which ſhould haue been imploied for the releeſe of the Chriſtians in SYRIA; and that the Greeke Emperour *Laſcaris* was thus troubled with the Turks; the affaires of the Chriſtians in SYRIA and the Holy Land, grew ſtill worſe and worſe. Whereof the Knights Hoſpitalers & Templars (the chiefe champions of the Chriſtian religion in thoſe countries) greatly blamed *Almericus* the King of CYPRVS, for that he being ſo neere at hand, & hauing married *Iſabella* the heire of that kingdome, & ſo in her right taken vpon him the title of the King of HIERVSALEM, gaue himſelfe wholy to pleaſure, doing nothing for the defence or releſe of the poore diſtreſſed Chriſtians, or
E repreſſing of the Turkes: who although they were yet in league with the Chriſtians there, and at ſome diſcord alſo among themſelues, yet ſpared not, as occaſion ſerued, ſtill more & more to encroach vpon them, & by building of new caſtles & fortreſſes, to cut them ſhort. Of all which things, the aforeſaid Knights by their embaſſadors certified *Innocentius* the Pope, requeſting his fatherly care for the remedie thereof, certifying him withall, that there was yet liuing one *Mary*, the daughter of the Marqueſſe of MONT-FERRAT, a Ladie of rare beautie, whom they as her tutors, had brought vp in hope of the kingdome; & now were ready to beſtow her vpon ſome ſuch man as he ſhould think worthy of her, together with the right ſhe had vnto the kingdome. Hereupon *Innocentius* diſcharging *Almericus* of the title of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, gaue it to *Iohn* Countie *de Brenne* of DAVLPHINE in FRANCE, a man of great fame and va-
F lour, then in armes with the other Latin Princes againſt the Greeks. Who now returning home, commended his earledome to his brother, and with ſuch power as he was able to make, ſetting forward, came firſt to VENICE, where he was royally entertained: and from thence ſailing to CONSTANTINOPLE, was with like honour receiued by the Emperor *Henry*, & ſo at length the fift of September arriued at PTOLEMAIS in SYRIA, where he was with the great reioycing and applauſe of the people, receiued as their King. And the laſt of the ſame moneth marrying

Iohn Brenne by Innocentius the Pope appointed King of Hieruſalem.

the aforesaid Lady *Mary* at TYRE, was there together with her with a great solemnitie crowned King in the yeere 1209: which *Almericus* the old King of CYPRVS hearing, shortly after died for griefe. Neither wanted this noble gentleman, thus honoured with the title of a kingdome, some that enuied at his promotion, and therefore commonly called him in derision, a King, but still with this addition, *Sans Ville*, that is to say, without a towne. G

1209

Now was the ten yeeres peace, before taken betwixt the Turkes and the Christians in SYRIA, at the comming ouer of *Simon* Marquesse of MONT-FERRAT (as is before declared) almost expired: which had not so much giuen to those poore remnants of the Christians some time of rest and breathing, as had the discord of the Turkes among themselues; which hauing by the space of nine yeeres continued betwixt *Noradin* and *Saphadin* for the soueraignte, was now by the death of *Saphadin* ended. *Noradin* contenting himselfe with the gouernment of ALEPPO, and *Corradin* and *Meledin*, the two sonnes of *Saphadin*, diuiding their fathers kingdome betwixt them, the one taking vnto himselfe DAMASCO and SYRIA, and the other the great kingdome of ÆGYPT, but all enemies vnto the Christians. H

Corradin and Meledin diuide their fathers kingdome betwixt them.

About this time also, or not long after, *Innocentius tertius*, yet Pope, summoned a generall Councell to LATERAN, whereunto besides a multitude of great Bishops and other reuerend Prelates, repaired also the honourable embassadours of most of the Princes of Christendome: vnto whom so assembled, among other things, was propounded the dangerous estate of the Christians in SYRIA, and how the same was by the helpe of the Christian Princes of the West to be relieued. Whereunto all the Fathers and Princes there assembled, easily gaue their consent: and thereupon were some appointed in euery countrey and prouince, to publish this decree of the Councell, for the relieue of the oppressed Christians, & to stirre vp the deuout people for the vndertaking of so religious a war. The chiefe furtherers of this sacred expedition (to be thus taken in hand against the Infidels) were the Bishops of GERMANIE, especially the three great Bishops of METS, CVLLEN, and TRIVERS, whose example mooued also many others, all which to rehearse were tedious. Out of FRANCE also were sent *Henry* the Countie of NIVERS, and one *Gualter*, the Kings great chamberlaine, with a great number of the gallant youths of FRANCE, and so out of diuers other places also: So that at length such a number of men were met together at diuers ports of the Adriaticke, as made vp a fleet of two hundred saile: which with a prosperous wind carried ouer into SYRIA, arriued in safetie at PTOLEMAIS, the chiefe citie of the Christians, now that HIERVSALEM was lost. After whom followed also *Andrew*, King of HVNGARIE, long before bound both by his fathers commandement and his owne promise, for the vndertaking of that sacred expedition: with whom came also *Lewis* Duke of BAVARIA, and *Leopold* Duke of AVSTRIA, with their forces all well appointed: vnto whom also, *Iohn* King of HIERVSALEM ioyned himselfe with his power. Great hope & expectation there was of some great matter to haue beene done, now that so great forces of the Christians were thus met together. Who setting forward from PTOLEMAIS, and the first day marching into GALILEE, by the way met with certaine companies of the Turks, whom they easily ouerthrew and put to flight. The next day they came to the riuer of IORDAN, where they also distressed certain of the Turks garrisons. There the King of HVNGARIE bathing himselfe in the riuer, forthwith (as one discharged of his vow & promise) returned with all his power vnto PTOLEMAIS, & so frõ thence backe again into his country, all the rest of the armie of the Christians crying out vnto him to the contrary: who after the Kings departure stil marching on, came to the mount THABOR. But shortly after, winter now comming on, and many of their cattell dying for cold and want of meat, they returned some to PTOLEMAIS, some to TYRE, and there wintred. King *Iohn* and the Duke of AVSTRIA in the meane time tooke a castle betwixt CESAREA & CAIPHA, called *The castle of Pilgrims*, from whence they much troubled the Barbarians thereabouts all that winter. Vpon the appearance of the Spring, and the armie againe met together, it was thought best by all the great commanders, that for so much as the kingdome of ÆGYPT was the chiefe maintenance of the Mahometan superstition against the Christians in those parts, and that so long as it stood vpright, they should not be able to doe any great matter in SYRIA, to attempt the conquest thereof, as an exploit best beseeming their valour, and so great preparations: for that that kingdome being once subdued, the citie of HIERVSALEM, with al the land of PALESTINE, would of themselues without more adoe yeeld vnto them. And for as much as the famous citie of DAMIATA, called in ancient time PELVSIVM, not much inferiour to ALEXANDRIA, I K L M

A ANDRIA, was the first and moſt commodious port for their purpoſe, as neereſt vnto SYRIA; and that by the taking thereof, they ſhould haue a faire entrance into the great riuer NILVS, with the command of a moſt rich and pleaſant countrey about it: they reſolued there to begin the warre: and thereupon embarking themſelues with all things neceſſary for ſo great an enterpriſe at PTOLEMAIS, and carried with a faire winde, they in ſhort time arriued at the deſired port. Now that rich and ancient citie, the key of that ſide of the kingdome, ſtood about a mile from the ſea, and ſomewhat diſtant alſo from the great riuer, enuironed with a nauigable ditch or cut, drawne out of the NILE, in manner of an Iſland as a man commeth from SYRIA by land; and compaſſed about with three ſtrong ſtone wals, the worke of the good Emperour B *Ælius Pertinax*, and of him (as ſome affirme) called alſo ÆLIOPOLIS. At the mouth of this cut, as you ſhould enter vnto the citie, ſtood a ſtrong watch-tower for the defence thereof, and round about it a number of faire houſes in manner of a prettie towne entrenched. Beſide that, for the more ſafetie thereof, the ſame cut was barred with a great ſtrong iron chaine, in ſuch ſort as that it was not poſſible for any ſhip, without breaking of the ſame, to enter. The Chriſtians with their fleet entring the mouth of the riuer, and comming to this cut, by great ſtrength brake the chaine: but thinking ſo to haue made their paſſage vnto the citie, they found a greater ſtay at the watch-tower, which ſtrongly built of ſquare ſtone, & well ſtored with warlike engines of all ſorts, & a good garriſon of valiant ſouldiers, ſtaied their further paſſage, ouerwhelming them as they approched, with ſhot, fire, ſtones, timber, & ſuch like, before prouided for that purpoſe.

The ſituation of Damiata in Aegypt.

C The Chriſtians (after the manner of the fight of that time) had vpon certaine flat veſſels built certaine high towers of wood for the aſſailing of the watch-tower; in the approching whereof, they were not only troubled with the enemie, but with the tumult and ſtir of their owne people alſo; ſome crying that they ſhould yet draw neerer vnto the tower; otherſome crying out as faſt, to haue the bridges caſt out, thereby to enter: and the enemie likewiſe with much clamour encouraging one another for the repulſing of the Chriſtians. So the ſouldiers hindred the mariners to doe their buſineſſe, and the mariners the ſouldiers. In the midſt of this hurly burly and tumult, one of the woodden towers ſurmounting the reſt in height, ouercharged with the preſſe of men, fell, and in falling made ſuch a noiſe, as if heauen it ſelfe had fallen, where in a moment (as it were) was preſently to be ſeene a moſt heauie ſpectacle: many ouerwhelmed with the fal-
D ling of the tower, lay there cruſhed to death; ſome grieuouſly hurt, and yet not dead, lay oppreſſed with the timber, crying out for helpe; others bruiſed or hurt, but not ouerwhelmed, for feare of further harme, leapt ſome into the NILE, ſome aboord the other ſhips neere by, ſome crying out of his arme, ſome of his leg, ſome of his head or other part of his bodie, to the great diſcomfiture of the reſt, in ſo much that the aſſault was for that time giuen ouer.

King *Iohn* (as well for his valour, as for the title of the King of HIERVSALEM, choſen Generall of the armie) after he had appeaſed this tumult, and giuen the charge of them that were maimed or hurt, vnto skilfull ſurgeons, & buried the bodies of ſuch as were found drowned or ouerwhelmed; with cheerefull ſpeech encouraged the reſt of his ſouldiers, perſwading them not to be diſcouraged with the accident of the fall of a tower, which was neither to be im-
E puted to their cowardiſe, or the valour of the enemie, but only to the chance of warre.

In the meane time *Meledin* the Ægyptian Sultan, had with a great armie encamped himſelfe within the ſight of DAMIATA, thereby to encourage the beſieged, and to fill them with hope of reliefe; ſending them oftentimes by the riuer, newes, meſſages, victuals, ſouldiers, armour, and whatſoeuer elſe they wanted. The chiefe cauſe of his ſtaying there, was to take occaſion for the ſurpriſing of the Chriſtians, if any ſhould be offered, either by chance or their owne negligence. Euery day ſome skirmiſh or other paſſed betwixt our men & the Barbarians, our men ſtill carrying away the victorie: yet could theſe Barbarians neither be drawne forth vnto battell, neither could our men keepe them from victuals; for as much as they had the riuer of NILE at command, whereby victuals were out of the vpper part of ÆGYPT in great abundance con-
F ueighed into the Sultans campe: whereas on the contrary part, the ſame riuer diuiding it ſelfe into many armes, in ſome places here and there ouerflowing, in another cut into many ditches and channels, and in ſome other pent vp by wals & cauſies, gaue vnto our men a thouſand diſpleaſures. And therefore ſeeing that the Sultan would neither giue nor accept of battell, they reſolued againe to lay ſiege to the tower. Wherefore hauing with great cunning vpon two ſhips made faſt together, framed a tower of moſt ſtrong timber, equall in height vnto the watch-

tower, they brought the ſame neere vnto the Turks tower, and the ſuburbs adioyning thereun- G
to, after which followed alſo all the reſt of the fleet well appointed for the aſſault. At which time all the reſt of the armie at land, ſtood in battell ready ranged, as well to diſcourage them of the towne, as that the Sultan ſhould not be able to helpe them without the hazarding of battell. There began a fierce and cruell aſſault; they of the ſuburbs right valiantly defending themſelues againſt their enemies. Within theſe ſuburbs, the tower, and the trenches, dwelt not only Ægyptians, (the naturall inhabitants of the countrey) but alſo Arabians, Perſians, Syrians, Indians, Moores, and Æthiopians, who were there reſiant, for that, that citie was a publike mart whereunto all kinde of merchandize were brought from farre out of the remoteſt parts of the world, and ſo from thence in like manner tranſported alſo: which encouraged them the more to fight H
for the defence of their liues and goods, the two things which men hold moſt deare: and in like ſort animated our men vnto the aſſault, as well in the quarrell of the Chriſtian religion, as to enrich themſelues with the ſpoile of thoſe rich nations. The Chriſtians with their ſhips drew as neere as poſſibly they could vnto the land, to the intent that vpon the banke of the riuer, they might come to fight hand to hand, and man to man, and ſo come cloſe vnto their enemies. But the Barbarians on the other ſide, ſought by ſhot and all other meanes they could to keepe them farther off, and ſo from landing.

A deſperate act of a Chriſtian.

That which moſt feared the Ægyptians, was that as one of our ſhips by chance ran a ground vpon that ſide of the riuer where the enemie lay, and being boorded by the enemie, thronging in as faſt as he could, and there making a cruell ſlaughter, one of the Chriſtian ſouldiers going I
downe vnder the hatches, made there a great hole, whereby the water abundantly comming in, ſunke the ſhip before the enemie was aware, and ſo drowned a great number of the Ægyptians, together with the Chriſtians. At which time alſo the high tower built vpon the two ſhips, ioyning now cloſe vnto the watch-tower, and mating the ſame, diſmaied the defendants with the ſtrangeneſſe thereof, as with a miracle, in ſuch ſort, that they ſtrucken with a great feare, as now being to fight with a ſtrange, hardie, and cruell kinde of men, without any great reſiſtance forſooke the tower and fled. The watch-tower thus taken, and they that ſhould haue defended the ſame, ſome ſlaine, and ſome fled: they in the ſuburbs diſcouraged, and flying away, were many of them wounded from aboue out of the watch-tower, but now gained by the Chriſtians. At which time alſo the other ſhips landed the ſouldiers, who entring the ſuburbs, put all they found K
there to the ſword, euen vnto the laſt man. There was found great abundance of victuals, but farre greater ſtore of riches, in ſo much that it ſeemed to haue beene the ſpoile of ARABIA, PERSIA, and the rich INDIES.

Damiata in vain aſſaulted.

Now yet remained the ſtrong towne of DAMIATA, which was forthwith aſſaulted by the Chriſtians, more to proue if in that heat and ſudden feare it would be yeelded, than for any hope they had by force to win it. But hauing done what they could both by ſcaling & by other engines, they gained nothing but hard blowes and wounds, and ſo retired. Neuertheleſſe, they lodged themſelues in the ſuburbs, and laied a great part of the armie betwixt the Sultan and the beſieged citie, to the intent that no ſupplie or victuals ſhould be brought vnto it; yet both the enemie oftentimes attempted to haue entred the citie, and the beſieged to haue ſallied out, but L
both the one and the other were letted to doe what they would haue done, and that not without the great loſſe of their men: for why, the towne was now on euery ſide ſo incloſed by the Chriſtians, as that no man could enter in or out thereof. Whileſt the Chriſtians thus lay at the ſiege, it fortuned that the riuer of NILE ſwelling with a great Eaſterne winde, riſe aboue the banks, and ſo ouerflowed the places wherein the Chriſtians lay, that they could keepe nothing drie, and that moſt part of their victuals were therewith ſpoiled. With which vnſeaſonable riſing of the riuer the Chriſtians not a little troubled, by commandement of *Pelagius* the Popes Legate, gaue themſelues to faſting and praier, by the ſpace of three dayes. But the winde falling the fourth day, and the riuer againe decreaſing, they gaue themſelues more earneſtly to praier than before, thanking the Almightie, that as he had put them in a great feare, ſo he had in mer- M
cie againe comforted them.

Now with long lying began victuals to grow ſcant in the Sultans campe, ſo that he was glad to ſend away halfe of his armie vp againe into the countrey of CAIRE. At which time alſo it chanced (as if it had beene in an extreme and common danger of the Mahometan ſuperſtition) that embaſſadors ſent from *Corradin* Sultan of DAMASCO and HIERVSALEM, vnto the

Princes

A Princes of the Christian armie, came to sue for peace, both for himselfe and his brother the Ægyptian Sultan; promising in regard thereof againe to restore vnto them the Holy Crosse, and whatsoeuer else himselfe, his father, or Sultan *Saladin* had before taken from them: of which their offer, most part of the armie liked well, saying, That they had therefore taken vp armes for the recouerie of that which had beene before gotten, and gained by the valour of the worthie Christian captaines, and had of late beene taken from them; and to blot out the ignominie of the losse thereof, to the end it should not be said, that they could not leaue whole and entire vnto their children, what their fathers had got, when they had the keeping thereof; neither hauing lost it, be able againe to recouer it: that all these things being restored, there rested not any
B further occasion of warre, or let to stay them as most victorious conquerours to returne home. Neuertheless *Pelagius*, Pope *Honorius* his Legate (for *Innocentius* in the preparation of the wars was before dead at PELVSIVM) with King *Iohn*, the masters of the Knights Hospitallers and Templars, the Duke of AVSTRIA, and the Germaines, were of opinion to the contrary: alleaging, That this sacred warre was vndertaken generally against the Infidels, and for religions sake against the Mahometan superstition, whereof the kingdome of ÆGYPT was the chiefe seat and stay; and that therefore they ought especially to impugne that. Which perswasion, together with the authoritie of the perswaders, so preuailed, that the Sultans large offers were reiected, and so the embassadours dispatched without any thing obtained of that they came for. Whereupon *Corradin* fearing that the Christians would at length come to HIERVSALEM, as
C the place they most desired; and doubting how he should be able to defend the same, forthwith rased the wals thereof, and the more to deface it, ouerthrew and pluckt downe most of the goodly houses, and other stately buildings therein, sparing yet the Tower of *Dauid*, and the Holy Sepulchre; which he is said to haue done at the humble request and intercession of the Christians of diuers countries, which yet dwelt there mixt with the Turks and Sarasins.

A faire offer euill refused.

Whilest the Christians thus lay at the siege of DAMIATA, the plague began to arise in the campe, whereof so many died, that it began to repent the great commanders of the armie that they had so much hearkened to the perswasion of the Legate (a man making no profession of armes) rather than to the sound aduice of others, who by long experience taught the sudden alteration of matters of warre, would willingly haue accepted of the Sultans large offers: so be-
D gan *Pelagius* the Legate to be generally euill spoken of. There were now alreadie six moneths past since the beginning of the siege, and the Sultan lying in sight had not with him so great an armie as before, but only the flower & choice of his people, hauing (as we haue before said) for want of victuals sent away the rest vp againe into the country. Now it fortuned that the Christians, as men weary of the long siege, stood not so carefully vpon their guard, with watch & ward, as before, but gaue themselues more to ease: which the Sultan perceiuing, drew neerer vnto the town, in hope vnder the couert of the silent night, to send new supplies vnto the besieged; which companies by him appointed for that seruice, couragiously set forward, in hope to haue deceiued the Christian sentinels, & so indeed came neere vnto the towne vnseene or discouered. And now the foremost of those companies were alreadie entred the towne; when the Christians per-
E ceiuing them, and raising an alarme, put themselues in armes, & so furiously assailed the hindermost of them, and in such sort, that they which were before within, and those that were but now entred, fearing lest the enemie in that hurly burly should pell mell enter in with the rest, shut them out of the gates, exposed to the butcherie, where they were all presently cut in peeces.

Succours sent vnto the besieged.

The Christians encouraged with this victorie, the next day leauing a great part of the armie before the towne to continue the siege, presented themselues before the Sultans campe to giue him battell: who for all that well considering that the losse of a battell might endanger the whole state of his kingdome, would by no meanes be drawne out of his trenches, but lay still; wherewith the Christians, especially the Frenchmen (in their first charge naturally furious) greatly encouraged, attempted to haue forcibly entred their rampiers, but not with successe
F answerable to their courage. For the Ægyptians perceiuing the small number of their enemies, notably repulsed them, & in fine enforced them to retire, hauing lost *Gualter* one of their chiefe commanders, with diuers others: yea King *Iohn* in assailing the campe, lost many of his men, and grieuously burnt in his face, hardly escaped himselfe with life. After which discomfiture, they resolued, not to thinke of any thing else but of the siege, and aboue all things to prouide that no succours should be brought vnto the towne. They in the citie more straitly beset and

besieged

beſieged than before, and now brought vnto extreme neceſſitie and famine, and out of all hope of reliefe, aſſembled themſelues to conſult of their affaires, and what were beſt for them to doe in ſo dangerous a ſtate: ſome one or other of them by night or otherwiſe ſecretly flying into the campe. And that more was, the citie had vndoubtedly beene yeelded by the greater part, had not the chiefe commanders within mured vp the gates, and commanded that none of the inhabitants vpon paine of death ſhould come vpon the wals, or rampiers, to the intent they ſhould not get out, or caſt themſelues from aboue ouer the wals into the ditches. The chiefe commanders and captaines went here and there vp and downe the citie, to ſearch and view all things, eſpecially the ſhops and ſtorehouſes, where finding ſmall ſtore of wheat, they diuided it in ſmall portions among themſelues: the common people inforced with want, eat whatſoeuer came to hand, were it lawfull or vnlawfull, or forbidden by their ſuperſtition, wholſome or vnwholſome, good or bad, ſalt or freſh, roſted or raw; and ſo prolonged their liues with ſuch things as they could finde. Now the beſieged, not able to endure theſe extremities of the famine (being the paſſion that moſt grieuouſly and often troubleth mankinde) they were alſo attached with the wrath of God: for the plague (the furie whereof had before attainted the campe of the Chriſtians, and afterward quite ceaſed) was now got into the citie, where it made a great ſlaughter: which mortalitie day by day in ſuch ſort increaſed, that men were not onely now no more to be found, to viſit, comfort, ſuccour, ſerue, and helpe the ſicke; but were wanting alſo to burie them, to draw them out of their beds and houſes, and to ſeparate the liuing from the dead: the ſtreets and houſes full of dead bodies, gaue forth a moſt horrible ſtinke, with a moſt grieuous and infectious aire: there was not any place cleare from the plague, or any man that could boaſt that he had not beene attainted therewith, or the feare thereof; and remedie was there none. The rage and furie of theſe two deuourers, the famine, and plague, deuoured them without number, chuſing rather ſo to die, than to ſubmit themſelues vnto their enemies; or to humble themſelues ſo low, as to craue their fauour. That they within were thus pinched with famine, the Chriſtians knew: but that the plague ſo raged among them, they knew not. Now the Chriſtians had of purpoſe caſt vp certaine trenches and baricadoes, for the keeping in of ſuch as the famine ſhould enforce to come out of the towne; thinking that the beſieged, to eaſe their wants, would thruſt the baſer ſort of the people and vnprofitable mouthes out of the citie, vnto whom the Chriſtians meant not to giue any paſſage: for they hauing long before ſo ſtraitly enuironed the citie, as that no reliefe could be brought vnto it, lay now ſtill expecting when the beſieged, enforced by neceſſitie, ſhould yeeld themſelues; and ſo without loſſe of any man, to become maſters of ſo ſtrong and rich a towne. It was now more than a yeere that the Chriſtians had thus lien at the ſiege of DAMIATA, when as certaine of the ſouldiers vpon a brauerie aduentured with a few ſcaling ladders to mount the wall: in which doing, finding no reſiſtance, and withall hearing ſo great ſilence, as if there had beene no bodie within the citie, they ſtood ſtill a great while hearkening, but ſeeing that dumbe ſilence ſtill to continue, they returned vnto the campe, giuing the captaines to vnderſtand how the matter ſtood; who at the firſt thought it to be ſome policie and fineneſſe of the deceitfull enemie: yet afterward they thought it good to aduenture certaine men, to proue their fortune, and to cauſe certaine companies well appointed to ſcale one of the bulwarks of the citie, in ſuch ſort, as if they ſhould haue gone againſt a puiſſant enemie, that had had the power to reſiſt them. And hereupon were ſcaling ladders brought forth, and all things made readie, as for a great aſſault. So the Chriſtians couragiouſly mounting the ladders, without reſiſtance tooke the bulwarke. But as they were entring farther into the towne, a ſmall companie of the Turks and Barbarians (all the ſouldiers that the furie of the plague had left, and they alſo with the famine and infection of the aire very weake and feeble) met them, and began to make ſome ſmall reſiſtance, but to no purpoſe, being forthwith all cut in pieces. Which done, the matter wherewith the gates of the citie were mured, was preſently remoued, the gates ſet open, and the Chriſtians with enſignes diſplaied let in. But euen at the very entring in at the gates, they were attainted with a moſt grieuous and horrible ſtinke, they ſaw a faire citie diſpeopled, and that which was moſt fearefull to behold, the ſtreets couered with bodies of the dead, and ſuch a dreadfull deſolation, as might moue euen the enemie himſelfe to compaſſion. The Chriſtians were entred, as men appointed to haue done a great execution, and to haue made the channels run with bloud, as men iuſtly prouoked with the long ſiege and the paines they had endured; they had their ſwords and weapons in their hands,

Damiata without reſiſtance taken by the Chriſtians.

Damiata vnpeopled by the plague.

A hands, but found none againſt whom to vſe them: for a man could not enter into any houſe, or goe into any ſtreet, but he muſt paſſe ouer the dead, or others which being not yet altogether dead, were miſerably drawing toward their end. Of ſeuentie thouſand perſons in the citie, were not found aboue three thouſand aliue, and thoſe for the moſt part yet young children: for all the reſt were dead, taken away either with the ſword, famine, or the plague; the greateſt part whereof lay yet ſtinking aboue the ground vnburied. Theſe three thouſand that were left, were ſo maigre and poore, that pitie it was to behold them: vnto whom their liues were granted, vpon condition that they ſhould make cleane the citie, and burie the dead, which they were three moneths in doing.

B Thus was DAMIATA taken by the Chriſtians the fift day of Nouember, in the yeere 1221, after it had beene more than a yeere by them beſieged. The ſpoile there taken was great, for beſides the rich marchandiſe brought thither from farre, was found great ſtore of gold, ſiluer, and precious ſtones. The Chriſtians thus enriched, and the citie made cleane, ſtaied there more than a yeere after, as in a Colonie wherein they had beene willing to dwell, forgetfull of their owne countrey. In the beginning of theſe warres, the Princes of the armie had with one conſent agreed, That whatſoeuer citie or territorie ſhould by them be taken from the Turkes or Infidels, ſhould be giuen vnto the King of HIERVSALEM, whom after the departure of the King of HVNGARIE, they had made Generall of the whole armie. But now that the citie was taken, *Pelagius* the legat, pretending, That by the vertue of his legation, it belonged vnto him to diſ- 1221

C poſe of all things taken in that ſacred warre, (as a man not vnmindfull of his maſter) adiudged the citie from thenceforth to belong vnto the See of ROME. With which indignitie & wrong, the King inwardly diſcontented, (and yet for the authoritie of the legat, diſſembling the matter) withdrew himſelfe, and ſo retired to PTOLEMAIS.

The yeere following, *Pelagius* wearie to ſee the armes of the Chriſtians to corrupt with ruſt, & nothing doing: conſidering the deſire and hope he had vtterly to haue ruinated the Infidels, together with their ſuperſtition, commanded, That euery man ſhould againe take vp armes for the proſecuting of this warre againſt the Sultan, and the beſieging of CAIRE. But for all that, when he had commanded what he would, or could, the ſouldiers little regarding his command, with one voice cried out, that they would not be commanded by any, but by the King of HIE- 1222

D RVSALEM only. So that the legat, enforced by the ſouldiers, was glad to ſend vnto the King, to requeſt him to returne againe vnto DAMIATA, and to take vpon him the charge for the managing of that warre, taken in hand for the defence of the Chriſtian Religion: who for all that excuſed himſelfe from ſo doing, one while by his owne particular affaires, another while by his owne indiſpoſition: yet in fine, preſſed and ouercome with the praiers and requeſts of the other Latine Princes, hee returned to DAMIATA, at the ſelfe ſame time that the Duke of BAVARIA arriued there with a goodly companie of braue men, brought thither out of his owne countrey, after he had beene now from thence ten moneths abſent.

Pelagius the Legat perſwadeth the Princes of the Chriſtian armie to proceed for the conqueſt of Aegypt.

The legat deſirous of the proſecution of this warre, requeſted and vrged the King, with the reſt of the Princes and great commanders, without delay to take the field, telling them, That the

E enterpriſe of the holy warre was growne old, and cold, by thoſe long delaies and protracting of the time: & that they which kept wars ſo farre from home, ought to make haſt to force the enemie, to take all occaſions, to loſe no time, but euer to be doing, and to proue all things for the annoying of the enemie: and that that was the way, whereby the Worthies of ancient times, both Kings and Emperours, had gained vnto themſelues empires, glorie, greatneſſe, & wealth: That it was for them that were inuaded and aſſailed, vpon whoſe liues depended the ſafetie of their country, their wiues, their children, and goods, to delay & prolong the time as they might, to delude the enemie, to fruſtrate his deſignes, to defeat his attempts, and with delaies to dallie him off, vntill that hauing thereby weakned his forces, he ſhould together with his courage loſe alſo his hope: CAIRE (he ſaid) to be indeed a great citie, but yet that the greateſt cities that euer

F were, had by the wars become great deſarts, forced by the power of their puiſſant and ſpeedie enemies: & that great empires, as were thoſe of the Sultans, ought not to be inuaded or aſſailed by any forrain force, if they were not at the firſt onſet ouerthrown or at leaſtwiſe ſo weakned, as that they could not afterwards lift vp their heads or recouer themſelues; for otherwiſe, that they which had prepared a deſtruction for others, ſhould fall into the ſame themſelues: That it behooued either not to haue attempted or aſſailed ÆGYPT at all; or elſe now, after it had beene

once

once aſſailed, not ſo to giue it ouer before it were conquered. The King of HIERVSALEM, G
whether it were that he were pricked with the griefe, that being called the King of the holy land, he could not haue the citie of DAMIATA (vnder the leading and conduct won by the Chriſtians come to the ſacred warre) giuen vnto him by the Legate, or that he had before proued that the higher countrey of ÆGYPT was not without great and manifeſt danger to be attempted; ſaid, that he would not in any caſe goe: alleaging that honorable and ſacred warre to haue been taken in hand, only for the recouerie of the Holy Land, and not for the winning of MEMPHIS, BABYLON, or THEBES in ÆGYPT; which after they were taken, would not for any long time continue in their fidelitie or allegeance, and could not poſſibly be kept by force: whereas SYRIA, by *Godfrey* of BVILLON and the other great Princes his aſſociats, entred into, con- H
quered & poſſeſſed; and ſince his time, by diuers other Chriſtian Kings & Princes holden, was in right their owne: And that therfore he greatly commended the forwardneſſe, the diligence, the courage, the deſire, and whatſoeuer thing elſe *Pelagius* commended: but that he ought to employ the ſame in SYRIA, and not there where no need was, or from whence no profit was to be drawne or expected. Neuertheleſſe the Legat wedded to his owne opinion, by the power of his authoritie, commanded the King of HIERVSALEM, the Duke of BAVARIA, with the reſt of the great commanders & captaines, to take vp their armes, and to get them into the field vpon the expedition by him appointed againſt the Sultan; threatning the pain of the high ſentence of excommunication againſt him or them, that would ſhew themſelues backward or vnwilling to doe what he had commanded. So as it were enforced by the Legat, they began with I
euill will and worſe ſpeed, to ſet forward in Auguſt, in the very hotteſt time of the yeere. At which time the Sultan beholding the great armie of the Chriſtians, in number about ſeuentie thouſand, retired as a man afraid, into ſuch places as he thought beſt, farther off: which the Legat ſeeing (as one not acquainted with the feats of war) reioyced greatly, as if the victorie had been already more than halfe gained; commending vnto the heauens them that he ſaw couragiouſly marching forward, ſaying, That fortune alwayes fauoured the valiant, and that vnto cowards all things fell ſtill out to the worſt. By the way the Chriſtians ſeized vpon a bridge, which the enemie had made ouer the NILE, and cut in pieces ſuch companies as were left for the keeping thereof. So marching on, they drew neere vnto CAIRE, and there, in the ſight of that great and rich citie, encamped: where running vp & downe, the more to terrifie them of the citie, prouo- K
ked them to battell, vpbraiding vnto them their lazines, their cowardiſe, & ſloth, brauing them (if they were men) to come out: Yet for all that, they would not ſo do, but keeping themſelues cloſe and couert within the citie, let them alone to bragge & boaſt at their owne pleaſure. This ſiege continued long, of purpoſe protracted ſtill from day to day by them of the citie: and the great opinion of the Chriſtians had of their owne valour, with the ſmall regard they had of their enemies, made them ſo proud and careleſſe, that they remembred no more to take good care of the warre, of their dutie, their watch, or their ſentinels: their confidence was in their owne valour and good fortune, not conſidering or remembring that they were come into ÆGYPT, and that they had put themſelues within the trenches, ſallies, channels and cuts, of a deceitfull riuer, which not only brought victuals vnto their enemies, but alſo fortified them; who by how much L
they were the leſſe valiant, and leſſe vnderſtood of the art of war, the more they vſed of craft and ſubtiltie for the preſeruing of themſelues. So the craftie enemies drew the Chriſtians out at length, abuſing them with many delaies & deceits; making ſemblance of great feare, to make themſelues the leſſe to be feared; and more contemptible in their doings, to the end that they knowing the paſſages & ſtraights of the country, and reſeruing themſelues vnto the occaſions & aduantages both of the time, and of their enemies, might circumuent them and entrap them at ſuch time as they leaſt feared any ſuch matter. The Chriſtians, at all aduenture had encamped themſelues in a low ground, within the banks and cauſies of that fennie countrey, vnder the couert therof, thinking themſelues ſafe as in their trenches, againſt all ſudden ſallies or attempts of their enemies. But theſe places wherein they lay, were ſoft and durtie, for ſo much as the coun- M
try people vſed at their pleaſure to water them by channels & ſluces out of the riuer of NILE: which now pluckt vp and opened, the riuer began to riſe and ouerflow all. Then too late they perceiued themſelues take as in a grin, without power to defend themſelues, or to make any reſiſtance, or by any other meanes to ſhew their valour. So the riuer ſtill ariſing and ouerflowing, gaue vnto the Turkes and Ægyptians good hope of their wars, and of a victorie more deſired

The Chriſtians entrapped within the ſluces of the riuer Nile.

than

A than hoped for ouer a warlike and victorious people. All the ground where the Christians lay encamped, was couered with water, so high that the victuals were corrupted, and no place left for a man to stand or lie drie in.

Now at the same time the Ægyptians had taken the high places, with the passages vpon the wals and banks in that drowned countrey, to the intent that the Christians should not be able to retire or to saue themselues out of the bogs and marishes couered ouer with water. So was their rash valour & presumptuous confidence in themselues, exposed vnto the enemies shot and furie; and when they would by force haue defended themselues, their hardinesse was ouercome by the craftie subtiltie of the weake enemie. Then began euery man to crie out against *Pelagius*
B the Legat, accusing, condemning, and railing at him: the King himselfe they blamed not, for that he had done his dutie, in dissuading of this expedition, and was contrary to his good liking himselfe drawne into this warre, the charge whereof he had not without great intreatie taken vpon him: neither might he with his credit well complaine of this misfortune, lest in so doing, he might seeme to haue had no comfort in himselfe. But as for the Legate, what counsell could he then giue, what counsell could he then take for himselfe? They of Venice, Pisa, and Genva, left at Damiata, were indeed strong at sea, but how could they come to relieue him at Caire? And how, or by what forces could the Christians breake out of the banks & sluces of the cuts and channels; which winding in and out with a thousand inextricable turnings, inclosed them, beset also on euery side with the victorious enemie? After they had been thus coupt
C vp, & enuironed with the waters three dayes, you might haue seene the poore souldiers in euery place fall downe dead for want of food and sleepe, and so perish in the water; the like miserable kinde of death, the rest were also in short time after to expect: other helpe was there none but to yeeld vnto necessitie, and to accept of such conditions as it should please the proud enemie to propound. Now the Sultan desired not so much their liues, as the libertie of his country: and therefore required to haue the citie of Damiata againe restored vnto him, and all things else in such sort as was before the besieging thereof: and so the Christians without more adoe to depart his countrey. Hard conditions, if a man respect the hope whereupon the Christians had vndertaken this war, and were so come into Ægypt, with the toile by them there endured: but vnto him that will but enter into the consideration of mens affaires, and especially in martiall
D matters, it will seeme but an accident to be yeelded vnto, the like whereof hath oftentimes happned vnto the greatest men of the world. These conditions (such as they were) were by the distressed Christians accepted of. But when they were brought to Damiata, and there propounded vnto the Christians there left, a great contention began to arise among them: some said that they would not accept of them, or surrender the towne, which being kept would be a stay for all the affaires of the Christians in the East, and a most commodious place for them to haue recourse vnto; but being restored and lost, carried away with it all the hope of the Christians, and that therefore it were better to endure all extremities, than to receiue such dishonourable and hurtfull a peace. Others of the contrary opinion said, That they ought not to forsake them that were in danger before Caire, nor to expose them vnto the butcherie, but to haue a Christian
E compassion of so many thousands of soules as there lay distressed, seeing they might be saued by the surrendrie of that one towne: Townes (they said) consisted of the number of men, and not men of the enclosures of wals and ditches. They that were of this opinion, for the deliuering vp of the towne, seeing the other obstinatly set downe to the contrary, withdrawing themselues from the counsell, presently tooke vp armes, & by force entred the houses of them that were of contrary opinion, and tooke from them their weapons, by that means & perforce to constraine them to yeeld to their desire. As soone as they that lay before Caire (almost drowned in the waters) vnderstood of this diffention at Damiata about the deliuerie of the towne, they sent them word, that if they would not yeeld the towne vnto the Sultan, they would forthwith send to Ptolemais, which would not faile to doe what should be commanded, to haue it in stead of
F Damiata surrendred vnto the Ægyptians. So was Damiata againe yeelded vnto the Infidels, and so great labours of the Christians taken at the siege & winning thereof, all lost. That which made the indignitie thereof more tolerable, was that *Meledin* the Sultan, hauing without bloudshed gained so great a victorie, did neither by word or deed any thing in despight or reproch of the Christians, but vsed them with all courtesie, relieuing them also with victuals and such other things as they wanted, and by faithfull guides conducting them in safetie out of the countrey.

The miserie of the Christians in the drowned land.

In

In like manner alſo, *Corradin* his brother, Sultan of DAMASCO, made truce with the Latines G
for eight yeeres. Whereupon the King of HIERVSALEM went ouer into ITALIE, and there by
the perſwaſion of *Honorius* the Pope, his wife being now dead, gaue his daughter *Yolande* (now
crowned Queene of HIERVSALEM in the right of her mother) in marriage to *Fredericke* King
of SICILIA, and Emperor of the Latines, the rather thereby to ſtirre him vp for the taking in
hand of the ſacred warre. Euer ſince which time, he and the Kings of SICILIA his ſucceſſors
haue beene called Kings of HIERVSALEM, albeit that they haue euill proſecuted that their
pretended right and title, as ſtill buſied in more prophane wars againſt other Chriſtian Princes.
King *Iohn* afterwards departing from ROME for FRANCE, was by the way honourably enter-
tained at PISA: but arriuing at the French court, he found *Philip* the French King deſperately H
ſicke, who by his laſt will and teſtament gaue vnto the Knights Hoſpitallers & Templars, ſixtie
thouſand crownes for the maintenance of their wars againſt the Infidels; which money was to
their vſe afterward paid vnto King *Iohn*. Who ſhortly after to diſcharge himſelfe of a vow he
had made, to viſit the pilgrimage at COMPOSTELLA, going into SPAINE, by the way married
Berengaria, the King of CASTILE his daughter: and there ſtaying a great while, returned againe
into FRANCE, where he lay long expecting the ſetting forward of the Emperour *Frederick* his
ſonne in law, for the recouerie of his wiues right vnto the kingdome of HIERVSALEM; which
although he ſolemnly vowed at ſuch time as he with all princely magnificence married the ſaid
Lady at ROME, yet otherwiſe letted with troubles neerer home, performed not the ſame, vntill
almoſt ſeuen yeeres after: all which time the Chriſtians in SYRIA enioying the fruit of the late I
concluded peace for eight yeeres, liued in great reſt and quietneſſe; where, ſo leauing them, vn-
till the ariſing of new troubles, let vs in the meane time againe returne vnto the troubled affaires
of the Turks, Greekes, and Latines, at CONSTANTINOPLE, and in the leſſer ASIA.

The death of Henry Emperour of Conſtantinople.

Henry the ſecond Emperour of the Latines at CONSTANTINOPLE, after he had (as is afore-
ſaid) with much adoe repreſſed the furie of the Bulgarians and Scythes, his barbarous enemies,
and ſo giuen peace vnto the miſerable countrey of THRACIA, died, hauing raigned a moſt trou-
bleſome raigne, about the ſpace of eleuen yeeres. After whom ſucceeded *Peter*, Countie of
AVSSERRE, his ſonne in law, third Emperour of the Latines in CONSTANTINOPLE: who in the
beginning of his empire willing to gratifie the Venetians, and to reuenge himſelfe of *Theodorus*
Angelus, a great Prince of EPIRVS, competitor of his empire, beſieged him in DIRRACHIVM; K
which ſtrong citie, the ſaid *Theodorus* had but a little before ſurpriſed, belonging to the Vene-
tian ſeignorie. At which ſiege *Peter* the Emperour lying, was ſo cunningly by the wilie Greeke
vſed, that a peace was vpon moſt honorable conditions betwixt them concluded, and a familiar
kinde of friendſhip ioyned. Inſomuch, that the Emperour at his requeſt, not well aduiſed, came
vnto him as his gueſt: who now of his enemie become his hoſt, entertained him with all the
formalities that faigned friendſhip could deuiſe. But hauing him now in his power, and fearing
no harme, regarding neither the lawes of fidelitie or hoſpitalitie, he moſt traiterouſly ſlew him,
as he was yet in the middeſt of his banquet. Of whoſe end, ſome others yet otherwiſe report, as
that he ſhould by the ſame *Theodorus* haue bin intercepted about the pleaſant woods of TEMPE
in THESSALIA, as he was trauelling from ROME to CONSTANTINOPLE, and ſo afterwards to L
haue beene by him cruelly put to death. Of whoſe misfortune, *Tepulus* gouernour of CON-
STANTINOPLE vnderſtanding, for the more ſafetie of the ſtate in that vacancie of the Greek
empire, made peace with *Theodorus* for fiue yeeres, and the Turks for two. Shortly after came

Robert Emperour of Conſtantinople.

Robert (the ſonne of the aforeſaid vnfortunate Emperour *Peter*) with his mother to CONSTAN-
TINOBLE, and there in his fathers ſtead was ſolemnly ſaluted Emperor; but not with much bet-
ter lucke than was his father before him: for ſhortly after his comming he tooke to wife a faire
young Lady, the daughter of a great rich and noble Matrone of the citie, but before betrothed
vnto a gallant gentleman, a Burgundian borne: with whom the old Lady broke her promiſe, &
more careful of her daughters preferment, than fidelitie, gaue her in mariage vnto the new Em-
peror. The ioy of which ſo great an honour was in ſhort time conuerted not into a deadly hea- M
uineſſe, but euen into death it ſelfe: for the young Burgundian, more enraged with the wrong
done him, than diſcouraged with the greatneſſe & power of the Emperour, conſorted himſelfe
with a companie of luſtie tall ſouldiers, acquainted with his purpoſe, & awaiting his time when
the Emperor was abſent, by night entred the court with his deſperate followers, & firſt meeting
with the beautifull young Empreſſe, cut off her noſe and her eares, and afterward threw her old

An horrible outrage committed vpon the perſon of an Empreſſe.

mother

A mother into the ſea: and ſo fled out of the citie into the woods and mountaines, with thoſe deſperate cut-throats, the miniſters of his barbarous crueltie. The Emperour pierced to the heart with this ſo great a diſgrace, ſhortly after went to ROME, to what purpoſe was not certainly knowne; but in returning backe againe thorow ACHAIA, he there died, leauing behinde him his young ſonne *Baldwin*, yet but a childe, begotten by his firſt wife, to ſucceed him in the empire: who by the name of *Baldwin* the ſecond was crowned the fift and laſt Emperour of the Latines in CONSTANTINOPLE. And for becauſe he was as yet but young and vnfit for the gouernment, he was by the conſent of the nobilitie affianced, and afterward maried vnto *Martha* the younger daughter of *Iohn Brenne* King of HIERVSALEM, a worthy old captaine (but
B as then gouernour of RAVENNA, which citie, he being certaine yeeres before ſent for out of FRANCE for that purpoſe, by *Honorius* the Pope, he notably defended againſt the Emperour *Frederick* his ſonne in law, but that affinitie was before broken off by the death of the ſaid Emperours wife) who now ſent for out of ITALIE vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, had committed to his charge and protection both the perſon and empire of the young Emperour *Baldwin*, now his ſonne in law. Which great and heauie charge he for certaine yeeres after worthily & faithfully diſcharged, vntill ſuch time as that *Baldwin* was himſelfe growne able to take vpon him the gouernment. Now although the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, with the countries of THRACIA, THESSALIA, MACEDONIA, ACHAIA, PELOPONESVS, and the reſt of the prouinces of GREECE, were all or for the moſt part vnder the gouernment of *Baldwin* the
C Emperour, the Venetians, or other the inferiour Latine Princes: yet were the oppreſſed Greeks, the naturall inhabitants thereof, in heart not theirs, as abhorring nothing more than that their forraine gouernment; but wholly deuoted to their owne naturall Princes, *Theodorus Laſcaris*, and *Alexius Comnenus*, the one raigning at NICE in BITHYNIA, and the other at TRAPEZOND in PONTVS, both called by the Greekes, Emperors, and ſo of them generally reputed. *Laſcaris* of the two the better beloued, and by farre of greateſt power, had during the time of his raigne fought many an hard battell (as is in part before declared) and ſtrongly fortified his chiefe cities againſt the inuaſion of his enemies, as well the Turks as the Latines: and ſo hauing as it were erected a new empire in ASIA, and there raigned eighteene yeeres, died, leauing behinde him one *Iohn Ducas Batazes*, that had maried the faire Lady *Irene* his daughter and heire,
D to ſucceed him in the Greeke empire in ASIA. This *Iohn* was a man of a great wit and ſpirit, and of more grauitie for his yeares, than was *Theodorus* his father in law; neuer vndertaking any thing before he had thereof well conſidered; and once reſolued, not omitting or neglecting any thing for the performance therof. So that it was not vnfitly ſaid of the Greeks, The planting of this new empire to haue required the celeritie of *Laſcaris*, but the ſtay thereof to haue been the grauitie of *Ducas*. He in the beginning of his raigne, in very ſhort time hauing ſet all things in good order, greatly augmented his legions, and ſhooting at a fairer marke than the empire he yet held, euen the imperiall citie it ſelfe, and the recouerie of all THRACIA and GRECIA out of the hands of the Latines, which could not be done without a fleet at ſea, built a great number of gallies in the ports of the leſſer ASIA. And ſo hauing rigged vp and manned a ſtrong fleet,
E and ſcouring the ſeas, in one Summer tooke in moſt of the Iſlands of the ÆGEVM, namely, LESBOS, CHIOS, SAMOS, ICARIA, COOS, with the famous Iſland of the RHODES, and many others alſo. And not ſo contented to haue encreaſed his empire, the next ſpring croſſing the HELLESPONT and landing his forces, firſt inuaded CHERSONESVS; and afterward to terrifie the Latines, forraged the countrey far and neere, euen to the gates of CONSTANTINOPLE, no man daring to oppoſe himſelfe againſt him. At which time alſo he took many cities and ſtrong townes alongſt the ſea coaſt, as CALLIOPOLIS, SESTVS, & CARDIA, with diuers others thereabout, ſome by force, ſome by compoſition, the Greeks almoſt in euery place yeelding themſelues, where they were not ſo oppreſſed by the Latines as that they could not helpe him. Now by theſe proceedings of the Greek emperour in EUROPE, was plainly to be
F ſeen again the ruin of the Latin empire in the Eaſt, all things proſpering in his hand according to his hearts deſire, *Aſſan* the Bulgarian king, no ſmall terror both vnto the Latins & the Greeks, moued with the fame hereof, by his embaſſadors ſent of purpoſe vnto *Iohn* the Greek emperor, offred his daughter *Helena* in mariage vnto yong *Theodore* his ſon: of which offer the emperor gladly accepted. For being buſied in his great affaires, he was loth to haue ſo great a king as was *Aſſan*, his enemie, able at his pleaſure to call in the Scythes; who with their multitude, as a great

Baldwin the laſt emperour of the Latines in Conſtantinople.

Iohn Batazes made emperour of the Greekes in Aſia.

flood breaking ouer the bankes, had oftentimes caried away whole countries before them. G
Wherfore the match agreed vpon, the two great Princes by appointment met together about CHERSONESUS, where *Helena*, king *Assans* daughter, being then about ten yeares old, was with great joy and triumph ſolemnly maried vnto yong *Theodor* the emperours ſonne, much of the ſame age. Not long after embaſſadours were alſo ſent vnto the emperour from the Sultan of ICONIUM, to confirme and prolong the league betwixt them; for the Tartars not contented to haue driuen the Turks out of PERSIA and the farre Eaſterne countries, began now alſo to cut them ſhort in their prouinces in the leſſer ASIA: wherefore the Sultan of ICONIUM, fearing leaſt whiles he had his hands full of thoſe his moſt dreadfull enemies, of themſelues too ſtrong for him, he ſhould behind be ſet vpon by the Greeke emperour, and ſo thruſt out of all, H
ſent theſe embaſſadours vnto him for peace; which he for many cauſes eaſily graunted. Firſt, for that he foreſaw what an hard matter it would be for him to maintaine warre at once both in ASIA againſt the Turks, and in EUROPE againſt the Latines: then by this warlike nation, as by a moſt ſure bulwarke, to keepe his owne countries ſafe from the inuaſion of the barbarous Tartars, vnto whoſe furie he ſhould himſelfe lie open, if the Turks were once taken out of their way. Both ſufficient reaſons for the emperour to yeeld vnto the Sultan, which he did: ſo was the peace concluded, and the embaſſadors diſpatched. This peace exceedingly comforted and
Plentie enſuing vpon peace. afterward inriched the emperours countries: for now the people generally deliuered of the feare and miſerie of continuall war, began on all hands to fall to their fruitfull labours of peace.
Yea the emperour himſelfe to the ſtirring vp of others to the like good husbandrie, cauſed ſo I
much land to be plowed vp for corne, and ſo many vineyards to be planted, as might plentifully ſuffice his own houſe, and ſuch poore as he daily relieued; with a great ouerplus, which he cauſed to be carefully laid vp in ſtore. He kept alſo great heards of cattell, flocks of ſheepe, and foules of all ſorts without number. The like he cauſed his kinſmen and other of the nobilitie to doe, to the intent that euery great man hauing ſufficient for his own ſpending at home, ſhould not take any thing from the poore countreyman, that ſo euery man contenting himſelfe with his owne, might liue in peace without the grieuance of others. By which means in a few yeares euery barne and garnarie was full of corne, euery ſellar full of wines, euery ſtable full of cattell, euery ſtorehouſe full of victuals: the fields were couered with corne and cattell, and in euery mans yard were to be ſeene all kinds of tame foules, without number. At which time alſo there K
fortuned a great famine among the Turks: inſomuch, as that they were inforced to fetch their greateſt reliefe from out of the Chriſtian countries. Then might you haue ſeene euery way full of Turks, men, women & children, trauelling to and fro into the emperours prouinces for victuals: their gold, their ſiluer, their other rich commodities, they gaue vnto the Chriſtians for food; a little corne was woorth a good commoditie, euery bird, ſheep, & kid, was ſold at a great rate: by which meanes the countrey mens houſes were full of the Turks wealth, and the emperours cofers ſtored with their treaſure. The greatneſſe of the profit ariſing of this plentie of the
An imperiall crowne bought with egge money. Chriſtians, & penurie of the Turks, may hereby eaſily be gathered, for that of egges daily ſold, ſo much money was in ſhort time gathered, as made the empreſſe an imperiall crowne of gold, richly ſet with moſt orient pearle and pretious ſtones of great price; which the emperour called L
Ouata, for that it was bought with egge money. Thus flouriſhed the Greeke empire in the leſſer ASIA, vnder the good emperour *Iohn Ducas*. The Turks at the ſame time declining as faſt, daily pilled in one corner or another by the Tartars, and conſumed with famine at home.

1227 *Fredericke* the Germane emperour, had of long time vowed to take vpon him an expedition into the Holy land: for performance wherof, he was hardly called vpon, firſt by *Honorius quartus* the Pope; and afterward for his long delay, excommunicated by *Gregorie* the ninth: not ſo much for the zeale they had vnto the ſacred warre, as to buſie the emperour a farre off in warres abroad, whileſt they in the meane time, to increaſe their owne power, drew from him ſome one part or other of his empire: which he not without cauſe fearing, from day to day, and yeare to yeare, delayed the performance of his vow, ſo much vrged by the Pope; by his preſence & po- M
wer, ſtil diſappointing all the ſlie deſigns of the Popes, conceiued or put in practiſe againſt him. But now at length mooued, or more truly to ſay, enforced with the thundering and lightning of Pope *Gregorie*, he reſolued to ſet forward in the yeare 1227. About which time *Iolenta* or *Yoland* his wife, the king of HIERVSALEM his daughter, died in childbed, being before deliuered of a faire ſonne. Now were met together at BRVNDVSIVM an exceeding great number of courageous

A gious and deuout ſouldiers out of all parts of Chriſtendome, eſpecially out of GERMANIE, vnder the leading of *Lodwicke* Lantgraue of THVRINGE, and *Sigefride* Biſhop of ANGVSTA; all ſtirred vp with the fame of ſo notable an expedition. But whileſt they there ſtaied ſomewhat long, the plague arоſe among the Germans, whereof in ſhort time after, both the Lantgraue and the Biſhop died, with many of the other beſt ſouldiers. The Emperour himſelfe was vpon his way as farre as MALEA, vpon the farther ſide of PELOPONESVS, where falling deſperately ſicke of a burning feauer, and put backe with contrary windes, hee returned againe to BRVNDVSIVM, and there ſtaied a great while after. Then began the Pope againe to fret and fume, and to caſt out his excommunications againſt the Emperour, as if it had been
B thunder and lightning, accuſing him of periurie, infidelitie, and many other grieuous crimes; of all which the Emperour was ready to haue cleared himſelfe in an open aſſemblie of the Princes of GERMANIE, to haue beene holden at RAVENNA, had it not beene by the Pope and the troubles of LOMBARDIE diſturbed. Neuertheleſſe, he by open proteſtations & writings, fully anſwered all the Popes vniuſt accuſations, wherewith he had beene ſo hardly charged: And yet deſirous to performe the expedition by him taken in hand, hauing ſet al things in good order, and put himſelfe againe in readineſſe, he ſet forward from BRVNDVSIVM in Auguſt, in the yeere 1228, leauing the charge of his territories in ITALIE, vnder the care of *Reynold* 1228
Duke of SPALETO. The Pope diſpleaſed, for that the Emperour at his departure had neither reconciled himſelfe, nor taken his leaue of him, and deeming therein his excommunications &
C fulminations to be contemned & ſet at nought; fell into ſuch a rage and choller, that he forbad all the Chriſtian forces that were in SYRIA to follow him, or to yeeld to him their obedience; and writ letters alſo vnto the Sultan, not to come to any agreement with the Emperour, or to yeeld vnto him any part of the Holy Land: which very letters the Sultan afterwards ſent vnto the Emperor. Neither yet ſo contented, immediatly after his departure, ran vpon his kingdome of NAPLES, and ſo filled all ITALIE with troubles. Neuertheleſſe the Emperor happily arriuing at PTOLEMAIS, was there honourably receiued of the Chriſtian forces, notwithſtanding the Popes threats and curſings. Of whoſe arriuall, Sultan *Meledin* hauing intelligence, and loth to draw ſo mightie an enemie as was the Emperour, vpon him, by his embaſſadours offered him moſt honourable conditions of peace: which before he would accept of, he by conuenient meſ-
D ſengers ſent vnto the Pope, to haue his conſent and approbation. But ſuch was his rage, as that he would not ſuffer the meſſengers to come into his preſence, or vouchſafe to reade the Emperours letters, being brought vnto him; but like a mad man, preſently rent them in peeces. All which indignities the Emperour neuertheleſſe tooke in good part, and concluded a peace with the Turkes for ten yeeres, vpon theſe conditions: firſt, That he ſhould be annointed & accounted King of HIERVSALEM: then, That the holy citie, with all the land of PALESTINE, ſhould be deliuered vnto him: thirdly, That he might at his pleaſure fortifie the cities of NAZARETH & IOPPE: fourthly, That all ſuch places as were ſometime in the power of *Baldwin* the fourth king of HIERVSALEM, and taken from him by Sultan *Saladin*, ſhould be reſtored: and laſt of all, That all priſoners on both ſides ſhould be ſet at libertie without ranſome. So the peace con-
E cluded, the Emperour with his armie came to the deſolate citie of HIERVSALEM, and there vpon Eaſter day was with great ſolemnitie crowned king therof, in the yeere 1229. And ſo hauing 1229
repaired the wals of the citie, with certain Churches, fortified NAZARETH & IOPPE, & furniſhed *Fredericke the Emperor crowned King of Hieruſalem.*
them with ſtrong garriſons, & appointed *Raynold* Duke of BAVARIA his lieutenant in SYRIA, he with two gallies only returned into ITALIE: Euer ſince which time the Kings of SICILIA haue been alſo called Kings of HIERVSALEM, & haue oftentimes born the armes of both kingdomes.

The next yeere Pope *Gregorie* iu deſpight of the Emperor *Frederick*, more than for any zeale 1230
vnto the Chriſtian religiō, did by the Dominicans & Franciſcans (two orders of Friers but then *The vnfortunate expedition of the King of Nauarre into the Holy Land.*
lately erected) as by his trumpeters, ſtirre vp a wonderfull number of zealous and deuout Chri-
F ſtians, almoſt in euery part of Chriſtendome, to take vpon them the croſſe (as they termed it) the cogniſance of ſuch, as had by vow bound themſelues to take vp armes againſt the Turks & Saraſins, for the recouerie or defence of the Holy Land. Theſe deuout men met together in great number, vnder the leading of *Theobald* King of NAVAR, *Americus* Countie of MONTFORT, *Henrie* Countie of CHAMPAIGNE, and others too long to rehearſe (of purpoſe ſtirred vp to trouble the ten yeeres peace before concluded betwixt the Emperour and the Turkes in SYRIA) ſet forward, & after long trauell paſſing the ſtrait of BOSPHORVS, not farre from CONSTANTI-

NOPLE, into BYTHINIA, came to the riuer of SANGARIVS, and there ſtaied a while to refreſh themſelues. Afterwards paſſing through GALATIA, and ſo from countrey to countrey through the leſſer ASIA, they came at length vnto the ſtraits of the mountaine AMANVS (a part of the mountaine TAVRVS) which they found before taken by the Turks, and the Sultan of ICONIVM himſelfe not farre off encamped with a ſtrong armie. Neuertheleſſe the valiant Countie of MONT-FORT, which had the leading of the vantguard, couragiouſly marching forward, by plaine force opened the paſſage of the mountaine, hauing ſlaine or put to flight the Turkes appointed for the keeping thereof: the King of NAVARRE in the meane time (though in vaine) aſſailing the Sultan in his campe; who fearing the great power of the Chriſtians, kept himſelfe within his owne ſtrength, and would not ſtirre. Wherefore the King ſeeing it to no purpoſe there longer to ſtay, diuiding his armie into three parts, left the Sultan, and followed after the Countie, placing his baggage in the midſt, and the beſt of his ſouldiers in the rereward. But whileſt they thus march vp the great mountaine, the Turkes better acquainted with thoſe paſſages, were ſtill at hand, aſſailing them ſometime behinde, ſometime on the one ſide, ſometime on the other, as they ſaw occaſion: and at length taking them at an aduantage in a great plaine, ſet vpon them (now before almoſt ſpent with hunger and trauell) and there ſlew of them an exceeding great number. But by the comming on of the night, the battell was broken off, and the Chriſtians repairing vnto their enſignes, paſſed the ſtraits, and ſo at length arriued at ANTIOCH, hauing loſt by the way the greateſt part of the armie, with all their wealth, their victuals, and moſt part of their horſes: the remnant yet left, hauing a little refreſhed themſelues, were by ſea tranſported to PTOLEMAIS; from whence they were afterward by the Templars conducted to GAZA, where they lay, and of the ſpoile of the countrey greatly inriched themſelues. As for any other great matters, they were not able of themſelues to take in hand; and helpe of ſuch forces as the Emperour had before left at HIERVSALEM, and other places, they could haue none; hauing expreſſe charge from the Emperour himſelfe, not to doe any thing againſt the enemie, tending to the breach of the ten yeeres league: which the Turkes well perceiuing, and that they had to doe but with theſe new come gueſts, and ſome few others their partakers; hauing gathered together their forces, lay in ambuſh for them in euery corner to cut them off. Neither was it long, but that theſe of GAZA going farre into the countrey, and returning laded with ſpoile, were ſet vpon by the Turkes; whom they (caſting away the ſpoile they had before taken) notably repulſed and put to flight, the day now drawing to an end. But early the next morning appeared a farre greater number of Turkes than before; which now comming on, charged the Chriſtians, who all that night had ſtood watching in their armour, & ſo ioyned with them a moſt cruell battell: wherin the Chriſtians ſhewed ſo much valour as was poſſible for men to doe; but wearied with long fight, and oppreſſed with the multitude of their enemies, they were ouercome and ſlaine almoſt euery mothers ſonne. Among the reſt, the two Counties, *Americus* and *Henry*, fell: the King of NAVARRE himſelfe hardly eſcaped by the exceeding ſwiftnes of his horſe, & by vncertaine wayes wandring vp and downe the countrey, not knowing well which way to take, after two daies came by good fortune to IOPPE: ſome few others eſcaped by flight to PTOLEMAIS, the heauie meſſengers of the misfortune of their fellowes. The King afterwards viſiting the holy places at HIERVSALEM, returned home into his country, with ſome few of his followers, hauing performed nothing of that the world expected.

The Chriſtians by perſwaſion of the Templars breake their league with the Turkes.

About foure yeeres after, *Raynold* Duke of BAVARIA, whom *Frederick* the Emperor had left his lieutenant in HIERVSALEM, died; hauing by the ſpace of fiue yeeres peaceably gouerned that bruiſed kingdome. After whoſe death, the Templars (who, he yet liuing, would oftentimes haue broken the league, but that they were by his authoritie and wiſedome reſtrained) now tooke occaſion to ſtir vp the people to take vp armes againſt the Turks, without reſpect vnto the league yet in force, or of the dangers like thereof to enſue. Whereof the Ægyptian Sultan hearing, raiſed a great army, ſending alſo for the Choraſines, a warlike nation then lying neere vnto BABYLON, to come vnto his aid. Thus become very ſtrong, he firſt laid ſiege to GAZA, but a little before repaired & fortified by the king of NAVARRE and the Templars, which he at length tooke by force, and put to ſword all that were therein, as well the citizens as the garriſon ſouldiers: In like manner he dealt alſo with them of ASCALON, and other places as he went. To repreſſe this his furie, the Templars and Hoſpitalers had aſſembled the whole ſtrength of that weake kingdome, and neere vnto TYBERIAS came to haue giuen him battell. Who vpon

their

A their approach haſtily retired,as if he had for feare ſhunned battell. But whiles the Chriſtians as victors the night following lay negligently encamped along the riuer ſide, he returning backe again with his armie,came vpon them before they were well aware,halfe ſleeping halfe waking, but altogether vnarmed,with a moſt horrible outcrie. The Chriſtians now altogether awaked, and not a little troubled with the ſuddennes of the matter,haſtily and diſorderly(as muſt needs in ſo great a confuſion) tooke vp their weapons,ſuch as came firſt to hand,and ſo couragiouſly oppoſed themſelues againſt their enemies. There was fought a moſt terrible and doubtfull battell, and that alſo for a long ſpace; the Chriſtians ſtill encouraging one another to doe their laſt deuoir. But the Turks ſtill keeping their order,againſt the diſordered Chriſtians,and farre moe
B alſo than they in number, preuailed, and there ouerthrew them with a great ſlaughter, but not without the loſſe of many thouſands alſo of their owne men, which there lay dead vpon the ground. Moſt part of the beſt commanders both of the Templars and Hoſpitalers were there ſlaine, ſuch as eſcaped fled to TYRE.

The Sultan encouraged with ſo great a victorie, marched forthwith to HIERVSALEM, 1234
which he tooke without reſiſtance; and there put to ſword all that he found therein, men, wo- *Hieruſalem taken and raſed by the Turkes.*
men and children, without reſpect of ſex or age: and afterwards hauing rifled the ſame,raſed it downe to the ground,burning the buildings,and ouerthrowing the wals,not long before repaired by the Emperor *Frederick*,and much beautified by his lieutenant *Raynold*. And carried with an infernall furie, defaced, and moſt ſhamefully polluted the ſepulchre of our bleſſed Sauiour,
C neuer before then violated or defiled, but of all nations vntouched and reuerenced; which for all that,may ſeeme to haue been done,not ſo much for the hatred vnto the Chriſtian religion,as for that it was the place of all others moſt deſired of the Chriſtians;and for the gaining whereof they had vndertaken ſo many hard aduentures,and ſo much troubled the Saraſins and Turkes.

Thus by the vnfaithfull breaking of the league, the moſt ancient and famous citie of HIERVSALEM, ſometime the terreſtriall ſeat of the moſt Higheſt, and glorie of the world, fell againe into the power of the Turkes and Infidels,in the yeere 1234,in whoſe hands it hath euer ſince remained euen vntill this day: now a poore ruinous citie, gouerned by one of the Turkes Sanzacks, and for nothing now more famous than for the ſepulchre of our bleſſed Sauiour; againe repaired and much viſited by the deuout Chriſtians, and not vnreuerenced by the
D Turkes themſelues.

The loſſe of this ſo famous a citie, together with the dangerous ſtate of the Chriſtians in SYRIA,much grieued the other Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt;eſpecially *Frederick* the Emperour, by whom it had beene but a few yeeres before gained. Howbeit he could not now remedie the matter according to his deſire, being himſelfe grieuouſly entangled with the endleſſe troubles which Pope *Gregorie* had (as it were by tradition) left vnto the other Popes his ſucceſſors, for the troubling of his ſtate,vntil at length they had depriued him of his empire,& not long after of his life alſo. Among other the great Princes, carefull for the poore Chriſtians in SYRIA, was *Lewis* the French king the ninth of that name,a Prince of great power,but of al others of that time moſt famous for his zeale vnto the Chriſtian religion, and for his deuout manner of life: who
E abounding in wealth and all things elſe of a great Prince to be deſired, and withall oftentimes conſidering the notable expeditions many Chriſtian Princes had (to their immortall glorie) made, ſome into SYRIA, ſome into ÆGYPT, againſt the enemies of Chriſt,and for the reliefe of the oppreſſed Chriſtians;was many times about to haue taken vpon himſelfe the like. But in theſe his deuout motions, before he could reſolue vpon ſo great an enterpriſe, hee fell dangerouſly ſicke, in ſo much that for certaine daies he lay ſpeechleſſe, deuoid of ſenſe and motion, without any ſigne of life, but that he did a little faintly breathe: when comming a little vnto himſelfe, (whether moued with deuotion, or troubled with his former conceits then running in his weake braine, is vncertaine) the firſt thing he asked for, was the croſſe (the cogniſance of ſuch as vowed themſelues vnto the ſacred war) which he ſolemnly receiued at the hands of the
F Biſhop of PARIS. At which time alſo his three brethren, *Alphonſus* Countie of POITIERS, *Charles* Countie of ANIOV,& *Robert* Countie of ARTHOIS,with *Hugh* Duke of BVRGVNDIE,*William* Earle of FLANDERS,*Hugh* Countie of *S. Paul*, and afterwards moſt of the nobilitie of FRANCE,to accompanie the King,tooke vpon them the ſame charge. Neuertheleſſe,it was not by and by taken in hand,but ſome few yeeres let paſſe in the conſultation and preparation for ſo great an enterpriſe: many in the meane time diſcharging their vow,by dying before 1248

at home in peace in their owne countries. At length the deuout King ſtill reſolute in his former G
determination, hauing taken order with *Blanch* his mother for his affaires at home, and put all
things in readineſſe for his iourney, came to LYONS to take his leaue of Pope *Innocentius* the
King Lewis ſetteth forward toward the Holy Land. fourth (who for feare of the Emperour *Frederick* then lay there for his more ſafetie) and from
thence to MARCEILLES, where embarking himſelfe with his armie the fiue and twentieth
day of Auguſt, in the yeere 1248, he the twentieth day of September following arriued in ſafe-
tie in the Iſland of CYPRVS, and was there royally entertained by *Guy Luſignan* then King of
that countrey.

Now was the French King deſirous to haue gone directly for ÆGYPT, without longer ſtay
in CYPRVS, had he not beene otherwiſe perſwaded, both for that his whole fleet was not yet H
come, and the time of the yeere began to grow vnſeaſonable, and the weather tempeſtuous.
But whileſt he there ſtaied, paſſing the winter, the plague (one of the readie attendants of great
armies) began to ariſe in the campe, which daily increaſing, had in ſhort time taken away a
great number of men, and thoſe not of the meaneſt ſort. Amongſt whom were *Robert* Biſhop of
BEAUVAIS, *Iohn* Countie MONT-FORT, the Counties of VENDOSME and DREVX, *Ar-
chambaut* Lord of BVRBON, with diuers other Knights and Gentlemen, to the number of 240:
ſo that by force of the infectious contagion, the King was conſtrained to diuide his armie into
diuers places of the Iſland, attending vntill the infection ſhould ceaſe. In the meane time the
Templars hauing in ſuſpect both the French and the Turks: the Turks, for feare they ſhould
ouerrun all; and the French, leſt hauing gotten the victorie, they ſhould take all into their owne I
hands, and ſo diminiſh their power and authoritie, wherewith they tyrannized ouer the other
poore Chriſtians; ſent embaſſadours ſecretly vnto *Meledin* Sultan of ÆGYPT, to perſwade
him betimes to come to ſome good agreement for peace, ſo to auert the power of the French
King from doing him further harme, or proceeding further in that warre. Of which motion
the Sultan well liking, ſent one of his noble men to intreat with the maſter of the Templars
concerning a peace, ſo that it might be by conſent of the French. The Templars glad of ſo ho-
nourable a meſſage, writ vnto the French King out of SYRIA, how the matter ſtood; perſwa-
ding him to accept of the peace offered, ſetting out in great words the Sultans great preparati-
ons and power. And ſo indeed had abuſed the King, had not the King of CYPRVS acquain-
ted with his doings, perſwaded him that it was but a fineneſſe of the great maſter, and that hee K
had firſt ſent vnto the Sultan, and procured that noble man to be ſent: which the King vpon
conſideration perceiuing to be true, fed the Turkes embaſſadour with hope of peace, but writ
vnto the maſter of the Templars, vpon the price of his head from thenceforth not to receiue
any embaſſage from the enemie, or to haue any further intelligence with him.

Winter now paſt, and the plague well ceaſed, diuers noble gentlemen and great comman-
ders which following the King, and ſetting forth ſomewhat late, or for feare of the plague had
ſtaied by the way and wintred ſome in one place, ſome in another, began to repaire vnto CY-
PRVS: as *Robert* Duke of BVRGVNDIE, who hauing wintred in ACHAIA, came now in the be-
ginning of the Spring vnto the King, with a number of good horſemen; and with him *William*
Prince of ACHAIA, with a great fleet out of PELOPONESVS, which country, with moſt part L
of GRECIA, was then vnder the command of the Latines; amongſt others came alſo *William*,
ſurnamed *Long-eſpie*, Earle of SARISBVRIE, with a band of luſtie tall ſouldiers. So the armie be-
ing met together, and all things againe in readineſſe, King *Lewis* departing from CYPRVS, and
toſſed at ſea with contrary winds, about 5 daies after fell with the coaſt of ÆGYPT, & there with
all his fleet came before the ſtrong towne of DAMIATA, being (as we haue ſaid) the key of that
kingdome. The Sultan long before vnderſtanding of the French Kings purpoſe for the inuaſion
of his countrey, had ſtrongly fortified his frontier townes, and put into them ſtrong garriſons,
beſide the great power he kept with himſelfe in readineſſe at all aſſaies, as occaſion ſhould re-
quire. Vpon the approch of the Chriſtians, the gouernour of DAMIATA was ready vpon the
ſhore, with a number of braue ſouldiers to keepe them from landing; who neuertheleſſe reſo- M
lutely before ſet downe for the performing of that they came for, manning forth their long
boats with their archers and croſſebowes to beat the enemie from the ſhore, ran a ground with
their other ſmall boats, made of purpoſe for the landing of men; and ſo without longer ſtay
came to handie blowes, where for a while was fought a moſt ſharpe and cruell battell, the Chri-
ſtians ſtriuing to land, and the Turkes to keepe them off, many falling on both ſides. But what

ſhould

A ſhould an handfull doe againſt ſo many? The Turks oppreſſed with the multitude ſtill landing more and more, and hauing done what was poſſible for them to doe, fled into the towne, leauing behind them their gouernor, with fiue hundred of their beſt ſouldiers dead vpon the ſhore.

This citie of DAMIATA was exceeding rich and populous, and had in the former warres 1249
not been taken but by more than a yeeres ſiege, (as is before declared) and that not ſo much by the valour of the Chriſtians, as by the extremitie of the plague and famine: ſince which time it had been ſtrongly fortified by the Turks, with deepe ditches, high wals, and ſtrong bulwarkes, and was at that time well ſtored with victuals alſo, and all things elſe for the enduring of a long ſiege. Neuertheleſſe, the ſouldiers that were left, and the citizens (diſcouraged with the loſſe of
B their gouernour, and remembrance of the miſeries before endured in the former ſiege, and ſeeing the Chriſtians now readie againe to beſiege the ſame) the night following, a little before the breake of day, ſet fire euery man vpon his owne houſe, and ſo by a bridge which they had made of boats, fled ouer the great riuer, breaking the bridge when they were ouer, for feare their enemies ſhould thereby haue followed after them. The Chriſtians perceiuing their flight, without reſiſtance entred the citie, and being ſtrangers, did what they could to quench the fire, and to ſaue that which the inhabitants themſelues would faine haue with fire deſtroied; and ſo afterwards found great abundance of riches, with plentifull ſtore of all manner of victuals, wherewith the ſouldiers both enriched and refreſhed themſelues. This ſo happie and vnexpected a victorie happened vnto the Chriſtians about the beginning of October, in the yeere 1249. Sul-
C tan *Meledin* himſelfe, diſcouraged with the loſſe of ſo ſtrong a citie, offered vnto the French king for the redeeming thereof, and to haue peace at his hands, more territorie in SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE, than the Chriſtians had of long time before: which large offer was by the French, eſpecially by the Earle of ARTHOIS the Kings brother, proudly reiected, and ALEXANDRIA the moſt famous port & metropolitical citie of ÆGYPT, further demanded, to the great diſcontentment of the Turks and Saraſins. In theſe troubles died *Meledin* the old Sultan, a man not much beloued of his people: in whoſe ſtead *Melechſala* (or *Melexala*, as ſome call him) a valiant and couragious Prince, well beloued of his ſubiects, and but euen then returned out of SYRIA and ARABIA, where he had beene to craue aid of the other Mahometane Princes, was choſen Sultan. Which Princes, eſpecially the Sultan of DAMASCO, al-
D though they had not of long beene at any good accord among themſelues, or with the Ægyptian; yet in this common danger of their ſuperſtition, which by the loſſe of ÆGYPT was like to be greatly weakned, they ioyned hands together, and ſo ſent him great aid.

The citizens of Damiata ſet fire vpon the citie, and ran away by the light.

The new Sultan thus ſtrengthened, drew neerer vnto the Chriſtians, which then lay encamped not farre from DAMIATA, and had with them a hot skirmiſh, wherein hee was put to the worſe, and ſo with ſome loſſe glad to retire. But the Chriſtians the next day, in hope of like ſucceſſe ſallying out againe, were ouerthrowne, with ten times more loſſe than was he the day before, and ſo faine to flie vnto the campe. By which victorie the Sultan encouraged, began now to conceiue better hope of the ſucceſſe of his wars; and by ſtopping the paſſages both by water and land, to prouide, that no victuals could without great perill be brought either vnto the
E citie or the campe, inſomuch that at length victuals began to grow ſcarce in both: whereof the Sultan was not ignorant, as being thereof throughly informed by ſuch fugitiues, as for want, or other cauſes, often times fled out of the French campe into his.

Winter thus paſſing, and wants ſtill increaſing, it fortuned that the gouernour of the great citie of CAIRE (vpon the fortune whereof depended the ſtate of the whole kingdome) a man not euill affected vnto the Chriſtian religion, and in his heart highly offended with the Sultan, for the death of his brother by him wrongfully executed; by ſecret meſſengers perſwaded the French King to come on with his armie to the citie, the regall ſeat of the Sultan, promiſing him to deliuer it into his power, with full inſtructions what he had in all points to do for the gaining thereof. Whereupon the King, who had before of himſelfe purpoſed the ſame exploit, but now
F filled with a greater hope, aſſembled together the greateſt forces he was able to make. At which time alſo he ſent for the Earle of SALISBVRIE, with the reſt of the Engliſh men, who for many proud indignities offered them by the French (eſpecially by the Earle of ARTOIS the Kings brother) whereof they could haue no redreſſe, were gone to PTOLEMAIS, without purpoſe to haue any more ſerued in thoſe wars: But now being ſent for by the King, with promiſe of better vſage and honorable recompence for the wrongs paſt, returned againe into ÆGYPT,

there

there to doe their laſt endeuour. With whoſe comming the King ſtrengthened, but more by the new ſupplies brought vnto him by his brother *Alphonſus* out of FRANCE, leauing the Duke of BVRGVNDIE with a conuenient garriſon, with the Queene his wife, *Odo* the Popes Legat, and diuers other great Ladies in DAMIATA, he himſelfe ſet forward with his armie towards CAIRE. Of whoſe comming the Sultan hearing, and loth vpon the fortune of one battell to aduenture his whole eſtate, offered by his embaſſadours to reſtore vnto him all the land of PALESTINE, with a great ſumme of money for the defraying of the charges of thoſe wars, and all the priſoners he had taken, ſo that he would redeliuer vnto him the citie of DAMIATA, and ioine with him in league and amitie. Which faire offer for all that, the French King, by the perſwaſion of the Legat and others, refuſed. So the King marching ſtill on, was to paſſe an arme of the great riuer NILVS (the Sultan on the other ſide ſtill readie with his armie to ſtay his paſſage) which he had thought to haue made by a bridge of boats, prepared for the ſame purpoſe: but better conducted by a fugitiue Saraſin vnto a foord, before to him vnknowne, ſent his brother *Robert*, Earle of ARTOIS, with the third part of the armie before him, accompanied with the maſter of the Templars and the Earle of SALISBVRIE, with their followers. Who paſſing the riuer at the aforeſaid foord, ſuddenly aſſailed the Turks in their tents (the Sultan being then abſent in ſolemniſing one of their prophane feaſts) & put them to flight. With which victorie the French Earle aboue meaſure encouraged, would needs on forwards, as if he would himſelfe alone haue carried away the glorie of the whole conqueſt. Whom for all that certaine of the ancient Templars, better acquainted with the manners of that deceitfull nation than he, and better conſidering alſo of their owne abilitie and ſtrength, perſwaded him to content himſelfe with the honour he had alreadie got, and not to proceed any further in proſecuting of the enemie, vntill the comming of the reſt of the armie, eſpecially in that deſperate eſtate of the enemie, wherein he was to win or loſe all. Vnto whom the proud Earle in great deſpight replied, that he would proſecute his victorie, and follow his good fortune; calling them daſtards and cowards, opprobriouſly obiecting vnto them the common fame, whereby it was commonly reported, That the Holy land might long ſince haue beene againe vnited vnto the bodie of the Chriſtian commonweale, but for the foule colluſion of the falſe Templars & Hoſpitalers with the Turks and Infidels. With which reprochfull ſpeech, the maſter of the Templars not without cauſe mooued, anſwered for himſelfe and his fellowes, that he ſhould, when he would, and where he durſt, diſplay his enſignes, and he ſhould finde them as readie to follow as he was to goe before them. The Earle of SALISBVRIE alſo willing to ſtint this ſtrife, perſwaded Earle *Robert* not to be ſo wedded to his owne opinion, but to liſten vnto the graue and wholeſome counſell of the Templars, being men of great experience: and ſo turning vnto the maſter of the Templars, began likewiſe with gentle words to pacifie him alſo. But whileſt he was yet ſpeaking, the Earle interrupting him with many opprobrious words, called him daſtard and coward, and wiſhed that the armie were rid of him, and the fearfull cowards his countrymen. Whereunto the Earle of SALISBVRIE anſwered: *Well Generall, on in Gods name, and whereſoeuer you dare ſet your foot, mine ſhall be as farre as yours; and I beleeue wee goe this day, where you ſhall not dare to come nigh my horſes taile:* as afterward indeed it proued. Howbeit, the Earle ſo ſaid, for that Earle *Robert* and the Frenchmen had many times in reproch and diſdaine, after their manner, called him and his followers Engliſh tailes.

A faire offer fondly refuſed.

The proud Earle conſtant in his former purpoſe, and not to be otherwiſe perſwaded, ſet forward: and firſt aſſaulted a little towne or caſtle, not farre off, called MANSOR, whereunto he inconſideratly approching, was notably repulſed; and hauing loſt a number of his men, was as a man diſcouraged, about to haue retired. When ſuddenly the Sultan, neerer at hand than the Earle had thought, ſtirred vp with the noiſe of the alarum, came on with his whole power; and finding the armie of the Chriſtians now diuided (as he had long wiſhed) with the multitude of his people encloſed them round, and had with them a great and mortall fight: wherein though the Chriſtians right worthily behaued themſelues, for the ſmall number they were, yet oppreſſed with the multitude, and on euery ſide beſet, they were ſlaine downeright. Then, but all too late, it repented the Earle of his fooliſh raſhneſſe, & that he had not hearkened vnto better counſell; and ſeeing the Earle of SALISBVRIE valiantly fighting, cried out vnto him to flie, ſeeing God (as he ſaid) fought againſt them. Whereunto the noble Earle anſwered no more, but *God forbid that my fathers ſonne ſhould runne away from the face of a Saraſin.* The French Earle thinking

A king by the ſwiftneſſe of his horſe to haue ſaued his life, flying out of the battell, and taking the riuer of THAFNES, ouerladed with his armour, was there drowned. The Earle of SALISBVRIE couragiouſly enduring the enemies charge, with his owne hand manfully ſlew many a Turke and Saraſin that day, vntill that at length hauing his horſe ſlain vnder him, and himſelfe ſo wounded in the legs, as that he was not able longer to ſtand, yet vpon his knees laying about him like a deſperate man, and ſelling his life as deare as he could, was there ſlaine, but not vanquiſhed. With him periſhed the whole armie, ſo encloſed by the Sultan, that ſcarce any one eſcaped aliue, more than two Templars, one Hoſpitaler, and one common ſouldier, the meſſengers of this heauie newes.

Earle Robert in flying, drowned

The Earle of Salisburie valiantly fighting, ſlaine.

B About the ſame time alſo ſickneſſe daily increaſing in the French campe, the King purpoſing to march forward to CAIRE, ſent a great number of ſicke and weake people downe the riuer of NILVS to DAMIATA: of whoſe going the Sultan vnderſtanding, cauſed a great number of ſmall boats to be carried in carts by land vnto the riuers ſide, which well manned, and meeting them by the way, ſet vpon them, and burnt or drowned them euery mothers ſonne, ſauing one only Engliſhman, called *Alexander Giffard*, who wounded in fiue places of his body, eſcaped yet into the French campe, reporting there what had happened vnto the reſt.

Now had the Sultan alſo got intelligence of the compact betwixt the gouernour of CAIRE and the King, for the betraying of the citie: and thereupon had cauſed him to be ſuddenly apprehended and put in ſafe keeping, vntill hee were at better leiſure to vnderſtand farther of the

The gouernour of Caire apprehended.

C matter: which no leſſe troubled the French King, than did the former misfortune; all his hope for the yeelding vp of the citie, being thereby cut off. Thus his hopes, together with his ſtrength, daily decreaſing, hee would haue gladly accepted of the conditions which hee before refuſed, which the Sultan, now growne very ſtrong, would by no meanes heare of; but in ſtead thereof, by way of deriſion, ſent to know of him, what was become of all his mattockes, forkes, rakes, ſythes, plowes, & harrowes, which he had brought ouer with him? and why he ſet them not to worke, but ſuffered them like an euill huſband to rot and ruſt beſide him? All which, with much more, the good king was glad to put vp. For now his forces greatly diminiſhed, as well by ſickneſſe, as by the former loſſes, finding himſelfe farre too weake, he would faine haue retired back againe to DAMIATA: which the Sultan foreſeeing, got ſo betwixt him & home, that now there

D was no remedie, but either to fight it out, or yeeld. The King himſelfe had been often before intreated by his nobilitie, whileſt the riuer was yet vnpoſſeſſed by the enemie, to haue conueyed himſelfe by water to DAMIATA, for that in the ſafetie of his perſon conſiſted (as they ſaid) the ſafetie of his kingdome, whatſoeuer became of them: whereunto he could neuer be perſwaded, ſaying, that he would neuer forſake his people, becauſe he would not be forſaken of them, but was reſolued to endure with them whatſoeuer it ſhould pleaſe God to lay vpon him. So paſſing the riuer by the ſame foord whereby his brother had not long before vnfortunately paſſed, and comming to the place where the battell was fought, he might ſee the dead bodies of the Chriſtians pitifully mangled, with their heads & hands cut off: For the Sultan, the more to encourage his ſouldiers, had before the battell proclaimed, that whoſoeuer ſhould bring him the head or

E hand of a Chriſtian, ſhould haue a great reward for his labour; in hope whereof, they had ſo diſmembred them. But long he had not there ſtaied, but that the Sultan began ſuddenly to appeare, with a moſt huge great armie, as if he would euen with the ſight thereof haue diſcouraged the Chriſtians: againſt whom for all that, the Frenchmen in good order oppoſed themſelues, and for the ſpace of three houres made great reſiſtance: But what could one doe againſt ten, and he alſo fainting for ſickneſſe and food? the hard plight wherein the greateſt part of the French armie then was. In concluſion, oppreſſed with the multitude of their enemies, and no way left to flie, they were all ouerthrowne and ſlaine, except ſome few, ſaued in hope of great ranſome. The King himſelfe, with his two brethren, *Alphonſus* and *Charles*, and ſome few others, were taken priſoners, and brought vnto the Sultan: who demanding of him, what had moued him ſo

F to make warre againſt him? was anſwered by the King, that it was for religion, and the defence of the name of his God. In this vnfortunate battell, fought the 5. of Aprill, in the yeere 1250, beſides the common ſouldiers, were ſlain moſt of the nobilitie of FRANCE, and all their tents taken.

The Sultan preſently vpon this ouerthrow, ſent of his owne ſouldiers the like number that the French were of, with French enſignes, and diſguiſed in the attire of the ſlaine Frenchmen, to DAMIATA, where the Duke of BVRGVNDIE, the French Queene, & the Popes Legat lay; in

hope

hope to haue been ſo let in for Frenchmen: but they were not ſo well masked, but that they were G
by them of the citie diſcouered for enemies, and ſo kept out and deceiued of their purpoſe.

The Chriſtians thus ouerthrowne, and the French king taken priſoner, *Melech-ſala* the Sultan taking compaſſion vpon him, and yet minding of his life to make his owne againe; cheering him vp with comfortable ſpeeches, began to talke with him of his deliuerance, & of a good attonement to be made betwixt them. The conditions whereof propounded by the Sultan were, That the king ſhould forthwith deliuer againe vnto him the citie of DAMIATA, & moreouer pay vnto him for the ranſome of himſelfe and his, and for the charges of the war, eight thouſād pound of gold; That all priſoners ſhould on both ſides be frankly ſet at libertie, and ſo a peace to be taken for ten yeares. For the more aſſurance whereof, the Sultan offered to ſweare, That H
if he failed in the performance thereof, to renounce his Mahomet: requiring likewiſe of the king to ſweare, If he failed in any thing that he had promiſed, to deny his Chriſt to be God: Which prophane oath the king deteſting, and wiſhing rather to die than to giue the ſame; the Sultan wondring at his conſtancie, tooke his word without any oath at all, & ſo publiſhed the league. But whilſt they were comming together to DAMIATA, *Melech-ſala* now in the pride of this victorie, fearing nothing leſſe than the ſudden change of fortune, or the miſchiefe hanging ouer his head, was in the preſence of a number of his noblemen ſuddenly ſlaine by two deſperat Mamalukes; and one *Turqueminus* a ſturdie ſlaue of their owne order and vocation (by whoſe procurement it was ſuppoſed to haue beene done) by the conſent of the whole armie created Sultan in his ſtead: who reuoking the league before concluded by *Melech-ſala*, made another in his I
owne name with the king, much vpon the ſame conditions that the other was; which, after hee had receiued DAMIATA, he cauſed to be openly proclaimed. Neuertheleſſe after that king *Lewis* had paied his ranſome, and was with the remnant of his armie by the Genowaies tranſported from DAMIATA to PTOLEMAIS, the falſe miſcreant performed not the halfe of that he had promiſed, of twelue thouſand Chriſtian captiues that ſhould haue beene ſet free, ſcarce enlarging foure thouſand; and killing all the ſicke ſouldiers whome by his promiſe hee ought to haue relieued; neither ſuffering any Chriſtian to carrie any of his goods with him out of ÆGYPT, which by the league he ought to haue done alſo.

The French king comming to PTOLEMAIS, and purpoſing to haue returned home, was intreated by the maſter of the Templars and hoſpitalars, and other the nobilitie of the Chriſti- K
ans, to ſtay, which hee did almoſt by the ſpace of foure yeares: in which time hee repaired the cities of CESAREA and IOPPE, and fortified many ſtrong places for the defence of the Chriſtians againſt the infidels: And ſo commending the protection thereof vnto the knights of the ſacred war, & ſending his brethren away before him, followed after himſelfe, greatly lamented for by all the Chriſtians in SYRIA, and ſo arriued in France the ſixt yeare from the time of his departing thence. This was the end of this long and vnfortunat expedition of *Lewis* the French king, wherein as ſome write, were eightie thouſand Chriſtians loſt: howbeit the French Chronicles extenuating their loſſe, report, of two and thirtie thouſand French, ſix thouſand to haue returned againe into FRANCE. The citie of DAMIATA in the ſpace of a few yeares twice woon, and twice loſt by the Chriſtians, was ſhortly after the deliuering vp thereof, by the Sultan L
raſed downe to the ground, becauſe it ſhould no more ſerue the Chriſtians for an entrance into his kingdome.

The beginning of the Mamalukes and their kingdome.

The late Ægyptian Sultans thus often times inuaded by the Chriſtian princes, and repoſing no great aſſurance in the proweſſe of the effeminate Ægyptians, a people fitter for merchandize and other baſe occupations than for chiualrie and war, had for the ſtrengthening of their kingdome, bought a infinite number of ſlaues, eſpecially of the poore and hardie Circaſſians, called in antient time *Getæ* and *Zinchi*, neere vnto COLCHIS and the EVXINE ſea, brought vnto ALEXANDRIA and other ports of ÆGIPT out of thoſe bare cold countries, by merchants, and from thence tranſported to CAIRE and other cities of ÆGYPT: of which poore ſlaues, the late Ægytian Sultans taking their choice, & culling out from the reſt ſuch as were like to be of M
greateſt ſpirit and abilitie of bodie, deliuered them vnto moſt skilful and expert teachers; by whom they were carefully taught to run, to leape, to vaut, to ſhoot, to ride, with all other feats of actiuitie, and withall cunningly to handle all manner of weapons, as well on horſebacke as on foot, and ſo inſtructed, and become cunning, were taken out of their ſchooles into pay, and enrolled together as the Sultās choice horſemen, were commōly called by the name of Mamalukes.

A lukes. In whose good seruice the late Sultans finding great vse, spared for no cost, both for their maintenance and increasing of their number; daily erecting new nurseries stored with young frie, which growing vp and readie, was still ioyned to the other. It is wonderfull to tell, vnto what a strength and glorie this order of the Mamalukes was in short time growne, by the care of the Ægyptian Kings: By them they managed their greatest affaires, especially in time of wars; and by their valour, not only defended their countrey, but gained many a faire victorie against their enemies, as they did now against the French. But as too much power in such mens hands, seldome or neuer wanteth danger, so fell it out now betwixt the late Sultan *Melech-sala*, and those masterfull Mamaluke slaues: who proud of their preferment, and forgetfull of their dutie,
B and seeing the greatest strength of the kingdome in their hands, traiterously slew *Melech-sala* their chiefe founder, setting vp in his place (as aforesaid) one *Turquiminus*, a base slaue, one of their owne order and seruile vocation, but indeed otherwise a man of a great spirit and valour. This *Melech-sala* murthered by the Mamalukes, was the last of the free borne Kings of Æ-GYPT; in whom the Turks kingdome in ÆGYPT, erected by *Sarracon* and the great Sultan *Saladin* (as is before said) and in his stocke and familie euer since continued, tooke end, as did also all the power of the Turks in that great and rich kingdome. For the proud Mamalukes hauing now got the soueraignty into their hands, and exalted a Sultan out of themselues, imperiously commanded as great Lords ouer the rest of the people, not suffering them to haue the vse either of horse or armour, or to beare any sway in the common-weale: but keeping them
C vnder with most heauie impositions, and still preferring their owne slaues (wherewith the countrey of ÆGYPT now swarmed) made the naturall countrey people, of all others most miserable, not daring to meddle with any thing more than merchandize, their husbandrie, or other their base mechanicall occupations: whereof the greatest profit still came vnto the Mamalukes, who as Lords of all, with great insolencie, at their pleasure tooke it from them as their owne. As for the great Sultan, they still chose him from among themselues, not suffering any the Sultans children to succeed their fathers in the kingdome; for feare left they in processe of time, proud of their ancestors and parentage, should reckon of them as of his slaues (as indeed they were) and so at length bring in another more free kinde of gouernment.

The ruine of the Turks kingdome in Aegypt.

Against which they prouided also, not only by this restraint of their Sultans children, but of
D their owne also: taking order and establishing it as an immutable law, that though the sonnes of the Mamalukes might enioy their fathers lands and wealth after their death, yet that it should not be lawfull for them in any case to take vpon them the name or honour of a Mamaluke: so embarring them from all gouernment in the common wealth, to the intent it might still rest with the Mamalukes. Neither was it lawfull for any borne of Mahometane parents (which could not be slaues) or of the race of the Iewes, to be admitted into that order; but onely such as being borne Christians and become slaues, had from the time of their captiuitie beene instructed in the Mahometan superstition; or else being men growne, and comming thither, had abiured the Christian religion (as many reprobates did in hope of preferment.) Right strange it is to consider, vnto what honour and glorie this slauish empire in short time grew: many of
E those poore slaues by rare fortune or secret diuine power, exalted out of the dust vnto the highest degree of honour, prouing most excellent and renowned Princes, of such strength and power, as was dreadfull euen vnto the greatest Princes of the world. In which great glorie, this seruile empire (to the worlds wonder) flourished from this time amongst the greatest by the space of 267 yeeres; vntill that hauing run the appointed race, it was with a great destruction by *Selymus* the victorious Emperour of the Turks, ouerthrowne in the yeere 1517, and the kingdome of ÆGYPT, with all SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE, brought into the forme of Prouinces, vnited vnto the Turks empire, as they are at this day, and as in the course of this historie shall in due time and place (God willing) at large appeare.

But leauing the kingdome of the Turks thus ouerthrowne in ÆGYPT, and the Mamalukes
F there triumphing; the French King returned into FRANCE, and the Christians in peace in SYRIA: let vs againe returne into the lesser ASIA, and vnto the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, whither the affaires both of the Turks and of the Christians now call vs. All this while the Greeke empire (for so the Greekes will haue it called) flourished both in peace and plentie in the lesser ASIA, vnder their Emperour *Iohn Batazes*: the power of the Latines in the meane time declining as fast at CONSTANTINOPLE, vnder the rule of the Latine Emperour

Baldwin

Baldwin the ſecond. As for the Turks whom we left grieuouſly troubled both with famine and C
the often incurſions of the Tartars, they had all this while, and yet alſo, enough and more than
enough to doe to withſtand the ſame enemie. At length it fortuned that *Iohn Ducas* the Greeke
Emperour died, being at the time of his death about threeſcore yeeres old, whereof he had hap-
pily raigned three and thirtie: by whoſe good and diſcreet gouernment, the Greeke empire be-
fore brought low and almoſt to nought by the Latines, began againe to gather ſtrength and to
flouriſh both in ASIA and ſome little part of EVROPE alſo. Of him are reported many no-
table matters, which as impertinent to our purpoſe I could willingly paſſe ouer, were I not by
the worthy remembrance of one of them ſtaied a while by the way.

This noble and famous Emperour hauing long lamented the death of the faire Empreſſe H
Irene his firſt wife, at laſt maried another young Lady, the ſiſter of *Manfred* King of SICILIE,
called *Anne*, with whom amongſt other honourable and beautifull Dames, ſent by the King
her brother for the accompanying of her to CONSTANTINOPLE, was one *Marceſina*, a rare
The Emperour in loue with Marceſina. paragon, of ſuch a feature as if nature had in her meant to beſtow her greateſt skill. From whoſe
mouth alwayes flowed a fountaine of moſt ſugred words, and out of her eyes iſſued (as it were)
nets to intangle the amorous in: vpon this ſo faire an obiect, the Emperour not fearing further
harme, tooke pleaſure oftentimes to feed his eyes, vntill that at length caught with her lookes, he
had loſt his libertie, and was of a great Emperour become her thrall, in ſuch ſort, as that in com-
pariſon of her he ſeemed little or nothing to regard the young Empreſſe his wife; but ſo farre
doated vpon her, that he ſuffered her to be attired and honoured with the ſame attire and ho- I
nour that the Empreſſe was her ſelfe; whom ſhe now ſo farre exceeded both in grace and fauour
with the Emperour, and honour of the people, as that ſhe almoſt alone enioyed the ſame, with-
out regard of her vnto whom it was of more right due. Whileſt ſhe thus alone triumpheth, at
length it fortuned that ſhe in all her glorie, attended vpon with moſt of the gallants of the court,
and ſome of the Emperours guard, would needs goe (whether for deuotion or for her recreati-
on, I know not) to viſit the monaſterie and faire church, which *Blemmydes* (a noble man of
great renowne, both for his integritie of life, and learning) had of his owne coſt and charges
but lately built in the countrey, where he together with his monkes, as men wearie of the world,
liued a deuout and ſolitarie contemplatiue life, after the manner of that time, with the great
good opinion of the people in generall. This *Blemmydes* was afterward for his vpright life and K
profound learning, choſen Patriarch of CONSTANTINOPLE: which great honour, next
vnto the Emperour himſelfe, he refuſed, contenting himſelfe with his cell. *Marceſina* comming
Marceſina the Emperours concubine ſhut out of the church. thither in great pompe, and thinking to haue entred the church, had the doores ſhut againſt her
by the monkes, before commanded ſo to doe by *Blemmydes* their founder: and ſo was to her
great diſgrace kept out. For that deuout man deemed it a great impietie, to ſuffer that ſo wic-
ked and ſhameleſſe a woman, againſt whom he had moſt ſharply both ſpoken and written, with
her prophane and wicked feet to tread vpon the ſacred pauement of his church. She enraged
with this indignitie, hardly by ſo proud a woman to be with patience diſgeſted, and prickt for-
ward by her flattering followers alſo; returning to the court, grieuouſly complained thereof
vnto the Emperour, ſtirring him vp by all meanes ſhe could to reuenge the ſame, perſwading L
him to haue beene therein himſelfe diſgraced. Whereunto were ioyned alſo the hard ſpeeches
of her pickthanke fauourites, who to currie fauor, ſpared not to put oyle as it were vnto the
fire, for the ſtirring vp of the Emperour vnto reuenge. Who with ſo great a complaint nothing
moued vnto wrath, but ſtrucke as it were to the heart with a remorſe of conſcience, and oppreſ-
ſed with heauineſſe, with teares running downe his cheekes, and fetching a deepe ſigh, ſaid:
Why prouoke you me to puniſh ſo deuout and iuſt a man? whereas if I would my ſelfe haue liued without reproach and infamie, I ſhould haue kept my imperiall maieſtie vnpolluted or ſtained. But now ſith I my ſelfe haue beene the cauſe both of mine owne diſgrace, and of the empires; I may thanke mine owne deſerts, if of ſuch euill ſeed as I haue ſowne, I now reape alſo an euill harueſt.

Theodorus Laſcaris choſen Emperour. After the death of this good Emperor, *Theodorus* his ſonne, borne the firſt yeere of his fathers M
raigne, being then about three and thirtie yeeres old, was by the generall conſent of the people
ſaluted Emperor in his ſtead: who in the beginning of his empire renewed the league which his
father had made with *Iathatines* the Turkiſh Sultan. And ſo hauing prouided for the ſecuritie of
his affaires in ASIA, he with a puiſſant armie paſſed ouer the ſtrait of HELLESPONTVS into
EVROPE, to appeaſe the troubles there raiſed in MACEDONIA & THRACIA, by the King

of

A of BVLGARIA his brother in law, and *Michael Angelus* Deſpot of THESSALIA; who vpon the death of the old Emperour began to ſpoile thoſe countries, not without hope at length to haue ioyned them vnto their owne: by whoſe comming they were for all that diſappointed of their purpoſe, and glad to ſue to him for peace. But whileſt he was there buſied, he was aduertiſed by letters from NICE, that *Michael Paleologus*, whom he had left there gouernour in his abſence, was ſecretly fled vnto the Turks: with which newes he was not a little troubled. The cauſe of whoſe flight, as *Paleologus* himſelfe gaue it out, was, for that he perceiued himſelfe diuers wayes by many his enemies brought into diſgrace, and the Emperours eares ſo filled with their odious complaints, ſo cunningly framed againſt him, as that they were not eaſily or in
B ſhort time to be refelled: and therefore fearing in the Emperours heauie diſpleaſure to be ſuddenly taken away, to haue willingly gone into exile, if ſo happily he might ſaue his life from the malice of them that ſought after it.

At his comming to ICONIVM, he found *Iathatines* the Sultan making great preparation againſt the Tartars; who hauing driuen the Turks out of PERSIA and the other farre Eaſterne countries (as is before declared) and running ſtill on, did with their continuall incurſions ſpoile a great part of their territories in the leſſer ASIA alſo; and now lay at AXARA, a towne not farre off from ICONIVM: againſt whom the Sultan now making the greateſt preparation he could, gladly welcommed *Paleologus*, whom he knew to be a right valiant and worthy captaine, commending to his charge the leading of certaine bands of Greekes, whom he had retai-
C ned to ſerue him in thoſe warres, as he had others alſo of the Latines, vnder the conduct of *Boniface Moline*, a nobleman of VENICE: and ſo hauing put all things in readineſſe, and ſtrengthened with theſe forraine ſupplies of the Greekes and Latines, ſet forward againſt his enemies the Tartars: who at the firſt ſight of the ſtrange enſignes and ſouldiers, were much diſmaied, fearing ſome greater force had beene come to the aid of the Turks. Neuertheleſſe, ioyning with them in battell, had with them at the firſt a moſt terrible and bloudie conflict, wherein that part of the armie that ſtood againſt *Paleologus*, and his Greekes was put to the worſe, to the great diſcomfiture of the Tartars, being euen vpon the point to haue fled, had not one of the greateſt commaunders in the Turks armie, and a nigh kinſman of the Sultans, for an old grudge that he bare vnto the Sultan, with all his regiment in the heat of the battell reuolted vnto the Tartars:
D whereby the fortune of the battell was in a moment as it were quite altered, they which but now were about to haue fled, fighting like lyons; and they that were victors, now glad to turne their backs and flie: in which flight a great number of the Turks fell, the fierce Tartars moſt eagerly purſuing them. *Paleologus* with the Generall of the Turks hardly chaſed by the Tartars, and glad euery houre to make a ſtand, and to fight for their liues, with much adoe after many daies flight recouered a Caſtle of the Generals, neere vnto CASTAMONA, and ſo ſaued themſelues. The Tartars after this ſo great a victorie (wherein they had broken the whole ſtrength of the Turks, and brought in hazard the whole ſtate of their kingdome) without reſiſtance forraged all the countries and prouinces ſubiect vnto the Turkiſh Sultan, making ſpoile of whatſoeuer they light vpon: inſomuch, that the Sultan diſcouraged, and hauing now no ſtrength
E left to oppoſe againſt them, fled vnto the Greeke Emperour *Theodorus* for aid; who moſt honourably entertained him with all his traine, and comforted him with ſuch ſmall aid as he thought good then to ſpare him: Which for his more ſafetie he ſent home with him, vnder the leading of *Iſaacius Ducas*, ſurnamed *Murtzuſle*, a man in great credit with him. In recompence of which kindneſſe, the Sultan gaue vnto the Emperour the citie of LAODICEA, whereinto he preſently put a ſtrong garriſon: neuertheleſſe, it was not long before it fell againe into the hands of the Turks, being a place not to be holden by the Greekes. Yet for all this, the Sultan finding himſelfe ſtill too weake to withſtand the continuall inuaſions of the Tartars, and wearie of the harmes he dayly ſuſtained; by the aduiſe of his cheefe counſellors made a league with them, yeelding to pay them a certain yearely tribute, therby to redeeme his peace. From which
F time the Tartars accounted of the Turks, as of their tributaries and vaſſals.

Not long after this, *Michaell Paleologus* was by the Emperours kind and gracious letters called home; with his faithfull promiſe alſo before giuen for his ſecuritie: who before his returne bound himſelfe alſo by ſolemne oath, to be vnto the Emperour and his ſonne alwayes loyall, and from thencefoorth neuer to ſeeke after the Empire, or giue cauſe of new ſuſpect for ſuch matters as he had been before charged with: but for euer to yeeld vnto the Emperour, his

ſonne, or other his ſucceſſors in the Empire, his dutifull obedience and fidelitie. Vpon which G
conditions he was againe made Great Conſtable, and ſo receiued into the Emperours fauour,
and liued the reſt of his raigne in great honour and credit with him.

The death of Theodorus the Greeke emperor.

Now *Theodorus* the Emperour hauing raigned three yeares, fell ſicke and died, leauing behind him his ſonne *Iohn*, then but a child of ſix yeares old, to ſucceed him in the Empire: whom hee vpon his death bed, together with the Empire, commended to *Arſenius* the Patriarch, and one *George Muzalo* his faithfull counſellor, as to his truſtie tutors, to ſee him ſafely brought vp, & the Empire well & peaceably gouerned. This *Muzalo* was a man of meane parentage, but for his familiar acquaintance and ciuile behauior, of a child brought vp in the Court with the Emperour as his play fellow: with whom he growing vp, ſo framed himſelfe vnto his manners & diſpoſition, that he alone was vnto him in ſtead of all, ſtill at hand, ready to ſay or doe whatſoeuer might be vnto the Emperour gracious or pleaſing. And the elder they grew, ſo increaſed this their mutuall affection and loue alſo: in ſuch ſort, that with him now Emperour, he was of all others in greateſt fauour & authoritie; a warie obſeruer of his delights, a readie miniſter of his affaires, and faithfull partaker of his ſecrets: for which he was in ſhort time promoted vnto the greateſt honors of the Court, and honorably married vnto one of the Emperors nigh kinſwomen; and now at his death, by his laſt will, with the reuerend Patriarch appointed tutor to the yong Emperor and his two yong ſiſters. And for the more aſſurance therof, a ſolemne oath of obedience vnto the yong prince as Emperor, & vnto them as his tutors, was exacted of all ſort of mē both high and low, of what vocation ſoeuer; and that not once, but firſt a little before the Emperours I
death, and again after he was now dead: for many of the nobilitie honourably deſcended, ſeeing the ſuddain change of *Muzalo* his fortune, among themſelues murmured therat, as greeued

Enuie in Court.

with his preferment, ſeeing there were many among them, vnto whom both the tuition of the yong emperour & adminiſtration of the empire of better right appertained; inſomuch as they were both neerer of kin vnto the emperor, and fitter (as they thought) for ſo great a charge than was *Muzalo*; whom (as they ſaid) they had many cauſes both to contemne and hate: For, beſide that he was not honourably borne, and had ſerued the late emperour *Theodore*, as the miniſter of his wrath againſt ſome of the nobilitie, cauſes ſufficient of the peoples hatred; if he ſhould now alſo in ſo great authoritie affect the Empire, it was by his malicious enemies vainly doubted, that he would not ſpare to commit any manner of villanie, for the effecting of his inordinat de- K
ſire. Of all which *Muzalo* was not ignorāt, a man at all other times of a moſt quick apprehenſion for ſuch matters, but as then eſpecially, his wits being awaked with theſe ſo great motiues and dangers. Wherfore ſpeedily calling together all the nobilitie into the court, he welcommed thē one by one, and courteouſly diſcourſing with them, offered to diſcharge himſelfe both of the adminiſtration of the empire, and tuition of the yong emperour, and willingly to yeeld the ſame vnto any one of them, whom the reſt ſhould thinke fitteſt for ſo great a charge: which though they all with one conſent as it were refuſed, ſaying, That he was of all others to be preferred, vnto whom the emperour, lord both of the empire and the child, had committed the ſame: yet *Muzalo* earneſtly requeſted them to the contrarie, and ſtiffely withſtood their deſire, wiſhing indeed rather to haue led a quiet priuat life in ſecuritie, than to haue been ſo ouercharged; not ſo L
much for doubt of the enuie then ariſing, as for feare of ſome great danger therof to enſue. But would he, would he not, remedie there was none, but that as the late emperour had appointed, ſo he muſt take the charge vpon him. And now was euery one, as well of the nobilitie, as of the inferior ſort, again with greater ſolemnitie than before the third time ſworn, to the vttermoſt of their power to defend the yong emperour in his empire, and *Muzalo* in the tuition of him, and adminiſtration of the affaires of the ſtate, and faithfully to yeeld vnto them both all due honour and obedience: which if they ſhould faile religiouſly to performe, they wiſhed vnto themſelues euery man, & to all theirs, a ſhamefull end & deſtruction. Yet notwithſtanding all this ſolemne ſwearing, mixt moſt times with much forſwearing, there were not fully nine daies paſt, but that certaine of the chiefe nobilitie forgetfull or elſe careleſſe of their oath, and full of enuie, ſeldome M
ſatisfied but with blood, conſpired the vnworthie death of *Muzalo* the protectour both of the Emperour & the Empire. The ninth day appointed for the funerall of the Emperour, was now come, at which time were met together at SOSANDRA (an abbey by himſelf built in the honor of the virgin *Marie* at MAGNESIA) many great Ladies & graue matrons, to mourne as the maner was; all the great princes of the nobilitie, and among them the conſpirators alſo: thither repaired

A paired alſo a number of ſouldiers, prepared for the ſlaughter, with an infinite multitude of the
common people, as at ſuch ſolemnities is vſual. But what needs many words, whileſt the hymns
were yet in ſinging, & the obſequies in performing, the ſouldiers as they were before inſtructed,
ſuddainly breaking into the Church, with their drawn ſwords in their hands, ſlew *Muzalo* (then *Muzalo traiterouſly murdered in the Church.*
fled vnto the altar for refuge) with his two brethren *Andronicus* & *Theodorus*, both men of great
account, and diuers others appointed to the maſſacre. So the matrons and the reſt of the multi-
tude breaking off their mourning, and for feare thronging out one in anothers necke, fled as faſt
as they could, ſome one way, ſome another, as they thought for their moſt ſafetie: but the Prieſts
& Monks thinking to haue done the like, were by the imperious ſouldiers, whether they would
B or not, againe inforced into the church; where tumbling one ouer another, as thronging in with
great force & violence, and ſcarce able to ſtand, by reaſon of the ſlipperineſſe of the bloud there
ſhed vpon the pauement, they in great feare made an end of thoſe bloudie obſequies. This out-
rage appeaſed, *Arſenius* the Patriarch, & only tutor of the young Emperour now left, was there-
with yet much troubled, as with a thing dangerous both to the perſon of the young Prince, and
quietneſſe of the ſtate; but what good courſe to take therein, he could not tell: for as he was a
man for his learning & integritie of life, not inferiour to the beſt, ſo in matters of ſtate he was as
farre to ſeeke; as it commonly happeneth the contemplatiue man, buried in his meditations,
to be vnfit for temporall gouernment; whereas he that ſhould performe both, muſt vnto his
rare vertues and great learning ioyne a ciuill conuerſation, with great experience in worldly af-
C faires, not to be learned but by great & long practiſe. This reuerend father (of no great reach, yet
wiſhing all well) calling together the nobilitie, conſulted with them what were beſt to be done
for the gouernment both of the young Emperor & the empire, now that *Muzalo* was dead; not
conſidering in the meane time who they were with whom he conſulted, or that counſel groun-
ded vpon no wiſe foreſight or approued experience, was more dangerous vnto him whom he
would haue prouided for, than all the enemies murthering ſwords, as ſhortly after appeared.

Amongſt others of the nobilitie called to counſell, was *Michael Paleologus* (of whom we haue *Michael Paleologus aſpireth.*
before ſpoken) much ſuperiour to the reſt, as deſcended of the imperiall houſe of the *Comneni*,
a man of a cheerefull countenance, gracious, and courteous, and withall exceeding bountifull
and liberall, whereby he eaſily won the hearts of all men in generall, but eſpecially of the colo-
D nels, captaines, and other martiall men, commanders in the armie; of whoſe aſpiring to the
empire, many preſages and common rumors (not alwayes vaine) had in former time paſſed
alſo, to the mouing of many: yea the Patriarch himſelfe not conſidering his haughtie and aſpi-
ring nature, made no leſſe account of him than did the reſt, but vpon an eſpeciall fauour, com-
mitted to his only truſt the keyes of the common treaſure, at ſuch time as money was to be deli-
uered out for paiment of the armies or other like great occaſions of the ſtate; the moſt effectuall
meanes for the furtherance of his ſecret practiſes, and the readieſt way for the effecting of that
he had ſo long before plotted: for hauing in his fingring ſuch a maſſe of treaſure, as hee might
wel haue wiſhed but neuer reaſonably hoped for, he poured it out as in were by buſhels amõgſt
the nobility & martiall men, & ſuch others as he thought were able to do moſt with the people,
E amongſt whom were many of the cleargie alſo: of which his fauourits were made many meet-
ings, & by them was the Patriarch continually ſollicited, but yet in generall tearmes, without
delay (according to the neceſsitie of the time) to take order for the good gouernement of the
ſtate, which now as a great ſhip in the midſt of the ſea without a maſter, was (as they ſaid) in dan-
ger to periſh; and being once loſt, was not to be againe recouered. At which time alſo, the name
of *Paleologus* was in euery mans mouth, as the only man for his wiſdome and experience, fit to
take vpon him the charge & gouernment of the empire, vntill the yong Emperor were come to
age. Vnto which common good liking, the Patriarch alſo (ſeeing no more, or peraduenture not
ſo much as the reſt) gaue his conſent. And ſo without longer ſtay, to the great cõtentment both
of the nobilitie and people in generall, made him gouernour of the empire, & tutor to the yong
F Emperour, wanting now nothing of an Emperour himſelfe, more than the title and imperiall
ornaments. This was the firſt ſtep whereby the aſpiring man (twice before in diſgrace with the
two late Emperours, *Iohn Ducas*, and his ſonne *Theodorus*) mounted at laſt vnto the empire.

It was not many daies after, but that his fauourits held another counſell, wherein it was alled-
ged, That it was not ſeemely for him that was tutor vnto the Emperour, gouernour of the ſtate
and empire, & to giue audience vnto the Embaſſadours of forraine nations, to want the honour

next vnto the Emperour, as well for the magnificence of the ſtate, as for the credit of his place: G whereupon he was both by the Patriarch and the young Emperour honoured with the title of the Deſpot, another ſtep vnto the empire. But what contentment finde the ambitious euen in the greateſt honours, ſo long as there is one aboue them? Little ſure, or none at all, more than that it ſerueth them to ſtep at next, vp to the higheſt: as did this new made Deſpot, who ſhortly after was by certaine of the nobilitie, his great fauourites, neere vnto MAGNESIA, with the great applauſe of the people, hoiſed vp and ſaluted Emperour. Whereof *Arſenius* the Patriarch hearing, was therewith much troubled, as fearing what would become of the young childe, the right heire of the empire. And firſt he was about to haue excommunicated, as well him that was made Emperour, as them that had ſo made him: but afterward changing his H purpoſe, for feare of greater troubles, he thought it better by ſolemne oath to binde both him and the reſt, that they ſhould not ſeeke after the life of the childe, or by any force or colour goe about to depriue him of the empire; which was ſo done. Yet it was not full a moneth after, but that euen he that had ſo great a care of the young childe, and ſo prouided for his ſafetie (perſwaded by them of the nobilitie and the clergie) with his owne hands, and all the accuſtomed ceremonies, ſet the imperiall crowne vpon this vſurpers head; yet not as vpon him that ſhould ſtill enioy the empire, but as vpon a man according to the preſent neceſſitie of the time and ſtate, thought fitteſt for ſo great a charge, vntill the young childe came to age; vnto whom then he was to giue place, and to reſigne to him the empire. All which being by more ſolemne oath than before confirmed, good newes (as the certaine ſignes of his fortunate I gouernment) were brought vnto him of a great victorie obtained by his captaines, againſt *Michael Angelus* Deſpot of ÆTOLIA and EPIRVS: who hauing maried the late Emperours daughter, and hearing of his death, with the great troubles in ASIA; aided by the King of SICILIA, and the Prince of PELOPONESVS and ACHAIA, his ſonnes in law, had thought in that hurle and perturbation of the ſtate, to haue taken vnto himſelfe the greateſt part of the Emperours territories in MACEDONIA and THRACIA: and for the ſame purpoſe was with a great armie entred into them, burning and ſpoiling the countrey before him; whereof *Michael Paleologus* (then but newly made Deſpot) hauing intelligence, ſent his brother *Iohn*, and ſome other his beſt captaines, with a great armie againſt him; by whom he with his complices were put to the worſe, and not without great loſſe enforced to retire: the ioyfull newes whereof he K receiued, euen as he was crowned. Which was ſhortly after confirmed by the comming of the great commanders themſelues, bringing with them the Prince of PELOPONESVS and ACHAIA, by them taken priſoner. Who for his ranſome was afterward glad to giue vnto the Emperour *Paleologus*, MONEMBASIA, MAINE, and SPARTA, three of the beſt cities of PELOPONESVS: whereinto he put ſtrong garriſons, vnder the command of *Conſtantinus* his brother by the mothers ſide, a right valiant captaine. By whoſe good ſeruice, and the commodious ſituation of the places, he gained diuers other townes and cities, and at length the greateſt part of PELOPONESVS, out of the hands of the Latines: for the vtter rooting out of whom, he ſhortly after with a great armie paſſed ouer into THRACIA, with purpoſe (as was thought) to haue beſieged CONSTANTINOPLE: but finding it to be a matter of more diffi- L culties than was before ſuppoſed, he left that, and laid ſiege to the caſtle of PERA, ouer againſt it on the other ſide of the hauen, in hope by winning of that caſtle to haue become maſter alſo of the towne: where he was notably repulſed, and enforced with loſſe to retire. So riſing with his armie, he fortified diuers caſtles and ſtrong holds in the countrey about CONSTANTINOPLE, and put into them ſtrong garriſons, charging them, with continuall incurſions to trouble the Conſtantinopolitanes, and to cut them ſo ſhort, if it were poſſible, as that they ſhould not dare to looke out at the gates of the citie. Which they ſo well performed, that in ſhort time the Latines in the citie were driuen to ſuch extremitie, that for want of wood they were faine to burne many of the faireſt houſes in the citie in ſtead of fewell; which done, he returned againe to NICE, the chiefe ſeat of the Greeke Emperours, euer ſince that CONSTANTINOPLE was M taken by the Latines.

Michael Paleologus crowned Emperour by Arſenius the Patriarch.

Now raigned in CONSTANTINOPLE the Latine Emperour *Baldwin* the ſecond (as is before declared) a man of ſmall courage, and leſſe power, and therfore not much regarded either of the Greekes or Latines: who for the maintenance of his ſtate was glad to ſell away the publike ornaments of the citie, and to pawne his ſonne vnto the Bruges merchants for money; by whom he

was

A was left at VENICE to be brought vp: which gaue occasion for some writers to report, That he was pawned vnto the Venetians.

About this time *Mango*, the great Chan of TARTARIE, stirred vp by *Aitonus* the Armenian king, by whose perswasion he had also receiued the Christian religion, sent his brother *Haalon* with an exceeding great armie against the Turks and Sarasins in SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE. This *Haalon* conuerted also vnto the Christian faith by his wife, setting forward with a world of people following him, in the space of six moneths ouerran all PERSIA, with the countries adioyning, excepting one strong place in the mountains (which some say was SAMARCHAND, afterward the royall seat of the great terrour of the world, the mightie *Tamerlaine*) which besieged by ten thousand horsemen, by him there left for that purpose, and so continued by the space of seuen and twentie yeares after, was then at length (as *Aiton* himselfe writeth) yeelded by the defendants, onely for want of clothes to couer their nakednesse. *Haalon* in whose armie those ten thousand (left behind) were not missed, marching on, and as a violent tempest bearing all downe before him, entered at length into ASSYRIA, and there laied siege vnto the great citie of BABYLON, then the seat of the great Caliph; whom all the Mahometan princes honoured aboue all others, as the true successour of their great prophet *Mahomet*, and receiued from his mouth the interpretation of their law, as most diuine oracles. Which great citie *Haalon* woon, and putting to sword all he found therein, men, women, and children, with the spoile therof and the rich treasures of the Caliph, enriched his souldiers. The Caliph himselfe (reserued for that purpose) he commaunded to be set in the middest of the infinit treasure which he and his predecessours had most couetously heaped vp together, and that he should of that gold siluer and precious stones take what it pleased him to eat, saying (by way of derision) That so gainefull a guest should by good reason be fed with nothing but things of greatest price, whereof he willed him to make no spare: In which order the couetous wretch kept for certaine daies, miserably died for hunger, in the middest of those things whereof he thought he should neuer haue had ynough; which though they were in valour great, and with great care laied together, yet serued they him not now to suffice nature, best contented with a little. BABYLON thus sacked, and almost rased, the Tartar marching on through MESOPOTAMIA, by the way tooke the citie of RHOAIS, where *Aiton* the Armenian king and author of this the Tartars expedition, came vnto him with twelue thousand horsemen, and fortie thousand foot, as reporteth *Aiton* the Armenian kings nephew, then there present. So entering into SYRIA, in a few daies tooke ALEPPO, which he sacked and rased in the yeare of our Lord 1260, with diuers other strong townes sometime belonging vnto the kingdome of ANTIOCH. Then was one *Malacnesar* Sultan of DAMASCO, commaunding ouer all SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE: who terrified with the losse of his cities, and the feare of farther danger, with his wife and children came and humbled himselfe before the Tartar prince, in hope so to haue saued vnto himselfe some good part of his kingdome. Wherein he was much deceiued, being (as some say) carried away a farre off into exile, because he should not hinder the Tartars proceedings: or as others report (and happely with more probabilitie) being by him detained as his prisoner, and afterwards to the terror of his sonne, cut in peeces in his sight vnder the walls of DAMASCO, after that it had in vaine beene twice assaulted by the Tartars: which strong citie for all that he afterwards tooke by strong hand, and sacked it, and by the perswasion of his wife ouerthrew all the Mahometane temples, as he had before in euery place where he came. But purposing to haue gone on forward to HIERVSALEM, and to haue conquered the whole land of PALESTINE, newes was brought him of the death of his brother *Mango*, the great Chan: whereupon he staied his iourney and returned backe againe, in hope of that great Empire, hauing in this expedition spent almost six yeares.

1260

Haalon the Tartar sent with a great armie against the Turks.

Aleppo rased by the Tartars.

Damasco woon.

Thus by the Tartars was the kingdome of the Turks at DAMASCO ouerthrowne. At which time, the broken affaires of the Christians in SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE, might easily haue beene repaired, and those two goodly kingdomes againe restored to the Christian commonweale, had the Christian princes of the West then in time put to their helping hands on the one side, as did the Tartars on the other: But they then at fatall discord among themselues, and busied with their warres at home, let slip that so faire an opportunitie, the like whereof they seldome or neuer had since. *Haalon* the Tartar prince, in token of his good will toward the Christians and their affaires, at his departure from DAMASCO left his sonne *Abaga* there with

twentie thouſand horſemen to aid them in their warres, if they ſhould come (as was expected) G
for the recouerie of the Holy land: who hauing there ſtayed ſome while, and hearing of his fathers troubles at home, followed himſelfe after him, but yet left behind him *Guirboca*, a valiant Captaine, with ten thouſand of his horſemen, to like purpoſe that his father had him: who by the inſolencie of certaine Chriſtian ſouldiers in garriſon about SIDON, was of a friend together with his Tartars made a foe. Theſe garriſon ſouldiers hauing by chance fet in ſome bootie out of the Tartars territorie, not onely refuſed to reſtore the ſame againe, but alſo foulely intreated ſuch as the Tartar had ſent for the demaunding thereof. Whereupon further quarrels ariſing, it fortuned a nephew of *Guirbocas*, a valiant yoong gentleman, to be ſlaine: in reuenge whereof he beſieged SIDON, and hauing taken it, ſacked it, and burnt it downe to the ground. H
After which time, he and his Tartars became vtter enemies vnto the Chriſtians, doing them all the harme they could deuiſe.

The Ægyptian Sultan inuadeth Siria.

This diſcord betwixt the Tartars & the Chriſtians, gaue occaſion vnto *Melech* the Ægyptian Sultan, now iealous of the Tartars neereneſſe, with a great armie of his Mamalukes & others to enter into SYRIA, and to ſpoile the countrey about DAMASCO; againſt whom *Guirboca* with his Tartars, although both in ſtrength and number far inferiour, went out. But ioyning battell with him at too much ods, and the victorie inclining vnto that ſide where moſt ſtrength was, he there valiantly fighting was ſlaine, with moſt part of his Tartars: ſuch as eſcaped fled into ARMENIA vnto the friendly king. By this victorie all SYRIA, with the land of PALESTINE, excepting ſome few places yet holdē by the Chriſtians, fell again into the hāds of the Ægyptian I
Sultans; as did ſome of them ſhortly after alſo: for *Bandocader* ſucceeding *Melech* in the Mamaluke kingdome, comming into SYRIA with a great armie, tooke ANTIOCH from the Chriſtians, and with it moſt of the other places before by them defended. The citie he burnt, and raſed the Caſtle down to the ground, and afterward entring into ARMENIA, did there great harme alſo.

Antioch taken from the Chriſtians.

Whileſt the Turks kingdome thus goeth to wracke in SYRIA, ruinated by the Tartars, but poſſeſſed by the Mamalukes; their affairs in the leſſer ASIA, now the whole hope of that nation, went not at that time much better: for *Iathatines* the Turkes Sultan, there alſo inuaded by the Tartars, and hauing loſt ICONIVM his regall citie, fled with his brother *Melech* to the Greeke Emperour *Michael Paleologus*, in hope to be of him relieued, for the kindneſſe he had not long before ſhewed him in like caſe, when as he fled from the late emperour *Theodore*; whereof now K
putting him in remembrance, he requeſted him either with ſome conuenient force to aid him, or els to aſſigne vnto him ſome corner in his large Empire where he might in ſafetie reſt with his wife and children, and other followers, whom with much wealth he had brought with him in great number. The Emperour on euery ſide himſelfe incombred with warres, thought it not good in ſo great newneſſe of his Empire, to deminiſh his owne forces: and to aſſigne vnto him any place to inhabit, ſeemed no leſſe dangerous; for that he hauing been a great Prince, and commanding ouer many great countries, and brought vp in all princely royaltie, was not like to content himſelfe with a little: beſide that, his Nobilitie, then diſperſed by the Tartars, were like ynough in great numbers to reſort vnto him, as vnto their Head, ſo ſoone as they ſhould once heare that he were ſeated in any place: and yet vnkindly to caſt him off that had ſo hono- L
rably vſed him in like extremitie, the Emperour was loath. And therefore feeding him vp with faire words, and foording him on from time to time with delaies, he held him a great while as a man in ſuſpence, betwixt hope and deſpaire. At length in the abſence of the Emperour (though happily not without his priuitie) he was commaunded with all his traine, in number about twelue hundred, to get him to ÆNVS, a citie of THRACIA, ſtanding vpon the ſea coaſt: where he much diſcontented, liued like an honourable priſoner at large, but with the watchfull eyes of ſo many vpon him, as that he could by no meanes (as he deſired) eſcape. In which caſe we will for a while leaue him, to feed vpon his owne melancholy thoughts.

1261 Now had *Michaell Paleologus* the Emperour raigned at NICE two yeares, when new troubles began againe to ariſe in the Weſt part of his empire in EVROPE ſide, by the trecherie of M
Michaell Angelus, Deſpot of EPIRVS. For the ſpeedie repreſſing whereof, he ſent one *Alexius Strategopulus*, a worthie captaine & a man of great nobilitie (whom for his good ſeruice againſt the ſaid Deſpot, he had in the beginning of his raigne made *Cæſar*) with little aboue 800. Bythinian ſouldiers, and commiſſion for the taking vp of ſo many mo as he ſhould for that ſeruice need, in MACEDONIA and THRACIA: commaunding him when he had paſſed the ſtrait, with

thoſe

A thoſe ſouldiers to take his way thorow the ſuburbs of CONSTANTINOPLE, to terrifie the Latines, whom he was loth to ſuffer too long to liue in reſt and quiet, or to ſtirre too farre out of the gates, but to keepe them as priſoners coupt vp within the wals of the citie. This warlike captaine with this handfull of men, paſſing ouer PROPONTIS, encamped at REGIVM, not farre from CONSTANTINOPLE; where by chance lighting vpon certaine poore labouring men, Greekes borne in the citie, and there dwelling, he diligently inquired of them the ſtate thereof, and of what ſtrength the Latines were, with many other things, ſuch as he was deſirous to know: who not onely told him that the ſtrength of the Latines was but ſmall, but alſo that the greateſt part thereof was gone to the ſiege of DAPHNVSIA, a towne not farre off vpon the
B ſide of the EVXINE ſea: and withall (as Greekes euill affected to the gouernment of the Latines, and deſirous of the libertie of their countrey) offered of themſelues to ſhew him a means how to giue him entrance into the citie. Theſe poore men dwelt within the citie, cloſe by one of the gates, neere whereunto by an old ruinous mine almoſt ſwarued vp, was a ſecret vnſuſpected way into the citie, not knowne to any but to themſelues: By this blinde hole they promiſed him by night to receiue in fiftie of his beſt ſouldiers; which ſuddenly ſetting vpon the watch faſt by, and diſpatching them out of the way, might preſently breake open the gate, and ſo let in the reſt of the armie: whereunto they promiſed themſelues with their friends to put to their helping hands, aſſuring him of the good ſucceſſe thereof. This plot for the betraying of the citie thus laid and agreed vpon, *Alexius* the *Cæſar* well rewarding the men, and filling them with
C greater promiſes, ſent them away: who as if they had beene about their countrey worke, were after their wonted manner receiued into the citie, without ſuſpition at all. And within a few dayes after according to their promiſe, at an appointed houre receiued in by night the aforeſaid fiftie ſouldiers; who aided by them, preſently ſlew the watch, and brake open the gate: whereby *Alexius* entring a little before day, in conuenient place put his men in order of battell; and afterward to the greater terrour of the Latines, cauſed the citie to be ſet on fire in foure places, which increaſed with the winde, burnt in moſt terrible manner, and was in ſhort time come almoſt to the Emperours palace. Who ſcarce well awaked, and ſeeing the citie all on a fire about his eares, and the enemie comming on; was about at the firſt with thoſe few Latines that hee had (for Greekes he had none) to haue made head againſt them. But better aduiſed, and perceiuing it to be now to no purpoſe, he (the laſt of the Latine Emperors that euer raigned in CON-
D STANTINOPLE) with *Iuſtinian* the Latine Patriarch, and ſome other of his friends, fled by ſea into EVBOCA, and ſo from thence afterwards vnto VENICE, and afterwards to *Lewis* the French King, in hope to haue beene by him and the Venetians relieued. After whom fled alſo all the reſt of the Latines. Thus the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE by great fortune fell againe into the hands of the Greekes, in the yeere 1261, after it had beene in poſſeſſion of the Latines about 58 yeeres.

The ioyfull newes of the recouerie of the imperiall citie, was in ſhort time carried vnto *Michael Paleologus* the Greeke Emperour at NICE; who at the firſt beleeued it not, as thinking it ſcarce poſſible ſo ſtrong a citie to haue beene by ſo weake a power ſurpriſed, whereas he him-
E ſelfe not long before was not able with a right puiſſant armie, and much other warlike prouiſion, to win the little caſtle of GALATA ouer againſt it. But afterwards aſſured of the truth thereof, with his hands and eyes caſt vp towards heauen, gaue moſt heartie thankes to God therefore; cauſing hymnes and pſalmes of thankſgiuing to be ſolemnly ſung in euery church, with all the other ſignes of ioy and triumph that could be deuiſed. So ſetting all other things apart, he wholly buſied himſelfe in making preparation for his going to CONSTANTINOPLE, now once againe the ſeat of the Greeke empire: wherein, and in trauelling hauing ſpent many dayes, he at length with the Empreſſe his wife and *Andronicus* his ſonne, then but two yeeres old, as if it had beene in ſolemne proceſſion, on foot entred into the citie, by the gate called the Golden Gate; and ſo after praiers and thankes giuen, went to the palace prepared for him
F neere vnto the Tilt-yard: for the other imperiall palaces of greater beautie (ſometime the ſtately dwellings of the greateſt Emperours of the Greekes) had now of long during the raigne of the Latines, lien ruinous, or altogether defaced. And ſhortly after, becauſe vertue and true deſert ſhould not want their due honour, he cauſed *Alexius Cæſar* (by whoſe meanes the citie was recouered) in ſolemne triumph in his roabs of honour, with a crowne vpon his head, not much inferiour vnto the imperiall crowne, with great pompe to be carried thorow all the

Paleologus the Greeke Emperour taketh poſſeſſion of the citie of Conſtantinople.

citie;

citie : and farther commanded, that his name for one yeere next following, in all ſolemne G
praiers and hymnes of thankſgiuing, ſhould be ioyned with the name of the Emperor himſelfe.
And yet not thinking to haue done him honour enough, cauſed his liuely image afterward to
be moſt curiouſly made, and as a trophie to be ſet vpon a faire marble pillar, before the great
church of the holy Apoſtles, in perpetuall remembrance of him, and that he had done for the
deliuerie of his countrey; which ſhortly after ouerthrowne by an earthquake, was by his ſonne
againe reſtored. Now was this great and famous citie, ſometime the beautie of the world, by
theſe ſtrange and fatall mutations, wonderfully defaced, and brought to great deſolation : in
euery place was to be ſeene great heapes, or rather (to ſay the truth) great hils of rubbidge,
the eternall witneſſes of the ruine thereof; the houſes ſtood ſome quite fallen downe, ſome H
readie to follow after, and ſome other great and ſtately buildings now the ſmall reliques of
great fires : for the great beautie thereof was before, at ſuch time as the Latines tooke it, moſt
defaced by fire; who all the time that they had it, ceaſed not night and day to deſtroy ſome
part or other of it, as if they had knowne they ſhould not long keepe it; neither did this laſt
fire raiſed by the Greekes themſelues to terrifie the Latines, a little deforme it : for which cauſe
the Emperours chiefe care now was to cleanſe the citie, and in beſt ſort he could to reforme ſo
great a confuſion of things not to be all at once amended; firſt beginning with the churches,
which ruinous or readie to fall, he repaired; and next to that filled the emptie houſes with new
inhabitants. And albeit that the chiefe of the Latines were together with the Emperour fled
and gone, yet was the moſt part of the artificers and tradeſmen of the citie, Venetians, and of I
them of PISA, mingled together; vnto whom alſo to ioyne the Genowaies, and ſo to fill the
citie with Latines, he thought it not altogether ſafe, although that by them he reaped great pro-
fit : wherefore he aſſigned vnto them the citie of GALATA now called PERA, on the other ſide
of the hauen, for them to inhabit; granting them great priuiledges, and euery of thoſe compa-
nies to be gouerned by a Conſull or Poteſtate of their owne. As for the imperiall citie it ſelfe, he
ſtored it (ſo neere as he could) with naturall Greekes borne.

Paleologus iea-lous of his eſtate

Now although all things went as *Paleologus* the Emperour could himſelfe haue wiſhed; yet
could he not reſt ſo contented, for feare leſt thoſe which now did eat their owne hearts, and with
great griefe ſmouldred their anger, ſhould at length as the rightfull heires of the empire by him
vſurped, breake out into open force, and ſo breed him great troubles, yea and perhaps worke K
his confuſion. For ſuch is the tormenting ſtate of vſurping tyrants, neuer to thinke themſelues
ſafe ſo long as any one liueth, whom they may ſuſpect. Wherefore at once to rid himſelfe of
this feare, he thought it beſt ſo to diſpoſe of the children of the late Emperour *Theodorus Laſca-
ris*, as that he ſhould not need of them to ſtand in doubt : to take them out of the way, beſides
that it was a thing odious, he ſaw it like to be vnto him alſo dangerous; *Marie* and *Theodora* (two
of the eldeſt daughters) being before by their father maried vnto two great Princes, (one, the
Deſpot of EPIRVS, and the other Prince of BVLGARIA) with whom he had much before to
doe, and of them yet ſtood in ſome doubt; but theſe were ſafe enough out of his reach. Other
two younger ſiſters there were in his cuſtodie, *Theodora* and *Irene*, with their brother *Iohn*, the
only heire of the empire : *Theodora* he maried vnto one *Belicurt*, a gentleman of PELOPONE- L
SVS; and *Irene* to one *Vigintimilio* of GENVA; both Latines, men of no great birth or power,
ſuch as he needed not to ſtand in doubt of. Theſe two Ladies, the daughters of ſo great an Em-
perour as was *Theodorus*, thus baſely beſtowed; remained onely their brother *Iohn*, the onely
heire of the empire, then but ten yeeres old, whom *Paleologus* long before euen in the beginning
of his raigne, had ſent vnto MAGNESIA, there to be ſafely kept farre off from the court, for
feare leſt in his right and quarrell ſome diſcontented perſons deſirous of innouation, ſhould
beginne ſome new ſtirres dangerous to his eſtate. Which indignitie done vnto the young
Prince, *Arſenius* the Patriarch (put in truſt by his father for the bringing of him vp) tooke in
ſo euill part, that he forſooke the court with all his eccleſiaſticall dignities, and as a man wearie
of the world, retired himſelfe vnto a little monaſterie of *Paſcaſins* in the countrey, there to M
ſpend the reſt of his dayes. From whence for all that he was after the taking of CONSTAN-
TINOPLE from the Latines, almoſt againſt his will drawne thither by *Paleologus* the Em-
perour, and made Patriarch thereof, there together with ſo great an honour to finde his
greater diſcontent. For *Paleologus* the vſurper, altogether vnmindfull of his faith ſo ſolemnly
before giuen, for the ſafetie of the young Prince, and the reſtoring vnto him of his empire; and

now

A now fully reſolued to eſtabliſh vnto him and his poſteritie the ſoueraignetie of ſo great an Empire, howſoeuer it was got, cauſed the young Princes eies to be moſt cruelly put out: the vſuall practiſe of the tyrants of the Eaſt, vpon ſuch as they are loath or feare to kill, and yet would make them vnfit for gouernment. Of which barbarous crueltie, his ſiſter *Theodora* (married to *Conſtantinus* prince of BVLGARIA) hearing, ceaſſed not with teares and praiers and all other womanly perſuaſions, to ſtir vp her husband in reuenge thereof: whereunto alſo *Iathatines* the Turks Sultan, gaue no ſmall furtherance; who wearie of exile, and to bee ſo into a corner confined, as into a priſon from whence hee might not ſtart, by ſecret meſſengers intreated the Bulgarian prince to make war vpon the vſurping emperour: promiſing him a great ſumme
B of money, if by his helpe hee might recouer his former libertie. Wherewith hee the rather mooued, with a great power of his owne, and aboue twentie thouſand Tartars which then lay by the riuer ISTER, ſuddenly brake into the Emperours territories, and in ſhorter time than was to haue beene thought, ouerran all the countrey of THRACIA euen vnto the ſea ſide, leauing neither man nor beaſt in all the countrey as he went: in good hope alſo to haue by the way ſurprized the Emperour himſelfe, euen then returning from his warres againſt the Deſpot in THESSALIE: who hearing of his ſpeedie comming, being got vnto the ſea ſide, and (hauing no way left to haue eſcaped by land) ſhipped himſelfe into a galley of the Latines, which with another her conſert bound for CONSTANTINOPLE, by good hap put in there for to water, and ſo in two daies arriued in ſafetie at the imperiall citie. Thus diſappointed of
C the Emperour, all his care was for the deliuerie of the Turks Sultan. Wherefore marching in haſt to ÆNVM, he ſo terrified the citizens with his comming, that they without farther delay deliuered him into his hands, ſo to redeeme their owne peace. In his returne you might haue ſeene the ſouldiers, eſpecially the Tartars, driuing before them infinit numbers both of men and cattell, in ſuch ſort, as that in the open countrey of THRACIA for a ſpace, was hardly to be ſeene either countreyman or beaſt, it was ſo cleane ſwept both of inhabitants, and likewiſe of cattell.

Paleologus cauſeth the yong emperours eyes to be put out.

Iathatines the Sultan by the Tartars carried ouer ISTER, and ſo by them ſet at libertie, ſhortly after died. In whoſe kingdome ſucceeded not his ſonne *Melicke* (as ſome write) but two others (as the Turkes themſelues report) the one called *Meſoot*, the ſonne of *Kei-Cubades*,
D and the other *Kei-Cubades*, the ſonne of *Feramcine*, borne alſo of the *Selzuctian* family, as were all the other Turkes Sultans, but how neere of blood vnto the late Sultan *Iathatines* they ſay not. Betwixt which two, as his vaſſals, *Gazan* the great Tartar Chan (by whom they were ſo preferred) for the payment of a yearely tribute, diuided the Turkes kingdome: aportioning vnto *Meſcoot* the cities of AMIDA in antient time called AMISVS, & AMINSVS in GALATIA, MELATIA otherwiſe called MELETINE in the leſſer ARMENIA, SIVASTE, in antient time SEBASTIA, and HARBERIE, before SATABREA, both in CAPPADOCIA, with all the countrey about them. And vnto *Kei-Cubades*, ICONIVM, the auncient ſeat of the Turkiſh Sultans, with all RVMILIA ASIATICA, or the countries of the leſſer ASIA alongſt the ſea coaſt; which theſe two princes held as the Tartars tributaries, as had the late Sultan *Iathatines* before them, vntill ſuch time as he was by the ſame Tartars againe expulſed. So that the
E Turks kingdome, which had of long time flouriſhed in the *Selzuccian* familie in PERSIA, in SYRIA, PALESTINE, and ÆGYPT, there quite ouerthrown by the Mamalukes and Tartars (as is before declared) & now brought vnderfoot in the leſſer ASIA alſo, where only reſted all the hope of that nation, was now at a low ebbe, deuided betwixt two weake princes, raigning but at the deuotion of the Tartar. In which confuſion of the Turkiſh Empire, ſo rent, not onely diuers men of greater power and authoritie amongſt them, ſhared vnto themſelues, ſome one corner of the declining kingdome, and ſome another: but many of the obſcure and baſeſt people alſo, bearing with them nothing but their bowes and arrowes, tooke the ſtrait paſſages of the mountaines, and from thence with their dayly incurſions did much harme in the
F countries of the Chriſtians ioyning vpon them: which was no great matter for them to doe; the garriſons which were woont to defend the ſame, being for want of pay quite disbanded, and the Caſtles vpon the frontiers by them abandoned; which at the firſt, as a thing of ſmall importance neglected, was at length vnto the Greekes a great cauſe of the ruine and decay of the greateſt part of their ſtate in ASIA. Theſe miſcheefes vnregarded, grew dayly more and more, the Turkes ſtill gaining vpon the Greekes what they loſt vnto the Tartars. Whoſe

Iathatines dieth in exile.

inua-

inuasions (the glorie of their kingdome only excepted) was not so hurtfull vnto them, as the G
cause of their much greater felicitie afterwards. At length it fortuned, that a great power of
these aduenturous Turks meeting together in PAPHLAGONIA, were about to haue inuaded
the territories of the Christians: against whom *Michael Paleologus* the Emperour sent out a
strong and puissant armie to stay their further comming on, lest breaking in that way, they
should without resistance at their pleasure forrage the countrey before them. Which armie
conducted by vnskilfull captaines, encountering with the Turks, was by them in a great bat-
tell ouerthrowne and vtterly defeated, few or none of all that great multitude escaping: for
whilest the Greekes vnaduisedly pursued the Turks, retiring of purpose before them, they were
by them drawne into the danger of a greater power lying in ambush for them, and so entrap- H
ped, were slaine with an exceeding great slaughter. After which so great a victorie (the be-
ginning of the miserie of the Christians in the lesser ASIA) the Turks without let or stay ouer-
ran all the countrey, vnto the riuer SANGARIVS: vpon the banks whereof the Greeke Empe-
rour was glad to fortifie diuers townes and forts to keepe them out of BITHINIA. Neuerthe-
lesse, they in short time after subdued all the countries from PONTVS and GALATIA, vnto
the LYCIAN and CARIAN sea, and the riuer EVRIMEDON, which they diuided amongst
them into diuers Toparchies: little or nothing acknowledging the soueraignitie either of *Me-
soot*, or *Kei-Cubades*.

Whilest the Turks in the lesser ASIA thus win from the Christians on the one side, and lose
to the Tartars on the other; many an hard conflict in the mean time passed betwixt the Ægyp- I
tian Sultans with their Mamalukes, and the Tartars, for the soueraignitie of SYRIA. The poore
remainder of the Christians all that while there, in doubt both of the one and of the other: from
whom and from the Armenians (then also much infested by the Mamalukes) diuers embassa-
dours were sent vnto the Pope and the Christian Princes of the West, to craue their aid and
helpe in that their hard estate: whose praiers little preuailing with the rest, yet so moued *Lewis*
the French King, & *Henry* the third, then raigning in ENGLAND, that they both promised them
aid. Whereupon *Lewis* a man of great deuotion, and alwaies forward in that seruice against the
Infidels, tooke vpon him the crosse, the cognisance of the sacred warre; causing his three sons,
Philip that succeeded him in the kingdome, surnamed the Faire, *Peter* Countie of ALANCON,
and *Iohn* Countie of NEVERS (surnamed *Tristan*, for that his mother was in her greatest heaui- K
nesse for the taking of her husband, deliuered of him in ÆGYPT) and most of the nobilitie of
FRANCE to doe the like: vnto whom also *Theobald* King of NAVAR his sonne in law, *Alphon-
sus* his brother, and *Guydo* Earle of FLANDERS, ioyned themselues. And so hauing put all things
in readinesse, tooke his way to MARSEILLES, and from thence embarking himselfe with his ar-
mie in the Genowaies ships, hired for that purpose, set forward the first of March in the yeere

1270 1270. But being at sea, he was by force of weather constrained to land in SARDINIA, and there
Carthage besie-ged by K. Lewis. to stay a while: departing thence, he at length arriued at CARTHAGE, the place by him desired,
where in the entrance of the hauen he surprised certaine of the enemies ships; but landing his
men, & assaulting the towne, he was there notably repulsed. This is not that ancient great & fa-
mous citie which somtime mightily stroue with the proud mistresse of the world for soueraign- L
tie, but another built long after in the ruines, or at least not farre from the ruines of the same. In
the besieging whereof, the Frenchmen found such resistance, as well put them in remembrance
of the ancient glorie of the Carthaginians. One day it fortuned as the King thus lay at the siege,
that the defendants made a great & fierce sallie out vpon the Frenchmen, who before comman-
ded so to doe, by little and little retired, to draw their enemies farther on: betwixt whom and the
citie, the Constable with a great power comming in & charging them behinde, and they which
before retired now standing close vnto them, they were on both sides hardly beset; who for all
that, as became valiant men, worthily defended themselues, & made there a great fight, though
not without extreme perill: which they in the citie beholding, gaue out a most hideous and
piteous crie, a certaine signe of their hard estate within; astonying with the suddennesse thereof, M
both their friends & their enemies. But whilest they of the towne betwixt hope & despaire stood
thus beholding the fight at land, the Frenchmen by sea approching a bulwark on that side of the
Carthage won. towne, tooke it without resistance: which so dismaid them without, that they began forthwith
to flie, of whom the greatest part casting away their weapons, were by the Kings commande-
ment taken to mercie; and they likewise of the towne vpon promise of their liues, yeelded the

same

A ſame vnto the King. CARTHAGE thus won, the King laid ſiege vnto TVNES, the chiefe citie of that kingdome, being not farre off: where by the way he was encountred by the King of the country, who hauing there loſt ten thouſand of his Moores, betooke himſelfe to flight with the reſt. Who thus ouerthrowne, reſolued no more to tempt fortune, but to keepe himſelfe ſafe within the wals of his citie, if happily ſo he might (as it oftentimes falleth out) more weaken his enemies by lying ſtill and protracting the time, than by open force and valour. Which their purpoſe King *Lewis* perceiuing, reſolued not to ſtirre from thence vntill that he were become maſter of the citie; which as it ſeemed, could not hold out for want of victuals, conſidering the multitude of people that were got into it. Neuertheleſſe thus beſieged both by ſea
B and land, and ſo ſtraightly hemmed in on euery ſide, as that no reliefe could poſſibly be brought vnto it; yet held it out by the ſpace of ſix moneths. After which time wants daily more and more increaſing among the beſieged, embaſſadours were ſent out to the King, to intreat with him of peace: But whileſt theſe embaſſadours goe to and fro, and reaſon vpon the capitulations of the deſired peace, behold a great and furious plague aroſe in the French campe, which began to cut them downe by heapes: there died *Iohn Triſtan* Countie of NEVERS, the Kings youngeſt ſonne, borne in the firſt expedition that the ſaid King his father made into the holy Land, euen at ſuch time as he was taken priſoner; which *Triſtan* died the 25 day of Auguſt, in the yeere of our Lord 1270. The good King hauing yet ſcarcely performed the obſequies of his ſonne, fell ſicke of the bloudie flix, whereof he there ſhortly after
C died alſo. About which time arriued there *Charles* King of SICILIE, the French Kings brother, with a great number of freſh ſouldiers: whoſe comming lightned ſomewhat the Frenchmens hearts (heauie for the death of their King) and daunted the Moores, before bragge of the ſame. Shortly after whom arriued there alſo Prince *Edward*, King *Henry* the third his eldeſt ſonne, who trauelling thorow FRANCE, and taking ſhipping at AQVESMORT, not farre from MARSEILLES, was now in ten dayes with a braue companie of Engliſhmen come to TVNES; and there of the other Chriſtian Princes, namely of *Philip* the French King (his father *Lewis* being now dead) of *Charles* King of SICILIE, and of the two Kings of NAVAR and ARAGON, ioyfully receiued. But theſe Princes had a little before his arriuall concluded a peace with the Moores King, and the Infidels, vpon condition that he ſhould pay a yeerely tribute of
D fortie thouſand crownes vnto the King of SICILIA; and to ſuffer the Chriſtian religion to be freely preached in his dominions, by ſuch deuout perſons as ſhould be there left for that purpoſe; and that vnto ſuch perſons as ſhould by their preaching be conuerted vnto the faith in Chriſt Ieſus, it ſhould be lawfull for them to be baptized, and to profeſſe the Chriſtian religion. Of which peace, Prince *Edward* vnderſtanding, did what he might to haue diſſwaded them from the ſame, ſaying, that the warre was by them all taken in hand againſt the Infidels, as enemies vnto the croſſe of Chriſt, with whom they were not to haue peace: and for the recouerie of the Holy Citie. But ſay what he would, and what he could, the peace (to his great diſcontentment) was now concluded, which they might not (as they ſaid) againe breake: and thereupon with the firſt faire winde hoiſſed ſaile, and returned towards SICILIA, with purpoſe the
E next Spring to haue gone into SYRIA; which their determination was ſhortly after by the hand of God diſappointed. For being come vpon the coaſt of the Iſland not farre from DREPANVM, moſt of the great Princes & other nobilitie, in their long boats went on land, the reſt of the fleet lying at anker about a league off; for that being for the moſt part ſhips of great burthen, they were not able to put into the harbour: But as they ſo lay, by force of a ſudden and violent tempeſt then ariſing, ſome were eaten vp with the rough ſea; ſome falling foule one of another, there periſhed together; others driuen vpon the maine, were there beaten in peeces: ſo that of that great fleet, before the ſtorme ceaſed, periſhed about an hundred and twentie ſaile, with all the people, as well mariners as ſouldiers left in them, and great ſtore both of armour and munition: In ſuch ſort that moſt of the common ſouldiers and mariners which had eſca-
F ped the plague at TVNES, there vpon the coaſt of SICILIA periſhed by ſhipwracke. Only Prince *Edwards* fleet, being in number but thirteene ſhips, eſcaped free without loſſe either of ſhip or man. Neither were they that were got to land at DREPANVM in much better caſe, the plague ſtill following them; whereof died *Theobald* King of NAVAR, and *Iſabel* his wife, King *Lewis* his daughter, *Elizabeth* the French Queene, with a wonderfull number of noble gentlemen, and other common ſouldiers; in ſuch ſort that *Philip* the French King diſcouraged

The Chriſtian Princes returning from Tunes ſuffer ſhipwracke vpon the coaſt of Sicilia.

discouraged with the greatnesse of the mortalitie, and the miserable losse at sea, resolued there to make an end of the intended warre, and so returned into FRANCE, as did the rest that were left, euery man into his owne countrey. Only Prince *Edward* hauing passed that Winter in SICILIA, with the first of the next Spring set forward againe on his voyage, and in fifteene dayes after arriued with his fleet at PTOLEMAIS: where after he had by the space of a moneth rested himselfe and his souldiers after their long trauell, and fully inquired of the state of the country, he with six or seuen thousand souldiers marching from PTOLEMAIS about twentie miles into the land, tooke NAZARETH, and put to sword all them he found therein, and so againe returned. After whom the enemies following, in hope to haue taken him at some aduantage, he vnderstanding thereof, turned backe vpon them, and killing a great number of them, put the rest to flight. And after that about Midsummer, vnderstanding that the Sarasins were againe making head at a place called CAKHOW, about fortie miles off, he set forwards towards them; and comming vpon them early in the morning, before they were aware, slew aboue a thousand of them, and dispersed the rest. Aided also by the nobilitie of CYPRVS, he with like successe as before, made a third expedition against the Infidels: insomuch, that his fame began to grow great amongst them, and they to stand of him in no little dread. But whilest he thus preuailed, he was by foule treacherie almost taken out of the way. The Admirall of IOPPA faigning himselfe desirous to become a Christian, and willing to further the Princes proceedings, had by a secret messenger and letters sundrie times intelligence with him, as well concerning his owne good entertainment, as the effecting of that which he had promised. This messenger by the Admirall thus imployed, was (though to the Prince vnknowne) one of the *Assasines*, a companie of most desperate and dangerous men among the Mahometans, who strongly deluded with the blinde zeale of their superstition, and accounting it meritorious, by any means to kill any great enemie of their religion; for the performance thereof, as men prodigall of their liues, desperately aduenture themselues vnto all kinde of dangers. So now this messenger, before resolued to die, comming the fift time vnto the Prince, and being searched for hauing any weapon about him, as the manner was, had accesse vnto him, then lying in his chamber vpon his bed, in his ierkin, bare headed, because of the heat of the weather: where after due reuerence done, hee pulled out certaine letters from his Lord vnto the Prince, which hee read with great delight, as penned of purpose for to please. But as he was farther questioning with him of many matters, and all the companie voided, the desperate messenger making as though he would haue pulled out some other secret letters, suddenly pluckt out an enuenomed knife, which he had secretly hidden about him, thinking to haue strucke him into the bellie as he lay: for the auoiding of which stroke, the Prince lifting vp his arme, was therein grieuously wounded. But as the villaine was about to haue doubled the stroke, the Prince with his foot gaue him such a blow, that hee felled him to the ground, and with that starting vp, caught him by the hand, where in strugling with him for the knife, in wresting it out of his hand, he hurt himselfe therewith in the forehead: but getting it from him, presently thrust it into the murtherers bellie, and so slew him. The Princes seruants being not farre off, and hearing the busteling, came running in; where finding the messenger dead on the floore, one of them with a stoole beat out his braines: whereat the Prince tooke some displeasure, for so striking a dead man. This danger of the Princes much troubled and grieued all the Christians in SYRIA, and the more, for that the wound in his arme, after it had beene certaine dayes well dressed by the skilfull Surgeons and Physitians, began to mortifie and grow blacke, insomuch, that they and others about him began to mutter among themselues, and to looke heauily vpon the matter, as not without danger. Which he perceiuing, said vnto them: Why whisper you thus among your selues? What see you in mee? Can I not be healed? Tell mee the truth, and feare not. Whereunto one of them answered: And like your Highnesse, wee doubt not of your healing, but that it will be painfull for you to suffer. If suffering (said hee) may againe restore my health, I commit my selfe vnto you, worke on me your skill, and spare not. So the next day they cut out all the dead and poisoned flesh out of his arme, and in fifteene dayes after perfectly cured his wound, to the great reioycing of all his people. The great Sultan to cleere himselfe of this so dishonourable a trecherie, sent three of his noblemen vnto the Prince, calling to witnesse his false Prophet, that the same was done neither by him nor his consent. Which embassadours the Prince honourably vsed, but suffered them

1271 *Prince Edward arriueth at Ptolemais.*

Prince Edward wounded.

C H K L M

A them not to come nigh him. So hauing taried eighteene moneths at PTOLEMAIS, and no aid comming from the other Christian princes as was expected, he tooke shipping; and returning homeward, landed first in SICILIA, and from thence crossing ouer into APVLIA, and so trauelling to ROME, was there honourably entertained by *Gregorie* the tenth, then Pope; and from thence by the way of FRANCE arriued in ENGLAND, where he was shortly after crowned King in the yeare 1272, his father the old King, *Henrie* the third, being a little before his returne dead.

The yeare following, *Gregorie* the tenth, not ignorant of the hard estate of the Christians in SYRIA (as hauing there bin of late himselfe with prince *Edward*, at which time he was in his ab- 1273
B sence elected Pope) and now desirous to procure them some reliefe, ratified the election of *Rodulphus* of HAPSPVRGH vnto the Empire, vpon condition, That he should promise to take vpon him selfe the crosse, and to giue them reliefe: for the performance whereof, he offered vnto the Emperour two hundred thousand crownes, with the tenths both of the Cleargie and Temporaltie for sixe yeares: and many goodly blessings were in his name also, by the preachers of that time, promised vnto all such as should with him take vpon them that sacred warre. Whereupon the Emperour with all his familie tooke vpon them the crosse, the signe of the sacred expedition intended; as did also the Duke of LORRAINE shortly after, with some others: Neuertheless, the Emperour otherwaies busied in warres against the Bohemians and Bauarians, and delaying still the time, as not greatly willing to take vpon him so long and dan-
C gerous a iourney, and the Pope still threatening his high sentence of excommunication, the time passed, the Pope died, and nothing was as yet done. Vntill that at length the Emperour hauing happily finished his warres in BOHEMIA, and finding himselfe at some good leisure in some part to discharge his vow, and to satisfie the expectation the world had of long conceiued of him, sent *Henrie* prince of MEGAPOLIS, or as the Germanes call it, MECKELBVRG, with a strong power into SYRIA, to performe what himselfe had promised. Who comming to PTOLEMAIS made many notable incursions into the countrey about DAMASCO, with fire and sword destroying all before him as he went, and carrying thence many great and rich boo-
ties; vntill that at length he was by the Mamalukes circumuented and taken prisoner, and so ca- *Henry the prince taken prisoner & sent to Caire.*
D ried vnto the Sultan at CAIRE, where he remained in strait prison sixe and twentie yeares after; vntill that by chance one of the Mamalukes (a renegate Germane) being chosen Sultan, caused him to be brought before him, and at his comming demaunded of him, If it would not doe him good to celebrate the remembrance of the natiuitie of his Christ with his friends in GERMANIE? (for now that time of the yeare was at hand) And I know (said the Sultan) that thou art so addicted vnto thy superstition, that thou respectest the same more than thy libertie. Truth (said *Henrie*) mightie prince: for libertie would auaile me nothing, if Christ by his most milde incarnation had not taken away our captiuitie: and therefore how much all men owe vnto the reuerend remembrance thereof, I would to God thou, O king, diddest also vnderstand, which as I most heartely wish, so I would I could thereof perswade thee. God forbid (said the Sultan) for I remem ber, that at such time as I was cheefe enginer vnto thy father at KNESE-FENICKE in
E LIVONIA, & there did him good seruice, I was altogether of the Christian perswasion; but now hauing left that common error, haue therewith also changed my priuat fortune. But as for thy religion, I haue nothing to say, my talke is only concerning thy libertie: Wouldest thou therefore gladly be free, and so returne home to thy friends? That nature craueth (said *Henrie*) although my fortune gainesaieth, which yet dependeth of your pleasure: I desire indeed to returne home, which if you shall denie me, I must as I haue done, take it in good part; assuring my selfe, that my wife *Anastasia*, with my beloued sonnes *Henrie*, *Leo*, and *Iohn*, haue long since celebrated my funerals, & ended their mourning. Thou art deceiued (said the Sultan) for I am sure that they know that thou yet liuest, and pray most heartely for thy returne: Truly I owe much vnto the remembrance of thy father, and therefore this day giue thee thy libertie. And hauing
F so said, furnished him with all things necessarie, and gaue him leaue to depart with one *Martin* his seruant, who taken with him, had borne him companie all the long time of his captiuitie. So taking his leaue of the Sultan, he came to PTOLEMAIS: but shipping himselfe for CYPRVS, he was by the way by certaine pyrates taken at sea, and as a fugitiue captiue brought backe againe vnto the Sultan: who pitying his hard fortune, set him againe at libertie, and by a ship set out for that purpose, transported him into CYPRVS: where he was by the Queene of that

Rodulph the emperour taketh vpon him the Crosse.

Iſland his aunt (as ſome ſay) honourably entertained, and ſo furniſhed of all things fit for his G
eſtate. Departing thence, he came to MARSEILLES, where after he had ſome few dayes re-
freſhed himſelfe, he from thence trauelled by land home into his owne countrey: where at the
firſt he was not knowne of his owne children and friends, as being growne old in priſon, and
by them long before accounted among the dead; but now at laſt found againe, and by them
known, he was of his children ioyfully receiued as their father, & of his ſubiects as their Prince.
Howbeit he ſhortly after died, and was honourably buried in the monaſterie of DOBRAN.

Thus in the whole courſe of this hiſtorie it appeareth by that which is alreadie written, what
notable expeditions euen the greateſt Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt, to their immortall glorie,
from time to time vndertooke againſt the enemies of Chriſt and his moſt ſacred word, and for H
the reliefe of the poore diſtreſſed Chriſtians in SYRIA and in the land of PALESTINE:
whereof as diuers of them had right glorious ſucceſſe, vnto the great profit of the Chriſtian
common weale; ſo ſome of them anſwered not with like euent, as vndertaken with too ſmall
ſtrength, or otherwiſe ouerthrowne by the diſcord or malice of the Chriſtians themſelues, ra-
ther than by the enemies force. Which neuertheleſſe how vnfortunately ſoeuer they fell out in
the hands of ſuch worthie men as vndertooke them, yet haue they this glorie, commendation,
and comfort, That they were taken in hand for the honour of the Sonne of God, Chriſt Ieſus,
and the defence of his veritie, againſt the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, and his moſt blaſphemous do-
ctrine; ſo honourable and iuſt a quarrell, as might well beſeeme the greatneſſe of the greateſt
Prince, yea of all the Princes of Chriſtendome. Yet could not the worthineſſe thereof, euen I
in thoſe more zealous times, or the dangerous eſtate of that part of the Chriſtian common-
weale, euen then like to periſh, (as ſome others be now) or the lamentable complaints of the
poore oppreſſed Chriſtians, crying out vnto their Chriſtian brethren for aid, any whit moue
the Chriſtian Princes of that time, with their combined forces to reach vnto them their helping
hands, or to yeeld vnto them any ſuccour or reliefe: for they little feeling thoſe harmes ſo farre
off, and more regarding their owne hereditarie quarrels, emploied thoſe forces one againſt ano-
ther, vnto the effuſion of ſo much Chriſtian bloud, as might haue ſuffiſed not for reliefe of the
diſtreſſed Chriſtians in SYRIA only, but to haue regained whatſoeuer had beene before from
them taken by the Turks or Saraſins. The Germane Princes were ſtill at a iarre about the choice
of their Emperours: the French agreed not with the Engliſh, or them of the Low countries: K
neither the Engliſh with the Scots: the Arragonians were at oddes with the French: and in
ITALIE were almoſt as many deadly factions as prouinces. Of which diſcord of the Chriſti-
ans (the greateſt occaſion of their ruine and decay) *Melechſares* the Ægyptian Sultan vnder-
ſtanding by his eſpials, raiſed a great armie of the Mamalukes, and others, with a full pur-
poſe to haue vtterly rooted out all the remainders of the Chriſtians in SYRIA and the land
1289 of PALESTINE, and ſo to haue entirely ioined thoſe two great countries vnto his owne king-
dome. But what he had ſo miſchieuouſly deuiſed, he liued not to bring to paſſe, being in the mid-
deſt of thoſe his great deſignes taken away by ſudden death. After whom *Alphix* (or, as ſome
call him, *Elpis*) ſucceeding him in the kingdome, and with a puiſſant armie entring into SYRIA,
Tripolis won and raſed by Elpis the Ægyptian Sultan. laid ſiege to TRIPOLIS, which he at length tooke by vndermining of it, and put to ſword L
all the Chriſtians therein, except ſuch as by ſpeedie flight had in time got themſelues out of the
danger, and raſed the citie downe to the ground: which calamitie betided vnto the Chriſti-
ans the ninth of Aprill, in the yeere 1289. Preſently after he had the ſtrong caſtle of NE-
LESINE yeelded vnto him, whereinto he put a ſtrong garriſon, to hinder the Chriſtians
from building againe the late deſtroied citie. In like manner alſo hee tooke the cities of
Sidon and Berythus raſed. Tyre yeelded. SIDON and BERYTHVS, which he ſacked, and laied them flat with the ground. And af-
ter that hee remoued to TYRE, which after three moneths ſtraight ſiege, was by the ci-
tizens (now out of all hope of reliefe) yeelded vnto him, vpon condition, That they
might with bagge and baggage in ſafetie depart. With like good fortune he in good time,
and as it were without reſiſtance, tooke all the reſt of the ſtrong townes and caſtles which M
the Chriſtians yet held in SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE, excepting onely the citie
of PTOLEMAIS; whereunto all the poore Chriſtians fled, as vnto a Sanctuarie, to be
there defended by the honorable Knights Templars and Hoſpitallers. Nothing now left vnto
them more than that ſtrong citie, the Sultan of his owne accord made a peace with them for
the ſpace of fiue yeeres, fearing (as was ſuppoſed) to haue drawne vpon him all the Chriſtian
Princes

A Princes of the Weſt, if he ſhould at once haue then vtterly rooted out all the Chriſtians in thoſe countries together.

The Chriſtian affaires thus brought to the laſt caſt in SYRIA, and yet faintly as it were breathing, by the benefit of the late obtained peace: *Peter Beluiſe*, maſter of the Templars, with the Grand Maſter of the Knights Hoſpitallers, ſuddenly paſſed ouer (as embaſſadours from the reſt) into EVROPE, vnto *Nicholaus quartus* then Pope, crauing his fatherly aid: who moued with ſo great miſeries of the poore afflicted Chriſtians, ſollicited the other Chriſtian Princes to haue ſent them reliefe; eſpecially *Rodolph* the Germaine Emperour, who then buſied with the affaires of the empire, and his troubles neerer home (as were the other Chri-
B ſtian Princes alſo) gaue good words, but no helpe at all. Yet ſome of them vnder the colour thereof, got from their ſubiects great ſummes of money, which they employed to their other worſe vſes: onely the Pope ſent fifteene hundred men at armes, whom with deuout perſwaſion, and much earneſt preaching, he had induced to take vpon them that ſacred expedition, and entertained them of his owne charge: vnto whom alſo many others out of diuers countries, vpon a religious zeale, ioyned themſelues, as voluntarie men; who meeting together at BRVNDVSIVM, and there embarked, with the two grand maſters of the Templars and Hoſpitallers, in ſafetie at length arriued at PTOLEMAIS. There was then in the citie a great number of people of all ſorts; of able men there was about fiftie thouſand, and about fortie thouſand of the weaker ſort: amongſt whom, diuers murders, felonies, rapes, and ſuch
C other ſhamefull outrages (all hafting the dreadfull iudgements of God) were daily committed, and let paſſe vnregarded, more than of them that were ſo iniured. For all the chiefe commanders were then at variance among themſelues, euery one of them laying claime (not worth a ruſh) vnto the vaine title of the kingdome of HIERVSALEM. *Henry* King of CYPRVS comming thither with a great fleet, charged the Templars to deliuer vnto him the crowne of that kingdome, which they had (as he ſaid) wrongfully taken from *Almericus* and *Guy*, his aunceſtors. And *Charles* King of SICILIA, by his embaſſadours laid claime vnto the title of that kingdome, as due vnto the Kings of that Iſland: and vnderſtanding it to be giuen vnto *Henry*, King of CYPRVS, cauſed all the reuenewes of the Templars within his dominion to be brought into his treaſuries, and their lands and houſes to be ſpoiled. *Hugh* alſo Prince
D of ANTIOCH, laboured with tooth and naile to defend the ouerworne right that his father and grandfather had vnto that loſt kingdome. And the Countie of TRIPOLIS laid in for himſelfe, that he was deſcended from *Raymund* of THOLOVS; and that beſide himſelfe remained no Prince of the ancient nobilitie, which had won that kingdome out of the hands of the Saraſins, and that therefore that regall dignitie did not of better right appertaine vnto any other than vnto himſelfe. Neither did theſe foure Princes more ſtriue for the title of the loſt kingdome, than for the preſent gouernment of the citie, ſtraightway about to periſh. The Popes Legate pretended thereunto a right alſo; for that King *Iohn Brenne* had before ſubiected it vnto the See of ROME. As for the claime vnto the citie of PTOLEMAIS, the Patriarch of HIERVSALEM challenged vnto himſelfe the preheminence: for that the metropo-
E liticall citie of TYRE, vnder which the citie of PTOLEMAIS was the third epiſcopall ſeat, was vnder his iuriſdiction, euen by the decree of the Weſt church. The Templars alſo, and the Knights Hoſpitallers, whoſe power in the citie was at that time farre the greateſt, pretended the gouernment thereof of beſt right to belong vnto them, as the iuſt reward of their bloud alreadie, and afterward to be ſpent in the defence thereof: promiſing great matters if it might be wholly referred vnto them. Neither ſpared the French King or the King of ENGLAND by their meſſengers to claime the ſoueraignetie of the citie, by their predeceſſours ſometimes won. And they of PISA hauing ſtill a Conſull therein, and by often mariages with the naturall inhabitants growne into great affinitie with them, did what they might to get the gouernment into their hands. The Venetians alſo by their authoritie and great wealth labou-
F red to gaine the good will of the people, ſparing therein no coſt. And they of GENVA no leſſe cunning than the reſt, ſupplanted the ſtrongeſt factions, by giuing aid both apertly and couertly vnto the weaker; that ſo hauing weakened the faction they moſt doubted and hated, they might by the ioynt fauour of the weaker aſpire vnto the gouernment of the ſtronger, and ſo conſequently of the citie it ſelfe. The Florentines alſo by their continuall traffique thither, were not out of hope by one fineneſſe or other amongſt ſo many competitours,

The miſerable eſtate of a citie about to periſh.

to finde a meane to ſtep vp aboue the reſt. But the greateſt part of the people for all that were G
moſt inclined vnto the Armenians and Tartars, as both for their neereneſſe and power moſt like of all other to ſtand them in ſtead. All theſe aimed at one marke, which was the gouernment and command of the citie: and moſt of them had in the ſame their owne proper lawes and courts, to decide their cauſes and controuerſies in. Whereby it came to paſſe, that euery man might without checke or controlement almoſt doe what he liſt, the offenders from one court to another remouing their ſutes, as beſt ſerued their turnes. Thus were murders (as is before ſaid) daily committed in the ſtreets, men abuſed, houſes robbed, ſhops broken vp, and many other outrages done, to the haſtening of the wrath of God, and griefe of all good men. H

1291 Diuiſion and diſſention (the ruine of all common-weales) thus raigning in the citie (the ſouldiers of late ſent thither, or in zeale come of themſelues, for the defence thereof) gaue occaſion for the ſpeedie deſtruction of the ſame: Such is the power of the Almightie, in his wrath and iudgements for ſinne, euen by thoſe things wherein wee moſt truſt and ioy to worke our vtter ruine and deſtruction. Theſe ſouldiers, for want of ſuch pay as was promiſed them, were enforced to ſeeke abroad, and therefore contrary to the league before made with the Ægyptian Sultan, oftentimes went out in great parties into the frontiers of his territories, taking the ſpoile of ſuch things as they light vpon. Whereof the Sultan vnderſtanding, demanded by his embaſſadours, That reſtitution might be made, and the offenders deliuered vnto him to be puniſhed, according vnto the league. But in that ſo ſicke a ſtate of a dying I
common-weale, neither was reſtitution made, as reaſon would, or yet the embaſſadours courteouſly heard. With which inſolencie the Sultan prouoked, ſent *Emilech Araphus*, a notable captaine (and as ſome ſay, his ſonne) with an hundred and fiftie thouſand men, to beſiege the citie: who comming thither, and hauing made his approches, had by a mine in ſhort time ouerthrowne a peece of the wall; but in ſeeking to haue entered by the breach, he found ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, that hee was glad with loſſe to retire. Whileſt *Araphus* thus lay at the ſiege of PTOLEMAIS, *Alphir* the Sultan died at DAMASCO, in whoſe ſtead the Mamalukes made choice of this *Araphus* for their Sultan, who more deſirous of nothing than of the glorie of the vtter rooting vp of the Chriſtians in SYRIA, was ſo farre from raiſing of his ſiege (either for the death of the Sultan, or the newes of his kingdome) that he more ſtraitly K
beſet the citie than he had in the three moneths ſpace that he had there lien before. Now had they in the citie choſen *Peter* the maſter of the Templars, their gouernour, a man of great experience and valour: vnto whom and the reſt of the nobilitie, the Sultan offered great rewards, and vnto the ſouldiers their pay, with free libertie to depart, ſo that they would without more adoe yeeld vnto him the citie, which they could not long hold: which his offer the maſter reiected, and flatly told him, That hee had not learned of his anceſtours, to ſell for money vnto the Infidels a citie bought with ſo much Chriſtian bloud; either did ſo much regard his vaine threats, as therefore to forget his ſeruice due vnto his Sauiour Chriſt and the Chriſtian
Ptolemais in vaine aſſaulted by the Sultan. common-weale. With which anſwer the tyrant enraged, the next day with all his forces aſſaulted the citie, and that in ſuch deſperate and furious manner, as if he would euen then haue L
carried it; hauing before filled the ditches, and promiſed the ſpoile vnto his ſouldiers, the more to encourage them. Yet hauing done what he could, and loſt a number of his men, ſlaine both in the aſſault, and in a ſallie which the Chriſtians made out at the ſame time, hee was inforced to retire backe againe into his trenches. In this ſo terrible an aſſault, not repulſed without ſome loſſe alſo of the Chriſtians, the grand maſter and gouernour of the citie was wounded with a poiſoned dart, whereof hee in three dayes after died: with whom the courage of the defendants fainted alſo, no man being left like vnto him to vndertake ſo great a charge, although many there were, that ouerweening of themſelues, deſired the ſame. In the beginning of this ſiege, the Chriſtians had ſent away all their aged and weake people, vnfit for ſeruice, into CYPRVS, where they in ſafetie arriued. But now many of the better ſort, both captaines and M
others, diſcouraged, one after another conuaighed themſelues away out of the citie: of whom a great number in paſſing thence to CYPRVS, were vpon the coaſt of the Iſland, together with the Patriarch drowned. In the citie remained only twelue thouſand, which were thought ſufficient for the defence thereof: who afterwards (as ſome report) fled alſo by ſea after their fellowes, and ſo left the citie emptie vnto the barbarous enemie: ſome others reporting

of

A of them more honourably, as that they ſhould right valiantly defend the citie againſt the aſſault of their enemies, vntill ſuch time as that moſt of them being ſlaine or wounded, and the reſt by force driuen from the wals into the market place, and there for a while notably defending themſelues, in flying thence vnto the ſhips, were by the way all cut in ſunder, or elſe drowned. But howſoeuer it was, the Sultan entering the citie (by the Chriſtians abandoned, or by force taken) gaue the ſpoile thereof vnto his ſouldiers; who after they had rifled euery corner thereof, by his commandement ſet it on fire and burnt it downe to the ground: and digging vp the very foundations of the wals, churches, and other publike and priuate buildings, which the fire had not burnt, left there no ſigne of any citie at all; but purging the place euen of the very
B heapes of the ſtones and rubbidge left of the raſed citie, made it a fit place for huſbandmen to plough and ſowe corne in; which he did both there, at SYDON, BERITVS, and other towns alongſt the ſea coaſt, becauſe they ſhould neuer more ſerue for a refuge vnto the Chriſtians, or giue them footing againe into thoſe countries. Thus together with PTOLEMAIS was the name of the Chriſtians vtterly rooted out of SYRIA and the land of PALESTINE, in the yeere 1291, about 192 yeeres after the winning of HIERVSALEM by *Godfrey* of BVILLON and the other Chriſtian Princes his confederates.

This loſſe, as tending to the great diſgrace of the Chriſtians in generall, mooued not a little euen the greateſt of the Chriſtian Princes; wronged all or moſt part of them in the perſons of the Templars or Knights Hoſpitalers, their ſubiects, ſo ſhamefully now quite caſt out of SY-
C RIA and the land of promiſe: howbeit, troubled with their owne turbulent affaires at home, or with their neighbour Princes not farre off, none of them once ſtirred for the redreſſe or reuenge thereof. Onely *Caſſanes* the great Tartar Prince, hauing of late ſubdued the Perſians, and married the daughter of the Armenian King (a Ladie of great perfection, and of a Mahometane become a Chriſtian) at the requeſt of his wife and his father in law, tooke the matter in hand. And for that purpoſe hauing raiſed a moſt puiſſant armie of two hundred thouſand fighting men, and aided by the Armenians and Georgians, paſſing ouer the mountaine AMANVS into SYRIA, not farre from the citie HAMA met wit *Melcenaſer*, the Ægyptian Sultans lieutenant, with a mightie armie, whom hee ouerthrew in a great and mortall battell, wherein fortie thouſand of the Ægyptians are reported to haue beene ſlaine, and ſo
D draue him quite out of SYRIA: ſending *Molais*, one of his captaines, with part of his armie to purſue him, who neuer left him vntill hee had chaſed him ouer the deſart ſands into ÆGYPT. The victorious Tartar after this battell tooke the citie of HAMA, where lighting vpon the great treaſures of the Sultan, hee bountifully diuided it, together with the ſpoile, amongſt his ſouldiers; reſeruing nothing thereof vnto himſelfe, more than a ſword and a casket full of ſecret letters. The Ægyptian thus put to flight, hee without reſiſtance tooke in moſt of the cities of SYRIA, with the citie of HIERVSALEM alſo; which in many places by the Turks and Ægyptians defaced, he againe repaired: and together with the Temple of our Sauiour, gaue it to the Armenians, Georgians, and other Chriſtians, repairing thither out of CYPRVS, CRETE, and other places, to inhabite. And hauing himſelfe honoured the holy
E places with great gifts, returned with his armie to DAMASCO, which was forthwith deliuered vnto him. But lying there, with purpoſe in Autumne following to haue gone into ÆGYPT, and to haue vtterly deſtroied that kingdome, he was certified of new troubles ariſing in PERSIA, and ſome other parts of his empire: for repreſſing whereof, he with the greateſt part of his armie returned himſelfe into PERSIA, leauing one *Capcapus* gouernour of DAMASCO; who after the ouerthrow of the Sultans armie had reuolted vnto him; and *Molais* (of whom wee haue before ſpoken) gouernor of HIERVSALEM: commanding them at his departure to reedifie the citie of TYRE, and to ſend embaſſadours vnto the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt, to ioine in league with them, for the more ſure holding of thoſe new gained countries. And ſo TYRE was indeed repaired as he had commanded, and deliuered to the Chriſtians, with a con-
F uenient garriſon for the keeping thereof: but the embaſſadours comming to the proud Biſhop *Boniface* the eight, then Pope, whom of all others it beſeemed to haue furthered their buſineſſe, they could of him obtaine nothing, but returned as they came. For hee at the ſame time fallen out with *Philip* the French King, thundering out his excommunications, diſcharging his ſubiects of their loyaltie, and ſo much as in him was, depriuing him of his kingdome, had giuen the ſame vnto *Albertus* Duke of AVSTRIA, whom he had declared Emperor: whereof

Caſſanes the Tartar inuadeth Syria.

Hieruſalem taken and repaired by Caſſanes.

ariſe great troubles. Beſides that, he being of the *Guelphes* faction, was not in any thing more G
carefull, than of the vtter extinguiſhing of the contrarie faction of the *Gibellines*, eſpecially of the moſt honourable familie of the *Columnij*, of whom ſome he had ſlaine, ſome he had depriued of their honours, ſome he had impriſoned, & driuen other ſome into exile; ſo that thus wickedly buſied for the maintenance of his owne proud eſtate, he had no leiſure to further the good of the Chriſtian common weale: which his intolerable pride, and forgetfulneſſe of dutie, long eſcaped not the reuenging hand of God; being when he thought leaſt, ſuddenly taken priſoner at his fathers houſe in the citie of ANAGNIA (where he was borne) by *Sara Columnius* his mortall enemie; whom but lately before redeemed out of a pirates gallie, the French King had ſent for that purpoſe, with one *Longaret*, or as ſome call him, *Nogaret*, a French Knight: By whom H
the proud Prelate brought to ROME, in the caſtle S. ANGELO within fiue and thirtie daies after moſt miſerably died, in his madneſſe (as ſome report) renting himſelfe with his teeth, and
The deſcription of Caſſanes. deuouring his owne fingers. This worthy Tartar Prince *Caſſanes*, by whom the Chriſtian common weale might haue againe riſen in SYRIA & the land of PALESTINE, had not the pride of the great Biſhop, and the diſſention of the Chriſtian Princes hindered the ſame; was as *Aitonus* writeth (who was preſent in this warre, following his vncle the Armenian King) a man of a very ſhort ſtature, and exceeding hard fauour; but with valour, bountie, and other vertues of the minde plentifully recompencing what wanted in the feature of his body. After whoſe departure into PERSIA, *Capcapus* gouernour of DAMASCO, conſidering that the power of the Tartars there left was not great, and that no aid was to be expected from the other Chriſtian I
Princes of the Weſt, to recompenſe his former treaſon of reuolting from the Sultan, with a new reuolt from the Tartar; riſe vp into open rebellion, drawing after him not only the citie of DAMASCO, but the greateſt part of SYRIA alſo: whereof *Molais* gouernour of HIERVSALEM vnderſtanding, was about to haue gone againſt him with his Tartars; but aduertiſed by his eſpials, that *Capcapus* in this his conſpiracie had compacted with the Ægyptian Sultan alſo, perceiuing himſelfe too weake to withſtand ſo great a power, he retired with his Tartars into MESOPOTAMIA, there expecting new ſupplies both from *Caſſanes* and the King of ARMENIA. Of
The citie of Hieruſalem with al Syria againe recouered by the Aegyptian Sultan. whoſe departure out of SYRIA, the Ægyptian Sultan vnderſtanding, came directly with his armie to HIERVSALEM, which he tooke, being forſaken of the inhabitants; and prophaned the Temple, ſparing only the Sepulchre of our Sauiour, at the humble ſute of the religious, ma- K
king there a greater ſhew of deuotion than of crueltie. After that hee won all the other leſſer townes, which the Tartars had either kept for them ſelues, or giuen to the other Chriſtians, and vtterly raſed all the caſtles and forts of the Hoſpitalers and Templars: which valiant men without other helpe, for the ſpace of almoſt a yeere held out againſt the Tyrant, in which time moſt
1300 of them were honourably ſlaine: the reſt that were left aliue, being taken by the enemie, had neuertheleſſe leaue giuen them with bag & baggage in ſafetie to depart, hauing before by ſolemne oath for euer abiured the country of SYRIA: and ſo theſe worthy men, the great ornaments of the Chriſtian common weale, the Hoſpitalers and Templars, which to the vttermoſt of their power had by the ſpace 300 yeeres right worthily defended both the Chriſtians and the Chriſtian religion, againſt the Infidels in SYRIA and the Holy Land, were now for euer driuen out L
thence, about the yeere of our Lord 1300, to the great diſhonour of all Chriſtendome.

Wherefore with them now taking our leaue of SYRIA and the Holy Land, leauing the ſame in the poſſeſſion of the Ægyptian Sultan and the Mamalukes, although it were ſhortly after like enough to haue beene againe recouered from them by the Tartars, had not the death of the great Tartar Prince *Caſſanes*, and their domeſticall troubles letted: wee will againe returne vnto the troubled affaires of the Turks in the leſſer ASIA, whither the courſe of time had ſomewhat before called vs, with the occurrents thereof, more proper vnto our purpoſe and the argument we haue in hand, but that all cannot be at once told: And for the better vnderſtanding of the deſirous Reader, I thought it not good abruptly to breake off the courſe of the aforeſaid hiſtorie drawing ſo neere vnto an end, but to make him partaker of the heauineſſe thereof. M

The death of Meſoot & Cei-Cubades. Now had the Turkes no kingdome left in the leſſer ASIA, and that alſo at the pleaſure of *Gazan* the great Tartar *Chan* diuided betwixt *Meſoot* and *Cei-Cubades*, as his vaſſals, bound vnto him by a yeerely tribute (as is aforeſaid:) who both kept in awe by the greatneſſe of the Tartar, did nothing worth the remembrance, but as they liued ſo alſo died, almoſt buried in obſcuritie. Of theſe two, *Meſoot* died without iſſue; but *Cei-Cubades* departing, left behinde him his ſonne

Aladin,

A *Aladin*, who by the name of *Aladin* the ſecond ſucceeding in the kingdome, vnited againe the ſame before diuided, yet paying ſtill tribute vnto the Tartar his Soueraigne, as had his father with the other late Sultans of the Turks before him. Much it was not that this *Aladin* did, albeit that the power of the Tartars in his time began to decline, and not to lie ſo heauie vpon the Turkes as before. He was a man of a quiet ſpirit, and therefore much delighted in peace: a great friend vnto *Othoman* the firſt founder of the glorious and mightie *Othoman* empire, as in his life ſhall appeare. But this *Aladin*, the laſt of the Turkes Sultans of the *Selzuccian* familie, dying without iſſue; one *Sahib* his Veſir-Azemes or chiefe counſeller, and then a man of greateſt authoritie, aſpired vnto the kingdome, which he had for moſt part himſelfe ſwaied all the raigne
B of the late Sultan his maſter: which vſurped ſoueraigntie, no way vnto him due, he could neither himſelfe long hold, or deliuer to his poſteritie; for that many others of the nobilitie, men of great power, and borne of greater families than he, enuying at his honour, and diſdaining to be gouerned by him, or any other no greater than themſelues, laid hold ſome vpon one countrey or prouince, ſome vpon another, where they were able to doe moſt, erecting vnto themſelues greater or leſſer Satrapies, according to the meaſure of their owne ſtrength and power, without reſpect of any ſuperioritie one ſhould haue ouer another; but euery one of them abſolutely commanding ouer ſo much as he was able by ſtrong hand to hold. So that as it had oftentimes before chanced, that great Monarchies deſtitute of their lawfull heires, had in part, or all, become rich preyes vnto ſuch as could firſt lay ſtrong hand vpon them: euen ſo fell it
C now out in the great kingdome of the Turkes; euery one of their great Princes, meaſuring the greatneſſe of his territorie, not by the meaſure of his right, but by the ſtrength of his owne power. Wherein they ſhared ſo well for themſelues, that *Sahib* at firſt in poſſeſſion of all, was in ſhort time thruſt quite out of all: and ſo the great kingdome of the Turkes in the leſſer Asia, brought vnto a meere Anarchie; no King now left among them, the whole kingdome being now diuided into diuers Satrapies, or other leſſer Toparchies. The greateſt of theſe Princes that thus ſhared the Turkes kingdome amongſt them, was one *Caraman Aluſirius*; who as ſtrongeſt, tooke vnto himſelfe the citie of Iconivm, the regall ſeat of the Turkiſh Sultans, with all the great countrey of Cilicia, and ſome part of the frontiers of the countries of Lycaonia, Pamphilia, Caria, and the greater Phrigia, as farre as Philadel-
D phia, and the citie of Antiochvpon the riuer Meander: All which large territorie, was of him afterward called Caramania, and by the ſame name is commonly at this day knowne, and by our late Geographers deſcribed. Of this *Caraman* alſo deſcended the Caramanian Kings, who of long time after vnfortunately ſtroue with the *Othoman* Sultans for the ſoueraigntie of their empires; vntill that at length they with their kingdome, and all the reſt of theſe Turkiſh Satrapies, were in the fatall greatneſſe of the *Othoman* empire, ſwallowed vp and deuoured, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie ſhall (if God ſo will) in due time and place be declared. Next neighbour vnto him was *Saruchan*, of the Greekes called *Sarchan*, of whom the countrey of Ionia-Maritima was and yet is called Sarv-Chan-Ili, and Sarvchania, that is to ſay, *Saruchans* countrey. The greateſt part of Lydia, with ſome part of the greater
E Misia, Troas, and Phrygia, fell to *Calamus* and his ſonne *Caraſius*, of whom it is called Carasia, or Carasi-Ili, (or as we might ſay) *Caraſius* his countrey. The greateſt part of the ancient Misia, with ſome part of Lydia, was poſſeſſed by *Aidin*, and was of him called Aidinia or Aidin-Ili, as his countrey. Some part of the great countrey of Pontvs, with the cities of Heraclea-Pontica, Castamona, Synope, and others neere vnto the Evxine, and the countrey of Paphlagonia, fell into the hands of the ſonnes of *Omer*, or as the Greekes call him, *Amur*: of whom that countrey tooke not name, as did the others, of ſuch Princes as poſſeſſed them, but is commonly called Bolli, of a citie in that countrey by the Turkes ſo named. As was alſo Mendesia, or as ſome call it Mentesia, a countrey in the leſſer Asia, ſo by the Turkes called of Mendos or Myndvs,
F a citie in Caria. There were beſide theſe, diuers other places and Toparchies in the leſſer Asia, which in the renting of this great kingdome, from the Turkes receiued names, before vnto the world vnknowne; all which to proſecute were tedious. Sufficeth it vs, for the manifeſting of the Turks Anarchie, and the ruine of their kingdome in the leſſer Asia, as in part alſo for the more euidence of the heauie hiſtorie following, to haue remembred theſe as the chiefeſt; eſpecially ſuch as tooke their names of ſuch great Princes or Captaines as in that ſo great a confuſion

The Turks kingdome rent in ſunder by themſelues.

The Turkes Anarchie.

Caramania.

Saruchania.

Caraſia.

Aidinia.

Bolli.

Mendeſia.

confuſion of the Turkes kingdome, by ſtrong hand firſt ceazed vpon them, and ſo left them to G
their poſteritie, of whom much is to be ſaid hereafter. Theſe Princes one and all that thus ſhared
the late *Aladinian* kingdome, were deſcended of the better ſort of the Turkes, which with the
Selzuccian and *Aladinian* Sultans driuen out of PERSIA by the Tartars, had vnder them ſeated
themſelues in the leſſer ASIA, as is before at large declared. Now amongſt theſe great men that
thus diuided the Turkes kingdome, moſt of them that write of the Turkes affaires, both Greekes
and Latines, reckon vp *Othoman* (the raiſer of his houſe and familie) for one; who indeed in the
latter time of the late Sultan *Aladin* began to flouriſh, and was of him for his valour extraordi-
narily fauoured (as in his hiſtorie ſhall appeare) but of his kingdome held no more than one
poore lordſhip, called SVGVT a in BYTHINIA, not farre from the mountaine OLIMPVS, H
(long before giuen vnto his father *Erthogrull*, for his good ſeruice) with ſuch other ſmall holds
thereabout, as he had himſelfe gained from the weake Chriſtians his neighbours. For although
Othoman none of the Selzuccian familie. he were a Turke borne, yet was he not of the *Selzuccian* familie, as were the reſt, but of another
houſe and tribe, and therefore not of them fauoured or thought to haue ſo good right vnto any
of the late Sultans prouinces or territories, as had they who being of his houſe, and holpen with
the preſcription of time, enuied at the ſudden riſing of this *Oguzian* Turke, being vnto them as
it were a meere ſtranger: whoſe fortune for all that (I know not by what ſecret foreknowledge)
they ſeemed to feare, as in time to grow dangerous vnto them and their poſteritie; wherin they
were no whit deceiued. But of him and his proceedings much more is to be ſaid hereafter: leaue
we him now therefore with the reſt vnto their fortunes in this the Turkes Anarchie, and ſo con- I
clude this part of our Generall Hiſtorie: Glad when I looke backe to haue waded thus
farre, yet fearing to be drowned before I get ouer; ſuch a ſea of matter and
world of troubles yet remaining, not without much labour
and toile, and that in long time to be
paſſed through.

FINIS.

THE LIVES OF THE OTHOMAN KINGS AND EMPERORS.

FAITHFVLLY GATHERED OVT of the beſt Hiſtories, both ancient and moderne, and digeſted into one continuate Hiſtorie.

By RICHARD KNOLLES.

ECCLES. 10. 4.

The gouernment of the earth is in the hand of the Lord, [and all iniquitie of the nations is to be abhorred:] and when time is he will ſet vp a profitable ruler ouer it.

LONDON,
Printed by ADAM ISLIP.
1620.

Laurentius Thomsonius sculpsit. 160[illegible]

Phi. Lonicerus hist. Turc. li. 1.

Multiplici lassatæ Asiæ res clade premuntur.
Hinc Sarracenus, Tartarus inde ruit.
Mutua Christicolæ gladios in vulnera stringunt:
Græcia funesta seditione perit.
Impiger interea noua concipit Ottomannus
Concilia, & valida surgit in arma manu.
Et vastatricis regno fundamina turbæ
Ponit: & in multo sanguine sceptra lauat.

With endlesse wars the Asian state farre spent and ouerworne:
By Sarasins and Tartars force, is all in peeces torne.
The Christians draw their bloudie swords, wherewith themselues to wound:
And GREECE with ciuill discord seekes it selfe for to confound.
Meane while the warlike *Othoman*, new counsels doth deuise,
And with a crue of martiall men doth vp in armes arise:
And laies the fatall plot whereon the wastfull Turks should raigne,
And bathes his scepter in much bloud of people by him slaine.

THE RISING OF THE GREAT AND MIGHTIE EMPIRE OF THE TVRKS VNDER *OTHOMAN* FIRST FOVNDER THEREOF: WITH HIS LIFE AND DOINGS.

WHat ſmall aſſurance there is in mens affaires, and how ſubiect vnto change euen thoſe things are wherein wee for the moſt part repoſe our greateſt felicitie and bliſſe, (beſide that the whole courſe of mans-fraile life, by many notable examples well declareth) nothing doth more plainly manifeſt the ſame, than the heauie euents and wofull deſtructions of the greateſt kingdomes and empires: which founded vpon great fortunes, increaſed with perpetuall ſucceſſe, exalted by exceeding power, eſtabliſhed with moſt puiſſant armies, wholeſome lawes, and deepe counſels; haue yet growne old, and in time come to naught: So that euen as men, all things elſe belonging vnto man, are ſubiect vnto the ineuitable courſe of deſtinie, or more truly to ſay, vnto the fatall doome of the moſt higheſt, preſining vnto euery thing that in time begun, a time alſo wherein to take end, being himſelfe without time the great commander thereof, and of all things elſe done therein. The fame of the firſt Aſſyrian Monarchie, is very ancient, and was no doubt both great and long, yet hath it neuertheleſſe found an end; and the more to put vs in remembrance of our infirmitie, was neuer with ſo much glorie and valour by *Ninus* erected, as it was with ſhame and cowardiſe by *Sardanapalus* ſubuerted. With like neceſſitie fell the great empire of the Medes and Perſians, the time thereof being come. And after them, the Macedonians alſo. Neither hath the great Romane empire, or the proud citie of ROME it ſelfe (ſometime the miſtreſſe of the world) herein found any exemption, but run the ſame courſe with the reſt: which growne great with continuall triumphs, and ſo ſtrong as that it was not with forraine power to be ſhaken; conuerted the forces of it ſelfe vpon it ſelfe, to the ouerthrow of the ancient libertie thereof, together with the vtter ſubuerſion of the ſtate. After which time that mightie monarchie (of all that euer yet were, the greateſt) vnder the Romane Emperours felt many an hard and perillous ſtorme, and by little and little ſtil declining (though ſometime like a ſicke aged bodie, by the valour or vertue of ſome one or other her worthie Emperours a little relieued, and by and by againe caſt downe by the follie or negligence of ſome others ſucceeding) it became at length a prey vnto a fooliſh rude & barbarous nation, which it had before oftentimes ouercome, and ouer which many the Romane captains had triumphed, and therof taken their glorious ſurnames: which now againe without compaſſion, burning and ſacking it, cauſed it to ſtoope, and to yeeld vnto the ſeruile yoake which it had in former time proudly impoſed vpon the necks of others: wherein if any thing be to be blamed, it is not the fortune or folly of this or that man, then ſitting at the helme (although that may alſo much helpe the

All worldly things ſubiect to change.

The greateſt kingdomes haue in time taken end, & ſo come to naught.

the matter as a meane) but the inſtabilitie of worldly things neuer permanent, but alwayes changeable, and the ſooner for their height; and that ſo forcibly, as that no man knoweth how to remedie the ſame, either if he did, were he able to performe it; the greateſt meanes that men could poſſibly deuiſe for the ſtay thereof, being oftentimes by a greater power from aboue, conuerted vnto the more ſpeedie effecting of that, againſt the which they were by mans wiſedome prouided. The like might be ſaid of the Athenians, the Lacedæmonians, the Thebanes, and of whom not? What maruell then, if the ancient kingdomes of the Turks likewiſe in PERSIA, and the leſſer ASIA, in SYRIA, PALESTINA, and ÆGYPT, hauing run their appointed times, mightily impugned by the Chriſtians, oppreſſed on the one ſide by the Tartars, and on the other by the Mamalukes, and at length by themſelues rent in ſunder (their deſtinie ſo requiring) loſt at laſt their wonted maieſtie, and ſo fell into a meere Anarchie, as is in the former part of this Hiſtorie at large declared? Yet in this farre more than any other people fortunate, That after the ruine of their former kingdomes, ſtraightway out of themſelues ariſe another, namely this *Othoman* monarchie, the chiefe obiect of this Hiſtorie: which at the firſt ſcarce of the world perceiued, or of themſelues regarded, in ſhort time ſo proſpered, as that the power and glorie thereof obſcured not their former kingdomes onely (nothing, in compariſon of this) but euen the greateſt monarchies of the world; ouer a great part of which, it now ſo proudly triumpheth, as if it ſhould neuer haue end: at the beautie whereof the world wondereth, and at the power thereof quaketh: within the greatneſſe whereof are contained no ſmall portions of ASIA, EVROPE, and AFRICKE, but euen the moſt famous and fruitfull kingdomes thereof: no part of the world left vntouched but AMERICA onely; not more fortunate with her rich mines, than in that ſhe is ſo farre from ſo great and dangerous an enemie. The foundation of this ſo great a kingdome (and now ſo mightie an empire, as holdeth the world in awe) was firſt laid by the valiant *Othoman*, or as the Turks call him, *Oſman*; not deſcended of the *Selzuccian* familie, as were all the former Turks Sultans, but of the *Oguzian* tribe and kindred: in whoſe line this glorious empire hath euer ſince, by the ſpace of three hundred yeeres and three, to the aſtoniſhment of the world, wonderfully flouriſhed; and ſo yet doth at this day, vnder the gouernment of *Mahomet* the third, which now raigneth thirteenth in deſcent from him, knowing none in this world greater than himſelfe. But foraſmuch as both his greatneſſe, and the greatneſſe of the reſt of the *Othoman* Kings and Emperours his progenitors, tooke their beginning from this worthy and warlike *Othoman*, with whoſe life and doings wee purpoſe to begin this part of our Hiſtorie, it ſhall not be amiſſe both for the continuation of that wee haue in hand, with that we haue alreadie written, and for the more manifeſting of that which hereafter followeth, a little farther to fet his race and deſcent alſo: Not meaning with a long and faigned pedegree to fet him out of *Noah* his arke, (which continuall ſucceſſion of Princes, no nation of the world, be it neuer ſo ancient, the Iewes only excepted, and they alſo by writings and hiſtories as much as was poſſible eternized, could truly and iuſtly challenge) but onely ſo farre as ſhall be pertinent vnto our purpoſe, and by the authoritie of good hiſtories to be auerred.

At ſuch time as the Turks kingdome founded by *Tangrolipix* in PERSIA, flouriſhed in the *Selzuccian* Princes his ſucceſſors, there was alſo another kingdome of theirs at the citie of MACHAN, as is before declared, but nothing comparable to the other either in glorie or power. In this citie, and ouer this ſmall kingdome, raigned one *Solyman*, by his ſubiects honored alſo with the name of a Sultan or King; at the ſame time that the Tartars vnder the leading of old *Zingis* their great captaine, leauing their owne countrey, and bearing downe the world before them, hauing conquered the fartheſt parts of the Eaſt, and there ſeated their kingdome, turned their forces into PERSIA, and there ouerthrew the Turks kingdome at BALCH in CORASAN, and draue the Turks with *Curſumes* their laſt King, out of the countrey: after that they had there from the time of *Tangrolipix* raigned about an hundred and ſeuentie two yeeres.

Solyman, Sultan of Machan forſaketh his kingdome for feare of the Tartars.

This *Solyman* of whom we ſpeake, then raigning at MACHAN, was not of the *Selzuccian* familie (as were all the other Turks Sultans, the ſucceſſours of *Tangrolipix*) but of the *Oguzian* tribe, a familie famous alſo amongſt the Turks: who ſeeing the *Selzuccian* Sultan *Curſumes* (or as ſome call him, *Cuſſumes*) his countryman, beaten out of his kingdome by the Tartar, and his country ouerrun, and the great Caliph of BABYLON alſo ouerthrowne; thought it not good longer to ſtay in that country which he could not hold, but by ſpeedie flight betimes to prouide for the ſafetie of himſelfe and of ſuch his ſubiects as would follow him. And hearing that *Aladin* the

A the ſonne of *Kei-Huſreu*, or as the Greekes call him *Cai-Coſroe* (a great man of the *Selzuccian* familie, and neere of kin vnto the late Sultan *Curſumes*) who for feare of the Tartars, but lately come into ROMANIA-ASIATICA, had there by force of armes moſt honorably ſeated himſelfe and the Turks his followers, amongſt the Chriſtians: in hope of like good fortune, and for the zeale towards his ſuperſtition (accounting all well gotten that was gained from the Chriſtians) tooke his way after him, with ſuch of his kinſmen and ſubiects as would accompanie him in his new aduentures. And comming to ARTEZERVM, a citie in the borders of ARMENIA and CAPPADOCIA, thereabout in the country according to the ſeaſon of the yeere, ſeated himſelfe with his followers, being in number many; who with their wiues and children af-
B ter the manner of the Tartar Nomades their anceſtours, in poore tents and carts couered with a courſe kinde of cloth, had followed him; being indeed nothing elſe but a very rude and rough kinde of ſturdie heardſmen, not wedded to any place, but ſtill remouing with their tents and carts vp and downe, as beſt ſerued for their purpoſe and the feeding of their cattell, as doe the Turcoman nation, the true deſcent of the Turks, in many parts of ASIA at this day: and were thereof not onely called Nomades, that is to ſay heardſmen, (by which name the proud Ianizaries will oftentimes in contempt call euen the greateſt of the naturall Turks) but *Hamaxophoretie*, and *Hamaxobij*, that is to ſay, people carried or liuing in carts. *Solyman* hauing ſtaied a while about ERZERVM, remouing thence came to AMASIA; and there ſpoiling the countrey then inhabited by the Chriſtians, did them much harme, oftentimes encountring them in
C the plaine field, and ſometimes ceazing vpon their townes & cities, vntill he had ſubdued vnto himſelfe a right large territorie: yea at length hauing in ſo many battels by him fought, and cities by him beſieged, loſt a great number of his people, and ſo wearied the reſt as that they were not willing farther to follow him; & fearing alſo with ſuch ſmall power as he had left, to be able to defend and keepe the country by him already gotten, in the midſt of ſo many enemies; thought it beſt to depart thence, and to ſeeke his better fortune elſewhere. At the ſame time it was rifely reported, that the affaires of PERSIA after ſo long trouble (for all this was not a while in doing) began to grow againe to ſome good quiet, the furie of the Tartars being now well abated, and that ſtorme ouerblowne: wherefore *Solyman* reſolued now to returne home againe, and to viſit his natiue countrey, of him and his people aboue all others deſired. So paſſing thorow SY-
D RIA (for that was now his way) neere vnto ALLEPO, he ceazed vpon a caſtle called ZIABER-CALA, and there ſtaied a ſpace for the refreſhing of his people. Afterward ſetting forward againe, he came at length to the great and famous riuer EVPHRATES, ouer which he muſt needs paſſe: but finding there neither bridge nor foord, or other meanes to get ouer, he ſtood ſtill as a man diſmaid, not knowing what to doe. Stay there he would not, and goe further he could not: his deſire bid him goe, but the great riuer ſaid, not ſo. In this perplexitie *Solyman* himſelfe with his horſe oftentimes taking the riuer, in hope to haue found ſome paſſage; but finding none, aduenturing too farre, was with the force of the ſtreame carried away, & ſo together with his horſe drowned. His body after long ſeeking, being at length found, was with the great lamentation of his people buried neere vnto the caſtle ZIABER, not long before by him taken: whereof they ſay
E the place is at this day in their tongue called *Meſari-Zuruc*, that is to ſay, the Turks Graue. Some of theſe *Oguzian* Turks, after the death of their Sultan, wearie of their long trauell, ſeated themſelues in the countrey thereabouts, vnto whom the Turks that now hold that caſtle doe referre their beginning. The reſt of that great tribe and familie diuerſly diuided, went vnto diuers places as their fortunes led them; ſome of them into the waſte ground and deſarts of ARABIA and SYRIA, & are at this day called the Damaſcene Turcomans: otherſome returned backe againe into ROMANIA, the ſame way that they came, of whom are deſcended the Turcomans of ICONIVM and ANATOLIA: who yet with their wiues and children, as heardſmen, in great companies wander vp and downe the countrey, after the manner of their anceſtors. *Romania Aſiatica.*

Solyman thus loſt, left foure ſonnes, *Sencur-Teken*, *Iundogdis*, *Ertogrul*, of ſome called *Orthobu-* *The ſonnes of Solyman, and their firſt aduentures.*
F *les* (the father of this *Othoman* founder of the Turks empire that now is) and *Dunder*. With theſe foure brethren, moſt part of theſe *Oguzian* Turks that were left, returning into ROMANIA (as is aforeſaid) after they had there reſted themſelues a while, marching vp along the riuer EVPHRATES, came to a place called PASIN-OVASI, about ten miles aboue ARTERVM, where *Ertogrul* and his brother *Dunder*, with foure hundred families, not willing to goe any farther, ſtaied with their tents and carts, their beſt dwellings. *Sencur* and *Iundogdis* their other two bre-

thren, in the meane time passing the riuer, returned with the rest into PERSIA: whom we there G
leaue vnto their vnknowne fortunes. In this place *Ertogrul* with his brother and his three sons staied a while, and had diuers conflicts with the country people thereabout, vntill that at length he thought it best to returne againe into ROMANIA. So setting forward, he came to ANCYRA, and from thence vnto the blacke Mountaines, and so to a plaine called of the Turks *Sultan Vngi* about 75 miles Eastward from the citie of NICE in BYTHINIA, where he had many skirmishes with the Christians.

Now a good while before this, *Aladin* the elder (of whom we haue before spoken in the former part of this Historie) fled out of PERSIA, had subdued diuers great prouinces & countries in ROMANIA ASIATICA or the lesser ASIA (for so it is more truly called) so that he was of all H
the people thereabouts accounted for a great Prince, and of the Turks themselues honoured with the name of their *Vlu Padischach*, that is to say, their great King or Emperor. Hauing placed his regall seat first at SEBASTIA, and afterward at ICONIVM; which two cities before ruinous, he repaired, and therein raigned, as did some few of his posteritie after him, as is before declared. Neither was *Ertogrul* ignorant of the honour, glorie, and power of this great Sultan: but hauing three sons, namely *Iundus*, *Sarugatin*, and *Othoman*, sent *Sarugatin* his second sonne (a bold well spoken man) vnto him to request him in that his so large a kingdome, and as yet not well peopled by the Turks, to grant vnto them his poore exiled countreymen, of long time oppressed with diuers fortunes, some small corner for them with their families and cattell to rest in. Which his request, the Sultan not forgetfull of his owne distresse sometime in like case, graci- I
ously heard, and with great courtesie vsed the messenger. Now for the furtherance of his sute, it fortuned, that this Sultan before driuen out of PERSIA by the Tartars, and by them also much troubled in these his new gotten countries in the lesser ASIA, had with them diuers hot skirmishes, and sharpe conflicts; in one of which it fortuned the Sultan himselfe, with all the power he then had, to be hardly beset by his enemies, and in danger to haue lost the day: when as *Ertogrul* but newly come into the countrey, and willing to doe the Sultan seruice, and awaiting all opportunities for the commending of himselfe and his followers; vpon the sudden vnlooked for, with foure hundred men came vpon the backs of the Tartars, then almost in possession of a great victorie, and so forcibly charged them, that vnable to endure the charge and to maintaine the fight against the Sultan, (whose men encouraged by this vnexpected aid, as by succour sent K
from heauen, began now to fight with greater courage) being both before and behinde hardly beset, they as men in despaire of the victorie they had before assured themselues of, turned their backs and fled. After which good seruice, the Sultan honourably welcommed this new come Turke, giuing him his hand to kisse, as the manner of the nation is; and highly commending his valour, commanded a rich cloke to be cast vpon him (amongst those Easterne nations a great honour) and all his souldiers to be bountifully rewarded: and presently after gaue vnto *Ertogrul* and his Turks a countrey village called SVGVTA, betwixt the castle of BILEZVGA and the mountaine TMOLVS in the greater PHRYGIA: in which village they might liue in, in Winter; and vpon the aforesaid mountaine, and the mountaine ORMENIVS, betwixt the riuers SANGARIVS and LICVS, feed their cattell in Summer. And yet not so contented thus L
to haue honoured him, in whom he saw such approued valour, committed to his protection that side of the countrey wherein he dwelt, being in the very frontiers of his kingdome: which his charge he so well looked vnto, that all the countrey thereabout, before much infested with the often incursions of the enemie, was by his vigilant care and prowesse well secured.

Thus is *Ertogrul* the *Oguzian* Turke, with his homely heardsmen, become a pettie Lord of a countrey village, and in good fauour with the Sultan: whose followers, as sturdie heardsmen with their families, liued in Winter with him in SVGVTA; but in Summer in tents with their cattell vpon the mountaines. Hauing thus liued certaine yeeres, and brought great peace vnto his neighbours, as well the Christians as the Turks, before much troubled with the inuasions of the Tartars: it fortuned, that the Christians of CARA-CHISAR, a castle thereby (called by the M
ancient Greekes *Melanopyrgon*, and of latter time *Maurocastron*, that is to say, the blacke tower or castle) wearie of their owne ease, and of the peace they had by his meanes enioyed, fell out with him, and euill intreated both him & his people. Which their ingratitude he taking in euill part, thereof, and of the wrongs by them done vnto the Turks, so grieuously complained vnto the Sultan, that he therewith moued, raised a great armie, and so himselfe in person came and besieged

The Christians of Cara-Chisar fall out with the Turks.

besieged the castle. But lying there at the siege, newes was brought him, that the Tartars with a great armie, vnder the leading of one *Baintzar*, were entred into CARIA, and there spoiling the country, had taken HERACLEA. For the repressing of whom, the Sultan was glad to rise with his armie; yet leauing a sufficient strength behinde him for the continuing of the siege, vnder the charge of *Ertogrul Beg*, for so the Turks now called him. The Sultan afterwards encountering with the Tartars at BAGA, ouerthrew them in a great battell: whileſt *Ertogrul* in the meane space hardly besieged CARA-CHISAR, wherein fortune so much fauoured him, that at length he tooke the castle, the spoile whereof he gaue vnto the souldiers, reserving onely the fift part thereof, as due vnto the Sultan, which he sent him for a present, together with the captaine of the castle, whom he had taken aliue: which captaine the Sultan afterward enlarged, and restored againe to him his castle, for the paiment of a yeerely tribute, which he truly paid during the life of the Sultan; but he dying about two yeeres after, he refused any more to pay it, and so reuolted from the Turks.

Sultan *Aladin*, founder of the Aladinian kingdome (for so the Turks call it) being dead at ICONIVM, after him succeeded *Azatines* his eldest sonne; and after him *Iathatines* his younger brother; who slaine by *Theodorus Lascaris* the Greeke Emperour (as is before declared) after him succeeded in that kingdome another *Iathatines*, the sonne of *Azatines*, who was by the Tartars expulsed, and his kingdome subdued (as in the former part of this Historie it appeareth.) After which time the *Selzuccian* familie there also by the Tartars in the lesser ASIA depressed, retained scarce the name and shadow of their former maiestie and glorie. In which troublesome times, and confusion of the state, *Ertogrul* well beaten and wearied in the world, kept himselfe close in his house at SVGVTA, as well contented therewith as with a kingdome; seeking by all meanes to keepe peace on euery side with his neighbours, as well Christians as others. In which quiet kinde of life he sweetly passed ouer the troublesome times of *Mesoot* the sonne of *Kei-Cubades*, and of *Kei-Cubades* the sonne of *Feramuzin*, both Sultans, but the great Tartars tributaries, and raigning but at their pleasure, vntill the time of the second *Aladin*, the sole and last heire of the Iconian kingdome, before by the Tartars diuided, which was no few yeeres. All which time *Ertogrul* liued quietly at SVGVTA, as one amongst many other of the Iconian Sultans subiects, wisely considering the fall of the *Selzuccian* Sultans, both in PERSIA and at ICONIVM; as also the ruine of his owne house and familie, both from royall state brought almost vnto nothing: and therefore with patience taking the world as it came, and making a vertue of necessitie, contenting himselfe with a little, bare himselfe kindly towards all men. In which contented kinde of life, he grew to great yeeres, with his three sonnes, greatly beloued and honoured of their neighbours, as well Christians as Turks; and no lesse fauoured by the second *Aladin*, then Sultan, than he had been of all the Sultans before him: whom the young men his sons, after the manner of their nation (forbidding them with emptie hands to salute their Princes) oftentimes visited with one present or other. In all which his sonnes were many good parts to be seene, yet so, as that in *Othoman* was easily to be perceiued a greater courage and spirit than in the other two his brethren: which was the cause that he was the more of all them of his tribe regarded, but especially of the youthfull and warlike sort, which commonly resorted vnto him when he went to hawke or hunt, or to other delights of the field (the counterfeits of warre) and was of them commonly called *Osman Gazi*, that is to say, *Osman* the warlike.

Small things in time of trouble yeeld vnto the wise great content.

In this frontier countrey neere vnto SVGVTA, the dwelling place of old *Ertogrul*, had Sultan *Aladin* diuers lieutenants & captains, gouernours of his castles and strong holds vpon those frontiers, with whom *Othoman* was well acquainted, and vnto whom he for friendship sake oftentimes resorted: but especially vnto the captaine of IN-VNOI, for that he knew himselfe to be of him well beloued, and therefore vnto him very welcome. So it fortuned vpon a time, that as *Othoman* being yet but young, was going to make merrie with the gouernour of ESKI-CHISAR (a castle about foure and twentie miles off, called of the Greekes *Palæocastron*) by the way as he went, at a place called ITBVRNE (a towne in PHRYGIA) chanced there to see, and afterwards to fall in liking of a faire maiden called *Malhatun*: vnto whom his affection daily increasing, he without his fathers knowledge sent a secret friend of his to intreat with her of marriage. Which after long discourse to her made concerning *Othomans* affection and request, gaue him answer, that betwixt *Othoman* & her was great inequalitie, a thing especially to be regarded and eschued of such as wished to liue an happie life in wedlock bands; she was (as she said) but meanly born,

Othoman amorous of Malhatun a country maid.

and therefore was not to expect so great a match: whereas he could not want choice of other maidens of more worth, and in all respects more answerable vnto himselfe. But amongst other causes why she gaue him this answer, one was, for that some that wished her well, had put into her head, that *Othoman* meant not indeed to marie her, but vnder that colour to obtaine of her some few dayes pleasure, and so hauing dishonoured her, afterward againe to cast her off: which was indeed far from his thought; for he the more enflamed with her modest deniall, the more desired her for his wife. In the meane time, *Othoman* going againe vnto the gouernour of Eski-Chisar, and courteously by him entertained, chanced (as it oftentimes doth amongst familiar friends in their merriments) to fall in speech of his loue, with greater affection than discretion, commending her beautie, her feature, & gracious perfections, not dissembling also, to her greater praise, the repulse by him receiued at her hands. Which the gouernor hearing, seemed greatly to like of his choice, saying, that she was by the diuine prouidence (for so the Turks religiously vse to speake) appointed only for him to haue. But in the meane time secretly inflamed with the immoderat commendations of *Othoman*, without respect of friendship, he began to grow amorous of her himselfe, whom he had neuer seene; so light is that fooliſh affection: and that so far, as that being otherwise a man of good discretion, he was not able to conceale or couer these new conceiued flames, but that *Othoman* by certaine coniectures & tokens perceiued the same. And yet dissembling the matter, as if he had suspected nothing, being risen from the banquet, calling vnto him one of his trustie seruants, secretly sent him away vnto certaine of the maidens friends, willing them in his name, as they tendred her honor, without delay to send her away vnto some safe place farther off, for feare she were not ere long taken from them by a great man, more amorous of her person than respectuous of her honour. And by and by after, taking his leaue of his vnfaithfull friend and bidding him farwell, tooke his way vnto the captaine of In-Vngi, whom he knew to be his deare friend. But whilest he there staied certaine dayes, passing the time in hawking, hunting, and other youthfull disports, with the captaine his friend; the gouernour of Eski-Chisar, who commanded all the countrey thereabout (called *Sultan-Vngi*) sent one of his trustie seruants to Iznik, to see faire *Malhatun*, and how all things there went: who comming thither, and vnderstanding of her secret departure, and that by the aduertisement from *Othoman* she was conueyed to certaine of her friends a farre off; at his returne, from point to point certified his master thereof. Who exceedingly grieued with the report, and fretting aboue measure to see himselfe so deluded by *Othoman*, presently sent vnto the captaine of In-Vngi (being within his iurisdiction) to command him without delay to deliuer *Othoman* vnto him. But he louing of him well, as a faithfull man vnto his friend, could with no threats or intreatie be perswaded so to doe. Wherefore the gouernour in a great rage presently raising the greatest power he was able to make, came to the castle of In-Vngi, requiring to haue *Othoman* forthwith deliuered vnto him. Where among the souldiers there in garrison with the captaine, began to arise diuers opinions; some wishing, for the auerting of the present danger for which they were now vnprouided, to haue him deliuered; and otherſome abhorring so trecherous a fact, willing rather to endure all extremities. In the end after much consultation, honestie preuailed, & it was generally resolued, that he should be defended, who could not without their great infamie be deliuered. But *Othoman* terrified with that diuersitie of opinions, which had euen at the first shewed it selfe; and thinking it not for his safetie, to commit himselfe vnto the trust of such wauering men, entred into a deepe conceit of a matter of great aduenture, which was, by a sudden sallie to make himselfe way thorow the midst of his enemies. Wherewith hauing made his brother *Iunus* & those few his followers there present acquainted, and thereupon resolued; he fiercely sallied out, and by plaine force brake thorow the thickest of them, and so tooke his way towards Svgvta, still notably repulsing them that were sent to pursue him. But being come into the frontiers of his fathers territorie, and the report of his danger knowne, and that being but weakly accompanied, he was by a great number of his enemies pursued; presently all the lustie youths and such as loued him well, tooke horse to come vnto his rescue: who meeting with the gouernors souldiers, that had *Othoman* in chace, in a sharpe conflict slew diuers of them, and put the rest to flight. Of whom some were also taken prisoners, and amongst the rest one *Michael Cosse* a Christian, captaine of a little castle in that countrey called Hramen-caia, or the rocke of *Ormeni*: of whom *Othoman* taking compassion, freely pardoned him that offence. With which vnexpected courtesie he was so moued, that euer after he tooke part with him,

A folie common vnto louers.

No friendship in loue.

Othoman besieged & in danger for his loue.

A him, and did him great ſeruice in his wars: whoſe poſteritie hath euer ſince euen vntill this our age continued, next vnto the *Othoman* familie, moſt honorable and famous amongſt the Turks, by the name of the *Michael-Oglies*, that is to ſay, the ſonnes or poſteritie of *Michael*.

Ertogrul now ſpent with age, ſhortly after died, in the yeere of our Lord 1289, hauing liued 93 yeeres, and thereof gouerned the *Oguzian* familie after the death of his father *Solyman*, 52. His death was of all his tribe and kinred greatly lamented, and his bodie after the Turkiſh manner honourably buried at SVGVTA, where he had of long time liued.

After whoſe death, theſe plaine *Oguzian* Turks, in a generall aſſemblie conſulting whom they might chuſe for their lord and gouernour in ſtead of old *Ertogrul*; caſting their eyes eſpecially
B vpon two, ſtood in doubt of which of them to make choice. For although moſt men were of opinion, that *Othoman* for the rare gifts and vertues as well of bodie as of minde, was to be preferred before the reſt of his brethren, the ſonnes of *Ertogrul*: yet were there ſome, and they alſo men of great grauitie and experience, who had in ſuſpect the young mans age, as of it ſelfe ſlipperie, and for moſt part prone to vice, eſpecially in the libertie of great power: and therefore thought it better to make choice of *Dunder* (*Ertogruls* brother, and *Othomans* vncle) a man of far greater grauitie, iudgement, and experience. But *Dunder* himſelfe, being indeed a wiſe man and far from all ambition, perſwaded them in that choice not to haue any regard at all vnto his honour or preferment, but to conſider what were beſt for their ſtate and welfare in generall. For he prouidently foreſaw in what danger the *Oguzian* ſtate ſtood, expoſed on the one ſide to the
C mortall hatred and trecheries of the Greekes, grieued to ſee themſelues ſpoiled by the Turks, and naturally hating them for the Mahometane religion: and on the other ſide not ſurely backt with the Sultans of ICONIVM, brought in thraldome to the Tartars, and daily growne weaker and weaker: Vnto which inconueniences and dangers (he ſaid) an old weake and ouerworne bodie (as was his) could giue no helpe or remedie at all; but required the helpe of a wiſe, politicke, vigilant, ſtirring, and valiant man, ſuch as they all well knew was *Othoman* his brothers ſon. Thus before he came vnto the election, he in priuate declared his mind vnto the chiefe of the *Oguzian* familie: and afterward at their requeſt comming vnto the generall aſſemblie, all mens minds and eyes now fixed vpon *Othoman*, he firſt of all (by his example to encourage the reſt) for the good of the *Oguzian* tribe, his ancient houſe and familie, ſaluted him their great lord and gouernour,
D promiſing vnto him all loyaltie, with the vttermoſt of his ſeruice: whereunto by and by enſued the great applauſe of the reſt of the people, as vnto a gouernour ſent vnto them by God: vnto whom they ioyfully wiſhed all happie ſucceſſe, with long life, and a moſt proſperous gouernment. Thus with all mens good liking was *Othoman* made the great gouernour of the *Oguzian* Turks, and ſo become amongſt them a great commander, and honoured with the name of *æſman-Beg*, or, the lord *Oſman*. Yet was this his honour included in a ſmall circuit, plaine and homely, without any great pompe or ſhew, as commanding amongſt rough and rude heardſmen and ſhepheards, not acquainted with the courteſie of other more ciuill nations: for as yet they were the ſame homely Scythian Nomades that they were before, and could not as yet be perſwaded to forſake their wonted rude and vnciuill manners, by long tradition receiued from
E their anceſtors, and ſo beſt agreeing with their nature and calling. Amongſt which rude heardſmen, this new gouernour (himſelfe not too farre exceeding the reſt in ciuilitie) commanded much like vnto another *Romulus*; of whom alſo the Turks report many ſuch things as doe the Romanes of their founder, which for breuitie I thought good to paſſe ouer.

The Oguzian Turks in doubt of whom to make choice for their gouernour.

Now it fortuned that *Othoman* euen in the beginning of his gouernment, fell firſt at ods with one *Hagionicholaus*, or *S. Nicolas* (captaine of EINEGIOL, a caſtle there by) for that he had oftentimes of purpoſe troubled & moleſted theſe *Oguzian* heardſmen, in paſſing too and fro with their cattell by his caſtle. For which cauſe *Othoman* was enforced to requeſt the captaine of BILEZVGA (another caſtle there by, alſo his neighbour and friend) that his people in paſſing that way to the mountaines, might with their goods and cattell as occaſion ſhould require, take the
F refuge of his caſtle; which the courteous captaine (well acquainted with old *Ertogrul*, *Othomans* father) eaſily granted, yet with this prouiſo, that none ſhould with ſuch goods or cattell haue acceſſe into his caſtle, but the Turks women only: which his courteſie *Othoman* refuſed not. So was the caſtle of BILEZVGA from that time forward a refuge vnto the Turks women, who paſſing that way, and there ſhrowded with their goods & cattell, vſually preſented the captaine with ſome one homely countrey preſent or other, which afterwards was the loſſe of the caſtle.

Yet was not *Othoman* vnmindfull of the wrong done vnto his people, by his euill neighbour G
the captaine of EINEGIOL: but purposing to be thereof reuenged, made choice of seuentie
of his best and most able men, whom he appointed secretly to passe the mountaine ORMENIVS,
and so if it were possible, to surprise or set on fire his enemies castle. Of which his designement,
the warie captaine hauing intelligence by one of his espials, in place conuenient vpon the
mountaine laid a strong ambush for the cutting off of such as were by *Othoman* sent to haue sur-
prised his castle: whereof *Othoman* (no lesse warie than he) before warned by his scouts, & aug-
menting the number of his men, marched directly vnto the place where the enemie lay. Where
betwixt them (for so small a number) was fought a right cruell and bloudie battell, and many
slaine on both sides; amongst whom *Hozza*, *Othomans* nephew was one. The victorie neuer- H
theless fell vnto *Othoman*: after which time his people in much more safetie fed their cattell in
the Summer time on the mountaines as their manner was, and so in quiet passed to and fro.

The castle of Chalce surprised by Othoman.

Shortly after, *Othoman* by night surprised the little castle of CHALCE, not far from EINE-
GIOL: and there without mercie put to the sword all the Christians he found therein, and so
afterwards burnt the castle; which outrage was the beginning and occasion of great troubles
thereof ensuing. For the Christians of the countries adioyning, much grieued therewith, and
The Christians complaine of the wrong done vnto them by the Turks.

assembling themselues together, complained vnto the captaine of CARA CHIZAR, the grea-
test commander thereabout, that these Turks, which not many yeeres before were of meere
pittie receiued as poore heardsmen into that countrey, began now in warlike manner to lay
violent hands vpon the ancient lands and possessions of the Christians; which insolencie (as I
they said) if it were longer winked at and suffered by him, and other such men of account and
authoritie as were to reforme the same, they would no doubt in short time driue both them,
and all the rest of the Christians out of their natiue countries: wherefore it were now high time
and more than necessarie for him, and all the rest to awake (as it were) out of the dead sleepe
wherein they had long time drousily slept; and ioyning their forces together, to expulse those
vnthankfull encroching and merciless strangers out of their countries: The mischiefe they said
being now spred far, therefore needed speedie remedie; and that repentance would come too
late when it was past cure. The captaine moued with the indignitie of the late fact, and iust
complaint of the poore countrey people, sent with all speed a strong companie of souldiers, vn-
der the leading of *Calanus* his brother, with commandement that they should march vnto the K
castle of EINEGIOL, and there to ioyne with the rest of the Christian forces.

Othoman vnderstanding of this preparation made against him, gathering his souldiers toge-
ther, marched to a place called OPSICIVM, neere vnto mount TMOLVS in PHRYGIA, where
betweene him and the Christians was fought a sharpe battell, wherein he lost his brother *Saru-
gatin* (whom the Turks account for a Saint or Martyr at this day) with many other of his soul-
diers. In this battell was also *Calanus* slaine, whose bellie *Othoman* caused to be ripped, and his
intrals to be pulled out, naming the place where he was buried *Mesari-Repec*, that is to say, the
Dog-Graue, by which name the place is at this day knowne. The bodie of his brother *Saruga-
tin* he carried to SVGVTA, and there honourably buried it neere to the bodie of his father *Er-
thogrul*. *Aladin* Sultan of ICONIVM vnderstanding of this conflict, was very sorie for the losse L
hapned vnto *Othoman*, being a Mahometane of his owne religion: wherefore in token of his
good will and fauour, he gaue vntō him the citie of PALEAPOLIS, with all the territorie there-
unto belonging, giuing vnto him also leaue to besiege, take, or spoile, the signiorie and castle of
CARA-CHISAR: for accomplishment whereof, he sent vnto him both souldiers and munition.
Othoman encouraged with this great bountie of the Sultans, straightly besieged the castle of CA-
RA-CHISAR; which at last he wan, and slew all the Christians therein: the captaine he tooke
aliue, whom he cruelly executed: the spoile of the castle he gaue vnto his souldiers, reseruing
only the fift part thereof, which he sent for a present to the Sultan. All this happened in the
yeere of our Lord 1290. This castle of CARA-CHISAR, with the rest, as EINEGIOL, BI-
LEZVGA, CHALCE, and others before and hereafter in the life of *Othoman* to be mentioned, M
were all situate in the borders of the greater PHRYGIA, or else neere thereunto in the confines
of BYTHINIA and MYSIA: In which pleasant countries (but lately part of the Constanti-
nopolitane empire) the Christians the ancient inhabitants thereof yet dwelt, intermingled with
the Turks, at the rising of the *Othoman* empire; with whom they liued at continuall iars, vntill
that at length they were by them altogether oppressed and extinguished.

Othoman

A *Othoman* encouraged with this good ſucceſſe, and ſupported by the great Sultan of ICONIVM, began now after his ambitious nature to conceit greater matters, for the further increaſe of his honor and territorie: yet not truſting altogether to his owne deuiſe, he entred into conſultation with his brother *Iundus*, which way was beſt to take to diſtreſſe and bring in ſubjection his neighbours the Chriſtians. In which caſe, *Iundus* a man of greater courage than diſcretion, aduiſed him with all celeritie to vrge his good fortune, and preſently to inuade the Chriſtians alreadie diſcouraged with the loſſe of CARA-CHISAR. But this counſell altogether pleaſed not *Othoman* for (ſaid he) the caſtles & forts by vs gained, muſt be kept with ſtrong garriſons, otherwiſe they will againe be recouered by the enemie; which garriſons cannot be maintained and
B kept, if we ſpoile or diſpeople the countries adjoyning vpon vs; for in ſo doing wee ſhall (as it were) with our owne hands cut our owne throats: wherfore *I* thinke it better, that we enter into a league of amitie and friendſhip with the Chriſtians round about vs, which league we wil keep with ſome, or breake with others, as ſhall ſerue beſt for our purpoſe. And according to this reſolution, he made peace indeed with all the Chriſtians, but eſpecially with *Michael Coſsi*, captaine of HIRMEN-CAIA caſtle, of whō we haue before ſpoken, who afterward ſerued him to great vſe in the mannaging of his wars, and became alſo a renegate of the Mahometane religion. All this *Othoman* did the rather, becauſe he was then at great variance with one *Germean-Ogli* (a great man among the Turkes, but one of the *Selzuccian* familie) who enuying at the riſing of *Othoman*, ſought by all means poſſible to hinder his greatneſſe, as did alſo the others, his quiet-
C neſſe: which diſcord the Chriſtians liked well, as a meane for them to liue in more reſt by.

Othoman conſulteth with his brother Iundus what courſe to take for the oppreſſing of the Chriſtians his neighbours.

In the meane time, *Othoman* deuiſed with all carefulneſſe to beautifie and ſtrengthen his new commonweale: and for the greater concourſe of people, built a faire temple in CARA-CHISAR for the exerciſe of the Mahometane religion; appointed markets to be kept in all peaceable maner in his great townes, granting great priuiledges vnto ſuch as reſorted thither, as well Chriſtians as Turks; vſing therein ſuch juſtice, that all ſorts of people without feare in hope of gaine reſorting thither, furniſhed his countrey and townes with all things neceſſarie: yet this care of ciuile pollicie and gouernment, could not ſo withdraw him, but that according to his aſpiring mind, he had alwaies a greater deſire and care to enlarge his poſſeſſions and territorie. Wherefore intending to make a road into BITHINIA, he requeſted *Michael Coſsi*, the Chriſtian cap-
D tain before mentioned, to deliuer his opinion what was beſt to be done? who ſo politickely directed him in that exploit, that he returned victorious, enriched with great ſpoile and more honor. This road ſo terrified moſt of the Chriſtians thereabouts, that they were loth to giue *Othoman* any cauſe of offence, for feare leaſt they ſhould by him be ſpoiled.

It fortuned about this time, that the captaines of BILEZVGH & CVPRI-CHISAR falling at ods; he of CVPRI-CHISAR firſt taking vp armes, fiercely inuaded the captaine of BILEZVGA: who thereupon ſent vnto *Othoman*, to pray his ayd, which he eaſily graunted, and ſo without further delay preſently came vnto him with certeine companies of luſtie tall ſouldiours. By whoſe comming, the captaine of BILEZVGA not a little encouraged and ſtrengthened, ſet vpon his enemie: where betwixt them was made a ſharpe conflict, and diuers on both ſides
E ſlaine: but the victorie by the helpe of *Othoman* the Turke, at length enclining vnto the BILEZVGIAN, the other vanquiſhed captaine in all haſt fled vnto his owne caſtle. After whom *Othoman* following, laid ſeige vnto the caſtle, which at length he tooke together with the captaine, whom he cauſed to be preſently ſlaine. It is ſtrange to tell, how proued the lord of BILEZVGA was, to haue ſo reuenged himſelfe of his enemie, and to haue gayned the victorie; although it were indeed gotten, not ſo much by his valour as by the proweſſe of the Turke: for whom and his followers, in token of his thankfulneſſe, he cauſed a great feaſt to be prouided in the countrie thereby, where he honorably entertained them; & in the end of the feaſt, cauſed garments of great price (according to the manner of the Eaſterne nations) to be giuen vnto *Oheman*, in token of his fauour; and his ſouldiors to be alſo bountifully rewarded: but this was done with
F ſuch a preſumptious ſtate and grace as if he had been ſome great prince, offering vnto the common ſouldiors of the Turks, in paſſing by them, his hand to kiſſe, as a great fauour. With which exceeding inſolencie, *Othoman* was ſo much offended, that he had much adoe to hold his hands from him: yet repreſſing his anger; he in ſecret imparted his diſcontentment vnto his coſin *Dunder*, his vncle *Dunders* ſonne; grieuouſly complayning of the intollerable pride of the Chriſtian captaine, and of the diſgrace by him done vnto the Turks, in offring them his hand to

Othoman ſetteth in order his little commonweale.

kiſſe;

kiſſe; requiring his opinon how he were for the ſame to be corrected: who but a little before, being by the ſaid captaine made his lieutenant, franckly told his kinſman, That as then nothing was to be attẽpted againſt him; firſt, for that on the one ſide they had *Germean-ogli* (a great man amongſt the *Selzuccian* Turks) their enemie, & round about them beſides they were inuironed with the Chriſtians, whom he ſhould haue all in his neck atonce if he ſhould offer the BILEZVGIAN captaine any wrong. By which anſwere, *Othoman* perceiuing his coſins great affection towards the Chriſtian captaine, & doubting to haue the miſchiefe he had imagined againſt him, by him reuealed, or at leaſtwiſe hindered; without more adoe ſuddenly taking vp his bow in his hand, with an arrow ſhot him quite thorow, and ſo ſlew him. G

Michael Coſſi inuiteth Othoman to the mariage of his daughter.

Not long after *Michael Coſsi* the captaine of HIRMEN-CAIA, *Othomans* great friend, hauing concluded a mariage betweene a gentleman of that countrey and his daughter, inuited all the Chriſtian captaines of the caſtles thereabouts, requeſting them to come to the mariage; and the rather that ſo they might grow into acquaintance with *Othoman*, whoſe power began now to grow dreadfull vnto them: hoping that ſuch meanes might be found at that merrie meeting, that all being made friends, euery man might in more ſecuritie poſſeſſe his owne without feare of being ſpoiled by him. Vnto this mariage came all theſe bidden gueſts, bringing with them ſuch preſents as they thought good to beſtow vpon the new maried folkes, according to the maner of the countrey: but *Othomans* gifts far exceeded all the reſt, who beſides many other rich things, gaue vnto them whole flocks and droues of ſheepe and cattell: which thing drew all the Chriſtian captaines into no little admiration of his bountie; inſomuch that they began to ſay amongſt themſelues, that *Othomans* wealth and good fortune did portend ſome greater matter, to their vtter ruine and fall; which to preuent, they thought it beſt by ſecret meanes to compaſſe his death. The execution of which deuiſe they referred to the captaine of BILEZVGA, as vnto one with him beſt acquainted. This captaine was of great wealth, credit, and authoritie amongſt the Chriſtian rulers thereabouts, but verie full of craft and diſſimulation: which his euill diſpoſition *Othoman* of long time well perceiued; yet hauing occaſion to vſe him, in ſubtill manner gaue him (in outward ſhew) all the honour he could, magnifying him in words, and debaſing himſelfe as plaine & poore in compariſon of him. But to giue a beginning to this trecherous deuiſe, the captaine meeting with *Othoman*, in friendly manner told him, how that he intended ſhortly to marie the daughter of the captaine of IAR-CHISER, earneſtly requeſting him to honor that his marriage with his preſence, of the time wherof, he ſaid he would giue him farther knowledge afterwards: and all was but a colour, to bring *Othoman* within his danger, not fearing any ſuch treaſon. *Othoman* vnderſtanding that the time of the mariage drew nigh, ſent thither a preſent of certaine fat oxen & ſheepe, in the name of his brother *Iundus*, for the captaines prouiſion againſt the mariage; certifying him, That *Othoman* himſelf, with his ſimple retinue, would be preſent at the mariage, and then preſent him, not with ſuch preſents as were agreeable with his honour, yet ſuch as his poore abilitie could affoord. This meſſage with the preſents, were wonderfull welcome to the captaine, hoping aſſuredly that his deuiſed treacherie would take ſuch effect as he wiſhed. And therefore calling vnto him *Michael Coſsi*, in whom he had repoſed an eſpeciall truſt, declared vnto him his whole deuiſe (wherof he was not before altogether ignorant,) requeſting him to take the paines to go vnto *Othoman* to bring him to the marriage, the time being now certainly appointed and at hand; which he knew *Coſsi* might eaſily do, being of his familiar acquaintãce. And in token of great friendſhip, he ſent vnto *Othoman* by the ſame meſſenger, a preſent of gilt plate. *Coſsi* tooke vpon him this meſſage, which whẽ he had deliuered vnto *Othoman*, he foũd him verie willing to go, as a man not doubting any harme. But *Coſsi* inwardly grieuing to ſee ſo braue a man, and his kind friend, by ſuch treacherous maner to be brought to his end; moued with compaſſion, diſcouered vnto him the whole conſpiracie of the captaine againſt him, and of the plot laied for his deſtruction, willing him to take heed vnto himſelfe: for which verture, *Othoman* great *Coſsi* gaue thankes, as to his friend, for ſauing his life; and withall richly rewarded him, promiſing him greater matters if he would continue that his faithfull friendſhip. Now concerning the captaine of BELIZVOA (ſaith he) at your returne recommend me vnto him, and tell him, That I thinke my ſelfe much bound vnto him for many courteſies, but eſpecially for that he hath heretofore diuers times in moſt friendly manner protected my goods and cattell, within the ſafegard of his caſtle: which his friendſhip I moſt humbly requeſt him to continue for one yeare more, enforced therunto by H I K L M

rea-

A reaſon of the dangerous wars betwixt me and the Prince *Germean-Ogli*, as he well knoweth: wherefore if it might ſo ſtand with his good pleaſure, I would preſently ſend vnto his caſtle ſuch things as I make moſt reckoning of, requeſting him once more to be the faithfull keeper thereof, as he hath beene before: and tell him further, that my mother in law, with her daughter my wife, deſire nothing more than to finde opportunitie to be acquainted with the honourable Ladie his mother; for which cauſe (if it pleaſe him) I will bring them both with me to the marriage. This *Othomans* requeſt, when the captaine of BILEZVGA vnderſtood by *Michael Coſſi*, he ſent the ſame *Coſſi* backe againe to haſten his comming, willing him to bring with him what geſſe he pleaſed; appointing certaine time and place when and where the marriage ſhould be
B ſolemniſed. And becauſe the caſtle of BILEZVGA was thought to be too little conueniently to receiue the multitude of people which were expected at the marriage, there was another open place of greater receipt appointed in the countrey for that purpoſe, about three miles diſtant from the caſtle. The marriage day drew nigh, whereunto *Othoman* muſt repaire for his promiſe ſake: and therefore prepared with all diligence to ſet forward, and to put in execution what he had deuiſed for the ſafetie of himſelfe, and deſtruction of his enemie. *Othoman* had of long accuſtomed in dangerous times, to ſend by carriage the beſt of his things, made vp in packs, to be kept in ſafetie in the caſtle of BILEZVGA: vnder the colour whereof, he now made great packs in forme as he was wont; but in ſtead of his rich houſhold ſtuffe, and ſuch other things of price, he thruſt in armed men, couering thoſe packs with homely couerings, ſending them by carria-
C ges to the caſtle of BILEZVGA, giuing charge that they ſhould not come thither before twilight. After that, he apparelled certaine of his beſt ſouldiers in womens apparell, as if it had beene his wife and mother in law, with their women: ſo caſting his iourney, that he with theſe diſguiſed ſouldiers, and the other ſent in packs, might at one inſtant meet at the caſtle aforeſaid. The captaine being now in the countrey, and vnderſtanding that *Othoman* was comming in the euening with a great traine of gentlewomen; thought the cauſe of his late comming to be, for that the Turkiſh women vſe to ſhun the ſight of Chriſtian men by all meanes they can. *Othoman* being now come to the place in the countrey where the marriage was next day to be ſolemnized, hauing done his humble reuerence to the captaine, requeſted him to doe him the honour, that his gentlewomen which were nigh at hand, might by his appointment be ſent to his caſtle, there to
D haue ſome conuenient lodging where they might alight and beſtow themſelues apart from others, according to the homely faſhion of their nation; leſt peraduenture the preſence of ſo honourable a companie of noblemen and gallants, might put them out of countenance: which the captaine granted, and hauing ſaluted them afarre off after the Turkiſh manner, commanded them to be conueyed to his caſtle, making reckoning of them all as of a rich prey. At the ſame time that theſe diſguiſed ſouldiers arriued at the caſtle, came thither alſo the other ſouldiers couered in packs in the carriages: which ſo ſoone as they were within the caſtle, ſuddenly leapt out of the packs, and drawing their ſhort ſwords, with the helpe of their diſguiſed fellowes, ſlew the warders of the caſtle, and without more adoe poſſeſſed the ſame: the greateſt part of the captaines people being before gone out of the caſtle to the place of the marriage.
E *Othoman* hauing tarried ſo long with the captaine, as he ſuppoſed the caſtle by that time by his men ſurpriſed; ſo ſoone as the captaine had taken his chamber, ſuddenly tooke horſe, with al his followers, accompanied alſo with *Coſſi*, taking his way directly to the caſtle of BILEZVGA: of whoſe ſudden departure the captaine vnderſtanding, preſently tooke horſe and purſued him with all his traine, which were for the moſt part drunke; and ouertaking him before he came to the caſtle, ſet vpon him: in which conflict, he was by *Othoman* ſlaine, and the reſt put to flight.

The captaine of Bilezuga treacherouſly ſeeking the death of Othoman, is by him, himſelfe ſlaine.

The ſame night *Othoman* vſing great celeritie, earely in the morning ſurpriſed the caſtle of IARCHISAR alſo, where he tooke priſoners the captaine thereof, with his faire daughter *Lulufer*, (which ſhould haue beene maried to the captaine of BILEZVGA the next day) with all her friends, as they were readie to haue gone to the mariage: which faire Ladie he ſhortly after
F maried vnto his eldeſt ſonne *Orchanes*; who had by her *Amurath*, third King of the Turks, and *Solyman* Baſſa.

Othoman omitting no opportunitie, preſently ſent one of his captaines called *Durgut-Alpes*, a man of great eſteeme and valour, to beſiege the caſtle of EINEGIOL: wherein he vſed ſuch celeritie, that preuenting the fame of that was done at BILEZVGA, he ſuddenly inuironed the caſtle, in ſuch ſort that none could paſſe in or out; vntill ſuch time, as that *Othoman* hauing

brought

brought his prisoners and prey to the castle of BELIZVGA, and there hauing set all things in good order, came with the rest of his men of warre to EINEGIOL; which he presently by force tooke, promising the spoile thereof vnto his souldiers. The captaine called *Hagio-Nicholaus* his ancient enemie, he caused to be cut in small peeces, and all the men to be slaine: which crueltie he vsed, because they a little before had vsed the like tyrannie against his Turks. G

Othoman by administration of iustice strengtheneth his gouernment.

When *Othoman* had thus got into his subiection a great part of the strong castles and forces of the greater PHRYGIA, with the territorie to them belonging, he began with all carefulnesse to make good lawes, and to execute iustice to all his subiects, as well Christians as Turks: with great indifferencie studying by all meanes to keepe his countrey in peace and quietnesse, and to protect his subiects from the spoile of others, as well Christians as Turks: whereby it came to passe, that the old inhabitants which for the most part had forsaken the countrey, by reason of the great troubles therein, repaired now againe to their ancient dwellings; and not only they, but many other strangers also, supplying the places of them whom the late warres had consumed. So that by his good gouernment, that wasted countrey in short time grew to be againe very populous. H

The citie of Nice besieged by Othoman.

The ciuill gouernment of his countrey well established, he besieged the citie of ISNICA, in ancient time called NICE, a citie of BYTHINIA, famous for the generall Councell there holden against *Arius* in the time of *Constantine* the Great. This citie he brought into great distresse, by placing his men of warre in forts new built vpon euery passage and way leading vnto the same, so that nothing could be brought out of the countrey for the relieue of the poore citizens. I They in this extremitie, by a secret messenger certified the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE (vnder whose obedience they were) in what distresse the citie stood; and that except he sent them present relieue, they must of necessitie either perish with famine, or yeeld themselues into the hands of their enemies the Turks. The Emperour moued with the pitifull complaint of this messenger, with all expedition embarked certaine companies of souldiers from CONSTANTINOPLE to relieue his besieged citie. But *Othoman* vnderstanding by his espials where these souldiers were appointed to land, in secret manner withdrawing most of his forces from the siege, lay in ambush neere vnto the same place where the Emperours souldiers (casting no perill) landed: who before they could put themselues in order of battell, were by *Othoman* and his Turks in such sort charged, that most part of them were there slaine, and the rest driuen into the sea, where they miserably perished. *Othoman* hauing thus politikely ouerthrowne the Constantinopolitan souldiers, returning to the siege, continued the same in straighter manner than before. The besieged citizens driuen into great penurie, and now despairing of all helpe, yeelded themselues with the great and rich citie of NICE into the hands of *Othoman*, with the spoile whereof he greatly enriched his men of warre. K

Aladin the great Sultan of ICONIVM, glad to heare of this good successe of *Othoman* against the Christians, in token of his fauour and loue, sent vnto him a faire ensigne, with certaine drums, and trumpets, a sword, and princely robe, with large charters, That whatsoeuer he tooke from the Christians should be all his owne; and also that publike praiers should be said in all the Turks temples, in the name of *Othoman*, for his health and prosperous estate: which two things properly belonged to the dignitie of the Sultan. These extraordinarie fauours gaue occasion for many to thinke, that Sultan *Aladin* (hauing no children) intended to make *Othoman* his adoptiue sonne and successour in his kingdome. L

The presents and charters sent him, *Othoman* humbly accepted, sending vnto *Aladin* the fift part of the spoile of NICE, taken from the Christians; but the princely honors due vnto the Sultan onely, he vsed not during the life of *Aladin*: intending not long after to haue gone himselfe in person to visit the Sultan, and so to haue growne into his further fauour. But hauing prepared all things for so honourable a iourney, at what time as he was about to set forward, he was certainly informed of the death of *Aladin*; and that *Sahib* (one of his great counsellors) had taken vpon him the dignitie of the Sultan (as is before declared:) which newes much discontented the aspiring mind of this *Oguzian* Turke, in good hope to haue succeeded him in the kingdome, or at leastwise to haue shared the greatest part thereof vnto himselfe, whereof he was now altogether disappointed. Yet immediatly after the death of *Aladin*, he thought it now fit time to take vpon him the princely honours before granted vnto him by the Sultan in his life time, which he for modestie sake had forborne, *Aladin* yet liuing: wherefore he made one *Dursu* surnamed M

A named *Fakiche* (that is to say, a man learned in the Turkish law) Bishop and Iudge of CARA-CHISAR, commanding the publike praiers which were wont to be made for the health and prosperous raigne of the great Sultan, to be now made in his own name; which was first openly done by the said Bishop in the pulpit of CARA-CHISAR. At the same time he began also to coine money in his owne name, and to take vpon him all other honours belonging vnto a Sultan or King: which was about ten yeeres after the death of his father *Ertogrul*, and in the yeere of our Lord 1300, vnto which time the beginning of the great empire of the Turks is vnder the 1300
fortune of this *Othoman*, to be of right referred, as then by him thus begun.

When *Othoman* had thus taken vpon him the maiestie of a King, he made his sonne *Orchanes*
B Prince and gouernour of CARA-CHISAR; promoting his principall followers, to be gouernours of other strong castles and forts, diuers of which places retaine the name of those captaines at this day. He himselfe made choice of the citie NEAPOLIS, about twentie miles from NICE, to seat his regall palace in, where also diuers of his nobilitie built them houses, and changed the name of the citie, calling it DESPOTOPOLIS, as who should say, the citie of the Lord or Prince. For all this, *Othoman* ceased not to deuise by all meanes he could, to augment his kingdome: and for that cause being accompanied with his sonne *Orchanes*, made many rodes into the countries adioyning vpon him, surprizing such places as might best serue his purpose, for the enlargement of his kingdome, all which in particular to rehearse were tedious.

Neapolis the first regall citie of the Othoman Kings.

The Christian Princes, rulers of the countries bordering vpon this new kingdome, fearing
C lest the greatnesse of *Othoman* might in short time be their vtter confusion, agreed to ioyne all their forces together, and so to commit to the fortune of one great battell their owne estates with his: according to which resolution, the Christian confederate Princes, which were for the most part of MYSIA and BYTHINIA, leuying the greatest forces they were able to make, with fire and sword inuaded *Othomans* kingdome. Who hauing knowledge beforehand of this great preparation made against him, had in a readinesse all his captaines and men of warre: and hearing that his enemies had entred his dominion, in warlike manner marched directly towards them; and meeting with them in the confines of PHRYGIA & BYTHINIA, fought with them a great and mortall battell, wherein many were slaine on both sides, as well Turks as Christians: and after a long fight, obtained of them a right bloudie victorie. In this battell *Castoleanus*,
D one of the greatest Christian captaines was slaine: another called *Tekensis* of the country which he gouerned in PHRYGIA, chased by *Othoman* vnto the castle of VLVBAD, not farre distant from the place where the battel was fought, was for feare deliuered vnto him by the captaine of the same castle, and was afterward by *Othomans* commandement most cruelly cut in pieces, within the view of his chiefe castle: which *Othoman* afterward subdued, with all the countrey thereabouts. The other Christian Princes and captaines saued themselues by flying into stronger holds farther off. The Prince of BYTHINIA, the chiefe author of this warre, fled into the strong citie of PRVSA, which the Turks now call BVRVSA, whither *Othoman* not long after led his armie, in good hope to haue won the same: but finding it not possible to be taken by force, began presently at one time to build two great and strong castles vpon the chiefe passages
E leading to the citie, which castles he with great industrie finished in one yeere: and in the one placed as captaine *Aktemeur* his nephew, in the other one *Balabanzuck*, both men of great courage, and skilfull in feats of warre: and in this sort hauing blocked vp the citie of PRVSA, so that little or nothing could without great danger be brought into it, he subdued the most part of BYTHINIA; and so returned home, leauing the two castles well manned with strong garrisons, vnder the charge of the captaines beforenamed.

Prusa besieged by Othoman.

Othoman returning home to NEAPOLIS, honourably rewarded his souldiers, according to their deserts, establishing such a quiet and pleasing gouernment in his kingdome, that people in great number resorted from far into his dominions, there to seat themselues: whereby his kingdome became in few yeeres exceeding populous, and he for his politicke gouernment most fa-
F mous. And so liuing in great quietnesse certaine yeeres, being now become aged & much troubled with the gout; his old souldiers accustomed to liue by the wars, abhorring peace, came vnto him, requesting him as it were with one voice, to take some honourable war in hand for the inlarging of his kingdome, with great cheerefulnes offring to spend their liues in his seruice rather than to grow old in idlenesse: which forwardnesse of his men of war greatly pleased him, and so giuing them thanks, for that time dismissed them, promising that he would not be long vnmind-

full

full of their requeſt. But yet thinking it good to make all things ſafe at home before he tooke G
any great wars in hand abroad, thought it expedient to call vnto him *Michael Coſſi*, the onely
Chriſtian captaine whom for his great deſerts he had at all times ſuffered to liue in quiet with
his poſſeſſions, as it were in the heart of his kingdome; and by faire meanes (if it might be) to
perſwade him to forſake the Chriſtian religion, & to become a follower of *Mahomets*, ſo to take
away all occaſion of miſtruſt: which if he ſhould refuſe to doe, then forgetting all former friend-
ſhip, to make warre vpon him as his vtter enemie. Whereupon *Coſſi* was ſent for, being per-
ſwaded by the meſſenger, that *Othoman* had ſent for him becauſe he had occaſion to vſe his
wonted faithfull counſell and ſeruice in a great exploit which he had intended, as he had often-
times before. *Coſſi* thinking of nothing leſſe than of that which enſued, came accompanied with H
ſuch ſouldiers as he thought to vſe in that ſeruice: But comming vnto *Othoman*, and vnderſtan-
Michael Coſſi turneth Turke. ding the very cauſe why he was ſent for, and ſeeing danger imminent on euery ſide, kiſſing *Otho-*
mans hand, after the manner of the Turks, requeſted him in courteous manner to enter him in
the principles of the Mahometane religion, which he promiſed euer after to embrace: And ſo
ſaying certaine words after *Othoman*, he turned Turke, to the great diſpleaſure of God, and the
contentment of *Othoman* and his nobilitie. For which his reuolting, *Othoman* preſently gaue
him an enſigne and a rich robe, tokens whereby the Mahometane Sultans aſſure their vaſſales
of their fauour and the vndoubted poſſeſſion of ſuch land and liuing as they then hold.

Oftentimes after this, *Othoman* for the contenting of his ſouldiers inuaded the countries bor-
dering vpon him, tooke many ſtrong caſtles and forts, ſubdued the moſt part of PHRYGIA, I
MISIA, and BYTHINIA, and other great regions, vnto the Euxine ſea: and being now very
aged, and diſeaſed as is aforeſaid with the gout, and thereby vnable to goe into the field in per-
ſon himſelfe, oftentimes ſent his ſonne *Orchanes* againſt his enemies; who to the imitation of his
father atchieued many great enterpriſes, *Othoman* his father yet liuing.

Now happily might the conſiderate reader (and not without iuſt cauſe) maruell, what dead
ſleepe had ouerwhelmed the Greeke Emperors of thoſe times; firſt *Michael Paleologus*, and af-
terward his ſonne *Andronicus*, both men of great valour, and ſtill reſiant at CONSTANTINO-
PLE, thus to ſuffer the Turks (not *Othoman*, for he as yet bare no ſway, but others the ſharers of
Sultan *Aladins* kingdome) to take their cities, ſpoile their countries, kill their ſubiects, and daily
to incroach vpon them in the leſſer ASIA, and eſpecially in BYTHINIA, ſo neere vnto them, K
and as it were euen vnder their noſes: But let him, with me, here as in a moſt conuenient place
but breath a little, and conſider the troubled eſtate of that declining empire, now haſting to an
end; and he ſhall plainly ſee the cauſes of the decay thereof, and how like an old diſeaſed bodie
quite ouerthrowne and ſicke to death, it became at length a prey vnto the aſpiring Turks. *Mi-*
chael Paleologus hauing by great trecherie obtained the Greeke empire, and by rare fortune re-
couered alſo the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE from *Baldwin* the Emperour (as is in the for-
mer part of this Hiſtorie declared) fearing the power of the Princes of the Weſt, but eſpecially
of *Charles* King of SICILIA, then a Prince of great fame & power, whom he knew *Baldwin* (the
late Emperour) ceaſed not to ſollicite for the reſtitution of him againe into his empire, and to
haue alſo ioyned with him a neere bond of affinitie, by marrying his daughter vnto *Charles* his L
ſon: to auert this danger, and to intangle *Charles* with troubles neere home, he by his embaſſa-
dours offered vnto *Gregorie* the tenth, then Biſhop of ROME, to vnite and conforme the Greeke
church vnto the Latine, & to acknowledge the Biſhops ſupremacie, in ſuch ſort, as that it ſhould
be lawfull for any man to appeale vnto the court of ROME, as vnto the higher and more excel-
lent court: of which his offer the Pope gladly accepted, promiſing to performe what he had be-
Alteration of religion in the Greeke church. fore requeſted, for the keeping of *Charles* otherwiſe buſied. But when it came to the point, that
this reformation and alteration of religion in the Greeke church ſhould be made, *Ioſeph* the Pa-
triarch, to begin withall, gaue vp his place, & ſhortly after forſaking the citie, retired himſelfe in-
to a monaſterie neere vnto the ſtrait of BOSPHORVS, where he at quiet deuoutly ſpent the re-
mainder of his life. The reſt of the clergie alſo diſcõtented with this innouation, in their ſermons M
openly inuaighed againſt it, perſwading the people not to receiue it, crying out, That now was
come the time of their triall, the time of their martyrdome, and the time wherein they were to
receiue the glorious crowne of their painfull ſuffrings: inſomuch, that great tumults were there-
upon raiſed, and all the citie and the countrey in an vprore: for it was not the clergie only, and
the vulgar people by them moued, which diſliked and abhorred theſe the Emperours proce-

dings,

A dings,and made theſe ſtirs, but many of the better ſort,yea of the chiefe magiſtrates themſelues alſo. So that *Michael Paleologus*, the emperour leauing all other forraine buſineſſe, was inforced to conuert al his power and ſtudie vnto the appeaſing of theſe domeſticall troubles,as deeming them of greater danger than his was abroad.And firſt to perſuade his diſcontented ſubjects,he told them, That this alteration was made, not for any good liking he had thereunto, but in reſpect of the dangerouſneſſe of the time:and that it was a ponit of wiſedome,to foreſee dangers hanging ouer our heads,and not to delay,if any thing were to be altered,for the auerting therof: for if the enemies as he ſaid ſhould come,the citie yet in many places rent, or but lately repaired,& as it were but newly raiſed from death to life; the preſent miſchiefes would be far greater
B than thoſe forepaſſed,and that then their enemies would become lords, not of their religion & ceremonies onely, but of all at once,their wiues, their children, and whatſoeuer elſe they had: where their liberty changed into bondage,they ſhould be conſtrained to conforme themſelues not with their bodily ſeruice only, but euen with their minds alſo, vnto the wils of the Latines their enemies.And that ſo it would come to paſſe, that no man ſhould be able to keepe the old cuſtomes and manners of his anceſtors, but ſhould ſee euen their moſt ſacred rites and ceremonies changed and quite ouerthrowne: Which he carefully foreſeeing, had not(as he ſaid)refuſed to yeeld vnto neceſſitie,and as wiſdome would,neglected a little harme in reſpect of a greater benefit; and in the leſſe, to haue yeelded vnto his enemies, to enjoy the benefit of the greater.With which the emperours perſuaſion,ſome were mooued,& ſo held themſelues contented: and ſome others not; againſt whom he was enforced to vſe other more ſeuere remedies, as againſt his rebellious ſubjects:of whom,ſome he impriſoned,ſome he baniſhed,ſome he tortured, ſome he diſmembred, ſome he depriued of their ſight, or confiſcated their goods,vſing (in briefe) all the meanes whereby the minds of the reſolute or the weake were to be mooued. *Perſecution in the Greeke Church for matters of Religion.*
All which things,they whoſe zeale was grounded vpon knowledge(in number the feweſt)with patience endured:but the greater part void of judgement, and the refuſe of the people in ſimple attire,ran roguing abroad, ſome into PELOPONESVS,ſome into THESSALIA, ſome into ACHAIA, & ſome as far as COLCHOS,as men perſecuted for their conſcience,not regarding greatly whether,ſo it were out of the Emperors juriſdiction,and ſomething fitting their owne humors;neither conforming themſelues vnto the religion then commonly by the Emperour eſtabliſhed,
D neither yet agreeing among themſelues, but taking vnto them diuers names, ſome as the diſciples of *Arſenius*,ſome of *Ioſeph*,& ſome of others;ſome of them,themſelues deceiued,and deceiuing others alſo. Thus for the auoiding of forraine danger out of the Weſt, was the Empire at home no little indangered, and the ſtate thereof ſhaken. Wherewith the Emperour was ſo encõbred, as that he had no leiſure to prouide for the tempeſt ariſing by the Turks out of the Eaſt, but was inforced wholly to imploy himſelfe & all his indeuours vnto the keeping of his people and ſubjects in their due obedience at home. All whoſe deepe deuiſes,firſt in aſpiring vnto the empire, (no way vnto him due) and great trauels afterwards for the aſſuring of the ſame vnto himſelfe and his poſteritie,againſt all right,euen with the alteration of the religion of his fathers, yeelded him in the winding vp of all,not ſo much,as the credit of an honourable ſepulture. But
E dying in theſe troubles not far from LISIMACHIA, as hee was making preparation againſt the prince of THESSALIE, was there by his ſonne *Andronicus* his commandement (for whoſe aduancement he had ſtrained both his faith & honour) obſcurely buried in the field, a good way from his campe;as vnworthie of a better ſepulture, for reuolting from the antient religion of his anceſtors, although his obſequies were for faſhion ſake afterwards with ſome ſolemnitie celebrated. This was the end of the great emperour *Michael Paleologus*, in whoſe time the Turks,the ſucceſſors of *Aladin*,greatly incroched vpon him in the leſſer ASIA, as is in part before declared:a man greatly adorned with the good gifts both of the bodie and the mind, had he not for the aduancement of himſelfe & his poſteritie,ſtained the ſame with foule trecherie & apoſtaſie: for which(as ſome ſay) he euer after liued in conſcience troubled, and dying, was euen by his
F owne ſonne not thought worthie of an honourable funerall. *A notable example vnto all ſuch as with greedineſſe ſeeke after vaine glorie,and fooliſhly expoſe themſelues vnto ſuch aduentures, as oftentimes ouerwhelme their deepeſt deuiſes, hauing in themſelues no certainetie: preferring their inordinat deſires (either for themſelues or their poſteritie) before that which is good and vertuous: Twice wretched in ſo doing: firſt in their folly, and then in their indeuours. Who beſide that they finde God himſelfe aga inſt their deſignes and purpoſes, they by and by alſo euidently meet with other things than*

what they had forecasted, contrarie vnto them; and so themselues oftentimes, contrarie to their expe- G
ctation, cast headlong into extreame miserie: for loe, euen he of whom wee now speake, otherwise a man of great wisdome, and happie in his doings, ouercome with his affection towards his children, in desiring to leaue vnto them the empire, when as he ought to haue cast all the care both of himselfe and of them, especially vpon the prouidence of God; he like a blind man following his owne deepe conceits, not grounded vpon the feare of God but mans wisdome only, cast himselfe before he was aware into miserable troubles, and became odious euen vnto his subiects, and them also for whom he had so forgot himselfe. For wher as God had euen from his childhood alotted vnto him the Empire (as was by many euident signes and tokens to haue bin gathered) if he could haue moderated his vntimely desires, kept his tongue from periurie, and his hands from blood, and not turned out of the way after strange doctrine; he had by many degrees ex- H
celled euen the best Emperours his predecessors: whereas now he lieth obscurely buried, shrouded in the sheet of defame, the report of his foule and faithlesse dealings far exceeding all his other worthy vertues.

Andronicus Paleologus succeeding his father in the empire, and thinking by restoring againe the gouernment of the church, together with the rites and customes of the Greeks, to haue appeased all such troubles as were before by his father raised, by bringing in those of the Latines; found himselfe therein much deceiued, and his troubles no lesse than his fathers: they which had before receiued the Latine customes, and well liking of them, with great obstinacie defending the same: and the other of the contrarie faction now countenanced by the emperor, without modestie or measure insulting vpon them: wherof arose exceeding great stirs and troubles, especially in the beginning of his raigne: to the great benefit of the encroaching Turks, who in I
the meane time ceased not by all meanes to increase their territories in Asia; and not onely there, but in the islands of the Mediterranean sea also. For *Andronicus*, by the death of *Charles* king of Sicilie, deliuered of the greatest feare, for which both he and his father before him had to their great cost and charge both built and maintained a strong fleet of gallies; now perswaded by some, whose actions and speeches were after the manner of the court, all framed vnto the princes appetite, (as the readiest way to thriue, without respect of the cõmon good) to spare that needlesse charge (as they tearmed it) which yearely cost him more than any other thing else: had discharged all his mariners & sea men, and commanded all the gallies to be laied vp, some in one creeke, some in another; where neglected & not looked vnto, they in time for most part rotted and perished. As for the mariners they went some one way, some another, as their K
fortunes lead them, to seeke for their liuings in forreine countries, euen with the Emperours enemies; and some gaue themselues to husbandrie, thinking it better by doing something to liue, than by sitting still to perish: which good husbandrie at the first seemed to be verie profitable vnto the emperour, but especially vnto such as being neere vnto him, and couetously giuen, made small reckoning of all other the most necessarie defences of the empire, in comparison of hoording vp of money, vntil that it was afterwards too late by experience found hereof to haue sprung many great mischiefes, vnto the great weakning of the Greeke empire. For besides that the Turkes without let, did great harme on the sea; the pirates now out of feare of the Emperours gallies, at their pleasure tooke the spoile of the rich Islands in the Mediteranian, and robbed the townes all along the sea coast, to the vnspeakable griefe of the poore countrie people. L
And yet not so contented, came with their gallies sometime two, sometime three, & sometime moe as it were in contempt, euen close vnto the imperiall citie. Yea the Venetians were so bold as vpon a right small displeasure to rifle and afterward to set fire vpon the suburbes thereof, which they would hardly haue aduentured, had the Emperours fleet bene preserued and maintained in the woonted strength.

Andronicus sparing to maintaine his nauie, weaketh his Empire.

At the same time also, *Andronicus* the Emperour (to the great hinderance of the affaires of the Empire, and aduantage of the forreine enemie) was not a little troubled with a jealous suspition of his brother *Constantine* (commonly called *Porphyrogenitus*) as if he had sought to haue aspired vnto the Empire; seeking by all meanes to win vnto himselfe the loue and fauour of all men, but especially of the nobilitie both at home & abroad, and so by that meanes to mount M
vnto the height of his desires: All which (as most men thought) were but meere slanders, maliciously deuised by such as enuying at his honor, and taking occasion by the emperours suspition, ceased not to increase the same, vntill they had wrought his vnworthie destruction. The first ground of this false suspition in the Emperours head, was for that this *Constantine* was euen from his childhood, for many causes, better beloued of the old Emperour his father than *Andronicus*,

A *dronicus*, as better furniſhed with thoſe gifts of nature which beautifie a Prince, and of a more courteous behauiour than was his brother: inſomuch, that had he not beene the younger brother, his father could willingly haue left him his ſucceſſour in the empire. This was one and the chiefeſt cauſe of the Emperours grudge, and the ground of his ſuſpition. Yet was there another alſo, and that not much leſſe than this: for that his father in his life time had of long thought to haue ſeparated from the empire a great part of THESSALIA and MACEDONIA, and to haue made him abſolute Prince thereof; and had happily ſo done, had he not beene by death preuented: which thing alſo much grieued *Andronicus*, and the more incenſed him againſt his brother. Which his ſecret hatred he for all that according to his wiſdome, cunningly diſſem-
B bled, not only during the time that his father liued, but three yeeres after his death alſo, making ſhew of the greateſt loue and kindneſſe towards him, that was poſſible. *Conſtantine* in the meane time, of ſuch great reuenues as were by his father aſſigned vnto him, reaping great profit, moſt bountifully beſtowed the ſame vpon his followers and fauourites, and others that made ſute vnto him, as well the meaner ſort as the greater, and with his ſweet behauiour won vnto him the hearts of all men: for affabilitie and courteſie in high degree eaſily allureth mens minds, as doe faire flowers in the ſpring the paſſengers eyes. This was that precept of the wiſe Indians, That the higher a Prince was in dignitie, and the more courteous he ſhewed himſelfe vnto his inferiours, the better he ſhould be of them beloued. He therefore that ſhould for the two firſt cauſes blame *Conſtantine*, ſhould doe him wrong; as both proceeding not of himſelfe, but of his fathers
C too much loue: but in the third he was not altogether blameleſſe; for if for want of experience he prodigally gaue ſuch gifts, as for the moſt part might haue beſeemed the Emperour himſelfe, he ignorantly erred, yet did he no little offend: but if he knew, that for his too profuſe bountie he could not be vnſuſpected of his brother, and yet without regard held on that courſe, he was greatly to be blamed therein. For if nothing elſe might haue moued him, yet he ſhould haue conſidered, to what end the like doings of others in former times had ſorted, and how many it had brought to vntimely end. So although perhaps that *Conſtantine* meant no harme vnto his brother, or any way to ſupplant him, yet did theſe things not a little increaſe and aggrauate the former ſuſpitions, and open the eares of the Emperour his brother vnto ſuch calumniation as commonly attendeth vpon immoderate bountie. But to returne vnto our purpoſe. This ho-
D nourable *Conſtantine* then liued in LYDIA, but lately married, and in good hope long to liue, being not paſt thirtie yeeres old: but pleaſantly ſpending the time with his wife at NYMPHEA in LYDIA, at ſuch time as he was thus ſecretly accuſed vnto his brother, the Emperor thought it good, as vpon other occaſions of buſineſſe, to paſſe ouer into ASIA himſelfe; but indeed with a ſecret reſolution, vpon the ſudden to oppreſſe his brother vnawares, as by proofe it fell out. For at his comming ouer, *Conſtantine* fearing nothing leſſe, was forthwith apprehended, with all his greateſt fauourites, of whom one *Michael Strategopulus* (ſometime a man in great authoritie with the Emperour his father, and of all other for wealth, honour, and noble acts moſt famous) was chiefe: who together with *Conſtantine* were faſt clapt in priſon, where we will leaue them euery houre looking to die, their lands and goods being before confiſcated. But
E theſe worthie men, eſpecially *Conſtantine* and *Strategopulus*, thus laid faſt; who many times in great battels diſcomfited the Turks, and notably defended the frontiers of the Empire alongſt the Eaſt ſide of the riuer MEANDER; they now finding none to withſtand them, forraged not only all the rich countrey beyond the riuer, but with an infinite multitude paſſing the ſame, did there great harme alſo: ſo that there was no remedie, but that the Emperour muſt of neceſſitie make choice of ſome other worthie captaine for the defence of thoſe his cities and countries, by the incurſion of the Turks then in danger in that part of ASIA.

Immoderate bountie in great men dangerous.

There was then in the Emperours court one *Alexius Philanthropenus*, a right valiant and renowned captaine, and then in the flower of his youth; of him the Emperour thought good to make choice for the defence of thoſe frontiers of his empire in ASIA (againſt the Turks) which
F were before the charge of his brother *Conſtantine* and *Strategopulus*; ioyning vnto him one *Libadarius*, an old famous captaine, and a man of great experience alſo: appointing vnto him the gouernment of the cities of IONIA; and vnto the other, the frontiers along the winding bankes of MEANDER. Where *Alexius* hauing now gotten a charge worthie his valour, and in many great conflicts with the Turks ſtil carying away the victorie, became in ſhort time of great fame: beſides that, he was exceeding bountifull and courteous vnto all men; a coſtly, but a readie way

vnto dangerous credit & renowne. Thus at the first all things prospered in his hand according G
to his hearts desire: yea the Turks themselues, bordering vpon him, hardly beset on the one side
by the Tartars, and on the other by himselfe; and yet not so much feared with their enemies be-
hind them, as moued with his courtesie, came ouer vnto him with their wiues and children, and
serued themselues (many of them) in his campe. But as they say, That in *Iupiters* court no man
might drinke of the tun of blisse, but that he must taste also of the tun of woe: so fell it out with
this great captaine; who hauing but tasted of the better tun, had the worse all poured full vpon
his head. For *Libadarius* seeing all so prosper with him, and somewhat enuying thereat, began to
feare and suspect, lest he proud of his good fortune, and now growne very strong, casting off his
allegeance, should aspire vnto the empire, and so first begin with him, as the neerest vnto him: H
which thing many of the nobilitie secretly surmised also, but how truly many doubt. But this
enuious plot was not yet ripe, but lay as fire raked vp in the ashes. Now there was with *Alexius*
Philanthropenus, certain companies of Cretensians, whom for their good seruice and fidelitie he
both honored and trusted aboue others, vsing them all for the guard of his owne person. These
men proud of their credit, hearing of the surmised aspiring of their Generall, and in hope by his
aduancement to raise their owne fortunes also, ceased not continually to suggest vnto him high
conceits of himselfe, and to perswade him with all speed to take the matter vpon him; the very
conceit whereof (as they said) would be vnto him no lesse danger, than if he should enter into
the action it selfe, as he might well see by the wofull examples of the noble *Constantine* and *Stra-*
tegopulus, both in extreame perill, but for the iealous conceit surmised against them. Which I
quicke suggestions wrought in his great mind diuers, and those most contrary motions; so that
he scarce knew himselfe what he would or would not. *For they which are vnto themselues in con-*
science guiltie of any grieuous crime, if any mischiefe hang ouer their heads therefore, it happeneth vnto
them, as foreknowing and expecting the same euen from the time that they offended: vnto whom, if no-
thing else, yet that same very foreknowledge easeth not a little the griefe and miserie: whereas contrari-
wise, they which are with sudden mischiefes and vnlooked for, ouerwhelmed, not knowing any iust cause
why, must needs stand as men dismaied, and almost beside themselues. But at length after diuers great
conflicts with himselfe, the euill perswaders of rebellion, preuailed with him. Yet did he at the
first forbid any mention to be made of him in the armie as Emperour, which caused the Creten-
sians, the chiefe authors of his rebellion, almost to force him forthwith to take vpon him the K
imperiall ornaments, thereby to confirme the minds of his followers and fauourites: for that
such resolutions were (as they said) to be forthwith put into execution; neither that any thing
required so ioynt celeritie and dexteritie both of the minde and the hand; and for that longer
delay would but fill his souldiers heads with doubts, and discourage them with the feare of the
vncertaintie of the euent: all which for all that moued him not so to doe; but whether for feare
of the greatnesse of the danger, or for that he secretly thought how first to circumuent *Libada-*
rius, of whom he stood most in doubt, is vncertaine. The report of all which his doings and
designes were in short time carried first vnto *Libadarius*, as the neerest, and so in post vnto the
Emperour: who were therewith not a little both disquieted. And had *Alexius* (as some per-
swaded him) at the first set vpon *Libadarius*, then vnprouided, no doubt but he had done much: L
but God by whom all Princes raigne, and whose power confoundeth the deuices of the proud,
turned him from *Libadarius*, by whom he was to be oppressed, to follow after *Theodorus* the
Emperours brother, of whom he was to haue feared no harme. This *Theodorus*, the first man that
Alexius shot at, warned by his brother *Constantine* his harmes, then liued a pleasant priuate life
in LYDIA, far from the ambition of the court, and therefore so much the more beloued of the
Emperour: but *Alexius* fearing lest in that hurle many should resort vnto him, as vnto the Em-
perours brother, and so hinder his proceedings; thought best first to make him sure, and after-
ward to oppresse *Libadarius*, not aware, that in stead of the bodie he followed but after the sha-
dow. But *Libadarius*, as a man of great experience, taking the benefit of this his ouersight, and
knowing money to be the sinewes of warre, gathered together all the coine he possibly could, M
both of his owne and his friends, sending also for the Emperours treasures to PHILADEL-
PHIA; and with all speed raised the greatest power he possibly could out of IONIA, which he
furnished with all things necessarie, promising vnto his souldiers great matters, and filling them
with greater hopes, and that within ten daies he would with a great armie meet the rebell in the
heart of LYDIA, and there dare him battell. But withall considering, that the Cretensians, men

but

Alexius Philanthropenus aspireth.

Libadarius opposeth himselfe against the proceedings of Philanthropenus.

A but of a mercenarie faith, had alwaies the guard of *Alexius* his perſon, he thought good to make proofe if they might with gold be woon to batray him: and ſo well wrought the matter by great ſummes of money preſently giuen, and promiſes of greater preferments with the emperour, that they (ſomwhat before diſcontented with *Alexius* his ſlackeneſſe, and now doubting alſo his ſucceſſe) yeelded vnto his deſire, promiſing in the beginning of the battell to deliuer him into his hands; which they ſhortly after in the very joyning of the battel, accordingly performed, deliuering him faſt bound vnto *Libadarius* his enemie. Who not a little proud thereof, vſed him with great inſolencie, and within three daies after put out his eyes, for feare the emperour according to his courteous nature ſhould haue giuen him his pardon; and ſo kept him in priſon vntill the
B emperours pleaſure were farther knowne. Thus through falſe ſuſpect and ambition were the greateſt champions of the Greeke empire brought to confuſion.

Now after this rebellion of *Philanthropenus*; *Andronicus* became ſo jealous of his owne people, as that he wiſt not whō to truſt, repoſing greater cōfidence in ſtrangers than in his own ſubiects, to the great hurt of his eſtate. At the ſame time it fortuned that the Meſſagets (commonly called *Alani*) which then dwelt beyond ISTER, being Chriſtians, but oppreſſed by the Europian Tartars, wearie of their ſlauerie, ſent ſecretly vnto the Greeke Emperor *Andronicus*; offering that if he would aſſigne vnto them a conuenient place for them to dwell in, they would come ouer vnto him with ten thouſand of their families, and faithfully ſerue him in his warres againſt the Turks (who then grieuouſly waſted his countries in ASIA, deſtitute of good
C captaines and commanders) which their offer he gladly accepted, as ſtanding then in need of aid, and not greatly truſting his owne people. But when theſe Maſſagets, in number aboue ten thouſand, comming ouer with their wiues and children, were to be furniſhed with all things, and eſpecially the men with horſes, armour, and pay, all which the Emperor could not of himſelfe doe; the ſubiects were therewith hardly charged, and commiſſion ſent out into euery countrey and prouince for the taking vp of horſes and armour: euery citie, euery countrey towne and village, euery gentlemans houſe and poore mans cottage, was ſearched and ranſacked, and all things taken from them that was there found fit for ſeruice, to their great diſcontentment: euery man murmuring and grudging to haue his armes taken from him, and giuen to ſtrangers. But when they were alſo to be contributers vnto their pay, they then openly curſed
D and banned them, euen vnto their faces. Yet at length (though with much adoe) theſe ſtrangers well furniſhed with all things neceſſarie, were with ſome other forces alſo ſhipped ouer into ASIA, vnder the leading of *Michael Paleologus* the Emperours eldeſt ſonne, and then his companion in the empire. Who marching alongſt the countrey, came and encamped about MAGNESIA: where the Turks at the firſt, after their wonted manner, retired themſelues into the high mountaines and thicke woods, that from thence they might more ſafely learne what ſtrength their new come enemies were of, and what diſcipline of warre they kept: for they knew that vpon the comming of great armies, many falſe reports did run, and that things were made farre greater than indeed they were; as did of theſe alſo, as of a people inuincible: and therfore they thought it beſt ſo to protract the time, vntill they might ſee in what ſort beſt to deale with them.
E But ſo houering ouer their heads, and perceiuing them oftentimes without order to roame abroad into the countrey ſeeking after prey, (for why, they after the manner of mercenarie men ſpoiled their friends no leſſe than if they had beene their enemies) they came downe in good order from the mountaines, from whence at the firſt they aduentured but a little: but afterward they came on further and with greater confidence, in ſuch ſort, as that it ſeemed they would ere long aſſault the young Emperour in his campe. Wherewith he with the reſt diſcouraged, without any ſtroke giuen, retired; the Turks ſtill following him at the heeles. For neither he, neither the reſt, any thing conſidered the ſmall number of their enemies: but as drunken men whoſe heads filled with groſſe vapours, are deceiued in the greatneſſe of the obiect that they ſee, and oftentimes thinke one thing to be two; ſo were they alſo in like manner with their owne feare
F blinded. Beſide that, moſt commonly it falleth out, that the armie which inſolencie and iniurie forerunneth, is appointed to deſtruction, and by the fearfulneſſe of it ſelfe ouerthrowne before the enemie ſet vpon it, they themſelues becomming enemies vnto themſelues; and God his iuſt vengeance appointing vnto them ſuch an end as their deeds haue deſerued: neither was it like that they ſhould doe any great good, that at their firſt ſetting forth, in ſtead of prouiſion carried out with them the bitter curſes and execrations of their friends. *Michael* the Emperour ſeeing

Andronicus the Greeke Emperour repoſing more truſt in forraine aid, than in his owne ſubiects, greatly hurteth his ſtate.

the Massagets flie, and not daring with those few he had left, to oppose himselfe against his ene- G
mies, retired himselfe into the strong castle of MAGNESIA, there to expect what would be-
come of these mischiefes. But the Massagets spoiling the countrey of the poore Christians as
they went, marched directly vnto the strait of HELLESPONTVS, and there againe passed ouer
into EVROPE, as if they had beene therefore onely sent for ouer the riuer ISTER, to shew the
Turks the sooner the way vnto the sea in ASIA. For it was not many dayes after, but that *Mi-*
chael the Emperour being returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, the Turks comming downe
with a great power, subdued all the countries, euen vnto the coast of LESBOS, to the great
weakning of the Greeke empire.

It was not long after these great stirs made by the Massagets, but that one *Ronzerius* (some- H
time a notable pirate, but as then a most famous captaine) hearing of the great entertainment
that the Greeke Emperour gaue vnto strangers, by messengers sent for that purpose, offered
Ronzerius what he was. vnto him his seruice in his wars against the Turks, as had before the Massagets. This *Ronzerius*
of whom we speake, had out of CATALONIA a prouince of SPAINE, and out of that part of
FRANCE which is called NARBONENSIS, and some other places also, gathered together a
great number of base needie naked men, yet lustie able bodies, and fit for seruice either by sea
or land; with whom he manned foure tall gallies, and so as a notable pirate long time robbed,
not onely the merchants trading to and fro in the Mediterranean, but landing his men often-
times in the rich Islands, carried away thence much rich spoile also; vntill at length by the mis-
chiefe he did being become famous, and great wars then arising betwixt *Charles* King of NA- I
PLES and *Theodorus* King of SICILIA, he was by *Theodorus* sent for and requested of aid:
which he (liuing of the spoile) easily granted, and so came vnto him with a thousand horse, and
as many foot, all old expert souldiers, whose good seruice stood the King in those wars in great
stead. But as the end of war is peace, so at length vpon the euill successe of *Charles*, a peace being
concluded betwixt the two Kings, and confirmed by a marriage betwixt their children, *Ronze-*
rius liuing altogether by his fortunes, was to seeke for new entertainment, both for himselfe
and his men, as hauing neither house nor certaine dwelling place to repaire vnto; but being as
needie men met together, some out of one place, some out of another, in hope of bootie as their
fortune led them. In which case *Ronzerius* their Generall thought it best to offer his seruice vnto
the Greeke Emperour in his wars against the Turks, whereof he gladly accepted, and so sent K
for him: vnto whom he shortly after came with two thousand good souldiers, called (after the
proud Spanish manner) by the name of CATALONIANS, for that they were for the most
part Spaniards of the countrey of CATALONIA. Of whose comming the Emperour reioy-
cing more than he had cause (as afterward by proofe it fell out) in token of his greater fauour,
honoured him with the name of the Great Captaine; and afterwards gaue him his neece *Marie*
in marriage. But within a while after, when as one *Uensa*, another Catalonian captaine sent for
by *Ronzerius*, was come thither also with more aid; the Emperour to gratifie them both, gaue
vnto *Ronzerius* the name of *Cæsar*, and vnto the other the name of the Great Captaine. But
when these new come captaines with their followers, were to be transported into ASIA, it is
not to be spoken what harme they did by the way vnto the countrey people, and in the villages L
alongst the sea coast; abusing the men and women as their slaues, and spending their substance
at their pleasure, for which they had many a bitter curse: and this was their first yeeres enter-
tainment. The next Spring they set forward to relieue the great citie of PHILADELPHIA,
being as then long besieged by the Turks, and hardly bestead without with the enemie; and
within, with extreme penurie and famine: which good seruice, they most valiantly performed
and raised the siege: For the Turks beholding the good order of these Latine souldiers, their
bright armour, and couragious comming on, rise presently and departed, not onely from the
citie, but quite out of the Emperours territorie. Besides that, in this armie were ioyned vnto
these Catalonians great numbers of the best souldiers of the Greekes, and all the power of the
Massagets: so that had not the Emperour expresly before commanded, not to pursue them too M
far, it was by many thought all those cities and countries might then againe haue been in short
time recouered from the Turks, which they had before taken from him. But in kingdomes ap-
pointed vnto ruine, faire occasions helpe not for the stay thereof: yea the greatest helpes pro-
uided by the worldly wise, by a secret commanding power aboue, being oftentimes conuerted
to the destruction of that they were prouided for the safegard of; as it now fell out with the

Emperour

A Emperour and these Spanish souldiers: for this seruice done, the Greekes returned home, as did the Massagets also. But these Catalonians with *Ronzerius* their Generall, roaming vp and downe the Emperours territories in ASIA, did there great harme, turning their forces (as enemies) vpon them whom they were sent for to relieue: alleadging that they had not their pay according to the Emperours promise, and that therefore they must liue vpon them that had sent for them and deceiued them. So were the poore people in euery place spoiled, their wiues and daughters rauished, their Priests and aged fathers tortured to confesse such secret store as they had: all was subiect vnto these dissolute souldiers rage and lust; yea many of them that had nothing to redeeme themselues, vpon the greedie souldiers imagination, hauing their hands or
B feet, or some other part of their bodies cut off, lay by the high wayes side begging an halfepenie or a peece of bread, hauing nothing left to comfort themselues with, more than their miserable voice and fountaines of teares: with which their wrongs and miseries, worse than those they had sustained by the Turks, the Emperour much grieued, and well the more, for that they were done by him whom he had entertained to relieue them: but what remedie, his coffers were so bare as that he was not able to doe any thing for the redresse thereof. *Ronzerius* hauing thus spoiled the Emperours countrey in ASIA, and left nothing that pleased either him or his, with all his power passed ouer into EVROPE: and leauing all the rest of his armie at CALIPOLIS, with two hundred of his men went vnto the young Emperour *Michael* (then lying with a small power at ORESTIAS in THRACIA) to demand of him his pay, or if need were to extort it
C from him with threats: with whose insolencie at his comming, the Emperour more offended than before, his souldiers there present perceiuing the same, with their drawne swords compassing him in, fast by the court, slew him, with certaine of his followers, the rest in all haste fled to CALIPOLIS to certifie their fellowes what had happened.

Ronzerius for want of pay spoileth the Emperors subiects.

Ronzerius slain.

Thus by the death of *Ronzerius*, the young Emperour had thought to haue discouraged the Catalonians & abated their pride, as like enough it was to haue done: yet in proose it fel not out so, but was the cause of far greater euils. So when God prospereth not mens actions, the best falleth out vnto the worst, and their wisest deuices turne vnto meere follies: for the Catalonians at CALIPOLIS hearing of the death of *Ronserius* their Generall, first slew all the citizens in the citie, and notably fortifying the same, tooke that as their refuge. Then diuiding their souldiers
D into two parts, with the one part of them manned out eight gallies, which vnder the leading of the great captaine *Tenza*, robbed and spoiled all the merchants ships, passing the straits of HELLESPONTVS, to or from CONSTANTINOPLE: the other part left in the citie, in the meane time forraging the countrey all about them. But *Tenza* shortly after encountering with a fleet of the Genowaies, well prouided for him, was by them ouerthrowne, & most of his gallies sunke, and himselfe taken; but yet afterwards redeemed by his fellowes, & so again inlarged. Now the Catalonians at CALIPOLIS somewhat discouraged with the losse of their fleet and so many of their men, for certaine daies kept themselues quiet within their wals, as not well knowing what course to take; for they feared both the Massagets & Thracians: them, for that they had vpon light causes abused them, and slaine diuers of them in the late Asian war; and these, for that they
E had but euen the other day burnt their houses and spoiled their labours in the country there by: for which and other their outrages, they vtterly despaired of the Emperours fauour whom they had so highly offended. But that which most of all terrified them, was, for that they looked euery day when *Michael* the young Emperour, who as then lay not farre off, should with a great power come to assault them: for feare of whom they cast a deepe ditch about the citie, with a strong counterscarfe, so preparing themselues, as if they should haue been euen presently besieged. But the time so passing, and the Emperour delaying his comming, they began to thinke of other matters: for being brought to that strait, that they could not well tell which way to turne them, but that they were on euery side beset with danger, they vpon a malicious resolution, and vnto the Greekes most fatall, by messengers sent of purpose, craued aid of the Turks that dwelt
F on the other side of the strait ouer against them, in ASIA: who presently sent them fiue hundred good souldiers, after whom followed also many other fugitiues and loose companions, in hope of spoile: with whom the Catalonians for the present strengthened, and being themselues three thousand strong, issued out of the citie, and forraged the country thereabouts, bringing in with them great heards & flocks of sheepe and other cattell, together with their keepers: wherewith both the Emperours and their subiects incensed, prepared themselues for reuenge. This was the

first

The Turks first called into Europe by the Catalonians.

first calling in of the Turks into EVROPE (that I read of) and the beginning of those endlesse G
miseries wherewith the Christian commonweale hath beene euer since most grieuously afflicted, and a great part thereof ouerwhelmed; few or none greeuing thereat, but such as themselues feele the heauinesse thereof, whom God in his mercie comfort.

The Catalonians and Turks now lying about CYPSELLA and APRI in THRACE, *Michael* the Emperour with his Macedonian and Thracian souldiers, the Massagets and the Turcopuli, encamped at APRI. These Turcopuli were Turks, also in number about a thousand, who (as is in the former part of this Historie declared) being fled with their Sultan *Iathatines* vnto the Greeke Emperour, and left behinde him at such time as he was by the Europian Tartars deliuered, had forsaken their Mahometane superstition, and so being become Christians, were H
enrolled amongst the Greeke souldiers. Shortly after the Emperour (aduertised by his scouts of the approch of his enemies) commanded euery man to be in a readinesse, and his captaines to put his armie in order of battell: who seeing the enemies battell diuided into three parts, put theirs also in like order, placing the Turcopuli and Massagets in the left wing, the Macedonian and Thracian choice horsemen in the right wing, and the rest with the footmen in the maine battell. At which time the Emperour himselfe riding from place to place, with comfortable speeches encouraged his men to fight valiantly against their enemies. The Sunne rising, the enemies battell began to come on, in number much inferiour vnto the Emperours, yet in like order; the Turks being placed in both wings, and the Catalonians well armed in the middest. But the signall of battell being giuen on both sides, the Massagets, whether it were by agreement so I
before made with the enemie, or vpon a sudden conceiued treason, presently withdrew themselues aloofe off, and so stood as idle beholders, giuing aid neither to the one nor to the other, as did also the Turcopuli their companions; which greatly dismaied the Grecians, and encouraged their enemies: for the Greekes dismaied with that sudden defection of their fellowes, were euen in the ioyning of the battell discouraged. Which the Emperour perceiuing, with great instancie intreated the captains and commanders of his armie, calling them oftentimes by name, not to be so suddenly discouraged: but they in so great a danger little regarding his words, and still shrinking from him, when as the greatest part of his footmen were trodden vnder foot and slaine, turning himselfe vnto them that were left, which were but few, he said: *Now worthy men is the time wherein death is better than life, and life more bitter than death.* And hauing so said, valiK
antly charged the enemie: in which charge his horse was slaine vnder him, and he in danger to haue beene taken, had not one of his faithfull followers remounted him vpon his owne horse, and so saued his life with the losse of his owne. The Emperour flying to DYDIMOTICHVM, where *Andronicus* his father then lay, was of him ioyfully receiued, but sharply reproued for aduenturing his person so far. The enemies pursuing the chase, slew some, tooke others, vntill that by the comming on of the night, and wearie with the long fight, they retired: and the next day diuiding the spoile, afterwards at their pleasures forraged the countrey. The renegate Turks, called Turcopuli, within a few dayes after reuolting vnto the Catalonians, were of them ioyfully entertained, and enrolled into the regiment of *Chalel*, the Turks Generall.

The Turcopuli.

The vnfortunat battell of Michael the Emperour against the Catalonians and Turks.

Shortly after this victorie, the Catalonians began to mutinie among themselues, the great L
captaine *Tenza*, and *Pharenza* his companion, disdaining to be commanded by *Recafort* their Generall: in which tumult, the matter comming to blowes, *Tenza* was slaine, and *Pharenza* for safegard of his life glad to flie vnto the Emperour *Andronicus*; of whom he was, contrary to his expectation, right honourably entertained. About this time also, the Massagets hauing done the Greekes more harme, than the Turks against whom they were entertained, and enriched themselues with the spoile of their friends both in ASIA and EVROPE, were about with their wiues and children, and wealth, to returne againe vnto their old dwellings beyond ISTER: Which the Turcopuli, with the Catalonians vnderstanding, and bearing vnto them a secret grudge, for that they (as the weaker) had by them oftentimes beene wronged in the diuision of the spoile of the Greekes, lay now secretly in wait for them as they should passe the straits of the M
great mountaine HEMVS, which bounded the Greeke empire from the Bulgarians: where setting vpon them, fearing no such danger, they slew them almost all; and with the spoile of them, recompenced themselues for all the wrongs they had from them before receiued.

The Catalonians proud of their victorie at APRI, and well strengthened by the reuolt of the Turcopuli, with continuall rodes spoiled not only all alongst the sea coast of THRACIA,

but

A but all the inland countrey alſo, as far as Maronea, Rhodope, and Bizia, laying all waſte before them. And hauing forraged moſt part of Thracia, brake into Macedonia, and there wintred about Cassandria, ſometime a famous citie, but as then all deſolate and ruinous. But the Spring being come, they remoued thence, with purpoſe to haue ſpoiled the cities of Macedonia, and eſpecially the rich citie of Thessalonica, where the Empreſſe *Irene* then lay: wherein they were by the Emperors good foreſight and care preuented, who doubting ſuch a matter, had fortified his cities in that countrey, and furniſhed them with ſtrong garriſons and all other things needfull for their defence: which they quickly perceiuing, and finding the country all deſolate and forſaken by the inhabitants, were about to haue againe returned in- *Cassandria.*

B to Thracia. But as they were thereupon reſoluing, they were informed by one that was with them captiue, how that the Emperor by a mightie ſtrong wall built at a place called Christopolis, from the ſea ſide euen vnto the top of the mountaines, had ſo ſhut vp the paſſage, as that it was not poſſible for them that way to enter. With which vnexpected newes they were at the firſt exceedingly troubled, as foreſeeing, That if they ſhould there long ſtay in that ſpoiled country, they ſhould in ſhort time be driuen vnto exceeding wants (for they were now in number aboue eight thouſand fighting men) and afraid alſo by a generall conſpiracie of the people about them, to be oppreſſed. Thus beſet, & not well knowing what to do, or which way to turne themſelues, they deſperatly reſolued, no longer there to ſtay, but forthwith to ſet forward, and to breake into Thessalie, with the plentifulneſſe thereof to relieue their wants, or into ſome *The Catalonians ſhut out of Macedonia.*

C other countrey farther off towards Peloponesvs, and there to ſeat themſelues, and to end their long trauels: or at leaſtwiſe, if they could not ſo doe, to enter into league with ſome that dwelt vpon the ſea coaſt, and ſo returne againe into their owne countrey. Wherefore leauing Thessalonica, and deliuering the Emperour of a great feare, they in three dayes came to the Theſſalian mountaines, Olympvs, Ossa, and Pelivs, where they at the foot of them found ſuch plentie of all things neceſſarie for their reliefe, that they there wintred. But Winter paſt, and the Spring being come, they paſſed ouer thoſe high mountaines and the pleaſant vallies called Tempe, and ſo at laſt came downe into the fruitfull plaines of Thessalie, where they ſpent that yeere at their pleaſure, without reſiſtance, deuouring the labours of the poore country people, and making hauocke of whatſoeuer thing came in their way: for as then the ſtate of that

D countrey was but weake, the Prince thereof being but young, and withall very ſicke and like to die, & the ſucceſſion ſo ending in him, as that it was feared, who after his death ſhould lay hand thereon; and euery man therfore more carefull of his owne priuate than of the common good. Yet to auert theſe forraine enemies, who like a conſuming fire deuoured the countrey before them, the nobilitie thought it good, with great gifts to ouercome their captains & commanders, and then to offer them guides to conduct them into Achaia and Beotia, countries more pleaſant & fruitfull than was theirs, and more commodious for them to dwell in: promiſing alſo to giue them aid for the ſeating of them there, if they ſhould ſo need. Of which their offers the Catalonians accepted, as thinking it better with their hands ful of gold ſo eaſily gotten, to go ſeeke their better fortunes, with their power yet whole and ſtrong, and helpe alſo if need were, than to

E hazard all vpon the ſucceſſe of a doubtfull victorie, and ſo fooliſhly to preferre an vncertaine hope before a moſt certaine benefit. So making peace with the Theſſalians, and the Spring being come, receiuing of them their promiſed rewards, and guides to conduct them; paſſing ouer the mountaines beyond Thessalie, and the ſtraits of Thermopile, they encamped neere vnto Locris and the riuer Cephisvs: which riſing out of the mountaine Pernassvs, and running toward the Eaſt, hath on the North ſide of them Locris and Opvs; and on the South the inland countrey of Achaia and Beotia: and being a great riuer vntill it come to Lebadia and Haliartes, is there diuided into two riuers, the one called Æsopvs, and the other Ismenvs; whereof the former runneth thorow the countrey of Attica, vntill it come into the ſea, and the other neere vnto Avlis (where the noble Grecians, as they ſay, be-

F ing about to goe vnto Troy, met and there ſtaied) falleth into the Euboean ſea. But the Duke of Thebes and Athens and of all that countrey, hearing of their comming, and (as he thought) well prouided alſo for them (as hauing all the Winter and Spring time before put his forces in readineſſe) with great pride and contempt denied them paſſage thorow his countrey, at ſuch time as they asked the ſame; making no more reckning of them, than as of a ſort of looſe wandering rogues that could find no place to reſt or thriue in: wherwith they enraged, reſolued among

among themselues, either there to seat themselues in his countrey, or to die therefore. And so G
passing the riuer into BOETIA, not far from the same encamped themselues, being in number
A notable stratageme of the Catalonians. about 3500 horse, and 4000 foot. But so lying and expecting the comming of their enemies,
they caused all the plaine ground about where they lay and meant to fight, to be plowed vp,
which they with certain small cuts out of the riuer so watered, as that it differed but a little from
a deepe marish or bog. Hither about the middle of the Spring commeth the Prince of the
countrey, with a gallant armie raised out of ATHENS, THEBES, PLATEA, LOCRIS,
PHOCIS, and MEGARA, in number about 6400 horse, and 4000 foot, an armie too strong
he thought for so contemptible an enemie. But the weakest enemie not feared, doth oftentimes
the greatest harme, as here by proofe was to be seene: for the Prince comming vnto the afore- H
said plaine, now growne greene with grasse, and casting no perill, encouraging his men, came
brauely on with all his horsemen to haue charged his enemies: who stood fast vpon the firme
ground, a little without their trenches, as readie to encounter him. But before he was come to
the middle of the plaine, his horses sinking deepe into the rotten and new ploughed ground,
and there intangled as in a marish, lay for the most part tumbling in the mire, together with
their riders; or else plunging in the deepe, and hauing cast them, ran vp and downe the plaine,
as fortune led them; othersome sticking fast, stood with their riders vpon their backs, as if they
had beene very images, not able for to moue. Which the Catalonians beholding, and therewith
encouraged, ouerwhelmed them with all manner of shot, and slew them at their pleasure, vntill
they had almost made an end of them: and with their horsemen so speedily pursued the rest in I
chace, euen vnto the cities of THEBES and ATHENS, that they without more adoe euen at
that instant surprised them both, with all that was in them. So the Catalonians hauing as it were
at a cast at dice won a most goodly countrey, garnished with faire townes and cities, which they
neuer built; and stored with all manner of wealth, which they neuer sweat for; there ended
their long trauels, and seated themselues: not ceasing (as saith *Nicephorus Gregorias*, the repor-
ter of this historie, speaking of the time wherein these things were done, and wherein he him-
selfe liued in CONSTANTINOPLE) vnto this present day, by little and little to extend the
bounds of their territorie. Where leauing them, with whom we happily haue too long straied
from our purpose, let vs againe returne vnto the Turks and Turcopuli their companions.

In the armie of the Catalonians, at such time as they were about to haue besieged THESSA- K
LONICA, were three thousand Turks, of whom eleuen hundred were of them (as wee said)
which remained with *Melech* at ÆNVM, after the flight of *Iathatines* there Sultan vnto the Tar-
tars, and renouncing their superstition, became Christians; and so being baptized, and hauing
wiues and children, were enrolled among the Emperours souldiers; but at the battell of APRI
reuolted vnto the Catalonians, and were commonly knowne by the name of Turcopuli: the
other being the greater part, were such Turks as with *Chalel* their captaine came out of ASIA,
being sent for by the Catalonians. Now all these Turks, as well the one as the other, at such time
as the Catalonians were about to inuade THESSALIA, and to seeke their new fortunes in the
countries more Westward, and so farther off from ASIA: partly distrusting the societie of
them, as dangerous vnto them; and loth also further to follow their vncertaine fortunes into L
countries further off, among people to them vnknowne; began to arise in mutinie, and to re-
fuse to goe. Whereupon their captaines *Melech* and *Chalel* requested of the Generall of the Ca-
talonians to giue them leaue with quietnesse to returne: which their request he easily granted,
(as now not greatly needing their helpe, after that he was departing out of the Emperours do-
minion) and so they gladly departed; proportionally diuiding all the captiues and spoiles they
had taken in that long war, according to the number of both parts.

The Turks diuided into two factions. These Turks after their departure from the Catalonians, diuided themselues into two parts,
the Turcopuli or renegat Turks following *Melech*, and the rest *Chalel* their Generall. But *Melech*
being before become a Christian, as were his followers also; and after that hauing receiued most
honorable entertainment at the Emperors hands, and yet againe most shamefully breaking his M
faith before giuen, and violating his religion, had reuolted vnto his enemies; despairing of the
Emperours further friendship, which he had so euill deserued, made choice rather to goe vnto
Crales Prince of SERVIA, by whom he was sent for, than to come againe into the sight of *An-
dronicus* the Greeke Emperour. And so going vnto him with a thousand horse, and fiue hundred
foot, was there of him well entertained himselfe: but his souldiers all commanded to deliuer

vnto

A vnto the Prince both their horſes and armour, and to fall to other trades, and not to beare armes but at ſuch time, and ſo many of them as ſhould ſeeme good vnto the Prince, that had receiued them into his countrey.

But *Chalel* with the Turks his followers, in number about 1300 horſe and eight hundred foot, ſtaying at MACEDONIA, offered vnto the Greeke Emperour quietly to depart his country, ſo that he would giue him paſſage by the ſtraits of CHRISTOPOLIS by him fortified; and in ſafetie tranſport him and his ſouldiers with all their ſubſtance, ouer the ſtrait of HELESPONTVS into ASIA: vnto which his requeſt, the Emperour conſidering the great harme done in his prouinces, and deſirous alſo to be diſcharged of ſo great a burthen, eaſily granted; and ſo ſent *Sennacherib*,
B one of his moſt valiant captaines, to conduct them out of MACEDONIA into THRACIA, vnto the ſtraits of HELESPONTVS. Where the Greeke captaines and ſouldiers ſeeing the great multitude of horſes, and abundance of money and other ſpoiles, which they hauing taken from the Greekes, were now about to carrie away with them into ASIA; they thought it a great indignitie to ſuffer them ſo to doe: and allured alſo with the hope of ſo rich a prey, as had beene of long in gathering, they entred into a deuice far different from that which was vnto the Turks before promiſed; neither prouiding them of ſhipping, neither carefull of their ſafetie, but purpoſing vpon the ſudden by night to deſtroy them. Whereof the Turks hauing got vnderſtanding, ſuddenly riſing, ſurpriſed a caſtle in the country there by, which they notably fortified for the defence of themſelues, to the great aſtoniſhment of them that had purpoſed their de-
C ſtruction; who not now able to force them, were glad to get them farther off, and to certifie the Emperor what had happened: who (after I wot not what receiued cuſtome of the Greeke Emperors his predeceſſors) ſlowly diſpatching things requiring greateſt haſte, careleſly delaied the time, to the great trouble of his ſtate and aduantage of his enemies. For they wiſely conſidering the danger and diſtreſſe they were in, by ſpeedie meſſengers ſent ouer the ſtrait, craued aid of the Turks their countreymen in ASIA, which they preſently ſent them: wherewith they not a little both encouraged and ſtrengthened, with their often and ſudden incurſions grieuouſly waſted the countrey round about them, to the great diſcontentment of the Greeke captaines, not able without greater helpe to remedie the ſame. Who thereof certified the young Emperour *Michael Paleologus*, requeſting him with all the power he could make, to come and beſiege the
D caſtle, and to ſuppreſſe theſe ſo dangerous enemies. For the performance whereof, not onely the captaines with their ſouldiers, but the countrey people in generall with their ſpades and mattocks came flocking vnto the Emperour; not as if they would haue beſieged the caſtle, but haue digged it downe and ouerthrowne it together with the Turks their enemies.

The vnfortunat battell of the Emperour Michael Paleologus with the Turks in Chersoneſus.

Now the Emperour with his captaines and ſouldiers, and a multitude of theſe countrey people, being come thither; who all gladly followed him, moſt part of them fooliſhly thinking of nothing, but of the ſpoile of their enemies; not conſidering with what danger the ſame was to be gained: ſo that the more the enemies prouided for the neceſſarie defence of themſelues, as in number but few, and ſhut vp in their enemies countrey; the more careleſly and negligently, and without all order, the Greeks proceeded in their ſiege, for that they were in number far more, &
E better prouided of all things than their enemies: not reputing with themſelues, Nothing in this world to be firme and ſure; and all worldly things (as ſaith the diuine Philoſopher) to be but the mockerie of God, and to be haſtily turned vpſide downe, and with moſt vncertaine courſe this and that way to wander. But their enemies, who before feared euen the very fame of their comming, accounting themſelues rather among the dead than the liuing, ſeeing their confuſed and diſordered raſhneſſe; therewith much more than before encouraged, beſtowed all their wealth, their women, and other things vnneceſſarie for battell, in good ſafetie within their trenches: but themſelues, with eight hundred choſen horſemen onely, and they very well armed, ſallied out, euen vnto the place where the imperial enſigne ſtood, being neither of any great ſafetie, neither guarded with any ſuch ſtrength or carefulneſſe as beſeemed: with which ſudden and
F deſperate eruption of the enemies, the Grecians terrified, eſpecially that ruſticall and vplandiſh companie, began to flie; after whom by little and little others followed, vntill at length all the reſt without farther reſiſtance, fled alſo: which the Emperour ſeeing, did what he might to haue ſtaied their flight: but in ſo generall a confuſion and feare, when euery man was to ſhift for one, who regarded him? Wherefore wearied and ſeeing no other remedie, he was glad to take the ſame courſe and to flie with the reſt. Yet many of the more expert captains, aſhamed of ſo foule

a flight,

a flight, made diuers ſtands: and ſo ſtaied the barbarous enemie from further purſuit of the Emperour and the other flying Greekes. In which doing, many of them incloſed by the Turks, were of them taken priſoners: vnto whom all the Emperours treaſure became a prey alſo, and whatſoeuer honourable enſignes of the empire elſe that were found in the Emperours tent; yea the imperiall crowne it ſelfe, richly ſet with pearle and precious ſtones, was there taken alſo, which (they ſay) *Chalel* putting vpon his head, pleaſantly ſcoffed at the Greeke Emperour that but late before wore it. C

Thracia ſpoiled by the Turks.

After this victorie, the Turks with great pride ſpoiled almoſt all THRACIA, in ſuch ſort as that the people for two yeeres together durſt ſcarcely goe out of their ſtrong walled townes to plough and ſow their land; which exceedingly grieued both the Emperours, the father and the ſonne: for in their owne power they had no great confidence, God hauing (as it were) taken from their people both their hearts & courage, ſo that all their hope was to entertain forrain aid (the miſerable ſhift of the great diſtreſſed ones) wherein alſo they found many difficulties and lets, whileſt they conſidered the greatnes of their charge, their coffers being then (if euer) empty, by reaſon their territories were ſo long and grieuouſly by their enemies waſted: yet need admitting no law, *Andronicus* the old Emperour was glad to ſend to *Crales* Prince of SERVIA his ſonne in law, to pray his aid. But in the meane time he making no haſte (as men in relieuing others commonly doe) and the miſerie more and more increaſing, it pleaſed God to ſtir vp the heart of one *Philes Paleologus* the Emperors neere kinſman, to vndertake the protection and deliuerance of his Prince and countrey; and was afterward for his great valour by the Emperour worthily made Lord great Martiall of the empire. This *Philes* of whom we now ſpeake, had all his life time beene brought vp in the court; and was for his vpright dealing and integritie of life beloued of all men, but eſpecially of the old Emperor his kinſman, whom he with like affection honoured; but was a man altogether vnskilfull of the wars, as being by nature of a weake conſtitution of bodie, and ſo very ſickly; and withall more giuen to deuotion and the ſeruice of God than the affaires of the world, oftentimes ſpending moſt part of the day at his praiers in the church. H I

Philes Paleologus requeſteth of the Emperor, that he might goe againſt the Turks.

He now grieued to ſee the perplexed Emperour, and the miſerie of his countrey, requeſted of him that he might with ſome ſmall power, and ſome few captaines of his owne choice, go out againſt theſe proud Turks: hoping (as he ſaid) by the grace of God to reuenge the wrong by them done, and to returne vnto him againe with victorie. Vnto which his requeſt, the Emperour eaſily yeelded, ſaying, that God was iuſt, which delighted not in any mans legs, either in the greatneſſe of any mans ſtrength, but in a contrite heart & humble minde; not ſo giuing his helpe vnto *Michael* the Emperour, his ſonne, for the offences of his parents: as happily he might vnto this ſo vpright & deuout a man, regarding more his integritie of life, than his skil in armes: For turning me about, I haue ſeene in this world (ſaid he) I haue ſeene, the ſwift not to gaine the prize; neither the valiant the victorie; wiſe men to want bread; and men of vnderſtanding, wealth; the ſimple to gaine fauour; and the ſubtill to fall into diſgrace: ſuch alteration worldly things in time finde. So the Emperor (as is aforeſaid) yeelding to his requeſt, furniſhed him with money, horſes, and armour, and ſuch a conuenient power as he himſelfe deſired. Which he hauing receiued, firſt of all encouraged his captains and ſouldiers with all manner of courteſie and kindneſſe, giuing vnto them money, horſes, armour, iewels, yea ſometime he gaue vnto one his purſe, vnto another his cloke, his rapier, or ſome other ſuch thing as he had about him, to encourage them in their forwardneſſe: after that he perſwaded them to an honeſt temperate courſe of life, and valiantly to play the men, promiſing according to their deſerts to reward euery one of them, the war once happily ended: & before his ſetting forth, vnderſtanding by his eſpials, that *Chalel* with a thouſand foot and two hundred horſe was forraging the countrey about BYZIA, he haſted his departure, that ſo he might by the way encounter the, laded with the ſpoile of the country: and ſo ſetting forward, came the third day vnto a little riuer, which the inhabitants call XEROGIPSVM, and there in a great plaine neere vnto the ſame, encamped. Where after he had ſet all things in oder fit for battell, he with cheerefull ſpeeches, as a great commander, encouraged his captaines and ſouldiers; leauing nothing vnſaid or vndone, that might ſerue for the animating of them to fight. But he had not ſo lien two dayes, but that his ſcouts about midnight comming in, brought him tidings, that the enemie laden with ſpoile, was euen faſt by at hand: who by the riſing of the Sunne were come within ſight, and had themſelues a far off alſo diſcouered the Chriſtian armie, all gliſtering in bright armour. Wherefore ſtaying a while to prepare K L M

them-

A themſelues for battell: and firſt of all, compaſſing themſelues round with their waggons and other carriages, they beſtowed in them all their captiues faſt bound together, with the bootie they had taken: and afterwards as their manner was, caſting duſt vpon their heads, and their hands vp towards heauen, they came on. And now the Chriſtian armie came on forward alſo, *Philes* ſtill encouraging both the horſemen and footmen, and right well conducting them, as the time and place required. So it fortuned, that he that had the leading of the right wing of the armie, gaue the firſt charge vpon a ſquadron of the enemies, and at the firſt onſet vnhorſed one of the enemies, and by and by after him, another. But hauing his horſe ſore wounded vnder him, he haſtily retired out of the battell, which ſomewhat troubled the Chriſtians, and encouraged
B the Turks, who now with a barbarous outcrie began moſt fiercely to preſſe vpon the retiring Chriſtians. *Philes* in the meane time with many cheerefull words and comfortable perſwaſions ſtill encouraging them to play the men; and with his eyes oftentimes caſt vp to heauen, with teares running downe his face, moſt heartily beſought God, the giuer of all victorie, no longer to ſuffer thoſe his enemies, and the miniſters of his wrath, to triumph ouer his people: as did alſo the poore captiues that lay bound, doubtfully betwixt feare and hope, expecting the euent of the battell. The Chriſtian footmen at the ſame time encountering hand to hand with the Barbarians, aſſailed them, and were aſſailed; ſlew of them, and were themſelues of them ſlaine; ſo that there was a cruell fight made on both ſides. Bnt *Philes* with the multitude of his men hauing almoſt compaſſed in the Barbarian horſemen, with a companie of his moſt valiant
C ſouldiers broke in vpon the ſide of the enemies battell, and ſo made way thorow the middeſt of it: and ſo troubled the Turks, as that they well knew not how to ſtay or what to doe. So being on euery ſide circumuented and hardly charged, moſt of them there fell, excepting ſome few horſemen, whom the Greeke horſemen purſued vnto the entrance of CHERSONESVS, with purpoſe there to ſhut them vp. *Philes* comming thither alſo, there vpon thoſe ſtraits encamped: at which time the Emperour preſently ſent out fiue gallies to keepe the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS, ſo that no aid might be brought vnto theſe Turks out of ASIA. Whileſt things thus went, two thouſand choice horſemen came to the aid of *Philes* out of SERVIA, and the poteſtate of PERA came by ſea alſo with eight gallies moe into HELLESPONTVS to the aid of the other Chriſtians: wherefore when the Grecians and the Seruians had thus on the one
D ſide ſhut them vp by land, and they that were in the gallies on the other by ſea; *Philes* with all his power came and encamped about the towne and the trenches wherein the Turks lay, planting his batterie againſt the caſtle, wherwith he greatly ſhooke the ſame, & made great ſlaughter of the Turks, and of their horſes, and that not onely by day, but by night alſo. But the Turks ſeeing death now preſent before their eyes, and no way left for them to eſcape, for that they were ſo on euery ſide both by ſea & land encloſed, thought good thus to aduenture their liues, reſoluing by night to ſet vpon the Grecians rather than vpon the Seruians, whom they had hitherto accuſtomed to ouercome, and whom they had with often ſlaughters terrified; that ſo the reſt by them alſo happily diſcouraged, they might ſo delay the aſſault: but in attempting the ſame, they perceiued themſelues much deceiued, finding them euen at their firſt ſallying
E out, readie in armes to receiue them: wherefore hauing in vaine giuen the attempt (as againſt a ſtrong fortreſſe) they were ſhamefully enforced to retire. Yet were they not therewith ſo diſcouraged, but that the ſtraight ſiege ſtill continuing, they gaue the like attempt vpon the Seruians; but being alſo by them in like manner with loſſe repulſed, they began *now* vtterly to deſpaire. Wherefore the next day, about midnight caſting away their armes, they with their boſomes and pockets full of coine ran downe vnto the ſea ſide, towards the gallies, with purpoſe to yeeld themſelues vnto the Genowaies that were therein; as fearing of them leſſe harme, as of men whom they had neuer hurt. But the night being darke and miſtie, and the Moone giuing no light, many of them vnawares came vnto the Greeke gallies, and there, flying the ſmoke, fell into the fire: for being lightened of their money, they were by them forthwith without any pitie
F ſlaine alſo. But the Genowaies ſlew not all their priſoners, but onely ſuch as had brought with them the greateſt ſtore of coine; leſt afterwards bewraying the ſame, it ſhould haue been ſought after by the Greekes: the reſt they caſt into bonds, of whom, ſome they ſent vnto the Emperor, otherſome they kept to themſelues as their owne priſoners. Thus by the valour and good conduct of this worthie deuout captaine, the Turks were for that time againe chaſed out of EVROPE, and the countrey of THRACIA deliuered of a great feare.

The battell betwixt Philes and the Turks.

The Turks ouerthrowne.

The causes of the decay of the Greeke empire.

Now by that we haue already written, is easily to be seene, the chiefe causes of the decay and G
ruine of the Greeke Empire, to haue been, First, the innouation and change of their antient Religion and ceremonies by *Michael Paleologus*, wherof ensued a world of woes; then by Couetousnes, coloured with the name of good husbandry, the vtter destruction of the chiefe strength of the empire; next vnto that, by Enuie, the ruine of the great; false suspect, the looser of friends; Ambition, honours ouerthrow; Distrust, the great minds torment; and Forrein aid, the empires vnfaithful porter, opening the gate euen vnto the enemy himself: wherunto foule Discord joyned (as shall be foorthwith declared) what wanted that the barbarous enemy could desire, for the helping of them in the supplanting of so great an empire? But againe to our purpose: *Michael*, companion with his father *Andronicus* in the empire, had by his wife *Mary* two sonnes, H
Andronicus who was afterward emperour, and *Manuel* surnamed the Despot; and two daughters, *Anne* maried vnto *Thomas* prince of EPIRVS, and *Theodora* married to the prince of BVLGARIA: of all these, the old emperour *Andronicus* their grandfather, so entirely loued *Andronicus* his nephew, as that in comparison of him he little seemed to regard either his owne children, or the rest of his nephewes, wishing them all rather to perish than him: which many supposed him to doe, as purposing by him the better to establish the succession of the empire in his house; as also for his excellency of wit, and comelinesse of person; the likenesse of name also happily furthering his kind affection. For which reasons, he caused him to be alwaies honorably brought vp in his court, as not willing to spare him out of his sight either day or night. But when he was out of his childhood, and grown to be a lustie youth (at which time mens hot de- I
sires are commonly most vehement) he began to contemne all chastisement and gouernment; especially in so high a calling, and in the prime of his youth. Besides that, his companions became vnto him the ministers and perswaders of all those vaine delights which vntaied youth most desireth: and at the first began to lead him foorth to walke the streets, to hawke, to hunt, and to haunt plaies, and afterwards to night walkes also, not well beseeming his state: which riotous course of life, when as it required great expence, and his aged grandfather gaue him but a certaine spare allowance for his conuenient maintenance; hee acquainted himself with the rich marchants of GENOVVAY, which dwelt at PERA. Heereof rose hard taking vp of money, great debt, fine deuises how to come by coine, with secret consultations and purposes of flight. For when he saw his grandfather old *Andronicus* long to liue, and his father *Michael* K
like to succeed him, hee had no hope of aspiring to the empire; whereupon his ambitious thoughts, and impotent desires, long time tormenting his haughty heart, suggested vnto him such purposes. For when as hee would not obey his grandfather as his tutor, nor follow other mens counsels, as a child, he sought after the emperiall liberty, and abundance of wealth; that he might haue that was sufficient for himself, and wherewith to reward others, as the followers of an emperour. Which seeing he could not doe, his grandfather yet liuing, and his father raigning; he sought after the soueraignity of other principalities and countries: one while after ARMENIA, as belonging vnto him in the right of his mother, the king of ARMENIA his daughter; another while after PELOPONESVS, and sometime hee dreamed of LESBOS and LEMNVS, and other the fruitfull Islands of the Ægean sea: which when it was secretly tolde L
sometime to his father, and sometime to his grandfather, he was now crossed and reproued of the one, and afterwards of the other. And to passe ouer many other his youthfull prancks, hee vsed in his night walks secretly to repaire vnto a certaine gentlewomans house, more honourably borne, than honestly quallified: which woman, a certaine gallant and another *Adonis*, no lesse affected than himself; wherwith he highly offended, as with his riuall, appointed certaine ruffians and fencers to watch her house. But vpon a certaine time about midnight, *Manuel* the Despot (his yoonger brother) seeking after him, chanced to passe that way where these watchmen lay: who seeing him hasten by, and not knowing him in the darke, and supposing him to haue been the man they looked for, the gentlewomans best beloued, set vpon him, and so wounded him that he fell downe for dead from his horse: but being by and by after known by others M
comming in, hee was taken vp, and so halfe dead carried vnto the court. Which outrage in the morning being knowne vnto the emperour, cast him into a great heauinesse, as beholding not the time present onely, but wisely considering what was like to ensue in the time to come also. But *Manuel* the Despot being dead of the wounds there receiued, and the report therof brought vnto *Michael* the yoong emperour his father, then lying at THESSALONICA, strooke him

to

A to the heart with ſo great a griefe, that falling ſicke with the conceit thereof, he ſhortly after died.

Andronicus the vnſtaied youth neuertheleſſe holding on his wonted courſe, with a ſecret purpoſe to haue fled, became thereby ſtill more and more ſuſpicious vnto his aged grandfather, not a little carefull vnto what end thoſe his violent paſſions would at length tend. And therefore appointed one *Syrgiannes* (a man of great credit and authoritie in the court, in whom as in a reconciled enemie he had moſt vnaduiſedly repoſed too much truſt) to inſinuate himſelfe into the youthfull Princes acquaintance and fauour; that ſo ſounding him, and his ſecret deſignes, he ſhould not poſſibly be able without his knowledge to ſtep aſide; which of all things the old
B Emperor feared moſt, as the beginning of greater troubles. This *Syrgiannes* being a man of great place, and of a ſubtill wit, was ſometime himſelfe ſuſpected of aſpiring; and therefore as vpon the miſpriſion of treaſon, was by the old Emperour impriſoned: but afterwards by him againe inlarged and receiued into fauour, was now put in truſt warily to obſerue the doings of the young Prince. But he not vnmindfull of the wrong before done vnto him, and in hope by troubling the ſtate, either to aſpire vnto the empire himſelfe, or at leaſtwiſe to ſome good part thereof; thought now a fit occaſion to be miniſtred vnto him for him to worke vpon, both for the one and the other, by ſetting the old Emperour and his ambitious nephew together by the eares: which opportunitie he not minding to let ſlip, taking the young Prince one day aſide, diſcouered vnto him all his grandfathers deuice in briefe, as followeth:

C

Your grandfather noble Prince (ſaid he) *hath ſet me as a watch ouer your actions, or more truly to ſay, as a bloud-hound, to ſeeke after not your doings onely, but if it were poſſible euen after your moſt ſecret thoughts alſo: and ſo whileſt he malicioufly prepareth for you ſnares and fetters, you not aware thereof, fooliſhly follow your ſhallow and childiſh conceits. For what ſhall it auaile you ſecretly to flie away? whereas (if the beſt chance) yet muſt you (as the common ſaying is) put your feet vnder another mans table, and liue of his charge; if it fall not out worſe, that you be ſlaine or made away by them you flie vnto for reliefe, or elſe fall into the ſnares by your grandfather laid for you. But if ſo be that caſting behinde you theſe your fond deuices, you will hearken vnto my counſell, I will ſhew you a readie way how you ſhall in ſhort time and without any danger, aſpire vnto the imperiall ſeat and dignitie; the onely*
D *way whereunto is this, if you leauing the citie of* Constantinople, *ſhall flie out into the cities and prouinces of* Thracia. *For ſeeing men are moſt commonly by nature deſirous of change, and the miſerable Thracians are with often exactions grieuouſly vexed; if you ſhall but once proclaime a redreſſe of their grieuances, with immunitie for euer, they will all with one accord follow you whitherſoeuer you will, your grandfathers long and heauie yoke being caſt off, as if it were* Siſiphus *his heauie ſtone, which they had long rolled and neuer the neere. If you like of this aduice, I will be vnto you both the authour and the leader of this exploit, and will eaſily bring to good effect the whole matter: ſo that you againe on the other ſide promiſe vnto mee vpon your faith, to reward this my trauell according to my deſert therein. But what rewards ſhall theſe be? Honourable preferments, large poſſeſſions, great reuenues, the firſt place in your fauour, and that no great matter be done or concluded without my conſent and*
E *knowledge. For you ſee how willingly I make my ſelfe partaker of your calamitie, and companion of your dangers, no neceſſitie enforcing me thereunto; forgetting euen my very faith, in compariſon of the loue and zeale I beare towards you, wherein if any miſhap ſhall by the mutabilitie of fortune betide mee, I haue ſet downe my ſelfe with patience to endure it. All which conſidered, you need not to grudge to yeeld vnto my requeſts, if you tender your owne ſafetie. And foraſmuch as the ſhortneſſe of the time will ſuffer no long conſultations, and that delay bringeth extreme danger; let vs without longer ſtay impart the matter vnto ſuch others, as for the hatred of the Emperour are like to keepe our counſell, and may yet much further our deſignes.*

Syrgiannes his craftie ſeditious ſpeech vnto young Andronicus.

The young Prince moued with this ſpeech, as if it had beene with a charme, eaſily granted
F to his deſire, confirming the ſame by his oath conceiued in writing: at which time were preſent ſuch as were eſpecially to be acquainted with the plot of the conſpiracie, namely *Iohn Cataczene*, and *Theodorus Synadenus* (both men of great honour, and the old Emperours ancient ſuppoſed friends, and of him beloued, much of like age vnto himſelfe) and *Alexius Apocautus* the third (not of like honour with the other, yet a man of great place, and of a moſt ſubtill and deepe wit:) who all vnderſtanding the matter, ſhewed themſelues not as miniſters, but as ring-

leaders and captaines of the intended rebellion. This conſpiracie with moſt ſolemne oaths and promiſes on euery part confirmed, they began right cunningly to attempt the matter: and to begin withall, *Syrgiannes* and *Catacuzenus*, by corrupting diuers of the great and moſt gratious courtiers, procured to themſelues the gouernment of ſuch cities and prouinces in THRACIA, as they thought fitteſt for them to begin their rebellion in. *Syrgiannes* hauing the gouernment of the ſea coaſt, and the inland countrey euen from the ſea ſide vnto the top of mount RHODOPE; and *Catacuzenus* the gouernment of the countrey about ORESTIAS. In all which places they muſtred ſouldiers, prouided armour, entertaining alſo ſtrangers, and other vagrant & maſterleſſe men, as for ſome great war: beſides that, in the cities for the gouernment thereof, they placed their moſt truſtie friends, remouing ſuch others as they had in ſuſpect. All which they coloured by rumours falſly raiſed, one while of the comming of the Europian Tartars from DANVBIVS, and another while by the comming of the Turks out of ASIA: againſt whoſe inuaſions theſe preparations were giuen out to be made, for auoiding of ſuſpition; and the traitours for their prouident care highly cõmended euen by the Emperour himſelfe, againſt whom they were intended. All which things *Syrgiannes* notably diſſembled, oftentimes withall certifying the young Prince what he had done, and what was likewiſe of him to be performed.

But the old Emperor, ſeeing his youthfull nephew not to hearken to his graue aduice, but ſtill to proceed in his diſſolute kinde of life, was about ſolemnly to haue reproued him before the Patriarch and ſome others of the chiefe nobilitie: if happily ſuch open reproofe might haue wrought in him ſome change of manners; if not, then to haue committed him to priſon: & like enough he was to haue ſo done, had he not beene otherwiſe perſwaded by *Theodorus Metochita* (who of all others was able to doe moſt with him) by reaſon of the libertie of the time; for then it was vpon the point of Shrouetide, when as the people diſtempered with exceſſe of meat and drinke, were of all other times moſt fit, vpon any light occaſion, to be drawne into a tumult or vprore: for feare whereof, he was contented for that time to let him alone. But Shrouetide paſt, and a good part of Lent alſo, the old Emperour ſeeing no amendment in his nephew, calling vnto him *Geraſimus* the Patriarch, and the reſt of the reuerend Biſhops then preſent in the citie, ſent for his nephew, openly before them all to chide him, and to ſchoole him for his diſordered life, but eſpecially for his purpoſed flight; that aſhamed of ſuch open reproofe before ſuch reuerend fathers, he might either amend his life, or at leaſtwiſe of all men be thought iuſtly puniſhed for the ſame, if he ſhould ſtill proceed therein. So the young Prince being ſent for, came accompanied with a number of his fauourites & followers, moſt of them being ſecretly armed, and he himſelfe not altogether vnprouided: for it was agreed amongſt them, that if the Emperor ſhould vſe gentle and fatherly admonition towards him, that then they ſhould keepe themſelues quiet, without any ſhew of inſolencie or diſcontentment; but if he ſhould in anger reproue him, or threaten to puniſh him, then vpon a ſigne giuen, forcibly with their ſwords drawne, to breake in vpon him and to kill him in the imperiall ſeat, and without more adoe to place young *Andronicus* his nephew in his ſtead. But comming in, and (as his manner was) taking his place next vnto his aged grandfather, his deſperat followers attending without, he was indeed of him grieuouſly blamed and reproued for his former follies and euill courſe of life; yet with ſuch moderation and grauitie, as that all ſeemed (as it did) to come of a moſt fatherly care & regard: ſo that at that time no ſuch outrage was committed, as was by diuers his followers wiſhed, but the aſſemblie quietly diſmiſſed, & a ſolemne oath taken on both ſides: of the grandfather, That he ſhould not appoint any other to ſucceed him in the empire but his nephew; & of the young Prince, That he ſhould neuer go about or attempt any thing, to the ſhortning or hurt of his grandfathers life or empire. But the conſpirators thronging about him at his comming out, fretted & fumed at him, as if he had broken his faith and oath before giuen them, ſaying, What greater wrong couldeſt thou do to vs, than being by vs made ſtrong & become dreadfull vnto thine enemies, to diſpoſe of thine affaires at thy pleaſure to thine owne ſafetie, and to leaue vs thy moſt faithfull friends and ſeruants in the deuils mouth to be deuoured? For now they both doubted, and feared, leſt their conſpiracie was diſcouered. With which ſpeeches he both diſcouraged, and aſhamed, ſent for *Theodorus Metochita* his grandfathers chiefe counſeller, requeſting him to deale with his grandfather, for the pardoning of al his followers, as he had done for himſelfe: of which motion he diſliking, told him, That he was to giue God thanks that he had himſelfe eſcaped ſo great a danger, and to him alſo, as a meane for the ſafegard of his life; although he intreated not for ſuch traiterous

Young Andronicus commeth ſecretly armed vnto his grandfather.

A traiterous persons; with whom, if he were well aduised, he would haue nothing to doe, either thinke that they would euer be faithfull vnto him, that respecting neither God nor man, had so fouly broken their faith before giuen vnto the Emperour his grandfather. With which vnexpected answer of so great and graue a counsellor, the Prince not a little troubled, and withall discontented, stood a while as in a muse all silent, reasoning as it were with his owne passions: but afterwards commanding him without further replie to depart, and the old companions of his follies resorting vnto him, he by their perswasion entertained againe his former disloyall thoughts & designements: which his grandfather vehemently suspecting, and therewith not a little grieued, would, as if it had beene by inspiration, oftentimes in his heauinesse say vnto them
B that were about him, *In our time is lost the maiestie of our empire, and the deuotion of the Church.* Yet to preuent the worst, he thought it good betime to lay hands vpon his suspected nephew, and so to detaine him in safe keeping: acquainting none therewith but *Gerasimus* the Patriarch & his ghostly father, who straightway acquainted the Prince therewith, and was the cause that he hastened his flight, flying himselfe before. For he now certainly vnderstanding the danger he was in, the night before he should haue beene apprehended, with all the rest of the conspirators his complices, in the dead time of the night fled out of the citie, by the gate called GYROLIMNIA, which gate (all the rest being shut) was still at his command, for that he vsed commonly thereby at his pleasure very early to goe out on hunting, as he now pretended to doe; but the next day after came to *Syrgiannes* and *Catacuzenus* campe, who then both lay with a great power at HA-
C DRIANOPLE, expecting his comming. The old Emperour, before the rising of the Sunne, aduertised of the flight of his nephew, the same day commanded him to be proclaimed traitor, and proscribed, with all his conspirators, and whosoeuer else should take his part. And for the more suretie, euery man in the citie was sworne to be loyall and faithfull vnto the old Emperour, and enemies vnto his nephew and his adherents. But he on the other side, proclaiming libertie and immunitie abroad in all the cities and villages in THRACIA, so won the hearts of the countrey people in generall, that they resorted vnto him from all places in great numbers, ready armed to doe whatsoeuer he should command them. And to begin withall, they first laid hands vpon the collectors of the Emperors mony, then abroad in the country, whom they fouly intreated, taking from them their mony. After that, and yet seuen daies not expired, almost an incredible
D number of horsmen, footmen, archers, and others, departed from HADRIANOPLE towards CONSTANTINOPLE, vnder the leading of *Syrgiannes*, in good hope at their first comming to take the citie, being a discord in it selfe; and most part of the meaner sort, in hope of gaine, fauouring their rebellious proceedings, such as the seditious finde in such rebellious tumults. So hauing marched foure daies, they came and encamped at SELYBRIA: but as they were about to haue gone on farther, the old Emperour doubting lest the citizens, seeing so great an armie before the citie, should therein raise some tumult or stirre, to the endangering thereof; thought good before to send embassadours vnto his nephew, to proue if happily these so dangerous troubles, might by their meanes in some good sort be appeased. The chiefe of these em-
E bassadours was one *Theoleptus* Bishop of PHILADELPHIA, a man no lesse famous for his vertue than his wisdome, and yet for both of all men honoured; and with them also was sent *Syrgiannes* his mother, as of all others most fit to appease her sonne, and to perswade him not to approch the citie, for that thereof might ensue much bloudshed, and the destruction of the citie, or at least wise the vtter vndoing of many; whereof if he should be the author, how could he euer after liue in conscience quiet, but that the torment thereof would follow him euen into his graue; and therefore to request him to retire a little, and so to come to talke, and to demand what he pleased. *Syrgiannes* moued as well with the presence of the reuerend Bishop, as with the praiers of his mother, retired to the young Prince, which then lay about ORESTIAS; whither the Emperors embassadours came also: with whom (after long debating) it was agreed, That
F the young Prince should in all royall manner, hold all THRACIA, from CHRISTOPOLIS vnto RHEGIVM, and the suburbs of CONSTANTINOPLE: and withall, That such lands as the young Prince had already giuen vnto his followers in MACEDONIA, should still remaine vnto them (which were such as yeerely yeelded vnto them a right great reuenue:) And that the old Emperour should hold vnto himselfe the imperiall citie, with all the cities and prouinces of MACEDONIA beyond CHRISTOPOLIS: and that he alone should haue the honour to heare the embassadours sent from forraine Princes, & to giue them their dispatch; for that the young Prince

Thracia reuolteth vnto Andronicus.

Articles of agreement betwixt the old Emperour and his nephew.

tooke no pleasure in those waightie affaires; as by nature more delighted in hawking, hunting, G
and his other youthfull pleasures. Vpon which conditions a peace was concluded, better liked
of the young Prince, than of the old Emperour; who although he was desirous otherwise to
haue redressed so great wrongs, yet wanting power, was glad to yeeld to whatsoeuer his nephew
would request. Thus was the Greeke empire in EVROPE (as then all or the most part inclosed
within the bounds of MACEDONIA and THRACIA) now diuided betwixt the grandfather
and his nephew: ASIA in the meane time (wherein the Greeke Emperours their predecessours
sometime held great kingdomes) being left for a prey to the greedie Turks. *Othoman* on the
one side euen in the heat of these troubles laying the foundation of his empire in PHRYGIA
and BYTHINIA: and the other the Turks Princes, the successors of Sultan *Aladin*, encroching H
as fast vpon the Emperours territories and countries on this side the riuer MEANDER. And not
so contented, at the same time also built great store of gallies, wherewith they robbed the Chri-
stian merchants trading to CONSTANTINOPLE, and spoiled the coasts of MACEDONIA
and THRACIA, and the Islands of the ÆGEVM; and amongst others tooke the famous Island
of the RHODES: which they held not long, before they were againe driuen out of the same by
the Knights Hospitallers, vnder the conduct of *William Willaret*, aided by the Genowaies, and
the King of SICILIA, which they from that time held (to the great honour and benefit of the
Christian common weale) by the space of 214 yeeres, knowne by the name of The Knights of
the RHODES: vntill that in the memorie of our fathers it was (I say no more, but grieue therfore)
shamefully lost vnto the Turke, for want of reliefe; neuer place being more honourably defen- I
ded, as in the processe of this Historie shall appeare: euer since which time, those honourable
men (the flower of chiualrie) haue seated themselues in the Isle of MALTA; which they to their
immortall glorie, and the comfort of all good Christians, haue most notably defended against
the mightie Sultan *Solyman*, and all the furie of the Turks, as shall be also in due place declared.

The Greeke empire in Europe diuided.

Whilest the Greekes are at discord among themselues, Othoman layeth the foundation of the Turks empire, and the other Turks encroch vpon them also.

The Island of the Rhodes was by the Knights Hospitallers recouered from the Turks in the yeere 1308.

But to returne againe vnto the troubled estate of the Greeke empire. *Syrgiannes* the great cap-
taine, and author of all the aforesaid stirs betwixt the old Emperour and his nephew, had euen
from the beginning thought, as a companion to the young Prince, to haue ruled all with him at
his pleasure, and that nothing either great or little should haue beene done without him: but see-
ing it now to fall out far otherwise than he had before expected, and the Prince to be wholly ru-
led by *Catacuzenus*, and himselfe of all others least regarded, and not so much as called to any K
counsell; inwardly tormented with griefe and enuie, he began secretly with himselfe to deuise
how he might be reuenged of the vngratefull Prince, which vnmindfull of his former promises,
had so vnthankfully cast him off. Wherefore he resolued againe to reuolt vnto the old Emperor,
not doubting but so in short time to ouerthrow all the counsels & deuices of the young Prince,
together with his state also, by himselfe before raised. For he as a worldly wise man, excluding
God from his counsels, had such an opinion of himselfe, that which way soeuer he went, thither
must al things follow also. Wherfore by one of his most trustie friends, he secretly made the old
Emperour acquainted with his purposed reuolt, and how all things stood: for the greater credit
thereof, alleadging, That he could not abide the sight of him that sought to corrupt his wife,
meaning the young Prince. This newes from *Syrgiannes* was vnto the old Emperour most wel- L
come: for it grieued him, as an old man of a great spirit, to see himselfe so contemned and delu-
ded by his nephew, his empire rent, and his old seruitours, of all sorts, by him spoiled of their
lands and possessions in MACEDONIA and THRACIA. So a solemne oath in secret passed from
the one to the other, *Syrgiannes* without longer stay secretly fled to CONSTANTINOPLE:
which there bruited abroad, reioyced many, now well hoping the whole gouernment would
againe come vnto the old Emperour, and that so they should againe recouer their possessions
wrongfully taken from them by his nephew. But God not seeing it so good, all this hope was
but vaine, as ere long it appeared: for the young Prince, who of long knew how much he was
beloued of the Constantinopolitanes, and by them secretly sent for; taking occasion vpon the
flight of *Syrgiannes*, with all the power he could make, marched towards the citie: and being M
come within sight therof, encamped, laying ambushes vpon euery way and passage thereabout,
for to haue intercepted *Syrgiannes*; who was then at PERINTHVS, and the third night after,
with three hundred select souldiers, deceiuing them that lay in wait for him, as if they had been
all asleepe, before the rising of the Sun came to CONSTANTINOPLE: and if the old Emperour
would haue giuen him leaue, had suddenly charged them that lay in wait for him, before they

were

A were aware of his comming. But as soone as it was day, the Prince hearing of the escape of *Syrgiannes*, and no such tumult in the citie as he had expected, presently without more adoe retired with his armie the same way he came, backe againe into THRACIA.

By and by after, *Constantine* the Despot was by the old Emperour his brother sent by sea to THESSALONICA, to take vpon him the gouernment of MACEDONIA, and by the way to apprehend *Xene* the Empresse, the young Princes mother; and after with all the power he could make to inuade the young Prince in THRACIA: that so setting vpon him on the one side out of MACEDONIA, and *Syrgiannes* with the Turks (for the Emperour in this ciuill discord was glad to vse their helpe also) and the Bythinian souldiers on the other, they might so shut him vp
B betwixt them and take him. According to which resolution, the Despot comming to THESSALONICA, there tooke the Empresse, whom with all her familie he thrust into a gallie, and so sent her to CONSTANTINOPLE, where she was in the palace kept close, as too much fauouring the proceedings of the Prince. And afterward raising all the power he could in MACEDONIA, inuaded the Prince in THRACIA, breaking by force thorow the wall of CHRISTOPOLIS.

The young Prince seeing himselfe by this meanes, now like to be driuen to a great strait, sent *Synadenus* with his Thracian armie, to defend the frontiers of his empire towards CONSTANTINOPLE, against *Syrgiannes* with his Turks and Bythinians: in hope himselfe by many subtle deuices & slights, to be able to encounter his vncle the Despot. And first he caused diuers edicts and proscriptions to be written in haste, wherin great rewards and preferments were with great
C solemnitie of words promised to whomsoeuer could bring vnto him the Despot either quicke or dead: which were of purpose giuen vnto the country people passing to and fro, to be dispersed abroad in the high waies, & about in the country neere vnto the Despots campe. And after that, he caused the death of the Emperour his grandfather to be euery where proclaimed, and how that he was by the Constantinopolitans in a tumult slaine: which the deuisers thereof, in euery place reported. Yea some there were, that swore they were themselues present at his woefull death, and saw it with their eies: othersome, more certainly to perswade the matter, shewed long white goats haires, or such like gathered out of white wool, as if they had beene by the furious people pluckt from the old Emperors head or beard, at such time as he was slaine. Which things being commonly reported in euery towne and village, but especially in the Despots
D campe, wonderfully filled mens heads with diuers strange and doubtfull thoughts: then diuers also of the dispersed edicts being found, & brought vnto the Despot, strucke him (and not without cause) into a great feare; insomuch, that by the perswasion of his best friends, he without longer stay retired in haste to THESSALONICA. Whither shortly after came a gallie from CONSTANTINOPLE, with secret letters from the Emperour to the Despot, for the apprehension of fiue and twentie of the chiefe citizens, vehemently suspected for the stirring vp of the people to rebellion, and so to haue deliuered the citie vnto the Prince: all whom the Despot should haue sent bound in that gallie to CONSTANTINOPLE: but they in good time perceiuing the danger they were in, secretly stirring vp the people, and by and by after ringing out the bels (the signall appointed for the beginning of the rebellion) had in a very short time raised a wonderfull tu-
E mult in the citie; insomuch, that all the citizens were vp in armes, who running headlong vnto the house of the Despot, found not him (for he forewarned of their comming, was fled into the castle) but slew all they met of his, or else robbing them, cast them in prison. As for the Despots house, they tooke what they found therein, and afterwards pulled it downe to the ground. Then comming to the castle, they fired the gates: which the Despot seeing, and not able to defend the place, tooke horse & fled vnto a monasterie not far off, where being taken by them that pursued him, he ful sore against his will, for the safegard of his life, tooke vpon him the habit of a Monke: neuertheless, he was from thence caried prisoner to the young Prince his nephew, who shewed himselfe much more courteous vnto him, than al the rest of his nobilitie & waiters: for they, as if they would haue eaten him vp, were euen forthwith ready to haue torne him in peeces, had not
F the Prince embracing him in his armes, saued his life. Yet the next day after, by the perswasion of his counsell, he sent him to DIDIMOTICHVM, where he was cast into a most loathsome prison, being very deepe and straight, in manner of a well, no bodie to attend vpon him but one boy, where he lay in miserable darknesse and stinke; they which drew vp his ordure from him and the boy, whether by chance or of purpose, pouring it oftentimes vpon his head. Where after he had lien a great while in most extreme miserie, wishing to die and could not; he was at

length

length by the Princes commandement (entreated thereunto by certaine religious men) remoued into a more easie prison, where we will for euer leaue him. G

Andronicus the old Emperour seeketh for counsell of the Psalter, as of an heauenly Oracle, and so seeketh to make peace with his nephew. Psal. 68. vers. 14.

Things falling out crosse with the old Emperour, and although they were neuer so well deuised, still sorting out vnto the worst, he became very pensiue and doubtfull what to doe. So it fortuned, that one day in his melancholie mood hauing a Psalter in his hand, to resolue his doubtfull minde, he opened the same, as if it were of that heauenly Oracle to aske counsell: where in the first verse that he light vpon was, *Dum cœlestis dissociat reges, niue conspergentur in Salmon:* When the Almightie scattered Kings (for their sakes) then were they as white as snow in Salmon. Which he applying to himselfe, as if all those troubles, and whatsoeuer else had happened in them, proceeded from the will of God, although for causes to him vnknowne: he H by and by sought to reconcile himselfe vnto his nephew; contrary to the minde of *Syrgiannes*, desiring nothing but trouble. For (as we haue before said) the young Prince although he was desirous of the power and libertie of an Emperour, yet he left the ornaments and care thereof vnto his grandfather: and had he not oftentimes and earnestly beene egged forward by his companions to affect the whole empire, happily could and would haue contented himselfe with the former pacification: for being now sent for, he came first to RHEGIVM, and there visited his mother (now set at libertie, and sent thither for the furtherance of the desired pacification) where he with her and by her counsell did whatsoeuer was there done. So within a few daies the matter was brought into so good tearmes, that an attonement was made, and he himselfe went and met the Emperour his grandfather before the gates of the citie: the old Emperour sitting then vpon his horse, and the Prince lighting from his, a good furlong before he I came at him: and although his grandfather was very vnwilling, and forbade him so to doe, yet he came to him on foot, and kissed his hand and foot as he sate on horsebacke; and afterward taking horse, embraced him, and there kissed one another, to the great contentment of the beholders: and so hauing talked some few words, departed, the old man into the citie, and the young man into his campe, which then lay neere vnto PEGA: where staying certaine daies, he came diuers times into CONSTANTINOPLE, and so went out againe; for as then his mother, partly for her health, partly for the loue of her sonne, lay at PEGA.

But *Syrgiannes* nothing glad of the agreement made betwixt the Emperour and his nephew, walked vp and downe sicke in minde, with a heauie countenance, especially for that in time of K peace his busie head stood the common weale in no stead. Wherefore in all meetings & assemblies, he willingly conuersed with them which most disliked of the present state, and spake hardly as well of the Emperour as of his nephew, wronged as he thought by them both; whereas in the time of their greatest distresse he had (as he said) stood them in good stead. But seeing one *Asanes Andronicus* walking melancholie vp and downe, as a man with heauinesse oppressed; who hauing done good seruice for the young Prince, & not of him regarded, had fled vnto the old Emperour, and there found no such thing as he expected for the ease of his griefe, although he were a man honourably borne, and otherwaies endued with many good parts: with him *Syrgiannes* acquainted himselfe, as grieued with the like griefe that he himselfe was: with whom as with his friend, without any dissimulation he plainly discoursed of all such things as his griefe L desired. But *Asanes* handling him with great wisedome, did himselfe with like words speake hardly both of the Emperour and his nephew; but yet curiously noted whatsoeuer *Syrgiannes* said, for he had before hated him for his ambition, and as then tooke it in displeasure, that he was enemie vnto *Catacuzenus*, his son in law, who was all in all with the young Prince, and did oftentimes comfort him. But the song being throughly set, *Asanes* came secretly vnto the old Emperour, and told him the whole matter; and in fine, that except he betime laid hold vpon *Syrgiannes*, affecting the empire, he should in short time be by him brought to his end. Whereupon *Syrgiannes* was forthwith clapped fast in prison: whose house, with all his wealth, the common people tooke the spoile of; and not contented to haue rased it downe to the ground, conuerted the site thereof, together with the pleasant vineyards adioyning vnto the same, into a place to M feed goats & sheepe in: a worthie reward for his manifold trecheries. The young Prince shortly after going to CONSTANTINOPLE, was there crowned Emperour, as fellow in the empire with his grandfather: vnto which solemnitie in the great temple of *Sophia*, both the Emperors riding, it fortuned the old Emperour by the stumbling of his horse to be ouerthrowne, and foulely beraied in the mire, the streets being then very foule by reason of the great raine but a little before fallen:

A fallen: which many tooke as ominous, and portending the euill fortune which ſhortly after befell him. During the time of this peace, it fortuned that as the young Prince was a hunting in CHERSONESVS, ſeuentie Turks, aduenturers, were by force of weather driuen on ſhore: who before they would yeeld themſelues priſoners, made a great fight with the Emperors men, and ſlew diuers of them; in which conflict the young Emperor himſelfe was wounded in the foot, wherewith he was a great while after exceedingly tormented.

Andronicus the late Prince, and now fellow in the empire with his aged grandfather, held not himſelfe long ſo contented, but after the manner of ambitious men (and continually prickt forward by his aſpiring fauourites) longed to haue the whole gouernment vnto himſelfe, which
B hardly brooketh any partner: and therefore wearie to ſee his grandfather liue ſo long, reſolued no longer to expect his naturall death, (although it could not by courſe of nature be farre off) but by one deuice or other to thruſt him frō the gouernment; or if that might not be wrought, at once to diſpatch him both of life and ſtate together. And the ſurer to lay the plot whereon ſo foule and horrible a treaſon was to be built, he by the counſell of his mother and others, by whom he was moſt directed, ſent for *Michael* the Prince of BVLGARIA, his brother in law (though before to him vnknowne, as was his wife his ſiſter alſo) to make with him a firme league, to the intent by him to prouide, that if the Prince of SERVIA (who had but lately married the old Emperours nigh kinſwoman, and ſo to him much deuoted) ſhould take part with him, he ſhould by the Bulgarian his neighbour be intangled. Who ſo ſent for, with his wife,
C the old Emperours daughter, came to DIDYMOTICHVM, where they were many dayes moſt honourably entertained both by the young Emperour and his mother: for why, this meeting plotted vpon great treaſon, was finely coloured, with the deſire the young Emperour had to ſee his ſiſter and her huſband, as before vnto him vnknowne; and the Empreſſe, her daughter, whom ſhe had not ſeene in three and twentie yeeres before. But the ſecret concluſion betwixt them was, that the Bulgarian Prince ſhould to the vttermoſt of his power aid the young Emperour againſt his grandfather, and he likewiſe him againſt the Seruian, as he ſhould haue need: and further, that if his grandfather being depoſed, he ſhould recouer the whole empire, then to giue him a great ſumme of mony, with certaine ſpeciall cities and prouinces confining vpon him, as in dowrie vnto his kind brother in law, and companion in his labours. So *Michael*
D the Bulgarian Prince honourably entertained by the young Emperor and the old Empreſſe his mother in law, loaded with rewards, and promiſes of greater, returned home into his countrey.

A treacherous meeting.

This matter thus diſpatched, the young Emperour therewith encouraged, and knowing alſo the Conſtantinopolitans, beſides the other cities of THRACIA, exceedingly to fauour him and his proceedings; by whom alſo he was ſecretly inuited to haſten his comming thither (as wearie of the long life & lazineſſe, as he tearmed it, of his grandfather) thought it beſt cunningly to goe about the matter; that ſo his grandfather being with as little ſtir as might be depoſed, he himſelfe might alone enioy the empire. But needing mony for the effecting of ſo great matters, he by force tooke all the money from the collectors, whom the old Emperour had ſent into THRACIA for the taking vp of money there; telling them, that he was an Emperour alſo, and in
E need of money, and that the common charge was likewiſe by the common purſe to be diſcharged. After that he tooke his way towards CONSTANTINOPLE, pretending that vpon ſpeciall cauſes he had occaſion to ſend embaſſadours vnto the Sultan of ÆGYPT: for the tranſporting of whom he was there to take order for the ſetting forth of a great ſhip, and other things neceſſarie for the iourney. Neither went he ſlenderly appointed, but with a great power; and the cities of THRACIA before well aſſured vnto him, ſuch as he ſuſpected being thruſt out of office, & others more aſſured vnto him placed in their ſteads But whilſt he thus beſtirreth himſelfe, one of thoſe that were moſt inward with him, deteſting ſo foule a treaſon, ſecretly fled from him vnto his grandfather, from point to point diſcouering vnto him all the intended treacheries; and withall, how that his nephew had determined to depoſe him from his empire, or
F otherwiſe to bereaue him of his life if he ſhould ſtand vpon his guard: but if in the attempt he ſhould finde eaſie ſucceſſe, then to ſpare his life; and depriuing him of the imperiall dignitie, to thruſt him as a Monke into a monaſterie: and therefore aduiſed him to beware how he ſuffered him after his wonted manner to come into the citie, for feare of a generall reuolt, but rather by force to keepe him out. Which the Emperour hearing, and comparing with other things which he had heard of others, yet ſounding in his eares, deeming it to be true, ſtood vp, and in the anguiſh

guiſh of his ſoule thus complained vnto God: *Reuenge my quarrell, O God, vpon them that doe me* C
wrong, and let them be aſhamed that riſe vp againſt me: and preſerue thou vnto me the imperiall power, which by thee giuen vnto me, he commeth to take from me whom I my ſelfe begot and aduanced. After, he began to conſider what courſe to take for the aſſurance of himſelfe and his ſtate in ſo great a danger. And firſt he ſent vnto his nephew (come halfe way) to forbid him from entring the citie, and to tell him, that it was a great follie for him, being ſo manifeſt a traitour, both vnto his grandfather and the ſtate, to thinke his traiterous purpoſes to be vnknowne vnto the world: and beſide, in way of reproofe to rehearſe vnto him, how many occaſions he had giuen for the breaking of the league with his grandfather: firſt, in taking away the mony from the collectors, whereof the ſtate neuer ſtood in more need, by reaſon of the diuiſion of the empire, which re- H
quired double charge; then, in that he had in the citie euery where diſplaced ſuch gouernours and magiſtrates as his grandfather had ſent thither, and placed others at his pleaſure; with many other like facts, declaring his trecherous aſpiring minde, for which he was not without cauſe by his grandfather forbidden to enter the citie. After that, the old Emperor by ſecret letters craued aid of *Crales* Prince of SERVIA, and *Demetrius* the Deſpot his ſonne, who was then gouernour of THESSALONICA and the countries adioyning; commanding him, with *Andronicus* and *Michael* his nephewes (gouernours of MACEDONIA) with all the forces they were able to raiſe, and ſuch aid as ſhould be ſent vnto them out of SERVIA, with all ſpeed to ioyne together and to goe againſt the young Emperour. But theſe letters thus written vnto the Prince of SERVIA, the Deſpot, and others, (as is before ſaid) were for the moſt part intercepted, by ſuch as the I
young Emperour had for that purpoſe placed vpon the ſtraits of CHRISTOPOLIS, and the other paſſages; eſpecially ſuch as were written in paper, yet ſome others in fine white linnen cloth, & ſecretly ſowed in the garments of ſuch as caried them, eſcaped for all their ſtrait ſearch, and ſo were deliuered. And in truth nothing was done, or about to be done in CONSTANTINOPLE, but that the young Emperour was by one or other aduertiſed thereof: whereas the old Emperor on the other ſide, vnderſtood nothing what his nephew did abroad, or intended. For all men of their owne accord inclined vnto him, ſome openly both bodie and ſoule (as they ſay) and ſuch as could not be with him in perſon, yet in minde and good will were euen preſent with him; and that not onely the common ſort of the citizens of CONSTANTINOPLE, but the chiefe Senatours, the great courtiers, yea and many other of the Emperours neereſt kinſmen K
alſo: who curiouſly obſeruing whatſoeuer was done in the citie, forthwith certified him thereof. Amongſt whom was alſo *Theodorus* the Marqueſſe, one of the old Emperors owne ſons: who many yeeres before by the Empreſſe his mother ſent into ITALY, and there honorably married, was by his prodigall courſe of life there, growne far in debt; ſo that leauing his wife & children behind him, he was glad after the deceaſe of his mother, to flie vnto his father at CONSTANTINOPLE, and there now liued; who beſide that he moſt honourably maintained him in the court, and beſtowed many great things vpon him, paid alſo all his debts, which were very great. All which fatherly kindnes he forgetting, went about moſt *Iudas* like to haue betraied his aged father. For he alſo dreaming after the empire, and for many cauſes (but eſpecially for that he was in mind, religion, manners, and habit, become a Latine) by him reiected, thought he could L
not doe him a greater deſpight than by reuolting vnto the young Emperour: ſo that the neerer he was in bloud, the more he was his fathers vnnaturall enemie. Shortly after, *Demetrius* the Deſpot hauing receiued the Emperours letters at THESSALONICA, called vnto him *Andronicus* and *Michael* his nephewes, the gouernours of MACEDONIA; with whom ioyning all his forces, and daily expecting more aid out of SERVIA, he firſt ſpoiled the young Emperors friends and fauourites in MACEDONIA, giuing the ſpoile of them in all the cities and townes of MACEDONIA vnto their ſouldiers, who made hauocke of whatſoeuer they light vpon: and whoſoeuer ſeemed any way to withſtand them or diſlike of their proceedings, their goods and lands they confiſcated, and draue the men themſelues into exile. Neither was the young Empe- M
rour *Andronicus* in the meane time idle, but ſecretly ſent out his edicts into all parts of the empire, yea into the very cities of CONSTANTINOPLE and THESSALONICA, and ouer all MACEDONIA: whereby he proclaimed vnto the people in generall, a releaſement of them from all tributes, impoſitions, and paiments; and frankly promiſed vnto the ſouldiers and men of war, the augmenting of their penſions and pay: which were no ſooner bruited, but that moſt men were therewith moued, both in word and deed to fauour his proceedings, doing what

they

A they could to further the ſame, and by ſecret letters inuiting him to haſten his comming into the citie: who thereupon comming to RHEGIVM, by his embaſſadours ſent from thence, requeſted the old Emperour, either to giue him leaue according to the league betwixt them, to come into the citie, or elſe to ſend him certaine of the chiefe of the nobilitie and cleargie, with ſome of the better and more vnderſtanding ſort of the Burgers and citizens alſo, vnto whom he might frankly ſpeake his minde: for them faithfully to deliuer the ſame againe vnto the Emperour his grandfather, and the people. Which requeſts the old Emperour perceiuing to be full of deceit and trecherie, for a good ſpace anſwered thereunto nothing at all, but ſtood all ſilent, as doubting which to grant: for, to ſuffer his nephew to come into the citie, he ſaw was dangerous,
B the citizens (as he well knew) being for the moſt part inclined to reuolt vnto him ſo ſoone as they ſhould once ſee him within the gates; and to ſend any forth vnto him, as he deſired, might be (as he feared) an occaſion of ſome tumult to be after raiſed in the citie: for he knew that his nephewes drift therein was, openly by faire words, and ſecretly with great gifts and large promiſes, firſt to gaine them, and by them the reſt of the citizens. Both which things being dangerous, he made choice of the eaſier, and ſent forth vnto him two of the moſt noble Senators, two of the moſt reuerend Biſhops, two other graue Prelates, and foure of the chiefe Burgeſſes of the citie: vnto whom, at their comming vnto him, he in the open hearing of all men deliuered this premeditated and craftie ſpeech:

The young Emperour ſendeth Embaſſadours vnto his grandfather.

C *It is not vnknowne vnto the world, you my ſubiects to haue alwayes beene vnto mee more deare than I haue beene vnto my ſelfe: and how that I haue not vpon any ambitious conceit, or deſire of the ſole gouernment, againſt my grandfathers good will, gone out. For you ſee how that I neither ſpare mine owne life, or attend my pleaſure, for the care I haue of you: I come not vnto you compaſſed about with a guard of armed men, as is the manner not of Kings onely, for the enuie of their high place, but of others alſo of farre meaner calling, whom diſaſter fortune, baniſhed from their parents and kinred, hath enforced to wander here and there, with death alwayes before their eyes. Let any man tell me how I came by theſe wounds which I yet beare in my bodie, but in fight with the enemies of my countrey which paſſe ouer out of* ASIA *into* THRACIA; *or elſe dwelling neere vnto* ISTER, *doe with their incurſions from thence miſerably waſte that ſide of* THRACIA *which is next vnto them? For I (to*
D *tell you the very truth) ſeeing the old Emperour by reaſon of his great yeeres to become ſlothfull and blockiſh, and not poſſibly to be awaked out of his drowſie ſleepe, neither any whit to grieue, when as the poore Chriſtians his ſubiects were both by day and night, ſome as ſacrifices ſlaine by the barbarous enemies, ſome carried away into moſt miſerable captiuitie, and the reſt poore and naked to be driuen out of their houſes and cities; not to ſpeake in the meane time of the greater miſchiefes in* ASIA, *and how many cities haue beene there loſt through the old Emperours ſloth and negligence: when I ſaw theſe things (I ſay) ſtrucken with a piercing griefe, which my heart could not endure, I went out for two cauſes, either by ſome kinde of honourable death to end my griefe together with my life, or elſe to the vttermoſt of my power to ſtand my countrey in ſome ſtead. For by no meanes it can come to paſſe, but that a man, and he that hath of long time reigned, muſt at length become loathſome vnto his ſubiects,*
E *and incurre their deadly hatred. For why, God hath made nothing in this life immutable and firme: whereby it commeth to paſſe, as we ſee, that all worldly things ioy and delight in change. But if a man will as it were force fortune to his deſire, and ſtriue to binde things vnto a certaine firme and conſtant courſe, he ſhall but loſe his labour, and in vaine ſtriue againſt nature. But whatſoeuer is contrary vnto nature, or exceedeth the iuſt bounds thereof, hath in it neither comfort nor delight. This was it that cauſed the wiſe men to ſay, and to leaue vnto vs as rules: Not to dwell too long vpon any thing; and a meaſure to be the faireſt vertue. For you ſee how that my grandfather being growne to great yeeres, and hauing raigned ſo long (I may almoſt ſay) as neuer did any but he, is become hatefull vnto all his people; and yet regardeth not either how to diſcharge himſelfe of ſo great a burthen, or how to releeue the declining ſtate of the empire, or ſo much as greeueth to ſee the ſucceſſours of the empire to*
F *die before him: for my father is dead without any fruit of the empire, except the bare title onely; and others alſo neereſt to him of bloud, and farre younger than he, are dead likewiſe: and happily I my ſelfe may die alſo before I ſhall receiue any profit thereof: for what can more eaſily happen, eſpecially vnto a man that ſhunneth no danger, and regardeth not his life? But ſome perhaps will ſuſpect me of ambition, for departing from the Emperour my grandfather, and for refuſing to be ruled by him. Which thing I neither flatly denie, nor altogether confeſſe: for might I ſee the empire increaſe, and the*

The ſpeech of the young Emperour vnto his grandfathers embaſſadours.

bounds

bounds thereof enlarged, I could willingly content my ſelfe, and at my eaſe take my reſt ; cheering my G
ſelfe vp with ſuch hope as doe they that beare with their cookes, making them to ſtay long for their din-
ner, in hope thereby to fare the better. But ſeeing the ſtate of the empire daily to decline from euill to
worſe, and the miſerable people carried away captiues, or ſlaine by their enemies euen at the gates and
vnder the wals of the imperiall citie : what deeme you mee then to thinke ? For moſt men eaſe their
preſent griefe, with the hope of future good, although the ſame be but vaine : but vnto mee is not left
euen ſuch vaine hope vnto my falſe comfort. And can you marueil at the impotent affection of the
Great Alexander *of* Macedon, *grieued and diſpleaſed to ſee his father to heape victorie vpon*
victorie, and to cut off all the hope of his ſonnes glorie, by leauing him ſo few occaſions of warre ; and
not thinke me (to whom you ſee the quite contrarie is chanced, and from whom not only the hope of the H
empire is cut off, for the waſting thereof, but euen the courſe of a quiet life) to fret and grieue thereat ?
Moued herewith, and not able longer to endure it, at length I riſe vp, and requeſted of the Emperour
my grandfather, but a thouſand men at armes, promiſing him by the power of God with them to pre-
ſerue the cities in Bythinia, *and to driue his enemies farther off, before that hauing them, they*
ſhould paſſe ouer the ſtrait, and beſiege the imperiall citie of Constantinople : *which ſo ſmall*
a requeſt he not onely denied me, but hath euer ſince taken me for his mortall enemie. But this and ma-
ny other things elſe let paſſe : I haue now another requeſt vnto him by you, which is, That he would
giue me eight thouſand duckats to content my ſouldiers withall, who now of long haue from place
to place romed vp and downe with mee, following mine vncertaine fortune : which granted, I will
no more be vnto my grandfather troubleſome, but diſmiſſing my forces, hold my ſelfe right well I
contented.

Hauing thus ſaid, he riſe out of his ſeat, and taking them apart one after another, courteouſly diſcourſed with them, and ſo filling them with great hopes, ſent them away : who departing from him and comming into the citie, became as it were the open proclaimers of his praiſes, enflaming the people with a greater deſire of him than before. Which the old Emperour hearing, and perceiuing almoſt all his friends in the citie to be in heart reuolted from him ; and withall fearing to be of them in ſome ſudden concourſe ſlaine, was therewith exceedingly vexed. Yet he thought it beſt before any ſuch thing ſhould happen, to proue their minds, and to heare the counſell of the Patriarch, and *Aſanes*, and the other Biſhops alſo : vnto whom be- K
ing by one of the Senators called together, he declared his mind as followeth :

The ſpeech of the old Emperour vnto the Patriarch and the reſt of the Biſhops and Nobilitie, concerning the young Emperour his nephew.

Were I aſſured, that hauing depoſed my ſelfe of the imperiall dignitie, I ſhould my ſelfe liue in ſafetie,
and ſee my people well gouerned, I would I ſhould neuer be of the companie of the faithfull, if I did not by
much prefer a pleaſant quiet contented life before an empire. For if a man would ſeeke for the pleaſure of
the mind, what can be more pleaſant, than be diſburdened of all cares, and free from ſuch dangers as
attend high eſtates ? But if for my ſinne and the ſins of my people, as alſo for the ſinne of mine anceſtors,
the vengeance of God in manner of a violent tempeſt raging againſt vs, ſubuerteth our Empire : and I
yet but a youth, by the helpe of God reformed and quieted the ſtate of the Empire, grieuouſly troubled
with diſcord in the Church, and the often inuaſion of the enemie ; and taught by long experience, L
know not now in ſo great a hurle and tempeſt which way to turne my ſelfe : how can I with ſafetie
commit vnto my nephew ſo great a charge, who as yet is both an vnſtayed youth, and ſo careleſſe of
his owne good as that hee knoweth not how well to gouerne his owne priuat affaires ? For giuing ouer
his power vnto young vnskilfull men, and hauing flung away his imperiall poſſeſſions amongſt them,
hee himſelfe liueth in penurie and want ; neither regardeth any thing more than his dogges and kites,
of whom hee keepeth few leſſe than a thouſand curres, and as many hawkes, and not much fewer
men to looke vnto them. Wherefore vnto ſuch a man, how may I ſafely commit either my life, or
the adminiſtration of mine Empire, by God committed vnto mee ? But I will neuer witting and wil-
lingly caſt away either my ſubiects or my ſelfe. For my nephew I haue loued, not onely more than my
wife and children, but (to ſay the truth) more than my ſelfe alſo ; as you all know how tenderly I M
haue brought him vp, how carefully I haue inſtructed and aduiſed him, as purpoſing to haue left
him the heire and ſucceſſour both of my wiſedome and mine empire, that ſo hee might the better
pleaſe both God and man. But he, contemning my good counſell, hath ſpent whole nights in banquet-
ting, and riot, and brothelhouſes ; wherein hee hath alſo ſlaine his owne brother : and to bee
breefe, hee hath riſen and lifted vp his hand againſt mee his grandfather, and a grandfather that

had

A *had of him ſo well deſerued, attempting ſuch a villanie as the Sunne neuer ſaw. Wherefore you ought alſo to hate and deteſt his wickedneſſe, and to riſe vp to reſtraine his impudent diſloyaltie, and by your eccleſiaſticall cenſure to denounce him vnworthie of the empire and the communion of the faithfull, as one ſeparated from God, that ſo aſhamed and corrected, he may louingly thither returne from whence he is ſhamefully departed, and againe be made heire both of mine empire and ſtaiedneſſe: for there is no man aliue whom I had rather haue promoted vnto the empire, ſo that he would heare my precepts, and obey my counſell. As for the concluſion he vſed in his former ſpeech, it was altogether fained, craftie, and malicious: for you haue heard how many reproches he hath giuen me in all that ſpeech, wherewith his concluſion agreeth not: but the more to ſtir vp the hearers thereof againſt me, did of purpoſe ſo con-*
B *clude his ſpeech.*

Vpon this, moſt of the foreſaid graue and learned Biſhops agreed that the young Emperour ſhould no more be named in the praiers of the Church, vntill he had better conformed himſelfe. Howbeit the Patriarch and ſome others ſecretly fauouring both him and his proceedings, liked not thereof, and therefore ſaying nothing thereunto, returned home vnto their owne houſes. But meeting once or twiſe afterwards in the Patriarch his houſe, they there conſpired together againſt the old Emperour; with whom alſo diuers of the nobilitie conſented: and thereupon an oath was conceiued in writing, whereby they bound themſelues, to continue conſtant in that their wicked reſolution. Whereupon, about three dayes after, the Patriarch cauſing the
C bels to be rung; and a great number of the vulgar people flocking together, pronounced the ſentence of excommunication againſt all ſuch as ſhould in their publike praiers omit the name of the young Emperour, or refuſe to doe him all honour due vnto an Emperour. Which thing not a little grieued the old Emperour, as appeared by his ſpeech, in ſaying, *If the Doctor of peace be ſo mad againſt vs, in hope of reward promiſed by my nephew, that caſting off all ſhame and grauitie, he doubteth not to be the authour of ſedition; who ſhall repreſſe the raſh attempts of the vulgar people againſt vs, if we reſpect but mans helpe? For the Patriarch ſo much as in him lieth is, I ſee, the murtherer of vs.* So the Biſhops of the contrary faction, moued with the notable impudencie of the Patriarch, excommunicated him likewiſe, as he had done them, with his mad followers, as the authours of ſedition and faction, and incited with bribes to the troubling of the ſtate: for
D which cauſe alſo he was by the Emperors commandement committed vnto ſafe keeping in the monaſterie called MANGANIVM. But about two daies after, the young Emperor came to the wals of CONSTANTINOPLE, to know how his grandfather had accepted the meſſengers ſent vnto him; earneſtly requeſting that it might be lawfull for him alone to enter into the citie, to doe his dutie to his grandfather. But neither he, neither his words were at all regarded, but was by ſuch as ſtood vpon the wals himſelfe with ſtones driuen away; who could not abide to heare him ſpeake, but ſhamefully railed at him, ſaying all his talke to be nothing elſe but deceit and fraud: and ſo for that time he retired a little from the wals. But night being come, certaine buſie heads amongſt the common people (and they not few) ſecretly meeting together, gaue him knowledge, That about midnight when as all the citizens were aſleepe, and the watchmen
E in ſecuritie, he ſhould come vnto the wals, where they would be readie with ropes to draw him vp vnto the top of the bulwarkes, which done, the matter (as they ſaid) were as good as diſpatched: for that they were perſwaded, that the citizens ſo ſoone as they ſhould once ſee him in the middeſt of the citie amongſt them, would forthwith all reuolt vnto him. So he according vnto this appointment, about midnight approching the wals, found there no ſuch matter as he had well hoped, for the receiuing of him into the citie; but contrariwiſe, the watchmen carefully watching all alongſt the wall, and calling one vnto another. Wherefore finding there no hope, he with *Catacuzenus* and *Synadenus*, his chiefe counſellors, leauing the South ſide of the citie, in a little boat rowed ſoftly all along the wall that is towards the ſea, if happily they might there finde their friends, and ſo be receiued in: but there the watchmen alſo deſcrying them
F from the wals, and calling vnto them, but receiuing no anſwere, began to caſt ſtones at them, and to make a noiſe: ſo that deceiued of their purpoſe, and out of hope, they were glad to get them farther off, and to depart as they came.

The Patriarch with diuers of the Biſhops conſpire againſt the old Emperour.

But the euill ſucceſſe of this exploit was ſhortly after with his better fortune recompenced: for by and by after, ſecret letters were ſent vnto him from THESSALONICA, requeſting him with all ſpeed to come thither, aſſuring him in the name of the Biſhop with diuers of the nobili-

Theſſalonica yeelded vnto the young Emperour.

tie, and the good liking of the people in generall, at his comming to open the gates of the citie G
vnto him: whereupon he leauing a great part of his armie with *Synadenus*, to keepe short the Constantinopolitanes, he himselfe with the rest of his power set forward towards THESSALONICA, where he in the habit of a plaine countrey man entred the citie vnsuspected: but being got within the gate, & there casting off that simple attire wherewith he had couered his rich and royall garments, and presently knowne to be the young Emperour, the people came flocking about him, and with many ioyfull acclamations receiued him as their Lord and Soueraigne: yet some few, more fauouring the old Emperor, fled into the castle, & there stood vpon their guard; which after they had for a space notably defended, was at length taken from them.

THESSALONICA thus yeelded, *Demetrius*, *Andronicus*, and *Asan Michael*, the old Empe- H
rours chiefe captaines, then lying with his armie not far off, and not well trusting one another, fled; most of whose souldiers presently went ouer vnto the young Emperour: who departing from THESSALONICA, came to SERRE, which by composition was deliuered vnto him also, but not the castle: for that was by *Basilicus Nicephorus* (the captaine thereof) still holden for the old Emperor. This *Basilicus* was a man honourably descended, but of no great capacitie or wit, as the finer sort supposed, and therfore not of them much regarded or thought fit for the taking in hand of any great matter: whom yet the old Emperour for his plaine sinceritie, more than for any thing else, had made captaine of that castle and gouernour of the countrey thereabouts; which he yet still held, and in these most troublesome times shewed himselfe wiser than
them all that had so thought of him: of whom some died in despaire, some fled, some were taken I
prisoners, and so suffered a thousand euils, the rest with the losse of their honour traiterously reuolting from the old Emperor to the young: whereas he alone, looking but euen forward vpon his allegeance, with his trust in God, so long as the old Emperor liued, opposed himselfe against these troubles, and stood fast for him, and was not to be moued with any faire promises or cruel threats of the young aspiring Emperor, whereof he lacked none. But hauing strongly fortified the castle committed to his charge, there kept himselfe, vntill that hearing of the death of the old Emperor, he then reconciling himselfe vnto the young, as vnto his right Soueraigne, deliuered vp vnto him the castle: who in reward of his fidelitie, gaue it him againe to hold for him, in as ample manner as he had before held it from his grandfather: for wise men honour vertue euen
in their enemies, as did King *Philip* in *Demosthenes*, when as he said, *If any Athenian liuing in* K
Athens, doth say that he preferreth me before his countrey, him verily would I buy with much money, but not thinke him worthie my friendship. But if any for his countries sake shall hate me, him will I impugne as a castle, a strong wall, or a bulwarke; and yet admire his vertue, and reckon the citie happie in hauing such a man. And so in few words to conclude a long discourse, the young Emperor in short time hauing romed thorow all MACEDONIA, and without resistance taken all the strong townes and cities therein, he there tooke also *Demetrius* the Despots wife and children, with all his treasure, as also the wiues of *Andronicus* and *Asanes*, and of all the Senators that followed them: after whom the great commanders their husbands were also for the most part taken & cast in prison, some at THESSALONICA, some at DIDIMOTICHVM, some of the rest afterwards most miserably perishing in exile. Wherewith the old Emperour discouraged, was about to haue sent his L
embassadours vnto his nephew for peace, whilest he was yet thus busied in MACEDONIA: and had indeed so done, had not another hope arising in the meane time, quite altered that his better purpose. It fortuned at the same time, whilest the old Emperour was thus thinking of peace, that *Michael* the Bulgarian Prince, in hope of great profit thereof to arise, secretly offered his aid vnto him against the young Emperour his nephew: of which his offer, the old Emperour gladly accepted, and embassadours were sent to and fro about the full conclusion of the matter, no man being acquainted therewith more than two or three of the Emperour his most secret friends and trustie counsellors. Yet in the meane time, disdaining to be so coupt vp as he was by *Synadenus*, one of his nephewes captaines, euen in the imperiall citie; sent out one *Constantinus Assan*, with the greatest part of his strength against him: who encountring him M
at the riuer MAVRVS, was there by him in plaine battell ouerthrowne and taken prisoner, the rest of his discomfited armie flying headlong backe againe to CONSTANTINOPLE. All things thus prosperously proceeding with the young Emperour, and the countries of MACEDONIA and THRACIA now almost all at his command, he returned in haste with all his power to CONSTANTINOPLE, to preuent the comming of the Bulgarians thither: as fearing
left

A left that they finding the citie weakly manned, ſhould trecherouſly kill the old Emperour with ſuch as were about him, and ſo ſeize vpon the citie themſelues: or at leaſtwiſe giue him ſuch aid as might keepe him out, and ſo cut off all his hope for obtaining of the ſame. At which time alſo there was great want of victuall in the citie, he with his armie hauing ſhut it vp on the one ſide by land, and the Venetians with their gallies on the other ſide by ſea: who then at ods with the Genowaies dwelling at PERA, kept all that ſtrait ſea betwixt EVROPE and ASIA, in ſuch ſort, as that neither victuals nor marchandiſe could be brought that way, either to CONSTANTINOPLE or PERA. The young Emperour comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, attempted at his firſt comming to haue entred the citie, in hope without any great reſiſtance to haue beene re-
B ceiued; but repulſed by the defendants, was glad to get him further off. About this time came alſo vnto the citie three thouſand horſemen, the promiſed aid of the Bulgarian Prince vnto the old Emperor: who although he wanted men, and was right glad of their comming, yet remembring the harmes he had before receiued by forraine aid, and not now daring to truſt them too far, ſuffered not them to come into the citie, more than their Generall and ſome few others of their commanders with him. Now the young Emperour vpon the comming of this aid, leſt ſome great harme might betide either the old Emperour, or himſelfe, to the vtter ſubuerſion of their ſtate; ſecretly ſent vnto his grandfather, requeſting him to be well aduiſed how he truſted thoſe forraine people too far; offering himſelfe to doe whatſoeuer he ſhould command, rather than ſo great a harme ſhould happen vnto either of them, as was from them to be feared. But
C the truſt the old Emperour had conceiued of this Bulgarian aid, had ſo confirmed his minde, as that he little liſtened vnto his nephewes requeſt: beſides that, how could he well truſt him that had ſo oftentimes deceiued him? Wherewith the young Emperour much grieued, and now againe almoſt deſpairing of his farther ſucceſſe, diſlodged and drew neere vnto the place where theſe Bulgarian horſemen lay encamped: from whence he ſent certaine embaſſadours with great gifts and preſents vnto the Generall, and the reſt of the chiefe commanders, promiſing them farre greater, if they would without further troubling themſelues returne home againe: whereunto they willingly granted, and ſo were of him honourably feaſted, and the next day after conducted vpon their way homewards.

Conſtantinople betraied vnto the young Emperour.

It fortuned, that the young Emperour returning backe againe from the Bulgarians, and en-
D camped in the ſame place where he before lay; two of the watchmen of the citie, the one called *Camaris*, and the other *Caſtellanus*, both ſmiths, fled ſecretly vnto him: who admitted to his preſence and all others commanded to depart, excepting *Catacuzenus*, offered to betray the citie vnto him, ſo that he would vnder his hand writing aſſure them of ſuch a ſumme of money, and ſuch poſſeſſions as they required: which he eaſily granting, and the houre and manner of performing of the ſame, being by them declared, and agreed vpon; they by and by without longer ſtay, for feare of ſuſpition, returned againe into the citie. But the Emperor ſtaying foure daies in the ſame place, cauſed certaine ladders to be made of great ropes, ſuch as they vſe in great ſhips: But the appointed night being come, the two traitours hauing before prouided great ſtore of good wine, liberally gaue the ſame by way of courteſie vnto the watchmen their companions
E neere vnto them; who drunke ſo plentifully thereof, that not able any longer to hold vp their heads, they fell into ſo ſound a ſleep, as that but for breathing, they differed not much from dead men. About midnight came certaine ſouldiers of the young Emperours, with the aforeſaid ladders; which the traitours by and by drawing vnto them by a rope caſt downe, and making them faſt vnto the top of the wall, receiued by the ſame eighteene armed men: who being got into the citie, without more adoe brake open the Romane gate, whereby the young Emperour with his armie preſently entred, no man letting him. But it is worth the marking, how things appointed to befall vs, are by no meanes to be auoided, although we be thereof before neuer ſo plainly forewarned: For the ſame night the citie was ſurprized, immediatly after the ſetting of the Sunne, the gates being ſhut, a certaine country man came running in all haſte from out of a
F village there by, & knocking hard at the gate called GIROLIMNA, required to ſpeake with ſome of the ſouldiers; who being come, he told them how that a little before he had ſeene a great number of the young Emperors men marching towards the citie, by the way that leadeth vnto the Romane gate: which being told vnto the old Emperour, did not a little trouble him. And therefore thought it good to ſend out certaine ſcouts, to ſee if all were cleere along the wals toward the land, from ſea to ſea: which his purpoſe *Metochita* his great counſellor letted, ſaying,

it not to beſeeme a couragious minde to be vpon ſo light an occaſion ſo much moued; for that G
either the rumour was falſe, or the endeuour of ſo few vaine, the wals and gates of the citie being
ſo filled with armed men: which happily he ſaid not ſo much vpon ignorance of martiall af-
faires, as blinded by a certaine commanding power, that the ſupernall decree giuen by God
himſelfe againſt the old Emperour, might at length take place. And againe, the third part of that
night yet ſcant paſt, diuers other countreymen came running vnto the ſaid gate GYROLIMNA,
and told the watchmen vpon the wals, that a great number of men were met together at the
Romane gate: whereof the Emperor hearing, was therewith much more troubled than before;
in ſo much that ſharply rebuking *Metochita*, he ſaid vnto him, Thou ſeemeſt to beſtrangely me-
tamorphoſed into a man of yron, which art become ſo ſecure, as not to haue any feeling of the H
danger wherewith we are encloſed: Seeſt thou not that the matter requireth not that we ſhould
thus ſit ſtill and take our reſt? For the noiſe of my nephew ſoundeth in mines eares as the ſound
of a great drum, and diſquieteth my minde. I feele a ſea of calamitie broken out againſt mee,
which ouerwhelmeth and drowneth my heart and courage. Neuertheleſſe he, firme in his for-
mer opinion, made no reckoning of thoſe reports: and therefore roſe to goe to bed, to ſhew in-
deed that he accounted nothing of them, but as falſe alarmes. But the Emperour left alone, and
no bodie with him vnto whom he might breake his griefe, laid him downe vpon a pallet, not
putting off his clothes; but as if he had together with them put on extreame deſperation, lay
tumbling to and fro as a man in minde troubled with many and diuers heauie thoughts. In the
meane time he heard a great noiſe at the court gate, and the report of the entring of the young I
Emperour his nephew, with a great clattering of armour; for there were aboue eight hundred
ſouldiers entred with him, and withall they of the citie on euery ſide ſaluted him with moſt ioy-
full acclamations. But the old Emperour hearing the great tumult and outcrie, roſe from his
pallet, exceedingly troubled; and deſtitute of all the helpe of his captaines and ſouldiers, (for
why, his palace was altogether deſolate, except of ſuch as were his ordinarie waiters) betooke
himſelfe vnto his praiers, beſeeching God not to forſake him in ſo great a danger, but in his mer-
cie to defend him from the furie of thoſe wicked men. Who preſently heard him, and ſent him
preſent reliefe: for whileſt he was thus praying in the palace, the young Emperour without, cal-
ling together all his captaines and lieutenants, ſtraightly charged them vpon paine of death,
neither by word nor deed to violate the maieſtie of the old Emperour his grandfather, nor any K
other about him: for this victorie (ſaid he) God hath giuen vs, and not we our ſelues; his will
ordereth all things, whereunto all things obey, the ſtars, the aire, the ſea, the earth, men, flouds,
tempeſts, plagues, earthquakes, ſhoures, dearth, and ſuch like, ſometimes to our bliſſe, and ſome-
time to our correction and deſtruction: wherefore vſing vs as the inſtruments of his chaſtiſe-
ment, he hath giuen vnto vs this preſent victorie, which peraduenture to morrow he will giue
to others to vſe againſt vs, and then as we haue beene vnto them we haue ouercome, ſuch will
they alſo ſhew themſelues vnto vs againe: wherefore, if neither nighneſſe of bloud, neither that
we be all of one countrey, may moue vs, yet in reſpect of our ſelues let vs vſe mercie, that wee
feele not the hand of God vpon vs in like caſe. In the meane time a courtier opened a wicket
vnto the young Emperour, with this meſſage from his grandfather: L

The pitifull ſup-plication of the old Emperour vnto his nephew

Foraſmuch as God this day (my ſonne) hath giuen vnto thee the imperiall ſcepter, taken from mee, I requeſt of thee this one good turne; For many which I haue euen from thy birth beſtowed vpon thee, (for in this my hard eſtate I let paſſe, that I next vnto God haue beene the authour of thy natiuitie and increaſe) giue mee my life, ſpare thy fathers head, and with violent weapon ſpill not that bloud from which thou thy ſelfe haſt taken the fountaine of life. Man truly beholdeth heauen and earth, and hea-uen and earth behold mens actions: wherefore make not the heauens and the earth beholders of ſo wic-ked an outrage as neuer man euer committed. If brothers bloud long agoe cried out vnto the Lord againſt Cain, *how much louder ſhall the fathers bloud crie vnto the Lord, and declare ſo great a wic-kedneſſe vnto the earth, the ſunne, and ſtars, and make it abhorred of all the Princes of the world? Re-* M *gard my miſerable old age, which of it ſelfe promiſeth vnto me ſhortly death, but vnto thee a reſt after long cares. Reuerence the hands which haue oftentimes moſt louingly embraced thee, yet crying in thy ſwathing clouts: Reuerence thoſe lips which haue oftentimes moſt louingly kiſſed thee, and called thee my other ſoule: Haue pitie vpon a bruiſed reed, caſt downe by fortune, and doe not thou againe tread vp-on it. And ſeeing thou art thy ſelfe a man, be not too proud of thy preſent fortune, but conſider the vn-*

certaintie

A *certaintie and varietie of worldly things, taking by me example: ſee in mee the end of long life, and maruell, how one night hauing receiued mee an Emperour of many yeeres, leaueth me now ſubiect vnto another mans power for euer.*

The young Emperour *Andronicus* moued with this ſpeech, and taking great care of his grandfathers ſafetie; ſcarce abſtaining from teares, entred the palace, and comming to his grandfather, humbly ſaluted him, embraced him, and with cheerefull words comforted him. Straight way after, he went vnto the monaſterie MANGANIVM, where (as is aforeſaid) the Patriarch *Eſaius* was by the old Emperours commandement, kept in ſafe keeping, whom the
B young Emperor now tooke from thence,& carrying him away in one of the Emperors richeſt chariots, reſtored him againe vnto his Patriarchall dignitie; wherein he afterwards ſpared not to reuenge himſelfe to the full,& moſt cruelly to perſecute the old Emperors friends. That day from morning vnto night,a man might haue ſeene all the riches & wealth of ſuch noble men as had taken part with the old Emperor, carried away,and their goodly houſes ouerthrowne and made the ſcorne of the baſe common people: but eſpecially the houſe and wealth of *Theodorus Metochita*, a man but the day before in greateſt fauour with his Prince, & of all others next vnto the Emperor himſelfe,of greateſt authoritie & credit,whoſe whole wealth(not that only which was found in his houſe,but that alſo which he had laid vp in truſt with his friends,diſcouered by notes found in his ſtudie) became moſt part a prey vnto the common people,and the reſt con-
C fiſcated vnto the Prince. Thus he which earſt of all others next vnto the Emperor,was accounted moſt fortunate,was now vpon the ſudden, with his wife & children, brought vnto extreme beggerie; and after many yeeres felicitie,in one day caſt into the bottome of deſpaire and miſerie, where a man might haue heard many complaining,ſay, All that wealth and treaſure to haue beene the bloud and teares of the poore oppreſſed ſubiects, brought vnto him by them whom he had made rulers and gouernours of the prouinces and cities of the empire; to the intent that when they had dealt cruelly with the people, as with their ſlaues, he might ſtop them for comming to complaine of their griefes vnto the Emperor: and that the eie of the Reuenger had not alwaies ſlept,but was now at length awaked, & had of him yet ſcarcely taken ſufficient puniſhment: which euery where to heare,increaſed not a little his griefe. As for himſelfe,he was
D confined vnto DIDYMOTICHVM, as the place of his exile and baniſhment; where after he had a certaine time poorely liued, he was ſent for backe againe to CONSTANTINOPLE: where hauing nothing left to relieue himſelfe (for his houſe at the comming of the young Emperor, was in the furie of the people pluckt downe to the ground, & the very pauement thereof digged vp) he went vnto the monaſterie of CHORA there by, which long before built by the Emperor *Iuſtinian* and become ruinous, he in the time of his proſperitie had with great charge repaired, and therein now (hauing made ſhipwracke of all that he had) quietly ſhrouded himſelfe, to the great comfort both of his bodie and afflicted minde,where he not long after died.

But to returne againe vnto the old Emperour, as yet in doubt what ſhould become of him- *Niphon inceuſeth the young emperor againſt his grandfather*
E ſelfe: it fortuned that the ſame day that the citie was taken,the young Emperour at night returning to the palace, by the way met with *Niphon* ſometime Patriarch, who asked him how they meant to deale with his grandfather. Whereunto the young Emperor anſwering,that he would deale with him honourably and Emperour like; he was by him therefore blamed and reproued. For this *Niphon* being of a craftie ſubtile wit and malicious nature, beſides that he ſecretly hated all them vpon whom fortune greatly either fauned or frowned, bare an eſpeciall grudge againſt the old Emperour: firſt, for that at ſuch time as he was right worthily for his ſhamefull couetouſneſſe and extortion, by the reſt of the Biſhops and clergie thruſt out of his Patriarchſhip, he was not by him as he looked for defended: and ſecondly,for that dreaming again after the Patriarchall dignitie,he thought it one good ſtep thereunto to haue him (as his greateſt enemie) taken out of the way. Wherefore he ſaid now vnto the young Emperour: *If thou deſire to*
F *raigne without feare, giue not thine honour vnto another; but taking all the ornaments of the empire from the old man, caſt haire cloth vpon him, and ſo clap him faſt in priſon, or thruſt him out into exile.* This miſchieuous counſell, this wicked man gaue againſt the poore old diſtreſſed Emperour, not remembring how vnworthily he had by him beene before preferred vnto the higheſt degrees both of honour and wealth, if he could there haue kept himſelfe: vnto which vngratious counſell, diuers others of the nobilitie alſo conſenting, ſo wrought the matter amongſt them,

that although they could not quite draw the young Emperours minde from his grandfather, G
yet they much changed the ſame: ſo that he could no longer endure to take him for his companion in the empire. Whereupon after many meetings and conſultations had, it was decreed, That the old man ſhould ſtill retaine the name and ornaments of an Emperour, as before, but not to meddle in any matters, nor to come abroad, but to ſit ſtill quietly in his chamber, with the yeerely allowance of ten thouſand duckats, for the maintenance of himſelfe and ſuch as attended vpon him; to be raiſed of the fiſhing before the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE: a poore penſion for the maintenance of ſo great an Emperour. Of which ſo ſhamefull a decree, *Eſaias* the Patriarch was alſo a furtherer: who ſeeing an Emperour that had raigned ſo long, caſt downe, and ſhut vp as it were in priſon, was ſo far from grieuing thereat, that fooliſhly reioy- H
cing, he in token thereof abſurdly wreſted this text of Scripture, ſaying in his merriment, *Lætabitur iuſtus, cum viderit vltionem*; The iuſt ſhall reioyce, when he ſeeth the reuenge: calling himſelfe iuſt, and the Emperours caſting downe, reuenge. But the old Emperour thus ſhut vp in his chamber (differing nothing but in name, from a priſon) not long after, the ſtate of his bodie
The old Emperour becommeth blinde. ouerthrowne with griefe and corrupt humors diſtilling out of his head, firſt loſt one of his eyes, and ſhortly after the other alſo: and ſo oppreſſed with eternall darkneſſe, mingled (as ſaith the Scripture) his drinke with teares, and eat the bread of ſorrow, being oftentimes (to his great griefe) moſt bitterly mocked and derided, not of them onely which were by his enemies ſet to guard him, but of his owne ſeruants alſo. Not long after, the young Emperour falling ſicke, in
ſuch ſort as that it was thought he would not recouer, *Catacuzenus* and the reſt of his greateſt I
fauourites and followers carefull of their owne eſtate, and yet doubtfull of the old blinde Emperour, deuiſed many things againſt him, but all tending to one purpoſe for the ſhortening of his daies. But in the end all other deuices ſet apart, they put him to the choice, either to put on the habit of a religious, and ſo for euer to bid the world farewell, or elſe to take what ſhould otherwiſe enſue; the beſt whereof was either death, exile, or perpetuall impriſonment in the loathſome caſtle of forgetfulneſſe: For the putting whereof in execution, *Synadenus* (of all others to him moſt hatefull) was appointed. At which hard choice, the old Emperour as with a world of woes ſuddenly oppreſſed, lay a great while vpon his bed as a man ſpeechleſſe: for what could he doe elſe, except he had an heart of ſteele or adamant? being then compaſſed about with many barbarous and mercileſſe ſouldiers, and his domeſticall ſeruants kept from K
him, and no man left, that would vouchſafe to direct him (being blinde) whither to goe or
Andronicus the old emperour againſt his will made a Monke, and called Anthonie. where to ſtand. But to make the matter ſhort, would he, would he not, they made choice for him themſelues, polling and ſhauing him, and caſting a Monks habit vpon him, changed his name, after the manner of the religious, and called him by the name of *Anthonie* the Monke. Glad was *Eſaias* the falſe Patriarch of this the hard eſtate of the old Emperour: for that now that he was profeſſed a religious, there was left no hope for him to recouer againe the empire, either cauſe for himſelfe to feare. Yet he thought it good to be aduiſed, in what ſort remembrance ſhould be made of him in the church praiers, if any were at all from thenceforth to be made. Whereof to be by the old Emperour himſelfe reſolued, he (ſeeming to be very ſorie for that which was done, but purpoſing indeed therein to deride him) ſent vnto him two Biſhops, L
to know what his pleaſure was to haue done therein. Vnto which their demand, he oppreſſed with heauineſſe, and fetching a great ſigh euen from the bottome of his heart, anſwered:

The notable anſwere of the old emperour to the catching queſtion of the proud Patriarch.

As in poore Lazarus *appeared a double miracle, That being dead, he riſe; and being bound, walked: euen ſo was it to be done in me, though in quite contrary manner: for loe, being aliue, I am dead, as ouerwhelmed with the waues of calamitie and woe; and being looſe, am bound, not my hands and feet onely, but my tongue alſo; wherewith vnable to doe any thing elſe, I might yet at leaſt bewaile my woes and wrongs vnto the aire, and ſuch as by chance ſhould heare me, and vnto this moſt wofull darkneſſe wherein I muſt for euer ſit. But ſhame hath cloſed my mouth, my brethren abhorre me, and my mothers ſons account me for a ſtranger vnto them, and the very light of mine eyes is not with me, my friends and neigh-* M
bours ſtood vp againſt me, and all that ſaw me laughed me to ſcorne: my feet had almoſt ſlipped, and my footſteps were almoſt ouerthrowne: for I fretted againſt the wicked when I ſaw the peace of the vngodly. The Emperors long agoe gaue great priuiledges vnto the Church, euen thoſe which it at this day enioyeth: and the Church gaue to them againe power to chuſe whom they would to be Patriarchs. Now concerning him that ſent you, I not onely nominated him vnto the Patriarchſhip, but I my ſelfe made choice of him,

and

A *and preferred him before many other right worthie and moſt famous men, being himſelfe a man growne old in a poore priuate life, neuer before preferred, or for any other thing famous: I will not ſay how often I haue holpen him and done him good. But now when he ſhould againe haue relieued me in my calamitie; he ioyneth hands with mine enemies againſt me, more cruell vpon me than any other bloudie handed executioner; not aſhamed to aske me how I would be remembred in the Church: faigning himſelfe to be ignorant and ſorie for mine eſtate, much like vnto the Aegyptian crocodile of* NILE, *which hauing killed ſome liuing beaſt, lieth vpon the dead bodie and waſheth the head thereof with her warme teares, which ſhe afterwards deuoureth together with the bodie. But what to anſwere him vnto this his catching queſtion, I know not: for if I ſhall ſay, As an Emperour; I ſhall forthwith be ſlaine by them which for that*
B *purpoſe haue me in hold: but if I ſay, As* Anthonie *the Monke; it ſhall be taken as the franke confeſſion of mine eſtate, by them which haue craftily contriued mine ouerthrow; as if I had not by compulſion, but euen of mine owne free will put on this monaſticall habit, which God knoweth was neuer in my thought.*

Hauing thus ſaid, he ſent them away without any other anſwere vnto their demand: but ſitting downe vpon his bed ſide, ſaid, *My ſoule returne againe into thy reſt, for the Lord hath dealt well with thee:* neither ſpoke any one word more in declaration of his griefe, his tongue there ſtaied by his ſingular wiſdome, or elſe with the greatneſſe of his griefe; & ſo againſt his will, in ſilence paſſing ouer his ſorrow, his minde with the greatneſſe of his woes ouercome, and as it were aſtoniſhed, before the humors gathered into the braine could be diſſolued into teares: for as the Sun
C ſending forth his moderate beames, draweth vnto it many exhalations and vapours, but caſting the ſame forth more plentifully, doth with his immoderate heat conſume the ſame before they can be drawne vp, ſo the moderate affections of the mind may haue their griefes by words and teares expreſſed; but ſuch as exceed all meaſure, and with their vehemencie as it were ouerthrow the minde, commonly make men to ſtand ſtill mute and ſilent, or if they ſpeake at all, to ſpeake idly, & nothing to the purpoſe, as men beſide themſelues, or in an extaſie. But for the reſolution of the queſtion by the Biſhops demanded, the deuout Patriarch decreed, That in the Church-praiers he ſhould be remembred before the Emperor his nephew, by the name of The moſt religious & zealous Monke *Anthonie:* which was done (God wot) for no good zeale to the poore
D blinde man, but the better to colour the matter with the common people, as if he wearie of the world, had voluntarily taken vpon him that ſilly profeſſion. Neuertheleſſe, within foure daies after, *Synadenus* vnderſtanding them in euery place to whiſper among themſelues, & ſecretly to mutter againſt the hard dealing with the old Emperor, who had long raigned ouer them, and ſo by right was againe to doe, if his nephew ſhould chance to die; and that the eccleſiaſticall lawes enforced no man againſt his will to enter into religious orders: he therewith enraged, ſent vnto him certain of his owne confederacie, to exact of him an oath in writing, That he ſhould neuer more after that time ſeeke after the empire, or yet accept of the ſame if it were offred him, neither to ſubſtitute any other: which if he ſhould refuſe to doe, to put him in feare of his life. And the more to terrifie him, ſet a guard of inſolent barbarous ſouldiers ouer him; for feare of whom, he
E yeelded to doe whatſoeuer they required: and ſo his oath being ſolemnly conceiued into writing (another man leading his hand, becauſe he was blinde) he ſigned the ſame with a red croſſe aboue, and a blacke croſſe beneath, after the manner of the religious. Hauing thus liued in darknes, diſgraced, ſhut vp in his chamber as a man forſaken of the world, with an vnſure guard euer to attend him, by the ſpace of two yeeres, it fortuned that the twelft of Februarie towards night, *The death of the old Emperour.* (a day in the Greeke Church dedicated to the vigill of *S. Anthonie*, whoſe name they had giuen him) certaine of his friends that were ſuffered to haue acceſſe vnto him, going as their manner was, once in three or foure daies to viſit him (amongſt whom was his daughter, ſometime the Prince of SERVIA his wife, but as then a widow, and *Nicephorus Gregoras*, author of this Hiſtorie) he entred with them, as with his friends, into a familiar diſcourſe of many matters, wherin he ſo deceiued the time, that it was paſt midnight before they perceiued how the time paſſed. But
F the cocks crowing, he brake off the talke, and bidding them farewell, gaue them leaue to depart; pleaſantly ſaying, That to morrow they would make an end of their diſcourſe; who all thereupon tooke their leaue & departed, no ſigne of any ſickneſſe as then appearing vpon him. And after they were gone, called for meat & did eat: the meat he eat, was certaine ſhell-fiſh, for it was with them a faſting day, and he had not eaten any thing: after which, when as he ſhould haue drunke a cup of wine, for the comforting of his old ſtomacke & diſgeſting of that ſo hard meat,

he

he drunke cold water, as his manner was, when he felt any inward heat, to drinke the same im- G
moderatly: which hurtfull manner of diet he then vsing also, began by and by to feele a great paine in his stomacke, and so presently after became very sicke, falling withal into a great loosenesse of bodie, so that in the space of one quarter of an houre he was glad oftentimes to arise, & to go vnto an homely house of office in an inner chamber thereby, to discharge natures burdens where after many euacuations, sitting downe vpon an homely bed fast by, and not able to recouer his owne bed, hauing as then none to helpe him; there before it was day, died, after hee had raigned 43 yeares. His death was by many strange signes and accidents as it were foretold: first, a great eclipse of the Sunne appeared, just so many daies before his death as hee had liued yeares: and after that, another eclipse of the Moone; and with it an earthquake, the day before H
he died at night, being S. *Anthonie* his euen, whose name his enemies had thrust vpon him: at which time also, the sea with a great tempest rising aboue the wonted bounds, made diuers breaches in the wals of the citie towards the sea, as if it had beene some violent enemie, and ouerflowed also diuers houses in the citie. Manie crosses and pinacles were then also from the tops of churches and other high buildings ouerthrowne; and with them a great pillar, sometime one of the ornaments of the citie, standing before the church, commonly called *The Church of the fortie martyrs:* which being verie high, and below burnt and worne away with time, had put manie in feare as they passed by it, least it should haue fallen vpon them; insomuch that the Emperor vpon a time passing that way, was requested by some of the nobilitie there present, to ride farther off from it, for feare of falling vpon him: who smiling at their vaine feare, by chance answered, *O* I
would to God I might liue so long as this piller will stand: which now falling out according to his speech, gaue many of them that had heard him so say, occasion to maruell. His dead bodie was honorablie buried in the monasterie of LIBE, which his mother *Theodora* the empresse had not long before new built, and his obsequies there (after the maner of that time) yeerely solemnlie kept by the space of nine daies.

The Turkish kingdome founded by Othoman in Asia, at such time as the Greeke Emperors were at variance betwixt themselues in Europe.

Thus at length hauing passed through the troubled state of the Greeke empire, during the long raigne of the old emperour *Andronicus*, the considerat Reader may easily see the causes of the declining, and ruine also of this famous empire; and how that the Greeke Emperours, troubled with their tempestuous affaires neerer home in EVROPE, yea in the verie imperiall citie it selfe, and in their owne pallaces, were not at leasure to looke ouer the strait into ASIA, but K
glad to leaue their territories there vnto the weake defence of themselues. At which time, and euen in the middest of the aforesaid trouble, *Othoman*, on the one side, with great industrie laid the foundation of his Empire in PHRIGIA and BYTHINIA, now the greatest terrour of the world: and then did those things which we now haue of him written. The other princes of the Turkes also, the successours of Sultan *Aladin*, at the same time on the other side, alongst the riuer MEANDER encroching on as fast: vntill that at last amongst them they had thrust the Greeke Emperours quite out of ASIA, and in fine became themselues, together with the Greeke Empire, a prey vnto the *Othoman* kings, as in the processe of this historie shall more at large appeare.

Prusa yeelded vnto the Turkes.

But againe to returne vnto *Othoman* himselfe, who all this while (that old *Andronicus* the L
Greeke Emperour was thus troubled) had with his sonne *Orchanes* sought by all meanes on euerie side to inlarge his kingdome: the garrisons by him left in the two late built castles neere vnto the great citie of PRVSA, vnder the charge of the two valiant captains *Acthemur* & *Balabanzuck* (as is before declared) hauing now continued there certaine yeares, had by shutting vp the passages, and spoiling of the countrie, brought the citie into such distresse and penurie, that many of the citizens and other the poore Christians fled into the citie, there died of famine. The rest now out of all hope to bee relieued by the Greeke Emperour, not then able to relieue himselfe, came to composition with *Orchanes* (for *Othoman* was then sicke of his old disease the gout) couenanting with him, that they might in safetie with life and libertie depart, and so much of their goods as they themselues could carie: and so yeelded to him the citie. Which conditi- M
ons (as most write) were on the Turks behalfe well and faithfullie performed: yet some there be that report them to haue beene in most part by *Orchanes* broken. Thus was PRVSA, one of the greatest cities of that part of ASIA, yeelded vnto the Turks, in the yeere of our Lord 1327: and was afterwards by *Orchanes* made the royall seat of the *Othoman* kings.

Aboue this time, or verie shortly after, *Othoman* in the eight and twentith yeare of his raigne died,

A died, at the age of 69, in the yeere of our Lord 1328, and lieth buried at PRVSA, where his tombe is yet at this day to be ſeene, in a certaine chapell of an old monaſterie in the caſtle, ſtanding in the middeſt of the citie; couered with a mantle of greene chamlet, and a little Tulipant or Turkiſh hat (ſuch as he vſed to weare) lying ouer his head, far differing from thoſe which the Turks now weare, eſpecially the better ſort of them, ſo great that they can therewith ſcarcely come in at a doore. There is alſo another monument of him to be ſeene at SVGVTA, faſt by the ſepulchre of his father *Ertogrull*, there made by his ſonnes in remembrance of him; whereof ſome haue reported him to haue beene there buried. Howbeit the Turks themſelues generally ſuppoſe the true monument wherein he is interred to be at PRVSA, as is aforeſaid. He was wiſe,
B politicke, valiant, and fortunate, but full of diſſimulation, and ambitious aboue meaſure; not raſh in his attempts, and yet very reſolute; what he tooke in hand, he commonly brought to good effect: to all men he was bountifull and liberall, but eſpecially to his men of warre, and the poore, whom he would many times feed and cloath with his owne hands. Of a poore lordſhip he left a great kingdome, hauing ſubdued a great part of the leſſer ASIA: and is worthily accounted the firſt founder of the Turks great kingdome and empire. Of him, the Turkiſh Kings and Emperours euer ſince haue beene called the *Othoman* Kings and Emperours, as lineally of him deſcended: and the Turks themſelues *Oſmanidæ*, as the people or ſubiects of *Othoman*, or *Oſman*, for ſo he is of the Turks commonly called.

The death of Othoman.

Othoman buried at Pruſa.

NOte, that in the reckoning vp of certaine of the great Chriſtian Princes and Prelates of the ſame time, at the end of euery the Turkiſh Kings and Emperors liues, the firſt and greateſt number following their names, ſheweth the yeere of our Lord, wherein ſuch an Emperour, King, or Biſhop began to raigne, or ſit: and the number following, how long he raigned or ſate. As for example: *Andronicus* the elder began to raigne in the Eaſt in the yeere of grace 1282, and raigned 43 yeeres: and ſo of the reſt. Wherein wee ſeeke not the exact computation vnto a moneth or day (as not much materiall to our Hiſtorie, or any part of our purpoſe) but onely the reaſonable view of the great Princes of the forepaſſed times, as they liued in ages together.

Chriſtian Princes of the ſame time with Othoman.

- *Emperours*
  - *Of the Eaſt*
    - *Andronicus Palæologus the elder.* 1282. 43.
    - *Andronicus Palæologus the younger.* 1325. 29.
  - *Of the Weſt*
    - *Albertus of Auſtria.* 1298. 10.
    - *Henrie of Lucelburg.* 1308. 6.
    - *Lewes the fourth, of Bauaria.* 1314. 32.
- *Kings*
  - *Of England*
    - *Edward the firſt.* 1272. 34.
    - *Edward the ſecond.* 1307. 20.
    - *Edward the third.* 1327. 50.
  - *Of France*
    - *Philip the faire.* 1286. 28.
    - *Lewes.* 1314. 2.
    - *Philip the long.* 1316. 5.
    - *Charles the faire.* 1321. 7.
  - *Of Scotland*
    - *Iohn Baliol.* 1292.
    - *Robert Bruce.* 1306. 24.
- *Biſhops of Rome*
  - *Boniface the VIII.* 1295. 8.
  - *Benedict the XI.* 1304. 2.
  - *Clement the V.* 1306. 11.
  - *Iohn the XXII.* 1317. 18.

Suſcipit Orchanes defuncti ſceptra parentis:
Maior vt ingenio, ſic magis arte valens.
Bithynos, Phrygiamque domat, Pruſamque ſuperbam:
Et populos late (Marte fauente) premit.
Sic latus tantis Aſiam turbaſſe ruinis;
Tranſit in Europam, Callipolimque capit.
Rident interea Graci ſua damna: ſed ecce,
Dum ſua contemnunt, in ſua fata ruunt.

RICH. KNOLLEVS.

His father dead, *Orchanes* takes his ſcepter vp in hand:
As one of deeper wit and reach, his foes for to withſtand.
The Phrygians and Bythinians he by force of armes brought low:
Proud PRVSA, with faire NICOMEDE, and many cities moe.
And glad in ASIA to haue made ſuch hauocke and ſuch ſpoile;
His forces into EVROPE ſends, the Grecians there to foile.
Who meane while laughing at their loſſe, did make thereof a game:
Not thinking what a world of woe was to enſue the ſame.

THE LIFE OF ORCHANES, OR VRCHAN, SECOND KING OF THE TVRKES.

AFTER the death of *Othoman*, his two ſonnes, *Orchanes* (whom the Turks call *Vrchan*) and *Aladin* his brother, hauing with great ſolemnitie enterred their father at PRVSA, immediatly ſummoned a Parlament, whereunto both the brethren came accompanied with the chiefe of their nobilitie. This Parlament was called eſpecially, for the eſtabliſhing of the ſucceſſion in this new kingdome, and for the diuiſion of *Othomans* treaſure and goods, betwixt them two, his ſonnes. But vpon view taken, there was no money, plate, or iewels found in the Kings coffers, for that he had in his life time moſt bountifully beſtowed it vpon his men of warre : ſo that all the wealth he left vnto them his ſonnes, was, the honourable remembrance of his life for them to imitate, large dominions for their poſſeſſions, ſtore of readie horſes and armour fit for ſeruice, with great heards of beaſts and cattell for houſhold prouiſion. Whereupon *Orchanes* demanded of his brother *Aladin*, what order he thought was beſt to be taken with thoſe things by their father ſo left. To whom *Aladin* anſwered, That it was moſt requiſite firſt to eſtabliſh a King in their fathers kingdome ; which like a good ſhepheard might gouerne and defend his ſubiects, rule and maintaine his men of warre, prouiding all things meet for defence of his kingdome : And that vnto him of right belonged all theſe other things by their father left, as the patrimonie of his ſucceſſour, for the common good and maintenance of his eſtate. As for mine owne part (ſaid *Aladin*) I claime no intereſt therein, you being my elder brother, and ſo vnto me in ſtead of a father: by whom alſo you haue beene theſe two yeeres, as it were alreadie put in poſſeſſion of the kingdome, all things being committed to your gouernment, during the time of his late ſickneſſe. This modeſtie of *Aladin* was greatly commended of all the ancient counſellors ; by meanes whereof, the kingdome in all peaceable manner deſcended to *Orchanes*. In regard of which courteſie, *Orchanes* would gladly haue made *Aladin* his brother Preſident of his counſell: which honour he would in no wiſe accept, but requeſted rather that he would giue him the lordſhip of FODORE in *Tekences* countrey; which *Orchanes* frankly granted. In which lordſhip of FODORE, *Aladin* moſt part liued a priuate and quiet life, and afterwards built two Mahometan churches, and an abbey at PRVSA, there yet at this day to be ſeene.

The wealth that Othoman left vnto his two ſons, Orchanes and Aladin.

Some Latine Hiſtoriographers otherwiſe report this beginning of *Orchanes* his raigne ; as that *Othoman* ſhould haue three ſonnes, and that *Orchanes* the youngeſt obtained the kingdome by murthering of his other brethren. A practiſe of late much vſed amongſt the Turkiſh Princes, but not before the time of *Baiazet* the firſt of that name, who firſt of the Turkiſh Monarchs embrued his hands with his brothers bloud : where before, they vſed all brotherly loue one to another, as the moſt probable hiſtories collected out of the Turks owne Chronicles affirme.

When that barbarous manner of murthering their brethren firſt began among the Turkiſh Sultans.

The

The citie of Nice with diuers other castles recouered from the Turks after the death of Othoman.

The Christian Princes and captaines, presently vpon the death of *Othoman* recouered the ci- G
tie of NICE, with diuers other castles and forts, out of the hands of the Turks: as it commonly chanceth, that dominions lately won with great perill, are soone againe lost, the conquerour dying before there be a firme gouernment established. Amongst other forts by the Christians repossessed, the castle of TZVPRICHISER, situate vpon the passages of the riuer SANGARIVS, most grieued the Turks, for thereby their passage into that part of BYTHINIA was much impeached. Wherfore *Orchanes* desirous to recouer this castle, disguised himselfe with a few other of his best souldiers, in the apparell of Christian marchants, & came to the castle, crauing leaue to passe as marchants: the warders of the castle verily supposing them by their attire to be marchants, opened the gates, and let them into the castle: who presently drew their swords, slew the H
warders, and so by force possessed the castle, to the great benefit of the Turks, and the hurt of the poore Christians yet left in the countrey of BYTHINIA. For they now hauing opened a way ouer the riuer SANGARIVS, and as it were broken downe the strongest defence of that side of the Greeke empire, at their pleasure forraged the countrey in such sort, as that the great citie of NICE (for want of victuals to relieue so great a multitude as for feare of the Turks was fled out of the countrey into it) was brought to great extremitie and want. For the reliefe whereof, and for the repulsing againe of the Turks, *Andronicus* the young Emperour, who then all commanded, with such an armie as he was then able to raise, passed himselfe in person ouer the strait of CONSTANTINOPLE into ASIA: the greatest strength of his armie consisting in two thousand choice horsemen; the rest as well horse as foot, being for the most part artificers taken vp in the I
citie, men altogether vnacquainted with armes (who in token of their cowardise, and that they were more mindfull of flight than of fight, carried ouer with them almost as many long boats, and such other small vessels, as they were men, to be readie to receiue them at such time as they should flie) or else abiect rascals, taken vp here & there, men of whom no great thing was to be expected, and of all others most vnfit for so great a Prince (as was the Emperour) to commit the defence of his person & honour vnto. But *Orchanes* hearing of his comming, sent certaine of his most expert captaines, to forelay the strait passages of the countrey whereby the Emperor was to passe; following also himselfe after with his armie, of purpose to encounter the Emperour. Who in three daies march after his landing in ASIA, being come to PHILOCRENE, a little towne in BYTHINIA, and vnderstanding that *Orchanes* hauing before taken the straits, lay not K
far off encamped with his armie; he there at PHILOCRENE pitched his tents, and staied that night also. But the next morning, the Sunne as yet scarcely risen, he seeing diuers companies of the Turks comming downe from the mountains fast by, put his armie into order of battell, and so set forward to meet them. Where to begin the fight, the Turks archers freely bestowed their piercing shot amongst the Christians, still keeping themselues aloofe off, so to doe the more harme. Which the Emperor mistaking, and supposing that their keeping off to haue proceeded of feare, encouraged therewith, commanded certaine loose companies disorderly to march forward, & to skirmish with them: which his more expert captaines not liking, would haue otherwise perswaded him, as to haue kept his strength together against the danger of the battell. Neuertheless, such was his youthfull heat, as that he could by no meanes be otherwise intreated, L
but that forward needs they must. But all the forenoone spent in this light & tumultuarie kinde of skirmishing, and the Sunne at the highest now shining very hot, *Orchanes* from the top of the mountaines perceiuing the Christians well wearied with the heat of the day and long skirmishing, came downe from the hils with a world of men following him; who with a most hideous crie charged the Christians on euery side, some a far off with their arrowes, & some hand to hand with their swords and other weapons: whose assault the Christians at the first most valiantly receiued, and a great while right worthily defended themselues, hauing wounded and slaine a number of their enemies. Which hard fight was on both sides couragiously maintained, vntill the approching of the night, with great slaughter on both sides: at which time, the Christians wearie of the long fight, and oppressed with the multitude of their enemies, disorderly retiring M
toward their trenches, and hardly pursued by the Turks, receiued there a great losse, as well of their horsemen, as of their foot: but by the comming on of the night, the battell was at length ended with vncertaine victorie. Amongst others there hurt, the Emperor himselfe was wounded in the foot with an arrow. That night happened a wofull mishap, and a manifest token of God his wrath: for *Orchanes* hauing to his cost made proofe of the strength and valour of the Christians,

The Emperour wounded.

A ſtians,and doubting they would the next day come on farther into the country, left three hundred horſemen, as ſcouts, to attend the enemies remouing: and himſelfe with his armie retired beforehand to take the aduantage of ſuch places as the Chriſtians were to paſſe by. But the Emperour in the euening leauing his campe, and going to PHILOGRENE, a little towne faſt by, the better to haue his wound dreſſed; the reſt of the armie vnderſtanding of his departure, and ſuppoſing him to haue fled for feare (as if *Orchanes* with a great armie would that night haue ſlaine them all) fled themſelues alſo out of the campe, euery mothers ſonne, ſome to their long boats and other little veſſels they had for that purpoſe brought ouer the ſtrait; ſome haſting towards the towne gates, were by the multitude of others running headlong after them, ouerborne, and
B troden to death; otherſome hanging one at anothers taile, like a chaine, got ſome part of them vp to the top of the rampiers of the towne; otherſome drawne backe by them that hung vpon them, falling downe together by heapes, and trod vpon by others, there periſhed; ſome (as is reported) died there for very feare, no man either chaſing or hurting them; ſo weake is mans courage when God withdraweth from him his ſtrength. But in the morning the Sunne ariſing, the three hundred Turks, left for ſcouts, perceiuing the flight of the Chriſtians, entred the forſaken campe, where they found horſes, armour, and emptie tents, yea the Emperours owne furniture and his horſes readie ſadled: of all which, two hundred of theſe Turks tooke the ſpoile at their pleaſure; and the other hundred purſuing the diſperſed Chriſtians, like heartleſſe men, wandring here and there, ſlew a great number of them. The Emperour himſelfe ſeeing his ar-
C mie (thus as it were by the hand of God) ouerthrowne and diſperſed, tooke ſhipping alſo, and ſo returned to CONSTANTINOPLE. After whoſe departure, the Turks ſeizing vpon many ſea townes alongſt the coaſt of BYTHINIA, and there ſeating themſelues, laid heauie tributes vpon the other countrey townes and villages; for the benefit whereof, they ſpared to deſtroy them, together with the inhabitants, which they might at their pleaſure full eaſily haue done.

Now lay the great citie of NICE in the ſuds, the enemie commanding all the countrey about it, liuing as ſicke men doe by hope, and holding out onely vpon hope of a thouſand horſemen which the Emperour (notwithſtanding his late diſcomfiture) had promiſed forthwith to ſend, there to lie in garriſon for the repreſſing of the Turks. Of which aid ſo promiſed, *Orchanes* vnderſtanding, furniſhed eight hundred of his owne horſemen, after the manner of the Chriſtians:
D and fetching a great compaſſe about, came at length into the high way that leadeth from CONSTANTINOPLE to NICE, and ſo trouped directly towards the citie, as if they had come from CONSTANTINOPLE. At the ſame time he ſent three hundred of his other horſemen, in the habit of Turks, to forrage and ſpoile the countrey, as much as they could within the view of the citie (now for want of victuals brought into great extremitie) which whileſt they were a doing, the other eight hundred horſemen in the attire of Chriſtians, following vpon them, as if it had beene by chance, charged them, and in the ſight of the citizens put them to flight: which done, theſe counterfeit horſemen returned directly againe towards NICE. The citizens which with great pleaſure had in the meane time from the wals ſeene the moſt part of the skirmiſh, and how they had put the Turks to flight, ſuppoſing them to be the Conſtantinopolitan horſmen whom they
E daily expected, with great ioy opened the gates of the citie to receiue them as their friends. But they being entred the gates, preſently ſet vpon the Chriſtians, fearing no ſuch matter: and being ſeconded with the other three hundred, which in diſſembling manner had fled before, and were now ſpeedily returned, bringing alſo with them other companies of Turks, before laid in ſecret ambuſh not farre off, they won the great and famous citie of NICE, which they haue euer ſince vntill this day poſſeſſed: the ſpoile wherof was giuen vnto the ſouldiers for a prey, and the citizens all led away into miſerable captiuitie and thraldome. Whileſt *Orchanes* was thus buſied, his other captains did with great courage and ſucceſſe enlarge his dominions on all ſides, daily encroching vpon their weake neighbors the Chriſtians. *Cunger-Alpes*, one of his warlike captaines, ſubdued the countrey of MVDVRN, or MODRIN, in PHRYGIA; and BOLLI in PAPHLAGONIA:
F appointing one *Abdurachman*, a man of great valour, to gouerne the countrey. And at the ſame time another of his old captaines called *Acteccozza*, brought CANDARA in PAPHLAGONIA, and ERMENIE, a country neere vnto the mountaine HORMINIVS, into the Turkiſh ſubiection: placing garriſons in all the caſtles & forts which he had won, of whom ſome part of thoſe countries was after his name called *Cozza Ilini*, that is to ſay, The old mans countrey. So that *Orchanes* his kingdome grew daily greater & greater, as well by the induſtrie of his chieftaines, as of himſelfe.

The citie of Nice ſurpriſed by the Turks.

About this time, it fortuned the captaines ſonne of SCAMANDRIA (a towne not farre from the ruines of the ancient citie of TROY, and about a dayes iourney from the renowmed caſtle of ABYDVS) to depart out of this world: vnto whoſe funerals, being kept in the countrey, whileſt his wofull father the captaine with his friends out of SCAMANDRIA reſorted, the old craftie Turke *Acceccozza* lying alwayes in wait, as a fox for his prey, ſuddenly ſet vpon thoſe heauie Chriſtians, whereof he ſlew the moſt part, and tooke the reſt priſoners. Amongſt whom he alſo tooke the captaine of SCAMANDRIA, with his caſtle and countrey: whom he afterwards led priſoner vnto the caſtle of ABYDVS, which is one of the moſt famous caſtles ſituate vpon the ſea coaſt of ASIA, ouer againſt SESTVS in EVROPE, where the ſea of HELLESPONTVS by the narrow ſtrait falleth into the ſea ÆGEVM: two caſtles much renowmed, by reaſon of their nigh ſituation, and yet placed in diuers parts of the world; eternized alſo by the euer liuing wits of Poets, for the aduenturous paſſage of *Leander* ouer that fret of the ſea, to his loue *Hero*: which caſtles are now called DARDANELLY. *Acceccozza* hauing brought the captiue captaine of SCAMANDRIA (lately a man of great account in that countrey) ſo neere as he could vnto the caſtle of ABYDVS, offred to ſet him at libertie if they would ſurrender their caſtle, otherwiſe they ſhould ſee him cruelly ſlaine before their faces. Theſe Turkiſh threats nothing moued them of ABYDVS, more than to ſay, That they might if they would cut off his head, ſeeth him, and eat him, but the caſtle they intended not to deliuer. The ſame captaine was afterward by the commandement of *Orchanes* profered to the Emperor of CONSTANTINOPLE, to be redeemed, which he refuſed. Yet at the laſt he was ranſomed by the gouernour of NICOMEDIA, and againe ſet at libertie. *Acceccozza* of long time held the caſtle of SCAMANDRIA: yet ſo continually moleſted with the garriſon of ABYDVS, and men of warre ſent from CONSTANTINOPLE, that he with his followers were glad for the moſt part to liue on horſebacke, to be alwayes in more readineſſe againſt the attempt of their enemies. The captaine of the caſtle of ABYDVS had at that time a faire young gentlewoman to his daughter, who (as ſhe ſaid) chanced to dreame (what ſhe had happily waking, for the moſt part wiſhed) That being fallen into a deepe mirie ditch, out of which ſhe could by no meanes helpe her ſelfe, a luſtie young gallant comming by, did not only helpe her out, but alſo in friendly manner, made her cleane, and afterwards apparelled her in rich and coſtly attire. The danger of this dreame much troubled the tender gentlewoman, but the image of the yong gentleman was ſo well phantazied in her brain, that waking, ſhe thought ſhe ſtill ſaw him, and ſleeping longed ſore for what ſhe ſaw not. Thus whileſt this yong gentlewoman with great deuotion entertained this imaginarie man; the old gray headed Turke *Acceccozza* came, & with a ſtrong companie beſieged her fathers caſtle of ABYDVS. During which ſiege, this gentlewoman oftentimes went vp into the high turret of the caſtle, from whence ſhe might at pleaſure ſee the marſhall deeds on both ſides, and take full view of all the enemies campe. But ſee the chance, as *Abdurachman* with great courage and no leſſe brauerie, approched neere to the ſiege of the caſtle, ſhe thought (vpon the firſt ſight of him) that he was the very man whom ſhe had before dreamed of, and whoſe Idea was in her heart ſo deeply imprinted: wherefore ſhe fully reſolued to performe what ſhe had without witneſſe with her ſelfe determined. And waiting another time, when *Abdurachman* approched the caſtle, ſhe caſt down to his feet a letter written in Greeke, and made faſt vnto a ſtone: which letter he taking vp, deliuered the ſame to the Generall *Acceccozza*. Wherein after ſhe had diſcouered her paſſionate affection, ſhe promiſed to deliuer the caſtle into *Abdurachmans* power, if the Turks would raiſe their ſiege, and *Abdurachman* himſelfe with ſome few would ſecretly returne to the caſtle in the dead time of the night, and then follow her direction. *Acceccozza* like an old fox, which is ſeldome taken in the trap, gaue ſmall credit to theſe louing lines, for feare of treaſon: yet for ſo much as you are the man (ſaid he to *Abdurachman*) whom ſhe vpon ſpeciall liking hath made choice of for the purpoſe, will you aduenture your perſon? And he, armed with a manly courage, a ſurer defence than any armour of proofe, incited alſo with hope of honour, riches, and beautie, all worthie priſes for marſhall minds; ſaid he would vndertake the atchieuement of that exploit, if it were his pleaſure ſo. Whereupon *Acceccozza*, becauſe nothing ſhould be ſuſpected by his ſudden departure, gaue a ſharpe aſſault to the caſtle, as if he would haue taken it by fine force, yet in the end retired, and preſently brake vp his ſiege, as deſpairing of the winning thereof. The defendants of the caſtle thinking themſelues deliuered from a great danger, greatly reioyced: and as in like caſe it oftentimes falleth out, in their great iolitie ſurcharged themſelues that night with exceſſe

Abydus beſieged by the Turks.

A exceſſe both of meat and drinke. But *Abdurachman* at the time in the letter appointed, put himſelfe vpon the way, with certaine ſelect ſouldiers, and about midnight came to the appointed place of the caſtle, where the young gentlewoman was attending his comming: and he by her meanes was conueyed into the caſtle, and ſo by her directed to the porters lodge: where he ſlew the porter, being faſt aſleepe, and opening the gates, let in his followers: which went directly to the captaines lodging, and there tooke him priſoner, being before their comming ouertaken with wine, and faſt aſleepe. Thus was the caſtle of ABYDVS ſurpriſed by the Turks, from whence they had a faire proſpect out of ASIA into EVROPE. The captaine with his faire daughter and the greateſt part of the rich ſpoile of the caſtle was deliuered to *Abdurachman*, to
B be preſented to *Orchanes* at his court, then lying at NEAPOLIS. Who wonderfull glad of ſo good newes, gaue the faire gentlewoman with the greateſt part of the prey in reward to *Abdurachman*. The poſteritie of this man (as they ſay) yet remaine among the Turks. Amongſt others of the warlike captaines, there was alſo one *Cararachman*, whoſe name was ſo dreadfull to them of CONSTANTINOPLE, that when their children cried, they would terrifie them to make them hold their peace, by ſaying, *Cararachman* comes. Not long after, the two valiant aforenamed worthie captaines *Cunger-Alpes* and *Acecozza* died: after whoſe death, *Orchanes* made his ſons, *Solyman* and *Amurath*, lords and gouernours of thoſe countries and prouinces. And intending (by the perſwaſion of *Abdurachman*) to beſiege NICOMEDIA, he leuied a great armie, wherewith he tooke diuers ſmall caſtles and forts as he marched towards the citie. NICOME-
C DIA was at that time gouerned by an honourable ladie, kinſwoman vnto *Andronicus* the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE: but ſhe ſeeing her citie beſieged by the Turks, and doubting her owne forces not to be able to hold out the ſiege, by a truſtie meſſenger offred to yeeld the citie vnto *Orchanes*, vpon condition, That ſhe with ſo many of the citizens as would, might in ſafetie depart with their liues, libertie, and goods: which being granted, ſhe with ſo many as would follow her, departed out of the citie by night, taking ſhipping for CONSTANTINOPLE.

Nicomedia yeelded vnto Orchanes.

Orchanes hauing taken NICOMEDIA, made his ſonne *Solyman* gouernour of the ſame. The Churches of the Chriſtians he conuerted into Turkiſh Meſchitas or Temples. The greateſt Church (being of wonderfull beautie) he conuerted into a colledge or ſchoole, for the learned profeſſors & ſtudents of *Mahomets* law, which is yet called in NICOMEDIA, *Orchanes* his ſchoole
D or colledge. And becauſe the countrey neere vnto NICOMEDIA, lying open vpon the ſea, was euer in danger to be ſpoiled by the gallies of CONSTANTINOPLE; he placed in thoſe countries diuers of his moſt experienced ſouldiers to defend the ſame, appointing to euery of them poſſeſſions and penſions, according to their degrees and merits. After this, *Orchanes* by the counſell of his brother *Aladin*, commanded all his men of warre to weare white caps, thereby to be knowne from others, which commonly wore red. Such manner of caps the Ianizaries vſe at this day. The Turks alſo in *Orchanes* raigne, and long time after, vſed not to cut or ſhaue their beards, but did weare them long: ſo that if the King would diſgrace any man, he would in his diſpleaſure command his beard to be cut or ſhauen. The manner of cutting and ſhauing their beards, which they now vſe, they learned of the Italians: of whom they haue alſo borrowed ma-
E ny other faſhions, not onely differing, but quite contrary to their ancient manners & cuſtomes. *Orchanes* about this time remoued his court to NICE, where he lay long time after. There he built a ſumptuous church, appointing a Preacher to preach vnto the people euery friday: he erected in NICE alſo two faire abbeyes, in the one of which, he with his own hands ſerued the ſtrangers & poore the firſt dinner. He was the firſt that builded abbeyes or monaſteries among the Turks, whoſe example moſt of his ſucceſſours haue imitated, and is amongſt them vſed vnto this day.

Orchanes remoueth his court to Nice.

The gouernment of NICOMEDIA, *Orchanes* committed to his eldeſt ſonne *Solyman* (as is before ſaid) a Prince of great towardlineſſe, giuing him in great charge, to haue a vigilant eye vnto the townes of TARAXA, GOVINVCA, and MVDVRNE, which were nigh vnto NICOMEDIA, yet in poſſeſſion of the Chriſtians: all which townes, with the countries adioyning, *Solyman* in ſhort
F time got without force, by compoſition. This *Solyman* was of a princely diſpoſition, ſo tempering iuſtice with clemencie in his gouernment, that many Chriſtians (allured with his vertues) became of his religion, & gladly put themſelues vnder his ſubiection: the politicke lawes of the country he neither abrogated nor changed, but maintained as they had been of ancient time accuſtomed, whereby he greatly won the hearts of the people. *Amurath* his younger ſonne, *Orchanes* made lord and gouernour of PRVSA, after he had remoued his court to NICE. And the

castle of CHARA-CHIZAR, with the seignorie thereto belonging, he gaue to his cousin *Artemure*, the sonne of his vncle *Iundus*. G

Orchanes inuadeth the country of Carasina.

There was at this time in *Orchanes* court, a noble young gentleman called *Turson-beg*, the son of *Dharasis*, King of CHARASIA; by whose persuasion *Orchanes* in person himselfe with a strong armie, made an expedition into that countrey: for that his fathers subiects after the death of the King his father, denied their obedience to his elder brother, wishing rather to haue *Turson* for their soueraigne. In whose behalfe *Orchanes* taking that iourney, surprised by the way many castles and townes to his owne vse. *Orchanes* was no sooner entred the countrey of CHARASIA, but *Tursons* elder brother fled to PERGAMVM, whither the Turks shortly pursued him: where *Turson* desirous to speake with his brother, vnwarily approching the citie, was wounded H with an arrow shot from the wals, and there slaine. With whose death *Orchanes* was so greatly offended, that he threatned to destroy the whole countrey with fire and sword, if they did not by a day prefixed generally submit themselues to his mercie. The people terrified with this pro-

The countrey of Carasina yeelded vnto Orchanes.

clamation of so great a Prince alreadie in armes, yeelded themselues vnto his subiection. The Kings sonne also that was fled into PERGAMVM, vpon reasonable conditions yeelded himselfe vnto *Orchanes*, who sent him to PRVSA, where after he had there lined two yeeres, he died of the plague: after whose death, *Orchanes* made his sonne *Solyman* Prince of CARASINA. Neither is this taking in of the countrey of CARASINA to be accounted a small conquest; one of the greatest houses of the Turks the successours of the Iconian Sultan *Aladin*, now thereby taking end, and their dominions, which were not small (as containing almost all LYDIA, with some I good parts of MISIA, TROAS, and the lesser PHRYGIA) now vnited vnto the *Othoman* kingdome. *Orchanes* vpon his returne, for the good successe of this iourney, built a church and monasterie at PRVSA, placing therein religious men, with all diligence sought for out of all his kingdome: of which religious, the Turks write many fables, better worth the smiling at than the serious reporting. Hitherto the kingdome of *Othoman* and *Orchanes* his sonne, was contained within the bounds of the lesser ASIA, which the Turks call ANATOLIA.

Now it resteth to be shewed, vpon what occasion *Orchanes*, or rather his sonne *Solyman Bassa*, as it were fatally, with a small power first passed ouer HELLESPONTVS into EVROPE; where they and their successors haue by little and little so enlarged their dominions, that they haue now long agoe quite ouerthrown the Grecian empire, with many other great kingdomes, K and are at this present a terrour to all Christian Princes bordering vpon them: to the perpetuall infamie of the Greekes, who for want of courage, and busied with ciuill discord, neuer sought in time to impeach their greatnesse.

Orchanes hauing now so augmented his kingdome, that he might from many parts therof out of ASIA, take view of the pleasant borders of EVROPE, from whence he was excluded only by the narrow sea of HELLESPONTVS; and continually incited with the vnsatiable and restlesse desire of soueraigntie, began to deuise how he might possibly passe that strait sea, and set foot into EVROPE, another part of the world. Which his conceit one day he imparted to his sonne *Solyman*: who presently answered his father, That if it would please him to giue him leaue, he would not doubt to passe the strait of HELLESPONTVS, and in time to plant the Mahometane L religion in those countries of EVROPE, possessed by the Christians. Which answer of *Solymans*, much pleased his father, who gaue him leaue to depart into his countrey, and in that matter to proceed further, as he thought best, & as occasion should best serue. *Solyman* taking leaue of his father, tooke his iourney into CARASINA, where riding vp & downe the country, as it had beene for his pleasure only, he made his way to the place where it is thought the famous citie of TROY sometime stood; where yet (as the Turks and some others say) are to be seene the wonderfull ruines of that vnfortunate citie by the sea side. In this place *Solyman* stood still a great while as it were in a study, forecasting (as it seemed) some great matter, without speking one word to any of his followers. When one of his chieftaines called *Ezes-beg*, to put him out of his deep thoughts, boldly said vnto him: My Lord and great Soueraigne, what strange thing is this, that you are so M deeply drowned in these your melancholie thoughts? vndoubtedly it is some great matter that you are studying vpon. Truth it is, said *Solyman*, for I was thinking how it were possible to passe ouer this sea of HELLESPONTVS into the borders of EVROPE, and to take view of that countrey, and so to returne vndiscouered. If this be the matter, said *Ezes-beg* (ioyning vnto him one *Fazil-beg*, a man of no lesse valour than himselfe) we two will by the power of God performe

vnto

A vnto you this enterpriſe. Then was *Solyman* deſirous to know of them, about what place they would paſſe ouer: which they well knowing the ſea coaſt, ſhewed him not far off. Wherfore *Solyman* giuing them leaue, they departed: and ſhortly after making a little boat, or rather as ſome ſuppoſe a raffe, paſſed ouer HELLESPONTVS by night, and arriued in EVROPE ſide, neere vnto a caſtle of the Turkes, called ZEMBENIC or ZEMBENIC, but of the Greekes *Coiridocaſtron*, that is to ſay, The hogs caſtle, not farre from SESTVS: where going aſhore, they tooke priſoner a Greeke in a vineyard neere vnto the caſtle, whom they finding to be a good ſenſible fellow, without delay put him into their boat or raffe, and returning backe againe, preſented him to *Solyman*. This Chriſtian captiue *Solyman* entertained courteouſly, giuing him great gifts and rich
B apparrell, to diſcouer vnto him the eſtate of his countrey: and in fine, learned of him a meanes to take the caſtle ZEMBENIC, before the Chriſtians ſhould thereof be aware. For atchieuement whereof, certaine boats were ſpeedily made readie by *Solymans* commandement, and he with eightie choſen ſouldiors eaſily paſſed ouer in them by night, with their Chriſtian guide the Greeke: for in that place, the ſtrait betwixt ASIA and EVROPE is not paſt an Italian mile ouer. This guide brought *Solyman* directly to the aforeſaid caſtle, where was a great dunghill, ſo high, that from the top thereof *Solyman* with his ſouldiors eaſily got into the caſtle, which they woon without any great reſiſtance; for it was then harueſt time, and moſt part of the people were in the vineyards, or treading out of their corne all night, as the vſe of thoſe coũtries is. *Solyman* thus poſſeſſed of the caſtle of ZEMBENIC, vſed no extremitie againſt the inhabitants thereof, ſeeking
C rather by courteſie to gaine their good wils, than by extremitie to force them to his: yet ſuch gentlemen as he tooke, with ſome others alſo of the better ſort, hee ſent by ſhipping into ASIA, and by the ſame ſhips returned ſouldiors as faſt as he could into EVROPE: ſo that he had in one day two hundred ſouldiors more brought ouer vnto him. And manning ſuch ſmall veſſels as he had left about the caſtle, ſent *Ezes-beg* alongſt the coaſt on EVROPE ſide, to burne ſuch ſhipping or veſſels as he could find, leaſt the Chriſtians ſhould by them hinder his paſſage vpon the ſtrait of HELLESPONTVS. So in a few daies *Solyman* had tranſported into EVROPE two thouſand good ſouldiers of the Turks, whom he ſo gouerned, that they did not in any violent ſort injurie the vulgar Chriſtians, by reaſon whereof the common people began to like reaſonable well of the Turks, and to conuerſe with them without feare. This was the firſt comming ouer of the
D Turks into EVROPE, with purpoſe there to conquer and inhabit, vnder the fortune of the *Othoman* kings. For albeit that ſome of that nation had at ſundrie times before come ouer, as men ſeeking after ſpoile, or otherwiſe ſent for, yea ſometimes by the Greeke Emperours themſelues; yet neuer ſtayed they long, but hauing done that they came for, or els loſt themſelues, returned backe againe into ASIA: vntill that now conducted by *Solyman*, and poſſeſſed of the little caſtle of ZEMBENIC (as is aforeſaid) they there tooke ſo faſt footing, as that they and their poſteritie after them, were neuer thence to be ſince that time remoued: but ſtil more and more encroching vpon the Chriſtians, haue vnto their Aſian kingdome joyned a great part of EVROPE alſo, to the terrour of the reſt that yet remaineth, as in the proceſſe of this Hiſtorie ſhall (if God will) at large appeare.

E About two miles from ZEMBENIC in CHERSONESVS was another caſtle called MAITO, or more truely MADITVS, which *Solyman* alſo tooke: ſo that now he had gotten two caſtles in EVROPE, both which he ſtrongly manned, After which time, the Turkes in great numbers came out of ASIA into EVROPE ouer that narrow ſtrait of HELLESPONTVS, to dwell in CHERSONESVS: and *Solyman* inſtead of them, to make roome for his Turkes, ſent Chriſtians out of EVROPE to be placed amongſt the Turkes in ASIA. The report of this comming ouer of the Turks into CHERSONESVS, and of the taking of the caſtle of ZEMBENIC carried in poſt to CONSTANTINOPLE, was ſufficient to haue ſtirred vp any prouident or carefull men, preſently to haue taken vp armes for the recouerie of the loſt caſtle, and the driuing out againe of the barbarous enemies out of EVROPE, before they had gathered any greater
F ſtrength, or ſetled themſelues in thoſe places: but ſuch was the careleſſe negligence and great ſecuritie of the proud Greekes, that in ſtead thereof they to extenuate the greatneſſe of the loſſe, commonly ſayd, That there was but an hogſtie loſt; alluding vnto the name of the caſtle; and vainely (as ſayth a graue Father of their own) jeaſting at that was not to be jeaſted at, and laughing at that was not to bee laughed, but lamented for, as in few yeares it prooued, their fooliſh laughter being not without good cauſe conuerted into moſt bitter teares.

The caſtle of Maditus taken by the Turks.

Callipolis taken by the Turks.

Solyman his ſtrength ſo ſtill increaſing by the daily comming ouer of the Turks, he proceeded G
farther to ſpoile the countrey of CHERSONESVS, almoſt as farre as CALLIPOLIS, diſtant from the caſtle ZEMBENIC about two and twentie miles: after which pleaſant citie the proud Turke began now to long. Which the gouernour thereof perceiuing by the Turks continuall encroaching vpon him, raiſed what power he was able to make, and ſo went out againſt them; all the reſt of the Greekes in the meane time lying ſtill as if they had beene aſleepe, or that the matter had not concerned them: but meeting the Turks, he was by them (after a great conflict) ouerthrowne, and for ſauegard of his life glad to flie into his citie: after whom the Turks following, ſpoiled the countrey round about, and in their returne by plaine force tooke the citie, together with the caſtle alſo: which hapned in the yeere of our Lord 1358. Where the mad- H
neſſe of the Greekes was againe more than before to be wondred at; for the newes of the loſſe of CALLIPOLIS being brought to CONSTANTINOPLE, the people there made ſmall account thereof, although it was indeed a right great loſſe, and much concerned the ſtate: but to extenuate the matter, when they had any talke thereof, in ieſting wiſe commonly ſaid, That the Turks had but taken from them a pottell of wine. But by taking of ſuch hogſtyes and pottels of wine (as they termed it) the Turks in a few yeeres after had gone ſo farre in THRACIA, that *Amurath* (this ſame *Solyman* his nephew which now tooke from the Greekes the citie of CALLIPOLIS) euen in the heart (as it were) of the Greeke empire, placed his royall ſeat at HADRIANOPLE: and immediately after him *Baiazet* his ſonne (hauing ſubdued all the countrey, euen to the wals of CONSTANTINOPLE) for certaine yeeres laid hard ſiege vnto I
the imperiall citie it ſelfe; and had no doubt then carried it, had not the great expedition of the mightie Tartar Prince *Tamerlaine* (vnto *Baiazet* fatall) in the meane time hapned: whereby (God ſo appointing it) the proſperous ſucceedings of the Turks were for a ſpace well ſtaied, that they ſhould not before the time by him prefined, deuoure the reliques of the Greeke empire. And it were to be wiſhed that the Chriſtians of our time alſo (by their example warned) would at length awake out of their dead ſleepe: who of late haue loſt vnto the ſame enemie, not the caſtle of ZEMBENIC, or the citie of CALLIPOLIS, but whole kingdomes, as HVNGARIE, and CYPRVS: and are ſtill faire in the way; I ſay no more for griefe, and foreboding of euill fortune. But againe to our purpoſe: *Solyman* hauing made this proſperous entrance into EVROPE, and there got ſtrong footing, by ſpeedie meſſengers certified his father what he K
had done, and that it was expedient for him with all ſpeed to ſend vnto him a great ſupplie of men of warre, as well for the ſure defence and keeping of the caſtles and forts by him alreadie gotten, as for the further inuaſion of the countrey. This meſſage was wonderfull welcome vnto *Orchanes*, and whereas many families of the Sarazins, at that preſent were come into the countrey of CARASINA, to poſſeſſe the dwellings and places of them, which in hope to better their eſtate were before gone ouer into EVROPE; all theſe Sarazins he commanded to paſſe ouer into EVROPE likewiſe: which they did accordingly, ſeating themſelues for a time in the countrey neere to CALLIPOLIS. In the meane time, *Solyman* omitted no oportunitie to enter further into the countrey, winning ſmall forts and holds, and ſtill peopling the ſame with his Turks: And on the other ſide, they of CARASINA paſſed ouer into EVROPE, pla- L
cing themſelues as it were in a new world. For which cauſe, and for the great deſire they had to extend the Turkiſh dominion and religion, they refuſed no paines of warre: ſo that all things at that time proſpered with the Turks, and went backward with the Chriſtians.

In the time of theſe wars, not farre from CALLIPOLIS, was a little caſtle called CONGERE, the captaine whereof was by a Greeke name called *Calo Ioannes*, a valiant and painfull man: this captaine continually moleſted and troubled the Turks which lay on that ſide of CALLIPOLIS, vnder the leading of *Ezes-beg*, many of whom he ſlew and tooke priſoners, as he could finde them at any aduantage. *Solyman* much angred herewith, by craftie and ſecret eſpials learned a certaine time when he was gone out of his caſtle to doe ſome exploit vpon the Turks: whereupon he preſently ſo beſet the caſtle with ſouldiers, that he could by no meanes M
returne thither, but he muſt firſt fall into their hands; and for more aſſurance placed others alſo in by-waies, leſt he ſhould by any way eſcape. The captaine ignorant of all this, proſecuted his enterpriſe, and hauing taken a Turke priſoner, thinking to returne to his caſtle, was haſtily purſued by *Fazill-Beg*: for which cauſe, making the more haſte, he ſuddenly fell into the danger of the Turks laid in ambuſh: where his men were all ſlaine, and he himſelfe taken and brought before

A before his owne caſtle, and had there his head preſently ſtrucke off: whereupon the caſtle was forthwith by them that were therein (hauing now loſt their captaine) ſurrendred, and *Chazi Ili Beg*, a valiant captaine of the Turks, placed in the ſame: who from thence neuer ceaſed to trouble the countrey, euen to the wals of DIDYMOTICHVM, as did *Solyman* alſo out of CALLIPOLIS.

Thus in the ſpace of one yeere the Turks got ſtrong footing in EVROPE, poſſeſſing diuers caſtles and townes, with the countrey about them, which *Solyman* gaue in reward vnto his captaines and ſouldiers, as appeareth by the graues and tombes of *Ezes-beg* and *Faſill-beg*, the two which firſt came ouer into EVROPE, which are there yet well knowne.

B About this time it fortuned, that as this martiall Prince *Solyman* was for his diſport hawking in the fields of BOLAYRE, on EVROPE ſide, galloping in to his faulcon, was with his horſe ouerthrowne in a ditch, of which fall he being ſore bruſed, ſhortly after died. The newes of his death being brought to *Orchanes* his father, gaue vnto him (then being ſicke) iuſt occaſion of great ſorrow: ſo that within two moneths after he died alſo, being foureſcore yeeres old, when he had thereof raigned 31 yeeres; and died about the yeere of our Lord 1359. Some hiſtories report otherwiſe, both of his death, and of the time wherein he liued: as that he ſhould be ſlaine in a battell againſt the Tartars, or as others write, with an arrow at the ſiege of PRVSA, in the yeere of our Lord 1349. But *Ioannes Leunclauius* in his hiſtorie collected out of the Turks owne chronicles, whom we follow as moſt probable, reporteth it as before.

The death of Solyman Baſſa, Orchanes his eldeſt ſonne.

The death of Orchanes.

C This *Orchanes* was wiſe, courteous, and bountifull, more ingenious than his father in deuiſing warlike engines. He built diuers princely Churches, Abbies, Colledges, and Cels, and was in his ſuperſtitious religion very zealous: inſomuch, that he appointed penſions to all ſuch as could in the Church ſay the booke of *Mahomets* law by heart: and appointed competent maintenance for all Iudges of his courts, becauſe they ſhould not take any thing in reward of his ſubiects, for the peruerting of iuſtice. He greatly inlarged his kingdome in ASIA, and not content to be incloſed with the ſeas of EVXINVM and HELLESPONTVS, ſet faſt footing in EVROPE; which ſome attribute to his ſonne *Amurath*. He was vnto the Chriſtians alwaies a moſt mortall enemie, and ſo died.

FINIS.

Chriſtian Princes of the ſame time with Orchanes.

Emperours	*Of the Eaſt*	*Andronicus Palæologus the younger.*	1325. 29.
		Iohn Palæologus.	1354. 30.
	Of the Weſt	*Lewes of Bauaria.*	1314. 32.
		Charles the fourth, ſonne to Iohn, King of Bohemia.	1346. 10.
Kings	*Of England*	*Edward the third.*	1327. 50.
	Of France	*Philip Valois.*	1328. 22.
		Iohn Valois.	1350. 14.
	Of Scotland	*Robert Bruce.*	1306. 24.
		Dauid Bruce.	1341.
Biſhops of Rome		*Iohn the XXII.*	1317. 18.
		Benedict the XII.	1335. 7.
		Clement the VI.	1342. 12.
		Innocent the VI.	1354. 10.

Scauus Amurathes, animo dum maxima verſat:
Diſcordes Gracos ſternere Marte parat.
Totus & intentus fines extendere regni:
Europam penetrans, obuia quaque rapit.
Attoniti trepidant, nimia formidine Thraces:
In medio quorum, ſceptra ſuperba locat.
*Hinc Mœſos premit ille feros, * miſerumque Dynaſten*
Coſſoui in campis, obruit atque necat.
Sed non longa fuit ſceleris tam dira voluptas:
A ſeruo cæſus, concidit enſe ferox.

* Lazarum Seruiæ Principem.

RICH. KNOLLEVS.

Whileſt *Amurath* in his deepe thoughts, of greatneſſe plots the ground:
The wrangling Greekes by force of armes he ſeekes how to confound.
And wholly bent for to extend his kingdome, with his power,
Piercing the confines of EVROPE, doth what he meets deuoure.
As men diſmaid, the Thracians quake, to ſee their foule diſgrace:
Amiddeſt whom, the tyrant ſtout his ſcepter proud doth place.
The fierce Bulgarians he did meet, and in the field ſubdue:
And in COSSOVAS fatall plaines, the wofull Deſpot ſlue:
But long is not the wickeds ioy, which they in miſchiefe take:
Stabd by a ſlaue, the wretch his end in that ſame place did make.

Lazarus, Deſpot of Seruia.

R. K.

THE LIFE OF AMVRATH, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, THIRD KING OF THE TVRKS, AND THE GREAT AVGMENTOR OF THEIR KINGDOME.

Amurath the younger ſonne of *Orchanes* ſucceeded his father in the Turkiſh kingdome, his elder brother *Solyman* being dead a little before his father. This *Amurath* with greater zeale than any one of the Turkiſh Kings, aduanced the Mahometane religion, and had therein wonderfull ſucceſſe. In the beginning of his raigne, he gathered a great armie out of all parts of his kingdome, to PRVSA; purpoſing to paſſe ouer HELLESPONTVS, to inuade the Chriſtians in THRACIA. But vnderſtanding, that the other Mahometane Princes in ASIA had combined themſelues againſt him, he was thereby enforced to leaue his former determination for EVROPE, and to turne his forces vpon them. In which wars he mightily preuailed againſt them, and returned with victorie to PRVSA. But hauing ſo ſubdued thoſe confederate Princes, he the next yeere after proſecuted his warres before intended againſt the Chriſtians in EVROPE. For which purpoſe hauing leuied a ſtrong armie in ASIA, he paſſed ouer to CALLIPOLIS, accompanied with his tutor, whom the Turks call *Lala Schahin*: whoſe graue aduice and counſell he moſt followed in all his waightie affaires, being at that time one of his chiefe counſellors. From CALLIPOLIS he marched to the caſtle of BENVTVM, which was by compoſition yeelded vnto him. From thence he went to TZVRVLVS, where the Chriſtians gaue him a ſharpe encounter: but in the end he wan the towne, and carried away the victorie. And ſo proceeding farther, tooke diuers other ſmall caſtles and townes in that part of THRACIA, which of the ancient Romane colonies was then called ROMANIA, and now of the Turks RVMILIA, namely MESINE, BVRGOS, and others; whereof ſome he vtterly raſed, and into the reſt put ſtrong garriſons. At this time alſo, *Chaſi-Ilbeg* and *Eurenoſes*, two of his moſt valiant captaines, tooke certaine forts ſtanding vpon the riuer MERITZA, in ancient time called HEBRVS. Whereby they much troubled the inhabitants of the country thereabouts. Wherewith the captaine of DIDYMOTICHVM offended, gathered his ſouldiers together, intending to haue intercepted the great captaine *Chaſi-Ilbeg*: in which attempt he loſt moſt of his followers, and was himſelfe there taken priſoner. For whoſe ranſome and certaine other conditions, the citizens of DIDYMOTICHVM yeelded the citie vnto the Turks.

Amurath ſucceedeth his father Orchanes in the Turkiſh kingdome.

Didymotichum yeelded vnto the Turks.

Shortly after *Amurath* ſent his tutor *Lala Schahin* to beſiege HADRIANOPLE, now called ANDRINOPLE, but in ancient time ORESTIAS: of whoſe cõming the Chriſtians hearing, encountred him vpon the way, and fought with him a great battell, wherin many were on both ſides loſt: but in the end, the Chriſtians being put to the worſt, retired againe to the citie. Of this victorie *Schahin* ſent newes vnto *Amurath*, with certaine of the heads of the ſlaine Chriſtians: who thereupon ſending *Chaſis* and *Eurenoſes* before, he himſelfe with a great armie followed after to the ſiege of HADRIANOPLE: of whoſe comming, the gouernour of HADRIANOPLE vnderſtanding, fled ſecretly out of the citie by night to ÆNVS. The citizens ſeeing themſelues ſo forſaken of their gouernour, yeelded their citie vnto *Amurath*, in the yeere of our Lord 1362.

Hadrianople yeelded vnto the Turks.

The taking of theſe ſtrong cities in THRACIA, eſpecially of DIDYMOTICHVM and HADRIANOPLE, is (by ſome of the Turks owne hiſtories) otherwiſe reported: which, becauſe it is neither improbable nor diſagreeing from the ſubtill dealings of the Turks, and of themſelues alſo receiued,

receiued, I haue thought good to ſet downe as their owne Hiſtoriographers report the ſame. G

The Turkiſh King *Amurath* had(as they ſay,and as truth was) in the beginning of his raigne concluded a peace with the Chriſtians of THRACIA: during which peace,the gouernour of DIDYMOTICHVM intending to fortifie his citie with new and ſtronger fortifications againſt the aſſaults of the Turks, entertained all the maſons, carpenters, and other workmen he could by any meanes get: which *Amurath* vnderſtanding, ſecretly cauſed two hundred good and luſtie workmen and labourers to come out of ASIA, to offer their ſeruice vnto the gouernour; who gladly entertained them,vſing their helpe in that his great and haſtie worke. Which thing ſome of the wiſer ſort of the citizens diſliking, wiſhed the gouernour to beware of thoſe Aſian workmen, as by them ſuſpected. But he preſuming vpon the peace made with *Amurath*, and conſi- H
dering they were but baſe workmen, and no ſouldiers, had the leſſe care of them: neuertheleſſe (vſing their worke all day) he commanded them to lodge without the wals of the citie euery night. *Amurath* vnderſtanding that theſe workmen were thus by the gouernour entertained, ſent for the valiant captaine *Chaſis-Ilbeg*, and requeſted him with thirtie other good ſouldiers diſguiſed as poore labourers to goe to DIDYMOTICHVM to ſeeke for worke, and in doing thereof to eſpie if any oportunitie might be found for the ſurpriſing of the citie. *Chaſis* with theſe thirtie according to *Amurath* his direction, comming as poore men lacking worke,found entertainment at DIDYMOTICHVM, where they carried ſtones,morter, and ſuch like things, euer ſhewing themſelues very diligent in their worke: *Chaſis* with vigilant eye ſtill awaiting what might beſt ſerue his turne for the ſurpriſing of the citie. When night was come, the Tur- I
kiſh workmen and labourers after their accuſtomed manner, and as they were by the gouernour appointed, went out of the citie into the ſuburbs to their lodgings: from whence *Chaſis* ſecretly departing in the night, came to *Amurath* and ſhewed him how one of the gates of the citie might vpon the ſudden be taken, if it would pleaſe him to place a ſufficient number of Turks in ambuſh neere vnto the citie, to ioyne with him and the other Turkiſh labourers when occaſion ſhould ſerue. Which being reſolued vpon, *Amurath* ſent him backe againe to put this his deuice in execution: ſo *Chaſis* returning to DIDYMOTICHVM, brake the matter to ſo many of the Aſian workmen as he thought conuenient, fully inſtructing them what was to be done. The next day (according to his appointment) the Chriſtians being then at dinner,theſe Turkiſh workmen and labourers fell at words among themſelues, and from words to fained K
blowes: in which counterfeit brawle and tumult, they ſuddenly ran to one of the gates of the citie faſt by (as was before appointed) and there laying hands vpon the warders weapons, as if it had beene to defend themſelues againſt their fellowes, ſuddenly ſet vpon thoſe warders, being in number but few, and then at dinner alſo, and ſo preſently ſlew them: which done, they opened the gate of the citie,and let in the other Turks which lay in wait not farre off: who with great celeritie entring the citie, preſently tooke the ſame, and there put the chiefeſt of the citizens to the ſword, ſparing the reſt of the meaner ſort.

Rhodeſtum ſurpriſed by the Turks.

The citie of RHODESTVM (of the old writers called RHŒDESTVM) was by *Amurath* his commandement, in this time of peace, by ſudden aſſault giuen in the night by the Lord *Eurenoſes*, taken alſo. L

With this foule dealing & breach of league, yet in force,the Chriſtians hardly charged *Amurath*; who turned it ouer to the vnrulineſſe of his captaines and men of warre, whom he threatned with great ſeueritie to puniſh:and to giue the better colour that it was done without his priuitie,he had fained himſelfe ſicke all the while theſe things were in doing.But being requeſted to reſtore theſe cities ſo wrongfully taken from the Chriſtians, he vtterly refuſed ſo to doe, ſaying, That it was againſt the law of his great Prophet *Mahomet*, to deliuer againe vnto the Chriſtians, any towne or citie wherin the Mahometan religion had been once openly taught. Whereupon wars began againe to ariſe on freſh betwixt the Chriſtians and him, wherein ſometime the one preuailed,and ſometime the other: in ſuch ſort,as that thoſe wars at length became vnto them both very tedious. Wherefore *Amurath* made peace againe with the Chriſtians of HADRIANO- M
PLE, SELYBRIA, and CONSTANTINOPLE: yet deſiring nothing more in heart, than to take the citie of HADRIANOPLE: which the better to bring to paſſe, he cauſed *Chaſis-Ilbeg* as a diſcontented captaine to flie to HADRIANOPLE, pretending himſelfe to haue beene hardly vſed by the tyrant his maſter: where hauing in his companie other ſuch diſſembling fugitiues as was himſelfe,he oftentimes iſſued out of the citie and valiantly skirmiſhed with the Turks,which ſo greatly

A greatly pleased the gouernour of HADRIANOPLE, that he therby grew into his great fauour. Many other Turkes also vnder pretence of like discontentment, resorted vnto *Chasis*: wherewith finding himselfe well strengthned, he writ letters secretly vnto *Amurath*, That he would deliuer one of the gates of HADRIANOPLE vnto him at a certaine appointed time, if he would against the same time be readie to send him present succors. All things being agreed vpon, *Chasis* at the appointed time came in the dawning of the day to one of the gates of the citie, accompanied but with ten of his followers, as if he would haue gone forth to hunt, as he had before accustomed. But so soone as the gates were opened, he with the other ten well appointed for the purpose, furiously set vpon the warders, whom they slew; and being aided by the rest of the fugitiue
B Turks (which with all speed by appointment before made, resorted vnto them) they possessed the gate; vntill a great power of the Turks, whom *Amurath* the night before had placed in ambush neere vnto the citie, hauing knowledge what was done, and hearing the alarme, speedily came on, and by that gate entred the citie: where was fought a cruell fight all that day, euen from morning vntill night. But in the end the Turks preuailing, tooke the citie, which they haue euer since possessed vnto this day.

Hadrianople the royall seat of the Turkish kings in Europe.

These great cities of THRACIA thus take, or otherwise as aforesaid (for that I leaue for the Reader to thinke of as he pleaseth) *Amurath* appointed the seat of his royall Court at HADRIANOPLE, as a place of all others most fit for the further inuasion of the Christians, and enlarging of his kingdom in EVROPE: from whence such a world of mischiefs & woe hath since that time
C ouerflowed a great part of Christendome & drowned so many goodly kingdoms in EVROPE, as that both they, and most part of the rest that yet remaine (dayly in dread of like destruction) might iustly accurse and detest the wofull careles nesse & degenerate cowardise of the Greekes, were not they themselues together with the glorie of their church and empire, swallowed vp in the same gulfe of calamitie and woe, and so become of all others most miserable: but what auaile vaine complaints, but to encrease old griefes? wherefore againe to that we haue in hand.

The proud Sultan *Amurath* (hauing to his great content thus seated himselfe at HADRIANOPLE, in the middest of THRACIA) presently sent out his tutor *Lala Schahin* with a greater power to inuade the countrey about PHILIPPOPOLIS with the countrey of ZAGORA, which lyeth towards the great mountain HŒMVS, where the best Turkish Scimitars were made; giuing like
D charge vnto *Eurenoses*, for the subduing of the territorie of IPSALA: who both notably performed what he had commanded, & in short time brought all those countreys vnder his subjection, wherein he shortly after placed diuers sanzacks or gouernours, for the better assurance thereof being so lately gayned.

About this time (by the suggestion of *Cara Rustemes* a doctor of the Mahometan law) *Zinderlu Chelil*, then Cadilesher or chiefe Iustice amongst the Turks, but afterwards better knowne by the name of *Catradin Bassa*, by the commaundement of *Amurath*, tooke order that euerie fifth captiue of the Christians, being aboue fifteen yeeres old, should be taken vp for the king, as by law due vnto him: and if the number were vnder fiue, then to pay vnto the king for euerie head 25 aspers, by way of tribute: appointing officers for collecting both of such captiues and
E tribute mony, of whom the aforesaid *Cara Rustemes* himselfe was chief, as first deuiser of the matter. By which meanes great numbers of Christian youths were brought to the court as the kings captiues, which by the coũsel of the same *Zinderlu Chelil*, were distributed amongst the Turkish husbandmen in ASIA, there to learne the Turkish language, religion, and manners: where after they had been brought vp in all painefull labour and trauaile by the space of two or three yeres, they were called vnto the court, and choice made of the better sort of them to attend vpon the person of the prince, or to serue him in his warres: where they dayly practising all feats of actiuitie, are called by the name of Ianizars (that is to say, new souldiers.) This was the first beginning of the Ianizars vnder this Sultan *Amurath* the first, but had great encrease vnder *Amurath* the second, in so much that *Iouius* with some other Historiographers, attribute the beginning of this
F order vnto him: which neuertheless (as appeareth by the Turks owne histories) had the beginning as is aforesaid: & hath euer since been continued by the Turkish kings & emperors, by the same and some other greater means; so that in processe of time they be grown to that greatnes as that they are oftentimes right dreadful vnto the great Turke himselfe: after whose death, they haue sometimes preferred to the empire such of the emperours sonnes as they best liked, without respect of prerogatiue of age, contrarie to the will of the great Sultan himselfe: & are at this day

the

the greateſt ſtrength of the Turkiſh empire, and not vnlike in time to be the greateſt cauſe of the G
ruine thereof: the finger of the higheſt oftentimes (as we haue before ſaid) turning euen thoſe
helps which were by mans wiſedome prouided for the eſtabliſhing of kingdomes, vnto their
more ſpeedie deſtruction; and eſpecially theſe continuall gariſons of martiall men, no leſſe to
be feared than truſted, as in the courſe of this hiſtorie may appeare.

When *Amurath* had thus a great while continued at HADRIANOPLE, determing now to returne vnto ASIA, he made *Schahin* his tutor *Beg-Lerbeg* or viceroy of ROMANIA; and *Eurenoſes* lord gouernour of the marches; *Zinderlu Chelil* he made Vezir Azemes or lord preſident of his counſell, and changing his name called him *Cairadin Baſſa*, that is to ſay, The *Baſſa* that had well deſerued, his name witneſſing his good deſert. After this he returned into ASIA, H
where he ſpent that winter at PRVSA. Theſe two great men *Cairadin Baſſa* & *Cara Ruſtemes* before named, ſometimes two doctors of the Mahometan law, were (as the Turkiſh hiſtories report) the firſt that corrupted the Turkiſh court with couetouſneſſe and briberie, and are therfore of them euen yet much blamed.

Whilſt *Amurath* thus wintered in ASIA, news was brought vnto him, That the Chriſtians of SERVIA and BVLGARIA had gathered a great armie for the beſieging of HADRIANOPLE: which cauſed him to prepare great forces in ASIA, to aid his captaines in EVROPE. But in returning out of ASIA, he by the way tooke the towne of BOGA; where he put to ſword all the Chriſtians that were therein able to beare armes, leading the reſt into captiuitie, and with the ſpoile rewarded his ſouldiours. This ſtrong towne was not long after againe recouered by the I
Chriſtians, who requited the Turkes with like meaſure, and doubting the keeping thereof, raſed it downe to the ground: yet was it afterwards reedified by the Turks, as it is at this preſent to be ſeene: which was done in the yeare of our Lord 1365.

Boga taken by Amurath, and recouered againe and raſed by the Chriſtians.

Boga new built by the Turks.

In the meane time, the Chriſtian armie of SERVIA and BVLGARIA, in number betwixt fortie and fiftie thouſand, marching towards HADRIANOPLE, and now come very neere the ſame, fell in mutinie among themſelues. Whereof the Turks by their eſpials hauing intelligence, ſuddainely in the night ſet vpon them: who blinded with inward hatred, and no leſſe fearing one another, than their enemies, neglected to joyne their forces againſt them, but were readie to turn their weapons one vpon another; and ſo by their own diſcord, more than by the enemies force, were made a prey vnto the Turks, by whō they were put to flight, & ſlain, with ſo great a ſlaughter, K
that the place wherin they fell, not far frō GERMIA, is thereof at this day called *Zirf Zindugi*, that is to ſay, the place wherin the Seruians were ouerthrown. The newes of this ſo notable a victorie, with the fift part of the ſpoile, & a great number of the heads of the ſlaine Chriſtians, were (after the barbarous manner of the Turks) ſent to *Amurath* into ASIA, being now readie with a great power to haue come ouer to CALLIPOLIS: who joyful therof, & glad to ſee ſuch a preſent, the aſſured witneſſe of the victorie, returned againe to PRVSA. This was done in the yeare 1366. In which yeare alſo *Amurath* with wonderfull triumph circumciſed his two ſonnes, *Baiazet*, & *Iacup*. At which time he alſo built a temple, with a monaſterie, and a colledge, at BILEZGVA: and another faire Church at NEAPOLIS: at PRVSA he alſo built a ſtately pallace in the caſtle, with a great church at the gates thereof: in which citie he alſo founded an abbey and a colledge. L

Germean Ogli, a great Mahometane prince in ASIA (whoſe territorie for the moſt part lay in the greater PHRYGIA, & the countries thereabout, bordering vpon the *Othoman* kingdome) hauing alwaies enuied at the riſing of the *Othoman* kings (as did all the reſt of the Mahometane princes of the *Selzuccian* familie) and fearing that their greatnes might after his death grow dangerous vnto his ſonne *Iacup*, being now himſelfe very aged; thought good for the more ſafetie of his ſtate, to ioyne in alliance with *Amurath*. And for that purpoſe ſent *Iſaach* (a learned doctor of the Mahometane law) embaſſador vnto him, with many rich preſents, and to offer his daughter, the ladie *Hatun*, in marriage vnto his ſonne *Baiazet*: promiſing with her in dowrie diuers great cities and townes, with their territories in PHRYGIA and BITHYNIA, adioyning vpon the *Othoman* kingdome; namely CVTAIE, SIMAV, EGREGIOS, TAVSANLE, and others. Neither M
was this a ſmall dowrie, but well beſeeming ſo great a prince: the citie of CVTAIE being at this day the place whereat the Turkiſh emperours great lieutenant or viceroy in ASIA, is alwaies reſiant, as in the heart of his kingdome in the leſſer ASIA. Of which match ſo offered, *Amurath* liking wel, contracted his ſonne *Baiazet* vnto the ſaid ladie: and for ſolemnization of the mariage, prepared all things with great magnificence, ſending his embaſſadours to moſt of the Mahometane

A tane kings and princes,both farre and neere,to inuite them thereunto: commanding alſo moſt of the nobilitie of his kingdome,to honour the ſame with their preſence. The time of this marriage drawing neere,embaſſadours came to *Amurath* his court,from all the princes before inuited: amongſt whom the embaſſadour from the Ægyptian Sultan had the higheſt place. Theſe embaſſadors brought with them many great and rich gifts,ſuch as wel beſeemed the great princes their maſters, which they with all reuerence preſented vnto *Amurath*. At length amongſt the reſt of his owne nobilitie came the lord *Eurenoſes*,whom he had before left gouernor of the frontiers of his kingdome in EVROPE: who beſides many other rich gifts, not eaſily to be valued,preſented vnto *Amurath* an hundred goodly boyes, with as many beautifull young maiB dens, all Chriſtian captiues, ſutably attired in garments richly embrodered with gold & ſiluer, euerie one of them carrying a cup of gold in the one hand, and a cup of ſiluer in the other; the cups of gold hauing in them diuers precious ſtones of great value,and the cups of ſiluer being filled with gold. The richneſſe of this preſent was ſo great, that all the embaſſadours of the forraine princes much wondered thereat. All which rich gift, *Amurath* moſt bountifully beſtowed vpon the ſtrange embaſſadours: and the preſents which were ſent vnto him from other princes, he liberally gaue to *Eurenoſes*. The learned and religious which came to that mariage,hee ſo boũtifully rewarded alſo,that none came to the ſame poore, but he went away rich. He had before ſent diuers of his nobilitie, with an hundred ladies and gentlemen, and a guard of three thouſand horſemen,to attend the comming of the bride. One the other ſide,the old prince *Germean-Ogli* meeting this honourable companie vpon the way, ſaluted euery man of account,acC cording to his degree: and bringing them to one of his cities,in moſt royal maner feaſted them, beſtowing vpon them many rich and princely gifts: all which things with great ſolemnity performed,he deliuered his daughter the bride to two of the moſt antient ladies, whereof the one had beene *Baiazet* his nurſe; and ſo taking leaue of his daughter,ſent her away, accompanied with his wife *Ienſes*,and other of his courtiers: who conueying her to PRVSA, ſhe was there in moſt royall manner maried to *Baiazet*. The cities and townes promiſed in dowrie, were accordingly deliuered into the poſſeſſion of *Amurath*, who ſhortly after tooke poſſeſſion of the ſame, and furniſhed them with his owne garriſons.

At this marriage *Chuſen Beg*,prince of AMISVM in GALATIA,by his embaſſador ſold his D territorie of AMISVM vnto *Amurath*, with many faire cities and townes: doubting as it was thought,how to be able to keep them,now that *Amurath* was come ſo neere him,whom he ſaw not to let ſlip any occaſion offered vnto him for the enlarging of his kingdome. When *Amurath* had in this ſort ſpent great time in ASIA, he gathered a ſtrong armie to returne into EVROPE: but before his departure,he committed the gouernment of his kingdom in ASIA (which the Turks call ANATOLIA) vnto his ſonne *Baiazet*, ioyning with him *Temurtaſes*, a valiant man of great experience: and hauing ſet all things in order in ASIA, paſſed ouer HELLESPONTVS, to CALLIPOLIS, from whence he marched towards HADRIANOPLE; and becauſe he would take ſome thing in his way,he beſieged MAGALGARA, which hee in ſhort time woon: where *Lala Schahin* and *Eurenoſes* with all their forces came to him: which two captaines he ſent to beE ſiege the citie PHERCE, which was by them after a few dayes ſiege taken. But he himſelfe to bee reuenged vpon *Lazarus* the Deſpot, led his armie into SERVIA: where after he had without reſiſtance forraged the countrey foureteen daies,vnderſtanding by his captaines,that the ſtrong citie of NISSA,being the metropoliticall citie of SERVIA,was as it were the key of that kingdome,he preſently marched thither, and laid ſiege to the ſame, & by the aduice of *Iaxis Beg*,the ſonne of *Temurtaſes*,in ſhort time woon it. Which thing ſo daunted *Lazarus*, Deſpot or lord of SERVIA,that he deſpairing in his owne forces, hauing ſo ſoone loſt one of his ſtrongeſt cities, foorthwith ſent embaſſadours to *Amurath*, to entreat a peace: offering to pay him a yearely tribute of fiftie thouſand pounds, and to aid him with a thouſand men in his wars, whenſoeuer he ſhould require: vpon which conditions *Amurath* graunted him peace, and ſo departed out of F SERVIA. In this expedition he alſo with much ado woon the great citie of APPOLONIA, neere vnto the mount ATHOS, and gaue leaue vnto moſt of the Chriſtians with their wiues and children to depart,and ſuch part of their goods as was not in the taking thereof ſpoiled by the ſouldiors. This done, he returned backe to HADRIANOPLE, leauing *Eurenoſes* vpon the marches, who ſhortly after tooke BERRHEA, with diuers other townes. At which time alſo, *Lala Schahin* woon ZICHNE and SERES, in the confines of MACEDONIA, with many other ſtrong townes

Amurath inuadeth Seruia, Niſſa taken by the Turks.

Appolonia won by the Turks.

vpon the frontiers of THESSALIA and THRACE. In the citie SERRES *Eurenoſes* made his abode, G
as in a chiefe frontier towne: and becauſe the Chriſtians for feare of the Turks were all fled out of the country about SERRES, great numbers of people were ſent for out of ASIA, to inhabit that country by the Chriſtians forſaken in the confines of MACEDONIA. *Amurath* had not long continued at HADRIANOPLE, but that he was aduertiſed out of ASIA, that *Aladin* his ſonne in law, King of CARAMANIA, did with fire and ſword inuade his dominions in ASIA: with which newes he was exceedingly troubled. And for that cauſe ſending for his counſellors and nobilitie to the court, told them, how that *Aladin* forgetting all the bonds of religion, faith, peace, and alliance, with all hoſtilitie inuaded his prouinces in ASIA, whileſt he with the great danger of his perſon, and greater terrour of his enemies, ſought with honour the increaſe of the Maho- H
metane ſincere religion (as he tearmed it) in EVROPE: from which godly wars (ſaid he) I am againſt my will enforced to turn my ſword, in iuſt defence of my ſelfe, againſt men ioyned with vs both in religion & alliance. And hauing thus declared his mind, he appointed *Chairadin Baſſa* his lieutenant generall in EVROPE, and alſo made his ſon *Alis Baſſa*, one of his counſel, although he were by ſome thought too young for ſo great a place. And ſo hauing ſet all things in order according to his mind in EVROPE, tooke paſſage from CALLIPOLIS into ASIA, and ſo to his court at PRVSA, where he ſpent that winter. In which time embaſſadours came vnto him from the Sultan of ÆGYPT, for the renewing of their former amitie and friendſhip, which *Amurath* tooke very thankfully, and ſent them backe againe loden with kind letters & princely rewards.

Amurath and Aladin prepare themſelues for warre.

When the Spring was come in the yeere 1387, he leuied a mightie armie to make warre vp- I
on the Caramanian King, his ſonne in law. Whereof *Aladin* certainly informed, prepared no leſſe power to meet him, aſſociating vnto him all the other leſſe Mahometane Princes of ASIA, which were not vnder *Amurath* his obeiſance, to whom the *Othoman* Kings were now growne terrible; which Princes brought with them great ſupplies to ioyne with *Aladin*.

Aladin thus aided by his friends, thinking himſelfe now ſtrong enough for *Amurath* his father in law, ſent an embaſſador vnto him, certifying him, That he was nothing in power inferiour to him, and therefore did nothing feare him: yet if it pleaſed him to haue peace, that he could for his part be content to hearken vnto the ſame vpon reaſonable conditions: but if he had rather haue warre, he ſhould finde him readie to dare him battell in the field, whenſoeuer he ſhould come. For anſwere of which embaſſage, *Amurath* willed the embaſſadour to tell the periured K
King his maſter, That he had of late contrary to his faith before giuen, in moſt cruell manner inuaded his dominions, whileſt he was buſied in moſt godly wars (as he tearmed it) againſt the miſbeleeuing Chriſtians: from proſecuting whereof, he was by his violence (as he ſaid) withdrawne, contrary to the law of their great Prophet: for which outrages and wrongs, he would ſhortly come and take of him ſharpe reuenge; and that therefore he was to expect nothing at his hands but warre, for which he willed him ſo to prouide, as that at his comming he might not find him wanting to himſelfe. *Aladin* by his embaſſadour hauing receiued this anſwere from *Amurath*, aſſembled all the confederate Princes, his allies, with great perſwaſions and greater promiſes encouraging them to this warre: and they againe kiſſing the ground at his feet, as the manner of that nation is before great Princes, promiſed with ſolemne oathes neuer to forſake L
him, but to doe all things which Princes deſirous of honour and fame, ought by their oath to doe for their Soueraigne, to whom they ought homage and dutie.

The death of Chairadin Baſſa

In this great preparation for wars in ASIA, *Chairadin Baſſa*, generall gouernour in EVROPE died: which *Amurath* vnderſtanding, appointed *Alis Baſſa* his ſonne to goe into EVROPE, there to be gouernour in his fathers ſtead. But he was ſtaied in his iourney by vrgent occaſions, which *Amurath* vnderſtanding, ſent for him backe againe in poſt.

Aladin forecaſting the great dangers like to enſue of this warre, ſent another embaſſadour to *Amurath*, with reaſonable conditions of peace: to whom *Amurath* anſwered, That if *Aladin* had made that offer one moneth before, he would perhaps haue accepted thereof: but for ſo much as he had done him great wrong, and that he had now to his infinite charge drawne him M
into the field ſo farre from home, he would not make any other end, than ſuch as the chance of war ſhould appoint: And whereas he in diſgrace had called me a heardſman or ſhepheard (ſaid he) if he be not ſuch a one himſelfe, as he ſaith me to be, let him meet me in the field, & there trie his valour. Hereunto the embaſſadour replied, ſaying, That the King his maſter made this offer of peace not for any feare, but to ſaue the effuſion of innocent bloud; which conſideration ſet

apart,

A apart, he ſhould finde him not inferiour to himſelfe, either in number of moſt expert ſouldiers, or other warlike prouiſion: and that therefore, if he reiected this offer of peace, he needed not to doubt but to meet with men of courage, which would beare themſelues ſo valiantly in the field againſt his Turks, as that he ſhould haue no great cauſe to reioyce of his comming thither. Which words of the embaſſadour ſo netled *Amurath*, that in great rage he commanded him to depart, and to will his maſter, if he were a man of ſuch courage and valour as he ſaid, to ſhew himſelfe in the field with all his forces, there to make an end of all quarrels; where he doubted not but in ſhort time to chaſtice him according to his due deſerts. So after the embaſſadour was departed, marching forward three daies, *Alis Beg* came vnto him, of whoſe com-
B ming he not a little reioyced: for why, he loued him deerely, and although he was yet of yeeres but yoùng, relied much vpon his counſell.

The embaſſadour returning, recounted vnto *Aladin* all that *Amurath* had ſaid, not omitting his hard ſpeeches and proud threats, and how that he hoped ſhortly to take from him Iconivm and Larenda (the principall cities of Caramania) with many things more, leauing nothing vntold. Which *Aladin* hearing, ſaid vnto the confederate Princes that were with him, Verily *Amurath* threatneth to take from vs the cities of Iconivm and Larenda; but let him take heed that we take not from him his faire citie of Prvsa. Then demanding of the embaſſadour, of what ſtrength *Amurath* might be? it was anſwered by him, that he deemed him to be about ſeuentie thouſand ſtrong. Whereat *Aladin* not a little reioycing, ſaid: Aſſuredly
C when he ſhall ſee our armie, he will not dare to giue vs battell; or if he doe, he ſhall fight vpon great diſaduantage, his men being both fewer in number than we, and ſore wearied with long and painfull trauell.

In the meane time *Amurath* held on his way towards Caramania, daily encouraging his ſouldiers with perſwaſions, and gifts bountifully beſtowed vpon them, filling their heads with promiſes of greater, the warres once happily ended. At length he came to the great plaines in Caramania, called the French plaines, becauſe in former time the Chriſtians (whom the Turks for moſt part call Frankes) in thoſe places encamped their great armies, as they went to the winning of Iervsalem (as in the former part of this Hiſtorie is declared.) Into theſe plaines alſo came *Aladin* with his armie, and was now encamped within one daies march of
D *Amurath*, and ſo reſted that night.

The next morning *Amurath* put his armie in order of battell, appointing the leading of the right wing, to his youngeſt ſonne *Iacup*, with whom he ioyned *Cutluzes Beg*, *Eime Beg Subbaſſa*, *Egridum Subbaſſa*, *Seraze*, and *Cuſtendil*, two Chriſtian Princes; all captaines of great experience. The left wing was led by *Baiazet* his eldeſt ſonne, with *Ferize* and *Hozze*, both valiant captaines: in which wings were alſo placed the Chriſtian ſouldiers ſent by *Lazarus* out of Servia, according to the late conuention of peace: in the maine battell he ſtood himſelfe: the vauntgard was conducted by *Temurtaſes*: and the reareward by the *Subbaſſa* of Oxyllithvs (called alſo *Temurtaſes*) and *Achmetes*. *Aladin* on the other ſide, with no leſſe care and diligence ſet his men likewiſe in order of battell, placing himſelfe in the maine battell as did *Amu-*
E *rath*; and the Princes his Allies, with his other expert captaines, ſome in the right wing and ſome in the left, as he thought moſt conuenient: in ſuch ſort, as that in all mens iudgement he was in force nothing inferiour to his father in law.

The great battell in the plains of Caramania betwixt Amurath & Aladin.

Theſe great enemies thus ranged, with enſignes diſplaid came on couragiouſly, one directly vpon the other: where approching together, the confuſed noiſe of trumpets, drums, fifes, with other inſtruments of warre, the neighing of horſes, and clattering of armour, was ſo great, that whilſt warlike minds thereat reioyced, cowards thought heauen fell. But the ſigne of battell on both ſides giuen, *Samagazes*, one of the confederate Princes, with exceeding courage firſt charged *Temurtaſes* in the vauntgard, and broke his rankes: at which time *Teberruſes*, a Tartar Prince, and *Varſacides*, another of the confederates, deliuered their arrowes alſo vpon the vaunt-
F gard, as if it had beene a ſhower of haile. Which *Baiazet* ſeeing, and how hardly *Temurtaſes* was charged, hauing before obtained leaue of his father, brake in vpon the enemie with ſuch violence, as if it had beene the lightening: whereof he was euer after ſurnamed *Gilderun*, which is to ſay, the lightening. *Ferizes* and *Hozza*, with the other valiant captaines in that wing, following *Baiazet*, with inuincible courage entred the battell; where for a great ſpace was made a moſt dreadfull and doubtfull fight. A man would haue thought two rough ſeas had met together,

ſwaying one againſt the other, doubtfull which way the current would at length fall. In this G
conflict many thouſands were on both ſides ſlaine, ſo that the field lay couered with the dead bodies of worthy men and valiant ſouldiers : yet at length theſe confederate Princes, finding themſelues ouermatched by *Baiazet* and his ſouldiers, reſeruing themſelues to their better fortunes, turned their backs and fled ; when *Aladin* ſeeing a great part of his armie thus ouerthrowne, and himſelfe now readie to be charged with *Amurath* his whole power, deſpairing of victorie, ſped himſelfe in all haſte to ICONIVM, his ſtrong citie. The ſpoile which *Amurath* got in this battell was great, moſt part whereof he gaue in reward to *Temortaſes* and his ſouldiers, which had endured the greateſt furie of that battell. *Amurath* after this victorie with all ſpeed marched to ICONIVM, and there beſieged *Aladin* the Caramanian King, in his ſtrongeſt H
citie, giuing out proclamation in the meane time, That none of his ſouldiers vpon paine of death ſhould vſe any violence to any of the countrey people, or take any thing from them : to the intent it might appeare vnto the world, that he made that warre againſt that Mahometan King, rather to propulſe iniurie and wrong, than for deſire of ſoueraignetie or ſpoile. Which his ſo ſtraight a proclamation, the Chriſtians ſent by *Lazarus*, amongſt others, tranſgreſſed ; and therefore by his commandement ſuffered (many of them) exemplarie puniſhment ; which was the cauſe of the Scruian warre which not long after enſued, fatall both vnto *Amurath* and *Lazarus* the Deſpot, as hereafter ſhall appeare.

Aladin ſieth to Iconium.

Iconium beſieged by Amurath.

Aladin now on euery ſide beſieged in ICONIVM, and without all hope of eſcape, ſent vnto the Queene his wife, *Amuraths* daughter, bewailing vnto her his deſperate eſtate, and requeſting I
her by all the loue that ſo honourable a minded Ladie might beare to her miſerable huſband, to aduenture her ſelfe to goe to her angrie father, and to craue pardon for his great treſpaſſe & offence. The Queen forthwith attiring her ſelfe, as was fitteſt for her huſbands preſent eſtate, came vnto her father : where falling downe at his feet vpon her knees, with words wiſely placed, and teares diſtilling downe her faire cheeks from her fairer eies, as if it had been from two fountains, in moſt ſorrowfull maner, craued her huſbands pardon, imputing vnto the heat of youth whatſoeuer he had done : and would not be comforted or taken vp, vntill ſhe had obtained grace.

Amurath moſt entirely loued this his daughter, and therefore for her ſake not onely granted vnto her, her huſbands life (which in ſhort time was like to haue beene in his power to haue ſpilt) but alſo his kingdome, which he as a victorious conquerour might by law of armes haue K
of right detained. She now aſſured of her fathers promiſe, ſent vnto her huſband *Aladin*, wiſhing him the next day without feare to come out of the citie, and in humble ſort to acknowledge his fault before her father. Who the next morning accordingly came out, and proſtrating himſelfe before *Amurath*, acknowledged his vndutifulneſſe : of whom (for his wiues ſake) he obtained pardon, and reſtitution to his kingdome, with many other great gifts, contrary to his euill deſert. The Latine hiſtories miſtaking the man, report this Caramanian warre, to haue beene fought againſt the King of CARAMANIA, *Amurath* his owne grandfather by the mothers ſide; and that he was by *Amurath* then ſpoiled of a great part of his kingdome : but it agreeth not with the Turkiſh hiſtories, which make *Amurath* to be the ſonne of *Orchanes* and *Lulufer*, the daughter of the gouernour of the caſtle of IARCHISER, as is before declared in the life of *Othoman* ; which *Lulufer* lieth buried by her huſband *Orchanes*, in PRVSA. L

This great victorie gotten by *Amurath* againſt the Caramanian King, and the other confederate Princes, was the true beginning of the greatneſſe of the *Othoman* kingdome in ASIA : wherewith the other Mahometane Princes of the *Selzuccian* familie were ſo diſcouraged, that they were glad to ſubmit themſelues thus firſt vnto *Amurath*, and after that vnto his ſonne *Baiazet* : vntill that *Tamerlane* the great Tartarian Prince, ſome few yeeres after, taking *Baiazet* priſoner in a great battell at mount STELLA, abated the *Othoman* pride, and reſtored the other oppreſſed Mahometane Princes to their old poſſeſſions and kingdomes.

Amurath returning homewards, by the way tooke the citie of DESPOTOPOLIS, and comming to CVTAIE brake vp his armie, and ſo in triumph returned to his court at PRVSA. M

Lazarus, Deſpot of SERVIA (in old time called MYSIA) had ſent a thouſand armed men to *Amurath* in this the late Caramanian warre, according to the conuention of the peace not long before made betwixt them : ſome of which ſouldiers, were with great ſeueritie (to the terrour of others) executed in CARAMANIA, for tranſgreſſing *Amurath* his commandement. This great war being ended, and the armie broken vp at CVTAIE, they with others were licenſed to depart into

A into their owne countrey. Whoſe Generall (whom they call the Vayuod) returning home, reported vnto *Lazarus* the Deſpot, the ſucceſſe of that warre, and withall in what cruell and tyrannicall manner the men he had ſent were in that ſeruice vſed by the commandement of *Amurath*. With whom (ſaid this Generall) you without cauſe haue made a moſt diſhonorable peace: firſt by giuing your faith to ſuch a miſcreant, and then in ſending your loyall ſubiects in recompence of their good ſeruice, to be ſo butchered at his pleaſure; beſide the ſhamefull tribute which you yeerely pay vnto him. Whereas if it would pleaſe you in the depth of your wiſdome, but to know your owne ſtrength, you ſhould finde your ſelfe in warlike force and power, nothing inferiour to the tyrant: for we your ſeruants being in number but a handfull,
B were in theſe his late warres a terrour vnto his enemies, and by our valour and not his owne, he got the victorie ouer them. What cauſe is there then, that you ſhould ſubiect your ſelfe vnto your inferiour? I know he cannot of himſelfe bring into the field aboue fiftie thouſand fighting men: but admit he were able to bring a hundred thouſand, are not you (if you ſo pleaſe) able to leuie a farre greater power? and for all other warlike prouiſion, you are ten fold better prouided than he. Beſides that, the mightie Chriſtian Princes will ſend you ſuch aid againſt this hatefull and common enemie, that being vnited with yours, his Barbarian forces will be nothing in compariſon of thoſe which you ſhall then be able to bring into the field againſt him: which no doubt the Chriſtian Princes will the rather doe, as men deſirous to quench this deuouring fire, in another mans houſe rather than in their owne.

C Theſe words of the Vayuod ſo much moued *Lazarus*, that he determined in himſelfe, to breake that ſeruile league which he before had made with *Amurath*. And for that cauſe ſent his embaſſadour with ſecret inſtructions to the King of Bosna (in time paſt called Illyria) his neighbour: whereof the chiefe point was, to craue his aid againſt the Turke their common enemie. By whom the King of Bosna returned anſwere, That it had beene much better ſuch conſideration had beene thought vpon, before the foule contract (full of diſgrace both to himſelfe, and all other Chriſtian Princes) was vpon a vaine feare, by him raſhly made with the Turkiſh tyrant: yet for ſo much as things done, could not be vndone, letting that paſſe which was remedileſſe, he promiſed to ioyne with him his whole forces, againſt ſo dangerous an enemie. And thereupon appointing a place for an enteruiew, met accordingly, and there fully concluD ded all the articles of their confederation.

Lazarus the Deſpot by his embaſſadour craueth aid of the King of Boſna.

There was in the confines of Bosna a caſtle called Alexandria, the captaine whereof being a Chriſtian, was yet tributarie vnto the Turke; wiſhing vnto him ſuch good, as men oppreſſed vſe to doe to them by whom they are ſo wronged. This captaine vnder the colour of friendſhip went to *Amurath*, and in great ſecrecie opened vnto him the whole ſtate of the kingdome of Bosna; and withall, that the King thereof intended ſome great matter againſt him: for preuenting whereof, he offered his owne ſeruice, and ſhewed ſome probable meanes, how that kingdome might be brought into his ſubiection, if he would but ſend ſome worthie Generall with a conuenient power for the vndertaking thereof. This wonderfully pleaſed the ambitious old tyrant, who therfore commanded a rich garment to be caſt vpon the captaine (which
E amongſt the Turks is taken for a ſure token of the Kings great fauour) and forthwith appointed his tutor *Lala Schahin*, according to this captains direction, to inuade the kingdome of Bosna. Who ioyning himſelfe with this deceitfull captaine of Alexandria, with an armie of twentie thouſand men entred into Bosna; where ouerrunning a ſide of the countrey, he without reſiſtance tooke great booties: and ſeeing no apparent cauſe of feare, to doe the more harme, by the aduice of the ſame captaine, diuided his armie, which he ſent into diuers parts of the countrey, the more to burne and ſpoile the ſame. Of all whoſe proceedings, the King of Bosna by ſecret meſſengers from the captaine aduertiſed, had in conuenient places laid ſtrong ambuſhes for the intercepting of his enemies. So that as *Schahin* was returning homeward with a rich booty, hauing then with him but a thouſand men, ſuddenly appeared in his way thirtie thouſand
F Chriſtians well armed: which *Schahin* ſeeing, thinking it follie to oppoſe ſo few againſt ſo many, would haue preſently fled; but the reſt of the gallants that were with him, preſuming of their good fortune, and loth to loſe their rich prey, would needs firſt skirmiſh with the Chriſtians: in which deſperate conflict they were almoſt all ſlaine, and the ſpoile they had taken, all recouered by the Chriſtians. As for *Schahin*, he was glad by ſhamefull flight to ſaue himſelfe. The like miſhap befell the other Turks in the other parts of Bosna, who for the moſt part were likewiſe

wiſe intercepted and ſlaine: ſo that of twentie thouſand, ſcarce fiue thouſand returned home. G

Amurath maried the Emperor of Conſtantinople his daughter

Whileſt theſe things were doing in EVROPE, *Amurath* with great triumph at NEAPOLIS maried the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE his daughter: whoſe two ſiſters were alſo giuen in mariage to his two ſons: at which time he with great ſolemnitie circumciſed three of *Baiazet* his ſons. At this time alſo returned *Iazigi Ogli*, whom he had before ſent embaſſadour to the Sultan of ÆGYPT, in requitall of the honourable embaſſage before to him ſent from the ſaid Sultan. Now *Amurath* vnderſtanding of the loſſe of his men in BOSNA, with the reuolt of *Lazarus* Deſpot of SERVIA, was therewith much diſquieted. Wherefore he commanded *Alis Baſſa* his chiefe counſellour, with all ſpeed to ſend forth commiſſions into all parts of his kingdome, for the leuying of a royall armie: which was done in ſuch poſt haſte, that it was thought H he would haue taken the field before the beginning of the Spring. At which time alſo the other Mahometane Kings and Princes of ASIA, *Caraman Ogli*, *Teke Ogli*, and the reſt, bound vnto him by homage, with diuers others of ſmaller power, were ſent for, to aid him in this warre: who partly for feare, & partly moued with the zeale of their Mahometane ſuperſtition, brought their forces with great deuotion. Vnto this warre againſt the Chriſtians, came alſo great numbers of the Mahometanes from farre countries, as voluntarie ſouldiers. *Baiazet* his ſonne alſo, then gouernour of CVTAIE, with a great part of GALATIA, gathering all his forces, came to aid his father in this religious warre (as it was by them tearmed.) The Chriſtian tributarie Princes were not then forgotten: of whom two came, namely, *Cuſtendyll* and *Seratzill*: other two forſaking *Amurath*, came not, which was *Saſmenos* Prince of BVLGARIA, and the Prince I of VARNA and DOBRITZA: with whom *Amurath* was highly offended. In the time of this ſo great a preparation, old *Lala Schahin*, *Amurath* his tutor and faithfull ſeruitor, died, being a man of great yeeres: and *Temurtaſes* was appointed gouernour in his place.

The reuolting of the two Chriſtian Princes, *Saſmenos* and the Prince of VARNA, much grieued *Amurath*: wherefore he commanded *Alis Baſſa*, with an armie of thirtie thouſand, to inuade and ſpoile *Saſmenos* his country, now called BVLGARIA, and in ancient time the lower MYSIA. *Alis Baſſa* according to that was giuen him in charge, calling vnto him *Iaxis Beg*, the ſonne of *Temurtaſes*, *Ylu Beg*, *Suratze Baſſa*, with other captaines and commanders of the Turks prouinces in EVROPE, aſſembled an armie of thirtie thouſand, for the inuaſion of BVLGARIA. With this armie the Baſſa tooke many ſtrong townes and caſtles in BVLGARIA, as PIRA- K VADE, VENVZINA, MADRA, SVNI, with others.

In the meane time, whileſt *Alis Baſſa* had thus begun the wars againſt the Chriſtians in BVLGARIA, *Amurath* hauing gathered a great armie in ASIA, determined in the beginning of the Spring, to paſſe ouer with the ſame into EVROPE: commending the gouernment of his countries in ASIA to *Temurtaſes Baſſa*, *Ferices Beg*, *Temurtaces Subbaſſa*, *Cutlu Beg*, and *Haza Beg*: and ſo all things ſet in order in ASIA, he drew downe his Aſian forces towards HELLESPONTVS, where he was a while ſtaied with contrary winds, but was afterwards tranſported to CALLIPOLIS by *Ienitze Beg*, Sanzacke there. This was the third time that *Amurath* brought his armie out of ASIA into EVROPE. But whileſt he ſtaied at CALLIPOLIS, *Baiazet* his ſonne with a great power came vnto him thither: *Alis Baſſa* alſo vnderſtanding of *Amurath* his arri- L uall in EVROPE, retired out of BVLGARIA, and came to him at CALCIDE, recounting vnto him the whole ſucceſſe of his expedition into BVLGARIA.

Saſmenos Prince of BVLGARIA, ſeeing his countrey ſpoiled, his ſtrong cities and caſtles taken by the Turks, and withall hearing of their great preparations for warre; by the aduice of his nobilitie, thought it beſt betimes againe to ſubmit himſelfe vnto *Amurath*: wherefore tying a winding ſheet about his necke, in token that he had deſerued death (after the manner of the Barbarians) he came to *Amurath* at CALCIDE, where falling flat vpon the ground, at the horſes feet whereon *Amurath* ſat, he in moſt humble wiſe craued pardon: offering by a certaine day to deliuer SILISTRIA the chiefe citie of his dominion into *Amurath* his poſſeſſion, as a pledge of his fidelitie: who thereupon granted him pardon, and to aſſure him of his fauour, commanded M a rich garment to be caſt vpon him, after the manner of the Turks, ſending *Alis Baſſa* at the time appointed to take poſſeſſion of SILISTRIA. But *Saſmenos* repenting himſelfe of that he had ſo largely promiſed, would not deliuer his citie, but in ſtrongeſt manner he could preſently fortified the ſame. Wherewith *Amurath* more offended than before, commanded the Baſſa with fire and ſword againe to ſpoile and waſte his countrey: who according to his commandement

entred

A entred againe into BVLGARIA, and ſtrucke ſuch a terrour of his comming into the hearts of the people, that many ſtrong places were voluntarily yeelded into his power, namely, DIRITZE, COSSOVA, with the citie TERNOVA, the ſeat of the Princes court; TZERNEVI, NOVAKESTRI, ZISTOVA, with diuers others: and proceeding farther, he laid ſiege to NICOPOLIS, the ſtrongeſt citie of BVLGARIA, vpon the ſide of the great riuer DANVBIVS, whither *Saſmenos* was for feare himſelfe fled. Who finding himſelfe vnable to hold out the ſiege, once againe (with ſhame enough) tying a winding ſheet about his necke, as he had done before, and taking his ſonne with him, went out of the citie, and in moſt abiect manner falling downe at the Baſſa his feet, craued pardon: which the Baſſa, moued with compaſſion to ſee the
B miſerie of ſo great a man, and hauing alreadie taken from him the greateſt part of his dominion, and now out of feare of further reſiſtance, eaſily granted. And hauing thus ended the Bulgarian warre, returned to *Amurath*, of whom he was right ioyfully receiued.

Amurath had now made great preparation for the inuading of SERVIA, for which purpoſe he had drawne ouer into EVROPE the greateſt forces he poſſibly could out of ASIA: ſending alſo for his youngeſt ſonne *Iacup*, gouernour of CARASIA, who vnderſtanding his fathers pleaſure, repaired vnto him with all the power he could make. This armie by *Amurath* thus aſſembled, was the greateſt that euer was before that, brought by the Turks into EVROPE. *Lazarus* not ignorant of this great preparation made by *Amurath*, had drawne into the ſocietie of this warre, the King of BOSNA (as is aforeſaid) with *Vulcus* Prince of MACEDONIA, his ſonne in
C law, who both brought vnto him great aid: he had alſo by his embaſſadours procured great ſupplies from other Chriſtian Kings and Princes, out of VALACHIA, HVNGARIA, CROATIA, SCLAVONIA, ALBANIA, BVLGARIA, and ITALIE, beſides great numbers of other voluntarie deuout Chriſtians, which all aſſembled and met together, did in number far exceed the great armie of the Turks.

With this armie *Lazarus* the Deſpot encamped vpon the ſide of the riuer MOROVA the greater, not farre from whence ſtood the ſtrong caſtle of SARKIVE, which *Alis Baſſa* had of late taken from *Saſmenos* the Bulgarian Prince, ſtanding as it were betwixt BVLGARIA and SERVIA: this caſtle being now poſſeſſed of the Turks, was thought by *Lazarus* dangerous to his countrey, who therefore ſent one *Demetrius*, a right valiant captaine, with certaine compa-
D nies of ſelect men to take in the ſame. The name of this captaine *Demetrius*, was a generall terrour vnto the Turks, for the harme he had done them: ſo that they in the caſtle hearing that he was come, without further reſiſtance yeelded the ſame vnto him. Whereof *Amurath* vnderſtanding, ſent *Eine* and *Sarutze* Baſſa to recouer the ſame: but *Lazarus* doubting that the caſtle would hardly be kept in that dangerous warre, ſent *Vulcus* his ſonne in law with twentie thouſand men, to bring away all that was therein, and in the citie neere vnto it, leſt it ſhould become a prey vnto the greedie Turks; which he accordingly did, and at the ſame time raſed both the caſtle and the citie, before the comming of *Iaxis Beg*, ſent from *Amurath* to haue done the ſame exploit; which he comming thither, found alreadie done to his hand by *Vulcus*.

The caſtle of Sarkius with the citie ioyning vnto it, taken by the Chriſtians, and raſed.

As *Amurath* was marching towards SERVIA, *Seratze* and *Cuſtendyl*, two Chriſtian Princes
E his tributaries, met him with their forces, whom he cauſed to march before him as his guides; and paſſing thorow *Cuſtendyl* his countrey, was there refreſhed with plentie of all things neceſſarie: vntill at length paſſing the riuer of MOROVA the leſſe, he drew ſo neere to the plaines of COSSOVA (where the Chriſtian armie lay) that he with his ſonne *Baiazet* from a little hill tooke full view of the Chriſtian campe; which was ſo great, that it couered all thoſe large plains from ſide to ſide, and ſo daunted *Amurath*, as that returning to his armie, he preſently entered into a great conſultation with his greateſt captaines and commanders, what courſe to take againſt ſuch a puiſſant enemie.

Theſe great armies being now come ſo nigh together, as that they might the one well deſcrie the other, *Amurath* had purpoſed the ſame day to haue giuen the Chriſtians battell: but being
F diſſwaded by *Eurenoſes*, both for that it was extreame hot, and his ſouldiers wearied with trauell, he reſted that night. The next morning as ſoone as it was day, he put his armie in order of battell, placing his ſonne *Baiazet* with *Eurenoſes* and *Eine Beg Subbaſſa*, in the right wing; his youngeſt ſonne *Iacup*, with *Sarutze Baſſa* in the left wing; the maine battell he led himſelfe. *Lazarus* in the meane time had alſo ſet his armie in good order: giuing the charge of the right wing to *Vulcus* his ſonne in law; the left wing was led by the King of BOSNA, and his ſonne; in the

maine

maine battell ſtood *Lazarus* himſelfe; the Italians, Valachians, Hungarians, Bohemians, and G
Bulgarians, he placed in both wings. It is thought, greater armies than thoſe two had ſildome
before met in EVROPE, *Lazarus* as the Turkiſh hiſtories report (but how truly I know not) ha-
uing in his armie fiue hundred thouſand men; and *Amurath* ſcarce halfe ſo many.

To begin the battaile, *Amurath* had drawne a thouſand of his beſt archers, vnder the leading
of *Malcozzeus*, out of the right wing of his armie; and the like number of archers out of the left,
vnder the conduct of one *Muſtapha*: which ſo placed on both ſides of the armie, as he thought
beſt, *Eurenoſes* a man of great experience, told *Amurath*, That the Chriſtians were for the moſt
part well and ſtrongly armed, & ſhouldering cloſe together in their charge, would be like a rock
of yron, vnable to be pierced: but if in joyning the battaile, he would a little retire, the Chriſti- H
ans following vpon good hope, would ſo looſe their cloſe ſtanding (the cheefe part of their
ſtrength) and leaue an entrance for his men. Vpon which reſolution, *Amurath* commanded the
archers to giue the firſt charge: which they courageouſly performed. At which time, the Turks
armie gaue ground a little: which the Chriſtians perceiuing, with great force aſſailed the left
wing of their armie, and after a hard and cruell fight put the ſame to flight: which *Baiazet* ſee-
ing, with ſuch furie renewed the battaile, that the Turks which before as men diſcouraged fled in
the left wing, began now to turne againe vpon their enemies; and the Chriſtians hauing as they
thought alreadie got the victorie, were to begin a new battel. In which bloodie fight many thou-
ſands fell on both ſides: the brightnes of the armour and weapons, was as it had been the light-
ning: the multitude of launces and other horſemens ſtaues ſhadowed the light of the ſunne: ar- I
rowes and darts fell ſo faſt, that a man would haue thought they had powred downe from hea-
uen, the noiſe of the inſtruments of warre, with the neighing of horſes, and outcries of men was
ſo terrible and great, that the wild beaſts in the mountaines ſtood aſtonied therewith: and the
Turkiſh hiſtories, to expreſſe the terrour of the day (vainly ſay) that the Angels in heauen ama-
ſed with that hidious noiſe, for that time forgot the heauenly hymnes wherewith they alwaies
glorifie God. About noone time of the day, the fortune of the Turks preuailing, the Chriſtians
began to giue ground, and at length berooke themſelues to plaine flight; whom the Turks with
all their force purſued and ſlew them downe right, without number or mercie. In which battell
Lazarus ſlaine. *Lazarus* the Deſpot himſelfe was alſo ſlaine. Howbeit ſome hiſtories report otherwiſe, as that
he with his ſon were taken priſons, and by and by afterwards (in reuenge of *Amurath* his death) K
cruelly ſlaine: otherſome alſo reporting that he died in priſon. *Amurath* after this great victorie,
with ſome few of his cheefe captaines taking view of the dead bodies, which without number
lay on heapes in the field like mountaines; a Chriſtian ſouldiour, ſore wounded and all bloodie,
ſeeing him, in ſtaggering manner aroſe (as if it had bin from death) out of a heape of ſlaine men,
and making towards him, for want of ſtrength fell down diuers times by the way as he came, as
if he had been a drunken man: at length drawing nigh vnto him, when they which guarded the
kings perſon would haue ſtayed him, he was by *Amurath* himſelfe commaunded to come nee-
rer: ſuppoſing, that he would haue craued his life of him. Thus this halfe dead Chriſtian preſſing
neere vnto him, as if he would for honour ſake haue kiſſed his feet, ſuddenly ſtabbed him in the
Amurath ſlain. bottome of his bellie with a ſhort dagger, which he had vnder his ſoldiors coat: of which wound L
that great king and conquerour preſently died. The name of this man (for his courage wor-
thie of eternall memorie) was *Miles Cobelitz*: who before ſore wounded, was ſhortly after in
the preſence of *Baiazet* cut into ſmall peeces. The Turks in their Annales ſomewhat other-
wiſe report of the death of *Amurath*: as that this *Cobelitz*, one of the Deſpot his ſeruants, in
time of the battaile, comming to *Amurath* as a fugitiue, offering him his ſeruice, and admitted
to his preſence, in humbling himſelfe to haue kiſſed his feete (as the barbarous manner of the
Turks is) ſtabbed him into the bellie and ſo ſlew him: being himſelfe therefore ſhortly after (as
is aforeſaid) in the preſence of *Baiazet* moſt cruelly hewen into ſmall peeces. Whereupon euer
ſince that time, the manner of the Turks hath beene, and yet is, that when any Embaſſadour or
ſtranger is to come to kiſſe the Sultan his hand, or otherwiſe to approach his perſon, hee is as it M
were for honours ſake, lead by the armes vnto his preſence, betwixt two of the great courtiers:
but indeed by ſo entangling him, to be ſure that he ſhall not offer him the like violence, that did
this *Cobelitz* vnto *Amurath*.

The dead bodie of *Amurath* was preſently with all ſecrecie conueied into his tent by the
Baſſaes and captaines preſent at his death: whether *Baiazet* was alſo brought with an enſigne
before

A before him, as the ſucceſſour in his fathers kingdome. His younger brother *Iacup*, ſurnamed *Zelebi* (or the noble) yet ignorant of that had hapned, was by the great Baſſaes ſent for, as from his father: who caſting no perill, but comming into his fathers tent, was there preſently by them ſtrangled, by the commandement of *Baiazet*, as moſt hiſtories report: howbeit the Turks annales charge him not therewith. This was the beginning of the moſt vnnaturall and inhumane cuſtome, euer ſince holden for a moſt wholeſome and good policie amongſt the Turkiſh Kings and Emperors, in the beginning of their raigne moſt cruelly to maſſacre their brethren and neereſt kinſmen, ſo at once to rid themſelues of all feare of their competitors.

This *Amurath* was in his ſuperſtition more zealous than any other of the Turkiſh Kings; a
B man of great courage, and in all his attempts fortunate: he made greater ſlaughter of his enemies, than both his father and grandfather: his kingdome in ASIA he greatly enlarged by the ſword, mariage, and purchaſe: and vſing the diſcord and cowardiſe of the Grecian Princes, to his profit, ſubdued a great part of THRACIA, called ROMANIA, with the territories thereto adioyning, leauing vnto the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, little or nothing more in THRACIA, than the imperiall citie it ſelfe, with the bare name of an Emperour, almoſt without an empire: he wan a great part of BVLGARIA, and entred into SERVIA, BOSNA, and MACEDONIA: he was liberall, and withall ſeuere: of his ſubiects both beloued and feared: a man of very few words, and one that could diſſemble deeply. He was ſlaine when he was threeſcore eight yeeres old, and had thereof raigned thirtie one, in the yeere of our Lord 1390.

C His dead bodie was by *Baiazet* conueied into ASIA, and there royally buried at PRVSA, in a faire chappell at the Weſt end of the citie, neere vnto the Bathes there: where, vpon his tombe lieth his ſouldiers cloake, with a little Turkiſh tulipant, much differing from thoſe great turbants which the Turks now weare. Neere vnto the ſame tombe are placed three launces, with three horſe tailes faſtened at the vpper end of them, which he vſed as guidons in his wars: a thing in ancient time not ſtrange. There ſtandeth a caſtle with a tombe, made in remembrance of him, in the plaines of COSSOVA, where he was ſlaine and his entrailes buried: which giueth occaſion for ſome to report that he was there alſo himſelfe enterred.

Amurath buried at Prusa.

FINIS.

Chriſtian Princes of the ſame time with Amurath the firſt.

Emperours	Of the Eaſt	*Iohn Palæologus.*	1354. 30.
		Andronicus Palæologus.	1384. 3.
		Emanuel Palæologus.	1387. 30.
	Of the Weſt	*Charles the fourth.*	1346. 32.
		Wenceſlaus, ſonne to Charles King of Bohemia.	1378. 22.
Kings	Of England	*Edward the third.*	1327. 50.
		Richard the ſecond.	1377. 23.
	Of France	*Iohn Valois.*	1350. 14.
		Charles the fifth.	1364. 16.
		Charles the ſixt, ſurnamed, The welbeloued.	1381. 42.
	Of Scotland	*Dauid Bruce.*	1341. 29.
		Robert Stuart.	1370.
Biſhops of Rome		*Innocent the VI.*	1354. 10.
		Vrban the V.	1364. 8.
		Gregorie the II.	1372. 7.
		Vrban the VI.	1378. 11.

Phi. Lonicer. Hiſt Tur. li. 1.

Fulminis in morem celeri rapit agmina motu
Baiazethes, fidei pacis & impatiens.
Regni Hadrianopolim ſedes ſibi legit vt eſſet,
Poſſet vt Europæ iungere regna ſuis.
Conſtantinopolim gemina obſidione fatigat:
Iam Græcas vana ſpe ſibi ſpondet opes.
Cum Tamburlano præbet ſua terga, catenis
Vinctus, & in cauea probra pudenda ſubit.

Proud *Baiazet*, moſt falſe of faith, and loathing bleſſed peace;
His warlike troupes like lightening, to ſhake he doth not ceaſe.
Of HADRIANOPLE he makes choice, for his imperiall ſeat,
That EVROPES kingdomes he might ioyne vnto his empire great.
CONSTANTINOPLE he diſtreſt, twice with ſtraight ſiege and long:
And vainly thought to haue poſſeſt the Grecians wealth by wrong.
But ouercome by *Tamberlane*, faſt bound in fetters ſure,
Trod vnder foot, and cloas'd in cage, great ſhame did there endure:

THE LIFE OF BAIAZET, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, THE FOVRTH AND MOST VNFORTVNATE KING OF THE TVRKES.

Aiazet, or as the Turks call him, *Baiasit*, of his violent and fierce nature ſurnamed *Gilderun*, or lightening; ſucceeded his father *Amurath* in the Turkiſh kingdome, his younger brother *Iacup* being ſtrangled immediatly after his fathers death, as is before declared. He in the firſt yeere of his raigne inuaded SERVIA, and there beſieged CRATOVA, a citie of the Deſpots: whereunto the ſiluer mines of SERVIA (not the leaſt cauſe of that warre) belonged. Which citie was yeelded vnto him, vpon condition, That the Chriſtian inhabitants might with life and libertie depart. Who were no ſooner gone out of the citie, but that by his commandement they were all moſt cruelly ſlaine by his men of warre, for that purpoſe ſent out after them. At this time he alſo won VSCVPIA, with diuers other caſtles in the countrey neere vnto CRATOVA.

Baiazet inuadeth Seruia.

Sigiſmund at the ſame time King of HVNGARIE (a young Prince of great hope, and brother to *Wenceſlaus*, then Emperour of the Weſt) aduertiſed from the Seruians his allies and confederates, of theſe proud proceedings of *Baiazet*: by his embaſſadours ſent of purpoſe, requeſted him, That as he was a iuſt Prince, and wiſhed to liue in quiet with his owne, to deſiſt from doing of ſuch open wrong, and from inuading of ſuch countries of his friends and confederates, as he had no right in. Which embaſſadours ſo ſent, *Baiazet* detained without anſwere, vntill ſuch time as he had ouerrun a great part of the Deſpot his countrey, and therein done what he thought good. Then calling the ſaid embaſſadours vnto him into one of the ſtrong townes, which he had in euery corner filled with his owne ſouldiers, told them that they might there ſee, that his right both vnto that towne and the reſt by him taken, was good enough, for as much as the very wals acknowledged the ſame: and ſo giuing them leaue to depart, willed them ſo to tell their maſter. Which his proud anſwere, by the ſame embaſſadours reported vnto the young King, no leſſe troubled him, than if open warre had by them beene denounced vnto him, ſeeing the tyrant (as it ſhould ſeeme) pretended right vnto whatſoeuer he could by force get: neuertheleſſe, being himſelfe not yet well ſetled in his kingdome, and in doubt of the contrary faction (that altogether liked not of his election into HVNGARIE for their King) he was glad at that time to put it vp, and ſo to hold himſelfe content.

The next yeere, *Baiazet* by *Feriſes Beg*, tooke the citie of VIDINA, with many other ſtrong townes & caſtles in SERVIA, and afterwards returned to HADRIANOPLE. But whileſt that he thus raged in EVROPE, the Caramanian King inuaded and ſpoiled the frontiers of his countries in ASIA: which although he was not then at leiſure, he forgot not afterwards to reuenge to the full. At the ſame time *Eurenoſes*, lord gouernour of the marches of his kingdome in EVROPE towards GRECIA, departing from SERRES (where he then lay) tooke the citie of SITROS in THESSALIA. And *Feriſes Beg*, not content to haue taken VIDINA (as is aforeſaid) paſſed ouer the great riuer of DANVBIVS, and grieuouſly ſpoiled VALACHIA: from whence he returned loaden with a great prey. This was the firſt time (that I read of) that the Turks euer paſſed

Seruia the ſecond time inuaded by Baiazet.

ſed ouer the riuer DANVBIVS. At this time alſo *Iegides Baſſa* entred the kingdome of BOSNA, from whence he carried a great number of captiues to HADRIANOPLE, where *Baiazet* ſpent that Winter. G

In the beginning of the next Spring *Baiazet* paſſed ouer HELLESPONTVS to PRVSA, where he built a faire Mahometan temple, with a colledge, and an almes-houſe: which works finiſhed, he returned againe into EVROPE, and built a monaſterie at HADRIANOPLE: and ſo returned againe into ASIA, leauing *Temurtaſes*, *Begler-Beg* (or his vice-roy) in HADRIANOPLE. After he was come into ASIA, he laid ſiege to the ſtrong citie of PHILADELPHIA in LYDIA, which was at that time the onely citie in the leſſer ASIA, yet holden by the Chriſtians in the middeſt of the Mahometane Princes: for now was the Greeke Emperour by the *Othoman* Kings and the other Turks quite driuen out of the leſſer ASIA. In the beginning of this ſiege, *Baiazet* gaue ſtraight commandement to his ſouldiers, That they ſhould not ſpoile or hurt any thing in the countrey belonging to the citizens: hoping by ſuch faigned courteſie to make them the more willing to yeeld themſelues vnto his obedience. But diſappointed of his expectation, and finding them reſolued to hold it out vnto the laſt, he forthwith gaue out contrary commandement, not to ſpare any thing they could waſte or deſtroy: which was accordingly by his greedie ſouldiers performed. After long ſiege, the citizens ſeeing the countrey about them vtterly waſted, and themſelues vnable longer to endure, and out of all hope of reliefe, yeelded their citie vnto the pleaſure of *Baiazet*. It is written by ſome, that this famous citie was not beſieged without the conſent of the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE: and that the Greekes themſelues, moued with enuie to ſee that citie ſo long hold out, did helpe the Turks in the winning thereof. H I

Philadelphia beſieged by Baiazet.

In time of this ſiege *Aiden Ogli* Prince of CARIA, a Mahometane, came to *Baiazet*, and yeelded himſelfe into his power as his vaſſale: vnto whom *Baiazet* reſtored certaine places which he had in this expedition a little before taken from him: yet vpon ſuch condition, as that hee ſhould not from that time coine any mony in his owne name, either be remembred in publicke praiers as a Prince in their Mahometan temples, as he had before beene: but that all ſuch things ſhould be done in the name of *Baiazet*, as his dread Lord and Soueraigne. With which diſgrace the poore Prince was glad to content himſelfe, and to liue as his vaſſale. From PHILADELPHIA he led his armie into the countrey of SARVCHANIA, in ancient time called IONIA MARITIMA, which he ſubdued vnto himſelfe vpon like conditions. After that he paſſed farther, to MENTESIA, or MENTZ, ſometime called MYNDOS in CARIA; the Prince whereof for feare fled to *Cutrun Baiazet*, Prince of CASTAMONA and part of PONTVS, leauing his countrey to the pleaſure of the tyrant. And foraſmuch as the young King of CARAMANIA had inuaded his countries whileſt he was buſied in EVROPE, *Baiazet* in reuenge thereof entred with his armie into CARAMANIA, and tooke CESARIA, with diuers other places there: ſo that the young King diſcouraged with the loſſe of his townes, and fearing *Baiazet* his greatneſſe, was glad to hold himſelfe content with his loſſe, and to make peace with him as it pleaſed him to grant it. As *Baiazet* was making this expedition into CARAMANIA, another young Mahometane Prince, the ſonne of Prince *Germian*, came vnto him with one of his chiefe counſellors, & were both by him ſent priſoners ouer the ſtrait to the caſtle of IPSALA, where they lay in durance many yeeres after. Thus *Baiazet* hauing oppreſſed and wronged moſt of the Mahometane Princes, the ſucceſſors of Sultan *Aladin* in the leſſer ASIA, at laſt returned againe himſelfe in triumph to PRVSA. K L

The Prince of MENTESIA, who for feare of *Baiazet* was fled out of his countrey, as is aforeſaid, had now incited *Cutrun Baiazet*, Prince of CASTAMONA, with a great power to inuade that ſide of *Baiazet* his kingdome which bordered vpon him. Which *Baiazet* vnderſtanding, gathered a great armie to goe againſt this Mahometane Prince. At which very time the Vayuod of VALACHIA, hearing of *Baiazet* his troubles in ASIA, with a ſtrong armie paſſed ouer DANVBIVS into thoſe parts of SERVIA and BVLGARIA that were by the Turks as then poſſeſſed; where he ſpoiled the countrey, and ſlew great numbers of the Turks, making Mahometane ſaints and martyrs by heapes: for ſo the Turks account all them whom the Chriſtians kill in their warre: which done, he retired backe againe into VALACHIA, carrying with him alſo many of the Turks priſoners. *Baiazet* thus at once inuaded both in ASIA and EVROPE, deferred his wars purpoſed againſt the Prince of PONTVS, vntill a more conuenient time, conuerting his forces againſt the Valachians. Wherefore paſſing ouer the ſtrait to HADRIANOPLE, he ſent his armie from thence to NICOPOLIS, and there paſſing the riuer of DANVBIVS, entered M

into

A into VALACHIA, burning and ſpoiling the countrey before him as he went. Where the Vayuod to repreſſe his furie, met him in the field, & gaue him battell, but was therein ouerthrowne, and many of his people ſlaine; ſo that at laſt he was glad to ſue for peace, which he obtained, by ſubmitting himſelfe to *Baiazet*, and yeelding to pay him a yeerely tribute.

Theſſalia inuaded by Baiazet.

Whileſt *Baiazet* was thus buſied in VALACHIA, newes was brought vnto him that the Chriſtians of the Weſt with a fleet of gallies did great harme alongſt the coaſts of his dominions in ASIA. In reuenge whereof, he entred with his armie into THESSALIE, deſtroying all the countrey vnto THESSALONICA: in which expedition he tooke the citie of NEAPOLIS in GREECE, and IOANNINA in ÆTOLIA, and after that returned into ASIA, where he ſpent that Winter.

B In the beginning of the next Spring, he with a great power paſſed the ſtrait of CALLIPOLIS to HADRIANOPLE, intending to haue inuaded HVNGARIE. But as he was vpon the way, it chanced that a Conſtantinopolitane ſpie was by the Turks intercepted, with letters from the Greeke Emperour to the King of HVNGARIE, giuing him warning both of the Turks preparation and comming. By which ſpie *Baiazet* alſo vnderſtood of another meſſenger before ſent into HVNGARIE, for like purpoſe. Whereupon *Temurtaſes* (then his great lieutenant in EVROPE) perſwaded him to deſiſt from his intended wars in HVNGARIE, and to beſiege the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, as a thing of more honour and leſſe danger; the citie being alreadie (as he ſaid, and as in truth it was) ſurrounded with the Turkiſh prouinces: bringing in PHILADELPHIA (but a few yeeres before won) for example of the like exploit. Of whoſe counſell

C *Baiazet* liking well, returned with his armie, and ſhortly after came and ſate downe therewith before CONSTANTINOPLE: laying hard ſiege thereunto, firſt by land, and after by ſea, with his gallies ſent from CALLIPOLIS. Which hard ſiege continued (as moſt hiſtories report) the ſpace of eight yeeres: in which long time, he draue the Emperour *Emanuel Palæologus* to that ſtraight, that he was glad to leaue his citie, and himſelfe in perſon to craue aid of *Wenceſlaus* the Germane Emperour, and *Charles* the ſixt the French King, and other Chriſtian Princes alſo. At which time the citizens were at length brought to ſuch extremitie, that they were euen at the point to haue yeelded vp the citie: and happily had ſo done, had not *Sigiſmund* King of HVNGARIE (aſſiſted with a great armie of the French and other voluntarie Chriſtians, almoſt out of euery part of Chriſtendome, to the number of an hundred and thirtie thouſand, vnder the leading of

Conſtantinople eight yeeres beſieged by Baiazet.

D *Iohn*, Countie of NIVERS, and after Duke of BVRGVNDIE) for the reliefe of the beſieged Emperour, paſſed ouer DANVBIVS into the Turkiſh dominions; and there hauing recouered VIDINA, with certaine other ſtrong holds in BVLGARIA, laid ſiege to NICOPOLIS: out of which citie the Turks oftentimes ſallied, and gaue him many an hot skirmiſh. It is reported, that the young King *Sigiſmund* beholding the greatneſſe of his armie, in his great iollitie hearing of the comming of the Turke, ſhould proudly ſay: *What need wee to feare the Turke, who need not at all to feare the falling of the heauens; which if they ſhould fall, yet were we able with our ſpeares and halberts to hold them vp for falling vpon vs.* But *Baiazet* vnderſtanding what ſpoile the Hungarian King had made in his late gained countries, and of the ſiege of NICOPOLIS; commanded the ladders and other great prouiſion now in readineſſe for the skaling and aſſaulting of the citie of

E CONSTANTINOPLE, to be burnt, becauſe they ſhould not come into the hands of the Chriſtians: and ſo raiſing his ſiege, marched with a right puiſſant armie to NICOPOLIS, ſending *Eurenoſes* before of purpoſe to intercept ſome of the Chriſtians, thereby to learne the ſtate of their campe and armie. But they hearing of his comming, ſo well looked to themſelues, that he with ſhame returned to his maſter as he came, without any one priſoner taken. Which thing much troubled *Baiazet*, as fearing he ſhould haue to doe with a warie enemie. *Sigiſmund* vnderſtanding of the approch of *Baiazet*, leauing a ſufficient power for the continuing of the ſiege, roſe himſelfe, & with the reſt of his armie went to meet his proud enemie. Of whoſe comming and approch *Baiazet* vnderſtanding, diuided his armie into two parts: and being now come within the ſight of the Chriſtian armie, made ſhew but of the one halfe, keeping himſelfe cloſe in

F ſecret ambuſh not farre off with the other. The Chriſtians deeming themſelues (as they were) farre moe in number than the Turks which they ſaw, diuided their armie alſo into two parts, purpoſing betwixt them to haue incloſed the Turks. Of all the Chriſtians that were there preſent, the French deſired to haue the honour of the firſt charge to be giuen vpon the Turks, and in their heat vpon good hope ſet forward (the Hungarians with a great part of the armie, not yet ſet in order) and ſo began the battell: where betwixt them and the Turks was fought a right

cruell fight, and in a little time many thouſands ſlaine. But this fight had not long endured, G
when *Baiazet* with the other halfe of his armie ſuddenly ariſing, came on with ſuch violence, as
well became his ſurname of *Gilderun* or lightning; and ſo hardly charged the French, that they
amazed at the ſuddenneſſe of the danger, and oppreſſed with the furie and multitude of the vn-
expected enemie, ſtood at the firſt as men diſmaid: but ſeeing no remedie, encouraging one
another, valiantly fought it out vntill they were almoſt all either ſlaine or taken priſoners; ſtill
in hope to haue beene releeued by the Hungarians and the reſt. In this hard conflict diuers of
the French horſemen hauing forſaken their horſes, fought on foot as their manner was: which
horſes running backe without their riders, vpon the Hungarians, cauſed them to doubt that the
French were quite ouerthrowne; wherewith diſmaied, they without further comming on, all H
turned their backs and fled, in ſo great haſte, as that it booted not the King or any other great
commander to goe about to ſtay their flight. The French thus by their too much haſte ouer-
throwne, the Turks purſuing the Hungarians and the reſt of the Chriſtians, made of them a
great ſlaughter: of whom alſo many were drowned in the great riuer DANVBIVS. At which
time alſo the Turks tooke ſo many priſoners, that it was thought euery ſeuerall Turke had his
priſoner. King *Sigiſmund* himſelfe, who but a little before had deſpiſed euen the falling of the
heauens, had then alſo vndoubtedly fallen into the enemies hands, had he not in a little boat by
good hap got ouer DANVBIVS: not vnlike another *Xerxes*, who hauing couered the ſeas with
his ſhips, and with a world of men paſſed ouer into GRECIA, was afterwards by the ſtrange
change of fortune, himſelfe alone in a ſmall fiſher boat glad to get backe againe into ASIA. I
Sigiſmund being thus got ouer DANVBIVS, and fearing the violence of the Hungarians for
the loſſe of the battell, fled by ſea into THRACIA vnto CONSTANTINOPLE; from whence
he ſailed vnto the Iſland of the RHODES, and from thence ſailing thorow the Ægean and Io-
nian ſea, landed at length in DALMATIA: and ſo hauing wandered from place to place, toſſed
with many fortunes, after eighteene moneths long and painfull trauell, returned againe into
HVNGARIE. Where he found the ſtate of his kingdome in his abſence much troubled, the
contrary faction in the meane time hauing made choice of *Ladiſlaus* King of NAPLES for their
King; who was euen then with a great armie going to haue taken poſſeſſion of the kingdome,
had not *Sigiſmund* in good time by the helpe of certaine of the chiefe of the Hungarian nobilitie
preuented him. In this battell, called the battell of NICOPOLIS, were of the Chriſtians K
twentie thouſand ſlaine, and of the Turks threeſcore thouſand. The Countie of NIVIERS,
the French Kings neere kinſman, was there taken priſoner, with three hundred great comman-
ders more: where after he had endured great contumelie and reproch in the preſence of *Baia-
zet*, he was commanded to make choice of fiue other of the captiues, ſuch as he liked beſt, all the
reſt being preſently cut in peeces before his face, and he with the other fiue left aliue, ſent priſo-
ners to PRVSA: from whence they were afterwards ranſomed for two hundred thouſand duc-
kats. This bloudie battell of NICOPOLIS was fought in the yeere of our Lord 1396.

Conſtantinople the ſecond time beſieged by Baiazet.

Baiazet after this great victorie, hauing worthily releeued his beſieged citie, returned againe
to the ſiege of CONSTANTINOPLE, laying more hardly vnto it than before, building forts
and bulwarkes againſt it on the one ſide towards the land: and paſſing ouer the ſtrait of BOS- L
PHORVS, built a ſtrong caſtle vpon that ſtrait ouer againſt CONSTANTINOPLE, to im-
peach ſo much as was poſſible all paſſage thereunto by ſea. This ſtraight ſiege (as moſt write)
continued alſo two yeeres, which I ſuppoſe by the circumſtance of the hiſtorie to haue beene
part of the aforeſaid eight yeeres. *Emanuel* the beſieged Emperor wearied with theſe long wars,
ſent an embaſſador to *Baiazet* to entreat with him a peace: which *Baiazet* was the more willing
to hearken vnto, for that he heard newes that *Tamerlane* the great Tartarian Prince intended
ſhortly to warre vpon him. Yet could this peace not be obtained, but vpon condition that the
Emperour ſhould grant free libertie for the Turks to dwell together in one ſtreet of CONSTAN-
TINOPLE, with free exerciſe of their owne religion, and lawes, vnder a Iudge of their owne na-
tion; and further, to pay vnto the Turkiſh King a yeerely tribute of ten thouſand duckats. M
Which diſhonourable conditions the diſtreſſed Emperour was glad to accept of. So was this
long ſiege broken vp, and preſently a great ſort of Turks with their families were ſent out of
BITHYNIA to dwell in CONSTANTINOPLE, and a Church there built for them: which not long
after was by the Emperour pulled downe to the ground, and the Turks againe driuen out of the
citie, at ſuch time as *Baiazet* was by the mightie *Tamerlane* ouerthrowne and taken priſoner.

Baiazet

A *Baiazet* in the beginning of his raigne, preſently after the death of *Lazarus* the Deſpot ſlaine in the battell of COSSOVA, wan part of SERVIA (as is aforeſaid) the other part being ſtill holden by *Lazarus* his ſonne, called *Stephen* the Deſpot; who about this time ſent an honourable embaſſadour to *Baiazet* with louing letters, and royall preſents: by which embaſſadour alſo the old Princeſſe, *Lazarus* his widow, offered her faire daughter *Deſpina* (*Stephen* his ſiſter) a Ladie of incomparable beautie, in mariage to him, if it ſhould pleaſe him to vouchſafe his handmaid (as ſhe termed her) ſo high a place. This Ladie was long before promiſed vnto him, whilſt his father *Amurath* yet liued. Of this embaſſadour *Baiazet* was very glad, but eſpecially for the faire Ladies ſake: which being knowne vnto the Princeſſe her mother, and the Deſpot her bro-
B ther, ſhe was forthwith honourably ſent to *Baiazet*, and ſo to him with great ſolemnitie and triumph ſhortly after maried. Of all his wiues, he held her deareſt, and for her ſake reſtored vnto her brother *Stephen* the citie and caſtle of SEMENDRE (otherwiſe called S. ANDREW) and COLVMBARIVM in SERVIA: ſhe allured him to drinke wine, forbidden the Turks by their law; and cauſed him to delight in ſumptuous banquets, which his predeceſſours *Othoman*, *Orchanes*, and *Amurath* neuer vſed.

Baiazet marieth Deſpina the faire daughter of Lazarus the Deſpot.

As the Turkiſh kingdome grew in greatneſſe, ſo corruption the canker of great ſtates and common weales increaſed likewiſe: but eſpecially in the men of law and Iudges of his courts. Wherewith *Baiazet* grieuouſly offended, commanded diuers of the ſame Iudges to be apprehended, determining (to the terrour of others) to haue executed them; whoſe dangerous eſtate
C was much pitied, & alſo fauoured of *Alis Baſſa*, and other the King his great counſellors: yet for ſo much as *Baiazet* was of a furious nature, and in his anger dangerous to be ſpoken vnto, none of them durſt aduenture to intreat him in their behalfe; no not *Alis Baſſa*, *Charadyn Baſſa* his ſonne, ſometime Iudge of PRVSA, although he were a man in ſuch ſpeciall fauour with him, that he was therfore of the common people not only reuerenced, but as the King himſelfe honored.

There was at that time in the court an Æthiopian ieaſter, who vnder ſome couert pleaſant ieaſt, would many times bolt out that to the King in his greateſt heat, which his graueſt counſellors durſt not once ſpeake to him of in ſecret: this ieaſter, *Alis Baſſa* requeſted to deuiſe ſome meanes to intreat with the angrie King in the behalfe of theſe Iudges, promiſing to giue him what he would reaſonably deſire, if he could appeaſe the Kings diſpleaſure. The Æthiopian
D without feare vndertooke the matter: and preſently putting vpon his head a rich hat al wrought ouer with gold after the manner of the Turks embaſſadours, and fitting himſelfe with other apparell better beſeeming an embaſſadour than a ieaſter; thus attired preſented himſelfe before the King with a great counterfet grauitie. Whereat *Baiazet* maruelling, asked him the cauſe why he was ſo gaie. I haue a requeſt vnto your maieſtie (ſaid he) and wiſh to finde fauour in your ſight. *Baiazet* more deſirous than before to know the matter, asked what his requeſt was. If it ſtand with your pleaſure (ſaid the ieaſter) I would faine goe as your embaſſadour to the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, in hope whereof, I haue put my ſelfe in this readineſſe. To what purpoſe wouldeſt thou goe, ſaid *Baiazet*? To craue of the Emperour (ſaid he) ſome fortie or fiftie of his old graue Monkes and Friers, to bring with me hither to the court. And what
E ſhould they doe here, ſaid *Baiazet*? I would haue them placed (ſaid the ieaſter) in the roomes of the old doting Iudges, whom you intend (as I heare) to put to death. Why (ſaid *Baiazet*) I can place others of my owne people in their roomes. True (ſaid the Æthiopian) for grauitie of looke and countenance, and ſo would the old Monkes and Friers ſerue as well; but not ſo learned in your lawes and cuſtomes of your kingdome, as are thoſe in your diſpleaſure. If they be learned (ſaid *Baiazet*) why doe they then contrary to their learning, peruert iuſtice and take bribes? There is a good reaſon for that too, ſaid the ieaſter. What reaſon, ſaid the King? That can he that there ſtandeth by tell better than I (ſaid the ieaſter) pointing to *Alis Baſſa*: who forthwith commanded by *Baiazet* to giue the reaſon, with great reuerence before done, ſhewed that thoſe Iudges ſo in diſpleaſure, were not conueniently prouided for, and were therefore en-
F forced many times for their neceſſarie maintenance to take rewards, to the ſtaying of the due courſe of iuſtice. Which *Baiazet* vnderſtanding to be true, commanded *Alis Baſſa* to appoint them conuenient ſtipends for their maintenance, and forthwith granted their pardon. Whereupon the Baſſa ſet downe order, That of euery matter in ſuit exceeding one thouſand aſpers, the Iudge ſhould haue twentie aſpers fee for iudgement; and for euery writing and inſtrument out of the court, twelue aſpers: which fees they yet take in thoſe courts at this day.

Not long after, *Baiazet* in his furie ſent for certaine of his captaines and commanders of his men of warre, with whom he was for ſome ſmall occaſion grieuouſly offended, intending in his rage to haue put them all to death; which was with him no great matter. Theſe captaines being brought before him, the counſellors ſeeing him al in choler, ſat looking vpon the ground, hanging downe their heads (as the manner of the Turks is) not daring too looke him in the face, nor to ſpeake a good word for them. When ſuddenly the aforeſaid Æthiopian ieaſter ſtept forth, earneſtly requeſting the king, not to ſhew them any fauour, but to execute them preſently as villaines and traitours; railing vpon them, as if he had knowne ſome great fault by them. *Baiazet* (thinking he could haue accuſed thē of ſome great crime, becauſe of his earneſtnes) asked what reaſon he had ſo to exclaime againſt them. Reaſon (quoth the ieaſter) becauſe the knaues be good for nothing, and they ſay that *Tamerlane* is with a great armie comming againſt vs: if you will but take vp an enſigne in your hand, and I goe before you with a drum, I will ſtrike vp ſuch a terrible march, and you make ſuch a dreadfull ſhew, that we ſhall need none of theſe bad fellowes or their ſouldiers in the field to get the victorie ouer our enemies. This conceit of the ieaſter ſtrucke ſuch a melancholie imagination into *Baiazet* his head, that he ſtood muſing a great while as it were in a deepe ſtudie: at laſt hauing well conſidered the drift of the ieaſters ſpeech, & his furie now ſomewhat aſſwaged, granted them pardon which they looked not for.

This Æthiopian ieaſter, *Baiazet* vpon a time ſent vnto the old Queene his mother, to bring her newes of the good ſucceſſe of his wars againſt the Chriſtians, for that ſhe had ſo deſired: who comming vnto her, and by her commanded to ſit downe, ſhe began to demand of him, how the King her ſonne did, and of the ſucceſſe of his wars. Whereunto he anſwered, that he did very well, and had won from the Chriſtians a great countrey, and greatly enriched his ſouldiers. But after a little more talke, the Queene mother deſirous to heare againe the good newes (or elſe after the manner of ſome which thinke nothing ſufficiently told except it be told an hundred times) asked him againe how the King her ſonne did, and how he ſped in his wars. Whereunto he anſwered euery word as before: but asking him the third time the very ſame queſtion, how her ſonne did? Doeſt thou aske me ſo often (ſaid the Æthiopian) how he doth? *Bre Cachpe* (O whore, ſaid he) thou haſt brought forth a ſonne like a deuill, who roaming vp and downe, doth nothing but burne and deſtroy the world where he commeth. Whereat the Queene crying out; vp ſtart the Æthiopian, and betaking himſelfe to his heeles, was neuer more afterwards ſeene.

Temurtaſes, Baiazet his great lieutenant in Aſia, taken priſoner by Aladin the young King of Caramania.

In the wars which *Baiazet* had againſt *Sigiſmund*, the Vayuod of Valachia had giuen aid vnto the Hungarian King; wherewith *Baiazet* being offended, determined now at length to be reuenged: and therefore intending to make warre vpon the Valachian Prince, left *Temurtaſes* his great lieutenant at Ancyra in Asia, & ſo paſſed ouer Hellespontvs himſelfe againſt the Valachian. Vpon whoſe departure, *Aladin* his ſiſters ſonne, the young King of Caramania, with a great power came ſuddenly in the night to Ancyra, and tooke *Temurtaſes* priſoner: who then feared nothing leſſe, than in time of peace to haue beene ſo ſurpriſed, and carried away in bonds into Caramania. But when he vnderſtood that *Baiazet* had ended his wars in Valachia, and was with victorie returned to Prvsa, he fearing his heauie indignation for ſo great an outrage, preſently releaſed *Temurtaſes* out of priſon, apparelled him richly after the manner of that nation, craued pardon for the wrong he had done him, & ſet him at libertie to go whither he would, & withall ſent one of his noblemen with great gifts and preſents to *Baiazet* to make his excuſe in beſt manner he could: vnto which embaſſadour *Baiazet* (yet in choler) would not giue audience, or ſuffer him to come in his ſight: but at the ſame time leuied a great armie to inuade Caramania. Which *Aladin* vnderſtanding, and now out of all hope to appeaſe this mightie enemie, leuied all the forces he could in his owne kingdome, and withall entertained all the mercenarie ſouldiers he could get, intending to trie his fortune in the field, as a man of valour, rather than to be thruſt out of his kingdome like a coward: & ſo in readineſſe, hearing of the comming of *Baiazet*, met him vpon the way, & at a place called Aczac gaue him battel: but being too weak, he was ouercome & put to flight; in which flight his horſe ſtumbling, & he ſo falling to the ground, was there before he could recouer himſelfe, taken by his enemies which had him in chaſe, and ſo brought bound to *Baiazet*: his two ſons, *Muhamet Beg* & *Alis Beg*, being taken in that battell alſo, were ſent priſoners to Prvsa. *Aladin* himſelfe was by *Baiazet* his cōmandement deliuered to his enemy *Temurtaſes*: who in reuenge of the wrōg he had before done him, preſently cauſed him to be

A be hanged: which when *Baiazet* vnderſtood, he ſeemed very ſorrie that he had ſo put him to death, for that he was his owne ſiſters ſonne. *Baiazet* following the courſe of his victorie, won ICONIVM, LARENDA, NIGDE, with all the reſt of *Aladin* his kingdome. About this time alſo, AMASIA the great metropoliticall citie of CAPADOCIA, was by the Prince thereof deliuered vnto *Baiazet*, being too weake himſelfe to defend the ſame againſt the force of *Caſi-Burchanidin*, Prince of the great and ſtrong citie of SEBASTIA, his enemie; now growne to be a man of great power in that part of ASIA, and had ſolicited the Sultan of ÆGYPT to aid him againſt *Baiazet*. Whereupon *Baiazet* returning from the conqueſt of CARAMANIA, led his armie towards SEBASTIA, where the citizens had a little before depriued *Caſi-Burchanidin*
B of his gouernment, for his crueltie, and placed his ſonne in his ſtead: but in ſhort time no leſſe wearie of the ſonne, than before of the father, they with like inconſtancie ſent word to *Baiazet*, that if he would come that way, they would yeeld vnto him the citie: vpon whoſe approch, *Caſis* (his ſonne) for feare fled out of the citie to Prince *Naſradin*, his brother in law. After whoſe departure, the citizens according to their promiſe deliuered the citie vnto *Baiazet* at his comming, wherein he left *Solyman* his eldeſt ſonne gouernour. And ſo hauing in this notable expedition conquered the kingdome of CARAMANIA, and taken the great cities of AMASIA and SEBASTIA, with moſt part of CAPPADOCIA, and all that part of ASIA which the Turks call RVMILIA ASIATICA, he returned to PRVSA, and there wintered.

Amaſia yeelded vnto Baiazet.

Sebaſtia deliuered to Baiazet.

The next Spring *Baiazet* (hearing that his old enemie *Cutrun Baiazet* Prince of CASTAMO-
C NA and PONTVS, was dead) came to CASTAMONA with a great armie: of whoſe comming, *Iſfendiar* (*Cutrun Baiazet* his ſonne, and then Prince of that countrey) hearing, fled out of the citie to SYNOPE, a little citie vpon the coaſt of the Euxine: from whence he ſent an embaſſadour vnto *Baiazet*, humbly requeſting him, to ſuffer him to haue that little citie, as his ſeruant to liue in, (which he was ſure he would otherwiſe beſtow vpon ſome other of his ſeruants) and not to ſeeke the innocent bloud of the ſonne for the fathers offence. Which his requeſt, *Baiazet* moued with pitie, granted: yet neuertheleſſe tooke from him CASTAMONA, with the greateſt part of his dominion in PONTVS, which he gaue to his ſonne *Solyman*. At the ſame time he violently oppreſſed the Prince *Germean*, and tooke from him the cities of DESPOTO-
POLIS and HIERAPOLIS, with all the reſt of his dominion.

Baiazet inuadeth Iſfendiar, Prince of Caſtamona.

D The Prince of MENTESIA long before driuen out of his countrey by *Baiazet* (as is before declared) and hauing all this while made his abode at CASTAMONA, doubting now of his owne ſafetie after the death of his good friend *Cutrun Baiazet*, in the habit of an hermit fled to the great Tartarian Prince *Tamerlane*.

Baiazet returning to PRVSA, there built a magnificent Mahometane temple; during which worke, he with great ſuperſtition forbore drinking of wine, repoſing himſelfe with the companie of graue and learned men, and the adminiſtration of iuſtice: whereby he greatly won the hearts of his ſubiects, and had now ſo enlarged his kingdome, that all Kings and Princes bordering vpon him, ſtood in great feare of him.

It fortuned about this time, that *Achmetes* King of BAGDAT (or new BABYLON) & EIRACVM,
E with *Ioſephus Niger* King of COLCHIS, enforced with the violent incurſions of *Tamerlane* and his Tartars, for ſafegard of their liues were glad to flie into SYRIA: where they being diſcouered, were both caſt in priſon by the commandement of the Ægyptian Sultan, who then commanded ouer SYRIA: from whence they afterwards hardly eſcaping, fled to *Baiazet* his court. Where after *Achmetes* had ſtaied two moneths, he by the aid of *Baiazet* recouered the poſſeſſion of EIRACVM, part of his owne inheritance. *Ioſephus* the other Mahometane King, hauing tarried in *Baiazet* his court eight moneths, at length procured him to inuade the dominions of the Ægyptian Sultan, in which expedition he mightily preuailed: and hauing ſlaine the Ægyptian Sultans Generall, & diſcomfited his forces, tooke the citie of MALATIE or MELETINE in ARME-
NIA, with DIORIGE, DERENDE, and BEXENE, taken from the Turcomans, and ſpoiled all the
F countrey thereabouts. From thence marching with his armie towards ERZNITZANE, the Prince thereof, called *Tachretin*, met him vpon the way, yeelding his citie & countrey into his power; which *Baiazet* preſently gaue to *Ioſephus Niger*: who after he had ſix daies enioyed this new gouernment, finding the people vnwilling to be gouerned by him a ſtranger, ſurrendred the ſame againe into the hands of him that gaue it. Whereupon the citizens of ERZNITZANE humbly requeſted of *Baiazet*, That they might be againe gouerned by their old Prince *Tachretin*, now his

vaſſall. Which thing he at their earneſt requeſt graunted: but taking his wife and children as a pledge of his loyaltie, ſent them away to PRVSA, where they were all not long after made away. G

The Mahometan princes of Aſia oppreſſed by Baiazet, diſguiſed, flye vnto Tamerlane for aid.

When *Baiazet* had now many yeares thus mightily preuailed againſt the Chriſtian princes in ROMANIA, BVLGARIA, BOZNA, THESALIA, VALACHIA, & other places of EVROPE, as is before declared; and inflamed with inſatiable ambition, had in worſe manner oppreſſed the Mahometan kings & princes of ASIA, of whom ſome were by him ſlaine, ſome driuen out of their dominions into exile, ſome impriſoned, and otherſome brought into ſuch ſubjection that they liued as it were but at his deuotion, and was now growne to that greatneſſe, that in the pride of his heart he ſtood in feare of no man, but was (as he thought) a terrour vnto the world, hauing vnder his obeiſance great and large dominions in EVROPE, but farre greater in ASIA: H It fortuned diuers of theſe miſerable oppreſſed and diſcontented Mahometan princes, by great fortune as if it had been by appointment, to meet together at the court of the great Tartarian prince *Tamerlane*, whether they were fled for releeſe and ſuccour. The prince *Germian Ogli*, after long impriſonment in the caſtle of IPSALA in EVROPE, brake priſon, and with *Hiſſar-beg* his great councellour and priſon-fellow, conſorted themſelues with a companie of loytering companions, roaming frō place to place, delighting the countrey people with their apiſh toies: in which companie he paſſed HELLESPONTVS, as a beareward, and at length with much adoe came to *Tamerlane* his court: whether the prince of MENTESIA was come before, in the habit of an Hermit (as is aforeſaid) with his head and beard ſhauen: *Aidin Ogli* paſſing through the countrey as a pedler, with a packe at his backe, came thether alſo: The prince *Tachretin* as a I ſeruingman, came attending vpon the prince *Iſfendiar*: who came alſo (but in ſome better ſort than the reſt) as an embaſſadour from ſome other prince. All theſe poore princes, with diuers others in like miſerie, in ſhort time arriued at SAMARCAND (great *Tamerlane* his court;) euerie one perticularly complaining of his owne priuat greeſe, and all together earneſtly requeſting that mightie prince, to take vpon him their defence, and to reuenge the wrong done vnto them by the Turkiſh tirant *Baiazet*. Whoſe pitifull complaints much mooued the noble Tartarian: but eſpecially the long & wrongfull impriſonment of *Germian Ogli*: and the pitifull complaint and moane of *Tachretin*, who had of late loſt his wife and children, by the crueltie of *Baiazet*. Yet in this matter of ſo great and important conſequence, *Tamerlane* made no great ſhew of his forwardneſſe (although he was by nature in nothing more delighted, than in the releeuing of K the diſtreſſed, & chaſtiſing of the proud) but coldly anſwered thoſe princes, That he could not tell, whether all were ſo as they had reported of *Baiazet*, or not, but that he well knew him to be a verie zealous king in ſetting forth of the Mahometane religion; and that he had therefore made great warres vpon the Chriſtians, in which godly cauſe (he ſaid) perhaps they had refuſed to aſſiſt him, or elſe had giuen him ſome other greater occaſion of offence, to him vnknowne: For I can hardly beleeue (ſaid he) that ſo great and religious a prince as he, would without juſt and ſufficient cauſe, offer ſuch violence as you complaine of, eſpecially vnto you his neighbour princes, and of the ſame religion with himſelfe: neuertheleſſe, whatſoeuer I intend concerning your requeſt (ſaid *Tamerlane*) I will ſend firſt an Embaſſadour vnto him, to vnderſtand more of him and his proceedings before I reſolue vpon any thing: with which anſwere hee willed L them vntill then to hold themſelues contented. But as *Tamerlane* was about to haue diſpatched his Embaſſadour to *Baiazet*, he was aduertiſed that *Achmetes* late king of new BABILON, and *Ioſephus* king of COLCHIS, both by him driuen out of their kingdomes, hauing broken out of priſon from the Sultan of EGIPT, were now come to *Baiazet* his court, to craue his aid and aſſiſtance: wherefore he deferred to ſend his embaſſador, ſuſpecting that *Baiazet*, incited by theſe two exiled kings, would firſt in their quarrell begin to make warre vpon him. But not long after vnderſtanding, that they were both againe departed from his court (as is before declared) he then diſpatched his embaſſadour to *Baiazet*, with many rich gifts and preſents, courteouſly requeſting him, the rather for his ſake, to deale kindly with theſe poore Mahometane princes, his friends; as alſo with the Greeke Emperour *Emanuel* his allie, for whom he was now become an M interceſſour vnto him. Some report alſo, that he beſides this, requeſted to haue the two aforeſaid Mahometan kings of BAGDAT and COLCHIS deliuered vnto him; and withall ſeemed not a little to diſlike of *Baiazet* his proceedings againſt the Turcomans his friends. But *Baiazet* being a prince of a great and haughtie ſpirit, and vnaccuſtomed to heare of any thing which fitted not his humor, highly offended with this embaſſage, in great ſcorne reiected the preſents by *Tamerlane*

A *lane* ſent vnto him, and eſpecially certaine garments which *Tamerlane* after the manner of thoſe Eaſterne nations, had in kindneſſe amongſt other things ſent him: willing the embaſſadour to bid his maſter meddle with his owne matters, and to preſcribe lawes vnto his owne ſubiects, and not vnto him, with whom he had nought to doe; & to ſend his raggs for preſents vnto his inferiours, and not vnto Princes of greater power and ſtate than himſelfe. Adding thereunto many other words full of deſpight and diſdaine, affoording him no better ſtile than the plaine name of *Tamerlane*: calling him the huſband of a whore, if he met him not in the field; and wiſhing vnto himſelfe againe, to take vnto him his thrice diuorced wife, after ſhe had beene polluted by another man (as the greateſt diſhonour that might be) if he failed to meet him where-
B ſoeuer he durſt to dare him battell. Which proud anſwere of the Turks, by the embaſſadour reported vnto *Tamerlane*, and aggrauated by *Axalla* (a Chriſtian of the race of the Genowaies, borne at CAPHA, and then one of the greateſt counſellors about him, and the Greeke Emperours great friend) was ſo euill taken by him, that all other things ſet apart, he reſolued to goe againſt the Turke, and to take in hand that warre, as of all other the fitteſt for the increaſe of his honour and glorie. Beſides that, he thought it not in reaſon fit for the greatneſſe of the Tartarian empire, to ſuffer ſuch an vnquiet neighbour to grow great; as ſtill encroching vpon other the weake Princes confining vnto him, and adding conqueſts vnto conqueſts; and yet neuer the more contented, might in the end proue dangerous vnto his owne eſtate and ſoueraignetie: a common care to ſuch as be themſelues great, & mounted vp vnto the higheſt degrees of worldly
C honour, to haue in iealouſie and diſtruſt the ſudden riſing of others neere or farther off, as perillous or diſgracefull to themſelues, or their eſtate: whoſe growing greatneſſe they therfore ſeeke by all meanes to hinder; as did now the mightie *Tamerlane* the proceedings and increaſing of the great *Othoman* King, *Baiazet*: and the rather being continually prickt forward ſo to doe, by the ſolicitation of the Greeke Emperour *Emanuel*, the other oppreſſed Mahometane Princes, and by the great captaine *Axalla* (as is aforeſaid) a Chriſtian: of whom for all that *Tamerlane* himſelfe, a Mahometane, for the great fidelitie, valour, & vertue he found in him, made no ſmall reckoning, but was contented euen in his greateſt and moſt waightie affaires to be by him aduiſed; diſliking of no man for his religion whatſoeuer, ſo as he did worſhip but one onely God,
creator of heauen & earth, & of al that therein is. Being himſelfe of opinion, That God in eſſence *Tamerlane his opinion concerning the diuerſities of religiõ.*
D one, & in himſelfe immutable, without change or diuerſitie: yet for the manifeſting of his omnipotencie & power, as he had created in the world ſundrie kinds of people, much differing both in nature, manners, & condition, and yet al framed to the image of himſelfe: ſo was he alſo contented to be of them diuerſly ſerued, according to the diuerſitie of their natures and manners; ſo that they worſhipped none other ſtrange gods, but him alone, the maker & creator of all things. Which was the cauſe that he permitted the vſe of all religions within the countries ſubiect to his obedience, were they not meere Atheiſts, Idolaters, or worſhippers of ſtrange and vaine gods.

Neither was proud *Baiazet* as one ignorant of the power or purpoſe of *Tamerlane*, in the meane time idle, but ſtill proſecuted his good fortune for the enlarging of his empire, and increaſing of his ſtrength: wiſely deeming (as the truth was) whatſoeuer meſſages were ſent vnto
E him from *Tamerlane*, to be no other than meere threatenings and forewarnings of his more dangerous purpoſes and deſignes againſt him and his ſtate: which he was ſo farre from fearing, as that to prouoke him the more, he ſpared no intemperate ſpeech, which might moue him to wrath; wiſhing (as ſhould ſeeme) for nothing more than to meet him in the field, there to trie the fortune of a battell with him. So weake is our foreſight of our fortunes to come, and the reach of our vnderſtanding for the apprehenſion or declining of the fatall doome euen preſently hanging ouer our heads; as that we oftentimes through ignorance moſt deſirouſly wiſh for thoſe things which are vnto vs the chiefe occaſions of our vtter ruine and deſtruction.

But here before we enter into farther diſcourſe of the mortall warre betwixt theſe two ſo puiſſant Princes, it ſhall not be much from our purpoſe to ſtep a little out of the way, to ſee what
F this mightie *Tamerlane* (of whom ſo many Princes craued aid) was: who liuing, held the Eaſt in ſuch awe, as that he was commonly called, *The wrath of God*, and *Terrour of the world*: which he then filled with the glorie of his name. Moſt Hiſtoriographers report him to haue been poorely borne, of baſe and obſcure parents: and ſo himſelfe alſo in his youth to haue liued as a poore ſhepheard or heardſman in the mountaines; where conſorting himſelfe with other ſturdie companions of like qualitie and diſpoſition, ſuch as there liued by robbing of marchants and other paſſengers, *The baſe opinion ſome haue, concerning the birth and riſing of Tamerlane.*

passengers, he became a masterfull theefe amongst them : vnto whom other such leaud mates G
daily still more and more resorting, he in short time grew (as they say) to that greatnesse, that he is reported to haue beene of such power, as neuer man but he euer yet came vnto. A matter almost incredible: for albeit that the Romane empire, yea and this great empire of the Turks also, with some others, had their beginnings not much better or greater, the one vnder *Romulus*, and the other vnder *Othoman*; yet grew they not as vpon the sudden, in their times, to any great lustre (neither was it possible for them of so small beginnings so to doe) but by many degrees, and that in long time; euery of the succeeding Princes, according to their fortunes, adding something to their state, before it could be made great: whereas he (by their report) contrary to the course of things both naturall and ciuill (which from their small beginnings grow to no no- H
table perfection or greatnesse, but by degrees, and that in the long reuolution of time) taking his beginning of nothing, grew vpon the sudden to be a burden & terrour vnto the world. Wherein our late Historiographers seeme too much to haue followed the report of the Turks, who by him brought low, and their kingdome almost in one battell subuerted, report nothing simply of him; but in what they may, detracting from his worthie praises, wrongfully charge him with many vntruths, not concerning his parentage only, but euen in the course of his whole life also: making him (as they would haue the world to beleeue) first to haue beene a very abiect amongst men; and then for his inhumane crueltie a very monster in nature, or (as it was long before, but more truly said of another great one much like himselfe) a lumpe of earth tempered with bloud. Which incredible reports concerning so great a monarch, I list not to follow, as too full of dis- I
honour: especially whereas others of no lesse credit than they, with far more modestie and greater probabilitie report of him the greatest honour that may be. He was (as they and the others also say) borne at SAMERCAND, the chiefe citie of the *Zagataian* Tartars, pleasantly situated vpon the riuer IAXARTES: his father was called *Zain-Cham*, or as some others will, *Og*, Prince of the *Zagataian* Tartars, and of the countrey of SACHETAY (sometime part of the famous kingdome of PARTHIA) third in descent from *Zingis*, the great and fortunate leader of the Tartars, before in the former part of this historie remembred. Which *Og*, as a Prince of a peaceable nature (accounting it no lesse honour quietly to keepe the countries left him by his father, than with much trouble and no lesse danger to seeke how to enlarge the same) long liued in most happie rest with his subiects, no lesse happie than himselfe : not so much seeking after the hoording vp of K
gold & siluer (things of that nation not regarded) as contenting himselfe with the increase and profit of his flocks of sheepe, and heards of cattell; then, and yet also, the principall reuenues of the Tartar Kings and Princes: which happily gaue occasion vnto some, ignorant of the manner and custome of those Northerne nations and countries, to account them all for shepheards and heardsmen; and so also to haue reported of this mightie Prince, as of a shepheards sonne, or heardsman himselfe : vainly measuring his nobilitie by the homely manner of his people and subiects, and not by the honour of his house, & heroicall vertues, such as were hardly to be found greater in any Prince of that or other former ages. His peaceable father now well stricken in yeeres, and wearie of the world, deliuered vp vnto him (not yet past fifteene yeeres old) the gouernment of his kingdome, ioyning vnto him two of his most faithfull counsellors, *Odmar* and L
Aly, to assist him in the gouernment of his state (retiring himselfe vnto a solitarie life, the more at quiet to serue God, and so to end his dayes in peace:) which two his trustie seruants and graue counsellors he dearely loued whilest they liued, and much honored the remembrance of them, being dead. The first proofe of his fortune & valour, was against the Moscouit, for spoiling of a citie which had put it selfe vnder his protection; and for entering of his countrey; and for proclaiming of warre against him : whom he in a great battell ouerthrew, hauing slaine fiue and twentie thousand of the Moscouits footmen, and betweene fifteene & sixteene thousand horsemen, with the losse of scarce eight thousand horsemen & foure thousand footmen of his owne. After which battel he beholding so many thousands of men there dead vpon the ground, was so M
far from reioicing thereat, that turning himselfe vnto one of his familiars, he lamented the condition of such as commanded ouer great armies, commending his fathers quiet course of life; accounting him happie in seeking for rest, & the other most vnhappie, which by the destruction of their own kind, sought to procure their owne glorie; protesting himselfe euen from his heart to be grieued to see such sorrowfull tokens of his victorie. With this ouerthrow the Moscouit discouraged, sent embassadours to him for peace, which vpon such honourable conditions as pleased

Tamerlane honourably descended.

The cause why some haue reported him to haue beene a shepheard or heardsman.

A pleaſed him to ſet downe, was by him granted, and ſo the peace concluded. Now the great Cham of TARTARIA (his fathers brother) being growne old, and out of hope of any moe children, moued with the fame of his nephew, after this victorie ſent vnto him diuers preſents, and withall offering him his onely daughter in mariage, and with her to proclaime him heire apparant vnto his empire; as in right he was, being his brothers ſonne, and the daughters not at all ſucceeding in thoſe empires. Which ſo great an offer *Tamerlane* gladly accepted, and ſo the mariage was afterwards with great triumph at the old Emperors court ſolemnized; and he proclaimed heire apparant vnto that great empire. Thus was *Tamerlane* indeed made great, being euer after this mariage by the old Emperour his vncle, and now his father in law, ſo long as he liued,
B notably ſupported, and after his death ſucceeding him alſo in that ſo mightie an empire. Yet in the meane time wanted not this worthie Prince the enuious competitours of theſe his ſo great honours: inſomuch, that whileſt by the aduice & perſwaſion of the old Emperor, he was taking in hand to make warre againſt the great King of CHINA (who had as then gone far beyond his bounds) and ſo was now wel onwards on his way, he was by the conſpiracie of *Calix* (a man of greateſt power & authoritie in the great Cham his court) almoſt thruſt out of his new empire: *Calix* with a right puiſſant armie hauing alreadie ſeized vpon the great citie of CAMBALV, and the citizens alſo generally fauouring thoſe his traiterous proceedings, as diſdaining to be gouerned by the *Zagataian* Tartar. For redreſſe whereof, *Tamerlane* was enforced with the greateſt part of his armie to returne, and meeting with the rebell (who then had in his armie foureſcore
C thouſand horſe, and an hundred thouſand foot) in a great and mortall battell (wherein of the one ſide and of the other were more than fiftie thouſand men ſlaine) ouerthrew him (though not without the great danger of his owne perſon, as being there himſelfe beaten downe to the ground) tooke him priſoner, and afterwards beheaded him. Which ſo dangerous a rebellion, with the death of the traitour, and the chiefe of the conſpiratours repreſſed, and his ſtate in the newneſſe thereof by this victorie well confirmed, he proceeded in his intended war againſt the great King of CHINA; brake downe the ſtrong wall, which the Chinoies had made foure hundred leagues long betwixt the mountaines, for the repreſſing of the incurſions of the Tartars, entered their countrey; and meeting with the King, leading after him three hundred and fiftie thouſand men (whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thouſand horſemen, and the reſt on
D foot) in a great and dreadfull battell, with the ſlaughter of 60000 of his men, ouercame him, and tooke him priſoner: whom for all that he (in the courſe of ſo great a victorie wiſely moderating his fortune) ſhortly after ſet againe at libertie; yet ſo, as that hauing before taken from him the one halfe of his kingdome, and therein left *Odmar* his truſtie lieutenant, with a ſufficient power for the reſtraining of the proud King, if he ſhould againe begin to raiſe any new ſtirres; and withal, impoſed ſuch other conditions as pleaſed himſelfe, with the yeerely tribute of three hundred thouſand crownes, he well prouided for the aſſuring of thoſe his new conqueſts: and ſo in triumph returned with victorie vnto the old Emperour his father in law at CAMBALV, not a little glad to ſee both him and his daughter, who had in all thoſe wars ſtill accompanied him. But leauing him, now thus by birth great, by his fortune greater, but by his vertue greateſt of
E all, (as able now to draw after him almoſt the whole power of the Eaſt) let vs againe returne thither from whence we haue for the better knowledge of him, thus with him digreſſed.

Tamerlane mariethe daughter and heire of the great Cham of Tartarie.

The war againſt the Turkiſh Sultan *Baiazet* (as is aforeſaid) by *Tamerlane* reſolued vpon, he ſent *Axalla* the great captaine to his countrey of SACHETAY (called of ſome ZAGATAI) to giue beginning to the aſſembling of his forces frō all parts; to the end, that with the firſt of the Spring he might ſet forward for the releeſe of ſo many diſtreſſed Princes, and the abating of the pride of ſo great and mightie a tyrant as was *Baiazet*. Now had *Tamerlane* procured from the great Tartarian Emperor, his vncle and father in law, an hundred thouſand footmen, and foureſcore thouſand horſemen; hoping to haue as many moe from SACHETAY his owne countrey, beſides the Lords that for his honours ſake would accompanie him in that his ſo honourable an expe-
F dition, from whom he made account alſo of fiftie thouſand men more which they would bring vnto him, and diuers other great ſupplies which he expected from other places alſo: wherewith he doubted not well to performe what he had ſo honourably determined to take in hand, for the abating of the *Othoman* pride: for which & other ſuch like, he was (as he would oftentimes ſay) by God himſelfe appointed. So taking his leaue of the old Emperour his father in law, and of the Princeſſe his wife (then left behind him for the comfort of her aged father) he departed

from

from CAMBALV towards SAMARCAND, the place of his birth and ſeat of his empire; leauing be- G
hind him the forces brought from the great Emperour his vncle, to come after him to OZARA,
where he had appointed the generall meeting of his armie. At which time amongſt other Prin-
ces that thither brought or ſent their ſupplies, the great Muſcouite being requeſted ſo to do, pro-
miſed to ſend him fifteene thouſand horſe, with a certaine ſumme of money, and leaue for his ar-
mie to paſſe thorow ſo much of his territories as ſhould be neceſſarie: all which he afterwards
performed vnto *Tamerlane*, being glad that he did ſet vpon others, rather than on himſelfe; and
that ſo great a preparation ſhould fall vpon them, whoſe greatneſſe was as dreadfull and dan-
gerous vnto him as to any other. All the earth almoſt at that time being aſtoniſhed at the ſudden
greatneſſe of this *Othoman* King, and the happie ſucceſſe he had in all his wars; not the leaſt cauſe H
that moued *Tamerlane* to oppoſe himſelfe againſt him, deeming it much better to goe and ſet
vpon him in his new conqueſts, than to ſtay vntil he therein ſetled, were come neerer vnto him,
and ſo ſhould debate the quarrell within his owne empire, to his dammage. A good and ſound
reſolution: firſt in that it tended to the deſtruction of the enemies countrey; and then, that if any
thing ſhould fall out otherwiſe with him than well, his countrey ſhould not thereby receiue any
ſuch aſtoniſhment as if the danger were neerer or within the bowels of the ſame. Now in the
meane time that *Tamerlane* lay at SAMARCAND, *Axalla* the great captaine & *Tamerlane* his lieu-
tenant generall, had aſſembled all the armie at OZARA. Whereof *Tamerlane* vnderſtanding, ſent
for him to SAMARCAND, to conferre with him about the ſetting forward of his armie. For al-
though he were ſtil accompanied with great renowned Princes, yet were they no bodie in com- I
pariſon of *Axalla*, whoſe ſound counſell had won him ſuch credit with his Lord and maſter, as
by his aduice he did all things, and without him nothing: which his ſo great authoritie and fa-
uour with his Prince, wanted not the enuie of the court; but that his great vertues, & rare found
courteſie (in ſo great fortune) together with ſo many worthy ſeruices as he had done, ſupported
him againſt the malice of the ſame. He by the commandement of *Tamerlane*, leauing the charge
of the armie at OZARA, with the Prince of THANAIS, another of *Tamerlane* his great captaines,
came himſelfe to SAMARCAND, & there at large diſcourſed with him, about the eſtate and order
of his armie. And ſhortly after, departing with *Axalla* and the reſt from SAMARCAND, for to goe
to OZARA the place where al his armie met being come thither, entred into a great conſultation
with his moſt expert captaines, about the taking of his iourney, & conducting of his armie; as K
whether it were better to leade the ſame by the coaſts of the Muſcouite directly towards CAPHA,
or elſe on the other ſide of the Caſpian ſea by the skirts of PERSIA. Where after long diſcourſe &
ſundrie opinions with their reaſons deliuered, it was in the end reſolued (although the way were
the longer) to paſſe by the Muſcouit, ſo to come vnto the Georgians, and to TREBIZONDA, and
from thence to enter into the *Othoman* King his countrey. And ſo ſetting forward from OZARA,
he came at length to MARANIS, where he ſtaid three daies looking for the forces which Prince
Odmar ſhould ſend him from CHINA, not long before by him conquered: whereof he there re-
ceiued newes, and there cauſed his armie to be paid, and a generall muſter thereof to be taken.
He had there alſo newes of the aid the Muſcouit did ſend him: and cauſed an infinite quantitie of
victuals, & moſt part of his furniture to be conuaied by the Caſpian ſea; being a great cõmoditie L
and eaſe vnto his armie, which marching by land, was of neceſſitie to paſſe ſome twentie leagues
thorow places deſtitute both of victuals and water. *Tamerlane* all the way coaſting alongſt the
ſea ſhoare, paſſed the time in hunting, his armie not comming neere him by ten leagues; which
was ſo great, that it extended it ſelfe full twentie leagues. Comming to the riuer of EDEL, he ſtai-
ed at ZARAZICH whileſt his armie paſſed the riuer at MECHET, and two other bridges which
he had cauſed to be made for that purpoſe. Now the Circaſſians, and Georgians, hearing of the
approach of *Tamerlane* with his huge armie, by their embaſſadours offered him all the helpe and
aſſiſtance they could, in his iourney as he paſſed that way. Theſe Georgians were (and yet are)
Chriſtians, a great and warlike people, of long time tributaries vnto the Greeke Emperours:
and afterwards ſometimes tributaries, & ſometimes confederates vnto the Perſians: but alwaies M
enemies vnto the Turks, by whom (of late and in our remembrance) but eſpecially by *Amurath*
the third, they together with ſome part of the Perſian kingdome, haue beene grieuouſly oppreſ-
ſed, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie may appeare. Of theſe warlike people, glad of *Tamerlane*
his comming, for the repreſſing of the Turke, *Axalla* drew great numbers vnto the ſeruice of
his Prince: who not a little eſteemed of them, being all tall men, very beautifull, of great ſtrength

Prince Axalla in great credit with Tamerlane.

and

A and courage, and withall moſt expert ſouldiers; as hauing oftentimes reſiſted the power of the *Othoman* Kings, by reaſon of the aduantage their country affordeth them, being very rough and hard to come into. By theſe kinde people, *Tamerlane* was in euery place honourably entertained, and his great armie with all neceſſaries plentifully releeued. In paſſing thorow which countrey and the reſt as he marched, he tooke ſuch order with his ſouldiers, that none of the people whereby he paſſed, were any thing by them iniured; inſomuch that if a ſouldier had taken but an apple, or other thing of like value from any man, he died therefore, ſo ſeuere were his commands. It is reported that one of his ſouldiers, hauing taken a little milke from a countrey woman, and ſhe thereof complaining, he cauſed the ſaid ſouldier to be preſently killed, and his ſto-
B macke to be ript; where the milke that he had of late drunke being found, he contented the woman, and ſo ſent her away, who had otherwiſe vndoubtedly died for her falſe accuſation, had it not ſo appeared. Which his ſo great ſeueritie, and in other like caſes, was of many accounted for extreme crueltie: yet was it indeed the wholſome preſeruation of his armie, being ſo great, as that it was thought almoſt impoſſible to haue found ſufficient victuals for the releefe thereof; whereof for all that, there was no want, either of any thing elſe neceſſarie for the vſe of man, his campe being ſtill as a moſt populous and well gouerned citie, ſtored with all manner of things: whereunto both artificers and marchants, from far countries reſorted with their commodities & marchandiſe, as vnto ſome famous mart; and the countrey people, without feare from euery place brought in their country commodities, for which they receiued preſent money, and ſo in
C ſafetie againe departed. So marching on, he at length came to BACHICHICH, where he ſtaied to refreſh his armie eight dayes, and there againe tooke a generall muſter thereof, wherein were found (as moſt write) foure hundred thouſand horſe, and ſix hundred thouſand foot; or as ſome others that were there preſent affirme, three hundred thouſand horſemen, and fiue hundred thouſand foot, of all nations. Vnto whom he there gaue a generall pay, and as his manner was, made vnto them an oration, informing them of ſuch orders as he would haue kept, to the end they might the better obſerue the ſame: with much other militarie diſcipline, whereof he was very curious with his captaines. At which time alſo, it was lawfull for euery common ſouldier to behold him with more boldneſſe than on other dayes, foraſmuch as he did for that time, and ſuch like, lay aſide his imperiall maieſtie, and ſhew himſelfe more familiar vnto them.

The number of Tamerlane his great armie.

D Now could he hardly be perſwaded, that *Baiazet* hauing ſubdued the moſt part of GRECIA, diſtreſſed the Greeke Emperour, and ſo great meanes to recouer whatſoeuer he ſhould loſe in ASIA, would be ſo aduenturous as to come ouer the ſtraits out of EVROPE, to trie the fortune of a battell with him; but rather warily protract the time, to wearie him at length with wants, that in a ſtrange countrey drew ſuch a world of people after him. Wherein he found himſelfe much deceiued: for hauing paſſed the Georgian countrey, and being come to BVYSABVICH, *Axalla* (whom he had not ſeene in eight daies before, becauſe he led the head of the armie) came vnto him with ſuch newes as he knew would be right welcome vnto him: which was, that *Bauazet* had raiſed his ſiege of CONSTANTINOPLE (as indeed he had) for to come and defend his new conqueſts in ASIA; and that he was certainly reſolued, to come to a day of bat-
E tell, not ſo much truſting vnto the multitude of his armie, as to the valour and experience of his ſouldiers, being all men of long well trained vp in the wars. At which vnexpected newes *Tamerlane* greatly reioiced: yet without inſolencie or vaunting, but rather with the countenance of ſuch an one as iudged the euents of battels to be (as they are) alwayes doubtfull: ſaying ſometimes, that a ſmall number wel conducted, did oftentimes carie away the victorie, from the confuſed multitude. Three dayes he ſtaied at BVYSABVICH, and cauſed his ſouldiers continually to march forward, which at GARGA and CHIVSERIG paſſed ouer the riuer EVPHRATES: which he did the rather to maintaine his armie vpon the ſpoile of the enemie, in attending his comming, than vpon himſelfe, or his allies. All the cities that yeelded vnto him by the way as he marched, he fauorably receiued; the other that refuſed to ſubmit themſelues to his obedience, he vſed with
F all extremitie: eſpecially the great and ſtrong citie of SEBASTIA, where certaine of the forerunners of his armie were by the Turks there in garriſon cut off & ſlaine, and the gates of the citie as it were in contempt of him, ſet wide open. Wherewith *Tamerlane* offended, ſent out certaine of his Tartarian horſemen, commanding them vpon paine of his diſpleaſure ſo to beare themſelues againſt their enemies, as that he might at his comming either finde the citie taken, or the gates thereof ſhut againſt him: for he had his men at ſo great command, that no danger was

vnto

vnto them more dreadfull than his displeasure, neither did he punish any thing so seuerely, as cowardise: insomuch, that if in his disport of hunting the wild beast, any did for feare giue way to the Lyon or Beare, and slew him not, was sure to die therefore himselfe; and to turne his backe vpon the enemie, was no lesse danger than to run vpon his owne death. Now the Turks in garrison at SEBASTIA, seeing these Tartarian horsemen marching towards the citie, making little account of them, for that they were not in number many, issued out for to meet them; where they were so furiously charged by these few horsemen, that they were glad to retire, and for hast to shut part of their owne men out of the citie, least the enemie following them at their heeles, should haue entered the gates together with them. Which Turkes so shut out, were by the Tartarians slaine at the gates of the cittie. Shortly after came *Tamerlane* with all his armie, and sate downe before the citie, where he lay still seuen dayes, not making shew of any violence at all, the defendants because the cittie was of great strength, all that while thinking that he had intended by long siege to distresse the same, and the more because of his long lying still. But about the eight day, the walls and towers of the cittie in many places vndermined, were suddainely ouerthrowne, leauing large breaches for the enemie to enter. Wherewith the Turkes in the cittie dismayed, foorthwith yeelded the cittie to *Tamerlane*, in hope so to haue saued their liues: but hee (as the Turkes report) being entered the cittie, commaunded a great number of deepe pits to be digged, and all the people of the cittie, without respect of age, sex, or condition, to be throwne into the same, and there buried quicke. Which done, the citie was by his commaundement vtterly rased also. After that, calling vnto him *Malcozzius*, the gouernour of the cittie, whom he had for that purpose onely spared, he commaunded him to goe and tell his Master what was happened to his strong cittie of SEBASTIA, and what hee had there himselfe seene. Of which tragicall action, *Malcozzius* hauing made true relation vnto *Baiazet*, was by him demanded, whether of the two armies he thought bigger or stronger: for now *Baiazet* had assembled a mightie armie of three hundred thousand men, or as some report of three hundred thousand horsemen, and two hundred thousand foot. Whereunto *Malcozzius* hauing before craued pardon, answered, That it could not bee, but that *Tamerlane* might in reason haue the greater number, for that hee was a commaunder of farre greater countries. Wherewith proud *Baiazet* offended, in great choller replied: Out of doubt, the sight of the Tartarian hath made this coward so afraid, that he thinketh euery enemie to be two.

Sebastia besieged by Tamerlane.

Sebastia yeelded to Tamerlane.

Most of the Latine histories report, that when *Tamerlane* had taken SEBASTIA, he put all the men to the sword, and bringing the women and children into the fields without the citie there ouer-ran them with his horsemen, excepting some few which were reserued for prisoners. As also that *Baiazet* there lost his eldest sonne *Erthogrul* (of some called *Orthobules*) whose death with the losse of the citie, so much greeued him (as is reported) that marching with his great armie against *Tamerlane*, and by the way hearing a countrey shepheard merily reposing himselfe with his homely pipe, as he sate vpon the side of a mountaine feeding his poore flocke; standing still a great while listening vnto him, to the great admiration of many, at last fetching a deepe sigh, brake foorth into these words: O happie sheepeheard, which haddest neither *Orthobules* nor SEBASTIA to loose: bewraying therein his owne discontentment, and yet withall shewing, That worldly blisse consisteth not so much in possessing of much, subject vnto danger, as in joying in a little, contentment deuoid of feare. Howbeit the Turkes themselues reporting the taking of SEBASTIA, speake not of *Orthobules* at all, but giue him lost six yeares before in the warres against *Casi Burchaniden*, and lieth buried by his father at PRVSA. In this cittie of SEBASTIA was lost twelue thousand Turkes, men, women, and children, as their histories report. The rest of the cities all the way as *Tamerlane* marched, warned by the destruction of SEBASTIA, yeelded themselues for feare of like danger: the citizens whereof he courteously vsed, especially the Christians, whom he set at libertie, in respect of *Emanuel* the Greeke Emperour, whom hee seemed wholly therein to gratifie. But he had not gone farre into the Turkes dominion, but that hee was certainely aduertised, how that *Baiazet*, with a great armie was comming against him, and now within thirtie leagues of him: which caused him after that time, to march with his armie more closely. *Axalla* leading the vantgard sent forth *Chianson* prince of CIARCAN, with foure thousand Parthan horsemen, to get knowledge of the Turkes armie, and where *Baiazet* lay, as also what countrey that

A shepheard more happie then Baiazet.

was

A was beyond SENNAS; and if he could learne any thing thereof, to make relation of it vnto him. This Prince of CIARCAN was *Tamerlane* his kinſman, a man of great reputation, and next vnto *Axalla*, in whoſe abſence he had the commanding of the avantgard, his charge; who alſo ſent before him another Parthian captaine with 500 horſemen. So he had not ridden ten leagues, but that he heard newes of *Baiazet* his comming, and hauing ſurpriſed SENNAS, vnderſtood there the certaine eſtate of the Turks armie, which was then at TATAIA, and ſo marching forward. Whereof *Tamerlane* certified, commanded him not to retire from that place, vntill he did ſee the arriuall of the enemie, and thereof to giue him aduertiſement euery houre; being himſelfe reſolued to paſſe on no farther, as come to a faire large plaine, and a country of aduantage for the or-
B der of his battell: for he knew that his armie was farre greater than *Baiazets*, and therefore made choice of thoſe great plains. Yet for that his armie conſiſted of diuers nations, and withall conſidering that he was not to fight againſt the Chinois, a ſoft effeminate people (as of late) but againſt the Turks, a moſt warlike nation, & well acquainted with all maner of fights & martiall ſtratagemes, he thought it good to be well aduiſed how he proceeded againſt them. Wherefore he preſently ſent for *Axalla*, with him to view the ſaid place, and to haue his opinion, Whether it would be for his aduantage or not, there to ſtay? who not miſliking of the choice of the place, yet aduiſed him alſo to keepe SENNAS ſo long as he poſſibly could: and ſo ſent word vnto them that were therein, vpon the approch of the enemie to ſet fire vpon the ſame, and ſo to withdraw themſelues from thence, to the end, that the enemie ſhould not haue any deſire to encampe
C there, but come ſtill forward neere vnto thoſe plains where *Tamerlane* deſired to fight, eſpecially for that he was ſtronger in horſe than *Baiazet*. Thus the Turks ſtill marching on, thought to haue ſurpriſed ſome of their enemies in SENNAS, who as ſoone as they drew neere, retired all, excepting ſome hundred, left of purpoſe to fire the towne: who hauing performed the ſame, retired of purpoſe in great diſorder. Now the Prince of CIARCAN had diuided his forces into two parts, and giuen commandement to the firſt, that as ſoone as they perceiued the enemies to purſue the hundred horſe, that ſo diſorderly of purpoſe fled, they ſhould receiue them, and ſo retire all together. He in the mean time with the reſt of his power ſtood cloſe in a valley, neere vnto a wood ſide, vnſeene at all. Where hauing ſuffered 2000 of the enemies horſe (the avauntcourriers of the Turks armie) to paſſe by him, he following them in the taile, charged them home, the other
D which before retired, now turning vpon them alſo: ſo that the Turks ſeeing themſelues thus beſet, and hardly laid vnto both before and behind, as men diſcouraged fled: in which flight moſt of them were ſlaine, and the reſt taken priſoners. This was the firſt encounter betwixt the Turks and the Parthians: all the priſoners there taken, were by the Prince as a preſent ſent to *Tamerlane*, and amongſt the reſt the Baſſa of NATOLIA, who led theſe troopes: of whom *Tamerlane* earneſtly demanded, what cauſed *Baiazet* ſo little to eſteeme of him, as to ſhew ſo great contempt of his armie, which he ſhould find ſtrong enough to abate his pride. Whereunto the Baſſa anſwered, That his lord was the Sun vpon earth, which could not endure any equall: and that he rather was aſtonied to ſee, how he from ſo farre, had enterpriſed ſo dangerous a iourney, to hinder the fortune of his lord, in whoſe fauour the heauens (as he ſaid) did bend themſelues, to fur-
E ther his greatneſſe, and vnto whom all the world ſubiected it ſelfe; and that he committed great follie in going about to reſiſt the ſame. Vnto which ſo proud a ſpeech *Tamerlane* replied, That he was ſent from heauen to puniſh his raſhneſſe, and to teach him, that the proud are hated of God, whoſe promiſe is to plucke downe the mightie, and raiſe vp the lowly. As for thy ſelfe (ſaid he) thou haſt alreadie felt (although I pitie thy miſhap) what the valour of my Parthian horſe is againſt thy Turkiſh: and thy maſter I haue alreadie cauſed to raiſe his ſiege of CONSTANTINOPLE, and to looke to his owne things here in ASIA. Furthermore, *Tamerlane* changing his ſpeech, demanded of him, If his maſter did come reſolued to bid him battell? Aſſure your ſelfe (ſaid he) there is nothing he more deſireth: & would to God I might acknowledge your greatneſſe, in giuing me leaue to aſſiſt my Lord at that battell. Good leaue haue thou, ſaid *Tamerlane*,
F goe thy wayes, and tell thy lord, that thou haſt ſeene me, and that he ſhall in the battell find me on horſbacke, where he ſhall ſee a greene enſigne diſplaied. The Baſſa thanking him, ſwore that next vnto his lord, he vowed vnto him his ſeruice. And ſo returning, declared vnto *Baiazet*, how that he had ſeene *Tamerlane*: and truly reported vnto him all that he had willed him to ſay; not forgetting ouer all to publiſh his courteſie and bountie: who beſides that he had frankly ſet him at libertie, had alſo giuen him a very faire horſe well furniſhed, although he well knew he was

The prince of Ciarcan dealeth politickly with the forerunners of the Turkes armie.

to ſerue againſt himſelfe. Whereunto *Baiazet* anſwered no more, but that he would ſhortly G
make triall of him, & that he well hoped, before the march were ended, to make him acknowledge his owne follie. The next day the two armies drew neere together, and encamped within a league the one of the other: where all the night long you might haue heard ſuch noiſe of horſes, as that it ſeemed the heauens were full of voices, the aire did ſo reſound, and euery man thought the night long, to come to the triall of his valour, and the gaining of his deſires. The Scythians (a people no leſſe greedie than needie) talked of nothing but the ſpoile, the proud Parthians of their honour, and the poore Chriſtians of their deliuerance, all to be gained by the next dayes victorie: euery man during the night time ſpeaking according to his owne humour. All which *Tamerlane* walking this night vp & downe in his campe, heard, and much reioyced to H
ſee the hope that his ſouldiers had alreadie in generall conceiued of the victorie. Who after the ſecond watch returned vnto his pauilion, & there caſting himſelfe vpon a carpet, had thought to haue ſlept a while. But his cares not ſuffering him ſo to doe, he then (as his manner was) called for a booke, wherein was contained the liues of his fathers and anceſtors, and of other valiant worthies, the which he vſed ordinarily to read, as he then did: not as therewith vainly to deceiue the time, but to make vſe therof, by the imitation of that which was by them worthily done, and declining of ſuch dangers, as they by their raſhnes or ouerſight fell into. And afterwards hauing a little ſlumbered, he commanded *Axalla* to be ſent for, who forthwith came vnto him with diuers other great lords & captains, the chiefe commanders of his armie: with whom after he had a while conſulted of the order of the battell, he mounted on horſebacke himſelfe, and ſent euery I
one of them vnto their owne charges, to put the ſame in readineſſe. At the which very inſtant he receiued newes, that the enemie marched forward, and came to take his ground for the battell: whoſe order of march *Tamerlane* was deſirous to ſee, that ſo accordingly he might marſhall his owne. And hauing cauſed three thouſand horſemen to aduance forward, with charge to begin the skirmiſh, himſelfe followed after to lodge euery part of his forces in ſuch places, as he had foreſeene to be fitteſt for his aduantage. Now ſeeing the Ianizaries march in a ſquare battell in the middeſt, and vpon the two fronts, two great ſquadrons of horſemen, which ſeemed to be thirtie thouſand horſe; and another which aduanced & couered the battailion of the Ianizaries: he thought this their order to be very good, and hard to be broken; and thereupon turning himſelfe vnto *Axalla*, who was neere vnto him, ſaid: I had thought this day to haue fought on K
foot, but I ſee that it behoueth me now to fight on horſebacke, to giue courage vnto my ſouldiers to open the great battalion of our enemies. And my will is, that my men come forward vnto me as ſoone as they may, for I will aduance forward with an hundred thouſand footmen, fiftie thouſand vpon each of my two wings, & in the middeſt of them fortie thouſand of my beſt horſemen. My pleaſure is, that after they haue tried the force of theſe men, that they come vnto my avauntguard, of whom I will diſpoſe, and fiftie thouſand horſe more, in three bodies, whom thou ſhalt command: which I will aſſiſt with foureſcore thouſand horſe, wherein ſhall be mine owne perſon; hauing an hundred thouſand footmen behind me, who ſhall march in two ſquadrons: & for my arereward I appoint 40000 horſe, & 50000 footmen, who ſhall not march but to my aid. And I wil make choice of 10000 of my beſt horſe, whom I will ſend into euery place L
where I ſhall thinke needfull within mine armie, for to impart my commands. Ouer the firſt fortie thouſand horſe the Prince *Ciarcan* commanded: ouer the formoſt footmen was the lord *Synopes* a Genouois, kinſman to *Axalla*, and his lieutenant ouer the footmen, a captaine of great eſtimation: the Prince *Axalla* his owne charge conſiſted of fiue ſquadrons of horſemen. *Baiazet* his armie being alſo both faire, and great, came brauely ſtill on forward towards their enemies, who ſtirred not one whit from the place they had taken for the battell: except certaine light horſemen Scythians, Parthians, and Muſcouites, who ſent out as looſe men, hotly skirmiſhed betwixt the two armies. Now was *Tamerlane* by an eſpie aduertiſed, that *Baiazet*, hauing before giuen order for the diſpoſing of his armie, was on foot in the middeſt of thirtie thouſand Ianizaries, his principall men of warre and greateſt ſtrength, wherein he meant that day to fight, and M
in whom he had repoſed his greateſt hope. His battell of horſe was very faire, amounting to the number of an hundred and fortie thouſand horſe, all old ſouldiers. The Sultan of ÆGYPT hauing alſo ſent vnto his aid thirtie thouſand Mamalukes, all very good horſemen, with thirtie thouſand foot. So that his armie marching all in one front, in forme of an halfe Moone (but not ſo well knit together as was *Tamerlanes*, whoſe ſquadrons directly followed one another) ſeemed

The great and mortall battell betwixt Baiazet and Tamerlane.

A ſeemed almoſt as great as his. And ſo with infinite numbers of moſt horrible outcries, ſtill aduanced forward: *Tamerlane* his ſouldiours all the while ſtanding faſt, with great ſilence.

There was not poſsible to be ſeen a more furious charge, than was by the Turks giuen vpō the prince of CIARCAN, who had commandement not to fight before the enemy came vnto him: neither could haue been choſen a fairer plaine, and where the skilfull choice of the place, was of leſſe aduantage for the one or the other; but that *Tamerlane* had the riuer on the left hand of his armie, ſeruing him to ſome ſmall aduantage. Now this yong prince of CIARCAN with his forty thouſand horſe, was in this firſt encounter almoſt wholly ouerthrowne: yet hauing fought right valiantly, and entred euen into the middeſt of the Ianizaries (where the perſon of *Baiazet* was)

B putting them in diſorder, was himſelfe there ſlaine. About which time, *Axalla* ſet vpon them with the auauntgard, but not with like danger: for hauing ouerthrowne one of the enemies wings, and cut it all to peeces, and his footmen comming to joyne with him as they had been commaunded, he faced the battalion of the Ianizaries, who right valiantly behaued themſelues for the ſafetie of their Prince. This hard fight continued one hower, and yet you could not haue ſeene any ſcattered, but the one ſtill reſolutely fighting againſt the other. You might there haue ſeene the horſemen like mountaines ruſh together, & infinite numbers of men die, crie, lament, and threaten all at one inſtant. *Tamerlane* had patience all this while, to ſee the euent of this ſo mortall a fight: but perceiuing his men at length to giue ground, he ſent ten thouſand of his horſe to joyne againe with the ten thouſand appointed for the arcareward, and commaunded

C them to aſſiſt him at ſuch time as he ſhould haue need of them: and at the verie ſame time, charged himſelfe, and made them giue him roome; cauſing the footmen to charge alſo, ouer whom the prince of THANAIS commaunded, who gaue a furious onſet vpon the battalion of the Ianizaries, wherein was yet the perſon of *Baiazet*, who had ſuſtained a great burthen. Now *Baiazet* had in his armie a great number of mercinarie Tartars, called *Deſtenſes*, with many thouſands of other ſoldiers takē vp in the countries of the poor exiled Mahometā princes; in whoſe juſt quarell, and the Greeke Emperours, *Tamerlane* had chiefely vndertaken that war: theſe Tartarians and other ſouldiours, ſeeing ſome their friends, and otherſome their naturall and loning princes in the armie of *Tamerlane*, ſtroken with the terrour of diſloyaltie, and abhorring the cru-

D eltie of the proud tirant, in the heat of the battaile reuolted from *Baiazet* to their owne princes: which their reuolt, much weakened *Baiazet* his forces. Who neuertheleſſe with his owne men of warre, eſpecially the Ianizaries, and the helpe of the Chriſtian ſouldiours brought to his aid from SERVIA, and other places of EVROPE, with great courage maintained the fight; but the multitude, and not true valor, preuailed: for, as much as might be done by valiant & couragious men, was by the Ianizaries and the reſt perfourmed, both for the preſeruation of the perſon of their prince, and the gaining of the victorie. But in the end, the horſemen with whom *Tamerlane* himſelfe was giuing a freſh charge, & his auauntgard wholy knit againe vnto him, reenforcing the charge, he with much adoe obtained the victorie. *Baiazet* himſelfe wounded, and now mounted on horſebacke thinking to haue eſcaped by flight, fell into the hands of *Axalla*. Vnto whom he yeelded himſelfe (thinking it had beene *Tamerlane*) who for a ſpace knew him not,

E but tooke him for ſome other great commander of the Turks. *Muſa* (ſurnamed *Zelebi*, or, The noble) one of *Baiazet* his ſonnes, with diuers other of *Baiazet* his great captaines, were there taken alſo: and amongſt the reſt, *George* the Deſpot of SERVIA, who notwithſtanding this misfortune, had that day gained vnto himſelfe the reputation of a great and worthie captaine, inſomuch that *Tamerlane* euen in the heat of the battell, maruelling to ſee him, and the Seruians with the other Chriſtians which he had brought to the aid of *Baiazet*, ſo valiantly to fight, ſaid vnto ſome of the captaines that were neere vnto him, See how couragiouſly yonder religious fight: ſuppoſing them by their ſtrange attire, to haue beene ſome of the Turks ſuperſtitious votaries. But being now taken, and afterwards brought to *Tamerlane*, he was by him courteouſly welcomed: but yet withall reproued, for that he had fought for *Baiazet* againſt him, who was

F come in fauour of the Chriſtian Emperour, and the other poore oppreſſed Princes, ſuch as the Deſpot himſelfe was. Who thereunto boldly anſwered, That indeed it was not according to his dutie, but according to the proſperitie of *Baiazet*, vnto whom it ſeemed that all the world did bend: and that his owne ſafetie had cauſed him, though againſt his will, to take part with him. Whereupon *Tamerlane* held him excuſed: and ſo without more adoe gaue him leaue at his owne pleaſure to depart.

The Prince of Ciarcan ſlaine.

The Turks ouerthrowne.

Baiazet and his ſonne Muſa taken priſoners.

to ſerue againſt himſelfe. Whereunto *Baiazet* anſwered no more, but that he would ſhortly G
make triall of him, & that he well hoped, before the march were ended, to make him acknowledge his owne follie. The next day the two armies drew neere together, and encamped within a league the one of the other: where all the night long you might haue heard ſuch noiſe of horſes, as that it ſeemed the heauens were full of voices, the aire did ſo reſound, and euery man thought the night long, to come to the triall of his valour, and the gaining of his deſires. The Scythians (a people no leſſe greedie than needie) talked of nothing but the ſpoile, the proud Parthians of their honour, and the poore Chriſtians of their deliuerance, all to be gained by the next dayes victorie: euery man during the night time ſpeaking according to his owne humour. All which *Tamerlane* walking this night vp & downe in his campe, heard, and much reioyced to H
ſee the hope that his ſouldiers had alreadie in generall conceiued of the victorie. Who after the ſecond watch returned vnto his pauilion, & there caſting himſelfe vpon a carpet, had thought to haue ſlept a while. But his cares not ſuffering him ſo to doe, he then (as his manner was) called for a booke, wherein was contained the liues of his fathers and anceſtors, and of other valiant worthies, the which he vſed ordinarily to read, as he then did: not as therewith vainly to deceiue the time, but to make vſe therof, by the imitation of that which was by them worthily done, and declining of ſuch dangers, as they by their raſhnes or ouerſight fell into. And afterwards hauing a little ſlumbered, he commanded *Axalla* to be ſent for, who forthwith came vnto him with diuers other great lords & captains, the chiefe commanders of his armie: with whom after he had a while conſulted of the order of the battell, he mounted on horſebacke himſelfe, and ſent euery I
one of them vnto their owne charges, to put the ſame in readineſſe. At the which very inſtant he receiued newes, that the enemie marched forward, and came to take his ground for the battell: whoſe order of march *Tamerlane* was deſirous to ſee, that ſo accordingly he might marſhall his owne. And hauing cauſed three thouſand horſemen to aduance forward, with charge to begin the skirmiſh, himſelfe followed after to lodge euery part of his forces in ſuch places, as he had foreſeene to be fitteſt for his aduantage. Now ſeeing the Ianizaries march in a ſquare battell in the middeſt, and vpon the two fronts, two great ſquadrons of horſemen, which ſeemed to be thirtie thouſand horſe; and another which aduanced & couered the battailion of the Ianizaries: he thought this their order to be very good, and hard to be broken; and thereupon turning himſelfe vnto *Axalla*, who was neere vnto him, ſaid: I had thought this day to haue fought on K
foot, but I ſee that it behoueth me now to fight on horſebacke, to giue courage vnto my ſouldiers to open the great battalion of our enemies. And my will is, that my men come forward vnto me as ſoone as they may, for I will aduance forward with an hundred thouſand footmen, fiftie thouſand vpon each of my two wings, & in the middeſt of them fortie thouſand of my beſt horſemen. My pleaſure is, that after they haue tried the force of theſe men, that they come vnto my avauntguard, of whom I will diſpoſe, and fiftie thouſand horſe more, in three bodies, whom thou ſhalt command: which I will aſſiſt with foureſcore thouſand horſe, wherein ſhall be mine owne perſon; hauing an hundred thouſand footmen behind me, who ſhall march in two ſquadrons: & for my arereward I appoint 40000 horſe, & 50000 footmen, who ſhall not march but to my aid. And I wil make choice of 10000 of my beſt horſe, whom I will ſend into euery place L
where I ſhall thinke needfull within mine armie, for to impart my commands. Ouer the firſt fortie thouſand horſe the Prince *Ciarcan* commanded: ouer the formoſt footmen was the lord *Synopes* a Genouois, kinſman to *Axalla*, and his lieutenant ouer the footmen, a captaine of great eſtimation: the Prince *Axalla* his owne charge conſiſted of fiue ſquadrons of horſemen. *Baiazet* his armie being alſo both faire, and great, came brauely ſtill on forward towards their enemies, who ſtirred not one whit from the place they had taken for the battell: except certaine light horſemen Scythians, Parthians, and Muſcouites, who ſent out as looſe men, hotly skirmiſhed betwixt the two armies. Now was *Tamerlane* by an eſpie aduertiſed, that *Baiazet*, hauing before giuen order for the diſpoſing of his armie, was on foot in the middeſt of thirtie thouſand Ianizaries, his principall men of warre and greateſt ſtrength, wherein he meant that day to fight, and M
in whom he had repoſed his greateſt hope. His battell of horſe was very faire, amounting to the number of an hundred and fortie thouſand horſe, all old ſouldiers. The Sultan of ÆGYPT hauing alſo ſent vnto his aid thirtie thouſand Mamalukes, all very good horſemen, with thirtie thouſand foot. So that his armie marching all in one front, in forme of an halfe Moone (but not ſo well knit together as was *Tamerlanes*, whoſe ſquadrons directly followed one another) ſeemed

The great and mortall battell betwixt Baiazet and Tamerlane.

A seemed almost as great as his. And so with infinite numbers of most horrible outcries, still aduanced forward: *Tamerlane* his souldiours all the while standing fast, with great silence.

There was not possible to be seen a more furious charge, than was by the Turks giuen vpō the prince of CIARCAN, who had commandement not to fight before the enemy came vnto him: neither could haue been chosen a fairer plaine, and where the skilfull choice of the place, was of lesse aduantage for the one or the other; but that *Tamerlane* had the riuer on the left hand of his armie, seruing him to some small aduantage. Now this yong prince of CIARCAN with his forty thousand horse, was in this first encounter almost wholly ouerthrowne: yet hauing fought right valiantly, and entred euen into the middest of the Ianizaries (where the person of *Baiazet* was)

B putting them in disorder, was himselfe there slaine. About which time, *Axalla* set vpon them with the avauntgard, but not with like danger: for hauing ouerthrowne one of the enemies wings, and cut it all to peeces, and his footmen comming to joyne with him as they had been commaunded, he faced the battalion of the Ianizaries, who right valiantly behaued themselues for the safetie of their Prince. This hard fight continued one hower, and yet you could not haue seene any scattered, but the one still resolutely fighting against the other. You might there haue seene the horsemen like mountaines rush together, & infinite numbers of men die, crie, lament, and threaten all at one instant. *Tamerlane* had patience all this while, to see the euent of this so mortall a fight: but perceiuing his men at length to giue ground, he sent ten thousand of his horse to joyne againe with the ten thousand appointed for the arcareward, and commaunded

C them to assist him at such time as he should haue need of them: and at the verie same time, charged himselfe, and made them giue him roome; causing the footmen to charge also, ouer whom the prince of THANAIS commaunded, who gaue a furious onset vpon the battalion of the Ianizaries, wherein was yet the person of *Baiazet*, who had sustained a great burthen. Now *Baiazet* had in his armie a great number of mercinarie Tartars, called *Destenses*, with many thousands of other soldiers takē vp in the countries of the poor exiled Mahometā princes; in whose just quarell, and the Greeke Emperours, *Tamerlane* had chiefely vndertaken that war: these Tartarians and other souldiours, seeing some their friends, and othersome their naturall and loning princes in the armie of *Tamerlane*, stroken with the terrour of disloyaltie, and abhorring the crueltie of the proud tirant, in the heat of the battaile reuolted from *Baiazet* to their owne princes:

D which their reuolt, much weakened *Baiazet* his forces. Who neuertheless with his owne men of warre, especially the Ianizaries, and the helpe of the Christian souldiours brought to his aid from SERVIA, and other places of EVROPE, with great courage maintained the fight; but the multitude, and not true valor, preuailed: for, as much as might be done by valiant & couragious men, was by the Ianizaries and the rest perfourmed, both for the preseruation of the person of their prince, and the gaining of the victorie. But in the end, the horsemen with whom *Tamerlane* himselfe was giuing a fresh charge, & his avauntgard wholy knit againe vnto him, reenforcing the charge, he with much adoe obtained the victorie. *Baiazet* himselfe wounded, and now mounted on horseback thinking to haue escaped by flight, fell into the hands of *Axalla*. Vnto whom he yeelded himselfe (thinking it had beene *Tamerlane*) who for a space knew him not,

E but tooke him for some other great commander of the Turks. *Musa* (surnamed *Zelebi*, or, The noble) one of *Baiazet* his sonnes, with diuers other of *Baiazet* his great captaines, were there taken also: and amongst the rest, *George* the Despot of SERVIA, who notwithstanding this misfortune, had that day gained vnto himselfe the reputation of a great and worthie captaine, insomuch that *Tamerlane* euen in the heat of the battell, maruelling to see him, and the Seruians with the other Christians which he had brought to the aid of *Baiazet*, so valiantly to fight, said vnto some of the captaines that were neere vnto him, See how couragiously yonder religious fight: supposing them by their strange attire, to haue beene some of the Turks superstitious votaries. But being now taken, and afterwards brought to *Tamerlane*, he was by him courteously welcomed: but yet withall reproued, for that he had fought for *Baiazet* against him, who was

F come in fauour of the Christian Emperour, and the other poore oppressed Princes, such as the Despot himselfe was. Who thereunto boldly answered, That indeed it was not according to his dutie, but according to the prosperitie of *Baiazet*, vnto whom it seemed that all the world did bend: and that his owne safetie had caused him, though against his will, to take part with him. Whereupon *Tamerlane* held him excused: and so without more adoe gaue him leaue at his owne pleasure to depart.

The Prince of Ciarcan slaine.

The Turks ouerthrowne.

Baiazet and his sonne Musa taken prisoners.

Baiazet brought before Tamerlane with his pride.

Baiazet alſo himſelfe, being afterwards brought vnto *Tamerlane* as a priſoner, and by him courteouſly entertained, neuer ſhewed any token of ſubmiſſion at all, but according to his proud nature, without reſpect of his preſent ſtate, preſumptuouſly anſwered him vnto whatſoeuer he demanded. Wherewith *Tamerlane* moued, told him, that it was now in his power to make him to loſe his life. Whereunto he anſwered no more, but, Doe it: for that, that loſſe ſhould be his greateſt happineſſe. *Tamerlane* afterwards demanding of him, what made him ſo proud as to enterpriſe to bring into his ſubiection ſo noble a Prince as was the Greeke Emperour? he anſwered, Euen the ſame thing that hath moued thee to inuade me, namely the deſire of glorie and ſoueraigntie. But wherefore then (ſaid *Tamerlane*) doeſt thou vſe ſo great crueltie towards them thou haſt ouercome, without reſpect of age or ſex? That did I (ſaid he) to giue the greater terrour vnto mine enemies. And what wouldeſt thou haue done with me (ſaid *Tamerlane*) if it had beene my fortune to haue fallen into thy hands, as thou art now in mine? I would (ſaid *Baiazet*) haue encloſed thee in a cage of iron, and ſo in triumph haue carried thee vp and downe my kingdome. Euen ſo (ſaid *Tamerlane*) ſhalt thou be ſerued. And ſo cauſing him to be taken out of his preſence, turning vnto his followers, ſaid: Behold a proud and cruell man, he deſerueth to be chaſtiſed accordingly, and to be made an example vnto all the proud and cruell of the world, of the iuſt wrath of God againſt them. I acknowledge that God hath this day deliuered into my hands a great enemie, to whom we muſt therefore giue thanks: which he performed the ſame day. For the battell was won at foure of the clocke, and there was yet fiue houres of day light. The next day *Tamerlane* commanded the dead to be buried, where amongſt the reſt, they found the bodie of the Prince of CIARCAN dead, in the middeſt of the Ianizaries, where he lay encloſed with their dead bodies, in token he died not vnreuenged: whoſe vntimely death *Tamerlane* for all that greatly lamented; for he was his kinſman, and like enough one day to haue done him great ſeruice. Whoſe dead bodie *Tamerlane* cauſed to be embalmed, and with two thouſand horſe, (and diuers of the Turks priſoners, chained and tied together) to be conuaied to SAMERCAND, vntill his comming thither. All the other dead bodies were with all honour that might be, buried at SINNAS.

This great bloodie battell fought in the yeere of our Lord 1397 not farre from the mount STELLA (where ſometime the great King *Mithrydates*, was by *Pompey* the Great, in a great battell ouerthrowne) was fought from ſeuen a clocke in the morning, vntill foure in the after noone: victorie all that while as it were with doubtfull wings, houering ouer both armies, as vncertaine where to light; vntill at length the fortune of *Tamerlane* preuailed. Whoſe wiſdome (next vnto God) gaue that daies victorie vnto his ſouldiers: for that the politique tiring of the ſtrong forces of *Baiazet*, was the ſafegard of his owne; whereas if he had gone vnto the battell in one front, aſſuredly the multitude finding ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, had put it ſelfe into confuſion: whereas this ſucceſſiue manner of aiding of his men, made them all vnto him profitable. The number of them that were in this battell ſlaine, is of diuers diuerſly reported: the Turks themſelues reporting, that *Baiazet* there loſt the noble *Muſtapha* his ſonne, with two hundred thouſand of his men, and *Tamerlane* not many fewer: and ſome other ſpeaking of a farre leſſe number, as that there ſhould be ſlaine of the Turks about threeſcore thouſand, and of *Tamerlane* his armie not paſt twentie thouſand. But leauing the certaintie of the number vnto the credit of the reporters, like enough it is that the ſlaughter was exceeding great in ſo long a fight, betwixt two ſuch armies, as neuer before (as I ſuppoſe) met in field together.

By this one daies euent, is plainly to be ſeene the vncertaintie of worldly things, & what ſmall aſſurance euen the greateſt haue in them. Behold *Baiazet* the terrour of the world, and as he thought, ſuperiour to fortune, in an inſtant with his ſtate in one battell ouerthrowne into the bottome of miſerie and deſpaire: and that at ſuch time as he thought leaſt, euen in the middeſt of his greateſt ſtrength. It was three daies (as they report) before he could be pacified, but as a deſperate man, ſtil ſeeking after death, & calling for it: neither did *Tamerlane* after he had once ſpoken with him, at all afterwards courteouſly vſe him, but as of a proud man cauſed ſmall account to be made of him. And to manifeſt that he knew how to puniſh the haughtie, made him to be ſhackled in fetters and chaines of gold, and ſo to be ſhut vp in an iron cage made like a grate, in ſuch ſort, as that he might on euery ſide be ſeene; and ſo carried him vp and downe as he paſſed thorow ASIA, to be of his owne people ſcorned and derided. And to his farther diſgrace, vpon feſtiuall daies vſed him for a footſtoole to tread vpon, when he mounted to horſe: and at other

Baiazet like a beaſt ſhut vp in an iron cage.

times

A times ſcornfully fed him like a dogge with crums fallen from his table. A rare example of the vncertaintie of worldly honour, that he vnto whoſe ambitious minde, ASIA, and EVROPE, two great parts of the world were too little, ſhould be now carried vp and downe cooped vp in a little iron cage, like ſome perillous wilde beaſt. All which *Tamerlane* did, not ſo much for the hatred to the man, as to manifeſt the iuſt iudgement of God againſt the arrogant follie of the proud. It is reported that *Tamerlane* being requeſted by one of his noble men that might be bold to ſpeake vnto him, to remit ſome part of his ſeueritie againſt the perſon of ſo great a Prince; anſwered, That he did not vſe that rigour againſt him as a King, but rather did puniſh him as a proud ambitious tyrant, polluted with the bloud of his owne brother.

B Now this ſo great an ouerthrow, brought ſuch a feare vpon all the countries poſſeſſed by *Baiazet* in ASIA, that *Axalla* ſent before by *Tamerlane* with fortie thouſand horſe, and an hundred thouſand foot, without carriages, to proſecute the victorie, came without reſiſtance to PRVSA; whither al the remainder of *Baiazet* his armie was retired, with the Baſſa *Muſtapha*: the countrey as he went, ſtill yeelding vnto him. Yea the great Baſſa, with the reſt, hearing of his comming, and thinking themſelues not now in any ſafetie in ASIA, fled ouer the ſtrait of HELLESPONTVS to CALLIPOLIS, and ſo to HADRIANOPLE; carrying with them out of the battell *Solyman*, *Baiazet* his eldeſt ſonne, whom they ſet vp in his fathers place; *Mahomet* his younger brother preſently vpon the ouerthrow being fled to AMASIA: of whom, and the reſt of *Baiazet* his children, more ſhall be ſaid hereafter. *Axalla* comming to PRVSA, had the citie without reſiſtance

Solyman ſet vp in his fathers ſtead.

Prusa taken by Axalla.

C yeelded vnto him, which he rifled: and there with other of *Baiazet* his wiues and concubines, tooke priſoner the faire *Deſpina*, *Baiazet* his beſt beloued wife, to the doubling of his griefe.

Emanuel the Greeke Emperour now hearing of *Tamerlane* his comming to PRVSA, ſent his embaſſadours (the moſt honourable of his court) thither before to *Axalla*: by whom they were there ſtaied, vntill the comming of *Tamerlane*; who receiued them with all the honour that might be, ſhewing vnto them all his magnificence, and the order of his campe, to their great admiration. For it reſembled a moſt populous and well gouerned citie, for the order that was therein, which brought vnto it plentie of all kind of victuals, and other marchandiſe, as well for pleaſure as for vſe. By theſe embaſſadours, the Greeke Emperour ſubmitted all his empire together with his perſon, vnto *Tamerlane* the great conquerour, as his moſt faithfull ſubiect and vaſ-

D ſall: which he was bound (as he ſaid) to doe, for that he was by him deliuered from the moſt cruell tyrant in the world: as alſo for that the long iourney he had paſſed, and the diſcommodities he had endured, with the loſſe of his people, and the danger of his perſon, could not be recompenced, but by the offer of his owne life, and his ſubiects; which he did for euer dedicate to his ſeruice, with all the fidelitie and loyaltie that ſo great a benefit might deſerue: beſides that his ſo many vertues, & rare accompliſhments, which made him famous thorowout the world, did bind him ſo to doe. And that therefore he would attend him in his chiefe citie, to deliuer it into his hands as his owne, with all the empire of GREECE. Now the Greeke embaſſadours looked for no leſſe than to fall into bondage to *Tamerlane*, thinking that which they offered to be ſo great & delicate a morſell, as that it would not be refuſed, eſpecially of ſuch a conquering

E Prince as was *Tamerlane*; and that the acceptance thereof in kindneſſe, and friendſhip, was the beſt bargaine they could make therein. But they receiued anſwere from this worthie Prince, farre beyond their expectation. For he with a milde countenance beholding them, anſwered them, That he was not come from ſo farre a countrey, or vndertaken ſo much paines for the enlargement of his dominions alreadie large enough, (too baſe a thing for him to put himſelfe into ſo great danger and trauell for) but rather to winne honour, and thereby to make his name famous vnto all poſteritie for euer: And that therefore it ſhould well appeare vnto the world, that he was come to aid him, being requeſted as his friend and allie: And that his vpright meaning therein, was the greateſt cauſe, that God from aboue had beheld his power, and thereby bruſed the head of the greateſt and fierceſt enemie of mankinde that was vnder heauen: And

F now to get him an immortall name, would make free ſo great and flouriſhing a citie as was CONSTANTINOPLE, gouerned by ſo noble and ancient an houſe as the Emperours: That vnto his courage, he had alwaies faith ioyned, ſuch as ſhould neuer ſuffer him to make ſo great a breach in his reputation, as that it ſhould be reported of him, That in the colour of a friend, he came to inuade the dominions of his allies: That he deſired no more, but that the ſeruice he had done for the Greeke Emperour, might for euer be ingrauen in the memorie of his poſteritie,

to the end they might for euer wish well vnto him and his successours, by remembring the good G
he had done them; That long might the noble Emperour liue, happily to gouerne his estate.
And that before his returne he would so well consider for the establishing of the same, as that he
should not lightly fall againe into the like ieopardie, alwayes assuring himselfe of his good will
and fauour towards him. Easie it is to iudge, what ioy these Greeke embassadours receiued, to
heare this so kind an answere from the mouth of *Tamerlane* himselfe: who rather than he would
seeme to breake his faith, refused an empire offered vnto him, with one of the most stately and
magnificent cities of the world. Few princes (I suppose) would performe such a part: but so there
be likewise but few *Tamerlanes* in the world. These embassadours by the commandement of
Tamerlane, were by *Axalla* royally feasted, and all the honour done them that might be. One of H
them being sent backe to carrie these vnexpected newes vnto the Greeke Emperour, filled both
him and all the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE with exceeding ioy and gladnesse, which both
he and his subiects in generall spared not with bonfires and all other signes of ioy & pleasure to
manifest. And the more to shew his thankfulnesse, shortly after by the aduice of his graue coun-
sellors, passed ouer the strait into ASIA to see *Tamerlane* at PRVSA, and in person himselfe to
giue him thankes: who hearing of his comming, and very glad thereof, presently vpon the first
dayes iourney sent the Prince *Axalla* to meet him, and to certifie him of the ioy that he conceiued,
to haue the good hap for to see him, as also to conduct him to PRVSA: where those two
great Princes, with the greatest magnificence that might be, met, and so spent one whole day to-
gether. The Greeke Emperour the next day taking his leaue, was by *Tamerlane* with much ho- I
nour conducted out of the citie. Now had *Tamerlane* himselfe conceiued a secret desire to see
Tamerlane goeth to Constantinople. this so famous a citie as was CONSTANTINOPLE, from which he was not now farre, yet
would he not goe thither as a conquerour, but as a priuate person: which by the means of *Axalla*
was accomplished, and he thereinto by the Greeke Emperour priuatly receiued, and with all fa-
miliaritie possible, entertained: the Emperour shewing vnto him all the rare & excellent things
that were therein to be seene: and the other Greeke Princes deuising all the meanes they could
to doe him pleasure, and them which did accompanie him; who were in a manner all apparel-
led after the Greeke fashion. At which time the Greeke Emperour himselfe was curious to shew
vnto him all the faire gardens alongst the sea coast, a league or two from CONSTANTINOPLE,
and so priuatly conducting him, spent fiue or six daies, with al the mirth that might be possible: K
Tamerlan much delighted with the pleasurs of Constantinople. *Tamerlane* by the way oftentimes saying, That he had neuer seene a fairer citie: and that it was
indeed the citie (considering the faire and rich situation thereof) of right, worthie to command
all the world. He wondered at the costly buildings of the temples, the faire ingrauen pillars, the
high pyramides, and the making of the faire gardens, and oftentimes afterwards said, That he
nothing repented him of his so long and dangerous a voyage, if it had beene onely but to haue
preserued from fire and sword so noble a citie as that was. In the Greeke Emperor he commen-
ded greatly his mild nature and courtesie: who knowing him aboue all things to take pleasure
in faire seruiceable horses, gaue vnto him thirtie of the faireſt, strongest, and readiest, that were
possible to be gotten, all most richly furnished; and sent likewise faire presents vnto all the prin-
ces and great commanders of the armie, and bountifully caused to be deliuered vnto them all L
things which he thought to be necessarie for the armie. So after many great kindnesses in short
time passed, and a strait bond of friendship made, and by solemne oath confirmed betwixt the
two great Princes, *Tamerlane* with great contentment tooke his leaue of the Emperour, and re-
turned againe to his armie at PRVSA. Wherewith he now at his pleasure without resistance wa-
sted and spoiled all *Baiazet* his dominion in ASIA, no man daring to make head against him.

The yeere being now well spent, and Winter drawing on, *Tamerlane* dispersed his armie in-
to diuers of the prouinces of the lesser ASIA, expecting still when some of *Baiazet* his sonnes or
other friends should make sute or meanes vnto him for his deliuerance, but none came: some
fearing *Tamerlane* his heauie indignation, and others no lesse dreading the fierce nature of *Baia-
zet* himselfe, who if he had beene deliuered, was like enough (as was thought) to haue taken M
sharpe reuenge vpon all them which forsooke him in the late battell, and therefore neuer made
intercession for him. Whereupon *Tamerlane* one day passing by him, said vnto him: I maruell
that none of thy sonnes or friends either come to see thee or to intreat for thee, it must needs be
that thou hast euill deserued of them, as thou hast of others: yet how thinkest thou, If I should
set thee at libertie, would they againe receiue thee as their Lord and Soueraigne, or not? To
whom

A whom *Baiazet* boldly anſwered: Were I at libertie, thou ſhouldeſt well ſee, how that I want neither courage nor meanes to reuenge all my wrongs, and to make thoſe diſobedient and forgetfull, to know their duties better. Which his proud anſwere, made *Tamerlane* to keepe a ſtraighter hand ouer him.

In this great and bloudie warre, wherein the *Othoman* empire had almoſt taken end, the Sultan of Ægypt had (as is aforeſaid) giuen aid vnto *Baiazet*: which *Tamerlane* tooke in ſo euill part, as that he reſolued to be thereof reuenged. For as he was vnto his friends of all others moſt kind and courteous, ſo was he to his enemies no leſſe terrible and dreadful. Yet thinking it good before his departure out of the leſſer Asia, to take ſome good order with theſe his new con-
B queſts: and finding nothing more honourable to reſolue vpon, he reſtored vnto the poore Mahometane Princes (*Tachretin*, *Iſfendiar*, *Germian*, and the reſt before fled vnto him for refuge) all their ancient inheritance, with ſomething more; as he did alſo diuers cities and countries of Natolia vnto the Greeke Emperour, for the yeerely tribute of foure hundred thouſand duckats of gold, and eight hundred thouſand franks of ſiluer, which the Emperour promiſed to pay vnto him yeerely. And ſo hauing enriched his armie with the ſpoiles of the *Othoman* empire in Asia, he turned his forces againſt the Ægyptian Sultan, and ſo paſſing thorow Caramania, entred into Syria, then part of the Sultans kingdome: where neere vnto Alleppo (being be-
A great battell fought betwixt the Sultan of Aegypt and Tamerlane.
fore yeelded vnto him) was fought betwixt them a great and mortall battell, the Sultan hauing in his armie an hundred thouſand foot, and ſeuentie foure thouſand horſe: whereof there were
C thirtie thouſand Mamelukes, accounted the beſt horſemen of the world. In which battell, *Axalla* the great captaine, with the avauntguard of *Tamerlane* his armie, was hardly diſtreſſed, and *Axalla* himſelfe taken: but forthwith againe reſcued by *Tamerlane*: who had he not by his comming on with new forces, ſpeedily reſtored the battell, cunningly protracted by *Axalla*, that day was like enough to haue made an end of his good fortune. But the victorie after a long and cruell fight (wherein were foureſcore thouſand men on both ſides ſlaine) inclining to *Tamerlane*, the Sultan fled, *Tamerlane* purſuing him by the ſpace of three leagues. After which victorie, *Tamerlane* diuiding his armie, ſent *Axalla* with fortie thouſand horſe and fiftie thouſand foot, to purſue the Sultan alongſt the coaſt of Arabia: who oftentimes ſhewed himſelfe, with ſome foure thouſand horſe to haue hindred *Axalla*, who hauing the ſmalleſt forces, followed
D him the neareſt. *Tamerlane* himſelfe in the meane time, with threeſcore thouſand horſe, and an hundred thouſand foot, marching alongſt the ſea coaſt, had all the cities as he went yeelded vnto him, as Magata, Aman, otherwiſe called Apamea, Tortosa, Barryto, and Nephthalin: only the ſtrong citie of Damasco refuſed to receiue him, whereinto the Sultan had put
Damaſco won by Tamerlane.
the Prince *Zamadzen*, with a ſtrong garriſon, who did what he might to haue defended the ſame. But all in vaine, for *Tamerlane* hauing by batterie ouerthrowne a great part of the wall, by aſſault won the citie, only the caſtle yet remaining, as being of a wonderfull ſtrength, and almoſt impregnable: whereinto ſuch a multitude had at the taking of the citie retired themſelues, as was not poſſible therein long to liue: who in ſhort time pinched with hunger, and many of them dead, the reſt vpon ſafeguard of their liues offered to yeeld: whom for all that *Tamerlane*
E would not receiue to mercie, to make them feele what it was to hold out againſt him: ſo that moſt of them dying of famine, the reſt yeelded without condition, and were for their obſtinacie almoſt all ſlaine. Which his ſeueritie towards them of Damasco, cauſed, that thirtie leagues off they brought the keyes of their cities vnto him, in token of their ſubmiſſion: whom he no way moleſted, more than in contributing vnto the charge of his armie. From Damasco he turned directly towards Ierusalem, at which time they of the citie had driuen out the Sultans garriſon, as had almoſt all they of Iudea, ſubmitting themſelues vnto *Tamerlane*. At Chorazin the Sultan had left ſix thouſand men in garriſon for the defence of the place, who at the firſt ſeemed to ſtand vpon their guard: but afterward diſmaied to ſee ſo great an armie before it, and that *Tamerlane* hauing approched the wals, was ſet downe to haue it, they ſubmitted them-
F ſelues and found mercie. In which citie *Tamerlane* left certaine of his men in garriſon, for the better repreſſing of the Mamalukes, who with often incurſions troubled his armie. So marching on, he himſelfe with certaine horſemen for his guard, rode to Ierusalem to viſit the ſepul-
Tamerlane commeth to Ieruſalem.
chre ſo much reuerenced of all nations, and there to make his oblations: where he was of the inhabitants ioyfully receiued, and hauing ſought out all the antiquities of that ancient citie, would be conducted vnto all the places thereabouts, where Ieſus Chriſt had preached,

euen

euen as the pilgrimes doe: and comming to the ſepulchre, gaue therunto, and the deuout there, G
many rich and precious gifts, to the great contentment of all men (to ſee him honour thoſe
holy places) but of the Iewes onely, who greatly blamed him for ſo doing: of whom of all
others *Tamerlane* made no reckoning, but called them the accurſed of God. There had he
newes that the Sultan had gathered all his forces, and being come into ÆGYPT, was there
fortifying of his cities, eſpecially the great cities of ALEXANDRIA and CAIER. *Tamerlane*
his armie in the meane time by his commandement came towards ÆGYPT to DAMIATA:
which ſtrong citie he thought not good to leaue behind him, although he was by ſome perſwa-
ded ſo to doe, for that it was thought impregnable, as well in reſpect of the caſtle, as of the
ſtrong garriſon that the Sultan had put therein to. But he whoſe fortune nothing could hinder, H
Damiata taken by Axalla. would needs goe thither: and ſo hauing commanded *Axalla* to ſet vpon it, followed himſelfe
after with the reſt of his armie. Now *Axalla* hauing ſummoned the citie, and declared vnto the
inhabitants (who were moſt of them Chriſtians) the mildneſſe and courteſie of *Tamerlane*, as
alſo who himſelfe was, and what religion he held: cauſing many of the Greeke captaines to
ſpeake vnto them, and to tell them of the miſerie they endured vnder the Moores and Mama-
lukes: ſo farre preuailed with them, that they all determined to aduenture their liues, to put the
Mamalukes out of the citie, with all them that fauoured the Sultan. And ſo in the night taking
vp armes, made themſelues maſters of one quarter of the citie, and deliuered one of the gates to
Axalla: whereby he entering, put all the Mamalukes to the ſword, or tooke them priſoners, and
ſo gained the citie. Whereof *Tamerlane* hearing, being as yet vpon his march, was in good hope I
of ſo proſperous a beginning, to find an happie end alſo of his deſignes in ÆGYPT. For be-
ſides the good fortune thereof, he knew that this haueh of DAMIATA, might ſerue him with
victuals out of all the parts of GREECE, as the Emperour *Emanuel* had promiſed him, and
wherein he nothing failed him. Into which port *Tamerlane* hauing made his entrie, left there in
garriſon two thouſand of the Emperour *Emanuel* his ſouldiers, with a gouernour, of whom he
tooke an oath for their obedience. So hauing ſtaied a ſpace at DAMIATA, he cauſed his vaunt-
gard to march towards ALEXANDRIA: and hauing paſſed ouer the riuer, euen in an inſtant
Tamerlane marcheth towards Caier. turned directly vnto CAIER; to the great aſtoniſhment of the Sultan, who made prouiſion
for the defence of ALEXANDRIA, as the neereſt vnto danger. But vnderſtanding of theſe
newes, vſed ſuch diligence, that he entred into the citie with fortie thouſand horſe, and three- K
ſcore thouſand foot, euen as *Tamerlane* his armie approached, purpoſing in perſon himſelfe to
defend it. By whoſe comming, the great citie readie before to haue reuolted, was againe in his
obedience confirmed, to the great hinderance of *Tamerlane* his affaires: for to remaine long be-
fore it, was impoſſible, for want of victuals for ſo great an armie in the enemies countrey. Yet
Caier beſieged by Tamerlane. notwithſtanding all this, did not *Tamerlane* forbeare to draw neere vnto it, and with all his armie
to encampe neere vnto the ſame, hauing cauſed a great trench to be made for to couer his
horſemen, and thereby to lodge his armie more ſafely: during which time he cauſed diuers on-
ſets to be giuen, as well to trie what confidence the enemie had in himſelfe, as to ſee how the
people of the citie, eſpecially the ſlaues (which in that populous citie are infinite) were affected
towards him: who certainly informed him of the ſtate of the citie, and the armie; as glad to ſee L
the ſame by him ſhut vp, and the proud Mamalukes ſtill put to the worſt. But thus lying ſtill at
the ſiege, one day he thought it good to ſhew his armie before the citie, for to trie whether the
enemie had a deſire to come to a day of battell or not: as alſo to view what forces he had, and
ſo indeed to ſeeke occaſion to fight: In hope alſo, that if the Sultan did come forth with all his
armie into the field, ſome reuolt might happen within the citie, as well by the ſlaues (vnto
whom libertie was by him promiſed) as by the citizens themſelues (diſcontented with the in-
ſolencie of the Mamalukes entered of late into the citie with the Sultan) vnto whom he had
made it knowne by certaine ſlaues (for that purpoſe fled as fugitiues out of his armie into the
citie) how that he was not come to hurt them, but only for the deſtruction of the Mamalukes,
both his and their enemies. But betimes ſtanding ſo in battell array, no man came forth, M
neither was there any tumult or ſtirre raiſed in the citie, as he had expected. For the Sultan
in ſo great a citie well prouided of all things, was reſolued to wearie him out with lying
ſtill, and not to put all to the hazard of a battell. Which *Tamerlane* perceiuing, and ſet
downe not to depart thence, but victorious, reſolued likewiſe to force him euen in his grea-
teſt ſtrength, in the heart of his greateſt citie; although it were not to be done, but with great
aduen-

A aduenture: ſuch confidence he had in the ſtrength and multitude of his armie. Now his purpoſe was, firſt to take one of the cities (for CAIRE is diuided into three) & therin encamping himſelf, by litle & litle to aduance forward as he might, ſtil fighting with the enemy. Vpon which reſolution, he commaunded an aſſault to be giuen, and hauing brought his footmen vnto the place where he would haue them to giue the onſet (for the Citie was not walled, but onely fortified with ditches and trenches) he commaunded the Prince of THANAIS with fiftie thouſand footmen, to begin the aſſault, euen in the face of the enemie: which hee moſt valiantly perfourmed, and there began a moſt terrible and cruell fight. *Axalla* in the meane time, deeming (as the truth was) that the Sultan had drawn his greateſt forces vnto the place where the prince of THANAIS
B ſought to enter, as vnto a place of greateſt danger; fet a compaſſe about, & vpon another quarter of the citie, with ſmall reſiſtance paſſed the trenches; where he preſently left thirtie thouſand men to fill vp the ditches, and to make way for the horſemen to enter: aduancing forward himſelfe, againſt twentie thouſand ſent by the Sultan to haue ſtopped his further paſſage: the prince of THANAIS being at the ſame time almoſt beaten backe by the Mamelukes. But the way being made plaine, by them that were for that purpoſe left by *Axalla*, and ten thouſand horſe entred, which charged vpon the backs of the Mamelukes, where the Sultan himſelfe was; and they ſeconded by ten thouſand moe ſent in by *Tamerlane*, following himſelfe after, with all his power: the Sultan retired vnto a ſecond ſtrength, which he had made in the next citie. The fight endured full the ſpace of ſeauen houres, wherein were ſlain of the Sultan his men aboue ſixteene
C thouſand: and of *Tamerlanes* betwixt ſeauen and eight thouſand. Who contented to haue diſlodged the enemie, and gained a third part of the Citie, cauſed a retrait to be ſounded, in hope the next day to win all the reſt, as indeed he did. For the prince of THANAIS the next day forcing the enemies trenches in one place, and *Axalla* in another, the Sultan after a great fight finding himſelfe hardly preſſed by the obſtinate enemie, and too weake long to hold out, retired, and ſo forthwith abandoned the citie, and encamped himſelf along the ſide of the riuer NILVS, with purpoſe to paſſe the ſame, and to flye to ALEXANDRIA his ſecond ſtrength and refuge. Which *Tamerlane* ſuſpecting, followed after him with his horſemen (who onely were in order) and ſome few foot, hardly drawn from the citie, which their fellowes were in ſpoiling; ſo as hee was glad to promiſe them eſpecially, to regard and reward their good ſeruice. Againſt whom
D the Sultan vpon a narrow cawſey, had oppoſed twelue or fifteen thouſand men, whom he called his ſlaues (to fauour his paſſage) but were indeed his beſt ſouldiours, and ſtood faſt, the place ſeruing greatly for their aduantage: who for all that at length forced by their enemies, ſtill increaſing vpon them, (though not without great loſſe) caſt themſelues into the great riuer, and made a moſt honourable retrait: euerie man hauing his weapon in the one hand, and ſwimming with the other to the farther banke. The Sultan flying with ſome eighteene thouſand horſe (for the reſt were ſundrie waies fled or elſe drowned) is reported in his flight, to haue comforted his men, by telling of them, That they were not men that had vanquiſhed them, but gods, there appeared in them ſo great wiſedome, force, and valour: diuers of the Mamelukes taken in the late fight, being brought before *Tamerlane*, and by him courteouſly vſed, were of him demaunded,
E if they could be content to ſerue him, now that their Maſter was fled and gone? which they all vtterly refuſed. Whom notwithſtanding, for their fidelitie, *Tamerlane* ſet at libertie to goe againe vnto the Sultan: as no leſſe deſirous to be admired of his enemies for his bountie and courteſie, than feared for his force and valour. The wonderfull wealth of this ſo great and famous a citie became a preie vnto his ſouldiers: who for the ſpace of foure and twentie houres had the ſpoile thereof, euerie man being then by open proclamation commaunded to repaire to his quarter. The citizens he ſet all at libertie, not ſuffering any of them to be taken priſoners. And ſo leauing ten thouſand good ſouldiers with a great number of others (whereof he caried a great multitude in his armie, planting euerie where as he paſſed as it were new colonies) and carying away with him ſuch of the inhabitants as he thought might hurt him, and taking order for all things neceſ-
F ſarie for the keeping of ſuch a citie, he cauſed his armie to paſſe ouer the riuer for to follow the Sultan vnto ALEXANDRIA, to the end not to leaue his victorie vnperfect: *Axalla* hafting before with the avauntgard, for to hinder the Sultan for ioyning his forces againe together; and the reſt of his armie conducted by the prince of THANAIS. He himſelfe with an infinite number of boats, & ſouldiers to attend vpon him, going by water, taking great pleaſure to behold the faire riuer, & his ſwift courſe ſometimes, and in an inſtant to become ſo calme as if it ſcarce mooued.

Caier aſſaulted by Tamerlane.

The

The citizens of ALEXANDRIA hearing of his comming, and fearing what might betide them, G
beſought the Sultan to haue compaſſion of their eſtate, and to withdraw himſelfe into LIBIA,
whither *Tamerlane* for the barrenneſſe of the countrey could not with any great power follow
him; reſolued for their parts to giue place vnto fortune, and to doe as the time required, and no
more to reſiſt ſo great a force, whereof they had alreadie made ſufficient triall: promiſing yet to
remaine in heart ſtill his, and vpon the firſt occaſion offered, to make the ſame to him appeare.
The Sultan flieth from Alexandria. Whereupon the Sultan ſeeing all things deſperate, determined for a time to retire, in hope, that
time would bring ſome change: as alſo that *Tamerlane* his populous armie would not long re-
maine there. And ſo departing out of ALEXANDRIA with teares ſtanding in his eyes, often-
times ſaid, That God was angrie with him and his people, and that he muſt of neceſſitie ſuffer H
the fatall ouerthrow of his eſtate, himſelfe hauing done as much as in him lay, according to his
charge, and the expectation the world had of him: and yet that he hoped at length to returne
againe, and deliuer his people from the bondage, whereunto they muſt now needs ſubmit
themſelues. *Tamerlane* comming to ALEXANDRIA (before yeelded to *Axalla*) there ſtaied a
great while, ſending *Axalla* to purſue the Sultan, exceedingly grieued that he could not get him
into his hands: and therefore ſtill fearing ſome innouation to be by him raiſed, which cauſed
him to deale the more hardly with them whom he ſuſpected to fauour him. Now the bruit of
theſe victories hauing with *Axalla* paſſed beyond ALEXANDRIA into LYBIA, had brought
ſuch a feare, not onely vpon the people adioyning vnto theſe conqueſts, but alſo vpon all AF-
FRICA (they ſuppoſing that *Tamerlane* did follow) that two and twentie of the Moore Kings I
ſent their embaſſadours vnto him, to offer vnto him their obedience: the Sultan as a man for-
ſaken of fortune, ſtill flying before him. Of the neereſt of which Kings, *Tamerlane* tooke hoſta-
ges: as for the other farther off, he contented himſelfe with their faith giuen, and with the other
outward ſignes of their good wils.

Tamerlane deſirous to returne into his countrey. Now after this long trauell and paines taken, was *Tamerlane* more deſirous than he had be-
fore vſed, to ſee the pleaſures of his owne natiue countrey: the rather thereunto moued by the
requeſt of his wife, then longing for his returne; and the newes he heard of the ſickneſſe of the
old Tartarian Emperour his father in law; beſides that, age it ſelfe began to bring vnto him a
deſire of reſt: with whom alſo, the deſires of his ſouldiers well agreed, as men now wearie to
haue run ſo many and diuers fortunes. The onely ſtay was, that he expected the comming of K
Calibes, an old and faithfull ſeruant of his, whom he for his good deſert had of his owne accord
appointed gouernour of all his new conqueſts in ÆGYPT and SYRIA: A great honour no
doubt, but not too great for him that had ſo well deſerued. So mindfull was he of the good de-
ſerts of his faithfull ſeruants, as that he needed not by others to be of them put in remembrance,
were they neuer ſo farre off, as was now *Calibes*, who at this time was with the third part of his
armie making way for him along the great riuer EVPHRATES, for the conqueſt of MESOPO-
TAMIA and PERSIA: whoſe comming was now with great deuotion looked for of the
whole armie, deſirous to returne. Which their expectation he long delaied not, but being ſent
for, came to ALEXANDRIA, whither the whole armie was now by the commandement of
Tamerlane againe aſſembled. Vpon whoſe comming, *Tamerlane* departed from ALEXANDRIA, L
hauing there left the Prince *Zamalzan* (a man of great reputation) with ſix thouſand horſemen
and ten thouſand foot, as gouernour of that place, and lieutenant generall vnder *Calibes*: whom
Tamerlane (as I haue ſaid) had now appointed to command ouer all ÆGYPT and SYRIA,
together with the countries newly conquered in LYBIA and BARBARIE: and now con-
ducting him vnto the great citie of CAIRE, and there taking the beſt order he could for the
preſeruation of his new conqueſt, left him with fortie thouſand horſe and fiftie thouſand foot.
And ſo hauing ſufficiently inſtructed him, how he would haue thoſe kingdomes gouerned, diſ-
miſſed him, not like a maſter, but as a companion, ſeeming very ſorrie to leaue him deſtitute of
his preſence. So ſetting forward with his armie, conducted by the Prince of THANAIS, *Ta-
merlane* himſelfe, with a few to guard him, by the way turned aſide vnto IERVSALEM: where M
he remained eleuen dayes, daily viſiting the ſepulchre of Chriſt Ieſus (whom he called the God
of the Chriſtians) and the ruines of *Salomon* his Temple: much wondering thereat, and at
IERVSALEM, the ſeat of *Dauids* kingdome, and of that great *Salomon*; but grieued that he
could not ſee them fully in their former beautie. He only deſpiſed the Iewes, which had com-
mitted ſo cruell a murder againſt him that came to ſaue them. And to ſhew his deuotion to-

wards

A wards the holy citie, commanded it to be free from all ſubſidies and garriſons of men of warre; and gaue great gifts vnto the Monaſteries, and honoured them ſo long as he remained there. Departing from IERVSALEM, he came to DAMASCO: which great citie, as well for that it was infected with the opinion of *Iezides* (accounted an arch hereticke among the Mahometanes) as alſo euill affected to his proceedings, he cauſed to be raſed, and the bones of *Iezides* the falſe prophet to be digged vp and burnt, and his graue before much honoured, in deſpight to be filled with dung. So marching on, and blaſting the world before him as he went (for long it were, and from our purpoſe to recount all his victories) he paſſed ouer the riuer EVPHRATES, and hauing conquered MESOPOTAMIA, with the great citie of BABILON, and all the kingdome of
B PERSIA, loaded with the ſpoile of the world, and eternized for euer, he returned at length to SAMERCAND, the famous place of his birth, and glorious ſeat of his Empire.

The miſerable death of Baiazet.

Now had *Baiazet* (but a little before one of the greateſt Princes on earth, and now the ſcorne of fortune, and a byword to the world) with great impatiencie laine two yeares in moſt miſerable thraldome, for moſt part ſhut vp in an yron cage, as ſome dangerous wild beaſt: and hauing no better meanes to end his loathed life, did violently beat out his braines againſt the barres of the yron grate wherein he was incloſed, and ſo died about the yeare of our Lord 1399. Yet of his death are diuers other reports: ſome ſaying, That hee died of an ague, proceeding of ſorrow and greefe: others, that he poyſoned himſelfe: and the Turks affirming, that he was ſet at libertie by *Tamerlane*, being by him beforehand poyſoned, whereof hee died three dayes after hee
C was enlarged (a report not like to be true:) but howſoeuer it was, his end appeareth to haue been right miſerable. His dead bodie at the requeſt of his ſonne *Mahomet*, was by *Tamerlane* ſent to ASPRAPOLIS, from whence it was afterwards conueyed to PRVSA, and there lieth buried in a Chappell neere vnto the great Mahometane Temple without the Citie Eaſtward: where alſo lieth his beloued Wife *Deſpina*, with his eldeſt ſonne *Erthogrul*. And faſt by in a little Chappell lieth buried his brother *Iacup*, whom he in the beginning of his raigne murthered.

A compariſon betwixt Baiazet and Tamerlane.

Theſe two great and mightie Princes, *Tamerlane* and *Baiazet*, (both of them whileſt they liued, a burthen vnto the world) as they tooke their beginning frō the Scythes or Tartars, ſo were they of like honourable progenitors deſcended: *Baiazet* being the fourth in deſcent from the warlike *Othoman*, the raiſer of his familie; and *Tamerlane* in like degree from the great *Zingis*, the
D firſt and moſt fortunate leader of the Tartars (his countreymen) vnto the pleaſures of the Eaſt: both Princes of great power and like ſpirit, wiſe, hardie, painfull, reſolute, and moſt skilfull in martiall affaires; but ambitious aboue meaſure, the ground of all the former troubles by them raiſed, to the aſtoniſhment of the world. Howbeit, the great vertues and other the honourable qualities of *Baiazet*, were in him by his cholericke and waiward nature much obſcured: which made him to exceed both in crueltie & pride: being alſo much more handfaſt than were his honourable predeceſſors. For which cauſes he was much feared and leſſe beloued of his ſouldiers and men of warre in generall, & of them at his moſt need forſaken. He vſed commonly to ſay, That his treaſures were his childrens meat, and not his ſouldiers pay: which by way of reproch was by a common ſouldier caſt in his teeth, when he raged to ſee himſelfe by them forſaken in
E the great battell againſt *Tamerlane*, telling him as he fled, that he ran not away, but went to ſeeke his pay, wherewith to prouide his children bread. Whereas all the aforeſaid vertues in *Tamerlane* were graced with diuers other of like nature, no man being vnto his friends more courteous or kinde, either vnto his enemies more dreadfull or terrible. The good ſeruice of his ſeruants he neuer forgot, either left the ſame long vnrewarded: being thereof ſo mindfull, as that he needed not by them or others in their behalfe, to be put in remembrance therof, hauing alwaies by him a catalogue both of their names and good deſerts, which he daily peruſed. Oftentimes ſaying that day to be loſt, wherein he had not giuen them ſomething: and yet neuer beſtowing his preferments vpon ſuch as ambitiouſly ſought the ſame (as deeming them in ſo doing, vnworthie thereof) but vpon ſuch, as whoſe modeſtie or deſert he thought worthie thoſe his great fauours;
F ſo tempering the ſeueritie of his commands with the greatneſſe of his bountie, as that it is hard to ſay, whether he was of his nobilitie and men of war, for the one more feared, or for the other beloued; both, the great ſtaies of Princes ſtates: feare keeping the obſtinat in their obedience, and loue, the dutiful in their deuotion. But with *Baiazet* it was not ſo, who deeming all done for him, but dutie, and by nature chollericke and proud (after the manner of tyrants) deſired aboue al to be of his ſubiects feared, not much regarding how little he was of them beloued: not the leaſt

cauſe

Baiazet in his posteritie more fortunate than Tamerlane.

cauſe of his great fall and miſerie, and that therein he was of his owne ſo ſmally regarded: G wherein for all that he is to be accounted more fortunate than the other great conquerour his enemie, hauing euer ſince in the lineall deſcent of himſelfe, had one of the greateſt Monarchs of the world to ſucceed ſtill in his kingdome and empire: as he hath euen at this day, the great Sultan *Mahomet*, the third of that name, who now in great maieſtie raigneth in CONSTANTINOPLE. Whereas the glorie of *Tamerlane* his empire, euen in his owne time growne to the height thereof, and labouring with the greatneſſe of it ſelfe, and by him diuided amongſt his ſonnes, ſhortly after his death decaied, rent in ſunder by ambition and ciuill diſcord; and not long after, together with his poſteritie, rooted out by *Vſun-Caſſanes* the Perſian King, to the worlds wonder, tooke end: nothing of the huge greatneſſe thereof now or ſince then remai- H ning, more than the fame thereof: as doth alſo the miſerie of the other ſo brought low. But leauing this mirrour of miſhap *(Baiazet)* vnto his reſt, and *Tamerlane* for a while to triumph in SAMERCAND; let vs now proceed in the courſe of our Hiſtorie, yet not forgetting by the way to remember ſuch Chriſtian Princes as then liued together with theſe two great Monarchs.

FINIS.

Chriſtian Princes of the ſame time with Baiazet the firſt.

Emperours	*Of the Eaſt*	*Emanuel Palaeologus.*	1387.	30.
	Of the Weſt	*Wenceſlaus, ſonne to Charles King of Bohemia.*	1378.	22.
		Rupertus Duke of Bauaria.	1400.	10.
Kings	*Of England*	*Richard the ſecond.*	1377.	23.
		Henrie the fourth.	1399.	12.
	Of France	*Charles the ſixt, ſurnamed, The welbeloued.*	1381.	42.
	Of Scotland	*Iohn Stuart, otherwiſe called Robert the third.*	1390.	16.
Biſhops of Rome		*Vrban the VI.*	1380.	11.
		Boniface the IX.	1390.	14.

Phil. Lonicer. Hiſt. Turc. li. 1.

Vindicibus Mahomet patrium ſibi vendicat armis
Imperium, & fractas feruidus auget opes.
Quod patri abſtulerat violentia Tamberlani,
Imperio reddit Marte fauente ſuo.
Ille ſagittiferoſque Dacas, validoſque Triballos
Contudit, & populos Iſter amæne tuos.
Turcica ſic rurſus ſublata potentia, ſtragem
Attulit imperio Romule magne tuo.

By force of armes ſtout *Mahomet* his fathers kingdome gaines,
And doth the broken ſtate thereof repaire with reſtleſſe paines.
What ſo the force of *Tamerlane* had from his father tane,
He by his fortune and his force reſtor'd the ſame againe.
The Dacians he vanquiſhed, and Seruians in field,
And forc'd the people neere to thee faire ISTER, for to yeeld.
So once againe the Turkiſh ſtate (by him rais'd vp on hie)
Hath to thine empire, *Romulus*, brought great calamitie.

THE

THE LIFE OF MAHOMET, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, FIFTH KING OF THE TVRKS, AND RESTORER OF THEIR SORE SHAKEN KINGDOME.

HOw wonderfully the Turkiſh kingdome was by the violence of *Tamerlane* ſhaken, and the maieſtie thereof defaced, it well appeareth, in that the Hiſtories of that time, as well thoſe of the Greeks, as of the Turks, in nothing more differ, than in the ſucceſſors of *Baiazet*, their late vnfortunate King. Some writing, that he had two ſons, *Orchanes*, (otherwiſe called *Calepinus*) and *Mahomet*: and that *Calepinus* in the ſecond yeere of his raigne was ſlaine, and his kingdome poſſeſſed by *Mahomet* his brother. Others reporting, that *Baiazet* had two ſons, namely, *Calepinus* and *Muſtapha*: and that *Calepinus* ſucceeding his father in the Turkiſh kingdome, when he had raigned ſix yeeres, died, leauing behind him two ſons, *Orchanes* and *Mahomet*: and that *Orchanes* being young, was ſlaine by his vncle: whom *Mahomet* in reuenge of his brothers death, afterwards ſlew, and poſſeſſed the kingdome himſelfe. Others reckon vp ſeuen ſons of *Baiazet*: *Ioſua*, *Muſulmanes*, *Moſes*, *Calepinus*, *Ioſua* the younger, *Muſtapha*, and *Halis*; with an vncertaine ſucceſſion amongſt them alſo. This diuerſitie of opinions, full of no leſſe vncertaintie; as I meane not to follow in report of this Hiſtorie, ſo will I not ſpend any time in refuting the ſame (although much might be ſaid in the matter) but leaue theſe reports, together with the Hiſtorie following, to ſuch credit, as they ſhall hap to finde with the conſiderate readers.

Diuers opinions concerning the ſucceſſours of Baiazet.

The Greeke Hiſtoriographers (beſt like to know the Turkiſh ſucceſſion, as well by reaſon of their neereneſſe, as in that they were by them as their bad neighbours, ſo much troubled) make no mention at all either of *Calepinus* or of *Orchanes*: In like manner, *Hiſtoriæ Muſulmanæ Turcorum*, diligently gathered out of the Turks owne hiſtories by *Io. Leunclauius* (a learned Phyſitian, and himſelfe a great traueller amongſt them, and therefore deſeruing the more credit) do not ſo much as name the ſucceſſion of *Calepinus* or *Orchanes*, after the captiuitie of *Baiazet*, but reiecteth them both as counterfets. But in mine opinion (without preiudice to any, that vpon better reaſon may deeme otherwiſe) the great confuſion of the Turkiſh kingdome, in ſhort time wrought by the mightie *Tamerlane* and his Tartarians, with the ciuill diſcord and warre afterwards ariſing among the ſons of *Baiazet*, ſtriuing (all as it were at once) for the reſtleſſe roome of ſoueraigntie, which ſuffereth no partners; and euery one of them, according to his hap or power, laying hand vpon ſome one part or other thereof, & bearing himſelfe therein for a time as a King, in countries ſo far diſtant; neuer leauing, vntill they had like the earth-borne brethren, wrought one anothers deſtruction; might giue iuſt occaſion of ſuch diuerſitie of reports as is before ſpoken of, concerning the ſucceſſion of that time, in that troubled and rent kingdome: ſome reckoning one, ſome another: and ſome, ſuch as neuer were, to haue ſucceeded in the gouernment, and ſo vntruly augmenting the number of the Turkiſh Kings. Wherefore leauing *Calepinus* & *Orchanes* vnto them that firſt found them, with that little, which without any good ground and leſſe probabilitie is written of their ſuppoſed raigne; I (following the authoritie of the Turkiſh Hiſtorie) reckon this *Mahomet*, one of the youngeſt ſonnes of *Baiazet* (of whom we

are now to intreat) fifth King of the Turks: who after great and dangerous wars, as well againſt his owne brethren, as his forraine enemies, was at length ſolely inueſted in the Turkiſh kingdome, about ten yeeres after the captiuitie of his father *Baiazet*, as ſhall hereafter be declared. G

The true poſteritie of Baiazet.

Baiazet after the manner of the Turkiſh Kings, hauing laid vp the hope of his poſteritie in the common treaſure houſe of nature, rather than in the bodie of one lawfull wife, had by diuers wiues and concubines ſeuen ſonnes, *Erthogrul*, otherwiſe called *Orthobules*, *Emer-Solyman*, *Muſtapha-Zelebi* (that is to ſay, the noble) *Iſa-Zelebi*, *Muſa-Zelebi*, *Sultan Mahomet*, and *Caſan-Zelebi*. Of whom, *Erthogrul* the eldeſt was loſt in the wars againſt *Caſi Burchaniden*, as is beforeſaid in the life of *Baiazet*. *Muſtapha* was ſlaine in the great battell againſt *Tamerlane*, and there buried in the bed of fame. *Caſan* the youngeſt was a childe in *Baiazet* his court, when his father was taken, and afterwards with his ſiſter *Fatime* deliuered as hoſtages, by their brother *Solyman*, vnto *Emanuel* the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, where they both happily became Chriſtians, and ſo ſhortly after died. H

Solyman was by *Alis Baſſa* preſident of *Baiazet* his counſell, and other great captaines, conueyed out of the battell againſt *Tamerlane*, into EVROPE: and ſo by them at HADRIANOPLE ſaluted Sultan. *Mahomet* fled out of the ſame battell to AMASIA in CAPADOCIA, where he was in his fathers time gouernour. *Iſa* hearing of his fathers captiuitie, after the departing of *Tamerlane* with his Tartars, ſeized vpon PRVSA, a citie of BYTHINIA, the ancient ſeat of the Turkiſh Kings, with the countrey adioyning, and there raigned as King. *Muſa-Zelebi* was taken priſoner with *Baiazet* his father, and afterwards ſet at libertie by *Tamerlane*. But of their fortunes more ſhall be ſaid in this hiſtorie following. I

Mahomet gouernour of Amaſia.

Mahomet was but fifteene yeeres old, when his father *Baiazet* in the vnfortunate battell at mount STELLA was taken priſoner, and was at the ſame time by his appointment gouernor of AMASIA, with a great part of CAPADOCIA adioyning: which places became ſo troubleſome after the great victorie of *Tamerlane*, that the Turks in that countrey were glad day and night for the ſafegard of themſelues, their wiues, and children, to keepe continuall watch and ward: inſomuch, that many of them, wearied with thoſe troubles, & deſpairing of better times, went into voluntarie exile, becauſe they would not ſee ſo great miſeries: which thing much grieued young *Mahomet*. Wherefore calling vnto him his moſt faithfull counſellors, to conſult what courſe to take in the middeſt of ſo many dangers, it was by generall conſent thought beſt (for ſo much as they could not without apparent danger continue neere vnto *Tamerlane* his forces) to get themſelues farther off into places of more ſtrength: and from thence to expect the departure of their enemies, and in the meane time to content themſelues with ſuch aduantages as occaſion and chance of war might miniſter; cutting them ſhort by policie, whom they were not able to meet in the plaine field: and ſo by little and little to weaken or wearie their mightie ſtragling enemies: For albeit that *Tamerlane* himſelfe was not neere him, as then lying in CARIA; yet did the captaines of his great and victorious armie, at their pleaſure ſpoile and forrage the countries farre and neere all ouer the leſſer ASIA. Vpon this reſolution, he with all his forces departed from AMASIA, to DERBY in PAPHLAGONIA: where by the way he encountered with *Cara Iahia*, a nigh kinſman to the Prince *Iſfendiar* of CASTAMONA, his enemie; whom he put to flight, with great ſlaughter of his men. This was the beginning of *Mahomet* his good fortune. From thence he went to KEREDEN, and there ſtaying certaine dayes, ſent a ſpie into *Tamerlane* his campe, to ſee how all things went there: and afterwards entered againe into counſell with his captaines concerning his farther proceedings. In which conſultation, ſome were of opinion, That it was beſt for him to withdraw himſelfe into the mountaines of the leſſer ASIA, as a place of good ſafetie, vntil the departure of *Tamerlane*, which was ſhortly hoped for: for that it was not to be thought that *Tamerlane* would with his huge armie purſue him in that mountaine countrey, flying from hill to hill, and as it were from ſtrength to ſtrength. Others better aduiſed, thought thoſe mountaines to be no places to truſt vnto, and therefore that it were more honourable and as free from danger, for him to returne againe to AMASIA, and there to liue amongſt his ſubiects, protecting them in ſuch ſort as he might, & not to leaue them for a prey to euery ſtragling companie of the rude Tartarians: which counſel he followed, as moſt reaſonable: & being ready to ſet forward, the ſpie before by him ſent into *Tamerlanes* campe, returned, certifying him, that he had ſeen his father *Baiazet* in good health in the Tartars camp, but could not by any means ſpeake with him by reaſon of the ſtraight guard ſet ouer him: and that all that part of ASIA was by *Tamerlane* K L M

Mahomet ſendeth ſpies into Tamerlane his campe.

poſſeſſed,

A poſſeſſed, who then with his armie wintred in CARIA and LYSIA: whereupon *Mahomet* returned backe againe to AMASIA; where he had not long ſtaied, but that newes was brought vnto him, That one of the Tartarian Princes called *Cara Duletſchach* (that is to ſay, the fortunate blacke King) was with an armie of twentie thouſand comming to ſpoile his countrey, being giuen him by *Tamerlane*. With which newes he was exceedingly troubled. Wherefore with all ſpeed calling together his forces, for the ſafegard of his countrey, he ſent before a ſpie to diſcouer the enemies doings. This diligent ſpie returning in all haſte, told *Mahomet*, That *Cara Dulet* lay at the towne of ÆGIOLVS in GALATIA, in great ſecuritie, hauing about him but a ſmall power; for that he, fearing no danger, had at that time diſperſed his armie, to ſeeke after
B pillage abroad in the countrey. *Mahomet* taking hold of this opportunitie, marched thither with great celeritie, and ſuddenly ſetting vpon *Cara Dulet*, ouercame him. In which conflict *Cara Dulet* himſelfe was ſhot thorow the head with an arrow and ſlaine, and his armie vtterly diſcomfited. *Mahomet* returning backe to AMASIA with victorie, refreſhed and rewarded his ſouldiers, yet no leſſe carefull for the ſafetie of his kingdome than before. *Cara Dulet ſlaine.*

Shortly after, he was aduertiſed that *Cubad Ogli* with a great armie laid hard ſiege to the citie of CÆSARIA in CAPADOCIA, and was like in ſhort time to take it, if it were not ſpeedily releeued. By taking of which citie, that Tartar Prince was like to make a great entrance, to the hazarding of the whole countrey. Wherefore *Mahomet* hauing his armie alwayes in readineſſe, marched day and night with ſuch ſpeed to CÆSARIA, as that he was vpon *Cubad Ogli* before
C he was aware of his comming, and there ſlew moſt of his ſouldiers, and put him with the reſt to flight. After that, he entred into *Cubad Ogli* his countrey in PONTVS, and grieuouſly ſpoiled and deſtroied the ſame: at which time, he alſo by force wan the ſtrong caſtle PELTÆ in the confines of PHRYGIA.

Immediatly after that, *Inall Ogli* another of *Tamerlanes* captaines (which at their pleaſure without let, forraged all the countries of the leſſer ASIA, during the time that *Tamerlane* made his abode within the Turks dominions) vpon the ſudden entred into CAPADOCIA with an armie of twentie thouſand fighting men, killing the inhabitants, and ſpoiling the countrey before him: ſo that the people for feare left their dwellings, and fled into the woods and mountaines to hide themſelues from his furie. Whereof *Mahomet* hearing, was therewith exceedingly
D grieued, and wrote vnto him as followeth:

Sultan *Mahomet* vnto the Prince *Inall Ogli*.

Whereas without any iuſt or lawfull cauſe, or any warre proclaimed, you haue inuaded our kingdome, and ceaſe not cruelly to kill our ſubiects, by God committed to our protection; and to ſpoile their wealth and labours, to the great diſturbance of the Mahometan common weale; and make no end of your malice and crueltie: you doe therein quite digreſſe from the manners and lawes of the true Mahometans or right beleeuers. For if thou wouldeſt not only be accounted, but indeed be a true Muſul-man, thou ſhouldeſt forthwith depart out of my kingdome with thine armie; thou ſhouldeſt not thus ſhed the innocent bloud,
E *or without cauſe thus wrong my people: but foraſmuch as thou knoweſt not what beſeemeth thee, neither wilt liſten vnto good counſell, but wilfully proceed in thy wicked purpoſe, falſely perſwading thy ſelfe, this my kingdome to be deſtitute of a lawfull inheritour; and therefore doeſt ſo great wrong and iniurie vnto the defenders of the true Mahometan religion: I would thou ſhouldeſt know, that I with my ſo often victorious armie, will ſhortly by the power of God come againſt thee, and in plaine field according to thy deſerts chaſtiſe thee. Therefore whileſt thou yet maiſt, reclaime thy ſelfe, and proceed not too far in thine obſtinacie: too late repentance did neuer man yet good. Thus much wee thought good to aduertiſe thee, that thou ſhouldeſt not be ignorant of our purpoſe, but mighteſt ſo better conſider and diſpoſe both of thy ſelfe and thine affaires. In the yeere after the departure of the great Prophet* Mahomet 806. *Mahomet his letters to Inall Ogli the Tartar Prince.*

F Vnto which letters *Inall Ogli* returned this anſwere in writing:

Prince *Inall Ogli* to *Mahomet*.

Why doeſt thou Mahomet *with ſuch letters prouoke me? why doeſt thou ſo vnciuilly taunt me? being thy ſelfe but a boy, and in truth a very childe. It beſeemeth thee not to haue entred into theſe countries, or* *Inall Ogli his anſwere to Mahomet.*

to lay hands thereon, wrongfully gracing thy ſelfe with the title of a Sultan. Neither is there any cauſe, G
why thou ſhouldeſt complain that I ſhould lie in wait or ſeeke after thy life, thy kingdome, or any thing that
thine is. I challenge vnto my ſelfe this kingdome, but none of thine: out of which it is reaſon for thee, as a
wrongfull intruder of thy ſelfe, to depart; whom otherwiſe I will forthwith thruſt out, and ioyne the ſame
vnto the reſt of my territories. Wherfore except thou without delay get thee packing, and ceaſe to oppoſe thy
ſelfe againſt my deſignes; I denounce vnto thee all the calamities of war, and wiſh thee with ſpeed to pre-
pare thy ſelfe to battell, for that I meane ſhortly to meet with thee. This yeere of our great Prophet, 806.

Mall Ogli ouerthrowne by Mahomet.

Shortly after, *Mahomet* according to his promiſe meeting with this Tartar Prince, by plaine force ouerthrew him, and had of him a notable victorie. H

The like good hap he had alſo not long after, againſt *Coſter Ogli*, and *Kinpeck Ogli*, two other Tartarian captaines, at the caſtle of CHARA-CHIZAR and the plain of ARTVCK-OVA. And hearing that one *Meſites*, a Turke, had fortified himſelfe in the ruines of SEBASTIA, and from thence ſpoiled the countrey round about, he ſent *Baiazet* one of his Baſſaes againſt him; who in ſhort time tooke him and brought him bound vnto him: by whom he was adiudged to die. But ſeeing in the man an inuincible courage, and contempt of death, at ſuch time as he ſhould haue beene executed; moued therewith, he gaue him his pardon: for which he euer after continued vnto him faithfull, and did him great ſeruice.

Mahomet hauing many times thus vanquiſhed the ſtragling Tartarian Princes, which had ſought the ſpoile of his countrey, became thereby famous amongſt the great commanders of I
Tamerlane his armie: in ſo much that the bruit of his name came at length to *Tamerlanes* eare, yet lying in the leſſer ASIA: who as he thought it not worth his greatneſſe and labour, himſelfe in perſon to goe againſt ſo great an enemie; ſo he thought it not good or conuenient quite to neglect him, but by ſome other meanes (if he could) to ouertake him. For which purpoſe he began to ſpeake many times very honourably of him, highly commending his great valour and forwardneſſe in ſo tender yeeres. And calling for *Baiazet*, told him what great commendation he had heard of his ſonne *Mahomet*, and that he was therefore very deſirous to ſee him: where if he found that true which was reported of his great vertues, he would beſtow one of his daughters vpon him in mariage, with many other great preferments: and therefore willed *Baiazet* to write vnto him, Not to doubt to come vnto him, to the great good both of himſelfe, and his fa- K
ther. Which thing *Baiazet* at the firſt doubting the worſt, requeſted *Tamerlane* not to beleeue that of his ſon, being yet very young, & not worthie of ſo great a fauour. Neuertheleſſe partly perſwaded by *Tamerlane* his proteſtations, and importuned by him that might now command him; he with an euill will wrote to his ſonne *Mahomet* to ſuch effect as *Tamerlane* required. With which letters, and others of like purport from himſelfe, with many rich preſents, *Tamerlane* ſent *Hozza Mahomet* (one of his ſecret counſellors) embaſſadour to *Mahomet*, of whom he was right honourably receiued, and likewiſe entertained. But hauing read the aforeſaid letters, and thereby vnderſtood the cauſe of his comming; he entred into counſell with the great Baſſaes about him, whether he were beſt to goe to *Tamerlane* or not. Where his counſellours
were all cleere of one opinion, That it was not good for him to aduenture his perſon to the dan- L
ger of ſuch a iourney, or the mercie of ſo mightie an enemie, of whoſe faith he had no aſſurance. And if ſo be (ſaid they) he therewith offended, will by force ſeeke to haue you, we at his comming will take the refuge of the woods and mountaines, and there ſhroud our ſelues vntill he be departed againe: for that he with his huge armie cannot here long ſtay in this bare countrey, for want of neceſſaries. Neuertheleſſe *Mahomet* hoping his iourney might be both for the good of his father, and his owne aduancement; contrary to the minde of all his counſellours, reſolued to goe: and ſo hauing prepared all things needfull for the honour and ſafetie of his iourney, ſet forward. But as he was vpon the way in the marches of PONTVS, *Cara Iahia* whom he had before ouerthrowne, vnderſtanding of his comming that way, thinking now to be reuenged; and hauing got vnto him ſome of the Prince *Iſfendiars* forces, ſet vpon him by the way: but M
with as euill ſucceſſe as before, moſt of his men being there by *Mahomet* ſlaine, and himſelfe glad ſhamefully to flie. So trauelling on further, he vnderſtood that *Alis Beg*, a great Lord in thoſe countries, went about to intercept him alſo: which cauſed him in ſuch haſte to goe on, that he was vpon *Alis*, before he was aware of his comming, or well prouided for him: ſo that for feare he was glad to betake himſelfe to flight. *Mahomet* conſidering the danger he had eſcaped in that

iourney,

A iourney, and that the neerer he came to *Tamerlane*, the more like he was to fall into greater, although happily without *Tamerlane* his knowledge: by the aduice of his graue and faithfull counsellours, resolued to goe no further. Wherefore calling vnto him *Tamerlanes* embassador, he thus spake vnto him:

You see the dangers and iniuries I endure in this my iourney, and my minde forbodeth greater to ensue: for which causes I may not goe any further, but here returne. Commend me therefore I pray you vnto the most mightie Tamerlane, *with my father: and tell them what dangers haue happened vnto me vpon the way. Which considered, I hope they will haue me excused. For which purpose I will also send in your companie an embassadour of mine owne.*

B *Mahomet* at that time had with him a graue, wise, and learned man, called *Sophis Baiazet*, sometime his schoolemaster: whom he sent embassadour to *Tamerlane* and his father, to haue him vnto them both excused: and so departed, he homewards, leauing the way he came (for feare of further danger) and they towards *Tamerlane*, who honourably receiued *Mahomets* embassadours and letters. But taking pleasure in the man sent vnto him, gaue him honourable entertainment, but would neuer after suffer him to returne againe vnto his master. *Mahomet his speech to Tamerlanes embassadour.*

It was not long after, but that old *Baiazet* died of impatiencie (as is aforesaid:) whose dead bodie *Tamerlane* left at APROPOLIS with the Prince *Germean*, to be deliuered vnto his sonne *Mahomet*; with *Musa* his elder brother (who all this while had beene kept prisoner with *Tamerlane*) if *Mahomet* should require them. And so the mightie Prince *Tamerlane*, after he had long

C time wasted PHRYGIA, CARIA, LYDIA, with the most part of the lesser ASIA; and conquered all SYRIA, IVDEA, ÆGYPT, and PERSIA, with many other great countries and prouinces; returned at last into his owne kingdome, vnto the great citie of SAMARCAND, which he wonderfully enlarged, and beautified with the spoiles of a great part of the world, before by him wasted: where he afterwards in great peace and glorie raigned, no lesse honoured than feared of all the Princes of the East. To the terrour of whom, and for the assuring of his estate, he kept alwayes a standing armie of fortie thousand horse, and threescore thousand foot readie at all assaies: beside other his great garrisons which he kept in SYRIA, ÆGYPT, CHINA, and CAMBALV; as also against the Muscouit, and Turks; being commonly in euery place threescore thousand strong, though not still in field, but as occasion required. Vntill that at length *The great power Tamerlane continually kept.*

D hearing of the rising againe of the Turkish kingdome, vnder the *Othoman* Princes, the sonnes of *Baiazet*, with whom the oppressed Mamalukes of ÆGYPT, and the Greeke Emperour (as doubtfull of his estate) had now also for feare of him combined themselues: he by the perswasion of *Axalla* (then Generall of his imperiall armie) made great preparation for a second expedition to be made for the vtter rooting out of the *Othoman* familie, and the conquest of the Greeke empire. But hauing now all things in readinesse, and also giuen a good beginning vnto these his intended conquests, (one of the Turks great Bassaes being by *Axalla* his lieutenant in a great battell ouerthrowne, and thirtie thousand of the Turks slaine) he in the middest of these his great hopes, as also of his greatest power, died of an ague the 27 day of Ianuarie, in the yeere of our Lord 1402. A little before whose death, appeared a great and terrible blasing starre, por- *The death of Tamerlane.*

E tending as it were vnto the world the death of so great a Prince. He was a man of the middle stature, somewhat narrow in the shoulders, otherwise well limmed, and of a great strength. In his eyes sate such a rare maiestie, as a man could hardly endure to behold them without closing of his owne: and many in talking with him, and often beholding of him, became dumbe; which caused him oftentimes with a comely modestie to abstaine from looking too earnestly vpon such as spake vnto him, or discoursed with him. All the rest of his visage was amiable and well proportioned: he had but little haire on his chinne; and ware the haire of his head long and curled, contrary to the manner of the Tartars, who shaue their heads, hauing the same alwaies couered: whereas he contrariwise was for the most part bare headed, commanding his sonne also to be so by his tutors brought vp: his haire was of a darke colour, somewhat drawing to- *The description of Tamerlane.*

F ward a violet, right beautifull to behold: which his mother comming of the race of *Sampson* (as he gaue it out) willed him to nourish, in token of his descent: the cause that made him to be the more respected of his men of war; most part of thē beleeuing that in those haires was some rare vertue, or rather some fatall destinie: an old practise of many great cōmanders of former ages, to fill the heads of their souldiers with some strange opinion conceiued of them, to be the more of them honoured; as if in them had beene some one thing or other more than in other men.

His

His liuely counterfeit, as I finde it expreſſed by them that write the beſt of him, you may here behold, with the teſtimonie of his greatneſſe following. G

TAMERLANE.

Paulus Iouius Illuſt. virorum, Elog. li. a. pa. 97

Ille nouus Xerxes, orientis victor, & ingens
Quacunque permearet, horror gentium:
Compleuit totos Scythico qui milite campos, L
Hoc ſe ferebat ore trux Tamerlanes.
Cuius in aduentum tutæ altis mœnibus vrbes,
Ipſumque terræ contremiſcebat ſolum;
Ipſi adeo montes, ipſæ per deuia valles,
Vim Barbarorum non ferebant agminum.
Quare ab Caucaſeis Aſiam conualibus omnem,
Ad vſque Nili flumina armis ſubdidit;
Euſratem, & Tigrim, & rapidum tranauit Orontem,
Vi, vaſtitate, cæde, cuncta proterens.
Vique olim fæda cum tempeſtate coorta M
Erumpit atra nube fulmen igneum:
Obuia quæque cadens perrumpit, & alta ſonanti
Templa atque ſolidas ſtrage turres diſjcit.
Subſidit vaſto tellus labefacta fragori,
Humiliſque mentes ſternit humanas pauor:

Haud

A *Haud ſecus ille viam ferro molitus, & igni,*
Euertit arces, opida aquauit ſolo.
Regem Aſiæ horribili captum impete Baiazetem
Caueaque clauſum ferrea circuntulit.
Hæc agitantem illum, & ſpirantem immania iuſſa
Quæ cunctus vndique orbis expaueſceret;
Exiguo cæca domitum molimine febris
Fatalis vno ſoluit hora triduo.
Deque tot inſanis opibus, de tot modo regnis,
B *Reliqua vna paruo glebatexit puluere.*

In Engliſh thus:

Of *Tamerlane* a *Xerxes* new, which did the Eaſt ſubdew,
And in all places where he came, the nations ouerthrew;
That fild the fields with Scythian troupes, brought from thoſe climates cold,
This was the feature and the ſhape which thou doeſt here behold.
At whoſe approch, the ſtrongeſt townes could ſmall reſiſtance make,
The earth it ſelfe vnder his feet ſeeming for feare to quake.
C The mountaines high, mating the skie, and vncouth vallies low,
Vnable were the force to beare, where he did come or goe.
All Asia from mount Cavcasvs, vnto the bankes of Nile,
With valiant hand he vanquiſhed and made his force to feele.
Evphrates, Tigris, and the ſwift Orontes gaue him way,
With force, waſte, and deſtruction great, on what he liſt to prey.
And as in tempeſts great oft times, when all things goe to wracke,
The fierie lightning flaſhing forth, out of the clouds ſo blacke,
Doth breake downe what it lights vpon, and with a dreadfull fall
Ouerthrowes the temples, with their towers, and ſtately buildings all,
D So that the earth diſmaid therewith, doth lower downe deſcend,
And fearfull wights wrapt vp in woe, are brought to their wits end:
In like ſort he with fire and ſword ſeeking all to confound,
The ſtrongeſt caſtles, towers, and townes, laid equall with the ground.
And like an whirlewinde taking vp great *Baiazet* away,
Coupt vp in cage, ſo carried him, for his diſport and play.
But whileſt he rageth thus about, and plotteth in his head
Such hard commands and heauie doomes, as all the world ſhould dread:
A little feauer in three fits, oppreſſed him with woe,
And cloaſing vp his vitall ſpirits, did lay his head full low.
E So that for all the world of wealth and kingdomes he poſſeſt,
The ſmall remainder of himſelfe in ſimple graue doth reſt.

His great empire by himſelfe diuided betwixt his ſons, was by their diſcord, and the ambition of ſome of their diſloyall ſubiects, in ſhort time after brought to great confuſion, and his poſteritie vtterly rooted out by *Vſun-Caſſanes*, the Armenian Prince, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie may appeare. But to returne again vnto our purpoſe, *Mahomet* deliuered of his greateſt feare, by the departure of *Tamerlane* out of thoſe countries, determined to goe to Prvsa in Bythinia, where his brother *Iſa* as then raigned: But vnderſtanding that *Iſa* had before taken the ſtraits whereby he ſhould paſſe the mount Horminivs, he tooke another way about, & came
F to Palæo-Castron, where the valiant captaine *Eine-beg Sub-baſſa* then remained: who with all honour and gladneſſe receiued him, and there for certaine dayes refreſhed both him and his armie. Afterwards greater forces ſtill repairing vnto him, he marched thence to Vlabad, called in ancient time Lopadivm. Of whoſe comming *Iſa* before vnderſtanding, and hauing aſſembled his armie, marched thither alſo, & encamped on the other ſide of the towne towards Prvsa, readie to giue him battell. But *Mahomet* ſeeing his brother ſo forward, conſulted with his captaines,

Mahomet goeth againſt his brother.

captaines what were beſt to be done: where *Eine Sub-baſſa* a man of great experience, and of late one of *Baiazet* his great counſellours and captaines, told him, That it was not for their honours being brethren, to pollute their hands one in the others bloud; but to aſſaie if the quarrell might by ſome other good meanes be compoſed, and they made friends. For which purpoſe *Mahomet* preſently ſent letters vnto his brother *Iſa*, concerning the partition of their fathers kingdome in ASIA betwixt them: offering vnto him the prouinces of AIDINIA, SARVCHANIA, GERMEANIA, CHARASIA, CHARAMANIA, with other countries to them belonging: ſo that he might haue PRVSA with all the other prouinces about the ſame. Which letters, when *Iſa* had read, and ſaw that *Mahomet* offered him but titles for kingdomes, and ſuch countries as were rather ſometimes tributaries vnto their father *Baiazet*, than any part of his kingdome, and now of late by *Tamerlane* againe reſtored vnto their ancient libertie and gouernours; ſharing out the beſt and ſtrongeſt part thereof vnto himſelfe, he brake forth into choler and ſaid:

The anſwere of Iſa to Mahomet his offers.

What? doth not my fathers kingdome of right belong vnto me being the elder brother? Mahomet *is yet but a youth, and ſcarce crept out of the ſhell: by what right then can he claime my fathers kingdome as his inheritance? If he can by the ſword win it, let him take it, and ſo hold it.*

Mahomet hauing receiued this anſwere, prepared himſelfe to the field, where his brother as readie as himſelfe, ſtood expecting his comming: and hauing ſet his armie in order of battell, gaue the firſt charge: which was the beginning of a moſt cruell and bloudie fight, wherein as it commonly falleth out in doubtfull battels, many were on both ſides ſlaine. At laſt the fortune of *Mahomet* preuailing, *Iſa* his armie began to retire: which he ſeeing, left nothing vndone for the encouraging of his fainting ſouldiers, which belonged to a politicke Generall, or valiant ſouldier to doe; but preſſing into the thickeſt of his enemies, there with his owne hand ſlew the ancient and valiant captaine *Eine Sub-baſſa*, who had many times beene Generall of the footmen in old *Baiazet* his wars But what preuaileth courage againſt euill fortune? *Iſa* muſt either flie or die. And therefore hauing done what he could in ſo deſperate a caſe, being himſelfe on euery ſide forſaken, in the end was glad himſelfe to flie to the ſea ſide: where finding a ſhip readie bound for CONSTANTINOPLE, he paſſed ouer thither in ſafetie, and there yeelded himſelfe vnto the protection of the Greeke Emperour *Emanuel*. In this chaſe *Mahomet* his ſouldiers tooke the valiant captaine *Temurtaſet* priſoner, another of *Baiazet* his great commanders, and brought him to *Mahomet*: who in reuenge of the death of *Eine*, commanded his head preſently to be ſmitten off, and his bodie to be hanged vpon a tree by the high way ſide. Of this victorie, *Mahomet* certified his brother *Solyman* at HADRIANOPLE, and in token thereof ſent him *Temurtaſes* his head. This battell was much ſpoken of, both for that it was fought betwixt two brethren; and alſo for the death of the two famous and old captaines *Eine* and *Temurtaſes*, who both together as louing friends, had fortunarly fought many great battels vnder *Baiazet* his enſignes; and now as it were by deſtinie, and againſt their wils, without any priuat grudge, were both drawne into contrary factions and ſlaine: both whilſt they liued wiſhing a good peace betwixt the ambitious brethren. But as the Turks vſe to ſay, *What is by God written in a mans forehead before his birth, cannot in his life be auoided.*

After this victorie, *Mahomet* thinking himſelfe now in ſure poſſeſſion of all his fathers dominions in ASIA, led his armie to PRVSA, where he was of the citizens ioyfully receiued as their Sultan: and for his great bountie, of all men highly commended and honoured. From thence he went to NICE, and ſo to NEAPOLIS, and there in both places was likewiſe receiued. Thither reſorted vnto him all the garriſons of CARASINA, SARVCHANIA, and AIDINIA, with other the inhabitants of thoſe countries, with all loyaltie ſubmitting themſelues vnto him, with ſuch honour and reuerence as belonged to their King.

All things thus ſorting according to his deſire in ASIA, he ſent to the Prince *Germean* for the bodie of his father *Baiazet*, and for his brother *Muſa*, which were there left by *Tamerlane*, as is before declared. This dead bodie was by the ſame Prince at the requeſt of *Mahomet*, with great ſolemnitie ſent to PRVSA, and there ſumptuouſly buried, with all the Turkiſh obſequies and ceremonies: the Turkiſh Alcoran or booke of their law, being read ſeuen daies vpon his tombe. All which time great cheere was kept for all commers, and much giuen to the poore (vpon the Turkiſh deuotion) for *Baiazet* his ſoule: but aboue all others, exceeding bountie was extended to the poſteritie of their Prophet *Mahomet*; which are knowne from others amongſt the Mahometans, by the colour of their apparell, which is all greene, and not lawfull to be worne of any but

The bodie of Baiazet honourably buried at Pruſa.

A but of them: ſo that they were by the bountie of *Mahomet* at that time greatly enriched. He alſo endowed the Abbey which his father had there lately built, with great lands and poſſeſſions for the maintenance thereof. All which things done, and the ſolemnitie paſt, he went in progreſſe to all parts of his kingdome, and was in euery place ioyfully receiued, and ſo afterward returned to AMASIA: and there in great pleaſure ſpent that Summer. Where we will for a while leaue him to ſee what *Solyman* his eldeſt brother in the meane time doth at HADRIANOPLE: whoſe liuely countenance is by the skilfull workmans hand thus expreſſed.

Non malus es niſi te eneruet male ſuada voluptas,
Quæque minus bello conuenit ingluuies.
Hoſpitio Mirxi fruitur iam Muſa Valachi:
Ille tuum vigilat pronus in exitium.

IAC. BOISARDVS.

Euill art thou not, except leaud luſt doe haſten on thy fall:
Or riot, which beſeemeth not a martiall man at all.
Thy brother *Muſa* entertaind by *Marke* to thine annoy,
Doth take no reſt, but waiteth ſtill how he may thee deſtroy.

Solyman

Solyman the eldeſt ſonne of *Baiazet* (who kept his court at HADRIANOPLE, there peaceably raigning all this while ouer the countries which his father *Baiazet* ſometime poſſeſſed in EVROPE) hearing what his brother *Mahomet* had done, and how violently againſt all right he had driuen *Iſa* out of PRVSA, and made him glad to flie to CONSTANTINOPLE: was with this his outragious dealing much offended, and thereupon calling vnto him his Baſſaes and faithfull counſellers, declared vnto them the vnnaturall proceedings of *Mahomet* againſt his brother *Iſa*. *Wherein* (ſaid he) *he doth me alſo great wrong in taking vpon him the ſouer aigntie ouer thoſe great dominions and countries in* ASIA, *which of right belong to me his eldeſt brother, and not to him the youngeſt of ſix. In reuenge of which iniurie and wrong, I intend in mine owne right, to paſſe ouer into* ASIA *with a ſtrong armie, and by force of armes to recouer mine inheritance there, if I may not otherwiſe come by it.* Vnto which ſpeech one of his graue counſellors replied: *That in his opinion it was not the beſt courſe for himſelfe to goe in perſon into thoſe wars. For although* (ſaid he) *your brother* Mahomet *be but young, and therefore by your greatneſſe leſſe accounted of, yet is his fortune great, and his experience aboue his yeeres. None haue yet had to doe with him, but they haue had enough of him: yea, it is worth the noting, how politickly he hath borne himſelfe for his owne ſafetie, and the ſafegard of the countries which he gouerned all the while that the great and mightie* Tamerlane *with his innumerable forces couered the face of the countries faſt by him: moſt part whereof,* Mahomet *hath now ſince his departure, againe recouered. Wherefore it were beſt for you to ſend for your angrie brother* Iſa, *to* CONSTANTINOPLE, *and to make him Generall of the armie you intend to ſend into* ASIA *againſt* Mahomet. *In which wars, it is not vnlike, but that one of your brethren will be loſt, whereby you ſhall haue one competitor of your kingdome the leſſe. So ſhall you afterwards with leſſe trouble ſubdue him that is left, or at leaſtwiſe pleaſe him with ſome part of that which they haue ſo mightily ſtriuen for.* This counſell was of *Solyman* and all the reſt well liked of, and approued. So was *Iſa* preſently ſent for vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, and a great armie leuied. Who being come to HADRIANOPLE, was by *Solyman* courteouſly welcommed, and made Generall of his armie: and therewith ſhipped ouer the ſtrait of HELLESPONTVS into ASIA. Where at his firſt comming, he poſſeſſed the whole countrey of CARASIA or LYDIA: and paſſing further, in all places where he came, was receiued of the people with great reuerence, they all promiſing him their obedience, if it were his fortune to preuaile againſt his younger brother *Mahomet*: wherewith he held himſelfe well contented. So comming to the citie of BEG-BAZER, otherwiſe called DESPOTOPOLIS, he there wintered with his armie. In which time, he with many kinde and louing letters ſtill directed to *Mahomet* as his younger brother, ſeemed to be glad that he was ſo well obeyed and liked of by his ſubiects: and that preſuming of his loue and fauour, he was as his louing brother, and not as an enemie come into ASIA, to entreat with him of ſuch matters as much concerned the good of them both. Whereunto *Mahomet* with like diſſimulation anſwered, That he was right glad of his comming, for which he needed not (as he ſaid) to make any excuſe, for that he was entred into a kingdome, in part his owne, and the reſt open before him: in token whereof, he commanded a rich garment to be caſt vpon the meſſenger as a fauour, ſending alſo diuers rich preſents vnto his brother, with great prouiſion of victuals, and other neceſſaries for his ſouldiers.

Good counſell.

Iſa with a great armie ſent by his brother Solyman into Aſia againſt Mahomet.

But Winter paſt, and the Spring come, *Iſa* marched with his armie to PRVSA, & there ſhewed vnto the citizens the louing letters he had at ſundrie times before receiued from *Mahomet*: and telling them that he was in good hope that they ſhould in ſhort time right well agree; requeſted to haue the caſtle deliuered vnto him, ſometime their ſoueraigne: whereinto the better ſort of the citizens had retired themſelues, and made faſt the gates againſt him: but when he ſaw that he could by no faire words or policie gaine the poſſeſſion of the caſtle, enraged with that repulſe, he ſet fire vpon that goodly citie, and burnt it downe to the ground. *Mahomet* not ignorant how his brother *Iſa* romed vp and downe his kingdome, vſing all kindneſſe to ſuch as yeelded vnto him; and exerciſing no leſſe crueltie vpon ſuch as refuſed his obedience: and how that he had raſed the royall citie of PRVSA: hauing gathered a ſtrong armie, marched in ten dayes from AMASIA to PRVSA, and by the way meeting with his brother *Iſa*, in a great battell ouerthrew him with all his forces. *Iſa* himſelfe, accompanied with no more but ten perſons, fled vnto CASTAMONA, Prince *Iſfendiar* his citie: who hearing of his arriuall there, entertained him with all the honour he could, in recompence of the great friendſhip he had before found at his hands, at what time he was an humble ſuter in his father *Baiazet* his court.

Pruſa burnt by Iſa.

Mahomet

A *Mahomet* comming to PRVSA, greeued exceedingly to ſee that faire citie ſo deſtroied : yet to comfort the poore citizens, he gaue exceeding ſummes of money to be beſtowed amongſt them, and tooke order for the new building of the citie, and there continued certaine daies himſelfe to ſee the worke begun.

Iſa in the meane time, hauing incited the Prince *Iſfendiar* in his quarrell to inuade his brother *Mahomet*, and going thither himſelfe in perſon, was by him now the third time ouerthrowne and put to flight. Neuertheleſſe he with ſome ſmall forces, twice afterwards entred into *Mahomets* dominion, but finding few or none willing to follow his euill fortune, was glad at laſt to flie to the Prince of SMYRNA, by whom he was both honourably entertained and comforted.

B This Prince of SMYRNA moued with *Iſa* his pitifull complaints, in ſo manifeſt a wrong, did not only promiſe him what helpe he could of himſelfe, but alſo by his embaſſadours ſolicited the Princes of AIDINIA, SARVCHANIA, and MENTESIA, to giue him aid in ſo iuſt a quarrell, for the releeſe of *Iſa* againſt his vſurping brother. Theſe Princes pitying the caſe of the diſtreſſed Prince, and moued with the requeſt of the Prince of SMYRNA, and fearing alſo the ambitious ſpirit of *Mahomet*; amongſt them ſent ſuch aid, that being all aſſembled together, *Iſa* had now twentie thouſand men in armes. *Mahomet* vnderſtanding of this great preparation made againſt him, and hauing raiſed a ſtrong armie, thought it not beſt to expect his brothers comming into his countrey (where perhaps many might ioyne themſelues vnto him, being ſo ſtrong in field) but entred the Prince of SMYRNA his countrey, with ſuch ſpeed, that he was
C vpon him and the reſt of his enemies before he was looked for; where after a great and bloudie fight, he obtained of them a notable victorie. *Iſa* hauing loſt the battell, and therewith his hope alſo, fled into CARAMANIA, and there in ſuch obſcuritie ended his daies, that no man can tell where nor how he died. This was the end of this noble Prince, alwaies of greater courage than fortune. The Prince of SMYRNA the chiefe author of this warre, humbling himſelfe to *Mahomet*, obtained his fauour. The other confederate Princes which gaue aid to *Iſa*, were ſhortly after by *Mahomet* for moſt part ſpoiled of their dominions. Which done, he returned with victorie to the building of PRVSA, hoping now to liue at more quiet.

Iſa flieth into Caramania, and there dieth in obſcuritie.

But whilſt *Mahomet* after this victorie, dreading no danger, was in the middeſt of his pleaſures at PRVSA, he was certainly aduertiſed, That his eldeſt brother *Solyman* had raiſed a great armie
D in EVROPE, to inuade him in ASIA. Vpon which aduertiſement, he furniſhed the caſtle of PRVSA with a ſtrong garriſon, and all things needfull for the enduring of a long ſiege, and placed *Iacup-Beg* (the ſonne of *Firoſes*) captaine therein ; and afterwards departed himſelfe, becauſe that citie lately before burnt by *Iſa*, was not as yet to be defended, much leſſe to be accounted of as a place to retire vnto, if need ſhould ſo require. From PRVSA he came to ANCYRA, and from thence directed commiſſions for the taking vp of ſouldiers in all parts of his kingdome. At which time he writ letters alſo to *Doioran* a Tartar Prince (whom he had many times greatly pleaſured) for aid : who preſently came vnto him with certaine troupes of braue horſe, promiſing him his faithfull ſeruice.

Not long after, hearing that his brother *Solyman* was with a puiſſant armie now come ouer
E HELLESPONTVS, he conſulted with his beſt leaders, what courſe firſt to take ; being himſelfe of opinion, without delay to meet his brother in the field, deeming it great ſhame not to offer him preſent battell. But he was by his more expert captaines aduiſed, to conſider that he was to fight againſt his eldeſt brother, of whoſe good or bad fortune he had as yet no experience : and that many ſecretly fauoured his quarrell, and claime, as the eldeſt ſonne and right heire of his father *Baiazet:* and that therefore it were better for him to retire farther off into the ſtrength of his kingdome, and ſo temporizing, to await all good opportunities which might chance, as it doth in nothing more than in martiall affaires ; rather than to commit all to the hazard of one battell, wherein if fortune failed him, all were then vtterly loſt. Vpon which reſolution he retired from ANCYRA towards AMASIA. At which time *Doioran* the falſe Tartarian,
F marching out at the other ſide of the citie, fell to robbing and ſpoiling of *Mahomets* ſubiects as an enemie, burning the country villages as they went · which thing when *Mahomet* vnderſtood, he with his horſemen purſued him ; and ouertaking him before he was looked for, ſlue moſt part of his men, and recouered all the ſpoile which he had before taken; all which *Mahomet* gaue to his ſouldiers: *Doioran* himſelfe hardly eſcaping by flight. And ſo *Mahomet* hauing reuenged himſelfe vpon his diſſembling friend, held on his way towards AMASIA.

The caſtle of Pruſa beſieged by Solyman.

Solyman being come into ASIA, led his armie towards PRVSA: where the citizens vnderſtanding of his comming, went out of the citie to meet him, and hauing done vnto him ſuch honour and reuerence as belonged to their Sultan, brought him peaceably into the citie. But *Iacup-Beg* ſtood vpon his guard, and would by no means deliuer vnto him the caſtle which was before by *Mahomet* committed to his charge: for which cauſe *Solyman* laid hard ſiege vnto it, and gaue thereunto diuers ſharpe aſſaults, whereby the defendants were greatly weakned, many of them being ſlaine, and the reſt for the moſt part wounded. Whereupon *Iacup* by letters ſent by one *Eine Hozze*, certified *Mahomet* how things ſtood, and that the caſtle could not long be holden againſt the furious aſſaults of *Solyman*, except it were with ſpeed releeued: vpon which newes, he in all haſte made towards PRVSA, returning the ſame meſſenger before him with letters to the captaine of the caſtle, if happily he could finde meanes to deliuer the ſame: wherein he highly commended him for his faithfull ſeruice, and promiſed him ſpeedie releeſe. This meſſenger with his letters, chanced by *Solyman* his ſouldiers to be intercepted, and brought to *Alis Baſſa*, *Solyman* his chiefe counſellor (a man of a ſharpe conceit) who of nothing could make ſomething, but hauing any thing to worke vpon, could doe wonders: He hauing ſtraightly examined the meſſenger, and peruſed the letters, ſuppreſſed the ſame, and preſently writ others in the name of *Mahomet*, commending the captaine for that he had alreadie done in his ſeruice; but yet for as much as he could not poſſibly in time releeue him, he willed him therefore to deliuer vp the caſtle, and to prouide for the ſafetie of himſelfe and his garriſon, by ſuch conditions as he could beſt obtaine. Theſe counterfeit letters *Alis Baſſa* found meanes to be as cunningly deliuered vnto the captaine, as they were craftily indited: who hauing read the ſame, and now out of all hope of releeſe, expecting alſo euery houre to be aſſaulted by the furious enemie; vpon reaſonable conditions yeelded the caſtle to *Solyman*. The newes whereof being brought vnto *Mahomet*, now come within one dayes march of PRVSA, exceedingly grieued him: but ſeeing no remedie, he returned backe againe to AMASIA; whither *Solyman* (now poſſeſſed of the citie and caſtle of PRVSA, and hauing thereby got a great name in ASIA) ſhortly after came with his armie, and hardly beſieged his brother in AMASIA: but ſeeing no hope to win the citie, he retired backe againe to PRVSA, and there after his wonted manner ſpent his time in riot and exceſſe, whereunto he was exceedingly giuen. *Iacup Beg* for yeelding of the caſtle, was afterward by *Mahomet* ſtraightly impriſoned, and in danger to haue beene put to death, had not the great Baſſaes become earneſt interceſſours for him.

Mahomet lying at AMASIA, was by his ſecret eſpials aduertiſed, That his brother *Solyman* hauing diſperſed his armie, lay in great ſecuritie at PRVSA, guarded but with a ſmall power, paſſing his time in all voluptuous pleaſure, his common exerciſe. Whereupon he in all haſte marched with his armie thitherwards, to haue ſurpiſed him, before he ſhould be able to call together his diſperſed forces. But when he was come to the riuer SANGARIVS, he was diſcouered by *Solyman Subbaſſa*, a great captaine, whom Sultan *Solyman* had ſent, for the taking vp of men in that ſide of the countrey. Who returning in all haſte, gaue *Solyman* knowledge of his brothers comming: with which ſudden newes he was ſo diſmaied, being now of ſmall ſtrength, that for the auoiding of the imminent danger, he would preſently haue fled into EVROPE, had not *Alis Baſſa* otherwiſe perſwaded him: telling him, That if he ſhould ſo cowardly flie away, it would not onely blemiſh and defame his honour, but diſcourage his friends alſo in ASIA, and encourage his enemies to purſue him perhaps vnto the gates of HADRIANOPLE: and that therefore it were better, with ſuch forces as he had, to take the ſtraits about NEAPOLIS, and ſo to ſtay his brothers further paſſage into that countrey, vntill ſuch time as he might aſſemble the reſt of his armie. According to which good counſell, he firſt tooke the beforenamed ſtraits and paſſages, whereby *Mahomet* was of neceſſitie to paſſe, and there ſtrongly fortified himſelfe. *Mahomet* comming thither, with great force entered thoſe ſtraits, but was ſtill valiantly by *Solyman* repulſed. The like attempt he many times valiantly gaue, for that he knew himſelfe to be at that time too ſtrong for his brother: but *Solyman* hauing the aduantage of the place, with little danger or loſſe fruſtrated thoſe his brothers braue attempts, although he were then a great deale the weaker. *Alis Baſſa*, whoſe wilie head, fraught with long experience, could (with nothing) effect great matters, in the meane time was not idle, but (making *Solyman* before acquainted with his doings) ſent a ſecret meſſenger (one of his owne truſtie ſeruauts) to *Mahomet* with letters, certifying him, That moſt of his nobilitie and great captaines had ſecretly

conſpired

A conſpired to betray him into the hands of his elder brother *Solyman*, as the vndoubted heire of his father *Baiazet*; and ſo with the price of his head, to make their owne peace and attonement with him: and that for the performance thereof, they had bound themſelues firſt vnto *Solyman*, and afterwards one to another, by ſolemne oath. Which treaſon he diſcouered vnto him, with great proteſtation of his loue and good will, as he that had of long time eaten bread and ſalt (as the Turkes vſe to ſay) in his fathers court; and therefore could not but wiſh well vnto him, being one of his lord and maſters ſonnes. Theſe letters ſomething troubled *Mahomet*, breeding in his head many a iealous conceit: for all that, he ceaſed not for ſix or ſeauen dayes ſpace, to giue many a hot skirmiſh for the gaining of thoſe ſtraight paſſages, but all in vaine. In which
B time, it chanced one of his ſeruants neere about his perſon, to flie vnto the enemie; which cauſed him the more to ſuſpect all that to be true, whereof *Alis Baſſa* had forewarned him. Which conſidered, and that by lying there he preuailed nothing, but loſt and wearied his men (for it was all that while exceeding foule weather) and withall doubting to be betraid, returned as he came, to AMASIA. And *Solyman* glad alſo of his departure, retired to PRVSA, giuing order into all parts of his kingdome, for the aſſembling of a great armie: but vnderſtanding that the King of CARAMANIA had made a league with his brother *Mahomet*, & that they were agreed to ioyne their forces againſt him for the driuing of him out of ASIA, he forthwith drew all his forces to ANCYRA, as a place of more ſafetie.

Whileſt *Solyman* thus lay at ANCYRA, it fortuned that *Muſa* (which had all this while re-
C mained with his brother *Mahomet*, ſince he was ſet at libertie by *Tamerlane*) though not altogether well pleaſed with his owne eſtate, one day by way of talke, thus ſpake vnto his brother: *You ſee* (ſaid he) *how our elder brother* Solyman *ceaſeth not to vex and moleſt vs daily, and is not vnlike in the end to preuaile againſt vs, to our vtter deſtruction: Now if it might pleaſe you to giue me leaue, I would goe to* Iſtendiar *Prince of* CASTAMONA *and* PONTVS, *our brothers enemie, and of him procure ſhipping to paſſe ouer the Euxine ſea into* EVROPE: *where I doubt not to finde opportunitie to make ſome great innouation in that kingdome, now in my brothers abſence: by reaſon whereof,* Solyman *ſhall of neceſſitie be driuen to leaue* ASIA, *to be againe by you ſolely poſſeſſed: or elſe be brought in danger, there to loſe his kingdome in* EVROPE. *Which if it ſhall be my good hap to gaine out of his hands by your ſupportation, I promiſe you faithfully to hold the ſame of you, as of my Lord and Soue-*
D *raigne.* This greatly pleaſed *Mahomet*, and thereupon not long after they concluded betwixt themſelues, one to ſtand faſt vnto another, and the one to helpe the other in what they could, during life; confirming the ſame with great ſolemnitie of their Turkiſh faith giuen, and taken. Whereupon *Mahomet* furniſhed his brother *Muſa* with great ſummes of mony and other needfull things, for the taking in hand of ſo great an enterpriſe.

Muſa thus furniſhed, taking his leaue of his brother, ſet forwards towards the Prince *Iſfendiar*: who hearing of his comming, met him on the way, and entertained him as a great Prince. But after that *Muſa* had made him acquainted with his purpoſe for paſſing into EVROPE, and had obtained grant of his helpe therein, he tooke his leaue of him for a time, and went to viſit the King of CARAMANIA; who alſo moſt honourably entertained him, and the rather in de-
E ſpight of *Solyman*. But whileſt *Muſa* was thus paſſing the time in CARAMANIA, it fortuned that *Marke* (of ſome called *Mirxes*) Prince of VALACHIA, hauing his countrey much ſpoiled by *Solyman* his garriſons; and hearing that *Muſa* one of *Baiazet* his ſonnes, was with the Prince *Iſfendiar*; he writ vnto him, promiſing to beſtow his daughter and heire in mariage vpon *Muſa*, if he would come ouer into EVROPE, and reuenge the wrong done vnto him by *Solyman*: whereof *Muſa* aduertiſed by the Prince *Iſfendiar*, gladly returned out of CARAMANIA, and was by him tranſported ouer the Euxine or blacke ſea, into EVROPE: where the Prince of VALACHIA glad of his comming, receiued him with great honour, and according to his promiſe gaue him his daughter in mariage.

Muſa marieth the Prince of Valachia his daughter.

The fame of *Muſa* his comming into EVROPE, and of his mariage, was in ſhort time bru-
F ted thorow all *Solyman* his kingdome in EVROPE, and wrought ſuch effect in the minds of the mutable vulgar people (alwayes deſirous of noueltie) that they all as it were with one conſent, ſubmitted themſelues vnto him, as vnto their Lord and Soueraigne. In ſo much that comming to the royall citie of HADRIANOPLE, in the abſence of his brother *Solyman*, he was there receiued as their King.

Muſa in the abſence of Solyman receiued at Hadrianople as King.

Solyman now lying at ANCYRA in ASIA, vnderſtanding of theſe proceedings of *Muſa* in

EVROPE, and that he was poſſeſſed of a great part of his kingdome there, was therewith exceedingly troubled. Wherefore leauing his deputie in ANCYRA, he with all his armie came to the ſtrait of BOSPHORVS, and there of *Emannel* the Greeke Emperour obtained paſſage, promiſing for the ſame to reſtore vnto him certaine places before taken from him in ASIA: for *Muſa* had ſo prouided, that he could haue no helpe of the Turkiſh ſhipping, which was by his commandement all before brought ouer vnto EVROPE ſide. *Muſa* hearing of *Solyman* his arriuall in EVROPE, made towards him with a great power: but after that both their armies were come the one within view of the other, and now readie to ioyne battell, many of *Muſa* his captaines forſooke him, and fled to *Solyman* the elder brother and their vndoubted King: which *Muſa* beholding, was glad to flie, and to take the ſafegard of the woods and mountaines for his refuge. After which victorie, *Solyman* returning to HADRIANOPLE, tooke againe poſſeſſion of his kingdome, and there without meaſure gaue himſelfe to riot and exceſſe, according to his wonted manner. G H

After the departure of *Solyman* out of ASIA, *Iacup-Beg* (but lately before againe receiued into *Mahomet* his fauour, and now left as *Solyman* his deputie) deliuered ANCYRA with the caſtle of PRVSA, and all the reſt that *Solyman* had gained in ASIA, to *Mahomet*; who ſhortly after led his armie thorow the countries of CARASIA, AYDINIA, SARVCANIA, TEKENSIS, and GERMEANIA, reducing them once againe vnto his obeyſance: and afterwards returned to PRVSA, where he now the ſecond time tooke poſſeſſion of his fathers kingdome in ASIA.

Muſa goeth againſt Solyman.

Muſa ſtill aided by the Valachian Prince his father in law, gaue many great attempts againſt his brother *Solyman*: but was ſtill put to the worſe. At length hauing gathered ſome good ſtrength, and diligently attending the leaſt ſmile of better fortune, drew neere vnto the place where *Solyman* lay, who at that time was (as his manner was) banqueting with great pleaſure in his campe, and full of wine. In ſo much that when newes was brought vnto him, That his brother *Muſa* was at hand with a great power, he in his drunkenneſſe cauſed the meſſenger that brought the newes to be beaten: and when he with greater earneſtneſſe than was to his liking, affirmed that his report to be true, he commanded him to be ſlaine for troubling his mirth. But not long after, *Muſa* was come ſo neere, that the vauntcourrours of his armie did skirmiſh with ſome of *Solyman* his ſouldiers: when as *Chaſis Eurenoſes* one of his fathers old captaines, preſſing in, told him that *Muſa* was at hand, and had skirmiſhed with part of his armie. Whereof *Solyman* (now farre in wine) had no regard, but ſaid: Good tutor doe not trouble me no more, my brother *Muſa* dares not come ſo nigh me; if I doe but hold vp my cap, he is gone. With which anſwere the old captaine going out diſcontented, ſent in *Chaſan*, Aga of the Ianizaries: who boldly comming vnto him, told him plainly of the imminent danger, & ſharply reproued him for his intemperance and ſecuritie. With whoſe free ſpeech, *Solyman* moued, in great rage commanded his beard to be cut off, then no ſmall diſgrace amongſt the Turks. *Chaſan* preſently comming forth thus diſgraced, ſaid to them that ſtood waiting without: *This is the honour wherewith Sultan* Solyman *in his exceſſe, rewardeth his moſt faithfull ſeruants. Wherefore be it knowne to you all, I will from henceforth (and not without cauſe) ſerue* Muſa, *a Prince of greater temperance and diſcretion: who ſo will follow me, come and welcome.* So mounting to horſe, and accompanied with a number of his Ianizaries, of whom he was greatly beloued, went ouer to *Muſa*: as did many other great captaines alſo with their companies, moued by his example ſo to doe. But when *Solyman* vnderſtood that *Chaſan* with moſt part of the Ianizaries, and many other worthie captaines, with the greateſt ſtrength of his armie, were reuolted to *Muſa*, then faſt by, and readie to ſet vpon him; it then repented him too late of his diſſolute follie: and finding no other remedie now to eſcape, hid himſelfe vntill it was darke night; then taking horſe, accompanied only with *Caratze Beg* and *Cara Muchill*, two of his noblemen, and one countrey Turke (whom they had retained for their guide) thought to haue fled to CONSTANTINOPLE. This malicious clowne, hauing of purpoſe led them by vnknowne wayes all that night to and fro, as it were in a maze, oftentimes miſnaming vnto them the places they paſſed by, as if they had been in the right way, brought them in the morning to a village not farre from the place from whence they departed the euening before: and there riding a little before them, of purpoſe, gaue warning to a ſturdie peaſant or two of his acquaintance, that *Solyman* was comming after: willing them to make ſtay of him. Theſe rude countrey churles, with ſome others of like breed, running out with bats and ſtaues, and ſuch other homely tooles as firſt came to hand, ſlew *Caratze* and *Cara Muchill*, which I K L M

Solyman flieth.

would

A would not yeeld vnto them, but ſtood vpon their guard, and tooke *Solyman* aliue: where, as it commonly falleth out in the vulgar peoples furie, ſome cried out to kill him, and ſo to end the warres; ſome likewiſe to burne him; and ſome to hang him; and ſome few to ſaue him: euery one as his rude affection lead him. In the heat of this countrey vprore came *Muſa*, who glad to ſee his brother *Solyman* ſo hardly beſet, cauſed him preſently to be there ſtrangled, when he had raigned in HADRIANOPLE ſix yeeres and ten moneths.

Solyman ſtrangled by his brother Muſa.

This was the miſerable end of *Solyman*, the eldeſt ſonne that *Baiazet* left aliue. A man much giuen to exceſſe, otherwiſe endued with many great vertues, being both of great valour and exceeding bountifull. In his time liued the learned Doctor *Achmetes*, which wrote the hiſtorie of
B *Alexander* the Great, in Turkiſh verſe, and publiſhed it in the name of *Solyman* himſelfe: for which he was by him bounteouſly rewarded. The dead bodie of *Solyman* himſelfe, was by the commandement of *Muſa* conuaied to PRVSA, and there lieth buried faſt by the bodie of his grandfather *Amurath*. So now of theſe *Cadmeian* brethren, remained none but *Mahomet* and *Muſa*, the one raigning in ASIA, and the other in EVROPE, diuers parts of the world, and well bounded with the ſureſt bounds of nature: yet not ſufficient to content or containe their ambitious minds, vntill that the younger had moſt vnnaturally deuoured the elder: whoſe liuely counterfait, as it is by the skilfull workman expreſſed, you may here behold.

This Solyman is that ſame whō ſome call Celebinus, & other-ſome Calepinus, and reckon him for the fifth King of the Turks.

Quid properas inſane tuum peſſundare fratrem?
Nam ſceleris tanti, præmia digna feres.
Quicquid enim fratri malefeceris, hoc tibi frater
Mox referet, nimis hæc in tua fata ruis. RICH. KNOLLEVS.

What haſteſt thou mad foole, thy brother to confound?
The guerdon of ſuch villanie, ſhall to thy ſelfe redound.
For looke what miſchiefe thou haſt wrought, ſhall turne to thee againe:
Why doſt thou therefore fooliſh man ſo haſten on thy paine?

Musa presently after the death of his brother *Solyman*, tooke vpon him the Turkish kingdome in EVROPE: who in the beginning of his raigne displaced most of them which had born great offices before in the time of his brother *Solyman*, and had now of late reuolted to him; fearing to be by them betraied or forsaken, as his brother was: and in their roomes placed other his owne creatures. And not so content, proceeded farther, vpon smal causes most vnkindly to imprison and put to death many of them that had of him well deserued. Which cruell dealing so alienated the minds of his nobility, that many of them kept themselues out of the way, doubtfully expecting the euent of such his tyrannicall gouernement: *Chasis Eurenoses*, that old & renowned captain, to escape his hands, was glad to feigne himself blind, so to absent himself from court. At this time hee also by his Embassadours demaunded of diuers Christian princes his neighbours, such tribute as they had in times past either paied or promised to pay vnto his father *Baiazet*: and in that quarell inuaded many of them, namely, the princes of SERVIA and BVLGARIA. Amongst other he sent *Ibrahim Bassa*, a learned man of great experience, and sometimes one of his fathers graue counsellours, vnto *Emanuell Palcologus*, the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, to demand the like tribute of him. Who so soone as he was come to CONSTANTINOPLE, from thence by letters aduertised *Mahomet* of the vndiscreet gouernment of his brother *Musa* in his new gotten kingdome; and what vntimely stirres he began to make, before he was therein well setled, losing the loue both of his subiects and neighbour princes: with much other matter concerning his misgouernment. Which things when *Mahomet* vnderstood, he sent a messenger with letters back againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, requesting the Bassa to come ouer vnto him into ASIA, and in token of his great fauour sent him diuers rich garments, with many great and princely promises: wherewith the Bassa mooued, and detesting the cruell gouernment of *Musa*, went ouer vnto him to PRVSA, and there was of him honourably entertained, and sworne one of his priuie councell: in which place of honor he long time afterwards serued him faithfully, and after him his sonne *Amurath* also.

Mahomet thinking, vpon the aduantage of his brothers euill gouernment, to find meanes to thrust him out of his kingdome, and so to draw the whole gouernment of the Turkish empire vnto himselfe, as well in EVROPE as in ASIA; assembled an armie of fifteen thousand choice souldiors to inuade his brother in EVROPE, before hee were there well established in his kingdome. And so shocking downe towards the straits of BOSPHORVS, by his embassador concluded a league with *Emanuell* the Greeke Emperour, That one of them should neuer wrong or damnifie the other: and that if *Mahomet* should hap to obtaine the Turkish kingdome in EVROPE, he should alwaies honour and reuerence the Emperour as his speciall good friend: but if it should chance him to be distressed or ouerthrowne by his brother *Musa*, that then the Emperor should presently transport him & his armie back againe into ASIA. This league was with great solemnitie of words on both parts confirmed. And shortly after *Mahomet* with all his armie was by the Emperors shipping at the strait of BOSPHORVS neere vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, transported ouer into EVROPE: for *Musa* possessed of GALLIPOLIS, had stopped all the other passages.

Musa hauing before knowledge of his brothers comming, was foorthwith in readinesse to meete him with a strong armie. So that *Mahomet* had not marched farre from the sea side, but that the vauntcourriers of his armie met with his brothers, at a place called INTZVOE, and there began a light skirmish: wherein *Musa* his forerunners were by *Mahomets* put to flight, and chased vnto *Musa* his campe. Whereof such a sudden feare arose in the armie, that they were almost ready to flie, thinking *Mahomet* had beene vpon them with all his power: but vnderstanding the truth of the matter, both armies rested that night, which as then drew fast on. The next day these two brethren, armed with equal hope, brought their armies into the field, & gaue the signall of the battaile, whereupon began a mortall and bloodie fight: in the furie wherof *Michaell Ogli*, Bassa of ROMANIA, and certaine other of *Musa* his great captaines, vpon secret discontentment reuolted to *Mahomet*: wherewith many of *Musa* his souldiors discouraged, fled. Which *Mahomet* his souldiors seeing, pursued the chase with such earnestnesse and furie, that few were left with himselfe: yet with such as were left, in hope of good hap, he set vpon his brother: who although hee was hardly discomfited with the flight of the greater part of his armie, whom the enemies had yet in chace, yet stood he fast himself with seuen thousand Ianizaries, his best souldiors; so taking the vnexpected good hap, presented vnto him by his brothers forwardnesse,

The battaile betwixt the two brethren, Mahomet & Musa.

A neſſe, valiantly receiued his charge. But *Mahomet* finding there a greater ſtrength than he had before ſuppoſed, and himſelfe too weake to withſtand the furie of the Ianizaries, becauſe moſt of his men alſo were following the chace, was now for ſafegard of his life glad to flie himſelfe to CONSTANTINOPLE: whither he came accompanied ſcarcely with two hundred men: and was from thence, according to the agreement before made betwixt him and the Emperor, ſpeedily ſhipped ouer into ASIA. *Muſa* hauing thus put his brother to flight, with great ſlaughter of his men, preſently tooke his tents with all that was therein, and there encamped himſelfe. They of *Mahomets* armie, which followed the chace of ſuch as had fled in the beginning of the battell, not knowing what had happened to *Mahomet*, returning to the campe,
B doubting no perill, and finding it at their returne poſſeſſed by their enemies, ſtood as men amaſed and vtterly diſcouraged: at which time *Muſa* would not ſuffer his ſouldiers to put them to the ſword, as they would faine haue done, but commanded them to be deſpoiled of their armes and ſuch other things as they had, and ſo with life ſuffered them to depart.

After this ouerthrow, whileſt *Mahomet* lay ſtill at PRVSA, the Prince of SMYRNA forcibly entred into AIDINIA, purpoſing to paſſe thorow into SARVCANIA: which thing *Mahomet* hearing, gathered a great armie, and entering into the Princes countrey, made ſuch ſpoile as he went, and ſo diſtreſſed the Prince himſelfe, that he was glad to ſubmit himſelfe vnto him, and from thenceforth to hold his dominion of him, as of his Lord and Soueraigne, and ſo returned vnto AMASIA.

C *Mahomet* could not well diſgeſt the loſſe he had ſo lately receiued in EVROPE, and therefore leuied an armie of choice ſouldiers out of all parts of his kingdome, once againe to trie his fortune againſt his elder brother *Muſa*. For the better ſucceſſe wherein, he by his letters craued aid of the Prince *Dulgader Ogli*, written to this effect:

Sultan *Mahomet* vnto the Prince *Dulgader Ogli*, his father in law.

Mahomet his letters vnto the Prince Dulgader Ogli, his father in law.

D *My purpoſe is to lead mine armie into* ROMANIA *in* EVROPE, *and there againe to trie my quarrell with my brother* Muſa. *My hope is, that you will not with your aid be wanting vnto me your ſonne in law, in my ſo great affaires, neither for want of good will to hinder this my purpoſe. Fare you well. In the yeare of our great Prophet Mahomet* 814. *From* AMASIA.

Whereunto the Prince returned this kind anſwere:

Prince *Dulgader Ogli* vnto the great Sultan *Mahomet*.

The anſwere of Prince Dulgader Ogli to Mahomet.

E *I doubt not moſt mightie Monarch, but that whitherſoeuer your deſires ſhall draw you for the vndertaking of any great exploit, he that ruleth aboue in heauen, will be alwaies your aid, proſper your attempts, miniſter vnto you fit occaſions, and bring all your actions vnto moſt happie end, with moſt aſſured victorie. Wherefore ſeeing (God ſo diſpoſing our affaires) I cannot my ſelfe in perſon come vnto you with my power, and giue you my truſtie helpe in this your intended warre: yet will I in no caſe faile with all ſpeed to ſend my ſonne your ſeruant, to aid you with our forces, in this warre. Fare you well. This ſame yeare of our Prophet* 814.

And ſo ſhortly after, the Prince ſent vnto him his ſon, according to his promiſe, with a companie of braue ſouldiers, excellently furniſhed: for the welcomming of whom, *Mahomet* his brother in law made a great and royall feaſt: and there in his mirth gaue vnto the young Prince the rich apparell he wore himſelfe, with the horſe he rode vpon, and all the rich plate of gold and ſiluer wherein they were ſerued at that feaſt, a matter of great value. And to euery one of his
F noblemen he gaue a rich garment, made for that purpoſe, with ſome other gift, as a fauour: and afterwards gaue them all to vnderſtand, That he intended forthwith to paſſe ouer into EVROPE, and there to recouer all his fathers kingdome, or elſe there to end his daies: As for the ſpoile and prey (ſaid he) it ſhall be theirs that can win it: one horſe, one ſword, one horſemans mace ſhall content my ſelfe. So hauing furniſhed his armie with al things needful for ſo great an enterpriſe, he ſet forward, and came to the ſtrait of BOSPHORVS; and from thence gaue knowledge of his

his comming to the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE: who glad thereof (for the displeasure he bare to *Musa*) transported him and all his armie ouer that strait into EVROPE, and there in one of his countrey palaces royally feasted him. At which time *Mahomet* requested the Emperour to ioyne with him in that warre against their common enemie: but he excused himselfe by reason of his great age; yet neuertheless, assisted him with certaine companies of valiant Christians, whose seruice afterward stood the Turke in great stead. G

So *Mahomet* taking his leaue of the Emperour, marched with his armie to the riuer WYZEN in THRACIA, where by the way he receiued letters from the ancient captaine *Chasis Eurenoses*, aduising him to be very circumspect in his marching, and not to make too much haste to ioyne battell with his brother: counselling him also (if he could by any meanes) to allure *Iegides Bassa*, *Barac Beg*, and *Sinan Beg*, to forsake his brother, and to follow his ensignes; for that in those men consisted *Musa* his greatest strength: and promised in good time to come vnto him himselfe also, if he were not too hastie. This messenger that brought this newes, *Mahomet* bountifully rewarded, and so sent him away. Shortly after, as he was marching towards HADRIANOPLE, part of the enemies armie began to shew it selfe vnder the leading of *Cara Calile*, and was presently charged by *Michael Ogli*, and put to flight. So holding on his way to HADRIANOPLE, he laid siege to the citie: where the citizens sent out vnto him certaine of their grauest and most substantiall burgesses, to certifie him, That by reason of the garrison there left by *Musa*, they could not as then deliuer the citie vnto him; but if it should please him to goe and trie his fortune in the field against his brother, who should be the commander thereof, he should find them readie to follow his good fortune, and to yeeld themselues, the citie, and all therein, to his pleasure, if it were his good hap to carrie away the victorie. With which answere *Mahomet* contenting himselfe, raised his siege, and tooke the way towards ZAGORA. In that place *Musa* is reported to haue come secretly disguised into *Mahomet* his campe, and to haue taken full view thereof, but perceiuing himselfe too weake to encounter his brother, withdrew his armie into the safegard of the great woods and strong places: and so from thence retired with his armie towards PHILIPPOPOLIS, and so marched along the riuer MERITZE, called in ancient time HEBRVS: where *Iegides Bassa*, with *Hamza Beg*, and *Ismir Ogli* (three of *Musa* his great captaines) set vpon the rereward of *Mahomets* armie, and were by *Michael Ogli* repulsed. *Mahomet* holding on his way, came to SOPHIA: where as he went, *Musa* diuers times from the mountaines made shew of his armie, but durst not come downe into the plaine to giue him battell. *Mahomet* hauing refreshed his armie at SOPHIA, marched to SARKIVE, where he receiued letters from *Iegides Bassa*, *Barac Beg*, and *Sinan Beg*, all secretly perswaded by old *Eurenoses* to reuolt vnto him: the tenor whereof in briefe was this. H I K

Hadrianople besieged by Mahomet.

Iegides Bassa, *Barac Beg*, and *Sinan Beg*, vnto the great Sultan *Mahomet*.

We are three young men (most mightie Monarch) and haue with vs three thousand choice souldiers, men of incomparable valour, such as the world hath scarce the like: draw your forces neare vnto vs with as much speed as you can, and you shall finde vs readie to come ouer vnto you. Fare you well. L

Musa his chiefe captaines reuolt to Mahomet.

Whereupon he marched all the next night after, vntill he came to the riuer MORAVA, and there encamped: where the three aforenamed captaines, according to their promise ioyned themselues vnto him with all their souldiers. Thither came also old *Eurenoses*, of all others the most famous captaine amongst the Turks, and now no longer blind, bringing with him a great companie of most expert souldiers. *Marke* the Despot of SERVIA (for the displeasure he bare vnto *Musa*) sent him aid thither also. By which supplies, *Mahomets* armie was greatly increased: who after he had courteously welcomed all these new come captains, he began againe to march farther vntill he came to COSSOVA, the vnfortunate plaine; where *Hamza Beg* the Prince of SMYRNA his sonne, hauing forsaken *Musa*, came vnto him with fiue hundred horse, certifying him that all the nobilitie had forsaken his father: so, as he marched from place to place, his forces still increased by the reuolt of his brothers. *Musa* seeing his souldiers thus daily fall from him, insomuch that he had almost none now left, but the souldiers of the court (which were indeed his best men of war, and alwaies vnto him faithfull, because he had beene euer vnto them exceeding M

A ding bountifull) thought it beſt to attempt ſomething, before he were left himſelfe alone. Wherefore hauing yet with him ſeuen thouſand of thoſe expert ſouldiers, he drew neerer vnto his brother, ſeeking to haue taken him at ſome aduantage. But *Mahomet* hauing knowledge of his purpoſe, & contented to be aduiſed by his old expert captaines, had euer a vigilant eye vnto him. Yet at laſt, whether it were vpon good hope, or elſe prickt forward with deſpaire, *Muſa* vpon the ſudden, valiantly ſet vpon his brothers armie: but his ſouldiers oppreſſed with multitude, rather then ouercome with true valour, after a hard and bloody fight were put to the worſt: which he ſeeing, deſperately brake into the midſt of his enemies, ſeeking there for death amongſt the thickeſt of them. But being knowne by *Baiazet Baſſa*, *Mahomet* his lieutenant generall, deſi-
B rous to take him aliue, he was beſet on euery ſide: where ſeeing himſelfe in more danger to be taken than ſlaine, he with great courage brake from amongſt the middeſt of them, and fled. In which flight his horſe falling into a deep muddie ditch (or as ſome others ſay, hoxed by *Sarutzes* his owne ſeruant, and himſelfe wounded) ouerthrew him, and there before he could againe recouer himſelfe was taken by *Baiazet Baſſa* (the great leiutenant) *Michael Ogli*, and *Barac Beg*, *Muſa taken.* which had hardly purſued him out of the battaile: and ſo with his handes bound, by them brought through the middeſt of the armie. Which pitifull ſight, greeued not a little the hearts of many; to ſee him but euen now ſo great a King, and one of the ſonnes of great *Baiazet*, by the ſtrange change of fortune, bound like a captiue ſlaue led forth to execution: yet were moſt part glad thereof, hoping this long ciuill wars would now in him take end. Shortly after came vnto
C him a noble man called *Balta Ogli*, ſent (as they thought) from *Mahomet* himſelfe: who after he had in few words bitterly reproued him, for the cruelty by him before ſhewed vnto his brother *Solyman* in like caſe, cauſed him preſently to be ſtrangled with a bow ſtring. His dead body *Muſa ſtrangled.* was by & by after, preſented to his brother *Mahomet*: who ſeeing it, ſhed a few Crocadils teares ouer it. He raigned three yeares and ſeuen moneths, and was afterwards conuayed to PRVSA, and there lieth buried by the body of his brother *Solyman*, in the ſame chappell with his grandfather *Amurath*.

Mahomet after the death of *Muſa*, now free from all competitours, tooke vpon him the ſole gouernment of the Turkiſh kingdome, as well in EVROPE as in ASIA. And here the Turkiſh hiſtories begin the raigne of this *Mahomet* fifth King of the Turks: accounting the troubleſome
D time from the captiuitie of *Baiazet*, vnto the death of *Muſa*, as a time of vacancie or Anarchie, wherein the Turkiſh kingdome was not at any time wholly poſſeſſed by any one of *Bazazet* his ſons; *Iſa* poſſeſſing one part, whereof he was by *Mahomet* diſpoſſeſſed: who afterwards vſurped all that part of the Turkiſh kingdome in ASIA, being the right of his eldeſt brother *Solyman*: who at that time raigning in EVROPE, was depoſed and ſtrangled by his brother *Muſa*: who was in like manner ſerued by his youngeſt brother *Mahomet*, the only ſonne of *Baiazet* then left, as is before at large declared. Which diuers mutations, and interrupted ſucceſſions, was the cauſe that the Hiſtoriographers doe ſo greatly diſſent vpon the ſucceſſour of *Baiazet*: ſome reckoning one, ſome another; and ſome more, ſome fewer; and ſome, ſuch as neuer were. But for-
E aſmuch as *Mahomet* held all or moſt part of the Turkiſh kingdome in ASIA, during this troubleſome time, and in the end poſſeſſed the other part thereof in EVROPE alſo; I reckon him for the fifth King of the Turks, and ſucceſſour to his father *Baiazet*: including alſo in this hiſtorie of his life, all that inteſtine and ſerpentine-like tragedie, wherein he himſelfe was the principall actor.

Whileſt *Mahomet* was (as is aforeſaid) thus buſied in his wars in EVROPE, againſt his brother 1415
Muſa; the King of CARAMANIA taking the aduantage of his troubles there, with a great armie inuaded his kingdome ioyning vpon him in ASIA, burning and ſpoiling all before him as he *Pruſa burnt by the Caramanian King.* went: *Einaſes Baſſa*, *Mahomet* his lieutenant, then lying at PRVSA, not able to withſtand him; and fearing his comming thither, becauſe it was the ſeat of the *Othoman* Kings in ASIA, cauſed the citizens to bring the greateſt part of their wealth into the caſtle: whereinto he alſo receiued ſo many of the citizens as he conueniently could, willing the reſt to ſhift for themſelues as they
F might, in ſuch caſe of extremitie. Shortly after, the King of CARAMANIA (according to his expectation) came to PRVSA, and without reſiſtance tooke the citie, not as yet fully fortified; which he without delay cauſed the ſecond time to be burnt downe to the ground: and afterwards laid ſiege to the caſtle, giuing many great aſſaults thereto by the ſpace of thirtie daies, but was alwaies valiantly repulſed by *Einaſes* the Baſſa, who ceaſed not continually to encourage his ſouldiers, ſtill putting them in comfort, that *Mahomet* hauing now ouercome his enemies in

EVROPE,

EVROPE, would in few daies vndoubtedly come to their reliefe. It chanced at the ſame time, G
that the dead bodie of *Muſa*, ſent to PRVSA to be buried, was honourably conuayed vpon the way, with much people following it. The Caramanian King hearing of the comming of ſuch a multitude, and fearing it to haue been *Mahomet* with his power, raiſed his ſiege and with ſpeed departed: whereat the Turkes long time after ieſted, ſaying, If the Caramanian King run away for feare of the dead bodie of the *Othoman* King; what would he doe if he had come againſt him aliue? but the truth was, he feared *Mahomet* and his power.

Orchanes the ſonne of *Solyman* (yet a boy) hauing liued at CONSTANTINOPLE euer ſince the death of his father, about this time departed thence, becauſe of the league but lately made between the Emperour and his vncle *Mahomet*, purpoſing to haue gone into VALACHIA: but H
by the way as hee was trauelling, the Turkiſh voluntarie ſouldiers vnderſtanding that hee was the ſonne of their late King *Solyman*, reſorted vnto him in great numbers, offering in his quarrel to ſpend their liues. Of which inſurrection *Mahomet* hearing, marched thither in all haſte, with a great power to ſuppreſſe the ſame: of whoſe cõming the ſouldiers with *Orchanes* vnderſtanding, diſperced themſelues and fled. As for *Orchanes* himſelfe, hee was by his vnlawfull tutor *Zaganos* betraied vnto his vncle *Mahomet:* who preſently cauſed his eyes to be put out, and ſo ſent him to PRVSA: allowing him great reuenewes to liue vpon, and euer after vſed him with great honour. The ſiſter of this *Orchanes* he gaue in marriage to one of his noblemen, with a great dowrie. This is that *Orchanes*, whom ſome Hiſtoriographers reckon vp among the Turkiſh Kings, as one of the ſucceſſors of *Baiazet*; and that he was betrayed to his vncle *Moſes:* erring as I ſuppoſe, both in ſucceſſion and the name, miſtaking *Moſes* for *Mahomet*. I

1416 *Mahomet inuadeth the Caramanian King.*

Now *Mahomet* calling to remembrance the iniurie which the Caramanian King had done to him in his abſence, returning to PRVSA, aſſembled a great armie to reuenge himſelfe of that wrong. At which time, he ſent to the Prince *Iſfendiar* for aid, who ſent him his ſonne *Caſſumes*. He cõmanded alſo the Prince *Germian Ogli*, to make prouiſion for the victualing of his campe, as he ſhould paſſe by his countrey: which was accordingly done. And ſo prouided of all things neceſſarie, he with his armie entred into the Caramanian countrey: Where he tooke the cities ASPROPOLIS, DESPOTOPOLIS, HIERAPOLIS, and beſieged ICONIVM: but by reaſon of the imoderate raine which at that time fell, he was glad to make peace with the Caramanian King, called alſo *Mahomet*. And ſo raiſing his ſiege, departed towards PONTVS, where he had K
not long ſtaied, but that newes was brought vnto him, That the Caramanian King renouncing his league, was againe vp in armes. Wherefore returning into CARAMANIA, and ſo to ICONIVM, he there ouerthrew the King in battaile, and tooke both him and his ſon *Muſtapha* priſoners: who redeemed themſelues by deliuering many of their ſtrong cities and caſtles into his hands: and afterward concluded a peace, they receiuing from him an enſigne (as the Turkiſh manner is) in token they were now become his vaſſals.

1417 *Valachia tributarie to the Turke*

The Caramanian warre thus happily ended, he went ouer into EVROPE, and paſſing ouer DANVBIVS, foraged the countrie of VALACHIA TRANSALPINA, making there great ſpoile: for redreſſe whereof, the Valachian Prince by his Embaſſadours ſent him ſuch tribute as he demanded, and his ſon alſo to ſerue him in his court. About which time happened a great earth- L
quake in PRVSA, and other places of ASIA, whereby many houſes & towres were ouerthrown; after which enſued great troubles in moſt parts of ASIA: howbeit *Mahomet* going thither, by his preſence kept all his dominions in peace and quietneſſe.

Iſfendiar Prince of CASTAMONA and part of PONTVS, reſeruing vnto himſelfe CASTAMONA, with a little part more of his dominion, gaue the reſt vnto *Mahomet*, vpon condition that hee ſhould reſtore no part thereof againe vnto his ſonne *Caſſumes*: who hauing long time ſerued in *Mahomet* his court and warres, could not be perſwaded to returne againe vnto his father; and therefore was by him thus diſinherited. Which great gift, *Mahomet* thankefully accepted, and in lieu thereof aſſigned vnto *Caſſumes* other great and large poſſeſſions within his owne kingdome. M

Mahomet after the death of his brother *Muſa*, had ſent *Scheiches Bedredin* (his brothers Cadeleſcher) to NICE in ASIA, as vnto a place of exile, allowing him neuertheleſſe a great penſion whereon to liue. This *Bedredin* had in his houſe one *Burgluzes*, *Muſtapha* his ſteward: theſe two laid their heads together, how to raiſe ſome tumult or rebelliõ to trouble the peaceable gouernment of *Mahomet*. For which purpoſe, *Burgluzes* (according to the plot by them laid) took his way

A way into AYDINIA (ſometime called CARIA) and there pretending great zeale of reformed religion, with a wonderfull grauitie began to broach diuers new and ſtrange opinions, farre differing from the Turkiſh ancient ſuperſtition, yet very plauſible and well fitting the humor of the vulgar people. By which means he was in ſhort time reputed for a famous learned deuout man, & had many followers, drawing after him much people, fit to begin ſome great innouation. *Bedredin* glad of his mans ſucceſſe, fled from NICE into the Prince *Iſfendiar* his countrey, from whence he tooke ſhipping ouer the Euxine into VALACHIA, and there withdrawing himſelfe into a great forreſt, as if hee had beene ſome deuout and religious man, allured vnto him a great number of outlawes and theeues which there liued. Whom when he had ſufficiently inſtructed
B and framed to his purpoſe, he ſent them in the habit of religious men into the countrey of ZAGORA, and other places in the frontiers of *Mahomet* his dominions, neere vnto him, as his diſciples: who with great boldneſſe and confidencie, publiſhed *Bedredin* his doctrine and authority; and how that hee was by God appointed to bee the king of iuſtice, and commander of all the world: whoſe doctrine and manner of gouernment was (as they ſaid) already receiued (as they gaue it out) in ASIA, being ſet forth but by one of his ſchollers, *Burgluzes*; whoſe fame was now diſperſed throughout all the Turks dominion: and that therefore, if any were deſirous of preferment, they ſhould repaire to *Bedredin*, who would in ſhort time ſhew himſelfe vnto the world, and promote his followers according to their deſerts. Many of the coũtry people deluded with this phantaſie and practice of theſe ſeditious ſeed-men, reſorted to *Bedredin* in hope of prefer-
C ment, and with them ſome of good calling alſo. At laſt, out of the forreſt commeth this great Prophet with banner diſplaied, attended vpon with a great multitude of the ſeditious vulgar people, which daily reſorted vnto him more & more. *Mahomet* for the repreſſing of theſe dangerous tumults, ſent his ſonne *Amurath*, and *Baiazet* the great Baſſa, with two thouſand men to apprehend *Burgluzes* in AYDINIA: but when they came thither, they found him guarded with three thouſand men well appointed, readie to aduenture their liues in defence of their fooliſh Prophet. Neuertheleſſe, *Amurath* and *Baiazet* not diſmaied with the multitude of thoſe vplandiſh people, ſet vpon them: where was fought a right bloody battaile, for the number, & many ſlaine on both ſides: yet at laſt the rebels fled; in which flight *Burgluzes* himſelfe was ſlaine, and *Burgluzes ſlain.*
hewen all to peeces. After which victory *Baiazet* from thence hailed to MAGNESIA, and there
D executed *Torlac Kemal*, another ſeditious Turkiſh monke, which with two thouſand, by him ſeduced, did much harme in the country there about. At the ſame time alſo *Mahomet* ſent another power againſt *Bedredin*: but moſt of his followers ſeeing in him no ſuch matter, as was by his diſciples and himſelfe promiſed, and as they hoped for, were already fallen from him, ſo that of that great multitude which before followed him, few or none were left with him, whereby hee was eaſily apprehended by them that *Mahomet* had ſent againſt him: and ſo being brought to *Mahomet* to SERRAS, was there in the market place before a tauerne doore, faire hanged, without any farther harme. *Bedredin hanged.*

Mahomet in the ſhort time of his raigne finiſhed the great Mahometane temple at HADRIANOPLE, before begun by his brethren *Solyman* & *Muſa*. Where he alſo built a princely pallace,
E the ſeat of the Turkiſh Kings in EVROPE, vntill the taking of CONSTANTINOPLE. He alſo built another temple, with a moſt ſumptuous abbey, and a publike ſchoole thereto adioyning, endowing the ſame with great rouenewes, ſuch as had by him and thoſe his brethren of late bin taken from the Chriſtians. He gaue alſo great ſummes of money, yearly to be paid at MEDINA and MECHA, for the releeſe of poore pilgrims trauelling from far to the ſepulchre of their great Prophet *Mahomet*, at MEDINA, or his temple at MECHA.

Shortly after *Mahomet* fell ſicke at HADRINOPLE, and perceiuing himſelfe in danger of death, by his laſt will appointed his eldeſt ſonne *Amurath* to ſucceed him in his kingdome; and *Mahomet dieth at Hadrianople*
ſent *Eluan-beg* (a man in great fauour with him) in poſt to AMASIA, to will him with all ſpeed to repaire to the court at HADRIANOPLE. But feeling death to approch, and that he could not
F poſſibly liue vntill the comming of his ſonne, he ſtraightly charged his Baſſaes with all ſecrecie to conceale his death, vntill his comming, for feare leaſt any trouble ſhould riſe vpon the bruit therof, before his comming thither. And ſo hauing ſet all things in order, he departed out of this world vnto his prophet *Mahomet*, about the yeere of our Sauiour Chriſt 1422, when hee had raigned ſeuenteen yeares: accounting in his raigne that troubleſome ten yeares next after the captiuitie of *Baiazet*, in which time the Turkes kingdome was by his ambitious ſonnes rent in

ſun-

ſunder (as is aforeſaid) vntill it was at length again by this *Mahomet* reſtored vnto the former integrity, about 7 years before his death, which the Turks account for the whole time of his raign: & the other troubleſom 10 yeares as a vacancie or Anarchie of their kingdome, as is aforeſaid. G

The death of Mahomet cunningly cõcealed from the Ianizaries, by the three great Baſſaes.

Mahomet being dead, the three great Baſſaes, *Eiuaſes*, *Baiazet*, and *Ibrahim* (to rid themſelues of the feare they had of the Ianizaries, and other ſouldiers of the court) called a Diuano or counſell for the warres, as if the king had been aliue: wherein it was pretended, That *Mahomet* had determined to make warre vpon the prince of SMYRNA: and that for that ſeruice it was his pleaſure, That the Ianizaries ſhould forthwith paſſe ouer into ASIA, to the caſtle of BAGA. Whereupon preſſe mony was preſently giuen them, & they ſent ouer with letters directed to the viceroy of ANATOLIA, for the aſſembling of an armie for BAGA. In the meane time, the great Baſſaes of H the court ſat daily in counſell, placing and diſplacing, promoting and diſgracing whom they thought good, as if the king had ſo commanded: The kings phyſicians alſo, to countenance the matter, were commanded continually to go too & fro with their potions and receits, after their wonted manner, as if they had had the king ſtill in cure: And letters were ſent in poſt to *Eluan Beg*, for ſpeedie diſpatch of the buſineſſe for which he was ſent into ASIA. Yet for all this cunning diſsimulation, the pentioners and other ſouldiers of the court, wont to be neere vnto the kings perſon, and ſome of them alwaies of the priuie chamber, began to ſuſpect the matter: and comming to the Baſſaes, ſaid they maruailed that the king in ſo long time did neuer ſhew himſelfe as he had alwaies before done. Whereunto the Baſſaes anſwered, That he had been dangerouſly ſick, and was as yet but a little recouered, and that therefore the phyſicians would not ſuf- I fer him to looke abroad, or take the aire, for feare of caſting him downe againe. Then will wee our ſelues ſaide the pentioners goe and ſee his maieſtie, and with that were ready to force in vpon the Baſſaes. *Eiuaſes* ſeeing their importunitie, deſired them to hold themſelues contented, and not as then to trouble the king, for that hee had that day, as hee ſaid, taken phyſicke; but to morrow (ſaid he) we will requeſt his maieſty, if he ſo pleaſe to ſhew himſelfe, that you may ſee him: wherewith they for that time held themſelues content. Now amongſt the kings phyſicians there was one *Georditon*, a Perſian, a man of a quick ſpirit & ſubtill deuiſe, which found meanes to deceiue the pentioners: he deuiſed, that the dead body of the king being apparelled in royall large robes, ſhould be brought betwixt two, as if he had been led into an high open gallerie; and being there ſet, to haue a boy ſo neatly placed behind him vnder his large robes, as that he vn- K perceiued, might moue the kings hand vp to his head, as if he ſhould ſtroke his face or beard, as his manner was. The next day the dead king being accordingly brought forth by the Baſſaes in his rich robes, & wrapped with clothes about his head, as if it had bin for feare of the aire, or of taking cold, & ſo placed in an high open gallerie, as was before deuiſed: ſuddenly the phyſician came running in fuming and raging, as if he had bin halfe mad, ready to teare his clothes for anger; and in great choller caſting his cap againſt the ground, asked the Baſſaes, if they meant to kill the king, by bringing him into the open aire? We (ſaid he) haue with great pains, in long time, a little recouered him, and will you thus fooliſhly caſt him downe again? Pardon vs good doctor (ſaid *Eiuaſes*) for theſe gentlemen (pointing to the pentioners) were ſo importunat to ſee his ma- L ieſty, that to ſatisfie their deſires, he was content to be led forth of his chamber: wherof we hope ſhall enſue no harme. The pentioners ſeeing the king many times moouing his hand to his face, and as it were ſtroking his beard, held themſelues well contented, ſuppoſing him to haue beene aliue, although but weake, and therfore not willing to ſpeake vnto them. The phyſicians taking him vp amongſt them, carried him into his lodging againe, which was but faſt by, making as if they had carried an extreame ſicke man. Thus was his death cunningly concealed one & forty daies, vntill the comming of *Amurath* his ſonne.

This *Mahomet* was both wiſe and valiant, and withall exceeding bountifull, but ambitious aboue meaſure: and may of right be accounted the reſtorer of the Turks kingdome; for he recouered againe all thoſe countries in ASIA which *Tamerlane* had taken away and giuen vnto other Mahometane Princes, after the ouerthrow of *Baiazet*. And when as the kingdome of the Turks M was rent in peeces and almoſt brought to naught by ciuile wars, and the ambition of himſelf & his brethren; he at length got poſſeſſion of the whole, & ſo left it to his ſonne *Amurath* an entire kingdome, in the former greatneſſe, although not ſo much by him augmented. His bodie lieth buried in a faire tomb made of artificiall ſtone, very beautifull to behold, in a chappel at the Eaſt ſide of PRVSA, where we leaue him at his reſt.

FINIS.

Christian Princes of the same time with Mahomet the first.	Emperours	Of the East	Emanuel Palæologus.	1387. 30.
		Of the West	Rupertus Duke of Bauaria.	1400. 10.
			Sigismund King of Hungarie.	1411. 28.
	Kings	Of England	Henrie the fourth.	1399. 13.
			Henrie the fift.	1413. 9.
		Of France	Charles the sixt, surnamed, The welbeloued.	1381. 42.
		Of Scotland	Iohn Stuart, otherwise called Robert.	1390. 16.
			Iames the first.	1424. 13.
	Bishops of Rome		Boniface the IX.	1391. 14.
			Innocent the VII.	1405. 2.
			Gregorie the XII.	1407. 2.
			Alexander the V.	1410. 1.
			Iohn the XXIII.	1411. 5.
			Martin the V.	1417. 13.

Phil. Lonicer. Hiſt. Turc. li. 1.

Europam luctu & funeſtis cladibus implens,
Sæuus Amurathes totus in arma ruit.
Maior at Huniades virtute & fortibus auſis,
Cogit eum trepida vertere terga fuga.
Conſilia Eugenij bellum furialia ſuadent,
Sacrorum antiſtes Martia ad arma ruit:
(Arma viri tractent, curet ſua templa ſacerdos)
Europæ exitium res tulit iſta graue.

Fierce *Amurath* doth EVROPE fill with bloud and wofull cries:
And wholly giuen to martiall deeds, doth whole in armes ariſe.
But yet *Huniades* (than he, of greater ſtrength and might)
Enforced him right fearfully to turne his backe in flight.
Eugenius his infernall ſpels, ſtirs vp a fatall iarre:
Who hauing charge of ſacred rites, runs headlong into warre.
(Leaue martiall deeds to martiall men, and let the Prieſt goe pray)
Such deuilliſh counſell, worſe receiu'd, wrought EVROPES great decay.

THE LIFE OF AMVRATH, THE SECOND OF THAT NAME, SIXT KING OF THE TVRKS, AND THE GREAT ESTABLISHER OF THEIR KINGDOME.

AFter that the death of *Mahomet* had beene politiquely concealed one and fortie daies by the three great Baſſaes, *Baiazet*, *Eiuaſes*, and *Ibrahim*; *Amurath*, or *Murat* (as the Turks call him) his eldeſt ſonne, at that time comming to PRVSA, was by them placed in his fathers ſeat, and the death of *Mahomet* at the ſame time publiſhed: whereupon great troubles began on euery ſide to ariſe.

Murat is the ſame that we call Deſpdrim.

The Princes of SMYRNA and MENTESIA roſe vp in armes: and at THESSALONICA an obſcure fellow, crept as it were out of a chimneyes corner, tooke vpon him the name and perſon of *Muſtapha*, the ſonne of *Baiazet*, which was ſlaine many yeeres before, in the great battell againſt *Tamerlane* at mount STELLA, as is before declared in the life of the vnfortunate Sultan *Baiazet*. This counterfait *Muſtapha* animated by the Grecian Princes, and going from THESSALONICA to VARDARIVM, ſet ſo good a countenance vpon the matter, with ſuch a grace and maieſtie, that not only the countrey people (apt to beleeue any thing) but men of greater place and calling alſo, as *Tzunites Beg*, the Prince of SMYRNA his ſonne, with the ſonnes of old *Eurenoſes Baſſa*, perſwaded that he was the very ſonne of the great *Baiazet*, repaired vnto him, as vnto their naturall Prince and Soueraigne. From VARDARIVM he went to SERRÆ, and from thence to HADRIANOPLE, (*Amurath* being as then at PRVSA) where he was receiued as if it had beene that noble Prince *Muſtapha*, whom he feigned himſelfe to be: ſo that in ſhort time he was honoured as a King in all parts of the Turkiſh kingdome in EVROPE.

Muſtapha the ſuppoſed ſonne of Baiazet raiſeth rebellion againſt Amurath.

Amurath to repreſſe this ſo great and dangerous a rebellion, ſent *Baiazet Baſſa*, a man of great authoritie in his court, with a ſtrong armie into EVROPE. This great Baſſa paſſing ouer HELLESPONTVS, found all the countrey reuolted vnto their new found King *Muſtapha*: but marching on towards HADRIANOPLE, with purpoſe to haue giuen him battell, he was firſt forſaken of the Europeian ſouldiers, which he brought out of ASIA, and afterwards of all the reſt alſo: and ſo being left poſt alone, with his brother *Hamze Beg*, was for ſafegard of his life glad to yeeld himſelfe to *Muſtapha*; of whom he was gratiouſly entertained, and vpon promiſe of his loyaltie, ſworne one of his priuie counſaile.

Muſtapha thus now poſſeſſed of the Turkiſh kingdome in EVROPE, and entertaining great thoughts, the better to maintaine his credit, leuied a great armie to make war vpon *Amurath* in ASIA. And as he was vpon his way, at a place which the Turks call SASLIDERE, or the place of willowes, his other counſailors repining at the great honor he gaue to *Baiazet Baſſa*, aduiſed him to beware that he truſted him not too farre, of whoſe ſmall faith he had ſufficient triall alreadie, and was like enough when occaſion ſhould ſerue, to reuolt from him to *Amurath*, and to draw after him ſome great part of his armie, to the great perill both of himſelfe and all them his faithfull ſeruants & followers. Vpon which iealous conceit, this great Baſſa *Baiazet* was there forthwith as a traitour apprehended, and without further triall executed: at which time his brother *Hamze* was with much adoe ſpared. This done, *Muſtapha* proceeded on his iourney, and paſſed

ouer with his armie at CALLIPOLIS into ASIA. *Amurath* vnderstanding of the proceedings G
of *Mustapha* in EVROPE, and of his preparation made for his inuasion of ASIA, created three
new Bassaes, *Omer*, *Vruge*, and *Alis*, all three the sonnes of *Temurtases*; these he ioyned with his
old Bassaes, *Ibrahim* and *Eiuases*. All these fiue he vsed as counsellours for the wars, by whose
aduice he sent for *Mahomet Beg*, surnamed *Michael Ogls*, who in the time that *Musa* raigned, was
viceroy in EVROPE, and therefore a man well knowne to most principall men in *Mustapha* his
armie, but had beene kept prisoner in the castle of AMASIA, from the time that *Musa* was de-
posed and put to death by his brother *Mahomet*, vntill now that he was after eight yeeres impri-
sonment, for this speciall purpose inlarged and receiued into fauour.

About the same time that *Mustapha* set footing in ASIA, *Amurath* hauing gathered his armie, H
set forward from PRVSA to meet him; yet with such distrust in his forces, which were thought
to be much inferiour to the Europian souldiers which followed *Mustapha*, that he was glad vp-
on a superstitious opinion or zeale, to prostrate himselfe at the feet of an Emir (one of the false
Prophet *Mahomets* posteritie) to receiue at his hypocriticall hands a graceless blessing for his
better speed: by whom he was made to beleeue, that after two repulses, he had with much adoe
at the third time, obtained grant of the great Prophet *Mahomet*, that he should preuaile in that
warre: and thereupon had his sword girt vnto him with the Emir his holy hands, with many
other vaine and superstitious ceremonies. Yet for all these charmes, he marched on with his ar-
mie in feare enough, vntill he came to the riuer of VLIBAD, (otherwise called RINDACVS:)
where hauing intelligence of the approch of *Mustapha*, he for feare caused the bridge ouer the I
riuer there to be broken downe, and encamped himselfe on that side the riuer. Not long after
came *Mustapha*, and finding the bridge broken, encamped at the foot thereof on the other side:
so that nothing parted the two armies but the breadth of the riuer onely. Whilest they lay thus
neere encamped together, that the souldiers might on both sides take the full view one of ano-
ther, and also talke together: *Mahomet-beg*, surnamed *Michael Ogli*, but lately deliuered out of
his long imprisonment (as is aforesaid) came to the riuer side, and with a loud voice called by
name vpon the great captaines and old souldiers that were in *Mustapha* his armie; asking by
name for many of his old friends and acquaintance: many of them being there present, reioy-
cing to see that honourable man (whom they supposed to haue beene dead in prison many
yeeres before) came gladly to the side of the riuer to heare what he could say. K

Then with a loud voice he began to perswade them, that the man whom they followed was
not the honourable *Mustapha*, but some base high minded fellow, set vp by the Grecians, abu-
sing the obscuritie of his birth, as the vaile vnder the couert whereof, he went craftily about to
intrude himselfe into the honourable descent of *Baiazet*; and so masking in the counterfait titles
of stollen honour, had misse-led them from their dutie to their naturall King and Soueraigne, to
follow him a meere deceiuer. And further assured them, that *Mustapha*, *Baiazet* his son, was dead
and buried in the bed of fame, two and twentie yeeres before; honourably ending his daies in
defence of his countrey, in the great battell of mount STELLA, against *Tamerlane*: Wherefore
they should doe well, to forsake that supposed *Mustapha*, and againe to yeeld their dutifull obe-
dience vnto their vndoubted Soueraigne *Amurath*. These words deliuered vnto them by L
Mahomet, whom they generally both reuerenced, and trusted; wrought such effect in their
minds, that some presently aduentured to swimme ouer the riuer, and ioyned themselues vnto
him: and many others that staied still, began now to doubt, lest they had worshipped a wrong
Saint. At the same time also, *Eiuases Bassa*, to terrifie *Mustapha*, sent vnto him letters as in great
secret, aduertising him, That *Amurath* had the next night purposed with his armie to passe ouer
the riuer aboue the broken bridge; at which time the chiefe captaines of his armie being (as he
said) corrupted, had promised to deliuer *Mustapha* into his hands, and with his head to pay the
ransome of them all. This he coloured with such faire glosses, that *Mustapha* partly beleeued the
same. So when the dead time of the night was come, *Eiuases* with certaine troupes of horsemen,
passed ouer the riuer, at the very same place he had in his letters named; and that with such a M
noise & tumult, as *Amurath* with his whole armie had beene comming. *Mustapha* seeing things
begin thus to worke, according as *Eiuases Bassa* had before written: and with this, doubting al-
so to be presently betraied, and carrying about him a guiltie conscience, the mother of feare and
Mustapha flieth distrust, tooke horse (slenderly accompanied, but with ten persons of his whole armie) & fled in
haste, no man pursuing them, vntill he came to the riuer of BOGA, and there with a great summe
of

A of money obtained passage, by corrupting the captaine that dwelt in the castle vpon the passage of the riuer: and the third day after passing ouer the strait of HELLESPONTVS, landed at CALLIPOLIS. The flight of *Mustapha* once knowne in his armie, they all yeelded themselues to *Einases Bassa:* who taking possession of *Mustapha* his tent, caused the broken bridge to be repaired; whereby *Amurath* passing with his armie, ioyned himselfe with *Einases*. The other *Bassa (Ibrahim)* counselled *Amurath* to put to sword all those rebels that had followed *Mustapha:* but by the mediation of *Einases*, to whom they had yeelded themselues, they were generally pardoned.

Amurath departing from VLIBAD or LOPADIVM, came to BOGA, and there hanged vp
B the captaine that had giuen *Mustapha* passage. From thence he held on his way to LAMPSACVM, intending to pursue *Mustapha* into EVROPE: but being come to the sea side, he could find no passage, for that *Mustapha* had caused all the shipping on that side, to be brought ouer into EVROPE. Yet at last *Amurath* by good fortune chanced vpon a great Genoway ship, which he hired for foure thousand duckats to transport his armie, and so with much adoe, at length landed in EVROPE. *Mustapha* seeing that *Amurath* was now come ouer, fled to HADRIANOPLE, where he found such cold welcome, that fearing to be betraied, he was glad to speed himselfe thence, thinking all the world too little to hide himselfe in: and so came to an obscure place in the countrey of the Turks, called KISVL-AGATZ-GENITZE: where, the souldiers sent to pursue him, ouertooke him, and brought him bound to *Amurath* then being
C at HADRIANOPLE: by whose commandement he was shamefully hanged, from the battlements of one of the highest towers of the citie, and there left to the worlds wonder. *Mustapha hanged.*

This *Mustapha* is of some writers reported to haue beene indeed the sonne of the great Sultan *Baiazet*, and that he was kept in prison all that long time, and thus at length set vp by the Greeks to trouble the state of the Turkish kingdome: but the Turkish histories report as before, calling him *Dusme* or counterfait *Mustapha*. And it is very likely, that if he had beene one of the sonnes of *Baiazet*, he would haue found some meanes to haue made some great stirre long before that, as all the rest of the vnquiet brood of *Baiazet* did, which neuer rested vntill they had like the earth borne brethren one destroied the other: besides that, their bloudie natures considered, it is very like that *Mahomet* his younger brother, who raigned in HADRIANOPLE almost eight
D yeeres, and was in league all that time with the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, would for his more safetie haue got him into his owne power, if he had beene in prison with the Emperour; or else haue dispatched him, if he had beene in prison with himselfe. All which I am the rather perswaded to thinke, for that *Orchanes* (a child, the sonne of *Solyman)* could find no safe place of abode at CONSTANTINOPLE in the raigne of *Mahomet*; but flying, was apprehended and his eyes put out, as is before declared in the life of *Mahomet:* much lesse is it like that *Mustapha*, being a warlike Prince, and his elder brother, could haue beene so long preserued and kept in prison from his furie.

It fortuned in these late broiles (as oftentimes it doth with others in like case) diuers of the rebels Asapi, or common souldiers (whom he for his greater countenance had apparelled and
E armed like the Ianizaries) to fall into the hands of the true Ianizaries, *Amurath* his faithfull guard; whose liues indeed they spared, but vsing them with all the despight and indignities possible. Amongst the rest, one of the Ianizaries being an hungred, brought two of these Asapi his prisoners vnto a cookes shop, offering to sell them vnto him for a little victuall: which the cooke refused to giue him, as hauing no vse for such vnnecessarie seruants. Wherewith the proud Ianizarie enraged, swore many a great oath, presently to cut off their heads, and to giue them him for nought, if he would not for a thing of nought redeeme them. And like enough he was to haue so done, had not the cooke, moued with pitie, offered him for them both a sheepes head: which the Ianizarie tooke for them, swearing, that the cooke had giuen for them more than indeed they were worth. Which disgrace, so long since done vnto these Asapi, is yet
F oftentimes by way of reproch in great contempt, by the masterfull and insolent Ianizaries, obiected vnto the whole bodie of the Asapi (the greatest part of the Turks huge armies) of whom for all that the proud Ianizaries make small reckoning, accounting them scarcely for men, and in their rage oftentimes telling them, That two of them are not worth a sodden sheepes head. *Two Asapi sold by a Ianizarie for a sheepes head.*

Amurath hauing at length with much adoe thus pacified the dangerous rebellion raised by the counterfeit *Mustapha*, both in EVROPE and ASIA; was yet not a little grieued, to thinke *Constantinople in vain besieged by Amurath.*

how the ſame had to the great hazard of his eſtate, beene firſt plotted by the Greekes, and afterwards countenanced by the Greeke Emperour, of whom he thought now to be reuenged. And therefore ſending before him *Michael Ogli*, his lieutenant generall in EVROPE, with his Europeian ſouldiers to inuade the countrey about CONSTANTINOPLE, followed himſelfe after with the Ianizaries and his Aſian forces: and encamping before the citie, filled all that necke of land which lieth before it, from ſea to ſea. And ſo encamped, began right furiouſly to batter the wals, in hope ſo to haue made a breach, and by the ſame to haue entered the citie: but finding the wals of greater ſtrength than he had before ſuppoſed, and the defendants ſtill repairing whatſoeuer the furie of his artillerie had beaten downe or ſhaken, he ceaſed his batterie, and comming on with all his forces, deſperately attempted by aſſault to haue gained the citie: wherein his fortune was not anſwerable to his deſire. For approching the citie, with arrowes, as ſhowers falling vpon the defendants, and ſcaling ladders in the meane time clapt vp to the wals, & the Ianizaries with others of his beſt ſouldiers couragiouſly mounting the ſame; they were by the defendants notably repulſed and beaten downe, loſing ſome their hands, ſome their armes, ſome their heads, but moſt their liues, no ſhot falling in vaine from the wals. Which *Amurath* beholding, and grieued to ſee (though vnwilling) commanded a retreat to be ſounded, and the aſſault giuen ouer: and ſhortly after ſeeing no hope to preuaile, in great rage raiſed his ſiege and departed. Vnto whom for all that the Greeke Emperour not long after ſent his embaſſadours, to entreat with him for peace; whereof he would by no meanes heare, but proudly threatened to be ere long of all his wrongs reuenged. Which cauſed the Greeke Emperour to deuiſe what he might for the troubling of his eſtate, ſo to keepe him otherwiſe buſied: as he did ſhortly after with the Caramanian King, by countenancing another *Muſtapha* (ſurnamed *Cutzug* or the little) *Amurath* his younger brother, againſt him, to the raiſing of new ſtirres, and *Amurath* his no ſmall trouble.

Mahomet the late King had fiue ſonnes and ſeuen daughters, whereof *Amurath* was the eldeſt, and ſucceeded in his fathers kingdome; *Muſtapha* the ſecond, ſurnamed the little; *Achmetes* the third, who died before his father: the other two, *Ioſephus* and *Machmutes*, both died of the plague, being but children, after the death of their father. Three of their ſiſters were maried to the three ſonnes of the King of CARAMANIA, *Ibrahim*, *Aladin*, and *Iſa*: other two were beſtowed vpon the ſonnes of the Prince *Iſfendiar*, *Ibrahim*, and *Caſimes*: the ſixt was giuen in mariage to *Cozza-Beg*, viceroy in ANATOLIA; and the ſeuenth to the ſonne of *Ibrahim Baſſa*, who died at MECHA, whither ſhe went vpon ſuperſtitious deuotion on pilgrimage.

At ſuch time as *Amurath* was buſied in his warres in EVROPE againſt *Muſtapha*, the ſuppoſed ſonne of *Baiazet*: the younger ſonne of *Mahomet* (called alſo *Muſtapha*) being but thirteene yeeres old, and *Amurath* his brother indeed, was ſet vp to raiſe new troubles, by the King of CARAMANIA, and other Princes, as well Mahometans, as the Chriſtian Princes of GRECIA; who thought it good policie, by that meanes to impeach the greatneſſe of *Amurath*. This young Prince *Muſtapha*, ſtrengthened with the forces of his friends, entered into his brothers dominions in ASIA, and beſieged NICE, which was at length yeelded vnto him. *Amurath* aduertiſed of this new rebellion, by great gifts and large promiſes corrupted *Ilias Beg*, the young Princes tutor, to betray the Prince into his hands. Whereupon *Amurath* with great celeritie ſet forward with his armie from HADRIANOPLE, and in nine dayes came to NICE, where he entered the citie with ſmall reſiſtance, as was to him before promiſed, where *Muſtapha* was by his falſe tutor to him preſented: who becauſe he would not ſpill one drop of the ſacred *Othoman* bloud (as the Turks call it) commanded the executioner preſently to ſtrangle him with a bowſtring; which was done accordingly, and his bodie afterwards buried by his father at PRVSA.

Muſtapha betraied and ſtrangled.

Amurath hauing ſuppreſſed theſe two rebellions, and now out of all feare of any competitor, thought his fiue counſellers too many by three, and therefore remoued the three Baſſaes, *Omure*, *Vrutzi*, and *Alis* (the ſonnes of *Temurtaſes*) into honourable places; retaining of his counſell, onely the two old Baſſaes, *Ibrahim* and *Eiuaſes*. But ſhortly after, *Eiuaſes* was ſecretly accuſed to *Amurath*, that he ſought by his fauourites, the ſouldiers of the court, to aſpire vnto the kingdome himſelfe, and to depoſe the King; and that intending ſome ſuch matter, he did vſually weare a priuie coat. This ſuſpicious report troubled the iealous tyrant: wherefore on a time as he rid accompanied with *Eiuaſes*, he caſt his arme about him, as if it had beene in kindneſſe: but finding him ſecretly armed, would needs know the cauſe thereof: whereunto *Eiuaſes* anſwered, That it was for feare of ſome enemies he had in the court: but this excuſe could by

no

A no meanes ſerue his turne: wherefore he was forthwith apprehended by the commandement of *Amurath*, and both his eyes burnt out with a hot ſteele glaſſe. *Einaſes Baſſa his eies put out.*

Whileſt *Amurath* was thus buſied in ſubduing rebellions at home, *Muhamethes* the Caramanian King beſieged ATTALIA, a great citie in PAMPHILIA, by the ſpace of ſix moneths, which was valiantly defended by *Hamza-beg*, *Amurath* his lieutenant there: at which ſiege the vnfortunate King himſelfe, as he was taking view of the citie, was ſlaine with a great ſhot out of the citie: whereupon *Ibrahim*, which ſucceeded him in the kingdome, brake vp the ſiege, and returned home to burie his father. At this time alſo, *Dracula* Prince of VALACHIA, paſſing ouer DANVBIVS, did the Turks much harme about SILISTRA, but was afterwards enforced to ſubmit himſelfe to *Amurath*, and become his tributarie. *The King of Caramania ſlaine.*

B

About this time alſo *Tzunites*, the Prince of SMYRNA, which had before aided the rebell *Muſtapha*, did by all meanes he could vex and moleſt *Iaxis beg*, (*Amurath* his lieutenant in AIDINIA) and hauing by chance taken his brother priſoner, put him to death. This Prince of SMYRNA was deſcended of the ancient Princes of AIDINIA, and therefore pretended an intereſt in that ſeignorie: which his claime the people of the countrey ſecretly fauoured, ſo farre as they durſt for feare of the Turks. *Amurath* hearing of the harmes that this Prince of SMYRNA did, commanded *Hamze-beg*, viceroy of ANATOLIA, with all his power to make warre vpon him. The viceroy without delay aſſembled a great armie, and inuaded the Princes countrey: and the Prince being well prouided for his comming, meeting him vpon the way, gaue him

C battell: wherein *Haſan* the Princes ſonne, leading a great part of his fathers armie, had put one part of the Turks armie to flight: and purſuing them with too much furie, left his father at the ſame time ſo hardly beſet by the viceroy, that he was glad to flie to his caſtle of HIPSILY faſt by. *Haſan* returning from the chaſe of the enemie, not knowing what had happened to his father, was by the Turks in his returne ouercome and taken priſoner. After which victorie the viceroy preſently laid ſiege to the caſtle wherein the Prince was. This ſiege continued a great while: at length, the Prince brought to extremitie, was content to yeeld himſelfe vnto the viceroy, vpon condition he ſhould vſe no violence againſt the perſon of himſelfe or his ſonne, but to ſend them priſoners vnto *Amurath*: which thing the viceroy by ſolemne oath promiſed, whereupon the Prince came out of the caſtle, and yeelded himſelfe priſoner to the viceroy. *Iaxis-beg*, whoſe

D brother the Prince had before put to death, attended the going of *Hamze* the viceroy to his tent, where finding *Haſan* the Princes ſonne ſitting vpon the ground, as the manner of the Turks is, tooke him by the choller with great furie, and drawing him along to the feet of the Prince his father, there moſt cruelly ſtrucke off his head: and in the ſame rage laying his bloudie hands vpon the aged Prince, ſtrucke off his head alſo; to the great diſhonour of the viceroy, who had before giuen his faith for their ſafetie. The heads of the Prince and his ſonne were ſet vpon two launces, within the ſight of the caſtle; which the defendants ſeeing, and now deſpairing of all reſcue, yeelded themſelues, with the caſtle. This infortunate *Tzunites* was the laſt Prince of SMYRNA, after whoſe death all his territorie was vnited to the *Othoman* kingdome. After all theſe troubles, *Amurath* with great triumph maried the daughter of the Prince *Iſfendiar*.

E *Amurath* hauing laid vp in the depth of his thoughts the remembrance of that the Grecian Princes had done, in giuing aid to the rebels aforeſaid, thought it now high time to take reuenge of that wrong: and for that purpoſe gathered a great armie, wherewith he ranged at his pleaſure thorow MACEDONIA, vntill he came to THESSALONICA, ſurpriſing by the way diuers cities and caſtles, at that time belonging to the Conſtantinopolitane empire. This famous citie of THESSALONICA, now called SALONICHI, for beautie and wealth ſometime not inferiour to any of the greateſt and moſt renowned cities of GRECIA, is ſituate vpon the borders of MACEDONIA, cloſe vnto a bay of the ARCHIPELAGO or the ſea ÆGEVM: which bay was in ancient time called THERMAICVS-SINVS, and now the bay of SALONICHI. To the Chriſtian congregation there dwelling, *S. Paul* wrote two Epiſtles, in the latter whereof, he forewarneth them *Theſſalonica beſieged.*

F of a great defection to come before the latter day. Before this Chriſtian citie, then in the protection of the Venetians, *Amurath* encamped his great armie of miſbeleeuing Turks; and laid hard ſiege to it, with moſt terrible batterie: at which time he by ſecret meanes corrupted certaine of the wicked citizens, to haue betraied the citie by a ſecret mine, and to haue let him in: which treaſon was by the Venetian gouernours perceiued, and the plotters thereof for ſafegard of their liues glad to leape ouer the wals, and to flie into the Turks campe.

Amurath

Amurath hauing greatly battered the wals of the citie, the more to encourage his souldiers, promised to giue them all the spoile thereof, if they could by force win it. The greedie desire of this rich prey, wherein euery common souldier promised vnto himselfe whatsoeuer his fooliſh fancie or vnbrideled affection could desire, so inflamed the minds of these barbarous souldiers, and especially of the Ianizaries, that giuing a most terrible assault to the citie, they by force entred the same, and wan it. The Venetian souldiers fled to their gallies, lying at anchor in the hauen, and so got to sea: but the infinite miseries which the poore Christian citizens endured in the furie of that barbarous nation, no tongue is able to expresse, or pen describe: death was lesse paine than the ignominious outrages and vnspeakable villanies which many good Christians there suffered, heartily wishing to die, and could not; and yet the furious enemies sword deuoured all the people, without respect of age or sex, except such as for strength of bodie, or comelinesse of person, were reserued for painfull labour or beastly lust; which poore soules were afterwards dispersed into most miserable seruitude and slauerie, thorow all parts of the Turkish kingdome. The infinite riches of that famous citie, became a spoile vnto the barbarous souldiers; the goodly houses were left desolate, void of inhabitants. Thus the beautifull citie of THESSALONICA, sometime one of the most glorious ornaments of GRÆCIA, the late pleasant dwelling place of many rich Christians, was by the tyrant giuen for an habitation to such base Turks, as at their pleasure repaired thither to seat themselues, and so is by them at this day possessed. This calamitie happened to THESSALONICA in the yeere of our Lord 1432.

Thessalonica taken by Amurath.

THESSALONICA being thus taken, *Amurath* returned to HADRIANOPLE himselfe, and at the same time sent *Caratze* with the greatest part of his armie into ÆTOLIA. *Charles* Prince of that countrey, dying a little before the comming of *Amurath* to THESSALONICA, and hauing no lawfull issue, had diuided the countrey of ACHARNANIA amongst his three base sons, *Memnon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*, leauing all the rest of his dominion to his brothers sonne, called also *Charles*. But shortly after, such discord fell among these brethren, that *Amurath* sending his Turks to aid one of them against the other, as he was by them requested, in fine brought all that countrey of ÆTOLIA into subiection to himselfe, leauing nothing for the fooliſh brethren to striue for, more than the bare titles of imaginatiue honour. The other Grecian Princes of ATHENS, PHOCIS, BOETIA, and all the rest of GRÆCIA, vnto the strait of CORINTH, terrified by their neighbours harmes, were glad to submit themselues to the barbarian yoke, and to become tributaries vnto the Turkish tyrant; vnder which slauerie they of long time most miserably liued, if intolerable slauerie ioyned with infidelitie may be accounted a life. Thus the Grecians lost their libertie, (which their aunceſtors had many times before, to their immortall praise, worthily defended against the greatest monarchs of the world) and are now so degenerate, by the meanes of the Turkish oppression, that in all GRÆCIA is hardly to be found any small remembrance of the ancient glorie thereof: insomuch that whereas they were wont to account all other nations barbarous in comparison of themselues, they are now become no lesse barbarous than those rude nations whom they before scorned. Which miserie with a thousand more, they may iustly impute to their owne ambition and discord.

At this time, amongst the distressed Princes of MACEDONIA, and GRÆCIA, one *Iohn Castriot* raigned in EPIRVS: who seeing how mightily the Turke preuailed against the Princes his neighbours, and considering that he was not able by any meanes to withstand so puissant an enemie; to obtaine peace, he was glad to deliuer into *Amurath* his possession, his foure sonnes, *Stanisius*, *Reposius*, *Constantine*, and *George*, for hostages: whom *Amurath* faithfully promised, well and honourably to intreat. But assoone as he had got them within his reach, he falsified his faith, and caused them to be circumcised after the Turkish manner, and to be instructed in the Turkish superstition, to the great griefe of their Christian parents: and afterwards, when he vnderstood of the death of *Iohn Castriot* their father, he poisoned all the three elder brethren: and by *Sebalie* (one of his great captaines) seized vpon CROIA, his chiefe citie, and all the rest of his territories, as if they had by good right deuolued vnto him. But *George* the youngest, whom the Turks named *Scander-beg*, or lord *Alexander*, for his excellent feature, and pregnant wit, he alwayes entirely loued, and as some thought, more passionatly than he should haue loued a boy. Him he caused to be diligently instructed in all kind of actiuitie, and feats of warre, wherein he excelled all other his equals in *Amurath* his court; & rising by many degrees of honour, came at last (being yet but very young) to be a great Sanzack or gouernor of a prouince, and was many times appointed

A appointed by *Amurath* to be generall of his armies; in which seruice hee so behaued himselfe, that he got the loue of all that knew him, and increased his credit with *Amurath*: vntill at last he found oportunitie by great policie and courage, to deliuer both himselfe & his natiue countrie, from the horrible slauerie of the Turkish tyranny, as shall be afterwards declared.

Shortly after that *Amurath* had thus danted the Princes of GRECIA, he turned his forces into SERVIA: but the Prince of SERVIA vnable to withstand so mightie an enemie, to procure his fauour, sent Embassadors, offering to pay him a yearely tribute, and to do further what he should reasonably demand. *Amurath* beside the yearely tribute, required to haue *Marie* (this Princes faire daughter) in mariage; and that hee should not suffer the Hungarians to passe through his
B countrey to inuade him; and further, not at any time to deny passage vnto the Turkish armie, when he should send forth the same for the inuasion of the kingdome of BOSNA. All which vnreasonable conditions the Prince was glad to agree vnto, and sent his faire daughter by *Saratze*, who was afterwards maried to *Amurath*.

About this time, *Iosephus* and *Machmutes*, *Amurath* his brethren, and *Orchanes* the sonne of *Solyman*, who had his eyes put out by his vncle *Mahomet*, with many other men of great account among the Turks, died of the plague at PRVSA. *Plague among the Turkes.*

Whilest *Amurath* was thus busied in his wars in EVROPE, the King of CARAMANIA his brother in law, inuaded his dominions in ASIA: for so it was agreed betweene the Christian Princes of EVROPE, and the Mahometan Princes of ASIA, to whom the greatnesse of the *Othoman* kingdome was now become dreadfull, That whensoeuer he inuaded the Christians in EVROPE, the Mahometan Princes should inuade his countries in ASIA; and that whensoeuer he
C should turne his forces into ASIA, the Christian Princes should spoile his countries in EVROPE. Against this Caramanian King, *Amurath* transported his armie into ASIA: & as he went, seazed vpon the countries of SARVCANIA, MENTESIA, and other prouinces, which were before but tributaries vnto him, driuing out the poore Princes before him: and so entred into CARAMANIA, and inforced the King so far, that he was glad to agree to such conditions of peace as it pleased him to propound vnto him, and to send his sonne to wait at his court. And at the same time picking a quarrell with *Isfendiar* prince of CASTAMONA, caused him to become his tributarie, and to send his sonne to his court also. By which meanes the name of *Amurath* became
D terrible to all the Mahometan Princes.

When *Amurath* had thus quieted all his troubles in ASIA, hee returned to HADRIANOPLE: & vnderstanding that the Hungarians passing ouer DANVBIVS, had in his absence made diuerse incursions into his dominions, he was therewith greatly offended, and in reuenge thereof first sent *Alis Bassa* the sonne of *Eurenosis*, with an armie to inuade HVNGARIA; which he performed accordingly by the space of a moneth, and returned from thence with rich bootie. Not long after, he himselfe in person made another road into HVNGARIE, commanding the Prince of SERVIA his father in law, to giue his armie free passage through his countrie, and charging *Dracula* Prince of VALACHIA to aid him with his forces in that expedition: which his commandement both the Christian Princes (more for fear, than of good will) diligently performed. *Hungarie spoiled by Amurath.*

E So *Amurath* hauing inriched his souldiers with the spoile taken in HVNGARIE, returned home and wintred at his court at HADRIANOPLE.

The secret confederation betweene the Hungarians and the Mahometan King of CARAMANIA, was not vnsuspected of *Amurath*; which he was the rather induced to belieue, for that whēsoeuer he inuaded the one hee was presently set vpon by the other, either in EVROPE or in ASIA: of which plot he doubted not but that *George* Prince of SERVIA (his father in law) was chiefe author, although in shew hee was therein the least actor. Wherefore *Amurath* intending to spill the play, sent for the Prince his father in law to come to the court at HADRIANOPLE: but he doubting some Turkish tragedie, pretended great occasions that he could not come; and fearing that which afterwards fel out, fortified and manned all his strong cities and castles by all
F meanes he could possibly, especially his chiefe citie SEMENDRE (otherwise called SPENDEROVIA) and left therein his sonne *Gregorie* (or as some call him, *George*) as gouernour; for his other sonne *Stephan* was long before in *Amurath* his court, with the Queene his sister. The Prince of SERVIA himselfe went into HVNGARIE to procure from thence some aid, hauing there also himselfe certaine territories, which he had in exchange of *Sigismundus* (late Emperor and King of HVNGARIE) for the citie of BELGRADE. It was not long after, but *Amurath* forgetting both the

Amurath contrary to his faith inuadeth Seruia and subdueth it.

the affinitie and league he had with the Prince his father in law, entered with a great armie into SERVIA, destroying all before him, and hardly besieged SEMENDRE: where, after long siege, the young gouernor (the Princes sonne) doubting to fall into his enemies hands by sudden assault, yeelded himselfe, with the citie: which thing so discouraged the rest of the Seruians, that in short time SOPHIA, NOVOMONT, with al the rest of the cities of SERVIA, were yeelded into the power of *Amurath*. After which conquest he returned to HADRIANOPLE, and hearing that the Prince of SERVIA with the Hungarians, were making head against him; and that the two young Seruian Princes, *Gregorie* and *Steuen*, his wiues brethren, had intelligence with their father, he commanded them both to be cast in prison at DIDYMOTICHVM, and their eyes cruelly to be burnt out with a brasen bason made red hot, a common vnmercifull practise among the Turks.

About this time, *Albertus* Duke of AVSTRIA hauing before maried *Elizabeth* the onely daughter of *Sigismund* the Emperour, and succeeding his father in law both in the empire and kingdome of HVNGARIE (vnto which type of higheſt honour nothing more furthered him than the remembrance of *Sigismund*) in the second yeere of his raigne, before he was well setled in those new atchieued honours, died of the flix, as he was making great preparation against *Amurath* the Turkish King: who hauing lately driuen *George* Prince of SERVIA and RASCIA out of his dominions, had now extended the Turkish kingdome euen vnto the borders of HVNGARIE. This *Albertus* dying, left his wife great with child. The Hungarians, in whose minds the remembrance of *Sigismund* was yet fresh, could haue beene contented to haue liued vnder the gouernment of the Queene his daughter, the widow of *Albertus* (then great with child;) but that the Turkish King was now growne so great, & come so nigh, that it was thought more than needfull by *Iohn Huniades*, and other of the Hungarian nobilitie, for the defence of that kingdome, not wholly to rest vpon the deuotion of the people toward the Queene, and the expectation of her issue, wherby they should be nothing strengthned: but to make choice of some great Prince, by whose power they might the better defend themselues & the kingdome against their dangerous enemies. Wherupon with consent of the Queene it was resolued vpon, to make choice of *Vladislaus*, the yong King of POLONIA, then a Prince of great power, but of far greater fame and expectation: and by embassadors to offer vnto him the mariage of the Queene, and with her the kingdome also. This embassage being sent vnto *Vladislaus*, the matter was to & fro debated in the Polonian court, Whether it were to be accepted of or not? Some began to speake of the inequalitie of the match, considering that the king was but in the prime of his youth, & the queene well stept into yeeres; vrging farther, that nothing was offered in that match but wars; and that the Hungarians therein sought for nothing more, than by the Polonian forces to defend themselues against the Turks. Others of contrary opinion, said, that the vniting of those two mightie kingdomes would be to the great good of them both, & to the great honour of the King, whose very name would therby become terrible vnto the Turks: & that it were greater policie, by the forces of both the kingdomes, to keepe the Turkish King from entring into HVNGARIE, than to leaue that kingdome to him for a prey, & afterward be inforced to fight with the same enemie in the heart of POLONIA: and as for inequalitie of yeeres betwixt the King & the Queene, it was not so great a matter, that in regard thereof so honorable & commodious alliance should be reiected; for as much as Princes doe more regard the vertues of their choice, with the increase of their honour, & wealth of their kingdomes, than the Summer fruit of youth & beautie, which of it selfe in short time doth rot & perish, although it be neuer so carefully kept & preserued: and that for as much as there can be but one King in a kingdome, such choice was to be preferred of Kings as had not therin the greateſt hope of many children. After long deliberation, *Vladislaus* gaue answer vnto the embassadors, That he would accept of the offers by thē made: whereupon some of them returned to make relation therof vnto the Queene, & some of them staied behind to hasten the King forward. But whileſt these things were a doing, the Queene in the meane time was deliuered of a faire son, whō she caused to be baptized & named *Ladislaus*. After the birth of this child, the Queen moued with a motherly affection, began to repent her selfe, that she had giuen her consent for the calling in of the Polonian king, to the preiudice of her son. And being animated by some of the Hungarian nobilitie (who presuming of the good grace they were in with the Queen, hoped to grow great themselues, if they might first draw the gouernment of that kingdome to the Queen & her yong son) determined now by all possible means to exclude the Polonian King: but the greater part of the nobilitie better considering what was most expedient for

Vladislaus accepteth of the kingdome offered.

A for the present estate, and that they could neither with honour nor safetie flie from that which was before (for the common good) by the embassadours concluded; continued firme in their former resolution, for the bringing in of *Vladislaus*: so that by this meanes, some taking part with the Queene and her young sonne, and others standing fast for *Vladislaus*, the kingdome of HVNGARIE was diuided into two factions, and as it were rent in peeces, and so grew to ciuill wars. The Queene with such as fauoured her claime, the more to gaine the minds of the common people, (which are many times no lesse carried away with shewes than matter) caused her sonne *Ladislaus* (being then but three moneths old) to be solemnly crowned King at ALBA-
REGALIS, the vsuall place for the coronation of the Hungarian Kings. But after that the Po-
B lonian King had entred into HVNGARIE with a goodly armie, and ioyned his forces with his friends, most part of them which before followed the Queene and her sonne, reuolted vnto *Vladislaus*. So that when she had done what she could, she was glad at last to commit the tuition of her sonne, together with the crowne of HVNGARIE, vnto *Fredericke* the third, then Emperour: neuer ceasing for all that, to the vttermost of her power, to trouble the gouernment of *Vladislaus*, continually stirring vp great wars against him both at home and abroad, vntill that at the last by her death her quarrell tooke end, together with her life.

In the middest of these ciuill wars, *Amurath* thought a faire opportunitie presented vnto him, to make an entrance vnto the conquest of HVNGARIE, which kingdome he had in his ambitious mind alreadie deuoured. And therefore gathering a great armie, he marched along the riuer
C DANVBIVS, vntill he came to the strong citie of BELGRADE, called in ancient time TAVRVNVM, and of some ALBA GRÆCA, but now commonly GREICS WEISENBVRG. This citie is enuironed on the East side with the famous riuer DANVBIVS, and on the South with the great riuer of SAVS or SAWE, which there falleth into DANVBIVS; and on the other two sides is defended with strong wals, with deepe and large ditches; and was then accounted the gate or entrance into HVNGARIE. Vnto this citie *Amurath* at his first comming gaue two terrible assaults, and was in good hope so to haue won the same, but yet was both times valiantly repulsed, with great slaughter of his men. Wherefore finding it to be a matter of more difficultie than was by him at the first supposed, he began to raise mounts against the citie, and high towers of wood to annoy the defendants, and furiously battered the wals. At this time also he caused great num-
D bers of gallies and small pinnaces to be brought into both the riuers of DANVBIVS and SAWE, to assault the citie on those parts where was least feared, and by that meanes also to keepe them of the citie from all succours to be sent that way out of HVNGARIE. Yet for all he could doe or deuise, the citie was still valiantly defended by the Christian souldiers, which vnder the leading and conduct of *Ioannes Vranus*, a Florentine, gouernour thereof, with often sallies & continuall shot slew great numbers of the Turks. At the time of this siege, *Vladislaus*, King of POLONIA, & lately elect King of HVNGARIE, was sore troubled by the Queene & her faction in HVNGARIE: which thing the Turkish King knew right well, and thereupon continued his siege, although famine began greatly to increase in his campe, hoping in nothing more, than that the defendants despairing of helpe from the King, would in short time yeeld vp the citie. *Vladislaus* being so en-
E tangled with ciuill wars, as is aforesaid, that he could not possibly prepare such force as might relieue the besieged citie: yet for as much as the Turkish King had not long before by his embassadour required to ioyne with him in league and amitie, he thought good now to assay if he could raise the siege, by sending vnto him the like embassage. Whereupon he sent *Dobrogostius*, *Ostrorogeus*, and *Lucas Gorsensis*, three of the Polonian nobilitie, embassadours vnto *Amurath*: declaring vnto him, That for so much as he had first offered by his embassadours, to ioyne with him in league before he came out of POLONIA, the remembrance thereof had taken such deepe impression in his mind, that he would not take vp armes against him, although it were in his owne iust defence, before he had offered him reasonable conditions of peace: wherefore if he would desist from inuading of HVNGARIE, whereof *Vladislaus* was now by God his permission,
E and consent of the people, chosen King, and so raise his siege, that then they should afterwards easily agree vpon the desired peace: in concluding whereof, he should not find *Vladislaus* inferiour to himselfe in any manner of princely courtesie: but if he had rather to proceed in armes, and to make proofe of his strength, he would then do the best that he could, to make him know, that he was of sufficient power, in so iust a quarrell, to withstand his greatest forces, & to reuenge the wrongs to him done. When *Amurath* had receiued this embassage, he appointed the embas-

Belgrade besieged of the Turks

Belgrade in vaine assaulted.

sadours

ſadours to withdraw themſelues for a while to SYNDEROVIA (a cittie of SERVIA, not farre off) vntill he might better conſider of their demands: pretending, that he did it for their ſafetie; but as appeared afterward, ſecretly reſoluing with himſelfe, preſently to doe his vttermoſt deuoire for the gaining of the citie, & vpon the ſucceſſe therof to ſhape them anſwer accordingly. Wherefore ſo ſoone as the Embaſſadors were departed to SINDEROVIA, he firſt by his meſſengers aſſaied the minds of the citizens and ſouldiers with magnificall promiſes of large liberties, and infinit rewards and preferments, if they would yeeld vp the citie: and many arrowes with letters made faſt vnto them, full of like promiſes, were at the ſame time ſhot into the citie. But when he ſaw no hope to preuaile by that meanes, he called together the captaines and commanders of his armie, and there in the preſence of them all ſpake vnto them as followeth: G H

The notable ſpeech of Amurath to encourage his ſouldiers to the aſſault of Belgrade.

Although I know it is in mine owne power, to graunt, or not to graunt, the peace whereof our enemies haue made a motion: yet it is my pleaſure (worthie ſouldiers) to know your minds alſo. For ſo much as wee haue that warre in hand, wherein with worldly felicity, (whereof amongſt you I hold the chiefe place) is alſo indangered in our religion, and puritie of life; the defence and care whereof equally belongeth vnto vs all: for although we differ much one from another in the manner of our vocation and liuing here, yet after death we all hope for one and the ſelfeſame felicitie. And therefore I would haue you to vnderſtand, all that I ſhall ſay, as proceeding not of any regard of mine owne priuate, but vpon the conſideration of the common good of you all. For as concerning mine owne eſtate, I poſſeſſe ſo large countries in ASIA, *ſuch great dominions in* EVROPE, *that either part thereof (in good time be it ſaid) might ſeeme a ſufficient kingdome: ſo that perhaps it might better ſtand with my eſtate, to take more care for keeping of that I haue, than to trauell for the gaining of more: but you are to conſider with your ſelues, whether you haue euery man ſufficient to ſuffice himſelfe or not, and how long you thinke your ſelues aſſured of the ſame; and moreouer, that together with theſe worldly things wee ſhall bee driuen at length to forſake our profeſſion and religion, if we ſhall now lay downe armes. For our enemies require, that we ſhould firſt ceaſe from warre, and then afterwards they thinke it meete to talke of peace. I will not ſpeake of the indignitie, that men beſieged, and in euill plight, ſhould propound conditions of peace to them that beſiege them, and are well furniſhed of all things; that feeble and cowardly men ſhould promiſe peace vnto courageous and expert ſouldiers: I omit what labour and paines we haue taken in laying our ſiege, in raiſing of mounts, in making of ſhipping; all which our enemies command vs to forſake, as if they had vs already bound or couped vp in hold, as we haue them. All* BVLGARIA, *and the greater part of* RASCIA *is now by vs conquered, and moſt part of* SERVIA *is at our commaund: all which places are by vs either to be kept, or elſe all the reſt of that wee poſſeſſe in* EVROPE, *is with them to be quite loſt and forſaken. Whoſoeuer ſhall haue in their power this citie which we beſiege (and that our enemies know right well) ſhall haue not onely as it were a fortreſſe and bulwarke of defence for his owne, but alſo a caſtle and entrance for the ſubduing of others. The kingdome of* HVNGARIE *is now deuided in it ſelfe, and full of domeſticall ſedition: neither is it ſo much ſtrengthened by the vniting of the kingdome of* POLONIA, *as it is by ciuill diſſention weakened: and in this motion of peace nothing is ſought for, but to gaine time for the pacifying of their priuate quarrels, that they may afterwards with their double forces ſet vpon vs. For if wee ſhall breake vp our ſiege before we haue won the citie, they will eaſily finde delaies ſo long to protract the concluſion of peace, vntill that either* Vladiſlaus *his good fortune, or elſe the Hungarians being of themſelues better aduiſed, ſhall make an end of their ciuill wars. What manner and conditions of peace will they then require of vs, when they are at vnitie amongſt themſelues, and in armes againſt vs; ſeeing that now being in danger with mutuall diſcord, and almoſt by vs vanquiſhed, they thinke it reaſonable (as if they had won the field) that we ſhould firſt raiſe our ſiege, and then intreat of peace? Their proud demands for the reſtitution of* BVLGARIA *and* RASCIA, *with other countries and cities won by our trauell and danger; alreadie ſound in mine eares: which if we ſhall refuſe to grant, not only the Hungarians being then at vnitie among themſelues, but alſo the Polonians, ioyned vnto them, will bring thoſe wars home to our doores, which we now at great aduantage make vpon them, troubled with diſcord and ciuill broiles. And if for deſire of peace we could be content to yeeld vnto ſuch ſhamefull and miſerable conditions, and reſtore vnto them all they ſhould or in reaſon could deſire; doe you thinke the Prince of* SERVIA *would reſt contented with his owne? whoſe haughtie minde (I am ſure) being inflate with the combining of two ſuch mightie kingdomes, thinketh not onely of the recouerie of that he hath loſt, but euen now gapeth at all that is ours in* EVROPE. *He will not thinke himſelfe ſatisfied, before he (hauing* I K L M

A *uing brought the Hungarian and Polonian forces against vs) shall see the same hauocke and spoile made in our kingdome with fire and sword, which he hath before seene made by vs in his owne. Where if his fortune should answere his designes (which God forbid, but yet it may chance) beside all the miserable and intolerable outrages, which are to be feared of an angrie conquerour, it is accounted with them for a godly and religious worke, to vse all cruell and vnspeakable villanies against our nation, except wee will forsake the faith and religion deliuered vnto vs by our ancestors, and follow their new and incredible ceremonies. Neither doe they thinke they can more easily and effectually procure the fauour of God with any other kinde of sacrifice or seruice, than by ouerthrowing and prophaning our temples, by scoffing at our most sacred and secret rites and ceremonies, by scorning our religion, and Priests: and that*

B *you may know all the furie wherewith they rage against vs and our religion, they account all them for holy Saints which die in fight against vs. There is no cause (valiant souldiers) that vpon the vaine hope of peace, wee should expect whilest the enemie doth gather and vnite his forces and armes against vs, especially such an enemie as propoundeth not spoile and worldly honours, but immortalitie it selfe, as a reward of his victorie. We haue alreadie taken much more labour than we haue to take, we haue filled the ditches with restlesse labour, we haue cast vp bulwarkes equall with the wals, and part of the wals we haue beaten euen with the ground, so that you see the towne halfe opened: and that towne, by gaining whereof, all that ours is, may be made safe and quiet; and that which our enemie possesseth, subiect to our spoile and prey. If you will but a little inforce your selues, as men mindfull of our good fortune and forwardnesse, you shall find our temples, our sacrifices, our religion, all worldly and heauenly felicitie to be*

C *then assured vnto vs, when as you shall to morrow ouerthrow the very foundation of the enemies wall. Then (courageous souldiers) we may crie victorie, not for the present, but for euer. If this warre should bring vnto vs nothing else but an assured securitie of our estate, it were sufficient reward: for which we ought cheerefully to aduenture our selues to all dangers, and to challenge in combat euen death it selfe. But as this victorie doth defend all our things as with a deepe trench or sure wall, so doth it lay open and expose all our enemies dominions vnto danger and spoile. Hitherto we haue striuen with nature her selfe in the rough and abrubt mountaines of* Bvlgaria *and* Rascia, *where we were to striue with hunger, thirst, labour, and desperation: all them we haue ouercome, allured with no other reward, but that at length we might attaine vnto the wealth of fruitfull* Hvngarie, *from whence we must fetch the*

D *guerdon of our victorie, and the ground of our glorie. We are come to the gates, which being laid open, we are not to passe ouer inaccessible rocks, or vncouth desarts, but we shall goe thorow most pleasant places, decked both by nature her selfe, and the industrie of man; where the temperatnesse of the aire, and liuely springs, with the fruitfulnesse of the soile, doth euery where yeeld plentie of all manner of food both for man and beast, not only to serue for natures necessitie, but euen to glut our wanton desires. What thing soeuer curious endeuour hardly bringeth forth in other places, that the fertilitie of this soile yeeldeth plentifully of it selfe: so that it is to be thought, that nature adorned* Hvngarie *with a certaine extraordinarie care, when as she would set forth a patterne of good husbandrie, for other countries to imitate. Neither hath she in any place beene more bountifull in bestowing her rich gifts: for gold, which other men most painfully dig vp, and that in few places, the Hungarians gather at their ease, as if it were a growing plant.*

E *It is in your power (worthie souldiers) whether you will to morrow open a way to all these good things for your selues for euer, or else leaue the way open for your enemies vnto all that you hold. I would that you would remember when you goe vnto the breach, that all the store of happie fortune is laid open vnto you for a prey, without any other defence, without any other garrison, without any other keeper; and that behind you are your wiues, children, your houses, your temples, and religion, together with the rewards of all your former victories: ouer whom (except you win this citie) the furie and insolencie of the victorious enemie, will most cruelly and shamefully insult. I, according as I shall see you fight at the breach to morrow, shall easily perceiue how you are set downe to command as conquerours, or else as slaues to be commanded; and also what to answere to the most insolent demands of the proud embassadours. In the meane time make much of your selues, and together with your armour haue all things in readinesse, that to morrow with the dawning of the day we may assault the breach.*

F

The Turkish captaines for that time ioyfully departed, as if they had beene alreadie assured of the victorie, and of all those good things which *Amurath* had so liuely set before their eyes. The next morning very early, *Amurath* commanded the assault to be giuen vnto a great breach which he had made in the wall with continuall batterie: the souldiers with great courage assailed the breach, especially the Ianizaries, who vnder the leading of *Haly-Bassa* valiantly won the

ſame, and were entring the citie with aſſured hope of victorie. The Chriſtians ſeeing all in danger to be loſt, running to the breach from all parts of the citie, ſo forcibly charged the proud Ianizaries on euery ſide, that they were glad to retire with more haſte than they before entred: in which retrait, many of them were ſlaine, and the reſt flying out at the breach, were either ſlaine or burnt to death in the towne ditch with wild fire; whereof the defendants had caſt great ſtore vpon the Turks at the breach, which hauing taken hold vpon the faggots, hurdles, and other light matter, wherewith the Turks had vpon the ſudden made their way ouer the towne ditch, did ſo terribly burne, that the Ianizaries which had entred the breach, being againe repulſed, were in that fierie lake conſumed, or elſe with ſmoke ſtrangled. In this aſſault *Amurath* is reported to haue loſt eight thouſand of his beſt men, beſide ſeauen thouſand others ouerwhelmed or ſtrangled in the mines, by the countermines of the Chriſtians. The other part of the Turks, which at the ſame time aſſaulted the citie by water, out of their gallies and ſmall ſhips, had as euill or rather worſe ſucceſſe: many of them were ſunke with great ſhot, and ſome burnt by the fire caſt from the wals, and ſo fired one another; and diuers of them in that ſudden feare, for auoiding of that preſent danger, ran a ground vpon the ſhelfes in the riuer, and ſo ſplit. *Amurath* wonderfully diſcouraged with the ſlaughter of his men, and ſhamefully beaten from the aſſault, returned to his campe with his Turks, much like men which had lately eſcaped from ſome great ſhipwracke. And thus partly by famine, and partly by the defendants force, hauing loſt the greateſt part of his armie, he determined now after ſeauen moneths ſiege to returne home. Yet becauſe he would not encourage his enemies, by ſhewing his feare, he ſent for the embaſſadours into the campe, and with ſterne countenance anſwered them in this ſort:

Belgrade notably defended by the Chriſtians.

Amurath his anſwere to the embaſſadours.

Wee will (ſaid hee) *then talke of peace, when* Vladiſlaus *ſhall deliuer vnto vs all that part of* Rascia *which he yet holdeth, and alſo th is citie of* Belgrade, *as a pledge of the league. And for this time I will raiſe my ſiege, to giue* Vladiſlaus *time to aduiſe himſelfe: yet I would wiſh him, rather to accept of my friendſhip vpon theſe conditions, than by denying that little which is demanded, to hazard the ſtate of both his kingdomes. I aske but that which is mine owne by law of armes, before* Vladiſlaus *was called into* Hvngarie: *and the Hungarians cannot transfer vnto him that right which they had not themſelues. Wherefore if he will proceed rather to ſtriue for that which is other mens, than quietly to poſſeſſe his owne, I will in good time repaire hither againe, with my God the beholder and reuenger of wrong.*

With this anſwere he diſmiſſed the embaſſadours, and forthwith riſe with his armie, ſore repenting his comming thither: yet becauſe he would take ſomething in his way, he left his nephew *Iſa-beg* with certaine troupes of horſemen at Scopia in Servia, who ſo troubled the King of Bosna, that he was glad to require peace of *Amurath*, and to promiſe vnto him a yeerely tribute of fiue and twentie thouſand duckats.

Vladiſlaus newly elected King of Hvngarie, ſeeing that part of his kingdome which is called Transilvania, or Pannodacia, to be much ſubiect to the incurſion of the Turks, (who hauing got into their poſſeſſion all the countrey of Moldavia, and growne inſolent by continuall victories, ceaſed not to inuade and ſpoile the countrey of Transilvania) for remedie of that daily miſchiefe, created *Iohn Huniades* Vayuod, or his vice-gerent in Transilvania. This *Huniades* (as ſome write) was Earle of Bistrice, borne in Valachia: others ſay that he was borne but of meane parents, and called *Huniades* of the village wherein he was borne, and grew to be great by his vertue and proweſſe. Whatſoeuer his parents were, he himſelfe was a moſt politicke, valiant, fortunate, and famous captaine, his victories ſo great, as the like was neuer before by any Chriſtian Prince obtained againſt the Turks: ſo that his name became vnto them ſo dreadfull, that they vſed the ſame to feare their crying children withall. This worthie captaine according to the truſt repoſed in him, began to keepe the Turks ſhort, by cutting them off, whenſoeuer they preſumed to enter into his countrey; and alſo by ſhutting vp the paſſages whereby they were wont to forrage the countrey of Transilvania; and when he had put his owne charge in good ſafetie, he entred into Moldavia, and neuer reſted till he had won it quite out of the Turks hands. And not contented with this, paſſed many times ouer Danvbivs into the Turks dominions, making hauocke of the Turks, and carrying away with him great bootie, with many captiues.

Now

A Now were two great and worthie captaines met together, in places nigh one to another, *Huniades*, in TRANSILVANIA, and the next part of HVNGARIE; and *Iſa* in RASCIA, & the vpper part of SERVIA: the one lying at TEMESVVAR, and the other at SINDEROVIA; both men of great ſpirit, and deſirous of honour. Of theſe two, *Iſa* in great fauour with *Amurath*, & by him highly preferred, to increaſe his credit with the Sultan his vncle, & to inlarge the bounds of the Turkiſh kingdome committed to his charge, continually forraged the countrey about BELGRADE, to the intent that hauing wearied the inhabitants with the harms he daily did them, and brought the citie into great wants, he might ſo at length gaine the ſame, for the moſt part abandoned the of citizens, which *Amurath* could not by force obtaine, & ſo to open a way into
B HVNGARIE. Thus was the countrie by him ſpoiled, the villages rifled and burnt, and great numbers both of men and cattell daily caried away: yea ſometimes not contented to haue ſpoiled the open countrie, he aſſailed the very ſuburbs of the citie, and was thence hardly repulſed: and finding *Huniades* the onely man that hindred his further proceedings, to requite him, and prouoke him the more, he brake ſometimes into his countrie, laying in euery corner as he went ſtrong ambuſhes, ſo to haue circumuented that warie captaine, if it had bin poſſible. But he greeued to ſee the countrie thus ſpoiled, & purpoſing to be thereof reuenged, ſecretly raiſed a ſtrong power, both of horſe and foot, and with his companion *Nicholas Vilach* a right valiant captaine, paſſing ouer DANVBIVS, came and encamped betwixt BELGRADE and SINDEROVIA, being about twentie miles diſtant. Of whoſe comming *Iſa-beg* vnderſtanding, forthwith ſet for-
C ward with a great armie againſt him, leaſt he ſhould by longer delay ſeeme to ſtand in doubt of his enemie, whom he had by many iniuries ſo often prouoked. So marching on with his armie ranged in order of battaile; hee found *Huniades* as readie for battaile as himſelfe, who in both wings had placed his light horſemen, and behind them his men at armes, with certaine companies of crosbowes on herſeback: in the middeſt ſtood his armed men with his archers, and other ſouldiers more lightly armed, readie at all aſſaies, all ſtrongly guarded with men at armes: after whom in the reareward followed alſo a ſtrong ſquadron of valiant footmen. The ſignall of battaile being giuen, there began a great and cruell fight, as amongſt men deſirous either to ouercome, or there honourably to end their dayes. At the firſt encounter, the wings of *Hunaides* his battaile were by the Turks enforced to retire: but comming to the men at armes, their furie was
D there ſtaied, and a cruell battaile fought, wherein many fell on both ſides, but of the Turks mo, who truſting to their agilitie and nimbleneſſe of bodie, were not able long to endure the ſhocke and ſtrength of the men at armes, but were there by heapes ouerthrowne, and moſt miſerably ſlaine. Which *Iſa-beg* beholding, and perceiuing the Hungarians couragiouſly to fight, as men almoſt in poſſeſſion of an aſſured victorie; to ſaue himſelfe turned his backe and fled to SINDEROVIA. The reſt beholding the flight of their Generall, betooke themſelues to flight alſo: after whō the Hungarians fiercely followed, eſpecially *Huniades* himſelfe, who by his example to animate the reſt, left not the chaſe vntill he was come almoſt to the ſuburbs of SINDEROVIA: few of the Turks eſcaped, the reſt being either taken or ſlaine. *Huniades* after ſo great a victory with a rich prey and a multitude of priſoners returned to BELGRADE: hauing now ſufficiently reuen-
E ged himſelfe of the wrongs he had before receiued: after which time, *Iſa* the Turke was more quiet, as hauing ſufficient proofe of his valour. The fame of this victorie increaſed not a little the fame of *Huniades*, the report whereof comming to BVDA, filled the citie with ioy and gladnes: but moſt of all King *Vladiſlaus*, who thereupon cauſed publike prayers, with thankſgiuing to be made in euery Church: and by his letters gratulatorie, with many rich preſents, encouraged *Huniades* to the proſecution of the religious warre, wherein was propounded vnto him not onely the increaſe of his wealth (a baſe regard in the honourable) but the immortalitie of his name, & hope of eternall bliſſe. 1440

Not long after this victorie, *Huniades* obtained a farre greater in TRANSILVANIA. For *Amurath* much grieued with the loſſe hee had firſt by himſelfe, and after by his lieutenant *Iſa*, re- *Transiluania inuaded and ſpoiled by Meſites Baſſa.*
F ceiued at BELGRADE, and in the countrie thereabout; leaſt he ſhould ſeeme to yeeld vnto the Hungarians, repaired his broken forces with new ſupplies, with purpoſe againe to renew his warres in VALACHIA. And ſo hauing put all things in a readineſſe, ſent one of his Baſſaes called *Meſites* (his Viceroy in ASIA, a man of great wiſedome, experience, and valour) with a puiſſant armie vpon the ſudden by the way of VALACHIA TRANSALPINA, to inuade TRANSILVANIA. This worthie captaine according to his charge, departing out of SERVIA, & paſ-

sing ouer DANVBIVS, suddenly entred into *Huniades* his countrey, burning & spoiling whatso- G
euer came in his way, and killing all that he light vpon, man, woman, and child, without respect of age, sex, or condition; filling all the countrey as he went, with tumult & terrour. Whereof *Huniades* (but lately come into the countrey) vnderstanding, & hauing as then, no sufficient forces to oppose against the furie of so puissant an enemie, either meanes to raise any, in so great a confusion and feare; was wonderfully grieued thereat, and perplexed in mind, as not well knowing
Huniades flieth which way to turne himselfe. At length he tooke his flight into ALBA IVLA, vnto his old friend *George Lepe*, Bishop of that citie, a man of great vertue and grauitie: but whileft he there staieth with his friend, about the raising of a tumultuarie armie, the enemie was now come neere vnto him; who hauing ouer-run the greatest part of the countrey, had scraped together such a bootie, H
and taken such a multitude of prisoners, that surcharged as it were with the spoile, he was glad to march softlier: yet still burning the country before him. Which *Huniades* & the good Bishop beholding out of the citie, so much grieued thereat, that albeit that they both well knew themselues, with an handfull of men taken vp in haste hand ouer head, too weake to encounter with their enemies: yet thought it better with such power as they had, to goe out, and so in defence of their country honourably to die, than longer to behold the most miserable destruction of the
Huniades and the Bishop of Alba Iula entrapped by the Turks. same. But whileft they vpon this resolution (caried forth with too hot a desire of reuenge) march vnaduisedly on headlong, without any scouts or espials sent out before them, they fell before they were aware into such ambushes, both of horse and foot, as the craftie enemie had in the se- I
cret woods & vallies whereby they were to passe, laid of purpose to intercept them; which now with great force and horrible outcries breaking out vpon them on euery side, dismaied them with a great feare. *Huniades* and the Bishop, seeing themselues so entrapped and beset with the multitude of their enemies, as that they must needs perish if they should longer stay, fled incontinently backe againe; after whom followed all the rest of their armie, and at their heeles the eager Turks, who spared none of the flying Christians they could ouertake, but put them all to the sword: neuertheleſſe, most part of them escaped backe againe to ALBA IVLA. The Bishop thinking to haue saued himselfe by the swiftnesse of his horse, comming to a riuer, in taking the same was ouerthrowne, & there by the enemie slaine. With whose death the Bassa encouraged, as also with the present victorie, began now more at libertie to range abroad, and at his pleasure with fire & sword to wast that part of the countrey which yet remained vnspoiled: leauing in the K
meane time (as a man out of feare) the rich prey he had taken, together with his baggage and cariages, to be caried all together, as a notable testimonie of his victorie, vnto his great lord and master. *Huniades* in the meane time, with wonderfull celeritie running about the borders of his country, and out of euery towne & village taking such souldiers as he could, perswaded also the Sicilians (or people commonly called Siculi) in defence of their wiues and children to take vp armes: who all, in respect of the present necessitie, cheerefully did whatsoeuer he commanded. With this tumultuarie armie, he followed the Bassa (who then in great pride was returning, laded with the spoile of the whole country) with purpose to set vpon him, as time or place should giue him occasion. In the meane time *Mesitis* being told, that *Huniades* with a great power was comming after him, and now euen at hand: is reported to haue made no great reckoning there- L
of, but to haue proudly answered vnto him that brought the newes, *Let him come, & with the spoile of himselfe enrich our victorie*. There was present when he thus said, one *Iohn*, one of *Huniades* his espials, who discouered vnto him many of the Turks designes, concerning the ioyning of battell with him; but especially, that the Bassa had commanded thorow his armie, That aboue all things they should in the beginning of the battell assaile the person of *Huniades* himselfe, for that he being once slaine, the rest would easily be put to flight, as all depending on his direction: and that for the performance thereof, he had appointed certaine companies of his best souldiers, giuing them certaine tokens whereby they might know both him and his horse. There was then in the armie, one *Simon Kemene* a right valiant & couragious gentleman, not much vnlike vnto *Huniades*, with whom he changed both his horse and armour, appointing vnto him a strong M
troupe of his choice horsemen to attend vpon him: neither was this counterfait *Huniades* vnwilling to expose himselfe vnto the danger, accounting it honour enough, if by his death he might saue the life of his friend, and preserue so worthie a defender of the common-weale. *Huniades* following fast after the Bassa marching before him, sought by light skirmishes sometimes on the one side, sometimes on the other, and sometimes in the rereward, to stay him, and at some ad-

uantage,

A uantage, if any ſuch were giuen, to fight with him, before he ſhould get out of the countrey. At
length finding ſuch an opportunitie as he thought good to lay hold vpon, he with all his forces,
as if it had beene a violent tempeſt, came vpon the Turks ſo ſuddenly, as that they had not time
to put themſelues into order of battell, but were glad confuſedly to fight as they might, and
without order: in which diſordered fight many fell on both ſides, but farre more of the Turks.
But whileſt both armies with like obſtinacie encounter together, certaine troupes of the moſt
valiant Turks deſcrying *Simon* the counterfeit *Huniades*, and by the ſignes before deliuered vn-
to them, both of his horſe and armour, ſuppoſing him to haue beene *Huniades* indeed; with all
their power made towards him, to haue ſlaine him, according as they had in charge: where
B meeting with right valiant men, of no leſſe courage than themſelues, there was fought a moſt *A great battell betwixt Meſites and Huniades.*
terrible and bloudie battell, in ſuch ſort, as if in that very place ſhould haue been tried the whole
fortune of the day. But the Turks ſtill bending their forces more and more thither, for the kil-
ling of him, of whom they ſtood in more dread than of all the reſt: at length by plaine force
made a way vnto him, and hauing ſlaine them that were about him, though not without their
owne great loſſe, furiouſly aſſailing him, ſlew him, vainly ſuppoſing it to haue beene the very ge-
nerall himſelfe: who had he there periſhed (as like enough it was he ſhould, had he not beene
before warned of the Baſſaes purpoſe) no doubt, but that the whole countrey had beene with
him, or ſhortly after, quite loſt. But *Huniades* in the meane time riding to and fro in the armie,
encouraged his ſouldiers not to forſake the victorie they were now as it were in poſſeſſion of,
C nor leaue vnreuenged ſo many ſlaughters and harmes ſo lately committed by their enemies, but
to remember as they were fighting, that they caried in their hands their wiues and children, and
were in that one battell to reuenge the wrong by them done both to God & man. Sometime he
with new ſupplies encouraged ſuch as were ouercharged & euen now readie to flie; otherſome
he with cheerefull words ſtaied, that had alreadie turned their backs; performing in euery place
all the parts both of a worthie commander & valiant ſouldier, as the neceſſitie of the time and
place required. In the heat of this battell, fortune yet fauouring neither part, but both fighting
with all their power, the Tranſiluanian priſoners that in great number were kept in the campe,
wiſhing rather there to die than to be caried away in captiuitie, & thinking it now or neuer, time
for them to attempt their deliuerance; with one cõſent brake in ſunder their bonds, & with ſuch
D weapons as firſt came to hand, ſet vpon their keepers, of whom they ſlew a great number: and ſo
deſperatly iſſuing out into the battell, encouraged their countrimen, and diſcouraged their ene-
mies. Yet was the battell hardly fought, though not altogether with like courage, or for like
cauſe: for why, the Tranſiluanians fought for their country, their wiues, their children, their
liues, their libertie, their religion & altars: but the Turks for the rich prey they had before taken,
& that they were by victorie in hope of. But at length the Turks by the breaking out of the pri-
ſoners (who laid about them like deſperat men) out of hope of the victorie, began by little & lit-
tle to retire: and the other on the contrary part, by this vnexpected aid encouraged, and quickly
finding the enemies fainting, fought more fiercely than before. *Meſites* ſeeing his armie thus in
euery part wauering, was therwith exceedingly troubled: but preſently after, beholding ſome of
E his men retiring, as if they had fled, and otherſome flying outright, & no means to ſtay them, for
ſafegard of his life, turned his horſe & fled alſo: after whom the Hungarians followed with moſt
terrible executiõ, as men deſirous of the bloud of thẽ that had done them ſo great harme. In this
chaſe *Meſites* himſelf with his ſon, were both ſlain: the report of whoſe death, in the purſuit, added
ſwiftnes vnto the Hungarians, to the increaſing of the ſlaughter of the Turks, whõ for the deſire
of reuenge, they ceaſed not for certain daies to purſue, vnto the top of the alps. In this battel were
ſlain of the Turks 20000, & of the Hungariãs about 3000. *Huniades* with this victorie recouered
al the prey the Turks had taken of the ſpoile of the country, together with their tents & baggage:
vnto whõ at his returne into the campe, a wonderfull number of the poore captiues came, and *Great reioicing for the victorie.*
falling at his feet & kiſſing them, gaue God thanks for their deliuerance by him: ſome called him
F the father, ſome the defender of his country; the ſouldiers, their inuincible generall; the captiues,
their deliuerer; the women, their protector; the yong men & children, their moſt louing father.
In all which ioyfull acclamations, no honourable additions was heard, which in the iudgement
of all men, worthily agreed not with his deſerts. He againe with teares ſtanding in his eies, cour-
teouſly embraced them, reioycing at the publicke good: & himſelfe giuing moſt heartie thanks
vnto God, commanded the like to be done in all churches of that prouince. Sometime he com-

mended the souldiers valour, and in generall, the peoples loyaltie. The nobilitie and worthie captaines he extolled by name, according as their deserts had beene in that notable battell, not detracting any thing from any mans worthie praises: part of the spoile of the Turks he appointed vnto deuout vses, and the other part he diuided amongst the souldiers: and willing as it were with the first fruits thereof to gratifie King *Vladislaus*, and the Despot of SERVIA, then present with him, he sent a great waggon, which ten horses could scarce draw, laded with the Turks ensignes and the chiefe of their heads, where the heads of the Bassa and his sonne stood formost, and aboue them was placed an old Turke, sometime well knowne vnto the Despot: who in this order presented vnto them, is said to haue thus deliuered his message, as followeth: G H

The speech of an old Turke, in deliuering the present vnto the King.

Huniades *your maiesties most humble seruant, and the most honourable Despots sonne, sendeth vnto you this part of the spoile gained by this late victorie, lest he should seeme to defraud you of the honour of the battell, happily fought vnder your good fortune. These heads of the Asian nobilitie he sendeth you for a present, that you should not want the assured testimonie of so notable a victorie: these are two Princes heads, the one of* Mesites Bassa *the Generall, and the other of his sonne. The rest are the heads of the other great commanders and Sanzacks. All these witnesse the greatnesse of the late slaughter, and exhort you to greater atchieuements. What your royall maiestie for the naturall instinct of pietie and religion ingrafted in you, may hope for; and what an occasion of immortalitie and glorie is offered vnto you,* Huniades *wisheth you hereby to consider: and humbly requesteth, that generall supplications may be commanded, and a great armie prouided, for asmuch as all men suppose, that the Turke will gage his whole forces, and leaue nothing vnattempted, in reuenge of so great a slaughter of his people.* I

Hauing ended his speech, he shewed vnto them the grisely mortified heads: which the nobilitie and others there present, earnestly beheld and wondered at, especially the King and the Despot; who by letters farther vnderstanding the whole proceeding of the warre, and fortune of the battell, highly commended the discreet valour of *Huniades*, together with the glorious victorie, worthie (as they said) of a Romane triumph: for which, *Vladislaus* commanded publicke supplications to be made in all churches thorow HVNGARIE, and by honourable messengers sent of purpose to *Huniades*, gaue him great thanks, according to his deserts, with many rich presents also, commending his faithfull and worthie seruice: and requesting him with like courage and care to prosecute the warre so happily begun, promising him, That he should want neither men nor money, or any thing else needfull thereunto. Vpon this victorie, the countries of MOLDAVIA and VALACHIA, before tributaries vnto the Turks, now reuolted againe vnto the Hungarians, to the great griefe of *Amurath:* and the fame of *Huniades* was in short time dispersed thorow all EVROPE, and a generall hope conceiued of him, as of one most like to be one of the greatest champions of the Christian common-weale, as in his time vndoubtedly he was. K

The report of this late ouerthrow, with the death of the Bassa *Mesites*, and the losse of his armie, being brought to HADRIANOPLE, much troubled the Turkish tyrant: but most of all the reuolt of the two countries of MOLDAVIA and VALACHIA. So that full of wrathfull indignation and desire of reuenge, he commanded a great armie to be raised against the next Spring, with intent to haue gone therewith himselfe: but afterward vpon better aduice changing his purpose, he committed the leading thereof vnto one *Schech Abedin Bassa* (corruptly called *Sciabedin Bassa*) an eunuch, and yet neuertheless a right valiant and expert captaine, and his viceroy in EVROPE; with charge first to enter into VALACHIA, and there hauing done what harme he could with fire and sword, to doe the like in MOLDAVIA: and after that with all his power to breake into TRANSILVANIA, there to reuenge vnto the full, the losses before receiued, and with the slaughter of the Hungarians to sacrifice vnto the ghosts of their dead friends and companions. The Bassa according to his charge, departing out of MACEDONIA, and marching thorow MYSIA, and so passing ouer DANVBIVS, with an armie of fourescore thousand fighting men, whereof foure thousand were of the best Ianizaries, entred into VALACHIA, filling the country with feare and tumult; the Valachians now altogether in despaire to be able to defend themselues against the furie of the Turks, and sore repenting them of their reuolt from them vnto the Hungarians. Whom for all that, *Huniades* comforted with cheerefull words, willing them betime to retire themselues vnto the safest places of their country, and not to expose themselues with their too weake forces against the furie of the Barbarians; promising L M

Valachia grieuously spoiled by the Turke.

A miſing in good time to come himſelfe to their reliefe; not doubting by the power of Ieſus Chriſt, to dare them battell in the plaine field, and to haue of them a glorious victorie, although they were in number farre moe than they were reported to be. The Baſſa diuiding his armie into two parts, forraged the countrey farre and neere, burning the countrey townes and villages before them, ſpoiling whatſoeuer came in their way, and killing whoſoeuer they light vpon, men, women, or children, without reſpect of age, ſex, or condition. But the Valachians for the moſt part, had retired themſelues, ſome into the mountaines, ſome into the ſtrong townes, and ſome into places further off; ſo that few fell into the enemies hands, but ſuch as were not able to flie, or not regarding the danger, had negligently ſtaied the enemies comming, and ſo periſhed.

B VALACHIA thus ſpoiled, the Turks paſſing ouer the mountaines, deſcended into TRANSILVANIA, as *Amurath* had commanded, with purpoſe there to haue done the like or greater harme, if poſſible it had beene to haue ſo done: but there was *Huniades* with 15000 choſen ſouldiers readie to encounter them. A ſmall power indeed, in compariſon of the multitude the Baſſa led: but all men of great experience & reſolution, in valour counteruailing the great number of their enemies, men reſolued rather to die than to flie. Of whoſe approch the Baſſa (vnto whom the name and fortune of the man was dreadfull) by his eſpials vnderſtanding, ſtaied his intended furie, and as one well aware with whom he had to doe, without farther proceeding, encamped himſelfe with his armie, to ſee what power and courage the enemie had. But certainly informed by his ſcouts, for that purpoſe ſent out, That he was not in number a quarter ſo many as

C the Turks, but lay ſtrongly encamped with his waggons and carriages, as in a ſure fort, in ſuch order, as that he could not without great danger be aſſailed, and yet might at his pleaſure come forth, and ſo if need were retire againe, as into a ſtrong hold: he wondered at his courage and skilfull manner of encamping; yet preſuming of his owne multitude and ſtrength, he doubted not to march forward, and to offer him battell. Being come within halfe a mile the one of the other, although they were on neither ſide vnwilling to fight, yet hoping both for a great victorie, they thought it not beſt to attempt any thing raſhly, but betooke themſelues both vnto the higheſt of their wits, as willing in ſo great a conflict, as wel to ſhew the vttermoſt of their policie and skill, as of their courage and valour. The Turke thought it beſt not to ioyne battell with his enemies in one front, for feare of confounding ſo great a multitude, but to diuide his armie in-

D to certaine battailions, and ſo to fight by degrees and in good order, wherby to make al his men profitable: or if he could not doe ſo, then with his multitude to encloſe the Chriſtians round, and ſo to ouerwhelme them. On the other ſide, *Huniades* charged his ſouldiers, aboue all things to keepe their order, and in no caſe to ſuffer themſelues to be diuided by their enemies. The next day, being come vnto a place which they call VASCAPE, both the armies by the breake of day began to diſlodge, at which time the Baſſa ſpent a good ſpace in the martialling of his great armie, as did alſo *Huniades*, ſeeking by prouident foreſight and policie to match the multitude of his enemies. And ſo hauing ſet all things in order, calling vnto him the chiefe captaines and commanders of his armie, with cheerefull countenance encouraged them as followeth:

The moſt Chriſtian ſpeech of Huniades to encourage his ſouldiers againſt the Turks.

E *No courage (beleeue me) worthie companions, and fellowes in armes, could haue induced me to encounter ſo great a multitude, did not neceſſitie it ſelfe enforce me, your approued valour perſwade me, and the aſſured hope I haue in Chriſt Ieſus aboue all things confirme me: hauing made choice of vs to fight this his ſacred battell, and by our right hands to reuenge the diſhonour of his holy name. In which his eſpeciall choice we are to conſider how much he hath beloued vs: and for the ſame to praiſe his infinite goodneſſe and mercie. Three ſuch commodities hath God thereby euen this day propounded vnto vs, if we will be the ſame men we haue beene in times paſt, as that the leaſt thereof were ſufficient to encourage men of worth, for the ſame to lay downe their liues, held they them neuer ſo deare: Firſt, you are to fight for the health and welfare of your children, wiues, and countrey, ioyned with your whole eſtate: then, for eternall glorie and renowne in this world: and laſt of all, for immortalitie and a crowne that*

F *ſhall neuer be taken from you, in the world to come. How many miſeries and calamities we haue in former times, and of late, receiued from the Turks, would to God you had rather heard thereof by report, than ſeene the ſame with your eyes, and endured them in your ſelues. You had long ſince beene bereft of your welbeloued wiues and children, whom moſt miſerable ſeruitude had ouerwhelmed; you had had neither houſe nor church, wherein to dwell or to ſerue God, had not the diuine power of God; and your rare proweſſe beene at hand for preſent reſcue: your countrey, your goods, your honour, your libertie, you*

could

could not haue kept, had not your valour, confirmed by an assured confidence in the highest, preserued all G
these things vnto your selues: The horrible furie of the Turke had now brought all these things into the
power of it selfe, had they not beene by your armes defended, and he by so many bloudie ouerthowes re-
pressed. He could not before be staied: the Grecians, the Macedonians (both sometimes the greatest com-
manders) the bold Thracians, the strong Bulgarians, the valiant Epirots, and Dalmatians, could not abide
their force: The Athenians, the Thebans, the Lacedemonians, authors and masters of the ancient discipline
of warre, willingly gaue place vnto these. Vnto vs, is this praise and great glorie of this victorie by God
assigned, who oftentimes with a small power, yea and that sometime against all hope, haue with a notable
slaughter ouerthrowne them, vanquished them, and put them to flight. Neither is there any men in the
world whom they more feare and stand in dread of, than you, whom though in number but few, they haue H
by their daily slaughter and losses, learned no lesse to feare, than if you were many. And now to trie the
vttermost of their power, they are come with their innumerable legions: but are not for that of you any
thing the more to be feared than before, seeing that we all beare armes vnder the conduct of the most
mightie God; and are by daily victorie, long experience, and approued valour taught, what we are to
dare: besides that, the greatest part of their armie is of common souldiers, slaues, or rude countrey pesants,
or men by force by them compelled; more than the Ianizaries, are no good souldiers among them, the rest
as men enforced, serue them for feare, and against their wils, and they by their cowardise brought into
that bondage and slauerie. What Greekes, Macedonians, or Sclauonians soeuer are sent to their aid, for-
asmuch as they are not yet reuolted from the Christian faith, deeme them not to stand for them, but for vs:
they long for vs the reuengers of their wrongs, and for you as victorious conquerours: in this warre they I
haue giuen vnto the Turks their names, but vnto vs their hearts, and power, and pray heartily for our
victorie: wherefore you ought so much the more valiantly and couragiously to fight, by how much grea-
ter you see the victorie, the honour, the prey before your eyes. We are not to fight for other mens houses,
and altars, but for our owne; so our present necessitie requireth, in such sort, that if we our selues deliuer
not our selues, and beare our selues vpon our wonted hope and valour, we shall this day be enforced to en-
dure the greatest miserie that men may possibly: First, the losse of our goods and substance, the captiuitie
of our children, the deflouring of our daughters, the rauishing of our wiues, the slaughter of our parents,
the burning of our houses, and churches; and that which worse is than all this, the scorne of our Sauiour
Christ Iesus, and his Saints, whose images you shall see in despight broken, or dragged in the durt, or
moulten and conuerted into other prophane vses; all religion trodden downe, and God himselfe (if it K
were possible) with violence and despaire driuen out of our hearts, if we stand not manfully vnto it as be-
commeth worthie champions. God is able with his little finger, if he so will, forthwith to destroy all the
Turks in the world; but seeing he hath committed vnto our right hands the defence of his name, he first
maketh proofe of our courage and valour, that finding the same faithfull and readie, he may strengthen
and defend it with his owne right hand. He neuer yet forsooke any faithfull or deuout man, neither will
our Sauiour Christ be wanting vnto you, if you be not wanting vnto your selues: in the power of his name,
which is aboue all names, he shall tread downe his rebellious enemies, and exalt the righteous that put their
trust in him. Moreouer, the causes that they and we combat for, are diuers, and our hopes much stronger:
They fight for their Prophet, a most prophane man, author of all impietie, for spoile and prey, for the destru-
ction of nations and countries, for other mens kingdomes, for the enlarging of their dominions and terri- L
tories, for worldly praise and glorie: But we contrariwise beare armes for the Sauiour of the world, for
our faith and religion, for the Christian common wealth, for our native countrey, for our wiues and chil-
dren, for our fortune and state; than which nothing can be more excellent, more commendable, or honou-
rable. What reward is laid vp for them in heauen which haue worthily protected or deliuered their coun-
trey, or laid downe their liues in defence of their faith and religion? Neither, hauing often proued, are we
ignorant, that God will neuer forsake them that honour, feare, and serue him. Whereby (fellow souldiers)
you may plainly perceiue, how farre your hopes are beyond theirs. Beleeue our Sauiour, promising vnto you
an eternall reward: and shew your fidelitie and valour vnto God and your countrey together. Wherefore,
seeing without the power of God we can doe nothing, before the signall of battell be giuen, I beseech you col-
lonels, captaines, and lieutenants, by your effectuall & Christian exhortations in your regiments & compa- M
nies, to encourage your souldiers, valiantly to fight the Lords battell; and for the present, euery man by ta-
king a little earth in his mouth, to prepare himselfe according to the necessitie of the time, as it were to the
receiuing of the Lords Supper: so hauing cleansed your soules, embrace you one another, plight your mutu-
all faith with your right hand and a kisse; & make a perpetuall couenant among your selues, none of you to
forsake one another in this holy battell, but for your religion & countrey valiantly to fight it out, euen vnto
the

A *the last man. And a little refreshing your selues with a short repast as you stand, vpon the signall giuen thrice calling aloud vpon the mightie name of Christ Iesus, fight with the like valour and courage so neere as you can, that he in the agonie of death fought for your redemption and libertie: which that you will willingly doe, I request and charge you this for our Sauiours sake, for the loue of our countrey, and for the faith you owe both to God and man. I also pray and beseech you, so to fight, as men resolued either to gaine a most glorious victorie, (whereof I doubt not) or else if it should otherwise chance, this day to purchase vnto your selues a blessed life in the kingdome of heauen: not to sup in hell with the Turks, but with the blessed wights in heauen: for Christ Iesus our Sauiour will be alwaies present with vs, who (beleeue me,*
B *& so hope) will this day not only deliuer vs out of the hands of the Turks, but to our immortall glorie lode vs with the rich spoiles of our enemies, and so in safetie bring all home againe with much ioy and triumph.*

The Bassa on the other side likewise encouraged his souldiers, putting them in remembrance of their former victories, exhorting them not to degenerate from their worthie ancestours and themselues, by whose great valour the glorie and empire of the Turks had beene so mightily increased; and vnto whom their great prophet *Mahomet*, the interpreter of the gods, had foretold the empire of the whole world to be by all the gods allotted; and had by diuine inspiration prophecied, that ancient and stately nation in time to become the terrour of the world, the scourge of the wicked, and commander of all nations. He farther declared vnto them what an increase of kingdomes they had got in that short time, since which they first passed ouer into
C EVROPE: and filled them with the hope of a great spoile; promising vnto them that should in the battell valiantly behaue themselues, not onely the spoile and prey, but whole villages, townes, and cities, and other great preferments, according as they should deserue. As for the victorie, considering the weake power of their enemies, and the great number of themselues, he assured them thereof, if they would but a while valiantly fight it out like men. In conclusion, he told them, that hauing ouercome *Huniades*, whom onely, as he confessed, he had found to be the most valiant and skilfull captaine of the Christians, nothing should afterward be able to stand in their way, or to hinder their farther conquests: and that if this day they should vtterly ouerthrow him, they should gaine the most honourable victorie that was euer yet got in EV-
ROPE. Wherefore he willed them aboue all things, in the battell to seeke after him; promi-
D sing vnto him that should kill him, a great reward, with most honourable preferments. Hauing thus sufficiently, as he thought, encouraged his Turks, he set forward with his armie in order of battell. His horsemen and footmen he diuided into two great wings, betwixt which marched the Ianizaries in a square battell, all men of approued valour: after whom followed the rereward: vnto the wings he had also ioyned certaine loose companies of light horsemen to begin the battell, and to flie about the enemies, and so as occasion should serue, either to charge or retire. *Huniades* likewise had placed in both wings two square battailions of men at armes, and with them certaine horsemen with crosse-bowes: before these wings he had also placed certaine troupes of light horsemen, to encounter the enemies: in the middest stood two square battailes of men at armes: and betwixt them a strong squadron of armed men, guarded
E behind with a conuenient number of pikemen and archers: both the wings he had compassed about with a multitude of carts and waggons, and they also well manned. So marching forward, and both armies being come within a quarter of a mile together, the signall of battell was on both sides giuen, and the battell begun. *Huniades* seeing the multitude of his enemies, cast his first battell into the forme of a wedge, the more easily to diuide them: and they on the other side in forme of a paire of sheeres, were readie to receiue him: where on both sides they encountered together with such furie and outcrie, as neuer was thing more terrible to be heard or seene. The Turks trusting vnto the multitude of their nimble light horsemen, first with their light staues, and afterward with their crooked Scimators fiercely assailed the Christians light horsemen, in which first encounter many fell on both sides. But the wedge battell of the Chri-
F stians could not of the Turks be broken, as consisting all of valiant expert souldiers, and they also strongly armed; who, doe the Turks what they could, with a great slaughter cut their armie in sunder, but not without a great fight, and some losse also vnto themselues. In the wings also the light horsemen for a while fought couragiously and with like hope: but the Turks with that kind of fight better acquainted than the Christians, and better appointed for that purpose, and exceeding in number also, put the Christian light horsemen to the worst, and enforced

A cruell battell betwixt Huniades and Abedin Bassa.

ced them to retire to the men at armes. Here began the fortune of the Turks to ſtay, where both G
parts deſperatly aſſailing the one the other, was made a moſt terrible fight, wherein moſt part of
the Turks light horſemen were ſlaine: for why, they were not able to abide the force of the men
at armes, although in compariſon of them, but few; but were with their lances & arming ſwords
ouerthrowne and ſlaine, no otherwiſe than if they had beene naked men: ſo that in both wings
the Turks began now to faint. But the battaile in both the wings yet wauering and the victorie
doubtfull, in the maine batailé was fought a moſt cruell fight: the Ianizaries with a ſtrong power
of men at armes, & certaine troupes of light horſemen, compaſſed about the men at armes that
ſtood (as we ſaid) in the maine battell of the Chriſtians, where the old Ianizaries with their croo-
ked Scimitaries, with great courage cut in ſunder the legs of the horſes of the men at armes; of H
whō many fell downe, & lying along vpon the ground, were made ſhorter by the head: as like-
wiſe on the other ſide, the Ianizaries whileſt they ſeeke the deſtruction of the men at armes, were
themſelues ouerborne & trodden vnder foot. Whereupon ſuch a ſlaughter was made, that the
bloud ran like riuers, whileſt they deſperatly fight with furious rage both on the one ſide and the
other. In this cruell fight moſt part of the Ianizaries were ſlaine, and many of the Chriſtian men
at armes alſo. The Baſſa now perceiuing the Hungarians to haue the better, both in the wings
and in the maine battell, and yet in hope that with long fight they would faint (although he ſaw
great ſlaughter of his men in euery place) came on with the rereward, & a number of other freſh
ſouldiers which he had left for the guarding of his baggage, all yet ſound men, in good hope ſo
to ouerwhelme the wearied Hungarians. It was now foure houres that this cruell fight had en- I
dured, when as the Baſſa began it afreſh: neither was this by him done without reaſon; for why,
he was afraid leſt if his men ſhould turne their backs and flie, the whole armie ſhould follow af-
ter: and therefore to make vſe of all the men he had, he brought on his rereward, in hope that
his enemies, now ſpent with long fight, would not longer endure a freſh charge. And the more
to encourage his men, he commanded them to compaſſe in the Hungarians round, and to diſ-
patch their wearied enemies, vainly boaſting, That it would be the laſt battell that euer the Hun-
garians would fight. On the other ſide, *Huniades* perceiuing the enemies purpoſe, ſuffered his
men to be in part enuironed, and by and by cauſed the waggoners with the armed carts & wag-
gons to thruſt in behind them, and ſo to compaſſe them in, diuided in part from the reſt, & after-
ward with freſh ſupplies renewed the battell with the enemie. The fight was great, and in euery K
place right terrible: and albeit that the ſlaughter of the Turks was in many places great, yet by
reaſon of their multitude they felt it not much, but fought yet ſtill moſt deſperately: vntill that
they in the right wing ſeeing themſelues compaſſed in behind with the waggons, & ſo frō them
charged with ſhot, darts, and other ſuch miſſiue weapons; ſtanding in doubt which way to turne
themſelues, and beſet with danger on euery ſide, began to faint, and fearing the danger behind
them, ſhrunke from the fight. On the other ſide, the Hungarians, now in good hope of victorie,
with great & cheerefull outcries, as men inſpired with freſh ſpirits, more furiouſly aſſailed their
fainting enemies afront, than before; encouraging thē alſo that aſſailed them behind in the wag-
gons, to approch them neerer: with which double danger the Turks hardly beſet, fought diſor-
derly, & doubting to be all incloſed round, firſt retired, and preſently after betooke themſelues L
The Turks flie. to plaine flight. But they which were alreadie ſhut in betwixt the waggons & them that fought
before thē, periſhed euery mothers ſon. They which fought in the left wing alſo, diſcoraged with
the flight of their fellowes, fled likewiſe: after whō the Hungarians fiercely followed. The Baſſa
himſelfe ſeeing both the wings of his battel put to flight, & his own battel ſore broken alſo, ſtruc-
ken with deſpaire fled, with certain cōpanies of the Ianizaries, which he had ſtill kept about him
againſt al euēts, for the ſafegard of his perſō: after whō followed alſo ſo many other of the Turks
as could; the reſt diſperſedly flying thorow the woods, foreſts, & moūtains, either there periſhed
with hunger, or falling into the hands of the Valachians, were by thē ſlaine. Of ſo great an armie
as the Baſſa brought into TRANSILVANIA, ſcarce the one halfe returned again ouer DANVBIVS.
It is reported by ſome that were in that battell, that if *Huniades* hauing thē in chace, had purſued M
thē vnto DANVBIVS, ſcarcely one man of thē had eſcaped ouer the riuer. But he contented with
ſo great a victorie, & to haue driuen his enemies out of the field, purſued thē not far: but entring
into their camp, with the ſpoile therof greatly enriched both himſelfe & his ſouldiers. Beſide the
great multitude of the Turks here ſlain, 5000 more were takē priſoners, & 100 of their enſignes.
Long it were to rehearſe and reckon vp the rich ſpoile there taken, the gilt armour, and goodly
furniture,

A furniture, both of men and horses, beside the rich pauilions and tents there standing. In briefe, the wealth there found, was so great, as that there was no man in *Huniades* armie, which was not thereby for euer enriched. *Huniades* for this so great a victorie, and for his countrey, deliuered from so great a feare, caused generall praiers with thanksgiuing, for the space of three dayes, to be made in all churches of those three prouinces, vnto whom that danger was threatened; and at VASCAPE, where the battell was fought, hanged vp certaine of the Turks ensignes, as trophees of the victorie there gotten. This was the famous battell of VASCAPE, wherein *Huniades* got the greatest victorie that euer any Christian Prince before that time obtained against the Turkish Kings. The fields thereabouts lay couered with the dead bodies of the slaine Turks,
B whose carrion carkasses so infected the aire, that many of the better sort of the inhabitants of the country were glad for a season to leaue their dwellings, and to get them further off, for feare of infection. Afterwards he in great triumph came to BVDA, and there presented vnto King *Vladislaus* the enemies ensignes, with such a part of the spoile, as might both well declare the greatnesse of the victorie, and beseeme the greatnesse of so great a Prince, which the King thankfully receiued, highly commending his great valour, the fame whereof had in short time filled euery corner of EVROPE.

Amurath a little before this great ouerthrow of his armie in TRANSILVANIA, assuring himselfe of the victorie, had sent a proud embassage vnto King *Vladislaus* into HVNGARIE, offering him peace, vpon condition, That he should deliuer vnto him the strong citie of BEL-
C GRADE, or else yeeld to pay him a yeerely tribute: vnto which, vpon the first report of the victorie, answere was giuen by the King, answerable to the proud demand, That according to the issue of matters in TRANSILVANIA, he would shortly in person himselfe come and giue him farther answere. With which short answere the proud embassadours were dismissed and gone, a little before the comming of *Huniades* to BVDA.

How much this late ouerthrow grieued the great King *Amurath*, *Vladislaus* was not ignorant; either of his power and desire of reuenge, as sufficiently warned thereof by the worthie *Huniades*: for the withstanding whereof, he thought it good not to be vnprouided. Wherefore calling together the states of his kingdome, and with them *Iulian* the Cardinall of *S. Angel*, the Popes Legate; at such time as they were all assembled, he propounded vnto them the greatnesse of the
D danger threatened by the angrie Turke, leauing it vnto their graue consideration, to determine how the same were by strong hand and plaine force, or otherwise to be auerted. In which most honourable assemblie, *Iulian* the Cardinall, of purpose sent thither by Pope *Vrbane* to stirre vp the Hungarians against the Turks, being requested by the King to deliuer his opinion first, spake vnto them as followeth:

The effectuall speech of Iulian the Popes legate in the parliament to perswade the war.

Since the time that the Turkish pestilence began to rage in EVROPE, *no newes was euer more welcome vnto the great Bishop, vnto the Apostolicall Senate, and other Princes of* ITALIE *(most mightie King, and you other most worthie Princes) than when it was told them, That* Vladislaus, *King of*
E POLONIA, *was by you also chosen King of* HVNGARIE. *For a fitter gouernour of the Hungarian state, and leader of their power, could not the Hungarians any where haue found: as he in whom iustice, religion, wisedome, valour, and martiall skill, doth so abound, that he seemeth rather for the good of this kingdome by God sent from heauen, than here in earth chosen by men. By this happie and fortunate choice, the minds also of all the Italians, which before lay heauie and discouraged, were lightened and reuiued: and therefore, that this choice might be vnto the Christian common-weale both glorious and fortunate, they made their solemne vowes and praiers. At such time as the most holy Senate vnderstood of the ciuill discord of this kingdome, and the danger of the Turks fast by; it sent me hither to deale with you for the appeasing of those troubles and repressing of that mischiefe (as you haue oftentimes heard mee*
F *say.) The kingdome is by your force and valour, by my mediation, and the death of the Queene, well pacified: but yet the other remaineth full of honour, full of profit, full of safetie, glorie, and immortalitie, best fitting* Vladislaus *conduct and fortune, and the valour of the Hungarians. The Turkish tyrannie and their proud command (worthie Princes) is to be represt: yea their seruile yoke, hanging euen now ouer our necks, is to be shaken off, and to be driuen away. What you are to dare to doe, the valour and fortune of* Huniades *foretelleth you: the fortune said I of* Huniades, *nay the fortune of the Christian common-weale, and present mercie of our blessed Sauiour, which suffereth his people to be vp and downe tossed, but not quite drowned. If so great a armie of the enemies was vanquished and put*

to

to slight by the power of one of thy captaines, and that but small: what is to be hoped of thee (most mightie King) if thou shalt lead forth thine armies thy selfe in person, vnder thine owne conduct, and the protection of Christ Iesus? The eyes of all Christian Princes are cast vpon thee, vpon the Hungarian and Poloman forces; vpon thee haue they reposed all their hopes, they all expect that thou shouldest be the reuenger of the Barbarian crueltie, the defender of the faith, and protector of EVROPE: *and that is it for which the Pope doth with his letters daily solicite and importune you. And albeit, that the common cause and quarrell of the Christian religion require it, yet doth the necessitie of* HVNGARIE *and* POLONIA *no lesse enforce it: of which, the one is most miserably and daily vexed with the Turks forces and furie out of* SERVIA *and* DALMATIA; *and the other out of* MOLDAVIA *and* VALACHIA. *Now if any there be, whom neither the zeale of religion, the necessitie of the cause, the hope of immortall fame and glorie, can moue, let their owne safetie, the present seruitude of their wiues and children, the safegard of their wealth and substance, the lawfull reuenge of the wrongs done them, stirre them vp to take in hand this sacred expedition. So fit an opportunitie is now giuen vnto you, that at one and the selfe-same time you may set your bodies in perpetuall safetie and happinesse, your soules in quietnesse and rest, and vnto both giue eternall glorie and happinesse. You lacke not (worthie captaines) money, the sinewes of the warre, which shall be brought vnto you from all parts of the Christian common-wealth, not lustie and courageous souldiers, not policie, not fortune, not the propitious heauenly powers, which haue made choice of you for the defence of the true faith and religion: you want nothing (worthie Princes) but will. It is an expedition necessarie, religious, profitable, and honourable: wherein are propounded most ample rewards both in this life, and in the life to come. Wherefore (most mightie Prince, and you right worthie Princes all) I pray and beseech you by the faith of Christ Iesus, by the loue of your children, by the health of your kingdome, and deliuerance from your present destruction, with valiant courage, and one consent to take this sacred warre in hand, and so thereby to enroll your names in the eternall booke of fame. And sith that you are to goe, not so much to a worldly as a spirituall warre, against the enemies of Christ and his truth, take vp your armes with such zeale, courage, and cheerefulnesse, as the expectation and hope of men, as your valour, the present danger, and the mercies of God towards you, seeme of right to require.*

The pitifull complaint of the Despot, of the crueltie of the Turks, perswading the Hungarians to take the way against them in hand.

The Legate hauing made an end, forthwith ensued the miserable supplication and teares of the Despot, perswading them, of the necessitie of that expedition to be taken in hand, declaring vnto them the crueltie of the Turks, their torments and strange tortures, his sonnes depriued of their sight, and spoiled of their genitoires, many halfe mangled, and moe cut in sunder with sawes; some slaine quicke, and other buried aliue, with many other strange kinds of death, such as would abhorre any Christian eares to heare. And warning the Hungarians, by his example to beware how much they had need to looke to themselues, told them, That they were but by the riuer SAVVS diuided from the Turks; which in Summer was oftentimes to be waded ouer, and in Winter hard frozen, and so to be passed: that the countrey beyond DANVBIVS lay all open vpon them; and that he, sometime the rich King of SERVIA, was now driuen into exile by the power of the Turke, depriued of his kingdome, of his children, shamefully disgraced, spoiled of his wealth and fortune, glad to flie from place to place, and yet not able to finde any safe place to rest in. First he fled (as he said) to RAGVSIVM, where by and by he was sought after, and endangered by the Turks: then into HVNGARIE, which was also forthwith by them on euery side infested; and whereof the Barbarian King now asked tribute, to haue some colour for the inuasion thereof: which dreadfull enemie was not farre off from it, but still houered euen ouer it: as well witnessed VALACHIA and TRANSILVANIA, two of the greatest and richest prouinces of the Hungarian kingdome; which had not the valour of *Huniades*, the fortune of the common-weale, and aboue all, the mercie of God, deliuered out of the hands of this filthie nation, the state of HVNGARIE had now beene vtterly forlorne. The euents of warre (he said) were diuers, fortune vncertaine, and that God would not euery day be tempted. Wherefore with many teares abundantly running downe his aged face, he besought King *Vladislaus* and the rest, not to let slip this faire occasion, neither by cowardise or negligence to breake off the course of their good fortune and victorie: but to make choice rather to become reuengers of other mens harmes than of their owne, and to satisfie the good opinion the world had conceiued of them. He was (as he said) a sufficient example to all men. Besides that, he offred a great summe of mony himselfe towards the defraying of the charges of the war, assuring them also of great supplies both of men & money from diuers other Christian

A Christian Princes. Which opinion of the Legat and Despots, being generally liked and approued, a decree was made by the whole court of parlament there assembled, That the King should himselfe in person with all speed possible entertaine that honourable warre. So that though it were now vpon the approch of winter, yet were men taken vp in euery place, and embassadors sent vnto the Emperour, and the other neighbour Princes, to pray of them aid against the common enemie. Who for the most part excused themselues by their owne particular affaires, but sent no aid at all. Neuertheless many deuout Christians both out of FRANCE and GERMANIE, for the zeale they bare vnto Christ and the Christian religion, forsaking wife and children, and whatsoeuer they had else, came and worthily serued vpon their owne charge. The Spring being
B come, and supplications made in all places for the prosperous successe of that religious warre, King *Vladislaus* the first of May set forward from BVDA, where passing the riuer DANVBIVS, and marching faire and softly, and comming to the riuer TIBISCVS, he there staied three dayes for the comming of his armie. Departing thence, and marching on alongst the side of DANVBIVS, vntill he came within the sight of BVLGARIA, he there at a place called COBIS, ouer against SYNDEROVIA, passed ouer DANVBIVS with his armie, which was now growne very great: and so marched directly to SOPHIA situate about six daies march from DANVBIVS, in the frontiers of BVLGARIA, so called of a most sumptuous and magnificent temple there built by *Iustinian* the great Emperour. Which citie being then old and ruinous, and but badly fortified, was ea-
Sophia taken.
sily taken; and afterward for that it was not well to be holden, was by the Kings commande-
C ment burnt, as were all the other countrey townes and villages thereabouts, to the terrour of the rest. Marching thence, he came vnto the riuer MORAVA, and there encamped: where the plaine countrey easily riseth and falleth in manner of the sea when it is moued with a little wind. Here fiue hundred light horsemen, being sent ouer the riuer, not so much to seeke after prey, as to view the countrey which way the armie might most safely and easily passe, hapned vpon the Turks scouts, of whom they tooke foure: and vnderstanding by them, that two thousand of the Turks were comming at hand, knowing themselues too weake to encounter them, they retired backe againe with all speed they could vnto the riuer: where many of them, for feare, leapt headlong from the high and broken bankes, and so perished in the deepe; the rest terrified with the misfortune of their fellowes, stood still doubtfully expecting what should become of them-
D selues. Beyond the riuer was another hill, vpon the top whereof the King with a great number of horsemen were hunting: whom the Turks a farre off descrying, and doubting to fall into some ambush, of purpose laid for them betwixt them and the riuer, without comming on further, retired. Which they that before fearfully staied on the farre side of the riuer perceiuing, and now encouraged by the comming of the King downe to the riuer, followed a while after, so to increase their feare; and so hauing well feared one another, retired on both sides worse afraid than hurt. The next day the King passed ouer the riuer, sending out his scouts to see if all were cleare before him: by whom he was aduertised that the Turks were at hand, hauing placed certaine ambushes fast by, expecting but a fit time to set vpon him. Whereupon entring into counsell with his best and most expert captaines, what were best to be done; it was resolued vp-
E on, that *Huniades* the next night with ten thousand choice horsemen, should vpon the sudden set vpon the enemie, then fearing nothing lesse. Who conducted by the espials, was in the first watch of the night brought very neere vnto them. The Moone by chance as fauouring his great attempt, did then shine out, so that he might well discerne how the enemie lay encamped, and which way for to charge them to his most aduantage; which was by the same way they were most like to flie, if they should be put to the worst: vnto which place he led his men, and there with a most hideous outcrie, entred the campe, as then for the most part buried in sleepe and securitie: when as the Turks awaked with the sudden noise as it were out of a dead sleepe, and dismaied with the horrour of the crie, began to betake them some to their weapons, some to their heeles. Of whom such as fled, lighting vpon the enemies troupes standing in their way, ran
F as fast backe againe: the other scarce yet well awake, and ouercome with feare, and now scarcely themselues, had much adoe to make themselues readie to fight. *Huniades* in the meane time riding vp and downe amongst his men, cheered them vp, still crying out and calling vpon them, couragiously to assaile their sleepie, naked, and fearefull enemies, and not to let slip so faire an occasion and so notable a victorie now alreadie in their hands. At the first encounter the Turks rather made a stirre than fought; but after that they heard that *Huniades* was there, as men dis-

Huniades with ten thousand horsemen assaileth the Turks by night.

maied with his name, they turned their backs and fled, finding which way soeuer they tooke, G
their fellowes halfe dead or wounded: yea such a confusion was raised amongst them, with the greatnesse of the sudden feare, that thrusting together, with an inconsiderate desire of flight, they trod one another vnder foot, and thrust themselues vpon one anothers weapons: the greatest part of them driuen headlong into the thickets, and other straits, and not able in time to get out thence, were there by the victorious enemie fiercely pursuing of them, slaine. All that night the fearefull Turks were with great slaughter held in chace: but as soone as it was day, the rest that remained of them, ran also the same fortune with their fellowes. A farre greater slaughter was there made, than a man would thinke that so few men could haue made, when as but with ten thousand horse, thirtie thousand Turks were in one night slaine, and foure thousand taken, H
with a number of their ensignes. Of *Huniades* his men were not many lost, for the greatnesse of the slaughter: most report not aboue fiue hundred; for few of them found any enemie to resist them. There was taken all the spoile of a most rich campe, the enemie hauing caried with them nothing out of it. *Huniades* hauing in so short time gained so notable a victorie, and enriched his armie, returned to the King in great triumph; neither was that day more ioyfull vnto these victorious souldiers, than vnto the rest of the armie, who most ioyfully expected their returne. The King and the Despot, hearing of the approch of *Huniades* from the slaughter of the Turks, with the great applause and ioyfull acclamation of the other legions went to meet him three miles: and at such time as at their first meeting *Huniades* was about to haue lighted to haue done him honour, he would in no case suffer him so to doe, but taking him by the right hand, ioyed I
with him for the victorie, thanking God in the hearing of the whole armie, that he of his mercie had giuen him such a captaine, as without enuie in all mens iudgements was worthie to rule the Romane empire. In briefe, he shewed how much his countrey, his kingdome, yea the Christian common-weale was bound and indebted vnto him, gaue him his due praises, exhorting all others to imitate his glorie: the like honour did also all the rest of the nobilitie vnto him. As for the common souldiers, they could not be satisfied with beholding of him, but embracing one another, as if they would haue died one in anothers armes, welcommed their victorious friends. So with ioy ioyning their forces together, and sending the rich spoile of the enemie, with the prisoners chained together in long rankes, before them; the King and *Huniades* in great triumph returned into the campe, where they caused generall praiers, with thanksgiuing vnto almightie K
God for so great a victorie, to be made thorowout the armie.

The meeting of Vladislaus and Huniades after the victorie.

The Legate *Iulian*, Generall of the voluntarie Christians, which for deuotion serued of their owne charge, after so great a victorie most earnestly perswaded the King & the rest of the great commanders of the armie to prosecute their good fortune, and in God his so great fauour not to loiter, but daily to march forward, and to take in the rest of Bvlgaria. Now had *Huniades* by his espials learned, that from Sophia it was but three dayes iourney to Philippopolis, a great citie of Thracia; and the like distance from thence to Hadrianople, the chiefe seat of the Turkish tyrant; and as much more to Constantinople. The onely difficultie was, how to passe the great and rough mountaine Hæmvs, which running a maruellous way in length, euen vnto the Euxine sea, and mating almost the skie, diuideth the countries of Bvlgaria and Servia, from Macedonia and Thrace: and for the great height and roughnesse L
thereof, is not to be passed ouer but in two places; the one made by the great Emperour *Traian* and the Romanes, where as yet is to be seene a mightie strong gate built of great square stone, whereby the passage that way was opened or shut at the pleasure of them that had the keeping thereof: the other neere vnto a little riuer, which the Bulgarians now call Saltiza. By either of these waies if he should find them open, *Huniades*, vnto whom the King had committed both the leading and the conduct of the armie, purposed to enter. Wherfore marching forward, they tooke all such towns of Bvlgaria as stood in their way; some by force, some by composition: wherin was no small helpe, the conformitie of the Christian religion, the horrible crueltie of the Turks, and great affinitie of language, the most effectuall meanes to win the loue of strangers: M
For the Polonians and the Bulgarians, both descended of the Sclauonians, and vsing the same language, the Polonian horsemen came to no towne, but it presently yeelded. But being come vnto the mountaine Hæmvs, to haue entered into Thracia, the Winter weather being now very cold, they learned by their espials, that the aforesaid passages were both fast shut vp with great stones, timber, and such other like matter, so strongly, as that they were very hardly

to

A to be forced. Wherefore *Huniades* leauing the straighter way made by the hand of man (which beside the former fortification at the great gate, the Turks had in many places, with abundance of water poured downe the steepe hill in the night, and hard frozen with the coldnesse of the weather, made so slipperie, as that it was not possible either for man or beast there to stand, or to get vp that way) vpon Christmas euen came to the other, by which the riuer Saltiza runneth, the which he found likewise shut. Here they met with many inconueniences: first, the difficultie of the passage, which old *Amurath* had not without great reason shut vp, and there placed strong garrisons, so at ease & without danger of battaile (so often by his Bassaes vnfortunatly proued) to defend his kingdome in MACEDONIA and THRACIA from the inuasion of the Hungari-
B ans, whom now of all nations he most dreaded. Beside that, in the armie was such want of all things, as that the souldiers were readie to forsake their ensignes, and to rise vp in a generall mutinie: for the countrey neere vnto the mountaine HEMVS, rising high with broken rockes and inaccessible places, was altogether barren, & victuals failing in the camp, they were glad to liue with a little wheat & flesh boiled together, and that so sparingly, as that the souldiers began now generally to grow weake & faint. Besides that, the Winter was exceeding cold, and the frost so great, that many times they could not goe out of their tents to seeke for forrage or water. So that the armie enforced with hunger & cold, and the difficultie of the passage, began to retire, & had now vndoubtedly beene dissolued, had it not been for the often and earnest persuasions of *Huniades*: for he daily told them, that the greatest difficulties were alreadie past, that that which re-
C mained, was with their wonted valour and courage to be endured, whereunto nothing was high or difficult: that they should forthwith come into the borders of THRACIA, where they should find plentie of all things: that they were now come so farre, that if they would goe back againe, they should in those wast countries, through which they were to passe, find greater difficulties and dangers than in going forward: that these straights once opened, remained no more trauell, but cheerefully to fall to the spoile of a most rich & pleasant country. They were not (as he said) to stay in the middest of their fortunes, for that it was not alwaies permanent: and for that the contempt of God his fauours, caused them to be oftentimes taken from vs: all that was yet done (hee said) was nothing, if they proceeded not farther: for that whatsoeuer they had alreadie woon, was easily by the enemie to be recouered; except that those which yet remained (for that
D most part of them, as he said, were slaine with their houses burnt ouer their heads) were driuen out of THRACIA and MACEDONIA, and so quite out of EVROPE. So whilest the souldiers heard *Huniades* speake, euery man was well encouraged: but when they remembred the miseries wherewith they were enuironed, they cursed all the rash attempts of ambitious princes. In the meane time newes was brought by the scouts, that the Turkes were comming after them: but then began they to reioice, as deeming it much more honor, manfully to die in battell, than to starue with hunger and cold. Against these Turks was *Huniades* sent, with certaine troups of horsemen: who encountring with them, easily inforced them with losse to retire. Eight times he encountred them (as the souldiers there present reported) and as often put them to flight. In reti-
ring back frō the impregnable mountaine, the king with the greatest part of the armie went be-
E fore; after whom followed *Huniades* and the Despot, a good daies march: when the Turks that kept the passage vpon the mountaine, vnderstanding of their returne, followed them downe the hill, in good hope to be of thē well reuenged, before they should get out of BVLGARIA. *Carambey* the Bassa of ROMANIA, & brother to *Caly-Bassa* (a man of all others in greatest fauor with *Amurath*, & his brother in law, as hauing married his sister) was generall of this armie, and by him appointed for the keeping of these straits; with expresse charge, vpon no occasion whatsoeuer, although it made shew of neuer so assured a victorie, to fight with the enemie: for he thought it victorie ynough, without any losse to haue kept his enemies out of THRACIA. Which the old kings command, *Carambey* for all that neglected, in good hope by a notable victory easily to answer the contempt of that he was commanded. The Christian armie descending downe the
F broken mountains was come to a great mountain, which the Bulgarians call CVNOBIZA, and part of the mountain HEMVS: at whose heeles followed *Carambey*, with his Turks, still houering ouer their heads, to take them at some aduantage: whom the Christians beholding, could not by their captaines be staied, but that they would many times by companies flie forth vpon them, and desperatly fight with them in places of great disaduantage, saying, That they had rather die in fight like men, then to starue with hunger and cold. Here *Carambey*, being himselfe a man of

The Hungarians inforced with the difficultie of the passage of the mountaine Hemus, retire.

great courage,and deſirous of honour,and by the raſhneſſe of his enemies allured to fight; and withall, beſide the aduantage of the ground, perceiuing himſelfe to exceed his enemies both in ſtrength and number of men, could not be ſtaied but would needs giue battaile, with ſuch a deſire. as if he had been alreadie aſſured of the victorie. *Huniades* and the Deſpot had before perceiued that the Turks,prouoked with the brauing of their men,would aſſuredly fall vpon them, and were therefore much troubled with the abſence of the king, who(as is beforeſaid)was gone a dayes march before they ſaw they could neither ſhun battaile, neither if they could haue ſo done, would their deſperat ſouldiers be ſtayed, for the deſire they had to fight. Yet ſeeing *Carambey* comming down vpon them,they put themſelues(though vnwillingly)in beſt order they could to receiue him; perſwading their ſouldiers not raſhly in furie to run vpon their enemies, as deſperat men prodigall of their liues,but to keepe their rankes,and orderly to fight,and ſo like valiant men to carie away the victorie, or to leaue vnto their enemies a bloodie remembrance thereof. Now had *Carambey* ſent his horſemen down the hill,and the battaile was begun,where both the armies met together with great furie,and a cruel fight was made both at the foot of the hill,and amongſt the hils and vallies alſo: in which hard encounter many were ſlaine,as well on the one ſide as the other. The Polonian men at armes(whom the king but a little before had left with *Huniades* againſt all euents)with the Hungarian light horſemen (of whom the Deſpot had the leading) fought ſo that day,as if they had ſought for nothing more but how honourably to die.And the Turks for a ſpace ſtood hard to it,ſo that many were there ſlaine: yet at length finding themſelues hardly laied to,as by deſperat men,reſolued to ſell their liues deere,they began to faint and to giue ground: when as *Carambey* comming in behind them with new ſupplies, rated the cowardly,ſtayed them that were flying,and ſometime with rough ſpeeches,ſometime with faire perſwaſion, encouraged the wauering, and reſtored the battaile, before almoſt quite loſt. Neither did *Huniades* and the Deſpot ceſſe beſtirre them,but as ſoone as they perceiued the enemie a little to faint, by and by cried out Victorie; with cheerefull ſpeech encouraging their men, ſtill calling vpon them, To keepe their rankes ſtrong, and to vrge their preſent good fortune,aſſuring themſelues,that they fought againſt thoſe infidels, vnder the fauour and protection of the Almightie. And forthwith ſent certaine companies of footmen, who climbing vp the hill,amongſt the buſhes,with their halfe pikes and bore-ſpeares paunched the Turks horſes as they paſſed by them. Theſe looſe companies did the Turks horſemen much harme, and here began their battaile to decline; they which were comming downe, for feare of the danger retiring backe againe vnto them that were left aboue, for the keeping of the ſtraits. And the bolder ſort of them, which were come downe into the valleyes, compaſſed about with the men at armes,hardly recouered the riſing of the hill. *Carambey* in the meane while crying out behind them, one while called backe them that fled, another while releeued them that fainted, and to the vttermoſt of his power reſtoring the battaile, performed all the parts both of a valiant ſouldier and worthie captaine, courageouſly fighting himſelfe in the thickeſt of his enemies, and by his owne valour ſtaied for a time the loſt battaile. At length performing his laſt endeuour, deceiued by the ſnow,he fell into a bogge,where ſticking faſt with his horſe,and not able to helpe himſelfe, hee was taken priſoner by a common ſouldier. The reſt that eſcaped out of this bloodie battaile,retired themſelues vnto them that were left aboue vpon the mountaine for the defence of the paſſage.After whom the Chriſtians followed,through the vntract and rough places, vntill that hindered of their farther purſuit by the approch of the night, and the abruptneſſe of the way, they were glad to ſound a retrait, and ſo retired vnto the campe. Many other great men were taken beſide *Carambey*, but many moe ſlaine in the battaile, and moſt of all in the flight; few eſcaped,but ſuch as fled backe againe vp into the mountaines. In the retrait *Huniades* ſeeing ſo gallant a man as was *Carambey* (though to him altogether vnknowne) vnworthily bound, and led priſoner by a common ſouldier, asked the ſouldier, if he would ſell his priſoner? who ſaid,he would; and asked for him ten duckats(a poore price for ſo great a man:) vnto whom *Huniades* commaunded to be giuen four hundred,and ſo ſent him to his tent,comforting of him vp with cheereful words,and willing that he ſhould be well vſed. The Deſpot the ſame night comming to *Huniades* his tent,to conferre with him about the remainder of the war, and ſeeing ſo braue a man ſtanding among the reſt by the fire ſide,began to talke with him in the Turkiſh language, whereof he had ſome knowledge, by reaſon of the neereneſſe of the nation, and ſuch matters as he had ſometimes to do with them;and hauing ſome geſſe by his talke what he

A great battell betwixt Huniades & the Baſſa Carambey.

The Turks ouerthrowne, and Carambey taken priſoner.

G H I K L M

A he was, and pitying his eſtate, asked *Huniades*, how he would ranſome him? who ſaid, that he coſt him foure hundred duckats, but that he valued him at fortie thouſand, which the Deſpot offered to pay him. Thus by the ſtrange change of fortune was *Carambey*, of late ſo great a commander, and ſo neere allied vnto the great Turke, valued and prized twice in one day by his enemies, as a mirrour of the vncertaintie of worldly bliſſe & felicitie. The Polonians report ſomewhat otherwiſe of this battell, as that *Vladiſlaus* ſhould himſelfe therein be preſent, and the chiefe that therein commanded: howbeit the Hungarian writers, whoſe credit herein we follow, report it as before, not to haue beene fought vnder the good fortune of the King then abſent, but vnder the leading of *Huniades* and the Deſpot.

B Out of this battell (or as ſome others report, a little before out of the battell of MORAVA) fled the great captaine *George Caſtriot*, otherwiſe of the Turks called *Scanderbeg*, now ſeeking to deliuer both himſelfe, and his natiue countrey of EPIRVS out of the thraldome of the Turks, as preſently after he did: whoſe vnwonted flight, not a little terrified the reſt of the Turks armie, and much furthered the Chriſtians victorie, whoſe proceedings he alwaies ſecretly fauoured: hauing (as it was thought) ſecret intelligence with the great captaine *Huniades*, who not without inſtructions from him (as ſome ſay) gaue that great ouerthrow vnto the Turks at MORAVA. But of him and his worthie acts done for the deliuerance and defence of his countrey, more ſhall be ſaid hereafter. *Scanderbeg reuolteth from the Turks.*

Shortly after this great ouerthrow and diſcomfiture of the Turks, the two great captaines C *Huniades*, and the Deſpot, together with the King, conſulted for the remouing of the Turks garriſons left aboue for the keeping of the ſtrait paſſages of the mountaine, and the proſecution of the war. Which *Vladiſlaus* (conſidering the difficultie of the matter, and his ſouldiers neceſſitie) thought it not good further to proſecute, but forthwith to returne. But *Huniades* and the Deſpot, the one thirſting after honour, and the other in no leſſe hope, by the good ſucceſſe of this warre, to recouer againe his loſt kingdome, ſaid, That the Turks were in any caſe to be remoued, the paſſage opened, and the ſparks that yet remained, for feare of raiſing a greater fire, extinguiſhed: oppoſing againſt the difficultie by the King alleaged, the inuincible courage of his ſouldiers, whereunto they ſaid nothing was impoſſible or difficult. Vnto which opinion the King alſo (leſt he ſhould ſeeme to diſtruſt the valour of his captaines or ſouldiers) eaſily yeelded, and ſo com-

D manded on God his name to ſet forward. The firſt that mounted the hill was the King his battell, which by the roughneſſe and abruptneſſe of the mountaine hindered, oftentimes ſtaied. But *Huniades* ſtil caried with an earneſt deſire to proſecute the victorie, and leauing nothing vnattempted, in ſearching about found a crooked turning way, whereby he with his men more eaſily & readily got vp to the top of the mountaine euen with their enemies, vndeſcried or moleſted, by reaſon of the broken couert of the place: from whence they were in good hope eaſily to haue come vnto their enemies. But being come vp to the place they deſired, they found ſuch a deepe and wide gaping of the rocke, betwixt them and the enemie, as was neither to be paſſed, or filled vp: yet being come very neere, they attempted by croſbow ſhot, and great ſtones caſt out of ſlings, and other ſuch engines, to haue remoued the Turks from their places: who were *Vladiſlaus ſeeketh in vaine to open the paſſage of the mountain Hemus.*

E therewith and with their vnexpected approch, at the firſt ſo greatly both annoied and diſcomfited, that they were almoſt at the point to haue forſaken the paſſage, had not *Alis Beg* (but the night before choſen for their Generall in ſtead of *Carambey*) encouraged them and taught them, how by ſhrowding themſelues vnder the broken rocks, & parapets with tumultarie labour caſt vp, to ſaue themſelues from the ſhot of their enemies. In the meane time alſo, *Huniades* by another more high & ſteepe way, whereby the enemie was alſo to be approched, had ſent vp other companies of ſouldiers: who fighting at too much diſaduantage, were by the Turks eaſily reiected. So at length ſeeing the vaine attempt giuen by himſelfe vpon the top of the hill: and the deſperate danger of the other in climing the inacceſſible mountaine, where one might keepe downe an hundred, deſpairing to inforce the enemie, he by the Kings command, cauſed a re-

F trait to be ſounded, and ſo againe retired downe the mountaine, to the great reioycing of the Turks. The next day the winter cold raging, and wants in the armie ſtill more and more increaſing, the King with the reſt of the great commanders entred into conſultation for the haſting of their returne out of that rough and barren countrey, into places of greater plentie, before the armie were brought to any greater extremitie. Whereunto *Huniades* (giuing place vnto neceſſitie, which alwaies ſuffereth not to be regarded that is ſeemely) now eaſily yeelded: onely the

Deſpot ſpake againſt it, blaming them, that hauing taken the Generall, and put their enemies to flight, and victorie now as it were in their hands, they would not proſecute the ſmall remainder of the warre, but cowardly turne their backs vnto their vanquiſhed enemies: promiſing that he himſelfe would find money enough for the prouiding of all things needfull for the releefe of the armie. So ſaid the Popes Legat alſo. But foraſmuch as the wants in the armie were great, and the ſouldiers preſently pinched with hunger and cold, they could with no hope of any profit, were it neuer ſo great, be perſwaded to ſtay; openly crying out, that it was not their captaines and lieutenants, which wanted nothing, but them the poore ſouldiers that ſtarued for hunger: as for the Deſpot, that he in hope of recouering of his kingdome, perſwaded things impoſſible, and no way to be performed, neither to be any thing moued with the death of their men or cattell. Need (they ſaid) could not be vanquiſhed: but that when Winter was paſt, they would willingly returne againe vnto the ſacred warre: In the meane time, Winter raging, and hunger commanding, let vs giue ouer (ſaid they) and depart into more fruitfull places, there to refreſh our bodies, ſpent with labour, cold, and hunger. For which reaſons, the King ſending before his baggage, retired againe by the ſame way he came. Which the Turks from aboue beholding, and ſtrengthened with new ſupplies, followed after them, as after men that had fled: oftentimes aſſailing them in the rereward, and ſetting vpon them ſometimes on the one ſide, ſometimes on the other, with often skirmiſhes both did and receiued much harme. Whoſe manner of fight was, to retire when they were themſelues charged, and preſently by great troupes to charge againe their enemies, their backs once turned to them; and ſo troubled the armie, that it was conſtrained oftentimes to ſtay; beſides that, loaded with the rich ſpoile of the enemie, and much baggage, it could not of it ſelfe make any great haſte. Now was it by the way come into a great thicke wood, full of deepe bogs and water-courſes, hard to be paſſed thorow: where the reſt of the armie going before, in the rereward, at the entrance of the wood, were left certaine ſtrong companies of men at armes, as a wall againſt the purſuing enemies; whom the Turks with their readie light horſemen fiercely charged: where betwixt them, in the wood, was fought a great fight, and a great tumult raiſed: vnto the noiſe whereof, they which marched before haſtily returning, in skirmiſhing, many of them fell into thoſe deepe bogs and queachie places, out of which they could hardly rid themſelues againe. Beſides that, there were many crooked and troubleſome turnings and windings, with ſudden deſcents, ſo ſteepe, as that in going downe the ſame, their horſes came tumbling heeles ouer head, and there lay ouerthrowne, together with their riders: in ſuch ſort, as that to auoid theſe difficulties, they were oftentimes enforced to fight on foot. In which troubleſome skirmiſh, about foureſcore of the men at armes were loſt; but of the Turks, beſide them which were ſlaine, were taken an hundred and ſeuentie, all whom *Huniades* cauſed to be preſently ſlaine. In this wood the Chriſtians were more troubled with the difficulties of the place, than the enemies aſſaults. Wherefore wants daily more and more increaſing in the armie, which by reaſon of the multitude of their cariages, abundance of their baggage, and often aſſaults of the Turks, was able to make no way: the King for feare his armie ſhould in ſo long and ſlow a march thorow thoſe troubleſome & barren countries, be conſumed with hunger and other wants, cauſed all the cariages and baggage to be brought into the middeſt of the armie, and of it, all ſuch things as ſerued rather for burthen than vſe, to be there burnt: and the armes as well of ſuch ſouldiers as he had loſt, as of the enemie, to be buried in the ground, and all the weake beaſts that ſerued for burthen, to be killed. So the armie well diſcharged of ſuch vnprofitable burthens, marched much more ſpeedily, neither was ſo much ſubiect vnto the aſſaults of the Turks, as before. And ſo at length by long iournies, *Vladiſlaus* with his armie arriued at Belgrade, where he was of his ſubiects honourably receiued. And hauing there ſtaied certaine dayes, and well refreſhed his armie, departing thence, and paſſing the riuer Savus, came to the royall citie of Buda: where he was of all his ſubiects ioyfully receiued alſo. The Legat and *Huniades* going on his right hand, and the Deſpot on the left: after whom followed other colonels, captaines, and lieutenants, with their companies; who at the firſt meeting with the citizens, more than a mile out of the citie, in token of their mutuall ioy, gaue together ſuch ioyfull acclamations and outcries, as that the heauens ſeemed to reſound, and the earth to ſhake with the noiſe thereof. Before the King, at his comming vnto the citie, went a long companie of the notable Turks captiues; and next before him, *Carambey*, bound in chaines, vpon whom all mens eyes were fixed. With them were alſo caried the enemies enſignes, and ſuch

The Hungarians much troubled in paſſing a thicke wood.

Vladiſlaus honorably receiued at Buda.

ſpoiles

A ſpoiles as had beene ſaued. Behind the King came *Huniades* in a triumphant robe, in the middeſt betwixt the Legate on the right hand, and the Deſpot on the left, as he that next vnto the King had beſt deſerued the honour of the triumph. Next vnto them followed the deuout Chriſtians, that for the zeale of religion had moſt honourably of their owne charges voluntarie ſerued in thoſe wars: and on both ſides of them the ciuill magiſtrates and beſt of the citizens: behind them came the reſt of the legions; and about them both vpon the right hand and the left, the promiſcuous common people, doubling and redoubling the praiſes of the King, and *Huniades*. Before all theſe went the prelates and prieſts in ſolemne proceſſion, ſinging hymnes and pſalmes of thankſgiuing vnto almightie God. *Vladiſlaus* comming vnto the gate of the citie, ac-
B knowledging God to haue beene the author of ſo great a victorie, alighting from his horſe, on foot went firſt vnto the cathedrall church of our ladie; and there giuing moſt hartie thanks vnto almightie God, hanged vp the enemies enſignes, & part of the ſpoile, in perpetuall remembrãce of ſo notable a victorie: which he afterward cauſed to be moſt liuely depainted in a faire table of moſt curious worke, and there in the ſame church to be hanged vp: as were alſo the armes of all the noble Chriſtians that ſerued in that moſt famous expedition, which there long time after remained. Which ſolemnities ended, he went to his pallace in the caſtle, and there hauing giuen vnto euerie man, but eſpecially vnto *Huniades*, his due commendation, gaue them leaue to depart. Thus the Hungarians, with whom alſo the Polonians in moſt part agree, report of this notable expedition of their king *Vladiſlaus:* howbeit the Turks (notable diſſemblers of their
C own loſſes) confeſſing the great ouerthrow, call the Baſſa ſo ouerthrowne not by the name of *Carambey*, but of *Caſſanes*; and the noble priſoner that was taken, by the name of *Mechmet Beg*, Sanzacke of ANCYRA *Amurath* his ſonne in law, and brother to *Cali-Baſſa Amurath* his great councellour, of ſome called *Carambey* after the name of his father.

Out of this late ſlaughter of the Turkes, wherein *Carambey* was taken, eſcaped that valiant prince and famous warriour *George Caſtriot* (of the Turks called *Scanderbeg*) as is before declared: whoſe noble mind had long time deſired to breake out of the golden fetters of the Turkiſh thraldome, and to be reuenged of the intollerable iniuries by *Amurath* done to his countrey, his parents, his brethren, and himſelfe. Although he had alwaies moſt warily diſſembled the ſame, for feare of the old tirant: being oftentimes ſolicited and animated thereunto by ſecret letters
D and meſſengers from his friends in EPIRVS, knowing right well that the leaſt ouerture thereof, had bin vnto him preſent death. But finding no fit meanes for the accompliſhmẽt therof, wiſely diſſembled the ſame, with all the ſhewes of loue and loyaltie vnto *Amurath* that might be: vntill that now in this great ouerthrow of the Turks armie, vnder the leading of *Carambey*, and in ſo great a confuſion, he tooke occaſion to put in practiſe what he had long before in his deep conceit plotted, for the deliuerie both of himſelfe and his countrey from the Turkiſh bondage and ſlauerie. At which time *Scanderbeg* (for ſo from henceforth we call him) hauing a little before imparted the matter vnto ſome of his truſtie friends and countrey men, no leſſe deſirous of libertie than himſelfe, but eſpecially vnto his nephew *Ameſa*, the ſonne of his brother *Repoſius*,
E a young man of great courage (in that great confuſion of the Turkiſh armie, when euerie man was glad to ſhift for himſelfe) had euer in his flight a vigilãt eie vpõ the Baſſaes principall ſecretarie; whom accompanied with a few Turks, he with his nephew *Ameſa*, and other of his faithfull friends cloſely followed, as he fled frõ the ſlaughter: but whẽ he had got the ſecretarie with his few followers in place moſt conueniẽt for his purpoſe, he ſet vpon the Turks and ſlew them euerie one: and carying the ſecretarie away with him faſt bound, when he had brought him whether he thought good, with great threats cõpelled him (ſore againſt his will) to write counterfait letters, as from the Baſſa his maiſter, vnto the gouernour of CROIA, commanding him in *Amuraths* name, Forthwith to deliuer vnto *Scanderbeg*, the new choſen Gouernor, the charge of the citie with the garriſon there: cunningly enterlacing many other things in the ſame letters, wherby the matter might ſeeme more probable. Which letters ſo extorted, he preſently ſlew the
F Secretary, & as many more of the Turks as came in his way, of purpoſe that his doings might be the longer kept from the knowledge of *Amurath*, who not hearing what was become of him, might reaſonably cõiecture that he was ſlain by the Hungarians amõgſt the reſt of the Turks.

Whileſt the fame of this great ouerthrow is going to HADRIANOPLE, and there filleth the Turks court with ſorrow and heauineſſe, in the meane time *Scanderbeg* hauing with him three thouſand Epirot ſouldiers which followed him out of the battaile, as men deſirous rather to

Scanderbeg wiſely diſſembleth his deſire for the deliuerie of himſelfe and his countrey.

fight

fight for the libertie of themſelues and of their countrey, than in the quarrell of the Turke, was G
with incredible celeritie come into the vpper countrey of DIBRA, in the borders of EPIRVS,
about ſeuentie miles from CROIA: into which countrey he was moſt ioyfully receiued, where
he ſtaied but one day, and choſe a few of thoſe three hundred which he brought with him, to
wait vpon him when he went to CROIA, as if they had beene his domeſticall ſeruants: the reſt,
with other three hundred luſtie ſouldiers, which were then come vnto him out of DIBRA, he
appointed to be led by ſecret by-waies thorow the woods and mountaines by perfect guides,
vntill they came ſo nigh CROIA as was poſſible for them to come, vnperceiued; and there to
ſtay vntill he might find opportunitie to conuay them into the citie to oppreſſe the Turkiſh gar-
riſon. So he with a ſmall companie of his followers, as if they had beene his priuate retinew, H
tooke the way towards CROIA. But when he began to draw neere to the citie, he ſent *Ameſa* be-
fore with two ſeruitors attending vpon him, as if he had beene his Secretarie, to certifie the Go-
uernour of his comming. This young gentleman, as he was of a moſt ſharpe wit, and well ſpo-
ken, ſo had he framed his countenance and attire, that he ſeemed to be a naturall Turke: who
aſſoone as he was come into the citie, he went vnto the Gouernour, whom after he had ſaluted
according to the Turkiſh manner, he deliuered his meſſage as from *Scanderbeg* his maſter, with
ſo good grace and words ſo well placed, that all he ſaid was verily beleeued for truth. But when
Scanderbeg himſelfe came, and had deliuered the great commanders letters, the Gouernour
made no further queſtion of the matter, but preſently deliuered vnto him the gouernment of
the citie, & the next day departed out of CROIA with all his houſhold towards HADRIANOPLE. I
Scanderbeg hauing by this policie got the gouernment of the chiefe citie of EPIRVS, the night
following found meanes in the dead time of the night, to receiue into the citie the ſouldiers of
DIBRA, who were by this time come according as he had before appointed: moſt part of them
he placed in moſt conuenient places of the citie, and for the ſpeedie ſuppreſſion of the Turkiſh
garriſon, he with the reſt firſt ſet vpon the Turks which kept the watch vpon the wall, and ſlew
them; and afterwards breaking into their priuate houſes, ſlew many of them in their beds: the
Chriſtian citizens alſo taking vp armes at the ſame time, helped to increaſe the ſlaughter of the
Turks, ſo that in the ſpace of a few houres, there was none of the Turkiſh garriſon left aliue,
except ſome few, which were content to forſake their Mahometane ſuperſtition, and to become
Chriſtians. Many of the Turks might ſo haue ſaued their liues, and would not, chuſing rather K
to die, and (as it is reported) alſo to kill themſelues, than to forſake their damnable ſuperſtition:
ſo ſmall is the regard of life vnto reſolute minds, in what quarrell ſoeuer.

The citie of CROIA being thus happily by *Scanderbeg* recouered, wherein appeared both the
greateſt difficultie, and hope of his good or bad ſucceſſe in ſo great an attempt; he preſently ſent
Ameſa backe againe into DIBRA, and other ſpeedie meſſengers likewiſe into all the parts of
EPIRVS, to diſperſe the newes, and to ſtirre vp the people to take vp armes for the recouerie of
their loſt libertie: but flying Fame, the ſpeedie poſt, had preuented the meſſengers by him ſent,
and alreadie filled euery corner of EPIRVS with report of *Scanderbeg* his comming, and of all
that was done at CROIA. And the oppreſſed Epirots which had long wiſhed to ſee that happie
day, were now vp in armes in euery place, wanting nothing but leaders; whoſe comming al- L
though they greatly deſired, yet they ſtaied not thereupon, but running together by heapes (as
the manner of the common people is in all great tumults) they ſet vpon the Turks garriſons
which lay abroad in the countrey, and ſlew moſt part of them: whereby it came to paſſe, that
no Turke could ſtirre in the countrey, but that he was ſnatched vp and ſlaine, ſo that in few
dayes there was not a Turke to be found in EPIRVS, but ſuch as lay in garriſons in ſtrong
townes. In this furie of the people, the Gouernour of CROIA, with all his retinue, was by the
countrey people by the way as he went ſet vpon and ſlaine, and all his goods taken as a prey.

When *Scanderbeg* had thus recouered CROIA, and ſcoured the countrey; yet to remoue
the garriſons which *Amurath* had put in euery ſtrong citie, was thought to be a matter of great
importance, and more difficultie. For which purpoſe he commanded thoſe whom he had ap- M
pointed for captaines, ſpeedily to repaire vnto CROIA with all the power they could make. At
which time alſo, diuers noble men his nigh kinſmen, reſorted vnto him with their followers: ſo
that within a few dayes, he had together at CROIA twelue thouſand ſouldiers well appointed.
With this armie he marched from CROIA to PETRELLA, a ſtrong citie 25 miles diſtant from
CROIA, and encamped before it. This citie is ſtrongly ſituate vpon the top of a ſteepe rockie
mountaine,

Scanderbeg commeth with his armie to Petrella.

A mountaine,as all the reſt of the cities of EPIRVS be,and was by the Turks well furniſhed with men, munition, and other things needfull: yet *Scanderbeg* was in good hope, that the Turkiſh gariſon there,terrified with the fortune of the garriſon of CROIA,and the ſlaughter of the Turks in the countrey round about, would be glad to hearken vnto reaſonable conditions. Which to make proofe of, as ſoone as he was encamped, he ſent one of thoſe ſouldiers which had followed him out of HVNGARIE (a faithfull and wiſe fellow) vnto PETRELLA, to offer vnto the ſouldiers, That if they would yeeld vp the citie, it ſhould be at their choice, either to continue in ſeruice with *Scanderbeg*,with whom they ſhould find moſt bountifull entertainement; or elſe to depart in ſafetie with bagge and baggage at their pleaſure, with an honourable reward to bee
B diuided amongſt them. The ſubtile meſſenger comming thether,and framing his tale according to the preſent occaſion,and neceſſitie of the time;firſt declared vnto them,how that *Amurath* of late vanquiſhed by the Hungarians in a great battaile, and looking euerie day to be ſet vpon by diuers other Chriſtian princes,was ſo buſied that he had no leiſure to looke into EPIRVS,or to ſend them any releeſe: after that, he in the name of *Scanderbeg*, offered them the conditions before rehearſed, ſetting the ſame forth with many great words; willing them oftentimes by the way to conſider the dreadfull miſerie that but the other day befell to the garriſon at CROIA, and other their fellowes abroad in the countrey,whoſe dead bodies as then lay in euerie corner of EPIRVS for a prey to the hungrie dogs and greedie wolues: which thing was eaſily beleeued of them of the garriſon, for that diuers of the Turks lately fled out of the countrey into the
C citie,had themſelues ſeene the ſame to be true. The Gouernour hauing a little conſidered of the matter,was content to giue vp the citie,vpon condition that he with the ſouldiers might in ſafetie depart with ſuch things as they had: not couenanting vpon any further reward, becauſe it ſhould not be ſaid that he had ſould the citie. Which when *Scanderbeg* had faithfully promiſed to performe,the Turkiſh Gouernour comming forth with all his garriſon, yeelded vp the citie: *Petrella yeelded vnto Scanderbeg.* and *Scanderbeg* mindfull of his promiſe,gaue vnto them both meate and money, and ſent them with a ſufficient conuoy of horſemen in ſafetie out of EPIRVS.

When *Scanderbeg* had thus gained PETRELLA,he placed therein a conuenient garriſon, and ſet all things in order as he thought good;but ſuffered none to enter into the citie,more than the appointed garriſon,although it was then verie cold and froſtie weather. This done,he preſently
D raiſed his campe,and following his good fortune, marched towards PETRA-ALBA in ſuch haſt, as if the citie had been running away from him; well knowing, that though Time be euer more pretious, yet neuer more than in martiall affaires, wherein the leaſt moment is oftentimes of ſuch power as to effect or fruſtrate mens greateſt deſignes. PETRA-ALBA is a citie in the countrey of ÆMATHIA, diſtant from PETRELLA three miles, ſtrongly ſcituat vpon the top of a mountain, neere vnto the riuer ÆMATHVS. *Scanderbeg* had ſcarcely well encamped himſelfe before this citie, but that the Gouernour thereof, terrified with the fortune of CROIA,and PETRELLA, offered to deliuer vp the citie, vpon the ſame conditions that were graunted at PETRELLA: which being agreed vpon, the citie was forthwith deliuered, and the conditions by *Petra-Alba yeelded.* *Scanderbeg* faithfully performed.

E PETRA-ALBA being thus taken,and all things ſet in order,*Scanderbeg* caried with the courſe of his victorie, without delay came to STELLVSA, which is alſo a ſtrong citie of ÆMATHIA, fiftie miles diſtant from CROIA, pleaſantly (as it were of purpoſe) built vpon the top of an high hill, ſtanding in the middeſt of a pleaſant & fruitfull vallie, with great plaines round about it. There *Scanderbeg* encamped a little before the going downe of the Sunne, and reſted that night. In the morning he ſent a meſſenger to the citie, with like conditions as were accepted at PETRELLA *Stellusa yeelded by the garriſon.* and PETRA-ALBA: which moſt part of the garriſon ſouldiers of the Turks would gladly haue accepted,but that *Desdrot* the Gouernour of the citie,with ſome few others,earneſtly withſtood the reſt; whereupon a great contention aroſe amongſt the garriſon ſouldiers. But the greater part deſirous to yeeld vp the citie,when they could by no meanes perſwade the Gouernour and
F thoſe few which tooke his part,to yeeld to their deſires;they violently ſet vpon him,and deliuered him with the reſt to *Scanderbeg*, faſt bound, and ſo yeelded vp the citie. For which fact, fearing to returne to *Amurath*, ſome of them remained with *Scanderbeg*, and afterwards became Chriſtians: the reſt were either honeſtly prouided for, or elſe well rewarded and ſuffered to depart whether they would. All the other weaker places of EPIRVS wherein any of the Turkiſh garriſons lay, hearing that the ſtrongeſt cities were alreadie deliuered vnto *Scanderbeg*, in ſhort

time

time yeelded themselues vpon like conditions: onely SPETIGRADE (otherwise called the holy citie) remained in the possession of the Turks: which citie is placed in the vpper countrey of DIBRA, in the frontiers of EPIRVS, vpon the top of an high and steepe hill, as if it were an Eagles nest. Vnto this citie came *Scanderbeg* with all his armie: and hauing placed his tents, he began first to assay if he could gaine it by composition, as he had done the rest: and the rather to moue them by the examples of others, he caused his embassadours to declare vnto them all that had happened at CROIA, PETRELLA, PETRA-ALBA, and STELLVSA, especially how he had vsed the garrison of STELLVSA, which yeelded vnto him, with all bountie and courtesie; and how that on the contrary part he had the gouernour in bands, with all his wilfull partakers, whom they should presently see executed before their faces, if they forthwith deliuered not the citie. G H This message troubled the minds of all the garrison, but especially of the gouernour, seeing before his eyes in the wofull example of another man, what might by and by happen vnto himselfe. Wherefore fearing to deliuer his owne opinion and to giue answer vnto the embassadour, for offending the inconstant multitude and vnknowne minds of the people, he first entertained the embassadours honourably, and afterwards turning himselfe vnto the citizens and souldiers, said vnto them: *Worthie men and most faithfull souldiers, what is your pleasure, or what shall we answere to these our enemies demands?* Then one of the souldiers that stood by (a rough bold spirited fellow) vnwilling for his owne part to giue vp the citie, and deeming the gouernour to be of the same mind, in that he had tearmed them worthie and faithfull, and *Scanderbeg* by the name of an enemie, drawing out his sword, & with his right hand shaking it on high, answered: I

A notable speech of a common souldier to the rest of his fellowes for the holding out of the citie against Scanderbeg.

Most valiant gouernour, this same and the like shall make answer for vs. Nothing was to lesse purpose than with premeditated words to seeke to terrifie valiant minds, first with the diuers fortune of CROIA, *and then of* STELLVSA; *for as the faces and countenances of men are diuers, so also are their minds and dispositions. Euery man wisely directeth his owne actions, according to his owne proper humour, & by the same plaies the foole or bedlam. We prescribe no lawes to them of* PETRELLA, *nor to them of* STELLVSA, *neither let them prescribe any vnto vs. Let neuer so base examples of cowardly slaues euer enter into the thoughts of couragious men: braue minds disdaine to imitate other men in their honest actions, much lesse in their cowardise. And why? for euery man liueth after his owne fashion. Wherefore let* Scanderbeg *proceed, let him kill the gouernour of* STELLVSA *before our faces, let him sacrifice our fellow souldiers, doe you therefore thinke that we shall die in their bodies? shall our liuing spirits be there extinguished? shall our bloud there be spilt? But O happie bodies, O ghosts of me euer to be reuerenced, which in worthie defence of your libertie and faith haue indifferently contemned gold, siluer, death, and torture, and whatsoeuer else miserable worldlings hold deare or dismall! Wherfore carrie thou backe againe vnto thy master this answer frõ a common souldier, If he seeke to impose these conditions vpon vs, let him once more bare that arme of his, which men of courage feare not so much as he thinketh. He may peraduenture inforce vs to these conditions of his, if God forsake vs: but assuredly, perswade vs vnto them, shall he neuer. And yet for all that, your master* Scanderbeg *is not the man we haue long since heard him reported to be, of an honourable mind, easie to forgiue, & such a one as will indifferently iudge betwixt the enemie & himselfe: for why then doth he hold in bonds the gouernour of* STELLVSA, *for that he freely, iustly, and honourably stood in defence of his King, his faith, and libertie? Why doth he threaten him with death, where as he hath not deserued the same, although he hath resolutely offered himselfe thereunto, for defence of his libertie?* K L

All they which were present, listened with great attention to the souldiers speech, neither was he interrupted by any, vntill he had said what he would. Then the souldiers thronging about him, and beating their swords and targets together, withall gaue a great shout, in token that they all approued his speech for answere. So the gouernour, encouraged with the cheerefulnesse of his souldiers, returned the embassadour without other answere than that of the common souldiers, and presently appointed euery man to his charge, and with great carefulnesse ordered all things for the better defence of the citie. But when *Scanderbeg* had heard the answere that was sent him from the citie, deliuered by the mouth of a common souldier, he M

Scanderbeg his short answere to the souldiers speech.

smiled thereat and said: *He is vndoubtedly a valiant souldier, if his deeds be answerable to his speeches: but if my force faile me not, I will also make him happie amongst the happie ghosts of them of* STELLVSA: and by and by commanded the gouernour of STELLVSA, with the other captiues, to be brought before him, and there caused some of them which were content voluntarily to forsake

A forſake their Mahometane ſuperſtition, to be preſently baptized, to the great griefe of the other Turks. *Deſdrot* the gouernour, with the reſt, to the terrour of the defendants, were in their ſight put to death: whereupon the garriſon ſouldiers with great indignation gaue a great ſhout from the wall, and bitterly railed vpon the Chriſtians. *Deſdrot gouernor of Stelluſa, executed.*

Scanderbeg conſidering the ſtrength of the citie, with the time of the yeere, vnfit for ſouldiers to keepe the field, for Winter was now growne on; left *Moſes Golemus*, a moſt valiant captaine, with a garriſon of three thouſand ſouldiers, to keepe in the Turks garriſon at SPETIGRADE, and to defend the borders of EPIRVS, vntill he might at more conuenient time himſelfe returne againe to the ſiege: and ſo with the reſt of his armie repaired to CROIA, when he had in the
B ſpace of little more than one moneth, to his immortall praiſe, recouered his kingdome, and driuen the Turks out of euery corner of EPIRVS, excepting onely SPETIGRADE: which citie alſo not long after was by compoſition deliuered vnto him. During all this time, from his firſt comming into EPIRVS, he neuer ſlept aboue two houres in a night, but with reſtleſſe labour proſecuted his affaires. He euer fought againſt the Turks with his arme bare, and that with ſuch fierceneſſe, that the bloud did oftentimes burſt out of his lips. It is written, that he with his owne hand ſlew three thouſand Turks in the time of his warres againſt them. But of his great and worthie victories obtained againſt the two mightie Turkiſh Kings, *Amurath*, and *Mahomet* his ſonne, more ſhall be ſaid hereafter in due time and place.

After that *Scanderbeg* had thus by great force and policie wrung his inheritance out of *Amu-*
C *raths* hands, and ſcoured the Turks out of euery corner of EPIRVS; he proceeded further, and ouer-ran part of MACEDONIA, making ſundrie incurſions into the heart of that countrey, being then in the Turks poſſeſſion, whereby he ſo enriched his ſouldiers, that they deſired of him no better pay. Which was ſo vſuall a thing with this reſtleſſe Prince, as that it began to grow into a prouerbe in moſt Princes courts, That the ſpoile of *Amurath* his dominions, was *Scanderbegs* reuenewes. Complaint hereof came daily to *Amuraths* court, which the craftie aged ſire (being then troubled with the Hungarian warres) ſeemed at the firſt to make no great account of, but as of that he could eaſily and at his pleaſure remedie; although he was therewith inwardly greeued at the heart. But when the certaine report of one miſchiefe as it were in the necke of another, continually ſounded in his eares, and that he ſaw no end to be expected of theſe miſe-
D ries; he ſent *Alis Baſſa*, one of his greateſt men of warre, with an armie of fortie thouſand ſelect ſouldiers, at once to ſubdue the countrey of EPIRVS, and to bring it againe vnder his obeiſance. The ſetting forth of this great armie, vnder the conduct of ſo famous a captaine, repleniſhed the minds of the Turks with ſuch an aſſured hope of victorie, that a man would haue thought *Scanderbeg* had beene alreadie taken, and now brought to execution: yea the common ſouldiers before their ſetting forth, were oftentimes at vaine contention for the diuiſion of the ſpoile they were neuer like to haue: *So readie are men to promiſe wonders to themſelues, whileſt they conferre but with their owne deſires.* And on the other ſide, Fame, the forerunner of great attempts, had filled all the ſmall countrey of EPIRVS, with great terrour & feare of *Alis Baſſaes* comming. The countrimen with their families fled into the ſtrong cities, & the citizens within their wals fell to forti-
E fying the ſame, and kept continuall watch and ward, as if the enemie had then lien euen faſt by them: the aged men & women commended themſelues and all theirs firſt vnto God by praiers, and then to the courage of the luſtie ſouldiers with teares, as in caſe of extreme perill & danger. Onely *Scanderbeg* was nothing moued either with the terrible report of the Baſſaes comming, or the vaine feare of his ſubiects; but alwaies kept the ſame cheerefulneſſe both of countenance and ſpeech, as he was wont, being well acquainted with the tumult of the Turkiſh wars, and hauing (as was ſuppoſed) certaine intelligence before from his ſecret friends in the Turks court, of all *Amuraths* deſignes. So that hauing ſet all things in order for the ſafetie of his countrey, he began to leuie an armie at CROIA: at which time moſt part of his ſubiects of EPIRVS, which were able to beare armes, repaired vnto him: the confederate Chriſtian Princes alſo, his neigh-
F bours, and for moſt part his kinſmen, ſent vnto him great ſupplies: beſide other deuout and warlike minded Chriſtians, which voluntarily reſorted vnto him from farre, in great numbers. Out of which multitude of people he choſe onely eight thouſand horſemen & ſeuen thouſand foot, when as he might haue raiſed a far greater armie: and placing ſome few in garriſons in the frontier cities where he thought moſt conuenient, all the reſt he ſent home againe to their dwellings. At which his confidencie, his friends, yea and his enemies alſo much maruelled, that when he might

Macedonia ſpoiled by Scanderbeg.

Alis Baſſa with an armie of fortie thouſand ſent againſt Scanderbeg.

might haue had so many, hee would take the field with so few. With which small armie of fif- G
teene thousand, he marched from CROIA, fourscore miles to DYBRA: where hearing by his
espials, of the approach of his enemies, after he had with cheerfull speech encouraged his souldi-
ers, he encamped with his armie in the lower countrie of DYBRA, neer vnto a wood side, right
in the way where the Bassa must needs passe. In which wood, he placed *Gnee Musachee*, and *A-*
mesa in ambush with three thousand men: commanding them to stand close, vntill they saw he
had throughly ioyned battaile with the Bassa, and then with all their force to breake forth vpon
his rereward. The Bassa marching forward, came and encamped neere vnto *Scanderbeg*, a little
before the going downe of the Sunne, and there rested that night, making great shew of mirth
and ioy, with great fires in euery corner of the campe, as the Turkish manner of encamping is. H
Whereas in *Scanderbegs* campe, all things were silent, and no shew of any fire at all; for so *Scan-*
derbeg had commanded: which made the Turks the more careless, deeming thereby the Chri-
stians as good as already discouraged. The next morning *Scanderbeg* ranged his armie in order
of battaile, placing *Tanusius* in the left wing, with fifteen hundreth horsemen, and as many foot;
and *Moses* in the right with like number: and leading the maine battaile himselfe: The rereward
was committed to *Vranacontes* a man renowned in those daies, both for his grauitie in counsell,
& for his valour in armes, fit to command or be commanded; but afterwards, amongst the rest
most famous, for the worthie defending of CROIA against *Amurath*, being then there himselfe
in person. *Alis Bassa* contemning the smal number of *Scanderbeg* his armie, seeing nothing ther-
in to be feared more then the good order thereof, gaue the first charge with a small troupe of I
horsemen: who at the first encounter retired, as if they had fled, of purpose that the Christians
hastily pursuing their vntimely hope, might disorder their battaile, and so giue occasion to their
The battell betwixt Alis Bassa & Scanderbeg. owne ouerthrow. But by the commandement of *Scanderbeg* (who easily perceiued the Bassaes
meaning) their dangerous forwardnesse was warily waied, & all with saftey kept in good order.
So both armies comming on, the wings beganne the battaile a fresh, and *Scanderbeg* with great
courage bringing on his maine battell in the face of the Bassa, valiantly charged him. But by that
time that the battailes were throughly ioyned, *Musachee* and *Ameса* suddenly issued out of the
wood, and fiercely set vpon the rereward of the Turks armie, where they made great slaughter,
and forced many of the Turks for feare to flie. Thus was the Bassaes great armie driuen to fight
both before and behind, being hardly beset and laied vnto with a small number. The Bassa had K
placed his best souldiers neerest vnto himselfe in the maine battaile, as his most assured strength
and last refuge: these valiant men stood fast, and renewed the battaile, before almost lost. And
here *Scanderbegs* fortune was euen at a stand: vntill that the well aduised and valiant captaine
Vranacontes hauing receiued the wearied souldiers into the rereward, and setting all things there
in safetie, accompanied with certain troups of fresh souldiers which he brought out of the rere-
ward, brake through the Bassaes armie with such slaughter of the Turkes, that he made way for
A great slaughter of the Turks *Scanderbeg* and all the rest of his armie. The Turkes discomfited with the inuincible courage of
these old souldiers, and the slaughter of their fellowes, which lay by heapes wallowing in their
owne blood, betooke themselues to flight; whom the Christians fiercely pursued, and slew of
them two and twentie thousand: at which time were also two thousand others taken prisoners, L
with foure and twentie of the Turks ensignes: whereas of the Christians were slaine not past an
hundreth & twentie. The enemies tents with all their cariages, were at the same time taken also.
After this great victorie, when *Scanderbeg* had made all his seuen thousand footmen, horsemen,
by giuing vnto them the horses of the slaine Turks, he brake into the enemies countrie, and en-
tred farre into MACEDONIA, where he filled the desires of his souldiers with the wealth and
spoile thereof, sparing nothing that fire and sword could deuoure: and so with victorie retur-
ned to CROIA, where he was of his subiects ioyfully receiued. *Alis Bassa* with the remainder of
his discomfited armie, returned to HADRIANOPLE, and there by *Amurath* was hardly charged
of cowardise, & want of discretion, for that he had lost so puissant an armie to so weake an ene-
mie. Wherof when he had cleared himselfe by the modest rehearsall of his former victories, and M
the testimonie of all the other captaines present with him in that battaile, he was pardoned, and
so againe receiued into fauour, and that great ouerthrow imputed to the chance of warre.

Amurath in despaire. *Amurath* hauing receiued two so great ouerthrowes, first from *Hunniades* and the Hungari-
ans, and now from *Scanderbeg*; and seeing himselfe elsewhere beset with so many mischiefes, as
that he could not tell which way to turne himselfe; tormented with dispaire, and desire of re-

uenge,

A uenge, whereof he ſaw ſmall poſſibilitie, fell into ſuch a melancholie paſſion, that ouercome with the darke conceits thereof, he was about to haue become the bloudie executioner of himſelfe, had not *Cali Baſſa* by his graue aduice comforted vp his dying ſpirits: by whoſe perſwaſion, contrary to his haughtie nature, he yeelded by his embaſſadours ſent for the ſame purpoſe, to deſire peace of *Vladiſlaus* King of HVNGARIE, vſing the exiled Deſpot of SERVIA (his father in law, then preſent with the King) as a meane therein. Who at the firſt gaue ſmall credit vnto the embaſſadours, or vnto ſuch things as they told him, vntill that at length better perſwaded of the true meaning of the Turke, he ſo wrought the matter both with the King and the reſt of the nobilitie, and eſpecially with *Huniades*, that there was an honourable peace con-

Amurath by the perſwaſion of Cali Baſſa ſeeketh for peace of King Vladiſlaus.

B cluded. The capitulations whereof were, firſt, That *Amurath* withdrawing all his forces and garriſons, ſhould clearely depart out of SERVIA, and reſtore the ſame vnto the poſſeſſion of *George* the Deſpot, the right lord and owner thereof; deliuering alſo freely vnto him his two ſonnes, *Stephen* and *George*, who bereft of their ſight, he had long time kept in ſtraight priſon. Alſo, that from thenceforth he ſhould make no claime vnto the kingdome of MOLDAVIA, nor to that part of BVLGARIA which he had in the laſt wars loſt. And finally, that he ſhould not inuade or moleſt the Hungarians, or any part of their kingdome, during the whole time of that peace: and to pay 40000 duckats for the ranſome of *Carambey*. Vnto which hard conditions, when the Turkiſh tyrant full ſore againſt his will had condeſcended, a peace for ten yeeres was forthwith on both parts concluded, and the ſame by ſolemne oath confirmed: King

The capitulations of the ten yeeres peace concluded betwixt Vladiſlaus and Amurath.

C *Vladiſlaus* taking his oath vpon the holy Euangeliſts, and *Amurath* (by his embaſſadours) vpon their Turkiſh Alcoran. This was the moſt honourable peace that euer Chriſtian Prince had before that time made with any of the Turkiſh Kings, and moſt profitable alſo, had it beene with like ſinceritie kept, as it was with ſolemnitie confirmed.

Amurath with this peace deliuered of his greateſt feare, conuerted all his forces againſt the Caramanian King, in reuenge of the iniuries by him done, whileſt he was occupied in the Hungarian warres. This King of CARAMANIA knowing himſelfe vnable to withſtand ſo great an enemie, durſt neither meet him in the field, nor truſt himſelfe to the ſtrength of any his cities or ſtrong caſtles, but fled into the mountaines, there fortifying himſelfe more ſurely than in any other his ſtrong holds. *Amurath* entring into CARAMANIA, made great ſpoile in the country

Amurath inuadeth Caramania

D as he went, and tooke great booties. At laſt comming to ICONIVM, he laid hard ſiege to the ſame. The poore King ſeeing his kingdome ſpoiled, and his chiefe citie in danger to be loſt, ſent embaſſadours, and with them his wife alſo, which was *Amuraths* ſiſter, to intreat for peace; offering to pay vnto him yeerely the double tribute which he before paid, and for the performance thereof to giue his ſonne in hoſtage. Vpon which conditions *Amurath* granted him peace, and ſo returned. In this warre, *Aladin*, *Amuraths* eldeſt ſonne, died, to the great griefe of his aged father, being ſlaine with a fall from his horſe, as he was hawking.

Old *Amurath* thorowly wearied with continuall warres, and other troubles incident vnto reſtleſſe roomes, reſolued now to retire himſelfe to a more priuate and quiet kind of life: and therefore ſent for his ſonne *Mahomet*, being then but fifteene yeeres old, to whom he voluntarily

E reſigned his kingdome, appointing *Cali Baſſa* his tutor, with one *Choſroe*, a learned doctor of their law, to be his truſtie counſellors and chiefe directers. And ſo taking with him *Hamze-Beg*, one of his noblemen in whom he tooke greateſt pleaſure, departed to MAGNESIA, and there as a man wearie of the world, gaue himſelfe to a ſolitarie and monaſticall kind of life, in the companie of certaine religious Turkiſh monks, as they accounted of them.

Many great Kings and Princes, as well Mahometanes as Chriſtians, glad before of the Hungarian victorie, were now no leſſe ſorrie to heare of the late concluded peace betwixt king *Vladiſlaus* and the old Sultan *Amurath*: as being of opinion, That the proſecution of that warre ſo happily begun, would haue beene the vtter ruine and deſtruction of the Turkiſh kingdome. Wherefore they ſought by all poſſible meanes to induce the young king *Vladiſlaus* to breake

F the league he had ſo lately and ſo ſolemnely made with the Turke: eſpecially *Iohn Palæologus* the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, did by letters importune the king to remember the confederation he had made with the other Chriſtian princes, for the maintenance of the wars againſt the common enemie of Chriſtianitie: which princes were now preſt and readie (as he ſaid) to aſſiſt him with their promiſed aid: adding moreouer, That whereas *Amurath* had diuers times ſought to ioine with him in amitie and friendſhip, he had vtterly reiected that offer

of peace, preferring the vniuerſall profit (like to enſue to all Chriſtendome by that religious war) G
before his owne proper ſecuritie and profit, being for his part in readineſſe to ioyne his forces
with the Kings, if he would preſently enter into armes: which he could neuer doe in better time
than now, whilſt *Amurath*, terrified with his late ouerthrow, & ſtill beſet with doubtfull war, had
drawne his greateſt forces out of EVROPE into ASIA, in ſuch diſordered haſte, as that it ſhould
ſeeme he rather fled for feare of his enemies in EVROPE, than marched to encounter his enemies
in ASIA, and now being wearie of all, had betaken himſelfe vnto a priuate kind of life. To con-
clude, he requeſted the King not to leaue him and the other Chriſtian Princes of ſmall power, as
a prey vnto the Turke, who would aſſuredly with all hoſtilitie inuade thē, ſo ſoone as he thought
himſelfe ſafe from the danger of the Hungarians. At the ſame time alſo, and vpon the departure H
of the Turks embaſſadours, for the performance of ſuch things as they had promiſed, letters
came from *Francis* the Cardinall of FLORENCE, Generall of the Chriſtian fleet, declaring how
that *Amurath* hauing left almoſt none in EVROPE, was with all the power he could make, gone
ouer into ASIA againſt the Caramanian King, leauing a moſt faire occaſion for the Chriſtians
eaſily to recouer whatſoeuer they had before loſt in EVROPE: & that he was in good time come
with his fleet vnto the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS, according vnto promiſe, and there lay readie
to embarre the Turks paſſage backe againe out of ASIA. Both theſe letters being read in the
Counſell, ſo much moued the King, with all the reſt of the nobilitie of HVNGARIE there preſent,
as that they were neuer more ſorrie or aſhamed for any thing they had done in their liues, than
for the league ſo lately with *Amurath* concluded: for why, they ſaw that all the plot they had I
laid, for their immortall glorie, was now by this haſtie peace that they had made with the Turke,
without the good liking or knowledge of their confederates, brought to nought; and that they
had thereby moſt ſhamefully deceiued the generall expectation that the Chriſtian common-
weale had conceiued of them; and that they, of long time called the protectors of the Chriſtian
faith, the defenders of true religion, the reuengers of Chriſt his name, and deliuerers of the faith-
full nations; ſhould now be accounted the breakers of the Chriſtian league, men forgetfull of
their confederation both with the Latines and the Greekes, contemners of immortalitie, and lo-
uers of their owne profit only. In this doubtfulnes of minds whilſt they ſtood yet thus wauering,
Iulian the Cardinall and Legat, alwaies an enemie vnto the peace, and by reaſon of his place a
man in greateſt authoritie next vnto the king, tooke occaſion to diſſwade the ſame as followeth. K

The cunning ſpeech wherewith Iulian the Cardinall perſwadeth King Vladiſlaus to breake the league he had before made with Amurath.

If any of you right worthie (ſaid he) *ſhall happily maruell that I ſhould ſpeake of breaking the league, and violating our faith, let him firſt vnderſtand, That I at this preſent am to perſwade you to nothing elſe but the faithfull obſeruing both of the one and the other: led with like repentance with you, repentance I ſay, and not ſorrow, when as I, as from a watch-tower foreſeeing all theſe things which were decreed againſt my will, to ſort alſo contrary to your expectation, am now for the dutie of my legation, & the zeale vnto the Chriſtian religion, enforced with you to doubt: and ſo much the rather, for that at this preſent, the queſtion is of the loſſe and hazard of all our honours and credit in common: which except we by common conſent, and wonted valour, endeuour to amend, O how much it is to be feared, leſt for ſhame neither may you goe out of* HVNGARIE, *or I returne to* ROME, *where all things are with moſt deepe iudgement* L
cenſured. Conſider I pray you into what miſeries this haſtie reſolution hath caſt vs. We haue entred into league with the Turke, an Infidell, to violate our faith with the Chriſtians, and to breake the holy league before made with the great Biſhop, and the other Chriſtian Princes our confederates. And that for what, for what profit I ſay? Forſooth, that ſo we might againe recouer SERVIA, *long before deſtroied. Verily a ſmall and wofull profit, which may againe in ſhort time be cut off, and depriueth vs of others farre greater, and of much longer continuance. For what can be more fond or inconſiderate, than in our conſultations to haue regard to our priuate profit only, and not the publicke, without reſpect of religion, honeſtie, or conſcience? It is not demanded of you at this preſent (right honourable) what you owe vnto the periured Turke: but you are by me* Iulian, *the great Biſhops and the confederate Chriſtian Princes Legat, and Agent, before the tribunall ſeat of your owne conſciences, accuſed of breach of faith, breach of league, and breach of pro-* M
miſe; and thereof euen by your owne iudgement, rather than by the iudgement of God, or other men, I will condemne you. Anſwere me you noble Worthies: After you had happily ſix moneths made wars againſt the Turks in BVLGARIA *and the borders of* THRACIA, *and after that, triumphantly returning into* HVNGARIE, *receiued you not honourable embaſſages from almoſt all* ITALIE, *and from the great Emperour, with common reioycing for your ſo glorious a victorie, and exhortations to continue*

the

A *the warre? We receiued them. Did not you in my presence, and I the author thereof, willingly make a most holy league with the Italians and Greekes, That the one should with their aid and power meet you out of* THRACIA; *and the other with a great fleet should come into the* HELLESPONTVS? *We made it. If you made it, why breaking this, made you another with the Turks? or by what right can you keepe the same, being made? Wherefore, if the last yeere you made a league with the great Bishop (God his vicar here on earth) if you be men, if you be in your wits, if you be Christians, this second league is to be broken, lest you should violate the first, and that a most Christian league: which except you doe, I feare lest that as* Iudas *betraied Christ, so you may seeme to betray his vicar; or that God, whom hitherto you haue alwayes found present, propitious, and fauourable, you shall hereafter find him angrie, and an*

B *enemie to your proceedings. And now I pray you tell me, what will you answere vnto the Constantinopolitane Emperour; who according to your appointment, hath now with the first taken the field, and in so great an opportunitie expecteth but your comming? what will you answere the great Bishop? what the Venetians and Genowaies, who haue their great fleet readie as was appointed? what the Burgundians, who for their zeale vnto the Christian faith and religion, haue long since passed the Ocean, and so by many dangers of the sea now flote in the* HELLESPONT? *Deuise (I pray you) if you can, some excuse and colour, that we may not seeme altogether vnlike our selues: if out of your hidden skill you can coine any thing, shew it. You promised with the first of the Spring, that you would be in the field: and now your souldiers both the Spring and Summer, play, so great and so wholesome occasion passing away, through your wofull sloth and negligence. O the great blindnesse of mens minds! O grosse cowardise! O deteS-*

C *table league, made to the destruction of the common-weale! Some man happily will blame me, and aske, why I suffered it with the rest? I was present I confesse: but as much as in me was, I intreated it might not be. I disliked it: and as many of you here present can testifie, I vtterly condemned it. I was ouercome by the wisedome and authoritie of* Huniades, *and the compassion of the Despot, lest vnhappie man, he should by my intercession seeme longer to want his kingdome and children: and lest any man should call me a contemner or impugner of your good, I full of sorrow, and vnwillingly, gaue way; not ignorant, the health of the Christian common-weale to be therein weakened, the hope of your immortall glorie extinguished, and vs all (by your leaue may I say it) accounted breakers both of diuine and humane leagues, forsworne men, and traitors vnto all good Christians. Wherefore except before the report of our perfidiousnesse be further bruted, we deliuer our selues from this infamie, nothing can be grea-*

D *ter or more miserable than our shame or villanie: if we will so doe, we may not so easily as iustly and religiously doe it. Hauing made restitution againe of* SERVIA *and the captiues, what remaineth else for you to doe (noble worthies) but to repaire your armie, to prepare what so is needfull for warre, and to keepe your first league with the Christian Princes? and to say, That King* Vladislaus, *after his league made with the Greeke and Latine Princes, could not without the consent of those his confederates and allies, vnder whose good fortune that common warre was vndertaken, conclude any thing, especially with the enemies of the Christian religion? And that therefore, if any thing were agreed vpon betwixt him and the Turke, it was frustrate, and the first league to be stood vpon. Who is so partiall an esteemer of mens actions, that would not easily iudge, That in case faith were giuen to both, it were rather to be kept with a Christi-*

E *an, than with a Turke; with a beleeuer, than with an infidell? Against a perfidious enemie it is lawfull (as they say) for a man to vse all cunning, force, and deceit, deluding craft with craft, & fraud with fraud. By craft the Turke first passed ouer into* EVROPE, *by little and little he crept into that kingdome, he neuer kept faith with any, he grew to this height rather by cunning than by strength: and are you become so blind, as to thinke it better to keepe your promise with the Turke, deuoid of all faith and humanitie, rather than with the faithfull Christians, and especially the most holy Bishop? All great things are done by deuice and policie: the Romanes our ancestors vprightly and religiously alwaies kept their leagues with their confederates, but deluded the deceitfull with their cunning.* Cæsar *was of opinion, that for soueraigntie the law was sometimes to be broken. And* Philip, *the father and master of him that conquered* ASIA, *oftentimes vsed cunning and deceit for the desire of rule: yet were not these men called traitors. It is sometime lawfull for the common-weale sake, neither to stand to our leagues, neither to keepe*

F *our faith with them that be themselues faithlesse. Lawfull it is to breake vnlawfull oathes, and especially such as are thought to be against right, reason, and equitie. Was it lawfull for* Diomedes, *vowing for to sacrifice vnto the gods whomsoeuer he first met at his returne into his country, to kill his sonne by that his vow and oath? Verily it was a great impietie. Wherefore a iust and lawfull oath is in the iudgement of all men to be religiously kept, but such an oath as tendeth not onely vnto priuate, but publicke destruction, that ought to be vaine and frustrate. Wherefore before our faithlesse dealing be far-*

ther spread abroad, I beseech you worthie men, and thee especially most glorious King, not in any point to violate your faith, for the good of the Christian common-weale giuen vnto the most holy father and the other Christian Princes. The league you haue made with the Greekes and the Latines, faithfully and religiously keepe; the expedition by common consent taken in hand by the example of your confederates, prosecute; the foundation of immortall glorie by you laid, build vpon. Deliuer the Christian prouinces oppressed with the Turkish seruitude, satisfie the hope conceiued of you, and deceiue not the expectation the world hath now conceiued of you, than which, nothing can be more dishonourable: make no conscience of the league you haue made with the Infidell, but thinke it a great impietie and wickednesse to violate the holy league made with the great Bishop, and the other Christian Princes: thinking, that if you should doe otherwise, God (which he of his mercie forbid) would become of that your falsified faith a most seuere and sharpe reuenger: and that you can doe nothing more acceptable vnto our Sauiour Christ, or more glorious to your selues, than to deliuer the oppressed Christian countries from the cruell slauerie and bondage of the Turke. Suffer not this so fit an occasion to slip away, than which, a fitter can neuer be giuen. EVROPE *is vnfurnished of the Turks, busied in the Caramanian warre; their returne is embarred by the Christians fleet, now in the sea of* HELLESPONTVS; *you need but to goe see, and as it were to take a view of* THRACIA, MACEDONIA, GRECIA, *and* EPIRVS, *there is no enemie there left to oppose himselfe against you. Wherefore for God his cause, I request you aboue all things to continue the Christian league, and with your happie and victorious forces, to march forward into* MACEDONIA *and* THRACIA, *as is before by you with the other Christian Princes your confederates agreed.*

Iulian the Cardinall absolueth king Vladislaus and the rest from their oath before giuen to Amurath.

In conclusion, hauing much spoken of the authoritie and power of the great Bishop, he in his name disanulled the league whatsoeuer, by the King made with the Turke; and absolued him, with the rest whom it might concerne, from the oath they had giuen, and the promises they had made. Which so well contented both the King and the rest, that there was now no more question of the oath, or of the lawfulnesse of the warre, but a decree made for the continuation of the league with the other Christian Princes their confederates (and for the prosecution of the warres against the Turks) as was with them before agreed: whom they could now say, they were not to forsake, and to leaue them as a prey vnto the Turke their greedie enemie; now for nothing more in danger, than for that, at their request they had taken vp armes in their quarrell. Vnto which vnfortunate decree, both the Despot and *Huniades*, the chiefe authors of the late peace betwixt the King and *Amurath*, easily consented: the Despot, induced with the great hope he had conceiued of the good successe of the warre; and *Huniades*, with the desire of the kingdome of BVLGARIA promised vnto him by *Vladislaus*, and by faire charter also (as some said) assured vnto him.

Of this the Kings resolution for the breach of the peace with the Turke, notice was withall speed giuen vnto the Constantinopolitane Emperour, and *Francis* the Florentine Cardinall, then lying with a fleet of seuentie gallies at the straits of HELLESPONTVS: for feare lest they hearing of the former concluded peace, should alter also or else quite desist from their former purposes. In the meane time whilest these things were yet in plotting, the Turke ignorant hereof, according to his promise, had withdrawne all his garrisons out of SERVIA, and other places before agreed vpon in the late concluded peace, restoring the same vnto the Despot, and others the lawfull owners, although it was not done at the very prefixed day, at which it should haue beene done. In which time also he set at libertie great numbers of captiues, and amongst the rest, the two blind sonnes of the Prince of SERVIA; faithfully performing whatsoeuer he had before vpon his religion promised in the league with the Christians before concluded, so desirous he was of peace with the Hungarians. Howbeit, *Vladislaus* by the counsell of *Huniades*, detained to his owne vse certaine of the strong holds in SERVIA: for which cause, *George* the Despot euer afterwards bore a secret grudge against *Huniades*.

Now as King *Vladislaus* (hauing by the perswasion of *Iulian* the Cardinall, renounced the league betwixt him and *Amurath*) was preparing his forces, the fame of the Epirot Prince *Scanderbeg* was also (by the recouerie of his fathers kingdome of EPIRVS out of the Turks hands, and by the late ouerthrow of *Alis Bassa*) growne great, euery man speaking of him honour and praise. Wherewith *Vladislaus* moued, & reasonably perswaded what a furtherance it would be vnto his haughtie designes (aiming at no lesse than the vtter ouerthrow of the Turks kingdome in EVROPE) if he might vnto his owne great preparations ioyne also the strength of that so fortunate

A tunate a Prince, by the conſent of his nobilitie, with all ſpeed diſpatched away his embaſſadours with letters vnto him, certifying him of his honorable purpoſe, for the rooting out of the Turks, and in that common cauſe praying his aid againſt ſuch a dangerous and dreadfull enemie: the purport whereof here followeth.

Vladiſlaus King of Hungarie and Polonia, vnto the noble *Scanderbeg*, Prince of EPIRVS, greeting.

The letters of King Vladiſlaus to Scanderbeg.

B *It may be that ſome good hap hath deferred this our late congratulation vntill this preſent, to the intent we might at this time, together with you, reioyce in the double ſucceſſe of your proſperitie: firſt, for the happie recouerie of your eſtate; and then, for that the ſame hath by your wiſedome and valour beene of late ſo notably defended. Wherefore in this we reioyce, not onely in your behalfe, but in the behalfe of all good Chriſtians, that it hath pleaſed God of his goodneſſe, by your valour to haue giuen ſo great an increaſe and comfort vnto the Chriſtian common-weale: for as much as amongſt other our great euils, the loſſe of the Albanian people hath not beene to be accounted the leaſt, at ſuch time as* Iohn Caſtriot, *a worthie Prince, your father, oppreſſed by* Amurath, *and by the vngratefull deſtinies taken out of this world, had neither the meanes to leaue vnto you his kingdome and ſcepter (as vnto his ſonne, then liuing in his enemies power) either was able yet otherwiſe to prouide for his affaires. And would to God this your father, moſt happie in ſuch a ſonne, might haue till now liued: whoſe felicitie had in that ſurmounted all*
C *others, if he might but haue ſeene you before his death. For as you ſeeme vnto me aboue all other Princes in the world (without offence be it ſaid) moſt accompliſhed with all the good graces and perfections both of bodie and mind, ſo are you endowed alſo with a certaine diuine and wonderfull fortune: vnder the good conduct whereof, not onely the whole kingdome of* EPIRVS *may thinke it ſelfe in ſecuritie; but all the reſt of the other nations alſo, lately by the deteſtable fraud and violence of the* Othoman *Kings diſmembred from the realme of* MACEDON, *may alſo recouer the former beautie of their ancient lawes and liberties. For (to ſay nothing of thoſe things which euen from your childhood hauing continually made you enuied, haue heretofore purchaſed vnto you an immortall fame and glorie euen amongſt the Barbarians themſelues) what can be more glorious than this victorie, which (as we haue heard and beleeue) you to your ſingular admiration, haue obtained by the ouerthrow and vtter diſcomfiture of* Alis
D Baſſa, *with his ſo great and mightie a power? But now O* Scanderbeg *(God ſo appointing it, who in his deepe and ſecret wiſedome hath reſerued you vnto theſe ſo dangerous times, for the publicke good and comfort of the Chriſtian common-weale) there offers it ſelfe vnto you an obiect of farre greater glorie, with a moſt faire and fit occaſion for you to reuenge your ſelfe of all the wrongs and iniuries both new and old, by* Amurath *the Turkiſh Sultan done, not in priuate to the perſon of your ſelfe onely, but vnto the whole ſtate and kingdome of* EPIRVS *alſo; and not the domeſticall and ciuill miſeries of your owne countrey onely, but the publicke calamities alſo, and thoſe opprobrious diſgraces done againſt the Chriſtian faith and religion in generall, now oppreſſed (I will not ſay extinguiſhed:) and that is, if you with your victorious forces will ſuccour vs in this extremitie of our affaires, not yet altogether deſperate. Hereunto doe all the Princes of* HVNGARIE *and* POLONIA, *and all other men of courage inuite you,*
E Iulian *the Cardinall of* S. Angell *intreateth you, with all thoſe deuout and courageous Chriſtians, which long ſince here with vs, and readie in armes, wiſh for nothing more than the preſence of your victorious enſignes. Which ſo faire an occaſion (by God himſelfe now offered) if you refuſe not, will in all mens iudgement be a ſure meane to vanquiſh and ouerthrow our common enemie the Turke, and to driue him quite out of* EVROPE, *wrongfully by him of ſo long time poſſeſſed. I need not therefore (as I ſuppoſe) to vſe any kind of perſwaſion vnto you in this cauſe and quarrell, the defenſe whereof doth purchaſe vnto vs health, light, and libertie: but being neglected, I feare and abhorre to forbode what may enſue thereof. We Chriſtians haue beene too too ſlacke and backward in helping one another: the flame hath now welneere conſumed vs all, whileſt no man thought it would haue come neere himſelfe. What doe we ſee of the Greeke empire? what of the Bulgarians, and Seruians? yea mine owne loſſes and manifold calamities,*
F *alreadie, and yet alſo to be endured, who is able to recount? The braue and moſt valiant Princes, the ſureſt bulwarkes and defences of the kingdome of* HVNGARIE, *from time to time loſt; and the puiſſant armies with one and the ſame fatall chance of warre conſumed and brought to nothing, who is able to reckon vp? Inſomuch that there is no houſe, wife, or matrone, in all* HVNGARIE, *which is not in ſome meaſure partaker of this heauineſſe. All this doe the Chriſtian Princes heare of, and yet the miſerable eſtate and condition of their allies can nothing moue any one of them: but ſuffer vs thus as a*

sacrifice for the rest, to be on all parts exposed to the rage and furie of the common and mercilesse enemie. G
Onely Eugenius *the most holy Bishop of* Rome, *and* Philip *Duke of* Burgvndie, *haue not refused to beare a part of the burthen of this our afflicted fortune: The one hath sent hither his Legate* Iulian *the Cardinall, with notable and puissant succours; and the other with his fleet at sea, and come as farre as* Hellespontvs, *so much as in him lieth doth notably hinder the Turks passage into* Evrope. *And one other hope there is not now farre from vs, and that is, your helpe, whereof we are so desirous: which we require of you, moued thereunto, partly by your valour so well knowne, and partly in regard of the imminent perill and common danger of vs all. And albeit we are not ignorant, how euill you may be at leisure to take such an expedition in hand, for the late troubled estate of your affaires, and your new recouered kingdome, as yet scarcely well established: yet notwithstanding, let it not with-hold you or keepe* H
you backe; assuring you, that as this expedition cannot be but vnto you most honourable, euen so this your present desert shall not be bestowed vpon vngratefull or thankelesse men: but that which you shall now first begin and vndertake for our preseruation and dignitie, we will from henceforth and euer continue for your glorie, and for the increase of your greatnesse. Fare you well. From our regall citie of Buda, *the fourth of Iuly* 1444.

Of this the Kings motion, *Scanderbeg* liking well, and thinking it farre better now in so fit a time, with his owne forces ioyned vnto the Hungarians his friends, thorowly to busie *Amurath*, than in short time after, himselfe alone to sustaine his whole power: by the generall consent of the Albanian Princes his confederates and allies, yeelded vnto his request; in liberall tearmes I promising him by his letters, in good time to be present with him with thirtie thousand good souldiers. The copie of which letters I thought it not amisse here to set downe also.

Scanderbeg Prince of the Epirots, vnto *Vladislaus* King of Hvngarie and Polonia, greeting.

Scanderbeg his answere by letters vnto King Vladislaus.

Your letters most inuincible King, I haue with like ioy and contentment receiued: which I in the generall assemblie of my chiefetaines hauing caused publickly to be read, there was not any one of them which was not of opinion, but that so iust an occasion of warre by you offered, was forthwith to be ioyfully on our behalfe also embraced. And so euery man doth both publickly and priuatly affirme, That nothing K
could haue happened vnto them more acceptable from God, than that they might by some notable seruice testifie their gratefull minds, and bind vnto them so excellent a Prince: as also to giue so fit succours vnto the Christian common-weale. In which forwardnesse of my people, I my selfe tooke great contentment and pleasure, both in regard of your selfe, and in the behalfe of the publicke and common cause: seeing my men of warre, and all other my subiects, of what state or dgree soeuer (without any perswasion vsed on my part) to be so cheerefully and couragiously minded in defence of the faith, and of the Christian religion; and so well affectioned towards your most royall maiestie. And to say the truth, who is he (if he be not hatefull vnto God and man) albeit there were no question of religion, or of the common danger, that would refuse so iust and lawfull a warre? for such a King, as vnto whom alone we may L
and ought to attribute, That we Christians doe not onely raigne, but euen line, breath, and enioy the libertie of our speech. Who would not willingly take vp armes, and aduenture himselfe into most manifest and certaine danger for the people of Hvngarie; *by whom in all ages the Christian common-weale hath with their so many trauels and so much of their bloud, beene so mightily supported and defended? who euen from the very cradle haue beene continuall enemies vnto our enemies, and haue as it were euen vowed themselues for the honour of the Christian religion and name. Would God (most mightie and redoubted* Vladislaus) *it had beene in my power to haue brought vnto you such forces to this honourable warre, as were answerable vnto my courage and desire: then happily* Evrope *should not longer lie in this ignominious estate, oppressed by* Amurath; *neither should the fields of* Varna *or* Basilia *so often smoke with the bloud of the Hungarians, nor euery corner of* Macedonia *with the bloud of the Epirots: both nations being as it were become the expiatorie sacrifices of* M
other sinnes and offences, we all now by turnes perish, whilest euery man thinketh himselfe borne but for himselfe alone. But why doe I vnto my selfe poure forth these vaine complaints. Truly, it neither repenteth me of my forces, neither as I suppose (if it shall please God, that our forces may once meet and ioyne together in so happie a warre) shall the Christian commonweale haue any cause to sorrow or be agreeued with the issue and euent of our fortune. For vnto those fifteen thousand good souldiers which lately

A *ly discomfited* Alis Bassa *on the borders of* MACEDONIA, *my purpose is to ioyne as many moe vnto them: with all which strength as soone as conueniently they may, I wil begin to set forward, ready to follow your ensignes to all euents whatsoeuer. And so fare you well, from* CROIA *the third of August* 1444.

These letters being dispatched away vnto the King, *Scanderbeg* forthwith began to leauy his forces. And first of all he caused with new supplies to be made strong, all those companies wherwith he had ouerthrowne *Alis Bassa*; not suffering any one of them to absent himselfe from this expedition. Vnto whom being in number fifteene thousand, all men of approoued valour, hee ioyned other fifteene thousand moe, no lesse valiant then they: such a power as hee neuer either
B before or after raised for the recouerie, or defence of his kingdome. And so furnished with all things necessarie for so honourable a warre, chearefully set forward, accompined with the vowes and hope of all his most faithfull and louing subiects. But being come to the borders of SERVIA, hee found the strait and difficult passages of that rough countrey shut vp by *George* the Despot, (Lord thereof, a man adorned with all the graces of nature, but otherwise a wicked damned Atheist, and a Christian but in name onely) who but lately before restored vnto his kingdome by the helpe of King *Vladislaus*, hauing changed his minde, did now mightily cleaue vnto the Turk his sonne in law (by whom he had before beene himselfe exiled) and in fauour of his quarell, and despight of the Hungarians, but especially of *Huniades*, had stoped vp the waies and passages whereby *Scanderbeg* was with his army to passe: who by his Embassadour sent of
C purpose vnto the Despot, complained to him of that wrong, putting him in minde of the periurous dealing of *Amurath* with him, notwithstanding hee had maried his daughter; and of the great pleasures the Hungarians had done him; of both which hee had good proofe: requesting him if it were but in regard of the common cause of Christianity to giue vnto him (as vnto his friend by whom hee was neuer in any thing wronged) passage; and not to staine himselfe with the perpetuall note of infamie, That hee being a Christian Prince, and of late so mightily oppressed by the Turke, should now to the great hinderance of the Christian common weale take part with him, against his friends and deliuerers. But what auaileth prayers or requests, bee they neuer so reasonable, with a man set downe to mischiefe? *Scanderbeg* out of hope by any other meanes to open his way, but by plaine force, resolued so to doe: although it much
D greeued him to spend those forces vpon a Christian Prince, which hee had prepared against the capitall enemy both of himselfe and all good Christians, old *Amurath* the Turkish Sultan.

But whilest hee thus discontented, spendeth his time with his armie vpon the borders of SERVIA, beset with many difficulties: *Vladislaus* prickt forward by the continuall solitation of *Iulian* the Cardinall, or else drawne on by his owne ineuitable destinie, hauing assembled a great armie of valiant and couragious souldiers out of HVNGARIE and POLONIA (yet in number farre inferiour to that hee had the yeare before, for that most of the volantarie souldiers were returned home) set forward from SEGEDINVM, and in the beginning of Nouember (a time vnfit for warres) passed ouer DANVBIVS, and entring into BVLGARIA,
E came to NICOPOLIS, the Metrapoliticall citie of that kingdome (but then in possession of the Turks) where he burnt the suburbs thereof, and in that fruitfull countrey there abouts refreshed his people three or foure daies, where he also mustered his armie and tooke a view thereof: at what time *Dracula* Vaiuoid of VALACHIA, a man of great experience in martiall affaires, being then present, & considering the small number of the kings armie, began to perswade him to retire, saying, He had sufficiently learned by his owne harmes, to deeme aright of the power of the Turkish Sultan; who (as hee sayd) was wont many times to carrie more men with him into the fields into his disport of hawking and hunting, then was there in the Kings campe: wherefore hee should doe well, not to expose those his small forces vnto so manifest perill, in such vnseasonable time of the yeare, but to reserue them vnto a more fit opportunitie, when hee
F might with greater power encounter his puissant enemie. This his counsell most men of greatest experience, and not carried away with other priuate respects, thought wholesome: but the Cardinall, author of this fatall warre, extolling with great words the last yeares victorie obtained against the Turke, with glorious promises of great aide, as well by sea from the Pope, and the Venetians, as by land from the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE and other Christian Princes; augmenting also the great troubles in ASIA, and promising an easie and happy

King Vladislaus setteth forward against the Turks.

succesſe

ſucceſſe vnto theſe wars in EVROPE; perſwaded the King that *Dracula* his ſpeech proceeded G
either of ignorance, vpon a ſuperficiall iudgement which he made of the Kings power there preſent, without regard of further ſtrength from his friends; or elſe of the priuate reſpect of his owne ſecuritie, in regard of a commodious league made a little before betwixt him and the Turke. So that the poore Prince ſeeing his counſell mightily impugned by the Cardinall, and not ſo well taken, as it was meant by him; ſtood in doubt whether to leaue him to his owne fortune, and himſelfe to his quiet peace, or caſting off the Turkiſh league, to ioyne with the King in this chance of warre: but at length reſolued as a martiall minded man, preferring the vncertaine glorie of the field before his owne aſſured reſt, ſaid vnto the King:

Seeing that either your princely fortune, which hath euer hitherto fauoured your high attempts; or H
elſe the hope of friends helpe, which I pray God faile you not at your need; or the ſecret deſignement of your deſtinie, vnable to be auoided, doth draw your maieſtie into a different opinion from me: that your reſolution, which I cannot by reaſonable perſwaſion alter, I will as the ſuddenneſſe of time, and my ſmall abilitie will permit, moſt gladly further.

Dracula aideth Vladiſlaus with his ſonne and 4000 horſe.

And therewith preſented vnto the King, his ſonne, with foure thouſand horſemen well appointed, to ſerue him in theſe wars; wiſhing vnto him ſuch good ſucceſſe as he himſelfe deſired. Afterward when he was about to take his leaue of the King, he preferred vnto him two luſtie young men, perfect guides for that countrey, with two horſes of incredible ſwiftneſſe, and with teares ſtanding in his eyes ſaid vnto him:

His laſt farewel vnto the King.

Take this ſmall gift in good part, as a poore refuge to flie vnto, if your fortune hap to faile you, which I I
tremble to thinke vpon: I pray God they be giuen in vaine, and ſo they ſhall if my praiers may preuaile. Yet if neceſſitie ſhall inforce you to vſe them, you ſhall find them ſeruiceable at your need.

And ſo taking his laſt farewell of the King, returned into VALACHIA. *Vladiſlaus* marching on from NICOPOLIS toward THRACIA, tooke many townes and forts by the way, which the Turks for feare yeelded vnto him: at laſt he came to SVMIVM and PEZECHIVM, where the Turkiſh garriſons truſting as much to the ſtrength of the places, as to their owne valour, ſtood vpon their guard: but the King laid ſiege to both the ſaid places, and tooke them by aſſault; where he put to ſword fiue thouſand of the Turks.

The Turks Baſſaes terrified with theſe vnexpected troubles, aduertiſed *Amurath* thereof, K
requeſting him to leaue his obſcure life, and to leuie the greateſt power he could in ASIA, for the defence of the Turkiſh kingdome in EVROPE, which otherwiſe was in ſhort time like to be loſt: blaming alſo his diſcretion, for committing the gouernment of ſo great a kingdome to ſo young a Prince as was *Mahomet* his ſonne, vnto whom many of the great captaines did halfe ſcorne to yeeld their due obedience. *Amurath* herewith awaked, as it had beene out of a dead ſleepe, left his cloiſter, and with great ſpeed gathered a ſtrong armie in ASIA, and came to the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS; where he found the paſſage ſtopped by the Venetian and Popes gallies, and was therefore at his wits end. But marching along the ſea ſide vnto the ſtraits of BOSPHORVS, he there found meanes to conuay ouer his whole armie: vſing therein (as ſome write) the helpe of the Genoway marchants ſhips, paying vnto the Genowayes for the paſſage of euery Turke a duckat, which amounted to the ſumme of an hun- L
dred thouſand duckets: or as ſome others affirme, corrupting with great bribes them that were left for the defence of this paſſage. And being now got ouer, ioyned his Aſian armie with ſuch other forces as his Baſſaes had in readineſſe in EVROPE: and ſo marching on ſeuen dayes, encamped within foure miles of VARNA, a citie pleaſantly ſtanding vpon the Euxine ſea ſide in BVLGARIA, where the Chriſtian armie lay: for *Vladiſlaus* hearing of *Amurath* his comming with ſo great an armie, had retired thither, hauing but a little before taken the ſame citie of VARNA from the Turks, with CALACRIVM, GALATA, MACROPOLIS, and others vpon the ſea coaſt.

Vpon the firſt report that *Amurath* was with ſuch a mightie armie come ouer the ſtrait of BOSPHORVS, *Vladiſlaus* who before was in good hope that he could not poſſibly haue found M
any paſſage, entred into counſell with the commanders of his armie, what courſe was now beſt to take: where many which before had beene moſt forward in that action (preſuming that *Amurath* could by no means haue tranſported his armie) were now ſo diſcoraged with the fame of his comming, that they aduiſed the king in time to retire home, and not to oppoſe ſo ſmal an armie againſt ſuch a world of people as was reported to follow the Turke. But other captaines

of

A of greater courage, and especially *Huniades*, said, It was not for the Kings honour, first to inuade his enemies dominions, and presently to turne his backe vpon the first report of their comming; wishing him rather to remember the good fortune of his former wars, and that he was to fight against the same enemie whom he had victoriously ouerthrowne the yeere before: as for the multitude of his enemies, he had learned by experience (as he said) not be moued therewith, for that it was the manner of the Turkish Kings, more to terrifie their enemies with the shew of a huge armie, than with the valour of their souldiers, which were nothing to be accounted of, but as effeminate, in comparison of the Hungarians. Whereupon the King resolued to trie the fortune of the field.

B *Vladislaus* vnderstanding by his espials, that *Amurath* the night before encamped within foure miles, was now putting his armie in order of battell; committed the ordering of all his forces vnto the valiant captaine *Huniades*: who with great care and industrie disposed the same, garding the one side of the battell with a fenne or marrish, and the other side with cariages, and the rereward of his armie with a steepe hill. Therein politiquely prouiding, that the Christian armie, being farre lesse than the Turks in number, could not be compassed about with the multitude of their enemies, neither any way charged but afront. The Turks armie approaching, began to skirmish with the Christians, which manner of fight was long time with great courage maintained, and that with diuers fortune, sometime one partie preuailing, and sometime the other; but with such slaughter on both sides, that the ground was couered and stained with the dead

The great battell of Varna fought betweene king Vladislaus and Amurath.

C bodies and bloud of the slaine. At length the battell being more closely ioyned, the victorie began to incline to the Christians, for *Huniades* had most valiantly with his Transiluanian and Valachian horsemen, put to flight both the wings of the Turkish armie, and made great slaughter whersoeuer he came. Insomuch, that *Amurath* dismaied with the flight of his souldiers, was about to haue fled himselfe out of the maine battell, had he not beene staied by a common souldier, who laying hands vpon the raines of his bridle, staied him by force, and sharply reproued him of cowardise. The captaines, and prelates about the King (whom it had better beseemed to haue beene at deuout praiers in their oratories, than in armes at that bloudie battell) encouraged by the prosperous successe of *Huniades*, and desirous to be partakers of that victorie, foolishly left their safe stations, where they were appointed by him to stand fast, and

D disorderedly pursued the chase, leauing that side of the battell where they stood, open vnto the Turks: but they were not gone farre, before they were hardly encountred by a great part of the Turks armie, for such purpose placed in a vallie fast by. In which fight *Lesco* one of the most valiant captaines of the Hungarians was slaine; and the Bishop of VERADIVM, a better churchman than souldier, and the first man that disordered the battell, seeking to saue himselfe by flight thorow the fenne, was there filthily strangled in the deepe mud, after he had with his horse therein struggled a great while. The Bishop of AGRIA, a man of greatest authoritie with the King, was at the same time also lost, with many other churchmen more. The Cardinall, with some other of the expert captaines retiring toward their former standings, were hardly assailed by the Turks, who by the comming in of the King and *Huniades*, were with great slaughter for-

E ced to retire, and euen readie to flie. *Amurath* seeing the great slaughter of his men, and all brought into extreme danger, beholding the picture of the Crucifix in the displaied ensignes of the voluntarie Christians, pluckt the writing out of his bosome, wherein the late league was compriſed, and holding it vp in his hand with his eyes cast vp to heauen, said:

Amurath praieth vnto Christ.

Behold thou crucified Christ, this is the league thy Christians in thy name made with me: which they haue without cause violated. Now if thou be a God, as they say thou art, and as we dreame, reuenge the wrong now done vnto thy name, and me, and shew thy power vpon thy periurious people, who in their deeds denie thee their God.

The King with *Huniades* furiously pursued the chased Turks, with bloudie execution a great space: when as the King in his heat hardly perswaded by *Huniades* to returne againe vnto his

F campe, at his comming thither found the Cardinall *Iulian*, with *Franke*, one of his chiefe captaines, and others, ouercharged with the Turks, which had againe made head against that part of the Christian armie: and there yet fought couragiously, by reason of their multitude, being also backt by the Ianizaries, which all this while had stood fast with their old King, as his last and most assured refuge, but were now come in. There began a most cruell and fierce fight: in the successe whereof, the Turks well saw the whole estate of their kingdome in EVROPE to consist,

A cruell fight.

many

many were there ſlaine on both ſides : the Turks feeling their loſſe leſſe than indeed it was, by reaſon of their multitude; and the Chriſtians, by reaſon of their courage. A great while the victorie ſtood doubtfull, inſomuch, that at length the Turks began to ſhrinke backe, in that part of the battell where the King and *Huniades* fought. But in the left ſide, they preuailed ſo vpon the Chriſtians, that they were euen readie to haue fled. Which when *Huniades* (hauing a vigilant eye vnto euery part of the armie) perceiued, he with ſpeed made thither, and there againe with his preſence reſtored the battell almoſt before loſt. Which done, he returned againe towards the King, who in the meane time had moſt valiantly repulſed a great number of the Turks, & now was come vnto the Ianizaries, *Amurath* his laſt hope. There was to be ſeen a thouſand manners of death, whileſt both the armies fought more like wild beaſts in their rage and furie, than warie and politicke ſouldiers. In this confuſed medly, the young King *Vladiſlaus* with greater courage than care of himſelfe, brake into the battell of the Ianizaries : at which time, *Amurath* himſelf was by a valiant Frenchman a Knight of the Roads, firſt wounded with a pike, and after aſſailed with his ſword, and had there ended his daies, but that he was ſpeedily reſcued by his guard, by whom this worthie Knight after great proofe of his valour was there ſlaine in the middeſt of his enemies. *Vladiſlaus* being got in alſo amongſt them, valiantly performed all the parts of a worthie ſouldier, vntill ſuch time as his horſe being ſlaine vnder him, he was forthwith oppreſſed by the multitude of his enemies and ſlaine : his head being ſtrucke off by *Ferizes*, one of the old Ianizaries, was by him preſented vnto *Amurath*; who commanded it preſently to be put vpon the point of a launce, and proclamation to be made, that it was the head of the Chriſtian King : which was afterwards ſo caried thorow the principall cities of Macedonia, and Grecia, as a trophey of the Turks victorie. *Huniades* after he had in vaine giuen diuers braue attempts, to haue reſcued the kings bodie, retired with a few Valachian horſmen, and ſeeing no hope of better hap (for all the Chriſtians being diſcouraged with the death of the king, had now taken themſelues to flight) gaue place to neceſſitie, and reſeruing himſelfe to his future fortune, fled ouer the mountaines into the thicke woods, from whence with much difficultie he got ouer Danvbivs into Valachia, and was there (as ſome write) by *Dracula* Prince of that countrey taken priſoner : In reuenge whereof, after he was enlarged by the Hungarians, he ſo aided *Danus* againſt *Dracula*, that in fine, *Dracula* and his ſonne were both ſlaine, and *Danus* placed in his roome. *Iulian* the Cardinall flying out of the battell, was found by that worthie man *Gregorie Sanoſe*, lying in the deſert foreſt by the way ſide, mortally wounded, and halfe ſtripped : by whom he was in few words ſharply reproued, as the wicked authour of that perfidious warre, and there left giuing vp the ghoſt. Many of the Chriſtians which fled out of that battell, fell into the enemies hands, and ſo were ſlaine: but greater was the number of them which were drowned in the fennes, or that by hunger and cold periſhed in the woods, or elſe after long and miſerable trauell, finding no paſſage ouer. Danvbivs, fell at length into the Turkiſh ſlauerie. This great and mortall battell, as it was with diuers fortune fought, ſo was alſo the preſent report thereof moſt vncertaine : for the Turks that were at the firſt put to flight, reported in the townes there by as they fled, that the battell was loſt : & they which had all the day endured the fight, not altogether aſſured of the victorie, and not knowing whether the Hungarians had retired themſelues, whileſt they ſuſpected ſome deceit in the Kings campe, by reaſon of the great ſilence therein, ſtaied two daies before they durſt aduenture to take the ſpoile thereof. The number of them that were ſlaine in this battell, as well on the one ſide as the other, was great ; as the mounts, and little hils, raiſed of the bones and bodies of them that were there buried, doe yet at this day declare. Howbeit, the certaine number was not knowne, ſome reporting moe, ſome fewer. Yet in this moſt agree, that of the Chriſtian armie being not great, ſcarce the third part eſcaped : and that the Turks bought this victorie with a farre greater loſſe, although it was of them leſſe felt, by reaſon of their multitude, made leſſe by that ſlaughter; as they that report leaſt thereof affirme, by thirtie thouſand. Which may well ſeeme rather to be ſo, for that *Amurath* after this victorie, neither farther proſecuted the ſame, nor ſhewed any tokens of ioy at all, but became very melancholie and ſad, and being of them about him, demanded why after ſo great a victorie, he was no merrier ; anſwered, That he wiſhed not at ſo great a price, to gaine many ſuch victories. Yet in memoriall thereof he erected a great pillar, in the ſame place where the King was ſlaine, with an inſcription of all that was then done: which as they ſay is yet there to be ſeene at this day. This bloudie battell was fought neere vnto Varna (in ancient time called

Amurath in danger.

King Vladiſlaus ſlaine.

Huniades flieth.

Dionisio-

A DIONISIOPOLIS (a place fatall vnto many great warriours, and therefore of them euen yet abhorred) the tenth day of Nouember, in the yeere of our Lord Christ 1444.

Some maliciously impute the losse of the battell of VARNA, and the death of the King, to *Huniades*, who (as they said) fled out of this battell with ten thousand horsemen: but this report agreeth not with the noble disposition of that couragious and valiant captaine, but seemeth rather to haue beene deuised, to excuse the foule dealing of the clergie; who as most histories beare witnesse, were the chiefe authors both of the warre, and of the lamentable calamitie ensuing thereof.

From the battell of VARNA *Amurath* returned to HADRIANOPLE, hauing lost the great-
B test part of his best souldiers, and there with great solemnitie buried the bodie of *Carazia*, viceroy of EVROPE, slaine in that battell: and then calling together all his nobilitie, againe resigned vp his kingdome vnto his sonne *Mahomet*, retiring himselfe vnto MAGNESIA, where he liued a solitarie and priuate life, hauing before vowed so to doe, in the great feare he was in, in the late battell against *Vladislaus*: but after he had a short time performed these his vowes in that obscure and melancholie life, he wearie thereof, as some suppose, as not a little reuiued with the late victorie, or else solicited by *Caly Bassa* and other great counsellors, returned againe to HADRIANOPLE, resuming vnto himselfe the gouernment of the kingdome, to the great discontentment of his ambitious sonne *Mahomet*.

Amurath to performe his vow, resigneth his kingdome to his sonne Mahomet, which he in short time after taketh againe vpon him.

Scanderbeg yet sticking in the borders of SERVIA, and hearing what had happened vnto
C King *Vladislaus* with the Hungarians, was therewith exceedingly greeued: and hauing now lost the hope whereupon he had vndertaken that so great an expedition, resolued to returne home againe into EPIRVS. Neuertheless, to be in some part reuenged of the wicked Despot, he with his armie forcibly brake into his countrey, and there did exceeding great harme. In his returning homewards, great numbers of Hungarians and Polonians, lately escaped from the slaughter at VARNA, repaired vnto him, whom he (according to the extremitie of their fortune) courteously releeued: and furnishing them with such things as they wanted, prouided them shipping to RAGVSA, from whence they might in safetie returne into their owne countries. Thus by the disloyaltie and trecherie of the faithlesse Despot of SERVIA, was *Scanderbeg* staied from being present at the bloudie battell of VARNA, to the vnspeakable losse of the
D Christian common-weale: for it could not be, but that so many thousands of most resolute and expert souldiers, vnder the leading of so worthie a chiefetaine, must needs haue done much for the gaining of the victorie. And what more glorious sight could a man haue wished for, than to haue seene so puissant an armie in the field against the sworne enemie of Christendome, directed by two such valiant and renowned chiefetaines, as neuer, either before or since their time, was seene the like in one battell against the enemies of Christ and the Christian religion? They were both men of inuincible courage, of exceeding strength and agilitie of bodie, wise, prudent, and subtill; both of long time exercised in the Turks warres, the greatest terrour of that nation, and most worthie champions of the Christian religion, being therein both very zealous. Of the two, *Huniades* was at that time accounted the better commander, and the more
E politicke, as a man of greater experience in martiall affaires, by reason of his greater yeeres: which was well counteruailed by *Scanderbeg* his perpetuall good fortune, still as it were attending vpon him, and by his experience afterwards gotten, as in the course of his historie well appeareth.

The comparison betwixt Huniades and Scanderbeg.

Amurath aduertised of these proceedings of *Scanderbeg*, as also of the great harmes by him done in MACEDONIA, and that the frontiers of his dominions bordering vpon EPIRVS, were by his furie vtterly wasted and spoiled, and his people there for most part slaine, and that the rest had for feare forsaken their dwellings, and left the countrey desolate and vnpeopled; was therewith exceedingly moued. Yet for so much as he still stood in dread of the Hungarians, and was now himselfe clogged with yeeres, and therefore more desirous of rest; consid-
F ering also the young yeeres of his eldest sonne *Mahomet*, as yet vnfit for the gouernment of so great and troublesome a kingdome; with the perpetuall good fortune of *Scanderbeg*, and malice of *Huniades*: he thought it not best to conuert all his forces vpon him, but to proue if he could cunningly draw him into some dishonourable peace for a time, that so he might afterwards at leisure be the better reuenged of him. For which cause he writ vnto him letters, mixt with grieuous threats, and some faigned courtesies, as followeth:

Amurath

G

Amurath Ottoman, King of the Turks, and Emperour of the East, to the moſt ingratefull *Scanderbeg*, wiſheth neither health nor welfare.

The ſullen and craftie letters of Amurath to Scanderbeg.

I neuer wanted honourable preferments to beſtow vpon thee all the while thou diddeſt liue in my court, of all others moſt vnkind Scanderbeg ; *but now I want words wherewith to ſpeake vnto thee, thou haſt ſo highly offended my mind, and touched mine honour, that I know not in diſcretion what words to vſe vnto thee, but of late one of my domeſticall ſeruants. For neither will hard ſpeech mollifie the naturall fierceneſſe of thy proud diſpoſition, neither art thou worthie of better, which haſt farre exceeded all hoſtilitie. And becauſe thou wouldeſt omit no occaſion to prouoke me, haſt of late proceeded to that point of follie, that thou haſt had thine owne affaires, and the welfare of thine owne ſubiects, in ſmall regard, by confederating thy ſelfe in armes with the Hungarians, againſt me. It greeueth me to rehearſe other thy vnkindneſſe, and as it were to touch thoſe ſores, if my mind would euer ſuffer me to forget the ſame, or that thy ſo manifold and horrible treaſons, and ſtrange examples of a moſt vnthankfull mind, were to be couered with ſilence. Yet I thought good to aduertiſe thee (although perhaps too late) leſt that thy vnſtaied heat doe vntimely ouerthrow thee, with thy vnluckie kingdome : and then thou wouldeſt make humble confeſſion of thy long tranſgreſſion, when thou haſt loſt thy ſelfe, and left no hope of refuge in thy deſperate eſtate. We haue hitherto ſufficiently ſuffered thy manifold iniuries : thou haſt ſufficiently prouoked the maieſtie of the* Othoman *empire, with wrong and contumelious deſpight, and I with patience haue borne all theſe thy contempts. Thinkeſt thou that my armie by thee betraied vnto the Hungarians, ſhall be vnreuenged ? Thinkeſt thou that ſo many cities and townes in* Epirvs, *by thee rent from the bodie of my empire, with my garriſons there ſlaine, ſhall be forgotten ? Or thinkeſt thou with thy late committed outrages to eſcape my reuenging hands ? Remember the deſtruction of mine armie vnder* Alis Baſſa ; *the waſting and burning of my dominions ; and lately, the Hungarian warres, by thee ſo farre as in thee was, countenanced ; with the territories of* George, *the Deſpot of* Servia, *my father in law, by thee ſpoiled. At length amend thou graceleſſe man, and expect not farther, whether my indignation will breake out. Let not theſe trifling allurements of thy good fortune, ſo puffe vp thy fooliſh deſires, and ſharpen thy conceits, that thy miſerable fortunes afterwards may moue euen thy greateſt enemies, or my ſelfe, to compaſſion. I would thou ſhouldeſt at length remember my courteſies (if any ſparke of humanitie remaine in thy ſauage nature) and make me not longer ſorrie, that I haue ſo euill beſtowed the ſame. And although it is not the part of an honourable mind, to rehearſe thoſe things which we haue in bountie beſtowed vpon any man ; yet is it the token of a moſt vnthankfull nature, ſo eaſily to forget all kindneſſe paſt, as to need to be put in remembrance thereof. Wherefore* Scanderbeg, *I cannot but bewaile thy hap, and lament thine eſtate : For, to let paſſe the health of thy ſoule (which thou a very reprobate, eſteemeſt as nothing) not to ſpeake of the lawes of* Mahomet *by thee deſpiſed, and the holy Prophet by thee contemned, for the zeale thou haſt vnto the Chriſtian ſuperſtition : what haſt thou (which now holdeſt thy poore and baſe kingdome in ſuch price) euer wanted at my hands of all thoſe things which moſt delight the deſires of men ? Diddeſt thou euer want armour, horſes, a great traine of followers and ſeruants, money, or other ſuperfluities, the allurements of all ages ? Or diddeſt thou want matter to exerciſe thy valour, for increaſe of thine honour ? Waſt thou euer denied preferments, dignities, and honours of all ſorts fit for thine age, both at home and abroad ? Was any man in my court dearer vnto me, than thy ſelfe ? What growing wit, not of ſtrangers onely, but of them that were neereſt vnto my ſelfe, was better welcome vnto me than thine ? With what carefull inſtruction did I cauſe thee to be brought vp ? When thou waſt deliuered vnto me almoſt a child, I daily cheriſhed and increaſed thy hoped towardlineſſe, with learning and nurture : I haue at all times honoured thee with rich rewards, magnificall praiſes, and honours of the field (which of all worldly things is moſt glorious) ſo that in all feats of armes no ſouldier was to me better knowne, or captaine of me more honoured. For all theſe great benefits,* Scanderbeg, *thou now ſheweſt thy ſelfe ſuch an one, that I may be thought not to haue brought vp ſuch a man as I hoped for, but a very ſerpent in mine owne boſome. But the loue of thy countrey did moue thee : which if thou hadſt asked of me, would I haue denied the ſame vnto thee ? Which (if thou doeſt well remember) I ſo oftentimes voluntarily profered vnto thee ? But thou haddeſt rather to gaine the ſame by trecherie, than to receiue it at my hands of courteſie. So, thine be it therefore on* God *his name, and that with my very good will. And verily, according to my accuſtomed clemencie towards all them whom I haue once well knowne, and beene familiarly acquainted with,*

H I K L M

A *with, I now pardon thee all thou hast offended me; not for any thy present deserts, which are none, but because in this publique enmitie, it pleaseth me to remember my former kindnesse in private towards thee, and thy faithfulnesse sometimes in my affaires; especially for that the time was much longer wherein thou seruedst me, than the time wherein thou hast offended me.* CROIA *and thy fathers kingdome (although thou hast gained the same by foule treacherie) I giue vnto thee, vpon condition thou willingly restore vnto me the other townes of* EPIRVS, *which by no right belong vnto thee, but are mine by law of armes, by my selfe honourably won. Whatsoeuer thou hast taken from my father in law, the Prince of* SERVIA, *thou shalt forthwith restore, and make him an honourable recompence for the other harmes thou hast done vnto him; and for euer hereafter, thou shalt as well*
B *forbeare to offer violence to any our friends, as to aid any our enemies. So shalt thou for euer auoid the displeasure of the Turks, and stand in my good grace and fauour, as thou hast done before: except thou haddest rather (being taught by thine owne harmes) then in vaine crie for mercie, when thy furious outrage shall haue me in person, an implacable reuenger. Thou knowest thy forces, thou knowest the strength of mine armes; thou hast before thine eyes the fresh example of the Hungarian fortune, so that thou needest no further admonitions. Yet I would thou shouldest write at large what thou intendest to doe. Thou maist also conferre with* Ayradin *our seruant, our trustie and faithfull messenger, of whom thou shalt vnderstand more than are in these letters comprised. Farewell if thou be wise. From* HADRIANOPLE.

C To these letters *Scanderbeg* gaue small credit, and lesse to the messenger, but least of all to the old Fox himselfe, whom he well knew to haue written nothing simply of good meaning, but onely to gaine a cessation from warres, vntill he might at better leisure set vpon him with all his forces: wherefore calling *Ayradin* the messenger vnto him, whom he rather held for a craftie spie, than an honourable embassadour, after he had many times both publiquely and priuately discoursed with him, so farre forth as was possible to sound the depth of his comming, and had also further entertained him with all honourable courtesies, he shewed him all his campe, with the strength thereof; which he did, because he would not haue the craftie messenger to thinke, that he was any thing afraid of his masters greatnesse. And at last greatly complaining of *Amurath* his cruell and perfidious dealing against his father, his brethren, and himselfe, he sent him
D away with such answere in writing as followeth.

The souldier of Christ Iesus, *George Castriot*, surnamed *Scanderbeg*, Prince of EPIRVS, to *Amurath Ottoman* King of the Turks sendeth greeting.

Thou hast in times past (as thou writest) exceeded me in many kinds of courtesies, and at this present I will exceed thee in modest and temperate speech: For I thinke there is no greater token of a base mind, than not to be able to forbeare to giue railing and opprobrious words, euen vnto our most mortall enemies. Wherefore we haue with patience receiued and seene, both thy letters and messenger: and to
E *confesse a truth, they haue ministred vnto me greater occasion of smile, than choller: whilest at the first thou shamest not to accuse me of much ingratitude, and treason: and presently following a milder passion, seemest carefull of my soules health, being ignorant of thine owne miserable estate, as a studious defender of a most damnable errour. And at last, keeping neither law of armes, nor orderly course answering to our affaires, doest most insolently and vnaduisedly, as a valiant conquerour to his vanquished enemie, propound many conditions of peace, of such qualitie and condition, that mine eares scorne to heare the same. Truely* Amurath, *although thy immoderate rayling might moone a man of greatest patience to intemperat speech: yet I impute the same partly to thy great age, and partly to the waywardnesse of thy nature; and the rest, to thy conceiued griefe, which I know thou canst hardly moderate: and the more, for that I haue not set downe my selfe to contend with thee in foule and vnseemely language; but*
F *with armes and the iust furie of warre. Yet I pray thee, wherefore dost thou so exclaime against mee before God and man? as though thou hadst first suffered wrong and iniurie from mee, and that thou hadst not in truth first done the same. Doest thou call my necessarie departing, a perfidious treachrie? my native countrey by my policie and valour recouered, doest thou obiect to mee as a villaine? obiect the same still and spare not; charge mee with such crimes for euer, I care not. The long catalogue of thy kindnesse towards me, which thou rehearsest, I could willingly remẽber, if it drew not with it the wofull remẽbrance*

The resolute answer of Scanderbeg to Amurath his letters.

of my greater miseries. Which if they were to be compared together, the greatnesse of thy good deserts would be ouerwhelmed with the multitude of thy greater tyrannies; which I had rather thou shouldest count with thy selfe, than blush whilest I repeat them. Euery man that knoweth them, may maruell how I had power to endure them, or that thou wast not wearie at last of thy crueltie and secret hatred. Thou tookest away my fathers kingdome by force; thou diddest murther my brethren; and my selfe thou diddest most wickedly vow to death, when I little feared any such crueltie. And doth it now seeme strange to thee, O Amurath, *that an inuincible mind, desirous of libertie, should seeke to breake out of the bonds of so great slauerie? How long at length diddest thou thinke I would endure thy proud and insolent bondage? which for all that I many yeeres endured, and refused not thy command. I exposed my selfe to publicke and priuate dangers, both voluntarily and by thy designement: speeches were giuen out daily by thy selfe, and the admonition of my friends concerning thy deepe treacherie, was rife in mine eares: yet for all that, of long time I simply beleeued both thy words and deeds to haue beene deuoid of all fraud, vntill thy cankered malice began too too apparently to shew it selfe, then began I also to glose with thee, wholly metamorphosed into thine owne conceits, vntill I found occasion to recouer my libertie. Wherefore there is no cause thou shouldest now greeue, if thou be well beaten with thine owne rod. But these are but trifles,* Amurath, *in comparison of those things which I haue laid vp in hope and resolution of mind. Therefore hereafter surcease thine angrie threats, and tell not vs of the Hungarian fortune. Euery man hath his owne resolution, and euery men a particular gouernour of his actions: and so will we with patience endure such fortune as it shall please God to appoint vs. In the meane time, for direction of our affaires, we will not request counsell of our enemies, nor peace of thee, but victorie by the helpe of God. Farewell. From our campe.*

When *Amurath* had read these letters, and further conferred with *Arradin*, he was filled with wrath and indignation, wondering at the great resolution of so small a Prince, presently casting in his mind (as was thought) the difficultie of that warre. Yet because he would giue no token of feare, oftentimes stroking his white beard, as his manner was when he was throughly angrie, with a dissembled cheerefulnesse of countenance said:

Amurath his passionat speech in his rage against Scanderbeg.

Thou desirest (wicked man) thou desirest the title of some honourable death: wee will giue it thee (beleeue vs) wee will giue it thee. Wee our selues will be present at the buriall of our foster child, and in person (though vnbidden) honour the funerall pompe of the great King of Epirvs; *that thou shalt neuer complaine among the damned ghosts, that thou diddest die a base or obscure kind of death.*

And for because at that time, by reason of many great occurrents, he could not conuert his whole power into Epirvs, he sent *Ferises*, one of his best captaines, with nine thousand choice horsemen, to keepe *Scanderbeg* in doing, and to spoile his countrey so much as he could. Which was with such speed done, that it was thought *Ferises* would haue beene in the heart of Epirvs, before *Scanderbeg* could haue had knowledge of his comming. But for all his haste, he could not so preuent the flying fame, but that *Scanderbeg* hearing thereof, and hauing his men alwayes in readinesse, placed fifteene hundred good footmen in ambush vpon the rough mountaines, leading into the valley of Movea, whereby the Turks must needs passe into Epirvs; placing also two thousand horsemen, as he thought most fit and conuenient for his purpose. *Ferises* descending from the high mountaines full of woods and bushes, by the broken and stonie wayes leading into the valley, was in that troublesome and intricate passage fiercely set vpon by *Scanderbegs* readie footmen, suddenly arising out of ambush, where the Turks hauing no vse of their horses, but rather by them encombered, were slaine as Deere enclosed in a toyle. In this conflict seuen hundred and sixtie Turks were taken prisoners, and a greater number slaine, and *Ferises* himselfe, with the rest, enforced to flie, crying still out as he fled, *Better some saued, than all lost. Scanderbeg* hauing thus ouerthrowne *Ferises*, pursued him into Macedonia, and with the spoile there taken, rewarded his souldiers, as he had also many times before done.

Amurath greeued with the ouerthrow of *Ferises*, presently sent *Mustapha* a politicke and hardie captaine, with a new supplie of six thousand souldiers to take the charge from *Ferises*: commanding him in no case, nor vpon any occasion, to enter farre into Epirvs: but onely to burne and spoile the frontiers thereof, saying, That he would account it for good seruice, if he might but vnderstand, that the trees and fruits of that countrey had felt the force of his anger.

Mustapha

A *Mustapha* hauing receiued his charge, when he began to draw neere the borders of EPIRVS, continually sent out scouts before his armie, to see if the passages were cleere, and so warily entred the vallie of MOCRRA, where *Ferises* not long before was ouerthrowne. In this fruitfull vallie, being the frontiers of *Scanderbegs* dominion, *Mustapha* entrenched his armie, vpon the rising of a hill, and placed espials vpon the tops of the high mountaines round about, by them to discouer the comming of the enemie, and to haue notice thereof by signes into the campe: then reseruing foure thousand horsemen with himselfe, to keepe his campe, he sent forth the rest of his armie, about nine thousand horsemen, to forrage and spoile the countrey; giuing charge before, that euery man vpon paine of death should presently retire to the campe, vpon signe giuen from
B thence, as to a place of safetie and refuge. The Turkish armie ranging ouer that rich and pleasant vallie, burnt the villages, cut downe trees, spoiled the vineyards, and made hauocke of all things that fire and sword could destroy; in that point executing *Amuraths* command to the full. At length *Scanderbeg* drawing neere to this vallie, with foure thousand horsemen and a thousand foot, was aduertised of all the enemies doings, by an Epirot souldier, who greeuously wounded, had hardly escaped from the Turks: of him he vnderstood, what number of Turks were burning and destroying the countrey, of the campe also kept by *Mustapha*, and how espials were placed vpon the mountaines. *Scanderbeg* hauing well considered *Mustapha* his warie proceedings, and seeing no policie to be vsed against so carefull an enemie, resolued to vanquish him by plaine force, by assaulting him suddenly in his trenches, before his dispersed souldiers
C could repaire to the campe: and hauing to this purpose, with effectuall perswasions encouraged the minds of his valiant souldiers, readie of themselues to follow him thorow all dangers; when he had set all things in order for assaulting the enemies campe, speedily entred the vallie, and was presently discouered by the enemies espials, from the tops of the high hils, and a signe giuen to the campe, from whence also the appointed signe was giuen for the dispersed souldiers to retire: but most of them being straied from the campe, and busied in taking the spoile of the countrey, heard not or saw not the signe giuen. Those which were within the hearing thereof, retired to the campe, and at their heeles followed *Scanderbegs* souldiers, terrifying them with calling vpon the name of *Scanderbeg*. Many of the Turks were by the Christians slaine in the entrance of the campe, with their booties in their hands, and presently the Turks trenches were now by
D *Scanderbegs* souldiers couragiously assaulted, and the Turks beaten from the top of them. They hauing won the trenches, preuailed still vpon the Turks, filling all their campe with feare and slaughter. There was no vse of shot in that medlie, by reason of the straightnesse of the place, for they were now come to pell mell. *Mustapha* seeing his souldiers put to the worst, and that the campe was not long to be defended, tooke horse and fled by the port which was furthest from the enemie. The rest of the souldiers fled also, making such poore shift for themselues as they could. In this battell 5000 Turks were slaine, and but 300 taken; for the Christians enraged with the spoile of the countrey, reuenged themselues with the slaughter of the Turks. *Scanderbeg* lost in this conflict but 20 horsemen, and 50 footmen. The rest of the Turks armie dispersed in the countrey, hearing the tumult in the campe, misdoubting the fortune of their fel-
E lowes, fled also: yet many of them were in that fight pursued and slaine.

Scanderbeg his valiant resolution for the assaulting of Mustapha in his campe.

After this ouerthrow, *Mustapha* returning to *Amurath*, the better to excuse the misfortune of himselfe, and the other captaines before sent, greatly commended the inuincible courage of *Scanderbeg*, and his wonderfull skill in feats of armes; perswading *Amurath* either to send a greater power against him, or else none at all, saying, That to send such small armies, was but to minister matter to the increase of his glorie, and the infamie of the Turks; and to vse policie against him the master of policie, was but meere follie. It greeued *Amurath* to heare the praises of his enemie, although he knew the same to be true, by the continuall fortune he had alwaies against his great captaines *Alis Bassa*, *Ferises*, and *Mustapha*: wherefore he determined for a time not to prouoke him further, but to suffer him to liue in peace: yet commanded *Mustapha* to renew his
F armie for defence of the borders of his kingdome towards EPIRVS, against the innouation of *Scanderbeg*; but straightly commanding him in no case to inuade any part of EPIRVS, neither vpon any occasion offered, or conceiued hope of victorie, to ioyne battell with *Scanderbeg*, for feare of such euill successe as before.

At this time also the Grecians of PELOPONESVS, now called MORRA, hauing before fortified the strait of CORINTH from sea to sea, with a perpetuall wall, which they called HEXA-

MYLVM, and deepe trenches about six miles in length, had also built fiue strong castles in the same wall, of purpose to take away all passage by land into that rich countrey, and began now not only to denie the yeerely tribute they were wont to pay vnto the Turkish King, but also to inuade such Princes of ACHAIA their neighbours, as were content to remaine still the Turks tributaries: amongst whom *Nereus* Prince of ATHENS, and *Turacan* gouernour of THESSALIA for *Amurath*, ceased not by continuall complaints to incense him against them of PELOPONESVS. Who hauing his armie in readinesse, although it was now winter, and he himselfe very aged, set forward from HADRIANOPLE, and marching thorow THESSALIA, came into ACHAIA, where most of the Grecians were before fled for feare into PELOPONESVS. So passing on with his armie, he came to the strait commonly called ISTMVS, where the famous citie of CORINTH sometime stood; and there encamped his armie neere vnto the strong wall, and castles, lately before built, hoping that the Grecians of PELOPONESVS, terrified with the multitude of his armie, would without resistance submit themselues: but when he perceiued them to stand vpon their guard, and to trust to their strength, he laid batterie to the wall foure dayes, and hauing made it saultable, brake thorow the same with his armie. The Grecians hauing lost the wall (their chiefe strength) fled, some to one strong hold, and some to another, as their fortune led them; the Turks at their pleasure spoiling and destroying that rich and pleasant countrey, sometime the nurse of worthie wits, and famous captaines: where they found wonderfull riches, and tooke prisoners without number; insomuch that they were sold among the Turks at most vile price. There *Amurath* for his pleasure, cruelly sacrificed six hundred Christian captiues, to the hellish ghost of his dead father *Mahomet*: and afterwards imposing a yeerely tribute vpon the Peloponesians, and other Grecian Princes now yeelding againe vnto him, as an induction to their further slauerie vnder the Turkish tyrannie, he returned, taking in his way the two famous cities of PATRAS and SICYONE. Thus the rich countrey of PELOPONESVS, and all the rest of GRECIA, sometime fountaine of all learning and ciuilitie, became tributarie to the barbarous and cruell Turks, in the yeere of our Lord 1445.

Peloponesus made tributarie vnto the Turke.

1446 *Baiazet borne.*

Old *Amurath* now clogged with yeeres, and wearied with long wars, was content to take his rest at HADRIANOPLE: during which time, *Baiazet* the sonne of *Mahomet* was borne in the yeere 1446, who afterwards of long time with great glorie gouerned the Turkish empire at CONSTANTINOPLE, as in his place shall appeare.

The Hungarians after the calamitie of VARNA, wherein they had together with *Vladislaus* their king, lost most part of their nobilitie also; in a generall assemblie of their states, made choice of *Ladislaus*, the posthumous sonne of *Albertus*, (and then in keeping of *Fredericke* the Emperour) for their King. But forasmuch as he being then but a child of fiue yeeres old, and chosen King, more for the remembrance of the Emperour *Sigismund* his grandfather, and *Albertus* his father, and for the good hope conceiued of him, than for any other thing presently to be expected from him; it was thought more than necessarie, to make choice of some notable and worthie man, vnto whom they might (during the time of the Kings minoritie) commit the gouernment & protection of that so great and turbulent a kingdome. Many there were in that honourable assemblie well thought of, both of themselues and others: but such was the glorie and valour of *Huniades*, and so great the remembrance of his worthie deserts both of the kingdome of HVNGARIE, & of the Christian common-weale in generall, as without his seeking, procured vnto him the generall fauour and suffrages of all; yea so farre, that euen they which most enuied at his honour, as ouershadowing their owne, were glad to hold their peace, for that without him it was commonly thought the state of that shaken kingdome could not long stand: So by the generall consent of all the States there assembled, he was with the great applause of the people chosen and proclaimed gouernour, as of all others most fit for so great and heauie a charge: wherein he quietly spent some few yeeres in deciding of ciuill controuersies, in composing the quarrels of the nobilitie; not forgetting in the mean time the indifferent administration of iustice to all men, ending many controuersies farre from the place of iudgement, and that without all suspicion of corruption, vsing therein such expedition and neuer-wearied patience, in hearing euery mans cause, that sitting, going, standing, riding, he dispatched many great and waightie matters: alwayes shewing himselfe affable & courteous, as well vnto them of the poorer sort, as others of greater calling, that had any sutes vnto him. So that it was of him truly said, That no man was than he vnto his friends more friendly, or vnto his enemies more crosse and contrarie.

Huniades in the minoritie of the King, chosen gouernour of all the kingdome of Hungarie.

In

A In time of peace he was alwaies prouiding for warre, heaping vp great treasure, and such other things, as without which, the warres could not be maintained. But aboue all things, he was carefull of the good agreement of the nobilitie, taking great paines in reconciling their displeasures conceiued one against another, and that with such dexteritie, as that he was both of them and others generally both beloued and feared.

In the meane time, whilest he was thus busied in disposing of the ciuill affaires of the commonweale and the administration of iustice, hee was aduertised by his espials, how that the old Sultan *Amurath* was raising great forces both in ASIA and EVROPE, and that as the common fame went, for the inuasion of HVNGARIE. For the withstanding whereof, *Huniades* not vn- 1448 *Huniades goeth against the Turks.*

B prouided, as neuer vnmindfull of so dangerous an enemie, or of any thing more desirous, than in some sort to be reuenged of the great losse receiued at VARNA; in the fourth yeare of his gouernement and in the yeare of our Lord 1448. accompanied with most part of the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, and the Vaiuoid of VALACHIA his friend and confederate, set forward against the Turke, with an armie of two and twentie thousand choice souldiers. So hauing passed the riuer TIBISCVS, or TEISE, and trauailing through VALACHIA, a little beneath where the riuer MOROVA running through SERVIA, falleth into DANVBIVS, he with most part of his armie passed that great riuer; the rest in the meane time taking passage ouer at a towne called SEVERIN. *Huniades* with his armie being thus gotten ouer into SERVIA, by his Embassadors requested the Despot, as he had oftentimes before, to put himselfe into that most Christian warre; and re-

C membring the great benefits he had receiued frō the Hungarians, not to shew himselfe therfore vngratefull, then which, nothing could bee more dishonourable: and to encourage him the more, certified him both of his owne strength, and of the aide brought vnto him by the Vaiuod; and that for the good successe of the warre, there wanted nothing but his presence and direction, with such troupes of light horsemen as he knew hee had alwaies in readinesse. Wherewith he requested him with all speed to follow him. But he being a man of no religion, and better affected vnto the Turke than *Huniades*, the more cleanely to withdraw himselfe from this warre, pretended many excuses: first, the league he had with *Amurath* his sonne in law, which he said he might not breake, for feare that if things chanced not well, hee might so fall againe headlong into his olde miserie; then, the vnseasonablenesse of the time, Autumne being now

D past, which difficulties in those cold countries they had to their cost too much felt in the late warre: These with many other such like he alleadged, in excuse that he came not: but the truth was, the malice of the man, greeued to see *Huniades* preferred before him in the gouernment of the kingdome, and disdaining to serue vnder his ensignes, being himselfe Despot, and King of SERVIA, descended of the royall race, the cause of his backewardnesse: so that blinded with enuie, he could not there rightly iudge of himselfe, or what was fit for him in this case to haue done. But *Huniades* angrie with his vnkinde answere, threatned him with his owne hands to be reuenged vpon him, and to giue away his kingdome to one more worthie thereof than hee, if he should *The false Despot giueth Amurath knowledge both of Huniades his comming, and of his strength.*

E with victory returne. So passing through SERVIA, as through the enemies countrie, he came into BVLGARIA. After whose departure, the false Despot by speedy messengers aduertised *Amurath* both of the comming of the Hungarians, and of their strength; yea hee certified him of euery dayes march, and how that *Huniades* was but with a small companie of his owne, and some weake supplies of the Vaiuods come ouer DANVBIVS: whom if hee should not presently meet, but suffer him to come on further, and so with his armie to get betwixt him and home, he might so shut him in, as that he should hardly be able to scape his hands. All which he did, partly for enuy, partly to gratifie the Turke, and the better to keepe friendship with him. So *Amurath* not contemning the Despots counsell, suffered *Huniades* without resistance to enter a great way into his countrey, and comming two or three daies march behinde him, so stopped the passage as that he could not possibly retire, but that hee must needes fight. And now they were both come vnto a great plaine in BVLGARIA, which the Hungarians call RIGOMEZV, and the

F Rascians the plaine of COSSOVA, through the middest whereof the riuer SCHICHNIZA rising out of the mountaines of ILLIRIA running, at length falleth into MOROVA, and so into DANVBIVS: this plaine is about 20 miles in length, & in breadth fiue, enuironed on each side with pleasant mountains, in manner of a Theatre, the riuer and low vallies at the foot of the mountaines being garnished with many countrey villages and townes. Into this fatall plaine when as the Hungarians first, and after them the Turkes, were as into a place of combate descended;

an old woman dwelling in one of the villages vpon the riuer side fast by, where both armies of late passed, with a loud voice cried out, *Oh how much I now feare, the hard fortune of the Hungarians.* When as their passage ouer by the foord troubled the riuer but one day, and the Turks three. By the small number of their armie, diuining their ensuing ouerthrow. In the middest almost of this plaine ariseth a small hill, by the foot whereof the riuer SCHICHNIZA runneth; not farre beyond which, toward the head of the plaine, was a certaine tower built like a piramides, in memoriall of *Amurath* the first of that name, and third King of the Turks, there slaine: which tower, *Amurath* fearing lest *Huniades* marching before him, should take, and so become vnto him ominous (for in such matters the Turks are very superstitious) he made the more haste, of purpose to ioyne battell with him before he should come to the foresaid tower. *Huniades* being come vnto the hill, easily arising in the middest of the plaine, there encamped, expecting the comming of *Scanderbeg*; who was said (according to appointment made betwixt him and *Huniades*) to be euery houre comming. Wherefore *Amurath* fearing left the tower fast by should be taken, and the enemies power strengthened by the comming of the Albanois, prouoked *Huniades* to battell; who still refused the same, in hope of his friends comming: which made the Turke more fierce vpon him, seeking by all meanes he could to draw him to battell, but especially by cutting him off from water and forrage: for why, he much presumed vpon his multitude, hauing in his armie about fourescore thousand fighting men. At length *Huniades* for want of water and other necessaries, enforced to fight, vpon *S. Lukes* day being then Thursday, commanded his souldiers to make themselues readie: and diuiding his armie into two and thirtie battailions, in such order as he meant to giue battell, the more to encourage them, spake vnto them as followeth:

The ominous speech of an old woman.

The notable speech of Huniades to encourage his souldiers against the Turks.

At length (valiant souldiers and fellowes in armes) the day is come, wherein you may reuenge that dishonour, or disgrace, you receiued in the battell of VARNA; *and recouer your former credit of constancie, and praise, if you will play the men: the enemie opposeth against you, but these reliques of his armies, by you so often broken and discomfited; who although they be in number moe than you, yet are they in hope, quarrell, and strength, farre inferiour. For what can they hope for, which fight not for their owne, but for another mans kingdome? and in conquering, procure vnto themselues nothing but bondage in this life, and torment in the life to come, and in both perpetuall and endlesse miserie? Whereas you on the other side, howsoeuer the matter fall out, fighting for your owne kingdome, your children, your countrey, your houses and altars, may assuredly hope for in both, eternall and vndoubted blisse. You haue also farre greater cause to fight, as they which if they doe not valiantly ouercome their enemies, are in danger with themselues to lose also all that theirs is. The strength of both are sufficiently tried. Once we vnfortunatly ioyned battell at* VARNA, *where if we might make exchange of our fortunes there found, happily the Turke would make choice of our flight, rather than of the great slaughter of his owne men: who being not able to ouertake vs, was there notably beaten, with the losse of a great part of his armie: whose great losse there receiued, may counteruaile our dishonour; although the losse, he suffered perforce, but we our flight by choice. But of that our ouerthrow, the angrie powers from aboue (willing to reuenge our breach of faith) were as I verily beleeue, the cause, rather than our cowardise: for euen there, all the authors of that perfidious dealing, euen there I say, euery one receiued the iust guerdon of their treacherie. Whereas we against our wils, drawne into that wofull warre, by the mercie of God yet liue with you, preserued for the defence of the Christian common-weale, and especially of* HVNGARIE, *that it should not be ouer-runne with the Turkish power and rage. The number of your enemies is not of you to be feared, when as you with few, haue oftentimes learned to fight with their multitudes, and caried away from them the victorie. Hitherto we haue rather fought by the power of God than man, and in the name of Christ Iesus our Sauiour, haue easily ouerthrowne their prophane battels. Which way soeuer we haue turned our selues, in his most mightie name, we haue with our victorious armes opened our way, for that we fought vnder the leading and conduct of the highest, whose helpe we haue alwayes felt at hand: neither shall we thereof this day faile, if we be mindfull of his forepassed loue towards vs, and of our wonted valour. God is alwayes present with them that in his iust quarrell fight couragiously. Hereunto is ioyned the safe manner of our fight, by reason of our men at armes, and barbed horses, who like a strong castle cannot easily be ouerthrowne. Our battalions are such as may easily be commanded, and yet strong enough against our enemies: whereas their great multitude breedeth but confusion. We haue many notable and forcible engines of warre, which they haue*

A *haue not. Besides that, euery houre we looke for the worthie* Scanderbeg *his comming. The danger is not so great, as that we should feare it; or so little, as that we should contemne it. Backe againe without victorie we may not goe, for that our armie is hardly by the straits of these mountaines to be led: and if the way were neuer so easie, yet without doing that we came for, and glorie with victorie, we may not retire. Vnto the valiant, all difficulties are propounded. Wherefore sith this your last labour is at hand, wherein the whole strength of the Turks may be for euer cut off, I pray and beseech you (fellow souldiers) by that God vnder whose power and protection we serue, and by the loue you beare vnto your countrey, your wiues, your children, and wealth, vpon the signall of battell giuen, so to shew your valour, as men resolued to be fully reuenged of the iniuries by that filthie and wicked nation done both to God and man:*
B *and especially of the losse receiued at* Varna. *We lost there a deuout King, who for our safetie, and for the breach of his faith, sacrificed himselfe; by which royall sacrifice, that diuine anger is appeased: vnto whose ghost, I beseech you, in this battell to make an honourable sacrifice. Not forgetting withall, to reuenge the death of other worthie men in that battell slaine. This feare of the Turks, is at once and euen this day to be cut off; and so, as that it should neuer grow againe: and the kingdome of* Hvngarie, *so to be deliuered from the danger of most cruell slauerie, as that it may by this dayes worke gaine perpetuall rest, and glorie, vnto the enioying of the pleasures both of this life, and of the life to come. Wherefore (worthie souldiers) we must fight with all our force, for that our honour so requireth, our profit so perswadeth, and necessitie enforceth. As for our selues, howsoeuer the matter fall out, all*
C *shall be with vs well: If victorie, perpetuall blisse and happinesse shall thereby be procured vnto our countrey, and immortall fame vnto our selues: but if we shall be ouercome, here we shall be most honourably buried in the bed of fame, to liue in heauen with God and his Saints for euer. Wherefore I beseech you so to figt, as men resolutely set downe to ouercome, or if it shall otherwise fall out, as men resolued honourably to die.*

With this the Generals speech, all the mindes of the hearers were greatly enflamed, and they all by his words, and their owne hot desires, sufficiently encouraged. Neither did old *Amurath* on the other side with lesse care or dilligence marshall his armie & encourage his Turks, sparing neither cheerfull speech, glorious promises, or seuere command: Whose armie being brought into the plaine, & ranged in order of battaile, filled the same from the one side to the other, euen
D vnto the very mountaines, to the great astonishment of the Christians: and so about nine a clock in the morning set forward. *Huniades* had from the hill where he lay, sent downe both the wings of his armie, and had a front on both sides before them, stretched out certain long troups of light horsemen, to begin the skirmish: In the middest betwixt both he had placed *Zechel*, his sisters son, with a strong square battaile of men at armes: and such as he had kept aloft vpon the hill for rescues, he had compassed about with his waggons, as with trenches. The signall of the battaile being giuen, the fierce and couragious souldiers on both sides, with cheerefull mindes, began at first to skirmish a farre off: but afterwards fortune as it were fawning vpon both sides, and their courage thereupon increasing, they began with greater force to fight foot to foot, and hand to hand. Which hot fight, continued about three houres: at length the Turkes battaile
E was put to the worst, by *Benedict Losonicus*, who had the leading of the right wing; and so likewise in the left also by *Stephen Bamffi*, who with great slaughter had notably foyled the great Bassa of Evrope, still pressing hard & desperately vpon him. Which discomfiture of his men in both wings *Amurath* beholding, presently sent in strong supplies, & in both places renewed the battaile: whereby the Hungarian and Valachian light horsemen before wearied, were enforced to retire vnto the men at armes; who serred together, and standing as a strong wall, easily repulsed the greatest assaults of the Turks: In which maner of fight many were on both sides slain, but farre more of the Turkes, by reason they were neither so well horsed nor armed as were the Christians. *Huniades* in the meane time with the artillerie from the hill, did the Turkes great harme: which *Amurath* perceiuing, drew as close vnto the hill as he could, by that meanes sa-
F uing his people (so much as was possible) out of the danger of the artillerie, mounted on high aboue them in such sort, as that it could little or nothing now hurt them. Which *Huniades* from the hill beholding, came downe to the releefe of his men, sending new supplies to both wings; sometime encouraging them with cheerfull speech, and sometime with his owne most valiant hand: vnto the wearie he sent releefe, the fearefull he encouraged, them that were flying he staied, and where hee saw the enemies fastest comming on, there was hee himselfe present to meet them;

The great battell of Cossoua fought betwixt Amurath and Huniades three dayes together.

them,omitting nothing that was of a good Generall or worthie ſouldier to be done. The valiant G
he commended,the coward he reproued,and as a carefull Generall,was himſelfe in euery place preſent. Whereby the battell became ſo fierce and terrible, that in euery place a man might haue ſeene all fowly foiled with bloud,and the quarrey of the dead. *Amurath* in like manner ſtill ſent in new ſupplies, nothing diſcouraged with the great loſſe of his men, preſuming vpon his multitude,as fully reſolued orderly to fight, & to make vſe of all his forces;in hope at length by continuall ſending in of freſh ſupplies,to wearie his enemies, whō he ſaw he could not by force ouercome. Wherein he was not deceiued, for one battailion of the Hungarians was oftentimes enforced to wearie foure or fiue of the Turks before they could be releeued,they came on ſo faſt. That day they dined and ſupped in the battell, refreſhing themſelues with ſuch ſhort repaſt as H
they could eat ſtanding, going, or riding. The Turks armie was that day in euery place put to the worſt,and oftentimes with great ſlaughter enforced by the Hungarians to retire almoſt vnto their trenches: yet was the battell ſtill againe renewed,& ſo fought on both ſides,as well appeared they were reſolued either to ouercome, or there to die. This cruell fight maintained all the day,was by the comming on of the night ended, both the armies retiring into their owne trenches:but with purpoſe the next day to renew the battell,& not to giue ouer or turne their backs, vntill the victorie were by dint of ſword determined. So with little reſt, was that night ſpent, both armies keeping moſt diligent watch,al carefully expecting the next day,as by battel therin
The battaile begun againe the ſecond day. to trie whether they ſhould liue or die. It was yet ſcarce faire day,when both the armies in good order readie ranged began again the battell: which at the firſt,was not by the Hungarians fought I
with ſuch force & courage as before, for there was none of them which had not the day before ſpent their whole ſtrength;whereas there was yet almoſt fortie thouſand of the Turks,which either had not fought at all,or but lightly skirmiſhed. Yet *Huniades* exhorted his ſouldiers,not by
Huniades encourageth his ſouldiers. faint-hearted cowardiſe to breake off the courſe of the victorie by them the day before ſo well begun, but couragiouſly to proſecute the ſame ; beſeeching them not to be now wanting vnto themſelues & their countrey, but to remember how well they had fought the day before, how many thouſands of their enemies they had ſlaine, & not now at laſt to giue ouer,and ſo ſhamefully to fruſtrate all the paines & dangers by them before endured. for that they(as he ſaid)were to be thought worthie of honour, not which began, but which ended honourable actions. Hee wiſhed them to ſet before their eyes the calamities like to enſue, if they ſhould as cowards be o- K
uercome: firſt, the diuers kinds of death and torture; then, the ſlauerie of their wiues and children; the rauiſhment of their virgins and matrons; and laſt of all, the vtter deſtruction of their kingdome,with the horrible confuſion of all things, as well ſacred as prophane: all which were by that one daies labour (as he ſaid) to be auoided. And therfore he beſought them for the loue both of God and man,with their wonted valour, that day to ſet at liberty for euer, themſelues, their countrey, their wiues & children, and whatſoeuer elſe they held deere. In like manner alſo did *Amurath* encourage his ſouldiers, with great promiſes,and threats, perſwading them rather to endure any thing, then by that daies ouerthrow to be driuen out of EVROPE. He carefully viewed his armie, ordered his battailes, & with many great reaſons perſwaded them to play the men. But after that ſome light skirmiſhes being paſt, both the armies were fully ioyned,the bat- L
taile was fought with no leſſe force and furie then the day before. Of the Chriſtians many then wounded, came now againe into the battaile, there either by ſpeedy death or ſpeedy victory to cure their wounds before receiued; and there did right good ſeruice. Great was the ſlaughter in euery place,neither could the force of the Hungarians be withſtood;whoſe furious impreſſion, when the Turks could not by plain force endure,they began with their freſh horſemen, cūningly to delude their deſperate fierceneſſe: at ſuch time as the Hungarians beganne moſt hardly to charge them,they by & by turned their backs, ſuffering them a while to follow after them,far ſcattered and diſperſed: who allured as it were with the hope of a preſent victory, eagerly purſued them, & in the purſuit ſlew diuers of them. And they againe vpon a ſignall giuen, cloſing together,& turning back vpon the diſperſed troupes,well reuenged the death of their fellowes: M
& with their often charges and retraits,wonderfully wearied the Hungarians;notably deluding their furious attempts with that vncertaine kind of fight,all the day long. Many of the Hungarians were ſlaine, and the Turkes had that day the better, and ſo both armies being wearied night and wearines ended the fight: both retiring into their trencher,there keeping moſt careful watch. The next morning by the dawning of the day,the battaile was again begun. *Huniades* his bro-

A brother, Generall of the Valachians, with his light horſemen ſetting firſt forward; after whom in ſeemely order followed the reſt of the nobilitie, with their companies. Where for certaine houres, the battaile was heardly fought with like hope on both ſides, & a great ſlaughter made, but eſpecially of the Hungarians; who wearied with the long fight, & moſt part of them wounded, were now all to endure this third daies labour. *Zechel* (*Huniades* his ſiſters ſonne) valiantly fighting in the front of the battaile, was the firſt of the leaders there ſlaine in the thickeſt of the Turks. *Emericus Marzalus* and *Stephen Bamffi*, both great commanders, encloſed by the Turks, there died alſo. *Amurath* ſeeing the formoſt enſignes of the Chriſtians, which ſtood in *Zechel* his regiment, taken, & his ſoldiers (diſcomfited with the death of their colonell) turning their backs;
B preſently commanded all the companies, which were many (yet left in the trenches, for freſh ſupplies) to iſſue foorth, and at once to ouerwhelme the Chriſtians, being (as hee ſayd) but few and ouerwearied with three daies continuall fight. Vpon which the Kings cõmand, they fiercely breaking out, preſently ouerthrew both the wings of the Chriſtians, before wauering; and in a great battaile (wherein moſt of the chiefe commanders were ſlaine, and their enſignes taken) diſcomfited the reſt, and with a great ſlaughter put them to flight. *Huniades* ſeeing his brother now ſlaine, the enſignes taken, and the battaile quite loſt; betook himſelfe to flight alſo, leauing behinde him his tents and baggage, all which ſhortly after became a prey vnto the Turkes: who from noone vntill night furioſly followed the chaſe, with moſt cruell execution; but at length ſtaied by the comming on of the darkneſſe, they returned againe vnto their trenches. The reſt
C of the Turkes armie that followed not the chaſe, compaſſing in the Hungarian campe, were there by the wounded ſouldiers, the wagoners, & other drudges of the armie, kept out ſo long as they had any ſhot left; but yet were in the end euery mothers ſonne ſlaine, though not altogether vnreuenged, two or three of the Turkes in many places lying dead by the bodie of one Hungarian. *Amurath* to couer the greatneſſe of the loſſe he there receiued, commanded the bodies of his captaines there ſlaine, to be forthwith buried; and the bodies of his common ſouldiers, to be for the moſt part caſt into the riuer SCHICHNIZA: For which cauſe the inhabitants of the countrey there by, of long time after abſtained from eating of any fiſh taken in that riuer. The plaine by this great battaile made once againe famous, lay neuertheleſſe many yeares after couered with dead mens bones, as if it had been with ſtones: neither could be ploughed by the
D countrey people, but that long time after armour and weapons were there ſtill in many places turned vp and found. Thus albeit that this bloody victorie fell vnto the Turkes, yet was their loſſe farre greater then the Hungarians; hauing loſt (as was reported by them that ſay leaſt) foure and thirtie thouſand of themſelues, for eight thouſand of their enemies. Howbeit they themſelues report the loſſe to haue been on both ſides far greater; as that of the Chriſtians were ſlaine ſeuenteen thouſand, and of themſelues fortie thouſand: which in ſo long and mortall a fight, is not vnlike to haue been true. In this vnfortunate battaile fell moſt part of the Hungarian nobilitie: all, men worthie eternall fame and memorie, whoſe names we for breuitie will paſſe ouer. Many in the chaſe taken, and the next day brought to *Amurath*, were by the commandement of the angry tyrant ſlaine. Such as eſcaped out of the ſlaughter by the way of ILLYRIA, returned
E in ſafetie: but ſuch as ſought to ſaue themſelues by returning back againe through SERVIA the Deſpots countrey, found the ſame ſo troubleſome as that few of them eſcaped, but that they were by the way either ſlaine, or quite ſtripped of all they had.

The battaile againe began the third day.

Huniades flieth

The number of the Turks and Chriſtians ſlaine in the battaile of Coſſoua.

Neither was the fortune of the noble *Huniades* much better then the fortune of the reſt, who hauing on horſebacke all alone by vncouth and vntract waies, trauailed three dayes without meat or drinke, and the fourth day tyred his horſe and caſt him off; being on foot and diſarmed, fell into the hands of two notable theeues, who in diſpoiling him of his apparel, finding a faire crucifix of gold about his necke, fell at ſtrife betwixt themſelues for the ſame: whereby he tooke occaſion to lay hand vpon one of their ſwords, and with the ſame preſently thruſt him through; and then ſuddenly aſſailing the other, put him to flight alſo. So deliuered of this dan-
F ger, trauailing on, and almoſt ſpent with thirſt and hunger, the next day he light vpon a ſheepheard, a ſturdie rough knaue, who hearing of the ouerthrow of the Hungarians, was (in hope of prey) roaming abroad in that deſolate countrey: Who at their firſt meeting, ſtrucken with the maieſtie of the man, ſtood at gaze vpon him; as alſo did *Huniades*, fearing in his ſo great weakeneſſe to haue to doe with him. Thus a while hauing the one well regarded the other, they began to enter talke, the ſheepheard bluntly asking him of his fortune; and he for Gods ſake cra-

ting

uing of him ſome thing to eate. When as the ſhepheard hearing of his heard happe, mooued with his eſtate, and hope of promiſed reward, brought him vnto a poore cottage not farre off, cauſing to be ſet before him bread and water, with a few oynions. Who in the pleaſant remembrance of that paſſed miſerie, would oftentimes after in his greateſt banquets ſay, That he neuer in his life fared better, or more daintily, than when he ſupped with this ſhepheard. So well can hunger ſeaſon homely cates. Thus refreſhed, he was by the ſhepheard conducted to SINDEROVIA: whereof the Deſpot hauing intelligence (whoſe countrey was all layd for the ſtaying of him) cauſed him by the captaine of the Caſtle to be aprehended, and impriſoned. But after certaine daies ſpent in talke about his deliuerance, it was at length agreed, that all ſuch ſtrong townes in RASCIA and SERNIA, as had by the Hungarians been detained from the Depſot, at ſuch time as his kingdome was by Ring *Vladiſlaus* reſtored vnto him, ſhould now bee againe to him deliuered; and that *Matthias Huniades* his youngeſt ſonne, ſhould for the confirmation of farther friendſhip, marrie the Deſpots daughter: with ſome other ſuch conditions as it pleaſed the vngratefull Prince for his owne behoofe to ſet downe. For performance whereof, he required to haue *Ladiſlaus*, *Huniades* his eldeſt ſon, in hoſtage. All which *Huniades* was glad forthwith to yeeld vnto, for feare the falſe Deſpot ſhould haue deliuered him into the hands of *Amurath*, his mortall enemie. So the hoſtage being giuen, *Huniades* was againe ſet at libertie. Who vpon Chriſtmas day comming to SEGEDINVM, was there by all the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, and great concourſe of the people, honorably receiued. This ingratitude of the Deſpots no leſſe greeued this worthie man, than the diſhonour receiued from the Turke. Wherefore vpon the ſudden raiſing a great armie, he inuaded the territorie, long before giuen to the Deſpot by the Emperor *Sigiſmond* in HVNGARIE, in exchange of the ſtrong towne of BELGRADE, deſtroying the countrey before him, and burning the villages, neuer reſting, vntill he had got into his power whatſoeuer the Deſpot had in HVNGARIE, & not ſo contented, preſently entered inno RASCIA, where the Deſpots Embaſſadors met him, bringing with thē *Ladiſlaus* the hoſtage, honorably rewarded, & hūbly crauing peace at his hands: which he at the requeſt of the nobility eaſily granted, with forgiuenes of all former wrongs or iniuries. And ſo hauing with him concluded a peace, returned back again into HVNGARIE. But Fortune neuer ſuffereth long the valiant man to reſt, but ſtill keepeth him buſied, leaſt he ſhould at too much eaſe attaine vnto honors glorie.

Huniades taken priſoner by the Deſpot.

G H I

1449 *The Deſpot inuaded by Amurath, craueth aid of Huniades*

The yeare following, *Amurath* certainely enformed, That *George* the Deſpot hauing of late *Huniades* in his power, had again ſet him at libertie: was therwith exceeding wroth, blaming him of great ingraritude, That for a kingdome which he had at his hands receiued, he had not deliuered vnto him his enemy, in full recompence thereof: whom of all others he moſt feared, & therefore likewiſe wiſhed to haue had him periſh. In reuenge of which iniurie (as he tooke it) the melancholie tyrant, ſent *Fritze-beg* and *Ioſe-beg*, two of his moſt expert captaines, with a ſtrong power to inuade RASCIA, the Deſpots countrey: who accordingly entring thereinto, ſtrongly fortified CHRYSONICVM, a towne before ruinated, vpon the ſide of the riuer MORAVA, and from thence with fire and ſword deſtroyed the countrey both farre and neare. The *Deſpot* diſmayed with this ſudden and vnexpected inuaſion, wiſt not well which way to turne himſelfe: the angrie Turke, he well knew, was not to be appeaſed without yeelding vnto ſome great inconuenience; and to pray aide of *Huniades*, without which he was not able to withſtand the Turkes, he thought but vaine, for the wrong he had before done him. So that what to doe he wiſt not: yet had he rather to endure any thing, than againe to ſuffer the heauie bondage of the Turke. In this extreamitie he thought beſt to make proofe of *Huniades*, of whom he humbly, and not without great ſhame, craued aid. Which the courteous gouernour, according to his honourable nature, forgetting all former iniuries, eaſily granted: and the rather, for that hee deſired nothing more, than to be of the Turkes in ſome part reuenged of the ouerthrow from them of late receiued in the plaines of COSSOVA: as alſo for that he wiſely foreſaw, That the Deſpots countrey being loſt, hee ſhould haue the Turkes ſtill brauing him euen as it were in the gates of HVNGARIE. Wherefore hauing with great ſpeed raiſed a conuenient power, he forthwith in perſon himſelfe ſet forward, and at SYNDEROVIA paſſing ouer the riuer DANVBIVS into RASCIA, there ioyned his power with the Deſpots, which he found there ready. And ſo marching forward with ſuch expedition, that he preuented the fame of his comming; and the weather alſo at the ſame time as it were fauouring his purpoſe, and couering the countrey with a thick miſt, hee was the fourth day vpon the Turkes before they were aware of him. Who wonderfully diſmayed with

K L M

the

A the ſudden comming of the Chriſtians, and vpon the breaking vp of the miſt, diſcouering alſo *Huniades* his enſignes (alwayes vnto them dreadfull) thought now no more of reſiſtance, or of the ordering of their battell, but as men diſcouraged, betooke themſelues to ſpeedie flight. After whom followed the Hungarian and Seruian light horſemen, with moſt bloudie execution hauing them in chaſe all that day; *Huniades* with his men at armes following ſtill after in good order, for feare the Turks ſhould againe make head vpon the light horſemen that had them in chaſe. And had not the comming on of the night ended the ſlaughter, few of the Turks had there eſcaped: but by the approch thereof many of them got into the woods, and ſo ſaued themſelues. *Fritze-beg* the Generall, with moſt part of the Turks beſt commanders, were in that
B flight taken. *Huniades* after this victorie entering into BVLGARIA, came to BVDINA, the metropoliticall citie of that countrey, which (as the cauſe oftentimes of great warres) he burnt downe to the ground. And ſo hauing well reuenged himſelfe, and cleared the countrey of the Turks, he returned backe againe into SERVIA, and there gaue vnto the Deſpot for a preſent all the priſoners he had taken: and contenting himſelfe with the honour of the victorie, returned with triumph to BVDA, there to find no leſſe trouble with the Bohemians, and ſome of the diſcontented nobilitie of HVNGARIE, than he had with the Turks, to the great hurt of the Chriſtian common-weale.

All this while that *Amurath* was thus troubled with *Huniades* and the Hungarians, *Muſtapha* lying ſtill vpon the borders of MACEDONIA, as *Amurath* had commanded; it chanced that
C a great quarrell grew betwixt the Venetians and *Scanderbeg*, about the inheritance of *Lech Zacharie* (a noble man of EPIRVS) then ſhamefully murdered by his vnnaturall kinſman *Lech Duchagne*; part of whoſe inheritance lying in the frontiers of EPIRVS, the Venetians claimed, as belonging to their ſeignorie: and hauing got poſſeſſion of the citie of DAYNA, part thereof, by force held the ſame againſt *Scanderbeg*: vpon which quarrell great warres aroſe betwixt the Venetians and him, who had before beene very great friends: inſomuch, that in the end they ioyned in battell at the riuer of DRINE, where the Venetians were by him in a great battell ouerthrowne. Of which troubles *Muſtapha* daily vnderſtood, and how that *Scanderbeg* ſo buſied, had left but a ſmall garriſon vpon the borders of EPIRVS. Wherefore being deſirous to redeeme his former diſgrace with ſome better hap; he would faine haue taken the opportunitie
D now preſented, but that his great maſters command lay ſo heauie vpon him, as that he durſt not without his leaue attempt the ſame; knowing that the danger of his euill fortune, if it ſhould ſo fall out, would farre exceed the vncertaine glorie of his better ſucceſſe. Yet ceaſed he not from time to time to giue *Amurath* intelligence of theſe troubles and warres in EPIRVS, earneſtly requeſting him not to let ſlip ſo faire an opportunitie, but to giue him leaue to enter into the countrey: in manner, aſſuring him before hand of the victorie. Yet the ſuſpitious old King was long in reſoluing what to doe, ſtill fearing the fortune of his enemie. At length diſcharged of the feare of the Hungarians, and commending *Muſtapha* his forwardneſſe, he ſent vnto him a meſſenger with letters of this purport, anſwerable to his deſire.

Amurath his graue letters of aduertiſement to Muſtapha, concerning his going againe into Epirus.

E *The warres thou ſo greatly deſireſt, behold* Muſtapha *we grant vnto thee: the glorie thereof (if thoſe things be true which we heare of the Venetian warre) thine owne valour, and worthie right hand ſhall giue thee: yet thou muſt warily deale with that enemie, and not raſhly take vp armes, which thou maiſt be enforced ſhamefully to caſt away, when thou thinkeſt leaſt. Peraduenture the counterfeit ſhew of warre, and faigned falling out among the Chriſtians, doe too much allure thee; for the common ſaying is, There is no quarrell ſooner ended, than betwixt the father and the ſonne: we in perſon abſent, can neither adviſe thee as preſent, nor commend a fooliſh forwardneſſe in armes. Thou muſt before thou put on armes, diſpoſe of all things, and conſider of euery particular, which is to be put in execution when thou art in the field. Thou haſt a great armie of freſh and luſtie ſouldiers, thine enemies are with continuall warres wearied and ſpent: in that remaineth, doe as thou thinkeſt good, for I forbid thee the doing of nothing, which*
F *thou thinkeſt may be for the aduancement of our honour.*

Muſtapha hauing thus obtained leaue, and well appointed, with all his forces entered into EPIRVS, hoping in one battell to end that warre: which he (preſuming vpon the ſtrength of his armie) many times offered in the plaine field. Newes hereof was brought to *Scanderbeg* (then lying at the ſiege of DAYNA againſt the Venetians) from his garriſons lying vpon the frontiers of

of EPIRVS, to whom he addreſſed a ſpeedy meſſenger: commanding them in no wiſe to encounter with the enemie, but to keepe themſelues within the ſafegard of their ſtrong holds, and to protract the time vntil his cõming. Afterwards ſelecting out of his armie fiue hundred horſemen, & fifteen hundred choſen footmen, all old beaten ſoldiers, he with that ſmal number marched to the place where he knew lay his garriſons intrenched, in the vpper countrey of DIBRA: leauing *Ameſa* his nephew at the ſiege of DAYNA. *Muſtapha* hauing many times in vaine ſought to draw the garriſon ſouldiers out of their trenches by offering them many faire opportunities of aduantage, & now out of hope that way to circumuent them, began to ſpoile and burne the countrey round about. But when he vnderſtood by his ſcouts of *Scanderbeg* his comming, hee ſpeedily called together his armie, and encamped within two miles of *Scanderbegs* campe, at a place called ORONOCHE, in the vpper countrey of DIBRA. *Scanderbeg* had there in his campe of his garriſon ſouldiers and thoſe hee brought with him, foure thouſand horſemen, and two thouſand foot, all old expert ſouldiers: where, after he had made his trenches ſtrong, hee left therein three hundreth of them, and brought the reſt into the field in order of battaile. *Muſtapha* on the other ſide likewiſe brought on in good order his armie alſo. But whileſt both armies thus ſtood ranged one within the view of the other, expecting nothing but the ſignall of battaile, ſuddenly a man at armes, in gallant & rich furniture, iſſued out of the Turks armie into the middeſt of the plaine betwixt both armies, and from thence with a loud voice challenged to fight hand to hand with any one of the Chriſtian armie. This Turke was called *Caraguſa*. At the firſt *Scanderbegs* ſoldiers vpon this challenge ſtood ſtill, one looking vpon another; for as they were all aſhamed to refuſe ſo braue an offer, ſo the danger ſo ſuddenly offered, ſtayd euery mans forwardneſſe for a while: Vntill that one *Paul Maneſſi*, accounted the beſt man at armes in *Scanderbeg* his armie (vpon whom euery mans eye was now caſt, as if he had bin the man by name called out by the proud challenger) not able longer to endure the Turks pride, with great courage and cheereful countenance came to *Scanderbeg*, requeſting him that he might be the man to accept that challenge. Who greatly commended him, and willed him on God his name to ſet forward, firſt to win honour to himſelfe, and then to giue example of his valour for all the reſt of the armie to follow. *Paul* ſtaying a while, vntill he had for that purpoſe moſt brauely armed himſelfe, mounted preſently to horſe, & riding forth into the plaine, called aloud vnto the Turk, that he ſhould make himſelfe ready to fight. Whom *Caraguſa* required to ſtay a while that hee might ſpeake vnto him a few words, indifferently concerning them both.

The ſpeech of Caraguſa the Turke, to Maneſi.

The victorie (ſaid hee) *our force and fortune ſhall determine: but the conditions of the victorie, wee are now to appoint our ſelues. If the Deſtinies haue aſſigned vnto thee the honour of this day, I refuſe not, but that thou mayeſt by law of armes, when I am ouercome, cary away with thee my rich ſpoiles, and at thy pleaſure diſpoſe of my dead bodie. But if thou ſhalt fall vnder my hand, I require that I may haue the ſame right, and power ouer thy captiue bodie: and that the Generals will grant that no man ſhall mooue out of either armie, to better the fortune of either of vs in the time of the combat, or after.*

Maneſi his ſtout anſwere to Caraguſa.

Whereunto *Maneſſi* anſwered, *That hee agreed to thoſe conditions of the combate, which hee vpon a needleſſe feare had ſo required to be kept: ſaying, That where the fierce ſoule had yeelded, there of good right all the reſt ought to bee the conquerours; and that therefore hee ſhould fight without feare of any more enemies than himſelfe: whom ſo ſoone as he had depriued of life, he ſhould haue free power to doe with his dead bodie what he would. Which if thou wouldeſt giue* (ſaid hee) *vnto the teares of my fellow ſouldiers, yet would not worthie* Scanderbeg *ſuffer the carkaſſe of a vanquiſhed coward to bee brought backe againe into his campe.*

Caraguſa maruailed to heare his ſo braue reſolution, and as it was thought, repented him of his challenge. But after that both the Generals had vpon their honours confirmed the lawes of the combat before rehearſed, both the Champions were left alone in the middeſt of the plaine betweene both armies, with all mens eyes fixed vpon them. Now both the armies betwixt feare and hope, ſtood in great expectation of the euent of the combat, preſaging their own fortunes in the fortune of their Champions. In which time they both hauing withdrawn themſelues one frõ the other a conuenient diſtance, for the making of their courſe, & after with great violence running together: *Caraguſa* was by *Maneſsi*, at the firſt encounter ſtroke through the head and ſlaine. *Maneſſi* alighting, diſarmed the dead bodie, and ſtroke off his head: and ſo loaded with the armour and head of the proud challenger, returned with victory to the armie, where he was

ioyfully

A ioyfully receiued and brought to *Scanderbeg*, of whom he was there preſently honourably both commended and rewarded. *Scanderbeg* ſeeing his men by this good fortune of *Maneſſi* greatly encouraged, and the Turks as men diſmaied with the death of their Champion, hanging their heads, like an inuincible captaine himſelfe ſet firſt forward toward the enemie, as it were in contempt of their multitude: and had charged them as they ſtood, before they had ſet one foot forward, had not *Muſtapha* to encourage his ſouldiers, with certaine diſordered troupes oppoſed himſelfe againſt him, which the whole armie ſeeing, faintly followed: but as they ſet forward with ſmall courage, ſo were they at the firſt encounter eaſily driuen to retire. Which when *Muſtapha* ſaw, he called earneſtly vpon them to follow him, and the more to encourage them by
B his owne example, put ſpurres to his horſe, and fiercely charged the front of *Scanderbegs* armie, as one reſolued either to gaine the victorie, or there to die; after whom followed moſt of the principall captaines of his armie, which would not for ſhame forſake their Generall: thus by his valour the battell was for a while renued. But *Moſes* preuailing with great ſlaughter, in one part of the armie, the Turks began to flie: in which flight *Muſtapha* the Generall, with twelue others of the chiefe men in that armie, were taken priſoners, but of the common ſouldiers few were ſaued. There were ſlaine of the Turks armie ten thouſand, and fifteene enſignes taken, whereas of the Chriſtians were loſt but three hundred. The Turks tents and campe, with all the wealth thereof, became a prey to *Scanderbegs* ſouldiers. Wherewith although he had ſatisfied the deſires of them all, yet to keepe his old cuſtome, he entred into the confines of MACEDONIA,
C and there burnt and ſpoiled all that he could. And afterwards leauing a garriſon of two thouſand horſemen, and a thouſand foot, for defence of his frontiers, returned againe with the reſt of his armie to the ſiege of DAYNA.

The battell betwixt Scanderbeg and Muſtapha.

Not long after, the Venetians made peace with *Scanderbeg*: and *Amurath* deſirous to redeeme his captaines, about the ſame time ſent great preſents vnto *Scanderbeg*, with fiue and twentie thouſand duckats, for the ranſome of *Muſtapha*, and the other chiefetaines: whom *Scanderbeg* ſo honourably vſed, as if there had neuer beene any hoſtilitie betwixt him and them: and ſo with a ſafe conuoy, ſent them out of his countrey. The ranſome of *Muſtapha* and the other Turks he diuided amongſt his ſouldiers. When *Scanderbeg* had thus made peace with the Venetians, he forthwith led his armie againe into MACEDONIA, with the ſpoile of that coun-
D trey to make his ſouldiers better pay, as his vſuall manner was. And to doe the greater harme, he diuided his armie into three parts, wherewith he ouer-running the countrey, waſted and deſtroied all before him, putting to the ſword all the Turks that came in his way. As for the Chriſtians that there liued amongſt them, he ſpared, but left them nothing more than their liues: the buildings of the countrey he vtterly conſumed with fire, ſo that in all that part of MACEDONIA which bordereth vpon EPIRVS, nothing was to be ſeene more than the bare ground, and the ſhewes of the ſpoile by him there made. Which vnmercifull hauocke of all things he made, to the end that the Turks ſhould find no reliefe in thoſe quarters, whenſoeuer they ſhould come either to lie in garriſon in that countrey, or to inuade EPIRVS. The ſpoile he made was ſo
E great, that it was thought he left not in all that countrey, ſo much as might releeue the Turks armie for one day.

Muſtapha vanſomed.

Of all theſe great harmes by *Scanderbeg* done in MACEDONIA, *Amurath* was with all ſpeed aduertiſed, and therewith exceedingly vexed: howbeit he reſolued with his great counſellors, no more to ſend any of his Baſſaes or captains, but to goe himſelfe in perſon, with ſuch a royall armie, as ſhould be ſufficient not to conquer EPIRVS, but if need were, to fill euery corner thereof. Wherefore he commanded commiſſions to be ſpeedily directed into all parts of his kingdomes and prouinces, for the leuying of a great armie for HADRIANOPLE: yet whither he intended to imploy the ſame, was not known to any in the Turks court, more than to the Baſſaes of the counſell. Which cauſed all the bordering Chriſtian Princes to make the beſt preparation they could for their owne aſſurance, euery one fearing leſt that growing tempeſt ſhould breake
F out againſt himſelf. But *Scanderbeg* of long acquainted with the Turkiſh policie, eaſily perceiued all that great preparation to be made againſt him: which he was the rather induced to thinke, by reaſon of the vnaccuſtomed quietneſſe of *Amurath*, who all that while had neither ſent any armie to reuenge the ouerthrow of *Muſtapha*, nor ſo much as a garriſon for defence of the borders of his kingdome, but had let all things negligently paſſe, as if he had beene in a dead ſleepe. Beſides that, it was alſo thought, that he had ſecret intelligence from ſome of his old friends and

acquaintance in *Amurath* his court, who probably suspected the matter. Wherefore *Scanderbeg* G
setting all other things apart, gaue himselfe wholly to the preparing of things necessarie for the
defence of his small kingdome against so mightie an enemie. First he by letters and messengers
aduertised all the Christian Princes his neighbours & friends, of the greatnesse of the danger of
that warre; wherein *Amurath* (as he said) sought not only his destruction, but the vtter ruine of
them all: exhorting them therefore to consider, how farre the danger of so great an armie might
extend, and therefore to stand fast vpon their guard. Then he sent *Moses* and other his expert
captains into all parts of EPIRVS, to take vp souldiers, and all the prouision of corne & victuals
that was possible to be had. Wherein he himselfe also busily trauelled day and night, not resting
vntill he had left nothing in the countrey whereupon the enemie might shew his crueltie. Most H
part of the common people with their substance, were receiued into the strong cities, the rest
tooke the refuge of the Venetian and other Christian Princes townes and countries farther off,
vntill this furie was ouerpast: all such as were able to beare armes, were commanded to repaire
to CROIA; where when they were all assembled, there were ynow to haue made a right puissant
armie. But out of all this multitude, *Scanderbeg* made choice onely of ten thousand old expert
souldiers, whom he purposed to lead himselfe to encounter with the Turks great armie, as he
should see occasion: and placed a thousand three hundred in garrison in CROIA. The citizens
also themselues were throughly furnished with all manner of weapons & other prouision meet
for the defence of their citie. Then proclamation was made, That all the aged men vnfit for
warres, with the women and children, should depart the citie; and none to be therein left but the I
garrison souldiers, and such citizens as were willing to tarie, and able to beare armes. This citie
of CROIA was the chiefe citie of EPIRVS, and of the fortune thereof seemed to depend the state
of all the other strong towns and cities, and so consequently of the whole kingdome: for which
The lamentable departing of the weake citizens out of Croia. cause, *Scanderbeg* had the greater care for the defence thereof. It was a miserable sight to see the
lamentable departure of this weake companie out of CROIA: all was ful of weeping & wailing;
no house, no street, no part of the citie was without mourning: but especially in the churches
was to be seene the very face of common sorrow and heauinesse; where all sorts of people in
great numbers flocking together, poured forth their deuout praiers, with fountaines of teares,
wringing their hands; yea, and some in the impatiencie of their griefe forgetting themselues, see-
med to expostulate their griefe with God. But when their sorrow was with teares asswaged, and K
their hearts somewhat eased, the aged mothers kissing their sonnes, gaue them many a tearefull
commandement: sometime rehearsing how louingly and tenderly they had brought them vp,
and othersome times shewing vnto them their feeble limmes and hoarie haires, willing them to
be mindfull of them. The wiues presented their children vnto their husbands, bewailing to
leaue them as childlesse widowers, and their houses desolate. The old men mute with sorrow,
and carefull of their children, durst neither encourage them, for feare of making them too for-
ward; neither disswade them from aduenturing themselues, lest they should seeme to loue them
more than their natiue countrey. In the middest of these passions commandement came from
Scanderbeg, that they must now depart, that the souldiers might take their places & charge. Then
began their sorrowes afresh, with pitious scriching and teares. A man would haue thought the L
citie had euen then beene presently taken by the Turks. They could hardly be drawne from the
embracing of their friends, all now desiring to remaine still with them in the citie, partakers of
their common dangers. But when they saw the officers begin to be earnest vpon them, and to
hasten their departure, then with heauie hearts they tooke as it were their last farewell, and de-
parted out of the citie, setting their feet many times they wist not where, for desire they had to
looke backe againe vpon the citie. This great multitude was conueyed also into the Venetian ci-
ties, and other places free from danger: whither all the countrey people, which were not before
receiued into the strong cities, resorted also, with all their substance & cattell; leauing nothing in
all the countrey of EPIRVS, but the bare ground for the Turks to prey vpon. After this multi-
tude was departed, and all well quieted, and none left in the citie but men fit for seruice, *Scander-* M
beg throughly stored it with all things needfull for the defence thereof, and for the enduring of a
long siege: besides that, he gaue to euery souldier conuenient armour, with some small reward.
Then he placed *Vranacontes* (a valiant & famous captaine, honourably descended) gouernour
of the citie. And so hauing set all things in order for the safegard thereof, after he had in few
words exhorted them couragiously to endure the siege, and not to listen to *Amurath* his flatte-

ring

A ring and deceitfull charmes, he departed out of the citie vnto his armie, then lying within view, and began presently to march towards DYBRA. But he was not farre gone, before he met with *Moses* with a gallant troupe of horsemen comming from SFETIGRADE, a strong citie of DYBRA, situate in the confines of EPIRVS, bordering vpon MACEDONIA: which citie was *Scanderbeg* his second care, for that it was like to be the first that should endure the angrie tyrants furie, standing first in his way, as it were the fortresse of that countrey. *Moses* had there set all things in like order, as had *Scanderbeg* in CROIA; and had there placed one *Peter Perlat* (a graue and politicke man) Gouernour, with a strong garrison of souldiers chosen out of all the countrey of DYBRA, which were alwayes accounted the best men of warre in all EPIRVS,
B and was for so doing greatly commended of *Scanderbeg*. Who deliuering vnto him all the forces he had prepared for the defence of the other castles and cities of EPIRVS, sent him with diuers other of his nobilitie and captaines, to take order for the safetie of those places, appointing vnto euery man his charge. As for himselfe, he with a small troupe of horsemen went to SFETIGRADE, carefull of that citie aboue measure, as it were before diuining the ensuing danger. Being come thither, and all the souldiers assembled by his commandement into the market place, he there in open audience spake vnto them as followeth:

Scanderbeg commeth to Sfetigrade.

Almightie God could not this day offer vnto you (worthie souldiers of SFETIGRADE*) better matter: neither could a fairer occasion be presented vnto braue minds and souldiers desirous of honour,*
C *than that which now hath caused you to take vp most iust armes. Wherein you may for euer by worthie example make knowne your constant faith and worthie valour, both towards me in priuate, and the people of* EPIRVS *in generall. Hitherto we haue borne armes for the honour of our kingdome, but now we must fight for our liues, our libertie, and the wals of our countrey. You must now force your selues, that you doe not by reproch and cowardise staine the worthie praises you haue alreadie deserued, by the great victories by you obtained vnder my conduct. The greatest part of the fortune of this warre depen-*
deth vpon you: For the first passage of Amurath *into* EPIRVS *(that I my selfe may be vnto you the first messenger of that danger) will be this way: the first furie of the Turkes will assaile you, that hauing here as it were broken downe the strongest fortresse of* EPIRVS*, hee may afterwards breake through the countrey, more subiect to danger. The first fruits of this warre is yours, you (if you beare the*
D *hearts of courageous men, mindefull of your libertie) may beate downe the proud strength of the haughtie enemie, and discourage his high conceits. The* Othoman *King shall haue the beginning both of his hope and feare, of you: if hee shall finde you so minded, as I now see you gallantly moued, and with ioy heare your violent indignation; hee will in euery place feare a great force of danger, and therby learne to abstaine from the other cities of* EPIRVS: *neither will he lie here long at a vaine siege, except the wayward olde man, will foolishly hereupon gage all his forses: for such is the situation and strength of this cittie, that it may easily set at nought an angry enemie. Wherefore resolue with your selues worthie souldiers and citizens, only by constancie and faithfulnesse, without bloodshed, to gaine vnto your selues an honourable victorie. Of your valour (which I willingly speake of) dependeth for the most part the*
E *faithfulnesse of all the rest; they will looke vpon you whom they may praise or accuse, and whose example they may follow in the fortune of these warres. But to what purpose should men of worth in their actions pretend the necessitie of faith, or chaunce of fortune? whereas, by reason things are both best begunne and accomplished. It seldome chaunceth, that fortune faileth the sound aduice, or is not obedient vnto vertue: and you haue all things which most politicke care could prouide for your safetie. You want not armour, you want not plentifull prouision of victuals, you want not valiant men: the superfluous multitude of vnnecessarie people, the pittifull lamentation of women, and troublesome crying of children shall not withdraw you from your publicke charge, from your seruice and defence of your countrey; I haue left you alone to your selues, for defence of your citie, your religion, and dwellings, that you might be encouraged onely with the prouocations of honour and libertie, with the emulation of aduenture and danger, and the very sight one of another; and I my selfe will not bee farre off with my couragious soul-*
F *diers, a silent beholder and encourager of your vertue: where although I may not auert from you all the force of the cruell enemie by rash aduenture, nor trie the whole fortune of this warre in plaine field; yet will I turne a great part of your dangers vpon my selfe, and trouble the enemies designes, with many a hot skirmish. For as much as there is no better manner of fight, nor safer kinde of warre, for vs amongst such a multitude of men, and so many thousand of souldiers, than neuer to offer battaile vnto the enemie in plaine field, neither to aduenture all vpon the fortune of one conflict, although a man did*

The effectuall speech of Scanderbeg vnto the souldiers and citizens of Sfetigrade, to encourage thē against the comming of Amurath.

see apparent signes of victorie. He will of purpose at the first giue vs the opportunitie of good hap; he will feed our hardinesse with the bloud of his base souldiers, the easilier to intrap and oppresse our rashnesse, allured with the sweet baits of good fortune: but the craftie deuices of the Othoman *King, are by great policie and consideration to be frustrated. This mightie enemie is by little and little to be cut off, as time and place shall giue occasion. For truly that victorie should be vnto me lamentable, which I should buy with the bloud of my souldiers: and beleeue me, it would be vnto me a more sorrowfull than pleasant sight, to see eight or ten thousand of my enemies slaine, with the losse of a few of you. I will praise and honour my subiects of* Epirvs *for valiant conquerours, if they shall not suffer themselues to be conquered of the Turkish King. The rest I had rather you couragious souldiers of* Dibra *should consider with your selues, than that I should seeme to distrust of your assured faith, by giuing you a carefull and tedious admonition.* G H

When *Scanderbeg* had with cheerefull perswasion thus encouraged the minds of them of Sfetigrade, he departed thence, and visited diuers other cities of Epirvs, where finding all things politickly ordered by *Moses* and the other captaines, whom he had put in trust, he returned to his armie, then lying neere vnto Croia.

Whilest *Scanderbeg* was with great carefulnesse yet thus prouiding for the safegard of his kingdome, in the meane time *Amurath* his armie was assembled at Hadrianople, to the number of a hundred and fiftie thousand men, wherof many were pioners, and men appointed for other base seruices necessarie at the siege of townes. Of this great armie *Amurath* sent fortie I thousand light horsemen before him to Sfetigrade, who according to his command came and encamped before the citie: the newes of their comming, with a great deale more than truth, was forthwith brought to *Scanderbeg*, then lying with his small armie neere Croia: whereupon he with foure thousand horsemen, and a thousand foot, tooke the way toward Sfetigrade, and strongly encamped his armie within seuen miles of the citie. Where hauing set all things in good order, he, accompanied with *Moses* and *Tanusius*, went by certaine blind wayes through the mountaines and woods, vntill he came so neere vnto the citie, that from the place where he stood, vpon the top of a hill, he might easily discouer in what sort the enemie lay encamped: and so returning backe againe to his campe, rise with his armie in the night following, and drawing as neere vnto the Turks armie as he could, vndiscouered, placed all his armie in the couert of K the woods and secret vallies, vnperceiued of his enemies. After that he sent forth *Moses* and *Musachi* his nephew, with thirtie of his best horsemen, apparelled as if they had beene but common souldiers, but passing wel mounted, driuing before them certaine horses laden with corne, by a by-way, as if they had purposed to haue secretly got into the citie. The day then breaking, they were discouered by the Turks scouts, and set vpon: where at the first *Moses* and the rest began of purpose to flie, but when he saw that they were pursued but with like number to themselues, he returned backe vpon the Turks, and slew fiue of them, and chased the rest vnto the campe. The Generall seeing what had happened, sent forth foure thousand horsemen to pursue these supposed victuallers: whom they quickly recouered the sight of, for that *Moses* of purpose had made small haste to flie: but when the Turks began to draw nigh, *Moses* left the horses laden L with corne, and fled; yet so that he still drew on the Turks with hope to ouertake him, vntill he had brought them where *Scanderbeg* with his armie lay in wait: by whom they were suddenly assailed on euery side, and with great slaughter put to flight. In this conflict, two thousand of the Turks were slaine, and a thousand of their horses taken: of the Christians were lost but two and twentie. This was the first welcome of the Turks armie to Sfetigrade.

A notable stratageme of Scanderbeg for the intrapping of his enemies.

About eight daies after came *Amurath* with all his armie, in the beginning of May in the yeere
1449 of our Lord 1449, and hauing made the greatest shew he could with his huge armie to terrifie the defendants: he encamped the baser sort of his footmen at the foot of the hill, whereon the citie stood, & lay himselfe with his Ianizaries, and other his most valiant souldiers, about three quarters of a mile further off: where after he had lien stil one day, & well considered the strength M of the place, towards euening he sent a messenger to the citie, who requested to speake with the Gouernour *Perlat*. Whereof he hearing, came to the wall: of whom the messenger requested, That he would command the souldiers standing by, to goe further off, for as much as he had something in secret to say vnto him from his master. Vnto whom *Perlat* merrily answered: It is like indeed to be some great secret, that you would haue kept not onely from the hearing

Amurath commeth to Sfetigrade with his armie.

A ring of my ſouldiers, but from the very light of the day, and therefore haue choſen the night: but I haue not learned of mine elders, to heare any meſſage from mine enemie by night, neither at any time elſe out of the hearing of the garriſon, to whom *Scanderbeg* hath committed the defence of this citie, and I the ſafegard of my perſon: you muſt therefore at this time pardon me, and to morrow if your maſter ſo pleaſe, I will heare you at large. And therewith commanded him to depart from the wals. So he returned for that time without audience as he came. It grieued *Amurath* not a little to ſee his meſſenger ſo lightly regarded: yet foraſmuch as he had more hope to gaine the citie by large offers, or ſome reaſonable compoſition, than by all his great force, he diſſembled his wrath: and the next day ſent the ſame meſſenger againe, with one
B of his Baſſaes, a graue and well ſpoken man, himſelfe borne in EPIRVS. This Baſſa with three ſouldiers, and two ſeruitours, was by the gouernours commandement by one of the ports receiued into the citie, and brought into *S. Maries* church. Where after he had with great eloquence ſought to inſinuate himſelfe into the minds of the gouernour, and the hearers, and afterwards augmented the terrour of *Amuraths* power beyond all meaſure, laying before them the great victories by him obtained againſt the Hungarians, and the other Chriſtian Princes: in fine he exhorted them to yeeld the citie vnto him, in whoſe name he promiſed firſt that the citizens ſhould in all reſpects vnder his gouernment liue as they had before done vnder *Scanderbeg*; then, that the gouernour ſhould receiue at *Amurath* his hands moſt honourable preferments, with many rich and princely gifts; and that it ſhould be lawfull for the garriſon ſouldiers to de-
C part in ſafetie whither they would, and to haue three hundred thouſand aſpers diuided amongſt them in reward. But when the Baſſa had ended his ſpeech, the gouernour in this ſort replied:

If you had not deliuered this ſpeech vnto reſolute men, deuoted vnto the defence of their libertie, it might perhaps haue wrought ſome effect; and we (ſaid he) *might peraduenture liſten vnto your offers, if we were either afraid of the* Othoman *King, and the vaine threats of our enemies, or elſe were wearie of the gouernment of the noble* Scanderbeg. *But foraſmuch as no euill deſert of his, nor good deſert of your maſters, hath yet paſſed, for which we ſhould preferre a ſtranger before our naturall Soueraigne, an enemie before a friend, a Turke before a Chriſtian; let your maſter proceed firſt in his action begun, let him proue his fortune, let him by force terrifie vs, beat downe our wals, make hauocke*
D *of our men, and by ſtrong hand driue vs to humble our ſelues at his feet, and to ſue for peace: But it were a great diſhonour, yea a thing almoſt to be laughed at, if we ſhould cowardly accept of theſe conditions by him offered, before any aſſault giuen, before one drop of bloud ſpilt, before any ſouldier did ſo much as once grone for any wound receiued, before one ſtone were ſhaken in the wall, or any ſmall breach made. But your maſter ſhall doe better to raiſe his ſiege, and get him backe againe to* HADRIANOPLE, *there to ſpend the ſmall remainder of his old yeeres in quiet, and not to prouoke vs his fatall enemies, whoſe courage in defence of our liberties, and fidelitie towards our Prince, he hath ſo oftentimes proued to his great diſhonour, and loſſe of his armies. The faith I haue once giuen to my Soueraigne, for the defence of this citie, I will neuer forget, vntill the effuſion of the laſt drop of my bloud. It ſhall be vnto me reward and honour enough, if I either liuing defend this citie, or with loſſe of my life ſhall leaue my guilt-*
E *leſſe ſoule at libertie, and my carkaſſe amongſt the dead bodies of worthie ſouldiers, when I ſhall find a way into a farre better place.*

The reſolute anſwere of Perlat the Gouernour, vnto the Baſſa.

The Generall hauing giuen this reſolute anſwere vnto the Baſſa, bountifully feaſted him that day at dinner, and afterwards led him through the middeſt of the citie: where he ſaw great ſtore of victuals, by the gouernour commanded of purpoſe to be ſet in ſhew, to put *Amurath* out of hope of winning the citie by long ſiege. And ſo ſent the Baſſa out by the ſame port whereby he came in, much diſcontented with the anſwere he was to returne to his maſter.

When *Amurath* vnderſtood by the Baſſa, of the gouernours reſolution, he was therewith ex- *Skeligrade aſſaulted.*
ceeding wroth, and thereupon with his great ordinance battered the citie three dayes without
F intermiſſion. And hauing by the furie of his artillerie made a ſmall breach, he forthwith gaue thereunto a moſt terrible aſſault, labouring firſt to win the ſame by the force and multitude of his common ſouldiers, which the Turks call Aſapi, whom he forced by great numbers to that ſeruice. Of theſe ſouldiers, the Turke in his wars maketh no great reckoning, but to blunt the ſwords of his enemies, or to abate their firſt furie, thereby to giue the eaſier victorie to his Ianizaries and other his better ſouldiers: which the *Othoman* Kings hold for good policie. Whileſt

these forlorne souldiers, without respect of danger pressing forward, are slaine by heapes at the G
breach, the Ianizaries at the same time in another place attempted to haue scaled the wals of the
citie: but whilest they with much labour and difficultie first crawle vp the steepe rocke whereon
the citie was built, and afterward desperatly mount vp their scaling ladders, they were by the
defendants with huge stones and weightie peeces of timber cast vpon them, beaten downe,
wherewith they were driuen headlong to the bottome of the rocke, and so miserably slaine.
Many of them together with their skaling ladders, were by the Christians thrust from the wall,
and tumbling from the rocke, violently carried with them others, comming vp behind them.
Some few got to the top of the ladders, and taking hold of the battlements of the wals, lost some
their fingers, some their hands, but most their liues, being beaten downe as the other were. Many H
of them which stood farther off, were then wounded also, and with shot from the wals slaine.
With this miserable slaughter, and no hope to prenaile, the Turks discouraged, began to with-
draw themselues from the assault: but the Bassaes and captaines standing behind them, forced
them againe forward, exhorting some, threatening others, and beating the rest forward with
their trunchions. By which meanes the assault was againe renewed, but not with such courage
as before, though with no lesse slaughter: which the defendants seeing, gaue from the wals great
tokens of ioy and triumph. *Amurath* perceiuing his discouraged souldiers readie of themselues
to forsake the assault, presently sent *Feri-Bassa* (one of his most valiant captaines) with a new
supplie of three thousand chosen souldiers to renew the fight. The Christians well aware of
their comming, ceased not with continuall shot to beat them from the wals: but such was the I
forwardnesse of that fierce captaine, that without regard of danger he brought his men to the
wals, where the defendants from aboue ouerwhelmed them with stones, timber, wild fire, and
such other things as are vsually prepared for the defence of townes besieged. For all that, *Feri-*
Bassa gaue so great an assault, that he slew diuers of the defendants vpon the wals, and had there
forcibly entered, had not the Gouernour perceiuing the danger, with a companie of fresh soul-
diers come with speed to the defence of that place; whereby the enemie was presently repulsed,
The Turks repulsed, retire. and driuen againe from the wals. *Amurath* seeing the great slaughter of his men, and no hope
of succesſe, caused a retreat to be sounded, and so leauing the assault, retired againe into his
campe. The great losse and dishonour at this assault receiued, much troubled his wayward
mind: who for all that yet ceased not to giue the like vaine attempts. At length the captaine of K
the Ianizaries perceiuing that part of the citie which was fartheſt from the campe, to be com-
monly but slenderly manned, by reason that it seemed a place impregnable, both for the height
The Ianizaries desperatly attempt to surprise the citie. and steepnesse of the rocke; told *Amurath*, That he would assay (if it so pleased him) secretly in
the night to attempt by that place to enter the citie: where as they thought nothing was more
to be feared, than the height thereof, which they supported with the wings of desire, doubted
not to mount vnto. This his deuice exceedingly pleased the King, and was the next night with
great silence put in execution. But such was the carefulnesse of the Gouernour ouer euery part
of his charge, that nothing could be done against the same, but that it was by him forthwith dis-
couered. The Gouernour aduertised by the watch, of the Turks attempt; with great silence
presently repaired to the place with a great companie of the garrison souldiers, and standing L
close, from the top of the wall beheld the Turks, as it had beene a swarme of Emmets climing vp
the high rocks, and one helping vp another by such desperate way, as was in reason to haue
beene thought no man would haue attempted. But when they were come to the top of the
rocke, and now euen readie to enter, they were from aboue suddenly ouerwhelmed, as it had
beene with a shower of shot, and so violently forced downe that high rocke, that most part of
them which had got vp to any height, were miserably crushed to death either with the weight
The Ianizaries repulsed. of themselues, or of others falling vpon them, and many of the rest slaine with shot from the top
of the rocke: whereof *Amurath* presently vnderstanding, was therewith exceedingly greeued.

During the time of this siege, *Scanderbeg* neuer lay long still in one place, but remoued con-
tinually from place to place, as best serued his purpose, breaking sometimes into one quarter of M
the Turks campe, and sometime into another, & straightway so suddenly gone againe and as it
were vanished out of sight, that *Amurath* many times wondered what was become of him. At
this time, being the latter end of Iune, he was come with his armie within eight miles of *Amu-*
raths campe: and from thence sent *Moses* his greateſt captaine, in the attire of a common soul-
dier, with two other, to take view how the enemie lay encamped. By which trustie espials he was
enformed,

A enformed, That the Turks lay in great ſecuritie, as men without feare, keeping but negligent watch. Of which opportunitie, *Scanderbeg* reioycing, the night following ſuddenly aſſaulted one quarter of the Turks campe. Whoſe comming, although it was a little before by the Turks ſcouts diſcouered; yet his furious aſſault was ſo ſudden and ſo forceable, that he ſlew two thouſand of the Turks, and filled euery corner of that great campe with feare and tumult, before they could well arme themſelues or make reſiſtance. After which ſlaughter he ſafely retired, carrying away with him two hundred and thirtie horſe, with ſeuen of the Turks enſignes, hauing in this skirmiſh loſt of his men but two and fortie: whoſe dead bodies the Turks the next morning in reuenge of their ſlaine friends hewed into ſmall peeces.

B Vpon theſe great diſgraces one following in the necke of another, *Amurath* hauing no other obiect but the citie to ſhew his furie vpon, gaue three fierce aſſaults vnto the ſame, one after another, and was alwayes with loſſe both of his men and honour repulſed. But the more he loſt, the more he burnt with deſire of reuenge, perſwading his ſouldiers, That as the ſtrongeſt cities and fortreſſes were built by mens hands, ſo were they to be ouerthrowne and laid euen with the ground by reſolute and valiant men: encouraging them to a freſh aſſault, with greater promiſes of reward than euer he had done before in all his warres, from the firſt beginning of his raigne. And becauſe he would with more ſafetie giue this his laſt and greateſt aſſault, he appointed *Feri-Baſſa*, with twelue thouſand horſemen and ſix thouſand foot to attend vpon *Scanderbeg*, if he ſhould hap to come (as he thought he would) to trouble the aſſault, by aſſailing of his campe.

C *Feri-Baſſa* glad of this charge, well hoping now to redeeme his former ouerthrow with ſome great victorie, & leading forth his armie a little from the campe, as he was commanded, ſo lay; wiſhing for nothing more than the comming of *Scanderbeg*, vainly boaſting, That he would ſeeke him in the field, and there trie his force and fortune with him hand to hand: which he did ſhortly after to his coſt. When *Amurath* had thus ſet in order all things requiſite, as well for the ſiege, as for the ſafegard of his campe: the next morning he cõpaſſed the citie round about with his armie, & couered the ground with his men of war, purpoſing at that time to gage his whole forces vpon the taking thereof. The wals he had before in ſome places battered, ſo much as was poſſible; and yet but ſo, as that they were not without skaling ladders to be aſſaulted: partly for the naturall ſtrength of the place, & partly for that the defendants had with great diligence con-

D tinually repaired & filled vp with earth what the furie of the cannon had throwne downe. This aſſault *Amurath* began firſt with his archers and ſmall ſhot, which deliuered their arrowes and bullets vpon the top of the wall, & into the citie, as if it had beene a ſhower of haile, thereby to trouble the ſtationarie ſouldiers. In this heat, ladders were clapped to the wals in euery place where any could be poſſibly reared, and the Turks began deſperatly to skale the wals: but the Chriſtians nothing diſmaied thereat, with great courage reſiſted them, and with ſhot from their ſafe ſtandings wounded and ſlew many of them: yet others ſtill preſſed vp in the places of them that were ſlaine, ſo that the aſſault became moſt terrible in many places at once, but eſpecially neere vnto the great gate of the citie; where the Turks had vpon the ſudden with ladders, timber, and planks clapped together, raiſed cloſe vnto that tower, as it had been a woodden tower,

E equall in height to the wall; frõ whence the Turks greatly diſtreſſed the Chriſtians in that place, fighting with them as if it had beene vpon euen ground, ſtill ſending vp freſh ſouldiers in ſtead of them that were ſlaine: and thereby preuailed ſo far, that they had ſet vp certaine of *Amurath* his enſignes vpon the wall, to the great comfort of the Turks, & aſtoniſhment of the beſieged Chriſtians. The Gouernour ſeeing the imminent danger, haſted to the place with a companie of freſh and valiant ſouldiers, by whoſe force the Turks were quickly repulſed from the wall, their enſignes taken and ſent into the market place: the tower of wood with many ladders and much timber by the Turks brought to that place, was quickly conſumed with wild fire caſt vpon the ſame from the wals. *Perlat* hauing deliuered the citie of this feare, preſently placed freſh ſouldiers in ſtead of them which were ſlaine or hurt, and ſo worthily defended the citie.

F Whileſt *Amurath* was giuing this great aſſault to Sfetigrade, *Scanderbeg* to withdraw him from the ſame, came with nine thouſand ſouldiers to aſſaile the Turks campe, as *Amurath* had before ſuſpected, and was now come very neere the ſame. *Feri-Baſſa* glad of his comming, oppoſed his armie againſt him: which *Scanderbeg* ſeeing, retired a little, of purpoſe to draw the Baſſa farther from the campe, and then forthwith began to ioyne battell with him. The Baſſa conſidering the ſmall number of his enemies, & his owne greater power, withdrew foure thouſand

Scanderbeg commeth to trouble the aſſault, and is met with by Feri-Baſſa.

ſand horſemen out of his armie to fetch a compaſſe about, & to ſet vpon the rereward of *Scanderbegs* armie: hoping ſo to incloſe him, that he ſhould neuer eſcape thence, but there either to be ſlaine or taken aliue, and his armie vtterly defeated. But the expert captaine perceiuing his purpoſe, to meet therewith, left *Moſes* to lead the maine battell, and he himſelfe with two thouſand horſemen, ſo valiantly charged thoſe foure thouſand of his enemies before they were well departed from the reſt of the Baſſaes armie, that they had now more cauſe to looke to their own ſafetie, than how to circumuent others. In this conflict *Feri-Baſſa* hand to hand, as he had oft times before deſired, encountring with *Scanderbeg*, was by him there ſlaine. All this while that *Scanderbeg* was in fight with *Feri-Baſſa* in the right wing of the armie, and *Muſachie* in the left, *Moſes* ſtood faſt, receiuing the aſſault of the enemie without mouing any thing forward, expecting the ſucceſſe of the wings. But *Scanderbeg* hauing diſcomfited the right wing, and ſlaine the Generall, comming now in, he ſet forward with ſuch force and courage, that the Turks not able longer to abide his force, turned their backs and fled: of whom many were ſlaine in this chaſe, though *Scanderbeg* doubting the great power of his enemie ſo nigh at hand, durſt not follow them farre; but ſounding a retrait, put his armie againe in good order, for feare of ſome ſudden attempt from the campe, and after appointed ſome of the meaneſt of his ſouldiers to take the ſpoile of the ſlaine Turks. When *Amurath* had vnderſtood what had happened to *Feri-Baſſa*, he was ſo ouercome with anger and melancholie, that for a while he could not ſpeake one word: but after the heat was a little paſt, he commanded certaine ſmall peeces of ordinance, which he had before vſed againſt the citie, to be remoued into the campe, and there placed vpon that ſide which was moſt in danger to the enemie. He alſo preſently ſent thither foure thouſand ſouldiers to ioyne with the remainder of *Feri-Baſſaes* armie, for defence of the campe, with ſtraight charge that they ſhould not iſſue out of the trenches. Neuertheleſſe he himſelfe continued the aſſault of the citie all that day: but when night drew on, and no hope appeared for him to preuaile, he cauſed a retrait to be ſounded, and leauing the aſſault, he returned againe into his campe. At this aſſault *Amurath* loſt ſeuen thouſand men, beſide many that died afterwards of their wounds; but of the garriſon ſouldiers were ſlaine but ſeuentie, and ninetie moe hurt.

The terrour of the Turkiſh armie began now to grow into contempt throughout EPIRVS; and *Scanderbeg* was in good hope, that *Amurath* after ſo many ouerthrowes and ſhamefull repulſes, would at length raiſe his ſiege and be gone: yet he ſent ſpies continually to diſcouer what was done in the Turks campe, and he himſelfe with two thouſand ſouldiers would oftentimes ſhew himſelfe vpon the ſides of the mountaines neere vnto *Amurath* his campe, of purpoſe to draw the Turks out, that he might take them at ſome aduantage. But the old King had giuen commandement vpon paine of death, that no man ſhould goe out of the trenches without leaue, or once to ſpeake of giuing battell or aſſault: ſo that he lay certaine dayes in his campe, not like a King beſieging of a citie, but more like a man beſieged himſelfe: the which his ſtill lying, *Scanderbeg* had the more in diſtruſt, fearing greatly that he was hatching ſome miſchiefe, which ſo ſoone as it was ripe would violently breake out.

Amurath by great promiſes ſeeketh to corrupt the gariſon of Sſetigrade.

Amurath conſidering with what euill ſucceſſe he had many times aſſaulted the citie, and holding it for a great diſhonour to raiſe his ſiege and depart, hauing done nothing worth the remembrance; thought good once againe to proue, if it were poſſible to ouercome the minds of the garriſon ſouldiers with gifts, whō he was not able to ſubdue by force. For which purpoſe he ſent an embaſſadour vnto the citie, offering vnto the beſieged and garriſon ſouldiers eaſie conditions of peace, with ſuch large gifts & rewards as had not been heard offered to any garriſon in former time. All which his magnificall promiſes were lightly reiected by the common conſent of all the whole garriſon, preferring their faithfull loyaltie before all his golden mountaines. For all that, *Amurath* was in good hope, that amongſt ſo many, ſome would be found into whoſe minds his large offers might make ſome impreſſion: wherein he was not deceiued.

A traitor corrupted with Amurath his large promiſes, cōſpireth to betray the citie.

For one baſe minded fellow amongſt the reſt, corrupted with the Turkes great promiſes, preferring his owne priuate wealth, before the welfare of his countrey, waiting his time, had ſecret conference with the Turks eſpials, & promiſed vpon aſſurance of ſuch reward as was before by *Amurath* profered, to finde meanes that in few daies the citie ſhould be yeelded into his power. This corrupted traitor, had laid many miſcheeuous plots for the effecting of this horrible treaſon: but the firſt deuice he put in practiſe, which of all others a man would haue thought to haue been of leaſt moment, ſerued his wicked purpoſe in ſtead of all the reſt. All the garriſon ſouldiers

A diers of SPETIGRADE were of the vpper countrey of DIBRA, put into that citie, by *Moses*, for their approoued valour aboue all the other ſouldiers of EPIRVS. But as they were men of great courage, ſo were the exceeding ſuperſtitious both in their religion and manner of liuing, putting nice difference betwixt one kinde of lawfull meat and other: accounting ſome cleane, ſome vncleane; abhorring from that, which they fondly deemed vncleane, with more then a Iewiſh ſuperſtition, chuſing rather to die than to eate or drink thereof: ſuch is the ſtrong deluſion of blinde error, where it hath throughly poſſeſſed the mindes of men. The citie of SPETIGRADE (as is aforeſaid) is ſituat vpon the top of a great high rock, as moſt of the cities of EPIRVS now bee, and was then watred but with one great well in the middeſt of the citie, which
B ſunke deepe into the rock, plentifully ſerued both the publicke & priuate vſe of the inhabitants. Into this common well the malicious traitor in the night time caſt the foule ſtinking carion carkas of a dead dog, knowing, that the conceited gariſon ſouldiers of DIBRA would rather indure the paines of death, & ſtarue, or els yeeld vp the citie vpon any condition, than to drink of that polluted water. In the morning when that ſtinking carion was eſpied, and drawne out of the well, the report thereof was quickly bruted in euery corner of the citie, and that the well was poiſoned: ſo that all the people were in maner in an vprore about the finding out of the traitor. The citizens were exceeding ſorrie for that had happened, but the gariſon ſoldiers deteſted that loathſome & vncleane water (as they accounted it) more then the Turkiſh ſeruitude, proteſting, that they would rather periſh with thirſt, than drinke thereof. Whereupon ſome of them deſired
C to ſet fire vpon the citie, and whileſt they had yet ſtrength, to breake through the enemies campe or there manfully to die. And they which thought beſt of the matter, requeſted, That the cittie might be yeelded vp: for now, they diſcouraged with a ſuperſtitious vanitie, could be content to hearken to the former conditions of peace, yea they were readie enough of themſelues to ſue vnto *Amurath* for peace, thought it had beene vpon harder tearmes. The Gouernour troubled with that had happened, and aſtonied to ſee ſo great an alteration in the mindes of his ſouldiers vpon ſo ſmall occaſion, could not tell whether he might thinke it to proceed of a ſuperſtitious conceit, or of ſome ſecret compact made with *Amurath*. But the better to pacifie the matter, he came into the market place, and there in the hearing of all the garriſon, with many effectuall reaſons, exhorted them to continue faithfull vnto their Prince and countrey in that honorable ſer-
D uice; and in a matter of ſo great conſequence to make ſmall reckoning to vſe that water, which would eaſily in ſhort time be brought againe to the wonted puritie and cleaneneſſ: And to perſwade them the rather, he went preſently to the well himſelfe, and in the ſight of them all drunk a great draught of the water, whoſe example the citizens following, dranke likewiſe. But when it was offered to the captaines and ſouldiers of the garriſon, they all refuſed to taſte thereof, as if it had been a moſt loathſome thing, or rather ſome deadly poiſon, & with great inſtance cryed vnto the Gouernor, to giue vp the citie: for which cauſe many thought they were corrupted by *Amurath* his great promiſes. Howbeit none of that garriſon (except that one traitour) did euer afterwards reuolt vnto the Turkiſh King, or yet appeared any thing the richer for any gift receiued, whereby ſuch ſuſpition might be confirmed. When the Gouernour ſaw that the obſtinate
E minds of the garriſon were not to be mooued with any perſwaſion or reward (whereof he ſpared not to make large promiſe) nor by any other meanes which he could deuiſe: he called vnto him his chiefe captaines, with the beſt ſort of the citizens, & reſolued with them *full* ſore againſt his will, to yeeld vp the citie to *Amurath*, vpon ſuch conditions as they themſelues there agreed vpon: which were, That it ſhould be lawfull for all the captains and ſouldiers to depart in ſafetie with their armour and all other things; and that ſo many of the citizens as would ſtay, might there ſtill dwell in the citie, in ſuch ſort, as they had done before, vnder the gouernment of *Scanderbeg*; the reſt that liſted not to remaine there ſtill, might at their pleaſure with bag and baggage depart whither they would. Glad was *Amurath* when this offer was made vnto him, and granted them all that was deſired, ſauing that he would not conſent that the citizens ſhould continue
F in the citie, yet was he content that they ſhould liue vnder him as they had done before, quietly enioying all their poſſeſſions, but to build their houſes without the wale of the citie: which condition ſome accepted, and ſome forſaking all, went to *Scanderbeg*. When all was throughly agreed vpon, the keyes of the gates were deliuered to *Amurath*, and the Gouernor with the captaines and all the garriſon ſouldiers ſuffered quietly to paſſe through the Turkiſh campe, as the King had promiſed. Howbeit, *Mahomet* the ſonne of *Amurath*, a Prince of a cruell diſpotion, earneſtly

The carkas of a dead dog caſt by the traitor into the common well that ſerued the citie.

The Gouernour in vaine ſeeketh to perſwade the garriſon ſouldiers to drinke of the water of the well.

earnestly perswaded his father, to haue broken his faith, and to haue put them all to the sword: G
saying, it was one of their Prophet *Mahomets* chiefe commandements, to vse all crueltie for the destruction of the Christians. But the old King would not therein hearken vnto his sonne, saying, That he which was desirous to be great amongst men, must either be indeed faithfull of his word and promise, or at leastwise seeme so to be, thereby to gaine the minds of the people, who naturally abhorre the gouernment of a faithlesse and cruell Prince. The traitor which corrupted the water, remained still in the citie, and was by *Amurath* rewarded with three rich suits of apparell, and fiftie thousand aspers, and had giuen vnto him besides a yeerely pension of two thousand duckats. But short was the ioy the traitor had of this euill gotten goods: for after he had a few dayes vainly triumphed in the midst of *Amurath* his fauours, he was suddenly gone, H
and neuer afterwards seene or heard tell of: being secretly made away (as was supposed) by the commandement of *Amurath*: whose noble heart could not but detest the traitor, although the treason serued well his purpose. *Amurath* entring into SFETIGRADE, caused the wals to be forthwith repaired, and placed one thousand two hundred Ianizaries in garrison there. And raising his campe the first of September, departed out of EPIRVS, hauing lost thirtie thousand of his Turks at the siege of SFETIGRADE; much greeued in mind for all that, that he could not vanquish the enemie, whom he came of purpose to subdue. In his returne, the viceroy of ASIA marched before him with the Asian souldiers; in the rereward followed the viceroy of EVROPE with his Europeian souldiers; in the middest was *Amurath* himselfe, compassed about with his Ianizaries and other souldiers of the court. *Scanderbeg* vnderstanding of *Amurath* his departure, I
followed speedily with eight thousand horsemen, and three thousand foot, and taking the aduantage of the thicke woods and mountaine straits (to him well knowne) whereby that great armie was to passe, oftentimes skirmished with the Turks, charging them sometime in the vaward, and sometime in the rereward, sometime on the one side, and sometime on the other, and slew many of them: whereby he so troubled *Amurath* his passage, that he was glad to leaue the viceroy of ROMANIA, with 30000 to attend vpon *Scanderbeg*, that he himselfe might in the meane time with more safetie march away with the rest of his armie. *Scanderbeg* perceiuing the stay of the viceroy, ceased to follow *Amurath* further, fearing to be enclosed betweene those two great armies. The viceroy seeing that *Scanderbeg* was retired, after he had staied a few dayes, followed his master to HADRIANOPLE, and so *Scanderbeg* returned to CROIA. K

A traitor worthily rewarded according to his treason.

Shortly after the departure of *Amurath* out of EPIRVS, *Scanderbeg* left two thousand souldiers vpon the borders for defence of the country against the Turks. These souldiers so straightly kept in the Ianizaries left in garrison at SFETIGRADE, that they could not looke out of the citie, but they were intercepted and slaine. And within a few dayes after came himselfe with an armie of eighteene thousand, and laid siege to SFETIGRADE the space of a moneth, which was from the middle of September vntill the middle of October. In which time he gaue two great assaults to haue recouered the citie, but was both times repulsed, with the losse of fiue hundred men. *Amurath* vnderstanding that *Scanderbeg* lay at the siege of SFETIGRADE, sent with all speed to recall his armie, but lately before dispersed. Whereof *Scanderbeg* hauing intelligence, considering also the difficultie of the enterprise, with the approch of Winter, raised his siege, and re- L
turned to CROIA: where he set all things in the same order he had done before the comming of *Amurath* to the siege of SFETIGRADE, and put two thousand of his best souldiers there in garrison, vnder the charge of the famous captaine *Vranacontes*, and stored the citie with sufficient victuall for a yeeres siege, wherein he had great helpe from the Venetians and other Christian Princes, for that there was then great scarcitie of all things in EPIRVS, by reason of the late warres. The like care he had also of all the rest of his cities, being continually aduertised from his secret friends in the Turks court, of the great preparation intended against him by the Turkish King, against the beginning of the next Spring.

1450 *Amurath* vnderstanding that *Scanderbeg* was departed from SFETIGRADE, changed his former determination for the calling backe againe of his armie, and appointed it to meet againe at M
HADRIANOPLE, in the beginning of March following: whither the Bassaes, & other great commanders, at the time appointed assembled with their companies, according as *Amurath* had before commanded. So that by the latter end of March, he had there in readinesse an armie of an hundred and threescore thousand men strong. Of which great multitude, he after the manner of the Turkish wars, sent fortie thousand horsemen, vnder the leading of *Sebalyas* a politick captaine,

Amurath assembleth againe his armie at Hadrianople.

A captaine, as his vauntcourriers into EPIRVS, in the beginning of Aprill, in the yeere 1450. The valiant captaine with great ſpeed and no reſiſtance entred into EPIRVS, as was giuen him in charge, and without let came to CROIA: where, after he had aduiſedly conſidered of the ſituation thereof, and of the places thereabouts, he ſtrongly encamped himſelfe neere thereunto in the pleaſant plaine called TYRANNA: and there within his trenches kept his ſouldiers cloſe, attending nothing more, but that no new ſupplie of men, munition, or victuals, ſhould be conuaied into the citie, more than was therein before his comming. For he was not able with his horſemen to doe any thing againſt the citie: and *Scanderbeg* had left nothing abroad in the countrey ſubiect to his furie. Beſides that, he was expreſly by *Amurath* forbidden, to attempt
B any thing againſt *Scanderbeg* himſelfe.

After *Sebalyas* had twentie dayes thus lien encamped before CROIA, neither doing nor taking harme; *Amurath* by reaſon of his great age, hauing marched oftentimes but fiue miles a day, came thither alſo with his whole armie, wherewith he filled all the countrey round about: the very ſight whereof, had beene enough to haue diſcouraged the ſmall garriſon in CROIA, had they not beene men both of great experience and reſolution. Where after he had ſpent foure dayes in ſetling of his campe, he ſent two meſſengers to the Gouernour (as the manner of the Turks is) offering him if he would yeeld vp the citie, that it ſhould be lawfull for him with all his ſouldiers in ſafetie with bagge and baggage to depart; and the Gouernour himſelfe to re-
C ceiue in reward two hundred thouſand aſpers, with an honourable place amongſt the great Baſſaes of his court, if it would pleaſe him to accept thereof: and further, that the citizens ſhould enioy all their ancient liberties as in former time, without any alteration; with promiſe alſo of greater. Theſe meſſengers comming to the gates of the citie, could not be ſuffered to enter, but ſtanding without, were commanded there to deliuer their meſſage. Which when the Gouernour had heard, he ſcornfully reiected their offers, and returned the meſſengers ſhamefully derided by the ſouldiers which ſtood vpon the wall. *Amurath* more offended with this contempt, than the refuſall of his offers; and ſeeing no other meanes to gaine the citie, conuerted all his deuices vnto the ſiege thereof. Wherefore he firſt commanded ten great peeces of artillerie to be forthwith caſt, for he had brought none with him readie made, becauſe of the dif-
D ficult paſſage ouer the high mountaines into EPIRVS; whereby it ſeemed to be a matter of infinite trouble to haue brought his great ordinance: and therefore caried with him great ſtore of metall in maſſe, whereof at his pleaſure to make his great artillerie as he ſaw cauſe. In fifteene dayes this worke was brought to perfection, and ten peeces of huge greatneſſe were readie mounted vpon cariages. Six of them he placed againſt the Eaſt ſide of the citie, towards the plaine of TYRANNA, and the other foure againſt the gate: in which two places onely, CROIA was ſubiect to batterie, being on all other parts naturally defended with impregnable rocks, vpon the tops whereof were built faire battlements more for beautie than needfull defence. Theſe two places *Amurath* battered foure dayes continually, and with the furie of his artillerie had in *Croia battered.* both places beaten downe halfe the wall, and ſore ſhaken the reſt. Wherewith the Turks were exceedingly encouraged, and with great cheerefulneſſe made all things readie to aſſault thoſe
E breaches, whenſoeuer *Amurath* ſhould command, ſtriuing among themſelues who ſhould ſhew himſelfe moſt forward in that dangerous enterpriſe. And *Mahomet* the young Prince, the more to encourage the ſouldiers, beſides the great rewards by his father propoſed, promiſed of himſelfe to giue an hundred thouſand aſpers to him that ſhould firſt ſet vp an enſigne vpon the wals of the citie. The garriſon ſouldiers on the other ſide, conſidering that the whole ſtate and welfare of EPIRVS was repoſed in their valour; and that the eyes of moſt part of Chriſtendome were as it were fixed vpon them, were nothing diſmaied with the breaches made, but manfully comforted and encouraged one another to endure all manner of perill and danger that might poſſibly chance: but eſpecially the worthie Gouernour *Vranacontes*, who going through the middeſt of his ſouldiers, and ſhaking ſome of them by the hands, withall ſaid:

F

Theſe, theſe are the fortreſſes of our citie, theſe are the inuincible bulwarkes, theſe are the irremouable ſtones and ſureſt ſement. What honour? what praiſe? what triumph ſhould we hope for? if theſe wals ſtanding whole and ſtrong, we ſhould lie ſhrouded vnder the defence of them, and not they defended by vs? So can cowards defend cities, and ſheepe feare not the wolues rage, when they are ſafely ſhut vp within the wals of their ſheepcoats: But that is the praiſe of the wals, and not of the men. *The cheerefull ſpeech of Vranacontes the Gouernour to encourage his ſouldiers.*

Worthie

Worthie Caſtriot *our Prince hath commended this his citie to be defended by vs, and not vs by it. Honour is attended vpon with danger, and foſtered vp amongſt perils: euery baſe mariner may be a maſter in faire weather: and firme things ſtand of themſelues, and need not our vpholding. Wherefore, men of worth ſhun ſuch things, which being kept or loſt, yeeld like praiſe. Things readie to fall, need ſhoaring, and thither haſteth honour, and there (worthie ſouldiers) appeareth courage and valour. Wherefore let our valiant right hands defend theſe broken breaches, and in ſtead of theſe dead wals, courageouſly oppoſe our luſtie and liuely armed bodies againſt the force of our enemies. If theſe wals ſtood ſtill firme, and vnbattered, you ſhould then fight from the top of them like women; but now that they are ſomething ſhaken, you ſhall as men ſtand vpon ſomewhat more euen ground, and encounter your enemies hand to hand, the better to ſatisfie your furious deſire. Where I alſo in the thickeſt, ſhall eaſily view and iudge of euery mans priuate courage, in particular, and of all your valour in common. And yet if we well conſider of the matter, the place it ſelfe doth yet notably make for vs; and our former good hopes are little or nothing by theſe ſmall breaches diminiſhed: For, this riſing of the hill (not poſſible to be taken from vs) although it be not ſo high as it is in other places, yet doth it not ſerue vs ſufficiently at great aduantage to charge our enemies, and hinder their aſſault? The ſteepeneſſe whereof, as it will be troubleſome vnto them, ſo will it keepe vs moſt freſh in ſtrength, and make our ſhot more forcible. Wherefore this had beene a thing of vs to haue beene wiſhen for, if we deſire the ſlaughter of our enemies at this ſiege; or if we wiſh for perpetuall honour and glorie by this warre. For this breach of the wals will encourage theſe barbarians, and allure their armed men to clime vp in greater multitude than if the wals were whole, whereof ſo many ſhall on euery ſide be eaſily ſlaine, as we ſhall but aime at: except you had rather ſit ſtill, holding your hands together in your boſomes as cowards. Their dead bodies ſhall fill vp the breaches againe, if you be men mindfull of your libertie. What is there (worthie captaines and ſouldiers) that letteth our victorie? or memorable ſlaughter of our enemies? by whom onely theſe two places of the citie can be aſſaulted: all the reſt is out of danger, and feares no enemies force. Here onely is the paines to be taken, this onely is left for you to defend, and here ſhall you all be: the courage, force, and ſtrength of you all ſhall in this place appeare. How will you ſo many worthie captaines, and valiant ſouldiers, in ſo little roome beſtow your ſelues? We are too many defendants for ſo ſmall breaches. Yet let vs play the men, and doe our endeuour: let vs in one conflict weaken the tyrants ſtrength, and burſt his proud heart; he will forſake this citie, and raiſe his ſiege vnfortunatly begun, ſo ſoone as he ſhall ſee his firſt aſſault to coſt him the liues of ſo many thouſands of his men.*

G H I K L M

Croia aſſaulted. When *Vranacontes* had with this comfortable ſpeech thus encouraged his ſouldiers, againſt the aſſault which he expected the next day; and had with great care and diligence ſet all things in order for the ſame, and repaired the breaches as well as was poſſible in that caſe: he gaue them leaue for that night to take their reſt. In the morning *Amurath* commanded the aſſault to be giuen to both the breaches, which was forthwith by the Turks cheerefully begun, and euery man buſie to performe the ſeruice he was appointed vnto. But by that time that the aſſault was well begun, a ſudden allarum was raiſed throughout all the Turks campe: for *Scanderbeg* with fiue thouſand valiant ſouldiers, had ſuddenly broken in vpon one ſide of the Turks great campe, and at the firſt encounter had ſlaine ſix hundred of the Turks, & was now ſpoiling their tents. The rumour whereof, troubled the whole campe, and made the Turks with leſſe courage to aſſault the breaches, for feare of the danger behind them. *Amurath* although he had great confidence in them whō he had before left for the ſafegard of his tents, yet for more ſuretie ſent *Seremet* one of his greateſt captaines, with foure thouſand ſouldiers backe into the campe, for more ſuretie: ſaying, that nothing could be too ſure, againſt that wild beaſt: meaning the furie of *Scanderbeg*. *Mahomet* alſo the young Prince, haſted thither in great choler with his guard, much againſt his fathers will. But *Moſes*, *Scanderbeg* his lieutenant, knowing himſelfe too weak to withſtand the multitude that was ſwarming thither (contenting himſelfe with that which was alreadie done) had before *Mahomet* his comming, ſpeedily retired with all his armie into the ſafegard of the mountaines, from whence he came: hauing done great harme in the Turks campe, with the loſſe but of ten men. *Scanderbeg* in the heat of this skirmiſh, forgetting himſelfe, had ſo farre engaged himſelfe among the Turks, that he was by them on euery ſide encloſed, and in great danger to haue beene ſlaine or taken: yet valiantly breaking through them, he eſcaped the danger and recouered the mountains, and with much adoe came at length to his campe, to the great ioy and comfort of them all, being before in great feare he had beene loſt. This was accounted

Scanderbeg in danger.

the

A the greatest ouersight of *Scanderbeg* in all his warres, for so much as the office of a good Generall consisteth not in aduenturing of his person to manifest danger, but in the politicke gouernment of his charge. During the time that *Scanderbeg* thus assailed the Turks campe, *Amurath* but faintly assaulted the breaches, expecting the successe in the campe: but when he vnderstood that *Scanderbeg* was retired and all quieted, he brought all his forces to the wals, and first with the multitude of his archers and small shot, laboured to driue the defendants from the wals, ouerwhelming them with arrowes falling as thicke as haile. And likewise at the same time other common souldiers of baser account, brought scaling ladders and other things needfull for the scaling of the wals. After whom also followed the Ianizaries and other chosen souldiers, rea-
B die to mount the ladders as soone as they should be set to the wals. But whilest they climbe vp the high hils in this order, the garrison souldiers made such slaughter of them with shot from the wals and out of the citie, that they would haue presently retired, had they not beene forced forward by their captaines, who spared neither stripes nor wounds when words would not serue. By this tyrannicall meanes, the scaling ladders were with great slaughter of the common souldiers set vp against the wals, and the Turks climing vp, came to handie blowes with the defendants at the breaches: nothing was to be heard, but the crying of people, the clattering of armour, and the instruments of warre, which was terribly redoubled with the ecchoes from the mountaines round about. The Turks doing what they might to winne the breaches, were by the Christians worthily repulsed, and with their ladders tumbled headlong downe the moun-
C taine, with such horrible slaughter and discomfiture, especially of the common souldiers, that none of them would set one foot forward againe towards the wals, although they had small hope to saue themselues by retiring backe: for the fierce young Prince *Mahomet*, euen then making shew of his cruell disposition, caused them that returned, to be slaine, by the terrour thereof to driue others forward. These common souldiers whom the Turks make small reckoning of, are for most part miserable Christians, which liue in such countries as had sometimes receiued the faith of Christ, but are now vnder the Turkish slauerie; of which sort of wretched people, the Turkish tyrants draw with them great multitudes in their wars, most commonly vnarmed, because they dare not well trust them in wars against the Christians: these carrie all the baggage of the campe, these serue to fetch wood and water for other souldiers of better ac-
D count, these serue in stead of pioners to cast trenches and raise bulwarks: and when battell is to be giuen, if it be in plaine field, these haue then weapons put into their hands, and thrust into the forefront of the battell to blunt the enemies swords: but if a citie be to be besieged, these serue as fit matter to fill the ditches with their dead bodies, or to make bridges for other souldiers to passe ouer vpon: and if they shrinke to attempt any thing they are commanded, then are they more cruelly vsed by their commanders than by their enemies. When *Amurath* saw his souldiers so discouraged, he stood in doubt whether it were better for that time to sound a retrait, or to send a new supplie: but being enraged with the losse of his men, and desirous to be in some part reuenged, he sent diuers companies of his better souldiers for the incouragement of them which were before discouraged, and so gaue a fresh assault. But with as euill, or worse successe
E than before: for *Vranacontes* had withdrawne from the breaches all those souldiers which had endured the former assault, and placed other fresh and lustie men in their stead; who encouraged with the former victorie, & loth to be accounted inferiour to their fellowes, repulsed the Turks with double slaughter: vntill that the aged King, not able longer to behold the endlesse losse of his men, caused a retrait to be sounded; which all his souldiers were glad to heare, and so returned into his campe, hauing lost in those two assaults eight thousand men, without any notable harme done vnto the defendants worth the remembrance.

This shamefull repulse much grieued all the captains & commanders of *Amuraths* armie, but especially *Mahomet* the young Prince, whose violent nature vnacquainted with mishap, burnt impatiently with reuenge. Wherefore vnderstanding that *Scanderbeg* lay intrenched vpon the
F mountaine of TVMENIST, not farre from his fathers armie, he drew most of the best & readiest souldiers of all the whole campe, into that quarter which was neerest vnto *Scanderbeg*: of purpose that if he should againe assaile the campe in that place (as it was most like he would) he should be encountred with so many braue and valiant men there in readinesse, as that it should be hard for him either to doe any great harme, or for himselfe to escape. Of all which, *Scanderbeg* by certaine fugitiues had intelligence, as also in what order the campe lay: whereupon he

Mahomet thinking to deceiue Scanderbeg, is himselfe by him deceiued.

left *Moſes* with fiue hundred ſouldiers in the place where he lay, taking order with him before his departure, that he at a certaine appointed houre in the night following, ſhould aſſaile the Turks campe in the quarter next vnto him where *Mahomet* lay; and hauing there raiſed ſome tumult, ſpeedily to retire againe to his aſſured ſtrength in the mountaine. *Scanderbeg* himſelfe with the whole ſtrength of his armie, in number about eight thouſand, in the meane time tooke a compaſſe about, and by certaine ſecret by-wayes through the woods and mountaines, came vnto the farther ſide of the Turks armie, to a place called MOVNTECLE. The night following, *Moſes* at the appointed houre with his fiue hundred ſouldiers aſſailed that part of the Turks campe next vnto him, with ſuch noiſe and tumult, as if it had beene ſome great armie. By occaſion whereof, all the Turks campe was in alarme, and drew in haſte to that place where they heard that great tumult, as was before by *Mahomet* commanded. When at the ſame inſtant, *Scanderbeg* with all his armie brake into the other ſide of the Turks campe, where he was leaſt feared or looked for, and from whence the beſt ſouldiers were before drawne by *Mahomet*: and there made ſuch ſlaughter and hauocke of the reſt, not knowing which way to turne themſelues, that the loſſe a little before receiued vnder the wals of CROIA was now forgot, as a ſmall thing in compariſon of this. *Moſes* hauing raiſed a great feare, and done little harme, retired in ſafetie to his well knowne ſtrength: and *Scanderbeg* hauing made great ſpoile in the campe, fearing to be oppreſſed with the multitude of his enemies if he ſhould there longer ſtay, returned in good time, hauing ſcarce loſt one man.

Amurath after this great loſſe and trouble of his campe, withdrew moſt of his ſmall ordinance which he had before bent againſt the citie, into his trenches, placing it as commodiouſly as he might for the defence thereof againſt the ſudden attempts of *Scanderbeg*. Yet for as much as he could not in that hot ſeaſon of the yeere ſo cloſely encampe his great armie, but that ſome part thereof would ſtill be in like danger as before; he therefore appointed *Sebalias* with ſixteene thouſand ſouldiers to attend vpon *Scanderbeg*, that he ſhould no more trouble the whole campe. After which order taken, he battered the wals of CROIA afreſh, and with his great ordinance ouerthrew whatſoeuer the citizens had repaired, making the breaches greater and more faultable than before, intending once againe by a new aſſault to proue his fortune, and the force of his ſouldiers: which he appointed to be the next day. But when he perceiued no ſigne of courage or good hope in the heauie countenances of them diſcouraged, and that they yeelded to him their conſents, rather for feare and ſhame, than for hope of victorie; he called them cowards diſcouraged with the leaſt frowne of fortune, and ſaid;

Amurath his comfortable ſpeech vnto his wearied ſouldiers.

Euery weake caſtle is able to hold out one aſſault: but if you will draw theſe wilde beaſts out of their dens, you muſt arme your ſelues like reſolute men of inuincible courage, to endure what thing ſoeuer ſhall happen. Great captaines with their puiſſant armies haue growne old vnder the wals of their enemies, vpon light and ſmall diſpleaſures: and will you hauing receiued ſo many diſgraces of theſe periured Epirots, leaue them all vnreuenged? What great victorie was euer yet by any man gained without bloudſhed? Remember the moſt glorious victorie of VARNA. *It is hard without bloudie hands to put the yoke vpon the fierce enemies necke. All honourable things are brought to paſſe with aduenture and labour: and the end of this warre dependeth of the taking of* CROIA. *If it were once won, all this warre were at an end: which if* Scanderbeg *loſe (being the ſtrength of his kingdome) he will not tarrie one day longer in* EPIRVS. *Wherefore be of good cheere, and couragiouſly ſet vpon it: there is not more vncertaintie in any thing, than in matters of warre. Fortune is to be proued, and oftentimes prouoked of him that will wed her. And yet I will not denie, but that we muſt goe more warily to worke againſt this enemie, and hazard our ſelues with better aduiſement, and not without reaſon like wilde beaſts to run headlong vpon our owne death. At length we ſhall weare them out, if we kill but ten of them at an aſſault: yet are they daily to be aſſailed, that they may haue no leiſure to refreſh themſelues, or to make vp their breaches. And peraduenture if force may not preuaile, fortune may find ſome meane that we looke not for, as it fell out at the ſiege of* SPETIGRADE, *beyond all your expectation. Treaſon is ingenious, and mens deſires great, where great rewards are propounded.*

With theſe and like ſpeeches old *Amurath* encouraged his captaines and ſouldiers, and the next day early in the morning began the aſſault, which the Turks valiantly attempted: and without regard of danger came to the gates of the citie, aſſaying, but with vaine and deſperate labour,

A bour to haue broken them open. In this aſſault wilde fire was caſt into many places of the citie, and the great artillerie oftentimes diſcharged into the breaches: whereby many of the Turkes themſelues were ſlaine with their owne great ſhot, together with the Chriſtians: for *Amurath* deſperatly ſet, was content to buy the life of one Chriſtian with the loſſe of twentie of his Turks. But the Chriſtians ſtill valiantly repulſed their enemies, ſo that of them that came to the gates, none eſcaped aliue; and of them that aſſaulted the great breach, they which were moſt forward, were firſt ſlaine, and they which ſtood farther off, were ſore wounded with ſhot. Yet for all that, *Amurath* ſtill maintained the aſſault, by ſending in of new ſupplies, delighting to ſee them goe forward, but grieued at the heart to ſee them ſo ſlaine: vntill at laſt wearie with beholding
B the ſlaughter of his men, he cauſed a retrait to be ſounded, and ſo ended the aſſault; perſwaded by his Baſſaes, not wilfully to caſt away his valiant ſouldiers where there was no hope to preuaile, but to reſerue them for his better ſeruice. *The Turkes retire.*

Amurath now out of hope to win the citie by aſſault, thought good to proue what might bee done by vndermining of the ſame: during which worke, he cauſed ſmall alarums daily to be giuen vnto the citie, to the intent that the defendants buſied therewith, ſhould not perceiue the ſecret worke of the mine. About which time his prouiſion of corne began to faile in his campe; for which cauſe he ſent his purueyors for corne to LISIA, a citie of the Venetians, with whom he was at that time in league, and bought of them great ſtore of corne. But as his officers were conueying it to his campe, *Scanderbeg* hauing intelligence thereof, ſlew the conuoy, & carried
C away with him all that prouiſion, deuiding it amongſt his owne ſouldiers. Howbeit, not long after *Amurath* receiued great abundance of corne and other prouiſion out of MACEDONIA: beſide that, the Venetian marchants afterward furniſhed him with plentie of corne, oyle, hony, and other neceſſaries; which *Scanderbeg* might well haue hindered, but that he would not in ſo doing offend the Venetians, which were alſo his ſecret friends, conſidering that *Amurath* might haue had all the ſame prouiſion out of the further part of MACEDONIA, THRACIA, MYSIA, and ſuch other places, if he had not otherwiſe had it from the Venetians. *Amurath ſeketh to vndermine Croia.*

Whileſt *Amurath* thus lay expecting the ſucceſſe of his mine, foure hundred of the garriſon ſouldiers of CROIA ſallying out of the citie, chaſed diuers of the Turks that were come forth backe againe vnto the campe: whereof *Amurath* was glad, hoping, that they encouraged with
D that good hap, would to their further loſſe giue the like attempt afterwards. But the ſtayed diſcretion of the Gouernour deceiued that his expectation: who conſidering the daunger, would not ſuffer his ſouldiers any more to ſallie out of the citie. *Scanderbeg* alſo at this time hauing encreaſed his armie with a new ſupply of two thouſand ſoldiers, diuided the ſame into three parts, deliuering one part to *Moſes*, another to *Tanuſie*, and reſeruing the third to himſelfe. With this armie of nine thouſand thus deuided, he determined by night at one inſtant to aſſaile the Turks great campe in three diuers places: appointing in which quarter euery one ſhould charge. But as *Scanderbeg* in the night appointed, was comming towards the Turks campe, he was diſcouered by their ſcouts: whereupon a ſudden alarme was raiſed in the campe, and all mens minds turned that way, and ſouldiers appointed with all diligence to guard that ſide of the campe. But
E whileſt the Turkes were all at gaze this way for feare of *Scanderbeg*, *Moſes* and *Tanuſie*, in the dead of the night, at one time aſſailed the Turks campe in two diuers quarters, as they were appointed, where they ſlew a number of the Turks, and made great ſpoile. At which time *Scanderbeg* did alſo what he might: but by reaſon he was before diſcouered, did not much harme. Vpon the approach of the day *Scanderbeg* retired againe to the hils, and by that time it was faire daylight, ſate downe vpon the ſide of a great mountain, about twentie furlongs off, in the open ſight of all the Turks campe: which he did of purpoſe, that *Moſes* and *Tanuſie*, which were by night retired into the mountains, might ſee which way to hold, to meet with him again. But the Turks thinking that he ſtood there to braue their whole campe, and as it were to deface them, to the great encouragement of the defendants: diuers of them earneſtly craued leaue of *Amurath*, That
F they might goe vp to him, and at leaſtwiſe beat him out of ſight: which hee graunting, twelue thouſand of his beſt ſoldiers, whereof ſeuen thouſand were horſemen, and the reſt foot, preſently ſet forward to encounter him. *Scanderbeg* ſeeing them all the way the came, vpon their approch ſoftly retired a little farther vp into the mountaines, ſtill expecting the comming of *Moſes* and *Tanuſie*. The Turks vnacquainted with ſuch difficult waies, marched vp the ſteep hils after *Scanderbeg* with much labour and paine, well wearied of themſelues: but when they were come

a great way into the mountains, they perceiued by the rising of the dust, that some greater force G
was comming crosse those mountaines: and not long after they might plainly see the formost of their enemies. Wherefore fearing to be enclosed, they began to retire, in which retreat *Scanderbeg* hardly pursued them, and hauing the aduantage of the ground, slew many of them, but especially with his archers. *Moses* also comming in afresh on another side, caused them to flie downe the hill amaine, and beside the slaughter that he made, tooke diuers prisoners. After which victorie, by *Scanderbeg* obtained in the sight of *Amurath* and his whole armie, he retired againe into the mountaines.

The late spoile of the Turks campe, with this ouerthrow of the souldiers but now sent against *Scanderbeg*, much greeued the old tyrant: but the worke of the mine, wherein he had of long laid vp his greatest hope, sorting now to no good purpose, being deemed as well an end- H
lesse peece of worke for the naturall hardnesse of the rocke, as also of small importance, for that it was by the defendants discouered, draue him to his wits end. His forces he had to his great losse sufficiently proued, and still found them too weake: and policie preuailed not. Nothing now remained, but to proue, if by great gifts and glorious promises he could first corrupt the faith of the Gouernour, and afterwards the garrison: wherein he determined to spare no cost. Vpon which resolution, he sent one of his Bassaes (a man of great authoritie and dexteritie of wit) vnto *Vranacontes*, with such rich gifts and presents as might haue moued a right constant mind: commanding the Bassa (if it were possible) first to fasten the same vpon the Gouernour, as presents sent from *Amurath* of meere bountie, in the honour of his valiant mind; and after- I
wards to deliuer his message, not sparing to promise any thing for the giuing vp of the citie, yea more than should be desired. The Bassa attended on but with two seruants, came with this rich present neere to the gates of the citie, and there staied, vntill the Gouernours pleasure were knowne: by whose command he was receiued into the citie, and brought to his presence. Then the Bassa with much reuerence and many magnificall words presented vnto *Vranacontes* the rich gifts sent from *Amurath*, and would forthwith haue deliuered them vnto him, as the rewards of his valour. But *Vranacontes* willed him first to declare his message from *Amurath*; vpon the hearing whereof, he would (as he said) as he saw cause, either receiue or refuse them: before which time he would not be beholden to his enemie, by receiuing from him the least courtesie. With which answere the subtill Bassa nothing dismaied, with great constancie thus K
began to deliuer his message.

The craftie speech of the Bassa sent from Amurath to corrupt the Gouernour, and to perswade the souldiers to yeeld vp the citie.

Howsoeuer we agree (said he) *vpon other matters we come for, we brought not these gifts of purpose to deceiue any: for so men vse to deale with their children and seruants, and not with men of courage and valour. And albeit that enemies gifts are euer to be suspected (as you haue right wisely said, and wee our selues well know) yet wee durst not for shame come vnto so worthie a Gouernour (as the common saying is) emptie handed: neither ought you, if you be the man you seeme to be, and whom men report you are, to refuse our courtesie. Take these presents in good part, which shall no way enforce or hinder you to determine or dispose of your affaires otherwise than shall seeme vnto you good: neither shall we once obiect vnto you these gifts, which wee so franke and freely offer in the great Sultans* L
name, whether you reiect or admit our demands and message; wherein there is (perhaps) no lesse regard had of your good, than of ours. For there is no greater token of a base mind, than to giue, in hope to receiue againe. Wee come vnto you frankly (worthie Gouernour) I speake it from my heart: wee goe not about with filed speech and rich rewards to circumuent thee, whose inuincible mind wee haue so often in vaine proued with our forces and power. That is it for which Amurath *loueth thee. He doth wonderfully admire the vertues of his enemies, and if it were possible, desireth to haue them with himselfe. There verily with so mightie a Monarch might thy inuincible mind and pregnant wit find a better way vnto the highest type of fortunes blisse. Not that I condemne* Scanderbeg, *whom wee his enemies doe highly commend, for his countrey so well recouered, and so oftentimes worthily defended, yet chiefly by your helpe: but you are worthie another manner of Soueraigne, and of another manner of* M
calling, and not to spend all the dayes of your life and such heroicall vertues in obscuritie, and (without offence be it said) in contemptible baseneſſe. Besides that, Scanderbeg *his estate is but momentarie; the destinies haue assigned vnto him too too mightie an enemie, his destruction may well be deferred, but not by any meanes auoided.* Amurath *hath conceiued against him an implacable displeasure, and prepared his forces accordingly: he hath sworne to spare no cost, no labour, no danger: and that he*

will

A *will neuer whileſt he liueth depart out of* EDIRVS, *before he haue impoſed a deadly yoke vpon his necke. And behold, the firſt of this miſerie beginneth at this citie, and vpon your ſelues. We daily heare his pauilions ſound with theſe and ſuch like ſpeeches, That he will neuer depart out of this place before he haue taken this citie, and ſatisfied his angrie mind with the torture of your bodies, no, not if he ſhould therefore loſe* HADRIANOPLE, *yea, and that more is, his whole kingdome. And verily he will doe it, which I feare to diuine or thinke vpon. For although I with others beare againſt you the mind of an enemie, yet am I a man, and moued with humane compaſsion: beleeue me (ye men of* CROIA) *beleeue me, my eyes would ſcarcely endure to behold the horrible ſpectacle of your miſerable fortune. I tell you againe he will doe it, except you change your purpoſe, and now receiue health, life, libertie, and*

B *peace, whileſt it is ſo freely offered. For albeit, that this notable ſtrong place, theſe impregnable wals, and eſpecially your owne valour, doe yet defend you: how long will it hold out? Verily, no longer than you haue victuall, no longer than you haue meat to ſuſtaine your bodies. Doe you thinke that* Amurath *will raiſe his ſiege in the middle of the heat of this warre, and be gone? No, no, if force will not preuaile, if all his attempts faile, yet ſhall you ſee and feele theſe enemies continually to your hurt: you ſhall alwayes haue theſe tents in your eyes and at your gates, vntill long famine, which maſtereth all things, tame your courage alſo. I pray you, what hope haue you left? from whence ariſeth in your reſolute minds ſuch deſperate contempt of danger? Can* Scanderbeg *victuall you, being ſo ſtraightly beſieged? which hideth himſelfe (poore man) in the woods all day, and flieth ouer the tops of the mountaines, loaden with trauaile and care, ſcarce able to releeue his owne miſerie. Or will the Venetians releeue you? which*

C *daily bring vnto vs and ſtore vs with too too great plentie of all things neceſſarie for this warre againſt you. Wherefore repent your too much hardineſſe, and gather your wits together. Behold I your enemie aduiſe you. You haue long enough continued in your obſtinacie. Your countrey and libertie is not ſo farre to be defended, as that you ſhould therefore fight againſt God. But wherefore doe I call this libertie? You muſt giue place vnto your fortune, and learne to obey them that be too ſtrong for you. You ſhall find aſſured libertie, rich rewards, perpetuall reſt, with* Amurath. *Prouide for your ſelues, if you be wiſe, whileſt all things are yet whole for you to determine of; whileſt we your enemies exhort and requeſt you, and had rather haue you our voluntarie companions and friends, than our enforced ſeruants and ſlaues.*

D This the Baſſa ſpake with great grauitie and no leſſe vehemencie, expecting ſome great motions to haue riſen in the minds of the ſouldiers. But when he perceiued that his ſpeech had rather filled them with indignation, than with feare: and that it was but a vaine thing to goe about to terrifie them with words, whom all the power of *Amurath* could not make afraid with weapons, he requeſted to talke alone with the Gouernour in ſecret: which was alſo granted. For all men had no leſſe good opinion of the worthie Gouernours fidelitie, than of his great wiſedome and valour. The craftie Baſſa hauing him by himſelfe, began with great cunning to deliuer his more ſecret meſſage: when *Vranacontes* perceiuing by a little what the whole tale meant, interrupted him in the middle of his ſpeech, and without more adoe commanded him to depart: ſtraightly charging him, That neither he nor any other ſhould after that time preſume to come

E from his maſter to the citie to ſpeake with him about any ſuch diſhonourable matter; for if he did, he would in deteſtation thereof cauſe their hands, their noſes, and their eares to be cut off, and ſo returne them diſmembred in ſtead of anſwere. And ſo the Baſſa was with his preſents againe turned out of the citie, and no man ſuffered to receiue any thing of him in reward, although the ſouldiers could haue beene well content to haue eaſed him and his ſeruants of that carriage, if the Gouernour would but haue winked thereat.

Vranacontes reieɔɔeth Amurath his preſents, and threateneth the Baſſa.

Great was the expectation in the Turks campe, of the Baſſaes returne: but when they ſaw the preſents were not receiued, they eaſily gueſſed that all went not as they wiſhed. But when *Amurath* himſelfe vnderſtood the Gouernors reſolute anſwere, he in great rage cõmanded all things to be made ready for a freſh aſſault: which he did rather to ſatisfie his anger, than vpon any hope

F he had to preuaile therein. The next day, he cauſed a furious aſſault to be giuen to the citie, but with greater loſſe to himſelfe than before; the Chriſtians ſtil valiantly defending the citie againſt the Turkiſh furie. In this aſſault many of the Turks were ſlaine at the breach, with their owne great ſhot: for whileſt *Amurath* ſought therwith to driue the Chriſtians from the defence of the breach, he ſlew a great number more of the forwardeſt of his owne men than he did of the defendants. But wearied at length to behold the endleſſe ſlaughter of his men, he gaue ouer the aſ-

Croia againe in vaine aſſaulted.

ſault,and returned into his campe,as if he had been a man halfe franticke or diſtract of his wits; G
and there ſate downe in his tent, all that day full of melancholie paſſions, ſometimes violently pulling his hoarie beard and white locks, complaining of his hard and diſaſter fortune, that he had liued ſo long to ſee thoſe daies of diſgrace,wherein all his former glorie and triumphant victories were obſcured,by one baſe towne of Epirvs. His Baſſaes and graue counſellors labouring in the meane time with long diſcourſes to comfort him vp : ſometimes recounting vnto him his many & glorious victories, and other whiles producing ancient examples of like euent. But darke and heauie conceits had ſo ouerwhelmed the melancholie old tyrant, that nothing could content his waiward mind,or reuiue his dying ſpirits:ſo that the little remainder of naturall heat which was left in his aged bodie, now oppreſſed and almoſt extinguiſhed with melancholie conceits, and his aged bodie dried vp with ſorrow, he became ſicke for griefe. Whereupon by the counſell of ſome of his Baſſaes,he ſent an embaſſadour to *Scanderbeg*,offering him H
peace,if he would yeeld to pay vnto him a yeerely tribute of ten thouſand duckats:thinking by that meanes his honour to be well ſaued, if before his departure out of Epirvs, he could but make *Scanderbeg* his tributarie. This embaſſadour was by *Scanderbeg* honourably entertained in his campe, but the offered peace at the ſame time vtterly refuſed. The embaſſadour returning to *Amurath*, declared vnto him the euill ſucceſſe of his embaſſage, which greatly increaſed his melancholie ſickneſſe. And *Scanderbeg* to grieue him the more,vnderſtanding that he was dangerouſly ſicke,and that the great Baſſaes were more carefull of the Kings health than of the ſucceſſe of the warres ; diuers times aſſailed the Turks campe. Which thing though the Baſſaes I
kept from his knowledge with all carefulneſſe : yet he oftentimes ſuſpected the matter, by the often allarums and tumults in the campe,and with the griefe thereof languiſhed. So feeling his ſickneſſe daily to increaſe,and that he could not longer liue,lying vpon a pallet in his pauilion, greeuouſly complained to his Baſſaes, That the deſtinies had ſo blemiſhed all the former courſe of his life,with ſuch an obſcure death,that he which had ſo often repreſſed the furie of the Hungarians, and almoſt brought to nought the pride of the Grecians, together with their name, ſhould now be enforced to giue vp the ghoſt, vnder the wals of an obſcure caſtle (as he termed it) and that in the ſight of his contemptible enemie.After that,turning himſelfe to his ſon *Mahomet*,he earneſtly commended him to the faithfulneſſe of his Baſſaes,and gaue him many graue aduertiſements, ſometimes in ſecret betwixt themſelues,& ſometimes in the hearing of others: K
want of ſtrength & abundance of teares running downe his aged face(vpon the ſight of his ſon) oftentimes interrupting his ſpeech. Yet ſicke vnto death as he was, and drawing faſt vnto his end,he forced himſelfe, to warne his ſon of ſuch things as now at his death greeued him moſt.

The laſt ſpeech and admonition of Amurath vnto his ſonne Mahomet vpon his death-bed.

Let mine example (quoth he) *be a warning vnto thee my ſonne, neuer to contemne thine enemie, be he neuer ſo weake : of which one thing aboue all others, I haue repented my ſelfe of long, and ſhall doe after my death, if any feeling of humane things remaine in the dead. And that I was ſo fooliſh, and inconſiderate, as to foſter vp as it were in my boſome this my domeſticall and neglected enemie: whereby I haue purchaſed vnto my ſelfe this calamitie, and for euer blemiſhed the honour of the* Otho-
man *Kings : whileſt I ſo baſely ending my daies vnder the wals of* Croia, *ſhall become a by-word vnto the world, and all poſteritie for euer. This traitour ſhould euen then haue beene oppreſſed, when he by great treacherie, firſt recouered his wicked kingdome : in that newneſſe of his eſtate, and before the minds of the people were aſſured vnto him, then it had beene an eaſie matter, without bloudſhed to haue vtterly extinguiſhed the wretch, together with his name.* Ali Baſſa, *whoſe euill fortune was the firſt beginning of his good : nor the other Generals, who by him ſlaine or taken priſoners, increaſed his ſtrength and credit with his ſubiects, ſhould not haue beene ſent againſt him : a thing which I haue oftentimes thought vpon, but could ſcarce haue beleeued, that euer I ſhould haue thereby receiued ſuch diſgrace, together with the ignominious renting of my kingdome, if I had not beene taught the ſame by mine owne experience, to my great loſſe and hearts greefe. We entered into* Epirvs, *and here encamped an hundred and threeſcore thouſand men ſtrong : now if leiſure ſerue you, take view of them, exa-* M
mine the matter, you ſhall find a great want of that number. The fields could not containe our regiments and the multitude of our men : but now, how many tents ſtand emptie ? how many horſes want riders ? You ſhall goe to Hadrianople *with our forces much impaired. As for me, the deſtinies haue vowed my ſpirits to this countrey of* Epirvs, *as vnto me fatall. But wherefore doe I impute vnto my ſelfe theſe impediments and chances of Fortune ? for then firſt began this ſeed of miſchiefe in* Epirvs, *when the*

Hungarians

A *Hungarians with other the Chriſtian Princes, roſe vp in armes againſt vs: at which time we fought not with them for ſoueraigntie, but for the whole ſtate of our kingdome; as the bloudie battels of* VARNA *and* COSSOVA *ſtill witneſſe vnto the world. So whileſt I had neither leiſure nor ſufficient power to take order for all my important affaires at once; in the meane time this enemie grew as you ſee. But how, or in what order you are hereafter to wage warre againſt him, you may not looke for any direction from me, which haue in all theſe matters ſo euill directed my ſelfe: Fortune neuer deceiued my endeuours more, than in this. But happily thou* Mahomet *my ſonne, maieſt proue a more fortunate warriour againſt him: and for ſo many honours alreadie giuen vnto me, the deſtinies haue reſerued the triumph of* EPIRVS *for thee. Wherefore my ſonne, thou ſhalt receiue from me this ſcepter, and theſe royall enſignes: but aboue*
B *all things, I leaue vnto thee this enemie; charging thee not to leaue my death vnreuenged. It is all I charge thee with, for ſo great and ſtately a patrimonie as thou art to receiue from me: it is the only ſacrifice that my old departing ghoſt deſireth of thee.*

Shortly after he became ſpeechleſſe, and ſtriuing with the pangs of death halfe a day, he then breathed out his gaſtly ghoſt, to the great ioy and contentment of the poore oppreſſed Chriſtians. He died about the middle of Autumne, in the yeare of our Lord 1450, when he had liued 85 yeares, as moſt write: and thereof raigned 28 (or as ſome others report 30;) about fiue moneths after the ſiege laid before CROIA. *Amurath his death.*

Thus lieth great *Amurath*, erſt not inferiour vnto the greateſt Monarchs of that age, dead al-
C moſt in deſpaire: a worthie mirrour of honours frailtie; yeelding vnto the worldly man in the end, neither comfort nor reliefe. Who had fought greater battels? who had gained greater victories, or obtained more glorious triumphs than had *Amurath?* who by the ſpoiles of ſo many mightie Kings and Princes, and by the conqueſt of ſo many proud and warlike nations, againe reſtored and eſtabliſhed the Turks kingdome, before by *Tamerlane* and the Tartars in a manner cleane defaced. He it was that burſt the heart of the proud Grecians, eſtabliſhing his empire at HADRIANOPLE, euen in the center of their bowels: from whence haue proceeded ſo many miſeries and calamities into the greateſt part of Chriſtendome, as no tongue is able to expreſſe. He it was that firſt brake downe the Hexamile or wall of ſeparation on the ſtrait of CORINTH, and conquered the greateſt part of PELOPONESVS. He it was that ſubdued vnto the Turks
D ſo many great countries and prouinces in ASIA; that in plaine field and ſet battell ouerthrew many puiſſant Kings and Princes, and brought them vnder his ſubiection: who hauing ſlaine *Vladiſlaus* the King of POLONIA and HVNGARIE, and more than once chaſed out of the field *Huniades* that famous and redoubted warriour; had in his proud and ambitious heart, promiſed vnto himſelfe the conqueſt of a great part of Chriſtendome. But O how farre was he now changed from the man he then was! how farre did theſe his laſt ſpeeches differ from the courſe of his forepaſſed life! full of ſuch baſe paſſionate complaints and lamentations, as beſeemed not a man of his place and ſpirit; but ſome vile wretch ouertaken with deſpaire, and yet afraid to die. Where were now thoſe haughtie thoughts, thoſe loftie lookes, thoſe thundring and commanding ſpeeches; whereat ſo many great commanders, ſo many troupes and legi-
E ons, ſo many thouſands of armed ſouldiers were wont to tremble and quake? Where is that head, before adorned with ſo many trophies and triumphs? where is that victorious hand that ſwaied ſo many ſcepters? where is the maieſtie of his power and ſtrength, that commanded ouer ſo many nations and kingdomes? O how is the caſe now altered! He lieth now dead, a gaſtly filthy ſtinking carkas, a clod of clay vnregarded, his hands cloſed, his eyes ſhut, and his feet ſtretched out, which erſt proudly traced the countries by him ſubdued and conquered. And now of ſuch infinite riches, ſuch vnmeaſurable wealth, ſuch hugie treaſures, ſuch ſtately honours and vaine-glorious praiſes as he in his life time enioyed; his fraile bodie enioyeth nothing, but left all behind it. O the weake condition of mans nature! O the vaine glorie of mortall creatures! O the blind and peruerſe thoughts of fooliſh men! Why do we ſo magnifie our
F ſelues? why are we ſo puffed vp with pride? why do we ſo much ſet our minds vpon riches, authoritie, & other vanities of this life? whereof neuer man had yet one daies aſſurance, and at our moſt need and when we leaſt thinke, quite forſake vs; leauing euen them that moſt ſought after them, and moſt abounded in them, ſhrowded oft times in the ſheet of diſhonour and ſhame. *Amurath an example of the vanitie of worldly honour.*

That his death is otherwiſe by ſome reported, I am not ignorant: the Turks ſaying, that he died miraculouſly forewarned of his death at HADRIANOPLE: and ſome others, that he died

in

in ASIA, ſtrucken with an Apoplexie proceeding of a ſurfet taken of the immoderat drinking of wine. But *Marinus Barleſius*, who liued in his time in SCODRA faſt by EPIRVS, whoſe authoritie, in report of the warres betwixt him and *Scanderbeg* we follow, ſetteth it downe in ſuch manner as is aforeſaid. G

Preſently after his death, *Mahomet* his ſonne, for feare of ſome innouation to be made at home, raiſed the ſiege, and returned to HADRIANOPLE: and afterward with great ſolemnitie buried his dead bodie at the Weſt ſide of PRVSA, in the ſuburbs of the citie, where he now lieth in a chapell without any roofe, his graue nothing differing from the manner of the common Turks: which (they ſay) he ſo commanded to be done in his laſt will; that the mercie and bleſſing of God (as he tearmed it) might come vnto him by the ſhining of the Sun and Moone, and falling of the raine and dew of heauen vpon his graue. H

Amurath buried at Prusa.

He whileſt he liued, mightily enlarged the Turkiſh kingdome, and with greater wiſedome and policie than his predeceſſors, eſtabliſhed the ſame: inſomuch that ſome attribute vnto him the firſt inſtitution of the Ianizaries, and other ſouldiers of the court (the greateſt ſtrength of the Turkiſh empire) before indeed begun in the time of *Amurath* the firſt, his great grandfather, (as is before declared) but by him greatly augmented, and the policie of that ſtate, whereby it hath euer ſince in his poſteritie flouriſhed, euen by himſelfe plotted. For the better eſtabliſhing whereof in his owne houſe, and to cut off all occaſions of feare; as alſo to leaue all ſuch as might haue the heart to ariſe againſt him, all naked and bare of forces to reſiſt; but eſpecially the other ancient and noble families of the Turks, ſtill ſecretly repining at the great honour of the *Othoman* Kings: he as a man of great wiſedome & iudgement, to keepe them vnder, in the beginning of his raigne, by manifold fauours began to bind vnto himſelfe men of ſtrange & forrain countries, his ſeruants; and by ordering of his moſt waightie affaires by their authoritie, ſo by little and little to caſt off the ſeruice of his naturall Turks: they in the meane time little or nothing at all looking into this his practiſe. And whereas the *Othoman* Kings his predeceſſors had for the moſt part, or rather altogether raiſed their Ianizaries and other ſouldiers of the court, of ſuch children of the Chriſtians as were taken in the wars; he, ſeeing by experience how ſeruiceable thoſe new kind of ſouldiers were, began forthwith to plot in his head, how to make himſelfe an armie altogether of ſuch able perſons, his owne creatures, and ſo to bring in a new kind of warfare, wholly depending of himſelfe. And to that end, by his officers appointed for that purpoſe, tooke from the Chriſtians throughout his dominions, euery fift child: the faireſt and apteſt of whom, he placed in his owne Seraglio at HADRIANOPLE, and the reſt in other like places by him built for ſuch purpoſe: where they were by ſufficient teachers, firſt inſtructed in the principles of the Mahometan religion, and then in all manner of actiuitie and feats of armes. Of theſe, when they were growne to mans ſtate, he made horſemen, gaue them great penſions, & ſorting them into diuers orders, appointed them alſo to guard his perſon; honouring the better ſort of them with the name of *Spahi-Oglani*, that is to ſay, his ſons the Knights. And of theſe he began to make his Baſſaes, his Generals of his armies, and the Gouernours of his prouinces and cities, with all the great offices of the ſtate. The reſt and farre the greateſt part of theſe tribute children, taken from their Chriſtian parents, and not brought vp in theſe Seraglioes, he cauſed to be diſperſed into euery citie and countrey of his dominion in ASIA, there for certaine yeeres to be brought vp in all hardneſſe and painfull labour, neuer taſting of eaſe or pleaſure: out of which hard brood ſo enured to paines, he made choiſe of ſo many of the moſt luſtie and able bodies fitteſt for ſeruice, as he thought good; who kept in continuall exerciſe, & by skilfull men taught to handle all manner of weapons, but eſpecially the bow, the peece, and the Scimitar, were by him as occaſion ſerued added to the other Ianizaries, and appointed for the guarding of his perſon: calling them commonly by the names of his ſonnes. The remainder of theſe tribute children, as vnfit for the warres, he put vnto other baſe occupations and miniſteries. But vnto thoſe martiall men of all ſorts ſo by him ordained, he appointed a continuall pay, according to their degrees and places: and by great benefits and liberties beſtowed vpon them, bound them ſo faſt vnto him, as that he might now account himſelfe to haue of them ſo many ſonnes, as he had ſouldiers: For they together with the Chriſtian religion, hauing forgot their parents and countrey, and knowing no other lord and maſter but him, and acknowledging all that they had to come and proceed of his free grace onely, remained euer bound and faithfull vnto him; and ſo kept others alſo, as well the natural Turks themſelues, as the other oppreſſed Chriſtians within I K L M

A in the bounds of obedience and loyaltie. A great policie proceeding from a deepe iudgement, firſt to weaken the Chriſtians by taking from them their beſt children, and of greateſt hope; and then by them depending wholly of himſelfe, to keepe in awe and dutifull obedience his naturall ſubiects alſo: hauing them alwaies as a ſcourge readie to chaſtiſe the rebellious or diſloyall. Now the other *Othoman* Kings and Emperours, the ſucceſſors of *Amurath*, keeping this cuſtome, and alſo increaſing it one after another, haue thereby not only kept the empire ſtill in their houſe and familie, where it was firſt gotten: but alſo ſo maintained the maieſtie of their ſtate, as that they are of their ſubiects feared, obeyed, and honoured, not as Kings, but as Gods. For the naturall Turks their ſubiects loſing courage continually, and daily growing more baſe
B and daſtardly, by reaſon they are not ſuffered to practiſe the knowledge of armes; and the ſouldiers in whoſe power all things are, knowing nothing of their owne, but holding and acknowledging all that they haue to come of their Lord, account them as Kings and Lords of all: ruling much after the manner of the *Pharaohs* the ancient Kings of ÆGYPT; who were abſolute Lords and maſters, both of the publicke and priuate wealth of their ſubiects, whom they kept vnder as ſlaues and villaines. And hereof commeth it to paſſe, that the better part of them, whom we call Turks, (but are indeed the children of Chriſtians, and ſeduced by their falſe inſtructors) deſire to be called Muſulmans (that is to ſay, right beleeuers) holding it a reprochfull and diſhonourable thing to be called Turks, as it were peculiarly and aboue other people: For that they knowing right well, that there is not one naturall Turke among all thoſe that beare
C authoritie and rule, and are had in greater honour and reputation than the reſt (ſuch as are the men of warre and courtiers) but he is borne a Chriſtian either of father, or at the leaſt of his grandfather: auouch thoſe only to be Turks which liue in NATOLIA, all of them either marchants, or of baſe and mechanicall crafts, or poore labourers with the ſpade and pickaxe, and ſuch like people vnfit for the warres; the reſt (as I ſay) holding it for a title of honour to be deſcended of Chriſtian parents. Yea the Grand Signior himſelfe, although by the fathers ſide he be come of progenitors ſuch as were naturall Turks borne, yet many of them had Chriſtian mothers, which they accounted in the greateſt part of their nobilitie and honour. Thus by the wiſedome of *Amurath* was the order of the Ianizaries, and other ſouldiers of the court greatly aduanced, though not by him begun, and the politicke ſtate of the Turks kingdome (to ſay the
D truth) quite altered; the naturall Turks (more than the Sultan himſelfe) now bearing therein no ſway: but only theſe new ſouldiers, all of them deſcended from Chriſtian parents, and by adoption as it were become the ſonnes of the Turkiſh Sultans, and vnder them commanding all: by whom they haue euer ſince managed their eſtate, and by their good ſeruice wonderfully, euen to the aſtoniſhment of the world, increaſed and extended their empire. But of them more ſhall be ſaid hereafter.

A great policie.

This great King was whileſt he liued, of his ſubiects wonderfully beloued, and no leſſe of them after his death lamented. He was more faithfull of his word than any of the Turkiſh kings either before or after him: by nature melancholie and ſad, and accounted rather politicke than valiant, yet was indeed both: a great diſſembler, and painfull in trauell, but wayward and teſtie
E aboue meaſure, which many imputed vnto his great age. He had iſſue ſix ſonnes, *Achmetes*, *Aladin*, *Mahomet*, *Haſan* (otherwiſe called *Chaſan*) *Vrchan*, and *Achmetes* the younger, of ſome called *Calepinus*: three of whom died before him; but the two youngeſt were by their vnnaturall brother *Mahomet*, who ſucceeded him in the Turkiſh kingdome, euen in their infancie, in the beginning of his raigne moſt cruelly murdered.

Amurath his diſpoſition.

The ſonnes of Amurath.

FINIS.

Christian Princes of the same time with Amurath the second.

- *Emperours*
  - *Of the East*
    - *Iohn Palæologus.* 1421. 24.
    - *Constantinus Palæologus.* 1444. 8.
  - *Of the West*
    - *Sigismund King of Hungarie.* 1411. 28.
    - *Albert the second King of Hungarie and Bohemia.* 1438. 2.
    - *Fredericke the third, Archduke of Austria.* 1440. 54.
- *Kings*
  - *Of England*
    - *Henrie the fift.* 1413. 9.
    - *Henrie the sixt.* 1422. 39.
  - *Of France*
    - *Charles the sixt.* 1381. 42.
    - *Charles the seuenth.* 1423. 38.
  - *Of Scotland*
    - *Iames the first.* 1424. 13.
    - *Iames the second.* 1436. 29.
- *Bishops of Rome*
  - *Martin the V.* 1417. 13.
  - *Eugenius the IIII.* 1431. 16.
  - *Nicholas the V.* 1447. 8.

Pau'us Iouius Illuſt. virorum, Eglog. lib. 3.

Qui vici innumeros populos, tot regna, tot vrbes:
Solus & immenſi qui timor orbis eram:
Me rapuit quæcunque rapit mors improba, ſed ſum
Virtute excelſa, ductus ad aſtra tamen.
Maior Alexander non me fuit, Annibal & non,
Fuderit Auſonios tot licet ille duces.
Vici victores Danaos, domuiq́ feroces
Caoniæ populos, Sauromataſq́ truces.
Pannonius ſenſit, quantum ſurgebat in armis
Vis mea: quæ latio cognita nuper erat.
Arſacidæ ſenſere manus has, ſenſit Arabſq́:
Et mea ſunt Perſa cognita tela duci.
Mens fuerat, bellare Rhodum, ſuperare ſuperbam
Italiam, ſed non fata dedere modum.
Hei mihi, nam rapuit mors aſpera, quæque ſub alto
Pectore condideram, vertit & hora breuis.
Sic hominum faſtus pereunt, ſic ſtemata, ſicque
Imperium, atq́ aurum, quicquid & orbis habet.

In Engliſh thus.

I that ſo many nations, townes,
and kingdomes, haue brought low;
And haue alone diſmaied the world,
and fild the earth with woe:
Am now by death (which all deuoures)
brought downe from high degree:
Yet doth the glorie of my name,
ſurmount the ſtarrie skie.
The great King *Alexanders* fame,
the world no better fild:
Nor worthie *Hannibal*, whoſe force
ſo many Romans kild.
I vanquiſht the victorious Greekes,
and tam'd with mightie hand,
The warlike people of EPIRE,
and fierce TARTARIA land.
My force in field HVNGARIA felt,
my greatneſſe is there knowne:
Which of late time through ITALIE,
to their great ruth is blowne.
Th' Aſſyrians felt my heauie hand,
ſo did th' Arabians wild:
The Perſian King with all his force,
I driue out of the field.
I purpoſed to win the RHODES,
and ITALIE t' vndoe:
If that the fatall deſtinies,
had granted leaue thereto.
But woe is me, for griſly death
hath brought all this to nought:
And in the twinckling of an eye,
is periſht all I thought.
So periſheth the pride of man,
his honour, wealth, and power,
His gold, and whatſoeuer elſe,
it fadeth as a flower.

THE LIFE OF MAHOMET, SECOND OF THAT NAME, SEVENTH KING AND FIRST EMPEROR OF THE TVRKS, FOR HIS MANY VICTORIES SVRNAMED *THE GREAT.*

THe report of the death of old *Amurath* the late King, was in ſhort time blowne thorow moſt part of Chriſtendome, to the great ioy of many: but eſpecially of the Greekes, and other poore Chriſtians which bordered vpon the tyrants kingdome; who were now in hope, together with the change of the Turkiſh King, to make exchange alſo of their bad eſtate and fortune: and the rather, for that it was thought, that his eldeſt ſonne *Mahomet*, after the death of his father, would haue embraced the Chriſtian religion, being in his childhood inſtructed therein (as was ſuppoſed) by his mother, the daughter of the Prince of SERVIA, a Chriſtian. But vaine was this hope, and the ioy thereof but ſhort, as afterward by proofe appeared. For *Mahomet* being about the age of one and twentie yeeres, ſucceeding his father in the kingdome in the yeere of our Lord 1450, embraced in ſhew the Mahometane religion, abhorring the Chriſtian, but indeed making no great reckoning either of the one or of the other; but as a meere Atheiſt, deuoid of all religion, and worſhipping no other god but good fortune, derided the ſimplicitie of all ſuch as thought that God had any care or regard of worldly men, or of their actions: which graceleſſe reſolution ſo wrought in him, that he thought all things lawfull that agreed with his luſt, and making conſcience of nothing, kept no league, promiſe, or oath, longer than ſtood with his profit or pleaſure. 1450

Mahomet of no religion.

Now in the Court men ſtood diuerſly affected towards the preſent ſtate: the mightie Baſſaes and others of great authoritie, vnto whom the old Kings gouernment was neuer greeuous, inwardly lamented his death; doubting leſt the fierce nature of the young King ſhould turne to the hurt of ſome of them in particular, and the ſhortening of their authoritie in generall, as indeed it ſhortly after fell out. But the luſtie gallants of the Court wearie of the old King, who in hope of preferment had long wiſhed for the gouernment of the young Prince, were glad to ſee him ſet vpon his fathers ſeat. And the vulgar people (neuer conſtant but in vnconſtancie, and alwaies fawning vpon the preſent) exceedingly reioyced in their young King. The Ianizaries alſo at the ſame time (according to their accuſtomed manner) tooke the ſpoile of the Chriſtians and Iewes that dwelt amongſt them, and eaſily obtained pardon for the ſame: whereupon he was by the ſame Ianizaries and the other ſouldiers of the Court with great triumph ſaluted King. Which approbation of theſe men of warre, is vnto the Turkiſh Kings a greater aſſurance for the poſſeſſion of their kingdome, than to be borne the eldeſt ſonne of the King, as in the proceſſe of this Hiſtorie ſhall appeare: ſo great is the power of theſe maſterfull ſlaues, in promoting to the kingdome whichſoeuer of the Kings ſonnes they moſt fauour, without much regard whether he be the eldeſt or not.

This young tyrant was no ſooner poſſeſſed of his fathers kingdome, but that he forgetting the lawes of nature, was preſently in perſon himſelfe about to haue murthered with his owne hands,

Mahomet murdereth his brethren.

hands, his youngeſt brother, then but eighteene moneths old, begotten on the daughter of G
Sponderbeius. Which vnnaturall part, *Moſes* one of his Baſſaes, and a man greatly in his fauour, perceiuing, requeſted him, not to imbrue his owne hands in the bloud of his brother, but rather to commit the execution thereof to ſome other: which thing *Mahomet* commanded him the author of that counſell forthwith to doe. So *Moſes* taking the child from the nurſe, ſtrangled it, with pouring water downe the throat thereof. The young Ladie vnderſtanding of the death of her child (as a woman whom furie had made paſt feare) came, and in her rage reuiled the tyrant to his face, ſhamefully vpbraiding him for his inhumane crueltie. When *Mahomet* to appeaſe her furie, requeſted her to be content, for that it ſtood with the policie of his ſtate: and willed her for her better contentment, to aske whatſoeuer ſhe pleaſed, and ſhe ſhould forthwith haue H
A cruell reuenge of an angrie woman. it. But ſhe deſiring nothing more than in ſome ſort to be reuenged, deſired to haue *Moſes* (the executioner of her ſonne) deliuered vnto her, bound: which when ſhe had obtained, ſhe preſently ſtrucke him into the breaſt with a knife (crying in vaine vpon his vnthankfull maſter for helpe:) and proceeding in her cruell execution, cut an hole in his right ſide, and by peece-meale cut out his liuer, and caſt it to the dogs to eat. At the ſame time alſo he cauſed another of his brethren, committed by his father to the keeping of *Caly Baſſa*, and now by him betraied into his hands, to be likewiſe murthered.

Mahomet reformeth the Turkiſh common-weale. Thus beginning his tyrannous raigne with the bloudie execution of them that were in bloud neereſt vnto him, and whom of all others he ought to haue defended, he preſently after began to frame a new forme of a common-weale, by abrogating & altering the old lawes and cuſtomes, I
and publiſhing of new, better fitting his owne humour, and more commodious for himſelfe: impoſing alſo new taxes and ſubſidies vpon his ſubiects, neuer before heard of; thereby to increaſe his treaſures, and ſatisfie his auaritious deſire: which amongſt many other his vices ſo much raigned in him, as that he was thought ouer-ſparing vnto himſelfe, as well in his apparell as in his diet. And proceeding farther, he called vnto ſtraight account all the great officers of his kingdome: of whom ſome he put to death, and confiſcated their goods; others he put to great fines, or quite remoued them from their offices. In like manner he dealt alſo with his great Baſſaes, admitting many falſe and ſurmiſed accuſations againſt them: whereby to bring them within his danger, where little mercie was to be looked for. By which meanes he became no leſſe terrible vnto his ſubiects, than he was afterward vnto his enemies; and ſo was of them ex- K
ceedingly feared, but more hated. Amongſt other things, he much miſliked in his court the exceſſiue number of faulconers and huntſmen; which was growne ſo great by the immoderate delight which his predeceſſors tooke in the pleaſures of the field, that there were continually maintained of the Kings charge, ſeuen thouſand faulconers, and not many fewer huntſmen, ſaying, that he would not be ſo much a foole, as to maintaine ſuch a multitude of men to attend vpon ſo meere a vanitie. And therefore tooke order, that from thenceforth there ſhould be allowance made for 500 faulconers onely, and 100 huntſmen: the reſt he appointed to ſerue as ſouldiers in his wars. At the ſame time alſo he entered into league with *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, the Emperour of Constantinople, and the other Princes of Grecia: as alſo with the Deſpot of Servia, his grandfather by the mothers ſide, as ſome will haue it; howbeit, ſome others L
write, that the Deſpot his daughter, *Amurath* his wife, was but his mother in law, whom he vnder the colour of friendſhip ſent backe againe vnto her father after the death of *Amurath*, ſtill allowing her a princely dowrie. But if ſhe were not his mother (as like enough it is that ſhe was not) much more happie was ſhe, that ſhe neuer groned for ſo graceleſſe a ſonne.

1451 Whileſt *Mahomet* was thus occupied about his ciuill affaires, *Ibrahim* King of Caramania,
Mahomet goeth againſt the king of Caramania. who long before had maried *Amurath* his ſiſter, and yet for all that, had (as his anceſtors had before him) alwaies enuied the proſperous ſucceſſe of the *Othoman* Kings, tooke occaſion in the firſt yeere of *Mahomet* his raigne, with fire and ſword to inuade his dominions in Asia. Which thing when *Mahomet* vnderſtood, he diſplaced *Iſa* his lieutenant in Asia, as a man not ſufficient to manage ſo great wars, and appointed *Iſaack Baſſa* in his roome, a moſt valiant man M
of war, vpon whom not long before he had vpon ſpeciall fauour beſtowed in mariage the faire daughter of *Sponderbeius*, one of his fathers wiues, of whom we haue before ſpoken. This great Baſſa paſſing ouer into Asia, raiſed a great armie. After whom followed *Mahomet* in perſon himſelfe with a greater, out of Evrope: and hauing all his forces together, entered with great hoſtilitie into Caramania. But the Caramanian King perceiuing himſelfe vnable to withſtand

ſo

A so puissant an enemie, fled into the strength of the great mountaines, and by his embassadours offered vnto *Mahomet* such reasonable conditions of peace, as that he was content to accept thereof. Which after they had by solemne oath on both parts confirmed, *Mahomet* returned with his armie to PRVSA: but when he was come thither, the Ianizaries presuming that they might be bold with the young King; putting themselues in order of battell, came and with great insolencie demanded of him a donatiue or largious, as a reward of their good seruice done. With which so great presumption, *Mahomet* was inwardly chafed: but for so much as they were his best souldiers, and alreadie in armes, he wisely dissembled his anger for the present, hauing a little before had warning thereof by *Abedin Bassa*, and *Turechan-beg*, two of his
B great captaines, who had got some suspition of the matter: wherefore to content them, he caused ten great bags of aspers to be scattered amongst them, and so pacified the matter. But within few dayes after, he caused *Doganes* (the Aga or chiefe captaine of the Ianizaries) to be brought before him, and to be shamefully whipt: and so presently discharging him of his office, placed one *Mustapha* in the same. The like seueritie he vsed against the rest of the vnder-captaines, causing them to be cruelly scourged and beaten like slaues: which in that tyrannicall gouernment is an vsuall punishment, vpon the least displeasure of the King to be inflicted vpon any man, without respect of degree or calling, if he be not a naturall Turke borne. Presently after he sent *Isaack* his lieutenant against *Elias* Prince of MENTESIA or CARIA, by whom the poore Prince was driuen out of his countrey: euer since which time it hath remained in subiection to the
C Turkish Kings, as part of their kingdome and empire.

Mentesia subdued by the Turks.

When *Mahomet* had thus ended the Caramanian warre, and was determined with his armie 1452
to returne to HADRIANOPLE, he was aduertised, That the straits of HELLESPONTVS were so strongly possessed by the Christian fleet, that he could not possibly there passe ouer but with most manifest danger: wherefore he tooke his way through that part of BYTHINIA which lieth aboue CONSTANTINOPLE, and came to the castle which the Turks call *Acte-Chisar*, and the Grecians λευκὸς πύργος, or White castle, standing vpon the narrow strait of BOSPHORVS on ASIA side, and there passed ouer into EVROPE at the same place where his father *Amurath* had not many yeeres before in like manner found passage. Where when he was safely got ouer with his armie, he by the aduice of his Bassaes encamped fast by the sea side, and there presently be-
D gan to build a great strong castle close vnto the straits of BOSPHORVS, neere vnto PROPONTIS on EVROPE side, directly ouer against the other castle in ASIA. For the speedie accomplishment of which worke, he assembled thither all the workmen he could possibly get out of EVROPE and ASIA; apportioning vnto his captaines and souldiers of his armie part of the worke also: by whose industrie and labour, that great building was in shorter time brought to perfection, than was by any man at the first expected. This castle which for the greatnesse thereof is of most writers reputed for a citie, was by the Turks named *Genichisar*, and of the Grecians *Neocastron*, or New castle, and also *Lamocastron*, or castle vpon the straits; and was there by the Turks built, as well for the safetie of their owne passage to and fro, as for to hinder the passage of the Chri-
E stians through those narrow straits, they now possessing the strong forts on both sides: and thereby also to distresse the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, from whence this castle was not aboue fiue miles distant. When *Mahomet* in the second yeere of his raigne had finished this great castle, with some other small forts about the same, and also repaired the other castle in ASIA ouer against it, he placed therein strong garrisons, and furnished the same with artillerie; in such sort, that no ship could passe through the strait of BOSPHORVS into the great Euxine or blacke sea, but she was in danger to be sunke: whereby the rich trade which the marchants of VENICE, GENVA, and CONSTANTINOPLE, had to CAFFA, and other places lying vpon the Euxine, were almost quite cut off, to the great hinderance of those estates. Now *Mahomet* by nature ambitious, and withall desirous to doe some such thing as the glorie whereof might farre passe the fame of his predecessors, thought nothing more answerable vnto his high conceits, than to at-
F tempt the winning of CONSTANTINOPLE, & the vtter subuersion of the Greeke empire: whereupon his father *Amurath*, and his great grandfather *Baiazet*, had before in vaine spent their forces. Besides that, it greeued him to see that goodly citie, the ancient seat of the Christian empire, to be so commodiously situated, as it were in the middest of his kingdome, and not to be at his command. Hereunto the small power of the Greeke Emperour himselfe, and the other Christian Princes at the same time at mortall discord amongst themselues, ministred vnto his greedie

Mahomet maketh preparatiō for the besieging of Constantinople.

desire no small hope of successe, and serued as spurs to pricke him forward vnto so great an enterprise. Wherefore all the Winter he caused great preparation to be made of shipping and other warlike prouision both for sea and land: and gaue out commissions for the leuying of a mightie armie, to be in readinesse against the next Spring. But whither he would imploy the same, no man could certainly tell: some ghessing one thing, and some another, as the manner of men is, when such extraordinarie preparation is at hand. *Constantinus* the eight of that name, then Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, a Prince of a mild and soft spirit, fitter for the Church than for the field, hearing of the great preparation made by the Turkish King; and fearing lest that tempest then growing, should vpon the sudden breake forth vpon himselfe, first made such preparation as his owne small abilitie would extend vnto: and then sent his embassadours vnto other Christian Princes, earnestly crauing their aid and assistance in that his dangerous estate. But that labour was lost, and all his sute vaine: for they being at variance one with another, and hauing more care of priuate reuenge, than how to repulse the common enemie of Christianitie, could not or would not affoord him any helpe at all. *Nicholas* the fift of that name, then Bishop of ROME, with *Alphonsus* King of NAPLES, and the state of VENICE, promised to haue sent him thirtie gallies, but none for all that came.

Constantinus the Emperour in vaine craueth aid of the Christian Princes.

There were by chance at CONSTANTINOPLE certaine ships and gallies of VENICE, GENVA, CRETE, and CHIOS, of whom the Emperour made stay: at which time also it chanced, that *Ioannes Iustinianus*, an aduenturer of GENVA, who had beene scouring those seas, came to CONSTANTINOPLE with two tall ships, and foure hundred souldiers: where he was entertained by the Emperour. And forasmuch as he was a man honourably descended, and supposed to be both of great courage & direction, was by the Emperor appointed Generall of all his forces next vnto himselfe. He also entertained six thousand Greekes: which, with three thousand Venetians, Genowaies, and others, whom he had made stay of, ioyned vnto the citizens, was all the weake strength he had to relie vpon, for the defence of his state and empire.

1453 Vide Leonardi Chiensis Archiepiscopi Mitylen. hist. de captiuitate Constantinopolitana.

Against the beginning of the Spring, the Turkish King had in readinesse a great and puissant armie of three hundred thousand men, of whom, the greatest part were taken out of BVLGARIA, SERVIA, RASCIA, THESSALIA, MACEDONIA, and GRECIA, which as yet were called the Christian countries, and were themselues either indeed Christians, or else such renegates as had not long before forsaken the Christian faith: vnto these also were ioyned diuers other Christians which came out of GERMANIE, BOHEMIA, and HVNGARIE, to serue the Turke in his warres. This hath beene none of the least meanes, whereby the Turkish Kings haue growne so great, and their kingdome so mightily enlarged, by enforcing and alluring Christians to fight against Christians, to the vtter confusion of themselues. Amongst the great multitude of the Europeian Christians, were mingled his effeminate souldiers of ASIA, and his naturall Turks and Ianizaries, which were in number fewest, and yet commanded all the rest.

Mahomet encampeth before Constantinople.

With this great armie, well appointed with all warlike prouision, came *Mahomet* the Turkish King from HADRIANOPLE: and the ninth day of Aprill, in the yeere 1453, encamped before CONSTANTINOPLE, and with the multitude of his armie filled all the maine land before the citie, from the sea side of BOSPHORVS, vnto the place where the same sea compassing in the citie on two parts, and running farre into the land betwixt CONSTANTINOPLE and PERA, maketh there a goodly hauen betwixt them.

The situation of Constantinople.

This citie of CONSTANTINOPLE (called in ancient time BIZANTIVM) is in forme of a Triangle, situated in EVROPE in the pleasant countrey of THRACIA, vpon a point of the maine land shooting out towards ASIA, called of *Plinie* and *Solinus*, the promontorie CHRYSOCERAS; where the sea of PROPONTIS ioyneth vnto that strait of sea which diuideth ASIA from EVROPE, called in ancient time BOSPHORVS THRACIVS; sometime the strait of PONTVS; and the mouth of PONTVS; and of the moderne writers, the strait of CONSTANTINOPLE; and about 200 yeeres past, or more, *S. George* his arme. This point of the maine, whereon the citie standeth, lieth about two Italian miles more Northward than doth the ancient citie of CALCEDON, on the other side of the strait in ASIA: more than thirtie miles distant from the Euxine or blacke sea, lying from it Northward; and two hundred miles from the strait of HELLESPONTVS or CALLIPOLIS, from thence South. Which noble citie (of all others most fitly seated for the empire of the world, and with great maiestie ouerlooking both EVROPE and ASIA) is by the Cosmographers accounted to stand in the height of 43 degrees, vpon seuen little hils, of

no

Conſtantinople built by Pauſanias, deſtroyed by Seuerus, re-edified by Conſtantine the Great, and now taken by Mahomet the Turke.

A no great and eaſie aſcent: and was there firſt built by *Pauſanias* the Lacedemonian King, and called BIZANTIVM, and ſo many yeeres flouriſhed as a populous and rich citie, vntill the ciuill wars betwixt *Seuerus* the Emperour, and *Niger*: what time it endured the ſiege of the Romanes vnder *Seuerus*, three yeeres, with ſuch obſtinacie, that it yeelded not vntill it was brought to ſuch extremitie, that the citizens did eat one another; and then yeelding, had the wals ouerthrowne by *Seuerus*, and the citie it ſelfe deſtroyed, and brought to the low eſtate of a poore countrey village, and ſo by him giuen to the Perinthyans. In which baſe eſtate in continued vntill the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, the ſonne of *Helena* (whom ſome will needs haue to haue beene an Engliſh woman) by whom it was new built, and beautified with buildings ſo ſtately
B and ſumptuous, that vnto the ſtrange beholders it ſeemed a dwelling place for heauenly wights rather than for earthly men. And to grace it the more, tranſlated his imperiall ſeat thither, and called it NOVA ROMA, or NEVV ROME; and all that pleaſant part of THRACIA alongſt the ſea coaſt of HELLESPONTVS, PROPONTIS, and BOSPHORVS, by the name of ROMANIA, of the faire Romane colonies there by him planted, which name it at this day retaineth, and is of the Turks called RVMILIA and RVM-ILI, that is to ſay, the Romane countrey. But as for the citie it ſelfe, the glorious name of the founder ſo preuailed, that the citie was and yet is of him called CONSTANTINOPLE, or *Conſtantine* his citie: and now of the barbarous Turks commonly, but corruptly, STAMBOLI. It is (as we ſaid) built in the forme of a Triangle, whereof the longeſt ſide which runneth from Northeaſt to Southweſt, is on the South ſide waſhed with the PRO-
C PONTIS; and towards the ending of the point, which is about the ſeuen towers, is ſomewhat indented; being commonly reputed to be eight miles long. The other ſide lieth Eaſt and Weſt fiue miles in length, being waſhed with the hauen, which is ſomewhat more than eight miles long before it meet with the freſh water, and about a quarter of a mile broad: on the farther ſide whereof ſtandeth the citie of PERA, commonly called GALATA, ſometimes a colonie of the Genowaies. This hauen is very deepe, & by that reaſon as commodious as deepe, bearing ſhips full fraught cloſe to the ſhoare, ſo that they may diſcharge their burthens with the leaſt trouble that may be, and is of *Strabo* called CORNV BIZANTII, or the horne of BIZANTIVM. The third ſide of this citie towards the Continent, lieth almoſt North and South fiue miles alſo in length: thoſe two ſides that lie vpon the ſea, and the hauen, are enuironed and girt in with a ſingle wall,
D built after the antique maner, with many high towers, which ſtrongly defend & flanke the ſame. Without which wals (eſpecially towards the hauen) there lieth a ſtreet betweene them and the ſhore. But the other ſide, which is the third, & regardeth the maine land (beſide the ditch, which is alſo fenced) is defended with three wals: the firſt wall ſtanding vpon the ditch being but low; and the ſecond not far diſtant from the firſt, raiſed ſomewhat higher; but the third ouerlooketh and commandeth both the other; from whence as from an high fortreſſe both the other wals & all the ditch without may eaſily be defended. But the two vtter wals, with the whole ſpace betwixt them, are now by the Turks but ſlenderly maintained, lying full of earth & other rubbiſh, euen as they were in the time of the Grecians: ſome cauſe why they with leſſe heart and courage defended the ſame againſt their barbarous enemies. In the Eaſt part of the citie, on that point
E which in the raigne of the Grecians was called the cape of *S. Demetrio*, diſtant from ASIA not much more than halfe a mile, ſtandeth the Seraglio or Palace of the great Turke, containing in it ſelfe a great part of an hill, encloſed round with a wall, as if it were it ſelfe a citie, in circuit more than two miles: wherein amongſt other ſtately buildings, neere vnto the ſea ſtandeth a very faire and ſumptuous gallerie, built for pleaſure, with a priuie gate well fortified and planted with great ordinance, and other munition, whereby the great Turke at certaine times paſſeth, when he is diſpoſed in his gallie to take his pleaſure vpon the ſea, or to paſſe ouer the ſtrait vnto his houſes or gardens of delight, on the other ſide in ASIA. In this great citie are alſo many other moſt ſtately and ſumptuous buildings, as well of late erected by the Turkiſh Sultans, ſince they became Lords thereof, as before by the Greeke Emperours: amongſt all which, the
F Temple of *S. Sophia* ſtanding on the Eaſt ſide of the citie, not farre from the Seraglio (now reduced vnto the forme of a Mahometan Moſchie, and whither the great Turke goeth oftentimes to heare ſeruice, being indeed but the ſanctuarie or chancell only of the great, ſtately, and wonderfull Church built by *Iuſtinian* the Emperor) is moſt beautifull and admirable. That which ſtandeth of it now, is both round and very high, built after the faſhion of the Pantheon in ROME, but much greater, fairer, and not open in the top as is that: the wals thereof being of the fineſt

The magnificent Temple of S. Sophia.

marble, and the floore all paued with faire marble alſo. In the middeſt there is a very great and large circle, compaſſed in with high and huge pillars of moſt excellent marble of diuers ſorts; and theſe ſupport a mightie vault that beareth vp as many moe pillars aboue, ſtanding after the very ſame order, and in a downe-right line, almoſt of the like greatneſſe and goodneſſe of the marble with the other below: vpon which, aboue the ſecond vault in manner of a loouar, reſteth the great round roofe which couereth all that ſpace of the church which is compaſſed with the aforeſaid pillars: being all enameled and fillited, with the pictures of Saints, after the ancient manner of ſome great churches in Chriſtendome: but that the Turks, who like not to haue any pictures in their churches, haue put out their eyes onely, as loth to ſpoile ſuch a rare peece of worke, and vtterly to deface it. In like manner the wals of the vpper vault are wrought, painted, or portraied after the ſame order, though in ſome part decaied, by reaſon of their long continuance and ſtanding. About this church are eighteene or twentie doores of braſſe, right faire and coſtly, well declaring the magnificence and greatneſſe thereof in more ancient times: when as it had (as is reported) more than two hundred doores of like making and greatneſſe; and beſide the hugeneſſe of the frame & building it ſelfe, had alſo diuers faire monaſteries and houſes of religion ioyned vnto it: whereunto belonged ſix thouſand Prieſts, whoſe houſes and lodgings extended almoſt all ouer the place where now the Turke his palace ſtandeth, and the other places adioyning to this great church, which is now their chiefe Moſchie, and called by them by the proper name of *S. Sophia*, becauſe they hold euen as we doe, the wiſdome of God to be incomprehenſible & infinite. The next in magnificence vnto this, is the Moſchie of *Solyman*, wherein he lieth buried, with his welbeloued wife the faire *Roxolana*: a worke well beſeeming the maieſtie of ſo mightie a Monarch. There are beſide theſe alſo many other faire Moſchies, Seraglioes for the Turke his wiues & concubines, Bezeſtanes or Burſes for marchants, Obeliskes, Bathes, and other publicke edifices and buildings of great maieſtie and ſtate, all well worth the beholding: wherein conſiſteth all the beautie of this ſo ancient and renowned a citie; farre vnlike to that it was in the time of the firſt Greeke Emperours, and before it was ſpoiled by the Latines. For the Turks priuate houſes in this ſo great and imperiall a citie, ſo much renowmed through the world, are for the moſt part low and baſe, after the Turkiſh faſhion, built ſome of wood, ſome of ſtone, and ſome of vnburnt bricke, laid with clay and dirt, which quickly decaieth againe: they after their homely manner (by long cuſtome receiued) neuer building any thing ſumptuouſly for their owne priuate vſe, but contenting themſelues with their ſimple cottages, how meane ſoeuer, commonly ſaying them to be good enough for the ſhort time of their pilgrimage: and yet not ſparing for any coſt vpon the publicke buildings and ornaments of the common-wealth, which they build with great maieſtie & pompe; but eſpecially their Moſchies, wherein they excell. Neuertheleſſe, there yet are in CONSTANTINOPLE ſome other houſes alſo built high and comely enough; but theſe be few, and very old, all inhabited by the Chriſtians and Iewes, and not by the Turks. But of this enough. And ſo againe to our purpoſe.

The frugalitie of the Turks in their priuate buildings.

The Turks fleet. *Mahomet* with his puiſſant armie thus encamped before the citie, placing his Aſian ſouldiers on the right hand, toward the BOSPHORVS; his European ſouldiers on the left hand, toward the hauen; lay himſelfe with 15000 Ianizaries and other ſouldiers of the court, in the middle betwixt both, againſt the heart of the citie. On the farther ſide of the hauen alſo by PERA, he placed *Zoganus*, one of his chiefe counſellors, with another part of his armie. At which time alſo *Pantologes* his Admirall came to the ſiege, with a fleet of thirtie gallies, and 200 other ſmall ſhips, and a number of other leſſer veſſels, which were rowed with three, or fiue oares a peece, full of Turkiſh archers, fitter for ſhew than ſeruice. But for defence of the hauen, and ſo of the citie on that ſide, the Emperour had cauſed the hauen to be ſtrongly chained ouerthwart from the citie to PERA: and within the chaine had orderly placed his ſmall fleet, the greateſt ſtrength whereof was ſeuen great ſhips of GENVA, with three gallies, and two galliots of VENICE, three of CRETE, and a few others of the Iland of CHIOS; all which were there, rather by chance vpon marchants affaires, than that they were prouided for any ſuch ſeruice: yet by this meanes the Turks fleet was ſhut out of the hauen, and ſo the citie put in good ſafetie on that ſide.

When *Mahomet* had thus conueniently encamped his armie, and ſurrounded the citie both by ſea and land: he firſt caſt vp great trenches as neere as he poſſibly could vnto the wals of the citie, and raiſed mounts in diuers places as high as the wals themſelues, from whence the Turks with their ſhot greatly annoied the defendants. After that, he placed his batterie againſt one of the

A the gates of the citie called CALEGARIA, and terribly battered the ſame, eſpecially with one peece of ordinance of a wonderfull greatneſſe, which with much difficultie was brought from HADRIANOPLE with an hundred and fiftie yoke of oxen, and caried a bullet of an hundred pound waight, made (as his other ſhot was) of a kind of hard blacke ſtone brought from the Euxine ſea: for as yet (as it ſeemeth) ſo ſoone after the inuention of that fatall engine, the vſe of bullets of metall was vnknowne. There with continuall batterie, he terribly ſhooke the wals, which although they were very ſtrong, yet were they not able to withſtand the furie of ſo great a batterie. The Chriſtians alſo out of the citie diſcharged their great artillerie vpon the Turks, but ſo ſparingly, as if they had beene afraid to ſhake their owne wals, or loth for good huſban-
B drie, to ſpend ſhot and powder, which was vnto the canoniers very ſparingly allowed: yet that which was ſpent, was ſo well beſtowed, that the Turks were therewith greeuouſly annoyed. The breach alſo which they had made at the aforeſaid gate, was by the defendants with great and dangerous labour againe repaired with faggots and earth, and ſuch like matter beſt ſeruing for that purpoſe, and ſo made ſtronger than before. In which moſt dangerous worke, they were altogether directed and greatly encouraged by *Iuſtinianus* the Genoway, the Emperours lieutenant generall for defence of the citie.

Yet for all this diligence of the Chriſtians, *Mahomet* continued his batterie with no leſſe furie than before: but repoſing greater hope to find a way into the citie, by the ſpade and mattocke, than by batterie; he employed his pyoners, whereof he had great ſtore, to digge a mine: being
C altogether directed by Chriſtians skilfull in that kind of worke, whom he had for that purpoſe entertained. By whoſe cunning direction, with the induſtrious labour of the poore pioners, the mine was brought to ſuch perfection, that part of the wall, with one of the ſtrong towers in the ſame, was quite vndermined, and ſtood ſupported, but with ſuch vntruſtie ſtaies as the pioners had left for the bearing vp thereof vntill ſuch time as it ſhould by the tyrants appointment be blowne vp. This dangerous worke was neither perceiued, neither yet feared by the Conſtantinopolitans, as a thing not poſſible to haue beene done: foraſmuch as *Baiazet* and *Amurath* had both with great labour before in vaine attempted the ſame, at ſuch time as they hardly beſieged the citie. But that which thoſe great Kings had with much vaine labour by vn-
D skilfull men made proofe of, *Mahomet* had now by men of greater deuice, brought to paſſe; although it tooke not ſuch effect as he wiſhed: for one *Io. Grandis*, a Germane captaine, and a man of great experience, ſuſpecting the matter, had cauſed a countermine to be made, whereby the labour of the Turks was in good time diſcouered, and they with fire and ſword driuen out of the mine, and the ſame ſtrongly filled vp againe, and ſo the citie for that time deliuered of a great feare and danger. *Mahomet* perceiuing that it auailed him not to continue his batterie againſt that place, which was againe ſo ſtrongly repaired, remoued the ſame, and planted it againſt a tower called BACTATINA, neere vnto the gate called PORTA-ROMANA, or Romane gate. Which tower ſhaken with continuall batterie, at length fell downe, and filled the ditch before the vtter wall, euen with the ground. But this breach was alſo ſpeedily and with great courage made vp againe by the defendants, although the Turks did what they could, with
E continuall ſhot, to haue driuen them from the ſame. At which time they alſo erected certaine high towers of timber, couered with raw hides to defend the ſame from fire, out of which they with their ſhot ſlew many of the Chriſtians vpon the wals, and in making good the aforeſaid breach: but *Mahomet* ſeeing this valiantneſſe of the defendants, openly ſaid, That it was neither the Grecians skill, nor courage, but the Frenchmen that defended the citie: for the Turks commonly call all the Chriſtians of the Weſt by the name of Frankes or Frenchmen.

Conſtantinople vndermined by the Turks.

The cheerefulneſſe and induſtrie of the Chriſtians in defending and repairing the aforeſaid breach, was ſo great, that the Turkiſh King began almoſt to deſpaire of winning the citie; which he could no way aſſault but on one ſide. When as a wicked Chriſtian in his campe, put him againe in good hope, by ſhewing vnto him a deuice how to bring a great part of his fleet ouer
F land into the hauen, and thereby to aſſault that part of the citie by water, which the citizens leaſt feared: by which ingenious deuice, and by the great ſtrength of men, *Zoganus Baſſa* (to whom that charge was committed) brought ſeuentie of the leſſer ſhips and galliots, with all their ſailes abroad (to the great admiration of all that ſaw them) vp a great hill, and ſo by drie land, out of the BOSPHORVS behind PERA, the ſpace of eight miles, into the hauen of CONSTANTINOPLE, which running in betweene the citie and PERA, runneth into the maine land (as we ſaid) about eight

Seuentie of the Turks galliots brought eight miles ouer land (by the deuice of a Chriſtian) into the hauen of Conſtantinople.

eight miles. The Christian that discouered this deuice vnto the King, is supposed to haue learned it of the Venetians, who not long before had done the like at the lake of BENNACVS. Glad was *Mahomet* to see so many of his ships and gallies in the hauen, and the Christians with the sight thereof no lesse discouraged. Neuertheless, they attempted to haue burnt those vessels as they were in launching, but the Turks had so commodiously placed certaine peeces of great Ordinance for their defence, that the formost of the gallies of the Christians, approching the Turks fleet, was presently sunke; wherewith the rest dismaied, returned backe from whence they came. Certaine of the Christians of the lost gallie, whom the Turks tooke vp swimming in the hauen, were the next day cruelly slaine in the sight of the Christians: in reuenge whereof, certaine Turks before taken prisoners into CONSTANTINOPLE, were forthwith brought to the top of the wals, and there in the sight of the campe with like crueltie put to death.

A wonderfull bridge made by the Turks ouer the hauen of Constantinople.

Mahomet thus possessed of the hauen, shortly after caused a wonderfull bridge to be made quite ouer the hauen, from *Zoganus* his campe which lay by PERA, vnto the wals of CONSTANTINOPLE: which bridge was built with timber and plankes, borne vp with small boats and emptie caske, after a most strange manner, and was in length more than halfe a mile: by which bridge his armie came ouer the hauen, to assault the citie on that side also.

A notable fight betweene foure of the Christians ships, and the Turks fleet.

In the meane time, three tall Genoway ships laded with men and munition from the Island of CHIOS, with one of the Emperours laded with corne from SICILIA, came with a faire wind for CONSTANTINOPLE. The Turks great fleet then lying not farre off, within the sight of the campe, set vpon them, and after a great fight, wherein an exceeding number of the Turks were slaine with shot, the gallies boorded the ships: but being much lower, were so farre from doing any good, as that the Turks could not well looke out, but they were from aboue slaine or wounded. *Mahomet* from the shore beholding the vnequall fight, and slaughter of his men, cried out aloud, swearing and blaspheming God, and in great rage rid into the sea as farre as he durst; and comming backe againe, rent his clothes, faring with himselfe like a mad man. The whole armie of the Turks beholding the same fight at sea, was filled with like indignation also, but could nothing remedie the matter. The great fleet ashamed in the sight of their King to be ouercome of so few ships, did what they might desperatly to enter: but all in vaine, being continually ouerwhelmed with shot and stones from aboue, and valiantly beaten downe by the Christian souldiers. At length wearie of their losse, they were glad with dishonour to fall off againe, and to get them farther off. The report of the losse the Turks sustained in this fight, is almost incredible: some of the Turks fugitiues reported, almost ten thousand Turks to haue there perished: but certaine it is, that such was the losse, as filled the whole armie with indignation and sorrow, many hauing there lost their kinsmen or friends. Three of these ships that had made this fight, arriued in safetie at CONSTANTINOPLE, the other was lost. *Mahomet* vpon this ouerthrow conceiued such displeasure against *Pantogles* his Admirall, who in that fight had lost one of his eyes, that he neuertheless thrust him out of his office, confiscated his goods, and was hardly by the great Bassaes intreated to spare his life.

Whilest *Mahomet* thus lay at the siege of CONSTANTINOPLE, and had thereunto giuen many great attempts, with more losse vnto himselfe than to the defendants, a rumour was raised in his campe, of great aid that was comming out of ITALIE by sea, and out of HVNGARIE by land, for the releese of the besieged. This report (although indeed it was not true) with the due consideration of the danger of the siege, filled the Turks campe with feare: so that the souldiers commonly murmured amongst themselues, saying, That to satisfie the ambitious humour of their young King, they were led to fight against impregnable wals & fortresses, yea against the barres of nature it selfe, without all reason. Whereupon *Mahomet* entered into consultation with the three great Bassaes his counsellors, Whether it were best for him to continue the siege, or not. When *Caly Bassa*, sometime his tutor, a man of greatest authoritie amongst the Turks, both for his long experience and high place, and withall secretly fauouring the distressed Emperor, after he had with long & graue discourse declared the difficultie or rather impossibilitie of the wished succesſe in the present warre; and confirmed the same, by producing the examples of *Baiazet* his great grandfather, and of *Amurath* his father, who had both in vaine made proofe of their strength against that citie: at length concluded, that in his opinion it were best for him to raise his siege, and to depart before he had sustained any further losse or disgrace. But *Zoganus* the second Bassa, in great fauour also with *Mahomet*, and secretly enuying the greatnesse of *Caly Bassa*, perswaded

A ſwaded the King to proceed in his honorable enterprife: aſſuring him of the good ſucceſſe ther-
of, and with all the reaſons he could deuiſe, impugned that which *Caly-Baſſa* had ſaid. And of
the ſame opinion with *Zoganus* was alſo the third Baſſa, rather of purpoſe to croſſe *Caly-Baſſa*,
and withall to fit the Kings humour, than for any great hope he had in the good ſucceſſe of that
he ſo much deſired. Howbeit the ſpeech he and *Zoganus* deliuered, ſo well agreed with the Kings
affection, that he reſolued to continue the ſiege: and thereupon gaue full authoritie to *Zoganus*
to appoint a day for a great and generall aſſault to be giuen, reſoluing at once to gage all his
forces vpon the winning of the citie. Which charge *Zoganus* gladly tooke vpon him, & with his
good liking appointed the 29 day of May for that generall aſſault, being then the Tueſday next
B following. In the meane time he ſent one *Iſmael*, the ſonne of *Alexander* Prince of SINOPE, em-
baſſadour vnto the Emperour, to offer him peace: but vpon ſuch hard conditions, as were no
leſſe to be refuſed than death it ſelfe. Which thing he did, partly to ſatisfie the minds of his
Turks (who are for moſt part of opinion, that God will not proſper them in their aſſaults, ex-
cept they firſt make vnto their enemies ſome offer of peace, how vnreaſonable ſoeuer it forceth
not) and partly to make proofe what confidence the enemie yet had in himſelfe, for the holding
out of the ſiege. But that diſhonourable peace ſo offered, together with the intolerable conditi-
ons, was by the Emperour honourably refuſed: who no leſſe feared the Turks faith (if he ſhould
haue accepted thereof) than he did the hardnes of the conditions. Three daies before this fatall
aſſault was to be giuen, the Turks (according to their manner) kept their ſolemne faſt, eating no-
C thing all the day vntill night; and then making the greateſt cheare and ioy they could deuiſe, and
in the winding vp of the ſame, tooke their leaue one of another, with ſuch kiſſing & embracing,
as if they ſhould neuer haue met againe. At the ſame time *Mahomet* to encourage his ſouldiers,
cauſed proclamation to be made thorow his campe, That he would freely giue all the ſpoile of
the citie for three dayes vnto his ſouldiers if they could win it: and for confirmation thereof,
ſolemnly ſwore the Turks great oath, By the immortall God, and by the foure hundred Pro-
phets, by *Mahomet*, by his fathers ſoule, by his owne children, and by the ſword wherewith he
was girt, faithfully to performe whatſoeuer he had to them in his proclamation promiſed.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Caly-Baſſa* diſdaining that his counſell was reiected, and
the opinion of his aduerſaries followed: by ſecret letters aduertiſed the Emperour of the day
D appointed for the generall aſſault, together with all the preparation made againſt him: perſwa-
ding him not to be afraid of them, who were themſelues no leſſe afraid of him; but carefully to
prouide to haue all things in readineſſe for the defence of his citie, and valiantly to withſtand
the raſh and laſt attempt of his enemies.

This wofull Emperour had alreadie done what he could to the vttermoſt of his power for defence of the citie, all the time of the ſiege: but ſuch was the diſloyaltie of the citizens his ſubiects, that many times they could hardly be drawne from their priuate trades and occupations vnto the wals to withſtand the enemie, fooliſhly affirming, That it was to no purpoſe for them to fight againſt the Turks at the breaches, and to ſtarue for food at home in their houſes. *The citizens of Conſtantinople without cauſe murmur againſt the Emperour.*

For which cauſe, the Emperour commanded a view to be taken of all the corne in the citie
E (which then began to grow very ſcarce;) but vpon diligent ſearch made, ſuch ſtore was found
in many mens hands, (which was by them either altogether kept in to ſell afterwards at vnrea-
ſonable priſes; or elſe ſo ſparingly vttered, as if they had none to ſpare) as that it appeared, the
dearth and ſcarcitie which then began to increaſe, to proceed rather of the couetouſneſſe of
men, than of any true want of graine: this ſtore the Emperour cauſed to be proportionably
diuided vnto euery familie at reaſonable priſes, according to their ſpending; and ſo eaſed the
great murmuring and grudging of the common people for bread. The Grecian mercenarie
ſouldiers alſo, regarding more their owne priuate profit than the publique ſeruice, refuſed any
longer to goe to the wals, than they were ſure of their daily pay: which the poore Emperour
otherwiſe vnable to giue them, was glad to conuert the Church plate and iewels into money, *A bare ſhift for money.*
F to content them. For he had many times before with teares, in vaine requeſted to haue bor-
rowed money of his couetous ſubiects, to haue beene emploied in defence of the citie; but
they would ſtill ſweare, that they had it not, as men growne poore for want of trade: which in
few daies after, their enemies found in ſuch abundance, that they wondred at their wealth, and
derided their follie, that poſſeſſing ſo much, they would beſtow ſo little in defence of themſelues
and their countrey. But this had beene their vſuall manner of dealing with their Emperours,

in

in that declining ſtate of the empire: as well appeared in the time of the Emperour *Baldwin*, G
who for lacke of money was glad firſt to ſell away many of the goodly ornaments of the citie,
and afterwards to pawne his owne ſonne vnto the Venetian marchants, for money to main-
taine his ſtate, as is in the former part of this Hiſtorie declared.

But to returne againe to the courſe of our Hiſtorie. The Emperour certainly aduertiſed of
the enemies purpoſe, for the generall aſſault ſhortly to be giuen, firſt commended the defence of
himſelfe and the citie vnto the protection of the almightie, by generall faſting and praier: and
afterwards appointed euery captaine and commander, to ſome certaine place of the wall for
defence thereof: which was done by the direction of *Io. Iuſtinianus* his Generall, in whoſe va-
lour the Conſtantinopolitans had repoſed their greateſt hope. H

But the citie being on euery ſide now beſet with the Turks great armie, and the defendants
in number but few, for ſo great a citie (in compaſſe eight miles) the wals could not but ſlenderly
in many places be manned, and eſpecially on both ſides toward the ſea, where indeed leaſt dan-
ger was. The greateſt ſtrength and beſt ſouldiers, were placed for defence of the vtter wall,
where the breach was, and the aſſault expected by land. *Iuſtinianus* the Generall himſelfe, with
three hundred Genowayes well armed, and certaine choſen Greeks vndertooke the defence of
that part of the battered wall, neere vnto the Romane gate, where the fall of the tower BACTA-
TINA had filled the ditch, as is aforeſaid: againſt which place *Mahomet* himſelfe lay encam-
ped, with his Ianizaries and beſt men of warre. Neere vnto *Iuſtinianus* lay the Emperor himſelf,
for defence of another part of the wall: and ſo other captaines orderly with their companies, all I
alongſt the vtter wall. And becauſe the defendants ſhould haue no hope to ſaue their liues, more
than their owne valour, the Emperor cauſed all the gates of the inner wal to be faſt ſhut vp. And
in this ſort they lay all the night, expecting continually when the aſſault ſhould bee giuen: all
which time they might heare great hurly burly and noiſe in the Turks campe, as they were put-
ting things in readineſſe for the aſſault.

Conſtantinople aſſaulted by the Turks.

A little before day, the Turks approached the wals, and begun the aſſault, where ſhot and
ſtones were deliuered vpon them from the wals as thicke as haile; whereof little fell in vaine,
by reaſon of the multitude of the Turks, who preſſing faſt vnto the wals, could not ſee in the
darke how to defend themſelues, but were without number wounded or ſlaine: but theſe were
of the common and worſt ſouldiers, of whom the Turkiſh King made no more reckoning than K
to abate the firſt force of the defendants. Vpon the firſt appearance of the day, *Mahomet* gaue
the ſigne appointed for the generall aſſault, whereupon the citie was in a moment and at one in-
ſtant on euery ſide moſt turiouſly aſſaulted by the Turks: for *Mahomet*, the more to diſtreſſe
the defendants, and the better to ſee the forwardneſſe of the ſouldiers, had before appointed
which part of the citie euery colonell with his regiment ſhould aſſaile. Which they valiantly
performed, deliuering their arrowes and ſhot vpon the defendants, ſo thicke, that the light of
the day was therewith darkened: others in the meane time couragiouſly mounting the ſcaling
ladders, and comming euen to handie ſtroakes with the defendants vpon the wall; where the
formoſt were for moſt part violently borne forward by them which followed after. On the
other ſide, the Chriſtians with no leſſe courage withſtood the Turkiſh furie, beating them L
downe againe with great ſtones and waightie peeces of timber, and ſo ouerwhelmed them with
ſhot, darts, and arrowes, and other hurtfull and deadly deuices from aboue; that the Turks
diſmaied with the terrour thereof, were readie to retire.

Mahomet renueth the aſſault.

Mahomet ſeeing the great ſlaughter and diſcomfiture of his men, ſent in freſh ſupplies of his
Ianizaries and beſt men of warre, whom he had for that purpoſe reſerued as his laſt hope and
refuge: by whoſe comming on, his fainting ſouldiers were againe encouraged, and the terrible
aſſault begun afreſh. At which time, the barbarous King ceaſed not to vſe all poſſible meanes
to maintaine the aſſault: by name calling vpon this and that captaine, promiſing vnto ſome
whom he ſaw forward, golden mountaines; and vnto others in whom he ſaw any ſigne of
cowardiſe, threatning moſt terrible death: by which meanes the aſſault became moſt dreadfull, M
death there raging in the middeſt of many thouſands. And albeit that the Turks lay dead by
heapes vpon the ground, yet other freſh men preſſed on ſtill in their places, ouer their dead bo-
dies, and with diuers euent either ſlew, or were ſlaine by their enemies.

In this ſo terrible a conflict, it chanced *Iuſtinianus* the Generall to be wounded in the arme:
who loſing much bloud, cowardly withdrew himſelfe from the place of his charge, not leauing

any

A any to ſupplie his roome, and ſo got into the citie by the gate called ROMANA, which he had cauſed to be opened in the inner wall: pretending the cauſe of his departure to be for the binding vp of his wound, but being indeed a man now altogether diſcouraged.

The ſouldiers there preſent, diſmaied with the departure of their Generall, and ſore charged by the Ianizaries, forſooke their ſtations, and in haſte fled to the ſame gate whereby *Iuſtinianus* was entered: with the ſight whereof, the other ſouldiers diſmaied, ran thither by heapes alſo. But whileſt they violently ſtriue, all together to get in at once, they ſo wedged one another in the entrance of the gate, that few of ſo great a multitude got in: in which ſo great a preſſe and confuſion of minds, eight hundred perſons were there by them that followed, trodden vnder foot or
B thruſt to death. The Emperour himſelfe, for ſafegard of his life flying with the reſt, in that preſſe as a man not regarded, miſerably ended his dayes, together with the Greeke empire. His dead bodie was ſhortly after found by the Turks amongſt the ſlaine, and knowne by his rich apparell; whoſe head being cut off, was forthwith preſented to the Turkiſh tyrant: by whoſe commandement it was afterward thruſt vpon the point of a launce, and in great deriſion carried about as a trophee of his victorie, firſt in the campe, and afterwards vp and downe the citie.

The Chriſtians forſake the wals.

The Turks encouraged with the flight of the Chriſtians, preſently aduanced their enſignes vpon the top of the vttermoſt wall, crying victorie; and by the breach entered as if it had beene a great floud, which hauing once found a breach in the banke, ouerfloweth, and beareth downe all before it: ſo the Turks when they had won the vtter wall, entered the citie by the ſame gate
C that was opened for *Iuſtinianus*, and by a breach which they had before made with their great artillerie; and without mercie cutting in peeces all that came in their way, without further reſiſtance became Lords of that moſt famous and imperiall citie. Some few there were of the Chriſtians, who preferring death before the Turkiſh ſlauerie, with their ſwords in their hands, ſold their liues deare vnto their enemies: amongſt whom, the two brethren *Paulus* and *Troilus Bochiardi* Italians, with *Theophilus Palæologus* a Greeke, and *Ioannes Stiauus* a Dalmatian, for their great valour and courage, deſerue to be had in eternall remembrance: who after they had like lions made ſlaughter of their enemies, died in the midſt of them, embrued with their bloud, rather oppreſſed by multitude, than by true valour ouercome. In this furie of the Barbarians, periſhed many thouſands of men, women, and chi dren, without reſpect of age, ſex, or condition.
D Many for ſafegard of their liues, fled into the Temple of SOPHIA; where they were all without pitie ſlaine, except ſome few reſerued by the barbarous victors, to purpoſes more grieuous than death it ſelfe. The rich and beautifull ornaments and iewels of that moſt ſumptuous and magnificent Church (the ſtately building of *Iuſtinianus* the Emperour) were in the turning of a hand, pluckt downe and carried away by the Turks: and the Church it ſelfe built for God to be honoured in, for the preſent conuerted into a ſtable for their horſes, or a place for the execution of their abhominable and vnſpeakable filthineſſe: the Image of the crucifix was alſo by them taken downe, and a Turks cap put vpon the head thereof, and ſo ſet vp and ſhot at with their arrowes; and afterwards in great deriſion carried about in their campe, as it had beene in proceſſion, with drums playing before it, railing, and ſpitting at it, and calling it the God of the
E Chriſtians. Which I note not ſo much done in contempt of the Image, as in the deſpight of Chriſt and the Chriſtian religion.

Conſtantinople won by the Turks.

But whileſt ſome were thus ſpoiling of the Churches, others were as buſie in ranſacking of priuate houſes, where the miſerable Chriſtians were enforced to endure in their perſons whatſoeuer pleaſed the inſolent victors: vnto whom all things were now lawfull that ſtood with their luſt, euery common ſouldier hauing power of life and death, at his pleaſure to ſpare or ſpill. At which time riches were no better than pouertie; and beautie worſe than deformitie. What tongue were able to expreſſe the miſerie of that time? or the proud inſolencie of thoſe barbarous conquerours? where of ſo many thouſands, euery man with greedineſſe fitted his owne vnreaſonable deſire: all which the poore Chriſtians were enforced to endure. But to
F ſpeake of the hidden treaſure, money, plate, iewels, and other riches there found, paſſeth credit; the Turks themſelues wondred thereat, and were therewith ſo enriched, that it is a prouerbe amongſt them at this day, if any of them grow ſuddenly rich, to ſay, *He hath beene at the ſacking of* CONSTANTINOPLE: whereof if ſome reaſonable part had in time beene beſtowed vpon defence of the citie, the Turkiſh King had not ſo eaſily taken both it and the citie. But euery man was carefull how to increaſe his owne priuate wealth, few or none regarding the publicke

ſtate;

ſtate; vntill in fine, euery man with his priuate abundance was wrapped vp together with his needie neighbour in the ſelfe-ſame common miſerie. Yea the ſecuritie of the Conſtantinopolitans was ſuch, that being alwaies enuironed with their mortall enemies, yet had they no care of fortifying of ſo much as the inner wall of the citie (which for beautie and ſtrength was comparable with the wals of any citie in the world, if it had beene kept well repaired) but ſuffered the officers which had the charge to ſee to the fortifying of the citie, to conuert the greateſt part of the money into their owne purſes: as appeared by *Manuel Giagerus*, a little before a very poore man; and likewiſe by *Neophitus*, who then hauing that office to ſee vnto the fortification of the citie, had in ſhort time gathered together ſeuentie thouſand florens, which became all a worthie prey vnto the greedie Turks. G

After that the barbarous common ſouldier had thus by the ſpace of three daies without controlment taken his pleaſure in the citie (as *Mahomet* had before promiſed) and throughly ranſackt euery corner thereof: they then returned into the campe, with their rich ſpoiles, driuing the poore Chriſtian captiues before them, as if they had beene droues of cattell, or flocks of ſheepe: a ſpectacle no leſſe lamentable, than was the ſacking of the citie. It would haue grieued any ſtonie heart to haue ſeene the noble gentlewomen and great Ladies, with their beautifull children, and many other faire perſonages, who lately flowed in all worldly wealth and pleaſure, to be now become the poore and miſerable bondſlaues of moſt baſe and contemptible raſcals; who were ſo farre from ſhewing them any pitie, as that they delighted in nothing more than to heape more and more miſerie vpon them, making no more reckoning of them than of dogs. There might the parents ſee the wofull miſerie of their beloued children, and the children of the parents, the huſband might ſee the ſhamefull abuſe of his wife, and the wife of her huſband, and generally one friend of another: and yet not able to mourne together (the leaſt part of heauie comfort) being in the thraldome of diuers cruell maſters, by whom they were kept in ſunder, like in few dayes to be diſperſed into diuers farre countries, without hope that they ſhould euer find releaſe, or one ſee another againe. H I

Mahomet ſolemniſeth his feaſts in Conſtantinople with the bloud of the Grecian nobilitie.

The ſouldiers being all retired into the campe, *Mahomet* as a proud conquerour, with great triumph entered into the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, then deſolate and void of all Chriſtian inhabitants; and there after the manner of the Turkiſh Kings, made a ſumptuous & royall feaſt vnto his Baſſaes and other great captaines: where after he had ſurcharged himſelfe with exceſſe of meat and drinke, he cauſed diuers of the chiefe Chriſtian captiues, both men and women (of whom many were of the late Emperours line and race) to be in his preſence put to death, as he with his Turks ſate banquetting: deeming his feaſt much more ſtately by ſuch effuſion of Chriſtian bloud. Which manner of exceeding crueltie he daily vſed, vntill ſuch time as he had deſtroied all the Grecian nobilitie that was in his power, with the chiefe of the late Conſtantinopolitan citizens. At which time alſo diuers of the Venetian Senators, with *Baiulus* their Gouernour, and many rich marchants of GENVA and other places of ITALIE, were in like manner murthered: ſo that of ſeuen and fortie Senators of VENICE which were there taken (whereof moſt part came thither by chance, bound for other places, but there vnluckily ſhut vp) ſome few found the fauour, with exceeding great ranſomes to redeeme themſelues. K L

Amongſt theſe noblemen thus lamentably executed, was one *Lucas Leontares*, or *Notaras*, commonly called *Kyr-Lucas*, or lord *Lucas*, but of late great chancellor of CONSTANTINOPLE, a man of greateſt account next vnto the Emperour himſelfe: whom the Turkiſh tyrant ſeemed greatly to blame, that he being a man in ſo great credit with the late Emperour, perſwaded him not in time to haue ſought for peace vpon any condition, or elſe to haue yeelded vp the citie, rather than to haue run that extreame courſe of wilfull miſerie. He to excuſe the matter, ſaid, That the late Emperour his maſter was encouraged to hold out the ſiege, by the Venetians & citizens of PERA, from whom he receiued ſecret aid: as alſo by ſome of the greateſt men about his owne perſon: for proofe whereof, he drew out of his boſome the letters which *Caly-Baſſa* had to that purpoſe written vnto the Emperour, and deliuered them to *Mahomet*, hoping thereby to haue found ſome fauour. But when he had ſaid what he could, the eldeſt of his ſons then liuing (for he had loſt two elder in the time of the ſiege) was cruelly executed before his face, & the youngeſt reſerued for the tyrants luſt: and after all this miſerie, had his owne head ſtrucke off with the reſt appointed for that dayes ſacrifice. Out of this generall calamitie eſcaped *Io. Iuſtinianus* the Generall, who with all ſpeed fled at firſt to PERA, and from thence to CHIOS, where in few daies M

after

A after he died, of griefe of mind (as was thought) rather than of his wound, being happie if he had honourably before ended his dayes vpon the wals of CONSTANTINOPLE. *Iſidorus* alſo the Cardinall & Legat from the Pope, diſguiſed in ſimple apparell, and being of the Turks vnknowne, redeemed himſelfe for a ſmall ranſome, as if he had beene a man of no account, and ſo eſcaped: whom if *Mahomet* had knowne, he had vndoubtedly beene made ſhorter by the head.

The glorie of this famous citie of CONSTANTINOPLE continued many hundred yeeres, commanding a great part of the world, vntill that by ciuill diſcord and priuate gaine, it was by little and little ſo weakened, that the Emperours of latter times, for the maintenance of their eſtate, were glad to relie ſometime vpon one, and ſometime vpon another, yet ſtill holding the
B title and ſtate of an empire, by the ſpace of 1121 yeeres, when as (God his iudgement ſet apart, wonderfull and ſhamefull it is to conſider how) it was by this Turkiſh King *Mahomet* ſo quickly taken, and the Chriſtian empire of the Eaſt there vtterly ouerthrowne: which happened in the nine and twentieth day of May, in the yeere of our Lord 1453. *Conſtantinus Paleologus*, the ſonne of *Helena*, and laſt Chriſtian Emperour, being then ſlaine, when he had raigned about eight yeeres. Since which time it hath continued the imperiall ſeat of the Turkiſh Emperours, and ſo remaineth at this day.

Pera yeelded to the Turke.

The poteſtats and citizens of PERA, otherwiſe called GALATA, a citie ſtanding oppoſite
C againſt CONSTANTINOPLE, on the other ſide of the hauen, and then vnder the gouernment of the Genowayes, doubting to run the ſame courſe of miſerie with their neighbours, ſent their Orators vnto *Mahomet* (the ſame day that CONSTANTINOPLE was taken) offering to him the keyes of their gates, and ſo to become his ſubiects. Of which their offer *Mahomet* accepted, and ſent *Zoganus* with his regiment to take poſſeſſion of the citie. Who comming thither, according to *Mahomet* his commandement, there eſtabliſhed the Turkiſh gouernment, confiſcated the goods of all ſuch as were fled, and vſed the reſt of the citizens which ſtaied, with ſuch inſolencie and oppreſſion, as that their miſerie was not much leſſe than theirs of CONSTANTINOPLE. And becauſe it was doubted, that the Genowayes might by ſea giue aid vnto the citizens, if they ſhould at any time ſeeke to reuolt, he cauſed all the wals and fortreſſes of the citie which were toward the land, to be caſt downe and laid euen with the ground. Thus is the fatall period of the Greeke empire run, and *Mahomet* in one day become Lord of the two famous cities of Con-
D STANTINOPLE and PERA: the one taken by force, the other by compoſition. At which time the miſerie of PERA was great, but that of CONSTANTINOPLE iuſtly to be accounted amongſt the greateſt calamities that euer happened to any Chriſtian citie in the world.

Mahomet notably diſſembleth his hatred againſt Caly-Baſſa.

Mahomet had of long time borne a ſecret grudge againſt *Caly-Baſſa*, ſometime his tutor, for that by his meanes *Amurath* his father, in the dangerous time of the Hungarian warres, had againe reſumed vnto himſelfe the gouernment of the Turkiſh kingdome, which he had before reſigned vnto him, then but young. But foraſmuch as he was the chiefe Baſſa, and had for many yeeres ruled all things at his pleaſure, to the generall good liking of the people, during the raigne of old *Amurath*, and was thereby growne to be of ſuch wealth, credit, and authoritie, as no man had at any time obtained greater vnder any of the *Othoman* Kings: *Mahomet* in the beginning
E of his raigne, before he was well eſtabliſhed in his kingdome, durſt not to take reuenge of that iniurie (as he deemed it) but yet ſtill kept it in remembrance, warily diſſembling his deepe conceiued hatred, as if he had quite forgot it. Neuertheleſſe ſometime (for all his warineſſe) words fell from him, whereby the warie courtiers (which as curiouſly weigh their Princes words, as the cunning goldſmith doth his fineſt gold) eaſily perceiued the ſecret grudge that ſtucke in his ſtomacke againſt the Baſſa: and thereby diuined his fall to be at hand. So it happened one day that as *Mahomet* was walking in the court, he ſaw a fox of the Baſſaes tied in a chaine, which after he had a while earneſtly looked vpon, he ſuddenly brake into this ſpeech: *Alas poore beaſt, haſt thou no money to giue thy maſter to ſet thee at libertie?* out of which words, curious heads gathered much matter concerning the Kings diſpoſition towards the Baſſa. This ominous ſur-
F miſing of the courtiers (which oftentimes proueth too true) was not vnknowne vnto the Baſſa himſelfe, but troubled him much: wherefore to get himſelfe out of the way for a ſeaſon, more than for any deuotion, he tooke vpon him to goe in pilgrimage to viſit the temple of the great Prophet (as they tearme him) at MECHA, which amongſt the Turks is holden for a right religious and meritorious worke: hoping, that the young Kings diſpleaſure might in time be mitigated, and his malice aſſwaged. But *Mahomet* perceiuing the diſtruſt of the Baſſa, and

whereof it proceeded, ſeemed to take knowledge thereof, and with good words comforted him G
vp, willing him to be of good cheere, and not to miſdoubt any thing; neither to regard the vaine ſpeech of fooliſh people, aſſuring him of his vndoubted fauour: and the more to put him out of all ſuſpition, continually ſent him rich gifts, and heaped vpon him new honours, as if of all others he had eſteemed him moſt. Vntill that now at the taking of CONSTANTINOPLE, it was diſcouered by *Lucas Leontares*, that he had intelligence with the late Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, and his letters produced. For which cauſe, or as the common report went, for the old grudge that the tyrant bare againſt him, as alſo for his great wealth, he was by *Mahomets* commandement apprehended and caried in bonds to HADRIANOPLE: where after he had with exquiſite torments beene enforced to confeſſe where all his treaſures lay, he was moſt H
cruelly in his extreame old age executed. After whoſe death, his friends and ſeruants (which were many, for he was a man greatly beloued in court) in token of their griefe put on mourning apparell: ſo that in the court appeared a great ſhew of common ſorrow; wherewith *Mahomet* being offended, cauſed proclamation to be made, That all ſuch as did weare ſuch mourning apparell, ſhould the next day appeare before him: at which time there was not one to be ſeene about the court in that heauie attire, for feare of the tyrants diſpleaſure.

Mahomet placeth his imperial ſeat at Conſtantinople, and is worthily accoũted firſt Emperor of the Turks

After that *Mahomet* was thus become Lord of the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, as is aforeſaid, and had fully reſolued there to place his imperiall ſeat; he firſt repaired the wals and other buildings ſpoiled in the late ſiege, and by proclamations ſent forth into all parts of his dominions, gaue great priuiledges and immunities to all ſuch as ſhould come to dwell at CONSTANTINOPLE, with free libertie to exerciſe what religion or trade they pleaſed. Whereby in I
ſhort time that great and deſolate citie was againe well peopled, with ſuch as out of diuers countries reſorted thither: but eſpecially with the Iewiſh nation, which driuen out of other places, came thither in great numbers, & were of the Turks gladly receiued. So when he had there eſtabliſhed all things according to his hearts deſire, he tooke vpon him the name and title of an Emperour: and is from that time not vnworthily reputed for the firſt Emperour of the Turks.

Now amongſt many faire virgins taken priſoners by the Turks at the winning of CONSTANTINOPLE, was one *Irene* a Greeke borne, of ſuch incomparable beautie & rare perfection, both of body & mind, as if nature had in her to the admiration of the world, laboured to haue ſhown her greateſt skill; ſo prodigally ſhe had beſtowed vpon her, all the graces that might beautifie or K
commend that her ſo curious a worke. This paragon was by him that by chance had taken her, preſented vnto the great Sultan *Mahomet* himſelfe, as a iewell ſo fit for no mans wearing as his owne: by the beautie and ſecret vertues whereof, he found himſelfe euen vpon the firſt view not a little moued. Neuertheleſſe, hauing as then his head full of troubles, and aboue all things carefull for the aſſuring of the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, by him but euen then won; he for the preſent committed her to the charge of his Eunuch, and ſent her away, ſo to be in ſafetie kept vntill his better leiſure. But thoſe his troubles ouerblowne, and his new conqueſts well aſſured, he then began forthwith to thinke of the faire *Irene:* and for his pleaſure ſending for her, tooke in her perfections ſuch delight & contentment, as that in ſhort time he had changed ſtate with her, ſhe being become the miſtreſſe and commander of him ſo great a conqueror; and he in L
nothing more delighted, than in doing her the greateſt honour and ſeruice he could. All the day he ſpent with her in diſcourſe, and the night in daliance: all time ſpent in her companie, ſeemed vnto him ſhort; and without her nothing pleaſed: his fierce nature was now by her well tamed, and his wonted care of armes quite neglected: *Mars* ſlept in *Venus* lap, and now the ſouldiers might goe play. Yea the very gouernment of his eſtate and empire ſeemed to be of him, in compariſon of her, little or not at all regarded; the care thereof being by him careleſly committed to others, that ſo he might himſelfe wholly attend vpon her, in whom more than in himſelfe, the people ſaid he delighted. Such is the power of diſordered affections, where reaſon ruleth not the reine. But whileſt he thus forgetfull of himſelfe, ſpendeth in pleaſure not ſome few dayes or moneths, but euen a whole yeere or two, to the lightning of his credit, and the great diſcontent- M
ment of his ſubiects in generall: the Ianizaries and other ſouldiers of the court (men deſirous of imploiment, & grieued to ſee him ſo giuen ouer vnto his affections, & to make no end thereof) began at firſt in ſecret to murmur thereat, and to ſpeake hardly of him; and at length (after their inſolent manner) ſpared not openly to ſay, That it were well done to depriue him of his gouernment and ſtate, as vnworthie thereof, and to ſet vp one of his ſonnes in his ſtead. Which

ſpeeches

A ſpeeches were now growne ſo rife, and the diſcontentment of the men of warre ſo great, that it was not without cauſe by ſome of the great Baſſaes feared, whereunto this their ſo great inſolencie would grow. But who ſhould tell the tyrant thereof; whoſe frowne was in it ſelfe death? or who durſt take in hand to cure that his ſicke mind? which diſtraught with the ſweet, but poiſoned potions of loue, was not like to liſten to any good counſell, were it neuer ſo wiſely giuen: but as a man metamorphoſed, to turne his furie vpon him which ſhould preſume ſo wholeſomely (but contrary to his good liking) to aduiſe him. Vnhappie man, whoſe great eſtate and fierce nature was not without danger to be medled or tempered with, no, not by them who of all others ought in ſo great a perill to haue beene thereof moſt carefull; but were now for feare
B all become ſilent and dumbe. Now amongſt other great men in the Court, was one *Muſtapha Baſſa*, a man for his good ſeruice (for that he was of a child brought vp with him) of *Mahomet* greatly fauoured, and by him alſo highly promoted; and he againe by him as his Soueraigne no leſſe honoured than feared: who no leſſe than the reſt, greeued to ſee ſo great a change in the great Sultan, of whom they had conceiued no ſmall hope of greater matters than were by him as yet performed; and moued alſo with the danger threatened vnto him by the diſcontented Ianizaries and men of warre: eſpying him at conuenient leiſure to be ſpoken vnto, and preſuming of the former credit he had with him, aduentured thus to breake with him, and to giue him warning thereof.

C *How dangerous a thing it is for a ſubiect or vaſſale, without leaue, preſumptuouſly to enter into the ſecrets of his dread Lord and Soueraigne, the wofull examples of others (moſt mightie* Mahomet) *haue ſo ſufficiently warned me, as that were it not for the dutifull loyaltie I owe vnto your greatneſſe, farre dearer vnto me than mine owne life, I would not at this time aduenture my ſelfe vnto the hazard of your doubtfull acceptance of my faithfull ſpeech & meaning; but with others keepe ſilence, and in ſecret mourne together with my heauie thoughts: which if I ſhould in ſo great a danger both of your life and empire now doe, without warning you thereof, I were not to be accounted vnworthie only thoſe your great fauours and honours, moſt bountifully on me beſtowed; but as a moſt vile traitor both vnto your ſtate and perſon, to be of all men deteſted and abhorred. The life you haue of late led, euer ſince the taking of* Constantinople, *as a man careleſſe of his ſtate, and wholly wedded vnto his owne pleaſure, hath giuen occa-*
D *ſion not vnto the vulgar people only (alwayes readie to ſay the worſt) and ſouldiers of the Court, the guarders of your perſon, but euen vnto the greateſt commanders of your armies and empire, to murmure and grudge, I dare not ſay, to conſpire againſt you. Yet pardon me dread Soueraigne, if I ſhould ſo ſay, for that there is no man which with great diſcontentment marueileth not much to ſee ſo great an alteration in your heroicall diſpoſition and nature: whereby you are become farre vnlike that noble* Mahomet, *which hauing ouerthrowne the Greeke empire, and taken the great citie of* Constantinople, *promiſed both vnto himſelfe and others, the conqueſt of* Italie, *and the ſacking of* Rome, *the ſtately ſeat of the ancient Romane conquerours. You haue giuen your ſelfe ouer (as they ſay) for a ſpoile and prey vnto a poore ſimple woman, your ſlaue and vaſſale, who with her beautie and allurements hath ſo bewitched your vnderſtanding and reaſon, as that you can attend nothing but her ſeruice, and the ſatisfying of your moſt paſſio-*
E *nate and inordinate deſires; which how much the more you cheriſh them, ſo much the more they torment and vex you. Enter but a little into your ſelfe (I pray you) and compare the life you now lead with the like time heretofore by you ſpent in treading honours ſteps, and you ſhall find a notable difference betwixt the one and the other. Had the noble* Othoman, *the firſt raiſer of your houſe and familie, ſo giuen himſelfe ouer vnto pleaſure, you had not now inherited the countries of* Bithynia *and* Galatia, *with others moe alongſt the Euxine, by him conquered. Neither had his ſonne* Orchanes *(the liuely image of his father, and follower of his vertues) by leading this kind of life, triumphed ouer* Licaonia, Phrygia, *and* Caria, *or extended the bounds of his empire ſo farre as vnto the ſtraits of* Hellespontvs. *What ſhould I ſpeake of* Amurath *his ſonne, and ſucceſſour in the empire? who in perſon himſelfe, firſt of the* Othoman *Kings, paſſed ouer into* Evrope, *placed his imperiall ſeat at* Ha-
F drianople, *conquered* Thracia, Bvlgaria, *and* Rascia. *Yea* Baiazet *your great grandfather is in his misfortune to be more than you commended, as vanquiſhed in field by the mightie* Tamerlane *with foure hundred thouſand horſemen and ſix hundred thouſand foot, and not by a fillie woman: comforting his miſhap with the honour and greatneſſe of him by whom he was ſo ouercome. Neither may I with ſilence paſſe ouer your worthie grandfather the noble* Mahomet, *who not contented to haue reſtored the ſhaking empire, conquered alſo a great part of* Macedonia, *euen to the Ionian ſea,*

and carying the terror of his armes ouer into Asia, *did great matters againſt the Caramanians and* G
others. As for your father Amurath *(of worthie memorie) I cannot but to my great griefe and ſorrow*
ſpeake of him, who by the ſpace of thirtie yeeres made both the ſea and earth to quake vnder his feet, and
with ſtrong hand more than once vanquiſhed the Hungarians, and brought vnder his ſubiection the coun-
tries of Phocis, Beotia, Ætolia, *with a great part of* Morea; *and to ſpeake of him truly,*
brake euen the very heart and ſtrength of the Grecians, and other his fierce enemies. Let all theſe moſt fa-
mous conqueſts of your noble progenitors, whoſe worthie praiſes (as eternall trophees of their honour) are
diſperſed into euery corner of the world, awake you out of this heaute Lythargie wherein you haue too long
ſlept, yea, let the remembrance of the conqueſt of this imperiall citie by you to your immortall glorie won,
ſtirre you vp to greater things: and let it neuer be ſaid of you, That you were able with your ſword to ouer-
come your greateſt enemies, and not with reaſon to ſubdue your inordinate affections: Thinke that your
greateſt conqueſt, and ſuffer not your ſelfe, ſo great a conquerour, to be led in triumph by your ſlaue. What H
auaileth it you to haue won Constantinople, *and to haue loſt your ſelfe? Shake off theſe golden*
fetters wherein the wilie Greeke hath ſo faſt bound you: which at the firſt though it ſeeme vnto you hard
and painfull, yet ſhall time diſgeſt it, and make you to thinke it both good and neceſſarie for your eſtate.
Weane your ſelfe from your deſires, and giue reſt vnto your trobled thoughts: which if you cannot doe
at once, ſtriue by little and little to doe it: pleaſure groweth greater by the ſeldome vſe thereof, and ſa-
tietie bringeth loathſomeneſſe. Moderate your ſelfe therefore, and againe take vp armes. Your ſouldiers
if they be not employed abroad, will to your farther trouble ſet themſelues to worke at home: Idleneſſe
maketh them inſolent, and want of martiall diſcipline corrupteth their manners. Hereof proceedeth I
their intemperate and diſloyall ſpeeches, That if you will not lead them forth for the honour and enlar-
ging of the Othoman *empire, as did all your moſt noble progenitors, they will ſet vp another that ſhall,*
euen one of your owne children. And what the common ſouldier fooliſhly ſaith, their great comman-
ders maliciouſly purpoſe: which what a confuſion it would bring vnto the whole ſtate of your empire, to-
gether with the danger of your royall perſon, I abhorre to thinke. Wherefore it is time, it is now high
time for you to ſhew your ſelfe, and with the maieſtie of your preſence to repreſſe their tumultuous inſo-
lencie, before it breake farther out. Rebellions are by farre, more eaſily preuented, than in their heat ap-
peaſed. The diſcontented multitude is a wild beaſt with many heads; which once enraged, is not a little
to be feared, or without danger to be tamed: yet doe you but ſhew your ſelfe maſter of your owne affecti-
ons, and you ſhall eaſily maſter them alſo. But what is fit for you to doe, beſeemeth me not for to ſay: yea K
pardon me, I beſeech you, that I haue thus much (contrary perhaps to your good liking) alreadie ſaid;
prouoked (by what diuine inſpiration I know not) euen halfe againſt my will, to diſcouer vnto you the ſe-
eret of my heart, and to lay open vnto you thoſe things, which others knowing as well as I, doe yet for feare
keepe the ſame from you. And if I haue gone too farre, or in any thing that I haue ſaid, forgot my ſelfe,
impute the ſame (my dread Soueraigne) vnto the zeale of my loue and loyaltie towards you, or vnto my
fidelitie ſo often by you tried, or to our ancient education (the ground of your affection towards me) or to
what elſe ſhall pleaſe you, rather than to my preſumption; from which, how farre I haue alwayes beene, I
appeale euen to your maieſties owne knowledge.

Hauing thus ſaid, he fell downe at his feet, as there to receiue the heauie doome of his ſo free L
ſpeech, if it ſhould be otherwiſe than well taken of the angrie Sultan: who all this while with great attention and many a ſterne looke had hearkened vnto all that the Baſſa had ſaid: for well he knew it to be all true; and that in ſo ſaying, he had but diſcharged the part of a truſtie and faithfull ſeruant, carefull of his maſters honour. But yet the beautie of the Greeke was ſtill ſo fixed in his heart, and the pleaſure he tooke in her, ſo great, as that to thinke of the leauing of her, bred in him many a troubled thought. He was at warre with himſelfe, as in his often changed countenance well appeared: reaſon calling vpon him, for his honour; and his amorous affections, ſtill ſuggeſting vnto him new delights. Thus toſſed to and fro (as a ſhip with contrarie winds) and withall conſidering the danger threatened to his eſtate if he ſhould longer follow thoſe his pleaſures, ſo much diſpleaſing vnto his men of warre, he reſolued vpon a ſtrange M
point, whereby at once to cut off all thoſe his troubled paſſions; and withall, to ſtrike a terrour euen into the ſtouteſt of them that had before condemned him, as vnable to gouerne his owne ſo paſſionate affections. Whereupon with countenance well declaring his inward diſcontentment, he ſaid vnto the Baſſa, yet proſtrate at his feet:

Although thou haſt vnreuerently ſpoken, as a ſlaue preſuming to enter into the greateſt ſecrets of

thy

A *thy Soueraigne (not without offence to be of thee once thought vpon) and therefore deſerueſt well to die; yet for that thou waſt of a child brought vp together with me, and haſt euer beene vnto me faithfull, I for this time pardon thee: and before to morrow the Sunne goe downe, will make it knowne both to thee, and others of the ſame opinion with thee, whether I be able to bridle mine affections or not. Take order in the meane time that all the Baſſaes, and the chiefe commanders of my men of warre be aſſembled together to morrow, there to know my farther pleaſure: whereof faile you not.*

So the Baſſa being departed, he after his wonted manner went in vnto the Greeke, and ſolacing himſelfe all that day and the night following with her, made more of her than euer before: and the more to pleaſe her, dined with her; commanding, that after dinner ſhe ſhould be attired
B with more ſumptuous apparell than euer ſhe had before worne: and for the further gracing of her, to be deckt with many moſt precious iewels of ineſtimable value. Whereunto the poore ſoule gladly obeyed, little thinking that it was her funerall apparell. Now in the meane while, *Muſtapha* (altogether ignorant of the Sultans mind) had as he was commanded, cauſed all the nobilitie, and commanders of the men of warre, to be aſſembled into the great hall: euery man much maruelling, what ſhould be the Emperors meaning therein, who had not of long ſo publikely ſhewed himſelfe. But being thus together aſſembled, and euery man according as their minds gaue them, talking diuerſly of the matter: behold, the Sultan entred into the palace leading the faire Greeke by the hand; who beſide her incomparable beautie and other the greateſt graces of nature, adorned alſo with all that curioſitie could deuiſe, ſeemed not now to the behol-
C ders a mortall wight, but ſome of the ſtately goddeſſes, whō the Poets in their extacies deſcribe. Thus comming together into the midſt of the hall, & due reuerence vnto them done by all them there preſent; he ſtood ſtill with the faire Lady in his left hand, and ſo furiouſly looking round about him, ſaid vnto them: *I vnderſtand of your great diſcontentment, and that you all murmure and grudge, for that I, ouercome with mine affection towards this ſo faire a paragon, cannot withdraw my ſelfe from her preſence: But I would faine know which of you there is ſo temperate, that if he had in his poſſeſſion a thing ſo rare and precious, ſo louely and ſo faire, would not be thrice aduiſed before he would forgoe the ſame? Say what you thinke: in the word of a Prince I giue you free libertie ſo to doe.* But they all rapt with an incredible admiration to ſee ſo faire a thing, the like whereof they had neuer before beheld, ſaid all with one conſent, That he had with greater reaſon ſo paſſed the time with
D her, than any man had to find fault therewith. Whereunto the barbarous Prince anſwered: *Well, but now I will make you to vnderſtand how far you haue beene deceiued in me, and that there is no earthly thing that can ſo much blind my ſenſes, or bereaue me of reaſon, as not to ſee and vnderſtand what beſeemeth my high place and calling: yea I would you ſhould all know, that the honour and conqueſts of the* Othoman *Kings my noble progenitors, is ſo fixed in my breaſt, with ſuch a deſire in my ſelfe to exceed the ſame, as that nothing but death is able to put it out of my remembrance.* And hauing ſo ſaid, preſently with one of his hands catching the faire Greeke by the haire of the head, and drawing his falchion with the other, at one blow ſtrucke off her head, to the great terror of them all. And hauing ſo done, ſaid vnto them: *Now by this iudge whether your Emperour is able to bridle his affections or not.* And within a while after, meaning to diſcharge the reſt of his choller, cauſed great prepa-
E ration to be made for the conqueſt of Peloponesvs, and the beſieging of Belgrade.

At the ſame time that the barbarous Turks tooke the imperiall citie of Constantinople, *Thomas* and *Demetrius Palæologi*, brethren to the late vnfortunate Emperour *Conſtantinus*, gouerned a great part of Peloponesvs, one of the moſt famous prouinces of Græcia: which in forme of a leafe of a Plane tree, is almoſt in manner of an Iland, enuironed with the ſeas Ionivm and Ægevm, which running farre into the land on either ſide thereof, ſeparateth the ſame from the reſt of Græcia, by two great bayes; leauing but a ſtraight necke of land, called of the Greekes Istmos, in breadth about fiue miles, which was ſometime by the Grecians, and afterward by the Venetians, fortified by a ſtrong wall, and fiue great caſtles: neare vnto which place ſtood the great and famous citie of Corinth. This prouince is in length 175 miles, and almoſt
F as much in breadth; wherein are contained the countries of Achaia, Messenia, Lacedemonia, Argolica, and Archadia; with many famous cities and goodly hauens, wherein it farre exceedeth all the other prouinces of Graecia. Theſe two Princes *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, diſmaied with their brothers diſaſter fortune, began now ſo farre to deſpaire of their owne eſtate, that vpon the firſt brute thereof, they were about preſently to haue fled by ſea into Italy. And as it commonly falleth out, That one euill happeneth not alone; ſo at the ſame time it fortuned,

that the Albanians riſe in armes againſt the ſaid two Princes their Soueraignes: and vnder the G
leading of their rebellious captaine *Emanuel Cateuzenus*, grieuouſly troubled both the poore
Princes. Theſe Albanians were a rough and hardie kind of people, which liuing after the man-
ner of the rude Scythian heardſmen, by feeding of cattell, had of long time planted themſelues
in PELOPONESVS; differing from the naturall Greekes, both in the manner of their liuing and
language: which diuerſitie was no ſmall cauſe that they oftentimes ſpurned, as now, againſt
the gouernment of the Grecian Princes. In this extremitie, the two diſtreſſed Princes (not well
1454 knowing which way to turne themſelues) ſought for peace at *Mahomets* hands, offering to be-
come his tributaries. Of which their offer he willingly accepted, as an induction to the full con-
queſt of that countrey; and ſent *Turachan* gouernour of THESSALIA, one of his greateſt men of H
warre, with an armie into PELOPONESVS, to aid thoſe Princes againſt the Albanians: by whoſe
induſtrie the maſterfull rebels were in ſhort time diſcomfited, and the countrey of PELOPONE-
SVS quieted; yet ſo, that it was now become tributarie to the Turkiſh King.

Theſe two Princes *Demetrius* and *Thomas*, the laſt of all the Chriſtian Princes that raigned in
PELOPONESVS, hauing thus loſt their libertie, liued for a few yeeres as the Turks vaſſals; pay-
ing ſuch yeerely tribute as they had before promiſed. During which time, many diſpleaſures
aroſe betwixt the two brothers, being both iealous of their eſtate, and deſirous by all plauſible
meanes to win the hearts of their ſubiects one from another: whereby it came ſo to paſſe, that
whiles they both deſired to become popular, they weakned their owne credit, and had not their
ſubiects at ſuch command as beſt ſtood with the ſafetie of their eſtate. Neuertheleſſe as ſoone as I
Thomas & Demetrius rebell againſt Mahomet, and are by him ſpoiled of part of their dominion.
they vnderſtood that the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt were making great preparation againſt
the Turke; and that *Calixtus* the third of that name (then the Biſhop of ROME) had alreadie
put a fleet of gallies to ſea, which did great ſpoile vpon the borders of the Turks dominions;
they vainly perſwading themſelues that the Turks would in ſhort time be againe driuen out of
GRECIA, refuſed to pay any more tribute vnto the Turkiſh King, or to keepe league any longer
with him. Vpon which occaſion, *Mahomet* with a puiſſant armie came downe and firſt beſieged
CORINTH, and afterwards entring into PELOPONESVS, tooke diuers ſtrong townes, and de-
ſtroied the countrey before him: and forced the two Princes for ſafegard of their liues to flie, the
one to MANTINIA, and the other into the ſtrong citie of EPIDAVRVS, now called RAGVSIVM.
The poore Princes deſtitute of ſuch aid as they expected, and altogether vnable to withſtand the K
power of the mightie tyrant, began againe to ſue for peace: which he, hauing now ſpoiled
their countrey, granted vpon condition, That all ſuch places as he had alreadie taken, ſhould be
ſtill his owne; and alſo that the citie of PATRAS with the countrey adioyning, ſhould be deliue-
red vnto him; and that for the reſt, the ſaid Princes ſhould pay vnto him a yeerely tribute: which
hard conditions the poore Princes, now in danger to loſe all, were glad to accept of: where-
upon a peace was for that time againe concluded.

In his returne he tooke the citie of ATHENS in his way, which he not long before had taken
from *Francus Acciauoll* by compoſition (by meanes of *Omares* the ſonne of *Turechan*, one of his
great captaines) promiſing to giue him the countrey of BEOTIA with the citie of THEBES in
lieu thereof. This *Francus* was nephew to *Nerius*, ſometime Prince of ATHENS, and had of L
long time beene brought vp in the Turks court, as one of *Mahomet* his minions; and was of him
(as was ſuppoſed) entirely beloued. But when he had receiued the dukedome of THEBES, in
exchange for his princely ſtate of ATHENS, he was ſhortly after, as if it had beene in great friend-
ſhip ſent by *Mahomet* to *Zoganus*, his lieutenant in PELOPONESVS: by whom he was at firſt
courteouſly entertained, but afterwards being about to depart, he was (according as *Mahomet*
had before commanded) ſuddenly ſtaied, and when he leaſt feared, cruelly murdered.

About three yeeres after the peace before concluded betwixt *Mahomet* and the two brethren,
Mahomet vnderſtanding that the Chriſtian Kings and Princes had combined themſelues againſt
him, with a purpoſe to driue him againe out of GRECIA: thought it now high time, and much
Mahomet commeth againe into Peloponeſus. for the aſſurance of his eſtate, to root vp the ſmall reliques of the Grecian empire, which yet re- M
mained in PELOPONESVS in the two Princes of the imperiall bloud, *Thomas* and *Demetrius*:
whereunto he ſaw a faire occaſion preſented. For aſmuch as thoſe two brethren were at that time
at great variance betwixt themſelues, neither paid him ſuch tribute as they had before promiſed:
hereupon he with a great and ſtrong armie came to CORINTH, where *Arſanes* a noble man of
great authoritie and power in that countrey, whoſe ſiſter *Demetrius* had maried, came vnto him
from

A from the Prince his brother in law, attended vpon with many gallant gentlemen, his followers, of purpoſe to aid him againſt the other Prince *Thomas*, nothing fearing any harme to haue been by the Turke intended againſt himſelfe or his brother in law *Demetrius*, whom they both reckoned of as of a friend. But when *Mahomet* was entered into PELOPONESVS, and come to TEGEA, he cauſed the ſame *Aſanes*, with all his chiefe followers, to be laid hold vpon, and caſt into bonds: knowing (as it ſhould ſeeme) no man for friend, which might any way hinder his ambitious deſignes.

Demetrius hearing what was happened vnto *Aſanes*, fled to SPARTA, now called MIZETHRA: whither *Mahomet* in few dayes after came and laid ſiege to the citie. But the poore Prince conſi- *Demetrius ſubmitteth himſelfe to Mahomet.*
B dering, that he muſt needs at length fall into his hands, went out of the citie, and humbly ſubmitted himſelfe with all that he had into his power. Which ſo well pleaſed the Turkiſh tyrant, that he courteouſly receiued him, comforted him, and promiſed him inſtead of SPARTA to giue him other lands and poſſeſſions of like value elſewhere: Neuertheleſſe, he committed him to ſafe cuſtodie, and caried him about with him as his priſoner, vntill he had finiſhed thoſe warres. After he had taken SPARTA, he beſieged CASTRIA, where he loſt diuers of his Ianizaries: for which cauſe, when he had taken the citie, he put all the ſouldiers therein to the ſword, and cut the captaines ouerthwart in two peeces. From thence he marched to LEONTARIVM, called in ancient time MEGALOPOLIS, which he tooke; with another citie called CARDICEA, whither they of LEONTARIVM had before conueyed their wiues and children, as to a place of more ſafe-
C tie. There he cruelly put to death all the inhabitants of thoſe cities, men, women, and children, in number about ſix thouſand, of whom he left not one aliue: and yet not ſo ſatisfied, commanded the very beaſts and cattell of thoſe places to be killed. Many cities of PELOPONESVS terrified with the dreadfull example of their neighbours, forthwith yeelded themſelues: and amongſt others SALVARIVM, a great and ſtrong citie of ARCHADIA; where he cauſed all the inhabitants, men, women, and children, to the number of ten thouſand, to be caſt into bonds, looking for nothing but preſent death: all which he commanded afterwards to be ſent captiues to CONSTANTINOPLE, and with them peopled the ſuburbs of that citie. After that, he by the counſell of *Demetrius*, ſent ~~one of~~ his captaines called *Ioſua*, with certaine companies of Greeke ſouldiers, vnto the ſtrong citie of EPIDAVRVS, to command them in the name of the Prince, to de-
D liuer vnto him the citie, with the Prince his wife and daughter, which lay there. But the gouernour truſting vnto the ſtrength of the citie, refuſed to deliuer the ſame: yet ſuffered the Princeſſe with her daughter to depart out of the citie, being willing to goe to her huſband; whom the captaine hauing receiued, returned, and preſented them to *Mahomet*. By whoſe commandement they were preſently ſent into BEOTIA, there to attend his returne towards CONSTANTINOPLE, and an Eunuch appointed to take charge of the young Ladie, who had ſo warmed *Mahomets* affection, that he tooke her afterwards to his wife. At the ſame time he alſo ſubdued the moſt part of ACHAIA and ELIS, by *Zoganus Baſſa* his lieutenant: whither he came not long after himſelfe, and laid ſiege to the citie of SALMENICA, which for lacke of water was at length yeelded vnto him: but the caſtle was by the ſpace of a whole yeere after valiantly defended againſt the
E Turks left to beſiege it, by *Thomas* the Prince: of whom *Mahomet* afterwards gaue this commendation, That in the great countrey of PELOPONESVS he had found many ſlaues, but neuer a man but him. This valiant Prince ſeeing the miſerable ruine of his countrey, and the ſtate thereof vtterly forlorne, after he had moſt notably endured a yeeres ſiege in the caſtle of SALMENICA, got to ſea, and ſo arriued in ITALIE: where trauelling to ROME, he was honourably receiued by *Pius Secundus*, then Biſhop there: who during his life, allowed him a large penſion for the maintenance of his ſtate. Thus *Mahomet* hauing thruſt both the Grecian Princes out of their dominions, and ſubdued all PELOPONESVS (excepting ſuch ſtrong townes and caſtles, as bordering vpon the ſea coaſt were yet holden by the Venetians) left *Zoganus Baſſa* his lieutenant to gouerne that new conquered prouince, & with great triumph returned himſelfe towards Con- *Peloponeſus ſubdued by the Turks.*
F STANTINOPLE, carying away with him *Demetrius* the Prince, with his wife and daughter, and many other noble priſoners. But after he was come to HADRIANOPLE, and placed in his royall ſeat, he remoued the Eunuch from the faire young Ladie, and tooke charge of her himſelfe. As for *Demetrius* her father, he gaue to him the citie ÆNVM, with the cuſtome ariſing of the ſalt there made, as a penſion for him to liue vpon. Thus this moſt famous and populous countrey of PELOPONESVS fell into the Turkiſh thraldome, about the yeere of our Lord 1460, ſeuen yeeres after

after the taking of CONSTANTINOPLE. Which I haue here together ſet downe, as it is reported by them who liued in that time, and in the ſame countries: omitting of purpoſe other great occurrents of the ſame time (which ſhall alſo in conuenient place be hereafter declared) to the intent that the fall of that great empire, with the common miſerie of the delicate Grecians, might appeare vnder one view; which otherwiſe being deliuered by peece-meale, as it did concurre with other great accidents according to the courſe of time, would but breed confuſion, and require the Readers greater attention. G

The Chriſtian Princes, eſpecially ſuch as bordered vpon the dominions of the Turkiſh tyrant, were no leſſe terrified than troubled with the ſubuerſion of the Conſtantinopolitane empire: for they ſaw by the continuall preparation of the Turke, that his ambitious deſires were rather increaſed, than in any part ſatisfied with his ſo great & late victories. Wherefore they with all carefulnes fortified their frontier townes, & prouided all things neceſſarie for defence of themſelues, H and for the repulſing of ſo mightie an enemie. Amongſt the reſt, *George* the old Deſpot, or Prince of SERVIA (whoſe dominions of all other lay moſt in danger of that tempeſt) ſpeedily muſtred his men of warre, fortified his ſtrong cities, placed his garriſons, and left nothing vndone, that he thought needfull for the defence of his countrey: for he had many times before to his great loſſe, endured the furie of the Turkiſh Kings, although he were ioyned vnto thē in the bonds of neereſt alliance. And hauing thus politikely ſet all things in order at home, in perſon himſelfe tooke his iourney into HVNGARIE, from thence to procure aid againſt ſuch time as he ſhould haue need. But the Hungarians, and eſpecially *Huniades* (who at that time bare greateſt ſway in that I kingdome) hauing before had ſufficient trial of the vncertaintie & light faith of that aged Prince, who had ſo often faſhioned himſelf according to the occurrents of the time, that he was accounted neither right Turke, nor good Chriſtian; refuſed to promiſe him any aid, but left him to his owne fortunes: wherewith he returned diſcontented, and full of indignation. But ſhortly after he was come home, he died of an hurt receiued in a skirmiſh with *Michael Zilugo*, gouernour of BELGRADE: whoſe brother *Ladiſlaus* he had but a little before trecherouſly murdered, as he was trauelling by wagon to BELGRADE with his ſaid brother *Michael*, who at the ſame time hardly eſcaped. This was the end of *George* Deſpot of SERVIA, when he had liued ninetie yeeres: in which time of his long life, he had plentifully taſted of both fortunes. A man aſſuredly of great courage, but of a maruellous vnquiet nature: by profeſſion a Chriſtian, yet a great friend vnto K the Turks, whom he many times ſtood in great ſtead: a deepe diſſembler, and double in all his dealings, whereby he purchaſed vnto himſelfe that credit, that he was not of any his neighbour Princes whileſt he liued, either beloued or truſted; and after his death, of his ſubiects ſo deteſted, that the people of that countrey euen at this day in their countrey ſongs, ſtill tearme him, The faithleſſe & graceleſſe Deſpot. *Lazarus* his youngeſt ſon, after his death ſucceeded in his place; hauing depriued both his elder brethren *Stephen* and *George*) of the gouernment: for *Amurath* the Turkiſh King had long time before put out their eyes, of purpoſe to make them vnfit for the gouernment of ſo great a countrey: yet theſe blind Princes found meanes to flie away from him to *Mahomet*, carrying with them a great maſſe of money; and ſo incited him againſt *Lazarus* their younger brother, that to keepe friendſhip with the tyrant, he was glad to promiſe vnto him L a great yeerely tribute, and ſo to become his tributarie. But within few moneths after, *Lazarus* died, the laſt Chriſtian Prince that raigned in SERVIA: after whoſe death, great troubles aroſe in SERVIA for the ſoueraignetie: the blind brethren ſtill crauing aid of *Mahomet*, with whom they then liued; and the deſolate widow of *Lazarus*, putting her ſelfe with her three ſons, *Iohn*, *Peter*, and *Martin*, into the protection of the Hungarians: by which meanes ſhe with much trouble held her ſtate for a ſeaſon. Vntill ſuch time as that the Seruians, ſeeing ſmall aſſurance in that manner of gouernment, and wearie of the harmes they daily receiued of the Turks; yeelded themſelues with their countrey, vnto the obedience of the Turkiſh Emperour *Mahomet*, who for euer vnited the ſame vnto his empire as a prouince thereof, and ſo it remaineth at this day.

The death of George, Diſpot of Seruia.

Seruia yeelded to the Turke.

Now was *Mahomet* by the continuall courſe of his victories, growne to that height of mind, M that he thought no Prince able to abide his force; neither any enterpriſe ſo great, which he was not of power to bring to paſſe: wherefore he ceaſed not on euery ſide continually to vex and trouble the Princes, whoſe countries bordered vpon his. But aboue others, his heart was greateſt againſt the Hungarians: for that by them the Turkiſh Kings his anceſtors, had beene more troubled, & their ſtate more endangered, than by any or all other the Chriſtian Princes. Where-

fore

A fore he reſolued now to take them in hand; which thing he had from the beginning of his raigne greatly deſired. And becauſe the citie of BELGRADE ſtanding vpon the great riuer of DANVBIVS, was accounted the key of that countrey, he determined there to begin his wars, and by taking thereof to make an entrance into the heart of HVNGARIE. Hereupon he leuied a great armie of an hundred and fiftie thouſand of his beſt ſouldiers; in whom he repoſed ſuch an aſſured truſt and confidence, that he accounted the citie alreadie as good as taken, and a faire way made into HVNGARIE: ſo readie are we to promiſe vnto our ſelues, the things we earneſtly deſire. For the better accompliſhment of theſe his deſignes, he had prouided in readineſſe a fleet of 200 ſhips and gallies, which he ſent vp the riuer of DANVBIVS from VIDINA to BEL-
B GRADE, to the intent that no reliefe or aid ſhould be brought vnto the citie out of HVNGARIE, by the great riuers of DANVBIVS and SAVVS, whereupon the citie of BELGRADE ſtandeth. With this fleet he kept both thoſe riuers ſo ſtraitly, that nothing could poſſibly be conuaied into the citie by water: and not ſo contented, ſent part of his ſaid fleet farther vp the riuer of DANVBIVS, and ſo landing his ſouldiers in many places, ſpoiled the countrey all alongſt the riuers ſide. Shortly after he came with all his forces by land, & encamped before the citie: whereunto *Belgrade beſieged.* at his firſt comming he gaue a moſt fierce aſſault, thinking to haue taken them vnprouided: but finding greater reſiſtance than he had before imagined, and that the Hungarians were readie to skirmiſh with thē without the wals, he begun to proceed more warily, & entrenched his armie: and to prouide for the ſafetie thereof, by caſting vp of deepe trenches & ſtrong rampiers, againſt
C the ſudden ſallies of his enemies: and after, planting his batterie, began moſt furiouſly to ſhake the wals with his great artillerie. By the furie whereof, he ouerthrew a part thereof, and laid it flat with the ground: which the defendants with great induſtrie and labour ſpeedily repaired, by caſting vp of new fortifications & rampiers, in ſuch ſort, that it was rather ſtronger than before.

In the meane time *Huniades* (not to be named without the addition of a moſt worthie captaine) being then Generall for the Hungarians, ſent a fleet of ſhips and gallies, well appointed with all warlike prouiſion, downe the riuer of DANVBIVS from BVDA: which encountring with the Turks fleet, tooke twentie ſaile of them, and ſo diſcomfited the reſt, that they were glad *The Turks fleet ouerthrowne by the Chriſtians.* to run themſelues on ground neere vnto the Kings campe. All which were by *Mahomets* commandement preſently ſet on fire, becauſe they ſhould not come into the power of the Hungari-
D ans. By this meanes the Chriſtians became maſters of both the riuers of DANVBIVS and SAVVS; and ſo at their pleaſure, by water conuaied into the citie all things needfull for the defence thereof. *Huniades* alſo himſelfe, with fiue thouſand valiant ſouldiers, and *Io. Capiſtranus* a Minorite Frier (by whoſe perſwaſion fortie thouſand voluntarie Chriſtians out of GERMANIE, BOHEMIA, and HVNGARIE, were come to that warre) entred into the citie that way with their ſouldiers and followers.

Mahomet reſolutely ſet downe for the winning of the citie, had with continuall batterie made the ſame at length ſaultable; and ſo determined the next day to giue a generall aſſault, appointing which part of the wall euery Colonell with his regiment ſhould aſſaile. But as they were with great diligence and greater ſtirre, preparing all things needfull for the next dayes ſeruice, it
E fortuned, that *Carazies Baſſa*, *Mahomet* his lieutenant generall in EVROPE, and his beſt man of *Carazies Baſſa ſlaine.* warre, was by chance ſlaine with a great ſhot out of the towne. With whoſe death, *Mahomet* was exceedingly troubled, as with an ominous token of the euill which afterwards enſued vnto him and his whole armie. For all that, proſecuting his former determination, the next day early in the morning he commanded the aſſault to be giuen: & with the dreadfull ſound of trumpets, *Belgrade aſſaulted by the Turks* drums, cornets, and other inſtruments of warre, brought on his Ianizaries to the breach; who as couragious ſouldiers fiercely aſſailed the ſame, and without any great reſiſtance, entred both there and in diuers other places of the citie; reckoning the ſame to be now their owne. For *Huniades* hauing before ſtored euery corner of the citie with his moſt valiant and expert ſouldiers, had taken order that the defendants, vpon the firſt charge of the Ianizaries, ſhould forſake
F their ſtations, and as men diſcouraged, retire towards the citie: of purpoſe to draw the fierce enemies faſter on, to their farther deſtruction; and vpon a ſigne giuen to ſet vpon them on freſh, and to repaire vnto their former places of defence. Which was accordingly done: ſo that as ſoone as the Ianizaries, with other of the Turks moſt forward ſouldiers, were in great numbers entered, vpon the retiring of the defendants, and the ſigne before appointed in the citie giuen, the defendants, as men ſuddenly changed, turning againe, fiercely charged the Turks which were entred,

The Turks notably repulsed.

tred contrary to their expectation: and the valiant *Huniades*, at the same time issuing out on euery side with his most resolute souldiers, so oppressed the Turks, that few of them that were entred escaped with life, but were there in the citie either slaine or taken prisoners; and the rest with exceeding slaughter beaten from the wals. Presently after, *Huniades* in this confusion of the Turks, strengthened with the souldiers which came with *Capistranus* the Frier, made a sallie out of the Towne, and set vpon the Turks appointed for the defence of the great ordinance; which was with such resolution performed, that the Turks were glad with great slaughter to forsake their charge, and to leaue the ordinance to their enemies. G

The Turkish tyrant sore troubled and throughly chafed with the losse of his great ordinance, couragiously charged the Hungarians afresh, to haue recouered the same againe: but was so valiantly repulsed by *Huniades*, and so beaten with the murthering shot out of the citie, that he was glad when he had got him out of the danger thereof into his trenches. *Huniades* also retiring, turned the ordinance he had lately won, vpon the Turks campe, and with the same did them no small harme. H

In this hurle, a great part of the Christian armie (which then lay on the other side of DANVBIVS) was speedily transported ouer the riuer; and making no stay in the citie, ioyned themselues with *Huniades*, then lying without the wals of the citie. Who notably strengthened with this new supplie, assailed the Turks trenches, as if he would euen presently haue entred their campe: at which his presumption, the proud tyrant (neuer before so braued) disdaining, went out of his trenches, and valiantly encountring him, beat him backe againe to the great ordinance; from whence he was againe by the Christians driuen to his trenches. Which manner of doubtfull and dreadfull fight, was on both sides notably maintained, vntill the day was almost spent: victorie with indifferent wings, houering now ouer the one side, now ouer the other. I

Mahomet wounded, and caried away for dead.

In these hot skirmishes and conflicts, *Chasanes* captaine of the Ianizaries, with many other valiant men were slaine. And *Mahomet* himselfe performing the part as well of a couragious souldier, as of a worthie chieftaine, was sore wounded vnder his left pappe; so that he was taken vp for dead, and so caried into his pauilion, to the great discomfiture of his whole armie. But comming againe vnto himselfe, and considering that he had in that siege lost his whole fleet, his great ordinance, with most part of his best souldiers, and yet in no possibilitie of the towne: secretly in the night arose with his armie, and with great silence shamefully departed; still looking behind him when the Hungarians should haue pursued him into SERVIA, or haue troubled him vpon his way towards CONSTANTINOPLE. At this siege (beside many of his best captaines and chiefe commanders) were slaine fortie thousand of his best souldiers. The losse that he there sustained was so great, and so stucke in his mind, that euer after during his life, when he had occasion to speake of that siege, he would shake his head and sigh deeply, and many times wish, That he had neuer seene that citie, whereat both he and his father had receiued so great dishonour. Many were of opinion, that if *Huniades* had there had his horsemen on that side of DANVBIVS to haue presently pursued the fearfull enemie, that the whole armie of the Turks might haue there beene ouerthrowne. This notable victorie was obtained against the Turke the sixt of August in the yeere of our Lord 1456. K L

The death of the most famous captaine Huniades.

Shortly after, this most valiant and renowmed captaine *Huniades*, worthie of immortall praise, died of a hurt taken in these wars; or as some others write, of the plague, which was then rife in HVNGARIE: who when he felt himselfe in danger of death, desired to receiue the sacrament before his departure, and would in any case (sicke as he was) be caried to the church to receiue the same; saying, That it was not fit, that the Lord should come to the house of his seruant; but the seruant rather to goe to the house of his Lord and master. He was the first Christian captaine that shewed the Turks were to be ouercome; and obtained more great victories against them than any one of the Christian Princes before him. He was vnto that barbarous people a great terror, and with the spoile of them beautified his countrey: and now dying, was by the Hungarians honourably buried at ALBA IVLIA, in *S. Stephens* church: his death being greatly lamented of all good men of that age. M

Mahomet the Turkish Emperour, no lesse desirous to extend his empire with the glorie of his name, by sea than by land; shortly after the taking of CONSTANTINOPLE, put a great fleet to sea, wherewith he surprised diuers Islands in the ÆGEVM, and hardly besieged the citie of the

RHODES.

A Rhodes. At which time, *Calixtus* the third, then Biſhop of Rome, aided by the Genowaies (for the grudge they bare againſt the Turks for the taking of Pera) put to ſea a fleet of ſixteene tall ſhips and gallies well appointed, vnder the conduct of *Lodouicus*, Patriarch of Aquilla; who with that fleet ſcoured the ſeas,& recouered againe from the Turks the Iſland of Lemnos, with diuers other ſmall Iſlands thereabout: and encountering with the Turks fleet neere vnto the Iſland of the Rhodes, at a place called the Burrow of *S. Paul*, diſcomfited them, ſunke and tooke diuers of their gallies, and forced them to forſake the Rhodes. After which victorie at ſea, he for the ſpace of three yeeres, with his gallies, at his pleaſure ſpoiled the frontiers of the Turks dominions all alongſt the ſea coaſt of the leſſer Asia, and wonderfully terrified the effe-
B minate people of thoſe countries: and ſo at length returned home, carrying away with him many priſoners and much rich ſpoile.

After that *Mahomet* was thus ſhamefully driuen from the ſiege of Belgrade, and his fleet at ſea diſcomfited (as is before declared) he began with great diligence to make new preparation againſt the next Spring to ſubdue the Iſles of the Ægeum, eſpecially thoſe which lay neere vnto Peloponesvs. But whileſt he was buſie in theſe cogitations, in the meane time embaſſadours from *Vſun-Caſſanes* the great Perſian King, arriued at Constantinople, with diuers rich preſents ſent to him from the ſaid King. Where among other things, they preſented vnto him a paire of playing tables, wherein the men & dice were of great and rich precious ſtones of ineſtimable worth, and the workmanſhip nothing inferiour to the matter: which the embaſſa-
C dours for oſtentation ſaid, That *Vſun-Caſſanes* found in the treaſures of the Perſian King, whom he had but a little before ſlaine and bereft of his kingdome, and had there beene left long before by the mightie conquerour *Tamerlane*. Together with theſe preſents, they deliuered their embaſſage, the effect whereof was, That thoſe two mightie Princes might ioyne and liue together in amitie: and that whereas *Dauid* the Emperour of Trapezond, had promiſed to pay vnto *Mahomet* a yeerely tribute, enforced thereunto by *George* his lieutenant in Asia; he ſhould not now looke for any ſuch thing: foraſmuch as that empire after the death of the Emperour then liuing, ſhould of right belong vnto *Vſun-Caſſanes*, in right of his wife, who was the daughter of *Caloioannes*, the elder brother of *Dauid* the Emperour, then liuing: And further required him, from that time not to trouble or moleſt the ſaid Emperor his friend & neer alliance, ſo ſhould he find
D him his faithfull and kind confederat: otherwiſe it was (as they ſaid) in his choice to draw vpon himſelfe the heauie diſpleaſure of a moſt mightie enemie. *Mahomet* before enuying at the riſing of the Perſian king, and now diſdaining ſuch peremptorie requeſts, little differing from proud commands; in great choller diſmiſſed the Embaſſadors with this ſhort anſwer: That he would ere long be in Asia himſelfe in perſon, to teach *Vſun-Caſſanes* what to requeſt of a greater than himſelfe. This vnkindneſſe was the beginning & ground of the mortall wars which afterwards enſued between theſe two, then the greateſt Princes of the Eaſt, as ſhal be hereafter more at large declared. The Embaſſadors being departed, and *Mahomets* fleete of an hundred and fiftie ſaile readie to put to ſea, he altered his former determination for the Iſlands of the Ægeum (which after the loſſe of Constantinople had for the moſt part put themſelues vnder the protection
E of the Venetians) and commanded his Admirall with that fleete to take his courſe through the ſtraits of Boſphorus into the great Euxine ſea, (now called the black ſea) and ſo ſayling alongſt the coaſt to come to anker before Sinope, the chiefe citie of Paphlagonia, and there to expect his comming thither with his armie by land. This great citie of Sinope ſtandeth pleaſantly vpon a point of the maine which runneth a great way into the Euxine, ſometime the metropoliticall citie of that prouince: but as then, with Castamona and all the countrey thereabout, was vnder the gouernment of *Iſmael*, a Mahometane Prince: vpon whom *Mahomet* had now bent his forces, for no other cauſe than that he was in league with *Vſun-Caſſan*, the Perſian king. Now with great expedition had *Mahomet* leuied a ſtrong armie, and paſſing therewith ouer into Asia, was come before he was looked for, to Sinope. *Iſmael* ſeeing himſelfe ſo ſuddenly beſet both
F by ſea & land in his ſtrongeſt citie, although he wanted nothing needfull for his defence, hauing in the citie foure hundred peeces of great artillerie, and ten thouſand ſouldiers: yet doubting to be able with that ſtrength to endure the ſiege, offered to yeeld vp the citie to *Mahomet*, with all the reſt of his dominion, vpon condition, That he ſhould freely giue him in lieu thereof the citie of Philippopolis in Thracia, with the countrey thereto adioyning. Of which his offer *Mahomet* accepted: and ſo taking poſſeſſion of Sinope, with the ſtrong citie of Castamona,

1461

Vſun Caſſan the Perſian King ſendeth Embaſſadors with preſents to Mahomet.

Mahomet inuadeth Iſmael, prince of Sinope

MONA, and all the reſt of the Princes territorie, ſent him away with all his things to PHILIPPOPOLIS, as he had promiſed. This *Iſmael* was the laſt of the honourable houſe of the *Iſfendiars*, who had long time raigned at HERACLEA and CASTAMONA in PONTVS. From SINOPE he marched on forward with his armie to TRAPEZOND. This famous citie ſtandeth alſo vpon the ſide of the Euxine or blacke ſea in the countrey of PONTVS, where the Emperours of CONSTANTINOPLE had alwayes their deputies, whileſt that empire flouriſhed and commanded the Eaſt part of the world, as farre as PARTHIA: but after it began againe to decline (as all worldly things haue but their time) one *Iſaack* (whoſe father, Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE, the Conſtantinopolitanes had for his euill gouernment ſlaine) flying to TRAPEZOND, tooke vpon him the gouernment of that citie, with the countries of PONTVS and CAPADOCIA, and many other great prouinces, and was at firſt called the King of TRAPEZOND: but after he was well eſtabliſhed in that gouernment, both he and his ſucceſſors tooke vpon them the name and title of Emperors; which they maintained equally, if not better, than the late Conſtantinopolitane Emperours, and therefore are of moſt accounted for Emperours. He that then raigned, was called *Dauid Comnenus*: which moſt honourable familie of the *Comneni* had long time before raigned in CONSTANTINOPLE; and out of the ſame were many other great Princes deſcended, which ruled in diuers places of MACEDONIA, EPIRVS, and GRÆCIA. *Mahomet* comming to TRAPEZOND, laid hard ſiege vnto the ſame by the ſpace of thirtie dayes both by ſea and land, and burnt the ſuburbs thereof, as he had before at SINOPE. The fearfull Emperour diſmaied with the preſence of ſo mightie an enemie, and the ſight of ſo puiſſant an armie, offered to yeeld vnto him the citie with his whole empire, vpon condition, That he ſhould take his daughter to wife, and deliuer vnto him ſome other prouince, which might yeeld him ſuch yeerely profit as might ſuffice for the honourable maintenance of his ſtate. *Mahomet* perceiuing the weakneſſe of his enemie by his large offers, refuſed to accept thereof, and attempted by force to haue taken the citie: which not ſorting to his deſire, the matter was againe brought to parle: where after long debating to and fro, it was at laſt agreed vpon, That the Emperour vpon the faith of the Turkiſh King for his ſafe returne, ſhould in perſon meet him without the citie, if happily ſo ſome good attonement might be made betwixt them. Whereupon the Emperour following the Turks faith before ſolemnly giuen for his ſafe returne, as was before agreed, went out of the citie to meet him, in hope to haue made ſome good agreement with him: but as ſoone as he was come out, *Mahomet* according to the damnable and helliſh doctrine of his falſe prophet (That faith is not to be kept with Chriſtians) preſently cauſed the Emperour to be caſt into bonds, and ſo to be detained as priſoner. Which when it was bruted in the citie, the citizens vtterly diſcouraged, without farther reſiſtance yeelded themſelues with the citie into his power.

Trapezond beſieged by Mahomet.

Trapezond yeelded vnto the Turks.

Mahomet now Lord of TRAPEZOND, entring the citie, tooke priſoners the Emperors daughter, with all the reſt of his children and kindred, and all ſuch of the nobilitie as he found in the citie: whom he cauſed forthwith, together with the Emperor, to be ſent by ſea as it were in triumph to CONSTANTINOPLE. Of the reſt of the citizens he choſe out ſo many as he pleaſed for his owne ſeruice, and appointed eight hundred of the Chriſtian children, in whom appeared moſt towardlineſſe, to be brought vp for Ianizaries, many alſo of the other citizens were ſent into captiuitie to CONSTANTINOPLE: the beautifull women and virgins he diuided amongſt his friends and men of warre, certaine choſen paragons of whom, he ſent as preſents to his ſonnes. After he had thus taken his pleaſure in the citie, and left none there but the baſeſt of the people, he put a ſtrong garriſon of his Ianizaries into the caſtle, and a great garriſon of common ſouldiers into the citie, appointing his Admirall to gouerne the ſame. The reſt of the Emperours ſtrong townes, diſcouraged with the taking of TRAPEZOND, and the miſeries therof, in ſhort time ſubmitted themſelues vnto the Turkiſh thraldome, wherein they haue euer ſince moſt miſerably liued. So *Mahomet* in the ſpace of few moneths hauing reduced that empire into the forme of a prouince, returned in great triumph to CONSTANTINOPLE; when he had in this expedition ſubdued PAPHLAGONIA, PONTVS, and a great part of CAPADOCIA, with ſome other prouinces neere vnto the Euxine ſea. When he was come to CONSTANTINOPLE, he ſent the Emperour with his children priſoners to HADRIANOPLE. But afterwards vnderſtanding that the Perſian Queene, the wife of *Vſun-Caſſan*, ſought meanes to get ſome one of her vncles children, whom by the power of her huſband ſhe might if it were poſſible aduance vnto her fathers empire, he ſent for *Dauid* the wofull Emperour to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there cruelly cauſed him,

A him, with all his ſonnes and kinſmen, to be put to death; and to the vttermoſt of his power rooted out all that moſt honourable familie of the *Comneni*, excepting *George* the Emperours youngeſt ſonne, who at his firſt comming to HADRIANOPLE turned Turke: whoſe ſiſter (the Emperours daughter) *Mahomet* afterwards tooke to be one of his concubines. This Chriſtian empire was by the Turkiſh tyrant *Mahomet* thus miſerably ſubuerted and brought to nought in the yeere of our Lord 1461. *The ruine of the empire of Trapezond.*

The yeere following, which was the yeere 1462, *Mahomet* hauing intelligence, that *Wladus* 1462.
Dracula Prince of VALACHIA, his tributary, was reſolued to caſt from him his obedience, and *Mahomet ſeeketh to entrap Wladus Prince of Valachia.*
to ioyne himſelfe vnto the Hungarians, his mortall enemies; thought it beſt to proue if he could
B by policie circumuent him, before he were altogether fallen from him. For which purpoſe he ſent *Catabolinus* his principall ſecretarie vnto him to bring him to the court, promiſing him greater fauours & promotions from the Emperor, than he had as yet at any time enioyed. And by the ſame truſtie meſſenger, he commanded *Chamuzes Baſſa*, gouernour of BIDINA and the countrey lying ouer againſt VALACHIA, on the other ſide of Danubius, to doe his vttermoſt deuoire for the entrapping of *Wladus*: promiſing him great rewards if he could bring the matter to effect. Whereupon *Chamuzes* deuiſed with the ſecretarie, that when he had done his meſſage to the Prince, and with all his cunning perſwaded him to take that iourney vpon him, he ſhould ſecretly beforehand giue notice vnto him of the certaine day of his returne backe againe from the Prince: at which time it was like, that *Wladus* would in courteſie of himſelfe bring the
C ſecretarie well on his way, being a man of ſo great account in the court, or at leaſtwiſe not refuſe ſo to doe, being thereto requeſted by the ſecretarie: at which time the Baſſa ſecretly paſſing ouer Danubius with certaine troupes of horſemen, and lying cloſe in ambuſh vpon the way, ſhould ſuddenly ſet vpon the Prince, & ſo either take him, or elſe kill him. The plot thus laied, and euery circumſtance agreed vpon, the ſecretarie held on his way; and comming to the Prince, forced his wit to perſwade him to go to the court: ſometime cunningly extolling the great opinion that *Mahomet* had of his fidelitie and valour; and otherwhiles feeding him with the hope of greater honours and princely preferments he was to receiue at the Emperours hands. But when he had ſaid what he could, he obtained no more of the warie Prince, but good words againe, & that he would in courteſie conduct him on his way vnto the ſide of Danubius. Whereof the ſecretarie
D by ſpeedie meſſengers gaue *Chamuzes* intelligence: who ſecretly paſſing ouer Danubius with certaine troupes of horſemen, and riding a good way into the country, lay in ambuſh vpon the way wherby the Prince with the ſecretarie muſt needs paſſe. According as was before appointed, the ſecretarie accompanied with the Prince, put himſelfe vpon the way, and at the very prefixed time came to the place where *Chamuzes* lay in ambuſh with his horſemen: who ſuddenly ariſing, and on euery ſide aſſailing the Prince, ſlew diuers of his men before they were wel aware of his comming. But *Wladus* being a man of great courage, and better appointed than the Baſſa had ſuppoſed (for he went alwaies attended vpon with a ſtrong guard of valiant and ſtout men) ſo receiued *Chamuzes* & his Turks, that he ſlew many of them, & at length after a hard conflict tooke him with the reſt priſoners: whoſe hands and feet he cauſed to be cut off, and their bodies *Chamuzes Baſſa and the Turks ſecretary hãged*
E afterwards to be thruſt vpon ſharp ſtakes ſet faſt in the ground, to the terror of all that ſaw them: and did the Baſſa ſo much honour, as to hang him and the ſecretarie vpon a gibbet a great deale higher than the other Turks. And not ſatisfied with this reuenge, preſently gathered his forces, & paſſing ouer Danubius into the Turks dominions, burnt all the countrey before him alongſt the riuers ſide, killing man, woman, & child, without mercy: after which great ſpoile & ſlaughter made, he returned againe into VALACHIA. The report of theſe newes being brought to *Mahomet*, ſet him in ſuch a choller and rage, that he commanded the great Baſſa *Mahometes*, which firſt told him thereof, to be cruelly whipt: which ſeruile puniſhment in that tyrannicall gouernment hath vſually beene inflicted euen vpon the greateſt Baſſaes of the court, vpon the leaſt diſpleaſure of the tyrants, eſpecially if they be not naturall Turks borne; accounting the reſt in
F their anger but as their baſe & contemptible ſlaues, as well appeareth by the wofull end of many, euen of the greateſt of them. But when he vnderſtood by moſt ſure aduertiſements that all was as the Baſſa had before reported, or rather worſe, it is not to be in words expreſſed into what a rage he fell: the ſpoile of his countrey grieued him much, but the ſhamefull death of the ſecretarie his embaſſadour, and of *Chamuzes* the Baſſa, tormented his heart, and filled him with indignation & deſire of reuenge. Wherefore with all ſpeed poſſible he aſſembled his ſouldiers

and men of warre, out of all parts of his dominions to PHILIPPOPOLIS: and had in ſhort time G
raiſed ſuch an armie, as the like he had not at any time imployed ſince the winning of CONSTANTINOPLE. At the ſame time alſo, he ſent his Admirall with 25 gallies, and 150 ſaile of other ſmall veſſels by the Euxine, to enter the riuer Danubius, and there landing his men, to ioyne his forces with the Prince of PODOLIA: who for a grudge he bare againſt *Wladus*, had promiſed to aid the Turke againſt him. When all things were now in readineſſe, he marched with his armie from PHILIPPOPOLIS, and paſſing ouer Danubius, entered into VALACHIA; before which time, the Admirall had landed his men, and with the helpe of the Podolian, had burnt the citie of PRAILABA, the greateſt towne of trade in all VALACHIA; and was beſieging CEBIVM, called in ancient time LYCOSTOMOS: where after they had lien a H
while and receiued ſome loſſe, they left the ſiege and departed, the Podolian backe againe into his countrey, and the Admirall to his fleet.

Mahomet himſelfe in perſon inuadeth Valachia.

Mahomet being got ouer Danubius, burnt the villages, draue away the cattell, and made hauocke of all that came in his way. As for priſoners, he tooke but few; for the Valachies before his comming, had retired their wiues and children, and all that were vnfit for warres, either into their ſtrong cities, or into the refuge of great and thicke woods (whereof there is in that countrey plentie) or elſe into the high and rough mountaines, where they were in more ſafetie than in any their ſtrongeſt holds: and all ſuch as were able to beare armes, followed the Prince, who euer kept the woods and mountaines, ſtill following the Turks armie ſo neere as he poſſibly could, with ſafetie; and many times cut off ſuch as ſtragled any thing farre abroad from the ar- I
mie, into the countrey: yet neuer durſt ſhew himſelfe in plaine field, being indeed but a handfull, in compariſon of the Turks multitude. *Mahomet*, to ſmall purpoſe roaming vp and downe the countrey at his pleaſure, ſtaied neuer long in one place; and making no reckoning of ſuch a weake enemy as durſt neuer ſhew himſelfe, pitched his tents ſtill in the open plaines, and ſo lay with his armie in great ſecuritie, not entrenched at all. *Wladus* by his eſpials vnderſtanding of this the manner of *Mahomets* encamping, came in the dead time of the night, and with all his power furiouſly aſſailed that quarter of the Turks campe where the Aſian ſouldiers lay, and ſlew many of them in their tents; the reſt terrified with the ſuddenneſſe of the alarum, fled out of their tents for refuge vnto the Europeian ſouldiers: the Prince following them at the heeles, and entring into that quarter of the campe alſo, did there great harme; and ſtrucke ſuch a gene- K
rall terrour & feare into all the Turks armie, that they were euen vpon the point to haue wholly forſaken their tents and betaken themſelues to flight. Yea *Mahomet* himſelfe, diſmaied with the terrour of the night and tumult of his campe, and fearing leſt the Hungarians had ioyned their forces with the Prince; not knowing which way to turne himſelfe, had vndoubtedly fled, had not *Mahomet Baſſa* a man of great experience in martiall affaires, perſwaded him otherwiſe: and by generall proclamation made thorow the campe, That no man ſhould vpon paine of death, forſake the place wherein he was encamped, ſtaied the flight; and with much adoe enforced them to make head againſt the Prince. *Wladus* perceiuing the Turks now to begin to ſtand vpon their guard, and to make reſiſtance: after great ſlaughter made, returning, tooke the ſpoile of the tents forſaken by the Aſian ſouldiers, and vpon the approach of the day, againe retired with L
victorie into the woods. As ſoone as it was day, *Mahomet* appointed *Haly-Beg* with certaine companies of ſelect ſouldiers, to purſue the Valachies: who ouertaking part of the Princes armie, tooke a thouſand of them priſoners, and put the reſt to flight: all which priſoners were by the tyrants command, preſently put to the ſword. From that time *Mahomet* euery night entrenched his armie, and cauſed better watch and ward to be kept in euery quarter of his campe, than before.

A moſt horrible ſpectacle.

As he marched along the countrey, he came to the place where the Baſſa and the ſecretarie were hanging vpon two high gibbets, and the diſmembred Turks empailed vpon ſtakes about them: with which ſight he was grieuouſly offended. And paſſing on farther, came to a plaine containing in bredth almoſt a mile, and in length two miles, ſet full of gallowes, gibbets, wheels M
ſtakes, and other inſtruments of terrour, death, and torture; all hanging full of the dead carkaſes of men, women, and children, thereupon executed, in number (as was deemed) about twentie thouſand. There was to be ſeene the father, with his wife, children and whole familie, hanging together vpon one gallowes; and the bodies of ſucking babes, ſticking vpon ſharpe ſtakes; others with all their limbes broken vpon wheeles, with many other ſtrange & horrible kinds of death.

A death : ſo that a man would haue thought, that all the torments the Poets faigne to be in hell had beene there put in execution. All theſe were ſuch as the notable, but cruell Prince, iealous of his eſtate, had either for iuſt deſert, or ſome probable ſuſpition, put to death ; & with their goods rewarded his ſouldiers : whoſe cruell manner was, together with the offender to execute the whole familie, yea ſometimes the whole kindred. *Mahomet*, although he was by nature of a fierce and cruell diſpoſition, wondred to ſee ſo ſtrange a ſpectacle of extreme crueltie : yet ſaid no more but that *Wladus* knew how to haue his ſubiects at command. After that, *Mahomet* ſent *Ioſephus*, one of his great captaines, to skirmiſh with the Valachies ; who was by them put to the worſe : but by the comming in of *Omares* the ſonne of *Turechan*, they were againe in a B great skirmiſh ouerthrowne, and two thouſand of their heads brought by the Turks vpon their launces into the Kings campe : for which good ſeruice *Omares* was by the King preferred to be gouernour of THESSALIA.

Two thouſand of the Valachies ſlaine.

When *Mahomet* had thus traced VALACHIA, and hauing done what harme he could, ſaw it to be to no purpoſe, with ſuch a multitude of men to hunt after his flying enemie, which ſtill kept the thicke woods or rough mountaines : he returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, leauing behind him *Haly-beg* with part of his armie, to proſecute that warre ; and with him *Dracula* the younger brother of *Wladus*, who was alſo called *Wladus*, as a ſtale to draw the Valachies into rebellion againſt the Prince. This *Dracula* the younger, was of a little youth brought vp in *Mahomets* court, and for his comely feature of him moſt paſſionatly affected : which inordinate C perturbation, ſo preuailed in the intemperat nature of the laſciuious Prince, that he ſought firſt by faire words and great gifts to corrupt the youth ; and not ſo preuailing, attempted at laſt to haue forced him : wherewith the noble youth being enraged, drew his rapier, and ſtriking at him to haue ſlaine him, grieuouſly wounded him in the thigh : and thereupon fled. Neuertheleſſe being drawne backe againe to the court, and pardoned, he was afterwards reconciled to the King, and ſo became his *Ganimede* ; and was of him long time wonderfully both beloued and honoured, and now ſet vp for a ſtale (as is before ſaid) for the Valachies his countreymen to gaſe vpon.

It fortuned, that after the departure of the King, diuers Valachies came to *Haly-beg* the Turkiſh Generall, to ranſome ſuch friends of theirs as had beene taken priſoners in thoſe wars, and D were yet by him detained : to whom the younger *Dracula* by way of diſcourſe declaring the great power of the Turkiſh Emperour, and as it were lamenting the manifold and endleſſe miſeries of his natiue countrey ; cunningly imputed the ſame vnto the diſordered gouernment of his cruell brother, as the ground of all their woes : aſſuring them of moſt happy and ſpeedy redreſſe, if the Valachies, forſaking his fierce brother, would cleaue vnto him as their ſoueraigne, in ſpeciall fauour with the great Emperour. Which ſpeech, he deliuered vnto them with ſuch liuely reaſons, and in ſuch effectuall tearmes, that they there preſent, perſwaded by him ; and others by them ; in ſhort time all, as if it had been by a ſecret conſent, forſooke *Wladus* the elder brother, and choſe *Dracula* the younger brother to be their Prince and Soueraigne. Who ioyning vnto him the Turks forces, by the conſent of *Mahomet* tooke vpon him the gouernment E of that warlike countrey and people ; yet holding the ſame as the Turkiſh tyrants vaſſaile, the readieſt way to infidelitie. *Wladus* ſeeing himſelfe thus forſaken of all his ſubiects, and his younger brother poſſeſſed of his dominion, fled into TRANSYLVANIA, where he was by the appointment of the Hungarian King apprehended and laid faſt in ſtrait priſon at BELGRADE, for that he had without iuſt cauſe (as it was laid to his charge) moſt cruelly executed diuers Hungarians in VALACHIA : yet ſuch was his fortune, after ten yeeres hard impriſonment, to be againe enlarged, and honourably to die in battaile againſt his ancient enemies the Turks.

The death of Wladus.

Mahomet returning out of VALACHIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, ſent the ſame fleete which he had vſed in his late warres, into the ÆGEVM, to take in ſuch Iſlands as being before vnder the Conſtantinopolitane empire, had vpon the loſſe of the citie put themſelues vnder the F protection of the Venetians ; but eſpecially the Iſle of MITYLENE, called in ancient time LESBOS : pretending that *Nicholaus Cateluſius* Prince thereof, did harbour the pyrats of ITALY, and other places ; & alſo bought of them ſuch priſoners, and other bootie, as they continually tooke from the Turks at ſea, or alongſt the ſea coaſt, out of many places of his dominions : pretending alſo the chaſtiſing of the ſaid Prince, for that he had by treacherie ſlaine his eldeſt brother, and ſo vniuſtly taken vpon him the gouernment. His fleet thus ſet forward, he himſelfe with a

1462

ſmall armie paſſed ouer into ASIA, and came by land to POSSIDIVM a citie of IONIA ouer G
againſt MITYLENE. From whence he embarked himſelfe ouer the narrow ſtrait into the Iſland: where after he had once landed his armie, he in ſhort time ouerran the whole Iſland, & miſerably ſpoiled the ſame, leading away all the inhabitants thereof into captiuitie; who ſhortly after were ſold at CONSTANTINOPLE like flocks of ſheepe, and from thence diſperſed into all parts of his dominions. After he had thus harried the countrey, & left nothing therein vnſpoiled; he beſieged the Prince in the citie of MITYLENE, whereof the Iſland now taketh name: and with his great ordinance continually battered the ſame by the ſpace of 27 dayes. In which time many ſharpe aſſaults were alſo giuen by the Turks, whereby the defendants were greatly diminiſhed and waſted. The Prince perceiuing himſelfe not able long to hold out, offered to H
yeeld vp the citie, with all the ſtrong holds in the Iſle, vpon condition, that *Mahomet* ſhould therefore giue vnto him ſome other prouince, of like value to the Iſland: which his offer *Mahomet* accepted, and by ſolemne oath bound himſelfe for performance of that he had promiſed. Whereupon the Prince came out of the citie, and humbled himſelfe before him, excuſing himſelfe for the receiuing of the men of warre (where with he was charged) as done for no other purpoſe, but that they ſhould forbeare to ſpoile his owne countrey, much ſubiect to their furie: vtterly denying that he had at any time bought, or ſhared, any part of ſuch prizes as had by thoſe pirats by ſea or land beene taken from the Turks. With which his excuſe, *Mahomet* ſeemed to be reaſonably well contented, and with good words cheered him vp: neuertheleſſe, as ſoone as the citie, with all the other ſtrong holds in the Iſle, were by the Princes meanes deliuered into I
his hands, he no longer made reckoning of his Turkiſh faith, but cruelly cauſed many of the chiefe citizens of MITYLENE to be put to death; and three hundred pirats, whom he found in the citie, to be cut in two peeces in the middle, ſo to die with more paine. And when he had placed conuenient garriſons in euery ſtrong hold in the Iſle, he returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, carrying away with him the Prince, and all the better ſort of the inhabitants of MITYLENE, that were left aliue, together with all the wealth of that moſt rich and pleaſant Iſland; leauing it almoſt deſolate, none remaining therein more than his owne garriſons, with a few of the pooreſt and baſeſt people. *Mahomet* after he was arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE, caſt the Prince *Nicholaus*, with *Lucius* his coſin (whoſe helpe he had before vſed in killing of his elder brother) into cloſe priſon: where they ſeeing themſelues euery houre in danger of their liues, to K
winne fauour in the tyrants ſight, wickedly offered to renounce the Chriſtian religion, and to turne Turke. Which *Mahomet* vnderſtanding, cauſed them both to be richly apparelled, and with great triumph to be circumciſed, and preſently ſet at libertie: yet ſtill bearing in minde his old grudge, he ſhortly after, when they leaſt feared any ſuch matter, clapt them both faſt againe in priſon, and there cauſed them to be moſt cruelly put to death. A iuſt reward for the bloudie murtherers, and apoſtacie, who to gaine a little longer life, went content to forſake God.

Mitylene beſieged.

Mitylene yeelded to the Turke.

1464 Shortly after it fortuned, that *Stephen* King of BOSNA (in ancient time called MÆSIA SVPERIOR) who ſupported by the Turkiſh Emperor, had wrongfully obtained that kingdom againſt his owne brethren, refuſed now to pay ſuch yeerely tribute as he had before promiſed: for L
which cauſe *Mahomet* with a ſtrong armie entered into BOSNA, and laid ſiege vnto the citie of DOROBIZA: which when he had with much adoe taken, he diuided the people thereof into three parts; one part whereof he gaue as ſlaues vnto his men of warre; another part he ſent vnto CONSTANTINOPLE; and the third he left to inhabit the citie. From DOROBIZA he marched to IAZIGA, now called IAICA, the chiefe citie of that kingdome, which after foure moneths ſiege was deliuered vnto him by compoſition: In this citie he tooke the Kings brother and ſiſter priſoners, with moſt of the nobilitie of that kingdome, whom he ſent as it were in triumph vnto CONSTANTINOPLE. The other leſſer cities of BOSNA following the example of the greater, yeelded themſelues alſo. But *Mahomet* vnderſtanding that the King of BOSNA had retired himſelfe into the fartheſt part of his kingdome, ſent *Mahometes* his chiefe Baſſa with his Europeian M
ſouldiers to purſue him: wherin the Baſſa vſed ſuch diligence, that he had on euery ſide ſo incloſed him before he was aware, that he could by no meanes eſcape, which was before thought a thing impoſſible. So the King for ſafegard of his life was faine to take the citie of CLYSSA for his refuge: where he was ſo hardly laid to by the Baſſa, that ſeeing no other remedie, he offered to yeeld himſelfe vpon the Baſſaes faithfull promiſe by oath confirmed, that he ſhould be honorably

A bly vſed, and not to receiue in his perſon any harme frō the Turkiſh Emperor. Whereupon the Baſſaes oath to the ſame purpoſe was with great ſolemnitie taken; and for the more aſſurance conceiued in writing, firmed by the Baſſa, and ſo deliuered to the King: which done, the King came out of the citie and yeelded himſelfe. The Baſſa hauing thus taken the King priſoner, carried him about with him from place to place, & from citie to citie, vntill he had taken poſſeſſion of all the kingdome of Bosna; and ſo returning vnto his maſter, preſented vnto him the captiue King: who was not a little offended with him, for that he had vnto him ſo farre engaged his Turkiſh faith. But when the poore King thought to haue departed, not greatly fearing further harme, he was ſuddenly ſent for by *Mahomet*: at which time, he doubting the worſt, caried with
B him in his hand the writing wherein the Baſſaes oath for his ſafetie was compriſed: neuertheleſſe, the faithleſſe tyrant without any regard thereof, or of his faith therein giuen, cauſed him preſently to be moſt cruelly put to death, or as ſome write, to be flaine quicke. Thus was the Chriſtian kingdome of Bosna ſubuerted by *Mahomet* in the yeere 1464: who after he had at his pleaſure diſpoſed thereof, and reduced it into the forme of a prouince to be (as it is at this day) gouerned by one of his Baſſaes; in great triumph returned to Constantinople, carrying away with him many a wofull Chriſtian captiue, and the whole wealth of that kingdome.

Mahomet following the example of his father *Amurath*, had from the beginning of his raigne by one or other of his great Baſſaes or expert captains ſtill maintained wars againſt *Scanderbeg*, the moſt valiant & fortunate King of Epirvs: the greateſt part whereof, although it did in the
C courſe of time concurre with the things before declared, and might by peecemeale haue beene amongſt the ſame in their due time and place inſerted; yet I haue of purpoſe for diuers reaſons wholly reſerued them for this place: Firſt, for that I would not interrupt the courſe of the hiſtorie before rehearſed, with the particular accidents of this warre: And then, for that the greateſt heat of this hereditarie warre, deliuered as it were from hand to hand from the father to the ſon, happened not long after this time; when as *Mahomet* hauing conquered the kingdome of Bosna, had ſurrounded a great part of *Scanderbegs* dominion: wherein I had reſpect alſo vnto the Readers eaſe, who may with greater pleaſure and content, and leſſe paines alſo, view the ſame together, than if it had beene diſperſedly ſcattered and intermedled with the other greater occurrents of the ſame time. In which diſcourſe I will but briefly touch many things well wor-
D thie of a larger treatiſe. And if forgetting my ſelfe, I ſhall in ſome places happen to ſtay ſomething longer than the Readers haſt would require; yet I hope, that the zeale and loue he beareth vnto the worthy memorie of moſt famous Chriſtian Princes, together with the ſhortneſſe of the hiſtorie, in compariſon of that which is thereof written in iuſt volumes by others, ſhall eaſily excuſe a larger diſcourſe than this. But againe to our purpoſe.

The great warr betwixt Mahomet and Scanderbeg, are at large written by Marinus Barletius, in 13. bookes, De vita & geſtis Scanderbegi, from whence this Hiſtorie is taken: and were done betwixt the yeeres 1450 and 1467.

Vide Marinum Barletium lib. de vita & geſtis Scanderbegi.

Mahomet in the beginning of his raigne ſent embaſſadours to *Scanderbeg*, offering him peace, ſo that he would grant to pay vnto him ſuch yeerely tribute as his father *Amurath* had in his life time demanded. Which embaſſage the craftie tyrant ſent rather to proue what confidence *Scanderbeg* had in himſelfe, than for any hope he had to haue his demand granted. This diſhonourably offered peace *Scanderbeg* ſcornfully reiected, and ſo returned the embaſſadors as they
E came: and preſently vpon their departure entered with his horſemen into that part of the Turks dominion which bordereth vpon Epirvs: & when he had waſted the countrey, returned home laded with the ſpoile thereof. In reuenge of which deſpight, *Mahomet* ſhortly after ſent *Ameſa* one of his beſt men of warre, with twelue thouſand horſemen into Epirvs, to requite *Scanderbeg* with the like ſpoile of his people and countrey. But *Scanderbeg* vnderſtanding by his eſpials of the Turks comming, lay cloſe in ambuſh with ſix thouſand ſouldiers vpon the great mountaine Modrissa, ouer which the Turks muſt of neceſſitie take their way: and as they were about by night to haue paſſed ouer that rough and ſteepe mountaine, and were with much difficultie almoſt got vp to the top thereof, they were ſuddenly charged by *Scanderbeg* his footmen, who hauing the aduantage of the place, made great ſlaughter of the Turks, & draue thē downe
F the mountaine amaine; at which time their horſes ſtood them in no ſtead at all, but were rather vnto them an hinderance in that vneuen and troubleſome ground. Now when the Turks were come to the foot of the mountaine, they were in that great feare and diſorder againe fiercely aſſailed on the one ſide by *Scanderbeg*, & on the other by his nephew, called alſo *Ameſa*; who before the Turks comming had placed themſelues with their horſemen in places of moſt aduantage: ſo that the Turks hardly beſet and forced on euery ſide, were in ſhort time ouerthrowne

and put to flight. In this conflict ſeuen thouſand of the Turks were ſlaine, and *Ameſa* Generall G
of the Turks armie with diuers other captains taken, whom *Scanderbeg* ſent priſoners to CROIA.
For ioy of this victorie at *Scanderbeg* his returne, great triumph & feaſting was made at CROIA:
During which time, *Scanderbeg* cauſed *Ameſa* the Turke, with the reſt of the Turkiſh captaines,
to be enlarged, to be partakers of that ioy, whereof they againſt their wils had giuen the occaſi-
on; and afterwards vſed them with all kind of courteſie during the time of their abode. This
Ameſa requeſted of *Scanderbeg*, That he might ſend a meſſenger to CONSTANTINOPLE, to
certifie *Mahomet* how the caſe ſtood with him & the reſt, whom happily he might thinke to haue
beene ſlaine in the battaile; and to procure from him their ranſome. Which his requeſt *Scander-*
beg eaſily granted, and ſet downe their ranſome at thirteene thouſand duckats. The newes of H
this ouerthrow ſore greeued the Turkiſh tyrant, but afterwards when he ſaw the remainder of
his armie without their Generall & leaders, hauing for moſt part loſt their enſignes and armour,
and alſo the meſſenger that was ſent from *Ameſa*, he fell into ſuch a rage, that he denied to giue
any thing at all for his ranſome: imputing all that loſſe to his treacherie, follie, or cowardiſe.
Howbeit he was afterwards perſwaded by his Baſſaes & other great courtiers, *Ameſa* his friends,
to thinke better of the Generall, of whoſe faithfulneſſe and valour he had of long time had great
experience, and alſo to ſend his ranſome: by denying whereof, he ſhould (as they ſaid) diſcou-
rage his other Generals and captaines, who by chance of warre might hap to fall into the like
danger. By whoſe perſwaſion *Mahomet* ſent an embaſſadour to *Scanderbeg*, with the ranſome
demanded, and other great preſents alſo. Vpon receit whereof, *Ameſa* with the other captaines I
were ſet at libertie, and ſent with ſafe conuoy out of EPIRVS. All the money ſent for the Turks
ranſome, *Scanderbeg* diuided amongſt his captaines and ſouldiers.

This late receiued ouerthrow filled the proud tyrant with deſire of reuenge, ſo that he deter-
mined forthwith to ſend another armie into EPIRVS: the leading whereof, diuers of his great
and moſt expert captains ambitiouſly ſought for. For *Mahomet* had promiſed great rewards and
moſt honourable preferments to him whoſe hap it ſhould be to vanquiſh *Scanderbeg*. Amongſt
the reſt, one *Debreas* (a man for his forwardneſſe & courage, in great fauour with his ſoueraigne)
Debreas ſent with 14000 horſemen to inuade Epirus. by great ſute obtained to haue that charge: promiſing with exceeding confidencie vnto *Maho-*
met, to make a beginning of better ſucceſſe in his warres of EPIRVS, than others thither by him
before ſent: for the accompliſhment whereof he required to haue no greater power than was K
ſent the yeere before. But after that *Ameſa* was returned to the court, and had with long diſ-
courſe ſet forth the vertues and valour of *Scanderbeg*, with the inuincible courage of his ſouldi-
ers, *Debreas* became more temperate in his ſpeech, and was contented to receiue a new ſupplie;
ſo that he had vnder his charge fourteene thouſand ſouldiers: with which armie he marched
towards EPIRVS, and was come to a place called POLOGVS, where he lay with his armie en-
camped in a plaine in great ſecuritie, fearing no danger, for that he was not as yet in the enemies
countrey, neither as he ſuppoſed, neere the enemie. Of all this preparation, and of the comming
of *Debreas*, *Scanderbeg* had intelligence: and being reſolued not to expect the comming of the
Turks into EPIRVS, made choiſe of ſix thouſand of his beſt horſemen; with whom he mar-
ched with as much ſpeed as was poſſible into the enemies countrey, and came by night vnto the L
plaine where the Turks lay, hoping to haue beene vpon them before they were aware, and ſo to
haue ouerthrowne them. Wherin he was much deceiued: for by the light of the Moone (which
then ſhined all night) he was by the Turks in time deſcried, yet the ſuddenneſſe of his approach
with the ſtrangeneſſe of the attempt, exceedingly diſmaied the whole armie of the Turks. But
Debreas mindfull of the promiſe he had made vnto his lord & maſter, with cheerfull words en-
couraged his ſouldiers, and preſently ſent out certaine troupes of light horſemen, to receiue the
firſt charge of the enemie, vntill he might ſet his whole armie in order of battaile. Betwixt theſe
A skirmiſh betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turks. troupes, and others ſent out by *Scanderbeg*, began a ſharpe skirmiſh; both the armies ſtanding
faſt, as beholders, carefully expecting the euent thereof. But *Scanderbeg* doubting, that if his ſoul-
diers ſhould in this firſt encounter be put to the worſe, it might tend to the great diſcouraging M
of the reſt of his armie; ſeconded his men with other freſh troups vnder the leading of *Moſes* and
Ameſa: by whoſe comming in, the Turks were forthwith beaten backe, and chaſed euen to their
maine battaile. In the heat of which chaſe, *Moſes* forgetting himſelfe, had with great danger in
following on too faſt, beene encloſed by the Turks, had not his furie beene in good time ſtaied
by *Ameſa*: for which ouerſight, he was afterward blamed by *Scanderbeg*, that he could not

with

A with greater moderation vſe his good fortune; commending ſuch forwardneſſe in a priuat ſouldier, but not in ſo great a commander. When *Moſes* and *Ameſa* had thus put the Turks to flight, *Scanderbeg* brought on his whole armie, and fiercely aſſailed the Turks, yet troubled with the diſcomfiture of their fellowes. *Debreas* on the other ſide, with cheerefull ſpeech, & his owne valour, ſo encouraged his ſouldiers, that *Scanderbeg* was there notably reſiſted, and his fortune as it were at a ſtand: vntill that *Muſachius*, with certaine troupes of reſolute men, drawne out of the left wing of *Scanderbeg* his armie, gaue ſuch a fierce charge vpon the ſide of the Turks armie, that he brake their rankes, and ſore diſordered that part of the armie. Which when *Debreas* perceiued, he withdrew himſelfe out of the front of the battaile wherein he had valiantly ſtood
B againſt *Scanderbeg*, and came to the place where *Muſachius* had diſordered the battaile, and with ſuch courage cheared vp his troubled ſouldiers, that his onely preſence and valour ſeemed to be the very life and heart of his whole armie. Whileſt *Debreas* was thus buſied againſt *Muſachius*, *Scanderbeg* in the meane time with might and maine ſtill charged the front of the enemies armie: who now in the abſence of the Generall began to looſe their order and to giue ground, making no ſuch reſiſtance as before. At which time, *Moſes* forcibly breaking into the thickeſt of them, tooke one of their enſignes, which he threw backe amongſt his followers: wherewith they encouraged, ſo preſſed vpon their enemies, without regard of danger, that the Turks being therewith diſcouraged, and their battaile diſordered, were almoſt ready to turne their backs and to flie. *Debreas* ſeeing all in danger to be loſt, haſted with all ſpeed vnto the place
C where he ſaw moſt perill, and did what was poſſible to haue reſtored the battaile, and encouraged his ſouldiers: where preſſing in amongſt the formoſt, he was by *Scanderbeg* himſelfe encountered hand to hand, and ſo by him ſlaine: with whoſe fall the whole armie diſcouraged, without further reſiſtance fled. *Moſes* purſuing them on the one ſide, & *Muſachius* on the other, with furious hand ſlew more in that chaſe than were ſlaine in the battaile. Of the Turks were ſlaine in this battaile 4120, and ſome priſoners taken, but of the Chriſtians few or none: ſo that for the good fortune thereof, *Scanderbeg* accounted it a victorie giuen. All the ſpoile taken from the enemie, together with the priſoners, was by *Scanderbeg* equally diuided amongſt the ſouldiers. Vnto *Moſes* he gaue *Debreas* his horſe and armour: and vnto *Muſachius* a priſoner, which by his port and behauiour ſeemed to be a man of ſome good account. This Turke agreed with *Mu-*
D *ſachius* vpon a ranſome of two hundred duckats, and preſently vpon agreement made, drew forth the money out of a little bag which he had kept ſecretly about him, and offered it to *Muſachius* for his ranſome: who receiuing the money, told the Turke, that he muſt prouide another ranſome, foraſmuch as that money was his owne before by law of armes, as taken with his perſon. The Turke on the other ſide alledged for himſelfe, the agreement alreadie made, with the paiment of the full ſumme agreed vpon. This controuerſie was brought before *Scanderbeg*: who with great pleaſure heard them both what they could ſay: *Muſachius* laying in hard for another ranſome, and the Turke for his libertie vrging the agreement. Who when they had both ſaid what they could for themſelues, *Scanderbeg* ſmiling, told them, that they both contended for that which was in right his, and neither of theirs: for the priſoner with the money were both
E mine (ſaid he) at the firſt taking of him; ſince which time I haue giuen to you *Muſachius* the priſoner, which I knew, but not the money which I knew not of: neither doth the concealing thereof make it yours (ſaid he to the Turke) who had by law of armes loſt your ſelfe, together with all that you had about you. After he had thus pleaſantly diſcourſed of the matter, and brought them both in doubt, he awarded vnto *Muſachius* the money he agreed for, and to the Turke his deſired libertie: who glad thereof, and hauing alſo receiued his horſe and armour of the gift of *Scanderbeg*, departed, ſpeaking all the honour he could of ſo noble a conquerour. After this victorie *Scanderbeg* with great triumph returned againe to CROIA.

The battell betwixt Scanderbeg & Debreas.

Debreas ſlaine by Scanderbeg, and his armie ouerthrowne.

A pleaſant contention betwixt Muſachius and a Turke for his ranſome.

When *Mahomet* vnderſtood that *Debreas* was ſlaine, and his armie ouerthrowne, he became exceeding melancholie: but after he ſaw ſo many of his ſouldiers returned as had beene ſuffi-
F cient to haue reſtored a loſt battaile, he was ſo highly diſpleaſed with their cowardiſe, as that he could not endure the ſight of them. The death of *Debreas* greeued none more than the King himſelfe: for the captaines generally either enuied at his hardineſſe, or elſe hated his inſolencie. *Ameſa* amongſt the reſt tooke no ſmall pleaſure, that his proud ſucceſſour had taken part of his euill fortune, and ſo in part eaſed his former infamie. The great Baſſaes and men of warre ſeeing their ſoueraigne ſo deſirous of reuenge, offered to ſpend their liues in that ſeruice: whoſe forwardneſſe

wardneſſe he ſeemed not to refuſe: howbeit he had in his mind already plotted another manner G
of reuenge. He was not ignorant, what great matters his father *Amurath* had brought to paſſe, by ſowing diſcord amongſt the Princes of GRÆCIA: which foule practiſe he purpoſed now to put in practiſe himſelfe. There were at that time many famous chieftaines in EPIRVS, of *Scanderbeg* both beloued & truſted; amongſt whom, he was in hope to find ſome one who for deſire of wealth or promotion, might be allured to giue ſome deſperat attempt againſt the life or ſtate of *Scanderbeg*. Of all others, *Moſes Golemus* of DIBRA (a man honourably deſcended) was moſt inward with *Scanderbeg*, and for his proweſſe and experience in martiall affaires, of all men accounted the beſt captaine in all EPIRVS, next vnto *Scanderbeg* himſelfe: him, the craftie ty-
rant moſt deſired to alienat from *Scanderbeg*, as one fitteſt to ſerue his purpoſe, and eaſieſt with- H
out ſuſpition to be dealt withall, becauſe he commonly lay with a ſtrong garriſon in DIBRA, vp-
on the very frontiers of EPIRVS. Wherefore he directed his letters vnto the gouernour of SPE-
TIGRADE, commanding him by all meanes he could poſſibly deuiſe to withdraw *Moſes* from *Scanderbeg*; and not to ſpare for any gold or golden promiſes whereby to allure him: promiſing alſo vnto the gouernour himſelfe great preterments, if he could winne him. Vpon receit of which letters, the gouernour began forthwith carefully to deuiſe, how he might beſt attempt the matter he had in charge: where after many deuiſes, he at laſt thought vpon a ſhrewd-headed fellow, one of the Chriſtians which dwelt in SPETIGRADE; whom for that he was a Chriſtian, he might without ſuſpect vſe as an inſtrument in ſo dangerous and important an action. This
Chriſtian the gouernour called vnto him, and after he had with great gifts and large promiſes I
woon him to vndertake the matter; he ſent him away, fully before armed with plenteous inſtru-
ctions, full of treaſon and deceit. When this ſubtill meſſenger was come vnto *Moſes*, and vnder pretence of great & ſecret matters of importance, had obtained to ſpeake with him in priuat: he after ſome diſcourſe had of matters well worth the hearing, began at length vnder the couert of
The craftie proceeding of the Turks meſſenger faire glozing words, to vtter his poiſon: ſhewing vnto him (as a meſſenger from the gouernor) the great and good opinion the Turkiſh Emperor had of long time conceiued of his valour and proweſſe: for which cauſe his heroicall nature could not but honour him, although he were his enemie; and therewith alſo maruell, that he being a man of that worth, could be contented to be commanded by *Scanderbeg*, whoſe ſtate was by him chiefly vpholden: whereas if he would doe wiſely, and changing his affection, follow *Mahomet*, an Emperour of greateſt magnificence K
and power, he ſhould quickly in his court find ſuch honorable entertainment, as were to be pre-
ferred before the ſtate of *Scanderbeg*: or if the ſoueraigntie of EPIRVS his natiue countrey did better pleaſe him, he might eaſily be thereunto aduanced, by ioyning his owne endeuour vnto *Mahomets* great power. It pleaſed *Moſes* well to heare his owne praiſes (a thing incident vnto hautie minds) and he liked well that he was ſo fauoured of the Turkiſh Emperor: but the hope of the kingdome of EPIRVS began to worke in him new conceits, and moued him more than all the reſt. Such is the force of ambitious thoughts, that they make a man forget all things, ſaue themſelues: ſo glorious a thing it is, to ſtand in the higheſt place. For all that, *Moſes* neither in word or countenance made any ſemblant of liking, or diſliking the meſſage. Which the wily
meſſenger taking for a ſecret conſent, and heartily glad that he had been ſo well heard: not deſi- L
ring as then any further anſwer, craued leaue to depart; promiſing in ſhort time to returne to him againe. After the departure of this meſſenger, many troubled thoughts began to ariſe in the mind of *Moſes*: his mirth was changed into melancholy, and the cheerfulneſſe of his countenance was abated, his hautie thoughts were his ſolitarie companions, and the imagined kingdome the idoll he in ſecret worſhipped; ſo that in ſhort time, he ſeemed vnto the wiſer ſort as a man altogether metamorphoſed. Some were ſo bold, as for to aske the cauſe of the meſſengers comming? vnto whom he anſwered, That he was one, from whom he receiued intelligence of matters concerning the good of the ſtate: which his anſwer was holden for true; for who durſt once miſtruſt *Moſes*? Whileſt he was thus toſſed vp and downe with his owne thoughts, as
a ſhippe with the billowes of a wrought ſea, the ſame ſlie meſſenger, according to his pro- M
miſe came againe; and for his more credit, in ſecret brought with him ſuch preſents as well might ſeeme to haue beene ſent from the Great Turke; with his meſſage better framed than
Moſes corrupted. before. Of all which that was ſent, *Moſes* is reported to haue receiued nothing but the worſt, which was, the very treaſon it ſelfe. And ſo returned the meſſenger, with anſwer, That he could not but in good part accept of the Turkiſh Emperours great fauours; and for the reſt of his re-

queſts,

A queſts, whatſoeuer he ſhould chance to doe therein, he ſhould not from thenceforth finde him any great enemie: commanding the meſſenger at his departure, no more to repaire vnto him about that matter, for feare of ſuſpicion.

After that, it chanced that *Scanderbeg* came into DIBRA, to ſee how all things ſtood there, and to conſult with *Moſes* for the beſieging of SFETIGRADE; which citie it grieued him to ſee in the poſſeſſion of the Turks. *Moſes* to auert *Scanderbeg* from that enterpriſe, wherein he muſt of force be driuen to ſhew himſelfe, told him, That he vnderſtood of late by a certaine meſſenger which came to him out of SFETIGRADE, that the citie was ſo well ſtored by the Turks, of all things neceſſarie for the defence thereof, that it were but loſt labour to attempt any
B thing againſt the ſame: wherefore he aduiſed him rather to beſiege BELGRADE (not that BELGRADE which is ſituated vpon the riuer of Danubius, but another of the ſame name) in the confines of EPIRVS, then holden by the Turks, but diſtant from SFETIGRADE about an hundred and fortie miles; of the taking whereof, there ſeemed to be more hope. By this perſwaſion, *Scanderbeg* reſolued with himſelfe to make prouiſion for the beſieging of BELGRADE. And foraſmuch as his ſouldiers of EPIRVS alwayes vſed to the field, were not ſo fit for the beſieging of townes, he thought it good to pray aid out of ITALY, from his old friend *Alphonſus* King of NAPLES, with whom he had beene of long time acquainted, and vnto him much beholden. Wherefore he ſent two of his noblemen embaſſadours vnto him, with certaine rich preſents, and familiar letters of this purport.

Scanderbeg craueth aid of Alphonſus King of Naples.

C

Our ſouldiers of EPIRVS, *know only how to fight with men, and them to vanquiſh: with wals they know not how to deale. You Italians (as I vnderſtand) haue skill in that kind of ſeruice, and take pleaſure therein: wherefore now at this preſent, I haue need of your helpe and cunning. There be certaine townes of our enemies in* EPIRVS, *yea almoſt in the heart of our kingdome; which eye ſore I haue of long deſired (if it pleaſed God) to take out of my ſight: but being occupied with continuall wars, had no leiſure vntill now, happily to attempt any thing againſt them. This time I haue choſen as moſt fit, to ſatisfie my deſire, both for the ſeaſonableneſſe of the time of the yeere, and for that* Mahomet *ſpareth me leiſure; whoſe furie I haue twice calmed. You vnderſtand in few words, what I haue need of: all other things are almoſt in readineſſe, and we only looke for your helpe. Lend me ſuch ſouldiers as*
D *know how to fight a farre off, I meane harquebuſiers and canoniers, for of others we haue ſtore plentie. But happie is* APVLIA, *my* Alphonſus, *vnder thy gouernment, from whence men fit for all ſeruices may be drawne as out of a moſt plentifull treaſurie. Whenſoeuer we haue requeſted men fit for ſeruice, either in peace or warre, you haue beautified both our court and campe. By you the kingdome of* EPIRVS *hath beene ſupported with ciuill policie, and warlike ſtrength: all ſort of people, of what condition ſoeuer: yea euery corner of* EPIRVS *ſoundeth forth thy praiſe, both at home and abroad. But for mine owne part, I doe ſo louingly embrace your kindneſſe, and ſo firmly retaine the remembrance of your deſerts towards me, that ſometime I wiſh you that fortune (although in ſo doing I may ſeeme vnkinde) which (as the common ſaying is) proueth, but getteth not friends: to the intent, that you might by ſome more certaine proofe know, how much I am to you deuoted.*

E

When *Scanderbeg* had ſent away his embaſſadours, he with all diligence began to prouide things neceſſarie for the ſiege of BELGRADE: wherein he had purpoſed alſo to haue vſed the ſeruice of *Moſes*. But he now in heart a traitor both to his Prince and countrey, and a friend to *Mahomet*, found many excuſes to ſtay at home in DIBRA: alleadging firſt, that it was to be thought, that ſo ſoone as the Turkiſh King ſhould heare of the ſiege of BELGRADE, he would inuade ſome part of EPIRVS, thereby to withdraw his enemies from the ſiege: and then, that no part of all EPIRVS lay neerer vnto the Turks, or more in danger, than DIBRA; and that therefore he could not doe any better ſeruice, than to ſee vnto the ſafetie of that countrey, long before committed to his charge, and in which alſo moſt part of his liuing lay. Theſe his excu-
F ſes, proceeding indeed from deepe treaſon, were yet neuertheleſſe thought reaſonable, and he for his prouident care highly commended; and authoritie giuen him with new ſupplies to augment the garriſon vnder his command, as time and occaſion ſhould require.

By that time that *Scanderbeg* had fully made his preparation for the intended ſiege, the embaſſadours before ſent to *Alphonſus*, were returned into EPIRVS, and with them ſuch aid as *Scanderbeg* had before requeſted, and a great deale more: For *Alphonſus* fearing the greatneſſe of

Alphonſus ſendeth aid vnto Scanderbeg.

of the Turkiſh Emperour, in what he could furthered *Scanderbeg* his actions, reckoning EPIRVS G
not aboue 60 miles diſtant frō his dominions, to be the ſtrongeſt wals of his kingdome in APVLIA (as not many yeeres after, it by proofe appeared, when as the Turks hauing taken OTRANTO put all ITALY in no ſmall feare.) With this aid he alſo wrote louing letters vnto *Scanderbeg*, thanking him for his preſents, and for the good opinion he had of him, willing him to make as bold of all his things, as of his owne. But when he came to make mention of the ſouldiers he had ſent; *Alphonſus*, after the manner of his pleaſant nature, merrily wrote vnto *Scanderbeg*, That he had ſent him Italian ſouldiers which could according to his deſire, fight well both with men and wals; but better with women: and that therefore the Epirots were beſt to take heed, that they whoſe helpe they required for fight a farre off, proued not alſo good warriours at hand H
at home in their houſes. The great commendation *Scanderbeg* had giuen of the King, was by him referred vnto the exceſſe of his loue, and by the King requited with like.

Scanderbeg beſiegeth and diſtreſſeth Belgrade.

Scanderbeg now furniſhed with all things needfull, ſet forward, and according to his former determination, came and encamped before BELGRADE, with an army of fourteene thouſand good ſouldiers: and in ſhort time had ſo diſtreſſed the citie, that the Turks were glad to take truce with him for ſixteene daies, which time expired, they promiſed to deliuer vp the towne, if they were not before relieued. Vpon concluſion of this truce, *Scanderbeg* encamped himſelfe vpon an high hill neere vnto the citie, with three thouſand horſe, and a thouſand foot; and appointed *Muſachius* and *Tanuſius*, with the reſt of the armie, to remoue farther off into a large plaine, where they might encampe themſelues in a more wholſome and freſh aire, in that hoat I
ſeaſon of the yeere, during the time of the truce. At which time he appointed alſo 25 ſcouts to keepe continuall watch vpon the top of the higheſt mountaine, to diſcouer a farre off the comming of the enemie, & to giue warning thereof vnto the campe by making a fire vpon the mountaine: by the negligence of which watch, *Scanderbeg* receiued a great ouerthrow, as hereafter followeth.

The newes of the ſiege of BELGRADE was brought vnto *Mahomet*, at ſuch time as he was ready to haue paſſed into ASIA againſt the Emperour of TRAPEZOND: which great enterpriſe he was loath to giue ouer, for the reliefe of BELGRADE; and yet to loſe that citie vnto *Scanderbeg*, grieued him much: wherfore he reſolued with himſelfe ſo to do the one, as that he would not altogether neglect the other. And ſo holding on his intended iourney into ASIA himſelfe, K
with ſuch fortune as is aforeſaid, he ſent *Sebalias* one of his great Baſſaes, with fortie thouſand horſemen to releeue BELGRADE, promiſing him great rewards if he could bring him *Scanderbeg* either aliue or dead. This Baſſa was of the Turks accounted for a warie captaine, but not ſo couragious, alwaies more politike than forward: he hauing receiued his charge, ſet forward with all ſpeed poſſible, no leſſe carefull of that he was commanded, than was *Mahomet* himſelfe, and by great iournies came on ſo faſt, that he ſtill preuented the fame of his comming; and by his forerunners intercepted, or rather (as ſome write) corrupted the watch which *Scanderbeg* had before placed vpon the mountaines; ſo that no ſigne was giuen vnto the campe of the enemies, as was expected. By meanes whereof, *Sebalias* with all his power were vpon that part of *Scanderbeg* his armie, which lay in the plaines, before they were well aware of his comming: ſo that L
moſt part of them had not ſo much leiſure as to bridle their horſes, or to put on their armour. In which ſo ſudden a feare, *Muſachius* armed himſelfe, and put his ſouldiers in ſuch order as the ſhortneſſe of the time and the enemies approach would permit; doubting much, whether it were better to fight or to flie: but ſeeing no leſſe danger in flight than in fight, he reſolutely receiued the enemies charge, as a man deſirous before hand to reuenge his owne death. And at length (ſeeing his men ſlaine about him by heapes, and that courage muſt needs giue place vnto fortune) fiercely attempted to haue broken thorow the middeſt of his enemies, and ſo to haue fled vnto the mountaine where *Scanderbeg* lay: but he was ſo beſet, that no way was poſſible to be made; wherefore reſoluing there to die, he deſperatly fought, to the great admiration of his

Muſachius ſlain and the Epirots put to flight.

enemies, vntill that he, with all there with him, were euery man ſlaine. *Tanuſius* on the other M
ſide, after he had giuen diuers braue attempts to haue reſcued his coſin *Muſachius*, finding by proofe, that he could doe him no more good therein but to become the wofull companion of his death, exhorted all the reſt yet left, for ſafegard of their liues to flie: in which doing, moſt of them were ſlaine, for the Baſſaes great armie ſo filled all places thereabout, and ſo eagerly purſued the victorie, that it was almoſt impoſſible any way to ſcape. *Scanderbeg* lying vpon the

moun-

A mountaine, and ſeeing the ouerthrow of moſt part of his army, was about many times to haue deſcended from the hill, to haue holpen them in what he might, or els to haue there died with them: but yet ſtayed, being thereto earneſtly requeſted by his other moſt expert captaines; and perſwaded, not deſperately to thruſt both himſelfe and them all into the manifeſt perill of aſſured death. *Scanderbeg ſeeth his men ſlaine, and is not able to releeue them.*

Sebalias hauing ſlaine *Muſachius*, and put *Tanuſius* to flight, followed the chaſe with the greateſt part of his army, ſo that few were left in the great plaine, except ſuch as ſtayed to rifle the dead. *Scanderbeg* taking that oportunitie, came downe from the hill whereon he ſtood, with his foure thouſand ſoldiers, and in a moment ſlew all ſuch Turkes as he found in his way: and after
B following in the taile of the Turkes army, cut off a great number of them, and brought a generall feare vpon the whole army: inſomuch, that *Sebalias* perceiuing that he gained not ſo much in chaſing of *Tanuſius*, but that he loſt more in the rereward of his army, by the purſuit of *Scanderbeg*, left the chaſe, and turned vpon his fierce enemy: Where after a ſharpe skirmiſh begun, the warie Baſſa fearing in the maintaining of that diſordered fight to haue the victory wrung out of his hands by *Scanderbeg*, cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, ſo to call together his diſperſed ſouldiers, and in better order to encounter his dangerous enemy. *Scanderbeg* in the meane time hauing aſſembled the remainder of his army, valiantly again encoũtred the Turks, who thought in this battel to haue made an end of the warres in EPIRVS: and with his owne hand ſlew *Achmat* and *Barach*, two valiant ſouldiours of the Turkes; which like ſtout champions had before
C ſworne vnto *Mahomet* the death of *Scanderbeg*, if they ſhould chance to meet with him. In this laſt skirmiſh a great number of the Turks were ſlain: but night drawing on, *Sebalias* retired with his army to a mountaine neere vnto the citie, and *Scanderbeg* likewiſe to another almoſt two miles off: and in the dead time of the night riſing with his army, returned in ſafetie into EPIRVS, leauing ſtrong gariſons vpon all the ſtrait paſſages as he went, for feare leaſt the Baſſa proud of this victory, ſhould forthwith breake into EPIRVS. This was the onely and greateſt ouerthrow that *Scanderbeg* had hitherto receiued of the Turkes: wherein he loſt two thouſand horſemen and three thouſand foot (moſt part whereof were of the Italians ſent from king *Alphonſus*) together with his tents and great artillery, and about eightie of his men taken priſoners. And of the Turks were alſo ſlaine three thouſand. *Scanderbeg flieth by night into Epirus.*

D The next day *Sebalias* perceiuing that *Scanderbeg* was retired, commanded the bodies of the ſlaine Turks to be ſought out and buried: but of ſuch Chriſtians as the yet found breathing, the Turks cut off their hands and feet, and ſo left them amongſt the dead. The head of *Muſachius* and of many other the ſlaine Chriſtians, which by their armour or apparell were thought to be of the better ſort, were by the commaundement of *Sebalias* cut off: which becauſe he could not for the diſtance of the place, and heat of the weather, without great annoyance carry with him to CONSTANTINOPLE, as the barbarous manner of the Turks is, he cauſed them to be ſlaine, and ſtuffed with chaffe, and ſo to bee carried as the vaine trophees of his victory. Afterwards, when he had repaired the battered wals of BELGRADE, and put a new ſupply of ſeuen hundred freſh ſoldiors into the citie, beſide the old garriſon therin before, and ſet all things in good
E order, he returned with great triumph to CONSTANTINOPLE. And the more to ſet out the the glory of his victory, at ſuch time as he entred the cittie, he firſt cauſed the captiue Chriſtians to be led in chaines before him; after whom were borne the enſignes taken from the Chriſtians, with the aforeſaid heads thruſt vpon lances, and after them all the ſpoyle: laſt of all came *Sebalias* himſelfe, with his ſoldiours, as great conquerours, and was of the people receiued with ſuch applauſe and joy, as if he had conquered ſome great kingdome. No man was now ſpoken of but *Sebalias*, his praiſes were in euery mans mouth, he was the onely man (as they ſaid) that did ſhew that *Scanderbeg* was to be ouercome: no preferment was now thought too great for him, or reward ſufficient to counteruail his deſert. The poore Chriſtian captiues were afterwards for the moſt part ſold: of the reſt, ſome were aliue thruſt vpon ſharp ſtakes, ſome hanged vpon iron
F hookes, ſome otherwiſe cruelly at the victors pleaſure tortured to death.

Moſes lately before corrupted by the practiſe of the gouernour of SPETIGRADE, hearing of the great loſſe *Scanderbeg* had receiued at BELGRADE, thought it now a moſt fit time for his reuolt. But for as much as the fact, in the nature of it ſelfe foule, ſeemed euen to himſelfe the doer thereof, a great deale fouler and more diſhonourable, for that he had therein no complices: he thought it good, if it were poſſible, to allure ſome others into the fellowſhip of his treaſon, ſo to diminiſh

diminiſh the infamie of himſelfe, in communicating the ſame with many, and to appeare with G
greater credit before the Turkiſh tyrant, than if he ſhould as a contemptible fugitiue come all alone. Wherefore vpon the bad newes from BELGRADE, he ſeemed at the firſt very penſiue, and much to lament the misfortune of *Scanderbeg*, and the common miſerie of the countrey of EPIRVS, with many words amplifying the ſame: and then on the contrary part, ſetting forth to the vttermoſt the force and power of the Turkiſh Emperour *Mahomet*, thereby to ſtrike a greater terrour and diſtruſt into the minds of them with whom he was conuerſant: but vnto ſuch as were more ſecret and inward with him, he diſcouered the great affection and fauour the great Emperour *Mahomet* had of long borne him, with the large offer of his gifts and preferments, aſ-
ſuring thē of the like alſo, if they would conforme themſelues vnto his appetite; ſeeking hereby H
ſo much as he could, to allure thē into the participation of his moſt execrable treaſon: yet when he had ſaid what he could, he found none but a few of the baſer ſort of the common ſouldiers, which were willing to hearken vnto him or to follow him. When *Moſes* ſaw how much he had laboured, and how little preuailed, fearing to be diſcouered, he fled by night to SPETIGRADE, accompanied with a few baſe fellowes, and eaſily obtained the gouernours paſſe, with ſafe conduct to CONSTANTINOPLE: where he arriued a little before the returne of *Sebalias* from BELGRADE, and was of *Mahomet* both ioyfully receiued and honourably entertained.

When *Scanderbeg* vnderſtood that *Moſes* was thus reuolted, at the firſt report thereof he was ſo troubled with the ſtrangeneſſe of the fact, that he ſtood ſpeechleſſe as a man aſtonied: but after he had pawſed a while, and vpon further enquirie had found it to be true, he according to his I
heroicall diſpoſition, ſaid no more, but that he could eaſily haue *Moſes* excuſed, for that he was carried away with the violence of ſuch fortune as might haue alienated the mind of a right conſtant man. And when diuers of his friends (according to the manner of the world) with hard ſpeeches ſeemed to aggrauate his offence: he could not abide to heare the ſame, but cōmanded them to hold their peace, and no more to vſe ſuch ſpeeches: wiſhing that all treaſon & euill fortune were together with *Moſes* gone out of EPIRVS. Vpon this newes, *Scanderbeg* accompanied with *Ameſa* his nephew and a troupe of horſemen, preſently went into the countrey of DIBRA, and there with all care cauſed moſt diligent enquirie to be made, if any could be found partakers of the conſpiracie with *Moſes*. But finding none, he much reioyced in the fidelitie of his ſubiects: and hauing ſet all things in good order in that prouince, returned himſelfe to CROIA. K

Moſes remaining in the Turks court, ceaſed not to ſolicite *Mahomet* to proceed in his warres againſt *Scanderbeg*, promiſing to doe therin great matters, euen to the ſpending of his life in that ſeruice. But the craftie tyrant thinking it not good to truſt him too farre before he had further triall of him, delaied him off vntill the next Spring, pretending that the yeere was too farre ſpent to begin wars. In the meane time he cauſed all *Moſes* talke, his behauiour and actions, to be diligently obſerued and noted, and oftentimes himſelfe diſcourſed with him concerning the managing of that warre: all which he did eſpecially to ſound the depth of *Moſes* his thoughts. And finding nothing in him but the moſt aſſured and vndoubted ſignes of a mind deuoted to his ſeruice, & altogether eſtranged from *Scanderbeg*: in the beginning of the Spring he committed to his charge the leading of fifteene thouſand horſemen for the inuading of EPIRVS, ſuch men as L
Moſes himſelf ſhould make choice of: for a greater number he required not for the vanquiſhing of *Scanderbeg*. Theſe ſouldiers although they deteſted (ſo few in number) to enter that fatall countrey of EPIRVS, as men faire warned by other mens harmes, yet heartened on by the opinion they had conceiued of their new Generall, and the hope they had by his meanes to find friends in that countrey to ioyne with them, were the willinger to goe. So *Moſes* furniſhed with a notable armie, and all warlike prouiſion he could deſire for the deſtruction of his countrey; and blinded with the imagination of a kingdome, ſet forward, and marching through THRACIA and MACEDONIA, forgetting the loialtie due vnto his ſoueraigne, and the loue he ought to haue borne vnto his natiue countrey, came and entred into DIBRA.

Mahomet ſendeth Moſes with fifteene thouſand ſelect men to inuade Epirus.

Scanderbeg by his eſpials vnderſtanding of the comming of *Moſes*, as alſo what ſtrength he M
was of, ſtood not now vpon any policie againſt him who had of long beene priuie to all his ſtratagems, but was ready euen at his firſt entrance with true valour to encounter him. As both the armies ſtood ranged in order of battaile, a meſſenger came from the Turks campe, to know of *Scanderbeg*, if any one of his armie durſt to proue his fortune hand to hand againſt one of the Turks, before the beginning of the generall battell. By which meſſenger anſwer was returned,

That

A That the challenge ſhould be accepted. The name of the Turke which made this braue challenge was *Ahemaze*, a man for his valour and courage of great name amongſt the Turkes. Vpon this proud challenge, *Zacharias Groppa*, a Gentleman of no leſſe reputation amongſt the Chriſtians, haſtely ſtept forth before *Scanderbeg* (as if he had beene afraid to haue beene preuented by ſome other) and requeſted, that he might be the man to abate the Turks pride. *Scanderbeg* embracing him, cõmended his noble mind, and wiſhing him good fortune, gaue him leaue to carrie with him into the field the firſt honour of the Chriſtian armie. As he was arming himſelfe, his companions and fellowes in armes ſtanding about him, wiſhed vnto him not more courage or ſtrength than he had, but onely the fortune of *Maneſſi*. Vpon his armour he put on
B many rich iewels and ornaments, the allurements or rather the rewards of the enemie, if he could vanquiſh him. The Turkiſh champion was no ſooner come into the plaine betwixt both armies, and made ſhew of himſelf in great brauerie as if his match had yet been ſcarcely found, but he ſaw *Zacharias* come forth brauely mounted, and readie to charge him: to whom *Ahemaze* calling aloud, ſaid there would be time ynough for him to haſten to his death, and therefore requeſted to talke with him before. So when he had learned of him both his name and place, he propoũded ſuch like conditions of the combat, as had been long before deuided by *Maneſſi*: whereof *Zacharias* in no better ſort accepted. In few words it was agreed vpon betwixt them, That each of them ſhould abide his owne fortune, without any helpe or aid of others; and that the victor ſhould haue full power ouer the bodie and ſpoile of the vanquiſhed. Thus agreed,
C they withdrew themſelues one a good diſtance from another, and with their Launces charged, ran together with ſuch force, that with the violence of the encounter they brake their Launces one vpon the other, and were both horſe and man ouerthrowne. Both vnhorſed, they nimbly recouered themſelues, and with their ſcimitars fiercely aſſailed the one the other on foot. Fortune it ſhould ſeeme had determined to beautifie that combat with varietie, ſtanding a great while indifferent to both. After many ſturdie ſtrokes giuen, without any hurt done, by reaſon they were ſo ſtrongly armed, it fortuned that both their ſwords were beaten out of their hands: then grapling together with their bare hands, as if they had beene two vnarmed wreſtlers, after long ſtrugling till they were both almoſt out of breath, *Zacharias* ouerthrew the Turke, and ly-
ing vpon him, with his dagger, aboue the gorget thruſt him into the throat, and ſlew him: and
D ſo riſing vp, with the ſword that firſt came to his hands, cut off the Turks head: at the ſight whereof the Chriſtian armie gaue a great ſhout for ioy, to the great diſcomfiture of the Turks. To be ſhort, *Zacharias* deſpoyling the Turke of his armour, and what elſe he thought good, returned loded with the ſpoile of his enemie, and preſented vnto *Scanderbeg* the proud Turks head: for which he was of him afterwards moſt honourably rewarded.

A Combat betwixt a Turke and a Chriſtian.

Into this place yet reeking with the bloud of the late ſlaine Turke, came *Moſes*, and with a loud voice challenged *Scanderbeg* hand to hand; thinking indeed that he would not haue aduentured his perſon: but when he ſaw him readie to come forth, he ſhamefully forſooke the place, and returned with ſhame ynough into his Armie.

Preſently after, both the Armies vpon ſignall giuen ſet forward, and ſo began to ioine battaile:
E where at the firſt onſet *Scanderbeg* ſo valiantly charged the vauward of the Turks armie, that they were glad to giue ground: which *Moſes* perceiuing, releeued them with new ſupplies: and riding now here, now there, with his preſence and courage reſtored the battaile, in many places almoſt loſt. Howbeit, the Epirots encouraged with the beginning of their good fortune, ſtill preuailed vpon their enemies, and after great ſlaughter made, came to the ſtrength of their battaile; where *Moſes* had placed moſt of his beſt ſouldiours, as his moſt aſſured and laſt refuge: In this place the Turks fought with exceeding courage, and *Moſes* warily obſeruing in what part of the battaile *Scanderbeg* himſelfe was, directed his great forces againſt him, of purpoſe, if poſſibly he might, to haue ſlaine him: whereof he miſſed but a little; for a couragious ſouldiour of the Turks by chance encountering with *Scanderbeg*, with his horſemans ſtaffe bare him quite back-
F ward vpon his horſe, in ſuch forcible maner, that the Turks for ioy gaue a great ſhout, thinking verely he had beene ſlaine: but *Scanderbeg* recouering himſelfe againe, and chafed with ſuch an vnwonted diſgrace, furiouſly aſſailed the ſame Turk with his ſword, and after a great fight ſlew him. A great part of the Turks armie being alreadie ouerthrowne by them that had the leading of the wings of *Scanderbeg* his armie, diuers of the common ſouldiours thruſt the heads of the ſlaine Turks vpon the points of their ſpeares, in token of victorie, to the great aſtoniſhment of

The battell betwixt Scanderbeg and Moſes.

the Turks: and now ioyning themſelues with *Scanderbeg*, more fiercely charged the maine bat- G
taile of the Turks than before. Neuertheleſſe, *Moſes* encouraging his ſouldiours, did what was poſſible for a man to doe, and euen with his owne valour a great while ſtaied the courſe of the victorie: vntill he ſeeing the ground about him couered with the dead bodies of his beſt ſoldiours, and that there was no remedie but that he muſt either flie, or there die; turned his backe and fled. In which flight, many of the hindermoſt of the Turks were ſlaine: as for *Moſes* himſelfe, he eſcaped by waies to him well knowne, onely with foure thouſand men, the poore remainder of ſo great an armie: the reſt, to the number of about eleuen thouſand, all choiſe men, were ſlaine: whereas of the Chriſtians were not paſt an hundreth loſt, and about eightie wounded. Of all the Turks that were taken, onely one was ſaued; who being a man of good account, H
had yeelded himſelfe to *Zacharias*, and was afterward raunſomed: the reſt were all by the common ſouldiours, without pittie, tortured to death, in reuenge of the crueltie by them ſhewed at BELGRADE: *Scanderbeg* himſelfe either not knowing thereof, or winking thereat.

Moſes with the reſt of his diſcomfited armie, lay ſtill a while vpon the borders of EPIRVS, and would faine haue perſuaded them, after the departure of *Scanderbeg*, to haue followed him againe into EPIRVS, to haue ſurprized the garriſon left in DIBRA, in number not aboue two thouſand; promiſing to bring them vpon the ſame garriſon, before they ſhould be aware of their comming. But the Turks hauing him now in contempt, were about by generall conſent to forſake him, and to returne home. And ſo *Moſes* ſeeing no remedie, returned with them to CONSTANTINOPLE, with countenance as heauie as if he had been a condemned man now I
carried to the place of execution: and the Turks which had not long before had him in great admiration, expecting that he ſhould haue ended the wars in EPIRVS; began now to diſgrace him as faſt, and to ſpeake all the euill of him they could deuiſe. Yea the prowd tyrant himſelfe (although he could blame nothing in the man, but his fortune) was ſo highly offended with him for the loſſe of his armie, that he had vndoubtedly put him to moſt cruell death, had not the great Baſſaes, & others neere about him, perſuaded him otherwiſe: ſaying, That in ſo doing, he ſhould alienat the mindes of all others from reuolting vnto him, or attempting any great thing for his ſeruice. So was he by their mediation, pardoned his life; but withall, ſo diſgraced, that he had little or nothing allowed him afterwards for his neceſſarie maintenance: all which deſpightfull contumelies he outwardly ſeemed patiently to beare; but was inwardly ſo tormented K
with melancholy and griefe, that he could neither eate nor drinke: The remembrance of the foule treaſon committed againſt his prince and countrey, was day and night before his eies; and the diſgraces of the Turks court inwardly tormented him with intollerable griefe: The ſight of the tyrant (who meaſured all things by the euent) filled his heart with ſecret indignation; and to returne again vnto his naturall prince, of whom he had ſo euil deſerued, he was aſhamed: Sometime the clemencie and princely nature of *Scanderbeg*, whom he knew of old, ſlow to reuenge, and eaſie to be intreated to forgiue, hartned him on to think of returne; and by and by, the conſideration of his fowle treaſon ouerwhelmed him with deſpaire. Thus with contrarie thoughts plunged too and fro, tormented with the inſpeakable griefs of a troubled conſcience, not knowing what to doe, purpoſing now one thing, and by and by another: at laſt he reſolued to forſake L
the inſolent tyrant, and to ſubmit himſelfe to the mercie of *Scanderbeg*; wiſhing rather to die in his countrey for his due deſert, than to liue with infamie, derided in the Turks court. Reſting himſelfe vpon this reſolution, one euening he got ſecretly out of the gates of CONSTANTINOPLE, and trauelling all that night and the day following before he reſted, by long & wearie iournies, came at laſt vnto his natiue countrey of DIBRA. The garriſon ſouldiours beholding their old Gouernour all alone, full of heauineſſe, as a man eaten vp with cares; mooued with compaſſion, and forgetting the euils hee had beene the occaſion of, receiued him with many teares and friendly embracings, and brought him to *Scanderbeg*, who by chance then lay not farre off. *Moſes* comming vnto him with his girdle about his necke, in token that he had deſerued death (as the manner of that countrey was) found him walking before his tent, and there M
with heauie cheere falling downe vpon his knees at his feet, ſubmitted himſelfe vnto his mercie, and with great humilitie and ſignes of repentance, craued his moſt gracious pardon. Which his requeſt *Scanderbeg* preſently granted, and taking him vp by the hand embraced and kiſſed him, in token he had from his heart forgiuen him: and within a few daies after, cauſed all ſuch things of his as were before confiſcat, to be again reſtored vnto him; with all ſuch offices and promo-

Moſes contemned of the Turks.

Moſes flieth from Conſtantinople.

tions

A tions as he had before enioyed: & by open proclamation commanded, That from thenceforth no man ſhould either publikely or priuatly ſpeake of that *Moſes* had treſpaſſed. *Mahomet* vnderſtanding that *Moſes* was returned againe into EPIRVS, and honoured of *Scanderbeg* as in former time, was much grieued thereat, and fumed exceedingly: Firſt, for that he had at all truſted him; and then, that he had ſo let him ſlip out of his hands: being verily perſuaded, that all that *Moſes* had done, was but a fineneſſe of *Scanderbeg* to deceiue him.

Shortly after that *Moſes* was returned into EPIRVS, *Mahomet* by like practiſe allured vnto him *Ameſa*, *Scanderbeg* his nephew, promiſing to make him King of EPIRVS in his vnckles ſteed. For by that meanes, the craftie tyrant thought it a more eaſie way to draw the mindes of
B the people of EPIRVS from *Scanderbeg* vnto him deſcended of the princes bloud, than to *Moſes*, or to any other ſtranger he ſhould ſet vp. *Ameſa* vpon this hope of a kingdome, fled to CONSTANTINOPLE: and becauſe he would cleere the mind of the tyrant of all ſuſpition and diſtruſt, he carried with him his wife and children, as the moſt ſure pledges of his fidelitie. This *Ameſa* was of ſtature low, and the feature of his body not ſo perfect as might ſufficiently expreſſe the hidden vertues of his mind: He was of courage hautie aboue meaſure, ſubtill, and of a pregnant wit; wonderfull painfull, and thereto courteous and bountifull (the chiefe meanes whereby aſpiring minds ſteale away the hearts of men) whatſoeuer he got of himſelfe, or had by the gift of his vnckle, he diuided it amongſt his ſouldiers or friends: he was very affable, and could notably both couer and diſſemble his affections: for which things, he was aboue all
C others both beloued and honoured of all the people of EPIRVS, next vnto *Scanderbeg* himſelfe. At his firſt comming to *Mahomet*, he filled not his eares with great promiſes, and vaine praiſes of himſelfe as had *Moſes*; but only excuſing his owne reuolt, laboured to perſwade him, That he had for iuſt cauſes left his vnckle, with a deſire now faithfully to ſerue him. And to that purpoſe ſpake vnto him as followeth:

Ameſa his firſt ſpeech vnto Mahomet.

If it ſhould pleaſe thee (moſt noble Mahomet*) to call to remembrance the old iniuries, and ancient diſpleaſures by vs committed againſt thine imperiall Maieſtie: wee might ſeeme now rather to haue come hither to receiue the iuſt guerdon of our euill deſerts, than vpon any hope of honour or preferment. For what could haue beene done more in diſgrace of the* Othoman *empire, than that you haue ſeene*
D *long ſince done by vs, in the moſt dangerous time of the Hungarian warre; rather of a malicious and ſet purpoſe, than for that we were iuſt enemies? When as in the ſame perfidious courſe, I my ſelfe being a helper and partaker therein (for now no excuſe is to be pretended for our doings, more than repentance) your fathers armie was betrayed at* MORAVA, *and the kingdome of* EPIRVS *by great treacherie wreſted out of your fathers hands; the only cauſe of ſo many calamities, and of ſo much bloudſhed. But vaine is this feare, and our ſuſpition needleſſe, with ſo wiſe and mercifull a Prince; eſpecially for that my yeeres then greene, and youth prone vnto the harme of it ſelfe, and a mind not reſting vpon his owne reſolutions, deceiued me. I beleeued mine vnckle (for the ignorant beleeue many things) and allured with the deſire of ſoueraigntie (the proper diſeaſe of that age) and too much credulous, I forſooke you and followed his promiſes: but diſcretion growing with yeeres, I haue by little and little perceiued both*
E *the ſlie perfidious dealing of mine vnckle, as alſo that my reuolt from you was more hurtfull vnto my ſelfe than to any other.* Scanderbeg *recouered, and alſo enlarged the kingdome of* EPIRVS; *but not without my great labour and helpe. I expected long time, that he ſhould haue giuen me, if not my fathers whole inheritance, yet at leaſt ſome part thereof, as a ſmall reward of my ſo great trauell and danger. Not long after he married a wife, and hath begot a young heire, a new ſucceſſour in his kingdome: vnto me for ſhame of the world, becauſe I ſhould not altogether leade a priuate life, he hath aſſigned a baſe corner of* EPIRVS; *where he enioying the reſt, I might lead a poore and contemptible life. In this caſe I had much adoe to bridle my affections, and could neuer diſgeſt that iniurie: yet the iniquitie of the time, with the inſolent diſpoſition of the man, compelled me to ſmother vp my thoughts, and to make faire weather, leſt finding ſome ſuſpition, he ſhould craftily haue entrapped me, as he did*
F *of late* George Streſie *his ſiſters ſonne; whom wrongfully charged with fained ſurmiſes, he hath almoſt depriued of all his poſſeſſions. I would willingly haue fled vnto the feet of your highneſſe, I would gladly haue forſaken my ingratefull vnckle with the ſtaines of his infamous kingdome; but that the remembrance of the old rebellion, and many iniuries ſithence done, did make me afraid: vntill that now (God I thinke ſo appointing it) I came moſt gladly, following your moſt royall faith and promiſe. You had ſcarcely beckned vnto me, you had ſcarcely inuited me, hauing of long intentiuely waited eue-*

rie occaſion; but ſtraight way I came with ſuch ſpeed, as if I would haue flowne: I lingred not, I expected not either Scanderbeg *or his euill happe, or your more proſperous ſucceſſe, as of late did* Moſes; *leſt I might thereby iuſtly ſeeme either for feare or regard of ſome imminent danger, rather to haue prouided for mine owne ſafetie than to haue embraced your magnificence. Neither haue I left any thing for you in me to ſuſpect, nor any cauſe wherefore I ſhould deſire to returne againe into* EPIRVS: *here are preſent moſt ſure bonds of my loue, and faithfull pledges of my loyaltie. Behold (worthy* Mahomet) *you haue whatſoeuer is deere vnto me, yea whatſoeuer nature could giue, pleaſing vnto men in the courſe of mans life. Theſe I haue brought vnto thee, which ſhould with violence haue beene taken from an enemie: ſuch pawnes as might aſſure thee of the faith of a moſt doubtfull man. More than this, haue I brought nothing: for in ſo great ſpeed and ſecret departure, I could not haue regard of my ſubſtance. And if I might haue had time to haue truſſed vp my traſh at leiſure; yet I know not how, I ſhould haue thought it a kind of baſeneſſe, to haue brought with me any part of the poore reliques of mine old fortune: eſpecially vnto thee, of all other the richeſt. Only my fidelitie I lay downe before thee, for any thing greater I haue not: and if thou deſire of me any other bond for more aſſurance, I refuſe not whatſoeuer your highneſſe ſhall appoint: for I came not hither to ſet downe couenants and agreements of my ſelfe, but to receiue them from you. I dare not promiſe to vanquiſh mine vncle, and to ſubdue* EPIRVS *with an armie of fifteene thouſand men: the misfortune of* Haly-Baſſa *and other your Generals; yea and the late and rare victorie of* Sebalias, *with great bloudſhed gained, may ſerue for examples. In me you ſhall neither want diligence nor faithfull ſeruice: as for other things concerning the euent of this warre, and for the reuenge of the iniuries by you receiued; you being a Prince of power inuincible, and of a moſt deepe iudgement, are not to be aduiſed by me your vnskilfull vaſſaile.*

G H I

Ameſa honorably entertained by Mahomet.

This ſpeech of *Ameſa*, ſeemed vnto *Mahomet* free from all diſſimulation, foraſmuch as he knew moſt part thereof to be true; and his wife and children brought vnto his preſence, confirmed the reſt. Wherefore commending his good affection, he appointed him honourable entertainment, referring other matters vnto a farther time.

Vpon the approch of the Spring, *Mahomet* deſiring nothing more than to be reuenged vpon *Scanderbeg*, entred into conſultation with his great Baſſaes, concerning the inuaſion of EPIRVS: vnto which counſell *Ameſa* was by *Mahomet* admitted, and his wicked deuiſe for the deſtruction of his countrey, of all others beſt liked. After the matter had beene long to and fro debated, it was concluded, that *Iſaack* the great Baſſa of CONSTANTINOPLE, ſhould with an armie of fiftie thouſand be ſent againſt *Scanderbeg*, and *Ameſa* with him, hauing the charge of fiue thouſand horſemen: and the Baſſa to proclaime *Ameſa* King of EPIRVS; thereby to perſwade the Epirots, that *Mahomet* inuaded EPIRVS rather for the diſpleaſure he bare againſt *Scanderbeg*, and for the aduancement of *Ameſa*, than for any ambitious deſire he had to take vnto himſelfe that kingdome.

K

Great was the preparation for this warre, and the expectation thereof greater. Flying fame had in ſhort time filled euery corner of EPIRVS with the report of theſe newes; adding thereunto (as the manner is) a great deale more than was true. Whereupon *Scanderbeg* without delay, ſent for his great captaines and men of warre into DIBRA, where that tempeſt was firſt to be expected: and when they were all aſſembled, he declared vnto them the greatneſſe of the danger, and what he thought thereof himſelfe as followeth.

L

A notable ſpeech of Scanderbeg vnto his captaines, how the Turks were to be withſtood at their coming into Epirus.

Amongſt all other things which God hath left to vex and greeue the minds of men in ſo great varietie of worldly affaires, we ſee (right worthie ſouldiers) theſe two the greateſt, Hope, and Feare. The firſt a more comfortable thing, and proper to couragious minds (I may not ſay) of light beleefe: the other a thing of more diſcretion and ſafetie, which although it vſe to deferre the deſires of men, yet hath it power at length excellently to cure and ſeaſon the ſame. Hereupon is it eaſily to be gathered, that the great cheefetaines of former times haue gained more honour and greater victories, by fearing all that was to be feared, than others in ſhew more hardie, which feared nothing. Hereupon the great Carthaginentian captaine vſed to call Q. Fabius *(whom the Romanes euer thought too ſlow and too fearefull) his great enemie: but* Terentius Varro *he called a greater enemie vnto his owne countrey and the people of* ROME, *than to himſelfe. But wherefore doe I wrongfully call that Feare, which might more truly be called Diſcretion, or wholeſome Policie? Call it as you will, it is not much materiall: but this one thing no man can denie, That thereof hath riſen the ancient diſcipline of warre, and the old and ſeuere*

M

gouernment

A *gouernment of martiall affaires. This aduiſed careſulneſſe cheriſheth and nouriſheth Hope it ſelfe, it doth nothing raſhly, it hath eyes before, behind, and on both ſides, it waigheth in indifferent ballance things paſt, preſent, and to come. You may now perceiue to what end my ſpeech tendeth. I would firſt conferre with you, and know your opinions, before I determine any thing of the order of this warre; that either I might yeeld vnto your opinion, or elſe you (as you haue alwayes hitherto done) to mine. You heare, you now heare with your eares what preparation, what warlike prouiſion is daily made againſt vs. Lo the great Baſſa of* CONSTANTINOPLE, *all the flower of* EVROPE, *and whole ſtrength of the* Othoman *kingdome knocketh at our gates. I want not courage (neither euer did) to proue my fortune againſt him, not without your honour: but I thinke it better to vſe policie and warie heed againſt ſo great*
B *an enemie, than our wonted force and courage. That notable ouerthrow of* Hali Baſſa, *ſo many great victories by vs atchieued, our minds by ſo many good haps confirmed, perſwade me to thinke that we haue both courage and ſtrength to encounter him in plaine battaile: but the vncertaine euents of warre, and fortune neuer ſufficiently knowne, maketh wiſe men to forget what is paſt, and to feare that is to come. It was neuer proper to any man, it was neuer giuen by inheritance, alwayes to ouercome; new occurrents require new correſpondents: neither may you, for that you conquered yeſterday, preſume to aſſure your ſelfe to deuide the ſpoile of your enemies to day. Victorie is like a trauellour, and goeth hither and thither, not reſting long in a place: and although it be for moſt part both gotten and kept by courage and diſcretion; yet oftentimes, when you haue moſt carefully and politiquely diſpoſed of all things, the fortune and chance of warre haue therein a great ſway. I was wont to require (I remember*
C *it well) onely valour and courage in my ſouldiers, contemning all externall accidents and fortunes haps; if you did promiſe vnto me couragious minds, I aſſured you of all good hap and proſperous ſucceſſe: but that loſſe we receiued at* BELGRADE *(the remembrance whereof my mind feareth, and alwayes abhorreth to thinke vpon) hath much changed my former cogitations, and made me to deeme farre otherwiſe of worldly matters, and the vncertaintie of fortune. What if that day had beene longer? or* Sebalias *of more courage? might not the ſtate of* EPIRVS *haue that day beene vtterly ouerthrowne? We were then rather by God preſerued, than by any thing that was in our ſelues: what remained more, but that we ſhould like cowards haue yeelded our ſelues to haue beene bound of the conquerours? The night defended vs, yea euen God himſelfe defended vs; who tooke from them both policie and force, and gaue vs time to breath and eſcape away. We were then but as a prey, expecting but the comming of the vi-*
D *ctor: Howbeit, he tooke nothing from vs, he carried little or nothing away with him, being too much carefull to keepe the honour he had alreadie gained, and peraduenture in feare of them of whom he was not without cauſe moſt feared. I ſpeake not this of purpoſe to terrifie any of you, but rather to admoniſh you, and to conſult with you, how ſuch great preparations may be fruſtrated and ouerthrowne, and ſome notable victorie by vs atchieued, without the price of our bloud, or the loſſe of ſuch things as we haue. The number of our enemies is great, and ſo great, as vntill this day we neuer ſaw in* EPIRVS *greater, except at ſuch times as they came to beſiege our cities, and to deuoure vs all. Now if we ſhall meet them in the plaine fields in a ſet battaile, the euent thereof will be doubtfull, many of vs muſt needs fall, many of vs muſt die (I would I might be a falſe prophet) before ſo great an armie will either flie or be ouercome, your victorie ſhall be mingled with teares, and the heauineſſe of the conquerour not much*
E *vnlike the ſorrow of the conquered. Was it but a few that we loſt at* BELGRADE? *Is that loſſe ſo to be recouered? What flower of Chiualrie, hardly to be in many yeeres reſtored? How many worthie men were there ſlaine?* EPIRVS *muſt needs in ſhort time be vnpeopled, if we ſhall ſo deſperatly only ſeeke for ſuch glorious victories. Wherefore if we will doe well, we muſt ſo fight to day, as that we may fight to morrow alſo. Neither are our enemies and we in like caſe: The loſſe of fortie or fiftie thouſand is leſſe vnto the Turkiſh tyrant, than the loſſe of an hundred of you is to me. We are in all but a few, and therefore carefully to be kept: which if we regard not for our owne ſakes, yet let vs doe it for our wiues and childrens, whoſe welfare and libertie dependeth of our liues: I know the number of you, I know your faces and countenances, and almoſt euery one of your names, which maketh me alſo more carefull of your health. And yet I would not refuſe to trie the whole fortune of this battaile in plaine field, if*
F *we might thereby end all the warres againſt the Turks for euer; if I were in hope ſo to find an end of our labours and trauels hereafter, I would gladly aduenture my life with yours, for the perpetuall quiet and peace of our poſteritie: but a new enemie alwayes ariſeth, and we muſt ſtill looke for new warres. When this* Iſaack *is gone, another* Iſaack *will ere long come in his place: we ſhall be alwayes exerciſed with new warres, and encloſed with new dangers: It is the deſtinie of* EPIRVS *(as farre as I can ſee) and we our ſelues are borne thereto. Wherefore we muſt gather our wits together, we muſt well husband our forces,*

and ſo diuide our patrimonie, as that we may alwayes haue ſomething to content our creditors, when they G
ſhall chance to come vpon vs. Yet ſhall God (no doubt) giue an end alſo vnto theſe troubles: for extre-
mities cannot be of long continuance, and you your ſelues ſhall at length take reſt: yea, the ſtrong and
puiſſant enemie, wearied with ſo many vaine attempts, will at laſt haue enough thereof, and leaue off his
perpetuall hatred againſt vs: then ſhall it be to you no ſmall pleaſure to remember ſo many labours and
dangers paſt. Thus haue I declared vnto you the commodities and incommodities enſuing the victorie
in plaine battell. But what if we be vanquiſhed? Where haue we any hope of reliefe left? From whence
may we expect helpe? Will the bloudie enemie, inflate with victorie, expect whileſt we againe recouer our
ſtrength and encounter him againe with new forces? No, he will purſue vs and chaſe vs ſo long as any
of vs are left: and hauing ouercome vs, will poure out the reſt of his furie vpon our townes and countrey, H
then ſubiect to his iniurie. But ſome of you peraduenture will ſay, that they are by policie to be ouerta-
ken, and not to be met in open field: of which opinion I alſo am my ſelfe, yet happily differ from you in
the time of doing the ſame. Then I thinke it beſt to deceiue them, when they thinke they cannot be de-
ceiued: when as they being as it were in poſſeſſion of a ſuppoſed victorie, like men ouerioyed, ſhall caſt
no perill. Now they come euen from the gates of Constantinople, *full of diſtruſt, prying into*
euery corner, as men before warned by others harmes, and ſo many dreadfull examples of their fellowes:
Beſides that, they haue with them my graceleſſe nephew and domeſticall foe Ameſa, *who will teach*
them to foreſee and ſhun ſuch ſnares as in times paſt he with vs was wont to lay for them. Wherefore we
muſt now tower vp vnto the height of ſome notable and ſtrange policie, whereby both our countrey may
be from danger preſerued, and alſo ſome great victorie, without our owne bloudſhed (which ſeldome I
chanceth) obtained: which to the maintenance of our ancient glorie and renowne, we haue to this day
by many moſt notable victories gained: But time and ſpace, and the ſight of the enemie, ſhall furniſh vs
with this deuiſe. Now (that my diſcourſe may come to the purpoſed end) firſt of all, all things ſubiect
either to the furie or victorie of the enemie, are to be remoued out of the way; all people, of what age,
ſex, or condition ſoeuer, are to be brought out of the countrey into places of ſafetie; and then, our townes
are to be furniſhed with ſtrong garriſons and all other neceſſarie prouiſion, againſt all the chances of
fortune. Beſides, who knoweth the ſecret deſignes of the tyrant? or whether he himſelfe (of long time
deſirous of reuenge, and thirſting after our bloud) will follow the Baſſa at the heeles, or no? Perhaps I
may beleeue and feare more than is needfull: but it is good to feare all that may be feared, that we may
indeed feare nothing. If all things ſhall thus be ſet in order, if there ſhall be nothing left in the fields K
or in the villages, that may enrich, feed, or feare our enemies, and which may withdraw our care and
thoughts from our enemies, vndoubtedly we ſhall be victors. And if you will be ruled by me, and follow
my direction in theſe wars, I will aſſuredly deliuer your enemies into your hands to be ſlaine at your plea-
ſure; and (by the leaue of God) will make the name and valour of the Epirots more terrible vnto the
Turke, than euer it hath beene in the time of our anceſtors. I flatter not my ſelfe, I deceiue you not: if any
thing may be promiſed in worldly actions, this I aſſure you of, and this will I take vpon me. But theſe
things are better done than ſaid. In the meane while, to ſpend no more time in longer talke and diſcourſe
(than which, no greater loſſe can be to ſouldiers) let euery one of vs take a part in this charge, for the good
diſpoſing of all things, and how to withſtand the enemie. I will not command any thing to others, which I
will not my ſelfe doe: I will refuſe nothing, or reckon any thing baſe, which may tend to the common ho- L
nour or profit of vs all.

This ſpeech of *Scanderbeg* was well liked and ioyfully receiued of all the hearers, ſo that many beſought him to manifeſt vnto them how he purpoſed to proceed in thoſe wars: whereunto he with cheerefull countenance anſwered, That it was enough for him, if they did but beleeue him, promiſing himſelfe in perſon to be in the moſt dangerous actions as farre as any of them, wherewith they reſted contented. And preſently diſpatching his lieutenants into diuers parts of his kingdome, as he thought moſt conuenient, prouided, That all things were in ſhort time conueyed out of the countrey into the ſtrong townes and other places of refuge. No corne, no cattell, or other things of any worth was left in the countrey; but all left deſolate, in like manner as was before at the comming of the great King *Amurath* to the ſiege of Croia. M

The Epirots remoue all their things out of the country into the ſtrong townes, before the comming of the Turks.

By this time *Iſaack* the great Baſſa was come into Epirvs, accompanied with *Ameſa*: and as he marched, ſtill ſent before him his ſcouts and eſpials, carefully to view euery corner of the countrey, for feare to be entrapped as others before him had beene; directed in his iourney for moſt part by *Ameſa*. *Scanderbeg* had in readineſſe ſuch an army as he had purpoſed to vſe againſt his

A his mightie enemie, but lay with ſix thouſand horſemen onely in ſhew, as if he had determined with them to haue giuen them battaile, but meaning indeed nothing leſſe. For as ſoone as the Baſſa was come in ſight, he with thoſe horſemen, according as he had before appointed, as if he had beene diſcouraged with the very ſight of the Turks, turned his backe and fled. And becauſe he would not giue them any occaſion to ſuſpect it to be done for ſome policie or fineneſſe, and ſo to make them more carefull, he fled not into the mountains or woods, as his wonted manner was, but directly toward LYSSA, a towne of the Venetians ſtanding vpon the ſea coaſt, as if he had quite deſpaired of the keeping of EPIRVS, and fled thither for refuge. The Baſſa ſeeing him
B flie, was glad therof, & ſent certaine troupes of horſemen to purſue him, and diligently to marke which way he tooke: but encamped himſelfe with his armie in the plaines of DIBRA, neere vnto ORONYCHIVM, where *Scanderbeg* lay before: and there reſted his armie, wearie of long trauell, expecting the returne of his horſemen, ſent after *Scanderbeg*. But vpon their returne, when it was for a certaintie reported by them, That *Scanderbeg* with an handfull of men was fled out of EPIRVS, and not an enemie to be ſeene, the Turks began to reioyce, and proudly to triumph, that they had without any loſſe driuen the enemie out of the countrey; yet much greeued, that they could no where find any thing to ſatisfie their greedie deſires: for why, all things were ſo cleane gone, as if the countrey had beene ſwept againſt their comming, which might haue beene a ſufficient cauſe for them to haue diſtruſted ſome great matter; but they flattering themſelues, ſuppoſed all this to be done for feare of them, vpon extreme deſperation: ſuch is the fraile condition of
C men, to loſe ſtrength of bodie, common ſenſe, yea, their reaſon and vnderſtanding, when ſome great miſchiefe is appointed for their ouerthrow or deſtruction. The Baſſa ſeeing the enemie fled, and now no cauſe of feare, conſulted with his chiefe captaines, what were now beſt to be done? *Ameſa* ſtill perſwading him not to remoue, but there to ſtay a time, and to expect the farther euent of matters. But the greater number, whoſe opinion preuailed, ſaid it was better to goe farther into the countrey, and to take the ſpoile thereof before the countrey people ſhould conuey away all their ſubſtance into places of ſafetie, as they had done there in DIBRA, and leaue them nothing but the bare ground and emptie cottages. By this perſwaſion, the Baſſa early next morning in good order ſet forward: commanding by generall proclamation, That no man vpon paine of death ſhould breake his array or ſtraggle from the armie. Yet before he ſet
D forward, he called *Ameſa* vnto him; whom after he had highly commended, and with great vehemencie inuayed againſt *Scanderbeg*, he with the great applauſe of the whole army in the name of *Mahomet* created him King of EPIRVS. That day he marched not farre, by reaſon of the great heat: for it was then about the middeſt of Iuly. Yet when he had well wearied himſelfe with that dayes trauell, finding neither enemie nor any thing elſe worthy to be accounted in any part of a victorie; he encamped at night, keeping diligent watch, and ſending forth his ſcouts euery way, but eſpecially towards LYSSA. The next day, which was the third day after the Baſſaes comming into EPIRVS, he ſet forward againe, and came at length into ÆMATHIA, and there encamped that night.

Ameſa is by the Baſſa created King of Epirus.

When *Scanderbeg* (flying for feare, as the Turks ſuppoſed) was gone a great way out of their
E ſight towards LYSSA, and come euen to the borders of his kingdome, he there ſtaied all the reſt of that day. And a little before the going downe of the ſunne, he with a few ſelect horſemen departed from the armie, and with painfull trauell got vp to the top of the high mountaines, from whence a man might by day well diſcouer all the plaines of ÆMATHIA. There he appointed one *Peieus Emanuel*, a politicke and valiant gentleman, with certaine horſemen to marke diligently which way the enemie held, and by certaine ſecret and appointed waftings and ſignes, to giue knowledge thereof to the armie. After ſuch order taken, he returned himſelfe, and came again to the campe after midnight. And preſently riſing with his army, and fetching a compaſſe about, came vndiſcouered, and ſecretly encamped himſelfe as neere as he could vnto the mountains where his ſcouts lay, with eagles eies waiting for the leaſt mouing of the enemy. The Baſſa
F deſirous to get as farre as he could into the countrey, before the heat of the day, began early in the morning to ſet forward, and came to the plaines of PHARSALIA, through the world ſpoken of for the great battell in them long time before fought, betweene the two moſt famous chiefetaines *Cæſar* and *Pompeius*: and now once more to be made famous, by the ſlaughter of the Turks. Here the enemy finding ſome ſtragling cattell, & other ſmall things which the countrey people had in their haſtie flight left behind them, fell to ſeeking after bootie, and as men without

feare

feare, ſpent that day in roaming vp and downe the countrey, in hope to find ſomething: and at G
night encamped without any great watch, but towards LYSSVM, from whence they (in great ſe-
curitie) looked for the comming of *Scanderbeg*; and as it were in diſgrace of him, carried *Ameſa*
in triumph vp and downe the campe, as if he had beene already poſſeſſed of the kingdome of
EPIRVS. *Scanderbeg* lying on the other ſide of the mountaines, perceiued by his eſpials which
way the enemy lay: and with great ſilence vnder the couert of the mountaines and woods, ſe-
cretly bent his courſe the ſame way, vntill he came to a mountaine called TVMENIST, at the
foot whereof he encamped that night. The next morning the Baſſa holding on his way, came &
encamped not farre from the ſame mountaine, and there ſtaied himſelfe with halfe his army, &
ſent *Ameſa* with the other halfe to burne and ſpoile the countrey: who about noone returned H
to the campe with ſuch prey as he had got, with his ſouldiers well wearied with trauell and the
heat of the day. *Scanderbeg* like a carefull houſholder, who being about to entertaine and feaſt
ſome honourable perſonages, truſteth not to his wife and ſeruants, but looketh vnto the beſtow-
ing of his prouiſion himſelfe, carefully ordering and diſpoſing and ſetting forth all things, eſpe-
cially if his prouiſion (for want of abilitie) be ſhort, to welcome ſo great gueſts; and ſetting all
things forth to the greateſt ſhew, ſeeketh at leaſt to fill the eyes of his gueſts, although he doubt
to ſatisfie their appetites: ſo he carefully viewing all the mountaines and thicke woods there-
abouts without reſting, ſet *Moſes* in one place, *Tanuſius* in another, and all the reſt in places moſt
conuenient. He appointeth euery man what to doe, and inſtructeth them, and conſidereth of
euery particular circumſtance himſelfe: and ſo diuideth his forces, as might beſt ſerue his pur- I
poſe, & make the moſt terrible ſhew vnto the enemie: for which purpoſe he in euery company
placed moe trumpets, drums, & other inſtruments of warre, than he had before at any time vſed.
When he had ſo to his moſt aduantage beſtowed ſo many of his captaines and ſouldiers as he
thought good, and as the nature of the places would giue leaue, he with 4000 horſemen and the
like number of foot, ſpeedily marching vp the rough mountaine of TVMENIST, from thence
plainly beheld in what order the Turks campe lay in the plaines below. The Turks, eſpecially
they which were lately returned with *Ameſa* from the ſpoile of the country, lay ſcattered abroad
in the fields, with their horſes vnbridled & vnſadled, reſting their weary bodies: ſome got vnder
The Turks campe buried in ſecuritie. the ſhadowes of trees were victualling themſelues; ſome hauing filled their bellies, lay faſt on
ſleepe vpon the greene graſſe; the reſt were paſſing the time, ſome with one kind of ſport, ſome K
with another, as ſouldiers do in field when they haue little or nothing to do: for it was then the
hotteſt time both of the yeere & of the day, being about the midſt of Iuly, and the noonetime of
the day. The like negligence was alſo in that part of the campe where the Baſſa himſelfe lay:
euery man taking his eaſe and pleaſure, with ſmall regard of horſe or armour; for being out of
feare of *Scanderbeg*, whom they thought to haue beene a great way off at LYSSVM, they lay as
men without care wrapped vp in ſecuritie, the common deſtruction of great armies & common
wealths. *Ameſa* with the great captaines, were at the ſame time all together in the Baſſaes paui-
lion, conſulting what courſe they were beſt to take, to do ſomething to the contentment of *Ma-
homet*, and their owne commendation: Some ſaid it were beſt, with fire and ſword to deſtroy all
they could in EPIRVS; and ſo hauing laid the countrey waſt, to returne: Others thought it better L
to march directly to CROIA, to proue if the citizens could be perſwaded to yeeld themſelues, &
receiue *Ameſa* for their King; otherwiſe to threaten them with a continuall ſiege, and vtter de-
ſtruction of the country, if vpon the vaine expectation of helpe from *Scanderbeg* they ſhould re-
fuſe to ſubmit themſelues. As for *Scanderbeg* himſelfe, who then lay houering ouer their heads,
he was in all that conſultation leaſt feared: who from the top of the mountaine, beholding the
ſecuritie & diſorder of the Turks campe, & delighted with the ſight therof; encouraged his ſoul-
diers, & martialed them in ſuch order as they were to follow him, for the charging and terrify-
ing of the enemy. But firſt of all he determined to oppreſſe the Turks ſcouts, which lay at the
foot of the mountain: for which purpoſe he himſelf with a few horſmen firſt ſecretly deſcended
the mountain, the reſt of his army following ſhortly after, & ſo ſuddenly came vpon the ſcouts M
that he ſlew them all, excepting one, who eſcaping by the ſwiftneſſe of his horſe, came running
into the campe as one halfe feared out of his wit, crying out that *Scanderbeg* was comming. The
Turks ſuſpecting nothing leſſe thā the cōming of him that way, at the preſent inſtant hardly be-
leeued that he was ſo nie: whē as he following him at the heeles as faſt as he could, with his horſ-
men & his footmen after them, was in a moment as if it had beene a ſudden tempeſt, broken in

amongſt

A amongſt the vnarmed Turks, and there making great ſlaughter of them, filled all the campe with ſudden tumult and feare. *Ameſa* who at the firſt noiſe had ſpeedily got him to his charge, with his ſouldiours ſome halfe armed, ſome on foot, hauing no leiſure to bridle their horſes, was the firſt that made head againſt *Scanderbeg*. The Baſſa alſo did what he might in that ſudden feare and ſhortneſſe of time, to arme his men, and to put them in order: but whileſt theſe things were in doing, the ſouldiours which lay in ambuſh in the woods, came downe the mountaine with ſuch horrible ſhouts and noiſe of inſtruments of warre, as if heauen and earth ſhould haue preſently gone togither; the hills and vallies with their hollow ecchoes, encreaſing the terror of the alarum. Inſomuch, that the Turks diſmaied, and fearing that all the force of EPIRVS
B with the countries adioyning had come vpon them, began to flie on euerie ſide, before that *Moſes* and the reſt that lay in ambuſh were come into the plaines. *Ameſa* acquainted with his vnckles ſtratagems, as much as he could encouraged the Turks; crying alowd and telling them, That ſuch vaine tumults and terrours were not to be feared, being but the bare ſhifts and deuiſes of their enemies to couer their owne weakneſſe: and by his owne valour ſtaied many which before were about to haue fled. In this while, the Baſſa hauing put his men in beſt order he could, was comming to the aid of *Ameſa*, hardly charged by *Scanderbeg*: but in his ſetting forward, he was ſo valiantly encountred on the one ſide by *Moſes* with his horſemen, and on the other by *Tanuſius* and *Emanuel* with their footmen, that he was enforced, not without great loſſe, againe to retire vnto his trenches.

Scanderbeg ſuddenly aſſaileth the Turks.

C All the hope of the battell depended vpon *Ameſa*, who ſtill with great courage withſtood his vnckle; exhorting his ſouldiours valiantly as men to endure that firſt aſſault, which ſhould afterwards bring them moſt aſſured victorie: hartening them on with hope of ſpeedie help from their fellowes, if they would but a while endure the furie of their enemies, whoſe hearts (as he ſaid) would preſently be diſcouraged, if they preuailed not in that their firſt and deſperat attempt, hauing nothing elſe to truſt vnto. By which perſuaſion the Turks were againe encouraged, accounting it a great diſhonour to flie, and leaue their Chieftaine in the field. But when they ſaw *Scanderbeg* ſtill to preuaile vpon them, and that no help came as they hoped (for many were by *Scanderbeg* his horſemen ſlaine as they were arming themſelues; many were by the way cut off as they were comming, & the reſt put to flight) they which before fought valiantly with
D *Ameſa*, turned their backs and fled alſo. *Scanderbeg* his horſemen purſuing the chaſe, made great ſlaughter of the Turks, and in the ſame chaſe tooke *Ameſa* priſoner. *Scanderbeg*, hauing ouerthrown that part of the Turks battell, was comming with a thouſand footmen and ſome horſemen, to haue ayded *Moſes* againſt the Baſſa: but before his comming, *Moſes* to blot out his former infamie, had with inuincible courage put the great Baſſa with all his army to flight: and *Scanderbeg* following the chaſe, gaue him not leaue to looke behind him, vntill he was got out of EPIRVS. Many were in this chaſe taken priſoners, and amongſt the reſt one *Meſites* a Sanzack, a man of great account amongſt the Turks. In this battell beſide the priſoners, were taken twentie of the Turks faireſt enſignes. As for horſes, armour, and other ſpoiles taken in the field, and in the campe, all which fell vnto the ſouldiors ſhare, it is almoſt incredible to be told. The
E number of the ſlaine Turks is of diuers diuerſly reported, they which write of the moſt, recken vp thirtie thouſand; and they which ſpeake of the leaſt, account twentie thouſand. Of the Chriſtians were loſt but ſixtie. Now if any account it ſtrange, that ſo great a victorie ſhould be gained with ſo little loſſe; not to ſpeake of that is written in holy writ, let him but read the auncient hiſtories of the Romans, or the Chronicles of our owne Country, and he ſhall in them find victories no leſſe ſtrange. There was to be ſeene the ſudden and ſtrange alteration of theſe worldly things, no more indeed (whatſoeuer we account of them) to be reckoned of, than of things we haue not. *Scanderbeg* poſſeſſeth the rich pauilion, erſt belonging to the great Baſſa; and other of his captaines enioy tents, with much other rich furniture neuer prepared for their vſe. *Ameſa* which the ſame day as a victorious conquerour ouerran a great part of ÆMATHIA
F with his horſemen, and was in triumph carried vp with the generall acclamation of many thouſands of valiant ſouldiors, and honoured as a king, and of them ſo called; is now led through the Chriſtian army to his vnkle, with his hands bound behind him as a ſlaue, ſpeechleſſe and confounded, vnable to hold vp his head for ſhame: whoſe miſerie moued moſt of the beholders to compaſſion, and forced teares out of the eies of many.

A notable victorie of the chriſtians.

The next day after this great victorie, *Scanderbeg* cauſed the bodies of the ſlaine Turks to be

be buried, togither with their horſes; which he did not for any regard of them, but that their G
loathſome carkaſes ſhould not infect the countrey: and after that, returned in great triumph to CROIA. By the way as he went, the countrey people, which were before for feare of the Turks fled into the woods & mountaines in great multitudes, met him; as he did others alſo out of the cities, whoſe mouthes were all full of his worthy praiſes. Before him went the captiue Turks with their hands bound behind them, excepting ſuch as were enforced to carrie the Turks enſignes: Next vnto them followed the great Baſſaes rich pauilion, in ſuch manner ſupported by the ſouldiours, as if it had been in the field: Then came *Scanderbeg* himſelfe with the Turkiſh Sanzacke, and *Ameza* following him; for *Ameſa* had with great and humble ſute obtained of his vnckle, that he might not as he well deſerued, be carried bound amongſt the other captiues: H
Laſt of all came *Scanderbeg* his victorious ſouldiours in goodly order, euery man leading a ſpare horſe taken from the enemy, and loaded with ſpoyle. So when he was come to CROIA, and there of his ſubiects ioyfully receiued, he brake vp his army, and gaue euerie man leaue at his pleaſure to depart. The Sanzacke, and *Ameſa*, were committed to ſafe keeping, vntill farther order was taken for them. *Ameſa* afterwards was for his treaſon worthely condemned to perpetuall priſon, and by an embaſſador from *Scanderbeg* ſent vnto king *Alphonſus* to NAPLES, there to be kept in durance; and with him was alſo ſent an honourable preſent of part of the ſpoile taken from the Turks, in token of the victorie. What became afterward of this *Ameſa*, concerneth not much the courſe of our hiſtorie; yet to ſatisfie the deſirous, I thinke it not amiſſe with him to ſtray a little out of the way. I

When *Ameſa* had remained a yeare in priſon at NAPLES, *Scanderbeg* vnderſtanding of the death of *Alphonſus*, by his Embaſſadour requeſted of *Ferdinand* his ſonne, to haue *Ameſa* reſtored to him againe. By which meanes he was brought backe againe into EPIRVS, and caſt in priſon at CROIA; but not in ſuch ſtraight manner as before: for *Scanderbeg* according to his accuſtomed clemencie, began now to forget the iniurie to him before done; and at laſt ouercome with the continuall ſupplication and teares of his nephew, pardoned him his life; and reſtoring him to his former libertie, receiued him alſo into his former fauor. But *Ameſa* remembring what pledges of his loyaltie he had left with *Mahomet* at CONSTANTINOPLE, and feariug what would become of his wife & children, if he ſhould haſtely vſe that his libertie, giuing his vnckle moſt humble thanks, brake vnto him his mind concerning that matter, as followeth: K

The ſpeech of Ameſa to Scanderbeg.

Whereas you of your owne gracious goodneſſe onely, without any deſert of mine, haue regarded my life and welfare, it behoooeth mee alſo to bee carefull for the life of others: leaſt whileſt I receiue your exceeding bountie with too much deſire of mine owne health and honour, I doe at this preſent, by this ſame benefit of yours, caſt away them, whom I haue long ſithence by mine owne treacherie vndone. Mine vnfortunate and guiltleſſe Wife is with Mahomet, *my little and innocent Children are with him alſo: theſe yet liue, and ſhall liue, ſo long as the tyrant ſhall thinke, that I line in heart his; but when hee ſhall once perceiue by this your gracious dealing that I am fallen from him, the cruell creditor will foorthwith cut and rend in peeces the pledges of my faith, and their inno-* L
cent blood ſhall pay the guilt of their Fathers offence. Wherefore the Othoman *tyrant is of mee by ſome deuice to be deceiued, that I may in the meane time preſerue thoſe pledges, vntill I may by ſome fit occaſion afterwards redeeme the ſame. I will by your leaue this night take my flight out of* CROIA, *as if I had broken priſon, and eſcaped againſt your will, and ſo flie vnto* Mahomet, *making the greateſt ſhew I can of my wonted loue and loyaltie towards him: not omitting to heare, or ſpeake vnto that credulous king ſuch things concerning your eſtate, as I was wont in my better fortune: that hauing ſo cleared my ſelfe of all ſuſpition, which he perhaps hath conceiued by reaſon of my captiuitie and long ſtay with you, I may at length, with my Wife and Children, ſo eſcape from him: Wherein you may helpe me much, if you ſhall openly make ſhew as if you were greeued with my eſcape, and ſeeme to be highly offended with the keepers of the priſon for the ſame. In the meane time,* M
whileſt I ſhall ſtay in the tyrants court expecting ſome fit time for my eſcape, I will ſtand you in ſtead of an intelligencer, ſo that your enemie ſhall not to my knowledge either attempt or goe about any thing againſt you, which ſhall be kept from your hearing or knowledge.

Scanderbeg refuſed not to graunt whatſoeuer he had requeſted, but ſaid vnto him:

Ameſa,

A Ameſa, *ſithence we haue granted you life, with all the good things thereunto belonging, wee will not prohibit you to vſe that our gift to your moſt good, and to the preſeruation of them who for euer may moſt iuſtly call vpon you, as debtor vnto them, for their welfare and libertie. Goe thy waies, proceed, take thy time and occaſion as ſeemeth vnto thee beſt; and at length reforme thy ſelfe, whileſt thou yet haſt ſufficient time and ſpace. We now beleeue you in all things, and well like of this your deuiſe:* Ameſa *you ſhall herein deceiue no man but your ſelfe, if you ſhall longer follow the faith and court of the barbarous King, whereas like danger is both of bodie and ſoule both to thee and thine. Whenſoeuer thou ſhalt returne vnto vs, thou canſt not doe vs a greater pleaſure: and in what regard thou haſt heretofore beene with vs, in the ſame thou ſhalt be with vs againe.* *The anſwere of Scanderbeg to Ameſa.*

B The ſame night *Ameſa* by ſecret order from *Scanderbeg*, eſcaped both out of priſon and out of CROIA: and in the morning it was all ouer the citie, that he was gone, and the keepers ſharply rebuked for their negligence. He comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, eaſily perſwaded *Mahomet*, that he was by chance eſcaped, with all things elſe that he told him: yet was he not for all that, ſo well graced of him as before; not for any diſtruſt he had in the man, but for the euill ſucceſſe he had in the former warres. Now whether *Ameſa* neglected his promiſed returne, or could find no opportunitie to performe the ſame, is vncertaine: but certaine it is, that ſhortly after he died at CONSTANTINOPLE, poiſoned as was thought by the commandement of *Mahomet*, who could no longer endure the ſight of him, whom he reckoned the au- *The death of Ameſa.*
C thor of the notable ouerthrow receiued in ÆMATHIA. This was the wofull end of this noble and valiant man, well worthie of remembrance, had not his haughtie thoughts ſoared too high with the deſire of ſoueraigntie.

When *Mahomet* vnderſtood in what manner *Iſaack Baſſa* was ouerthrowne, and his armie diſcomfited, he was therewith much greeued, and iuſtly blamed the Baſſaes ſecuritie: yet ſuch was his credit with his ſoueraigne, that the matter was in better ſort paſſed ouer than was ſuppoſed it would haue beene. Neuertheleſſe, *Mahomet* in reuenge thereof would willingly haue imployed all his forces vpon *Scanderbeg*, if his more vrgent affaires would haue ſo permitted. For at the ſame time, beſides that great warres began to ariſe betwixt him and the Venetians (which continued for many yeeres after) he was certainly enformed, That the Chriſtian Princes
D were making a ſtrong confederation againſt him. At which time *Mahomet* diſdaining openly to ſue for peace at *Scanderbegs* hands, cunningly practiſed by ſuch as were ſent to redeeme the priſoners, and alſo by the Sanzacke himſelfe, to perſwade *Scanderbeg* to require peace of him; aſſuring him, that if he did but aske it, it would for a long time be eaſily obtained. Which thing *Scanderbeg* well acquainted with the Turkiſh policie, vtterly refuſed to doe. Wherfore *Mahomet* for defence of his countries bordering vpon EPIRVS, ſent two of his moſt expert captaines, *Sinam*, and *Hamur*, with each of them foureteene thouſand ſouldiers into MACEDONIA, expreſly charging them not to enter at any time or vpon any occaſion, into EPIRVS, or by any meanes to prouoke *Scanderbeg*: which his commandement they ſo well obſerued, that the Epirots by the ſpace of almoſt two yeeres enioyed the fruits of peace, although there was no peace at all
E concluded. So that the remembrance of old iniuries wearing out with time, at length by the mediation of the ſame captains, a peace for a yeere was agreed vpon betwixt *Mahomet* and *Scanderbeg*. In which time he paſſed ouer into APVLIA, and there notably aided King *Ferdinand* againſt the French, the proceeding wherein, as not pertinent to our hiſtorie, I of purpoſe paſſe ouer. *A peace for a yeere concluded betwixt Mahomet and Scanderbeg.*

After that the time of the peace before concluded was expired, all things now going well with *Mahomet*, as he deſired, he determined according to his wonted maner to trouble the quiet eſtate of *Scanderbeg*: and ſo ſending a new ſupplie of ſouldiers vnto *Synam beg*, who then lay with a ſtrong garriſon vpon the frontiers of EPIRVS, commanded him with all his power to make wars vpon *Scanderbeg*. *Synam* accordingly, with an armie of twentie thouſand men entred into EPIRVS, where he was forthwith encountered by *Scanderbeg*, and his armie vtterly ouerthrown,
F ſo that but few eſcaped by flight with *Synam* himſelfe. Preſently after he ſent *Aſam-beg*, another of his captaines, into the ſame ſeruice, with an armie of thirtie thouſand, whom *Scanderbeg* alſo in plaine battaile vanquiſhed at OCRIDA: in which battaile *Aſam* himſelfe was ſore wounded, and finding no way to eſcape, was glad to yeeld himſelfe priſoner to *Scanderbeg*, by whom he was courteouſly vſed, and afterwards ſet at libertie. *Iuſſum-beg* following *Aſam* with eighteene thouſand into EPIRVS, was ſet vpon by *Scanderbeg* alſo, and hauing loſt part of his armie, was

glad

glad by ſpeedie flight to ſaue himſelfe with the reſt. After all this, *Caraza-beg*, an old Captaine G
and a man of great experience (who had beene a great commaunder, and a companion with *Scanderbeg* in the time of old *Amurath)* requeſted of *Mahomet*, That he might proue his fortune againſt his old acquaintance *Scanderbeg*, aſſuring him of better ſucceſſe than before. The long and approued experience of this old leader put *Mahomet* in ſuch hope of good ſpeed, that he gaue preſent order for the leuying of ſuch an armie as *Caraza* had requeſted, and for ten thouſand mo than he had at the firſt required. With this ſtrong armie, in number almoſt forty thouſand, *Caraza* ſet forward, hauing before filled the minds of men with the expectation of ſome greater matter to haue been by him done. *Scanderbeg* vnderſtanding certainly that *Caraza* was comming, ſtood more in doubt of the man than of his power: and therefore aſſembled greater H
forces than he had vſually done before: and to welcome him, ſent two thouſand of his beſt and moſt expert ſouldiors ſecretly into the enemies country; who lying in ambuſh amongſt the woods and mountaines, whereby *Caraza* muſt needs paſſe, ſuddenly ſet vpon foure thouſand horſemen, the forerunners of *Caraza* his armie; who marching diſorderedly, and fearing no ſuch matter, were in a trice ouerthrowne, and moſt part of them ſlaine: thoſe few that eſcaped, fled backe again to the armie, as if they had come in poaſt to bring tidings of ſome haſtie newes to the Generall. With which ſo vnfortunat a beginning, *Caraza* was ſo diſcomfited, that if he might for ſhame, he could haue beene content to haue returned againe and gone no farther: yet for his honours ſake holding on his way, he came into Epirvs; where whileſt he was (after the manner of old men) long in reſoluing what courſe to take, he was vpon the ſudden aſſailed I
by *Scanderbeg*, before he could well put his men in order of battaile. At which time there fell ſuch a vehement ſhower of raine, that both the armies were glad to retire before any great hurt was done. Three dayes together it rained cõtinually (for it was about the later end of Autumne) all which time *Scanderbeg* ceaſed not in one place or other to trouble the Turks campe: ſo that the old Generall, partly diſtempered with the extremitie of the weather, which for the violence thereof he tooke to be ominous; and more diſcouraged with the reſtleſſe attempts of *Scanderbeg*, riſe with his armie, and retiring back, by the ſame way he came returned to Constantinople. Where he was well derided of *Mahomet*, that hauing promiſed ſo much, had performed ſo little: yet afterwards was again by him in ſome ſort commended, for that he had with leſſe loſſe looked vpon *Scanderbeg*, than other his Generals before ſent againſt him. K

Mahomet perceiuing that *Scanderbeg* was not to be ſubdued but with ſuch forces as he was not then at leiſure to imploy vpon him, thought it not amiſſe to proue if he could by faire ſpeeches & glorious ſhewes of fained friendſhip get within him, and ſo bring him to confuſion. For which purpoſe he ſent vnto him an Embaſſadour, with rich preſents, and letters of this purport.

Sultan Mahomet, Lord and Emperour of the Eaſt and of the Weſt,
and of all parts of the World, vnto *Scanderbeg*, prince of
Albania and Epirvs, ſendeth greeting.

The letters of Mahomet to Scanderbeg.

I thinke friend Scanderbeg, *that no acquaintance can be greater, or friendſhip more firme, then that* L
which hath growne of long and mutuall conuerſing and liuing together: and eſpecially if the ſame haue taken beginning from childhood and tender yeares, as you know it hath done betwixt vs two; who haue of long time, euen from our childhood, liued together in great loue and friendſhip, when as you firſt lay as hoſtage in my fathers court. Wherefore beloued Scanderbeg, *when as I call to remembrance all thoſe things, with others, wherewith our youthfull yeares were then delighted; and being mindfull alſo of all thoſe things which you haue oftentimes done for the aduancement of our empire and kingdome, and for the glorie of the* Othoman *familie; I cannot chuſe but imbrace thee with a ſingular zeale and affection. For I take God to witnes, that nothing could chance more welcome or pleaſing vnto me in my life, then to haue thee with mee, and for a while to enioy thy companie. Neither needeſt thou to feare any thing to come vnto me, for that my ſouldiors without my knowledge or commaundement haue of late broken in* M
and ſpoiled thy kingdome: which thing as reaſon required, was vnto me exceedingly diſpleaſing: neither did it any whit offend me, that they were by thy forces vanquiſhed and ouercome, and ſo receiued the iuſt reward of their euill deſerts, and that all things fell out with thee according to the equitie of thy cauſe, and as thy heart could haue deſired. But to let theſe things paſſe, the remembrance of our old loue and friendſhip perſuadeth me to come to agreement, and to ioine together with thee in a perpetuall league

of

A *of amitie: to the intent that our ancient acquaintance and familiaritie, which by reaſon of long abſence is almoſt worne out, may againe take life, encreaſe, and be confirmed. Of which peace, let theſe be the capitulations, if they ſhall ſeeme vnto you reaſonable: for I know it belongeth vnto him that requireth not the peace, to appoint the conditions of the ſame. Firſt, we require of you freely and peaceably to ſuffer our armies to paſſe through your kingdome, for the beſieging of the cities and inuading of the countries ſubiect to the Venetians our enemies: Then, to deliuer vnto vs your ſonne* Iohn *in hoſtage, whom we will alwayes vſe as one of our owne naturall children: And afterwards, that our marchants and men of trade may peaceably come and trauell into all parts of your kingdome with their marchandiſe, and there freely and ſafely vſe their negotiation: Laſt of all, that your ſelfe in perſon may at your plea-*
B *ſure ſafely and without all feare repaire vnto vs, and in like manner returne againe. In which things if you will yeeld vnto vs, I promiſe in the faith of a King, to grant vnto you and your kingdome ſincere peace, with perpetuall tranquillitie; and that there ſhall not be any more deerer vnto me than your ſelfe; and will neuer to the vttermoſt of our power permit your kingdome to be infeſted or moleſted by any of our ſubiects, or others. Whatſoeuer you ſhall farther receiue from vs by the mouth of our embaſſadour* Muſtapha, *you may thereto giue full credence. Fare you well. From our imperiall palace at* CONSTANTINOPLE *the* 10 *of May* 1461.

Scanderbeg hauing receiued theſe letters, and well conſidered of the ſame, returned him anſwere by the ſame meſſenger as followeth:

C The ſouldier of Chriſt Ieſus, *George Caſtriot*, otherwiſe called *Scanderbeg*, Prince of the Albanenſes and Epirots, vnto *Mahomet* Prince of the Turks, greeting.

The anſwere of Scanderbeg to the former letters of Mahomet.

Your letters (moſt magnificent) are deliuered vnto vs: wherein you write of your exceeding loue and ſingular affection towards vs, confirmed as you ſay by old acquaintance: which being growne vp betwixt vs, and by tract of time firmely rooted and as it were into nature conuerted, ſhall alwaies retaine his force and ſtrength. But for as much as it ſeemeth vnto you good to awake the ſame, hauing of long time and many yeeres lien as it were aſleepe; and to make a motion that we ſhould enter into a certaine new league and confederation, whereof amongſt other conditions of the league by you propounded, this
D *is one, That your forces may freely paſſe through my kingdome, to inuade the Venetians: Vnto this your requeſt, worthie* Mahomet, *it ſtandeth neither with equitie nor with mine honour to conſent, for ſo much as the Venetians are my eſpeciall good friends and confederates. As for that you deſire to haue my ſonne* Iohn *with you in hoſtage for the better aſſurance of the peace betwixt vs, I ſhould peraduenture doe it (moſt noble* Mahomet) *if fatherly affection would giue me leaue: but ſithence I haue no moe but him, and he as yet a tender child, it is not for the good either of him or vs, to haue him now taken from vs, when as he ought of vs to be moſt tenderly cheriſhed, and carefully inſtructed. As for that you requeſted concerning your marchants, that they may freely and ſafely trafficke into my kingdome at their pleaſure, I can be content to yeeld thereunto, and wiſh heartily that there might be a free entercourſe for our marchants indifferently with their commodities into both our kingdomes. Farther, whereas you earneſtly perſwade me boldly and without feare to come vnto you, that by ſuch enteruiew and perſonall preſence, our great deſire, growne of long abſence, might be the better ſatisfied: in this thing moſt excellent*
E *Prince, I cannot but praiſe your moſt honourable diſpoſition, and commend your good nature; and would therefore boldly follow your perſwaſion, if my other vrgent affaires, with the gouernment of my kingdome, would ſo permit. But what ſhould I doe? My ſonne* Iohn *is (as I ſaid before) but little, and as yet vnfit to gouerne: and my people (as you know) loue alwayes to haue ſomething to doe; being by nature a fierce and reſtleſſe nation, whom I my ſelfe haue much adoe to rule and gouerne: For all that, I will come vnto you according to your deſire, expecting only a more commodious time. So fare you well, and loue me ſtill. From our campe the* 30 *of May*, 1461.

When *Mahomet* had receiued theſe letters, and well peruſed the ſame, he writ to him againe
F in manner following:

Sultan *Mahomet*, Emperour of all the parts of the World, vnto *Scanderbeg*, Prince of the Albanenſes and Epirots, greeting.

The letters of Mahomet to Scanderbeg for the concluding of a perpetuall peace betwixt them.

Your letters we haue receiued by our embaſſadour Muſtapha, *wherein you giue vs to vnderſtand, that*

you like of none of the conditions of peace by vs propounded, but onely that concerning our marchants and G
men of trade, that they might freely and at their pleasure vse their traffique and trades with their mar-
chandise to and fro : and vpon this condition onely you grant vs peace. This your offer we accept of, and
all the rest of your excuses we willingly admit : wherefore I promise vnto thee (my louing Scanderbeg)
and will performe all that thou doest require, and vpon that resolution rest : and will so long as I liue ob-
serue and keepe a sincere and inuiolable peace with thee for euer, except thou first giue cause of violating
the same. And for that purpose haue we with our vsuall and imperiall seale signed these our letters,
which we by our embassadour Mustapha *haue sent vnto thee, as thereby confirming vnto thee this per-*
petuall peace. Wherefore you also (if you be so content) may subscribe, and with your seale confirme
this of ours, that I in like manner may also haue your like consent and agreement. And would farther, H
that you would command knowledge thereof to be made by open proclamation through all your kingdome,
as I will in like manner cause to be done through mine. And for the more manifestation of this my loue
towards you, I would also that you should vnderstand, That of mine owne meere motion and bountie,
I doe freely giue vnto you all those things, which you by force of armes haue taken from my father in
ALBANIA *and* EPIRVS, *so that you may possesse and enioy the same, as if they had alwayes beene*
yours and your ancestors : Wherefore I giue, grant, and confirme vnto thee and thy heires, all the right,
title, or interest, which I heretofore had therein : and from henceforth will alwayes account and repute
thee as Prince of ALBANIA *and* EPIRVS, *and so call thee. And as I haue promised thee in the faith*
of a King, will neuer hereafter with warres molest thee or thine, except thou thy selfe giue cause thereof.
Wherefore after you haue with your seale confirmed these things, you may commend them to our faithfull I
embassadour Mustapha, *to be by him brought vnto vs : vnto whom I would you should in all things giue*
full credit. So fare you well, and render vs loue for loue. From our imperiall palace at CONSTAN-
TINOPLE, *the 22 of Iune, 1461.*

A peace concluded betwixt Mahomet and Scanderbeg.

Vpon receit of these letters a peace was concluded betwixt *Mahomet* and *Scanderbeg*, and the same by publike proclamations solemnly published through both their kingdomes, to the great reioycing of many. Which peace was for a season faithfully kept on both sides, vntill that the Turks lying in garrison vpon the frontiers of EPIRVS, began after their wonted manner againe to fetch preyes and booties out of the countrey. Of which iniuries *Scanderbeg* by letters complained to *Mahomet* : who answered that he was altogether ignorant thereof, and seemed in shew to be much offended with the insolencie of the doers thereof : and forthwith caused many things to be againe restored. By which meanes the peace before concluded, was still as before continued. K

A little before the conclusion of the aforesaid peace, great warres began to arise betwixt the Turks & the Venetians : who all this while being in league with the Turke, peaceably followed their traffique and trades of marchandise, little or nothing at all regarding their neighbours harmes and miseries, vntill that now the flame and fire began to take hold vpon their owne houses, and as it were to awaken them out of a dead sleepe. For *Mahomet* after he had subuerted the empire of CONSTANTINOPLE, and driuen *Thomas* and *Demetrius* the Emperours brethren out of PELOPONESVS (now called MOREA) rested not so contented, but by his lieutenants L
and other great captaines began to disturbe the quiet of the Venetians, who then held in their possession METHONE, CORONE, NEAPOLIS, ARGOS, with diuers other strong townes in PELOPONESVS, standing vpon the sea coast. And now it chanced, that about this time, *Iosue*, *Mahomets* lieutenant in PELOPONESVS, had by the treason of a Greeke priest, vpon the suddaine surprised the citie of ARGOS : And *Omares* another of his great captaines, hauing first spoiled the countrey about NAVPACTVM (now LEPANTO) entered farther into the territorie of the Venetians about METHONE and CORONE, making hauocke of whatsoeuer came in his way. With which iniuries, plainly tending to open warre, the Venetian Senatours being much troubled, sate oftentimes in counsell, deliberating with much care what course to take in a matter of so great importance. Some being of opinion, that it were best to send embas- M
sadors to *Mahomet*, so to make proofe if the matter might by faire means be redressed: others on the contrary part deeming it to be to no purpose so to doe; for as much as such great and manifest outrages, nothing differing from plaine hostilitie, could not possibly be done without the tyrants knowledge and expresse command. After the Senatours had oftentimes met together, & with many great reasons debated the matter to and fro, and yet for all that concluded nothing

(as

A (as in consultations of great matters with a multitude, it most commonly falleth out to be a harder matter, and to require longer time, to bring the multitude to some certaine resolution, than it is afterwards to performe the same in action.) In this so great a diuersitie of opinions concerning so weightie a cause, at length one *Victor Capella*, a noble gentleman and graue Senator, stept vp in the middest of the Senate, and there franckly deliuered this notable speech vnto the rest concerning the matter propounded, as followeth:

The notable speech of Victor Capella, to perswad the Venetians to take vp armes against Mahomet.

I haue before this at other times by long experience often noted (most noble Senatours) that in all our greatest consultations of matters most concerning our common state, some are alwayes so addicted or rather wedded vnto their owne conceits, that they can hardly with patience endure to heare B *the reasonable opinion of others contrary to their owne; the chiefe cause of our slow resolutions. Wherefore I haue thought it good, briefely at this time to call vpon you for resolution: for as much as I see we must of necessitie take vp armes, be we neuer so loth or vnwilling: For to my vnderstanding, you doe but betray the state, in delaying the time to make present warre vpon the barbarous enemie. Yet many principall men amongst vs, aduise vs to beware, that we doe not rashly or vnaduisedly determine of matters of so great consequence; and thinke it requisit, that we should send embassadours vnto the tyrant, to expostulate with him his vniust dealing in breaking his faith and league; and withall to request him to obserue the conditions of the peace before agreed vpon, if happily he may rather by perswasion than by armes be mooued to change his purpose: and if by this meanes nothing* C *may be obtained, then at length they thinke it necessarie to resolue to make warre vpon him. They alledge further, That if we shall attempt warre, our cities in the continent bordering vpon the Ionian, in* PELOPONESVS, *with diuers others of ours in the firme land, will not be able to hold out very long, but for want of necessaries must needs perish with the first of the trouble; besides that, if those places shall be wasted and spoiled, great losse (as they say) shall ensue thereby vnto most of vs in priuat: the greatest motiue (perhaps) wherefore they thinke it most conuenient to deferre the warres, and for that purpose to send our embassadours vnto him. Of which embassage, first by your leaue a few words. At such time as these our embassadours, men of great wisedome and reach, not long since came vnto him, he had them in no regard; but dallying off the time with fraudulent, deceitfull, and glosing speeches, did indeed such things to the contrary as we least hoped: wherefore I can-* D *not well deuise (if we should send them, or such others againe) what especiall thing of all that we then gaue them in charge, they should now propound vnto him, hauing already said what is to be said; except they should say, That whereas we are not of sufficient strength and power to wage warre against him, we would be glad to decide the matter by talke, and by that simple meanes to redresse our iniuries; and vpon the matter, to shew our selues prest and readie to fall to agreement with him, according as shall stand with his good pleasure and liking. Truly this were good plaine dealing, but it will not serue our turne:* ARGOS *is alreadie taken from vs, and hee maketh open warre vpon vs: wherein he doth but prooue our courage, and trie how long wee will put vp these iniuries. If wee will quietly digest these, hee will then confidently and without feare proceed further: but if wee shall as best beseemeth vs, valiantly resist him, hee shall bee glad of such rest as wee shall giue him; and when hee* E *knoweth not well which way to turne himselfe, shall bee as glad as wee to lay downe armes and to seeke for peace: whereas if wee shall doe otherwise, I feare wee shall repent our selues when it will be too late. It is reported, that as soone as he was come into* PELOPONESVS, *hee went himselfe in person vnto* EVBŒA, *to view the citie of* CALCIS: *and going a second time out of* PELOPONESVS, *sounded the depth of the passage, and came within the sight of the cittie, of purpose to haue assaulted it, if hee had found oportunitie: at which time hee himselfe rid ouer that strait of the sea betwixt* BŒOTIA *and* EVBŒA *with his horse, and curiously viewed in what place hee might most conueniently passe ouer with his armie to besiege the citie. Verely these are the most manifest signes of war, whereby any man may sufficiently prooue, that hee hath long since resolued (so soone as he is readie) to make warre vpon vs, whilest wee are yet dreaming in the middest of our long consultations. Hee will pro-* F *ceed in the warres hee hath begun: and cutting vs short, augment his owne dominions. Then will hee blame his lieutenants and captaines, as authors thereof: but yet still bee doing that best serueth his purpose. And whilest no man opposeth himselfe against him, his power dayly encreasing, hee will doe the best he can suddainely to swallow vs vp, being vnprouided. For hee may easily raise great forces, that by sufferance of others, maketh himselfe of great strength there where hee had before no footing. Shall wee then say that wee haue no warres with this encroching tyrant? Some I know feed themselues*

and others also, with vaine hopes, saying, That he will neuer turne his forces vpon vs, nor ruinate our G
estate, although hee might at ease doe it: wherefore (say they) let vs refraine from warres, and vse
our peace and quietnesse, yet omitting nothing in the meane time that shall bee needefull for our safe-
tie. But for as much as it plainely appeareth vnto all men by that which is before said, That hee hath
already indeed proclaimed warre against vs, inuading our countries, surprising our cities, and kil-
ling our people: Whether thinke you it more expedient or profitable for vs, to sit still and suffer our
dominions to bee taken from vs, or rather by open warre to make the barbarous king know the great-
nesse of our power and strength? For if wee shall enter into open warre, wee being in armes suffici-
ently prouided for all euents, and with carefull eye attending all his attempts, shall easily auoid both
himselfe and all his deuises: who if hee bee suffered to runne still on forward with his prosperous suc- H
cesse, people will dayly more and more fall vnto him, in hope to liue the better, as his friends. For which
cause, I thinke it better to preferre an honourable warre before a doubtfull peace. As for delay, it hath
hurt many great States, and our selues most of all: whereby we haue in sort betrayed the empire of
GRECIA, with the wofull Emperour himselfe, when as this tyrant battered the wals of CONSTAN-
TINOPLE: for our traffique was much holpen by the Grecians, whom we then left to themselues. Af-
ter that, we despised and reiected the pitifull complaints of the Princes of PELOPONESVS, who
with teares craued our aid: and now wee see that famous countrey lost, and fallen into his hands,
through our sloth and negligence. Of late, when as the King of BOSNA humbly requested our aid,
and promised fully to requite our courtesie, and whatsoeuer else we should doe in his behalfe; we suffe-
red his kingdome to be lost, and himselfe to be cruelly murdered of the Turks. For all these things I
by vs thus neglected, we cannot escape the infamous report of all the rest of the nations in EVROPE,
but that they will say, That we for the greedie desire of trade and filthie gaine, haue forsaken, and
for our parts betrayed whole kingdomes and nations, agreeing with vs both in manner and religion;
and to haue stood still, looking on, vntill they were subdued and brought in thraldome by the Turks.
Wherefore in few words to shut vp the matter, if we shall ioyne in league with the Hungarians, and
enter into armes, we shall so be able to keepe our owne: whereas if we shall vse delayes, and hunt af-
ter peace, we shall in short time see, that he will suddenly deuoure vs, being vnprouided, and wrest
from vs all our prouinces and territories which border vpon him. And therefore it is (in my opini-
on) best to send our imbassadours into HVNGARIE with a great masse of money to stirre vp that
warlike nation into the fellowship of this war. And beside the nauie we now haue in readinesse, to put to K
sea as many moe ships and gallies as wee are able. The great Bishop also is not to bee forgotten, but by
all meanes to be drawne as a chiefe man into this warre. Besides all this, wee must doe what wee can to
raise vp rebellion against the Turke in PELOPONESVS: which will bee no hard matter to bring to
passe. For if the Poloponesians rise in armes with one of their poore princes which reuolted from the
Turkish king, and forsaking all that they had, aduentured themselues into all manner of perill and
danger: what thinke you they will doe, if they shall see so great forces comming both by sea and land
against the Turkish king? It were good also, that wee should send two thousand Italian horsemen into
PELOPONESVS, to animate the people: who when they shall see vs thus to proceede, will vndoub-
tedly presently reuolt from the Turks, and yeeld themselues with their countrey vnto vs, from whence
wee may most commodiously vex and molest this tyrant: For there is no where better entrance into his L
kingdome, than by the way of PELOPONESVS. So that ioyning in league with the Hungarians, we
shall bee set him on euery side: they all along the riuer of DANVBIVS, and we out of PELOPONESVS.
Let vs not therefore sit still with our hands in our bosoms, suffering our countreys to bee taken from vs,
and our subiects made bondslaues to the Turks: but encouraging them by our example, animate them to
take vp armes, and valiantly to resist the cruell and barbarous tyrant.

The Venetians take vp armes against the Turk.

The greater part of the Senat mooued with this graue Senatours speech, decreed without
delay to make warres, and to send their embassadours to the Pope, the king of HVNGARIE,
and other the Christian princes their neighbours, to pray aid of them in these warres against
the Turkes. According to this decree, the Venetians for defence of their territorie sent one M
Bertholdus Este, a valiant captaine, with an armie into PELOPONESVS: where at his first com-
ming, he in short time recouered the citie of ARGOS before lost. And departing thence, mar-
ched through the country with his armie of fifteene thousand men vnto the strait of CORINTH,
called ISTHMVS. At which place *Aloisius Lauretanus*, Admirall for the Venetians (by ap-
pointment before made) met him: and there ioyning their forces together, with great labour

in

A in the ſpace of fifteene daies fortified all that ſtrait from the Ionian vnto the ſea Ægeum, with a continuall rampier and double ditch, in length about fiue miles. In which worke they vſed the helpe of thirtie thouſand men: and in doing thereof, were much furthered by the ruines of the old wall before deſtroyed by *Amurath*. The Venetian commanders hauing fortified this ſtrait, encamped before CORINTH, and laied ſtrait ſiege vnto it: where at the ſecond aſſault, *Bertholdus* the Generall deſirous by his owne forwardneſſe to encourage his ſouldiours, was in that aſſault grieuouſly wounded with a ſtone, caſt downe vpon him from the wall, of which hurt he ſhortly after died. Neuertheleſſe, the ſiege was ſtill continued by *Betinus Calcinatius*, who ſucceeded in *Bartholdus* his place. But whileſt the Venetians lay thus at the ſiege of Co-
B RINTH, ſuddainly newes was brought vnto the campe that *Mahomet* was comming with a great armie himſelfe in perſon to raiſe the ſiege, and to deſtroy the new fortifications at ISTHMVS. Whereupon the Venetians left the ſiege, with purpoſe to haue defended the late fortified ſtrait. But after that it was certainely knowne, that *Mahomet* was euen now at hand with an armie of foureſcore thouſand Turkes, *Betinus* diſtruſting with his ſmall number to be able to defend the ſtrait againſt ſo puiſſant an armie, left the place ſo lately before fortified, and with all his armie retired to NEAPOLIS to keepe the ſea coaſt.

Shortly after, *Mahomet* without any reſiſtance at all entered with a world of men by the ſtrait into PELOPONESVS: and when he had with the great ſlaughter of the countrie people roamed vp and downe about ARGOS, he came to NEAPOLIS, and in moſt terrible manner aſ-
C ſaulted the citie twice: both which times he was notably repulſed by the Venetians, and many of his men ſlaine. Departing thence, he deſtroyed and waſted the countrie about METHONE (now MODON) and CORONE; and aſſaulted the citie of IVNCVM, but with no better ſucceſſe than he had before NEAPOLIS. Wherefore Winter now drawing on, he returned with his armie to CONSTANTINOPLE.

After his departure, the Venetians ſpoiled all that part of ARCHADIA which was ſubiect to the Turkes, requiting him with like iniuries as he had done them before. Not long after, *Lauretanus* the Venetian Admirall had the iſland of LEMNOS deliuered vnto him by one *Cominius*, a famous pyrat, who had ſurpiſed the ſame, and taken it from the Turkes: but diſtruſting how he ſhould be able to keepe the ſame, deliuered it ouer vnto the Venetians. Shortly after, *Vrſatus*
D *Iuſtinianus*, a great magnifico amongſt the Venetians, was ſent to ſucceed *Lauretanus* their Admirall: But whileſt he was ſcouring the Ægeum with a fleet of two and thirtie great gallies, *Andreas Dandalus*, Generall of their forces at land, inconſiderately encountering with the Turkes horſemen betweene MANTINEA and PITHEME, was by them ouerthrowne and ſlaine, and with him diuerſe other gentlemen of great account. In which skirmiſh fifteene hundred of the Venetians were ſlaine alſo with their Generall. And as fortune is neuer more conſtant than in miſchiefe, ſo at the ſame time *Vrſatus*, Generall at ſea, landing his men in the iſland of LESBOS, beſieged the citie of MITYLENE, and gaue thereunto two great aſſaults, wherein he loſt fiue thouſand men. And vnderſtanding that the Turkes fleet was comming to relieue the citie, raiſed the ſiege, and ſailed into EVBŒA, and from thence paſſed ouer into PELOPONESVS: where he ſhort-
E ly after died for ſorrow and griefe of mind. In whoſe place the Venetians ſent another famous captaine called *Iacobus Lauretanus*.

The Venetians enter into confederation with other Chriſtian princes againſt the Turke.

The Venetians well conſidering the great power of the Turkiſh emperor, laboured by their embaſſadours, to draw as many of the Chriſtian princes as they could into the fellowſhip of this warre; but eſpecially the great Biſhop, by whoſe meanes they were in good hope to be greatly ſtrengthened. *Pius* the ſecond of that name was then the great Biſhop, who at firſt anſwered the Venetian embaſſadours, That he muſt take away the little Turke, before he had any thing to do with the great: meaning thereby, *Sigiſmundus Maleteſta*, prince of ARIMINVM, whom he deadly hated, for that he tooke part with the French againſt the Aragonians. Howbeit (the warres in ITLIE being well appeaſed) *Pius* ſtill ſollicited by the Venetians,
F made great preparation againſt the Turkes, giuing it out, That he would in perſon himſelfe goe vnto thoſe warres: and by his authoritie, then much regarded, procured great aid out of GERMANIE, FRANCE, SPAINE, and other countries alſo farther off: at which time alſo voluntarie men in great numbers reſorted out of all parts of Chriſtendome into ITALIE, readie to aduenture their liues in thoſe religious warres. At the ſame time alſo the Venetians had with much adoe by the working of *Paulus Angelus*, Archbiſhop of DIRRACHIVM, perſuaded *Scanderbeg*

derbeg to renounce the league which he had before made with the Turke, and to enter into arms againe: which he presently did, and vpon the sudden spoyled the borders of the Turks dominions next vnto him. Wherwith *Mahomet* was no losse troubled, than with all the rest of the great preparation of the Christians against him: fearing that (as it was then reported) he should bee made generall of the Christian armie, which *Mahomet* feared might tend to the vtter ruine of his kingdome: so dreadfull was the name of *Scanderbeg* amongst the Turks. Wherefore thinking it most expedient for his affaires, to reconcile him if it were possible, by his embassadour sent for that purpose, writ vnto him as followeth: G

Sultan *Mahomet*, Emperour of the East and of the West, vnto *Scanderbeg*, prince of the Albanenses and of the Epirots, greeting. H

The letters of Mahomet to Scanderbeg.

I haue alwaies had thy fidelitie and vpright dealing in great admiration, most noble prince Scanderbeg: *for which cause, I thought it a thing incredible, that thou being a prince of such an heroicall and princely perfection, should so inconsiderately and without any occasion breake the faith and league which thou not long since solemnely contracted with me. For as I am aduertised, thou hast entred into the confines of our dominions with a great armie, and with fire and sword destroying all that thou couldest, hast carried away with thee a great bootie. Of which thing I know right well, that the Venetians are the onely cause, by whose counsell and persuasion thou hast beene set on to doe this deed; and seduced by their allurements and subtill persuasions, hast made war vpon me, and art become the faithlesse breaker* I *of thine owne league, and of the sacred law of nations. Yet doe I little or nothing blame thee therefore, regarding more the cause of the ignominie, than the despight it selfe, and lay the blame vpon them who haue alwaies beene my foes and capitall enemies, rather than vpon thee. But alas, what is this vnto me* (Scanderbeg) *that thou hast done, which possesse so many and so large dominions? Diddest thou thinke to doe so great hurt vnto our kingdome, by spoyling a little peece of our countrie, and by stealing our cattell, more like a theefe and robber than an open enemie? Which thing I yet account not worth the name of an iniurie. But if thou thinke it so good, proceed in these thy doings: for I make more account of thy friendship and loue, than of whatsoeuer is to me deerest: because as thou knowest I haue alwaies borne vnto thee an especiall fauour, and loued thee most entirely. And therefore as oft as I call to remembrance our tender yeares and old familiaritie whilest we liued together in my fathers court at* K
HADRIANOPLE, *I cannot but thinke my selfe bound vnto thee in all courtesie. And therefore my good* Scanderbeg, *I most heartily request and entreat thee, That we renuing the former conclusions of of peace, may of new confirme the same by solemne oath: wherewith if the former peace had beene established, thou wouldest not haue suffered thy selfe to haue beene now of the Venetians so circumuented or seduced. It is therefore needfull, that we now againe for euer confirme a league and peace betwixt vs by solemne and sacred oath on both sides: which if thou shalt doe (as I hope thou wilt) and in this be aduised by me, thou with thy posterity shall vndoubtedly alwaies raigne in peace, and in safetie possesse whatsoeuer is yours. Whereas if thou shalt doe otherwise (beleeue me) it will repent thee, and that right quickly. Thou knowest alreadie my force, which whether thou be able to withstand or not, thou were best to be well aduised. The poore princes thy neighbors, the Venetians thy seducers, cannot deliuer thee from my forces* L
and power. Doest thou not see the Grecians almost all rooted out before thy face? the emperours of CONSTANTINOPLE *and* TRAPEZOND *by vs depriued of their empires? the princes of* SERVIA *and* RASCIA *destroyed? the king of* BOSNA *put to death? and all the kingdomes of* ASIA, *with many other kings and princes moe vanquished and ouerthrowne, and made subiect vnto me? Wherefore* Scanderbeg, *I aduise thee in this to follow my counsell, keepe thy promise, and so beleeue me thou shalt not be deceiued. Concerning these matters, we haue giuen further commandement to our embassadour and seruant* Mustapha, *which commeth vnto thee: vnto whom doubt thou not to giue credence in any thing. Farewell from our imperiall citie of* CONSTANTINOPLE *the 7 of May* 1463.

Scanderbeg hauing by the aforesaid messenger receiued these letters, and well considered of the same, returned answer as followeth: M

The champion of Christ Iesus, *George Castriot*, otherwise called *Scanderbeg*, prince of the Albanenses and Epirots, to the most excellent *Mahomet* king of the Turks, greeting.

Scanderbeg his answere to the letters of Mahomet.

You marueil (most noble Mahomet*) that my souldiers (as you say) contrarie to our league and the conditions*

A *conditions of our peace, haue entered into your confines, and from thence caried a great bootie. Of which thing (you say) the Venetians are the authors, whom you call your mortall enemies: inferring afterward, that you are little therewith offended, for that you are a most mightie prince, and can easily digest such vnkindnesse, for the great loue you beare vnto me: and the rather, for that I did it deceiued (as it pleaseth you to say) by others. All these things you can easily forgiue and forget: so that I will by solemne oath confirme the same conditions of peace that were in our former league betwixt vs agreed vpon. And thereunto you do greatly vrge me, you admonish and counsell me to follow your aduise, as tending to the great profit and securitie of me and my posteritie, least happily whilest I seeke to please the Venetians, I incur your heauie displeasure. Besides this, the more to terrifie me, you reckon vp as it were*
B *in a catalogue, the people, nations, kings, and princes, by you ouercome and subdued. But what is that which is so strange (I pray you) and which you so much maruell at (most noble* Mahomet?) *Is it not for that my souldiers did that in the confines of your dominions, whereof they were (of right) sorrie; and had thereof to me complained, that your souldiers had before done the like in their goods and possessions. Wherefore if they also vpon a militarie brauerie (as is your manner of phrase) haue made themselues whole, and done one shrewd turne for another, reuenging iniurie receiued, and not inferring any of new: there is no cause that you should either thinke it strange or blame me. I would my selfe haue restrained my souldiers, although they were greeuously iniured (I will plainely confesse vnto you a troth) I would haue appeased their angrie minds, enflamed with desire of reuenge; if you (a prince of all others most rich and bountifull) would either haue taken order, that full restitution might haue beene made vn-*
C *to them of all such things as they had lost, or else would with condigne punishment haue chastised the insolencie of your souldiers: which you would seeme to couer with the tearme of militarie wantonnesse or brauerie; an excuse scarce currant amongst children. For although offences are in all places greeuous, yet ought they most of all so to be deemed in martiall affairs. What I pray you, would you haue me to take it for a lasciuiousnesse in your men of war? especially when I had receiued so great losse, when as you might with a word first haue restrained them from doing of it, and at your pleasure corrected them after the deed was done. Wherefore (most excellent* Mahomet?) *take you also in good part these our tearmes, which you haue accustomed hitherto most gloriously to giue and sell vnto vs, whilest you alwaies couer your reach with some excuse or shew of right. As for that in excusing me vnder colour of old acquaintance and friendship you inuey against the Venetians, verely you do them wrong: for why those good, iust, and*
D *vertuous princes are not to be slandered by you, as seducers of me or others, Beside, what need that inuincible state to enter into counsell with me, or (as it pleaseth you to say) to allure me to fall at ods with you, or to prosecute you as their enemie? Who of themselues, yea (I say) of themselues alone, when occasion shall require, are able to dare you in plaine battell, and to abate your pride. Further, whereas you aduise me to reiect their friendship, your labour is therein but lost: for what man is so desperat, or hated of his subiects, that would not chuse rather to erre with that most honourable Senat, than to be in the right with you? especially I, who haue of long time beene confederat with them, and am of all others vnto them most deere: which you for all that had no regard of, but (according to your vntrustie dealing) breaking in sunder the bonds of peace, spoiled and wasted their territorie in* PELOPONESVS. *Neither can your great threats terrifie me, which you after the Turkish manner thunder and poure out against me, ex-*
E *cept I will be ouerruled by you: for it is the part of an Albanese both to endure when need shall require, and also to doe such things as beseeme a man of courage. You cannot make me afraid, being but a small prince, with my honourable friends the Venetians. And what are you? so great an emperor of the East and of the West, and of all parts of the World, as you vainely tearme your selfe? Truly you make me smile, and other Christian princes laugh you to scorne, in vsurping falsely to your selfe the stately stile of the emperour of the World. What possesse you in* ASIA *the greater? verely nothing. Is all yours in* ASIA *the lesser? not so. What haue you in* EVROPE? *except* THRACIA, MYSIA, *part of* GRECIA, *and* PELOPONESVS, *with the Isle of* MYTILENE. *As for* AFRICKE, *you neuer set your foot therein. Is this to be emperour of all the World? But suppose, suppose (I say) worthie* Mahomet, *that all from the farthest part of the Ocean were yours, you ought not therefore so to swell, as to contemne all others. Cease to boast, and*
F *learn now (if you can) the speciall but true examples of humaine fragilitie. Where are now the Assyrians, which sometime swayed the world? Where bee the Medes? where the Persians? and to be short, where are the Romaines, the great commanders of all? Verely,* Tamerlane *the Scythian king (called the terror of the world) was far greater than you: who in triumph drew before his chariot thy great grandfather* Baiazet *in chains: who had before gained so many victories, whom neuertheless he ouerthrew in the plains of* ARMENIA, *with three hundred thousand Turks, hauing in his armie (as is reported) twelue hundred*

thousand

thousand men, greater than Xerxes or Darius, whose armies couered the seas, and dried vp the riuers before them as they went, yet for all this (noble Mahomet) they are all cast out by him that casteth out all nations, the finger of the highest hath brought them all to nought. Wherefore learne to know your selfe to be a man also. Trust not too much to the multitude of your souldiers, and strength of your armies: for oftentimes great and puissant armies haue beene ouerthrowne with farre lesse, as all histories beare witnesse: whereof it is commonly said, Thou shalt not praise the valour of the Generall, before he be brought to the triumph. And doe you not thinke Mahomet, that God will fauour the better cause? You know, you well know, that all your kingdome is violently gotten, that it is wrongfully and vniustly possessed: for which cause I am not afraid not only to withstand you when you shall come, being so great a Prince; but also valiantly and courageously to dare you into the field, and by the power of God both to hope for and haue a notable victorie ouer you. We haue souldiers also, which know how to vse their weapons, to march before their enemies, and how to beare themselues in the heat of the battell. Wherefore, to that you say vnto me for the new confirming of the former league, you labour now but in vaine to circumuent me with such faire gloses, I haue your faith in such distrust, and your friendship in detestation: for as much as you cunningly and subtilly, after the manner of your ancestors, whatsoeuer you doe, or whatsoeuer you promise vnto me, it tendeth all to no other end than to thrust me out of my kingdome. Yet thus long I haue by Gods helpe well escaped all your policies, all your crafts and deceits. But I hope there will in short time be an end of all these matters, when all your sleights and deuises shall not ease you, neither your working head or Turkish pride any thing profit you. It is not I alone that so much stomacke you, there commeth after me a great number of Christian Princes: Behold, the whole chiualrie and glorie of the Christian commonweale is in armes, and comming against thee with all their force: all the Kings and Princes of Christendome haue combined themselues together, with the great Bishop, against thy state, and will in short time be present to destroy thee and thy kingdome. Wherefore (worthie Mahomet) I haue thought it good in regard of our old friendship (although the same hath by you beene greatly empaired and violated) to forewarne you of all these things, that you might gather your wits together, and in time prouide for the safetie of your selfe and of your kingdome. You see the force and power of so many great Princes, from which whether you can escape or no, I know not: yet you may, if you will follow my aduise, you may I say make both your name and empire of great, greater, of famous most renowned, of fortunate most happie and blessed; if casting off from you the grosse errours of the Mahometane superstition, you will embrace the faith and truth of Christ Iesus, and at length haue regard of your soules health. And you which excell all your predecessours in highnesse of spirit and pregnancie of wit, suffer not your selfe and your subiects as it were by inheritance to be longer blinded in your wilfull errours: but doe that (as a wise Prince) of your owne accord, which otherwise you will shortly of necessitie be constrained to doe. To say, Had I wist, hath euer beene accounted a great disgrace from the mouth of an Emperour. At length amend and measure your selfe. Behold, Almightie God doth offer you meanes, whereby you may quiet the whole state of your kingdome, and all our Kings and Princes loue, honour, and reuerence you. Neither let the ambitious desire of soueraignty or immoderate care of those things you possesse, trouble you from so doing: For whatsoeuer you haue vniustly and vnlawfully vsurped, the Christian Princes will grant, confirme, and establish vnto thee, as if they had beene your owne by ancient inheritance. So shall you be a true Monarch indeed, and rule and raigne lawfully, if you shall embrace this faith, and worship God aright: which so soone as you shall feele the sweetnesse of, you will be sorrie that you knew it no sooner, you will greeue at the time you haue lost, and vtterly detest and abhorre all that filthie superstition which the most filthie false Prophet Mahomet hath left amongst you. From our campe the 26 of May 1463.

With these letters *Scanderbeg* dismissed the Turks embassadour. About which time he receiued letters from the great Bishop, That he accompanied with the Christian Princes, would without delay come ouer into EPIRVS with a strong armie of valiant Christians, to ioine their forces with his against the common enemie of the Christian religion: exhorting him in all their names to denounce warre against the Turkish King. Which thing *Scanderbeg* most ioyfully vndertooke: and without delay with all his power brake into the Turks dominion, burning and destroying the countrey before him as he went: from whence he returned laded with the spoile there gotten.

When *Mahomet* had perused *Scanderbeg* his letters, and certainly vnderstood of the great preparation made against him in ITALIE, as also of the great spoile of late made by *Scanderbeg*, he became exceeding melancholie, as a man much troubled in mind, which daily more and more

A more increaſed: for that he ſaw not the wonted cheerefulneſſe in his men of warre, but all full of heauineſſe and deſpaire, as if they had beene men alreadie vanquiſhed. Neuertheleſſe, he ſpeedily tooke order for the leuying of a great armie; fortifying his cities and ſtrong holds, leauing nothing vndone that was poſſible, for the aſſurance of his ſtate. And to repreſſe the furie of *Scanderbeg*, ſent *Seremet Baſſa* with fourteene thouſand ſouldiers to lie vpon the borders of EPIRVS, with charge only to attend vpon him. Who mindfull of his charge came into MACEDONIA, vnto the citie OCRIDA, now called ALCHRIA, in the very confines of MACEDONIA towards EPIRVS, and there lay with his armie; ſome part thereof lodged in the citie, and the reſt in places more conuenient neere about the ſame.

B The comming of the Baſſa, as alſo the manner of his lying, was not vnknowne to *Scanderbeg*, who deſired nothing more than to be doing with him. Wherefore he ſecretly in the night marched towards OCRIDA with twelue thouſand ſouldiers, and being come within three miles of the towne, lay cloſe in ambuſh, & vpon the breaking of the day ſent out 500 horſemen towards the enemie, vnder the conduct of *Peicus Emanuel*, and *Petrus Angelus*, two valiant and expert captaines, to draw him if they could into the field. But *Scanderbeg* had before commanded them, that if the enemie did come forth to fight, they ſhould make but ſmall reſiſtance, but retire backe as if they had fled, and ſo to traine him on to the place where the armie lay. Which was ſo well performed by the two skilfull captaines, that the Baſſa with all his power was according as they could haue wiſhed, drawne into the field, and brought to the very place where

C *Scanderbeg* lay: Who ſuddenly riſing vp with all his armie, aſſailed the Turks on euery ſide, and ſlew them as deere encloſed in a toile. In this battell ten thouſand of the Turks were ſlaine, the treaſurer of the armie with twelue other of great marke were taken priſoners, and brought bound to *Scanderbeg*, who were preſently ranſomed for 40 thouſand duckats. *Ten thouſand Turks ſlaine.*

Scanderbeg hauing obtained the victorie, returned with triumph into EPIRVS, daily expecting the comming of the great armie out of ITALIE: *but fatall deſtinie, the mightie controller of mens higheſt deſignes, had not ſo appointed.* For when *Pius* the great Biſhop had out of all parts of Chriſtendome aſſembled a great armie (wherof the greateſt part were voluntarie ſouldiers) and all things were now in ſuch readineſſe, that he had put himſelfe vpon the way, and was come to

D ANCONA, a citie vpon the ſea ſide (where *Chriſtophorus Maurus* duke of VENICE came vnto him, with ten gallies well appointed, to haue accompanied him in thoſe warres: and all men were now in expectation of ſome great matter to haue beene done) ſuddenly he fell ſicke of a feuer, and died in the yeere 1464. Whereupon the armie was forthwith diſperſed, and all that great preparation fruſtrated, to the exceeding griefe of many Chriſtian Princes; and no leſſe ioy of the Turks, who now reioyced to ſee themſelues deliuered of ſo great a feare.

About this ſame time, *Victor Capella* chiefe perſwader of this warre betwixt the Venetians and the Turks, was by the Senat ſent Generall of their forces at ſea, in ſtead of *Lauretanus*, whoſe yeere was then expired. He hauing receiued the charge from *Lauretanus*, and ſayling out of EVBŒA, in ſhort time tooke from the enemie the citie of AVLIS in PELOPONESVS, ouer againſt CHALCIS, and alſo the citie of LARSVM in the gulfe of THESSALONICA, with the Iſle of HIMBER.

E Afterwards landing his men by night at PYRÆVS, he ſuddenly ſurpriſed the citie of ATHENS (now called SETHINÆ) ſometime the mother of learning, and moſt noble citie of GRÆCIA; and from thence carried away with him into EVBŒA all the people he there found, as his priſoners, together with the rich ſpoile of that citie. Whileſt he lay in EVBŒA, he was perſwaded that the citie of PATRAS in PELOPONESVS would be deliuered vnto him by the Chriſtians that dwelt therein, if he did but ſhew himſelfe before it. Whereupon he departed from EVBŒA, and comming into the gulfe of PATRAS, landed 4000 footmen vnder the leading of *Barbaricus*, and 200 horſemen, of whom one *Nicholaus Ragius* was captaine. *Barbaricus* marching toward PATRAS, was come within a mile of the citie; when many of the horſemen, and of the vntruly mariners, diſorderly ſcattering abroad, neglected the intended ſeruice, and ſought *The Venetians attempting to win Patras, receiue great loſſe*

F after pillage all about the countrey. The Turks garriſons taking this opportunitie, ſet vpon them with their horſemen, and ſo eaſily ouerthrew them, being ſcattered and out of order. At the firſt encounter, *Barbaricus* himſelfe was ſlaine: *Ragius* captaine of the horſemen was taken, and aliue empailed vpon a ſharpe ſtake. Of all them that were landed, ſcarce a thouſand were left, who ſaued their liues by flying vnto the gallies. With this ouerthrow *Victor* the Venetian Admirall was greatly diſcomfited; yet hauing conceiued ſome hope of better ſucceſſe, in few

daies

daies after attempted againe to haue taken PATRAS, but with like hap as before. For hauing G
loſt a thouſand of his men about the city, and the reſt glad to take their refuge to the fleet, he was conſtrained with great diſhonour to depart thence. And ſo full of ſorrow and heauineſſe returning into EVBŒA oppreſſed with melancholy, there ſuddenly died.

The Venetians deceiued of the great hope they had conceiued of the generall preparation made againſt the Turkes, and much troubled with the hard proceeding of their warres againſt ſo mightie an enemie: by their embaſſadours ſolicited *Mathias*, not long before choſen king of HVNGVRIE, to ioyne in league with them, and to take vp armes againſt the common enemie: offering preſently to furniſh him with a great ſumme of money, beſide a large yearely pention for the maintenance of thoſe warres: for which hee ſhould to his power by land de- H
fend all their territorie betwixt the Rhetian Alpes, and the Adriatique, againſt the inuaſion of the Turke.

This *Mathias* ſurnamed *Coruinus*, was the yonger ſonne of the moſt famous captaine *Io. Huniades*, whoſe elder brother *Vladiſlaus*, a gentleman of ſuch courage as might well ſhew whoſe ſonne he was, being not able to diſgeſt the iniuries and diſgraces done vnto him and his brother, by *Vlricus* countie of CILIA, and vnckle vnto *Ladiſlaus* the yong king of BOHEMIA and HVNGARIE; for the deſpite he alwaies bare vnto their father *Huniades*, ſlew the ſame *Vlricus* at ALBA REGALIS, euen in the kings court. Which outrage the yong king was glad for the preſent to winke at, and alſo to grant him pardon; as hauing taken away the man, whoſe immoderat power well ſtood not with the kings ſafetie: but in deed fearing the citizens of ALBA & the men of war, I
who exceedingly fauoured the ſonnes of *Huniades* for their fathers ſake. For all that, *Ladiſlaus* returning into BOHEMIA, cauſed both the ſons of *Huniades* vpon the ſudden to be apprehended; and moſt cruelly executed *Vladiſlaus*, being then about ſix and twentie yeares old. *Mathias* the yonger brother was kept in priſon, expecting nothing elſe but to be partaker of his brothers hard fortune: as vndoubtedly he had, had not *Ladiſlaus* the yong king vpon the ſudden, as hee was vpon the top of his marriage with *Magdalaine* the French kings daughter, by vntimely death beene taken away. After whoſe death, the Hungarians for the loue they bare vnto the remembrance of *Huniades*, by a militarie election, choſe this *Mathias* his youngeſt ſonne, then in priſon at PRAGE, to be their king. Whereof *Pogebrache* (who after the death of *Ladiſlaus*, of
Matthias of a priſoner. choſen king of Hungarie. an old gouernour had made himſelfe the young king of BOHEMIA) hauing ſpeedie intelligence K
as he was ſitting at ſupper, ſent for *Mathias* his priſoner, and when he was come, commaunded him to ſit downe at the vpper end of the table: whereat the young gentleman being then but about eighteene yeares of age, and ſore abaſhed, beganne to craue pardon. But when the king would needs haue it ſo, and that he was ſet; the king to quiet his troubled thoughts, willed him to be of good cheere, for that he had good newes to tell him. Good newes, ſaid he, if it would pleaſe your maieſtie to grant me libertie. Yea that, ſaid the king, and more to: and then ſaluting him by the name of the king of HVNGARIE, brake vnto him the whole matter, how that he was by the generall conſent of the Hungarians, choſen their king. And ſo in few daies after, married vnto him his daughter: which done, he furniſhed him with all things fit for his eſtate, and royally accompanied him into HVNGARIE, where he was with great ioy and triumph re- L
ceiued of the Hungarians: ouer whom he afterwards glorioufly raigned for the ſpace of eight and thirtie yeares. In which time, he notably enlarged the kingdome of HVNGARIE, and became a farre greater terrour vnto the Turkes, than euer was his father *Huniades*. And therewithall (which is not to be accounted in the leaſt part of his praiſes) was alwaies a great fauourer and furtherer of good letters, and ingenious deuiſes.

But to returne againe to our purpoſe, *Mathias* hauing well conſidered of that the Venetians had requeſted: anſwered them, that they had many times before in like caſe refuſed to giue aid vnto the Hungarian kings his predeceſſours: yea and that more was, thought it a thing not reaſonable, that any ſuch thing ſhould be requeſted at their hands; foraſmuch as they then receiued no harme from the Turke, but were in league and amitie with him: ſo that the Hun- M
garian kings wanting their helpe, had many times receiued greater loſſe from the Turke, than otherwiſe they ſhould haue done, if they had beene by them aided. Yet for all that, he was content to forget all ſuch vnkindneſſe, and to grant them what they had requeſted: promiſing the next Spring to inuade the Turkes dominion, and according to their requeſt, to take into his protection all their territorie betwixt the Rhetian Alpes, and the Adriatique: which thing hee

moſt

A moſt honourably performed. For with the firſt of the Spring he paſſed ouer Danubius at BELGRADE with a puiſſant armie, and raſed the forts which the Turks had built thereabouts; and ſo entring into SERVIA, laid all the countrey waſte before him: and afterwards laden with ſpoile, returned home, carrying away with him twentie thouſand captiues. Neither ſo reſted, but with great good fortune maintained great warres againſt *Mahomet* during all the time of his raigne: and afterwards againſt *Baiazet* his ſonne alſo, wherein he moſt commonly returned with victorie: ſo that it is of him as truely as briefly written, That no Chriſtian king or chieftaine, did more often or with greater fortune fight againſt the Turkiſh nation, or had of them greater victories.

B *Mahomet* deliuered of the great feare he had before conceiued of the generall preparation of the Chriſtian princes againſt him; determined now to worke his will vpon ſuch as were neereſt vnto him, and afterward not to forget them that were farther off. The proceeding of *Scanderbeg*, with the late ouerthrow of SERREMET with his armie in EPIRVS, ſtucke in his ſtomacke: in reuenge whereof, he now ſent one *Balabanus Badera*, a moſt valiant captaine, with fifteene thouſand horſemen, and three thouſand foot, to inuade EPIRVS. This *Balabanus* was an Epirot borne, a chorles ſonne of that countrey: and being of a boy taken captiue of the Turks, as hee was keeping of his fathers cattell, and of long time brought vp in ſeruitude amongſt them, framing himſelfe both to their religion and manners; after long ſeruice, got the credit of a good common ſouldiour. But when as at the taking of CONSTANTINOPLE, it

Mahomet ſendeth Balabanus to inuade Epirus.

C was his fortune to bee the firſt man of the Turks armie that gained the top of the walls, and entred the cittie; hee was for that peece of ſeruice, euer afterwards of *Mahomet* greatly eſteemed: and beſide his other great preferments, now ſent Generall of his armie into EPIRVS. Who as ſoone as hee was come to ALCHRIA (a citie vpon the frontiers of that countrey) ſent manie rich preſents to *Scanderbeg*, making ſhew as if hee had beene deſirous peaceably to lie vpon the borders committed to his charge, without farther purpoſe to trouble his countrey: yet in deed waiting nothing more than ſome notable opportunitie, ſuddenly to doe him the greateſt miſchiefe he could. But *Scanderbeg* well ſeeing into the malice of the man, reiected his faigned friendſhip and gifts, and in deriſion ſent him a ſpade, a mattocke, a flaile, with other ſuch inſtruments belonging vnto husbandrie: willing him to take in hand thoſe

D tooles, and to follow his fathers trade of life, and to leaue the conducting of armies vnto men of greater skill and better place. Which diſgrace *Balabanus* tooke in exceeding euill part; purpoſing in himſelfe, if euer it lay in his power, to be thereof reuenged. Wherefore knowing that *Scanderbeg* with a ſmall power lay not farre off vpon the frontiers of his kingdome, he determined ſuddenly in the night to ſet vpon him before he were aware of his comming, and ſo if it were poſſible to ouerthrow him: but *Scanderbeg* hauing knowledge thereof by his ſcouts, ſet forward in good order to haue met him. When *Balabanus* perceiuing that he was diſcouered, ſtaied vpon the way, and encamped within two miles of *Scanderbeg*: who had then in his armie but foure thouſand horſemen, and one thouſand and fiue hundred foot, but all choiſe men and moſt expert ſouldiours: and then lay in a large pleaſant valley called VALCHAL. At the farther

Balabanus goeth againſt Scanderbeg.

E end whereof *Balabanus* lay alſo encamped, neere vnto a rough and wooddie hill which encloſed that part of the valley. Whileſt both armies thus lay within view one of another, *Scanderbeg* well conſidering the ground the enemie had taken, and that it was like he would offer him battell, with cheerefull ſpeeches encouraged his ſouldiours: ſtraitly charging them vpon paine of his diſpleaſure, that if the enemie vpon the fortune of the battell, ſhould chance to flie or to retire, they ſhould not in anie caſe purſue them farther than the ſtraits of the hill whereby the enemie lay: gheſſing too truly, that hee would in ſo conuenient a place leaue part of his armie in ambuſh, as a ſure refuge to truſt vnto whatſoeuer ſhould befall. When he had thus encouraged and inſtructed his ſouldiours, he riſe with his armie, and in good order retired vnto the riſing of an hill, which was a good way behind the place where he before lay; of purpoſe

F to haue the aduantage of the ground, if the enemie ſhould follow to giue him battell. *Balabanus* ſeeing him retire, and the ſmall number of his armie, thought verily that he had fled for feare: and therefore to ſtay him who ment nothing leſſe than to flie, ſet forward in great haſte. The Turks thinking vpon ſo great aduantage to haue found no great reſiſtance, followed after *Scanderbeg* as if they had had him in chaſe; and by that time they were come to the place where hee ſtaied, were by their haſte greatly diſordered and out of aray. *Scanderbeg* his old truſtie ſouldiours

The battaile betwixt Balabanus and Scanderbeg.

ours nothing diſmaied with the haſtie comming and hideous clamour of the Turks, receiued G
them with great courage: ſo that there began a fierce battell, with much ſlaughter on both ſides,
which for a great while ſtood doubtfull. Yet ſuch was the inuincible courage of *Scanderbeg* his
reſolute ſouldiours, that the Turks (who as then fought in great diſorder) were at laſt put to
flight: and with much ſlaughter chaſed vnto the ſtraits of the mountaine, where *Scanderbeg* had
before commaunded his men to ſtay. But certaine of his beſt and principall captaines forget-
ting what he had ſaid vnto them; and led on (whether with the heat and furie of the battell, or
rather with ineuitable deſtinie is hard to ſay) vnaduiſedly purſued the enemie into thoſe ſtraits,
whereof they were by *Scanderbeg* before warned, and charged that they ſhould not enter: where
they were on euerie ſide beſet with their enemies, ariſing out of ambuſh: and after they had H
a long time deſperatly fought as wild beaſts encloſed with hunters, at laſt oppreſſed with mul-
titude, were there togither taken and brought to *Balabanus*; by whom they were forthwith
ſent to *Mahomet* to CONSTANTINOPLE. Who as ſoone as he heard of their taking, is re-
ported with great reioycing to haue ſaid: Now am I ſure that the ſtrength of *Scanderbeg* is
broken. The names of the principall men which were there taken, was *Moſes Goſemus* of
DIBRA, the greateſt captaine of EPIRVS next vnto *Scanderbeg* himſelfe; *Giuriza Vladerius*,
Scanderbeg his kinſman; *Muſachius*, *Scanderbeg* his nephew by his ſiſter *Angelina*; *Ginius Mu-
ſachius*; *Ioannes Perlatus*, who valiantly defended SPETIGRADE againſt *Amurath*; *Nicho-
laus Beriſius*; *Georgius Chucca*; and *Ginius Maneſſius*: whereof euerie one of them was able to
haue conducted a great armie, and might worthely haue beene accounted amongſt the grea- I
teſt captaines of that age. The taking of theſe worthie men brought ſuch a generall ſorrow
and heauineſſe vpon EPIRVS, that the victorie was nothing accounted of, euerie man lamen-
ting the loſſe of ſuch notable leaders. *Scanderbeg* carefull of their deliuerance; preſently ſent an
Embaſſadour to *Mahomet*, requeſting that he might redeeme his priſoners; either by exchan-
ging of others for them, or elſe for ſuch raunſome as it ſhould pleaſe him to ſet downe. But hee
knowing them to be *Scanderbeg* his beſt Captaines, would neither exchange them for others,
nor graunt that they ſhould be raunſomed for any gold: but after he had vſed them with all the
diſpight he could deuiſe, cauſed them all by little and little, to be ſlaine quicke: in which miſe-

Moſes and other worthie Captaines cruelly executed by Mahomet.

rable torment they liued fifteene daies, and ſo died. *Scanderbeg* hearing thereof, was therewith
rather encouraged than diſcouraged: and in reuenge thereof, with fire and ſword entered into K
the Turks dominion, ſparing nothing that he could either burne, or poſſibly by anie other
meanes deſtroy.

Mahomet glad of the taking of theſe notable men (although they were bought with the
liues of manie of his people) commended *Balabanus* highly, as the onely man that knew how
to fight againſt *Scanderbeg*: and in reward of his good ſeruice, ſent him diuers rich gifts, with
commaundement to repaire againe his armie, and to proceed in his warres ſo happely begun.
Which thing *Balabanus* with all diligence performed. Yet truſting more vnto his pollicie,
than his ſtrength; lying at ALCHRIA, ſent againe diuers rich preſents to *Scanderbeg*, as deſi-
rous to liue in peace by him: but ſeeking indeed to bring him into ſecuritie, and ſo ſuddenly (if
it were poſſible) to entrap him. Which thing *Scanderbeg* well perceiuing, reiected his faigned L
friendſhip togither with his preſents, as ſent from a baſe peiſant. Whereupon *Balabanus* entered
into a new deuiſe, and by ſecret meanes, with great rewards corrupted *Scanderbeg* his ſcouts,
whereof ſome were *Balabanus* his kinſmen, though it were to *Scanderbeg* vnknowne. By which
practiſe, he had vpon the ſudden in the night oppreſſed *Scanderbeg*, lying encamped in ORO-
NYCHEVM, if *Scanderbeg* himſelfe (who commonly ſpent moſt part of the night in carefull
watch) going about the campe, had not in the ſilence of the night a farre off perceiued the com-
ming of the enemie by the noiſe of his horſes: and thereupon with wonderfull celeritie putting
his armie in ſuch order as he beſt could, was readie to receiue him; and at laſt after a great fight,
put him to flight: and hauing him in chaſe, ſlew moſt part of his armie, *Balabanus* himſelfe with
a ſmall remnant hardly eſcaping. M

Now when *Mahomet* vnderſtood that *Balabanus* was ouerthrowne, and his armie loſt,
hee was in doubt, whether to ſend another Generall, or elſe againe to prooue the fortune of
the old. But after hee had well conſidered, that *Balabanus* was a right valiant Captaine, and
one that well knew the countrey of EPIRVS, and withall a mortall enemie to *Scanderbeg*: hee
reſolued to ſtaie vpon him, and not to ſend anie other. So committing to his charge fourteene
thouſand

A thouſand horſemen and three thouſand foot, ſent him againe to inuade EPIRVS: and the more to encourage him, promiſed to make him king of that countrey, if he could ſubdue *Scanderbeg*. *Balabanus* with this armie comming to ALCHRIA, and ſtill in vaine plotting how hee might circumuent his warie enemie; after his wonted manner ſent diuers preſents to *Scanderbeg*; which he ſtill ſcornefully refuſed. Three moneths he lay ſtill at ALCHRIA, with nothing more troubled than with his owne thoughts: but finding nothing that pleaſed himſelfe, hee determined to aduenture by plaine force to ſubdue him. And vpon that reſolution marched with all his armie into the great plaines neere vnto SFETIGRADE, whither *Scanderbeg* came with his armie alſo, which then conſiſted of eight thouſand horſemen and fifteene hundred foot: with which ſmall
B power hee refuſed not to ioyne battaile with *Balabanus*, being in number two to one. But after they were come to handie blowes, to haue ſeene *Scanderbeg* his men fight, a man would haue ſaid them to haue beene rather raging lyons than men, they ſo furiouſly aſſailed their enemies, without regard of perill or danger, as men nothing afraid to die. *Scanderbeg* with great skill gouerned that battaile, carefully prouiding for euery danger: himſelfe valiantly fighting in the head of his battaile, but not without care of the reſt, ſtill ſending ſpeedie releefe where moſt need was, and bringing in freſh ſupplies in ſtead of them that were wounded or ſlaine, performed all the parts of a moſt worthie cheefetaine and valiant ſouldior: where moſt perill was, there was he ſtraight, and at his preſence danger fled, as if victorie had attended vpon him. But whileſt he thus fought in the middeſt of his enemies, his horſe fortuned to be ſlaine vnder him, and falling
C down with him, ſore bruſed one of his armes, wherof he complained long time after. The Turks ſeeing him downe, preſſed on fiercely to haue ſlaine him: but he was quickly reſcued by his owne ſouldiors, and remounted. And forthwith encountering with one *Sultman*, a great commaunder in the Turks armie, ſlew him in fight hand to hand: whereupon ſuch a terrour fell vpon the Turks, that they began to retire, and after a while to betake themſelus to plaine flight. *Scanderbeg* purſuing them with ſuch execution, that of that great armie few eſcaped with *Balabanus* to carrie newes home.

The battell of Sfetigrade betwixt Balabanus and Scanderbeg.

Balabanus now thrice vanquiſhed by *Scanderbeg*, and in the laſt battaile hauing loſt what hee could looſe, except he ſhould haue loſt himſelfe, returned to *Mahomet* at CONSTANTINOPLE, of whom he was ſharply rebuked for the great ouerthrowes he had ſo often receiued. At which
D time *Balabanus* at firſt gaue place to the kings furie: but afterwards when the heat was ouer, he with a large diſcourſe cunningly excuſed himſelfe, imputing all thoſe his miſhaps vnto the appointment of God, and the fortune of warre: and in the end told *Mahomet* plainely, That it was but in vaine to ſend ſuch ſmall armies into EPIRVS. But if it would pleaſe him at once to ſend two valiant Captains with a puiſſant & ſtrong armie, who deuiding the ſame betwixt them, and entering at one time into diuers parts of EPIRVS, might ſpoile the countrey before them, and encloſe *Scanderbeg* betwixt them, if he ſhould aduenture to giue either of them battaile, being before reſolued neither of them to offer him battaile, or yet to accept of the ſame being by him offered, except the other were alſo at hand: and ſo by mutuall conſent to vndertake him, but neuer ſingle. By which courſe he promiſed vnto him an eaſie and aſſured victorie: for as much as
E it were impoſſible for any man ſo beſet, and as it were on euery ſide coupt vp with his enemies, either to eſcape, or yet to make any great reſiſtance. This perſuaſion of *Balabanus* ſo well fitted the tyrants humor, that he appointed *Balabanus* himſelfe to be the man to put his own deuiſe in execution: giuing him commiſſion to leuie ſuch an armie as he ſhould thinke ſufficient for the performance of that ſeruice: and withall to aſſociat vnto himſelfe for his companion which ſoeuer of his captaines as he pleaſed. *Balabanus* according to his commiſſion, tooke muſters of the men of war, and made choice of fortie thouſand good ſouldiors, and choſe one *Iacup Arnauth*, (otherwiſe called *Iames* the Epirot, becauſe he was alſo borne in EPIRVS, a valiant captain) to be his companion: whom he ſent with ſixteene thouſand ſoldiors by the way of THESSALIA and GRECIA into EPIRVS, commaunding him in no caſe to ioyne battaile with *Scanderbeg*, vntill
F he himſelfe were alſo come into the countrey with the other part of the armie. And ſo ſetting both forward, *Balabanus* taking the neerer way through THRACIA and MACEDONIA, came firſt into EPIRVS with twentie thouſand horſemen and foure thouſand foot, and encamped in the valley of VALCHALL. *Scanderbeg* both by his eſpials and letters from his ſecret friends in the Turks court, hauing certaine intelligence of all *Balabanus* his intent and purpoſe, had in readineſſe againſt his comming a ſtrong armie of eight thouſand horſemen and foure thouſand foot,

all choiſe ſouldiours. And now hearing that he was come into EPIRVS, and encamped in VALCAAL, ſent out three eſpials to diſcouer in what order he lay: one of which ſpies was *Balabanus* his kinſman (but not ſo knowne to *Scanderbeg*) by whoſe perſuaſion the other two when they had taken full view of *Balabanus* his army, and ſhould haue returned to *Scanderbeg* to haue giuen intelligence of that they had ſeene, like falſe traitors went ouer to *Balabanus*, and diſcouered vnto him all that they knew concerning *Scanderbeg*: hoping therefore to receiue ſome great reward, as their fellow had before borne them in hand. *Scanderbeg* maruelling that his eſpials returned not again as they were appointed, and doubting that they had been by the enemie intercepted, and vſing many times in matters of ſuch importance to truſt himſelfe beſt, preſently went out with fiue luſtie ſouldiours, and rid forth to diſcouer the manner of the enemies lying. *Balabanus* like a craftie fox, miſtruſting that *Scanderbeg* deceiued of his firſt eſpials would for like purpoſe ſend forth others, laied certain horſemen in ſecret ambuſh in diuers places, to intercept them if it were poſſible. Theſe horſemen lay not ſo couert, but that they were in good time deſcried by *Scanderbeg* and his followers (who with *Argus* eies, pried into euerie buſh and thicket as they went) before he was altogether fallen within their danger: and yet but ſo that he came to handie ſtrokes, where *Scanderbeg* & his followers oppreſſed with multitude, were glad to flie as faſt as they could into the next wood, the Turks horſemen following them at the heeles. It fortuned that as they were flying, a great old tree was fallen croſſe the way, which *Scanderbeg* putting ſpurs to his horſe, leapt ouer, with one of his men after him; the other foure not able to get ouer, turned back vpon the Turks, and there fighting were ſlaine. One of the Turks which ſo hardly purſued *Scanderbeg* being well mounted, forced his horſe to leape the tree, and ſtill followed after *Scanderbeg*: who looking backe and ſeeing but one, turned vpon him and ſlew him: the other Turks hauing ſlaine foure of *Scanderbeg* his men which could not get ouer the tree, returned. And *Scanderbeg* accompanied but with one of his followers, came back again to his campe; and there with all ſpeed put his army in readineſſe to go againſt *Balabanus* before the comming of his companion, with the other part of his army. Vpon which reſolution, after he had with cheerfull perſuaſions encouraged his ſouldiours, and filled their minds with hope of victorie, he ſet forward, and came with great ſpeed into the valley of VALCHAL where *Balabanus* lay. *Scanderbeg* had deuided his army into foure ſquadrons, whereof *Tanuſius* had the leading of one, *Zacharias Groppa* of another, the third was committed to *Peicus Emanuel*, and *Scanderbeg* himſelfe conducted the fourth. So ſetting forward, he ſent before certaine companies of harquebuſiers, and archers, to prouoke the enemie and to draw him foorth vnto battell. *Balabanus* alſo ſhewed himſelfe with his army in ſeemly order before his tents, but there ſtood faſt and would not ſtirre, expecting continually the comming of his fellow. Which *Scanderbeg* perceiuing, and that he ſought but to dallie out the time, and as one vnwilling to fight had againe retired his army into the ſafetie of his trenches; drew neerer and neerer vnto him, continually skirmiſhing with ſuch as he ſent out, daring him into the field, and brauing him vnto his trenches, in ſuch ſort as if he would haue forced the ſame, and by ſtrong hand haue fet him out thence. Whereat the Turks fretted and chafed exceedingly: inſomuch, that they were readie to riſe againſt their Generall, becauſe he would not lead them forth to battell, but ſuffer them to be ſo diſgraced. *Balabanus* mindfull of that he had promiſed vnto *Mahomet* his great lord and maiſter, did what he might to haue deferred time: but when he ſaw that his fellow came not, and that he could no longer delay the matter; being ſo continually aſſailed and braued by *Scanderbeg* his ſouldiours, that his Turks therewith prouoked, were readie oftentimes to haue iſſued out without his direction, and now no remedie but that he muſt needs fight; placed his men in good order, and ſo went out of his trenches to giue battell, himſelfe leading the left wing thereof: where betwixt him and *Scanderbeg* was made a fierce fight, many falling on both ſides. But *Scanderbeg* ſtrengthned with the old garriſon of CROIA, and the moſt expert ſouldiors of DIBRA, preuailed vpon the Turks and forced them to giue ground, yet ſtill keeping their order. The fight was ſo great in this part of the battell, that in other places they ſtood almoſt ſtill as lookers on, expecting the doubtfull fortune of their Generals: Which thing *Scanderbeg* perceiuing, drew certain troups out of the right wing, where as he ſaw was leaſt danger, which ſpeedily fetching a compaſſe about, charged the ſide of the enemies army; and again withdrawing themſelues, & with wonderful celeritie wheeling about, ſet vpon the back of them that fought in the left wing: ſo that the Turks there fiercely charged both before and behind, by the moſt valiant ſouldiours of

Scanderbeg his ſcouts traiterouſly flie to Balabanus.

G H I K L M

A of *Scanderbeg* his army, fell in other places with a great ſlaughter. *Balabanus* with exceeding courage gainſtood his enemies, ſo long as there was any hope left: but when he ſaw the fortune of *Scanderbeg* to preuaile, and all about him to become deſperat, he made ſhift for himſelfe, and fled out of the battell as faſt as he could. The reſt of the army, being in other places before troubled and diſordered, fled alſo, ſome one way, ſome another, euery man as his fortune led him. Some few that followed *Balabanus* eſcaped: the reſt were for moſt part either ſlaine or taken priſoners.

Scanderbeg had ſcarcely well breathed himſelfe after this victorie, and diuided the ſpoile amongſt his ſouldiers; but that newes was brought to him in poſt from the Lady *Mamiza* his
B ſiſter, then lying at PETRELLA, that *Iacuppe Arnauth* was by the way of BELGRADE come into EPIRVS with an army of ſixteene thouſand horſemen, burning and deſtroying the countrey before him, and then lay encamped in the plaines of TIRANNA the leſſe. When *Scanderbeg* to proue the minds of his ſouldiers, had cheerfully imparted vnto them ſuch newes, as was like to be the beginning of new labour and perill; they were therewith nothing diſmaied, but ready to follow him with ſuch cheerfulneſſe of countenance and mind, as if they ſhould haue gone to ſome great feaſt or banquet: reckoning of them, but as of the remnant of a diſcomfited army. This cheerfulneſſe of his ſouldiers, *Scanderbeg* tooke as an aſſured token of his good ſucceſſe: and hauing all things in readineſſe, preſently ſet forward, and in ſhort time came to the place where the enemie lay. *Iacuppe* hearing of his comming, remoued his campe into a corner of the
C plaine of TIRANNA, neere vnto a little hill, as a place of more ſafetie for his armie to lie in. *Scanderbeg* taking the plaine, encamped his armie in the ſame place from whence *Iacuppe* was but a little before departed, where he reſted one whole day. The next morning to terrifie his enemies (who as yet had not heard of the ouerthrow of *Balabanus*) he cauſed diuers of the Turks heads which were ſlaine in the late battell (which he had brought for that purpoſe) to be caſt before the trenches of the enemy, and withall, diuers of them which were taken priſoners to be ſhowne: Which *Iacuppe* beholding, in great deſpaire ſaid, *I ſee the euill hap of Mahomet.* Immediatly after, *Scanderbeg* ſent forth 500 horſemen to skirmiſh with the Turks, commanding them ſo ſoone as they were charged by the enemy to retire, if happily they might ſo be drawne into battell: which fell out accordingly. For *Iacuppe* now ſeeing his fellow was not to be looked for, and willing
D alſo without farther delay to trie his fortune, came readily into the field, and began a fierce battell: which endured not long, for *Scanderbeg* perceiuing in what part of the armie *Iacuppe* was, bent his greateſt force that way, and ſingling him out, with his owne hand ſlew him. Wherewith the Turks being diſcouraged, forthwith betooke themſelues to flight, and in flying, were for moſt part ſlaine or taken. Thoſe which eſcaped the preſent furie of the ſword, ſtragling through the countrey by thicke woods and blind wayes, were by the countrey people either ſlaine or taken priſoners. In theſe two battels were ſlaine of the Turks foure and twentie thouſand, and ſix thouſand taken. And of *Scanderbeg* his men, were loſt about a thouſand. *Scanderbeg* and his ſouldiers were ſo wearie of the ſlaughter of the Turks, that when it was told him the next day, that *Balabanus* was fled but with one cornet of horſemen, and might eaſily be ſurpri-
E ſed, if he were well purſued: he ſaid, *O let ſome of our enemies liue to report their owne ſlaughter and our victorie.* After that *Scanderbeg* had in this ſort vanquiſhed theſe great captaines, he preſently entered into the frontiers of the Turks dominions, and roaming vp and downe at his pleaſure without reſiſtance, made hauocke of all that came in his way. And after returning to CROIA with victorie, brake vp his armie, and gaue his ſouldiers leaue to depart, euery man to his owne dwelling.

Iacup ſlaine by Scanderbeg, & his armie diſcomfited.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Mahomet* had with great rewards procured two Turks to 1465
vndertake to kill *Scanderbeg*. Theſe traitors came vnto *Scanderbeg* as fugitiues, making ſuch ſhew of the deteſtation both of *Mahomet* his tyrannicall gouernment, and vaine ſuperſtition, that they were both of *Scanderbeg* and others reputed to be in deed the men they deſired to be ac-
F counted: and ſo after they had learned the principles of the Chriſtian religion, were by their owne deſire baptiſed. But treaſon againſt Princes whom God hath in his moſt mightie protection, cannot be long couered; much leſſe without his great ſufferance performed. So fortuned it, that theſe two falſe diſſembling traitors, expecting nothing but opportunitie to performe their diueliſh deuiſe, vpon ſome occaſion fell at variance betwixt themſelues, & in their heat, let ſome ſuch words fall, as being taken vp by ſome there preſent, drew them both into ſuſpition: and

thereupon being ſtraitly examined, it was at laſt by them confeſſed, that they were ſent by *Mahomet* of purpoſe to haue ſlaine *Scanderbeg* : for which their treaſon they were both preſently executed, as they had right well deſerued. When *Mahomet* vnderſtood that *Balabanus* was ouercome, *Iacup* ſlaine, and both their armies almoſt quite deſtroied, he after his impatient manner fell into a great rage, and became as a man almoſt franticke: and afterwards calling together his great Baſſaes, reſolued by their aduice, not to ſend any moe Generals againſt *Scanderbeg*, but to goe himſelfe in perſon with ſuch an armie as ſhould at once make an end of his warres in EPIRVS for euer. Hereupon commiſſions were directed through all his kingdome, and an armie raiſed of two hundred thouſand men: whereof *Scanderbeg* hauing certaine aduertiſement, G fortified all his cities and ſtrong holds, eſpecially the citie of CROIA, vpon the fortune where- H of, depended the whole ſtate of his kingdome. Into this citie he put a ſtrong garriſon of his moſt valiant and faithfull ſouldiers; and throughly furniſhed the ſame with all things neceſſarie for the enduring of a long ſiege: and left one *Balthaſar Perduci* (a graue and worthy captaine) gouernour thereof. With like care he prouided for the ſafetie of his other cities, and tooke order that the country people were either receiued into the ſtrong townes, or elſe conuayed into other places of refuge: and left nothing abroad in the countrey for the Turks to prey vpon, as he had in like caſe done long before, at the comming of old *Amurath* to the ſiege of CROIA, as is before in his life declared.

By that time that *Scanderbeg* had ſet all things in order, his old friend *Balabanus* with eightie thouſand horſemen (the forerunners of *Mahomet* his armie) was entred into EPIRVS, and ran- I ging ouer the countrey two dayes, came and ſate downe before CROIA: Vpon whom the gouernour at his firſt comming, made many braue ſallies. In few dayes after came *Mahomet* with his huge armie, and there encamped alſo. Who at his firſt comming ſummoned the citie, requiring to haue it deliuered vnto him, vpon ſuch vnreaſonable condit ons as it pleaſed himſelfe (as the manner of the Turke is:) whereunto the worthy gouernour returned him no other anſwere, than by continuall thundring ſhot into his campe. Whereupon *Mahomet* cauſed ſuch ordinance as he had, to be planted for batterie; and commanded other new to be caſt, of ſuch mettall as he had for that purpoſe brought in maſſe: all which he did rather to ſtrike a terror into the minds of the defendants, than for any great hope he had of taking the citie by force; knowing by his owne experience, that it was a place almoſt impregnable. Whileſt *Mahomet* was thus K buſied and little or nothing preuailed, *Scanderbeg* lying abroad in the woods and mountaines with a ſmall armie of moſt valiant and couragious ſouldiers, continually cut off the forragers of *Mahomets* armie, and ſuch as brought in victuall or neceſſaries for his campe: and many times in the night, ſuddenly brake into one quarter or other of the Turks great campe with great ſlaughter, and with continuall alarums neuer ſuffered them to reſt in quiet. *Mahomet* ſeeing his armie to decreaſe daily, and no hope of winning the citie but by famine, which would require a long ſiege: and fearing alſo to make that ſame place againe famous by ſome notable miſchance, which might happen vnto himſelfe vnder the wals of CROIA, as had before vnto his father *Amurath*; determined to returne himſelfe to CONSTANTINOPLE, and to leaue *Balabanus* with a great part of his armie to continue the ſiege. Vpon which determination he committed L the charge and ordering of the whole matter for the continuing of the ſiege to *Balabanus*, ioyning vnto him eight of his moſt expert captaines; yet ſo, as that they ſhould be all at *Balabanus* his command. And ſo leauing with him three and twentie thouſand of his beſt ſouldiers, and with euery one of the other eight captaines ſeuen thouſand moe, departed himſelfe with the reſt of his armie from CROIA towards CONSTANTINOPLE. But by the way as he went he tooke from *Scanderbeg* certaine ſmall forts, and with faire promiſes corrupting the Gouernour of a place called CHIDNA, wherein eight thouſand of *Scanderbeg* his ſouldiers lay, had the ſame deliuered into his power, vpon his faith before giuen, That all the ſouldiers with the reſt of the people ſhould in ſafetie depart thence. But after the tyrant had them in his power, without regard of faith or promiſe, he cauſed them all moſt cruelly to be cut in peeces, ſparing nei- M ther man, woman, nor child, to the great griefe and weakening of *Scanderbeg*, who had not at any time before receiued ſo great a loſſe. And after he had ſo raged, he in great melancholie returned vnto CONSTANTINOPLE.

Mahomet commeth to the ſiege of Croia.

Scanderbeg diſdaining to haue his chiefe citie beſieged by *Balabanus*, ſometime one of the baſeſt of his fathers ſubiects : and yet finding himſelfe vnable to releeue the ſame, for as much

as

A as his ſouldiers were with continuall wars ſore waſted, and his warie enemies lay ſo encamped, as that they were not but by a ſtrong armie to be remoued, ſent vnto the Venetians and other the confederate Princes of ALBANIA, ILLYRIA, and DALMATIA, praying of them aid now at his need againſt that enemie, which preuailing againſt him, would forthwith ſet vpon them. All which Princes promiſed forthwith to ſend their ſuccours. At the ſame time alſo he paſſed ouer into ITALIE ſecretly, and diſguiſed in ſimple attire, came to ROME, to craue aid of *Paulus* the ſecond of that name, then great Biſhop: by whom he was honourably entertained, but obtained nothing of that he came for; ſo cold was his holy deuotion: onely at his departure he gaue vnto *Iunetrio*, *Scanderbeg* his treaſurer, a poore almes of three thouſand duckats.

B *Scanderbeg* returning into EPIRVS, found all ſuch aid ready as was promiſed from the confederate Princes, but eſpecially from the Venetians, which was for moſt part drawne out of their garriſons of SCVTARI, DRIVASTO, ALYSSA, and DIRRHACHIVM: ſo that he had in few daies in his armie thirteene thouſand foure hundred choice ſouldiers. With this ſtrength he marched towards CROIA: but vnderſtanding by the way, that *Ionima* was within a daies iourney comming with a new ſupplie to his brother *Balabanus*, he drew out certaine troupes of his beſt horſemen: and coaſting ouer the countrey in the night, ſuddenly came vpon the Turks, and put them to flight; where amongſt others, *Ionima* himſelfe, with his ſonne *Hedar*, were taken priſoners, whom he ſhewed the next day in bonds to *Balabanus*. This exploit ſo happily performed, he with all ſpeed returned to his armie: and ſo marching to CROIA, by plaine force driue the C Turks from the mountaine CRVINA, their greateſt ſtrength, and neereſt to the citie of CROIA. Which thing when *Balabanus* ſaw, he with certaine troupes of horſemen rid euen to the gates of the citie, perſwading the defendants to yeeld the citie, making them in the name of his maſter ſuch offers and promiſes as he thought might moſt moue them. But they nothing regarding his words, but rather incenſed with his preſumption, ſallied out vpon him, and enforced him to retire: but he therewith enraged, and halfe mad for anger, came vpon them with a freſh charge, thinking by plaine force to haue driuen them backe into the citie. In which skirmiſh he was by one *Georgius Alexius* with a bullet ſhot quite thorow the throat; and feeling himſelfe mortally wounded, ſetting ſpurres to his horſe, ran as faſt as he could to his campe, where he preſently fell downe from his horſe and died. The Turks diſcouraged with the death of their Generall, and D the comming of *Scanderbeg*, riſe the ſame night, and with great ſilence retired themſelues vnto the plaine of TIRANA, about eight miles from CROIA. *Scanderbeg* the next morning entring the forſaken tents of the Turks, found therein great ſtore of corne and other victuals, which he cauſed to be forthwith conueyed into the citie, and in great triumph followed after himſelfe, to the great ioy and comfort of his late beſieged ſubiects: whom he highly commended for their fidelitie, and bountifully rewarded according to their deſerts. The ſame day he ſent certaine companies of ſouldiers to take the ſtrait paſſages whereby the Turks muſt needs paſſe in their returne out of EPIRVS: which when the Turks vnderſtood, they ſent two meſſengers vnto *Scanderbeg* (who ſeemed to be men of good account in the armie) offering in the name of the reſt of the captaines and commanders, to deliuer vnto him their horſes and armes, ſo that they E might in ſafetie depart with their liues. Which their requeſt *Scanderbeg* propounding vnto his counſellors and captaines, was by them diuerſly diſgeſted. In concluſion, they receiued this anſwere from *Scanderbeg* himſelfe, That as they came into his countrey without his commandement, ſo ſhould they not by his leaue depart thence. The Turks receiuing this ſhort anſwere by their meſſengers, and conſidering that they muſt needs in that bare country in ſhort time periſh, either with famine or with the ſword; the very ſame night departed from TIRANNA, and in the dead time of the night entering the aforeſaid ſtraits, by plaine force deſperatly brake through and eſcaped, but not without their great loſſe: for whoſe eſcape the common ſouldiers murmured greeuouſly againſt *Scanderbeg*, and were not without much adoe appeaſed. In ſhort time after, *Scanderbeg* recouered all ſuch places as *Mahomet* had before taken from him, and put to F ſword the ſouldiers he had left for the keeping of the ſame: which done, he brake vp his armie, retaining only two thouſand horſemen and a thouſand foot for the defence of his frontiers.

Scanderbeg ſurprizeth Ionima the brother of Balabanus, and Hedar his ſonne.

The Turkiſh Tyrant hearing of the euill ſucceſſe of his affaires in EPIRVS, as that his Generall was ſlaine, CROIA releeued, his armie diſcomfited, and all that he had done, brought to nought; fretted thereat exceedingly, and was therewith ſo much greeued, that he could not for a ſeaſon eat or drinke or take reſt, his diſcontented thoughts ſo much troubled him. In the end, to reme- 1466

die the matter, he reſolued the next Spring to goe againe in perſon himſelfe with a moſt puiſſant G
armie into EPIRVS, and ſo if it were poſſible, to make a full conqueſt thereof: of which his purpoſe *Scanderbeg* vnderſtanding, prouided for his comming, as he had in former time. The Spring being come, *Mahomet* according to his former reſolution, with a mightie armie entred into EPIRVS, and there with exceeding labour & charge firſt repaired or rather reedified the old ruines of the citie of VALMES, wherein he left a ſtrong garriſon, of purpoſe to trouble that part of the countrey. From thence he marched to DIRRACHIVM (now called DVRAZZO, but of old time EPIDAMNVM) a cit e vpon the ſea coaſt, then in the poſſeſſion of the Venetians, famous for many things in the time of the Romane empire, but eſpecially for the flight of the Romane Senate thither, and their entertainement there in the time of the ciuil wars betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompeius*. H
This citie *Mahomet* thought to haue taken vnprouided, and ſo vpon the ſuddaine to haue carried it; but was therein much deceiued, finding it ſtrongly fortified and manned both by the Venetians and *Scanderbeg*. Where when he had there ſpent ſome time, and to his great loſſe in vain attempted the citie; he riſe vpon the ſuddaine: and retiring into EPIRVS, came and ſat downe againe before CROIA, of purpoſe by his ſuddaine comming to haue terrified the citizens: and vainely perſuaded, that he had left *Scanderbeg* in DIRRACHIVM, for that in the aſſailing thereof he had diſcouered many of *Scanderbeg* his men, and thereby ſuppoſed him to haue beene there alſo; the greateſt cauſe why he ſo ſuddenly riſe and came to CROIA. At his firſt comming he offered great rewards and large priuiledges vnto the citizens, if they would forthwith yeeld vp their citie; otherwiſe he threatned vnto them all the calamities of warre, vowing neuer to depart I
thence before he had it: whereunto he receiued no other anſwere out of the citie than was ſent him by the mouth of the Cannon, or brought him by many moſt braue ſallies. *Scanderbeg* in the meane while continually moleſting his campe, and euery night falling into one quarter or another thereof. *Mahomet* taught by experience, to what ſmall purpoſe it would be for him to lie there long, riſe with his armie, and marched againe to the ſea ſide to a place now called the head of REDON vpon the gulfe of VENICE, not farre from DIRRACHIVM, where *Scanderbeg* had begun to build a new citie called CHIVRILL, not yet finiſhed: which *Mahomet* in deſpight of the man, raſed downe to the ground. After that, hearing that many of the Epirots were retired into the mountaines, he went to ſeeke them out, and was with great loſſe by thoſe mountaine people repulſed: *Scanderbeg* ſtill following him at the heeles, and awaiting all oportunities, K
daily cut off part of his armie. So that at laſt the tyrant deſpairing of any good to be done in that expedition, was glad to depart out of EPIRVS, hauing atcheeued nothing worth his comming, and ſo full of diſcontentment and melancholie returned into CONSTANTINOPLE.

After all theſe great troubles, *Scanderbeg* rid ouer moſt part of EPIRVS, to view the ſtate of his kingdome, and ſo at laſt came to LYSSA (a citie of the Venetians, which he had alwaies ſpecially liked) there to conferre with the Venetian legat and other the confederat princes, of matters concerning their ſtate in generall, as his manner was: but more particularly how they might take the citie of VALMES, which *Mahomet* had the laſt yeare built in the ſiegnorie of *Aryannites Comynat*, and much troubled that part of EPIRVS. But whileſt he lay there, he fell ſicke of a
Scanderbeg falleth ſicke. feauer, which daily ſo encreaſed vpon him, that he became ſicke euen vnto death: and now perL
ceiuing his end to draw nigh, ſent for his wife and ſonne, with the princes & lords his confederates, and the embaſſadours of the Venetians, into his bed chamber. Where after he had at large with greater pain notably diſcourſed of his troubleſome life led amongſt them, than he had before paſſed the ſame, and carefully forewarned them of the dangers like to enſue; he earneſtly exhorted them to continue in vnitie & concord, and valiantly to ſtand in defence of their religion, countrey, and libertie. And afterwards turning his ſpeech to his wife and his ſonne, commended them both with his kingdome to the tuition of the Venetians: who by the articles of the confederation betwixt him and them, were in honour bound to protect his ſonne and kingdome, during the time of his minoritie, and afterwards peaceably to place him in the ſame. In fine, he willed his wife after his death to paſſe ouer with her ſonne into APVLIA, where they M
might in ſafety & quiet liue vpon ſuch poſſeſſions as he there held by the gift of king *Ferdinand*.
The death of Scanderbeg. And ſo after he had with moſt feruent prayer commended his ſoule into the hands of Almightie God, departed in peace the 17. day of Ianuarie, in the yeare of our Lord 1466, when he had liued about 63 yeares, and thereof raigned about 24. His death was worthely lamented of all Chriſtian princes, but eſpecially of the Venetians and princes of ALBANIA, who had now loſt their

A their moſt careſull watchman and inuincible champion: the ſorrow of his ſubiects is not to be expreſſed, euery man bewailing him, as the only ſtay of the common-weale, and as if with him they had loſt all their hope. His dead body was with the generall lamentation of all men roially buried in the cathedrall church of *S. Nicholas* at LYSSA: where it reſted in peace, vntill that about nine yeeres after, the Turks comming to the ſiege of SCODRA, by the way tooke the citie of LYSSA, and there with great deuotion digged vp his bones, reckoning it in ſome part of their happineſſe, if they might but ſee or touch the ſame: and ſuch as could get any part thereof, were it neuer ſo little, cauſed the ſame to be ſet, ſome in ſiluer, ſome in gold, to hang about their necks, or weare vpon their bodies; perſuading themſelues by the wearing thereof to be partakers of
B ſuch good fortune and hap as had *Scanderbeg* himſelfe whileſt he liued: which is not vnaptly by *Gabriell Fairnus* of CREMONA, thus in verſe expreſſed.

Scanderbeg buried at Lyſſa.

The body of Scanderbeg digged vp by the Turks, and of them greatly honoured.

SCANDERBEG.

Paulus Iouius Illuſt. virorum, Elog. lib. 3.

Turcarum clades, Othomanni nominis horror,
Epiri tutela, illo iacuere ſepulchro:
Quo quondam inuicti cubuerunt oſſa Georgi.
Nunc & membra viri, & diſſectum in fruſta ſepulchrum
Interijt, ſparſi manes, conſciſa vagantur
Oſſa, nec in gelida nunc ſaltem morte quieſcunt.

Namq;

Namq; vt is assertum toties cum laude paternum G
Imperium, exacta moriens ætate reliquit:
Illicet immanes tenuerunt omnia Turcæ.
Tum clari Herois venerati nobile bustum,
Ossaque, marmoraque, inuictum condentia corpus,
Abstulerant, sibi quisque in partes secta minutas,
Tanquam ijs bellica vis, & Martius ardor inesset:
Et genium præstare bonum, sortemque valerent.
Sic quæ alijs tumulum virtus parat, abstulit illi:
Atque eadem diro venerandum præbuit hosti. H

In English thus.

The bloudie bane of faithlesse Turkes, and terrour of their name,
EPIRVS strong defence and guard, lay buried there with fame:
Within that tombe wherein long since, Great *Castriotus* lay,
But now those limbes and tombe defac'd, are carried quite away;
The remnants of that worthy wight out of his graue were torne:
And being dead could find no rest, but were for iewels worne.
For after he farre spent with age, gaue place to fatall doome,
And left his fathers kingdome got, and kept with great renowme; I
Forthwith the cruell Turks preuaild, and all things there possest:
Who worshipping his stately tombe, and place of quiet rest,
Digg'd vp his bones, and brake the tombe wherein he did remaine:
And glad was he that could thereof some little part obtaine.
As if in them some martiall force, or vertue great had beene:
Or fortune rare, such as before in him was liuing seene.
So vertue which to others giues a sepulture and graue,
Bereft it him, yet forst his foe in honour it to haue.

Mathias king of Hungarie, taketh the kingdome of Bosna from the Turke.

Most part of the time of these warres betwixt *Mahomet* and *Scanderbeg*, the Venetians by sea and the Hungarians by land, kept the Turks throughly busied. *Mathias Coruinus* King of HVNGARIE (according to his promise made vnto the Venetians) entred into the kingdome of BOSNA, where by force he ouerthrew the strong forts which the Turks had built for the defence of their frontiers, and manfully draue them out before him vntill he came to IAZIGA (of some called IAITZE) the chiefe citie of BOSNA, which he at length tooke: and following the course of his victorie, scarcely suffered the Turks to breath, vntill he had by force wrested all that kingdome out of their hands. Wherewith *Mahomet* being exceedingly grieued, in great furie came with a strong armie into BOSNA, and laid hard siege to IAZIGA, which was by the Christians right valiantly defended: vntill *Mathias* with a puissant armie came to the reliefe thereof, who so troubled the Turks campe with continuall skirmishes on the one side, and they of the towne with desperat sallies on the other; that at length the proud Turke was driuen to such extremitie, L
that he was glad secretly to steale away by night with all his armie into SERVIA; and for hast to leaue behind him both his tents and great ordinance, which (the Turks histories report) he caused to be cast into the riuer, because it should not come into the hands of the Christians. *Mathias* after he had thus valiantly put to flight his enemies and relieued his citie, followed the Turks into SERVIA, and tooke part of that countrey also, which together with BOSNA he vnited to the kingdome of HVNGARIE. In these warres, *Mahomet* had such proofe of the force and power of *Mathias* and the Hungarians, that for a good while after he had no great stomacke to prouoke them farther: for why, the name of *Mathias* was now become vnto the Turks no lesse dreadfull, than was sometime the name of his father the valiant *Huniades*.

The Venetians at the same time also with their gallies scoured the seas, & landing their men M
sometime in one place, sometime in another, did great harme in many places of the Turks dominion neere vnto the sea coast. Amongst other their Generals at diuers times sent from that state, one *Nicholas Canalis* succeeding *Lauretanus* (whom we haue before spoken of) as soone as he had receiued his charge, came with his fleet into the bay of SALONICHI, and landing his men, burnt diuers townes and villages alongst the sea side. Afterwards returning into PELO-

PONESVS,

A PONESVS, he fortified the towne of LEOOSTICIVM in the gulfe of PATRAS, which worke the Turks with their often skirmiſhes laboured to haue hindred, but in deſpite of all they could doe it was brought to perfection, and a ſtrong garriſon therein left for the defence therof, which done, he returned againe to EVBŒA. Shortly after, he with the ſame fleet put to ſea againe; and ſailing alongſt the coaſt of MACEDONIA and THRACIA, ſurpriſed the citie of ÆNVS which ſtandeth vpon the mouth of the riuer Meritza, called in ancient time Hebrus, vpon which riuer the famous cities ANDRINOPLE and PHILIPPOPOLIS are alſo ſituate. *Canalis* after he had taken the ſpoile of the citie returned to his gallies, carrying away with him two thouſand captiues into EVBŒA. At the ſame time alſo, the Venetians giuing aid vnto *Nicholaus Duchaine*
B againſt his brother *Alexius*, then at variance for the principalitie of ZADRIMA, neere vnto the riuer of DRINO in EPIRVS, gaue a great ouerthrow to the Turks which came in the quarrell of *Alexius*.

Mahomet not a little offended with the harmes done vnto him by the Venetians, and perceiuing that the Iſland of EVBŒA (now called NIGROPONTE) was for the commodious ſituation and ſtrength thereof, the chiefe place from whence they wrought him all theſe wrongs, and whither they afterwards retired againe, as vnto a moſt ſure place of refuge; determined with himſelfe at once to be euen with them for all, and to imploy his whole forces both by ſea and land, for the gaining of that place. This Iſland of EVBŒA is about an hundred miles in length, and lieth ouer againſt that part of GRECIA which was of old called BŒOTIA, from whence it is
C ſeparated with a narrow ſtrait of the ſea: it aboundeth with corne, wine, oile, fruit, and wood fit for ſhipping. The chiefe citie thereof, was in ancient time called CHALCIDE, and of latter time NIGROPHONTE, by which name alſo the whole Iſland was knowne: albeit the Turks now call it EGRIBOS: a populous, rich, and ſtrong citie; ſo fortified with wals and bulwarks, that (in moſt mens iudgement) it ſeemed a place impregnable. Vnto this ſtrong citie *Mahomet* reſolued to lay ſiege, knowing well that vpon the fortune therof depended the ſtate of the whole Iſland. Wherefore he aſſembled a mightie armie, and made great preparation both by ſea and land: and when all things were in readineſſe, ſent *Mahomet* (the great Baſſa of the court) with a fleet of three hundred gallies, and certaine other ſmall veſſels well furniſhed with ſouldiers, mariners, and all things neceſſarie, by ſea into EVBŒA: and with a great armie marched himſelfe
D by land through ACHAIA, vntill he came ouer againſt the citie of CHALCIS. The Venetian Admirall hearing of the comming of the Turks fleet, ſet forward to haue met them neere vnto the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS: but after he had by his eſpials deſcried the great number of the enemies fleet, finding himſelfe too weake, ſhaped his courſe to the Iſland of SCIROS. The Baſſa comming out of the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS, couered the ſea with his fleet, and holding on his entended courſe, without let came to EVBŒA: where at his firſt landing, he tooke STORA and BASILICON, two ſmall townes, which he raſed to the ground, and from thence went directly to CHALCIS. As ſoone as this great fleet was there arriued, *Mahomet* cauſed a bridge to be made of his ſmaller veſſels ouer the ſtrait betwixt ACHAIA and EVBŒA, whereby he paſſed all his armie, and ſo belaid the citie round both by ſea and land. And after he had planted his
E batterie, began moſt furiouſly to ſhake the wals: wherein he had in ſhort time made faire breaches, and the ſooner for that one *Thomas* of LIBVRNIA (chiefe canonier of the citie) before corrupted by the Turks, by ſignes agreed vpon, gaue them certaine knowledge in what places the wals were weakeſt: whereby they ſo aptly planted their batterie, as if they had taken view on the inſide of the wals. Which foule treaſon was at length perceiued, and the traitor therefore worthily executed. Yet little preuailed the tyrant thereby, for ſuch was the induſtrie of the defendants, that whatſoeuer he had by the furie of his great ordinance beaten downe by day, that they with reſtleſſe labour repaired againe by night. Thus was the ſiege continued thirtie dayes, in which ſpace many a ſharpe aſſault was giuen by the Turks, to their great loſſe; and the citie ſtill valiantly defended by the Chriſtians. At length the Venetian Admirall (to the great comfort of
F the beſieged) came with his fleet within view of the citie, making ſemblant as if he would haue giuen the Turks battell. Whereupon it is reported, that *Mahomet* was about to haue raiſed his ſiege, and haue got himſelfe ouer into the maine, for feare the Venetians ſhould with their gallies haue broken the bridge, and ſo haue ſhut him vp into that Iſland: Which thing it was thought the Admirall might haue done to his great praiſe, if he would as a couragious chieftaine haue aduentured the matter, as he was earneſtly requeſted by the captains of euery priuat gally;

1470

Chalcis the chiefe citie of Eubœa beſieged by the Turke.

Treaſon in the citie.

who

who generally grieued to ſee him ſo great a commander, to let ſlip ſo faire an opportunitie. G
But he fearing to come any neerer, came to an anchor and moued not, neither gaue any ſigne of
comfort or reliefe to the beſieged. Which thing the Turkiſh King quickly perceiuing, & there-
with encouraged: hauing now in diuers places beaten downe the wals, and made them ſault-
table; brought on his men to the breaches, promiſing them the ſpoile of the citie, with many
other great rewards and hie preferments according to their particular deſerts, wherof he ſaid, he
would himſelfe be an eye-witneſſe. Hereupon the Turks gaue a moſt fierce and furious aſſault,
which the defendants with inuincible courage receiued, and made ſuch ſlaughter of them, that
the ditches were filled, and the breaches made vp with the bodies of the dead Turks. But ſuch
was the number of that populous armie (the greateſt ſtrength of the Turks) that the liuing little H
felt the loſſe of the dead: *Mahomet* continually ſending in new ſupplies of freſh men, in ſtead of
them that were ſlaine or wounded: So that one could no ſooner fall, but two or three ſtept vp
in his roome, and ſo ſucceſſiuely, as if new men had ſprong out of the bodies of the dead. Twiſe
they had euen woon the breaches, and were both times with wonderfull ſlaughter beaten out
againe. This deadly and dreadfull aſſault, was maintained a whole day and a night without in-
Chalcis taken by the Turks. termiſſion. At length the defendants being for the moſt part ſlaine or wounded, and the reſt
wearied with long fight, and vnable to defend the towne now aſſaulted almoſt round, retired
from the breaches into the market place, and there like reſolute men, ſold their liues at a deere
price vnto the Turks. Amongſt the ſlaine Chriſtians, were found the dead bodies of many no-
table women, who ſeeing the ruine of the citie, choſe rather to die with their friends in defence I
thereof, than aliue to fall into the hands of their barbarous enemies.

Mahomet being now become lord of the citie, and hauing loſt fortie thouſand of his Turks in
that ſiege, in reuenge thereof cauſed all the men that were found in the citie aliue, to be put to
moſt cruell death, eſpecially the Italians, vpon whom he ſhewed his tyrannie with moſt exqui-
ſit and horrible torments. *Paulus Ericus* gouernour of the citie, with a few others, who with him
were fled into the caſtle, without reſiſtance deliuered the ſame vnto him, vpon his faithfull pro-
miſe, that they might in ſafetie depart: but after that he had got them into his power, the perfidi-
ous tyrant without regard, commanded them all to be cruelly murthered. The gouernours
daughter a maiden of incomparable beautie, was amongſt the reſt taken priſoner, and for her
rare perfection, by them that tooke her preſented to *Mahomet*, as the mirrour of beautie: The K
barbarous tyrant greedie of ſo faire a prey, ſought firſt by flattering words and faire perſwaſi-
on, to induce her to conſent to his deſire: but when he could not ſo preuaile, he fell into ano-
ther vaine, and began to ſhew himſelfe in his owne nature, threatning her with death, torture,
and force, worſe than death it ſelfe, if ſhee would not otherwiſe yeeld vnto his appetite.
Whereunto the conſtant virgin (worthie eternall fame) anſwered ſo reſolutely, and ſo contrary
to the tyrants expectation, that he being therewith enraged, commanded her to be preſently
ſlaine. The horrible and monſtrous crueltie, with the filthie outrages by that beaſtly and bar-
The fruitfull Iſland of Eubœa taken by the Turks. barous people committed, at the taking of that citie, paſſeth all credit. CHALCIS thus
woon, the reſt of that fruitfull Iſland without farther reſiſtance yeelded vnto the Turkiſh
ſlauerie, vnder which it yet groaneth. This calamitie happened vnto the Venetian ſtate, or ra- L
ther (to ſay truly) to the generall hurt of the Chriſtian common-weale, in the yeere of our re-
demption 1470.

Canalis the Venetian Admirall, who all the time of the ſiege, had in the ſight of the citie lien
at anchor as a looker on; fearing now that the citie was loſt, to be ſet vpon by the Turks fleet,
hoiſed ſaile, and laded with diſhonour returned in haſte vnto VENICE, where he was by the
commandement of the Senat committed to priſon, and afterward with all his familie exiled to
VTINVM.

Shortly after, when *Mahomet* was departed with his armie out of EVBŒA, and his fleet re-
1471 turned to CONSTANTINOPLE: the Venetians with their gallies, attempted to haue vpon
the ſudden ſurpriſed the citie, a little before loſt. But *Mahomet* had therein left ſo ſtrong a garri- M
ſon, that when the Venetians had landed their men, they were againe enforced to retire to their
gallies, and to forſake their Iſland.

CHALCIS thus loſt with all the Iſland of EVBŒA, the Venetians choſe *Petrus Mocenicus*, a
valiant and diſcreet gentleman, Admirall of their fleet, in ſtead of *Canalis*: and by their embaſſa-
dours ſollicited *Sixtus* the fourth of that name, then Biſhop of ROME, and *Ferdinand* King
of

A of NAPLES, with *Lewis* king of CYPRVS, and the grand maſter of the RHODES, to ioyne their forces together with theirs againſt the great and common enemie: which thing all the aforeſaid Chriſtian princes promiſed them to doe. And the more to entangle the Turke, they at the ſame time ſent *Caterinus Zenus* their Embaſſadour with rich preſents vnto *Alymbeius Vſun-Caſſanes*, the great king of PERSIA, to incite him on that ſide againſt the Turke: in which negotiation *Zenus* ſo well behaued himſelfe, that the next yeare following that great king tooke vp armes againſt *Mahomet*, and had with him mortall warres, as ſhall be in conuenient place hereafter declared. *Mahomet* not ignorant of theſe proceedings of the Venetians, and that they did what they might to ſtirre vp as many enemies as they could, and to bring him (if it were poſſible) into
B hatred with the whole world: and well knowing how much he had offended the minds of the Chriſtian princes with the crueltie he had of late vſed againſt them of CHALCIS, thought it not beſt as then further to prouoke them, and ſo happily to bring all at once about his cares, but for a ſeaſon to lie ſtill at CONSTANTINOPLE, as if he had beene deſirous now to liue in peace, not meaning further harme: hoping thereby, that although he concluded no peace with any of them (which indeed he was not deſirous of) yet that tract of time might mitigate the hainouſneſſe of the fact, and coole the heat of their diſpleaſure: whereby it came to paſſe as he wiſhed, that nothing worth the ſpeaking of was that yeare attempted againſt him. And becauſe the Perſian king was the man of whom he ſtood moſt in doubt, he ſought by his embaſſadours to pacifie him, and to withdraw him from the league of the Chriſtians: requeſting him, if it
C were for nothing els but for the communitie of the Mahometan religion, wherein they well agreed, and were thereby the profeſſed enemies of the Chriſtians, to withdraw his hand, and in their cauſe to ceaſe to take vp armes: vrging now (for that it ſo ſtood with his purpoſe) the zeale of religion, whereas otherwiſe he regarded (as was thought) no religion at all. But *Zenus* the Venetian Embaſſadour lying continually in the Perſian court, ſo wrought the matter with *Vſun-Caſſanes*, that he told the Turks Embaſſadours plainely, That he could not nor would not longer endure the manifeſt iniurie and wrong done vnto him by the Turkiſh king: and farther, that he had made a faithfull league with the Chriſtian princes, and therefore would to the vttermoſt of his power make it knowne vnto the world, that he would effectually performe what thing ſoeuer he had promiſed: and ſo diſmiſſed them, now no leſſe diſcontented than were
D before the Perſian Embaſſadours at ſuch time as they returned from the Turks court, hauing obtained nothing they then requeſted concerning the Emperour of TRAPEZOND.

1472 *The Venetians aided by king Ferdinand, the Biſhop of Rome, and the great maſter of the Rhodes, doe the Turks great harme all alongſt the coaſt of the leſſer Aſia.*

The yeare following, *Mocenicus* the Venetian Admirall with his fleet arriued in the Iſle of LESBOS, where he did great harme. From thence he paſſed the bay of ADRAMITTIVM into the leſſer ASIA, and ſore ſpoiled the countrey about PERGAMVS. After that he landed againe at CNIDVS vpon the coaſt of CARIA, where he tooke a great bootie: and ſo hauing done the Turks exceeding much harme in ASIA all alongſt the ſea coaſt oppoſit to GRÆCIA, he returned laden with ſpoile towards PELOPONESVS. In his returne, about the promontorie of MALEA, vpon the coaſt of PELOPONESVS, he met with *Richaienſis* comming vnto him with ſeuenteene gallies from king *Ferdinand:* by whom hee was certified, that the great Biſhops fleet was
E readie to come forth alſo. After mutual gratulation, as the manner at ſea is, the Admirals ioining their fleets in one, landed at METHONE, now called MODON, then a citie of the Venetians in PELOPONESVS: where after they had well refreſhed their ſouldiours, and taken in freſh victuals, they put to ſea againe; and ſailing through the Iſlands, landed in ASIA, where they were at their firſt landing encountered by the countrey Turks, whom at laſt they put to flight, and by the ſpace of foure dayes tooke what pillage they could in the countrey: where the ſouldiours found great ſtore of rich bootie, eſpecially of Turkie carpets, which are there made in great abundance. From thence they ſayled to HALICARNASVS, which is a part of CARIA (where ſometime ſtood the ſtately tombe which Queene *Artemeſia* built for her Huſband *Mauſolus*, accounted amongſt the wonders of the world) where they tooke a wonderfull ſpoile. There came vnto
F them *Nicholas* Biſhop of MODRVSSA, with twentie gallies ſent from the great Biſhop: whom the other two Generals welcommed with great ioy. At the ſame time alſo came thither two gallies from the great maſter of the RHODES. With this fleet of 85 gallies, they ſailed to the Iſle of SAMOS ouer againſt EPHESVS (ſometime a place of great fame, but then altogether deſolate and vnpeopled) there to conſult for their further proceeding in thoſe warres. Looſing from SAMOS, they tooke their courſe alongſt the coaſt of ASIA, and landed at ATTALIA, the cheefe citie

of

of PAMPHILIA, a place of great trafficke: where they found in the ſuburbes of the citie great G
ſtore of many rich commodities, brought thither out of ÆGIPT and SYRIA; whereof they tooke what pleaſed them, and burnt the reſt, together with the ſuburbes. Vnto the citie it ſelfe they began to lay ſiege, but perceiuing that it was not without great loſſe of their men to be taken, they departed thence: and running all alongſt the coaſt of PAMPHILIA, burnt & deſtroied what came in their way, and ſo returned backe againe to the RHODES: where they met an Embaſſadour from *Vſun-Caſſanes* the Perſian king, to the Biſhop and the Venetians, for great ordinance; whereof that ſo mightie a prince was altogether vnfurniſhed. Of this Embaſſador they vnderſtood, that *Vſun-Caſſanes* was entred into league with the Chriſtian princes, and now buſie in making preparation againſt the Turke. At which time *Mahomet* requited the Venetians H
with no leſſe harme in EPIRVS and DALMATIA, than they had done to him in ASIA: for now that *Scanderbeg* was dead, the Turks mightely preuailed vpon the weake princes of EPIRVS and ALBANIA, with the countries adioyning. The Chriſtian fleet departing from the RHODES, landed in the countrey of the Myndians, a part of CARIA, and with great ſpoile returned to the Iſland of NAXOS, one of the CYCLADES: from whence king *Ferdinand* his gallies returned home, laded with much rich ſpoile; for now the yeare was farre ſpent. Yet after the departure of the kings gallies, *Mocenicus* with the Legate returned backe againe into ASIA, and there landing their men, tooke the famous citie of SMYRNA in IONIA, and when they had taken the ſpoile therof, ſet it on fire. At which time alſo they did great harme about CLAZOMENE, not farre from SMYRNA. So Winter drawing now faſt on, they returned laded with the rich I
ſpoyles of ASIA, the Legate into ITALIE, and *Mocenicus* to METHONE.

1473 The inſatiable deſire of ſoueraignetie, whereunto the Turkiſh king was naturally enclined, had continually armed him, not onely againſt the Chriſtian princes, but againſt others alſo euen of his owne ſuperſtition: making no great difference betwixt the one & the other, if ſo he might extend his dominion. He had long before vnder the pretence of a friendly parley craftely circumuented the king of MYSIA, a countrey in ASIA, and hauing got him within his danger, cruelly put him to death, & by force ſubduing his kingdome, left not one of the kings blood aliue. After that he inuaded CILICIA, which the Turks call CARAMANIA, where the two young brethren, *Pyramet* and *Caſſambet* raigned, and draue them both out of CILICIA: of whom *Pyramet* the elder, fled for refuge to *Vſun-Caſſanes*; *Caſſambet* the yonger aſſiſted by his old friends, K
ſought by force of armes to recouer againe his inheritance wrongfully by the Turks poſſeſſed, and was beſieging certaine townes vpon the ſea coaſt, which being taken from the Turks would eaſily draw all the reſt of the kingdome after them. *Mocenicus* the Venetian Admirall being now with the firſt of the Spring come vpon the coaſt of CILICIA, at the requeſt of *Caſſambet* landed certaine companies of his men vnder the leading of *Victor Superantius*, and certaine peeces of great artillerie, wherewith he ſo battered the walls of SICHINVM, that he enforced the Turks therein to yeeld vp the citie: which he deliuered to *Caſſambet*. In like manner he tooke the citie of CORYCVS, which he alſo reſtored to *Caſſambet*. At laſt he laid ſiege to SELEVCIA, which ſtandeth vpon the riuer ORONTES, and was built by king *Seleucus*, one of the ſucceſſors of *Alexander* the Great, diſtant from the ſea about fiue miles: the Gouernour of this L
citie diſcouraged with the ſight of the great artillerie, deliuered the citie to the Venetian captain, who by the appointment of the Admirall reſtored the ſame to *Caſſambet*. Who by this meanes brought againe into his kingdome, gaue great thanks vnto the Admirall, promiſing both for himſelfe and for his brother to be alwayes friends vnto the Venetians. *Mocenicus* departing from CILICIA, landed his men in LYCIA, and harried that countrey all alongſt the ſea coaſt. And this *Mocenicus* ſailed into CYPRVS, to appeaſe a great inſurrection there raiſed againſt the queene, who was by her huſband at his death left to the protection of the Venetians: which rebellion when he had well quieted, hearing that *Triadanus Grittus*, was by the decree of the Senat appointed Admirall, and alreadie come into PELOPONESVS, he with as much ſpeed as he could haſted thither, to giue vp his charge, and ſo to returne home againe to VENICE. M

Mahomet no leſſe troubleſome vnto the Mahometane princes than to the Chriſtians.

About this time the great Perſian king *Vſun-Caſſanes* began to make warre vpon the Turkiſh emperor *Mahomet*, for the better vnderſtanding whereof, it ſhal not be from our purpoſe briefly to ſhew by what meanes this *Vſun-Caſſanes*, of a ſmall prince aſpired to the kingdome of PERSIA, and ſo in ſhort time grew to that greatneſſe, that he was iuſtly accounted amongſt the greateſt monarchs of the world then liuing; as appeareth by theſe warres betwixt him and the great

Turkiſh

A Turkiſh emperour *Mahomet*. This *Vſun-Caſſanes* of whom we now ſpeake, was the ſonne of that *Tachretin*, who with other poor princes was driuen into exile by the violence of *Baiazet* the firſt, great grandfather to this *Mahomet* the great emperour of the Turks, and was againe reſtored by the great *Tamerlane*, as is before declared in the life of *Baiazet*. By the death of *Tachretin*, his ſonne *Vſun-Caſſanes* (of ſome called alſo *Aſymbeius*) obtained that ſmall territorie which his father had in ARMENIA: nothing anſwering vnto the greatneſſe of his conceits. Wherefore not contented with ſuch poſſeſsions as was from his father diſcended vnto him, hee began to ſhoulder for more roome, with ſuch weake princes his neighbours as he thought hee might beſt deale withall; wringing one prouince from this prince, another from that, & thruſting ſome
B others quite out of all that they had: And in ſhort time ſo enlarged his dominion, that he had got into his hands a great part of ARMENIA, and was reputed both for a mightie and fortunat prince. Inſomuch, that *Calo Ioannes* then emperour of TRAPEZONDE (whoſe power altogither anſwered not to the greatneſſe of his ſtile, being for moſt part ſhut vp within the bounds of PONTVS; and fearing the greatneſſe of the Turkiſh emperour *Mahomet*, whoſe name began then to grow dreadfull vnto his neighbour princes) gaue to him his onely daughter *Deſpina* in marriage: by ſuch aliance to ſtrengthen himſelfe againſt the Turkiſh tyrant, if need ſhould require. At which marriage it was agreed, that *Vſun-Caſſanes* ſhould in the right of his wife enioy all the kingdome of PONTVS, after the death of *Calo-Ioannes* her father, and of *Dauid* his brother: and that *Deſpina* ſhould ſo long as ſhe liued haue the free exerciſe of her Chriſtian religion.
C By this woman, *Vſun Caſſanes* had a daughter called *Martha*, whom I willingly remember, for that ſhe was the mother of *Hyſmael*, afterwards the great king of PERSIA, commonly called *Hyſmael the Sophi*: of whom more ſhall bee ſaid hereafter in the life of *Selimus*. *Vſun-Caſſanes* honoured with this great marriage, and ſtrengthened with this new alliance, ceaſed not after his wonted manner daily to encroch vpon his neighbour princes: and proceeded ſo farre, that at length he began to lay hand vpon a part of ARMENIA, which was then part of the dominion of the Perſian king. *Zenza* (whom ſome call *Tzokies*, which was indeed the name of his father) raigning then in PERSIA, by his embaſſadours admoniſhed and in ſort commaunded *Vſun-Caſſanes* to hold himſelfe content with his owne, or at leaſt with that he had alreadie wrongfully taken from others, and not to preſume to come within the bounds of his dominion, threat-
D ning otherwiſe to take him as an enemie to his ſtate, and to turne his forces vpon him. With which embaſſage *Vſun-Caſſanes* being much offended, gaue the embaſſadors no entertainment, but commanded them with ſpeed to get them out of his kingdome, and to tell their maſter, That he would ſhortly himſelfe in perſon come and debate the matter with him face to face. With which proud anſwere from ſo meane a prince, the Perſian king moued, leuied ſuch an armie for the inuading of him, as was thought to haue beene ſufficient to haue ſubdued a farre greater prince: and ſo appointed, ſet forward toward ARMENIA. *Vſun-Caſſanes* much inferiour to this great king in wealth and number of men, but not in hautineſſe of mind and valiantneſſe of courage, ſtaied not to expect the comming of ſo puiſſant an enemie, but full of hope ſet forward to meet him, and by great iournies ſought to come vpon him before he could haue any knowledge
E of his comming: yet had he then in his army ſcarcely one man to ten, but all armed with courageous hearts, & conducted by a moſt fortunat chieftaine which feared nothing. So holding on his way, at length he met with the great armie of the Perſians, with whom he preſently ioyned battell; and after a long and cruell fight, ouerthrew them in the plaine field, with ſuch a ſlaughter, as might well haue weakned the forces of a right great kingdome. The great king more enraged than diſcouraged with his ouerthrow, raiſed a farre greater armie than before, the verie ſtrength of his kingdome: reſoluing now not to ſend any more his lieutenants, but to go in perſon himſelfe againſt ſo deſperat an enemie. All things being in readineſſe, he ſet forward, and at length met with the Armenian prince, whom he found as ready to giue battell as hee was at the firſt. So being both deſirous to trie their fortune, they ioyned battell; wherin the Perſians were
F againe diſcomfited and put to flight, and mo of them ſlaine in that battell, than were brought into the field in the firſt army. *Zenza* the Perſian king was there ſlaine with *Vſun-Caſſanes* his owne hand, and *Cariaſuphus* his ſonne taken priſoner: whom the Armenian prince vſed with the greateſt honour could be deuiſed, giuing vnto him the honour and title due vnto the Perſian king, taking vnto himſelfe the bare name of the protectour of the Perſian ſtate. Which hee did onely to pleaſe the Perſians, and to keepe them quiet vntill he had got ſome more aſſured poſ-

Vſun Caſſanes in a great battell ouerthroweth the Perſian king.

ſeſsion of that kingdome. But after hee had in the two former battels broken their greateſt G
ſtrength, and then vnder the colour of a peaceable gouernour got into his power the regall citie
of TAVRIS, with the reſt of the cities and ſtrong places of that great kingdome, and that all
men had him now in great reuerence and admiration for his great vertues: hee ſecretly diſpat-
ched out of the way the poore titular king his priſoner (the laſt of the poſteritie of the mightie
Tamerlaine) and tooke vpon himſelfe the higheſt place, which admitteth no partner. Whileſt
this reſtleſſe prince was thus tumbling in the world, and not yet well ſetled in his new gotten
kingdome, *Mahomet* the Turkiſh emperour no leſſe ambitious than himſelfe, had ſcornfully re-
iected the embaſſadours and preſents which *Vſun-Caſſanes* had ſent: & hauing ſhamefully put
to death *Dauid* the emperour of TRAPEZONDE his aliance, had conuerted all the kingdome of H
PONTVS (which *Vſun-Caſſanes* of right claimed, as his wiues dowrie) into the forme of a pro-
uince, and ſo vnited it vnto the Turkiſh empire. Which ſo manifeſt a wrong, *Vſun-Caſſanes* in
the newneſſe of his ſo late atchieued greatneſſe, durſt not aduenture to redreſſe: but after that he
was ſurely ſeated, and had with the courſe of time ouercome all dangers at home, being daily
prickt forward with the remembrance of the former iniuries (ſtill ſuggeſted by the importunitie
of his wife *Deſpina*) and the ſolicitation of the Venetians, to whom he had by ſolemne promiſe
bound himſelfe; he determined now to take the matter in hand, and to trie his forces vpon his
proud enemie the Turkiſh emperour. Hereupon hee raiſed a great armie, and being well ap-
pointed of all things neceſſary, paſsing through ARMENIA toward PONTVS, neere vnto the riuer
EVPHRATES, was encountred by *Muſtapha* (*Mahomet* his eldeſt ſonne, a young prince of great I
hope) and *Amurath* the great Baſſa of ROMANIA, whom *Mahomet* (fearing ſuch a matter) had
ſent before with a ſtrong armie out of EVROPE to ioyne with ſuch forces as *Muſtapha* had alrea-
die raiſed in ASIA, ſo to withſtand the inuaſion of the Perſian. Theſe two great commaunders
Muſtapha and *Amurath* ioyning battell with *Vſun-Caſſanes*, were by him in the plaine field ouer-
throwne; where *Amurath* the great Baſſa himſelfe with thirtie thouſand Turkes were ſlaine:
Muſtapha with the reſt of the armie, by ſhamefull flight ſauing themſelues.

1474 Now when *Mahomet* vnderſtood that *Amurath* was ſlaine and his armie diſcomfited, he was
Two huge armies of the Turks and Perſians in field together. therwith exceedingly troubled. But purpoſing to be thereof reuenged, gaue order into all parts
of his dominions for the leuying of new forces: ſo that at the time by him appointed, was aſſem-
bled a great and mightie armie of three hundred and twentie thouſand men. *Vſun-Caſſanes* in K
like manner was in the field with an armie, nothing in number inferiour vnto his enemie. Theſe
two *Mahometane* kings, drawing after them their hugie armies, met together neere the moun-
taines of ARMENIA: where, at the firſt encounter, one of the Turks greateſt Baſſaes was ſlaine
with fortie thouſand Turkes. With which hard beginning the prowd tyrant was ſo daunted,
that he could hardly be perſuaded to proue his fortune any farther, but contenting himſelfe with
that loſſe, was about to haue retired: and had vndoubtedly ſo done, if ſome of his moſt ex-
pert and valiant captaines which might be bold with him, had not ſharpely reproued him, that
hauing ſo populous an armie as ſcarcely felt that ſmall loſſe, he ſhould once thinke of returning
without victorie. With which their comfortable perſuaſions, he was againe encouraged to giue
battell. Yet for his more ſafetie, hee withdrew his armie into a ſtrait betwixt two mountaines, L
and with his cariages fortified the front thereof, as with a trench: behind which cariages, he pla-
ced his great ordinance, and on either ſide his archers. The Perſians, as men of great valour, and
thereto encouraged with their former victories, came on as men fearing no perill, to haue char-
ged the Turks euen in their ſtrength; preſenting their whole armie before they were aware, in-
to the mouth of the Turks artillerie: which ſuddenly diſcharged amongſt the thickeſt of them,
brake their rankes, and tooke away a number of them. Beſides that, the Perſian horſes terrified
with the vnacquainted & thundring report of the great ordinance, were not to be ruled by their
riders, but ſtarting backe, ran ſome one way, ſome another, as if they had felt neither bit nor ri-
der. Which their confuſion *Mahomet* perceiuing, preſently tooke hold of the occaſion offered,
and with his horſemen fiercely charged them, being now by themſelues entangled and out of M
order. Neuertheleſſe the Perſians made great reſiſtance, and ſlew many of the Turks: but ſtill
fighting confuſedly and out of order, they were at the laſt enforced to flie. In which fight a great
number of them were ſlaine, and their tents alſo taken. *Zeinal*, *Vſun-Caſſanes* his eldeſt ſonne,
labouring to ſtay the flight of the Perſians, was ſlaine with a ſmall ſhot. So the honour of the
day remained with the Turks: yet had they no great cauſe to bragge of their winnings, hauing

loſt

A loſt in that battaile fortie thouſand ſouldiers: whereas of the Perſians fell not aboue ten thouſand. *Mahomet* contenting himſelfe with this deere bought victorie, returned homewards. And *Vſun-Caſſanes* leauing another of his ſonnes with his armie for the defence of ARMENIA, returned likewiſe to TAVRIS. But whileſt the Chriſtian Princes were in their greateſt expectation what might be the euent of theſe warres betwixt theſe two mightie Mahometane Kings; they vpon the ſudden concluded a peace, and confirmed the ſame with new affinitie, excluding the Chriſtians quite out of the ſame. This laſt battell betwixt *Mahomet* and *Vſun-Caſſanes*, was fought in the yeere of our Lord 1474, about foure yeeres before the death of *Vſun-Caſſanes*, who died the fifth of Ianuarie, in the yeere 1478.

B In the time of theſe warres died the noble *Muſtapha*, *Mahomet* his eldeſt ſonne, at ICONIVM, hauing ſpent himſelfe with reuelling amongſt his paragons: or as ſome write, commanded to die by his father vpon this occaſion. This youthfull Prince vpon a time comming to the court to ſee his father (or as they tearme it, to kiſſe his hand) became amorous of the wife of *Achmetes Baſſa* (a ladie of incomparable beautie) & daughter to *Iſaack Baſſa*, the chiefe men in the Turkiſh empire, next vnto *Mahomet* himſelfe: but finding no meanes how to compaſſe her in whom his ſoule liued, he awaited a time, when as ſhe (after the manner of the Turks) went to bathe her ſelfe: and there as he found her all diſroabed, ſhamefully forced her, without regard either of his owne honour or of hers. Of this ſo foule an outrage, *Achmetes* her huſband, with his clothes and hat all rent for madneſſe, came and greeuouſly complained to *Mahomet*, crauing vengeance

The death of the noble Muſtapha, Mahomet his eldeſt ſonne.

C for the ſame: vnto whom *Mahomet* againe replied: Art not thou thy ſelfe my ſlaue? and if my ſonne *Muſtapha* haue knowne thy wife, is ſhe not my bondſlaue he hath had to doe withall? Ceaſe therefore thus to complaine, and hold thy ſelfe therewith content. Neuertheleſſe, he in ſecret ſharply reproued his ſonne for ſo hainous and diſhonourable a fact by him committed, and commanded him out of his ſight: and as he was of a ſeuere nature, cauſed him within a few dayes after to be ſecretly ſtrangled. Neuertheleſſe, the wrong done vnto the Baſſa, ſunke ſo deepe into his haughtie mind, as that he would neuer admit excuſe therefore, but put away his wife, the ground of the implacable hatred betwixt him & the great Baſſa *Iſaack*, his father in law: and in fine, the very cauſe of his vtter deſtruction, as is afterward declared in the life of *Baiazet*.

Mahomet deliuered of his greateſt feare, by the peace he had lately concluded with *Vſun-Caſ-* 1475

D *ſanes* the Perſian King, was now at good leiſure to employ all his forces againſt the Chriſtians. And bearing a deadly hatred againſt the Princes of EPIRVS and ALBANIA, with a wonderfull deſire to extend his empire vnto the Ionian and Adriaticke, that he might from thence but looke toward ITALIE, which he began now to long after: he determined with himſelfe firſt to ſubdue thoſe countries, as ſtanding in his way, both for the inuaſion of ITALIE, and of the territories of the Venetians. And for as much as the ſtrong citie of SCODRA (otherwiſe called SCVTARIE) then in the poſſeſſion of the Venetians, for the commodious ſituation thereof ſeemed to giue him the beſt entrance into the countries of ALBANIA, EPIRVS, DALMATIA, and to ſuch cities as the Venetians held alongſt the ſea coaſt, he reſolued there to begin his wars.

This citie was of great ſtrength, as well for the naturall ſituation thereof, as for the ſtrong for-

E tifications therein made by the hand of man, which thing *Mahomet* was not ignorant of: but preſuming of his owne ſtrength and power, vainly perſwaded himſelfe, that no place was now able long to hold out againſt him. Wherfore hauing prepared all things fit for the beſieging thereof, he ſent *Solyman Baſſa*, an Eunuch (whom he had made his lieutenant Generall in EVROPE, in the place of *Amurath Baſſa*, before ſlaine by *Vſun-Caſſanes*) with eightie thouſand ſouldiers to beſiege SCODRA. This great Baſſa according to his charge came, and with great pompe encamped round about the citie, the fiue and twentieth of May. Shortly after hauing planted his batterie, he began moſt furiouſly to ſhake the wals, and ceaſed not by all meanes he could deuiſe to trouble the defendants: and when he had by force of the cannon done what he could, gaue diuers ſharpe aſſaults vnto the citie, but was ſtill with great loſſe valiantly repulſed by them of the

Solyman Baſſa beſiegeth Scodra with an armie of eightie thouſand men.

F citie. Long it were to declare, how often and in what terrible manner that warlike Baſſa, *Mahomet* his chiefe captaine, attempted to haue won the citie: as alſo to ſhew how they of SCODRA directed by their worthie Gouernour *Antonius Lauretanus*, valiantly defended themſelues and their citie: nothing was omitted, that the enemie could doe or deuiſe for the gaining thereof; but all his deuiſes & attempts were ſo met withall by the defendants, that they ſerued him to no other purpoſe but to the deſtruction of his people. Whilſt the Baſſa thus lay at the ſiege of SCO-

DRA, *Mocenicus* hauing receiued ſuch commandement from the Senate, came and joined him- G
ſelfe to *Grittus* the new Admirall, who then lay with his fleet in the mouth of BOLIANA, a great riuer running out of the lake whereupon the citie of SCODRA ſtandeth. Theſe two great commaunders being met together, were both as one man, and with a wonderfull conſent did what they might for the furtherance of the common good, a thing not common: firſt they put ſtrong garriſons, with all things neceſſarie, into CHOLCHINVM, LYSSA, DIRRHACHIVM, and other cities of their ſeigniorie vpon the ſea coaſt. After that they went vp the riuer BOLIANA with certaine gallies, and came within ſight of SCODRA, and there by fires in the night, and other tokens of comfort, encouraged the defendants as with an aſſured promiſe of reliefe: which thing it grieued the Turks to behold, who therefore went about to haue ſhut in thoſe ſame gallies with H
a great chaine drawne croſſe the riuer, where it was narroweſt betwixt them and the ſea: but in doing thereof, the Venetians out of their gallies ſlew fiue hundred of the Turks, and wounded diuers others, and ſo returned againe to ſea. It was afterward attempted by the aforeſaid Admirals, if a new ſupplie might haue beene put into the citie: but the enemie had ſo beſet the ſame, that it was not poſſible to be done. In the meane time, *Mathias* king of HVNGARIE (receiuing a great yerely portion of the Venetians for the defence of their countries againſt the Turke) hearing that SCODRA was beſieged, began to make ſuch ſpoile in the Turkes dominions bordering vpon him, that *Mahomet* was glad to call home the great Baſſa from the ſiege of SCODRA, to defend his owne frontiers. So the Baſſa after he had lien three months with his great armie at the ſiege, and loſt foureteene thouſand of his men, whereof the greateſt part died of ſickeneſſe taken I
by long lying in the rotten mooriſh ground neere vnto the riuer, by commandement from his maſter riſe with his armie and departed. The Venetians alſo, which lay all that while thereabout in their gallies, were toucht with the ſame contagion: *Triadanus Grittus* died thereof, and *Mocenicus* the other Admirall fell therof dangerouſly ſicke; but being ſomewhat recouered, returned home, and was ſhortly after for his good ſeruice choſen duke of VENICE, *Marcellus* the old duke being then dead. With this diſhonour taken at SCODRA, *Mahomet* was ſo diſcontented, that he appointed a yearely fee vnto one, to put him in mind dayly of the ſiege of SCODRA.

Mathias king of Hungarie enforceth the Turke to forſake the ſiege of Scodra.

The ſame yeare that this great Baſſa *Solyman* had in vaine beſieged SCODRA, he was afterward ſent with a great armie into VALACHIA, where he was ſo intangled in the woods and fens by *Stephanus* the Vayuod, that he loſt all his armie, and with much adoe eſcaped himſelfe by K
the wonderfull ſwiftneſſe of a mare whereon he rid.

1476 The yeare following, which was the yeare 1476, *Mahomet* ſent out a great fleet to ſea, vnder the conduct of *Geduces Achmetes*, his chiefe counſellour and man of warre, (whoſe verie name was dreadfull in all places where he came) in hope to haue by treaſon ſurpriſed the Iſland of CRETE: But that plot was in good time by the Venetians perceiued, the traitors executed, and he of his purpoſe diſappointed. Whereupon he changed his former purpoſe for CRETE, & ſent the ſame *Achmetes* with his fleet into the Euxine (or as the Turkes call it, the Blacke ſea) to beſiege the rich citie of CAFFA. This citie was in ancient time called THEODOSIA, ſituate in the countrie of TAVRICA CHERSONESVS, faſt by the ſea ſide, and had of long time been in poſſeſſion of the Genowaies, and was a place of exceeding great trade, vntill that this great emperor L
Mahomet hauing taken CONSTANTINOPLE, and falling out with the Venetians, had by his ſtrong caſtles built vpon the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS and BOSPHORVS, taken away both the trafficke of merchants into thoſe ſeas, and all poſſible meanes for the Genowayes to ſend ſuccour to that citie: yet it is credibly reported, that one valiant captaine vndertooke to carrie his companie (in number not aboue one hundred and fiftie men) by land from GENOA to CAFFA, not much leſſe then two thouſand miles, and worthely performed what he had vndertaken. *Achmetes* comming thither with his fleet, encloſed the citie both by ſea and land: which diuided in it ſelfe by reaſon of the diuerſe diſpoſition of the inhabitants, being of diuerſe nations, ſome Genowayes, ſome Greeks, ſome Armenians, but moſt Tartars, could not long hold out, but was in ſhort time giuen vp to the Baſſa, vpon condition, That the Genoway merchants, who were M
there both in number many & exceeding rich, might in ſafetie depart thence with their wealth. Which promiſe the Baſſa performed not: but when he was poſſeſſed of the citie, ſent ſuch as he thought good to CONSTANTINOPLE, and commaunded the reſt vpon paine of death not to depart thence, or to conuey away from thence any part of their ſubſtance. In ſhort time after, the whole countrie of TAVRICA CHERSONESVS yeelded vnto the Turkiſh obeiſance. At which

time

A time alſo the Tartar Princes, namely the Precopenſes and Deſtenſes, terrified with the greatneſſe of the Turke, cowardly yeelded themſelues as tributaries vnto him; euer ſince which time they haue liued a moſt ſeruile and troubleſome life, ſubiect to euery command of the *Othoman* Emperours: for whom they haue done great ſeruice many times in their warres, againſt the Perſians, the Polonians, the Hungarians, Tranſyluanians, and Germains, as in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie well appeareth; and as the aforeſaid nations their neighbours, with others alſo farther off, haue euen of late to their great loſſe felt.

Although the Venetians had in theſe late warres loſt the great and fertile Iſland of EVBŒA, 1477
with the ſtrong citie of CHALCIS, the ſureſt harbour for their gallies: yet held they ſtill diuers
B ſtrong townes and commodious hauens by the ſea coaſt, both within PELOPONESVS and without, as METHONE, CORONE, TENARVS, NAVPACTVM, and others: which ſtanding as it were in the boſome of his empire, *Mahomet* ſore longed after. And therefore to ſatisfie his ambitious deſire, ſent *Solyman* (the great Baſſa of EVROPE) with a ſtrong fleet into PELOPONESVS: who entring the gulfe of CORINTH, at his firſt comming laid ſiege to NAVPACTVM, now called LEPANTO, a citie ſtanding in the gulfe of CORINTH, in the countrey of OZOLÆ neere vnto LOCRIS, ouer againſt PELOPONESVS. *Antonius Laurettanus* (for his late good ſeruice done in defending of SCODRA) made Admirall for the Venetians, came with
C ſpeed to NAVPACTVM, and in deſpight of the enemie, ſo furniſhed the citie, both with men and whatſoeuer elſe was needfull, that the Baſſa now out of hope to win the citie, riſe vpon the ſudden with his armie, and in a great furie departed, after he had lien there foure moneths. In this fret returning towards CONSTANTINOPLE, he put certaine companies of his men to ſhoare in the Iſland of LEMNOS, in hope to haue vpon the ſudden ſurpriſed the citie COCCINVM: but as they were about to haue entred, they were contrary to their expectation manfully reſiſted, by ſuch Chriſtians as by chance were next the gate. Where the notable courage of *Marulla* (a maiden of that citie) was much commended: who ſeeing her father ſlaine in the gate, tooke vp the weapons that lay by him, and like a fierce Amazon notably reuenged his death, deſperatly fighting in defence of her countrey with thoſe few which were there at the firſt; and ſo kept the Turks out vntill the reſt of the citizens (mooued with the alarum) came to the gate, and forced them (not without ſome loſſe) to retire againe to their gallies. Not long after, *Lau-*
D *rettanus* came thither with his fleet: but before his comming, the Baſſa was departed thence for CONSTANTINOPLE, hauing in this expedition done nothing that was expected at his hands.

Mahomet after the death of *Scanderbeg*, ceaſed not from time to time by one of his great captaines or other to inuade EPIRVS, and the other parts of ALBANIA; and ſo gaining ſometime one part, and ſometime another, had ſubdued moſt part thereof. And about this time, his armie lay at the ſiege of CROIA: for releeſe whereof, the Venetians (in whoſe protection it *Croia beſieged by the Turke.*
was) ſent *Franciſcus Contarenus* a noble gentleman their lieutenant, with ſuch forces as were ſufficient for the raiſing of the ſiege. He finding the Turks in the plaine of TIRANNA, gaue them battell; which for a great while ſtood doubtfull, at length victorie enclining to the Venetians, the Turks began to flie: after whom, the Venetians made no great purſuit, but contented to haue
E put them to flight, tooke their tents, with ſuch forts as they had raiſed againſt the citie. Thus whileſt the Venetians thinke themſelues in ſure poſſeſſion of the victorie, and out of feare of their enemies, they were through their owne too much ſecuritie, by and by themſelues ouerthrowne: For whileſt the common ſouldiers hauing their minds more ſet vpon the ſpoile than vpon the purſuit of the enemie (the battell as yet ſcarce ended) ſcatter themſelues; and the captaines were conſulting whether they ſhould lodge that night (which began then to approach) in the enemies tents or not: in the middeſt of their conſultation, the Turks hauing perceiued their diſorder, ſuddenly returned againe vpon them, and without great reſiſtance ouerthrew them, and put them to flight. In which flight, a thouſand of them fell; amongſt whom *Contarenus* the *Contarenus the Venetian Generall ſlaine.*
Generall, and diuers others of good place and calling were ſlaine alſo. This ouerthrow, the Ve-
F netians tooke a great deale better than that which ſhortly after followed, in the confines of ITALY at the riuer of Sontium.

Mahomet hauing conquered a great part of ALBANIA, and daily encroching vpon the Chriſtians, made diuers incurſions into the countries of DALMATIA, HISTRIA, and CARNIOLA, yea and ſometime went ſo farre, that he with his Turks entred into the prouince of FRIVLI, called in ancient time FORVM IVLII, a part of the Venetian ſeigniorie; and ſo carried away

with them many priſoners with much ſpoile. For remedie whereof, the Venetians with exceeding charge and wonderfull labour fortified alongſt the riuer of Sontium from GORITIA to the fens of AQVILEA, the ſpace of twelue miles, and there built two forts, wherein they continually kept ſtrong garriſons for the defence of the countrey. Whereby the countrey people thinking themſelues now in ſafetie, began to fall into ſecuritie (the dangerous ſickneſſe of all commonweales) neglecting by their carefull watch, to foreſee a farre off the enemies comming, as they had before vſed. It fortuned at this time, that *Aſa-beg* (whom ſome call *Marbecke*) one of the Turks great captaines, vpon the ſudden when no ſuch thing was feared, came and ſhewed himſelfe in an euening vpon the farther ſide of the riuer of Sontium, with a thouſand horſmen: vpon the ſight of whom, an alarum was raiſed in both forts, and euery man put himſelfe in readineſſe, as if they ſhould euen preſently haue ioyned battel. But it was ſo nie night, as that nothing could as then be done: yet the Venetian garriſons ioyning themſelues together, watcht all that night in armes. There was at that time in both theſe forts, three thouſand horſemen and ſome few companies of footmen, all vnder the command of *Hieronimus Nowell* Countie of VERONA, a famous captaine of that time: who with the reſt of the captaines reſolued if he could, to keepe the Turks from paſſing the riuer; if not, then to giue them battell. *Marbecke* Generall of the Turks armie, taking good view of the place, in the night time ſecretly conueyed a thouſand of his beſt ſouldiers ouer the riuer, foure miles off, in ſuch a place as the Venetians feared leaſt, deeming it impoſſible for any man there to haue paſſed ouer. Theſe men he appointed to lie cloſe in ambuſh behind a great hill in ſight, not farre from the other ſide of the riuer, and vpon a ſigne giuen, preſently to diſcouer themſelues and charge the enemie. The next morning very early he ſent certain troups of his readieſt horſemen ouer the riuer, which by offering to skirmiſh with the Venetians, might ſo draw them into the field; and then as men in doubt whether to fight or to flie, to tole them on vnto the place where the ambuſh lay. The Venetians had diuided themſelues into three battalions; whereof the Generall himſelfe had the leading of the firſt, who ſeeing theſe diſordered troups comming to skirmiſh with him, encountred them fiercely, & eaſily put them to flight, being ſo determined before, and in that flight earneſtly purſued them: eſpecially the Counties ſonne, a valiant young gentleman, who with others like himſelfe, thought by that daies good ſeruice to gaine vnto themſelues great honour. When the Turks Generall ſaw that the Venetians following the chaſe, were gone a great way from the riuer, he forthwith paſſed ouer with the reſt of his armie, and followed the Venetians at the heeles: which the Turks which before fled now beholding, turned againe vpon their fierce enemies, and valiantly withſtood them. At which very inſtant, the other Turks vpon ſigne giuen ariſing out of ambuſh, came downe from the hill LICINIS, with ſuch violence and clamour, that the Venetians therewith diſcouraged, would haue fled if they could haue told which way: but they were on euery ſide ſo beſet, that there was no way left for them to eſcape: but were there all ſlaine, except ſome few which yeelded themſelues and ſo were ſaued. The other two battalions of the Venetians, diſcouraged with the ſlaughter of the firſt, fled incontinently; and in flying, were many of them ſlaine. In this battell the Countie himſelfe with his ſonne, and many other notable gentlemen, and halfe the horſemen, were loſt. The Turks encouraged with this victorie, the next day ſpoiled all the countrey of FRIVLI, betwixt the riuers of Sontium (otherwiſe called Liſonzo) and Tiliauentum, and cruelly burnt all the countrey before them: ſo that at once an hundred countrey villages were to be ſeene on a light fire together; which ſtood ſo thicke, that it ſeemed as if one continuall fire had wholly couered all the face of the countrey. The barbarous Turks laden with the ſpoile of that rich countrey, and driuing before them great numbers of miſerable captiues as if they had beene flocks of ſheepe, returned to Sontium. But when they had paſſed the riuer, and had trauelled homeward one dayes iourney, and all men thought they had now beene quite gone; they ſuddenly returned backe againe, and poſting through the countrey they had before ſpoiled, came to the riuer of Tiliauentum, which they deſperatly paſſed, and did no leſſe harme on that ſide the riuer, than they had before on the other: and ſo carrying away with them what they pleaſed, returned by the ſame way they came, hauing filled all that part of ITALY with terror and feare. This ouerthrow at Sontium, the Venetians account amongſt the greateſt loſſes which they receiued from the Turks in all theſe their long warres.

The Turks ſhew themſelues at the riuer of Sontium.

The countrey of Friuli ſpoiled by the Turks.

1478 The next yeere about Haruеſt, the Turks came againe with a farre greater power; and paſſing the riuer of Sontium, came before the forts at GRADISCA, where *Carolus Fortebrachius* lay

A lay with a ſtrong garriſon of the Venetians, offering him skirmiſh, ſo to haue drawne him into the field. But the warie captaine conſidering the great ſtrength of the enemie, and the loſſe receiued the yeere before, would not be drawne out of his ſtrength, but ſtood vpon his guard, expecting to take the enemie at ſome more aduantage: which thing the Turks fearing, durſt not diſperſe themſelues abroad for the ſpoile of the countrey, leauing ſo ſtrong a garriſon of the enemies behind them. And therefore when they had gone about foure miles into the countrey, they turned their courſe vp into the mountaines (which are part of the Alpes) towards GERMANIE, and there grieuouſly ſpoiled the mountaine people: ſtrangely paſſing through thoſe abrupt and hie mountaines with their horſes, where men could hardly either goe or ſtand on foot with-
B out ſomething to ſtay vpon. And ſo when they had done what harme they could, taking a great compaſſe about, returned home another way.

Mahomet remembring the ſhamefull repulſe he had about foure yeeres before receiued at SCODRA, and hauing the name of that citie daily ſounding in his eares; determined now once againe to gage his whole forces vpon the winning thereof, and ſo to giue peace to his ambitious deſires. And becauſe he would not againe be diſhonored with that he purpoſed to take in hand, he gaue out order into all parts of his dominions, both in EVROPE and ASIA, for the aſſembling of his beſt ſouldiers and men of warre. Now when all things were in readineſſe, and ſuch an armie aſſembled as he ſeldome or neuer had a ſtronger; firſt he ſent forth *Aly-Beg* (warden of the frontiers of his kingdome alongſt the riuer Danubius) with eightie thouſand of the ſoul-
C diers called Achanzij, towards SCODRA. Theſe Achanzij are horſemen, which for their good ſeruice according to their deſerts, haue certaine lands giuen them by the King to liue vpon during their liues; for which they are of dutie bound to ſerue vpon their owne charge as the forerunners of the Turke his armie, whenſoeuer he goeth to beſiege any place: Theſe be they which firſt enter into the enemies countrey, burning and ſpoiling what they can, vntill they come vnto the place appointed: and haue this priuiledge, That ſo ſoone as all the armie is come to the place to be beſieged, they may then at their pleaſure either depart or ſtay.

1479

Vid. Marinum Barletium de expug. Scodrenſi.

The gouernour of SCODRA vnderſtanding both by common fame and certaine intelligence, of the Turks deſignes, with all care and diligence fortified the towne, labouring continually both night and day at the rampiers, as if the enemie had beene alreadie preſent, and plentifully
D prouided all things neceſſarie for the enduring of a long ſiege. The aged and vnneceſſarie people, he ſent out of the citie into other places of more ſafetie farther off: in whoſe ſtead he tooke in great numbers of ſtrong and able men which dwelt in the countrey round about; among whom were many mariners taken out of the gallies, and other men of like qualitie, which got their liuing vpon the riuer and lake of SCODRA, luſtie bodies enured to hardneſſe, who in the long ſiege following did great ſeruice.

The poore countrey people flie for feare of the Turks.

Whileſt this preparation was making in SCODRA, behold the mountaines a farre off Northward from the citie, began to ſhine with many great fires, and all the countrey was couered with thicke ſmoake, which euery houre ſeemed to draw neerer and neerer: when within ſhort time after, the poore countrey people (which as yet were not all fled) with ſuch traſh as they could
E well carrie, came running for life all ouer the countrey to the ſtrong cities vpon the ſea ſide, crying out that the Turks were come.

The next day which was the fourteenth of May, *Aly-Beg* with his eightie thouſand Achanzij, came into the ſuburbs of the citie, and there encamped; ſo that none could goe in or out of the gates: which was not the leaſt part of his charge. To him by the commandement of *Mahomet*, had *Scander-Beg* gouernour of BOSNA, and *Malcotius* with ſeuen thouſand horſemen, ioyned themſelues vpon the way. Of this *Malcotius* it is reported (as was of *Auguſtus*) that the maieſtie of his countenance, with the reſplendent beames iſſuing out of his eies (as if it had beene the raies of the Sunne) were of ſuch piercing brightneſſe, that no man was able with immoued and fixed eye long to behold the ſame. Theſe horſemen (the forerunners, as I ſaid, of *Mahomets*
F great armie) the Chriſtians much troubled with often ſallies and ſhot, out of the towne, and ſlew many of them with little or no loſſe vnto themſelues.

When *Aly-Beg* had thus lien before the citie ten daies, came *Taut Gaiola* the great Baſſa of CONSTANTINOPLE with fiue and twentie thouſand ſouldiers, and about twelue thouſand camels, for moſt part laden with metall in maſſe, for to make great ordinance of, and other neceſſaries for the campe. The Baſſaes great and ſtately tent of purple colour, was pitched vpon the

the top of an high hill called the Baſſaes hill, becauſe in that place *Solyman Baſſa* had lien in the former ſiege about foure yeeres before: The Baſſaes armie lay encamped betwixt the ſame hill and the towne. This *Taut Gaiola* was borne in EPIRVS of baſe parentage, and was from thence by the Turks carried away young to CONSTANTINOPLE; where for his ſharpneſſe of wit and rare actiuitie, he grew into ſuch fauour, firſt with *Mahomet*, and afterward with *Baiazet* his ſonne, that he was by them promoted to the greateſt places of honour, next vnto themſelues: wherein he became ſo popular, and had ſo poſſeſſed the hearts of the people, that it was ſuſpected of ſome, he would haue aſpired to the Turkiſh empire himſelfe. Preſently after the comming of this great Baſſa, workmen were ſet a worke about the caſting of the great ordinance, and making readie of other things for the ſiege. The Chriſtians alſo were no leſſe buſie about their fortifications, the gouernour appointing vnto euery man his charge, and which part of the wall to defend: yet keeping continually in the market place certaine companies (with the enſignes of *S. Marke* and *S. Stephen*) to ſerue as freſh ſupplies, as need or occaſion ſhould require. Whileſt the great ordinance was in caſting, the Baſſa cauſed a great bridge of timber to be made ouer the riuer, that ſo he might at his pleaſure paſſe ouer his men, and command both ſides of the riuer. The Chriſtians in the meane time with vigilant eye ſo attending the Turks, that none of them could ſtirre within ſhot, but he was forthwith fet off and ſlaine.

The thirteenth of Iune, *Muſtapha* the Beglerbeg or Viceroy of ASIA (commonly called the great Baſſa of NATOLIA) came alſo in great pompe to the ſiege with thirtie thouſand ſouldiers brought out of ASIA; perſonable men, but not accounted ſo good ſouldiers as they of EVROPE: for it is a common ſaying among the Turks, That the men of EVROPE, and the horſes of ASIA doe beſt ſeruice. This great Baſſa was honourably met and welcomed by the other great Baſſa of CONSTANTINOPLE, and was quartered vpon another ſide of the citie, where his rich pauilion (all of Greene) was pitcht in a vineyard about a mile from the towne. *Muſtapha* to proue the courage of his ſouldiers, propounded a reward to which ſoeuer of them, as durſt aduenture but to goe and touch the wals of the citie: vpon which occaſion, two of his ſouldiers paſſing well mounted, attempted to haue performed that enterpriſe. But making what haſt they could poſſibly, they were both ſlaine from the wall, and one of their bodies recouered by certaine valiant ſouldiers which ſallied out of the towne, and his head being cut off, was vpon a launce ſet vpon the wals for the Turks to behold.

Two of the Turks attempting to touch the wals of Scodra, are both ſlaine, and one of their heads ſet vp vpon the wall.

The fifteenth of Iune 5600 Ianizaries came into the campe, with foure white enſignes: at whoſe comming all the ſouldiers of both the Baſſaes camps gaue a wonderfull ſhout, and welcomed them with great ioy. Theſe are the great Turks guard and beſt ſouldiers, in whom the greateſt ſtrength of his kingdome conſiſteth, and are called the ſons of the great Sultan: after whoſe comming, *Mahomet* himſelfe was daily expected. Three daies after came two other great men, attended vpon with a number of followers, who by their countenance, and the great reuerence done vnto them by the reſt of the Turks, ſeemed to be men of great place and authoritie: theſe men deſired that they might with ſafetie ſpeake with the gouernour of the citie and the reſt of the captaines, to deliuer vnto them ſuch a meſſage, as they had for their good (as they ſaid) brought vnto them from *Mahomet*. Which their requeſt being granted, the elder of them, after he had with many glorious words ſet forth the power of his maſter, and what he had done to other great cities, with their Princes; and farther ſhewed into what danger they were like to fall, if they ſhould long ſtand vpon their defence: he began to perſwade them to yeeld vp the citie, aſſuring them of all kind vſage, with many rich rewards from the great Emperour; whereas otherwiſe, they were to expect nothing but extreme miſerie and moſt ſhamefull death. Whereunto anſwere was in the name of them all giuen by the mouth of *Petrus Pagnanus*, a graue and worthy citizen, That they were not afraid of the greatneſſe of *Mahomet*, or of any thing he had done or could doe: and that he ſhould find it hard to enforce them, but impoſſible to perſwade them to deliuer their citie: and therefore that he might at his pleaſure vſe his forces againſt men fully reſolued rather to yeeld vnto nature her laſt due, than to hearken to any compoſition: and in concluſion told them, that if they ſhould at any time after make any ſuch motion, they ſhould not expect any other anſwere than from the mouth of the Canon. With which ſhort anſwere theſe great men departed, not a little diſcontented.

At this ſame time the ſtrong citie of CROIA (which the worthy *Scanderbeg* had liuing ſo honourably defended, and dying had left it with his kingdome, in the protection and poſſeſſion of the

A the Venetians)hauing holden out a yeres ſiege,after that all the kingdome of EPIRVS and moſt part of ALBANIA was loſt, for lacke of victuals was yeelded vp vnto the Turke, vpon condition, That the hungerſtarued defendants(who then ſeemed ratherghoſts than men)might at their pleaſure in ſafetie depart: which agreement the faithleſſe Turke brake, and without mercie put them all to the ſword. This heauie newes was deliuered to them of SCODRA by certaine Chriſtians in the Turks campe: wherewith they were much grieued,but nothing at all diſcouraged.

Whiles the Turkes thus lay at the ſiege,the watermen,of whom a great number liued vpon the great lake of SCODRA (being in circuit about one hundred mile) came many times downe the riuer by night,and did much harme in the Turks campe: for remedie whereof,they were in-
B forced to build certaine ſmall gallies to keepe them in,who for all that many times ſtole ſecretly vpon them,and much troubled them.

The two and twentieth of Iune the Turkes mounted two great pieces of Ordinance vpon the top of the hill whereon the Baſſa lay: wherof the one carried a bullet,made of an hard kind of round ſtone,of three hundred pound weight,and the other a bullet of foure hundred,wherewith they began to batter the town foure daies: after that,they placed a third peece of artillerie at the foot of the ſame hill, which deliuered a bullet of fourehundred pound weight: and the next day they planted a fourth peece, greater than the reſt, about the middle of the ſame hill, which carried a ſhot of ſix hundred and fiftie pound weight. In this while, eight thouſand of the Turkes ſouldiers,called Aſapi(which are knowne from the Ianizaries by their red caps,where-
C as the Ianizaries weare white)came into the campe. And ſhortly after came *Mahomet* himſelfe with all his armie to the riuer of Drimon, whether the two great Baſſaes of ASIA and CONSTANTINOPLE went with great pompe and triumph to meet him.

Mahomet in perſon himſelfe commeth vnto the ſiege of Scodra.

The ſecond of Iuly *Mahomet* with all his armie before the riſing of the Sunne came to the campe before SCODRA: where after he had well viewed the ſituation thereof, he is reported to haue ſaid: *O what a faire and ſtately place hath the Eagle choſen out for her ſelfe to build her neaſt, and to hatch her young ones in.* Diuers rich pauilions were ſet vp for *Mahomet* himſelfe, but one farre greater than the reſt, diſtant from them about a flight ſhoot, which was the place wherein he held his counſell: the other were for his owne priuat vſe. Round about theſe his tents lay the Ianizaries encamped,a good diſtance off; yet ſo cloſe one to another,as if it had bin a perpetu-
D all rampire or ſtrong trench, whereinto was but one entrance,continually guarded with a moſt ſtrong guard. Round about the Ianizaries lay all the reſt of the armie encamped: ſo that all the countrie,as farre as a man could ſee,was couered and white with tents, much like as when the ground in Winter is couered ouer with a deepe ſnow: and ſtill moe people reſorted to the campe daily, ſo that it was deemed by men of great experience, that *Mahomet* had then in his armie of all ſort of people about three hundred and fiftie thouſand men, all gaping to deuour that poore citie: a ſight of it ſelfe ſufficient to haue daunted the courage of right valient men: But what can be terrible vnto them that feare not to die? Againſt this terrour of the enemie,the defendants were notably encouraged by the comfortable perſuaſions and exhortations of one *Bartholomeus*,a preacher (ſometimes one of the worthie *Scanderbeg* his ſoldiors)who afterwards
E giuing himſelfe to the ſtudie of diuinitie,became a zealous preacher, & in this ſiege did notably comfort the Chriſtian defendants againſt the terrour of ſo great an armie of miſcreants. All this while the batterie was ſtil maintained: and the fifth of Iuly the Turks mounted two other great peeces,wherof the one was like vnto the former before mounted,but the other placed vpon the middle of the Baſſaes mount,was of an incredible greatneſſe,diſcharging a ſhot of twelue hundred pound weight,and was called the Princes peece,in whoſe name it was with much cunning and induſtrie made: with which huge peece, the Turkes euen from the beginning of the ſiege had threatned the beſieged, willing them to expect the comming of the Princes Peece. The next day they planted vpon the ſame mount a ſeuenth peece, which caried a ſhot of fiue hundred and fiftie pound weight: from which time they battered the city with the aforeſaid ſeuen
F great peeces; and ceaſed not oftentimes by night out of their great mortar peeces, to caſt great bals of wild fire into the city, ſo to haue ſet it on fire: wherby diuers of the citizens were inforced to vncouer their houſes couered with ſhingle,and by men appointed for that purpoſe,to watch the fall of ſuch fireworkes,and ſo to quench the ſame: which they ſo carefully looked vnto, as that the deuiſe of the enemie tooke none effect at all. At the ſame time alſo the Turks out of their ſhort mortar peeces caſt huge great ſtones of incredible weight,which falling from high, did

The order of Mahomets campe.

moſt

moſt terribly cruſh in peeces whatſoeuer thing they light vpon, wherewith the defendants were G
wonderfully troubled. In few daies after, the enemie mounted three other great peeces, whereof one was greater than that was called the Princes, & caried a bullet of thirteene hundred weight: from which time they daily battered the citie with ten ſuch peeces, as the like hath ſeldome times beene heard of: and arrowes fell ſo thicke into the citie, as if it had beene continuall ſhowers of haile, ſo that no man could goe or well ſtirre in the ſtreets without hurt. Yet in the middeſt of all theſe dangers the Chriſtians valiantly defended the citie, and with their deadly ſhot from the wals and mounts exceedingly annoied the enemie. The eleuenth of Iuly the Turks mounted another great peece like vnto the former, vpon the Baſſaes mount, and the ſame day battered the wals with 178 ſhot of this huge artillerie. H

Mahomet hauing by the furie of his great ordinance beaten downe a great part of the wall, and that now nothing ſtood in his way but ſuch ſimple repaires as the defendants had made of timber and plankes, with earth caſt in betwixt, was in good hope in ſhort time to become maſter of the towne: and therefore ſent certaine companies of his Ianizaries & other ſouldiers (which he with continual ſupplies of freſh men ſtill releeued) to aſſault the breaches, ſo if it were poſſible to enter the towne, or at leaſtwiſe to burne ſuch fortifications of timber as the defendants had made. But that which ſeemed vnto him at firſt ſo eaſie, he found in execution full of difficultie and danger: for the Turks approching the breach, found there reſolute men, a ſurer defence than any wall: whoſe valiant courage ſerued in ſtead of a ſtrong bulwarke. So whileſt the Turks deſperatly ſtriue in the face of the breach either to enter or to ſet fire vpon the new fortifications I
made for moſt part of timber, and the defendants with no leſſe reſolution doe what they may to the vttermoſt to repulſe them, many were on both ſides ſlaine, but eſpecially of the aſſailants. Which *Mahomet* well perceiuing, and that by that manner of aſſault he gained nothing but notable loſſe and ſpoile of his beſt men, cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, and his batterie to be againe forthwith renewed: euery day ſhaking the wall with 160 or 180 moſt terrible great ſhot, and one day with 194, which was the greateſt batterie he made in one day during that ſiege.

After this great batterie, the tyrant cauſed a freſh aſſault to be giuen, but with little or rather worſe ſucceſſe than before: for though diuers of the defendants, and amongſt them ſome of good place, as *Franciſcus Patauinus*, *Franciſcus Scorbaro*, two Italian captaines, and ſome other of the better ſort of the citizens were there ſlaine with the great ſhot, whereof the enemie that K
day diſcharged into the breaches 193: yet were they with greater loſſe enforced againe to retire, and with ſhame to giue ouer the aſſault.

Notwithſtanding this repulſe, *Mahomet* continuing his batterie with no leſſe furie than before, ſtill ſought by force of his artillerie to open a way into the citie: and the third day after the former aſſault gaue a more furious and deſperate attempt vnto the citie than before, inſomuch that the Turks were in the breaches come to handie ſtrokes with the Chriſtians, and there made a moſt cruell and deadly fight; wherein many fell on both ſides, but of the Turks moſt, yet were there many of the Chriſtians alſo ſlaine, eſpecially with the Turks great ordinance. It was a right ruthfull ſight to haue ſeene the rampiers at the great gate of the citie beaten downe flat to the ground, and to lie full of the rent bodies of the Chriſtians: at which place the enemie ſo pre- L
uailed, that he was euen now readie to haue entered; for the Turks ſo furiouſly aſſailed the defendants, and the murthering ſhot from the Baſſaes mount fell ſo thicke and ſo terribly into the breach, beſide the infinite number of arrowes, that there was ſcarce any of the Chriſtians which defended that place but they were either ſlaine or greeuouſly wounded. But when all ſeemed now almoſt deſperat and forlorne, and the greedie enemie euen readie to deuoure his prey, a new ſupplie of luſtie ſouldiers well armed, came couragiouſly to the breach, and as lions encountering the enemie, draue him downe againe, and ſo enforced him with great loſſe to retire. *Mahomet* greeued with this repulſe, in his furie cauſed 173 great ſhot to be diſcharged into the citie, and afterwards ſending for his great Baſſaes and other his principall men of warre, declared vnto them his mind as followeth: M

Mahomet purpoſing to giue a general aſſault, encourageth his captaines and ſouldiers thereunto.

I thinke none of you are ignorant (right worthie ſouldiers) that now it is the third moneth ſince this citie hath by vs beene moſt ſtraitly beſieged, and with all manner of artillerie and engines of warre impugned, aſſaulted, and on euery ſide aſſailed, the wals thereof vtterly ſubuerted, and the bulwarkes laied flat with the ground, and (as you ſee) as good as raſed: Beſides that, ſo oft as wee haue ſet fire

vpon

A *vpon their fortreſſes, ſo oft we haue prouoked them of* Scodra *to fight, and haue alſo much vexed them with aſſaults. Laſt of all, as you know, we haue left nothing vnproued, nothing vnattempted which could be deuiſed, the eaſilier to ouercome them, being wearied, worne out, and their ſtrength ſpent. Wherefore (in mine opinion) the matter is not longer to be put off or delayed, but euen to morrow before the enemie can recouer his ſtrength or repaire his breaches, let vs encloſe the citie round, and giue them a generall and terrible aſſault: and therefore euery one of you make your ſelues readie, and exhort your ſouldiers in the campe, that they euery one of them to morrow with the dawning of the day come forth armed and well appointed for the winning of the citie. Now will I proue and know them that are worthie of my pay. Thou the Baſſa of* Constantinople, *with thy ſquadrons and certaine companies*
B *of the Ianizaries our faithfull guard, giue charge vnto the breach: in the meane time, let the Baſſa of* Asia *with his power aſſault the other parts of the citie: let euery man make readie and bring with him what ſo is needfull for this generall aſſault; my mind giueth me, that to morrow before this time we ſhall win the citie: for who is there can reſiſt vs? The towne (as you ſee) is bared both of wall and of all other defence: the bulwarks and ditches are laid euen, and an eaſie way for vs to come vnto it: the citizens themſelues wearie with ſo many fights and aſſaults faint and want ſtrength; whereas we are ſtill freſh and luſtie: they in number few, we almoſt innumerable: beſides that, we farre paſſe them in the force of our artillerie, wherewith many of them ſhall periſh in the defending of the breaches. Who then can gainesay, but that they of* Scodra *are alreadie our priſoners? Where, vpon ſuch as remaine aliue, I will at my pleaſure vſe the law of armes and captiuitie. On therefore courageous hearts without*
C *further delay. Is not the very name of* Scodra *hatefull vnto vs? for which of you doth not with great diſdaine call to remembrance the death of your parents, or brethren, or friends, or companions, cruelly ſlaine vnder theſe wals? Can you diſgeſt your hatred againſt them of* Scodra? *and ſo many ſlaughters of your friends, by them made? But to forget elder times, and the harmes receiued from them long ſince, let vs but looke vpon our late ſlaughters and wounds as it were yet bleeding: it is not yet full foure yeeres ſince that we made warre with theſe men of* Scodra, *wherein ſo many thouſands of our people fell, that their ſlaughter is yet almoſt obiect to our eyes, and their bloud craning reuenge. This very hill whereon we ſtand, and the ſtones yet ſeeme beſprinckled and polluted with their bloud. Wherefore haſte you as men of courage, take vp armes, valiantly mount the hill, aſſault the towne, and reuenge your old iniuries. Glut your ſelues to the full in the effuſion of the Chriſtian bloud, where-*
D *unto our lawes doe ſo much exhort vs, and doe what you may with force and ſword, that not one of them of* Scodra *may be left aliue: which you may eaſily bring to paſſe, hauing all things thereunto needfull: for there is nothing to withſtand you, nothing wanting for the gaining of the victorie. All things are prepared, all things are readie: an eaſie matter it is for a ſtrong man to ouercome the weake and feeble, that wanteth ſtrength as doe they.*

This ſpeech of the barbarous tyrant, was receiued with great applauſe and good liking of the hearers: and now was Scodra to be with all might and maine aſſaulted, and not a man there left aliue. Hereupon proclamation was made throughout the campe, That euery man vpon paine of death ſhould be readie againſt the appointed time. And the great captains & commanders of the armie departing from *Mahomet*, went vp to the top of the hill whereon the Baſſa lay, and from thence taking view of the citie, and laying their heads together, conſulted how they might beſt giue the aſſault. The defendants on the other ſide alwayes expecting their enemies houering ouer their heads, left nothing vndone that they could poſſibly deuiſe, for the defence of themſelues and the citie. Now vpon the top of the Baſſaes mount was a royall pauilion erected, richly couered with purple, from whence the proud tyrant might plainly behold all the aſſault: who with the dawning of the day (being the two and twentith of Iuly) entring the ſame, the Turks who in the couert of the night had conueyed themſelues as neere vnto the walles as they could, (vpon the ſignall of battell, giuen by a tire of ordinance diſcharged from the Baſſaes mount) ſuddenly ran to the breaches as thicke as bees, in hope by their ſudden approch to haue taken the Chriſtians at ſome aduantage: wherein they were much deceiued. For they alwayes doubting ſuch a matter, and carefully obſeruing the leaſt motion of the enemie, were alwaies in readineſſe to meet with their attempts: ſo that the Turks deſperatly ſtriuing to gaine the breaches, and the Chriſtians valiantly defending the ſame, there was in diuers places begun a moſt cruell and mortall fight; but eſpecially neere vnto the great gate, where the furie of the Canon had made the wals moſt faultable. There the enemie was come to fight hand to hand, and preuailing

The citie of Scodra aſſaulted by the Turkes the fourth time.

uailing vpon the defendants, had ſet vp one of the Turks enſignes vpon the top of the rampiers: G
which *Mahomet* beholding, reioyced exceedingly, thinking the citie now as good as taken. But the Chriſtians ſeeing the danger, ſpeedily repaired thither with new ſupplies, and by plaine force draue the enemie out againe, and beat him from the rampiers. Vpon them alſo that were comming vp, they caſt downe peeces of timber, great ſtones, wildfire, pots of lime, and ſuch other things as might moſt annoy them: as for ſhot, none fell in vaine by reaſon of the wonderfull multitude of the Turks, who ſtood ſo thicke, that a man could hardly haue caſt downe a graine of muſtard ſeed from the wall but it muſt needs haue light vpon ſome of them: by which meanes the Turks were notably repulſed, their enſigne pluckt downe, and they enforced to retire from the wals. Which ſudden alteration *Mahomet* perceiuing, fell into a great rage, and H
forthwith commanded his great ordinance, with greater furie than euer, to be diſcharged into the breach: And with great words commanded the two chiefe Baſſaes which ſtood by him vpon the mount, to goe preſently downe and enforce the ſouldiers which were already retired, to returne again vnto the aſſault. Theſe great commanders ſeeing the tyrant in ſuch a fret, forthwith deſcended from the hill, and where perſwaſion would not ſerue, with their drawne ſwords enforced the ſouldiers to returne backe againe to the aſſault. The Turks knowing that they were now in the eye of their King, and in the preſence of their greateſt commanders, ſtriue with might and maine to win the rampiers: for in that place, the wals of the citie were beaten downe to the ground, ſhaken before this aſſault with 2539 ſhot of the cannon or other peeces of no leſſe force. The Chriſtians likewiſe in defence of themſelues and their citie, with inuincible cou- I
A moſt terrible aſſault. rage oppoſed themſelues againſt the Turks: ſo that a more deſperat fight than there, was hardly euer to be ſeene; deſperat men with deſperat hand aſſailing one another: And the more to increaſe the terrour of the day, the thundring ſhot, with the clamour of men and noiſe of the inſtruments of warre, was ſo great, as if heauen and earth ſhould haue preſently fallen together; and arrowes falling into the citie as if it had beene ſhowers of raine, oftentimes darkened the light of the day. In this dreadfull fight, many of the defendants were ſlaine; but of the Turks, twentie to one. Neere vnto that gate where this terrible aſſault was giuen, were certaine loupes hewen out of the maine rocke, which flanked the ditch all alongſt that ſide of the citie, out of which the Chriſtians with their murthering ſhot made lanes amongſt their enemies, and ſlew them without number. For all that, the mightie Baſſaes and great captaines, one while by per- K
ſwaſion, another while by threatning, forced them ſtill forward; and if any turned backe, preſently ſlew him: ſo that the Turks ſeeing no leſſe danger in retiring, than in fighting againſt the enemie, like deſperat men thruſt forward by heapes, and were ſlaine without number. Yet ſtill preſſing on ſo long as life laſted, and others ſtepping forward in ſtead of them that were ſlaine; they began againe to preuaile vpon the defendants (who in that place were for moſt part either ſlaine or hurt) and againe recouered the top of the rampiers, and there aduanced the Turks enſignes. Then began the tyrant to lift vp his head, making ſure account that the citie was now his owne. But as the common ſaying is, He that reckoneth without his hoaſt, muſt reckon twiſe: ſo chanced it to *Mahomet*. For the companies, from the beginning of the ſiege left in the market place readie for all euents, and oftentimes wiſhing for ſome occaſion wherein to ſhew them- L
ſelues; being now in good time aduertiſed of the imminent danger, came with ſpeed to the place of the aſſault before the Turks had taken good footing; and there valiantly encountring them, ſlew a great number of them, and forced the reſt from the rampiers; and plucking downe their enſignes before ſet vp, in ſtead of them placed their owne. With which repulſe the Turks were ſo diſmaied, that they quite forſooke the aſſault, and in deſpight of their imperious commanders, not expecting any ſigne of retrait, in haſte retired to their campe. *Mahomet* fallen from ſo great an hope, and grieued aboue meaſure with this ſhameful repulſe, returned into his pauilion fretting and fuming as a man halfe mad, where two daies he tormented himſelfe with his owne paſſions, not admitting any man to his preſence. The Chriſtians afterwards tooke the ſpoile of the dead Turks, and cutting off diuers of their heads, ſet them vp vpon poles round about the M
Twelue thouſand Turkes ſlaine in the laſt aſſault. citie, to the terrour of their fellowes. In this aſſault were twelue thouſand of the Turks ſlaine, and many moe wounded. Of the Chriſtians were loſt 400: and of them that came to the breach eſcaped none, but he was wounded more or leſſe.

After that *Mahomet* had two daies diſgeſted the laſt repulſe, the ſhame whereof grieued him more than the loſſe it ſelfe: he ſent for both the great Baſſaes of CONSTANTINOPLE and ASIA,

and

A and other two of his chiefe councellors, with whom he reſolued to giue another aſſault, and thereon to gage his whole forces: for they were all of opinion with him, that the defendants were ſo weakned and waſted with the former aſſault, that they could not poſſibly hold out another. Whereupon ſtraight commandement was giuen through the campe, that euery man without exception, ſhould be readie to go to the aſſault whenſoeuer they were called vpon: and the more to encourage the ſoldiers, great rewards and preferments were promiſed to them which in time of the aſſault ſhould performe any eſpeciall piece of ſeruice. The firſt appearance of the new Moone (which the Turks worſhip with great deuotion) was the time that *Mahomet* had appointed for this generall aſſault: in the meane ſpace he ſpared not to poure out his furie a-
B gainſt the wals and rampiers of the towne, by the mouth of the cannon. The Chriſtian defendants on the other ſide, firſt by heartie prayer commended themſelues and their citie to the protection of the moſt mightie, and afterwards with reſtleſſe labour and no ſmall perill, ſpeedily repaired and new fortified whatſoeuer the furie of the artillerie had ouerthrown or ſhaken; omitting nothing that could be done or deuiſed for the defence of themſelues, and their citie. Now as ſoon as the new Moone began to ſhew her ſelfe, the Mahometane prieſts going about the armie, gaue the ſoldiers knowledge thereof (as their manner is) by ſinging of a ſong, in manner of a proceſſion; whereunto the whole armie anſwered with a ſhort reſponde, but with ſuch a terrible noiſe as was wonderfull to heare: and at the ſame time bowing themſelues to the ground, ſaluted the Moone with great ſuperſtition. Al their fond ceremonies performed, they began to draw
C nie the citie ſo thick, and in number ſo many, that all the ground for the ſpace of a mile round about Scodra was thick couered with men. The Chriſtians expecting euery houre to be aſſailed, were readie vpon the wals and rampiers of the citie to repulſe the enemie: but eſpecially at the great gate where moſt danger was feared, for that the Turkes with their great ordinance had made that place of all others moſt faultable. Heere *Iacobus Moneta* a noble captaine, with his brother *Moncinus* a valiant gentleman, tooke vpon them to receiue the firſt aſſault which is commonly of all others moſt terrible: for the Turkes vſe in their aſſaults to giue three attempts, whereof the firſt is moſt furious and dangerous, as performed by their beſt ſoldiers; the other two are of leſſe force: but if they faile in all three, they forſake the enterpriſe as men diſcouraged. Whileſt both the aſſailants and the defendants ſtood thus in readineſſe, the one as it were facing
D the other a great part of the night, *Mahomet* before day went vp to the top of the Baſſaes mount, from whence he had before beholden the former aſſault: at whoſe comming, there were preſently eleuen cannons diſcharged, & twelue ſmaller pieces (the ſignal appointed for the aſſault.) The Turkes vpon this ſigne giuen, with exceeding tumult and moſt hidious outcrie (as their manner is) began to aſſaile the citie round, and with ſuch wonderfull agilitie of bodie and courage mounted the rampiers at the great gate, that they had there as it were in a trice ſet vp one of their enſignes, which was forthwith pluckt vp by *Moneta*, and the Turkes with great ſlaughter driuen downe, where many of them were ſlaine with ſtones, timber, fire, and ſuch other things caſt downe vpon them; beſide a great number ſlaine or wounded with ſhot, arrowes, and darts, whereof none fell to the ground in vaine, by reaſon that the Turkes ſtood ſo thick, that they vi-
E olently preſſed one another forward, in ſuch ſort, that the formoſt could by no means ſhun any danger, were it neuer ſo great or terrible. In this ſort the aſſault was with great ſlaughter of the Turkes continued vntill it was day; they ſtriuing to win the breach, and the Chriſtians moſt valiantly defending the ſame: *Moneta* himſelfe in this fight receiued diuers wounds, and was twice beaten downe to the ground; yet ſtill recouering himſelfe, encouraged his ſoldiers, and worthily repulſed the enemie. *Mahomet* ſeeing his ſoldiers beaten from the breach, cauſed a tyre of his great Ordinance to be diſcharged vpon the Chriſtians which ſtood therein thick for the defence thereof, by force whereof many of them were rent in peeces, and the reſt ſore diſmayed: which the Turkes quickly perceiuing, and therewith encouraged, came on againe with a freſh charge, forcing themſelues to the vttermoſt to haue entred. But the valiant captaine nothing diſ-
F couraged either with the loſſe of them that were ſlaine, or with the danger of himſelfe, couragiouſly withſtood the furious enemie, & maintained the place vntill new ſupplies came to relieue him, and neuer departed thence, either ſuffered any man to depart, vntill the aſſault was ended. Many were ſlaine on both ſides, yet nothing troubled the defendants ſo much as the great ordinance; which being diſcharged from the Baſſaes mount into the breach, at ſuch times as the Turkes were driuen backe, ſlew many of the Chriſtians, leauing the breach almoſt cleare: ſo gi-

The Turks ſuperſtitiouſly reuerence the new Moone.

Scodra againe moſt furiouſly aſſaulted by the Turkes.

uing occaſion for the Turkes to haue entred, had not other couragious ſoldiers ſtept vp in ſtead G.
of them that were ſlaine, who manfully repulſed the enemie. The tyrant from the mount ſeeing the inuincible courage of the defendants, was therewith exceedingly troubled: but fully reſolued now or neuer to haue it, commanded all his forces to be drawne from all other parts of the citie vnto the great gate, there to renew the aſſault; ſtraightly charging his captaines, neuer to returne thence vntill they had taken the citie. Heereupon the greateſt part of that hugie armie was forthwith in the ſight of himſelfe brought vnto the appointed place, and there gaue a ſharp and cruell aſſault at the breach, with ſuch deſperat furie, that in ſhort time they had ſlaine moſt of the defendants there preſent, and aduanced diuers of their enſignes vpon the top of the rampiers. Which *Mahomet* beholding from the mount, reioiced exceedingly, making ſure ac- H.
count that the citie was now his owne: but by that time he had well conceiued this hope, new ſupplies of freſh and couragious men (of purpoſe reſerued for all euents) came to the place of danger, and with great reſolution encountring the wearied Turkes, draue them back, cleared the breach, and ouerthrew the enſignes. Which ſo ſudden an alteration in the breach, wrought no leſſe alteration in the prowd tyrants mind, his hope was turned into deſpaire, and his rejoycing into choller: inſomuch that in his furie, he commanded all his great artillerie to be at once diſcharged into the breach; whereby many of his forward and couragious ſouldiers were ſlain togither with the defendants. At the ſame time, the great commanders and captaines knowing themſelues to be in the eye of their imperious lord and maſter, with their drawne ſwords forced the poore ſouldiers againe forward to the breach; and the more to encourage them, ad- I.
uentured themſelues alſo amongſt them: whereby the fight became more fierce and terrible than before. Many of the Turkes were there ſlaine; yet ſuch was the force and multitude of them which ſtill ſtept vp in their place, and bullets and arrowes flew ſo thicke, that the defendants oppreſſed with multitude, and ouerwhelmed with ſhot, were hardly able longer to maintaine the place, being for moſt part either ſlaine or wounded. Whereupon a great crie ran vpon the ſudden through the citie, that euerie man without exception, ſhould forthwith repaire to the breach. Which was with ſuch cheerefulneſſe done, that in leſſe time than was to haue beene thought, a wonderfull multitude of all ſort of people was there met togither, encouraging one another againſt the preſent danger; who all as men reſolued to lay downe their liues in defence of their countrey, valiantly encountred the Turkes vpon the top of the rampiers, and K.
ſo hardly laid vnto them, that notwithſtanding their great number, they began now againe to wauer and ſhrinke backe. Which thing the tyrant perceiuing from the mount, in great rage cõmanded his canoniers, as faſt as they could to diſcharge the great ordinance into the breach, without any regard of his owne men, ſo that togither with them, he might alſo kill ſome of the Chriſtians: and withall imperiouſly commanded his captaines, with all their force and power to maintaine the aſſault, threatning them with moſt horrible death, if they returned without victorie. Heereupon the aſſault was againe renewed, euery man (in ſhew at leaſt) ſet downe there to doe his laſt deuoire. But the great ordinance ſtill playing vpon the breach, ſlew many of the Turkes as well as of the Chriſtians. Thriſe the great ſhot fell amongſt the Turkes themſelues, and rent in ſunder a great number of them which were formoſt, to the great diſcouragement of L.
the reſt: whereof the tyrant had ſmall regard, ſo that togither with them he might alſo diminiſh the number of the defendants. Neuertheleſſe, ſuch was the deſperate furie of the enemie, that the citie was in no ſmal danger to haue been euen preſently taken, had not freſh ſupplies come from other places of the citie which they were appointed vnto; who with great courage reſiſted the enemie. Yet the Turkes farre exceeding in number (and freſh men continually ſtepping vp in ſtead of them which lay by heapes vnder their feet, and ſerued them in ſtead of ſteps to get vp to the rampiers) maintained a long and terrible fight: at which time the great ordinance alſo ſore annoied the defendants, ſo that with one ſhot (whereby the greatneſſe of the harmes done at other times may be gathered) eighteene of the Chriſtian defendants were ſlaine. As for arrowes, they flew as thicke as haile into the citie; ſo that they obſcured the light of the day, and M.
lay in moſt places of the ſtreet a ſpan thick: ſo that for the ſpace of a moneth after, the inhabi-
A wofull fight. tants vſed no other fuell to burne, but Turkiſh arrowes. It was a ruthfull ſight to haue ſeene the bodies of the valiant Chriſtians rent in ſunder with the great ſhot, & pieces of them cleauing vpon euery wall thereabout, euery ſtreet was ſtained with their bloud, the great ordinance continually thundred, churches and houſes came ratling downe, yea the heauie countenance of the

The aſſault fiercely againe renued by the Turkes.

ayre

A ayre it ſelfe ſeemed to bewaile the miſerie of the poore Chriſtians: beſides, the noiſe of trumpets,drums,and other inſtruments of warre,with the horrible crie of the helliſh Turkes, was ſo great and hideous,that it ſeemed as if heauen and earth ſhould haue gone togither: nothing was to be heard but the very terror of the eare; nothing to be ſeene but death, and the very inſtruments of death. And now in this extremitie a fearefull cry ran through the citie, That without preſent help all would be loſt at the great gate: Whereupon, not onely they which were whole (which were the feweſt in number) but they alſo which lay wounded or ſick in their beds, cheering vp themſelues, with weapons in their hands ran with ſpeed to the place where the danger was; chuſing rather there to die, than to be ſlaine in their beds. Thus whileſt the Chriſtians of
B all ſorts, and from all parts of the citie ran deſperatly to the gate, the Turkes were on euery ſide hardly preſſed and in great number ſlaine: yet freſh men ſtill comming vp as if they had ſprung out of the earth, the deadly fight was by them ſtill maintained. For the Turkes on the one ſide, for feare of the tyrant, laboured with might and maine to win the citie; and the Chriſtians on the other, knowing no hope left for them if they ſhould be ouercome, with no leſſe reſolution defended the ſame. In this obſtinacie of minds,many fell on both ſides: ſometimes the Turkes *A doubtfull fight.* ſeemed to haue the better, and were ſtraight way by the Chriſtians put to the worſe. Which manner of mortall fight with doubtfull euent, was continued moſt part of that day: vntill that at length many being on both parts ſlaine, and the reſt for moſt part ſore wounded and hurt, the furie of the aſſault began to aſſwage: for the Turkes now wearie of that long and deadly
C fight, and fainting with their wounds, had no great ſtomacke to mount vp the rampiers, where they ſaw no hope to preuaile, but all things threatning preſent death. *Mahomet* beholding the wonderfull ſlaughter of his men, and that hauing done what was poſſible for men to doe, they now fought as men diſcouraged,and in diſpaire of Victory himſelfe,cauſed a retrait to be ſounded,which the Turkes no ſooner heard, but that they left the aſſault, and without order ran to their tents as men halfe feared out of their wits.

Of this victorie, the Chriſtians (as they had good cauſe) rejoyced greatly: yet was this joy mingled with much ſorrow and heauineſſe, for the loſſe of ſuch worthy men as were ſlaine in that aſſault, manie of whoſe bodies, they were glad to gather vp by peecemeale, ſome heere, ſome there, ſome cleauing on this wall, and ſome on that: which they, as the time would giue
D leaue, honorably buried with the reſt of the ſlaine. At which time alſo, they with all diligence and expedition repaired their breaches, and put all things in ſuch readineſſe, as if they ſhould haue preſently receiued a freſh aſſault.

Mahomet wonderfully grieued with the ſhamefull diſhonour and great loſſe he had receiued at the laſt aſſault, repented himſelfe that euer he had taken the matter in hand, wiſhing that hee had neuer heard of the name of SCODRA: and in his choller and frantike rage, moſt horribly blaſphemed againſt God, moſt wickedly ſaying, that it were enough for him to haue care of heauenly things,and not to croſſe him in his worldly actions. In which furie he deſcended from the mount and got him into his tent, where he againe tormented himſelfe with his melancholy paſſions by the ſpace of two daies; wherein he would neither be ſpoke withall, or admit any
E man to his preſence. Vpon the third day he called a generall counſell of his commanders and beſt ſouldiers, and thereupon openly before them all ſaid, That he was determined to giue the enemie a freſh aſſault, for that being weakned with ſo many aſſaults, he could not poſſibly be able to hold out another: and therefore hoped for an eaſie victorie. But he had no ſooner ſo ſaid, but that all they that heard him, cried out with one voice to the contrarie: ſaying, That it was not by any meanes to be attempted, foraſmuch as his beſt ſouldiours were already ſlaine, and the greater part of them that were left, either ſore wounded, or brought to that weakneſſe that they were not able to do any more ſeruice; and that therefore it were better for them to kill one another, or elſe himſelfe to kill them one by one, than to expoſe them to be ſo ſhamefully butchered by the Chriſtians. In this diuerſitie of opinions, *Achmetes Baſſa* the great champion of
F the Turkes (a man reuerend and of great authoritie,for his birth,yeares,and rare experience in martiall affaires,and one by whom *Mahomet* had done great matters) ſtanding vp,with pleaſing ſpeech calmed his furious mind,and with ſubſtantiall reaſons perſuaded him to deſiſt from that his entended purpoſe, and to take another ſurer courſe, as followeth.

Your great valour and worthie praiſes inuincible emperour (ſaid he) *who is able to expreſſe? the* *A notable ſpeech of the great Baſſa Achmetes.*

greatneſſe whereof the mind of man cannot conceiue, and my dull ſpirit but wonder thereat; my tongue G
faltereth to ſpeake of them, neither would this time ſerue ſo much as to recount them. It is of all men deemed a thing of great honour (moſt dread ſoueraigne) when a prince hath receiued a kingdome from his anceſtors, to be able in ſafetie to keepe and defend the ſame: greater than this is it, honourably to encreaſe and augment it, ſo left: but of a ſmall thing, by worthie proweſſe to bring it to the higheſt type of worldly honour, is of all other things the greateſt. Which moſt rare excellencie, all men worthily aſcribe vnto your perfection and felicitie: and I of all others can thereof bring the moſt aſſured teſtimonie, who haue oftentimes heard it of mine anceſtors (which following the fortune of the Othoman princes out of ASIA into EVROPE) that your worthy predeceſſors at their firſt comming into EVROPE (without offence be it ſaid) poſſeſſed but a corner thereof; to whom you afterward by di- H
uine appointment ſucceeding, haue adioined ſo many prouinces, kingdomes, and Empires, as were tedious to rehearſe them. For who can worthily expreſſe, how you haue in EVROPE ſubdued CONSTANTINOPLE, the imperiall citie of the Eaſt empire, with all THRACIA, ACHAIA, GRECIA, PELOPONESVS, BEOTIA, THEBES, and the noble citie of ATHENS, the mother and nurſe of all good learning. The empire of TRAPEZOND, with the emperour thereof, is by you ouerthrowne: the kingdomes of SERVIA and BOSNA, with the princes of PELOPONESVS, are by you glorioufly vanquiſhed. You haue at your command twelue kingdomes in ASIA the leſſer, PONTVS, BYTHINIA, CAPPADOCIA, PAPHLAGONIA, CILICIA, PAMPHILIA, LYCIA, CARIA, LYDIA, PHRIGIA, NICHOMEDIA, and NICEA, with the famous citie of PRVSA. Beſides theſe, IONIA, DORIS, SMYRNA, COLOPHON, EPHESVS, MILETVM, HALI- I
CARNASVS, PERGAMVS, with the countrie of TAVRICA, are vnder your ſubiection. The great countrey of ARMENIA hath felt your force: the Iſlands of LESBOS, CHIOS, and EVBŒA, are parts of your empire. What ſhould I ſpeake of infinit people and nations, by you moſt victorioufly vanquiſhed? This may ſuffice for all, that you haue gained from the Chriſtians twentie prouinces and two hundred great cities. For it were too long to rehearſe the Mahometane kings and princes by you alſo vanquiſhed: in all your expeditions all things haue yet giuen place to your fortune. The ancient monuments may now ceaſe to extoll the praiſes of Cæſar, Scipio, Pyrrhus, Hanniball, and other cheefetaines of ROME, and forraine nations: for why, they are all inferior to you both for victories and countries ſubdued. The Othoman familie is vndoubtedly fatall for ſoueraigntie: all the world ſhall in ſhort time come vnder your gouernment, and all nations ſhall ſerue you. As for this towne of SCODRA, K
let it not ſo much greeue you: worldly things (as you know) doe oftentimes deceiue our expectation: in them fortune beareth great ſway. Yet for this matter, quiet your ſelfe: for I dare gage my faith vnto your imperiall maieſtie, that I will in ſhort time find meanes, that this citie ſhall ſtand at your deuotion. Did not I of late bring into your ſubiection the impregnable citie of CROIA, which you ſo long deſired? But whereas you would now again forthwith attempt to win it by aſſault, I therein craue your pardon, in that I cannot be of that opinion, but muſt needs thinke farre otherwiſe: for to attempt warre, and to be ouerthrowne, is an eaſie matter for euery man to doe; but to vaniſh the enemie, and to carrie away the triumph, that right few men know. He that conſulteth of ſuch great and weightie matters, ought to be free both from furie and deſire, both euill counſellours. The Chriſtians of SCODRA are not in my opinion to be againe aſſaulted: for in ſo doing you ſhall but loſe your labour. For if you could not ſubdue them, your L
armie being then freſh and ſtrong, how ſhall you now ouercome them with much fewer, and they wounded, weake and feeble? I haue viewed the whole campe, and ſearched euery tent; and found no place, no tent, yea ſcarcely any cabbin, without groning, ſighing, weeping, or wailing; in euery place was heauineſſe, ſorrow, mourning, and death it ſelfe: for in the laſt aſſault you loſt thirtie thouſand and more of your beſt ſoldiers: many moe are greeuouſly wounded and maimed: none, but he carrieth about him ſome ſigne that he was there: few or none there be that dare againe mount the hill to giue a freſh aſſault, they are all afraid and diſcouraged. Whom when I demanded, how ſo great a feare was come vpon them, and what was the cauſe they had ſo loſt their wonted courage? they anſwered me, That it was the looke, euen the very looke of them of SCODRA, whoſe eyes did ſeeme vnto them to burne and ſparkle with fire: their
ſterne and terrible countenances (ſaid they) haue ſtrucke this terrour into vs, Wherefore I thinke it M
not good to giue a freſh aſſault with men ſo diſmaied: but rather to vſe policie and delay againſt ſuch reſolute enemies. This citie of SCODRA is the eye and head of all this prouince, which the Venetians haue notably fortified and planted with ſtore of ordinance and of all things elſe neceſſarie for defence thereof; but eſpecially with moſt valiant ſouldiers, of purpoſe choſen out of many their garriſons for defence of this citie: you haue not now to doe with the weake and effeminate people of ASIA, but with

the

A *the hard and rough people of* Epirvs. *And you know (moſt mightie Emperour) the ſtrength and courage of this nation: it is now thirtie yeares that you haue made warre againſt this people, and haue not yet altogether ſubdued them: and how dangerous and chargeable this warre hath beene vnto you, who knoweth not? It is now ſix moneths ſince we came firſt before this citie; we haue intrenched our ſelues round about it, we haue day and night laid hard ſiege vnto it, we haue battered it of long with eleuen cannons: I ſpeake not of other ſmaller peeces or engines of warre, with all kind of ſhot and fire-worke, and whatſoeuer elſe we could deuiſe. We haue many times to our coſt aſſaulted it: what could be done by force, ſtrength, or multitude of valiant men, is already done in the former aſſaults. Nothing hath been left vnattempted, no policie no direction hath wanted in your leaders, neither courage in*
B *your ſouldiors. What ſhould I recount the innumerable great ſhot, or ſpeake of our arrowes and darts, deliuered into the citie as ſhowers of haile? Did all this or any thing elſe we could doe, any thing terrifie theſe defendants? Were they not, nay are they not ſtill ready, with great aſſurance and courage at all aſſayes to encounter vs. You take a wrong courſe by force to conſtraine them. They haue taken vpon them the defence of this place, and are not thence to be remoued, there ſhall you be ſure ſtill to finde them either aliue or dead. And what account they make of their liues, you ſee, they will ſell them vnto vs deare for their countrey, and preferre an honourable death before a ſeruile life. Wherefore againſt men ſo ſet downe, policie is to be vſed: and them whom we cannot by force ſubdue, let vs by delay and time*
C *ouercome. If you will win* Scodra, *blocke it vp, build ſtrong forts in places conuenient round about it, and furniſh them with good ſouldiers: make a bridge ouer* Boliana, *with a ſtrong caſtle on ei-ther ſide, to ſtop the paſſage: which done, beſiege the other weaker cities of the Venetians, which are as it were the lims of* Scodra: *and ſubdue the countrey round about, which will be no hard matter for you to doe, being maſter of the field: ſo muſt* Scodra *at length of neceſſitie yeeld vnto you, as of late did* Croia, *enforced thereunto by famine. Thus may you in ſafetie without ſlaughter of your people come to the full of your deſires.*

The wholeſome counſell of the Baſſa ſo well pleaſed *Mahomet* himſelfe, and the reſt there preſent, that the aſſault was laid aſide, and preſent order taken for the ſpeedie execution of that which was by him ſo well plotted. Whereupon the Baſſa of Constantinople with his forces was ſent to Zabiache, a citie in the borders of Dalmatia, ſtanding vpon the lake
D of Scvtarie, not farre from Ascrivivm, which in few daies was yeelded vnto him. The Baſſa poſſeſſed of the citie, thruſt out all the inhabitants, and leauing therein a garriſon of Turks, returned againe to the campe at Scodra. At the ſame time great Baſſa of Asia was alſo ſent by *Mahomet* againſt Drivasto, a citie alſo of the Venetians: which when he had beſieged and ſore battered by the ſpace of ſixteene dayes, the great tyrant came thither in perſon himſelfe, and the next day after his comming tooke the citie, without any great reſiſtance. Such as he found vpon the wals, he put to the ſword: of the reſt he tooke three hundred away with him vnto the campe at Scodra, and there in the face of the citie cauſed them all to be cruelly ſlaine, of purpoſe ſo to terrifie the defendants. The next day after he ſent the great Baſſa of Constantinople to Lyssa, called alſo Alessa, a citie of the Venetians, ſituated vpon the riuer
E Drinus, about thirtie miles from Scodra. The Baſſa comming thither, found the citie deſolate (for the citizens hearing of his comming, were for feare before fled) for which cauſe he ſet the citie on fire. Heere the Turkes digged vp the bones of the worthy prince *Scanderbeg*, for the ſuperſtitious opinion they had of the vertue of them: and happie was he that could get any little part thereof to ſet in gold or other jewell, as a thing of great price, as is before declared. All theſe things thus done, *Mahomet* committed the direction of all things concerning the ſiege of Scodra, vnto the diſcretion of *Achmetes*. By whoſe perſwaſion, he leauing a great power for the continuing of the ſiege, departed thence himſelfe with fortie thouſand ſouldiers for Constantinople, curſing and banning by the way all the countrey of Epirvs, all the inhabitants therein, and euery part thereof, their corne, their cattle, and whatſoeuer elſe was fruit-
F full; but aboue all other things the citie of Scodra, with all that therein was, for that he had neuer receiued greater diſhonour or loſſe than there.

Lyſſa taken by the Turks, and the bones of Scanderbeg digged vp by them, and had in great reuerence.

After his departure, which was about the ſeuenth of September, the two great Baſſaes of Constantinople and Asia, according to order before taken, built a great bridge ouer the riuer Boliana, and on either ſide a ſtrong caſtle, to the intent that no releefe ſhould that way be brought into the citie. Which worke when they had brought to perfection, and furniſhed both

caſtles with garriſons, ordinance, and all things neceſſarie, they left *Achmetes Baſſa* with fortie G.
thouſand ſoldiers to continue the ſiege, and returned themſelues the one to CONSTANTINOPLE, and the other in ASIA. The warie and politike Baſſa mindfull of the charge he had taken vpon him, tooke ſuch order, that no releefe could poſſibly be brought vnto the citie either by land or by water: and ſo lying ſtill before it a long time, brought it at length into ſuch a diſtreſſe and want of all things, that the poore Chriſtians were faine to eate all manner of vncleane and loathſome things; horſes were daintie meat, yea they were glad to eate dogs, cats, rats, and the skins of beaſts ſod: it exceedeth all credit to tell at what exceeding great price a little mouſe was ſold, or puddings made of dogs guts. All theſe bare ſhifts and extremities the poore Chriſtians were content to endure euen vnto the laſt gaſpe, rather than to yeeld themſelues into the H
hands of their mercileſſe enemies.

Whileſt SCODRA thus lay in the ſuds, the Venetians wearie of the long and chargeable war they had to their great loſſe now maintained againſt ſo mightie an enemie, by the ſpace of ſixteene yeares; and hauing no meanes to releeue their diſtreſſed ſubjects in SCODRA, thought it beſt to proue, if they could procure a peace from the tyrant. For which purpoſe they ſent *Benedictus Triuiſanus*, a great Senatour and a man of great experience, to CONSTANTINOPLE: who ſo well vſed the matter, that after long debating too and fro, at length a peace was concluded; whereof the cheefe capitulations were, That the Venetians ſhould deliuer vnto *Mahomet* the citie of SCODRA, the Iſland of LEMNOS, and the ſtrong caſtle of TENARVS in PELOPONESVS, and pay him yearely eight thouſand duckats; That they might freely after their wonted man- I
ner trafficke into the Euxine by the ſtraits of Helleſpontus and Boſphorus Thracius, and other parts of his dominions. Concerning the citizens of SCODRA, it was compriſed in the ſame
Aboord choice. peace, That it ſhould be at their owne choice either to liue there ſtill vnder the gouernment of the Turkiſh emperour, or elſe at their pleaſure to depart in ſafetie with their goods whether they would. *Triuiſanus* hauing in this manner concluded a peace, in his returne homeward the fourth of Aprill, found the Venetian Admirall riding at anker in the mouth of Boliana, from whence they both by letters certified the Gouernour and citizens of SCODRA, in what manner the peace was concluded with the Turke, and what prouiſion was therein made for them. Vpon receit of which letters, the gouernour calling together the citizens, declared vnto them how the caſe ſtood: and there with them entered into conſultation vpon this hard queſtion, Whether they K
would remaine there ſtill in their natiue country vnder the Turkiſh tyrannie; or forſaking the ſame, liue amongſt other Chriſtians in perpetuall exile? But after the matter had beene throughly debated, and many reaſons on both parts alledged, at length it was by generall conſent concluded, That they ſhould all forſake the citie and the houſe of bondage, as dangerous both to their ſoules and bodies, and liue as it ſhould pleaſe God amongſt other Chriſtians. So the Turks giuing pledges for the ſafe departure of the Chriſtians in SCODRA, they all at an appointed day with bag & baggage came out of the citie, & were by the Venetians carefully tranſported into other parts of their territorie in ITALIE, where they liued in peace. The Turks (who had now beſieged the citie a whole yeare) after the departure of the Chriſtians entered the citie with great joy and triumph, which with many others thereabout, hath euer ſince to the great ruth of all L
Chriſtendome remained in the poſſeſſion of the faithleſſe infidels. Thus was the ſtrong citie
Scodra yeilded vnto the Turks. of SCODRA loſt, and the long warres ended betwixt *Mahomet* and the Venetians, which happened in the yeare 1478.

1480 *Mahomet* now at peace with the Venetians, ſent the ſame *Achemetes Baſſa* (by whom he had but a litle before taken in SCODRA) with his fleet of gallies againſt one *Leonard*, prince of NERITVS, ZACYNTHVS, and CEPHALENIA, Iſlands neere vnto PELOPONESVS: where the Baſſa arriuing, eaſily tooke the ſame Iſlands, the poore prince for ſafegard of his life being glad to flie into ITALIE with his wife and treaſure to king *Ferdinand*, whoſe nigh kinſwoman he had maried.

About the ſame time *Alis-Beg*, ſurnamed *Michael Ogli*, *Iſa Beg* the ſonne of *Caſſanes*, and *Balis Beg*, ſurnamed *Malcozogli* (men of great account amongſt the Turks, and moſt honourably deſ- M
cended) entred into TRANSYLVANIA with a great armie of an hundred thouſand men, and brought ſuch a general feare vpon the country, that *Stephanus Batore* the Vaiuod, was glad with all ſpeed to flie vnto *Matthias* king of HVNGARIE, to declare vnto him the danger of his countrey, and to craue his aid. *Matthias* at the ſame time lay ſick of the gout: neuertheleſſe he tooke ſuch order by his captaines, *Stephanus Cherepetrus*, & *Paulus Kiniſius* countie of TEMESVVARE,

that

A that the Turks were encountred not farre from ALBA IVLIA, and there in a great and bloudie battell ouerthrowne: wherein *Iſa* one of their great Captaines was ſlaine, with thirtie thouſand Turks mo. Neither was this victorie gained by the Chriſtians without loſſe, *Bator* the Vayuod himſelfe being ſore wounded, and eight thouſand men ſlaine.

Mahomet in his ambitious humour, had long time deſired to haue in his ſubiection the Iſland of the RHODES. For why, it grieued him that ſo ſmall an iſland ſhould lie ſo nie his great dominions in ASIA, holden by a few Chriſtians, to the great trouble of his merchants trading in the Mediteranean, beſide many other harms daily from thence receiued, and to haue no feeling of his greatnes. But foraſmuch as the winning of that place was thought to be a matter of great
B difficultie, and in former times vnfortunatly attempted by ſome of the Mahometane princes: he purpoſed now with good aduiſe to take this enterpriſe in hand. Wherefore calling togither his graue counſellors and moſt expert men of war, after he had declared vnto them the manifold iniuries receiued from them of the RHODES; he propounded the matter, Whether it were beſt to attempt the winning of that iſland or not? Some forward men perſuaded him to reuenge thoſe iniuries done by thoſe Chriſtians, and to ſubdue that iſland, which for the neereneſſe vnto CARIA, might of right be accounted as part of his dominion; and not to forbeare that enterpriſe for feare of repulſe, foraſmuch as he was able to bring mo men to aſſaile it, that were ſtones in the wall about it. Others better aduiſed, declared the ſtrength of the iſland, with the valour of the defendants; men alwaies brought vp in armes, and as it were choſen out of all parts of Chri-
C ſtendome: ſo that it was (as they ſaid) like to proue a matter of more difficultie than was by ſome ſuppoſed; whereof ſome of the Mahometane princes had to their no ſmal diſhonour, alreadie made ſufficient triall: Alleadging farther, that that ſmall iſland which ſcarcely appeared in the ſea, was not of that worth, as that he ſhould thereon gage his honour, with the liues of ſo many good men, and moſt valiant ſouldiors as might ſerue for the conqueſt of a kingdome. For all that, *Mahomet* prickt forward with the ſpurs of ambition, and continuall ſolicitation of *Anthonius Meligalus*, a fugitiue knight of the RHODES, reſolued to follow the counſell of them which perſuaded the warre. This *Meligalus* was a knight of the order, which when he had prodigally conſumed his ſubſtance which was great, with two others, *Demetrius* and *Sophonius*, men of his owne qualitie and diſpoſition, fled vnto the Turkiſh emperor; preſenting vnto him a perfect
D plot of the citie, with all the ſtrength both of it, and the iſle wherein it ſtood, and which way he might with moſt eaſe win it. In which ſeruice they frankly offered to ſpend their liues: but hoping indeed by ſuch foule treacherie to repaire their broken eſtate. All things being now in readineſſe, *Mahomet* appointed *Meſithes Paleologus*, one of his chiefe Baſſaes (the neere kinſman of *Conſtantius Paleologus* the laſt emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE) Generall for that expedition; committing to his charge the whole managing of that ſo great an action. *Meſithes* embarking his armie in number eightie thouſand, and throughly furniſhed with all things neceſſarie for the ſiege, ſet forward from CONSTANTINOPLE, and with a pleaſant gale of wind, ſayled alongſt the coaſt of ASIA the leſſe, towards the RHODES: where by the way he called vnto him *Demetrius* (one of the fugitiue knights) to learne of him the beſt meanes for the ſafe landing of
E his armie. As for the arch traitor *Meligalus*, and chiefe author of this warre, he was fallen ſicke vpon the way; and in the extremitie of his ſickeneſſe, growing both troubleſome and loathſome vnto the Turkes that were with him in the ſame gallie, was by the marriners throwne ouerboord aliue: crying out in vaine for helpe, no man vouchſafing to haue any compaſſion vpon him; and ſo ſwallowed vp of the ſea, receiued amiddeſt the waues, the iuſt guerdon of his treacherie.

Mahomet loueth after the Rhodes.

A death right worthie ſuch a traitour.

At this time *Peter Damboyſe* a Frenchman, an Auergnoies, a man of ſingular gouernment, was Great Maſter of the RHODES; whoſe valiancie was ſuch, that commonly once in eight daies he had certaine intelligence what great matters paſſed in the Turkes court: and therewith of ſuch deepe iudgement, that he was ſeldome or neuer ouertaken, or deceiued with any falſe
F aduertiſements. This carefull Graund Maſter, was not ignorant of all theſe great preparations, neither of the comming of the Baſſa; and therefore had before ſtrongly fortified the citie, and ſo ſtored the ſame with all things needfull, as might well haue ſerued for many yeres ſiege: but eſpecially with ſuch ſhot and powder, that it was deemed (as indeed it was) an eſpeciall meanes whereby the citie was afterward preſerued. At the ſame time, many noble and valiant gentlemen hearing of the Turkes deſignes, repaired thither out of ITALY, FRANCE, SPAINE, GERMANIE,

MANIE, and other places of Christendome, cheerefully to aduenture their liues, in defence both of the place, and of the Christian religion, against the common enemie of Christianitie. The Great Master taking a general view of all the forces he had, to oppose against so puissant an enemie, found that hee had in the citie sixteene thousand able men: in which number were reckoned many Iewes and other men of seruile condition; who in the siege following, did right good seruice. The great Bassa conducted by the false traitor *Demetrius*, safely landed both his armie and artillerie in the island the two and twentieth day of Iune, not farre from the citie. At which time the Great Master considering that the safetie of the citie consisted more in the liuely valour of the defendants, than in the strength of the dead wals, or other warlike prouision; thought it requisite, as a part of his duetie, by cheerefull persuasions to encourage them, valiantly to withstand the force of their enemies. And therefore calling them all together, spake vnto them as followeth: G H

The oration of the Great Master to the rest of the knights and souldiors, to encourage them valiantly to withstand the Turkes.

At length valiant souldiers and fellowes at armes, wee see the Turkes our mortall enemies (as we were before aduertised, as well by letters from our friendes, as by common fame) breathing after our destruction; in readinesse to destroie our churches, our oratories, our alters, our religion, and whatsoeuer else we account sacred or religious; seeking the ruine of this noble citie, and the cruell death of vs all; gaping at once, to deuour our liues, our wealth, our hope, with all our former honour. And truely as I cannot denie but that the chance of warre is doubtfull, and the euent thereof vncertaine: so when I consider your valiant courage and cheerefulnesse of mind, I presently conceiue a most assured hope of victorie. They haue entered into armes against vs, not so much for any desert of ours, or vpon any other quarrell; as for the vsatiable desire of rule, and the great despite they beare against vs and the Christian religion. But to withstand their furie, and to frustrate their designes, we want neither weapons, nor artillerie, nor prouision for many yeares; we haue a most strong garrison of Frenchmen, Spaniards, Germaines, English, and others, the verie chiualrie of Christendome: and that which more is, Christ Iesus our Captaine and Generall, by whose power, we shall no doubt easily repulse the vaine force of our most wicked and graceless enemies. The care wee haue for the defence of the Christian faith, whereunto wee are by speciall profession bound, will animate and encourage vs against them, which seeke for nothing more than to extend their wicked and grosse superstition, to the great dishonour of God, and of his sonne Christ Iesus. Besides that, wee are warlike Frenchmen, Italians, Germaines, and other worthie Christians: they are of CARIA, LYDIA, CAPADOCIA, *and the other delicate countries of* ASIA; *effeminat persons, brought vp to pleasure. I say it not to draw you into anie manifest or ineuitable danger, neither to feed you with vaine hope, or to fill your eares with windie words: but this I promise and assure you of, that if this siege shall continue long, hither will come such strong ayde out of* FRANCE, ITALY, GERMANIE *and* SPAINE, *as will serue not onely to raise the siege, but to recouer againe the empires of* CONSTANTINOPLE *and* TRAPESONDE. *Then shall our enemie see no good end of their councels; but all their deuises so confounded, as that they shall hardly be able by speedie flight to saue themselues. But suppose the hardest should happen, which I feare not: would not any man account his life most happily and honourably spent, in defence of a good conscience, and the quarrell of Christ Iesus? Truely my great yeares and course of life now almost spent in defence of the Christian religion (as I euer desired) doth call me forth, as one so assured of that good laid vp for me in heauen by Christ Iesus (whose battell we are to fight) that I no whit feare any enemies force or future chance: which for all that, I haue as farre as I could, and to the vttermost of my power so prouided for, as that we will not (I hope) be there with ouerwhelmed. Be you therefore of good cheere and comfort (as I knowe you are) and shew your selues valiant and couragious, which resteth wholy in your selues: and as for all the rest, time, and our discretion shall right well prouide I doubt not.* I K L

The valiant men and worthie souldiours, resting vpon the assurance of their aged gouernor, departed euerie man to his charge, full of hope and courage. Now had the Bassa landed his great armie, and sent *Demitrius* the traiterous knight, *Meligalus* his companion, with certaine troupes of horsemen and some foot, to view the ground, where he might best incampe with his armie. *Demetrius* in great pride riding about the citie, was knowne by *Anthonie Damboyse*, the Great Masters brother; by whose leaue, he sallied out with a troupe of gallant horsemen, and skirmished with them: but the Turkes being mo in number, cast about to haue encloased them; which *Anthonie* perceiuing, turned vpon them that were comming behind him, and that with M

such

A ſuch force, that he ſlew or wounded moſt part of them. In this hoat skirmiſh, *Demetrius* hauing his horſe ſlaine vnder him, and himſelfe ouerthrowne, was there troden to death vnder the horſes feet: an end too good for ſo falſe a traitor. *Muratius* a French knight, vnaduiſedly diſpoiling his dead bodie, was by the Turkes ſlaine, and his head preſented vnto the Baſſa in ſtead of *Demetrius*.

The Baſſa approaching the citie, at the firſt comming tooke a great orchard, which the Great Maſter had ſtrongly entrenched, and therein placed certaine companies of ſouldiors, with ſome ſmall peeces of ordinance: which place if it could haue beene kept, might haue fitly ſerued the defendants to haue at their pleaſure ſallied out vpon the enemie. But they which were appointed
B to the keeping thereof, either terrified with the ſight of ſo great an armie, or elſe doubting to be able to hold it againſt ſo great a power, abandoned it by night, and retired into the citie; leauing the great ordinance behind them for haſt. In this place, the Baſſa by the counſell of *George Frapaine* (a Chriſtian fugitiue of the Rhodes, and now maſter of his ordinance) began to plant his batterie, and from thence to batter the tower called Nicholea, or *S. Nicholas* his tower, diſtant from the citie three hundred paces. But againſt this place, *Damboyſe* had ſo aptly mounted two great Baſiliskes, that he made him glad quickly to forſake the ſame: yet finding no other place more conuenient for his purpoſe, ſhortly after he neere vnto the ſame place planted againe his batterie, of far greater force than before. Wherein beſide the ordinance of greateſt charge, he had three hundred ſmaller pieces for batterie: wherewith at the firſt he did ſmall harme, for that this
C *George Frapaine* repenting himſelfe (as it was thought) of his foule treaſon, beſtowed the ſhot to ſmall purpoſe; for which cauſe the Baſſa began to haue him in diſtruſt: which *Frapaine* perceiuing, fled by night againe vnto the Rhodes, and diſcouered vnto the Great Maſter all the ſecrets of the Turks campe. The Turkes continuing the batterie, had ſore ſhaken the aforeſaid tower called *S. Nicholas*, and beaten downe ſome part thereof: which the Chriſtians with great induſtrie, ſpeedily repaired in beſt ſort they could. For all that, the Turks gaue thereunto a fierce aſſault, by the ſpace of ſix houres, forcing themſelues to the vttermoſt to haue taken it: but perceiuing that it preuailed them nothing, they retired, hauing loſt eight hundred of their men, with many others drowned in the ſea, of whom the number was not knowne, and a thouſand others ſore wounded. *Eight hundred Turkes ſlaine.*

D *Meſithes* diſappointed of his former purpoſe, bent his artillerie againſt the wals of the citie and with continuall batterie had made a faire breach. But *Damboyſe* foreſeeing the danger, had with great labour caſt vp ſuch rampires with a countermure before the breach, that the Baſſa durſt not in any caſe aduenture to enter the breach he had made. For performance of this ſo neceſſarie a worke, the captaines themſelues refuſed not to put to their helping hands: by whoſe example, all the reſt of the people which were able to do any thing, being moued, willingly imployed their labour vntill the worke was fully finiſhed.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Cali-Baſſa* the younger (a great courtier) was ſent from *Mahomet*, to ſee with what ſucceſſe the ſiege went forward. Vpon whoſe arriuall, it was giuen out through all the Turkes campe, That *Mahomet* was in perſon himſelfe comming to the ſiege,
E with an hundred thouſand men, and an hundred & fiftie peeces of great ordinance. Theſe news (of purpoſe deuiſed to the terrour of the defendants) being blown out of the campe into the citie, ſtrucke an exceeding great feare into the minds of ſome of the defendants, and ſo diſcouraged the Spaniards, with their nigh neighbours that came from Navar, that they began openly to reaſon in their conuenticles, That it was not poſſible for the citie to be defended againſt ſuch a power; and therfore after an inſolent maner, deſired leaue to be gone: to the great diſcouragement of the reſt. The Great Maſter vnderſtanding of their doings, ſent for theſe mutinous Spaniards: and after he had ſharpely reproued them both of diſorder and cowardiſe, promiſed to ſhip them away forthwith out of the iſle, ſaying, That he doubted not, right well to defend the citie againſt the greateſt power of the Turke, without the helpe of ſuch baſe minded cowards.
F In the mean time he commanded them to ſurceaſe from their mutinous talke, threatning otherwiſe to make them examples to others, what it were ſo much to forget themſelues. But theſe Spaniards ſhortly after, better conſidering of the matter, and what a diſhonor it would be both to themſelues and their nation, if they ſhould ſo diſhonourably be ſent away; repenting themſelues of that they had done, came and craued pardon of the Great Maſter: and to redeeme their former fault, in all ſallies & ſeruices during that ſiege, ſhewed themſelues moſt valiant and

forward

forward men: for all that, the Great Maſter would neuer afterwards truſt them in any ſeruice G
alone. The Baſſa attempting much and preuailing little, thought it would much further his deſignes, if he could by anie meanes take the Great Maſter out of the way, by whoſe carefull pollicie he ſaw all his deuiſes ſtill countermaunded: wherefore to bring this his purpoſe to paſſe, he practiſed by the meanes of one *Ianus* a Dalmatian, to poyſon him. This *Ianus* hauing conceiued this treaſon from the Baſſa, was receiued into the citie of the RHODES, as a Chriſtian fugitiue fled from the Turkes: where hee acquainted himſelfe with one *Pythius* an Epirot, of great familiaritie with *Marius Philelphus* (of late ſecretarie vnto *Damboyſe*, but as then out of fauour and in diſgrace, for that he was partaker with the Spaniards in the late mutinie.) *Ianus* by the meanes of *Pythius*, whom he had now throughly corrupted, ſought after *Philelphus*, who H
Treaſon againſt the great Maſter diſcouered, and the traitours executed. then as he right well knew, liued diſcontented, as a fit inſtrument whereby to worke this treaſon; for that he was a man well acquainted with the cookes and butlers, and other ſeruitours in the Great Maſters houſe, and himſelfe (yet) there verie conuerſant alſo. *Pythius* preſuming of his old acquaintance and famaliaritie with *Philelphus*, and waiting vpon his melancholie humour, began to perſuade him to reuenge the diſgrace he liued in, and with all to ſhew him the meanes how to doe it, by poyſoning of the Great Maſter: which might (as hee ſaid) fall out to his greater good than he was yet aware of. *Philelphus* making ſemblant as if he had not diſliked of the motion, was deſirous to know of him what farther benefit might thereby ariſe vnto him, more than reuenge. To whom *Pythius* forthwith ſhewed the Baſſaes letters to *Ianus*, whereby hee aſſured him, that whatſoeuer he ſhould promiſe vnto any man for the furtherance of the practiſe, he would to the full performe the ſame. I
Philelphus hauing got full vnderſtanding of the treaſon, preſently diſcouered the ſame to *Damboyſe*. By whoſe commandement *Ianus* and *Pythius* were ſtraightwaies apprehended, and being examined confeſſed the treaſon: for which *Ianus* loſt his head, and *Pythius* (as he had well deſerued) was ſhamefully hanged. *Philelphus* for his fidelitie, was pardoned his former errour, and againe receiued into the Great Maſters fauour.

The Baſſa vnderſtanding that the treaſon was diſcouered, and the traitours executed, was much grieued therewith. Neuertheleſſe, he ceaſed not with continuall batterie to ſhake the citie, but eſpecially the tower of *S. Nicholas*, for the aſſailing whereof he made wonderfull preparation. Amongſt other things, he had framed a great bridge, ſtaied with ſtrong ropes and cables, K
ouer a ſhort fret of the ſea, betwixt the place of his batterie and the ſame tower, wheron ſix men might march a breaſt: in which deuiſe he repoſed great hope. But as the Turkes were making faſt this bridge, and had (as they thought) brought the worke to a good perfection; *Gernaiſe Rogers* an Engliſh man of great courage, and verie skilfull in ſea matters, found meanes by night to cut and breake in ſunder all the ropes and cables wherewith the bridge was ſtayed: which now looſe, was by the violenee of the ſea quickly carried away, and the Turkes diſappointed of their purpoſe. For which good ſeruice he was by the Great Maſter honorably rewarded, and of him in publicke audience highly commended.

Yet was the furious batterie by the Baſſa ſtill maintained, and a new bridge framed vpon ſmal boates and lighters, faſt moored with cables and anchors; and diuers peeces of great ordi- L
nance placed in fuſts and gallies. So that the tower was at one time battered both by ſea & land, the defendants aſſailed with ſmall ſhot and arrowes innumerable, and the tower at the ſame inſtant deſperatly ſcaled. But *Damboyſe* had ſo placed his great ordinance, that with the force therof the bridge was broken in ſunder, foure of their great fuſts ſunke, with great ſtore both of men and ordinance: the defendants alſo in the tower, with ſhot, timber, ſtones, and other ſuch like things prouided for that purpoſe, grieuouſly ouerwhelmed the Turks that were ſcaling the wals and beat them downe with great ſlaughter. This hoat aſſault was deſperatly maintained by the Turks, from three a clocke in the morning vntill ten: when the Baſſa ſeeing no hope to preuaile, gaue ouer the aſſault, hauing therein loſt aboue 2500 men; whoſe dead bodies ſhortly af-
Two thouſand fiue hundred Turkes ſlaine in the aſſault. ter driuen on ſhoare, were ſpoiled by the Chriſtians. The ſame night two mercinarie ſouldiors M
of CRETE, going about to haue fled vnto the enemie, were apprehended and put to death. And *George Frapaine*, who in the beginning of the ſiege fled from the Turks, now againe vehemently ſuſpected of treaſon, was executed alſo.

Thus neither force nor treaſon preuailing, the Baſſa becauſe he would leaue nothing vnproued that might better his cauſe, ſent certaine meſſengers vnto the Great Maſter, offering vnto him

in

A in the name of the Turkiſh emperour, great rewards, with many honourable preferments, if he would yeeld vp the citie; which he could not (as they would haue perſuaded him) long hold againſt ſo mightie an enemie: wiſhing him now in his declining eſtate not to refuſe ſuch honorable and princely offers, for feare he were afterwards conſtrained to accept of farre worſe, or elſe through his deſperate wilfulneſſe plunge himſelfe and his people into ſuch extreame perill, as ſhould be impoſſible for him or them to find any way out of. Whereunto the great Maſter in briefe anſwered: *That he would not willingly in his ſure eſtate vſe the counſell of his enemie: neither in his greateſt diſtreſſe refuſe cheerefully to yeeld his life vnto Almightie God, to whom he did owe it; and that with farre better will than to yeeld vp the citie vpon any conditions, beare they neuer ſo faire a* B *ſhew of honour or profit.* The meſſengers perceiuing his conſtant reſolution, rather to die than to yeeld his citie, began (according to inſtructions before giuen them by the Baſſa) to temper with him another way, and to perſuade him to yeeld vnto the mightie emperour ſome ſmall yearely tribute or other homage, as an acknowledgement of his greatneſſe, and ſo to liue as his friend in peace. But the Great Maſter knowing by the wofull example of others, that in that ſmall requeſt lay included the beginning of the Turkiſh thraldome and ſlauerie: vtterly refuſed to pay him the leaſt tribute, or to do him the leaſt homage that could be deuiſed. With which anſwere the meſſengers returned, hauing obtained nothing of that they were ſent for.

The reſolute anſwere of the great Maſter.

The reſolute anſwere of the great Maſter reported by the aforeſaid meſſengers vnto the Baſſa troubled him exceedingly: for though he had ſmall hope by force to win the citie, yet he was C alwaies in hope vntill now, at his pleaſure to forſake the ſiege with ſome ſuch reaſonable compoſition as might ſtand with his honour. But ſith nothing remained now, but by plaine force to conſtraine his enemies; he reſolued for the ſafegard of his honour, in that extremitie to vſe that extreame remedie. Wherfore beſide the great peeces of batterie he had alreadie planted againſt the wals, he mounted diuerſe ſmaller pieces much higher, thereby the more to annoie the defendants, by beating downe of their churches and high built houſes. His ordinance thus placed, he battered the citie day and night for the ſpace of foure daies together without intermiſſion: during which time, the Chriſtians out of the citie ſpared not liberally to beſtow their ſhot amongſt their enemies alſo: ſo that the aire ſeemed to grow thicke, & the light of the day to be darkned with the ſmoke of the great ordinance; and the great ſhot came ſo thicke into the citie, that the D fearefull women and children were glad to ſhroud themſelues from the danger therof, in cellars and caues vnder ground. So long continued this great batterie, that at length the ſtrength of the wal gaue place to the furie of the cannon, and a faire breach was laid open for the enemie to enter: which was no ſooner made, but that with the firſt ſhew thereof the Turks gaue thereunto a deſperat aſſault; and preuailing by reaſon of their multitude, had vpon the ſuddaine recouered the top of the wals, & there ſet vp ſome of their enſignes: but the Chriſtians ſpeedily comming in on euerie ſide to the defence of the breach, they were againe quickely repulſed and beaten down into the ditches, out of which moſt of them neuer riſe more. At which time the Turkes in another place with their ſcaling ladders had gained the top of the wals, and there aduanced their enſignes alſo, and were now fiue hundred of them entred the citie, and come into the ſtreet E called the Iew ſtreet: where they were incountred by the Great Maſter and his followers, and all ſlaine that were alreadie entred; and their enſignes that ſtood vpon the wals throwne downe. The reſt yet ſcaling the wals, and ignorant of the fortune of their fellowes, were likewiſe beaten from the wals, and with wonderfull ſlaughter rejected. So that the Baſſa not able longer to endure the ſlaughter of his men, being in both places repulſed, cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, and left the aſſault; wherein he had loſt of his moſt forward men about fiue thouſand, with ſmall loſſe of the Chriſtians. In this aſſault the Great Maſter himſelfe receiued fiue wounds, whereof one vnder his right pap was thought to haue bin deadly: which yet afterward was verie wel cured with the reſt.

A faire breach made by force of the Turkes batterie.

After that the Baſſa had by the ſpace of three months to ſmal purpoſe ſpent all his forces and F deuiſes vpon the citie, he began to doubt whether it were better for him to raiſe his ſiege and depart, or to tarrie and expect ſome better fortune, which in all his former actions had ſeemed almoſt to haue waited vpon him: to forſake the ſiege, was diſhonorable; and to continue it without hope, preſented no leſſe danger. Beſides that, in the former aſſaults he had alreadie loſt nine thouſand of his beſt ſouldiours, and all the reſt of his armie was filled with heauineſſe and deſpaire, to heare the wofull ſighing and groning of their fellowes, of whom fifteene thouſand lay

diſperſed

disperſed in the campe ſore wounded, and readie many of them to giue vp the ghoſt: and alſo G
but euen a little before two great ſhips ſent from *Ferdinand* king of NAPLES with men and munition, were in deſpight of all the Turks gallies ſafely arriued at the RHODES, to the great ioy and encouragement of the beſieged, and no leſſe diſcontentment of the Turks. Whileſt the Baſſa was thus deliberating what courſe to take, a rumor was raiſed in the campe, That the Chriſtian princes were comming with great power to relieue the town: with which news the whole armie was exceedingly troubled; whereupon he raiſed his ſiege. Some others ſay that *Mahomet* hearing of the euill ſucceſſe of his armie in the iſland of the RHODES, with the difficultie of the ſiege, and now readie to go in perſon himſelfe againſt the Sultan of ÆGYPT, ſent for the Baſſa, and that ſo the ſiege was raiſed. Howſoeuer it was, the Baſſa before his departure cauſed H
The Baſſa raiſeth his ſiege. all the vines and trees growing in that part of the iſland to be cut down and ſpoiled: and ſo after he had poured forth his furie vpon the ſenceleſſe creatures, which he could not according to his deſire exerciſe vpon the people, againe embarked his armie, and with ſhame departed, the ſeuenteenth of Auguſt.

At the ſame time that the RHODES was thus beſieged, *Mahomet* ſent his old and moſt expert captaine *Achmetes Baſſa*, with a great fleet and a ſtrong armie to make an entrance into ITALIE (for no kingdome was ſo ſtrong, which the ambitious tyrant in the pride of his heart thought not he might now commaund) and hauing long before conquered CONSTANTINOPLE, otherwiſe called New ROME, was ſtill dreaming I wot not what of the conqueſt of Old ROME alſo. The miſchieuous Baſſa according to his great maſters deſigns, embarked his armie at VALLONA I
Achmetes landeth his armie in Apulia neere to Otranto, and ſpoileth the countrie. (otherwiſe called AVLONA) a ſea towne in the borders of MACEDONIA; and from thence paſſing directly ouer that narrow ſea, which is in breadth about ſixtie miles, landed his men in that rich and fertile part of ITALIE, called in ancient time APVLIA (now PVGLIA) neere vnto the old and famous citie of HYDRVNTVM, at this day called OTRANTO: where as ſoone as this warlike Baſſa had landed his forces, he forraged all that rich countrie alongſt the ſea coaſt and tooke ſuch infinit ſpoile as might well haue ſatisfied the greedie deſire both of himſelfe and of his hungrie ſouldiours: all which rich bootie he cauſed to be conueyed vnto his gallies. So when he had at his pleaſure ranged vp and down the countrie by the ſpace of foureteene daies, and ſaw that none made head againſt him, he laid ſiege to OTRANTO, the chiefe citie of that countrie, and as it were the key of that part of ITALIE: and hauing with ſuch ordinance as he K
Otranto taken by the Turkes. tooke out of his gallies made a breach, eaſily entred the ſame, & ſo without any great loſſe tooke the citie. A thing not greatly to be maruelled at, for as much as it was but weakly manned, and more weakely defended, by men altogether liuing in ſecuritie in the middeſt of their wealth and pleaſure. The Archbiſhop, with *Zurlo* the gouernor, and the chiefe men of the citie, for ſafegard of their liues fled into the great cathedrall church, as into a ſanctuarie; where they were altogether moſt miſerably ſlain. The reſt of the citizens, whoſe hard fortune it was to eſcape the ſword (as people reſerued to more miſerie) were afterward ſhipped ouer into GRECIA, & there ſold for ſlaues. The landing of the Turkes in APVLIA, with the taking of OTRANTO, brought a generall feare vpon all ITALIE, inſomuch that *Sixtus Quartus*, then the great Biſhop of ROME, forgetting all things ſaue himſelfe, was about to haue forſaken the citie for feare. Now after the L
Turkes had at their pleaſure ranſackt OTRANTO, *Achmetes* cauſed the ſame to be ſtrongly fortified (as the ſure footing of the Turkes in ITALIE) and victualled for eighteene monethes, and there leauing eight thouſand of his beſt ſouldiors in garriſon, returned himſelfe with the reſt to VALLONA, and ſo by land to CONSTANTINOPLE to know his Great Maſters further pleaſure; but purpoſing with himſelfe, with the firſt of the next Spring to haue returned with greater forces againe to ITALIE for the proſecuting of his former victorie. Which if he had done, it was greatly to haue been feared, that all that goodly countrey, ſometime miſtreſſe of the world, but then and yet alſo rent in ſunder by the diſcord and ambition of the Chriſtian princes, had in ſhort time become a prey vnto the barbarous Turke for euer.

But whileſt the great Baſſa (in his life time the great ſcourge of Chriſtendome) thus prouidly M
plotteth the ruine and deſtruction of faire ITALIE, God in whoſe hands the hearts of kings are, put an hooke in the great tyrants noſe, and led him quite another way. For at the ſame time, the Caramanian king, aided by the Perſian and the Sultan of ÆGIPT, had in a great battaile ouerthrowne *Baiazet* (*Mahomets* eldeſt ſonne then liuing) and ſlaine moſt part of his armie: in reuenge whereof, *Mahomet* with great expedition raiſed a great and puiſſant armie, and taking

Achmetes

A *Achmetes* with him as his cheefe man of war, reiecting the wars of ITALIE vnto a more conuenient time, passed ouer into ASIA: where vpon the way, about a daies iourney short of NICOMEDIA, a citie of BYTHINIA, at a place called GEIVISEN, he fell sick; and there for the space of three daies grieuously tormented with an extreame paine in his bellie, which some supposed to be the collike, died; but being indeed (as most men thought) poysoned: when he had liued about 52 yeares, and thereof raigned 31, in the yeare of our Lord 1481. His bodie was afterwards magnificently buried in a chappell neere vnto the great Mahometane temple, which he himselfe first built at CONSTANTINOPLE. 1481

Mahomet dieth at Geuisen in Bythinia, not without suspition of poyson. He is buried at Constantinople.

The description of Mahomet.

The death of this mightie man (who liuing troubled a great part of the world) was not much
B more lamented by those that were neerest vnto him (who euer liuing in feare of his crueltie, hated him deadly) than of his enemies, who euer in doubt of his greatnesse, were glad to heare of his end. He was of stature but low, and nothing answerable to the height of his mind, square set, and strong limmed; not inferiour in strength (when he was yong) vnto any in his fathers court, but to *Scanderbeg* onely; his complexion was Tartarlik, sallow and melancholie, as were most of his ancestours the *Othoman* kings; his looke and countenance sterne, with his eies piercing, hollow and little sunk as it were in his head, and his nose so high and crooked that it almost touched his vpper lip. To be breefe, his countenance was altogether such, as if nature had with most cunning hand therein depainted and most curiously set forth to view the inward disposition and qualities of his mind: which were on both parts notable. He was of a very sharpe and apprehensiue wit, learned as amongst that nation, especially in Astronomie, & could speak the Greek,
C Latine, Arabicke, Chaldey, and Persian tongues. Hee delighted much in reading of histories, and the liues of worthie men, especially the liues of *Alexander* the Great, & of *Iulius Cæsar*, whom he proposed to himselfe as examples to follow. He was of an exceeding courage, and thereto very fortunate: a seuere punisher of iniustice, in them especially to whom he had committed the administration of iustice. Men that excelled in any qualitie, he greatly fauoured and honourably entertained: as he did *Gentill Bellin*, a painter of VENICE, whom he purposely caused to come from thence to CONNSTANTINOPLE, to draw the liuery counterfeit of himselfe, for which he most bountifully rewarded him. He so seuerely punished theft, as that in his time all the waies were safe, and a theefe scarcely to be heard of. But these good parts were in him obscured with
D most horrible and notorious vices: for why, he was altogether irreligious, and of all others most perfidious, ambitious aboue measure, and in nothing more delighted than in blood: insomuch, that it is probably gathered, that hee was in his time the death of eight hundred thousand men: craft couetousnesse, & dissimulation were in him accounted for tollerable faults, in comparison of his greater vices. In his loue was no assurance, and his least displeasure was death: so that he liued feared of all men, and died lamented of none. He had issue three sonnes, *Mustapha* (dead before him as is before declared) *Baiazet*, and *Gemes*, or rather *Zemes*, of some called *Zizimus*, competitor of the empire with his elder brother: whom he exceedingly troubled in the beginning of his raigne, so that he could not well attend any other thing but him: which oportunitie (by God himselfe no doubt offered for the safegard of ITALIE) *Alphonsus* duke of CALABRIA,
E (king *Ferdinand* his eldest son) taking hold vpon, with all the power he could make in ITALIE, besieged the Turks in OTRANTO: with whom he had many sharp skirmishes, wherein he lost diuers of his great captaines and commanders; as the countie *Iulio de Aquauiua*, *Loys de Capua*, and the countie *Iulio de Pisa*, with others, and was still by the strong garrison of the Turks put to the worse: vntill such time, as being strengthened with aid out of SPAINE and PORTINGALE, but especially with certaine companies of most valiant souldiers sent from *Matthias Coruinus* out of HVNGARIE (whose forces the Turks most feared) he began to cut them short, and straitly besieged the citie both by sea land: vntill at length the besieged Turkes hearing of the death of their great emperour, and now hardly pressed with the dangers of a strait siege, no longer expecting the returne of *Achmetes* their Generall (then readie to haue come to their rescue with
F fiue and twentie thousand soldiors) yeelded vp the citie vnto the duke vpon composition before made, That they might with bag and baggage in safetie depart thence: which they did, after they had to the great terror of all ITALIE holden that strong citie by the space of a yeare. And so was that rich countrey rather by the mercie of God (in taking away the great tyrant) preserued, than by the strength or policie of the inhabitants; which was then in great danger to

The sonnes of Mahomet, Mustapha, Baiazet and Zemes.

Otranto yeelded vp by the Turkes vpon composition.

haue for euer giuen place vnto the power of the great tyrant, had he longer liued; yea and after his death to the power of *Baiazet* his ſonne, had he not by domeſticall troubles beene enforced to turne himſelfe another way, and as it were to neglect in time to releeue his diſtreſſed garriſon in OTRANTO, as ſhall hereafter be declared.

FINIS.

Chriſtian Princes of the ſame time with Mahomet the Great.	*Emperours*	*Of the Eaſt*	*Conſtantinus Palæologus, laſt Chriſtian Emperour of Conſtantinople.*	1444. 8.
		Of the Weſt	*Fredericke the third, Archduke of Auſtria.*	1440. 54.
	Kings	*Of England*	*Henrie the ſixt.*	1422. 39.
			Edward the fourth.	1460. 22.
		Of France	*Charles the ſeuenth.*	1423. 38.
			Lewis the eleuenth.	1461. 22.
		Of Scotland	*Iames the ſecond.*	1437. 24.
			Iames the third.	1460. 29.
	Biſhops of Rome		*Nicholas the V.*	1437. 8.
			Calixtus the III.	1455. 3.
			Pius the II.	1458. 6.
			Paulus the II.	1464. 7.
			Xyſtus the IIII.	1471. 13.

Phil. Lonicer. Ture. Hiſt. li. 1.

Arma manu quatiunt fratres hoſtilia, regnum,
Hinc Baiazethes, Zizimus inde petit.
Baizethes rerum potitur, Rhodon, inde Quiritum,
Zizimus extrema mœnia ſorte petit.
Suſtinet & bello, varias & pace, procellas,
Baizethes, fœlix & miſer, inter opes.
Iam ſenio tremulus, fert bella domeſtica, regno,
Agnato eiectus, dira venena bibit.

Like earth-borne brethren, *Baiazet* and *Zizimus* in armes,
Seeke for the Turkiſh empire great, the one by th' others harmes.
Vntill that *Baiazet* preuail'd, and *Zizimus* was faine
To flie to RHODES, from thence to ROME, whereas he caught his baine.
Great ſtormes endured *Baiazet*, in peace and bloudie broiles:
A man both happie and accurſt, amongſt his richeſt ſpoiles.
But now forworne with trembling age, and ciuill diſcord new,
Thruſt from his empire by his ſonne, died poiſoned by a Iew.

THE LIFE OF BAIAZET, SECOND OF THAT NAME, AND SECOND EMPEROR OF THE TVRKES.

UPon the death of *Mahomet* the late Emperour, great troubles began to ariſe about the ſucceſſion in the Turkiſh empire; ſome of the Baſſaes and great captaines, ſeeking to place *Baiazet* the eldeſt ſonne of *Mahomet* in the empire; and others with no leſſe deuotion labouring to preferre *Zemes*, or *Gemes*, otherwiſe called *Zizimus*, *Baiazet* his younger brother. By occaſion whereof, there aroſe two great and mightie factions, which in few dayes grew to ſuch heat, that many great tumults and hot skirmiſhes were made in diuers places of the imperiall citie, betwixt the fauourites of both factions, and great ſlaughter committed. In theſe broiles, the prowd Ianizaries for an old grudge ſlew *Mahomethes*, one of the foure great Baſſaes, a man by whoſe graue counſell moſt of the waightie affaires of the Turkiſh empire had beene managed during the raigne of the late emperour: And proceeding farther in their accuſtomed inſolencie, ſpoiled all the Chriſtians and Iewes which dwelt amongſt them, of all their wealth and ſubſtance; at which time the rich merchants and citizens of CONSTANTINOPLE which were naturall Turkes themſelues, eſcaped not their rauening hands, but became vnto them a prey and ſpoile alſo. The other three Baſſaes of the court, *Iſaack*, *Meſithes*, and *Achmetes* lately returned from the winning of HYDRVNTVM in ITALIE, although they ſecretly maligned and enuied one at the greatneſſe of an other; yet to appeaſe theſe ſo dangerous troubles, and to aſſure their owne eſtates, ioyned hands togither, and by their great authoritie and multitude of followers and fauourites, found meanes that *Corcutus* (one of the yonger ſonnes of *Baiazet*, a yong prince of eighteene yeares old) was as it were by generall conſent of the nobilitie and ſouldiers ſaluted emperour, and with great triumph and ſolemnitie placed in the imperiall ſeat. In whoſe name, the aforeſaid Baſſaes at their pleaſure diſpoſed of all things, little or nothing regarding either *Baiazet* or *Zemes*, then both abſent, the one at AMASIA, and the other at ICONIVM in LYCAONIA: for the iealous Turkiſh kings, neuer ſuffer their ſonnes to liue in court neere vnto them, after they be growne to yeares of diſcretion; but ſend them to gouerne their prouinces farre off: where they are alſo vnder the command of the emperours lieutenants generall in ASIA or EVROPE, and may not depart from their charge without great danger, not ſo much as to viſit their father without expreſſe leaue and commandement. So iealous are thoſe tyrants, yea euen of their owne ſonnes.

Diſſention amõgſt the Turks about the ſucceſſion.

Baiazet and *Zemes* hearing of the death of his father, and of the troubles in the imperiall citie, haſted thitherward with all ſpeed, where *Baiazet* being the neerer, firſt arriued: but finding the empire already poſſeſſed by *Corcutus* his yonger ſonne, and himſelfe excluded; he in the griefe of his heart, poured forth moſt grieuous complaints before God and man, calling heauen and earth to witneſſe of the great wrong and iniury done vnto him by the prowd Baſſaes. And what by teares and humble obteſtations, what by great gifts and greater promiſes, but moſt of all by the earneſt labour & ſolicitation of *Cherſeogles* the Viceroy of GRÆCIA, and the Aga or captaine of the Ianizaries, both his ſons in law, preuailed ſo much with the great Baſſaes and ſoldiers of the court, that *Corcutus* being of a mild and curteous diſpoſition, ouercome by their entrea-

Baiazet cõmeth to Conſtantinople.

tie and the reuerence of his father, reſigned vnto him the imperiall gouernment, which he preſently tooke vpon him with the generall good liking of the people, and made *Corcutus* gouernour of LYCIA, CARIA, and IONIA, with the pleaſant and rich countries thereabouts; allowing him a great yearly penſion for the better maintenance of his eſtate, with promiſe alſo of the empire after his deceaſe: and ſo ſent him away to his charge, where he moſt pleaſantly liued during the raigne of his father *Baiazet*; giuing himſelfe wholy to the ſtudie of Philoſophie, which made that he was afterwards leſſe fauoured of the Ianizaries and other men of warre. G

Zemes riſeth againſt his brother Baiazet.

Zemes thus preuented by his elder brother, and vnderſtanding by his friends how all things ſtood at CONSTANTINOPLE, and that *Baiazet* was already poſſeſſed of the empire: returning with great ſpeed, raiſed a puiſſant armie in the countries which were vnder his command; and marching through the heart of ASIA the leſſe, by the way as he went, tooke into his poſſeſſion ſuch cities and ſtrong places as he thought beſt: and ſo entring into BYTHINIA, tooke the great citie of PRVSA, the ancient ſeat of the *Othoman* kings. Purpoſing in himſelfe, that as *Baiazet* had ſhut him out of EVROPE, ſo he would alſo in requitall thereof exclude him out of that part of the Turkiſh empire which is beyond HELLESPONTVS in ASIA, and to make himſelfe lord thereof. Wherein fortune at the firſt ſeemed vnto him moſt fauourable, all the people whereſoeuer he came yeelding vnto him obedience as vnto their prince and ſoueraigne: ſo that in ſhort time, he ſeemed both vnto himſelfe and to others in ſtrong poſſeſſion of that part of the empire. H

Baiazet goeth againſt Zemes.

Of theſe his proceedings *Baiazet* hauing intelligence, and perceiuing the greater part of his empire now in danger to be loſt; and doubting farther that *Zemes* his ambitious mind would hardly reſt therewith long contented: for remedie of ſo great a miſchiefe, leuied a ſtrong and puiſſant armie, wherewith he paſſed ouer into ASIA, and came to NEAPOLIS, a citie of ANATOLIA, neere whereunto *Zemes* lay with his armie ſtrongly encamped. As *Baiazet* was vpon the way againſt his brother, *Achmetes* the great Baſſa (in the confeſſion of all men the beſt man of warre, and moſt expert captaine amongſt the Turkes, and of all others moſt entirely beloued of the Ianizaries) came, & vnarmed, preſented himſelfe vpon his knees before *Baiazet*, his ſword hanging at his ſaddle bow: to the great admiration of many, who could not but wonder to ſee ſo worthie a chiefetaine of ſo great place in time of ſeruice, without any apparent cauſe, in ſuch humble manner to appeare before his ſoueraigne, as if he had had nothing to do with armes. It chanced many yeares before in the mortall warres betwixt *Mahomet* the late and great emperor of the Turkes, and *Aſſymbeius Vſun-Caſſanes* the king of PERSIA, that *Baiazet* hauing the leading of the right wing of his fathers armie, had not martialled it in ſo good order as was to *Mahomet* his liking: for which cauſe he commanded this *Achmetes* to goe and ſet that part of the battell in better order. Which his ſoueraignes command whiles he moſt skilfully performed, *Baiazet* taking it in euill part, as tending to his owne diſgrace, in great choller threatened the Baſſa to find a time when he would be reuenged vpon him: But he being a man of great ſpirit, and one that durſt both do & ſay much, perceiuing his meaning, bid him do what pleaſed him; and laying his hand vpon his ſword, ſolemnly vowed, That whenſoeuer he came to command as emperour, he would neuer weare ſword in field: the remembrance whereof was the cauſe that he then came in manner aforeſaid, ready to ſerue if he were thereto commanded, or otherwiſe to endure what ſo his princes pleaſure was. *Baiazet* perceiuing, that the vnkindneſſe ſo long before conceiued, was not yet diſgeſted, in token of grace ſtretched out to him his ſcepter, & taking him vp, commanded him to girt his ſword vnto his ſide, and not to remember that which he had long before both forgiuen and forgotten. And knowing right well that he was a moſt valiant and expert captaine; made him Generall of his armie, to the great contentment of the Ianizaries and the reſt of the armie: who ſo ſoone as they ſaw him, gaue out diuers great ſhouts for joy, as if victorie had moſt aſſuredly attended vpon him. *Achmetes* taking vpon him the charge, came and encamped ſo neere as he could to *Zemes*, and ſo lay by the ſpace of ten daies: during which time, many ſharpe skirmiſhes were made with diuers fortune; ſometime the one ſide preuailing, and ſometime the other. At length the matter was brought to a generall battell: wherein after a long and cruell fight, and great ſlaughter on both ſides, the fortune of *Baiazet*, conducted by the policie of *Achmetes*, preuailed againſt *Zemes*. Who ſeeing his army ouerthrowne, betooke himſelfe to flight, and came to ICONIVM: in which flight, many of *Zemes* his followers were taken priſoners, whom *Baiazet* would haue pardoned and enlarged, but that by the perſua- I K L M

Achmetes made Generall of Baiazet his armie.

ſion

A sion of *Achmetes* he changed his mind, and to the terrour of others suffered them all to be put to the sword.

Zemes doubting after this ouerthrow to fall into his brothers hands, and finding no means to make head againe: when he had stayed three daies at ICONIVM, caused his treasure, plate, jewels, and other things of great valour and light carriage to be trussed vp, and taking with him his mother and his two yong children, a sonne and a daughter, accompanied with a small retinue, fled into SYRIA, then part of the dominion of *Caytbeius*, commonly called the great Sultan of ÆGYPT and SYRIA. It was not long after the departure of *Zemes* from ICONIVM, but that *Baiazet* came thither with his armie, ta haue surprised him: but vnderstanding of his flight, *Zemes flieth into Syria.*

B he tooke order for the peaceable gouernment of that part of his empire. And so hauing suppressed that dangerous rebellion, and againe reduced that troubled part of his empire to his obeisance, returned with victorie to CONSTANTINOPLE.

The distressed prince *Zemes* trauelling through SYRIA, came at length to HIERVSALEM: 1482
where he stayed a good space, deuoutly visiting the monuments of that most auncient and famous citie. From thence he trauelled into ÆGYPT; where at his first entrance into the countrey, he was met by diuers of the greatest nobilitie of that kingdome, sent from the great Sultan, by whom he was honourably conducted to CAIRE, and there presented to *Caytbeius*, of whom he was graciously welcommed: vnto whom after due reuerence done, he declared the cause of his comming as followeth:

C

Zemes his speech vnto Caytbeius, Sultan of Ægypt.

If it were not to me certainely knowne (most victorious) that you are not ignorant either who I am, or from whence descended, or with what iniurie enforced, after long and painfull trauell I am here arriued; it would much concerne me to vse another manner of beginning of my speech, and with greater protestation of words to seeke your gracious fauour. But for as much as all these things are vnto your most royall Maiestie sufficiently knowne, as I doe well perceiue in this, that your infinite clemencie hath entertained me with farre greater kindnesse, than I in such my aduerse fortune durst wish for, much lesse request: now nothing remaineth for me to say, more than iustly to complaine vnto your inuincible Maiestie of the wrong and iniurie done vnto me by Baiazet, *whom I may more iustly tearme my cruell enemie than kind brother. For he not contented to haue taken vnto himselfe my fathers em-*

D *pire by great tumult and slaughter, hath with all hostilitie and force of armes persecuted me his brother, excluded out of the imperiall citie, and then liuing in* BYTHINIA, *troublesome neither to him nor any of his people, and neuer rested vntill he had chased me out of the bounds of my fathers empire. Neither hath the iealous desire of soueraignetie (whereof my father whilest he liued, had him alwaies in distrust) so much mooued him vnto this so cruell a fact, as a certaine vnnaturall crueltie towards all his kindred in generall, and mortall hatred against me his brother in particular: for he which is already possessed of the empire, and doth with all hostilitie persecute a priuat person, subiect and exposed to his iniurie, that man thirsteth not after soueraignety, but after blood; neither desireth he to conquer, but to kill. And whereas after my fathers death great troubles arise in* CONSTANTINOPLE, *and many bloodie skirmishes were fought betwixt the fauorits of both of vs, it cannot with any*

E *truth be laid to my charge, as done by my aduise or counsell, I being at the same time so far from thence. Neither am I iustly to be blamed, if that after my fathers departure I put my selfe vpon the way towards* CONSTANTINOPLE, *especially being sent for thither by many my good friends, men of great marke and qualitie: but his fortune preuailing, I gaue place, and least my comming to the imperiall citie might haue been the occasion of new troubles, I returned aside into* BYTHINIA, *and so to* PRVSA, *with purpose there to haue rested in quiet, if my brother would haue giuen me leaue. But so farre was he from that, to suffer me there to rest, as that I was by him most cruelly assailed as an open enemie: and had I not by speedie flight withdrawne my selfe from the imminent danger, and departed quite out of my fathers kingdome, I must haue yeelded my selfe, my blood, and life, as a sacrifice into his cruell hands. Neither is he to me so mortall an enemie, or thirsteth after my life so much for feare, as for ve-*

F *ry hatred and mallice: for what is there in me to feare? Verely nothing:* CONSTANTINOPLE *is his, the fauour of the great cheefetaines and men of warre is his, the treasure and regall riches are all his; wherefore he hateth his brother, but feareth him not. He will sway all things alone, he will haue all that belongeth to the* Othoman *familie alone, and he, yea none but he, must liue alone.* Xerxes *was a mightie king, and yet in that great and large kingdome he not onely preserued his brethren in safetie, but had them also in great honour and estimation. What did* Alexander *the Great? Who not*

onely

onely tooke pleasure in his brother, but had him also as a companion of his most glorious expedition: and G
manie other famous Kings of forreine Nations, and of our owne familie, haue ruled both more safely, and better strengthened with the counsell and aide of their most louing brethren, rather than with others. But Baiazet is of a farre other minde, reputing violence and haughtinesse of heart to be his greatest and surest defence: herein his fierce nature delighteth, more than in the lawfull course of nature, iustice, and equitie; hee had rather haue his brother his enemie than his friend, and to driue him into exile than to make him partaker of his counsels. But I beseech thee most puissant Monarch, the faithfull keeper and maintayner of our Law and Religion, by the sacred reliques of our great Prophet Mahomet, which thou hast at HIERVSALEM and MECHA, suffer me not, a kings sonne, to liue in banishment and exile, poore and miserable, a scorne of his brothers crueltie, farre from home, farre from his countrie and kingdome: but regarding the law of the great Prophet, lift vp the afflicted and H
oppressed, and by the great authoritie which you haue, bridle domesticall wrong; or if that will not take place, reuenge it with thy sword, and suffer not our empire, with so great trauell founded, by the crueltie or follie of one wilfull man to be ouerthrowne: which should be no more grieuous and lamentable to vs, than dangerous to your most high estate, and all other kings and princes of our religion. For you of your selfe vnderstand right well, what deadly enemies the Christian princes are vnto the Turkes: and doe you thinke, that if any great warre (which I wish not) should arise of this our discord, that they would long rest in quiet, and as idle beholders stand looking on vntill it were of it selfe appeased? Or rather, hauing such an opportunitie presented, would not with might and maine suddainely inuade our kingdome, before shaken with ciuile warres, and seeke the vtter ruine and destruction of the same? Which their desire, if that hatefull people could bring to passe (which thing Mahomet turne vpon I
themselues) my minde abhorreth to thinke how far that mischiefe would run: for the Othoman familie once rooted out, there is none of our religion, your Maiestie onely excepted, which is able to withstand their power: wherefore you must then stand for your selfe, and all the rest, you alone must withstand the force of the Christians, you must maintaine that warre with much losse, and greater charge, and most vncertaine successe. Wherefore inuincible Monarch, I most humblie beseech thee, that pittying our estate, whiles the matter is yet whole, and remedie is yet to be had, to deale with Baiazet by your embassadors, That though hee will not receiue me his brother as partener of the empire, yet at least to admit me into some small part of my fathers kingdome: let him raigne and rule, let all things bee at his commaund; let it bee lawfull for mee poore man, but to liue in rest and quiet somewhere, possessing K
but so much as may suffice mee honestly to lead a priuate life. Which thing if hee shall refuse to grant, although hee neither feare the lawes of God or man: yet as I haue at HIERVSALEM, so will I also shortly at MECHA (if by your leaue I may) complaine vnto the great Prophet of the iniuries done vnto mee by my cruell and vnnaturall brother; and afterwards make proofe of your compassion towards mee, all which I hope shall much auaile. But if (which I would not) I shall proue all these things in vaine, sith desperation enforceth men to all extremeties, I will go with fire, sword, and slaughter, by secret and open force, by right and wrong; and hated, will vex my hatefull brother by all manner of mischiefe, by all manner of reuenge. Neither will I make an ende of confounding of all, vntill I bee either receiued into part of the empire, or else together with my life leaue those desperate and lost things for him alone to enioie. For I deeme it much better, quickely to die, than with disgrace and infamie to protract a lingering L
loathed life.

The great Sultan in courteous manner comforted the distressed prince, willing him to be of good cheere, and patiently to beare his present hap: for as much as it became a man born in so high fortune, not to be discouraged with any mischance, or dismaied if things fell out otherwise than hee looked for: commending him withall, for that hee saw in him no lesse courage than might well haue becommed his better estate: and willing him to liue still in hope, promised to doe what in him lay, to reconcile him vnto his brother, and to persuade him that hee might be receiued into some part of the kingdome. And to that purpose shortly after dispatched away an honourable embassage to *Baiazet*. *Zemes* in the meane while, by the same Sultans leaue, vpon a M
superstitious deuotion trauelled into ARABIA, to visit the temple of *Mahomet* at MECHA, and his sepulchre at MEDINA. Vpon his returne to CAIRE, the embassadours before sent, returned also, but not hauing obtained any thing they desired: for *Baiazet* would not giue eare to any agreement, but seemed altogether to contemne and despise his brother. Wherefore *Zemes* more vpon stomacke and desire of reuenge, than for any hope he had of the empire, determined with himselfe

Caytheius the Ægiptian Sultan sendeth embassadors to Baiazet.

A himselfe to make open warre vpon him: reposing some good hope in his secret friends, and in the reuolt of some of the great captaines, who discontented with the gouernment of *Baiazet*, secretly wished for his returne.

Whilest he was thus plotting these waightie matters, a messenger with letters came fitly from the King of CARAMANIA, offering with all the power he could make, to ioyne with him, if he would take vp armes against his brother. This poore titular King then liued in ARMENIA, and being able by his friends to make some good force, was in hope by ioyning with *Zemes* to recouer some part of the Caramanian kingdome, from whence his father was not many yeeres before driuen by the force of the late Turkish Emperour *Mahomet* the Great, *Baiazet* his father. 1483 *The king of Caramania solliciteth Zemes to take vp armes against Baiazet.*

B It is hard to say, whether of these distressed and exiled Princes gaue the greater encouragement to the other, to take this desperate warre in hand, being both together farre vnable by all the friends they could make to encounter with the great power of *Baiazet*. But what is so dangerous or desperate which aspiring minds will not attempt, in hope of a kingdome? whose brightnesse so dazeleth their eyes, that they can see nothing but it.

Hereupon *Zemes* hauing receiued great gifts of the Ægyptian Sultan, with promise of aid, departed from CAIRE (the Sultan earnestly perswading him to the contrary) and as it was before appointed, met with the Caramanian King vpon the borders of ASIA the lesser: where they concluded to ioyne together such forces as they had, and to inuade *Baiazet*. Which they accordingly did: for raising all the power they could, they entered into CILICIA, now called

C CARAMANNIA; and ioyning their armies together, encamped betweene ICONIVM and LARENDA. Neither did *Baiazet* in time of so great a danger sit still, not so much fearing his brothers power, as the reuolting of his captaines and souldiers; whom he knew either to loue, or at least not to hate the young Prince his brother. Wherefore he raised a great armie, and sent *Achmetes* the great man of warre before with the one part thereof, himselfe following after with a farre greater strength: for at that time he had vnder his ensignes two hundred thousand men.

As he was marching with this great armie, a rumor was raised in the campe, That some of his chiefe captaines had conspired to betray him into the hands of his brother, and that many of the souldiers secretly fauouring *Zemes*, would vpon the ioyning of the battell forsake him, and take part with his brother. Which report so troubled *Baiazet*, that he stood in doubt what to doe, or

D whom to trust: but knowing that nothing winneth the heart of the common souldier more than the Generals bountie, he forthwith caused a wonderfull masse of money to be diuided amongst the captaines and souldiers, loding their minds with ample promises of farre greater rewards, for their fidelitie and valour to be shewed in that present seruice. Hauing thus assured vnto himselfe the wauering minds of his souldiers, he began to draw neere to ICONIVM, where his enemies lay encamped: and by glosing letters and flattering messengers made shew openly, as if he had beene very desirous to come to some good agreement with them, but secretly went about to stop all the straits & passages, in such manner as that it should not be possible for them againe to retire backe into SYRIA: for he doubted nothing more, but least they being but few in number, and so in strength far vnequall vnto him, would not vpon so great disaduantage ha-

E zard the fortune of a battell, but retire themselues into SYRIA, and so to his exceeding trouble and infinite charge protract the warre.

Zemes perceiuing his brothers subtill drift, and seeing no such reuolt as he had hoped for, and as had before by letters to him beene promised; and waighing with reason his owne weake forces, retired in good time vnto the straits of the mountaine AMANVS, which deuideth CILICIA from SYRIA. Here, despairing of all good successe in the enterprise he had taken in hand, he perswaded the Caramannian king his confederate to giue place vnto the time, and to reserue himselfe vnto his better fortune: and so breaking vp his armie, with a few of his followers came downe to the sea coast of CILICIA; where he hired a tall ship to attend in readinesse, that if any sudden danger should arise, he might goe aboord, and so saue himselfe by sea. In the mean

F time he sent a messenger vnto *Damboys*, Great Master of the RHODES, certifying him, That for as much as he had no place of safetie left amongst his owne people, wherein he might shrowd himselfe from the furie of his brother, still seeking after his life, he would vpon his safe conduct come vnto him into his island of the RHODES. Which his request the Great Master easily granted, deeming the flight of so great a prince from the Turke, to be a thing much profitable to the Christian commonweale: and thereupon he presently sent forth certaine gallies to fetch *Zemes flieth to sea.*

him

him from the troubleſome coaſt of CICILIA. But before theſe gallies were come, *Zemes* was G
enforced by the ſudden acceſſe of his enemies, for the auoiding of preſent danger, to go aboord on that ſhip which he had prouidently before prepared to be in readineſſe for ſuch purpoſe. And hauing put a little from the ſhoare, ſhot backe againe an arrow with letters made faſt vnto it, directed vnto his brother *Baiazet*, containing as followeth:

Zemes his letters to his brother Baiazet.

Thou knoweſt (moſt vnkind and cruell brother) that I flie not vnto the Chriſtians, the mortall enemies of the Othoman *familie, for hatred of my religion or nation; but enforced thereunto by thy iniurious dealing, and dangerous practiſes which thou inceſſantly attempteſt againſt me, yea euen in my extreame miſerie. But this aſſured hope I carrie with me, that the time will come when as thou the author of ſo great wrong, or thy children, ſhall receiue the iuſt guerdon of this thy preſent tyrannie againſt* H
thy brother.

It is reported, that when *Baiazet* had read theſe letters, he was ſo troubled in mind, that for certaine daies he gaue himſelfe wholy to mourning and heauineſſe, and would in no wiſe be comforted: inſomuch, that he was brought into the campe by the Baſſaes, as a man halfe diſtraught of his wits, ſhunning for a ſeaſon all mens ſpeech and companie.

Zemes flyeth to the Rhodes.

Zemes ſailing to the RHODES, was there honourably receiued of the Great Maſter, and all the reſt of the knights of the order: to whom in their publck aſſemblie three daies after, he openly declared the cauſes of the diſcord betwixt his brother and him: alleaging for the colour of his rebellion, That although *Baiazet* were his elder brother, yet that he was borne whileſt his father yet liued in priuat eſtate, vnder ſubiection and commaund, long before he poſſeſſed the king- I
dome, and ſo no kings ſonne: whereas he himſelfe was the firſt borne of his father, being an emperour, and ſo not heire of his fathers priuat fortune (as was *Baiazet*) but of his greateſt honour and empire; and yet not of ſuch an hautie minde, but that he could haue been content to haue giuen place vnto his brother, ſo that he could haue beene contented likewiſe to haue granted him ſome ſmall portion of the empire, wherin he might ſafely haue liued as a poore prince, and his brother: but that ſuch was his pride, as that he would not vouchſafe to ſuffer him to liue ſo much as a poore priuat life in any corner of ſo large an empire, and was therefore by his vnnaturall and tyranous dealing, enforced to craue aid of the Chriſtian princes. Of whom (for ſo much as he had alwaies heard much honour) he was in good hope to find ſuccour and reliefe in that his diſtreſſed eſtate: proteſting vnto God and the world, that if euer it ſhould be his good K
fortune by their meanes and helpe to obtaine the empire, he would neuer be vnmindfull of ſo great a benefit; but to make with them a perpetuall and inuiolable peace, and ſo to reſt their faſt friend for euer. The Great Maſter on the other ſide comforting him with cheerefull ſpeeches, promiſed to keepe him in ſafetie from the furie of his brother; and farther, to commend his cauſe to the other great kings and princes of Chriſtendome.

The deſcription of Zemes.

This exiled prince *Zemes* was about the age of eight and twentie yeares when he came to the RHODES; of ſtature tall, ſomewhat corpulent and well limbd, gray eied, but looking ſomething a ſquint; hooke noſed, and in the middle riſing, in ſuch maner as the Perſians commend in their kings: of colour browne, ſpare of ſpeech, and by nature cholericke; a great feeder, ſo that he ſeemed rather to deuour his meat than to eat it; much delighted in ſwimming, and to lie abroad L
in the night; penſiue and melancholie, which men imputed to his great cares, neuer merrie but in the companie of the graund Maſter; a religious obſeruer of the ſuperſtition, from which he could neuer be drawne during the long time he liued in exile; learned, as among the Turkes, ſo that he writ the hiſtorie of his fathers life. But leauing him in ſafe keeping with the grand Maſter of the RHODES, let vs againe returne to the courſe of our hiſtorie.

Baiazet hauing now the ſecond time chaſed away his brother, after he had well quieted that part of his troubled kingdome in ASIA, returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, carefully attending when ſome new motion ſhould be made by his brother, to his farther diſquiet. But after he vnderſtood that he was with the great Maſter of the RHODES, he ſent certain of his Baſſaes (amongſt whom *Achmetes* the great ſouldiour is reported to haue beene one) vnto the Great M
Maſter, requeſting him to deliuer vp *Zemes*, offering for him a wonderfull ſumme of money. Which diſhonourable requeſt, when it could by no meanes be obtained, the ſame embaſſadors in the name of their maſter, concluded a peace verie commodious for the Rhodians: wherein amongſt other things it was agreed, That the Great Maſter ſhould keepe *Zemes* in ſafe cuſtodie, ſo that he ſhould no more trouble the Turkiſh empire: in conſideration whereof, & for his honorable

A norable vſage, *Baiazet* ſhould yearely pay vnto the Great Maſter thirtie thouſand duckets the firſt of Auguſt, which was afterward accordingly paied.

It fortuned that whileſt *Achmetes* the great Baſſa (emploied in matters abroad) was abſent from the court, *Baiazet* diſcourſing with the other Baſſaes his graue counſellors, vpon his late expedition into ASIA againſt his brother, ſeemed to be highly offended with the vntruſtineſſe and doubtfull faith of ſome of his greateſt captaines and ſouldiers: yet vpon whom he might juſtly lay the blame, he well knew not, although it ſeemed by his talke he ſhould ſomewhat diſtruſt the great captaine *Achmetes*. Hereupon *Iſaack* the moſt ancient Baſſa of the court, and of greateſt authoritie next vnto *Baiazet* himſelfe (whoſe daughter, a ladie of exceeding beautie, 1484
B *Achmetes* had long before married: but doubting that ſhe had yeelded her honour to the wanton luſt of *Muſtapha* the eldeſt ſonne of *Mahomet* the late emperour, had put her from him, and would by no meanes be reconciled; for which cauſe there was a ſecret hatred euer after betwixt thoſe two great Baſſaes) perceiuing the emperours diſcontented and ſuſpitious humor, and deſiring nothing more than the deſtruction of *Achmetes*; tooke hold vpon this opportunitie, and by all meanes he could deuiſe, encreaſed the ſuſpition of the treaſon, which had alreadie too much poſſeſſed the jealous emperour: ſometimes craftily imagining, intelligence to haue paſſed betwixt *Zemes* and *Achmetes*; and forthwith amplifying his power and authoritie, which (as he ſaid) was ſo great with the Ianizaries and ſouldiers of the court, that they by reaſon of his often imploiments, were wholy at his deuotion; ſo that he might at his pleaſure doe more in *Ze-*
C *mes* his quarrell, than ſhould ſtand with the ſafetie of *Baiazet*: a matter to be well conſidered of, and alſo carefully preuented. For remedie of which dangers, it was thought neceſſarie that *Achmetes* at his returne to court, ſhould be taken away and ſlaine. *Achmetes his death contriued.*

Achmetes fearing nothing leſſe than that which was contriued againſt him, came after his wonted manner to the court: and was with the other great Baſſaes inuited to a ſolemne ſupper, which *Baiazet* had commanded to be prepared, to ſolace himſelfe after his trauels (as it was giuen out) with his chiefe Baſſaes. To this royall ſupper came *Achmetes* with the reſt of the bidden gueſts, miſtruſting nothing, and was there ſumptuouſly feaſted by *Baiazet*: who to make his gueſts the merrier, drunke wine plentifully himſelfe, cauſing them alſo to drinke in like manner; ſo that they were full of wine: a thing vtterly forbidden by their law, yet daily more and more
D vſed, eſpecially by their great men in their feaſts. Supper now ended and the night farre ſpent, *Baiazet* in token that they were welcome, and ſtood in his good grace, cauſed certaine rich robes of pleaſing colours to be brought forth, & to be caſt vpon euery of his gueſts one, giuing beſide vnto euery one of them a faire guilt boule full of gold. But vpon *Achmetes* was caſt a gowne of black veluet, which amongſt the Turkes may well be called the mantle of death; being ſo ſure a token of the emperors heauie indignation, as that it is death for any man once to open his mouth or to intreat for him vpon whom it is by the emperours commandement ſo caſt. *Achmetes* ſeeing himſelfe now vnder the ſhadow of death, and knowing it but vaine to intreat for mercie; as he was a man of great ſpirit, brake forth and ſaid: *Oh cachpogli* (which is as much as to ſay, thou ſonne of a whore) ſith thou entendeſt ſo much crueltie againſt me, why
E didſt thou not put it in execution before thou hadſt enforced me to drinke this impure and forbidden wine? and ſo caſting his eies vpon the ground ſat ſtill. The other Baſſaes hauing leaue to depart, giuing thanks to the emperour, and crauing pardon for their exceſſe, kiſſed the ground at his feet and ſo departed: with whom *Achmetes* offered to haue gone out alſo, but was forthwith commanded to ſit ſtill, for that the emperour had to talke with him in ſecret. The Baſſaes were no ſooner departed, but the terrible executioners of *Baiazet* his wrath ſtept in, and laid hands vpon *Achmetes* to haue ſlaine him: when one of the Eunuchs in greateſt fauour with the tyrant, ſtanding by, aduiſed him not to be too haſtie in executing of ſo great a man, ſo entirely beloued of his beſt ſouldiers and men of warre, but rather to ſtay his execution for a while, to ſee how the matter would be diſgeſted; and in the meane time, by torture to wreſt out from him
F what might be got, to make it in ſome ſort appeare, that he died for his due deſert. Hereupon *Baiazet* deferred his execution to a farther time, and cauſed him there preſently to be ſtript, and carried away to be tortured.

Amongſt other gallants of the court which attended the comming out of the great Baſſaes whom they followed, was one of *Achmetes* his ſonnes, a gentleman of great hope, who miſſing his father amongſt the reſt, began preſently to miſtruſt that all went not well: & ſpeedily running *Achmetes his ſon ſtirreth vp the Ianizaries to helpe his father.*

from

from one of the Baſſaes to another, with much adoe learned the hard eſtate of his father: where- G
of he was alſo at the ſame inſtant aduertiſed by a ſecret friend neere about *Baiazet*. Hereupon this yong gentleman began forthwith piteouſly to lament his fathers miſhap, and to exclaime againſt the crueltie of *Baiazet*: calling vpon the Ianizaries for aid, putting them in remembrance of his fathers great and manifold deſerts towards them, togither with his imminent danger: and ſo running vp and downe the citie in the dead time of the night, had in ſhort ſpace raiſed vp all the Ianizaries in armes. Who vnderſtanding of the danger of their ancient commander, whom they generally loued and honoured as their father, came running by heaps from all parts of the citie vnto the court gate, there with terrible exclamation doubling and redoubling, their *Bre, Bre* (which barbarous word they commonly vſe in expreſſing their greateſt diſcontentment and H
furie) and did indeed ſo furiouſly beat at the court gate, that *Baiazet* fearing leaſt they ſhould breake in by violence, cauſed the outer gate to be ſet open, and ſhewing himſelfe from aboue out at an yron window, demanded of them the cauſe of that tumult and vprore. To whom they inſolently anſwered, That they would by and by teach him as a drunkard, a beaſt, and a raſcall, to vſe his great place and calling with more ſobrietie and diſcretion: and amonſt many other approbrious words wherewith they ſhamefully loaded him, they called him oftentimes by the name of *Bengi*, *Bengi* (that is to ſay, Bachelor or Scholler) which amongſt thoſe martiall men, contemners of all learning, is accounted a word of no ſmall reproach and diſgrace. And after they had in moſt deſpitefull manner thus reuiled him, they proudly commanded him
Baiazet for feare deliuereth Achmetes to the Ianizaries. forthwith to deliuer *Achmetes* vnto them, or elſe to take that ſhould enſue thereof. *Baiazet* ter- I
rified with this inſolencie of the Ianizaries, and fearing ſome ſudden violence to be offered, commanded *Achmetes* to be without delay deliuer vnto them: which was done in ſuch haſt, that he was brought forth vnto them almoſt naked, bare legged, and bare headed, bearing in his body the manifeſt markes of his hard vſage. The Ianizaries receiuing him with great reioycing, ſupplied his want of apparell with ſuch habiliments, as they for that purpoſe vpon the ſudden tooke from *Baiazet* his minions: and ſo taking him vp vpon their ſhoulders, with great ioy carried him out of the court, ſtill crying vnto him, How he did, and how he felt himſelfe? and ſo guarded him home, readie no doubt to haue ſlaine *Baiazet* and rifled the court, if he would haue but ſaid the word. But he yet loyall, laboured with good words to appeaſe that tumult, and to
pacifie their furie: excuſing that which *Baiazet* had done againſt him, to haue beene done only K
to correct him, for that happely he had forgotten ſome part of obedience and duetie. Neuertheleſſe, hereupon remained no ſmall heart burning betwixt *Baiazet* and the Ianizaries for a long time after: yet *Baiazet* for feare of them reconciled himſelfe to *Achmetes*, and in open ſhew had him in greater honour than before, promoting him euen vnto the higheſt degrees of honour, howbeit he inwardly hated him to death. And the more, by the continuall inſtigation of the old Baſſa *Iſaack*: by whoſe perſuaſion, when it was thought that all had beene forgotten, he was by *Baiazets* commandement as he ſat at ſupper in the court, thruſt through the bodie
Achmetes ſlaine. and ſlaine. This was the miſerable end of *Achmetes*, the great champion of the Turkes, and one of the greateſt enemies of Chriſtendome that euer liued in the Turkiſh court: for by him, *Mahomet* ſubuerted the empire of TRAPEZONDE, tooke the great citie of CAFFA (called in anti- L
ent time THEODOSIA) with all the countrey of TAVRICA CHERSONESVS, the impregnable citie of CROIA, with all the kingdome of EPIRVS, the ſtrong citie of SCODRA, and a great part of DALMATIA; and laſt of all OTRANTO, to the terrour of all ITALY: by him alſo *Baiazet* vanquiſhed and put to flight his brother *Zemes*, as is before declared. In reward of which good ſeruices, he was by the tyrant (vpon a meere ſuſpition) thus cruelly & ſhamefully murdred. About this time alſo *Caigubus* (*Zemes* his ſon, then but a child) was by the commandement of *Baiazet* his vncle, ſtrangled, in the new tower of CONSTANTINOPLE.

Baiazet now grieuouſly offended with the pride and late inſolencie of the Ianizaries, cauſed ſecret inquirie to be made, of them which were the authors of thoſe late ſtirs: and finding them to be the officers of their companies, and eſpecially thoſe which had before ſlain *Mahomet Baſſa* M
the great politian, immediatly after the death of *Mahomet* the late emperour; at which time they had alſo raiſed great tumults, and done much harme in the citie: he vnder colour of preferment, ſent away thoſe authors of ſedition into diuers parts of his empire, appointing vnto them (as vnto old ſouldiers and men of good deſert) certaine lands and reuenues for their maintenance and preferment. But as ſoone as they were departed, he by ſecret letters commanded

the

A the gouernors and magiſtrates of thoſe places wherunto they were ſent, ſuddenly to apprehend them, and as traitors to put them to death; which was accordingly done. The Ianizaries of the court and about CONSTANTINOPLE, hearing what had happened vnto their fellowes, became wonderfull diſcontented, and began to mutine in diuers places of the citie, vttering ſpeeches againſt the emperor full of deſpight and reuenge: which thing when *Baiazet* vnderſtood, and had well conſidered the late danger he was in, together with the intollerable pride and inſolencie of thoſe his maſterfull ſlaues; he ſecretly propoſed in himſelfe for curing of ſo dangerous a diſeaſe, to vſe a moſt deſperate remedie: which was, ſodenly to kill & deſtroie all the Ianizaries, eſpecially thoſe which were belonging to the court, or about CONSTANTINOPLE. This his 1485

Baiazet purpoſeth to deſtroy the Ianizaries.

B purpoſe he imparted to diuers of his greateſt Baſſaes, charging them vpon paine of his heauie diſpleaſure not to diſcloſe it: and for the execution thereof, had ſent for great numbers of thoſe ſoldiors which are called Acanzij, who are amongſt the Turks reputed for the beſt ſort of common ſoldiors. Moſt of all the Baſſaes to whom he had imparted this his cruel deuiſe, much diſliked therof, as too full of peril & danger: yet ſeeing him fully reſolued for the performance therof, would not, or durſt not ſay any thing to the contrarie. Onely *Alis* and *Iſhender Baſſa*, both deſcended of the honourable familie of *Michal Ogli*, diſſuaded him from attempting any ſuch thing: alleaging firſt, that the Ianizaries were in number manie, ſouldiours of great courage and experience, reſolute men, and ſuch as would ſell their liues deare: then, admitting that he ſhould kill all them about the court and in CONSTANTINOPLE, yet foraſmuch as all his

C ſtrong towns and caſtles, eſpecially in the frontiers and chiefe places of his dominions, were poſſeſſed and holden by ſtrong garriſons of other Ianizaries, fellowes and friends of theſe (who would vndoubtedly take vp armes in defence of themſelues, and reuenge of their dead friends) it were a thing verie like to endanger himſelfe together with the whole ſtate of his empire, beſide the great diſhonour which would grow vnto himſelfe thereby for euer.

This ſo dangerous an exploit, wherin the hands of ſo many were to be vſed, was not kept ſo ſecret, but that the vigilant and wilie Ianizaries had got an inckling thereof: and thereupon began daily more and more to ſuſpect the matter, both by the often and ſecret repaire of the great men to the court, more than they had before ſeene; & alſo by the vnwonted multitude of thoſe Acanzij which were daily brought vnto the imperiall citie by great companies. Wherefore fea-

D ring to be ſuddenly ſurpriſed, they banded themſelues togither, and openly ſtood vpon their guard: and by chance lighting vpon *Alis-beg* as he came from the court (who was in deed their beſt friend) after their barbarous maner, with many opprobrious and contumelious words, demanded of him, if he were not one of them who had conſpired their deſtruction: and without more adoe had preſently ſlaine him, had he not (as a well ſpoken man) with great proteſtations and oathes perſuaded them, that he neuer conſented to any ſuch thing, or that they needed to feare any ſuch thing from him: and ſo with much adoe rid himſelfe out of their hands.

Baiazet ſeeing his purpoſe diſcouered, & that he could not without great bloudſhed and danger both to his eſtate and perſon, worke his will vpon the Ianizaries: by the counſell and aduiſe of them that ſaw further into the matter, to colour his former intention, commanded by open

E proclamation, That the Ianizaries and other his men of war (of whom he had a great power now aſſembled at CONSTANTINOPLE) to be in readineſſe againſt a certaine prefixed day, to go with him into MOLDAVIA: as if he had raiſed that power for that purpoſe only. But when the time was come that he ſhould ſet forward, the Ianizaries put themſelues in order of battell by themſelues, and would in no wiſe ioyne themſelues with the reſt of the armie, or receiue the emperour into the middeſt of their rankes, as they had alwaies before accuſtomed; but furiouſly ſhaking their weapons at him, told him plainely, that he had ſought their deſtruction: and bid him therefore if he thought it ſo good, to ſet his executioners to worke vpon them, whom hee ſhould find both readie and able to defend themſelues. To pacifie their furie, *Baiazet* was glad to giue them good words, and to vſe all the meanes he could (by his great Baſſaes and other cap-

F taines which were able to do any thing with them) to perſuade them to be quiet; ſwearing vnto them by the holie ſoule of his father (a ſolemne oath amongſt the Turkes) that he would not harme or wrong the meaneſt of them. So with much adoe they were at length appeaſed, and receiued *Baiazet* into the middeſt of them as their wonted manner was.

This dangerous tumult ſo quieted, *Baiazet* ſet forward, and paſſing ouer Danubius entered into MOLDAVIA, where he firſt laied ſiege to a ſtrong towne ſtanding vpon the Euxine ſea, called

Baiazet inuadeth Moldauia.

called of the Turks Kele, but in ancient time Achilleia, which was at length deliuered vnto him by compoſition. From thence he went to Ac-gibmen, otherwiſe called Asprocastron, which after a moneths ſiege was alſo deliuered vp by compoſition: which two ſtrong places ſo woon, he returned againe to Constantinople. G

Many great princes ſue to the Maſter of the Rhodes for Zemes.

Many great princes deſirous of *Zemes*, laboured by their embaſſadours to haue obtained him of the Great Maſter of the Rhodes, firſt *Baiazet* his brother fearing leaſt hee ſhould at one time or other againe breake forth vpon him, or els ſet vp by the Chriſtian princes, trouble his eſtate, offered great ſums of mony to haue had him deliuered into his hands: and *Charles* the French king purpoſing the conqueſt of Naples (which he in few yeares after performed) and after that to haue inuaded Græcia, thought *Zemes* a moſt fit inſtrument for the furtherance of thoſe his high deſignes, and was therefore wonderfull deſirous to haue had him. *Mathias* alſo king of Hvngarie (a fortunate warriour againſt the Turke) perſuaded that the hauing of him might be vnto him a great furtherance in the courſe of his victories, ſought by all the meanes he could to haue obtained him. At which time alſo *Innocentius* the eight of that name, biſhop of Rome, no leſſe deſirous than the reſt, to haue in his keeping ſo great a pledge of peace and warre (the bridle of the Turkes furie, together with the large penſion) hee was ſure to receiue yerely from *Baiazet* for the ſafe cuſtodie of him, ſo wrought the matter by *Lyonell* biſhop of Concordia his cunning legat, that the Great Maſter fearing on the one ſide to be conſtrained by the great power of *Baiazet* to grant that he had ſo often refuſed, and now ſo earneſtly ſolicited on the other ſide by the biſhop, cauſed *Zemes* to bee deliuered to him at Rome in the yeare 1488: for which doing he was by the biſhop honoured with the honour and title of a Cardinall. So *Zemes* to the great profit of the biſhop (who receiued from *Baiazet* a yearely penſion of fortie thouſand duckats) remained in ſafe cuſtodie at Rome all the time of *Innocentius*, and alſo of *Alexander* the ſixt his ſucceſſour: vntill that the French king, *Charles* the eight, paſſing through the heart of Italie with a ſtrong armie, againſt *Alphonſus* king of Naples in the yeare 1495, and making his way through the citie of Rome, ſo terrified the great Biſhop, who altogether fauored and furthered the title of *Alphonſus*, that he was glad to yeeld to ſuch articles and conditions as pleaſed the king; and amongſt the reſt to giue in hoſtage vnto the king his graceleſſe ſonne *Cæſar Borgia Valentinus*, and alſo to deliuer vnto him *Zemes* his honourable priſoner, as ſhall be afterwards in place conuenient at large declared. H I K

In the beginning of *Baiazet* his raigne, whileſt he was buſied againſt his bother *Zemes* in Asia, *Iohn Caſtriot*, the ſonne of *Scanderbeg*, aided by the Venetians, after he had fortunately ouerthrowne the Turkes in a battell neere vnto Croia, recouered a great part of Epirvs out of their poſſeſſion. At which time alſo *Iohn Chernouich*, a Chriſtian prince of Albania, caſting off the Turkiſh yoke impoſed vpon him by the late emperour *Mahomet*, ſuddainely tooke vp armes, and by the help of the Venetians valiantly expulſed the enemies out of that part of Albania: and ſo troubled *Baiazet*, that he was glad to ſuffer him peaceably to inioy all that hee had by force recouered, and further to content him with a ſmall tribute for the reſt.

1486

Baiazet inuadeth Caramania

Baiazet highly offended with *Abraham* (whom ſome call *Pyramet*) the king of Caramania, for aiding his brother *Zemes* againſt him; in reuenge thereof raiſed a great armie both in Evrope and Asia: and marching alongſt Asia the leſſe through the countries of Phrigia, Misia, Caria, Lydia, and Pamphilia, entered at length into Caramania. But the king of Caramania hearing before of his coming, and knowing himſelfe too weake to meete him in field, fortified the ſtrong cities and places of his kingdome, and retired with his armie into the ſtraits of the mountaine Tavrvs, where it parteth Cilicia from Siria, wherein he was in more ſafetie than in any of his ſtrongeſt holds. *Baiazet* finding no way to come to him, ſpent moſt part of the Summer in ſpoyling of the open countrie: but perceiuing his enemies could not ſo be drawne into the field, he laied ſiege vnto the famous citie of Tarsvs, being the chiefe citie of the champaine part of Cilisia (the natiue place of *S. Paule*, the Apoſtle) and in ſhort time ſo battered the wals of his citie with his great ordinance, that hee had made them faultable. The citizens conſidering the danger they were in, offered to deliuer vp their citie, their libertie, liues and goods reſerued. Of which their offer *Baiazet* accepted, and moſt honourably performed his promiſe for their ſafetie: not permitting any of his ſouldiours to enter the citie, more than ſuch as muſt needs for the guard of his perſon, and ſafe keeping of the citie. And for as much as Winter began now to grow faſt on, he diſperſed his ſoldiors into the countrey L

Tarſus in Cilicia yeeldeth to Baiazet. M

A trey villages round about, not ſuffering the countrie people to till or ſow their land, or to do any thing els which might turne to their profit or good; whereby they were inforced to yeeld themſelues wholly to his deuotion. The Caramanian king ſeeing his people daily fall from him, and fearing to be at length forſaken of his ſouldiers alſo; in this his diſtres obtained aid both of men and mony of *Caytbeius* the great Sultan of ÆGIPT, and ſo with all the power he could make, tooke the field with the firſt of the Spring, fully reſolued to trie the fortune of a battell, although in ſtrength and power he knew himſelfe much inferiour to his puiſſant enemie.

Baiazet glad to ſee his enemie ſo forward, ſpeedily aſſembled his armie, and without delaie offered him battell: which the Caramanian king refuſed not. So betwixt them was begun a
B fierce and terrible fight; which by the skilfull conduct of the leaders, and exceeding courage of the ſoldiors, was maintained the whole day, with doubtfull victorie and great ſlaughter on both ſides, new ſupplies ſtill comming on in ſtead of them which were ſlaine. The day declining, the Caramanian king (whoſe fatall deſtinie had now appointed him vnto his laſt worke) ſeeing his wearied ſouldiours rather ouerlayed with multitude than by force vanquiſhed, to being to giue ground vnto their enemies; courageouſly thruſt forward with his guard and other valiant ſouldiors about him, with ſuch furie, that he brake into the middeſt of his enemies battaile: where being knowne, he was forthwith enuironed by the Turkes, and ſo hardly charged on euerie ſide, that hauing his horſe ſlaine vnder him, he was enforced to fight on foot; where after he had with his owne hand ſlaine diuerſe of his enemies, hee fell downe dead in the middeſt of
C them. His ſouldiours diſcouraged with his death, turned their backs and fled, and in flying, were for the moſt part either ſlaine or taken priſoners. After this victorie, *Baiazet* ſpeedily ouerran all that large countrie, and without reſiſtance, in ſhort time brought vnder his obeyſance all the countrie of CILICIA.

A long and terrible battell betwixt Baiazet and the king of Caramania.

There was at that time in that part of CILICIA which is called TRACHEA, and lyeth towards the ſea ſide, an auncient Mahometane prince, who had vnder his commaund moſt part of that countrie, with the famous and populous citie of SCANDELORO, the chiefe place of his reſiance. This prince had of long time liued betwixt the Chriſtian kings and the kings of CARAMANNIA, as neuter, ſtill fearing the greater, but indeed louing neither: and had vntill then chiefely maintained his ſtate by the alliance he and his anceſtors continually held with the kings of CYPRVS,
D and the grand Maſters of the RHODES. Againſt this poore prince, the only one now left in ASIA the leſſe, not ſubiect vnto the Turkiſh kings, began *Baiazet* now to turne his forces: purpoſing before he proceeded any further, to make a full conqueſt of the leſſer ASIA, and ſo to make all ſure behind him. Of which his purpoſe, the prince hauing knowledge, and wiſely waying his owne ſmall power to withſtand ſo puiſſant an enemie: offered by his embaſſadors to deliuer vnto *Baiazet* his chiefe citie of SCANDELORO, with all the reſt of his territorie in CILICIA, vpon condition, that *Baiazet* ſhould giue vnto him other poſſeſſions for it in ſome other part of ASIA the leſſer, to the like value. Which his offer *Baiazet* accepted, and ſo became lord of all the ſea coaſt, from the ſtraits of BOSPHORVS vnto the confines of SIRIA.

After he had thus conquered CILICIA, with a great part of the mountaine TAVRVS, he deſ-
E cended into ARMENIA the leſſe, and in ſhort time brought vnder his ſubiction ſo much of that countrie, as alſo of CAPPADOCIA, as was ſometime belonging to the Caramanian kings. When *Baiazet* had thus ſlaine the Caramanian king, and ſubdued that moſt ancient kingdome of the Turks, which had long and many times mightily contended with the glorie and power of the *Othoman* kings, he left *Muſtapha* (one of his great Baſſaes) at ICONIVM, with his Aſian armie to keepe in obedience thoſe new woon countries: and as a triumphant conqueror returned himſelfe to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was of his ſubiects ioyfully receiued.

After that *Baiazet* had thus inlarged his empire with the kingdome of CARAMANNIA, and was now become an vnwelcome neighbour vnto the great Sultan of *Ægypt* and SYRIA; he 1487
began to ſwell in diſdaine againſt that mightie prince, for that he had giuen aid againſt him, firſt
F vnto his brother *Zemes*, and after that to the Caramanian king in theſe late warres: of which wrong, purpoſing to be reuenged, he ſhortly after appointed one *Caragoſes Baſſa* his lieutenant in ASIA, with *Iſhender*, another of his great captaines, with a ſtrong armie to inuade SIRIA, then part of the great Sultans kingdome. Theſe two great commaunders, well appointed for the purpoſe, when they were come to the vttermoſt parts of CILICIA, the new bounds of *Baiazets* empire, were then to paſſe by the confines of *Aladeules* his kingdome, before they could

passe the great mountaine TAVRVS to come into SYRIA. This *Aladeules* commaunded as king ouer the rude and fierce people which dwelt alongst that great and rough mountaine, and was then in league with the Sultan: he hearing of the approch of the Turks armie, with a great number of his mountaine people lay in ambush in the straits, whereby the Turkes must needs passe, of purpose to intercept them. *Ishender* marching in the vauntguard with a great number of the voluntarie souldiors called Acanzij, as the manner of the Turks is, and fearing nothing lesse than to be set vpon by the mountain king, before he was aware was come into the middest of his enemies; and was by them so fiercely charged on euerie side from their places of aduantage, that he there lost most part of his men, and forsaken of the rest, which sought by flight to saue themselues, he with his two sonnes and others were taken prisoners. *Michael-beg* the eldest of the two being fast bound, was slaine by one of *Aladeules* his followers, whose brother he had slaine in that skirmish: his head being cut off, was by the commaundement of *Aladeules* carried to his father *Ishender*, the more to grieue him: who disdainefully willed the messenger not to shew it vnto him, but to bid his master eat it if he would: with which answere *Aladeules* was exceedingly mooued: neuertheless pitying the old mans miserie, he shortly after set *Iaxis Beg* the yonger brother at libertie; but *Ishender* himselfe he sent prisoner vnto *Caitbeius* the great Sultan at CAIRE, where he remained in prison fiue yeres after. *Caragoses* the Bassa discouraged with the losse of so great a man, retired with his armie backe againe into CILICIA, and from thence aduertised *Baiazet* what had happened, by whom he was commanded to returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, as a man vnfit for so great an enterprise. G H

1488 *Achmetes Bassa discomfited and taken prisoner and sent to Caire.*

The next Spring following, *Baiazet* constant in his former resolution for the inuasion of SYRIA, sent *Achmetes* another of his Bassaes, with a far greater armie than had *Caragoses*, against the Sultan: who was no sooner come vnto the farther part of CILICIA, but he was there at a place called of the Turks TZVCVR OVA, encountered by the Ægyptians and Arabians, and there in a great battaile ouerthrowne; wherein he himselfe fighting most valiantly, lost two of his fingers, and being taken prisoner was sent to CAIRE. I

1489

Baiazet with this ouerthrow rather incensed than discouraged, made great preparation the next yeare against the Sultan both by sea and land, such as he had not before at any time made. And when all things were now in readinesse, sent *Alis Bassa* (of some called *Calibeus*) and *Cherseogles* his sonne in law, two notable captaines, with a great and puissant armie by land against the Ægyptian Sultan: at which time he requested of the Venetians, with whom he was then in league, that he might by their good leaue, as occasion required, refresh his fleet (then ready to put to sea for the inuasion of SYRIA, as he said) in their Island of CYPRVS. Which his request was by the generall consent of the Senat denied, as a thing tending to the danger of their state: yet wisely doubting least *Baiazet* taking that deniall in euill part, should seeke to haue that by force which he could not obtaine by request, they presently sent *Francisco Priuolo*, their Admirall, to sea with thirtie gallies for the defence of that Island. He hearing that one fleet of the Turks gallies, lately come out of HELLESPONTVS, lay houering at the Island of SCIRÒS, expecting a farre greater from the coast of IONIA; and carefully considering how secret and suddaine the Turkish designements were, although it was giuen out, that all that great preparation was made against the Sultan: yet to prouide that they should not suddainely surprise the Isle, he speedily sent sundrie companies of souldiours, especially archers out of CRETA, into CYPRVS, for the better defence thereof: but stayed himselfe with his fleet at the Island of NAXOS, that so at hand he might be the readier to withstand whatsoeuer the Turkes intended. But when he vnderstood that all their fleet was met, and now set forward, he hoised saile, and held his course directly for CYPRVS. In the meane time, the Turkish fleet sayling alongst the coast of LYCIA, PAMPHILIA, and CILICIA, kept on their course, vntill they came vpon the coast of SYRIA: by which time *Calibeus* and *Cherseogles* were come with a mightie armie into CILICIA, neere vnto the mountaine TAVRVS. K L

Caitbeius the Ægyptian Sultan hauing before had certaine intelligence of the great preparation that *Baiazet* had made against him, had before sent *Vsbeg*, a most valiant and politicke captaine, with a strong armie of his Mamalukes and other his most expert souldiors into SYRIA, to be readie at all times to withstand the Turkes. This worthie cheefetaine vnderstanding of the comming of the Turkes armie, thought it greater policie to carrie the calamities which alwaies wait vpon great armies, into the enemies countrey, than to receiue it into his own bosome. And M

there-

A therefore although he knew himſelfe to be for number farre inferiour vnto his enemies,yet ſupplying that want with the valour courage and aſſured confidence he had repoſed in the approoued & inuincible force of his Mamalukes, he expected not the comming of the enemie into SYRIA,but paſſing ouer the mountaine AMANVS, and ſo deſcending into CILICIA, met him not far from TARSVS,in the ſame place (as it was thought) where *Alexander* the Great had long before in a great battell vanquiſhed *Darius*.

A long and terrible battell betweene the Turks and the Mamalukes.

Theſe two puiſſant armies come from farre out of diuers parts of the world the one to find the other, were no ſooner come together, but that with like cheerefulneſſe they ioyned battell; and that with ſuch violence and furie,that the earth ſeemed to tremble vnder their feet,and
B a moſt preſent deſtruction threatned vnto them all; which terrible and cruell fight was maintained all that day with doubtfull victorie and exceeding ſlaughter on both ſides. The politike Generals with new ſupplies of freſh ſouldiours, continually relieuing the moſt diſtreſſed parts of their battels: and they likewiſe as men prodigall of their liues,reſolutely offering themſelues to all dangers. When this moſt dreadfull fight had in this ſort indured the whole day, and manie thouſands of valiant men of late aliue, lay now dead vpon the ground,the approching night brake off the battell: and both the armies ſore wearied and weakned(but eſpecially the Turks) retired to their camps, where they reſted that night.

But the Ægyptians comming to their campe, found all their carriages with their prouiſion of victuals and other neceſſaries quite taken away and gone. Which thing(as ſome write) the
C bordering people of the countrey (for moſt part liuing vpon robberie) had done in time of the battell,to pleaſe the Turkes: or as ſome others report, they which had the charge thereof, terrified with the greatneſſe of the Turks armie, and doubtfulneſſe of the battell,fled away, and taking their way alongſt the ſea ſide,fell into the hands of the Turkes which were put on ſhore out of the gallies,and ſo were of them ſpoiled. Howſoeuer it was(for in ſo great vncertaintie I dare not affirme)certain it is, that the Ægyptians were ſore troubled with the loſſe of their prouiſion;fearing that if they ſhould now ſtay longer in the countrey,they ſhould forthwith be driuen to great extremities for want of neceſſaries. Wherefore, when they had euill reſted that night,the next day early in the morning they preſented themſelues in order of battel before their enemies,brauing them into the field, and daring them to battell. The Turks diſdaining to ſee
D any prouder in field than themſelues, after they had in goodly order raunged their battels, ſet forward with enſignes diſplayed againſt their proud enemies. There began a moſt terrible and bloudie battell,fought with ſuch deſperat reſolution, as if they had ſolemnly vowed either to ouercome or die in the place where they ſtood. A man would haue ſaid, that the former daies furie had beene but a play in compariſon of this. Many valiant ſouldiours couered with their dead bodies the ſame ground whereon they liuing ſtood when they receiued the firſt encounter of their enemies. Of both thoſe great armies none was ſeene to giue ground,or once looke back. The Turks Ianizaries,and the Ægyptians Mamalukes,the vndoubted ſtrength of the greateſt Mahometane Monarchs (ſouldiors for their valour much feared,and through the world renowmed)there buckled togither,and ſtanding foot to foot, ſpent the vttermoſt of their forces
E one vpon another: as if they would in that battell haue made it knowne vnto the world,which of them were to be accounted the better ſouldiours. Whileſt victorie ſtood thus doubtfull, and the day was now far ſpent, *Vsbeg* (the Ægyptian Generall)with fifteene thouſand valiant horſmen(whom he had reſerued for that purpoſe) gaue a freſh charge vpon the Turkes ſquadrons, with ſuch force,that they had much adoe to keepe their order,and began now to giue ground; which was by and by made good againe,by other freſh men ſpeedily brought one by the Baſſaes. Then became the battell more fierce than before,euerie man ſtriuing to the vttermoſt of his power,to ſell his life vnto his enemie as deere as he could. In which manner of fight all the reſt of the day was ſpent, vntill that after the going downe of the ſunne,the darkneſſe of the night comming faſt on, they were glad for lacke of light to breake off the battell and to retire them-
F ſelues into their campes,not knowing as yet who had got the better.

The Turks flie away by night.

The Turkes Baſſaes taking view of the armie,and finding that of an hundred thouſand fighting men which they brought into the field, there was ſcarce a third part left,and moſt of them alſo maimed or hurt; and doubting to be ſet vpon again the next morning by their reſolute enemies, fled away ſecretly the ſame night, leauing behind them for haſt, their tents well ſtored with victuals, and all other things needfull. The Ægyptians alſo hauing loſt one halfe of their

armie (which was at the firſt ſeuentie thouſand) and wanting their neceſſarie prouiſion, were retired alſo the ſame night into the mountaine TAVRVS, not knowing any thing of the flight of the Turkes. And ſome of the ſouldiours paſſing quite ouer the mountaine without ſtay into SYRIA, raiſed a report all ouer the countrey as they went, That the Sultans armie was ouerthrowne, and that the Turks had got the victorie: ſo vncertaine was the true knowledge of the euent of that battell, euen vnto them that were preſent therein. The Ægyptian lying the night vpon the ſide of the mountaine, had ſpeedie intelligence from *Aladeules* of the flight of the Turkes: which being alſo confirmed by his eſpials to be true, hee preſently came downe from the mountaine, and entred into the Turks campe, where he found plentie of victuals and of all other things needfull for the refreſhing of his armie. G H

Aladeules the mountaine king, with the people called Varſacide, by whoſe confines the Turkes muſt needes in their returne paſſe, robbed and ſlew many of them in their diſordered flight; and had ſo ſtopped the paſſages, that they were in flyiug ouertaken by the Mamalukes and ſlaine, with ſo great a ſlaughter, that of all that great armie of the Turks few remained aliue to carrie newes home. *Calibeius* and *Cherſeogles* the Baſſaes, were in that flight both taken priſoners, and afterwards preſented to *Caitbeius* the Sultant of CAIRE; with eighteene enſignes of the Turks Sanzackes, which are great men amongſt them, hauing euerie one of them the regiment and commaund of ſome one prouince or other, and are in degree next vnto the Baſſaes.

Neither was the fortune of *Baiazet* his nauie at ſea, better than that of his armie at land: for as it lay at rode vpon the coaſt of SYRIA at the mouth of the riuer Orontes, which runneth by the famous citie of ANTIOCHIA, his gallies were by tempeſt and rage of the ſea put from their anchors, & in the ſight of their enemies ſwallowed vp of the ſea; or elſe driuen vpon the main, and there with the ſurges of the ſea beaten in peeces. *Baiazet* not a little troubled with theſe loſſes both by ſea and land, at length with much adoe, by his embaſſadors concluded a peace with the Sultan, vnto whom he reſtored all ſuch place as he had before taken from him: for which the Sultan deliuered vnto him *Calibeius*, *Cherſeogles*, *Achmetes*, and *Iſhender*, with all the reſt of the Turks priſoners, which he had in great number in his keeping. I

1492 *A peace concluded betwixt Baiazet and Caitbeius.*

Shortly after this peace was concluded betwixt theſe two great and mightie princes, *Caitbeius* the Sultan died: who of a Circaſſian ſlaue, by many degrees of honour, and by the fauour of the Mamalukes his fellowes, obtained the rich kingdome of Ægypt, which he right worthily gouerned to his immortall praiſe by the ſpace of two and twentie yeares; commanding at one time the great and rich countrie of ÆGYPT, with all AFFRIKE as far as CIRENE, Weſtward; and IVDEA, with a great part of ARABIA, and all SYRIA, vnto the great and famous riuer Euphrates, Eaſtward. In the latter end of his raigne, he (ouercome with the importunitie of his wife *Dultibe* an Arabian borne, a woman of an hautie ſpirit) ioyned his ſonne *Mahomethes*, a young man of about foure and twentie yeares old, with him in the felloſhip of his kingdome; that ſo poſſeſſed of it, his father yet liuing, he might the better inioy it after his death. Contrarie to the cuſtome of the Mamalukes, who of long time had not vſed to haue their king by ſucceſſion, but by their free election. Who grudging to be thus defrauded of their wonted choiſe, immediatly after the death of *Caitbeius*, ſlew *Mahomethes* his ſonne; and in a few moneths after, foure moe, who one after another, without their good liking, had aſpired vnto the kingdome: neither could they be contented, vntill ſuch time as that they had according to their wonted cuſtome ſet vp a Sultan of their owne choiſe. K L

About the ſame time that the aforeſaid peace was concluded betwixt the two great Mahometane princes, *Baiazet* and *Caitbeius*, *Charles* the French king was making great preparation againſt *Alphonſus* king of NAPLES, giuing it out, That after he had recouered that kingdome, he would forthwith from thence inuade the Turkes dominions in GRÆCIA. Which great attempt the haughtie king was induced to take in hand, by the perſuaſion of diuers of his nobilitie, but eſpecially the ſolicitation of *Lodouicus Sfortia* duke of MILLAN: whereby the whole ſtate of ITALIE was in ſhort time after ſore ſhaken, and *Sfortia* himſelfe, authour of thoſe troubles, at laſt carried away by the French, miſerably ended his daies as a priſoner in FRAVNCE. *Alphonſus* the Neopolitane king doubting the greatneſſe of the French king his enemie, entered into a confederation with certaine of the ſtates of ITALIE againſt the French, but eſpecially with *Alexander* the ſixt then Biſhop of ROME: for the better aſſurance wherof, he gaue M

his

A his baſe daughter in marriage to *Godfrey Borgia*, the Biſhops ſonne, and made him prince of CARINVLA: his other ſonne *Francis* he entertained alſo in great pay to ſerue him in his wars. And by his embaſſadour *Pandonius Camillus*, lately returned out of FRANCE, gaue *Baiazet* to vnderſtand what the French king had purpoſed againſt them both, requeſting him to aid him with ſix thouſand horſemen and as many foot againſt their common enemie, promiſing to giue them honourable entertainement during thoſe warres. And to further the matter, *Alexander* the great Biſhop ſent *George Bucciarde*, a Ligurian, skilfull in the Turkiſh language, embaſſadour to *Baiazet*, to declare vnto him with what great preparation, both by ſea and land, the young French king (deſirous of honour and the enlargement of his kingdome) was about to inuade NAPLES;

Alphonſus king of Naples, and Alexander Biſhop of Rome craue aid of Baiazet againſt Charles the French king.

B and then, with what great power (after he had diſpatched his warres in ITALIE) he purpoſed to paſſe ouer into GRÆCIA; and that he had to that end earneſtly trauelled with him, to haue *Zemes* his brother deliuered into his hands, whom he deſired to vſe as a moſt fit inſtrument for the troubling of his ſtate and empire, by reaſon of his many friends: yet that his Holineſſe (hauing the French in diſtruſt as a proud and ambitious people, as alſo carefull for the danger of the citie of ROME, and of the ſtate of ITALIE in generall) had entered into a confederation with *Alphonſus* king of NAPLES, with their vnited forces to withſtand that proud nation, both by ſea and land; wanting nothing more for the accompliſhment thereof, than mony: by which only means *Baiazet* might (as he ſaid) prouide for the ſafetie of his kingdome in GRÆCIA, if he would put to his helping hand, to furniſh them with mony for the entertainment of

C ſouldiers: for as much as the citie of ROME, and the kingdome of NAPLES, were the ſureſt wals of that ſide of the *Othoman* empire; if he not altogether refuſing the charge, would not ſpare for a little coſt to maintaine the warre rather in that forraine conntrey, than to receiue it, brought home to his owne dore concluding, That it were much more commodious and eaſie with his treaſures to repreſſe his enemie in a ſtrange countrey a farre off, than by dint of ſword and plaine battell in his owne. A thing by experience well knowne, that they which haue neglected & ſet at nought remote dangers, for ſparing of charge, haue afterwards been enforced with greater danger to receiue the ſame into their owne boſomes, when as they were become deſperat and paſt remedie. *Baiazet*, who both by his eſpials and often letters and embaſſadours from *Alphonſus*, knew all this to be true, gaue great thankes to the biſhop by his embaſſador, for that

D he ſitting in ſo high place, did ſo friendly & in ſo good time admoniſh him, both a ſtranger, and of a contrarie religion, of things of ſo great conſequence: yet for anſwere, he willed him to returne againe to his maſter with one *Dautius* his embaſſadour, who ſhould carrie with him both money and his other ſecret reſolutions concerning thoſe matters. Amongſt other things giuen him in charge, was an Epiſtle written in Greeke, wherein the barbarous king with great cunning perſuaded the biſhop to poyſon *Zemes* his brother, as a man of a religion altogether contrarie to his: for indeed of him alone for his great vertues *Baiazet* ſtood in feare and doubt, leaſt hee ſhould by ſome chance eſcape out of priſon to the troubling of his ſtate. For the performance of this his requeſt, he promiſed faithfully to pay vnto the biſhop two hundred thouſand duckats, and neuer after, ſo long as he liued, to take vp armes againſt the Chriſtians. Otherwiſe than

Baiazet ſtudeth Dautius his embaſſadour to Alexander biſhop of Rome.

E had his father *Mahomet* and his grandfather *Amurath* done, who both as deadly enemies vnto the name of Chriſtians, neuer ceaſed by continuall warres to worke their woe.

But *George* the biſhops embaſſadour, and *Dautius*, trauelling towards ITALIE, and hauing now happely paſſed the Adriaticke, as they were about to haue landed at ANCONA were bourded by *Io. Rouereus*, brother to *Iulianus* the Cardinall (a man of great account in thoſe quarters) and cleane quit of their treaſure and whatſoeuer elſe they had aboord. *Rouereus* pretending for the defence of the fact, That the biſhop did owe him a great ſumme of money, due vnto him for his good ſeruice done in the time of *Innocentius* his predeceſſour, for which he now paied himſelfe. Neither could the biſhop, much troubled with that iniurie, euer after recouer any one part thereof, although he threatened vengeance with fire and ſword, and alſo ſought for recompence

Io. Rouereus robbeth the Turks embaſſadour.

F of the Venetians, whom it concerned to ſaue the Turkes harmeleſſe in thoſe ſeas: for why, *Rouereus* bearing himſelfe vpon the French, which were now vpon comming, whoſe faction he followed, kept the money, and ſet at nought the biſhops thundering curſes and vaine threats. *Dautius* himſelfe, *Baiazets* embaſſadour, being ſet on ſhore, was glad to goe on foot to ANCONA; and ſo from thence paſſing vp the riuer Padus, came to *Franciſcus Gonzaga*, duke of MANTVA, of whom (for the ancient friendſhip betwixt him and *Baiazet*) he was courteouſly entertained

and

and furniſhed both with money and apparell, and ſo ſpoiled returned into GRECIA, to carrie G
newes vnto his maſter how he had ſped.

When *Baiazet* vnderſtood by *Dautius* the euill ſucceſſe he had in his late iourney, he forthwith ſent *Muſtapha* one of the Baſſaes of the court, vnto the great Biſhop *Alexander*, with like inſtructions as he had before giuen to *Dautius*: who with better hap arriued in ITALIE, and came to ROME in ſafetie; where he forgot no part of that was giuen him in charge by his great maſter. But amongſt many other things, the life of *Zemes* was that he moſt ſought for at the Biſhops hands.

1495 At the ſame time, which was in the yeare 1495, the French king *Charles* the eight of that name, paſſing through the heart of ITALIE with a ſtrong armie againſt *Alphonſus* king of NA- H
PLES: and taking his way without leaue through the citie of ROME, ſo terrified *Alexander* the biſhop, who (as we haue before ſaid) altogither fauoured, and as much as in him lay furthered the cauſe of *Alphonſus*; that he was glad to yeeld to all ſuch articles and conditions as it pleaſed him then to demaund: not purpoſing in himſelfe at all the performance of any of thoſe things, which for feare he had with great ſolemnitie promiſed, as the ſequell of the matter afterwards declared. Amongſt other things, he was enforced to giue vnto the king his graceleſſe ſon *Cæſar Borgia Valentinus* (then one of the cardinals) in hoſtage, for the performance of the other of his promiſes. Which diſgrace the craftie old biſhop ſought to couer, by gracing his ſonne with the title of his legate: and with him he was alſo enforced to deliuer *Zemes* the Turke, *Baiazet* his brother his honourable priſoner; who to the great profit of the biſhop and his predeceſſor, had I
Zemes dieth, poiſoned by Alexander Biſhop of Rome. remained in ſafe cuſtodie at ROME about the ſpace of ſeauen yeares. But *Zemes* within three daies after he was deliuered vnto the French, died at CAIETA, being before his deliuerance poiſoned (as it was thought) with a powder of wonderfull whiteneſſe and pleaſant taſte; whoſe power was not preſently to kill, but by little & little diſperſing the force therof, did in ſhort time bring moſt aſſured death: which pleaſant poiſon, *Alexander* the biſhop skilfull in that practiſe (corrupted by *Baiazet* his gold, and enuying ſo great a good vnto the French) had cauſed to be cunningly mingled with the ſugar wherewith *Zemes* vſed to temper the water which he commonly dranke. His dead bodie was not long after ſent to *Baiazet*, by *Muſtapha* his embaſſador, who to the great contentment of his maſter, had thus contriued his death with the biſhop. Not long after this dead bodie ſo farre brought, was by the appointment of *Baiazet*, honourably en- K
terred amongſt his aunceſtors at PRVSA. *Cæſar Borgia* alſo the biſhops ſonne, a little before giuen in hoſtage vnto the French king, deceiuing his keepers at VELITRAS, returned againe
The euill life of Cæſar Borgia. to ROME before the French king was come to NAPLES. This wicked impe come of an euil ſtrain, not worth the remembrance but by way of deteſtation, (the very monſter of nature, if a man ſhould well conſider the courſe of his whole life) ſhortly after his eſcape, enuying at the honour of *Candianus* his brother, who then was Generall ouer the biſhop his fathers forces, which were at that time great: when he had one night merily ſupped with his ſaid brother with their mother *Vannotia*, traiterouſly cauſed him to be vnawares murdered in the ſtreets as he was going home, and his dead bodie to be caſt into the riuer of Tiber. Then caſting off his prieſtly habit with his Cardinals roabs, he tooke vpon him the leading of his fathers armie in his brothers ſtead, and L
gaue himſelfe wholy to martiall affaires: a vocation beſt fitting his fierce and bloudie diſpoſition. And with exceeding prodigalitie, wherwith he exhauſted his fathers coffers and the treaſures of the church, bound faſt vnto him deſperat ruffians and ſouldiers (eſpecially Spaniards, his fathers countrey men) ſuch as he knew fitteſt to ſerue for the execution of his moſt horrible deuiſes. Which manner of his proceedings, although they were ſuch as all good men deteſted, yet did the old hypocrit his father winke thereat, fearing as it was thought, to be murdered of the viper himſelfe, when it ſhould ſerue for his purpoſe. Now when he had thus ſtrengthned himſelfe, and that he was become a terrour to all the nobilitie of ROME and the ſeigniories thereabout, he by the deuiſe and helpe of his father (who deſired nothing more than to make him great) firſt draue the moſt honourable family of the *Columnij* out of the citie, and afterwards out of LATI- M
VM: and by moſt execrable treacherie, poiſoned or killed the honourable perſonages of the great houſes of the *Vrſini* and *Caetani*; taking vnto himſelfe their lands and poſſeſſions. With like crueltie he ſtrangled at one time foure noblemen of the *Camertes*: and draue *Guido Feltrius* out of VRBIN. He tooke the citie of PISAVRVM from *Io. Sforția*, who with much difficultie eſcaped his bloudie hands: and draue the *Malateſtaes* out of ARIMINVM. The great lady *Catherine*

A *rine Sforția* he thruſt out of FORVM LIVII and FORVM CORNELII, and ſhamefully led her in triumph through ROME. And neuer ſatisfied with blond, which he without meaſure ſhed, he tooke the citie of FAVENTIA from *Aſtor Manfredus*, a young gentleman of rare perfection: whom after the beaſtly tyrant had moſt horribly abuſed againſt nature, he cauſed to be cruelly ſtrangled, and his dead bodie to be caſt into Tiber. Hauing thus filled the meaſure of his iniquitie, and as a fretting canker, hauing either deuoured or driuen into exile moſt part of the Roman nobilitie; and purpoſing by the ſupportation of his father, to make himſelfe lord and ſoueraign both of the citie, and of all LATIVM; in the pride of his thoughts he was by the hand of the moſt higheſt attached and caſt downe, and that by ſuch meanes as he leaſt feared. For being with his
B father at a ſolemn ſupper in the Vaticane, of purpoſe prepared for the deſtruction of certain rich Cardinals and ſome other honourable citizens, they were both poiſoned by the fatall errour of one of the waiters; who miſtaking of a flagon, gaue the poiſoned wine to the accurſed biſhop and his ſonne, which was prepared for the gueſts: wherof the old biſhop in few daies after died. But his ſonne who had drunke the ſame more delaied with water, although he died not of long time after, yet preſently fell into ſuch an extreame ſickneſſe, that he was not able to helpe himſelfe, or to commaund his deſperat followers, whereof he had great ſtore: but lying ſicke, in ſhort time ſaw himſelfe of them forſaken, and two of his enemies, *Pius* the Third, and *Iulius* the Second, one after another ſitting in his fathers place. Of which two, *Pius* enioyed that pontificall dignitie but ſixteene daies: and *Iulius* ſucceeding him, cauſed this *Cæſar Borgia* (who of right
C had deſerued a thouſand deaths) to be ſhut vp in the caſtle called MOLES ADRIANI, from whence he ſet him at libertie vpon the deliuerie of certaine ſtrong holds which were yet holden by his garriſons. After he had thus rid himſelfe out of *Iulius* the biſhops hands, he fled to OSTIA, and ſo by ſea to NAPLES: where he was by the commandement of *Ferdinand* king of SPAINE, apprehended by *Conſaluus* the Great, and tranſported into SPAINE; for feare leaſt he being of a moſt troubleſome nature, and much reſorted vnto by his old fauourits, ſhould raiſe ſome new ſtirs in ITALIE. He was no ſooner arriued in SPAINE, but he was caſt into priſon in the caſtle of MEDINA, where after he had lien three yeares he deceiued his keepers, and with a rope which he had gotten, let himſelfe downe from an high tower of the caſtle: and ſo eſcaping, fled to the king of NAVARRE, whom he afterwards ſerued in his wars, and was in an hoat
D ſkirmiſh againſt the kings enemies (wherein he had obtained the victorie) ſlaine with a ſmall ſhot. Vnworthy after ſo many horrible villanies, to haue ended his daies ſo honourably. His dead bodie was found ſtript, and ſo brought vnto the king vpon a bad beaſt, as if it had beene a dead calfe all naked; which was by his commandement honourably buried at PAMPILONA.

The death of Ceſar Borgia.

But to returne againe from whence we haue ſomething too long with this troubleſome body gone aſtray. The French king hauing thus loſt both his great hoſtages, *Zemes* the Turke by death, and the Cardinall *Borgia* by eſcape, held on his iourney towards NAPLES: and with wonderfull ſucceſſe preuailed as he went, all places yeelding vnto him without any great reſiſtance. *Alphonſus* ſeeing himſelfe deſtitute of ſuch aid as he had in vaine requeſted both of the Turkiſh emperour and of the Venetians, and now almoſt beſet with his mightie enemy, to
E whom ſo many ſtrong places had in ſhorter time been deliuered than any man had before imagined; and withall, conſidering with himſelfe, how that he had loſt the hearts of his ſubiects (the ſtrongeſt defence of princes) for that moſt of the nobilitie, and eſpecially the Neapolitans, hated him for his too much ſeueritie in puniſhing the offenders in the late rebellion, wherein the princes of SARNE and SALERNE were chiefe; and the common people were no leſſe offended with the grieuous and heauy exactions, required of them for the maintenance of theſe warres, inſomuch that their murmuring ſpeeches came oftentimes to his owne hearing; as oftentimes it falleth out, That the hatred of the ſubiects againſt their princes, which hath for feare of long time beene diſſembled during their proſperitie, more frankly and fiercely breaketh out in their declining eſtate: For theſe cauſes, *Alphonſus* fearing to be forſaken of his people, as a man in deſ-
F paire, with aboundance of tears openly in the ſight of al the Neapolitans, reſigned his kingdom of NAPLES vnto his ſonne *Ferdinand*, when as he had as yet ſcarcely raigned one whole yeare after the death of *Ferdinand* his father: and with foure gallies paſſed ouer to MAZERRA a citie of CICILIA. His ſon *Ferdinand*, a prince of rare perfection and ſingularly graced with all the vertues of true nobilitie, and thereto deerely beloued of all the people, was to the wonderfull contentment of the Neapolitans with great ioy and acclamations ſaluted king: and ſo hauing performed

The French king inuadeth Naples.

formed all the ceremonies belonging to his coronation, returned preſently to his armie. By this G
time the French King with all his forces was entered farre into the kingdome of NAPLES: and
hauing taken by aſſault certaine cities which truſted too much to their owne ſtrength, ſtrucke
ſuch a generall terrour into the minds of the Neapolitanes, that they thought no place now
ſtrong enough to abide his batteries, or power ſufficient to encounter his forces. *Ferdinand* the
young King with his armie had taken the ſtraits of the forreſt of *S. Germane*, thereby to impeach
the further paſſage of the French King. But whileſt he was there buſied, he was ſuddenly aduer-
tiſed, that *Fabritius Columna* with a great power of Frenchmen had by the Appenines broken
into CAMPANIA, and ſo was marching towards him: wherefore doubting to be ſhut vp be-
twixt two ſtrong armies of the enemies, he retired ſpeedily to CAPVA, a ſtrong citie ſituat vpon
the riuer Vulturnus; purpoſing there by meanes of that deepe riuer, to ſtay the French from H
paſſing farther. But whileſt he lay there, newes was brought vnto him, That all the citie of
NAPLES was in an vprore, and that the citizens were all vp in armes, as men in doubt which
way to turne themſelues. *Ferdinand* not a little troubled with theſe bad newes, commended
Ferdinand departeth from Capua to paciſie an vprore at Naples the charge of his armie and the defence of the citie of CAPVA to his chiefe captaines, and rid
himſelfe in poſt backe againe to NAPLES.

It is a ſtrange thing to tell, what a ſudden alteration enſued vpon his arriuall there: for ſud-
denly all the tumult was appeaſed, euery man laid downe his armes, and welcommed him with
a generall gratulation: for he was a man of a great and an inuincible courage, and of ſo comely
a perſonage as might eaſily win the hearts of his ſubiects; inſomuch, that when he earneſtly re-
queſted them, that they would not traiterouſly betray him vnto his barbarous & cruell enemies, I
being their naturall King, or rather their brother borne and brought vp amongſt them: they all
with one conſent anſwered, That they would ſpend their liues and goods in his quarrell, ſo long
as he ſhould keepe his armie whole, and defend the citie of CAPVA: But if it ſhould ſo chance,
that the Aragonians ſhould be ouerthrowne, or elſe for feare abandon that citie, and the French
King, as victor, to approch the citie of NAPLES; he ſhould doe both againſt reaſon and equitie, if
by exacting fidelitie and allegeance of his ſubiects, apprehended with ſo iuſt a feare, he ſhould ſo
expoſe that noble citie with the fruitfull countrey thereabout, to be ſpoiled and deſtroyed by a
mercileſſe and cruell enemie. Whileſt *Ferdinand* was thus buſied in appeaſing and confirming
his wauering ſubiects at NAPLES, the French King had taken diuers cities, and was come before K
CAPVA. The citizens of CAPVA although they were alwayes well affected to the Aragonian
Kings: yet ſeeing the French King as a moſt violent tempeſt to beare downe all before him, be-
gan now to conſult amongſt themſelues of yeelding vp the citie; whereunto they were the
more prickt forward, by the ſudden reuolt of the great captaine *Triuultius* with his followers,
as alſo by the departure of *Verginius* and *Petilianus*, two great and famous commanders, who
ſeeing themſelues forſaken of *Triuultius*, fled with their companies vnto the citie of NOLA. In
this diſcomfiture of King *Ferdinand* his armie, the Frenchmen had entered into the ſuburbs of
the citie: which thing *Gothfredus* and *Gaſpar* (two valiant Germane captaines) beholding, ſallied
with their companies out of the citie, of purpoſe to abate the pride of the French, & to confirme
the doubtfull citizens: Theſe worthie captaines when they had with exceeding valour repulſed L
the French, and thought to haue againe returned into the citie, could not be ſuffered to enter, but
were by the citizens ſhut out of the gate, in danger to haue had their throats cut by the enemie.
In which perplexitie they were glad vpon their knees to entreat the cowardly citizens ſtanding
vpon the wals, not in ſuch traiterous manner to betray their friends readie in their defence to be-
ſtow their liues: and with much entreating, at length obtained of thoſe heartleſſe men, that they
might by ten and ten in a companie be receiued in at one gate of the citie, and ſo put out at ano-
ther, fartheſt from the danger of the enemie: in which ſort when they had paſſed through the
citie, they tooke the way towards NAPLES: and vpon the way met with the king at AVERSA,
vnto whom they declared all that had happened in his abſence at CAPVA. Who although he
ſaw his armie diſperſed, and all things now deſperat, yet went he on forward, and came to the M
very gates of CAPVA, and there called vpon diuers of the cheeſemen of the citie, requiring to
be let in. But when he ſaw there was none to giue him anſwer, & an enſigne of the French king
diſplayed vpon the wall, in token that the citie was become French, he returned to NAPLES:
where he found the gates now ſhut againſt him, and all the citiſens vp againe in armes, and not
willing to receiue any of the ſouldiors which came from CAPVA, more than the king himſelfe:

for

A for flying fame preuenting his returne, had filled euery corner of the citie with report, That all the cheefe captains of his armie were either gone ouer to the enemie, or elſe for ſafegard of their liues fled; That the whole armie was broken vp, and CAPVA yeelded to the French. Wherefore the Neapolitanes framing their fancies according to the condition of the time, began now alſo to fawne vpon the good fortune of the French, and to haue king *Ferdinand* in contempt: which he well perceiuing, and fetching a compaſſe farther off from the citie, came vnto the caſtle, whereinto he was receiued with his followers by his faithfull captaines therein before left. But prouidently foreſeeing that he could not there long ſtay, but that he ſhould be beſieged by his enemies both by ſea and land, he commended the keeping of that peece vnto *Alphonſus D'a-*
B *ualus*, a moſt valiant captaine, and departed himſelfe with twentie gallies well appointed vnto ÆNVRIA, an Iſland not farre from NAPLES, hauing in it a commodious harbour and a ſtrong caſtle: where fortune, neuer firme but in miſerie, ſeemed againe to deride the poore remainder of his honor: For comming thether, the captaine of the caſtle, vnworthely named *Iuſtus*, forgetting his dutie towards his ſoueraigne, of whom he had before receiued many extraordinarie fauours, moſt traiterouſly now in his ſo hard diſtreſſe ſhut the gates of the caſtle againſt him at his landing, and vnkindly refuſed to receiue him. With which vnexpected ingratitude, the poore king was wonderfully perplexed and almoſt abaſhed: yet with earneſt entreatie & ample commemoration of the benefits and preferments which both his father and himſelfe had in times paſt beſtowed vpon him, he preuailed ſo much with this vnthankfull man, that he was content to
C receiue him into the caſtle, ſo that he would come but himſelfe alone: of which his offer, when no more could be got, the king ſeemed to accept. So the captaine hauing opened a port to receiue him in, was in the very entrance thereof ſuddenly ſtabd to the heart with a dagger by king *Ferdinand* and ſlain in the middeſt of his armed ſouldiours. Which was done with ſuch a countenance and maieſtie, that the warders with their weapons in their hands, diſmaied with his look, forthwith at his commandement opened the gate, and receiued him in with all his followers. Whereby it appeareth, That in the countenance of princes reſteth a certaine diuine maieſtie, in all fortunes aboue the common courſe of nature: which is of power to daunt the hearts of moſt diſloyall traitors in the performance of their vnnaturall treaſons. The next day after the depar-
ture of king *Ferdinand* from the caſtle of NAPLES, *Charles* the French king was receiued into
D the citie with ſuch pompe, triumph, and acclamation of the Neapolitanes, as if they had euen then by the benefit of that forraine king been reſtored vnto perfect liberty, and deliuered out of ſome long and hard bondage. Shortly after the caſtle of NAPLES, with all the ſtrong places thereabout, were yeelded vnto the French, and embaſſadours ſent from all the princes and people of that kingdome, yeelding themſelues into the power of the French king. Then *Ferdinand* ſeeing all loſt and gone, departed from ÆNARIA, where he lay expecting the euent of his hard fortune, and ſailed into SICILIA. Thus the houſe of ARAGON in leſſe than fiue moneths loſt the kingdome of NAPLES, about 63 yeares after that it was firſt taken from the French by *Alphonſus* the elder, this *Ferdinand* his great grandfather.

A moſt reſolute act of king Ferdinand.

Charles the French king receiued into Naples.

The report of the great preparation made by the French for this warre, had long before fil-
E led the eares of them which dwelt in any part of the Turks dominions in EVROPE: but when they ſaw the French enſignes diſplayed vpon the wals of the caſtles and ſtrong townes alongſt the coaſt of CALABRIA and SALERNE, ſuch a ſudden feare fell vpon the Turks garriſons alongſt the coaſt of EPIRVS and MACEDONIA on the other ſide of the Adriatike, ouer againſt that part of ITALIE, that many of them forſooke their charge: the Chriſtians in thoſe places, as alſo in GRÆCIA and PELOPONESVS beginning then to lift vp their heads in hope of their deliuerance, and to make the beſt preparation they could to ioine with the French againſt the Turks: but eſpecially the rough and wild people inhabiting the high mountains called ACROCHERAVNII in the borders of EPIRVS, who preſently tooke vp armes, refuſing to be any longer tributarie vnto the Turkiſh emperour.

F This proſperous and ſpeedie ſucceſſe of the French king in the conqueſt of NAPLES, filled the minds of moſt of the Chriſtian princes, as alſo of the Turkiſh emperour, with a doubtull expectation, whither his greatneſſe would grow: many being of opinion, that he couertly affected the empire of ROME, and to make himſelfe the ſole monarch of ITALY. Which conceit no little troubled both the great Biſhop *Alexander*, and *Maximilian* then emperour. *Baiazet* alſo feared much, leaſt he ſhould vpon the ſuddaine turne his forces into EPIRVS or GRÆCIA, to

his

his no ſmall diſquiet. And *Ferdinand*, the aduiſed king of SPAINE, was no leſſe carefull for the G
ſafetie of SILICIA. *Lodouicus Sforti a* alſo (ſhortly after created duke of MILLAN, the cheefe
occaſion of the French kings comming into ITALIE, and a great aider of him in thoſe warres)
began now to conſider better of the matter, and to ſtand in doubt of the king, whom he well
perceiued to make ſmall reckoning of his word or promiſe, ſo that he might thereby enlarge his
dominions. And the Venetians, who in all theſe wars had ſtood looking on as neuters (in hope
that when the Aragonians and French had with long warres, which they vainely imagined, well
weakened one another, that they might then at their pleaſure ſhare out ſomething for them-
ſelues) were now in doubt with the reſt of the ſtates of ITALIE to loſe ſome part of their owne
territorie: for now there was no prince or ſtate in ITALIE able to oppoſe themſelues againſt H
the French, but ſtood as it were all at his deuotion.

A great league made by diuers Chriſtian princes againſt the French king.

Wherefore the aforeſaid princes, namely *Maximilian* the emperour, *Ferdinand* king of
SPAINE, *Alexander* Biſhop of ROME, the ſtate of VENICE, and *Lodouicus Sforti a* duke of
MILLAN, for the more aſſurance of their eſtates, by their embaſſadors ſpeedily ſent from one
to another, concluded a ſtrong league amongſt themſelues, wherof thee cheefe capitulation was,
That if any of theſe confederates ſhould vpon their owne accord make warre vpon any other
prince, they ſhould do it vpon their own charges: but if any of them ſhould chance to be inuaded
by any other, that then euery one of theſe confederates ſhould of their owne charge ſend foure
thouſand horſe and ten thouſand foot in aid of their confederate ſo inuaded, vntill the warres
were ended: which league was to endure for twentie yeares. The fame of this league was wel- I
come to many other princes, but eſpecially to *Baiazet*, who now feared nothing more than the
forces of the French, and therefore had offered vnto the Venetians, to aid them both by ſea and
land againſt the French, if their affaires ſhould ſo require. This league ſo much pleaſed not other
princes, but it troubled the French king more, as of purpoſe made againſt him, although it was
by the confederates pretended to be made onely for their owne ſafetie. Wherefore he with all
expedition placed his beſt captaines with ſtrong garriſons in all the cities & ſtrong holds of the
kingdome of NAPLES, and left *Mompenſer* his viceroy in the citie of NAPLES, and with the
reſt of his armie returned towards FRAVNCE; purpoſing by the way as he went to terrifie the
diſſembling Biſhop, ſo if it were poſſible to draw him from the league, and afterwards to deale
with *Sforti a* and the reſt as he might. But when he was come neere vnto ROME, the Biſhop for K
feare fled out of the citie to PERVSIVM, intending from thence to haue fled to VENICE, if
the French king ſhould haue further purſued him. *Charles* deceiued of his purpoſe, in peacea-
ble manner entered the citie, and there ſtayed three daies and ſo depar ted; vſing violence againſt
none, but againſt ſuch as were well knowne to be of the Aragonian faction. From ROME he
marched to PISA, and ſo with much paine paſſing the Appenines, was at the riuer of Tarrus,
not farre from PARMA, ſet vpon by *Franciſcus Gonzaga* duke of MANTVA, generall of a great
armie which the Venetians and *Sforti a* had raiſed vpon the ſudden to haue ſtopped his paſſage:
in which battaile he was in great danger to haue beene taken or ſlaine, and there loſt his tents,
with all the rich ſpoile gotten in the rich kingdome of NAPLES: yet hauing at length with great
ſlaughter valiantly repulſed his enemies, he afterwards returned in ſafetie home. L

Ferdinand recouereth his kingdome of Naples from the French, and dieth.

About the ſame time that this battell was fought at Tarrus, the yong king *Ferdinand*, lately
driuen out of his kingdome by the French king, returned againe out of CICILIA to NAPLES:
where he was ioyfully receiued of the Neapolitanes, and by the helpe of his friends (but eſpeci-
ally of the great *Conſaluus*, ſent in his aid by *Ferdinand* king of SPAINE) in leſſe than a yeares
ſpace recouered the kingdome of NAPLES againe from the French: and then dying without
iſſue, left the ſame vnto his vncle *Federicus*: wherein the vncetainetie of worldly honours, the
cheefe felicitie of ambitious minds, is well to be noted; when as in that one kingdome the cheefe
gouernment was ſix times changed in leſſe than the ſpace of three yeares. For firſt *Ferdinand*
the elder dying, left that kingdome vnto his ſonne *Alphonſus*, at ſuch time as the French king
was making preparation for theſe warres: *Alphonſus* deſpairing of his owne forces, reſigned the M
kingdome to his ſonne *Ferdinand*, when he had ſcarcely raigned fully a yeare: *Ferdinand* in leſſe
than three moneths was driuen quite out of ITALIE by *Charles* the French king: *Charles* poſ-
ſeſſed of the kingdome, in ſhort time after was againe diſpoſſeſſed by the ſame *Ferdinand*: *Fer-
dinand* hauing with much trouble thruſt out the French, died within leſſe than a yeare: After
whom ſucceeded *Federicus* his vncle, no leſſe vnfortunate than the reſt. And *Charles* the French
king

A king himſelfe liued not long after, but dyed ſuddainly as he came from playing at Tenniſe, being then but ſeuen and twentie yeres old, leauing the floriſhing kingdome of FRANCE, with the troubleſome title pretended to the kingdome of NAPLES, vnto *Lewes* his ſucceſſour, who liued with great trouble to conquer the ſame, and with greater griefe to looſe it againe. *The death of Charles the French king.* 1496

But to returne againe to the courſe of our hiſtorie, from whence the great occurrents of that time (not altogether impertinent to our purpoſe) haue a little to farre led vs. *Baiazet* deliuered of two great feares, firſt by the death of his brother *Zemes*, and after by the caſting out of the French out of NAPLES; began now to turne his forces vpon the Chriſtians, and by his lieutenant *Bali-beg*, Sanzacke of SILISTRA, inuaded the countries of PODOLIA and RVSSIA, being B part of the Polonian kingdome, where the Turks did great harme, and carried away many priſoners. But comming againe the ſecond time, and making ſuch like ſpoile as before, they ſtayed ſo long, that the cold of the Winter (which in thoſe countries is verie extreame) was now come on: and in their returne, as they were about to haue paſſed through MOLDAVIA, they were by *Stephanus*, prince of that countrie, denied both paſſage and victuals, and forced to take the way alongſt the ſea coaſt: where many of them ſtragling from their armie, were by the way cut off and ſlaine by the Moldauians; and the reſt, what by the extremitie of the cold; what for want of food, and foulenеſſe of the way, periſhed: ſo that of that great armie verie few returned home. The Turks hiſtories report, That in this expedition were loſt fortie thouſand Turkes. 1497 *The Turke inuade Podolia & Ruſſia, and in their returne are for moſt part loſt.*

C He ſent alſo *Cadumes* one of his Baſſaes into ILLIRIA; who ſpoyling that countrie, with a part of CROATIA, was encountred by nine thouſand Croatians and Hungarians neere vnto the riuer Moraua, vnder the leading of countie *Bernard Francopaine*: where after a cruell and bloudie fight, the Chriſtians were put to the worſe, and aboue ſeuen thouſand of them ſlaine; the reſt ſaued themſelues by flight through the mountaines and woods. Of the Chriſtians that were loſt, manie were drowned in Moraua, chuſing rather ſo to end their daies than to fall into the hands of their cruell enemies. This ouerthrow was imputed to the Generall, who would needs giue the Turkes battell in plaine field, although he was earneſtly intreated by countie *Io. Torquatus* to haue kept the ſtraits of that countrie, whereby he might haue had great aduantage of the enemie. *Torquatus* himſelfe hauing loſt all his horſemen in that battell, and his horſe killed D vnder him, fought valiantly on foot, vntill hee was by the multitude of his enemies oppreſſed and ſlaine. The Baſſa to giue *Baiazet* a ſure teſtimonie of the victorie, cauſed all the noſes of the ſlaine Chriſtians to be cut off and put vpon ſtrings, and ſo by wagon ſent them as a barbarous preſent to CONSTANTINOPLE. After the death of *Charles* the French king, *Lewes* the twelfth of that name hauing obtained that kingdome, writ himſelfe alſo duke of MILLAN, as diſcended of one of the daughters of *Io. Galeatius* firſt duke of MILLAN: in which his ſuppoſed right he was fully reſolued to make warre vpon *Sforția* then duke of MILLAN. And for his better ſucceſſe in thoſe warres, ſought by all meanes he could, to draw ſome other of the princes and ſtates of ITALIE into the fellowſhip of that intended warre; but aboue all others the Venetians, as moſt commodious for his purpoſe, with whom he made a firme league; and for the aide E they were to giue him, couenanted that they ſhould haue for their ſhare, the citie of CREMONA, with all the pleaſant countrey about ADDVA, then part of *Sforția* his dominion: which was afterwards accordingly performed.

Sforția vnderſtanding of this compact made againſt him, and knowing himſelfe farre too weake of himſelfe to ſtand againſt ſo puiſſant enemies; attempted firſt to ſet *Maximilian* the emperour, with the ſtates of GERMANIE vpon the French king: But that not ſorting to his deſire, he ſought to agree with the king by offering to hold his dukedome of him, by paying him a yearely tribute. After he had thus in vaine proued all the meanes he could deuiſe to haue appeaſed the French king, & prouided for his own ſaftie; he by his embaſſadors ſent of purpoſe, 1498 certified *Baiazet* of the confederation betwixt the French king and the Venetians, and that their F purpoſe was, after they had oppreſſed him, and ſome other of the ſtates of ITALIE, then with their vnited forces to inuade his dominions: and that therfore it were good for him in time to looke vnto it, and to giue aide againſt thoſe which would in ſhort time become his moſt dangerous enemies. By this meanes the Duke was in good hope, ſo to buſie the Venetians by bringing the Turke vpon them, as that they ſhould ſtand the French in ſmall ſtead. At which time alſo the embaſſadors of FLORENCE did what they could to pricke forward the Turke to make

warres vpon the Venetians; for the malice they bare against them for protecting them of PISA G
against the oppression of the Florentines.

Baiazet perſuaded by the embaſſadors, and calling to remembrance the iniuries before done him by the Venetians; firſt in giuing aid to *Iohn Caſtriot* the ſonne of *Scanderbeg*, and *Iohn Cher-nouich* another prince of EPIRVS (whereby he loſt a great part of that countrey, and was alſo farther inforced to yeeld to ſuch conditions as altogither ſtood not with his honour,) and againe by denying to giue his fleet leaue to put into their harbours in CYPRVS, in the time of his warres againſt the Sultan of ÆGIPT: all which he was glad then to endure, for feare leaſt that his brother *Zemes* (then liuing) ſhould by their means be ſet vp againſt him; promiſed now to do what the embaſſadors had requeſted: glad in his mind that the diſcord of the Chriſtian princes had preſented vnto him ſo fit an opportunitie of reuenge. H

1499 Hereupon he made great preparation both by ſea and land againſt the Venetians, and vpon the ſudden cauſed *Scander Baſſa* (his lieutenant in ILLYRIA) with twelue thouſand horſe to break into the countrie of FRIVLI, part of the Venetian territorie vpon the frontires of ITALIE. The Baſſa as he had in charge, paſſing ouer diuers great riuers, at length entred the countrie, burning and deſtroying all before him as farre as LIQVENTIA, carrying away with him all the poore countrie people priſoners. But when he was come to the banks of TILIAVENTVM, and vnderſtood that he came too late to pleaſure the duke of MILLAN (for why, the French with the Venetians had before without reſiſtance driuen him quite out of ITALIE and GERMANIE) he there, with more than barbarous crueltie put foure thouſand poore priſoners to the ſword: and ſo hauing filled the countrey with mourning and with bloud, returned from whence he came, loaded with the ſpoile of that rich countrie. I

Friuly part of the Venetian territorie ſpoyled by the Turks

At the ſame time alſo, *Baiazet* put to ſea ſuch a fleet as none of his predeceſſors had before ſet forth; and with a great armie in perſon himſelfe marched alongſt the ſea coaſt of MOREA, in ſuch ſort, as that his armie by land and his fleet at ſea (as neere as they could) kept euen pace, the one within ſight of the other. Neither were the Venetians vnmindfull of themſelues, but ſet forth a ſtrong fleet vnder the charge of *Anthonie Grimani* their Admirall; in number farre inferiour to the Turkes, but for equipage, ſtrength, skilfull marriners, and all other maner of warlike prouiſion, much ſuperiour. For which cauſe the Turkes, although defied and braued by the Venetians, yet durſt not at the firſt ioyne with them in battell; but ſtill crept alongſt the coaſt of MOREA, not daring to put farther off into the ſea. In this their courſe, the Venetians troubled K
them exceedingly, ſomtimes making ſhew as if they would haue conſtrained them to fight, and otherwhiles giuing them chaſe, neuer departing far from them; wiſely accounting it right good ſeruice, if they could but keepe that hugie fleet from landing in ITALIE, or other place of the Venetian territorie. Moſt men were in good hope, that if thoſe great fleets ſhould haue ioyned in battell, the Venetians ſhould haue had a notable victorie; for that the enemie as afraid, kept ſo dangerous a courſe and ſo neere the maine. The longer they thus ſayled, the more was the ſtate of VENICE offended with their Admirall, that he contrarie to all expectation delaied to fight, and ſtill ſuffered the dangerous enemie to approach neerer and neerer their territories: and there were none which had not rather he ſhould haue ſet all vpon the hazard of one battel, than to protract by delay a long and doubtfull warre. Whileſt all mens minds were thus in ex- L
pectation of ſome great exploit to be done vpon the enemie, newes came to the citie, That the Turkes fleet had put into the hauen SAPIENTIA in the Iſland SPHRAGA, to water, and was there embayed by the Venetians. This report was of moſt men ioyfully receiued, as if the victorie had been alreadie aſſured: and ſo much the more, for that it was vainly ſuppoſed, that it would be gained without any great loſſe. But others which better knew the place, deemed of the matter farre otherwiſe, ſaying, That the place wherein the enemie lay was ſuch, as that he might ſafely at his pleaſure depart thence. Yet forſomuch as the Turkes fleet was more ſubiect vnto danger in putting out of the harbour than in the wide ſea, there was no man but was of opinion, That the Venetian Admirall would ſet vpon them as they ſhould come forth againe. Whileſt men were thus diuining too and fro, and the Venetians attended the comming forth of the ene- M
mies fleet, it fortuned that *Andreas Lauredanus*, and *Albanus Armerius* (two valiant gentlemen) but a little before come from CORCYRA of purpoſe to be preſente at the battell, were the firſt that began the fight; and with their two nimble ſhips (after they had changed a few bullets) boorded a tall ſhip of the Turkes, being of ſuch beautie and burthen that ſhe ſeemed rather a ca-

Fight at ſea betwixt the Turks and the Venetians.

ſtle

A ſtle than a ſhip, whereof one *Barach* of SMYRNA (a notable pirat) was captaine: who after a long and cruell fight, perceiuing that he muſt either yeeld or by force be taken, deſperately ſet fire on his owne ſhip, by rage whereof both ſhe and the Venetian ſhips faſt grapled vnto her, were all three together burnt down to the water: many of the men (to ſhun the violence of the fire) leapt ouer boord into the ſea, where ſome of them were taken vp by other ſhips, and ſome perilled. Some few other of the Venetian fleet couragiouſly aſſailed the Turkes at their comming out; and doing great harme, put the Turkes whole fleet in no ſmall feare. But the moſt part of the Venetian gallies lay looking on a farre off; vnto whom the other before in fight with the Turks after they had done what they could, retired alſo. But by that they had done, it appeared plain-
B ly that the Venetian Admirall that day let ſlip out of his hands a moſt notable victorie, if he as a reſolute man had with his whole fleet charged the enemie.

After this fight the Turkes held on their courſe, ſtill keeping MOREA on the right hand, whom the Venetians ſtill followed: at length the Turkes fleet was come to the entrance of the gulfe of PATRVS, where the Venetians againe faintly ſetting vpon them, ſuffered them to recouer the gulfe; with no leſſe diſhonour than they had before let them eſcape at the port SAPIENTIA. For the Venetians, hauing the aduantage of the place, and better appointed for fight at ſea, might eaſily (as it was ſuppoſed) haue gained the victorie, if the commanders (but eſpecially the Admirall) had bin ſo forward in the ſeruice as became men of their place. But many of them afraid to fight, lay aloofe; ſo that *Dauthes* the Turks Admiral (who perceiuing himſelfe too weak,
C had purpoſed to haue run his gallies on ſhoare, and ſo to haue fled to the armie at land if he had felt himſelfe ouercharged by the Venetian fleet) had now contrary to his expectation recouered the gulfe he deſired, though not without loſſe of ſome of his gallies. Within this gulfe ſtandeth the ancient citie of NAVPACTVM (now called LEPANTO) then ſubiect to the Venetians, whi- *Lepanto yeelded to the Turkes.* ther *Baiazet* was then come by land with his armie; and now by the comming of his fleet into the gulfe, laid hard ſiege vnto the citie both by ſea and land. They of the citie ſeeing themſelues on euerie ſide beſet with their enemies, without any great reſiſtance fell to compoſition with *Baiazet*, and ſo yeelded vnto him the citie, which the Turkes hold at this day.

Grimanus the Venetian Admirall returning to Venice, was for his euill ſeruice (or rather for that he according to his mild nature had not vſed ſeueritie againſt ſuch captaines as refuſed to
D fight) caſt into priſon: and although he was a man mightily friended, yet was he by a publicke decree baniſhed into one of the Abſytides Iſlands, vpon the coaſt of LIBVRNIA. From the firſt foundation of the citie of VENICE was neuer man impugned with more ſpight, or defended by greater friends: but common hatred preuailing, he was neuertheleſſe exiled. Thus *Baiazet* hauing made a road into the Venetian territorie by *Scander Baſſa*, and taken from them the citie of NAVPACTVM with the countrie thereabout, returned with victorie to CONSTANTINOPLE.

The next yeare following, which was the yeare 1500, *Baiazet* put to ſea a greater and ſtron- 1500
ger fleet than he had the yeare before: and himſelfe in perſon, with a puiſſant armie of an hun- *Methone beſieged both by ſea and land by Baiazet.*
dred and fiftie thouſand men entred by the ſtrait of CORINTH into PELOPONESVS, and mar-
E ching through the countrie came and encamped before the ſtrong citie of METHONE (now called MODON) then vnder the gouernment of the Venetians. At which time his great fleet met him there alſo by ſea, as he had before appointed. When he had thus beſet the citie both by ſea and land, and with long and continuall batterie made three great and faire breaches in the wals, he gaue vnto the ſame two terrible aſſaults, and that with ſuch deſperate furie that many of them which went formoſt vnto the breach, ouerthrown by the preſſe of them which followed, were troden to death. Yet neuertheleſſe the citie was both times valiantly defended by the citizens and garriſon ſouldiors: ſo that when he had done what he could, he was glad to retire from the wals, hauing filled the towne ditches with the bodies of his ſlaine Turkes. The Venetian Admirall *Triuiſanus* lying at the iſle of ZACYNTHVS (but far too weake to fight with the ene-
F mie) in the beginning of the ſiege ſent *Valerius Marcellus* and *Baptiſta Polanus*, with two galliſſes full of men and munition in relieſe of the beſieged: and now doubting their farther wants, ſent *Io. Maripetrus*, *Alex. Cothius* of CORCYRA, and *Cachuris* of HYDRVNTVM, with three other great gallies, with men, munition, and ſuch other things as he thought needfull for the defence of the citie. Theſe three reſolute captaines comming with a full wind, and packing on all their ſailes, brake through the Turks fleet lying in their way, & ran themſelues a ground vnder

the wals of the towne: for they of the towne had ſo barred the hauen for feare of the enemie, G
that they could not that way poſſibly get in. The citizens and ſouldiors ioyfull of the comming
of this freſh ſupplie, and withall fearing leaſt the gallies ſhould be ſet off againe from them by
the enemie, came running by heapes from all parts of the citie towards the ſea, to receiue this
new come aide: which was done with ſuch a confuſed diſorder, that diuers places of the citie
towards the land, were left without defendants, as if there had been no enemie neere. Which
the Ianizaries quickly perceiuing, preſently entred by thoſe forſaken places with little or no re-
ſiſtance. Then the citizens all too late began to make head: for the Ianizaries alreadie entered,
Methone taken by the Turks. made way for the reſt of the armie; which ſwarming into the citie, flew without pitie all that
came in the way, as well Grecians as Venetians, with all the ſouldiours but euen then newly H
landed out of the three gallies. In this ſlaughter *Anthonius Fabritius* and *Bardella*, gouernours
of the towne, with *Andreas Falco*, biſhop of METHONE, in his pontificalibus and his mytre
on his head, were ſlaine: none eſcaped the furie, but ſuch as were for their ſtrength reſerued for
ſeruile labour, or for their beautie, to the victors luſt: and of theſe a thouſand bound faſt toge-
ther in long ropes were brought to *Baiazets* pauillion, and there in his ſight by his commande-
ment cruelly murdered. The cities of CORONE and PYLVS, now called NAVARRINVM)
Corone, Pylus, and Criſſeum yeelded to the Turks. ſometime the dwelling place of old *Neſtor*, terrified with the taking of METHONE, yeelded
themſelues by compoſition to *Baiazet*. This citie of CRISSEVM, now knowne by the name of
Caput S. Galli, was taken alſo by *Cherſeogles*, *Baiazet* his ſonne in law. All theſe were cities be-
longing to the Venetians. NAVPLIVM was alſo beſieged by *Haly Baſſa*, but yet ſtill defended I
by the Venetians. *Baiazet* hauing new fortified the citie of METHONE, and ſtored it with
new inhabitants, left in it a ſtrong garriſon, and ſo with victorie returned to CONSTAN-
TINOPLE.

1501 At this time *Triuiſanus* the Venetian Admirall died (of griefe of mind as ſome ſuppoſed) in
whoſe place the Senate ſent *Benedictus Piſaurius*, a noble and valiant gentleman, who with the
Venetian fleet followed the enemie, then departing from the ſiege of NAVPLIVM, purſuing
them euen vnto the ſtraits of Helleſpontus, ſtill cutting off ſuch as ſtragled or tarried behind the
reſt of the fleet: by which meanes he tooke aboue twentie of their ſhips and gallies, and in his
returne tooke from the Turks the Iſland of ÆGINA, and landing in diuers places of the Turkes
dominions, left vnto them the woful remembrance of his being there. Afterwards meeting with K
Conſalnus, ſurnamed the Great (ſent by *Ferdinand* king of SPAINE, to aide him againſt the
Cephalenia taken by the Venetians. Turkes) at ZACYNTHVS; he inuaded CEPHALENIA, which *Triuiſanus* his predeceſſour had
in vaine attempted the yeare before, and laied hard ſiege to the citie, which was for a ſpace va-
liantly defended by the Turks: yet at length by the good conduct of *Conſalnus* it was by force
taken, when as *Giſdare* the gouernour thereof, with his garriſon of Turkes, had before fought
it out euen to the laſt man. The citie being taken, all the whole Iſland yeelded forthwith to the
Venetians.

Piſaurius hauing taken CEPHALENIA, repaired the citie, and leauing a ſtrong garriſon for de-
fence of the Iſle, departed to CORCYRA: where he was aduertiſed, That the Turkes were rig-
ging forth a great fleet againſt the next Spring; wherof ſome part lay in the bay of AMBRACIA L
not farre from CORCYRA, ſome at EANTE, and the reſt within the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS.
Wherefore purpoſing to do ſome exploit vpon thoſe gallies which lay in the bay of AMBRA-
CIA, to auert the mind of the enemie from perceiuing of that he had ſecretly with himſelfe in-
tended, he ſent the greateſt part of his fleet vnto the Iſland of NERITOS, who ſuddainly lan-
ding, ſhould put the inhabitants in feare. The captaines ſent about the buſineſſe, cheerefully put
in execution what the Admirall had commanded, and by their ſudden landing raiſed ſuch a tu-
mult, that all the countries thereabout were filled with the expectation of that which ſhould
enſue thereof. The Bay of AMBRACIA is ſo ſtraitened on either ſide with the mountaines of
EPIRVS, that the entrance thereof is but halfe a mile ouer: but by and by opening it ſelfe into a
great wideneſſe, and running vp into the land, maketh a moſt pleaſant & ſafe harbour for ſhips M
and gallies to ride in. *Piſaurius* with a faire wind comming thither with eight gallies well ap-
pointed, when the Turkes thought him to haue beene at NERITOS, and entring the ſtrait, row-
ing farther into the bay, burnt one of the Turkes great gallies, to the terrour of all them that
dwelt round about the bay, and carried away with him eleuen moe, laded with munition and
victuall, through the ſtrait; the Turks in vaine fretting thereat, and doing what they could with
their

A their great ordinance from shore to haue sunke him in going out of the bay. But hauing done what he came for, he returned with his prey againe to CORCYRA. Not long after he also recouered the castle of PYLOS in MOREA, which as it was suddainely gotten, so was it as suddainly lost. For *Camalia*, a notable pyrat of the Turkes, who had been abroad seeking after purchase, putting into that harbour by chance, tooke three gallies, there left by the Admiral for defence of the place, and so terrified the faint-hearted captaine, that he fell to composition with the pyrat to yeeld him the castle, so that he and his souldiours might in safetie depart: which the pyrat granting, had the castle deliuered vnto him, which he could not with farre greater strength haue possibly woon. So was PYLOS for feare twice in one yeare yeelded vp vnto the Turkes, and was both times the death of the cowardly captaines which gaue it vp, being both beheaded by the

Pylos taken from the Turkes and again yeelded vnto them.

B commaundement of the Admirall. About the same time *Pisaurius* attempting to haue burnt other of the Turkes gallies lying in the riuer EANTE, vpon the coast of MACEDONIA, but not with so good successe as before: For the Turks, made more carefull by the losse they had but a little before receiued at AMBRACIA, did now more valiantly looke vnto their gallies. So that when *Pisaurius* had in certaine small vessels, made of purpose for that seruice, embarked two hundred resolute souldiours to haue gone vp the riuer to haue fired the gallies, they were by the way, after they had entered a good way into the riuer, encountered by the Turks, and enforced to returne. But before they could get out of the riuer, the wind rise so contrarie with such a stiffe gale full in the mouth of the riuer, that the marriners ouermastered with the violence of the weather, when they had done what they could, and spent all their strength, were driuen ashore,

C some on the one side of the riuer, and some on the other, and so fell into the hands of their enemies, of whom it booted not to craue mercie.

About this time *Baiazet* tooke also the auncient and famous citie of DIRRACHIVM, now called DVRAZO, from the Venetians; being before ruinous and almost quite abandoned by the inhabitants, as a place of danger, and not to be kept, now that the Turke had got all the country round about it. The Venetians sore pressed with these warres so long maintained against the Turke, had many times prayed aide of other Christian princes, and were well holpen by the Spaniard in the taking of CEPHALENIA: and now *Lewes* the French king vpon a good deuotion to that warre, sent the lord *Rauesten* with seuen tall ships and fifteene gallies well appointed out of PROVINCE and GENVA, to aid the Venetians his friends. This fleet departing from

Dyrrachium taken by the Turk

D NAPLES, where they had by the way put in, and passing about ITALIE, and so through the Ionian sea, came to MELOS, one of the CYCLADES; at which Island *Pisaurius* with his fleet in short time arriued also: from whence they by mutuall consent departed together to inuade the Island of LESBOS. And being there safely arriued, landed their forces, and layed siege vnto the strong citie of MYTILENE, where by the furie of their artillerie they in short time had made a faire breach in the wall. In the time of this batterie whilest the breach was in making, *Pisaurius* with part of his fleet sailed to TENEDOS, for it was reported, that certaine of the Turkes gallies were then comming for that place out of Hellespontus. Which report, as some write, was of purpose giuen out by the French, thereby to withdraw the Venetian Admirall from the siege, that so in the meane time they being in good hope to take the towne in his ab-

Mytilene besieged.

E sence, might themselues carrie away the honour thereof, together with the rich spoile. Others fauouring the French, blame the Venetian Admirall, as if he had of purpose departed, enuying at the honour of the French: which is hard to be belieued in so honourable a personage, and in an action so much concerning the good of his commanweale. Howsoeuer it was, the breach being made, in his absence was by the Frenchmen presently assaulted: although that *Paulus Valatesius* the Venetian vice-Admirall earnestly requested the French Admirall to deferre the assault for a while, and to expect the returne of *Pisaurius*. Which his counsell the French Admirall gaue him the hearing of, but yet went forward with the assualt. The French men after their manner furiously assailing the breach, , were valiantly repulsed by the Turkes: so that in the breach was made a deadly & most terrible fight, many falling on both sides. Yet for all that,

F the citie was manfully defended by the Turks, and the Frenchmen were inforced to retire. The French Admirall hauing taken this repulse, commaunded all things to be carried aboord, purposing to haue forsaken the siege, and so to haue departed: when in the meane time the Venetian Admirall returned, and with much adoe persuaded the French to stay. Whereupon the batterie was againe begun with greater furie than before, and now the leaders were consulting of a

freſh aſſault to be giuen, when ſuddenly newes was brought, that the Turks fleet was comming G
to relieue the citie: and therupon the aſſault was for a time deferred, and the battery continued.
But thoſe Turkes which came, being in number but few, were for moſt part by them in the gallies taken and caſt ouer boord; ſome few that got to land, ſaued themſelues in the woods and deſart places of the Iſle. By this time the citie was againe made faultable, & the Venetians with great courage aſſailed the breach, and had twice gained the top of the rampires, from whence they were againe both times beaten downe by the Turks, the French all the while looking on. Many valiant men were there ſlaine and hurt, and in the end the Venetians were glad with loſſe to retire, as had the French done before. Whileſt this was in doing, a pinnace came to the fleet with newes, that the Great Maſter of the RHODES was comming with his gallies to the ſiege: H
The ſiege of Mytilene broken vp whereupon the Admirals determined to maintaine the ſiege vntill his comming. But the next day after, the French Admirall changing his purpoſe ſhipped his men, and hoiſing ſaile departed to CHIOS: and ſailing thence towards ITALIE, was ouertaken with a moſt terrible tempeſt, wherein the Admirall gallie with two others were loſt with eight hundred good ſouldiours, the admiral himſelfe with aboue fortie others were by chance contrarie to all hope ſaued, and with much danger with his weather-beaten fleet recouered the hauen of TARENTVM. The Venetian Admirall thus forſaken of the French, and ſeeing the time paſt wherein he expected the comming of the Great Maſter of the RHODES, brake vp the ſiege, and departed from LESBOS to CHIOS, and from thence to PAROS, where he found the Maſter of the RHODES with his gallies; vnto whom he complained greatly of the inconſtancie of the French, imputing it vnto I
them, that the citie of MYTILENE was not woon: neither were they behind with him, but in
1502 euery place where they came, laid the fault as much or more vpon him. From PAROS the Venetian Admirall tooke his courſe to the Iſland of MELOS; where hee found one *Rhichius*, an arch pyrate of the Turkes, who by force of tempeſt was driuen on ſhore, and by the ſuddaine comming downe of the Iſland people, taken: him (for that he had exerciſed exceeding cruelty vpon certaine Chriſtians whom he had taken) *Piſaurius* cauſed to be faſt bound to a ſpit, and with a ſmall fire to be roſted to death. From MELOS he returned to CORCYRA, and there wintered.

The next Spring *Piſaurius* with certaine gallies which *Alexander* biſhop of ROME had ſent vnto him vnder the commaund of *Iacobus Piſaurius* biſhop of PAPHIA, ſailed to NERITOS, K
now called S. MAVRA, which is an Iſland parted from the firme land with a little fret of the ſea, long time before that way let in by the Corinthians. Here *Piſaurius* ſuddenly landing his
Neritos taken by the Venetians. men, ſurpriſed the Iſland, and with wonderfull celeritie and induſtrie caſt vp two great trenches in ſuch ſort and to ſo good purpoſe, that three thouſand of the Turkes horſemen comming at a low water ouer that narrow ſtrait which parteth the Iſland from the maine, were with loſſe repulſed, and forced to retire. Whereupon S. MAVRA the chiefe citie was forthwith deliuered vnto *Piſaurius*, with the reſt of the Iſland.

The Venetians wearie of this long and chargeable warre againſt ſo mightie an enemie, ſent *Lodouicus Manetius* their embaſſadour, to *Baiazet*, to entreat with him for peace: but *Baiazet* ſtood vpon ſuch hard points, that nothing could at that time be concluded: yet *Manetius* ſo L
diſcreetly vſed the matter, that *Baiazet* ſent with him at his returne to VENICE, his embaſſadour, to propound vnto the Senat ſuch conditions as it pleaſed him to graunt them peace vpon. This embaſſadour had audience in the Senat twice, where he in the name of his maſter propounded ſuch proud and vnreaſonable conditions, that they were by the Senat reiected, and ſo he himſelfe diſmiſſed and ſent backe againe.

1503 The yeare following the Venetians ſent an embaſſadour to *Baiazet*, who mooued with the pittifull complaints of his own ſubiects, for the daily harmes they receiued from the Venetians alongſt the ſea coaſt, as alſo for want of trade; and fearing alſo ſome troubles like to ariſe in his kingdome in ASIA (as indeed there did not long after) yeelded himſelfe now more willing to heare of peace, than before. This embaſſadour called *Zacharias Phriſcus*, was well heard of *Ba-* M
iazet, and after long ſute had brought the matter he came for into ſome good tearmes: and being honourably rewarded by the Turkiſh emperour, returned home, carrying with him vnto the Senate far more reaſonable conditions of peace than had at any time before been by *Baiazet* propounded. Hereupon the Venetians ſhortly after ſent *Andreas Gritti* (an honourable Senatour) a man well knowne to *Baiazet* both for his famous traffique in former time at CONSTANTINOPLE,

A STANTINOPLE, and alſo for that in theſe late warres he was taken priſoner at the winning of METHONE, and his life ſpared at the interceſſion of *Cherſeogles* (*Baiazet* his ſonne in law) and afterward raunſomed: he in the name of the ſtate from whence he came, concluded a peace with *Baiazet*. The capitulations whereof were, firſt that the Venetians ſhould deliuer vp the iſlands of NERITOS & LEVCADIA, reſeruing vnto themſelues the iſland of *Cephalenia* only: Then, that *Baiazet* ſhould reſtore all ſuch goods as had beene taken from the Venetian merchants, in theſe late warres; and that it ſhould be lawfull for them (as they were wont) ſafely to traficke into the Euxine ſea, and to CONSTANTINOPLE; and there to haue their Conſull or gouernour as they had had in former time: And laſt of all, that the Venetian territorie ſhould be cer-
B tainly knowne, and ſeparated from the Turkes by certaine bounds and limits. Theſe conditions were ſolemnly agreed vpon, and confirmed both by *Baiazet* and the ſtate of VENICE: and ſo a firme peace concluded in the yeare 1503, after the warres had continued betwixt them about the ſpace of fiue yeares.

A peace concluded betwixt Baiazet and the Venetians.

The ſame yeare *Baiazet* aſſembled a great and puiſſant army of his beſt and moſt approued ſouldiers, as well in ASIA as EVROPE, which met togither at SOPHIA, purpoſing (as it was thought) to haue inuaded HVNGARIE: but worthely doubting the ſucceſſe of that war againſt ſo warlike a nation, he changed his purpoſe, and leauing *Achmetes Baſſa* with his Aſian ſouldiers at SOPHIA, turned himſelfe with the reſt of his armie into ALBANTA (to reduce thoſe rebellious people againe to his obeiſance) and had before ſent a fleet of gallies to ſtop the paſſages of
C that countrey alongſt the ſea coaſt. But the countrey people vnderſtanding of his comming, fled into the high and rough rocks and mountaines, from whence they did the Turkes great harme: who neuertheleſſe with incredible labour and aduenture, mounted thoſe difficult places; and killing an exceeding number of thoſe mountaine and ſauage people carried all the women and children they could light vpon, away with them priſoners: and with fire and ſword made al the countrey deſolate. After which ſpoile done, *Baiazet* returned with his armie to MANASTIRVM; and departing thence, vpon the way met with a Deruiſlar (which is a phantaſticall and beggarly kind of Turkiſh monks, vſing no other apparell but two ſheepskins, the one hanging before and the other behind) a luſtie ſtrong fat fellow, attired after the manner of his order with a great ring in each eare: who drawing neere vnto *Baiazet*, as if he would of him haue receiued
D an almes, deſperatly aſſailed him with a ſhort ſcimitar which he had cloſely conuaied vnder his hypocritall habit. But *Baiazet* by the ſtarting of the horſe whereon he rid (being afraid at the ſudden approach of the hobgoblin) partly auoided the deadly blow by the traitor entended, yet not altogither vnwounded: neither had he ſo eſcaped the danger, had not *Iſhender Baſſa* with his horſemans maſe preſently ſtruck downe the deſperat villaine as he was about to haue doubled his ſtroke; but being now ſtruck downe, he was forthwith rent in pieces by the ſouldiers. This treacherous and deſperat fact ſo much moued *Baiazet*, that he proſcribed all them of that ſuperſtitious order, and baniſhed them out of his empire.

Baiazet in danger to haue been ſlaine by a Deruiſlar or Turkiſh monke.

After ſo many troubles *Baiazet* gaue himſelfe vnto a quiet courſe of life, ſpending moſt part of his time in ſtudie of philoſophie, and conference with learned men: vnto which peaceable
E kind of life, he was of his owne naturall diſpoſition more enclined than to warres; albeit that the regard of his ſtate, and the earneſt deſire of his men of warre, drew him oftentimes euen againſt his will into the field. As for the ciuile gouernment of his kingdome, he referred it wholy vnto his three principall Baſſaes, *Alis*, *Achmetes*, and *Iachia*, who at their pleaſure diſpoſed of all things. After he had in this quiet and pleaſing kind of life to his great contentment paſſed ouer fiue yeares, of a little neglected ſparke ſuddenly aroſe ſuch a fire in ASIA, as was hardly after with much bloud of his people and danger of that part of his empire quenched: the reliques whereof yet troubleth thoſe ſuperſtitious people at this day. Which thing was brought to paſſe by the craftie deuiſe of *Chaſan Chelife*, and *Schach Culi* his boy (whom ſome call *Teckel Scachoculis*, and others *Techellis*) two hypocriticall Perſians: who flying into thoſe countries,
F and with the counterfeit ſhew of faigned holineſſe hauing procured vnto themſelues a great name amongſt thoſe rude people, with a number of windie headed followers (filled with the noueltie of their new doctrine) raiſed firſt ſuch a diuerſitie of opinions about the true ſucceſſours of their vntrue prophet; and afterwards ſuch a rebellion amongſt the people, as that the one yet remaineth, and the other was not in a good while after with great bloudſhed appeaſed.

Baiazet by nature peaceable.

But

But for the better vnderſtanding of the ground of theſe troubles, which hapned at this time G
in the raigne of *Baiazet* by occaſion of theſe two fugitiue Perſians; as alſo of the mortall wars which afterwards enſued betwixt *Hyſmael* (commonly called the great Sophi of PERSIA) and *Selymus*, *Baiazet* his ſucceſſor: it ſhall not be much from our purpoſe briefely to declare the great mutation which at this time hapned in the Perſian kingdome, as well in the ſtate it ſelfe, as in matters of their ſuperſtition. At ſuch time as *Aſymbeius Vſun-Caſſanes* raigned in PERSIA, there was one *Haider Erdebil* (whom *Iouius* calleth by the name of *Harduelles*) a man honorably diſcended amongſt the Perſians; who contemning worldly honour, riches, pleaſure, and whatſoeuer elſe belonged vnto delicacie of life (commonly accounted the greateſt part of humane felicitie) as meere vanities and trifles, led ſuch a ſtraight and auſtere kind of life, with ſuch continencie and contempt of the world, as that the vulgar people, for moſt part giuen to pleaſure, H
wondering at that in him which they could not or would not themſelues imitate, began to haue the man in ſingular admiration for the opinion they had conceiued of his vpright life and rare vertues. The fame of this new prophet (for ſo he was accounted) was growne ſo great in the Perſian kingdome, that people without number reſorted out of all parts of PERSIA and ARMENIA vnto the great citie of TAVRIS to ſee the man. And he the more to ſeduce the multitude (delighted with nouelties) began to inuay againſt the common receiued opinion of the Mahometanes, concerning the true ſucceſſours of their great prophet; and to reuiue the opinion of *Giuni*, ſurnamed *Soſi*: perſuading the people (as if he had been inſpired with ſome diuine inſpiration) That none of the profeſſors of the Mahometane religion ſhould inherit the kingdome of heauen after they were dead, but ſuch as were the followers of *Haly*, the true ſucceſſour of the I
great prophet *Mahomet*, and his fellow in writing. Whom he taught them onely to honour as priuie to the mind of the great prophet, and ſo to receiue his writings as of all others moſt authenticall; reiecting *Ebubekir*, *Omer*, and *Oſman*, with their writings, as moſt wicked and accurſed men; whom the Turkes had euer, and yet doe with the others Mahometanes, honour and worſhip as the true ſucceſſours of their great prophet *Mahomet*, and his ſincere interpretors, togither with the aforeſaid *Haly*, whom the Perſians do onely acknowledge: and therefore in their praiers doe commonly ſay, *Curſed be Ebubekir, Omer, and Oſman, and God be fauourable to Haly and well pleaſed with him*. Which their difference about the true ſucceſſor of their prophet, in whom was no truth, hath been, and yet is, one of the greateſt cauſes of the mortall wars betweene the Turkes and Perſians: and not the diuers interpretation of their law (as many haue written) K
which among the Turkes and Perſians is all one.

The Turks and Perſians differ not about the interpretation of their law, but about the true ſucceſſor of their great prophet Mahomet.

Vſun-Caſſanes mooued with the fame and vertues of this new prophet, or rather (as ſome thought) deſirous to win the hearts of the multitude of them that had receiued this new phantaſie; gaue him in mariage his daughter *Martha*, begotten of the Chriſtian ladie *Deſpina* the daughter of *Calo Ioannes* emperour of TRAPEZONDE. Which marriage the Chriſtian emperour made with that Mahometane prince, and he alſo accepted thereof, therby to ſtrengthen themſelues againſt the Turkiſh emperour *Mahomet* the Great; whoſe power was then become a terror vnto all his neighbour princes: but to how ſmall purpoſe this policie ſerued them both, is before declared in the life of the ſame *Mahomet*. At the concluſion of this marriage, the emperour had ſpecially couenanted with *Vſun-Caſſanaes*, that his daughter *Deſpina* might haue the L
the fre exerciſe of the Chriſtian religion. Whereby it eaſily came to paſſe, that this *Martha* her daughter, inſtructed by her mother, became a Chriſtian alſo: who now married by her father vnto this preciſe hypocrit *Haider Erdebil*, in ſhort time bare him a ſonne called *Hyſmael*, whom ſhe ſo much as ſhe could trained vp in the principles of the Chriſtian religion. Whereby it came to paſſe, that afterwards when he had by rare fortune obtained the kingdome of PERSIA, he alwaies during his life had the Chriſtians in good regard, and neuer found fault with their religion.

Haider marrieth Martha the daughter of the great king Vſun-Caſſanes.

Haider thus graced with the marriage of the great kings daughter *Martha*, only for his rare vertues and puritie of life, as was commonly ſuppoſed; grew now into farre greater credit and eſtimation of the people than before. So that his doctrine and opinions began to be generally M
receiued, and the number of his followers ſo greatly augmented, that *Iacup* ſucceeding his father *Vſun-Caſſanes* but lately dead, began to haue the power and credit of *Haider* his brother in law in ſuſpect; and to diſtruſt leaſt the Perſians (who ſecretly fauoured the remainder of the poſteritie of their auncient kings) ſhould aſſemble togither vnder the colour of this new ſuperſtition,

and

A and raiſe ſome dangerous rebellion before he were well ſetled in his ſeat. For he was not ignorant, that *Aſembeius Vſun-Caſſanes* (his father) had but by force and pollicie vſurped the kingdome, hauing killed *Molonchres* the lawfull king: whereof there aroſe two factions, ſome fauouring the vſurper, and other ſome the poore remainder of the diſcent of their auncient kings of the race of *Tamerlane*. For which cauſes *Iacup* (as hee was of a ſuſpitious and troubleſome nature, and aboue meaſure iealous of his ſtate, nothing regarding the neere alliance or reputed holineſſe of his godly brother in law) cauſed him, ſuſpecting no ſuch matter, to be ſecretly murthered: and ſo hauing ſtrucke off his head, with fire and ſword perſecuted all the profeſſors of that new doctrine; ſo to deliuer himſelfe for euer of that his vaine and needleſſe feare: *Hyſmael* B the ſonne of *Haider* (who was afterwards called the great Sophi of PERSIA) being then but a child, as it were by fatall deſtinie eſcaped the furie of his cruell vncle *Iacup*, and fled into HIRCANIA vnto one *Pyrchales* his fathers friend, who then ruled in a ſmall territorie neere vnto the Caſpian ſea.

Haider Ardebil ſecretly murdred.

Amongſt many other of the diſciples and followers of *Haider* (which in that cruell perſecution were glad to flie for ſafegard of their liues) the two before named *Chaſan Sheliſe*, and *Schach Culi*, afterwards ſurnamed *Cuſelbas*, in outward ſhew both of vertue and learning not inferiour vnto their maſter, flying that dangerous tempeſt and paſſing ouer the riuer Euphrates, came into ARMENIA the leſſer, and there tooke vp their dwelling at the great mountaine ANTITAVRVS: at the foot whereof the broken rockes haue diuers darke and obſcure caues, made partly C by art, and partly by nature; which place is of the inhabitants called *Teke-Ili*: whereof diuers hiſtoriographers, I know not whether deceiued by the name of the place, or elſe wittingly tranſferring the name of the place vnto the man that liued therein, haue called this *Schach Culi* (who of the two proued of greater fame) by the name of *Techellis*, by which name we will alſo from henceforth call him. A thing heeretofore much vſed amongſt the religious, and alſo ſome of the children of great princes, who oftentimes bare the names of the places where they were borne, or where they moſt liued. This place is both wholſome and exceeding pleaſant, for the varietie of fruits and liuely ſprings, wherewith the plaines adioyning are continually watered, and the mountains at all times of the yeare garniſhed.

Here *Shelife* with his companion *Techellis*, hauing ſeparated themſelues farre from the com- D panie of men, and giuen themſelues wholy to a contemplatiue life for diuers yeares liued moſt ſtraitly and auſterely, contenting themſelues with ſuch things as the earth of it ſelfe affoorded them, without ſeeking for better. Theſe hipocrits were firſt ſeene, and afterwards acquainted with the ſheepheards and heardſmen liuing vpon the mountaines: and in proceſſe of time with the rude husbandmen and countrey people, who wondring at their ſtrait and deuout kind of life, relieued them with all things neceſſarie. Yea *Baiazet* himſelfe hearing of their auſtere and deuout manner of liuing, ſent them yearely ſixe or ſeuen thouſand aſpers, as his almes giuen them vpon charitie and deuotion. But afterwards when they began to tell fortunes, and as it were by the way of diuination to prognoſticat of things to come, the rurall people held them for more than men, and conceiued of them a firme opinion that they were ſome diuine pro- E phets. And ſo were by the countrey people firſt drawne into the countrey villages, and afterwards as if it had been againſt their wils, into the cities; where they had in ſhort time filled all the countrey farre and neere, with the admiration of their fame: But after they began to publiſh their new phantaſied doctrine concerning the true ſucceſſour of their great prophet *Mahomet*, they wanted not their new fangled followers (as had *Haider* their maſter before among the Perſians) who had them in ſingular reuerence; perſuaded now by them, that they ſhould be condemned for euer, if they did not (as they were by them taught) giue the honour of the true ſucceſſion of their great prophet, onely to *Hali*, and him onely to reuerence and call vpon next vnto the great prophet himſelfe.

When they had thus with their often ſermons and blinded prophecies ſeduced the people, F and in ſhort time woon great credit amongſt the vulgar ſort, of themſelues too much giuen to noueltie and ſuperſtition; they commanded their diſciples and followers to weare vpon their Turkiſh hats a red band or riband, whereby to be knowne from others that were not of their profeſſion. Of which red bands or ribands, they which profeſſed this new ſuperſtition, were and yet are ouer all the Eaſt part of the world called by the name of *Cuſelbaſſas*, which is to ſay *Red heads*.

The beginning of the Cuſelbaſſas.

Hyſmaell

Hyſmaell his behauiour in the time of his exile.

Hyſmaell alſo liuing in exile, moſt earneſtly embraced that new ſuperſtition which *Haider* his G father had before taught in PERSIA, but with farre better fortune and ſucceſſe. For as ſoone as he was growne to mans eſtate, he following his fathers manner of life, and being by nature wonderfull eloquent, comely of perſon, exceeding wiſe, and of an inuincible courage, was of the rude vulgar people accounted of more like a god than a man: ſo that he grew to be of great fame and power amongſt thoſe barbarous people with whom he liued. And not the baſe and vulgar ſort only, but diuers noblemen alſo and others of good reputation, once allured with the noueltie of his doctrine, the more to manifeſt their good will towards the author of their ſect; after they had forſaken their old ſuperſtition, ceaſed not (as the manner of men is) to commend him in the higheſt degree of vertue and honour. And he himſelfe as yet but a youth, altogether bending his wit to the ſetting forth of himſelfe, making ſemblant of more than was indeed in him, obtained, H as if it had been againſt his will, riches, honour, fame, and authoritie; of all which things, he as a notable diſſembler ſeemed to make no account or reckoning: neither were there ſome wanting which would ſweare, that *Haider* his father (as he was an excellent Aſtronomer) calculating his natiuitie, ſhould ſay, That he ſhould prooue a great prophet, and the author of true religion, who ſubduing the greateſt part of the Eaſt, ſhould become as glorious both in matters of religion and martiall affaires, as was *Mahomet* the Great prophet himſelfe. Which report being bruted abroad amongſt the vulgar people, greatly encreaſed his authoritie, and gaue them occaſion to talke of wonders. Not long after *Hyſmaell* was firſt by the admiration or rather aſſentation of his friends and followers, and afterwards as if it had beene by a generall conſent, ſurnamed *Sophor*: which amongſt thoſe people ſignifieth a Wiſe man, or the interpreter of the gods. I Theſe proſperous beginnings, with the troubled ſtate of the Perſian kingdome, encouraged him to take in hand great matters: for his vncle *Iacup* the Perſian king was long before dead, being together with his ſonne poyſoned by his adulterous wife: which thing he preſently perceiuing, enforced her to drinke of the ſame cup; and becauſe he would be ſure that ſhe ſhould not eſcape, with his owne hand ſtrucke off her head, and immediately after died, with his ſonne. After whoſe death great trobles aroſe about the ſucceſſion: and diuers great men one after another aſpired to the kingdome, which they enioyed not long. And amongſt the reſt *Eluan-beg* (whom *Ionitus* calleth *Aluantes*) at that time ſtood in no ſure poſſeſſion of the kingdome, being mightily impugned by his brother *Moratchamus*.

Hyſmaell returneth into Armenia, and recouereth his inheritance.

Hyſmaell taking hold of this opportunitie, armed diuers of the moſt able men of his follow- K ers, and receiuing ſome ſmall aid from his poore old friend *Pyrchales*, entered into ARMENIA, and there partly by the fame that ran of him, and partly by the good will of the people, rather than by any force, recouered his fathers inheritance, whereunto the remembrance of his dead father did not a little further him. He encouraged with this good beginning, daily grew ſtronger and ſtronger, by the continuall repairing vnto him of ſuch as hauing once receiued the doctrine of *Haider*, were glad of long for (feare of perſecution) to diſſemble the ſame: but now hauing got an head and cheefetaine to cleaue vnto, began openly to ſhew themſelues againe, and in great number to reſort vnto him, in hope of the good ſucceſſe of their religion, not ſo happely begun by his father.

Sumachia taken by Hyſmaell.

His power thus daily encreaſing beyond his expectation, he laied ſiege vnto SVMACHIA, a L citie in the confines of MEDIA, which he tooke by force and ſacked: and with the ſpoile thereof both enriched and armed his ſouldiers, which before were for moſt part naked men. The taking of this citie wonderfully encreaſed both his fame and courage, as oftentimes it falleth out, That haughtie minds, courageouſly attempting high exploits, by the good euent of their firſt attempts make way vnto the full of their ſtately deſires. So after this, *Hyſmaell* his thoughts were not ſo low, as to thinke of the taking of this or that litle citie; but how he might now compaſſe

Hyſmaell commeth to Tauris.

the great citie of TAVRIS, the very ſeat of the Perſian kings, and afterwards the kingdome it ſelfe. Whereupon repoſing no leſſe confidence in his owne good fortune, than the valour of his ſouldiers, he marched with his armie directly to the citie of TAVRIS, and that with ſuch expe- M dition, that he was come before it before any ſuch thing was feared, much leſſe prouided for. *Eluan* the Perſian king was then at TAVRIS, and had but a little before fought a great battaile with his brother *Moratchamus* for the kingdome: and hauing vanquiſhed him, draue him out of ARMENIA and PERSIA; and afterwards, as it commonly falleth out in the winding vp of ciuile warres, had cauſed diuers of the cheefe citizens of TAVRIS, which had taken part with his

bro-

A brother against him, to be seuerely executed, filling the eyes of their friends with the horrible spectacle of their dismembred bodies, and the hearts of most men with sorrow and heauinesse: whereby he had so alienated the minds of the citizens from him, that now vpon the approch of *Hysmaell*, they were all readie to forsake him: of which their disposition *Hysmaell* was beforehand enformed, and vpon the good hope thereof had hasted his comming. *Eluan* the Persian king thus ouertaken on the sudden, had not time to raise such forces as might suffice either to encounter his enemie, or defend the citie; wherefore despairing of his owne strength, and iustly fearing the reuolt and furie of the discontented citizens, as a man dismayed, suddenly fled out of the citie. After whose departure the gates were presently set open vnto *Hysmaell*. For the citizens which in those troublesome times (wherein the two brethren contended for the king-
B dome) had suffered great calamitie, chose rather in that present danger to receiue a conqueror of so great fame as was then *Hysmaell*, than to their vtter destruction to oppose themselues against him in the quarrell of their cruell king: and the rather, for that they saw a generall securitie and open way to preferment proposed vnto all such as should receiue the reformed religion of this new conquerour.

Hysmaell entering the citie, slew certaine of the kings guard which were not yet departed, and then vtterly rased the stately tombe wherein his vncle *Iacup* was after the manner of the Persian kings royally buried. And to mitigate the sorrow he had so long conceiued of his fathers death, and with reuenge to appease his angrie ghost, he caused the tyrants bones to be digged vp and scattered abroad, and the memoriall of his name to bee quite rased out of all places
C of the citie.

Hysmaell taketh the citie of Tauris, and defaceth the tombe of his vncle Iacup.

Although *Hysmaell* was thus possessed of the regall citie of TAVRIS, and had thereby made a way for the obtaining of the whole kingdome; yet he knew that so long as *Eluan* liued, his conquest was not vnto him assured: and therefore so the vttermost of his power he augmented his armie with new supplies taken vp in that populous citie, whom he furnished with armour & weapons taken out of the kings armourie. In the meane time newes was brought vnto him, that the Persian king before fled into the fartheſt part of his kingdome, was now comming from SCYRAS with a great armie against him; and that *Moratchamus* his brother, forgetting in this common danger all former quarrels, had raised a great armie about BABILON in ASSYRIA, in short time to ioine with his brother.

D *Hysmaell* neuertheless nothing terrified with the report of the great preparation of the two bretheren against him, to the intent he might seeme to vndertake this warre by the appointment of God, and vpon a greater assurance than vpon his owne strength, resolued to go against them. And so after he had mustered his armie, & in best manner he could prouided all things necessarie, he set forward from TAVRIS: vsing no other persuasion to encourage his soldiers, but that they should as became resolute men, make hast and follow him whom God had giuen them for a cheefetaine and leader, vnto a most assured victorie. The Persian king was at the same time ten dayes iourney from TAVRIS, when *Hysmaell* with incredible celeritie preuenting the fame of his comming, was come to the mountaine NIPHATES, which parteth ARMENIA from ASSYRIA: which mountaine *Eluan* purposing shortly to passe ouer with his populous armie, had sent be-
E fore his scouts to discouer the straight passages, and a multitude of pioners to make the wayes more commoditous for his great armie to passe. Which thing *Hysmall* vnderstanding, and politickely considering that it should be much for his aduantage, if he should first himselfe passe ouer those great mountaines, and so vpon the sudden set vpon his enemies then lying in securitie, and fearing nothing lesse than such a desperat attempt: vpon that resolution aduanced his ensignes vp the mountaines; and hauing with small resistance discomfited them which kept the passages, came downe the same mountaines like a tempest, and furiously assailed the king, then lying in his campe on the other side at the foot of the mountaine: vpon the approach of whom, such a hurly burly was raised in the kings camp, that what for the confused tumult of the souldiers, and fearefull outcries of the multitude of base people which followed the campe, the
F king could scarcely giue order vnto his captains what he would haue done, or yet encourage his souldiers, or put them in order of battaile. So that *Hysmaell* giuing a fierce onset with his Armenian souldiers, there was suddenly begun a most terrible and bloodie battaile. Neither did that day the fortune of *Hysmaell* faile him, whose courage and proweſſe neuer failed: for assailing the kings battaile of footmen, with three squadrons at once, he had ouercome them and put them

Hysmaell goeth against the Persian king.

them to flight before that the horſemen could arme themſelues and mount their horſes, which were for moſt part vnſadled and vnbridled at his comming. The King, who had nothing either feared or foreſeene this ſo ſudden a miſchiefe, but had vainly perſwaded himſelfe, That the very fame of his comming with ſo huge an armie, would ſo terrifie his enemies, as that he ſhould find none either at TAVRIS, or in all ARMENIA, that durſt make reſiſtance; was glad now to run to and fro to encourage his ſouldiers, to ſtay his diſcomfited battailes, yea and to come to handie blowes himſelfe. But when neither his captaines nor ſouldiers could put in execution his ſudden directions which he was enforced to giue in that imminent danger, being at once ouercome with ſhame and deſperation, he reſolutely thruſt himſelfe into the head of his battaile, and there valiantly fighting, was ſlaine. Whereupon the Perſian horſemen, the greateſt ſtrength of the Kings armie, hauing now no King for whom they ſhould fight, betooke themſelues to flight, after whom followed the archers and all the reſt of the Kings armie.

Eluan the Perſian king ſlaine.

When as *Hyſmaell* had with leſſe loſſe than a man would haue thought ſo great a victorie could haue beene atchieued, poſſeſſed the enemies tents, he made no great purſute after them, for that he thought it more requiſit to refreſh his ſouldiers, throughly wearied and almoſt ſpent with long trauell and the late fight: wherefore for certaine dayes he repoſed himſelfe with his armie in thoſe his enemies forſaken tents. Afterwards, when he had receiued embaſſadours from diuers places, yeelding their cities and townes, and that the fauour of the people generally enclined to him, together with the victorie; he marched with his armie to SCYRAS, where he was of the citizens, who had before heard of the victorie, ioyfully receiued, and his armie relieued with all things he could deſire. *Hyſmaell* there entertained with the greateſt honours that the fearefull citizens could poſſibly attribute vnto him, did oftentimes preach vnto them of the truth and excellency of his fathers doctrine, and withall gaue out ſtraight proclamations, That he would account all them for his enemies, which did not within the ſpace of thirtie dayes renounce their old ſuperſtition, and receiue this new found veritie (as he would haue it.) Wherefore for as much as on the one ſide were propoſed moſt certain rewards, by the happy courſe of his victories; and on the other, was threatened exile and torture to ſuch as ſhould obſtinatly perſiſt in their opinion; in ſhort time he drew all the vulgar people to embrace his new doctrine. And afterwards hauing payed his ſouldiers with the riches of that great citie, he gallantly furniſhed both his old and new ſouldiers that wanted armour, with moſt excellent armour and furniture: for in that citie, one of the greateſt and moſt famous of the Eaſt, were many ſhops full of all kind of armour, which the armourers with wonderfull cunning vſed to make of yron and ſteele and the iuice of certaine hearbes, of much more notable temper & beautie than are thoſe which are made with vs in EVROPE; not onely headpeeces, curiaſſes, and complete armors, but whole capariſons for horſes, curiouſly made of thin plates of yron and ſteele. Departing from SCYRAS, he tooke alſo the great cities of SAPHA, ſuppoſed to haue been the citie in ancient time called SVSA, and SVLTANIA, which for the wonderfull ruines of the huge buildings, is deemed to haue beene the ancient and famous citie TIGRANOCERTA. Theſe great mattters quickly diſpatched, and hauing in euery citie placed gouernours of his owne ſect, he paſſed ouer the riuer of TIGRIS into MESOPOTAMIA, of purpoſe to expulſe *Moratchamus* the late kings brother out of BABILON, who was yet in armes, and had entended (as is before ſaid) to haue paſſed into ARMENIA, to haue ioyned his forces with the king his brother: but now terrified with his brothers calamitie (who together with a moſt puiſſant armie, and the ſtrength of the Perſian kingdome, was in one day fallen from the height of ſo great a fortune) thought it not beſt to trie his fortune in the field againſt ſo fortunate an enemie, but forthwith to withdraw himſelfe into the remoteſt places of that large kingdome, and from thence to expect ſome better fortune. For he well knew that he was not able to withſtand his victorious enemy, now leading after him a moſt puiſſant armie, who not long before had with a ſmall power vanquiſhed & ſlain his brother in a great battell. *Hyſmaell* now by the greatneſſe of his fame and forces, & as it were by the fauor of God himſelfe, become a terror to all the princes of the Eaſt, entered into MESOPOTAMIA after the flight of *Moratchamus*, & receiued all that great prouince into his ſubiection, euery man as it were ſtriuing who ſhould firſt by his ſpeedy ſubmiſſiõ purchaſe the fauor of the victorious conqueror. To be breefe, *Moratchamus* already terrified, and repoſing no great hope in himſelfe, or his own power, neither deeming it for his ſafetie to ſhut himſelf vp within the wals of any ſtrong citie, truſſed vp his things of greateſt price, and with his wiues and children fled into ARABIA.

Hyſmaell goeth againſt Moratchamus.

This

A This *Moratchamus* is he whom ſome hiſtoriographers called *Mara Beg*, and is in the Turkes hiſtories called *Imirſa Beg*, who (as they report) afterwards marrying the daughter of *Baiazet*, and recouering part of the Perſian kingdome, was ſodenly murthered by ſome of his nobilitie, whom he purpoſed ſecretly to haue put to death, if they had not preuented the ſame by murthering of him firſt. *Hyſmaell* hauing victorioully ſubdued a great part of the Perſian kingdome, and filled all the Eaſt part of the world with the glorie of his name, returned out of ASSYRIA into MEDIA, and tooke in ſuch cities and ſtrong holds as were yet holden by the garriſons of the late Perſian king. And afterwards returning into ARMENIA, made wars vpon the Albanians, Iberians, and Scythians, which dwell vpon the borders of the Caſpian: For that thoſe nations, in ancient times tributaries vnto the Perſian kings, taking the benefit of the long ciuile warres
B wherewith the kingdome of PERSIA and all the Eaſterne countries, with the ruine of the kings houſe, had bin of late turmoiled; had neither paied any tribute by the ſpace of foure yeres, nor ſent any honourable embaſſage as they were wont, and as was expected, eſpecially in ſo great a victorie and alteration of the ſtate.

Hyſmaell hauing thus obtained the Perſian kingdome, in ſhort time became famous through the world, and was iuſtly accounted amongſt the greateſt monarchs of that age. But nothing made him more to be ſpoken of, than the innouation he had made in the Mahometane ſuperſtition: for by his deuiſe and commaundement, a new forme of prayer was brought into their Mahometane temples, farre differing from that which had beene of long time before vſed. By reaſon whereof, *Ebubekir*, *Homer*, and *Oſman*, the ſucceſſours of their great prophet *Mahomet*,
C before had in great regard and reuerence, began now to be contemned, & their writings nothing regarded: and the honour of *Hali* exalted, as the true and only ſucceſſour of their great prophet. And becauſe he would haue his ſubiects and the followers of his doctrine knowne from the Turkes and other Mahometanes, he commanded that they ſhould all weare ſomered hatband, lace, or riband vpon their heads; which they religiouſly obſerue in PERSIA vntill this day: whereof they are of the Turkes called *Cuſelbas* or *Redheads*. And in ſhort time he had ſo vſed the matter, that he was wonderfully both beloued and reuerenced of his ſubiects: inſomuch that his ſayings were accounted for diuine oracles, and his commaundments for lawes. So that when they would confirme any thing by ſolemne oath, they would ſweare by the head of *Hyſmaell* the king: and when they wiſhed wel to any man, they vſually ſaid, *Hyſmaell* grant thee thy
D deſire. Vpon his coine which he made both of ſiluer and gold, on the one ſide was written theſe words, *La illahe illalahu, Muhamedun reſul allahe*: which is to ſay, *There are no gods but one, and Mahomet is his meſſenger*. And on the other ſide, *Iſmaill halife lullahe*; which is to ſay, *Hyſmaell the Vicar of God*.

Hyſmaell exceedingly beloued and honoured of his ſubiects.

While ſt *Hyſmaell* was thus wreſtling for the Perſian kingdome, *Chaſan Chelife* and *Techellis* (whom wee haue a little before declared to haue beene brought out of the mountaines and deſarts into the countrie villages, and afterwards into the cities; and to haue filled the countries of ARMENIA and a great part of the Leſſer ASIA with the noueltie of their new doctrine and opinions, firſt phantaſied by one *Giunet Siech*, and afterward reuiued by *Haider Erdebill Hyſmaell* his father) hauing gathered a great armie of ſuch as had receiued their doctrine, inua-
E ded the Turkes dominion. For after that *Techellis* (this cold prophet) had with wonderfull felicitie in the preſence of many prognoſticated of things to come; and *Hyſmaell* the Sophi (of late a poore exiled & baniſhed man) was thought to haue grown vnto the higheſt type of worldly honours, not by mans helpe, but by vprightneſſe of life, and the fortunate paſſage of an vndoubted religion: ſuch a deſire of receiuing that new ſuperſtition poſſeſſed the minds of the people in generall, that the cities and towns thereabouts were now full of them which in token of their new profeſſion had taken vpon them the wearing of the red hat, the known cogniſance of the *Cuſelbas*. Firſt they met together at the citie of TASCIA at the foot of the mountaine ANTITAVRVS, or as the Turkiſh hiſtorie reports, at the citie of ATTALIA, to the number of ten thouſand vpon a great Faire day; where they laied hands vpon the chiefe magiſtrate of the ci-
F tie and executed him, ſetting his quarters vpon foure of the higheſt towers of the citie: and farther perſuaded by theſe new maſters of this new ſuperſtition, to take vp armes in defence of themſelues & of their ſincere religion (as they termed it) in caſe that any violence ſhould be offered them by the irriligious Turkes; they all ſwore neuer to forſake their captaines for any diſtreſſe, or yet refuſe any labour or aduenture for the honour of their moſt holy religion (as they

Chaſan Chelife and Techellis inuade the Turks dominions.

1508

would haue it)in defence whereof,they had alreadie vowed their ſoules and bodies. Theſe ring- G
leaders of rebellion,ſeeing the minds of their franticke followers ſo well prepared for their purpoſe,and repoſing a great confidence in their valour and reſolution; and withal conſidering that the money which was bountifully brought in vnto them by the countrie people, partly for deuotion,partly for feare,was not ſufficient to maintaine ſo great a multitude; gaue leaue by publike proclamation to their vnruly followers, to forage the countrey round about them, and to liue vpon the ſpoile of them which would not receiue that new found doctrine. Whereupon they diuiding themſelues into diuers companies, and raunging vp and downe the countrey, brought into the campe great abundance of cattell and other ſuch things as the countrey yeelded: and forthwith(their multitude ſtill increaſing)they entred into LYCAONIA,a populous and fruitful countrey,where they refreſhed themſelues many daies, roaming vp and downe to the H
great grieuance & terrour of the people:and brought ſuch a feare vpon the whole countrey,that they which dwelt in open dorpes and villages, were glad to flie with their wiues, children, and goods into the ſtrong citie of ICONIVM: for proclamations were in many places ſet vp in the names of *Chaſan Cheliſe* and *Techellis*, wherein many both ſpirituall and temporall bleſſings were in moſt ample manner propoſed to all ſuch as ſhould forthwith take part with them,and follow that their new doctrine alreadie eſtabliſhed in PERSIA: But vnto ſuch as ſhould obſtinatly perſeuere in their old ſuperſtition, after they had once drawne their ſword, was threatned vtter deſtruction without hope of pardon of life. So that all the inhabitants thereabouts,terrified with the terrour of this proclamation, ſome for feare of death,ſome vpon inconſtancie,ſome
for ſafegard of their goods and poſſeſſions(dearer vnto them than any religion)ſome other in- I
debted, infamous, in danger of law: beſide many fugitiue ſeruants daily reſorted to theſe new maſters.Now long after,whileſt the Turks were making preparation for the ſuppreſſing of this dangerous rebellion, certaine troupes of horſemen ſent from *Hyſmaell* came in good time to theſe new prophets: for *Hyſmaell* in fauour and furtherance of that new ſuperſtition,had a little before by fit meſſengers, exhorted him to proceed couragiouſly in their ſo religious an enterpriſe,and to ioine martiall force vnto the religion they profeſſed: promiſing further, not to be wanting vnto them at their need,but to ſend them skilfull leaders, and from time to time to furniſh them with coine for the maintenance of that warre. All this *Hyſmaell* did openly in deſpight of *Baiazet*, of ſmall beginnings to ſow the ſeed of greater warre. For hee bearing an old
grudge againſt *Baiazet*, for the former warres betwixt the Turkes and the Perſians, as alſo for K
their diſagreement in matters concerning their ſuperſtition;and prickt forward with the heat of youth,deſired nothing more in the greatneſſe of his power, and proſperous ſucceſſe of his affaires,than to haue occaſion to make wars with the Turkiſh king: For which purpoſe he ſent his embaſſadors vnto the ſtate of VENICE to ioine with them in league and amitie,in ſuch form and ſort,as they had long time before by *Catarinus Zemes*,*Barbarus* and *Contarenus* their embaſſadors,concluded with *Vſun-Caſſanes* the great Perſian king his grandfather. The chiefe things that he requeſted of the Venetians was,That they would ſend him out of ITALIE by the way of SYRIA, men skilfull in the caſting of great ordinance, and with their fleet to trouble *Baiazet* by
ſea: promiſing in the meane time himſelfe to fill ASIA the leſſe with his armie by land,and ſo to L
giue a faire occaſion vnto them,to recouer by ſea all ſuch places, as they had before in the late wars loſt vnto the Turkes vpon the coaſt of PELOPONESVS and GRÆCIA.

Hyſmaell ſendeth embaſſadors vnto the Venetians,to ioine in league with them againſt Baiazet.

The Venetians hauing with all courteſie entertained the embaſſadours, gaue them anſwere, That they would neuer be forgetfull of the ancient league and amitie they had made with the Perſian king; the remembrance whereof, was vnto their ſtate a thing moſt pleaſant: and that they were wonderfull glad, that the new king was an enemie vnto the Turke, and had them in ſuch regard,as to participat vnto them the cauſes of that war: and farther to promiſe vnto them thoſe things, which if his grandfather *Vſun-Cuſſanes* or his vncle *Iacup* would haue performed he ſhould not now haue had need to make wars with the Turkiſh emperour. But ſuch was the
alteration of things and times,that as the Perſian kings then liuing at home in peace,thought it M
not good to ſtir whileſt *Baiazet* was buſie in EVROPE; ſo now their ſtate ſtanding in far worſe condition and fortune,could not performe that which they heartily wiſhed,and moſt of all deſired: for that they thought it not good to breake the league which they had not long before made with *Baiazet* the Turkiſh emperor: eſpecially then,when ſundrie warlike nations of EVROPE conſpiring together, and diuers mightie kings prouoked with no iniurie,but onely enuy-

ing

A ing at their happie eſtate, made wars vpon them; yet were neuertheleſſe in good hope, that God would ſtand in their iuſt defence, and ſtill preſerue their ſtate, which no enemies power had for the ſpace of 700 yeares and more, euer beene able to ouercome. Wherefore they ſhould ſhew vnto their king, that they would as occaſion ſhould ſerue, and as it ſhould ſtand with the good of their ſtate, do their vttermoſt deuoire, to make him vnderſtand, that nothing was deerer vnto them than the friendſhip of ſo great a king: nor any thing more honourable than by mutuall counſell and combined forces, to aſſaile the Turke their common enemie.

Shortly after, the embaſſadors (hauing obtained nothing more than the hope of a league to be in time concluded, and being honourably rewarded) returned with their gallies to CYPRVS;
B and ſo from thence to SYRIA, where he had ſecret conference with *Petrus Zenus* (the ſonne of *Caterinus Zenus*, a man famous for his embaſſage vnto *Vſun-Caſſanes* into PERSIA) gouernour of the Venetian merchants at DAMASCO. Which thing *Baiazet* hauing intelligence of, and of the paſſage of the Turkiſh embaſſadors that way, complained grieuouſly both by his embaſſadors and letters vnto *Campſon Gaurus* Sultan of Ægypt, that he dealt not as a friend and confederat with him, in ſuffering theſe embaſſadours ſo to paſſe throught the middeſt of SYRIA vnto the Chriſtians their common enemies, to ſtir them vp to warre. Whereupon, all the Venetian merchants which were at TRIPOLIS, ALEPPO, DAMASCO, BERYTVS, and ALEXANDRIA;
C and eſpecially *Zenus* himſelfe, were forthwith apprehended by the commandement of the great Sultan, and carried in bonds to CAIRE: where they were many times enforced in chaines to anſwere vnto ſuch things as were laid to their charge, and after they had by the ſpace of a yeare endured the manifold deſpights of the prowd Mamalukes, hardly obtained to eſcape with life and libertie.

The two ſeditious prophets *Chaſan* and *Techellis* well ſtrengthned with the aid of the Perſians, were now come vnto ICONIVM the moſt famous citie of LYCAONIA: and waſting all the countrie before them, drew a great multitude of people to receiue their new doctrine. For the repreſſing of which outrages, *Orchanes* and *Mahomethes*, two of *Baiazet* his nephewes (who in ſteed of their fathers *Alem Schach* and *Tzian Schach*, the ſonnes of *Baiazet* before dead, gouerned thoſe countries) gathered togither their forces, & diſdaining to ſuffer ſuch diſgrace by ſuch a rabble of raſcal people, in the ſight of ſo famous a citie, came into the field to giue them battel.
D But they in their youthfull heat making too much haſt, and ioyning battel in a place of diſuantage, were by the rebels ouerthrowne and put to flight. Neither would theſe ringleaders in that victorie haue forborne to haue aſſailed ICONIVM, but that they wanted artillerie and engines of war requiſit for the beſieging of cities.

Orchanes and Mahomethes two of Baiazet his nephewes ouerthrowne by Techellis.

Corcutus alſo one of the ſonnes of *Baiazet* hauing at the ſame time leuied a conuenient army about THYATIRA, SYPILVS, MAGNESIA, and PHOCEA, durſt not farther ſtir or ſet forward againſt the rebels, although they lay diſperſed about the countrey faſt by him. Theſe new prophets with enſignes diſplaied, marching from countrie to countrie through the heart of the leſſer ASIA, entered at length into BYTHINIA, where neere vnto the riuer Sangarius they met with *Caragoſes Baſſa* the Viceroy of ASIA, comming againſt them with a great armie well ap-
E pointed, which he had a little before raiſed vpon the bruit of the comming of theſe rebels; and had alſo commanded *Acomathes* (whom the Turkes call *Achmetes*) the eldeſt ſonne of *Baiazet* then liuing, gouernour of the great countries of CPADOCIA and PONTVS, to riſe his power, and to follow at the backe of the rebels: who if they ſhould hap to be put to the worſe, would neither be able to retire, neither to keepe the field, being ſo ſhut vp betwixt two ſo great armies. But *Techellis* by his ſpeedie comming, fruſtrated theſe deſignes of the viceroy: for marching with all poſſible ſpeed, he was vpon *Caragoſes* before he was well aware of his comming, neere vnto the mountaine HORMYNVS; as he was then taking vp of moe ſouldiours, and daily expected the comming of others, as if hee had beene going againſt ſome puiſſant enemie. The Viceroy ſeeing the rebels approach, although he had before not purpoſed to haue encountred
F them before he had raiſed farre greater forces: thought it not now to ſtand with his honour to refuſe to giue them battell, although his armie for moſt part conſiſted of the rude countrie peaſants, taken vp vpon the ſudden out of PAPHLAGONIA, GALATIA, PONTVS, and BYTHINIA, raw ſouldiours, and for moſt part vnarmed: as commonly they are which in thoſe countries are preſſed againſt their wills out of the townes and villages, and are of the Turkes called Aſapi, who of the Ianizaries are ſcarcely accounted for men. But his greateſt confidence he re-

poſed in the approued valour of his auncient horſemen, by whoſe meanes he doubted not, in G
ſafetie to retire out of the battell, and to ſaue himſelfe if any thing ſhould fall out otherwiſe than well; making no great account of the common ſouldiours more than by them if he could to weaken the force of the rebels: who on the other ſide (their greateſt force conſiſting of footmen) had no hope to ſaue themſelues by flight, but onely by plaine valour and dint of ſword. Which *Techellis* well conſidering, exhorted his ſouldiours to remember into what countrie they were come, and that there was no cities of refuge, no new power, no other gods of defence to flie vnto, if they ſhould not that day play the men: Wherefore let vs couragiouſly (ſaid he) ſet forward againſt our enemies, and by victorie defend our liues, together with the truth of our
The battell betweene Caragoſes and Techellis religion, for which wee haue vowed both our ſoules and bodies. He had ſcarce ſaid thus much, but that his whole armie (in token of cheerefulnes) gaue a moſt terrible ſhout, & without farther H
ſtay, ſet vpon their enemies. The Viceroy had placed his footmen in the maine battell in the middle, and his horſemen in the wings, thereby to haue compaſſed in his enemies: but *Techellis* had ſet all his footmen in one great ſquare battell, and his Perſian horſemen for a refuge. But the Viceroy his freſhwater ſouldiors, could ſcarcely abide the ſight of *Techellis* his armie: for in the front of the battell ſtood ſouldiors throughly armed, and all the reſt of his armie with red hats vpon their heads, as if they had been embrued with bloud, which wonderfully terrified the Baſſaes cowardly and vnskilful ſouldiors: ſo that hauing endured the fight ſcarcely halfe an houre, they all turned their backs and fled. The Turkiſh horſemen which had valiantly aſſayled the rebels armie on both ſides, although they had ſlaine many with their arrowes and launces, and ſomewhat diſordered the battell, for that the footmen were inforced to leaue their places, and to I
preſſe ſtill on forward againſt them; yet when *Techellis* his ſouldiours (hauing ouercome the footmen, & diuiding themſelues into diuers ſquadrons) began with their long pikes to kill their horſes, and to lay hardly vnto them, they likewiſe betooke themſelues to flight alſo. Then the Perſian horſemen (which all this while had ſtood ſtill as lookers on) left their ſtandings, and following the chaſe ſhew many of the Turks in their diſordered flight: and following faſt on, encloſed the Viceroy as he was ſtaying of his horſemen, and could not for the thicknes of the duſt well diſcerne his enemies; ſo that he had beene there taken, if he had not been ſpeedily reſcued by his guard, and ſo deliuered from that danger: The reſt of the Turkes horſemen ſaued themſelues by flight. In this battell ſeuen thouſand of the Turks footmen were ſlaine, and all their enſignes taken, with great ſtore of prouiſion. K

After which victorie, *Chaſan* and *Techellis* reſting their armie one day, marched to the citie of CVTAIE, neere vnto the mountaine HORMINIVS: This citie is ſcituated as it were in the middeſt of ASIA the leſſe, and is the ſeat of the Turkiſh emperours Viceroy in ASIA; as SOPHIA in MŒSIA is for his other Viceroy in EVROPE: For it was reported, that the countrey people had for feare of the preſent warre, conuaied thither the greateſt part of their wealth; and the rebels well knew, that the Viceroy himſelfe with his chiefe horſemen were fled thither alſo: Neither doubted they, but that all the armie might be greatly inriched by the wealth of that citie, if they ſhould without delay imploy their whole forces for the gaining therof; their enemies
Techellis beſiegeth Caragoſes the Viceroy in the citie of Cutaie. now altogither diſcouraged with their late ouerthrow. *Techellis* alſo deeming that enterpriſe of L
ſo much worth as whereon to gage his whole forces, comming before the citie, placed ſuch field pieces as he had before taken in the battel, and his archers in ſuch fit places as might moſt annoy the defendants; afterwards he cauſed ſcaling ladders to be ſet vp, and proclamation made through all his campe, That the whole ſpoile of the citie ſhould be the ſouldiours, if the could take it; with promiſe of greater rewards to them that ſhould firſt recouer the top of the walls. Filled with this hope, the rebellious multitude approched the wal, fearing neither enemies force, multitude of ſhot, or daunger of death; ſtriuing who ſhould firſt mount the ladders, and ſome clambering one in the necke of another, ſo to get vp by the ruines of the wall. The defendants in the meane time from aboue caſting downe vpon them great ſtones, timber, fire, ſcalding water, lime, ſand, and ſuch like without meaſure: Wherwith although many were ouerthrown and M
cruſht to death or ſpoiled, yet others preſently ſtept vp in their place; neither was any of them ſeene for feare of ſo preſent danger, to ſhrinke backe or be diſcouraged. For the viceroy on the one ſide, and *Techellis* on the other, were both eyewitneſſes of euery mans valour in that hot ſeruice: the one prickt forward with doubtful hope, for feare to be inforced to giue ouer the aſſault ſo begun; and the other, with the due regard of his honour, life, and ſtate, all ſubiect to that danger;

A ger; and therefore in perſon himſelfe performed all the parts of a worthie chiefetaine and couragious ſouldior. But at length the defendants wearied with the fierce aſſault of the enemie, and for moſt part wounded, *Techellis* continually ſending in freſh men, and withdrawing ſuch as were hurt, by plaine force brake into the citie in two places ouer the heapes of the dead bodies: and hauing repulſed the defendants, burſt open one of the gates, and thereby brought in his whole armie, Then began a miſerable ſlaughter of the ſouldiors and poore citizens in euery houſe and corner of the citie. At which inſtant, the pallace whither the Viceroy had retired himſelfe with his familie, was alſo taken. The viceroy himſelfe, with his wiues and children, were there alſo taken priſoners, and the ſtately pallace built of marble, in a trice conſumed
B with fire.

Caragoſes the viceroy with his wiues and children taken by Techellis in the citie of Cutaie.

The rich citie of CVTAIE, the ſeat of the great commander of the Turkiſh empire in ASIA, thus taken by *Techellis*, and his whole armie both beautified and inriched with the ſpoile thereof: he perſuaded himſelfe, that it was now no hard matter for him to take the citie of PRVSA alſo, the auncient ſeat of the Turkiſh kings in BYTHINIA, and ſo to indanger the whole ſtate of the Turkes empire in ASIA, if he ſhould now without delay carrie the terror of himſelfe thither, before the Turks could in that countrie make head againſt him, or the citizens be able in ſo ſuddaine a feare to make any ſufficient prouiſion for the defence of themſelues and their citie; & ſo in the courſe of his good fortune to vſe the courage and cheerefulneſſe of his ſouldiors. Wherefore appointing a day when he would ſet forward, he commaunded all things neceſſarie to bee
C made readie for the taking of that rich citie, being neither ſtrongly walled neither furniſhed with any good garriſon for the defence thereof.

Baiazet ſendeth Alis Baſſa againſt Techellis, out of Europe.

But whileſt he was making this preparation, a new armie, lately ſhipt ouer the Helleſpont from CALLIPOLIS into ASIA, enforced him to change his former determination. For *Baiazet* awaked at the name of *Techellis*, and the fame of the new ſuperſtition now generally receiued in PERSIA, had long before giuen commaundment to his ſonnes, nephewes, and the viceroy of ASIA, That they ſhould with all carefulneſſe prouide, that that part of his kingdome tooke no harme thereby. But after he ſaw *Techellis* of a poore hermit become a great captaine, and backt alſo with the Perſian king, and all his dominions in ASIA now in danger of ſome great alteration, he ſent *Alis Baſſa* ouer with his Europeian armie. This *Alis* an eunuch, borne in MACE-
D DONIA (yet for his courage comparable with the greateſt captains) had for his many and worthie deſerts, in the time of the great emperour *Mahomet*, *Baiazet* his father, got vnto himſelfe both the honour and name of a moſt famous chiefetaine. He hauing made choice of the principall horſemen of EPYRVS, MACEDONIA, SERVIA, ILLYRIA, and THRACIA, and ioyning vnto them ſeuen thouſand Ianizaries (the moſt aſſured hope of the Turkes in all their expeditions) paſſed ouer from CALLIPOLIS into PHRYGIA, and vpon the way directed his letters vnto *Athomates* and *Corcutus*, *Baiazet* his ſonnes, and to all the other Sanzackes and Gouernours of the Turkes prouinces in ASIA, That they ſhould with as much ſpeed as they could raiſe their forces, and meet him in GALATIA. But *Techellis* aduertiſed of his comming, thought it beſt for him to depart out of PONTVS, and to retire to ſome place of more ſafetie, leaſt by
E longer ſtaying he ſhould be incloſed by his enemies, repairing thitherwards on euerie ſide, or elſe vpon ſome great diſaduantage be enforced to ioine battell: for he ſaw, that if he ſtaied neuer ſo little, he ſhould find no ſafe paſſage or place of refuge to retire vnto, hauing left ſuch large and ſpacious countries, ſo many enemies cities, ſo many great riuers, ſo many diſcontented people behind him; all which the firſt fauour of the vulgar ſort, and ſpeedie courſe of his victorie, had a little before laid open vnto him. Wherefore calling together his captaines and moſt expert men of warre to conſult vpon the matter, it was generally thought to be a point of meere madneſſe, or elſe of extreame neceſſitie, with ſo ſmal a power of vnskilful ſoldiors, without any ſufficient ſtrength of horſemen, to ioine battel with ſuch an enimie as better knew the countrey than he, and farre exceeded him both for the number and expertneſſe of his ſouldiours. Where-
F fore *Techellis* truſſing vp his rich prey he had before gotten, began now with ſpeed to retire back againe with his followers through GALATIA. But the Baſſa hauing intelligence almoſt euerie houre by letters and eſpials both of the retiring of *Techellis*, and the way he held, paſſed ouer the riuer Sangarius; and coaſting the countrie, came and encamped betwixt the cities of CVTAIE and ANCYRA, which way it was ſuppoſed the enemie would paſſe. Where when he had there a while reſted his wearied ſouldiors, and was certainly aduertiſed, that the rebels had ta-

ken another way, he ſet forward againe, and after fiue daies march in the plaines of GALATIA, G
ouertooke the ſtraglers of the enemies, who wearied or wounded, were not able to hold way
with the armie: all whom the Baſſa commaunded to be cruelly put to the ſword. And *Techellis*
to terrifie the great Baſſa, or at leaſtwiſe with a moſt horrible ſpectacle to ſtay his purſuit, cau-
ſed *Caragoſes* the viceroy, whom he had carried along with him in chaines, to be cruelly em-
paled by the highway ſide vpon a great ſharpe ſtake ſet faſt in the ground, and ſo left him ſtic-
king for the Turkes to wonder at. But *Alis Baſſa* nothing diſmaied with the horrible death of
ſo great a perſonage, held on his way with more haſt than good ſpeed, exhorting his ſouldiours
patiently to endure the painfulnes of the long march, and to ſtraine themſelues to take reuenge
of thoſe rebellious theeues and robbers, who deſtroying the countrey before them, ſpared not H
ſo much as the Turks children and the temples of their religion: and ſo the day following came
into the plaines of ANCYRA. The ſame day alſo *Achomates* came vnto the Baſſa with ten thou-
ſand ſouldiours. *Alis Baſſa* perceiuing that he could not poſſiby with his whole armie ouertake
his enemies marching with greater ſpeed before him, and grieued at the heart to ſee them eſ-
cape out of his hand, reſolued to prooue if he could with his horſemen ouertooke them: wher-
upon leauing his footmen with *Achomates*, he himſelfe with eight thouſand horſe following the
enemie vpon the ſpurre, ouertooke the rereward of their armie at the mountaine OLYGA, a little
from the citie of ANCYRA, vnto whom he gaue an hot skirmiſh.

The battell betwixt Alis Baſſa and Techellis.

Techellis which a little before had taken a fit place for his campe, vpon the riſing of the hill,
although he ſaw his men faint with long trauell and the ſcorching heat of the ſunne, yet quick- I
ly perceiuing that he ſhould haue to doe only with horſemen, and that in a place of aduantage;
turning his armie, and orderly placing his ſouldiors, as the ground and the ſhortnes of the time
would giue leaue, valiantly receiued the impreſſion of the Turkes, and with their long pikes and
arrowes at the firſt repulſed them: ſo that it ſeemed, they would neither haue giuen ground vn-
to the bragging horſemen, neither haue done any thing not beſeeming their former victories,
had not *Alis Baſſa* ſent in a thouſand Carbines, who in troupes orderly following one another,
deliuered their ſhot as thicke as haile vpon the enemie: with which ſtorme many of them being
ſlaine, and moe wounded, their ranks began to be ſomewhat diſordered: whereupon the other
horſemen breaking in, with great ſlaughter ouerthrew the vauntguard of *Techellis* battell: in
Chaſan Chelife ſlaine. which conflict *Chaſan Chelife* himſelfe was ſlaine. *Techellis* alwaies at hand where moſt need K
was, euen in the middeſt of the ſlaughter of his men, ſet in order a new battell of his moſt rea-
die and beſt armed ſouldiours, the only remedie in ſo great a diſtres; and bringing them on into
the front of the battell, oppoſed them againſt the horſemen, now (as they thought) in poſſeſſion
of the victorie: commaunding them by little and little to retire vnto the mountaine, to the in-
tent that they might ſeeme to doe that by commandment of the generall, which they were like
ynough to haue done of themſelues for feare; hoping that it would ſo come to paſſe, That the
Turks finding the diſaduantage of the place, would leaue ſo hardly to aſſaile them. But the Baſſa
encouraged with the firſt ſucceſſe of the battell, exhorted his ſouldiors to vrge the victorie, now
almoſt as good as gotten, and not to giue the enemie ſpace to recouer the ſtrength of the moun-
taine, but valiantly to charge them, and with a little ſhort paines that day to end all that war, to L
the honour of *Baiazet* their ſoueraigne, and worthie commendation of themſelues in generall.
In this ſort incouraging them, he with a troupe of his beſt horſemen (to animate the reſt, and to
ſhew his owne valour) brake through the enemies battel: which thing he in the ſame heat, with
more courage than diſcretion, attempting to perform the ſecond time, was encloſed by his ene-
Alis Baſſa ſlain. mies and ſlaine: vpon whoſe fall the fortune of the battell was in a moment changed. For the
Turkes, which erſt fought couragiouſly, hauing beaten backe and almoſt ouerthrowne their
enemies, now diſmaied with the death of their generall, began to fight but faintly, and by little
and little to giue ground, and at laſt turning about their horſes, fled. On the other ſide *Techellis*
his ſouldiours, who but a little before had repoſed greater hope in the ſtrength of the place and
the mountaine, than in their weapons and valour, now encouraged with new hope, and taking M
heart in the faint charge of their enemies, began to thruſt forward, and with a moſt terrible noiſe
crying victorie, put to flight the Turkes horſemen, before wearied with long trauell, when as
they had by the raſhneſſe of the Generall loſt a notable victorie almoſt alreadie gained. *Techel-
lis* although he knew that the enemie could neither refreſh his horſes, nor yet with any aſſurance
keepe the field, if he ſhould haue purſued him; yet hauing loſt many of his beſt ſoldiors, and the

reſt

A reſt of his armie ſore weakened with trauell, faſting and fighting, determined to refreſh his wearied followers vpon the mountaine OLYGA. From whence after a few dayes he marched ouer the riuer Halys vnto the citie of TASCIA, his old dwelling place, and ſo to the citie of CELENIS, which the riuer Marſya (much ſpoken of by the Poets) runneth thorow, and is now called by the name of MARAS, but as then the regall ſeat of the mountaine king *Aladeules*. The Turkes horſemen hauing thus in ſome ſmall ſort rather reuenged the iniuries done by the rebels than obtained any victorie, returned to *Achomates*, who was then comming on with the footmen. Not long after *Baiazet* vnderſtanding of the death of *Alis Baſſa* his Generall, ſent *Ionuſes Baſſa*, a warlike captaine, and of great experience (borne in EPIRVS) in his ſtead. Who as ſoon as he had receiued the charge of the armie from *Achomates*, marching forthwith into CAPPA-

Ionuſes Baſſa ſent by Baiazet, Generall of his armie againſt Techellis.

B DOCIA, and keeping the way on the right hand towards the mountaine ANTITAVRVS, came in few daies vnto the citie of TASCIA, the place of *Techellis* his abode: where burning and deſtroying the countrey all about, he came and encamped with his armie at the foot of the mountaine. The Baſſa had in his armie aboue fortie thouſand horſe and foot, well appointed with many field peeces, and plenty of victuals which he brought with him, for feare of want in that bare countrey. *Techellis* terrified with his comming, hauing of late receiued no aid from *Hyſmaell* the Perſian king, and wanting alſo great artillerie; and beſides that ſeeing his ſouldiers greatly both deminiſhed and diſcouraged with the late battaile at OLYGA; determined not vpon ſo great diſaduantage to meet his enemie in the plaine field, but to keepe the rough mountaine and thicke woods, hoping that if he could be able any time to keepe thoſe ſtrong places, he ſhould

C either receiue ſome aid from *Hyſmaell*, or by the heat of the Turkes leaders take them at ſome notable aduantage. In the meane time many notable skirmiſhes paſſed betwixt the ſouldiers on both ſides: for the Turkes fetching a compaſſe oftentimes about the mountaines, and ſeeking for the beſt paſſages, by the eaſie riſing of the hils, came to skirmiſh with their enemies: and *Techellis* his ſouldiers on the other ſide, ſallying many times out of the woods and abrupt places of the mountaines, valiantly aſſailed the Turkes. After they had a long time in this ſort, as if it had beene in diſport, rather proued their forces one vpon another than done any great matter, the Turkes prying into euery corner, at length perceiued to wayes whereby their whole army with enſignes diſplayed might without any great difficultie be brought vnto the top of the mountaine, and ſo into their enemies ſtrength. The Baſſa hauing well viewed and conſidered

D the places, cauſed the Ianizaries at one inſtant to march vp to the mountaine by one of the aforeſaid waies, and the reſt of his army by the other: who with ſoft pace climing vp the ſteepe mountaines, with their targuets defended themſelues as well as they could againſt their enemies darts and ſhot. For *Techellis* his ſouldiers hauing before taken the high mountaines and places of aduantage, caſt downe vpon the Turkes great ſtones and ſhot without number, as if it had beene out of ſome ſtrong forts. But the Turkes bending certaine ſmall field peeces againſt the places which moſt annoied them, eaſily draue them from their ſtandings; the harquebuſiers ſtill following their enſignes, ſhrouded cloſe vnder the targuetiers, and deliuering their deadly ſhot as ſhowers of raine vpon their enemies. Whoſe deſperat approch *Te-*

E *chellis* perceiuing, cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, and with all his armie retired farther off into the higher mountaines and rougher woods. The night following, perceiuing that by the euill ſucceſſe of the former skirmiſh he had loſt a great part of his credit and ſtrength, he with great ſilence forſooke the woods, and paſſing quite ouer the mountaines fled into ARMENIA, then part of the Perſian kingdome. Neither did the Turkes perceiue their departure vntill it was light day, and that their ſcouts entring the thicke woods, and finding the enemies baggage with ſome wounded ſouldiers not able to flie, brought newes vnto the Baſſa of the enemies departure and of his ſpeedie flight into ARMENIA. Which thing when he by them which were taken, vnderſtood to be certainely true, fretting and chafing like a mad man, that he had not preſently vpon the enemies retreat beſet the wood round, he ſent his horſemen forthwith to purſue them: but

F all in vaine, for *Techellis* was by direct and knowne wayes gone into ARMENIA. Some few ſtraglers not able to make ſo much haſt as the reſt, were ouertaken by the Turkes horſemen, and brought backe to the Baſſa.

Techellis thus put to flight, *Ionuſes* cauſed ſtrait inquiſition to be made through all the cities of the leſſer ASIA, for all ſuch as had profeſſed the Perſian religion: and them whom he found to haue borne armes in the late rebellion, he cauſed to be put to death with moſt exquiſit tor-

ments,

ments,& the reſt to be burnt in their foreheads with an hot yron,thereby for euer to be known; G whom together with the kinsfolkes and friends of them that were executed, or fled with *Techellis*, he cauſed to be tranſported into EVROPE, and to be diſperſed through MACEDONIA, EPIRVS, and PELOPONESVS: for feare leſt if *Techellis* now fled into the Perſian kingdome, ſhould from thence returne with new forces,they ſhould alſo againe repaire vnto him,and raiſe a new rebellion. This was the beginning, courſe, and ending of one of the moſt dangerous rebellions that euer troubled the Turkiſh empire: wherein all, or at leaſtwiſe the greateſt part of their dominions in ASIA might haue been eaſily ſurpriſed by the Perſian king, if he would thoroughly haue proſecuted the occaſion and opportunitie then offered.

The remainder of *Techellis* his followers, flying into PERSIA, by the way lighting vpon a H Carauan of merchants laden with ſilkes and other rich merchandiſe, tooke the ſpoile thereof: for which outrage comming to TAVRIS the captaines were all by the commandement of *Hyſmaell* executed, and *Techellis* himſelfe to the terrour of others burnt aliue.

Techellis burnt at Tauris.

1509

A great earthquake at Conſtantinople.

The next yeare (which was the yeare 1509, the foureteenth day of September) chanced a great and terrible earthquake in the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE and the countries thereabouts: by the violence whereof,a great part of the wals of that imperiall citie, with many ſtately buildings both publike and priuat,were quite ouerthrowne,and thirteene thouſand people ouerwhelmed and ſlaine. The terrour whereof was ſo great, that the people generally forſooke their houſes,and lay abroad in the fields: yea *Baiazet* himſelfe,then very aged and ſore troubled with the gout,for feare thereof remoued from CONSTANTINOPLE to HADRIANOPLE; I but finding himſelfe in no more ſafetie than before, he left the citie and lay abroad in the fields in his tent. This earthquake endured by the ſpace of eighteene daies,or (as the Turkes hiſtories report) of a moneth, with very little intermiſſion; which was then accounted ominous,as portending the miſerable calamities which ſhortly after happened in the *Othoman* family. After this earthquake enſued a great plague, wherewith the citie was grieuouſly viſited, and for the moſt part vnpeopeled. But after that the earthquake was ceaſed, and the mortalitie aſſuaded; *Baiazet* cauſed the imperiall citie to be with all ſpeed repaired, and to that purpoſe gaue out commiſſions into all parts of his dominion for the taking vp of workmen: ſo that there were at once in worke eightie thouſand workmen, who in moſt beautifull manner, in the ſpace of foure moneths againe repaired the ruines of that great citie. K

Baiazet had by his many wiues, eight ſonnes and ſix daughters, which liued to be men and women growne; and the ſonnes all gouernours in diuers prouinces of his large empire: whom the Turkiſh hiſtories reckon vp in this order, *Abdullah Zelebi*, *Alem Scach*, *Tzihan Schach*, *Achmet*, *Machmut*, *Corcut*, *Selim*, and *Muhamet*. Yet *Antonius Vtrius* a Genoway, who long time liued in *Baiazet* his court, and (as he of himſelfe writeth) waited in his chamber at the time of his death, reckoning vp the ſons of *Baiazet*, maketh mention but of theſe ſix, *Sciemſcia*, *Alemſcia*, *Achomates*, *Mahometes*, *Selymus*,and *Corcutus*: naming the forenamed by names ſomething differing from the other. *Sciemſcia* the eldeſt, gouernour of CARAMANIA, for his towardlineſſe moſt deerely beloued of his father, died of a naturall death before him, and was of him and his ſubiects greatly lamented. *Alemſcia* died in like manner,of whoſe death as ſoone as he was ad- L uertiſed, by mourning letters written in blacke paper with white characters (as their manner of writing is, in certifying of heauie newes) he caſt from his ſcepter with all other tokens of honour, and cauſed generall mourning to be made for him in the court, and through all the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, by the ſpace of three daies; during which time all ſhops were ſhut vp, all trading forbidden, and no ſigne of mirth to be ſeene: and for a certaine ſpace,after the manner of their ſuperſtition, cauſed ſolemne ſacrifices to be made for the health of his ſoule, and 7000 Aſpers to be giuen weekly vnto the poore. His dead body was afterward withall princely pompe conuaied to PRVSA, and there with great ſolemnitie buried. *Tzihan* gouernour of CARIA, and *Mahomet* gouernour of CAPHA, vpon their fathers heauie diſpleaſure, were by his commaundement both ſtrangled.

The children of Baiazet.

M

Of his other foure ſonnes, *Achmet*, otherwiſe called *Achomates*; *Machmut* or *Mahometes*, *Corcut* or *Corcuthus*, and *Selymus*; the ſecond (namely *Mahometes*) was of greateſt hope and expectation, not giuen to ſenſualitie or voluptuous pleaſure as *Achomates* his eldeſt brother, neither altogither bookiſh as was *Corcuthus*, nor yet of ſo fierce and cruell a diſpoſition as *Selymus*: but of ſuch a liuely ſpirit, ſharpe wit, bountifull diſpoſition,and princely carriage of himſelfe

A ſelfe, that in the iudgement of moſt men, he ſeemed alreadie worthie of a kingdome. Which immoderat fauour of the people, cauſed his elder brother *Achomates*, yea and *Baiazet* alſo himſelfe to haue him in no ſmall iealouſie, as if he had affected the empire; and was in ſhort time the cauſe of his vntimely death. Which thing he nothing doubting, haſtened (as fatall things are) by ſuch meanes as he leaſt feared might haue procured any ſuch mortall diſtruſt or danger.

Moſt of *Baiazet* his children were by diuers women, yet *Achomates* and this *Mahometes* were by one and the ſame mother: for which cauſe, *Mahometes* tooke greater pleaſure in him than in any his other brethren, although it were not anſwered with like loue againe. *Achomates* was lord and gouernour of AMASIA, and this *Mahometes* of MAGNESIA; who deſirous to ſee
B the manner of his brothers life and gouernment, diſguiſed himſelfe with two of his familiar and faithfull friends, as if they had been religious men, of that order which the Turkes call *Imalier*. [Theſe men are for moſt part comely perſonages, borne of good houſes, who in cleanly attire made after an homely faſhion, do at their pleaſure wander vp and down from towne to towne, and countrey to countrey, noting the diſpoſition and manners of the people; whereof as fitteth beſt their purpoſe, they make large diſcourſes afterwards to others: they cõmonly carrie about with them ſiluer cymbals, whereon they play moſt cunningly, and thereunto ſing pleaſant and wanton ditties: for which idle delight, they receiue money of the people, as an almes giuen them of deuotion. Theſe are the common corrupters of youth, and defilers of other mens beds; men altogither giuen to eaſe and pleaſure, and are of the Turkes called, The religious bre-
C thren of Loue: but might of right better be tearmed, *Epicurus* his hogs, than profeſſours of any religion at all.] *Mahometes* and his two conſorts, as men of this profeſſion, trauelled vp and downe the countries of PONTVS and CAPADOCIA, where *Achomates* commaunded, and ſo to the citie of AMASIA; receiuing for their merrie glee by the way as they went, the almes and deuotion of the fooliſh countrey people. And being at the length come to AMASIA vpon a ſolemne holiday, they awaited the comming of *Achomates* to the church: who paſſing by, ſtaied a while liſtening attentiuely vnto their pleaſant and alluring harmonie; which was for that purpoſe moſt curiouſly and skilfully before deuiſed, and by them both with their inſtruments and voices, performed. When they had ended their muſicke, and according to the manner of their idle profeſſion expected his deuotion: *Achomates* being a man of a ſpare hand, commaunds fiue
D aſpers to be giuen them in reward [which is about ſix pence of our money.] *Mahometes* diſdaining his brothers baſe reward, as a ſigne of his miſerable diſpoſition, would in no wiſe diſcouer himſelfe, as he had before determined; but taking horſe, returned with ſpeed to MAGNESIA: from whence he writ taunting letters vnto his brother *Achomates*, ſcoffing at his good husbandrie (no praiſe to a prince) and in contempt ſent him backe againe his fiue aſpers: which thing *Achomates* tooke in ſo euill part, as that he was neuer afterwards friends with him. The report of this fact was in ſhort time diſperſed throughout all parts of the Turkiſh empire, diuers men diuerſly deeming of his purpoſe therein.

Not long after *Mahometes* had in this ſort plaied with his brother *Achomates*, he attired himſelfe with certaine of his truſtie followers as if they had been ſeafaring men, & with a ſmall bark
E came to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there landing as aduenturers from ſea, tooke diligent view both of the imperiall citie and of the citie of PERA ſtanding oppoſite againſt it, curiouſly noting how all things were by his fathers appointment ordered and gouerned. It happened whileſt he was thus ſtaying at CONSTANTINOPLE, that *Baiazet* had appointed a ſolemne aſſembly of all his chiefe Baſſaes at the court; which *Mahometes* was deſirous to haue the ſight of, as alſo of the faſhion of his fathers court: but as he with his companions preſſed to haue entred in at the court gate, they were by their baſe apparell taken of the porters to haue been rude mariners, and ſo by them kept out. Wherefore conſulting what to doe in that caſe, he went and preſently bought a moſt beautifull Chriſtian captiue boy, and the next day comming againe to the court with two of his companions (as if they had been aduenturers at ſea) requeſted to be let in, for that they had
F brought a preſent for the emperour. So finding means to be admitted vnto the preſence of *Baiazet*, one of his conſorts (as if he had been a ſea captain) boldly ſtept forth, and with due reuerence offered the preſent vnto the emperour; which he thankfully tooke, and in token thereof gaue him his hand to kiſſe, and commaunded a rich garment wrought with gold to be giuen vnto him, with two other of leſſe valour vnto *Mahometes* and his fellow, ſuppoſed to be the ſaid captaines followers: who all this while ſtood a farre off, as if it had beene for reuerence of the

Mahometes diſguiſed as a ſeafaring man, commeth to Conſtantinople, and ſo to the court.

empe-

ments,& the reſt to be burnt in their foreheads with an hot yron,thereby for euer to be known; G whom together with the kinsfolkes and friends of them that were executed, or fled with *Techellis*, he cauſed to be tranſported into EVROPE, and to be diſperſed through MACEDONIA, EPIRVS, and PELOPONESVS: for feare leſt if *Techellis* now fled into the Perſian kingdome, ſhould from thence returne with new forces,they ſhould alſo againe repaire vnto him,and raiſe a new rebellion. This was the beginning, courſe, and ending of one of the moſt dangerous rebellions that euer troubled the Turkiſh empire: wherein all, or at leaſtwiſe the greateſt part of their dominions in ASIA might haue been eaſily ſurpriſed by the Perſian king, if he would thoroughly haue proſecuted the occaſion and opportunitie then offered.

The remainder of *Techellis* his followers, flying into PERSIA, by the way lighting vpon a H Carauan of merchants laden with ſilkes and other rich merchandiſe, tooke the ſpoile thereof: for which outrage comming to TAVRIS the captaines were all by the commandement of *Hyſmaell* executed, and *Techellis* himſelfe to the terrour of others burnt aliue.

Techellis burnt at Tauris.

1509

A great earthquake at Conſtantinople.

The next yeare (which was the yeare 1509, the foureteenth day of September) chanced a great and terrible earthquake in the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE and the countries thereabouts: by the violence whereof,a great part of the wals of that imperiall citie, with many ſtately buildings both publike and priuat,were quite ouerthrowne,and thirteene thouſand people ouerwhelmed and ſlaine. The terrour whereof was ſo great, that the people generally forſooke their houſes,and lay abroad in the fields: yea *Baiazet* himſelfe,then very aged and ſore troubled with the gout,for feare thereof remoued from CONSTANTINOPLE to HADRIANOPLE; I but finding himſelfe in no more ſafetie than before, he left the citie and lay abroad in the fields in his tent. This earthquake endured by the ſpace of eighteene daies,or (as the Turkes hiſtories report) of a moneth, with very little intermiſſion; which was then accounted ominous,as portending the miſerable calamities which ſhortly after happened in the *Othoman* family. After this earthquake enſued a great plague, wherewith the citie was grieuouſly viſited, and for the moſt part vnpeopeled. But after that the earthquake was ceaſed, and the mortalitie aſſuaded; *Baiazet* cauſed the imperiall citie to be with all ſpeed repaired, and to that purpoſe gaue out commiſſions into all parts of his dominion for the taking vp of workmen: ſo that there were at once in worke eightie thouſand workmen, who in moſt beautifull manner, in the ſpace of foure moneths againe repaired the ruines of that great citie. K

Baiazet had by his many wiues, eight ſonnes and ſix daughters, which liued to be men and women growne; and the ſonnes all gouernours in diuers prouinces of his large empire: whom the Turkiſh hiſtories reckon vp in this order, *Abdullah Zelebi*, *Alem Scach*, *Tzihan Schach*, *Achmet*, *Machmut*, *Corcut*, *Selim*, and *Muhamet*. Yet *Antonius Vtrius* a Genoway, who long time liued in *Baiazet* his court, and (as he of himſelfe writeth) waited in his chamber at the time of his death, reckoning vp the ſons of *Baiazet*, maketh mention but of theſe ſix, *Sciemſcia*, *Alemſcia*, *Achomates*, *Mahometes*, *Selymus*,and *Corcutus*: naming the forenamed by names ſomething differing from the other. *Sciemſcia* the eldeſt, gouernour of CARAMANIA, for his towardlineſſe moſt deerely beloued of his father, died of a naturall death before him, and was of him and his ſubiects greatly lamented. *Alemſcia* died in like manner,of whoſe death as ſoone as he was ad- L uertiſed, by mourning letters written in blacke paper with white characters (as their manner of writing is, in certifying of heauie newes) he caſt from his ſcepter with all other tokens of honour, and cauſed generall mourning to be made for him in the court, and through all the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, by the ſpace of three daies; during which time all ſhops were ſhut vp, all trading forbidden, and no ſigne of mirth to be ſeene: and for a certaine ſpace,after the manner of their ſuperſtition, cauſed ſolemne ſacrifices to be made for the health of his ſoule, and 7000 Aſpers to be giuen weekly vnto the poore. His dead body was afterward withall princely pompe conuaied to PRVSA, and there with great ſolemnitie buried. *Tzihan* gouernour of CARIA, and *Mahomet* gouernour of CAPHA, vpon their fathers heauie diſpleaſure, were by his commaundement both ſtrangled.

The children of Baiazet.

Of his other foure ſonnes, *Achmet*, otherwiſe called *Achomates*; *Machmut* or *Mahometes*, *Corcut* or *Corcuthus*, and *Selymus*; the ſecond (namely *Mahometes*) was of greateſt hope and expectation, not giuen to ſenſualitie or voluptuous pleaſure as *Achomates* his eldeſt brother, neither altogither bookiſh as was *Corcuthus*, nor yet of ſo fierce and cruell a diſpoſition as *Selymus*: but of ſuch a liuely ſpirit, ſharpe wit, bountifull diſpoſition,and princely carriage of himſelfe

A ſelfe, that in the iudgement of moſt men, he ſeemed alreadie worthie of a kingdome. Which immoderat fauour of the people, cauſed his elder brother *Achomates*, yea and *Baiazet* alſo himſelfe to haue him in no ſmall iealouſie, as if he had affected the empire; and was in ſhort time the cauſe of his vntimely death. Which thing he nothing doubting, haſtened (as fatall things are) by ſuch meanes as he leaſt feared might haue procured any ſuch mortall diſtruſt or danger.

Moſt of *Baiazet* his children were by diuers women, yet *Achomates* and this *Mahometes* were by one and the ſame mother: for which cauſe, *Mahometes* tooke greater pleaſure in him than in any his other brethren, although it were not anſwered with like loue againe. *Achomates* was lord and gouernour of AMASIA, and this *Mahometes* of MAGNESIA; who deſirous to ſee
B the manner of his brothers life and gouernment, diſguiſed himſelfe with two of his familiar and faithfull friends, as if they had been religious men, of that order which the Turkes call *Imalier*. [Theſe men are for moſt part comely perſonages, borne of good houſes, who in cleanly attire made after an homely faſhion, do at their pleaſure wander vp and down from towne to towne, and countrey to countrey, noting the diſpoſition and manners of the people; whereof as fitteth beſt their purpoſe, they make large diſcourſes afterwards to others: they cõmonly carrie about with them ſiluer cymbals, whereon they play moſt cunningly, and thereunto ſing pleaſant and wanton ditties: for which idle delight, they receiue money of the people, as an almes giuen them of deuotion. Theſe are the common corrupters of youth, and defilers of other mens beds; men altogither giuen to eaſe and pleaſure, and are of the Turkes called, The religious bre-
C thren of Loue: but might of right better be tearmed, *Epicurus* his hogs, than profeſſours of any religion at all.] *Mahometes* and his two conſorts, as men of this profeſſion, trauelled vp and downe the countries of PONTVS and CAPADOCIA, where *Achomates* commaunded, and ſo to the citie of AMASIA; receiuing for their merrie glee by the way as they went, the almes and deuotion of the fooliſh countrey people. And being at the length come to AMASIA vpon a ſolemne holiday, they awaited the comming of *Achomates* to the church: who paſſing by, ſtaied a while liſtening attentiuely vnto their pleaſant and alluring harmonie; which was for that purpoſe moſt curiouſly and skilfully before deuiſed, and by them both with their inſtruments and voices, performed. When they had ended their muſicke, and according to the manner of their idle profeſſion expected his deuotion: *Achomates* being a man of a ſpare hand, commaunds fiue
D aſpers to be giuen them in reward [which is about ſix pence of our money.] *Mahometes* diſdaining his brothers baſe reward, as a ſigne of his miſerable diſpoſition, would in no wiſe diſcouer himſelfe, as he had before determined; but taking horſe, returned with ſpeed to MAGNESIA: from whence he writ taunting letters vnto his brother *Achomates*, ſcoffing at his good husbandrie (no praiſe to a prince) and in contempt ſent him backe againe his fiue aſpers: which thing *Achomates* tooke in ſo euill part, as that he was neuer afterwards friends with him. The report of this fact was in ſhort time diſperſed throughout all parts of the Turkiſh empire, diuers men diuerſly deeming of his purpoſe therein.

Not long after *Mahometes* had in this ſort plaied with his brother *Achomates*, he attired himſelfe with certaine of his truſtie followers as if they had been ſeafaring men, & with a ſmall bark
E came to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there landing as aduenturers from ſea, tooke diligent view both of the imperiall citie and of the citie of PERA ſtanding oppoſite againſt it, curiouſly noting how all things were by his fathers appointment ordered and gouerned. It happened whileſt he was thus ſtaying at CONSTANTINOPLE, that *Baiazet* had appointed a ſolemne aſſembly of all his chiefe Baſſaes at the court; which *Mahometes* was deſirous to haue the ſight of, as alſo of the faſhion of his fathers court: but as he with his companions preſſed to haue entred in at the court gate, they were by their baſe apparell taken of the porters to haue been rude mariners, and ſo by them kept out. Wherefore conſulting what to doe in that caſe, he went and preſently bought a moſt beautifull Chriſtian captiue boy, and the next day comming againe to the court with two of his companions (as if they had been aduenturers at ſea) requeſted to be let in, for that they had
F brought a preſent for the emperour. So finding means to be admitted vnto the preſence of *Baiazet*, one of his conſorts (as if he had been a ſea captain) boldly ſtept forth, and with due reuerence offered the preſent vnto the emperour; which he thankfully tooke, and in token thereof gaue him his hand to kiſſe, and commaunded a rich garment wrought with gold to be giuen vnto him, with two other of leſſe valour vnto *Mahometes* and his fellow, ſuppoſed to be the ſaid captaines followers: who all this while ſtood a farre off, as if it had beene for reuerence of the

Mahometes diſguiſed as a ſeafaring man, commeth to Conſtantinople, and ſo to the court.

empe-

emperor,but in deed for feare to be diſcouered. As theſe counterfeit gueſts were returning from G
the court in their garments of fauour, they happened to meet with three courtiers which knew
Mahometes; who diſmounting from their horſes, had done him honour and due reuerence, as
to the ſonne of the great emperour,had he not by ſecret ſignes forbidden them,as one vnwilling
to be knowne. When he had thus ſeene his father, the court, and the imperiall citie, he went
againe aboord,and ſo with ſpeed returned to MAGNESIA.

The report of this his doing, had in ſhort time filled both the citie and the court, and was at
laſt brought to *Baiazet* his eares: which raiſed in his ſuſpitious head many a troubleſome
thought, greatly fearing, that in theſe ſlie practizes lay hidden ſome ſecret and deſperat conſpi-
racie, dangerous to himſelfe and his other children. Wherefore after long diſcourſe had with
the three great Baſſaes then of his ſecret counſell, concerning the matter; to rid himſelfe of all H
feare,he reſolued in any caſe to take him away. And therefore cauſed them in his name to write
vnto *Aſmehemedi*, a gallant courtier,and alwaies neere vnto *Mahometes*, to poiſon him with a ſe-
cret poiſon, for that purpoſe incloſed in thoſe letters ſent vnto him: with promiſe of great re-
wards and preferments for that his ſeruice,to be afterwards receiued from the emperour: Char-
ging him withall, that if he could not effect the matter, he ſhould ſo conceale it, as that *Maho-*
metes ſhould haue no diſtruſt thereof; the leaſt ſuſpition whereof,would tend to his vtter deſtru-
ction. This *Aſmehemedi* for ſome vnkindneſſe bare a ſecret grudge againſt *Mahometes*, which
Baiazet knowing of, made choiſe of him the rather: And he on the other ſide, partly to per-
forme the old tyrants command, & partly to reuenge his own priuat wrong; vigilantly awaited
Mahometes poiſoned by Aſmehemedi. all oportunities to bring to effect that he had in charge. At length it fortuned,that *Mahometes* ha- I
uing diſported himſelfe in his gardens of pleaſure,and being thirſtie after his exerciſe,called for
drinke: *Aſmehemedi* alwaies at hand,in a gilt boule fetcht him ſuch drinke as he deſired,wher-
into he had ſecretly conuaied the deadly poiſon ſent from *Baiazet*. *Mahometes* hauing drunke
thereof, in ſhort time began to feele himſelfe euill at eaſe, and preſently ſent for his phiſitions:
who thinking that he had but ſomething diſtempered himſelfe with drinking too much cold
drinke in his heat, perceiued not that he was poiſoned, vntill that within ſix daies after he died.
Of whoſe death *Baiazet* aduertiſed, could not abſtaine from mourning, although he himſelfe
had beene the onely author thereof: and the more to manifeſt his heauineſſe, commaunded all
the court to mourne with him, and prayers to be made in their temples after their ſuperſtitious G
manner,and almes to be giuen to the poore for the health of his ſoule. His dead bodie was af- K
terwards carried to PRVSA, and there honourably buried with his anceſtors. *Aſmehemedi* the
Aſmehemedi iuſtly rewarded for his treacherie. traitour in reward of his vnfaithfulneſſe towards his maſter, was by the commaundement of
Baiazet caſt into priſon, and neuer afterwards ſeene, being there (as it was thought) ſecretly
made away.

Now had *Baiazet* but three ſonnes left, *Achomates*, *Selymus*, and *Corcutus*. *Achomates* go-
uernour of AMASIA,was a man both politike and valiant; but much giuen to pleaſure and de-
light: him *Baiazet* and moſt part of the great men of the court fauoured aboue the reſt of his
brethren; except ſuch as were before corrupted by *Selymus*. *Corcutus* for his mild and quiet na-
ture was of moſt men beloued,but not thought ſo fit for the gouernment of ſo great an empire; L
eſpecially by the Ianizaries and ſouldiers of the court, for that he was (as they thought) altogi-
ther drowned in the ſtudie of philoſophie, a thing nothing agreeing with their humour. Yet
might *Baiazet* ſeeme to doe him wrong,if he ſhould not according to his promiſe againe reſtore
him vnto the poſſeſſion of the empire, which he had almoſt thirtie yeares before receiued at his
hands; as is before in the beginning of his life declared. But *Selymus* being of a more hautie diſ-
poſition than to brooke the life of a ſubiect vnder the commaund of either of his brethren, and
altogither giuen to martiall affaires; ſought by infinit bountie,faigned courteſie, ſubtile policie,
and by all other meanes good and bad, to aſpire vnto the empire. Him therefore the Ianizaries
with all the great ſouldiers of the court, yea and ſome of the chiefe Baſſaes alſo (corrupted with
gifts) wiſhed aboue the reſt,for their lord and ſoueraign: deſiring rather to liue vnder him which M
was like to ſet all the world on a hurly burly, whereby they might increaſe their honour and
wealth, the certaine rewards of their aduentures, than to lead an idle and vnprofitable life (as
they tearmed it) vnder a quiet and peaceable prince.

Whileſt men ſtood thus diuerſly affected towards theſe princes of ſo great hope, *Baiazet*
now farre worne with yeares, and ſo grieuouſly tormented with the gout that he was not able

to

A to helpe himſelfe : for the quietneſſe of his ſubiects and preuenting of ſuch troubles as might ariſe by the aſpiring of his children after his death, determined whileſt he yet liued (for the auoiding of theſe and other ſuch like miſcheefes) to eſtabliſh the ſucceſſion in ſome one of his ſons; who wholly poſſeſſed of the kingdome, might eaſily repreſſe the pride of the other. And although he had ſet downe with himſelfe, that *Achomates* ſhould be the man, as well in reſpect of his birthright, as of the eſpeciall affection he bare vnto him; yet to diſcouer the diſpoſition of his ſubiects, and how they ſtood affected, it was giuen out in generall tearmes, That he meant before his death to make it knowne to the world, who ſhould ſucceed him in the empire, without naming any one of his ſonnes; leauing that for euery man to deuine of, according as they
B were affected: which was not the leaſt cauſe, that euery one of his ſonnes with like ambition began now to make ſmall account of their former preferments, as thinking onely vpon the empire it ſelfe.

1511 *Selymus aided by Mahometes his father in law, riſeth againſt his father*

Firſt of all *Selymus*, whom *Baiazet* had made gouernor of the kingdome of TRAPEZOND, rigging vp all the ſhips he could in PONTVS, ſayled from TRAPEZOND ouer the Euxine (now called the Blacke ſea) to the citie of CAPHA, called in ancient time THEODOSIA, and from thence by land came to *Mahometes* king of the Tartars called Præcopenſes, a mightie prince, whoſe daughter he had without the good liking of his father before married: and diſcouering vnto him his entended purpoſe, beſought him by the ſacred bonds of the affinitie betwixt them, not to ſhrinke from him his louing ſon in law in ſo fit an oportunitie for his aduancement: and
C withall ſhewed vnto him, what great hope of obtaining the empire was propoſed vnto him by his moſt faithfull friends and the ſouldiers of the court, if he would but come neerer vnto his father (then about to transferre the empire to ſome one of his ſonnes) and either by faire meanes to procure his fauour, or by entering with his armie into THRACIA, to terrifie him from appointing either of his other brethren for his ſucceſſour. The Tartar king commending his high deuiſe, as a kind father in law with wonderfull celeritie cauſed great ſtore of ſhipping to be made readie in the Ponticke ſea, and MŒOTIS, but eſpecially at the ports of COPA and TANA, vpon the great riuer of Tanais, which boundeth EVROPE from ASIA; and arming fifteene thouſand Tartarian horſemen, deliuered them all to *Selymus*, promiſing forthwith to ſend him greater aid if he ſhould haue occaſion to vſe the ſame. Theſe things being quickely diſpatched,
D *Selymus* paſſing ouer the riuer Borryſthenes, and ſo through VALACHIA, came at length to Danubius, and with his horſemen paſſed that famous riuer at the citie of CHELIA: His fleet he commaunded to meet him at the port of the citie of VARNA, called in ancient time DIONYSIOPOLIS, in the confines of BVLGARIA and THRACIA: he himſelfe ſtill leuying moe men by the way as he went, pretending in ſhew quite another thing than he had indeed intended: which the better to couer, he gaue it out as if he had purpoſed to haue inuaded HVNGARIE.

But *Baiazet* a good while before aduertiſed, that *Selymus* was departed from TRAPEZOND, and come ouer into EVROPE, maruelling that he had left his charge in ASIA (the rebellion of *Techellis* and the Perſian warre yet ſcarce quieted) and that vpon his owne head he had entertained forraine aid to make warre againſt the moſt warlike nation of the Hungarians; and far-
E ther, that with his armie by land, he had ſeized vpon the places neereſt vnto THRACIA, and with a ſtrong nauie kept the Euxine ſea, he began to ſuſpect, as the truth was, That all this preparation was made and entended againſt himſelfe: for the craftie old ſire had good proofe of the vnquiet and troubleſome nature of his ſonne, eſpecially in that without his knowledge he durſt preſume to take a wife from amongſt the Tartars, and afterwards with no leſſe preſumption of himſelfe raiſe an armie both by ſea and land. Whereby he eaſily perceiued, that he would neuer hold himſelfe contented with a ſmall kingdome, ſo long as he was in hope by deſperat aduenture to gaine a greater. Yet thinking it better with like diſſimulation to appeaſe his violent and *Baiazet ſendeth embaſſadours to Selymus.*
fierce nature, than by ſharpe reproofe to moue him to farther choller, he ſent vnto him embaſſa-
F dours to declare vnto him with that danger the Turkiſh kings had in former times taken vpon them thoſe Hungarian warres: for example whereof he needed not to go no further than to his grandfather *Mahomet* the Great, who many times to his exceeding loſſe had made proofe of the Hungarian forces: wherefore he ſhould doe well to expect ſome fitter opportunitie, when as he might with better aduiſe, greater power, and more aſſured hope of victorie, take thoſe wars in hand. Whereunto *Selymus* anſwered, That he had left ASIA, enforced thereunto by the iniuries of his brother *Achomates*, and was therefore come ouer into EVROPE, by dint of ſword

and

and the helpe of his friends, to win from the enemies of the Mahometane religion a larger and better prouince for that little barren and peaceable one which his father had giuen him, bordering vpon HIBERIA and CHOLCHOS, bare and needie people, liuing as connies amongſt the rockes and mountaines. As for the Hungarians, whom they thought to be a people inuincible, and therefore not to be dealt withall, he was not of that baſe mind to be daunted with any danger, were it neuer ſo great: and yet that in his opinion the warre was neither ſo difficult or dangerous, as was by them pretended; for as much as the ancient proweſſe of that warlike nation was now much changed, together with the change of their kings; and their diſcipline of warre not onely much decayed, but almoſt quite loſt; after that *Vladiſlaus*, farre vnlike in policie and proweſſe, had ſucceeded the renowmed *Matthias* in that kingdome. Neither had he (as he ſaid) from his cradle learned to be afraid of death, or of the common chances of warre, as knowing that neither God nor man would be wanting to him, who with an honourable reſolution did aduenture vpon vertuous and worthie attempts: and that therefore he was fully reſolued for his owne honour (which his father had in ſome ſort blemiſhed by the immoderate aduancement of his brethren) either to die honourably in the field in battaile againſt the enemies of the Mahometane religion, or elſe glorioully to extend the bounds of the Turkiſh empire: and that he would not (though one of the youngeſt in the *Othoman* familie) be accounted inferiour to any of his brethren in vertue and proweſſe. Thus was the Hungarian warre neuer by *Selymus* entended, notably by him pretended; and with no leſſe diſſimulation by *Baiazet* diſſwaded. The embaſſadours, although *Selymus* in all his ſpeeches ſhewed no token of peace: yet in his fathers name preſented vnto him diuers gifts, thereby if it might be to appeaſe his fierce & cruell mind. Vnto his old gouernment they adioyned SAMANDRIA, which the Hungarians call SCHENDEROVIA, a ſtrong citie of SERVIA vpon the borders of HVNGARIE, with many other ſtrong townes in the ſame countrey: they gaue him alſo threeſcore thouſand duckats, beſide a thouſand garments of cloth and ſilke: with good ſtore of prouiſion wherewith to releeue and content the ſouldiers by him entertained; leſt that they drawne farre from home in hope of ſpoile, ſhould take it in euill part if they ſhould be ſent away emptie handed. *Selymus* in a happie time hauing receiued theſe gifts, returned the embaſſadours vnto his father, with more doubtfull anſwere and vncertaine hope than before: yet changing nothing in himſelfe of his former reſolution, ſecret meſſengers and letters from his friends in the court ſtill whetting him forward (too much alreadie enflamed with deſire of ſoueraigntie) perſwading him to make haſt and to repoſe his greateſt hope in his quicke ſpeed; for that they vnderſtood, that about the time of his ſetting forward, his brother *Achomates* was comming with a great power, being ſent for out of CAPADOCIA by his father.

Preſents giuen to Selymus by his fathers embaſſadours.

Baiazet would appoint his ſucceſſour whileſt he yet liued.

In the meane time *Baiazet*, moued the rather with the feare of *Selymus*, reſolued vpon that, whereof he had long before in his mind deeply conſidered, and now ſaid openly, That he would appoint his ſucceſſour, who in ſtead of himſelfe, ſpent with yeares and ſickneſſe, ſhould bring with him the flower of youth and ſtrength of bodie, fit to gouerne ſo great an empire. But when theſe things were propounded vnto the ſouldiours of the court by the foure great Baſſaes (who in all things both of peace and warres had next place vnto the emperour himſelfe) it was forthwith gainſaied by thoſe martiall men, crying aloud with one voice, That they would know no other emperour but *Baiazet*, vnder whoſe conduct & good fortune they had now ſerued aboue thirtie yeares: and therefore would not ſuffer him to liue a priuat life in obſcuritie, who with ſo many victories and ſtrong cities taken, had brought the *Othoman* empire vnto that height of renowme and glorie. They ſaid moreouer, that there was in him yet ſtrength enough, if he would but with the reuerend honour of his age retaine the maieſtie of his place, and the glorie he had gotten with his long and happie raigne, and moſt famous victories: and that of his children, ſuch a one ſhould vndoubtedly in his due time ſucceed in the empire, as of right ought: onely they wiſhed, that the old emperour might in the meane time liue in health with a long & happie raigne: neither needed he (as they ſaid) to feare that after his death any controuerſie ſhould ariſe amongſt his ſonnes about the ſucceſſion; for that the *Othoman* progenie vſed to attaine the imperiall ſeat, according to the old cuſtome of their anceſtours the *Othoman* kings, by right and order onely, and not by corruption or faction. But if he would needs vpon his owne priuate good liking, or as it were by new adoption proceed to make choice of ſuch a one, as the people and the men of warre (his moſt loyall and faithfull ſubiects) could not ſo well like of, it would be

A be an occaſion of much more trouble, and happily the meanes to bring in that confuſion of the ſtate, which he thought thereby to eſchew. For then, beſide the diſlike of the people, the other brethren would neuer endure ſo notable an iniurie, or euer be at quiet, vntill they had (as men wrongfully caſt off and diſinherited) by ſtrong hand and endangering of all, recouered their honour loſt by the headſtrong will of their aged father.

The ſouldiers thus before inſtructed by the friends and fauourites of *Selymus*, who with money and large promiſes had corrupted their captains & cheefe officers, ſpake theſe things frankly to haue deterred the old emperour from his purpoſe. But he thinking that they had (as he himſelfe did) eſpecially affected *Achomates* his eldeſt ſonne; for that they had generally proteſted,

B that they would againſt all iniuries defend his honours vnto whom the empire ſhould of right appertaine: ſaid he would make choice of *Achomates*, if it ſhould ſtand with their good liking. But the cheefe of the ſouldiers, who corrupted by *Selymus*, had together ſold both their faith & themſelues, cunningly commended *Achomates*, and ſeemed wonderfully to like of him; yet to accept of him for their ſoueraigne, *Baiazet* yet liuing, they ſaid was not agreeing with the antient cuſtome of the *Othoman* kings, neither for the behoofe of the men of war, neither yet good for the ſtate of the empire: for as much as neither his brethren *Corcutus* and *Selymus*, neither the ſouldiers of the court, could with patience endure the leaſt touch of the ſuſpition of infidelitie; which they muſt needs doe, if he as a ſuſpitious father ſhould doubt either of the loue or loyaltie of his moſt dutifull ſonnes, or of the faith or conſtancie of his moſt faithfull ſeruants,

C whereof he had made ſo many trials. Beſides that, it ſeemed vnto them all vnreaſonable, that by the odious preiudice of that fact, the ſouldiers ſhould be defrauded of the rewards vſually graunted vnto them during the time of the vacancie of the empire, ariſing of the ſpoile taken from them which are of religion different from the Turkes. For it is a cuſtome, that immediately vpon the death of the Turkiſh emperour, all the Iewes and Chriſtians which liue at CONSTANTINOPLE, PERA, HADRIANOPLE, THESSALONICA, and PRVSA, eſpecially marchants, expoſed vnto the iniuries of the Turkes, are by the Ianizaries and other ſouldiers of the court ſpoiled of all their wares and goods, and become vnto them a prey: neither will they giue their oath of allegeance vnto the new emperour, vntill he haue graunted vnto them all that prey, as a bountie, and haue ſolemnely ſworne by his owne head (the greateſt aſſurance

D that can by oath be giuen amongſt the Turkes) freely to pardon all the offenders, and for euer to forget all the outrages before committed. When *Baiazet* ſaw his men of war thus generally to oppoſe themſelues againſt the tranſlation of the empire to *Achomates*, he of purpoſe to corrupt the minds of them which were already before corrupted, promiſed to giue them fiue hundred thouſand duckats, if they would ſtand fauourable to *Achomates*, and accept him for their ſoueraigne: which maſſe of money his cuſtomers and receiuers vndertooke to leuy of the ſame marchant ſtrangers & Iewes, & to pay it as *Baiazet* had promiſed. Yet the ouerthwart frowardneſſe of theſe men of warre ouercame the good fortune of *Achomates*, although the reward propoſed, were great: For why, they had in their martiall minds conceiued farre greater rewards and preferments, if in ſtead of a peaceable and quiet prince, a monſtrous tyrant of reſtleſſe na-

E ture (as was *Selymus*) might by their helpe and meanes aſpire to the empire. Thus *Baiazet* driuen from his hope, thought it beſt for the preſent to diſſemble the matter; and concealing his greefe, with patience to put vp that diſhonour vntill a fitter opportunitie were offered for the effecting of that he ſo much deſired.

Baiazet ſeeketh to preſer Achomates to the empire.

Selymus aduertiſed from his friends, with what affection and faſtneſſe the ſouldiours of the court had in the ſecret fauour of him openly withſtood the earneſt deſire of *Baiazet* for the preferment of *Achomates*, becauſe he would not longer fruſtrate the expectation of his fauorits by lingering and delay, or ſeeme to diſtruſt the readie good will of the men of warre towards him, left the borders of HVNGARIE; and with his armie marching through THRACIA, encamped at length vpon the riſing of an hill not farre from HADRIANOPLE, from whence the neighing

F of his horſes might eaſily be heard, and his tents from the high places of the citie diſcouered. From thence he ſent a meſſenger vnto his father then lying in the citie, to certifie him, That for as much as he had not of many yeares before ſeene him, he was now therefore deſirous to come vnto his preſence to viſit him, before he croſſed the ſeas backe againe by his appointment to TRAPEZOND: and the rather, becauſe it might chance that he ſhould neuer ſee him againe, being now become both aged & diſeaſed: beſides that, it much concerned (as he would haue had

Selymus marcheth with his armie towards Hadrianople.

Selymus his diſſembling embaſſage vnto his father.

him to beleeue) the quietneſſe of his kingdome in Asia, and the vnitie of his children, if the con- G
trouerſies betwixt him & his brother *Achomates*, which could not ſafely be committed to meſ-
ſengers, might by themſelues be diſcouered to him their father, as an indifferent hearer & decider
of the ſame. Wherefore he humbly beſought him, to appoint him a time and place to giue him
audience in, and not to denie him leaue to come and kiſſe his hands; which thing his anceſtors
neuer refuſed to grant vnto their poore friends, much leſſe vnto their children. *Baiazet* who a
few daies before vnderſtanding of the comming of *Selymus*, and throughly ſeeing into his de-
uiſes, had called vnto him certaine of his Sanzackes or chiefe captaines, with their ſelect compa-
nies out of the neereſt parts of Græcia, and had alſo ſet ſtrong watch and ward through the
citie: fearing leaſt vnder the colour of parley his ſouldiors attending about his perſon, corrup- H
ted by *Selymus* & his friends (who euen then loded with gifts and promiſes, were ſecretly vpon
the point of reuolt) ſhould be quite drawne away from him, and ſo he himſelfe at length be ei-
ther by open force oppreſſed, or ſecret trecherie circumuented, thought it beſt to cut him off at
once from all hope of conference or acceſſe vnto his preſence. Wherefore ſeriouſly blaming
him, that he had vpon his owne head brought his armie into another mans prouince, that he in
armes required audience, and laſt of all ſo inſolently abuſed his fathers lenitie and patience; he
by the ſame meſſenger ſent him farther word, That he ſhould not preſume to approch any nee-
rer vnto him, or expect any thing appertaining to peace: who guarded with forraine power,
had without his fathers leaue entered into armes, and ſpoiled the countries of his friends: and
that therefore he ſhould do well with all ſpeed to depart out of Thracia, yea and out of Eu- I
rope alſo, and diſbanding his forces, againe to retire himſelfe vnto his own charge in Pontus;
in which doing he ſhould find greater fauour & kindnes with him his father, than euer he had be-
fore: but if he would needs proceed in the courſe by him begun, that then hee would no more
take him for his ſonne, but for his enemie; and before it were long, ſharply chaſtiſe him for his
malapert inſolencie, little differing from vnnaturall treacherie. The meſſenger with his anſwere
diſmiſſed, it was not long after but that *Baiazet* was by his eſpials aduertiſed, that *Selymus* the
night following was riſen with his armie, and marched directed towards Constantinople:
whether he was ſent for by his friends, in hope that vpon his approch with his armie, ſome ſud-
daine tumult and vprore would to his auaile riſe in that ſo great and populous a citie. Wherup-
on *Baiazet* fearing leaſt in ſtaying at Hadrianople, he might loſe the imperiall citie of Con- K
stantinople, earely in the morning by breake of the day departed from Hadrianople
towards Constantinople: vpon his departure *Selymus* peaceably entered the citie of
Hadrianople, the citizens fearing, that if they ſhould haue made any reſiſtance, their vnſea-
ſonable faithfulneſſe towards *Baiazet* might haue turned to their vtter deſtruction. *Selymus* after
he had a while refreſhed his armie with the plentie of that citie, according to his former deter-
mination ſet forward againe, of purpoſe by long and ſpeedie marches to haue preuented his fa-
thers comming to Constantinople. *Baiazet* was yet ſcarcely come to Chiurlus, or rather
Selymus ouer-takethhis father Tzurulum, an ancient ruinous citie almoſt vpon the mid way betwixt Hadrianople and
Constantinople, when warning was giuen him of them that followed his armie, that the
forerunners of *Selymus* were at hand, cutting off the ſtraglers of his armie: and with hot skirmi- L
ſhing ſtayed and troubled his rereward. The aged emperor more mooned than terrified with
the ſtrangeneſſe of the matter, becauſe his marching ſhould not ſeeme as if it were a flight or
chaſe, commanded his ſtanderd to be ſet vp, and all his armie to make a ſtand, of purpoſe, that
The cheefe men about Baiazet ſecretly fauour Selymus, and diſſuade him from giuing him battaile. if *Selymus* ſhould ſo fiercely come on to giue him battaile, he might find him in readineſſe. The
great captaines and noblemen then preſent with *Baiazet*, whether it were for old acquaintance,
or vpon ſome new inclination of their affection, or els vpon hope of new aliance and prefer-
ment wiſhing well vnto *Selymus*, and therefore indirectly and cunningly fauoring him, ſeemed
not to like of *Baiazet* his reſolution, to be ſo farre moued (as they ſaid) with the youthfull heate
and lightneſſe of his ſonne, as to ſeeke reuenge by battell, wheras the victorie it ſelfe could yeeld
him nothing but ſorrow, but the ouerthrow threatened deſtruction both to himſelfe and all M
them that were with him: the imminent euent whereof ſeemed to bee ſo much the more dan-
gerous and fearefull, by how much he was at that time inferiour vnto his ſonne both in warlike
prouiſion and number of men. Wherefore it were good for him (they ſaid) to moderate his an-
ger, and not now in the winding vp of his life to make too much haſt by a miſerable death in a
wofull battell to ſtaine the whole glorie of his former life. There was (as they would haue per-

ſuaded

A ſuaded him) but one only courſe to be taken full of wholeſome pollicie and ſafetie, and that was, That he ſhould with ſuch ſpeed as he had begun, march on forward to CONSTANTINOPLE; that ſo *Selymus* excluded out of the citie (his chiefeſt hope) and then not knowing which way to turne himſelfe, ſhould either of his owne accord, or for feare of his fathers greater forces, thinke of returne: and ſo with his raſcall followers more honeſtly periſh by the hands of them whoſe countries he had ſpoyled, and vpon whom he muſt of neceſſitie liue in his retire, than by the ſword of his father. The author of this counſell was *Muſtapha*, the moſt auncient Baſſa of thoſe which being in greateſt authoritie about the emperour are onely of his priuie councell, and ſway all matters of importance concerning either peace or warre: he then vpon an vnthankfull and malitious mind loathing *Baiazet*, as one that had too long raigned, hated him al-
B ſo for certaine priuat diſpleaſures conceiued of the emulation of the other younger Baſſacs by him promoted: and ſecretly bare great affection to *Selymus*, both in condition and fauour reſembling his grandfather the Great *Mahomet*, by whom he was brought vp himſelfe, and him of all the ſonnes of *Baiazet* he thought moſt worthie of the empire. This *Muſtapha* was borne in the towne of SERES (neere vnto AMPHIPOLIS) the ſonne of a Grecke prieſt, a man of a ſlie craftie and ſubtile wit, alwaies ſubiect to corruption: which deſeaſes of mind were in him well to haue bin diſcouered by his froward looke and ſquint eies, the ceraine notes of a nature to be ſuſpected. Next vnto this *Muſtapha* was *Boſtanges Baſſa*, borne of the honourable familie of *Ducagina* in ÆTHOLIA, and thereof called *Ducaginoli*: a man for his couetouſneſſe, ambition, and trecherie, infamous; as the foule and miſerable end of his life afterwards declared: Vnto this
C man *Selymus* had by ſecret promiſe betrothed one of his daughters now mariageable, as a reward of his corrupt faith. By which ſlight, he had alſo allured *Aiax* (Aga or captaine of the Ianizaries, and great Maſter of the houſhold) to promiſe his aid for the obtaining of the empire; whereunto he ſaid he was by deſtinie called: and by his meanes drew other inferior captaines ſecretly to fauour his quarrell, vnto whom he ſpared not to promiſe whatſoeuer might pleaſe them. Yea the captaines almoſt generally either corrupted with reward, or for feare following the inclination of the greater commanders, of themſelues leaned that way. Of all the reſt, only *Cherſeogles Baſſa* (whom the Turkes hiſtories call alſo *Achmet Hertezec-ogli*) a faithfull, conſtant, and vpright man, free from all double dealing and deceit, a faſt and aſſured friend vnto *Baiazet* his father in law, was of opinion, That the immoderate pride & inſolencie of *Selymus*, was
D euen there by force of armes and ſtrong hand forthwith to be oppreſſed, before he ſhould approch any neerer vnto the imperiall citie, for feare of raiſing ſome farther trouble and tumult there than were well to be appeaſed; which was the thing that *Selymus* his friends moſt of all deſired. Neither was it to be thought (as *Cherſeogles* ſaid) that the naked Tartarian horſemen, although they were in number moe, would euer be able to abide the firſt charge of *Baiazet* his wel armed penſioners. As for the Ianizaries, of whoſe approued faith and valor tried in maine dangers, he had before had good experience: there was no doubt but that they would now to the vttermoſt of their power, defend the perſon and honour of their aged and victorious emperor, who had of long time ſo well of them deſerued; and alſo to reuenge his quarrell vpon diſobe-
E dient *Selymus*, who neither fearing God the iuſt reuenger of ſuch vngratious dealing, neither the infamie of men, had moſt vnnaturally lift vp his ſword againſt his father, wickedly to depriue him of life of whom he had receiued life. Wherfore he perſuaded him in his own iuſt quarrell, to go forth vnto his ſouldiors with cheerefull countenance, and putting them in remembrance of the benefits they had from time to time moſt bountifully receiued at his hands, as alſo of their allegeance and dutie; to make them to vnderſtand, that repoſing his truſt in their fidelitie and valour, he had reſolutely ſet down with himſelfe, in that place before he went any further, by their faithfull hands to chaſtiſe the preſumptious inſolencie of his vnnaturall ſonne, togither with his rebellious followers.

Cherſeogles Baſſa the only great man faithfull to Baiazet, perſuadeth him to giue battel to Selymus.

But now that we are fallen into the remembrance of this *Cherſeogles*, it ſhall not be amiſſe both for the honour of the man, and the great loue he alwaies bare vnto the Chriſtians, to ſtep
F a little out of the way, to ſee the cauſe why he being a Chriſtian borne, turned Turke. For hee was not (as almoſt all the reſt of the great men about *Baiazet* were) of a child taken from his Chriſtian parents, and ſo brought vp in the Mahometan religion; but being now a man grown, turned Turke: yet ſo, as that he neuer in heart forgot either the Chriſtian religion or loue toward the Chriſtians; a thing not common among ſuch renegates. He being the ſonne of one

Cherſechius a ſmal prince of ILLYRIA, neere vnto the Blacke mountaine, and going to be ma- G
ried vnto a ladie whom he moſt entirely loued, and vnto whom he was alreadie betrothed, ho-
nourably deſcended of the houſe of the Deſpot of SERVIA: his intemperat father, with luſtfull
eye beholding the young ladie of rare feature and incomperable beautie, deſired to haue her for
himſelfe; and regarding more the ſatisfying of his own inordinate deſire, than his owne honor
or the fatherly loue of his ſonne, tooke her in mariage himſelfe: all his friends labouring in vain
to diſſuade him, and with open mouth crying ſhame of ſo foule a fact. Wherefore the young
man, moued with the indignitie of ſo great an iniurie, and driuen headlong with deſpaire, fled
firſt to the Turks garriſons which lay not farre off, and from thence to CONSTANTINOPLE:
where the fortune of the man was to bee wondred at: For being brought before *Baiazet*, who
with cheerfull countenance entertained him for that he was honourably deſcended, and wel li- H
ked both of the man and of the cauſe of his reuolt: ſmiling vpon him ſaid, Be of good cheere
noble youth, for thy great courage is worthie of far greater fortune than thy fathers houſe can
affoord thee; now in ſteed of thy loue wrongfully taken from thee by thy father, the kinſwo-
man of a poore exiled prince, thou ſhalt haue giuen thee in mariage the daughter of a great em-
perour, of rare and ſingular perfection. And not long after, abiuring his religion, and changing
his name of *Stephen* to *Achomates* and *Cherſeogles*, hee married one of *Baiazet* his daughters, a
princeſſe of great beautie: and deſerued to haue a place amongſt the Baſſaes of greateſt honour
in the court. Yet ſtill retaining the remembrance of his former profeſſion with a deſire to re-
turne thereto againe: inſomuch, that he kept in his ſecret cloſet the image of the crucifex, which
he ſhewed to *Io. Laſcaris* as to his truſtie friend, as he himſelfe reported. This man at ſuch time I
as the citie of MODON was taken by the Turkes, and a multitude of poore Chriſtian captiues
cruelly put to death in the ſight of *Baiazet*, by earneſt intreatie ſaued the Venetian Senatours
there taken: and afterward by earneſt ſuit deliuered *Andreas Gritti*, being priſoner at CON-
STANTINOPLE and condemned to die, who not many yeares after was choſen duke of VE-
NICE. He was the chiefe meanes whereby the Venetians to their great good obtained peace of
Baiazet. He alſo by his great authoritie and of his owne charge, redeemed innumerable Chri-
ſtians from the ſeruitude of the Turkes, and ſet them at libertie. Neither is his kindneſſe towards
the furtherance of good learning to be forgotten: for at ſuch time as the aforeſaid *Io. Laſcaris*,
the notable and learned Grecian, by the appointment of *Leo* the tenth ſought for the auncient
works of famous writers, he procured the Turkiſh emperors letters patents, that he might free- K
ly at his pleaſure ſearch all the libraries in GRÆCIA, to the great benefit of good letters. Now *Ba-
iazet* encouraged by this mans perſuaſion (as is aforeſaid) and hearing as he lay in his pauillion
the alarum of the enemie, with the tumult and clamour of his own ſouldiers, as if they had been
men afraid; and ſundrie meſſengers alſo at the ſame time comming vnto him with news, That
Selymus with his Tartarian horſemen had almoſt encloſed the rereward of his armie, and alrea-
die taken ſome of his baggage: grinding his teeth for verie madneſſe and griefe of mind, with
teares trickling downe his hoarie cheekes, got him out of his pauillion in his horſelitter (for he
was at the ſame time ſo troubled with the gout, that he was not able to ſit on horſebacke) and
turning himſelfe vnto the penſioners and Ianizaries ſtanding about him, as their manner is,
ſaid vnto them: L

The ſpeech of Baiazet to the Ianizaries and ſouldiors of the court.

*Will you (foſter children, valiant ſouldiours, and faithfull keepers of my perſon, who with great
good fortune haue ſerued me in field aboue the ſpace of thirtie yeares; and for your faithfull and good
ſeruice, haue both in time of peace and warre, of me receiued ſuch rewards, as by your owne confeſſion
and thankeſgiuing farre exceeded your owne expectation, and the meaſure of our treaſures) Will you
I ſay ſuffer the innocent father to be butchered by his graceleſſe ſonne? And your old emperour tor-
mented with age and diſeaſes, to bee cruelly muthereed by a companie of wild Tartars, little better
than arrant roagues and theeues? Shall I bee now forſaken in this my beauie old age and laſt act of
life? and ſhall I bee deliuered vnto mine enemies by them, by them I ſay, who many yeares ago with
great faithfulneſſe and inuincible courage defended myne honour and right againſt my brother Ze- M
mes? and haue manie times ſince, not onely valiantly defended this empire againſt moſt warlike
nations, but alſo moſt victoriouſly augmented the ſame? But I will not ſo eaſily beleeue that which
to my no ſmall greeſe is brought vnto mine eares, concerning the reuolting of mine armie: neither if I
did beleeue it, am I ſo feareſull as to bee therewith diſcouraged, or to ſeeke to make ſhift for my ſelfe.*

For

A *For to what purpose should I thinke of flight? as though I could in any other place find more faithfulnesse or surer defence than with you? And concerning your selues, what should be your hope by this so infamous treacherie? If any of you (for I cannot beleeue that you are all so mad) without regard of faith, of worldly shame, or the feare of God, haue polluted your minds with the pernitious conceit of so foule a treason; doe you thinke to gaine greater rewards and preferments by your treacherie and villanie, than by your fidelitie and constancie? There be manie which carefull of my person, perswade mee to reserue this my sicke and feeble bodie vnto my better fortune, and to commit my selfe to flight; so rather to saue my life with shame and infamie, than to end my daies with honour and glorie: Which is so farre from my thought for the apprehension of any feare to doe, that I will to the contrarie forthwith*
B *giue the fierce enemie battell; and in this my last danger make proofe of all your fidelitie and valour, and of euerie one of your good wils in particular: and so by conduct of the highest, either defeat the power and breake the strength of this graceless man, or else hauing raigned aboue thirtie yeares an emperour, end my daies together with them which shall vnto the end continue with me in their faithfulnesse and loyaltie, although I should be most shamefully and dishonourably betraied and forsaken of some of mine owne guard: which thing though lying fame would make me beleeue, yet will I not feare it vntill I see the proofe thereof.*

The common sort of the Ianizaries, vnto whom the great commaunders and captaines corrupted by *Selymus*, had not for their leuitie and multitude communicated their purpose of trans-
C ferring the empire to *Selymus*: began to crie out as if it had been with generall consent, That he should not doubt to ioine battell with his enemies, and so to make proofe of their constant fidelitie and wonted valour. Which was done with such a cheerefulnesse and desire expressed by great shouts, clapping of hands, and clattering of armour; that it seemed they would play the parts of resolute souldiours, and that as guiltlesse men they tooke it grieuously to be once suspected of treason or infidelitie. Others also who secretly and in heart were well affected to *Selymus*, for fashion sake followed them with like crie: but especially the great commaunders both of the armie, and of the emperours court, now changing their affection (whether it were for shame of the fact, or for feare of discouering themselues out of season, is vncertain.) Wherfore according to the maner of such men, which through their mutabilitie and mischieuous dis-
D position, fearing to be conuinced and discouered, add vnto the present a second & new treason or trecherie, to couer the former: so *Mustapha* and *Bostanges* (not daring now to shew themselues for *Selymus*) to make a great shew of their faigned loyaltie towards *Baiazet*, departed themselues out of his pauillion, to encourage the souldiours and to martiall the battell.

The common sort of the Ianizaries faithfull to Baiazet desire battell.

Baiazet sicke in his chariot, by the aduise of *Cherseogles* the faithfull Bassa, placed his battel in this order: The Sanzakes (which are the gouernours of prouinces) with their horsemen, in number about six thousand, he set in the front of the battel: The Spachi-oglans and Siliphtars, which are the chiefe horsemen of the court (and as it were the emperours pensioners) were placed as two wings on each side of the great squadron of the Ianizaries; in the middest whereof was old *Baiazet* himselfe. Other foure thousand horsemen (seruants to the great men of the court) were
E left in the rearward, and to guard the baggage. These slaues (for so indeed they are) for their apparell and furniture, yea and valour also, are little inferior to their masters, by whom they are so sumptuously maintained both for strength and ostentation. The battell thus ordered, *Baiazet* commanded the trumpers to sound, and a red ensigne in token of battel to be displaied. On the other side, *Selymus* placing his Tartarian horsemen in both wings, and his Turks in the middest in manner of a halfe moone, for that he in number of horsemen farre exceeded his father, did almost on euerie side inclose him, and so charge him. The Tartars when they were come within an hundred paces of their enemies, casting themselues (after the manner of their fight) into great rings, emptie within in manner of a crowne, and so running round, that they might both backward and forward deliuer their arrowes, cast vpon their enemies whole showers of shot as
F if it had beene haile, to the great annoyance of the Turks: when as in the meane time, the other Tartarian archers farther off, shooting their arrowes not right forth, but more vpright towards heauen, which falling directly downe sore gauled the Turkes horses also. But the old souldiours (taught by the example of their captaines) serred close together, and casting their targets ouer their heads, as if it had beene one whole roofe or penthouse, receiued their arrowes with lesse harme, and hasted with as much speed as they could to come to handie blowes. The pensioners

The battell betwixt Baiazet and Selymus.

alſo at the ſame inſtant brauely charged the middle of *Selymus* his battell, where his Turkiſh horſemen ſtood: and *Aiax* (captain of the Ianizaries) drawing out ſeuen hundred readie harquebuſiers out of the ſqadron of the Ianizaries, with them aſſailed the hindmoſt of one of the wings of the Tartars: and the foure thouſand ſeruants left in the rereward, as deſirous as the reſt to ſhew their forwardnes, with great ſlaughter repulſed the other wing of the Tartars, which came to haue ſpoiled the Turks carriages. This fierce battell betwixt the father and the ſonne, with doubtfull euent endured from noone vntill the going down of the Sunne: *Selymus* in many places ſtill reſtoring his declining battell, and fighting himſelfe, as for an empire. But after that the Tartars, hardly charged by the harquebuſiers, were not able to abide the ſhot, eſpecially their horſes being with the vnwonted noiſe therof wonderfully terrified, and ſo carrying backe their riders whether they would or no, began to flie; the reſt of the horſemen could neither by commandement, threatening, or wounds, be enforced to ſtay, but turned their backes and fled. The footmen alſo whom *Selymus* had attired and armed after the manner of the Ianizaries, being forſaken of their owne horſemen, were now by *Baiazet* his horſemen compaſſed about and almoſt all ſlaine.

Selymus his armie put to flight

Selymus his armie thus ouerthrowne, and himſelfe hardly beſet, was by certain troupes of his Turkiſh horſemen which yet ſtaied with him, deliuered from the preſent daunger; and being wounded, was mounted vpon a freſh horſe, and ſo with all the ſpeed he could fled after the Tartars. But doubting to be purſued and ouertaken by his fathers ſpeedie horſemen, he changed his horſe, and tooke another of a wonderfull ſwiftneſſe: and ſo reſeruing himſelfe to his future fortune, with a few of his followers fled to VARNA, and from thence by ſea to CAPHA.

The eſtimation Selymus had of his horſe whereon he eſcaped from his father.

The horſe whereon *Selymus* fled, was all cole blacke, called *Carabulo* (that is to ſay, *a blacke cloud*) whom *Selymus* as a good ſeruitour euer after exempted from all ſeruice: and had him in ſuch eſtimation, that couered with cloth of gold, he was as a ſpare horſe without a rider led after him in all his great expeditions, firſt into PERSIA, and afterward into ÆGIPT, where he died at CAIRE, and there to the imitation of *Bucephalus*, Great *Alexanders* horſe, had a monument erected for him: wherein *Selymus* ſhewed himſelfe more kind than to his owne brethren, whom he cruelly murthered, and hardly affoorded to ſome of them ſo honourable a ſepulture.

In this battell of fortie thouſand which *Selymus* brought into the field, eſcaped not aboue eight thouſand, but they were either ſlaine or taken priſoners. Of *Baiazet* his armie were loſt about ſeuen hundred, and three thouſand hurt with Tartarian arrows: which loſſe he preſently reuenged, with extreame crueltie cauſing all ſuch as were taken priſoners, to be without mercie put to the ſword in his ſight; whoſe heads were laid together by heaps, and their dead bodies as if they had been towers. Of this notable battell betwixt the father and the ſonne in the yeare 1511, CHIVRLVS, called in ancient time TZVRVLVM, before an obſcure old ruinous citie (or as *Iouius* calleth it, a village) became famous; but much more afterwards by the fatall deſtinie of *Selymus*: who not many yeres after (ſtrucken with a moſt loathſome and incurable diſeaſe) ended his daies in the ſame place with an vntimely and tormenting death, God (as is to be thought) with reuenging hand in the ſame place taking iuſt puniſhment for his former diſloyaltie towards his aged father, as ſhall hereafter be in due time and place declared.

Three daies *Baiazet* lay ſtill in the ſame place where he had obtained the victorie, vntill ſuch time as all his ſouldiours were againe returned from the chaſe of the enemie: after that, he held on his way to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there bountifully rewarded his ſouldiours. In the meane time *Achomates* hearing of all the trouble which had happened betwixt his father and his brother *Selymus*, with the euent therof, came with an armie of twentie thouſand from AMASIA, through the countries of GALATIA and BITHYNIA, vnto the citie of SCVTARI, called in ancient time CHRISOPOLIS (though ſome ſuppoſe it to haue beene the famous citie of CHALCEDON) which citie is ſituated vpon the ſtrait of Boſphorus directly againſt the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE. In this place *Achomates* encamped his armie, neere vnto the ſea ſide, expecting what courſe his father ſhould take after ſo great a victorie. For beſide the prerogatiue of his age, and the eſpeciall loue of his father towards him, the generall affection of the vulgar people, with the good opinion he had of himſelfe, had alreadie filled his mind with the hope of the empire: wherefore he ceaſed not night and day to ſend meſſengers ouer that narrow ſtrait to CONSTANTINOPLE, and earneſtly to ſolicite *Baiazet* his father in ſo fit an occaſion to make haſt

A haſt to diſpatch what he had ſo long before determined, concerning the reſignation of the empire. He alſo importuned his friends and familiars in beſt manner he could to commend him to his father, and in moſt ample ſort to extoll his graue purpoſe for tranſlation of the empire; and to doe the vttermoſt of their deuoire, that ſeeing God and good fortune had iuſtly ouerthrowne the raſh attempt and force of his brother *Selymus*, he by their good meanes might the ſooner obtaine the empire, whereof he was the vndoubted heire.

Baiazet, who of himſelfe and according to his old good liking was altogether deſirous of the preferment of *Achomates*, was by their perſwaſions eaſily entreated to haſten the performance of that he had before determined for the transferring of the empire. And making no great ſecret B of the matter, commanded certaine gallies to be made readie for the tranſporting of *Achomates* from SCVTARI to CONSTANTINOPLE. But the great Baſſaes with the ſouldiers of the court (the ſecret fauourits of *Selymus*) vnderſtanding the matter, began againe openly to reſiſt and impugne his purpoſed determination, and to alleage the ſame reaſons they had before at HADRIANOPLE alleaged: in fine they ſaid plainely, That they would by no meanes ſuffer him ſo farre to diſable himſelfe as an inſufficient man to reſigne the empire, who of late had with ſo valiant and courageous an heart fought for the honour of his crowne and dignitie; and that therefore ſo long as he liued, they would acknowledge no other ſoueraigne but *Baiazet*: yet for all that as they meant not thereby to cut off *Achomates* his hope, ſo neither ought he to diſtruſt the good will of the men of warre; but that he being a man of moſt approued and knowne va- C lour, might in due time with their generall good liking enioy his right, which ſhould then without all queſtion be due vnto him as the eldeſt ſonne of their emperour. They ſaid moreouer, that they had in the late battaile againſt *Selymus* ſufficiently declared what minds they were of both towards their emperour and *Achomates*, and what confidence they were to repoſe in the fidelitie of their ſouldiers, who to manifeſt their faithfulneſſe and loyaltie, had not refuſed to offer themſelues vnto the hazard of a moſt vnequall battaile, yea their liues vnto death it ſelfe. O foule diſſimulation, the couert maske of all miſchiefe, vnder which, meere trecherie is here pretended for great loyaltie, the aged emperour too too much flattered; *Achomates* ſhamefully deluded, and (the man that might not as then without ſome addition of diſgrace be named) *Selymus*, euen bloudie *Selymus*, ſecretly ſought for aboue all men to be preferred!

Baiazet willing to prefer Achomates to the empire.

D *Baiazet* by this offwardneſſe and inſolencie of the ſouldiers againe diſappointed of his purpoſe, or elſe (as ſome thought) delighted with the ſweetneſſe of ſoueraignetie: for that after the late victorie he ſeemed (as one growne young againe) neither to feele himſelfe old or vnable ſtill to gouerne ſo great an empire; ſent word to *Achomates*, how the matter ſtood, & that he ſhould forthwith depart from SCVTARI to his old charge at AMASIA, from whence he would againe call him at ſuch time as he had with new bountie won the minds of the ſouldiers, and procured the good liking of other the great men in court, whereby ſo great a matter and not vſuall, might the better and with more ſecuritie be effected.

Achomates thus deceiued of his hope and expectation, greeuouſly complaining that he was ſo mocked of his father, and contemned of the ſouldiers of the court, began to mix his new re- E queſt with words of heat and diſcontentment, and to inueigh againſt his father, for making him a byword (as he tearmed it) and a laughing ſtocke vnto the world, after he had taken the paines to come ſo farre, and that by his ſpeciall appointment. But if he proceeded ſo to doate, and to make ſo great reckoning of the ſouldiers of the court, that in reſpect thereof he neither regarded his promiſe, nor that was right and iuſt, he would himſelfe by force of armes take vp- on him the defence of his owne honour and right, ſo light eſteemed by his father, and reuenge the diſgrace offered vnto him by others.

Whereunto *Baiazet* anſwered by the Cadeleſcher (which is a man of greateſt place and authoritie amongſt the Turks in matters concerning their ſuperſtition, and therefore of them honoured aboue others, as the ſacred interpreter of their law) that he did neither well nor wiſely F without iuſt cauſe to fall into ſo great rage and choller, as by his ſpeech and force to thinke to extort that good which was onely by loue and loyaltie to be gained: whereas all things ſhould be ſurely kept for him, and the empire vndoubtedly deſcend vnto him, if by vntimely haſt he did not marre that hope which he ought by ſufferance and patient expectation to cheriſh: he might (as the Cadeleſcher told him) learne by the late example and fortune of his brother *Selymus*, what might be for his owne good and welfare; and that it was a thing of far more danger, deſpe-

desperatly to thrust himselfe headlong into such an action as he could not possibly see the end of, than moderating by reason his hot passions, to expect with patience the oportunitie of time, and fitnesse of occasion, with the alteration of matters, all tending to his good. G

Achomates enflamed with anger and greefe of the repulse, all the while the Cadelescher was deliuering his fathers message, gaue him many sharpe taunts, and had much adoe to stay himselfe from offering of him violence; oftentimes threatening him, that in short time both his father should deerely buy the changing of his purpose, and the souldiers of the court their trecherous dealing: and so sending him away with this short answere, he presently rise with his armie, and passing through BITHYNIA, cruelly spoiled the country in his returne to AMASIA. There daily more and more enflamed with the greefe and the indignitie of the repulse before receiued, he determined to inuade the lesser ASIA: that if it should so fall out, that he must needs by force of armes trie his right against either of his brethren, he might therein vse the wealth of that rich prouince. Whereby if it should chance that he should by the practise of any faile of the whole empire, yet he should at the leastwise be possessed of the one halfe therof, and be the readier for all euents, hauing all those great and rich prouinces in his power. Wherefore calling vnto him his two sonnes, *Amurathes* and *Aladin*, yong princes of great hope, after he had greeuously complained of the vnkindnesse of his father *Baiazet*, and of the iniuries done against him by his enemies in the court, he declared vnto them, that there was now no hope left for him to obtain the empire, except they would forthwith enter into arms with him, and so together with him defend both his and their owne right and honour, against the mallice and iniuries of their enemies: which he said, would be an easie matter to doe by supprising the lesser ASIA, if they they would courageously aduenture vpon it; for as much as all PISIDIA, LYCAONIA, PAMPHYLIA, with the sea coast of IONIA, were not as then kept with any armie or nauie: and as for his brother *Corcutus*, there was no great doubt to be made of him, who according to his quiet disposition would be content either to sit still, or else in regard of his iust quarrell take part with him; or if he would needs intermeddle his quiet estate with the troubled, and so enter into armes, might easily be thrust out of whatsoeuer he possessed: as for the gouernours of the rest of the prouinces, he doubted not, but that they would also yeeld either to his commaund or fortune. Wherefore he willed them to plucke vp their hearts as men of courage, and to goe into the countries thereabouts to take vp men, and whatsoeuer else were needfull for the warres. These gallants, of their owne youthfull disposition readie ynough for such a matter, and now encouraged with their fathers persuasion, did what they were by him commanded, and had in short time raised a notable armie of voluntarie souldiers, of whom the greatest part were of seruile condition. But *Achomates* himselfe, besides his old armie which he had in former time lead against the Persian rebels, leuied new forces also, and called forth into the field all the able men that were to be found in the cities round about: and so running through the prouince, proclaimed himself king of ASIA, and such as would not forthwith yeeld vnto him, those he and his two sonnes in diuers places prosecuted with all hostilitie: by which meanes many cities, especially such as were but weakely fortified, partly for feare, partly by constraint were deliuered ouer vnto him. H I K L

Achomates inciteth his two sons Amurat and Aladin to take part with him against their grandfather Baiazet.

After that, he entered with his armie into LYCAONIA, and the borders of CILICIA, where by embassadours and often letters he requested *Mahometes* his brothers sonne (who then gouerned those countries) to aid him in his iust quarell against them, who by craftie and sinister persuasions had to his dishonour and disgrace withdrawne his fathers good will from him, and so farre seduced him, as that he was determined to appoint another successour in the empire, than him his eldest and first begotten sonne: which their mallice he would (as he said) preuent, and by force of armes recouer his right, which his father knowing to be due vnto him, was about to haue put him in possession of whilest he yet liued, had he not by the sinister practise of others beene hindered: for the recouery whereof, if *Mahometes* would out of his prouince aid him with men and victuall, and so further his iust cause, he promised that he should find a farre better vncle than he had found a father; and that his present friendship should in time be most amply and bountifully requited. M

Whereunto *Mahometes* answered, that he could not do what his vncle had required, except he were so cõmanded by his grandfather *Baiazet*, whom alone he acknowledged for his dread soueraign: & that it was not for him to iudge, whether he did right or otherwise, That he would not

in

A in his life time resigne the empire to his sonne. But this (he said) he was not ignorant of, that he was not to yeeld his obedience to any other, so long as he liued possessed of the empire: to whom both his father *Tzihan Shach* whilest he liued, and himselfe also had giuen their oath of obedience and loyaltie. Wherefore it were good for him to pacifie himselfe, least in seeking vntimely reuenge of his enemies, he should to the offence of all men wrong his father: and by too much heat and hast ouerthrow both his hope and honour; which of right should be most great, if he could but in the meane time haue patience, and stay himselfe a while. *Achomates*, who expected nothing lesse than such an answere, but thought that *Mahometes* would either for loue or feare haue presently come vnto him; and now finding his requests to be with greater grauitie and consideration denied by his nephew, than they were by reason of him demaunded;
B entred with his armie into the borders of his prouince, and with fire & sword began to destroy the countrey before him. Which *Mahometes* with such power as he had thinking to remedie, was by the way encountered by his vncle not farre from LARENDA, and there ouerthrowne: and taking that citie for refuge, was there certaine daies besieged by *Achomates*; and at last together with his brother (then but a child) deliuer into his hands, at such time as the citie was by the fearefull citizens by composition yeelded vnto him. *Achomates* hauing taken the citie with his two nephewes, caused *Mahometes* his counsellors, with his foster brother, by whose persuasion it was supposed that he had so answered his vncle and endangered himselfe, to be put to death.

These proceedings of *Achomates* filled *Baiazet* with griefe and indignation, that he should in 1512
C so great yeares be set vpon by two of his owne sonnes, one after the other. Yet to proue if those troubles might without more bloudshed be pacified, he sent his embassadours vnto him to reproue him for his disloialtie; and to command him forthwith to set at libertie his two nephewes, *Mahometes* and his brother, and so without more stir to get him againe to AMESIA: which if he should refuse to doe, then to denounce vnto him open warre. But he, which by how much the more he had after his repulse ambitiously affected the empire, had resolued with himselfe to deale so much the more cruelly in his proceedings: hauing receiued this message from his father, caused the chiefe embassador (for that he had in franke speech deliuered his message and denounced vnto him wars) to be in his owne presence put to death; and threatned the rest with the like, if before the going downe of the sunne they voided not his campe.

Baiazet sendeth embassadors to Achomates.

Achomates killeth his fathers embassadours.

D This outrage highly offended *Baiazet*, and alienated the minds of many before well affected to *Achomates*: for that without any reuerence of his father and contrarie to the law of nations, he had violated the embassadours sent to him for peace. Vpon the first brute hereof, the souldiers which then waited at the court gate, in the hearing of *Baiazet* exclaimed, that the insolencie of *Achomates* was not longer to be suffered, but forthwith by force to be represt; that by sufferance and delay he would grow from euill to worse; and that if *Baiazet* should prolong the time, and in fatherly sort seeke by faire meanes to reclaime him, he should afterwards in vaine craue the aide of his best souldiers against his rebellious sonne strengthened by his owne long sufferance. *Mustapha* also the chiefe Bassa, with *Bostanges* and others of great place (who secretly fauoured *Selymus*, and had cunningly caused these things by fit men to be dispersed amongst
E the souldiers) began at the first to mutter, and as it were to wonder at the strangenesse and hainousnesse of the fact; in such slie sort, as if they had condemned the deed done, but not the doer. But afterward, when they saw that *Baiazet* was throughly heated, both by his owne angrie disposition and the speech of the soldiers, and vpon the confidence of his former victorie against *Selymus*, now readie to seeke reuenge; they began then to heape fresh coles vpon the fire, and bitterly to inuay against *Achometes*, as a traitour to his aged father and the state; and withall highly commended the fidelitie and courage of the Ianizaries and souldiers of the court, who for the safetie and honour of their aged emperour, were most prest and ready to expose themselues, their liues, and whatsoeuer else they had, vnto new dangers.

So was *Achomates* by the craft and subtiltie of these great men, by the anger of his father, *Achomates proclaimed traitor.*
F and the iudgement of the souldiers, proclaimed traitour; and order taken, that the souldiers of the court with the Europeian horsemen, should with all possible speed be sent against him into ASIA. But when choice was to be made of some valiant and worthie Generall that might take vpon him so great a charge, which seemed especially to appertaine vnto some one of the great Bassaes: it was strange to see, how they all began to straine courtesie at that preferment, and eue-

rie

rie one to refuſe the place and diſable himſelfe, ſaying, That it were a great Indignitie, that the G
emperours armie ſhould be led againſt his ſonne by any of his ſeruants: and the ſouldiours (hauing their leſſon before hand) ſaid plainly, That they durſt not, nor would not draw their ſwords or lift vp their hands againſt the ſonne of the emperour, and heire apparant of the empire, except they were conducted and commanded by ſome of the *Othoman* bloud in perſon preſent with them: for ſo had his brother, long before when he rebelled in CILICIA, and now of late *Selymus* his rebellious ſonne, been both ouerthrowne and vanquiſhed, euen by the conduct of *Baiazet* himſelfe, and not by any of his ſeruants. Theſe things all tended to this purpoſe, that *Selymus* might by indirect meanes be reconciled to his father (whom they ſecretly fauoured, although for feare of diſpleaſure they durſt not ſo much as name him but by way of diſgrace) and
by this verie meanes to make way for his returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, and ſo conſequently H
giue him power to ſeaze vpon the empire. For it was probably ſuppoſed, that neither *Baiazet* himſelfe, being verie aged and diſeaſed; neither *Corcutus*, altogether buried in his ſtudie, would vndertake the managing of thoſe wars: ſo that of the *Othoman* familie only *Selymus* was left, to whom that charge might be committed, all the nephewes of *Baiazet* by reaſon of their tender yeares, as yet vnfit for the ſame. At theſe ſpeeches of the Baſſaes and the ſouldiors, *Baiazet* as a man perplexed and in a chafe, flung away into his pallace, excuſing himſelfe by his great yeares and diſeaſed bodie: but complaining deepely, that *Corcutus* in following the vaine title of learning, with a quiet contented kind of life, had in the meane time neglected other ſtudies and honourable qualities, better beteeming his princely birth and calling. As he was thus reaſoning with himſelfe, and deuiſing what courſe to take; *Muſtapha* the old Baſſa, who all the time of his I
raigne had vſed to diſburden him of his cares, hauing by way of talke drawne him into a full diſcourſe concerning the proceeding to the intended warre, ſet vpon him with this craftie and premeditated ſpeech, framed of purpoſe for his deſtruction.

The craftie oration of the great Baſſa Muſtapha to Baiazet, for the bringing home of Selymus

Your Maieſtie may not (moſt dread Soueraigne) although by yeares and ſtrength of bodie you were neuer ſo well able, you may not I ſay, either tranſport your armie, or your ſelfe paſſe ouer in perſon into ASIA; *leaſt whileſt you are there, from place to place chaſing* Achomates, *you leaue a far more dangerous enemie behind you in* EVROPE; *who may in your abſence ſeaze vpon* THRACIA, GRÆCIA, *yea and the imperiall citie it ſelfe, deſtitute of ſufficient defendants. Doe we not heare, that* Selymus *is raiſing of new forces aboue* VARNA? *to expect a new ſupply of horſemen from the* K
Tartar king his father in law? and already as it were houering ouer our heads? Is he not of greater ſpirit and courage, than to be daunted or diſmaied with the misfortune of one battell? or if you ſhall ſend ouer your old beaten ſouldiers into ASIA, *and call* Corcutus *into* EVROPE *with the forces he leuied the laſt yeare, who in time of your ſicknes may withſtand the attempts of* Selymus: *will he feare theſe freſh water ſouldiers of* ASIA, *or their philoſophicall Generall, which feared not the ſouldiers of your court, the pickt and choſen men of the world, and your ſelfe a moſt worthie and victorious emperour? You are deceiued, and (if I may be ſo bold ſo to ſay) you throughly ſee not into the doubtfull euent of things, if you thinke not that you muſt at one time wage warre againſt two dangerous enemies, euen in the remoteſt parts of your empire, in* ASIA *and* EVROPE: *for whileſt you ſhall goe about to expulſe* Achomates *out of* CAPADOCIA, Selymus *neerer at hand, and waiting all opportunitie; will by* L
and by at your backe, raiſe a moſt dangerous warre in the very heart and chiefe ſtrength of your empire. But if you moued with the greatneſſe and due conſideration of the danger, ſhall goe about to defend THRASIA, *and for that purpoſe retaine with you the moſt approued and faithfull ſouldiers of the court, you ſhall ſee all* ASIA *on a fire before your face: neither will* Achomates *make an end of waſt and warre, vntill ſuch time as he haue drawne the empire of* ASIA *to himſelfe. Wherefore if it be not to be imputed to your fault, but to your fate or fortune, that two begotten of your ſelfe, ſhould by your ſelfe and the conſent of all men be adiudged traitours vnto your crowne and dignitie; whereof the one through raſhneſſe, the other vpon pride and vaine diſcontentment, hath riſen vp in armes againſt you: why doe you not in ſo doubtfull and perplext a matter, preferre ſafe and ſound aduiſe before that which maſketh vnder the ſhew of maieſtie and honour? and whom you cannot both at one* M
time correct and be reuenged vpon, to ſet vpon them as occaſion ſhall ſerue when they are togither by the eares betwixt themſelues? This is the onely hope of your ſafetie, this is the onely way, if you ſhall reſolue (as the common prouerbe ſaith) to driue out one naile with another, and ſo to ouercome your enemies. Moderate a while your hoat deſire of reuenge, and for the preſent diſſemble your griefe;

A *griefe; grant vnto one of them pardon, and in shew take him into your grace and fauour, imploy him against the other: so shall you without danger, howsoeuer it fall out, persecute the one whom you loue not, with the bastard of the other whom you trust not: and at your pleasure oppresse him, to whom you shall commit your ensignes and armie; the hands of your faithfull and trustie souldiers being euen at your appointment readie to take reuenge. So shall you with securitie make an end of this warre, exposing vnto the danger him whom you had rather to ouercome (as your enemie) by him whom you wish also to perish.*

Mustapha had scarce made an end of speaking, but the other Bassaes (as they had before
B agreed amongst themselues) began where he left, & with all their cunning laboured to perswade *Baiazet* to call home his sonne *Selymus*, and to make him Generall of his armie against his brother: saying, That he had alreadie endured sufficient punishment for his former disloyaltie, and that therfore it was like that he as a well corrected child would from thenceforth containe himselfe within the compasse of his most dutifull obedience: whereas *Achomates* proud of his birthright, hauing of late violated his fathers embassadours, and filled all Asia with rebellion, was not like to be brought to any reasonable conformitie, vntill he were by force of armes pluckt downe, and so made to know himselfe, in like manner as was his brother *Selymus* of late. *Baiazet* seeing that in resoluing of a matter of so great consequence, *Cherseogles Bassa* (his sonne in law, and the onely faithfull counsellour then about him) sat all silent, hanging the head, as a man not
C of the same opinion with the rest, stood a great while in doubt what to resolue vpon: he could not so easily forget the late iniuries done against him by *Selymus*, it was yet fresh in memorie, how that he had out of Asia inuaded Evrope, surprised Hadrianople, giuen him battaile, endangered his person with his Tartarian horsemen, and that onely by the goodnesse of God he had obtained the victorie: on the other side, his Maiestie contemned, his nephewes imprisoned, his embassadours violated, the cities of Asia ransacked, and all those goodly countries presently smoking with the fire of rebellion, so filled his old heart with anger and indignation, as that he desired nothing more than to be reuenged. Whilest he was thus strogling with his owne thoughts, and doubtfull what to doe, the vnfaithfull Bassaes by deepe deceit and treacherie (*Cherseogles* most instantly perswading the contrary) ouercame him so farre, as with
D his owne hand to write letters to *Selymus*, promising him, that forgetting all iniuries past, he would vpon the hope of his loyaltie, receiue him into his former grace and fauour, and make him Generall of his armie, if he would without delay repaire to Constantinople, and so passe ouer into Asia against his rebellious brother *Achomates*.

Whilest these things are in doing at Constantinople, *Corcutus* aduertised by letters from his friends of the weake estate of his aged father, and by what perswasions he had beene induced (after *Achomates* was proclaimed traitor) to call vnto him *Selymus*, and to make him Generall of his armie; came downe out of Magnesia to Phocis, and there embarking himselfe in his gallies, sailed to Constantinople: where being arriued, he went presently to the court, attended vpon with a great number of his friends and fauourites; and entring into the priuie
E chamber, humbled himselfe before his father, and kissed his hand: and after much talke had betwixt them of diuers weightie matters, is reported to haue spoken vnto him as followeth.

Corcutus commeth to Constantinople.

It is now aboue thirtie yeeres past (most reuerend father, and dread Soueraigne) since that I (being chosen and proclaimed Emperour by the prerogatiue of the souldiers of the court, by generall consent of the citizens of this imperiall citie, and by the graue iudgement of the wise and graue Bassaes of the Court) haue cheerefully and willingly, and as I may truly say, with mine owne hand deliuered from my selfe vnto your Maiestie the possession of this most glorious kingdome and empire: Which thing what worldly wight would haue done? but either a mad man, or else a most kind and louing sonne? Vnto which so rare an example of a religious and louing heart, I was not by any feare
F *or constraint enforced, but onely by regard and contemplation of your owne sacred person, and the due consideration of my dutie. Neither did it in the course of so many yeares, euer repent me of that my singular kindnesse and dutie done, when as I contenting my selfe with such things as you had vnto me assigned, and with the generall commendation of my well doing, as well as with a kingdome, thought this your great estate and highest type of worldly honour, not to be compared with the quiet contentment of my pleasing studies: when as I accounted it a vaine thing, and not beseeming the re-*

Corcutus his Oration vnto his father Baiazet.

solution

ſolution of a ſetled and quiet mind, to long after theſe worldly things, which being had and enioyed to the full, worke no full contentment in the inſatiable deſire of man: and that ſurmounting vertue, and the ſweet, o moſt ſweet meditation of heauenly things promiſed vnto my contemplatiue and rauiſhed mind, things of farre more worth and maieſtie than all the kingdomes and monarchies of the world. But whileſt I was tracing this path, little regarding worldly honour, or the glorie of an empire, and was for pure deuotion and deſire of knowledge trauelling into the furtheſt part of ARABIA, vnto the altar of our moſt ſacred prophet Mahomet, and ſo to the Indians, as to men of a more exact knowledge and ſincere profeſſion; you in the middeſt of my trauell drew me out of ÆGYPT by the long hands of the Ægyptian Sultain, backe againe into PHRYGIA; commanding mee, that eſchewing the manifold dangers (which in my long trauell I muſt needs haue fallen into) I ſhould from thenceforth haue more regard of my life and health, and to expect the fruit both of my loyaltie towards you, and of your fatherly loue towards me: as if you had beene then of opinion, that the time would come, when for the euill diſpoſition of ſome, an innocent man, deuoted vnto the ſtudie of wiſedome and learning, might be a ſtay both to your ſelfe and the whole Othoman familie. Since which time I haue euer both dutifully obeyed your command, and with as much care and integritie as I poſſibly could, diſcharged my charge: and in the late Perſian warre raiſed and brought into the field mine armie, wherewith I defended the frontiers of my prouince from the incurſions of the Barbarians. But after that they were vanquiſhed, and by your forces driuen out of the leſſer ASIA, and that my vnnaturall and graceleſſe brethren, the one of them in EVROPE, as a moſt deſperat recreant, had in plaine battell aſſailed the perſon of your moſt ſacred Maieſtie (his reuerend father, farre ſpent with age, and then greeuouſly tormented with the gout) of purpoſe to haue at once deprined you both of your life and empire: and the other in ASIA ſeeking by like diſloyaltie and moſt horrible treaſon there to poſſeſſe himſelfe of a kingdome, had beſieged and taken priſoners his brethers ſonnes your nephewes, young princes of great expectation, your faithfull and louing ſubiects; and proceeding further, had ſet all that part of your empire on a broile: I thought my ſelfe in dutie bound to repaire hither vnto your imperiall Maieſtie, for that I ſaw it came to paſſe, not without the prouidence of the moſt mightie, that I might at ſuch time eſpecially requeſt the iuſt reward of my due deſert of you my moſt reuerend and louing father, the moſt religious obſeruer of equitie and iuſtice: when as you hauing had too great proofe of the infidelitie of my vnnaturall brethren, might moſt fitly and moſt commodiouſly performe that which you vpon great reaſon might now grant vnto me your dutifull and obedient ſonne, although my former deſerts had merited no ſuch thing. Wherefore moſt gracious, I humbly pray and beſeech you by all your fatherly loue and affection towards me, and my knowne loyaltie towards you, to vouchſafe before the comming of Selymus, to haue regard of mine honour, with the ſtate of your empire: for when he ſhall once in armes breake in, he will at a trice cut off all hope of pacification, and ſupported by the men of warre, confound all things at his pleaſure: for I heare, that the very gaarders of your perſon, and chiefe commanders of your armies, altered in diſpoſition towards you, doe but expect the good offer of time, when they may willingly ſalute for their Emperour and Soueraigne, him, whom your good fortune of late full ſore againſt their wils, ouerthrew in open field. Wherefore that empire whereof I was ſometime poſſeſſed, and for the rare deſert of mine ancient loyaltie towards you, is of good right due vnto me, reſtore to me againe whileſt you may, and whileſt it is yet in your power, in this ſudden and momentarie occaſion now preſented. For your Maieſtie ſhall in vaine fauour my moſt iuſt and vpright claime, after that you (hauing once receiued into the imperiall citie a moſt deſperat and ambitious man) haue for euer loſt your libertie, together with your ſelfe.

Baiazet comforteth Corcutus, and promiſeth to reſigne to him the empire, after that Selymus was paſſed ouer onto Aſia.

Corcutus with teares ſtanding in his eyes hauing ended his ſpeech, the aged Emperor moued with a fatherly affection, and the reaſonable perſwaſion of him, his onely loyall and moſt kind ſonne, comforted him vp with good words, and willed him to be of good cheere; and withall diſcouered vnto him the very ground of his reſolution, in calling home of *Selymus*: telling him farther, That he could be well content to reſigne vnto him againe the empire, but that it was not in his power ſo preſently to doe, for feare of the ſouldiers of the court; who had (as he ſaid) of late withſtood him in the like motion, and would againe with tooth and naile gaineſay it, if he ſhould but giue the leaſt occaſion for them to ſuſpect any ſuch matter: but that by the plot now laied, *Selymus* ſhould vnder the title of honour be drawne out of EVROPE, together with the ſouldiers of the court, into ASIA againſt *Achomates*, both barres vnto his preſent deſire for transferring of the empire; in whoſe abſence it ſhould be in his power freely to diſpoſe thereof

at

A at his pleaſure: which he promiſed preſently to reſigne vnto him, ſo ſoone as they were once paſſed ouer into Asia. Which thing once done, although it were not altogither to their liking, yet feared he not that either the captaines or ſouldiours, who had of late ſo honorably and faithfully defended him againſt *Selymus*, ſhould now for his ſake diſlike of *Corcutus*, or attempt any thing not beſeeming the glorie of their late deſert: but rather hoped, that if his two vnnaturall and rebellious ſons *Achomates* and *Selymus*, ſhould once ioine battell (as it was moſt like they ſhould) that either the one or both ſhould by the iuſt indgement of God periſh for their ſo great diſobedience, murthered by the hands one of another. *Corcutus* not much miſliking of his fathers purpoſe, and reſting himſelfe wholy vpon his fauour, though it not good farther to argue the
B matter his father had ſo well conſidered of: but taking his leaue returned to his lodging, not without hope of obtaining the empire, & ſo remained many daies after at Constantinople: during which time he ſought neither by gifts nor golden promiſes to procure the loue and good liking of the great Baſſaes, or ſouldiors of the court; for that he as a plain vpright man, thought it not good by ſuit and corruption (the great promoters of the vnworthie) to ſeeke for that at their hands, which was of right due vnto him by his fathers fauour and promiſe.

In the meane time *Selymus* his faſt friends, aduertiſing him of the comming of *Corcutus* to the court, aduiſed him to make haſt, and with all ſpeed poſſible to come to Constantinople; for that it was to be feared, leaſt *Baiazet* being verie aged, and withall eaſie to be drawne away, might by the perſuaſion of *Corcutus* be induced to alter, yea and perhaps quite breake off
C the courſe before well ſet for his moſt readie preferment. Vpon which news, *Selymus* attentiuely waiting vpon nothing more than to haue acceſſe vnto his friends in court, and before reſolued at his firſt comming thither, not to ſpare for any coſt in corrupting the men of war, and ſo to poſſeſſe himſelfe of the empire: made now no ſtay, but with certaine troupes of horſemen commanding the reſt to follow after, came with wonderfull celeritie to Constantinople. *Corcutus* with the great Baſſaes and courtiers, and moſt part of the ſouldiours of the court, going to meet him at the gates of the citie: at his entrance receiued him with a kiſſe (as is the manner of the Turks) and brought him through the middeſt of the citie, all the people running out by heaps to haue a ſight of the man; of late in euery mans mouth for his deſperat rebellion, but now welcomed with much thundring ſhot in token of triumph, and the ioyful acclamation
D of men, women, and children, and people of all ſorts. So that it eaſily appeared, that all the hatred before conceiued againſt him, for his late outrage againſt his father, was now quite forgotten; and that he would in ſhort time before his other brethren aſpire vnto the empire.

The next day after *Selymus* came to the court, and hauing acceſſe to his father, fell proſtrate before him and kiſſed his feet, and with the greateſt ſhew of humilitie poſſible, craued of him pardon for his diſloialtie. O deepe diſſembler, and traitor of all other moſt treacherous! of late in field with ſword drawn to haue ſlaine his aged father, but now proſtrate at his feet; and within an houre, mounted perforce into his imperiall ſeat!

The old emperour ſmiling vpon this Crocodile, in moſt kind manner tooke him vp, and courteouſly ſaid vnto him:

E *Thy faults ſonne* Selymus *are ſo much the leſſe, for that they haue found ſpeedie repentance, wherefore I dee the more willingly grant thee pardon: but from henceforth endeauour thy ſelfe, that God who hath giuen thee a notable ſpirit and courage, may alſo be thought to haue endued thee with a good and well diſpoſed mind. There is a martiall matter readie worthie thy hardineſſe, wherein thou maieſt ſufficiently manifeſt vnto the world thy forwardneſſe and courage: there when time ſerueth let it appeare.*

The craftie ſpeech of Baiazet vnto his ſonne Selymus.

Shortly after was called a counſell for the wars, but eſpecially for the chuſing of a Generall to go againſt *Achomates*: the honour of which place, when many would haue giuen to *Selymus*, he began with great diſſimulation to refuſe, making as though he would not in any caſe be preferred before his brother *Corcutus*, to whom he would (as he ſaid) willingly giue place, both in re-
F ſpect of his yeres and learned diſcretion, who could no doubt with greater authoritie and wiſedome manage that warre: as for himſelfe, now he had obtained his fathers gratious pardon and fauour, he could well content himſelfe with any corner of the empire, were it neuer ſo little.

The craftie diſſimulation of Selymus.

But *Corcutus* and his friends, who had reſpoſed all their hope and all their deuiſes in the departure of *Selymus* with the ſouldiors of the court; as if they had with great modeſtie contended on both ſides, againe perſuaded him, yea and inſtantly requeſted him not to refuſe that ho-

nour, by general consent without any disgrace to his brother, giuen to him as to a worthie chief- G
taine of greater experience in martiall affaires. So *Selymus* with wonderfull cunning deluding *Corcutus* and his fauourits, whilest he seemeth craftily to refuse the thing he most desireth, is by the generall consent of all parts, chosen Generall of the armie to go against his brother *Achomotes*. Which was no sooner made knowne vnto the souldiors, especially the Ianizaries and other souldiors of the court; but they before instructed, with lowd acclamations saluted him, not for their Generall onely, but for their soueraigne lord and emperor also: and so without farther delay put themselues in armes to defend and make good that they had done, if any better disposed should seeme to withstand them or dissent from them.

Selymus by the souldiors thus saluted emperour, at first made shew as if he had beene halfe vnwilling to take vpon him the empire; and so began faintly to refuse it, as moued so to do by H
the due reuerence and regard of his father, yet liuing. But after a while he suffered himselfe to be intreated: and then commending himselfe and his cause wholy to the men of war, to bind them vnto him the faster, promised beside the particular fauors he ought them, to bestow a right great and generall larges amongst them: which he afterwards accordingly performed.

After that, he requested the chiefe Bassaes and commanders of the armie there present, to go forthwith vnto his father, and to take such order (seeing it was the mind of the whole armie it should be so) that the empire might by his goodwill without farther trouble or tumult, be forthwith transferred vnto him.

Mustapha the great Bassa, in whose wilie head all this matter was (to his owne worthie destruction) first hammered; whether it were vpon a new fineneſſe of his owne, or that *Selymus* (as it I
was giuen out) had threatned to kill him except he would go and shew all the whole processe of the matter to his father: comming as a man dismaied to *Baiazet* (who awaked with clamor and tumult of the souldiors was come out of his chamber into the open roomes of his pallace) in few words deliuered vnto him this most vnwelcome message as followeth:

The blunt speech of Mustapha to Baiazet, perswading him to resigne the empire to Selymus.

Emperour (said he) *the men of war haue in their counsell saluted* Selymus *both their Generall and Emperour: which their choice they require thee to ratifie, being readie presently to breake into the court to kill vs both, if thou shalt refuse forthwith to resigne the empire. They all with one consent request that of thee, which they haue alreadie put into the hand of another. Wherefore it is a thing of far more danger to seeke to recouer that thou hast alreadie lost, than willingly to yeeld that which is alreadie taken from thee, seeing it is not by any force or policie to be regained. They in armes, in furie, and now entred into rebellion, thinke vpon some greater mischiefe.* K

Baiazet troubled with feare and choller, and then too late perceiuing the treacherie of the Bassaes, and how he had been by them betraied; pausing a while at the strangeneſſe of the matter, afterwards in furie brake out into these words:

The resolute answere of old Baiazet to Mustapha and the other Bassaes.

False and forsworne, doe you thus betray me? and with such monstrous villanie requite mine infinite bountie? Why doe you not also as murtherers take away my life, which could not indure for a while to expect the dissolution of this my weake and aged bodie? but deposing your iust and lawfull soueraigne, must needs in post haste set vp a most wicked and graceleſſe man to raigne ouer you. But much good doe it you with your desired emperour, the contemner of God, and murtherer of his father: to whom ere it L
be long, you shall full dearely pay the price of this your perfidious dealing and treacherie against mee. And hee himselfe beginning his empire of most vnnaturall treason, murther, and bloudshed, shall not (I hope) escape the heauie hand of God, the vndoubted and seuere reuenger of so great impietie and treason.

Mustapha, with *Bostanges* and *Aiax* as false as himselfe, returning backe againe to the souldiours speaking not a word of the sorrow and indignation of *Baiazet*; told them how that he was well content to resigne the empire, and so had appointed *Selymus* (vnto whom both God and the generall consent of the men of war had alreadie deliuered the empire) to succeed him in the empire. When this their speech was generally reported, they whom *Selymus* had before corrupted, began now to hold vp their heads, and looke big on the matter: and others who before M
stood doubtfull what to doe seeing now no other remedie, in hast ioyned themselues vnto the same faction. Whilest all things were thus disorderly carried by the vnruly souldiors, *Selymus* was by them mounted vpon a couragious horse, and so with all pomp conducted vp and down most of the faire streets of the imperiall citie: and with the generall voice and clamour of the people (how soeuer their minds were for most part otherwise affected) saluted emperour. And

A the ſame day both the great Baſſaes and the ſoldiers in generall, were all ſolemnly ſworne vnto *Selymus*, as their onely lord and emperour.

Corcutus, whether it were for greeſe of his hope now loſt, or feare of his life, although *Selymus* had promiſed to giue him the citie of MYTILENE, with the Iſland of LESBOS, ſecretly embarked himſelfe, and ſo returned to MAGNESIA. *Corcutus flieth.*

Baiazet of late one of the greateſt monarchs of the world, but now thus thruſt out of his empire by his ſonne, deteſting both him and the treacherie of his ſubiects, and ouercome with ſorrow and melancholie, determined of himſelfe, before he were thereto enforced by *Selymus*, to forſake CONSTANTINOPLE, and to retire himſelfe to DIMOTICA (a ſmall citie wholeſomely ſituated in THRACIA, not farre from HADRIANOPLE; where in former time he had for
B his pleaſure beſtowed great coſt, and now as he thought beſt fitted his preſent eſtate.) Wherefore cauſing great ſtore of treaſure, plate, iewels, and rich furniture to be truſſed vp, he with fiue hundred of his houſhold ſeruants, full of heauineſſe and ſorrow, with teares trickling downe his aged cheekes, departed out of the imperiall citie towards HADRIANOPLE, with purpoſe from thence to haue gone to DIMOTICA. *Selymus* brought him about two miles vpon his way, and ſo returning againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, tooke poſſeſſion of the pallace.

Baiazet being then about ſeuentie ſix yeares old, or as ſome report full foureſcore; and beſide his old diſeaſe of the gout, ſore weakened with heauineſſe and greefe of mind, was not able to trauell aboue fiue or ſix miles a day, but was conſtrained by the extremitie of his paine and weakeneſſe, to ſtay ſometimes two or three daies in a place. Whileſt he was thus trauelling,
C *Selymus* no leſſe carefull of the keeping of his eſtate, than he had before beene for the obtaining of the ſame, began now to doubt, That if he ſhould depart from CONSTANTINOPLE, and with all his forces paſſe ouer into ASIA againſt his brother *Achomates*, *Baiazet* in the meane time might in his abſence returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, and ſo againe poſſeſſe himſelfe both of the citie and the empire. Wherefore to rid himſelfe of that feare, he reſolued moſt viper like before his going, to kill his father, and ſo moſt vnnaturally to depriue him of life of whom he had firſt receiued life: ſuch is the cruell and accurſed nature of ambition, that it knoweth neither father, mother, brother, wife, kindred, or friend, no, ſometimes not her owne children: the furie whereof was neuer in any one more pregnant, than in this moſt monſtrous and cruell tyrant *Selymus*.

D The readieſt and moſt ſecret way he could deuiſe for the effecting of this his damnable deuiſe (which without great impietie could not be ſo much as once by him thought vpon) was to worke it by poyſon: vpon which reſolution he ſecretly compacted with *Hamon* a Iew, his fathers cheefe phyſition, to poyſon him; promiſing him for his reward a penſion of ten duckats a day during his life. And for that men are oftentimes with terrour and feare, as well as with reward, enforced to be the miniſters of miſchiefe; he to be the more ſure of this Iew (prone ynough for gaine to doe euill) threatened him with moſt cruell death, if he did not both ſecretly and ſpeedily worke this feat, commaunding him ſo ſoone as he had done it to returne vnto him to CONSTANTINOPLE. *Selymus practiſeth with Hamon a Iew, Baiazet his phiſition, to poyſon him.*

E The deceitfull Iew moued both with the feare of death, and hope of reward (two great motiues) comming ſhortly after to *Baiazet*, and finding him very weake, ſeeming to be very carefull of him, told him, That he would prepare for him a potion, which ſhould both reſtore to him his health, and alſo ſtrengthen his weake bodie, if it would pleaſe him to take it the next morning early lying in his bed. *Baiazet* nothing miſtruſting his old phyſition whom he had ſo often & ſo long truſted, ſaid he would gladly take it. Early the next morning commeth the Iew with the deadly potion in a cup of gold, *Baiazet* yet ſleeping, which he ſet downe in the chaire of eſtate, and ſo ſtood waiting vntill the aged prince ſhould of himſelfe awake. But *Baiazet* ſtill ſleeping ſoundly (as oftentimes it chanceth when men ſleep their laſt) and withall ſomewhat longer than ſtood with the Iewes purpoſe, he preſuming of his wonted practiſe, awaked him, and told him, that the time to take the potion was almoſt paſt, and asked him if it were his pleaſure then to
F take it. *Baiazet* doubting no treaſon, willed him to bring it: whereof when the Iew had taken the ſey (hauing before himſelfe taken a preſeruatiue againſt that poyſon) he gaue it to *Baiazet* to drinke, who cheerefully dranke it vp: the phyſition commaunding them that waited in his bedchamber, and attended on his perſon, to keep him well couered with warme clothes, and not to giue him any thing to drinke vntill he had well ſweat. This curſed Iew hauing thus poyſoned *Baiazet poyſoned by the Iew.*

the aged Prince, to auoid the danger of the fact, and to carrie the first newes thereof to *Selymus*, G
secretly conuayed himselfe away, and fled in hast to CONSTANTINOPLE. But *Baiazet* attainted with the force of the poyson, began first to feele most greeuous gripings in his stomacke, the strong paine whereof appeared by his miserable complaining and heauie groning; in the midst
The death of Baiazet. of which torments he gaue vp the ghost in the yeere 1512, when he had raigned thirtie yeares. The Turks report that he died a naturall death: but *Antonius Vtrius*, a Genoway, who at that time serued in *Baiazet* his chamber, and was present at his death, reporteth, That vpon his dead bodie the euident tokens of poyson were to be seene. His dead bodie, with all his treasures were presently brought backe againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, and deliuered to *Selymus*, who caused the bodie of his father to be with the greatest solemnitie that might be, buried in a most sumptu- H
ous tombe, in a chapell neere vnto the great Mahometane temple, which he had before built for himselfe at CONSTANTINOPLE, which monument there remaineth at this day to be seene. His seruants were all by *Selymus* restored to their places which they before held in the Court in
Selymus causeth two of his fathers pages to be put to death for mourning for their master. the time of their old master, excepting fiue of the pages of his chamber, who lamenting the death of their master aboue the rest, had attired themselues all in mourning apparell: for which cause, they were by the commandement of *Selymus* cast in prison; where two of them were put to death, the other three at the sute of *Solyman*, *Selymus* his sonne, and of other two Bassaes, were saued: but being stript of their rich apparell, and whatsoeuer else they had gotten vnder *Baiazet*, they were enrolled for common souldiers vnder *Sullustares Bassa*. Of these three this *Antonius Vtrius* the Genoway (before spoken of) was one, who after ten yeares miserable cap- I
tiuitie amongst the Turks, at last escaped, at such time as *Selymus* was by the Persian discomfited: and with much adoe returning againe into ITALIE, writ the historie of all such things as he himselfe had there seene, with the calamities of *Baiazet* his house, and a great part of the tyrannous raigne of *Selymus*.

Hamon the Iew iustly rewarded for his treacherie. *Hamon* the false Iew (as the same author reporteth) comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, and expecting some great reward for his foule treason, by the commandement of *Selymus* had his head presently strucke off: with this exprobation of his trecherie, That oportunitie seruing, he would not sticke for reward to doe the like against *Selymus* himselfe. Of this *Baiazet*, *Ianus Vitalis* writeth this Elogium:

K

Paulus Iouius Illust. viorũ, Elog. lib. 4.

Dum rerum exquiris causas, & dum procul Hunnes
Carmannos, Cilices, Sauromatasq; domas:
Baiazete, domi proles tua te petit armis,
Et te per fraudes amouet imperio.
Adijcit inde nouum sceleri scelus, & tibi miscet
Pocula lethiferis illita graminibus.
Intempestiuos crudelis vipera fœtus,
Per sua sic tandem funera, rupta, parit.
Quid tutum est, cui sint ingentia regna tyranno?
Si timeat natos, progeniemq; suam?

L

In English thus.

Whil'st that thou *Baiazethes* seekes of things the hidden cause,
And faine wouldst bring the Hunne and Russe vnder thy Turkish lawes:
Thy sonne at home steps vp in armes against thy royall crowne,
And by false treason and deceit finds meanes to plucke thee downe.
Whereto he addeth mischiefe more, and straight without delay,
By poyson strong in glittering boule, doth take thy life away:
The cruell viper so brings forth her foule vntimely brood, M
Which eat and gnaw her bellie out, their first and poysoned food.
What things may Princes hold for safe, that doe great kingdomes sway?
If of their children they must stand in dread and feare alway?

FINIS. R. K.

Christian Princes of the same time with Baiazet the second.	Emperors of Germanie.	Fredericke the third, Archduke of Austria.	1440. 54.
		Maximilian the first.	1494. 25.
	Kings	Of England: Edward the fourth.	1460. 22.
		Edward the fifth.	1483. 0.
		Richard the third.	1483. 3.
		Henrie the seuenth.	1485. 24.
		Henrie the eight.	1509. 38.
		Of France: Lewis the eleuenth.	1461. 22.
		Charles the eight.	1483. 14.
		Lewis the twelfth.	1467. 17.
		Of Scotland: Iames the third.	1460. 29.
		Iames the fourth.	1489. 25.
	Bishops of Rome	Xystus the IIII.	1471. 13.
		Innocentius the VIII.	1484. 8.
		Alexander the VI.	1492. 11.
		Pius the III.	1503. 26. daies.
		Iulius the II.	1503. 9.

SELYMVS.

Phil. Lonicer. Turc. Hist. li. 1.

En Selymus, ſcelere ante alios immanior omnes:
In patris, & fratrum, dirigit arma necem.
In Perſas mouet inde ferox: Memphitica regna
Deſtruit: & Syros Æthiopaſq́ domat.
Hinc in Chriſticolas irarum effundere fluctus,
Ipſorumq́ imo vertere regna parat.
Cùm diro victus proſternitur vlcere: Chriſtus
Scilicet eſt populi, portus & aura ſui.

Loe *Selymus*, in crueltie exceeding others farre,
His father, and his brethren both, deſtroies with mortall warre.
The Perſian fiercely he aſſailes: and conquers Ægypts land:
The Syrian, and the Moore likewiſe, he tam'd with mightie hand.
But purpoſing in his mad mood, the Chriſtians to confound,
And the memoriall of their name to root from off the ground;
A loathſome Canker eat him vp, and brought him to his end:
Chriſt is to his the ſafeſt port, when he will them defend.

THE LIFE OF SELYMVS, FIRST OF THAT NAME, THE THIRD AND MOST WARLIKE EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

HIs *Selymus*, by fauour of the great Baſſaes and men of war whom he had before corrupted, hauing depriued his father *Baiazet* firſt of the empire, and ſhortly after of his life alſo, and now fully poſſeſſed of the empire himſelfe; firſt tooke view of the treſures which the Turkiſh kings and emperours his anceſtors had before of long time heaped vp in great aboundance: out of which hee gaue vnto the ſouldiours of the court two millions of duckers; and for a perpetuall remembrance of his thankfulneſſe towards them augmented their daily wages, allowing vnto euery horſeman foure aſpers a day, and to euery footman two, aboue their wonted allowance. By which exceeding bountie, hee greatly aſſured vnto himſelfe the minds of the men of warre. 1512

Selymus going in Aſia againſt his brother Achomates.

Shortly after he paſſed ouer with a great armie into ASIA, leauing the gouernment of the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE vnto his onely ſonne *Solyman*: and marching inio GALATIA came to the citie of ANCYRA, in hope there to haue oppreſſed his elder brother *Achomates*. But he vnderſtanding before of his comming, withall wiſely conſidering how vnable he was to withſtand his forces, fled before into the mountaines of CAPADOCIA vpon the confines of ARMENIA, taking vp men by the way as he went, and praying aid of all ſorts of people, yea euen of ſuch as were but of ſmall abilitie themſelues, and vnto him meere ſtrangers; that ſo he might in beſt manner he could, prouide ſuch ſtrength as might ſerue him to make head againſt his brother, and for the recouerie of ASIA.

Selymus hauing ſpent that ſommer without doing any thing worth the ſpeaking of, and conſidering that hee could not well winter in that cold countrey neere vnto the great mountaine TAVRVS, by reaſon of the deepe ſnowes and extreme cold there vſually falling; and that to go farther was to no purpoſe, foraſmuch as *Achomates* flying from place to place and mountaine to mountaine was not to be ſurpriſed, he retired backe againe into BITHYNIA, and ſending his Europeian horſemen downe towards the ſea coaſt, and the Ianizaries to CONSTANTINOPLE; reſolued to winter with the reſt of his armie at PRVSA. At which time being wholy bent againſt *Achomates* his competitor of the empire, he for certaine yeares continued the league which his father *Baiazet* had before concluded with *Vladiſlaus* king of HVNGARIE, *Sigiſmundus* king of POLONIA, and the Venetians. And thinking no care (no not of Children) ſurperfluous which might concerne the eſtabliſhing of his empire, he called vnto him fiue of his brothers ſons, *Orchanes* the ſonne of *Alem Schach*; *Mahometes* the ſonne of *Tzihan Schach*; *Orchanes*, *Emirſa*, and *Muſa*, the ſonnes of his brother *Mahometes*; all young princes of great hope, of yeares betwixt ſixteene and twentie, excepting *Muſa* who was not paſt ſeuen yeares old: of all theſe, *Mahometes* (whom his vncle *Achomates* had a little before taken priſoner at LARENDA, as is before declared, and vpon the death of *Baiazet* had againe ſet him at libertie) being about twentie yeares old, was for rare feature and princely courage acounted the paragon and beautie of the

Selymus murthereth fiue of his brothers ſonnes.

SELYMVS.

Phil. Lonicer. Turc. Hist. li. 1.

En Selymus, ſcelere ante alios immanior omnes:
In patris, & fratrum, dirigit arma necem.
In Perſas mouet inde ferox: Memphitica regna
Deſtruit: & Syros Æthiopaſq́ domat.
Hinc in Chriſticolas irarum effundere fluctus,
Ipſorumq́ imo vertere regna parat.
Cùm diro victus proſternitur vlcere: Chriſtus
Scilicet eſt populi, portus & aura ſui.

Loe *Selymus*, in crueltie exceeding others farre,
His father, and his brethren both, deſtroies with mortall warre.
The Perſian fiercely he aſſailes: and conquers Ægypts land:
The Syrian, and the Moore likewiſe, he tam'd with mightie hand.
But purpoſing in his mad mood, the Chriſtians to confound,
And the memoriall of their name to root from off the ground;
A loathſome Canker eat him vp, and brought him to his end:
Chriſt is to his the ſafeſt port, when he will them defend.

THE LIFE OF SELYMVS, FIRST OF THAT NAME, THE THIRD AND MOST WARLIKE EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

HIS *Selymus*, by fauour of the great Baſſaes and men of war whom he had before corrupted, hauing depriued his father *Baiazet* firſt of the empire, and ſhortly after of his life alſo, and now fully poſſeſſed of the empire himſelfe; firſt tooke view of the treſures which the Turkiſh kings and emperours his anceſtors had before of long time heaped vp in great aboundance: out of which hee gaue vnto the ſouldiours of the court two millions of duckets; and for a perpetuall remembrance of his thankfulneſſe towards them augmented their daily wages, allowing vnto euery horſeman foure aſpers a day, and to euery footman two, aboue their wonted allowance. By which exceeding bountie, hee greatly aſſured vnto himſelfe the minds of the men of warre. 1512

Selymus going in Aſia againſt his brother Achomates.

Shortly after he paſſed ouer with a great armie into ASIA, leauing the gouernment of the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE vnto his onely ſonne *Solyman*: and marching into GALATIA came to the citie of ANCYRA, in hope there to haue oppreſſed his elder brother *Achomates*. But he vnderſtanding before of his comming, withall wiſely conſidering how vnable he was to withſtand his forces, fled before into the mountaines of CAPADOCIA vpon the confines of ARMENIA, taking vp men by the way as he went, and praying aid of all ſorts of people, yea euen of ſuch as were but of ſmall abilitie themſelues, and vnto him meere ſtrangers; that ſo he might in beſt manner he could, prouide ſuch ſtrength as might ſerue him to make head againſt his brother, and for the recouerie of ASIA.

Selymus hauing ſpent that ſommer without doing any thing worth the ſpeaking of, and conſidering that hee could not well winter in that cold countrey neere vnto the great mountaine TAVRVS, by reaſon of the deepe ſnowes and extreme cold there vſually falling; and that to go farther was to no purpoſe, foraſmuch as *Achomates* flying from place to place and mountaine to mountaine was not to be ſurpriſed, he retired backe againe into BITHYNIA, and ſending his Europeian horſemen downe towards the ſea coaſt, and the Ianizaries to CONSTANTINOPLE; reſolued to winter with the reſt of his armie at PRVSA. At which time being wholy bent againſt *Achomates* his competitor of the empire, he for certaine yeares continued the league which his father *Baiazet* had before concluded with *Vladiſlaus* king of HVNGARIE, *Sigiſmundus* king of POLONIA, and the Venetians. And thinking no care (no not of Children) ſurperfluous which might concerne the eſtabliſhing of his empire, he called vnto him fiue of his brothers ſons, *Orchanes* the ſonne of *Alem Schach*; *Mahometes* the ſonne of *Tzihan Schach*; *Orchanes*, *Emirſa*, and *Muſa*, the ſonnes of his brother *Mahometes*; all young princes of great hope, of yeares betwixt ſixteene and twentie, excepting *Muſa* who was not paſt ſeuen yeares old: of all theſe, *Mahometes* (whom his vncle *Achomates* had a little before taken priſoner at LARENDA, as is before declared, and vpon the death of *Baiazet* had againe ſet him at libertie) being about twentie yeares old, was for rare feature and princely courage acounted the paragon and beautie of the

Selymus murthereth fiue of his brothers ſonnes.

the *Othoman* family: Which great perfection as it woon vnto him the loue and fauour of the G
men of warre, and alſo of all the people in generall: ſo did it haſten his ſpeedie death; onely *Selymus* his cruell vncle enuying him life. After he had got theſe poore innocents into his hands, he ſent for diuers of his great doctors and lawyers, demaunding of them, Whether it were not better that ſome fiue, eight, or ten perſons ſhould be taken away, than that the ſtate of the whole empire ſhould with great effuſion of bloud be rent in ſunder, and ſo by ciuile warres be brought in danger of vtter ruine and deſtruction? Who although they well perceiued whereunto that bloudie queſtion tended, yet for feare of diſpleaſure they all anſwered, That it were better ſuch a ſmall number ſhould periſh, then that the whole ſtate of the empire ſhould by ciuile warre and diſcord be brought to confuſion; in which generall calamitie thoſe few muſt alſo of neceſſitie H
periſh with the reſt. Vpon colour of this anſwere and the neceſſitie pretended, he commaunded theſe his nephewes before named, to be led by fiue of his great captaines into the caſtle of PRVSA, where they were all the night following moſt cruelly ſtrangled. It is reported, that *Mahometes* with a penknife ſlew one of the bloudy executioners ſent into his chamber to kill him; and ſo wounded the other, as that he fell downe for dead: and that *Selymus* being in a chamber faſt by, and almoſt an eye-witneſſe of that was done, preſently ſent in others, who firſt bound the poore prince, and afterward ſtrangled him with the reſt: whoſe dead bodies were buried at PRVSA amongſt their aunceſtours. The crueltie of this fact wonderfully offended the minds of moſt men, inſomuch that many euen of his martiall men filled with ſecret indignation, for certaine daies abſented themſelues from his preſence, ſhunning his ſight as if he had beene ſome fierce or raging lyon. I

1513 Of all the nephewes of old *Baiazet*, onely *Amurat* and *Aladin* (the ſons of *Achomates*) yet
Selymus ſeeketh after the liues of Amurat and Aladin, the ſons of Achomates his brother. remained, whom he purpoſed to ſurpriſe vpon the ſudden, and ſo to rid himſelfe of all feare of his brothers children; hauing then left none of the *Othoman* familie, but them and his two brethren vpon whom to exerciſe his further crueltie. Theſe two young princes had a little before recouered the citie of AMASIA, from whence they were the Sommer before expulſed by their vncle *Selymus*, at ſuch time as *Achomates* their father was glad to flie into the mountaines of CAPADOCIA. *Selymus* fully reſolued vpon their deſtruction, ſent *Vſegi* one of his Baſſaes with fiue thouſand horſemen, who by great iourneies trauelling to AMASIA, might vpon the ſudden come vpon theſe two yong princes, and take them altogither vnprouided and as then fearing no ſuch danger: which was thought no great matter for the Baſſa to doe, foraſmuch as he might with K
his light horſmen eaſily preuent the fame of his comming; and the citie of AMASIA where they lay, was neither well walled, nor as then furniſhed with any ſufficient garriſon for defence therof: beſide that, *Achomates* himſelfe was at that time abſent, buſied in taking vp of ſouldiers vpon the frontiers of CARAMANNIA. But *Muſtapha* the old Baſſa, by whoſe eſpeciall meanes *Selymus* had obtained the empire (as is afore declared in the life of *Baiazet*) being prinie vnto his wicked purpoſe, and now in mind altogither alienated from him, deteſting his moſt execrable tyrannie, both for the vnworthy death of *Baiazet* his father, and the guiltleſſe bloud of ſo many young princes his nephewes by him ſhed without all pitie; and hauing compaſſion of the imminent danger whereinto theſe two brethren were now like alſo to fall; by ſecret and ſpeedie meſſengers gaue them warning of the comming of the Baſſa, and of all that was entended a- L
gainſt them. Who vpon ſuch knowledge giuen, preſently aduertiſed *Achomates* their father thereof, and laid ſecret ambuſh themſelues for the intercepting of their enemies. So that within few daies after, the Baſſa comming with his horſmen towards AMASIA, fell before he was aware into the middeſt of his enemies: at which time alſo *Achomates* following him at the heeles, ſo
Vſegi Baſſa taken priſoner. ſhut him in with his armie on euerie ſide, that moſt of his men being ſlaine, he himſelfe with diuers other captaines were taken priſoners and brought to *Achomates*, and by his commaundement committed to ſafe cuſtodie.

Now it fortuned, that ſome of *Achomates* ſouldiers ſcoffing at the priſoners whom they had taken, told them how they had been deceiued, and how all the matter had been carried (ſo hard a thing it is to haue euen the greateſt counſels in court kept ſecret) boaſting that they wanted not M
their friends, euen of ſuch as were moſt inward with *Selymus*, who ſecretly fauoured the better cauſe, and would not long ſuffer the cruell beaſt to rage further: All which things *Selymus* his ſouldiers reported againe after they were raunſomed and returned home. But *Vſegi* the Baſſa lying ſtill in priſon, and getting certaine knowledge of the whole matter, by ſecret letters gaue

Selymus

A *Selymus* to vnderſtand, that *Muſtapha* the great Baſſa whom he moſt of all truſted, had ſecret intelligence with *Achomates*, and had bin the only cauſe of the loſſe of his armie.

Selymus of late enuying at the great honour and authoritie of *Muſtapha*, and wiſhing him dead (whoſe deſert he was not able, or at leaſtwiſe not willing to requite) cauſed him vpon this accuſation without farther triall to be ſecretly ſtrangled in his own ſight, and his dead bodie (as it were in ſcorne of his former felicitie) to be caſt out into the ſtreet for euery man to gaze vpon. This was the ſhamefull end of this traiterous Baſſa, who had of long time at his pleaſure commanded all things in the Turkiſh empire, and was for riches, power, and authoritie, next vnto the emperours themſelues: but now lyeth as a dead dog in the ſtreet, no man daring for feare to
B caſt earth vpon him. A rare ſpectacle of the vncertaintie of worldly felicitie, and a worthie example of diſloialtie. But *Achomates* hearing what had happened to *Muſtapha*, in reuenge thereof in like maner executed *Vſegi Baſſa* his priſoner; and according to his courteous nature ſet all the reſt of the priſoners at libertie.

Muſtapha Baſſa ſhamefully murthered.

Vſegi Baſſa put to death.

Selymus thirſting after nothing more than the guiltleſſe bloud of his brethren and nephewes, vpon whom he had againſt all right vſurped the kingdome, wherof he neuer thought himſelfe ſufficiently aſſured ſo long as any of them breathed: began with the firſt of the Spring to deuiſe with himſelfe how he might firſt take away his brother *Corcutus*, who then liued at MAGNESIA, and hauing caſt off all hope of the empire, gaue himſelfe wholly to the ſtudie of philoſophie, which he (ſeduced with ambition) had in euill time a little before forſaken; but now retiring
C himſelfe therto againe, as to his greateſt contentment, ſpent his time in quiet contemplation, not attempting any thing againſt his cruell brother vſurping the empire. *Selymus* reſolued vpon the deſtruction of this harmeleſſe prince, ſuddenly commanded his captains to make choiſe of ten thouſand horſemen to be in readineſſe within three daies, giuing it out that he would make an inroad vpon the ſudden into CAPADOCIA. In the number of theſe horſemen *Antonius Mænaninus* a Genoway, author of this hiſtorie (as he reporteth of himſelfe) was one.

All things being in readineſſe againſt the appointed time, *Selymus* in perſon himſelfe ſet forward with his armie from PRVSA, ſtill keeping the way on the right hand; ſo that the ſouldiours who thought they ſhould haue marched directly into CAPADOCIA and ſo to AMASIA, as it was before commonly reported; began now to perceiue by the contrarie courſe they held, that they
D were to go for LYDIA and IONIA. When a valiant ſouldiour among the reſt, who had ſometime ſerued one of the Baſſaes in *Corcutus* his court, by diuers circumſtances gathering the intention of *Selymus*, ſecretly conuaied himſelfe out of the armie; and being excellently well mounted, taking the neereſt way, came to MAGNESIA, and gaue *Corcutus* warning of the comming of his brother. *Corcutus* conſidering the great danger he was in, richly rewarded the meſſenger; and leauing his houſe in ſuch order as it was wont to be, fled with two of his ſeruants to the ſea ſide, in hope to haue found paſſage either into CRETE, or elſe RHODES.

The next day after *Corcutus* was departed, early in the morning came *Selymus* to the caſtle of MAGNESIA before the riſing of the ſunne, in hope to haue found *Corcucus* yet in his bed: but being deceiued of his expectation, he fell into a great rage, and with cruell torments examined
E all his brothers ſeruants & eunuchs, What was become of him and where he had hid himſelfe? and with much adoe got it out of them, That he had warning of his comming by a fugitiue ſoldiour, and was thereupon fled; but whither they knew not. Wherefore *Selymus* ſtaid there fifteene daies, during which time he cauſed diligent ſearch to be made all ouer the countrey, and alongſt the ſea coaſt for to haue apprehended him. But when after much ſearch he could heare no tidings of him, he cauſed all his brothers treaſure and rich furniture to be truſſed vp, and to be ſent by ſea to CONSTANTINOPLE. So leauing one of his captaines with a thouſand horſemen in garriſon at MAGNESIA, he returned againe to PRVSA with as much ſpeed as he came from thence: verily ſuppoſing that his brother was for ſafegard of his life, by ſea fled into ITALIE. All this while *Boſtanges*, *Selymus* his ſonne in law, lying with a fleet of gallies vpon the coaſt of Io-
F NIA, had taken from *Corcutus* all hope of eſcaping by ſea: ſo that he was faine to hide himſelfe in a caue neere vnto the ſea ſide not far from SMYRNA, liuing in hope that after a few daies the fleet would depart, and ſo he ſhould find ſome opportunitie to eſcape.

Selymus taketh the ſpoile of his brother Corcutus.

After he had thus a great while in feare moſt miſerably liued with countrie crabs, and other like wild fruit (a poore diet for a man of ſtate) and was with extreame neceſſitie enforced to ſend his man for reliefe to a poore ſheepheards cottage therby, he was by a country peaſant diſcouered

Corcutus taken. red to *Caſſumes*, who with too much diligence ſought after his life: and being by him appre- G
hended, was carried towards the tyrant his brother at PRVSA.

Right welcome to *Selymus* was the report of his taking: who as ſoone as he vnderſtood that he was within a daies iourney of PRVSA, ſent one *Kirengen-ogli* (who of his ſquint looke was called *Chior Zeinall*) to ſtrangle him vpon the way, and to bring his dead bodie to PRVSA.

This captaine comming to *Corcutus* in the dead time of the night, and awakiug him out of his ſleep, told him his heauie meſſage; how that he was ſent from his brother *Selymus* to ſee him executed, which muſt as hee ſaid preſently be done. *Corcutus* exceedingly troubled with theſe heauie newes, and fetching a deepe ſigh, deſired the captaine ſo long to ſpare his life, vntill he might write a few ſhort lines vnto his brother *Selymus*. Which poore requeſt being granted, he H
called for pen and paper, and readily in Turkiſh verſe (for he had ſpent all his time in ſtudie) reproued his brother of moſt horrible crueltie; vpbraiding him, that he had not only moſt diſloially thruſt his father out of his empire, but alſo moſt vnnaturally depriued him of life, of whom he had before receiued the ſame: and not ſo content, had moſt tyrannouſly ſlaine his brothers children; and now like an vnmercifull wretch thirſted after the guiltleſſe bloud of himſelfe, and *Achomates* his brethren. At laſt concluding his letters with many a bitter curſe, he beſought God to take of him iuſt reuenge for ſo much innocent bloud by him moſt vnnaturally ſpilt. And when he had thus much written, he requeſted the captaine, that it might togither with his dead bodie be deliuered vnto *Selymus*. So without any farther delay he was according to the tyrants
The lamentable death of Corcutus. command preſently ſtrangled. The next day after, when the dead bodie was preſented vnto *Se-* I
lymus, he vncouered the face therof to be ſure that it was he, and ſeeing a paper in his hand, tooke it from him: but when he had read it (for all his cruell nature and ſtonie heart) he burſt out into teares; proteſting, that he was neuer ſo much grieued or troubled with any mans death as with his: for which cauſe, he commaunded generall mourning to be made for him in the court, and with princely ſolemnitie buried his bodie. Three daies after, he cauſed fifteene of thoſe diligent ſearchers who firſt found *Corcutus*, to haue their heads ſtruck off, and their bodies to be flung into the ſea, ſaying, That if he were by any extremitie driuen to flie and hide his head, they would not ſticke to ſerue him in like manner as they had done his brother.

Now of all the poſteritie of *Baiazet* remained none aliue to trouble the cruel tyrants thoughts but only *Achomates* and his two ſons: who vpon the approch of the Spring, ſet forward with K
his armie from AMASIA, excited by the often letters of his friends, who aſſured him that *Selymus* might vpon the ſudden be eaſily oppreſſed, if he would with all expedition come to PRVSA; forasmuch as the Ianizaries and Europeian horſemen, the vndoubted ſtrength of his armie, were at that time abſent, and he himſelfe as one hated both of God and man, could not in ſo ſudden and vnexpected danger tell what he were beſt to do, or which way to turne himſelfe: wherfore they willed him without delay to haſten his comming, and not to expect the milder weather of the Spring, leaſt in the meane time *Selymus* ſhould call togither his diſperſed forces: God (they ſaid) did oftentimes offer vnto men, both the opportunitie and meanes to do great matters, if they had the power to lay hold thereon, and therefore he ſhould do well now by celeritie and courage to ſeeke to better his euil fortune, which but a little before had bereft him of his fathers king- L
dome: for if Sommer were once come on, he muſt either gaine the victorie by plain battel, which would be a hard matter, or elſe get him packing out of CAPADOCIA and all ASIA the leſſe.

Achomates, who before had promiſed vnto himſelfe better ſucceſſe, as well for the great ſtrength he had of his owne, as for the new ſupplie of horſemen he had procured from *Hyſmaell* the Perſian king; but eſpecially for the hope he had, that *Selymus* generally hated for his late crueltie, ſhould in the time of the battell be forſaken of his owne ſouldiors; yeelded to the perſuaſion of his friends, who with many pleaſing words ſet before his eies glorious things, eaſie to be ſpoken, but hard to be effected. Wherefore, when he was come into GALATIA with ſomewhat more than fifteene thouſand horſemen, hauing for haſt left his footmen by eaſie marches to come after him: *Selymus* aduertiſed of his comming, by ſpeedie meſſengers ſent for his horſ- M
men to PRVSA. In the meane time whiles he is leuying other common ſouldiours, and expecting the reſt of his forces; fortune, which alwaies fauoured his attempts, did then alſo auert the danger prepared for him by the vnfaithfulneſſe of his followers, and ſhewed vnto him the open way to victorie. For *Achomates* ſecret friends which were in *Selymus* his campe, continuing firme in their good wil towards him, did earneſtly by letters perſuade him (being alreadie ſet forward,

A ward, and now come as farre as PAPHLAGONIA) to make haſt, and to come before *Selymus* his forces were come together: for that he had ſent for the Ianizaries and Europeian horſemen, and did with all ſpeed and diligence make all the preparation he could poſſibly; which for all that would all come too late, if he ſhould vpon the ſuddaine come vpon him before he were prouided. Which letters being by chance intercepted, gaue *Selymus* certaine knowledge both of his brothers purpoſe and comming, together with the treaſon entended againſt him by his owne ſeruants: wherefore executing them who had writ thoſe letters, he in their names cauſed others to the ſame effect to be written to *Achomates*, perſuading him with all ſpeed poſſible to come ſtill on, and not to ſtay for his footmen, for that *Selymus* might eaſily be oppreſſed with a few
B troupes of horſemen, if *Achomates* would with ſpeed but come & ſhew himſelfe vnto his friends and fauourites: who vpon the firſt ſignall of battaile would raiſe a tumult in the armie, and vpon the ſuddain kill *Selymus*, vnaduiſedly going too and fro in the battaile. Which letters ſo written, *Selymus* cauſed to be ſigned with the ſeales of them whom he had before executed, & found meanes to haue them cunningly deliuered to *Achomates*, as if they had been ſent from his friends: who giuing credit to the ſame, and preſuming much vpon his owne ſtrength, doubted not to leaue his footmen, who followed eaſily after him, vnder the conduct of *Amurath* his ſonne; and came and encamped with his horſemen neere vnto the mountain HORMINIVS, vpon the bank of the riuer Parthemius. *Selymus* alſo departed from PRVSA, and hauing receiued into his armie ten thouſand Ianizaries (but a little before come ouer the ſtrait) ſent before *Sinan Baſſa*, Ge-
C nerall of his Aſian horſemen, to know & make proofe of the ſtrength of his enemies. The Baſſa not knowing as yet where *Achomates* lay, neither of what force he was, being deceiued by the darkeneſſe of the morning, fell into a place of diſaduantage, where he was ſet vpon by *Achomates*, and hauing loſt ſeuen thouſand of his men, was glad with other eight thouſand which were left, to flie backe vnto *Selymus*.

Treaſon againſt Selymus diſcouered.

Sinan Baſſa diſcomfited by Achomates.

For all this loſſe, was not *Selymus* diſcomfited, or doubtfull of the victorie, but forthwith marched on forward to the riuer Elata, which runneth directly out of the mountaine HORMINIVS into PONTVS, watering moſt large fields vpon the right hand, which at this day are called the plaines of the new land. So did *Achomates* alſo, who although he knew his brother to be euery way too ſtrong for him: yet being encouraged with the late victorie, and in hope that
D his friends in *Selymus* his armie (whom he vainely ſuppoſed to haue beene yet liuing) would in the very battaile doe ſome notable matter for him, and that victorie would follow his iuſt quarrell; reſolued neither to retire backe, neither to expect the comming of the reſt of his armie. The riuer was betwixt the two campes, and the number of both armies certainely diſcouered: yet could not *Achomates* (to whom the open fields offered a ſafe retreat vnto the reſt of his armie) poſſeſſed with a fatall madneſſe, be perſuaded (conſidering the greatneſſe of the danger) in time to prouide for the ſafetie of himſelfe and his army, carried headlong (as it ſeemed) by inceitable deſtinie to his fatall deſtruction, which preſently after enſued.

Selymus a little before the going downe of the Sun, with his armie paſſed ouer the riuer Elata, and gaue generall commaundement through all his camp, that euery man againſt the next day
E ſhould be ready for battaile: and in a wood not far off placed a thouſand horſemen in ambuſh, vnder the leading of *Canoglis* his wiues brother, a valiant young gentleman, whom his father had a little before ſent from TAVRICA vnto his ſonne in law with a choſen companie of Tartarian horſemen: vnto him *Selymus* gaue in charge, that when the battaile was ioyned, he ſhould ſhew himſelfe with his horſemen vpon the backe of his enemies, and there to charge them.

Selymus with his armie paſſeth ouer the riuer.

As ſoone as it was day, *Selymus* in a great open field put his armie in order of battaile, placing his horſemen in two wings, ſo that all his ſpearemen were in the right wing, and the archers and carbines in the left: In the maine battaile ſtood the Ianizaries with the reſt of the footmen. On the other ſide *Achomates*, hauing no footmen, deuided his horſemen into two wings alſo.

Whileſt both armies ſtood thus raunged, expecting but the ſignall of battaile, a meſſenger
F came from *Achomates* to *Selymus*, offering in his maſters name, to trie the equitie of their quarrell in plaine combat hand to hand: which if he ſhould refuſe, he then tooke both God & the world to witneſſe, that *Selymus* was the onely cauſe of all the guiltleſſe bloud to be ſhed in the battaile, and not he: whereunto *Selymus* anſwered, that he was not to trie his quarrell at the appointment of *Achomates*: and though he could be content ſo to doe, yet would not his ſoldiers ſuffer him ſo to aduenture his perſon and their owne ſafetie: and ſo with that anſwere returned the meſſen-

ger

ger backe againe to his maſter, giuing him for his reward a thouſand aſpers. G
Achomates hauing receiued this anſwere, without further delay charged the right wing of his brothers armie, who valiantly receiued the firſt charge: but when they were come to the ſword, and that the matter was to be tried by handie blowes, they were not able longer to endure the force of the Perſian horſemen; who being well armed both horſe and man, had before requeſted to be placed in the formoſt rankes, by whoſe valour the right wing of *Selymus* his armie was diſordered, and not without great loſſe enforced to retire back vpon their fellows. Which thing *Selymus* beholding, did what he might by all meanes to encourage them againe, and preſently brought on the left wing with their arrowes and piſtols, in ſtead of them that were fled: and at the ſame time came on with the Ianizaries alſo, who with their ſhot enforced *Achomates* his horſemen to retire. *Achomates* himſelfe carefully attending euery danger, with greater courage H
than fortune came in with freſh troupes of horſemen, by whoſe valour the battell before declining was againe renewed, and the victorie made doubtfull: but in the furie of this battell whileſt he was bearing all downe before him, and now in great hope of the victorie, *Canoglis* with his Tartarian horſemen riſing out of ambuſh, came behind him, & with great outcries cauſed their enemies then in the greateſt heat of their fight to turne vpon them: at which time alſo the footmen ſtanding cloſe together aſſailed them afront, and the horſemen whom the Perſians had at firſt put to flight, now moued with ſhame, were againe returned into the battaile: ſo that *Achomates* his ſmall armie was beſet, & hardly aſſailed on euery ſide. In fine his enſignes being ouerthrowne, and many of his men ſlaine, the reſt were faine to betake themſelues to flight. Where
Achomates hauing loſt the field, and now to late ſeeking to ſaue himſelfe by flight, fell with his I
horſe into a ditch, which the raine falling the day before, had filled with water and myre: and being there knowne and taken by his enemies, could not obtaine ſo much fauour at their hands as to be preſently ſlaine, but was reſerued to the farther pleaſure of his cruell brother. *Selymus* vnderſtanding of his taking, ſent *Kirengen* (the ſame ſquint-eyed captaine which had before ſtrangled *Corcutus*) who with a bow ſtring ſtrangled him alſo. His dead bodie was forthwith brought to *Selymus*, and was afterwards by his commandement in royall manner buried with his anceſtours in PRVSA.

Achomates ſtrangled.

Now *Amurat*, *Achomates* his ſonne, vnderſtanding vpon the way by the Perſian horſemen (who ſerred together, had againe made themſelues way through the Turkes armie) of the loſſe K
of the field and the taking of his father, returned backe againe to AMASIA: and there after good deliberation, reſolued with his brother to betake themſelues both to flight; he with the Perſian horſemen paſſing ouer the riuer Euphrates, fled vnto *Hyſmaell* the Perſian king: but *Aladin* the younger brother paſſing ouer the mountaine AMANVS in CILICIA, fled into SYRIA, and ſo to *Campſon Gaurus* the great Sultan of ÆGYPT.

Amurat and Aladin, the ſons of Achomates, flie the one into Perſia, and the other into Egypt.

After this victorie, *Selymus* hauing in ſhort time and with little trouble brought all the leſſer ASIA vnder his obeiſance, and there at his pleaſure diſpoſed of all things, determined to haue returned to CONSTANTINOPLE: but vnderſtanding that the plague was hot there, he changed his purpoſe, and paſſing ouer at GALLIPOLIS and ſo trauelling through GRECIA, came to HADRIANOPLE, where he ſpent all the reſt of that Summer, and all the Winter following: L
and afterward when the mortalitie was ceaſed, returned to CONSTANTINOPLE; where it was found, that an hundred and threeſcore thouſand had there died of the late plague.

Hyſmaell the Perſian king, whoſe fame had then filled the world, hearing of the arriuall of *Amurat*, ſent for him, and demaunded of him the cauſe of his comming. The diſtreſſed yong prince, who but of late had loſt his father, together with the hope of ſo great an empire, & now glad for ſafegard of his life to flie into ſtrange countries, oppreſſed with ſorrow, by his heauie countenance and abundance of teares, more than by words, expreſſed the cauſe of his comming: yet in ſhort ſtrained ſpeech, declared vnto him, how that his father, his vncle, with the reſt of his couſins, all princes of great honour, had of late beene cruelly murdered by the vnmercifull tyrant *Selymus*: who with like furie ſought alſo after the life of himſelfe and his bro- M
ther, the poore remainders of the *Othoman* familie, who to ſaue their liues, were both glad to flie, his brother into ÆGYPT, and himſelfe to the feet of his imperiall maieſtie.

Hyſmaell moued with compaſſion, and deeming it a thing well beſeeming the greatneſſe of his fame, to take the poore exiled prince into his protection and to giue him releeſe, willed him to be of good comfort, and promiſed him aid. And the more to aſſure him thereof, ſhortly after

gaue

A gaue him one of his owne daughters in mariage. For it was thought, that if *Selymus* for his tyrannie become odious to the world, ſhould by any meanes miſcarrie (as with tyrants commonly falleth out) that then in the *Othoman* familie, ſore ſhaken with his vnnaturall crueltie, none was to be preferred before this poore prince *Amurat*: beſides that, it was ſuppoſed, that if he ſhould inuade him with an armie out of PERSIA, that vpon the firſt ſtir, all the leſſer ASIA, mourning for the vnworthie death of *Achomates*, would at once reuolt from him, who for his crueltie and ſhamefull murthers had worthily deſerued to be hated together both of God and man.

Wherefore in the beginning of the Spring *Hyſmaell* furniſhed *Amurat* his new ſonne in
B law with ten thouſand horſemen, willing him to paſſe ouer the riuer of Euphrates at ARSENGA, and to enter into CAPADOCIA, as well to make proofe how the people of that countrie were affected towards him, as of the ſtrength of the enemie: after whom he ſent *Vſta-Ogli*, the moſt famous chiefetaine amongſt the Perſians, with twentie thouſand horſemen mo, with charge, That he ſhould ſtill follow *Amurat* within one daies iourney: and he himſelfe with a farre greater power ſtayed behind in ARMENIA, doubting to want victuall if he ſhould haue led ſo great an armie through thoſe vaſt baron and deſolate places, whereby he muſt of neceſſitie paſſe.

Amurat marching through the leſſer ARMENIA, and entering into the borders of CAPA- 1514
DOCIA, had diuers townes yeelded vnto him by his friends; ſome others he tooke by force, *Amurat ſpoileth*
C which he either ſacked or els quite raſed; and brought ſuch a generall feare vpon the inhabitants *Capadocia.*
of the prouince, that the people ſubmitting themſelues vnto him all the way as he went, it was thought he would haue gone directly to AMASIA, had not *Chendemus* (an old warlike captain whom *Selymus* had left for his lieutenant at ASIA, with a great armie come to meet him at SEBASTIA, which at this day is called SIVAS. This *Chendemus* had alſo long before aduertiſed *Selymus* both of the preparation and comming of the Perſians, as ſoone as he had learned by his eſpials that they were paſſed the riuer Euphrates. Vpon which news *Selymus* came preſently ouer into ASIA, and commaunding all his forces to meet together at PRVSA, had with wonderfull celeritie leuied thereabout fortie thouſand common ſouldiers. Which ſo ſoone as *Amurat* vnderſtood, as well by ſuch priſoners as he had taken, as by aduertiſment from his friends;
D although he was verie deſirous to haue fought with *Chendemus*, yet doubting that if *Selymus* ſhould with his wonted celeritie come againſt him, he ſhould be intangled in the ſtraits of the mountaine ANTITAVRVS, he retired backe againe to *Vſta-Ogli*. But *Selymus* who all that yeare had in his haughtie thoughts been plotting ſome ſuch notable exploit as were worthie his greatneſſe, ſtanding in doubt whether he ſhould by ſea and land inuade HVNGARIE, the RHODES, or ITALIE, at that time ſore ſhaken with ciuile wars: hauing now ſo fit an occaſion giuen him by the Perſian (to the great ioy of all Chriſtendome) conuerted himſelfe wholly vnto the Eaſt, and in thirtie daies march came to ARSENGA. Where ioyning his armie with *Chendemus*, when he vnderſtood that his enemies hauing harried the countrey, were againe retired; prickt forward with the griefe of the iniurie, and deſire of reuenge, with hope of victorie he reſolued to follow *Selymus reſolueth to inuade the Perſian.*
E after them foot by foot, and forthwith to enter into ARMENIA the greater, the principall prouince of the Perſian kingdome.

But the difficulties of this notable expedition, which were in counſell propounded by them which had beſt knowledge of thoſe countries, were great and many, all which by his own good hap and inuincible courage, he himſelfe afterwards ouercame: for the ſouldiours which had in ſhort time alreadie marched by land out of ILLIRIA, EPIRVS, and MACEDONIA, into CAPADOCIA, muſt of neceſſitie in this long expedition take vpon them new labours: they were to endure the ſharpe and pinching cold of the huge mountaine TAVRVS, and by and by after the moſt vehement and ſcorching heat in the plaines of ARMENIA the leſſer, with extreame thirſt, hunger, and moſt deſperate want of all things; and well the more, for that the Perſians in their
F retreat ſpoiling the countrie as they went, had vtterly deſtroyed all that might ſerue for the vſe of man, of purpoſe to leaue nothing to their enemies, but want of all things, if they ſhould purſue them: beſides that, his moſt expert captaines ſtood in no ſmall doubt of the pettie princes of ARMENIA the leſſe, and the mountaine king *Aladeules*, whom they were to leaue behind them at their backes, without any great aſſurance of their friendſhip, who they well knew would faile them, if any thing ſhould happen otherwiſe than well to *Selymus*, either in battell,

or for want of victuals, or in the difficulties of the paſſages. For they were to be relieued with victuals from the Armenians: and *Aladeules* forces then in readineſſe, were neither for number nor power to be contemned; who alſo with caſtles commodiouſly placed and ſtrong garriſons, at his pleaſure commanded all the ſtraits, paſſages, and entrances, which led out of CAPADOCIA into ARMENIA and the Perſian kingdome: for all the mountaine countries were vnder his commaund, and his kingdome ſtretched from the mountaines called SCODRISCI neere vnto PONTVS, all alongſt the great mountaine TAVRVS vnto AMANVS, which diuideth CILICIA from SYRIA. G

Amongſt the reſt, old *Chendemus* viceroy of NATOLIA, a man of great experience, and of all others in greateſt credit, fauour, and authoritie with *Selymus*, perſuaded him to ſtay a while in CAPADOCIA, and there to refreſh his Europeian ſouldiors alreadie wearie of their long trauell, and ſo to expect the comming of his enemies. And to diſſuade him from the dangerous expedition into PERSIA, ſpake vnto him as followeth: H

Chendemus diſſuadeth Selymus from going further against the Perſians.

It is not to be thought (moſt mightie and inuincible emperour) that the Perſians are fled for feare, becauſe they retired before they ſet eye vpon vs their enemies: it is a fineneſſe, and they plainely goe about to intrap vs, whiles they by flight make a falſe ſemblant of feare. Know we not what cunning heads, what able bodies PERSIA *breedeth? will they feare the naked Turkiſh light horſeman or archer, which with their couragious barbed horſes and themſelues ſtrongly armed, feared not the Scythian ſhot? or (if that bee too little) which by their valour haue vanquiſhed ſo many nations, and gained vnto their king ſo great and large an empire? Thinke you, that you haue either greater or better forces than had long agoe* Caſſumes *your vncle? or great* Mahomet *your grandfather? who diuers times prooving their forces againſt this enemie, were more than once put to the worſt, I my ſelfe then ſeruing in their campes neere vnto* TRAPEZONDE *and the mountaines of* NICOPOLIS. *I will not denie, but that the great ordinance which you carrie with you may ſtand you in great ſtead, ſo that fit place may be found to beſtow ſo many field pieces in: but this ſcorched ground, the frozen and abrupt mountaines, with the vaſt and ſolitarie plaines beyond them, terrifie mee, whom all the armed forces of our enemies in place of great aduantage could not diſmaie. You muſt fight, not only with your valiant enemies, but with the difficulties of nature alſo. Neither may your maieſtie giue anie credit to the Armenians, or Aladeules, princes of moſt doubtfull faith; although at your firſt ſetting forward, they ſhew a faire face and ſeeme neuer ſo friendly: for they will but expect and await ſome fit occaſion to take you at an aduantage, and ſo to ſet vpon you when you leaſt feare them. But admit you were aſſured of victorie, O with how much warme bloud of your beſt ſouldiours ſhall you buy the ſame? with what other ſouldiors, with what other forces will you defend* GRÆCIA, *if the Chriſtian kings hearing that you for inlarging your empire, or deſire of fame being gone into the farthеſt part of* ARMENIA, *ſhall in the meane time inuade you? Wherefore if it be better and more wiſedome with ſafetie to defend your own, than with danger to ſeeke for that is other mens; if princes of greateſt pollicie haue repoſed the glorie of their victories, not in the greatneſſe of the ſlaughter of their enemies, but in the ſafetie and preſeruation of their owne ſouldiors: ſpare to obiect your ſelfe and your armie to moſt manifeſt danger, and vnaduiſedly to commit all at once to the hazard of good fortune: which being a moſt tickle and vnconſtant miſtreſſe, if ſhe ſhall but once dallie with your dangerous attempts, you ſhall through your raſhneſſe in farre ſhorter ſpace tumble downe headlong from the type of ſo great maieſtie, than you haue thereunto a while agoe by your rare vertues worthily aſpired.* I K L

Selymus as he was of a rough and fierce nature, ſo would he haue all things done according to his owne deuiſe and direction. And though he were not a little moued with this ſpeech of ſo graue a counſellor and moſt expert commander, and ſaw many of his captaines troubled with the imagination of the future danger: yet in a fume, refuting ſome little of that which *Chendemus* had ſaid, he diſmiſſed the counſel; proteſting openly, that he would proceed in his intended purpoſe, hap what hap ſhould, from friend or fo: although that old fellow were (as he ſaid) ſo carefull of his life, that he feared to die an honourable death. Which *Selymus* had no ſooner ſaid, but preſently others about him, accuſtomed to ſerue his humour, which enuied at the glorie and wealth of old *Chendemus*, tooke hold vpon thoſe words: and beginning with the greatnes of his forces, the valour of his ſouldiors, the ſtore of his artillerie, with his owne inuincible fortune; made eaſie matters of all the former difficulties, and with great words labored to extenuat M

all

A all that the graue Baſſa had before ſaid concerning the proweſſe and power of the enemie. After that, they began to diſcredit *Chendemus*, ſaying, That he (being a martiall man, and of knowne reſolution in all his moſt warlike actions) had not ſaid as before, for want of courage, or any diſtruſt he had of the victorie, but of purpoſe to hinder that moſt honourable expedition, and to cut off all hope of victorie, which was (as they ſaid) as good as alreadie gotten; being before loded with *Amurat* his great promiſes, and the gold of PERSIA. Wherefore they wiſhed him to beware of the ſlie old Fox his wiles and treaſon, and to proceed on in his expedition ſo much the more boldly: and not to thinke that his ſouldiors would refuſe any danger or labor, ſo long as they ſaw courage in himſelfe, but would be readie (as they ſaid) to vndertake the moſt deſperat difficulties of warre; and deſired nothing more, than to be conducted into thoſe
B far countries, where by their martiall proweſſe and valiant acts they might make their emperour *Selymus* equall with the Great *Alexander*, and themſelues comparable to his Macedonians. And to worke the vtter deſtruction of this moſt faithfull counſellor without all recure, theſe falſe flatterers ſuborned bold faced accuſers, who falſly and ſhamefull affirmed, that he had receiued great ſums of mony from *Amurat*, and did not therefore in time go againſt the Perſian robbers, whereby all the former calamities happened (as they ſaid) to that prouince: for which pretended cauſes, *Selymus* commanded *Chendemus* without farther hearing, to be ſlaine. But in deed to terrifie others from like libertie of ſpeech, and withall to teach them to deeme thoſe deuiſes and counſels as moſt excellent, which their ſoueraigne ſhould as it were by diuine inſpiration find out himſelfe; and ſo to accept of them without contradiction. The ſudden death of
C this moſt faithfull counſellor *Chendemus*, ſtrucke an exceeding feare into the minds of all men, for that ſo honourable a perſonage, of late in ſo great fauour and credit with his ſoueraigne, was without hearing executed; whom they had knowne as a man of great account, both for his proweſſe and policie, to haue ſtood faſt on *Selymus* ſide, firſt in his wars againſt his father, and of late againſt his brother: not doubting but that *Selymus* by nature cruell, and ſuſpitious euen of trifles, would with like tyrannie not ſpare men of meaner calling, which ſpared not his deereſt and moſt ancient friends.

Chendemus Baſſa by the commandment of Selymus ſlaine.

Selymus marching from ARSENGA came to the confines of the leſſer Armenian kings, and of *Aladeules*: where by his embaſſadours he requeſted the kings of thoſe nations (who were then in armes) that they would ioine their forces with his againſt the Perſian, and to go with him
D into ARMENIA the Great: promiſing that when the warres were happily ended, he would giue vnto them all ſuch territorie as ſhould chance in thoſe warres to be taken from the enemie, as a reward of their aid. But theſe poore kings, which hated both *Hyſmaell* and *Selymus* for the manifold iniuries they daily receiued in the frontires of their dominions, lying in the middeſt betweene them, (as commonly it falleth out that the weakeſt goeth to the wals) craftily expecting the euent of this war, would not openly ſhew themſelues, but anſwered that they had taken vp armes for no other purpoſe, but for the defence of themſelues and their kingdomes. Not meaning in that doubtfull warre, to beare themſelues as enemies vnto either of thoſe great princes their friends and neighbours, of whoſe iuſt grieuances they were not able or worthie to determine: yet if he would without hoſtilitie, in peaceable manner paſſe through their dominions,
E they promiſed to giue free paſſage vnto him and his armie: and after he were entred into ARMENIA the greater, to relieue him with ſuch prouiſion of victuall as their bare countries could affoord.

Selymus thus deceiued of this his firſt hope (for why, he thought thoſe poore kings would at the firſt either for loue or feare haue beene readie to haue done him all the ſeruice they could) diſſembled his griefe for the preſent, as wholy bent againſt *Hyſmaell*: fearing, that if he ſhould by word or deed offend thoſe neuter princes, he ſhould haue thē at his back his moſt aſſured & vndoubted enemies. Wherfore paſſing the mountains called SCODRISCI, he came in eight daies vnto the great mountaines called MOSCHII, which the famous riuer Euphrates with his mightie ſtreame and hugie broken bankes ſeparateth from the great mountaine ANTITAVRVS, and
F with perpetuall ſteepe ridges runneth into IBERIA and CHOLCHIS, and on the Eaſt diſcouereth ARMENIA the greater. Here *Selymus* with enſignes diſplaied marching alongſt the banke of the riuer, departed not from the ſame, for feare to lacke water in that hoat and drie countrey: and ſo held on his way directly Eaſtward, leauing the countrey of ARMENIA the leſſe vpon his left hand, and the frontiers of the kingdome of *Aladeules* on the right, vntill he came to the

mountaine PERIARDO. This great mountaine, famous by the rising of two great and notable G
riuers out of it, is for the wonderfull fertilitie of all things, of the barbarous people called LEPRVS, which is say, fruitfull: for Euphrates and Araxis there running out of two diuers and contrarie marshes, with many armes, water and inrich that champain and drie countrie. *Selymus* hauing made so great a iourney, and yet not able so much as by report to vnderstand what was become of *Hysmaell* his great and populus armie, which he knew was but a little before departed out of CAPADOCIA; as a man in doubt, and halfe afraid, stayed and emcaped his armie at the head of the riuer Euphrates: and from thence sent out his scouts euery way, if happily they could intercept some which might giue him knowledge of his enemies. But the Armenians, whether it were for feare of the comming of the Turks, or that *Hysmaell* their king had so commaunded, were all before fled out of that part of the countrie whereby *Selymus* was to passe H
with his armie, and hauing forsaken their houses, had carried away with them, or else by fire destroyed whatsoeuer might serue for the vse of man.

Selymus sendeth out his scouts, who return with bad newes.

The Turkish scouts after they had by the space of two daies scoured vp and down the countrie, returned backe againe to *Selymus*, not hauing taken so much as any one man; shewing vnto him, that all things were destroyed before him, and nothing left but wide fields and a most desolate countrie, without any appearance of man or beast: and that they were of opinion, that either the Armenian guides were deceiued in the way, or else had of purpose brought them into such desart places, wheras wanting pasture for their horses, and food for men, they must needs together perish with hunger. Which their present feare was greatly increased by the weak kings whom they had left behind them at their backs; but especially *Aladeules*, who either for shame I
or feare had a few daies at the first holpen the Turks with victuals, but after they were farther entred into ARMENIA, performed nothing of that he had before most faithfully promised: seeking therein the fauour of *Hysmaell*, who he thought would with the same good fortune vanquish the Turks, that he had not long before the greatest part of the East. *Selymus* perplexed in mind, began now to suspect treason, to feare famine, to dread the desarts and forsaken places, and with griefe of mind to call to remembrance all that old *Chendemus* his faithfull counsellor had before most truly told him: for all that, he shewed himselfe vnto his souldiors with cheerful countenance, as a man nothing dismaied: which his firme constancie seemed to promise vnto their discouraged minds good successe, with speedie victorie. Wherefore calling vnto him his guides, and such as best knew the countrey, and vnderstanding by them, that on the right hand K
beyond the mountaine PERIARDO lay the most fruitfull countrie of all ARMENIA, he rise with his armie, and compassing the hill toward the North, turned downe toward the riuer Araxes, and aboue the citie of COY passed his armie ouer the riuer, his footmen by little bridges, and his horsemen by foords: for Araxes, vntill it haue receiued such riuers as fall into it out of the marshes of the PERIARDO, runneth but with a small streame, and is in some place easie to be passed ouer.

Selymus passeth ouer Araxes.

Selymus had scarcely well got ouer the riuer, and incamped his armie, when *Vsta-Ogli*, who hauing ioyned his forces with *Amurath*, lying incamped not farre off; and fearing least the citie of COY and the vnprouided citizens should by the sudden comming of the enemie be op- L
pressed, quickly rise with his armie, and set forwards to meet with the Turks: for that citie of all others in that countrie, for fresh fountaines and riuers most pleasant, wherein the Persian kings for the great plentie of all manner of fruit, and wholesomenesse of the aire, leauing TAVRIS, were wont to spend most part of the Summer, had then in it many rich citizens and sumptuous buildings; which *Vsta-Ogli* thought good betimes to rescue, and not with dishonour to loose that rich citie, looking as it were vpon it, and leauing it vnto the enemie, to suffer him there to refresh his hunger-starued souldiors with plentie of all things. *Cassinus* an Armenian borne, and present in those wars, did by many probabilities (as *Iouius* writeth) shew vnto him, that this citie of COY was in ancient time that most famous citie called ARTAXATA, which *Domitius Corbulo* destroyed. Neither did *Hysmaell* himselfe (although he had but a little before sent the greatest M
part of his forces against the Coraxeni, who were then risen vp against him in rebellion, as he that made no great reckoning of the Turks, or euer thought that they durst haue come so farre into ARMENIA) make any delay, but forthwith, as soone as he had heard of the comming of *Selymus*, came also in person himselfe vnto his armie.

By chance *Vsta-Ogli* (who contrarie to all mens expectation had vntill then shunned to fight,

or

A or come in ſight of his enemies, of purpoſe with leſſe danger and loſſe of men, to ouerthrow them afterwards, being ſore weakened and almoſt ſpent with long trauell and want of victuals) lay then incamped neere the citie, when as the Turkes ſcouts, vpon the comming of *Hyſmaell*, perceiued by the great riſing of the duſt, and by the neighing of the Perſian horſes, that ſome greater power was at hand. Which ſo ſoone as it was noiſed in the Turkiſh campe, they began to reioice exceedingly, & to conceiue the firſt hope both of their ſafetie and victorie; glad, that now meeting with their enemies, they ſhould either by victorie turne their labour, toile, famine, and extremities wherewith they had of long time ſtriuen, into eaſe and plentie of all things, or els by honourable death end all their miſeries at once: for many of the horſemen, eſpecially of
B them that came out of EVROPE, whoſe horſes were ſtarued for want of forrage, and the common footmen ſpent with long trauell, and grieuouſly troubled with the flix (who trauelling in the extreame heat of the Sunne, had for moſt part liued vpon crabs and other wild fruits, with a bad ſupping made of meale and vineger, and almoſt deſparing to get the ſight of their enemies) began now to die in euery corner.

Hyſmaell as ſoone as he was come within ſight of his enemies, repoſing great confidence as well in the valour of his ſouldiers as in his owne rare fortune, the more to terrifie them, thought it good forthwith to giue them battell: whereupon he ſent an herauld vnto *Selymus*, accompanied with certaine skilfull ſouldiers, which ſhould in beſt ſort they could take view of the number and force of their enemies, of their artillerie, and in what ſort they lay incamped; and to tell
C him, That for as much as he had no title vnto ARMENIA, nor that the Turks had at any time claimed any intereſt therin, he could not but maruell, why he had againſt all right entered with his armie into his dominion: but if he happily vpon a vaine preſumption, to the imitation of *Alexander* of MACEDON, ſhould thinke ſo much of the world his owne as he could by the ſword and his owne fortune win, he ſhould then make himſelfe readie againſt the next day to make proofe of his owne fortune and the forces of others, not inferiour to his owne.

Hyſmaell ſtandeth an herauld to Selymus.

Whereunto *Selymus* anſwered, That the freſh remembrance of the manifold iniuries done to the Turkes by the Perſians, was ſuch, as might giue him iuſt cauſe to take vp armes: for as much as long agoe both his grandfather *Mahomet* the Great, and his vncle *Caſſumes*, and euen of late his father *Baiazet*, & he himſelfe alſo in his warres againſt his brother *Achomates*, had re-
D ceiued great wrong and diſhonour from the Perſians. All which things, although they were of themſelues important, yet he eſteemed not of them as ſufficient cauſes of warre, but only ſought after his enemie *Amurath*, his brothers ſonne, who had of late ſpoiled CAPADOCIA: whom if he would quietly and friendly deliuer vnto him, as the mutuall lawes of amitie and friendſhip amongſt princes for the maintenance and preſeruation of their eſtates and kingdomes required, then he would withdraw his forces, and peaceably returne into his kingdome: otherwiſe, he threatned with fire and ſword to deſtroy, not the frontires of ARMENIA, but euen the heart of PERSIA. And ſo diſmiſſing the herauld, both the armies for that day lay ſtill in their trenches, expecting the dreadfull euent of battell.

Selymus his anſwer vnto Hyſmaell.

The next day *Selymus* by perſuaſion of his captaines brought his armie into the open field,
E and in order of battell ſet forward againſt his enemies, which lay about two miles off, thinking that *Hyſmaell*, a prince of ſo great name, would without delay accept of battaile: yet what ſtrength the Perſian king was of, what number of men he had, what manner of horſemen, how armed, and with what weapons, he could not certainely learne: for beſide that the Perſians are by nature ingenious and ſubtill, the ſouldiors generally ſo reuerenced and loued *Hyſmaell* their king, that no one was found to haue gone from him to the Turke; wheras many reuolted from *Selymus* to him, as it was afterwards learned of the Perſian captaines.

The order of Selymus his battell.

Selymus, who had at that time foureſcore thouſand horſemen vnder his enſignes, placed *Caſan Baſſa* his lieutenant Generall of EVROPE, with his Europeian horſemen in the right wing; and *Sinan Baſſa* with his Aſian horſemen in the left: and before them both, the Acanzij (which
F are voluntarie horſemen, the forerunners of the Turkes armie) who in hope of ſpoile follow the Turkes warres out of all countries: in the middle battaile he placed the Aſapi or common ſouldiors; which baſe and halfe-naked people, as men of little worth or eſtimation, are commonly thruſt into the front of the Turkes battells, to receiue the firſt furie of the enemie, and to blunt their ſwords, more than for any other good ſeruice: directly behind them he beſtowed his great artillerie, guarded with foure thouſand horſemen: laſt of all followed himſelfe with his

his choſen pentioners and Ianizaries compaſſed about with ſmall field-pieces and his cariages, G
as with a double trench: for he had (as their manner is) ſo inuironed himſelfe round with his
ſadled cammels, made faſt one to another with long chaines, that they ſtood him in ſtead of a
ſtrong trench, from whence he might ſpeedily relieue any part of his diſtreſſed armie; and in
caſe of extremitie, being in the middle of his ſtrength, he may as out of a ſure fortreſſe repreſſe
the furious aſſault of his enemies. He alſo commanded his footmen in the vauward of his bat-
tell, that vpon the approch of the enemies horſemen they ſhould ſpeedily withdraw themſelues
aſide into two parts, leauing ſpace for the great ordinance which was placed behind them to
play in the middle betweene them. On the contrarie part, *Hyſmaell*, who by the Turks fugitiues
vnderſtood all the deuiſes of his enemies, calling vnto him the chiefe commanders of his armie, H
ſhewed vnto them, that there was no doubt of the victorie, ſo that they could ſhun the furie of
the great artillerie: which he aſſured them would eaſily be done, if when they ſaw the Turkiſh
footmen diuide themſelues, they would alſo in like maner withdraw themſelues into two parts,
and giue place to the fury of the great ordinance: for which purpoſe he cauſed two great enſigns
to be diſplayed, whereunto they ſhould at the time appointed retire, the one for himſelfe and
thoſe whom he conducted, the other for *Vſta-Ogli*, and the reſt of his armie.

Hyſmaell with thirty thouſand Perſians giueth battell to Selymus with three hundred thouſand Turkes.

Hyſmaell (as *Iouius* reporteth) had in his armie about thirtie thouſand horſemen, without any
footmen, amongſt whom were ten thouſand men at armes, reſolute gentlemen, of great expe-
rience, all gallantly mounted vpon courageous barbed horſes, and themſelues brauely armed
both for the ſhew and the terrour of the enemie; their weapons were a good launce, a ſure ſci- I
mitar, and a horſemans mace: the reſt were armed with ſtrong cuiraſſes and headpieces, and
were either archers on horſebacke, or elſe vſed light horſemens ſtaues, made of Aſh after the
Spaniſh faſhion, wherewith they ſerued at the halfe ſtaffe. As for gunns they had none, in which
thing only, and number of men, they were inferiour to the Turks. But ſuch was the inuincible
courage and noble minds of the Perſians, that contemning the huge multitude of their enemies
(who were in number about three hundred thouſand) and making no great reckoning of the
great artillerie, they doubted not with ſo few to giue them battell.

Hyſmaell hauing giuen the ſignall of battell, came on with his armie, exhorting his ſouldi-
ours then to remember the honour they had long before gotten in many battells, and coura-
geouſly to follow him their ſoueraigne, whom they by their worthie ſeruice and many victo- K
ries, had made the greateſt monarch of the Eaſt, telling them, that they ſhould haue now to do
but with naked men, whoſe weapons were but weake ſtaues and light targuets, and their horſes
little poore iades, almoſt dead with hunger, neuer able to abide the firſt charge of his valiant
men at armes.

On the other ſide, *Selymus* perceiuing the comming of his enemies by the riſing of the duſt,
cauſed knowledge to be giuen through his armie by his captaines and officers, that the time of
battell which they had ſo long wiſhed for, was now come; wherein if they would worthily
acquite themſelues againſt thoſe their proud enemies, they ſhould to their immortall fame ex-
tend the Turkiſh empire from the Perſian ſea vnto the mountaine CAVCASVS: but if they co-
wardly forgetting their ancient proweſſe, ſhould faint in the time of the battell, they were not L
then to thinke by any meanes to eſcape by flight backe againe through thoſe great plaines and
deſolate countries; where they ſhould by the way either ſhamefully periſh, or elſe to their per-
petuall infamie be taken priſoners, and as baſe ſlaues, during their liues be inforced to ſerue the
Perſian women: for as much as beſide the great diſtance of the place, both the great riuer Eu-
phrates, and the huge mountaine TAVRVS, and the faithleſſe king *Aladeules*, who had ſhut vp all
the paſſages, did cut off all hope from them, if they ſhould be ouercome, by any meanes poſſi-
ble to eſcape backe againe into CAPADOCIA.

The great and mortall battell between Selymus and Hyſmaell.

When *Hyſmaell* was come neere with his armie, and the Aſapi vpon ſigne giuen diuiding
themſelues, made place for the great artillerie to play, as was before appointed; he alſo preſent-
ly diuiding his horſmen, charged the right wing of the Turks armie, with ſuch force, that after a M
moſt terrible fight betwixt the halfe armed Turks, and the valiant Perſian men at armes, *Caſan*
Baſſa the great commander of the Europeian horſemen, with the formoſt of that wing, being
ſlain, and many mo after them, he inforced all that wing to retire vnto that place where *Sely-*
mus himſelfe with the Ianizaries ſtood. On the other ſide, *Vſta-Ogli* hauing receiued no little
harme by the Turks great ordinance, becauſe he had not ſo ſpeedily cleered himſelfe and his

fol-

A followers of that danger, as had *Hyſmaell*, charged the Aſian horſemen in the left wing, and there in bloudie battell made great ſlaughter of the enemie, but not with like good hap as did *Hyſmael*: for whiles he moſt couragiouſly in the formoſt rankes aſſailed his enemies, he was ſtrucke with a ſmall ſhot and ſlaine. With whoſe fall the Turkes were greatly encouraged, inſomuch as that they which but now were glad to giue ground, and had loſt the third part of that wing, began a freſh to renew the battell, and valiantly to withſtand the Perſians; and with their harquebuſiers (wherewith the Perſian horſemen were wonderfully terrified) draue them headlong vpon the Turkes common footmen. The Perſians whether it were forced by neceſſitie for that they had loſt ſo great a commander, and not well able to gouerne their horſes terrified with the thun- *Vſta-ogli ſlaine.*
B dring ſhot, or elſe for that the open ſide of the footmen preſented vnto them greater place of aduantage, ſerring themſelues together brake through the middle of the battell of thoſe Turkiſh footmen, and bearing them downe before them with a mightie ſlaughter, came to the great ordinance and there ſlew the canoniers, who diſcharging their field pieces at all aduentures, in that great medly made a foule ſlaughter, as well of their owne men as of their enemies. And ſo without ſtop (as victorious conquerours) made way through the middeſt of their enemies, vntill they came to the right wing: where *Hyſmaell* was ſtill hardly charging the Europeian horſemen, who hauing before loſt *Caſan* their Generall, and being many of them ſlaine or wounded, were alreadie enforced to retire; but now charged afreſh vpon the ſide, had much adoe to endure the furie of their enemies, but as men in extreame danger, were glad to crie to *Selymus*
C for helpe.

In this hard diſtreſſe, *Selymus* in two places opened his carriages, wherewith he ſtood as it were entrenched, and preſently ſent out part of his horſemen. And by and by turning himſelfe vnto his Ianizaries, ſaid, *This dayes victorie is reſerued (moſt worthie ſouldiours) vnto your valour and labour: wherefore now valiantly ſet forward, and as freſh and couragious men, aſſaile your wearied enemies; their horſes are all on a water with ſweat, and the men themſelues faint vnder the waight of their armour.* But yet for all that *Selymus* could ſay, the Ianizaries were not very forward, but ſtood ſtill, as men willing in ſo great a danger to keepe themſelues within the ſafegard of their munition. Wherefore whileſt they at their leiſure ſet forward, the Perſians in the middeſt of the heat of this victorie, compaſſing in the Europeian horſemen, ſlew them downe right, *Selymus*
D looking on and wiſhing in vaine to helpe them. *Fabritius Carrectus* great maſter of the RHODES, who of all theſe things had certaine intelligence, writ to *Leo* the tenth then biſhop of ROME, that the Ianizaries refuſed to be commanded by *Selymus*, and were not by any perſwaſion or entreatie to be enduced to relieue the diſtreſſed Europeian horſemen; but as men diſtruſting the euent of the battell, choſe rather in their ſtrength to expect the ſucceſſe thereof, than with moſt manifeſt danger to expoſe themſelues vnto the violence of the Perſian horſemen, which had as a tempeſt ouerborne the vantguard of the Turkiſh footmen.

The Perſians were now ready on euery ſide to haue aſſailed *Selymus* in his greateſt ſtrength: when *Sinan Baſſa*, although the wing he led was ſore rent and weakned, yet following the Perſians through the middeſt of the heaps of the ſlaine footmen, came in, in good time for *Selymus*,
E and with certaine freſh troups which had eſcaped the furie of *Vſta-ogli*, reſtored the battell before almoſt loſt: but eſpecially by the inuincible courage of *Alis-beg* and *Mahomet* his brother, diſcended of the honourable familie of the *Molcozzij*, which for nobilitie amongſt the Turkes is accounted next vnto the *Othomans*; both of them for courage reſembling their warlike father *Malcozzius*, famous for that wofull expedition he made into FRIVLI againſt the Venetians in the raigne of *Baiazet*. *Selymus* alſo not yet diſcouraged but ſtill in hope, commanded all the great ordinance wherewith he was enuironed, which he had reſerued as his laſt refuge, to be diſcharged: by the violence whereof, ſuch ſlaughter was made, as well of his owne men as of his enemies, mingled together, that what for duſt, what for ſmoake, and thundring of the artillerie, hauing on both ſides almoſt loſt the vſe of ſight and hearing; and their horſes being ſo terrified *The terrour of the battell betweene Selymus and Hyſmaell.*
F with the thundring report of the great ordinance, that they were not now to be ruled, the battell was broken off, the victorie yet doubtfull. The Turkiſh hiſtories to expreſſe the terrour of this day, number it amongſt their diſmall daies, tearming it *The onely day of Doome.*

Hyſmaell in this furious battell, hauing receiued a wound vnder his left ſhoulder with a ſmall ſhot; by perſuaſion of his friends withdrew himſelfe to haue his wound ſearched: which thing vndoubtedly was the ſafegard both of *Selymus* & his armie. For the Perſians by and by following

ing their king, left the victorie now in all mens opinion almoſt gotten. But after that *Hyſmaell* G
perceiued the wound was not deepe, for that the ſtrength of his armor had ſo broken the force of the ſhot, that it pierced not far into his bodie, he was about to haue charged the Turks afreſh: but vnderſtanding of the death of *Vſta-ogli*, in whom for his ſingular experience in martiall affaires, he had repoſed his greateſt confidence; and his captains alſo perſuading him not to make ſo light reckoning of his wound, the griefe whereof he yet felt not, being warme, but to haue regard to his own health: he in ſeemly order ſoftly marched away in ſuch ſort, that his departure had no reſemblance of flight. And paſſing by the citie of TAVRIS, willed the chief of the citizens to open the gates of the citie to *Selymus* (if he ſhould come thither) and to receiue his garriſons, rather then by vaine conſtancie to fall into vtter deſtruction: and ſo marched himſelfe into the H
confines of MEDIA.

But the Turkes intangled with many difficulties, hauing no hearts for feare, nor ſtrenght for wearineſſe to purſue their enemies; yet comming to the Perſian tents, tooke them without reſiſtance: where beſide the rich pauillions wrought with needle worke of ſilke and gold, and much other pretious furniture, many noble ladies and gentlewomen were found, which after the manner of the Perſians had followed their husbands in thoſe warres; whom *Selymus* cauſed to be all freely ſet at liberty vntouched, excepting one of the wiues of *Hyſmaell* whom he detained and gaue her in mariage to one of his Baſſaes. Some which were preſent at this battell, reported that amongſt the heapes of them that were ſlaine, were found the dead bodies of diuers Perſian women, which being armed, and following their husbands, died with them in the battell; whom I
Selymus cauſed to be honeſtly buried.

The Perſian tents taken by the Turkes.

This was that notable battell fought in the GALDERAN fields neere vnto the city of COY, betwixt theſe two great princes, the ſeauenth day of Auguſt in the yeare of our Lord 1514. In which battell *Selymus* loſt aboue thirtie thouſand men, amongſt whom was *Caſan Baſſa* his great lieutenant in EVROPE, ſeauen Sanzackes, in which were the two *Malcozzian* brethren, who labouring the one to reſcue the other were both togither ſlaine. Beſide his common footmen of whom he made leaſt reckoning, he loſt moſt part of his Illirian, Macedonian, Seruian, Epirot, Theſſalian, and Thracian horſemen, the vndoubted flower and ſtrength of his army, which were in that mortall battell almoſt all ſlaine, or grieuouſly wounded.

Selymus for all this great loſſe, by the confeſſion of his enemies hauing gotten the victorie, K
and receiuing embaſſadours from COY and the cities thereabout, and the great citie of TAVRIS promiſing to relieue him with whatſoeuer hee needed, and to doe what elſe he ſhould commaund: marched directly to TAVRIS, deſiring both to ſee and poſſeſſe himſelfe of that citie, as one of the chiefe pallaces of the Perſian kings. This citie is two daies iourney diſtant from COY where the battell was fought, and is probably ſuppoſed to de the famous citie called in auncient time ECBATHANA, about an hundred and fiftie miles diſtant from the Caſpian ſea. The citiſens were readie at the comming of the Turkes, and brought them great ſtore of victuals out of the gates of the citie, where *Selymus* had lodged his armie in the ſuburbs, thinking it no ſafetie to lodge within that great and populous citie; contenting himſelfe to haue the gates thereof deliuered vnto him, which he kept with ſtrong guard. Some report that *Selymus* durſt not truſt the L
Perſians, and therefore neuer went into the citie but diſguiſed in the habit of a common ſouldiour. Yet ſome others ſay, that he did with great magnificence banquet in the ſtately pallace of the Perſian king, and there had great diſcourſe with them of TAVRIS concerning his late victorie. But whileſt he thus ſtaied at TAVRIS, and with himſelfe purpoſed to ſpend that winter in ARMENIA; he called togither his great captaines and commaunders of his armie, to know how they liked thereof: who fearing his diſpleaſure, wholy referred themſelues to his owne reſolution. Onely *Muſtapha* his chiefe Baſſa chanced to ſay, That it were good that the minds of the Ianizaries and the other ſouldiers of the court ſhould therein be knowne. Which his ſpeech, *Selymus* tooke in ſuch euill part, that he preſently commanded him out of his ſight, and depriued him of his greateſt honour: and the more to diſgrace him, ſent one of his ieſters after him, who M
in great ſcorne and deriſion comming behind him, cut off part of his tulipant that hung downe as the faſhion was. But the Ianizaries vnderſtanding the matter, and much offended with the indignitie offered vnto the great Baſſa whom they deerely loued, riſe vp altogither in armes, & told *Selymus* flatly, That they would not in any caſe winter ſo far from home in the enemies countrey: and therefore that it were beſt for him betime to conſider of the matter, for that they were

The Ianizaries in mutinie againſt Selymus.

A were reſolutely ſet downe to forſake him if he would needs ſtay, and not with ſpeed returne. *Selymus* much troubled with this inſolencie of the Ianizaries, and hearing dayly, that *Hyſmaell* with new ſupplies out of IBERIA, ALBANIA, and PARTHIA, was comming vpon him with greater power than before; and conſidering withal, with what difficultie and danger hee had eſcaped in the late battaile, preſerued rather by his good fortune and force of his great artillerie, than the valour and proweſſe of his ſouldiers; and withall ſuſpecting the multitude and ſtrength of the Tauriſians, of whoſe fidelitie he could make no reckoning; he changed his former determination, and reſolued to turne againe into CAPADOCIA: whereupon hauing contrarie to his promiſe exacted a great maſſe of money from them of TAVRIS, he departed
B thence, carrying away with him three thouſand families, the beſt artificers in that citie, eſpecially ſuch as were skilfull in making of armour and weapons, and ſo with ſpeed retired towards the riuer Euphrates, a longer way than that whereby he came: fearing to returne againe by the head of Araxis and the mountaines PERIADES, for meeting the Iberian and Albanian horſemen, who were reported to be then comming againſt him.

Hyſmaell vnderſtanding of his departure, followed after with as much ſpeed as he could, leauing behind him for haſt his carriages and ſuch of his ſouldiers as were not able to endure ſo long and ſpeedie a march: yet for all his haſt (for ſo much as *Selymus* was gone a great way before him) he could not ouertake any part of his armie, vntill he was come to the great riuer Euphrates; where *Selymus* ſtaying two daies, and hauing made diuers little boats, was paſſing
C ouer his footmen: which becauſe they were not ſufficient for the ſpeedie tranſportation of ſo great a multitude, many for haſt ſwam ouer the riuer vpon bladders, & ſome aduentured to get ouer vpon the broken peeces of their carriages, which they had for that purpoſe burſt in ſunder. *Selymus* himſelfe got ouer to the farther banke in a little boat, hauing before cauſed all his horſemen with their horſes at once to take the riuer, of purpoſe to breake the violence of the ſtreame, whereby his footmen and cammels with their burdens got ouer with leſſe danger, and ſome of his field peeces were alſo with leſſe difficultie tranſported. Yet for all the ſpeed he could make, the Georgian horſemen, the forerunners of *Hyſmaell* his armie, being come within ſight before the Turkes were all got ouer, raiſed ſuch a feare and a ſtirre all alongſt that ſide of the riuer, that two thouſand of the Turkes were in their haſtie paſſage there drowned, diuers field peeces left
D ſticking in the mud, and much of their baggage carried away with the force of the riuer. The Georgians contenting themſelues with ſuch things as were left, purſued them no further: for the wheeles of the Turkes carriages entangled together with the violence of the ſtreame, had ſtaied a great part of the Turkiſh traſh, floating in the riuer: & much more was in diuers places driuen vpon the ſhore, all which the Georgian horſemen eaſily drew out. *Hyſmaell* in the meane time reioycing at nothing more, than that hauing chaſed away his enemies, he had alſo recouered much of the great ordinance whereby he had before receiued ſo great hurt.

Selymus passing the riuer Euphrates, receiueth great losse.

Selymus by ſpeedie flight thus got out of the hands of the Perſians, found his paſſing much more dangerous at the mountaine ANTITAVRVS, than he had before thought of: For *Aladeules* the mountaine king hauing now his fortune in contempt, and diligently waiting for his
E prey, had with his ſauage people before taken all the ſtraight paſſages of that mountaine countrey; who euery night in theeuiſh manner aſſailed the Turks, as they with their weake and wearie companies paſſed through thoſe rough and broken wayes: and robbing their carriages, preſently fled into their haunts and places of refuge in the thicke woods and rockie mountaines. *Aladeules* himſelfe in the meane time, by whoſe fraud all this was done, euery day excuſing himſelfe, as if it had beene done againſt his will, by the rude mountaine people enured to ſuch deſperate robberies, whom neuertheleſſe he ſaid he would in ſhort time ſeuerely chaſtiſe ſo ſoon as he could finde the authors thereof. In the meane while, for faſhion ſake ſending a little ſpare prouiſion for certaine dayes, did euery night rob and ſpoile the Turkes by his ſouldiers, as they could take them in places of aduantage. Againſt which miſcheefes *Selymus* could neither by
F policie, neither his ſouldiers by induſtrie prouide any ſufficient remedie. Wherfore diſſembling the iniuries he daily receiued, purpoſing to be thereof in time reuenged, together with the foule and trecherous dealing of that faithleſſe king; holding on his way, he with much adoe came at length to TRAPEZOND, and from thence to AMASIA, where he ſpent that winter in repairing his ſore weakened armie, purpoſing with the firſt of the Spring to make warre vpon *Aladeules* and the mountaine people, who in his returne had done him ſo great harme and iniurie,

Selymus commeth to Amaſia.

In

In this ſort *Iouius*, one of the great hiſtoriographers of that time, reporteth the aforeſaid wars betwixt *Hyſmael* and *Selymus*, whoſe credit in that matter other writers haue ſince for moſt part followed. Howbeit, *Io. Ant. Mænauinus*, a Genoway, who ſerued in theſe warres, doth in his booke concerning the Turkiſh affaires, dedicated to the French king, much otherwiſe report the ſame: which to ſatisfie the deſirous reader, I haue thought good here in few words to ſet downe, as it is by himſelfe reported. G

The former hiſtorie as it is reported by Io. Ant. Mænauinus a Genoway, preſent at doing thereof.

Selymus (ſaith he) with his armie in number about three hundred thouſand men, being come to the riuer Euphrates, found the bridge broken downe by his nephew *Amurat*, and his enemies encamped in conuenient place on the farther ſide of the riuer, with their forces greatly encreaſed by new ſupplies lately ſent from the Perſian king: ſo that there was then in the Perſian armie about ninetie thouſand men horſe and foot, the horſemen for moſt part furniſhed with two horſes apeece for ſeruice: and though *Selymus* did what he might, to know whether the Perſian king were in perſon himſelfe in the campe, or elſe (which he moſt feared) was raiſing of greater forces in PERSIA, yet could he by no meanes learne the truth of that he deſired. Wherefore repairing againe the broken bridge, he firſt ſent ouer his two great lieutenants of GRÆCIA and NATOLIA, who paſſing ouer the riuer, encamped themſelues as they thought conuenient. The next morning, about two houres before the riſing of the Sunne, *Amurat* ſuddenly aſſailed the great commander of GRÆCIA, *Caſan Baſſa*, in his trenches, and by plaine force diſcomfited the Turkes, and by good fortune tooke from them their tents: whereupon ſuch a terrour and feare came vpon the other great commander of NATOLIA, that his ſouldiers thruſting themſelues for feare into the riuer, ſwam ouer with great danger, and againe ioyned themſelues with the reſt of the armie. *Selymus* troubled with the great loſſe thus receiued, cauſed all his great artillerie to be placed all alongſt the hithermoſt banke of the riuer Euphrates; and becauſe the enemie ſhould not perceiue the ſame, raunged certaine companies of his ſouldiers before the ordinance, as if they ſhould preſently haue paſſed the riuer: who vpon ſignall giuen, ſhould forthwith withdraw themſelues and giue place to the great ordinance bent vpon the enemie. But when fire was giuen to theſe great pieces, many of them being ouercharged, burſt in ſunder, and ſlew diuers of the Turkes: many alſo of their horſes and mules being neere vnto the riuers ſide, and terrified with the thundering ſhot, leapt into the riuer, and were there drowned together with their riders. The Perſians alſo hauing receiued great loſſe, retired farther off for feare of the great artillerie. So *Selymus* without reſiſtance paſſing ouer the riuer, marched forthwith toward the enemie: whom the Perſians as men nothing diſmaied, notably encountered. The battell was of long time doubtfull, and much bloud ſhed on both ſides: and if the approch of the night had not broken off that mortall fight, the Perſian armie rather ouercharged with the multitude of the enemie, than vanquiſhed by valour, had vndoubtedly receiued a great ouerthrow; but through the benefit of the night, they without further loſſe eſcaped the purſute of the Turkes. Vpon this victorie, *Selymus* left his carriages and baggage with his footmen; and taking with him only his horſemen, ſet forward, with intention to haue vpon the ſudden ſurpriſed the regall citie of TAVRIS, before the fame of the late fought battaile could be carried thither: the Perſians in the meane time being no leſſe carefull of their affaires. The day before, ten thouſand freſh horſemen well appointed, which had not yet beene in the battaile, were comming to *Hyſmaell*: theſe he craftily laied in the Turkes way, commanding them vpon the approch of the enemie to flie, as if it had beene for feare. *Selymus* in the morning hauing deſcried theſe horſemen at hand, ſuppoſing them to be ſuch of his enemies as being ouertaken with the night were not able to follow the reſt of his armie, exhorted his ſouldiers couragiouſly to purſue their diſcouraged enemies. H I K L

The Perſians ſeeing the Turks, of purpoſe betooke themſelues to flight; and they ſuſpecting no deceit, followed faſt after them, vntill that about mid day being wearie of the purſute, and comming to a little riuer which was in their way, they there ſtaied to refreſh themſelues: and after they had taken a ſhort repaſt, againe purſued the Perſians, ſtill leauing behind them ſuch as were not able ſo faſt to follow, prickt forward with hope, that before night they ſhould ſurpriſe and ranſacke the rich citie of TAVRIS. The Turkiſh horſemen thus drawne farre from the footmen, the Perſian horſemen left in ambuſh, in the meane time ſet vpon the Turkes footmen, lying (as they ſuppoſed) in great ſecuritie, and with a great ſlaughter ouerthrew them: at which time they alſo tooke all *Selymus* his treaſure and great artillerie. Which ouerthrow was by M

ſpeedie

A ſpeedie poſts, about two a clocke in the night made knowne to *Selymus* (who now in his mind alreadie conceiued the ſacking of TAVRIS) and withall, that the fierce enemie was following him at the heeles. *Selymus* wonderfully abaſhed with this vnexpected newes, and the loſſe of his footmen, forthwith began to retire: which the ten thouſand Perſians which had before of purpoſe fled, perceiuing, now turning themſelues vpon the retiring Turks, charged them hardly: ſo *Selymus* encloſed both before and behind by his enemies, receiued a great ouerthrow. And the Turks thus hardly beſet and almoſt deſpairing of their liues, & hauing loſt their enſignes, brake out ſidewaies betwixt their enemies and fled. *Selymus* ſeeing all deſperat and forlorne, betooke himſelfe to flight alſo with the reſt: and paſſing the riuer Euphrates, brake downe the bridge which he had but a little before repaired, for feare the Perſians ſhould further purſue him; and
B with much trouble and no leſſe danger comming at length to AMASIA, aſſembled thither the reliques of his diſcomfited armie. Such of the Turkes as remained behind, and were not able in flight to keepe way with the reſt, were all ſlaine by the Perſians.

The Genoway authour thus concludeth his Hiſtorie, That the Perſian king did not more reioyce at this victorie, than did he himſelfe for the ouerthrow of the Turkes, hoping in that their ſo great a confuſion, to free himſelfe of his long and miſerable thraldome, & to find a way vnto his natiue country and parents: as afterwards he did, for flying firſt to TRAPEZONDE and there taking paſſage into EVROPE, he came to HADRIANOPLE, from whence he trauelled by land on foot to SALONICA, & there chancing vpon certain ſhips of Chriſtian merchants which had brought corne thither, he was by them tranſported into the iſland of CHIOS; from whence
C he ioyfull returned to GENVA his natiue countrey, after he had amongſt the Turks endured ten yeares captiuitie: moſt part wherof he liued as a page in old *Baiazet* his priuie chamber, and the reſt as a ſouldier of the court in the raigne of *Selymus*; and therefore well acquainted with the faſhion of the Turkes court, and manners of that barbarous nation.

Now ſhall it not (as I hope) be much from our purpoſe, here with *Iouius* a little to digreſſe, in comparing theſe two great princes *Hyſmael* and *Selymus* togither; who in that time had filled the world with the glorie of their fame: that wearied with bloudie broiles, and the wonderfull chances of warre, we may a little repoſe our ſelues with matter of a milder vaine, neither vnpleaſant nor vnprofitable.

Selymus and Hyſmael compared togither.

D Theſe two mightie princes, as they were for royall diſcent, ſtrength of bodie, courage of mind, riches, and power, equall, and had therby obtained like fame and renowne: ſo in conditions and qualities of mind, and martiall diſcipline, they much differed. Firſt of all (beſide the mutuall hatred of the one nation againſt the other, deliuered as it were by ſucceſſion from their grandfathers and fathers) theſe two princes, and ſo likewiſe their ſubiects alſo, were at great ods about an idle queſtion of their vaine ſuperſtition, the one preferring & honouring *Ebubekir*, *Homaris*, and *Ottoman*, as the moſt true and rightfull ſucceſſours of their great prophet *Mahomet*: the other with no leſſe deuotion honouring *Haly*, and deteſting the three former; differing otherwiſe in few or no points of their moſt fond ſuperſtition: yet did they vnder the colour and zeale of their religion (as they would haue it) both pretend iuſt cauſes of warre, although their euill
E diſſembled ambitious deſires, plainly declared vnto the world, that they both ſhot at one and the ſame marke, *viz.* By confirming their power & ſtrength to extend the bounds of their great empires. For *Hyſmael* of purpoſe affected the fame and glorie of *Darius* and *Xerxes*, the auncient Perſian kings; who hauing ſubdued ASIA, with great boldneſſe paſſed ouer into EVROPE: and *Selymus*, the greatneſſe of *Alexander* of MACEDON, who ſubuerted the Perſian empire. Which their aſpiring thoughts, masking vnder the vaile of zeale towards their religion, ſeemed not altogither vaine, fortune with like indifferencie immoderately fauouring their bold ambitious and endleſſe deſires. But in *Hyſmael* appeared ſuch a wonderfull deuotion and grauitie, that his haughtie thoughts were with the reuerend maieſtie therof couered: wheras in *Selymus*, his inhumane crueltie did blot and obſcure all his other princely vertues: for he with reward and puniſhment retained the maieſtie of his empire, but with greater fame of ſeueritie than bountie.

Hyſmaell maieſticall.

F Becauſe it was expedient in the exact diſcipline of that ſeruile gouernment, whereof the greateſt ſtrength of the *Othoman* empire conſiſteth, to vſe all rigor and ſeueritie: Otherwiſe then it ſtood with the ſtate of *Hyſmaell*, who leuied alwaies his armies of his nobilitie and men free borne, with whom temperat iuſtice, ciuile courteſie, and popular clemencie, are of greateſt force, to win their fidelitie, faith, and loyaltie: for that there is no man well born, which feareth not more the

blemiſh

blemiſh of infamie than the heauineſſe of puniſhment: ſo that it was not to be maruelled, if *Hyſmaell* by ſuch honourable vertues did mightily defend the glorie of his maieſtie and renowme. G
Vnto theſe his rare vertues, was alſo ioyned a comelineſſe of face (the faireſt gift of nature) well beſeeming ſo great a monarch: for he was well coloured, quicke eyed, yellowbearded, and that which amongſt the Perſians is accounted the ſigne of auncient nobilitie, hooked noſed; and was withall exceeding eloquent: By which good gifts, he wonderfully woon vnto himſelfe both the eyes and hearts of ſuch as beheld him. But in *Selymus* his ſterne countenance, his fierce and piercing eies, his Tartar-like pale colour, his long muſtachoes on his vpper lip, like briſtles, frild back to his neck, with his beard cut cloſe to his chin, did ſo expreſſe his martiall diſpoſition and inexorable nature, that he ſeemed to the beholders, to haue nothing in him but miſchiefe and cruelties. Which diuerſitie of countenances was alſo accompanied with no leſſe diuerſitie of affecti- H
ons, and ſo conſequently with farre vnlike manner of gouernment. For *Hyſmaell* was of nature courteous and affable, eaſie to be ſeene and ſpoken withall, doing nothing that beſeemed his regall function, but in the ſight of all men: His manner was to dine openly in the companie of his nobilitie, delighting much in hauking and hunting, accompanied with his noble men, and the embaſſadours of forraine princes: He would oftentimes run, leape, and proue maſteries with his chiefe courtiers, being himſelfe a moſt excellent horſeman and cunning archer: In his exerciſes he was ſo popular, that he would not ſticke openly to bare himſelfe and ſwim in his princely bathes: his wiues, the beautifull daughters of his nobilitie or neighbour princes, ladies of great chaſtitie, he neither loathed nor diuorced; after the auncient manner of the Perſian kings, who alwaies vſed moſt tenderly to loue and cheriſh their wiues, doing them all the honour poſſible I
in court, as partakers of all their fortune; and carried them, their children, nurſes, and richeſt furniture into their fartheſt warres, to their great trouble and charge, by the preſence of ſo deere pledges the more to encourage their minds in time of battell. Whereas *Selymus* contrariewiſe did all things in ſecret, eating his meat alone without any company, attended vpon with his pages and eunuches onely, and ſatisfying natures want with ſome one ſimple diſh of meat: Hee ſeldome went abroad but to the church, vpon the friday the Turkes chiefe Saboth; and then ſo beſet with his pentioners and other ſouldiers of the court, that although he vſed to ride alone mounted vpon ſome couragious horſe, yet was it a hard matter by face to know him amongſt ſo many armed men, who with great pride and inſolencie kept backe the beholders: Hee was ſeldome ſeene abroad in the citie, chuſing rather for his recreation to paſſe ouer in his gallie into K
Asia, and there alongſt the ſea coaſt to take the ayre: His wiues he would not ſuffer to come to court, neither vſed their companie but for procreation ſake, and that (as was thought) without any great good countenance or familiaritie; for that he being not greatly giuen to women, but more delighted with vnnaturall pleaſure, thought a mans bodie & mind to be not a little weakned with the allurements of women; wherefore he ſeldome reſorted to the cloiſter of choiſe paragons in the middeſt of Constantinople, ſhut in on euerie ſide with high and blind wals. Thoſe daintie pieces, either taken from their Chriſtian parents, or by chance ſurpriſed by pirats, are there moſt curiouſly kept by auncient matrons and old eunuches, by whom they are with all diligence inſtructed in the principles of the Mahometane law, and to reade the Arabian L
tongue, and withall, cunningly and comely to ſing, play, dance, and ſow: But *Selymus* of all others vſed ſeldomeſt to ſee theſe allurements, as a man not greatly delighted with women, or deſirous of many (and oftentimes vnfortunat) children; hauing but one ſonne *(Solyman)* by the daughter of *Muhamet* a Tartar king, who afterwards by the ſufferance of God, prooued a great plague to the Chriſtian commonweale. Such ſpare time as he had from his ſerious and waighty affaires, hee vſed to ſpend in walking in his gardens with ſome of his Baſſaes or other great courtiers; and in beholding & noting the noble mens children there ſporting themſelues, would diſcourſe and conſult of many things of great importance. Some houres he would ſpend in the bathes, and in reading the hiſtories of his auncеſtors and other forraine princes: imitating therin his grandfather *Mahomet* the Great, who cauſed almoſt all the hiſtories of the famous princes M
of the world to be tranſlated into the Turkiſh language, and their liuely counterfeits to be with cunning hand drawn, that by their worthy examples he might be the more enflamed to extend his fame and glorie. He would many times ſcoffe at the great buſineſſe of his father *Baiazet*, who (as he ſaid) was ſo drowned in the ſtudie of *Auerrois* (determining nothing certainly of the nature of the ſoule) and the motions of the heauens, that he deſired rather the name of a ſharpe diſputer

Selymus tyrannicall.

Hyſmaell courteous.

Selymus churliſh.

A disputer amongst the idle professors of Philosophie, than of a renowned chiefetaine amongst his valiant souldiors and men of war.

One of the Persian embassadors finding him pleasantly disposed, demanded of him why he did not weare his beard long, as his father *Baiazet* and other great princes of that age had done, therby to seeme vnto their subiects of greater maiestie: to whom he answered, That he liked not to carrie about with him such an vnnecessarie handfull, whereby his Bassaes might at their pleasure lead him vp and downe the court, as they had done his father: Noting therby, that *Baiazet* whilest he yet liued, had beene too much ouerruled by the Bassaes; which he could by no meanes endure, following no mans aduise but his owne in whatsoeuer he tooke in hand.

B But to come vnto the Persians themselues, they in their wars had great disaduantage of the Turkes: for as they were strong in horsemen, so were they destitute of expert trained footmen, by whose only meanes the Turkes haue atchiued their greatest victories, and performed their greatest warres. Beside this, it was a great want in the Persians, that they had not the vse of guns, against whose furie no sufficient resistance can be made, or force of man opposed: as appeared by the lamentable example of *Vsun-Cassanes* at ARTENGA, and now of *Hysmaell* in the Calderan fields; whose victorious armies of horsmen were in both places put to the worse by the terrour and violence of the Turkes artillerie. For the naked Turkish horseman is not to be compared with the Persian man at armes; who comes into the field armed with a strong cuiras, a sure headpiece, and a good targuet: whereas the Turkish Europeian horsemen, altogether naked, C vse onely a square or crooked buckler, wherewith they doe scarcely couer themselues: and the Asian horsmen, bucklers made of soft reeds, wouud round, and couered with some kind of silk. The Persian horsemen also, wearing their pouldrons and gauntlets, and bearing staues of good ash, armed at both ends, fight with them as occasion serueth at the halfe staffe, after the maner of the Numidians, and with doubling and redoubling their often thrusts from on high, do easily wound or kill the vnarmed Turks, with their horses: whereas the Turkish horsemen, after the manner of the Græcians, couching their staues in their rests, doe at the first course most commonly breake the same, being made of light and brittle firre, and so presently come to their scimitars, or horsemens maces, being in all other things far inferiour to the Persian man at armes. As for the Turkish archers on horsebacke, they are in no respect to be compared with the Persi-D ans; who well mounted and surely armed, and vsing both greater and stronger bowes, shoot more deadly arrows, & so make small account of the Turks. So that all things well considered, the Persian armie, deuoted to their king aswell for the great and firme opinion conceiued of his high courage and diuine spirit, as for that they were to him by faith obliged; although it was in number farre inferiour, yet had it been of the Turks inuincible, if it had not been ouerwhelmed by the cruell, cowardly, and murthering artillerie and wonderfull multitude of men. The cause why *Hysmaell* out of so many great and large prouinces then vnder his obeisance (able in auncient times with their multitude to couer the face of the earth, and to drinke the riuers drie) brought now so small an armie against the Turkish emperour, breaking into the heart of ARMENIA, was for that *Hysmaell* to win the hearts of the people by bountie, had remitted a great E part of his customes and tributes, so as then stood best with his policie, hauing but lately aspired vnto the kingdome, and thrust downe his neere kinsmen, the posteritie of *Vsun-Cassan* and *Iacup*, the rightfull inheritours thereof: so that his cofers being emptie, and wanting money, the sinews of warre, he was not able to raise so great an armie as otherwise he might out of those populous kingdomes and countries, yeelding plentifully all things necessarie for the vse of man. Wheras with *Selymus* it was far otherwise: whose horsemen, footmen, captaines, canoniers, both at sea and land, officers of peace and wars, receiued their daily wages and monthly paies in readie money, of his treasurers and paymasters: for defraying of which charge he neuer wanted coyne, hauing an inestimable masse of money alwaies in store in the seuen towers at CONSTANTINOPLE: and his yearely tributs and reuenewes still exceeding all his charges by F a fourth part. The strength of the Persian king consisted in three kind of souldiors: the first were they which were accounted soldiors of the court: the second, such as were by custome and dutie bound to serue him in his wars: and the third, such as were sent vnto him from the princes his neighbours and confederates. Those which were accounted souldiors of his court, had their certaine stipends, and were altogether maintained of the kings charge; of whom according to the old custome of the Persian kings, they at certaine times receiue armour, horses, apparrell, tents,

The Persians better horsemen than the Turke.

The cause why Hysmaell came with so small an armie against Selymus.

and wages, euery one as he is in place and degree. And being attended vpon with a gallant and strong garrison of these, he maintaineth the maiestie of his court, especially when he rideth in prograce. The nobilitie and ancient gentlemen of his countrey, who hold lands and possessions discended vnto them from their ancestors, or holden by the gift of the king, are sent for in time of warres, and are of dutie bound to performe such like seruice as the nobilitie and gentlemen of ITALIE, FRAVNCE, and SPAINE do vnto their soueraignes: these hardly amount to the number of twentie thousand, wherof it is well if the third part come well armed; the rest content themselues with headpieces and iacks, and vse for their weapons either horsmens staues or bowes, which the can most cunningly handle, discharging their arrowes very neere vnto that they aime at, either forward or backward. They which come vnto him from forreine princes, confederat or tributarie, are commonly sent from the kings and princes of IBERIA, ALBANIA, and the countries bordering vpon MEDIA and ARMENIA; who being halfe Christians, beare a mortall hatred against the Turks. *Hysmaell* the Persian king had then vnder his dominion these great and famous countries, ARMENIA the greater, SVLTHANIA, PERSIA, ASSYRIA, MESOPOTAMIA, MEDIA, and PARTIA: whereof ARMENIA is the chiefest, famous for the great citie TAVRIS, called in ancient time ECBATHANA: this countrie yeeldeth vnto the Persian king his best footmen; but his choice horsemen come from out of PERSIA, and especially from SCYRAS, called of old CYRIPOLIS: next vnto them are from ASSYIA, the chiefe citie whereof is BAGADAT, called in ancient time BABYLON. The Medes and Parthians are of all others accounted the best archers next vnto the Scythians.

The countries subiect to Hysmaell.

1515 But now to returne againe from whence we haue a little too farre stayed. *Selymus* after his great expedition against *Hysmaell*, wintering at AMASIA, by his lieutenants and captaines in EVROPE and ASIA, raised such a power, that with the first of the Spring he entred againe into the confines of the Persian kingdome, with a greater armie than before, and that somewhat sooner than the extreame cold of that part of ARMENIA (subiect to the snowie mountaine TAVRVS) would either well suffer, or that the enemie thought it had been possible for him to haue so done. There was vpon the further side of the riuer Euphrates a strong towne called CIAMASSVM, situate a little aboue that place where the riuer Melas (much celebrated by the Græcian Poets) falleth into the riuer Euphrates: which towne for the commodious situation thereof, standeth vpon the first entrance of the passage into ARMENIA the great, the Persians had furnished with a strong garrison: this towne *Selymus* thought good in any case to be master of, by taking whereof, and of some other holds thereabout, he should open a faire way for himselfe into his enemies countrie. *Hysmaell* at the same time was gone with all his power against the Hyrcanians, Bactrians, & other sauage people dwelling neere vnto the Caspian sea, then vp in arms against him: which wished opportunitie *Selymus* taking, and making a bridge ouer the riuer Euphrates, passed ouer with his armie, came before the towne, and laid hard siege to the same before his enemies were well aware of his comming. The Turks at their first approch compassing the citie round with their huge multitude of harquebusiers and archers, draue the defendants from the wals; and still without rest or intermission bringing on fresh men, as *Selymus* had before taken order, and others at the same time breaking open the gates, and in diuers places scaling the wals, enforced the defendants to forsake their standings, and to retire themselues into the market place; where although they were before sore spent with labour and wounds, yet did they there with wonderfull courage a great while notably withstand the multitude of their enemies still swarming in, and in defence of their countrie, like resolute men, fought it out vnto the last man.

Selymus with a new armie entreth into Armenia.

Selymus hauing taken and ransacked CIAMASSVM, with two other small castles which the defendants had for feare before abandoned, although he was with a deadly hatred & ambitious desire prickt forward against *Hysmaell*, and thirsted after nothing more than the subuersion of the Persian kingdome: yet he thought it not good further to enter into ARMENIA, before he had out of those forrests and mountaines chased the mountaine king *Aladeules*, who but the yeare before had most trecherously done him and his armie so many iniuries in his return from the Persian expedition. For *Aladeules* not without cause fearing his owne estate, as soone as he vnderstood that *Selymus* had againe taken the field, and that he was come to the riuer Euphrates, and so to CIAMASSVM, speedily assembling his forces, had in short time raised a great armie for the defence of himselfe and his kingdome: purposing that if *Selymus* should go farther

into

A into ARMENIA, then after his wonted maner to looke on as a beholder, and by the euent of the war to take occasion of prey, and by shutting vp the passages of his countrie, at his pleasure to rob and spoile the Turks in their returne. Wherfore *Selymus* leauing a garrison at CIAMASSVM, retired backe againe ouer the riuer Euphrates vnto the mountaine ANTITAVRVS, where it was reported that his enemies lay.

This *Aladeules* (as is aforesaid) ruled ouer the rude and sauage mountaine people, inhabiting the great mountaines TAVRVS and ANTITAVRVS: which mountaines as it were linked together one to another, run from the mountaines called SCODRISCI, and the borders of CAPADOCIA, with a perpetual rising, through many large prouinces and countries vnto the great *Aladeules his kingdome.*

B mountaine AMANVS, and vttermost bounds of CILICIA. The people of this countrie were by nature fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing, than for the want of all thing; who as men dwelling in a rough and bare countrie, could little or nothing profit by husbandrie: yet in such places as would beare any pasture, they had their breed of horses and cammels, and did with all diligence vse grasing; but the greatest part of their liuing consisted in hunting and stealing. These are supposed to haue had their beginning from the Galatians, Capadocians, Armenians, and the old inhabitants of ASIA the lesse, which by long and continuall wars in former ages, and especially by the lamentable irruption of the Scythians, were enforced to forsake their cities and dwellings, and for safegard of their liues to flie into those rough and desolate mountaines. These distressed people searching euery hill and euery dale, and following the opportu-

C nitie of the riuers and fountaines, but especially the mildest temperature of the aire, and fauorable aspect of the Sunne, built in many places poore countrie villages, and afterwards diuers faire townes: where in processe of time they growing to better estate, there rise vp some amongst them, which ouerruling the rest, ambitiously tooke vpon them the name of kings; desiring to be had in regard, and to be feared of their neighbours, although they commaunded but ouer rough woods and ragged rockes. Neere vnto the confines of *Aladeules* kingdome is the citie ORPHA, which many suppose to haue been the famous citie EDESSA, because that as yet there remaineth certaine monuments of *Baldwin* in Latine letters; who after his brother *Godfrey* was possessed of HIERVSALEM, is reported to haue taken EDESSA, and there raigned. Nor far from thence is also the auncient citie AMYDA, which at this day is called CARAMIDA, ioyning

D vpon MESOPOTAMIA: which countrey lying betweene the two great riuers Euphrates and Tigris, is now called DIARBECHA. The chiefe citie of *Aladeules* kingdome was MARAS, so called as may be thought of the faire riuer Marsias running through it out of the mountaine CÆLENE, taking the name of *Marsias*, ouercome by *Apollo*, and made famous by the verses many learned Poets. But *Aladeules*, after he saw that *Selymus* with his armie was entered into the frontires of his kingdome, and drawing neere vnto him, brought downe all his horsmen, in number about fifteene thousand, from the mountaines into a faire large valley; commanding his footmen, whereof he had great store, to keepe the mountaines on the right hand and the left: where hauing the high rockie mountains and strait passages, much for his aduantage, he determined in that place which he had long before chosen and fortified, to expect the comming

E of his enemies. *Selymus* considering the disaduantage of the place, although he perceiued the victorie could not without great losse of his men be obtained; and before persuaded that his enemies would neuer haue willingly been drawne to battaile: yet made no doubt to aduenture his fortune, presuming vpon the multitude and strenght of his armie. Wherefore he commaunded *Sinan Bassa* the Eunuch (whom hee had made generall of the Europeian horsemen in stead of *Casan Bassa* before slaine) with a square battell to charge the enemie afront, for as much as the place would not suffer him to range his battell in length, nor to vse any wings: and he himselfe with his Ianizaries and Asian horsemen followed after in the rereward. Neither were the souldiors of *Aladeules* vnmindfull of themselues or of their king, who valiantly fought in the head of the battell: but hauing spent their arrowes, did couragiously receiue the furious assault of the *Selymus assaileth Aladeules.*

F Turkes: and standing close to them, still keeping the aduantage of the ground, did with such force repulse them, that the old beaten souldiors of the Turkes, seemed little or nothing to preuaile either with their multitude or valour: for the Turkes by reason of the straightnesse of the place, could not inclose them on either side, and were beside grieuously wounded by *Aladeules* footmen, who standing vpon the sides of the hils with their darts and arrowes from aboue, ouerwhelmed the Turks in the valley. When *Selymus* saw that *Aladeules*, contrarie, to his

expectation made ſtrong reſiſtance, and valiantly withſtood his forces; he drew certaine companies of harquebuſiers out of his own ſquadrons, and ſent them to relieue their fellowes: and at the ſame inſtant commanded the Ianizaries for all the danger to mount the hill. Then the mountaine people terrified with the ſtrangenes of the ſhot, and not able to abide the force thereof, by and by turned their backs, and by knowne waies fled into their ſure haunts in the mountaines and woods faſt by. Yet the greateſt ſlaughter fell amongſt theſe footmen, who when they ſaw the horſemen put to flight, and the Ianizaries comming vp the hils againſt them, did with much difficultie, by ſteepe and broken waies clamber vp the high mountaines: as oftentimes it falleth out, that both the ſtrength of mens legs and other their wonted forces faile them moſt, when ſurpriſed and ouercome with ſudden feare, they deſire to run and flie faſteſt. The Turkes hauing them in chaſe, had the killing of them vntill the going downe of the Sunne. The horſemen with the king, vpon their ſwift horſes, well acquainted with thoſe rockes and rough waies, with little loſſe retired themſelues into the further and ſtronger places of the mountaines.

Aladeules flieth into the mountaines.

Aladeules after this diſcomfiture, finding himſelfe in all things farre inferiour to his enemie, thought it beſt by protracting the war, to wearie him out: wherefore as the Turks purſued him, and burnt the poore countrey cottages ſtanding in their way, he ſtill fled from mountaine to mountaine, neuer offering battell or ſhewing himſelfe, but in places of great aduantage. And therefore *Selymus* fearing leaſt in that barren rough and vnknowne countrie, he ſhould either want vittaile or by ſome other meanes intrapped, if he ſhould ſtill with his whole armie follow after his ſtrong enemies; vpon the ſeuenth day left off to purſue them any farther. And encamping himſelfe in the moſt conuenient place of that countrie, ſent *Sinan Baſſa* with his light horſemen, who carrying with them certaine daies victuals, ſhould ſtill at the heeles follow the enemie, and with all ſpeed and pollicie poſſible, hunt after the king himſelfe. *Selymus* in the meane time curiouſly inquiring of the countrey captiues after the ſtrength of *Aladeules*, and what means he had to maintaine the war: found, that he had taken with him his beſt men both horſe and foot; and had commanded the countrie people to forſake the villages, of purpoſe to leaue all deſolat to the enemie: and hauing ſurely intrenched himſelfe vpon a certaine ſtrong rocke (whither he had before conuaied great ſtore of prouiſion) was reſolued not to giue battell vnto his enemies, vntil he had drawn them into the impregnable ſtraits of the mountains, where their hugie multitude ſhould little auaile them, but to increaſe their owne loſſe. Another cauſe there was alſo (as they ſaid) for that he feared to be betraied by *Alis Beg* his kinſman, Generall of his horſemen; who firſt fled in the late battell: whoſe vnfaithfulneſſe and hatred might ſeeme to proceed of a iuſt ground, for that *Aladeules* had in former time treacherouſly murthered his father, vpon a iealous ſuſpition of his aſpiring to the kingdome.

Selymus vnderſtanding all this, cauſed the captiues to haue their yrons ſtruck off, and in ſteed of their giues lading them with gifts and promiſes, ſent them to *Alis Beg* with ſecret letters and rewards, to perſuade him in ſo fit a time to reuenge his fathers death; which thing if he would performe by ſome notable exploit vpon *Aladeules*, he ſhould both purchaſe vnto himſelfe great credit with *Selymus*, and alſo the kingdome. Theſe homely meſſengers according as was giuen them in charge, hauing imparted the matter to *Sinan Baſſa*, within few daies had ſo wrought, that *Alis Beg* (whom the deſire of a kingdome togither with *Selimus* his rewards prickt forward to ſeeke reuenge) was eaſily drawne to ioine hands with *Selymus*. And when he could no other way hurt *Aladeules*, who miſtruſting all things, warily looked vnto himſelfe; he found the means to go ouer to *Sinan Baſſa*, carrying after him a great part of *Aladeules* his beſt horſemen: by whoſe meanes the reſt alſo which remained being with rewards corrupted, one companie after another came at laſt all ouer vnto the Baſſa. *Aladeules* circumuented with this vnexpected treacherie, which neuer before thought it poſſible that his men ſhould all ſo ſuddenly haue forſaken him and reuolted vnto the Turks; was now glad to repoſe all his hope in ſecret flight. But *Sinan Baſſa* and *Alis Beg*, hardly purſuing him as he fled thorough the mountaines, hiding himſelfe in rockes and the thicke woods, and laſt drew him out of a caue, being betraied by the countrie peaſants. *Aladeules* being brought to *Selymus*, was within a few daies after put to death, and his head in great deriſion afterwards caried about through all Asia the leſſe: and afterward by way of barbarous oſtentation, ſent by *Selymus* to the Senate of Venice, as a loathſome teſtimonie of his victorie. *Aladeules* thus dead, *Selymus* reduced all his kingdome into the forme of a prouince, which he diuided into three parts; and after the manner of the Turkiſh gouernment, appointed

Aladeules taken and brought to Selymus, is put to death.

A pointed to euery part a Sanzacke: yet ſo, that *Alis Beg* ſhould be chiefe ouer the reſt, with ſuch ſoueraignetie as that he wanted nothing of a king but the name only. And for the better gouernment of all things in that new gained kingdome, he left *Sinan Baſſa* there all the reſt of that ſummer; with commaundment, that after he had ſet all things in good order, he ſhould winter at ICONIVM: and he himſelfe with a ſmall traine returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, for he had heard, that whileſt he was buſied in his wars againſt *Hyſmaell* and *Aladeules* in ARMENIA, that the Hungarians had made diuers incurſions into SERVIA, and ſpoiled that countrie. Wherefore for feare of loſing SAMANDRIA (which ſtanding neere to Danubius, for the conuenient ſituation thereof is reputed the bulwarke of SERVIA and THRACIA) he ſent *Ionuſes Baſſa* then
B gouernor of BOSNA with eight thouſand horſemen, who paſſing the riuer Sauus entred into *Selymus inuadeth Hungarie.*
CROATIA as far as CATINVM: and at the ſame time tranſported another armie ouer Danubius into HVNGARIE, to the intent that the Hungarians at one inſtant beſet with double danger, ſhould be inforced to feare their owne ſtate; and with all to ſhew vnto the world, of what ſtrength and power the *Othoman* emperours were. Deeming it to concerne much, both for the preſent, and the time to come, to the daunting of the Chriſtians; if he ſhould by his happie attempts make it knowne, that he could at once eaſily and readily maintaine ſo many and ſo puiſſant armies, and wage ſo great wars in diuers parts of the world, and ſo far diſtant one from another.

In the end of the yeare, when he had thus with double inuaſion repreſſed the Hungarians, he
C ſpent the Winter following at HADRIANOPLE and CONSTANTINOPLE, in making of greater preparation for war than euer he had before from the beginning of his raigne. For he was aduertiſed, that the great monarches of the North his neighbours, namely *Maximilian* the emperour, *Vladiſlaus* king of HVNGARIE, and *Sigiſmundus* king of POLONIA, with the princes of GERMANIE, had combined themſelues together to make warre vpon him. But after he had learned by his ſure intelligencers (whom he had with great charge ſent into all parts of EVROPE, diligently to obſerue what was done in the courts of thoſe great princes) that all the great meetings of the Chriſtian princes proued nothing but glorious words and ſumpteous banquets; he being rid of that vaine feare (God ſo appointing) turned himſelfe and all thoſe his wonderfull preparations againe toward the Eaſt, to the great quiet of Chriſtendome in generall.

D Yet leaſt happily in the abſence of himſelfe and of his armies, the Chriſtian princes might take occaſion to inuade his dominions, he ſtrengthened the frontires of his empire with moſt ſtrong garriſons: and left his ſonne *Solymon* (who afterward proued the great ſcourge of Chriſtendome) at HADRIANOPLE with a ſtrong power, and *Pyrrhus Baſſa* his tutor (a man of great wiſedome and gouernment) at CONSTANTINOPLE. This great Baſſa was of CILICIA, a natiue Turke borne, which was a thing accounted ſtrange, foraſmuch as the great Baſſaes were alwaies choſen of the Chriſtian bloud. After that, he ſent *Cherſeogles* (whom of all others he moſt truſted) with his armie in BYTHINIA, and made *Zafferus* an Eunuch Admirall of his nauie, which he had but a little before built, and with a wonderfull labour and charge rigged forth. Then ſtaying a few daies at CONSTANTINOPLE to ſee the young ſouldiors, but then choſing Ianizaries; 1516 *Selymus goeth to Iconium.*
E he departed thence and went to his old armie, lying with *Sinan Baſſa* at ICONIAM, purpoſing to haue againe inuaded the Perſian.

When he was come thither, he vnderſtood that *Campſon Gaurus* Sultan of ÆGYPT (with a great armie leuied in ÆGYPT and IVDEA) was come into SYRIA, giuing it out that he would aid the Perſian king his confederat, and with all hoſtilitie enter into CILICIA, if *Selymus* ſhould farther proceed to inuade *Hyſmaell* the Sophi his friend and allie. *Selymus* perplexed with theſe news, & fearing that if he ſhould once paſſe ouer the riuer Euphrates, *Campſon* lying ſo neere in readines, ſhould forthwith breake in at his backe into ASIA by the mountaine AMANVS, and ſo indanger that part of his dominion, ſtaied at ICONIVM, & ſent his embaſſadors with great preſents to *Campſon* to pacifie him, if it might be. The chiefe men in this embaſſage were the Cade-
F leſcher, a man of great account amongſt the Turks, and of them exceedingly reuerenced for the opinion they had of his great knowledge in the Mahometan ſuperſtition, who afterwards wrot the Commentaries of this war; and *Iachis* a great captaine. The ſcope of whoſe embaſſage was, to entreat *Champſon*, that he would not hinder or diſturbe *Selymus* from making war vpon the Perſian king; who had ſo often and ſo forcibly inuaded his dominions in ASIA, and by bringing in a new forme of ſuperſtition, had corrupted and altered the moſt certaine grounds of the

Mahometane religion. And if they found him resolutly set downe and not to be by any condi- G
ons remoued, then with all possible diligence to learne his strength and farther designes, so far as by any meanes they could, and with all speed to make their returne.

The causes mooving Campson to fall out with Selymus.

But *Campson* now far spent with age, and liuing in the height of worldly blisse, although he knew it fitter for him at those yeres to giue himselfe to ease & quietnesse, than to thrust himselfe into wars and other princes quarrels; yet thought this expedition to be for many causes both good and necessarie. First, he deadly hated the man for his inhumane crueltie, and therefore could neuer be persuaded to renew the league with him which he had in former time made with his father *Baiazet*: Besides that, he desired to abate and represse his audacious insolencie, grown alreadie by his prosperous successe beyond the bounds of reason: for *Selymus* hauing taken TAVRIS, ouerthrowne the Persians, and slaine *Aladeules*, began now to seeme terrible to all H
the princes that bordered vpon him; and there were many which said he was another *Alexander*, who whilest other princes sate still as men a sleepe, did in the meane time plot in his victorious mind, the monarchie of the whole world. But aboue all things, the feare of the losing of SYRIA, and consequently the losse of all his kingdome (the quickest motiue for stirring vp of the suspitious minds of the greatest princes) most enforced *Campson* to take in hand this war: For as much as the goodly kingdomes of ÆGYPT, IVDEA, and SYRIA, oppressed with the intollerable gouernment of the proud Mamalukes, and therefore lesse faithfull to the Ægyptian kings, were in daunger to reuolt to the Turks, if the Persians should by any mischance or fortune of war be of the Turkes vanquished. For which cause *Campson* in the beginning of this war, so- I
licited by the Persian embassadors, had made a firme league and confederation with *Hysmaell*: and also moued with the miserie of the wofull young prince *Aladin* the sonne of *Achomates*, was in mind persuaded, that the cruel Turkish tyrant might by his and the Persian kings forces, easily be thrust out of his empire in ASIA and EVROPE. For *Aladin*, who after the death of *Achomates* his father fled to *Campson* the Sultan of ÆGYPT (as is before declared) had liued three yeares as a forlorne and distressed prince in the Ægytian court, and by all meanes he could deuise incited the Mamalukes to reuenge the iniuries and crueltie of his vncle *Selymus*. The eldest sonne also of the late king *Aladeules*, a goodly young prince, hauing at once lost his father, his kingdome, and whatsoeuer he held else, was in good time fled to the Ægyptian king; and had so filled the minds of all men with the indignation and detestation of *Selymus* his exceeding cru- K
eltie, that the princes of the Mamalukes of their owne accord came to *Campson*, humbly beseeching him to take vpon him so iust a warre: and if by reason of his great yeares he should think himselfe vnable to endure the trauell thereof, it would then please him yet to giue them leaue of themselues to take the matter in hand, for the repressing of the insolencie of that great and wicked tyrant.

The order of the Mamalukes.

These Mamalukes farre excelled the Turkes, not onely in strength of bodie, skilfull riding, and goodly armour, but also in courage and wealth. Beside that, they had not forgotten with what small power they had vnder the leading of *Caitbeius* their great Sultan. ouerthrowne the Turkes great armies in CILICIA, first at ADENA, and afterward at TARSVS, where they tooke prisoners, *Mesites Palæologus* the great Bassa, and *Cherseogles*, *Baiazet* his sonne in law: by which L
victorie they grew into such a proud and vaine conceit of themselues, as if they had beene the only souldiours of the world, able of themselues to vanquish and ouercome whomsoeuer they should set vpon. These so valiant souldiours, were for the most part of the poore people called in auncient time *Getæ*, *Zinchi*, and *Bastarnæ*, borne neere vnto the Euxine sea and the fens of Mæotis, especially on that side where the riuer Corax falleth into the Euxine sea: which country is of later time called CIRCASSIA, of the people called CERCITÆ neere vnto CHOLCHIS. These miserable and wretched people, the Valachians, Podolians, Polonians, Roxolanes and Tartars dwelling by TAVRICA (puld from their mothers breasts, or by other violent meanes surprised) sold vnto merchants; who culling out the best for strength of bodie, or aptnesse of wit, conuaied them by sea to ALEXANDRIA, from whence they were continually sent to the great M
Sultan of ÆGYPT: and by his appointment were at CAIRE (after the old manner of that people) deliuered to masters of fence and such other teachers, who carefully instructed them, being shut vp in their schooles, in all manner of feats of actiuitie: where after they were become able to bend a strong bow, and taught cunningly to shoot, leape, run, vault, ride, and skilfully to vse all manner of weapons, they were then taken into pay, and receiued into the number of the

kings

A kings horſemen or Mamalukes: and ſuch of them as proued cowardly or vnapt, were made ſlaues vnto the reſt. So that they ſeeing all honour, credit, and preferment, laied vp in martiall proweſſe, did with all diligence and courage employ themſelues to militarie affaires: and therein ſo well profited, that oftentimes they which at the firſt were but bare and baſe ſlaues, of the meaneſt of the Mamalukes, by many degrees of ſeruice riſe at length to the higheſt degrees of honour. All theſe Mamalukes were the children of Chriſtian parents, from the time of their captiuitie inſtructed in the Mahometane ſuperſtition: for no man borne of a Mahometane father, or of a Iew, could be admitted into the number of the Mamaluke horſemen: which was ſo ſtraightly obſerued, that the honour of a Mamaluke horſeman neuer deſcended vnto the ſons
B of the Mamalukes, yet might they by law inherit their fathers lands, poſſeſſions, and goods: by which reaſon the ſonnes of the Sultans themſelues neuer ſucceeded their fathers in the kingdome. Hereby alſo it came to paſſe, that many Chriſtians of looſe life, or condemned for their notorious offences, flying thither, and abiuring the Chriſtian religion, and ſuffering themſelues to be circumciſed, being men meet for the warres, grew by degrees to great honour: as did *Tangarihardinus* the ſonne of a Spaniſh mariner, who by his forwardneſſe and induſtrie grew into ſuch credit and authoritie with *Campſon* the great Sultan, that almoſt all things were done by his aduice and counſell; & was diuers times by him employed in moſt honorable ſeruice, being ſent embaſſadour both to *Baiazet* the Turkiſh emperour, and to the ſtate of VENICE, about matters of great importance. Yet his impietie eſcaped not the hand of God, for at length by
C the enuie of the court he was brought into diſgrace, thruſt out of his place, and caſt into priſon, where he loaded with cold yron, moſt miſerably died. Neither was it to be maruelled if the Mamalukes were growne to that exceſſe of wealth, for as much as the Ægyptians and Syrians being miſerably by them oppreſſed, were not ſuffered to haue the vſe either of horſe or armour, neither admitted to any matters of counſell; but being impoueriſhed and brought low with heauie impoſitions and daily iniuries of the Mamalukes, gaue themſelues wholly to the trade of marchandiſe, husbandrie, and other mechanicall occupations: ouer whom the Mamalukes had power and commaund, as imperious maſters ouer their ſeruants, and would with greater inſolencie than is to be beleeued abuſe the poore countrey people, beating and ſpoiling them at their pleaſure, and not ſo contented, rauiſhing their wiues and daughters without re-
D dreſſe. The Ægyptians (a people in ancient time much renowned for their valour and proweſſe) were by theſe maſterfull ſlaues kept in this miſerable thraldome & ſlauerie about the ſpace of three hundred yeares. For after the declination of the Romaine empire, that rich countrey falling into the gouernment of the Conſtantinopolitane emperours, the Ægyptians ſoone wearie of the proud and auaritious ſoueraignetie of the Greekes, called in the Saraſins, by whoſe helpe they expulſed the Greekes, and after choſe the General of the Saraſins for their king, after whoſe name the Ægyptian kings were of long time called Caliphes, as they had of ancient time beene called by the names of *Pharo* and *Ptolomey*.

The imperious gouernment of the Mamalukes in Egypt, Iudea, and Syria.

The laſt of theſe Caliphes raigned at ſuch time as the Chriſtians vnder the leading of *Godfrey* and *Bohemund*, paſſing as conquerours through ASIA and SYRIA, erected the kingdome of
E HIERVSALEM. Hee being inuaded by *Almericus* ſixt king of HIERVSALEM, and finding himſelfe too weake, prayed aid of the Sultan of SYRIA, who ſent him *Sarraco*, a valiant captain, with a ſtrong power to aid him: but *Sarraco* no leſſe vnfaithfull than courageous trecherouſly ſlew the Caliphe, in whoſe aid he came, and tooke vpon himſelfe the kingdome. After *Sarraco* ſucceeded *Saladine* his brothers ſonne, who vtterly extinguiſhed the name and authoritie of the Caliphes in ÆGYPT, whom *Sarraco* had yet left as high prieſts. This *Saladine* oftentimes vanquiſhed the Chriſtian armies in SYRIA and IVDEA, and at length quite ouerthrew the kingdome of HIERVSALEM, as is in the former part of this hiſtorie to be ſeen. *Saladine* dying, left the kingdome of ÆGYPT to his brother, whoſe poſteritie ſucceſſiuely raigned of long time there, vntill the time of *Melechſala*. This *Melechſala* (laſt of the free borne kings, and of the po-
F ſteritie of *Saladine*) had great and mortall warres with the Chriſtians, wherein hauing loſt moſt of his beſt ſoldiers, & repoſing no great confidence in the Ægyptians, thought good to ſtrengthen himſelfe with a new kind of ſouldiers, meere ſlaues bought for money. For at that time the Tartars breaking into ARMENIA and CAPADOCIA, and ouerrunning the people called COMANI ioyning vpon CAPADOCIA, made generall ſpoile of that people, as of priſoners taken by law of armes. Of this baſe people, *Melechſala* for a little money bought a great multitude,

which

The beginning of the gouernment of the Mamalukes in Egypt.

which he tranſported into ÆGYPT, and furniſhed them with armes: by whoſe proweſſe he not G
onely defended the frontiers of his kingdome, but alſo beſiged *Lewes* the French king in his
trenches not farre from DAMIATA, called in ancient time HELIOPOLIS, or PELVSIVM,
and ſhortly after in plain battaile tooke him priſoner, as is long before declared. But in the pride
of this victorie, *Melechſala* was by the conſpiracie of theſe his new ſouldiers ſlaine: in whoſe
place they ſet vp one *Turqueminius*, a deſperat fellow of their owne companie, honouring him
with the title of the great Sultan of ÆGYPT. *Turqueminius* of a baſe ſlaue now become a great
monarch (after the manner of men) forgetting his old companions which had ſo highly pro-
moted him: and hauing them in great diſdaine, was by one of them (called *Clotho*) ſuddainely
ſlaine; for which fact he was by thoſe baſe ſouldiers, his companions, choſen Sultan in his place:
who for the ſhort time of his raigne did much for the confirming of that ſeruile monarchie: yet H
was he at length ſlaine alſo by *Bandocader*, ſometimes one of his fellow ſeruants, who alſo ſuc-
ceeded him in the kingdome. After him in long order ſucceeded many valiant men of the ſame
ſeruile ſtate and condition, whom for breuitie I wittingly paſſe ouer. Amongſt the reſt, *Caitbeius*
(of whom we haue before ſpoken in the life of *Baiazet*) was for wealth and martiall proweſſe
moſt famous; who according to the manner of his predeceſſours, did with greater bountie and
care maintaine that ſeruile gouernment, than any of them who had before him raigned in Æ-
GYPT: and was for his notable gouernment and noble acts iuſtly accounted amongſt the grea-
teſt princes of that age. After whoſe death great troubles aroſe in that ſeruile monarchie about
the ſucceſſion. Whereby the Mamalukes drawne into diuers factions, ſome ſeeking to preferre
one, and ſome another, had in foure yeares ſpace with ciuile warres ſore weakened their eſtate, I
and ſlaine diuers of their greateſt princes which had aſpired vnto that kingdome. For appea-
ſing of which miſcheefes, tending to the vtter ruine of their kingdome, the great courtiers and
cheefe men amongſt the Mamalukes with one conſent offered the kingdome to *Campſon Gaurus*
(or as the Turkes call him) *Canſaues Gauris*, of whom we now ſpeake, a man of great integritie
and courage, and altogether free from ambition. He, terrified with the dreadfull example of ſo
many kings whom he had ſeene in ſhort time miſerably ſlaine by the ambitious aſpiring of o-
ther proud competitors: when he was ſore againſt his will hoiſt vp vpon the ſhoulders of the
nobilitie and cheefe ſouldiers, and ſo carried into the court, as their manner was, began earneſt-
ly to refuſe the kingdome and to withſtand their choice, excuſing himſelfe as vnfit for ſo high
a place; and with teares ſtanding in his eyes, beſought the other great lords his friends, that they K
would forbeare to thruſt him, well contented with his priuat life, into that glorious place ſubiect
to ſo many dangers: and the rather, for that he neither had money to giue bountifully vnto the
ſouldiers of the court, as other the Ægyptian Sultans had accuſtomed; neither held that ſuffici-
encie and authoritie as was requiſit for repreſſing of ſuch violent and ſeditious tumults as were
too rife in that troubleſome time and confuſion of all things.

The nobilitie on the other ſide perſuaded him, That he would not vpon a fooliſh obſtinacie
or vaine modeſtie refuſe the offer of his preſent good fortune, but couragiouſly to take vpon
him the gouernment of the ſtate, now ſore ſhaken with ciuile diſcord, together with the regall
dignitie, which was with the generall good liking of all men ſo frankely offered vnto him. At L
laſt they all by ſolemne oath promiſed vnto him, That they would with all their power, policie,
and wealth, maintaine and defend the maieſtie of his ſtate; and that the men of war ſhould not
demaund their wonted largeſſe, before the ſame might by his receiuers and treaſurers be raiſed
of his cuſtomes and other reuenewes of the crowne. By which perſuaſions *Campſon* encoura-
ged, ſuffered himſelfe to be ſaluted Sultan, and ſo tooke vpon him the gouernment. Afterwards,
when he had giuen vnto the men of war ten millions of duckats, by the name of a largeſſe, and
by his moderat gouernment had cauſed men generally to haue his proweſſe & wiſedome in ad-
miration; he did with ſuch policie and dexteritie reforme the ſhaken ſtate of that kingdome, be-
fore rent in ſunder with ciuile warres, taking away by poiſon and other ſecret deuices ſome few,
the cheefe authors of ſedition, that for the ſpace of ſixteene yeares neither tumult nor noiſe of M
warre was at any time heard of in all SYRIA or ÆGYPT. Worthie vndoubtedly the name of
a moſt excellent and fortunat prince, if when he had by ſingular wiſedome and policie eſtabli-
ſhed the generall peace and proſperitie of his kingdome, he could haue there contented him-
ſelfe to haue liued in quiet, and in the winding vp of his life not raſhly haue thruſt himſelfe into
the dangerous quarrels of other princes.

The moderat and happy gouernment of Campſon.

The

A The Cadeleſcher and *Iachis* (*Selymus* his embaſſadours) departing from ICONIVM, came in few daies to *Campſon* the great Sultan, who then lay encamped neere vnto the riuer ORONTES, at this day called FARFAR. Theſe embaſſadours entertained by *Campſon* with greater bountie than courteſie, and ſhortly after their comming hauing audience in his pauilion; did with moſt temperat and calme ſpeech deliuer their embaſſage. To whom *Campſon* anſwered, That it was the ancient cuſtome of the Ægyptian Sultans (foraſmuch as they held the chiefe place in their religion) with all care and induſtrie to keepe the other Mahometane kings and people in peace and concord amongſt themſelues; whereof hee for his part had beene alwaies moſt deſirous: and was for no other purpoſe come with his armie into his prouince of SYRIA, than to perſuade *Selymus* to peace. Who if he would needs wilfully proceed in his intended warres a- *Campſon his anſwere to the embaſſadours of Selymus.*
B gainſt *Hyſmaell* the Perſian king, his friend and confederat, he would then do what ſhould ſtand with his honour and place, and not longer ſuffer all to go to wracke, for the vaine pleaſure and furie of one inſolent and ambitious man. He ſaid alſo, That he had of long time before ſeene into *Selymus* his inſatiable, fierce and troubleſome diſpoſition; who hauing moſt vnnaturally procured the death of his good father the old emperour *Baiazet*, and ſlaine his brethren, princes of great valour; ſeauen of his nephewes, princes of no ſmall hope; with many other of his beſt friends and faithfull counſellors; could make no end of his ambitious tyrannie. Wherefore they ſhould tell *Selymus*, that one and all the conditions of peace ſhould be, if he would from thenceforth deſiſt from inuading of *Hyſmaell*, and reſtore to *Aladeules* his ſonne, his fathers kingdome, which had of long beene vnder the defence & protection of the Ægyptian Sultans,
C as of right and reaſon he ought to doe: he ſhould in ſo doing beſide his fauour and friendſhip which might greatly ſtand him in ſteed, reape greater fame and glorie by an aſſured and honourable peace, than by doubtfull and dangerous warre.

The embaſſadours, although they knew right well that *Selymus* would not for any threats giue ouer his enterpriſe or lay downe armes; yet to the intent they might the ſooner be diſpatched, and ſo in time aduertiſe *Selymus* of the Sultans ſudden comming, ſeemed wonderfully to like of his motion for peace, and to giue good hope by their reaſonable perſuaſions to induce *Selymus* to like thereof. Foraſmuch as they were of his ſecret counſell, and meh able to doe much with him; whereby they truſted (as they would haue had the Sultan to beleeue) it would eaſily be brought to paſſe, that thoſe ſparkes might be quenched, which all things ſtan-
D ding vpright had not as yet kindled the fire of warre. So they being by *Campſon* rewarded, and hauing leaue to depart, trauelling day and night, returned to *Selymus*, who was then come to CÆSAREA.

Campſon alſo remouing from ORONTES, came into COMAGENA vnto the famous citie of ALEPPO, which citie is probably ſuppoſed to haue been built of the ruines of the ancient citie HIERAPOLIS, by *Alepius* the emperor *Iulianus* his lieutenant; who in that prouince did many notable matters, & called that new built citie after his owne name. It is ſituat neere vnto the riuer Singa, which riſiug out of the mountaine PIERIVS, with many turnings and windings runneth thorough Comagena, and being but a ſmall riuer, falleth at length into the riuer Euphrates. This
E citie *Hyalon* king of the Tartars tooke and burnt, at ſuch time as the Chriſtian princes of the Weſt made warre with the Ægyptian kings, for the kingdomes of SYRIA and IERVSALEM. Which calamitie notwithſtanding, it was againe repeopled, and is at this day a famous citie, for the commodious ſituation thereof much frequented with merchants from the furtheſt parts of the world: It is ſcarce fiue daies iourney from TRIPOLIS and BERYTVS the great ports of SYRIA, and is alſo neere vnto the Turkes and Perſians: ſo that the riches of the Eaſt are thither commodiouſly conuaied out of Turkie, ouer the mountaine AMANVS which parteth CILICIA from SYRIA: and ſo likewiſe out of PERSIA and MESOPOTAMIA ouer the riuer Euphrates, where the citie BYRTHA of late time bounded the kingdome of the Ægyptian Sultans, from the Perſian.

Selymus vnderſtanding by his embaſſadours (who had diligently noted all things in the Sul- *Selymus conuerteth his forces from the Perſians againſt Campſon.*
F tans campe) both of the comming, and of the number of his enemies; and alſo enformed of the Sultans proud anſwer, who had ſo peremptorily preſcribed vnto him ſuch vnreaſonable conditions as pleaſed himſelfe: thought good to alter his purpoſe, and now to conuert his forces an other way than he had before determined. For that to enter farther into ARMENIA, leauing ſo puiſſant an enemie as *Campſon* at his backe, ſeemed a thing too full of danger: and to giue ouer the

the enterprise he had with so great care and charge vndertaken, at the appointment and pleasure of another man, stood neither with his honour or state. Wherefore in a matter so doubtfull, he resolued vpon a notable and necessarie point, well fitting the greatnesse of his mind. He made shew as if he would haue gone directly against the Persian, as he had before determined; and that the more certain report of this his purpose might be carried to *Campson*, he sent before part of his armie with his carriages to the citie SVASSIA, in old time called SEBASTA (it standeth in the frontiers of the Persian kingdom, where the great riuer Euphrates pent vp with the rocks of the mountaine TAVRVS, breaketh againe violently forth into MESOPOTAMIA: but turning himselfe vpon the right hand, purposed to passe the mountaine TAVRVS, & breaking suddenly into COMAGENA to come vpon the Sultan before he were well aware of his comming. Wherefore calling vnto him his trustie Ianizaries, with the other souldiers of the court, he openly with cheerfull countenance declared vnto them what he had resolued to doe, with the reasons of the alteration of his former determination: perswading them, that the victorie would easily be atchieued, if they as couragious souldiers would with all celeritie (before the Mamalukes could perceiue they were returned) get vp to the top of the mountaines, and recouer those difficult passages; not fearing the vaine names and titles of the Mamalukes. *For why* (said he) *the strength of those horsemen is long since decaied and gone: the old Mamalukes, who in the time of* Caitbeius *were of some fame and reputation, are all dead. You shall in battell meet but with a sort of gallant horsebreakers rather than souldiers, which can cunningly mannage their horses in sport, to the pleasure of the beholders, but know not how to encounter the enemie, or to endure to be wounded: who as carpet knights effeminat with long peace, and corrupted with excesse and delicacie of their great cities, neuer saw their foes entrenched, or armed enemies, neither euer heard the sound of a trumpet but at plaies or shewes. Wherefore you are to make but small account of them, being furnished with no store of ordinance or strength of footmen. But as the reuerend interpretours of our sacred lawes and religion, hauing orderly performed all their obseruances, doe diuine vnto vs all happinesse: so you as men full of hope, set forward cheerefully vnto most assured victorie ouer your proud enemies. For God no doubt fauoureth the quarrell of men iustly prouoked, and offereth means of victorie to such as take vp iust and necessarie armes. Yet to ouercome the enemie, and to enioy victorie indeed, wholy consisteth in the courage and valour of them, which deeme nothing better or more honourable than to spend their liues for the honour of their prince and countrey.* Heere the Ianizaries shaking their weapons, forthwith cried out with cheerfull voice, That he should lead and conduct them whither soeuer he would: saying, That they were readie as couragious men, to ouercome all the difficulties of those hard passages, and patiently to endure all the labours and dangers incident to that warre.

Selymus encourageth his souldiers to go against the Mamalukes.

Selymus, by the mountaine people hauing found out the easiest passages, resolued to passe ouer the mountaine with his armie in three places: and so appointing three great companies of the common souldiers and countrey people, for the opening of the straight passages; he commaunded the rough and vneuen waies to be made plain and smooth, for the transporting of his ordinance, and the broken passages to be cast euen, that so his baggage and carriages might the better passe: and the more to encourage his souldiers to take paines, he promised present reward to al such as in transporting of his ordinance, should take any extraordinarie pains. Wherby it came to passe, that the same being of the smaller sort bearing bullet of no great height, was in short time by the cheerfull labour of his souldiers, drawne ouer those great hils and dales: so that in fiue daies all his armie with his baggage and carriages were got ouer the mountaine TAVRVS, and come into the plaines of COMAGENA. For that mountaine where it taketh the name of AMANVS, which is almost in the middle where the riuer Euphrates parteth the mountaine TAVRVS, and the bay ISSICVS, is neither exceeding high, or yet impassable: for as it commeth neerer the sea, it is not so rough as elsewhere, but is in many places inhabited and tilled by the mountaine Cilicians, a fierce kind of people accustomed to labour and toile, who are now called Caramannians, which is to say, the inhabitants of the blacke mountaines; for that the burnt rocks of the mountaine seeme a farre off to be blacke.

Alis-beg which betraied *Aladeules*, whom *Selymus* had a little before sent for, as soon as the armie was come downe into the frontiers of the enemies country, with a strong power of his light horsemen, speedily ouerran all that countrey which is at the foot of AMANVS and TAVRVS: therby to vnderstand of the countrey people and such as they could take prisoners, where *Campson*

A *ſon* lay with his armie ; and alſo by keeping the paſſages to doe what poſſibly might be done, that *Selymus* his comming might not be knowne to the enemie.

But *Campſon*, who with no leſſe vanitie than pride had fondly flattered himſelfe, onely by the authoritie & greatneſſe of his name to haue terrified *Selymus*, and ouerruled him at his pleaſure ; could not be perſuaded that he was come ouer the mountaine AMANVS, vntill certaine newes was brought him, that he was encamped with a moſt puiſſant armie within two daies march of him. With which vnexpected newes being ſore troubled, and in the middeſt of that danger to ſeeke counſell, as one which began rightly to conſider of his owne ſtrength, and the ſtrength of his enemie ; began then to doubt what were beſt for him to doe, and in great perplexitie ſometime hoped wel, and by and by was as a man halfe diſcouraged and diſmaied. And
B now become exceeding carefull both of his honour and himſelfe, he began to doubt, whether it were better for him to giue place to ſo great a danger, and ſhunning battell to retire with his armie into places of more ſafetie ; or elſe couragiouſly to abide the comming of his enemies, and to hazard the fortune of a battell, although it were vpon great diſaduantage : Foraſmuch as he reputed it farre more honourable after the example of his predeceſſors from whom he had receiued that great kingdome (both gotten and kept by martiall proweſſe) to die with honour in the field ; than by ſhamefull and vnwoonted flight, either to blemiſh their militarie glorie continued aboue the ſpace of 300 yeares, or for loue of a ſmall remainder of life, being now 77 yeares old, to ſeeme willing to reſerue vnto obloquie and ſhame his laſt daies, depriued of all honour and reputation.

C There were amongſt his cheefetaines many, which preferred wholeſome counſell before that which was in ſhew more glorious : but aboue all others one *Iamburd*, ſurnamed *Gazelles*, (ſometimes the follower of great *Caitbeius*) a valiant man of great honour, for his long experience in martiall affaires, and at that time gouernour of APAMIA. He, as he was of opinion, That to fight with the Turks armie, conſiſting for moſt part of expert ſoldiers, with ſo ſmall a power, were a thing of deſperat danger ; ſo was he alſo, that it were good ſpeedily to retire, and to chuſe the citie of DAMASCO, as the fitteſt place for thoſe warres : for as much as the Turkes armie could make no haſt after them, by reaſon of their footmen and carriages, ſo that they might at eaſe and with ſafe retire ; and there calling together all the Mamalukes which were in garriſon in IVDEA and ÆGYPT, and entertaining the Arabians their neighbours, to protract the war
D vntill Winter, when as they might eaſily diſtreſſe the enemie for want of victuall. And that it was not to be feared, that ALEPPO, if it were furniſhed but with a reaſonable garriſon, could by and by be taken of the enemie, who had but ſmall field peeces not fit for batterie. Beſide that, in ſhort time aide would come from the Perſians out of MESOPOTAMIA ; yea and *Hyſmaell* himſelfe hearing of the Turkes expedition into SYRIA, was like ynough to breake into ASIA the leſſe : neither would the Chriſtians refuſe to furniſh them with great artillerie from the Iſlands of the RHODES and CYPRVS againſt that common enemie, if they were thereto in time requeſted. All which things being laied together, he ſaid the Sultan might afterward vpon euen hand, goe into the field, if he ſhould thinke it ſo much to concerne his honour, to giue his ene-
E mies battaile. But for as much as the greateſt warres, which at the firſt had moſt violent and moſt furious motions, by the politicke enemies delay did moſt commonly in time grow calme, he ſhould not therefore make too much haſt to aduenture the fortune of battaile : for that the errours of warre, which many times chanced through the ouerſight or raſhneſſe of the cheeftains, might well of good men be lamented and deteſted, but hardly or neuer recouered or amended.

Gazelles his graue and conſiderat ſpeech had much moued both the Sultan and others : yet the cheerefulneſſe of the ſouldiers, and fooliſh hardineſſe of the Mamalukes did ſo fill *Campſons* eares, that he could not hearken to ſo good and wholeſome counſell : for as ſoone as they heard certainely of the comming of the Turks, they began to leape and daunce, and to reioice among themſelues, that the time was come wherein they might make proofe of their valour, and win to themſelues honour. For now (as they ſaid) was come that time they had long wiſhed for wher-
F in they would by notable ſlaughter of their enemies, aduance the honour and maieſtie of *Campſon* their Sultan far aboue the fame of *Caitbeius*. And ſome euen of the cheefe men about *Campſon*, vpon flatterie and vaine oſtentation, alledging how honourably and with what ſmall labour they had before ouerthrowne the Turkes great armie at TAVRVS, perſuaded him, that the victorie would eaſily and without any great danger be gotten. But eſpecially *Cayerbeius* gouernor

The wholſome counſell of Gazelles for protracting the warre.

of

of ALEPPO and of the prouince of COMAGENA (who after his warre ended, was in reward G
of his foule treason by *Selymus* vnworthily preferred to the greatest honours of ÆGYPT) extolling with glorious words the faithfulnesse, courage and valour of the Mamalukes, and extenuating the strength and power of the enemie, forced his wits to the vttermost to ouerthrow the wholsome counsell of *Gazelles*.

A secret grudge betweene Campson and Cayerbeius gouernour of Comagena.

For this *Cayerbeius* for all his faire face bare a grudge in heart against *Campson*, because he had some few yeares before poysoned his brother, whom he had in iealousie, being a man next to himselfe of greatest power, wealth, and authoritie amongst the Mamalukes, and withall of an aspiring mind. Whereupon *Cayerbeius* afterwards thinking it good to looke to himselfe, and doubting the like practise to be intended against himself; being, as the manner of that kingdome was, summoned to a parliament at CAIRE, faigned himselfe sicke, and would not come: where- H
with *Campson* was not a little offended, yet for a time he thought it best to dissemble the matter and to await some fitter opportunitie for the taking away of that proud man, so forgetfull of his dutie, and bearing himselfe against his soueraigne, as if he had been an absolute king in his owne prouince. This he thought might most couertly be brought to passe, if he should vpon the occasion of the present warre (as it then fell out) or else vnder the colour of going in person himselfe to the riuer Euphrates, come to ALEPPO: for it was the manner of the ancient Ægyptian Sultans, not to account themselues worthie of the name of a Sultan or great Generall, before they had as *Caitbeius* had of late done, encamped their armie vpon the side of the riuer Euphrates at the citie BYRTHA (which standing vpon the banke of the riuer, retaineth at this day both the ancient name and fame) and there with solemne pompe had in the sight of the armie forced their I
horses into the riuer to drinke: giuing to vnderstand by that ceremonie, the greatnesse of their empire, and that they were readie by force of armes to proue, that all those countries were theirs which lay alongst the riuer Euphrates, from the mountaine TAVRVS vnto the deserts of ARABIA. But the consideration of this war letted that he did not at his first comming oppresse him, because he deemed it to stand best with his present affaires: and not yet knowing the purpose of *Selymus*, to expect the motions of the Turkes and Persians, and to deferre the execution of his wrath against *Cayerbeius*, vntill the end of the warre: for feare least the other Mamalukes, dismayed with the hainousnesse of the suddaine fact, should either reuolt from him, or else raise some mutinie or rebellion in that populous citie. For *Cayerbeius* had by his courtesie and boun- K
tie many strong companies in the armie fast bound vnto him: and beside that, was of greatest credit and authoritie with them of ALEPPO, hauing in his keeping a strong citadell, built vpon the rising of an hill in the middest of the citie, which he kept with a strong and sure garrison.

But whiles *Campson* doth thus slowly and considerately purpose his destruction, many of the Sultans secret friends, to him more officious than faithfull, secretly aduised *Cayerbeius* to beware of the Sultan, and by some good meanes in time to prouide for his owne safetie. He vnderstanding of the danger, and thinking all delay deadly, sent secret messengers vnto *Selymus*, discouering vnto him the cause of his greefe, and promising as occasion should serue to come ouer vnto him, and to deliuer into his power the castle with the heart of the citizens, and all the strength of his owne horsemen; thereby to prouide for his owne safetie, to reuenge his brothers death, and L
to further his victorie against *Campson*: and for performance of promises on both sides, required secret hostages to be giuen. By the same messengers he also aduertised him, what strength the Sultan was of, persuading him in any case to make hast to giue him battaile before hee had gathered any greater power. *Selymus* nothing doubted to condiscend to all that the traitor had requested, promising of himselfe farre greater things than euer he had required: assuring himselfe of the victorie, if his enemie should lose so much of his strength by the reuolt of so great a commaunder.

Campson enforced by the generall consent of his souldiers, and the violence of his ineuitable destinie, then at hand, reiecting the good and faithfull counsell of *Gazelles*, at such time as *Selymus* was reported to be at hand; resolued according to the counsell of the traitour *Cayerbeius*, M
to dare him battell. He lay conueniently encamped vpon the riuer Singa, almost ten miles from the citie, in such sort as that his souldiers might vse the benefit of the riuer, and remoued from the houses and pleasures of the citie, might yet neuertheless be easily releeued with the store and plentie thereof.

The Mamalukes notable souldiers.

The Mamalukes were scarce in number twelue thousand, but euery one of them, according

as

A as he was of greater place or calling, ſo had he attending vpon him mo ſeruants, well furniſhed with horſe and armour. A goodly and inuincible armie, if the battell might haue been tryed by true valour. The Mamalukes wearing their beards long and rough, with graue and ſterne countenance, hauing ſtrong and able bodies, vſed ſuch cunning in all their fights and battels, that after they had giuen the firſt charge with their launces, they would by and by with wonderfull actiuitie vſe their bowes and arrowes, caſting their targuets behind them; and forthwith the horſemans mace or crooked ſcimitar, as the manner of the battell or place required. Their horſes were ſtrong and couragious, in making and ſwiftneſſe much like vnto the Spaniſh Iennets; and that which is of many hardly beleeued, ſo docible, that at certaine ſignes or ſpeeches of the rider, they would with their teeth reach him vp from the ground a launce, an arrow, or ſuch like
B thing; and as if they had knowne the enemie, run vpon him with open mouth, and laſh at him with their heeles, and had by nature and cuſtome learned, not to be afraid of any thing. Theſe coragious horſes were commonly furniſhed with ſiluer bridles, guilt trapping, rich ſaddles, their necks and breaſts armed with plates of yron: the horſeman himſelfe was commonly content with a coat of maile or a breaſtplate of yron. The chiefand wealthieſt of them vſed headpieces; the reſt a linnen couering of the head, curiouſly foulded into many wreathes, wherewith they thought themſelues ſafe ynough againſt any handie ſtrokes: the common ſoldiors vſed thrumd caps, but ſo thicke, as that no ſword could pierce them.

Campſon of all his armie made foure battels: The firſt was committed to *Cayerbeius*, becauſe it was in his owne prouince where the battell was to be fought. The ſecond was led by *Sybeius*, *The order of Campſons battel*
C who for his wonderfull actiuitie was of them called *Baluano*, which in their language ſignifieth a tumbler, or one that ſheweth feats of actiuitie; he was gouernour of Damasco, a man of ſingular faith and valour. Theſe two great commanders were appointed at once to charge both the wings of the Turks armie. After them followed *Gazelles* with the third battell, to ſecond either the one or the other of the two formoſt, as need ſhould require. *Campſon* himſelfe led the fourth, all gliſtering in guilt armour, behind the reſt almoſt a mile and a halfe. The laſt was left for defence of the campe.

But *Selymus* according to his wonted maner ſo ordered his battaile, that his Aſian horſemen *The order of Selymus his battel*
were in the right wing, his Europeian horſemen in the left, his Ianizaries and artillerie in the maine battaile: before whom, in the middle betweene the two wings he had placed his moſt va-
D liant and gallant penſioners, amongſt whom, contrarie to his wonted cuſtome, he choſe to ſerue that day.

Cayerbeius as ſoone as he was come neere the enemie (in token of his braue courage) gaue a hote charge vpon the Europeian horſemen; and by and by, as if he would haue compaſſed in that wing, wheeled a great way about behind them: where chancing vpon a great companie of ſcullions, drudges, and other baſe people that followed the campe, with an infinit number of cammels, and carriages, he made there a great ſtirre, with little ſlaughter, that as a valiant and cunning traitor he might in the ſelfe ſame time ſatisfie the expectation of his valour and of his treaſon togither. In the other wing, the gouernour of Damasco to enter vpon the open ſide
E of the enemie, forbearing to charge him afront, and turning about his troups on the left hand, entred ouerthwart their ranks; where the Mamalukes fought with ſuch furie, that hauing made great ſlaughter of the Aſian horſemen, they brake in amongſt them, as if it had beene a raging flood, bearing all downe before them, vntill they came to the enſignes in the middeſt of that wing: neither could *Muſtapha* the Beglerbeg (who was by birth an Hungarian, and *Selmus* his brother in law) neither the Imbrahor-Baſſa (or maſter of the houſe) although they did what they might to withſtand him, after the firſt were ouerthrowne, ſtay the reſt, but that they would needs turne their backs and flie. So *Sybeius* as a valiant conqueror hauing cut in two pieces the right wing of the enemies battell, and thruſting in betwixt the battell of the footmen and the backs of the penſioners, brought a great terrour and feare vpon the whole maine battell. The matter was now brought to extreame danger: for *Selymus* by the breaking in of *Sybeius* was al-
F moſt cut off from his footmen, in whom he had repoſed his greateſt confidence. And now the Ianizaries were hardly charged by *Gazelles*, who following the fortune of *Sybeius*, had ſet vpon the head of the enemies battell. The Aſian horſemen alſo being put to the worſe, and cut in pieces, found no meanes how to reſtore againe their diſordered battell.

In this extremetie *Sinan Baſſa* in good time came in with his horſemen: by his comming, for

that he had been but lightly charged by *Cayerbeius* the traitour, and had brought with him ma- G
ny freſh troupes of horſemen, the furie of the Mamalukes was repreſſed, the Turkes againe encouraged, and the victorie ſhortly after wrung out of the Mamalukes hands; the great artillerie being by the commaundment of *Selymus* at the ſame time diſcharged amongſt them, by the terrible thundring whereof, the Mamalukes horſes ſomewhat troubled, could not ſo well as before be ruled: neither could the men themſelues, although they were of wonderfull courage, much preuaile, being on euerie ſide oppreſſed with the multitude of their enemies. Yet in that diſtreſſe being nothing diſmaied, although they were by *Cayerbeius* and their good fortune forſaken, they were not to ſeeke either of courage or direction: but ſerring themſelues cloſe togither, they brake through the middeſt of their enemies, with great ſlaughter of the Europeian horſemen, and hurt of the penſioners; and ſo with ſpeed fled towards the campe and citie. After H
whom followed *Sinan Baſſa* with the readieſt and freſheſt trougs of his horſemen: for *Selymus*, (who that day in the extreame heat, for his wonderful paines, courage, and direction, ſeemed vndoubtedly greater than himſelfe) riding vp and downe, called earneſtly vpon his ſouldiours to vrge the victorie, and with all ſpeed to purſue their flying enemies.

Campſon had now (his deſtinie ſo leading him) ſet forward, of purpoſe to come to the reliefe of his men ſent before; or if the Turks ſhould be ouercome, to be partaker of the victorie: when vpon the way, he vnderſtood by them that fled, that *Cayerbeius* was reuolted, his armie ouerthrowne, and the terrour ſo great, as that the flight of his ſouldiours was not now poſſibly to be ſtaied: beſide that to augment the feare, it was reported, that the multitude of his enemies, and force of their artillerie was ſo great, that they were not then to be incountred. With which hea- I
uie newes, the proud old man, who in the perpetuall courſe of his good fortune had neuer taſted of euill hap, was readie for ſorrow and griefe of mind to haue ſunke downe to the ground.
The death of Campſon. And forthwith, his owne men, and the enemie purſuing them, comming vpon him, who in their headlong courſe without regard ouerthrew whomſoeuer they met, euerie man making ſhift for himſelfe without reſpect of others harmes: he being a corpulent man of great yeares, and beſide the heauineſſe of his armour troubled alſo with a rupture, ouercome with heat and griefe of mind, fainted in that great preſſe; and ſo falling downe, was without regard troden to death, after he had with great maieſtie gouerned the kingdomes of Ægypt, Iudea, and Syria many yeares. The valiant Tetrarches of Damasco and Tripolis, whileſt others fled for life, either to the campe or to the citie of Aleppo, labouring in the hindermoſt of their flying troupes to K
repreſſe the force of their purſuing enemies, were both fighting, honourably ſlaine. *Selymus* erecting a few tents in the ſame field wherein the battell was fought, and keeping moſt part of his armie in armes, ſlept not all that night, but ſtood faſt as a man not yet aſſured of his victorie or good fortune; fearing leaſt men of ſo great valour as were the Mamalukes, ſhould in the couert of the night returne and ſet vpon him in his campe: for he knew right well, that they were ouercome and put to flight, rather by the treacherie of *Cayerbeius*, and furie of his great ordinance, than by the valour of his ſoldiors. But *Gazelles* and the other Mamalukes, after they certainely vnderſtood of the death of *Campſon*, hauing giuen their horſes a ſhort bait, departed in haſt from Aleppo to Damasco. The next day *Selymus* remouing with his armie, tooke the rich L
Aleppo deliuered to Selymus by Cayerbeius the traitor. tents of his enemies full of all princely ſtore, which he gaue vnto his ſouldiors for a prey: and marching from thence to Aleppo, had the citie peaceably deliuered vnto him by *Cayerbeius* where he fauourably tooke the citizens into his protection; and the more to win their hearts, granted vnto them greater priuiledges than they had in former time enioyed.

In this battell were ſlaine not aboue a thouſand Mamalukes, but of their ſeruants and followers a greater number; mo being ſlain in the flight than in the fight, when as their horſes fainting for heat, and dying vnder them for thirſt, many of them were enforced to betake themſelues to their feet, and ſo were eaſily ſlaine of euerie baſe horſeman. For a great number of goodly horſes dyed there, which being foggie fat, and delicately brought vp in cold ſtables, could not endure the vehemencie of the heat and that vnacquainted trauell: for that day all things were M
burnt with the ſcorching heat of the Sunne.

This famous battell was fought the ſeuenteenth of Auguſt, in the yeare of our Lord 1516, the verie ſame day (which is ſtrange to tell) whereon but two yeres before, he had obtained the victorie againſt *Hyſmaell* the great Sophi in the Calderan fields. *Selymus* loſt in this battell three thouſand horſemen: whereby it may eaſily be gathered, that he had their receiued a notable

A dle ouerthrowe of his horſemen; if *Sinan Baſſa* in the left wing, which by the treaſon of *Cayerbeius* eſcaped with ſmal loſſe, had alſo happened vpon his *Sybeius*, as the other Generall did.

The dead bodie of *Campſon* found two daies after without any wound appearing therupon, was by the commandment of *Selymus* laied forth in open place for all men to behold; that ſuch as belieued him yet to liue, and to be gone to repaire his armie at CAIRE, might be out of all hope of his retune; and others that were alreadie reuolted, might thereby be the more confirmed, as now out of all feare of him. Not long after, when the dead bodie began to putrifie and grow noiſome, and to conuince the fame of his eſcape, had lien openly to the view of all men by the ſpace of three daies, it was without any funerall pompe or ſolemnitie ſimply buried in the moſt ancient temple of ALEPPO. Of the riſing and fall of this great man, *Ianus Vitalis* hath writ-
B ten this elogium or epitath.

The dead bodie of Campſon laid out for all men to view.

CAMPSON GAVRVS
Sultan of Ægypt.

Lamb. Iohnson. ſculp.

F

Paulus Iouius lib. 4. Elogi virorũ, Illuſt.

Fortuna cæca, & ſurda, verè dicetis.
Et mente vna prædita.
Ad alta tollis ſtamna in imo condites,
Vt mox cadant profundius.

Morosa tu mortalium appetentium
Votum, omne fulmine ocyus
Fugas, deinde te nihil petentibus
Benignitate prodigis.
Camson vt ille Gaurius, nil ambiens,
Nil te proterua flagitans,
Inuitus imperator ora Ægiptia
Tumultuosa militum
Ex fece plebis factus insolentia,
Supra volabat nubila,
Inter receptus altiora sydera
Mox excidens altissimus,
Absumptus armis hinc & hinc rebellibus,
Grauis senecta pondere
Fit ludus atrox impotentis aleæ
Tuæ & pernicaciæ,
Amisit & cum vita, opes quas maximo
Cum regno habebat maximas.

In English thus.

Fortune, well cal'd both deafe, and blind,
And thereto fond withall,
Thou setst the beggar vp aloft,
To worke his greater fall.
Thou peeuish dame, more sudden than
The thunder clap from hie,
Reiects the suits of greedie wights,
Which to thee call and crie.
And lauishly consumes thy selfe,
And whatsoelse thou hast,
On such as craue nothing of thee,
Nor wish not to be grac't.
As *Camson Gaurus* seeking nought,
Ne crauing ought of thee:
Againſt his will by souldiours rage,
Was raised from base degree.
And soaring vp aboue the clouds,
Made king of Ægypt land,
Receiu'd amongst the highest stars,
Did there in glorie stand.
But forthwith falling thence, oppresst
With rebels, war, and age:
Became the scorne of thine ouerthwart
Most fierce and fickle rage.
And so with life, togither lost
A world of wealth also:
Which with his stately kingdome great,
He greatest did forgo.

Selymus hauing receiued the citie of ALEPPO into his obeisance, sent *Ionuses Bassa* before him with a great part of his light horsemen, to pursue his flying enemies to DAMASCO, whither he himselfe in few daies after came also with the rest of his armie, when he vnderstood that his enemies were departed thence and fled to CAIRE. They of DAMASCO, thinking it not to stand with their good to stay the course of his victorie, and with their liues to hazard the

Selymus comming to Damasco.

A the great wealth of that rich citie; without delay presently opened vnto him the gates at his comming. By whose example other cities alongst the sea coast moued, especially TRIPOLIS, BERYTVS, SYDON, and PTOLEMAIS, sending their embassadors, and receiuing in the Turks garrisons, yeelded themselues in like manner.

Not long after *Selymus* held a great counsell in his campe, which then lay vnder the wals of DAMASCO: for he would not bring his souldiours into the citie for troubling the quiet and populous state thereof, togither with the great trade of merchandise, which at that time was with wonderful securitie kept there by merchants of diuers countries, comming from far, euen from the remotest parts of the world. And in the campe such was the militarie discipline of that most
B seuere commaunder, that the souldiours (knowing the victorie to giue them no whit the more libertie) suffered the fruitfull orchards and gardens of the citizens, in the most plentifull time of Autumne, to rest in safetie vntouched, without any keeper. By which seuere and strait gouernment he so politickly prouided against all wants, that his campe was in all parts furnished with plentie of all things necessarie, and that at prices reasonable. There taking vnto him men skilful in the lawes and customes of the countrey, and calling before him the embassadors of all the cities of the countrie; he heard and decided the greatest controuersies of the Syrians, appointed gouernours ouer the prouinces and cities, tooke view of the tributs and customes, and abrogated many customes and tributes due vnto the old Sultans, which seemed either vnreasonable or grieuous to the people; thereby to gaine the fame of a iust and bountifull conqueror.

Notable discipline in Selymus his armie.

C When he had thus set all things in order in SYRIA, and sufficiently rested and refreshed his armie, and especially his horses which with long and continuall trauell were growne maigre and leane: he of nothing more desirous than of the conquest of ÆGYPT, and the vtter subuersion of the Sultans state and Mamalukes gouernment; sent before *Sinan Bassa* into IVDEA with fifteene thousand horsemen, and a strong regiment of harquebusiers selected out of the Ianizaries and other souldiors, to trie the passage of that countrie, and to open the way for him to GAZA: which was thought would be vnto him very troublesome, by reason of the wild Arabians roaming vp and downe that countrie. The citie of GAZA standeth neere the sea towards ÆGYPT, not far from the sandie desarts, whereby men with much difficultie and dangerous trauell passe out of SYRIA and so to CAIRE.

D In the meane time, the Mamalukes who vnder the conduct of *Gazelles* were come to CAIRE, with all the rest of their order which were thither assembled from all parts of the kingdome, entring into counsel togither (as it often falleth out in time of danger and distres) without all contention or enuie, chose *Tomombeius* (of the Turks called *Tuman-bai*) a Circassian borne, to be their king. He was then the great Diadare, and by his office next in honour and power vnto the Sultan; whose prowesse & policie was such, that he onely in the opinion of all the Mamalukes was thought able and sufficient to stay and vphold the afflicted and declining state of their kingdome. He by their generall consent and good liking promoted to the state of the great Sultan, thinking (as truth was) his owne maiestie, and the remainder of the Mamalukes hopes, to be wholy reposed in armes and the fortune of battell: began with great carefulnesse and singular
E industrie to prouide armour, weapons, and horses from all places; he also caused great store of ordinance to be cast, and mustered great companies of such of his slaues as seemed meet for the wars: beside that, he entertained for pay many of the Moores and Arabians his neighbours. He also for great reward hired men skilfull of the countries, to go through the desarts of the Palmyrens into MESOPOTAMIA, and so to *Hysmaell* the Persian king with letters: earnestly requesting him to inuade the Turkes dominions in ASIA the lesse, or with all speed to breake into COMAGENA, being by the departure of the enemie left bare and destitute of sufficient garrisons: and farther to aduertise him, That *Selymus* who then lay in the borders of IVDEA, might easily be inclosed with their two armies, and so be vanquished, or for want of victuals distressed: and the rather, for that there was no fleet of the Turks vpon that coast; able from sea to relieue
F their armie by land, or yet to transport them thence in case they should by chance of war be distressed, and so thinke to returne. In which doing, he should both relieue the Ægyptian Sultan his friend and confederat, for his sake brought into so great danger; and also without any great trouble or perill notably reuenge himselfe of so many shamefull iniuries as he had before receiued from that his most capitall enemie. Whilest *Tomombeius* doth these things, *Sinan Bassa* the forerunner of *Selymus*, hauing easily repulsed diuers companies of the wild Arabians, who in

Tomombeius by the generall cõsent of the Mamalukes chosen Sultan of Egypt.

manner of theeues and robbers lay vpon the paſſages, had now opened the way and was come G
to GAZA: where the citizens, although they were in heart faithfull vnto the Mamalukes, yet for
that to ſhut their gates againſt the Baſſa, & to ſtand vpon their guard without a ſufficient garri-
ſon, ſeemed a matter both perrillous and vnreaſonable, forthwith yeelded their citie vpon reaſo-
Gaza yelded to Sinan. ble compoſition: and with the plentie therof relieued the Turks Baſſa, giuing him great (but diſ-
ſembled) thanks, that by his means and the good fortune of *Selymus*, they were deliuered from
the cruell bondage of the Mamalukes: promiſing for the remembrance of ſo great a benefit, for
euer to remaine his faithfull ſeruants. *Sinan* commended their readie good will, required of
them all ſuch things as he wanted, or had occaſion to vſe, which they ſeemed willingly to deli-
uer: and ſo lodged his armie neere vnto the wals of the citie, within the defence of the gardens,
purpoſing in that place to expect the comming of *Selymus*. H

In the meane time (as he was a man of great experience, and moſt skilfull in martiall affaires)
he ſought by all means to get knowledge of that deſart and vnpeopled countrie, not inhabited
for lacke of water; and eſpecially of the nature of the great ſands wherby *Selymus* was with his
armie to paſſe; he alſo woon by rewards the inhabitants of the countrie thereabout, by large of-
fers to procure vnto him the fauour of the chiefetaines and leaders of the Arabians, neere vnto
thoſe places, and alſo to eſpie what the Mamalukes did at CAIRE, and wherin they repoſed their
chiefe confidence, and forthwith to giue him knowledge thereof.

On the other ſide, the citizens of GAZA, in heart enemies vnto the Turks, as daily feeling the
grieuances of the preſent armie, aduertiſed *Tomombeius* of the comming of *Sinan Baſſa:* and that
that part of the Turkes armie might eaſily be oppreſſed before the comming of *Selymus*, if a I
ſtrong power of Mamalukes were ſent thither vnder the conduct of skilful leaders: promiſing,
that if the Mamalukes would at an appointed time vpon the ſuddaine in the night ſet vpon the
ſleepie Turks, they would at the ſame inſtant ſallie out of the citie vpon the campe, and there
with fire and ſword do what harme they could for the ouerthrow of the enemie.

Of this deuiſe, *Tomombeius* and the Mamalukes liked well, and ſo without delay ſent *Gazelles*
ſix thouſand choſen horſemen, and a great number of the Arabians to performe the exploit
vpon *Sinan:* for *Gazelles*, in that his wholeſome counſell had bin by *Campſon* and others reiected
(who being ſtraight way deſirous of battell, had raſhly caſt themſelues and the whole ſtate into
ſo great calamitie) and afterwards in the greateſt danger of the battell hauing performed all the
parts of a politicke and valiant chieftaine, was growne into ſuch credit, that all men held a great K
opinion both of his valour and direction.

Sinan aduertiſed of the comming of Gazelles, goeth ſecretly to meet him. But he was ſcarcely well ſet forth, when aduertiſement was giuen vnto *Sinan* by his Syryan
intelligencers, That the Mamaluks with the Arabians were comming through the ſandie deſarts
vpon the ſuddain to oppreſſe him; and that they would be with him before two daies were ex-
pired, for as much as they had ſet forward vpon the ſpur without any carriages or baggage to
let them. Which ouerture in good time giuen, as it was the ſafegard of *Sinans* armie, ſo was it
of greateſt importance & moment for the obtaining of the full conqueſt of ÆGYPT afterward.
But *Sinan Baſſa*, although he knew nothing of the trecherie of them of *Gaza*; yet as a man of a
prouident and ſubtill wit, ſuſpecting that ſuch a thing might happen, becauſe he would not at L
once haue to do with a double enemie, reſolued to go and meet the Mamalukes vpon the way,
and to giue them battell. Wherefore with great ſilence diſlodging his armie betwixt ten and
twelue a clocke in the night, he ſet forward and marched out of ſight of the citie, about fifteene
miles toward ÆGYPT. There was neere vnto that place a little low village, wherein trauellours
vſed commonly to lodge, for the commodiouſnes of a liuely and plenteous ſpring which there
riſeth: there by chance both *Sinan Baſſa* had purpoſed to ſtay, and *Gazelles* in like maner had al-
ſo determined to reſt a few houres to refreſh his armie, that he might by night, after he had well
refreſhed his horſes, come vnlooked for vpon his enemies at GAZA; when newes was brought
to both the Generals almoſt at one inſtant, by the forerunners of both the armies, That the ene-
mie was at hand. M

Gazelles not a little troubled with that vnexpected newes, for that he perceiued himſelfe diſ-
appointed of his purpoſe; and vnable to fight with his enemie in plaine battell, eſpecially his
horſes being ſore wearied with trauell, was inforced vpon the ſuddaine for the ſafegard of him-
ſelfe and of his followers, to reſolue vpon a new reſolution: yet nothing diſcouraged, with
cheerefull countenance and liuely ſpeech exhorted his ſouldiors, to make themſelues readie for
battaile,

A battaile, & that which they could not by policie bring to paſſe, they ſhould now by plain force performe. *Sinan* on the other ſide hauing ſomewhat ſooner ſet his men in order of battell than had *Gazelles*, for as much as he had before at good leiſure taken order what he would haue done, if it ſhould come to the point of battell: with conſtant looke and long perſuaſions full of hope, encouraged his ſouldiers to fight. But the concluſion of all his ſpeech was, That they ſhould play the men, and not once thinke of flight, for as much as all places about them would be ſhut vp and become impaſſable, if they obtained not the victorie: and that aboue all things they ſhould perſuade themſelues, that no one of them could that day periſh, but ſuch as the immortall God had by the ineuitable law of fatall deſtinie appointed to die: and that with like hazard
B valiant men found life in the middeſt of their enemies weapons, that cowards by immutable deſtinie found death in their ſafeſt flight.

The Baſſa had placed his harquebuſiers in the wings of his battell, which were raunged of a great length in thin rankes, therby to vſe their peeces at more libertie, and with more eaſe to encloſe the enemie: in the middle were placed the horſemen, to receiue the firſt charge of the Mamalukes. *Gazelles* approching the enemie, ſent before the troupes of the Arabian light horſemen to trouble the wings of his enemies battell, and with a ſquare battell of his Mamalukes charged the middle battell of the Turks. The battell was a great while moſt terrible, and the victorie doubtfull: for although the Turkes in number farre exceeded, yet were they not able to endure the armed and couragious Mamalukes, but were glad to giue ground; and quite diſor-
C dered by the breaking in of the Mamalukes, as men diſcouraged, began to looke about them which way they might flie: when by the commaundement of *Sinan*, the harquebuſiers, who with the firſt volley of their ſhot had repulſed the Arabians, wheeling about, encloſed all the enemies battell. By which meanes both men and horſe were a farre off ſlaine, with the multitude of the deadly ſhot: where true valour helped not them, ſo on euery ſide encloſed. For where any troupe of the Mamalukes preſſed forward vpon the Turkes, they quickly retired, and in all places of the battell as much as they could ſhunned to encounter their enemies with their horſemen, labouring onely to gaule them with ſhot. *Gazelles* ſeeing his horſes ſpent with extreame wearineſſe, and that he was not to expect any further helpe, his Arabians now beginning to fall from him; and alſo conſidering that many of his moſt valiant ſouldiers were either ſlaine or
D wounded, and hauing alſo himſelfe receiued a great wound in his necke; he with the reſt of his armie made way through the middeſt of his enemies, and hauing loſt diuers of his enſignes, fled backe againe to CAIRE through the ſame ſandie deſerts whereby he came. In this battell was loſt the gouernour of ALEXANDRIA, and *Orchamus* gouernour of CAIRE (both men of great account amongſt the Mamalukes) and beſide them a great number of Arabians, with a thouſand or more of the Mamaluke horſemen. Neither got *Sinan* a ioyfull or vnbloudie victorie hauing loſt aboue two thouſand of his beſt horſemen, and amongſt them certaine commanders, men of great marke.

The battell betweene Sinan Baſſa and Gazelles.

The Turkes wearie of this battell, which had eudured from noone till night, and many of their horſes fainting vnder them, were not able to purſue their enemies, and therfore encamped
E themſelues in the ſame place where the battell was fought, neere vnto the fountaine. The day following they at leiſure gathered the ſpoile, and cutting off the heads of their enemies, which were eaſily knowne by their long and rough beards, faſtened them vp vpon the Date trees growing thereby, as well in witneſſe of their worthie labour, as by that ſtrange and horrible ſpectacle to feed the eyes of their fierce emperour, who was ſhorty after to paſſe that way, and ſo to manifeſt vnto him the victorie of that day.

In the meane time, they of GAZA vpon the riſing of the Sunne, perceiuing the Turks campe left emptie, as men not able longer to diſſemble their couert trecherie; and vainely ſuppoſing that *Sinan Baſſa* vpon ſome knowled of the comming of the Mamalukes, had for feare retired backe into places of more ſafetie, ſuddenly ſet vpon ſuch as were left in the campe, which were
F for moſt part ſick and weake men (yet in number many) whom they moſt cruelly ſlew: & preſently after ſet vpon two thouſund of the Turkes horſemen, ſent from *Selymus* to *Sinan*, which by chance were come thither the ſame day, enquiring with great carefulneſſe what was become of the Baſſa and his armie; and ſpoiling them of their carriages, put them to flight. Who after that diſcomfiture, ſuppoſing the Baſſa (whom they had thought to haue found at GAZA, tarrying for the comming of *Selymus*) by ſome miſhap or policie of the enemie to haue bin loſt with

all

all his armie, and therefore fearefully retiring, were vpon the way miſerably ſlaine by the Ara- G
bians: neither had any one of them eſcaped, if they had not met with *Iuleb* the gouernour of
ACHAIA at the citie of RAMA: for he was alſo ſent from *Selymus* to *Sinan Baſſa* with a ſtrong
companie of Græcian horſemen, by whoſe comming the furie of the Arabians was well repreſ-
ſed. Yet theſe pilfering people ſtill calling forth to the prey more & more of their leaders which
dwelt in the mountaines adioyning, and being growne to a great armie, ouertooke the Turkes
at a village called CARASBARA, where they enforced them to fight in a place of great diſaduan-
tage. For the Arabians hauing before taken certain ſtraits, which cloſed in the paſſage at the fur-
ther end of a large valley, ſhewed themſelues at once, before, behind, and on both ſides of the
Turkes: their weapons were bow and arrowes and long ſpeares armed at both ends, which
they nimbly handled, after the manner of the Moores. Theſe weapons they moſt skilfully vſed H
vpon their ſwift horſes, and both in their charge and retreat wounded their enemies deadly. So
that the Turkes in number few, and for their horſemens ſtaues inferiour to their enemies, durſt
not offer to charge them; but keeping cloſe together, hardly defended themſelues, ſtill making
way as they might: and had vndoubtedly beene brought into extreame danger to haue beene
vtterly loſt, had not *Iuleb* with foure peeces of artillerie which he brought with him for his de-
fence, driuen them which kept the ſtraits from their high places, and ſo opening the way, with
all ſpeed brought thorow his men: which ſtraits once paſſed, and comming into the open fields,
he with more ſafetie marched forward, skirmiſhing a farre off with the enemie with his archers
and harquebuſiers, and diſcharging his fieldpeeces where he ſaw the greateſt and thickeſt troups
of thoſe wild people. I

On the other part, the Arabians diſperſedly houering about them in troupes, were ſtill in the
taile of the armie, and ſuch as were wounded or weake and could not follow the reſt, they ſlew;
and ſought by all meanes to hinder their iourney, not ſuffering them (circumuented with ſo ma-
ny dangers) either to refreſh themſelues, or to take any reſt. This was vnto the Turks a moſt diſ-
mall day, for many of them tormented with thirſt, and weakened with wounds and extreame
labour, gaue vp the goſt; and now no helpe remained in this deſperate eſtate, being ſtill beſet
and hardly laied to with the multitude of thoſe fierce and deſperat enemies: when ſuddainely a
great number of other Turks came to them in the mid way vnlooked for, being now in deſpaire
and euen at the laſt caſt. For *Selymus* hauing left the Imbrahor-Baſſa with a ſtrong armie vpon
the borders of PERSIA, for the defence of SYRIA and ASIA, and hauing ſent for new ſup- K
plies of ſouldiers to CONSTANTINOPLE, which ſhould with a great fleet be tranſported in-
to SYRIA, had now remoued from DAMASCO: and the better to prouide for victuals and for-
rage, which began now to grow ſcant in that waſted countrey, euery day ſent before great
troupes and companies of his armie, as it were at certaine appointed times.

Selymus doubting Sinan Baſſa to haue beene, loſt, becommeth melancholie.

So *Iuleb* deliuered of the preſent danger by the comming in of theſe freſh ſouldiers, met with
Selymus the next day, and in order told him all that had happened vnto him and his firſt troups
at GAZA and RAMA, and all the way after: and alſo what they ſuppoſed by coniectures to
haue chanced to *Sinan Baſſa* with his armie, for the manifold wyles of ſo dangerous enemies.
With which newes *Selymus* became exceeding melancholie: and thereupon thought it not L
good to goe any further, before he perfectly knew how all ſtood with *Sinan*, in whoſe fortune
he had repoſed all the hope of his good ſucceſſe in that ſo great an enterpriſe. But whileſt he
was in this dumpe, ſuddenly came the Syrian ſpies, who declaring vnto him all that *Sinan Baſſa*
had done, conuerted that melancholie paſſion into no leſſe ioy and gladneſſe: for he ſaw that
by that victorie, ÆGYPT was laid open vnto him, and his deſires as good as halfe accompli-
ſhed in leſſe time than euer he expected.

Newes of Sinans victorie comforteth Selymus.

The next day after, he remoued with his armie to RAMA, and by the way as he went (to the
terrour of others) burnt the dwellings together with the wiues and children of thoſe Arabians,
who but a little before had done ſo much harme to his men in their paſſage. And from thence
ſending before his footmen to *Sinan Baſſa* at GAZA, he himſelfe with his horſemen turned out M
of the way vpon the left hand to HIERVSALEM, to viſit that moſt ancient and famous citie, ſo
much renowned both for the antiquitie thereof, and the fame of the religion of the Iewes. That
vnpeopled and deſolate citie lay then defaced with the hugie ruines of the old ſacred and ſtately
buildings; not inhabited by the Iewes, the ancient inhabitants thereof (who for their inexpiable
guilt, as men exiled out of the world, haue neither country or reſting place) but for moſt part by
a few

A a few poore Christians, who to the great shame and scorne of the Christian name, paied yearely a wonderfull tribute vnto the Sultan of ÆGYPT for the possession of the sacred sepulchre: when as the Christian princes flourishing at that time with glorie, power and wealth, could not by any motiue of immortall glorie or fame, be incited to reuenge so great an iniury; but deeming it (as should seeme) better agreeing with their state, to spend their time in idle vanities or mortall warre one against an other, than in the quarrell of the most true and Christian religion.

Selymus hauing reuerently worshipped the auncient monuments of the old prophets, and done especiall sacrifice vnto his great prophet *Mahomet*; gaue vnto the Christian priests keepers of the place (as vnto good and deuout men) money to maintaine them for six moneths: and
B staying at HIERVSALEM but one night, marched in foure daies to the rest of his army at GAZA. Where by the way, he had continuall skirmishes both day and night with the Arabians: for they according to their wonted manner, were desperatly at hand in euerie place; and where the straightnesse of the waies enforced the Turks to extenuat their rankes, there would they be readie to skirmish with them, and suddenly vnlooked for come to handie blowes: and when they came into the vallies, they tumbled downe the mountaines vpon them great stones which they had for that purpose before prouided. At which time the Turkes harquebusiers in whom they had greatest confidence, serued them to little purpose: for the weather was so tempestuous and extreame moist with continuall raine, that the pouder in their flaskes became wet and vnseruiceable, and hardly could they keepe fire in their matches. Yet by the valiantnesse of the Ianizaries
C the matter was so vsed, that neere vnto the person of the emperour no great harme was done by those naked robbers: for climbing vp the hils with pikes in their hands, they driue them from their standings, and enforced them to abandon the straights and high places.

But *Sinan Bassa* who after his victorie returning to GAZA, had put to death the authors of the late reuolt, confiscated their goods, and exacted of the people in generall a great sum of money, as the iust punishment of their false treacherie: hearing now of the comming of *Selymus*, went to meet him with his victorious souldiers, furnished with the spoiles of their enemies. Whom *Selymus* most honourably receiued, and gaue generally to the captaines, and particularly to the most valiant of the common souldiers, garments of silke, with a great sum of money in reward of their good seruice. 1517 *Sinan Bassa meeteth to meet Selymus and commeth to Gaza.*

D After that, he staied but foure daies at GAZA, for that he thought it not good to giue any long time of breathing vnto his discouraged enemies, now twise ouerthrowne, or to suffer the new Sultan (not yet well setled in his kingdome) to grow stronger by new preparations & supplies raised in the most populous and plentifull countrie of ÆGYPT. Which to let, although it required great hast in setting forward, and serued as spurs vnto him naturally hasting to glorie and renowne; yet was his armie to be refreshed after so long and painfull trauell, and great prouision to be made for the carriage of water vpon camels all the way through the drie solitarie and sandie deserts. For betweene GAZA and CAIRE lie vast vnpeopled and barren sands, which moued by the wind, rise vp in billowes in manner of a wrought sea so troublesome, that oftentimes it is not possible to see for dust: & the light sands in many places gauled deepe with
E the wind, wonderfully troubleth the wearie passengers. But such a sudden calme ensued the great raine which fel but a few daies before, that *Selymus* vnto his great good fortune wanted nothing that he could wish, for the happie conducting of his armie: for the ayre was become so calme, that there was no blast of wind to raise the sand to trouble their sight; and withall such plentie of water was found almost in euerie place by reason of the aboundant raine, which being not yet sunke farre into the sand, afforded them water in such plentie if they digged but two foot deepe, that the souldiers commonly thought it needlesse to carrie any bottle of water for feare of thirst. Yet for all that, the wild Arabians failed not in all that passage, on euerie side to houer about the Turks armie (as haukes ouer their pray) and suffered none of them to straggle out of order, or stay behind the armie, but they were straightway snatcht vp and slaine. Against whom *Selymus*
F prouided an easie remedie, by placing his field pieces in diuers parts of his armie, which by the direction of the leaders (as euerie man happened to be neerest vnto the danger) were forthwith discharged vpon the roaming enemie. And in the reareward of his armie were placed strong companies of harquebusiers, for defence of the weake and feeble soldiors, who could but softly follow the armie, and were therefore most subiect to danger.

By this meanes *Selymus* with some small losse receiued from the Arabians, in eight daies

all his armie, and therefore fearefully retiring, were vpon the way miſerably ſlaine by the Arabians: neither had any one of them eſcaped, if they had not met with *Iuleb* the gouernour of ACHAIA at the citie of RAMA: for he was alſo ſent from *Selymus* to *Sinan Baſſa* with a ſtrong companie of Græcian horſemen, by whoſe comming the furie of the Arabians was well repreſſed. Yet theſe pilfering people ſtill calling forth to the prey more & more of their leaders which dwelt in the mountaines adioyning, and being growne to a great armie, ouertooke the Turkes at a village called CARASBARA, where they enforced them to fight in a place of great diſaduantage. For the Arabians hauing before taken certain ſtraits, which cloſed in the paſſage at the further end of a large valley, ſhewed themſelues at once, before, behind, and on both ſides of the Turkes: their weapons were bow and arrowes and long ſpeares armed at both ends, which they nimbly handled, after the manner of the Moores. Theſe weapons they moſt skilfully vſed vpon their ſwift horſes, and both in their charge and retreat wounded their enemies deadly. So that the Turkes in number few, and for their horſemens ſtaues inferiour to their enemies, durſt not offer to charge them; but keeping cloſe together, hardly defended themſelues, ſtill making way as they might: and had vndoubtedly beene brought into extreame danger to haue beene vtterly loſt, had not *Iuleb* with foure peeces of artillerie which he brought with him for his defence, driuen them which kept the ſtraits from their high places, and ſo opening the way, with all ſpeed brought thorow his men: which ſtraits once paſſed, and comming into the open fields, he with more ſafetie marched forward, skirmiſhing a farre off with the enemie with his archers and harquebuſiers, and diſcharging his fieldpeeces where he ſaw the greateſt and thickeſt troups of thoſe wild people.

On the other part, the Arabians diſperſedly houering about them in troupes, were ſtill in the taile of the armie, and ſuch as were wounded or weake and could not follow the reſt, they ſlew; and ſought by all meanes to hinder their iourney, not ſuffering them (circumuented with ſo many dangers) either to refreſh themſelues, or to take any reſt. This was vnto the Turks a moſt diſmall day, for many of them tormented with thirſt, and weakened with wounds and extreame labour, gaue vp the goſt; and now no helpe remained in this deſperate eſtate, being ſtill beſet and hardly laied to with the multitude of thoſe fierce and deſperat enemies: when ſuddainely a great number of other Turks came to them in the mid way vnlooked for, being now in deſpaire and euen at the laſt caſt. For *Selymus* hauing left the Imbrahor-Baſſa with a ſtrong armie vpon the borders of PERSIA, for the defence of SYRIA and ASIA, and hauing ſent for new ſupplies of ſouldiers to CONSTANTINOPLE, which ſhould with a great fleet be tranſported into SYRIA, had now remoued from DAMASCO: and the better to prouide for victuals and forrage, which began now to grow ſcant in that waſted countrey, euery day ſent before great troupes and companies of his armie, as it were at certaine appointed times.

Selymus doubting Sinan Baſſa to haue been, loſt, becommeth melancholie.

So *Iuleb* deliuered of the preſent danger by the comming in of theſe freſh ſouldiers, met with *Selymus* the next day, and in order told him all that had happened vnto him and his firſt troups at GAZA and RAMA, and all the way after: and alſo what they ſuppoſed by coniectures to haue chanced to *Sinan Baſſa* with his armie, for the manifold wyles of ſo dangerous enemies. With which newes *Selymus* became exceeding melancholie: and thereupon thought it not good to goe any further, before he perfectly knew how all ſtood with *Sinan*, in whoſe fortune he had repoſed all the hope of his good ſucceſſe in that ſo great an enterpriſe. But whileſt he was in this dumpe, ſuddenly came the Syrian ſpies, who declaring vnto him all that *Sinan Baſſa* had done, conuerted that melancholie paſſion into no leſſe ioy and gladneſſe: for he ſaw that by that victorie, ÆGYPT was laid open vnto him, and his deſires as good as halfe accompliſhed in leſſe time than euer he expected.

Newes of Sinans victorie comforteth Selymus.

The next day after, he remoued with his armie to RAMA, and by the way as he went (to the terrour of others) burnt the dwellings together with the wiues and children of thoſe Arabians, who but a little before had done ſo much harme to his men in their paſſage. And from thence ſending before his footmen to *Sinan Baſſa* at GAZA, he himſelfe with his horſemen turned out of the way vpon the left hand to HIERVSALEM, to viſit that moſt ancient and famous citie, ſo much renowned both for the antiquitie thereof, and the fame of the religion of the Iewes. That vnpeopled and deſolate citie lay then defaced with the hugie ruines of the old ſacred and ſtately buildings; not inhabited by the Iewes, the ancient inhabitants thereof (who for their inexpiable guilt, as men exiled out of the world, haue neither country or reſting place) but for moſt part by a few

A a few poore Christians, who to the great shame and scorne of the Christian name, paied yearely a wonderfull tribute vnto the Sultan of ÆGYPT for the possession of the sacred sepulchre: when as the Christian princes flourishing at that time with glorie, power and wealth, could not by any motiue of immortall glorie or fame, be incited to reuenge so great an iniury; but deeming it (as should seeme) better agreeing with their state, to spend their time in idle vanities or mortall warre one against an other, than in the quarrell of the most true and Christian religion.

Selymus hauing reuerently worshipped the auncient monuments of the old prophets, and done especiall sacrifice vnto his great prophet *Mahomet*; gaue vnto the Christian priests keepers of the place (as vnto good and deuout men) money to maintaine them for six moneths: and
B staying at HIERVSALEM but one night, marched in foure daies to the rest of his army at GAZA. Where by the way, he had continuall skirmishes both day and night with the Arabians: for they according to their wonted manner, were desperatly at hand in euerie place; and where the straightnesse of the waies enforced the Turks to extenuat their rankes, there would they be readie to skirmish with them, and suddenly vnlooked for come to handie blowes: and when they came into the vallies, they tumbled downe the mountaines vpon them great stones which they had for that purpose before prouided. At which time the Turkes harquebusiers in whom they had greatest confidence, serued them to little purpose: for the weather was so tempestuous and extreame moist with continuall raine, that the pouder in their flaskes became wet and vnseruiceable, and hardly could they keepe fire in their matches. Yet by the valiantnesse of the Ianizaries
C the matter was so vsed, that neere vnto the person of the emperour no great harme was done by those naked robbers: for climbing vp the hils with pikes in their hands, they driue them from their standings, and enforced them to abandon the straights and high places.

But *Sinan Bassa* who after his victorie returning to GAZA, had put to death the authors of the late reuolt, confiscated their goods, and exacted of the people in generall a great sum of money, as the iust punishment of their false treacherie: hearing now of the comming of *Selymus*, went to meet him with his victorious souldiers, furnished with the spoiles of their enemies. Whom *Selymus* most honourably receiued, and gaue generally to the captaines, and particularly to the most valiant of the common souldiers, garments of silke, with a great sum of money in reward of their good seruice. 1517

Sinan Bassa meeteth to meet Selymus as he was comming to Gaza.

D After that, he staied but foure daies at GAZA, for that he thought it not good to giue any long time of breathing vnto his discouraged enemies, now twise ouerthrowne, or to suffer the new Sultan (not yet well setled in his kingdome) to grow stronger by new preparations & supplies raised in the most populous and plentifull countrie of ÆGYPT. Which to let, although it required great hast in setting forward, and serued as spurs vnto him naturally hasting to glorie and renowne; yet was his armie to be refreshed after so long and painfull trauell, and great prouision to be made for the carriage of water vpon camels all the way through the drie solitarie and sandie desarts. For betweene GAZA and CAIRE lie vast vnpeopled and barren sands, which moued by the wind, rise vp in billowes in manner of a wrought sea so troublesome, that oftentimes it is not possible to see for dust: & the light sands in many places gauled deepe with
E the wind, wonderfully troubleth the wearie passengers. But such a sudden calme ensued the great raine which fel but a few daies before, that *Selymus* vnto his great good fortune wanted nothing that he could wish, for the happie conducting of his armie: for the ayre was become so calme, that there was no blast of wind to raise the sand to trouble their sight; and withall such plentie of water was found almost in euerie place by reason of the aboundant raine, which being not yet sunke farre into the sand, afforded them water in such plentie if they digged but two foot deepe, that the souldiers commonly thought it needlesse to carrie any bottle of water for feare of thirst. Yet for all that, the wild Arabians failed not in all that passage, on euerie side to houer about the Turks armie (as haukes ouer their pray) and suffered none of them to straggle out of order, or stay behind the armie, but they were straightway snatcht vp and slaine. Against whom *Selymus*
F prouided an easie remedie, by placing his field pieces in diuers parts of his armie, which by the direction of the leaders (as euerie man happened to be neerest vnto the danger) were forthwith discharged vpon the roaming enemie. And in the reareward of his armie were placed strong companies of harquebusiers, for defence of the weake and feeble soldiors, who could but softly follow the armie, and were therefore most subiect to danger.

By this meanes *Selymus* with some small losse receiued from the Arabians, in eight daies

march

march drew neere to CAIRE, *Sinan Bassa* going before him, who with his Europeian souldiers G
still kept one daies iourney before. There is a village about sixe miles distant from the citie of CAIRE called MATHAREA, famous for the plentie of most excellent baulme: which liquor of all others most fragrant and soueraign, distilled out of low trees there planted, whose vttermost rind the people cut with yuorie kniues to giue the liquor passage: which baulme, for the notable vertues thereof, being not elsewhere to be had, mens diseases and wanton desires haue made of a wonderfull price. Into that place neere vnto a village called RHODANIA, had *Tomombeius* conuaied all his new and old prouision of artillerie; and had drawne deepe ditches ouerthwart all the field, and crosse the high way, which he had closely couered ouer with weake hurldes and earth, as if it had beene firme ground. And he with his Mamalukes (in number about twelue H
thousand) and a great multitude of Arabian horsemen lay in places conuenient, of purpose that when the Turkish battels should approach, they should first feele the force of his great ordinance before they came within the shot of their arrowes, and forthwith vpon great aduantage, with all his forces suddenly to set vpon them disordered and entrapped. All which things were so cunningly and so politikely dispatched and done, that there was none in the Sultans armie which doubted of the good successe of that day: and a great mischiefe had vndoubtedly befallen the Turkes, had not fortune which fauoured *Selymus* and frowned vpon *Tomombeius* (or more truely to say, the fatall period of that kingdome so requiring) by the false treacherie of a few, frustrated the great endeuours of the Mamalukes.

Tomombeius seeketh to entrap the Turkes.

There was in the Sultans armie amongst the souldiers of the court, foure Epirot Mamalukes, I
who grieued to see *Tomombeius* contrarie to their desires, preferred vnto the kingdome by others of a contrarie faction: whether it were vpon a malicious disposition, or vpon hope of reward and better entertainement; or for that in so great a declination of their kingdome, they thought it good to seeke for new friends of more assurance, fled secretly to *Sinan Bassa*, as to a most famous captaine and one of their owne nation. For this great commaunder *Sinan*, *Selymus* his right hand, was borne in a poore countrey village of EPIRVS, in the mountaine countrey of AMBRACIA, whom a wonderfull mischance preferred to that height of credit and wealth: for it is reported, that a sow kept in the house wherein he was born, bit off his genitories, being then but a child, as he lay by chance sleeping in the shadow; and being made of greater esteeme by that mishap, was by them which tooke vp delicat minions for the Turkish emperour, brought K
to CONSTANTINOPLE, and presented to the great emperour *Mahomet*, *Selymus* his grandfather: where fortune by the fatall direction of his good hap, aduanced him to his appointed honours, whom she had long before dismembred. By these fugitiue Mamalukes, *Selymus* and *Sinan* were instructed of all the deuises of the enemie, and especially what stratagems *Tomombeius* had with great cunning and policie deuised: whereinto they must needs fall, if they should go directly on, and not forsake the hie way. Wherfore guided by the same fugitiues, they fetch a great compasse on the left hand, and by an vnused way, before it was day hauing escaped the front of their enemies campe, with all the dangers prepared for them; they came and shewed themselues at their backs in order of battell, with their great artillerie readie bent, because they were desirous without de ay to ioyne battell.

L

Tomombeius now too late perceiuing that his plot was discouered by the treason of some of his owne people, although he was therewith aboue measure grieued; for that all which he had with so great industrie and the labour of so many men brought to passe, was through spitefull fortune made frustrat, and in a moment brought to nought: yet for all that (as he was a man of an inuincible courage) presently entred into his wonted and deepe deuises, and calling vnto him his chiefe commaunders, quickly told them what he would haue done. Now in this short moment of time, he was to doe many things at once; the signall was to be giuen for the souldiers to mount their horses, and to make themselues readie; the order of his campe was to bee changed; his battell to be ordered; his souldiers to be encouraged; and all his great ordinance, as the case required, quite contrarie way to be turned: all which things, as they could but hardly and troublesomely by one commaunder be directed, so were they hastily and disorderly at once done by many. But aboue all other things, the great concourse of people for turning and remouing the great artillerie most troubled the well ordering of the rest: for many of them were hugie yron pieces of great waigh, made fast in stocks of wood, with rings and yron claspes, after the old and rude manner of ship ordinance; which for their exceeding & ponderous waight,

The comming of Selymus vnexpected way, maketh great confusion in Tomombeius campe.

M

could

A could not be out of their places remoued, but by the ſtrength of many horſes, and the great labour of men, with leauers and roules put vnder them: and ſuch as were mounted vpon carriages when they were drawne through all parts of the campe, with the great clamor of the diſordered and haſtie people, ſome drawing, ſome thruſting forward the ſame, with their tumultuous ſtirre and doings, wonderfully troubled the other ſouldiers as they were mounting to horſe and repairing toward their enſignes. But two things maruellouſly helped theſe difficulties, the ſoldiers cheerefulneſſe, and conſtancie; which was ſuch as paſſeth credit: For they did not vpon any apprehenſion of feare faile either in hope or courage, as oftentimes it happeneth in ſuddaine accidents, wherein euen the old approued ſouldiers doe many times faile of their wonted valor.

B And although they were twice ouercome in battell, yet ſtill they were of greater ſpirit and confidence, as men deſtitute neither of courage or skill, but onely of fortune.

Wherefore *Tomombeius* hauing with much adoe ordered this battell, and his ſouldiers with great cheerefulneſſe deſiring the ſignall to be giuen, commaunded all the multitude of his Arabians to compaſſe in the wings of the enemies battell behind, and ſo to skirmiſh with them: that ſo (if it were poſſible) the Turkes horſemen might with the danger of the doubtfull fight with ſuch an vncertaine enemie, be diſordered before he ſet forward to charge them with his troups: and withall commaunded his great ordinance (which was now turned vpon the enemie) to be preſently diſcharged. So did the Turks likewiſe, diſcharging at once from a conuenient diſtance both their greater & ſmaller ordinance, and ſpeedily recharging them, brought them within an

C arrow ſhot; ſo that for a good ſpace they lay beating the one the other on both ſides with their great artillerie onely: in which manner of fight the Ægyptian canoniers were almoſt all ſlaine, and many of their fieldpieces broken by force of the enemies ſhot. For *Selymus* had in his camp many excellent and skilfull canoniers, whom he had with great entertainement allured out of ITALIE and GERMANIE: and eſpecially of thoſe refuce Iewes, which by the zeale of king *Ferdinand* being driuen out of SPAINE, afterwards to the ſhame of the Chriſtians, diſperſed thoſe rare and deadly deuices through the Eaſt. The cheefe of theſe canoniers was one *Iacobus è Regio Lepidi*, a cunning enginer, who but a little before ouercome by the Turks rewards, abjuring the Chriſtian religion, reuolted vnto the Mahometane ſuperſtition.

Chriſtian canoniers ſerue the Turkes againſt the Egyptians.

But after that the Mamalukes had brought the matter to battell on both ſides, they gaue out a

D moſt hideous and dreadfull crie, and with exceeding furie aſſailed the Turkes in three places: for *Selymus* ſtill keeping his wonted order, approched his enemies with his battell in forme of an halfe Moone. *Muſtapha Baſſa* had the leading of the Aſian horſemen in the right wing: and *Ionuſes Baſſa* of the Europeians in the left: he himſelfe ſtood in the maine battell with the ſquadron of his truſtie Ianizaries, and great ſtore of artillerie: but *Sinan* the Eunuch Baſſa, generall of the field, led after him a great number of moſt valiant horſemen, drawne out of euery troupe to be readie againſt all the vncertaine euents that might happen in the battell; vnto whom he ioyned fiue hundred harquebuſiers, Ienizaries, men of wonderfull courage and actiuitie, ſelected out of *Selymus* his owne ſquadron, to relieue ſuch part of the armie as ſhould chance to be moſt preſſed by the enemie.

The order of Selymus his armie. Sinan Baſſa Generall of the field.

E So almoſt at one time, whileſt *Tomombeius* ſtood in the maine battell againſt *Selymus*, and the wings of the Mamalukes with equall battell encountred the wings of the Turkes, and the Arabians alſo valiantly charging them in the rereward as they had in charge, foure ſharp battels were at once made in diuers places. It is reported by ſome that were preſent in that battell, that what for the clamour and crie of ſouldiers, what for the noiſe of drums and trumpets and ſuch like inſtruments of warre, what for the thundering of ordinance, clattering of armour, and riſing of the duſt, all mens minds were ſo confounded and abaſhed, that running on headlong as men furious and deſperat, when neither their ſpeeches could be heard, their tokens knowne, their enſignes ſeene, or captains vnderſtood, miſtaking one another in that hurly burly, they ſlew many of their friends in ſteed of their enemies: for neuer battels met together with greater hatred, nei-

F ther did euer two great kings with leſſe care of their perſons and ſafetie more reſolutely or deſperatly make ſhew of their ſtrength and courage. For both of them with like danger both of themſelues and of their armies, ſeeing plainly that they had put both their liues and kingdomes to the hazard of a battell, promiſed vnto themſelues no other hope of ſaftie, but what they ſhould obtaine by victorie. *Gazelles* deſirous both of honour and of reuenge, to requite the Europeian horſemen with like ſlaughter as he had before receiued from them not far from GAZA,

with

with wonderfull furie aſſailed *Ionuſes Baſſa*, and at the firſt encounter brake his firſt rankes, and ouerthrew certaine of his guidons: at which time the Arabians preſſing couragiouſly in at their backes, enforced thoſe victorious troupes, which in all battels had hitherto carried away the priſe (the very flower of THRACIA, THESSALIA, EPYRVS, MACEDONIA, and GRÆCIA) to flie and ſhew their backes, which neuer enemie had before that time ſeene. At which time *Sinan Baſſa* carefully attending euery accident, came ſpeedily in with his moſt valiant troupes of freſh men vpon the ſide of the enemie, and reſtored againe the battell, now declining and foulely diſordered. But whiles *Sinan*, who in this his laſt worthie labour had interrupted the manifeſt victorie of *Gazelles*, was with an inuincible courage valiantly fighting in the head of his battell, he was by the comming in of the courageous captain *Bidon* with his Mamalukes, ouercharged and ſlaine. His moſt valiant followers alſo labouring to reſcue and carry away his dead bodie, were by *Gazelles* vnfolding his troupes (that ſtanding thin, they might at more libertie vſe their ſwords, in which manner of fight the Mamalukes far excelled the Turks) for moſt part ſlaine, and the reſt put to flight: and that choſen companie of fiue hundered of the moſt valiant Ianizaries, now deſtitute of their horſemen, when they had moſt couragiouſly done what was poſſible for men to doe, being compaſſed round with the Mamaluke horſemen, were all in a trice cut in peeces and troden vnderfoot. Thus reſteth this Eunuch Baſſa in the bed of fame, who liuing, had the leading of this moſt warlike emperour *Selymus*, his greateſt armies in his moſt dangerous warres.

Sinan Baſſa with moſt of his followers ſlaine by Bidon.

Muſtapha in the other wing of the Turkes battell comming on courageouſly with his Aſian horſemen, did ſore preſſe the left wing of the Ægyptians (whereof *Helymis* the Diadare, and *Giapal*, two valiant captaines had the leading) who but a little before had receiued great harme by the great ordinance which was diſcharged out of the middeſt of *Selymus* his battell ouerthwart the field: Which *Muſtapha* perceiuing, and deſiring to blot out the old infamie he had before receiued, did fiercely preſſe vpon them, ſo diſordered, and with his whole troupes ouerthrew their broken rankes; and gliſtering in his bright armour, with a loud voice encouraged his Aſian ſouldiers, exhorting them that day with valiant proweſſe or honourable death, to recouer their ancient honour of late loſt in the fields of ALEPPO,

Muſtapha with his Aſian ſouldiers ouerthroweth the left wing of the Sultans armie.

At the ſame time alſo *Tomombeius* breaking through the middle battell of the Turkes horſemen, was entred into the ſquadron of the footmen, with his crooked ſcimitar giuing many a deadly wound, himſelfe being a valiant big made man, and of great ſtrength. The Arabians had alſo in a ring encloſed the vttermoſt parts of the Turks armie, & in many places enforced them to turne their battell vpon them, being ſore charged with a doubtfull fight both before and behind: when *Selymus* ſet forward with his battell of footmen, and his ſquadron of Ianizaries, his laſt and moſt aſſured refuge in that his hard diſtreſſe, whoſe inuincible force, neither the courageous barbed horſes, nor their victorious riders were able to abide: for part of them with their harquebuſiers, and the reſt with their pikes, had ſo ſtrongly ſet the front of their battell, that nothing was able to ſtand whereſoeuer that firme battell, linked together as if it had been but one whole entire bodie, ſwayed. Yet was this cruell battell continued with diuers fortune on both ſides, from foure of the clocke vntill the going downe of the Sunne; neither was there any part of their armies, which had not with diuers ſucceſſe and change of fortune, endured the furie of that battell: for both the victors and the vanquiſhed being enraged with an implacable hatred one againſt another, fought deſperately as men prodigall of their liues: The Mamalukes diſdaining to haue the victory wrong out of their hands by them whom they had in ſo many places diſcomfited, and the Turkes taking it in no leſſe ſcorne, that they, whom but of late they had ouercome and vanquiſhed in two great battels, ſhould now the third time make ſo ſtrong reſiſtance. So that on both ſides their fainting hands and bodies both wearied and weakened with wounds, ſupported only with anger and obſtinacie of mind, ſeemed yet ſufficient to haue maintained that bloudie battell vntill the next day, if the darkeneſſe of the night now comming on, had not made an end of that dayes ſlaughter.

Tomombeius vndoubtedly vanquiſhed, and fearing to be vtterly ouerthrown, firſt cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, that his Mamalukes which were indeed not able to withſtand the Ianizaries, might not ſeeme to be put to flight, but rather as men commaunded, to retire. Which hee thought did concerne much both for the encouraging of his ſouldiers, and for the keeping of his own credit and eſtimation with his ſubiects. For now the ſelfeſame fortune which had deceiued his

A his firſt hopes, ſeemed vnto him (as it fareth with men in diſtreſſe, yet ſtill hoping for better) to promiſe him more proſperous ſucceſſe, if he were not diſcouraged: but reſeruing ſuch remainders of his forces as were left, he ſhould againe couragiouſly renew the war.

The battel thus broken off by the approch of the night, the Turkes as victors enioying the tents and great artillerie of their enemies, purſued the Mamalukes vntill midnight, who held on their way to CAIRE, in maner as if they had fled. This great battel was fought vpon a Thurſday the foure and twentieth day of Ianuarie, in the yere 1517. The Diadare was taken in the flight mortally wounded, and with him the valiant captain *Bidon*, hauing in the battell one of his legs broken in the knee with a faulſhion ſhot, wherwith his horſe was alſo ſlaine vnder him. *Selymus* B commanded them both the next day to be ſlain, either for that their wounds were ſuppoſed to be incurable, or els for that it was his pleaſure, with the death of thoſe two honourable perſonages to appeaſe the angrie ghoſt of *Sinan Baſſa*, whoſe death he wonderfully lamented.

Selymus cauſeth the Diadare and the valiant captaine Bidon to be ſlaine.

The Turkes although they ſtill preuailed, yet was their armie greatly impaired euen in their proſperous ſucceſſ and fortunat battels: the fourth part of their armie was conſumed with ſickneſſe and the ſword, and that daies labour had tyred a great number of their horſes, beſide the long iourney they had before indured. For which cauſes *Selymus* was inforced to ſlacke ſomewhat of his accuſtomed haſt: for as yet he had no experience of the diſpoſition of the Ægyptians which dwelt at CAIRE; neither could he vnderſtand by any certaine report, where *Tomombeius* ſtaied, or vpon what reſolution he reſted. Which things not throughly known, he thought C it not good to commit himſelfe and his armie into that moſt populous and ſpacious citie: but ſtaying foure daies at the village of MATHAREA and RHODANIA, carefully prouided for his wounded ſouldiors, and cauſed the bodies of ſuch as were ſlaine to be buried; but the dead carkaſſes of his enemies he left to the birds of the aire and beaſts of the field. And afterward remouing his campe thence, that he might more commodiouſly water, he came into the plaines between old CAIRE and BVLACH.

In the meane while *Tomombeius* nothing diſcouraged with ſo many miſhaps, gathering together the Mamalukes from all places, encamped his armie commodiouſly betweene the new citie of CAIRE and the riuer Nilus, he alſo armed eight thouſand Æthyopian ſlaues (which kind of men he had not before vſed, for the remembrance of their old rebellion,) beſide that he ope- D ning the old armourie, put armes into the hands of Mamalukes ſonnes, and Moores (his vaſſals) into the hands of the Iewes and Arabians alſo, and couragiouſly prepared for a greater and more mortall war than before. But for as much as there were many difficulties in the managing thereof, hauing almoſt loſt all his great artillerie, with many of his moſt valiant horſemen ſlaine in the former battels; he in his troubled mind did ſo caſt the doubtfull hopes of his laſt deuice, which cruell neceſſitie wrong from him, that for as much as he had by manly force nothing preuailed in open field, he would now altogether vſe policie: as he which of late hauing vnfortunately made proofe of his ſtrength, his forces yet all whole, thought it not good againe to aduenture the fortune of a battell: neither was he in hope if he ſhould ſo do, to be able with his ſmall power and deſperate ſupplies to protract the war vntill the heat of Summer, as he de- E ſired. Wherefore he reſolued by night to aſſaile the Turkes campe, and if poſſibly he could, to ſet it on fire. For which his deuice he ſeemed to haue two reaſons: whereof the one conſiſted in the ſpeedie execution, that he might deſperatly attempt to do ſome notable exploit in the night before the enemie ſhould perceiue the weakeneſſe of his power, which was not great, and ſcambled vp vpon the ſuddain; as alſo before he himſelfe ſhould grow into contempt with the naturall Ægyptians; who deſiring nothing more than to caſt off the ſeruile yoke of the Mamaluke gouernment, with wauering minds expected but ſome fit occaſion to rebel: the other was, that by the benefit of the night he might auoid the danger of the great ordinance; which in ſuddain accidents, and eſpecially in the darkneſſe of the night, ſerueth to little or no purpoſe; in which kind of ſtrength he had before to his great loſſe learned, that his enemies were far too F good for him. But theſe his reaſonable policies, when all things were in readineſſe to haue put the ſame in execution, were in like maner as the firſt ouerthrown by the treaſon of ſuch as ſecretly reuolted from him to the enemie.

The purpoſe of Tomombeius diſcouered to Selymus.

For *Selymus* vnderſtanding the whole plot, by certaine Mamalukes (which hauing the kings euill fortune in contempt, as it commonly falleth out with men in miſerie, daily forſooke him) commanded his armie to be alwaies in readineſſe, and making great fires in diuers places of his

campe, kept moſt carefull and vigilant watch. By which his diligence it came fitly to paſſe, that G
the night following *Tomombeius* approching his campe, was repulſed, with no ſmall loſſe of his firſt troups which vnaduiſedly were gone on too far: and had no doubt that night thereby receiued his laſt ouerthrow, but that he wiſely miſdoubting the vnwonted light of the fires ſhining in all parts of the campe, in time called backe his haſting troups, which were themſelues with more haſt than good ſpeed marching into the very mouth of the Turks great artillerie, bent of purpoſe vpon them.

Tomombeius diſappointed of his purpoſe, by perſuaſion of his chieftains tretired to CAIRE: for the Mamalukes ſtill put to the worſe in plaine field, thought it beſt to proceed in another manner; perſuading him, with the whole ſtrength of his armie to man all the conuenient places of that great citie, otherwiſe expoſed to the enemies pleaſure, and ſo to keepe the Turkes from H
entring. For they as men brought to this extremitie, that they muſt now fight for their dwellings, liues, wiues, and children: thought it more honourable and better agreeing with their ancient glorie, ſo to do in their ſight, and in the entrance of their houſes, than elſewhere farther off. Wherefore the Mamalukes comming home to CAIRE, furniſhed all their families and flat roofs of their houſes with all manner of weapons: euerie one of them now humbly requeſting the Ægyptians, their neighbours, to take vp armes againſt the Turkes their ancient and mortal enemies, and not to ſuffer themſelues to be cowardly ſlain, their goods ſpoiled, and their wiues and children carried away into moſt miſerable captiuitie; foraſmuch as the mercileſſe and greedie enemie, if he ſhould once get the victorie, would no whit ſpare them, although they ſhould as
neuters ſtand looking on, and helpe neither partie: for victorie (as they ſaid) alwaies full of inſo- I
lent pride, would know no friend but ſuch as with reſolute hand did their vttermoſt deuoire in time of danger, for the obtaining thereof.

The Ægytians diuerſly affected towards the Mamalukes.

There were many of the wealthieſt of the Ægyptians, who as they thought the change of the ſtate would bee hurtfull to their trades and wealth, ſo were they readie in all they could to helpe the Mamalukes their old lords: ſo on the other ſide there were many of the middle ſort of the citizens, and a far greater multitude of the baſeſt ſort of the vulgar people, who hauing little or nothing to loſe, liued in hope now to make a gaine of other mens loſſes; and withall, remembring what miſerie & ſlauerie they had endured about the ſpace of three hundred yeres, vnder the proud gouernment of the Mamalukes, kept themſelues cloſe in their houſes, expecting K
the laſt euent of wars; and ſecretly reioicing in their hearts, that the time was come (God ſo appointing) wherein their outragious and cruell maſters ſhould be iuſtly and worthely puniſhed for their oppreſſion and hard dealing; and that which gladded them the more, that the reuenge ſhould be taken by the hazard of other mens liues, with which wiſhed ſpectacle they well hoped ſhortly to fiill their deſirous eies.

Tomombeius with much labour and greater care, fortified all the gates and entrances of the citie, appointed vnto euerie ſtreet a particular captaine, in euery publicke place encouraged the people, omitting nothing that could poſſibly be done or deuiſed; and that which in ſo great a calamitie and danger was of all other things the hardeſt, with cheerfull countenance and vndaunted courage, made ſhew of greateſt hope. The Mamalukes alſo, beſide the neceſſitie (which L
in caſes of extremitie is of power to encourage and make deſperat the faint hearted coward) prouoked with emulation, ſtraue amongſt themſelues who ſhould beſt performe all the dueties of worthie captaines and ſouldiors: for euerie one of them according to his conceit and deuiſe, cauſed great ditches, or great timber logs to be caſt ouerthwart the ſtreets; ſome in couert trenches ſet vp ſharpe ſtakes, whereupon the enemie falling vnawares might be gaged; otherſome according to their ſtore, furniſhed the windowes and fronts of their houſes in the greateſt and moſt open ſtreets, with harquebuſiers: all which things with many mo were done with ſuch celeritie, that none of the beſt or moſt honourable of the Mamalukes refuſed to handle a ſpade or a mattocke, or to put his hand to any other baſe labour; ſo that nothing could be ſooner deuiſed, but it was forthwith performed.

The deſcription of the great citie of Caire.

This great and ancient citie of CAIRE was not compaſſed with any wals, yet were there diuers gates and entrances which led into it: wherof one broad ſtraight ſtreet came directly from the Eaſt gate vnto the caſtle and middle of the citie; the reſt were ſo narrow and crooked, that by them no great artillerie could poſſibly be brought, or ſouldiors enter without great danger. Into this place eſpecially, had *Tomombeius* conuaied his chiefeſt ſtrength: for that he knew his

enemies

A enemies muſt of neceſſitie come in that way for the largeneſſe of the ſtreets; the other parts of the citie he kept with leſſe garriſons. But the innermoſt part where the caſtle ſtood, was kept with a verie great and ſtrong garriſon of moſt valiant ſoldiors: that whither ſoeuer the clamor of the enemie or danger of the battell ſhould call, they might ſpeedily from thence come with reliefe. For why, that citie of all others the greateſt, could not with ſo ſmall power as *Tomombeius* then had, be in euery place and entrance ſufficiently defended: for within the circuit of MEMPHIS (now called CAIRE) are contained three great cities, which ioined one to another with ſtragling bridges, make one citie; whereof the greateſt and moſt populous, is at this day called New CAIRE. It lyeth in length ſix miles, alongſt the riuer Nilus, from which it is equally diſtant a mile: the breadth thereof, exceedeth not a mile and a quarter. In the middeſt thereof
B is a caſtle ſtanding vpon a little riſing ground, ſomewhat higher than the reſt of the citie; more notable for the greatneſſe and beautie thereof, than for the manner of the fortification: for in it were many princely gardens, a faire ſtreet with many large galleries, diuers faire tilt-yards and courts, with ſtately chambers opening euerie way: the vtter part thereof was garniſhed round about with towers, fortreſſes, and beautifull battlements; from whence all parts of the citie, the riuer Nilus running by, and the high Pyramides were moſt pleaſantly to be ſeene. Not far from this princely pallace, is a lake made by the hand of man, the water wherein deriued from the riuer Nilus, is on euery ſide incloſed with moſt ſtately buildings: and is a place of wonderfull pleaſure, when as a man ſtanding at a window may take both fiſh and foule, whereof there is in the lake great ſtore. Another lake there is far greater and fairer than this, in forme of a triangle,
C in the vttermoſt part of this new citie of CAIRE toward BVLACH: it is filled at the riſing of Nylus by a great ſluce made of ſtone with yron floudgates; and being ioyned to the great riuer by a broad channel, is able to beare ſmall boats and barges: wherin gentlemen for their diſport vſed to ſolace themſelues both by day and night in courting their miſtreſſes. The houſes were all gallantly built afront all about the lake, with porches garniſhed with open galleries, and paued with ſmooth marble euen to the brim of the lake: there the citizens in their more proſperous times vſed to row vp and down in boats, and with pleaſant muſicke to delight the liſtening eares of the hearers. On the Eaſt ſide of this lake ſtood a moſt ſumptuous and ſtately pallace, the late worke of queene *Dultibe* wife of the great Sultan *Caitbeius*, for manner of the building and inward beautie far exceeding the other proud buildings of this pleaſant place: for the wals gli-
D ſtered with red marble, and pargeting of diuers colours, yea all the houſe was paued with checker and teſſeled worke; the windowes and gates were made of alablaſter, white marble, and much other ſpotted marble; the poſts and wickets of maſſie yuorie, checkered with gliſtering blacke ebonie; ſo curiouſly wrought in winding knots, as might eaſilier ſtay than ſatisfie the eies of the wondering beholder: neither was the furniture in it inferiour to the magnificence of the building, but ſuch as might fitly anſwere both a princes ſtate, and a womans quaint deſire. All which things ſhortly after (*Selymus* hauing obtained the victorie) carried to CONSTANTINOPLE; not ſparing the verie wals, but plucking them downe, ſo to take out the curious ſtones whole. Beſide the goodly buildings about that lake, in euerie place of New CAIRE was to
E be ſeene the faire houſes of the chiefe Mamalukes; more commended for their commodiouſneſſe, than for the manner of their building. The reſt of the buildings of the citie was but low, repleniſhed with the common ſort of baſe people. There are yet extant in diuers places of the citie, three churches of the Chriſtians; whereof one is holden in greater reuerence than the reſt, for the fame of a low vault in the ground, where it is reported the virgin *Mary* flying the furie of *Herod*, to haue repoſed herſelfe with her child *Chriſt Ieſus* the Sauiour of the world: another dedicated to the virgin *Barbara*: and the third to *S. George*, which amongſt thoſe nations are of great fame. Vnto the citie of New CAIRE, the citie of BVLACHA is ioyned almoſt with continuall buildings. It is of an high and ſtately building, lying cloſe vnto the riuer Nilus, and was in Summer time frequented by the Mamalukes and other noble men, that they might at their pleaſure from their high places behold the inundation of that famous riuer: There land all the ſhips
F which come vp the riuer; yet the great meeting of the merchants is at New CAIRE. On the other ſide of the riuer ouer againſt BVLACH, are many cottages made of hurdles and leaues of date trees, the dwellings of poore fiſhermen and watermen. A little aboue BVLACH is old CAIRE, which is alſo ioyned vnto the new citie with continuall buildings; yet diſtant from it about two miles and an halfe, and ſtandeth alſo faſt by the riuer of Nilus. Ouer againſt it in the

middest of the riuer is an Iſland, notable for the pleaſantneſſe of the gardens and banqueting houſes therin: In it is an ancient temple, famous for the loue of king *Pharaos* daughter, and the danger of *Moſes* (a moſt ancient hiſtorie, yet euery where there ſtill freſh in memorie.) But moſt part of the buildings of old CAIRE, are now grown into gardens and rude ruines. It is ſuppoſed by many probable coniectures, that there ſometime ſtood the ancient citie of MEMPHIS. Vpon the banke of the riuer, the late Sultan *Campſon* built a ſumptuous tower, ouertopping the caſtle in new CAIRE, to conuay water thither out of Nilus; which being by many wheeles and ingenious deuiſes forced into the top therof, and there receiued into great ceſterns, was from thence by pipes of ſtone and lead, conuaied into all places of the kings great pallace at new CAIRE. G

The pyramides of Ægypt.

About fiue miles diſtant from old CAIRE on AFRICKE ſide, ſtand the Pyramides, monuments of the barbarous Ægyptian kings vanitie; whoſe proud names and titles Time hath worne out of thoſe huge and wonderfull buildings, of purpoſe made for the vaine eterniſing of their fame and endleſſe wealth: ſo that of them it may now well be ſaid, H

Miramur perijſſe homines? monumenta fatiſcunt:
Interitus ſaxis nominibuſq; venit.

What wonder we that men do die? the ſtately tombes do weare:
The verie ſtones conſume to nought, with titles they did beare.

Within them are the ſupulchers of the old Ægytian kings, diuided into chappels, garniſhed with ſtone of great price curiouſly wrought. Yet are thoſe places loathſome of ſmell, and for darkneſſe thereof, dreadfull to behold: for as men go downe to come into them by a narrow way, almoſt ſwarued vp with rubbidge, their lights are oftentimes put out with the dampe of the earth, and ſwarmes of remiſe flying about their eares. Some hauing got to the tops of them report, that the watch tower of ALEXANDRIA, and the mouths of the riuer Nilus where it falleth into the ſea, is from thence well to be ſeene: and that for the great height of them, a man cannot ſhoot an arrow ſo high as the middeſt of the lower tower whereon the ſpire ſtandeth. Of theſe outragious buildings, are written many ſtrange and almoſt incredible things, as that an hundred thouſand men ſhould be occupied continually by the ſpace of twenty yeres, in building of one of them: during which time, the charges for roots, garlike and onions only, amounted to 1600 talents of ſiluer. Theſe wonderfull Pyramides only excepted, nothing is in the three cities more to be wondered at than the multitude of the people, who in number almoſt incredible go vp and downe euery ſtreet: but for moſt part ragged and torne, for that they which held any wealth, durſt not make any ſhew thereof for feare of the Mamalukes. The common people did then generally liue with mutton, hens, and riſe, whereof the countrie yeeldeth plentie: neither had they as yet the knowledge of the curious but vnwholeſome forced diſhes, and prouocations of gluttonie, which other nations had to their great coſt and hurt inuented. But again to our purpoſe. I K

Selymus encouraged his ſouldiers to the winning of Caire.

When *Selymus* vnderſtood aſſuredly that *Tomombeius* was retired into CAIRE, and that the Mamalukes hauing thither aſſembled all their ſtrength, were reſolued there to proue the vttermoſt of their fortune: he with his armie drew neerer vnto the citie, exhorting his ſouldiours to ſet down themſelues that day for euer to vanquiſh and ſubdue their enemies, whom they had ſo many times before ouerthrowne; and now a little to force themſelues for the gaining of the rewards due to their former labours and victories: which (as he ſaid) would be ſo many and ſo great, as they had not the full thereof before in their immoderat deſires imagined. Telling them moreouer, that there was but a few good ſouldiours left with the deſolat Sultan, who alreadie wounded and terrified, and notable longer to keepe the field, had made choice to end their daies in the ſight and armes of their wiues and children. Beſide that, he made them beleeue, that hee was voluntarily ſent for by the Ægyptians, deadly enemies vnto the verie name of the Mamalukes, whoſe vtter deſtruction they earneſtly expected: and had therefore promiſed him for the rooting vp of that wicked and cruell kind of men, to aſſaile them as accaſion ſerued out of their houſes, and ſo to further his victorie: yet neuertheleſſe he ſaid, That the accompliſhment of the whole matter, and to make a full conqueſt, conſiſted in the ſubduing of thoſe weake remainders of the vanquiſhed and ſcattered armie; for as much as they were not to bee accounted as men L M

quite

A quite ouercome, which did yet liue in hope, with weapons in their hands, poſſeſſed of the chiefe citie and ſeat of their empire. Wherefore that they ſhould thinke, that in the fortune of that day reſted the good or bad eſtate and condition of all their liues, honours, and fortunes. Aſſuring them, that it would be a matter but of ſmall labour and trauell to bring it to a wiſhed end, if they would in that new kind of fight (as they had alwaies valiantly in other battels vnder his conduct) but reſolue with themſelues that they would ouercome.

This his ſpeech much enflamed the minds of his ſouldiors, but the hope of ſo great a pray much more: ſo that being in good order and readie, they expected but the ſigne of the aſſault. When *Selmus* entring by the gate called Baſuela, did at one inſtant thruſt in his horſemen at diuers places of the great citie; but his Ianizaries be brough in by the greateſt and largeſt ſtreet.

B At the firſt entrance of the citie, horſemen incountred with horſemen, and made a bloudie fight in the narrow ſtreets & lanes: but the footmen placing their culuerings & falcons before them, and ſuddenly diſcharging them where they ſaw the thickeſt troupes of their enemies, cleered the ſtreet directly before them. But when they came to the baricadoes and trenches, and were by force to remoue the timber logs and other like things lying croſſe the ſtreets, and ſo to paſſe the trenches, the Mamalukes on the other ſide valiantly withſtanding them; they fought with ſuch force and obſtinacie on both parts, that in the memorie of man was neuer a more fierce or cruel battell ſeene. For both the Mamalukes and the Turkes in that fight ſhewed the vttermoſt of their ſtrength and power; not ignorant that in that as in the laſt, they were to fight not for honour onely, but euen for their liues and empire: when as greateſt rewards, or els extreme miſe-

A moſt mortall battell fought in Caire.

C rie, were by dallying fortune on both ſides propounded both to the vanquiſhed and vanquiſher. At theſe baricadoes the Turks receiued great loſſe, as alſo at the trenches: for they vnaduiſedly running on, the hindermoſt ſtill bearing forward the formoſt, tumbled by heapes one vpon another into the couert trenches, and were there miſerably impailed vpon the ſharpe ſtakes, for that purpoſe before ſet vp by the Mamalukes. The women alſo and children, with manly courage threw downe ſtones and tiles, and ſuch other things from the tops of their houſes, and out at their windowes vpon the Turks: and they on the other ſide as they could eſpie them, fetcht them off from thoſe high places with their harquebuſies, or elſe violently brake into the houſes from whence they were aſſailed, & there fought with diuers ſucceſſe. But moſt part of the Ægiptians, diligently obſeruing the fortune both of the one and of the other (accounting them both

D for enemies) with diuers affection aſſailed ſometimes the Turks, and ſometime the Mamalukes, ſeeming ſtill notably to help that part whom they ſaw for the time to haue the better. Many cruell and moſt terrible incounters were at once made in diuers places of the citie: for as they croſſed from ſtreet to ſtreet, ſometime the one, and ſometime the other hapned vpon new troupes of enemies: and they which as victors purſued their enemies a front, were by others following them at the heeles, ſlaine downeright; ſo that in the victorie no man could aſſure himſelfe of ſafe. The lanes and ſtreets (a moſt horrible thing to behold) did ſo flow with the bloud of them which lay by heapes ſlaine, that the duſt which at the firſt riſe wonderfull thicke, was quite laid as with a plentifull ſhowre of raine: the ayre was darkened with the ſmoke of ſhot, and ſhowers of arrowes: and ſuch was the clamour of the people and ſouldiours, the clatte-

E ring of armour, and report of the artillerie, that the earth ſeemed to tremble, and the houſes to fall downe.

This dreadfull and doubtfull battell enured two whole daies & nights without intermiſſion: yet ſo, that the Mamalukes in number few, and vnable to endure ſo long labour and watching, giuing ground by little and little, and forſaking their firſt munitions, retired themſelues farther into the citie. The third day, beſet with the greateſt dangers that could be, as to loſe themſelues with all that they had (which commonly enforceth mens courages in their laſt attempts) they renewed the battell with ſuch reſolution, that they conſtrained the Turkes to retire a great way, and for haſt to leaue behind them certaine of their field pieces. With which repulſe it is reported, that *Selymus* diſpairing of victorie, commaunded to ſet fire vpon the houſes; moued thereunto with iuſt diſpleaſure againſt the Ægyptians, for that *Ionuſes Baſſa*, now his greateſt man of

A long and terrible battell.

F warre, had euen then before his face receiued a dangerous wound in his head, by a ſtone caſt out at a window.

Now were the houſes pittifully burning, and the Ægyptians weeping and wailing cried for mercie. The Turkes themſelues fought but faintly, expecting the ſound of the retreat: when

newes was ſuddenly brought by many at once, that the enemies in the other ſide of the citie were, G
by *Muſtapha Baſſa* enforced to retire, and afterward had betaken themſelues to flight, as to their laſt refuge. For *Muſtapha* by the ouerture of the Ægyptians and fugitiue Mamalukes, was directed to a faire broad ſtreet, where the Mamalukes had left their horſes readie ſadled & brideled; that if the worſt ſhould chaunce, they might thither retire, and taking horſe, ſpeed themſelues to ſuch places of refuge as they had before thought vpon. All theſe horſes, reſerued by the Mamalukes as their laſt refuge, *Muſtapha* tooke away, hauing before put to flight the garriſon which kept them, which was but weake, conſiſting for moſt part of horſeboies and muletours; as ſafe ynough in ſuch a place of the citie as was leaſt to be ſuſpected or feared.

This accident (as it oftentimes falleth out in great and vnexpected miſchances) did not a little daunt the courage of the Mamalukes: who now ſeeing themſelues hardly beſet, and that dread- H
full battell by no other hope or helpe maintained, but onely by courage; being in their owne iudgement ouercome, betooke themſelues to flight. Moſt part of them haſting to the riuer of Nilus with *Tomombeius* (who in that battell had all in vaine proued the vttermoſt of his proweſſe and policie) being tranſported ouer the riuer in boats, fled into the countrie of SEGESTA: others of them hid themſelues in the houſes of the Ægyptians, and in the loathſome corners of the citie. A thouſand fiue hundred of the better ſort of the Mamalukes fled vnto the greateſt temple of their vaine prophet: where after they had a great while valiantly defended themſelues as out of a ſtrong caſtle, becauſe they would not yeeld themſelues but vpon honourable conditions, at laſt ouercome with thirſt, wearineſſe, and wounds, together with the furie of the great artillerie, they yeelded themſelues to the pleaſure of the conquerour: part of whom the furious ſouldiors ſlew in the porch of the ſame temple, and the reſt within a few daies after were ſent down the riuer to ALEXANDRIA, there to be afterwards murdered. I

Caire taken by Selymus.

Selymus hauing thus gained the victorie, forthwith ſent part of his armie to quench the fire then raging, and cauſed proclamation to be made through all the citie, That all the Mamalukes which would yeeld themſelues within twelue houres, ſhould be taken to mercie; but vnto ſuch as yeelded not within the appointed time, ſhould remaine no hope of life. Vnto the Ægyptians alſo that ſhould reueale the hidden Mamalukes, he propoſed rewards: but vnto ſuch as ſhould conceale them, he threatned to empaile them vpon ſtakes, and hauing ſold their wiues and children to burne their houſes: vpon which proclamation, many of the Mamalukes before crept into corners, came forth and yeelded themſelues, and were forthwith caſt into yrons. All which K
were ſhortly after, contrarie to his promiſe, moſt diſhonorably murthered in priſon, becauſe (as it was giuen out) they ſought meanes to haue eſcaped. Many of the Ægyptians which would not breake the bonds of faith and fidelitie with the Mamalukes their old lords, being appeached by their malicious neighbours, moſt conſtantly died for their friends, for whoſe ſake they had vowed themſelues to death.

With this victorie the Turkes growing inſolent, ranſackt euery place of the citie, drew out the Mamalukes that had hid themſelues, and ſlew them, rifled the houſes of the Ægyptians, as wel friends as foes, and left nothing ſhut vp or in ſecret. And ſome there were, which at one time in the ſame houſes raged with couetouſneſſe, crueltie, and luſt: euery man fitting his owne hu- L
mour, whereunto he was by nature or cuſtome inclined: for that in time and place of ſo great libertie, moſt men, but eſpecially the common ſouldior, flattereth himſelfe to the full, making conſcience of nothing, but meaſuring all thing according to his inſolent and diſordered appetite. The ſame day that *Selymus* tooke CAIRE, *Gazelles* (who but a little before by the commandement of *Tomombeius* was gone to THEBAIS, to aſſemble the Arabians and to entertaine new ſupplies) came to CAIRE; but finding all loſt, and ſeeing no poſſibilitie either by force or policie to preuaile, and therefore thinking it not good againe to proue the fortune of warre, which had ſo often with contrarie courſe fruſtrated the indeauours both of himſelfe and his partakers; he came to *Selymus*, vpon his faith before giuen for the ſafetie of himſelfe & his followers (which were three Arabian captaines, and a number of good horſemen) and being admitted to his pre- M
ſence, in the middeſt of his greateſt captaines boldly ſpake vnto him as followeth.

Gazelles his ſpeech to Selymus.

If fortune, whom by thy great valour thou haſt woon to bee thy friend, had not enuyed our felicitie, thou ſhouldeſt not haue (moſt noble Selymus, *at this time, after that all things haue giuen place vnto thy valour) matter whereby thou mighteſt excell others in worthineſſe of mind alſo. Whileſt*

we

A *we were in armes againſt thee for our liues and kingdome, our wealth and ſtate yet ſtanding whole, we alwaies as men proudly preſuming vpon their owne vaine ſtrength, made little account of thee or the name of the Turkes; yea, to ſay the truth, we hated thee as became enemies: But now that we haue to the vttermoſt of our power made proofe of thy force, and haue in all battels beene put to the worſe; admiring both thy wonderfull and diuine proweſſe, and moſt proſperous victories, not giuen thee without the prouidence of the immortall God, wee humbly come vnto thee by thy goodneſſe to better our hard and aduerſe fortune: that thou by ſparing and pardoning thy vanquiſhed and yeelding enemies (by which onely vertue men come neereſt vnto the gods) maieſt extend thy name and fame aboue the bounds of the reſt of thine immortall glorie. We haue faithfully ſerued* Tomom-
B beius, *ſo long as he held the ſtrength and maieſtie, yea but the name of a king, or liued in any countenance: but ſeeing he is (his deſtinie ſo requiring) driuen out of his country, and wandereth the deſarts, with vncertaine report whether he liue or not; we come vnto thee, rather as men of him forſaken, than ſuch as haue forſaken their prince; readie to ſhew vnto thee our loyaltie and valour in our better condition and ſtate: if we may by thy goodneſſe, changing our hard fortune, liue and ſerue vnder thy worthie conduct.*

Selymus, for that he right well knew *Gazelles* both for his vertue and valour, wherewith valiant men win credit euen with their greateſt enemies) and alſo deſiring to ioyne in league and friendſhip with the Arabians (or rather Alarbes) whom he knew of all others to be moſt to be
C feared, receiued them all courteouſly: appointing vnto euery one of them an honourable penſion, and perſuading them to forget their old eſtate, willed them to looke for farre greater things of his bountie. Not long after, when as the Moores and wild Arabians, with certain Mamalukes that were fled to the citie of ACHASIA, made incurſions into the countrey about CAIRE, and oftentimes did cut off the Turkes which went any thing farre from the citie to ſeeke abroad for forrage, he ſent *Gazelles* with part of his armie to repreſſe them: who hauing quickly woon and ſackt ACHASIA, and ſlaine moſt part of thoſe aduenturers, to his own great praiſe, and the wonderfull contentation of *Selymus*, honourably returned in leſſe time than was expected.

In the meane time, *Tomombeius* in the countrey of SEGESTA (which is on the other ſide of Nilus towards CYRENAICA) miſerably beſet with ſo many miſcheefes, began to make head
D againe. There were come vnto him a ſtrong companie of Mamalukes from ALEXANDRIA, which he had by letters ſent for out of the garriſon of that citie, and many others had followed him in his flight from CAIRE. And there were not wanting many great men amongſt the Arabians and Moores (the inhabitants of that countrey) which promiſed him their helpe and furtherance. Beſide that, many of the Ægyptians, whoſe houſes and families were become a prey and bootie vnto the inſolent Turkes, promiſed him, That if he would by night come to CAIRE, they would raiſe ſuch a tumult in the citie, as ſhould eaſily worke the confuſion of the Turkes; for as much as they all hauing endured moſt horrible indignities and villanies, could no longer abide thoſe moſt inſolent men to rage and raine ouer them. They ſent him word alſo, that the Turks huge armie was now brought to a contemptible number, moſt part of them being ſlaine
E in the battell at CAIRE: and the reſt being for the greateſt part brought to extreame weakneſſe with wounds and ſickneſſe. For which cauſes, as *Tomombeius* his forces encreaſed dayly, ſo hope alſo, which neuer failed the poore vanquiſhed and diſtreſſed king, began now alſo to reuiue in his inuincible heart, aboue the condition of his miſerable eſtate. So that fawning fortune, which euen then moſt cruelly & deſpightfully went about vtterly to ſupplant him (of all other diſtreſſed princes moſt miſerable) ſeemed but then firſt to change her frowning countenance, and to promiſe vnto him more happie and proſperous ſucceſſe.

Albuchomar diſcouereth to Selymus the power of Tomombeius, and the trecherie of them of Caire.

Whileſt *Tomombeius* was making this preparation, one *Albuchomar*, an Ægyptian, for authoritie and wealth the greateſt man by farre in all the countrey of SEGESTA, whether it were to auert the miſerie of the preſent warre out of his countrey; or elſe by the pleaſure of his reuolt
F to gaine the good liking of *Selymus*, vpon whom all things ſeemed to fawne, came and certified him both of *Tomombeius* his ſtrength, & of the new practiſes of the citiſens of CAIRE. Whereupon *Selymus* cauſed ſtrong watch and ward to be kept in all places of that great citie: and ſuch citiſens as he ſuſpected to fauour *Tomombeius*, hee ſhut vp into the caſtle; which being before abandoned by *Tomombeius*, was then together with the citie in his poſſeſſion: and placed all alongſt the riuer boats furniſhed with men and artillerie, to keepe and defend the farther banke

of

of Nilus, and to impeach *Tomombeius* his paſſage ouer. Yet conſidering with himſelfe, with how great danger he had ſo many times fought with thoſe deſperat enemies, and what a difficultie it would be to intercept *Tomombeius* (protracting the warre in thoſe vaſt and vnknowne countries, and ſtill preparing greater forces, without whom he could nothing aſſure himſelfe of all his former victories) to proue if he might be woon by clemencie and bountie he reſolued to ſend embaſſadours vnto him, to perſuade him to lay downe armes, and after ſo many ouerthrowes, at length to acknowledge the fortune of the victor: and withall to promiſe him vpon the faith of a prince, That if he would come in and ſubmit himſelfe, he ſhould of the courteſie and bountie of the conqueror vpon conditions reaſonable repoſſeſſe that his late kingdome which he ſhould neuer be able by force to regaine: But if he would needs deſperatly proceed to make head againe, forgetting this offered grace, together with his owne diſabilitie, he ſhould afterward when the matter was againe tried by battell, by his owne iuſt deſert neuer more find at the hands of his angrie enemie any regard of his princely ſtate or dignitie. G H

The cauſes moning Selymus to ſend embaſſadors to Tomombeius.

For *Selymus* ſeeing himſelfe by the courſe of his victories drawne into a farre countrey; and not without cauſe fearing with ſo ſmall a power as he had left, to be oppreſſed in that ſo great and populous a citie, euen with the very multitude, men of doubtfull faith; thought it better by ſome honourable compoſition to aſſure himſelfe of ſome great part of that he had woon, than by going on to thruſt himſelfe with his armie into new dangers, with the hazard of all. Beſides that, he was certainely aduertiſed, That the Mamalukes before fled into diuers countries, were in euery place leuying new ſupplies of horſemen: and that the fleet which was gone into the Arabian gulfe againſt the Portingales, was daily expected at the port Svezzia, wherein were three thouſaud Mamalukes, vnder the leading of *Amyraſes* and *Ray Salomon*, two expert captaines, with great ſtore of good braſſe ordinance: by which good helpes *Tomombeius* ſtood in faire poſſibilitie to recouer his former loſſes, and to returne againe to Caire, whether he was by his ſecret friends moſt earneſtly inuited. But aboue all things, the care he had of the Perſians moſt induced him to thinke of peace: for feare, that if the Baſſa, whom he had left at the mountaine Tavrvs, ſhould not be able to withſtand the forces of the Perſian king, he ſhould ſo be excluded out of Asia the leſſer, and Syria alſo, before his fleet could from Constantinople arriue with new ſupplies of men and victuall at Alexandria. I

Selymus his embaſſadours ſlain by the Mamalukes.

Wherefore he ſent certaine of the moſt reuerend of his Turkiſh religious, and with them ſome of the moſt honourable Ægyptians, embaſſadours to *Tomombeius*: who paſſing ouer Nilus into the countrey Segesta, were without further hearing, with more than barbarous crueltie, ſlaine by certaine Mamalukes which chaunced vpon them: thinking thereby to gratifie *Tomombeius*, as yet not knowing of any ſuch matter, & to manifeſt their affection towards him, as alſo that they were not deſirous of any peace with the Turkes. K

This proud and inſolent fact vtterly brake *Selymus* his patience, and ſhortly after made an end of that mortall warre, together with the honour of the Mamalukes. For he being a man of an hot and cruell nature, euen when he was nothing at all moued, could by no meanes brooke that his enemies, ſo often vanquiſhed and put to flight, ſhould ſo lightly reiect his offers vnto them as the caſe ſtood, both honourable and profitable: and that worſe was, violate his embaſſadours againſt the law of nations, moſt religiouſly kept euen amongſt the moſt barbarous and ſauage people. Wherefore prouoked by ſo great an iniurie, he carefully prouided all things neceſſarie for his expedition into Segesta againſt *Tomombeius*. And becauſe it ſtood not with his honour (as he tooke it) not with the good of the preſent ſeruice, to paſſe the riuer by boats, he gathering together all the ſmall veſſels and lighters he could poſſibly, made thereof a large and ſtrong bridge ouer Nilus. L

Tomombeius vnderſtanding by his eſpials and from his friends at Caire of the preparations of *Selymus*, and of the bridge he had made; fearing alſo the reuolt of the country people, whom he probably ſuſpected to be alienated from him by the reuolt of *Albuchomar*, a man of ſo great power and authoritie amongſt them; determined once againe to proue the fortune of battell, which had ſo often deceiued his expectation. For he iuſtly meaſuring of his owne ſtrength, and finding himſelfe in all things inferiour to his mightie enemie, well ſaw, that he was neither able to protract the warres, neither in open field to abide his comming with all his forces; and to flie further into the deſarts, was as he deemed it, nothing elſe but to make ſhipwracke of that ſmall remainder that was left of his honour and credit. Wherefore by the aduice of his beſt captaines M

(which

A (which was the laſt indeuour both of himſelfe and of the Mamalukes) he departed betime out of the prouince of Sngesra with foure thouſand Mamalukes, and twice as many Moores and Arabians, and trauelled day and night without intermiſſion to come to the riuer Nilus. By that deſperat attempt to deceiue the Turkes, ſuſpecting no ſuch thing from their vanquiſhed & weak enemie: as alſo by celeritie to preuent the fame of his comming; hoping ſo by his ſuddain and vnexected approch to ouerthrow that part of the Turkes armie which ſhould firſt paſſe the riuer, before they could poſſibly be relieued from the other ſide. Neither was he deceiued in the computation of the time, which he hauing before exactly caſt, with the manner of his trauell, fell out ſo fitly that he came to the place he deſired, euen at ſuch time as the Aſian horſemen
B were come ouer the bridge, as he had before gueſſed. The harbengers and pages of *Selymus* his chamber, which were gone ſomething further than the reſt, to make choice of the moſt commodious place for the erecting of the emperours pauilion, by the riſing of the duſt firſt perceiued the comming of the enemie. And *Muſtapha* the great Baſſa aduertiſed thereof, ſuddainly raiſed an alarum: which ſo vnexpected a matter brought a great feare both on them which were alreadie paſſed ouer, and alſo on them that were on the further ſide of the riuer.

Tomombeius preſently aſſailing his enemies, as yet but putting themſelues in order, and repai- *Tomombeius diſtreſſeth the Turks in paſſing the bridge made ouer Nilus.*
ring to their enſignes, at the firſt onſet ſlew ſuch as made reſiſtance, and the reſt he diſcomfited and put to flight. Neither was *Muſtapha* the great commander (although he did what poſſibly he could, by his owne example to haue encouraged them) able either by his owne inuincible
C courage, or other perſuaſion, after his firſt rankes were ouerthrowne, to repaire his diſordered battell, or ſtay the flight of his men: for in that ſo hot and ſuddaine a skirmiſh all was full of tumult, ſlaughter, doubtfulneſſe, and feare: and all alongſt the banke of the riuer, both aboue and beneath the bridge, were to be ſeene fearefull companies of the Turkes, ruthfully looking vpon the riuer, and crying vnto their fellowes on the other ſide for helpe. Many forced by the furious enemie, tooke the riuer, and there periſhed: others ſtriuing at the end of the bridge to returne that way, and ouerborne by their fellowes or others continually ſent from the further ſide, or els amaſed with feare, fell into the riuer, and were there drowned. The bridge was ſo broad, that foure horſemen abreſt might eaſily paſſe ouer at once, and ſo great numbers of them in ſhort ſpace be conueyed ouer. But when the great ordinance (the Turkes cheefe ſtrength) was alſo
D to be tranſported, fewer troupes of horſemen were ſent ouer, than either the greatneſſe of the preſent danger or ſuddenneſſe of the chance required. Neither did their great artillerie as then ſtand them in any ſtead, for that it could neither ſo ſpeedily be conueyed ouer, nor without great hurt be diſcharged from the hither banke to the further, by reaſon of their owne men ſtanding betweene them and the enemie.

In the meane time *Selymus*, who in the beginning of the skirmiſh came downe to the riuers ſide, filled a great number of boats and other ſmall veſſels with his Ianizaries with their harquebuſies, and withall haſted his horſemen ouer the bridge to relieue their fellowes diſtreſſed on the further ſide: in which boats the nimble watermen vſed ſuch diligence in landing of ſome, and preſently in fetching ouer of others, that in ſhort time they had tranſported diuers bands of
E thoſe moſt readie and valiant ſouldiers: whoſe comming wonderfully comforted the Aſian ſoldiers, euen now at the laſt caſt, and readie to haue giuen ouer. *Canoglis* alſo, the Tartar kings ſonne and *Selymus* his brother in law, encouraging his horſemen to take the riuer, with loſſe of ſome few of his men recouered the further ſide, to the great admiration of the beholders: which in that naiton was not ſo much to be maruelled at, as they which by troupes with their horſes had oftentimes ſwam ouer the great riuers Taurus and Volga, no leſſe dangerous than was the riuer Nilus.

Tomombeius at the ſame time, for that he ſaw ſpeedie victorie to conſiſt in one thing eſpecially, ſerring his troupes together, ſtrained himſelfe with might and maine to haue gained the head of the bridge, that by plucking away ſome few of the firſt boats, he might ſhut in his ene-
F mies already come ouer; and by cutting the cables wherby the boats were faſtened to the bank, all the bridge with the Turkes vpon it, might be borne away with the force and violence of that great riuer: whereupon riſe a moſt cruell and deadly fight; for the reſolute Mamalukes in the front of their battell fought valiantly: and *Muſtapha* well conſidering the danger, had drawne vnto that place both his enſignes and his beſt ſouldiers: ſo that there was fought ſuch a fight, as a matter of ſo great conſequence required: The Mamalukes plainely ſeeing, that if they could

obtaine

obtaine the place, they ſhould ſhortly after with little adoe, ouerthrow all the former victories G
of their enemies. And the Turks no leſſe ignorant, that except they kept the bridge whole, they
were all but loſt men that were alreadie come ouer; and that the reſt of the armie togither with
their emperour ſo farre from home, and in the middeſt of his enemies, muſt of neceſſitie ſhortly
after run the ſame fortune. But *Muſtapha* well relieued by the Ianizaries and the Europeian
horſemen, which were now come ouer in great number, not only receiued the enemies charge,
but preſſing vpon them, gained ground, and by little and little enforced them to retire. This is
that *Muſtapha* the Hungarian, and *Baiazet* his ſonne in law, which for his owne glory and per-
petuall fame, built that notable, ſtately, and ſumptuous ſtone bridge (of the ſpoiles of this victo-
rie) ouer the riuer Stremon, which at this day men paſſing ouer into THRACIA wonder at, as H
at a worke beſeeming the greatneſſe of the Roman empire.

Tomombeius, to giue a time of breathing to his Mamalukes, who, their horſes for wearineſſe
now fainting vnder thē, were not able longer to ſhew their wonted courage; & deſirous by them
againe to proue the vttermoſt fortune of the battell, exhorted the Moores and Arabians a while
to charge the enemie, which thing they after the manner of their fight valiantly performed. And
The Mamalukes giue a freſh charge vpon the Turkes. ſhortly after, the Mamalukes hauing a little breathed themſelues and their horſes, came in afreſh
and renewed the battell; with ſuch furie, that *Selymus* doubting the victorie (although he was
by his moſt faithfull counſellors perſuaded to the contrarie) yet doubted not to aduenture the
bridge, and in perſon himſelfe to goe and relieue his diſtreſſed ſouldiers: who by his comming
in, encouraged, and in the ſight of their emperour deſiring euerie man for his part by ſome nota- I
ble ſeruice to deſerue both credit and preferment, repreſſed the furie of the enemie; who in ſhort
time after, by the comming on of certain freſh companies of Ianizaries, were notably repulſed,
The Mamalukes put to flight. and ſo at length put to flight: whom the horſemen which were not in the battell, purſued all the
fields ouer. At length alſo the Tartarians (who carried away with the force of the ſtreame, were
ſomewhat long before they could recouer the farther banke and come to their enemies) were
now come in alſo, and with their ſwift horſes following the chaſe, augmented the ſlaughter.

But *Selymus* aboue all things deſirous of *Tomombeius*, preſently commaunded *Muſtapha* the
great Baſſa, *Gazelles*, and *Cayerbeius*, with certaine freſh troupes of light horſemen, to purſue
him at the heeles, and if it were poſſible not to ſuffer him to eſcape: for ſo long as he liued, hee
could not aſſure himſelfe of any thing he had yet gotten. Theſe vigilant captaines not vnmind- K
full of their charge, following faſt after him, ouertooke him the next day at the fluce of a great
deepe fen, where he had a little reſted himſelfe and his followers, being then about to cut off a
wodden bridge, ſo to haue hindered the enemies purſuit. Some of his followers being there
ſlaine, and ſome taken, he was againe enforced to flie. The third day when he had almoſt loſt
all his men, and was come with ſome few into the territorie of the Secuſſane prince: theſe great
captaines ſtill eagerly purſuing him, and denouncing vnto the poore countrey people which
dwelt in villages thereabout, all extremities and tortures, if they did not with moſt diligent
watch and ward ſo keep the paſſages of thoſe mariſhes, as that he ſhould not poſſibly eſcape; he
was ſo beſet on euerie ſide, that for ſafegard of his life he was glad to hide himſelfe all alone in a
Tomombeius taken and brought to Selymus. foule deepe mariſh: Where ſhortly after he the poore Sultan was by the diligent ſearch of the L
countrey peaſants found out, hidden amongſt the flags and bulruſhes, ſtanding in the water vp
to the ſhoulders, who deliuered him miſerably bound vnto the Turkes. Shortly after hee with
certaine captaines and other of his cheefe friends taken in that flight, was brought to CAIRE.
Selymus before reſolued to put him to death, and the rather for the iniurie done to his embaſſa-
Tomombeius tortured. dours, would not ſuffer him to come into his preſence, but commaunded him to be tortured, ſo
to haue cauſed him to haue reuealed the great treaſures of *Campſon* his predeceſſor, which were
thought to haue been by him hidden: in which moſt horrible and exquiſit torments, it is repor-
ted, that he with great conſtancie and ſterne countenance vttered nothing but certaine deepe
ſighes and grones, ouercomming with patience the tyrannie of the proud conquerour: who af-
ter that, commaunded him in baſe and ragged apparell, with his hands bound behind him as a M
theefe or murtherer condemned to die, to be ſet vpon a foule leane cammell, & ſo to be carried
in deriſion through all the publicke and notable places of the citie; that the Ægyptians might ſee
him whom they but a little before had adored for their king, by chaunge of fortune caſt into
extreame miſerie, by moſt ſhamefull death to end both his life and empire together. When they
had thus deſpightfully led him as it were in triumph, and brought him to the cheefe gate of the

citie

A citie called Basvela, they there openly ſtrangled him with a rope: and that he might be the better ſeene, and become more contemptible to all that paſſed that way, they hanged him vp by the neck vpon an yron hooke in an arch of the ſame gate, and ſo left him to the worlds wonder. *Palearius* propounding him as a mirrour both of the better and worſe fortune, for all men to looke vpon, aptly deſcribeth both his happineſſe and miſerie in theſe few verſes following:

The miſerable end of Tomombeius, laſt Sultan of Egypt.

TOMOMBEIVS, THE LAST Sultan of Ægypt.

Paulus Iouius Illuſt. virorũ, Elog. lib. 4.

Non fuit in toto, rex æquè oriente beatus:
Nec magis in toto rex oriente miſer.
Quam dolor Ægypti, olim Tomombeius, auro
Ingenti, atq; armis, & ditione potens.
Captus ab hoſte fero, miſerum ſimul atq; beatum,
Exemplo potis eſt, commonuiſſe ſuo.
Quid rides temere? quid fles? vis te cohibere?
Et natum poſthac te meminiſſe hominem?
Mi trabeam induto, gemmis auroq; corona
Cingebat, fulgens & diadema caput.

F

Mi

Mi quandam ornabant pretioſa monilia collum,
Nunc, fractam vili reſpice fune gulam.

In Engliſh thus:

In all the Eaſt a king more bleſt was no where to be found,
Nor in the Eaſt one more accurſt liu'd not vpon the ground,
Than *Tomombeius*, Æ G Y P T S greeſe, ſometime for ſtore of gold,
Of power great for martiall force, and kingdomes he did hold.
But taken by his cruell foe, may good example be
Both to the happie and diſtreſt, of mans vncertaintie.
Why doeſt thou fondly laugh? why doeſt thou vainely crie?
Canſt thou from henceforth ſtay thy ſelfe? and thinke th'art borne to die?
My garments were the royall robes, I wore the crowne of gold,
With richeſt ſtones moſt richly ſet, moſt glorious to behold:
My necke adornd with richeſt gems which I did ſometimes weare:
But now truſt vp in ſhamefull rope, behold me hanging here.

The Egyptians in doubt of their eſtate bewaile the death of Tomombeius.

This miſerie befell *Tomombeius* the 13 of Aprill, in the yeare 1517, vpon the Monday in Eaſter weeke. There were many which ſhed teares to behold that ſo cruell and lamentable a ſpectacle, who by their wofull countenance and pitifull lamentation ſeemed to deteſt that foule I and vnworthie death of their late Sultan: notwithſtanding that the Ianizaries reproued them therefore, and threatened them with death, who like giddie brained fooles (as they tearmed them) enured to the ſlauerie of the Mamalukes, ioyfully and thankefully accepted not of their deliuerance: for the Ægyptians were as yet vncertaine of their eſtate, and therefore as men in ſuſpence (not without cauſe) ſtood in doubt what ſhould become of themſelues: fearing leaſt the Turkes, a warlike nation, and a terrour to all the princes of E V R O P E and A S I A, nothing more courteous than the Mamalukes, ſhould with no leſſe inſolencie rage and tyrannize ouer them, vnder their warlike and cruell emperour. Beſides that, the wofull ſight of *Tomombeius* hanging in the gate, as the vnworthie ſcorne of fortune, wonderfully wounded their hearts: for why, it was yet freſh in their remembrance, that he with the good liking of all men, and generall fauour K of the nobilitie, with good fame riſe vp all the degrees of honour both in field and court, vnto the height of regall dignitie; and therefore greeued the more to ſee him by inuitable deſtinie caſt downe headlong, ſo ſhamefully to end his life and empire together. A notable ſpectacle vndoubtedly amongſt the rareſt examples of worldly fragilitie both to the happie and vnfortunat: the one, not to be too proud, or too much to flatter themſelues in their greateſt bliſſe; and the other, to learne thereby with patience to endure the heauie and vnworthie changes and chances of this wretched and miſerable world. And ſo much the more did *Tomombeius* ſo hanging, moue men to compaſſion, for that the maieſtie of his tall and ſtrong bodie, and reuerend countenance, with his long and hoarie beard, well agreed with his imperiall dignitie and martiall diſ- L poſition. The ſame fortune with *Tomombeius* ran alſo diuers of the princes of the Mamalukes, with ſome others of the common ſort alſo.

Tomombeius thus taken out of the way, and all the Mamalukes almoſt ſlaine, and no power of the enemie to be heard of in all Æ G Y P T to renew the warre: *Selymus* deuiding his forces, ſent them forth with his captaines, to take in the countries and prouinces of Æ G Y P T lying further off. They of A L E X A N D R I A after the battell of C A I R E hauing thruſt out the garriſon, and eaſily ſurpriſed the caſtle of P H A R V S (which the weake defendants choſe rather vpon hope of preſent reward to deliuer, than with doubtfull euent to defend) yeelded themſelues many daies before vnto the Turkes. D A M I A T A alſo, called in auncient time P E L V S I V M, opened their gates, and ſubmitted themſelues to the victors. There was no citie betwixt the riuer of Nilus M and the borders of I V D E A and A R A B I A, which yeeded not to the obedience of *Selymus*. The kings alſo of A F R I C K E bordering vpon C Y R E N A I C A, tributaries or confederats of the Ægyptian Sultans, ſent their embaſſadours with preſents to *Selymus*.

There remained now none but the wild Arabians (a people neuer to be tamed) & eſpecially they of A F R I C K E, who hauing loſt many of their friends and kinſmen in aiding *Tomombeius*, would

A would not (as it was thought) ſubmit themſelues vnto the Turkiſh obedience. This wandering kind of people, liuing for moſt part by theft, had filled the countries from Euphrates, where it runneth by the Palmyrens, with all the inner parts of ÆGYPT and AFRICKE vnto the Atlanticke ſea, with huge multitudes of men: and being deuided into many companies vnder diuers leaders, haue no certaine dwelling places, but liue an hard and frugall kind of life in tents and waggons, after the manner of the Tartars: their greateſt wealth is a good ſeruiceable horſe, with a launce, or a bundell of darts: they were alway at diſcord & variance amongſt themſelues, by reaſon whereof, they could neuer agree for the expulſing of the Mamalukes, who otherwiſe had not been able to haue ſtood againſt them, if they ſhould haue ioyned their forces together.

B So that the late Ægyptian Sultans ſeemed to hold their ſtate and empire amongſt ſo populous a nation, rather by their diſcord than their owne ſtrength. Wherefore *Selymus* hauing now by fit men vpon his faith before giuen allured many of their cheefetaines and greateſt commaunders to CAIRE, honourably both entertained and rewarded them. By whoſe example others moued, came alſo in daily: and hauing receiued their rewards, gaue the oath of their allegeance to *Selymus*. Others which could by no faire promiſes or words be woon, being cunningly intercepted by other captaines, and deliuered to *Selymus*, endured the paines of their vaine obſtinacie and mallice. The other remote nations toward ÆTHYOPIA, as they had in former time rather acknowledged the friendſhip than the command of the Ægyptian Sultans, ſo now induced with the fame of the victorie, eaſily ioyned in like amitie with the Turke.

Selymus cunningly reduceth the Arabians to his obedience.

C About the ſame time *Selymus* ſent certaine troupes of horſemen to SVEZZIA, a port of the red ſea (of old called ARSINOE) about three daies iourney from CAIRE: in which port *Campſon* the great Sultan (a little before the comming of the Turks) had with infinit charge and foure yeares trauell built a ſtrong fleet againſt the Portingals, who by their conqueſts in INDIA had taken away all the rich trade of the Indian marchandiſe into the gulfe of ARABIA, to the great hinderance of the Ægyptian kings cuſtomes: ouer which fleet (a little before the beginning of the Turkiſh warres) *Campſon* had appointed one *Amyraſes* and *Ray Salomon* Generals, with a ſtrong power of Mamalukes and great ſtore of ordinance, againſt the Portingals. Theſe valiant captains hauing yet done nothing in the ſeruice they were appointed vnto, as they lay at GIDDA (the port of the famous citie of MECHA, wherein is the temple of their great prophet

D *Mahomet*) vnderſtanding of the death of *Campſon*, & of the comming of *Selymus* into ÆGYPT, fell at variance betwixt thẽſelues; one of them being willing to continue his obedience towards the new Sultan, and the other no leſſe deſirous to follow the good fortune of the victor. Wherupon a mutinie ariſing among the ſouldiers, *Amyraſes*, who fauoured *Tomombeius*, was enforced to flie to MECHA. But ſhortly after, *Ray Salomon* requiring to haue him, and threatening all hoſtilitie except he were forthwith deliuered, he was apprehended by them of MECHA, fearing to haue GIDDA their port ſpoiled, and ſo ſent backe againe to the fleet. *Ray Salomon*, that he might be Admirall alone, his aſſociat being taken out of the way, and by ſome notable fact to inſinuate himſelfe into the fauour of the conquerour, cauſed *Amyraſes* in the night to be caſt ouer boord: and giuing to the ſouldiers two moneths pay, and ſwearing them to the obedience

E of *Selymus*, in few daies ſayling came backe againe to ARSINOE, where leauing the fleet, he came directly himſelfe to *Selymus* at CAIRE, of whom he was gratiouſly receiued. After that, all the princes which were before tributaries or confederates to the late Sultans of ÆGYPT, euen vnto the confines of *Dauid* the moſt mightie king of ETHIOPIA (whom ſome call *Preſbiter Iohn*) without delay entred into the like ſubiection or confederation with the Turkes.

ÆGYPT, with all the prouinces thereunto belonging, thus brought into ſubiection, *Selymus* about the beginning of Iuly ſayled downe the riuer of Nilus to ALEXANDRIA (*Cortug-Ogli*, a famous pyrat of HALICARNASSVS, ſitting at the helme of his gallie) there to take view of his fleet, but lately come from CONSTANTINOPLE with new ſupplies both of men and victuals, ſent from *Pyrrhus Baſſa* and his ſonne *Solyman*: which after he had well ſurueyed, and

Of this Cortug-Ogli ſee more in the life of Solyman.

F diligently viewed the wals of the citie, and of the caſtle of PHAROS, he returned againe to CAIRE. In the meane time, the Mamalukes in durance at ALEXANDRIA, were by his commaundement murthered euery mothers ſonne, in the entrance of the priſon. At which time alſo aboue fiue hundred families of the nobleſt and richeſt of the Ægyptians were commaunded to remoue from CAIRE to CONSTANTINOPLE, and a great number of women and children, of the race of the Mamalukes, were tranſported thither alſo in ſhips hired for that purpoſe

Into this fleet beside the kings treasure and riches, he conueyed all the publicke and priuate ornaments of that most rich and famous citie; with such a couetous and greedie desire of spoile, that the verie marble stons, commended either for the excellencie of the workmanship, or beautie of the stone, were violently rent out of the maine wals, to his great reproch and infamie. Lying at CAIRE, he with great pleasure beheld the rising of the riuer Nilus, which had then ouerflowed the countrie next vnto it; and that with such a desire, that he most curiously enquired of the old countrey men the measure and nature of the riuer: for by the diuersitie of the rising thereof (which they by certaine markes and measures well find out) they prognosticate sometime aboundant plentie, sometime extreame dearth, and sometime reasonable store: when as the violent riuer moderately or furiously breaking out, somewhile so drowneth the greatest part of the countrey, that all the seed season it lyeth vnder water, and at another time floweth so sparingly, that in many places it scarce layeth the dust, thereby foreshewing an vndoubted dearth: so that the Ægyptians then assure themselues of plentie, when as Nilus keeping a meane, pleasantly riseth neither to the highest or lowest markes of his inundation. G H

The Mamaluke kingdome, together with the name of the Mamalukes, thus ouerthrowne, and the conquest of ÆGYPT so happily atchiued: *Selymus* resolued to make his returne into SYRIA, and the rather, for that it was reported, That *Hysmaell* the Persian king was comming with his armie into MESOPOTAMIA, and so like ynough to breake into COMAGENA. Wherefore hauing as he thought good, disposed of all things, he left a strong garrison of his best souldiors in CAIRE, and appointed *Cayerbeius* that notable traitour, his deputie and great commander ouer all that great and new gotten kingdome of ÆGYPT, now conuerted into the forme of a prouince, as it remaineth at this day. Which honourable preferment so vnworthily bestowed, exceedingly both grieued and troubled *Ionuses* the great Bassa, before enflamed with the hope and iust desire thereof: For now that *Sinan Bassa* was dead, he puffed vp with the estimation of his owne worth and valour, and proud of the wound he had of late receiued in the presence of *Selymus* at the entring of CAIRE, and to the vttermost of his power suffering no man to grow neere him in credit and estimation; thought himselfe the onely man now left, to whom of all others, that especiall and honourable charge should in the iudgement of *Selymus* and of the whole armie of right be committed. Neither wanted he the generall good liking of the men of war, for immediatly after he was recouered of his wound, when he in the most magnificent house of the Diadarie at CAIRE (which he in the victorie had rather of himselfe vsurped, than by the gift of *Selymus* obtained) dayly kept princely cheere for all commers (no small meanes to gaine the loue of the common souldiours) and gaue frankly to them all, to some horses, to some beautifull slaues, to some money, plate, iewels, rich garments, faire armour, and such like; he woon vnto himselfe such fauour and credit, that whensoeuer he should (as the maner was) go to the castle vnto the emperour, he was brought thither with a great and goodly traine of his fauorites & followers, as the man in all mens iudgement designed to the gouernment of that great and rich kingdome. All which things highly offended the mind of *Selymus*, who as he was apt to suspect, and cruell where he feared, so did he also (in secret) enuie great vertues, accompanied with too much honour and power.

Cayerbeius the traitor made gouernour of Caire and Ægypt.

I K

Ionuses seeing *Cayerbeius* the traitour thus vnworthily promoted, ouercome with griefe and indignation (who as a man of a proud and haughtie mind, tooke it as done to his owne disgrace) yet colouring his inward discontentment by counterfeiting himselfe sicke, for certaine daies came not abroad; neuertheless still more and more tormented both with the iniurie (as he tooke it) done to himselfe, and the vnworthie preferment of the traitour, he could not so well containe himselfe, but that in his choler some words fell from him, whereby his discontentment was perceiued. It happened, that *Cayerbeius* comming of courtesie to visit him, and in the heat of the day familiarly calling for drinke (which was water and sugar, after the maner of the Ægyptians) immediatly after he had drunke, felt such grieuous and vnwonted gripings and tormentings in his stomacke and bellie, that many supposed him to haue beene poysoned by the Bassa: yet was he by the power and vertue of a more soueraigne and effectuall remedie preserued. Which report, whether it were true or no, was vncertaine: but certaine it is, that it sanke further into the mind of *Selymus*, than any man would haue thought. He had now also a little before heard, that many of those rich Ægyptian families, which he had before commanded to be remooued to CONSTANTINOPLE, had for great summes of money obtained of *Ionuses* (who

Ionuses enuyeth at the preferment of Cayerbeius.

L M

A (who had the whole ordering of that matter) that they might quietly and in ſafetie remaine ſtill in their owne countrie. Of which his couert dealing, great probabilitie was alledged by ſuch as repined at his honour, and ſecretly accuſed him, That thoſe princelike and exceſſiue charges and expences, which he was not able poſſibly to maintain of his ordinarie penſion, were roially ſupported with the embeſeled ſpoile and reuenewes of that new gotten kingdome. Which malicious ſuggeſtions, as they tended to the lightening of his credit, ſo alſo another crime (whether it were of fraudulent dealing or negligence, or other further reſpect, is vncertaine) comming in the necke of the other, wrought his vtter diſgrace, and finall confuſion: For *Selymus* after the maner of great princes (who more ſeuerely to puniſh the former offences, notably diſſembling their preſent anger, expect but the occaſion of ſome new crime) with vigilant eye waiting vpon
B his words and deeds, proſecuted him with a mortall and deadly hatred, with a full purpoſe to deſtroy him.

A few daies before it was certainely reported that *Selymus* would againe return into SYRIA, the ſouldiors appointed to be left in garriſon at CAIRE, alledging the great diſtance of the place, and the greater dangers they were to expect, with the labours by them alreadie endured, requeſted of the bountie of their moſt fortunate emperour, that they might haue their wages augmented. Which thing *Selymus* (neuer ſpare handed to his men of war) eaſily graunted, commaunding *Ionuſes* the ſtately Baſſa, that the ſumme they required, might be added to their accuſtomed wages, and ſo entered into his accounts for the wars. But he carried headlong with diſcontentment, made neither the treaſurers nor paymaſters acquainted with any ſuch matter as *Selymus*
C had before commaunded: of purpoſe, that the garriſon ſouldiors deceiued of their greater wages promiſed them by the emperour, might euen at the firſt begin to hate and contemne *Cayerbeius*, as author of ſo great an iniurie; that ſo the ſtate of CAIRE, and of that new gotten kingdome, diſquieted by the mutinie of the garriſon ſouldiors, *Selymus* enforced to change his former purpoſe, ſhould in ſtead of that ſtrange gouernor (hated of the Ægyptians for his late treaſon, and not beloued of the garriſon ſouldiors, becauſe he was to them a ſtranger) of neceſſitie ſend ſome of his owne Baſſaes, a Turke, for the better ſtay and aſſurance of that wauering and mightie prouince. But all theſe things (as commonly wicked purpoſes haue their foule euents) fell out in fine far otherwiſe than he had in his troubled mind before conceiued. For *Selymus*
D being departed out of ÆGYPT, and now on his way almoſt as far as HIERVSALEM, the garriſon ſouldiors at CAIRE, the pay day being now come, and receiuing no more but their old accuſtomed wages, moued with that euill dealing (as contrarie to the emperors promiſe and their generall expectation) began with more furie and rage than euer *Ionuſes* had before imagined, openly and inſolently to inſult and threaten the treaſurer and paymaſters, and with open mouth to raile vpon *Cayerbeius* their gouernour. With which ſo inſolent and opprobrious ſpeeches he aſtonied (as one not yet acquainted with the faſhions of the Turkiſh garriſons) togither with the paymaſters, in beſt manner they could excuſed themſelues vnto the ſouldiors, requeſting them not to thinke ſo hardly of them who were altogither innocent in the matter, and with patience to vnderſtand the truth of the cauſe; wherein if they ſhould on their part find any fraudulent or
E euill dealing, they craued no fauour, either refuſed any puniſhment. Thus *Cayerbeius* and the paymaſters ſeeking by all meanes to auoid both the ſuſpition and the preſent danger: and the mutinous ſouldiors no leſſe haſtening to find out by whom they were ſo abuſed, and to be therof reuenged, it was at laſt with much adoe agreed, That truſtie meſſengers ſhould forthwith be ſent to *Selymus*, who was not yet gone out of IVDEA, to vnderſtand of him the truth of the matter.

Selymus commandeth the wages of his ſouldiors to be left in garriſon at Caire to be augmented.

Theſe ſpeedie meſſengers hauing with wonderfull celeritie diſpatched their iourney, ouertooke *Selymus* with his armie a little from LARISSA in IVDEA: and admitted to his preſence, orderly declared vnto him both the complaints of the ſouldiors, and the carefulneſſe of *Cayerbeius* and the paymaſters to excuſe the matter, togither with the daunger they were in, with all the other accidents whatſoeuer which had happened ſithence the time of his departure from
F CAIRE. Which complaint ſo incenſed the mind of *Selymus* with new paſſions of anger and choller, being alreadie ſore alienated with former diſpleaſures, that he without further delay commaunded *Ionuſes Baſſa* to be brought before him to anſwere the matter: who although he were inwardly ſtrucken with the guilt of his owne conſcience, and ſurpriſed with a deadly feare, which appeared in his colour as pale as aſhes, ſeeing in the angrie face and countenance of his ſoue-

Selymus calleth for Ionuſes Baſſa to anſwere the matter.

The answere of Ionuses Bassa.

soueraigne the most certaine tokens of his heauie displeasure: yet as he was a man of great spi- G
rit, answered boldly, That he had forbidden the souldiors wages to be augmented, contrarie to his maiesties commaund, not vpon any euill meaning to haue inuerted that money to his owne vse, neither thereby to haue drawne any man of purpose into disgrace, as was by some his malicious enemies suggested, but vpon great reason, thereby to prouide for his maiesties cofers, wonderfully emptied with those late wars: beside that, the constant report of new troubles like to arise out of PERSIA, gaue good occasion for him to spare vnnecessarie charges: Whereas on the other side, as he said, the garrison souldiors were alreadie inriched with the plentifull spoiles of ÆGYPT, and in a most goodly citie possessed the sumptuous houses and lands of the Mamalukes, feeding vpon the goods of the Ægyptians, and had alreadie receiued both greater pay and more bountifull rewards from him, than euer any souldiors had from any his predecessors the H
Othoman kings: in which case, if they were not past all modestie, they might well ynough take it in good part, if they were something restrained in their vnreasonable requests. He alleadged moreouer, that great princes which retaine their souldiours in reasonable pay in time of peace and war, ought sometime for warlike discipline, to require of them a moderation of their desires; least whilest they all striue with greedinesse for their priuat gaine, there want money afterwards in the common treasurie to maintaine a greater and more necessarie charge, wars still rising vpon wars; seeing that no commander were he neuer so valiant or fortunate, euer did any great matter in wars, if he wanted coine, the most proper instrument and verie sinues of war, answering vnto his other most heroicall parts and sufficiencie. But as he was yet thus speaking, *Selymus* full of wrath and indignation interrupted him, for if he should haue suffered him in lon- I
ger discourse to haue recounted his former deserts & worthie seruice done, aswell in the time of his father *Baiazet*, as of late euen in his owne presence, he was like ynough to haue had of them that were able to do most with him, intercessors for him: and so without farther delay, caused him euen there in his own presence to be executed; saying moreouer, That others which would

The death of Ionuses the great Bassa.

arrogantly presume to prescribe vnto their soueraignes what they had to do, should for euer after by the example of that most insolent seruant, be admonished of their dutie and condition. It is reported, that the soldiors in despight of *Selymus* wonderfully lamented the vnworthie death of this so worthie a man: For he, beside his notable and rare valour, so many times to his great honour in sundrie battels approued, had by the dexteritie of his Græcian wit, comelinesse of personage, militarie eloquence, and gallant maner of liuing, so woon the loue and fauor of all men, K
that there was few or none in all the armie which did not acknowledge himselfe some way endebted and beholden vnto him; and did therefore condemne the emperours crueltie. They then began to tell how *Mustapha* surnamed *Caloger*, a man of wonderfull credit and authoritie both with *Baiazet* and himselfe, was in the heat of his furie slaine without hearing: And that in like maner of rage, old *Chendemus* a man of greatest honour and integritie of life, and of all the chieftaines which came out of the great emperour *Mahomet* his nurserie, the most skilfull, had been for his graue and wholsome counsell onely without cause murthered: Neither was then *Bostanges* his sonne in law forgotten: neither *Cherseogles* (the one most honourable for the great place he held in court and the mariage of *Baiazet* his daughter, and the other a man of no lesse L
marke being his great Admiral, and bearing himselfe high vpon his infinit wealth, but more vpon his wife one of the daughters of *Selymus*) both which two noble gentlemen about two yeres before had their heads strucke off, no man well knowing wherefore, and their dead bodies cast out at the court gate to the terrour of the beholders, as a miserable spectacle of their own miserie and the emperors crueltie. Yea the remembrance of his old tirannie (renewed as it were with this late outrage) presented a fresh vnto all mens eyes the reuerend old emperor *Baiazet* his father, with his two brethren, *Achomates* and *Corcutus*, by right both called vnto the empire before him selfe; with many other young princes of the bloud, of great hope and expectation, who as all men knew, perished through the vnnaturall and execrable crueltie of this most mercileſſe man. So that men generally did both feare him and hate him. For as much as he without M
all feare of God or regard of wordly shame, accounted no practise wicked or deuise detestable, that might serue for the better establishing of his kingdome; and had set downe in his mind, (long before corrupted with ambition and tyrannie) That it was far better for the assurance of his estate, to be feared of all than beloued of many: and therefore spared no mans life, of whom he had but the least suspition. Howbeit that the seueritie by him vsed against this so great a man

and

A and ſo gratious with the people, may in ſome ſort be excuſed, as iuſtly moued thereunto by the preſumptuous and malitious dealing of the proud Baſſa vnderhand, contrarie to the charge giuen him by his lord, to the perill of thoſe his great but late conqueſts both in ÆGYPT and SYRIA.

This great Baſſa, whileſt he yet liued and flouriſhed in the court, in nothing ſo much offended the minds of the people (who generally both loued and honoured him) as by the crueltie by him ſhewed vpon the perſon of the faire ladie *Manto* his beſt beloued wife. Who being a Greek borne, and adorned with all the good gifts of nature, wherunto her louely conditions were alſo anſwerable, was by *Zebelia* her firſt huſband (a man of great honour) carried with him into the
B wars, as his greateſt treaſure and chiefe delight. But he ſlaine, and ſhe by misfortune falling into the hands of the Turks (her enemies) remained ſo priſoner with them for a time; vntill that this great Baſſa *Ionuſes* ſhortly after (ſeeing her amongſt the other captiues there taken, ſo far to exceed the reſt as doth the Sunne the leſſer ſtars) ſurpriſed with her incomparable beautie, became of her amarous: and in too curious viewing of the captiue ladie, was by her himſelfe taken priſoner. Where finding her outward perfections graced with no leſſe inward vertues, and her honourable mind anſwerable vnto her rare feature, tooke her vnto his wife; honouring her farre aboue all the reſt of his wiues and concubines: and ſhe againe in all duetifull loyaltie ſeeking to pleaſe him, for a ſpace liued in all worldly felicitie and bliſſe, not much inferiour vnto one of the great Sultaneſſes. But long laſteth not the Sommer fruit of wanton loue, blaſted moſt times in
C the bloſſome, and rotten before it be well gathered: For in ſhort time, the Baſſa more amorous of her perſon than ſecured in her vertues, and after the manner of ſenſuall men ſtill fearing leaſt that which ſo much pleaſed himſelfe, gaue no leſſe contentment to others alſo: began to haue her in diſtruſt, although he ſaw no great cauſe why, more than his owne conceit, not grounded vpon any her euill demeanor, but vpon the exceſſe of his owne liking. Which mad humour (hardly to be euer purged) of it ſelfe ſtil more and more in him encreaſing, he became ſo froward and imperious, that nothing ſhe could ſay or do could now ſo pleaſe or content him, but that he ſtill thought ſome one or other, although he wiſt not who, to be therein partakers with him. So fearefull was the iealous man of his owne conceits. Yet could he not chuſe but loue thoſe great perfections, wherat he could not ynough wonder; although he found no contentment therein,
D tormenting ſtill both himſelfe and her whom he ſo dearely loued with his owne paſſionat diſtruſt: vntill at length, the faire ladie grieued to ſee her ſelfe thus without cauſe to be ſuſpected, and wearied with the inſolent pride of her peeuiſh huſband, togither with his imperious commands; determined ſecretly to depart from him, and ſo to returne again into her own country. Which her purpoſe ſhe diſcouered vnto one of her eunuchs, to whom ſhe had alſo deliuered certain letters to be by him conuaied vnto ſuch of her friends, as whoſe helpe ſhe was to vſe in her intended flight: which letters the falſe eunuch opened, and ſo for the more manifeſting of the matter deliuered them vnto the Baſſa his maſter. Who therewith inraged, and calling her vnto him, forthwith in his furie, with a dagger ſtabd her to the heart and ſlew her: ſo together with the death of his loue, hauing cured his tormenting iealouſie. The liuely counterfeits of theſe two
E ſo notable perſonages thus vnworthily ſlaine, the one by the imperious command of his ſoueraigne, and the other by the cruell hand of her huſband, thou maieſt in the pages following behold, as they are by *Beiſardus* expreſſed.

Ionuſes Baſſa iealous of his faire wife Manto.

The faire ladie Manto cruelly ſlaine by her iealous husband.

Reijce Sultani titulos, Niliatic' Memphis
Quos confert: e'it hic inuidioſus honos.
Regna Tomombeo, Campſon, cum rege reliquit:
Virtutis Selymus dicit id eſſe tuæ.

Reject the Sultans titles, which proud *Memphis* doth thee ſhow:
From ſuch great honours oftentimes doth greateſt danger grow.
That *Campſon* with king *Tomombey* loſt both their ſtate and fame:
Vnto thy valour, *Selymus* doth yet aſcribe the ſame.

Formam si spectes, nihil est formosius ista:
Pectoris & casti gratia rara fuit.
Sed dum dissimili vixit male iuncta marito:
Infelix misera morte perempta iacet.

E RICH. KNOLLES.

If feature braue thou doest respect, thou canst none fairer see,
Nor in whose chast and constant brest could greater graces lie.
But whilst mismatcht she liu'd to mourne, enthrald to iealous braine,
Vnhappie she with cruell hand was by her husband slaine.

But leauing this great Bassa with faire *Manto* vnto their rest, his course thus run, to returne againe vnto *Selymus*; who now come into STRIA, was by letters from the Himbracor-Bassa or master of his horse (whom he had left vpon the frontiers of his kingdome to attend the motions
F of the Persians) aduertised, That the Persian preparations which had raised such a hoat rumour of wars in the beginning of Winter, was growne cold in the heat of Sommer: and that he had seene in all the time of his aboad in those quarters, none but certaine stragling companies, making shew as if some greater power had been comming, which had many times made sudden roads into the countrey, with whom he had sundry times prosperously encountred: and that it

it was generally reported by such prisoners as he had taken, and by his owne espials also that G
Hysmaell, troubled with the Hyrcanians and Tartars, had conuerted the greatest part of his forces against those nations: so that Winter now drawing fast on, and deepe snowes alreadie fallen vpon the mountaine TAVRVS, he could not though he would that yeare looke after ASIA the lesse, or SYRIA. There were that reported, that the Tartars which dwell betweene the two riuers Tanais and Volga, were by *Selymus* his procurement, and mony, set a worke to keep *Hysmaell* busied, by inuading the Iberians and Albanians, which were vnder his protection: which thing he wrought by the meanes of *Mahomet* his father in law, the Bosphorane king, who being of the same language and nation, by rewards easily induced the needie captaines of the Tartars his friends and confederats, to take vp armes against their neighbours.

The cause why Hysmaell inuaded not Selymus, wholly busied in the Egyptian warres.

Many men maruelled that *Hysmaell* the Persian king neglected so faire an opportunitie, wher- H
by he might (as most men thought) haue thrust *Selymus* quite out of ASIA and SYRIA, whilest he was thus busied in ÆGYPT, yea and easily haue destroyed him, shut vp with all his power, especially at such time as the Ægyptian Sultans *Campson* and *Tomombeius* made so great resistance. But they which could better iudge of the matter, saw that *Hysmaell* was not of so great power and strength abroad, as at home: for his armie for most part consisted of gentlemen, or such as were by custome bound to serue him in his defensiue warres, voluntary men, and such as serued without pay. These as they were the most valiant horsemen of the East, so did they with singular valour worthily defend the kingdome of PERSIA, and also as occasion required, make warre with their neare neighbours: but if any longer expedition were to be taken in hand, that they could by no means away withal, accounting it a grieuous thing to depart from their wiues, I
vnto whom they are so addicted that oftentimes they carrie them with them into the wars; and being a wanton & fine kind of people, are not able without wages to draw after them, according to their accustomed manner, so many carriages and horses as might serue both for their necessarie and wanton vses. With which difficultie the great king *Vsun-Cassanes*, *Hysmaell* his grandfather by the mothers side, was much troubled in his warres against *Mahomet* the Great: but was now much harder for *Hysmaell* to doe, for that hee hauing obtained his grandfathers kingdome by the meere good will of the people, easing them forthwith of their heauie impositions, alwaies thought the loue of his subiects (which is easily gotten with bountie and iustice) the surest riches of his kingdome; and that to commaund onely ouer the bodies and goods of
his people, their harts altogether alienated and lost by most heauie and grieuous exactions, seemed not the part of a gratious and naturall prince, but of an outrageous & momentarie tyrant. K
Whereas *Selymus* on the contrarie part, who had by force, mischeefe, and most detestable practises stept vp into his fathers seat, had after the maner of the *Othoman* kings, reposed his greatest and most assured strength in a seruile and mercinarie kind of men, whom he might for pay as his owne creatures, at his pleasure draw farre from home, and as he best liked lead them from place to place, and countrey to countrey, for the enlarging of his empire and eterniſing of his name: and therefore according to the qualitie of his people, deemed true and ready power to consist only in money, and the seueritie of his owne commaund; whereby he had learned with most happie successe, in short time to obscure all the victories of the former *Othoman* kings, with L
the greatnesse of his owne.

1518 All the Winter following *Selymus* stayed with his armie in SYRIA, spending the time in visiting the ports and cities of that prouince, and setting of things in order, for the better assurance thereof. But vpon the approch of the Spring, when he certainely vnderstood, that by the procurement of *Leo* the tenth, then bishop of ROME, the Christian princes were entred into consultation to make warre vpon him, and that supplications with great solemnitie were made for that purpose, and honourable embassadours sent into all prouinces to stir vp the greatest kings of Christendome against him, he (leauing *Gazelles* his lieutenant in SYRIA) by great iournies returned to CONSTANTINOPLE: from thence as at hand to behold the deuises and motions of the Christian princes his enemies. In the meane time, fearing no alteration to arise in the pro- M
uinces of SYRIA and ÆGYPT, for as much as he well saw, that *Cayerbeius* and *Gazelles*, his lieutenants, being at deadly hatred betwixt themselues (as well for old grudges, as for the late treason of *Cayerbeius*, the great cause of the ruine of the Mamalukes kingdome) would neuer agree in one against him, but rather with a certaine emulation striue betwixt themselues with diligence, faithfulnesse, and moderation, who should deserue best in well gouerning the prouinces by him committed

committed to their charge, as indeed they did during the ſhort time of his raigne.

Selymus being arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE, and purpoſing from thenceforth to turne all his forces vpon the Chriſtians, cauſed wonderfull preparation to be made for his wars, but eſpecially at ſea: whereby it was thought, that he would either haue attempted the ſtrong Iſland of the RHODES (a great moat in his eye) or els ſome part of ITALIE. But as he was hatching this miſchiefe, or ſome other of no leſſe importance, and in the meane time delighted himſelfe with viſiting the cities of GRÆCIA and THRACE, and ſolaced himſelfe in the pleaſant countrie about HADRIANOPLE, he was ſuddenly attached with the hand of God, and ſtrucken in the reyns of his backe with a canker: which melancholie and deuouring maladie contemning all cure, did by little and little ſo eat and corrupt his bodie, as that he before ſo much honoured, became now loathſome and odious both to himſelfe and others. 1519

Selymus purpoſing to inuade the Chriſtians, is ſtruck in the reynes of his backe with a canker.

As he lay thus languiſhing, his incurable diſeaſe ſtill encreaſing, leaning his head in the lap of *Pyrrhus* the Baſſa, whom of all others he moſt loued, ſaid: *O Pyrrhus, I ſee I muſt ſhortly die without remedie.* Whereupon the graue Baſſa tooke occaſion to diſcourſe with him of many matters: and amongſt others, that it would pleaſe him to giue order for the well beſtowing of the great wealth taken from the Perſian marchants in diuers places of his empire: perſuading him to beſtow the ſame vpon ſome notable hoſpitall for releeſe of the poore. To whom *Selymus* replied, Wouldſt thou *Pyrrhus*, that I ſhould beſtow other mens goods, wrongfully taken from them, vpon workes of charitie and deuotion, for mine owne vaine glorie and praiſe? aſſuredly I will neuer doe it: nay, rather ſee they bee againe reſtored vnto the right owners. Which was forthwith done accordingly: to the great ſhame of many Chriſtians, who minding nothing leſſe than reſtitution, but making *ex rapina holocauſtum*, do out of a world of euill gotten goods cull out ſome ſmall fragments, to build ſome poore hoſpitall, or mend ſome blind way: a poore teſtimonie of their hote charitie.

Selymus lying thus ſicke to death, and rotting aboue the ground in his tent, as he was vpon the way going to HADRIANOPLE, ſent before *Pyrrhus* and *Achmetes*, two of his greateſt Baſſaes, to prouide for the ſolemniſing of the great feaſt, which the Turkes call *Bairam* (and is as it were their Eaſter) purpoſing to come after himſelfe at leiſure, as his weake bodie would giue him leaue: and kept with him onely *Ferhates*, the third of his greateſt Baſſaes and priuie counſellours. But ſuch was the furie of his foule diſeaſe, continually attainting him with intollerable paines, that ſhortly after the departure of the other two Baſſaes, he breathed out his cruell ghoſt, in the moneth of September, in the yeare 1520: neere vnto the citie CHIVRLI, in the ſelfeſame place where he had ſometime moſt vnnaturally aſſayled his aged father *Baiazet*, with purpoſe to haue ſlaine him, had not the fortune of the old emperour in a great battell preuailed both againſt his force and the treaſon of his own people. Thus intending the miſcheefe he could not performe, cut off by a loathſome and vntimely death, hee to the great ioy of all Chriſtendome ended his dayes, when hee had liued ſix and fortie yeares, and thereof raigned eight: which time of his raigne was nothing elſe but a moſt horrible and dreadfull time of bloudſhed. His dead bodie was afterwards ſolemnly by his ſonne *Solyman* buried in a new temple at CONSTANTINOPLE, which he to the imitation of his father and grandfather had for that purpoſe before built. Vpon his tombe is engrauen in the Greeke, Turkiſh, and Sclauonian tongues, this ſhort Epitaph. 1520

The death of Selymus.

The iuſt iudgement of God.

Hic maximus adſum Selym, qui orbem domui.
Non bella relinquo, ſed pergo inquirere,
Non vlla me fortuna potuit euertere:
Licet oſſa iacent, animus bella quarit.

Phi. Lonicerus Turcicæ Hiſtoriæ, Tomo primo, lib. primo.

In Engliſh thus,

Lo here I lie great *Selymus*, which held the world in feare:
The world I leaue, but not the wars, which I ſeeke though not here.
No fortunes force, or victors hand, could take from me the ſpoiles:
And though my bones lie buried here, my ghoſt ſeekes bloudie broiles.

He

Selymus before his death commendeth the tuition of his sonne Solyman to Pyrrhus Bassa.

He vsed commonly to say, That nothing was sweeter than to raigne without feare or suspi- G
tion of his kindred. A little before his death he commended his sonne *Solyman* to *Pyrrhus Bassa*; straightly charging him, that after his death he should leaue the Persian, and turne his forces altogither vpon the Christians. And the more to incense him to the effusion of bloud, he left him the liuely counterfeit of himselfe hanging at his bed side, with sundrie bloudie precepts breathing forth his cruell and vnmercifull disposition.

H

Tabulæ Epigraphe.

Soldanus Selymus Othomanus, Rex Regum, Dominus omnium Dominorum, Princeps omnium Principum, filius & Nepos Dei. S. S. S.

Ad dextram, versus Græca lingua ad scripti I
in hunc sensum.

Tutus vt imperij princeps sibi sceptra capessat,
Anxia ne dubio corda pauore premat.
Ne putet esse nefas cognatum haurire cruorem:
Et nece fraterna, constabilire domum.
Iura, fides, pietas, regni dum nemo superstit
Æmulus, haud turbent relligione animum.
Hæc ratio est, quæ sola queat regale tueri
Nomen, & expertem te sinit esse metus. K

Ad Sinistram lingua
Sclauonica.

Te semel aduersus peccantem, mitis haberi
Ne studeas, pœna vinaice tutus eris.
Protinus ense rescindendum, putrescere si quid
Incipiet, clemens rex malè sceptra gerit.
Ad veniam facilis, peccanti porigit ansam
Qua se sustentans, ad noua damna ruat. L

Ad Calcem tabulæ lingua
Turcica.

Qui non ipse sua princeps hastilia dextra,
Agmen in aduersum marte fauente iacet.
Sed refugit sauis caput obiectare periclis
Dum grauia impauido, pralia corde subit:
Iste sciat vanis belli se se artibus vti:
Et votis nunquam fata fauere suis. M
Nulla sibi speret, susceptí commoda belli,
Hostiles acies quisquis adire timet.

The

A

The Inſcription of the Table.

Sultan *Selymus Othoman* King of Kings, Lord of all Lords, Prince of all Princes, the ſonne and nephew of God.

On the right hand of the Table were written Greeke verſes to this ſence.

B

The prince that ſafely ſeekes to raigne, and hold his ſtate in quiet reſt,
Muſt neuer ſuffer troubled care to harbour in his princely breſt:
Nor thinke it ſinne to ſpill the bloud of his moſt neere and deareſt kin,
Not of his brother, ſo thereby aſſured ſafetie he may win.
Law, faith, deuotion, and ſuch like, to breake them all he muſt not ſpare,
Nor conſcience make of any thing, to rid him from aſpiring care.
This is the way and onely meane that may protect a princes ſtate,
And ſet him ſafe without all feare, whileſt none may liue whom he doth hate.

The blondie and tyrannicall precepts left by Selymus to his ſon Solyman, which hee afterwards moſt aſſuredly kept as is to be ſeene in his life following.

C

On the left hand of the Table was written in the Sclauonian tongue.

Of him that ſeekes to worke thy woe, deſerue not to be counted kind:
But take him for thy mortall foe, and plague him with reuenging mind.
The rotten lym is cut away for feare of doing further harme:
The gentle prince doth beare ſmall ſway, if no abuſe can make him warme.
Forbearance makes men more offend, and to preſume of further grace,
It doth but ſtrength to rebels lend, to thruſt their ſoueraigne out of place,

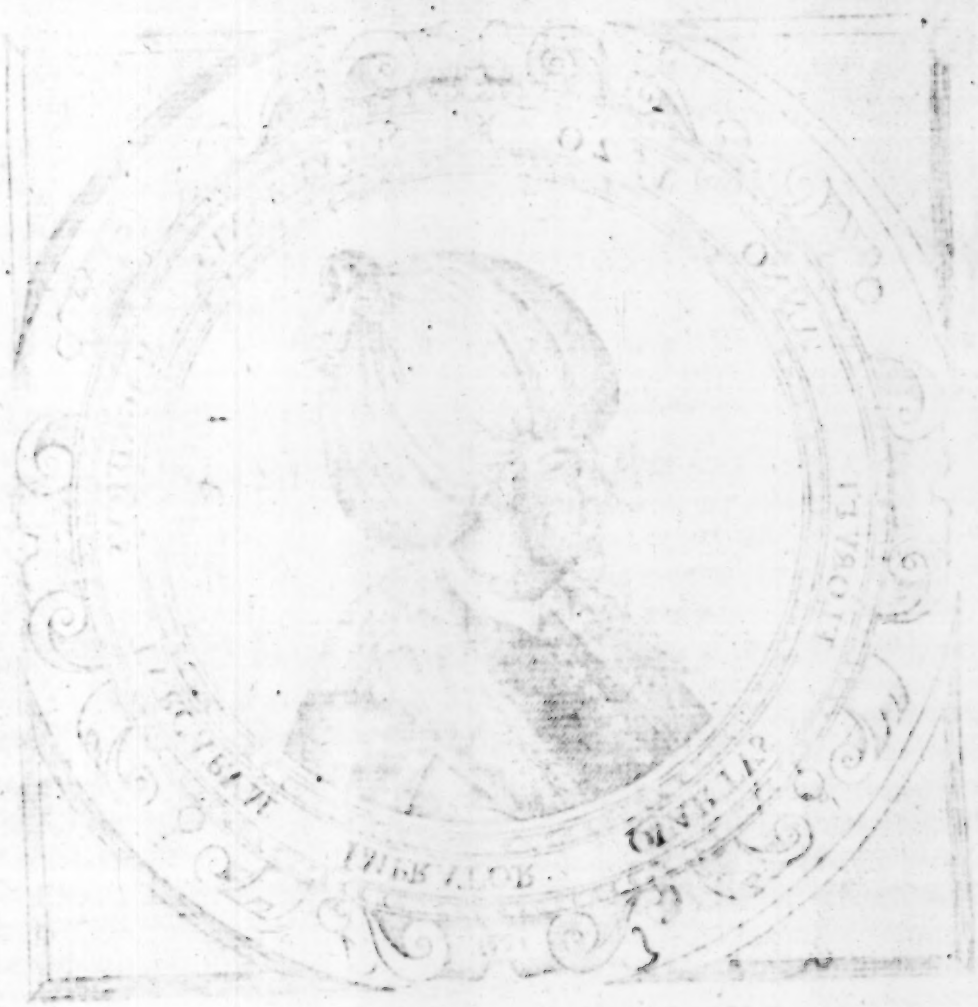
D

At the lower end of the ſame Table was written in Turkiſh verſe.

What prince in perſon dareth not in open field to meet his foe,
And therewith vnappauled heart, his deadly darts himſelfe to throw:
But hides his head for feare of harme, and ſhuns the danger of the field,
When martiall minds with courage bold withſtand their foes with ſpeare and ſhield:
E Let him well know, how that in vaine he beareth armes but for a ſhow,
And that the honour of the field will neuer ſuch a coward know.
Ne let him hope to gaine the ſpoyle by any warres he takes in hand,
That feareth with courageous mind his enemies forces to withſtand.

FINIS.

Christian Princes of the same time with Selymus the first.	*Emperors of Germanie,*	*Maximilian the first.*	1494.	25.
		Charles the fift,	1509.	39.
	Kings	*Of England* — *Henrie the eight.*	1509.	38.
		Of France — *Lewis the twelfth.*	1497.	17.
			Francis the first.	1514.	32.
		Of Scotland — *Iames the fourth.*	1489.	25.
			Iames the fifth.	1513.	32.
	Bishops of Rome	*Iulius the II.*	1503.	9.
		Leo the X.	1513.	8.



Phil. Lonicer. Hist. Turc. lib. 1.

Imperij Soliman patrij moderatur habenas,
Regna q. Christiadum cladibus vsq. metit.
Antiquam capit ille Rhodon, Naxumq. Parumq. L
Tyrrheni infestat Littora curua maris.
Pannonios multo populatu milite fines,
Et cingit muros clara Vienna tuos.
Inclyta Sigethi dum mœnia concutit armis,
Cogitur, hinc Stygiam nudus adire domum.

His fathers empire *Solyman* doth rule with mightie power,
And Christian kingdomes ceaseth not with slaughter to deuour.
The ancient RHODES, with NAXOS Isle, and PAROS he did take, M
And on the coasts of ITALIE did wofull hauocke make:
Faire HVNGARIE with armies great he often did annoy,
And with a world of men had thought VIENNA to destroy.
But whilest to SIGETH he laied siege, in hope the same to haue,
Cut off by death in his great pride, went naked to his graue.

THE LIFE OF SOLYMAN, THE FOVRTH, AND MOST MAGNIFICENT EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

THe death of *Selymus* was with all carefulneſſe concealed by *Ferhates* the onely Baſſa then preſent, for feare leaſt the Ianizaries and ſouldiours of the court getting knowledge thereof, ſhould after their wonted manner in the time of the vacancie of the empire, ſpoile the merchants and ſtrangers in places where they lay in garriſon, and eſpecially in the imperiall citie: and not ſo contented after their accuſtomed inſolencie preſcribe vnto the greateſt Baſſaes at their pleaſure. For preuenting whereof, *Ferhates* diſpatched a truſtie meſſenger with letters in poſt to *Solyman* the onely ſonne of *Selymus*, then lying at MAGNESIA, certifying him of the death of his father; and that he ſhould deſerue well of his peaceable ſubiects by haſtening his comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, whileſt all things were yet in good order, in time to repreſſe with his preſence the feared diſordered proceedings of his men of warre.

Solyman hauing to his great content peruſed the Baſſaes letters, as one deſirous enough of the empire; yet conſidering the cruel diſpoſition of his father (who vpon a meere iealous conceit of his aſpiring mind, and for certain words by him let fall in diſlike of his fathers extreame dealing, had practiſed moſt vnnaturally to haue taken away him hy poyſon: which danger he eſcaped only by the carefulneſſe of his mother, who miſdoubting the worſt, cauſed the poiſoned rich ſhirt ſent to him from his father to be firſt worne by one of his chamber, wherof he in ſhort time after died) and alſo that the letters were ſigned onely by *Ferhates*, and the news not ſeconded from any of the other Baſſaes: fearing ſome hidden & ſecred plot of his father tending to his deſtruction, durſt not aduenture to remoue from his charge, but returned the meſſenger as one to whom he gaue little or no credit. Ten daies thus ſpent, and the death of *Selymus* nothing as yet ſuſpected; *Ferhates* vnderſtanding by his meſſenger the warineſſe of *Solyman*, and that he expected more aſſured aduertiſement, ſent preſently vnto the other great Baſſaes *Pyrrhus* and *Muſtapha* at HADRIANOPLE, that they ſhould without delay repaire vnto the court: vnto whom at their comming he declared the death of the emperour. Which after they had ſeene to be true, they by another ſecret and ſpeedie meſſenger aduertiſed *Solyman* againe thereof, firming thoſe letters with all their hands and ſeales: whereby *Solyman* now aſſured of his fathers death, preſently put himſelfe vpon the way, and by long and painfull iournies in few daies came to SCVTARIVM, called in auncient time CHRISOPOLIS, ouer againſt CONSTANTINOPLE. Where he was met with the Aga or captaine of the Ianizaries, and by him tranſported in a gallie ouer that ſtraight paſſage to CONSTANTINOPLE; where at his landing the Ianizaries by the appointment of their captaine were readie to receiue him, knowing as yet nothing of the death of *Selymus*, vntill that *Solyman* being now in the middeſt of them, the captaine with a loud voice ſaid vnto them, *Behold your emperour*. Whereupon they all with great acclamation cried out, *Long liue the great emperour Solyman:* which conſent of the men of war, is vnto the Turkiſh emperours the greateſt aſſurance of their eſtate. And ſo with much triumph he was by them

Solyman hardly perſuaded that his father was dead.

brought into the roiall pallace, and placed in his fathers ſeat in the yeare 1520. in which yeare G
alſo *Charles* the fift was choſen emperour of GERMANIE. The Ianizaries diſappointed by the Baſſaes of the ſpoile of the merchants, eſpecially Chriſtians and Iewes, receiued of the bountie of *Solyman* a great largious; and in the beginning of his raigne had their accuſtomed wages ſomewhat augmented alſo, to their wonderfull contentment.

Solyman was about twentie eight yeares old when he began to raigne, and was at the firſt ſuppoſed to haue bin of a mild and peaceable diſpoſition: ſo that the princes to whom the name of *Selymus* was before dreadful, were now in hope that a quiet lamb was come in place of a raging lyon. But in ſhort time they found themſelues in that their expectation far deceiued; and eſpecialy the Chriſtian princes bordering vpon him, vnto whom he became a far more dangerous enemie than was his father before him; conuerting his forces moſt part of his long raign vpon H
them, which *Selymus* had almoſt alt ogither imployed againſt the kings of PERSIA and ÆGYPT, the greateſt princes of the Mahometan ſuperſtition.

The firſt that felt his heauie hand was *Gazelles* Gouernour of SYRIA: who preſently vpon the death of *Selymus*, thinking himſelfe now diſcharged of the oath of obedience which he had giuen to *Selymus*, but not to his ſucceſſours; and earneſtly deſiring to reſtore againe the kingdome of the Mamalukes lately ouerthrowne, gathered togither the remainder of the diſperſed Mamalukes, which ſpeedily reſorted vnto him out of all parts of ASIA and AFRICKE: and alluring with rewards the leaders of the wild Arabians, with great numbers of the countrie people of SYRIA diſcontented with the Turkiſh gouernment, entred into open rebellion, and by force of armes draue the Turks garriſons out of BIRTHA, TRIPOLIS, and diuers other cities I
of SYRIA, taking them into his owne poſſeſſion. And the better to effect that he had taken in hand, he ſent embaſſadors to CAIRE, vnto *Cayerbeius*, who had of *Selymus* receiued the gouernment of Ægypt, the vnworthie reward of his horrible treaſon; perſuading him by any means to take reuenge of the iniurie and wrong before done to the Mamalukes, and by killing of the Turkes garriſons to make himſelfe Sultan of Ægypt, and reſtore againe the kingdome of the Mamalukes, offering him therein the vttermoſt of his deuoire and ſeruice. But *Cayerbeius*, either not truſting *Gazelles* his old enemie, or aſhamed by new treaſon to augment his former diſhonour, or els (which was moſt like) miſdoubting his owne ſtrength in performance of ſo great an enterpriſe: after he had attentiuely heard what the embaſſadors had to ſay, cauſed them preſently in his own ſight to be put to death as traitors, and with all ſpeed certified *Solyman* therof; K
who without delay ſent ſent *Ferhates baſſa* with a ſtrong armie into SYRIA. Which thing *Gazelles* hearing, and hauing in his power moſt of the cities of SYRIA, retired himſelfe with all his armie into the ſtrong citie of DAMASCO; whither at length, *Ferhates* the great Baſſa by long march came alſo. *Gazelles* (reſolued to trie the fortune of the field, and ſo either by ſpeedie victorie or honourable death to end the matter, rather than to ſuffer himſelfe to be ſhut vp within the wals of the citie (vpon the comming of the Baſſa valiantly iſſued forth with all his power, and gaue him battel; which for the ſpace of ſix houres was moſt cruelly fought, and many ſlaine on both ſides. At length *Gazelles* being oppreſſed with the multitude of his enemies (being eight times more in number) and hardly aſſailed on either ſide, was inforced to fight in a ring, and there L
Gazelles ſlaine. performing all the parts of a worthie generall and valiant ſouldiour, honourably died togither with his Mamalukes in the midſt of his enemies, leauing vnto them a bloudie victorie. *Gazelles* thus ſlaine, the citie of DAMASCO with all the countrie of SYRIA without any more adoe yeelded againe vnto the Turks obedience, which the Baſſa tooke in ſo good part, that he would not ſuffer his ſouldiours to enter into the citie, then richly ſtored with commodities of all ſorts, brought thither by merchants out of diuers parts of the world.

Gazelles gouernour of Syria rebelleth againſt Solyman.

SYRIA thus pacified, the Baſſa went to CAIRE in ÆGYPT, and there commending *Cayerbeius* for his fidelitie, confirmed him in his gouernement; and enuaying againſt the crueltie of *Selymus* (ſo to pleaſe the Ægyptians) wiſhed them to hope for all happines vnder the peaceable gouernment of the new Sultan *Solyman*. And ſo when he had ſet all things in order in both the prouinces of SYRIA and ÆGYPT, returned againe to *Solyman*. M

The yeare next following, *Solyman* by the counſell of *Pyrrhus Baſſa* his old tutor (a mortall enemie vnto the Chriſtians) and by the perſuaſion of the Ianizaries reſolued to beſiege the ſtrong citie of BELGRADE, otherwiſe called TAVRVNVM, ſcituat vpon the borders of HVNGARIE, where the riuer Sauus falleth into Danubius. Which citie his great grandfather *Mahomet* (ſurnamed

A named the Great, and before him the warlike *Amurath)* had with all their power, long time before to their great losse and dishonour, vainely attempted. Wherein vntill that time were reserued the ensignes, then taken from the Turks, to their no small griefe, with other trophies of the glorious victories of the worthie captaine *Huniades*, and the great king *Mathius Coruinus* his sonne. Wherefore *Solyman* sending his armie before, was come as farre as SOPHIA a citie in SERVIA (the place where the Turkes great lieutenant in EVROPE is alwaies resiant) before that the Hungarians were aware of his comming: for they liuing at ease all the time that *Vladislaus* raigned, and now sleeping in securitie vnder the young king *Lodouicus* his sonne, a man of no experience; who contenting himselfe with the title of a king, suffered himselfe to be pilled and
B poled by his nobilitie and great clergiemen (inuerting all the wealth of the land to their owne priuat gaine) that he was not able to raise any sufficient power to go against his puissant enemie; especially his nobilitie, in whose hands rested the wealth of his kingdome, promising him much, but performing indeed nothing. *Huniades* with his hardie souldiours, the scourge and terror of the Turks, was dead long before; so was also *Mathias* that fortunat warriour: after whom succeeded others giuen to all pleasure and ease; to whose example the people fashioning themselues, forgot their wonted valour, & gaue themselues ouer to sensualitie and voluptuous pleasure. So that *Solyman* without let, presented his armie before the citie of BELGRADE, & with bat- *Belgrade woon by Solyman.*
C terie and vndermining in short time became lord thereof, hauing lost few of his people in that siege. How much the losse of that strong citie concerned the Christian common wealth, the manifold and lamentable miseries which afterwards insued by the opening of that gap, not vnto the kingdome of HVNGARIE only, but to all that side of Christendome, did, and yet doth most manifestly declare. It was woon by the Turkes the nine and twentieth day of August in the yeare 1521.

After the taking of the strong citie of BELGRADE, *Solyman* returning to CONSTANTINOPLE, 1522
brake vp his armie and there lay still almost all the yeare following. During which time, he caused great preparation to be made at CALIPOLIS and other his ports, for rigging vp of a great fleet: which caused the Italians, Venetians, and them of the RHODES, to looke about them, as men carefull of their estates, fearing that those forces would ere long be imployed against some or all of them.

D About the same time *Philippus Villerius* a man of great wisedome and courage, then follow- *Philippus Villerius chosen great master of the Rhodes.*
ing the French court, was in his absence by the knights of the RHODES chosen Great master of that honourable companie: who embarking himselfe at MARCEILLES, after a long and dangerous iourney (being not without the knowledge of *Solyman* hardly laied for at sea by *Cortugogli* a famous pirat of the Turks, whose two brethren the knights of the RHODES had but a little before surprised at sea and slaine, and then held the third in prison) arriued in safetie at the RHODES, where he was with great ioy and triumph receiued.

The great Bassa, by whose graue aduise *Solyman* was contented in all his waightie affaires to be directed, consulting with the other Bassaes of diuers great exploits which was first to bee taken in hand, for the honour of their emperour and inlarging of his empire, were of diuers opi-
E nions concerning the besieging of the RHODES. *Pyrrhus* the Bassa of greatest account, dissuaded the taking in hand of that action, as too full of difficultie and danger: producing for proofe thereof the example of the great emperour *Mahomet*, *Solymans* great grandfather; by whom it was vnfortunatly attempted, and in fine shamefully abandoned. But *Mustapha* next in place and reputation to *Pyrrhus*, extolling the power and fortune of *Solyman*, said, That the greatnesse of their emperor was not to be concluded within the attemps of his predecessors, as wel appeared by the late taking of BELGRADE; from whence first *Amurat*, and after him *Mahomet*, two of the most warlike princes of the Turks, had with great dishonour beene repulsed: and should no doubt with like good fortune preuaile against the RHODES also, being able (if need were) to bring more men before it than were stones in the wals thereof. Which hee so confidently affirmed, with extenuating the power of the Rhodians, that he seemed to make no doubt of the good successe of that warre: presumptuously affirming, that vpon the first landing of *Solymans* great armie, they of the RHODES would without delay yeeld themselues and their citie into his hands.

Amongst others of great experience, whose opinions *Solyman* was desirous to haue, before he would take so great a matter in hand, was the famous pyrat *Cortug-Ogli*, a man of a mischie-

uous and cruell nature, but of great experience in sea matters. Who presented to *Solyman* by G
Mustapha and *Ferhates*, two of the greatest Bassaes, going before him, after due reuerence done, and commaunded to deliuer his opinion, spake vnto *Solyman* as followeth:

Cortug Ogli the pyrat perswadeth Solyman to besiege the Rhodes.

The greatnesse of your deserts (most mightie and puissant emperour) maketh mee (being by you so commaunded) at this time frankely to speake what I thinke may bee for the glorie and honour both of your maiestie and empire. I dayly heare the pittifull lamentation of the miserable people of MITILENE, EVBŒA, PELOPONESVS, ACHAIA, CARIA, LYCIA, *and all alongst the sea coast of* SYRIA *and* ÆGYPT, *bewayling the spoile of their countries, the ransacking of their cities, the taking away of their cattell and people, with other infinite and incredible calamities, which they dayly suffer of the crossed Rhodian pyrats, no man withstanding them: many a time heue these wretched* H
people holden vp their hands to me for helpe, most instantly requesting mee to bee a meane for them to your imperiall Maiestie, whereby they might be protected from the iniurie, rapine, and slaughter of these cruell rouers. Wherefore in their behalfe I beseech your sacred Maiestie, by the most reuerend name of the holy prophet Mahomet, *and by your owne most heroicall disposition, to deliuer your afflicted subiects from these their most cruell enemies, and at length to set them free from the furie, captiuitie, and feare of these pyrats, more grieuous vnto them than death it selfe: and consider with your selfe, that this iniurie and insolencie tendeth not so much to the hurt of your poore subiects and oppressed people in priuate, as to the dishonour and disgrace of your imperiall name and dignitie; which if any other Christian king or prince should offer, your Maiestie I know would not suffer vnreuenged:*
and will you then suffer these robbers, cut-throats, base people gathered out of all the corners of Chri- I
stendome, to wast your countries, spoile your cities, murder your people, and trouble all your seas? for who can passe by sea to TRIPOLIS, DAMASCO, ALEXANDRIA, CAIRE, CHALCIDE, LESBOS, CHIOS, *nay vnto this your imperiall citie of* CONSTANTINOPLE, *without most certain and manifest danger of these rouers? What haue wee heard euerie Spring this many yeares, but that the Rhodians had taken some one or other of your ports, led away your people into miserable captiuitie, and carried away with them the rich spoiles of your countries? And that which is of all other things most dishonourable, this they doe vnder your nose, and in your sight, in the middest and heart of your empire. Pardon mee I beseech you most mightie emperour, if I too plainely speake what I thinke: For whatsoeuer I say, I say it to no other end, but that you should now at length doe that which should many yeares agoe haue beene done. We your most loyall subiects may not, nor ought not, for the encrease of* K
our Mahometane religion, and for the enlarging of your empire and honour, to refuse to aduenture our goods, our bodies, our liues to all hazard and danger without exception. If you likewise be caried with loue of glorie and renowne, or rauished with the desire of neuer dying fame; in what warres can you more easily gaine the same, or better imploy vs your seruants, than in vanquishing and subduing the RHODES, *the reputed bulwarke of Christendome, which onely keepeth vs from their countries? But some will perhaps say, your aunce stors haue in former times vnfortunately attempted that citie: so did they also* BELGRADE *in* HVNGARIE: *yet hath your happie fortune to your immortall fame brought the same vnder your subiection, being far more strongly fortified than it was in times past:*
and doe you then despaire of the RHODES? *Cast off such vaine and needlesse misdoubt, the Turkish em-* L
pire hath alwaies growne by aduentures and honourable attempts: therefore make hast to besiege it both by sea and land. If your subiects mourning vnder the heauie burthen of the Christian captiuitie, built it with their owne hands for the Christians; cannot they now at libertie, desirous of reuenge, and fitted with oportunitie, with like hands destroy the same? If it please you to vouchsafe but to looke into the matter (most dread Soueraigne) you shall see that there is a diuine occasion by the procurement of our great prophet Mahomet *presented vnto your most sacred Maiestie, now that the Christians of the West are at discord and mortall war amongst themselues. Your Maiestie is not ignorant, that in managing of wars, the opportunitie of the time is especially to be followed; and that when occasion serueth, all remissenesse and delay is to bee carefully auoided: the changes of times are most tickle, and if you suffer your good hap now to passe ouer, you shall perhaps in vaine afterwards pursue the same when it is fled* M
and gone.

Solyman by nature an ambitious young prince, prickt forward thus also by the persuasions of *Cortug-Ogli* and others, seeking their further credit and preferment by fitting his ambitious humour: but most of all by the instigation of the Bassa *Mustapha*, resolued to goe in person himselfe

A ſelfe againſt the RHODES. And firſt to make ſome proofe of what ſpirit and courage *Villerius* the new choſen Great Maſter was of, in whoſe ſufficiencie the greateſt part of the defence of the citie was ſuppoſed to conſiſt: to him by way of a little cold friendſhip, he ſent a meſſenger with this ſhort letter thus directed.

Solyman by the grace of God, King of Kings, Lord of Lords, greateſt Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE and TRAPEZOND, moſt mightie king of PERSIA, ARABIA, SYRIA, and ÆGYPT, lord of ASIA and EVROPE, prince of MECHA and ALEPPO, ruler of HIERVSALEM, and Maſter of the Vniuerſall
B ſea: to the reuerend Father *Phillippus Villerius Lilladamus*, Great Maſter of the RHODES, and Legat of ASIA greeting.

I am glad of thy comming and new promotion, which I wiſh thou maieſt long and happely enioy, for that I hope thou wilt in honour and fidelitie exceed all them which haue before thee ruled in the RHODES: *from whom as my anceſtors haue withdrawne their hand, ſo I after their example ioine with thee in amitie and friendſhip. Ioy thou therefore my friend, and in my behalfe reioice of my victorie and triumph alſo: for this laſt Summer paſſing ouer Danubius with enſignes diſplaied, I there expected the Hungarian king, who I thought would haue giuen me battell, I tooke from him by ſtrong hand* BELGRADE, *the ſtrongeſt citie of his kingdome, with other ſtrong holds thereabouts: and hauing with fire and ſword deſtroied much people, and carried away many moe into captiuitie, as a triumphant conquerour, breaking vp mine armie, am returned to my imperiall citie of* CONSTANTINOPLE, *from whence farewell.* Solymans letter to Villerius, Great Maſter of the Rhodes.

C The great Maſter hauing read theſe letters, and well conſidered of the ſame, perceiued forthwith *Solymans* meaning, and that peace was offered him in words and ſhew, but warre in deed and meaning. Which becauſe he was readie by force to repulſe, he rewarded the Turkes meſſenger, and ſent backe with him another of his owne, a priuat perſon. For the Rhodians did ſeldome vouchſafe to ſend any honourable embaſſadours to the Turkiſh emperours (with whom they for moſt part liued in hoſtilitie) either the Turkes to them. By this meſſenger he anſwered *Solymans* letters with other of like vaine, as followeth.

D

Philippus Villerius Lilladamus, Great Maſter of the Rhodes, to the Turke.

I right well vnderſtand your letters which your meſſenger brought vnto me. The friendſhip you write of, is as pleaſing to me as diſpleaſing to Cortug-Ogli *your ſeruant, who went about to haue intercepted me vpon the ſuddaine, as I came out of* FRAVNCE: *but failing of his purpoſe, ſtealing by night into the Rhodian ſea, he attempted to haue robbed certaine merchants ſhips bound from* IOPPE *to* VENICE: *but ſending my fleet out of my hauen, I ſtied his furie, conſtrained the pirat to flie and for haſt to leaue behind him the priſes he had before taken from the merchants of* CRETE. *Farwell from the* RHODES. The anſwere of Villerius to Solymans letter.

E By this anſwere *Solyman* perceiued, that hee was well met withall in his owne fineneſſe, and that he ſhould not ſo eaſily carrie the RHODES, as he had before done BELGRADE. Yet being fully in himſelfe reſolued to trie his fortune therein, hee called vnto him certaine of the cheefe commanders of his warres, to whom he opened his whole determination in his ſort.

Although I doubt not worthy cheefetaines, but that you are of the ſame mind now that you haue beene alwaies of, in the inuading of other nations: yet I haue thought it good in matters tending to the common glory and good of vs all, to vſe your generall aduice and counſell. Since the time that my father left this world, wee haue made warre with diuers nations and people: The Sirians by nature vnconſtant, and prone to rebellion, wee haue by force reduced to their former obedience: The Sophi, that
F *mighty king, nephew vnto the great king* Vſun-Caſſanes *by his daughter the ſiſter of king* Iacup, *in heart and deed our mortall enemy, not contented with the kingdomes of* ASSIRIA, MEDIA, ARMENIA *the greater,* PERSIA, *and* MESPOTAMIA, *wee haue our forces ſhut vp within the compaſſe of his owne dominions: The laſt yeere running through* HVNGARIE, *both on this ſide and beyond Danubius, we tooke* BELGRADE *the ſtrongeſt fortreſſe of that kingdome: and whatſoeuer elſe we attempted, wee ſubdued. Yet for all that (to ſpeake plainely of my ſelfe) my minde greater in* Solymans Oration to his men of war declaring his purpoſe of beſieging the Rhodes.

in conceit than mine empire, and the bloud of Othoman, *findeth no contentment in theſe victories.* G
For whatſoeuer you haue yet done, although it be great, yet I deeme it all but little, in regard of your worth: my deſire carrieth me further. This haue I alwaies aboue all things moſt earneſtly deſired, to ſet vpon the Rhodes, *and vtterly to root out all the ſtrength and forces, yea the very name of thoſe Rhodian ſouldiers. And haue not you alſo no leſſe than my ſelfe deſired the ſame? How often haue I heard you crying out, The* Rhodes, *The* Rhodes? *I haue expected the time that being diſcharged of other warres I might here employ my whole ſtrength and power. That we ſo long deſired, is now come: there was neuer greater opportunitie of good ſucceſſe offered, a great part of the wals of the citie of the* Rhodes *now lying euen with the ground; which cannot in ſhort time be repaired, eſpecially in their want of coine. Beſide this, the garriſon in the caſtle is but ſmall, and their aid from* France *farre off, which will either come too late when the the citie is loſt, or that which I rather beleeue, neuer.* H
For neither will the French king being at mortall warres with the Germane emperour, and lord of Italie) *ſuffer his ſtorehouſes to be diſfurniſhed, or his ports bared of the neceſſarie defence of his ſhipping. Neither doe you beleeue that the Spaniards (diſtreſſed at home with famine, warre, and ciuile diſcention) will eaſily come hither out of* Sicilia *and* Campania *with ſupplies of men and victuall. But you may perhaps thinke, that great danger is to be feared from the Venetian fleet, and the Iſle of* Crete, *which I aſſure you is not ſo: for I know (although I will not now manifeſt the ſame) how I haue preuented that miſcheefe. Wherefore courageous ſouldiers (borne to the ſubduing of all Chriſtendome, much more of the* Rhodes) *with cheerefull hearts follow me your Soueraigne againſt theſe your moſt perfidious and cruell enemies. How long I pray you will you ſuffer that ſtaine and diſgrace to ſtick vpon the* Othoman *familie, and generally vpon all the name of the Turkes, which theſe Rhodi-* I
ans caſt vpon vs the laſt time they were beſieged? Which was not ſo much done by their valour, as by the vnfortunat counſell of my great grandfather Mahomet, *calling home* Meſithes Paleologus *his Generall in that warre, for one vnluckie aſſault. But admit that their valour gained them victorie, will you therefore alwaies ſuffer theſe piraticall excurſions vpon our maine and Iſlands? the ranſacking of cities and countries? the carrying away of your cattell and richeſt ſubſtance? the captiuitie and ſlaughter of your wiues and children? the ſlauerie of you neereſt friends and kinſmen? So helpe me great* Mahomet *it ſhall not ſo be: I vow in deſpight of Chriſt and* Iohn, *in ſhort time to ſet vp mine enſignes with the Moone in the middle of the market place of* Rhodes. *Neither doe I ſeeke any thing vnto my ſelfe, more than the honour of the enterpriſe; the profit I giue vnto you my fellow ſouldiers, their coine, plate, iewels (which is reported to be great) their riches and wealth is all yours, to carrie home* K
with you vnto your wiues and children. Wherefore let vs now with all our forces and courage ſet forward to the beſieging of the Rhodes.

Solymans purpoſe thus made knowne, and the ſame with one accord of all his captaines well liked: *Pirrhus* the eldeſt Baſſa and of greateſt authoritie, who at the firſt diſſuaded the warre, ſtanding vp in the middeſt of the reſt, ſaid:

I cannot but much admire the great wiſedome and rare vertues of our young emperour, who ſo wiſely and aduiſedly hath declared all the deepe counſels of a worthie cheefetaine in taking of warre in hand. L
Bleſſed be Mahomet, *thrice and foure times bleſſed is this empire, bleſſed is our eſtate, and bleſſed are we with ſuch a prince, which carrieth with him in his warres not onely men and habiliments of warre, but moſt deepe wiſedome and policie. Which wholſome manner of proceeding, if we had alwaies before our eies, and would follow, we ſhould in ſhort time bring vnder our ſubiection not the* Rhodes *onely, but all the kingdomes of the Chriſtians. Yet beſide that which our emperour hath moſt carefully and conſiderately deuiſed, mine age and experience would exhort you, by gifts, promiſes, rewards, and all other meanes whatſoeuer, to corrupt if it were poſſible the very cheefe and principall citizens of the* Rhodes, *thereby to enter into their moſt ſecret deuices and counſels: which how it may be wrought, I will in few words giue you to vnderſtand. I as a man indifferent, deſirous of peace and quietneſſe, will by meſſengers and letters induce the Great Maſter to ſend ſome honourable embaſſage to our dread Soueraigne, which if I* M
can once bring him vnto, then let me alone with the reſt.

Solyman maketh preparation againſt the Rhodes.

This counſell of the old Fox pleaſed all the hearers well, but aboue others the emperor himſelfe, who gaue him in charge with all diligence and ſpeed, to proue what he could doe: the other captains he commaunded to prepare the greateſt forces they could, both for land and ſea ſeruice.

A ſeruice. Which preparation was ſo great both at CONSTANTINOPLE and other places, that it could not long be kept ſo ſecret, but that newes thereof was brought to the RHODES the fourth day of Februarie: which newes dayly increaſing and ſtill confirmed by more certaine reports, *Villerius* the great maſter for more certaine intelligence, ſent a Chriſtian of EPIDAVRVS, who could perfectly ſpeake the Turkiſh language, as a ſpie to CONSTANTINOPLE; who by ſecret letters from thence gaue him knowledge that the Turkes were preparing a great fleet, and raiſing a mightie armie, aduertiſing him alſo of a wonderfull proportion of artillerie prepared for batterie: but againſt whom was not commonly knowne, ſome deeming it to be for the inuaſion of ITALIE, ſome for the RHODES, others ſuppoſing it to be for CIPRVS or CORCIRA: which
B diuerſitie of coniectures, made many (whoſe conceits auerted from themſelues the fortune of that war) to be more careles and ſecure. But whileſt euery man was of opinion, that it was made againſt any man rather than himſelfe; certaine aduertiſement was giuen to the Rhodians from diuers places by letters from their friends and confederats, That the Turks did with extraordinarie diligence keepe ſtraight watch and ward in all their ports therabouts alongſt the ſea coaſt, otherwiſe than they were before accuſtomed: which ſeemed to prognoſticat ſome farther matter than the defence of their frontires. *Villerius* carefull of his charge, as the marke whereat the enemie aimed, prouided with all poſſible diligence great ſtore of victual, armour, weapons, ſhot, powder, and whatſoeuer els neceſſarie for the defence of the citie.

Villarius prepareth to make reſiſtance againſt the Turkes.

The new wals of the citie, and AVERONE fortreſſe, by *Baſilius* enginer to the emperor *Charles*
C the fift (a worke begun in the time of *Fabritius Caractus* the late Grand maſter, but not yet finiſhed) was now with all diligent labour ſet vpon, euery man putting his helping hand vnto ſo neceſſarie a worke. Whileſt theſe things are with ſo great endeauour and labour a doing, a meſſenger came from CONSTANTINOPLE, ſent from the old Baſſa *Pyrrhus*, a ſharpe witted and cunning fellow; who with much filed ſpeech in moſt ample manner doing his meſſage, by the way, painted forth the great towardlineſſe and courteous nature of the Turkiſh emperour *Solyman*, with the great commendation of *Pyrrhus* Baſſa his maſter: deliuering from both of them letters vnto the Great maſter of this purport.

Solyman by the grace of God King of Kings, Lord of Lords, &c. to the
D reuerend father *Philippus Villerius Liladamus*, Great maſter of the RHODES, and legat of ASIA, greeting.

I am certainly informed that my letters are deliuered vnto thee; which for that thou vnderſtoodeſt them aright, I cannot expreſſe how much it pleaſed me. Truſt to it, that I am not contented with the victorie I got at BELGRADE; *I hope for another, nay I aſſure my ſelfe thereof, which I will not hide from thee, whom I am alwaies mindfull of. Farewell from* CONSTANTINOPLE.

Solymans letter to Villerius.

Pyrrhus great counſellor to the mightie emperour *Solyman*, to
Philippus Villerius Liladamus, Great maſter of the RHODES
E and legat of ASIA, greeting.

Your letters, greater in meaning than character, I haue deliuered vnto our moſt mightie emperour: but the bearer thereof I would not ſuffer to come to his preſence, leaſt he ſhould be too much offended with ſo baſe a meſſenger. Vnto whom from henceforth ſend men of worth, commendable for their yeares and diſcretion, with whom his Maieſtie may (if he ſo pleaſe) conferre and conclude of matters concerning the common good: which thing if you ſhall doe, it ſhall neither repent you of the doing thereof, nor me of my counſell. The meſſenger I ſend, bringeth letters vnto you alſo from our great emperour; to whoſe diuine excellencie how you are to anſwere, you are alreadie admoniſhed. Farewell from CONSTANTINOPLE.

Pyrrhus Baſſa his letters to Villerius.

F

Theſe letters being openly read, drew the minds of the Rhodians diuerſly. Such as altogether wiſhed for peace, meaſuring others after their owne plaine meaning and integritie, commended the counſell of *Pyrrhus*, ſaying, That he being an old man of great experience, was not ſo deſirous of our quiet, as of the quiet of his prince & countrie: and therefore wiſhed by wiſdome to order that which the young prince ſought for by war, fearing the vncertainty of mans fragillitie,

fragilitie, the common chance of warre, the violence of fortune, which hath oftentimes in a moment with a handfull of men ouerthrowne moſt mightie kings with their ſtrong armies. The perſuaſion of theſe men tooke ſuch effect, that one of the kinghts of the order called *Raymund March*, a Spaniard, a noble gentleman of great courage and verie eloquent, skilfull alſo in the Turkiſh tongue, and then moſter-maſter, was appointed to haue beene ſent embaſſadour vnto the Turkiſh emperour. Many there were of a contrarie opinion, which ſuſpecting fraud and deceit, ſaid it were good to beware of the enemies counſell: asking, to what end this embaſſage were? for ſhould we proclaime warre (ſay they) againſt the moſt mightie tyrant, not-yet our profeſſed enemie, who writeth all peace? or ſhould we intreat for peace, no warre as yet proclaimed? that he which as yet is afraid him ſelfe, may now vnderſtand that he is of vs feared. Beſides that, with what ſecuritie, with what face can our embaſſadours go, vnrequeſted of the Turkiſh emperour, without his ſafe conduct thorow thoſe countries which we daily burne and ſpoile? But they ſhall ſhew *Pyrrhus* the great Baſſaes letters forſooth, his protection, his credit and authoritie ſhall defend them from all iniurie and wrong; as though the ſeruant ſhould preſcribe lawes vnto his maſter, and ſuch a ſeruant as is moſt like vnto his maſter (that is) cruell, falſe of faith, a hater of all Chriſtians, but eſpecially of vs Rhodians: whom the mercileſſe tyrant hauing in his power, with his nauie and armie in readineſſe, ſhall with cruell torture enforce to diſcouer vnto him our prouiſion, the ſecrets of our citie and Order. This opinion of the wiſer ſort, was greatly confirmed by the too much curioſitie of the meſſenger which was ſent, who with all diligence enquired of the ſtate and ſituation of the citie, of the number and ſtrength of the Order. Wherfore in concluſion he was ſent backe again, accompanied but with one priuat ſoldier to carrie the Great maſters letters vnto the Turkiſh tyrant: the tenure whereof was thus. G H I

Philippus Villerius Great maſter of the Rhodes, vnto the Turke greeting.

Villerius his anſwere to Solymans letters.

That you are mindfull of me, greiueth me nothing: and I am alſo mindfull of you. You repeat your victorie in HVNGARIE, *wherewith not being contented you hope for another: nay you promiſe and aſſure your ſelfe thereof, before you haue attempted the warre. Beware you deceiue not your ſelfe; mens expectations neuer deceiue them more than in warres. Farewell from the* RHODES. K

The other letters written to *Pyrrhus*, were to this effect.

Philippus Villerius Liladamus Great maſter of the Rhodes, to *Pyrrhus* the Baſſa.

Villerius his anſwer to Pyrrhus the Baſſa his letters.

I haue aduiſedly conſidered thy letters, with the behauiour and diſpoſition of thy meſſenger. As I contemne not thy counſell, ſo will I not follow the ſame, whileſt my men of warre doe ſpoile the countries and ports of thy lord and maſter; which I beare withall, by reaſon of the iniuries they haue ſuſtained of the Turkiſh pirats. But I will call them home, and will ſend embaſſadours vnto thy great lord: ſo that thou before ſend me ſafe conduct vnder thy maſters great ſeale, for their ſafe comming and returne. Farewell from the RHODES. L

But theſe letters were neuer deliuered vnto the great Turke, or the Baſſa: for as ſoone as the Turkiſh meſſenger was come ouer into the maine, he preſently tooke horſe, which was there in readineſſe for him, and poſted towards CONSTANTINOPLE with as much ſpeed as he could, leauing the Chriſtian meſſenger his companion behind him; who returning backe again to the RHODES, and telling what he had heard and ſeene, gaue them all great occaſion to diſpaire of peace: whereupon *Villerius* ſent into CRETE to hire certaine companies of Cretenſian archers. In the meane time aduertiſement was giuen vnto the Great maſter by letters from the iſland of NAXOS, That the Turkes were readie to put their fleet to ſea with the firſt appearance of the new Moone: which thing they moſt ſuperſtitiouſly obſerue in the beginning of all their great actions. The ſame newes was brought alſo by certaine merchants of the iſland of PATHMOS, who came to the RHODES with a great ſhip laded with corne from EVBŒA; vnder the colour of the ſale whereof, they (by the commaundement of the Turkes, to whom they were tributaries)

Villerius aduertiſed of the comming of the Turkes fleet. M

A ries) diligently noted all that was done in the citie, ſhortly to be beſieged. The Great maſter with no leſſe diligence, ſent diuers of his ſmall gallies amongſt the iſlands and alongſt the maine, to learne what might be of the enemies doings. *Ioannes Lupus* one of the knights of the order, and captaine of one of theſe gallies, meeting with a great ſhip of the Turks laded with corne, tooke her and brought her home to RHODES. But *Alphonſus* captaine of another of the gallies, lying in harbour in one of the iſlands, and ſuffering his men to ſtraggle too farre into the land, was ſet vpon by a Turkiſh pirat and taken.

About the ſame time the Turks by often fires made vpon the maine in the night ſeaſon, gaue ſigne vnto the Rhodians, that they were deſirous to haue ſome parley with them, as their man-
B ner was. Wherupon one *Meneton* a French man, one of the knights, by commandement of the reſt of the order, was ſent with a gallie well appointed to the maine to ſee what the matter might be; and with him was ioyned *Iacobus Xaycus* a paymaſter for the gallies, that he might of the inhabitants of the place, and his friends there dwelling, diligently enquire of all things concerning the intended warre: for this *Xaycus*, beſides that he was a skilfull ſea man and one that knew the coaſt well, had alſo good experience in ciuile affairs, and was wonderfully beloued & made of by the Turkiſh merchants whoſe language hee had perfectly learned. Drawing neere the ſhoare, he found the Turkiſh merchants making merrie vpon the maine, with their carpets, cotten wooll, and ſuch like merchandiſe about them as they vſed to exchange with the Rhodian merchants for woollen cloathes: vnto theſe merchants he gaue due ſalutations, gaging his faith
C for their ſafetie, and they likewiſe to him. But being requeſted to come aſhore to make merrie vntill one of his familiar and old acquaintance might be ſent for, who as they ſaid was not farre off; he anſwered, that he could not ſo doe, except they would firſt deliuer a pledge for him a ſhipboord. The perfidious Turkes laughing as it were at his needleſſe feare, willingly ſent their merchandiſe, and a pledge aboord the gallies. *Xaycus* then going aſhoare, and embracing the Turkiſh merchants which met him: vpon a ſigne giuen, was forthwith beſet on euerie ſide and taken priſoner, and by poſt horſes conuaied with all ſpeed to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was with moſt exquiſit torments that could be deuiſed for any man to endure, enforced to confeſſe whatſoeuer his cruel enemies could deſire. After *Xaycus* was by treacherie thus loſt, then began their prouident wiſedome to be highly commended, which were the occaſion, that the
D decree made for ſending embaſſadours vnto the Turke, was againe reuoked. The hoſtage giuen for *Xaycius*, being brought to the RHODES and examined, was found to be a ſimple countrey fellow whom the Turkes had of purpoſe well apparelled to deceiue the Rhodians: who frankly and plainly according to his ſimple knowledg, anſwered to all things that were of him demaunded; as that the Turkes were making great preparation for ſea vpon the coaſts of CARIA and LYCIA, and had taken vp many ſouldiers in the countries thereabouts to ſend vnto the frontiers of his dominions towards SYRIA, for defence of the ſame againſt the Perſians. All which was true: For *Solyman* to put the Rhodians out of all ſuſpition of inuaſion (whom hee knew carefully to obſerue his doings) ſent the ſouldiers whom he had leuied in the countries neereſt vnto the RHODES, farre away againſt the Perſian, as if he had meant nothing againſt
E the RHODES, and ſo vpon the ſudden to ſet vpon them with his armie brought out of EVROPE, before they were aware. But this his deuiſe ſerued to ſmall purpoſe, for the great Maſter perceiuing by many circumſtances, but eſpecially by that late calamitie of *Xaycus*, that the RHODES was the place the Turkiſh tyrant longed after; & fearing that delay might bring farther danger, cauſed a ceſſation from all other buſineſſe to be proclaimed, vntill all things neceſſarie for defence of the citie were accompliſhed: watch and ward was kept in euerie ſtreet, the great artillerie planted vpon the wals and bulwarks, companies appointed for the defence of euery place, the publike armorie full of all warlike prouiſion was open, all the ſtreets were full of men carrying weapons, ſome to one place, ſome to another. At which time a generall muſter was taken by the chiefe men of the Order, where were found about 5000 free men able to beare armes,
F amongſt whom were 600 knights of the Order, and 500 ſouldiers of CRETE; the reſt were for moſt part marriners, able bodies, who in the time of the ſiege did great ſeruice, encouraged by their ſea captaines: the iſland people which repaired into the citie, ſerued to little other purpoſe but to dig and carrie earth vnto the rampires: and the citizens (except it were ſome few of the better ſort) were for the moſt part weak and of ſmall courage, not able to endure any labour or paines, and yet hardly to be kept in order and gouerned, great ſpeakers, but ſmall doers,

The carefulneſſe of the Graund maſter.

greater

greater in ſhew than in deed. The great Maſter hauing carefully prouided and ordered all G
things needfull for defence of the citie, and fearing nothing more than the faint hearts of
the citiſens, cauſed them all to be called together; for encouragement of whom, he ſpake vn-
to them as followeth:

Villerius his Oration vnto the Rhodians.

Valiant gentlemen and worthie citiſens, wee heare that the Turke our mortall enemie is comming againſt vs, with a huge armie raiſed of diuers nations: from whoſe naturall crueltie and wonted periurie except we defend our ſelues by force, one and the ſelfeſame danger is like to befall me, my knights, and you all. For wee haue with common conſent and hand grieuouſly ſpoiled him both by ſea and land, and you are by booties taken by ſtrong hand out of his dominions, enriched: and at this day we keepe his people in greeuous ſeruitude, and he ours; but he iniuriouſly, and we moſt iuſtly: For his anceſtors (wearie of the darke dennes and caues of the mountaine CAVCASVS, *their naturall dwelling) without right, title, or cauſe, incited onely with couetouſneſſe, ambition, and the hatred of our moſt ſacred religion, haue driuen the Chriſtians out of* SYRIA: *and afterwards, oppreſſed the Grecians in* GRECIA; *where not contented to haue deſtroied the people, with one ſimple kind of death (as barbariſme is euer cruell and mercileſſe) they haue with moſt exquiſit and horrible torments butchered many thouſand of that nation. All whom, this wicked proud youth (whoſe miſcheefe exceedeth his yeares) an euill neighbour to all men, not contented with the dominions of* ARABIA, SYRIA, ÆGYPT, *the greateſt part of* ASIA, *and of many other places moe, ſeeketh in tyrannie, murther, ſpoile, periurie, and hatred againſt Chriſt and Chriſtians, farre to excell: and forceth himſelfe to the vttermoſt of his power, to take from vs our Iſlands, and to ſubdue the Chriſtian countries; that ſo at length being lord of all, and commaunder of the World, he may at his pleaſure ouerthrow the Chriſtian cities, kill the Chriſtians, and vtterly root out the Chriſtian name, which he ſo much hateth. For the repulſing of which intollerable iniurie, we haue eſpecially choſen this Iſland of the* RHODES *for our dwelling place, becauſe the ſame ſeemed more commodious than any other for the annoying of this barbarous nation. We haue done what in vs lay, holpen by you: we know by proofe your great valor and fidelitie, which we now haue not in any diſtruſt. Wherefore I will not vſe many words to perſuade you to continue in your fidelitie and loyaltie, neither long circumſtance to encourage you to play the men: ſithence worthie minds are not with words either encouraged or diſmayed. But concerning my ſelfe and my knights of the Order, I will ſpeake a few words. I with them, with whom (as I hope) the Chriſtian princes and other my knights of the Weſt will in good time ioine their forces, are moſt readie and preſt to defend your ſelues, your children, your wiues, your goods, the monuments of your anceſtours and ſacred temples dedicated to the ſeruice of our God. Which opinion that it may remaine firme and fix in your minds, if nothing elſe, my faithfulneſſe in your warres, my bodie not yet altogether ſpent but able enough to endure paines and trauell, the nobilitie of theſe worthie knights of the Order, their loue towards you, and their hatred towards your enemies, were ſufficient to confirme: but beſide this, the ſtrength of this citie, which this noble Order hath with infinite charges ſo notably fortified with ditches, wals, towers, and bulwarkes againſt all the force and furie of artillerie, is ſuch, that no citie may worthely be compared, much leſſe preferred before the ſame. It is wonderfully ſtored with all kind of weapons and warlike proniſion: we haue laid vp plentie of wine, fleſh, and corne, in vaults, ſo that neither wet weather nor wormes can attaint the ſame: of wood and wholeſome water not to be taken from vs, things neceſſarie for men beſieged, we haue plentie: and able men ynow for the defence of the citie. All which things promiſe vnto vs aſſured victorie, and ſuch end of the warre as we wiſh for. Beſides this, Neceſſitie, which giueth courage euen vnto cowards, will enforce vs to fight. Yet ſtandeth on our ſide true religion, faith, conſcience, deuotion, conſtancie, the loue of our countrey, the loue of our libertie, the loue of our parents, wiues, children, and whatſoeuer elſe we hold deare: Whereas they bring with them the proud commaund of their captaines, infidelitie, impietie, vnconſtancie, a wicked deſire of your bandage, of your blood, and the blood of your parents, wiues, and children. Out of doubt (beloued citiſens) our good God will not ſuffer ſo many good vertues to be ouercome by their foule vices. Wherefore be you in minds quiet and ſecure, and trouble not your ſelues with forboding feare of your enemies; onely continue in the fidelitie and loyaltie which you haue alwaies kept inuiolat and vnſpotted toward this ſacred and honourable fellowſhip, in moſt dangerous wars, and hardeſt chances of fortune: and if need ſhall ſo require, with courageous hand ſhew your valour againſt your enemies, and make it known vnto the Spaniards, French, Italians, Hungarians, and Engliſh, That the Rhodians are of power to daunt the Turkiſh pride, and to auert their fleets and armies from* ITALIE, *which they haue*

I K L M H

ſo

A *ſo many yeares threatened with fire and ſword: and will no doubt thither with all ſpeed haſten and come, if (that which my mind abhorreth to ſpeake) they ſhould here preuaile. Neither will this ambitious youth, in courage, falſhood, and crueltie exceeding* Hannibàll, *imitate him in that, that hauing ouerthrowne the Romans in the great battell at* CANNAS, *knew not to vſe his victorie: but hee will preſently with more than* Cæſars *celeritie bring forth the treaſures his father got in* ÆGYPT, *and with great fleets and huge armies inuade* APVLIA, CALABRIA, *and* SCILICIA: *from whence hee will forthwith breake into* FRANCE, *and afterwards into* SPAINE, *and other Chriſtian countries, raging through them with all kind of crueltie. But I am carried away further than I purpoſed, and than need is: For your fidelitie and valour (moſt worthie citizens) to endure the ſiege and repulſe the ene-*
B *mie, is ſuch, as needeth not my perſuaſion; and of greater reſolution, than that it can be ſhaken with the dangers incident to men beſieged: Yet the greateſt and moſt forcible miſeries of all, which is hunger and thirſt, I aſſure you you ſhall neuer feele; which pinching calamities for all that, ſome people (in faithfulneſſe, courage, and valour nothing comparable to you) haue neuertheleſſe moſt conſtantly indured. For they of* PETELINVM, *beſieged by the Carthaginenſians, for want of victuall, thruſt their parents and children out of the citie, the longer to hold out the ſiege, and liued themſelues with hides and leather ſod or broyled, and leaues of trees, and many other homely things, by the ſpace of eleun moneths: and could not be ouercome vntill they wanted ſtrength longer to ſtand vpon the wals, and to hold their weapons in their hands. They of* CASSILINVM *beſieged by* Hanniball, *held out vntill a poore mouſe was ſold for much money. You muſt of neceſſitie keepe watch and ward in your Stations: if your houſes chance*
C *to be beaten downe with the enemies artillerie, you muſt haue patience: for why, they ſhall bee repaired againe, and it is not a matter of ſuch importance, that we ſhould therefore yeeld vnto our enemies, in whoſe courteſie and fidelitie no aſſurance is to be repoſed. For beſides that he is by nature cruell and vnfaithfull, he can by no meanes be gentle and faithfull towards vs, which haue done him ſo much harme: who onely (as he himſelfe ſaith) haue oftentimes to his griefe interrupted the courſe of the victories of him the conquerour both of ſea and land; whom he hath ſo many times aſſailed by open force with all his ſtrength, wit, craft, deceit, and policie: yet alwaies hitherto in vaine, almightie God ſtill protecting vs, whom aboue all things (moſt deare citizens) I wiſh you to ſerue and call vpon: For except he keepe and defend the citie, the watchmen do but watch in vaine.*

D This cheerefull ſpeech wonderfully encouraged the hearers, eſpecially the vulgar ſort, eaſily carried away with pleaſing words. But whileſt they in their iolitie dreame of nothing but of triumph and victorie, the wiſer ſort poſſeſſed with care, ceaſed not to do what in them lay, to procure, That the good commonly forewiſhed, might in fine come to effect. Amongſt others, *Clement* biſhop of the Greekes, a man both for his place and deuout maner of liuing had in great reputation amongſt them, laboured earneſtly by dayly exhortations to perſuade the Greeks his countriemen in that great and common danger with heart and hand to ioine with the Latines in defence of the citie: for although the gouernment was altogither in the Great Maſter and his Knights, which were Latines; yet the people both of the Iſland and citie were for moſt part Greekes, who liked not altogether ſo well of the Latine gouernment, but that they did manie
E times repine thereat. Howbeit the matter was at that time ſo ordered by the good perſuaſion of the biſhop, aud good gouernment of the Great Maſter, that they all agreed as one man to ſpend their liues in defence of the citie; and were ſo far from feare of the comming of the barbarous enemie, that many of the vulgar people, in whom appeareth commonly more heat than wit, wiſhed rather for his comming than otherwiſe. But looke what they had fondly wiſhed, proued afterward to their coſts ouer true. For within a few nights after, the Turkes by fire made in the night time vpon the maine, gaue ſigne of parley vnto the Rhodians. Whereupon a gallie well appointed, with a long boat, was preſently ſet forth to ſee what the matter was: which drawing neere vnto the ſhore, was hailed by a Turke, accompanied with a troupe of horſemen, deſiring the captaine of the galley to ſend ſome on ſhore, with whom they might more conueni-
F ently parley: which thing the captaine refuſing, What, ſaid the Turke, art thou afraid of *Xaycus* fortune? To whom the captaine in threatening manner anſwered againe, *Xaycus* whom you haue contrarie to your faith and oath taken, troubleth me not; neither am I afraid of you, whom I truſt not: but if you haue any thing to ſay, let me heare it, or els get you further off, otherwiſe I will ſpeake to you by the mouth of the cannon. Then one of the Turkes comming to the water ſide, laid downe letters vpon a ſtone, ſaying, that in them was contained that they had in charge:

which said, he presently set spurs to his horse, and departed with the rest of his companie. The captaine sending out his long boat for these letters, found them directed in this sort: G

Solyman by the grace of God King of Kings, Lord of Lords, most mightie Emperor of CONSTANTINOPLE and TRAPEZONDE, &c. vnto the reuerend father *Philippus Villerius Liladamus*, Great master of the RHODES, to his knights, and all his people in generall.

The purport of which letter was as followeth: H

Solymans threatening letters to the Rhodians.

The compassion I haue of my distressed subiects, and the great iniurie you doe mee, hath moued mee to wrath. Wherefore I command you without delay to yeeld vnto me the Island and citie of the RHODES, *willingly and charitably graunting you leaue safely to depart with all your riches, or to tarrie if you so please vnder my obeisance, your libertie and religion in no part infringed with any tribute or imposition. If you bee wise, preferre friendship and peace before bloudie warre: for vnto them which are by force subdued, are reserued all extremities which the miserable vanquished vse to suffer of the angrie conqueror: from which neither your owne force, nor forreine aid, nor huge wals, which I will vtterly ouerthrow, shall be able to defend you, fare you well. All which shall assuredly be performed, if you shall make choice rather of my friendship than of my force: wherein you shall neither be deceiued nor circumuented; I take to witnesse God the creator of heauen and earth, the foure writers of the Euangelicall historie, the foure score thousand prophets descended from heauen, and amongst them our highest prophet* Mahomet, *the reuerend ghosts of my father and grandfather, and this my sacred and imperiall head. From our pallace at* CONSTANTINOPLE. I

When these letters were openly read in the counsell chamber at the RHODES, some were of opinion, That it was good to answere the Turkish tyrant roundly, therby to giue him to vnderstand that they were not afraid of his threats: othersome thought it no wisedome with hard words to prouoke so great an enemie to further displeasure. Thus whilest euery man would haue framed an answere according to his owne disposition, in conclusion it was agreed vpon, to giue him no answere at all. K

The same day these letters came to the RHODES, which was the fourteenth day of Iune, one of the Turks great commanders at sea with thirtie gallies, the forerunners of the Turkish fleet, arriued at the Island of CHOS, famous in ancient time for the birth of *Hippocrates* the great physition, and the wonderfull picture of *Venus* left there vnperfited by *Apelles*, which for the excellencie therof neuer man durst afterward take in hand to perfect: which fruitfull and pleasant island was then at the arriuall of the Turks, part of the dominion of the RHODES. The Admiral of this fleet here landing his Turkes, began to burne the corne which was then almost ripe, with the countrie villages round about. With which iniurie, *Preianes* gouernor of the Island (a man of great courage and valour) moued, with a chosen companie of footmen, and certaine troupes of horsemen, suddenly set vpon the Turks, in diuers places dispersed abroad far into the countrie, with such a terrible crie of the countrie people, and instruments of war, that the Turks being therewith amazed, ran away as if they had bin mad, and were many of them slaine without resistance; and had not the gallies lien neere the shore, to receiue them that were able to flie thither, there had not one of them which landed escaped the hands of the Island people. The Turks hauing receiued this losse, left the Island, and put to sea againe. L

The Rhodians for the most part now assured and out of doubt of the comming of the Turks, by the persuasion of *Gabriell Pomerolus* vicemaster, and other men of great experience, pluckt downe the suburbes of the citie, and laid them euen with the ground, their pleasant orchards also and gardens neere vnto the citie, they vtterly destroyed; the great master for example sake beginning first with his owne, being a place of great delicacie, lying vnder the wals neere vnto the French bulwarke: and taking into the citie all such things as they thought needfull for the enduring of the siege, they vtterly destroyed all the rest, were it neuer so pleasant or commodious, within a mile of the towne, leauing all that space as euen and bare as they could possibly make it; to the intent, that the enemie at his comming should find nothing neere the citie whereof to make vse. But whilest the pleasures and delights of the suburbes are thus in defacing, another M

more

A more heauie and wofull ſight preſented vnto the eies of the citizens, filled the citie with greater mourning and penſiueneſſe than did the comming of the enemie. The miſerable multitude of the poore countrie people, ſome bringing wood, ſome corne, ſome cattell, ſome foules, and other ſuch neceſſaries as they had, out of the countrie into the citie (for ſo the Great maſter had commaunded) after whom followed great numbers of women and children weeping, with diſchiueled haire, ſcratching their faces and tearing themſelues after the manner of the countrie, wringing their hands and caſting vp their eies to heauen, beſeeching God with heauie countenance and flouds of teares to defend the noble citie of the RHODES, and themſelues from the furie of their enemies. Which multitude of countrie people with their prouiſion, being packt vp into narrow rooms in the houſes of the citizens, and their cattel ſtaruing for want of fodder, B afterwards corrupted the aire; whereof inſued rotten agues and the flix, during the time of the ſiege. But after the citie was giuen vp, ſuch a plague and mortalitie followed, as deſtroyed great numbers of the Turks and poore Chriſtians; which knowing not whither to go, choſe rather there to die than to forſake their natiue countrie.

The feare of the countrey people

The Generall of the Turkiſh fleet which landed in the Iſland of CHOS, and was of purpoſe ſent by *Solyman* to prouoke the Rhodians to battel at ſea; before he with his whole power came to beſiege the Iſland, came daily with twentie gallies halfe thoſe narrow ſeas ouer, betwixt LYCIA and the RHODES, leauing the reſt of his fleet riding at anchor at the promontorie called GNIDVM (not farre from the citie of RHODES) readie to aide him as need ſhould require: this maner of brauerie he vſed many daies togither, hoping thereby to allure the Rhodians out C of their hauen to giue him battell; knowing, that if he ſhould therein obtaine the victorie, it were at that time little leſſe than the taking of the citie, or if he could by cruell fight but weaken the forces of the Rhodians, he ſhould therein do his maſter good ſeruice, and greatly further his victorie by diminiſhing the number of the defendants. When he had many daies without intermiſſion in this proud manner come halfe ſeas ouer, and ſometimes paſſing further came and lay at the mouth of the hauen, as it were daring them to fight: the Rhodians not wont to be ſo braued at their owne doores, moued with the intollerable inſolencie of this proud Turke, by their continual importunitie cauſed the Great Maſter to call a counſel, to conſider whether they ſhould fight with this fleet of the Turkes or not. The councellors by the appointment of the Great Maſter aſſembled: the Chanceller, a man of great authoritie and ſpirit, famous for his no- D ble acts both at home and abroad, and chiefe of them which were of opinion this fleet of the Turks was to be fought withall, ſaid:

The chancellor his ſpeech perſwading the Rhodians to fight with the Turkes gallies.

So great diſgrace was not longer to be ſuffered, but preſently reuenged: For (ſaid he) the hugie fleet of the Turks, I do not ſay at whoſe force and fight, but at whoſe verie name many men do tremble and quake (which for all that is vnto vs no great noueltie, for euerie yeare we heare of the like) is as a head to be ioined vnto theſe pyraticall gallies, as members; and then will it be moſt expedient (which will be a moſt eaſie thing for vs to do, hauing the better both for ſtrength of ſhipping and number and valour of men) to giue that great head ſuch a blow and wound, by cutting off theſe limbes, that it ſhall euer after ſtagger and faint for want of ſtrength: or elſe there is no other fleet at all prepared againſt E vs to follow this, and then this diſcomfited we ſhall be at quiet. Which thing in my iudgement (though others which feare their owne ſhadowes and the falling of heauen, ſay otherwiſe) is moſt like to be true: for the great Turke is not ſo ſottiſh to come hither, the fitteſt time of the yeare being ſo far ſpent, in the latter end of Iune, to beſiege this citie, and ſuch a citie as he knoweth to be moſt ſtrong, wanting nothing that is needfull, and thorowly manned with valiant ſouldiours, from whence his anceſtors haue beene with loſſe and ſhame repulſed: when as the remainder of the Sommer will be ſpent, before he can encampe himſelfe and place his batteries; and Winter time as you know is vnfit for any ſiege, eſpecially in this Iſland, wherein they can find no hauen or harbour to reſt in. Wherefore on Gods name let vs ſet vpon our proud enemies: and let vs not for a few threatning words ſent vnto vs from a fearfull youth, vpon a fineneſſe and pollicie leaſt we ſhould follow the tayle of his fleet bound for ſome other F place, ſit ſtill like cowards within our wals with our hands in our boſomes, as men which for feare and dread durſt not to ſhew their heads. Which our cowardiſe and want of courage we (forſooth) call Fabius *his pollicie: but I would to God we were like* Fabius, *but I feare we ſhall proue more like* Antiochus, *the Ætholians, the Vitellians, all whoſe courage conſiſted in words, vainly hoping to gaine the victorie by ſitting ſtill and wiſhing well. But the helpe of God is not to be gotten by womens prayers and ſupplications*

cations or theſe faint-hearted pollicies, which cowards call aduiſed counſell : but victorie is gained by aduenturing and expoſing our ſelues to danger and perill. G

with theſe and ſuch like ſpeeches he ſo moued the multitude, which commonly conceiueth moſt courage vpon the greateſt vncertainties, that they deſired that they might fight, ſaying, That they would waſh away that foule diſgrace with the bloud and ſlaughter of their enemies; for why, they wanted not weapons, courage, or hands (as they ſaid) to doe it withall.

For all this, the grauer ſort of the counſell (without whoſe conſent the maſter might in ſuch caſes doe nothing) thought it not good in ſo dangerous a time to aduenture any great part of their forces, which they ſhould afterwards want for the defence of their citie. The Turkiſh generall deceiued of his expectatiõ, and perceiuing that the Rhodians would not be drawn forth H to battell at ſea, withdrew his fleet twelue miles off, vnto a place called VILLANOVA; where caſting anchor and landing his men, he burnt the corne all thereabouts which was now almoſt ripe, but forſaken of the people as a thing deſperate: as for the people themſelues, they were all fled, and had retired themſelues either into the citie of the RHODES, or elſe into ſtrong caſtles in other places of the Iſland.

The worthie cõmendation of the Great maſter.

At the ſame time, certain troupes, of horſemen ſent forth to haue skirmiſhed with the Turkes that were burning of the corne, were by a meſſenger ſent from the Great maſter, cõmanded to retire: For the prouident Generall ſought by all meanes to reſerue his ſoldiors for greater dangers, which he juſtly feared in the expected ſiege: during which time he ſhewed himſelfe a moſt politike captaine and braue ſoldior, he would many times by day eat his meat with his ſoldiors I as one of them, and moſt part of the night keepe watch himſelfe walking vp and downe, reſting himſelfe when he was wearie vpon ſome ſtone or piece of timber or other homly ſeat, as it chãced. In time of aſſault he was alwaies more forward & aduenturous than the graue cõunſellors wiſhed, fearing neither ſhot nor enemie: yet did he alwaies more commend diſcreet counſell grounded vpon reaſon, than proſperous actions commended but by their euents. And that which a man would wonder at, amongſt ſo many cares in middeſt of ſuch diuers and dãgerous chances, he carried alwaies ſuch a grace and majeſtie in his cheerfull countenance, as made him to be of the beholders both reuerenced and loued. All the time he could ſpare from the neceſſarie cares of his waightie charge, from aſſaults, & the natural refreſhing of his body, he beſtowed in prayer and ſeruing of God; he did oftentimes ſpend the greateſt part of the night in the church K alone praying, his headpiece, gorget and gauntlets lying by him: ſo that it was commonly ſaid, that his deuout praiers and carefulneſſe would make the citie inuincible.

The Turks fleet deſcried at ſea troubleth the Rhodians.

The ſix and twentith day of Iune early in the morning, newes was brought into the citie from the watch-tower ſtanding vpon S. *Stephens* hill about a mile from the citie, That a moſt hugie fleet was diſcried at ſea, making thitherwardes all alongſt the Weſterne coaſt of LYCIA. this bad newes much troubled the citie, although it was not of moſt men vnexpected; all places was filled with tumult and hurly burly, euerie man meaſured the greatneſſe of the danger by the meaſure of his owne feare, & ſuch a pitifull crie was in euerie place as is vſually in cities preſently to be beſieged. Hereupon publike praiers were made through all the citie, and euerie man L with great deuotion beſought the God of heauen, That as it was his pleaſure that the Rhodians ſhould at that time be the champions of the Chriſtian religion; ſo he would giue them ſtrengh and victorie againſt their enemies, and to turne the calamities of warre vpon the enemies of his name. Their deuotion ended, the gates of the citie were ſhut vp, and people from all places ran vnto the wales, great flockes of women, children, and aged men not able to ſtand without a ſtaffe going forth of their houſes to gaze vpon that dreadfull fleet (wherein was aboue 200 ſailes as is reported) filled the ſtreets, the tops of the high towers and houſes. The formoſt of the fleet was

The order of the Turkes fleet.

the Admirall of CALIPOLIS, to whom *Solyman* had committed the charge of all his nauie, and to aſſaile the citie by ſea: The rearadmirall was *Cara Mahometes* an arch pirat, who was afterwards ſlain with a great ſhot out of the citie. The viceadmirall in the middle of the fleet with a M great ſquadron of gallies, hauing a faire Weſternly wind, ſtrucke ſaile directly before the mouth of the hauen (which was on both ſides defended with two ſtrong towers well furniſhed with great artillerie) and began to row towards the citie: whereupon an alarum was raiſed, the trumpets ſounded, and many haſted vnto the bulwarke which defended the left ſide of the hauen, which the enemie ſeemed to direct his courſe vnto; and was in deed more ſubiect to danger

than

A than the other. But the Turke ſeeing himſelfe in danger to be ſunke with ſhot from the bulwarke, was glad to get himſelfe farther off vnto the reſt of the fleet: the Rhodians from the wals with lowd outcries ſcornfully deriding him for his fooliſh attempt. This great fleet in exceeding brauerie and triumph paſſing by the citie in ſight of the Rhodians (ſtanding vpon the wals with enſignes diſplayed) did not more terrifie them, than they were themſelues terrified to behold the ſtrength of the citie and cheerefulneſſe of the defendants. But paſſing on, they came to the promontorie which the inhabitants call Bo, about three miles diſtant from the citie, Eaſtward: which ſmall harbour being not able to receiue ſo great a fleet, many of the gallies were enforced to ride it out at ſea, where they were by ſhot out of the citie oftentimes indangered and enforced
B to get them farther off. Whileſt the enemie was there landing his great ordinance and other inſtruments of war prepared for the ſiege, chuſing a place for his campe, tranſporting his land ſouldiors from the maine into the Iſland, viewing the ſtrength and ſituation of the citie, and in what place he might with moſt eaſe aſſault the ſame: the Rhodians in the meane time were not idle, but ſunke diuers deepe ſounds in many places of the citie neere vnto the wals, to diſcouer the enemies mines; and fortified their bulwarks with greater rampires; in which worke euerie man put to his helping hand without reſpect of age or calling. The Graund Maſter about that time ſent *Lodouicus Andugus* one of the knights of the Order, into SPAINE to *Charles* the emperor; and *Claudius Ducenuillus* another of the order alſo, to ROME to the Cardinals, and Italian knights of the Order; and from thence into FRANCE vnto the French king with letters craning
C the aide of theſe Chriſtian princes, for reliefe of the citie by ſea and land beſieged. But all in vain, for they carried away with the endleſſe grudge of one againſt another, or reſpecting only their owne eſtates, returned the embaſſadors with good words, without reliefe.

The Great maſter by his embaſſadours craueth aid of the chriſtian princes.

At this time *Preianes* gouernor of CHIOS (of whom we haue before ſpoken) a man comparable with any of the captains of that age, an excellent ſouldiour both by ſea and land, valiant and therto fortunat, of an inuincible courage, brought vp in the wars from his childhood; when he had by the ſpace of two or three daies hid himſelfe in the rocks at ſea, for feare of the Turkes great fleet, came by night in a ſmall pinneſſe to the RHODES, hauing deceiued the Turks watch: at whoſe comming the Rhodians wonderfully reioiced, for the ſouldiors repoſed greater confidence in no man than in him: And if any great exploit were to be done, him the Maſter truſted
D aboue any other: he alwaies in armes during the ſiege, encouraged the ſouldiors, ſearched the watch, ſuruaied the bulwarks, repaired the breaches; and ſuch labours as others accounted extreame miſeries, he cheerefully endured, as if they had bin but his pleaſures and recreations. At the ſame time alſo *Gabriell Martiningus* of BRIXIA, a moſt skilful enginer, came to the Rhodes out of CRETA; by whoſe induſtrie and cunning, 55 mines which the Turks did with infinit labour and charge make (by reaſon of the ſpringing of the water, and hardneſſe of the rockes) during the ſiege, were all by countermines diſappointed and defeated.

The commendation of Preianes.

The citie of the RHODES is ſcituat on a plaine ground, on euerie ſide to be beſieged, onely
E Northward it is defended with a goodly hauen, from whence it lyeth all Weſtward: betwixt it and the hils round about it, lieth a ſtonie plaine ground, not verie broad, but of greater length; theſe hils are full of ſprings, and orchards planted with Oliues, Fig-trees, Vines, and ſuch other fruits as ſuch drie and ſandie ground wil beare. But what by nature wanted, was by the hand and induſtrie of man ſupplied; for it was compaſſed about with a moſt ſtrong double wall, & deepe trenches, threatning the enemie with thirteene ſtately towers: and ſure againſt all aſſaults, with fiue mightie bulwarks: with diuers goodly faire gates: and that which was the greateſt defence of all, within the citie was alwaies kept a moſt exact & ſtraight forme of warlike diſcipline. The defence of the whole citie was thus proportioned: From the French tower (which with the greatneſſe and hight thereof ſeemed to mate the skie) ſtood the Frenchmen with the French Lillies in their enſignes, vnder their Commander *Ioannes Abbinus* a noble knight of the Order: from thence to *S. Georges* gate lay the ſtout Germains, with the Eagle in their enſignes: in the
F third ſtation were placed the French Auergnois, with the Spaniards, for that the ditches in that place were neither ſo deepe nor broad as elſewhere: in the fift place lay the Engliſh garriſon, ouer whom the grand maſter himſelfe commanded: after them ſucceeded they of NARBONA: and laſt of all the Italians, in valour not inferiour to any of the reſt, vnder the leading of *Petrus Balinus* and *Gregorius Morgutas*. In euerie one of theſe ſtations were diuers valiant knights of the Order, whoſe names (worthie of eternall memorie) for breuitie we paſſe ouer, all men

The deſcription of the Rhodes.

of themſelues ſufficient to haue taken vpon them the whole charge. G

A Turkiſh woman ſlaue, conſpireth to fire the citie.

The enemie was not buſier without the citie in placing his batterie, but traiterous minds were as buſie within to haue betraied the ſame. A Turkiſh woman, ſlaue to one of the rich citizens, had conſpired with certaine other her complices, at ſuch time as the Turkes ſhould giue aſſault vnto the towne, at one inſtant to ſet on fire the houſes wherin they dwelt in diuers places of the citie, that the defendants drawn from the wals to quench the fire, the Turkes in the meane time might the more eaſily enter. But this treaſon was in good time reuealed, and the offendors worthily executed.

The Turks had not at yet placed their batterie, when as they tooke a certaine hill, whereon ſtood the church dedicated to *Coſmus* and *Damianus*, directly ouer againſt the Engliſh ſtation: from thence (as it ſeemed, rather for exerciſing of their ſouldiours than for any great harm they H could do ſo farre off) they began with ſmall battering pieces to ſhoot into the citie: and afterwards they began to dig mines, and to caſt vp trenches: for the performance of which kind of worke, and for the filling vp of the towne ditches, they had brought with them fiftie thouſand pioners, men better acquainted with countrie labour and keeping of cattell, than with warres; which being inforced vnto their labour day and night, ſomtime with ſtripes, and ſometime with death, did with incredible celeritie bring that to paſſe, which was before thought impoſſible.

The painefulnes of the Turkes pioners.

They cut waies through the moſt hard ſtonie rockes, raiſing the plaines as high as mountaines, with earth brought two miles off, and laying the mountaines euen with the plaines, and yet they neuer wrought in ſafetie, but were miſerably rent in ſunder with the great ordinance out of the towne: and that which moſt of all troubled them, the Rhodians ſallying out vpon theſe ouer- I laboured people, hauing neither courage nor skill to defend themſelues, but truſting onely to their heeles, ſlew great numbers of them, and not of them only, but of others alſo appointed for their defence, whom the Rhodians (taking courage of their feare) fiercely purſued & ſlew downright. And when many others iſſuing out of the campe in great companies, thought to haue relieued their fellowes, the great ordinance before of purpoſe placed to moſt aduantage, ſo thundered from the wals amongſt the thickeſt of them, that the ground lay couered with the bodies and weapons of the dead Turkes. With which maner of fight, after the Rhodians had twice or thrice troubled the enemie, the Turkes for their more ſafetie wrought moſt vpon their mounts by night, keeping moſt ſtrong watch, for defence of their poiners, which for more aſſurance K they doubled in the day time, and bent their artillerie againſt the places which the Rhodians vſed to ſallie out at: which did not ſo much keepe them in, as the feare of weakning themſelues by often ſallies, knowing that one man was vnto them a greater loſſe, than vnto the enemie an hundred. Amongſt others which in the beginning of this great ſiege forced the vttermoſt of their deuices to the deſtruction of the Turks, were certaine mariners, who hauing the Turkiſh language perfectly, by leaue of the Graund Maſter (diſguiſing themſelues in the habit of Turks) departed by night out of the hauen in a ſmall boat, loaded with apples, plums, peares, millons, grapes, and ſuch other fruits as the time of the yere affoorded; and in the darknes came alongſt the coaſt, vnto that part of the Iſland whereunto the paſſage was out of the maine. There as if they had been Turks come from the maine, they landed their commodities, which the Turkiſh L ſouldiors bought greedily. When they had thus ſold their fruits, and in ſelling thereof diligently noted the ſpeech and talke of the ſouldiors concerning the ſiege, and were now readie to depart: certaine Turks which greatly diſliked the hard beginning of this ſiege, ſeeing themſelues if they did but ſtir, in danger to be ſet off with ſhot out of the towne, earneſtly requeſted the marriners to take them with them into the maine: which to do, at the firſt the marriners diſſembling, refuſed, as a thing dangerous: & beſides that, their boat was too little to receiue ſo many as would willingly haue gone with them. Yet with much adoe they ſuffered themſelues to bee intreated to take in ſeuen or eight, ſuch a number as the knew they could well maſter: who in hope of paſſing ouer into the maine, were (contrarie to their expectation) brought priſoners to the RHODES, where they were by *Preianes* brought vp to the top of the higheſt tower of S. *Iohns* M church, from whence they might ſee all about the countrey, and well deſcrie all the manner of the Turks camp, which they ſimplie diſcouered vnto the captain, and whatſoeuer els they were demanded: and amongſt other things confeſſed, that the ſouldiors were greatly diſcontented with the ſiege, hauing in the beginning thereof loſt ſo many men, and that they were readie to riſe in mutinie againſt their captaines, and would hardly by them be commaunded out of their

The Turkes deceiued by the Chriſtian mariners.

trenches

A trenches and cabbins, ſaying, that all they did was but loſt labour: and that they ſhould find it another peece of worke to win the RHODES, than they had at BELGRADE: wherefore if they were wiſe, they ſhould in time depart before they had receiued further harme both from the enemie, and for want of neceſſaries, wherewith the ſouldiers began alreadie to be pinched. All which was then ſuppoſed to haue been ſpoken by the captiues to pleaſe them in whoſe power they now were: yet it appeared afterwards to bee all true. For *Pyrrhus Baſſa* conſidering the troubled ſtate of the campe, and the generall diſcontentment of the ſouldiers, whom he was at that time gladder to pleaſe than to puniſh, writ vnto *Solyman* at CONSTANTINOPLE, That if he would the ſiege ſhould goe forward, he ſhould without delay come in perſon himſelfe to the
B camp, for that the ſouldiers without regard of ſhame were readie to riſe in mutinie and to abandon the ſiege, refuſing to be commaunded by their captaines.

In the meane time whileſt *Solyman* prepareth himſelfe to ſet forward, the Turkiſh captaines vnderſtood by certaine fugitiues (whereof in all warres ſome are to be found) that the high ſteeple of *S. Iohns* church ſerued them of the towne for a watch tower: for which cauſe, and for deſpight of the Croſſe ſtanding vpon the top thereof, they laboured nothing more, than with continuall ſhot to beat downe that tower; which whileſt they were doing with great diligence, *Solyman* himſelfe came into the campe the 28 day of Auguſt in the afternoone: where finding in his armie all the ſignes of cowardiſe and feare that could be ſpoken of or deuiſed, and nothing done according to the command of ſuch as he had appointed for that charge, but all things out
C of order; he tooke more greefe to ſee that great diſorder, than he did pleaſure and good hope of two hundred thouſand ſouldiers which were in his armie. Yet for all that he was inwardly chafed with the heat of youth and indignation, againſt his own people as well as the Rhodians, he moderated himſelfe betwixt his owne rage and the offence of his ſouldiers, and calling them together, cauſed them to be diſarmed, not leauing among them ſo much as a ſword: and compaſſing them in with fifteene thouſand harquebuſiers whom he had brought with him well appointed, he ſtept vp into his royall ſeat, there ſet on high for the purpoſe; where ſitting downe, he pauſed a good while without any word ſpeaking, as if he had conſidered with himſelfe, whether he ſhould onely puniſh the authors of the mutinie, or elſe with the puniſhment of many to reuenge ſo foule a ſedition, little differing from open rebellion. But following in himſelfe the
D milder reſolution, he thought it ſufficient to correct the multitude and common ſort of ſouldiers with ſharpe and bitter words: and after generall ſilence made, brake out into this choſlericke ſpeech.

Solyman cometh into the campe.

Slaues (quoth he) *for I cannot find in my heart to call you ſouldiers, What kind of men are you now become? are you Turkes? men wont both to fight and ouercome? verely I ſee the bodies, countenances, attire, and habit of my ſouldiers; but the deeds, ſpeeches, counſels and deuiſes of cowardly and vile traitors. Alas how hath my opinion deceiued me? that Turkiſh force and courage is gone, the valour and ſtrength both of bodies and mindes, wherewith the Arabians, Perſians, Syrians, Ægyptians, Seruians, Hungarians, Bulgarians, Epirotes, Macedonians and Thracians were ſubdued,*
E *is loſt; forgetting your countrey, your oath, the commaund of your captaines, your obedience, and all other warlike diſcipline, you haue againſt the maieſtie of my empire refuſed to fight, like cowards betaken your ſelues to flight, for vaine feare of death and danger, not beſeeming men of warre. If any man ſhould at home but haue named the* RHODES *in your feaſts, amongſt your pots, in your aſſemblies or great meetings, you could then with your tongues brag to pull it downe, you had much adoe to hold your hands: heere when I would make proofe of your force and courage, it is nothing. But you thought perhaps, that the Rhodians ſo ſoone as they ſaw your enſignes before their gates, would ſtraight way yeeld themſelues and their citie into your power: Let all men ceaſe ſo to ſay or thinke, and beleeue me that know the truth, This baſe and infamous denne (which you ſee) is full of*
F *moſt cruell beaſts, whoſe madneſſe you ſhall neuer tame without much labour and bloudſhed. Yet ſhall we tame them; for why nothing is ſo wild but it may at length be tamed: which except I bring to paſſe, I am fully reſolued and haue vowed vnto my ſelfe, Either heere to die or ſpend my daies: and if euer I doe or ſay otherwiſe, let this my head, my fleet, mine armie, and empire, be for euer accurſed and vnfortunate.*

Solymans chollericke Oration to his ſouldiers.

And ſo without further ſpeech, deſiring rather to be accounted of his ſouldiers gentle than

ſeuere

ſeuere, he pardoned them all their former offences, and ſwore them all againe to his obedience G
This mutinie ſo appeaſed all things were afterwards done with better ſucceſſe and greater care both of the ſouldious and commaunders. Firſt they planted in diuers places twelue great bombards, where with they threw vp ſtones of hugie waight into the ayre, which falling downe into the citie might breake downe the houſes and whatſoeuer elſe they lighted vpon: with the fall of
Apella, a traitor one of theſe, the Great maſter was like to haue been ſlaine. Howbeit this proued a deuiſe of more terror then danger, for with 200 ſuch ſhot were but ten men ſlaine; which thing amongſt others, *Apella* a traiterous fugitiue declared vnto the enemie, with whom he had intelligence, as he himſelfe confeſſed being taken vpon ſuſpition and examined: for which his treaſon he was iuſtly executed.

The Turks batterie. The force of the batterie was more feared, wherin the Turks had planted fortie great pie- H
ces of batterie, and amongſt them twelue Baſilisks (ſo aptly named of the ſerpent *Baſiliſcus*, who as *Plinie* writeth, killeth man or beaſt with his ſight) with theſe pieces the Turkes battered the wals continually; but lying ſomewhat farre off, did no greate harme.

At the ſame time alſo *Solyman* cauſed batterie to be laid againſt the tower of Saint *Nicholas*, ſtanding vpon a narrow piece of ground pointing far into the ſea, defending the hauen vpon the right hand, where ſometime ſtood the great Coloſſus of the Sunne, accounted the greateſt amongſt the ſeuen wonders of the world. Which caſtle was both ſtrongly and ſumptuouſly built at the charges of the dukes of BVRGONDIE, as appeared by their armes there engrauen in many places in marble. This tower was valiantly defended by *Guido* a French man, who had the charge thereof, with 300 ſouldiours, amongſt whom were 30 knights of the Order. I

The Turkes artillerie planted againſt the tower, was by the skilfulnes of the Chriſtian canoniers in ſhort time diſmounted with ſhot from the tower, and many of the gunners ſlain: ſo that they were glad to ſurceaſe any more to batter the tower by day, but lying ſtill all the day they began to batter the ſame by night, wherein they preuailed no more than they had before done in the day time; for the defendants warily obſeruing ſuch places as were likeſt for the enemie to place his batterie in, did ſo aptly place their ordinance againſt the ſame, and ſo to good purpoſe, that the Turks ſwore, there doings were by ſome means diſcouered vnto the enemies. So when they had in vaine beſtowed 500 great ſhot, and made a ſmall breach which they durſt not once attempt to enter, they ſhamefully abandoned that place alſo.

All this while *Pyrrhus* was buſie in working of mines to vndermine the citie, two and thirtie K
of which mines the defendants fruſtrated with countermines; in which kind of worke many
The Engliſh bulwark blown vp. were loſt on both ſides: yet for all the carefulleſſe of the Chriſtians, the Engliſh bulwarke was vndermined by the enemie, and vpon the fourth day of September part thereof blown vp, with ſuch violence, that vnto them in the citie it ſeemed at the firſt to bee a generall earthquake; and therwith diuers Engliſh men were there ouerwhelmed. The Turks attempting preſently to enter, were by the grand Maſter and his followers with great ſlaughter repulſed.

But *Muſtapha* the Baſſa comming on with freſh ſupplies, and crying out of the cowardiſe of them which retired, renewed the aſſault: where for a while was fought a moſt ſharpe and cruell fight, the leaders cherefully encouraging their ſouldiors, and they likewiſe doing what was poſ- L
ſible for men to do. All mens eares were filled with the thundring of the ſhot, noiſe of trumpets and drums, and crying of men. And vnto the Turkes it ſeemed that ouer their heads it rained deadly ſhot, ſtones, and fire: for the townſmen and women mingled with the ſouldiours caſt downe vpon the Turks, fire, ſtones, timber, and whatſoeuer els came to hand: ſo that they vnable longer to endure the courage and force of the Chriſtians, turned their backs and ran away by heaps, not expecting any ſigne of retreat, euerie man ſeeking to ſaue one: amongſt whom as they fled, the great ordinance ſhot off from the wals made a wonderfull ſlaughter. At this aſſault of the Turks were ſlaine (as ſome write) almoſt 2000, and amongſt them the maſter of the Turks ordinance, a man whom *Solyman* greatly loued: which victorie the Chriſtians gained not without ſome loſſe; for beſides ſome few others that were ſlaine, fiftie knights of the Order (men M
worthie of eternall memorie) there ended their daies alſo.

The Turks aſſault the Engliſh bulwark the ſecond time, and are againe repulſed. The fift day after (which was the ninth day of September) *Solyman* by the perſuaſion of *Muſtapha* the great Baſſa, commaunded a freſh aſſault to be giuen to the Engliſh bulwarke, which was attempted by the Turkes with greater reſolution than the firſt. Seuen enſignes of the Turks were broken in by the ruines of the bulwarke, and had enforced the defendants, oppreſſed with number

A number to giue ground, when the Graund Maſter comming in with the enſigne of the Order, guarded with a companie of moſt valiant knights, draue them out againe by force, and made good the place. *Muſtapha* ſeeing his men retire, couragiouſly reſtored the battell by bringing on of new ſupplie, and other captains with threats, ſtrokes, and terror of death, enforced the ſouldiors (who had before turned their backs) now againe to fight. So that there began a more cruell fight than had before beene from the beginning of the ſiege; which was vnto the Chriſtians more dangerous, for that they were ouerwhelmed with the multitude of the Turkiſh ſhot. But in that extreamitie no man regarded either danger, or life, only this they remembred, That thoſe were their barbarous enemies, whom they muſt either victoriouſly ouercome or die therefore:
B with which furie the aſſault was continued by the ſpace of three houres, vntill at length *Muſtapha* with his Turks diſcouraged, with the loſſe of 2000 of their fellowes, & of three great noble men whom *Solyman* eſpecially fauoured, and ſore beaten by the Spaniards out of their flankers, were inforced to retire. Few of the Chriſtians in reſpect of ſo many enemies were ſlaine: yet had the enſigne of the Order bin then loſt, *Ioachimus Cluys* the enſigne bearer hauing both his eies ſhot out, had not *Emericus Ruiaulx* an Auernois, and one of the knights of the Order, with incredible courage reſcued the ſame.

After this ſecond aſſault, falling out ſo vnluckilie to the Turkes, *Muſtapha* the great Baſſa began to grow in contempt with *Solyman*: and *Pyrrhus* to keepe his credit by doing ſomething, with continual batterie of 17 great pieces did batter the mount neere vnto the Italian bulwark. *Muſtapha Baſſa falleth into diſgrace with Solyman.*

C At which time alſo *Caſſius*, Gouernour of BITHYNIA, annother of the Turkes great commaunders, laboured by vndermining to haue ouerthrowne the French bulwarke: ſo glad they were to attempt any thing to content their imperious great lord and maſter. But the indeauours of *Caſſius* was by countermines through the carefull diligence of *Grabriell Chierus*, hauing charge of thoſe works, fruſtrated: and *Pyrrhus* in the other place after he had by hot aſſault ſlaine them which were appointed for the defence thereof, and gained the mount, and brought a great feare vpon the citie, was againe with great loſſe ſhamefully repulſed, and by the commandement of *Solyman* cauſed to retire. At this aſſault the gouernor of EVBOEA, *Solyman* his lieutenant general, a man of great honour (if any of the Turks ſlaues are ſo to be accounted) was ſlaine, for whoſe death *Solyman* was exceeding penſiue and heauie.

D *Muſtapha* the Baſſa finding himſelfe in diſgrace with *Solyman* for the two vnfortunate aſſaults by him giuen at the Engliſh ſtation, determined if it were poſſible by a third to recouer his loſt credit: and for his better ſucceſſe therein, agreed with *Achimetes* another great commander, at the ſame time to aſſault the Spaniſh bulwarke: according to this reſolution *Achimetes* hauing with a mine ſodenly blown vp a great part of the wall of the Spaniſh ſtation, in the thick of the duſt and ſmoke, preſently entred his men, who by the ruines of the wall recouered the top of the rampires. *Muſtapha* alſo at the ſame inſtant hardly charged the Engliſh, ſo that in both places was made a hard and doubtfull fight. *Muſtapha* deſiring nothing more than with better ſucceſſe now to redeeme his former diſhonour, did what he might to incourage the ſouldiours, calling vpon them by name, and putting them in remembrance of their former victories. The Rhodi-
E ans on the other ſide mindful of their former honour, with the greatneſſe of the preſent danger, valiantly repulſed the enemie, and forced him with ſhame to retire. In this aſſault many Engliſh men were ſlaine, and *Preianes* alſo ſore hurt, hauing before ſlaine many of the Turks. *Muſtapha* beſide the loſſe of his men, had alſo two of his enſignes taken by *Chriſtopherus Vaulderick* Commendator of the Germain knights. *Achimetes* hauing woon the top of the wals, had there ſet vp the Turkiſh enſignes; but by the valiantnes of the defendants, & by means of certain ſmall pieces of ordinance, by *Martiningus* aptly placed in the houſes before the new made breach, and by force of ſhot out of the flankers on both ſides of the breach, whereof none fell in vaine, he was againe enforced to forſake the wals and to retire. *The Engliſh bulwark aſſaulted the third time by Muſtapha.* *The Turks enſignes aduanced to the top of the wals are againe caſt downe.*

The three and twentieth day of September the Turkiſh captaines hoping by meanes of a
F mine which they had made againſt the Auergne bulwarke, to enter and win the citie; approaching the wals with great multitudes of ſouldiours, readie to haue entred vpon the blowing vp of the mine, which being met with a countermine out of the citie, wrough not ſuch effect as was by them expected: ſo that hauing receiued ſome harme, ſtanding in a place of great diſaduantage, and done nothing, they returned againe into the campe. Yet the expert captaines probably coniecturing that the wal might be inwardly ſhaken by the mine, although it were not by them

them outwardly perceiued, caused that part of the wall to be most violently battered all the rest of that day and night following: and by the furie of their artillerie, made a faire and large breach. All that night was heard in the Turkes campe an vnwonted clattering of weapons, and of men running too and fro, as if there had been some great matter a doing; which the Rhodians coniectured (as the truth was) to be a signe of some great assault to be shortly giuen. G

Another breach made in the wals.

Solyman resolued the next day with all his force to assault the new made breach, after he had by himselfe in a melancholly mood walked vp and downe in his tent a great part of the night, sent for the chiefe commanders of his armie, to whom he declared his mind as followeth:

Your valour and wisedome (worthie captaines) needeth not any exhortation, yet the desperat madnesse of our enemies maketh me to speake vnto you these few words. Who whilest they yet doe, as from the beginning, as men without reason desperatly defend their citie rent with our artillerie, shaken with our mines, their churches and houses beaten downe about their eares, wearied and worne out with slaughter, labour, and wounds, which must needs befall men so often times assaulted: they worthely seeme vnto our souldiers men of inuincible force and courage; which opinion to haue remoued, much concerneth the happie and wished successe of our assault. Wherefore I would haue you with effectuall persuasion and bountifull promises to hearten on our men to the winning of this citie. Besides this, you shall open vnto them my purpose and intent, and that they should not thinke that they are brought hither to besiege one citie: but that in taking this one, they shall vpon the matter make a way into all the dominions of the Christians. Heere be the kinsmen, aliance, and friends of all the kings, princes and potentates of Christendome: heere is all our enemies treasure, the spoile whereof promised vnto our souldiers may serue to great purpose to encourage them forward: heere is store of ordinance, armour, and other warlike prouision, which shall both furnish vs, and in time to come miserably confound the rest of the Christians. We shall beside this, enioy a most goodly and rich citie, with a hauen of all other most commodious, from whence all things necessarie for warre may at all times as occasion shall require, by land and sea be supplied: which as they shall be to vs things of great importance, so shall we despoile our enemies of farre greater. This is their castle, storehouse, treasurie and armorie: this is the verie receptacle and place of refuge for all such as trouble the Turkes by sea: from hence shall we haue free scope and passage into Apvlia, Calabria, Sicilia, *and many other Christian countries. But as for your selues valiant captaines, when as I consider how that you haue within these few moneths by your valour and wisedome subdued vnto my empire the strong citie of* Belgrade, *which my great grandfather* Mahomet *that mightie emperour could not with all his power get; I rest in great hope that these fierce and obstinat Christians shall not long be able to defend themselues in these their dens and lurking places.* H I K

Hauing ended this speech, the captaines euerie one vnto his companie, made knowne what the great emperours will and pleasure was; and open proclamation made thorow all the camp, wherein the spoile of that rich citie was all granted vnto the souldiers as a prey and reward for the paines they were to take.

Solyman heauie with sleepe and care, laid himselfe downe vpon his pallet to take his rest. But the Great master (to whom the vnaccustomed stirre of the enemie portended some great matter) all that night in armes painfully viewed euerie part of the citie, cheerfully encouraging his souldiers to remember, That they did watch for the safetie of their countrey, their liues and libertie. It fortuned the same night, that a poore Christian seruing a Turke in the campe, calling secretly vnto the watchmen vpon the wals, gaue them warning that the Turkes prepared the next day to giue a generall assault vnto the citie. Which thing when the Great master vnderstood, because he would haue nothing done rashly or fearefully (as it commonly happeneth in things done vpon the sudden) called togither his knights, and spake vnto them as followeth. L

The Great master his oration vnto his knights

I am glad sacred companions and fellowes in armes, that the time is come when in one battell getting vnto your selues great honour, and defending your countrey, you may be iustly accounted the worthie defenders and reuengers of the Christian commonweale and name. The people against whom we are to fight to morrow, assaileth vs onely presuming vpon their multitude: But if wee measure valour, not by number, but by courage and prowesse, vndoubtedly a few resolute men will easily ouercome a multitude of cowards. You know your enemie, and the manner of his fight: you are to fight (most M

A *(moſt worthie knights) with them whom you haue alwaies vanquiſhed at ſea, and in iuſt battell ſometimes ouercome by land, at ſuch time as with their whole power they aſſaulted your wals: omitting in the meane time manie hot skirmiſhes, wherein you euer put them to the worſt: Wherefore you and they in the aſſault to morrow ſhall haue ſuch courage, as conquerours and men conquered vſe to haue. Neither will they fight becauſe they dare fight, but becauſe the great tyrant and violent commaund of their captaines enforceth them thereunto. Wherefore remembring what you are by birth, what opinion the Chriſtian commonwealth hath conceiued of you, where you are and what you haue taken vpon you; take vp your armes with iuſt furie and indignation, and fight againſt them, following one franticke youth, as if you ſaw your ſlaues bearing armes againſt you: whereunto you are enforced, not onely by the indignitie of the wrong by them offered, but alſo by neceſsitie, which of it ſelfe is of power to make cowards va-*
B *liant and hardie. For heere we are in an Iſland from whence we cannot eſcape, and in a citie, whoſe rent and battered wals doe not ſo much protect and defend vs, as our weapons: wherefore to morrow wee muſt heere either vanquiſh them, or die therefore: to morrow ſhall giue vnto vs either ioyfull victorie, or a moſt honourable death.*

As he was yet thus ſpeaking, news of the approch of the enemie cauſed him to make an end: and euery man haſted with ſpeed vnto the place of his charge. The enemie comming faſt on, with a moſt horrible crie (as their manner is) fiercely aſſailed the citie in fiue places, where the Engliſh, Spaniſh, Italians, Narbonenſes, and Auergnoys had their ſtations. To the aſſault of euery of which places, *Solyman* had appointed ten thouſand Turkes. *Muſtapha* the Baſſa
C calling vpon the name of his great prophet *Mahomet*, and promiſing vnto the ſouldiers the rich ſpoile of the citie, fiercely aſſailed the Engliſh ſtation, from whence he had been three times before ſhamefully repulſed. *Pyrrhus* the other great Baſſa with like furie aſſaulted the Italian ſtation. In both places was maintained a cruell and deadly fight; the Turks fighting for the prey, and the Rhodians for their liues and libertie. Neither was there any, of what degree or order ſoeuer, which did not that day fight for defence of the citie. The prieſts and religious were not then exempted, but fought among the other ſouldiers; women, children, and with them the aged fathers, beyond the ſtrength of their bodies and courage of their minds, brought weapons vnto the defendants, ſome ſtones, which they had digged out of the ſtreets, ſome burning pitch-barrels, ſome hoopes with wild fire, ſome ſcalding oyle, ſome boyling pitch: which being caſt
D downe vpon the enemies, troubled them ſo, as nothing was more feared; for vpon whom ſoeuer it fell, it ſtucke faſt, and ſo ſcalded their bodies, that they were glad to caſt downe their weapons to teare off their clothes, wherewith many of them rent off the skin and fleſh alſo. All which things fell ſo thicke vpon the Turkes, as if it had rained fire and ſtones: beſides the deadly ſhot, which amongſt ſuch a multitude of enemies neuer fell in vaine. The Great Maſter hauing a carefull eye ouer euery part of the citie, after he had well relieued the Italian ſtation, which was at the firſt hardly diſtreſſed by *Pyrrhus*, left there *Antonius Monterollus*, one of the knights of the Order, with ſuch companie as he thought conuenient for the ſafetie of that place, & went himſelfe with the reſt vnto the Engliſh ſtation, which was then hardly laied to by the Baſſa *Muſtapha*. But whileſt hee was there buſied in repulſing the enemie, and had now well relieued the
E place, a ſuddaine crie ran alongſt the wals, That the Spaniſh bulwarke was alreadie poſſeſſed by the enemie. With which heauie newes he was not a little troubled, but leauing there *Emericus Gombaulus*, one of the knights of the Order, with a choſen companie of ſouldiers for defence of that place; he with his guard haſted vnto the Spaniſh ſtation, which he found by a wonderfull chance alreadie taken by the enemie. In the beginning of the aſſault, certaine Turkes to ſhun the danger of the ſhot, had for feare hidden themſelues at the foot of this bulwarke amongſt the ſtones, which had before been beaten downe with the batterie: in the meane time, other Turks of the ſame regiment, vnder the leading of the valiant captaine *Achimetes*, hotly charged the Spaniards on the right hand of the bulwarke, not medling with the bulwarke it ſelfe, as a thing of greateſt ſtrength: the valiant ſoldiers appointed for the defence of the bulwarke, ſeeing their
F fellowes and countreymen diſtreſſed faſt by them on the right hand, could not endure to ſtand ſtill as lookers on, but left the bulwarke, and went to the place ſo hardly aſſaulted. Where whilſt they were valiantly encountering the enemie, the cowardly Turkes who had before hid themſelues for feare, hearing all ſilent ouer their heads, and thereby gueſſing (as the truth was) that the defendants were drawn thence vnto ſome other place more diſtreſſed; to colour their feare, and

The Turkes aſſault the citie in fiue places at once.

The Rhodians valiantly defend the citie.

The Spaniſh bulwarke taken by the Turks.

proue

proue their good fortune, like tall fellowes, crept out of the holes wherein they had before for G
feare hidden themſelues, and ſecretly crawling vp the battered wals of the bulwarke, got into it
before they were diſcouered: where finding none but a few ſouldiors (who buſied in remouing
of a great piece vnto a place more conuenient for the annoying of the enemy, had laied downe
their weapons) they ſuddenly ſet vpon them, ſlew them, ouerthrew the Chriſtian enſignes, and
ſo became maſters of that ſtrong fort. The Turks without ſeeing that, wonderfully commended
the valor of thoſe men, and blaming themſelues of cowardiſe, made great haſt through the
middeſt of the towne ditch to get vp into the bulwarke to helpe their fellowes. But in going
through the ditch, they were ſo cut off with ſhot on both ſides out of the flankiers, that few of
them could get vp into the deſired bulwarke. And the great Maſter with a crew of valiant ſoul-
diors, nothing fearing the armed enemie, now in poſſeſſion of the bulwarke ouer their heads, H
The Spaniſh bulwarke again recouered. with great reſolution ſcaled the ſame. In the meane time *Hugo Caponus*, a Spaniard, and *Meno-*
tius a Frenchman, both Knights of the Order, with a companie of Cretenſian ſouldiours brake
into the bulwark by a gate which the Turks had not as yet boulted, and being once got in, they
made of the Turks a quicke diſpatch; for whom they ſlew not with the ſword, they inforced to
miſchiefe themſelues for haſt backe againe ouer the wals. The bulwarke thus againe recouered,
which had bin two houres in poſſeſſion of the enemie, and the citie deliuered of a wonderfull
feare, the Great Maſter (well worthie of that name) leauing a ſufficient number of ſouldiors for
the keeping of that fort, went with the reſt of his companie vnto the place where the Spaniards
with the reſt of the defendants ſore charged by *Achimetes*, and now wearied and almoſt ſpent,
had much adoe to hold out: who incouraged with the ſight of the Great Maſter, as if victorie I
had attended vpon him, with great cries and ſignes of ioy valiantly and with great ſlaughter re-
pulſed their enemies, as if they had bin freſh men. Long it were to recount the deadly fight and
hard aduentures which befell at the aſſault of the other two ſtations of the Auergnoys and Na-
bornenſes: but the Turks were in euery place put to the worſt, and lay by heapes ſlaine in the
The Turke giue ouer the aſſault. ditches and breaches of the towne. *Solyman* from his ſtanding (for that purpoſe made of high
maſts) beholding the miſerable ſlaughter of his men, and no hope of gaining the citie, cauſed a
retreat to be ſounded, a thing welcome both to the Rhodians and the Turks. In this terrible aſ-
ſault, which endured by the ſpace of ſix houres, diuers of the knights of the order were ſlaine,
eſpecially of the French and Spaniſh nation, with a hundred and fiftie common ſouldiours, all
worthie of eternall fame: and of the Turks (as they which write moſt modeſtly report) twentie K
thouſand. The yong tyrant was ſo much offended with the ſhamefull repulſe he had receiued at
this laſt aſſault, that he fell into a rage againſt all them who had perſuaded him to enter into that
action, but eſpecially againſt the great Baſſa *Muſtapha*, whom he accuſed as an vnfaithfull coun-
ſellour, and chiefe perſuader of that vnluckie war; who flattering him in his vaine humour, by
extolling his forces aboue meaſure, & falſely extenuating the power of the enemie, aſſuring him
that vpon the firſt approch of his armie they would yeeld themſelnes without reſiſtance, had
drawne him into that dangerous expedition, like to ſort to the great diſhonour of himſelfe and
all the *Othoman* familie: for which doing he adiudged him worthie of death, and in great furie
Solyman in his furie commandeth the two great Baſſas, Muſtapha and Pyrrhus to bee put to death. commaunded the executioner without further delaie to put him to death in his preſence. Which L
dreadfull doome ſo ſuddenly and vpon ſo light an occaſion giuen vpon a man of ſo great mark
and qualitie, ſtrucke ſuch a terrour into the minds of all there preſent, that none of them durſt
ſpeak one word againſt the rigour of that ſentence, or ſo much as fet a ſigh in pitying of his caſe.
The executioner now readie to giue the fatall ſtroke, *Pyrrhus* the moſt ancient of all the Baſſaes,
moued with compaſſion, and preſuming of his great fauour with the tyrant, whom he had from
his childhood had the charge and gouernement of, ſtept forth, and appealing vnto his mercie,
earneſtly requeſted him to ſpare his life. Wherewith *Solyman* was ſo filled with wrath and in-
dignation, that for his preſumption, and for ſending for him to CONSTANTINOPLE, to come
to that dangerous ſiege, he commanded him to be executed alſo. All the reſt of the counſellors
ſeeing the danger of theſe two great men, fell downe at the feet of the fuming tyrant, crauing M
The Baſſaes ſaued at the interceſſion of the other counſellors. pardon, ſaying, That the enemies ground had alreadie drunke too much of the Turkiſh bloud,
and was not to be further moiſtened with the bloud of ſuch two noble perſonages and worthie
counſellors. *Solyman* moued with this general interceſſion of his great men, pauſing a little vpon
the matter, the heat of his furie being ſomething ouer, ſuffered himſelfe to bee intreated, and
graunted them their liues: vnto *Pyrrhus* for his great age and wiſdome, and to *Muſtapha* for his

wiues

A weius ſake, who was the tyrants naturall ſiſter, ſometime the wife of *Boſtanges*.

All the time of this ſiege, the Turkes great fleet, furniſhed with men and all manner of warlike prouiſion, lay before the entrance of the hauen without doing any thing at all: for the Admirall being no man of warre, ſeeing the mouth of the hauen chained, and the caſtles vpon the entrance full of ordinance, and ſtrongly manned, durſt not attempt either to enter the hauen, or beſiege the caſtles: for which his cowardiſe, and for that he had negligently ſuffered prouiſion both of victuall and munition to be conueyed into the citie during the time of the ſiege, to the great releefe of the beſieged, he was by *Solyman* adiudged to die a moſt cruell death: but by the mediation of *Achimetes*, one of his beſt men of warre, the ſeueritie of that ſentence was chan-
B ged into a puniſhment, vnto any noble mind more grieuous than death it ſelfe: For he was by *Solymans* commaudement, openly ſet vpon the poupe of the admirall gallie, and there as a ſlaue receiued at the hands of the executioner a hundred ſtripes with a cudgell, and ſo with ſhame was thruſt out of his office.

Solymã diſplaceth his Admiral & puniſheth him as a ſlaue.

After that *Solyman* had in ſo many places with all his power ſo long time in vaine beſieged the RHODES, his haughtie courage began to quaile, ſo that he was vpon point to haue raiſed his ſiege, and left the Iſland, yea the greefe he had conceiued, went ſo neere him, that he many times fainted and lay ſpeechleſſe, as if he had beene a dead man. The remembrance of ſo many vnfortunat aſſaults, the death of ſo many worthie captaines, the loſſe of ſo many valiant ſouldiors (ſufficient to haue ſubdued a great kingdome) ſo much grieued him, that a great while after
C he ſhunned the companie of men, and would not ſuffer himſelfe to be ſpoken withall: vntill at length he was again by *Abraham* his minion, a man in whom he tooke ſingular pleaſure, recomforted, and perſuaded to continue the ſiege; for that Time (as he ſaid) which worketh all things, would at length tame the fierceneſſe of his enemies, whom the ſword could not vpon the ſuddaine ſubdue. In the meane time *Solyman* for his pleaſure, and to ſhew vnto the Rhodians, that he purpoſed not to depart, began to build a ſumptuous caſtle vpon the top of the mount PHILERMVS in the eye of the citie. During which time diuers letters were ſhot into the citie with Turkiſh arrowes out of the campe, wherein many of *Solymans* moſt ſecret counſels were reuealed, & the reuolt of a great man promiſed, which the Rhodians by many circumſtances gathered to haue been *Muſtapha*, who could not eaſily forget the iniurie ſo lately offered vnto him by
D *Solyman*: needs it muſt be ſome one of *Solymans* ſecret coũſel, otherwiſe he could not haue reuealed ſo great ſecrets as it were out of the boſome of *Solyman*. But ſee the chance, at the very ſame time tidings came vnto *Solyman*, That *Cayerbeius* the gouernour of ÆGIPT was dead: in whoſe place *Solyman* ſent *Muſtapha* to CAIRE, as gouernour of ÆGIPT, by that honourable preferment again to pleaſe his diſcontented mind, after which time no more letters came into the city.

Solyman exceedingly greeued with the repulſe and loſſe receiued at the ſiege of the Rhodes, was vpon point to haue left the ſame.

Now the Turkes began to make faire warres, their terrible batteries began to grow calme, and for certaine daies it ſeemed by the manner of their proceeding, that they purpoſed rather by long ſiege than by aſſault to take the towne. Neuertheleſſe the enemies watching day and night in their trenches, vſed all the policie they could, ſometimes offering vnto the ſouldiors vpon the wales great rewards, if they would yeeld vp the citie, and ſometimes threatening them as faſt: &
E to breed a diſlike amongeſt the defendants, they would oftentimes ſay that *Solyman* deſired only to be reuenged vpon the Latines, without meaning any harme vnto the Greekes.

It was now the beginning of October, and Winter began to grow faſt on, great raine, with terrible thunder and lightening, and mightie tempeſts heauens threats, then fell ſo aboundantly, that the Turks before wearied in bodie with labour and wounds, were now alſo in mind diſcouraged. And that more encreaſed their feare, the ſea was growne ſo rough, that the admirall was not able in that open & dangerous ſea longer to ride it out with his gallies: but was enforced to ſlip his ankers, and as he might to run his gallies on ground. In theſe troubles wherewith both *Slyman* himſelfe and al his armie were at furtheſt of their wits, and almoſt quite diſcouraged,
F *Achimetes* one of his moſt valiant and expert captaines came to comfort him, and promiſed if he would continue the ſiege, in ſhort time to make him an open way into the citie: Vpon confidence whereof, *Solyman* to encourage his fainting ſouldiours, now ſcarce able for cold and lacke of courage to hold their weapons in their hands, cauſed them to be aſſembled before his pauilion, where from a high place he comforted them in this ſort:

Achimetes, promiſeth to make a way for Solyman into the citie.

Solyman cõforteth his ſoldiors and perſuadeth them with patience to endure the ſiege.

I am not ignorant (moſt valiant ſouldiors) what great things you endure for mine honour, and the

the glorie of mine empire. This continuall threatnings of the heauens, this immoderat raine, this ter- G
rible thunder and lightning, the coldneſſe of the weather, the want of neceſſaries, with the mani-
fold miſeries of this long ſiege, doe much perſuade me, to giue you leaue to lay downe armes and
to take your reſt. But firſt let vs conſider if vnto men of courage it be not a diſhonour, for the
tediouſneſſe of raine and tempeſt, to leaue vnto our enemies the victorie already in our hands, and
ſhamefully to forſake our trenches, forts, mounts, ouertopping not onely the wals of the citie but mating
the heauens, with ſuch other like worke made with my infinit charge and your great trauell, all for
the taking of this citie. Truly this warre either ſhould not haue beene taken in hand at all; or being
once begun, is to be ended for the honour of the Othoman *empire. Which for ſo much as it could not*
bee accompliſhed in Sommer; the reputation of mine empire in common, and the regard of the commo-
ditie of euerie one of you in priuat, enforceth mee to performe it in Winter. For if wee ſhall from H
hence depart with our armie, who doubts but the enemie, not onely for deſire of reuenge, but alſo
ſtrained by neceſſitie, hauing loſt all hee had of his owne, will prey vpon your countries, houſes, and
goods, and will bring you, your wiues, and children, into a farre more miſerable ſlauerie and bondage
than that wherein he himſelfe now is? Wherefore I aduiſe you to continue the ſiege, and neuer to de-
part before you haue attained vnto the end of your deſires. And admit there were no neceſſitie in the
matter, yet the honour and fame of the action ought to impoſe vpon you a reſolution both of bodie and
mind to endure the ſiege: For the eies and countenances of all nations, eſpecially the Chriſtians, are fix-
ed vpon you; whom when they ſhall vnderſtand not to be able to endure the field one Winter, they will
of right call you Sommer birds, which ſo ſoone as any ſtorme ariſeth looke after your houſes and pla-
ces of repoſe. It is reported, that the Gracians for a ſtrumpet beſieged Troy *tenne yeares; and ſhall* I
not the Turkes, vexed and oppreſſed with ſlaughter, robberies, inuaſions both by ſea and land, and that
more is with the ſeruitude of 214 yeares, endure one Winters ſiege? They will ſay, that the terror of
your name is but vaine, and that fame hath encreaſed the ſame (as many other things mo) which not
ſeene, are more feared in farre countries amongſt men of ſmall experience: And that now euerie
man may ſafely enough abide your force, which make your inuaſions rather vpon a furie and braue-
rie than vpon any good reſolution, which in all kind of warre (but eſpecially in beſieging of cities) is moſt
neceſſarie: whereof many being by naturall ſituation and fortification impregnable, time hath with her
handmaides, Famine and Thirſt, ouercome and vanquiſhed, as it ſhall doe this citie of the Rhodes:
againſt which beloued in armes there is a ſecret miſchiefe prepared, which may not in this open audi-
ence be publiſhed; for it is as neceſſarie that the vulgar ſort ſhould be ignorant of ſome things, as to K
know the ſame.

Many thought, that this was ſpoken rather of pollicie than vpon any good ground: and al-
though his hoat perſuaſion had little moued the cold courage of his deſpairing ſouldiers, yet
the regard of duetie in that moſt loyall nation, with the greedie expectation of ſo great a ſecret,
ouercome all other difficulties; ſo that they departed (at leaſtwiſe in ſhew) contented to endure
whatſoeuer ſhould befall.

Achimetes author of this great expectation, and the onely hope of *Solymans* ſucceſſe, came
oftentimes and aſſailed the Vaumures of the Auergne ſtation, which although they were not L
verie high, yet were they alwaies valiantly defended by the Rhodians. It fortuned, that this
warlike captaine daily attempting the Vaumures, in the end by force obtained the ſame: and ſo
poſſeſſed of the place he ſo much deſired, deſperatly kept it vntill greater help came running in,
who with wonderfull expeditiō (with matter for that purpoſe before prepared) clapt vp a ſtrong
and defenſible couering in manner of a penthouſe againſt the towne wall, betwixt the wall and
the vaumure, vnder which they ſhrowded themſelues from the defendants; which was an eaſie
matter for ſuch a multitude to doe, the ditches of the towne in that place being now filled vp ſo
high, that the defendants could not out of the flankers ſcoure the ditch, nor yet without mani-
feſt danger come to caſt any thing downe vpon them from the top of the wals: for the Turkes
harquebuſiers which lying vpon their mounts, higher than the battered wals of the citie, ſuffe- M
red none to appeare vpon them without danger. So that the Rhodians who erſt thought them-
ſelues at great quiet, were now ouertaken with a ſudden and vnexpected miſchiefe: which at the
firſt filled the citie with feare and heauie ſilence, which ſtraightwaies after brake out into pitifull
outcries and lamentations. The Turkes lurking vnder their penthouſe, laboured with mattocks
and pickaxes to dig vp the foundation of the wall; and *Preianes* forward and couragious to do

Achimetes winneth the Vaumures of the Auergne bulwarke, raiſeth a ſtrong penthouſe againſt the wal, and ſo vnderminеth the ſame

what

A what might be done threw downe vpon the Turkes, fire, ſcalding oyle, burning pitch, wilde-fire and ſuch things. But when the miſerable men which ſhrunck from the worke for feare of the fire, were againe beaten forward by their imperious commanders, and preſently ſlaine if they made any delay, and freſh men ſtill thruſt on in ſteed of ſuch as were hurt or ſlaine: the fatall work begun the ſeuenth day of October, went apace forward, with the great & continuall labor of theſe wretched ſlaues. A great number of the common ſouldiors whom the Turks call Aſapi was imployed in this worke: of whom *Solyman* in this ſiege of the Rhodes, and other his expeditions, made not much more account but as of pioners to worke in mines and to caſt vp trenches, and oftentimes with their bodies to fill towne ditches to make a way for the Ianizaries to paſſe ouer vpon: they by the conſtraint of *Achimetes* vndermined the wal, and as they wrought,

The miſerable ſtate of the common ſouldiors of the Turks and the ſmall account is made of them.

B ſhoared vp the ſame againe with timber, whereunto they afterwards ſet fire, hoping by that meanes to ouerthrow the wall: which falling not out according to their expectation, for that they had not farre enough vndermined it, they aſſaied with great hooks and ſtrong ropes to haue pulled it downe. But the Rhodians with their great ordinance from the Auergne bulwarke, quickly put them from that mad worke with great ſlaughter, and fruſtrated all their long labor. *Achimetes* thus diſapointed of his purpoſe, ſtood in great doubt whether he ſhould giue ouer the enterpriſe, for that he ſaw he labored in vaine, or elſe in that dangerous place to expect ſome better hap, the onely meane to ſaue him from the tyrants heauie diſpleaſure; who as hee knew meaſured all things by the euent. *Solyman* vnderſtanding by *Achimetes* that the wall (although it was not ouerthrowne as was expected) was yet ſore ſhaken and weakned with vndermining,

C cauſed his batterie to be planted againſt that part of the wall ſo vndermined: which ſo many waies weakned, and now ſore battered, fell downe daily more and more. For remedie whereof, the Rhodians laboured day and night to raiſe a new wall, in ſteed of that which was beaten downe.

At the ſame time *Solyman* perſuaded by the generall opinion of all his great captaines, that the citie was that day or neuer to be taken, determining to giue another generall aſſault, cauſed proclamation to be made thorow his campe: wherein he gaue the ſpoile of the citie vnto his ſoldiors, and the more to encourage them, ſpake vnto them in few words as followeth.

Solyman encouraged his ſouldiers to a freſh aſſault.

D *Fortune at the length valiant ſouldiours, hauing notably proued your courage and patience, now offereth vnto you the worthie rewards of your labour and paines. The victorie and wealth of your enemies which you haue ſo much deſired, is now in your hands. Now is it the time to make an end of this mungrell people, of whom more are ſlaine than left aliue; and they not men, but the ſhadowes and ghoſts of men, feeble and ſpent with hunger, wounds, wants, and labour: who will I know reſiſt you, not becauſe they ſo dare, but becauſe of neceſſitie they ſo muſt, enforced thereunto with all extremities. Wherefore now reuenge your ſelues of the falſhood, crueltie, and villanies of theſe Chriſtians, and make them a wofull example to all poſteritie, that neuer man heereafter preſume to offer iniurie to a Turke, in whatſoeuer ſtate he be. The way is already open into the citie, there is a faire breach made whereby thirtie horſemen may at once enter: nothing wanteth but courage in you to aſſaile the ſame.*

E The ſouldiers encouraged with this ſpeech of their emperour, made great ſhew of cheerefulneſſe, and promiſed to doe their vttermoſt deuoire, threatning vnto the Chriſtians moſt horrible death and miſerable captiuitie.

In the meane time the great ſhot flying continually thorow the breach, did beat downe many houſes in the citie; but the countermure new built againſt the breach ſtanding vpon a lower ground, it ſeldome toucht, to the great good of the Rhodians. The ratling of the falling houſes, the horrible noiſe of the enemie, with the thundring of the great artillerie, wonderfully terrified the miſerable citizens: in euery place was heard the lamentation of women and children, euery thing ſhewed the heauineſſe of the time, and ſeemed as altogether loſt and forlorne. The day thus troubleſomely ſpent, the night followed much more troubleſome; and after the night, the

F day of aſſault of all other moſt dreadfull: for with the dawning thereof, the glittering enſignes of the enemie were ſeene flying in the wind, and the Turks cheerfull with the hope of ſpoile and victorie, haſted towards the breach with great outcries and ſongs, after their countrey manner: and there before one of the gates of the citie called S. *Ambroſe* gate, ſet downe a great number of their enſignes deckt with garlands, in token of victorie. The Turks great fleet alſo at the ſame

time

The distressed estate of the Rhodians, and their courragious resolution therein.

time saylng too and fro before the hauen, made shew as if it would haue assailed the citie on G
that side: who had seen the citie so beset, would haue said that it would at one instant haue bin be-
sieged both by sea and land; and to most mens iudgements, it seemed that the Rhodians state
should that day haue taken end and been destroyed. Yet for all these extremities, the Rhodians
were nothing discouraged, but looking vpon their weapons as the onely remainders of their
hopes, not regarding any danger, vpon the alarum giuen came running out of their houses by
heaps vnto the wals, like desperat men opposing their bodies in stead of the battred wals against
their enemies in defence of their countrie. There needed neither exhortation nor commaund
of captaine, euerie man was vnto himselfe a persuader to fight valiantly in defence of the citie;
and one of them propounded vnto another the cruell death, the miserable seruitude, the mocks
and taunts they should indure, if they should chance to come into the proud enemies hand: all H
which was to be auoided either by honourable victorie or death. The Turkes conducted by
Achimates, fiercely assailed the breach, which was by the Rhodians (standing vpon the ruines of
their wals) valiantly defended. In the meane time, the dismaied matrons and maidens, some in
their houses with heauie harts expected the woful destruction of the citie and themselues, other-
some in the churches with flouds of teares and lamentable cries, poured forth their prayers to
the Almightie, crauing his helpe in that their hard distresse, and to protect them against their
barbarous enemies. The deadly fight at the breach, was on both sides with great courage and
force maintained. The Turkes were in good hope forthwith to win the citie, if they did but a
little more straine themselues: and therefore to terrifie the Rhodians the more, oftentimes in
their fighting gaue out most terrible outcries: and the Rhodians accounted the Turks as good I
as vanquished, for that they being so many in number, and in a place of such indifferencie, had
not yet preuailed: beside that, they were greatly incouraged with the greatnesse of the common
danger, and the sight one of anothers valour: so that by their inuincible courage the Turks were
inforced shamefully to retire. The Rhodians seeing their enemies turne their backs, gaue a great
shout in derision of them: the Turks disdaining that they in number many (and now victors, if
they should with a little resolution maintaine the assault they had begun) should be so derided
of a handful of men as good as alreadie vanquished; with great indignation returned againe to
the breach, & more furiously assailed the Rhodians than at the first. At which time the citie had
vndoubtedly bin taken, had not they which defended the ends of the wal, yet standing on both
sides of the breach, out of their baricadoes with their shot ouerwhelmed the Turks thronging in K
at the breach; and others with murthering shot out of the flankiers of the new built wal so cut
them in sunder, that a greater slaughter for the time was hardly in any place seene. *Achimates*
beholding the wonderfull slaughter of his souldiours, and that he fought with great disaduan-
tage and losse, against desperate men, who resoluing to die feared no danger, gaue ouer the as-
sault, and againe retired: leauing behind him in the breach and towne ditch the carkases of
fiue thousand of his dead Turkes, besides many more which afterwards died vpon the hurts
their recieued.

This assault was giuen vnto the towne the last day of Nouember, a day dedicated to S. *An-*
drew: after which time the captaines of the Turkish armie, although the dispaired not of the vi- L
ctorie, yet terrified with so great slaughter of their men, resolued with one accord no more to at-
tempt the citie with any notable assault; but by sundrie great trenches to be made thorow the
middest of the ruines of the wals, to get into the citie; and with mattoks and pickaxes to ouer-
throw the new made wall and another baricadoe which the defendants had made within the
same: and in the meane time whilest this was in doing, to keepe the Rhodians still busied with
continual skirmishes and alarums. This deuise put in execution by the wonderful labor of such
a multitude of people, serued the enemie to greater purpose than all that hee had before done:
who daily ouerthrowing or destroying the new fortifications which the Rhodians made in
steed of them which were before ouerthrown, & by little and little creeping on further, draue the
defendants to that extremitie, that they were glad to pull down many of their houses, therwith M
to make new fortifications, and to make their citie lesse, by casting vp of new trenches: so that in
short time they were brought to that point, that they could not well tell which place to fortifie
first, the enemie was now so far crept within them: for the ground which the enemie had thus
gained within the citie, was almost 200 paces in breadth, and 150 paces in length.

The Turks trouble the Rhodians with continuall alarums, and by casting vp of trenches get into the citie

Solyman, although he did now assure himselfe of the victorie, and was by nature cruell and
desirous

A desirous of reuenge; yet persuaded by *Achimetes* and *Cassius* (two of his most valiant captains) that for the enlarging of his empire, nothing was better than the fame of clemencie: commaunded *Pyrrhus* the old Bassa to proue if the Rhodians might by parley be drawn to yeeld their citie vpon reasonable conditions. Whereupon the Bassa sent one *Hieronimus Monilia* a Genoway, vnto the wals, who craving of the defendants safe conduct, said he had something to say tending to the common good of the distressed citie. All mens minds were presently filled with expectation of some great matter, and he commaunded to speake. Who answered, That hee might not deliuer his message openly, but would either by speech in secret, or by letters deliuer the same vnto one *Matthias de Via* his countriman, one of the citizens of the RHODES. When

Parley offered by the Turkes to the Rhodians.

B *Fra. Fornouius* one of the knights of the Order, a French man of a cholericke disposition, whose great courage was well seene in all that siege (hauing as is reported, with shot out of *S. Georges* tower himselfe slaine 500 Turkes during the time of that siege) being now present, and moued with indignation to heare a motion made of priuat conference with the enemie: bent his piece vpon the messenger, and caused him forthwith to depart without doing his message. Many who in time of the assault feared not any danger, but were become altogither desperat and careles of themselues, after that they vnderstood that the enemie had offered parley, and that they began to conceiue some hope of life: resorted vnto the Great master, requesting him, that hee would prouide for the safetie of his louing people; whose warlike forces was with many assaults sore weakened, the citie beaten downe about their eares, and most of them which were left, either

Secret parley reuealed.

C wounded or sicke. They had (as they said) now sufficiently proued both their force and fortune: wherefore he should do well, to beware least while he were too long in consulting, the enemie should conceaue a further indignation in seeing his offers refused. With these and such speeches they enforced the great master to send embassadours to *Solyman*. The men that were sent, were *Anthonius Groleus* a French man, ensigne bearer for the Order, a man of great reputation for his wisedome and experience; and with him *Robertus Barusius*, a man of great grauitie and skilfull in the Greeke tongue: for whom were receiued as pledges, a kinsman of the great captaine *Achimetes*, and a certaine Epyrot which fled out of the citie vnto the Turks, because one of the Græcian captains had struck him with his open hand; a man of a sharp wit, and one that could perfectly speake the Greek, Turkish, and Italian tongues, as appeared to his great credit amongst

The Great master at the instance of his people sendeth embassadours to Solyman.

D the enemies, being had of them in great regard, although he was not knowne whileſt he dwelt in the citie, that he was any such man. After that came also *Solymans* interpreter, for he himselfe could speake no other language more than his owne, accounting it a great disgrace, and against the *Othoman* empire to vse any other language. The embassadours admitted vnto *Solymans* presence, told him, That they were sent to know, for what cause he had sent to require parley? Who in a flaming heat, as if he had knowne nothing thereof, said there was no such matter: and commanding them presently to void his campe, sent them away with letters to the great master and the citizens to this effect.

Solymans letters sent to the great master and the Rhodians by their embassadours.

E *If I had not compassion of humane infirmitie, which oftentimes tumbleth headlong mens ambitious and hastie minds, into most dangerous and vnnecessarie mischiefes, truly I would not haue directed vnto you these letters at this time; but as you haue well deserued, persecute you with death and most miserable seruitude: which how easie a thing were it for me to doe, you your selues know. But hauing now sufficiently tried my force, if youe be wise make proofe of my clemencie. You haue alreadie satisfied your owne furie, your owne mad humour: and now aduise your selues, lay your hand vpon your heart, and without delay yeeld your selues as I commaund; your liues I giue, I giue you your wealth; and more than that, your choice to tarrie their still, or to depart: Refuse not the grace frankly offered, which was of you to haue been most heartily desired. It shall not alwaies be lawfull for you (as at this present) to make choice of both. From our campe.*

F Vpon the returne of the embassadors, the poore of all sorts flocke togither to the Great master his house not farre from the breach: where after the multitude of the common people was dismissed, and the chiefe of the Burgers sent for, the imperious letter of the Turkish tyrant was openly read before the knights of the Order, and the better sort of the citizens. Whereunto the Great master accounting it both honour enough, and sufficient tearme of life honourably to die, answered in this sort.

The Great maſter his opinion concerning that Solyman demanded by his letters.

You heard (ſacred fellowes in armes, and valiant citizens of the RHODES*) theſe imperious and ſorrowfull letters: whereunto how we are to anſwere, requireth no great deliberation: we muſt as reſolute men either yeeld or die; all hope of the victorie is gone, except forraine aide come. Wherefore if you will follow my counſell, let vs with weapons in our hands, vntill the laſt gaſpe and the ſpending of the laſt drop of our bloud, like valiant men defend our faith and nobilitie receiued from our anceſtors, and the honour which we haue ſo long time gotten both at home and abroad: and let it neuer be ſaid, that our honour died but with our ſelues.* G

This ſpeech of the great maſter ſeemed vnto many, heauier than the imperious commandement of the Turkiſh tyrant: and a great while men ſtood ſilent, heauily looking one vpon another, many with changing of their countenance and outward geſture, more than by words expreſſing what they thought in heart. At length a certaine Greeke prieſt, with great compaſſion of mind (as it ſeemed) and teares trickling downe his cheekes, brake forth into theſe words: H

A notable ſpeech of a Greek prieſt, perſuading the Great Maſter to yeeld.

And I would alſo hold my peace, if I were a priuat man; and not firſt of all in ſo great and troubled aſſemblie, broach myne owne opinion. But for as much as the regard of our common preſeruation, can wring a word out of no mans mouth, and all men know, that now is the time to ſpeake and ſay what euery man thinketh beſt, which ſhall neither alwaies nor long bee graunted vnto vs, I will not let it now ouerpaſſe and ſlip away: Wherefore let vs ſuppoſe, that no commaund of a moſt mightie prince beſieging vs, were come vnto vs, but that I were reaſoning as a priuate man with his neighbour, or one friend with another by the fire ſide, or in our cups without care, without any great affection to either partie, as men indifferent, not liking or hating (as men oftentimes doe of princes affairs which I *concerne them nothing) and then (as I hope) my ſpeech ſhall be vnto you neither vnpleaſant nor vnprofitable. Wee Greekes and Latines, with ioyned armes haue now this ſix moneths withſtood our deadly enemies, not onely abroad before our wals, but alſo in the verie bowels of our citie, without any forraine helpe: which as we haue of long time all vainely looked for, ſo are we now euery one of vs out of hope thereof. And yet our enemie either moued with the ſecret goodneſſe of God, or elſe ignorant of our ſtrength and forces, ſpent with wounds, ſlaughter, ſickeneſſe, and perpetuall labour, doth voluntarily offer that vnto vs, which was of vs to bee moſt of all deſired and earneſtly ſued for. Your publicke and priuate treaſures, the bodies of your ſelues, your wiues and children he keepeth vnuiolated; he taketh from vs onely the citie, which he hath for moſt part alreadie beaten downe and taken. Worthie Great Maſter, and you moſt valiant Knights, I haue knowne proweſſe and valour in many battells at ſea,* K *but eſpecially in this ſiege; whereof ſeeing there is no more vſe in this our deſperate eſtate, I doe appeale vnto your wiſedome and diſcretion. Sithence all is now the conquerours, in that he leaueth vnto vs our liues and goods, is to bee accounted gaines, and the yeelding vp of the citie and Iſland no loſſe, which the victorious enemie alreadie commaundeth: which although it bee a heauie matter and greeuous vnto the nobilitie, yet your fortune perſuadeth you thereunto. Wherefore if you bee to be moued with any compaſſion, I account it better to yeeld, than to be ſlaine our ſelues, or to ſee your wiues and children by law of armes to be led away before your faces into miſerable captiuitie and ſeruitude. If any Chriſtian compaſſion remaine in your warlike mindes, I beſeech you ſeeke not the vtter deſtruction of this innocent people, who (I may with modeſtie ſay) hath not euill deſerued of you, whom Chriſt Ieſus,* L *whom the enemie himſelfe would haue preſerued. That I ſay this which I ſpeake vnto you for Chriſtian charitie, and for no other cauſe, let this be a ſufficient teſtimonie, That ſo long as you were able to reſiſt by your owne power, or hoped for aid from forreine princes, I neuer ſpake word, or once thought of yeelding: but now ſeeing the fatall ruine of all things about vs, our common eſtate brought vnto the vttermoſt extremitie, our deadly enemie in the heart of our citie, no hope, and that the war cannot longer bee protracted; I wiſh you to yeeld, and for my part had rather make choice of peace than war, and to proue the enemies fauour than his furie.*

Moſt of them there preſent, were of the ſame mind with the prieſt. But as nothing can bee ſo reaſonably ſpoken as to content all men, ſo this ſpeech was not of them all liked: ſome there M were (though not many) which conſidering the harmes they had done vnto the Turkes, and doubting with what ſafetie they might yeeld themſelues into the power of that faithleſſe people, had rather to haue fought it out to the laſt man, and ſo to haue left vnto them a bloudie victorie. Amongſt theſe, one bold ſpoken fellow ſtept forth, and in preſence of them all diſſuaded the yeelding vp of the citie in this ſort:

I haue

A *I haue not beene with any thing more vnacquainted, than to deliuer my opinion before princes, or in such great and publick assemblies; being alwaies more desirous modestly to heare other mens opinions, than impudently to thrust forth mine owne. But now, seeing extreame necessitie will not longer suffer me to keepe my wonted course of silence, I will frankely speake my mind, and tell you what in my opinion is to be answered vnto the beastie message and impertous commaund of the most perfidious tyrant. This cruell enemie hath ouerthrowne our wall, and is entred three hundred foot and more within our citie, and as a most troublesome gueſt liueth and conuerseth with vs as it were vnder the same roofe. Such as list not longer to endure such an vnwelcome gueſt and troublesome neighbour, persuade you because he is troublesome, to giue him all: But (worthie and sacred knights) I am of farre dif-*

B *ferent opinion; neither doe I thinke a possession of 214 yeares is so lightly to be deliuered vp, and the ground forsaken: but rather that this troublesome intruder is in like manner to be himselfe troubled, and with deadly skirmishes continually vexed: whom after we had by force of armes and vndaunted courage, maugre his head, held out fiue moneths, at length he brake into our citie, not by any valour in himselfe, but holpen by time, which tameth all things: and since his first enterance it is now almost fortie daies, in which time for all his haſt, hee hath scarcely got forward 130 paces, hindered by the blockes we haue laied in his way, and will not cease continually to lay if we be wisemen, and mindfull of our former valour. Destroy me you heauenly powers, before I see with these eies these sacred knights to yeeld vp this famious citie of the* Rhodes, *the antient bulwarke of Christian religion, vnto our mercilesse enemies, polluted with the infamous superstition of* Mahomet: *who besides the insatiable thirst*

C *they haue of our blond, how faithlesse and mischeeuous they are by nature, if we know not, we need not make example of our selues, but wee may take example by the calamitie of* Constantinople, *the late miserie of* Eubœa, *and that which later was, of* Methone; *as also by the Mamalukes at* Caire, *miserably slaine contrarie to the league, contrarie to the faith and premise by the Turkish emperour himselfe before giuen. What? doe you not remember how the death of the most noble captaines at* Belgrade *was of late procured by the falshood, craft, and deceit of the same faithlesse miscreants? Let vs then, being men of wit and vnderstanding, trust these mad beasts, let vs giue our selues into their power, which haue no regard of right or reason, of religion, or any thing else; whose couetousnesse and crueltie it is hard to say which is greater; which for these many yeares haue plotted and laboured nothing more than how by policie or force they may vtterly root out the very name of the Rhodians, which they so*

D *deadly hate. They keepe vs shut vp and besieged now the sixt moneth, feeling together with vs extreame dangers and endlesse labours, slaine by heapes before our wals and fortresses, and cannot be remoued hence with thunder, lightening, stormes, tempestes, and all the calamities of Winter, a time which giueth intermission to all warres both by sea and land; so desirous they are of reuenge, and greedie of our bloud: and that not altogether without cause, for we haue also shed theirs, and gladly would still so doe, if it lay in our power. But seeing it seemeth good vnto God otherwise, and that we are surprised with ineuitable necessitie: yet let vs whilest we are at libertie, and haue power our selues, by honourable death amongst the Christian ensignes, eschew the torments and reproches which our cruell enemies hope to inflict vpon vs: so shall we enioy eternall fame and glorie, prepared both in heauen and earth for such as honorably die in de-*

E *fence of their prince and countrey: Which honour it becommeth not them to enuie vnto thy most noble name and vertue, worthie Grand Master, which hauing for many yeares enioyed the commoditie and profit of peace, and greatly enriched by bountie of this sacred militarie Order, refuse now to beare this last burden of warre.*

A most resolute speech of a common soldior, dissuading the yelding vpp of the Rhodes.

At these words an antient Greeke, for his wisedome and discretion of great reputation both with the Greekes and Latines, perceiuing his countreymen wrongfully touched, and the desperat holding out of the citie vainely persuaded, tooke hold, and interrupting this yong gallant, in answere of that he had said, spake as followeth:

F *That greefe of mind and desparation can make men rather eloquent than wise, as you haue many times heard before this, so you might this day perceiue also, most valiant gentlemen: for aduised modestie neuer falleth into obloquie, neither confoundeth falshood with truth; it desireth not the slaughter of the citizens, it persuadeth not furie, nor exhorteth men to madnesse: but it is by nature so engrafted in many, that when they cannot by their owne wisedome and policie deliuer themselues from their troubles, they yet seeke to draw others into the fellowship of the same danger: so greedie haue mallice and miserie alwaies been of companie. But if you (worthie Commaunder) will giue me also leaue to speake,*

The former speech notably answered by a Greeke, and the yeelding of the Citie vrged.

a man

a man amongst his countreymen not of meaneſt place or autheritie, which thing both the preſent calamitie and vrgent neceſſitie might of you eaſily obtaine; I would alledge ſuch reaſons, and lay downe ſuch matter, as ſhould not onely refell the copious and glorious words of this ſharpe witted Orator ſcraft together of purpoſe to flouriſh out the matter, but alſo ſuch as might ſtirre your mina to that which is honeſt, profitable, and neceſſarie; expulſing hatred, feare, trouble, or deſpaire. This gentleman, whom we all know, not onely to be a vehement Orator, but ſomtime a man moſt terrible, whereas for all his great words he is by nature mild, and ſo mild, that he neuer had the heart to kill, nay not ſo much as lightly to wound any one of them whom he calleth barbarous, mad, cruell, whoſe perfidious dealing he deteſteth, whoſe cruelty he accuſeth, whoſe maner of liuing he exclaimeth againſt, as altogether without law, without reaſon, without order, without regard: and now in time of truce, and whileſt the ſhowers of arrowes, yron bullets, fire and ſtones doth ceaſe, creeping out of his caue, maketh much adoe, and keepeth a great ſtirre; and not knowing in what danger he is, doth now with glorious words call vpon death, whereof he hath hetherto ſhewed himſelfe too much afraid, and all forſooth (as he ſaith) leaſt he ſhould be enforced to endure the mocking and ſcorning of the enemie. But this is meere pride, not Chriſtian fortitude or humilitie. But our enemie neither threateneth nor purpoſeth any ſuch matter, nothing ſo perfidious or cruell as he would make him, rubbing vp the ſlaughters at CAIRE, EVBŒA, METHONE, *and* CONSTANTINOPLE, *cities taken either by force or warlike policie, and not yeelded vp by compoſition, vpon faith giuen betwixt the beſieger and the beſieged: who becauſe he would ſpare vs, will not ſuffer vs to doe that whereby we ſhould vndoubtedly periſh. But whereof proceedeth this new found clemencie? this vnwonted fauour towards the people of the* RHODES? *I am not of the tyrants priuie counſell, neither euer curiouſly ſought after the reaſon of another mans bountie, but am glad to receiue it when I need it. Yet for all that, I will not diſſemble what I thinke in a matter ſo doubtfull: He is willing (as I ſuppoſe) in this ſiege and conqueſt of the* RHODES, *to ſhew vnto other nations whom he purpoſeth to inuade, both his power and his patience: leaſt alwaies ſatisfying his cruell nature, hee ſhould make deſolation in places hee would raigne ouer, and ſo for euer alienating the minds of men, be enforced to fight with all men with fire and ſword, by which rigour he hath not ſo much hurt his enemie as himſelfe. For this cauſe (as I ſuppoſe) he leaueth vnto vs life and goods, leaſt whileſt he in going about to take them from vs by force, and we ſeeking to keep them by deſperatneſſe, we ſhould both fall into great deſtruction, no leſſe lamentable to the conquerour than to the vanquiſhed. Beſides that, if he ſhould kill all heere, truly he might then enter the breaches of the citie on the bodies of the dead, no man now left aliue to reſiſt him. But* LERVS *is ſhut vp,* ARANGIA *is ſtrongly fortified,* LINDVS *is by ſituation impregnable: heere he knoweth are weapons, armour, and men, heere he muſt begin a new war, except he will haue the remainder of your war, the fatall plague of his empire, to prey ſtill vpon his ſubiects: all which ſtrong places he ſhall haue without ſlaughter, without bloudſhed (as reaſon is) if he ſhall let you and vs poore wretches depart in ſafetie with a little traſh. Except theſe worldly conſiderations haue moued him to mercie and compaſſion: then out of doubt it is wrought by diuine power and the ſecret fauour of God towards vs, and of our Sauiour Chriſt Ieſus crucified. Whereunto if you be men well aduiſed, if religious, if mindfull of the dutie of Chriſtians, it becommeth you not to oppoſe any obſtacle, and with the ruine of your ſelues to deſtroy this miſerable people, which for this halfe yeares ſiege hath ſcarcely had ſo much reſt as might ſuffice the neceſſitie of nature, ſtanding for you in battell, enduring both wounds and death for your honour and victorie: by whoſe faithfull labour and diligence you haue beene alwaies holpen both at home and abroad; whether you inuaded the Turke by land in* MYTILENE, NAVPACTVS, METHONE, PATRAS, *or other parts of* PELOPONESVS, *or elſe by ſea thruſt him out of the poſſeſſion of the Ionian or Egeum: whereby it may appeare euen vnto a blind man, how iniurious it is and far from truth, to obiect vnto vs, That enioying the fruits of peace, we refuſe the charges of wars: nay we neuer refuſed wars. But now it is come to that point, that if we would neuer ſo faine make wars, we are not able ſo to doe, the flower of our youth being ſlaine: and the ſmall remainder that is left, not onely weakened in bodie with wounds, ſickneſſe, watching, and reſtleſſe labour; but alſo in mind diſcouraged, whileſt all things fall out proſperouſly to our enemies, and to vs aduerſe: the greateſt and beſt part of our great artillerie being broken with continuall vſe, which if it were whole, we could haue thereof ſmall vſe or profit, for want of pouder, which not only this citie now wanteth, but alſo your ſtrong holds,* LERVS, LINDVS, HALICARNASVS, ARANGIA. *I was neuer deſirous or curious to looke into other mens doings, much leſſe into your manner of wars: but yet (Great Maſter) you cannot denie but it is ſo, who haue cauſed ſoldiers to be brought from thence hither openly, and gunpouder ſecretly: by which prouident foreſight you haue withſtood your forraine enemie theſe ſix months, and deceiued the trecherie of one or two domeſticall traitors. But I gladly admit we haue all theſe things,*

A *things, I ſtand not vpon the truth, I ſay not what moſt men ſay, but I ſpeake to pleaſe a few: and ſuppoſe we wanted neither armour nor courage, I would then aske you this, whether they would aduiſe you to vſe them to your defence, or to your deſtruction? for vnto both it cannot be, no more than at once to be a freeman and a ſlaue. To vſe them to your deſtruction, that were madneſſe and ſenceleſſe pride, hatefull to God and man: you ſhould therefore vſe them to defence: But how ſhall we defend a citie (I doe not ſay, as the truth is) alreadie loſt and poſſeſſed by the enemie, wherein he raigneth, rangeth, and turneth all vpſide down? but hauing the wals battered downe, a great breach in the Spaniſh ſtation, and another not like but euen now as good as made in the Italian ſtation, how ſhall we be able to keepe this vnfortunate towne, battered and rent at the French, Engliſh, and Auergne ſtations, and the tower of*

B *S.* Nicholas? *Which if it were not ſo battered and bared of all warlike prouiſion, but ſound and thorowly furniſhed with munition and victuall, yet neceſſitie enforcing, and reaſon perſuading, you ought to forſake it, for ſo much as all power of further reſiſtance is taken from you. Doe you not ſee how eaſily and almoſt without any trouble the enemie (by means of the caſtle he hath new built vpon the mount* PHILERMO, *not paſt two miles diſtant) can take from you all manner of prouiſion both by ſea and land, and reſtraine you from going out or in? Truly notable gentlemen, honourable for your martiall proweſſe, you ſee and haue long agoe foreſeene theſe things better than I, altogether ignorant in martiall affaires, altogether buſied in the trade of merchandiſe, and caring for my familie: yet ſuffer me to ſay the truth, All the powers whereby this kingdome ſtood, are departed and gone; againſt the force of our enemies no policie or force of man remaineth; and to expect armies of angels or ſoldiours from*

C *heauen, and other ſuch like miracles, is in my iudgement more and more to prouoke God to anger, although in his anger he be vnto vs mercifull: Wherefore being deſtitute of all worldly helpe, let vs as we may, prouide for our ſafetie. I beſeech thee (worthie Great Maſter) by theſe my aged teares, by the naturall pietie ingrafted in thy noble nature, expoſe not this miſerable citie to the ſpoile of the enemie, our old and middle aged men to the ſword, our wiues and daughters to be rauiſhed, our boies and youths to the vnnaturall filthineſſe of our barbarous enemies, and to be corrupted with the mad and groſſe opinion of the vngodly Mahometane ſuperſtition. I would (noble knights) you had ſeene with what teares, with what mourning our beauie families and children crying about their mothers, ſent vs hither, and what prayers they made for vs at our departing: I would you knew with what mind and how great hope they expect their ſafetie from your clemencie and aduiſed reſolution.*

D This ſpeech of the aged Greeke might haue moued a heart of flint: but the Great maſter, who in his coũtenance ſhewed a greater courage than his preſent ſtate required, comaunding euerie man to his charge: after the matter had beene thus moſt part of the night diſcourſed, gaue then no other anſwere, but, That he would be carfull of all their well doing. The next morning he ſent for *Preianes*, *Martiningus*, and a few other of the greateſt judgement and experience; by whom he was fully reſolued, that the citie in ſo many places by the enemie laid open and ſhaken, was not poſsible to be long defended; Whereupon he cauſed a common counſell to be called, of all the knights of the Order togither with the Burgeſſes of the citie: where after long debating, whether they ſhould fight it out to the laſt man, or yeeld vpon ſuch conditions as was

E to be obtained? it was by generall conſent concluded, that the city ſhould be yeelded, and thereupon a decree made, which was by the Great maſter pronounced. Whileſt theſe things were thus in doing, a truce was taken with the enemie for foure daies, but full of feare and danger. during which time, diuers of the turks preſuming vpon the truce, came by great companys to behold the wales and rampiers of the citie: wherewith *Fornouius* the Frenchman (of whom mention is before made) being ſore moued, in his choller without further commaund diſcharged a tire of great ordinance amongſt the thikeſt of them, contrarie to the truce taken. At which time alſo, the Rhodians receiued into the citie ſecretly by night a ſhip loaded with wines out of CRETE, and in her *Alphonſus* a Spaniard, chiefe pilot of the Rhodian gallies, and with him one hundred voluntarie ſouldiours all Latines, all which went out of CRETE without the know-

F ledge of the Venetian Senat: for at that time the Venetians were in league with *Solyman*. The Turkes iuſtly offended with the breach of the truce, and the taking in of new ſupplies, which they ſuppoſed to haue beene farre greater than in truth they were; without commaund of any captaine or enſigne diſplaid, in great numbers thruſt in thorow the ruines of the breaches into the city as farre as the rampiers and baricadoes new made, and furiouſly aſſailed the defendants: in which conflict many were ſlaine and wounded on both ſides. But after the Turkes had to their

The Great Maſter reſolued that the citie was not to bee defended, ſaith a common counſell of all his knights, and the burgeſſes of the citie.

A truce taken with the Turkes for foure daies,

their coſt againe made proofe of the courage of their enemies, as without commandement they began that skirmiſh, ſo of themſelues they brake it off and retired. After the truce was thus broken, the captaine of the Turkes fencers, a bloudie cruell fellow hauing taken three Chriſtians priſoners, cut off their hands, eares, and noſes, and ſent them ſo diſmembred into the citie with letters to the Great maſter, charging him with the vniuſt breach of the truce, barbarouſly threatning within three or foure daies to make like example of him to all poſteritie. Amongſt other none was more troubled with this ſudden and vnexpected breach of the truce, than *Robertus Peruſianus*, *Raymundus Marchet*, and *Raymundus Lupus*, three knights of the Order, men of ſingular wiſedome and grauitie, embaſſadours at that time in the Turkes campe: whom the barbarous people in their furie had vndoubtedly ſlaine or put to torture, if they had not feared the like meaſure to haue beene ſhewed to their hoſtages in the citie. But after that *Nicholaus Vergotus*, and *Georgius Sandriticus*, two of the Burgeſſes of the citie, were come into the campe with articles containing the conditions whereupon the Rhodians were contented to deliuer vp the citie, all their furie and rage was quickly appeaſed. *Solyman* for his greater maieſtie and the more terror of theſe meſſengers, beſet round about with his great armie, & guarded about with his Ianizaries in their richeſt attire and gliſtering armour, gaue them audience: who admitted to his preſence, with great humilitie offered vnto him in writing the conditions whereupon the Rhodians would yeeld vp vnto him the citie. The chiefe points whereof were, That the churches ſhould remaine vnto the Chriſtians inuiolated: that no children ſhould be taken from their parents: that no Chriſtian ſhould be enforced to forſake his religion and turne Turke: that ſuch Chriſtians as would tarrie ſtill in the citie, might ſo do at libertie, without paying any tribute for the ſpace of fiue yeares: that all they which would depart might go with bag and baggage, furniſhed with conuenient ſhipping and prouiſion as farre as CRETE, & to carrie with them ſo much great ordinance as they pleaſed; and that the Chriſtians ſhould appoint a reaſonable day for the time of their departure. All which articles *Solyman* condeſcended vnto, and ſolemnly ſwore faithfully to performe the ſame. But how they were indeed performed, the writers of that age doe much varrie: it ſhould ſeeme they were neither altogither kept, nor broken, but ſo performed as pleaſed the conquerour: certaine it is, that many great outrages were through militarie inſolencie committed by the proud Turks vpon the poore Chriſtians, contrarie to the mind of *Solyman*. *Iacobus Fontanus* a Ciuilian, and at that time one of the iudges of the citie (out of whoſe writings this hiſtorie is for moſt part collected) reporteth, That the Turks not expecting the departure of the Chriſtians, brake into the citie vpon Chriſtenmas day, by the gate called COSQVINIVM, polluted the temples, ſhamefully abuſed the Chriſtians, and made hauocke of all things: and that he himſelfe falling into their hands, after he had with ſuch money as he had, redeemed himſelf, hauing not ſufficient to content all their greedie deſires, was by them hardly entreated and grieuouſly beaten. The Great maſter by the counſell of *Achimetes*, putting on ſuch ſimple attire as beſt beſeemed a vanquiſhed man that was to humble himſelfe before the conquerour, went out of the citie into the campe, attended vpon with a few knights of the Order: whereafter he had waited in the raine moſt part of the day, before *Solymans* tent, at laſt he had a rich gowne caſt vpon him, and ſo brought into the proud tyrants preſence. Where after they had a while at the firſt, with piercing eies one earneſtly beholden the other; the Great maſter humbling himſelfe before him, was in token of grace admited to kiſſe his hand, and welcomed by *Solyman* in this ſort.

A barbarous fact.

Solyman his ſpeech vnto the Great maſter.

Although (ſaid he) *I might worthely and iuſtly infringe the articles I haue preſcribed concerning the yeelding of the citie, with thy moſt wicked croſſed compieres, the people of the* RHODES, *and thee eſpecially ſuch a capitall enemie, from whoſe deſerued puniſhment, neither faith nor oath ought to ſtay a moſt iuſt conquerour: yet I haue determined to be not onely gratious and mercifull vnto thee ſo great an offender, deſeruing exemplarie puniſhment, but alſo liberall and bountifull: who if thou wilt by well doing amend the grieuous tranſgreſſions of thy former life, I promiſe vnto thee moſt honourable entertainment, great preferment, and the higheſt places in my empire, in my armie in time of warre, and in counſell in time of peace. Not to refuſe this my offer, both thy preſent eſtate perſuadeth thee, and the Chriſtians (whoſe quarrell thou tookeſt vpon thee to defend againſt me, with better beginning than ſucceſſe) deſerue at thy hands no better: for what ſhould let thee forſaken of all thy friends, a man as it were betraied and vanquiſhed, to caſt thy ſelfe into the perpetuall faith*

and

A *and protection of a moſt mightie and mercifull conquerour, of himſelfe offering thee this vndeſerued grace and fauour.*

Whereunto the Great maſter preſently anſwered:

Moſt mightie and gratious emperour, your offered fauours before your other worthie captaines, I deſerue not; neither is my preſent eſtate and deſert towards you ſuch, as that I dare or ought to refell the ſame: yet I will ſpeake freely in the middeſt of your victorious armie, a man vanquiſhed in preſence of the conquerour, whoſe great mercie I neuer diſpaired of, and whoſe faith I neuer doubted: The reſolute anſwere of the great Maſter vnto Solyman.

B *I had rather now I haue loſt my ſoueraigntie, forthwith to loſe my priuat and vnfortunat life; or elſe for euer heereafter to liue in obſcuritie, than of my people to be accounted a fugitiue rather than a vanquiſhed man: For to be vanquiſhed is but chance of warre, and of ſo great a conquerour no ſhame to him that is conquered: but afterwards to forſake his owne people and to turne to the enemie, I account it ſhamefull cowardiſe and treacherie.*

Solyman maruelling at the courage and maieſtie of the hoarie old prince, in his ſo great extremitie, diſmiſſed him, and ſent him againe into the citie, guarded with his owne guard, vntill he was come into his pallace: and vnto euery one of the knights attending vpon the Great Maſter, was giuen a rich garment, in token of *Solymans* fauour. Within a few daies after *Solyman* Solyman commeth into the citie vnto the Great maſter.

C comming into the citie, went to viſit the Great Maſter alſo: whom he found buſie in packing vp his things againſt his departure. Heere when the Great maſter falling downe vpon his knees would haue worſhipped him, he would in no caſe ſuffer him ſo to doe: but with his hand putting aſide his vaile of maieſtie (which manner of reuerence the Turkiſh emperours giue onely to God, and their great prophet *Mahomet*) tooke him vp, and ſaluted him by the name of Father. To whom the Great maſter for his wiſedome and diſcretion now to him no leſſe admirable, than he was before in time of warre for his valour and courage, ſpake in this ſort.

If my fortune and ſucceſſe had beene anſwerable to my heart and courage, I ſhould heere be in this citie, rather as a victorious conquerour than a man conquered. But ſithence the fatall deſtinies would The ſpeech of the Great maſter to Solyman.

D *needs ouerthrow the Rhodian eſtate, I am glad that you are the man before all other by fortune aſſigned, of whom I ſhould receiue both force and grace. And vnto you, amongſt many other your rare and worthie praiſes, this ſhall not be the leaſt, That you vanquiſhed the* RHODES, *and ſhewed mercie. By this meanes you haue ioyned vnto your dreadfull power, the fame of clemencie and curteſie; an honour not of the higheſt to be deſpiſed, by which alone we come neereſt vnto God. Wherefore I doubt not but you will keepe the conuentions of the late peace inuiolate, which your owne clemencie perſuaded you to grant, and neceſſitie enforced vs to take. I ſhall now be an eternall example of the Turkiſh emperours clemencie and vertue, more then if I had by and by at the firſt yeelded my ſelfe: obſtinat wilfulneſſe hath made thy glorie and mercie now famous thorow the whole world, and vnto the worlds end.*

E

Whereunto *Solyman* by his interpreter, anſwered:

It is to me a great pleaſure, that God at length hath put into thy mind to make choiſe of peace before The notable anſwere of Solyman to the great Maſter.

F *warre, which I would thou couldeſt haue liked of from the beginning: then truely thou ſhouldeſt at this time haue receiued of my great and mightie maieſtie, more good than thou haſt endured harme. Which that I haue done vnto thee, not for any hatred, but onely for deſire of ſoueraigntie, thou maieſt gather by this, That I ſuffer thee and thine to depart hence at libertie with all your wealth and ſubſtance: For I make not warre, thereby to heape vp wealth and riches; but for honour, fame, immortalitie, and enlarging of mine empire. For it is the propertie of a king royally deſcended, by ſtrong hand to take from others, and to inuade others; not vpon a greedie and couetous mind, but for the honourable deſire of rule and ſoueraigntie: which whileſt my neighbour withſtandeth, I count it enough by force of armes to remoue him.*

But the Tyrant (as many ſuppoſed) ſpake all this by way of diſſimulation, hauing as it was commonly bruted, giuen order for the rigging vp of a great ſhip and certaine gallies, for the ſud-

den

den transporting of the Great maſter and the knights of the Order to CONSTANTINOPLE; G
which report ſeemeth to haue beene but faigned either of malice, or elſe by ſuch as leaſt knew *Solymans* mind: for if he had ſo purpoſed, who ſhould haue let him, hauing them all in his power. *Iouius* in his little treatiſe *rerum Turcicarum* dedicated to *Charles* the fift, reporteth that he himſelfe heard *Lilladamus* the Great maſter ſay, That when *Solyman* entered into the RHODES attended vpon with thirtie thouſand men, there was not any man heard to ſpeake a word, but that the ſouldiers went as if they had beene obſeruant friers: and that when he came to aske leaue of *Solyman* that he might depart, he was ſo courteouſly vſed of him, that turning himſelfe to *Abraim* the Baſſa, whom he aboue all men loued, ſaid, Truely I cannot but grieue to ſee this vnfortunat old man, driuen out of his owne dwelling, to depart hence ſo heauily.

The Great maſter embarking himſelfe with his knights and ſuch other as were willing to de- H
part, in veſſels and gallies prepared for that purpoſe, departed out of the iſland on Newyeares day at night: and after long and dangerous trauell by ſea in that Winter weather, landed at laſt at MESSANA in SICILIA, from whence he afterwards ſailed into ITALIE, and ſo trauelled to ROME where he was honourably receiued by *Adrian* the ſixt of that name then biſhop there, a Hollander borne, ſometime ſchoolemaſter to *Charles* the fift, and his Vicegerent in Spain; who if he had been as forward in the ſhort time of his Papacie to haue relieued the RHODES, as he was to maintaine *Charles* his quarrell againſt the French king, it is not vnlike but that famous citie had beene relieued, and the iſland in poſſeſſion of the Chriſtians at this day. Thus *Solyman*, whileſt the Chriſtian princes were at diſcord amongſt themſelues, to his great glorie and no leſſe griefe of all good Chriſtians, entred the RHODES the fiue and twentith day of December, a day I
dedicated vnto the natiuitie of our Sauiour Chriſt, in the yeare 1522, after it had beene by the knights of the Order valiantly kept and defended againſt the infidels by the ſpace of 214 years, ſince the time they by force tooke it from the infidels in the yeare 1308: and now being ſo long holden as was poſſible, againſt all the power of the Turkes, was yeelded vp when it had been ſix moneths beſieged. At this ſiege *Solyman* loſt a great part of his army; for beſides them that were ſlaine at the aſſaults, which were many, thirtie thouſand died of the flix.

Solyman entreth into the Rhodes on Chriſtenmas day, in the yeare 1522.

Whileſt *Solyman* thus lay at the ſiege of the RHODES, *Ferhates Baſſa* Gouernour of the Marches of the Turkiſh empire, alongſt the riuer of Euphrates, by the commandement of *Solyman* went with a great armie againſt *Alis-beg*, whom the Turkes called *Schach, Suar-Ogli*, that is to ſay, king *Suar* his ſonne: which *P. Iouius* corrupting, calleth him by the name of *Saxouar-oglis*. This *Alis*, after he had betraied his vncle *Aladeules* the mountaine king, vnto *Sinan Baſſa*, was by *Selymus* left chiefe gouernour of that large and wild countrey alongſt the borders of ARMENIA and CAPADOCIA, wanting nothing of the honour of a king but the name onely, as is before declared in the life of *Selymus*. *Solyman* iealous of his honor, and fearing leaſt he ſhould take vpon him the abſolute gouernment of that countrey (which indeed of right belonged vnto him, the children of *Aladeules* the late king being now all dead) and ſo to make himſelfe king, eſpecially if he ſhould ioyne in friendſhip with the Perſian king: after the manner of ambitious men, purpoſed by any meanes to haue him taken out of the way: and had therefore ſent *Ferhates* to eaſe him of that care. The Baſſa without making any ſhew of hoſtilitie, marching with L
his armie along the confines of his countrey, as if it had been but to looke to his charge, when he was come as neere as he could to *Alis*, without miſtruſt, thought good to aſſay if he could by pollicie bring that to paſſe which hee was otherwiſe with great danger to attempt by force. Wherefore faining himſelfe to be extreame ſicke, he ſent embaſſadours to *Alis*, requeſting him as a friend to vouchſafe to come vnto him being at the point of death, vnto whom he had many things of importance from the great emperour to impart, and would if he ſhould die, leaue with him all his charge vntill *Solyman* ſhould otherwiſe diſpoſe thereof.

Solyman ſendeth Ferhates Baſſa againſt Alis-beg the mountaine prince.

Alis and his foure ſonnes treacherouſly ſlaine.

Alis, who from his youth had alwaies honoured the Turkiſh emperours and faithfully ſerued them, miſtruſting no harme came to the Baſſa, accompanied with his foure ſonnes; whom the faithleſſe Baſſa without regard of infamie, cauſed preſently to be put to death with their father: M
and ſo reducing all that country into the manner of a prouince vnder *Solymans* obeiſance, came to him with twentie thouſand men, about the time that the citie of the RHODES was yeelded vp. This is the faithleſſe dealing of the Turks, not with the Chriſtians onely, but with them of their owne ſuperſtition alſo: vſing it as no ſmall pollicie, vtterly to extinguiſh the nobilitie in all countries ſubiect to their ſeruile tyrannie.

Solyman

A *Solyman* after he had thus ſubdued the RHODES, and diſpoſed of the Iſland as he liked beſt, returning to CONSTANTINOPLE, brake vp his armie, and for the ſpace of three yeares after followed his pleaſure, not doing any thing worthie of remembrance. During which time and many yeares after, the rich and flouriſhing countrie of ITALIE, ſometime miſtreſſe of the world, was miſerably afflicted and rent in pieces by *Charles* the fift (then emperour) and *Francis* the French king, the one enuying vnto the other the glorie of the empire: and he not content therwith, ſeeking with immoderate ambition to make himſelfe lord of all ITALIE: moſt of the other Chriſtian princes and ſtates being at the ſame time either by the one or by the other, drawn into the fellowſhip of that war, to the great trouble and ſore weakening of the Chriſtian common-
B weale. Whereupon *Solyman* waiting all occaſions that might ſerue for the inlarging of his empire, and annoying of the Chriſtians, thought it now a fit time for him to ſet his foot into HVNGARIE, whereinto he had alreadie laied open a way by the taking of BELGRADE. He knew right well that *Lewes* then king of HVNGARIE was but young, altogether vnacquainted with the warres, commaunding ouer his headſtrong ſubiects (eſpecially his rich prelates and nobilitie) no otherwiſe than pleaſed themſelues, being himſelfe rather by them altogether ouerruled: Beſides that, he was in good hope, that the other Chriſtian princes neere vnto him, either caried away with regard of their owne eſtate, would not, or elſe before vnto himſelfe by league faſt bound, could not affoord vnto him any great aid or ſuccour: The Germanes he knew would make ſmall haſt vnto ſuch warres as ſhould yeeld them much danger, and but ſmall pay: As for
C the princes of the houſe of AVSTRIA, *Charles* the emperour, and *Ferdinand* his brother, although they were ioyned vnto the young king with the neereſt bonds of alliance (*Lewes* hauing married *Marie* their youngeſt ſiſter, and *Ferdinand*, *Anne*, king *Lewis* his ſiſter) yet was there as he thought ſmall helpe to be expected from them; *Charles* hauing his hands full in ITALIE, and *Ferdinand* altogether carefull of himſelfe: And that *Sigiſmund* king of POLONIA would for the young kings ſake breake the ancient league he had with the Turkiſh emperors, he could hardly be perſuaded: As for other Chriſtian princes farther off, he ſtood not in any great doubt. Thus hauing with himſelfe ſingled out this young prince the Hungarian king, whom he had in his greedie mind alreadie deuoured, he ſet forward from CONSTANTINOPLE, and was come on his way as far as SOPHIA in SERVIA with a mightie armie of two hundred thouſand men before
D that the Hungarians had any knowledge of his comming (ſo blind and ſenceleſſe was that ſtate, which now ſleeping in ſecuritie, had long before loſt thoſe eyes which euer watcht, and neuer ſpared coſt or paines to keepe the ſame in ſafetie) in ſteed of whom were others come in place, ſharpe of ſight, and too too prouident for that concerned their owne aduancement; but blind as beetles in foreſeeing this great and common danger (wherwith they were ſhortly after all quite ouerwhelmed) vntil it was now brought home vnto their owne dores. The young king of himſelfe but weake, by reaſon of his youthfull yeares, and nothing ſtrengthened by them for whom he had moſt done, and ſhould haue beene his greateſt ſtay; was wonderfully diſmaied with the fame of the approch of ſo mightie an enemie: yet the better to withſtand him, he ſent embaſſadors with all ſpeed vnto the Chriſtian princes his neighbors, requeſting their aid againſt
E the common enemie: but all in vaine. In the meane time, after the ancient manner of his countrie, he gaue out generall ſummons for the aſſemblie of his counſell for the warres: whether his great ſtipendarie prelates (of duetie bound to appeare) came with their troupes of euill appointed horſemen, and not halfe full; who alſo deliuered in leſſe ſummes of money by farre, than of right they ſhould haue done, towards the maintenance of the charge of that common war. And the temperall nobilitie, forgetting the warlike diſcipline of their famous anceſtors, as freſh water ſoldiors which had neuer ſeene the Turkiſh emperour in his ſtrength, and but little acquainted with ſome light skirmiſhes or ſmall inuaſions, in their vaine brauerie made light account of the Turkes, proudly vaunting, That although they were in number but few, yet they would eaſily ouerthrow the great numbers of them, if euer they came to handie ſtroks. But aboue all the reſt
F one *Paulus Tomoreus*, archbiſhop of COLOSSA, ſometimes a Minorite, who had before been in diuers light skirmiſhes againſt the Turkes, with great inſolencie did ſo confidently brag & boaſt of the victorie he vainly dreamed of, that in his ſermons vnto the ſouldiours, and in open talke with the nobilitie (if he could haue done ſo much as he vaunted of) it ſhould ſeeme that he himſelfe had been ynough to haue ouerthrowne the Turks whole armie.

But when all the kings armie was aſſembled, and a generall moſter taken, there was hardly

Solyman returneth to Conſtantinople.

Solyman vpon the diſcord of the Chriſtian princes and diſordered ſtate of Hungarie, taketh occaſion to inuade that kingdome.

1526

Solyman commeth againſt Lewis king of Hungaria.

The vanitie of Tomoreus.

found fiue and twentie thousand men in all, horse and foot. So that the foolish hardnesse of *Tomoreus*, and others so forwards to giue the Turks battel, was of most wise men disliked. The old souldiors and men of great experience said plainely, That it was meere follie and madnes with such a handfull of men to giue battell vnto the enemie, who would bring eight times so many moe into the field as they were. Wherefore some wished, that the young king should be withdrawne from the imminent danger: amongst whom *Stephanus Verbetius*, a noble captaine, of all the rest best acquainted with the Turkish wars, gaue counsell, that the person of the young king should for the safetie of the common state, whatsoeuer should happen, be kept out of danger in the strong castle of BVDA. But the vnruly soldiors with open mouth impugned his wholesome counsell, and said plainely, That except the king himselfe did lead them, they would not at all fight. Of which opinion was also the rash prelate *Tomoreus*, persuading them with all speed to giue the enemie battell, and that the noble young king vnder the protection of Almightie God, should in person himselfe go and giue the signall of battell against his enemies. The king ouerruled by this vnluckie counsell, vpon a brauerie without reason set forward with his armie, and came to a place called MOHATCHZ or MVGACE, which is a little countrey village not farre from Danubius, almost in the middle betweene BVDA and BELGRADE. And now *Balybeus* with twentie thousand horsemen (the forerunners of the Turkish armie) was at hand, at which time the commanders and captaines of the kings armie, entred into counsell, Whether it were better to incampe their armie within their wagons alongst the riuer of Danubius, and so to expect the comming of *Ioannes Sepusius*, countie of CILIA, and Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA; (who was then said to be comming towards the king with his Transiluanian horsemen, of all other fittest to haue incountred the Turkes) or else to march on forward, and presently to giue them battell? But *Tomoreus*, who now commmanded all, knowing that vpon the comming of the Vayuod, he was to giue place, and himselfe to be commaunded (which vnto so proud a man was no smal griefe) for the maintenance of his credit and reputation, and to carie away the glorie of the victorie he so vainely hoped for, could not abide to heare of any delay; but hasting headlong to his owne destruction, did with such vehemencie impugne the wholesome counsell of others, who would haue expected the comming of the Vayuod, that he by his franticke persuasions drew on the vnaduised young king into most apparant and manifest danger. For *Balybeus* diuided his horsemen into foure battels, which by turnes skirmished with the kings armie without intermission, and gaue the Hungarians no leisure to rest either day or night, but continually wheeling about, kept them in so straight, that no man could without great danger go to water his horse at the side of Danubius, which was fast by, or once to stirre out of the campe, but were enforced to dig pits for water in places where they lay: with which necessitie *Tomoreus* was enforced to put the armie in order of battell, and there was now no remedie, but he must of necessitie fight for the honour of his prince and countrie. His battell was raunged all in length, and his horsemen not altogether (as it was thought) vnfitly placed here and there by troupes amongst his footmen; least the Turks (being in number eight to one) should with their multitude compasse them round, and so inforce them to fight as it were in a ring: for now was *Solyman* come also with all his huge armie. The Hungarian tents defended with a small garrison, were left a little from the armie on the right hand, inclosed round about with waggons, one chained to another: neere vnto the which, *Tomoreus* Generall of this vnluckie battell, had not altogether vndiscreetly placed a troupe of chosen horsemen for defence of the kings person against all vncertaine euents of the battell. But this day (vnluckie to the Hungarian name, but vnto the king himselfe most fatal and vnfortunat) ouerthrew that his purpose, deuised too late for the safetie of the kings person: for at the first incounter the Hungarians, although they had receiued no harme by the Turkish artillerie (being mounted too high, of purpose as it was thought, the gunners being for most part Christians) were easily beaten downe and ouerthrowne, oppressed by the multitude of their enemies, especially *Tomoreus* with the rest of the prelates and nobilitie being almost all slaine together, and the Hungarian horsemen also either slaine or put to flight. All things going thus to wracke, a companie of Turks assailed the campe, which was hardy defended by the weake garrison. Which thing the troupe of the chosen horsemen appointed for defence of the kings person, beholding, could not be staied, but that they would needs helpe them which defended the campe. The young king seeing all his armie discomfited, and himselfe forsaken of the horsemen which he was in hope should haue garded him, betooke himselfe to flight.

The wholsome counsell not followed

The battell of Mohatchz

Tomoreus slaine

But

A But as he was making ſhift for himſelfe, thinking to haue paſſed ouer a fennie ditch, his horſe in plunging out, fel backwards vpon him into the ditch; where being heauie loaded with armour not able to helpe himſelfe, he was in the middeſt of the filthie ditch in the mud moſt miſerably drowned. Some few horſemen eſcaped out of the battell, the reſt were either ſlaine or taken priſoners. This wofull battel neuer ſufficiently to be lamented, as the ground of the miſeries of that worthie kingdome, was fought the 29 day of October in the yeare 1526. *King Lewis drowned in a ditch.*

Solyman hauing obtained this victorie, marched on directly to BVDA the regall ſeat of the Hungarian kings, which was deliuered vnto him with the caſtle; vpon condition, that he ſhould not violate any man either in perſon or goods, and at his departure to leaue the ſame againe vnto the Hungarians: all which things he (according vnto their requeſt) faithfully performed. Be-
B ing entred into the caſtle, he wonderfully commended the ſame, but lodged not therein, becauſe it is by their auncient law forbidden the Turkiſh emperour to lodge within any walled place which is not his own. Wherefore he returned and lodged in his campe alongſt the riuer of Danubius.

Whileſt *Solyman* lay thus at BVDA, ſeuen bloudie heads of the biſhops and greateſt of the nobilitie (ſlaine in the late battell at MOHATCHZ) were preſented to him, all ſet in order vpon a wodden ſtep: whereat he ſmiled, to ſee his courtiers laying their right hands vpon their breſts, and bending their bodies as if they had done them great obeiſance, to ſalute them by name, and in deriſion to welcome them by the names of valiant popes. But afterwards, when he had more particularly enquired what euerie one of them was, it is reported that he moſt of all deteſted *La-*
C *diſlaus Salcanius* the great biſhop of STRIGONIVM, for his miſerable couetouſnes, that being a man of infinit wealth, refuſed to ſpare part thereof vnto his ſoueraigne, requeſting the ſame at his great need: *Tomoreus* he blamed of inconſiderat raſhneſſe, for that he being a cleargie man, would buſie himſelfe ſo farre in matters not belonging to his vocation: On the contrary part, he commended *Franſcicus Perenus* biſhop of VERADIVM, a man honourably deſcended, for his wiſe counſell (though it was not followed) for that he had heard it reported, that he as a true prophet foretelling the common ſlaughter enſuing, had ſharply ſaid in the councel at ſuch time as *Tomoreus* would needs fight with the Turkes, & was not by any meanes to be remoued from that his fatall opinion, That he did foreſee what that their frierlike Generall would the next day doe; and that he would with ſo great an enterpriſe effect no more, but to make one holiday the
D more in the Chriſtian kalenders, in remembrance of thirtie thouſand Hungarian martyrs, moſt miſerably ſlaine of the Turks in vnequall battell, for defence of the Chriſtian faith and religion (for at that time, they which willingly expoſed themſelues to death in defence of the Chriſtian faith, were all accounted for Martyrs:) *Georgius Sepuſius* and the others he called raſh fooles, that would aduenture with ſo ſmall ſtrength to incounter ſo ſtrong an enemie. At ſuch time as the counterfeits of king *Lewis* and *Marie* his wife were ſhewed vnto him, he honourably ſaid, That he was ſorie for the young king, that it was his euill happe to haue ſo vnaduiſed counſellors in a matter of ſo great importance, as to perſuade him againſt all reaſon to fight at ſo great diſaduantage: And that he came not into HVNGARIE to take his kingdome from him, but only to re-
E uenge the wrongs done vnto him by the Hungarians: And that if he had eſcaped the danger of the battell, he would aſſuredly haue againe reſtored vnto him the kingdome of HVNGARIE, contenting himſelfe with ſome ſmall tribute: And that it ſhould haue beene vnto him honour enough to haue ſaued the nephew of *Sigiſmund* king of POLONIA his confederat, ſo ſtrongly allied with the honourable houſe of *Auſtria*. All which he commaunded to be told to *Marie* the queene, who was for feare fled from BVDA to POSSONIVM. Which might perhaps all ſeeme to haue beene either diſſemblingly ſpoken, or falſly reported of the equitie and courteſie of the barbarous king, if he had not ſhortly afterwards to the ample declaration of his bountie and liberalitie, without any deſert, giuen the ſame kingdome of HVNGARIE to *Ioannes Sepuſius*, not borne of any roiall bloud, and then retaining the mind of a verie enemie. After that, he tooke away three goodly images of braſſe of ancient workmanſhip, which were placed in the entrance
F into the kings pallace, by that renowned king *Mathias Coruinus* the great fauourer of rare qualities and vertues: theſe images repreſented the formes of *Hercules* with his club, of *Apollo* with his harpe, and *Diana* with her bow and quiuer: all which he placed in the tiltyard at CONSTANTINOPLE, as a trophie of the Hungarian victorie. Howbeit theſe images vvere ſince taken down by the perſuaſion of the Mufti, & molten (as contrarie to their ſuperſtition) and great or-

The beads of ſlaine Chriſtian biſhops and captaines preſented to Solyman.

The biſhop of Veradium too true a prophet.

The honourable ſpeech of Solyman concerning his comming into Hungerie.

dinance made of them. He caried also away with him three pieces of artillerie of most excellent G
and curious workmanship; and certaine brasen pillars of chamfred worke, which supported the
Chapiters of the gates. He tarried at BVDA about twentie daies: In which time to satisfie the
cruell nature and greedie desires of his souldiours, he sent out diuers troups of horsemen into
the countrie thereabout, by whom all the countrie betwixt RAB and the riuer of Tibyscus
was by that sudden and vnexpected incursion so destroyed, that it is reported that aboue an
hundred and fiftie thousand people of all sorts were either slaine or led away into most mise-
rable captiuitie. All which done, he returned againe by the same way he came to CONSTAN-
TINOPLE.

Ioannes Sepusius, Vaiuod of Transiluania, aspireth to the kingdome of Hungarie.

About the same time *Ioannes Sepusius* Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, with a great power
came now too late into HVNGARIE to haue aided the king: but glad, as was thought, of his H
death, as tending to his owne aduancement; for as much as he was now (the king being dead
without issue) a man of greatest account amongst the nobilitie of HVNGARIE. Wherefore as
one of a deepe and reaching wit, and in great hope to obtaine the kingdome, hee began cun-
ningly to labour diuers of the noble men one by one, and instantly to request them, that at the
next parliament they would not betray the honour of their countrie, in suffering the royal dig-
nitie of that auntient kingdome to be transferred vnto a stranger, of such a nation as happily lo-
ued them not: for why, the Hungarians ought well to remember what great calamities they
had receiued in former times, in chusing forreine kings and strangers to rule ouer them, and
in following their vnfortunate ensignes against the Turkes; which thing the wofull miseries of
times past might notably proue: which either *Sigismundus* of BOHEMIA, or *Ladislaus* the first of I
POLONIA, by their vnfortunate battels, once at NICOPOLIS, againe at CVLVMBARIVM,
and last of all at VARNA, had brought vnto the Hungarians. But to speake, nay once to remem-
ber the harmes receiued by the long cowardise of *Ladislaus*, or this late rashnesse of his sonne
king *Lewis*, would make any noble minde to blush and be ashamed: vnder whose gouernment
all militarie discipline, and the glory of HVNGARIE might well be thought to be vtterly lost.
And hee said there remained of the nobility of HVNGARY, men honourably descended of
most auncient houses, worthy of the kingdome, which bare noble minds, and were of sufficient
courage, discretion, and power, in this time of common heauinesse to restore the honour of the
estate, and worthily to defend the kingdome: Amongst whom (said he) I would not bee ac-
counted so base minded, or heauy headed (although there be many which for the honour of K
their houses and wealth may seeme to goe before me) that I will therefore confesse, that any of
them is for valour, prowesse, or fortune better than my selfe, either for conducting of an army,
or gouernment of a kingdome: for I shall be a king of courage and valour sufficient, if by your
fauourable good will I shall be thought worthy of your consent and suffrages. The Vayuod
taking this course, by his earnest sute and labor had woon the good wils of many; and so much
the easier, for that *Stephanus Bator* (a man of greatest nobilitie among the Hungarians) was a
little before gone into BOHEMIA vnto king *Ferdinand*, who was then greatly busied (by rea-
son of a parliament there summoned) in procuring the fauour of the nobility and commons of
that realme against the time of the parliament, wherein he was in good hope to be chosen king; L
as he was in short time after.

King Lewis buried.

At that same time the Hungarians were with great solemnity celebrating the funerall of their
late king: whose dead body after the departure of *Solyman* from BVDA, was found whole, by
the demonstration of one *Cotriscus* one of the squires of his body, who was present when he was
drowned; and so was brought out of the fens of MOHATCHZ to ALBA REGALIS, where it
was with great pompe buried amongst the sepulchres of the other kings of HVNGARIE his pre-
decessours. Which solemne funerall once ended, the generall military parliament (by the au-
thoritie and voice whereof the kings of HVNGARIE were by their auntient lawes and customes
to be chosen) was called: in the shutting vp whereof, *Iohn* the Vayuod hauing in that common
heauinesse no competitour, nor any of the greatest nobility which durst stand against him, was
with the great applause and consent of all there present chosen King. To whom forthwith *Pe-* M
trus Perennus came and presented the ancient crowne of the kingdome of HVNGARY, which
was in his keeping, made after an homely fashion of pure gold; with which the lawfull kings of
HVNGARY vsed alwaies to bee solemnely crowned. It is reported, that it was the crowne of
Stephanus first king of HVNGARY, and was by an auncient custome alwaies kept in the castle

of

A of VICEGREDE. And ſo *Iohn* the Vayuod was orderly crowned, and conſecrated by the hands of *Paulus* biſhop of STRIGONIVM, lately choſen in ſteed of *Ladiſlaus Salcanius*, ſlaine in the battell at MVGACE, and by the hands of *Stephanus Brodaricus* biſhop of VACIA, whom he choſe for his ſecretarie. And vnto *Americus Cibachus* he gaue the honour of the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, being but a little before choſen biſhop of VERADIVM. In his preferment, he was greatly holpen vnto the kingdome by the nobilitie which followed him out of TRANSILVANIA, men of great account both in peace and warre; amongſt whom deſcended of the Hungarian bloud, were chiefe, *Stephanus Verbetius*, *Paulus Antandrus*, *Gregorius Peſchenius*, *Nicholaus Gleſſa*, and *Ianus Docia*. But whileſt this new king is in this ſort buſied in rewarding his friends, and
B ſtrengthening himſelfe in his kingdome, he was aduertiſed, that *Ferdinand* his competitor of the Hungarian kingdome was choſen king of BOHEMIA: who out of the old controuerſie betwixt *Mathias Coruinus* and *Fredericus* the emperours great grandfather, alleadged great claime vnto that kingdome, deriued from the time of *Ladiſlaus*, who was reported to haue been poiſoned at the time of the ſolemnization of his mariage, through the ambition and malice of *Georgius Pogibracius*; who affecting the kingdome of BOHEMIA, ſhortly after obtained the ſame. And now it ſeemed that the time was come, wherein *Ferdinand* made greater with the kingdome of BOHEMIA, and ſtrengthened with the power of his brother *Charles* the emperour, not forgetting his right, might vpon good ground lay claime vnto the kingdome of HVNGARIE, vnto him (as he pretended) of right belonging euer ſince the time of *Albertus* the emperour.

Iohn Sepuſius the Vayuod choſen & crowned king of Hungarie.

Ferdinand king of Boheme his claime to the kingdome of Hungarie.

C Neither did *Ferdinand* beſide the ſtrength of AVSTRIA and BOHEMIA, want the furtherance of diuers of the princes of HVNGARIE; hauing in his court many of vnquiet ſpirit, halfe fugitiues, deſirous of change, which enuied at the Vayuods royall preferment (as if it had beene taken from themſelues, more worthie thereof than he) by the raſh and tumultuous fauour of the vulgar people. For beſides *Bator*, who in moſt mens iudgement might moſt worthily haue required and obtained the kingdome, there were others alſo almoſt of like nobilitie and valour, as *Valentinus Turaccus*, *Stephanus Maylatus*, *Ianus Scala*, *Gaſper Scredius*, *Baltaſar Pamphilus*, and *Ferentius Gnarius*; to whom alſo was ioyned *Paulus Bachitius* borne in SERVIA, a valiant gentleman, who being entered into the Mahometane religion, to auoid the Turkiſh ſlauerie got away vnto the Chriſtians, and hardly eſcaped from the battell of MOHATCH.

D By the perſuaſion of theſe noble men, *Ferdinand* of his owne diſpoſition readie enough to claime his right, eſpecially a kingdome, and truſting vnto his ſtrength in AVSTRIA, BOHEMIA, RHETIA, STIRIA, and CARYNTHIA, marched directly towards BVDA. With whoſe comming, *Iohn* the new king being wonderfully troubled, as a man beſet with want of all things, hauing neither ſufficient ſtrength wherupon to reſt in his new got kingdome, neither any great aſſurance of the fidelitie of his ſubiects, like ynough either for feare, or of their naturall inconſtancie to fall from him, determined not to abide the comming of his enemie to BVDA: but exhorting his captaines to follow him, although he were glad to depart and giue place to his euill fortune for a time, with ſuch power as he had brought with him out of TRANSILVANIA, & ſuch other as he could otherwiſe leuie, he paſſed ouer the riuer to PESTVM: and not daring any
E where thereabouts to reſt, by long marches paſſed ouer the riuer Tibiſcus, and there incamped at TOCAI, which was a ſtrong caſtle vpon the further ſide of the riuer. His departure being knowne, *Ferdinand* marching on, obtained BVDA without reſiſtance: where he ſtaied a while, and conſulted with his captains, Whether he ſhould purſue his flying enemie, or not? But it was quickly reſolued, That the diſcouraged enemie was to be ſpeedily purſued, before he ſhould gather greater ſtrength, or enter into greater policies. Wherfore *Ferdinand* committed all his armie vnto the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, his friends, whom we haue before named; who marching with all ſpeed poſſible, came to the riuer Tibiſcus: where paſſing ouer vpon a bridge made of boats, which they brought with them in waggons for that purpoſe, they came with enſignes diſplayed vnto the caſtle of TOCAI, where the king lay with his armie in order of battell. But
F terrified with the ſuddaine comming of his enemies, and debating with his captaines of the greatnes of the danger, tooke a courſe vnto himſelfe rather ſafe than honorable: for his captains deſiring nothing more than to ioine battell, and in manner contemning their enemies, perſuaded him to withdraw himſelfe a little out of the battell, and to keepe him out of danger; and if things fell out otherwiſe than wel, to reſerue himſelfe vnto his better fortunes: as for themſelues they would moſt reſolutely fight againſt thoſe traiterous fugitiues, for as much as it were great

King Ferdinand taketh Buda.

diſhonour for them, being Hungarians, a warlike people by nature, to refuſe battel being offered G
by the enemie. Amongſt the cheefetaines in the kings armie, *Ferentius Bodo*, an old captaine of great experience and courage was cheefe, to whom the king deliuered his enſigne with his own hands, and he with great skill ordered his battell, for the number of his ſouldiours: he himſelfe ſtood in the maine battell with the Hungarians, placing the Tranſiluanians in the wings. In *Ferdinands* armie, *Valentinus Turaccus* led the maine battell with the Hungarians vnder *Ferdinands* enſigne, ſtrengthened on the one ſide with troupes of horſemen out of STIRIA, and on the other with the horſemen of AVSTRIA. But *Paulus Bachitius* according to the manner of the Turkiſh warres (wherewith he was well acquainted) with a companie of light horſemen lay cloſe in ambuſh in a conuenient place for that purpoſe, a good diſtance off, againſt the left wing of the enemies armie, readie as occaſion ſhould ſerue to take his moſt aduantage. It was not H
greatly needfull for the captaines to vſe any perſuaſions to encourage their ſouldiours, readie ynough of themſelues to fight. The great ordinance once diſcharged, the armies came faſt on & ioyned battell, where the wings of both battels fought with diuers fortune. The Stirian horſemen were not able to endure the force of the Tranſiluanians, but were put to the worſe: and on the other ſide, the left wing of *Bodo* his armie, conſiſting for moſt part of raw and vnexpert ſouldiors, was by the horſemen of AVSTRIA ouerthrowne. At the ſame time both the maine battels (being almoſt all Hungarians) fought with equall courage, and that ſo eagerly, as ſeldome had been ſeene a more fierce or cruell battell. But by a freſh charge giuen by *Ferdinands* horſemen, who had now put to flight the right wing of *Bodo* his battell, all *Bodo* his armie fighting moſt valiantly, was diſordered and put to flight: *Bodo* the Generall labouring to reſtore the battell, and to ſaue the enſigne to him before by the king deliuered, was by the comming in of *Paulus Bachitius* with his light horſemen, taken. The other captaines ſeeing all loſt, and paſt hope of recouerie, betooke themſelues to flight: all the kings artillerie and enſignes were taken by the enemie. The king ſeeing the ouerthrow of his armie, for ſafegard of his life fled into POLONIA. *Ferdinand* his captaines following the courſe of the victorie, entered into TRANSILVANIA, where the people yeelding themſelues at the firſt, all the whole prouince ſubmitted it ſelfe vnto the authoritie of *Ferdinand*. *Bodo* and the reſt of the noble men that were taken priſoners, with the enſignes taken from the enemies, were ſent to *Ferdinand*. But when *Bodo* hauing his libertie promiſed, could not be perſuaded to renounce his oath giuen to king *Iohn*, and to beare armes againſt him, he was by *Ferdinand* his commaundement caſt into a darke dungeon, where ſhortly K
after, conſumed with ſorrow and greefe, he miſerably ended his life.

The battell of Tocai betweene the armies of king Iohn and king Ferdinand

King Iohn flieth into Polonia.

Shortly after *Ferdinand* (the Hungarians generally ſubmitting themſelues vnto him) was by their common conſent ſaluted king, and crowned with the ſame old crown wherwith king *Iohn* had been crowned, which the ſame *Perenus* (a man of little conſtancie) brought vnto him; and with him was alſo crowned *Anne* his wife, the only ſiſter of the late king *Lewes*: all which ſolemne ceremonies were celebrated at ALBA REGALIS, the vſuall place for the coronation of the Hungarian kings. *Ferdinand* by rare felicitie thus poſſeſſed of two kingdomes, whereunto he was not borne, returned into BOHEMIA, and left his deputies for the gouernment of the kingdome of HVNGARIE. Theſe were *Stephanus Bator*, whom hee appointed viceroy, with L
whom he ioyned *Paulus* biſhop of STRIGONIVM, who had alſo reuolted from king *Iohn*: and made *Berethſaxius* ſecretarie, and *Alexius Turſonus* a Morauian, treaſurer.

Ferdinãd crowned king of Hũgarie at Alba Regalis.

King *Iohn* thus miſerably diſtreſſed, and thruſt out of his kingdome by *Ferdinand*, fled to *Hieronimus Laſcus*, a man for his honourable diſcent and learned vertue, of great fame and reputation amongſt the Polonians: who glad of ſo honourable a gueſt, was more carefull of nothing, than with all poſſible kindneſſe and courteſie how to comfort him, wrapt vp in ſo many calamities with the loſſe of his kingdome: he frankely promiſed vnto him all his owne wealth (which was not ſmall) for the recouerie of his former eſtate: and that which more was, for the reuiuing of his former felicitie, the vttermoſt of his wit and deuiſe, which in the compaſſing of all great matters was accounted wonderfull. That bountifull entertainment of this poore king M
by *Laſcus*, who not altogether vnpleaſant to *Sigiſmund* king of POLONIA, although becauſe he would not offend *Ferdinand*, with whom he was ioyned in frendſhip and alience, he ſeemed to moſt men plainly to forget himſelfe in ſhewing ſo ſmall kindneſſe vnto king *Iohn*, whoſe ſiſter *Barbara* he had ſometime married: which was the cauſe that *Laſcus* forgot no point of courteſie in entertaining his gueſt, and yet the credit of *Sigiſmund* with king *Ferdinand* not toucht. But

when

A when they had ſpent almoſt a month in conſultation and debating of matters too and fro, *Laſcus* accuſtomed with his deep wit ſharply to reaſon, and aduiſedly to determine of moſt weightie cauſes, at laſt reſted vpon this one point, That ready helpe in ſo hard and deſperat a caſe was onely to be hoped for of the Turkiſh emperour *Solyman*: being of opinion, that he being a moſt mighty prince, and of an honourable diſpoſition, anſwerable to his greateneſſe, would not reject the humble prayers of an oppreſſed and exiled king; eſpecially, if that being by his mercie and power reſtored, he could be content for ſo great a benefit to hold his kingdome, as of the bountie of the *Othoman* kings. For *Laſcus* ſaw that *Solyman* (ſo great and proud an Emperour) was not ſo deſirous of kingdomes (whereof hee had ſo many as could not eaſily be reckoned, B then commanding ouer a great part of the world) as of glory and renowne, wherewith hee vnderſtood him to be wonderfully delighted aboue all other Kings of the Eaſt, naturally carried away with that windy vanitie. This counſell (as in effect it proued) was vnto king *Iohn* wholeſome and reaſonable, if a man doe but reſpect the poore eſtate of a king, ſo greatly wronged, liuing in exile; but reſpecting the Chriſtian commonweale, it was vndoubtedly moſt dangerous and lamentable for one mans particular profit to bring the whole ſtate into moſt dreadfull and horrible danger: but the ſicke minds of worldly men, liuing in ſmall hope of doing well, and at the point of deſperation, refuſe no worldly remedies, be they neuer ſo doubtfull or dangerous. And not long after, vpon this reſolution with the king, *Laſcus* deſirous by noble actions to encreaſe the honour of his name, tooke the matter vpon him, and went as embaſſadour from the C exiled king to *Solyman* to CONSTANTINOPLE. The report was, that *Sigiſmund* did not only not ſtay him, but ſecretly gaue him his ſafe conduct with letters of credence, wherein he commended him vnto the Baſſaes & other great men in *Solymans* court, deſcended of the Polonian bloud, as his faithfull and louing ſubject ſent thither vpon an extraordinary and ſpeciall embaſſage. *Laſcus* as ſoone as he was come to CONSTANTINOPLE, with wonderfull dexterity had in ſhort time woon the fauour, not of the Baſſaes only, but of the other courtiers alſo; preſenting them with ſuch gifts as might for the fineneſſe and rareneſſe thereof, rather then for the value (as he thought) be moſt acceptable and pleaſing to their wiues: for amongſt that barbarous and corrupted people nothing is better welcome than gifts, whether they proceed of ſimple good will, or other reſpect, is no great difference. Amongſt the great Baſſaes at that time of greateſt D power and authoritie, was *Luſtebeius*, or rather *Lutzis*, who had married *Solymans* ſiſter; and *Abraham* borne at PARGA, a baſe village in ACARNANIA, brought vp in the court from his childhood with *Solyman*: he was then viſier or cheefe of the Baſſaes, and keeper of the emperors ſeale, and was by his office to ſubſcribe all ſuch graunts or letters as paſſed from the emperour: by which his great place, and the ſpeciall fauour he had with *Solyman*, he in magnificence, power and authority farre exceeded all the reſt of the Baſſaes, doing whatſoeuer pleaſed himſelfe; and that with ſuch ſoueraignty and the good liking of *Solyman*, that it was commonly ſaid, hee was the commander of his thoughts. *Laſcus* thus inſinuated into the court, and oftentimes talking with the Baſſaes without an interpretour, for that he could well ſpeake the Sclauonian tongue, (the familiar ſpeech of the Turkiſh courtiers) earneſtly ſolicited the kings cauſe, wonderfully E commending him for at his firſt comming after he had ſaluted *Solyman*, and was about to haue declared the cauſe of his comming, he was after the maner of the Turkiſh court turned ouer to the Baſſaes: for *Solyman* vſed not to admit any Chriſtian to talke with him in his court. *Laſcus* requeſted of *Solyman*, by the Baſſaes, That king *Iohn* wrongfully thruſt out of his kingdome by *Ferdinand* duke of AVSTRIA, and the treaſon of certaine of the Hungarians, might by the Turkiſh power be againe reſtored vnto the kingdome of HVNGARIE, which hee would hold by homage of the Turkiſh emperour, as of right belonging vnto him, ſince the time that *Solyman* with victorious hand reuenging his wrongs and ſubduing his enemies, had by law of armes (fortune ſo judging) gained the ſame. Promiſing that king *Iohn*, who for his worthineſſe was by the generall good liking of the Hungarians lawfully choſen to be their king, and ſo after the auncient F manner of that kingdome crowned; if hee were now receiued into *Solymans* protection and by him reſtored, ſhould neuer forget ſo great a benefit, but alwaies moſt faithfully and thankfully to honour the majeſtie of *Solyman*, paying him ſuch yeerly tribute as it ſhould pleaſe him to impoſe, and to make it knowne to all men that hee was his vaſſaile. Which thing if it would pleaſe him to grant, it ſhould be no leſſe honour and glory to *Solyman* himſelfe, than profitable and comfortable vnto the diſtreſſed king. For beſide that heroicall kings are compared vnto gods, rather

Laſcus counſelleth King Iohn to craue aid of Solyman.

Laſcus goeth embaſſador for king Iohn to Solyman.

Abraham Baſſa

Laſcus his requeſt of Solyman in the behalfe of K. Iohn.

rather for giuing than receiuing: it was easie to be seen, how greatly it did concerne the profit of G
the *Othoman* kings to be neighboured with a weake and tributarie king, rather than with *Ferdinand*, a prince of great power, lately chosen king of BOHEMIA, supported by the strength of his brother *Charles* the emperour, commaunding ouer the warlike nation of the Germanes; which was as much difference as was betwixt the maintenance of a continuall heauie warre vpon his borders, and the safe enioying of a most assured peace. Beside that, it concerned the Turks to beware, that such things as they had got by the sword, they should also by the sword defend; and not to suffer any one to grow greater than the rest in riches and power. For it might so fall out, that *Charles*, growne to be a prince of mightie power, might draw the rest of the Christian princes to ioyne with him in the common cause of the Christian religion, and in that quarrell, as the Christian kings of EVROPE had in former time done, with vnited forces to seeke to recouer a- H
gaine what they had before lost: whose force it would be hard to withstand. These things being sharpely deliuered, and by the Bassaes againe reported to *Solyman*, who standing at a secret window, had before heard them as they were by *Lascus* vnto the Bassaes declared; it was no great labour to persuade the Turkish emperour, of himselfe desirous of glorie and soueraignetie, againe
Solyman granteth Lascus his request. to vndertake the Hungarian warre, and to graunt king *Iohn* his request, promising according to the successe of the victorie, to giue him that he desired, so that he would faithfully performe what he had promised, and not shew himselfe therefore vnthankfull.

In the meane time, *Ferdinand* vpon great reason thinking it necessarie by all meanes possible to confirme himselfe in possession of the kingdome of HVNGARIE: and fearing no force but the Turks, determined to proue *Solymans* disposition, and to seeke for his friendship; hoping by I
reasonable means to compasse it, by shewing vnto the barbarous prince (not altogether abhorring from the commendation of iustice) his antient title and claime, and that he was by the anti-
Ferdinand sendeth an embassador to Solyman. ent lawes of the countrey right heire thereof: thinking that *Solyman* hauing obtained so many victories, and ruling ouer so many kingdomes, would now at length giue himselfe to peace, as a man contented with his glorie alreadie gotten. His desire was, to be receiued into his friendship, and to ioine with him in league vpon the same conditions which *Ladislaus* & his son *Lewes* had for certaine yeares before obtained of the *Othoman* kings, and *Sigismund* king of POLONIA then also with like quietnesse enioyed. Wherefore hauing found out a fit man, whom he might send vpon this embassage to CONSTANTINOPLE, one *Ioannes Oberdanscus*, a Hungarian, he furnished him accordingly, and gaue him gifts, such as hee thought good to bestow vpon the K
great Bassaes. But when *Oberdanscus* was come vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, he found *Solyman* harder to be entreated than he had before hoped, and the Bassaes altogether vnwilling to heare of any league: for although he was courteously receiued of *Solyman*, and most patiently heard, whilest he both eloquently and discreetly before the great Bassaes, deliuered his embassage; yet in the shutting vp of all, he receiued no more but a proud and insolent answere: for *Solyman* said, it was farre from the manner of his aunce stors, to receiue them into grace and fauour which had
Solymans answeer to Ferdinands embassadour. done iniurie vnto the *Othoman* name: wherefore that *Ferdinand* had done impudently to inuade another mans kingdome, and to thinke to hold it to himselfe: for as much as his old title and claime which he stood so much vpon, was altogether extinguished and lost by law of arms, L
by his late victorie against king *Lewes*: for which causes hee adiudged him vnworthy of his friendship and fauour, purposing sharpely to reuenge the wrong he had receiued, and proclaiming warre to come againe into HVNGARIE with such a power as should be sufficient to inuade *Ferdinand* either in AVSTRIA or GERMANIE. Wherefore in stead of friendship and league, he denounced vnto him all the calamities of warre: and so commaunded the embassadour with speed to depart from CONSTANTINOPLE. But *Oberdanscus* when hee was come backe againe as farre as VIENNA, and had there told the kings lieutenants, of the threatning words of *Solyman*, and that he would shortly come thither with his armie, he was not of any of them beleeued, but reputed for a vaine man. Wherefore to shun the hatred of them which mistooke truth for falshood, he made hast to come vnto *Ferdinand*, who was then at SPIRES, la- M
bouring for voices to further his sute, for that at the next assemblie of the states of the empire, which was then at hand for the coronation of his brother *Charles*, he himselfe as he well hoped was to be chosen king of the Romanes. The newes brought by *Oberdanscus*, did not a little trouble king *Ferdinand*, foreseeing as it were what would happen: for that the Turkish tyrant vsed not lightly to breake such promises, but to performe them to the vttermost: and that more

encreased

A increaſed his care, he knew he ſhould come in euill time to craue help of the Germaines, for the defence of his kingdome in HVNGARIE againſt ſo mightie an enemie, eſpecially his brother *Charles* the emperour being buſied in his warres in ITALIE, and he himſelfe wanting money, the only means to raiſe an armie to withſtand the Turke. The Spring now come, and all things 1529
freſh and greene; *Solyman* altering nothing of his former determination, hauing leuied an armie *Soyman commeth into Hungarie with a great army.*
of an hundred and fiftie thouſand men, ſet forward from HADRIANOPLE, his Europeian horſemen going before him conducted by *Abraham* the great Baſſa and *Achomates, Michael-ogli* Generall of the Acanzij or voluntarie horſemen: and his Aſian ſouldiours led by *Becrambeius Baſſa* following after him: he himſelfe with his Ianizaries and ſouldiours of the court keeping in
B the middle. And marching on this ſort came in fifteene daies to BELGRADE, where king *Iohn* *King Iohn commeth to Soyman at Belgrade.*
accompanied with *Laſcus* and ſuch of the Hungarian nobilitie as tooke his part came vnto him, of purpoſe to make himſelfe knowne vnto him which was to protect him; and doing him all the honour he poſſibly could, to requeſt him to proceed to reuenge his quarrell. *Solyman* with graue & yet friendly countenance, raiſing himſelfe a little from the cuſhion wheron he ſat, gaue him his right hand, proteſting, That nothing could happen vnto him better, or that he more deſired of God, than to be able to relieue diſtreſſed princes, eſpecially ſuch as were wrongfully oppreſſed by his enemies: wherefore he willed him to be of good comfort, promiſing of his bountie frankly to beſtow vpon him whatſoeuer he ſhould in that warre win with the ſword from the enemie. King *Iohn* obtained this rare fauour of *Solyman* by the earneſt mediation of
C *Abraham* the commaunding Baſſa; whom he had before at CONSTANTINOPLE by his embaſſadour *Laſcus* ſo woon with gifts and requeſts, that he thorowly tooke vpon him the defence of the kings cauſe: wherein *Laſcus* was eſpecially holpen by *Aloyſius Grittus* the Duke of VENICE his ſonne, who then followed the Turkes camp, and was for his fathers ſake and the great ſuffiiciencie he held himſelfe, had in great reputation amongſt the Turks; and in ſuch fauor with *Abraham* who did all in all with *Solyman*, that he could perſuade him to any thing he would. For this *Aloyſius Grittus*, born and brought vp in CONSTANTINOPLE, and wonderfull eloquent in the Turkiſh tongue, had by the honourable carriage of himſelfe, and the great port he kept in his houſe, ſo thorowly poſſeſſed *Abraham* (that all commanded) that he would manie times bring *Solyman* himſelfe ouer the hauen to PERA, to ſolace himſelfe in *Grittus* his
D pleaſant gardens and banquetting houſes, which he had there moſt ſumptuouſly made after the Italian manner: whereby to his great profit he obtained to be the chiefeſt man in receiuing of the Turkes cuſtomes.

The fame of *Solymans* comming directly from BELGRADE to BVDA, ſo terrified the citiſens of BVDA, that they almoſt all forſooke the citie and fled vnto other places further off, ſome to STRIGONIVM, ſome to ALBA REGALIS, ſome to POSSONIVM: ſo that at his firſt com- *Solyman entreth Buda without reſiſtance, and beſiegeth the caſtle.*
ming he entered the citie (almoſt deſolate) without any reſiſtance: the caſtle holden by a garriſon of Germans, he commaunded to be beſieged. The captaine of the caſtle was one *Thomas Nadaſtus*, a man of great account among the Huugarians, both for the honour of his houſe and his qualities anſwerable to the ſame, graced with ſingular learning: He perceiued his ſouldiors diſ-
E maied with the ſight of ſo great an armie and willing to ſurrender vp the caſtle, as (beſeemed a valiant captaine) forbad his ſouldiours to haue any talke with the enemie, commanded the great artillerie to be bent and diſcharged vpon the Turkes: and ſeeing his ſouldiours ſlack and timorous, reproued them of cowardiſe and treaſon, threatning them with ſhamefull death if they did not hold out the ſiege to the vttermoſt, and ſhew themſelues valiant men, both for the honour of their countrey, and of king *Ferdinand* whoſe pay they receiued, and of whoſe bountie they were to expect rewards and preferments anſwerable to their deſerts. But they miſdoubting by the running too and fro of the Turks, that the caſtle was vndermined; and ſmelling, or at leaſtwiſe imagining themſelues to ſmell the ſent of the gunpouder, which they ſuppoſed to be in the mine, and doubting to be preſently blowne vp; were ſtruck with ſuch a ſudden feare, that neither the feare of future puniſhment, neither the ſhame of ſo foule a fact, nor the reuerence of ſo worthie a captain could ſtay them, but that they would needs without further delay deliuer vp the caſtle: which when they could by no means perſuade the reſolute captaine to conſent vnto, but that he ſtill with ſterne countenance exclaimed againſt their cowardiſe and treaſon, they laid hands vpon him, and bound him hand and foot, & ſo preſently concluded with the enemie to yeeld vnto him the caſtle, ſo that they might in ſafetie depart thence with bag and baggage: which their

requeſt

requeſt *Solyman* graunted. But when the garriſon ſouldiours (in number about ſeuen hundred) G
were about to depart with their baggage towards POSSONIVM, as was before agreed; and the
Ianizaries comming into the caſtle, hauing looſed the captaine, were about to let him go alſo:
Solyman aduertiſed of the trecherie of the garriſon ſouldiors, and of the fidelitie of the captain,
changing his mind, iudged ſuch villanous minded men vnworthie of his mercie, & in deteſtat-
tion of their perfidious dealing with their captaine, gaue them all to his Ianizaries to be ſlaine:
Solyman contrarieto hu promiſe cauſeth the garriſon ſoulaiers after they had deliuered the caſtle to bee ſlaine.
but to the captaine himſelfe he offered honourable intertainment, which when he refuſed, *Soly-*
man courteouſly ſent him away; holpen therein by the commendation of king *Iohn*, although
his ſiſter was married to *Stephanus Maylat* his deadly enemie. Which bloudie execution done
by the commaundement of the bloudie tyrant, the Turks ſaid was not only lawfully done, but H
alſo to the immortall glorie of his name in the execution of iuſtice: which might peraduenture
ſeeme reaſonable, if the perpetuall hatred of that moſt barbarous nation againſt the Chriſtians
gaue not iuſt occaſion of ſuſpect, that it proceeded rather of their auncient malice than of any
regard of iuſtice. For why ſhould the Germans, who had offended to his great good, and there-
fore obtained his ſafe conduct, be thought worthie of ſo cruell death? when as *Solyman* himſelfe
in puniſhing the periurie of another, ran into wilfull periurie himſelfe; peruerting the commen-
dation of iuſtice which he ſo much deſired, by his moſt bloudie and vniuſt ſentence.

BVDA the chiefe citie of HVNGARIE thus taken by *Solyman*, he reſolued forthwith to be-
ſiege VIENNA the chiefe citie of AVSTRIA: in good hope, that by the carriage away of that,
the other cities of leſſe ſtrength both of HVNGRIE and AVSTRIA would without any reſi- I
ſtance be yeelded vnto him. Wherefore he ſent before him *Achomates* with the voluntarie
horſemen, who according to the manner of the Turkiſh warres, running thorow the heart of
HVNGARY, and entring with fire and ſword into AVSTRIA, paſſed by VIENNA, miſerably
Auſtria ſpoiled by the Turks.
burning and deſtroying the countrie before him as farre as LYNTZ. The poore people not
knowing where to hide themſelues from the furie of their enemies, nor of whom to craue helpe,
fled as men and women diſmaied, carrying with them their beloued children, the vnfortunat
pledges of their loue, and what elſe they could, as things ſaued out of the middeſt of the fire.
For whatſoeuer fell into the enemies hand, was loſt without recure: the old men were ſlain, the
young men led away into captiuitie, women rauiſhed before their huſbands faces, & afterwards
ſlaine with their children, young infants were ript out of their mothers wombs, and others ta- K
ken from their breaſts were cut in pieces, or elſe thruſt vpon ſharpe ſtakes, yeelding vp againe
that breath which they had but a little before receiued; with many other incredible cruelties,
which were then by the mercileſſe enemie committed. *Solyman* himſelfe ſhortly after followed
theſe forerunners, and ſetting forward with all his armie from BVDA towards VIENNA, by the
Altenburge taken.
way tooke the caſtle of ALTENBVRGE, whether by force or compoſition, is diuerſly reported:
of the garriſon ſouldiors there placed by king *Ferdinand*, he reſerued three hundred Bohemians,
whom he commaunded to follow his campe. He alſo aſſaulted the little citie of NEAPOLIS
ſeuen times in one day, and was as often repulſed: but being loath to ſpend any longer time
Solyman commeth to Vienna
about a towne of ſo ſmall importance, he forſooke that, and held on his way to VIENNA, whi-
ther he came about the ſix and twentieth day of September, and incamped in fiue places round L
about the citie, with ſuch a world of people, that vnto them which viewed his campe from the
higheſt tower in VIENNA, it ſeemed that the ground vvas for the ſpace of eight miles all couered
with the multitude of his tents and people. King *Ferdinand*, who from the time that he had
by his embaſſador *Oberdanſcus* receiued the hard anſwere from *Solyman*, alwaies ſtood in doubt
of his comming; had beſide his own forces (which were not great to oppoſe againſt ſo mightie
an enemie) craued aid of the Chriſtian princes his neighbours, eſpecially of the princes of the
empire: who graunting him aid againſt the common enemie, appointed *Fredericke* countie
Palatine of RHENE and duke of BAVARIA, Generall of their forces. But whileſt the Germans
after their manner, ſlowly ſet forward, and made leſſe haſt than the greatneſſe of the preſent dan-
ger required; *Solyman* comming in the meane time, had ſo belaied the citie, that it was not poſ- M
ſible for the duke *Frederick* by any meanes to get into it, but was glad to ſtay with his armie at
CHREMSE about twelue miles from VIENNA. A few daies before by good hap, vpon the re-
port of the loſſe of BVDA, twentie thouſand ſouldiers horſemen and foot out of diuers coun-
tries, were in good time come to VIENNA: amongſt theſe, the cheefe commaunders was *Phi-*
lip the Paulſgraue, duke *Fredericks* nephew (a young gentleman of great courage and hope,

ſent

A sent thither but a little before with a few companies of horsemen and footmen by *Fredericke* his vncle, who was comming after with a greater power himselfe, but was now shut out of the citie by *Solyman*) *Nicholaus* countie of SALMA, the L. *William Rogendorff*, steward of the kings houshold, *Ioannes Cazzianer*, a noble man of CROATIA, and afterwards gouernour of VIENNA: and next vnto them *Nicholaus Turrianus*, *Ioannes Hardecius*, *Leonardus Velsius*, *Hector Ramsack*, men both for their birth and valour of great account amongst the Germanes. The citie of VIENNA as it was of some good strength toward the North, by reason of Danubius, so in other places it was at that time neither by art nor nature strong. The ditches, such as they were, were altogether drie, and easie to be passed ouer: the wals of bricke, built round without any flankers, and neither high nor thicke, but after the antient simple manner of fortification of ci-

Vienna badly fortified.

B ties: for before that time neither had king *Ferdinand*, fearing no enemie, neither they of VIENNA who had not of many yeares seene an enemie, had any care to fortifie the citie: but as men altogether buried in securitie, and nothing fearing the comming of so mightie an enemie (although they were thereof before admonished by *Oberdanscus*) had not so much as cast vp any rampire or bulwarke, more than at the gate of CARINTHIA, whereon they might conueniently place their great Ordinance: so that of a hundred great pieces, and three hundred others of lesse charge, which might haue wonderfully annoyed the enemie, a great part serued to no vse, for want of conuenient place to mount them vpon. Yet as the sudden comming of the enemie and the shortnesse of the time gaue leaue, such bulwarkes as they could vpon the suddaine, they cast

C vp, and planted their ordinance theron. The citie was diuided into diuers quarters, and to euery part a strong garrison appointed for defence thereof, all the gates of the citie were mured vp, except such as were of purpose reserued to sallie out at. Now had *Abraham* the great Bassa encamped himselfe vpon a high hill, where stood a ruinous castle, from whence he might ouerlooke all the citie, yet so, as that he lay out of the danger of gunshot. *Becrambeius*, *Solymans* great commaunder in ASIA, lay at the gate called PVRGATORIA, neere the church of S. *Viderich*. In the third campe towards the rising of the hills, lay *Michael Ogli*, towards the Church of S. *Vitus*. At the Scottish gate towards Danubius, lay the Asapi, with diuers companies of the Ianizaries: which with shot out of their trenches, suffered no man to appeare vpon the wals in that quarter without most manifest danger, and powred such showers of arrowes ouer the wals into the citie, as if they had fallen out of the cloudes; that hardly could any man stirre in the ci-

D tie vnarmed, but he was forthwith wounded. *Solyman* himselfe lay neere vnto S. *Markes* church, compassed about with the Ianizaries and other souldiors of the court, defended also with the bricke wals of the gardens thereabouts. Whilest the Turkes were thus incamping themselues, the Christian defendants oftentimes fortunatly sallied out vpon them, and slew many of them. In one of which sallies *Wolfgangus Hagen* a valiant captaine, with certaine old souldiours of the Spaniards was slaine, fighting most valiantly at the gates of the castle: and in another skirmish *Christophorus Zetlitz* a man of great courage, sallying out of the citie with fiue hundred horsemen, euen vnto the enemies trenches, was intercepted and taken with six others of his compa-

nie; who were all compelled by the Turks to carrie so many heads of their slain fellowes vpon poles, and so presented vnto *Solyman*: of whom he enquired many things as well concerning

E *Ferdinand* himselfe, and where he was, as concerning the princes which had the charge of the citie, whether they were in hope to defend the same against his mightie power or not. Whereunto *Christopherus* aptly and wisely answered, although not altogether so truly, That king *Ferdinand* lay not farre off at the citie of LINTZ, expecting the assembly of a great armie: and that the princes of GERMANIE, BOHEMIA, MORAVIA, and of diuers other places were comming vnto him, with great aid; so that if he would but stay a little vntill his forces were come together, he should then see whether of them were of greater strength and power: for as much as it would not be long before the king would come and giue him battell: As for the princes in the citie, he said he knew no more of their minds, but that both they and all the souldiours from the

F highest to the lowest, had solemnely sworne to defend the citie, and not to giue it ouer vnto the last man, reposing their hope not in the wals and fortresses thereof, but in their weapons and valour, being men of great resolution, and not easily to be vanquished or discouraged. With which answere although *Solyman* was a little moued, yet dissembling his present heat, said, he had hetherto made war against diuers nations, and alwaies had the victorie, whereof he doubted not now also: But as for him, and the others taken with him, they knew they were in his power to

saue

Solyman releaseth the Christian princes without ransome.

ſaue or kill at his pleaſure: Yet to make them know that he could ſhew mercie vnto his vanquiſhed enemies, he frankely graunted them their liues and libertie: charging them, that after they were again returned into the citie, they ſhould in his name wiſh the defendants of themſelues to yeeld vp the citie, which it was impoſſible for them long to defend againſt his mightie power, which neither the ſtrong citie of BELGRADE, nor the famous citie of the RHODES were able to withſtand; and to accept of ſuch reaſonable conditions as he ſhould graunt vnto them, promiſing, that amongſt other things proceeding of his infinit bountie, hee would take order, that they ſhould in ſafetie depart thence with bag and baggage: in which doing they ſhould well prouide for the ſafetie of themſelues and of their goods by flying vnto his mercie in time, before the furie of the warre was growne to further extremitie: all which it would be too late to expect after the victorie, when nothing was to be hoped for but cruell death, murder, and miſerable deſtruction. Wherefore it were good for them well to conſider of the matter, and not fooliſhly to refuſe that was now frankely offered them of mercie, which they ſhould not afterwards obtaine with any prayers or teares: for why, he was reſolutely ſet downe (as he ſaid) not to depart thence before he had taken the citie. When he had thus ſchooled them, he gaue vnto euery one of them three Hungarian duckats, & ſo ſent them away. They being receiued into the citie with great ioy, made relation vnto the princes and great captaines of all the threatning and proud ſpeeches of the Turkiſh tyrant: which they tooke in ſuch diſdain, that they would not vouchſafe to returne him any anſwere. *Solyman* not a little diſpleaſed, that his great words were ſo lightly regarded, by way of deriſion ſent word vnto the citie, That if they wanted helpe, he would ſend them the three hundred Bohemians, whom he tooke in the caſtle of ALTENBVRGE: to whom anſwere was returned by them of the citie, That they needed no helpe from him, wherefore he might diſpoſe of his priſoners as he thought good. By this, *Solyman* perceiued, that VIENNA was not to be woon with words, nor the defendants to be diſcouraged with great lookes: wherfore he begun to vſe his focre, & with ſuch ordinance as he had brought with him, to batter the wals: which becauſe it was not great, but fitter for ſeruice in field than for batterie, did not much more harme than to beat downe the battlements and ſuch little ſtandings, made of timber and bourds in manner of galleries, hanging here & there ouer the wall, for the ſmall ſhot to play out of, a ſimple deuiſe in ſtead of flankers. His great artillerie prouided for batterie was comming vp the riuer of Danubius, which he daily looked for: but by good hap, *Wolfgangus Hoder*, a forward captaine, hearing of the Turkes comming vp the riuer, went out of POSSONIVM with certaine ſmall veſſels well appointed: and meeting with the Turks, ſet vpon them with ſuch courage and reſolution that he ſlew many of them, and ſuncke diuers of their boats and pinnaces, amongſt whom were they which were bringing vp *Solymans* great peeces for batterie to VIENNA: which was there all ſuncke in the riuer, with the boats that brought it. By this good ſeruice, *Solyman* was diſappointed of his great artillerie, and the citie deliuered of a great danger. So *Wolfgangus* hauing made great ſpoile amongſt the Turkss, and loſt ſome few men, returned with victorie to POSSONIVM. Yet another part of the Turkes fleet comming vp to VIENNA, at the firſt comming brake downe all the bridges: for a little aboue the citie, the riuer of Danubius deuiding his channell, maketh diuers Iſlands, which by ſundrie bridges are ioyned together, ouer which lieth the way from AVSTRIA vnto the citie. This fleet ſo kept the paſſage, that no man could without danger either by water or by land goe in or out of the citie. *Solyman* hauing loſt all his peeces for batterie, & ſeeing how little he preuailed with his field peeces, fell to vndermining of the citie, hoping by that meanes to ouerthrow the wals, and to make a way for his men to enter. This worke, as the Turkes cheefe hope, was with wonderfull labour and diligence attempted in fifteene ſundrie places: which was not ſo ſecretly done, but that it was by drums laied vpon the ground, by baſons filled with water, and ſounds made into the earth, perceiued by the defendants; and ſo with countermines met withall, that moſt part of thoſe works were vtterly fruſtrated, and in them eight thouſand of his Turkes either ſlaine or buried quicke.

Eight thouſand Turkes loſt in the mines.

Solyman to buſie the defendants that they ſhould not ſo perfectly diſcouer his mines, diuided his armie into foure parts, appointing thē orderly to ſucceed one after another in giuing alaroms to the towne, that filling their eares with continuall noiſe, he might keepe them alwaies occupied. In the middeſt of which hurly burly his workes in the mines went forward with all ſpeed poſſible, neither was he in that his expectation deceiued: for one of the mines brought to perfection vnperceiued by the defendants, and ſuddenly blowne vp, ſhooke and ouerthrew a great

The wals of Vienna blown vp.

part

A part of the wall neere vnto the gate which leadeth towards CARINTHIA; whereat the Turkes gaue a great ſhout as if the citie had now been taken, and withall couragiouſly ſtepping forward preſſed in on all ſides, by the ruines of the wall to haue entered the breach, charging the defendants with their ſmall ſhot and Turkie arrowes as thicke as haile. Who on the contrarie part like reſolute men ſtood in the face of the breach, with more aſſurance than the wall it ſelfe, receiuing them with deadly ſhot and puſh of pike, in ſuch furious manner, that the Turks for all their multitude, vnable longer to maintaine the aſſault, began to retire. Which thing *Solyman* perceiuing, ſent in new ſupplies, and ſo renewed the aſſault before giuen ouer, but with no better ſucceſſe than before: for hauing receiued a great ouerthrow, as men forgetting both duetie and
B martiall diſcipline, they retired, not expecting any ſigne of retrait. At this aſſault ſo many of the Turkes were ſlaine, that the ground neere vnto the towne lay couered, and the ditches filled with their dead bodies. Not long after, the wall was blowne vp in two places more ouer against S. *Clares* church; by which breach being not verie great, the Turks ſeeking to haue entred, made a bloudie fight with the Germains which defended that place, which they ſought ſo deſperatly to haue entred, that without regard they thruſt one another vpon the points of their enemies weapons: who gliſtering in good armor, readily receiued them being for moſt part naked men, and ſlew them without number, and ſo enforced them againe diſorderly to retire, hauing before filled both the breaches with their dead carkaſes. Three daies after enſued a moſt cruell fight, when as another part of the wall (neere vnto the gate of CARINTHIA, and not farre from the
C firſt breach) was ſo ſuddenly ouerthrowne, that the Turkes thorow the new made breach ſeeing the Chriſtians as they ſtood readie to come to the defence thereof; and likewiſe the Chriſtians them, now approching; for eagerneſſe and haſt on both ſides, threw away their pieces and bowes, and came to handie blowes in the middle of the breach; the Turkes with their ſcimiters, and the Germaines with their long ſwords. At which times, as the Chriſtian captaines encouraged their ſouldiers with cheerfull perſuaſions: ſo the Turkiſh Commaunders enforced forward their Turkes both with words and wounds. The aſſault began ſo terrible, that it was thought a more fierce and deadly fight was neuer ſeene from the beginning of the world: which was with greater reſolution maintained by the Turkes, for that many of their moſt valiant horſemen forſaking their horſes, thruſt in with their targets and ſcimiters, or elſe with their launces amongſt
D the Ianizaries and other footmen, and there fought moſt deſperatly. At laſt, after this furious fight had endured by the ſpace of three houres, and many of the Turkes beſt captaines and ſouldiers lay dead vpon the ground by heapes; the Turks ſeeing no hope to preuaile, gaue ouer the aſſault, and retired to their campe.

The Turkes repulſed from the breach.

A moſt terrible aſſault.

The Turkes the third time repulſed.

Long and tedious it were to recount euerie aſſault giuen during the time of that dreadfull ſiege, with euerie particuler accident not vnworthie the remembrance, which for breuitie I wittingly paſſe ouer. Yet amongſt the reſt (the moſt valiant leader, though afterwards vnfortunat) the Lo. *William Rogendorffe* is not to be forgotten, who oftentimes perceiuing many of the Turkes ſtragling diſorderly abroad in the countrey, one day vpon the ſudden ſallied out vpon them with certaine troupes of horſemen, with ſuch violence, that at the firſt onſet he ouerthrew
E them; and hauing them in chaſe, did ſuch ſpeedie execution, that of 5300, ſcarcely 140 eſcaped his hands: after which time his name became terrible vnto the Turks. *Solyman* was exceedingly grieued with the often and bloudy aſſaults by him in vaine giuen to the citie, but purpoſing now to proue the laſt and vttermoſt of all his forces, he called vnto him the chiefe commaunders of his armie, whom at the firſt he ſharply reproued as men of no courage, which being many times as good as in poſſeſſion of the victorie, had moſt cowardly contrarie to the manner of that victorious nation, turned their backes vpon their enemies, in the breaches alreadie halfe woon: Wherefore he willed them to plucke vp their hearts, and to make all things readie for a new aſſault, wherein hee expected that they ſhould with couragious forwardneſſe and reſolution, recompence their late cowardiſe: for why he accounted it a great diſhonour to forſake the ſiege
F begun; wherefore they ſhould reſolue the next day as victorious conquerors to take the citie, or elſe there as faint-hearted cowards to end their daies. The next day after this heauie charge giuen, which was the fifteenth of October, the great Commaunders of the Turkes armie with all their forces aſſailed the citie, thruſting their men into the breaches by heapes, as if they would, if no way elſe, yet with verie multitude (if it had beene poſſible) haue diſcouraged or ouerborne the Chriſtians: they were come to handie blowes, and the fight was in euery place moſt terri-

The La. William Rogendorffe.

Vienna againe aſſaulted.

ble, the Christian defendants stil repulsing them with greater courage than they were able to assaile them. Besides that, to the great aduantage of the defendants, many pieces of their great ordinance skilfully mounted in places most conuenient, and continually discharged amongst the thickest of their enemies as they pressed on, made such slaughter amongst them, and so cut them off, that being thorowly discouraged, they shrunke backe, and could not by any threats or commaund of their captaines be thrust forward, chusing rather to be slaine of their owne captaines (as some of them were) than to be rent in sunder with the murthering shot of the Christians. So that the captaines seeing now no other remedie, gaue ouer the assault and retired, leauing behind them many thousands of their dead Turkes in the towne ditches. G

The Turkes repulsed.

The next day after this assault, *Solyman* despairing to win the citie, and fearing the comming of king *Ferdinand* and the countie *Palatine* with a strong armie, as it had been to him reported, H considering also that Winter was now comming fast on, determined to raise his siege: and to colour the dishonour thereof, he sent certaine of the chiefe prisoners which he had taken, richly apparelled with their purses full of money into the citie, to tell the captaines that he came not with purpose either to besiege or take the citie, but to reuenge the wrongs done vnto him by his enemie king *Ferdinand*, and to haue fought a battell with him for the kingdome of HVNGARIE: whom for as much as he could not draw vnto VIENNA, he would remoue thence to seeke for him, as his capitall enemie: Wherefore they should do well to yeeld themselues, which if they would, he promised not to enter their citie, but to receiue both the citizens and souldiours into his protection, reseruing vnto them their liues and goods with perpetuall freedome. Which his offer the defendants scornfully refused, as proceeding of meere desperation. The next night fol- I lowing *Solyman* with more than barbarous crueltie, caused all the prisoners in his armie to be slaine, which pitifull outcries was of the souldiors heard into the citie, not knowing what the matter should be, vntill that the next day after the departure of the enemie they found the dead bodies of men, women, and children in all places of the campe wallowed in their owne bloud, a most lamentable spectacle to behold. *Solyman* purposing to forsake the siege, caused *Abraham* the great Bassa to shew himselfe in order of battell, as if he would haue giuen a fresh assault: in the meane time he himselfe rose vpon the suddaine with the rest of his armie, and returned towards BVDA in such hast, that he neither put any garrison into such places as he had taken, neither demanded of them any tribute. After whom the Bassa followed, keeping himselfe a daies iourney behind him: and so in fiue daies he arriued with all his armie at BVDA, 32 Germaine K miles from VIENNA.

Solyman raiseth his siege.

This siege was giuen ouer by *Solyman* about the sixteenth of October, wherein he is reported to haue lost eightie thousand men, amongst whom was his great lieutenant of ASIA, with many other of his forward captains aud best souldiors. Of the defendants few or none of name were lost, but of the countrie people it is supposed that there was aboue sixtie thousand slaine, and caried away into captiuitie: all the countrie about VIENNA was miserably spoiled, all their trees and vines being by the Turks cut down to the ground. *Solyman* according to his promise, restored BVDA vnto king *Iohn*, who by solemne writing acknowledged himselfe his vassaile, and to hold the kingdome of HVNGARIE of him as his lord and soueraigne. Vnto him *Solyman* ioy- L ned *Aloysius Grittus* as his legat, to help him to prouide such things as should be needful for the defence of that kingdome.

30000 Turkes lost at the siege of Vienna.

Solyman restoreth the kingdome of Hungarie to king Iohn.

It happened one day whilest *Solyman* lay at BVDA, and had giuen king *Iohn* with diuers of the nobilitie of HVNGARIE accesse into his pauillion, that he fell earnestly in hand with king *Iohn* to pardon *Paulus* bishop of STRIGONIVM, and *Petrus Perenus*, who had taken part with king *Ferdinand*, and to receiue them into his former fauour: which men king *Iohn* could in no case like of, because that they as traitors vnto their prince and countrie, forgetting their faith and oath, had performed the like duetie vnto *Ferdinand*, as they had but a little before done vnto him at the time of his coronation: wherein he shewing himselfe vnwilling to be intreated, said, That their mutable minds fraught with infidelity, would neuer contain themselues within the bounds M of loyaltie, but find occasion to commit some fowler treason than they had before: whereunto *Solyman* straining his voice a little as one somewhat moued, most honourably replied: *Can any thing* (said he) *happen vnto thee in this life better or more honourable, than if by thy kindnesse thine enemies shall bee of all men accounted ingratfull, that is to say, men noted with eternall infamie: when as in thy selfe the commendation of a good and courteous prince shall for euer remaine?* And so not

The honourable saying of Solyman to K. Iohn.

long

A long after fearing the cold of Winter then approching, dangerous for his beasts for cariage, especially his camels bred & brought vp in the hot countries of Asia, he set forward to Belgrade, and so trauelling through Thracia returned to Constantinople.

All this while that *Solyman* thus raged in Hvngarie and Avstria, *Charles* the emperour lately reconciled to *Clement* the seuenth of that name, then bishop of Rome, with a strong armie besieged Florence, by his lieutenant *Daualus* (who might haue done much against the Turks, if he had been so well imployed) labouring by all meanes to represse the libertie of the citizens, wherunto they had but a little before aspired, and to bring them againe vnder the subiection of the familie of *Medices*, wherof *Clement* was the chiefe. Which thing with much adoe he
B brought to passe, inuesting *Alexander* the bishops nephew in the dukedome of Florence, and afterward giuing him his base daughter in marriage; forgetting his brother *Ferdinand* in the meane time, thrust out of the kingdome of Hvngarie by *Solyman*, and the dukedome of Avstria wasted by the Turkes, with the citie of Vienna in danger to haue been lost. Which common calamities might well haue moued both the emperour and the bishop, to haue had more regard of, than by oppressing the libertie of one free citie to seeke how to serue their owne priuat respects.

1530

The yeare following, which was 1530, *Solyman* with great solemnitie and triumph, after the Turkish maner, circumcised three of his sonnes, *Mustapha*, *Muhamet*, and *Selymus*, at Constantinople. *Solyman circumciseth his three sonnes.*

C *Solyman* hardly digesting the dishonour he had before receiued at Vienna, and oftentimes solicited by king *Iohn* for aid against *Ferdinand*, who with greater stomacke than power ceased not continually to molest him: but most of all prickt forward with the insatiable desire of inlarging his empire, after the manner of the *Othoman* kings, accounting his neighbour princes alwaies his enemies, and their dominions the obiects of his victories, and spoile for his souldiors; raised such an armie as for the greatnesse thereof might worthily haue beene a terrour vnto the world: Not so much purposing the protection of king *Iohn*, which he in shew most pretended; neither the siege of Vienna, as was commonly bruted; as the conquering of Avstria, Carinthia, Croatia, Stiria, and the rest of king *Ferdinands* dominions, and so afterwards of all Germanie. For the accomplishment whereof, he had in his immoderat desired prefined
D vnto himselfe the space of three yeres, which the great monarchs of Rome could not performe in more than so many hundreds. It was commonly reported that the proud tyrant would many times say, That whatsoeuer belonged vnto the empire of Rome, was of right his, for as much as he was rightfully possessed both of the imperiall seat and scepter of *Constantine* the great Commaunder of the world, which his great grandfather *Mahomet* had by law of armes woon from *Constantine* the late Christian emperour, whom he slew at Constantinople. And therfore both in his common talke and writings, as oft as he had occasion to make any mention of *Charles* the emperor, he would proudly and as it were in disdaine terme him by the name of the king of Spaine, but neuer by the name of emperour.

The discord of the Christian princes, and the great troubles euen then arising in Germanie
E about matters of religion, did not a little incourage the barbarous tyrant to take in hand this great expedition. King *Ferdinand* certainly aduertised that *Solyman* was in person himselfe setting forward with his huge armie, sent vnto him three embassadors; whereof *Leonardus Negarola* a noble gentleman, well learned, and skilfull in diuers languages, was chiefe, with rich presents and reasonable offers to intreat with him for peace. Who meeting him vpon the borders of Servia, were by him courteously receiued, and patiently heard: yet obtained of him no other answere, but that they should follow his campe, and attend his further pleasure. The report whereof, brought a generall feare vpon all Germanie, but especially them of Avstria, in whose fresh remembrance as yet remained the bleeding wounds of their countrie, their brethren and friends slaine, their wiues and children led away into captiuitie, their goods and cattel
F lost, their houses and fields burnt, and thousands of other grieuous calamities which they had endured in the late inuasion of the Turkes. *Charles* the emperour had in verie good time (a little before) for a while well appeased the discention then arising in Germanie about matters of religion, putting them in hope of a free and generall Counsell to be holden for the deciding of all such matters: & in a great assemblie of the states of the empire holden at Ratisbone, shewing the greatnesse of the imminent danger, so puissant an enemie threatning vnto them all the

King Ferdinand sendeth embassadors to Solyman

calamities of warre, with the manifold miſchiefe like to enſue, if they ſhould in ſo vnfit time G
fall at variance amongſt themſelues: offering with great reſolution to goe in perſon himſelfe
with all his old expert ſouldiors in defence of the common Chriſtian cauſe, ſo much preuailed
with the princes of the empire, and the embaſſadours of the free eſtates, that they highly com-
mended his forwardneſſe; and all other matters for that time ſet apart, agreed all with one con-
ſent at a prefixed day to ſend vnto VIENNA ſuch warlike forces as they had in any time before
ſet forth, for the defence of the Chriſtian religion, and the maieſtie of the empire. Whereupon
he wrot vnto *Alphonſius Vaſtius* (his Lieutenant Generall in ITALIE, and one of the greateſt
captaines of that age) that he ſhould without delay call together the old captaines, and to leuie
ſo many companies of harquebuſiers as they poſſibly could; and with them and the Spaniſh
The preparation of Charles the emperour againſt Solyman ſouldiors to repaire forthwith vnto him into AVSTRIA. He alſo enioyned *Andreas Auria*, H
his admirall, that he ſhould with like diligence rig vp a ſtrong fleet of gallies and merchants
ſhips, and to goe againſt the Turkes nauie into GRÆCIA. At the ſame time he ſent for his choice
horſemen out of BVRGVNDIE and the low countries, and many noble gentlemen and old ſoul-
diours out of SPAINE: for the guard of his owne perſon he entertained twelue thouſand Ger-
manes, ſuch as had longeſt ſerued in his wars in ITALIE, ouer whom commaunded *Maximili-
an Herberſthene*, and *Tamiſius*, both famous captaines. At the ſame time *Clement* the ſe-
uenth then biſhop of ROME, although his cofers were greatly emptied by the late Florentine
warres, which had coſt him ten hundred thouſand duckats; yet to make ſome ſhew of his diuo-
tion in ſo dangerous a time, with the great good will he bare vnto the emperor, after he had with
grieuous exaction extorted from the clergie a great maſſe of money (whereunto his rich cardi- I
nals contributed nothing, as if it had bin a thing vtterly vnlawfull for them in ſo good a cauſe to
haue abated any iot of their pontificall ſhew in the court of ROME,) ſent the young cardinall
Hyppolitus Medices his nephew, being then about twentie yeares of age, a man indeed fitter for
the wars than for the church, as his legate vnto the emperour, accompanied with mo good cap-
taines than clergie men, and his cofers well ſtuffed with treaſure: whoſe comming to RATIS-
BONE was vnto the emperor and the Germanes verie welcome, for beſides that he was a young
gentleman of verie comely perſonage and exceeding bountifull, he entertained for thoſe wars
(beſides the companie he brought with him) eight thouſand Hungarian horſemen, of all others
beſt acquainted with the Turkiſh wars.

Strigonium be-ſieged by king Iohn. King *Iohn* vnderſtanding, that the formoſt of *Solymans* great armie were come as far as SA- K
MANDRIA in SERVIA, thought it now a fit time to wring from king *Ferdinand* ſuch townes as
he yet held in HVNGARIE, wherefore he ſent *Aloiſius Grittus* (whom *Solyman* had left as a hel-
per for his eſtate) to beſiege STRIGONIVM; which is a citie of HVNGARIE, ſituat vpon the
ſide of Danubius, about thirtie miles from BVDA, the caſtle thereof was at that time holden
with a ſtrong garriſon of king *Ferdinands:* whereunto for all that *Grittus* laied ſuch hard ſiege
both by the riuer and by land, that the defendants doubting how they ſhould bee able to hold
out, eſpecially if *Solyman* ſhould take that in his way, as it was moſt like he would; ſent for reliefe
to *Cazzianer*, a warlike captaine, then gouernour of VIENNA, and generall of all king *Ferdinand*
his forces: by whoſe appointment certain ſmall frigots, were ſent downe the riuer of Danubius L
from POSSONIVM, well manned: who ſuddainely ſetting vpon the Turkes fleet (which ſo kept
the riuer that nothing could that way be poſſibly conueyed either in or out of the caſtle) ſhould
by their vnexpected comming open that way: but *Grittus* hauing intelligence thereof by cer-
taine Hungarians, which though they ſerued king *Ferdinand*, made no great account to flie
ſometime to the one part, ſometime to the other, as beſt fitted their purpoſe; preſently reſolued
to ſend his fleet vp the riuer, and by his ſuddaine comming to oppreſſe his enemies, in like ſort as
they had thought to haue done him. And the more to encourage his ſouldiours, hee promiſed
great rewards to all ſuch as ſhould performe any extraordinarie peece of ſeruice in that action:
and ſo hauing thorowly furniſhed all his fleet with good ſouldiors, but eſpecially with Turkiſh
archers, ſent them vp the riuer to ſeeke their enemies: who fearing no ſuch matter, as men ſur- M
priſed with the ſame miſchiefe they had prepared for others, were at the firſt exceedingly diſ-
mayed, yet conſidering that they were reaſonably well prouided for their comming (although
they yet wanted ſuch helpe as *Cazzianer* had appointed to ſend them) they thought it a great
ſhame to flie, and therefore putting themſelues in order of battell, came downe the riuer, & with
great courage encountred their enemies. There began a ſharpe and cruel fight, many being ſlain

and

A and wounded on both ſides: but at laſt they of POSSONIVM not able longer to endure the deadly ſhot of their enemies, and eſpecially of the Turkiſh archers, who with their arrows ſore gauled both the ſouldiours and the mariners, they turned their backes and fled: in which fight of ſixtie frigots which came from POSSONIVM, only thirteene eſcaped, with *Corporanus* the Generall, all the reſt being either ſunke in the fight, or els taken by the enemie, being run aſhore and forſaken by the Poſſonians, truſting more vnto their legs by land than their oares by water. Beſides this loſſe of the frigots, there was ſlaine of the Poſſonians almoſt fiue hundred. After this victorie, *Grittus* hoping that they in the caſtle of STRIGONIVM, deſpairing now of reliefe, and fearing the comming of *Solyman*, would not long hold out; left off to batter or vndermine the caſtle, wherewith he perceiued he little preuailed, purpoſing by lying ſtill and keeping them in
B the caſtle from all reliefe, to inforce them in time to forſake the place. Thus whilſt the deuided Hungarians with their owne hands inconſideratly ſought one anothers deſtruction, with the ruine of their countrie; *Solyman* the great enemie of all Chriſtians was readie at their backs to deuour both the one and the other, as in few yeares after he did.

Much about this time the old Spaniſh ſouldiors in ITALIE, drawne together by *Vaſtius*, as the emperour had before commaunded, were come to the Alpes. In this campe, of one ſort of men and other, was aboue twentie thouſand, whereof almoſt the third part was not ſeruiceable: for the old ſouldiors, enriched with the long warres in ITALIE, and the ſpoile of the rich countrie of LVMBARDIE, wherein they had of late bin billited, brought with them all their old gotten ſpoiles and ſubſtance, not forgetting ſo much as their women, and whatſoeuer els ſerued
C their pleaſure: for cariage whereof they drew after them a great multitude of carriages and vnneceſſarie people, all which ſerued for no other vſe but for the ſoldiors pleaſure, and to conſume victuals. Which their licentious wantonneſſe *Vaſtius* deſiring to reforme, gaue ſtraight commandement thorow all the campe, That they ſhould leaue behind them all ſuch vnneceſſarie baggage, and appointed what carriages ſhould ſuffice for euerie companie: whereat the ſoldiors began at the firſt to murmure, and preſently after to ariſe vp in mutinie: for many of the captaines being rich, and diſliking of that long and dangerous expedition, couertly incited the common ſouldiors to crie out vpon *Vaſtius* the Generall for their pay, alreadie due. Which thing once put into their heads, and the matter ſet on foot, quickely grew to that heat, that they all with one voice ſaid flatly, That they would go no foot further, before they had receiued their pay. *Vaſtius*
D although he well perceiued that tumult to be raiſed by ſome of his enemies, which ſought therby to lighten his credit, was glad for al that for the preſent to diſſemble the matter, and yeelding to the neceſſitie of the time, to content the mutinous ſouldiors with one months pay, promiſing them their full contentment, at ſuch time as they ſhould come vnto the emperor: and ſo when he had with much adoe appeaſed that tumult, he ſet forward into GERMANIE.

Mutinie amongſt the Spaniſh ſouldiers.

Immediatly after the Spaniards followed the Italians, who with ſuch cheerefulneſſe offered themſelues to that ſeruice, that euerie captaine brought with him twice ſo many in his companie as was expected: ſo that *Vaſtius* (who before doubtfull of their forwardneſſe in ſo dangerous a warre, eſpecially in the aid of the Germanes, of whom they had in the late wars receiued great harmes, had by great and earneſt perſuaſions induced diuers of the nobilitie, and others of the
E better ſort, to enter into that honourable action, in hope that they would draw after them great numbers of their friends and tenants, as indeed they did) was now glad to ſend back again many of the common ſoldiors, by reaſon of the multitude; and alſo to his great diſcredit, and the offence of many, full ſore againſt his will to diſplace moſt part of thoſe forward gentlemen whom he had but a little before made captaines, who to their no ſmall charge had gallantly furniſhed themſelues, according to their degrees and places: for the emperour had then appointed what number of Italians he ſhould bring, and alſo giuen commaundement, That reiecting the reſt, he ſhould commit the leading of them only to thoſe old expert captaines of whoſe valour and diſcretion he had before had good experience. There were *Martius Columna*, *Petrus Maria*, *Rubeus*, *Phillippus Torniellus*, *Ioannes Baptiſta Caſtalius*, *Fabritius Maramaldus*, *Pyrrhus*
F *Stipicianus*, and *Camillus Columna*, being all men of great worth and approoued faith towards the emperour.

In theſe Italian companies were fourteene thouſand ſelect footmen, beſide many other braue men who voluntarily reſorted from diuers places to VIENNA. After theſe footmen followed *Ferdinand Gonzaga* with two thouſand horſemen, and certaine troupes of Grecians and Spaniards,

ards,and with them came many noble gentelmen out of all parts of ITALIE, who had before beene great commaunders, but now ſerued as priuat gentlemen voluntarily without charge or pay; accounting it a great ſhame to tarrie at home as cowards,and not to be preſent in that religious war. G

The emperour alſo about the ſame time, hauing taken view of his horſemen come out of the low countries moſt excellently appointed, and ſhipping his great ordinance whereof he had bought great ſtore at NVRVMBERGE, departed downe the riuer from RATISBONE to LINTZ. The riuer of Danubius neuer carried ſo many veſſels and ſouldiors ſince the time of the great Romane emperours,as it did at that preſent. And yet beſides them which went down the riuer by ſhipping, the pleaſant bankes on both ſides were filled with great companies of horſemen and footmen, paſſing all alongſt the riuer vnder their colours, with their drums and trumpets ſounding, which altogether made the moſt glorious ſhew that a man could well behold vpon earth. H

1532 *Solyman commeth into Hungarie.*

In the meane while *Solyman* in ſix and fiftie daies march come to BELGRADE, thruſt ouer the great riuer Sauus by bridges made in diuers places,an infinit number of his horſmen into HVNGARIE: and leauing Danubius on the right hand,turning a little vpon the left,marched directly towards the rich countrie of STIRIA(called in auncient time VALERIA, and now STIERMARKE.) By the way as he went,he came to the little towne of GVNZA, which one *Nicholas Iureſchitz* (a man of an inuincible courage) kept with a ſmall garriſon of his own. This town ſtandeth in a plaine,not far from the citie of SABARIA, built ſquare,and but of a ſmall compaſſe, not verie ſtrongly walled, a poore obſcure thing, neuer famous till now by the great diſhonour that the great Turkiſh emperour *Solyman* there receiued. *Abraham* the chiefe Baſſa (who ſo abſolutly commaunded amongſt the Turks, as if *Solyman* had receiued him into the fellowſhip of the empire with himſelfe) was verie deſirous to ſaue this captaine *Nicholas*, for that he knew him to be a man of great courage,and was familiarly acquainted with him at ſuch time as he lay embaſſador at CONSTANTINOPLE: wherefore he attempted firſt by gentle perſuaſions and large offers,and afterwards by moſt terrible threats,to induce him to yeeld the towne vnto *Solyman*. But finding him ſo reſolutly ſet downe,that he was neither by faire nor foule meanes,but only by force to be remoued out of his towne; he incloſed the ſame round about with the hugie armie of the Turks,and by mines ouerthrew the wals in three places. Which ſoden breach, whileſt the garriſon ſouldiors moſt valiantly defended againſt the furious aſſault of the Ianizaries,on the South ſide of the town; the Baſſa planting his field pieces vpon the hils on the North ſide,did from thence grieuouſly annoy the defendants: who fiercely aſſailed by their enemies before, and beaten with the great ordinance behind, were grieuouſly diſtreſſed. Wherewith the worthie Gouernour ſomewhat troubled,though not much diſcouraged,ſuddenly of timber and boords raiſed vp a curtaine twelue foot high,at the backes of his ſouldiours: wherwith they were ſo couered from the ſight of their enemies, that they could not make any certaine ſhot at them,but only ſhot at that curtaine at all aduentures,not doing any thing ſo great harme as before: and with deſperat and reſtleſſe labour (in deſpight of all the Turks great power) repaired the breaches,in as ſtrong maner as at the firſt. In the meane time two hundred of the Turks horſemen,ſtragling from the campe,and ſeeking after bootie into the countrie as far as NEOSTAT, were by the Hungarian horſemen intercepted and all ſlaine or taken, whoſe heads the Hungarians brought to VIENNA; and the more to encourage the ſouldiors which daily repaired thither,in token of good lucke ſet them vp vpon ſtakes vpon the wals of the citie. Then was it certainly known of the priſoners,that *Solyman* had in his campe fiue hundred thouſand men, and three hundred field pieces, which were not of greater bigneſſe but that a camell might well carrie one of them, being taken from the carriage; for why, *Solyman* purpoſing by deſtroying the countrie before him,to draw the emperour vnto battell; had(as they ſaid)brought no greater pieces of batterie with him. Which report of the priſoners was alſo confirmed by the embaſſadours of king *Ferdinand*, whom *Solyman* gaue leaue to depart at GVNZA, giuing to euerie one of them a gowne of veluet and a piece of plate,with letters vnto the emperor and king *Ferdinand* his brother; wherein proudly vſurping the titles of many kingdomes,he moſt inſolently writ himſelfe lord and ſoueraigne of almoſt all countries and nations. But the effect therof was, That he was come into HVNGARIE,to reuenge the wrongs which they had done vnto king *Iohn* his friend and vaſſall; and would with fire and ſword enter their countries,and by the power of God I K L M

Gunza beſieged by the Turkes.

The huge armie of Solyman.

Solymans proud letters to Charles the emperor and king Ferdinand.

A God and his great prophet *Mahomet*, the fauourers of iuſt quarrels, giue them battell, if they durſt
meet him: Wherefore if they would as valiant and couragious princes meet him in the field, he
would in one battell end that quarrell with them, and in reward of the victorie either win or
loſe the empire of the world. When *Solyman* had thus a great while laine at the ſiege of GVNZA, and thereto giuen diuers ſharpe aſſaults, being ſtill with great loſſe and diſhonour repulſed,
he in the ſpace of foure daies caſt vp neere vnto the towne ditch two great mounts of faggots
and earth, as if they had beene two great mountaines, of ſuch height, that they ouertopped not
the wals onely, but euen the higheſt towers in the towne (by which wonderfull worke the great-
neſſe of the Turkes armie might eaſily be coniectured:) one of theſe great mounts he caſt vp di-
rectly againſt the face of the towne, and the other at a corner of the ſame, to flanker alongſt the
B wall; from whence he did with his ſhot not onely beat them which appeared vpon the wals for
the defence thereof, but them alſo which vpon occaſion went too and fro in the ſtreets. Theſe
mounts being with incredible celeritie brought to perfection, the towne ditch filled vp, and ma-
ny of the defendants either ſlaine or wounded vpon the wals, the Turkes gaue a moſt furious
aſſault at that place which was before ſhaken with the mine: againſt whom the valiant captaine
as need was in that extreame danger, oppoſed al the ſtrength he had left. But the Turks ſtill preſ-
ſing on with their infinit multitude, were got vp to the top of the wals with eight enſignes, from
whence they had repulſed the defendants: which being al either wounded or wearied, ſhrowded
themſelues vnder the defence of their penthouſes, being neither able nor of courage to make
further reſiſtance, ſo that the wals were now abandoned, and the towne there left without de-
C fendants: when ſuddenly ſuch a great clamour was made by the loud outcries and lamentation
of the women and children and other fearefull people, that the Turks which had recouered the
top of the wals, ſtrucken with a ſudden feare, thinking the towne to haue been full of ſouldiers,
ſtood as men aſtonied and diſmayed, whereupon the defendants began againe to take courage,
and to ſhew themſelues: at whoſe ſight the Turkes poſſeſſed with a needleſſe feare, forſooke the
wal, and could not by any perſuaſions or threats of their captaines be brought on againe to the
aſſault. The towne was that day in al mens iudgements defended by the mightie power of God
and not by the ſtrength of man. It greeued the proud tyrant aboue meaſure, that ſo baſe a town
ſhould ſo long hold out againſt all his power, ſo that oftentimes in his rage he would threaten to
raſe it down to the ground, and not to leaue any ſigne therof remaining: which he would vn-
D doubtedly haue in time performed, had not *Abraham* the great Baſſa (by whoſe counſell he was
altogether directed) otherwiſe perſuaded him: who waiting a fit time, when his choller was paſt,
told him that it was not worth his name and greatneſſe, to ſpend his time and forces vpon ſo
ſmall a towne of no importance, by raiſing whereof he ſhould neither get honour nor profit: for
why, no man would meruaile, if he with ſo puiſſant an armie ſhould take ſo ſmall a thing, eſpeci-
ally by long ſiege, whereby the ſtrongeſt places are enforced to yeeld; and when he had ſo ta-
ken it, yet it would bee accounted a greater honour for ſo little a towne to haue holden out ſo
long, than for him to haue with ſo great forces in long time conſtrained it: but if it ſhould other-
wiſe fall out, as the chances of war are vncertain, that he ſhould by any occaſion bee conſtrai-
ned to leaue it, hee ſhould thereby get no ſmall diſhonour: wherefore it were more wiſedome to
E ſpare his ſouldiers labour in ſo ſmall a matter, whereof he was not to expect either honour or
profit, and for to reſerue them for his greater deſignes, & not vainely to ſpend his forces & time
in the beſieging of ſo baſe a village, from whence he might now depart with leſſe diſhonor than
hee could afterwards, when he had proued the vttermoſt of his forces, and yet in the end glad
peraduenture to forſake it: wherefore it were more for his honour to raiſe his ſiege, and calling
the Gouernour of the towne vnto him, to giue him the towne as it were of bountie, than to
ſpend ſo many good men as he muſt needs caſt away in the winning of it by force: With theſe
and like reaſons the Baſſa preuailed ſo much with *Solyman*, that *Nicholas* the worthie gouernor
of the town was by a herault at armes ſent for to come vnto the great Baſſa, *Solyman* diſdaining
(as it ſhould ſeeme) to ſpeak with him himſelfe. The Gouernour being ſent for, although he was
F greeuouſly wounded, and in ſmall hope of life, yet ſtoutly refuſed to come to any parley, except
he were firſt well aſſured both by ſafe conduct and good hoſtages for the ſafetie of his perſon,
and that nothing ſhould be exacted of him, not beſeeming his religion and honor. Which ſtout
anſwere cauſed *Solyman* and the Baſſa to thinke, that his ſtrength was not yet ſo weakened but
that he was ſtill able to hold out the ſiege: and thereupon, that he required for his ſafetie was
forthwith

Abraham Baſſa perſuadeth Solyman to leaue the ſiege of Gunza.

forthwith graunted, and two men of great account ſent for hoſtages for him into the citie with G
The Gouernour commeth to the Baſſa. *Solymans* ſafe conduct. Which being receiued, the Gouernour went forth, and was by *Abraham* the great Baſſa honourably receiued into the campe, and commanded to ſit downe by him in his tent: where he was by him firſt by the way of courteſie demaunded, whether hee had recouered his old infirmitie wherewith he was troubled at ſuch time as he was ſent embaſſadour vnto *Solyman* at CONSTANTINOPLE? After that, whether the wounds he had receiued in the laſt aſſault, were dangerous or not? but laſt of all, & that which moſt concerned the matter, vpon what hope he alone had ſo long and ſo obſtinately withſtood the mightie Sultan *Solyman*; when as all his neighbours round about him had ſo willingly ſubmitted themſelues? ſaying further, That he maruelled much why he repoſed any confidence in the lingering king *Ferdinand*. H
His anſwere to the Baſſa. Whereunto the Gouernor modeſtly anſwered, That he was (thanks be to God) well deliuered of his old diſeaſe: and that his wounds were without danger: but as concerning his holding out, he ſaid, that he for his great wiſedome knew, that it was the dutie of a good ſouldior valiantly to withſtand his enemies, & not to be troubled with any euill hap, or diſcouraged with any chance of war: as for himſelfe, he ſaid, when mans helpe failed, he had repoſed his full truſt in God, by whoſe power he had beene hetherto preſerued, which as he well hoped ſhould neuer faile him at his need: and that king *Ferdinand* was not ſo farre off, but that he would before it were long be there preſent with a great armie: wherefore hee did not greatly maruell, that he was not releeued before that time, for as much as many lets and occaſions might chance which might hinder the kings purpoſe, conſidering that fortune alwaies by nature vnconſtant, was in nothing more like I
vnto her ſelfe in her vnconſtancie than in martiall affaires. The Baſſa wondering at the inuincible courage of the Gouernour, ſaid, That although the great emperour *Solyman* might now at his pleaſure vtterly deſtroy the towne, with all that therein was; yet being by nature of a moſt honourable and mild diſpoſition, and a great louer of valiant and courageous men, had commaunded him in his name to giue him that towne, and the liues of all them that were in it, as a reward of his valour ſhewed in the defence thereof: yet ſo, that he ſhould ſweare obedience vnto him, and receiue ſome few Turkes into the towne, in token that he had yeelded the ſame. The politicke Gouernour knowing that of eight hundred valiant ſouldiours he had ſcarcely a third part left, and them alſo ſore weakened with wounds and want of reſt, thought it neceſſarie to make his peace in beſt ſort he could: For what could haue happened vnto him more wiſhedly, K
than with his great honour to keepe the towne ſtill, and with the loſſe of a few pleaſing words to deliuer himſelfe, with ſo many of his friends, from extreame feare and perill? and ſo in all his talke ſhewing no ſigne of feare, and with great words ſetting forth the ſtrength of his garriſon (which was indeed brought to an extreame weakneſſe) ſaid he was ready at the firſt to haue yeelded vp the towne, for the old acquaintance he had with him at CONSTANTINOPLE, but was alwayes letted by the Germanes and Spaniards which were there in garriſon, fierce and cruell ſouldiors, whoſe hard hearts were (as he ſaid) hardly entreated to ſuffer him at that time to come out of the citie into the campe: Wherefore he could promiſe to be a friend to all ſuch Turkes as ſhould paſſe that way, and to releeue them with ſuch things as his waſted country could affoord; and further, in token of his ſubmiſſion, to ſet vp one of *Solymans* enſignes in the cheefe tower of L
the citie: but as for receiuing any Turkes into garriſon, in token that hee had yeelded vp the towne, he was willing ſo to doe, but that he was greatly afraid they ſhould be euill entreated by the Germanes and Spaniards, who deadlly hated the Turks: whereof it was to be thought, that new warres would eftſoones ariſe. In concluſion, he ſo cunningly vſed the matter, that the great Baſſa was contented with this ſmall token of ſubmiſſion, That he ſhould receiue in at one of the gates of the citie, one of *Solymans* captaines with ten Ianizaries: which being done accordingly, and they courteouſly for a while entertained and againe diſmiſſed, the great Baſſa held himſelfe with that ſimple ſubmiſſion well contented: when as the Gouernour had neither Germane
Solyman departeth from the ſiege of Gunza. nor Spaniard as then in garriſon. So when *Solyman* had with his great armie lien at the ſiege of GVNZA by the ſpace of eight and twentie dayes, and in that time to his great loſſe aſſaulted the M
ſame thirteene times, he riſe with his armie, glad of a little fained ſubmiſſion for the ſafegard of his honour: and leauing VIENNA on the right hand, whither moſt part of the Chriſtian armie was aſſembled, tooke the way on the left into CARINTHIA, and ſo came to the riuer Mura, and from thence to the citie GRATIA. This turning of *Solymans* out of the way from VIENNA, where he knew his enemies lay, put all feare out of the minds of the Chriſtians, which they had before

A before not without cauſe conceaued, in ſo much, that he but a little before feared as a prince of great pride and power, ſhamefully repulſed at the little towne of GVNZA, and now ſhunning his enemies at VIENNA, began to grow into contempt as if he had been running away for feare. Which diſgrace the Turkes ſought by diuers excuſes to couer, as that the ſtrong citie of NEOSTAT lay betwixt him and VIENNA, which could neither without much difficultie be taken, nor danger left enemie behind him: Beſides that, Winter began to approch, which cauſed him (as the Turks gaue it out) to content himſelfe with the ſpoile of the rich countries betwixt the riuers Sauus and Dranus, and ſo in good time to returne againe to BELGRADE. But they which ſeemed to ſee farther into the matter, were of opinion, That *Solyman* vnderſtanding by his eſpi-
B als, and ſecret aduertiſement from his friends, that the princes of GERMANIE had with one conſent ioyned their forces with the emperours, brought out of ITALIE, SPAINE, and the low countries, which at his ſetting foorth he leaſt feared; and that the Chriſtian armie in number great, conſiſted not of raw ſouldiers, but for the moſt part of ſuch as had beene trained vp in warres, men both for courage and skill nothing inferiour to his Ianizaries and beſt men of warre; choſe rather to take the ſpoile of the countrey, as he might with ſafetie, than to aduenture his perſon and ſtate to the hazard of a moſt doubtfull and dangerous battell.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Michael-ogli* by the commaundement of *Solyman* ſent *Caſon* with fifteene thouſand of his voluntarie horſemen (who in *Solymans* expedition againſt VIENNA, had run thorow the countrey of AVSTRIA as farre as LINTZ) charging him with-
C out ſtay to ſpoile all the countrey farre and neere which lieth between Danubius and the Alpes, thereby to learne what he could of the ſtate and ſtrength of the emperours camp; and by doing all the harmes he could poſſibly, to leaue a moſt lamentable remembrance of the Turkes being in AVSTRIA. *Caſon* was of himſelfe forward enough, and deſirous of the ſpoile; but ſo much the more, for that he was by the former road into that countrey become both famous and rich: Wherefore diuiding his horſemen into three companies not farre diſtant one from another, he ſuddenly oppreſſed an infinit multitude of all ſorts of people in the fields and countrey villages as he went; all which hee either ſlew without mercie, or carried away as miſerable priſoners. Thouſands of men and women tied togither in chaines and roapes, were by the cruell Turkes enforced to run as faſt as their horſes, the countrey villages were burnt down to the ground and
D in them the poore children of the Chriſtians, whoſe parents were either ſlaine or carried away captiues: ſo that all the countrey euery way for the ſpace almoſt of an hundred and fiftie miles, was couered with ſmoke and fire, within three miles of LINTZ; where king *Ferdinand* then lying, was glad to get himſelfe farther off to STRABINGA, where his brother *Charles* the emperour lay. This cruell Turke, according to his charge hauing with fire and ſword without compaſſion wrought all the wo he could poſſible vpon the poore Chriſtians, and now loded with the ſpoile of the countrey and multitude of priſoners, began to returne the ſame way he came, thinking to find *Solyman* either at the ſiege of GVNZA where he left him, or neerer hand at NEOSTAT comming towards VIENNA. But he as is before ſaid, riſing with ſmall honour from GVNZA, and fearing the power of the Chriſtians, was gone quite another way as farre as GRATIA, the metro-
E politicall citie of STIRIA, ſtanding vpon the riuer of Mura; which turned to the vtter deſtruction of *Caſon* and all his followers. For as ſoone as it was perceiued by the burning of the countrey all about, that the Turkes were come neere vnto LINTZ, the Chriſtian captaines with their companies went out of the campe, ſome one way, ſome another, as was thought moſt conuenient for the meeting with of theſe miſchieuous Turks, which neuer reſted in one place: wherin they vſed ſuch diligence in taking the paſſages, that it was not poſſible they ſhould eſcape vnfought withall. Foure companies of Spaniſh and Italian horſemen vnder the leading of *Lewes Coue* a valiant captaine, firſt lighting vpon them in a valley neere vnto NEOSTAT, and deſperatly charging them, were by the Turkes for moſt part ſlaine: But *Caſon* perceiuing how he was on euerie ſide laid by the Chriſtians in the vallies betwixt NEOSTAT, SABARIA, and VESPRI-
F NIVM, the night following with more than barbarous crueltie ſlew foure thowſand of the Chriſtians he had before taken priſoners, becauſe he ſhould not be hindred by them in his flight; and diuiding his armie into two parts, about midnight began to ſet forward, vſing the benefit of the night to haue eſcaped from his enemies out of theſe vallies wherein he was encloſed. One part of this armie led by *Feriſes* taking the way Southward, did with incredible labour cut a way thorow the thicke and ouergrowen woods (a thing thought altogither impoſſible) and ſo with lit-

Caſon ſent with 15000 horſmen to ſpoile Auſtria.

4000 Chriſtian captiues murdred by Caſon.

tle

tle or no losse came to *Solyman* into STIRIA. *Cason* with the other part of the armie breaking out of the valley of STORAMBERG, chanced vpon the Palatine (Generall of the forces sent from the Germain princes) who with ten thousand footmen and two thousand horsmen, and certain field pieces brake the battell of the Turkes, and slew of them a great number: in which conflict *Cason* his chiefe ensigne was taken. He fighting most valiantly in the rereward to giue others time to escape, was himselfe there slaine; whose gallant headpiece presented afterwards to the emperour, confirmed the report of his death. They which escaped from the *Palatine*, in their flight fell into the hands of *Lewes* and the Marquesse of BRANDENBVRG, by whom they were slaine like beasts. The Hungarian horsmen led by *Valentinus Turacus*, lighting vpon them which fled from *Lewes* and the Marquesse, had the killing of them for the space of seauen miles; and of all others did vpon them the cruellest execution, following them hard at the heeles with their fresh horses, and fiercely insulting vpon them in their owne language. Those few dispersed Turkes which escaped the furie of the Hungarians, fell into the hands of the countrey people about VESPRINIVM and the lake of Balaton, which came out on euerie side in hope of spoile, who shewed them small fauour: so that of 8000 Turks which were with *Cason*, it was thought not one returned to *Solyman*.

Cason discomfited by the Palatine and slaine.

The slaughter of the Turkes.

The emperour vnderstanding that *Solyman* was gone as farre as GRATIA in STIRIA, called his chiefe captaines togither into the castle of LINTZ, to know their opinions, whether it were best to follow the enemie into STIRIA or not. The cities of LINTZ, GRATIA, and VIENNA are scituat almost in forme of a triangle: but from LINTZ to GRATIA is three good daies iourney of bad rough way by horse. Some said it was best to fight with the Turkes in that vneuen mountaine countrey, where the Turkes chiefe strength consisting in the multitude of his horsemen, should stand him in small steed, but should be enforced to trie the battell with his footmen, wherein he was inferiour to the Christians. This counsell although it had in it many difficulties, yet for that it proceeded from the most approued captaines, so moued the emperour, that he presently sent *Apontins* a Spaniard (the most famous captaine *Antonius Leua* his lieutenant) to take view of that passage: who shortly after returned againe to LINTZ, bringing word that all the countrey as he went was desolat and for feare forsaken of the inhabitants: but concerning the place of the enemies abode, he could learne no certaintie. Whereupon it was by generall consent concluded, that they should all goe to VIENNA, whither all the strength of the Germains was alreadie assembled, there to take a generall view of the armie, and to giue the enemie battell if he should againe returne. Some there were of great courage which openly disliked of that going to VIENNA, saying, that the emperour should rather in that distresse of the prouinces of STIRIA and CARINTHIA pursue his enemie, than turne out of the way to VIENNA. But others of greater iudgement, whose opinion preuailed, said, It was one thing to inuade, and another thing to defend: so that the emperour might with honour enough encampe himselfe in the fields of VIENNA, and from thence to expect & deride the base expedition and vaine brags of his proud enemie, who a farre off chalenged him into the field, and then like a coward durst not come neere him.

Charles the emperour his power at Vienna.

The emperour comming to VIENNA, and taking a generall view of the armie, found therein two hundred and sixtie thousand men, whereof nintie thousand footmen, and thirtie thousand horsemen were accounted old expert soldiers, & of them many whole companies and bands, of such as had before ben generals, captains, lieutenants, antients, or other officers & men of marke in other armies, and now were content to serue as priuat men. It was thought that so many worthie captaines and valiant souldiers, were neuer before in the memorie of man assembled togither into one campe: for the princes and free cities had not sent thither common souldiers, but their chosen and approued men; striuing as it were amongst themselues, who should send the best. All the flowre and strength of GERMANIE from the riuer of Vistula to the Rhene, and from the Ocean to the Alpes, was by the princes of the empire and free cities either sent thither, or of themselues voluntarily came thither. A thing neuer before heard of, that all GERMANIE should as it were with one consent, be glad to take vp armes for their common safetie, in defence of their honour and libertie; especially against people brought out of the furthest parts of ASIA, SYRIA, and ÆGYPT. Beside the great number of Spaniards, Italians, and Burgundians; the Bohemian campe lay not farre off, strengthened with them of SILESIA and MORAVIA. There were also some troupes of Polonian horsemen, not sent thither by publike authoritie, but seruing

as

A as voluntarie men: king *Sigiſmund* winking thereat, who as he was carefull not raſhly to break the league he had made with *Solyman*; ſo leaſt he ſhould ſeeme careleſſe of the Chriſtian common cauſe, by notable diſſimulation left place for ſuch of his ſubiects as would (as if it had been without his knowledge) to ſhew their valour in the moſt honourable warre.

The Chriſtian armie readie to receiue the enemie, lay in a great field neere vnto VIENNA in this order: Three great ſquadrons of pikemen, ſtanding one ſquadron a great way diſtant from another, were ſo placed againſt the enemie with like and equall front, that all the horſemen diuided into two parts, might well be receiued into the great ſpaces betwixt the three ſquadrons: for it was not thought conuenient to oppoſe ſo ſmall a number of horſemen in open field with-
B out the footmen, againſt almoſt three hundred thouſand of the Turks horſemen. The right wing of the horſemen was led by the emperour himſelfe, and the left by king *Ferdinand*. Before and behind, and on euerie ſide of the three ſquadrons of pikes, ſauing in thoſe places which were left open for the horſemen, about thirtie paces off, were placed twentie thouſand nimble harquebuſiers ranged in length, and but fiue in a ranke; ſo that whileſt the firſt diſcharged, the ſecond, and after them the third, and ſo the reſt readily and orderly comming on, might without let deliuer their bullets vpon their enemies: neither was it thought any diſauantage to place them ſo thin, for that if they found themſelues by the enemies oppreſſed, they might eaſily retire amongſt the pikes, ſtanding faſt at hand. Before the harquebuſiers was planted the great ordinance, whereof the emperor had ſuch ſtore and ſo well placed, that he could therewith (as with a
C moſt ſure trench) haue compaſſed in his whole armie. Only the Hungarians, men well acquainted with the manner of the Turks fight, choſe to lie in the open field in two great wings, vnder the leading of their two valiant captaines *Valentinus* and *Paulus*. Many noble gentlemen beholding this goodly armie, wept for ioy, conceiuing a moſt aſſured hope of victorie, if the proud enemie durſt with all his forces ioyne in battell. But *Solyman*, who by all meanes ſought with his great number of horſemen to keep the wide and open fields, certainly aduertiſed both of the emperors ſtrength and the manner of his lying, got him ouer the riuer of Mura, and at MARPVRGE by bridges which he made on the ſudden, paſſed ouer the great riuer Dranus. And ſo he which that Sommer held almoſt all the world in ſuſpence, with the doubtfull expectation of the ſucceſſe of that war; hauing with all that his huge power wherwith he threatned the world,
D done nothing at all worth the remembrance, but was in euerie place either ouercome or elſe ſhamefully repulſed; left STIRIA and returned the ſame way he came, directly betwixt the riuers of Sauus and Dranus to BELGRADE, and ſo to CONSTANTINOPLE, leauing heere and there ſome remembrance of his barbarous crueltie, and ſtill looking behind him if the emperour were not at his heeles: at ſuch time as a few Dalmatian and Croatian horſemen did ſtill purſue the taile of his armie. It is reported that he carried away with him thirtie thouſand Chriſtians into captiuitie, beſides many thouſands of poore countrey people ſlaine by the mercileſſe Turkes; but eſpecially by *Caſon* and his followers: and ſo to his eternall infamie was twiſe in the ſpace of a few years driuen out of GERMANIE. The emperour vnderſtanding of *Solymans* departure, determined with all ſpeed to returne into ITALIE, although king *Ferdinand* his bro-
E ther moſt earneſtly entreated him before his departure, in ſo fit a time to employ thoſe great forces againſt king *Iohn*, who now as it were forſaken of *Solyman*, might eaſily with ſo puiſſant an armie haue beene thruſt not onely out of BVDA, but alſo quite out of the kingdome of HVNGARIE, wherein he was by *Solyman* as his vaſſal placed. But the emperour, for that Winter began now to approach, and the plague was got into the campe, yea euen into his court, continued in his former purpoſe of departing into ITALIE: yet yeelding ſo farre vnto his brothers requeſt, as to leaue behind him all the Italians, who ioyned with king *Ferdinands* owne forces were thought ſufficient for the accompliſhment of the Hungarian warre.

The order of the Chriſtianitie.

Ouer theſe Italians, one *Fabritius Maramaldus* was by the meanes of *Alphonſus Victius* appointed Generall: but no order taken for the paiment of their wages, whereby the ſouldiours
F might be the more encouraged to take in hand that warre, and alſo kept in obedience. Which thing at the firſt much offended the minds of the other captaines, thinking themſelues diſgraced by the preferment of *Marmaldus*, a man of no greater account than themſelues: but as ſoone as it was knowne abroad, the vnder captaines and officers of the bands, led with the credit and fauour of their old captaines, ſaid plainly, That they would not go into HVNGARIE, except either king *Ferdinad* would in perſon himſelfe go, or elſe one of the great Commanders, *Vaſtius* or

Solyman returneth.

The Italians left for the aid of king Ferdinand, ariſe in mutinie.

or *Leua* were appointed for their Generall: and the common ſouldiers ſaid flatly, that they G
would aske leaue to depart, except they had three moneths pay, which they knew well they ſhould neuer get of that poore king, alreadie brought vnto great wants. *Vaſtius* to appeaſe this mutinie, trauelled greatly with his ſouldiers, perſuading them to remember the faith of ſouldiers, and by their conſtant perſeuerance to maintaine the honour they had got by their cheerefull comming: telling them, That valiant ſouldiers neuer wanted pay, furniſhing themſelues by their victories with all things neceſſary from the enemie. And as for *Maramaldus* their Generall, they had no iuſt cauſe to miſlike him being an old captaine of great experience, for courage and pollicie not inferiour to any of the greateſt Commanders, and placed by the emperor his owne appointment as a man moſt ſufficient, whoſe iudgement they ought not in any caſe to diſlike. When *Vaſtius* had with theſe and ſuch like reaſons well appeaſed the tumultuous ſoul- H
diers, and was gone out of the campe into VIENNA to take further order for the remedying of all difficulties; night, the nurſe of ſedition came on, whoſe darkeneſſe excluding all modeſtie & feare, gaue further ſcope and place vnto the mutinous ſouldiers inſolencie. By chance there was at that time brought out of the citie into the campe verie courſe, hoarie, moulded bread, which ſome of the ſouldiers hauing brought, and thruſting it vpon the points of their ſpeares, ſhewed it vnto their fellowes in great choller, railing againſt king *Ferdinand*, which in his own kingdome in the beginning of the warre had made no better prouiſion, but with ſuch corrupt and peſtilent bread to feed them being ſtrangers, which were onely for his defence and quarrell to aduenture their liues. And but a little before, a certaine Spaniard being but a common ſouldier comming into the Generals tent, and caſting the like bread down at the feet of *Vaſtius*, bitterly curſing the I
emperour and king *Ferdinand*, had raiſed a wonderfull tumult: wherefore the Italian ſouldiers flocking togither out of their tents, gaue many hard ſpeeches concerning their pay, their victuals, and the difficulties of the Hungarian warre. There one *Titus Marconius* of VOLATERRA a man of a troubleſome ſpirit, but reaſonably well ſpoken, was by the other ſouldiers ſet vp vpon a great heape of ſaddles, that he might be the better heard, and by diuers ſeditious captaines requeſted frankly to ſpeak his mind, ſo farre as he thought concerned the ſafetie and welfare of them all. Where it is reported that he ſpake vnto them in this ſeditious manner as followeth:

The ſeditious oration of Titus Marconius, to the mutinous Italians.

And ſhall the Spaniards (ſaid he) *beloued companions and fellowes in armes, as you haue heard,* K
goe into ITALIE? *and to our great hurt againe returne into their old Wintering places? and that which I am aſhamed to ſay, as notable gueſts lie with our wiues? and we Italians as baniſhed men fight this Winter with ice and ſnow in* HVNGARIE? *and that forſooth for a moſt beggarly king, and him alſo to the Hungarians a forener and meere ſtranger, againſt a naturall borne prince, of his ſubiects well beloued and ſtrongly backt with the power and wealth of the Turkiſh emperour? And that which might iuſtly grieue any couragious mind, vnder the conduct of* Maramaldus, *who oftentimes blinded with anger and haſtie crueltie, hath ſo furiouſly thruſt vs thorow with his ſword, that he ſeemeth not more to deſire the name of a captaine for any thing, than for the killing and murthering of vs now his ſouldiers. Neither can I beleeue that you, who haue oftentimes beene captaines and aun-* L
cients your ſelues, will be ſo mad, as to ſerue vnder a common captaine, without hope of any pay, of any prouiſion, of victorie or returne. Truely it delighteth me not ſo much to haue come hither for the honour of the Italian name (no more reckoned of than a ruſh) although I haue eleuen times ſerued; as it doth this day aſhame me to ſee this ſhamefull end of the warre, ended before it was well begun. But in Regall dignitie is no ſhame, nor equitie in rewarding the ſouldiour: for kings now adaies make account of ſouldiers onely according to their neceſſitie; this is it alone that giueth vs pay, this is that getteth vs loue, this is it maintaineth our reputation; all which, peace once by victorie obtained, leeſe their grace. So fareth it with vs at this preſent (fellow ſouldiers) the emperour and his brother king Ferdinand, *deliuered from the feare of a moſt dangerous warre, to eaſe themſelues of this multitude of vs, ſeeke to thruſt vs into* HVNGARIE *as beaſts to the ſlaughter, by the ſpending of our bloud hoping to purchaſe vnto themſelues victorie; and by the loſſe of vs to take no harme themſelues, though* M
the Turkes and Hungarians ſhould with ſword and famine vtterly deſtroy vs, ſhut vp with the ice of Danubius and the ſnow of the Alpes. But peraduenture you vnderſtand not theſe deuiſes, no more than you vnderſtand what this terrible and bloudie * *comet, ſhooting his beames towards* ITALIE, *pretendeth. Verily it is not fatall either to* Solyman *or* Cæſar, *but rather threatneth vnto vs death and deſtru-*

* At this verie time a great blazing ſtar was ſeene in the firmament at Vienna.

A *deſtruction, for they with like counſell, full of ſafetie and diſcretion, would not open any way vnto their owne deſtinies, but warily withdrew themſelues one from the other, and ſhunned all the dangers of the field. Wherefore if it were lawfull for them without any blemiſh of their Maieſties, ſo notably to prouide to keepe themſelues out of danger, when as on each ſide halfe the world lay as a reward of the victorie; ſhall not wee looke to our ſelues that wee be not thruſt thither from whence appeareth no hope of returne, but with vtter deſtruction? when as we may doe it without offence and by good right, eſpecially ſeeing no pay is offered vs. Thus you ſee what a goodly end is made of this notable warre, wherein onely wee the Italians in ſteed of commendation and reward reape iniurie and diſgrace: and are peraduenture of purpoſe exiled into* HVNGARIE, *that this floure of chiualrie being drawne out of* ITALIE, *and ſent farre out of the way, colonies of Spaniards and Germanes may be placed in*
B *our ſteads. Truely it ſeemeth hard dealing to bee ſent out of the way into a barbarous countrie, where wee ſhall find all hoſtilitie, and no place of refuge to receiue vs, being diſtreſſed. Beſide this, we ſhall alſo whether wee will or no feele how heauie and intollerable it will bee both to our bodies and mindes to endure the miſeries of this Winter and daungerous warre: and in the meane time with no ſmall heart-griefe imagine what things our children, our brethren, our kinſmen, yea our wiues, ſuffer at home of the Spaniards and Germanes. Wherefore worthie companions, it concerneth vs more at this time to haue a good foreſight, than valiantly to fight. The occaſion preſented vnto vs for our ſafetie and welfare, ſtandeth vpon a tickle point, it muſt bee done without delay, and wee muſt hie vs hence before that the Spaniards truſſe vp their baggage; and ſo preuenting the emperours formoſt companies, come firſt our ſelues into* ITALIE: *for if wee ſhall ſtay but a little to conſult vpon the matter,* Vaſtius
C *and our other proud commanders will preſently be heere, the verie betrayers of the Italian bloud, who for their owne gaine and our miſchiefe haue brought vs into theſe ſtraits; who I know will moſt earneſtly intreat vs, and with many ſubtilties ſeeke to ſeduce vs, by offering vs great pay and whatſoeuer elſe we ſhall require: which will all proue but words. But you, if you be men, refuſe to talke with them as with your common enemies, or rather in reuenge of their old iniuries kill them. Here wanteth not in this aſſemblie valiant men, for courage and integritie of life their betters far, which can leade you forth, order your battell, and fortunately vſe this your courage and forwardneſſe. Wherefore if you bee wiſe, ſet forward reſolutely, and good fortune no doubt will attend you in your haſt, for the full accompliſhment of your deſire conſiſteth in your haſt onely.*

D *Marconius* had no ſooner made an end of this mutinous ſpeech, but the tumultuous ſouldiors in euerie band began highly to commend and approue the ſame, and by and by ſuch a confuſed noiſe was heard through all the aſſemblie, as vſeth to riſe amongſt the diſcontented vulgar people, readie to riſe in armes: but the drums preſently ſtriking vp a march, they made no longer ſtay, but without delay pluckt vp their enſignes, and forward they go directly towards NEOSTAT. In this tumult, in ſtead of their old captaines which either were not then preſent, or refuſed to goe with them, they choſe others to bee their leaders: who once named by the ſeditious multitude, might in no caſe without danger refuſe to take the charge vpon them, were they neuer ſo vnwilling. Theſe were *Montebellius, Nerius, Melcarius, Sanctius*, and the two twins of MILLANE, called *Gluſſani*: who drew after them eight thouſand ſouldiours, the reſt partly for
E ſhame, and partly for feare, ſtaied ſtill with *Maramaldus* their new appointed Generall. When they were thus gone, *Vaſtius* and diuers other great companies hearing therof in the citie, poſted after them ſix miles, and at length ouertaking them, requeſted them to ſtay, and not to diſhonor themſelues with ſo foule a fact, telling them, that their pay was readie for them, and omitting nothing wherwith they might haue bin moued to ſtay, mingled their praiers with grieuous threats: but they reſolutely ſet downe, would neither heare, nor ſtay; but as men inraged with furie, and their own guiltie conſcience, with ſtern lookes diſcharged ſome ſmall ſhot vpon them. Whileſt *Vaſtius* would there haue ſtaied the companie, and did what hee poſſibly could by threatening and otherwiſe to haue terrified their leaders, and to haue brought them backe, he was oftentimes in danger to haue been ſlaine. In the end he was glad to forſake them, and to returne as he came.
F King *Ferdinand* by this ſudden departure of the Italians, for that time diſappointed of all his hope of recouering the kingdome of HVNGARIE from king *Iohn*, in great choller writ vnto his ſubiects of STYRIA and CARYNTHIA, whereby the Italians were to paſſe, that they ſhould ſhew them no manner of courteſie in their paſſage: wherupon inſued great hurt on both ſides. Yet for all that theſe Italians in deſpight of what could be done, at length recouered TRIA-

Eight thouſand of the Italians in mutinie forſake their captaines and returne to Italie.

VENTVM in the borders of ITALIE, where they disbanded themselues, and returned euerie man G
to his owne dwelling, leauing king *Ferdinand* vnto his owne forces. The emperor also breaking
Charles the emperour returneth into Italie. vp his armie at VIENNA, and purposing now as before to returne into ITALIE, appointed *Ferdinand Gonzaga* to go formost with the light horsemen, with whom also he went himselfe: after him followed *Vastius* with the Spaniards; two daies after came the cardinall, whose traine was of all the greatest; last of all followed the mercinarie Germaines: in which order he returned in safetie into ITALIE.

This was the end of those wonderful preparations made by the two great monarchs *Solyman* and *Charles* the fift, in the yeare 1532, which held the world in great suspence with the fearefull expectation of some maruellous alteration, and so much the more, for that at the same time ap- H
peared a great blasing star by the space of fifteene daies. All which for all that, God so appointing, sorted to far lesse harme than was of most men feared.

Auria goeth against the Turks. Now whilest *Charles* the emperour was thus in armes against *Solyman* in AVSTRIA, *Andreas Auria* by his appointment with a fleet of 35 tall ships and 48 gallies, wherin he had embarked 25000 good souldiours well appointed, did in the meane time wonderfully annoy the Turkes in PELOPONESVS. With this fleet *Auria* departing from MESSANA in SICILIA: and passing alongst the coast of ITALIE into the Ionian, neere vnto the Isle of ZACYNTHVS, met with *Vincentius Capellius* the Venetian admirall with a fleet of sixtie gallies, set forth by the Venetians for defence of their territories; who offered vnto *Auria* all possible kindnes, but excused himselfe, that he could not ioine with him in that warre against the common enemie, by I
reason of an old league betwixt the Turkes and the Venetians, which *Solyman* had but a little before renewed. So that at that time the Venetians stood as men indifferent betwixt *Charles* the emperour and *Solyman*, offering like kindnesse to both, but taking part with neither, yet in readinesse to fall out with either, if they should by sea or land offer any iniurie to their state: wherein they bare themselues so indifferent, that it was thought, that they at one and the selfesame instant aduertised *Auria*, That *Hymerales* the Turkes admirall lay with his fleet of sixtie gallies, euill appointed in the bay of AMBRACIA, where he might easily be surprised: and gaue likewise warning to him of the comming of *Auria* with a strong fleet, wishing him in time to prouide for his better safetie, by retiring his fleet into some other place of more assurance, which he presently did: for knowing himselfe too weak, he departed from AMBRACIA to the strong hauen of CALCIDE. Which thing with other like well considered, might giue iust cause to any Christian heart K
to bewaile the state of that time, wherein the Christian princes being either in mortall warres among themselues, or entangled by *Solyman* with leagues of no assurance, omitted the fairest oportunitie that could haue beene wished for the abating of the Turkes greatnesse: for if the Venetians ioyning their forces with *Auria*, had in time pursued the Turkish admiral, it was like, that not onely all *Solymans* power at sea had beene vtterly discomfited; but also most part of GRÆCIA, mindfull of their ancient empire and libertie, and then readie to haue rebelled, & ioyned hands with the Christians, might haue bin recouered out of the Turkish thraldome; yea and the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE greatly indangered, few or none being left for the defence therof, beside young Ianizaries, and effeminat eunuchs, the heartlesse keepers of the Turks L
concubines, *Solyman* himselfe being then far off in HVNGARIE, and hauing drawn with him the greatest strength of his empire.

Auria taking his leaue of the Venetian admirall, with much honour done at sea on both sides, was shortly after aduertised, that the Turkes admirall was fled to CALCIDE. Wherefore now out of hope to do any good against him, he directed his course to CORONE, which is a
Auria besiegeth Corone in Peloponesus. strong citie vpon the coast of PELOPONESVS, about twelue miles distant from MODON, with purpose to besiege it: which when he had well viewed, and considered of the strength therof, he laid siege thereto both by sea and land, battering it most terribly, at one time with fourteene great pieces of artillerie by land, and a hundred and fiftie by sea, so that a more terrible batterie had not bin lightly heard of: for all that, the Turks valiantly stood vpon their defence, and manful- M
ly repulsed the Italians, which vnder the leading of the countie of SARNE assaulted the citie by land. The Turkish garrisons lying about in the countrie of PELOPONESVS, did what they might to haue relieued the citie, who by the valour of the said countie were discomfited, and *Zadares* their chiefe leader slaine, whose head with others of the slaine Turkes was set vpon stakes to the terrour of the defendants.

At

A At length the Turkes wearied with aſſaults, and terrified with the thundering ſhot which neuer ceaſed, and driuen alſo from their greateſt ſtrength towards ſea by the deſperate aſſault of certaine reſolute Chriſtians, whom they had now full ſore againſt their wils receiued as it were into their boſomes, fearing alſo to want victuall and pouder, if they ſhould longer hold out without any hope of releefe; yeelded the citie & caſtle to *Auria*, vpon condition, that they might in ſafetie depart thence with bag and baggage. CORONE thus taken, and a ſtrong garriſon of Spaniards there placed, and the Chriſtian Greekes which dwelt in the citie ſworne vnto them, *Auria* put to ſea with his fleet, and ſayling againe by ZAZINTHVS, came to PATRAS, another ancient citie of PELOPONESVS, which he eaſily tooke and ranſacked: for the Turks diſtruſting
B the ſtrength of the citie had ſtrongly entrenched themſelues neere vnto the caſtle, which place alſo together with the caſtle they in ſhort time yeelded to *Auria*; couenanting, that they and eſpecially their wiues might with their garments onely depart in ſafetie into ÆTOLIA: which was by *Auria* ſo preciſely performed, that when three thouſand of them paſſed along thorow the armie of the Chriſtians raunged on both ſides, and ſome of the ſouldiers began rudely to handle ſome of the women, and to take from them ſome of their iewels, he cauſed them preſently to the terrour of others to be hanged. *Auria* leauing his armie at PATRAS, with commaundement to follow him by land, ſailed alongſt the coaſt of PELOPONESVS, vntill he came to the ſtrait of NAVPACTVM, now called LEPANTO, which is the entrance into the gulfe of CORINTH, parting PELOPONESVS from ÆTOLIA with a ſtrait ſomewhat narrower than the ſtrait of
C HELESPONT: Vpon this ſtrait ſtood two caſtles, the one called RHIVM vpon the coaſt of PELOPONESVS, and the other MOLYCREVM in ÆTOLIA, which *Baiazet* had wonderfully fortified and ſtored with ordinance for the keeping of that ſtrait. *Auria* threatening all extremitie vnto the captaine of the caſtle on PELOPONESVS ſide, if he did enforce him to plant his batterie, ſo terrified him, that he without delay yeelded to him the caſtle, couenanting only, That he and his ſouldiours might in ſafetie depart thence: which graunted, and the Turkes departed, *Auria* gaue the ſpoile of the caſtle vnto his ſouldiors which came with him by ſea; whereby he ſo offended the minds of the other ſouldiors which came by land from PATRAS, that they were about to haue forſaken him. The other caſtle vpon ÆTOLIA ſide was not ſo eaſily taken, being valiantly defended by a garriſon of old Ianizaries, appointed for the keeping thereof. Yet
D in the end by furie of the ordinance a breach was made, wherby the Chriſtians forcibly entring, ſlew three hundred of the old garriſon ſouldiours, not taking any to mercie: the reſt fled into a ſtrong tower in the middeſt of the caſtle, where ſeeing no remedie but that they muſt needes fall into the hands of their enemies, they deſperatly blew vp themſelues and the tower with a great part of the caſtle with gunpouder, in ſuch ſort, that it ſeemed all the ſea coaſt to haue been ſhaken with an earthquake, and the gallies which lay a bow ſhoot off were almoſt ouerwhelmed with ſtones blowne out ſo farre off. The great Ordinance taken in this caſtle, was valued at ſeauentie thouſand duckats; whereof certaine peeces of a wonderfull greatneſſe, with Arabian letters written vpon them, were afterwards by *Auria* brought to GENVA, and in remembrance of the victorie mounted vpon the bulwarke at the mouth of the hauen. All theſe things thus happely
E atchieued, *Auria* ſtrongly fortified the citie of CORONE, ſtoring it both with munition and plentie of victuall, committing the defence therof to *Mendoza*, a valiant Spaniard, with a ſtrong garriſon of Spaniards, promiſing of his owne charge to relieue him when ſoeuer he ſhould need, if the emperour ſhould deferre to doe it. The ſtrait of NAVPACTVM laid open, *Saluiatus* with the gallies of MALTA, ſcoured all alongſt the gulfe of CORINTH, doing great harme vnto the Turks which dwelt on both ſides of the gulfe, ſpoyling and terrifying them euen as farre as CORINTH. Not long after Winter now approching, *Auria* receiuing letters from the emperour, of *Solymans* departure out of HVNGARIE, returned with his fleete loaded with the ſpoyle of the Turkes to NAPLES, and ſo from thence home to GENVA.

Corone yeelded to Auria by the Turkes.

Patras taken and ranſacked by Auria.

Auria returneth to Italie.

In the beginning of the Spring following (which was in the yeare 1533) it was rifely reported, that the Turks were cõming with a great fleet towards PELOPONESVS: and not long after, *Mendoza* Gouernour of CORONE by letters aduertiſed *Peter* of TOLEDO viceroy of NA-
F PLES, that he was both by ſea and land hardly beſieged by the Turks; and that he would to the vttermoſt of his power valiantly defend the citie, ſo long as hee had any prouiſion of victuall: Wherefore he moſt earneſtly requeſted, that if the emperour would haue the towne kept, hee ſhould in time ſend him reliefe, wherupon the oppreſſed Grecians taking heart were like enough

1533

The Turkes beſiege Corone.

Auria ſent by the emperour to relieue Corone.

to rebell, and to helpe to expulſe the Turkes quite out of PELOPONESVS. But aboue all things he forgot not to craue ſpeedie helpe of *Auria*, and to put him in mind of the faithful promiſe he had made to relieue him at his need. Vpon this newes, *Charles* the emperour commaunded *Auria* his Admirall to rig vp a conuenient fleet for that ſeruice, promiſing forthwith to ſend vnto him twelue gallies, which hee had new built in SPAINE. He alſo requeſted the knights of MALTA to aid him with their gallies againſt that common enemie. Wherefore *Auria* hauing with wonderfull celeritie rigged vp thirtie tall ſhips, and as many gallies, came to NAPLES to take in his ſouldiours: there the old garriſons of the Spaniards which for want of pay were riſen in mutinie againſt the great Commaunder *Vaſtius* and the viceroy, and had rifeled the citie of AVERSA, and do no little harme all about in the countrie of CAMPANIA, were againe pacified by a pay giuen vnto them, and preſently embarked for CORONE, vnder the commaund of *Rodericus Macicaus* their Generall; at which time alſo *Frederick* of TOLEDO the viceroy his ſonne, with a companie of braue gentlemen went aboord, vowing vnto the ſacred warre that their firſt ſeruice. The knights of MALTA came thither alſo with their gallies. But whileſt theſe things were a doing, *Auria* to incourage them of CORONE, for feare leaſt they diſpairing of helpe ſhould fall to ſome hard compoſition with the Turkes, ſent *Chriſtopher Palauicine* a reſolute young gentleman of an inuincible courage, with a moſt ſwift gallie to CORONE; who by day-light paſſing thorow the middeſt of the Turks fleet, ſafely recouered the hauen, to the great ioy of the beſieged Chriſtians: and ſhortly after, when he had well viewed all things he was ſent for, with the ſtrength and manner of the enemies lying, and filled the minds of the defendants with aſſured hope of ſpeedie reſcue: aboute noon time of the day he ſuddenly brake out againe thorow the middeſt of his enemis, and as it were miraculouſly eſcaped in ſafetie for all that they could doe, although they ceaſed not to giue him chaſe ſo long as they were in any hope to haue ouertaken him. *Auria* departing from NAPLES came to MESSANA, where he certainly enformed of the enemies force both by ſea and land, with the number of their gallies, and ſeeing that the chiefe hope of relieuing of the city conſiſted in celerity, ſtaied not for the gallies hee expected out of SPAINE, but held on his courſe towards GRÆCIA: for it was told him that the enemies fleet daily encreaſed by the cõming in of the Turkiſh pirats; and that *Aſſem-beg* otherwiſe called the Moore of ALEXANDRIA (an arch pirat) was ſtill looked for, in whoſe good directions the Turkiſh captaines repoſed the greateſt hope of their victory. When he was come as farre as ZACYNTHAS, he was enformed by the Venetians, That *Luſtibeius Baſſa* (or rather *Lutzis Baſſa*, the Turks great Admirall and *Solyman* his brother in law) with *Solyman* of ACARNANIA, and the Moore (men for their skill at ſea of great fame and reputation) lay before CORONE with eightie gallies, manned with diuers companies of the old Ianizaries; ſo that it was thought a matter of exceeding perill for him to aduenture to relieue the town, except he took the aduantage of ſome proſperous gale of winde. Wherefore *Auria* to haue yet more certaine knowledge of the enemies fleet, ſent before him *Chriſtopher Palauicine* with one gallie, againe to view the manner of the enemies lying: who paſſing the promontorie of ACRITES, ſaw all the Turkes great fleet lying in very good order before the citie: and ſo returned to *Auria*, confirming that the Venetians had before reported, and that the Turks fleet was greatly encreaſed, and lay readie as it ſhould ſeeme to giue him battell as ſoone as hee ſhould approach the citie. For all that, *Auria* nothing diſmaied with the greatneſſe of the Turkes fleet, made no ſtay but ſtill kept on his courſe, and with a faire gale of winde paſſing the promontorie of ACRITES, came directly towards CORONE. Two great Gallions, of all the fleet the moſt warlike ſhips, came formoſt; whereof the one was *Auria* his owne which hee had built with a wonderfull charge, and the other was of SICILIA: Theſe two great ſhippes were appointed by *Auria* to turne a little vpon the left hand, and at ſuch time as the enemy ſhould ſet forward from the ſhoare to caſt anchor betwixt both the fleets; that as occaſiõ ſhould ſerue, they might as out of two ſtrong caſtles beat the Turkes gallies with their great ordinance, wherewith they were for that purpoſe wonderfully ſtored. Next vnto theſe great Gallions followed the other warlike ſhips with full ſailes: after whom came the gallies in three ſquadrons, whereof *Saluiatus* had the leading of the right wing, which conſiſted of the biſhop of ROMES gallies, and them of MALTA: in the left wing and neere vnto the enemie commaunded *Antonius Auria*: and in the middle was *Auria* himſelfe. At the firſt ſight of the Chriſtian fleet the Turkes moued not from the ſhoare, but diſcharged their ordinance at them a farre off, and then begun to ſet forward and to draw neerer; eſpecially

The order of Auria his fleet before Corone.

the

A the Moore, who with greater courage than the reſt, aſſailed the ſide and reareward of the fleet: for the Chriſtians keeping on their courſe right forth to CORONE, and turning nothing to the left hand as was before appointed, ſeemed as if they had fled; and ſo much the more, for that the gallies in the right wing, for feare of the Turks great ordinance did ſet a great compaſſe farther off into the ſea, and many of the middle ſquadron and of the left wing alſo, had diſorderly thruſt themſelues in amongſt the ſhips, although they had receiued little or no harme of the enemies great ſhot. *The Chriſtian fleet diſorded.*

In this confuſion of the Chriſtian Nauie, the Moore requeſted *Lutzis* the Admirall not to let ſlip ſo faire an occaſion, wherein the Chriſtian fleet might eaſily haue beene ouerthrowne:
B but whileſt *Lutzis* doth ſlowly and conſiderately ſet forward, *Auria* in the meane time had put his fleet againe in order, and with a faire winde was come to CORONE. Two of the ſhips by the way falling foule one on another, ſtaied behinde, being not able to keep way with the reſt: about which all the Turks gallies preſently flockt, and tooke the leſſer of them, killing all the Spaniards they found therein. Out of this they boorded the greater, and with a bloudy fight had woon the forecaſtle and waſte of the ſhip: when *Auria* accounting it no ſmall diſhonor to haue his ſhips ſo ſurpriſed at his heeles, cauſed all his gallies to turne again vpon the enemy to reſcue thoſe ſhips. The Turks ſeeing that, and with the Weſternly wind by little and little fallen down ſo farre with the ſhips, that they were come within the danger of the ſhot of the towne, began with great ſtir to forſake the ſhips, and to betake themſelues to their oares, and ſo in manner of
C flight withdrew themſelues. Whom *Auria* purſued a good way to MODON, thundering in their poupes with his great ſhot, which hee liberally beſtowed amongſt them: whileſt in the meane time *Antonius Auria* came to reſcue the two diſtreſſed ſhips. There the Spaniards which but a little before had hardly maintained their cloſe fights, began now as men reuiued to ſhew themſelues, and couragiouſly to make reſiſtance: and they which came with *Antonius Auria* to their reſcue, entring with wonderfull celerity on euery ſide, ſlew and took three hundred Ianizaries, which with great courage had entred thoſe ſhips, and were there left by the ſudden departure of their fellowes. Amongſt whom was taken one *Ioſuphus* an olde captaine of a thouſand Ianizaries, to whom *Auria* after he was come to CORONE, gaue a faire ſute of apparell and a chaine of gold, and ſo ſet him at liberty without any raunſome, thereby to prouoke the
D Turkes to the like kinde of courteous dealing with the Chriſtians. *Aſſam-beg* the pirat, and the other captaines of the Turkes fleet wonderfully blamed *Lutzis* the Admirall, for that he would not then fight with the Chriſtians, when as he was thereto moſt earneſtly requeſted both by the captaines and ſouldiers in generall, and had a faire opportunity of victory offered at ſuch time as the Chriſtians fleet was diſordered: but he excuſed himſelfe, ſaying, That it was giuen him in ſpeciall charge from *Solyman* the emperour, that he ſhould in any caſe reſpect the ſafety of his nauie, and not to come to the hazard of a battell. The Turkes which beſieged the city by land, vpon the approach of the Chriſtian fleet, forſooke their trenches & fled: at which time *Mendoza* the Gouernour ſallying out, tooke great ſtore of victuall and warlike prouiſion which the Turks had for haſt left behinde them. So *Auria* to his great honour, hauing driuen the Turkes from
E CORONE both by ſea and land, furniſhed the citie with ſtore of corne, wine, victuall, pouder, and ſhot: and committed the defence thereof to *Macicaus*, and the companies of the mutinous Spaniards which he had brought from NAPLES: comforting the Greekes, and exhorting them patiently for a while to endure thoſe calamities of warre, telling them that the emperour would the next Spring make warre againſt the Turkes both by ſea and land in PELOPONESVS, and free them from the Turkiſh bondage. And ſo embarking the old garriſon of Spaniards, departed from CORONE and came before METHON, where he lay as it were brauing the Turks Admirall, hoping thereby to draw him out of that ſtrong harbor to battell. But when hee ſaw that the enemy could by no meanes be allured out of his ſtrength, or aſſailed as he lay, he departed thence to CORCYRA, and ſo backe againe to MESSANA in SICILIA.

Auria arriueth at Corone.

The Turks fleet flieth to Modon.

Corone relieued by Auria.

Auria returneth and before Modon braueth the Turks fleet.

Within a few daies after, *Aſſam-beg* the Moore of ALEXANDRIA and moſt famous pyrat, lying in wait for the marchants ſhips of VENICE comming out of SIRIA with marchandiſe, by chance met with *Hieronimus Canalis* vpon the coaſt of CRETE: where in the night time was fought betwixt them a fierce and cruell battell, wherein of the Moores thirteene gallies foure were ſunke, three taken, and the reſt hauing loſt moſt part of their rowers, fled to ALEXANDRIA. In this fight was ſlaine three hundred Ianizaries which were going to CAIRE, and a

The Moore of Alexandria well beaten and taken by Canalis the Venetian.

thousand other Turks: of all them that was taken there was scarcely one saued, but the Moore himselfe, who grieuously wounded in the face, for safegard of his life was glad to discouer himselfe: for the Venetians maintaining their state by trade and trafficke, do of all other shew least fauour vnto pyrats. When the Moore had made himselfe knowne vnto *Canalis*, there was great care taken for the curing of his wounds, and either of them began with notable dissimulation to excuse the matter to other, saying, that they were both deceiued by the likenesse of the gallies, and mistaking of their friends for enemies: when as for all that they knew one another right well. For the Moore said, that he tooke those Venetian gallies for to haue bin part of *Auria* his fleet: and *Canalis* excused himselfe, by saying, that he mistooke him for *Barbarussa*, who a few yeares before had surprised three of the Venetian gallies. Yet the Venetians doubting how *Solyman* would take the matter, by their embassadour sought to excuse that was done, as a thing happening by errour and mischance: of which excuse *Solyman* accepted, and said moreouer, that *Canalis* had done well & souldior like, to repulse by force the wrong that was offered him. Three of the emperours gallies staying behind the rest of the fleet, were neere vnto the promontorie PALINVRVS, vpon the coast of APVLIA, intercepted and carried away by *Sinam*, surnamed the Iew, a notable pyrat of that time also.

The Winter following, the Spaniards and Greekes in CORONE began to want victuals, especially wine and flesh: for the Turkes had so blocked vp the citie, that nothing was to be had out of the countrie; wherefore the souldiours requested *Macicaus* their Gouernour and Generall to lead them forth to some piece of seruice against the enemie, for so much as they were not to hope for any relefe elsewhere before Aprill, wishing rather valiantly to die like men in fight against the Turkes, than to languish within those dead wals for want of victuall. But *Macicaus* mindful of his charge, sought by many reasons to dissuade them from such purpose, shewing them what an offence it were rashly to depart out of the citie committed to their custodie, which might be vnto them dangerous, although they should speed neuer so wel; and that those wants which they rather feared than felt, would well enough be ouercome by sparing and patience: and therefore told them plainely, that he was resolutely set downe to keepe the citie for the emperor, and to indure all hardnes, rather than to incurre the infamie, That he had forsaken the citie, and betraied his garrison. Yet for all this, the matter was so vrged by *Didacus Touarres* and *Hermosilla*, both great captaines, and by the generall importunitie of the souldiours, that *Macicaus* was inforced to yeeld to their desire, and to promise them to goe: yet earnestly protesting, that he did it altogether against his will, rather enforced than perswaded vnto that, whereof he had no great hope of successe. Amongst other that were so forward in this action, was one *Barbatius*, a most valiant Greeke, who could perfectly speake the Turkes language, and of all others best knew the bywaies and secret passages of the countrie: he vndertooke to bee their guide, and by vnknowne waies to bring them vnto the enemies vndiscouered in the dead time of the night, when as the feared no such matter. So *Macicaus* commending the custodie of the citie to *Liscanius* and *Mendesius*, with charge that they should suffer no man to go out of the citie after his departure, for feare of giuing any knowledge vnto the enemie, set forward about ten a clocke in the night towards ANDRVSSA, *Barbatius* being his guide, who shunning the common beaten waies, brought them by secret and vncouth paths that night halfe the way to ANDRVSSA: but vpon the rising of the Sunne he brought them into a secret woodie valley, where they rested and refreshed themselues all that day, and setting forward againe at night, came to ANDRVSSA before day. In this towne, which was of no great strength, lay one *Caranus*, a warlike captaine, with three thousand footmen, whereof the one halfe was of the Ianizaries, and in the suburbes lay *Acomates* with a thousand chosen horsemen, with which garrison the Turkes kept all that side of PELOPONESVS in awe. *Macicaus* brought by his guide vnto the place where his enemies lay, went directly to the towne to haue surprised it: *Hermosilla* in the meane time standing still with certaine companies of Spaniards ouer against the place where the horsemen lay. But this could not be done with so great silence, but that some of the horse boies being awake, discouered them by the fire in their matches; who first awaked the negligent watchmen, and afterwards raised an alarum in the suburbes: whereupon *Hermosilla* couragiously set vpon the horsemen, being altogether vnreadie, and slew many of them before they could arme themselues, and set fire also vpon the stables wherein the Turkes horses stood, with the rage whereof many of the Turkes perished, with their horses and armour. Great and terrible was the noise

The garison souldiors of Corone desire of their generall to bee brought to some seruice

Macicaus gouernour of Corone goeth out to surprise Andrussa.

A noiſe raiſed vpon the ſudden in the ſuburbes, but eſpecially of the horſes, which burnt as they ſtood faſt tied in the ſtables, or by chance breaking loſe, ran vp and down with their tayles and maines on a light fire: by occaſion whereof, an alarum was raiſed in the towne, and the Turkes got to the wals before the Spaniards could enter. *Macicaus* himſelfe labouring to breake in at a poſterne, was ſhot in the head with a ſmall ſhot, and ſlaine: diuers others neere vnto him were there ſlaine alſo. The Turkes perceiuing the ſmall number of their enemies, ſallied out vpon them, and enforced them to retire to *Hermoſilla*, who had alreadie made great ſpoile amongſt the horſemen, by whoſe skilfull direction the Spaniards retired in ſo good order, making many ſtands, with their harquebuſiers all drawn into the rereward, that ſuch of the Turks as were moſt forward to purſue them, did by their death cauſe the reſt to make leſſe haſt. *Acomates* with ſuch
B of his horſemen as had eſcaped the fire, haſted thither alſo, bringing with him two hundred harquebuſiers, which he had cauſed his horſemen for haſt to take vp behind them vpon their horſes: but whileſt he ſought eagerly to be reuenged vpon his enemies, and with too much heat preſſed on with the formoſt, he was ſhot into the bodie with a bullet and ſlaine. So the horſemen which had before receiued a great loſſe as they lay in their lodgings, accounting it in their good haps that they were not there all ſlaine, and hauing now loſt their captaine, ceaſed any further to purſue their enemies, but returned. The Spaniards and Greekes, although they were wearied both with their long march and euill ſucceſſe, retired ſtill as reſolute men readie to fight, and ſo returned to CORONE. Preſently after, the Turkiſh garriſon remoued from ANDRVSSA to MEGALOPOLIS, now called LONDARIVM: after whoſe departure the Chriſtian ſouldiours of CORONE
C came thither, and buried the dead bodies of their ſlaine followes (which till then lay vnburied) and brought backe with them the head of *Macicaus* their late Generall, which the Turkes had there ſet vp vpon a long pole, which they honourably buried at CORONE. Not long after the plague began to grow hot in CORONE, ſo much the more grieuous, for that it came accompanied with many other hard difficulties. For which cauſes, the Spaniards as men at once enforced with many extremities, embarked themſelues with all the great ordinance and ſuch Greekes as would go with them, in certaine ſhips which came with corne out of SICILIA, and ſo departed, leauing the towne emptie for the Turkes to come vnto.

Macicaus ſlaine.

Corone forſaken by the Spaniards.

It was commonly reported, that the Spaniards left CORONE not without the ſecret conſent of the emperour, which was the rather thought to be ſo, becauſe that they which forſooke the
D place, receiued thereby no diſgrace, and the emperour himſelfe had offered to giue the towne to *Clement* biſhop of ROME: the Venetians and the knights of MALTA, who all refuſed to receiue it, as loath to be at ſo great a charge in keeping a place ſeruing for no greater purpoſe; the verie cauſe why the emperour was ſo willing to depart with it. Now *Clement* the great biſhop had by meanes of *Aloyſius Grittus* made a motion of a peace, to haue been concluded for ten yeares betwixt *Solyman* and the Chriſtian princes, and therupon the towne to haue been againe deliuered vnto the Turkes: which peace *Solyman* was not altogither vnwilling to grant, being then wholy bent to inuade the Perſian king. *Ferdinand* was alſo in good hope that his brother *Charles* the emperor, would for the yeelding vp of that towne haue couenanted with the Turke ſome great matter for his benefit in HVNGARIE, which as was thought would alſo haue been
E eaſily obtained. But whileſt the emperour drawne diuerſly with the conſideration of his honour in keeping it, and of his profit in giuing it vp, ſtood too long in reſoluing; the towne in the meane time was by the Spaniards (their neceſſitie daily increaſing) abandoned, and ſo left to the Turkes for nothing.

Solyman now purpoſing to turne his forces againſt the Perſians, of whom hee had in the frontiers of his dominions receiued great hurt, eſpecially in COMAGENE; renewed the league he had with the Venetians, and ſome other Chriſtian princes: but of all other his affaires with the Chriſtians, he was moſt carefull of the intereſt he had alreadie gotten in HVNGARIE. For it was reported, that king *Iohn* his vaſſale induced by the continuall ſolicitations of his ſubiects, was deſirous of peace with king *Ferdinand*, vpon condition that hee might quietly enioy the
F kingdome during his life: and after his deceaſe it to remaine to king *Ferdinand* and his heires. Wherefore *Solyman*, that nothing ſhould bee there done in his abſence without his knowledge, ſent *Aloyſius Grittus* the duke of VENICE his ſonne (of whom we haue before ſpoken) a man both for the honour of his houſe, the good cariage of himſelfe, and the ſpeciall commendation of *Abraham* the chiefe Baſſa, in great credit with him: with commiſſion as his Lieutenant to be

1534

Aloyſius Grittus the duke of Venice his ſonne, Solymans lieutenant in Hungarie, to ouerſee king Iohn.

aſſiſtant

assistant vnto king *Iohn*, in such magnificall sort, as that without him the king might conclude G
nothing in matters of state, concerning either peace or warres, with any other the Christian princes. With this proud commission from the Graund seignior, *Grittus* entred into TRANSILVANIA, then a part of the kingdome of HVNGARIE (much about the same time that *Solyman* set forward from CONSTANTINOPLE against the Persian) attended vpon with seauen thousand persons of one sort and other, amongst whom were *Vrbanus Batianus*, and *Ianus Docia*, two famous Hungarian captaines with their companies, and many of the Turkes Ianizaries also. At his first comming, to make his authoritie the more knowne, he sent out his proud commaund vnto the great men and gouernours of the cities of that warlike prouince, charging them forthwith to repaire vnto him as great *Solymans* deputie, authorised by him to heare and determine all the controuersies and matters of state concerning the kingdome of HVNGARIE. At that H
time *Americus Cibachus* bishop of VERADIVM, a man of great nobilitie and power, withall singularly well qualitied, was Vayuod or gouernour of TRANSILVANIA, an honour next vnto the king: he vnderstanding that *Grittus* was come into his prouince, and making small hast to welcome him, as one not greatly moued with his comming, or much regarding the commandement of *Solyman*; wonderfully offended *Grittus*, who desired nothing more than at his first entrance to haue confirmed the opinion of his authoritie in the minds of the vulgar people by the prest and readie attendance of the Vayuod. But it was commonly bruted, that the stout bishop vpon a Christian zeale detested the friendship of the Turkes, and could not well brooke that they should be too much acquainted in his prouince, for feare least that fruitfull countrey abounding with men and horses, should by one meanes or other fall into their hands. *Grittus* I
was come to BAXOVIA when he vnderstood by many messengers, that the Vayuod was comming with a great traine, and lay about ten miles off, encamped with diuers gallant troupes of horsemen in warlike manner appointed: for the bishops of HVNGARIE being wonderfull rich, were by old custome bound to keep great nũbers of horsmẽ, which as occasion serued they vsed to bring into the fields against the Turke; accounting it great honour with their religious hands to defend the cause of religion. But then especially the nobilitie of the countrey well appointed, resorted on euerie side, of courtesie to honour and countenance their great bishop and Gouernour, at whose commaundement they were: in so much as the bishops retinue made shew of a good armie. Which thing moued *Grittus* exceedingly, that he should be enforced contrarie to his expectation to parley with the bishop in the open fields, as with an enemie in sight of all K
their followers. Hereof rise enuie, a deadly mischiefe alwaies repining at another mans honor; when as the one swelling with Turkish pride could not then abide any equall, & the other iealous of his honour could by no meanes endure any superiour, in such place as he had the soueraignetie of. When these two great men had met togither in the open fields, and there dined more like enemies than friends, without any shew of friendship or good will: *Grittus* inwardly chafed at his bare entertainment, couertly threatened to be reuenged vpon all such as should make so light account of his authoritie: and immediatly as he departed from the banket, taking his cap from his head (which was after the Turkish manner made of a high fashiõ, of rich sables) and opening it with both his hands, said, This cap will not hold two heads, and therefore it must L
be fitted to one, and so put it on againe. *Ianus Docia* one of the Hungarian captains, his followers, who deadly hated the Vayuod (for that he had long time before, for his malapert speech in a great assembly, giuen him a blow with his fist) tooke hold of that speech of *Grittus*, as a fit occasion for him to worke his reuenge: and said, *Your honour maketh a fit comparison, neither can this prouince containe two equall gouernours or commaunders, nor you euer enioy your power and authoritie, except you doe this day with speedie and manly resolution defend both* Solymans *credit and your owne. You know not this proud beast* Americus, *whose pride and insolencie if you but say the word, I will quickly put downe: for he hateth* Solyman, *he regardeth not the king, and of you he maketh no account at all, for why he aspireth vnto the maiestie of a king, and saith that the Vayuodship of* TRANSILVANIA *well beseemeth a king; for that in this countrey* Decebaldus *the Dacian sometime raigned, whom the warlike emperour* Traian *with all the force of the Roman empire hardly subdued. No* M
man can more proudly or arrogantly set himselfe forth than he, neither more craftely or cunningly dissemble to serue his turne. Indeed he hath for fashion sake presented your honour with a few simple presents, and giuen you his hand also, better knowne for his falshood than his faith; to the intent that when you are once past his countrey, he may scoffe and ieast at your decrees: verely he deadly enuieth at

your

Americus bishop of Veradium and Vayuod of Transiluania, contemneth Grittus.

Ianus Docia inciteth Grittus against the Vayuod.

A *your honour and felicitie, and grudgeth in his heart, that you ſhould ſet downe the lawes of peace and warre in* HVNGARIE : *and whereas he doth manifeſtly aſpire vnto a kingdome, he feareth you aboue all others, leaſt you ſhould trouble his deſignes, abate his credit, and chaſtiſe his inſolencie. Verely, hee that thus maligneth your happineſſe, and contemneth your authoritie, is not to be ſuffered, but by good reaſon to be taken away : thereby at this your firſt entrance to defend the credit of your commiſsion and honour of your name. For nothing is more dangerous than a faithleſſe companion and a ſecret enemy, eſpecially when you ſhall leaue him at your backe behind you : for when he ſhall as occaſion ſerues ſhew forth his hidden malice, he ſhall ſo much the more ſtily and deſperatly indanger your perſon.* Grittus enraged with his ſpeech more than before, thought it beſt to make haſt, & to vſe his authoritie to the full; he commended *Docia*, and promiſed him in ſhort time to requite his good will towards
B him, eſpecially if he would by ſome notable attempt abate the biſhops pride. It is reported, that *Grittus* gaue him no other charge but to take the biſhop, that ſo he might after the Turkiſh maner haue ſent him in chains to CONSTANTINOPLE, & beſtowed the honor of the Vayuod vpon *Hieronimus Laſcus* the Polonian, who in hope of that honourable preferment vnto him promiſed by king *Iohn*, had done him great and faithfull ſeruice, as his embaſſador both vnto *Solyman* and alſo to the French king. But when king *Iohn* perceiued that he could not conueniently with- *The cauſe why Laſcus the Polonian fell from king Iohn.*
out manifeſt danger place him, being a Polonian (who could ſcarcely ſpeak the Hungarian lan-
guage) gouernour ouer ſuch a warlike people; he as it were enforced by neceſſitie, preferred this *Americus* the biſhop of VERADIVM, a man of them both reuerenced and feared: Which ſo
C grieued *Laſcus*, a man of great ſtomacke and experience, and thereunto excellently learned, that he would neuer admit any excuſe of the kings, but alwaies after complained that he was by the king deluded. Yet for all that, he kept himſelfe within the bounds of loyaltie, and enioyed certaine lands and townes which the king had giuen him in the borders of POLONIA; and eſtranged neuertheleſſe from him in mind, was now become one of *Grittus* his followers, hoping of his better preferment by his meanes vnto *Solyman*; and for that cauſe was not ſo forward to doe the king ſuch ſeruice as he had in times paſt. Now by the commandement of *Grittus*, a ſtrong companie of Turkiſh horſemen, and certaine troupes of Hungarians, were deliuered to *Docia*; who ſecretly departing that night from BAXOVIA, came ſuddenly to the Vayuods campe, hauing a little before by his Hungarian ſpies learned that he lay in the open fields in his tent, by
D reaſon of the great heat, without any watch or guard, attended on only with his pages and houſhold ſeruants, as a man without feare; & that all the reſt of his retinue lay diſperſed in the countrey villages round about. All which ſerued ſo well for *Docia* his purpoſe, that the Vayuod ignorant of his death ſo nigh at hand, who rather contemned than feared his enemies, was ſuddenly oppreſſed by *Docia* his ſouldiours: ſo that whileſt he was yet lying in his bed, and ſcarcely *The Vayuod murdred in his tent by Docia, and his head preſented to Grittus.*
well awaked by his chamberlaines and the noiſe of the enemie; *Docia* breaking into his tent, cut
off his head as he lay. All they which lay neere, amazed with the ſuddennеſſe of the matter, fled away for feare, and left their horſes and other things for a prey to the Turkes, and other of *Docia* his followers. *Docia* hauing done ſo great an outrage, returned to *Grittus* preſenting vnto him the Vayuods head, which he brought in his hand by the eare. *Laſcus* was then preſent, but altogether ignorant of the murther, who as a man moued with a naturall compaſſion in ſo ſudden
E and horrible a fact, & forgetting all former grudge (as in like caſe it oftentimes chanceth) ſtood as one diſmaied, nothing reioycing at the vnworthie death of his enemie. To whom *Grittus* turning himſelfe ſaid, *Laſcus*, Doeſt thou not know this ſhauen pate, truely it is a great mans head, but of ſuch a one as was verie ambitious, rebellious, and proud. To whom *Laſcus* replied, Truely though I loued him not, yet I thought it not ſo whileſt it ſtood vpon his ſhoulders : diſallowing therein the crueltie of the fact. Which thing *Grittus* perceiuing, began to repent him of that was done, and ſaid openly, That although he was worthily ſlain, yet he could haue wiſhed rather to haue had him taken priſoner. The report of this horrible murther once *The Tranſiluanians riſe vp in armes againſt Grittus, to reuenge the death of the Vayuod.*
bruted abroad, the biſhops kinſmen & friends, yea almoſt all the people of that prouince riſe vp
F in armes againſt *Grittus*, to reuenge the death of the reuerend biſhop, whom liuing they had both loued and feared. Neuer did any people in reuenge of a common wrong, enter into armes with greater deſire, more heat, or quicker ſpeed : ſo that in a few daies there were aſſembled together fortie thouſand horſe and foot, vnder the leading of *Stephanus Maylat* a noble gentleman, who of all other moſt honored the biſhop, and in that common griefe took vpon him as chiefe, the perſecuting of the authors of ſuch inhumane crueltie. *Grittus* perceiuing how grieuouſly the

matter

mãtter was taken, with the danger he was in, began to doubt with himſelfe what courſe were G
beſt for him to take. To go forward, & to fall into the hands of the furious people, the ſame was
preſent death; and to returne and leaue the honorable deputation he had with ſo great expecta-
tion of all men taken vpon him, was vnto his aſpiring mind no leſſe torment than death it ſelfe.
Thus perplexed, he with all ſpeed got himſelfe with his followers to the ſtrong towne of MEGE,
in hope to ſhroud himſelfe vntill ſuch time as the rage of the countrie people were either of it
ſelf appeaſed (as it oftentimes falleth out in ſuch ſudden tumults) or els he ſhould be relieued by
king *Iohn*, or the Turks Sanzacks which had the charge of the frontiers of the Turkiſh empire.
The townſmẽ of MEGE ſeeing *Grittus* accompanied with ſo many Turks, ſhut the gates againſt
him: yet at length by the perſuaſion of the two Hungarian captaines *Docia* and *Batianus*, they
gaue him leaue to enter into the baſe towne, hauing before retired themſelues with all their ſub- H
ſtance vnto the higher towne, which in manner of a ſtrong caſtle commaunded the lower. Here
whileſt *Grittus* with all carefulneſſe fortifieth the place, and diſpatcheth the meſſengers vnto his
friends abroad for aid; his enemies with hideous noiſe & outcries approching the town, at their
firſt comming attempted to haue ſcaled the wals and rampiers therof: which thing whileſt they
diſorderly did, with greater furie than diſcretion, they were eaſily repulſed and many of them
Grittus beſieged by the Tranſiluanians. ſlaine by the Turkes Ianizaries and harquebuſiers. After which loſſe, by the direction of *Maylat*
their Generall, they withdrew themſelues out of the danger of the ſhot, and encamped on eue-
ry ſide of the town, hoping as the truth was, that their enemies vnprouided of victual could not
long hold the place, but muſt of neceſſitie either ſtarue with famine or yeeld it vp. In the meane
time *Grittus* reſolutly enduring all the calamities of a man beſieged, fell ſicke, and ſo much the I
more for that he could heare nothing of any aide which hee expected from his friends: For
king *Iohn* glad in his mind of the diſtreſſe of the ouerſeer, or rather competitor of his kingdome;
and alſo knowing that he could not without great diſcontentment of his ſubiects oppoſe him-
ſelfe againſt ſuch a multitude riſen vpon ſo iuſt a cauſe, yet for faſhion ſake ſent certain troups of
horſemen to his reliefe: who not altogether ignorant of the kings mind, made ſuch haſt, as men
that purpoſed not to come in time to do him good. As for the Turkes Sanzacks of BELGRADE
and SAMANDRIA, they enuying at his honour, flatly refuſed to depart from their charge to re-
lieue him, without expreſſe commaund from *Solyman* himſelfe: and *Laſcus* (before one of
Grittus his chiefe followers, but now a beholder of his diſtreſſe) when he had a little before de-
parted from him to procure him ſome reliefe as he promiſed, did now in this extremitie forſake K
him alſo. The citizens in the vpper towne, who a great while had ſtood looking on from aboue
as men indifferent; perceiuing the full reſolution of their countrie men to be reuenged, and the
difficulties wherewith the Turks were incloſed, aſſailed them alſo from the high towne. *Grittus*
thus beſet on euerie ſide, offered vnto the Tranſiluanians a great maſſe of money, to ſuffer him
to paſſe forward into HVNGARIE: but their furious minds more deſirous of reuenge than mo-
ney, were not to bee moued with any gold. In fine he ſent rich iewels vnto the Gouernour of
MOLDAVIA his friend, to be readie at a certaine houre when he would ſallie out of the towne, to
receiue him with certaine troupes of horſemen; ſo if it were poſſible to ſaue himſelfe and his
children. *Grittus* (whether it were vpon a doubtfull hope, or vrged by ineuitable deſtinie) ſally-
ing out of the towne at the appointed time, with *Solymans* commiſſion in his hand, and miſſing L
Grittus taken and brought to Maylat. of the Moldauian, fell vpon *Francis Schenden* the late biſhops nigh kinſman, and *Maylat* his fa-
miliar friend; who furiouſly running in vpon him with tumultuous ſpeech, violently raught
from his head his rich cap of Sables, and with his horſemen tooke him, being weake with ſick-
neſſe and making no reſiſtance. His followers, eſpecially the Turkes, encloſed on euery ſide,
were either ſlaine or taken. But *Grittus* himſelfe being brought to the Generals tent, beſet round
with his armed enemies, and there examined, Why he had commaunded the Vayuod to bee
ſlaine? earneſtly proteſted, That he neuer commaunded any ſuch thing, and that it was done
without his knowledge. Which his aunſwere ſerued not his turne, all the people crying out
againſt him with one voice, that he ſhould as a ſacrifice bee offered vnto the Vayuods ghoſt.
Grittus beheaded. Whereupon he was by *Maylat* deliuered againe to *Francis Schenden* to be executed, who with- M
out delay cauſed his head to be ſtrucke off. The nobilitie and the Vayuods kinſmen (after the
manner of that people) dipped ſome part of their garments in his bloud, the longer to keepe in
mind the remembrance of the reuenge. This was the ſhamefull end of *Aloyſius Grittus* the duke
of VENICE his ſonne, *Solymans* deputie in HVNGARIE, with whom he was in ſuch credit as ne-

uer

A uer was any Christian abounding in wealth and worldly felicity: but climing too fast vp the euill staued ladder of ambition, suddenly fell and neuer rise more. The executioner stripping his dead body, found about him so many precious stones and jewels as were valued at forty millions of duckats. And not long after, *Lascus* sent for by the king to BVDA, was straightly examined vpon torture concerning *Grittus* his commission and purposes, and was in great danger of his life: but at last by the intercession of *Sigismund* king of POLONIA, he was set at liberty, & so fled out of HVNGARIE vnto *Sigismund* his court in POLONIA: after hee had long time wearied himselfe, and aduentured his life in the Hungarian state. *Docia* the author of this Tragedie, was by the furious people afterwards rent in peeces, and so perished.

The riches found about Grittus.

The same time that *Grittus* went from CONSTANTINOPLE into HVNGARIE, *Solyman* the Turkish emperour dreading no danger out of EVROPE, tooke in hand two great expeditions both at one time, the one by land into ASIA against the Persians, and the other by sea into AFFRICKE against the Moores: promising vnto himselfe in his inordinate desires the monarchie of the whole world in short time, if he might subdue these two great nations whom hee had already in hope deuoured. But for as much as all cannot be told at once, which was at one time in diuers places so farre distant done; omitting for a while the expedition made in person himselfe against the Persians, we will first declare what he did by his lieutenants against the Moores. *Hariadenus* surnamed of the Christians *Barbarussa*, who succeeding his elder brother *Horruccius* in the kingdome of ALGIERS in AFFRICKE, had by many victories so enlarged the kindome before gotten by his brother, that his name and power was now become terrible both to the
C Christians and wilde Moores, and his fame growne great in the Turkish court, was the cheefe author and perswader of *Solyman* to inuade AFFRICKE. But it shall not (as I thinke) be far from our purpose heere breefely to rehearse by what meanes those two MYTILENE brethren, basely borne, crept out of a small galliot vnto the majestie of great kings, that herein they which come afterwards may also admire the wonderfull changes and chances of these worldly things, now vp, now downe, as if the life of man were not of much more certaintie then a stage play.

Solyman at one time purposeth to inuade Persia and Affricke.

These two brethren, *Horruccius* and *Hariadenus*, borne at MYTILENE in the Island of LESBO, weary of the poore and base estate they led at home with their father, a renegate Grecian; stealing a little galliot, committed themselues and all the hope of their good fortune to sea, where by chance they consorted themselues with *Camales*, a most famous pyrat of that time, vn-
D der whom *Horuccius* the elder brother for his forwardnesse became a captain: and growing rich by many purchases, and also strong with gallies and slaues which he had at sundry times taken, and at last consorting himselfe with *Haidin*, *Sinam* the Iew, *Salec*, and other lesse pyrates, which afterwards became men of great fame and account, ouer whom hee commanded as an arch pyrat, came seeking after purchase as farre as MAVRITANIA. At which time *Selymes* king of IVLIA CÆSARIA, which now we call ALGIERS, was in armes against his brother *Mechemetes*, competitour of the kingdome: who aided by the Numidians, now commonly called Arabians, put his brother in great doubt of his estate. *Selymes* glad of the comming of *Horruccius* & the other pyrats his followers, with a great masse of money paid before hand, induced *Horruccius* and the rest to take vpon them the defence of him and his kingdome against his brother: Which thing
E *Horuccius* so happily performed, especially by the meanes of his harquebusiers, as then no small terrour to the wild Moores and Numidians, that in short time he repulsed that sauage people, and set *Selymes* at peace in his kingdom. *Horruccius* being a man of a sharpe wit, and by nature ambitious, noting in the time of his seruice the kings mild and simple disposition, void of all distrust; and that the naked Moores were no souldiers, but a light and vnconstant people, alwaies at variance among themselues; and that the wandering Numidians liuing barely, diuided into many factions, were easily by reward to be woon, or by force constrained: suddenly falsified his faith, and villanously slew *Selymes* the king, as he was bathing himselfe, mistrusting nothing lesse than the falshood of the pyrat; and in the same hurle murthering such as he thought would with-
F stand his desire, and with bounty and cruelty ouercomming the rest, so wrought the matter, that he was by generall consent chosen king of ALGIERS. Thus of a pyrat become a king, hee shortly after by policie surprised CIRCELLO, a famous citie (about sixty mile distant from ALGIERS) by his souldiors sent thither in the habite of marchants. After that, he by his brother *Hariadenus* (no lesse valiant then himselfe) troubled all the Mediterranian sea from ALGIERS with his gallies, & all his neighbors: himselfe by land with daily incursions, leauing nothing vntoucht

The poor beginning of Horuccius and Hariadenus, who of base pyrats aspired to the kingdom of Algiers.

Horuccius his succesſe.

which

which might by force or policie be had: ſo that his power dayly encreaſed, men of ſeruice continually reſorting vnto him, as the cheef man in all thoſe parts. Not thus contented, he to enlarge his kingdome, draue the Spaniards out of BVGEA, a citie famous both for the great trade thither, and for the Mahometane ſchoole ſometime there kept: at the taking whereof he loſt his right hand with a ſhot, and in ſtead thereof euer after vſed a hand of yron, wherewith hee obtained many worthie victories againſt his enemies: for neere to ALGIERS he ouerthrew an armie of the Spaniards, with *Diego de Vara* their generall. And ſhortly after, at ſuch time as *Hugo Moncada* returning out of ITALIE with the old Spaniſh ſouldiers, landed in his countrey, he enforced him againe to ſea; where he with all his expert ſouldiers either periſhed by ſhipwracke, or driuen on ſhore, were ſlaine or taken priſoners by *Horruccius*, and thruſt into his gallies. At laſt hauing in ſundrie battels ouercome the king of TREMISSA, *Charles* the emperour his confederat, and thruſt him out of his kingdome, he ſtirred vp both the Chriſtians and Numidians againſt him: ſo that comming to take ORA and PORTVS, two ſtrong holds kept by garriſons of Spaniards ſent thither to aid the king of TREMISSA, he was by them and the Moores at the firſt repulſed, and afterwards quite ouerthrowne: where moſt part of his armie being ſlaine or taken priſoners, he with a few of his friends ſought to ſaue themſelues by flight ouer the deſart ſands; and ſeeing himſelfe hardly purſued by his enemies, ſcattered may peeces of gold vpon the ſands as he fled, thereby to haue ſtaied their haſtie purſute: but they more deſirous of him than of his gold, followed ſo faſt, that at the laſt they ouertooke him, and without further delay ſtrucke off his head, which was afterwards ſent into SPAINE, and carried vpon a launce thorow all the townes and cities alongſt the ſea coaſt, to the wonderfull reioycing of the people, vnto whom he had in former time done great harme.

Horruccius ſlain and his head caried about in Spaine.

After the death of *Horruccius*, *Hariadenus* inferiour to his brother neither in courage nor martiall proweſſe, by the generall conſent of the ſouldiours tooke vpon him the kingdome of ALGIERS. He, made heire not onely of his brothers kingdome, but of his vertues and hautie thoughts, and of the ſurname alſo of *Barbaruſſa*, began forthwith to aſpire vnto the empire of all that part of AFFRICKE, accounting what he had alreadie gotten, too little and too baſe to anſwere his deſires. Wherefore he entred into armes, and became a terrour both to the Moores and Numidians, holding peace with ſome, and wars with others, as beſt ſerued his purpoſe: and with his gallies robbed and ſpoiled the coaſts of SPAINE, SARDINIA, and the Iſlands BALEARES; fortune ſo fauouring him in all his enterpriſes, that he became both famous and feareful vnto his enemies. He ſlew *Hamet*, a great commander among the Numidians, & chaſed *Benchades* and *Amida*, two of their greateſt princes, out of the country: and with like fortune at ſea ouercame *Hugo Moncada*, a famous Spaniard, who ſore wounded, had much adoe to ſaue himſelfe by flight, when he had loſt diuers of his gallies. He alſo in battell at ſea ouerthrew *Rodericus Portundus*, admirall of SPAINE: in which fight the admirall with his ſonne were both ſlaine, and ſeuen of his gallies taken: In token of which victorie, he ſent part of the rich ſpoile there taken with the admirals enſigne, as a preſent vnto *Solyman*, whereby he became famous in the Turks court; but much more after he had repulſed *Auria* from CERCENNA, and taken two great Genoway ſhips which were comming to *Auria* loaded with men and munition, the loſſe whereof filled the citie of GENVA with much ſorrow. All things ſorting thus according to his deſire, and his name become no leſſe terrible in SPAINE, ITALIE, SICILIE, and the Iſlands of the Mediterranean, than it was in the greateſt part of AFFRICKE; *Solyman* grieued with the loſſe of CORONE, PATRAS, and the caſtles vpon the ſtraits of LEPANTO, taken from him by *Auria*, *Himerales* his admirall being ſhamefully put to flight: by the counſell of his Baſſaes, but eſpecially of *Abraham* the cheefe Baſſa, ſent embaſſadours vnto him to ALGIERS, offering him the greateſt honours of his court, and to make him admirall of all his fleet, if hee would forthwith repaire vnto CONSTANTINOPLE: for why he was the onely man in all mens iudgements, who for his yeares and great experience at ſea, as well as for his inuincible courage and glorie of his late atchieued kingdome, was to be compared with *Auria*, and to bee oppoſed againſt the Chriſtian fleet. *Sinas* a great man in *Solymans* court, was with this embaſſage ſent, and ſpeedily tranſported to ALGIERS by *Mangalis*, a famous pyrat, then gouernour of the RHODES: who at his landing was honourably receiued by *Barbaruſſa*, and audience giuen him. *Barbaruſſa* vnderſtanding the cauſe of his comming, was exceeding glad therof, preſently conceiuing no ſmall hope of obtaining the Monarchie of AFFRICK, if he might once come to *Solymans* preſence,

Hariadenus ſurnamed Barbaruſſa, ſucceedeth his brother Horruccius in the kingdome of Algiers.

His wonderfull ſucceſſe.

Solyman ſendeth for Barbaruſſa.

and

A and at large ſhew vnto him the ſtate of AFFRICKE, and power of the Chriſtians, with their continuall diſcord amongſt themſelues. Wherefore without further delay committing the protection of his ſonne *Aſanes* (then about eighteene yeares old) and the gouernment of his new gotten kingdome to *Ramada* and *Agis*, two of his nigh kinſmen and aſſured friends, of whoſe fidelitie he doubted not: he with ſortie of his owne gallies, in moſt warlike manner appointed, ſet forward with *Solymans* embaſſador towards CONSTANTINOPLE; where by the way he met with a fleet of Genoway ſhips bound for SICILE for corne, which after a ſharpe and cruell fight he tooke and burnt. After that, landing by night in the Iſland of ELBA, not farre from NAPLES, he ſuddenly ſurpriſed RHIVM, a rich citie; where loading his gallies with the wealth
B therof, and carying away with him all the inhabitants into captiuitie, he arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE in the yere 1533, where he was by the great courtiers brought to *Solyman*, of whom he was ioifully receiued, if it were but for the preſents which he gaue him: which were fair boies and young maidens ſumptuouſly apparrelled, eunuchs, and wild beaſts of LYBIA, as Lyons, Leopards, and ſuch like. But after he had certaine daies diſcourſed at large with the great Baſſaes of the ſtate of AFFRICKE, the ſtrength of the Chriſtians, and how the warres were to be managed, he was afterwards by them ſeldomer ſent for, & offering himſelfe into their companie, was hardly admitted: for enuie (the inſeperable companion of growing honour) had quickly ouertaken him in the court, ſo that many men letted not openly to ſay, That it had not beene the faſhion of the *Othoman* kings to preferre pyrats (the worſt kind of theeues) to the honour of their
C great Admiral; and that there wanted not, neither euer would want men both vertuous and valiant in the Turks court, which could with great honour maintaine and augment the glorie of the Turkiſh empire both by ſea and land, whereas he had againſt all right and conſcience, by ſhamefull treacherie intruded himſelfe into another mans kingdome in AFFRICKE, and there perſecuted the Mahometane princes and people, being of no religion himſelfe, as one that was borne of a renegat Greeke, and had from his youth liued as a mercileſſe pyrat, and common enemie of mankind. By which ſpeeches, *Barbaruſſa* well perceiued in how euill time *Abraham Baſſa* his beſt friend, and by whoſe means he was ſent for, was abſent from the court: who at that time was gone into COMAGENA; and wintered at ALEPPO, with purpoſe (as *Solymans* forerunner) with the firſt of the Spring to paſſe ouer Euphrates againſt the Perſian. After long ſute
D and much expectation, *Solyman* anſwered *Barbaruſſa* by *Aiax* and *Caſſimes*, two of the great Baſſaes, That all the matter concerning him ſhould be referred to the diſcretion of *Abraham* the chiefe Baſſa, for that he was by his counſell eſpecially ſent for into AFFRICKE: wherefore if he did expect any thing, hee ſhould repaire vnto him in SYRIA, that according to his graue iudgement all things might be ordered. *Barbaruſſa* thus reiected into SYRIA, although he well perceiued that it tended to his no ſmall diſgrace; yet in hope by ſufferance to obtaine another kingdome, ſeemed contented with the anſwere, and reſolued forthwith to take vpon him that long and painful iourney, which the old king luſtily performed: and ſo poſting by land thorow ASIA the leſſe, and trauelling ouer the mountaine AMANVS, then couered with deepe ſnowe, came in the dead time of Winter to ALEPPO in SYRIA, where hee was honourably receiued
E of the great Baſſa, and heard at large, to his ſo good contentation and liking, that he deemed him of all others the fitteſt to commaund the Turks power at ſea, and to that purpoſe writ commendatorie letters in his behalf to *Solyman*; wiſhing him for his ſufficiencie to place him as the fourth with the other three Baſſaes of his counſel. After *Barbaruſſa* was againe arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE with theſe letters, and that it was once knowne how effectually the chiefe Baſſa had commended him to *Solyman*, it was a world to ſee, how vpon the ſudden the face of the court was changed vpon him, euerie man either for friendſhip or flatterie begun now to ſpeake of his praiſes, and to extoll his worthineſſe: who was now in all mens mouths but *Barbaruſſa*? ſo great was the power and authoritie of the chief Baſſa, that being abſent, yet was his approbation of all men accounted ſufficient to prefer whom he pleaſed; and his letters laws to the reſt of the court.
F *Barbaruſſa* had brought with him from ALGIERS one *Roſcetes*, the elder brother of *Muleaſſes*, king of TVNES, who wrongfully driuen into exile by his younger brother, had liued certaine yeares at ALGIERS, but now by the perſuaſion of *Barbaruſſa* was come with him to CONSTANTINOPLE, to craue aid of *Solyman* againſt the oppreſſion of his brother. Him *Barbaruſſa* oftentimes ſhewed vnto the great Baſſaes, and in his diſcourſes with them concerning the conqueſt of AFFRICKE, ſet him out as a moſt fit inſtrument for ſubduing of the kingdom of TVNES,

Barbaruſſa commeth to Conſtantinople.

Barbaruſſa enued in the Turkes court.

Barbaruſſa reiected to Abraham the great Baſſa.

He trauelleth into Siria to the Baſſa, and is by him commended to Solyman.

His returne to Conſtantinople.

Roſcetes.

as a man whom the people more affected than they did *Muleasses* the vsurper, After long deli- G
beration and consultation had with the Bassaes, concerning the inuasion of AFFRICKE, *Barba-*
russa now admitted vnto the presence of *Solyman*, in these or like words persuaded him to that
warre, for the entrance whereunto we haue thus farre digressed.

Barbarussa his speech to Solyman to persuade him to inuade Tunes.

What thing the priests with lowd voice vse to pray for, at such time as the Othoman *emperours enter into the temple to pray, the same thing doe I also wish vnto thee most mightie* Solyman, *which is, That thou shouldest remember, thy progenitors by iustice and religion to haue got for thee this empire, than which, more magnificent or richer the gods haue not giuen to any: fortune hath neuer deceiued them that tread that way, and thou hetherto hast so traced their steps, that thou hast easily surmounted their fame and glorie, administring iustice to thy subiects; and inflamed with the hope* H
of eternall praise, making continuall warre against the enemies of our religion, the true office of a zealous prince. By this meanes is BELGRADE *taken,* RHODES *woon, the king of* HVNGARIE *slaine in battell,* GERMANIE *twice harried and burnt: so that* Charles, *whom the Christians would make equall to thy selfe in power and valour, with the great aid almost of all the Christian nations, terrified with the noise of thy armie, shunned battell. But for as much as empires be they neuer so large, or victories be they neuer so glorious, can either satisfie the greatnesse of an heroicall mind, or glut the same with glorie: thou hast therefore sent before thee thy victorious ensignes against the Persians and Parthians, that those nations who haue wickedly fallen from our rites, purified as it were by thy sacred armes, may be againe reclaimed to the auntient rites of our religion. But be this vnto thy greatnesse most honourable to attempt, and glorious to performe: let it only be lawfull for me now growne an old* I
man in the middest of armes and dangers, to declare what is expedient, and briefly to open such things as I haue by long experience learned to concerne the augmenting of thy fame and empire elsewhere. Neither would I haue you to take this as presumptuously spoken of me: for fortune hath enough, yea and more than enough fauoured my designes, whom from a poore cottage and bare hope, she hath promoted to glorious victories, great riches, yea vnto the title and maiestie of a king. But vnto these things the gods could giue me nothing better than to be called for of thee, and sent for, in counsell to discourse of matters of greatest importance: wherefore my aduise shall bee vnto thee faithfull, and with experience confirmed; which although it be all that it seemeth old men can doe, yet in my sound bodie remaineth such strength, that I dare both promise and performe vnto thee my good seruice at all assaies both by sea and land. For vnto this onely course haue I bent my selfe day and night from my K
youth (following the purpose and counsell of my valiant brother Horruccius, *who to extend the bounds of our religion, persecuted the Christians both by sea and land) desiring nothing more, than that thy fleet and power might once be ioined with my forces and direction, and so vnder thy good hap to be either a commaunder, or else commaunded: for as much as it grieueth me not to be commaunded by my betters: of which my desires if the gods shall make me partaker, the Spaniards shall shortly be driuen quite out of* AFFRICKE, *thou shalt heare that the Moores are gone ouer into* SPAINE *to repossesse the kingdome of* GRANADO, *that* TVNES *and* NVMIDIA *are at thy commaund, and not to speake of* SARDINIA *and* CORSICA, *that* SICILIA *is ours: which once taken, we shall starue vp* ITALIE, *and on euery side distresse it with our fleet, being now weake and brought low by the discord of the* L
princes, and that part thereof both towards SICILIA *and* MACEDONIA *readie to submit it selfe vpon any condition, so it might cast off the Spanish yoke. Thinke not that either that strength or vnitie is now in* ITALIE, *which was when thy great grandfather* Mahomet *hauing taken* HYDRVNTVM, *brought a great feare not vpon* ITALIE *onely, but vpon other the Christian nations also: For by the good successe of that warre, which all the Christian princes could hardly withstand, he had vndoubtedly taken the citie of* ROME, *and so according to right and reason againe vnited the empire of the East and of the West, as they were before in their auntient glorie: But hee suddainely left the world, rapt to heauen, that he might leaue to thee (according to the appointment of the fatall destinies and reuolutions of the heauens) this worke of absolute perfection. And yet my purpose is not by put-*
ting thee in hope of so great and rare a triumph, to interrupt or hinder thee for turning thy power M
into the East against thy old and irreligious enemies, deseruing all extremities: for thy naue shall be sufficient for me, whereof thou shalt haue no need in thy warres so farre within land, that whilest thou art conquering ASIA, AFRICA *the third part of the world may in the meane time be brought vnder thy subiection also. Where before all other things,* Muleasses *is to be driuen out of* TVNES, *a man of insatiable couetousnesse, vnstayed lust, horrible cruelties, hated both of God and man: who hauing*

A *by trecherie ſlaine eightéene of his brethren, or that which worſe is, cruelly burnt out their eyes, doth ſo raigne alone, that he hath left him neither kinſman nor friend: For being as vnthankfull as perfidious he hath murthered all his fathers friends, who with great trauell had preferred him to the kingdome, ſo to make ſhort payment for ſo great deſert. With this beaſt we muſt haue to do, whom whileſt no man loueth, all men eaſily wiſh to periſh. The Numidians trouble him with daily inuaſions, whoſe iniuries the infamous coward endureth with ſuch ſhame and reproach, that it ſhould ſeeme hee had rather to ſuffer them than reuenge them. And yet this effeminat daſtard holdeth in chaines many valiant Turks, and acknowledgeth not your imperiall name, whereunto all men on euerie ſide ſue for grace: and which is not to be ſuffered, exceedingly fauoureth the Spaniards at* TRIPOLIS, *to the intent that* Agis *and* Moſes, *two valiant Tur-*
B *kiſh captaines, may be driuen out of the citie. This wild beaſt diſarmed of his clawes and teeth, we ſhall eaſily deſtroy, if it be but for that we haue with vs* Roſcetes *his brother, whom the Numidians wiſh and long for: him muſt we vſe, if it be but for a ſhew, ſo ſhall the thing we deſire be without bloud effected, as ſoone as we ſhall but preſent our ſelues before the gates of* TVNES. *Then ſhall it be at your pleaſure to appoint whom you will haue to gouerne the Numidian kingdome: it ſhall be vnto me glorie enough, when the greateſt part of* AFFRICKE *conquered, ſhall be peaceably deliuered into your hands at your returne with the triumphs of* PERSIA. *But by the way as I returne, I aſſure you vpon mine owne priuat ſo to vſe the matter, that the Chriſtians ſhall alſo haue good cauſe to bewaile their calamities: and if I hap to meet with* Auria, *he ſhall haue ſmall cauſe to reioice of the miſchiefe he hath done: for him alone I challenge to perſecute as my proper and peculiar enemie, both for the remembrance of the harmes we haue receiued at*
C *his hands, and for the deſpight I haue at his fame; who once taken out of the way, the ſeas ſhall be open only to you and your fleets. And beleeue me, he that ſhall be able to commaund the ſeas, ſhall eaſily alſo ſubdue the kingdomes by land.*

But *Solyman*, who after the manner of wiſe princes vſed well to conſider, and afterward with ripe iudgement to reſolue of ſuch matters as he had with attentiue eare harkened vnto; commending *Barbaruſſa* for his forwarneſſe in his ſeruice, for that time brake vp the counſell. Not long after a decree was made, according to *Abraham* the great Baſſa his aduiſe, That *Barbaruſſa* ſhould be ioined as fourth with the other three chiefe Baſſaes of *Solymans* counſel, and be made great Admirall: ſo that all the Iſlands, ports, and people all alongſt the ſea coaſt thorow out *So-*
D *lymans* empire, ſhould be at his commaund, and that it ſhould be lawfull for him to take vp ſuch marriners and ſouldiours for ſeruice at ſea, as pleaſed him in what place ſoeuer. This being ſolemnly proclaimed, *Solyman* with his owne hand deliuered him a ſcepter and a ſword, willing him by worthie deeds to performe what he had promiſed. After which *Aiax* and *Caſſimes* the two great Baſſaes, with the captaine of the Ianizaries, brought him with exceeding pompe from the court to the Nauie: at which time was carried before him all the tokens of his new obtained honour. And toward the maintenance of that warre at ſea, he had deliuered vnto him out of *Solymans* treaſures eight hundred thouſand duckets, and eight hundred Ianizaries.

Barbaruſſa made Solymans great Admirall

But for as much, as much it was that he did in the ſeruice of *Solyman*, and more is of him hereafter to be ſpoken; it ſhal not be amiſſe here to preſent vnto the view of the world the ſtern,
E but liuely countenance of this ſo famous a man (who liuing kept all the Mediterranean in feare) as it is by *Boiſardus* expreſſed, together with the Elogium following.

Littora te Heſperia timuere vtriuſq́, Lybeſq́
Oppreſſi dextra ſubcubuere tua.
Nunquam te Lypare Corcyrane diligit, harum
Cum ſis immeritos depopulatus agros.

The coaſts of ITALIE and SPAINE, of thee were ſore afraid, L
And ſo the Moores did ſtoupe to thee, by thy right hand diſmaid.
LYPPAROS will thee neuer loue, ne yet CORCYRA ſtrong:
For that thou cauſeleſſe didſt to them ſo great and open wrong.

Barbaruſſa ſped of that he deſired, ſtaied not long after at CONSTANTINOPLE, but departing out of HELLESPONTVS with eightie gallies and certaine galliots, ſhaped his courſe towards ITALIE, leauing *Amurathes* (a ſea captaine) with twelue gallies to tranſport *Solyman* and his armie, readie to ſet forward againſt the Perſian, ouer that narrow ſea into ASIA. Who after hee had ſo done, ouertooke *Barbaruſſa* at METHONE, who holding on his courſe to AFFRICKE, and M
He ſpoileth the coaſt of Italie. ſodainly paſſing the ſtrait betwixt ITALIE and CICILIE, brought a great feare vpon both the countries; but paſſing by the bay of HIPPONA alongſt the coaſt of the lower CALABRIA, he ſet vpon the towne of S. *Lucidius* called in ancient time TEMPSA: which although it ſtood vpon a rocke, and was reaſonable well walled; yet ſuch was the violence of the Turkes aſſault, that it could not be defended but was taken, with ſo much more hurt to the inhabitants, for that the

Maior

A Maior of the towne to keepe the people from flying away, had lockt vp the gates on the other ſide of the citie from the enemie. From thence he with rich ſpoile and many priſoners went to CITRARIVM, where hee had learned of his priſoners, a fleet of gallies was in building. This towne forſaken of the inhabitants for feare, he tooke without reſiſtance, ranſaked and burnt it, where he alſo fired ſeuen gallies not yet altogither finiſhed. But after he was come with his fleet as farre as the Iſland CAPRI within the ſight of NAPLES, ſuch a terrour was ſtrucke into the minds of all that dwelt alongſt that coaſt, that it was thought if he had landed and gone directly to NAPLES, the Neopolitans would for feare haue abandoned the citie. But holding on his courſe, he came to PROCHITA, which he tooke and rifled: ſo paſſing by the port of CAIETA, which he might eaſily haue taken, he came to SPELVNCA, a towne in the hithermoſt part of
B the kingdome of NAPLES. They of the towne diſmaied with the ſudden arriuall of ſo great a fleet, yeelded the ſame without reſiſtance. The enemie entring the towne, tooke twelue hundred priſoners. *Pelegrinus* a chiefe man amongſt them of SPELVNCA was fled into the caſtle; him *Barbaruſſa* commaunded to yeeld, which if he would preſently do, he promiſed to let him go free; but if he ſhould ſtand vpon his defence, he threatned in ſhort time to make him repent his fooliſh hardineſſe with the vtter deſtruction both of himſelfe and the towne. The fearefull gentleman without delay, came out of the caſtle, and fell downe at his feet; who according to his promiſe gaue him his libertie, and with rare curteſie reſtored to him his wife, his ſonne, and niece, whom he had taken priſoners, who receiued them with many teares falling from their eies for ioie.

C The ſame night alſo two thouſand Turkes came from the fleet thorow the rough and buſhie mountaines to the citie FVNDI, ten miles diſtant from SPELVNCA, in the vttermoſt borders of the kindome of NAPLES, conducted as was thought by certaine Italians of that countrey; who a few yeares before taken at ſea, and ouerwearied with the heauy burthen of the Turkiſh ſlauerie, had reuolted to the Mahometane religion. But ſuch was the ſuddenneſſe of their comming, and their celerity in entring the city, that *Iulia Gonzaga* the paragon of ITALIE, and the chiefe priſe which they ſought after, had ſcarce time to get to horſe halfe naked, & ſo with much difficulty to eſcape into the mountaines. It is reported, that *Barbaruſſa* (which thing he himſelfe afterwards ſeemed not to denie) moued with the fame of her incomparable beautie and wonderfull perfection, deſired exceedingly to haue taken her as a preſent for *Solyman*. The citizens
D were for moſt part either ſlaine or taken priſoners by the Turkes; who loded with the ſpoile of the citie, returned againe to the fleet. Another part of *Barbaruſſa* his fleete came to TARRACINA, which the Turks took forſaken of the inhabitants, who for feare were all fled into the mountaines, except ſome which for age or ſickeneſſe could not ſhift for themſelues, whom the Turkes ſlew and ſpoiled the churches. *Barbaruſſa* thus ſcouring alongſt the coaſt of ITALIE, and newes thereof daily brought to the citie of ROME, ſtrucke ſuch an exceeding terrour into the mindes of the citiſens, that it was verily thought if he had come but a little farther to OSTIA, they would generally haue forſaken the citie. But hee hauing well performed his promiſe made to *Solyman* for vexing the Chriſtians, and before reſolued of a greater matter he had to doe; when he had watered at PONTIA, paſſed ouer into AFFRICK with ſuch celeritie, that he was arriued there
E before it was thought that he was departed from the coaſt of ITALY. For *Barbaruſſa* to deceiue *Muleaſſes* king of TVNES, and to take him vnprouided, had giuen it out that hee would burne and ſpoile the coaſts of the Chriſtian countries, eſpecially of ITALY, LIGVRIA, and SPAINE, in reuenge of the harme done by *Auria* at CORONE and PATRAS. Which thing *Muleaſſes* the rather beleeued, vnderſtanding his proceedings vpon the coaſt of ITALY. The Venetians hauing alſo at the ſame time at great charges prepared a great fleet, did in ſome part leſſen *Muleaſſes* feare, that *Barbaruſſa* would employ his forces for AFFRICK: for then what ſhould the Venetians haue needed to haue made ſo great and chargeable a preparation. But that which aboue all other things brought him into ſecurity, was for that he had by ſecret eſpials certainly learned, that his brother *Roſcetes* was kept at CONSTANTINOPLE, as a priſoner at large, vnder
F ſafe keeping: which made him to thinke that *Barbaruſſa* his forces were not prepared againſt him, for hee knew that he could not be impugned, or his ſtate more endangered by any other meanes than by producing the competitour of his kingdome, to whom his guilty conſcience doubted, that both the citiſens of TVNES and the Numidians were for moſt part well affected.

Iulia Gonzaga a faire Ladie hardly diſtreſſed by Barbaroſſa.

The Romans afraid of Barbaruſſa.

This *Muleaſſes* of whom we now ſpeake, and whom hereafter we ſhall by occaſion often re-

Muleaſſes king of Tunes.

member, was lineally diſcended of the auncient kings of Tunes; who without interruption G
of diſcent or mixture of forraine bloud, had by the ſpace of nine hundred fifty and foure years
mightily ruled the great kingdome of TVNES, from TRIPOLIS to BVGIA, almoſt eight hun-
dred miles alongſt the Mediterranean, and into the maine as farre as the mount ATLAS: and
for the long continuance of their ſtate, and largeneſſe of their kingdome, were worthily accoun-
ted the moſt reuerend and mighty amongſt the Mahometane kings of AFFRICKE. His father
Mahometes, when hee had with much glory and more pleaſure raigned two and thirty yeares,
perceiuing the end of his life to approach, had purpoſed to haue appointed *Maimo* his eldeſt
ſonne (whom for his haſtie aſpiring hee then held in durance) to ſucceed him in his kingdome.
But ouercome with the importunity of *Lentigeſia* his wife, a woman of hautie ſpirit, who had
by reward made a ſtrong faction in the court for her ſonne *Muleaſſes*, he altered his former pur- H
poſe, and appointed him his ſucceſſour: by whom (as it was thought) the ſmall remainder of
his owne old yeares was ſhortned; *Maimo* the right heire of the kingdome in priſon, preſently
murdred; ſeuenteene of his other brethren vnmercifully executed; and three other, *Barcha*, *Be-
leth*, and *Saeth*, with more than barbarous cruelty, with a hoat yron of their ſight depriued: on-
ly *Roſcetes* the ſecond brother, and *Abdemelech*, eſcaping the hands of their vnnaturall brother,
fled to *Morhabitus* a great prince amongſt the Numidians: whither alſo their brothers malice
perſecuted them, ſeeking ſometime by practice, ſometime by poyſon to haue taken them away,
and at laſt for a great ſumme of money to haue had them deliuered into his hands: Which mo-
ney the Numidian receiued, but ſuffered the diſtreſſed princes as if they had eſcaped againſt his
will, to flie further to another Numidian prince a friend of his, called *Bentieſes*: where *Mule-* I
aſſes by like practiſes as before, ſought to haue deſtroyed them, or to haue got them into his own
power. Thus chaſed by their brothers endleſſe malice from prince to prince, and place to place,
they for their more ſafety fled at laſt to the citie of BISCARIS farre into the maine land: where
Abdemelech as one weary of the world, gaue ouer all and betooke himſelfe to a ſolitary life, and
became a melancholy Mahometane monke. But *Roſeetes* courteouſly entertained by *Abdalla*
prince of that citie, found ſuch fauor in his ſight, that he gaue him his daughter in marriage, and
long time honourably maintained him as his ſonne in law, with ſuch carefulneſſe, that for feare
of *Muleaſſes* practiſes, he was ſeldome permitted to eat any other meat but ſuch as the Prince
or his wife had before taſted of. *Muleaſſes* thus raigning and raging, and yet not contented with
the death of ſo many of his brethren, proceeded further, and murthered diuers of their children K

The ingratitude of Muleaſſes.

alſo. He cauſed alſo the Manifet and Meſuar, men of greateſt authority in all the kindome, his
fathers graue counſellors & his chiefe friends, by whoſe meanes eſpecially he had aſpired vnto
the kingdome, to be cruelly tortured to death, fearing their greatneſſe; or rather as ſome thought
greuing to ſee them liue to whom hee was ſo much beholden, and therefore rewarded them
with ſuch ſharpe payment. And by the inſtigation of *Lentigeſia* his mother, cauſed diuers of his
fathers other wiues and concubines to be ſhamefully murthered, inueighing oftentimes againſt
his father, that as an effeminate prince with infinite charges had for his pleaſure maintained two
hundred wiues and concubines in his houſes of delight, by whom he had begot ſo many ſonnes
competitours of the kingdome, that hee had left him (as he ſaid) a laborious and enuious peece L

Roſcetes viſeth againſt his brother Muleaſſes.

of worke, to deſtroy ſo great a brood. *Roſcetes* aided by his father in law and the other Numi-
dian princes, to whom the name of *Muleaſſes* both for his cruelty againſt his owne bloud, and
injurious dealing againſt his neighbours, was become odious, paſſing ouer the riuer Bragada,
with a great armie, neere vnto TVNES met with *Muleaſſes* his armie, conducted by *Dorax*, a
valiant captaine, brother to *Lintigeſia*: where in a ſharpe conflict he ouerthrew his brothers ar-
mie, & enforced *Dorax* with them that were eſcaped out of the battel for ſafeguard of their liues
to flie into TVNES. *Roſcetes* purſuing the victory, came and preſented his armie before the gates
of the citie, in hope that the citizens (whom hee knew for the moſt part to hate the vſurping ty-
rant) would vpon the ſight of him, in right their king, with ſo great an army, raiſe ſome tumult in
the citie, and let him in. There he lay by the ſpace of twenty daies, ſtill expecting ſome innoua-
tion; in which time the more to alienate the mindes of the people from *Muleaſſes*, and to ſhew M
how vnable he was to protect them, he burnt and deſtroyed all the oliue and fruit trees, which
grew moſt plentifully and pleaſantly all alongſt the country, from the ruines of old CARTHAGE
to the wals of TVNES: which was vnto the citizens, whoſe greateſt poſſeſſions lay there, a moſt
heauy and lamentable ſpectacle. But *Muleaſſes* had ſo attempered their minds with faire ſpee-

ches

A ches and large promiſes of recompenſing euery man to the ful, for all ſuch harm as they ſhould ſuſtaine by his brothers furie in the countrey: and beſide that had the city in ſuch ſtrong poſſeſſion by reaſon of his ſouldiors, that the citiſens either would not or could not reuolt to *Roſcetes*. The Numidian princes wearie of that long and vaine expectation, according to the leuitie of that nation, accounting it no ſhame after victorie once gotten to depart, began one after another to ſhrinke away to their owne dwellings, perſuading *Roſcetes* alſo to prouide for himſelfe whileſt he had time, and to attend his better fortune. Wherefore he fearing to be betrayed by the Numidians, or circumuented by his cruell brother, fled to *Barbaruſſa*, then raigning at ALGIERS in great glorie, where he was honourably entertained; and there remained vntill ſuch time as by
B his perſuaſion he went with him as is aforeſaid to CONSTANTINOPLE, to craue help of *Solyman*, by whom he was detained in ſafe cuſtodie: although it was in policie giuen out by *Barbaruſſa*, that he was in the fleet, and that he ſhould by *Solymans* power be reſtored to his fathers kingdome at TVNES.

Forſaken of the Numidians princes, he flieth to Barbaruſſa.

This was the ſtate of the kingdome of TVNES, at ſuch time as *Barbaruſſa* with *Solymans* great fleet, contrarie to all mens expectation, ſuddenly departing from the coſt of ITALIE, landed in AFFRICKE at BISERTA, a famous port of the kingdome of TVNES. They of BISERTA wearie of the gouernment of *Muleaſſes*, and of themſelues deſirous of change, as ſoone as they heard the name of *Roſcetes*, forthwith draue out their Gouernour, and receiued the Turkes into the towne. For *Barbaruſſa* had before ſent certaine of *Roſcetes* his familiar friends aſhore,
C which bare the people in hand, that he was in the fleet, but not able yet to come on ſhore, for that he was (as they ſaid) ſeaſicke and troubled with an ague. BISERTA thus poſſeſſed by *Barbaruſſa*, he preſently departed thence: and ſayling by VTICA, thirtie miles diſtant from BISERTA, and ſo keeping alongſt the coaſt, and paſſing the promontorie of CARTHAGE, came before GVLETTA, a ſtrong caſtle within the bay of TVNES, ſo placed vpon a ſtrait, that it commaundeth all the paſſage by ſea vnto the citie of TVNES. Before this caſtle, *Barbaruſſa* in token of friendſhip, diſcharged all his great ordinance, which they of the caſtle anſwered with like: but being required to deliuer it vp to *Roſcetes*, they ſaid it ſhould be alwaies at his commaund that ruled in the citie of TVNES. The newes of *Roſcetes* his ſuppoſed comming, flying ſwiftly by land from BISERTA to TVNES, and the great fleet once diſcouered, ſet all the citie on an vprore: for
D the citiſens were in great expectation of their new king, both for the loue of *Roſcetes*, who had alwaies ſhewed himſelfe to be of a mild and bountifull nature; and alſo for the hatred of *Muleaſſes*, whoſe tyrannous and couetous gouernment they thought they had too long endured. Neither was he ignorant what report ran of himſelfe, and how he had loſt the hearts of his ſubiects, which was euidently to be ſeene in the eyes and countenances of the cheefe men of the citie. And that which more encreaſed their hatred, was for that he had not according to his promiſe to them in time of his diſtreſſe, made them any recompence for their goodly houſes and oliue gardens, deſtroyed in the countrey by *Roſcetes* in the former warres: wherefore at ſuch time as he came now out of the caſtle, and in the greateſt aſſemblie of his people, began to perſuade them to play the men, and to continue conſtant in their obedience, promiſing vnto them
E ſuch reward as they knew he was neuer able to performe, they all departed, and left him alone: yea ſome of them vnder the colour of friendſhip, and amongſt them *Abdahar*, then Meſuar, (which was cheefe officer next vnto the king) perſuaded him to giue place to his hard fortune, & forthwith to flie, for by chance at the ſame inſtant it was in euery mans mouth, that the Turks were euen at hand: which thing cauſed *Muleaſſes*, forſaken of his ſubiects, of himſelfe fearefull, and worthily doubting to be betrayed, to flie in ſuch haſt out of the citie, that he left behind him both his treaſure and iewels, which afterwards came into the hands of his enemies. The firſt that reuolted was *Abezes*, a man of great authoritie; and *Fetuches*, captaine of the caſtle; both renegate Spaniards. *Fetuches* preſently after the flight of *Muleaſſes*, brought out *Roſcetes* wife and children, whom *Muleaſſes* had long time kept in priſon, & to welcome their father, placed them
F in the kings royall ſeat. *Abezes* alſo forthwith aduertiſed *Barbaruſſa* of the departure of *Muleaſſes*, and with what longing the people expected their deſired king, wiſhing him without delay to repaire vnto the citie: and for a preſent ſent him a goodly Barbarian horſe, richly furniſhed, and diuers others for his other cheefe captaines. Hereupon *Barbarnſſa* without longer ſtay ſet forward with fiue thouſand Turks, which he had alreadie landed, and comming to the citie, was of the citiſens ioyfully receiued. But after long looking, when they could no where deſcrie *Roſcetes*

Barbarnſſa landeth at Biſerta.

Biſerta yeelded.

Barbaruſſa cõmeth to Gulette

Muleaſſes flieth out of Tunes.

Barbaruſſa entreth into Tunes

Muleaſſes king of Tunes.

member, was lineally diſcended of the auncient kings of Tunes; who without interruption G
of diſcent or mixture of forraine bloud, had by the ſpace of nine hundred fifty and foure years
mightily ruled the great kingdome of TVNES, from TRIPOLIS to BVGIA, almoſt eight hun-
dred miles alongſt the Mediterranean, and into the maine as farre as the mount ATLAS: and
for the long continuance of their ſtate, and largeneſſe of their kingdome, were worthily accoun-
ted the moſt reuerend and mighty amongſt the Mahometane kings of AFFRICKE. His father
Mahometes, when hee had with much glory and more pleaſure raigned two and thirty yeares,
perceiuing the end of his life to approach, had purpoſed to haue appointed *Maimo* his eldeſt
ſonne (whom for his haſtie aſpiring hee then held in durance) to ſucceed him in his kingdome.
But ouercome with the importunity of *Lentigeſia* his wife, a woman of hautie ſpirit, who had
by reward made a ſtrong faction in the court for her ſonne *Muleaſſes*, he altered his former pur- H
poſe, and appointed him his ſucceſſour: by whom (as it was thought) the ſmall remainder of
his owne old yeares was ſhortned; *Maimo* the right heire of the kingdome in priſon, preſently
murdred; ſeuenteene of his other brethren vnmercifully executed; and three other, *Barcha*, *Be-
leth*, and *Saeth*, with more than barbarous cruelty, with a hoat yron of their ſight depriued: on-
ly *Roſcetes* the ſecond brother, and *Abdemelech*, eſcaping the hands of their vnnaturall brother,
fled to *Morhabitus* a great prince amongſt the Numidians: whither alſo their brothers malice
perſecuted them, ſeeking ſometime by practice, ſometime by poyſon to haue taken them away,
and at laſt for a great ſumme of money to haue had them deliuered into his hands: Which mo-
ney the Numidian receiued, but ſuffered the diſtreſſed princes as if they had eſcaped againſt his
will, to flie further to another Numidian prince a friend of his, called *Bentieſes*: where *Mule-* I
aſſes by like practiſes as before, ſought to haue deſtroyed them, or to haue got them into his own
power. Thus chaſed by their brothers endleſſe malice from prince to prince, and place to place,
they for their more ſafety fled at laſt to the citie of BISCARIS farre into the maine land: where
Abdemelech as one weary of the world, gaue ouer all and betooke himſelfe to a ſolitary life, and
became a melancholy Mahometane monke. But *Roſeetes* courteouſly entertained by *Abdalla*
prince of that citie, found ſuch fauor in his ſight, that he gaue him his daughter in marriage, and
long time honourably maintained him as his ſonne in law, with ſuch carefulneſſe, that for feare
of *Muleaſſes* practiſes, he was ſeldome permitted to eat any other meat but ſuch as the Prince
or his wife had before taſted of. *Muleaſſes* thus raigning and raging, and yet not contented with
the death of ſo many of his brethren, proceeded further, and murthered diuers of their children K

The ingratitude of Muleaſſes.

alſo. He cauſed alſo the Manifet and Meſuar, men of greateſt authority in all the kindome, his
fathers graue counſellors & his chiefe friends, by whoſe meanes eſpecially he had aſpired vnto
the kingdome, to be cruelly tortured to death, fearing their greatneſſe; or rather as ſome thought
greuing to ſee them liue to whom hee was ſo much beholden, and therefore rewarded them
with ſuch ſharpe payment. And by the inſtigation of *Lentigeſia* his mother, cauſed diuers of his
fathers other wiues and concubines to be ſhamefully murthered, inueighing oftentimes againſt
his father, that as an effeminate prince with infinite charges had for his pleaſure maintained two
hundred wiues and concubines in his houſes of delight, by whom he had begot ſo many ſonnes
competitours of the kingdome, that hee had left him (as he ſaid) a laborious and enuious peece L

Roſcetes riſeth againſt his brother Muleaſſes.

of worke, to deſtroy ſo great a brood. *Roſcetes* aided by his father in law and the other Numi-
dian princes, to whom the name of *Muleaſſes* both for his cruelty againſt his owne bloud, and
injurious dealing againſt his neighbours, was become odious, paſſing ouer the riuer Bragada,
with a great armie, neere vnto TVNES met with *Muleaſſes* his armie, conducted by *Dorax*, a
valiant captaine, brother to *Lintigeſia*: where in a ſharpe conflict he ouerthrew his brothers ar-
mie, & enforced *Dorax* with them that were eſcaped out of the battel for ſafeguard of their liues
to flie into TVNES. *Roſcetes* purſuing the victory, came and preſented his armie before the gates
of the citie, in hope that the citiſens (whom hee knew for the moſt part to hate the vſurping ty-
rant) would vpon the ſight of him, in right their king, with ſo great an army, raiſe ſome tumult in
the citie, and let him in. There he lay by the ſpace of twenty daies, ſtill expecting ſome innoua-
tion; in which time the more to alienate the mindes of the people from *Muleaſſes*, and to ſhew M
how vnable he was to protect them, he burnt and deſtroyed all the oliue and fruit trees, which
grew moſt plentifully and pleaſantly all alongſt the country, from the ruines of old CARTHAGE
to the wals of TVNES: which was vnto the citizens, whoſe greateſt poſſeſſions lay there, a moſt
heauy and lamentable ſpectacle. But *Muleaſſes* had ſo attempered their minds with faire ſpee-

ches

A ches and large promiſes of recompenſing euery man to the ful, for all ſuch harm as they ſhould ſuſtaine by his brothers furie in the countrey: and beſide that had the city in ſuch ſtrong poſſeſſion by reaſon of his ſouldiors, that the citiſens either would not or could not reuolt to *Roſcetes*. The Numidian princes wearie of that long and vaine expectation, according to the leuitie of that nation, accounting it no ſhame after victorie once gotten to depart, began one after another to ſhrinke away to their owne dwellings, perſuading *Roſcetes* alſo to prouide for himſelfe whileſt he had time, and to attend his better fortune. Wherefore he fearing to be betrayed by the Numidians, or circumuented by his cruell brother, fled to *Barbaruſſa*, then raigning at ALGIERS in great glorie, where he was honourably entertained; and there remained vntill ſuch time as by
B his perſuaſion he went with him as is aforeſaid to CONSTANTINOPLE, to craue help of *Solyman*, by whom he was detained in ſafe cuſtodie: although it was in policie giuen out by *Barbaruſſa*, that he was in the fleet, and that he ſhould by *Solymans* power be reſtored to his fathers kingdome at TVNES.

Forſaken of the Numidian princes, he flieth to Barbaruſſa.

This was the ſtate of the kingdome of TVNES, at ſuch time as *Barbaruſſa* with *Solymans* great fleet, contrarie to all mens expectation, ſuddenly departing from the coſt of ITALIE, landed in AFFRICKE at BISERTA, a famous port of the kingdome of TVNES. They of BISERTA wearie of the gouernment of *Muleaſſes*, and of themſelues deſirous of change, as ſoone as they heard the name of *Roſcetes*, forthwith draue out their Gouernour, and receiued the Turkes into the towne. For *Barbaruſſa* had before ſent certaine of *Roſcetes* his familiar friends aſhore,
C which bare the people in hand, that he was in the fleet, but not able yet to come on ſhore, for that he was (as they ſaid) ſeaſicke and troubled with an ague. BISERTA thus poſſeſſed by *Barbaruſſa*, he preſently departed thence: and ſayling by VTICA, thirtie miles diſtant from BISERTA, and ſo keeping alongſt the coaſt, and paſſing the promontorie of CARTHAGE, came before GVLETTA, a ſtrong caſtle within the bay of TVNES, ſo placed vpon a ſtrait, that it commaundeth all the paſſage by ſea vnto the citie of TVNES. Before this caſtle, *Barbaruſſa* in token of friendſhip, diſcharged all his great ordinance, which they of the caſtle anſwered with like: but being required to deliuer it vp to *Roſcetes*, they ſaid it ſhould be alwaies at his commaund that ruled in the citie of TVNES. The newes of *Roſcetes* his ſuppoſed comming, flying ſwiftly by land from BISERTA to TVNES, and the great fleet once diſcouered, ſet all the citie on an vprore: for
D the citiſens were in great expectation of their new king, both for the loue of *Roſcetes*, who had alwaies ſhewed himſelfe to be of a mild and bountifull nature; and alſo for the hatred of *Muleaſſes*, whoſe tyrannous and couetous gouernment they thought they had too long endured. Neither was he ignorant what report ran of himſelfe, and how he had loſt the hearts of his ſubiects, which was euidently to be ſeene in the eyes and countenances of the cheefe men of the citie. And that which more encreaſed their hatred, was for that he had not according to his promiſe to them in time of his diſtreſſe, made them any recompence for their goodly houſes and oliue gardens, deſtroyed in the countrey by *Roſcetes* in the former warres: wherefore at ſuch time as he came now out of the caſtle, and in the greateſt aſſemblie of his people, began to perſuade them to play the men, and to continue conſtant in their obedience, promiſing vnto them
E ſuch reward as they knew he was neuer able to performe, they all departed, and left him alone: yea ſome of them vnder the colour of friendſhip, and amongſt them *Abdahar*, then Meſuar, (which was cheefe officer next vnto the king) perſuaded him to giue place to his hard fortune, & forthwith to flie, for by chance at the ſame inſtant it was in euery mans mouth, that the Turks were euen at hand: which thing cauſed *Muleaſſes*, forſaken of his ſubiects, of himſelfe fearefull, and worthily doubting to be betrayed, to flie in ſuch haſt out of the citie, that he left behind him both his treaſure and iewels, which afterwards came into the hands of his enemies. The firſt that reuolted was *Abezes*, a man of great authoritie; and *Fetuches*, captaine of the caſtle; both renegate Spaniards. *Fetuches* preſently after the flight of *Muleaſſes*, brought out *Roſcetes* wife and children, whom *Muleaſſes* had long time kept in priſon, & to welcome their father, placed them
F in the kings royall ſeat. *Abezes* alſo forthwith aduertiſed *Barbaruſſa* of the departure of *Muleaſſes*, and with what longing the people expected their deſired king, wiſhing him without delay to repaire vnto the citie: and for a preſent ſent him a goodly Barbarian horſe, richly furniſhed, and diuers others for his other cheefe captaines. Hereupon *Barbaruſſa* without longer ſtay ſet forward with fiue thouſand Turks, which he had alreadie landed, and comming to the citie, was of the citiſens ioyfully receiued. But after long looking, when they could no where deſcrie *Roſcetes*

Barbaruſſa landeth at Biſerta.

Biſerta yeelded.

Barbaruſſa commeth to Gulette

Muleaſſes flieth out of Tunes.

Barbaruſſa entreth into Tunes

cetes their ſuppoſed king, and heard nothing but the name of *Solyman* and *Barbaruſſa*, doubled G
and redoubled by the Turkes in their militarie acclamations, as they marched thorow the citie towards the caſtle; they began to diſtruſt, as the truth was, that in ſtead of their new king whom they ſo much deſired, they had receiued the Turkiſh gouernment, which they vtterly deteſted. Which ſuſpition once confirmed by certaine of *Roſetes* friends (whom *Barbaruſſa* had brought with him of purpoſe to delude the people) who grieued to ſee the ruine of their natiue countrey, ſpared not for feare of the preſent danger to tell their friends and acquaintance as they went, That they did in vaine looke for *Roſcetes*, whom they had left in bonds at CONSTANTINOPLE: it was a wonder to ſee, how ſuddainly the minds of the people were
The citiſens deceiued of their expectation, riſe againſt the Turkes. changed, how ſpeedily they ran to their weapons, and how furiouſly they aſſailed the Turkes, H
now fearing no ſuch matter, and were not as yet all got into the caſtle. The cheefe leader of the citiſens in this tumult, was *Abdahar* the Meſuar, who but a little before vpon the comming of the Turkes, by augmenting the danger, and the vnfaithfulneſſe of his ſubiects, had perſuaded *Muleaſſes* to flie; but now perceiuing himſelfe deceiued of his expectation for the comming of *Roſcetes*, and repenting of that he had done, ſought by all meanes to driue out the Turkes, and to recall *Muleaſſes*. And the more to animate the people, as he ſtood on high, from whence he might beſt be heard, he cried vnto them with a loud voice:

Wee are moſt villanouſly betrayed (worthy citizens) for Roſcetes, *whom we expected for our lawfull king, lamenteth his miſery in chaines, in priſon at* CONSTANTINOPLE: *and wee, except wee preſently play the men, and valiantly fight for our liberty, ſhall for euer ſerue as ſlaues to theſe forain and* I
mercileſſe pyrats. The preſent danger of our eſtate telleth vs, that wee muſt preſently and without delay take the occaſion offered. Wherefore let all men that meane not to ſerue as ſlaues, and to bee bought and ſold as beaſts, take vp armes againſt the faithleſſe Turkes. I my ſelfe will be your leader: let vs therefore all with one conſent, with heart and hand reuenge this ſhamefull trechery, defend our countrey and liberty with the ancient honour and liberty of the Numidians.

There was now no time to ſtay, euery man had betaken himſelfe to his weapons; *Muleaſſes* was againe ſent for, who yet ſtaied in the ſuburbs, expecting what ſhould happen; many of the Turkes were ſlaine before they were aware, or feared any thing; all the citie was filled with outcries and clattering of weapons: the number of the citiſens was ſuch, as might eaſily haue expulſed the Turkes, had they beene but reaſonably armed or well conducted, which in a mat- K
ter ſo ſudden, and with men altogether ignorant of ſeruice, was not poſſible. Yet they armed with furie, and encouraged with the multitude of themſelues, ſwarmed vp as thick as was poſſible one of the bulwarkes of the caſtle, which they knew was eaſieſt to bee gained, where the Turkes had ſet vp one of their enſignes; and with the multitude of their darts and arrowes ſo ouerwhelmed the Turkes, that they were glad to forſake the place, and to retire farther into the caſtle to a place of more ſtrength: from whence and all alongſt the curtaine of the wall, they without intermiſſion diſcharged their great artillerie and ſmall ſhot amongſt the thickeſt of the naked Moores making of them a wonderfull ſlaughter. *Barbaruſſa* although he was a man of an inuincible courage & great experience, al his life time well acquainted with deſperat dangers (the dreadfull ſteps of aſpiring minds) yet ſurpriſed with the ſuddenneſſe of the aſſault, ſhut vp L
in a place whereof he yet knew not the ſtrength, and not prouided of victuall for three dayes, was with the due conſideration of theſe difficulties, not a little troubled: which his care was by the diſordered furie of his enemies, and knowne valour of his owne ſouldiers greatly deminiſhed; eſpecially when he ſaw his owne men ſtill fighting, as men full of hope and courage, and the Moores as men halfe diſmayed with the wonnds and ſlaughter of their friends, ready to retire. Howbeit, by the comming in of *Muleaſſes* & *Dorax*, the aſſault twice before giuen ouer, was
Muleaſſes returned into the citie. againe at both times renewed, with no leſſe deſperate furie than at the firſt, and the Turks hardly charged. In this dangerous aſſault *Halis* of MALIGA, a renegate Spaniard, but a moſt expert ſouldior, turning himſelfe to to *Barbaruſſa*, ſaid:

If thou wilt ſaue thine honour, and hold this fort, we muſt ſallie out vpon this enemy, which hauing M
neuer ſeene a ſet battell, but onely acqnainted with light skirmiſhes, will not be able to endure our charge at hand, but ſhall in a moment know the price of their fooliſh hardineſſe: who as braineſicke men could neither endure the gouernment of their cruell king, ne yet thankefully receiue the authors of their deliuerance and liberty.

This motion of the Spaniard, confirmed by the generall approbation of the chiefeſt captaines,

A taines, *Barbaruſſa* commanded *Halis* the author of that counſell, with certaine other captaines and their companions, at one inſtant to ſallie out at two ports of the caſtle: which they ſo reſolutely performed, that in ſhort time a wonderfull number of the naked Moores lay dead vpon the ground.

Abdahar the Meſuar himſelfe, was there ſhot thorow with a bullet and ſlaine: whereupon the aſſault was quite giuen ouer, the Moores retyring by companies backe into the citie, and the Turkes ſtill purſuing them: where, in the ſtreets for certaine houres, was fought a moſt cruell and bloudie battell. At laſt the citiſens ouercome, forſooke the open ſtreets, and betooke them to the refuge of their houſes; not ſo carefull of their king, as of themſelues, their wiues and children. And *Halis* with the reſt, wearied with the ſlaughter of his enemies, and ouercome with
B labour, heat, and thirſt, returned with victorie vnto the caſtle. It is reported that there was aboue three thouſand of the citiſens ſlain that day, and thriſe as many hurt. *Muleaſſes* thus diſcouraged, and vtterly deſpairing to recouer the citie; hardly eſcaped his enemies hands, by the good help of his vncle *Dorax*, with whom he fled ouer the riuer Bagrada, and came in ſafetie to CONSTANTINA (called of old time CYRTHA) the ancient ſeat of the Numidian kings, but then a part of *Dorax* his dominion; where he was honourably maintained and protected vntill the comming of *Charles* the emperour into AFFRICKE. The night enſuing this battell, and the flight of the king, was reſtleſſe both to the citiſens and the Turkes, each of them for feare of other ſtanding vpon their ſtrongeſt guard.

The citiſens of Tunes diſcomfited by the Turke

Muleaſſes flieth

The next day the citiſens diſcouraged with the loſſe of ſo many of their kinſmen and friends,
C and hauing no king now for whom they ſhould fight, craued pardon of *Barbaruſſa* for their raſh attempt, excuſing it by the name of loyaltie to their ancient kings; offering to ſubmit themſelues vnto him with all faithfulneſſe. Which their offer he willingly accepted, knowing that he was not able to keepe that place with his ſouldiers three daies, for lack of victuall: ſo that all his hope and victorie gotten, might eaſily be ouerthrowne and brought to nought, if the citiſens moued either with deſperation or deſire of reuenge, ſhould ioyne with the other Numidian princes, and beſiege him in the caſtle. Whereupon a generall peace was granted, and by ſolemne oath on both ſides confirmed, whereby the citiſens expreſly bound themſelues to the obedience of *Solyman*, and to *Barbaruſſa* as his lieutenant. All things thus ſet in order in the citie of TVNAS, & new magiſtrates and officers by him made, he laboured by all meanes to win vnto him the Numidi-
D an princes: which when he had eaſily brought to paſſe by gifts and rewards with thoſe needie princes, of themſelues prone enough vpon light occaſions to make or break the bonds of friendſhip, he ſent *Aſan-aga* an eunuch, and *Halis* the Spaniard with the Ianizaries, & certaine pieces of great ordinance, to take in the other cities of the kingdome of TVNES: which they in ſhort time performed, being in all places peaceably receiued, onely the citie of CARVENNA held out a while, yet afterwards for feare of further harme receiued the Turkes garriſon. But to leaue *Barbaruſſa* king of ALGIERS and *Solymans* great Admirall, thus poſſeſſed of the kingdome of TVNES; and *Muleaſſes* in exile at CONSTANTINA, vntill he be againe reſtored to vnto his kingdome by *Charles* the emperour, as ſhall be hereafter declared: let vs againe returne to the wars at the ſelfeſame time vndertaken by *Solyman* in perſon himſelfe in PERSIA, perſuaded thereunto
E as we haue before ſaid by *Abraham* the great Baſſa. Of whom a few words, that they which ſhall hereafter liue, may in him as in others, ſee in what ſlipperie place they ſtand, and what ſmall aſſurance they haue, which forſaking God, run headlong after theſe worldly vanities, and ſwelling with the fauours of great princes, are in a moment when they leaſt feare any ſuch fall, ſuddenly ouerthrowne, and become the miſerable ſpectacles of mans fragilitie in the height of their ſuppoſed bliſſe.

The citiſens of Tunes yeeld themſelues to Barbaruſſa.

This great Baſſa called of the Turkes *Ibrahim*, of vs *Abraham*, was borne in a poore coun- *The deſcription of Abraham the Baſſa.*
trey village neere vnto PERGA, a towne in that part of EPIRVS which was called BVTHROTIA: who in his childhood was taken from his Chriſtian parents, by ſuch as by authoritie did
F take vp the tribute children of the Chriſtians for the Turkiſh emperour. A tribute of all tributes moſt grieuous. He was of countenance amiable, of feature comely, actiue of bodie, well ſpoken, pleaſantly conceited, and ſharpe of wit: ſo that he in ſhorter time than was thought poſſible, to the admiration of many, learned both to ſpeake and write the Arabian tongue, and other languages vſed in the Turkes court, and could skilfully play vpon ſundrie kinds of inſtruments. And being yet a boy, ſerued *Scanderbaſſa*, a man of great authoritie and power, in the time

time of *Selymus* the emperour, in whose seruice he was instructed in the Mahometane religion; but giuing himselfe to all manner of curiositie and neatnesse, he was wonderfully fauoured by the great ladie his mistresse, and by her commended to her husband *Scanderbassa*, as a fit page to attemper his melancholly and wayward disposition, with his pleasant conceits and deuises. Wherein the Tetricall Bassa finding him to excell, gaue him as a rare gift to *Solyman* the sonne of *Selymus*, his grandfather *Baiazet* yet liuing: who tooke in him such pleasure, that the old emperour caused him to be brought vp in the court, in all princely qualities with *Solyman* (who was of like yeares vnto him) as his companion and playfellow. Where he so framed himselfe vnto the yong prince his disposition in all points, that he was of him alwaies exceedingly beloued, and afterwards promoted to all the honours of the court, and made one of the Bassaes; giuing vnto him in marriage the onely daughter and heire of *Scanderbassa*, his master then dead, with an exceeding great dowrie. And after that, made him Gouernour of CAIRE: where hee had not long remained, but he was againe sent for to the court, as the man which gaue thereunto life, without whose companie *Solyman* was as one halfe dead. At length he made him Vesier, which is the chiefe of all the Bassaes, and president of his counsell, the greatest honour in the Turkish empire next vnto the emperour himselfe. And to honour him yet more, he deliuered him his priuat signet, wherwith the Turkish emperours neuer vsed to trust any but themselues: he might at his pleasure, grace, and disgrace whom he would, in court or elsewhere. What he commaunded, was done: and whatsoeuer he did, was taken for well done. He might without the emperours knowledge giue any office, yea the gouernment of whole countries and prouinces, vnto his fauourites: his credit with the emperour was so great, that hee did what he list, and no man durst presume to aske any reason why. And to say all at once, he wanted nothing of the maiestie of an emperour, but the name onely; in steed whereof he was commonly called the Great Commander of all the emperours forces. His house in CONSTANTINOPLE was of all other most stately, wherein was daily to be seene such a multitude of his gallant followers, and such a world of wealth and royall furniture, as that it might be worthely compared with the pallace of a great prince. Neither was he partaker of *Solymans* connsailes in his waightie matters of state onely, but of his secret delights and pleasures also; if he were present all was well, if he were away nothing pleased: to be short, he so possessed this great emperour, that men commonly said, The soule of *Solyman* liued in *Abraham*. Whereat many of the great men of the court secretly repined; but especially *Solymans* mother, and *Roxulana* his faire concubine, whom of all women hee held dearest. His liuely and maiesticall countenance thou maiest here behold.

His bringing vp in the Court

His great credit with Solyman.

ABRA-

Magnus es & Getici gratia prona tyranni
Seruit, at ex alto magna ruina venit:
Te proceres odere, Parens q. & regia coniux
Horum ne pereas proditione caue.

E

Right great thou art, and doeſt commaund the fauour of thy king:
But ſuch great fauours oftentimes, a greater fall doe bring.
The great kings mother, wife, and all the nobles hate thee ſore:
Beware that by their wily drifts thou periſh not therefore.

Abraham Baſſa perſuadeth Soly man to make war vpon the Perſians.

This great Commaunder, which might at all times be bold to ſpeake what he thought vnto *Solyman*, ſought many times in his priuat diſcourſes betwixt them two, to perſuade him to forbeare to vſe his forces any farther againſt the Chriſtians, ouer whom he had ſufficiently alreadie triumphed, and to turne them vpon the Perſians by whom he was daily iniured. Alleadging
F vnto him, that the Germans were a ſtrong and warlike people; who as they both in language and manners differed from the Hungarians, ſo were they alwaies at variance with them, and therefore much cared not though they were by him ſubdued: but if he ſhould begin to inuade any part of their countrey, he ſhould then ſoone ſee that inuincible nation with their vnited forces, vp in armes readie to make ſtrong reſiſtance. And to prouoke *Charles* the emperour (of all the Chriſtian princes the mightieſt) were not good, who of himſelfe was able to bring into the field

field moſt puiſſant armies of valiant ſouldiours out of his owne dominions: beſide the wonder- G
full concourſe of moſt reſolute men out of all parts of Chriſtendome, which would not ſpare to lay downe their liues at his feet in that warre, which was of them accounted moſt religious. *Yea what ſtrength both of horſe and foote might bee raiſed and brought to the battell by the two brethren* Charles *and* Ferdinand, *onely might* (as he ſaid) *euen then be plainely perceiued, when as they valiantly defended* VIENNA, *beſieged by vs with great power. Neither did* Charles *afterward, as it ſeemed, and as the Chriſtians commonly vaunt, feare to haue aduentured the fortune of a maine battell with you: who although I doubt not but hee ſhould haue beene ouercome by you ſo great a monarch with ſo puiſſant an army, a thing peculiar to your good fortune; yet I cannot deny, but that victorie againſt ſuch expert and reſolute ſouldiers, ſo ſtrongly armed as their manner is, muſt haue beene bought with a great deale of our bloud. Theſe things in my opinion may reaſonably perſuade you* H
to let the Chriſtians alone, by ciuile warres to weaken one another, that ſo afterwards they may become a prey vnto vs without any danger of ours. So that in my iudgement the Perſian warre is to bee taken in hand, rather then the warres in GERMANIE, *and eſpecially for that you haue ſufficiently enlarged the bounds of your Empire VVeſtward: which you haue extended euen vnto nations very farre diſtant. So that it is now a great matter to defend ſo much as you haue already gotten, and therefore partly for the difficulty of the defending thereof, and partly vpon an honourable contempt, according to the infinite bounty of your heroycall inclination, haue thought good to beſtow whole kingdomes vpon ſtrangers, yea halfe your enemies. Wherefore how much more glorious ſhall it be now vpon iuſt occaſion to ſeeke for that which ioyneth vnto your owne confines; and may therefore eaſily bee vnited vnto your owne empire: if you according to the example of your grandfather and father ſhall force your ſelfe to* I
driue that accurſed and abominable race of Iſmaell *out of* ASIA. *For it ſhall bee a great glorie vnto the name of the* Othoman *Kings for euer, if you ſhall after your wonted manner zealouſly reſpect the cauſe of religion: a worke of incomparable fame, if the authors of a moſt deteſtable ſuperſtition ſhall by you bee chaſed quite out* ASIA. *For what more iuſt or honourable cauſe can there bee to make warre, than to profeſſe your ſelfe the defender of the diuine precepts of our great Prophet* Mahomet, *againſt the wicked and irreligious impugners thereof? And by the way to reuenge and vtterly to deſtroy the capitall enemies of your Auncеſtours; which was the laſt prayer of your Father* Selymus. *Can you endure them which rule ſo inſolently, that they account euery one that is neere them their enemies and prey, and dare alſo with their pilfering inuaſions prouoke your ſelfe, liuing contented within the bounds of your owne Empire in Peace both in* EVROPE *and* ASIA? *and they (forſooth) ſuch as haue by moſt horrible wrong crept into the royall ſeat of the moſt lawfull and noble Kings deſcended of the bloud of* Vſun-Caſſanes? *who after their wonted manner ſtill liue by raipne and robbberie? Beleeue me noble emperour, if you ſhall vpon a zeale to your religion with your victorius hand take away this ſtaine and plague of* ASIA, *there ſhall vndoubtedly be erected vnto you ſo glorious and magnificent a trophie in the middeſt of* PERSIA, *as may be compared, yea preferred before the triumphs of your victorious father* Selymus. *For it is not ſo much to haue deſtroyed the Mamalukes (by condition ſlaues) and the proud Sultans of* ÆGYPT *and* SIRIA, *as to haue ſubdued the Perſians, famous in antient time for their martiall proweſſe, who ſo oftentimes vanquiſhed by* Alexander of MACEDOM *gaue vnto him the name of Great. Solyman* prickt forward with many ſuch K
diſcourſes, dayly ſounded in his eares by the Baſſa, began to yeeld to his perſuaſion. Whereof L
Abraham in himſelfe greatly reioiced: for it was thought of many, that he did neuer in heart renounce the Chriſtian religion, but was only in outward ſhew a Turke, and in heart a Chriſtian. Which was the rather coniectured, for that he maruellouſly fauoured and protected the Chriſtian marchants, furthered by all meanes the leagues of the Chriſtian princes with *Solyman*, and laboured alwaies to turne his forces from them vpon the Perſians. And the more to whet him forward, the Baſſa had cunningly inſinuated into his acquaintance one *Mulearabe* of DAMASCO, a man at that time famous in CONSTANTINOPLE, for the opinion the people had generally conceiued of his holineſſe and profound knowledge in the ſecret cauſes of things, and the art of Magicke; vſing him as a prophet to fill the ambitious mind of *Solyman*, with aſſured hope M
of proſperous ſucceſſe: which thing the hypocriticall wiſard, after the manner of ſuch deceiuers, ſlily performed, propheſying vnto him all happineſſe in ſo religious a warre, and ſo much (as he ſaid) pleaſing God. This the Baſſaes purpoſe was much furthered alſo by *Vlemas*, a noble and valiant Perſian, who hauing married the great Perſian king *Tamas* his ſiſter, was reuolted from him to *Solyman*, fearing to be called to account for the extorſion wherewith he had greeuouſly

oppreſſed

A oppreſſed the countries whereof hee had the gouernment: and being wonderfully countenanced in *Solymans* court by the great Baſſa, did after the maner of diſloyall fugitiues perſwade *Solyman* by all meanes he could to take that war in hand, diſcouering vnto him the power, ſtrength and ſtate of the Perſian kingdome (which he could well doe) and plotting vnto him the eaſieſt way for the conquering thereof, offering alſo vnto him the vttermoſt of his deuoire. So *Solyman* filled with the vaine hope of the conqueſt of PERSIA, yeelded fully vnto the perſwaſions of the great Baſſa, and gaue out his commiſſions into all parts of his empire for the raiſing of a mighty army for the performance of ſo great an enterpriſe, commanding all his captaines and men of warre to be ready at the citie of NICE in BYTHINIA at a certaine day appointed. Which his purpoſe, although it was mightily impugned by his mother, and faire *Roxalana* his beſt beloued, as

Solyman reſolueth to goe againſt the Perſians.

B that which altogether proceeded from the Baſſa: the one alleadging with what euill ſucceſſe his grandfather and father had before him attempted that ſame war; the other aſſailing him with her paſſionate affections: but both of them indeed repining at the credit of the Baſſa, & in their harts diſdaining that ſo great a monarch ſhould at the pleaſure of his ſeruant be led vp and down the world ſo farre from their company: for which cauſe they did what in them lay to haue ouerthrowne the purpoſe of *Abraham*, and to haue altered *Solymans* former determination. But ſo ſtrong was the Baſſaes credit with his great lord and maſter, that all theſe great ladies deuiſes and prayers were as womens affectionate paſſions reiected, and the Baſſaes counſell (to their no ſmall greefe) in all things regarded.

Abrahams credit maligned by Solymans mother and Roxalana.

The time appointed being come, and all things in readineſſe, *Solyman* ſent *Abraham* the

C Baſſa, and *Vlemas* the Perſian before him into SYRIA with a ſtrong armie, to bee readie with the firſt of the Spring to inuade the Perſian king. Which thing the Baſſa gladly tooke vpon him, and comming into SYRIA, wintered with his armie at ALEPPO: whither *Barbaruſſa* came vnto him for his letters of credence to *Solyman*, as is before declared. The Spring now approching, *Abraham* ſent *Vlemas* the fugitiue Perſian prince before him with the light horſemen, the fore-runners of his army, into MESOPOTAMIA as his guide, becauſe the countrey was vnto him beſt knowne; following not farre after himſelfe with all his armie. And marching ſtill forward in that manner, came at length without reſiſtance vnto the famous citie of TAVRIS in ARMENIA the greater, called in auncient time ECBATHANA, as is probably by ſome coniectured: a great and rich citie, but vnwalled and of no ſtrength; where the Perſian kings (for the pleaſant-

Abraham Baſſa ſent before with an army into Syria.

D neſſe of the place, and freſhneſſe of the aire) vſed commonly to be reſiant in the heat of the yere. From whence *Tamas* the Perſian king was as then abſent, buſied in warres with *Kezzel-baſſa*, a prince of the Coraſine Hircanians: ſo that the citizens of TAVRIS, deſtitute of all helpe, yeelded themſelues and the citie vnto the Baſſa at his firſt comming. *Tamas* the Perſian king vnderſtanding what was happened at TAVRIS, drew neere with his power, warily expecting to haue taken the Turkes at ſome aduantage, and ſo by pollicie to haue defeated his enemies, whom hee was too weake to meete with in plaine battell. Which thing the warie Baſſa well perceiuing, for more aſſurance, by ſpeedy courrors aduertiſed *Solyman* of the taking of TAVRIS, and of the enemies purpoſe, requeſting him with all ſpeed to repaire with his army to TAVRIS. *Solyman* was then come farre on his way with a ſtrong army, not by the way of ANCYRA, SEBASTIA,

The city of Tauris yeelded to the Baſſa.

E AMASIA, the borders of TRAPEZONDE, and ſo ouer Euphrates at ARSENGA into ARMENIA, as his father *Selymus* had done before him, becauſe that way was thought longer and more troubleſome: but quite another way, on the right hand from NICE in BYTHINIA to ICONIVM, and by CÆSARIA to MALATHIA, where is the notable paſſage ouer the riuer Euphrates, burſting out by the vallies of the mountaine ANTITAVRVS, from whence the plaines of MESOPOTAMIA, then part of the Perſian kingdome, begin to open themſelues; thorow which countrey *Solyman* marched peaceably with his armie, paying the poore countrey people for whatſoeuer he tooke: and ſo in foure and fiftie daies march came from NICE in BYTHINIA to the citie of COIM in ARMENIA the greater, which is ſuppoſed to be built in the ruines of

Solyman commeth to Tauris.

F the famous and ancient citie ARTAXATA. But hearing ſuch newes as is aforeſaid from the Baſſa, hee doubled his march, and ſo in ſhort time after came and joyned his forces with the Baſſa at TAVRIS. *Tamas* who yet daily expected the comming of the Georgian light horſemen, vnderſtanding that *Solyman* was comming againſt him with a world of men, thought it not good to abide the comming of ſo puiſſant an enemy, but with delay to weary him out that drew ſuch a multitude of people after him; and by taking of him at all aduantages, to cut off his people

ſpent with long trauell, wanting victuall, and falling into diuers diſeaſes; as it commonly chanceth to populous armies in ſtrange countries, where the change of the aire, with the inciuitable neceſſities alwaies attending vpon a great armie, moſt times cauſeth grieuous and contagious diſeaſes. Wherefore *Tamas* to ſhun the comming of *Solyman*, retired further off into SVLTANIA, about ſix daies iourney from TAVRIS. Whereof *Solyman* hauing knowledge, departed from that rich citie without doing any harme therein, following after *Tamas* into SVLTANIA to ioine battell with him if he could poſſible: leauing behind him for haſt, a great part of his carriages and baggage, with fiue hundred Ianizaries, and three of his Sanzacks with their companies. The citie of SVLTANIA was in ancient time one of the royall ſeats of the Perſian kings, but ruinated by the Scythian *Tamerlane*, retained no ſhew of the ancient maieſtie, but only in the churches by him ſpared. Neere vnto this citie *Solyman* lay encamped many daies, expecting that the Perſian king (in reuenge of the iniurie to him done, and for the ſafegard of his honour) ſhould at length come out of the mountains, and ſhew himſelfe in plaine field, and giue him battel: Which was a thing ſo farre from *Tamas* his reſolution, vpon the due comparing of his owne ſtrength with his enemies, that he retired in ſuch ſort, that *Solyman* could by no means learn what was become of him, or which way to follow him.

Solyman followeth Tamas the Perſian king into Sultania.

G H

The countrie neere vnto the citie of SVLTANIA wherein *Solyman* lay encamped at large, is on euerie ſide enuironed with hugie mountaines, whoſe tops are to be ſeene a far off, alwaies couered with deepe ſnow: theſe mountaines were in auncient time called NYPHATES, CASPIVS, COATHRAS, and ZAGRVS, taking their beginning no doubt of CAVCASVS the father of mountaines; and ioining one to another, ſome one way, ſome another, doe diuide moſt large and wide countries. Whileſt *Solyman* in thoſe plaine fields moſt fit to fight a battell in, expected the comming of *Tamas*, ſuch a horrible and cruell tempeſt (as the like wherof the Perſians had neuer before ſeene at that time of the yeare) fell downe from thoſe mountaines; which was ſo much the more ſtrange, for that it fell in the beginning of September: with ſuch aboundance of raine, which froſe ſo eagerly as it fell, that it ſeemed the depth of Winter had euen then of a ſudden been come in: for ſuch was the rage of the bluſtring winds, ſtriuing with themſelues as if it had beene for victorie, that they ſwept the ſnow from off the tops of thoſe high mountaines, and caſt it downe into the plaines in ſuch aboundance, that the Turks lay as men buried aliue in the deepe ſnow, moſt part of their tents being ouerthrowne and beaten downe to the ground with the violence of the tempeſt and waight of the ſnow, wherein a wonderfull number of ſicke ſouldiors and others of the baſer ſort which followed the campe periſhed, and many others were ſo benummed, ſome their hands, ſome their feet, that they loſt the vſe of them for euer: moſt part of their beaſts which they vſed for carriage, but eſpecially their camels, were frozen to death. Yea *Solyman* himſelfe was in great danger to haue beene ouerwhelmed in his tent, all the tents round about him being ouerthrowne with the violence of the tempeſt. Neither was there any remedie to be found for ſo great miſchiefes, by reaſon of the helliſh darkneſſe of that tempeſtuous night, moſt of their fires being put out by the extremitie of the ſtorm: which did not a little terrifie the ſuperſtitious Turks as a thing accounted of them ominous. And that which troubled them no leſſe than the miſeries of the tempeſt, was the fear of the enemie, whoſe ſudden comming they deadly feared: vntil that after ſo tedious a night, the Sunne breaking out the next morning, with his cheerfull beames reuiued many before readie to giue vp the ghoſt for cold, and gaue comfort to them all in generall, by diſcouering the open fields cleere of their feared enemies. It was a dreadfull thing to haue ſeene what miſerie that one night had brought into the Turks campe: the ground lay almoſt couered with bodies of the dead; and many liued, but ſo, as that they accounted the dead more happie than themſelues. Many of the Turkes vainly thought, that horrible tempeſt was brought vpon them by the charmes and inchantments of the Perſian Magicians; whereas it was vndoubtedly, by the hand of him which bringeth the proud deuiſes of princes to naught.

I K L

Solymans armie diſtreſſed with tempeſt.

Solyman troubled as well with the ſtrangenes of the accident, as the loſſe he had receiued, after he had a little refreſhed his diſcouraged ſoldiors, riſe with his armie & tooke his way on the left hand into ASSYRIA: *Vlemas* the Perſian perſuading him thereunto for many cauſes, but eſpecially by putting him in hope of the taking of BABYLON; for that *Mahometes* a friend of his, was gouernour thereof. But he when the matter came to proofe, was not to be woon either by promiſe or reward to betray the citie. Wherefore *Solyman* reſolued to take it by force, neither did his

M

his fortune faile him therein: for as ſoone as *Mahometes* vnderſtood that *Vlemas* was at hand with the forerunners of the Turks army, and that *Solyman* with all his power was comming after, who as he thought would neuer haue come ſo farre (he not prouided to withſtand ſo mightie an enemy, and not beloued of the citiſens) fledde out of the citie. *Solyman* comming, in ſhort time after was of the Babylonians receiued without reſiſtance. The citie of BABYLON commonly called BAGDAT, riſe out of the ruines of the old citie of BABYLON, ſo much ſpoken of in holy writ: from whence it is not farre diſtant, ſtanding vpon the riuer Tygris, which not far beneath falleth into the riuer Euphrates. In this famous city is the ſeat of the great Caliph, the chief Mahometane prieſt, whom all the Mahometane princes haue in great reuerence, & hath an olde prerogatiue in the choiſe and confirmation of the kings of ASSIRIA, and the Sultans of ÆGYPT: of which Caliph, *Solyman* according to the olde ſuperſtitious manner, receiued at his hands the enſignes and ornaments of the Aſſyrian kings, and with great bounty woon the hearts of the people: and thereupon reſolued to ſpend that Winter there, billiting his army in diuers places of that fertill countrey. The other cities of ASSIRIA and MESOPOTAMIA alſo, namely CARALMIDA, MEREDINVM, ORSA, and ASANCESA, hearing that *Solyman* had without reſiſtance taken BABYLON, yeelded themſelues and receiued his garriſons. Yea the fame thereof was ſo great, that embaſſadors came vnto him as farre as ORMVS, a citie in the mouth of Euphrates, where it falleth into the Perſian gulfe, famous for the great traffique out of INDIA thither ſuing vnto him for peace. Thus the ancient citie of BABYLON with the great Countries of ASSIRIA and MESOPOTAMIA, ſometimes famous kingdomes of themſelues, and lately part of the Perſian kingdome, fell into the hands of the Turkes, and became Prouinces of the Turkiſh empire in the yeare 1534. Where *Solyman* after he had ſpent that Winter in great joy and triumph, according to the manner of the Turkiſh gouernment, placed a great Commander, which they by a proud name call the *Beglerbeg* (which is as much as to ſay, the lord of lords) & vnder him diuers others for the gouernment of theſe countries, by parts, which they call Sanzacks, who are euer at the commaund of the *Beglerbeg*. Whileſt hee thus wintered at BABYLON, hee cauſed *Aſhender Zelibi* (which is to ſay *Alexander* the Noble) his great Treaſurer for the warres, to bee hanged, for that hee had vnfaithfully dealt in his office; and confiſcated all his goods.

Babylon yeelded to Solyman.

The countries of Aſſiria and Meſopotamia poſſeſſed by the Turkes.

Tamas hearing that *Solyman* was gone to BABYLON, returned to TAVRIS: of whoſe ſpeedy comming, the Ianizaries and other captains there lett by *Solyman* vnderſtanding, fled in haſt out of the citie, leauing all ſuch things as were committed to their cuſtodie, for a prey vnto the Perſian ſouldiers.

Tamas commeth to Tauris.

Solymans armie beeing mightily increaſed by the comming vnto him of the great Baſſa of CAIRE, with the Sanzacks of ALEXANDRIA, IVDEA, SYRIA, and COMAGENE; by the perſwaſion of *Abraham*, and *Vlemas*, the Spring now well come on, departed from BABYLON againe towards TAVRIS, with purpoſe either to draw *Tamas* to battell, or elſe to his eternall infamie before his face to ſacke that his regall citie. But *Tamas* aduertiſed of his comming, and knowing himſelfe too weake to giue him battell, forſooke the citie, and fled into the mountains of HIRCANIA: deſtroying all the countrey before him as hee went, and carrying away the inhabitants, leauing nothing to relieue the Turkes, if they ſhould purſue him. *Solyman* vnderſtanding that *Tamas* was againe fled, ſent *Vlemas* with all the choice horſemen of his army to ouertake him if it were poſſible, and to fight with him. But when he had followed him two or three daies journey, and ſtill found the countrey deſolate as he went, yeelding neither forrage for his horſes, nor releefe for his men, and ſaw no hope to ouertake the king; he began as a prouident Generall to forecaſt the extremities like to befall in his returne thorow thoſe deſolate countries, with the enemy at his heeles: and thereupon in time retired backe againe to *Solyman*, declaring vnto him what had happened. Who fretting in his minde, that the Perſian king was not to be drawne to battell, marched forthwith to TAVRIS, entred it without reſiſtance, the citiſens ſubmitting themſelues vnto him: whoſe liues ſpared, he gaue that rich citie for a prey vnto his ſoldiors, who left neither houſe nor corner thereof vnranſacked, abuſing the poore citiſens with all manner of inſolency: euery common ſouldier without controlment, fitting himſelfe with whatſoeuer beſt pleaſed his greedy deſire or filthy luſt. *Tamas* had in this citie a moſt ſtately and royall pallace: ſo had alſo moſt part of the nobilitie, their ſumptuous and rich houſes, which by the commaundement of *Solyman* were all raſed downe to the ground, and the greateſt part of

1535

Tamas hearing of the comming of Solyman to Tauris, flieth into Hyrcania.

Solyman ranſacketh Tauris.

ſpent with long trauell, wanting victuall, and falling into diuers diſeaſes; as it commonly chanceth to populous armies in ſtrange countries, where the change of the aire, with the ineuitable neceſſities alwaies attending vpon a great armie, moſt times cauſeth grieuous and contagious diſeaſes. Wherefore *Tamas* to ſhun the comming of *Solyman*, retired further off into SVLTANIA, about ſix daies iourney from TAVRIS. Whereof *Solyman* hauing knowledge, departed from that rich citie without doing any harme therein, following after *Tamas* into SVLTANIA to ioine battell with him if he could poſſible: leauing behind him for haſt, a great part of his carriages and baggage, with fiue hundred Ianizaries, and three of his Sanzacks with their companies. The citie of SVLTANIA was in ancient time one of the royall ſeats of the Perſian kings, but ruinated by the Scythian *Tamerlane*, retained no ſhew of the ancient maieſtie, but only in the churches by him ſpared. Neere vnto this citie *Solyman* lay encamped many daies, expecting that the Perſian king (in reuenge of the iniurie to him done, and for the ſafegard of his honour) ſhould at length come out of the mountains, and ſhew himſelfe in plaine field, and giue him battel: Which was a thing ſo farre from *Tamas* his reſolution, vpon the due comparing of his owne ſtrength with his enemies, that he retired in ſuch ſort, that *Solyman* could by no means learn what was become of him, or which way to follow him.

Solyman followeth Tamas the Perſian king into Sultania.

The countrie neere vnto the citie of SVLTANIA wherein *Solyman* lay encamped at large, is on euerie ſide enuironed with hugie mountaines, whoſe tops are to be ſeene a far off, alwaies couered with deepe ſnow: theſe mountaines were in auncient time called NYPHATES, CASPIVS, COATHRAS, and ZAGRVS, taking their beginning no doubt of CAVCASVS the father of mountaines; and ioining one to another, ſome one way, ſome another, doe diuide moſt large and wide countries. Whileſt *Solyman* in thoſe plaine fields moſt fit to fight a battell in, expected the comming of *Tamas*, ſuch a horrible and cruell tempeſt (as the like wherof the Perſians had neuer before ſeene at that time of the yeare) fell downe from thoſe mountaines; which was ſo much the more ſtrange, for that it fell in the beginning of September: with ſuch aboundance of raine, which froſe ſo eagerly as it fell, that it ſeemed the depth of Winter had euen then of a ſudden been come in: for ſuch was the rage of the bluſtring winds, ſtriuing with themſelues as if it had beene for victorie, that they ſwept the ſnow from off the tops of thoſe high mountaines, and caſt it downe into the plaines in ſuch aboundance, that the Turks lay as men buried aliue in the deepe ſnow, moſt part of their tents being ouerthrowne and beaten downe to the ground with the violence of the tempeſt and waight of the ſnow, wherein a wonderfull number of ſicke ſouldiors and others of the baſer ſort which followed the campe periſhed, and many others were ſo benummed, ſome their hands, ſome their feet, that they loſt the vſe of them for euer: moſt part of their beaſts which they vſed for carriage, but eſpecially their camels, were frozen to death. Yea *Solyman* himſelfe was in great danger to haue beene ouerwhelmed in his tent, all the tents round about him being ouerthrowne with the violence of the tempeſt. Neither was there any remedie to be found for ſo great miſchiefes, by reaſon of the helliſh darkneſſe of that tempeſtuous night, moſt of their fires being put out by the extremitie of the ſtorm: which did not a little terrifie the ſuperſtitious Turks as a thing accounted of them ominous. And that which troubled them no leſſe than the miſeries of the tempeſt, was the fear of the enemie, whoſe ſudden comming they deadly feared: vntil that after ſo tedious a night, the Sunne breaking out the next morning, with his cheerfull beames reuiued many before readie to giue vp the ghoſt for cold, and gaue comfort to them all in generall, by diſcouering the open fields cleere of their feared enemies. It was a dreadfull thing to haue ſeene what miſerie that one night had brought into the Turks campe: the ground lay almoſt couered with bodies of the dead; and many liued, but ſo, as that they accounted the dead more happie than themſelues. Many of the Turkes vainly thought, that horrible tempeſt was brought vpon them by the charmes and inchantments of the Perſian Magicians; whereas it was vndoubtedly, by the hand of him which bringeth the proud deuiſes of princes to naught.

Solymans armie diſtreſſed with tempeſt.

Solyman troubled as well with the ſtrangenes of the accident, as the loſſe he had receiued, after he had a little refreſhed his diſcouraged ſoldiors, riſe with his armie & tooke his way on the left hand into ASSYRIA: *Vlemas* the Perſian perſuading him thereunto for many cauſes, but eſpecially by putting him in hope of the taking of BABYLON; for that *Mahometes* a friend of his, was gouernour thereof. But he when the matter came to proofe, was not to be woon either by promiſe or reward to betray the citie. Wherefore *Solyman* reſolued to take it by force, neither did his

A his fortune faile him therein : for as ſoone as *Mahometes* vnderſtood that *Vlemas* was at hand with the forerunners of the Turks army, and that *Solyman* with all his power was comming after, who as he thought would neuer haue come ſo farre (he not prouided to withſtand ſo mightie an enemy, and not beloued of the citiſens) fledlout of the citie. *Solyman* comming, in ſhort time after was of the Babylonians receiued without reſiſtance. The citie of BABYLON commonly called BAGDAT, riſe out of the ruines of the old citie of BABYLON, ſo much ſpoken of in holy writ: from whence it is not farre diſtant, ſtanding vpon the riuer Tygris, which not far beneath falleth into the riuer Euphrates. In this famous city is the ſeat of the great Caliph, the chief Mahometane prieſt, whom all the Mahometane princes haue in great reuerence, & hath an olde
B prerogatiue in the choiſe and confirmation of the kings of ASSIRIA, and the Sultans of ÆGYPT: of which Caliph, *Solyman* according to the olde ſuperſtitious manner, receiued at his hands the enſignes and ornaments of the Aſſyrian kings, and with great bounty woon the hearts of the people : and thereupon reſolued to ſpend that Winter there, billiting his army in diuers places of that fertill countrey. The other cities of ASSIRIA and MESOPOTAMIA alſo, namely CARAEMIDA, MEREDINVM, ORSA, and ASANCESA, hearing that *Solyman* had without reſiſtance taken BABYLON, yeelded themſelues and receiued his garriſons. Yea the fame thereof was ſo great, that embaſſadors came vnto him as farre as ORMVS, a citie in the mouth of Euphrates, where it falleth into the Perſian gulfe, famous for the great traffique out of INDIA thither ſuing vnto him for peace. Thus the ancient citie of BABYLON with the great Countries of
C ASSIRIA and MESOPOTAMIA, ſometimes famous kingdomes of themſelues, and lately part of the Perſian kingdome, fell into the hands of the Turkes, and became Prouinces of the Turkiſh empire in the yeare 1534. Where *Solyman* after he had ſpent that Winter in great joy and triumph, according to the manner of the Turkiſh gouernment, placed a great Commander, which they by a proud name call the *Beglerbeg* (which is as much as to ſay, the lord of lords) & vnder him diuers others for the gouernment of theſe countries, by parts, which they call Sanzacks, who are euer at the commaund of the *Beglerbeg*. Whileſt hee thus wintered at BABYLON, hee cauſed *Aſhender Zelibi* (which is to ſay *Alexander* the Noble) his great Treaſurer for the warres, to bee hanged, for that hee had vnfaithfully dealt in his office; and confiſcated
D all his goods.

Babylon yeelded to Solyman.

The countries of Aſſiria and Meſopotamia poſſeſſed by the Turkes.

Tamas hearing that *Solyman* was gone to BABYLON, returned to TAVRIS: of whoſe ſpeedy comming, the Ianizaries and other captains there lett by *Solyman* vnderſtanding, fled in haſt out of the citie, leauing all ſuch things as were committed to their cuſtodie, for a prey vnto the Perſian ſouldiers.

Tamas commeth to Tauris.

Solymans armie beeing mightily increaſed by the comming vnto him of the great Baſſa of CAIRE, with the Sanzacks of ALEXANDRIA, IVDEA, SYRIA, and COMAGENE; by the perſwaſion of *Abraham*, and *Vlemas*, the Spring now well come on, departed from BABYLON againe towards TAVRIS, with purpoſe either to draw *Tamas* to battell, or elſe to his eternall infamie before his face to ſacke that his regall citie. But *Tamas* aduertiſed of his comming, and
E knowing himſelfe too weake to giue him battell, forſooke the citie, and fled into the mountains of HIRCANIA: deſtroying all the country before him as hee went, and carrying away the inhabitants, leauing nothing to relieue the Turkes, if they ſhould purſue him. *Solyman* vnderſtanding that *Tamas* was againe fled, ſent *Vlemas* with all the choice horſemen of his army to ouertake him if it were poſſible, and to fight with him. But when he had followed him two or three daies journey, and ſtill found the countrey deſolate as he went, yeelding neither forrage for his horſes, nor releefe for his men, and ſaw no hope to ouertake the king; he began as a prouident Generall to forecaſt the extremities like to befall in his returne thorow thoſe deſolate countries, with the enemy at his heeles: and thereupon in time retired backe againe to *Solyman*, declaring vnto him what had happened. Who fretting in his minde, that the Perſian king was not to be drawne to battell, marched forthwith to TAVRIS, entred it without reſiſtance, the citiſens ſubmitting themſelues vnto him: whoſe liues ſpared, he gaue that rich citie for a prey vnto his ſol-
F diors, who left neither houſe nor corner thereof vnranſacked, abuſing the poore citiſens with all manner of inſolency: euery common ſouldier without controlment, fitting himſelfe with whatſoeuer beſt pleaſed his greedy deſire or filthy luſt. *Tamas* had in this citie a moſt ſtately and royall pallace: ſo had alſo moſt part of the nobilitie, their ſumptuous and rich houſes, which by the commaundement of *Solyman* were all raſed downe to the ground, and the greateſt part of

1535

Tamas hearing of the comming of Solyman to Tauris, flieth into Hyrcania.

Solyman ran-ſacketh Tauris.

the beſt citizens and beautifull perſonages of all ſort and condition, at his departure thence carried away captiues. *Solyman* contenting himſelfe to haue done the Perſian king this diſgrace in ſpoiling this his rich and roiall citie, returned againe towards MESOPOTAMIA, deſtroying the countries all the way as he went, killing the verie beaſts and cattell, thereby the more to impouerish the Perſians, wiſhing to leaue nothing vnto them but penurie & miſerie. He was ſcarcely paſt COIM and the Calderan fields, famous for his fathers victorie againſt *Hyſmaell*, but that certaine troups of the Perſian horſmen were in the taile of his armie, and had taken away ſome of his baggage, and ſlaine diuers of the ſicke and ſtragling ſouldiors; and with their often skirmiſhes did not a little trouble his whole armie. Beſides that, it was noiſed thorow all his camp, That *Tamas* himſelfe was comming after him with a great power of horſemen, taken vp in HIBERIA, ALBANIA, PARTHIA, MEDIA, and ARMENIA, and would beat their backes before they could get out of ARMENIA: for which cauſe, he appointed the two great Baſſaes of CAIRE and SYRIA (for ſo they were called) and *Vlemas* the Perſian with eighteene thouſand good ſouldiors to follow him in the rearward of his armie, to receiue and repreſſe the ſuddaine aſſaults of the Perſians, if need ſhould require: and ſo ſtill kept on his march, vntill he was come to AMIDA, now called CARAEMIDA, an ancient citie of MESOPOTAMIA. In the meane time, *Tamas* the Perſian king was returned to TAVRIS with a mightie armie, in hope there to haue ſuddenly ſurpriſed his enemie, ſurcharged with the pleaſures of ſo rich a citie: but finding him gone, and beholding the miſerable ſpoile and deſolation he had made in the citie; moued with indignation, he reſolued to purſue him whether ſoeuer he were gone, and was now on his way as farre as COIM. Where vnderſtanding that *Solyman* was gone ſo farre before, that he was hardly to be ouertaken; and finding the noble gentlemen in his armie, vnwilling in their heauie armour to vndertake ſuch a purſuit, as could not be performed without the wonderfull toile of themſelues, and moſt aſſured loſſe of their goodly horſes, alleaging that they were prouided to fight a battell, and not to trauell ſo long a iourney (all which *Tamas* now that his choller was ouer, knew to ſtand with good reaſon) he changed his former determination, thinking it beſt there to ſtay, and not to follow the purſuit of his enemies any further: vntill that *Delimenthes* one of his noble men, alwaies more forward than the reſt, offered with fiue thouſand choſen horſemen to ouertake ſome part of the Turkes armie, and to do on them ſome good ſeruice. Which his offer *Tamas* gladly accepted, commending him greatly for the ſame, promiſing him moſt honourable reward: and ſo in haſt ſent him away.

Delimenthes with 5000 Perſians purſueth the Turkes.

He forthwith taking the well knowne and neereſt way, vſed ſuch expedition, that he was in hope to ouertake the rearward of the Turks armie (marching not farre now before him) about the foot of the mountaine TAVRVS, as in deed it fell out, at a place called BETHLIS. This BETHLIS is a famous towne in the confines of the Perſian kingdome, where it bordereth vpon MESOPOTAMIA, ſtanding in a pleaſant valley, by which runneth a little riuer falling out of the mountaine ANTITAVRVS; and had a caſtle kept with a garriſon of Perſians, In this valley, the two Baſſaes of CAIRE and SYRYA conducted by *Vlemas*, thinking they had now beene paſt all danger of the enemies purſuit, ſtayed with the rereward of his armie to refreſh their wearied ſouldiours, vpon certaine knowledge, that *Solyman* with the reſt of his armie was alreadie come in ſafetie to AMIDA in MESOPOTAMIA; and therefore lay as men ſecure without any ſuſpition of the comming of the Perſians, whom they had not ſo much as heard any thing of in long time before. But *Delimenthes* vſing moſt faithfull and diligent eſpials of that countrie people, by that time he was come within one daies iourney of BETHLIS, vnderſtood certainely where the Turkes lay, wearie of their long trauell, as men without feare, keeping little or no watch in their campe: Whereupon he determined in the dead time of the night following, to aſſaile them in their camp: and by ſecret meſſengers gaue knowledge both of his comming, and of this his purpoſe to the captaine of the caſtle of BETHLIS, requeſting him at an appointed houre vpon ſigne giuen, to be readie to ſallie out with his garriſon vpon that ſide of the Turkes campe which was towards the caſtle. Which his venturous deſignment was ſo furthered both by the darkneſſe of the night, and the aboundance of raine which fel at the ſame time, as if it had beene wiſhed for; that he was got with all his reſolute followers within the Turkes campe, before they were aware of his comming: where the Perſian ſouldiours, as wolues amongſt ſheepe, did ſuch ſpeedie execution amongſt the ſleepie Turkes, that the two great Baſſaes and *Vlemas*, had much adoe to get to horſe and ſaue themſelues by flight. And ſuch was the furie of the Perſians,

Delimethes aſſaileth the Turks campe by night, and maketh a great ſlaughter.

A ſians, and the greatneſſe of the ſudden feare encreaſed by the darkeneſſe of the night, that the Turkes not knowing which way to turne themſelues, or what to doe, were ſlaine by thouſands, ſome ſleeping, ſome halfe waking, ſome making themſelues ready to fight, and ſome to flie, few of all that great armie eſcaped the ſword of the Perſians. Of the fiue great Sanzackes which were in the armie, three were ſlaine, and one taken. Eight hundred Ianizaries ſeeing themſelues forſaken of their cheefetaines, laid downe their harquebuſiers and other weapons, and yeelded themſelues vpon *Delimenthes* his word. The fierce mountaine people alſo, who in former time had ſuffered great iniuries of the Turkes, after the death of *Aladeules* their king, had now ioyned themſelues to the Perſians, and notably reuenged their wrongs; to whoſe ſhare all the bag-
B gage of the Turks campe fell for a prey. It might then well haue bin ſaid of the Turks which the Poet ſpeaketh of the night wherein TROY was ſackt:

Quis cladem illius noctis qui funera fando
explicet?——

The ſlaughter of that night was ſuch, as that it is of the Turkes vntill this day accounted amongſt their greateſt loſſes; and the victorie ſo welcome to the Perſians, that in memoriall thereof they kept that day (which was the thirteenth of October) as one of their ſolemne holidaies for many yeares after. *Delymenthes* returning all bloudie with the ſlaughter of the Turkes, and loaded with their ſpoiles, was of *Tamas* ioyfully receiued and honourably rewarded.

This ouerthrow reported to *Solyman* by the two great Baſſaes and *Vlemas*, as men that had *Solyman diſcouraged.*
C hardly eſcaped ſhipwrecke, ſo daunted his proud conceits, that he reſolued in himſelfe to return home, and no farther to proſecute that vnfortunate war: the euill euent whereof his mother (as he ſaid) had more truely preſaged, than had the cold prophet *Mulearabe*; but ſecretly in mind diſpleaſed with *Abraham* the great Baſſa, by whoſe perſuaſion he had taken in hand that dangerous expedition. By the way as hee went he was met at ICONIVM by *Barbaruſſa* and *Sinan Baſſa*, ſurnamed the Iew, a man for his skill at ſea in reputation next vnto *Barbaruſſa*. Theſe two great perſonages lately come from ALGIERS to CONSTANTINOPLE with the remainder of his fleet, met him ſo farre by land, to ſhew their ioyfulneſſe for the conqueſt hee had made of
D MESOPOTAMIA and ASSIRIA, and to excuſe themſelues for the loſſe of the kingdome of TVNES; which woon by *Barbaruſſa* in the beginning of the Perſian warre, was before the ending thereof againe wrung out of his hands by *Charles* the emperour, and reſtored to *Muleaſſes*, as ſhal be hereafter declared. They with great humilitie declared vnto him the whole proceſſe of that warre, and with what ſucceſſe they had endured the force of *Charles* the emperour himſelfe in perſon: ſhewing plainely vnto him, that there wanted neither valour in the ſouldiors, nor direction in them the commanders, but only fortune, which as it mightily raigneth in all mens actions, ſo eſpecially in matters of war. *Solyman* gratiouſly accepted of their excuſe, & courteouſly tooke them vp, proſtrate at his feet, commending them for their valour in their euill haps, in a plot ſo well by them laid, more than he did the victorie of others, got by good fortune, not grounded vpon any good reaſon: willing them to be of good cheere, ſaying, That he would in ſhort time find occaſion for them to recompence that diſgrace, & againe to ſhew their approued valour. After long trauell he came to the ſtrait of Boſphorus, where *Abraham* the Baſſa go-
E ing before him, had in ſigne of triumph cauſed the ſhore all alongſt the place where he ſhould go abourd the gally prouided for his tranſportatiõ, to be couered with Perſian ſilk for him to tread vpon: from whence he paſſed with much triumph ouer to his pallace to CONSTANTINOPLE.

Enuie, the fatall and cruell companion of princes immoderat fauours, had with her prying eies quickly diſcouered in court *Solymans* changed countenance vpon the great Baſſa, & began now to ſhew her gaſtly face. They which before were moſt readie to do him all the honour poſſible, yea to haue laied their hands vnder his feet, ſought now by all ſecret meanes to worke his diſgrace and confuſion. But of all others, the two great ladies, *Solymans* mother, and the faire *Roxolana* ceaſed not by dayly complaints to incenſe *Solyman* againſt him: the mother, for that
F he had by his perſuaſion, contrarie to her mind and her ſuperſtitious obſeruations drawne her ſonne into the dangers of the Perſian war: and *Roxolana*, for that he moſt honoured and ſought the perferment of *Muſtapha*, *Solymans* eldeſt ſonne by another woman; whereas ſhee aboue all things laboured by all ſubtill meanes to preferre *Baiazet* her owne ſonne to the empire, after the death of *Solyman* his father: Which her deſignement ſhe perceiued to be much croſſed by the credit which the Baſſa had with her *Solyman*, and therefore did what ſhe might both to bring

Abraham the great Baſſa in diſgrace with Solyman.

him out of fauour, and to worke his deſtruction. But that which moſt empaired his credit with *Solyman*, was the common report raiſed of him by his enemies, That he being in heart a Chriſtian, did in all things fauour the Chriſtians (a thing moſt odious among the Turks) and had for that cauſe craftily perſwaded *Solyman* to take in hand the vnfortunat Perſian war. And that which more encreaſed the ſuſpition, was, That he about that time had cauſed one *Marke Nicholas*, a Venetian marchant (who had not without the ſuſpition of ſome oftentimes come vnto him with letters and ſecret meſſages whileſt he lay at BABYLON) to be taken in the night, and murdered at CONSTANTINOPLE, and caſt into the ſea, becauſe he ſhould not diſcouer any thing that might be hurtfull vnto him. *Abraham* thus brought in diſgrace with *Solyman*, was (after the manner of the Turkiſh tyrannie) bid to a ſolemne ſupper in the court about the fourteenth of March, after which time he was neuer more ſeene. It is reported, that after ſupper *Solyman* fell into a great rage with him, charging him bitterly, That he had miſgouerned the ſtate, inuerted his treaſures to his own priuat, and as a traitor, had ſecret intelligence with the Chriſtian princes his enemies: for proofe wherof, *Solyman* with ſterne countenance ſhewed him his owne letters, which had by chance been intercepted, oftentimes asking him in furious maner, If he knew not that hand, if he knew not that ſeale. All which the Baſſa lying proſtrate at his feet, humbly confeſſed, and with many teares craued of him pardon. But his hard heart was not by any prayers to be mooued: for the ſame night as he was ſlumbring vpon a pallat in the court, ouercome with heauineſſe, an eunuch cut his throat with a crooked knife, which *Solyman* for that purpoſe had deliuered vnto him with his owne hand. He was murthered ſleeping, becauſe *Solyman* had in former time of his fauour ſolemnly ſworne vnto him, That he would neuer kill him whileſt he liued. By which oath the great Mahometane prieſt ſaid, he was not ſo bound, but that he might kill him ſleeping, for as much as men by ſleepe depriued of ſence, are for that time not to be accounted as liuing but as dead, mans life conſiſting altogether (as he ſaid) in liuely actions. It is reported, that after *Solyman* had looked vpon the dead body, & bitterly curſed the ſame, he cauſed a great weight to be tied vnto it, and ſo caſt into the ſea. His treaſure and goods, which were almoſt infinit, were the next day all ſeiſed vpon for the emperour, and a ſmall portion thereof appointed for his poore wife to liue vpon. His death was no ſooner known, but that the vulgar people deuiſed of him infamous ſongs and ſlaunderous reports, as of a traitor moſt iuſtly condemned: and in further deſpight, with ſtones and mire defaced the trophies of the Hungarian victorie, which he had in moſt ſtately manner erected before his ſumptuous houſe in CONSTANTINOPLE. This was the wofull end of *Abraham* the great Baſſa, who whileſt he ſtood in fauour with his prince, was of all others accounted moſt fortunat, wanting nothing but the name of the great Sultan: but after falling into diſgrace, became the ſcorne of fortune, and the lamentable ſpectacle of mans fragilitie. He was murthered the 15 day of March in the yeare 1536.

Abraham Baſſa murdered in the court by the cõmandement of Solyman.

How the kingdome of TVNES was by *Barbaruſſa* (the Turkes great admirall) taken from *Muleaſſes*, we haue alreadie told: but how the ſame was againe taken from him by *Charles* the emperour a little before the returne of *Solyman* out of PERSIA, remaineth now to be declared. It was commonly reported, and not without iuſt cauſe feared, that *Barbaruſſa*, poſſeſſed of the kingdome of TVNES, and ſupported by the power of *Solyman*, would the next Summer, not content himſelfe with the ſpoile of the coaſts of SPAINE, SARDINIA, and ITATIE, as he had in former time, but with all his forces inuade SICILIA, the garnerie and ſtorehouſe of ITALIE: and from thence attempt the conqueſt of the kingdome of NAPLES, which it was thought he in his immoderat deſires had longed much after. To repreſſe this his barbarous inſolencie, and to worke the ſafetie of the frontiers of the Chriſtian kingdomes (much ſubiect to the rapines of the Turkiſh pyrats) *Charles* the emperour reſolued in perſon himſelfe with a puiſſant armie to paſſe ouer into AFFRICKE, whileſt *Solyman* was yet buried in the Perſian wars, and by force of armes to diſpoſſeſſe the pyrat of his new gotten kingdome in TVNES. For the accompliſhment whereof, he cauſed ſouldiours to be leuied in all parts of SPAINE, and came downe to BARCELONA with eight thouſand footmen and ſeuen hundred horſemen, farre ſooner than was by any man expected: amongſt whom were many of the nobilitie of SPAINE, with their followers moſt gallantly appointed: but eſpecially *Ferdinand* of TOLEDO, duke of ALBA, whoſe forwardneſſe in that honourable action, with the deſire he had to reuenge the death of his father *Garzias*, ſlain before b ythe Moores at GIRAPOLIS, gaue great hope euen them vnto his countriemen, That he would

The cauſes which moued Charles the emperor to inuade Tunes.

The emperours great preparations for the inuaſion of Tunes.

A would in time prooue a worthie chiefetaine, as indeed he afterward did.

In the meane time *Andrew Auria* the great Admirall, vnto whom onely for his approoued fidelitie and long experience the emperour had fully communicated what he had with himselfe before purposed, had with wonderfull diligence and celeritie rigged vp a great fleet of ships and gallies, so furnished with all manner of warlike prouision, as might well haue suffised a great armie: whereunto he ioyned also his owne fleet of seuenteen gallies and three galeasses, wherein he had embarked the flower of GENVA and LIGVRIA, who with exceeding cheerfulnesse had voluntarily offered themselues to follow him their old Generall in that sacred expedition. With this great preparation *Auria* came to the emperour at BARCELONA: Thether came also *Lewes* the king of Portingals brother (whose sister *Isabell*, *Charles* the emperour had married) with
B fiue and twentie Carauels, ships which the Portingals vsed in their Indian voyages, amongst whom was also one huge Galeon; all ships well appointed and fit for seruice, wherein were embarked two thousand Portingals, beside marriners: there also arriued sixtie saile of tall ships sent out of FLANDERS and the low countries, wherein were a great number of condemned persons, whose liues was spared that they might serue in the gallies: Vnto this warre *Paulus* the third of that name, then bishop of ROME, sent ten gallies vnder the conduct of *Virginius Vrsinus*: the Great Master of MALTA sent thither his fleet also. At the same time that all this preparation was in making in other places, that worthie chiefetaine *Alphonsus Danalus Vastius*, whom the emperour had appointed Generall of all his forces at land, had by the emperours commaundement taken vp fiue thousand new souldiors in ITALIE, which were led by *Hieronymus Tutauilla*, countie of SARNE, *Federicke*, *Caracte*, and *Augustina Spinula*, all famous captaines. The old Spanish garrisons which lay in LOMBARDIE, the emperour commaunded to be straightly looked vnto, that none of them should leaue their places to go into this new expedition, but to remaine there still vnder their Generall *Antonius Leua*: which worthy captaine although hee would faine haue had him with him, as of all his greatest commanders the best; yet he thought it good to spare him, both for that he was much troubled with the gout, and also for that it was necessary, as he thought, to leaue such a valiant captaine with his garrisons in that countrey, so neere vnto the French and Swissers, whom he durst not so well trust as to disfurnish that countrey either of so great a commander, or of the wonted garrisons. At the same time *Maximilian Eberstein*, and old commander, came to *Vastius* with eight thousand Germans,
D ouer the Tridentine Alpes to MILLAINE, and so to GENVA; amongst whom were diuers noble gentlemen, who then as voluntary men serued of their owne charges. With these Germanes and the fiue thousand Italians, *Vastius* embarked himselfe at the port called PORTVS VENERIS, in LIGVRIA: hauing before perswaded them with patience to endure the tediousnesse of the sea, and to comfort themselues with the hope of the victorie in AFFRICKE; where they should fight in the quarrel of God, and for the emperour, who did neuer forget his religious and valiant souldiors. So sailing alongst the coast of ITALLIE, hee came to NAPLES, where the viceroy and diuers other of the nobilitie had of their owne charges, euery man according to his deuotion or abilitie, built or furnished some one gallie, some moe, for that seruice. It was a wonder to see with what cheerefulnesse the gallants and lusty youths of NAPLES, and all that part of
E ITALIE, came and offered themselues vnto *Vastius*, so that it seemed there was none left behinde in NAPLES: for he had with singular courtesie so woon the hearts of the old soldiors and lustie youths of that kingdome, that both the one and the other thought it a most honourable thing to adorne, the one their before deserued pensions, and the other their first entrance into martiall affaires, with the participation of so notable a victory. But whilest euery man was thus busied in setting forward, certaine mutinous souldiours (weary of the sea, and fearing the dangers of so long a voyage) began to cast many perils, to find fault with their small wages, and to discourage the multitude, perswading them with seditious speeches to forsake their colours, & to run away: for redresse whereof, *Vastius* caused the authors of that mutiny to be taken and thrust into sacks,
F and in the sight of the whole fleet to be cast into the sea. So *Vastius* departing with his fleet from NAPLES, came in few daies to PALERMO in SICILIE. The emperor also loosing from BARCELONA, came to the port of MAGO in the Island of MINORICA, and from thence to CARALIS in SARDINIA, whether *Alphonsus Vastius* was a little before come with all his fleet out of SICILIE. Not long after the emperour, now that all his forces were come together, passed ouer from SARDINIA into AFFRICKE, and with a faire Westerly wind put into the port of

Andrew Auria the emperours Admirall.

Alphonsus Danalus Vastius Generall of the land forces.

The emperour passeth ouer into Affricke.

of VTICA, which is of the ſeafaring men called FARINA. In the entring whereof the admirall gallie, wherein the emperour himſelfe was, by great miſchance ſtrake vpon a ſand, and there ſtucke faſt: which ſo much more troubled the emperour, for that his father *Philip* had by like miſhap beene like to haue beene caſt away vpon the coaſt of ENGLAND, as he was ſayling out of the low countries into SPAINE: howbeit by the good direction of *Auria* ſhe was quickly got off the ſand againe, and entred with the reſt, to the great reioycing of the whole fleet. So preſently departing againe from VTICA, and ſayling alongſt the coaſt, he doubled the promontorie of CARTHAGE, yet famous for the ruines of that proud citie, and came to anker before a caſtle, which of a well beneath it, is called by the name of AQVARIA, or the Water caſtle. The Moores, who from the hils of VTICA and their watch towers had taken view of the Chriſtian fleet and of the courſe it held, adnertiſed *Barbaruſſa*, That the Chriſtians were comming againſt him with an innumerable fleet: for there was of one ſort and other almoſt ſeuen hundred ſaile, whereof 82 were great gallies, which gallantly garniſhed with flags and ſtreamers, made a ſhew of moe than indeed they were, and wonderfully terrified the enemie. But that troubled *Barbaruſſa* moſt, that he was by meſſenger vpon meſſenger certainely enformed, that the moſt mightie Chriſtian emperour *Charles* was in perſon himſelfe in the fleet, with ſuch a world of people that it ſhould ſeeme he had left none in SPAINE and ITALIE that were able to beare armes. Which newes was brought by certaine Mahometane ſlaues, who getting looſe in the gallies, had in the night ſwum aſhore, and reported the certaintie of the emperours comming: for the proud Turke, a great contemner of the Chriſtian forces, neuer thought that the emperor would haue aduentured his perſon vnto the dangers of the ſea, and chaunces of warre, eſpecially in an vnknowne barren and ſcorching countrey, but would rather haue attempted to doe ſomething by his lieutenants; or elſe by *Auria* his admirall ſeeke to ſurpriſe ſome baſe places alongſt the ſea coaſt, but not to come directly for the regall citie of TVNES: in which opinion he was chiefly confirmed by *Aloyſius Præſenda*, a gentleman of GENVA, who taken at ſea, was kept as priſoner at large in TVNES: of whom *Barbaruſſa* had learned many things concerning the ſtate of ITALIE, the manner of the Chriſtians, and ſtrength of the emperour; craftily feeding him with the hope of libertie, if he would truly declare vnto him ſuch things as he deſired to know. Wherefore now in his rage he cauſed him to be brought before him, charging him bitterly, that he had craftily and perfidiouſly told him lies for truth, concerning the emperour, and therefore commaunded him to be forthwith executed. When he had thus with the vnworthie death of a guiltleſſe Chriſtian, ſomewhat mitigated the griefe of his light beliefe, he forthwith began to caſt with himſelfe how he might beſt withſtand his puiſſant enemie. And firſt of all calling to counſell his ſea captaines, in whom for their approued valour he repoſed moſt confidence, he ſhewed vnto them, that they as valiant men, acquainted with the dangers attending vpon honorable actions, were not to doubt of the victorie, for ſo much as he ſaw it as good as alreadie gained; for the ſame reaſons for which he had before perſuaded himſelfe, that the emperour (if he had not bin halfe mad) would not haue vndertaken ſo deſperat and doubtfull a warre.

Barbaruſſa aduertiſed the coming of the emperour is much diſcouraged.

In his rage he executeth Aloyſius Præſenda.

Barbaruſſa encourageth his ſouldiers.

For who is there (ſaid hee) *that knoweth this countrie (not to ſpeake of our owne forces) which would not reaſonably thinke our enemies ſhould in ſhort time know the price of their ambitious deſire and raſh attempt? which in a moſt vnſeaſonable time of the yeare, the daies being now at the longeſt, and the Sunne in his greateſt ſtrength, are come to fight in a countrey ſcorched with heat, and altogether without water; where the verie ſand which riſeth with euerie blaſt of wind, flying into their eyes and faces, ſhall no leſſe trouble them than their enemies? Shall wee thinke that they, which as I heare for moſt part are freſh water ſouldiours, and ſurcharged with heauie armour, can eaſily march forward, or retire, or yet keepe their ground, as the diuers occaſions of battell ſhall require: when as the deepe and hollow burning ſand vp to the middle leg, will not ſuffer them to keepe any order of array? How ſhall they bee able by any meanes to abide the force of our Turkiſh footmen, or the often charging of the nimble Numidian horſemen? And if they bee ſo many of them as they ſay there is, where can they get victuall to feed ſuch a multitude, if wee doe but protract the warre? Aſſuredly (moſt valiant and courragious chiefetaines) wee ſhall erect a moſt rare and incomparable trophie in this countrie of* AFFRICKE: *when as* Charles *the rich and great emperour of the Chriſtians ſhall either here be ſlaine in battell, or elſe fall into our hands as a moſt rich prey. For myne owne part, I will notably prouide, that you ſhall want neither weapons, victuall, nor aide, during the time of this warre: I will open the*

A *the old armories, broach my ſtore, and bring foorth my treaſures. The Numidian princes now our friends, I will without delay entertaine with great pay, and ſuch preſents as ſhall be to them moſt welcome. As for the citiſens of* Tvnes, *you know how eaſily they are to be kept in obedience, and brought on againſt the enemie for a ſmall pay, and hope of reward. But this one thing is it that I moſt earneſtly require of your approued valour, That you moſt valiantly defend the ſtrong Caſtle of* Gvletta, *as the moſt aſſured defence, not of this citie onely, but of the whole kingdome; and eſpecially of our Nauie which there lieth in ſafe harbour: for that piece will our enemies with all their forces firſt aſſaile. Wherefore, as worthie*
B *men neuer be vanquiſhed, keepe that for* Solyman *and mee: ſo that it being vainely attempted by our enemies, and reſolutely defended by you, the Chriſtian Emperor there failing of his purpoſe, and ſhamefully foyled, ſhall now begin to deſpaire, not of the taking of the citie of* Tvnes, *but of his owne returne and ſafetie.*

When he had thus ſaid, the ſea captaines anſwered with one conſent, That they would moſt willingly and cheerefully performe whatſoeuer it ſhould pleaſe him to commaund: and in confirmation thereof, promiſed him not to doe any thing which beſeemed not moſt valiant and reſolute men. Amongſt theſe ſea captaines, *Sinan* of Smirna, a Iew, who had loſt his right eie, was both for his age and long experience in militarie affaires, of greateſt account: next vnto him was *Haidinus* of Cilicia, for his furiouſneſſe in fight ſurnamed of the Italians *Cacciadiabolo*, and *Salec* of Ionia; which two had before in a great battell at ſea, ſlaine *Rodericus Portendus*
C great Admirall of Spaine, and taken his ſonne *Iohn* priſoner, and ſeuen great gallies: after theſe was *Tabacches* of Laodicea, and *Giffer* a valiant captaine of the Ianizaries: all which were notable pirats and then men of great fame. The ſtrong caſtle of Gvletta ſtandeth in the bottome of the bay of Carthage, vpon a point of the land, where the ſea by a narrow ſtrait runneth on the Eaſt ſide of the caſtle into the lake of Tvnes, which being in a manner round, is about twelue Italian miles ouer. But now that caſtle is parted from the maine on the Weſt ſide alſo, by the ſea that way let in; which chargeable worke was by *Barbaruſſa* begun, but giuen ouer again by him; perſwaded by ſome, That the ſea comming in that way, would in ſhort time fill vp the lake with ſand: but was afterwards for all that, perfected by others. So that now it
D ſtandeth in the manner of an Iſland, in the mouth of the lake, deuided from the firm land by two narrow ſtraight paſſages, the one on the Eaſt, and the other on the Weſt, yet ſo, that it commaundeth both. This caſtle *Barbaruſſa* had before ſtrongly fortified both with men and munition, as the key of that kingdome: but now vpon the comming of the Emperour, he put into it his moſt expert and reſolute captaines before named: well foreſeeing that in the defence therof, reſted the ſafetie of his nauie which then lay within the lake, as in a moſt ſure harbour; and alſo the greateſt hope he had for the holding of the citie of Tvnes, whereon depended the whole ſtate of that kingdome. The emperour lying at anchor with all his fleet neere vnto the ſhoare, gaue generall commaundement, that his ſouldiers ſhould with as much ſpeed as was poſſible be landed with the long boats: which was ſo orderly done, that the Moores terrified with the hi-
E deous crie of the ſouldiours, making toward land, and not able to abide the ſhowres of ſmall ſhot, were eaſily beaten from the ſhoare, whether they were come downe in great multitudes, and ſo ſuffered the Chriſtian ſouldiers to land quietly. The firſt that landed were the Spaniſh companies, after them the Italians, and laſt of all the Germans, whom *Vaſtius* Generall of the armie cauſed preſently to encampe themſelues; ſtraightly commaunding, that no man ſhould ſtraggle from the campe farther into the land, vntill the horſemen and great artillery were all landed. The emperour himſelfe bearing victory in the cheerfulnes of his countenance, landed alſo. In the meane time certaine companies were ſent out by the Generall, to view the places nigh hand, and to ſeeke out the ceſterns and fountaines of freſh waters thereabout, which ſometime ſerued the famous citie of Carthage; with whom the Moores, but eſpecially the Numidian horſemen, a ſwift, ſubtle, and painfull kind of ſouldiers, oftentimes and in many places ſuddenly skirmiſhed: and though they were but naked men, yet taking all the aduantages they
F could of the places to them well knowne, with their arrowes and darts furiouſly aſſailed them vnawares, and ouerloaded with armour; ſparing no mans life that fell into their hands. Amongſt whom was *Hieronimus Spinnula* a Ligurian captaine, who ouerthrowne by a Numidian horſeman, had his head cut off, and carried away by the ſame nimble horſeman, before he could be reſcued. The like miſhap befell *Fredericus Carectus* a noble gentleman, who going with *Vaſtius*,

Barbaruſſa his chiefe captains.

The ſituation of Guletta.

The Chriſtian army landeth at Guletta.

to

to view the places thereabouts, was fast by his side suddenly slaine with a small shot. All which nimblenesse and fiercenesse of the enemy, could not for all that stay the Emperour: but that he would needs with a small troupe of horsemen, in person himselfe take view of the places thereabouts, euen in the sight of the Numidian horsemen, which were in euery place to bee seene pricking vp and downe the country in troupes; although hee was many times requested by his graue counsellors, to leaue that seruice for his inferior captaines, and not to expose himselfe to so great danger both of his person and of the common safetie. *Vastius* had now brought on the armie neere vnto the castle of GVLETTA, still casting vp a rolling trench as hee came neerer thereunto, thereby to keepe his men out of the danger of the enemies shot: which worke was not done only by the pioners and gally slaues, but by souldiers of all sorts; yea many of the captaines themselues laid their hands to the spade and mattocke: for why, the emperour was there a continuall beholder, and cheerefull commender of euery mans labour and forwardnesse, and the busie enemy was euer ready to take the aduantage, if any thing were by negligence omitted, oftentimes sallying out euen vnto the very trenches of the Christians, there giuing vnto them proud words of defiance. When the armie was to be martialled, and euery commander to bee appointed to the place of his charge in this siege of GVLETTA: the countie of SARNE, a man famous both for the honour of his house, and for the good seruice he had lately done against the Turkes at CORONE, requested of *Vastius* the Generall, to haue the charge of the mount neerest vnto the castle; which as it was a place of most danger, so was it also of greatest honour. Whereat the old Spaniards (after the manner of their proud nature) much repined. Vpon the top of this mount, the countie set vp his rich tent in the eye of the enemy, and there lay with the Italian companies ouer whom he commaunded. Hee had not lien there long, but *Salec* one of the Turks famous pirats, with certaine companies of the garrison souldiers, sallied out of the castle directly vpon the mount whereon the countie lay; and by making shew as if he would desperatly haue assailed the same, raising a great alarum against the Italians: yet so, as after certaine vollies of shot discharged on both sides, he began to retire as if he had been thereto constrained. Which thing the countie perceiuing, being a man of greater courage then direction, in great rage with bitter words reproued certaine of the captains, whom he perceiued not so forward in, pursuit of the enemy as hee would haue had them: and in his furie ran downe from the mount the rest for shame following him, and ouertaking the enemies slew diuers of them. The crafty pirat now seeing the countie drawne out of his strength into the plaine ground, and perceiuing himselfe strong enough to encounter him, suddenly turning himselfe about, said vnto his souldiors: *The aduantage you wished to haue of your enemies is now offered, they are now in your danger; wherefore now shew your selues valiant men, and suffer not one of these proud fresh-water souldiers to escape aliue or vnwounded.* Which he had no sooner said, but they presently made a stand, & so hardly charged them from whom they but euen now seemed to flie, that the Italians not able longer to endure the fight, betooke themselues to flight. The countie himselfe with *Belingerius* his kinsman, fighting valiantly in the formost of his companies, was slaine: many others endured the same fortune: others flying backe againe to the mount, were slaine there by the Turkes, who resolutely entred into the trenches with them so farre, that they carried away with them the plate and riches of the counties tent. Neither was there any of the Spaniards which lay neerest vnto them, and might easily haue rescued them, that would once stir out of their places to helpe them: for it is reported, that they were nothing sorie for the ouerthrow of the Italians, for as much as the county had so arrogantly craued of the Generall the most honourable place, which he so euill held. His head & right hand were cut off, and sent by *Salec* to *Barbarussa*. This ouerthrow much greeued the Italians whom *Vastius* comforted with cheerefull speeches, imputing all that losse, neither to the valour of the enemy, or cowardise of the Italians; but only to the rashnesse of the countie, whom he said worthily to haue paid the price of his inconsiderate forwardnes. But the Spaniards he sharply reproued as mercilesse men, which vpon so light an occasion had giuen cause for the Italians to haue them in distrust. The Turkes in the mean time by the often shooting off of their great ordinance, shewed the ioy they conceiued of this victory.

G H I K L M

Salec sallieth out vpon the countie and the Italians.

The countie slain, and his head and right hand sent to Barbarussa.

The Spaniards reioycing at the ouerthrow of the Italians, are themselues foiled by Tabaccbes.

It oftentimes so falleth out, that whilest men laugh at their neighbours harmes, their owne is not farre off; and so it chanced with the Spaniards: for *Tabaccbes* another of the piraticall captaines, shortly after sallying suddenly out of the castle in the dawning of the day, was got vp to the

A the top of the trenches wherein the Spaniards lay, before they were aware of his comming, and there ſlew ſome as they were a ſleepe, ſome idlie ſitting fearing no harme, others as they were arming themſelues; and with their ſudden crie, cauſed the reſt which lay neere vnto that place ſhamefully for feare to flie out of their trenches: where the Turks taking ſuch traſh as they there found, and hauing ſlaine and wounded many, amongſt whom was one *Mendoſa* a captaine, and carrying away with them the enſigne of *Sarmentus* which ſtood vpon the top of the trench, returned with victorie. The alarum raiſed in the armie was ſuch, as that the emperour himſelfe came running to the place in his armour, ſeuerely reprouing them of cowardiſe which had forſaken the place, and grieuouſly offended with them which had kept ſuch negligent watch, againſt
B ſuch an enemie, as was not for wilineſſe agilitie and courage, to be ſlightly regarded of the beſt and moſt expert ſouldiours. This diſgrace of the Spaniards well comforted the Italians, to ſee the old ſouldiours no leſſe ouertaken in their negligence, than they had been in their vnaduiſed forwardneſſe.

This tumult appeaſed, *Vaſtius* called into his tent the Colonels and chiefe captaines of the Spaniards, and ſpake vnto them in this manner:

Vaſtius his ſpeech to the Spaniſh captaines.

Friends (ſaid he) *elſewhere alwaies valiant, who togither with me, haue by your inuincible proweſſe gained vnto our emperour many moſt glorious victories. You ſeeme vnto me at this time to haue need to be called vpon, and to be put in remembrance of your wonted and approued valour: for as farre as I*
C *can ſee, the remembrance of your auntient fame, is in you growne altogither cold; your hands are become faint for feare; and that which I am ſorie and aſhamed to ſay, you are growne I know not how, altogither out of order and heartleſſe, ſhewing no courage for the ſubduing of theſe naked pirats. Yeſterday (as many ſay) you ſmiled at the vnskilfull and vnfortunate forwardneſſe of your friends, which they bought deere; but to day they worthely laugh at your degenerat careleſſe negligence: ſo that it concerneth you in honour, to blot out this ſo foule and puplike a diſgrace, by ſome notable and worthie exploit. Wherefore I exhort you, and I ſtraightly charge and commaund you, that with all ſpeed you prepare both your minds and weapons for the atchieuement of ſome new honour: ſo that if the proud enemie ſhall againe preſume to come foorth and aſſaile your trenches, you ſhall forthwith breake out vpon him, and beat him backe againe euen to the gates of* Gvletta. *Perhaps good for-*
D *tune will ſo attend your valiant and reſolute purſuit, that you may togither with their diſordered men, enter ſome of their rampiers, wherein we ſee their whole hope conſiſteth: which if it ſhall otherwiſe fall out than is to be hoped for, yet ſhall you by this your notable deuoire wonderfully content the emperour your ſoueraigne, and me your Generall, and withall couer your late diſhonour.*

Whereunto they all anſwered, That they would ſo beare themſelues againſt the enemie, as that he ſhould not deſire greater courage or contempt of danger in men deſirous of honour and commendation.

The Turks ſally againe out of Gulatta.

It was not long, but that the Turkes encouraged with their former ſucceſſe, after their wonted manner ſallied out againe, conducted by *Giaffer* captaine of the Ianizaries, a man of exceeE ding courage and ſtrength of bodie: who with the Ianizaries and certain companies of Mooriſh archers, about the noone time of the day iſſuing out of the caſtle, aſſailed the vttermoſt trenches, hoping in that broiling heat to find the Chriſtians in their ſtations negligent and vnprepared. Wherein he was nothing deceiued, for the Spaniards that burning hoat time of the day, kept ſuch negligent watch, that *Giaffer* with his Ianizaries and archers, was got vp to the top of the rampiers, and there diſcharged their ſhot and arrowes vpon the Chriſtians in their trenches, before they were well aware of his comming. But vpon the ſtriking vp of the drum, certaine companies of harquebuſiers brake out vpon them in two places at one inſtant, as *Vaſtius* had before commaunded, whom he ſeconded with a companie of halbardiers, keeping in readineſſe his ſquadrons to reſcue his harquebuſiers, if they ſhould be enforced by the enemie to retire: and in
F that order expected the euent of the skirmiſh, which was moſt valiantly maintained on both ſides. For the Ianizaries, although they were enforced to giue ground, yet (as men not vſed to flie, and ſtanding vpon the honour of their order) withſtood the Chriſtians with no leſſe reſolution than they were by them charged; vntill that *Giaffer* their leader deſperatly fighting amongſt the formoſt of the Ianizaries, was at once ſhot in with two bullets, and ſlaine: whoſe dead bodie the Ianizaries labouring to carie away, endured a moſt cruell fight, many being on both

Giaffer captain of the Ianizaries ſlaine.

both ſides ſlaine vpon his dead carkaſſe: yet at length they were enforced to flie, and ſo fiercely G
followed by the Spaniards, that they of GVLETTA, when they had receiued in the formoſt, ſhut
out almoſt a fourth part of their owne men, for feare the Chriſtians ſhould together with them
haue entred the caſtle. *Didacus Abila*, one of the Spaniſh enſigne bearers, aduanced his enſigne
vnto the top of one of the enemies rampiers, and was there ſlaine, but his enſigne ſaued by one of
the ſouldiors of the ſame band. The Chriſtians receiued more loſſe in their retreat than they had
in all the fight, for the Turks from their rampiers then diſcharged their ſhot as faſt as they could
vpon them, which they could not before doe, without the like danger to their owne men min-
gled amongſt them. This dayes worke well abated the pride of the Turks, and gaue good hope
to the Chriſtians, that the caſtle would without any great loſſe be gained: for being neere vn- H
to it, they perceiued it not to be ſo ſtrong as they had ſuppoſed.

The emperour hauing ſpent a few dayes in conſultation about his farther proceeding, and
preparing of things for the ſiege, reſolued without further delay with all his forces to aſſault the
caſtle, perſuaded thereunto by many reaſons: firſt by the cheerefulneſſe of his owne ſouldiers,
and the courage of his enemies ſore daunted in the laſt skirmiſh, which he was loth they ſhould
againe recouer by the comming of new ſupplies; beſides that, he was informed, that diuers com-
panies of the Numidians were comming to TVNES, entertained by *Barbaruſſa*, whoſe ſtrength
was like dayly to encreaſe: but that which mooued him moſt to haſten the matter, was, for that
his men began to grow ſickly in his campe, being all the day time ſcorched as it were with the
feruent heat of the Sunne, and well neere ſtarued in the night with cold and exceeding dewes I
wherewith they were commonly wet to the skin; neither was there either good water or freſh
victuall by any meanes to be had in that ſandie and barren ſoile for the releefe of the ſicke, other
than that was brought out of the fleet: for all the water thereabout was moſt vnpleaſant and ex-
ceeding brackiſh, ſo that both ſicke and whole were glad when they could get a crab to quench
the extremitie of their thirſt: although the emperour did what he might to remedie theſe extre-
mities, and much releefe was in good time ſent both from SICILIA and NAPLES: the bisket
alſo in the ſhips, eſpecially in the Spaniſh gallies, was growne hoarie and vnwholeſome. Wher-
fore he began to place his battery about the fifteenth of Iuly, which was defended all alongſt
with Gabions, and caske filled with ſand, for that the countrey ſoile in that place yeelded neither
earth nor turfe to doe it. *Auria* appointed to batter the caſtle by ſea, deuided his gallies into K
three ſquadrons, which orderly ſucceeding one another, ſhould by turns beat the ſame: his great
ſhips rid at anker, and out of their forecaſtles thundered with their great ordinance. And *Vaſtius*
at land had deuided the armie into three battels, Spaniards, Italians, and Germans, euery nation
by themſelues, in ſuch ſort, as that they might indifferently be partakers both of the danger of
Guletta furiouſly battered. the aſſault, and of the glorie of the victorie. There was neuer ſtrong place in the memorie of
man, ſince guns, that fatal engine were firſt inuented for the deſtruction of mankind, aſſailed with
greater force, greater preparation, or greater induſtrie. The great ordinance in manner of a great
earthquake ſo terribly roared and thundered, that the earth ſeemed not onely to tremble and
quake vnder mens feet, but euen by and by to rent in ſunder and ſwallow them vp: and the ſea
which was euen now quiet and calme, began to riſe aloft, and to rage and fome as if it had been L
in a great ſtorme: at which time the aire became thicke, and the skie darkened with the ſmoak of
Guletta aſſaulted by the Chriſtians. the great artillerie: from the break of the day vntill noone the roaring cannon and culuering ne-
uer ceaſed: ſo that the Vamures were beaten downe, the caſtle made ſaultable, and the wals ſo
ſhaken, that in many places the Turkes cannoniers, together with their cannons, lay buried in
the ruines thereof. Which thing perceiued, they which were before appointed to giue the firſt
aſſault, vpon ſignall giuen by the emperor, preſently vpon the ceaſing of the great artillerie aſſai-
led the breach, and others with their ſcaling ladders ſcaled the wals: which was done with ſuch
courage and reſolution, that the Turkes when they had done what they poſſibly could for the
defence of the place, by caſting downe darts, wild fire, and ſuch like things vpon the Chriſtians
as they were climing vp: at length as men deſpairing longer to hold the place, and ouercome M
with a greater fortune, turned their backs and fled. *Sinan* and the reſt of the captaines by a
woodden bridge, fled out at the farther ſide of the caſtle into the maine, and ſo alongſt the left
ſide of the lake by land to TVNES, not looking behind them for haſt: which way moſt part of
his men followed him alſo. The reſt were either ſlaine or driuen into the lake, where ſeeking to
ſaue their liues by ſwimming, they were either ſlaine in comming to land by the Spaniſh horſe-
men,

A men,or elſe in their ſwimming ſhot at pleaſure by the harquebuſiers, ſo that all the lake was as it were couered with the dead bodies of the Turkes and Moores. The emperour with ſmall loſſe thus gained the caſtle of GVLETTA,with all the warlike prouiſion therein, and with it all *Barbaruſſa* his great fleet and ſtrength at ſea,which he for the more ſafetie had before put into the lake: which as it was vnto the emperour a thing moſt pleaſant,ſo was it vnto *Barbaruſſa* and his pyrats the greateſt griefe and loſſe poſſible, hauing at once loſt all their power at ſea,which but a little before was no ſmall terrour to all the frontiers of the Chriſtian countries and Iſlands in the Mediterranean.

Guletta woone, and Barbaruſſa his fleet taken.

Barbaruſſa troubled and terrified with ſo great a loſſe,with a ſterne and ſcornfull countenance receiued the Iew and the reſt of the captains fled from GVLETTA, reuiling them bitterly in his
B rage,and calling them faint hearted cowards,which had in ſo ſhort a time giuen ouer ſo ſtrong a place. Whereunto *Sinan* anſwered for them all in this ſort:

Barbaruſſa raileth.

Hairadin(ſaid he) *ſo long as we were to fight with armed men, we did as thou well knoweſt, and our enemies cannot denie, what well beſeemed vs and thy magnificent fortune. But when wee are to withſtand the deuill and his infernall furies, which came againſt vs with flames of fire, and earthquakes, things of extreame terrour and danger: it ought not to ſeeme ſtrange vnto thee, if wee ſought to eſcape the vncouth furie of the immortall enemies of mankinde, to doe thee ſeruice in thy better fortune, in defence of this thy city and kingdome. Neither doe we account it any diſgrace to haue eſcaped that danger, as men that minde againe to fight: out of which thou, a moſt ancient and expert Commander (if I may frankelie*
C *ſpeake vnto thee the truth) if thou haddeſt beene there preſent, wouldſt haue accounted it no dishonour, but very good diſcretion to haue eſcaped in ſafety.*

The ſhort anſwere of Sinath the Iew to Barbaruſſa.

Barbaruſſa repreſſing his furie,began in a more temperate manner to requeſt them euery one particularly, as valiant and couragious men to ſtand faſt vnto him in that warre againſt their enemies the Chriſtians: telling them,that he well hoped,that after the great ſupplie of the Mooriſh footmen and Numidian horſemen were once come, which were now at hand, the enemie ſhould not long reioice of the taking of GVLETTA. After that, he forthwith conuerted all his ſtudie and indeuour,to prepare ſuch things as were needfull for the war,bringing forth his treaſures,and bountifully beſtowing the ſame amongſt the Moores and Numidians,therby to con-
D firme the friendſhip of ſuch as well affected him,and with this new bountie to win the hearts of ſuch as yet ſtood doubtfull.

In the meane time *Muleaſſes* the exiled king, with a ſmall retinue of his friends and followers came from the farthеſt part of NVMIDIA into the emperors camp; the emperor ſitting in a roiall ſeat in the middeſt of his pauillion,whereinto *Muleaſſes* was admitted,with a myter vpon his head,in a garment of greene and blew changeable ſilke: he was of a tall and manly ſtature, of colour tawnie,but ſo ſquint-eyed that he ſeemed ſpitfully to looke vpon them whom he beheld: who after he had kiſſed the emperours right hand, and had ſet himſelfe downe,with his legs gathered cloſe vnder him,vpon a carpet ſpread vpon the bare ground,after the maner of his countrey,he by an interpreter ſpake vnto the emperour as followeth:
E

Muleaſſes commeth to the emperour.

Thou art come in armes into this countrie, and art now almoſt conquerour of the ſame (thrice mightie Emperour) prouoked thereunto not by any deſert of mine, for that our different religion ſo required, yet as I verily thinke, not without the appointment of the moſt high God, whom both thou and I doe with like deuotion worſhip, to take reuenge of the moſt perfidious and cruell tyrant and pyrat, the mortall enemie of mankind: whom I foreſee as good as alreadie vanquiſhed, now that GVLETTA *is taken, and his naue ſurpriſed. So that I hope he ſhall in ſhort time by thy reuenging hand, at once receiue the iuſt guerdon of all his former villanies: which ſhall bee ſo much the more to my comfort, for that I hope the fruit of thy rare felicitie and glorious victorie will redound in great part to me, being reſtored by thee into my fathers kingdome: which I as a poore exiled prince moſt humbly requeſt*
F *of thy iuſtice and bountie. For it ſhall be vnto thee a thing moſt honourable and profitable, if thou ſhalt receiue into thy protection me, a king royally deſcended, of a moſt auncient progenie, ſtrengthened with the great alliance of the Numidians and Moores. Neither doe I refuſe either to pay thee tribute therefore, or to acknowledge my ſelfe vaſſale vnto thee the Chriſtian Emperour: Of which my fidelitie, there can bee no greater aſſurance than the thankefull remembrance of ſo great a benefit receiued,*

The Oration of Muleaſſes to Charles the emperour.

which ſhall for euer remaine vnforgotten of me and my poſteritie, euen for that eſpecially, that I deeſt and abhor the name of an vnthankfull man, and do well by experience find, how much my ſtate may bee confirmed, and the minds of my people to me aſſured, by thy garriſons ſo neere at hand in SICILIA *and* SARDINIA. G

The emperours anſwere to Muleaſſes.

Whereunto the emperor anſwered, That he was come ouer into AFFRICKE to be reuenged of the iniuries which *Barbaruſſa* had many times done vpon the frontiers of his dominions, and to root out the pyrats, of all others moſt miſchieuous: which his good purpoſe had by the goodneſſe of Chriſt his Sauiour taken ſo good effect, that he doubted not in ſhort time by the taking of TVNES to obtain a perfect victorie; which once gained, he would then kindly graunt him all things which ſhould ſtand with the conuenience of his affaires, and the vſe of his victorie: ſo that H he would not falſifie his faith, which he might iuſtly ſuſpect, if he repoſed not a ſpeciall truſt, that the remembrance of ſuch a benefit would for euer remaine in his heroical mind; and was further aſſured, that the ſame power which ſhould reſtore to him his kingdome of courteſie, could alſo take it from him againe, if his vnthankfulneſſe ſhould ſo deſerue.

The behauiour of Muleaſſes.

Muleaſſes in preſence of the emperour vſed ſuch a grauity and grace in his ſpeech and geſture, as well declared, that hee had nothing forgotten his former eſtate: but towards the Generall and the other great captaines hee vſed all manner of courteſie, ſo that he rid vp and downe with them gallantly mounted, managing his horſe, and charging & diſcharging his lance with ſuch agilitie and skill, as ſhewed him to be a very good horſeman, and of great actiuity. At other vacant times he would ſubtilly reaſon with learned men, after the manner of *Auerrois*, of the I nature of things, of the motion of heauen, and power of the ſtars. By the emperors commaundement he had a tent appointed for him, and honourable allowance for his diet. *Vaſtius* and the reſt of the cheefe commaunders of the armie vſed him with all honor, and at ſuch time as he was deſirous to ſee the campe, courteouſly brought him into all places of it, that he might himſelfe ſee what mounts they had in ſhort time caſt, what abundance there was of great artillery, what ſtrong watch and ward was kept, what a number there was of braue and warlike ſouldiers of diuers nations, differing much one from another in language, countenance, and manner of furniture: and further demanded, Whether that puiſſant armie which the emperour had brought ouer to his great good, were in his iudgement ſufficient to ſubdue the enemie? Where aboue all things *Muleaſſes* wondered at the number and order of the great ordinance: and next vnto that K at the wonderfull plentie of things to be bought and ſold in the market place, and at the modeſt quietneſſe of the ſouldiors in buying the ſame. Not long after, the expert captaines by diligent inquirie learned of him many things well ſeruing for their better proceeding in that war, eſpecially of the diſpoſition and ſtrength of them of TVNES, of the ſituation of the citie, of the nature of the wals, and fortification of the caſtle, of the wels and ceſterens in the ſuburbes, and what

His opinion and counſell concerning the preſent warre.

ſtrength the Moores and Numidians were of, which *Barbaruſſa* had entertained. In concluſion he aſſured them (as afterwards it fell out) that *Barbaruſſa* would neuer truſt to the ſtrength of the wals, which would eaſily be ouerthrowne with the great artillerie, but would in a great brauerie with enſignes diſplayed bring all his forces into the field, of purpoſe to terrifie the Chriſtians L with the ſight of the multitude of his raſcal ſoldiors, and to breake their array with his Numidian horſmen; who with hideous and terrible cries, after the maner of that nation, would not faile to aſſaile them: and yet for all that would neuer bring into the battell his Turkiſh footmen, in whom he repoſed his greateſt confidence, and whom he deſired moſt to ſpare, but would as a craftie and ſubtill Turke, by oppoſing of the Moores, whom he held in ſmall regard, trie by their bloud what might be done without the danger of his owne men. But as he told them, nothing could be more ſtrange vnto the Moores his countriemen, or that they were more afraid of, than in a ſet battell to fight with that enemie whoſe ſquadrons comming orderly on in gliſtering armour with long pikes, might ſcorn and eaſily ouerthrow the naked archers of the Moores and the vnarmed Numidian horſmen: and that our men ſhould find nothing more grieuous or troubleſome than the ſcorching heat of the Sunne, and the thirſt riſing thereof; which might M eaſily be remedied by plentie of water, which by ſlaues and ſmall boats might eaſily be brought in caskes and bottles from the fleet alongſt the lake, and ſo diſtributed amongſt the armie: although not farre from the wals of the citie, were certaine old conduit heads, which would yeeld them great plentie of water, if the malicious enemie did not to his own hurt and others poyſon

the

A the ſame. Theſe things orderly reported to the emperour, confirmed the hope he had before conceiued of the deſired victorie: So that wholly bent thereupon, and carefully forecaſting all things, he reſolued forthwith to depart from GVLETTA, and with all his power to beſiege TVNES.

But whileſt he was preparing things neceſſarie, ordering his ſouldiours, and diſcouering the enemies purpoſes, his ſoldiors had daily diuers skirmiſhes with the Numidians; ſo that once the skirmiſh was like to haue come to a iuſt battell, which began in this ſort. The Moores had planted certaine field pieces amongſt the oliue gardens, wherewith they ſhot continually into the campe: for remouing whereof, the emperour leauing the Italians, with certaines companies of
B the old Germaine and Spaniſh ſouldiors, for the keeping of his campe and trenches, went forth with his horſemen and the reſt of his armie: ſending before him *Montegius*, Generall of the Spaniſh horſemen, who for moſt part were but raw ſouldiors, ſuch as were of the noblemens ordinarie ſeruants and followers, not before acquainted with the wars. Theſe light horſemen with diuers fortune skirmiſhed a while with the enemie, but when they ſaw themſelues to be hardly charged, and *Montegius* their Generall grieuouſly wounded, they turned their backes, and in the ſight of the emperour ſhamefully fled to the men at armes which were comming after them. The manner of the enemies fight was, to giue at the firſt a fierce and deſperat charge, and vpon the incounter giuen, of purpoſe to retire, auoiding therby the ſudden force of their enemies, and by and by to turne againe vpon them with a freſh charge. The emperour ſeeing the flight of his
C light horſemen, came on couragiouſly with his men at armes, by whoſe comming in and valiant incounter the Turkes and Moores were put to flight, and their fieldpieces wherewith they had before annoyed the campe, taken. In this skirmiſh the emperour in perſon as he ſtood formoſt in his armed troupes, gaue the ſignall of battell himſelfe by crying with a loud voice, Saint *Iames*, Saint *Iames*, whom the Spaniards take for their patron; and ſo charging the enemie, performed the part not only of a couragious chieftaine, but of a reſolute and valiant ſouldior alſo: reſcuing with his own hand *Andreas Pontius*, a noble gentleman of GRANADO, whom vnhorſed and ſore wounded, the enemie was readie preſently to haue ſlaine, had not the emperour by his comming in ſaued him; deſeruing thereby the Oken garland, which the Romans by the name
D of *Ciuica Corona* gaue as an honour to ſuch as had in battell ſaued a citizen.

The Spaniſh light horſemen put to flight.

The emperour reſloreth the battel, and with his owne hand reſcueth Andreas Pontius of Granado.

About the ſame time it fortuned, that thirtie thouſand Moores came vpon the ſuddain to haue ſurpriſed a little tower, ſtanding vpon a hill neere vnto the ruines of old CARTHAGE: wherein the emperour had placed certaine ſoldiors for the keeping thereof, becauſe it was neere vnto his campe. Before theſe Moores went a Numidian prieſt, who bellowing out certaine ſuperſtitious charms, caſt diuers ſcrols of paper on each ſide the way, wherein he curſed and banned the Chriſtians: and now they had with fire & ſmoake brought the Chriſtians in that tower to great extremitie, when the emperor himſelfe comming to their reſcue with certaine companies of horſemen and footmen, ſlew the coniuring prieſt, with others, and put the reſt to flight. The diſcomſiture of the Spaniſh horſemen cauſed many men to thinke, that if the emperour
E ſhould come to a ſet battell with the enemie, he ſhould find his horſmen too weak, both for that they were but few in number, and not to be compared with the Numidians. For which cauſe and diuers others, certaine of the emperours graue counſellors, but none of the beſt ſouldiours, wiſhed him not to proceed further in that dangerous war, but with ſpeed to returne out of AFRICKE, for as much as he had woon honour enough by the taking of GVLETTA, and the ſurpriſing of the enemies fleet: wherby he had to his immortal praiſe, and the common good of Chriſtendome, deliuered all the frontiers of the Chriſtian countries in the Mediterranean from the danger and feare of thoſe moſt cruell pyrats: beſides that, the flix began to rage in his campe, wherof many of his ſoldiors fell ſick, and dyed dayly: wheras on the contrarie part, the mightie Numidian princes, ſuch as were *Muleaſſes* old enemies, were reported to come in dayly to the aid of *Barbaruſſa*. Theſe vnſeaſonable ſpeeches the emperour thought good to repreſſe betime;
F reaſoning againſt the authors thereof with great grauitie, as againſt men, who with more feare doubted of the ſucceſſe of things, and the euent of the victorie, than beſeemed them, whom for their conſtant reſolution and good opinion conceiued of their diſcretion, he had choſen to be of his moſt ſecret counſell.

The emperour aduiſed by his counſellours to returne home.

Saying, that he deſired not of them, that their needleſſe and diſhonourable labour, wherein they *The reſolute anſwere of the emperour.*

ſhould ſhew themſelues more careſull of his perſon than of his honour : for as much as thoſe things which G
they now alleadged, ſhould haue been ſaid before the warre was taken in hand, now by good hap halfe ended ; before he euer paſſed ouer into AFFRICKE. *For he might (as he ſaid) haue reſted quietly in* SPAINE, *and haue eaſily neglected and reiected the iniuries done vpon the ſea coaſts, and the complaints of his ſubiects ; but he was (as they well knew) for moſt vrgent cauſes come thither : whereas he was reſolued to ſatisfie the expectation of the world with a notable victorie, or if God ſhould otherwiſe appoint, there to end his daies with honour. Wherefore he willed them to ceaſe farther to flatter him that was no way diſmaid, or to poſſeſſe the minds of his valiant ſouldiours with a vaine forboding feare ; and with reſolute minds, togither with him their chieftaine, againſt the next day, to expect what the fortune of the field ſhould appoint for the full accompliſhment of that warre. For he was (as he ſaid) ſet downe to* H
giue the enemie battell, or if he refuſed the ſame, to batter the wals of TVNES, *not doubting but that God would ſtand on his ſide in ſo good and ſo godly a quarrell.*

The emperour leauing a ſufficient garriſon in the caſtle of GVLETTA, commanded the breaches to be repaired, and the great ordinance there taken to be laid vpon carriages, which before, after the old rude ſea faſhion, lay bound in great vnweldie pieces of timber, with yron rings faſtned thereto, and could not handſomely be handled or remoued too or fro. After that, when he had cauſed the countrey to be well viewed all about, which betwixt the Oliue groues and the right ſide of the lake, giueth a direct paſſage vnto the citie of TVNES; he ſet forward with his armie in ſo good order, that he ſtill marched as readie to fight, for feare of the pollicies and ſudden aſſaults of the enemie. On the left hand marched the Italians next vnto the lake, on the I
right hand the Spaniards neere vnto the Oliue groues, which in the manner of a great wood ran all alongſt the countrey, from the ruines of CARTHAGE almoſt to the wals of TVNES : in the middeſt betwixt both marched the Germans; next vnto them followed the great ordinance; and after it, the carriages of all the armie. In the vauntgard was *Vaſtius*, whom the emperour had made Generall of the armie, and eſpecially for that day : in the reareward was the duke of ALBA, with certaine troupes of choſen horſemen: in the middle of the maine battell was the emperour, and by his ſide *Lewes* his brother in law the king of PORTINGALES brother. The Italians were conducted by the prince of SALERN, the Spaniards by *Alarco* an auncient captaine, and the Germans by *Maximilian Eberſtein*. But the emperour in his armour ceaſed not to ride from ſquadron to ſquadron, with cheerfull countenance and full of hope, recounting vnto them the K
former victories which they had gotten for him: and telling them, that he did that day expect of them a moſt honourable daies ſeruice, for as much as they were to fight againſt the naked enemies of the Chriſtian religion : wherefore they ſhould with reſolute minds, ſet downe themſelues to endure the waight of their armour, the painfulneſſe of the march, the heat of the Sunne and ſand, & the tediouſneſſe of the thirſt ariſing therof; vntill they might ioine battell with their enemies, where they ſhould vndoubtedly by the goodneſſe of God (in whoſe quarrell they fought) obtaine the victorie : in the meane time they ſhould with patience ouercome all difficulties, comforting themſelues with the vndoubted hope of a moſt rich prey, which they were to expect of the ſpoile of a rich citie. Whereunto euerie ſquadron anſwered with a great ſhout that he ſhould not trouble himſelfe with thoſe matters which he had before rehearſed, but to aſ- L
ſure himſelfe that they his ſouldiours would moſt patiently endure all extremities, and not deceiue the expectation he had conceiued of their wonted valour, but by valiant fight to make him emperour, not of AFFRICKE, but of ASIA alſo.

The emperour marcheth toward Tunes.

Now *Vaſtius* had withdrawne two companies of harquebuſiers out of the Spaniſh ſquadron to skirmiſh with the Moores, who continually followed in the taile of the army; whom by thoſe harquebuſiers and certaine troupes of horſemen deputed to that purpoſe, the duke of ALBA notably repulſed in the rereward.

The armie was now come vnto the ceſternes of freſh water, which *Muleaſſes* and others which well knew the countrey had before told them of; which as ſoone as the ſoldiours almoſt fainting vnder the waight of their armour, with the ſcorching heat of the ſun and extremitie of M
thirſt, deſcried a far off : they for deſire they had to quench their thirſt, forthwith forſooke their colours, and diſorderly ran as faſt as they could to thoſe ceſternes : *Vaſtius* the Generall, to the vttermoſt of his power labouring in vaine both by faire meanes and foule to haue ſtaied them; who ſaw by that diſorderedneſſe of the ſoldiors, a great aduantage offred vnto the enemie, which

The ſouldiers for greedineſſe of water diſordered their march.

then

A then was not farre off. But when the generall could neither with words or blowes preuaile any thing with them, the emperour himſelfe was glad to haſt thither, with his preſence and authoritie to haue kept them in order: yet ſuch was the force of their intollerable thirſt, that neither the ſight of the emperour, nor all that he could doe, could remedie the diſorder; ſome fainting in the ſand for lacke of drinke, and ſome other for greedineſſe readie to burſt their bellies at the fountaines; ſo that the emperour was faine with his truncheon to beat them away. Amongſt the reſt one *Sullius Cicero* of ARPINAS a famous captaine, died at the ceſterne ſide with drinking too much. This extremitie for want of water ſeemed iuſtly to haue happened vnto them, for as much as *Vaſtius* the day before, had by generall proclamation thorow the campe, com-
B manded that euerie ſouldiour ſhould carrie with him a bottle of wine or water at his girdle: although he cauſed ſo much water as he conueniently could, to be carried in great caskes, for the common reliefe of the armie; whereof the Germans had the greateſt part. Some almoſt readie to giue ouer for thirſt, were glad to get a draught of cold water of their fellowes which had it, for two duckats.

A draught of water ſold for two duckats.

This diſorder being with as much ſpeed as was poſſible reformed, and the armie againe brought into order, the emperour held on his march toward the enemie: for *Barbaruſſa* with a wonderfull multitude of horſemen and footmen, and a number of enſignes (the inſtruments of vaine feare and fooliſh brauerie) gallantly diſplaied after the manner of the Moores, was come about three miles from the citie, and with certaine field pieces (as *Muleaſſes* had foretold) went
C about to haue broken the battel of the Chriſtians: which pieces although they were oftentimes diſcharged, yet did they little or no harme, by reaſon of the vnskilfulneſſe of the canoniers. *Vaſtius* in like manner and for like purpoſe, had commaunded the great ordinance to be brought into the front of the battell: but perceiuing what toile and time it required to haue it done, for that it was drawne but by ſtrength of men, and the wheeles of the carriages ſunke deepe in the deuouring ſand, and the ſhot and pouder which the mariners and gallie ſlaues carried altogither vpon their ſhoulders, came but ſoftly on; he ſuddenly changed his purpoſe, and told the emperour, That he thought it not beſt to ſtay for the great artillerie in that cheerefulneſſe of his armie, when euerie man deſired battel, but to commit all to the valour of his reſolute men and his own
D good fortune, which euer fauored his honourable attempts: leaſt whileſt we ſtay (ſaid he) too long vpon our great ordinance, which doth not alwaies ſerue to great purpoſe in ſuden battels, our enemies gather courage in the time of this our vnneceſſarie delay; and this exceeding cheerfulneſſe of our ſouldiours, the moſt ſure token of an vndoubted victorie, by deferring of time grow cold. Whereunto the emperour deſirous of battell, and filled with good hope, cheerefully anſwered: *Vaſtius* if thou ſo thinke it good, which I alſo like well of, in Gods name giue the ſignall. That ſhall I by and by do (ſaid he) but firſt it is reaſon, that you which ſway and commaund a great part of the world, learne at this time to obey him, whom to his great charge and ſhame, you laying aſide the imperiall maieſtie of your ſelfe, haue for this day made General and Commaunder of ſo mightie an armie: Wherefore ſaid *Vaſtius*, I will now vſe mine authoritie,
E and commaund you (ſith I may not ſo requeſt you) to depart from this place, and to get you into the middle of the battel neere vnto the enſignes; leaſt by ſome vnluckie ſhot, the whole eſtate of the armie be brought into extreame perill by the danger of one mans life. Whereat the emperour ſmiling, willed him to feare no ſuch thing, ſaying moreouer, That neuer emperour was yet ſlaine with a gun. For all that he departed out of the place as he was commaunded, and went into the middle of the battell. Whereupon the ſignall of battell was by the ſounding of the trumpet, and ſtriking vp of the drum, preſently giuen, and the enemie (with more haſt than the extreme heat of the day required) furiouſly charged by the emperours horſemen, who to auoid the danger of the great artillerie, made all the haſt they could to come to handie blowes. In the formoſt of theſe horſemen was *Ferdinand Gonzaga*, a moſt valiant noble man, who then ſerued the emperour without charge: he being ſomewhat before the reſt at the firſt onſet, ſlew with his
F launce a notable Captaine of the Moores, and preſently with his ſword ſo troubled them that were next, that he opened a way for them that followed him, to breake into the enemies battell. The harquebuſiers alſo diſcharged ſo faſt vpon the enemy, that three hundred of them lay dead vpon the ground before the ioyning of the battell: which the reſt of the footmen ſeeing, forſook their great ordinance, and fled backe to *Barbaruſſa*. Who long endured not the force or ſight of the Chriſtians; but grinding his teeth for ſorrow and griefe of mind, turned his horſe, and with

Vaſtius commandeth the Emperour.

Barbaruſſa in field againſt the emperour.

Barbaruſſa flieth to Tunis.

his Turkes retired into TVNES. For now that his deſignes had in the beginning taken ſo euill G
ſucceſſe, he thought it not beſt to aduenture all in one battell; knowing right well that the emperours armie could not long endure the inconueniences of the intollerable heat, and want of manie things, eſpecially of freſh water: which fed him with hope, that hee ſhould out of theſe his enemies diſtreſſes picke ſome fit occaſion of aduantage, if he could but a while defend the citie of TVNES. The Numidians and Moores, who in great troupes and companies had alwaies houered about the emperours armie, without doing any thing worth reporting, retired themſelues alſo into the ſuburbs, gardens, and other places neere vnto the citie.

The emperour glad of the flight of his enemies which were thought to haue beene in number an hundred thouſand, encamped with his armie that night in the ſame place where they before lay; determining the next day to batter the wals of TVNES, In the meane time, *Barbaruſſa* ſur- H
priſed with an exceeding feare, and diſtracted with many cares, and now become more cruell than himſelfe, had in his minde purpoſed a fact full of exceeding and inhumane cruelty; which

Barbaruſſa in mind to kill all the Chriſtian captiues is diſſwaded by Sinan the Iew.

was at once to haue killed all the Chriſtian captiues in the caſtle of TVNES: fully reſolued to haue put the ſame in execution, had not *Sinan* the Iew diſſuaded him from that moſt execrable fact, proteſting ſuch a practice to be vnſeemely for a man of his valor, famous for his many victories, and carrying with him the maieſty of a king: whereas hee would ſhortly after wonderfully repent him for doing ſo ſhamefull a fact: The doing whereof, what was it elſe (as the Iew ſaid) but a manifeſt demonſtration of his extreame feare, and deſperation? which two things were moſt dangerous to him, that was to maintaine ſo doubtfull a warre, and would much deface the glory of his former life; wherefore hee ſhould doe well to beware, that by the fame of I
ſuch a moſt horrible fact, he did not prouoke *Solymans* heauy diſpleaſure againſt him: who deuoid of all humane cruelty, had vſed both to deteſt and reuenge ſuch outrages. Wherefore hee ſhould ſuffer the Chriſtian captiues to liue bound in their fatall chaines, ſo long as it were their fortunes; who being well kept and vnarmed, might ſhortly after ſerue him to good purpoſe, and could no way without moſt certaine danger moue themſelues, if they ſhould vnaduiſedly luſt after their vnlucky liberty: for by them, the expected victory could neither be giuen to the enemie, nor taken from him, or yet ſo much as hindred. At which ſpeech the tyrant was aſhamed, and ſo ſparing the liues of the poore wretches, went out of the caſtle into the greateſt church of TVNES, whither he had cauſed to be aſſembled all the chiefe men of the citie, to tell them what he would haue done for the defence of the citie, and now by perſuaſion to encourage them to K
fight: from whom as men by him holden in diſtruſt, he had but a little before the comming of the Chriſtians, taken all manner of armour and weapon.

Whileſt *Barbaruſſa* was thus buſied, the moſt ioyfull and happie day appeared to thoſe miſerable captiues; by fortunes change no leſſe black and diſmal vnto the Turks and Moores. For that hainous purpoſe of the cruel tyrant, could not long be couered or kept ſecret: ſo that a conſtant report of a danger ſo imminent, was run thorow the whole caſtle, euen into deepe dungeons; by the compaſſion of certaine manumiſed ſlaues, who deteſting the ſauage crueltie of *Barbaruſſa* their maſter, and touched with deuotion, had in heart returned to their old and true Chriſtian religion; encouraging by ſecret ſpeeches the cheefe of the captiues with whom they were acquainted, to lay hand now vpon their libertie. Amongſt theſe well minded men was L
one *Francis* a Spaniard, whom *Barbaruſſa* had from his youth brought vp as his minion, hauing him alwaies in great eſteeme by the name of *Memis*; and another called *Vincentius Catereus* of

The Chriſtian captiues breake priſon, & driue the Turkes out of the caſtle of Tunes.

DALMATIA an eunuch: Theſe two aduenturing a moſt memorable and godly attempt, ſet open the priſon doores, and gaue inſtruments vnto the poore priſoners, readie to take the occaſion offered; who boldly ſtarting vp, brake off their chaines and giues, and ſo by the great goodneſſe and mercie of God, about ſix thouſand poore naked Chriſtians, armed with that came firſt in hand, but eſpecially with ſtones, brake forth ſuddenly vpon the Turkes that were in the caſtle. *Ramadas* a renegate Spaniard captaine of the caſtle, ſtirred vp with the vnexpected and terrible noiſe of ſo many priſoners breaking their yrons, with a few ſouldiours whom hee had ſuddenly called vnto him, ran to the caſtle gate, where one of the priſoners (a luſtie young man M
of SICILIA) had with one of the bars of the gate ſtrucke downe one or two of the warders and hauing bolted the gate, was become maſter thereof: him *Ramadas* ſlew, and opening the gate, made way for himſelfe and his few followers, with whom hee went to *Barbaruſſa* to carry him newes of that his hard miſchance: But the Chriſtians now loſed from their bands, and hauing

ſuddenly

A ſuddenly ſlaine diuers of the Turks, poſſeſſed themſelues of all the caſtle, brake open the armorie, and ſo ſeizing vpon the kings treaſure, armour and prouiſion, from a high turret gaue ſignes of victory to the Chriſtian armie by ſmoke and falſe fires made with gunpowder; and laſtly by diſplaying of *Sarmentus* his enſigne, which (as wee haue before declared) was by *Tabacches* taken from the top of the trenches at the ſiege of GVLETTA. Theſe ſignes, although the Chriſtians in the armie could not well perceiue, as being too farre off: yet by the fugitiues which came oftentimes out of TVNES to the emperour and *Muleaſſes*, they were both perſwaded, that ſome great tumult was riſen amongſt the enemies. Wherefore the emperour ſent two of his captaines with their companies, who going as neere as they could to the citie and the caſtle, ſhould diſcouer what the matter was. In the meane time, *Barbaruſſa* almoſt mad for anger, in his furie blaſ-
B pheming his vaine gods, and bitterly curſing and banning the Iew, for diſſuading him from killing the captiues, came to the caſtle gate, and with teares ſtanding in his eyes pittifully requeſted the late Chriſtian captiues (which then ſtood vpon the top of the wals and the gate with weapons in their hands) That they would forthwith let him in, faithfully promiſing them their libertie, with a generall and free pardon for all that they had done. But they mindfull both of their former and preſent fortune, and mooued with iuſt hatred, caſt ſtones at him, and with many opprobrious words reiected his requeſt: ſo that hee enraged with ſorrow and madneſſe, ſhot at them with his owne hand, and ſeeing all paſt remedie, and the citie not poſſible now to be kept, ſhamefully betooke himſelfe to flight. After him followed the Turks, in number ſeuen thouſand,
C with purpoſe to flie to the citie HIPPONA, now called BONA, famous with the biſhopricke of that reuerend Father and great Diuine *Auguſtine*. For there (as in a moſt ſure harbour) had *Barbaruſſa* left foureteene gallies in the lake neere vnto the citie, to ſerue his turne whatſoeuer miſchance ſhould happen: but the tacklings, ſailes, oares, and ordinance, he had laid vp in the caſtle faſt by, which was kept with a garriſon of his owne.

Tunes yeelded to the emperour.

The emperour vnderſtanding that *Barbaruſſa* with his Turkes was fled, came with all his armie vnto the gates of TVNES, where the magiſtrates of the citie were readie to ſubmit themſelues vnto him, and to deliuer him the keyes of the citie, only requeſting of him that he would
D keep his ſouldiours encamped without the citie, and not to ſeeke the vtter ſpoile and ruine thereof, promiſing that the ſouldiours ſhould want nothing that was there to be had. *Muleaſſes* alſo carefull of the ſafetie thereof, earneſtly intreated the emperour in the citiſens behalfe. But he, although he was of his owne honourable diſpoſition readie ynough to haue graunted what they requeſted; Yet for that he did not without cauſe doubt of the Moores fidelitie, and that the paiment of the money which they of TVNES had by *Muleaſſes* promiſed for the payment of the ſoldiors wages, was by them craftily delayed, expecting ſtill the vttermoſt deuoire of *Barbaruſſa*, he could not by any means be perſuaded to promiſe them any certaintie of their ſafetie: moued alſo ſo to doe by the diſcontented ſpeeches of his ſoldiors, who ſpared not to ſay, That they ſhould be hardly and vnkindly dealt withall, if after ſo long trauell and ſo much paines taken both by ſea & land, they ſhould be defrauded of the reward of the victorie, ſith nothing but only the hope of the preſent ſpoile did relieue and feed them, being poore and miſerable, hauing
E ſcarce clothes to couer their nakednes, and their bodies ſpent with long labour and thirſt; ſo that the Moores of TVNES, enemies of the Chriſtian religion, and the perpetuall receiuers of of moſt horrible pyrats, might worthily reioice of the Chriſtian victorie, and the conquerours themſelues for euer bewaile their owne calamities and miſeries. Whileſt the emperour ſtood thus in doubt what to reſolue vpon, *Vaſtius* with a ſmall companie came to the caſtle gate, and was with wonderful ioy receiued in by the Chriſtian captiues. But as he was viewing the wealth and prouiſion laid vp in the caſtle, a Ligurian captiue diſcouered vnto him where certaine treaſure lay hidden: for *Barbaruſſa* had there caſt into a well thirtie thouſand duckats ſowed vp in bags, which *Vaſtius* getting eaſily out, obtained them of the emperour of gift, as he whoſe good ſeruice had wel deſerued them. The caſtle thus woon by a moſt rare chance, and the captiues ta-
F king the ſpoile thereof, the ſouldiors could no longer be ſtayed, but that they entred into the citie by heapes, running after the ſpoile into euery part therof, the citiſens fearing no ſuch matter, and calling in vaine vpon the faith of *Muleaſſes*. The ſouldiors at their firſt entrance ſlew many. The Spaniards and Italians ſought moſt after the ſpoile. But the Germanes deſiring more to glut themſelues with the Mahometane bloud, filled all places with dead bodies, without regard of ſex or age; ſo that the prophane temples of their vaine prophet, ſwam with the bloud of them

Tunes ſpoiled by the Chriſtians.

that

that were fled into them. Which furious execution continued vntill ſuch time as the emperour G
moued with the pittifull requeſt of *Muleaſſes*, cauſed proclamation to bee made, That no man ſhould vpon paine of death hurt any citiſen, or take any priſoners: yet for all that, it could not otherwiſe be, but that many young men and women were by the marriners (which were come to the ſpoile of the citie) carried away to the fleet.

Muleaſſes for a little money redeemed diuers which hee knew, out of the hands of ſuch as had them priſoners: amongſt others, one of his wiues, whom hee ſometime held deareſt, was ranſomed for two duckats. The emperour entering into the caſtle, commended the captiues, who were the occaſion of that ſpeedy victorie: and giuing to euery one of them money, ſet them at liberty, promiſing vnto them ſhipping and prouiſion to bring them home euery man into his H
owne countrey. Vnto the two manumiſed ſeruants of *Barbaruſſa*, which were the authours of breaking the priſon, he gaue money and apparell, and afterwards learned of them many things concerning *Barbaruſſa* his purpoſes and ſecret diſpoſition. In the ſpoile of the caſtle, *Muleaſſes* lamented the loſſe of three things eſpecially: firſt the antient Arabian bookes, containing the interpretation of the Mahometane law, and the acts of the kings his predeceſſors; the loſſe whereof *Muleaſſes* (in the hearing of *P. Iouius*, out of whom this hyſtorie is taken) ſaid (as hee reporteth) that he would moſt gladly, if it had been poſſible, haue redeemed with the price of a city: Then the precious oyntments and perfumes, with the wonderfull ſtore of ambergrize, muske, and ciuet, worth much gold: all which *Barbaruſſa* as a rude and rough man had made no reckoning of. And laſt of all, the rare and rich colours for painting, which lying by heaps, were by the I
ignorant ſouldiers, ſeeking for that might yeeld them preſent money, fooliſhly neglected and troden vnderfoot, ſeruing no man to good. In this caſtle were found diuers head-pieces and other armor of the Chriſtians, namely of the French, who with *Lewis* their king had about three hundred yeares before beſieged that caſtle: which armour had beene vntill that time there kept by the Moores, in remembrance of that victory againſt the Chriſtians.

Three things eſpecially lamented by Muleaſſes in the ſpoile of the caſtle of Tunes.

Barbaruſſa in the meane time was come to the riuer of Bagrada, which the Moores call Maiordech, which he eaſily paſſed ouer, though he was purſued by certain Numidian horſmen, whom *Muleaſſes* had raiſed of his old friends, and of the followers of his vncle *Dorax*, and ſent them to purſue the Turks: but *Barbaruſſa* ſo marched with his harquebuſiers and archers placed in the rereward, that the Numidian horſemen durſt not come neere him, and ſo in ſafety came K
to HIPPONA, as he had before purpoſed. Yet in paſſing the riuer Bagrada, he loſt *Haydin* of SMIRNA, that famous pyrat: who being a fat man, and wearied with the heate of the Sunne and painefulneſſe of the journey, dranke ſo much, that he preſently died vpon the banke of the riuer.

Barbaruſſa flieth to Hippona, and there comforteth his ſouldiors.

When *Barbaruſſa* was come to HIPPONA, he reſted his men two dayes: then calling them together againe, he comforted them with good words, perſwading them, that whatſoeuer miſchance had happened, they ſhould impute it not to the valour of the enemie, but to the trecherie of the ſlaues; exhorting them as valiant men patiently to endure that frowne of fortune, and by ſome notable exploit to win againe her fauour: for he was determined to put to ſea with the fleet he had, and to goe preſently from thence to ALGIERS, where after he had with new ſupplies increaſed his power, and augmented his fleet, and better aduiſed himſelfe, he would take an L
attempt in hand anſwerable to their deſires, and not vnbeſeeming his owne credit and eſtimation. It is reported, that neuer vanquiſhed and beaten captaine was with a more cheerefull acclamation anſwered by his ſouldiors, than hee was at that preſent; they all with one conſent moſt willingly requeſting him to command whatſoeuer pleaſed him, which they would neuer refuſe to vndertake, were it neuer ſo heauie or dangerous, ſo that they might be brought to ſome notable exploit. *Barbaruſſa* vſing this exceeding cheerefulneſſe and forwardneſſe of his ſouldiors, did with wonderfull celeritie weigh vp the fourteene gallies which he had ſunke in the lake, and forthwith rigged them vp, and furniſhed them for all aſſayes: and vpon the very brinke of the lake caſt vp a mount of earth, whereon he placed certaine pieces of artillerie for defence of the harbour; not vainely coniecturing, that the Chriſtian fleet would in ſhort time come thither to M
impeach his going out: pointing therein as it were at the purpoſe of the emperour and *Auria* his Admirall, who were of opinion, That by ſending part of the fleet thither, thoſe gallies might be drowned in the harbour with the great ordinance, before they could be rigged and made readie. Vnto this peece of ſeruice *Auria* appointed one *Adam*, a captaine of GENVA, a man of no great skill in matters at ſea, but yet of great wealth & credit, & the Admirals nigh kinsman: he

Auria ſendeth certaine gallies to intercept Barbaruſſa.

A he with certaine galiots and fourteene gallies, ſet forward towards HIPPONA, promiſing vnto himſelfe a moſt certaine and eaſie victorie, hoping to purchaſe vnto himſelfe great honour of the vnprouided enemie: for that hee thought to haue taken *Barbaruſſa* buſie in ſetting forth of his fleet. But after he was paſt BISERTA and come neere to HIPPONA, he was certainely aduertiſed, that *Barbaruſſa* had with incredible celerity rigged vp his gallies, and fortified the harbour, by planting great ordinance vpon the mount he had there raiſed. With which newes he wonderfully troubled, changed his purpoſe, perſwaded by the other captaines of the gallies, in no caſe to aduenture to fight with him, becauſe the Spaniſh, Sicilian, and Neapolitan gallies were but weakly manned, many of the ſouldiers being for greedines of the ſpoyle gone aſhoare without leaue at TVNES: ſo that hee ſhould at great diſaduantage fight with the Turks, being
B mo in number and deſperatly bent. Wherefore he vpon good aduiſe preſently changed his former courſe, and returned to the fleet for more aid. *Barbaruſſa* (as it was afterwards known) ſtood a good while in doubt, whether he ſhould in hope of victory purſue thoſe gallies, for as much as they were in number no more than his owne; or elſe to perſiſt in his former purpoſe of going to ALGIERS. Vnto which opinion all the vnder captaines enclined, being altogether ignorant of the weakeneſſe of the Chriſtians: and ſo letting ſlip a faire occaſion, leauing a ſmall garriſon of Turkes in the caſtle, hee departed from HIPPONA and ſailed alongſt the coaſt to ALGIERS. When *Adam* was returned againe to the fleet, and had done nothing, many of the Chriſtian princes were wonderfully offended, that by the negligence of ſome who were hardly to be commaunded, and by the vnrulineſſe of others who without leaue were gone aſhoare, ſo faire an oc-
C caſion of the deſired victory, was neglected. For this thing onely wanted vnto the Emperours rare felicity in that war: for if thoſe few gallies had beene taken from the cruell enemy, or ſunke in the ſea, there had beene no meanes for him to haue eſcaped; being verily thought, that the Numidians in number infinit, and deadly enemies vnto the Turks, would with often skirmiſhes out of their knowne places of aduantage, haue ſo cut him off in his long and painfull trauell by land, that they would altogether haue made an end both of him and his followers before hee could haue come to ALGIERS. *Auria* angry both with himſelfe and thoſe whom he had put in truſt, and yet not out of hope to ouertake his enemy; with his own gallies and ſome other of the beſt ſhips went to HIPPONA: but finding *Barbaruſſa* gone, hee tooke the city and ouerthrew the wals thereof: but in the caſtle which he by force took from the Turks, he placed *Aluarus Gome-*
D *tius* with a ſufficient garriſon, and ſo returned vnto the emperour. This *Gometius*, although hee was a moſt valiant captaine, yet became ſo infamous for his auaritious dealing both with the enemy and his friends, that for feare how to anſwere ſuch things as he knew would be laid to his charge, he became the infamous executioner of himſelf. The caſtle was afterwards by the commaundement of the emperor, raſed downe to the ground, for that it was not without a maruelluellous charge to be kept. After that, a counſell was holden concerning *Muleaſſes*, whom the emperour placed againe in the kingdome of TVNES, there to raigne as his anceſtors had done before him; paying him yeerely by the name of a tribute, two faulcons & two Numidian courſers: With condition, that hee ſhould for euer honour the emperour, and be a friend vnto all
E Chriſtians, and an vtter enemy vnto the Turkes: Beſides that, that he ſhould from time to time defray the charges of a thouſand Spaniards and more, to be left in garriſon in the caſtle of GVLETTA; by holding whereof, the emperour kept as it were the keies of that kingdome at his girdle. The Emperour hauing thus honourably driuen *Barbaruſſa* and the Turkes, pirats, out of TVNES, taken from them their gallies, deliuered the Chriſtians countries all alongſt the ſea-coaſt into the Mediteranean of a great feare, and reſtored *Muleaſſes* againe to his kingdom: ſayled into SICILIA, where hee was in great triumph receiued at PANORMVS and MESSANA, from whence he paſſed ouer to RHEGIVM into ITALLIE, and from thence by land to NAPLES. Thus was the kingdome of TVNES taken by *Barbaruſſa* and the Turkes; and by *Charles* the emperor recouered againe out of their hands the ſelfe-ſame time that *Solyman* was in perſon himſelfe in
F warres againſt the Perſian: whom *Barbaruſſa* accompanied with *Sinan* the Iew, after this ouerthrow met at ICONIVM in his returne out of PERSIA, well accepting of their excuſe, as is before declared.

Barbaruſſa eſcapeth to Algiers.

The kingdom of Tunes is by the emperor reſtored to Muleaſſes.

The emperor returneth with victory into Italie.

Solyman as well of his owne ambitious diſpoſition, as following the manner of the *Othoman* kings, deſirous by all meanes to increaſe the glory of his name, and to enlarge his empire; determined with himſelf to take away from the Portingales all their traffique into the Eaſt Indies. 1537

It

It grieued him to heare, that the Christian religion should begin to take root amongst those Pagan kings, which had not long before receiued the Mahometane religion: Besides that, he was credibly informed, that the Portingales in these late wars he had against the Persians, had aided them with certain harquebusiers, and also had sent them workmen to shew them both the making and vse of great artillerie: But that which moued him most of all, was for that the Portingales by their traffique into the Indies, had cut off all the trade of merchandise into the gulfe of ARABIA, whereby the riches of the East were woont to be transported vnto CAIRE, and so to ALEXANDRIA, from whence they were afterwards by the Venetian merchants and others dispersed into all parts of EVROPE: but now were carried by the great Ocean into PORTINGALL, and from thence conuaied into all parts of Christendome, to the great hinderance of his tributes and customes of ÆGYPT. For these causes, and at the instance of *Solyman Bassa* an eunuch borne in EPYRVS, and then Gouernour of ÆGYPT, *Solyman* caused wonderfull preparation to be made, for the building of a great fleet in the red sea to go against the Portingals. All the timber whereof, was cut downe in the mountaines of CILICIA, and shipped in the bay of ATTALIA in the bottome of the Mediterranian, from whence it was by sea transported to PELVSIVM, and so vp the riuer of Nilus to CAIRE: where after it was framed and readie to be set togither, it was with infinit labour, and no lesse charge, carried by land with Camels thorow that hoat and sandie countrie, from CAIRE to SVETIA, a port of the Red sea, called in ancient time ARSINOE. From which place eightie miles distant from CAIRE, the auncient kings of ÆGYPT seeking by vaine and wonderfull workes to eternise the memorie of themselues, had with incredible charge cut thorow all that maine land, so that vessels of good burthen might come vp the same from ARSINOE to CAIRE: which great cut or ditch, *Sesostris* the rich king of ÆGYPT, and long after him *Ptolomeus Philadelphus*, purposed to haue made a great deale wider and deeper, and thereby to haue let the Red sea into the Mediterranean, for the readier transportation of the Indian merchandise to CAIRE and ALEXANDRIA. Which mad worke *Sesostris* preuented by death, could not perform: and *Ptolomeus* otherwise persuaded by skilful men, in time gaue ouer; for feare least by letting in the great South sea into the Mediterranean, he should thereby as it were with another generall deluge haue drowned the greatest part of GRÆCIA, and many other goodly countries in ASIA, and with exceeding charge, in steed of honor haue purchased himselfe eternall infamie. Yet by the singular industry of *Solyman* the eunuch, who with seuere commaundement enforced all the people of the countries thereabouts to the furtherance of the building of that fleet; hee had with wonderfull celerity in short time new built eighty tall ships and gallies at ARSINOE, and furnished them with men, and all things else needfull for so long a voyage. At which time, he vpon a quarrell pickt without cause, but not without the good liking of *Solyman*, most iniuriously confiscated the goods of the Venetian marchants at ALEXANDRIA and CAIRE, and thrust the marriners into his gallies as slaues. With which fleete in most warlike manner appointed, *Solyman* the Bassa accompanied with *Assan-beg*, commonly called the Moore of ALEXANDRIA, a most famous pyrat and an excellent seaman, set forward against the Portingals: and sayling thorow the Red sea, and so Eastward by the gulfe of PERSIA, came at length as farre as the great riuer Indus, where with all his power he assaulted DIVM a castle of the Portingals, scituate vpon the mouth of that great riuer: but in conclusion, after he had many daies besieged the castle both by sea & land, and tried the vttermost of his strength, he was so repulsed by the Portingals, that he was glad to forsake the siege, and leauing his great ordinance behind him for hast, returned backe againe to ADEN, a city of great trade in ARABIA FELIX: Where discouraged with the euill successe hee had against the Portingals, because hee would be thought to haue done something, hee allured the king of that rich city to come vnto him, vpon his false faith before giuen for his safe returne: but as soone as he had him aboord, he like a perjured wretch hanged him vp at the yards arme of his Admirall galley, and so surprising the citie, enriched himselfe with the spoile thereof. The like barbarous cruelty hee vsed at ZIBYTH, another famous port of ARABIA, where the pilgrims of the East doe commonly land when they after the manner of their superstition come to visit the temple of their false prophet at MECHA: The king of which place, together with all his nobility he cruelly murthered, contrary to his faith giuen: and so trauelling himselfe by land to MECHA, as if he had been some deuout pilgrim, sent backe his fleet by the Moore to SVETIA, hauing performed against the Portingals nothing at all.

The Egyptian kings about to let in the red sea into the Mediterranean,

Dium a castle of the Portingals in the East Indies in vaine assaulted by the Turkes.

The trecherous dealing of Solyman the eunuch Bassa with the kings of Arabia.

At

A At the ſame time *Solyman* by the perſuaſion of *Lutzis* and *Aiax* (the Baſſaes of greateſt authoritie about him, now that *Abraham* was dead) turned all his forces from the Perſians, as men agreeing with him in the cheefe points of his Mahometane ſuperſtition, with purpoſe to conuert the ſame vpon ITALIE: wherunto he was earneſtly ſollicited by *Iohn Forreſt* the French kings embaſſadour, then lying at CONSTANTINOPLE, of purpoſe to incite *Solyman* againſt *Charles* the emperour, aſſuring him that he was not of ſuch power, as at one time to defend APVLIA againſt him, and the dukedome of MILLAINE againſt the French king: who (as hee ſaid) was determined that Summer to inuade that part of ITALIE. And to further the matter, about the ſame time one *Troilus Pignatellus*, a noble gentleman, ſometime commaunder in *Charles* the
B emperours armie, but then exiled out of NAPLES, fled vnto *Solyman* (and for ſo much as he was a man of name, and like to doe him great ſeruice in the inuaſion of APVLIA, as one which knew the country well, and promiſed vnto him good ſucceſſe in that warres, was by *Solyman* honourably entertained amongſt his Mutfaracas: which is a certaine company of horſemen for their approued valour, choſen out of all nations, hauing the free exerciſe of their religion whatſoeuer without controulement, and are onely bound to attend vpon the perſon of the great Turke when he goeth to warres. The cauſe of his reuolt was, for that the viceroy of NAPLES had executed *Andrew* his brother, one of the knights of the RHODES. But being now growen into great fauour with *Solyman* and the Baſſaes, and oftentimes called to counſel in the preparation of that warre, caſting off all naturall loue of his countrey, ceaſed not by all meanes to per-
C ſwade *Solyman* to inuade the ſame, aſſuring him, that the people of APVLIA and SALERNE oppreſſed with grieuous tribute and exactions by the emperours officers, would at the firſt reuolt, eſpecially if they ſaw any of the French nation to cleaue vnto. And that which mooued him more then all the reſt, the auncient Turkes told him into what a feare all ITALIE was ſtrucken, at ſuch time as *Achmetes* the Baſſa hauing taken HYDRVNTVM, had vndoubtedly conquered not onely the kingdome of NAPLES, but the citie of ROME alſo, and all the reſt of ITALIE, had not the vntimely death of *Mahomet* his great grandfather interrupted the courſe of that victory. Which perſwaſions wrought ſuch effect in *Solyman*, that he once fully reſolued for the inuaſion of ITALLIE, made ſuch expedition both by ſea and land, that he himſelfe in perſon was come with two hundred thouſand men vnto AVLONA, the moſt conuenient port of MACE-
D DONIA for the tranſporting of his armie, before it was thought in ITALIE that hee was ſet forward from CONSTANTINOPLE: where hee had not long ſtayed, but *Lutzis Baſſa* his Admirall, accompanied with *Barbaruſſa*, ſayling alongſt the coaſt of PELOPONESVS and EPIRVS, and ſo paſſing by CORCYRA, where *Hieronimus Piſaurius*, Admirall of the Venetian fleet lay with his gallies (after mutuall ſalutation done after the manner of ſea, by ſhooting off their great pieces in token of friendſhip) put into the hauen of AVLONA alſo. *Solyman* not purpoſing to loſe any time, and hauing ITALIE now in his ſight, commanded *Lutisz* and *Barbaruſſa* to paſſe ouer with the fleet vnto OTRANTO, and to prooue the minds of the people; that if the firſt enterpriſe fell out well, hee might preſently follow after with all his armie. With them went alſo *Troilus Pignatellus*, as forward to the deſtruction of his country, as any of the reſt. Hee knowing
E that the great cities of HYDRVNTVM and BRVNDVSIVM were kept with ſtrong Garriſons of *Charles* the emperour, leauing HYDRVNTVM on the right hand, directed the Turkes to a towne vpon the ſea coaſt, eight miles off, called CASTRVM, neere vnto which ſtandeth a caſtle vpon a hill then belonging to *Mercurinus Catinarius*: who being a man vnacquainted with warres, and terrified with the ſudden comming of the Turks, and perſwaded by *Troilus*, yeelded vp his Caſtle, vpon condition that the Turks ſhould offer no violence or injurie vnto him or his, either in bodie or goods. Vpon which condition the towne of CASTRVM was alſo deliuered vnto them. But the Turkes, eſpecially the greedy marriners, being got into the caſtle and the town, moued neither with the intreaty of *Troilus*, nor the commandement of *Lutzis* and *Barbaruſſa*, rifled the towne and caſtle, and carried away with them *Mercurinus* himſelfe, with all the floure of
F the people, to their gallies as priſoners. But *Lutzis* aſhamed of ſuch faithleſſe dealing, preſently ſet *Mercurinus* at liberty againe. At the ſame time alſo *Solyman* had by night ſent ouer certaine troupes of light horſemen, in great palendars: which running all alongſt the ſea coaſt from TARENTVM to BRVNDVSIVM, carried away with them both the people and cattell, and whatſoeuer els came in their way by the ſpace of forty miles. So that all that countrey of SALENTINVM, now called OTRANTO, was filled with feare and danger; and had not there ſtayed, but

Solyman incited by the French embaſſadours to inuade Italie.

Solyman with an army of two hundred thouſand men commeth to Aulona.

Solymã ſendeth Lutzis and Barbaruſſa with his fleet to inuade Italie.

Caſtrum in Apulia yeelded to the Turks, & by them contrary to their faith ſpoyled.

The Turkes ſpoyle Apulia.

was

was like enough to haue ouerwhelmed all ITALIE, by the comming ouer of *Solyman* with his G
whole armie, had not the raſhnes of one Venetian captaine by vnexpected chance turned that
tempeſt from the Italians vpon the Venetians themſelues.

Alexander Contarenus, a valiant Captaine of the Venetians, meeting with certaine of the Turkes gallies, which would neither vaile their top ſailes, nor in token of reuerence and friendſhip, diſcharge any of their great Ordinance, as of dutie they ought to haue done in thoſe ſeas where the Venetians commanded; offended with their proud inſolency, fiercely aſſailed them, and in fight ſunke two of them: wherein *Vſtamenes* Gouernour of CALIPOLIS, a man of no ſmal reputation among the Turks, was reported to haue periſhed. Which outrage done by *Contarenus* in a moſt vnfit time (to the great hurt of the Venetian eſtate, as it appeared afterward) was imputed to his owne priuate grudge which he bare againſt the Turks, for that they intercepted H
a ſhip of his as ſhe was comming out of the Eaſt countries laden with rich merchandiſe: ſo that it was thought, that he to pleaſe himſelfe in reuenging of his owne priuate injurie, regarded not what in that dangerous time might enſue thereof to the common ſtate.

A little before the comming ouer of the Turkes into ITALIE, *Andreas Auria* the Emperours Admirall lying at MESSANA in SICILIA, vnderſtanding that *Solyman* was come with his armie to AVLONA, and that his fleet was arriued there alſo, put to ſea, directing his courſe towards the Ilands of CAPHALENIA and ZACYNTHVS, hoping (as indeed it fell out) to meete with the taile of the Turkes fleet: for there according to his expectation hee chanced vpon diuers of the Turks victuallers, whom hee eaſily tooke. The marriners he chained in his owne gallies for ſlaues, and furniſhing his fleet with the victuall which was not for him prouided, fired the ſhips. I

Iunusbeius with two gallies driuen by the Venetians vpon the Acroceraunian rocke.

Whileſt *Auria* was thus beating too & fro in the Ionian ſea, it fortuned that *Solyman* ſent *Iunuſbeius* his chiefe interpreter, a man whom hee made no ſmall account of, with two gallies on a meſſage to *Lutzis* his Admirall. This proud Turke comming neere CORCYRA, where the Venetian Admirall lay with his fleet, offered ſcornefully to paſſe, without vayling: which his pride tending to the diſgrace of the Venetians, certaine of the Venetian captains not enduring, ſet vpon him with ſuch furie, that the Turkes were enforced to runne both their gallies on ſhore vpon the coaſt of EPIRVS, neere vnto the mountaines called ACROCERAVNII, where hauing eſcaped the danger at ſea, they fell almoſt all into the hands of the cruell mountaine people, liuing for the moſt part by theft, and waiting for wrackes, as hawkes for their prey: by theſe ſhamers the Turkes were ſtript of all they had, and *Iunusbeius* with much adoe redeeming himſelfe K
out of their hands, returned to *Solyman*. *Auria* ſayling alongſt the ſea coaſt, chanced vpon theſe gallies, and finding them ſore bruſed, ſet fire on them.

For theſe vnkind parts, the Turkes were wonderfully offended with the Venetians, & greeuouſly complained of them to *Solyman*: although the Venetian Admiral laboured by all means he could to appeaſe *Iunusbeius*, and to excuſe the matter, as a thing done by great ouerſight on both ſides. Vpon theſe ſmall occaſions, the Turkes ſought to breake off the league with the Venetians; which fell out ſo much the ſooner, for that about the ſame time *Auria* ſayling vp and downe the Ionian ſea, and diligently looking into euery harbour to intercept ſuch as ſtragled from the Turkes fleet, happened by night to light vpon twelue of *Solymans* great gallies neere vnto CORCYRA, all filled with his Ianizaries and choice horſemen of the court, the beſt ſouldi- L

Auria taketh 12. of the Turks gallies full of Ianizaries and Solymans other beſt ſouldiors.

ors of the Turks, who had by land ſent their horſes to the campe by their lackies, and were comming themſelues with the Ianizaries by ſea. *Auria* falling vpon theſe gallies, had with them a cruell and deadly fight: For they as reſolute men, wiſhing rather to die than to yeeld vnto their enemies, with inuincible courage maintained a moſt bloudy fight againſt *Auria* with his thirtie gallies excellently appointed, vntill ſuch time as moſt part of them were ſlaine, and the reſt ſore wounded; who ſeeing no remedie, but that they muſt needs come into the hands of their enemies, threw their ſcimitars ouerbourd, becauſe thoſe choice weapons ſhould not come into the hands of the Chriſtians. In this conflict *Auria* loſt alſo many of his beſt ſouldiers: yet hauing got the victorie, and poſſeſſed of the gallies, hee ankered neere vnto CORCYRA, there to take view of his owne harmes and the enemies: but whileſt he rid there at anker, hee was aduertiſed, M
that *Barbaruſſa* was comming againſt him with foureſcore gallies. Wherfore knowing himſelfe too weake to encounter ſo ſtrong an enemy, he departed thence, and returned againe to MESSANA to repaire his fleet. *Solyman* thorowly chafed with the loſſe of his gallies and beſt ſouldiors, and with the double iniury done vnto him by the Venetians, fell into ſuch a rage, that hee

curſed

A curſed *Barbaruſſa*, as one who in theſe warres had done him no good ſeruice; and thundered out greeuous threats againſt the Venetians, ſaying hee was vnder the colour of an antient league by them deceiued and greatly abuſed, & that they were ſecretly confederated with *Charles* his enemie, and had for that cauſe (as they had alwaies) holpen *Auria* with intelligence, and all things neceſſary, receiuing him into their harbours, and by their eſpials giuing him knowledge of the order of his fleet, that ſo hee might at his owne aduantage ſurpriſe his gallies, as he had alreadie done: vnto which fire, *Iunusbeius* his interpreter, *Barbaruſſa* and *Aiax* laid new coales, more and more incenſing the tyrant, who was of himſelfe ſufficiently inflamed, perſuading him by all meanes they could to breake the league with the Venetians. Wherein *Iunusbeius* ſought to re-

Iunusbeius, Barbaruſſa, & Aiax incenſe Solyman againſt the Venetians.

B uenge his owne priuate iniuries; and the other two after their greater profit and credit, gaping

H after the ſpoile of the Iſlands neere hand, eſpecially of CORCYRA (now called CORFV) ZACYNTHVS, and CEPHALENIA, all ſubiect to the Venetian ſigniorie, finding the warres in ITALIE more dangerous and difficult than they had before imagined. For the French king came not then into ITALIE, as was by them expected: and it was commonly reported, That *Petrus Toletanus*, viceroy of NAPLES, hauing put ſtrong garriſons into the townes all alongſt the ſea coaſt, was comming himſelfe with a great armie: beſide that, the horſemen ſent ouer from AVLONA, raunging about in the countrey of SALENTVM for ſpoile, were many times cut off by *Scipio Sommeius*, a noble gentleman, there Gouernour for the Emperour. Wherefore *Solyman* chan-

Solyman conuerteth his forces from the Italians againſt the Venetians.

C ging his purpoſe for the inuaſion of ITALIE, in his mad mood proclaimed warre againſt the

I Venetians: and ſo riſing with his army from AVLONA, and marching alongſt the ſea coaſt vntill he came oueragainſt CORCYRA, he encamped neere vnto the mountaines called ACROCERAVNII, where the fierce and wild people inhabiting the hight and rough mountaine of CHIMERA (a part of the Acroceraunian mountaines) by the inſtigation of one *Damianus*, a notable theefe, and very perfit in the blind and difficult paſſages amongſt the rockes and woods in thoſe deſolate mountaines, conſpired to attempt a moſt ſtrange and deſperat exploit, which was, by night to ſpoile *Solyman* in his owne pauillion. Theſe beggerly wild rogues liuing moſt part by

Solyman in danger to haue bin ſlaine in his tent in the middeſt of his armie.

murther and robberie, altogether without law or any manner of religion, in hope of ſo great a prey, and to become famous by killing one of the greateſt monarchs of the world in the middeſt of his ſtrength, guarded with ſo many thouſands of his ſoldiors, were not afraid of any danger

D how great ſoeuer, hoping in the dead time of the night to ſteale into the campe vndiſcouered,

K and there ſo to oppreſſe *Solyman* ſleeping in his tent: Which (as was by many afterwards ſuppoſed they were like ynough to haue performed, to the aſtoniſhment of the world, had it not been by chance diſcouered: for when they had put all things in readineſſe for their purpoſe, *Damianus* ringleader of theſe deſperat ſauage people, by ſecret waies ſtealing downe the broken rockes of thoſe huge mountains, and comming verie neere vnto the campe, to view the ſtanding of *Solymans* pauillion, with the order of the Turks watch, was by the cracking of a bough eſpied by the Ianizaries, where he ſtood in a tree prying all ouer the campe: and being there taken, and afterwards put to torture, and confeſſing what he had intended, was by the commandment of *Solyman* torne in pieces. Whereupon he forthwith ſent a great part of his armie vp into the

E mountaines, which hunting after theſe wild people, as if they had bin wild beaſts, ſlew many of them, and by *Solymans* appointment did what they poſſibly could to haue quite deſtroyed them, as an infamous people, enemie to all men.

Solyman inuadeth the Iſland of Corcyra.

When *Solyman* had thus fully reuenged himſelfe vpon this barbarous nation, he purpoſed to inuade the Iſland of CORCYRA, now called CORFV, part of the Venetian ſegniorie: ſending before *Barbaruſſa* with his great artillerie, whom he had but a little before called out of ITALIE with his forces. *Biſaurius* the Venetian Admirall in good time foreſeeing the tyrants purpoſe, ſtrengthened the garriſons in both the caſtles of CORFV, with new ſupplies of good ſouldiours ſent out of the gallies, and knowing himſelfe vnable to incounter with the Turks great fleet at ſea, withdrew himſelfe farther off from the Iſland into the gulfe of the Adriatique, to the intent

F to ioine his power with *Ioannes Veturius*, who kept that ſea with another fleet of the Venetian

M gallies, and ſo with ioined forces to defend the Venetian coaſts againſt the Turkes: whom hee thought himſelfe ſtrong ynough for, with the helpe of *Veturius* and of *Auria*, whoſe comming was dayly expected. *Solyman* ſending a great part of his armie out of the maine into the Iſland, burnt and deſtroyed the countrey villages, leading away a wonderfull number of poore countrey people into moſt miſerable captiuitie. *Aiax* the Baſſa, and *Barbaruſſa* in two ſmall pinnaces,

came as neere vnto the citie of CORFV as they possibly could, to see which way they might G
most conueniently lay siege vnto it: but perceiuing the great strength therof, being wonderfully fortified, and thorowly manned, they aduertised *Solyman*, that it was a place impregnable. *Aloysius Ripa*, and *Symon Leonius*, two Senators of VENICE were then gouernors of CORFV, who not without cause standing in doubt of the great strength of the Turks both by sea & land, caused the suburbs of the citie (which were verie great & sumptuously built) to be pluckt down, for feare that the Turks shrouding themselues in them, should with more ease besiege the town. This was a wofull and lamentable thing to behold, when as at the same time a man might haue seene the magnificent houses of the Venetian merchants, built in time of long peace, both for profit and for pleasure in euerie place of the Island, and set on fire by the Turkes: But the regard of the publike state in so great a danger, made all those goodly things which went so to H
wracke, to be lightly accounted of in comparison of their liues and libertie; for as much as those lost things might with new charge be againe in short time recouered.

The two Venetian gouernours aforesaid, fearing a long siege, and not prouided of victuall to suffice such a multitude as were got into the citie, for any long time; vsed a heauie and sharp remedie, by turning a great number of weake people and children vnable for seruice, out of the citie; of whom many, especially children, died in the towne ditches in their mothers armes vnder the walls of the citie, not daring to go any further for feare of the enemie, who had fast by in places conuenient cast vp great mounts, and planted his ordinance against the citie: only the castle called S. *Angelo* standing in the middle of the Island, about fifteene miles from the citie of CORFV, being valiantly defended by the inhabitants against the assaults of the Turkes, happily I
saued aboue three thousand poore people which fled thither from the furie of the Turkes, who in all other places of the Island had made all desolate. The Turkes the more to terrifie them of CORFV, taking a hill not farre from the citie, couered the same with their tents, and from the rocke called MARIPETRVS, shot with their great ordinance into the towne: some of them in the meane time standing close in the ruines of the suburbs, did with their harquibusiers kill or wound them which appeared vpon the wals. The gallies also did oftentimes out of their prows discharge their great pieces against the citie; to the greater terrour than hurt of the defendants. *Solyman* perceiuing that he did but lose his labour in besieging the citie, as he was told at the first by his great captaines, *Lutzis*, *Aiax*, and *Barbarussa*; determined now to raise his siege, and to returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, greatly ashamed that he had no better sped neither in K
ITALLIE, nor at the siege of CORFV. But when he was about to haue departed, it was told him how vnfaithfully some of his soldiors had dealt with them of CASTRVM in ITALIE; who yeelding themselues vpon the Turks faith to them giuen for the safegard of their libertie and goods, were neuertheless most iniuriously spoiled of all that they had, and caried away into bondage. Which fact as tending to the dishonour of his name, and the deterring of others from yeelding, *Solyman* tooke in so euill part, that for amending thereof, he caused the authors of that fact to be put to death, and the captiues of CASTRVM to be diligently sought out, and sent home againe into their countrie: well deseruing therein the commendation of a most iust prince. The Turks left the siege of CORFV and departed out of the Island about the twelfth of September, in the L
yeare 1537: carrying away with them aboue sixteen thousand of the Island people into perpetuall captiuitie. So *Solyman* rising with his armie, marching thorow ACARNANIA and ÆTOLIA, returned thorow MACEDONIA to CONSTANTINOPLE: hauing in this his expedition done great harme both in ITALIE and CORCYRA, but yet nothing increased his empire or honour.

Good iustice done by Solyman

The Turks depart from Corfu, and carie away with thē about sixteenthousand Christians into captiuitie.

Before his departure, calling vnto him *Lutzis* his Admirall, he commaunded him also to returne with his fleet to HELLESPONTVS: who passing by ZAZINTHVS, and landing some of his men in the night, tooke diuers of the countrie people prisoners. But vnderstanding that the citie it selfe was both strong and well manned, he departed thence to CYTHERA, where vnfortunately attempting to haue taken the castle, & disappointed of his purpose, he made what spoile he could vpon that Island, and with eight hundred prisoners returned into ÆGIVM to ÆGINA, M
a rich and famous Island, and well peopled both with mariners and other inhabitants. Approching the Island, he by his messengers sent before vnto the Gouernor of the citie, attempted first by faire meanes, and afterwards by threats to haue had the citie yeelded vnto him: and not so preuailing, but perceiuing them to stand vpon their defence, he landed his men and gaue the signall

A nall of battell. Which they of the Iſland refuſed not, but manfully met him, and at the firſt encounter ſlew many of his men: wherewith the Admirall grieuouſly offended, and ſtill landing freſh men, euen with his multitude oppreſſed them of the Iſland, being but in number few, and wearie of long fight; and ſo inforced them to retire into the citie.

Aegina with other Iſlands of the Aegeum ſpoiled.

To be reuenged of this iniurie, the Baſſa cauſed certaine pieces of great ordinance to be landed, and a batterie planted againſt the citie: by force whereof, he had in ſhort time in diuers places opened the wals, and then with all his power aſſaulting the breaches, forthwith tooke the citie: which after he had rifled, he burnt it downe to the ground, raſed the wals, and put the men euery mothers ſonne to the ſword. As for the women, he gaue them without reſpect vnto the luſt of his ſouldiors and marriners, whom afterwards together with the boies and young chil-
B dren he ſhipped into the countrie neere vnto ATHENS, to be from thence conuaied to CONSTANTINOPLE into moſt miſerable ſeruitude.

ÆGINA thus vtterly raſed, he with much like force and crueltie raged vpon them of PAROS, and the other Iſlands thereabouts, killing the old men and ſuch as made reſiſtance, and thruſting the reſt into his gallies. Shortly after he came to the Iſland of NAXOS, where all the Iſland people were for feare of his comming, fled out of the countrie into the citie: there landing his men, he made hauocke of whatſoeuer came to his hand. And in the meane time ſent a meſſenger vnto the duke, to will him to yeeld himſelfe and his citie into the obedience of the Turkiſh emperour *Solyman*. Which meſſenger admitted into the citie, and brought before the duke, in blunt and plaine tearmes, without farther circumſtance, deliuered his meſſage as followeth:

C

The blunt ſpeech of a Turke ſent by Lutzis Baſſa vnto the duke of Naxos.

If thou wilt without more adoe, yeeld thy ſelfe, thy citie and territorie to the Conſtantinopolitane emperour, thou ſhalt deſerue his fauour, and ſo ſaue thy ſelfe with that thou haſt. But if thou otherwiſe aduiſed, ſhalt now refuſe this grace, thou ſhalt neuer hereafter haue the like offer: but for euer vndoe thy ſelf, thy wife and children, thy citizens and ſubiects in generall. Here is preſent a moſt mightie fleet with moſt valiant and victorious ſouldiors, furniſhed with all the habiliments of war requiſite for battell or ſiege. Be warned by them of ÆGINA, PAROS, *and other thy neighbour princes of the Iſlands. Thy hap is good, if thou be not miſaduiſed; and warned by other mens harmes wilfully refuſe to remedie thine own; and when thou mighteſt be ſafe, wilfully caſt away thy ſelfe.*

D This ſaid, hee was commaunded by the duke to ſtand aſide, and a while to expect his anſwere: who with the chiefe of his ſubiects there preſent, but much troubled, and all full of heauines and ſorrow, conſulted what anſwere to make. But after they had according to the waightineſſe of the cauſe and neceſſitie of the time fully debated the matter, it was with generall conſent agreed, That for as much as they were not themſelues of power to withſtand ſo furious an enemie, neither to expect for helpe from others, they ſhould therefore yeeld vnto the preſent neceſſitie, which otherwiſe threatned vnto them vtter deſtruction, and reſerue themſelues vnto better times. Whereupon anſwere was giuen vnto the meſſenger by the duke, That he was readie to yeeld himſelfe vnto *Solyman* as his vaſſaile, and of him as of his ſoueraigne to hold his ſeigniorie for the yearely tribute of fiue thouſand duckats. Of which offer the Baſſa accepted,
E receiuingin hand one yeares tribute. So was that notable Iſland yeelded vnto the Turkiſh obeiſance the 11 of Nouember this yeare 1537: from whence *Lutzis* the proud Baſſa laded with this rich ſpoile of the countries and Iſlands he had paſſed by, returned to CONSTANTINOPLE with his fleet. Not long after, this great Baſſa then in credit and authoritie next vnto *Solyman* himſelfe, fell at ods with his wife, *Solymans* ſiſter: for that he after the vnnaturall manner of thoſe barbarous people kept in his houſe a moſt delicat youth, in whom he tooke more pleaſure than in his wife. Which ſhe being a woman of great ſpirit not able to endure, and knowing her huſband by marrying of her to haue bin from baſe degree aduanced vnto the higheſt honours that the emperour her brother could heape vpon him, in great rage reproued him with moſt bitter words, ſaying, That ſhe had married him to be of him beloued, and vſed as his wife, and not
F contemptuouſly abuſed by his minions. Wherewith the Baſſa moued, gaue her a blow on the eare, and cauſed her as a fooliſh and vnquiet woman to be ſhut vp in her chamber. But ſhe not brooking ſuch abuſe, came weeping to *Solyman* her brother, and complaining of her huſband, requeſted to be diuorſed from him, who made no better reckoning of her: And with her complaint ſo incenſed *Solyman*, that he tooke from him his ſeale, and thruſt him out of all his hono-

Naxos becometh tributarie vnto the Turke.

Lutzis Bassa disgraced by Solyman and exiled.

rable promotions,and had vndoubtedly put him to death,had not the remembrance of his old loue and friendship staied his furie:yet hauing vtterly disgraced him,he banished him the court into MACEDONIA,where he spent the remainder of his loathed life like as a poore priuat man:of whom *Boisardus* thus writeth. G

Quæ tibi cum molli res est pollute Cynædo:
Cum cubet in Thalamis regia nympha tuis?
Ex humili fortuna loco te euexit in altum
Ex alto maior sæpe ruina venit.

On daintie boies,thou filthie man, why dost thou fix thine eye: H
Whilest princely dame of royall bloud,doth in thy chamber lie?
From base estate to honours height,blind fortune did thee call,
And set thee vp with princes great,to worke thy greater fall.

Solyman thus fallen out with the Venetians,as is aforesaid,to intangle them at once with warr in diuers places,commanded his lieutenants in euery place bordering vpon any part of the Venetian seighiorie,to vex and molest them with all bostilitie,which they did accordingly: In PELOPONESVS,*Cassimes* besieged MAVPLIVM and EPIDAVRVS, two strong cities of the Venetians: *Barbarussa* landing his men in DALMATIA,surprised the auncient citie of BOTROTVS, belonging to the Venetians, caried away the citisens and raised the citie: OBROATIVM another citie of the Venetians in DALMATIA, called in auncient time ARGIRVTVM, with the castle of NADIN,were taken by *Vstref*,*Solymans* lieutenant in ILLYRYA. The Venetians thus inuaded on euery side, requited them againe with the like: *Pisaurius* and *Veturius* (the Venetian Admirals) landing their men, besieged SCARDONA,a citie of the Turkes in the borders of DALMATIA, which they tooke by force,put the Turkes to the sword,and ouerthrew the wals of the citie,because it should be no more a refuge vnto the Turks: They sent also one of their captains called *Gabriel Ribeus* to besiege OBROATIVM; who vpon the comming of *Amurathes*, one of *Vstref* his captaines,cowardly fled,and in flight lost most of his men; for which his cowardise, *Pisaurius* caused his head to be struck off aboord the Admirall gallie: And *Camillus Vrsinus* appointed by the Venetian state gouernor of IADERA, a strong towne vpon the frontiers of their territorie in DALMATIA, tooke from the Turkes the towne of OSTROVIZZA, which he burnt downe to the ground: He recouered also OBROATIVM, which was a little before lost; which by the commaundement of the Senat he vtterly rased, as place not well to be kept against the enemie, K

The Turks spoile the Venetians, and the Venetians them likewise.

I

The same Autumne that *Solyman* hauing wasted CORCYRA was returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, and the Venetians held warres with the Turkes for the towns and castles in DALMATIA: king *Ferdinand* receiued such an ouerthrow at EXER by the Turks, as a greater or more shamefull vnto the name of the Christians was hardly in that age seene; if the losse of the choise souldiors and captaines of foure great nations,with the shamefull flight of the generall be well considered. After the battell of MOHAHZ wherein king *Lewis* was lost, the Turkes hauing gotten the victorie,kept vnto themselues that part of HVNGARIE which is called POSSEGA, because thereby they had a fit passage from BELGRADE further into HVNGARIE. The two great riuers of Sauus and Dranus,running almost with equall distance from the West, taking with them diuers other smaller riuers,before they fal into the great riuer of Danubius Eastward, do on both sides inclose this countrie of POSSEGA, being a rich and plentifull countrie,and wonderfull well peopled: It bordereth vpon the prouinces of CROATIA and CORBANIA, which in times past were at continuall warres with the Turks garrisons thereby in ILLYRYA and BOSNA. L

Mahometes Gouernour of Belgrade.

At that time one *Mahometes* a most valiant captaine of the Turkes was Gouernour of BELGRADE, to whom for his approued valour and wisedome *Solyman* had committed the keeping of those frontiers,and the protection of the kingdome of HVNGARIE in the behalfe of king *Iohn*. He the yere before had so vsed the matter,that what by force,what by pollicie,he had taken from the Christians aboue thirtie small castles in the countrie (which was sometime part of the patrimonie of the Despot of RASCIA) and had ioined them to the regiment of BOSNA. M

One

A One of theſe caſtles amonſt the reſt called E-ᴇ ʀ ᴋ, for the commodious ſituation thereof hee ſtrongly fortified, as that which might giue him paſſage ouer the riuer Dranus into Hvngarie: from whence he fet infinit preyes out of king *Ferdinands* countrey neere vnto him. Yet was there at that time a certain league betwixt *Solyman* and *Ferdinand*, which notwithſtanding after the old cuſtome of thoſe countries for the exerciſe of the garriſon ſouldiors, did beare with the taking of bootie, and light skirmiſhes without any breach thereof; ſo that it were done without any great power or field pieces: which wrong named peace, *Mathias* and the auncient kings of Hvngarie had of long time vſed with the Turks; doing them with their nimble light horſemen no leſſe harme than they receiued. But the Germans now vſing no ſuch light horſemen, but ſeruing vpon great horſes, and charged with heauie armour, receiued great hurt by thoſe
B light skirmiſhes; the Turkes with their light horſes eaſily ſhunning their charge, and againe at their pleaſure charging them afreſh, when they ſaw the heauie German horſes almoſt wearie and ſpent: by which meanes the German horſemen were oftentimes by the Turkes light horſemen ouerthrowne, and ſo either ſlaine or taken. King *Ferdinand* not well brooking theſe continuall iniuries, and grieued in mind with the league which *Solyman* had to his profit made with him at his going into Persia, finding the ſame both vnprofitable and hurtfull to himſelfe; determined to take vp armes, with purpoſe, that if he could driue the Turks out of the countrey of Possega, then forthwith to paſſe ouer Dranus, and to go directly to Bvda againſt king *Iohn*. It ſtill ſtuck in his mind how that kingdome was taken from him by *Solyman*, and that more was, as it were in diſgrace of him and the houſe of Avstria, beſtowed vpon a ſtranger, which had
C neither right thereto, nor was any way roially deſcended. Yet were there ſome which wiſhed him not raſhly to enter into armes againſt ſo mightie an enemie, as was not to be vanquiſhed but by the vnited forces of all the Chriſtian princes of Evrope: For they foreſaw that *Solyman* ſo prouoked, would not put it vp, but for the hatred he bare againſt the Chriſtians, and for his owne honour ſeeke more cruell reuenge: as he had of late done againſt the Venetians, with whom vpon a light occaſion he had broken a moſt auncient league, for ſincking one or two of his gallies; for which he would admit no excuſe or ſatisfaction. All this *Ferdinand* knew to be true, yet all the people of his dominions lay ſo earneſtly vpon him to take that warre in hand, that they ſaid plainly, they would neuer beare armes more againſt the Turks, if he omitted that occaſion. For they of Carinthia, Stiria, Croatia, and Noricvm, ſubiect to the
D inuaſion of the Turks, and daily receiuing great harmes, thought the Turks might eaſily be driuen out of Possega, for as much as *Mahometes* had no great power nor like to haue any greater, Autumne now almoſt ſpent.

An euill aſſured peace.

King Ferdinād breaketh his league with the Turkes.

So, king *Ferdinand* with the wonderfull reioycing of his ſubiects, cauſed ſouldiors to be taken vp in all parts of his kingdome, ſending for moſt of his nobilitie and beſt captaines, as to a religious warre: and in a very ſhort ſpace had raiſed a good armie, yet ſuppoſed of greater ſtrength than number, as conſiſting moſt of ſelect men. The footmen were for moſt part Germans, to whom were ioyned as wings certain companies of Italians, harquebuſiers, whom *Lewes Lodronius* a valiant captaine & generall of the footmen had raiſed in Rhetia, and thoſe parts of Italie which lie neere vnto the Alpes. The horſemen were of Bohemia, Silesia, Moravia,
E Stiria, Carinthia, and ſome alſo out of Hvngarie, all conducted by their ſeuerall captaines: all theſe horſemen were in number eight thouſand, but the footmen were ſixteene thouſand ſtrong: with great ſtore of artillerie of all ſorts. This armie for the expertneſſe and valour of the ſouldiours, was thought ſufficient to haue met the greateſt armie of the Turkes in field, if it had been conducted by a politick Generall, and (as he had at other times been) fortunat: which was one *Iohn Cazzianer* a noble man of Croatia, whom as one of great experience and famous for the late defence of Vienna, king *Ferdinand* had made Generall of his armie. For *Ferdinand* by the aduiſe of his beſt friends, neuer vſed to aduenture his perſon vnto the danger of any battell, eſpecially againſt the Turks, by whom many Chriſtian kings had in former time been vanquiſhed & ſlaine, but performed all his wars by his lieutenants: which he was thought
F to doe, not ſo much for want of courage, as moued with the fatall miſhap of ſo many Chriſtian kings. *Mahometes* Gouernour of Belgrade, vnderſtanding of this preparation made againſt him, ſent for diuers cōpanies of the garriſon ſouldiors, which lay vpon the borders neere hand; he required aid of the gouernours of the Turkes prouince thereabouts; and was eſpecially holpen by *Vſterf* Gouernour of Bosna, who of all *Solymans* lieutenants in Evrope, was able to bring

Cazzianer Generall of king Ferdinands armie.

Mahometes Gouernour of Belgrade, aided by the other Turkes captaines.

bring into the field moſt good horſemen: he ſent him *Amurathes* a famous captain with a great G
companie of gallant horſemen, vnto whom were ioined certaine companies of footmen of the wild and mountaine people of DALMATIA, entertained for pay; which rough and rude kind of people were gouerned and kept in order by certaine companies of Ianizaries, drawne out of the garriſon townes as far as BELGRADE and SAMANDRIA: after them followed many out of SERVIA and RARCIA, ſome for pay, ſome for prey. The Turkes receiuer liberally paying to ſuch as were willing to ſerue, two months pay beforehand. Neither wanted he aid of the Hungarians from BVDA: ſo that the Turkiſh gouernours on euerie ſide putting to their helping hands, *Mahometes* had in ſhort time gathered ſuch an armie, as for number and ſtrength was not much inferior to king *Ferdinands*, and reſolued to expect the comming of his enemies at EXEK. *Cazzianer* was now come as farre on his way as CAPRVNZA, a towne vpon the riuer Dranus; H
hauing before well and conueniently prouided for the victualling of his armie, if they whom he put in truſt and had taken the matter vpon them, had with like ſpeed and diligence performed their charge: for they were the chiefe men of all the countrie, who all followed the direction of *Simon*, biſhop of ZAGRABIA: who inflamed with zeale aboue meaſure, or elſe for want of iudgement deceiued, had promiſed to ſerue the whole campe with plentie of victuals at a verie low rate. Which thing, the countrie people which were to bring in the victuall, ſome by waggon, ſome by boats alongſt the riuers, many difficulties now ariſing, were not able to perform: which was not to be remedied, by reaſon of the neereneſſe of the enemie, and alſo for that *Mahometes* with ſmall gallies in both riuers, and his troupes of horſemen pricking vp and downe the countrie, did either ſtay the countrie people from bringing of victuall, or els allured them I
for a greater price to bring it to his owne campe: where they receiued for it readie money. *Cazzianer* ſetting forward from CAPRVNZA, hardly came in ten daies to the caſtle of VERVCZA, which is about fortie miles diſtant from CAPRVNZA, being inforced to make ſhort marches,
A ſlow march. by reaſon of the troubleſome carriage of ſome great pieces of artillerie for batterie. The wiſer ſort began euen then to miſdoubt the want of victuall both for the reaſons before alledged, and for that ſuch victual as was looked for, came not, although they had marched verie ſoftly; ſo that they were then enforced to ſpend ſuch victuall as they had prouided, not for the beginning, but for the difficulties of a long protracted warre. Wherefore *Cazzianer* writ ſharpely to the biſhop, and the other which had taken vpon them the charge of prouiding victuall for the armie, K
commaunding them to vſe all poſſible diligence and ſpeed, and not to let the hope of a notable victorie to be loſt through their negligence, for want of victuall rather than the valor of the enemie. In the meane time *Cazzianer* thought good there to ſtay, and to expect the comming of the victuall, ſending before him *Paulus Bachitius* with a thouſand Hungarian light horſemen, and certaine companies of Italian harquebuſiers, as farre as the caſtle of ZOPIA, to the intent, that he might of ſuch priſoners as he could take, learne ſomething of the enemies purpoſe. The Turks in the caſtle of ZOPIA deſcrying the comming of *Bachitius*, and thinking the whole armie of the Chriſtians had beene there at hand, ſet fire on the caſtle, which they thought they could not keepe, and by boats fled downe the riuer Dranus. Yet for all their haſt *Bachitius* took ſome of them in their flight: of whom *Cazzianer* learned that which he before knew by his L
owne eſpials, how that *Mahometes* and the Turkes lay encamped at EXEK, with a full reſolution to giue him battel. *Cazzianer* ſetting forward againe, ſtil keeping alongſt the riuer Dranus, came
Cazzianer commeth to Walpo. in eight daies to the caſtle of WALPO: where by the way he was glad to ſtay ſeuen daies at the riuer Craſſus, which falleth into Dranus, vntill ſuch time as a bridge was made for the tranſporting of his armie, for that the riuer was not to be waded ouer: in which time *Cazzianer* entred oftentimes into counſell with the other captaines, what courſe to hold for the better proceeding in that warre. Where diuers men were of diuers opinions, ſome ſaid it were beſt to leaue EXEK, and to beſiege a caſtle of the enemies thereby, called VILLACH: others more wearie than the reſt, were of opinion, That it were better there to ſtay, vntill the reſt of the aide, and the victuall which they dayly expected, were come. But the greater number, which alſo prevailed, vrged the firſt determination of going directly to the enemie at EXEK, for that longer M
delay would but breed further danger: and there was in the campe (as they ſaid) both ſtrength and victuall ſufficient for the obtaining of the victorie, if they would make an end of their needleſſe conſultations, and not protract the warre vntill Winter were come on; whereby they did nothing els, but cauſe the ſouldiours to thinke that they were afraid to meet the enemie, and ſecretly

A cretly to ſteale away back againe into their countries: Whereas if they would like reſolute men
march on forward againſt the enemie, who at other times truſting moſt vnto his multitudes, and
now hauing no great power, would neuer abide the ſight of the Chriſtian armie, bringing with
it ſo much artillerie, but would forthwith forſake the place, and neuer ſhew his face: for as much
as the Chriſtian men at arms would (as they ſaid) eaſily breake thorow & ouerthrow the naked
Turkiſh horſemen, if they durſt abide the field. The young ſoldiors, who as yet had neuer made
proofe of the Turks manner of fight, did with ſuch cheerefulneſſe like of this reſolution, that
they thought two dayes ſtaying a long delay of ſo readie and eaſie a victorie. Wherefore it was
reſolued vpon preſently to ſet forward, and therupon the armie was muſtered: where, vpon view
B taken, there was found to be ten thouſand horſemen (for diuers troups of Germans were come
to the campe, after the time of the firſt ſetting forward of the armie:) a more gallant companie
of horſemen, both for the ſtrength of their horſes, and goodly furniture of the men, had ſeldome
been ſeen in an armie ſo ſuddenly raiſed. But the footmen, ſelected out of all the prouinces, was
greatly deminiſhed, being now in number ſcarce eight thouſand ſtrong: for many were ſick in
the camp, others wearie of the long iourney, lingering behind, were ſtolne away; and generally
all they which were left, moyled with dirt and myre, by reaſon of the deepeneſſe of the rotten
way, wet thorow with raine, and almoſt ſtarued with cold, and thereto pincht with hunger, were
thought ſcarce able to endure the hardneſſe of the preſent war. After that, commandement was
giuen, That euery ſouldior ſhould carrie with him three days victual: and proclamation made,
C That no man ſhould vpon pain of death take any Turk priſoner, although he yeelded himſelf,
or charge himſelfe with any ſpoile before the battell were fully ended; for as much as the cap-
tains would afterwards deuide the ſpoile of the enemie amongſt the ſouldiors. This proclama-
tion thus made thorow the camp, they ſet forward towards Exek: and the third day they came
to a certaine valley, about three miles from Exek, where they encamped. The next day a com-
panie of Turks ſhewed themſelues, which was by the great ordinance repulſed. The day follo-
wing the enemie ſallied out of the towne and skirmiſhed oftentimes with the Chriſtians: in
which skirmiſhes many were ſlaine on both ſides, but more wounded of the Chriſtians, for that
the Turkes had politickly mingled certaine Ianizaries harquebuſiers, and archers, with their
horſemen; who vſed to that manner of fight, ſore gauled the Chriſtian horſemen. For which
D cauſe the Generall forbad all ſuch light skirmiſhes, as purpoſing to keepe his ſtrength whole a-
gainſt the generall day of battell: commaunding his cannoniers ſo to place the great ordinance
as might moſt annoy the enemie, if he ſhould ſhew himſelfe by troups within the danger of the
ſhot: which was ſo well performed, that the Turks ſallying forth, receiued thereby great hurt;
the deadly ſhot flying thorow the middeſt of their companies. The ſame day *Symon* biſhop of
Zagrabia came into the camp with his horſemen, and a certain prouiſion of victuall, whereby
the feare of the want before conceiued, was well eaſed. *Mahometes* perceiuing that the Chriſtians
were not longer to be drawne to thoſe harmefull skirmiſhes, but that he muſt bring his men in
danger of the great ſhot: to annoy them by another meanes, ſent many ſmall boats, manned
with harquebuſiers & ſmall pieces of ordinance, into the lake neere vnto the camp, ſo to keepe
E the Chriſtians from watering there, and with thoſe ſmall pieces ſhot oftentimes into the camp.
Neere vnto the valley where the Chriſtians lay, was a hill, whereupon ſtood a village, wherein
were placed certain companies of Turks, to skirmiſh as occaſion ſhould ſerue with the Chriſti-
ans: for diſplacing of whom the whole armie was put in order of battell, and the great artillerie
bent vpon them, that they ſhould not with their light skirmiſhes, after the maner of the Turkiſh
fight, trouble the order of the armie. Which thing the Turks perceiuing, and that they were not
able to hold the place, ſet fire on the towne, and ſo retired to Exek. The Chriſtians keeping on
their march, came to the top of the hill, from whence they might ſee Exek ſtand about two
miles off in a faire plaine, neere vnto the banke of Dranus: all which low ground betwixt the
hill and Exek, was ſo ſubiect to the caſtle, that it was thought a matter too full of danger to at-
F tempt that way to batter the caſtle, and to expoſe the armie to the ineuitable furie of the enemies
ſhot. Wherefore deſcrying a riſing ground on the further ſide of the citie, equall with the top of
the walls, they thought it beſt to remoue their camp thither, and on that ſide to plant their bat-
terie againſt the citie. But to come to that place, was thought a matter of no ſmall trouble: for
they muſt fet a compaſſe three miles on the right hand thorow a forreſt by a foule and trouble-
ſome way, before they could come to the place they deſired: for the armie was not ſo great, as

The Turks skir-miſh with the Chriſtians.

The Chriſtians come within the ſight of Exek.

to

to beſiege the citie round; wherein were not (as is reported) aboue ſixteen thouſand men: neither G
was there ſuch ſtore of victuals in the campe, but that the armie was like ſoone to feele the want thereof, without a continuall ſupplie, which would hardly be had, the enemie ſtill beſetting euery paſſage, and with their light horſemen ſcouring about all the countrey, of purpoſe to keep them from victuall. For which cauſe, ſome were of opinion, That it were beſt for them there to ſtay where they were, vntill ſuch time as both more aid and better ſtore of victuals were come vnto them: but others of contrary mind, ſaid the enemie was but barely ſtored with victuall himſelfe, and therefore could not long hold out, which they ſaid they vnderſtood by certaine Chriſtian fugitiues; and that *Mahometes* had put his cheefe ſubſtance into certaine boats, to be conueyed downe the riuer, as purpoſing to flie, and would not hold out the ſiege aboue three dayes: As H
for the forreſt, they thought it would well ynough be paſſed thorow, if they would couragiouſly ſet forward: Beſide that, the time of the yeare ſuffered no delay, Winter comming ſo faſt on, that except ſome notable thing were done quickly, they ſhould be enforced by the very time of the yeare to returne with ſhame, without doing any thing. This opinion was beſt liked of, as more honourable and better beſeeming men of valour, than to lie ſtill in one place: whereupon the next day the armie remoued, and in good order marched thorow the forreſt. Which thing *Mahometes* quickly perceiuing, preſently ſent forth a thouſand light horſemen, and certaine companies of the Ianizaries, harquebuſiers, to trouble the Chriſtians in their paſſage: who

The Turks skirmiſh with the Chriſtians in paſſing the forreſt.

by a neerer and well knowne way ouertaking the armie, ſuddenly charged the rereward, wherein the Italians and Bohemians marched. The Bohemians quickly fled, and the Italians I
with much adoe endured the charge: but being relieued by the Carinthian men at armes, they notably repulſed the Turks, and put them to flight. So the armie with ſmall loſſe paſſed the forreſt, and came to the place they deſired: where after they had encamped themſelues, and in good order placed all things needfull for the ſiege, they in ſeemely order offered vnto the enemie battell. But he keeping himſelfe within the towne, ſhot at the Chriſtians with his great ordinance: and they to requite him, with two great pieces which they had placed vpon the riſing of a hill, ſhot thorow both the wals of the towne and the bulwarke alſo, to the great terrour of the defendants. The Chriſtians in the meane time hauing ſtood almoſt all the day in order of battell in the ſight of the enemie, vainely expecting when he ſhould come forth to giue them battell, returned at night into their campe: For *Mahometes* vpon great conſideration kept in his ſouldiors, K

Mahometes wiſely refuſeth to fight with the Chriſtians, offering him battell

although they were moſt deſirous to fight, vnderſtanding right well of the want of victuall in the Chriſtian campe; and beſide that (as the fugitiues reported) being ſtraightly commanded by letters from *Solyman*, that he ſhould not vpon paine of a moſt ſhamefull death forſake the place, but to defend it to the laſt. Now the Chriſtians deſirous of battel, being thus delaied and deceiued of their expectation, had in a few daies ſpent the ſmall ſtore of victuall they had, and began to feele a generall want: neither was there any apparant means how they ſhould bee relieued, ſo that euerie man began to feare ſome generall miſchiefe to enſue. When *Baltaſar Pamphilus*, a noble Hungarian, and a captaine of great experience, ſitting in counſell with the reſt, entred into this ſpeech.

Baltaſar Pamphilus his counſell for releefe of the armie.

Captaine (ſaid he) *wee doe all that wee doe, vnaduiſedly: for whileſt we conſult at large how wee* L
may ouercome our enemies, the ſtrength of our armie is in the meane time ſo weakned for want of victuall, that the ſouldiours are neither well able to ſtand on their legs, nor to hold their weapons in their feeble hands: and generally, euen they which are of greateſt courage begin now to quaile, and deſpairing of battell, ſee that they muſt miſerably and ſhamefully periſh for want. Wherefore in my opinion, we ought firſt and aboue all things moſt ſpeedily to prouide for this want, which ſo grieuouſly pincheth vs: and preſently to remoone hence vnto the caſtle of Hermande, *that with the proviſion thereof, which is not like to be little, we may refreſh our whole armie; and ſo relieued, to proceed further as occaſion ſhal require.*

This caſtle was about ten miles diſtant from Exek, whereinto many of the Turkes had conueied their wiues and children, and chiefeſt ſubſtance, being kept with a ſmal garriſon of twenty M
Turks. Faſt by the caſtle was a pretie little walled towne, without flankers, after the manner of the old fortifying: which towne and caſtle *Balthazer* ſaid would eaſily be taken. This his counſell was well liked of all men, and he himſelfe ſent with certaine companies of ſoldiors to take

Baltaſar taketh the towne of Hermande.

the towne. Wherein fortune ſo fauoured him, that it was at his firſt comming ſurrendered vnto him: but when he had it, he found not therin any ſuch ſtore of corne or victuall as he had hoped for:

A for: yet he tooke there certaine vessels of wine, to the great reliefe of the weake souldiors. Vpon the newes of the taking of this towne, the campe remoued from EXEX about ten a clocke in the night, but so disorderly, that the souldiors scarce knowing their owne ensignes, seemed rather to haue fled for feare than marched for spoile: yet the Turkes for all that moued not out of EXEX, misdoubting some deceit, and loath to attempt any thing rashly in the night. When the armie was come to the towne, the captains tooke order, that the victuall there found, was equally deuided amongst the souldiors, and the next morning batterie laid against the castle; which those few Turks valiantly defended halfe a day, and then by composition yeelded it. But when the castle was taken, there was found in it but two barrels of meale, and other two of millet. Then might a man haue seen the captains themselues hanging their heads as men strucken with
B a sudden feare, who in steed of a great prey & victuall to haue serued many daies, found nothing but a few women and children, and scarce so much victuall both in the towne & castle, as would serue the army two daies. Yet they dissembled the matter, & fed the souldiors with hope of better store, after the bridge were once repaired, that they might passe the riuer of Bodrog, which ran by the town: which bridge the Turks had before (for defence of themselues) broken, by plucking vp of certaine piles, and taking away of the planks. wherefore the Carpenters being set on worke and euery man putting to his helping hand, the bridge was with continuall labour in three daies repaired. The fourth day, the wagons and smaller pieces of ordinance passed ouer the bridge, & after them six of the great pieces for batterie: but the bridge ouercharged with the seuenth, which was of a wonderfull waight, and much greater than the rest, began to breake; so that the
C captaines were enforced to breake that faire piece of ordinance, and so by pieces to carrie it away, that the enemie should not get so great a spoile. All things, being thus well passed ouer, the piles were againe cut downe, and the plancks strucke off, to the intent the enemy should not that way pursue them: and other way was there none, but to fetch a compasse about the great lake which was many miles about. Here the captaines began to consult, whether it were best to breake the great pieces of ordinance, that so they might more speedily march away, or not. Of which opinion was *Cazzianer* himselfe, promising of his owne charge to new cast them. As for the scaling ladders, & such other like things prouided for the siege, they burnt, because they should not come into the enemies hand, or trouble themselues in their march. But most of the captaines
D were of opinion, that it was not best so dishonourably to break those goodly pieces, the greatest ornament and defence of their countrey; but to hold on their march thorow POSSEGA, vntill they came to IUVANCHA, where they should find great store both of corne and wine: which towne, with the castle of GARA fast by it, stored with all kind of prouision, they said would easily be taken before the Turks could possibly come so farre about the lake from EXEK: and that it were a great shame, so to returne without doing any thing. *Cazzianer* thus perswaded, set forward, & with great toile (by reason of the deepnesse of the way and heauinesse of the great ordinance) came by night to IUVANCHA, which was but three miles off: where the Turks hauing with incredible celeritie passed a long iourney, arriued at the same time also. Neere vnto this castle was a little towne, out of which all the Turkes were fled: the townesmen being Christians, opened the gates and receiued in the souldiors; who there filled themselues abundantly with
E wine, and could hardly be driuen out thence by their captaines to the campe. The same night the Turkes burnt the same towne, and whatsoeuer the Christians had therein left. And euery man betooke him to his armour in the camp, for the enemie was now at hand: and in the dawning of the day began hoatly to skirmish in diuers places with the Christians, but especially in that quarter of the campe where the Bohemians lay. Wherewith *Petrus Raschinius* Generall of the Bohemians being grieued, set vpon them with a troupe of his best horsemen, and enforced them to flie: But the Turkes after the manner of there fight, quickly returning againe, and relieued by the comming in of their fellowes, beset the Bohemians on euery side, and slew many of them. *Raschinius* the Generall fighting most valiantly, was their slaine with his followers. The Christian captaines purposing to retire home, placed on each side of the armie foure rankes of
F wagons for defence on both sides: in the vauward were placed the weake and sicke men, yet so, that in the frunt of the armie were certaine companies of lustie tall souldiors: but in the rearward was placed the greatest strength both of horse and foot. The armie thus marching as it were on both sides intrenched, as it oftentimes met with wooddie hils which hindred their way, so did the same fitly serue the Christians, that the Turkes could not conueniently assaile them in their march,

The castle of Hermande yeelded to the Christians.

Cazzianer to retire with more hast, would haue broken his great ordinance.

The Turkes ſore trouble the Chriſtians in their retire.

march, both before and behind. Which thing *Mahometes* perceiuing, ſent before certaine companies of Ianizaries and nimble footmen, which knew the countrie and the paſſages well, with certaine faulconets and other ſmall pieces to take the ſtraits whereby the armie was to paſſe, and ſo to gaul them in their paſſage; and when they could keepe the place no longer, to flie back to another, and ſo from place to place: and in the open places he had his troupes of light horſemen, which were euer buſie in one place or another of the armie. By which meanes the Chriſtians in their march receiued much harme, which grieued them the more, for that no great power of the Turks was any where to be ſeene togither, but ſtragling companies; which as they were commaunded, ſometime would come on with a fierce charge, and by and by retire againe, and with their arrowes and faulcon ſhot, from places of aduantage aſſaile them. At one of theſe ſtraits ſomewhat bigger than the reſt, *Paulus Bachitius* one of the Hungarian captaines, in whom the ſouldiors generally repoſed their greateſt truſt, was ſlaine with a faulcon ſhot, with diuers other of the valiant Hungarians; who ſeeing there a greater number of the Turks than they had ſeene in other places, thought to haue done ſome good ſeruice vpon them: His death brought a generall feare vpon the whole armie, for as much as both then and at other times, without him they neuer had any good ſucceſſe againſt the Turkes. Yet in that skirmiſh, the Hungarians to reuenge the death of their captaine, did with ſuch force repulſe the enemie, that they cauſed him after he had loſt many of his men, to run away and leaue his ſmall field pieces behind him. But ſuch was the weakeneſſe or cowardiſe of the Chriſtian footmen, and the agilitie of the Turkes, eſpecially the Ianizaries, that they with their ſhot out of the woods, ſtaied the Hungarian horſmen from the purſuit of their fellowes, and recouered their ſmall field pieces before they could be carried away by the Chriſtian footmen: wherewith they did againe forerun the armie, and ſtill trouble it as before. The Chriſtians beſet with theſe dangers, and almoſt ſpent for want of victuall, ſeeing no meanes to relieue their weake bodies, nor any ſmall hope to comfort their fainting ſpirits, did generally feare ſome extreame calamitie to inſue: and ſo much the more, for that it was reported, that *Mahometes* ſtill expected freſh ſupplies from BELGRADE, SAMANDRIA, and NICOPOLIS: and many of the Hungarian light horſemen ſtole away from them, as carefull of their owne ſafetie: neither did they ſee any comfort in the diſmaied captaines, who at other times were woont with cheerefull and couragious words to relieue the ſouldiors, if they ſaw them any thing diſcouraged. But when they were come into a faire open field neere vnto a towne called GARA, they were aduertiſed, That the enemie had in the woods before them whereby they were to paſſe, cut downe great trees croſſe the waies, ſo that neither their great ordinance nor wagons, nor yet their horſemen could poſſibly paſſe that way but that they muſt needs breake their order.

A generall feare in the Chriſtians campe.

This once bruted thorow the armie, filled them with all heauineſſe and deſperation: and ſo much the more, for that *Ladiſlaus Moreus*, and others which knew the countrie well, ſaid there was but two waies to eſcape: the one thorow the woods about ten miles ſpace to WALPO, which by reaſon of the trees cut downe croſſe the waies by the Turks was not to be paſſed, but they muſt needs leaue behind them their great ordinance and carriages: the other towards the caſtle of ZENTHVERZEBETH, which was in *Ladiſlaus Moreus* his countrey, certaine miles diſtant from GARA: by taking of which way, the enemie by reaſon of the ſtraightneſſe of the paſſage, muſt of neceſſitie be inforced to giue ouer his purſuit. Yet for all that, it was in counſell reſolued vpon, to take the way thorow the woods of WALPO, for that there was there victuall enough, and in the caſtle of WALPO was kept money ſent from king *Ferdinand*, ſufficient to pay the ſouldiors for all that Winter. And ſo leauing the great ordinance behind them, and burning the pouder and whatſoeuer elſe could not well be caried on horſeback, to ſet forward with all ſpeed: As for the trees, they ſaid, they would be well enough remoued, & the way opened by the pioners and wagoners: wherfore euery captain was commanded to haue his ſoldiors in readines to ſet forward vpon the ſigne giuen; which was by the ſound of a ſhalme or hoboy, which when it ſhould be giuen, was referred to the diſcretion of the Generall. There were many which wonderfully diſliked of this reſolution, and ſaid openly, that the enemie was fewer in number than their horſemen, and pinched almoſt with like want of victuall: beſides that, that the Turks durſt neuer in iuſt fight encounter with the Chriſtian men at armes, but like theeues aſſaile them vpon a ſudden at ſome aduantage, and by and by be gone againe: and that the towne of GARA where the enemie lay encamped, was not ſo ſtrong but that it might be woon: wherefore all

The fearefull reſolution of the Chriſtians to get from the Turks.

things

A things were to be proued, and ſome great matter to be attempted of valiant men, pinched with wants: for that to run away, would be not onely a diſhonour vnto the captaines themſelues, who ought alwaies to preferre their honor before their liues; but alſo dangerous to them, which reſpected nothing but life. And if they ſhould ſet forward in the night, many would be loſt in the woods; and valour in the darke could not be knowne from cowardiſe: beſides that, the Turkes (as they ſaid) lay ſo nigh, that it was not poſſible to depart without their knowledge, eſpecially if they ſhould burne the powder, or breake the great ordinance. For which cauſes, they thought it better to fight a battell with them, and not to beleeue the falſe reports of new ſupplies come vnto them; and that God would vndoubtedly giue them aid, which were readie to lay
B downe their liues for their religion and glorie of the Chriſtian name. After all this, they began to conſult what was now to be done with the ſicke and wounded ſouldiors, which were before carried in wagons or amongſt the other baggage of the armie: for it was like, that ſo great a multitude of ſicke and wounded men, vnderſtanding what was decreed concerning the departure of the armie, would as miſerable forſaken men, fill the campe with lamentation and mourning; which it was thought would be alſo increaſed by the weeping and wailing of them, which ſhould neuer afterwards ſee their brethren, kinſmen, fellowes or friends, ſo miſerably & ſhamefully left behind and forſaken: the noiſe whereof, muſt needs come to the eares of the Turkes, which lay within a ſmall gun ſhot. Wherefore it was determined, that theſe ſicke and wounded ſouldiors ſhould be carried vpon the wagon and cart-horſes; and that ſuch as were not able to
C ſtay themſelues, ſhould be holden vp by other of more ſtrength riding behind them vpon the buttocks of the horſe. In fine to colour the matter, they which were ſo deſirous to go, ſaid that this their manner of departure groũded vpon good reaſon, was not to be accounted a ſhameful flight (as ſome would tearme it) but a right honeſt and neceſſarie manner of retiring: for as much as they were ſtronger than their enemies in horſemen, and equall alſo (if not ſtronger) in footmen, although they were ſore weakened with ſickneſſe. Whileſt theſe things were in counſell diuerſly diſcourſed, and the reſolution ſet downe is before ſaid, the matter was brought to this paſſe, that euerie captaine with troubled iudgement conceiued in himſelfe ſecret cogitations, far from the common good, and without regard of ſhame and diſhonour, bethought himſelfe how he might betake himſelfe to flight, the vncertaine hope of deſired life. On the contrarie part,
D *Mahometes* vſing moſt certaine ſpies, and aduertiſed euerie houre of all the diſtreſſes of the Chriſtians, and thereby preſaging his future victorie; did by moſt diligent watch and troupes of horſemen, beſetting the paſſages farre and neere, moſt vigilantly attend euerie motion in the Chriſtian campe: of purpoſe, that when the armie ſhould riſe and ſet forward, he after his wonted manner might in the ſtraits (fit for his purpoſe) ſet vpon them being deuided and diſperſed one from another, as they muſt needs in thoſe troubleſome paſſages: for he had ſo placed his horſemen and footmen in the knowne tracts of thoſe woods, that he had ſhut vp the Chriſtians as it were in a toile. It was now almoſt midnight, and the armie taking no reſt, ſo carefully expected the ſigne of ſetting forward, that euerie little delay ſeemed to moſt men both tedious and dangerous: ſo that many great captaines vpon a cowardly conceit would ſtay no longer, but
E haſted to depart, and to go before the reſt, without any leaue of the Generall. The beginning of this miſchieuous departure, is reported to haue bin begun by the common Hungarian horſmen, which knowing the paſſages and waies thorow the woods, made moſt haſt to WALPO. *Ladiſlaus Morem* diſhonourably following their example, went the other way to his caſtle ZATHVERZEBETH. After them followed in great haſt the Stirian horſemen, without regard of ſhame, led by *Iohn Hunganot* their Generall, who was appointed to haue guarded the rearward. *Symon* biſhop of ZAGRABIA fled in like manner, knowne by his great lanterne wandring in the wood: yet with leſſe ſhame than the reſt, becauſe he being a clergie man, thought it not to belong to his vocation to put on armes, or to go into battell. In the meane time it was fearefully told to *Carzianer*, That the Hungarian horſemen were fled, and that *Ladiſlaus* and *Hunganot*,
F with the Stirian troupes were gone alſo; and that all the reſt of the armie not expecting the appointed ſignall, were in like manner vpon flying: With which report, the cowardly and diſmaied Generall was ſo terrified, that he preſently got to horſe, quite forgetting the ſignall he ſhould haue giuen (for that he thought all the reſt, as he afterwards ſaid, to haue been gone before) and as he was, vnarmed, betooke himſelfe to flight, leauing behind him for haſt his tent ſtored with plate and other rich furniture. In this tumult of them which ſo diſorderly fled, *Lodro-*

The vigilancie of Mahomete.

The Chriſtian captains ſhamefully flie ſome one way, ſome another, in the night.

The diſhonourable flight of Carzianer.

ning

nius that famous captaine was called vp, and told by his ſeruants, that the Generall was fled and gone: to whom he anſwered againe, without doubt it cannot be ſo, that I ſhould be ſo ſhamefully and perfidiouſly betraied of him: & ſo as a man megered with long watching & painfull labour, laid himſelfe downe againe to ſleepe. Not long after, *Mahometes* hearing the ſtir that was in the campe, riſe with his Turks to aſſaile his enemies: yet to be better aſſured what the enemie did, he thought it good to ſtay for day light, cauſing his men to ſtand ſtill in order of battell, and with wonderful ſilence to expect the ſigne of ſetting forward, which was giuen by the ſoft ſound of a horſemans drum paſſing thorow euerie companie. For the old captaine acquainted with many battels againſt the Chriſtians, doubting of their faigned flight, would not vnaduiſedly be drawne into battell, but in a place commodious for his ſouldiours; as one before fully ſet down (after his wonted manner) to performe that ſeruice, not by the hazard of one ſet battell, but by dallying off the time with often skirmiſhes, when he could take the enemie at aduantage. The day appearing, *Lodronius* againe awaking, heard a certaine confuſed noiſe of the Turkes, and withall, ſaw himſelfe forſaken of the greateſt part of the horſemen: whereupon he complained in vaine, that he was betraied: yet for all that he was nothing diſcouraged, but cheered vp the footmen, exhorting them to remember their former valour, and to reſolue with themſelues only with courage to ouercome the danger, which hard fortune had at that time brought them into; for that valiant men were rather to thinke of an honourable death than ſhamefull flight, whereby whether they ſhould eſcape with life or not, was vncertaine: As for himſelfe, who had been their happie Generall in many battels, he ſaid he was reſolutely ſet downe by repulſing the enemie to bring them into place of ſafetie, or elſe valiantly fighting togither with them to end his daies. As *Lodronius* was yet thus encouraging the footmen, the horſemen of CARINTHIA, SAXONIE, AVSTRIA and BOHEMIA, who mindfull of their duetie, had in vaine expected the appointed ſignall from the Generall, came to *Lodronius* as vnto the moſt valiant captaine, beſeeching him, in ſteed of their treacherous Generall, to take vpon him the place, promiſing to doe whatſoeuer he commaunded, and to fight as men againſt thoſe infidels for their religion and king, ſo long as they were able to hold vp their weapons. *Lodronius* would in no caſe accept of that honour ſo frankly offered, modeſtly proteſting himſelfe vnworthie thereof: Yet as a man of courage, and moued with the hard eſtate of ſuch an armie, he with a ſolemne proteſtation promiſed to execute the place in the beſt manner he could, and ſo did as long as his fortune gaue him leaue.

Lodronius encourageth the footmen.

It is reported, that as *Lodronius* was encouraging the footmen, and earneſtly inuaying againſt ſhamefull flight, an old German ſouldior was ſo bold, as bluntly, yet ſharpely to ſay vnto him: *Worthy* Lodronius, *thou canſt neuer be thought to flie ſhamefully, with a horſe of ſuch a price vnder thee.* *Lodronius* perceiuing the old ſouldiors meaning, alighted, and with his ſword hoxed his horſe: ſaying alowd, This day valiant ſouldiors, ſhall you haue me both your Generall and fellow ſouldior, fighting on foot as one of your ſelues: ſee now that you deceiue not my expectation, but let vs either with glorious victorie or honourable death end this warre togither, yet ſo, as that we die not vnreuenged. All his other horſes he gaue away vnto ſuch ſicke and wounded ſouldiors as he beſt knew, amongſt whom was one *Picenard* of CREMONA, a captaine who was then in an extreame fit of an ague, and had hardly eſcaped the hands of the enemy. The firſt troupes of horſemen and bands of footmen, were ſcarcely out of the campe with their enſignes, but the Turkes comming on with a hideous cry, aſſailed them on euery ſide, and many ſharpe skirmiſhes were giuen vnto the horſemen as they marched, with ſuch euent, that the Chriſtians ſometime valiantly receiuing the enemies charge, and ſometime charging them againe, repulſed the proud enemie ſtill buſie with them. In theſe continuall skirmiſhes, *Antius Mager Fuchſtat*, Generall of the Carinthian horſemen, fighting valiantly was ſlaine, being for his braue armour ſuppoſed by the Turkes to haue beene the Generall of the field. And by like miſhap foure and twentie horſemen of great name were ſlaine alſo, and their guidon taken; amongſt theſe were three noblemen, *Andreas Reſchius*, *Chriſtophorus Hernaus*, and *Georgius Himelbergus*. In another place was made a moſt cruell skirmiſh with the Saxon horſemen, and them of MISNIA, THVRINGIA and FRANCONIA, who followed the Saxons enſigne: of theſe, fighting moſt valiantly, was ſlaine aboue 36 worthie captaines, lieutenants, or ancients; and *Chuenricus* a principall captaine of the Saxons taken, who afterwards died in bonds amongſt the Turks. Amongſt them which were ſlaine, *Sebaſtianus Metheſcus*, and *Iacobus Scullemburgh* were of greateſt nobi-

An old German ſouldior reſleth at Lodronius.

The horſemen diſcomfited by the Turkes.

litie,

A litie. In like manner the horſemen of AVSTRIA couragiouſly reſiſting the enemie for a ſpace, were in the end ouerthrowne: where amongſt them was ſlaine two valiant noblemen, *Fettaius* and *Hofchirchius*, with diuers other men of great place and reputation both in their owne countrie and abroad. But the greateſt ſlaughter was made amongſt the Bohemian horſemen, vpon whom (being diſordered by the Ianizaries harquebuſiers) the Turkiſh troupes of the old garriſon ſouldiors breaking in with their ſcimiters and heauie yron maſes, made a moſt bloudie execution. The battell of footmen being ſore gauled, and almoſt diſordered in their march by certeine compaines of Ianizaries and archers of the Aſapi, who from a woodie banke of a marriſh diſcharged their ſhot and arrowes continually vpon them, yet neuer comming to handie blowes, *The Chriſtian footmen ouerthrowne.*

B was on the other ſide ſo hardly charged by *Amurathes* with his troupes of horſemen of BOSNA, that being not able longer to keepe order, it was at laſt by him broken and cut in pieces: where the Turks with their ſwords and hatchets ſlew the poore Chriſtians without mercie. *Lodronius* himſelfe carried away with the breaking in and force of the horſemen, was driuen into a marriſh: where after that he being ſore wounded, and almoſt faſt in the deep mud, had done the vttermoſt of that his laſt indeauor; he by the faire intreatie of the Turkes perſuading him rather to yeeld, than there to be ſlaine, ſo yeelded himſelfe, that he with three companies which were with him, after they had laid downe their weapons, were all ſaued as valiant ſouldiours: for now the merciles Turks embrued with the Chriſtian bloud, were wearie of ſlaughter, & began greedily to ſeeke after the ſpoile, hunting after them, who flying diſperſedly, thought themſelues to

C haue eſcaped the enemies hands; with ſuch ſucceſſe, that a great number of them was taken and led away for ſlaues: few of the footmen eſcaped, and almoſt all the reſt which were not fled before the battell, were to be ſeene dead vpon the ground.

This ſhamefull ouerthrow at EXEK was reported to haue exceeded the moſt grieuous ouerthrowes that the Chriſtians had receiued in any former time: for the flower both of horſe and foot there loſt by the raſhneſſe and fault of an vnluckie Generall, rather than by the valor of the enemie, ruthfully periſhed; ſo that many prouinces were filled with heauineſſe and mourning. For it neuer chanced before, as was to be ſeene by the vnfortunat battels of *Sigiſmund* the emperour, and king *Ladiſlaus*, that the Turkes got ſuch a victorie without ſome loſſe: ſo that they which fell almoſt vnreuenged at EXEK, may ſeeme to haue augmented that loſſe by the great

D infamie thereof. *Mahometes* hauing thus almoſt without the bloud of his ſouldiours obtained ſo great a victorie, and taking the ſpoile of the Chriſtian camp, pitched his tents in a little meddow, being clenſed of the dead bodies, and after he had merrily feaſted with his captaines, commanded the chiefe priſoners, the goodly ſpoiles, and faireſt enſignes to be brought vnto him: and openly commending the captaines who had that day done any good ſeruice, commaunding diuers bags of mony to be brought vnto him by the receiuers, he with his owne hand rewarded the ſouldiors, ſome with gold, ſome with ſiluer, according to their deſerts: And cauſing all the priſoners which were not common ſouldiours to be brought forth, he diligently viewed them, and preſently cauſed euerie one of their names, and the office they bare, to be inrolled by his clerks: and vnto ſuch as brought in the heads, eares, or hands of the Chriſtians with rings vp-

E on them, he forthwith cauſed one reward or other to be giuen. *Lodronius*, when as by reaſon of his deadly wounds he was thought vnable to endure trauell, or to be brought aliue with the other priſoners to CONSTANTINOPLE, was ſlaine by his keepers, and his head afterwards ſent thither. For as many noble gentlemen, and amongſt others *Laurentius Streiperg* and *Dietmarus Loſenſtaine* haue reported (who raunſomed afterwards, returned home againe to their wiues and children) amongſt the priſoners which were together with the faire enſignes and other gallant warlike furniture (eſpecially gilt armour and headpieces) preſented by *Mahometes* his meſſengers to *Solyman*, three of the greateſt captaines heads were in a ſiluer baſon there ſeene and knowne, which were the heads of *Paulus Bachitius* the valiant Hungarian captaine, *Antius Macer* Generall of the Carinthian horſemen, and *Lodronius* Generall of the footmen: which after

F the tyrant had looked aſquint vpon, as abhorring that loathſome ſight, he with ſterne countenance commanded all the priſoners to be ſlain. But vpon the interceſſion of the Ianizaries, who intreated for them, as valiant men, to whom they had at the time of their taking giuen their faith, and might afterwards doe him good ſeruice, he changed his countenance, and ſaued many of them. But *Cazzianer* flying to his owne caſtle, was of all men accuſed, as a wicked forſaker of his owne campe and enſignes, and commonly railed vpon, as the eternall infamie of his coun-

Lodronius ſlain.

Three of the great captaines heads preſented to Solyman at Conſtantinople

Cazzianer generally hated.

nius that famous captaine was called vp, and told by his seruants, that the Generall was fled and gone: to whom he answered againe, without doubt it cannot be so, that I should be so shamefully and perfidiously betraied of him: & so as a man megered with long watching & painfull labour, laid himselfe downe againe to sleepe. Not long after, *Mahometes* hearing the stir that was in the campe, rise with his Turks to assaile his enemies: yet to be better assured what the enemie did, he thought it good to stay for day light, causing his men to stand still in order of battell, and with wonderful silence to expect the signe of setting forward, which was giuen by the soft sound of a horsemans drum passing thorow euerie companie. For the old captaine acquainted with many battels against the Christians, doubting of their faigned flight, would not vnaduisedly be drawne into battell, but in a place commodious for his souldiours; as one before fully set down (after his wonted manner) to performe that seruice, not by the hazard of one set battell, but by dallying off the time with often skirmishes, when he could take the enemie at aduantage. The day appearing, *Lodronius* againe awaking, heard a certaine confused noise of the Turkes, and withall, saw himselfe forsaken of the greatest part of the horsemen: whereupon he complained in vaine, that he was betraied: yet for all that he was nothing discouraged, but cheered vp the footmen, exhorting them to remember their former valour, and to resolue with themselues only with courage to ouercome the danger, which hard fortune had at that time brought them into; for that valiant men were rather to thinke of an honourable death than shamefull flight, whereby whether they should escape with life or not, was vncertaine: As for himselfe, who had been their happie Generall in many battels, he said he was resolutely set downe by repulsing the enemie to bring them into place of safetie, or else valiantly fighting togither with them to end his daies. As *Lodronius* was yet thus encouraging the footmen, the horsemen of Carinthia, Saxonie, Avstria and Bohemia, who mindfull of their duetie, had in vaine expected the appointed signall from the Generall, came to *Lodronius* as vnto the most valiant captaine, beseeching him, in steed of their treacherous Generall, to take vpon him the place: promising to doe whatsoeuer he commaunded, and to fight as men against those infidels for their religion and king, so long as they were able to hold vp their weapons. *Lodronius* would in no case accept of that honour so franckly offered, modestly protesting himselfe vnworthie thereof: Yet as a man of courage, and moued with the hard estate of such an armie, he with a solemne protestation promised to execute the place in the best manner he could, and so did as long as his fortune gaue him leaue.

Lodronius encourageth the footmen.

It is reported, that as *Lodronius* was encouraging the footmen, and earnestly inuaying against shamefull flight, an old German souldior was so bold, as bluntly, yet sharpely to say vnto him: *Worthy* Lodronius, *thou canst neuer be thought to flie shamefully, with a horse of such a price vnder thee.* *Lodronius* perceiuing the old souldiors meaning, alighted, and with his sword hoxed his horse: saying alowd, This day valiant souldiors, shall you haue me both your Generall and fellow souldior, fighting on foot as one of your selues: see now that you deceiue not my expectation, but let vs either with glorious victorie or honourable death end this warre togither, yet so, as that we die not vnreuenged. All his other horses he gaue away vnto such sicke and wounded souldiors as he best knew, amongst whom was one *Picenard* of Cremona, a captaine who was then in an extreame fit of an ague, and had hardly escaped the hands of the enemy. The first troupes of horsemen and bands of footmen, were scarcely out of the campe with their enfignes, but the Turkes comming on with a hideous cry, assailed them on euery side, and many sharpe skirmishes were giuen vnto the horsemen as they marched, with such euent, that the Christians sometime valiantly receiuing the enemies charge, and sometime charging them againe, repulsed the proud enemie still busie with them. In these continuall skirmishes, *Antius Mater Fuchstat*, Generall of the Carinthian horsemen, fighting valiantly was slaine, being for his braue armour supposed by the Turkes to haue beene the Generall of the field. And by like mishap foure and twentie horsemen of great name were slaine also, and their guidon taken; amongst these were three noblemen, *Andreas Reschius*, *Christophorus Hernaus*, and *Georgius Himelbergus*. In another place was made a most cruell skirmish with the Saxon horsemen, and them of Misnia, Thvringia and Franconia, who followed the Saxons enfigne: of these, fighting most valiantly, was slaine aboue 36 worthie captaines, lieutenants, or ancients; and *Chuenricus* a principall captaine of the Saxons taken, who afterwards died in bonds amongst the Turks. Amongst them which were slaine, *Sebastianus Metheseus*, and *Iacobus Scullemburgh* were of greatest nobilitie.

An old German souldior iesteth at Lodronius.

The horsemen discomfited by the Turkes.

A litie. In like manner the horſemen of AVSTRIA couragiouſly reſiſting the enemie for a ſpace, were in the end ouerthrowne: where amongſt them was ſlaine two valiant noblemen, *Fettaius* and *Hofchirchius*, with diuers other men of great place and reputation both in their owne countrie and abroad. But the greateſt ſlaughter was made amongſt the Bohemian horſemen, vpon whom (being diſordered by the Ianizaries harquebuſiers) the Turkiſh troupes of the old garriſon ſouldiors breaking in with their ſcimiters and heauie yron maſes, made a moſt bloudie execution. The battell of footmen being ſore gauled, and almoſt diſordered in their march by certeine compaines of Ianizaries and archers of the Aſapi, who from a woodie banke of a marriſh diſcharged their ſhot and arrowes continually vpon them, yet neuer comming to handie blows, *The Chriſtian footmen ouerthrowne.*

B was on the other ſide ſo hardly charged by *Amarathes* with his troupes of horſemen of BOSNA, that being not able longer to keepe order, it was at laſt by him broken and cut in pieces: where the Turks with their ſwords and hatchets ſlew the poore Chriſtians without mercie. *Lodronius* himſelfe carried away with the breaking in and force of the horſemen, was driuen into a marriſh: where after that he being ſore wounded, and almoſt faſt in the deep mud, had done the vttermoſt of that his laſt indeauor; he by the faire intreatie of the Turkes perſuading him rather to yeeld, than there to be ſlaine, ſo yeelded himſelfe, that he with three companies which were with him, after they had laid downe their weapons, were all ſaued as valiant ſouldiours: for now the merciles Turks embrued with the Chriſtian bloud, were wearie of ſlaughter, & began greedily to ſeeke after the ſpoile, hunting after them, who flying diſperſedly, thought themſelues to

C haue eſcaped the enemies hands; with ſuch ſucceſſe, that a great number of them was taken and led away for ſlaues: few of the footmen eſcaped, and almoſt all the reſt which were not fled before the battell, were to be ſeene dead vpon the ground.

This ſhamefull ouerthrow at EXEK was reported to haue exceeded the moſt grieuous ouerthrowes that the Chriſtians had receiued in any former time: for the flower both of horſe and foot there loſt by the raſhneſſe and fault of an vnluckie Generall, rather than by the valor of the enemie, ruthfully periſhed; ſo that many prouinces were filled with heauineſſe and mourning. For it neuer chanced before, as was to be ſeene by the vnfortunat battels of *Sigiſmund* the emperour, and king *Ladiſlaus*, that the Turkes got ſuch a victorie without ſome loſſe: ſo that they which fell almoſt vnreuenged at EXEK, may ſeeme to haue augmented that loſſe by the great

D infamie thereof. *Mahometes* hauing thus almoſt without the bloud of his ſouldiours obtained ſo great a victorie, and taking the ſpoile of the Chriſtian camp, pitched his tents in a little meddow, being clenſed of the dead bodies, and after he had merrily feaſted with his captaines, commanded the chiefe priſoners, the goodly ſpoiles, and faireſt enſignes to be brought vnto him: and openly commending the captaines who had that day done any good ſeruice, commaunding diuers bags of mony to be brought vnto him by the receiuers, he with his owne hand rewarded the ſouldiors, ſome with gold, ſome with ſiluer, according to their deſerts: And cauſing all the priſoners which were not common ſouldiours to be brought forth, he diligently viewed them, and preſently cauſed euerie one of their names, and the office they bare, to be inrolled by his clerks: and vnto ſuch as brought in the heads, eares, or hands of the Chriſtians with rings vp-

E on them, he forthwith cauſed one reward or other to be giuen. *Lodronius*, when as by reaſon of his deadly wounds he was thought vnable to endure trauell, or to be brought aliue with the other priſoners to CONSTANTINOPLE, was ſlaine by his keepers, and his head afterwards ſent thither. For as many noble gentlemen, and amongſt others *Laurentius Streiperg* and *Dietmarus Loſenſtaine* haue reported (who raunſomed afterwards, returned home againe to their wiues and children) amongſt the priſoners which were together with the faire enſignes and other gallant warlike furniture (eſpecially gilt armour and headpieces) preſented by *Mahometes* his meſſengers to *Solyman*, three of the greateſt captaines heads were in a ſiluer baſon there ſeene and knowne, which were the heads of *Paulus Bachitius* the valiant Hungarian captaine, *Antius Macer* Generall of the Carinthian horſemen, and *Lodronius* Generall of the footmen: which after *Lodronius ſlain.*

F the tyrant had looked aſquint vpon, as abhorring that loathſome ſight, he with ſterne countenance commanded all the priſoners to be ſlain. But vpon the interceſſion of the Ianizaries, who intreated for them, as valiant men, to whom they had at the time of their taking giuen their faith, and might afterwards doe him good ſeruice, he changed his countenance, and ſaued many of them. But *Cazzianer* flying to his owne caſtle, was of all men accuſed, as a wicked forſaker of his owne campe and enſignes, and commonly railed vpon, as the eternall infamie of his coun- *Three of the great captaines heads preſented to Solyman at Conſtantinople* *Cazzianer generally hated.*

trey, and author of the publike calamitie: ſo that it was reported, that he durſt neither go abroad G
nor ſhew his face for ſhame. He was ſo generally hated, that infamous libels, made againſt him and the other captaines which had ſhamefully fled as he did, were commonly ſung in the ſtreets by boyes in all the cities of GERMANIE. Wherewith he was ſo much grieued, that he requeſted of king *Ferdinand*, that he might ſafely come to the court, to anſwere whatſoeuer could be laied againſt him: which his requeſt the king eaſily graunted, and when hee came to the court receiued him with doubtfull countenance. But when the hearing of his cauſe was by the king ſomewhat longer protracted than he would haue had it, and hee in the meane time kept vnder ſafe cuſtodie; impatient of ſuch delay, and halfe doubtfull whether he ſhould be quitted or con-
Cazzianer imprisoned, breaketh prison. demned, thought it better to flie than to abide the triall. So faigning himſelfe ſicke, and ſcraping H
vp by little and little with his knife a bricke pauement vnder his bed, and ſo in the night getting out firſt one bricke, and after that another, at length brake thorow the vault, and with his ſheets letting himſelfe downe, eſcaped, hauing poſt horſes readie for him without the caſtle. Not long after, as he was a man of a haſtie and vnconſtant nature, deſpairing of his eſtate, he fled to the Turkes, *Mahometes* gladly receiuing him, and beſide his great entertainment, promiſing him the gouernment of all CROATIA, in manner of a tributarie king, if he would faithfully ſerue *Solyman*, and helpe him in the ſubduing of the cities of AVSTRIA. After he had agreed vpon all the conditions of his reuolt, that he might returne to *Mahometes* with ſome more credit, he began boldly to deale with *Nicholaus Sirenus*, a noble man of CROATIA, and his deere friend as he ſuppoſed, to reuolt with him; aſſuring him, that *Solyman* would deale as kindly with them I
both, as hee had before with king *Iohn* in the kingdome of HVNGARIE. *Sirenus* promiſed him he would, or at leaſt made as if he promiſed to do what he deſired, and ſo agreed as it were vpon the matter, promiſing to go ouer with him to the Turke with a troupe of his beſt and moſt
Cazzianer ſhamefully murthered, and his head ſent to king Ferdinand. truſtie horſemen. But *Sirenus* conſidering with himſelfe the heinouſnes and impietie of ſo great an offence, changing his purpoſe, choſe rather to deale treacherouſly with his old friend, fearing no ſuch thing in his houſe, than to offend both againſt God and his prince. Wherefore after hee had well feaſted *Cazzianer* at his houſe, he as a moſt cruell hoaſt, cauſed him to be ſlaine, and ſent his head to king *Ferdinand*: in reward whereof he receiued of the kings gift *Cazzianer* his caſtle, with all his ſubſtance.

In the meane time the Venetians, prouoked by the Turks with diuers iniuries both by ſea and K
land (when as *Solyman* but a little before hardly beſieging CORCYRA, and with moſt barbarous crueltie waſting the iſland, had broken the league, and euen then by his lieutenant *Caſimes Baſſa* beſieged EPIDAVRVS and NAVPLIVM, two of their cities in PELOPONESVS) reſolued without delay to make warres likewiſe vpon him, who for a ſmall treſpas would admit no excuſe or recompence. Wherunto they were alſo animated both by *Charles* the emperour, and *Paulus* the great Biſhop: who warned by the late and dangerous attempts of *Solyman* and *Barbaruſſa*, thought it more for the ſafetie of their eſtates, by giuing aid to the Venetians to keepe the Turks buſied farther off, than to ſuffer them to acquaint themſelues too much with the ports of ITALIE or SICILIA. Wherefore all the Winter following they laboured by their embaſſadours to ſet downe what number and what manner of ſhips, what ſouldiours, what money, was to be L
prouided, and how to be according to their eſtates apportioned for the ſetting forth of a ſtrong
The emperour, the Venetians, and the Biſhop of Rome enter into a confederation againſt the Turkes. fleet, againſt the next Summer to be ſent into GRÆCIA againſt the Turks. At laſt it was agreed amongſt theſe confederat princes by their embaſſadours at ROME, That the emperour ſhould furniſh and ſet forth foureſcore and two gallies, the Venetians the like number, and the biſhop ſix and thirtie, to make vp the number of two hundred gallies; that the Venetians ſhould lend vnto the biſhop ſo many gallies readie rigged as he ſhould deſire to be furniſhed by him with marriners and ſouldiors; and that the emperour and the ſtate of GENVA ſhould find ſufficient ſhipping for the tranſportation of the land forces and victuall. The Generals alſo of this great fleet to be ſet forth, were at the ſame time appointed. *Andreas Auria* for the emperour, *Vincentius Capellus* for the Venetians, and *Marcus Grimmanus* patriarch of AQVILEA, for the Bi- M
ſhop; to whom was ioyned *Paulus Iuſtinianus*, one of the cheefe Senators, a man of great experience in ſea matters. It was alſo agreed, that *Ferdinand Gonzaga* viceroy of SICILIE ſhould haue the commaunding of the land forces, and that whatſoeuer was got from the Turks in that expedition in GRÆCIA, the Iſlands, or DALMATIA, ſhould be all faithfully deliuered to the Venetians, who had receiued ſo many iniuries from the Turks. The emperour alſo of his liberalitie

A litie promiſed vnto the other confederats, that they ſhould for reaſonable price haue as much wheat as they would out of SICILIA, without paying any cuſtome.

Solyman vnderſtanding of this confederation and preparation made againſt him by theſe Chriſtian princes, commaunded *Barbaruſſa* his Admirall to make readie his fleet to goe againſt theſe enemies, and to doe all the harme he could vpon the Iſlands ſubiect to the Venetian ſtate. Which thing *Barbaruſſa* with great care and diligence in ſhort time performed: and ſo with a hundred and thirtie gallies in moſt warlike manner appointed, with the firſt of the Spring in the yeare 1538 departed from HELLESPONTVS directly to CRETE, where hauing paſſed the promontorie of GYAMVS, which at this day is called SPARTA, he vnaduiſedly landed moſt part of his men, to haue ſurpriſed the citie CANEA, which was in auncient time called SYDO-
B NIA: For *Grittus* one of the Venetian Senatours then kept the citie with a ſtrong garriſon, who from the walls and bulwarks thereof ſo plagued the Turkes with great and ſmall ſhot, and the ſallying out of two companies of Italians, that *Barbaruſſa* hauing loſt many of his men, was fain to retire againe to his fleet in ſuch haſt, that he left behind him a thouſand of his Turkes, which were gone further into the Iſland after bootie, who were afterwards all ſlain by them of CRETE. After that, he attempted to haue taken diuers places in the Iſland, and was euery where notably repulſed. With the citie of CANDIA, whereof the Iſland now taketh name, and was in ancient time called CYTHEVM, he durſt not meddle: but ſayling almoſt round about the Iſland, tooke onely CECILIA, a little towne before forſaken of the inhabitants, which he ſet on fire, and ſo departed from CRETE: for he was aduertiſed, that *Vincentius Capellius* the Venetian admirall, who
C was now come to CORCYRA, would in ſhort time come to releeue them of CRETE. *Auria* Admirall of the Emperours fleet, paſſing the ſtrait of MESSANA, came to CORCYRA alſo, and there ioyned with the Venetians. The Chriſtian fleet was then ſo great, that it was thought the Turkes durſt not meet it at ſea, but by all meanes ſhun to giue battell. For *Barbaruſſa* then lay with the Turkes fleet in the bay of AMBRACIA, expecting when the Chriſtians ſhould enter the ſtraight entrance thereof, where he had on both ſides placed diuers peeces of great Ordinance, to haue ſunke them in their comming in: for *Grimanus* the Patriarch a little before departing from CORCYRA, had with the great Biſhops gallies begun to beſiege PREVESA, a towne vpon the promontorie of ACTIVM faſt by that ſtrait; and landing ſome of his ſoldiors, with three great peeces of artillerie, ſo battered the caſtle of PREVESA, that he was like ynough
D to haue taken it, had not the Turks from ÆTOLIA come to relieue it with a ſtrong power both of horſe and foot. Wherefore the Patriarch ſhipping again his men and ordinance, returned to the fleet at CORCYRA, not repenting him of his iourney, for that he had well viewed the ſtraits of that bay, and all the enemies fleet riding at anker within it. Vpon the returne of the Patriarch, and relation made what he had both done and ſeene, the great commaunders of the Chriſtian fleet entred into counſell, what courſe were beſt to take for their better proceeding in that great action. *Gonzaga* the Viceroy, Generall of the land forces, was of opinion, That it was beſt to land the ſouldiors and great ordinance, and with all their force to aſſault the caſtle of PREVESA: which once taken, & their ordinance there placed, the enemies fleet might in the bay be vtterly defeated, for that all paſſage to ſea might eaſily be taken from them, by ſinking of one of their
E great ſhips in the mouth of the ſtrait, and by mooring there of three great galleons full of artillerie: ſo that if *Barbaruſſa* would deſperatly aduenture to come out, he muſt needs be ſunke in the mouth of the bay. Whereunto *Auria* replied, That *Gonzaga* his counſell was in words and ſhew glorious, but to be put in execution moſt dangerous: for that firſt to land the ſouldiors and great artillerie, he ſaid was a thing too too full of hazard & perill: for it was to be thought, that the Turks in ÆTOLIA would as they had before done, come with ſpeed with their horſemen to relieue the beſieged in the caſtle, whoſe force the Chriſtian footmen could hardly abide: Beſides that, if the fleet ſhould by force of weather be cõſtrained to forſake that coaſt, as it well might, Autumne now comming faſt on, after the ſouldiors were landed; from whence ſhould they then get any victuall in the enemies countrey, or what releeſe ſhould they hope for, if they
F ſhould hap to be diſtreſſed, being on euery ſide beſet with their enemies, and their friends by tempeſt driuen from them. Wherefore he thought it beſt, if the enemie could not be drawn out of the bay to battell, to goe directly into the bay of NAVPACTVM, and to take that towne which was not greatly fortified, and ſo to ranſack and ſpoile all the townes euen to the bottome of the bay of CORINTH; which the Græcians in the fleet ſaid might eaſily be done: By taking of which

1538

Solyman ſendeth Barbaruſſa againſt the Venetians.

Barbaruſſa landing in Crete is repulſed with loſſe.

The confederats princes fleetes meet at Corcyra.

Gonzaga his opinion.

Auria of another opinion.

course it might so fall out, that *Barbarussa* moued with the danger of his friends, would for shame G
come out and ioine with them in battell. This counsell of *Auria* was best liked both of *Capellius* and the Patriarch, being farre more desirous to fight with their enemies at sea, than at land.

Auria hauing put in order his fleet, came to PREVESA, and so to the strait of the bay of AMBRACIA, where he so placed the whole fleet, which was in number two hundred and fiftie saile, that it might easily of the enemie be numbred. Which sight (as it was reported) wonderfully troubled *Barbarussa*, who although he was of a courageous disposition, and such a man as greatly feared not either the valor or martial discipline of the Christians, yet was he exceedingly moued with the sight of so great a fleet, so well appointed; for a greater had not of long time been seene in the Ionian sea. So that an eunuch of *Solymans* court, sent by him as *Barbarussa* his H
companion, seeing him to delay the time, as a man halfe discouraged, did with most vnciuill and proud words take him vp, because he would not forthwith goe out of the bay and fight with the Christians which lay at the mouth therof daring of them; wherein he was not (as he said) to regard his owne safetie, who as a coward could not endure the sight of the enemie, but the honour of *Solyman* his soueraigne, who would not take it well, to haue the glorie of his name stained with so shameful a delay: for if he were a valiant and martiall man, as he professed himselfe to be, hee ought neuer to dispaire of victorie: And if it should so fall out, that fortune should frowne vpon them, and not answere to their desires, yet should not *Solyman* therefore want captains and souldiors better than they, if they were ouercome, and the woods of PONTVS would affoord him timber ynough to build twice so great and strong a fleet. And for a conclusion, the I
insolent Eunuch willed *Barbarussa* to beware, that whilest he feared a most honourable death, (which was vncertaine, though the battell were lost) he drew not vpon himselfe the certaine danger of a most shamefull death by the displeasure of *Solyman*.

Auria braueth Barbarussa lying in the bay of Ambracia.

Barbarussa reproued of cowardise by one of the Turkes eunuchs.

At which speech *Barbarussa* turning himselfe about to *Salec*, one of the arch pyrats, a famous sea man, said vnto him: Wee must for ought that I can see, most valiant and faithfull captaine, aduenture this battell, although it be at too much disaduantage, least happily we perish by the complaints of this barking demie man. And so presently commaunded all his fleet to weigh anker, at the same time that *Auria* had hoysed saile and was on his way toward the bay of NAVPACTVS, thinking that the enemie durst not for feare haue come out of the bay of AMBRACIA. *Auria* keeping on his course, was come to LEVCADE, when the enemies fleet was descried out of K
the top of *Bondelmerius* great galleon to bee come out of the bay, and to make towards them, keeping close by the shore: which maner of course the craftie Turke misdoubting his owne strength, held of purpose, that if he should chance to be ouermatched by the Christians, he might turne the prow of his gallies vpon them, and running the poupes aground, so to land his men and great ordinance, and from land as he might to defend his fleet: accounting it a lesse losse (if the worst should chance) to lose the gallies than the men.

Barbarussa his answere to Salec concerning the eunuchs speech.

Barbarussa putteth out of the bay of Ambracia, and followeth Auria.

Auria somewhat troubled with this sudden comming out of the enemie, as with a thing which he then least expected, yet notably staied himselfe, and commaunded all the fleet to prepare themselues to battell, and to follow his Admirall gallie. Now all the Turks fleet was come L
into the open sea in such order, that *Barbarussa* himselfe was in the middle battell, where his Admirall gallie was to be seene with many purple flags and streamers flying gallantly in the wind: on his right hand was *Tabaches*, and *Salec* on the left, both men of great fame, euery one of them hauing almost like number of gallies, which were in all a hundred and fiftie: Vnto the middle battel were ioined the two wings, in such order, that which way soeuer the Admiral turned, they turning also, still represented the forme of a flying Eagle: so that (as *Auria* himselfe afterwards confessed) a more firme or orderly fleet could not haue bin brought out by any expert captaine. Before the fleet, came about twentie nimble gallies, conducted by *Drogut* (or *Dragut*) an arch pirat, famous afterwards for the great harme he did vnto the Christians. *Capellius* the Venetian Admirall came in his long boat to *Auria*, requesting him, That he with his gallies might giue the first charge vpon the enemie: to whom *Auria* gaue great thankes, and praising his forward- M
nesse, requested him to follow him, to whom he would in good time giue a signe what he would haue done. The formost of the Turks light gallies was now come vnto the great Galleon of *Bondelmerius*, which was the formost of the Chrihian fleet, whereunto were sent also certaine gallies from *Salec*, to help to assaile that tall ship; which shooting a farre off, did no harme, neither

The order of the Turkes fleet.

Bondel-

A *Bondelmerius* them: who would not ſuffer one piece to be diſcharged, for he being an expert ſea man, and loath to ſhoot in vaine, expected that they ſhould come neerer vnto him, and then vpon the ſudden to diſcharge all his great ordinance vpon them. Neither was he deceiued in that his expectation, for the Turkes comming neere vnto him, were ſo ouerwhelmed with the great and ſmal ſhot out of the Galleon, that they were glad to ſtay their courſe, & to retire. In the mean time *Auria* called backe againe the ſhips which were gone before, and cauſed his Galleon to be towed out; and by boats of purpoſe ſent out, charged the captains of the gallies to make themſelues readie to fight, vpon ſignall giuen by the ſound of the trumpet and the diſplaying of the Admirals enſigne: yet was not *Auria* of mind to fight with his gallies, without his ſhips: which thing the craftie enemie well perceiued, and ſought by all means to ioine battell with the gallies
B before the comming in of the tall ſhips, which were as caſtles in reſpect of the gallies: for it was then ſuch a calme, that the ſhips were not able to keep way with the gallies, and the ſmooth water ſeemed to offer a fit opportunitie for battell; which ſo well pleaſed the Patriarch, that many heard him crying a loud to *Auria*, to giue the ſignall, and maruelled much why he deferred to giue battell. For he fetching a great compaſſe, and houering about his ſhips, with his gallies kept ſuch a courſe, that many thought he would vpon the ſuden haue done ſome ſtrange and vnexpected exploit vpon the enemie: but *Auria* held that ſtrange courſe, of purpoſe to haue drawne the enemies gallies within the danger of his great ſhips, who thundring amongſt them with their great ordinance, might haue eaſily ſore beaten & diſordered them, and opened a way vnto his gallies to haue gotten a moſt certaine victorie. But the craftie old Turke doubting by the
C ſtrangenes of *Auria* his courſe, to be circumuented with ſome finenes, ſtaied his courſe, & lay ſtill with his owne ſquadron of gallies, warily expecting to what purpoſe that ſtrange courſe of the enemie tended. In the meane time, both the wings of his fleet had a little before the going down of the Sunne begun in diuers places to encounter with the Chriſtians: Some were in vaine ſtill aſſailing *Bondelmerius* his great Galleon; others with their great ordinance had ſo ſore beaten two tall ſhips, wherein *Buccanigra* and *Mongaia*, two Spaniſh captaines, were embarked with their companies, that they were giuen for loſt, many of the ſouldiors and mariners being ſlaine: Two other ſhips loded with victuall, the one of VENICE, the other of DALMATIA, were burnt by the Turkes, & ſome few of the men ſaued by their ſhip boats, and by ſwimming to the ſhips neereſt vnto them. In the ſhutting in of the euening, *Salec* tooke two gallies ſtragling behind the
D reſt of the fleet, whereof *Mozenicus* a Venetian, and *Bebiena* a Florentine, were captaines. After theſe gallies, was taken alſo the ſhip of *Aloyſius Figaroa* a Spaniard, although his ſouldiors had for a time fought moſt valiantly. In this ſhip with *Figaroa* the father, was taken his ſon, a young gentleman, and beautified with all the good gifts of nature; who afterwards preſented to *Solyman*, turned Turke: and growing in credit in *Solymans* chamber, after three yeres miſerable impriſonment, obtained his poore fathers libertie, and ſent him well rewarded home againe into SPAINE. Whileſt both the fleets were thus expecting how they might to their moſt aduantage ioine battell, ſuddenly aroſe a great tempeſt of thunder, lightening, and raine, with a freſh gale of Eaſterly wind: whereupon the Chriſtians ſeeing the Turks hoyſing vp their ſmal ſailes, without delay hoyſed vp both ſmall and great to cleare themſelues of the enemie, and with that
E faire wind returned againe to CORCYRA; ſo diſorderedly and in ſuch haſt, ſparing neither ſaile nor oare, that it ſeemed rather a ſhamefull flight then an orderly retreat. So that *Auria*, a man of ſo great fame at ſea, as that he was called a ſecond *Neptune*, was that day accounted no captain. It is reported, that *Barbaruſſa* with the ſame wind purſued the Chriſtians a while, and being not able longer to ſee what courſe they held, by reaſon of the darkeneſſe of the night, to haue ſtaied his courſe: for the Admirals had cauſed their lights, which they vſed to carrie in the poupes of their gallies, to be then put out. Whereat *Barbaruſſa* heartily laughing, ſaid oftentimes in the Spaniſh tongue: Auria *hath therefore put out his light, the better in the darke to hide his flight*: noting in him ſuch a feare, as that he without regard of honour ſought only how by flight to eſcape. When they were come to CORCYRA, they were all generally of opinion, That by the
F benefit of that ſudden ſtorme they had auoided a great danger. The emperials, eſpecially the Genowayes, to excuſe *Auria*, imputed the cauſe of ſo ſhamefull a flight vnto the Venetians, who would not from the beginning receiue any Spaniſh ſouldiors into their gallies, the better to haue withſtood the enemie; and that *Auria* therefore doubting of the Venetians, refrained from ioining battell, and the rather, becauſe that vpon the comming forth of the Turkes fleet, they had

Auria his politicke courſe.

The Chriſtian fleet ſhamefully flyeth.

Barbaruſſa leaſeth at Auria.

hoiſed vp their ſailes tied vp to the yards with ſmall lines, which they might at their pleaſure eaſily cut, and ſet ſaile to flie which way they would. Shortly after came *Barbaruſſa* with all his fleet to the Iſland of PAXVS, about foure leagues from CORCYRA Eaſtward, brauing the Chriſtians as if hee would haue fought with them, if they durſt come out. Whereat *Gonzaga* the Viceroy fretting, went to euerie one of the three great commaunders, requeſting them for the honor of the Chriſtians, to repreſſe that prowd Turks inſolencie. At laſt the matter was brought to that paſſe, that the Venetians hauing taken in certaine companies of Spaniards, the fleet ſhould be diuided into foure ſquadrons, and ſo to giue battell: But this conſultation was ſo long protracted, that *Barbaruſſa* fearing the tempeſtuos Autumn weather, hoyſed ſaile, and about the ſeuenth of October returned againe into the bay of AMBRACIA. After the departing of *Barbaruſſa*, the generalls of the Chriſtian fleet directed their courſe into the bay called SINVS RIZONICVS, to beſiege CASTRONOVUM or new Caſtle, a ſtrong towne of the Turkes ſtanding in that bay, and bordering vpon the Venetian ſeigniorie: the inhabitants were part Dalmatians, part Epirots, which had renounced the Chriſtian religion, and ſome Turks, liuing moſt part by merchandiſe: Vnto this towne the Chriſtians laied ſiege, and in ſhort time woon it, where they had a great prey, and a wonderful number of captiues of all ſorts. Three daies after the taking of the towne, the caſtle was alſo yeelded by the Turkes garriſon, couenanting in vaine to depart with life and libertie.

Barbaruſſa braueth the Chriſtians.

Caſtronouum taken by the Chriſtians.

This towne taken by common force, ought of right by the couenants of the league to haue been deliuered to the Venetians; yet was it for all that by *Auria* and *Gonzaga* reſerued for the emperour, and *Franciſcus Sarmentus* with foure thouſand Spaniards all old ſouldiors, left there in garriſon: *Capellius* the Venetian Admirall vrging in vaine the right of the Venetians. Which thing ſo much grieued the Senat, who euer had the ambitious Spaniard in ſuſpect, and now aſſured of him as an euill neighbour to their towne of CATARVM, that repenting themſelues of the league with the emperour, they decreed to ſue to *Solyman* for peace: which they afterwards eaſily obtained, for a ſhort ſpace, by *Laurentius Grittus* their dukes ſonne, and by the help of *Antonius Rincus* the French kings embaſſadour; who then lying at CONSTANTINOPLE, in good time told the great Baſſaes, that the league the Venetians had made with the Emperour, was made without the conſent of the greateſt part of the Senat, and that warre taken in hand againſt moſt of their wils.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Barbaruſſa* put to ſea againe to haue relieued CASTRONOVUM; but being at ſea, many of his gallies were by the violence of a ſudden tempeſt driuen vpon the ACROCERAVNIAN rocks, and there caſt away. It is reported, that he loſt there twentie thouſand men, which with the broken pieces of his gallies were found almoſt all alongſt the coaſt of DALMATIA. This ſhipwrack being certainly known, *Capellius* would haue perſuaded *Auria* to haue preſently purſued *Barbaruſſa* ſo diſtreſſed: which motion *Gonzaga* well liked, as a man deſirous by ſome notable exploit to recompence the diſgrace before receiued at LEVCADE. But *Auria* for diuers cauſes not liking of the matter, was ſo ſet downe vpon his returne to ITALIE, that he preſently hoiſed ſaile: leauing the Venetian Admirall in ſuch a rage, that he deteſted himſelfe for ſubmitting himſelfe to another mans power; and wiſhed the captaines there preſent, neuer to ſubiect themſelues to the commaund of a ſtranger, for as much as that Genoway, either vpõ cowardiſe or malitious mind, as an old enemy to the Venetian ſtate, would not proſecute ſo manifeſt a victorie, but put vp ſo ſhameful a diſgrace as he had before receiued. But of all this *Auria* made ſmall reckoning, referring all that he both ſaid and did, ſo far vnto the emperors cõmoditie, that *Valerius Vrſinus* a noble gentleman, then ſeruing in the Venetian pay, merily ſaid, That *Auria* had don nothing but wiſely & politickly, in ſetting the Venetians togither by the eares with the Turks, & opening a gate for a long war, whether the Venetians would or not, ſo as the emperour himſelfe could not haue better wiſhed, and that without the loſſe of one gallie. For it was thought by many, that the long wars betwixt the Turks and the Venetians, would ſort to the great good of the emperour; when as the Venetians worne out and ſpent with thoſe long and chargeable warres againſt ſo mightie an enemie, ſhould be ſtripped of their lands & territories, either by force, or ſome hard compoſition wrung from them by neceſſitie.

Auria neglecting to purſue Barbaruſſa, yeturneth into Italie, to the griefe of the Venetian Admirall.

CASTRONOVUM thus taken, and *Sarmentus* with a garriſon of foure thouſand Spaniards there placed as is aforeſaid, and the Chriſtian fleet diſſolued, *Solyman* tooke the matter ſo grieuouſly, that hee determined to beſiege it againe both by ſea and land: and in his furie, cauſed

NAVPLI-

A NAVPLIVM and EPIDAVRVS, two of the Venetian cities in the country of PELOPONESVS, to be straightly besieged. Yet tooke he singuler pleasure, that *Barbarussa* his Admirall, in all respects worse furnished, had driuen out of the Sea the great fleet of the Christians, which he before that time had made too great account of. Wherefore in the beginning of the Spring, which was in the yeere 1539, *Barbarussa* by his commandement repaired againe his fleet, and notably furnished it with all manner of warlike prouision; manning his gallies for the most part with Ianizaries and other such select souldiors. With this fleet *Barbarussa* (Sommer now well come on) departed out of the HELESPONTVS, and came to the bay RIZONICVS; at which time also *Vlames* the Persian, then Gouernour of BOSNA, shewed himselfe with his forces vpon the mountaines as he had in charge from *Solyman*. *Barbarussa* before he entred the straits of the bay,
B sent before him *Dragut* and *Corsetus*, two notable pirats, with thirtie galliots, who landing their men neere vnto CASTRONOVUM (as they were commaunded) were valiantly encountred by *Sarmentus* with his Spaniards, and forced againe to their galliots, many of the Turks being slain and taken prisoners. After that came *Barbarussa*, with ninetie gallies, and three tall ships which carried the artillerie for batterie and other necessarie prouision for the campe; where he spent three daies landing his great ordinance and casting vp trenches, which could not be done but by night, by reason of the continuall shot out of the towne: wherewith the Spaniards had in that three daies space slaine aboue a thousand Turkes; amongst whom was *Agis Hariadenus*, who had made himselfe as it were a king at TAIORBA, a citie neere TRIPOLIS in AFRICA; whose death much grieued *Barbarussa*, as one of his most antient and best friends. At length *Barba-*
C *russa* hauing cast vp his trenches, landed foure and fiftie great pieces of artillerie for batterie; whereof he gaue a fourth part to *Vlames* to batter the towne on the North side, whilest he in the meane time, in three diuers places battered the East side; and *Salec* from Sea with ten gallies, did morning and euening batter another part of the wall. Whilest *Sarmentus* was thus in so many places assailed, and did what was possible to haue repaired the breaches; the Turks by force tooke one of the towers, where after they had displaied their ensignes, they from thence with their shot sore troubled the Spaniards. At the same time also, *Vlames* had made a breach, and was readie on the other side of the citie to enter. In which extremities, *Sarmentus* seeing no meanes longer to defend the citie, commanded the hurt souldiers to get them into the castle below, & the rest with him to take the market place, there to die togither like men: where the Turks
D straightway breaking in on euerie side vpon them, made a most bloudie and cruell fight, wherein the Spaniards ouerwhelmed with shot, and the multitude of their enemies, were slaine almost euerie man. *Sarmentus* wounded in the face with three arrowes, and wearied with long fight, seeing *Sancius Fria* a captaine readie to flie, sharpely reproued him, and catching him by the hand, made him there to tarie by it, vntill they were there both togither slaine. Many valiant captaines were there lost, whose names for breuitie I omite. *Aloysius Arius*, and certaine other captaines who togither with the wouuded souldiors were got into the castle, seeing no meanes to defend the place, yeelded themselues: whom *Barbarussa* according to his promise, tooke to mercie in sparing their liues, yet carried them away into captiuitie to CONSTANTINOPLE.
E The dead bodie of *Sarmentus* could not be knowne amongst so many heapes of the dead, although *Barbarussa* had caused most diligent search to be made for it, and offered great sums of money and libertie also, to who soeuer could recouer it; being desirous to haue sent his head for a present to *Solyman*. *Barbarussa* proud of this victorie, began forthwith to gape after CATTARVS a citie of the Venetians in the bottome of the same bay: and thereupon writ threatning letters to *Ioannes Bembus* one of the Venetian Senators then Gouernour of the citie, presently to deliuer the citie; which he would (as he said) otherwise assault by force. Whereunto *Bembus* answered againe by letters, That in so doing, he should violate the league lately made with *Solyman*, and that he should find him readie by force to repell his forces. Wherewith *Barbarussa* displeased, sent certaine gallies into the bottome of the bay; who discharging certaine great pieces at the citie, made shew as if they had come to besiege it. At whom *Bembus* as a man of
F good courage, caused as many mo like pieces to be discharged, and shewed his men vpon the wals: Which thing *Barbarussa* perceiuing, staied his course, and calling backe his gallies, returned to CASTRONOVUM, from whence (better appeased with presents afterwards sent from *Bembus*) he departed out of that bay.

The long warres betwixt *Charles* the emperour and *Francis* the French king, were now well pacified;

1539

Barbarussa sent by Solyman to besiege Castronouum.

Castronouum hardly besieged by Barbarussa.

Castronouum taken.

Sarmentus slaine.

pacified, and ſuch friendſhip (at leaſtwiſe in ſhew) now growne betwixt theſe two great princes, that moſt men thought that all other quarrels laid aſide, they would now at length with vnited forces go againſt the great and dangerous enemie of Chriſtendome: Which opinion not altogether of the wiſer ſort beleeued, was yet at this time wonderfully confirmed by many extraordinarie and rare courteſies then paſſing betwixt them, which concerne not this hiſtorie; as alſo, in that two of their moſt famous captaines, *Alphonſus Vaſtius*, and *Hanibald*, were as it were with one conſent by them both ſent embaſſadours to VENICE, to haue drawne the Venetians into the confederation of that warre againſt the Turke. Which two renowned captaines comming to VENICE, moſt gallantly accompanied, were by *Landus* the duke, and the whole State, with great magnificence receiued, the people after their wonted manner flocking together in euery place to behold them ſo noble captaines ſent from ſuch mightie princes; but eſpecially *Vaſtius*, whoſe fame hauing many times before filled their eares, made them now the more deſirous to ſatisfie their eyes alſo with the beholding of his tall and comely perſon. Which two famous captaines admitted into the Senat, for that purpoſe fully aſſembled, and audience giuen: *Vaſtius* ariſing from the dukes ſide, in theſe or like words deliuered their embaſſage.

Alphonſus Vaſtius and Hanibaldus ſent embaſſadours from the emperor and the French king to the State of Venice.

Vaſtius his Oration to the Venetian Senat.

It is come to paſſe (as I ſuppoſe) by the great prouidence of Almightie God, and of all the diuine powers (moſt noble duke and honourable Senators) that two of the moſt mightie kings of EVROPE, *who of late had of long time made mortall wars one vpon another, touched with the zeale of religion, are become great friends: Vndoubtedly to that purpoſe onely, that hauing made a firme peace, they may bring ſuch a generall quietneſſe to the long troubled and afflicted ſtate of Chriſtendome, as beſt beſeemeth their greatneſſe; and taking in hand a ſacred warre to reuenge ſo many calamities receiued from the Infidell. That this might be made knowne vnto you (moſt noble Venetians) theſe mightie Monarchs haue ſent vs hether in good time to kindle in you the like zeale, wherewith it is well knowne you haue alwaies for the honour of your State been enflamed: for you of all others, which are of ſuch power and valour at ſea, they wiſh for, as their fellowes and confederates in this ſacred warre and hoped victorie, and thinke you worthie, which ſhould enioy the eſpeciall fruit of all that labour. For as much as the Chriſtian forces once renewed, and ſo great and ſtrong a fleet once aſſembled, euery man ſeeth that the Turks muſt needs be too weake: although they brag, that they carried away the victorie of late at* ACTIVM, *when as they then eſcaped the victorious hands of our men, not by their owne valour, but by the vnexpected hap of a ſudden ſtorme. For all the powers of heauen and earth, and of the ſea alſo, will be propitious vnto vs, vniting ſo great forces, in the regard of our ſacred religion; and will ſo take away the hearts of the Infidels, that they ſhall learne to be ouercome. As for our land forces, we are to hope nothing but well, for as much as vnto thoſe which the emperour of late brought into the field at* VIENNA, *and cauſed the Turkiſh emperour to flie, ſhall be ioyned not onely all the horſemen and infanterie of* FRAVNCE, *a wonderfull ſtrength, but* Sigiſmund *alſo king of* POLONIA *will without delay bring forth his armies, wherewith he hath beene vſed in the quarrell of the Chriſtian religion happily to fight againſt the Infidels: ſo that it is not to be doubted of a moſt certaine and aſſured victorie. Wherefore the victorious emperour and moſt Chriſtian king* Francis *moſt inſtantly requeſt you to enter into the like godly cogitations, conceiued for the generall good of the Chriſtian name, and religiouſly to embrace the hope of a moſt true and glorious victorie: and further exhort you, by a wholeſome decree to auert your religious and courageous hearts from the friendſhip of the Infidels. For it may worthely ſeeme vnto your moſt honourable minds, a moſt foule and ſhamefull thing, to haue renewed your league, and to haue preferred an infamous and vncertaine peace before a moſt religious and iuſt warre. Neither doth it beſeeme this moſt wealthie State to be terrified from that which is good and right, with any charges of war, be they neuer ſo great: for if we ſhall once ouercome, which is incident to this preſent and long wiſhed occaſion, wee ſhall by the profit of one victorie, either by ſea or land, to your incomparable praiſe recompence all the loſſes by vs in former times receiued.*

The anſwere of the duke to Vaſtius.

Whereunto the duke in the name of the whole State anſwered, That there neuer happened any thing at any time vnto the Venetian Senat more honourable, for the manner of the embaſſage, or for the publicke ſecuritie of their eſtate, more to be deſired than the hope of ſuch a peace: after that two moſt mightie kings by two ſuch famous captaines their embaſſadours, did certifie them of their attonement and aſſured peace, moſt glorious to themſelues, to their eternall praiſe, whole-

A wholesome also to the Venetian state, beset with so many dangers, and wonderfully to be wished for of all the other princes of Christendome, if they would sincerely & religiously with their forces by common consent vnited, resolue vpon that sacred war: for then would not the Venetians be wanting to themselues or the Christian commonweale, but end the league they had with the Turke, not with a dishonourable peace, but with armes and victorie. Wherefore it was to be requested of Almightie God by prayer, That those puissant kings would with religious and happie euent speedily and seriously fulfill all that hope of peace, which they had by their mutuall discourses and embracings in shew promised vnto the world.

In few dayes after certaine of the select Senatours sitting in counsell, after the manner of that
B State, called the embassadors vnto them and asked them, Whether they knew any thing of the articles and capitulations wherein that league and confederation was to be concluded? and by the way, Whether they thought the Emperour in regard of that peace would giue vnto the French kings sonne the Dukedome of MILLAN, as was reported? Whereunto *Hanebald* the French embassador answering nothing, *Vastius* said, That he knew nothing more, but that the two great princes had agreed thereof betwixt themselues, and that the Emperour had desired the peace, as one willing to help the afflicted & declining state of the Christian commonweale: which thing any man might see could not be effected or brought to passe, but that the Emperour must in many things yeeld to the requests of the French king, and redeeme his good will: For the noble mind (said he) worthie Senatours, can easily make light of the greatest losse of his
C owne things, when it foreseeth a large way opened thereby to eternall fame and glorie. These words were very glorious & gracious to the hearers: but they, as men of great experience, could not let it sinke in their minds, that the Emperour whom they had often deeply sounded, would euer depart with the Dukedome of MILLAN, which only thing the French king required, and had for the recouering thereof vnfortunatly striuen almost twentie yeares, to the trouble & disquiet of a great part of the world. The nobilitie and authoritie of this embassage more mooued the Senat than did the other former embassadours, *Didaco Mendoza*, a Spaniard, and *Guilielmus Pellicerius*, a Frenchman, then both present: yet was it much suspected by the Venetians, because it contained no certaine resolution, but onely the bare hope of a future peace; so that it was by many men supposed to be but a matter deuised to deceiue others and to serue the Emperours
D turne to his great profit. Yet all the cunning seemed to rest in this point, That the Venetians led on with the hope of this league, should neglect the renewing of the league they had the yeare before taken with *Solyman*, which was now almost expired. Vpon which vncertaintie of other mens resolutions, the graue Senatours thought too dangerous a matter to depend.

Vastius his answere to the demaund of the Venetian Senatours.

Vpon this question of this new league and confederation to be made with these Christian princes against the Turke, the Senat was wonderfully deuided: some fauoring the Emperours requeſt, inueighed against the renewing of that shamefull league with the infidels, which they said was nothing els, but as much as in them lay to betray vnto them the other parts of Christendome, and especially ITALIE, destitute of their help, and yet not to be obtained without great charge; and with many reasons vrged the honourable confederation with these Christian prin-
E ces: others of a deeper reach, considering what infinit harmes they had from time to time receiued by falling out with the Turks, and suspecting also the Emperours drift, and ioyning thereunto the consideration of the great dearth then raigning in the citie, which was not to be relieued but out of MACEDONIA and GRÆCIA, the Turks countries; the Emperour hauing at that time as it were of purpose imposed so great a custome vpon all corne to be transported out of SICILIE, that the very custome came to as much as both the price of the corne and the fraight together: all which mischeefes they said were to be preuented by renewing the league with *Solyman*. This matter was with great heat debated in the Senat too and fro, either part hauing great faultours: so that the Senatours spent almost whole Winter nights in the court in discoursing and consulting what were best to be done. But whatsoeuer was there said or decreed, was forthwith
F by one of the factions or other made knowne, not onely to the embassadours present in the citie, but by letters also discouered into prouinces far off: a thing neuer before in that state known, which had euer vsed as it were with a religious silence to keepe secret whatsoeuer was there decreed. Which thing *Marcus Foscarus*, an old Senator and a man of great wisdome, perceiuing, said openly, That the state was betrayed by the multitude and corruption of voices, and must needs shortly perish, if it were not speedily committed to the graue and faithfull iudgement of some

The Venetian Senators diuersly affected towards the confederation with the Emperour and the French king, against Solyman.

Foscarus a graue Senatour.

ſome few: for there was almoſt two hundred of them which gaue voices, reducing that multitude to the number of fiftie, who for their experience and loue toward their countrey, were holden for men of greateſt grauitie and ſecrecie: ſo was the madneſſe of many ſtayed by the diſcretion of a few. But *Foſcarus* ſhortly after fell into ſuch hatred of the multitude, grieued to be as light headed men without diſcretion, ſo excluded out of the counſell, that he was by the voices of the multitude firſt thruſt out of the counſell himſelfe, and by them kept a great while after from all the preferments and honours of the citie: being indeed one of the graueſt Senatours, and a man of deepeſt iudgement. Which diſgrace turned afterward to his great honour and credit, as one that had foreſeene much, after they were once found out and condemned which had traiterouſly reuealed the ſecrets of the State. G H

Foſcarus diſgraced by the multitude.

The Venetians ſend Aloyſius Badoerius their embaſſadour to Solyman, to conclude a peace.

But this long conſultation concerning the confederation, came to this end, That the Senatours doubting the vnion of thoſe two great princes, & yet willing to expect the euent, decreed forthwith to ſend three embaſſadours; whereof two ſhould be ſent to the emperour and the French king to diſcouer their deſignes, and the third, which was *Aloyſius Badoerius*, a wiſe and well ſpoken man, was with all ſpeed diſpatched away to *Solyman*, to preuent the fame of the diſtruſt to be conceiued of the agreement of thoſe great Chriſtian princes, and if he could by any meanes, to ſpare for no coſt, to ſaue vnto the Venetians their cities of NAVPLIVM and EPIDAVRVS, which *Solyman* required of them before he would graunt them peace. Which if it could not be obtained of the proud and craftie tyrant, than to yeeld vnto neceſſitie, and to conclude a peace with him vpon any conditions: which courſe the Decemviri thought to be moſt I expedient for the State: yet concerning the yeelding vp of the cities, they gaue him ſecret inſtructions and warrant, fearing forſooth the force and tumult of the headſtrong multitude, who if they had knowne any ſuch thing, would vndoubtedly thereupon haue taken occaſion to haue croſſed and ouerthrowne that moſt wholeſome decree: for there was no doubt, that if they had delayed the matter, and ſought for peace too late, but that *Solyman* would vpon another mans weakeneſſe and neceſſitie haue encreaſed his inſatiable deſire, and not graunted them peace, being brought low & forſaken, except they would deliuer vnto him the iſlands of CEPHALENIA, ZACINTHVS, and CORCYRA, a matter no leſſe grieuous than the deſtruction of the very citie of VENICE it ſelfe. So that the great embaſſadours *Vaſtius* and *Hanebald*, who came of purpoſe to haue hindered the league with the Turke; by their great diligence wrought nothing more effectually, than that the Venetians the better foreſeeing the danger of their eſtate, ſhould as they did, make haſt to conclude the ſame: for it falleth out in mens purpoſes and actions, That a good and happy ſucceſſe otherwiſe wel hoped for, is oftentimes marred with too much diligence and care. Neither was it any doubt, but that *Hanebald* was ſent by the French king but for faſhion ſake, and ſecretly vnderſtand by *Pellicerius* the old embaſſadour perſuaded the Venetians to haſten the concluſion of peace with *Solyman*. Which as *Badoerius* their embaſſadour was carefully ſolliciting the matter at CONSTANTINOPLE, and being loth to yeeld the ſtrong cities which *Solyman* required, offering vnto him in ſtead of them a great ſumme of money: *Solyman* tooke him vp with threatening words as a ſhameleſſe diſſembler, earneſtly proteſting, That he would neuer grant him peace, without the yeelding of thoſe cities; rehearſing vnto him the moſt ſecreteſt points of his embaſſage, and how that he was authoriſed from the Decemviri to yeeld them vnto him: which thing the embaſſadour little thought *Solyman* had knowne. Wherefore *Badoerius* ſo ſhamefully reproued, and ſtanding in doubt of his life, ſeeing the greateſt ſecrets of his embaſſage reuealed to *Solyman* and his Baſſaes, was glad to accept of peace, by yeelding vnto him NAVPLIVM and EPIDAVRVS, two cities in PELOPONESVS, and with them NADINVM and LABRANIA, two caſtles of DALMATIA, to the great greeſe of the whole Senate: for graunting wherof the common people ignorant of the ſecret decree of the Decemviri, and ſuppoſing that *Badoerius* had giuen away that which he had no authoritie to giue, were ſo enraged againſt him at his returne, that it was much adoe to ſaue the guiltleſſe man from exile, and his goods from confiſcation, although the traitors were then knowne which had diſcouered the ſecrets of the ſtate vnto the Turkes. Theſe were *Mapheus Leonius* a Senatour, and *Conſtantinus Cobatius*, ſecretarie to the colledge of the Decemviri, and *Franciſcus Valerius*, one of the Senators baſe ſonnes, the traiterous diſperſer of the Turks money for the corruption of others: who with other his complices were for the ſame fact hanged in the marker place, when as *Leonius* and *Cobatius* were a little before fled into FRAVNCE. L M

The moſt ſecret decree of the Venetian Senate made knowne to Solyman.

1540

A peace concluded betwixt the Venetians and Solyman.

The traitors which reuealed the ſecrets of the Venetian ſtate to Solymã, executed.

About

A About the ſame time which was in the yeare of our Lord 1540, died *Ioannes Sepuſius* king of HVNGARIE, *Solymans* tributarie; after whoſe death enſued great warres in HVNGARIE, and the lamentable ſubuerſion of that flouriſhing kingdome: for the better conceiuing whereof, it ſhall not be amiſſe with as much breuitie as the plainneſſe of the hiſtorie will permit, to open the cauſes & grounds of the endleſſe calamities which afterwards enſued, and neuer tooke end, vntill that warlike kingdome was to the great weakning of Chriſtendome vtterly ſubuerted.

King *Ferdinand* and this tributarie king *Iohn*, had with like deſire of peace and quietneſſe, made betweene them a league; profitable to them both as their eſtates then ſtood, rather than honourable: yet moſt welcome to the Hungarians, who deuided into factions, and hauing followed ſome the one king and ſome the other, enioyed neuertheleſſe their lands and goods by
B the benefit of this peace; the townes and caſtles being ſtill kept by them in whoſe poſſeſſion they then were at the making of the peace. In the capitulations of which peace, it was compriſed, That *Ferdinand* ſhould from thenceforth call *Iohn* by the name of a king, whereas before he had both in his common talke and letters called him by the name of the Vayuod only: It was alſo expreſſely ſet down in the ſame articles of peace, and ſubſcribed with the hands of diuers of the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, That if king *Iohn* ſhould die, king *Ferdinand* ſhould ſucceed him in the whole kingdome of HVNGARIE: Which condition was ſuppreſſed and kept verie ſecret for
C feare of *Solyman*, who accounted of that kingdome as of his owne, gotten by law of armes, and beſtowed vpon king *Iohn* as vpon his vaſſaile: neither was it to haue been thought, that if he ſhould haue known thereof (being of a hautie mind by nature, and not able to endure any iniurie) he would haue ſuffered that kingdome, got and defended with ſo great danger and coſt, to be by the will of an vnthankfull man, transferred vnto his enemies.

This matter of ſo great importance, was (as it is reported) by *Hieronymus Laſcus* embaſſadour for king *Ferdinand* to CONSTANTINOPLE, reuealed vnto *Solyman* and the Baſſaes, to bring king *Iohn* into hatred. So much did this noble gentleman, for his rare vertues otherwiſe greatly to haue been commended, yeeld vnto his griefe, and deſire of reuenge: when after the death of *Aloyſius Grittus*, he fell from the friendſhip of king *Iohn*, being (as is before declared) by him committed to priſon, and hardly afterwards enlarged, at the requeſt of king *Sigiſmund*. Whereupon *Solyman* being exceedingly angrie with king *Iohn*, called him vnthankfull churle, and turning himſelfe about to *Lutzis baſſa* his brother in law, ſaid, How vnworthely doe theſe
D two Chriſtian kings weare their crownes vpon their faithleſſe heads; who as ſhameful deceiuers are not afraid, either for worldly ſhame or feare of God, for their profit to falſifie their faith? But king *Iohn* vnderſtanding thereof, and wonderfully fearing his owne eſtate, did by good friends and rich preſents, pacifie *Solyman* againe, laying all the blame vpon king *Ferdinand*, as better able to beare it. Not long after, king *Iohn* hauing ſet his kingdome in good order, and ſtrongly fortified the citie of BVDA: being now farre ſtricken in yeares, at the earneſt requeſt of moſt of the nobilitie of HVNGARIE and other his beſt friends, married *Iſabella* the daughter of *Sigiſmund* king of POLONIA, a gratious ladie, and of great ſpirit: which king *Sigiſmund* had long
E before married *Barbara* king *Iohn* his ſiſter, after whoſe death he married the ladie *Bona Sforția*, the daughter of *Ioannes Galeacius* duke of MILLAIN, by whom he had this ladie *Iſabella* whom king *Iohn* now married. Which marriage *Solyman* liked well of, hauing many times by way of talke before condemned the ſingle life of the king: but king *Ferdinand* liked thereof nothing at all, plainly foreſeeing, that the Hungarians (if the king ſhould chance to haue a ſonne) would forthwith looke vpon him as their naturall king, and reiect himſelfe as but a ſtranger.

This young queene in ſhort time (as he had feared) conceiued with child, and was now very big: when king *Iohn* was enforced to make an expedition in perſon himſelfe againſt *Maylat* (famous for the death of *Aloyſius Grittus*) and *Balas*, both Gouernours of TRANSILVANIA: whereof *Maylat* not contented with the name of Vayuod or Gouernour, ſought to make himſelfe king. But *Solyman* deteſting the impudent arrogancie of the faithleſſe man, and hating him for the death of *Grittus*, and the Turks ſlaine with him, aduertiſed king *Iohn* of all the matter, wi-
F ſhing him to be more circumſpect whom he truſted with the gouernment of ſo great and rich a countrey. So *Maylat* ſhamefully reiected of *Solyman*, and out of hope of a kingdome, fearing alſo to be thruſt quite out of his gouernment by king *Iohn*, thought it beſt for his owne ſafetie, to raiſe vp all the prouince into rebellion, and to take part with king *Ferdinand*: which thing *Ferdinand* by his diuers agents ſecretly furthered to the vttermoſt. For theſe two kings, although

The ſecret confederation betwixt king Ferdinand & king Iohn reuealed.

King Iohn in his old yeares marieth Iſabella king Sigiſmund his daughter.

The Queene with child.

though they were at peace the one with the other, and in words and ſhew made ſemblance of G
friendſhip; yet in heart they enuied and hated each other, as if they ſhould preſently haue waged warre. At that ſame time king *Iohn* exacted of his ſubiects, and eſpecially of them of TRANSILVANIA, a great ſumme of money, to pay the Turke his tribute, then two yeares behind: which thing ſerued *Maylat* and his complices, as a fit occaſion to raiſe the people into rebellion; perſuading them, that there was no reaſon to pay vnto the Turke ſuch a tribute, as would ſerue well to wage ten yeares honourable warre againſt him: ſo that by that and ſuch like perſuaſion, all the prouince was in an vprore, little differing from manifeſt rebellion. To appeaſe theſe dangerous troubles thus ariſing, king *Iohn* ſent certain of his chiefe nobilitie and beſt captaines with a great power into TRANSILVANIA, following after himſelfe in his chariot, not yet well recouered of his late ſickneſſe: Theſe noble men entring in two places into TRANSILVANIA, and H
ſcouting vp and downe the countrey, had in ſhort time ſo vſed the matter, that what by force what by policie, the tumult was well pacified, and diuers of the chiefe offenders worthely executed. *Maylat* the ambitious author of this ſedition, not able to hold the field againſt the king, and ſeeing himſelfe beſet on euery ſide with his enemies, retired himſelfe with all his wealth into a towne called FOGARAS, a place of great ſtrength, which the kings power ſhortly after hardly beſieged: the king himſelfe then lying at SIBYNIVM, the chiefe citie of TRANSILVANIA, about a mile diſtant from FOGARAS, ſicke of an ague, whereinto he was againe fallen through too much care and pains taken in trauelling in that hoat time of the yeare, the dayes being then at the longeſt. Whileſt he thus lay ſicke at SIBYNIVM, and his armie faſt by at the ſiege of FO-

Queene Iſabella deliuered of a ſonne.

GARAS, newes was brought vnto him from the court, That the Queene his wife was deliuered of I
a faire young ſonne: which was no ſooner bruted abroad, but the Hungarians as mē ouerioyed, came flocking to the court where the king lay, diſcharging their pieces in triumph, with all other ſignes of ioy and mirth they could poſſible deuiſe: the noble men came from the campe to reioice with the king, and all the armie was filled with gladneſſe. And for the greater ſolemnitie of this ſo common a ioy, a royall feaſt was prepared, which the noble men would needs haue the king to honour with his preſence, though he were thereto vnwilling, being as yet but a little recouered: Howbeit yeelding to their importunitie, hee ſuffered himſelfe to be ouerruled and brought to the feaſt by them, which was vnto him the merrieſt and the laſt that euer he made: for willing to ſhew his inward ioy, and to content his nobilitie there preſent, he forgot himſelfe, K
and eat and dranke more liberally than was for the health of his weake bodie: whereby the feauer which had but a little before left him, was againe renewed, in ſuch ſort, as that he well perceiued he could not long endure. Wherefore feeling his end to draw faſt on, he made his will,

The death of King Iohn.

appointing his young ſonne to be his heire, whom he committed to the tuition of *George* biſhop of VERADIVM, and *Peter Vicche* a noble gentleman and his neere kinſman, vntill he came to age: requeſting the reſt of the noble men to preferre his ſonne in the ſucceſſion of the kingdome, before a ſtranger, telling them, That *Solyman* would vndoubtedly take vpon him the protection both of the kingdome and of his ſonne, if they would in time ſend embaſſadours vnto him with preſents, and promiſe for his ſonne, that he ſhould raigne as his tributarie as he had done before: and ſo preſently after died. L

This king was of a courteous and gentle nature, bountifull, and in all his doings iuſt, of no fierce and rough diſpoſition, as the Hungarians commonly are, but of a moſt ciuile behauiour, garniſhed with good letters, and thorowly ſchooled in the diuers chances of both fortunes, not meaſuring his actions by the ſtrength of his power, but by the exact rule of diſcretion; for in time of buſineſſe no man was more circumſpect or vigilant than he, nor in time of recreation

The honourable ſaying of king Iohn.

any man more courteous or pleaſant. He vſed oftentimes to ſay, That the fauour and loue of valiant men gotten by bountie and courteſie, was the beſt treaſures of a prince; for that courteous and thankfull men, did oftentimes in ſome one worthie piece of ſeruice, plentifully repay whatſoeuer had been beſtowed vpon them: as for ſuch as were vnthankfull, they did to their ſhame beare the teſtimonie of another mans vertue.

The kings death was kept ſecret vntill ſuch time as the noble men had agreed with *Maylat*, M
that he ſhould take an oath of his faithful alleageance to the king, and his ſonne his lawful heire, and ſo ſtill to enioy his former place and gouernment: which offer *Maylat* gladly accepted, Then calling togither the counſell, it was decreed to ſend the ſame embaſſage to *Solyman*, which was appointed the old king yet liuing. So were preſently diſpatched away two moſt honourable

A ble embaſſadours, *Ioannes Exechius* biſhop of QVINQVE ECLESIE, and *Stephanus Verbetius* the Chancelor, a man of great yeres, carying with them ten boles of pure gold courioufly wrought, ſix hundred of ſiluer, gilt and engrauen; fortie pieces of purple ſilke and cloth of gold for Turkes gownes, and fiftie pound of coined gold, to bee paied in the name of two yeares tribute. Which embaſſadours paſſing directly from SIBYNIVM ouer Danubius into SERVIA, and ſo trauelling thorow THRACIA, came to CONSTANTINOPLE. In the meane time, the dead body of the king was with much heauineſſe carried from SIBYNIVN to ALBA REGALIS, moſt part of the armie following it, and there with great ſolemnitie buried. After this the young child was chriſtened and called *Stephen*, and there preſently crowned with the ancient crown of king *Stephen*, who firſt erected that kingdome, & without which the Hungarians neuer accounB ted their kings lawfully crowned. Yet the royal dignitie was by the common conſent of the nobilitie giuen vnto the queen, with condition, that in all publike writings the names of the ſonne and of the mother ſhould be ioined, and the kings money coined with the ſame inſcription: but the chiefeſt authoritie reſted in *George* the biſhop, for he was treaſurer, and had at his commaund the caſtles and ſtrong holds: yet were the ſouldiors with their enſignes and furniture, at the deuotion of *Valentinus Thuracus:* In the middle between theſe two was placed *Peter Vicche* the kings kinſman, and by the old king appointed for one of the tutors of his young ſonne, ſuſpected of neither part, honoured with the name of high Conſtable. But becauſe the name of this *George* the biſhop was moſt famous in this wofull war which we are about to write, I thought it worth the labour to ſpeake ſomething of his nature and diſpoſition, that it may be known to all C poſterity by what policie this war was managed, & how this flouriſhing kingdome by the madneſſe of the Hungarians came into the hands of the Turks.

Embaſſadours ſent out of Hungarie to Solyman.

A young child crowned king of Hungarie.

This *George* was borne in CROATIA, and brought vp from his yourh in the houſe of king *Iohn*, where vertue and induſtrie neuer wanted reliefe; when as he vnaduiſedly before, had entred into the orders of a monaſticall life, and wearie too late of the ſtraightneſſe therof, had forſaken his profeſſion. Wherefore being of a wonderfull pleaſing nature, and ſtill following king *Iohn*, driuen out of his kingdome and long liuing in exile, he woon ſuch credit and commendation for his fidelitie, integritie, and readie counſell in the kings moſt doubtfull and dangerous affaires, that after *Sibacchus* that worthie biſhop, was by the treacherie of *Aloyſius Grittus* ſlain at BAXOVIA, he obtained the great biſhopricke of VERADIVM. After that, when he had ſtrengD thened his credit with great wealth, he alwaies as a faithfull counſellor ſwaied and happily ruled both the court and kingdome, to the profit of the king. But he was of ſuch a diuers and pliant nature, that performing in all actions all the parts of a moſt readie and excellent man, he ſeemed to be made of contrarie qualities, and borne to do any thing: For in ſaying of his princely ſeruice, and performing the other ceremonies of the Chriſtian religion, he ſhewed, or at leaſtwiſe counterfeited ſuch a contrition in his deuout countenance & ſpeech, that a man would not haue thought it could poſſibly be the ſame man, who in the moſt waightie affaires both of warre and peace, did moſt ſtoutly ſhew the wonderfull force of a moſt pregnant and couragious wit: For he vſed to keepe whole companies of moſt excellent and readie horſemen, & would oftentimes come forth into the battell armed: he would with often banquets and rewards win the hearts of E the ſouldiors; and after the maner of great chiefetaines, maintaine the honour and credit of his name, both with puniſhment and reward, as occaſion required. Beſides that, no man looked into the wealth of the kingdome more diligently than he, no man did to more profit let to farme the cuſtomes, gold mines, feedings, and ſaltpits; no man could deuiſe finer meanes to raiſe mony, of all others the readieſt way to credit: inſomuch, that king *Iohn* would confeſſe himſelfe to raigne by the eſpeciall induſtrie of that man: and K. *Ferdinand* would many times ſay, That he enuied at K. *Iohn* for nothing he had, but for one hooded fellow which was better for the defence of a kingdome, than 10000 with helmets on their heads. Wherfore this biſhop hauing taken vpon him the tuition of the young king, was ſtil buſied in all the waightie cauſes of the kingdome, both ciuill & martial: he labored with great care, that the Hungarians ſhould agree togiF ther in loue & vnitie, and did what he might, prouidently to foreſee that no tumult or rebellion ſhould any where ariſe, wherby the beginning of the kingdome, yet but weake, might any way be troubled. But king *Ferdinand* hearing of the death of king *Iohn*, thought it now a fit time for him to recouer againe the kingdome of HVNGARIE, which he had ſo long deſired. Whereunto he was alſo the more prickt forward by the perſuaſion of *Alexius Torſo*, *Ferentius Gnarus*, *Petrus*

George biſhop of Veradium one of the kings tutors a notable man.

The fugitiue Hungrians perſuade king Ferdinand to inuade Hungarie.

Bachit, Balthazar Pamphilus, Francus Capolnates, Ianus Caſtellamphus, and *Caſparus Seredus*, all G noblemen or gentlemen of great account in HVNGARIE, who in the former troubles following the part of king *Ferdinand* againſt king *Iohn*, liued now in exile: theſe all with one conſent told king *Ferdinand*, That now or neuer was the time when they might be againe reſtored vnto their countrie with honour; and that the war might that Autumn be diſpatched, if he would make haſt: for as much as Winter comming faſt on would ſtay the comming of the Turks, and ſuch noblemen of HVNGARIE as tooke part with the queene, did not very well agree togither, being vnwilling to be commaunded by *George* the Apoſtata monke, who (as they ſaid) with great cunning and diſſimulation ſeducing the queene, and poſſeſſing the treaſure, enioyed all alone the power of a king: and that they, which for taking part with the right had long liued as baniſhed men, might now ſafely returne into their countrie, and be honourably preferred by H the queene; the Biſhop (which all commaunded) aſſuring them thereof, if they would returne vnto the young kings court, vnto their friends and ancient houſes. But they had as they ſaid, before giuen their faith vnto him as to a vertuous and faithfull prince, whom they had preferred before one that was an Hungarian borne: wherefore he ſhould doe both vnaduiſedly and vnkindly, if letting ſlip the occaſion preſented, he ſhould deferre to make war. For what could be more diſhonour to him ſo great a King, and alſo Emperour elect, than by ſhamefull delay to forſake them, being noble and valiant gentlemen, which had followed his part, and were then readie with ſtrong troupes of horſemen to doe him the beſt ſeruice they could?

The German Captaines in like manner perſuaded him to take the matter in hand, who as martiall men, expecting ſome one preferment, ſome another, in the armie, were deſirous of ho- I nour, pay, and prey, the chiefe comforts of their trauell and perill.

Laſchus diſſuadeth king Ferdinand from ſeeking for the kingdome of Hungarie by force, perſuading him rather to requeſts of courteſie of Solyman.

But *Laſchus* the Polonian, who in matters concerning peace and warre ſaw more than all they (as he that knew the diſpoſition of many princes, and had ſeene the manners and faſhions of diuers nations, hauing trauelled thorow a great part of the world, and oftentimes beene Embaſſadour in the courts of the greateſt Princes) was of a contrarie opinion, and told king *Ferdinand* plainly, That the kingdome of HVNGARIE was to be obtained rather by pollicie than by force, by crauing it at *Solymans* hand, to hold it of him by tribute as king *Iohn* did.

For (ſaid he) *that may by petition and faire entreatance be eaſily obtained of that heroicall prince, (who in his vaine humor oftentimes fondly ſeeketh after honour) which will neuer be got from him* K *by force of armes. I thorowly know* (ſaid he) Solymans *hautie mind, and the proud diſpoſition of his Baſſaes: he contemneth wealth, and is cloied with ſo many kingdomes: but they vpon their inſatiable couetouſneſſe and exceeding pride, deſire nothing, nor perſuade him to nothing more than warre. Wherefore it is good to beware, that with the noiſe of this ſudden warre you ſtir not vp the Turkes, which lie readie as it were expecting ſuch an occaſion, which cannot be withſtood, but by the vnited forces of the Chriſtian princes; which might by their generall conſent be done, but that their eyes blinded with fatall darkneſſe cannot ſee it, and the vnitie of the Chriſtians now deſperate, ſeemeth by God reſerued to ſome better time: ſeeing that of late the Chriſtian kings are fallen off, and cannot agree vpon the long expected peace. Is not* (ſaid he) *the French king deceiued of his hope? and as he* L *would haue it thought, greatly diſhonored with this late vnkindneſſe? which renewing his old wound, will reuiue in him an endleſſe hatred. Away with all diſſimulations, enemie vnto graue counſels, and let plaine truth, although vnpleaſant vnto princes eares, preuent flatterie: Vndoubtedly, he being a prince of no baſe courage (as it oftentimes falleth out with men thorowly grieued) will in his anger as an enemie powre forth his gold, whereof he hath good ſtore, to croſſe the Emperours deſignes, to trouble the aſſemblies of the ſtates of* GERMANIE, *to withdraw the minds of the princes, and with bountie to gaine them to himſelfe: who mightily enuying the imperiall dignitie, woont to be indifferently giuen to them that beſt deſerued the ſame, to be as it were inueſted in the houſe of* AVSTRIA; *which in this perpetuall ſucceſſion of ſo many Emperours, hath as it were got a right by long cuſtome. Wherefore they will ſecretly conſpire together, and as notable lingerers by nature, will either giue no helpe at all, or elſe too late: at ſuch time as the Turkes garriſons ſhall come flying to the ſuccour of the* M *young king. Neither is there any cauſe why any man ſhould thinke that the gouernours of the Turkes countries neere at hand, will for the approach of Winter be ſlacke in this cauſe: for they vndoubtedly making an honeſt and honourable ſhew will take vpon them the defence of the fatherleſſe child and widdow; of purpoſe, to make an entrance to the ſecret deſire they haue to gaine the kingdome to themſelues:*

A *ſelues: for if you ſhall once ioyne with them in battell, if the beſt happen, and fortune fauour our firſt attempts, truly you ſhall haue war without end, with ſuch an enemie, which will bring with him wealth that will neuer be ſpent, power not to be ouercome, and courageous ſouldiors ſworne to our deſtruction: So will it come to paſſe, and I pray God I be a falſe prophet, that in ſeeking for the kingdome of* Hvngarie *by warre, you ſhall at length be glad to fight for* Avstria *it ſelfe and your owne kingdome alſo.*

This ſpeech ſo moued king *Ferdinand*, that although he purpoſed to goe on with the warre, yet he thought it good by an honorable embaſſage to proue *Solymans* mind and purpoſe alſo; which to doe no man was thought fitter than *Laſchus* himſelfe, author of that counſell, being
B vnto him very well knowne, and familiarly acquainted with all the great Baſſaes of the court: which ſeruice *Laſchus* refuſed not, but being furniſhed with all things needfull for ſuch an embaſſage, departed from Vienna towards Constantinople. *Laſchus ſent embaſſador frō king Ferdinand to Solyman.*

Yet for all that, king *Ferdinand* perſiſting in his former purpoſe, made withall preparation for warres, truſting vpon the aid of the emperour his brother, & the comming ouer of the Hungarians, who euer thought it cauſe honeſt ynough for them to reuolt, if it ſo ſtood with their preſent profit. But before he would enter into open warres, he ſent *Nicholas* countie of Salma to the queene, to ſhew her the inſtruments of the laſt league betwixt the king her late huſband and him, & to exhort her to yeeld vp the kingdome, which by the late league was another mans
C right: and not by delaying of the matter, to hurt both her ſelfe and her ſon: for king *Ferdinand* offered to giue vnto the child the prouince of Sepvsia, as was before agreed betwixt the two kings expreſſely in the league, and to the queene a greate reuenew, and whatſoeuer elſe ſhe had in dowrie: But if ſhe would forget that lawfull league, he threatened, that neither the emperour *Charles* his brother nor he wanted force wherewith to recouer by ſtrong hand the kingdome, annexed to the houſe of Avstria both by auncient right and the new conſent of moſt of the Hungarian nobilitie. The countie Salma being receiued at Bvda, hardly obtained to be admitted to the preſence of the queene: for *George* the Biſhop, and *Vicche*, miſtruſting her womanlike courage, ſaid, ſhe was not to be ſpoken withall, by reaſon ſhe was ſo full of heauineſſe and
D ſorrow: and that they were of authoritie, as the kings tutors, and readie to giue him both audience and anſwere. Which opinion of her weakeneſſe, and want of iudgement, the queene being a woman of an heroical and royall ſpirit, tooke, as tending ſo much to her diſgrace, that ſhe ſaid ſhe would kill her ſelfe, if the embaſſadors were not permitted to come into her chamber (which was a darke roome hanged with black, as the maner is:) and ſhe ſitting vpon a low pallet negligently attired, as one that had no care of herſelfe,, wan and pale coloured, but as then ſhedding no teares, yet with voice and countenance ſo heauie, as might ſhew her teares to be rather dried vp with long mourning, than that her ſorrow was any thing abated: for the deſire of bearing rule had now ſo poſſeſſed her mind, that ſhe contemned all the dangers of imminent war, and for defence of her ſoueraignty reſolued with her ſelfe to call in the Turks. After the countie admitted to her preſence, had with due reuerence and great proteſtation deliuered his meſſage, ſhe demurely anſwered, That ſuch was the fortune of her ſex and yeares, that being bereft of the king
E her huſband, and perplexed with the dayly griefes both of bodie and mind, ſhee could neither take nor giue counſell, but purpoſed in ſo weightie a cauſe to vſe the aduice of *Sigiſmund* her father, whoſe integritie and iuſtice was ſuch, as king *Ferdinand* needed no other Iudge or arbitrator to end that controuerſie: Wherefore ſhe requeſted a conuenient time and ſpace, wherein ſhe might aske counſell of her father; to whoſe iuſt iudgement ſhe ſaid ſhe would ſtand, as ſhe thought the nobilitie of Hvngarie would alſo. Which ſmall time of delay if it ſhould be denied, and that they would needs forthwith make warre vpon her; ſhe ſaid, that the emperor and king *Ferdinand* his brother ſhould ſurely win no great honour, if they ſhould come to oppugne her a widdow conſumed with teares, and a young child yet crying in his cradle. The countie ſo
F ſent away, when he was returned to king *Ferdinand*, told him, That the queene was altogither in the power of the Biſhop, and could neither ſay nor do any thing, but what ſhe had before receiued from him: for he only (as he ſaid) commaunded all: as for the reſt of the nobilitie, they ſhared amongſt them the honours and preferments of the realme, and as men deſirous of credit and gaine, had rather be the gouernors of the young prince, than the ſeruants and waiters of a great and mightie forreine king: all which he ſaid he had both heard and ſeene. Wherefore all *King Ferdinād ſendeth an embaſſador to the queen to demād of her the kingdome of Hungarie.* *The queens anſwer to the embaſſadour.*

the hope was in war, wherein ſuch ſpeed was to be vſed, as that the queen with her ſonne vnprouided, and expecting the euent of their embaſſage from CONSTANTINOPLE, might be driuen out of BVDA before they could take vp armes, or well aduiſe themſelues what to do; and that the queene ſought delay but to make her ſelfe the ſtronger, and in the meane time to call in the Turke, and ſo to make a more dangerous war. Wherfore if euer he purpoſed to raigne in HVNGARIE, he ſhould forthwith caſt off all other cogitations, and make readie his forces with all ſpeed poſſible. G

King Ferdinand inuadeth Hungarie.

Hereupon king *Ferdinand* furniſhed with money from *Charles* the emperour, without delay raiſed a great armie, which he ſent downe the riuer Danubius to STRIGONIVM, which citie had all the raigne of king *Iohn* continued faithfull to king *Ferdinand*. The Generall of his armie was *Leonardus Velſius*, a nobleman of RHETIA: who for many cauſes thought it expedient firſt to open the way to BVDA, for almoſt in the middle of the way ſtood VICEGRADE, with a goodly caſtle vpon the top of an hill by the riuer ſide; which towne (but not the caſtle) *Velſius* after nine daies ſiege tooke, with the loſſe of about two hundred of his men, all the garriſon ſouldiors therein being either ſlaine or taken priſoners, with *Valentinus Litteratus* their captaine. H

Vicegrade taken.

Peſth and Vachia taken.

From VICEGRADE he paſſed ouer the riuer Danubius to PESTH, which he tooke, being forſaken of the enemie. With like ſucceſſe he tooke the citie of VACIA, without loſſe: and remouing thence, and croſſing againe the riuer with his fleet, came and encamped before BVDA, ſo to terrifie the citiſens, and to diſcouer as farre as he could the purpoſe of the queene. Where *Perenus*, *Stephanus Raſcaius*, and *Franciſcus Francopanes* biſhop of AGRIA, all men of great nobilitie amongſt the Hungarians, reuolted from the queene to king *Ferdinand*: the Biſhop was reputed for a man of great integritie, and vpon meere conſcience to haue gone ouer to *Ferdinand*, yet was he by letters from *George* the kings tutor challenged to haue reuolted, in hope by meanes of *Charles* the emperour to be made a Cardinall. *Velſius* lay with his armie at the hot bathes about a mile and a halfe from the citie, as if he would rather beſiege it, than aſſault it. The Germans lying there, did fetch in bootie round about the countrie, which was taken in euil part by the Hungarians on their ſide; who ſeeing their owne cattell or their friends driuen away, the villages burnt, and the poore huſbandmen bound and taken priſoners, fell togither by the eares oftentimes with the Germanes. On the other ſide they of BVDA ſending out their troupes of horſemen, skirmiſhed with the Germanes, if they did but ſtirre out of the campe, and well defended the villages from the iniurie of the enemie: for *Valentinus Thuraccus*, Generall of the queenes power, had taken into the citie a wonderfull number of light horſemen. Whileſt the armie lay thus encamped, it fortuned that *Balthaſar Pamphilus*, a noble Hungarian, ſtraying out of the campe euen to the gates of BVDA, deſired the warders at the gate to giue him leaue to talke with *Valentinus* their Generall, for that he deſired to ſee his old friend, and to conferre with him of certaine matters concerning the good of the common ſtate. Which thing being graunted by the Generall, he was immediatly receiued into the citie with his troupe of horſemen. Shortly after returning againe into the campe, he reported how he had beene entertained by his old acquaintance in the citie: where viewing the garriſon, the great artillerie and fortification of the citie, he perceiued it was not to be taken without a greater power, and in a more ſeaſonable time of the yeare. Which thing ſo moued *Velſius*, by nature ſuſpitious, and doubtfull of the fidelitie of a ſtranger, that he commaunded him in anger to void the campe, becauſe he had without his leaue gone into the citie, and vpon his owne priuat inſolencie had conference with the enemie, and by amplifying their ſtrength, to haue diſcouraged the armie, by putting them out of hope of victorie. Wherefore *Velſius* neuer attempting to aſſault the citie, returned againe to VICEGRADE to beſiege the higher caſtle (wherein the auncient crowne of king *Stephen*, wherewith the Hungarian kings were euer after him crowned, was kept) which caſtle he alſo tooke with ſomething leſſe loſſe than he had done the lower towne. Not long after he marched with his armie to ALBA REGALIS, the citie where the Hungarian kings were vſually crowned and buried, which by the meanes of *Perenus* was deliuered vnto him, and a garriſon put into it for king *Ferdinand*. Theſe things thus done, *Velſius* retired againe to STRIGONIVM, which he did the rather, becauſe the Germans and Hungarians, two rough nations, could by no meanes agree togither, inſomuch, as that *Velſius* the Generall in parting them was wounded in the thigh, and *Perenus* hurt with a ſtone; beſides that Winter was now come farre on, and the ſouldiors cryed out for pay. For which cauſes *Velſius* (being alſo ſicke of the ſtone) billitted his ſouldiours for that Winter about I K L M

Buda beſieged.

King Ferdinands army departeth from Buda.

Alba Regalis yeelded to king Ferdinand.

A about in the countrey. Yet before that he new fortified PESTH, and left therein a garriſon, becauſe it was reported, that the Turkes vpon their frontiers were making preparation to come to aid them of BVDA.

At ſuch time as king *Ferdinand* was leuying his forces for the inuaſion of HVNGARIE, the Queene by the counſell of the Biſhop, had in good time craued aid of the Turkes lieutenants in the countries bordering vpon HVNGARIE, eſpecially of *Vſtref*, gouernour of BOSNA (a very aged man, and of great honour, who had married one of the daughters of *Baiazet* the old emperour) as alſo of *Mahometes* gouernour of BELGRADE, and *Amurathes* who had the charge of the frontiers of DALMATIA: from whom ſhe receiued one anſwere, That they might in no caſe without expreſſe commaundement from *Solyman* depart from the places of their charge.

B Beſides that, *Mahometes* was by rewards ouercome by *Laſchus*, as he paſſed by BELGRADE to CONSTANTINOPLE, not to ſtirre or aid the Queene. Wherefore ſhe reiected by theſe great captaines, certified *Solyman* by her embaſſadours what danger her ſelfe, her ſonne, and the kingdome was in, crauing his ſpeedie aid. *Laſchus* was not yet come to CONSTANTINOPLE, being fallen ſick by the way, but had ſent before *Ptolomeus* his phyſition to the great Baſſaes, and eſpecially to *Lutzis* his old acquaintance, vpon whom he had beſtowed great gifts, and was in hope by him to haue obtained what he deſired: but all in vaine, for *Solyman* who thought it much for his honour to defend his owne right, and that he had before giuen vnto king *Iohn*; thought alſo, that it would redound both to his great profit and glorie, if he ſhould as it were vpon charitie take vpon him the protection of the widdow and fatherleſſe child, in their ſo great diſtreſſe

The Queene craueth aid of Solyman against Ferdinand.

C and danger. Wherefore calling vnto him the embaſſadours, the three great Baſſaes ſtanding by, he ſaid, That he had of his meere bountie before giuen the kingdome of HVNGARIE vnto king *Iohn*, to deſcend to his poſteritie, ſo long as they ſhould retaine the kind remembrance of ſo great a benefit; wherefore to declare his conſtancie, inſeparable from his bountie, he ſaid he would take ſuch a courſe in the matter, as that the Germans his enemies ſhould not long reioice of the warres they had begun. And in token of friendſhip, and that he had taken vpon him the protection of the young king, he cauſed to be deliuered vnto the embaſſadours a royall robe of purple and gold, a buckler with the boſſe moſt curiouſly wrought, a horſemans maſe with a handle of gold, and a ſcimitar with the ſcabberd richly ſet with ſtones: and afterwards writ effectually to *Vſtref* & *Mahometes*, his lieutenants, that they ſhould without delay aid the Queene,

Solyman promiſeth to protect the Queene and her ſonne againſt Ferdinand, and ſendeth preſents to the yong king.

D and not to make excuſe, becauſe it was Winter, threatening them, that if ſhe tooke any harme through their default or negligence, it ſhould coſt them their heads. The Queenes embaſſadours glad of their good diſpatch, were ſcarce departed from the Turks court, wen *Laſchus* came to CONSTANTINOPLE; and vnderſtanding by his phyſition the ſucceſſe of the Hungarian embaſſadours, proceeded for all that in his buſineſſe, and deliuered his meſſage, and vpon many reaſonable conditions requeſted the kingdome for king *Ferdinand*. But when he in ſpeaking had oftentimes made mention of *Charles* the emperour, as if he would with all the power of GERMANIE aid his brother; *Solyman* was ſo mooued therewith, that he was preſently taken away and committed to priſon: the great Baſſaes, but eſpecially *Ruſtan*, *Solymans* ſonne in law, a proud

Laſchus king Ferdinand his embaſſadour impriſoned by Solyman.

E and furious young man, chiding him and ſhaking him vp as worthie of death, for offending with his liberall ſpeech the maieſtie of ſo courteous a prince, and as it were mocking the king of kings, requiring friendſhip, when in the meane time his maſter moſt impudently made wars in HVNGARIE.

Vſtref and *Mahometes*, the Baſſaes aforeſaid, hauing receiued ſuch ſtraight commaundement from *Solyman*, aſſembled their diſperſed ſouldiors, and by ſhipping brought them downe the riuers Sauus & Dranus into Danubius, (for it is a hard matter to performe any great thing by warres in HVNGARIE, without the help of a great fleet, for conueying of the great ordinance, victuall, and other ſuch neceſſaries of the armie, from one ſide of the great riuers to the other, as occaſion requireth) but as then being the middeſt of Winter, and the North wind blowing hard, Danubius was ſo frozen on both ſides, that the middle of the riuer was ſcarce open: ſo

F that the Turks not able to paſſe for the extremitie of the weather, not daring to returne for the ſtraight command of *Solyman*, were enforced in their tents there to abide the hardneſſe of Winter, to ſhew their readineſſe. It is almoſt incredible to be ſpoken, with what patience and reſolution the ſouldiors endured all the extremities of the time, in ſo bare a place, their horſes which of all other things they hold moſt deare, ſtaruing for cold and want of meat.

1541 The Spring at length comming on, right welcome both to the Turks and the queene; *Mahometes* with his Turkes and wild Illyrians, and *Vstref* with his ſouldiors of BOSNA, entred into HVNGARIE, with whom *Valentinus* Generall of the queens forces ioined alſo, with a ſtrong power of Hungarians brought from BVDA. And the queene to further the matter, ſent preſents to the Turks Generals, victualed the camp, and furuiſhed them with great ordinance, for the beſieging of ſuch cities as were holden by king *Ferdinand* her enemie. They paſſing ouer Danubius tooke the citie of VACIA, being but badly defended for king *Ferdinand*, and putting many to the ſword (after the manner of their barbarous crueltie) burnt the citie. From thence they remoued to PESTH, which was ſo valiantly defended by *Barcocius* and *Fotiſcus*, the one a Hungarian captaine, the other a German, that the Turks deſpairing of the winning of the citie, and not well relieued with victuall by the queene, then fearing future want, paſſed againe ouer Danubius, and faithfully reſtoring the great ordinance without any more doing, returned againe into their owne countries: but in their retiring, the Hungarians by the leading of *Ferentius Gnarus* ſlew many of them, amongſt whom was one *Achomates*, one of their beſt and valianteſt captaines.

The queene ioyneth her forces with the Turks, and burneth Vacia.

Peſth in vaine beſieged by the Turkes.

King *Ferdinand* aduertiſed of the Turks departure, returned again to his old hope of recouering the kingdome: perſuading the emperor his brother, not to giue ouer the war ſo fortunatly begun, eſpecially now that the Turks hauing forſaken the queen, were departed & gone. Wherfore the new forces lately before raiſed in AVSTRIA, BOHEMIA, SILESIA, and MORAVIA, for the ſupplie of *Velſius* his armie, were preſently ſent into HVNGARIE vnder the leading of the Lo. *William Rogendorff* ſteward of the kings houſe, who was then gone as farre as POSSONIVM to haue relieued them of PESTH, vnto whom as a more auncient and honourable Generall *Velſius* gaue place. He, furniſhed with theſe new ſupplies, three monethes victuals, and great artillerie from VIENNA, ioining with the old armie, marched directly to BVDA, and laid ſiege vnto it. Ouer againſt the ſtately caſtle of BVDA wherein the queene lay, was a great hill called S. *Gerrards* mount, ſo high, that the middle therof was equall with the higheſt place of the caſtle, and from the top thereof they might looke into the ſtreets of the citie, betwixt which hill and the caſtle was a great valley and a deepe ditch: vpon this hill, *Rogendorff* to beat the caſtle and to terrifie the queene, planted his batterie, and ſo ſhooke a new built tower thereof, that it was thought it would haue ſodenly fallen; which if it had, yet was it ſuppoſed a dangerous matter to aſſault it, becauſe it was walled about with a treble wall. But the ſumptuous turrets and princely galleries of the kings pallace in the caſtle, which euerie man ſaw *Rogendorff* might haue beaten downe with his great ordinance, he ſpared: but whether of himſelfe, or elſe commaunded by the king (as loath to deſtroy ſo goodly buildings, as could not without great charges be in long time againe repaired) was vncertain. Wherfore by diuers heraulds ſent vnto the queen, he wiſhed her to breake in ſunder thoſe giues and fetters wherin the biſhop vnder the colour of protection had faſt bound her ſonne and her, and to accept of king *Ferdinands* offer, who was readie to beſtow vpon her a goodly ſeignorie, wherin ſhe might moſt honourably liue at quiet, and bring vp her ſonne in ſafetie: Which thing, if ſhe as a ſimple woman, and ignorant of her owne danger, ſhould refuſe and obſtinatly contemne the perill wherein ſhe ſtood, hee would forthwith in moſt terrible manner beat downe the pallace about her eares. Whereunto the biſhop in the queenes behalfe aunſwered, That ſhee was not ſuch a foole to exchange the kingdome of HVNGARIE for the principalitie of SERVSIA: and that ſhe thought *Rogendorff* a verie doting and mad old man, who being once before well beaten in thoſe ditches, came now again like a foole to receiue his vtter deſtruction in full guerdon of his raſh follie: wherfore he ſhould ceaſe to terrifie valiant men, fighting with diſcretion for their naturall king and countrie againſt his drunken companie, for that they were nothing troubled with the noiſe of his great ſhot: But yet he ſaid, that he would aboue all the reſt by way of priuat courteſie, gently requeſt *Rogendorff* to diſcharge his pieces with a little leſſe noiſe, becauſe he had a ſow at home great with pigs, which terrified with the thundring of his guns, would farrow he doubted before her time, to the griefe of his gueſts. For the biſhop was of a ſharpe and taunting ſpirit, and ſuch a contemner of the Germans, that when two of them were taken in the kings orchards burning certaine houſes, he in diriſion cauſed two hogs to bee hanged vpon the ſame gallowes with them. Not long after, *Rogendorff* remoued his campe from the mount of S. *Gerrard* to a more conuenient place for the battering of the citie, called the Iewes graues, neere vnto the gate called the Iewes gate.

King Ferdinand ſendeth the Lo. William Rogendorff with an armie into Hungarie.

Buda beſieged.

Rogendorff threatneth the queene.

The biſhop ſcornfully anſwereth Rogendorff.

Which

A Which thing the biſhop ſeeing, after his quipping manner requeſted of *Rogendorff* to pardon him, in that he had of late wrongfully called him a doting old man; for that in remouing his camp into a more commodious place, he ſeemed to be a proper wiſe man and of good diſcretion, now that he had pitched his tents in a moſt fit place amongſt the dead, both for himſelfe being an old man and almoſt worne with vaine labour, and for his armie there condemned to die with him. *Rogendorff* thus encamped, begun in two places to batter the wals: *Perenus* and the Hungarians with the Bohemians neere vnto the gate called SABATINA in one place, and he himſelfe with the Germans betwixt the Iewes gate and the caſtle in another: which was done with ſuch violence, that a great part of the wall was beaten downe, & another part thereof ouer-
B charged with earth, which the defendants had caſt vp on the inner ſide for the ſtrengthning thereof, was at the ſame time born quite out and ſo fell down, to the wonderfull diſmaying of all that were in the citie. Which faire opportunitie to haue taken the citie *Rogendorff* let ſlip, either not well aware thereof by reaſon of the great ſmoke of the artillerie on both ſides, and the duſt ariſing with the fall of the wall which couered all; or elſe according to his naturall diſpoſition, doing all things leaſurely and ſuſpitiouſly; ſo that a little delay bereft him of the preſent apprehenſion of ſo ſudden a reſolution: and the Germans, vſed more to ſtanding battels than to aſſault, were not to be ſo eaſily brought on to aſſault the breach vpon the ſudden, as were the Spaniards, Italians, or French. The wall was opened in that place almoſt two hundred paces in length, yet ſtanding almoſt the height of a man, which might eaſily haue bin ſcaled with ſhort ladders; but
C night was now comming faſt on, wherein the Germans would not willingly attempt any dangerous matter: ſo that the aſſault was deferred vntill the next morning. Whereas they of BVDA in the meane time taking the aduantage of the enemies delay, with incredible diligence and labour in that night raiſed vp a new rampier in ſteed of the wall that was fallen, euerie man without exception putting his hand to the worke. In the morning the Germans comming to the breach, gaue ſuch a fierce aſſault vnto the new made rampier, that *Otho Fotiſcus* deſperatly entered into a ſhattered houſe which ioyned vnto the wall; and certaine other companies, one ſouldiour helping vp another, had almoſt recouered the top of the rampier, and were there readie to haue ſet vp their enſignes. When they of BVDA with wonderfull conſtancie and reſolution withſtood the aſſailants, *George* the biſhop encouraging them and fighting amongſt them; who
D hauing laid aſide his hood, was now to be ſeene with his helmet on his head, running too and fro as need required all alongſt the rampier. At length the Germans ſeeing themſelues to ſtriue in vaine againſt reſolute men, were enforced to retire. In this aſſault *Rogendorff* loſt aboue 800. men. *Perenus* was alſo in like manner, but with leſſe loſſe, repulſed at the other breach he had made at the gate SABATINA. After that *Rogendorff* attempted by vndermining to haue taken the citie, but was by countermines diſappointed of his purpoſe. Yet for all this, they in the citie began to feele the want of many things, ſo that it ſeemed they were not able to endure any longer ſiege; the common people pinched with hunger crying openly out in mutinous ſort, that it was time to yeeld and make an end of thoſe common miſeries: but ſuch was the authoritie of the biſhop with his prouident foreſight of all vrgent euents, that once ſhewing himſelfe in the
E market place as if he would haue preached, he could turne the peeuiſh minded people which way he pleaſed.

A great breach in the wals of Buda.

The Germans aſſaulting the breach, are with loſſe repulſed.

After all this, it miſſed but a little, but that this citie which could not by enemies force be woon, had by ſhamefull treaſon beene loſt: there was at that time in BVDA one *Bornemiſſa* a lawyer, who had in former time beene maior of the citie: this *Bornemiſſa* exceedingly ha-
ted the biſhop for taking part with a banckerout Iew againſt him, and being full of malice, and deſirous of reuenge, promiſed to *Renalius* (martiall in the enemies campe) to deliuer vnto him a blind poſterne in S. *Maries* churchyard, whereby he might enter the citie: which gate ſerued the citiſens in time of peace to go thorow to the riuer. *Rogendorff* the Generall made acquainted with the matter, ſo liked thereof, that he in himſelfe thought it not good, in a matter of
F ſo great importance, to vſe at all the ſeruice of the Hungarians: Quite contrarie to that *Bornemiſſa* had requeſted of *Renalius*, who deſirous to haue the matter brought to paſſe without the ſlaughter of ſo many guiltleſſe people as was by him to be betraied, would haue had it altogither performed by the Hungarians, who he was in good hope would ſhew mercie vnto their countrey men and kinſmen, and vſe their victorie with more moderation than the Germans, who prouoked with many deſpights, and comming in by night, were like enough to make great

Bornemiſſa practiſeth to betray the citie of Buda.

effuſion

effuſion of bloud. But *Rogendorff* after the manner of his nation, to be counted polliticke, vſing to keepe promiſe with no man, and hoping by excluding the Hungarians to haue all the glorie of the conceiued victorie wholly to himſelfe; made as if he would haue vſed only the Hungarians, and gloſed with *Renalius*, whoſe ſon for the more aſſurance he tooke as pledge: For againſt the appointed houre, which was about midnight, hauing before giuen ſtraight charge that no man ſhould ſtir in the camp, he ſent foure ſelect companies of Germans with great ſilence vnto the poſterne; at which time his ſonne *Condi* ſtood with a ſtrong troupe of horſemen, readie to haue entred, at ſuch time as the Germans (receiued into the citie) ſhould breake open the great gate, as was before agreed. Neither did *Bornemiſſa* faile to performe what he had as a traitor promiſed: but opening the poſterne we ſpake of, had with great ſilence receiued in moſt part of thoſe German companies. But when he ſtill asked ſoftly of them as they came in for *Renalius*, and heard them anſwere nothing but in the German language; although hee was otherwiſe a man of a bold ſpirit, yet then ſurpriſed with a ſoden feare (as it oftentimes chanceth in ſuch actions to men deceiued of their expectation) he ſtood as a man amaſed that knew not what to do, and forgot to conduct the Germans: who altogether vnacquainted with the citie, knew not which way firſt to go; & ſtealing on ſoftly in the darke, went on with no great courage, for feare of treaſon, ſtill asking of them that followed, for him that ſhould direct them. The Germans could not go ſo cloſely, but that they were by the clattering of their armour & the light of their matches, deſcried by the watch; who asking for the word, & they not giuing it, preſently raiſed an alarum: but now all too late, the citie being as good as halfe taken, had the Germans wel conducted reſolutely gone on with the matter ſo well begun; but they ignorant of the way, and now deſcried and chaſed with their own feare, ran back againe to the poſterne, in ſuch haſt, that one of them miſerably wrong another, in ſtriuing who ſhould get out firſt; and their paſſage out much letted by the pikes and weapons which they which fled firſt had caſt croſſe the way to run the lighter into the campe. The firſt that ſet vpon the Germans was *Bacianus*, who had that night the charge of the watch; and after him *Vicche*, who kept the court of guard in the market place, and hearing the alarum, came thither with a ſtrong companie both of horſemen and footmen. Many of the moſt valianteſt Germans, who comming in firſt, were in flight become laſt, were ſlaine or taken, and amongſt them many of *Bornemiſſa* his familiars and friends (as for himſelfe, he was got out amongſt the formoſt) from whom the biſhop by exquiſite torture wrong out the whole plot of the treaſon, and afterwards cauſed them to be ſeuerally executed to the terrour of others. *Renalius* in the meane time complaining in the campe, That he was deceiued by the Generall: and *Bornemiſſa* wofully lamenting, That hauing worthily got the name of an infamous traitour, he had thereby loſt all his ſubſtance, and vndone his friends and kindred. The Generall *Rogendorff* (condemned euen of the common ſouldiors, for his fooliſh arrogancie and pride) was hardly ſpoken of thorow all the campe, as he that by too much inſolencie had ouerthrowne the faireſt occaſion of a moſt goodly victorie: wherfore from that time he attempted no great matter, but ſet himſelfe downe by long ſiege to tame his enemies, and ſo to win the citie.

Bornemiſſa receiueth in the Germans by a poſterne, ſuppoſing thē to haue bin Hungarians

The Germans not conducted, are diſcouered and diſcomfited

Solyman vnderſtanding of the queens diſtreſſe in HVNGARIE, and with what deſire *Ferdinand* (ſupported by the emperour his brother) thirſted after that kingdome; conſulted with his Baſſaes of the purpoſes & power of his enemies, both there and elſwhere: and politikely reſolued at one time, with his diuided forces, to withſtand their attempts in diuers places, and thoſe farre diſtant one from another, wherby the greatneſſe of his power is well to be perceiued. Firſt he ſent *Solyman Baſſa* an eunuch to BABYLON, to defend the countrie of MESOPOTAMIA, and the frontires of his empire alongſt the riuer Tygris, againſt *Tamas* the Perſian king. *Mahometes* another of his great Baſſaes, he ſent into HVNGARIE to relieue the beſieged queene: And after him *Peſtref Baſſa*, which was the fourth of his chiefe Baſſaes, with another armie to ſtay at BELGRADE, in readineſſe to aid the other Baſſa ſent before him as occaſion ſhould require, if he ſhould find his enemies too ſtrong. Vnto *Barbaruſſa* he committed his nauie, for the defence of GRÆCIA and EPYRVS againſt *Auria*, who but a little before aided by the gallies of SICILIA and NAPLES, had driuen the Turkes and Moores (which tooke part with the Turks) out of CLVPEA, NEAPOLIS, ADRVMENTVM, RVSPINA, TAPSVS, and all alongſt that coaſt of AFFRICKE which the Moores call MAHOMEDIA, except the citie of LEPTIS, and cauſed thoſe cities to ſubmit themſelues to the gouernment of *Muleaſſes* king of TVNES.

Solyman at one time maintaineth wars in diuers places of the world ſo re diſtant.

Theſe

A These cities are at this day called CALIBIA, SVSA, MAHOMETA, MONASTERIM, SPAXIA and APRICA. And becauſe *Solyman* vnderſtood, that *Maylat* the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA tooke part with king *Ferdinand*, he ſent againſt him *Achomates* gouernour of NICOPOLIS, and commaunded *Peter* of MOLDAVIA, prince of VALACAIA, to aid him: who afterwards accordingly came vnto him with thirtie thouſand horſemen. He himſelfe alſo doubting the purpoſes of the Chriſtian princes, and eſpecially of *Charles* the emperour, more than he had need, came to HADRIANOPLE, and in the countries thereabouts raiſed a third armie, to aid the two Baſſaes ſent before into HVNGARIE; keeping with him his ſon in law *Ruſtan*, whom he had made one of the foure great Baſſaes of his counſell, hauing thruſt out *Luſtibeius*, whom the Turkes call *Lutzis*, his brother in law, and exiled him into MACEDONIA for euill entreating and ſtri-
B king his wife, which was *Solymans* ſiſter, as is before ſaid, but was at this time done.

Mahometes the Baſſa deſirous to doe his great Maſter the beſt ſeruice he could, entred into HVNGARIE with his armie about the middle of Iune in the yeare 1541, taking with him in his way the other *Mahometes* gouernour of BELGRADE, who gaue the ſhamefull ouerthrow vnto the Chriſtians at EZEK; ioyning alſo with him the power of BOSNA, now commaunded by *Vlamas* the Perſian, for that *Vſtref* the old Baſſa was lately dead. The captaines of the Chriſtian armie hearing of the comming of the Turks, entred into counſell, Whether they ſhould continue the ſiege, or els goe and meet them by the way and giue them battell. But the period of the Hungarian kingdome drawing faſt on, and the ineuitable deſtinie thereof ſo requiring, the opini-
C on of *Rogenderff* preuailed againſt the reſt for the continuing of the ſiege, he ſeeming more willing to die than to croſſe ouer the riuer to PESTH, or to retire to VICEGRADE or STRIGONIVM, as diuers would haue perſuaded him: wherefore he remoued from the place where he lay before, and encamped his armie on the further ſide of the citie at the foot of S. *Gerards* mount, where the hill lying betweene BVDA and the campe, and departing from the riuer leaueth a faire plaine toward the Eaſt; of purpoſe, that the Turks which he knew would not goe far from the riuer and their fleet, ſhould be enforced dangerouſly to paſſe by the mouth of his great ordinance, which he had aptly placed vpon the front of his trenches: for ſuch was the nature of the place, that the campe lay defended on the right hand with the ſteepe hill, on the left hand with the riuer, and behind toward the citie with a ſtrong bulwarke. Vpon the right hand, vpon a little
D riſing ground he placed the leſſer campe, wherein were the Hungarians which fauoured king *Ferdinand*, and then followed his enſignes. He made alſo a bridge from his campe into a little iſland which lay in the riuer, and with a fort well planted with ordinance commaunded both the riuer and the plaine, ſo to beat the enemies fleet comming vp the riuer, and themſelues alſo as they ſhould march alongſt the plaine. He was about alſo to haue made a bridge of lighters and boats quite ouer the riuer, from his campe to PESTH, and in this order to expect the comming of new ſupplies from king *Ferdinand*, and to repell the enemie who was comming, and with long ſiege to wearie them in BVDA: for there was ſuch ſtore both of victuall and all other warlike prouiſion in PESTH, as would well haue ſufficed his armie vntill Winter had beene ſpent. As ſoone as the Turks were come nigh the citie, *Valentinus* as an embaſſadour from the queene met them with two thouſand horſe, and fully inſtructed both the *Mahomets* what the
E Chriſtians did, what ſtrength they were of, and how they might moſt conueniently encampe their armie. Wherefore the Baſſa marching on boldly forward, came within halfe a mile of the Chriſtian campe, where he quickly entrenched himſelfe round with a ſtrong trench, filling a great part of the plaine with his tents. But the other *Mahometes*, gouernour of BELGRADE, a moſt polliticke captaine, tooke the higher ground towards the riſing of the hill, neerer vnto the tents of the Hungarians than of the Germanes. Vnto theſe two armies thus encamped, belonged alſo two fleets, the Chriſtian fleet conſiſted of foure and twentie galleots, about foureſcore ſmall pinnaces, and little leſſe than a hundred ſhips of burden and other great boats: whereas the Turks fleet was not thought to be paſt halfe ſo great. Neere vnto the little iſland, ioyned as we haue before ſaid by a bridge to the Chriſtian campe, beneath in the riuer had the Turkes taken
F another iſland called CEPELLIA, oueragainſt their owne campe; where caſting vp a great bulwarke in the vppermoſt end thereof, and planting it with great ordinance, they from thence ſhot at the fort which the Chriſtians held in the little iſland, and at their veſſels paſſing too and fro in the riuer; as the Chriſtians did at them likewiſe. This Iſland of CEPELLIA lieth ſomewhat more than fortie miles in length in the riuer Danubius, ful of countrey villages, ſo commodiouſly,

Mahometes Baſſa commeth with the Turks armie to relieue Buda.

The order of king Ferdinands armie.

The Baſſa entrencheth his armie within halfe a mile of the kings armie

ſly,that if *Rogendorff* had at the firſt taken it and fortified it,before the comming of the Turkes, G
as the Hungarians perſuaded him to haue done,the Turks could by no means haue encamped
in the plaine,but muſt needs haue forſaken their fleet,fetching a great compaſſe about more to-
ward the Weſt,further off from the riuer : which would haue turned to the Turkes great diſad-
uantage. *But no man is ſo wiſe as to foreſee all things,when as the verie euill ſucceſſe, bee the plot ne-
uer ſo well laied, ſhall of it ſelfe, beſide the loſſe, leaue vnto the vnfortunate man the note of the want
of prouident foreſight and diſcretion.* But *Rogendorff* was not willing to deuide his forces, vntill he
had ſome new ſupplie from king *Ferdinand*. Whileſt the armies lay thus neere one to the other,
there were ſome light skirmiſhes made euery day,either by the horſemen or the footmen, and
Skirmiſhes betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turkes. ſometime one braue man challenging forth another hand to hand,whom he thought by his ar-
mour or ſome other ſigne of his worth, to be like to himſelfe : which was ſo pleaſant a ſight to H
behold,that both the armies vpon a militarie courteſie,as if it had been ſo agreed, would many
times for certaine houres forbeare to ſhoot any ſhot,of purpoſe to ſee thoſe gallants,with true
proweſſe to prooue their valour and manhood one vpon another with their ſpeares and ſwords
only. In which light skirmiſhes the Germane horſemen were oftentimes put to the worſt, who
mounted vpon great heauie horſes,fitter for a ſet battell,could neither ſo readily charge the ene-
mie,nor purſue him in his flight; as could the Turks with their nimble and readie light horſes,
ſo well acquainted with that maner of flying fight,that they would with wheeling about eaſily
fruſtrate the firſt charge of the heauie horſemen, and by and by come vpon them againe with a
freſh charge,& ſo often retire and come on againe,vntil they had either wearied or ouerthrown
them. But the Hungarians acquainted with that manner of fight as well as they,and alſo better I
armed,did eaſily incounter the Turkes, and foile them,although they were in number moe.

Rayſchachius for ſorrow of his ſonne ſlaine by the Turks,ſuddenly dieth. There was amongſt the Germane captaines a noble man called *Eckius Rayſchachius*, whoſe
ſon (a valiant yong gentleman) being got out of the armie without his fathers knowledge,bare
himſelfe ſo gallantly in fight againſt the enemie in the ſight of his father & of the armie, that he
was highly commended of all men,and eſpecially of his father,who knew him not at all: yet be-
fore he could cleare himſelfe, he was compaſſed in of the enemie, and valiantly fighting ſlaine.
Rayſchachius exceedingly moued with the death of ſo braue a man, ignorant how neere it tou-
ched himſelfe,turning about to the other captaines, ſaid, This worthie gentleman,whatſoeuer
he be,is worthie of eternall commendation,and to be moſt honourably buried by the whole ar-
mie. As the reſt of the captaines were with like compaſſion approuing his ſpeech, the dead bo- K
die of the vnfortunate ſonne reſcued,was preſented to the moſt miſerable father; which cauſed
all them that were there preſent to ſhed teares: but ſuch a ſoden and inward griefe ſurpriſed the
aged father, and ſtrucke ſo to his heart, that after he had ſtood a while ſpeechleſſe,with his eyes
ſet in his head,he ſuddenly fell downe dead. From that time the Generall commanded, That no
man ſhould vpon paine of death go out of the armie to skirmiſh with the enemie without leaue,
wherein he was ſo ſeuere,that he hanged vp one or two which preſumed to tranſgreſſe his com-
mandement : which thing much diſcouraged his owne men,and ſo incouraged the enemie,that
they would ſometime braue the Chriſtians vpon the top of their owne trenches.

Many daies had now paſſed ſince the comming of the Baſſa,the Turkes and they of BVDA
dayly increaſing both in ſtrength and courage : when on the other ſide, faint courage, weake L
ſtrength,troubled counſel,vncertain reſolution,the ominous ſigns of an vndoubted ouerthrow,
were eaſie to be ſeene; & hope it ſelfe,the ſtay of all human actions,eſpecially of martial affairs,
almoſt loſt : the onely things that held their fainting hearts, was the often letters of king *Ferdi-
nand*, and the firme opinion they had conceiued, That *Charles* the emperour would not in ſo
great a danger faile to aid his brother, both with men and mony : and laſt of all, the firme reſo-
lution of a Generall,which far paſſed all reaſon, the ſooner to draw him to his end. The armies
lying in this order,the Turkes from the higher ground, and out of CEPPELLIA, perceiuing the
Germanes in the little Iſland as careleſſe men to keepe but negligent watch, agreed amongſt
themſelues at one inſtant out of both their campes, to aſſaile diuers of their forts : and ſo in the
The Turks ſuddenly aſſaile the Chriſtians in the Iſland. breake of the day landed with their fleet ſo cloſely and ſuddenly to the Iſland, that they had M
ſlaine almoſt ſix hundred of the Germanes, before they were thorowly awake or could well
arme themſelues : wherewith the reſt were put in ſuch a feare, that they fled to the camp in ſuch
haſt, that many of them fell beſide the bridge and were drowned in the riuer. All the campe was
wonderfully troubled with the ſuddenneſſe of the matter, the Turks with their hideous cries rai-

ſing

A sing the alarum in diuers places at once: yet for all that, certaine German companies in one of the forts neereſt vnto the riuer, and the ſouldiors in the fleet, well declared their preſent reſolution and valiant courage, in recouering againe of the iſland. For *Herbeſtulfus* the campe-maſter, perſuading them not to ſuffer the Chriſtian enſignes and great ordinance to be ſo ſhamefully carried away of the Turkes; and *Marius* the Admirall at the ſame time landing diuers companies in the iſland with his pinnaces and great boats: they ſo couragiouſly charged the Turkes, then buſied in the ſpoiling of the dead bodies and drawing away of the great ordinance, that they draue them againe to their boats; leauing vnto them as victors, both the iſland and the ordinance, hauing before their departure, receiued no leſſe loſſe themſelues than had the Ger-
B mans before.

It was reported, that the Turkes fleet might that day haue beene quite ouerthrowne, if the Chriſtians vſing the victorie, and holpen with the courſe of that ſwift riuer, had couragiouſly purſued them and landed with them. But many things after a matter is done are eaſily ſeene, which in the verie heat and hurle of the danger cannot well be foreſeene; for as much as ſudden accidents attended with great perill, do oftentimes dazle the minds of right wiſe & valiant captaines: yet foure of the Turkes pinnaces were ſuncke, and three taken, and many of the Turkes ſlaine or drowned in the riuer. Shortly after, the Turkes more and more encouraged with the multitude of themſelues, and the feareſulneſſe they perceiued in their enemies, did at ſundrie times ſo inſolently trouble and aſſaile the campe of the Chriſtians on euerie ſide, that they left
C them almoſt no time of reſt, one company ſtill ſucceeding another; ſo that they were almoſt in deſpaire, to be able long to defend their camp, the enemie ſtill growing both in ſtrength and courage. For the Baſſa that lay at Belgrade, ſtill taking vnto him the ſicke and wounded ſouldiors, ſent continually freſh men in their ſteed: and *Valentinus* taking vnto him a companie of the Turks Ianizaries harquebuſiers, had driuen *Perenus* with the Hungarian horſmen out of the vpper campe. So that they in the nether camp were now hardly beſet with their enemies on euerie ſide: yet were they well holpen by the great artillerie from Pesth, which much troubled *Valentinus* and his horſemen in aſſailing the campe on that ſide.

Some report that *Valentinus*, not greatly angrie with the Hungarian baniſhed men, but with the Germans, did by the way of priuat courteſie and friendſhip, by a faithfull ſouldior wiſh *Pere-*
D *nus* ſpeedily to prouide for the ſafetie of himſelfe and the Hungarians with him; for that there was a great beaſt comming, which would at one morſell deuoure them all. For *Solyman* aduertiſed of the doings of the emperour and king *Ferdinand*, thinking that they would haue come downe to Buda with a puiſſant armie, was reſolued to be preſent himſelfe at ſo notable a battell, and was therefore comming thither with his armie in all haſt. Wherefore *Perenus* thus forewarned, ſaid plainly to *Rogendorff* and the other captaines, That except they would preſently riſe with the armie and depart, he would now whiles he had yet time, make ſhift for himſelfe and his countrey men. Their opinions diuerſly deliuered, at laſt they all agreed that it was beſt the next night to paſſe ouer the riuer to Pesth: only the Generall vpon a fatall obſtinacie ſaid He would not without king *Ferdinands* commandement depart from Buda: and therfore ſent
E countie *Salma* with a ſwift pinnace vp the riuer to Vienna to know his pleaſure therein. In the meane time vrged with feare, *Perenus* fretting at their long ſtay, it was reſolued vpon, that they ſhould the next night after the Moone was done, paſſe ouer the riuer in foure conuoies to Pesth: In the firſt, were to paſſe ouer the Hungarians, with the great ordinance: in the ſecond, the Germane and Bohemian horſemen: and in the other two, the footmen and the baggage of the armie. For it was not ſo eaſie a matter to make a bridge ouer Danubius, as they had at firſt ſuppoſed: for after they had begun it, and almoſt planked it, there riſe ſuch a wind and tempeſt, and the violent riuer became ſo rough, that the timber wherewith the bridge was faſtened togither was broken, the ioints vnloſed, and many of the boats wherof the bridge was framed, their cables being broken, were carried away with the force of the ſtream. The firſt and ſecond
F conuoy fortune ſo well fauoured, that they paſſed well ouer: for although they of Buda and the Turks, ſeeing in the day time from their high places the fleet drawing togither into one place, might haue ſome ſuſpition of the matter, ſome gheſſing one thing and ſome another; yet could they foreſee nothing of the ſudden departure of the enemie: But that multitude of ſhips and boats now paſſing too and fro, could not long deceiue the attentiue and vigilant enemies; and ſo much the leſſe, for that two fugitiue Hungarians euen then diſcouered vnto the biſhop,

Valentinus generall for the queen in Buda certifieth Perenus of the comming of Solyman.

The Chriſtian armie departeth by night from Buda.

the

the flight of the Germans; who presently certified the Bassa and the other *Mahometes* thereof, G
which without farther delay came almost with all their power to assault the Christians in their
camp: the great ordinance was brought forth, and after the Ianizaries & other footmen, follow-
ed the horsemen, dismounted from their horses to doe the better seruice, who all with a horrible
The Turkes assaile the Christians in their camp at their departure. cry assailed the trenches. Then began the Germans to quaile, their flight being now discouered;
yet did they with the Bohemians for a while notably resist the enemie. All the campe was filled
with tumult and confusion, and especially at the riuer side, euerie man in that great feare striuing
to get aboord, without regard of order or shame: for the dead time of the night then couered
with darke and thicke clouds, made all things more terrible, euen vnto them which were of best
courage: the authoritie of *Rogendorff* the Generall (in the darknesse of the night, and so great cla-
mour both of his owne people and of the enemie, and the thundering of the ordinance) was as H
nothing: He (besides that he was then sick in mind) lay in his bed wounded, by a wonderfull and
fatall chance: for as he was writing letters to the king, a faulcon shot out of the enemies campe
falling in his tent, and striking in sunder a chest which stood there, wounded him grieuously in
the left shoulder with a splinter of the same. The other captaines of the footmen, enuying that
the horsemen were so well escaped, stood as men more carefull of themselues than of the com-
mon danger, faintly resisting the enemie. The vppermost tents wherein *Perenus* lay, were first
taken by *Mahometes* of Belgrade, and *Valentinus*; and the German footmen chased all ouer
S. *Gerrards* mount. They of Buda also sallied out, and entred the campe on that side which
was next vnto the citie, & with wild fire burnt the tents a little before forsaken by the Germans.
A mischieuous practise of the bishop. And the bishop at the same time caused a great stack of straw standing by the kings stables neere I
vnto the riuers side, to be set on fire; which gaue such a light, that a man might haue seene all
ouer Danubius vnto the wals of Pesth, as if it had been light day: whereby the great confusi-
on of the Christian armie by land, as well as the shamefull flight by water, was of the Turkes
plainly discouered. Then was the great artillerie from euerie place discharged vpon the flying
fleet, as well from Buda as the Turks campe. And to encrease the feare, *Cason* the Turkes Ad-
mirall rowing with his light boats against the streame, set vpon the ships crossing the riuer to
Pesth, where he tooke certaine boats loaded with souldiors, and with his great ordinance sunck
Great slaughter of the Christians diuers others: so that the riuer was filled with dead bodies, and the miserable companie of soul-
diors and mariners labouring to saue their liues by swimming: for at such time as the Ianizaries
hauing slaine the first companies, were broken into the lower campe; and the rest of the Ger- K
mans flying ouer the bridge into the little island, were there slaine without mercie, by the
Turkes pursuing them, many of them leapt into the riuer, and there perished. Three hundred
saile of one sort of ships and other, were so confused and mingled togither, that Danubius seemed
that night to haue beene couered ouer, as if it had beene with a great bridge. But the Christian
fleet seeing all lost, cleered themselues so soone as they could of the Turks; and so beating them
backe with their great ordinance out of the poupes of their ships, got vp the riuer to Comora.
The rest of the land forces endured the same fortune in the camp, of whom the Bohemians died
most honourably, slaine by the enemie in fight. Many falling into the hands of them of Buda
were saued, or slaine, as was their fortune to fall into the power of a mercifull or mercilesse man.
But the funne rising, plainly discouered the slaughter of the Christians and the victorie of the L
Turkes, not so well before knowne. There was about 3000 men of one sort and other, who
in warlike manner had taken a little hill by Saint *Gerrards* church, and there stood vpon their
guard, vntill such time as more than two thousand of them were slaine; the rest casting away
their weapons yeelded in hope of life, and were reserued for a spectacle more grieuous than
death it selfe.

At the same time *Cason* with his victorious fleet comming to the shoare of Pesth, brought
such a feare vpon them that were escaped thither, and might easily haue defended the wals (only
with the crie of his souldiors and the thundring of the artillerie) that the horsemen for haste to get
out, were like to ouerrun one another. The Germans had at that time so much forgot their
wonted valour, and so trembled at the name of the Turks, that as soone as they saw their white M
caps in their ships, they ran away as men dismaied, vnarmed, leauing behind them their plate,
their carriages, and whatsoeuer good thing they had else. Yet some of the Hungarian horsmen,
more desirous of the spoile than afraid of death, staied behind rifling the merchants shops: for
Pesth was become a notable rich mart towne for all kind of merchandise, merchants resorting
thither

A thither from all other places of the troubled countrey, as to a ſtrong and commodious citie, and of more ſafetie than the reſt. But *Caſon* now entering without reſiſtance, ſlew ſome of thoſe greedie Hungarians, and ran thorow the towne with ſuch barbarous crueltie and thirſt of the Chriſtian bloud, that he ſpared neither man, woman, nor child, except ſome few ſuch as either for their beautie or ſtrength of bodie were reſerued for the Turks beaſtly luſt, or ſlauiſh labour: ſo that in this warre it is reported, more than twentie thouſand Chriſtians were one way and other by diuers chances ſlaine. There was taken at PESTH in the campe, and in the iſland, ſix and thirtie great pieces for batterie, of wonderfull beautie; and of leſſer field pieces a hundred and fiftie. As for ſhot, pouder, armour, weapons, and victuall prouided for Winter, ſuch ſtore was found, that the Turks accounted it for the greateſt part of their victorie. *Rogendorff* the vn-

Peſth taken by Caſon admirall of the Turks fleet.

B fortunat Generall, at ſuch time as the Turks hauing woon the trenches were fighting in the middeſt of the camp, deſiring rather to be ſlaine in his tent, than to liue after ſo great an ouerthrow, was againſt his will by ſtrong hand carried abourd a little pinnace by his phyſition and chamberlaine, which would not in any caſe forſake him as he lay, and was ſo conueied vp the riuer to the iſland of COMARA: where he ſhortly after, partly for the painfulneſſe of his wound, but more for greefe of mind, died in a little countrey village called SAMARIVM, leauing vnto the Germans a wofull remembrance of his accurſed obſtinacie and pride. *Solyman* ſtill doubting the comming of *Charles* the emperour and king *Ferdinand* to BVDA, was comming with his armie from

Rogendorff againſt his will caried away by his phyſition and chamberlaine to Comara, there dieth.

Solyman commeth to Buda.

HADRIANOPLE in ſuch haſt, that he cauſed the Ianizaries his beſt footmen, contrarie to their manner, to march as faſt as his horſemen: but vnderſtanding by the way of the late victorie ob-

C tained by his captaines, he tooke more leiſure, and came with a great power to BVDA in Auguſt, and there encamped on the other ſide of the citie, to auoid the noiſome ſauour of the dead bodies, which lay yet vnburied. Where calling vnto him the other armie, and making one huge campe of both, he highly commended all his captaines, but eſpecially the two *Mahometes*. And vnderſtanding that the victorie was eſpecially gotten by the meanes of *Mahometes* gouernour of BELGRADE, he made him generall of all his Europeian horſemen, one of the moſt honourable preferments of the Turkiſh empire: the other captaines he rewarded according as they had deſerued, and withall augmented their pay.

After that, he cauſed the priſoners, in number about eight hundred, to be brought out: who

Turkiſh crueltie.

bound in long ropes, were in deriſion led all alongſt the armie, raunged in order of battell, and

D afterward by his commaundement ſlaine by his young ſouldiors: ſaying with ſeuere countenance, that they were worthie of ſuch death, which by embaſſadours diſſemblingly entreating of peace, had in the meane time craftily waged warre. Amongſt theſe priſoners was one ſouldior of BAVARIA, of an exceeding high ſtature, him in deſpight of the German nation he deliuered to a little dwarfe (whom his ſonnes made great account of) to be ſlaine, whoſe head was ſcarce ſo high as the knees of the tall captiue, with that cruell deſpight to aggrauate the indignitie of his death: when as that goodly tall man, mangled about the legs a long time by that apiſh dwarfe with his little ſcimitar, as if it had beene in diſport, fell downe, and was with many feeble blowes hardly at laſt ſlaine by that wretch, ſtill heartened on by others, to ſatisfie the eyes of the princes, beholding it as their diſport.

E This barbarous and cruell execution done, *Solyman* ſent his embaſſadours with preſents to the young king, which were three beautifull horſes, with their bridles of gold, & their trappings richly ſet with pretious ſtones, and three royall robes of cloth of gold, and vnto the cheefe of the nobilitie he ſent rich gownes and chaines of gold. The embaſſadours which brought theſe preſents, in courteous manner requeſted of the queene to ſend the young king her ſonne, attended with his nobilitie, into the campe, and without all feare to hope that all ſhould goe well both with her and her ſonne: for that *Solyman*, who exceeded all other kings, not in power and fortune onely, but in vertue and vpright dealing alſo, was of ſuch an heroicall diſpoſition, that he would not onely defend the child, whom in the right of his father he had once thought worthie his protection and fauour, victorie confirming the ſame, but would alſo augment his eſtate, with

Solyman ſendeth for the young king into the campe.

F the largeſt bounds of his auncient kingdome: Wherefore he was deſirous to ſee the yong king, and to behold in him the repreſentation of his father, and with his owne hand to deliuer him to be imbraced of his ſonnes; that of his protection renewed, ſo happily begun, might be groũded a firme and perpetuall friendſhip with the *Othoman* kings: and that he would alwayes account of her as of his daughter. But the cauſe why he came not to ſee her, which he did in courteſie de-

ſire,was,for that by ancient cuſtome the *Othoman* kings were forbidden that point of courteſie, G
to viſit other mens wiues in their houſes. Beſides that, *Solyman* (they ſaid) was not ſo forgetfull
of his modeſtie and honour,as to receiue into his pauillion the daughter of a king his friend and
allie,and ſhe the late wife of a king his friend and tributarie,& the faire young mother of a ſon,
growing in the hope of like regall dignitie, for feare he ſhould draw into any ſuſpition the in-
uiolate name of her chaſtitie,which in queens was to be guarded with an eſpeciall & wonderful
care. Wherunto the queene (a manifeſt feare confounding the tender ſences in her motherly af-
The queene ſendeth the young king her ſon to Solyman in the campe attended with the nobilitie.
fection)anſwered very doubtfully: but the biſhop perſuading her,and inſtantiy requeſting her
not to giue the Turks occaſion to ſuſpect that ſhe had them in diſtruſt,by her little and vnprofi-
table delay, ſent her young ſonne in princely ſwathing clothes, in a rich chariot, with his nurſe
and certain great ladies vnto the camp,attended vpon with almoſt all the nobilitie to whom *So-* H
lyman had ſent preſents. In his comming to the campe, he was for honours ſake met vpon the
way by certaine gallant troupes of the Turkes braue horſemen: and all the way as he paſſed in
the campe,orderly ſtood the Ianizaries of *Solymans* guard. As ſoone as he was brought into the
pauillion,*Solyman* courteouſly looked vpon him,and familiarly talked with the nurſe,and com-
Solymon courteouſly receiueth the young king.
maunded his ſonnes there preſent to take him in their armes, and to kiſſe him, in certaine token
of the loue they would beare him, whom they were in time to haue their friend and tributarie,
when he was growne to mans eſtate: theſe were *Selymus* and *Baiazet*,begotten of his faire con-
cubine *Roxalana*,bearing the names the one of his grandfather, the other of his great grandfa-
ther. As for *Muſtapha* his eldeſt ſonne by his Circaſſian wife,he then liued in MAGNESIA, a great
way off: who though he was a prince of ſo great hope, as neuer any of the Turkiſh kings had I
a ſonne of greater,and was therefore exceedingly beloued of the men of war; yet was he not ſo
well liked of his father, brought out of fauour with him by *Roxalana*, as if he had traiterouſly
gone about to take the empire from him,yet liuing,as did *Selymus* his grandfather from *Baiazet:*
for which cauſe *Solyman* ſecretly purpoſed to take him away, as afterwards he did, and to ap-
point *Selymus* for his ſucceſſor,as hereafter ſhall appeare.

Solyman craftily taketh the citie of Buda.
But *Solyman*, at ſuch time as the noblemen of HVNGARIE were dining merrily with the
Baſſaes, had commanded certaine companies(to whom he had before giuen inſtructions what
he would haue done) vnder the colour of ſeeing the citie, to take one of the gates called SABA-
TINA, and the chiefe ſtreets: which was done ſo quietly and cunningly,that a warie watchman
ſtanding there, and beholding the maner of the Turks comming and going too and fro, could K
hardly haue perceiued how the gate was taken, vntill it was too late. For many of the Turkes
walking faire and ſoftly by great companies into the citie,as if it had beene but for pleaſure, to
haue ſeene it: and otherſome to colour the matter,walking likewiſe backe againe,as if they had
ſufficiently viewed the citie; by that meanes they without any tumult or ſturre quickly tooke
the appointed gate,with the market place and chiefe ſtreets of the citie. Which ſo finely done,
the captaine of the Ianizaries cauſed proclamation to be made in all parts of the citie, That the
citiſens ſhould without feare keepe themſelues within their houſes,and forthwith as they would
haue their liues, libertie,and goods ſaued,to deliuer all their weapons: which they ſeeing no re-
medie,did: and hauing deliuered their armes, and taken the Turks faith for their ſecuritie, they L
receiued them into their houſes,as their vnwelcome gueſts. But ſuch was the quietneſſe and mo-
deſtie of the Turkes,by reaſon of the ſeueritie of their martiall diſcipline, that no citiſen which
tooke them into their houſes, was by them wronged by word or deed. *Solyman* vnderſtanding
that the citie was thus quietly and without reſiſtance taken, ſent the child backe againe vnto the
queene,although it was now almoſt night; but the chiefe noblemen he retained ſtill with him:
Solyman detaineth the noblemen of Hungarie in his campe
theſe was *George* the biſhop and treaſurer, *Petrus Vicche* the young kings nigh kinſman and one
of his tutors, *Valentinus Turaccus* Generall of the queenes forces, *Stephanus Verbetius* chancel-
lor,and *Baciamus Vrbanus* gouernor of the citie of BVDA. This ſudden and vnexpected change
exceedingly troubled all their minds,& ſo much the more,for that the great Baſſaes with chan-
ged countenances began to picke quarrels with them,and as it were ſtraightly and impudently
to examine them,and to call them to account for all that they had done. The queene ſeeing the M
citie ſo craftily ſurpriſed,and the nobilitie iniuriouſly detained in the campe,troubled with feare
and griefe,by humble letters requeſted *Solyman* not to forget the faith he had long before giuen
vnto her,and euen of late confirmed by his embaſſadors; but mindful both thereof and of his
wonted clemencie, to ſend backe vnto her the noblemen,who for their fidelitie and valiant ſer-

uice

A uice had well deſerued both of him and her: this ſhe did by *Ruſtemes Baſſa*, whom ſhe had loded with gifts, and amongſt other things of great price had ſent him a faire coronet of her owne of orient pearle, and a goodly iewell ſet with rich ſtone to ſend vnto his wife (*Solymans* daughter) for a preſent.

After that, *Solyman* conſulted with his Baſſaes foure dayes what order to take concerning the kingdome of HVNGARIE. In diſcourſe whereof his great Baſſaes were of diuers opinions. *Mahometes* aduiſed him to carrie away with him to CONSTANTINOPLE both the child and all the nobilitie, and to leaue ſuch a gouernour in BVDA, as by his wiſe and moderat gouernment, rather than by rigour, might put the people out of feare of ſeruitude and bondage, by defending them from wrong, and yet by little and little lay vpon them the yoke of the Turkiſh go-
B uernment. But *Ruſtemes Baſſa* (before corrupted, and a man in greater fauour than the reſt, becauſe he was *Solymans* ſonne in law, and therefore farther from all ſuſpition of flatterie) ſtood altogether vpon tearmes of honour, ſaying, That nothing could be more diſhonorable vnto ſo great and mightie a monarch, who neuer had at any time with any ſpot or ſtaine blemiſhed the glorie of his name, than after victorie againſt all right and reaſon to breake his faith at once with a weake woman and ſillie infant, whom he had before taken vpon him to protect and defend. On the other ſide, *Mahometes* gouernour of BELGRADE (an old mortall enemie of the Chriſtians, of all the reſt beſt acquainted with the ſtate of HVNGARIE, and for his great experience and approued valour then extraordinarily admitted by *Solyman* into counſell amongſt the great Baſſaes) diſliked of both the former opinions, as too full of lenitie: and being asked his
C owne, deliuered it in miſchieuous manner as followeth.

The great Baſſaes of diuers opinions for the diſpoſing of the kingdome of Hungarie.

The Oration of Mahometes of Belgrade to Solyman, concerning the diſpoſing of the kingdome of Hungarie.

I know (ſaid he) *moſt mightie* Solyman, *that he which in conſultation of matters of ſo great conſequence is to deliuer his opinion laſt, ſhall if he diſcent from the reſt, be ſubiect to enuie and reprehenſion. And therefore it cannot be, but that I being of a quite contrarie opinion to them that haue before ſpoken, my ſpeech muſt alſo be vnto your eares both vnpleaſant and tedious. But I refuſe not to be counted by my ſelfe, yea and preſumptuous, if you will ſo haue it, rather than a ſmoother vp of other mens ſayings, as one of no iudgement; whileſt I recount thoſe things, which as the preſent caſe ſtandeth, may wonderfully profit your deſignes and the imperiall ſtate: for of right I may deſire you to yeeld a little to my yeares, and (if I may by your good fauour ſo ſay) to that I haue alreadie done: when as I*
D *now growne an old man in warres againſt theſe Hungarians, haue by experience learned thoſe things of the ſtate and ſtrength of this kingdome, and the diſpoſition of the people; which being here laid downe, may much auaile for your better determination of this ſo waightie a cauſe as admitteth no repentance if you ſhall now be ouerſeene therein. You haue now within the ſpace of theſe twentie yeares come in armes your ſelfe in perſon fiue times into this countrey, when I as no obſcure captaine or ſouldior, was in all thoſe warres and battels euer preſent, of purpoſe as I ſuppoſe to reuenge your iniuries, to enlarge your empire, and in breefe to aſſure you of a good peace, which could neuer be but by force of armes and victorie. And therefore you valiantly woon* BELGRADE, *the infamous dwelling place and receptacle of moſt outrageous theeues and robbers, and in former time famous for the vnfortunat attempts of your anceſtors: when as from thence the Hungarians in time of peace had at their plea-*
E *ſure, whileſt your father was then occupied in the Perſian warre, ſpoiled the borders of* SERVIA *and* ILLYRIA. *The ſame Hungarians about fiue yeares after, for that they had in cruell manner ſlaine your embaſſadours, you ouerthrew in battell, and ſlew their king: and poſſeſſed of* BVDA, *to manifeſt and make knowne by a notable demonſtration the magnificence of your heroicall mind, euen vnto the remoteſt enemies of our name, did chooſe out of the reliques of that vanquiſhed nation, one whom you might grace with the honour of the regall Crowne; although not borne of royall bloud, or vnto you knowne for any other deſert, than that he was a little before both your priuat and publike enemie, and comming againſt you with a ſtrong power out of* TRANSILVANIA, *he had in the meane time loſt his brother, a better man than himſelfe, ſlaine with our ſword. After that, riſe vp the Auſtrian king, a new enemie, to expulſe this Hungarian, raigning by your courteſie, and ſo you tooke in hand the third*
F *warre againſt the Germanes, which you ſo effectually proſecuted, that hauing forthwith reſtored the king, you carried the terror of your ſelfe not onely to the walls of* VIENNA, *but into the very heart of* GERMANIE. *But two yeares yet ſcarcely paſt, the ſame king (neuer long contented with peace or warres) ſupported by the power of his brother* Charles, *and in vaine beſieging* BVDA, *defended by your garriſons, ſtirred you vp againe to reuenge the iniurie, ſlaughter, and ſpoile by his ſouldiours*

ſire,was,for that by ancient cuſtome the *Othoman* kings were forbidden that point of courteſie, G
to viſit other mens wiues in their houſes. Beſides that, *Solyman* (they ſaid) was not ſo forgetfull
of his modeſtie and honour,as to receiue into his pauillion the daughter of a king his friend and
allie,and ſhe the late wife of a king his friend and tributarie,& the faire young mother of a ſon,
growing in the hope of like regall dignitie, for feare he ſhould draw into any ſuſpition the in-
uiolate name of her chaſtitie,which in queens was to be guarded with an eſpeciall & wonderful
care. Wherunto the queene (a manifeſt feare confounding the tender ſences in her motherly af-
The queene ſendeth the young king her ſon to Solyman in the campe attended with the nobilitie. fection)anſwered very doubtfully: but the biſhop perſuading her,and inſtantiy requeſting her
not to giue the Turks occaſion to ſuſpect that ſhe had them in diſtruſt,by her little and vnprofi-
table delay, ſent her young ſonne in princely ſwathing clothes, in a rich chariot, with his nurſe
and certain great ladies vnto the camp,attended vpon with almoſt all the nobilitie to whom *So-* H
lyman had ſent preſents. In his comming to the campe, he was for honours ſake met vpon the
way by certaine gallant troupes of the Turkes braue horſemen: and all the way as he paſſed in
the campe,orderly ſtood the Ianizaries of *Solymans* guard. As ſoone as he was brought into the
pauillion,*Solyman* courteouſly looked vpon him,and familiarly talked with the nurſe,and com-
Solyman courteouſly receiueth the young king. maunded his ſonnes there preſent to take him in their armes, and to kiſſe him, in certaine token
of the loue they would beare him, whom they were in time to haue their friend and tributarie,
when he was growne to mans eſtate: theſe were *Selymus* and *Baiazet*,begotten of his faire con-
cubine *Roxalana*,bearing the names the one of his grandfather, the other of his great grandfa-
ther. As for *Muſtapha* his eldeſt ſonne by his Circaſſian wife,he then liued in Magnesia, a great
way off: who though he was a prince of ſo great hope, as neuer any of the Turkiſh kings had I
a ſonne of greater,and was therefore exceedingly beloued of the men of war; yet was he not ſo
well liked of his father, brought out of fauour with him by *Roxalana*, as if he had traiterouſly
gone about to take the empire from him,yet liuing,as did *Selymus* his grandfather from *Baiazet*:
for which cauſe *Solyman* ſecretly purpoſed to take him away, as afterwards he did, and to ap-
point *Selymus* for his ſucceſſor,as hereafter ſhall appeare.

Solyman traſtily taketh the citie of Buda. But *Solyman*, at ſuch time as the noblemen of Hvngarie were dining merrily with the
Baſſaes, had commanded certaine companies(to whom he had before giuen inſtructions what
he would haue done) vnder the colour of ſeeing the citie, to take one of the gates called Saba-
tina, and the chiefe ſtreets: which was done ſo quietly and cunningly,that a warie watchman
ſtanding there, and beholding the maner of the Turks comming and going too and fro, could K
hardly haue perceiued how the gate was taken, vntill it was too late. For many of the Turkes
walking faire and ſoftly by great companies into the citie,as if it had beene but for pleaſure, to
haue ſeene it: and otherſome to colour the matter,walking likewiſe backe againe,as if they had
ſufficiently viewed the citie; by that meanes they without any tumult or ſturre quickly tooke
the appointed gate,with the market place and chiefe ſtreets of the citie. Which ſo finely done,
the captaine of the Ianizaries cauſed proclamation to be made in all parts of the citie, That the
citiſens ſhould without feare keepe themſelues within their houſes,and forthwith as they would
haue their liues, libertie,and goods ſaued,to deliuer all their weapons: which they ſeeing no re-
medie,did: and hauing deliuered their armes, and taken the Turks faith for their ſecuritie, they L
receiued them into their houſes,as their vnwelcome gueſts. But ſuch was the quietneſſe and mo-
deſtie of the Turkes,by reaſon of the ſeueritie of their martiall diſcipline, that no citiſen which
tooke them into their houſes, was by them wronged by word or deed. *Solyman* vnderſtanding
that the citie was thus quietly and without reſiſtance taken, ſent the child backe againe vnto the
queene,although it was now almoſt night; but the chiefe noblemen he retained ſtill with him:
Solyman detaineth the noblemen of Hungarie in his campe theſe was *George* the biſhop and treaſurer, *Petrus Vicche* the young kings nigh kinſman and one
of his tutors, *Valentinus Turaccus* Generall of the queenes forces, *Stephanus Verbetius* chancel-
lor,and *Bacianus Vrbanus* gouernor of the citie of Bvda. This ſudden and vnexpected change
exceedingly troubled all their minds,& ſo much the more,for that the great Baſſaes with chan-
ged countenances began to picke quarrels with them,and as it were ſtraightly and impudently
to examine them,and to call them to account for all that they had done. The queene ſeeing the M
citie ſo craftily ſurpriſed,and the nobilitie iniuriouſly detained in the campe,troubled with feare
and griefe,by humble letters requeſted *Solyman* not to forget the faith he had long before giuen
vnto her,and euen of late confirmed by his embaſſadors; but mindful both thereof and of his
wonted clemencie, to ſend backe vnto her the noblemen,who for their fidelitie and valiant ſer-

uice

A uice had well deſerued both of him and her: this ſhe did by *Ruſtemes Baſſa*, whom ſhe had loded with gifts, and amongſt other things of great price had ſent him a faire coronet of her owne of orient pearle, and a goodly iewell ſet with rich ſtone to ſend vnto his wife (*Solymans* daughter) for a preſent.

After that, *Solyman* conſulted with his Baſſaes foure dayes what order to take concerning the kingdome of Hvngarie. In diſcourſe whereof his great Baſſaes were of diuers opinions. *Mahometes* aduiſed him to carrie away with him to Constantinople both the child and all the nobilitie, and to leaue ſuch a gouernour in Byda, as by his wiſe and moderat gouernment, rather than by rigour, might put the people out of feare of ſeruitude and bondage, by defending them from wrong, and yet by little and little lay vpon them the yoke of the Turkiſh go-
B uernment. But *Ruſtemes Baſſa* (before corrupted, and a man in greater fauour than the reſt, becauſe he was *Solymans* ſonne in law, and therefore farther from all ſuſpition of flatterie) ſtood altogether vpon tearmes of honour, ſaying, That nothing could be more diſhonorable vnto ſo great and mightie a monarch, who neuer had at any time with any ſpot or ſtaine blemiſhed the glorie of his name, than after victorie againſt all right and reaſon to breake his faith at once with a weake woman and ſillie infant, whom he had before taken vpon him to protect and defend. On the other ſide, *Mahometes* gouernour of Belgrade (an old mortall enemie of the Chriſtians, of all the reſt beſt acquainted with the ſtate of Hvngarie, and for his great experience and approued valour then extraordinarily admitted by *Solyman* into counſell amongſt the great Baſſaes) diſliked of both the former opinions, as too full of lenitie: and being asked his
C owne, deliuered it in miſchieuous manner as followeth.

The great Baſſaes of diuers opinions for the diſpoſing of the kingdome of Hungarie.

I know (ſaid he) *moſt mightie* Solyman, *that he which in conſultation of matters of ſo great conſequence is to deliuer his opinion laſt, ſhall if he diſcent from the reſt, be ſubiect to enuie and reprehenſion. And therefore it cannot be, but that I being of a quite contrarie opinion to them that haue before ſpoken, my ſpeech muſt alſo be vnto your eares both vnpleaſant and tedious. But I refuſe not to be counted by my ſelfe, yea and preſumptuous, if you will ſo haue it, rather than a ſmoother vp of other mens ſayings, as one of no iudgement; whileſt I recount thoſe things, which as the preſent caſe ſtandeth, may wonderfully profit your deſignes and the imperiall ſtate: for of right I may deſire you to yeeld a little to my yeares, and (if I may by your good fauour ſo ſay) to that I haue alreadie done: when as I*
D *now growne an old man in warres againſt theſe Hungarians, haue by experience learned thoſe things of the ſtate and ſtrength of this kingdome, and the diſpoſition of the people; which being here laid downe, may much auaile for your better determination of this ſo waightie a cauſe as admitteth no repentance if you ſhall now be ouerſeene therein. You haue now within the ſpace of theſe twentie yeares come in armes your ſelfe in perſon fiue times into this countrey, when I as no obſcure captaine or ſouldior, was in all thoſe warres and battels euer preſent, of purpoſe as I ſuppoſe to reuenge your iniuries, to enlarge your empire, and in breefe to aſſure you of a good peace, which could neuer be but by force of armes and victorie. And therefore you valiantly woon* Belgrade, *the infamous dwelling place and receptacle of moſt outrageous theeues and robbers, and in former time famous for the vnfortunat attempts of your anceſtors: when as from thence the Hungarians in time of peace had at their plea-*
E *ſure, whileſt your father was then occupied in the Perſian warre, ſpoiled the borders of* Servia *and* Illyria. *The ſame Hungarians about fiue yeares after, for that they had in cruell manner ſlaine your embaſſadours, you ouerthrew in battell, and ſlew their king: and poſſeſſed of* Byda, *to manifeſt and make knowne by a notable demonſtration the magnificence of your heroicall mind, euen vnto the remoteſt enemies of our name, did chooſe out of the reliques of that vanquiſhed nation, one whom you might grace with the honour of the regall Crowne; although not borne of royall bloud, or vnto you knowne for any other deſert, than that he was a little before both your priuat and publike enemie, and comming againſt you with a ſtrong power out of* Transilvania, *he had in the meane time loſt his brother, a better man than himſelfe, ſlaine with our ſword. After that, riſe vp the Auſtrian king, a new enemie, to expulſe this Hungarian, raigning by your courteſie, and ſo you tooke in hand the third*
F *warre againſt the Germanes, which you ſo effectually proſecuted, that hauing forthwith reſtored the king, you carried the terror of your ſelfe not onely to the walls of* Vienna, *but into the very heart of* Germanie. *But two yeares yet ſcarcely paſt, the ſame king (neuer long contented with peace or warres) ſupported by the power of his brother* Charles, *and in vaine beſieging* Byda, *defended by your garriſons, ſtirred you vp againe to reuenge the iniurie, ſlaughter, and ſpoile by his ſouldiours*

The Oration of Mahometes of Belgrade to Solyman, concerning the diſpoſing of the kingdome of Hungarie.

done: for that you thought it to ſtand with your honour to protect him with your power, whom you had of your rare bountie made a king, and then deſired aboue all things to fight a noble battell with the two brethren for the Empire of the Weſt. But they at ſuch time as you with fire and ſword ran thorow their auntient kingdomes, endured not the noiſe of your comming. After that enſued a peace betweene the Hungarians and the Germane, your Maieſtie permitting and approouing it, at ſuch time as you made haſt to goe againſt the Perſians: but the Germane king ſo broke that peace, that had not I in good time reuenged his trecherie by the ouerthrow of a great armie of his at EZEK, *you muſt of neceſſitie haue beene ſent for from* BABILON *your ſelfe, as but now you were glad to come in haſt by long and painfull iournies from* CONSTANTINOPLE, *to aid vs in time, and as I verely hope, to make an end for all; that all things ſet in firme order in* HVNGARIE, *the inconueniences of ſo many labours and ſo great charge, fiue times vndertaken for another mans profit, might now at length take end: except (as I ſee ſome wiſh) you be in mind neuer to giue ouer the protection of the child and widdow, a matter full of infinit labor and perill, not to be counteruailed with that glorious ſhew of honor, which by theſe (in my opinion) too too wiſemen is pretended to your haughtie mind, euer deſirous of honor and fame. But I as a blunt man vnderſtand not this high point of wiſedome, abounding with glorie, which in the very courſe thereof cutteth in ſunder the ſinewes of victorie, and is neuer by politicke Generals admitted into their campes. In which doing, as I wiſh you more fortunat than your auncеſtours, who haue vnited eighteene kingdomes to this your empire, ſo would I not haue you more wiſe than they: for what can be a more vnwiſe part, than alwayes to play the vnwiſe man? that is to ſay, alwayes to be carefull of other mens affaires, and in meane time oftentimes to endanger his owne eſtate, his health, his wealth, his honour. You haue ſatisfied (and that in my opinion) plentifully the duties both of charitie, fidelitie, and if it muſt needs be ſo, of honour and glorie alſo; if it be to be gotten rather by courteſie, clemencie, and lenitie, than by the inuincible ſtrength of wiſe policie, and the conſtant reſolution of a martiall mind: for by theſe inſtruments, and none other, hath worthie vertue alwayes promoted and ſupported the* Othoman *kings. Wherefore let thoſe vaine ſhowes (as ſeemeth vnto me) of counterfeit honour delight the minds of idle and ſlouthfull kings: aſſuredly, they neuer pleaſed your armed auncеſtors, but after the enemie was quite ouerthrowne, the triumph made, and the trophees of victorie erected. But let this be as beſt pleaſeth your high wiſedome and iudgement, whereunto the greateſt wits giue place. Truly I (if I well foreſee the chances of war, and the aſſured euents of things) will not follow that manner of counſell which the pleaſure of my mind perſuadeth me vnto; when as neceſſitie, which ruleth all things, preſently forceth me and ſheweth me a farre better courſe. The Hungarians aboue all other things notably warne vs not to truſt them, who infamous for their vnconſtancie, after reuolt, and trecherie, are ſtill at variance amongſt themſelues; and their baniſhed men are continually ſetting on the Germanes to inuade the country; and the weake power of the Queene and the child is not ſuch as may withſtand ſo neere and ſo mightie an enemie: ſo that another mans kingdome muſt of neceſſitie be defended by our helpe, which may not be leſſe than a ſtrong armie, without our great perill. To be breefe, euery yeere to take in hand ſo long an expedition of ſo great labour and trauell, with an armie furniſhed with horſemen, footmen, artillerie, and a fleet of ſhips for defence of another man, as commonly we doe, ſeemeth to me meere madneſſe: Neither doe I thinke it to ſtand with the maieſtie of the* Othoman *emperours, thus to be mooued euery yeare at the requeſt of a puling woman, crying for helpe: except you thinke it more profitable and honourable to maintaine a defenſiue than an inuaſiue warre. Wherefore (in my opinion) it is beſt to turne this kingdome (ſo often conquered and defended by law of Armes) after the manner of your auncеſtors, into the forme of a Prouince: the Queene I would haue ſent to her father, and the boy her ſonne brought vp in your Court at* CONSTANTINOPLE, *and there inſtructed in our religion: the nobilitie of the country I wiſh to be ſlaine, and their caſtles raſed, and the notable families which bare the braueſt minds, to be carried away out of all parts of the country into* ASIA: *as for the baſe multitude, I would haue kept vnder with good garriſons, to till the ground, and inhabit the cities. By this onely meanes (mightie* Solyman) *ſhall both the Hungarians perceiue themſelues conquered, and the Germans glad to forbeare comming into* HVNGARIE, *vnleſſe they will raſhly and vnfortunately hazard both* STYRIA *and* AVSTRIA.

Miſchieuous counſell.

Solyman entreth Buda the 30. of Auguſt 1541, and there firſt ſacrificeth after the Mahometan manner.

But *Solyman* thinking it good to doe ſacrifice before he would reſolutely determine of ſo great a matter, entred into BVDA with his two ſons, *Selymus* and *Baiazet*, the thirtith day of Auguſt in the yeare 1541: and there in the Cathedrall church dedicated to the virgin *Marie* (being before

A before by his priests purified after the maner of their superstition) sacrificed the first Mahometane sacrifice in BVDA. Shortly after, he as it were moderating the opinions of his great counsellors, prouided out of them all, both for his own securitie and honour, and published a decree the fatall doome of that flourishing kingdome, where vnder it yet groneth at this day; That BVDA should from that day be kept with a garrison of Turks, and the kingdome conuerted into a prouince of the Turkish empire; and that the queene with her young sonne should presently depart the citie, and liue in LIPPA in a fertile and quiet countrie beyond the riuer of Tibiscus, which something to comfort her, was neere vnto the borders of her father *Sigismund* his kingdome, to be safely conducted thither with all her wealth and iewels by his Ianizaries. Wherefore the queene and her sonne according to this decree, with teares and mourning detesting in
B her heart the tyrants perfideous dealing (which necessitie enforced her then to dissemble) departed from BVDA, constrained by the Turkes to leaue behind her all the ordinance in the castle and citie, with all other the warlike prouision and store of victuall. The noblemen went with her also, who although they went sorrowfull for this wofull and vnexpected change of things, yet were they verie glad of their libertie and safetie, wherof they had for the space of three daies despaired. Only *Valentinus* was kept in safe custodie in the campe, becausse he was a martiall man, of greatest power amongst the Hungarians; and besides that, much hated of the Turks for the hard pursuit of *Cason*, and his horsemen, slaine at STORAMBERG in AVSTRIA. Thus the royall citie of BVDA fell into the possession of the Turkes, whereupon not long after ensued the finall ruine of that great kingdome, sometime the strong bulwarke of Christendome, but lost to the
C great weakning of the Christian common-wealth; which may iustly be imputed to the pride, ambition, and discention of the Hungarians amongst themselues, and the calling in of the common enemie: the due consideration of whose onely comming, might well haue sufficed to haue set them agreed.

The doome of Hungarie.

The queene departeth out of Buda with her sonne.

Whilest these things were doing at BVDA, king *Ferdinand* expecting the euent of this warre at VIENNA, and hearing of the shamefull ouerthrow of his armie, and that the Generall deadly wounded was fled to COMARA, and that *Solyman* (fame encreasing the euill newes) was comming towards VIENNA; sent *Leonardus Velsius* (who neuer liked of the siege of BVDA) to COMARA to stay the further flight of the souldiours, and to gather togither so well as hee could the dispersed reliques of the scattered armie, and to comfort againe the discouraged men with the
D hope of new supplies, & of a pay. And somewhat to stay *Solyman*, who as it was thought would suddenly come to VIENNA, he sent countie *Salma* and *Sigismund Litheſtaine*, a noble and graue counsellor, his embassadours, with presents and new conditions of peace to *Solyman*. The presents was a high standing cup of gold after the German fashion, curiously set with rich stones; and a wonderfull globe of siluer of most rare and curious deuise, daily expressing the hourely passing of the time, the motions of the planets, the change & ful of the moone, the motion of the superiour orbes, euen mouing by certaine wheeles and weights curiously conuaied within the same, and exactly keeping due time and motion; liuely expressing the wonderful motions and conuersions of the celestiall tarme. A most curious and strange piece of worke, deuised & perfected by the most cunning Astronomers for *Maximilian* the emperour, whose noble mind neE uer spared for any cost to obtaine things of rare and strange deuise. These embassadors passing downe the riuer of Danubius, were at their landing, first receiued by *Cason* the Admirall of *Solymans* fleet, and by him brought into a rich tent, the ground vnder their feet being all couered with rich carpets: to whom *Rustan Bassa* sent such good cheere as the campe affoorded, but especially most excellent wine, no lesse forbidden the Turks by their law, than desired of the Germans. The next day after, the great Bassaes feasted the embassadours, *Solyman* himselfe dining not farre off in his pauillion: at which feast the Bassaes for the more courtesie, dined with the embassadors, not sitting with their legs gathered vnder them flat vpon the ground, as their manner was, but sitting in chaires at a high table, after the manner of the Christians: onely *Mahometes* Gouernour of BELGRADE, for his age and valour an extraordinarie guest, sat downe vpF on a cushion beneath the Bassaes. Their cheere was only rice and mutton, and that so plainely and sparingly dressed, as if they had therby noted our gourmandise and excesse; who measure not our cheere by that which nature requireth, but that which greedie appetite desireth, as if therein consisted the greatest nobilitie: And the drinke for the great Bassaes themselues, right easie to be had, was faire water out of the riuer Danubius. After dinner the embassadours were

King Ferdinand sendeth embassadors and presents to Solyman

The frugall cheere of the Turkes.

brought in vnto *Solyman*, each of them lead betwixt two Baſſaes holding them faſt by the arms, G
as if it had been for honour ſake, and ſo brought to kiſſe his hand. For the Turks ſuffer no ſtran-
ger otherwiſe to come vnto the preſence of their ſuſpitious emperour, but firſt they ſearch him
that he haue no weapon about him, and ſo claſping him by the armes vnder the colour of
doing him honour, diſſemblingly bereaue him of the vſe of his hands, leaſt he ſhould offer him
any violence: yet hath he alwaies as he ſitteth in his throane lying at hand readie by him, a tar-
guet, a ſcimiter, an yron maſe, with bow and arrowes. The great globe was alſo brought in by
twelue of the embaſſadors ſeruants, which with the ſtrangeneſſe thereof filled the mind of *So-*
lyman, and the eyes of his Baſſaes with admiration: for *Solyman* was of ſo ſharpe a wit, that he
was not learned onely in ſuch books as contained the lawes and rites of the Mahometane ſu-
perſtition, but had alſo curiouſly ſtudied Aſtronomie, and eſpecially Coſmographie: in which H
profitable and pleaſant ſtudies, he much recreated himſelfe as his leaſure ſerued. The embaſſa-
The requeſt of the embaſſadors in the behalf of king Ferdinand. dours deſired, that he would giue the kingdome of Hvngarie to king *Ferdinand*, almoſt vpon
the ſame conditions that *Laſcus* had before required it for him at Constantinople, pay-
ing him ſuch yerely tribute as king *Iohn* had vſually paid, and promiſing farther to draw *Charles*
the emperour his brother into the ſame league: ſo that *Solyman* deliuered of all feare that way,
might at his pleaſure turn his forces vpon the Perſian, which it was thought he moſt deſired. Be-
ſides that, they ſaid he ſhould deale neither honourably nor indifferently, if he ſhould prefer the
young child before king *Ferdinand*, who beſide his auncient right vnto that kingdome (which
they were not now to vrge, as oppreſſed by his happie victories, but might in time be reuiued)
had alſo a late intereſt by a league betwixt him and king *Iohn*, wherein he had expreſſely coue- I
nanted by the ſolemne conſent of the greateſt part of the nobilitie, that king *Ferdinand* ſhould
ſucceed him in the kingdome. Whereby they excuſed him of the late warre, as iuſtly taken
in hand againſt the queen and her ſonne vſurping vpon his right; which king *Iohn* knowing to
be good, and mooued with conſcience, had by his ſolemne act acknowledged, though to the
great offence and preiudice of *Solyman* his ſetter vp and defender, as alſo to the touching of him-
ſelfe in honour, to haue ſo vnthankfully and fraudulently dealt with his patrone, to whom hee
was by the oath of obedience bound. Wherefore they requeſted, That ſith he being a prince
of all others moſt mighty and magnificent, ſtanding vpon his vpright dealing both in peace and
war, had ſo lightly regarded the ſlie dealing of ſo ingratfull a man: he would rather accept of
king *Ferdinand* ſo many waies iniured, as his friend and tributarie, than to haue him his perpe- K
tuall enemie. Concluding, that nothing could be vnto him for the good report of his iuſtice
more commendable, or for the aſſurance of a perpetuall peace more profitable, or to the im-
mortall praiſe of his bountie more honourable, than to call a king of a moſt auncient diſſent, fa-
mous for his vertue and fidelitie, choſen for a king by the Bohemians, deſired for a king by the
Hungarians, emperor elect of the Roman empire by the Germans, and the naturall brother of
Solymans proud anſwere to king Ferdinands embaſſadors. the great emperour, his tributarie king of Hvngarie. *Solyman* with cheerefull countenance
accepting and commending of the preſents, anſwered them two daies after by *Ruſtan* the Baſſa
his ſonne in law, that this was his reſolute condition of peace and friendſhip: If king *Ferdinand*
would forthwith reſtore all the cities, towns, & caſtles which were before belonging to K. *Lewes*,
and for euer after abſtaine from Hvngarie: and whereas hee had beene ſo often prouoked by L
him to warre, and had therein beſtowed ſo great charges, and taken ſo much trauell, he could
for that be content with an eaſie paine (which ſhould be for his greater honour) to impoſe an
eaſie tribute vpon Avstria: vpon which conditions he was content to enter into league with
them: but if ſo be that thoſe conditions ſeemed vnto them too heauie, and that they would ra-
ther make choice of warre than peace, hee would bring to paſſe by continuall warre, that ſuch
things as they had taken from the kingdome of Hvngarie, ſhould be requited with the de-
ſtruction of Avstria. But the embaſſadours, although they were much moued at the proud
demaund of tribute for Avstria, as that wherein the two brethren of mightie power, *Charles*
the emperor and king *Ferdinand* were diſdainfully abuſed: to keepe the beſt courſe of their ne-
gotiation, and to win ſome time in ſo hard eſtate of things; required a truce, vntill ſuch time as M
king *Ferdinand* and the emperor his brother might be made acquainted with the matter. Which
their requeſt (the Turke perceiuing their drift and purpoſe) would in no caſe grant, for Winter
was now faſt comming on. It was lawfull for the embaſſadours, all the time they were in the
Turks campe, to view euerie part thereof, *Ruſtan Baſſa* conducting them from place to place:

where

A where aboue all things, they most wondred at the perpetuall & dumbe silence of so great a multitude, the souldiors being so readie and attentiue, that they were no otherwise commanded but by the beckning of the hand, or a nod of their commanders: They maruelled also at the exquisite order and sweetnesse of the Turkes campe, finding therein nothing disordered or noisome; so that it seemed not the campe of such a rude and barbarous nation, but rather of them which were the authors of martiall discipline. The embassabours being rewarded and so sent away, *Solyman* commaunded the old Gouernour of BELGRVDE to spoile the borders of AVSTRIA all alongst Danubius: *Cason* also Generall of the voluntarie horseman, he sent into MORAVIA for like purpose; who neither of them did any great harme, by reason of the sudden rising of the great riuers, with the aboundance of raine then falling in Autumne. After that *Solyman* appoin-
B ted one *Solyman* an Hungarian (who taken prisoner in his youth by the Turkes, had from that time followed the Mahometane superstition) gouernour of BVDA: who by the vpright administration of iustice, and courteous vsing of the people, with *Verbetius* the old chancellor, should doe what was possible to put the people in hope of long peace and tranquilitie. Which things done, after he had stayed about twentie dayes at BVDA, he determined to returne againe into THRACIA, because the raine of Autumne, and the cold of Winter was now come in: and was also in doubt to be shut in with the rising of the great riuers, wherewith the countrey of HVNGARIE is in euerie place so watered, and on euerie side so compassed, that it is a hard matter to passe. By the way he set *Lascus* king *Ferdinands* embassadour againe at libertie, whom he had
C left in prison at BELGRADE: but he long enioyed not that benefit, for shortly after returning into POLONIA, he dyed of the flix; which caused many to suppose, that he was poisoned by the Turkes. A man for his vertue and learning famous, worthie of a longer life, whose death the king himselfe much lamented.

The Turkes campe well ordered.

Solyman returneth towards Constantinople.

Lascus set at libertie by Solyman, shortly after dieth.

As *Solyman* was returning into THRACIA, and was come to the riuer Dranus, it was told him, that *Stephen Maylat* Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, who tooke king *Ferdinand* his part, a professed enemie of the Turkes, was taken, by the cunning of *Peter* of MOLDAVIA, and prince of VALACHIA; and that all the countrey of TRANSILVANIA was well pacified and yeelded to his obedience. Of which newes *Solyman* was passing glad, for he exceedingly hated *Maylat*: a martiall man of a froward nature, desirous of rule, and readie vpon any occasion to reuolt; forasmuch as he remembred *Grittus* his legat, and the Turkes by him slaine; and knew also, that the Tran-
D siluanians, an inuincible people, borne to trouble, and more delighting in vncertaine warre than assured peace, was by him stirred vp; whom he wished rather by gentlenesse to appease, than by force of armes and strong hand to subdue. But because we haue oftentimes before made mention of this *Maylat*, of whose taking *Solyman* so much reioyced, it shall not be amisse in few words to declare by what fineneſse he fell into the hands of this treacherous and bloudie man, *Peter* of MOLDAVIA.

This Moldauian by the commaundement of *Solyman* (as is aforesaid) had ioyned his forces with *Achomates* Gouernour of NICOPOLIS, against *Maylat*; which being vnited, were in number fiftie thousand horsemen, beside footmen, which after the manner of those countreys were not many, euerie man almost in the countrey be he neuer so poore, keeping a horse to
E serue vpon. *Maylat* beset with the multitude of his enemies, and finding himselfe too weake to encounter them, despairing also of aid from king *Ferdinand*, whom he knew to be busied in a greater warre; forsooke the field, and fled againe into the strong towne of FOGARAS, as he had done the yeere before, when he was ouercharged by king *Iohn* his power: for there as in a most strong place both by nature & fortification, he had laid vp his greatest substance and prouision for the warres, but especially the rich spoile he had long before taken from *Grittus*. *Achomates* comming thither with his power, and perceiuing the place was not to be battered or taken by force, but with much labour and long time: thought it best, to assay if he could ouercome him by craft and deceit. Wherefore he sent a messenger vnto *Maylat*, to perswade him to yeeld himselfe vnto *Solyman*, and to make choise rather to be called of him his friend, than to be iudged
F his enemie; of whom he might well hope of all goodnesse, which had giuen whole kingdomes vnto his enemies: promising, that he would vse the vttermost of his credit, which was not smal, and labour for him as his friend, that he might feele the fruit of his clemencie and bountie, and still enioy the gouernment of TRANSILVANIA, paying him some small yeerely tribute, as he had before requested: for as much as he could take no course better, being beset with so many enemies,

Maylat the Vayuod not able to keepe the field against Achomates, and the prince of Moldauia, flieth to Fogaras.

enemies, than to make his peace vpon reaſonable conditions, and that with as much ſpeed as G
were poſſible: in which doing, beſides that he ſhould well prouide for his own ſafetie, he ſhould alſo ſaue both his wealth and honour; for *Solyman* was comming (as he ſaid) with his victorious armie, who would with aſſured death reuenge his vaine hope of holding out the ſiege, if he ſhould vpon a ſtubborne and obſtinate mind then refuſe to obay his command. Whereunto *Maylat*, who foreſaw that it was better for him to make a certaine peace, than to endure an vncertain warre, anſwered, That he could be content to conclude a peace, ſo that it were not vpon any hard conditions; and would not greatly refuſe *Solymans* command, which was wont to be both reaſonable and iuſt: wherefore vpon ſufficient pledges he would come into the campe, in preſence to agree vpon the conditions of the peace, and demaunded to haue *Achomates* his ſonne, a valiant young gentleman, deliuered in hoſtage. Which thing *Achomates* denied, for H
that he had (as he ſaid) before giuen him to *Solyman*, as the manner was, and therefore had ouer him no more power: but he promiſed for him, that was but one, to giue foure of his beſt captaines. Which offer *Maylat* (miſdoubting no deceit) accepted, and with a great and gallant retinue attended vpon, came into the euemies campe, where he was courteouſly and honourably receiued. But the parley, as it could not be conueniently begun immediatly after their firſt ſalutation, ſo could it by no meanes be then ended, but was deferred vntill the next day: to the intent, that the treacherous Moldauian might take his well acquainted and well knowne gueſt, whom he had againſt that time inuited to a ſolemne banquet. By that meanes, the next day about the middeſt of dinner, fortune ſo fauouring the intended treacherie, *Maylat* who was of ſo proud and cholericke a nature that he could not well brooke the leaſt indignitie, was by occaſi- I
on of ſome inſolent ſpeech of purpoſe miniſtred by the Moldauian gueſts, put into ſuch a fret, that laying his hand vpon his ſword, he in a rage flung from the table: at which time all the other gueſts ſtarting vp alſo, laid hands vpon him and tooke him, fuming, and in vaine crying out, that he was ſhamefully betraied. His followers were all forthwith ſtript of all their brauerie by the needie Moldauians, and their horſes and armour taken from them. Whileſt *Maylat* was yet furiouſly exclaiming of this trſaſon, in came *Achomates*, who to ſeeme guiltleſſe of the matter, with deepe diſſimulation ſharpely reproued the falſe Moldauian, that he had in doing ſo foule a fact ſhamefully violated the lawes of hoſpitalitie, reuerenced of all nations, falſified the faith which he had giuen him for his ſafetie, and betraied the liues of ſuch notable captaines as lay in hoſtage for him. Whereunto the Moldauian (as if it had been in contempt) ſcornfully K
anſwered, That he had vpon good cauſe taken *Maylat* priſoner, and ſo would in ſafetie keepe him for *Solyman*, vnto whom it onely belonged to iudge, whether he had iuſtly or vniuſtly detained him.

Maylat cōmeth into the Turkes campe.

Maylat treacherouſly taken priſoner by the Moldauian

Not long after, the ſtrong towne of FOGARIS was deliuered, with the hoſtages; but whether by feare or by corruption of *Maylats* lieutenant, is vncertaine. So *Valentinus Turaccus*, and *Maylat*, two of the greateſt noble men of HVNGARIE, ſufficient of themſelues to haue reſtored the Hungarian kingdome (firſt rent in ſunder with ciuill diſcord, and afterward with the inuaſion of the Turkes) fell into the hands of the enemie, not vanquiſhed in battell, but deceiued by treaſon. The towne being thus ſurrendred, almoſt all the countrey of TRANSILVANIA, was by *Solymans* conſent deliuered to the young king, vnto whom all the people moſt willingly ſubmitted themſelues, and tooke the oath of obedience, remembring that his father had almoſt for thirtie yeres ſpace with great iuſtice and quietneſſe gouerned that prouince; and with many preſents honored the young king lying in LIPPA, with the queene his mother, and his two tutors, the biſhop, and *Vicche*.

Tranſiluania giuen by Solyman to the young king.

At the ſame time, *Charles* the emperour at the importunate ſuit of his ſubiects of SPAINE, had prepared a great force both by ſea and land for the conquering of ALGIERS: from whence the Turkiſh pirats did ſo infeſt all that coaſt of the countrey, from GADES to the mountaines PYRENEI, that the Spaniards (all trade of merchandiſe being ſet apart) were glad to keepe continuall watch and ward all alongſt that coaſt for defence of the countrey. Wherefore although
Charles the emperor returneth out of Germany to inuade Algiers. he well knew of the comming of the Turks to BVDA, and how hardly he was by the Lantgraue M
and others ſpoken of, for leauing his brother ſo hardly beſtead, to goe againſt a ſort of pirats in AFFRICKE; yet perſiſting in his former determination, he departed out of GERMANIE into ITALIE, where by the way he was met by *Octauius Farneſius* his ſonne in law, *Alphonſus Vaſtius* his lieutenant, by the Venetian embaſſadours, neere to VERONA, and ſo brought to

MIL-

A MILLAINE, where he was with great ſolemnitie ioyfully receiued of the citiſens, and vnder a canopie of gold brought vnto the pallace: he himſelfe going in a plaine blacke cloake, and a homely cap in mourning wiſe; when as the women and vulgar people, vpon a curious ſimplicitie, expected to haue ſeene ſo great an emperour in his royall robes, gliſtering with gold and pretious ſtone, and the imperiall crowne vpon his head. His heauie countenance anſwerable alſo to his attire was much noted, as preſaging the wofull ouerthrow which was the day before receiued at BVDA, but not yet knowne in ITALIE. From MILLAINE he departed to GENVA, where he was aduertiſed by letters from his brother king *Ferdinand*, of the ouerthrow of the Germans, of the victorie of the Turkes, and the comming of *Solyman*. Vpon which newes, *Vaſtius* and *Auria*, his two chiefe commaunders, the one at land, the other at ſea, would haue per-
B ſuaded him to haue deferred his intended expedition for AFRICA vntill the next Spring: and with ſuch power as he had alreadie raiſed in ITALIE, and brought with him out of GERMANIE, to ſtay ſtill in ITALIE, ſo to make ſhew vnto the Turks as if he would haue returned and holpen his brother: and in the meane time to aſſure himſelfe of his ſtate in ITALIE againſt the French, who (as it was thought) would be readie to take all occaſion of aduantage, if any miſhap ſhould befall him, either by the force of the enemie, or violence of tempeſt. But he conſtant in his former reſolution, anſwered them as they ſate in counſell, that they had perſuaded him for great reaſons to ſtay in ITALIE; but that he was for farre greater to paſſe into AFFRICKE: for if he ſhould then ſtay in ITALIE, it would be thought, that he was for feare of the Turkes fled out of
C GERMANIE: which diſgrace could no otherwiſe be preuented, but by the preſent proſecuting of his former determination for ALGIERS, and ſatisfying the expectation of his ſubiects of SPAINE; and ſo by ſea valiantly to proue their better fortune, which had of late not ſo well fauoured them at land, in hope that ALGIERS might be woon before the ſeas ſhould grow rough and dangerous with Winter tempeſts: which if it ſhould fall out according to his mind, he would not, as he ſaid, greatly care what the French could doe. Yet was it thought, that the diſſembling friendſhip betwixt the French king and him, would not long endure: and the rather, for that there was a new grudge riſen betwixt them about the death of *Antonius Rinuo*, who for certaine yeres had lien embaſſadour for the French king at CONSTANTINOPLE to *Solyman*, and was a few moneths before ſent backe againe by him into FRANCE to the king: but retur-
D ning back again with new inſtructions from his maſter, for the confirmation of a further league betwixt the Turkiſh Sultan & him, he was by certain Spaniards of the emperors old ſouldiors, who had knowledge of his cõming, belaid vpon the riuer Padus as he was going down to VENICE, ſo to haue paſſed into EPYRVS, and ſlaine, togither with *Cæſar Fregoſius*: or as the common report went, firſt taken and tortured, to get from him the ſecrets of his negotiation, and afterwards ſlaine. Which report ſo much touched *Vaſtius* in credit, that in purgation of himſelfe, he offered the combat to any man of like qualitie to himſelfe, that durſt charge him with the truth thereof. But many were of opinion, that he was well and worthely taken away, for vndertaking ſo odious a charge, as to ſtirre vp the Turkes againſt the Chriſtians, and to ſhew vnto them ſuch opportunities as might beſt ſerue their purpoſe, by diſcouering vnto them the em-
E perours deſſeigns, to the great hurt of the Chriſtian commonweale. But were it well, or were it euill; as *Paulus* the third of that name then biſhop of ROME, meeting the emperour at LVCA as he came from GENVA, could not, or would not determine; ſure it ſerued as no ſmall occaſion to ſet thoſe two great princes againe at ods, whereby the wiſhed vnitie of the Chriſtian ſtate was ſore ſhaken, and a way opened for the Turke. The emperour at his comming to LVCA, was honourably receiued by the cardinals and biſhops, and lodged in the court: the great biſhop was before placed in the biſhops pallace, whither the emperour came thriſe to talke with him, and the biſhop to him once. But the biſhop hauing nothing at all preuailed with the emperour and the French embaſſador, for the appeaſing of the troubles euen then like to ariſe betwixt him and the French king: did what he might to perſuade him to employ ſuch forces as he was about to paſſe ouer with into AFFRICKE, againſt the Turkes in defence of his brother *Ferdinand*, and
F of the countrey of AVSTRIA, if *Solyman* ſhould happely purſue his late obtained victorie at BVDA. But he ſtill reſolute in that fatall determination of inuading of AFFRICKE, reiected that the biſhops requeſt alſo. So the great biſhop hauing mooued much, and preuailed little, in the greateſt matters which moſt concerned the common good, taking his leaue of the emperour, returned by eaſie iournies to ROME.

The French kings embaſſadour ſlaine by the emperials.

The emperour and the biſhop of Rome meet at Luca.

The

The emperor in the meane time with certain bands of Italians, vnder the leading of *Camillus Columna* and *Augustinus Spinula*, and six thousand Germans, came from LVCA to the port LVNE and there embarking his souldiors in certaine marchant ships prouided for the purpose, and fiue and thirtie gallies, departed thence, commanding the masters of the ships to direct their course to the Islands of BALEARES: but after they had put to sea, they were by force of tempest suddenly arising, brought within sight of CORSICA: where after they had beene tossed too and fro two daies in the rough seas, and put out of their course, the wind something falling, they put into the hauen of SYRACVSA, now called BONIFACIVM. The dispersed fleet once come together into the port of SYRACVSA, and the rage of the sea well appeased, he put to sea againe for the Islands BALEARES, now called MAIORCA and MINORCA: where in his course he met with a tempest from the West, more terrible and dreadfull than the first: wherein diuers of the gallies hauing lost their masts and sailes, were glad with extreame labour and perill in striuing against the wrought sea to get into a harbor of the lesser Island, taking name of *Barchinus Mago* the famous Carthaginensian, who name it retaineth vntill this day. From hence the emperour with all his fleet passed ouer to the greater Island, being wonderfull glad that *Ferdinand Gonzaga* his viceroy in SICILIA was in good time come with the Sicilian gallies and ships of ITALIE, in number a hundred and fiftie saile, wherein he had brought such store of bisket and victuall, as might haue sufficed for a long warre. *Mendoza* was also expected to haue come thither with his fleet from SPAINE, but he by reason of contrarie winds being not able to hold that course, altered his purpose according to the tempest, & so happily cut ouer directly to ALGIERS. So the emperour nothing misdoubting the carefull diligence of *Mendoza*, and thinking that which was indeed alreadie changed, and the wind now seruing faire, by the persuasion of *Auria* his Admirall hoised saile, and in two daies came before ALGIERS, and there in goodly order came to ankar before the citie in the sight of the enemie. Whilest the fleet thus lay, two of the pyrats which had beene abroad at sea seeking for prize, returning to ALGIERS, not knowing any thing of the fleet, fell into the bay amongst them before they were aware: the bigger whereof *Viscontes Cicada* stemmed with his gallie and sunke him, the other with wonderfulll celeritie got into the hauen. In the meane time *Mendoza* with his gallies had passed the promontorie of *Apollo*, now called the cape of CASSINEVS, and in token of honour saluting the emperour after the manner at sea, with all his great Ordinance, gaue him knowledge that the Spanish fleet was not farre behind. In this fleet was aboue a hundred tall ships of BISCAY and the low countries, and of other smaller vessels a far greater number. In these ships besides the footmen was embarked a great number of braue horsemen out of all parts of SPAINE: for many noble gentlemen had voluntarily of their owncharge gallantly furnished themselues with braue armour and couragious horses, to serue their prince and countrie against the Infidels. Ouer these choice men commaunded *Ferdinand* of TOLEDO, duke of ALBA, for his approued valour then accounted a famous captaine. These ships going altogither with sailes, were not yet able to double the cape, as did *Mendoza* with his gallies, for now it was a dead calme: howbeit the billow of the sea went yet high, by reason of the rage of the late tempest, and did so beat against the plaine shore, that it was not possible to land the souldiors, but that they must needs be washed vp to the middle: which thing the emperour thought it not good to put them vnto, and so to oppose them seasicke and thorow wet against the sudden & desperat assaults of their fierce enemies. He also staied for the comming of the Spanish ships for two causes: first, that he might with his vnited power more strongly assault the citie, and terrifie the enemie; then, to communicat the whole glorie of the action with the Spaniards, at whose request and forwardnesse and greatest charge he had vndertaken that war. Which fatall delay of two daies, although it was grounded vpon good reason, did not only disturbe an assured victorie, but to the notable hurt of the whole armie, opened a way to all the calamities which afterward insued.

The emperour driuen by tempest into Sicilia.

The emperour commeth to Algiers.

The emperors fleet out of Spaine and the low countries.

The duke of Alba.

Delay in great affaires hurtfull

In the meane while the emperour sent a conuenient messenger to *Assanagas*, otherwise and more truely called *Assan-Aga*, or *Assan* the eunuch; who with a little flag of truce in his hand making signe of parley, and aunswered by the Moores with like, as their manner is, went on shore, and was of them courteously receiued and brought to *Assan*. This *Assan* was an eunuch, borne in SARDINIA, brought vp from his youth in the Mahometane superstition by *Barbarussa*, a man both politike and valiant, and by him left for the keeping of his kingdome of ALGIERS in his absence with *Solyman*. This messenger brought into his presence, required him forth-

The emperour sendeth a messenger to Assan Aga gouernor of Algiers for Barbarussa.

A forthwith to deliuer the citie(firſt ſurpriſed by force and trecherie by *Horruccius*,and afterwards to the deſtruction of mankind, fortified by *Hariadenus Barbaruſſa* his brother) to *Charles* the mightie emperour, come in perſon himſelfe to be reuenged on thoſe horrible pyrats: which if he would do,it ſhould be lawfull for the Turks to depart whether they would,and for the naturall Moores to abide ſtill, with their goods and religion wholly reſerued vnto them vntouched, as in former time: and for himſelfe,hee ſhould receiue of the emperour great rewards both in time of peace and warres,ſo that he would remember himſelfe,that he was borne in SARDINIA, and was once a chriſtian; and accept of the faireſt occaſion which could poſſibly be offered for him to returne againe to the worſhipping of the true God,and to inioie the fauour and bountie
B of the moſt mightie emperour, and withall to reuenge himſelfe of the cruell tyrant *Barbaruſſa*, for the vnnaturall villanie done vnto his perſon. But if he would now dallie on the time, and make proofe of the ſtrength of ſo great a preparation, he would vndoubtedly with the reſt of his followers receiue the ſame reward of his obſtinacie, which they had to the example of others receiued at TVNES. Whereunto the vngratious eunuch anſwered, That he thought him altogither mad, that would follow his enemies counſell: and with a grinning countenance aſked him, Vpon what hope the emperour truſted to be able to win the citie? the meſſenger pointing with his finger directly to the fleet, told him, That which you ſee, with his great artillerie, and valour of his ſouldiors,both horſe and foot: Whereat the eunuch ſcornfully laughing, replied, And we with like force and valour will defend this citie, and make this place, alreadie fa-
C mous for your ouerthrowes here twice, now the third time of all others moſt famous by the emperours diſcomfiture. It is reported, that there was in ALGIERS an old witch, famous for her predictions,who had (as it was ſaid) foretold the ſhipwreckes and miſerie of *Didaco Verra* and *Hugo Moncada* to them of ALGIERS; and alſo prefixed a time when as the Chriſtian emperour aduenturing to beſiege that citie, ſhould there receiue great loſſe both by ſea and land: The fame of which blind prophecie ſeruing fitly to confirme the hope of good ſucceſſe in the minds of the vulgar multitude, *Aſſan* ſo fed and augmented (althought he himſelfe being a craftie wiſe fellow, belieued no ſuch vanitie)that he did therewith not only encourage his owne ſouldiors,but alſo ſtrucke a terrour into the minds of the weaker ſort of his enemies,ſeeing themſelues caſt vpon ſo dangerous a coaſt vpon the approch of Winter. There was in garriſon in the
D citie but eight hundred Turks,and moſt of them horſemen, but ſuch,as whoſe valour and reſolution farre exceeded their number. For *Aſſan* had loſt many of his beſt men, ſome in fight againſt *Mendoza*; and otherſome at ſea,ſlaine or taken by *Auria* in CORSICA;and in other places by the Rhodian,Neapolitane,and Sicilian gallies; but many mo were by his league gone to aid the Moores againſt the Portingals: the other multitude did ſcarce make vp the number of fiue thouſand; which were partly naturall Moores borne in that countrie, and partly ſuch as were borne in GRANADO; to whom was ioined many fugitiues out of the Iſlands of MAIORCA and MINORCA,who in former time hauing entred into rebellion, and fearing condigne puniſhment,were fled to ALGIERS, and there reuolted to the Mahometane ſuperſtition. But the captaines of the wild Numidians made vp a great number both of horſe and foot: which lying
E ſtragling without the citie in the open fields, ſhould night and day vex and moleſt the Chriſtians. This brutiſh people, naturally enemies vnto the Chriſtians, had *Aſſan* with rewards and hope of a rich ſpoile,allured out of the countries thereabout to aid him: neither was it lawfull for any man to carrie his wife or children out of the citie into places of more ſaferie farther off, or to ſhew any ſmall token of feare,paine of death being by the imperious eunuch propoſed to whoſeouer ſhould but looke out heauily for feare of danger,or ſpeake a word ſauoring of cowardiſe. The emperor by *Auria* making choiſe of a moſt conuenient place for landing his men, laid his gallies ſo cloſe vnto his tall ſhips,that his armed ſouldiors might with eaſe come out of the high built ſhips into them,and ſo out of them into the long boats, to be forthwith ſet on
F ſhore. And ſuch was the ſpeedie diligence of them that had the charge of that matter, and the plentie of boats ſtill readie to receiue the ſouldiors as faſt as they could come out of the gallies, that the footmen were in a verie ſhort time all landed. The emperour hauing a little reſted and refreſhed his ſouldiors, diuided his armie into three equall battels,which was in number about twentie thouſand footmen, beſides horſmen, and others who of their owne voluntarie will then followed the emperours fortune. Vnto euery battell he appointed three field pieces, to terrifie the Numidian horſemen,which were ſtill pricking vp and downe about them,readie to charge,

The ſcornefull anſwer of Aſſan the eunuch to the emperors meſſenger.

The emperour landeth his armie at Algiers.

if

if they could take them at any aduantage. And ſo ſetting forward a few furlongs, encamped in G
a ſtrong and conuenient place, neere vnto the citie betweene two deepe ditches, which the wa-
ter falling from the mountaines had naturally worne ſo deepe, that neither horſeman nor foot-
man could well paſſe ouer, but by bridge: and faſt by vpon the left hand was a hill, from the top
whereof it ſeemed the citie might with great ordinance well be battered.

The diſcription of Algiers. The citie of ALGIERS, ſometime the royall ſeat of the great king *Iuba*, called of the Romans IVLIA CÆSAREA, is in forme of a triangle, ſcituat faſt by the ſea towards the North, hauing a hauen, but neither great, neither ſafe from the North wind. The houſes farther off from the ſea, ſtand in ſeemly order vpon the riſing of a ſteep hill, as it were vpon degrees, in ſuch ſort, that the windowes of one row ſtill ouerlooke the tops of the next beneath it, into the ſea, moſt beautifull to behold. The emperour hauing deuided his campe into three parts, euerie nation by H
themſelues, lying on the Eaſt ſide of the towne, was in great hope to win it; and the rather, for that whileſt he aſſaulted it on that ſide, his ſhips and gallies from the North ſide, might in time of the aſſault with their great ordinance beat the enemie all alongſt the wall: which ſtill riſing higher and higher according to the riſing of the ſteepe hill, could not conueniently be defended with one bulwarke, as we ſee it may in plaine ground. Neereſt vnto the riſing of the hils, lay the Spaniards: in the middeſt, the Germans with the emperour; and in the plaine neereſt vnto the
The Numidians skirmiſh with the Spaniards. ſea, the Italians. In the meane time whileſt the great ordinance was landing and the horſes vnſhipping, the Numidians with a hideous outcrie ſhewed themſelues vpon the tops of the mountaines aboue the Spaniards, and from thence eaſily gauled them with their darts and ſhot: for they nimbly running too and fro in the known paths of the rough mountaines, would ſuddenly I
and fiercely aſſaile them, but after the manner of their nation skirmiſhing a far off, rather than neere at hand. In which manner of light skirmiſhes, all that day was ſpent vntill night with ſmall danger, but much trouble to the Spaniards. And when night was come, theſe wild people, one companie ſtill ſucceeding another in the place they had before taken, neuer left ſhooting; for whereſoeuer they ſaw any fire in the Spaniſh campe, thither came arrowes, darts, and ſtones flying as thicke as haile: for remedie whereof, the Spaniards were glad to put out their
The Spaniards put the Numidians to flight, and gaine the hils. fires, and with ſilence to expect the day, that they might come neerer vnto them. Wherefore as ſoone as the ſunne was vp, the Spaniards by the perſuaſion of *Aluares Sandes*, maſter of the campe, valiantly climing vp the high mountaines, repulſed and put to flight the Numidians, and tooke the top of the hils, and there lay as it were incamped in the poore ſhepheards cottages. But the ſame day ſuch a multitude of the wild people was flockt about them, that they were compaſſed in round, and glad to fight on euerie ſide in a ring. Yet this fierceneſſe of this barbarous people, was by the valour of the Sicilian companies quickly repreſſed, whoſe pikemen gliſtering in their bright armour, made ſmall account of the Numidians arrowes and darts, but orderly ſtepping forwards with their pikes, and the harquebuſiers cloſe by their ſides, eaſily repul-
The deſcription of the Numidian footmen and horſemen. ſed their naked enemies. The Numidian footmen are for moſt part youths halfe naked, with long haire not vnlike the Iriſh, vſing no other weapons but darts: they fight mingled with their horſemen, truſting the one to the other, and are of a wonderfull ſwiftneſſe and agilitie of bodie. Their horſemen vſe long ſpeares, armed at both ends, which they with a maruellous dexteritie vſe to the endangering of their enemie purſuing them: they vſe alſo long and light targuets made L
of leather, wherewith they ſo cunningly defend themſelues and their horſes, both in their charge and retrait, that for a ſmall trifle, in reſpect of the danger, they will giue a man leaue to caſt ſeauen darts at one of them, which they will all moſt ſurely auoid, either with their ſpeare, or receiue them without harme in their targuet. In the mean time, whileſt this wild people thus skirmiſhed all the day, at night a ſudden miſchance ouerthrew all the emperors hope: for as he ſtood beholding the vnſhipping of his great ordinance, his horſes, victuall, and other neceſſaries of the armie, a ſtorme of wind and raine began about ſix a clock in the afternoone, holding on all the
A maruellous tempeſt. night without intermiſſion, with ſuch rage, as if heauen and earth ſhould haue gone togither: wherewith the whole armie at land was wonderfully troubled, and a great part of the fleet at ſea by force of tempeſt driuen aground, periſhed. That night three companies of the Italians, by M
the appointment of their Generall, lay without the trenches againſt the ſudden aſſault of ſo vncertaine an enemie, who when they had all the night endured the vehement raine and extreame cold, were ſo ouercome with the extreamitie of the weather, that neither was their minds able to relieue their weake bodies, neither their feeble bodies their diſcouraged minds: for they could neither

A neither conueniently ſtand nor lie downe, all the ground being ſo mirie, that at euerie ſtept they ſunke vp to the calfe of the legge. Vpon theſe ſtaruen companies, the Turkiſh horſemen and Moores footmen, who diligently obſerued the watch of the Chriſtians, perceiuing their diſtres, ſuddenly ſallied out in the dawning of the day; and ſo fiercely charged them, their match and pouder being now ſo wet that they could not vſe their pieces, that they all fled, except a few pikemen, who made a ſtand, and were all quickly ſlain by the Turks: who ſo deſperatly purſued the reſt in chaſe, that they followed them ouer the trench into the campe. This alarum being heard, *Camillus Columna* the Italian Generall came preſently thither, being ſent by the emperor, who with certaine companies iſſued out ouer the bridge againſt the enemie: who now in ſhew diſcouraged with the comming out of this new ſupplie, did in deed, or at leaſtwiſe made as if
B they did diſorderly retire for feare. At which time *Ferdinand Gonzaga*, viceroy of SICILIA, a man of greateſt account in the armie next vnto the emperour, comming in alſo, and angrie with them which had before fled; perſuading them as valiant men, to recompence their ſhamefull flight with a freſh charge, by driuing the enemie home to his owne doore: which thing *Columna* ſaid could not be done without great perill: But *Gonzaga* being a man of noble courage, deſired to haue the diſgrace which the Italians had receiued, ſalued ſome way, although it were with neuer ſo great danger; thinking alſo that it might happily fall out, that the enemie being put to flight, and haſtily purſued, they might together with them enter the citie, without danger of the artillerie. So without farther delay, the reſt of the Italian companies were led forth of their *The Moores put to flight by the Italians.*
trenches with great cheerefulneſſe by *Auguſtine Spinula*, who ſo valiantly charged the enemies
C that they put them to flight, and purſued them ſo hard, that they came with them to the verie gates of the citie: where many ſhut out for feare of letting in the Italians togither with them, eſcaped by knowne waies, ſome to another gate, and ſome into the mountaines. But then theſe barbarous people, with darts and ſhot from the wals, began to ouerwhelme the Italians which were vnaduiſedly come within their danger, and with terrible outcries to terrifie them: and they which before were fled without the wals, returned againe to fight. They alſo which had ſhut the *The Italians diſcomfited by the Moores flie, and indanger the whole campe.*
gate, ſallied out againe, and hardly charged the Italians, who alreadie galled with ſhot from the wals, and rent in ſunder with the great ordinance, fled moſt diſorderly; for why, they were but raw ſouldiors taken vp in haſt, little or nothing acquainted with the wars. At which time *Aſſan* alſo ſallying out, who was eaſily knowne by his countenance and rich attire, purſued the chaſe
D with his troupes of Turks and Moores footmen. Only certaine knights of the RHODES fought valiantly, and retired orderly: and *Spinula* with ſome other gentlemen making a ſtand at a little woodden bridge, ſomewhat ſtaied the enemie and ſaued the liues of many. So the Italians which firſt charged moſt valiantly, being in the flight become hindermoſt, the enemie ſtriking them downe as they fled, couered the fields with their dead bodies by the ſpace of halfe a mile, eſpecially they which fled towards the ſea: for there they were circumuented and ſlaine by the mercileſſe Numidians, who beholding the ſhipwrecke, were come downe to the ſea ſide for prey. But the formoſt companies of the Italians which firſt fled into the campe, fled in ſo much haſt and ſo great feare, that none of the leaders in ſo great and ſudden a perplexitie, remembred either the common ſafetie, or performed the duetie of an aduiſed captaine; ſo that all ſeemed at
E once loſt, both by ſea and land. Only the emperour, armed with an inuincible courage againſt all the chances of fortune, and not to be diſmaied with any miſhap, was both vnto himſelfe and others that day the greateſt captaine; for when as all was almoſt loſt, he in good time ſtaied the matter by comming on with the ſquadron of Germans, whereof he ſent before three enſigns to ſtay the flight, and with them as a ſure and freſh ſupply to guard his campe beyond the bridge which was ouer the ditch, ſeruing his armie for a trench as we haue before ſaid. But ſuch a feare had poſſeſſed the minds of the flying Italians, and ſuch was the fierce purſuit of the enemie, that thoſe Germans (not before woont to turne their backs) as if they had been afraid of the Turkes white caps, or not able to abide their ſight, or to hold vp weapon againſt them; by and by turned their backes, and ſhamefully fled for companie with the Italians. Then the emperour gallo-
F ping forth with his horſe, and his ſword in his hand drawne, reprouing them of cowardiſe that fled, ſet forward with the German ſquadron, and with a ſtout and manly courage ſpake to them theſe few words in their owne language: *When will you (fellow ſouldiors) ſhew your faces to your proud enemies; if now when you ſhould fight for the honour of the Chriſtian name, for the glorie of the German nation, for the ſafegard of your owne liues, in the preſence of your emperour, you feare a* *The notable courage of the emperor in ſtaying the flight of his armie.*

few disordered and naked Barbarians? Immediatly when he had thus said, the Germans touched with shame, and disdaining that it should be thought they needed any exhortation to performe the parts of valiant souldiors, issued out against the enemie: who moued with their comming, and seeing the Italian battell againe restored by the valour and trauell of certain valiant and expert captaines, stood still a while, and began to retire; whether it were because they feared the great artillerie & assault of the Germans, or that they thought they had done enough for that sally: when as for the full accõplishment of the victorie they saw the Christian fleet ouercome with a most horrible tempest, miserably to perish before their faces; & many of their men, especially the Moores hasted to the sea side in hope of a more certaine prey, whereas was no enemie to be feared. For the blustring winds blowing from diuers quarters, as if they had conspired to raise a most horrible tempest, had made such a wrought sea, and the hugie billowes went so high, that the ships by the violence of the weather, & rage of the sea, put from their anchors, fell foule one of another, and were so lost; or else driuen vpon the maine, were there beaten in pieces in the sight of the armie: so that all the sea coast Westward, from ALGIERS to CERCELLO, lay full of dead men & horses, and the ribs of broken ships. The Numidians beholding this miserable wrecke, came down by great companies from the mountaines, and without mercie slew all that came aline to land. In the space of a few houres was lost about an hundred and fortie ships, and all the small boats and caruels, which were in number many. Some of the gallies, when they had from midnight to the next day at noone, by the painful labour of the mariners and skilfulnesse of the masters, rid it out; being no longer able to endure the rage of the tempest, and fearing to be eaten vp with the sea, with sailes and oares ran a ground: but the souldiors and mariners swimming to land in hope to saue their liues, and thinking that the greatest danger had bin now past, were by the Numidian horsemen which ran vp and downe the sea side, slaine. There might a man haue seene free men of all sorts, with teares commending their liues and libertie to their own gally-slaues; that by the speech and intreatie of them, which by the sudden change of fortune had but euen now shaken off their yrons, and with merrie hearts swam out to their libertie, they might be saued from the crueltie of the fierce Numidians. It was a most grieuous and wofull sight for diuers hard extremities; when as euerie man according to the dispositiõn of his mind and skill in swimming, standing doubtfull in most assured death, which to receiue or refuse, was by fatall destinie drawne to his end, and either drowned in the sea, or thrust thorow with the enemies launce: yet most made choise to abide the danger of the sea, and to expect the eueut of the tempest, rather than to hasten their end by the enemies mercilesse hand. By that meanes it came to passe, that that barbarous crueltie of the enemie (as a thing most feared of the mariners and souldiors) saued many gallies, which by the appointment of the fearefull mariners and passengers should otherwise haue been run on ground. But after that, a notable gallie wherin *Iannettin Auria* went, was seene to come neere vnto the shoare, and to be driuen vpon the sands by force of weather and the beating of other gallies. The emperour not enduring to see so valiant a young gentleman, captaine of many gallies, slaine without helpe by the Moores in the sight of *Auria* his vncle; sent by and by one of his captaines called *Antonius* of ARAGON, with three bands of Italians to the sea side: by whose comming the Moores were put to flight, and he with the rest in the gallie saued; but so, that the sauing of him was the losse of diuers other gallies. For many deliuered of the feare of the Numidians, & trusting to the rescue of the souldiors come downe to the sea side, desiring to saue themselues from the rage of the sea, ran their gallies on ground; and had not some bold captains (grieued to see so great a losse) run vp and downe the banks with their drawne swords in their hands, and by threatning death vnto the gally-slaues and mariners, staied their rowing, most part of the gallies had by the example of the others perished. *Auria*, not so angrie at himselfe as at the emperour (who, contrarie to the obseruation of skilful seamen, could not be dissuaded from taking in hand that great expedition in so suspitious a time of the yeare) with an inuincible courage striue against the violence of the tempest, and rage of the sea: insomuch, that being requested by some of his friends to saue himselfe whatsoeuer became of the gallie; he was so angrie thereat, that he commanded them to be bestowed vnder the hatches. Foure gallies also of *Virginius Vrsinus*, earle of ANGVILLARIA, and as many of the Rhodians, after his example rid it out, the reputation of their honour exceeding the feare of death. Certaine gallies also of SICILIA, NAPLES, and SPAINE, happily endured all the rage of the tempest: yet was there fifteene great gallies cast away; with the

An horrible tempest.

The Christian fleet perisheth by shipwrecke.

A hard choise.

Many gallies lost by fauing of one man.

G H I K L M

A the losse whereof, besides the losse of so many ships, the tempest still enduring, so great sorrow and desperation in the wofull expectation of the wrecke of all, possessed the whole armie, that not only the young souldiours regarding onely their owne liues, but euen the most valiant captaines, carefull of the common estate, were vtterly discouraged: for neuer was armie in any memorie, ouerwhelmed with a greater concourse of calamities, when as all their victuals being lost in three daies, nothing was left to relieue them withall, and they wanted tents wherin to shroud and rest the souldiors spent with labour, hunger, cold, and wounds, in such perpetuall raine & so dirtie a countrie. In which so great miseries, a wonderful care heauier than the former fear exceedingly troubled the minds of all men, to think vpon that horrible wrecke; when as hauing lost so many ships, & they poore men landed in AFFRICK, were in doubt how euer to return again into their natiue countries. Yet the notable courage of the emperor still kept the distressed men in hope, which neuer altogether forsaketh wretched men in the midst of their calamities: for he with a couragious heart & cheerful countenance performed all the parts of a prouident & courteous Generall. For when he had againe made sure his camp against the assaults of the Barbarians, he commanded the wearied captains, especially the duke of ALBA (wonderfully wearied in the late skirmish, and dung wet) to spare themselues, and take their rest: he comforted the wounded men and caused them to be carried & cherished in the tents which by chance yet stood (for the tempestuous wind had almost ouerthrown them all) and so not sparing himselfe for any pains, being in his armour and thorow wet, woon the hearts of all his souldiors the more. In this conflict he lost about three thousand men, amongst whom was fiue of his forward captaines, and three knights of the RHODES: but many moe were hurt. The greatest losse was thought to be in losse of the ships and of the mariners, which was also increased by the losse of a wonderfull deale of great ordinance, reckoned so much the greater, for that it would come into the hands of the Moores, to the common harme of the Christians, so soone as the sea would giue them leaue to diue for it. Shortly after, *Auria* (as he was to foresee a tempest, a wonderfull obseruer of the sea, of the heauens, and of the clouds) mistrusting that place, departed with the remainder of the fleet to the cape called METAFVSIVM; because it was a place of safer riding for his gallies, and better for the taking in of the souldiors: aduising the emperor to march thither by land. Which his counsell the emperour liked well of, to relieue the hunger of his souldiors, commanded first all the draught horses which were first vnshipped for the drawing of the great Ordinance, and after them the horses for seruice, to be killed, and diuided for meat amongst the souldiors. As for wood to make fire of, they had plentie of the planks and ribs of the broken ships, fortune as it were with that one poore benefit recompensing so many calamities. The next day the emperor departed from ALGIERS, with his armie diuided into three battels, the sicke and wounded men being receiued into the middle: and when he had marched seuen miles (the enemies horsemen still houering about him) he came to a headie brooke, which the Moores call ALCARAZ: which was growne so high with the abundant raine and the checke of the wind and of the sea, that being but a shallow thing before, it was not now to be passed ouer by a good horseman. Wherefore the emperour of necessitie there encamped, in such sort, that lying with his armie in forme of a triangle, two sides of his armie was defended with the sea and the brook, and the other with a strong guard of armed men, for he thought it not good to depart from the sea, a sure defence for his armie on the left hand, to seeke a fourd further off: many aduenturing to swim ouer, were by the violence of the streame carried away and drowned. Wherefore the emperour caused a bridge to be made ouer it, of the masts & saile yards of the broken ships, which were by chance there taken vp, and so passed ouer the Italians and Germans. The Spaniards marching higher vp the brooke, found a fourd whereby they passed ouer. After which time the Turkes pursued them no further, being called backe againe by *Assan* their gouernour: as for the Moores and Numidians which still followed at hand, alwaies readie to skirmish, they were easily repulsed by the harquebusiers, and field pieces appointed to euery nation: but vpon such sicke & wounded men as were not able to keepe way with the armie, they exercised all manner of crueltie: for there was none which in that small hope, possessed with feare of their own safetie, was greatly moued with the compassion of their fellowes miserie. The next day passing ouer another little riuer, which the souldiours waded ouer vp to the breasts, they came in three daies march to the rode where the fleet lay, and encamped in the ruines of the old citie TIPASA, neere vnto the sea side, which serued them in stead of a fortresse against the Barbarians. The sea was now calme, the

The miserie of the Christian armie.

The cheerfulnesse of the emperour comforteth the whole distressed armie

Horses good meat in the emperors armie.

The emperour departeth from Algiers.

He embarketh his armie.

wind laied, and the weather ſo faire that all men thought the ſouldiours might now well be em- G
barked and tranſported into EVROPE; wherefore the emperour to the great ioy of the whole armie commanded euerie man to make himſelfe readie to goe abourd, in ſuch ſort, that firſt the Italians, next the Germans, and laſt of all the Spaniards ſhould be embarked: but ſo many ſhips and gallies as is before ſaid, being loſt by ſhipwrecke, it was thought that thoſe which were left were not able to receiue the whole armie, although it was crouded togither as cloſe as were poſſible. Wherefore the emperour commanded the maſters and owners of the ſhips to caſt all the horſes ouerbourd into the ſea, reputing it an vnmerciful part to prefer the ſafegard of thoſe horſes, although they were of great worth, before the life of the baſeſt common ſouldiour or horſeboy in his campe; which thing much grieued the minds of the noblemen and owners of

Horſes of great price drowned by the emperors commaund to make roome for the common ſouldiers.

thoſe goodly beaſts, not only for that they were (not without extreame neceſſitie) for the preſent H
depriued of ſuch an ineſtimable treaſure, but ſhould for euer, as they ſaid, loſe the moſt notable race of horſes in SPAINE: there, with griefe & vaine compaſſion, was to be ſeen goodly horſes of ſeruice, bearing high their proud heads, ſwimming all about the ſea vnto the ſhips neereſt vnto them for ſafegard, as if it had beene to the ſhore, and in the end wearied with long ſwimming to be there drowned. But ſcarce halfe the ſouldiors were yet embarked, when the Eaſt and North-eaſt wind, and ſtraightwaies after, diuers contrarie winds almoſt as great as the firſt, roſe: wherupon the ſhips which had alreadie taken in the ſouldiours, not expecting any commaund, for feare of being driuen vpon the rockes, directed their courſe according as the wind carried them with full ſailes alongſt the coaſt: They were quickly out of ſight and diſperſed with the tempeſt, ſome into one countrie, ſome into another, carrying the fame of that ſhipwrecke, and the report I
that all was loſt, into all the Iſlands of the Mediteranean and ports of ITALIE. The force of this tempeſt was ſo great, and the billow went ſo high, that ſome of the ſhips were in the ſight of their fellowes ſwallowed vp of the ſea. But amongſt the reſt two Spaniſh ſhips full of ſouldiors were by wonderfull miſhap by contrarie winds driuen againe to ALGIERS, and there ſet faſt

Two Spaniſh ſhips ful of ſouldiors driuen by tempeſt to Algiers.

vpon that fatall ſhore, where the Numidian horſemen with a multitude of Moores following them, came running downe to the ſea ſide, to kill them as they ſhould come to ſhore: for the barbarous people thirſting after Chriſtian bloud, would not receiue them to mercie, although they were readie to yeeld themſelues, and couenanted nothing but the ſafegard of their liues. At which their crueltie the Spaniards diſdaining, with their weapons in their hands got to ſhore, and ſtanding cloſe togither as deſperat men, withſtood thē who had with their multitude quick- K
ly compaſſed them in round: yet in deſpight of what that barbarous multitude (without regard of humanitie or law of armes) could doe, they made way thorow the midſt of them, from the place where they were caſt on ſhore, vnto the very gates of the citie. But ſeeing the Turks ſallie out, they called vnto them, offering to yeeld themſelues priſoners to *Aſſan*, without further reſiſtance, if they would aſſure them their liues, which they were in good hope of, for that he was born of Chriſtian parents in SARDINIA, and was attended vpon with many renegate Spaniards.

Aſſan taketh the Spaniards to mercie.

So *Aſſan* comming forth of the citie, gaue them his faith for their ſafetie, and beating away the Moores and Numidians, courteouſly ſaued them all, wiſely making great account of ſo great againe as would redound vnto him by ſo many priſoners, ioined with no ſmall commendation L
of his clemencie in ſauing them. Of the Germans the third part neuer returned home, but were either loſt with ſhipwrecke, or els dead of the ſickneſs enſuing ſo great miſeries. The emperour perſuaded (or rather ouerruled) by *Auria* to auoid the violence of the tempeſt, ſailed alongſt the coaſt of AFFRICKE Eaſtward to BVZIA: the caſtle whereof was kept with a ſmall garriſon of Spaniards: where the emperor landing, found ſome freſh victuall, though not much, yet ſuch as

The emperour commeth to Buzia.

did both him and the other noblemen no ſmall pleaſure. Whileſt the emperour lay at BVZIA expecting fairer weather, a great ſhip of GENVA, laded with victuall, chanced to come into the bay, to the great reioycing of the hungrie ſouldiours: but ſuch was the violence of the tempeſt, that her ankars came home, and ſhe driuen vpon the flats, was caſt away; yet ſo, as that part of the victuall driuen to ſhore, and halfe ſpoiled with the ſalt water, well relieued the encreaſing want. In the meane time the emperour when he had long looked for the aſſuaging of the tem- M
peſt, and was now out of hope of any new ſupplie of victual, ſent away *Gonzaga* with the Sicilian and Rhodian gallies: for the wind before at North was now come to Northweſt, and put them in hope to aduenture againe to ſea, rather than to ſtay there longer. So although with a troubleſome yet a proſperous courſe they came in ſhort time into the port of VTICA, now cal-

led

A led FARINAS: where *Muleasses* king of TVNES bountifully relieued *Gonzaga* and his fleet with all kind of victuall and other necessaries. From whence they afterward departed, and landed all in safetie at DREPANVM in SICILIA. The blustering winds were now at length wearie of blowwing, and the raging sea became calme, so that the skilfull sea men for feare of new dangers, and wearie of those that were past, thought it best to aduenture againe to sea. Almost euery houre they were reasoning in councel, What course they were for most safetie best to take: when some were of opinion, that it was best to beare for SARDINIA or CORSICA: and other some would haue had them to haue kept alongst the coast of AFFRICA, and so directly for SICILIA. But the wind comming faire at East, the emperor directed his course to the Islands BALEARES, & from thence at length arriued at the port of new CARTHAGE in SPAINE, greatly commended euen of
B his enemies for the wonderfull courage and constancie in passing thorow so many extremities, in such sort, as if he had triumphed ouer the malice of fortune.

The emperor arriueth in Spaine.

1542

About this time the dissembled friendship betwixt *Charles* the emperour and *Francis* the French king brake out into open hatred. The king first thinking himselfe deluded by the emperor, who had long time fed him with the vaine hope of the restitution of the dukedome of MILLAN, when as he meant nothing lesse; and of late abused by the death of *Rinco* his embassadour, slaine by the Spaniards in passing down the riuer Padus, as is before declared. In reuenge wherof he raised a great power in FRANCE, and at such time as most men thought he would haue inuaded ITALIE, sent *Charles* his son with the one part of his forces into the low countries, which were then gouerned by *Marie* queene of HVNGARIE, the emperors sister; and *Henrie* his other
C sonne with the other part of his forces to inuade SPAINE, both young princes of great hope. And not so contented, but desirous by all means to trouble and molest the emperor, as he did in the low countries by setting on the duke of CLEVE: so by *Antonius Polinus* his embassadour, a man of great discretion, he earnestly solicited *Solyman* the great Turke, with whom he was then in league, to spoile the borders of SPAINE with his gallies, at the same time that *Henrie* his sonne was besieging PERPENNA in SPAINE. For which practise he was of most men discommended, as too much fauouring his own griefe; and especially by such as affected the emperour. But how this matter, which grew vpon the French king no small enuie, was carried in the Turkes court, shall not (as I hope) be vnto this historie impertinent to declare.

The French king the more to trouble the emperor solliciteth Soyman to inuade his countries.

After the death of *Rinco* slain by the Spaniards, *Francis* the French king sent *Antonius Polinus*,
D a man of great dexteritie, his embassadour to *Solyman*: who passing by many by-waies to VENICE, and so ouer the gulfe to SIBINICVM, crossing ouer ILLYRIA, met with *Solyman* in MISIA, as he was comming from BVDA: and there first offered vnto him the present sent from the king his master (for with emptie hands no man might presume to come to those barbarous kings of the East) which present was a cupbord of plate, curiously wrought, in weight 600 pounds; and 500 rich garments of all sorts of silke & scarlet to be bestowed vpon the Bassaes and other great courtiers. *Solyman* after he had read the French kings letters, & heard what he had further to say, seemed to be greatly moued with the death of *Rinco*, & promised *Polinus* not to be wanting vnto the French king, by sea or land to giue him aid in his iust wars against *Charles* his enemie, for breaking of the league: but for as much as nothing could be well determined of such
E matters in his iourney of so great hast, he told him, that as soon as he was come to CONSTANTIOPLE, he should then haue answer by his Bassaes of all his demands. The embassador aboue all things desired, That he would send *Hariadenus Barbarussa* with his fleet against the next Summer into PROVINCE, there to be receiued into the French harbors, & to be imploied against the emperor as occasion should require: & further, That he would request the Venetians, with whom he was able to do much, to ioine in league with the king his master against *Charles* the emperor, whose power began now to be dreadfull to their estate. *Polinus* was not slacke in his busines, but all the way as he went sought to win the fauour of the Bassaes, still giuing them one present or other, & filling their minds with the hope of greater. But when they were come to CONSTANTINOPLE, in the latter end of December, *Solyman* promising what he had before said, aduised
F *Polinus* to returne to FRANCE with his letters, & to bring him certaine word backe againe from the king of the determinat time & full resolution of taking those wars in hand: & that he would in the meane time send *Iunusbeius* his embassador to VENICE, who had been there diuers times before; & would prouide to haue such a fleet in readines, as he desired. *Polinus* exceeding glad of that answer, with wonderful speed returned back again to the king, bringing with him as presents

Polinus the French embassadour meeteth Solyman cõming from Buda, and offereth vnto him presents from the French king.

The request of the French embassadour to Solyman.

from *Solyman* two goodly Turkish horses, and a sword richly set with stones of great price. The G
Polinus returneth into France French king hauing by his embassador receiued *Solymans* letters and presents, and three daies togither discoursed with him at large of the manner of his proceeding in the Turkes court, in short time after sent him back againe to *Solyman* with full instructions both of the time and places, and other circumstances of the intended warre. *Polinus* comming to VENICE, found not *Iunusbeius* there, as he had well hoped: yet to lose no time in expecting his comming, he with *Pellicerius* embassador Legier for the French king, and other of the French faction, laboured the Senatours in the behalfe of the king. For it was thought likely ynough, that the Venetians still measuring all their counsels by their profit, would easily consent to that league, especially being requested thereunto by *Solyman*, and put in hope to haue the port towne MARANVS deliuered vnto them in reward thereof; which otherwise the French, in whose possession it was, H
Polinus sent back againe to Soliman, cõmeth to Venice, and notably soliciteth the Venetians to take vp armes with the French king against the emperour. threatened to deliuer to the Turkes, and to make them their euill neighbours, rather than to haue it taken from them by the Germanes. Wherefore *Polinus* hauing audience giuen him in the Senat, notably pleaded the French kings cause, grieuously lamented the death of the embassadour slaine by the Spaniards, and bitterly enueighed against the ambition of the emperour, who as he said aspired to the whole monarchie of all ITALIE, not by true vertue and valour, but by meere craft and deceit, encroching still vpon the liberties of the free states, and by little and little imposing vpon them the yoke of bondage: In confirmation whereof, hee produced many examples, to them well known, requesting them as ancient friends and confederats of the French, to ioine their forces with the kings, in which doing, they should assure themselues of such rewards of the vndoubted victorie, as they could not desire greater. Wheras if they should I
refuse so to do, and would rather sit still and looke on as neuters, they should vndoubtedly, fortune hauing decided the quarrell, grieuously offend both, and might worthily expect of the vanquished, hatred; and of the conqueror, iniurie: Besides that, in taking vp of armes they should highly gratifie *Solyman*, who prouoked with late iniuries, had determined with a puissant armie to inuade HVNGARIE, and at the same time to send *Barbarussa* with a great fleet against the Spaniards their common enemies: for the imparting of which his designes, he would shortly send vnto them *Iunusbeius* his embassadour: As for the euent of the warre, they needed not to doubt, when as they of themselues were strong ynough quickly to thrust the emperour out of the dukedome of MILLAN, being generally hated of the people, feeding his souldiors with the spoile of the countrey, and on euery side beset both by sea and land by two of the greatest mo- K
narchs of the world. Whereunto the Senat delaying the time for certaine daies, that *Iunusbeius*
The craftie answere of the Venetians to the French kings embassadour. might in the meane time come thither, grauely answered, That the amitie they held with king *Francis*, ought to be vnto them an ornament, but no burthen: the like also they held with the emperour, whom they would in no case seeme to cast off, although they had beene by him ouerraught: Wherefore the Senators and all the citisens generally were of opinion to preserue their peace, as they which in the hard times of war had endured great extremities, which would hardly be recouered with long peace: But if they did once see the ensigns displayed, and the wars begun, they would then take further aduice, Whether it were good for them to thrust themselues into those warres or not, when as they were in league and friendship with three of the greatest
Solymans embassadors commeth to Venice. princes of the world. In the meane time *Iunusbeius* arriued at VENICE, and was there honou- L
rably receiued. He requested, that the league before made at CONSTANTINOPLE by *Badoerius* their embassador, might by the authoritie of the Senat be confirmed: & so cõmended the French kings cause to the Senat, that he requested no more, but that vnto that amitie which they alreadie held with the French, they would ioine further curtesies, the rather for that *Solyman* had accounted him for his brother, and had vndertaken to aid him against *Charles* king of SPAINE: but as to ioine in league with him, or in his quarrell to take vp armes, he requested nothing. Which was quite beside the expectation of *Polinus* and *Pellicerius*, who by vrging of the matter, and by telling of al, had thought easily to haue persuaded the Senat to haue graunted what they requested, and therefore thought the Turk who had so coldly spoken in the cause, to be some way corrupted. But as it afterward appeared, there was such equity & modestie in *Solymans* letters, who was M
Polinus comming to Constantinople, findeth not the Turke so readie to send his fleet to aid the French king as he had hoped otherwise of a proud and insolent nature, that he would not as then exact any thing of them, which should not stand with the good of their estate. Wherfore *Polinus*, hauing in vaine staied certaine daies at VENICE, was in one of their publike gallies transported to RAGVSIVM, and from thence trauelled by land to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he found all things more difficult

than

A than euer he dreamed of. For the great Baſſaes ſaid, There could no fleet be ſet out that yeare, by reaſon that he was come too late to ſue for ſuch a matter, the Spring of the yeare being now paſt, of all other times moſt fit for to take in hand ſo long a voyage. So that *Polinus* was aboue meaſure vexed with care and griefe, that he had ſo euill ſped, and was come ſo out of ſeaſon both to VENICE and CONSTANTINOPLE. *Dixius* alſo, one of the maſters of the Rhodian gallies, was come to CONSTANTINOPLE, to carie newes into FRANCE of the comming of the Turks fleet: who told *Polinus*, That the kings ſonnes were with ſtrong power far entred into the low countries, and had alreadie inuaded SPAINE, expecting nothing more than the comming of the Turks gallies. Wherefore *Polinus* (as it eaſily chanceth to men deceiued by truſt repoſed in any other mens promiſes, and bewailing the euill ſucceſſe of their vaine trauell) wonderfully tor-
B mented himſelfe, curſed the froward and vnconſtant manners of the Baſſaes, called vpon the faith of *Solyman*; and beſought the great Baſſaes one by one, that they would not contrarie to their promiſe, forſake the king, who vpon the hope of the comming of the Turks fleet, had now inuaded both the low countries and the kingdome of SPAINE: for as much as by that delay, which was vnto them neither honourable nor profitable, was (as he ſaid) betraied the maieſtie of his king, and a moſt aſſured victorie now as good as gotten, quite marred. In which his obteſtations, he was ſo importunat and tedious, that he became vnto thoſe proud Baſſaes rather loathſome than gratious; inſomuch that to end his ſute, they thought it beſt ſharply to take him vp, and ſo for that time to ſhake him off. And therefore ſending for him and the other French gentlemen which followed him to the court, the great Baſſaes then ſitting in counſell, and *Bar-*
C *baruſſa* with them for the honour of his place: as ſoone as they were come into the counſell chamber, *Solyman Baſſa* the eunuch, turning himſelfe about, ſpake vnto them in this ſort.

The ſharpe oration of Solyman the eunuch Baſſa to Polinus the French embaſſadour.

Frenchmen (ſaid he) *this place for diſpatch of moſt waighty affaires, appointed by the graue iudg-*
ment of our moſt mightie emperour to vs his faithfull ſeruants, doth (as it beſt beſeemeth) receiue vs,
daily comming vnto it, void of loue and hatred: and withall doth notably put vs in remembrance, to
ſpeake our minds freely. Neither would I, that this frankneſſe of ſpeech (the meſſenger of truth, and
therefore the faithfull keeper of friendſhip) ſhould be vnto your eares vnpleaſing or troubleſome: for
ſithence your king hath beene called the friend and fellow of the Othoman *name, we may not now ei-*
ther forget the duties of loue, or loath your friendſhip: ſeeing that our emperour doth maruellouſly
D *affect you, and is not a little deſirous to ſtrengthen you with his power, and by ouercomming your ene-*
mies to increaſe your power and honour. But in your demaunds is no equitie, no modeſtie, ſo that wee
tearme you vnmodeſt and importunat: and others which fauour you not ſo well, call you plainly by your
right names, vnreaſonable and ſhameleſſe men; who as too too forgetfull of your dueties, doe moſt
fondly trouble the lawes of amitie and friendſhip. For leagues are confirmed by like profit, by making
euen the charge and mutuall dangers: but if neglecting your friends kindneſſe and courteſie, you will
make no requitall, they will quickly grow wearie of you. So happeneth it vnto you Frenchmen, who
euer forgetfull and negligent in our dangers, but in your owne alwaies mindfull and diligent, haue
ſhewed your ſelues friends vnto vs when need was, not in deeds and certaine aid, but onely in bare let-
ters and embaſſages. Tell me I pray you where euer you ſhewed any ſigne or token of your good will or
E *aid? whereby the minds of our enemies might at the leaſt wiſe haue but beene kept in ſuſpence of ſome*
doubtfull feare, when as Charles *with all the power of the Weſt came into* HVNGARIE; *and* CO-
RONE *and* PATRAS *were in the meane time ſhaken in* GRÆCE *with the enemies fleet; and laſt of*
all TVNES *taken with ſo great a fleet? But all this we pardon you: yet this it is which is hardly to be*
endured, that you did not ſo much as once grieue at our ſo great iniuries, as you ought to haue done; but
ſent your gratulatorie embaſſadours vnto the bloudie common enemie, who had but euen then ſlaine
ſo many of our people. At length our emperour came to AVLONA *to your great profit, about to paſſe*
ouer into ITALIE: *but neither then in the arriuall of your fleet appeared the good wils of the Apuli-*
ans towards you, which were of you ſo vainly promiſed, neither did you ſo much as once moue to inuade
the vpper part of ITALIE: *ſo neither ſeruing our turne, nor well fitting your owne, you haue alwaies*
F *loſt the occaſion of the good ſucceſſe of your affaires. But neither then, neither at any time afterwards*
needed we your counſell or vnited forces: for the Venetians to their paine felt both our forces and our
faith: as for the reſt, warre, the notable reuenger of our wrongs, moſt happily brought to paſſe, at ſuch
time as you of your owne voluntarie made peace with the common enemie, to inuade vs; and did as vn-
kindly as impudently as it were blow wind in his ſailes. But we, without your helpe, haue notably re-

preſſed

preſſed ſo great aſſaults of our enemies: when as this ſame Hariaden Barbaruſſa *put to flight their* G
fleet at Ambracia, *and happily ſlew the ſpaniſh pirats of* Castrvm, *and hauing againe recouered our owne cities, tooke alſo from them ſome of theirs: wherefore we are bound vnto you for no deſert, but we had rather forget theſe vnkindneſſes, than to faile you whom we haue once receiued into our friendſhip. For we performe our fidelitie in deeds: but it is his part to regard the time, to way the danger, to wait occaſion; which will not raſhly commit his actions to the hazard of fortune. You are come later than you ſhould haue done for the ſetting forth of our fleet: for Sommer now well ſpent, followeth the peſtilent time of Autumne, ſo that marriners cannot in conuenient time be taken vp, or ſafely thruſt into the gallies: for in long ſailing, who would not thinke, but that ſuch a companie of ſailers vſually ſick at the change of an vnacquainted ayre, would be in danger of their liues? who would not feare ſhipwracke in their returne, when as this ſame* Hariaden *ſo great a maſter at ſea, driuen* H
vpon the Acroceraunian rockes in the moneth of Auguſt, loſt ſo many gallies? A fleet would be rigged in Winter, furniſhed and ſet forward in the Spring; in Sommer is ſafe ſailing and making warre. Which that it may be ſo done, we will for the common wealth ſake perſuade the emperour: for the nauie once loſt, cannot vpon the ſudden be againe reſtored for much gold, whereof the Othoman *emperour wanteth no ſtore, heaped vp by many ages. If thou be wiſe take theſe things in good part as friendly ſpoken: but whether the emperor will pardon thy boldneſſe or not, let himſelfe conſider, truly we haue ſatisfied both him and our ſelues in ſpeaking to thee ſo plainly.*

Theſe things ſeuerely ſpoken by the eunuch Baſſa, did ſo much the more trouble *Polinus*, for that they ſeemed to haue been ſent from the mouth of *Solyman* himſelfe, who was thought to I
haue heard all that was ſaid. For behind the Baſſaes as they ſate in counſell, was a window with a braſen grate, and a curten drawne before it, that the emperour when he pleaſed, might vnperceiued heare the complaints and ſutes of all nations, and note the manners of his great counſellors; whoſe care for the adminiſtration of iuſtice was ſo much the greater, for feare of his preſence. Yet did not *Polinus* for this repulſe, deteſting the double dealing of the Baſſaes, ſo giue ouer his ſute; but winning by gifts the fauour of the *Capiaga* or chiefe porter, a man euer of great authoritie in the Turks court laboured by him to be brought to the ſpeech of *Solyman* himſelfe: who faithfully performed what he had vndertaken. So the French embaſſadour brought by him into the ſecreteſt place of the court, which few Chriſtians had euer been, and ſo vnto the preſence of *Solyman*, recounted vnto him how all matters had before paſſed, and moſt earneſtly beſought K
him not to faile the kings expectation of the fleet he had before promiſed, who at that preſent was inuading his enemies in three places. Whereunto *Solyman* courteouſly and expreſſely anſwered, That the opportunitie of ſending out of his fleet was paſt; not by his will, which was alwaies immutable and firme, but by his late comming, and the time of the yeare halfe ſpent: but promiſed, the next Spring without doubt to ſend vnto the king his friend and brother, twiſe ſo great a fleet as he had deſired againſt *Charles* their enemie. With which anſwere, the embaſſadour diſpatched away *Dixius* into France, vpon whoſe arriuall, king *Francis* called backe againe *Henrie* his eldeſt ſonne with his armie, from the ſiege of Perpenna in Spaine.

Polinus by the meanes of the Capiaga is brought to the ſpeech of Solyman himſelfe.

Solymans anſwer to Polinus.

The Princes of Germanie ioine their forces with king Ferdinand againſt the Turke in Hungarie.

The princes and States of Germanie, at the requeſt of king *Ferdinand* and the nobilitie of L
Hvngarie, about this time decreed with one conſent, to take vp armes againſt the Turks, for the recouering againe of Byda, and other the loſt parts of Hvngarie. For beſides the diſhonour done to their nation at Exek vnder the leading of *Cazzianer*, and againe at Byda vnder the leading of the Lo. *Rogendorff*; they well ſaw, that if they did not ſpeedily relieue the Hungarians ouerwhelmed with the calamities of the Turks forces, they ſhould in ſhort time be enforced to fight for their religion, children, wiues, and liues againſt the ſame mightie enemie, at their owne doores. For preuenting whereof, the princes and free cities of Germanie, ſet out thirtie thouſand footmen, and ſeauen thouſand horſemen: amongſt whom was *Mauritius*, afterwards duke of Saxonie, then a young gentleman about twentie yeares old. But the Generall of theſe German forces, was *Ioachimus* Marqueſſe of Brandenbvrg, a man more for the ho- M
nour of his houſe than the valour of himſelfe preferred to that place: yet ſo, that vnto him was ioyned eight others, men of great yeares and experience, by whoſe counſell he was to be directed. When they were come to Vienna, king *Ferdinands* power met them: where, beſide ſuch as were taken vp in Avstria, *Huganot* Gouernour of Stiria came in with ten thouſand

horſemen.

horſemen. Vnto theſe the noble men of HVNGARIE, *Gaſper Seredius*, *Andreas Bathor*, and *Petrus Perenus*, a man of the greateſt authoritie power and experience amongſt the Hungarians, ioyned themſelues, with fifteene thouſand horſemen; whither alſo *Paulus* the third of that name then biſhop of ROME, ſent three thouſand choſen footmen out of ITALIE, conducted to VIENNA by *Alexander Vitellius*, a moſt famous captaine. The Marqueſſe with this great army marched from VIENNA alongſt the riuer Danubius, but ſo ſoftly, that the Hungarian and Italian captains ſaid plainly, That the beſt part of the Sommer, and fitteſt time for warres, was paſſed ouer in loitering and dallying out the time to no purpoſe: eſpecially *Iacobus Medices*, who had long before perſuaded the king, to be readie to ſet forward his forces with the firſt of the Spring, before the Turks could either augment their garriſons, or put in any new forces; for that by ſuch reſolute and ſpeedie inuaſion, it was like enough hee might recouer both PESTH and BVDA. Which politike and wholſome counſell ſo well giuen, king *Ferdinand* too much crediting the great men of his court (liking nothing but what proceeded of themſelues) reiected, expecting the full aſſembly of all his forces, before the ſetting forth of his armie. At length the Marqueſſe was by ſoft marches come to STRIGONIVM (king *Ferdinand* himſelfe ſtaying behind at VIENNA) where it was commonly reported, That *Solyman* fearing to loſe BVDA, was either in perſon himſelfe comming into HVNGARIE, or elſe ſending down the Generall of his Europeian horſemen, who might neuer ſet foot forward to war without ſixtie thouſand horſemen. Which newes ſo troubled the Germans, that they made no great haſt forward, doubting how they ſhould returne againe if they chanced not to get the victorie: Beſide that, it was thought, that the Marqueſſe neuer purpoſed to fight a battell, or endanger himſelfe or his armie for the kingdome of HVNGARIE, but only to defend the bounds of AVSTRIA, and by ſhewing the ſtrength of GERMANIE, to terrifie (if he could) the Turks, if they not contented with HVNGARIE, ſhould alſo prouoke the Germans. But after it was by certaine eſpials from SAMANDRIA, knowne that all that report of the comming of the Turks great armie was but vaine, and that there was ſcarce a thouſand Ianizaries and twiſe ſo many horſmen come to BVDA, and that the Turks fleet was both for number and ſtrength farre inferiour to the kings, they ſet forward again with more cheerfulneſſe, much encouraged by the forwardneſſe of the Hungarians, eſpecially of *Perenus*; aſſuring them, that if they would without delay march on, and ſpend no more time in vaine, they ſhould not find at BVDA any ſuch number of Turks as was worth the name of an armie: for that *Solyman* vſing but euerie ſecond yeare to make war, did that yeare take his reſt, and was not like to vndertake any great expedition. For theſe reaſons all men being readie cheerfully to ſet forward, the Marqueſſe appointed to paſſe ouer Danubius: which this *Perenus*, *Huganot* and *Medices*, all expert captaines, liked not of; wiſhing him rather to hold on his way directly ſtill on that ſide the riuer to BVDA, the chiefe citie of the kingdome. But it was the mind of the Generall and all his counſellors, firſt to beſiege PESTH, which might be done with leſſe labor and danger, and there hauing made proofe of the enemies ſtrength and purpoſe, to come to the ſiege of BVDA: for then would the ſouldiers with much more courage and cheerfulneſſe endure the ſiege of BVDA, if they had by good fortune firſt beaten them out of PESTH: Which counſell was both beſt liked and followed, and the army by two bridges with great and painful labour made ouer Danubius (which was in that place deuided into two parts) tranſported. At the ſame time *Medices* an Italian captaine, Admirall of the kings fleete, came downe the riuer; and in deſpight of the Turks tooke the Iſland of Saint *Margaret*, lying in the riuer a little aboue BVDA, and by force repulſed the Turkes fleet vnto the ſuburbs of the citie. The Marqueſſe to auoid the danger of the great ſhot from BVDA, after he was paſſed the riuer, ſet a great compaſſe about, and ſo came to the North ſide of PESTH: for on the South it was defended with the riuer Danubius, running betwixt it and BVDA; and on the East and Weſt the great ordinance on the one ſide from the caſtle of BVDA, and on the other from mount S. *Gerrard*, did ſo ſcoure all alongſt the walls, that no man could without moſt manifeſt danger there abide. For BVDA ſtanding vpon the hill, and deuided from PESTH onely with the riuer, ſo ouerlooketh and commandeth all the plaine countrey about PESTH, that without perill no man can ſtirre on any ſide of the citie, but Northward towards AGRIA, couered by the citie from the ſhot out of BVDA. As the Marqueſſe was comming thither, he was told by certaine fugitiues, that *Balis* Gouernour of BVDA (who in that place ſucceeded *Solyman* the Hungarian renegate, lately before dead of the plague) had in garriſon in BVDA two thouſand horſemen: and that *Ylames* the Perſian Gouernour

The Marqueſſe of Brandenburg commeth to Peſth with his armie.

uernour of BOSNA, was come vnto him with three thousand mo: whereunto *Amurathes* had also ioyned another thousand which he brought out of DALMATIA: and that *Segemenes* was come thither also with a thousand Ianizaries from CONSTANTINOPLE: as for the rest of the footmen, that they were but wild countrey people, fitter for labour than for seruice in warres. They told him also, that the enemies fleet consisted of sixtie smal pinnaces, ten gallies, and a few other great boates: and that *Solyman* had commaunded his captaines in any case to defend BVDA and PESTH to the last man, without regard of any other place. And had proposed vnto the valiant, great rewards; and to the cowardly, extreame punishment: charging them further, that if need were, they should in time send for *Achomates* the Generall of his Europeian horsemen to SOPHIA, to aid them. The Turks vpon the approach of the Christians, issued out at one of the gates of the citie, and skirmished with the Hungarians: but after they had sufficiently proued one anothers strength, and some few were on both sides slaine, they retired into the citie, and the Hungarians to the campe. The next day after, *Vitellius* going out of the campe neere the citie with fiue companies, to chuse a place for planting the batterie; the Turks at one instant sallying out at two gates of the citie, gaue him a hoat skirmish, where at the first, the fight was begun with like courage and force: but the Turkes still sending forth new supplies both of horse and foot, first the Christian footmen, and after that the horsemen, not able longer to endure the force of the Ianizaries, were constrained disorderly to retire, hauing lost in that retrait foure of their captaines and two ensignes: and had not *Vitellius* with one companie of horsemen serred togither, valiantly repulsed the insolent Ianizaries, the losse had beene much greater. *Vitellius* exceedingly grieued with this losse, and perceiuing the manner of the enemies fight, encouraged his souldiors, purposing if he could to be fully reuenged: and aboue all others, requested *Perenus* to be readie to ioine with him as occasion should require. *Vitellius* lay encamped in the kings orchards, walled about as it were a mile, equally distant both from the great camp and from the citie; out of these orchards he went with twelue companies vnder their ensignes, commanding the rest to stand still within the wals, in readinesse at all assaies: and so fetching a great compasse about, marched alongst the riuer side towards the citie: Neither did the proud enemie (brag of the former daies victorie) make any delay, but brauely sallied out at the east side of the citie, and couragiously charged them. But *Vitellius* warned of his former harme, and seeing his enemies come on as he desired, couered his shot with his pikes, and standing close, receiued the enemies charge: his shot still playing vnder the pikes, oftentimes vpon their knees: many of the Turks were there laid on ground, whilest they desperatly fought to haue broken the order of the Christians. In the meane time, when many of the Turks horsemen and Ianizaries comming out of the gates, and diuers others beholding the fight were come ouer the riuer from BVDA, to be partakers of the victorie, had filled the hithermost banke; *Vitellius* in good time, of purpose by little and little retired, as if he had been ouercharged: Then began the enemie to giue a great shout, and more fiercely to assaile the Christians: their horsemen also clapt behind them, to haue there charged them. Which thing *Perenus* diligently noting, and that the Turks in following of *Vitellius* were drawne a great way from the gates, he suddenly with his light horsemen clapt in betwixt the citie & the Turks at their backs, after whom followed also *Mauritius* (afterwards duke of SAXONIE) with a strong troupe of German horsemen, of purpose to haue shut them in for retiring backe again into the citie. But then the Turks perceiuing the danger, and finding themselues shut in, stood as men more than halfe dismaied, bethinking themselues which way to take, and so began to retire. When *Vitellius* comming on couragiously with his pikemen and his harquebusiers, deuided into two wings, charged them fiercely; and the Hungarian and German horsemen breaking in amongst them on the other side, made great slaughter of them, and strucke such a feare amongst the flying Turkes, that many of them in running to the gate, thrust one another thorow with their pikes: diuers other were also by the horsemen driuen into the riuer, and there drowned. That day *Segemenes* lost aboue an hundred of his Ianizaries, and foure hundred others. The chiefest commendation for this piece of seruice was giuen to *Vitellius*, who had so well and so quickly reuenged himselfe of the Turkes: and next him to *Perenus*, who as a skilfull captaine had so well awaited the time to entrap the enemie: neither is *Mauritius* the young Saxon prince vnworthie his due praise, who valiantly charging the Turkes, and hauing his horse slaine vnder him, was in danger to haue beene there lost himselfe, had not *Nicholas Ribische* one of his followers, couered him with his owne bodie, vntill such

The Turks sally out of Pesth, and put the Christians to the worst

The Turks sallying out againe are discomfited by Vitellius and Perenus.

Mauritius in danger to be slaine.

A ſuch time as that hee was reſcued by others, *Ribiſche* himſelfe preſently dying of his wounds. This little victorie ſo encouraged the Germanes, that the Marqueſſe commaunded the great ordinance to be preſently brought forth, and the batterie planted, which was at the firſt placed ſo farre off, that it did little harme, although the wall were both old and thin, not aboue fiue foot thicke: and the ordinance laied either a little too low, or mounted too high, either ſhot ſhort, or quite ouer the citie into BVDA: which fault once perceiued, the batterie was remooued neerer, and a faire breach ſoone made in the wall, with the continuall beating of fortie great pieces of artillerie. *Vitellius* was the firſt that offered to aſſault the breach, ſo that the Germanes would preſently ſecond him, which thing they all by holding vp of their hands promiſed courageouſly, but cowardly about by and by to breake that promiſe: for oftentimes it chanceth, That they which
B before the danger are readieſt to promiſe their helpe, are in the very danger it ſelfe of all others moſt ſlacke. The Hungarians alſo for their parts promiſed not to be behind. The ſilence of the enemie at the breach and in the citie, was wonderfull, ſo that many thought hee had beene fled backe ouer the riuer to BVDA: for *Segemenes* captaine of the Ianizaries, an old beaten ſouldior, ordered all things with as little ſtir as was poſſible: He had receiued new ſupplies from *Vlamas*, and had caſt a deepe countermure within the wall againſt the breach, & on the inner ſide of the ſame had made a ſtrong barricado, with gabions and wine veſſels filled with ſand and earth: behind which ſtood the Ianizaries, & next vnto them the Turkiſh archers, and laſt of all the horſemen who had left their horſes to ſerue on foot. The ſignall for the aſſault once giuen, foure Itali-
C an captaines ran deſperatly with their companies by the ruines of the wall to the breach: but whileſt they there ſet vp their enſignes, and wondering at the enemies fortification, were readie betwixt hope and feare to leape downe, they were ſuddenly ouerwhelmed with a ſhoure of arrowes and bullets. Yet *Vitellius* ſtill encouraging them, brought them ſtill on, who did what they might to haue entred: but the Germane footmen with their Generall ſtood ſtill vnder the wals, looking on, as men nothing moued either with the hope of victorie or danger of their friends: and the Hungarians not ſo much as once looking vpon the enemie, retired: two of the Italian captaines, *Rufus* and *Fiolla* were there ſlaine, and *Carolus*, *Vitellius* his nephew, ſhot in the ſhoulder. The Turks with ſhot and ſtones ſtill repulſed and beat downe the Italians, whereof the Germanes alſo ſtanding ſtill, felt part, and were more gauled than a man would haue thought men could haue beene, that did nothing: for there they ſtill ſtood for ſhame, leaſt if they ſhould haue
D alſo firſt retired, they ſhould haue incurred a ſecond infamie as bad as the firſt. Which thing *Vitellius* perceiuing, would in no caſe depart from the breach, but wiſhed rather to loſe his men by whole companies, than to leaue the leaſt colour of excuſe to the Germanes, or that they ſhould ſay they ſtayed longeſt, of whom he with greater anger than greefe complained, that he was forſaken and cowardly betrayed. In time of this aſſault one of the Turks was heard to ſpeak aloud in the Italian tongue, *Why doe not you valiant Italians ſpare your ſelues, and giue place to thoſe laſie Germanes. We all wiſh to ſpare you, and to beat the drunkenneſſe out of their moſt cowardly heads, that they ſhould no more hereafter prouoke vs.* At length the Germanes wearie of their hot ſtanding and nought doing, got them farther off, after whom the Italians forthwith retired: but ſo
E diſorderly, to be quickly out of the danger of the enemies ſhot, that if the Turks had at the ſame time ſallied out at all the gates, it was thought that the whole campe had beene greatly endangered. In this attempt rather than aſſault, ſeuen hundred Chriſtians were ſlain outright, and many moe hurt, who died afterwards of their wounds.

A breach made in the wall of Peſth.

The breach aſſaulted by the Italians.

The Germanes ſtand ſtill as lookers on, whilſt the Italians giue the aſſaults.

The contumelious ſpeech of a Turke againſt the Germanes.

The Germanes and the Italians retire without loſſe.

All this while the Marqueſſe and *Hugonot* the great commaunders of the armie, kept themſelues ſo farre from gunſhot, that they were no where to be ſeene, vntill that *Torniellus* and *Fotiſcu*, two valiant captaines, finding them out, wiſhed them for ſhame to ſhew themſelues for the comforting of the armie. A little before night they conſulted with the other captaines, Whether they ſhould forſake the ſiege, or continue it ſtill: whereof moſt of the Germanes beſt liked to be gone, as the ſafeſt way: though *Vitellius* & ſome others ſpake earneſtly to the contrarie. At which
F time a ſpie comming in, brought newes that *Achomates*, *Solymans* lieutenant of the Europeian horſemen, had paſſed ouer the riuer Sauus at BELGRADE, and was comming to Dranus: whoſe cõming either cunningly fained, or vainly beleeued, cauſed the Germanes to make a ſhort concluſion, and to reſolue flatly to returne to VIENNA, fearing that if they ſhould longer continue the ſiege, they ſhould be ſtayed againſt their wils by *Achomates*. Which thing made many of the old Germane ſouldiors to hang their heads for ſhame, and the Hungarians to curſe both the

Ger-

Germanes and the hard fortune of their nation, vainely wiſhing for a Generall in courage anſwerable to the ſtrength of that great armie. *Segemenes* perceiuing how much the Chriſtian armie was diſcouraged by the laſt dayes euill ſucceſſe, early in the morning couragiouſly ſent out all the horſemen, and after them certaine companies of footmen, to relieue them in their retire; who in many places skirmiſhed with the Hungarians, being nothing inferiour vnto them either in courage or skill: and the matter was brought to that paſſe, as if it had beene ſo agreed vpon, that many of the moſt notable and expert ſouldiours on either ſide encountered together hand to hand in the ſight of the Italians and Germanes, the Hungarians mixt with the Turks, and the Turkes with the Hungarians, with ſuch fidelitie, that they regarded no other enemie but him whom euerie one had ſingled out for himſelfe, as if it had been in a triumph for exerciſe hand to hand. It happened, that a notable captaine of the Turks, deſired to ſee *Vitellius*, who being ſhewed vnto him (for he was eaſie to be knowne by his armour) the Turke ran vnto him to embrace him for his honour, and ſo departed. About fiue hundred horſemen ſo encountered one another hand to hand that day, of whom many were ſlaine or hurt. The night following the batterie was remoued, and the armie marched towards the riuer to the fleet. The Turks perceiuing the Chriſtians to be departed, ſallied out of the citie on all hands, & with a great crie vpbraiding them of cowardiſe, hardly purſued the rereward of the armie. *Vlamas* was come ouer himſelfe from Bvda, and ſo eagerly followed the armie, that it could hardly haue eſcaped without great danger, had not *Vitellius* with his Italians made a ſtand, and requeſted the Hungarian & German horſemen to turne backe vpon the enemie: which they at his requeſt did, and not onely repulſed the enemie, but alſo put him to flight, and in the chaſe ſlew many. After which time the armie paſſed on quietly; yet ſeuen hundred Germanes which were ſicke and ſtragled behind the armie, were by the Turks horſemen miſerably ſlaine in the ſight of their fellowes. The Germans thrice foiled by the Turks, firſt at Exek, then at Bvda, and now at Pesth, returned full of heauineſſe and greefe, as they which were now to forget the ſubduing of Hvngarie, and to become carefull of Germanie it ſelfe. The armie comming to Vienna, was there broken vp, and the Italians ſent home into their countrey, who for moſt part died by the way, of infection taken in the campe in ſtrange aire, and a moſt queaſie time of the yeare.

A notable skirmiſh betwixt the Turkes and the Hungarians.

The Chriſtians remouing from Peſth, are aſſailed by the Turks.

The Chriſtian armie broken vp at Vienna.

But to couer the ſhame of this vnfortunat expedition, and to turne mens talke another way by ſome notable accident: *Petrus Perenus* the noble Hungarian was the man pickt out for the purpoſe to fill mens mouthes. He, belayed with the enuie of the court, was for ſuſpition of aſpiring to the kingdome of Hvngarie, by the commaundement of king *Ferdinand* apprehended by *Liſcanus*, a Spaniſh captaine, in the caſtle of Strigonivm as a traitor, and preſently deliuered to *Medices* the Admirall, to be conueyed vp the riuer to Vienna. *Liſcanus* at the time of his apprehenſion moſt couetouſly and vncourteouſly tooke from him his chaine, and a rich cloke lined with ſables: which indignitie done to ſo noble a gentleman, ſo much offended the minds of the reſt of the Hungarians, that aboue twelue thouſand of them thereupon preſently returned home to their owne dwellings, curſing the Germanes to the diuell. This *Perenus* was one of the greateſt peeres of Hvngarie, but of a moſt haughtie and magnificent mind, ſo that hee would ſomtime haue almoſt an hundred goodly ſpare horſes fit for ſeruice led before him without their riders; & would ſometime ſpeak too liberally againſt the bareneſſe of king *Ferdinands* court, who polled by his courtiers, hardly maintained his ſtate: which his ſurpaſſing magnificence & princely port was cauſe ynough for the other great courtiers to enuie at his eſtate, & to ſeeke his ouerthrow; who as men ouercharged with the burthen of another mans vertue, whereof they neuer bore the leaſt part, and alwayes gaining by the deprauing of other mens perfection, conſpired together his ouerthrow, and oftentimes pointing at him with their fingers, would ſay, That he ſauoured of a crown. This notable man, as he had many worthie vertues, ſo was he not without cauſe noted of ambition and vnconſtancie: For after that king *Lewes* was loſt, he diſdaining the preferment of *Iohn* the Vayuod to the kingdome of Hvngarie, tooke part with king *Ferdinand* againſt him, in hope as it was thought to be next in honour vnto himſelfe: but after he ſaw king *Iohn* againe reſtored, and his ſtate ſtrongly ſupported by *Solyman*, and that all things ſtood doubtfull and tickle with *Ferdinand*, he with like leuitie ſought meanes by *Abraham* the great Baſſa to be reconciled to king *Iohn*; which was hardly obtained of him by the interceſſion of *Solyman* himſelfe (as is before declared) to whom he gaue his ſonne as pledge of his fidelitie. After which time he liued in great honour and loyaltie all the raigne of king *Iohn*: but

Perenus the noble Hungarian apprehended vpon ſuſpition of treaſon.

The vncourteſie of Liſcanus the Spaniard in the apprehenſion of Perenus.

A but after he was dead, and ſaw *George* the biſhop the kings tutor, doing what he liſt to raigne like a king, he diſdained his gouernment, and ſollicited by king *Ferdinand*, reuolted again vnto him, and furthered him in what he could for the obtaining of the kingdome. But now falling into the enuie of the court, mallice found out matter ynough to worke his confuſion. Firſt it was giuen out, That his ſonne, who had many yeares beene detained in *Solymans* court, as pledge of his fathers faith, was euen then vnder the colour of a faigned eſcape come into TRANSILVANIA; when as he had ſecretly agreed with *Solyman*, that his father being a man much fauoured of the people, ſhould by promiſing them all poſſible freedome, allure them to the Turkiſh ſubiection: in reward of which good ſeruice he ſhould be made gouernor of the kingdom of HVNGARIE, and put in hope alſo to be made the tributarie king thereof, if it ſhould fortune the yong king to
B die: Beſides that, it was accounted a thing very ſuſpitious, that he had the Winter before vſed great kindneſſe and friendſhip toward the Turkiſh captains, by ſending them great preſents, and receiuing the like againe: And laſt of all, his letters directed to certaine Hungarian captaines were produced, wherein he ſeemed to promiſe them, as his friends and followers, greater entertainment than agreed with his preſent eſtate: All which things king *Ferdinand* (of his owne diſpoſition, not eaſily to be perſuaded to conceiue euill of the Germanes his countreymen, were it neuer ſo apparant or true, but of ſtrangers any thing) quickly beleeued, and therfore cauſed him (as is beforeſaid) to be apprehended. But *Perenus* as he was brought by *Medices* the Admirall to VIENNA, when he was come neere vnto the gate of the citie, and heard that *Phillippus Torniellus*, with certaine other braue captaines of his acquaintance, were come to meet the Admirall;
C he requeſted that the cloſe coach wherein he rid might be opened. and that he might haue leaue to ſpeake to thoſe noble and valiant gentlemen. Which thing was eaſily graunted, for that the nobilitie and approoued valour of the man ſeemed vnto them which had the charge of him, vnworthie of ſuch reſtraint of libertie or impriſonment, yea or of the leaſt ſuſpition thereof. So he turning himſelfe towards them, ſpake vnto them in this ſort.

Matteri ſurmiſed againſt Perenus.

Wretched I, noble gentlemen (ſaid he) *whom deſpightfull enuie hath circumuented guiltleſſe: but much more miſerable king* Ferdinand, *whom domeſticall theeues bereaues of ſubſtance, friends, and honour all at once. For ſo it commeth to paſſe, that by this inconſiderat wrong done vnto me, he ſhall*
D *vtterly loſe the loue and fidelitie of the Hungarian nation, and may therefore for euer not without cauſe deſpaire for the obtaining of the kingdome of* HVNGARIE, *ſithence that it is not lawfull for me (inferior to none of my nation in birth, and hauing for my good and faithfull ſeruice well deſerued reward of a iuſt king) ſo much as to reioyce for the deliuerance of my ſonne from the captiuitie of the Turks, but that by my ſiniſter fortune, dreadfull death in ſtead of incomparable ioy muſt be preſented to mine eyes. For will theſe malicious pick-thanks, guiltie of their owne cowardiſe, the wicked contriuers and witneſſes of my wrongfull accuſation, ſpare me, being laid faſt and in durance, which neuer ſpared the kings honour? For euerie man of what nobilitie ſoeuer, be he neuer ſo guiltleſſe,*
E *when he is once in hold, muſt be content to endure, not what he hath deſerued, but what his hard fortune aſſigneth. Yet my vpright mind and cleare conſcience, which onely thing God the moſt iuſt iudge leaueth as a comfort to men in miſerie wrongfully accuſed, deliuereth me of this care: and ſo will the Marqueſſe our Generall, to whom I before vpon a miſtruſt foretold, that ſuch a danger would ſhortly befall me, and that I had rather be ſlaine guiltleſſe, than to withdraw my ſelfe from triall: which thing I told him at ſuch time as I was ſo guarded with mine owne ſtrength, that I feared no mans force. I beſeech you, doe me this honourable fauour, as to requeſt king* Ferdinand *in my behalfe quick-*
F *ly and honourably to proceed to the triall of my cauſe, and according to his owne princely diſpoſition, and the will of others, to diſcerne betwixt his faithfull friends and faigned flatterers. Truly wee are too too vnfortunat captaines, if for a little euill ſucceſſe we ſhall be ſo adiudged as men that had ouerthrowne their fortune.* Cazzianer *peraduenture receiued the iuſt puniſhment hee had deſerued for the ſhamefull forſaking and loſing of the armie at* EXEK, *when as he poſſeſſed with an vncouth feare forgot the dutie of a Generall, more afraid of death than diſhonour: for when he had voluntarily committed himſelfe to ſafe cuſtodie, he was ſo generally condemned of cowardiſe, that deſpairing to defend his cauſe, he brake priſon, and as wickedly as vnfortunatly reuolted to the Turkes: But neither was I of late the Generall, neither were we vanquiſhed, although we preuailed not, but honourably retiring, valiantly repreſſed the inſolencie of the purſuing enemie. As for the kingdome of* HVNGARIE, *I might then well haue affected the ſame, and eaſily haue deſerued it at* Solymans *hands,*

The lamentable ſpeech of Perenus to Tormiellus and the other captaines, concerning his apprehenſion.

Perenus his requeſt of the Admirall and the reſt of the captaines.

when as King Ferdinand, *after the death of King* Iohn, *was making his preparation for that warre:* G
at which time my friends and followers at my deuotion, with the loue of the Hungarians towards mee,
seeming of no small importance for the obtaining of the victorie, might haue ministred no vnreasona-
ble or vnseasonable hope to haue drawne a man into courses not altogether beseeming a Christian.
Wherefore I haue, and will so long as I liue, fight against the Turkes, if King Ferdinand *shall*
shew himselfe an indifferent Iudge in this accusation, falsely surmised against mee by the malice of
mine enemies.

When he had made an end of speaking, the Admirall courteously persuaded him to haue good hope in the clemencie of the most just king; and shortly after performed his request: for he and *Torniellus* taking the king as he was hunting, entreated him to deale fauourably with *Pe-* H
renus. For all that, *Perenus* could not obtaine that his cause might be openly heard; but was committed to safe keeping, there to remaine in perpetual prison: but whether it was for the mis-
Perenus, Valentinus, and Maylat, three of the greatest nobility in Hungarie kept in perpetuall prison. prision of new treason, or for reuenge of his old inconstancy, is vncertaine. Thus, three the only great princes left of the Hungarian blood, equally worthy of the kingdome, *Valentine, Maylat,* and *Perenus*, snarled almost in like snares of enuy, cut off all hope of raising a king to their seditious and therefore miserable countrey men: when as *Perenus* lay too late bewailing his vnconstancie in perpetuall prison; and the other two fast in chaines neere vnto the Euxine sea, expected death the end of their miseries. This end had the wars, taken in hand against the Turks by the generall consent of the Germans in the yeare 1542; which many thought, might worthily be compared with the greatest losses of those times: When as king *Ferdinand*, hauing in vaine I
spent a great masse of treasure, the fittest stay for the imminent warre; and lost the opinion before conceiued of the strength of GERMANIE; had now as a weake prince, and subiect to iniurie, prouoked him against the Turkes, bold enough otherwise, but as then insolent for their late victories.

Polinus the French kings embassadour still following the Turkes court, ceased not by all
1543 meanes to solicite *Solyman*, with his gallies to aid the king his master in the inuasion of the dominions of *Charles* the emperour, in ITALIE, SICILIE, and SPAINE. In which sute, he was so crossed by *Solyman* the eunuch Bassa, then Vesier, that he was almost in despaire of speed: for the malitious eunuch, being himselfe a great sea man, and enuying the honor of *Barbarussa* (who was to be imploied in that seruice) sought by keeping him out of all honourable actions, to di- K
minish his former glorie; and concerning the present, protested openly as he sat in counsel, that he saw no other cause why the Turkish emperour should to his great charge, and the common danger, send out such a fleet, but to serue *Barbarussa* his own turne. But *Solyman* hauing diligently heard, and deeply considered of that the Bassaes had said; rejected their opinions, who would not he should haue giuen the French king aid: & honorably decreed, according to his promise,
Solyman graunteth to send his fleet by Barbarussa to aid the French King against the emperour. whatsoeuer should ensue thereof, to send his fleet vnto the king by *Barbarussa*. Two dayes after the French embassador before in despaire, but now reuiued with that decree, was solemnly feasted by *Rustan Bassa, Solimans* sonne in law, and by *Solyman* the eunuch Bassa: for so it was their great masters pleasure, both of them ioying of him for the friendship confirmed betwixt the two princes by sending this fleet. After which; diuers gifts were bestowed vpon the embassador and L
his chiefe followers; and at such time as he was to take his leaue, *Solyman* gaue him great charge of his nauie, that it might be safely kept, and so after the seruice done, againe returned: and withall, deliuered him letters vnto king *Francis*, wherein after the glorious rehearsall of his proud titles, he writ vnto him as followeth:

Solymans letters to the French king.

Wee haue vpon a brotherly bountie, graunted vnto Polinus *your embassadour, such and so great a*
fleete as you haue desired, throughly furnished for all assayes: whose direction we haue commaunded
Hariaden *our Admirall to follow, and by your appointment to proceed against the enemie. But you*
shall doe well and friendly, the warres once happily ended, to send backe againe my fleet to CONSTAN-
TINOPLE. *All things shall vndoubtedly fall out according to your owne desire and mine, if you shall* M
carefully take heed, that Charles *the Spanish king, your perpetuall enemie, doe not againe deceiue you with*
the motion of a deceitfull peace. For then shall you bring him to a most indifferent peace, when you haue
brought vpon his countries all the calamities of warre.

Polinus

A *Polinus* taking his leaue of *Solyman* then lying at HADRIANOPLE, returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he found *Barbarussa* with an hundred and ten gallies, and fortie galliots readie to put to sea, which he had with incredible celeritie rigged vp and furnished. And so setting forward the eight and twentieth of Aprill, in the yeare 1543; and passing the straits of HELESPONTVS, he arriued first at CARISTIVS in EVBŒA; and from thence to MALEA, where he was by contrary winds cast into the bay of LACEDEMON, and there staied nine daies before he could double the cape of METAPANIVM, called in ancient time TENARVS: After that he came to METHON, and from thence crossing the Ionian, came to the strait of MESSANA; where the Turkish pirats being come with their galliots within the sight of RHEGIVM, began to land their men. They of RHEGIVM seeing so great a fleet, and the Turkes already landing, fled out
B of the city for feare: but the castle was still kept by *Didacus Gaietanus* a Spaniard, who refused to haue any parley with *Polinus* the French embassadour, and with shot out of the castle slew certaine of the Turks: wherwith the rest being inraged, brake into the citie, and finding it desolate, set it on fire; fore against the will of *Polinus* and *Barbarussa*, who sought to haue found out the authors thereof, and to haue punished them accordingly.

After that, certaine pieces of great ordinance were landed & planted against the castle, which with a few shot so terrified the captaine, already troubled with the crying out of his wife, that he without any more adoe, yeelded himselfe and the castle with all therin, into the the hands of the enemie: vnto whom with his wife and children, *Barbarussa* at the request of the French embassadour, granted both life and libertie: the rest he shut vp in a church, and gaue the spoile of the
C castle to his souldiors. There was in the garrison of the castle about seuentie Spaniards, but many mo citisens, which were all caried away prisoners. One of the captaines daughters, a yong gentlewoman of exceeding beautie, had with her good grace so warmed the withered affection of the old pirat *Barbarussa*, that he now fitter for the graue than for mariage, became amorous of her person: so that taking her from her father, and entring her into the Mahometane superstition, he made of her as of his wife: Insomuch, that certaine moneths after, he welcomed and bountifully entertained the captain as his father in law, comming to see his daughter at the port called PORTVS HERCVLIS in TVSCANIE, where the Turks fleet then lay. *Barbarussa* sayling alongst the coast of ITALIE, came to OSTIA, in the mouth of the riuer Tibur, and brought such a feare vpon the citie of ROME, that the citizens were ready generally to haue forsaken the
D citie; had not *Polinus* by his letters to *Rodolphus* the cardinall, then the great bishop *Paulus* his legat in the citie, in part staied the sudden tumult. The bishop himselfe was then at BVXETVM, a tovvne betvvixt CREMONA and PLACENTIA, trauailing (in shew) vvith the emperour, to haue made a peace betvvixt him and the French king: but labouring in secret to haue bought of him the dukedome of MILLAN, for *Octauius* his kinsman, the emperours sonne in law. *Polinus* his letters written to the cardinall at ROME, and sent by the Gouernour of TARRACINA, were to this effect.

Barbarussa amorous of the captain of Rhegium his daughter.

The fleet which is by Solyman *sent for the defence of* FRANCE *by* Barbarussa *his Admirall, is by his appoyntment at my commaund: so that it is not to hurt any but our enemies. Wherefore make it*
E *known to the Romans, and others dwelling alongst the coast of the Popes territorie, that they feare of vs no hostilitie. For the Turks will neuer violat the faith of their emperour solemnly giuen vnto me: and you know most assuredly, that the French king desireth nothing more, then that the estate of* ROME *might not onely bee kept in safetie, but also flouriſh most gloriously, and be therefore preserued from all iniurie. Fare you well.*

The French embassadors letters to comfort Rodolph the cardinal, the Popes legat in Rome.

In like manner he also comforted vp them of NEPTVNIANVM and OSTIA, so that they brought vnto the Turkes all manner of victuall; and sometimes for foure sheepe, or a couple of oxen, redeemed a good prisoner taken in some place of the kingdome of NAPLES. Yet for all this, the Romans did not so much credit the embassadours promise in the behalfe of the Turks
F good dealing, but that many of the weaker sort fled out of the citie into the countrey by night, although the chiefe magistrates did vvhat they might to haue stayed them. When *Barbarussa* had thus lien three daies in the mouth of the riuer of Tibur, and there watered, he passed alongst the coast of ETRVRIA, and LIGVRIA, without doing any harme; and so sailed directly to MARSEILLES. Where leauing him vvith his fleet for a while, expecting the French kings

farther pleasure; we will againe returne vnto *Solyman*, who at the same time that *Barbarussa* was G
Solyman commeth with a great armie into Hungarie. spoiling the frontires of the emperours dominions in ITALIE, came with a great armie into HVNGARIE, for the more assured possession of that kingdome, whereafter he saw king *Ferdinand* so much longed. And because he would make all sure before him, hee sent *Amurathes* Gouernour of DALMATIA, and *Vlamas* the Persian gouernour of BOSNA, to besiege WALPO; a strong towne scituat vpon the riuer Dranus, not far from EXEK, famous for the ouerthrow of the Christian armie vnder *Cazzianer*: after whom followed also *Achomates* the great commander of his Europeian horsemen. This towne (part of *Perenus* his possessions) was against all these forces kept and worthily defended by *Perenus* his wife (her husband then lying in prison at VIENNA) & her friends, by the space of three months: but was at last by the treacherous souldiors deliuered to the enemie, togither with their general; whom when they could by no means H
persuade to consent to the yeelding vp thereof, but that he would needs hold it out to the last, they tooke him perforce, and so deliuered him with the towne to the Turkes: who receiued
The castle of Walpo treacherously yeelded, and the traitors iustly rewarded him with all courtesie, and vsed him honourably: but those traiterous souldiors, whether it were in detestation of their treacherie, or for the spoile of them, were all put to the sword; the iust reward of their treason. The rest of the citisens were taken by the Turkes to mercie, and well vsed. The bishop and chiefe men of QVINQVE ECCLESIF, a famous citie not far off on the other side of Dranus, hearing of the losse of WALPO, and terrified with the greatnesse of the Turkes armie, fled for feare, leauing none but the meaner sort of the people in the citie, who willingly yeelded the same vnto the Turks. The next town of any strength was SOCLOSIA, belonging also to *Perenus*, which for a while held out against the Turkes, for that diuers gentlemen of the countrie which were fled into the citie, encouraged the citisens to stand vpon their defence. But after I
much harme done on both sides, when they were no longer able to hold out, they retired into the castle in hope to haue so saued their liues and libertie by yeelding: but *Amurathes* was so offended with them, that he would come to no reasonable composition, or promise them any thing more than that they should at their pleasure come forth: and so as they came out at the gate, slew them euery mothers sonne, thereby to terrifie others from making like resistance.

Solyman commeth with his armie to Strigonium. *Solyman* vnderstanding all these things, gaue those townes which were taken to *Amurathes* the Generall: and hauing put all things in readinesse, departed fron BVDA with all his armie to besiege STRIGONIVM; which was then kept by *Liscanus* and *Salamanca*, two proud couetous Spaniards, with a garrison of thirteene hundred souldiours, whereof some few were Spaniards, K
and Italians, and the rest Germans. *Paulus* bishop of STRIGONIVM, got himselfe out of the citie betimes, despairing of all mercie if he should haue fallen into the power of *Solyman*, by whose intermission he had been once before reconciled to king *Iohn*, and had againe reuolted from him to king *Ferdinand*. The castle of STRIGONIVM was scituat vpon a high hill, ouerlooking Danubius running vnderneath it, the wals were built euen without any flankers, after the old maner of building before the inuention of guns: For which cause, *Vitellius* and *Torniellus*, two expert captaines (the yeare before sent from the king to view the place, and the maner of the fortification) were of opinion, that the citie could hardly be defended, if it were besieged by any strong enemie: being subiect also vnto a hill not farre from the gates of the citie. Against L
which inconueniences, the old garrison soudiors which wintered in STRIGONIVM, cast vp new bulwarks and fortifications, and after the manner of windie headed men, making great boast before the danger, what they would do, seemed to wish for the comming of *Solyman*. But after that the barbarous enemie had with his tents couered the fields and mountains round about the citie, and withal brought a gallant fleet vp the riuer, all those brags were laid in the dust, & euery man began to grow doubtful of his owne safetie: for that they being but few (although men of good worth) were to withstand the infinit number of such enemies, as oftentimes vsed most desperatly to expose their liues to all maner of dangers. This there feare was also increased by the comming of certain messengers from *Solyman*, who vnderstanding of what nations the garrison consisted, sent vnto the citie three of his owne guard, one a Spaniard, another an Italian, and the third a German, all renegate Christians; that euerie one of them might without an interpretor, speake M
vnto their countriemen in their owne language: These men admitted into the citie, offered great rewards and large entertainement in the name of *Solyman*, to such as would in time yeeld; denouncing all torture and extremities vnto them which should endure the summons of the cannon. Whereunto it was answered by the captaines, That those faithfull and valiant souldi-

ors

A ors, who had repoſed their laſt hopes in their armes, were neither to be woon by gifts, nor terri- *The ſtout anſwere of the captaines.*
fied with threats. With which anſwere the meſſenger returned, and the ſame day the Turkes great ordinance was planted vpon the hill before the gate of the citie, and the weakeſt parts of the walls round about the citie, ſo well pickt out by the Turks to be aſſaulted, as that they could not more skilfully or commodiouſly haue bene choſen out of them which had within moſt diligently viewed euery thing: ſo that it is to be thought, that the Chriſtians wanted not only fortune againſt the Turks, but alſo faith amongſt themſelues. *Salamanca* diſtruſting the fortifications of the ſuburbs, retired into the citie, contrary to that he had before vainly boaſted. *Achomates* Generall of the Europeian horſemen, laid ſiege to that part of the wall which was next to the biſhops gardens: *Vlamas* the Perſian beſieged the towre neere vnto the gate towards B v-
B DA: The Aſapi or common ſouldiors were by their captaines brought on to dig trenches and caſt vp mounts, as was thought moſt conuenient. It is incredible to be ſpoken with what furie the great ordinance was diſcharged, without ceaſing; inſomuch, that the towre with a great part of the wall neere vnto it, ſhaken with continuall batterie, fell downe with ſuch violence, as if all had bin ſhaken with a moſt terrible earthquake: neither was any man able to ſtand vpon the wals, but that the Ianizaries with their harquebuſiers out of their trenches, and from their mounts, would moſt certainely fetch him off: and many which ſtood within farther off, were *The terrible battery of the Turks at Stigonium.*
with the Turkes arrowes falling from high, as if it had beene out of the ayre, grieuouſly wounded. But that which moſt troubled the defendants, and did them greateſt harme, was the ſtones,
C which beaten in ſunder with the great ſhot, and not to be auoided, did with their pieces kill or maime the ſouldiers neere hand: With which dangers they were enforced to forſake the vttermoſt wall, and to caſt vp new fortifications within, that they might with leſſe danger defend the place. Neither in the enemy wanted courage to aſſaile the breach: thriſe they deſperatly attempted to haue entred, and were alwaies with loſſe repulſed. In which aſſaults amongſt others, *Bultaces* Sanzacke of SELYMBRIA, a man of great account among the Turkes, was loſt. Whileſt *The Turks repulſed thriſe at the aſſault of the breach.*
the defendants were thus buſied, many of the ſouldiors and mariners which came vp the riuer, with all things neceſſary for the armie from BVDA, went on ſhoare, and lay in the ſuburbs of the citie, in ſuch ſecuritie, as if there had been no enemie nigh: which thing they in the citie perceiuing, ſuddenly ſallied out vpon them fearing no ſuch matter, and ſlew many of them before they could arme themſelues, and draue the reſt to their fleet: ſo that betwixt fighting and flying,
D there was about two hundred of them ſlaine. *Zymar* a Perſian, Admirall of the fleet, in reſcuing of them which to ſaue their liues fled vnto the riuer, was ſhot thorow with a ſmall ſhot, and ſlaine. Whileſt theſe things were in doing, and the Turkes hauing in many places ſore ſhaken the wall, did with greater force daily aſſaile the citie, and the defendants with their continuall loſſe and out of all hope of reliefe were more and more diſcouraged: an old Calabrian enginer *A fugitiue Chriſtiã diſcouereth the ſtrength and ſtate of the citie to the Turks.*
which had long time ſerued king *Ferdinand*, fled out of the citie to the Turkes, vvho being courteouſly entertained by *Solyman*, and examined by the Baſſaes of many things concerning the ſtrength and ſtate of the citie, ſatiſfied them in all that they deſired; and farther, directed them in planting their batteries in places moſt conuenient for the ſpeedy taking of the towne. In the meane time, whileſt the Turkes were with reſtleſſe labour battering the walls, and working in
E their mines, it fortuned that a gilt brazen Croſſe which ſtood vpon the top of the ſteeple of the Cathedrall Church, was by the continuall ſhooting of the Turkes thereat, at length beaten downe: at the ſight whereof, it is reported that *Solyman* after the ſuperſtitious manner of that nation, taking the chance as a token of good lucke, cried out preſently, STRIGONIVM is woon.

Liſcanus and *Salamanca* fearfully conſulting of the euent of the ſiege, and ſecretly conferring together, reſolued to ſaue themſelues, and to giue vp the towne. *Liſcanus* was no great ſouldior, and yet by continuall ſpoile growne exceeding rich, and therfore thought it but folly to buy the name of reſolute captaine at too deare a price, with the loſſe of his life and wealth. The like
F feeling was alſo in *Salamanca*, who preferred the ſafetie of himſelf and of that which he had got in long ſeruice, before all credit and honour, were it neuer ſo great. This their purpoſe was not kept ſo ſecret, but that it was noiſed abroad amongſt the common ſouldiors, of whom almoſt the third part was novv either ſlaine, or with wounds or ſickneſſe grown weake: yet were they all of opinion generally, That they were ſtill ſtrong ynough to defend the town. But the vnder captaines and auncients vſing to flatter their Generals, liked well of the motion, to yeeld vnto

Solyman vpon reaſonable conditions, rather than to expoſe themſelues to moſt certaine death, G
which ſhould nothing better king *Ferdinands* cauſe. Not long after, an Auntient was by night
let downe ouer the wall: and hauing by an interpreter receiued the Turks faith, called forth *Sa-*
lamanca, that he might vpon better conditions go thorow with them for the yeelding vp of the
Salamãca goeth out of Strigonium to parly with the Turks about the yeelding vp of the ſame.
towne. Who without further delay comming out, went to *Achomates*; commaunding before
he went them which defended the water tower next vnto the riuer ſide, a place of great danger,
for ſafegard of their liues to get themſelues into the citie: who terrified with that news, and ha-
ſtily retiring, were by the vigilant Turks which lay at the ſiege therof, perceiued, who ſuddenly
breaking in, ſlew ſuch as were not yet gone, & poſſeſſed the caſtle. But *Salamanca* being brought
before the great Baſſaes, when he had ſtood vpon many nice tearmes, and required many things
to haue beene granted him, obtained no more, but that they ſhould without delay yeeld vp the H
citie, and put themſelues wholly to the mercie of *Solyman*. So the Spaniard being there ſtaied,
himſelfe writ to *Liſcanus*, how he had ſped; willing him forthwith, if he loued his owne ſafetie,
to yeeld the citie, without ſtanding vpon further tearmes. *Liſcanus* vpon receit of theſe letters
comming forth to the ſouldiors, declared vnto them the neceſſitie of yeelding vp of the towne,
and what hope there was to eſcape with life and libertie. But whileſt the ſouldiors filled with in-
dignation, ſtood as men in doubt what to do, *Halis* commaunder of the Ianizaries came vnto
the gate, and with cheerfull rather than ſterne countenance required to haue it opened vnto him
Strigonium yeelded to the Turks by Liſcanus the Spaniard.
according to the agreement made by *Salamanca* in the campe; which was forthwith opened by
Liſcanus, and the keies deliuered vnto him: the Ianizaries entring peaceably into the citie, poſſeſ-
ſed themſelues of the wals and fortreſſes round about, commaunding the Chriſtian ſouldiors to I
giue place, out of whom they choſe all the beardleſſe youths, and commanded the reſt to caſt
down their harquebuſiers and other weapons in a place appointed, which they all for feare did,
expecting nothing but ſome cruell execution to bee done vpon them by the barbarous enemie.
Which their feare was the more encreaſed by a ſtrange accident, then vnluckily chancing: For
whileſt the ſouldiors did as they were commaunded, with their harquebuſiers caſt their flaskes
full of pouder alſo, one of them ſuddenly tooke fire of a match, which was by chance caſt in a-
mongſt them with fire in it, which firing the reſt, blew abroad all that heap of weapons amongſt
the Turks, which ſo filled them with anger and feare of ſome ſudden trechery, that they fell vp-
on the Chriſtians, & ſlew diuers of them: vntill ſuch time as *Halis* perſuaded that it was a thing
happened rather by chance than malice, commanded his Ianizaries to ſtay their fury. This tu- K
mult appeaſed, *Halis* cauſed proclamation to be made, That all ſuch chriſtian ſoldiors as would
ſerue *Solyman* in his warres, ſhould haue ſuch place in his armie as their qualitie required, with
bountifull entertainment: yet of all the Chriſtian ſouldiors were found onely ſeuentie, which
carefull of their liues, accepted the offer; fearing that the Turks would vpon ſuch as refuſed, ex-
erciſe their wonted crueltie. *Halis* entertaining them courteouſly, ſent them away with the other
youths whom he had before culled out, downe the riuer to Bvda: the other ſouldiors he tooke
into his protection, and vſed their labour to helpe the Turks to make cleane the caſtle. But *Liſ-*
canus, who to ſaue his gold, had made ſhipwrack of his honour and reputation, was glad to giue
vnto *Halis* the faire chaine of gold, which he had moſt couetouſly and inſolently before taken
from *Perenus*; when as *Halis*, who would otherwiſe haue taken it from him by force, by way of L
Liſcanus the couetous Spaniard merrily ſtript of all his wealth by Halis, captain of the Ianizaries.
militarie courteſie, now craued it of him, as a ſtrange kind of ornament amongſt the Turks: with
which gift he was in hope to haue ſaued the reſt of his coine. But fortune fauoured not ſo much
the couetous coward: For when he was about to depart away with his horſes of ſeruice, which
he kept very good, & had cunningly ſtuffed the ſaddles ful of gold, thinking ſo ſlily to haue con-
ueyed it; the Turke laughing at him, tooke from him his horſes furniſhed as they were, ſaying,
That he which was to go by vvater, needed no horſes. So was the couetous wretch at once quit
of the great vvealth vvhich he had in long time euill gotten. The captaines, vvith the reſt of the
ſoldiors diſpoiled of their armes, were conueied ouer the riuer of Danubius, and ſo trauelled on
foot to Possonivm: where the countie *Salme* by the commandement of the king apprehended
Liſcanus, *Salamanca*, and ſome other of the captaines for ſuſpition of treaſon, and committed M
Solyman entreth into Strigonium & there ſetteth vp the Mahometan ſuperſtition.
them to ſafe cuſtodie, there to anſwere for their cowardly yeelding vp of the citie.

Solyman entred into Strigonivm the tenth of Auguſt, in the yeare 1543, and there con-
uerting the Chriſtian churches into temples for the Mahometane ſuperſtition, firſt ſacrificed for
his victory, as he had before done in Bvda: and after with all ſpeed ſo ſtrongly fortified the city,

as

A as if he would thereby for euer haue taken from the Chriſtians all hope of recouering the ſame againe; deriding the ſlouthfull negligence of the Germans, who poſſeſſed of it fourteen yeares, had neglected all that time to fortifie it. Not long after, *Solyman* leauing *Oſſainus* a valiant captaine gouernour of STRIGONIVM, and ſending his Tartarian horſemen to ſpoyle the countrey on the left hand, as farre as ALBA REGALIS; went himſelfe to beſiege the caſtle of TATTA, called in ancient time THEODOTA. The garriſon ſouldiours terrified with the loſſe of STRIGONIVM, and the ſight of the Turks armie, vpon the firſt ſummons yeelded the caſtle without reſiſtance, and were ſo ſuffered quietly to depart. That caſtle after the maner of the Turkiſh diſcipline (who with few and thoſe very ſtrong holds keepe their prouinces in ſubiection) was by *Solymans* commandement preſently raſed downe to the ground. *Torniellus* Generall of the Ita-

B lians, cauſed *Hanniball*, captaine of the caſtle, to haue his head ſtrucke off for his cowardly yeelding vp of the piece he had taken charge of: thereby to admoniſh others, which had the charge of ſtrong places, not to refuſe an honourable death in defence of their country, for feare of an ignominious death attending their cowardiſe.

A cowardly captaine worthily rewarded

TATTA thus laid in the duſt, *Solyman* marched with his armie towards ALBA, ſurnamed REGALIS, for that the kings of HVNGARIE by an ancient cuſtome vſed to be there crowned, and alſo buried. BVDA, STRIGONIVM, and ALBA REGALIS, three principall cities of the kingdome of HVNGARIE ſtand in manner of a triangle, almoſt equally diſtant one from another, about a hundred miles in compaſſe. BVDA and STRIGONIVM are ſituate vpon the riuer of

Solyman goeth to Alba Regalis

C Danubius: but ALBA ſtandeth more into the land, ſtrongly ſeated in the midſt of a great lake, but not ſo wholſomely, eſpecially in the Summer time, the Winter waters then decreaſing, and groſſe vapours ariſing vvith the heat of the Sunne. From the citie thorow the marriſh or lake, vnto the firme land, lie three broad and high cauſeys (in manner of the ſtrakes of a cart wheele) well built with faire houſes and gardens on either ſide, and a broad way in the middle, wherby men paſſe in and out of the citie. At the end of euery cauſey toward the land were caſt vp ſtrong bulwarkes, which the citiſens vſed not to watch but in dangerous times of warre: ſo that by theſe bulwarks, the houſes of the ſuburbs ſtanding vpon theſe cauſies, were ſafe from the danger of the enemie, the lake filling vp all the ſpaces betwixt the cauſies: which, what for the depth, what for mud, flaggs, and bulruſhes growing in it, was not by horſe or man to be paſſed thorow. And the citie it ſelfe ſtanding in the middeſt of the lake, compaſſed round about with a

The deſcription of Alba Regalis.

D ſtrong wall, and a deepe ditch alwaies full of water, was hardly to be beſieged: for which cauſes a great number of the countrey people vpon the comming of *Solyman*, fled into it with their cattell, as vnto a moſt ſure hold. In the citie lay in garriſon two companies of Germans, and two hundred horſmen, vnto whom were ioyned fiue hundred Hungarian horſemen, ſuch as in time of peace liued by robbing, and are by an infamous name called *Vſarous*: vnto theſe, the Italian countie *Torniellus*, who with his Italians was come as farre as IAVARINVM, or RAB, ſent foure captains with their companies, ſuch as were moſt forward in that ſeruice: after whom followed *Barcocius*, captaine of the kings guard, with a companie of horſemen, appointed by the king for Generall. Who was no ſooner come into the citie, but news was brought of *Solymans* approch.

E Whereupon he in haſt called together the other captaines, with *Birrous* then maior of the citie, and other the chiefe citiſens, to conſult with them, What was beſt to be done for the defence of the citie, but eſpecially, Whether the ſuburbs of the citie, ſtanding vpon thoſe three broad cauſies, were to be deſtroyed or not? that ſo the citie ſtanding in the middeſt of the great marriſh, might both with leſſe labour and danger be defended. This queſtion was ſeriouſly debated, and great reaſons alledged on both ſides: at laſt the citiſens cried out with one voice againſt the matter, and ſaid, That they would neuer ſuffer thoſe goodly ſuburbs, wherein were ſo many churches and faire buildings as might compare with the city it ſelfe, to be ſo ſhamefully deſtroied, to the vtter vndoing of ſo many rich citiſens: for what could be (ſaid they) more diſhonourable or lamentable, than to the encouraging of the barbarous enemy, to ſhew ſuch a token of extreame feare; and with their owne hands to burne and deſtroy thoſe ſtately buildings, which might by

The citizens of Alba will not ſuffer the citie to be deſtroied

F ſtrong hand be well enough defended againſt the enemy, if they did not play the ſhamefull cowards. Of which opinion with the citiſens was alſo *Octauianus Seroſactus* an Italian captain, alledging that both the citie & the ſuburbs might both with like danger be defended: foraſmuch as they were equally fortified with the benefit of the mariſh; and if the worſt ſhould happen, the defendants might yet ſafely enough retire into the citie. At laſt ſtanding vp as one thruſt forward,

ward,both with the publicke hard fortune and his owne, ſaid, *Valiant gentlemen, what ſhew will* G
you giue of your valour, or what honour ſhall you haue of your ſeruice? If you ſhall defend ſo famous a citie, by deforming of it your ſelues, and cutting off the ſuburbes, as it were the armes thereof, before the danger, vpon too haſtie deſperation? Verily you ſhall doe nothing, either in the ſeruice of the king or the honour of your ſelues, except this citie (if God ſo pleaſe) be of you whole and ſound valiantly defended. Vpon this ſpeech they all ariſe, the wiſer ſort and of greateſt experience giuing place to the importunitie of the ignorant and ſimple. *Barcotius* himſelfe full of care, and ouercome with the vaine opinion of the greater part, yeelded alſo vnto that fatall reſolution of ſauing the ſuburbes. *For it often falleth out, that they who wiſely weighing dangers in the ballance of reaſon, and doe therefore fearefully reſolue of the euent of things, and doe thereupon oftentimes giue more hard and reſolute iudgement of things than men of greater courage; yeeld neuertheleſſe to bee* H
partakers of other mens follies, yea euen to moſt aſſured death, rather than by maintaining their fearefull opinion to be deemed cowards: So fell it out with *Barcotius* the Generall, who ſetting a good countenance on the matter which nothing liked him,went out to the ſouldiours,declaring vnto them the reaſons why the ſuburbs were to be defended:exhorting them with like valor on their parts to anſwere that honourable reſolution,promiſing to prouide whatſoeuer ſhould be neceſſarie for the obtaining of the victorie; aſſuring them of great rewards and preferment, which ſhould by their good ſeruice deſerue the ſame. Hereupon the ſuburbes were by the common labour of the ſouldiors & the citiſens quickly fortified, the great ordinance in places conuenient orderly planted,and watch and ward kept by the captaines and their companies by their turnes day and night. But the Turks drawing neere to the citie, bent their forces onely againſt the ſub- I
urbes of the gate leading towards BVDA: for that they perceiued the marriſh was in that place drier than in the other,and the ſandie grownd more vnfit for the making of bulwarkes and other fortifications for the ſafetie of the defendants,than in the other places where the ground yeelded better turfe. *Barcotius* perceiuing the enemies purpoſe,drew all the Italians and Germanes from the other gates into the ſuburbes of the gate of BVDA, leauing the countrey people which were fled into the citie,and the citiſens,in their places.At the firſt comming of the Turkes, the Hungarian and Germane horſemen,with the Italian footmen,ſallied out of the ſuburbes,and after certaine light skirmiſhes retired. Which manner of fight was continued by the ſpace of three daies without any great harme done on either ſide: for the captaines had warily commaunded, That the ſouldiors ſhould not aduenture out too farre. But after that *Solyman* himſelfe was come,and K
had with the multitude of his tents beſet the citie farre and neere,to the terrour of the beholders; the Chriſtians ſhut vp all the gates,and ſallied out no more. Which thing cauſed the wild Hungarian *Vſarous*,vſed to open skirmiſhes,to prouide for themſelues in time,and not to ſuffer themſelues to be coupt vp (as they termed) within the wals of the citie: So for faſhion ſake, asking leaue to be gone(who were not againſt their wils to be ſtayed)they by night departed,being not to bee entreated by the Generall or citiſens to ſtay, and by knowne wayes eſcaped thorow the woods from the enemie. In the meane time the Turkes were come with their winding trenches within ſhot,and with their arrowes and ſmall ſhot ſo ſcoured the top of the bulwarke, that no man could there poſſibly appeare but he was ſtraight wounded: and ſuch was the furie of the great artillerie, that it had in ſhort time battered in ſunder the plankes and timber which kept in L
the ſandie mould,whereof the fortreſſe was made,more for ſhew than for ſtrength; in ſuch ſort, that the great ſhot flying quite thorow all,ſlue and wounded many that were a far off: in which diſtreſſe of the defendants, the Turkes Aſapi with ſmall danger filled vp the ditches of the bulwarke, and diuers places of the marriſh with earth and wood, which they brought continually from a wood thereby with ſix hundred waggons, ſo that in the ſpace of twelue dayes they had made a firme way for them to paſſe ouer vpon,both to the bulwarke and the ſuburbes; a worke before thought impoſſible to haue been performed. The ditches thus filled vp, the Turkes valiantly came on,ſeeking by plaine force to enter the bulwarke. Firſt came on the Aſapi, whom as men of leaſt worth the Turks captaines vſe to thruſt to the firſt danger: After whom followed the horſemen,now on foot,with ſwords and targuets,or elſe their horſmens ſtaues,couering the M
Ianizaries,who vpon their knees with their harquebuſiers ſore gauled the defendants. This hot fight endured aboue three houres with equall hope and courage: but the Turkes ſtill relieued with freſh ſouldiors, repulſed the Chriſtians,and gained the vttermoſt bulwarke: neuertheleſſe, the Italian fort was that day valiantly defended,the very women and religious helping to defend it:

The Turks with incredible labour fill vp the ditches & take, and by plaine force aſſault the bulwarke of the ſuburbs towards Buda.

A it: in which assault a tall Hungarian woman, whose courage farre exceeded the weakenesse of her sex, thrusting in amongst the souldiours vpon the top of the fort, with a great sythe in her hand, at one blow stroke off two of the Turks heads, as they were climing vp the rampier. This assault was giuen the nine and twentieth of August, on which day the Turkes had before taken BELGRADE, and also slaine king *Lewes* at the battell of MOHACHZ; and were therefore after their superstitious manner in obseruation of their fortunat and vnfortunat dayes, in good hope to haue then taken the citie: wherein they were much deceiued, being not able at that time further to enter, but enforced againe to retire. Wherewith *Solyman* offended, sent for *Abraham*, *Achomates*, and *Halis* (the cheefe captaines in that assault) into his tent, and reproued them sharpely, for that the bulwarke being so valiantly and fortunatly woon, they had not with more
B courage prosecuted the victorie, but cowardly (as he thought) giuen it ouer, being in a manner alreadie woon: and therefore with sterne countenance commaunded them to prepare all things readie within three dayes for a fresh assault, and neuer to returne vnto him, except they did win the citie. Whereunto the captaines answered no more (for were they neuer so guiltlesse, they might not before him stand to excuse themselues) but that they would in short time accomplish his desire. Wherefore hauing made all readie, and encouraged the souldiors to this last assault, they terribly assailed the rampiers, and brought a great feare vpon the defendants: for taking the benefit of a thick mist (as it oftentimes chanceth in marrish grounds) they were with great silence (contrarie to their manner) got vp to the top of the rampiers, and come to handy blows, before they were well discouered. The fight was for the time fierce and terrible: but the Ianizaries pre-
C uailing, at length put the Germanes to flight, and after them the Italians also, so that now well was he that could run fastest towards the citie. But that their hastie flight little auailed, when as they were to passe out by a little narrow gate in manner of a wicket: and they in the citie, without regard of them that fled, had plucked vp the draw bridge ouer the ditch. For naturally it commeth oftentimes to passe, that the feare of the present danger, without blushing excuseth our foule dealing. So the barbarous and fierce enemie pursuing the flying Christians at the heeles all the length of those suburbes with most cruell execution, many notable men, some fighting, some flying, were there slaine: amongst whom was *Octauianus Serosactus*, author of the euill counsell whereof ensued that calamitie. *Barcotius* the Generall flying on horseback to the little gate, which was not to be passed thorow, and crying in vaine to them that fled, to haue the great
D gate opened, was by the comming of the Ianizaries slain: whose head and right hand full of rich rings, was by the barbarous enemie carried about in derision vpon a launce. The rest of the flying multitude finding the little gate shut vp with the bodies of the dead, and the bridge maliciously drawne vp, desperatly threw threw themselues into the deepe ditch; where some of them labouring to swim out, were caught by the legs and armes by other that could not swim, and both together drowned. Some hardly crauling ouer, were shot in the head or backe with the Turkes arrowes: othersome sticking fast in the mud, were as if it had beene in sport shot to death by the Turkes: some few there was which got ouer, and were saued.

A notable act of an Hungarian woman.

The suburbes of Alba Regalis woon by the Turkes.

The miserable slaughter of the flying christians

There was yet left in the citie the Generall of the German horsemen, and *Vscasades* of CREMONA, an Italian captaine; these two gathering the remainder of the souldiors which were left,
E placed them vpon the wals: but the citizens were strucke with such a feare, that they could not tell which way to turne themselues. For now *Birrous* the maior, with the aldermen and other chiefe citizens, seeing the slaughter of the Italians & Germans, were so ouercome with despaire, that they thought no hope of their well doing was to be reposed in making of any farther resistance, but onely in the mercie of *Solyman*. Wherefore *Birrous* spake vnto the Turks from the wall, That he might safely send embassadours to *Solyman*, to intreat with him vpon reasonable conditions, for the yeelding vp of the citie: which thing *Achomates* easily granted. With these embassadours for the citizens, went also the generals of the German horsemen, and *Carolus Rufus* an Italian captaine (who of all others had borne himselfe most valiantly in all the assaults, to the great admiration of the Turks) to intreat for the safetie and libertie of the souldiors. The em-
F bassadours being brought before the great Bassaes, requested, That yeelding the citie, the citizens might enioy their liues and libertie: whereunto they were so answered, as that it seemed they should not all be pardoned, yet was the generall feare well diminished, for that the punishment respected but some few. *Rufus* was courteously entertained; and easily obtained, that the Italians might in safetie depart with bag and baggage to VIENNA: the like grace also obtained the Gene-

Embassadours sent to Solyman, to entreat vpon conditions for the yeelding of the citie.

Generall of the Germans for his ſoldiors. *Solyman* the eunuch Baſſa, offered vnto *Rufus* honourable entertainment, if he would haue ſerued *Solyman*: which when he refuſed as bound to king *Ferdinand* by oath, in honour of his valour he gaue him a rich cloake wrought with flowers of gold. The embaſſadours returning into the citie, and telling how they had ſped, deliuered the citiſens of a great feare. Shortly after the citie being yeelded, *Achomates* by open proclamation in the market place, commaunded the Italians and Germans to make themſelues readie againſt the next day to depart, and to take good heed that no Hungarian went with them: hee alſo ſtraightly charged the citiſens to keepe their houſes, vntill the ſtrange ſouldiors were departed. At the time appointed, the Italians and Germans ſet forward, conducted by *Homares* with a companie of the Turks horſemen, who faithfully defended them againſt the Tartares, running vp and downe the countrey after ſpoile: neither was any thing taken from them but their dags, which the German horſemen after a new faſhion carried at their ſaddle bowes; theſe the Turks greatly deſired, delighted with the noueltie of the inuention, to ſee them ſhot off with a firelocke without a match. But after the departure of *Homares*, they were in their trauell ſet vpon by the Hungarians, with whom they had many hoat skirmiſhes, and had hardly eſcaped vnſpoiled, had they not beene reſcued by the kings ſouldiors lying in garriſon in the caſtles as they paſſed alongſt the countrey. The few which remained, after many troubles came at laſt to VIENNA, more like ghoaſts than men. G H

Solyman entreth into Alba Regalis.

Solyman entring quietly into the citie, firſt viſited the ſepulchers of the Hungarian kings, and gaue out proclamation, That the Hungarians ſhould feare of him no harme; for that he was not come to conquer them, but to deliuer them from the bondage of the Germans, and ſo to reſtore againe that entire kingdome vnto *Stephen* the right heire of king *Iohn*. But within three or foure daies after, he called out the chiefe citiſens into a field not farre off, wherein the bodies of condemned men were woont to be buried, as if he would haue there taken an oath of them for their fidelitie: whither, after they were all aſſembled in the beſt manner they could, as to ſome ſolemn feaſt, the cruell tyrant (without regard of his faith or promiſe) cauſed them all to be ſlain. Howbeit ſome report, that he cauſed them onely to be put to death which bare office in the citie, at ſuch time as they reuolted from the obedience of the queen and the infant king, vnto *Ferdinand*, and had then brought in German ſouldiors; and that he ſent the reſt into exile to BVDA and BELGRADE. So *Solyman* leauing *Balibeius* gouernour of ALBA REGALIS; and *Mahometes* ſometime gouernour of BELGRADE, his lieutenant generall for the whole gouernment of that kingdome, returned againe toward CONSTANTINOPLE, Winter now beginning to approach: after he had that Sommer woon STIGONIVM and ALBA REGALIS, two of the chiefeſt cities of HVNGARIE. All this while king *Ferdinand* had raiſed no power worth the ſpeaking of, to withſtand ſo mightie an enemie; onely at VIENNA lay ſeauen thouſand Germans and foure thouſand Italians, at ſuch time as *Solyman* departed from ALBA REGALIS, which were ſhortly after diſcharged. I K

Solyman cauſeth the chiefe citiſens of Alba galis to be ſlain.

Solyman returneth to Conſtantinople.

Whiles *Solyman* thus lay at the ſiege of ALBA REGALIS, he ſent his Tartarian horſemen which ſerued him to ſmall purpoſe in the ſiege, to ſpoile the countrey round about: theſe ſauage people doing much harme, were in diuers places circumuented by the Hungarians, and about three thouſand of them ſlaine: one of them being taken priſoner, had found in his knapſacke halfe a child, of about two yeares old, the loathſome remainder of his barbarous feeding. L

Barbaruſſa all this while lying with his fleet (as we haue before ſaid) at MARSEILLES, fretted exceedingly, that he had to his diſhonour vndertaken ſo long a voyage by ſea, to pleaſure him which was not able (as he ſaid) to direct his owne deſignes to any certaine reſolution, but ſhamefully ſuffered the beſt time of the yeare for ſeruice, negligently to paſſe away without any thing doing; the blame whereof would (as he ſaid) be imputed to him at CONSTANTINOPLE: and that *Solyman*, who deſired to aid the king his friend and confederat, and by all meanes to annoy his enemies, would take in euill part to haue it reported, that he had with ſo great charge ſet out ſo great a fleet, and ſo far off, to help his friend hardly beſet with his enemies, and to haue done nothing: beſides that, he tooke on like a Turke, that he who in time of ſeruice, neuer vſed negligently to let ſlip the leaſt opportunitie, ſhould now blemiſh his former credit and eſtimation, by lying ſtill all that Sommer in the harbour of MARSEILLES, where his ſouldiors grew lazie with doing nothing. Wherefore *Polinus* going to the king, told him of the proud Turkes great diſcontentment for lacke of imployment: and returning to *Barbaruſſa*, brought order from M

the

A the king, that he ſhould lay ſiege to NICE a citie of PROVINCE, then holden by the Duke of SAVOY. This citie ſtanding vpon the ſea, was by one of the French kings for a great ſum of money pawned vnto the Duke: which mony king *Francis* had many times offered to haue repaied, but could neuer get the citie out of the dukes hands. Vnto which ſeruice, the French king ſent alſo his fleet of two and twentie gallies and eighteene ſhips, wherein were embarked eight thouſand footmen, and victuall for many daies. This fleet departing from MARSEILLIS, keeping cloſe by the ſhoare, came to the port called MONOC; whether two daies after came *Barbaruſſa* alſo with an hundred and fiftie gallies. From thence *Polinus* by commaundement from the king, writ vnto the State of GENVA, That they ſhould not feare of that great fleet any hoſtilitie, which was not to hurt any but them of NICE, and not them neither if they would yeeld themſelues.

B For more aſſurance whereof, he obtained of the Turkes diuers GENVA captiues, which had long time been chained in their gallies, and courteouſly ſet them at libertie, & ſent them home without ranſome. After that, he friendly exhorted the citiſens of NICE, to yeeld themſelues againe vnto their ancient and lawfull prince, renowned for his bountie and power; rather than to aduenture their ſtate to all extremities for that poore and diſtreſſed duke, who betweene the emperor and the French king, diſpoiled of the greateſt part of his dominions, ſaw no other end of his miſeries, but to leaue that little which yet remained, as a prey to the one or the other that ſhould firſt lay hand thereon. Whereunto the magiſtrats of the towne anſwered, That they knew no other prince or ſoueraigne, but *Charles* their duke: wherefore hee ſhould deſiſt farther to ſolicite them by letters or meſſengers, whom they would make no other account of but as of their

C enemies. Wherefore the Frenchmen and Turkes landing their forces, laid ſiege to the towne in three places. The citizens had but a little before newly fortified their wals, by the direction of *Paulus Simeon*, captaine of the caſtle, and one of the kinghts of the RHODES, a man of great experience; who long before taken at ſea by pyrats, had ſometime ſerued *Barbaruſſa*, and therefore perſuaded the citizens at reſolute men to withſtand the Turkes. Which, that they ſhould more conſtantly performe, he tooke their wiues and children, and weaker ſort of the people into the caſtle; and from thence furniſhed the citizens with all things neceſſary for their defence. The citie was at once in diuers places battered by the Turks and French, both by ſea and land: ſo that at laſt the Turks had beaten downe one of the new built bulwarks, and made ſo faire a breach, that with their enſigns diſplaied, they attempted to haue entred: whoſe forwardnes *Leo Strozza*

D (then ſeruing the French king with a band of Italians) imitating, ſought to haue entred alſo: but the citizens ſtanding valiantly vpon their defence, manfully repulſed both the Turks and Italians, and cauſed them with loſſe to retire. In this aſſault were ſlaine about an hundred Turkes; and of *Strozza* his ſoldiors two and twentie. Preſently after, *Barbaruſſa* with all his force began a freſh batterie, in ſuch terrible maner, that the citizens ſeeing their wals in diuers places opened, and the few ſouldiors they had, ſore wounded, and no hope to be in conuenient time relieued; began to parley with the French General from the wall, concerning the yeelding vp of the citie; vpon condition, that they might in all reſpects liue vnder the French king as they had done vnder the duke: for performance whereof, the Generall gaue them his faith. But *Polinus* fearing

E leaſt the Turks ſhould violate this compoſition, and for griefe of the loſſe of their fellowes, or for hope of the ſpoile brake into the citie, entreated *Barbaruſſa* to recall his ſouldiours, and to cauſe them to go abourd his gallies. For which cauſe not long after, the Ianizaries, as men deceiued of their hoped prey, were about to haue ſlain both *Polinus* and *Strozza*, as they came from talking with *Barbaruſſa*.

Nice in Prouince beſieged by the French and the Turkes.

The citizens craue parley, and after yeeld the citie.

The citie thus yeelded, they began to conſult for the taking of the caſtle: the performance whereof conſiſted firſt in the aſſailing of the caſtle it ſelfe, and then in defending of the citie from the ſudden ſallies of them in the caſtle; and likewiſe in defending of them which beſieged the caſtle, ſo that no enemie ſhould come to raiſe the ſiege: of which two things, *Barbaruſſa* put the Frenchi to choice which they would take, ſhewing himſelfe readie either to beſiege the caſtle, or

F to keepe the field. The French ſtanding in doubt of which to make choice, the prould old Turk ſcorning their ſlow reſolution, and them alſo, as men vnfit for the ready accompliſhment of any martiall exploit; cauſed ſeuen pieces of batterie, wherof two were of wonderful greatneſſe, to be placed in a trice in a place moſt conuenient, and the ſame quickly entrenched and fortified, to the great admiration of the French: with which pieces he had quickly beaten down the battlements of the wals, and centenel houſes, ſo that no man was able to ſhew himſelf vpon the wals.

The caſtle beſieged.

The

The Frenchmen likewiſe on the other ſide did with their great ordinance continually batter the G
caſtle: but with long ſhooting they came to ſuch want of ſhot and pouder, that *Polinus* was glad
to requeſt, that he might either borrow or buy ſome of *Barbaruſſa*: whereat the Turke fretted
and fumed exceedingly, That they ſhould in their owne country ſtand in need of his prouiſion,
who at MARSEILLES had better fraughted their ſhips with wine, than with neceſſaries for the
warres. For the rough and ſeuere old Turke could not forbeare to taunt them, and oftentimes
complained, that he was deluded with the hope of great matters which *Polinus* had promiſed
at CONSTANTINOPLE; and that in ſuch a rage, that he would threaten to lay hands vpon
Polinus, who had brought him from CONSTANTINOPLE thither, whereas he muſt either loſe his
Barbaruſſa in his rage threatneth to lay hands on Polinus, and to returne forthwith to Conſtantinople. honour, or hauing ſpent his ſhot and pouder, expoſe himſelfe and his fleet to all dangers. Where-
fore being exceeding angry with the French, he ſuddenly called a Counſell of his captaines, H
and other chiefe officers, giuing it out, That he would preſently returne toward CONSTANTI-
NOPLE, ſeeing that among theſe cowardly and vnskilful men (as it pleaſed him to terme them)
he found nothing ready or according to promiſe. Yet for all that, when he had chafed his fill, by
the faire entreatance and large promiſes of the French Generall and *Polinus* together, the way-
ward old man was perſuaded to change his mind, and to continue the ſiege. But hee was yet
ſcarcely well pacified, and his mind ſet againe vpon the ſiege, but letters were intercepted from
the great captaine *Alphonſus Vaſtius*, to *Paulus* captaine of the caſtle, wherein he requeſted him
to hold out a while againſt the enemy, vntill that he, who had already ſent before his light horſ-
men, might come alſo himſelfe with his men at armes, who were vpon the way alongſt the Alps
by the ſea ſide, and would in two dayes with the ſlaughter of the Turkes put him and his caſtle I
out of all feare and daunger. Which thing once bruted in the campe, ſuch a great and ſudden
feare came vpon the Turks and Frenchmen, the night following (the more to terrifie them) pro-
uing by chance very rainie and tempeſtuous; that they all forſooke their trenches and great or-
dinance, and laying downe their weapons, by narrow pathes climing ouer the top of the high
mountaine, came down headlong to the ſea ſide to the fleet. But the day appearing, and no ene-
mie to be ſeene, they were aſhamed of that they had done, and came againe to the ſiege. Not
The Turkes and French giue ouer the caſtle of Nice, and ſet fire on the citie. long after, when as the caſtle in all mens iudgment was hardly to be battered, and ſtanding vp-
on a firme rocke, was not but in long time with hard labour and doubtfull ſucceſſe to be vnder-
mined, it was generally thought good to raiſe the ſiege. The Turkes vpon their departure brake
into the citie, and when they had taken the ſpoile thereof, ſet it on fire. K

Barbaruſſa retiring with his fleet to ANTIPOLIS, came to anker at the Iſland LERINA, called
of the marriners MARGARITA; at which time *Vaſtius* and the duke of SAVOY, with *Auria*
his fleet arriued at VILLA FRANCA: in the entrance of which hauen, the gally wherein *Va-
ſtius* went, was like to haue bene loſt. Foure other gallies by force of ſudden tempeſt were dri-
uen vpon the rockes, and ſo ſuddenly beaten in pieces with the ſurge of the ſea, that the gally-
ſlaues had not leiſure to ſtrike off their yrons, but were there all drowned, and all the ordinance
loſt. *Polinus* vnderſtanding this diſtreſſe of the enemy, ſent one *Petrus Angelus* to *Barbaruſſa*,
to ſhew him the occaſion offered, and to perſuade him with all ſpeed to haſt thither with his
fleet, as to a moſt aſſured victory. *Barbaruſſa* ſeemed to like well of the motion, and promiſed to
goe, yet he mooued not, letted as it was thought with the contrary wind, which then blew hard L
at Eaſt, and with the roughneſſe of the ſea. But the wind being fallen, and the ſea become calme,
and he contrary to his wonted manner making no haſt, ſet ſlowly forward, and being a little on
his way, came againe to an anker, and went no further; the Sanzackes and other captaines firſt
Barbaruſſa derided by the Turks captaines marualling, and afterward laughing thereat, ſcoffingly ſaid, That *Barbaruſſa* did but reaſon to
deale kindly with *Auria*, as his brother and friend of his owne profeſſion, for that he had ſome
yeares before receiued the like friendſhip at his hands, in letting him eſcape at HIPPONA, which
he now honeſtly paid him againe. Whereunto *Barbaruſſa* both then and afterwards at CON-
His anſwere to their taunts. STANTINOPLE anſwered no otherwiſe, but, That he being an old commander, & halfe blind,
ſaw more in the matter than all thoſe greene captaines with their ſharpe ſight. Not long after, he
returned againe towards MARSEILLES, and put into the hauen of TOLON, called in ancient M
time TAVRENTA. *Vaſtius* and the duke comming to NICE, commended the captaine of the
caſtle, and wondring at the cunning manner of the Turks fortifications, preferred them in that
point before the Chriſtians. *Barbaruſſa* lying with his fleet at TOLON, and by the kings officers
entertained with all poſſible courtiſie, deliuered fiue and twentie gallies to *Salec* the famous py-
rat,

A rat,and *Assanes* his nigh kinſman,who paſſing the bay of NARBONA,rifled certaine townes in SPAINE,ſtanding vpon the ſea coaſt,and about the promontorie of *Venus*, called of the marriners CREVM,tooke great prize, and in the hauen of PALAMOS tooke one merchant ſhip and a gallie: with which prey they paſſed ouer to ALGIERS,as they were commanded,there to winter,and with the firſt of the Spring to returne againe to *Barbaruſſa* in PROVINCE. That Winter *Barbaruſſa* repairing his fleet, was furniſhed with many neceſſaries by the Genowaies,and eſpecially by *Auria* himſelfe,who vnder the colour of redeeming of priſoners, willingly furniſhed the Turke with ſuch things as he wanted: for although he profeſſed himſelfe one of the emperors captains,yet would he not ſhew an enemies mind by the vnſeaſonable deniall of a little ſea furniture,leaſt in ſo doing he ſhould haue hurt his natiue countrie of GENVA, which he ſaw then
B ſubiect to the iniurie of ſo great a fleet ſo nigh at hand.But leaue we now *Barbaruſſa* to Winter in PROVINCE,and with the courſe of time turne a little out of the way,to ſee in *Muleaſſes* king of TVNES the ſmall aſſurance the greateſt haue in higheſt place of worldly honour.

This Mahometane king once before thruſt out of his kingdome by *Barbaruſſa*, and reſtored againe by *Charles* the emperour (as is before declared) hearing of his comming with this great fleet, and imagining nothing leſſe than that hee ſhould come to the aid of the moſt Chriſtian king,doubted(not without cauſe)leaſt it was prepared againſt himſelfe.Beſides that,diuers great cities of his kingdome,namely CONSTANTINA, MAHEMEDIA, and MAHOMETA (called in auncient time CYRTHA)LEPTIS and ADRVMENTVM, were then holden by the Turkes, *Barbaruſſa* his fauorites: wherefore fearing the worſt, about the ſame time that *Barbaruſſa* was
C ſayling alongſt the coaſt of ITALIE, he paſſed ouer into SICILIE,to haue met the emperour at GENVA,and to haue obtained of him greater aid againſt the Turkes. At his departure out of AFFRICKE, hee committed the tuition of his kingdome to ſuch valiant men as hee ſuppoſed would haue beene vnto him moſt faithfull: Firſt he appointed *Mahometes*, then Maniphæt, to gouerne the citie, and *Corſus* otherwiſe called *Fares*,his old ſeruant,to keepe the caſtle; leauing *Mahometes* his brother and *Fares* his ſonne, with *Touarres* a Spaniard (captaine of the caſtle of GVLETTA)as pledges, the one of his brothers,the other of his fathers faith: but vnto *Amida* (his ſonne)he committed the leading of his men of war for the defence of his kindome againſt the Turkes and Numidians. As hee was paſſing out of SICILIA to haue met the emperour at
D GENVA,he was by contrarie winds driuen firſt to CAIETA, and afterwards to NAPLES, where he was by the viceroy honourably entertained,and a houſe appointed for him richly furniſhed. The Neapolitanes wondering at the ſtrange attire of the people, with the manner of their feeding,and curious plentie of all maner of ſweet perfumes: for into euery diſh they put in odors of exceeding price; ſo that it was well known,that a peacocke and two feſants,dreſſed after the manner of the kings kitchin,coſt aboue an hundred duckats: ſo that not only the dining chamber,when they were carued vp,but all the houſe was ſo filled with the ſtrange and fragrant ſmel, that all they that dwelt neere thereabouts, were partakers of the pleaſure of that vnuſuall & delicat perfume. From NAPLES hee was about to haue trauelled by land to the emperour, being then in conference with the Pope at BVXETVM (fearing to aduenture the ſea, poſſeſſed by the enemies fleet) had not the emperour by his letters willed him to ſtay ſtill where he was. But
E whileſt he made his abode at NAPLES, and carefully attended what courſe *Barbaruſſa* would take,who furniſhed with ſo great a fleet was departed from NICE,diſappointed of his purpoſe, he was by certaine meſſengers aduertiſed out of APFRICKE,That *Amida* his ſonne was riſen vp againſt him,and poſſeſſing himſelfe of the kingdome, had ſlaine his captaines, polluted his wiues,and taken the caſtle of TVNES. With which newes he being exceedingly troubled, determined without delay to paſſe our into APFRICKE, and though late, yet as hee might to remedie his domeſtical troubles,in hope to oppreſſe that rebellion in the beginning,and his ſonne alſo,before he could gather any ſtrength to reſt vpon. Wherefore he with all the haſt hee could opened his cofers,and entertained ſoldiors,the viceroy giuing leaue to all ſuch baniſhed men as
F would to come and giue their names, to paſſe ouer as ſouldiours into APFRICKE: vpon report whereof, ſuch a number of malefactors & condemned perſons came flocking to NAPLES,that it was thought a ſufficient armie might haue been made of ſuch kind of men; euery one of them chuſing rather to enter into pay,and blot out the infamie of baniſhment,and proue the fortune of warres, than to liue wandring vp and downe in the woods, and in danger euery houre to be hanged. Of theſe infamous men, one *Ioannes Baptiſta Lofredius* (a man well borne, but of a

Muleaſſes fearing the comming of Barbaruſſa, departeth from Tunes into Italy to craue aid of Charles the emperour.

Coſtly diſhes.

Amida riſeth againſt Muleaſſes his father, and vſurpeth the kingdome of Tunes.

fierce and couetous diſpoſition (vndertooke the leading: hee couenanting with *Muleaſſes* to haue three moneths pay before hand, leuied eighteene hundred men, which he preſently ſhipped; and keeping the greateſt part of their pay to himſelfe, paſſed ouer with the king into AFRICKE, and landed at GVLETTA. But how *Amida* riſe vp againſt his father, and what was the end of that bloudie rebellion, ſhall not be amiſſe briefely to rehearſe. There were certaine noblemen of great authoritie about *Amida* when *Muleaſſes* departed, which at their pleaſure ruled the young prince, who eaſily harkened vnto their counſell, and followed the ſame: the chiefe of theſe was one *Mahometes*, ſonne of *Bohamer*, who in the raigne of *Mahometes*, *Muleaſſes* his father, was Maniphet, whom *Muleaſſes* (poſſeſſed of the kingdome) put ſhamefully to death by cutting off his priuities, becauſe he had by haſtie mariage deceiued him of *Rhahamana*, a maiden of incomparable beautie, the daughter of *Abderomen* captaine of the caſtle, whom he moſt paſſionatly loued: for which cruell fact, *Mahometes* his ſonne had of long time conceiued a deadly hatred againſt *Muleaſſes*, which he had many yeares diſſembled, that he might as occaſion ſerued bee the more cruelly reuenged. Next vnto him was another *Mahometes* ſurnamed *Adulzes*, whom *Muleaſſes* was wont commonly to call his worſt ſeruant. Theſe two with a few others conſpiring together, gaue it out, that *Muleaſſes* was dead at NAPLES, and before his death had moſt irreligiouſly (as they accounted it) reuolted to the Chriſtian religion. With which report they perceiuing *Amida* moued, came vnto him and perſuaded him quickly to enter into his fathers ſeat, leaſt *Mahometes* his younger brother then lying in hoſtage with the Chriſtians at GVLETTA, ſhould by the fauour and helpe of *Touarres*, whoſe garriſon was euer readie, be preferred before him. For *Mahometes* was eighteene yeares old, reſembling his grandfather in name, fauour, and diſpoſition, and therefore of the citizens of TVNES beſt beloued: wherefore *Amida* came in poſt haſt out of the campe to TVNES, to lay firſt hand vpon his fathers kingdome. The people which as yet had heard nothing of the kings death, receiued him with doubtful countenance: and as many ſtood maruelling that he was ſo raſhly come into the citie without his fathers commaundement, *Mahometes* (appointed by *Muleaſſes* to gouerne the citie) came out and ſharpely reproued him as guiltie of high treaſon, perſuading him to returne againe vnto the campe: and ſeeing him ſtay, by force of multitude thruſt him out of the citie. *Amida* deceiued of his expectation, got him out of the way into the pleaſant countrie of MARTIA, betweene VTICA and the ruines of old CARTHAGE. But *Mahometes* Gouernour of the citie, after he had repulſed *Amida*, got him with all ſpeed by water to *Touarres* at GVLETTA, to know of him more aſſuredly, if any ſuch euill newes were brought from SICILIE of the death of the king; and to complaine of the raſhneſſe and intollerable preſumption of *Amida*. Where ſtaying ſomewhat long in diſcourſing with the captaine, and afterwards returning to the citie, hee was ſuſpected to haue practiſed with the captaine, to make *Mahometes* (the pledge in GVLETTA) king in his fathers ſteed; for ſo the common voice went. The Moores are by nature a faithleſſe people, vnconſtant, haſtie, ſuſpitious, deſirous of newes, which true or falſe, they for the time interpret as ſerueth beſt their factions, whereunto the are exceedingly giuen: So at the firſt there riſe in the citie a doubtfull rumour of the making of a new king; the ſuſpition whereof more and more encreaſing, ſet all the citie on an vprore. By occaſion whereof, certaine of the citizens to whom the verie name of *Muleaſſes* was odious, ſpeedily certified *Amida* (then in the gardens of MARTIA, ſighing and grieuing at his hard fortune) how all ſtood, and that now was the time to do himſelfe good. He reuiued with that vnexpected newes, and encouraged by the perſuaſion of *Bohamar* and *Adulzes*, and other his followers; reſolued to take hold vpon that good offer of fortune which would not alwaies frowne, and to follow his good hap. So in haſt returning to TVNES, and entring in at the gate which he then found open, ran preſently to the gouernours houſe; and finding him not at home, cruelly ſlew all his houſhold, and with his bloudie companie went preſently to the caſtle: where *Fares* the captaine ſeeking to haue kept him out, and boldly laying hands vpon his horſes bridle to haue thruſt him backe, was by a deſperat Ethiopian, one of *Amida* his followers, thruſt thorow with a ſword and ſlaine: ouer whoſe bodie yet ſprawling, *Amida* forcing his horſe, brake into the caſtle with his friends; and finding *Mahometes* gouernour of the citie, preſently ſlew him alſo. And ſo by this meanes *Amida* in the ſpace of an houre (a little before, a man in deſpaire) obtained the citie, the caſtle, and the kingdome togither. After that, he murthered his younger brethren; and embrued with bloud, without ſhame polluted his fathers concubines. *Muleaſſes* landed (as we haue before ſaid) at GVLETTA,

Muleaſſes returneth into Affrick to Guletta.

Amida thruſt out of Tunes.

Amida returneth, and poſſeſſeth the kingdome.

A LETTA, with ſuch forces as he had brought with him out of ITALIE; was aduiſed by *Touarres* the Spaniard, not to aduenture with ſuch a handfull of men to goe to TVNES, before he were wel aſſured of the good diſpoſition of the citizens towards him: And was the more earneſt with *Lofredius* not to go, becauſe the Viceroy had expreſſely written, that he ſhould in no caſe go any further than GVLETTA, except the king according to his promiſe, had a good ſtrength of the Numidians to ioine with him. But certaine of the noble men amongſt the Moores, which vnder the colour of friendſhip were fled out of the citie, and had after the ſolemne maner of their nation put their ſwords vnto their throats, and ſworn to be faithful vnto him; wonderfully prickt forward both the king and *Lofredius*, too haſtie of themſelues to their owne deſtinie, bearing them in hand, That *Amida* vpon the firſt ſight of his father, would forſake the citie, and betake
B himſelfe to flight: ſo without more ſtaying, *Muleaſſes* with enſigne diſplaied ſet forward towards TVNES, *Lofredius* cheerefully following him, *Touarres* requeſting them in vaine to beware of the Moores treacherie. *Muleaſſes* marching ſtill forward, was come ſo nigh the citie, that they might from the wals deſcrie him: when ſuddenly a ſtrong troupe of Moores ſallied out of the gate with a terrible crie, and fiercely aſſailed him, whom the kings horſemen valiantly receiued: many falling on both ſides. *Muleaſſes* in this hoat skirmiſh, fighting couragiouſly againſt his enemies, was wounded in the face and bled exceedingly; which diſcouraged them about him, that they doubting of his life, turned their backes and fled: when preſently a wonderfull number of horſe and foot, ſuddenly iſſuing out of the oliue gardens, had beſet *Lofredius* and his ſouldiors round: vpon whom the Italians diſcharged certaine field pieces, but after they
C had once diſcharged them, they had no leaſure to charge againe; for the barbarous enemie came on ſo thicke and ſo faſt, that the Italians ſeeing themſelues too weake, and compaſſed in round, let fall their weapons as men diſcouraged, & caſt themſelues into the lake, ſo by ſwimming and taking hold of the little boats to ſaue themſelues from the enemies ſword: which boats ſtood thoſe diſtreſſed men in great ſteed, for being furniſhed with ſmall pieces, they did beat backe the Moores, who eagerly purſued them euen into the lake with their horſes. *Lofredius* as a man amaſed with the ſudden comming of the enemie, tooke the lake with his horſe, and was there vnhorſed by the enemie and ſlaine, as were diuers with him. Some few there were that fought couragiouſly, chuſing rather honourably to die in the middeſt of their enemies, than ſhamefully to be ſtrangled in the ſtinking lake. *Muleaſſes* ſoiled with his owne bloud and with the duſt,
D flying amongſt the reſt, was knowne and taken: nothing more bewraying him than his odoriferous perfumes. In this conflict thirteene hundred Italians were loſt; the reſt which eſcaped *Touarres* relieued, and ſhortly after ſhipped them ouer into SICILIE, from whence they trauelled home to NAPLES, but ſo poore, as well ſhewed the miſerie of their fortune. *Amida* hauing thus obtained the victorie, was more carefull of nothing than to make his father vnfit for gouernment, which he did by cutting the ſight of both his eyes with a hoat penknife: the like crueltie he vſed vpon *Nahaſar* and *Abdallas* his brethren, then taken with his father. After that, he certified *Touarres* captaine of GVLETTA, That he had taken a few youths priſoners, which he would deliuer vnto him; and that he had bereft his father of his ſight, who had deſerued a worſe puniſhment, as he that had long before done the like to his brethren; but had yet left him
E his life, as an example to other tirants, and to ſhew that he dealt not altogither vnmercifully with ſo perfidious a father: Laſt of all, he confirmed (vpon certain conditions) the ſame league which his father had with him: which he well ſaw was to great purpoſe, eſpecially in the newneſſe of his kingdome. Neither did *Touarres* refuſe the ſame, as ſtanding with his preſent profit: for vpon this agreement, *Amida* was to giue him certaine money to pay his ſouldiors, and to deliuer him the priſoners he had taken, with the enſignes and bodie of *Lofredius*: For more aſſurance whereof, he gaue *Sehites* his ſonne, then nine yeares old in hoſtage; yet vpon condition, that if an aſſured peace could not be agreed vpon, but that they muſt needs enter into warre, then *Touarres* ſhould forthwith reſtore him his ſonne *Sehites* in ſafetie. Theſe capitulations, although they ſeemed not vnreaſonable, and were of them well liked; yet *Touarres* thought it not altogether a-
F greeing with the honour of the emperor, that he ſhould enioy the kingdome who by moſt horrible treaſon and deteſtable villanie had thruſt himſelfe thereinto without the emperors leaue. Wherfore he entred into a new deuiſe, to call in the rightful heire, who might at the emperours pleaſure (offended with the iniurie done by *Amida*) raigne in TVNES.

Muleaſſes going to Tunes, by the way ouerthrown

Lofredius ſlaine

Muleaſſes taken

Amida put out his fathers and brethrens eies.

There was an exile amongſt the Numidians one *Abdamalech*, euer ſince the time that *Roſ-*

Touarres ſendeth for Abdamelech, Amida his elder brother.

celes fled to *Barbaruſſa*. Him, becauſe he was *Muleaſſes* naturall brother, *Touarres* ſent for, put- G
ting him in hope of the kingdome, ſupported by *Anemſeha*, a great prince amongſt the Numidians, who had all that long time courteouſly entertained him. Neither was *Abdamalech* ſlow to accept the occaſion preſented, eſpecially encouraged thereunto by the Numidian prince his good friend, and the predictions of the Aſtrologers, who had foretold him, That he ſhould die king of TVNES. Which vaine kind of diuination hauing in it no maner of aſſurance, yet cauſeth great minds oftentimes to vndertake great attempts beyond reaſon, which falling out with more hap than they were with reaſon foretold, giueth ſome credit to that vanitie, and cauſeth thoſe cold prophets to be of ſome accounted as great wiſards. And to work this feat, ſuch a time was offered, as a better could not be wiſhed: for *Amida* hauing ſet all things in order as he pleaſed in the citie, and caſting no perill, was gone to BISERTA, to take order for his cuſtomes, which H
was there great vpon fiſhing. Wherefore *Touarres* to keepe his promiſe, ſent backe *Sehites*, *Amida* his ſonne, in a boat to TVNES, and receiued *Abdamalech*: who trauelling moſt part by night, was ſecretly come to GVLETTA, and there reſting himſelfe and his horſes a few houres; to preuent the fame of his comming, poſted in haſt with a troupe of his Numidian followers to

Abdamelech by policy obtaineth the kingdome of Tunes.

TVNES, and paſſing thorow the citie, went directly to the caſtle, which he entred without reſiſtance of the warders, ſuppoſing him to haue beene *Amida* come from BISERTA: for *Abdamalech* had after the manner of the Moores couered his face with a ſcarfe, as if it had beene to haue kept him from the Sunne and the duſt, and by that happie ſlight got into the caſtle, before it was knowne who he was. The warders perceiuing their error, began as men amaſed now too late to betake themſelues to their weapons, for in making reſiſtance, they were quickly ſlaine by I
the Numidians which came in with *Abdamalech*: who thus poſſeſſed of the caſtle (the chiefe ſtrength of that kingdome) let in his friends, which were many in the citie, by whom he was preſently ſaluted king, the reſt of the citizens either well liking of the matter, or at leaſt not daring for feare to ſtir. But as in theſe worldly things, for which men ſo vainly toile, is no aſſurance: ſo this new king ſhortly after fel ſicke and died, when he had raigned but ſix and twentie daies, and was afterwards roially enterred. After whoſe death, his mightie friends, with the chiefe of the citiſens (perſuaded and encouraged by *Touarres* the Spaniard) choſe *Mahometes* his ſon, a child ſcarſe twelue yeares old, to reigne in his fathers place: appointing *Abdalages Maniphat* (brother to him whom *Amida* ſlew) *Abdelchirinus Meſuar*, *Schyriffus* (a great man in their Mahometane ſuperſtition) & *Perellus* a Chriſtian knight, to be his directers and gouernors: which foure ſwayed all at their pleaſure. But *Abdelchirinus* tendering the welfare of his countrey, and deuiſing out of ſeaſon how to ſet vp one of the royall bloud, that were of himſelfe able to gouerne the kingdome, ſaying, That it was not for the common good to be ruled by a child: was for his labor by his other three fellowes ſuddenly ſlaine, with all his kindred and knowne friends. After whoſe death the other three erected a manner of Triumvirat gouernment, euery one of them laying hand vpon one part of the ſtate or other, as liked him beſt. *Amida* thus ſhut out of TVNES, and hauing loſt his kingdome, wandered vp and downe to LEPTIS, CYRAPOLIS, and many other places, crauing aid of euery man to recouer his kingdome, miſerably rent in ſunder (as he ſaid) by moſt wicked men, who inſolently triumphed ouer the boy king. Which they of TVNES knew well to be true, and daily complained of the death of *Abdelchirinus*, whom they called the faith- L
full counſellor and father of his country. Whileſt *Amida* is thus trudging vp and down, crauing helpe of this and that prince, prooving his friends, and ſounding his ſubiects affection towards him; *Muleaſſes* growne miſerable with long impriſonment and the calamitie of his diſaſter fortune, obtained of the young king his nephew ſo much fauour, as that hee might ſometime goe out of the caſtle to the church: vnder colour whereof hee tooke ſanctuarie, a place in TVNES holden in ſuch reuerence amongſt the Moores, as that it was a moſt inuiolate refuge to all ſuch as fled thereunto. Not long after, at ſuch time as *Bernardinus Mendoza*, the Admirall of SPAIN,

Muleaſſes at the requeſt of Touarres is ſent to Guletta.

came to GVLETTA with the Spaniſh fleet, *Muleaſſes* at the requeſt of *Touarres* was conueyed out of the Sanctuarie to the lake, and ſo by water to GVLETTA, there to be preſent at the conſultation there holden for the vtter ſubuerſion of *Amida*, and the driuing out of the Turks out of M
ſuch cities as they yet held alongſt the ſea coaſt in AFFRICA. *Muleaſſes* had hardly before eſcaped the hands of certaine of his enemies in TVNES, who ſought after his life, preſerued by an old woman, who mooued with pitie, hid him from their furie vnder a great heape of garlike: and had he not now in good time eſcaped to GVLETTA, he had againe fallen into the hands of his

Abdamelech dieth, and Mahometes his ſonne is choſen king in his place.

merci-

A mercileſſe ſonne *Amida*, who ſhortly after recouered againe his kingdome, and would not as he ſaid himſelfe haue ſpared him for the reuerence of any ſanctuarie. For the citizens of TVNES, wearie of the euill gouernment of ſuch as were in authoritie about the yong king, and not a little offended with the king himſelf, for eſpouſing *Meluccа* his couſin, one of *Muleaſſes* his daughters, ſecretly encouraged *Amida* by letters to repaire to the citie, promiſing to aid him in recouering his kingdome. Wherupon he came in ſuch haſt, that the young king had ſcarce time to get out of the citie: and *Amida* entring without reſiſtance, and holpen by his friends, eaſily obtained againe the kingdome, and exerciſed moſt exquiſit crueltie vpon his enemies: of whom he cauſed ſome to be torne in pieces, and deuoured of fierce maſtiues, kept hungerie for that purpoſe. *Perellus* he cauſed to be tortured, his ſecrets to be cut off, and himſelfe afterwards burnt to aſhes
B in the market place.

Amida recouereth the kingdome of Tunes, and taketh ſharp reuenge vpon his enemies.

But *Muleaſſes* ſtaied not long at GVLETTA, offended with the couetouſneſſe of *Touarres*, who (as he ſaid) had not faithfully reſtored ſuch things as he had before put him in truſt withall, but had auaritiouſly in his miſerie deceiued him of part of his rich houſholdſtuffe, with certain notable pretious ſtones, and ſome of his treaſure: wherof the blind king ſo grieuouſly complained to *Charles* the emperor, that for deciding the matter, they were both commanded to repaire vnto him into GERMANIE: where in concluſion to end the ſtrife, *Touarres* was diſcharged of his gouernment, and *Muleaſſes* ſent into SICILIE there to be kept of the common charge of that rich iſland. *Muleaſſes* by the way comming to ROME, was honourably feaſted by Cardinal *Ferneſius:* at which time he ſhewed himſelfe both in his apparel and behauiour not forgetfull of his better
C fortune: and being brought vnto the preſence of *Paulus* the great biſhop, would doe him no greater honour but to kiſſe his knee, accounting it too great an indignitie to haue kiſſed his foot. He was of ſtature tall, and of a princely diſpoſition, vnworthie of ſo hard a fortune, had he not in like maner before vnmercifully dealt with his owne brethren.

Muleaſſes diſdaineth to kiſſe the Popes foot.

Barbaruſſa wearie of his long lying to ſo ſmall purpoſe in PROVINCE, requeſted the French king either thorowly to employ him, or elſe to giue him leaue to depart: offering if he ſo pleaſed, to ſpoile all alongſt the coaſt of SPAINE, from the mountaine PYRÆNEI to CADIZ. But he not ignorant what hard ſpeeches ran of him alreadie in all parts of Chriſtendome, for bringing in the Turkes, was loath to leaue vnto the memorie of all poſteritie the foule remembrance of ſo woful a ſlaughter: beſides that, he was aduiſed to diſburden his countrie of ſuch troubleſome
D gueſts, who rouing about, did much harme in the prouince where they lay, and as it was reported, now and then ſnatcht vp one countrie peiſant or other, and chained them for ſlaues in their gallies. Wherefore in ſupplie of the Turkes that were dead, the king gaue vnto *Barbaruſſa* all the Mahometan ſlaues in his gallies, to the number of about foure hundred, and furniſhing him with all kind of prouiſion, and beſtowing great gifts vpon him and his captains, ſent him away: and with him *Strozza* with certaine gallies, his embaſſador to *Solyman*. So the Turks departing out of PROVINCE, kept alongſt the coaſt, vntill they came neere vnto SAVONA, whither the Germans ſent diuers preſents and freſh victuals to *Barbaruſſa*, which he tooke ſo thankfully, that he proteſted not to hurt any of their territorie. From thence he kept a right courſe to the Iſland of
E ELBA, belonging to the duke of FLORENCE, ouer againſt POPVLONA; where vnderſtanding that one of the ſonnes of *Sinan* his old friend was there kept priſoner, he writ vnto *Appianus* gouernour of the Iſland for his deliuerance to this effect:

1544

Barbaruſſa his letters to Appianus Gouernor of Elba.

I know, that a young man a Turke ſerueth thee, the ſonne of Sinan *ſurnamed the Iew, a famous captaine, taken of late at* TVNES: *him I would haue thee friendly to reſtore: which gift I will make thee vnderſtand to be vnto me moſt acceptable; for this our great fleet in paſſing by you, ſhall faithfully forbeare to vſe any hoſtilitie. But if thou ſhalt in this ſo ſmall a matter refuſe to gratifie me, expect vpon the coaſt of thy countrie all the harmes which an angrie enemie can doe.*

Whereunto *Appianus* ſhewing his men vpon the wals, in token that hee was not afraid, an-
F ſwered, That the young man was become a Chriſtian, and therefore might not in any caſe bee deliuered to the Turks: but that he would in any other thing gratifie him in what he could, and for his ſake vſe the young man as his ſonne. And to mollifie the vnkindneſſe of his anſwere, hee ſent him freſh victuall with other preſents. But *Barbaruſſa* offended with the anſwer, landed his men round about the iſland, and commanded them to make what ſpoile they could: which they

performed accordingly, hunting the Island people vp and down the rocks and mountains like Hares, vntill that *Appianus* not without cause doubting the vtter spoile of the Island, redeemed his peace by deliuering the young man to *Salec* the pyrat, who brought him to *Barbarussa* gallantly attired after the Italian manner, of whom he was ioyfully receiued, as the sonne of a most valiant captaine, his old friend: and thereupon *Barbarussa* staied his souldiors from doing any further harme vpon the Island, and gaue *Appianus* great thanks for him. This young man *Barbarussa* honoured with the commaund of seuen gallies, and afterwards sent him to his father then lying at SVETIA, a port of the red sea, Admirall for *Solyman* against the Portingals, who greatly troubled those seas. But the old Iew, ouerioyed with the sudden and vnexpected returne of his sonne, whom he had for many yeares before giuen as lost, in embracing of him fainted, and so presently for ioy died.

Appianus glad to deliuer the captiue whom Barbarussa required.

Sinan the Iew dieth for ioy.

This man for valour was accounted little inferiour to *Barbarussa*, but for discretion and iust dealing farre beyond him, nothing of so furious and wayward a disposition as was he. *Barbarussa* departing from ELBA, came into the bay of TELAMON in TVSCANY, and in short time took the citie, which he spoiled and burnt, but especially the house of *Bartholomeus Telamonius*; whose dead bodie but a little before buried, he caused to be pluckt out of the graue, & his bones to be scattered abroad, because he being admirall of the bishop of ROME his gallies, had in the Island of LESBOS wasted *Barbarussa* his fathers poore possession: and marching by night eight miles further into the land, surprised MONTENVM, and carried almost all the inhabitants away with him into captiuitie. The like mischiefe he did at the port called PORTVS HERCVLIS, but purposing to haue taken ORHATELLO, and there to haue fortified, he was by *Luna* and *Vitellius* (two valiant captaines before sent thither, the one by the State of SIENA, and the other by the duke of FLORENCE) repulsed. So though disappointed of his purpose, yet hauing done great harme, and put the whole countrie of TVSCANY in exceeding feare, he departed thence and landed againe at IGILIVM, now called GIGIO, an Island about twelue miles distant from PORTVS HERCLIS, where he quickly battered the towne, and carried a wonderfull number of all sorts into miserable captiuitie: keeping on his course, he passing the cape LINAR, & comming ouer against CANTVMCELLE, had burnt that citie for the same reason he did TELAMON, had he not bin otherwise persuaded by *Strozza* the French embassador, fearing to draw the French king into further obliquie. From thence he came with a direct course to the Island of ISCHIA; where landing in the night, he intercepted most part af the inhabitants of the island, as they were flying into the mountains: and in reuenge of the hatred he had conceiued against *Vastius* at the siege of NICE, he burnt FORINO, PANSA, and VARRANIVM, three chiefe townes of that island: but PITHACVSA, the dwelling place of *Vastius*, standing vpon a broken rocke, somewhat distant from the sea, he durst not aduenture vpon. Then scraping along the Island PROCHITA with lesse hurt, because most part of the inhabitants were before fled to PITHACVSA, he put into the bay of PVTEOLI, and sent *Salec* the pyrat with part of his fleet to make proofe if the citie of PVTEOLI, might from sea be battered. *Salec* drawing neere the citie, shot into it with his great ordinance, and by chance slew one *Saiauedra*, a valiant Spaniard, vpon the wals, & put the citisens in a great feare least the whole fleet should haue landed, they themselues as then vnprouided: but the viceroy came presently with a power both of horse and foot from NAPLES, which *Barbarussa* discouering from sea as they came downe the mountaines, called back *Salec*: and leauing the island of CAPRI, and passing by the promontorie ATHENEVM, was about to haue seised vpon SALERNVM, when a tempest suddenly arising, dispersed his fleet, and driue him beyond the promontorie PALINVRVS vpon the coast of CALABRIA, where he did exceeding much harme, especially at CARREATO. From thence he departed to the island of LIPARI, betwixt ITALIE and SICILIE, which island he miserably spoiled, and with fortie great pieces so battered the citie, that the citisens were constrained for feare to yeeld, whom he carried away all prisoners about the number of seuen thousand, of one sort of people and other, and burnt the citie. So loaded with the rich spoile of ITALIE and the islands vpon the coast, hee returned towards CONSTANTINOPLE with such multitude of poore Christian captiues, shut vp so close vnder hatches amongst the excrements of Nature, that all the way as he went almost euery houre some of them were cast dead ouer boord: euery man detesting the endlesse hatred betwixt the emperour and the French king, the very ground of all this and many thousand other most wofull and vndeserued calamities of their poore subiects. With this rich prey and an infinit

Barbarussa in his returne toward Constantinople, doth much harme vpon the coast of Italie.

A finit number of captiues, *Barbaruſſa* arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE in the beginning of Au- tumne, in the yeare 1544: where he was honourably receiued of *Solyman*, and highly commended for his good ſeruice both by ſea and land. *Barbaruſſa arriueth at Conſtantinople.*

Solyman triumphing at CONSTANTINOPLE of the good ſucceſſe he had in HVNGARIE, in the middeſt of all his glorie, was aduertiſed of the death of *Mahomet* his eldeſt ſonne, whom of all his children he held deereſt: whoſe dead bodie was ſhortly after brought from MAGNESIA, and with wonderfull ſolemnitie, and no leſſe mourning, buried at CONSTANTINOPLE. How entirely *Solyman* loued this his ſonne, well appeared by the great ſorrow he conceiued of his death; and not contented to haue built him a ſtately tombe, erected alſo in memoriall of him a Mahometane church, called the church of *Mahomet* the leſſer: for the difference of *Mahomet* *Mahomet Solymans eldeſt ſon dieth.*

B the great, who woon CONSTANTINOPLE. Whereunto he alſo annexed a monaſterie and a colledge, with many things mo after the groſſe maner of their ſuperſtition, for the health of his ſoule, as he vainly ſuppoſed. After that, *Solyman* according to his wonted manner, which was but euery ſecond or third yeare to take in hand ſome notable expedition, ceaſed from warres by the ſpace of two yeares: in which time many of the great princes and worthie men of that age died; amongſt whom was *Francis* the French king. *Hariadenus Barbaruſſa* that famous Turke of whom we haue ſo often ſpoken, who being of great yeares and no leſſe fame, left this life in the yeare 1547, and was buried at a houſe of his owne called Beſictas, neere vnto BOSPHORVS THRACIVS on EVROPE ſide, not farre from the mouth of Euxinum, about foure miles from *The death of the famous pirat Barbaruſſa.*

C PERA, where he had but few yeares before at one time ſold about ſixteene thouſand Chriſtian captiues, taken out of CORCYRA: and to make famous that place appointed for his buriall, he of his owne coſt built there a Mahometane temple, there yet with his ſepulchre to be ſeene: that place was in auntient time called IASONIVM. About which time alſo, died of conceit that famous captaine *Alphonſus Daualus Vaſtius*, taken away by vntimely death when he had liued but *Vaſtius dieth.* fortie fiue yeares. At which time, *Charles* the emperour by his embaſſadour *Gerardus Veltunich*, concluded a peace with *Solyman* for fiue years, wherein king *Ferdinand* was alſo included: which peace was afterwards before the expiration thereof, by *Solyman* (at the requeſt of *Henrie* the French king) broken. 1548

Solyman had now almoſt three yeares taken his reſt, when it fortuned that *Ercaſes Imirza* 1549

D king of SIRVAN, moued with the often iniuries of *Tamas* his brother the great Perſian king, fled to *Solyman* at CONSTANTINOPLE, to craue aid of him againſt his brother. *Solyman* glad of ſuch an occaſion to worke vpon, entertained him with all courteſie, and promiſed to take vpon him his quarrell, and to protect him againſt his vnnaturall brother. And when he had made all things readie for ſo great an expedition, paſſed ouer into ASIA; and after long and painfull trauell entred at laſt with a puiſſant armie into ARMENIA, and there in the borders of the Perſian kingdome, firſt beſieged the citie of VAN, which after ten daies ſiege was yeelded vnto him, vpon condition, that the Perſian ſouldiors there in garriſon, might with life and libertie depart with their armes as ſouldiors: which was at the firſt by *Solyman* granted, and ſo the citie ſurrendred. From thence *Solyman* ſent his chiefe commanders with a great part of his armie, to burne *Van yeelded to the Turkes.*

E and ſpoile the enemies countrey, which they for a time cheerefully performed; and running far into the countrey, ſtriue as it were amongſt themſelues who ſhould doe moſt harme: where *Imirza* amongſt the reſt, for whoſe ſake *Solyman* had vndertaken this warre, was as forward as the beſt to waſt and ſpoile his brothers kingdome, ſparing nothing that came to hand; the beſt and richeſt things he got, he preſented to *Solyman*, to draw him on ſtill in that warre. But that ſerued not his turne to recouer againe his kingdome of SIRVAN: for *Tamas*, without ſhewing any power to withſtand the Turks, had after his wonted manner, cauſed his people to withdraw themſelues far into the mountaine country, leauing nothing behind them in that waſt countrey to relieue them, but the bare ground: ſo that the farther the Turks went, the more they wanted, without hope of better ſucceſſe than ſuch as they had before to their loſſe made proofe of, in their former expeditions into that great kingdome. The conceit whereof ſo much pierced not

F the common ſouldiors onely, but euen the captaines themſelues; that to make an end of that long and vnprofitable warre, taken in hand for another mans good, they conſulted amongſt themſelues, either to kill *Imirza*, or elſe to diſgrace him with *Solyman*: Which they ſo cunningly wrought; ſome ſuggeſting falſe ſuſpitions of his treacherous dealing in the proceeding of that warre; and others with like craft, vnder colour of friendſhip giuing him warning in ſecret of the danger

danger he was in: the one filling *Solymans* head with diſtruſt, and the other *Imirzas* with feare: briefly to ſhut the matter vp in their owne tearmes, *They perſwaded the hare to flie, and the hounds to follow.* *Imirza* doubting ſome ſudden miſchiefe, fled for ſuccour to an old acquaintance of his one of the princes of CHALDEA, who moſt treacherouſly ſent him in bonds to *Tamas* his brother, his moſt cruell enemie, who glad to haue the authour of all his troubles with the Turks, deliuered into his hands, caſt him in priſon: and that *Solyman* nor any other ſhould in his behalfe further proſecute the warre, or by his meanes hope for victorie, cauſed him to be in priſon murthered. In this expedition againſt the Perſian king, *Solyman* was occupied a yeare and nine moneths; all which time the Turkes endured great troubles, and were oftentimes hardly diſtreſſed by the Perſians: vntill at laſt *Solyman* himſelfe wearie of that tedious warre, wherein he had got neither honour nor profit, thought it beſt ſo to make an end; and thereupon returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE in the yeare 1549.

Imirza murthered in priſon.

Solyman returneth to Conſtantinople.

In the meane time it fortuned, that one *Dragut Raiſes* a notable pirat of the Turks, had craftily ſurpriſed the citie of AFRICA in the kingdome of TVNES (called in ancient time APHRODISEVM) and alſo LEPTIS PARVA (and now of the Moores called MAHAMEDIA) and there ſetling himſelfe, as in a place both commodious and of good aſſurance, exceedingly troubled the Chriſtians both by ſea and land, eſpecially ſuch as traded in the Mediterranean. So that the emperour, moued as well with the manifold iniuries done by that arch-pirat vpon the frontiers of his dominions, as by the daily complaint of his poore ſubiects, commanded the Viceroy of SICILIE, and *Auria* his Admirall, to leuie a ſufficient power in time to repreſſe that pirat, before hee grew to farther ſtrength. Whereupon, they with a ſtrong fleet well manned and thorowly appointed for that purpoſe, and aided by the knights of MALTA, paſſed ouer into AFRICKE; and landing their forces, by the ſpace of three moneths beſieged the citie before poſſeſſed by the pirat, which with continuall batterie they had at length made faultable. And hearing that *Dragut* was comming with a new ſupply to relieue it, they with all celeritie aſſailed it both by ſea and land, and in the ſpace of a few houres tooke it by force the tenth day of September in the yeare 1550. in which aſſault many of the enemies were ſlaine, and the reſt taken. *Auria* hauing thus diſpoſſeſſed the pirat, and aduiſedly conſidering that the city was not without an infinit charge to be holden by the Chriſtians, among ſo many of the infidels, raſed it downe to the ground, carrying away with him ſeauen thouſand captiues, and all the ſpoyle of the citie. And not ſo contented, did all the harme he could with fire and ſword all alongſt the coaſt of AFRICA, to the intent that the Turks ſhould there find no reliefe; and tooke 12. priſoners out of MONASTERIVM, a towne not farre from the citie of AFRICA: and ſo hauing done that he came for, returned againe into SICILY. *Dragut* thus at once thruſt out of all he had, with a few of his friends fled to *Soliman* to CONSTANTINOPLE, and ſo incenſed him with the grieuous complaint of the wrong done vnto him by the Chriſtians; that in reuenge therof, he reſolued to make warre both vpon the emperour and king *Ferdinand*, notwithſtanding that the fiue yeares league he had before taken with him at his going into PERSIA, was not yet expired. So with cheereful words and courteous entertainment comforting vp the deſperat pirat, the Spring following (which was in the yeare 1551.) he furniſhed him with a great fleet in moſt warlike manner appointed, to reuenge the iniurie done to him by *Auria* in AFFRICKE. With this fleet in number one hundred and fortie ſaile, *Sinan* one of the Turks great Baſſaes, accompanied with *Dragut* the pirat, by the appointment of *Solyman*, departed from CONSTANTINOPLE: and cutting thorow the ſeas, arriued at length in SICILY, where they ſuddenly ſurpriſed the towne and caſtle of AVGVSTA, which they preſenty ſacked. Departing thence, they came to the Iſland of MALTA, and there landed their men in the port of MARZA, otherwiſe called MOXET, neere vnto the caſtle, which they battered with certaine pieces of great ordinance, but ſo as was to no great purpoſe. At which time diuers companies of the Turkes running farther into the iſland, made hauocke of whatſoeuer came in their way. After they had thus few daies in vaine battered the caſtle, and ſaw themſelues both there valiantly repulſed, & in other places by ambuſhes and ſuch like meanes cut off by the ſouldiors and inhabitants of the iſland, they remoued thence to the road of S. *Paul*, where they landed their ordinance with purpoſe to haue beſieged the citie: but perceiuing by a little, what ſmall hope there was to preuaile, and ſeeing diuers of their men dying thorow the extreamitie of the heat, they forſooke the iſland and went to GAVLES now called GOZA, a little Iſland about thirtie miles in compaſſe, fiue miles diſtant from MALTA Weſt-

Dragut a famous pirat of the Turk' poſſeſſeth certaine cities in Affrick

1550

1551

Malta attempted by the Turks

A Weſtward, ſubiect vnto the knights of the Religion: and there landing their men, miſerably ſpoiled the Iſland, and whatſoeuer they light vpon, and carried away with them of one ſort of people and other ſixe thouſand and three hundred captiues into moſt wofull bondage. With which bootie they put again to ſea, and ſailed directly to TRIPOLIS in BARBARIE, called of old LEPTIS MAGNA: which citie *Charles* the Emperour had before giuen to the knights of MALTA, and was at that time by them kept. This citie was the marke whereat the Baſſa and the pirat ſhot; for taking whereof they landed their forces, and by long and winding trenches approched as neere the ſame as they could: which they did not without great loſſe of their people; for they of the caſtle hauing good ſtore of great ordinance, and moſt expert canoniers did with continuall ſhot ſo annoy the Turks, that they were oftentimes enforced to retire; yet with
B much troubleſome labour and no leſſe peril they came at laſt within eight hundred paces of the wals: where the Baſſa cauſed his gabions made of thicke plankes, to be placed in the night, and his batterie planted. And the next day (which was the eighth of Auguſt) the cannon began to play, which was againe anſwered from the caſtle with like, and euery houre ſome of the Turkes ſlain, the great ſhot ſtill flying into their trenches, ſo as that day foure of the beſt canoniers in the armie were ſlaine, with certaine other men of good account alſo: and the clearke general of the armie, a man of great eſtimation and welbeloued of the Baſſa, had his hand ſhot off, and many other of the Ianizaries and common ſouldiors either ſlain or hurt: moreouer they brake one of their beſt pieces, and diſmounted foure others, which for that day made them to leaue the batterie. The next night the Turks approached yet neerer vnto the caſtle, vpon whom the Chriſti-
C ans in the breake of the day ſallied out euen vnto their verie trenches, and afterwards retired. With the riſing of the ſunne (which the Turks haue in great reuerence) they renued their batterie with greater force then before; yet with ſuch euill ſucceſſe, that the Baſſa was almoſt mad for anger: for about the euening the fire by miſchance got into their pouder, wherewith thirtie of the Turkes were burnt, many hurt, and one piece broken. At length the Turks were come ſo neere, that they had planted their batterie within an hundred and fiftie paces of the wall; which they continued with ſuch fury, that they had made a faire breach euen with the ditch: but what was beaten downe in the day time, the defendants repaired againe by night, in ſuch ſort, as that it was not to be aſſaulted. Yet in concluſion, a traiterous ſouldior of PROVINCE, before corrupted by the Turkes, found meanes to flie out of the caſtle into the campe, where he declared
D vnto the Baſſa the weakeſt places of the caſtle, by which it might be moſt conueniently battered and ſooneſt taken: and eſpecially one place aboue the reſt which was againſt the gouernors lodging, which ſtanding towards the ditch, and hauing vnderneath it ſellars to retire the munition into, could not if it were once battered, well be repaired againe or fortified. Which the Baſſa vnderſtanding, cauſed the battery there to be planted, laying the pieces ſo low, that they did eaſily beat the ſellars and vaults in ſuch ſort, that in ſhort time the walls were ſo ſhaken, that the rampiers aboue thorow the continuall battery, began greatly to ſinke: which ſo amaſed the ſoldiors, ſeeing no conuenient means to repaire the ſame, that ſetting all honour aſide, they requeſted the Gouernour, That ſithence the matter began now to grow deſperat, and that the place was not longer to be holden, he would in time take ſome good order with the enemie for their
E ſafetie, before the walls were further endamaged. With which motion, *Vallier* the Gouernour (an auncient knight of DAVLPHINIE, and one of the Order) was exceedingly troubled: which *Peiſieu* another of the knights perceiuing, he as a man of a great courage, and of all others there preſent moſt ancient, in the name of the other knights declared vnto them, That the breach was neither ſo great, nor ſo profitable for the enemy, but that it was defenſible enough, if they would as men of courage repaire the ſame; ſaying, That it was more honourable for worthy Knights and luſtie ſouldiors, to die valiantly with their weapons in their hands, fighting againſt the infidels for the maintenance of their law and Chriſtian religion, than ſo cowardly to yeeld themſelues to the mercie of thoſe, at whoſe hands nothing was to be looked for but moſt miſerable ſeruitude, with all kind of crueltie: and therefore perſwaded the Gouernour to hold it out to the
F laſt. For all that, he ouercome with the importunitie of ſuch as would needs yeeld, who with all vehemencie vrged the imminent danger wherewith they were all like to be ouerwhelmed, and finding himſelfe bereft both of heart and fortune, and forſaken of his ſouldiers; without farther conſideration, conſented that a white enſigne ſhould be diſplayed vpon the walls, in token that they deſired parley: when a Turk preſenting himſelfe, they requeſted him to vnderſtand of the

The Turks fleet arriueth at Tripolis in Barbarie

Tripolis battered by the Turks

the Baſſa, if he could be contented that ſome of them might come to intreat with him of ſome good order to be taken for the yeelding vp of the caſtle. Whereunto the Baſſa willingly conſenting, two of the knights were forthwith ſent out, to offer vnto him the caſtle with the artillerie and munition, ſo as he would furniſh them with ſhips to bring them with bag and baggage ſafely to MALTA. Whereunto the Baſſa briefly anſwered, That (foraſmuch as they had as yet deſerued no grace, preſuming to keep ſo ſmall a place againſt the army of the greateſt prince on earth) if they would pay the whole charges of the armie, hee would condiſend to their requeſt; or if they would not thereunto conſent, that for recompence all they within the caſtle ſhould continue his ſlaues and priſoners: notwithſtanding if they incontinently and without delay did ſurrender the place, he would exempt out of them two hundred. Whereupon the meſſengers returning in diſpaire, were ſtaied by *Dragut* and *Salla Rais*, with flatring words and faire promiſes, that they would ſo much as lay in them, perſuade the Baſſa to condiſcend to a more gratious compoſition: fearing indeed that the beſieged through diſpaire would reſolue (as their extreme refuge) to defend to place euen to the laſt man. Wherefore they went preſently to the Baſſa, to declare vnto him his ouerſight in refuſing them who volũtarily would haue put themſelues into his hands, whom reaſon would he ſhould with all courteſie haue receiued: for that after he had the caſtle & the men in his power, he might diſpoſe of them as he ſhould think good. The Baſſa liking well of his counſell, cauſed the meſſengers to be called again, and with fained and diſſembling words told them, That at the inſtance of *Dragut* and *Salla Rais* there preſent, hee did diſcharge them of all the coſts and charges of the army, ſwearing vnto them (the better to deceiue them) by the head of his lord and his owne, inuiolably to obſerue all that he had promiſed vnto them: which they (too eaſily) beleeued, and forthwith went to declare the ſame vnto the Gouernour, and others within the caſtle. The Baſſa, the better to come to the effect of his deſire, after theſe meſſengers ſent a craftie Turke, whom he charged expreſſely to perſuade the Gouernour to come with him into the campe, for the full concluſion of the giuing vp of the caſtle, and for the appointing of ſuch veſſels as ſhould be needfull for their ſafe conduct to MALTA; and that if he made any doubt to come, he ſhould make ſhew as if he would there remain in hoſtage for him: but aboue all things, to conſider of the ſtrength and aſſurance of the beſieged, and of the diſpoſition of all things there. Which the ſubtile Turke ſo finely handled, that the Gouernour by the counſell of thoſe who had perſwaded him to yeeld, notwithſtanding the reaſons of wars and dutie of his office forbad him in ſuch manner to abandon the place of his charge, reſolued vpon ſo ſmall an aſſurance of the Baſſa, and gaue eare to the miſerable end of his fortune. So taking with him a knight of his houſhold (to ſend backe vnto thoſe of the caſtle, to declare vnto them how he ſped in the camp) vnder the conduct of the Turke that was come to fetch him, he went ſtraight to the tent of the Baſſa: who by the Turke that went firſt in, was aduertiſed of the ſmall courage of the defendants, which he aſſured him to be no better, but that if he thought it good, he might bring them to ſuch order and agreement as hee would himſelfe. Vpon whoſe perſuaſion calling in the Gouernour *Vallier*, after he had rigorouſly reproued his raſhneſſe, ſaid vnto him, That foraſmuch as he had once giuen his word, if hee would pay the charges of the armie, he was content to let them go with bag and baggage, otherwiſe hee would diſcharge but two hundred. Whereat the Gouernour greatly mooued, anſwered, That that was not according to his laſt promiſe vnto the knights before ſent. But when he ſaw it would be no better, he requeſted him that he might againe returne to the caſtle to know the minds of the reſt: which the falſe Baſſa would by no meanes grant, but only permitted him to ſend backe the knight that he had brought with him, to make report of theſe hard newes to the beſieged: as for the Gouernour, he was ſent to the gallies with yrons on his heeles. When they of the caſtle vnderſtood what had paſſed betwixt the Baſſa and the Gouernour, they began exceedingly to feare the miſchiefe then at hand: yet tooke no other reſolution, but to returne the ſaid knight to the Baſſa, to know whether they ſhould expect from him no better anſwere. Who as ſoone as he was come before him, the captaine of the caſtle was brought in, of whom the Baſſa asked, Which of the two he would chuſe, either to pay the expences of the army, or elſe both he and all the reſt to remaine his priſoners? Whereunto the Gouernour anſwered, That a ſlaue had no other authoritie than that which by his maſter was giuen him; and that hauing loſt (beſides his libertie) the power to command, if any thing were yet reſerued in him, could not counſell him to comaund others to agree vnto any thing, but that which was concluded with them which were before ſent.

Hard conditions offered by the Baſſa to the beſieged.

More eaſie conditions offred by the Baſſa, which he confirmeth by his oath.

The warie anſwere of the gouernour to the Baſſa.

A ſent. Which thing the Baſſa hearing, for feare that ſuch a reſolute anſwere ſhould come to the knowledge of the beſieged, and cauſe them to become deſperat; hauing taken counſell with his other captaines, hee tooke the Gouernour by the hand, and with a ſmiling and diſſembling countenance told him, That he would without any doubt let them depart as he had promiſed; and that therefore without fearing any thing, hee ſhould cauſe them all to come out of the caſtle. But the Gouernour, becauſe he had beene before deceiued, would not truſt to his word, but ſaid vnto him, That he might commaund him that was come from the caſtle, for that he knew they would now doe neuer a whit the more for him. So the Baſſa turning towards the other knight, commaunded him forthwith to goe vnto them in the caſtle, and to cauſe them to come forth, ſwearing againe as before, by the head of his great lord, and his
B owne, That they ſhould all be deliuered and ſet at libertie, according to the conuentions firſt agreed vpon. Which the knight beleeuing, went to report to them this good newes: which they receiued with ſuch ioy, that without further care or conſideration of their miſhap ſo neere, they ran in preaſe with their wiues children and beſt mooueables, ſtriuing who ſhould firſt get out. But they were no ſooner iſſued, but they were by the enemies ſpoiled of all they had, and taken priſoners; part of the knights were ſent to the gallies, and the reſt to the Baſſa. Who being by the Gouernour put in remembrance of his faith twice giuen, anſwered, That there was no faith to be kept with dogs, and that they had firſt violated their oath with his great lord, vnto whom at the giuing ouer of the RHODES, they had (as he ſaid) ſworne neuer more to beare armes againſt the Turkes. The caſtle was forthwith taken and ſpoiled, and about
C two hundred Moores of that countrey that had ſerued the knights, cut in peeces, and thereupon a great peale of ordinance diſcharged, with great cries and ſhouts in ſigne of their victorie. Thus the ſtrong caſtle and auntient citie of TRIPOLIS in BARBARIE was deliuered to the Turks the fifteenth day of Auguſt, in the yeare 1551. Whilſt the Baſſa lay at this ſiege, the lord of ARRAMONT, who had many yeares lien embaſſador from *Francis* the French king at CONSTANTINOPLE, and was now ſent againe by *Henrie* the ſecond, came to the Turks campe, being requeſted ſo to doe by the Great Maſter of the RHODES, to haue diſſuaded the Baſſa from that ſiege: wherein he nothing preuailed. Yet now greeued to ſee how the faithleſſe Turke, contrarie to his oath, moſt villanouſly entreated the Gouernour and the other knights, lying at his feet as men halfe deſperat, was ſo bold as to put him in mind of his promiſe, confirmed by his oath;
D which if he would not keep, that yet at the leaſt according to his own voluntarie offer, he would releaſe two hundred of them: but he excuſed himſelfe as before, ſaying, That no faith was to be kept with dogs, which had firſt broken their owne faith. Yet afterwards he condiſcended, that two hundred of the eldeſt and ſuch as were moſt vnfit for ſeruice (amongſt whom was comprehended the Gouernour and certaine other old knights) ſhould be ſet at libertie, who were forthwith ſent aboord the French embaſſadours gallies, and by him tranſported to MALTA: where they were but hardly welcome, for that they had ſo cowardly ſurrendered a place, which they might much longer haue defended. The next day after the caſtle was deliuered, which was the 16 of Auguſt, the proud Baſſa for ioy of this victorie made a ſolemne dinner, wherunto he inuited the French embaſſadour, and *Vallier* the late Gouernour: which they refuſed not to come
E vnto, in hope to recouer ſome moe priſoners. This great feaſt for the more magnificence was kept in the caſtle ditch againſt the breach, where were ſet vp two ſtately pauillions, the one for the Baſſa, and the other for the embaſſadour and his companie, where he was honourably feaſted with wonderfull plentie both of fleſh and fiſh and good wines, which they had found in the caſtle; which ſeruice was done with muſicke of diuers ſorts, and officers in number aboue a hundred, apparelled for moſt part in long gowns of fine cloth of gold, tuffed or fringed; & the other of veluet or damaske. The Baſſa was no ſooner ſet downe, but all the ordinance of the fleet was diſcharged with ſuch a noiſe and thundering, that it ſeemed the heauens and skies did ſhake. The table being taken vp, the embaſſadour and the late Gouernour *Vallier*, entred into the pauillion
F of the Baſſa, and beſide the two hundred men which he had promiſed, obtained twentie moe, vpon the embaſſadors promiſe, That he ſhould for them cauſe to be releaſed thirtie Turks taken at MALTA, at the landing of the armie there. The Turks hauing in their hands an antient gunner of the caſtle, called *Iohn de Chabas* borne in DAVLPHINE (to the end that this triumphant feaſt ſhould not be vnfurniſhed of ſome cruell ſacrifice of the Chriſtian blood) for that he had in time of the ſiege ſhot off the hand of the clarke generall of the armie, brought him into the towne,

The Caſtle yeelded.

The ſhameleſſe anſwere of the faithleſſe Baſſa to the French embaſſadour.

The Turks triumph for the winning of Tripolis.

A shamefull cruelty of the Turks.

towne, and when they had cut off his hands and his nose, put him quicke into the ground to the waist, and there for their pleasure shot at him with their arrowes, & afterward to make an end of him cut his throat. The Bassa shortly after departing out of BARBARIE, left *Dragus* the pyrat Gouernour of TRIPOLIS, honouring him with the title of the Sanzacke of that place: from whence he many yeares after grieuously molested the Moores neere vnto him by land, and the Christians by sea. The same yeare 1551, *Solyman* notwithstanding the fiue yeares peace before taken with king *Ferdinand* at his going into PERSIA, sent *Achomates* his lieutenant in EVROPE with a great power into HVNGARIE, who with *Haly* the Bassa of BVDA inuaded the vpper part of HVNGARIE, and first tooke the citie of TEMESVVARE, and contrarie to their faith giuen, slew the garrison souldiours: after that they tooke also the castle of ZOLNOK, forsaken by the Christians, and certaine other small castles. But laying siege to ERSAM, they were partly by the valiantnesse of the defendants, & partly by the comming on of Winter enforced to forsake the siege, and to get themselues into their wintering places.

Temeswar and Zolnok taken by the Turks.

Queene *Isabell*, king *Iohn* his widdow, seeing the Turkes dayly encroching vpon that little they had left her, and that she was not able by any meanes to defend TRANSILVANIA against them; by the aduise of *George* bishop of VERADIVM her old counsellor, agreed with king *Ferdinand* to deliuer vnto him the gouernment of the countrey, with all the royall dignitie of HVNGARIE, for which she was to haue of him CASSOVIA, and a yearely pension of an hundred thousand duckats. Which agreement made and thorowly concluded by *Baptista Castallius* (an Italian, whom *Charles* the emperour had but a little before sent to aid king *Ferdinand*) the queen returned into POLONIA, her natiue countrey: and so king *Ferdinand* by that meanes obtained almost all the prouince of TRANSILVANIA, and what else the queene had in HYNGARIE. But the bishop, a little before made a cardinall, being suspected by *Baptista* the Italian, that he fauoured the Turks faction more than king *Ferdinand*, and by that meanes sought to get the gouernment to himselfe, was by the Italians deuice suddenly murthered in his owne house at VERADIVM: an end good ynough for so troublesome a prelat.

George bishop of Veradium murdered in his owne house.

1552

Haly the Bassa of BVDA proud of the good successe he had the yeare before, vnderstanding that diuers of the cheefe Hungarians had withdrawne themselues into the castle of AGRIA, purposed in himselfe with all his power to besiege it, and there to take them. So aided by *Achomates*, *Chasan*, and other of the Turks Sanzakes and captaines by *Solymans* appointment readie at his call, he came with an armie of fiue and thirtie thousand Turkes, and the 10 of September in the yeare 1552, encamped round about the castle: where after he had placed his artillerie, he began a most furious batterie. But doubting to preuaile that way, he attempted also to vndermine the castle, omitting nothing that could be deuised for the taking thereof: but all in vaine, for the Hungarians by the good direction of *Stephanus Dobus* their captaine, couragiously endured the siege, and very manfully repulsed the enemie. At length, the nine and twentieth of September the enemie with eight and twentie ensignes of select souldiours gaue a fresh assault to the castle, and were by the defendants enforced shamefully to retire: at which time foure and twentie barrels of gunpouder by mischance caught fire, & besides that it blew vp diuers captains and souldiours, did much harme in the castle, to the great dismaying of the defendants. After that, the Turkes with incredible pertinacie the twelfth of October fiercely assaulted the castle from morning vntill night, and for desire of reuenge and hope of spoile left nothing vnattempted for the gaining of the place; but were by the greater valour of the Hungarians beaten backe, and with great losse enforced at last to giue ouer the assault. Thus the Bassa nothing preuailing by force, attempted by great promises and large offers to haue bought them out: which he vnderstanding to be nothing regarded, and his letters scornfully burnt, brought on his souldiors again, & gaue vnto them in the castle a most furious assault, but with no better successe than before: for hauing lost many of his best souldiors, he was enforced to retire. So after he had in vaine six weekes besieged the castle, he was glad to raise his siege, and to retire to PESTVM. After whose departure there was found twelue thousand great shot, wherewith he had battered the wall. In this siege six thousand Turkes were slaine, and of the Hungarians but three hundred. King *Ferdinand* glad of this victorie, made *Stephanus* the worthie captaine, Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, and bountifully rewarded the other captaines and souldiors as they had well deserued.

Agria besieged by the Turkes.

The Turkes giue ouer the siege of Agria.

1553

Henrie the French king, who together with his kingdome had as it seemed receiued the hereditarie quarrels of *Francis* his father against *Charles* the emperour, had by his embassadour the lord

A lord of ARAMONT ſo wrought the matter with *Solyman*, that the more to trouble the emperour, he ſent a great fleet into the Tyrrhenum or Tuſcane ſea, which in the yeare 1553 and the yeare following, did great harme vpon the coaſts of CALABRIA, SICILIA, SARDINIA, as alſo in the iſlands of ELBA, CORSICA, GERBE, and MAIORCA, and ſuch like places on the frontiers of the emperours dominions: yet were the Turkes in moſt places notably againe repulſed by the people of thoſe countries. The ſame yeare *Solyman* ſeduced by *Roxolana* (ſometime his faire concubine, but then his imperious wife) and *Ruſtan Baſſa* his ſonne in law, moſt vnnaturally murdered his eldeſt ſonne *Muſtapha*, the mirrour of the *Othomon* familie: Which tragicall fact, the like whereof both for the trecherous contriuing and inhuman execution hath ſeldome times beene heard of, I haue thought good heere in due time to ſet downe, in ſuch ſort
B as it is by moſt credible writers of that time reported.

Solyman after the manner of the *Othoman* kings, who to auoid the participation of their ſoueraigntie, vſe not oftentimes to marrie (but otherwiſe to ſatisfie their pleaſure which ſuch beautifull concubines as it pleaſeth them to make choiſe of, out of the faireſt captiues of all nations, moſt daintily brought vp for that purpoſe in the court) had by a Circaſſian bondwoman, a ſon called *Muſtapha*; who for his wonderfull towardlineſſe and rare perfection was amongſt the Turkes had in ſuch expectation and admiration, as that they in nothing accounted themſelues more happie, than in the hope laid vp in him: whoſe noble carriage was ſuch, as thereby hee ſo poſſeſſed the minds of all men in generall, but eſpecially of the men of warre, that he was
C reputed the glorie of the court, the floure of chiualrie, the hope of the ſouldiors, and ioy of the people. Whileſt he thus grew, encreaſing both in yeares and fauour: it fortuned with *Solyman* as it doth with men delighting in change, that he became amorous of *Roxolana*, of ſome called *Roſa* (but more truly *Hazathya*) by condition a captiue, but ſo graced with beautie and courtly behauiour, that in ſhort time ſhe became miſtreſſe of his thoughts, and commaundreſſe of him that all commaunded: And that which more eſtabliſhed her in poſſeſſion of his loue, ſhe had in time made him father of foure faire ſonnes, *Mahomet*, *Selymus*, *Baiazet*, and *Tzihanger*, and one daughter called *Chameria* married to *Ruſtan* or *Ruſtemes* the great Baſſa. In this height of worldly bliſſe nothing troubled her more than the exceeding credit of *Muſtapha*, *Solymans* eldeſt ſonne by the Circaſſian woman; who honoured of the greateſt, and beloued of the reſt, ſtood onely in
D her light, embarring her and hers (as ſhe thought) of the hope of the empire, which ſhee now aboue all things ſought to bring to one of her owne ſonnes: which the better to compaſſe, ſhe vnder the colour of great good will and loue, procured that *Muſtapha* the young prince and his mother ſhould as it were for their greater honour and ſtate with a princely allowance be ſent into CARAMANIA to gouerne that great country, far from the court. Which was no great matter for her to bring to paſſe: for that the Turkiſh emperors vſually ſend their ſonnes after they come to any yeares of diſcretion vnto ſuch prouinces as are farre from the court, attended vpon with one great Baſſa and ſome graue doctor of their law, ſo to acquaint them with the manner of gouernment; the Baſſa inſtructing them in matters of ciuile policie, and the doctor in matters concerning their ſuperſtition: and yet by ſending them a farre off, to keep them from aſpiring to the empire by the fauour of the court (a thing by the Turkiſh emperors not vnworthely feared, euē
E in their own and beloued children.) *Roxolana* hauing at once thus cunningly rid the court of the great competitours both of her loue and of the empire (things of all others enduring no partners) reſted not ſo, but began ſtraightway to plot in her malitious head the vtter deſtruction of him, to whom all others wiſhed all happineſſe. This ſhe ſaw was not to be brought to paſſe without ſome complices: wherefore after ſhe had in her ſecret conceit diſcarded many, of whom at firſt ſhe had reaſonable good liking; at laſt ſhe made choice of *Ruſtan Baſſa* her ſonne in law, vpon whom ſhe would ſet vp her reſt. This *Ruſtan* was a man baſely borne in EPIRVS, altogether compoſed of diſſimulation and flatterie, euer ſeruing his owne turne, were it neuer ſo much to the hurt or greeuance of others; by which meanes he, although none of the beſt ſouldiors, was yet by many degrees growne vp to be the greateſt man in the court, and *Solymans* ſonne in law:
F him ſhe probably thought to wiſh the ſucceſſion of the empire to one of her owne ſonnes, his wiues full brethren, rather than to *Muſtapha* her halfe brother. Beſide that, ſhe was not ignorant how that *Ruſtan* as one careful of the emperors profit, the readieſt way to preferment, had abridged the penſions and fees of the officers and ſeruitours in court: which he perceiuing to pleaſe the emperour, proceeded ſo farre therein, that he attempted to haue cut off, if it had beene poſſi-

Muſtapha, Solymans eldeſt ſon in great eſtimation with the people.

Solyman becommeth amorous of Roxolana.

Muſtapha ſent to gouerne Caramania.

The malice of Roxolana againſt Muſtapha

ble, ſome part of *Muſtapha* his princely allowance: for which doing, ſhe knew how odious he was to all the courtiers (wherof he made ſmall reckoning) but eſpecially to *Muſtapha*, inſomuch that it was thought he would not forget ſo notorious an iniurie, if euer he ſhould obtain the empire. Hereupon ſhe brake with *Ruſtan* vpon the matter, whom ſhe found readie ynough of himſelfe, to do what in him lay to further her miſchieuous deſire. G

Roxolana conſpireth with Ruſtan Baſſa her ſonne in law againſt Muſtapha.

To begin this intended tragedie, ſhe vpon the ſudden became very deuout, and being by the fauour of *Solyman* growne exceeding rich, pretended as if it had beene vpon a deuout zeale, for the health of her ſoule; after the manner of their Turkiſh ſuperſtition to build an Abbey with an Hoſpitall and a Church: which ſo godly a purpoſe ſhe imparted to the Muphti or chief Mahometane prieſt, demaunding of him, If ſuch workes of charitie were not acceptable vnto God, and auaileable for her ſoules health. Whereunto the Muphti anſwered, That thoſe workes were no doubt gracious in the ſight of God, but nothing at all meritorious for her ſoules health, being a bondwoman; yet very profitable for the ſoule of the great emperour *Solyman*, vnto whom as vnto her lord both ſhe and all ſhe had appertained. With which anſwere of the great prieſt ſhe ſeemed to be exceedingly troubled, and therupon became wonderfull penſiue & melancholie, her cheerefull countenance was replete with ſadneſſe, and her faire eies flowed with teares, her mirth was mourning, and her ioy heauineſſe. Which thing *Solyman* perceiuing, and ſorrie to ſee his loue vpon conceit ſo to languiſh, ſent her word to be of good cheere, and to comfort herſelf, promiſing in ſhort time to take ſuch a courſe as ſhould eaſe her of all her griefs: which he forthwith did, ſolemnly manumiſing her from her bond eſtate. So great a fauour obtained, *Roxolana* with great cheerefulneſſe began thoſe meritorious works by her before intended, as if ſhe had thought of nothing but heauen, whereas indeed her thoughts were in the depth of hell. When ſhe had thus a good while buſied herſelfe in pauing the way to heauen, as was ſuppoſed, *Solyman* not able longer to forbeare the companie of her, in whom his ſoule liued, after his wonted maner ſent for her by one of his eunuchs, who ſhould haue brought her to his bed chamber: to whom ſhe with her eies caſt vp to heauen, demurely anſwered, That her life and whatſoeuer els ſhe had, was at her dread ſoueraignes commaund, but againe to yeeld her bodie vnto his appetite, ſhe might not in any caſe do, without the great offence of the high God, and manifeſt breach of his ſacred laws, which permitted her not now voluntarily to yeeld him that, being free, which he before without offence might commaund of his bondwoman: and becauſe ſhe would not ſeeme to vſe this as an excuſe, ſhe referred herſelf in all things to the graue iudgement of the learned and reuerend Muphti, with whom ſhe had before at full conferred. This ſhe did, preſuming of the ſoueraigntie ſhe had ouer that great Monarch, whom ſhe right well knew ſhe had ſo faſt bound in the pleaſing fetters of his affection towards her, as that ſhe was ſure ynough of him without a keeper. *Solyman* rauiſhed with her loue, and well the more for her deniall, ſent for the Muphti, requiring his iudgement in the matter; who before inſtructed in all points, agreed with that *Roxolana* had ſaid, agrauating the heinouſneſſe of the fact, if he ſhould proceed to enforce her as his ſlaue, whom being now free, he might not without great offence touch vnmarried. Whereupon *Solyman* more and more burning in his deſires, became a freſh ſuter to her for mariage, whom he had ſo often before commaunded: which his ſuit eaſily obtained (as the marke ſhe had all this while aimed at) he with all ſpeed to the great admiration of all men, and contrarie to the maner of the Mahometan emperors, ſolemnly maried her; appointing for her yearely dowrie fiue thouſand Sultanyns. But here before we proceed any farther, ſtay a while and take the view of that faire face whereon this great Monarch ſo much doted, as it is by the skilfull workemans hand moſt liuely expreſſed.

Roxolana fayneth her ſelfe religious.

H

Solyman manumiſeth Roxolana.

I

Solyman ſendeth for Roxolana.

She excuſeth herſelfe, and refuſeth to come.

K

Solyman marrieth Roxolana.

L

ROXO-

A

Frontis nulla fides, nulla eſt fiducia forma:
Pectore dum ſæuo dira venena latent.
Philtra viro miſcet fallax, miſerumq; coegit
Sanguine natorum commaculare manus.

E

RICH. KNOLLEVS.

To faireſt lookes truſt not too farre, not yet to beautie braue:
For hatefull thoughts ſo finely maskt, their deadly poiſon haue.
Loues charmed cups, the ſubtile dame doth to her huſband fill:
And cauſeth him with cruell hand, his childrens bloud to ſpill.

Roxolana plot-teth the confuſi-on of Muſtapha.

Thiswoman of late a ſlaue, but now become the greateſt empereſſe of the Eaſt, flowing in all worldly felicitie, attended vpon with all the pleaſures her heart could deſire, wanted nothing
F ſhe could wiſh, but how to find means that the Turkiſh empire might after the death of *Solyman* be brought to ſome one of her owne ſonnes. This was it that had (as we haue before ſaid) long troubled her aſpiring mind; and in the middeſt of all her bliſſe, ſuffered her yet to take no reſt. Noble *Muſtapha*, *Solymans* eldeſt ſonne, and heire apparant of the empire, although farre abſent, was yet ſtill before her eies preſent; his credit, his valour, his vertues, his perfections were all bars to her deſires: he was the only cloud that kept the ſunne from ſhining on her; if he by any

any meanes might be taken away, then wanted nothing that ſhe deſired. Which to bring to G
paſſe, the wicked woman laboured cunningly by little and little to breed in *Solymans* head no ſmall ſuſpition of *Muſtapha*, That he being a young man of a hautie ſpirit, deſirous of ſoueraigntie, generally beloued, and ſwelling with the immoderat fauour of the men of war, which were all at his diuotion, left nothing elſe to be expected of him, but when he ſhould (as did his grandfather *Selymus*) lay hand vpon the empire, and worke his aged fathers deſtruction. This miſ-
Ruſtã the great Baſſa ſitteth the deuices of Roxolana. chieuous plot by her deuiſed, was not a little furthered by *Ruſtan* the great Baſſa, by whom paſſed all great matters: who nothing omitted, that could be ſlily deuiſed for the diſgrace or confuſion of the young prince. For he, as a great ſecret, craftily told all them that were ſent gouernours into SYRIA, that *Muſtapha* was ſecretly ſuſpected by his father of aſpiring to the kingdome; and therefore charged them particularly, carefully to obſerue all his actions, with the H
maner of his life and gouernment, and by their letters diligently to aduertiſe him of whatſoeuer they ſhould ſee or heare; bearing them in hand, that the more ſuſpitiouſly or odiouſly they ſhould write of him, the more gracious and acceptable it would be vnto the great Sultan. Wherfore he by theſe men, oftentimes certified of the princely diſpoſition, courage, wiſedome, valour, and bountie of *Muſtapha*, whereby he had woon all mens hearts; ſaw plainly, that he would at length be vndoubtedly preferred to the empire: yet durſt he not for all that, aduenture to temper with *Solyman* about that deteſtable conſpiracie againſt the inocent prince, but ſtill deliuering the letters to the malitious woman, left the reſt by her vngratious head to be wrought. And ſhe ſtill as occaſion beſt ſerued her purpoſe, ceaſed not with pleaſing allurements and flatterie (wherein ſhe was moſt excellent) to infect *Solymans* mind, that whenſoeuer he ſhould chance to haue any I
ſpeech of *Muſtapha*, ſhe might take the fitter occaſion to bring forth thoſe letters. Neither was ſhe in her drift deceiued, but hauing found a fit opportunitie, with teares trickling downe her cheekes (which to ſerue their turns ſubtile women ſeldome want) ſhe told the emperour in what danger he ſtood, recounting amongſt other things, how *Selymus* his father had by ſuch meanes depriued *Baiazet* his grandfather, both of his life and empire togither: and therefore moſt inſtantly beſought him, as if it had altogither proceeded of a careful loue, by that example warned to looke to himſelfe. But theſe light arguments of ſuſpition, ſeemed as they were indeed vnto *Solyman* ſcarce probable; ſo that ſhe little preuailed thereby. Which thing ſhe well perceiuing, and inwardly grieued thereat, conuerted her cruel mind to other miſchieuous deuiſes, & ſought
Muſtapha in danger to haue been poiſoned by Roxolana. by all meanes how to poyſon the young prince: neither wanted there wicked men (as it were K
vowed to all kind of miſchiefe and villanie) readie to haue performed what ſhe deſired, had not Gods prouidence withſtood ſo horrrible a practiſe. For whereas certaine rich apparell was by her ſent vnto him in his fathers name, he fearing the worſt, would not touch it before he had cauſed it to be worne by one of his ſeruants; by which curious warineſſe (as it was thought) he for that time preuented the treaſon of his wicked ſtepdame, and made her malitious practiſe manifeſt to the world. Yet reſted ſhe not ſo, but was ſtill plotting new deuiſes tending all to one purpoſe: for being growne to that height of honour and power as neuer was woman in the *Othoman* court, and by the meanes of *Trongilla* a Iew (as it was thought) hauing bewitched the mind of the Turkiſh emperour, ſhe ſtill grew more and more in fauour, and obtained that her ſonnes might by turnes be ſtill preſent in the court: of purpoſe, that by their daily preſence L
and continuall flatterie, they ſhould more & more procure their fathers loue; and if by chance *Muſtapha* ſhould come thither, ſhe might haue the better meanes to diſpatch him: if nor, to expect ſome other fit time, when ſhe might by ſome one or other meane take him away. But *Muſtapha* neuer comming (for why, the emperors ſons vſe not without their fathers leaue to go out of the prouinces aſſigned vnto them, or to come to CONSTANTINOPLE, but after the death of their father to receiue the empire, attended vpon with a number of ſouldiors) ſhe eaſily deuiſed another practiſe: that her ſonnes ſhould wait vpon their father, not in the citie onely, but in the prouinces alſo; ſo that *Tzihanger* ſurnamed *Crouchbacke*, alwaies followed his father in the campe. Certaine yeares thus ſpent, and ſhe ſtill hammering her miſchieuous deuiſes: at length fortune fauouring her wicked deſire, got from the Baſſa which had the gouernement of *Muſta-* M
pha and the prouince of AMASIA (for as we haue ſaid, euery one of the kings ſons hath with him one Baſſa, which is as it were his lieutenant in adminiſtration of juſtice and martiall affaires) certaine ſuſpitious letters; wherin was contained, that there was a ſpeech of a marriage to be made betwixt *Muſtapha* and the Perſian kings daughter: which thing he thought good to giue knowledge

A ledge of to the Counſel,that if any harme ſhould enſue thereof,he might be out of all ſuſpition. Theſe letters being brought to *Ruſtan*,he thought he had now as good as halfe brought to end the long deſired ruine of *Muſtapha*: ſo making no ſtay, he opened the matter to *Roxolana*,and afterwards both together went to the court,and declared all the matter to the emperour; in doing whereof, they forced both their vngratious wits to fill his head, yet doubtfull with ſuſpition,and to poſſeſſe his mind with the feare of his owne moſt dutifull ſonne: ſaying, That he as a proud and ambitious yong man,rauiſhed with the deſire of ſo glorious an empire, ſought againſt the lawes both of God and nature,to take his father out of the way,that ſo he might with more ſpeed ſatisfie his aſpiring mind. And to giue the more credit to this their moſt falſe ſuggeſtion,they warned him of the alliance by him purpoſed with the Perſian king,the auncient ene-
B mie of the *Othoman* emperors,wiſhing him to beware, leaſt *Muſtapha* ſupported by the ſtrength of PERSIA,and the fauor of the Sanzacks and Ianizaries,whoſe loue he had by bountie purchaſed,ſhould in ſhort time when he feared leaſt,together depriue him both of his life and empire. With theſe and ſuch like accuſations,they ſo preuailed with the aged man whom they neuer ſuffered to reſt in quiet,that he at length reſolued to worke his ſafetie (as he ſuppoſed) by the death of his owne ſonne,in this ſort.

Roxolana and Ruſtan together put Solyman in feare of his ſon Muſtapha.

In the yeare 1552,he cauſed proclamation to be made almoſt in all the prouinces of his empire, That for as much as the Perſians without reſiſtance with a great armie inuaded SIRIA, burning and deſtroying the countrey before them, hee to repreſſe that their ouragious inſolence, was enforced to ſend thither *Ruſtan Baſſa* with an armie: which according to his appointment
C was in ſhort time raiſed. Now when all things were in readineſſe, as if it had been for ſuch a warre as was pretended, he commaunded *Ruſtan*, with as much ſecrecie, and as little tumult as vvas poſſible, to lay hands vpon *Muſtapha*, and to bring him bound to CONSTANTINOPLE: which if he could not conueniently effect, then, by any other meanes to take him out of the way.

Solyman ſendeth Ruſtan Baſſa with an army to take Muſtapha.

With this wicked and cruell charge *Ruſtan* with a ſtrong armie marched towards SIRIA. *Muſtapha* vnderſtanding of his comming,without delay with 7000 of the beſt horſemen in all Turkie,made towards SIRIA alſo: whereof *Ruſtan* hearing,and perceiuing that he could not(as he deſired)conueniently execute the cruell command of the vnnatural father,forthwith turned his backe,and treading the ſame ſteps he came, returned with his armie to CONSTANTINOPLE
D with ſuch ſpeed, that he endured not to behold the very duſt raiſed by *Muſtapha* his horſmen, much leſſe his preſence: giuing it out, That he certainely vnderſtood,that the prouince was in quiet(as indeed it was) and that he thereupon returned. But vnto *Solyman* he told another tale in ſecret,which he maliciouſly had deuiſed, That he by moſt apparant ſignes and manifeſt preſumptions had perceiued the whole armie ſo enclined towards *Muſtapha*, that if hee ſhould haue attempted any thing againſt him by plaine force,he ſhould haue beene vtterly forſaken, and had therefore in ſo dangerous a caſe left the matter as it was to his graue further direction. This tale ſuſpitiouſly told, raiſed in the wicked and vnnaturall father (nothing degenerating from the naturall crueltie of his auncеſtors) new and great ſuſpitions,whereof to disburden his diſquieted mind,he conceiued with himſelfe a moſt horrible deuice. Wherefore the yeare fol-
E lowing, which was the yeare 1553, he raiſed a great armie,giuing it out, That the Perſians had with greater power then before inuaded SIRIA, and that therefore he for the loue of his countrey,and defence of his empire was determined to go thither with his armie,and in perſon himſelfe to repreſſe the attempts of his enemies. Wherfore the armie being aſſembled,and all things neceſſarie orderly prouided, he commaunded to ſet forward, and in few dayes after followed himſelfe: who comming at length into SIRIA, preſently by truſtie meſſengers commaunded *Muſtapha* to come vnto him at ALEPPO,for there he lay encamped. And yet for all theſe ſhaddowes,the matter was not ſo cloſely by *Solyman* conueyed(although he was exceeding carefull thereof) but that his mortall and deadly hatred againſt his ſonne was perceiued by the Baſſaes and other great men about him: inſomuch, that *Achmat Baſſa* by a ſecret and truſtie meſſenger
F gaue him warning thereof,that ſo he might in time the better prouide for the ſafegard of his life. Neither could *Muſtapha* himſelfe but maruell, that his aged father without any apparent reaſon ſhould come ſo far with ſo great an armie: yet truſting to his owne innocencie,though wonderfully troubled and perplexed in mind, he reſolued (although it were with the extreame danger of his life) to obey and yeeld to his fathers command: for he thought it more commendable and

The malicious deuice of Ruſtan

Solyman geeth himſelf with an army to kill his ſonne.

He ſendeth for Muſtapha.

Muſtapha perplexed in mind.

honourable to incurre the danger of death, than liuing, to fall into the foule ſuſpition of diſloy- G
His talke with his doctor. altie. In ſo great a perplexitie of mind, after he had with himſelfe much diſcourſed too and fro what courſe hee were beſt to take, at length he boldly and reſolutely asked the doctor whom (as we haue before ſaid) he had alwaies with him in his court, Whether the empire of the world or a bleſſed life were of man more to be deſired? to whom the doctor frankly anſwered, That the empire of the world, to him that would enter into the due conſideration thereof, brought with it no felicitie, more than a vain ſhew & vtter apparance of good, nothing being more fraile or vncertaine than wordly honour, bringing with it feare, vexation of mind, tribulation, ſuſpition, murder, wrong, wickedneſſe, ſpoile, ruine and captiuitie, with infinit miſchiefs of like nature not to be deſired of him that would attaine to true felicitie, by which means the bleſſed life was to be loſt and not gained: But they vnto whom God had giuen the grace, rightly to conſider and H
weigh the fragilitie and ſhortneſſe of this our eſtate (which the common ſort deemeth to be the onely life) and to ſtriue againſt the vanities of this world, and to embrace and follow an vpright kind of life, had vndoubtedly a place aſſigned for them in heauen, & prepared by the great God where they ſhould at length enioy life and bliſſe eternall. This anſwer of the great doctor wonderfully ſatiſfied the troubled mind of the yong prince, foreſeeing as it were the approch of his
Muſtapha commeth to his fathers campe. own end: and ſo ſtaying not any longer diſcourſe, forthwith ſet forward towards his father, and making great haſt, came at length to his fathers campe, and not far off pitched his tents in the open field. But this his ſo haſtie comming the more increaſed the ſuſpition in the mind of his wicked father: neither ſpared *Ruſtan* in the mean time with his craftie and ſubtile deuiſes to augment the ſame: for by a ſigne giuen he cauſed the Ianizaries and chiefe men in the armie to goe I
as if it had beene for honours ſake to meete *Muſtapha*; which they all without delay preſently did at his commaund, and ſo altogither ſet forward. In the meane time, he the moſt craftie varlet with troubled countenance (for he could notably diſſemble) as a man halfe diſmaied came
The exceeding treacherie of Ruſtan againſt Muſtapha. in haſt into *Solymans* pauillion, and falſely told him, That the Ianizaries and almoſt all the beſt ſouldiors of the armie were of themſelues without leaue gone to meet *Muſtapha*, and that he feared what would enſue thereof. Which newes ſo troubled the old tyrant, that he became pale for feare, and going out of his tent, and finding them gone, eaſily beleeued all to be true that the falſe Baſſa had told him. Neither wanted *Muſtapha* ſtrange warning of his end ſo neere at hand, for the third day before his ſetting forwards towards his father, falling a ſleepe in the euening, he
The melancholie dreame of Muſtapha in comming to his father. thought he ſaw his prophet *Mahomet* in bright apparrell to take him by the hand and lead him K
into a moſt pleaſant place, beautified with moſt glorious and ſtately pallaces, and moſt delicate and pleaſant gardens; and pointing to euerie thing with his finger, to ſay thus vnto him, Here reſt they for euer, which in this world haue led an vpright and godly life, following vertue and deteſting vice: and after that turning his face to the other ſide, to haue ſhewed him two great and ſwift riuers, wherof the one boyled with water blacker than pitch, and in them appeared (as he thought) numbers of men wallowing and tumbling ſome vp, ſome downe, crying horribly for mercie: And there (ſaid he) are puniſhed all ſuch as in this fraile life haue bin the malicious workers of iniquitie, the chiefe of whom (as he ſaid) were emperors, kings, princes, and other great men of the world. *Muſtapha* awaking, and troubled with this melancholie dreame, called vnto L
him his doctor: and hauing told him all the matter, asked him what the ſame might ſignifie? who ſtanding a great while in a muſe (for the Mahometans are exceeding ſuperſtitious, attributing much vnto dreames) full of ſorrow and griefe, at length anſwered, That this viſion (for ſo it pleaſed him to tearme it) was vndoubtedly to be feared, as preſaging vnto him the extreame peril of his life, and therfore requeſted him to haue great care both of his life and honour. But *Muſtapha* as he was of a notable ſpirit and courage, regarding nothing that anſwer, ſtoutly replied: What, ſhall I ſuffer my ſelfe to be terrified and ouercome with childiſh and vaine feare? why rather haſt I not couragiouſly and reſolutly to my father? and ſo much the more boldly, becauſe I know aſſuredly I haue alwaies (as reaſon vvas) reuerenced his maieſtie, that againſt his will I neuer turned mine eies or foot againſt his moſt roiall ſeat, much leſſe affected his empire, except the moſt
high God had called him to a better life, neither then vvithout the generall good liking & choiſe M
of the whole armie, that ſo I might at length vvithout murder, without bloud, vvithout tyranny, well and iuſtly raigne, and in loue and peace inuiolate liue with my brethren: for I haue ſet down vvith my ſelfe, & choſen, if it be my fathers pleaſure ſo, rather to die in his obedience, then raigning many yeares, to be reputed of all men, eſpecially my competitours, a rebell or traitor.

Hauing

A Hauing thus ſaid, he came vnto his fathers camp, and pitching his tents (as we haue before ſaid) ſuted himſelfe all in white, in token of his innocencie, and writing certaine letters (which the Turks when they are about to go to any place of danger, vſe to write, and alwaies to carry with them, for they are wonderfull fooliſh in their ſuperſtition) and putting them in his boſome, attended vpon with a few of his moſt truſtie followers, came with great reuerence towards the tent of his father, fully reſoluing to haue kiſſed his hand, as their vſuall manner is. But when he was come to the entrance of the tent, remembring that he had yet his dagger girt to him, hee entred not vntill he had put it off; becauſe hee would not come into his fathers ſight with any weapon, if happily ſo hee might cleare himſelfe of his fathers needleſſe ſuſpition. So when he was come into the more inward roomes of the tent, he was with ſuch honour as be-
B longed to his ſtate cherefully receiued by his fathers eunuchs. But ſeeing nothing elſe prouided but one ſeat whereon to ſit himſelfe alone, he perplexed in mind, ſtood ſtill a while muſing, at length asked where the emperour his father was? Whereunto they anſwered, That he ſhould by and by ſee him: and with that caſting his eye aſide, hee ſaw ſeauen Muts (theſe are ſtrong men, bereft of their ſpeech, whom the Turkiſh tyrants haue alwayes in readineſſe, the more ſecretly to execute their bloudy butcherie) comming from the other ſide of the tent towards him: at whoſe ſight ſtrucken with a ſudden terrour, ſaid no more, but *Lo my death*, and with that, ariſing, was about to haue fled: but in vaine, for he was caught hold on by the eunuch and Muts, and by force drawne to the place appoynted for his death: where without further ſtay, the Muts
C caſt a bowſtring about his necke, hee poore wretch ſtill ſtriuing, and requeſting that he might ſpeake but two words to his father before he died. All which the murtherer (for no addition is ſufficient ſignificantly to expreſſe his vnnaturall villanie) both heard and ſaw by a trauers from the other ſide of the tent: but was ſo farre from being moued vvith compaſſion, that thinking it long till he were diſpatched, with a moſt terrible and cruell voyce he rated the villaines enured to blood, ſaying, *Will you neuer diſpatch that I bid you? will you neuer make an end of this traitor, for whom I haue not reſted one night theſe tenne yeares in quiet?* Which horrible commaunding ſpeeches yet thundring in their eares, thoſe butcherly Muts threw the poore innocent prince vpon the ground, and with the helpe of the eunuchs forcibly drawing the knotted bow ſtring both wayes, by the commaundement of a moſt wicked father, ſtrangled him. With like barbarous crueltie, he ſhortly after cauſed *Mahomet* his nephew (*Muſtapha* his ſonne) to be ſtran-
D gled alſo.

Muſtapha commeth to his fathers tent.

Muſtapha wrongfully ſtrangled in his fathers ſight.

Mahomet Muſtapha's ſonne ſtrangled alſo.

This vnnaturall and ſtrange murther committed, he preſently commaunded the Baſſa of AMASIA *Muſtaphaes* lieutenant to be apprehended, and his head in his owne preſence to be ſtrucke off. Which done, he ſent for *Tzihanger* the crooked, yet ignorant of all that was happened; and in ſporting wiſe, as if hee had done a thing worth commendations, bid him go meet his brother *Muſtapha*: which thing *Tzihanger* with a merry and cheerefull countenance haſted to doe, as one glad of his brothers comming. But as ſoone as he came vnto the place where hee ſaw his brother lying dead vpon the ground ſtrangled, it is not to be ſpoken how he was in mind tormented. He was ſcarcely come to the place where this deteſtable murther was committed, when his father ſent vnto him certaine of his ſeruants to offer vnto him all *Muſtaphaes* treaſure,
E horſes, ſeruants, jewels, tents, and withall the gouernement of the prouince of AMASIA: but *Tzihanger* filled with extreame heauineſſe for the vnmercifull death of his welbeloued brother, ſpake vnto them in this ſort. *Ah wicked and vngodly* Cain, *traitor (I may not ſay father) take thou now the treaſures, the horſes, the ſeruants, the iewels and the prouince of* Muſtapha. *How came it into thy wicked, cruell, and ſauage breaſt, ſo vngratiouſly and contrarie to all humanitie, I will not ſay the reuerence of thine owne bloud, to kill thy worthie, warlike and noble ſonne, the mirrour of courteſie, and prince of greateſt hope, the like of whom, the* Othoman *family neuer yet had, nor neuer ſhall? I will therefore my ſelfe prouide that thou, nor none for thee ſhall euer heereafter in ſuch ſort ſhamefully triumph ouer a poore crooked wretch.* And hauing thus much ſaid, ſtabd himſelfe with his owne dagger into the bodie, whereof he in ſhort time died: which ſo ſoone
F as it came to the old Tygers eares, it is hard to ſay how much hee grieued. His dead body was by his fathers commaundement carried from ALEPPO in SYRIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, and afterwards honourably buried on the other ſide of the hauen at PERA. For all this bloudie tragedie, his couetous mind was not ſo troubled but that he could forthwith command all *Muſtophaes* treaſures and riches to bee brought to his tent: which his ſouldiors in hope to haue

Soliman offreth to Tzihanger all Muſtaphaes treaſure and wealth.

Tzihanger for ſorrow killeth himſelfe.

the

the ſame giuen them for a prey, willingly haſted to performe. In the meane time, the ſouldi- G
ors which were in *Muſtaphaes* campe, not knowing what was become of their maſter, ſeeing ſuch a multitude of ſouldiors thruſting into their campe without all order; to repreſſe their tumultuous inſolencie, ſtept out in their armour, and notably repulſed them, not without much bloudſhed.

A bloudie tumult betwixt the ſouldiors of Solyman and Muſtapha.

At length, the noiſe of this ſtirre was heard by the reſt of the kings ſouldiors, who ſeeing the tumult to increaſe more and more, ran in to helpe their fellowes; ſo that in ſhort time there began a hoat skirmiſh and cruell fight on both ſides, inſomuch that two thouſand were ſlaine and mo wounded: neither had the broile ſo ended, had not *Achomat Baſſa* a graue captaine, and for his long experience of no ſmall authoritie amongſt the ſouldiors, kept backe the Ianizaries and ſtaied their furie; and turning likewiſe to *Muſtaphaes* ſouldiors, by gentle and mild words and H

The tumult appeaſed by Achomat baſſa.

courteous perſuaſions, in this manner appeaſed their rage. *What my brethren* (ſaid he) *will you now (degenerating from your auntient loyaltie, for which you haue beene for ſo many ages commended) impugne the commaund of the great Sultan our dread ſoueraigne? Truely I cannot ſufficiently marueil what thing ſhould moue you, whom I haue hitherto proued to haue beene moſt worthy and valiant ſouldiors, in this ciuile conflict to draw thoſe weapons againſt your fellowes and brethren, which you haue moſt fortunatly vſed againſt the enemies of the* Othoman *kings: except you meane thereby to make your ſelues a ioyfull ſpectacle vnto your enemies, who grieuing to ſee themſelues ouercome by your victorious weapons, may yet reioice among themſelues to ſee you turne the ſame one vpon another. Wherefore my ſonnes, for your auntient honours ſake, be carefull that you doe not by this your* I
inſolencie loſe the reputation of your wiſedome loyaltie and valour, for which you haue hitherto beene aboue all others commended: reſerue theſe your weapons which you haue now too too much vſed amongſt your fellowes, againſt your enemies, of whom you may get more praiſe and honour. This ſpeech of the old Baſſa, ſo mollified the ſtout ſouldiors, that they freely permitted all that was in *Muſtaphaes* tents to be carried to *Solymans*: but as ſoone as the death of *Muſtapha* was blowne into the eares of the Ianizaries and the reſt of the armie in *Solymans* campe, another tumult riſe among them worſe than the firſt. They vvere quickly all vp in armes againe, and with a great noiſe confuſed with teares and lamentation, as they were in rage and furie, breake violently into *Solymans* pauillion vvith their drawne ſwords: vvhich ſtrucke the tyrant into ſuch a feare, that deſtitute of all counſel in himſelfe, he vvas about with the extreame perill of his life to haue fled: but being holden of his friends; and making a vertue of neceſſitie, vpon the ſudden aduentured K
to do that which at better leaſure he would ſcarcely haue thought vpon: for going forth out of his tent, but with a pale and wan countenance he ſpake vnto the enraged ſouldiours thus. *What broile is this? what ſturre? what ſo great inſolencie? what meane your inflamed, fierce, and angrie lookes? know you not your ſoueraigne? and him that hath power to commaund you? Haue you ſo reſolued to ſtaine the auncient and inuincible honour of your ſelues and your anceſtors, with the bloud of your lord and emperour?* Whileſt he was yet thus ſpeaking, the ſouldiours boldly anſwered, That they denied not, but that he vvas the man whom they many yeares before had choſen for their emperour: but in that they had by their owne valour got for him a large and mightie empire, and in like manner preſerued it; that was therefore of them done, that hee ſhould for the ſame L
gouerne them vertuouſly and iuſtly, and not to lay his bloudie hands vvithout diſcretion vpon euerie iuſt man, and moſt wickedly embrue himſelfe with innocent bloud: and that they came thither armed, they did it (as they ſaid) moued with iuſt cauſe, to reuenge the vnworthie death of guiltleſſe *Muſtapha*; and that for that matter, he had no iuſt cauſe to be angrie vvith them. Wherefore they required, that they might publickely cleere themſelues of the treaſon whereof they were accuſed by *Muſtaphes* enemies, and that the accuſer might be brought forth to iuſtifie his accuſation: proteſting, that they would neuer lay downe their weapons, vntill the accuſer made his appearance in iudgement, and commenced his accuſation iudicially, vpon pain to endure the like puniſhment if he failed in proofe. Whileſt theſe things were in doing, the hainouſneſſe of the late committed fact cauſed euerie man to ſhed teares, ſo that *Solyman* himſelfe M
ſeemed to be ſorie for the murther ſo lately by himſelfe committed: wherefore he promiſed vnto the ſouldiors whatſoeuer they required, and did what he could to appeaſe their angrie minds. For all that, they in the meane time, leaſt he ſhould craftily ſlip away and deceiue them of that he had promiſed, and of the expectation of ſuch things as they had required, with a maruellous care and diligence all kept watch and ward.

The Ianizaries vp in armes againſt Solyman, for the vnworthy death of Muſtapha.

The ſtout ſpeech of Solyman to the Ianizaries.

The fierce anſwere of the Ianizaries to Solyman.

Solyman yeeldeth vnto the Ianizaries.

Solyman

A *Solyman* to appeaſe this furie of the Ianizaries, depriued *Ruſtan Baſſa* of all his honours, and tooke from him his ſeale whereof he had the keeping, and deliuered it to *Achomates Baſſa*. But *Ruſtan* worthely ſtrucken with feare and horrour, ſeeing himſelfe now in no ſafetie in his owne tents, fled ſecretly to *Achomates*, asking his counſell what were beſt for him to doe, and what courſe to take in ſo doubtfull and dangerous a caſe? To whom the Baſſa anſwered, That it were beſt for him to vſe the great emperours aduiſe, and to doe what he commaunded. Which anſwere well ſatisfied *Ruſtan*: and ſo he which of late gaue other men acceſſe vnto the emperour at his pleaſure, was now glad by his old acquaintance and friends to preferre this poore ſute, To know his pleaſure what he would haue him to doe. From whom he receiued this anſwere, That he ſhould incontinently without farther delay get him out of his ſight, and out of the campe: B which the Baſſa ſaid he could not conueniently doe, being by his diſpleaſure and the ſouldiors rage diſfurniſhed of all things neceſſarie for his departure. Whereunto *Solyman* ſent him anſwere againe, That he could giue him neither longer time nor delay, and that it were beſt for him without more adoe to be gone for feare of farther harme. Whereupon *Ruſtan*, guiltie in conſcience of moſt horrible villanie & treacherie, accompanied but with eight of his moſt faithfull friends in ſteed of his late world of followers; poſted in haſt to CONSTANTIOPLE, and there (not without danger of his head) with *Roxolana* and other the complices and contriuers of the treaſon againſt *Muſtapha* in great feare expected the euent of his fortune.

Ruſtan diſgraced by Solyman, flieth to Conſtantinople.

This young prince *Muſtapha* thus ſhamefully murthered by his owne father, was for his rare vertues generally beloued of the Turkes; but of the ſouldiors moſt for his martiall diſpoſition, C and readineſſe for the effuſion of Chriſtian bloud. The opinion they had conceiued of him was ſuch, and their loue ſo great, that they neuer thought there was any in the *Othoman* family, of whom they expected ſo much for the enlarging of their empire: inſomuch, that euer ſince, when in their priuat or publike actions they faile of any great hope, they vſe this prouerb euen at this day taken from him, *Gietti Sultan Muſtapha*; Sultan *Muſtapha* is dead: as who ſhould ſay, our hope is all loſt. *Achomates baſſa* the great champion of the Turkes, a man of exceeding courage, not ignorant of the ſmall aſſurance of the great honors of that ſtate, at ſuch time as he receiued the ſeale from *Solyman*, boldly told him, That as he did then franckly beſtow it vpon him, ſo he would at one time or other to his no leſſe diſgrace take it from him: to whom *Solyman* ſolemnly promiſed with an oath not to diſplace him ſo long as he liued. For all that, he had not long en- D ioyed that honour, but that *Solyman* falling in diſlike with him, & willing again to promote *Ruſtan baſſa* to that great honour, greater than which there is none in the Turkes court, which by reaſon of his oath he could not do ſo long as *Achomates* liued: To ſaue his oath, and to preferre his ſonne in law (whom he had indeed diſplaced onely to pleaſe the tumultuous Ianizaries) reſolued to haue *Achomates* put to death. Of which his purpoſe *Achomates* altogither ignorant, and one morning after his wonted manner comming into the Diuano in all his honour, vpon the ſudden receiued word from *Solyman*, that he muſt preſently die, and forthwith was the hangman readie to haue ſtrangled him, as was giuen him in charge: whom the ſtout Baſſa thruſt from him with his hand, with countenance and cheere in ſhew no more troubled than if the matter had nothing concerned him. And looking a good while round about him, eſpied at laſt an ho- E neſt man whom he had before many times pleaſured, whom he moſt earneſtly requeſted for all the kindneſſe ſhewed vnto him, to do him that laſt fauour as to ſtrangle him with his own hand, which ſhould be vnto him the greateſt good turne that he could poſſibly deuiſe, deteſting nothing more than to die with the hand of the executioner. Which thing when he after much intreatie had vndertaken to performe, *Achomates* willed him, that he ſhould not at one twitch ſtrangle him outright, but letting the bow ſtring ſlake againe, giue him leaue once to breath, and then to diſpatch him: which his requeſt was by his friend accordingly performed, and he in that ſort ſtrangled: wherein it ſeemeth that he was deſirous, firſt to taſt of death, and not to die all at once. Immediatly after whoſe death, *Ruſtan baſſa* was againe reſtored to his place of chiefe Viſier, and had the great ſeale deliuered vnto him: which honour he enioyed about ſix years after, and ſo at F laſt died of the dropſie. This was the end of theſe two great Baſſaes *Achomates* and *Ruſtan*, who in that time ſwaied that great empire vnder *Solyman*, and of whom we haue ſo much ſpoken. It is reported, that *Solyman* hauing appointed *Achomates* to die, ſhould ſay, *It is better for his great heart once to die, than to die a thouſand times, in ſeeing his honour taken from him and beſtowed vpon another.*

The miſerable end of Achomates the great Baſſa.

The

1554 The Turkes gallies by the ſollicitation of the French before brought down into the Tuſcane ſea, did much harme vpon the coaſts of CALABRIA and SICILIA in this yeare 1554, as they had the yeare before, and ſo did diuers yeares after. At which time alſo *Pandulphus Contarenus* the Venetian Admirall ſcouring alongſt the ſeas, carefully looking to the frontiers of the Venetian eſtate, chanced to meet with the Baſſa of CALIPOLIS (who the yeare before had rifled certaine Venetian merchants) in reuenge of which iniurie he ſet vpon him, and after a great ſpoile made both of the Turks and their gallies, he ranſacked DIRRACHIVM, then one of the Turkes port townes in DALMATIA. G

1555 The next yeare 1555, the ſame Baſſa recouered his ſtrength, but not daring to be too buſie with the Venetians, ſurpriſed the Iſlands of PLVMBIS and ELBA, ſubiect to the duke of FLORENCE, and withall ſent letters to *Solyman*, to perſuade him to take vp armes againſt the Venetians, as they which had broken the league. H

1556 At the ſame time *Haly* the Baſſa of BVDA by policie ſurpriſed the ſtrong caſtle of BABOZA in HVNGARIE: and was in good hope by the like fineneſſe to haue taken the towne and caſtle of ZIGETH, a place of great importance: but failing of his purpoſe, he came the next yeare 1556 with a great armie, and the 13 day of Iune encamped before the towne, wherein was Gouernor *Marcus Horwath* a valiant captaine, with a garriſon of notable ſouldiors. Shortly after he began a moſt terrible batterie: during which time the Chriſtians ſallying diuers times out, ſlew many of his men, who for all that vſed ſuch diligence, that the twentieth of Iune they woon the vttermoſt wall, and after fiue hot aſſaults were in hope at the ſixt to haue woon the caſtle alſo: but the Chriſtians perceiuing the danger, reſolutely ſallied out, and hauing ſlaine eight hundred of them, draue the reſt againe from the wall: yet the Turks gaue it not ſo ouer, but with a great number of carts laboured to haue filled vp the marriſh and ditches about the town: which their attempt was by the induſtrie of the defendants alſo defeated. The Baſſa perceiuing how hardly the towne would be woon by force, attempted to haue perſuaded them to haue yeelded it vp by compoſition: but fayling therein of his purpoſe, began againe the twelfth of Iulie to aſſault the citie, which aſſault he maintained fiue daies togither without intermiſſion, ſtill ſending in freſh men in ſtead of them that were wearied or ſlaine: yet was the citie for all that by the valour of the Chriſtians notably defended. So when he had in vaine proued the vttermoſt of his forces, he raiſed his ſiege the one and twentieth day of Iuly, and departed: but within ſix daies after he returned againe from the citie QVINQVE ECLESIE, and aſſaulted the citie afreſh, but was at length glad to giue ouer the ſiege and be gone, when he had loſt of his beſt ſouldiors aboue two thouſand, and of the defendants ſlain but a hundred and twentie. After his departure there was ten thouſand great ſhot found, wherewith he had battered the towne and the caſtle, which was for this time thus worthily defended. The Turks in the meane time after their wonted manner ceaſed not to do what harme they could in the Tuſcane ſea, and had againe miſerably ſpoiled the Iſland of CORSICA: for withſtanding of whom, the biſhop of ROME exacted of his people a great ſubſidie, and finely ſtript the Iews of their money, and ſeized vpon their rich merchants goods in his territorie: at whoſe earneſt ſuit *Solyman* in their behalfe writ vnto the biſhop as followeth. K

Zigeth beſieged by the Baſſa of Buda.

A terrible aſſault.

Zigeth notably defendeth.

L

Sultan *Solyman* moſt mightie Emperour of Emperours, the ſonne of *Selym*, Emperour of Emperours, to whom God giue eternall victorie: to Pope *Paulus* the fourth, greeting.

Solymans letters to the Pope, in behalfe of the Iewes merchãts

Moſt excellent and moſt mightie Lord of the profeſſors of the Meſsias Ieſu, and Lord of ROME, *the Almightie keepe thee. At ſuch time as thou ſhalt receiue our ſeale, thou ſhalt vnderſtand by our letters, that certaine Hebrewes haue come vnto vs, complaining that they are oppreſſed of thee with too grieuous exactions, when they come to trafficke at* ANCONA: *This burden I requeſt thee to take from them, and to reſtore againe vnto them their goods, that thereby they may be able to pay vnto vs our tribute: which if thou (as I hope thou wilt) ſhalt doe, thou ſhalt feele our fauour. Farewell from* CONSTANTINOPLE *the laſt of the bleſſed moneth* * *Rambeluch, in the yeare of our great Prophet* Mahomet *nine hundred threeſcore and foure.* M

**The ninth of March, Ann. 1556.*

Haly Baſſa beſieged Zigeth againe.

Haly Baſſa grieued with the late repulſe hee had receiued at ZIGETH, came againe the next yeare,

A yeare, and beſieged it, at which time king *Ferdinand* ſent *Nicholaus Polwiler* and the countie *Serinus* with a power raiſed in SVEVIA and AVSTRIA, to recouer BABOZA, a caſtle betwixt ZIGETH and STIRIA, before ſurpriſed by the Turks: of whoſe comming the Baſſa hauing intelligence, riſe with his armie and departed from ZIGETH, which he had for certaine moneths hardly beſieged, and not farre from BABOZA met with *Polwiler* and *Serinus*; who ioyning battell with him, after a hard and ſharpe fight ouerthrew him and put him to flight. This victorie with the comming downe of yong *Ferdinand*, king *Ferdinands* ſonne, Archduke of AVSTRIA with new ſupplies, ſo terrified the Turks in that part of HVNGARIA alongſt the riuer Dranus, that they for feare forſooke BABOZA, SAMMARTIN, SAN-LAVRENCE, and diuers other ſmall caſtles which they had before taken, and fled to QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ. *Haly Baſſa ouerthrowne.*

B The Gouernour of ZIGETH encouraged herewith, ſallying out with his garriſon, ſlew many of the Turkes in their flight towards QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ, and meeting by chance with a troupe of horſemen which were bringing the Turks pay, ouerthrew them, tooke the mony, and ſo with an exceeding rich prey returned to his caſtle. At which time alſo *Adam* the Gouernour of RAB, otherwiſe called IAVARINVM, hauing burnt the ſuburbes of ALBA REGALIS, and driuen away many thouſands of cattell; at a towne called SIAN ouerthrew fiue hundred Turks, and as many fugitiue Chriſtians, and ſo with a great prey and little or no loſſe at all of his men returned.

Henrie the French king at the ſame time in warres with *Philip* king of SPAINE, and troubled with the loſſe of his armie ouerthrowne not farre from S. QVINTAINS (at which time the C duke *Montmorencie* conſtable of FRANCE and Generall of the armie with his ſonne and diuers other of the nobilitie of FRANCE were taken priſoners) by his embaſſadour *Michaell Condignac* ſollicited *Solyman* to haue by ſea inuaded NAPLES and SICILIA, ſo to haue withdrawn the Spaniſh forces out of FRANCE, to defend their owne frontiers. Which thing *Solyman*, offended with the inſolencie of the embaſſadour, refuſed to doe: yet neuertheleſſe commaunded his aduenturers all alongſt the coaſt of AFFRICKE, to infeſt thoſe ſeas, and to doe what harme they could vpon the coaſt of ITALIE and SICILIA; which they ſo diligently performed, that the viceroy of SICILIA was faine for defence of thoſe countries to lie in readineſſe with his gallies in the ports of CAIETA and NAPLES. *Henry the French king ſollicited Solyman to inuade the king of Spaine his territories.*

In the meane time the *Guiſe*, lord Grand Prior of the knights of S. *Johns* in FRAVNCE (and D brother of *Francis* the duke of *Guiſe*, Generall of the French kings armie in ITALIE, who vpon the ouerthrow receiued at S. QVINTINS, called out of ITALIE, ſhortly after tooke CALLIS) Admirall of the gallies of MALTA, went out toward the Eaſt with foure gallies well appointed to lie in wait for the Turkes, and by fortune met with two great ſhips laded with the Turks marchandiſe, which he tooke; and by and by after light vpon foure of the Turks gallies, with whom he had a great fight: yet at length hauing ſunke one of them and burnt another, he tooke the other two. After which victorie returning towards MALTA to haue repaired his gallies and cured his wounded men, he was met with foure other great gallies of the Turkes: who deſirous to reuenge the loſſe of their fellowes, ſet vpon him, and he ſeeing now no remedie, but that he muſt needs fight courageouſly, encountered them. But for as much as he had in the two fights E before loſt ſome of his men, and 72 of the knights in the gallies lay ſore wounded, hee by the counſell of the captaines retired towards MALTA: but by the way one of his gallies was taken by the Turks, with 52 knights of the Order: yet with the reſt and the prizes before taken, he recouered the iſland of MALTA, where he ſtayed that Winter, and the next Spring ſayled into FRAVNCE to be partaker of thoſe troubles, which beginning ſhortly after, haue but of late taken end. *The Guiſe, lord Grand Prior in France, admiral of Malta, taketh certaine of the Turks gallies.*

The immoderat fortune of the great Sultan *Solyman*, was not in any thing more contrarie to his deſire, than in the proofe of thoſe his children, of whom the world held the greateſt expectation. *Muſtapha* his eldeſt ſonne, the mirrour of courteſie and rare hope of the whole Turkiſh nation, the ſuſpitious tyrant had moſt vnnaturally cauſed to be murdered in his owne preF ſence, to the greeſe of all his ſubiects in generall, as is before declared: poore *Tzihanger* was dead for ſorrow: and *Mahometes* his eldeſt ſonne by his beſt beloued the faire *Roxolana*, was departed this life alſo. So that now remained vnto him onely *Selymus*, the vnworthie heire of ſo great an empire, and *Baiazet* his yonger brother, the liuely image of his father, both men grown, and the ſonnes of the ſame *Roxolana*: but ſo farre differing the one from the other both in feature *Solyman in nothing more vnfortunat than in the proofe of his children.*

of

of body and diſpoſition of mind, as if they had not bene of the ſame kindred and line. *Selymus* the elder brother moſt like vnto his mother, was in the ſecret determination of the aged emperor his father appointed heire of that moſt mightie empire. *Baiazet* much reſembling his father, was on the other ſide ſtrongly ſupported by the care and entire loue of his mother: which whether it proceded of a ſecret commiſaration of his ineuitable deſtiny, or that he had by loyaltie or other meanes ſo woon her fauour, is not knowne; but euery man ſaw, that if it had lien in her power, ſhe would vndoubtedly haue preferred him before his elder brother *Selymus*, and haue placed him in the empire: but ſhe muſt needs giue way to her old huſbands will, firmely and irremouably ſet down, that the deſtinies ſo permitting, none ſhould raigne after him but his eldeſt ſonne *Selymus*. Of which his purpoſe and reſolution *Baiazet* being not ignorant, began moſt circumſpectly to looke about him, if he could by any meanes fruſtrate that forcible neceſſitie, and exchange his certaine deſtruction with an empire: in which his deepe and dangerous cogitations he was not a little comforted by the fauour and loue of *Roxolana* his mother, and of *Ruſtan* the great Baſſa his brother in law, who together had in any other matter been able to haue ouerruled the aged emperour. Whereupon he reſolutely ſet downe himſelfe, rather to end his dayes by making proof of his good or bad fortune, than vpon the death of his father (which by courſe of nature could not now be far off) to be as a ſacrifice baſely butchered by ſome vile hangman of his brothers. *Baiazet* ſo reſolued, and now already fallen out with his brother *Selymus*, tooke occaſion vpon the generall diſcontentment of the people and others, for the vnworthy death of *Muſtapha* their late ioy to begin thoſe ſtirres which he had before with himſelfe plotted, and ſo to make a head, whereunto he might afterward ioyne the body alſo: for why that worthy *Muſtapha* had left behind him ſo great deſire of himſelfe, that now it wearied many to liue after him, they had ſo placed al the hope of their good fortune in him; vnto whom nothing was more deſired than to reuenge the wrong done vnto him, or els to run the ſame hard fortune with him: Otherſome guiltie of the immoderat affection they had borne vnto him yet liuing, and fearing to be called to giue an account therof, thought any ſtate better & more aſſured than that wherein they preſently ſtood, and therefore ſought all occaſions of new ſtirres, and how to ſet all on a hurly burly: onely a captaine was wanting, *Muſtapha* could not be againe reuiued, ye might he be ſtrongly ſuppoſed to liue. This deuice pleaſed *Baiazet*, as beſt fitting his purpoſe, being not ignorant of this diſpoſition of the people. Wherefore by certaine of his moſt faithfull and truſtie followers he found out a certaine obſcure fellow of a notable audacitie, which ſhould take vpon him the name and perſon of *Muſtapha*, whoſe ſtature alſo and countenance and proportion of bodie differed not much from *Muſtapha* himſelfe: He, as if hee had by chance eſcaped, firſt began to ſhew himſelfe in that part of THRACIA, vvhich is aboue CONSTANTINOPLE, and lieth toward Danubius, not farre from the countries of MOLDAVIA and VALACHIA, and was for that cauſe both fitteſt for rebellion, and alſo beſt ſtored with horſemen, who of all others moſt honoured *Muſtapha*. Hither he comes as if it had been from a long iourney, ſlenderly accompanied, and as if he had been deſirous at the firſt not to haue been knowne: his followers being demanded (as it chanced) who he was, did rather fearfully giue them that asked occaſion to gheſſe, then plainely to tell them, that it was *Muſtapha*: neither did he himſelfe much denie it: wherby the people became more and more deſirous to know him. Which beginning thus laid, he afterward began to reioyce of his fortunate comming thither, and to giue God thanks for his ſafe arriuall there amongſt his friends: hee tels them, That at ſuch time as he was ſent for by his father, hee durſt not come into his ſight, or commit himſelfe vnto him in his furie, but by the counſell of his friends to haue with great promiſes perſwaded one that was marueilous like vnto himſelfe, to goe in his ſtead; by whoſe danger hee might make proofe of his fathers mind towards him: who before he vvas admitted to the ſpeech of his father, was without hearing miſerably ſtrangled, and ſo caſt out before his pauillion: at which time there vvas many (as he ſaid) vvhich perceiued the deceit, but the greater part remained in errour, deceiued with the lineaments and countenance of the miſerable dead man, vvho vvas much altered with the terrible paines of death, and ſuppoſing it to haue beene him indeed that vvas ſlaine. Which thing as ſoone as he vnderſtood, he thought it not good longer to ſtay, but preſently to flie and to prouide for his ovvne ſafetie: and ſo flying vvith a fevv of his ovvne followvers, thereby the more ſecretly and ſafely to eſcape; and hauing paſſed aboue PONTVS by the people of BOSPHORVS, vvas now come thither, vvhere as he was in good hope to find much helpe and comfort

Baiazet Solymans yonger ſonne ſeeketh to aſpire vnto the empire.

The craſty dealing of the ſuppoſed Muſtapha to deceiue the people.

A counterfeit Muſtapha ſet vp to make a head of rebellion.

A fort in the fidelity of his friends, whom he requeſted not now to forſake him, or to make leſſe account of him diſgraced by the malice of his ſtepmother, than they had before in time of his proſperitie. For that hee was aminded to reuenge the iniurie done vnto him, and by force of armes to defend himſelf: for what elſe had he now left? being by no other means preſerued but by the death of another man: that he had ſufficiently proued how his father ſtood affected towards him, and that he now liued by his miſtaking, not by his kindneſſe. The cauſe of all which his troubles was his ſtepdame, who (as he ſaid) with her inchantments led the ſilly old man (now almoſt doting for age and mad for loue) vvhither ſhe would at her pleaſure, and by her agent *Ruſtan baſſa* forced him forward headlong into al kind of miſchiefe: but that God be thanked he wanted not his friends, by whoſe help he vvould find a way out of theſe miſeries, & take reuenge
B of his enemies: for why, he had as yet couragious hearts, and the Ianizaries, with the greater part of his fathers family on his ſide, & that great multituds of people would flock vnto him vpon the brute of his name: ſo that they which did now mourn for him as dead (in number many) would by heaps run to help him being aliue: ſo that they there preſent would only courteouſly receiue him as a gueſt, and protect him now diſtreſſed, vntil ſuch time as his welwillers & friends might repaire vnto him. And this at laſt he gaue out, not in ſecret, but openly vnto all men wherſoeuer he came. The ſame things did they alſo report, whom he made the people to beleeue to haue bin the companions of his flight: which was alſo confirmed by diuers of good account and authoritie, whom *Baiazet* had before dealt withall to that purpoſe. So that a great number of men altogether vnknown to *Baiazet*, were by that means ſeduced: for this matter was ſo cunningly
C wrought, that many euen of them that had known *Muſtapha* aliue, and ſeene him laid dead before his fathers pauilion; yet lifted not greatly to beleeue that which they knew, but eaſily ſuffered themſelues to be perſuaded, that this was the true *Muſtapha*. But the companions and followers of *Muſtapha*, in whoſe minds the liuely countenance and remembrance of him was thorowly engrauen, nothing could deceiue: yet blinded partly with feare, partly vvith griefe & deſire of reuenge, & vviſhing rather to aduenture any thing, than longer to liue vvithout *Muſtapha*, vvere the firſt men that came to offer their ſeruice to this counterfeit *Muſtapha*: and vvould not ſuffer other men to doubt but that this was the very *Muſtapha*, vvhich it vvas falſely reported to haue been ſlaine. As for the deceiuer himſelfe, he either kept vvith him, or entertained them that came, ſome with faire promiſes, ſome with courteous ſpeeches, and many alſo with money and
D rewards, vvhich he made them to beleeue he had reſerued of the relikes of his better fortune: for *Baiazet* had before notably prouided, that nothing ſhould in this behalfe bee wanting vnto him for the countenancing of his credit. So within the ſpace of a few daies, ſuch a multitude of men was reſorted vnto him, as might almoſt haue made a whole armie. When *Solyman* vpon the ſudden was aduertiſed by the fearfull meſſengers and letters of the Sanzacks therabouts, what a danger was like to enſue by the concourſe of ſo great a multitude of people vnto this counterfet *Muſtapha*: he preſently ſuſpecting (as the truth was) that this was not done without the priuitie of one of his ſonnes, thought it not a thing to be neglected: and therfore by his letters reproued the Sanzacks thereby, that they had ſuffered the matter to run ſo farre, and had not in the beginning as their dutie was ſuppreſſed the ſame; grieuouſly threatning them, if they did not with all
E ſpeed ſend vnto him in bonds that counterfet companion with the reſt of his complices. Which that it might be the eaſilier by them performed, he promiſed to ſend one of the chiefe Baſſaes, namely *Partau Baſſa* (who had married the widow of *Mahometes* the eldeſt ſonne of *Roxolana*, of whom we haue before remembred) and with him a ſtrong power of the ſoldiors of the court: but if they would haue themſelues excuſed, that they ſhould of themſelues diſpatch the matter, before the comming of that aid. This *Partau* lead after him certaine ſquadrons of ſouldiors, not ſo many in number, as notable for their fidelitie: for *Solyman* had cauſed the moſt faithful of his colonels, captaines, and corporals to be called out; wiſely doubting leaſt his ſouldiors, either led with affection, or corrupted with reward, might take part with him againſt whom they were ſent. For the common ſort of the Ianizaries, ſtanding in ſuſpence at the fame of *Muſtapha*, and
F expectation of ſome great noueltie, fauoured that broile, and wiſhed all on a hurly burly: neither was the matter in deed without danger. The Sanzackes after they had receiued this ſtraight charge from *Solyman*, conſidering how much it ſtood them vpon to make a ſpeedie diſpatch, began now to encourage one another to beſtirre themſelues, to make all the ſpeed poſſible, & with all their power on euery ſide to oppoſe themſelues againſt the attempts of this

Solyman angrie with the Sanzackes for not ſuppreſſing the ſuppoſed Muſtapha, ſendeth Partau Baſſa againſt him.

new found *Muſtapha*: labouring to ſtay ſuch as were comming vnto him, and to diſperſe ſuch as G
were alreadie come, by ſhewing vnto him the greatnes of the danger, & threatening them with
all extreamities. In the meane time *Partan Baſſa* came on with his armie, and was not now farre
off: when (as in like caſe it oftentimes falleth out in things not yet ſufficiently confirmed, and by
celeritie preuented) the ſouldiors of the counterfeit *Muſtapha* ſeeing themſelues beſet on euerie
ſide, began to feare, and at firſt ſome few to ſlip away; but afterwards, all, without regard of
ſhame or of their promiſe to forſake their captaine, and flie euerie man whither he thought beſt.
The captaine ſeeking likewiſe to haue made ſhift for himſelfe, was with the chiefe of his coun-
ſellors and followers taken by the Sanzackes & deliuered to the Baſſa, who with a ſtrong guard
ſent them all in bonds to CONSTANTIOPLE: where *Solyman* by moſt exquiſite torments
drew from them all the ſecret deuiſes of his yong ſonne *Baiazet*, and that he had purpoſed after H
ſuch a head made by this ſuppoſed *Muſtapha* as hee thought conuenient, to haue vpon the ſud-
den ioined himſelfe with a great power, and ſo as ſhould beſt ſerue for his purpoſe, to haue gone
directly to CONSTANTINOPLE, or elſe againſt his brother *Selymus*. But whileſt he goeth
Muſtapha and his companions drowned by night. ſomewhat too ſlowly about his buſineſſe, his vnripe counſels were by his fathers celeritie op-
preſſed. Of all which matter *Solyman* now thorowly aſſured, cauſed the ſuppoſed *Muſtapha* and
his companions at midnight to be drowned in the ſea; thinking it not good to haue theſe things
commonly knowne, and to haue his domeſticall wounds yet bleeding, laid open to the view of
his neighbour princes. Neuertheleſſe being mightily offended with *Baiazet* for ſo great an inſo-
lencie, he ceaſed not to caſt in his mind how to be reuenged vpon him; which his wife *Roxolana*
Roxolana intreateth Solymã for Baiazet her yonger ſon, and obtaineth his pardon. a woman of great wiſedome, was not ignorant of. Who after a few daies, at ſuch time as the I
old mans furie was ouerpaſt, falling of purpoſe into talke with him about the matter, ſhe laid to-
gither in her ſons behalfe, and alleadged the vndiſcreetneſſe of youth, the neceſſitie of the fact,
and the example of his anceſtors in like caſe, that it was ſo prouided for by nature, that euerie
man ſhould be carefull of himſelfe and his, and that all men did indifferently ſhun death, that
young men were by euill counſell eaſily ſeduced and made to forget their duetie. That it were
reaſon he ſhould forgiue him this firſt fault; which if he amended, then was it a great gaine for
the father to haue ſaued his ſonne: but if he ſhould againe fall into relapſe, there would not want
time to puniſh him ſufficiently for both faults. And that if ſo be he would not pardon him for
his owne ſake: yet he would vouchſafe to pardon him for hers, entreating now for him for
whom ſhe had before groaned, and not to be cruell vpon him one of the pledges of their loue, K
in whom reſted the bloud of them both: for in what wofull caſe ſhould ſhe be, if of thoſe two
ſons (all that God had left her) the fathers ſeueritie ſhould bereaue her of the one? Wherfore ſhe
requeſted him to moderat his anger, and to preferre his clemencie before his iuſt indignation:
foraſmuch as God himſelfe of all power and might, did not alwaies deale with ſinners in ſeueri-
tie, but for moſt part in mercie; wheras otherwiſe all mankind would not ſuffice his wrath. And
would mercie in any place be more fitting, than in the father towards his child? She promi-
ſed further, that *Baiazet* ſhould from thenceforth remaine in moſt dutifull obedience towards
his maieſtie; and vpon his ſo great clemencie, to conuert the feare wherein he now liued into a
world of dutie and deuotion. Honourable minds (ſhe ſaid) were retained with nothing more
than with kindneſſe and courteſie; that the remembrance of that his fatherly forgiuenes, ſhould L
be a ſtay vnto him for euer doing the like againe: at laſt that ſhe would promiſe for him, and take
vpon her, that he ſhould euer afterwards ſatisfie his fatherly expectation in all kind of dutie and
loyaltie. Which vvords mingled vvith teares and other womanly geſtures, ſo wrought with
Solyman, being otherwiſe too much in her power, that he reſolued to forgiue the fault; yet ſo, that
he ſhould come and ſubmit himſelfe, and receiue from him his charge. This carefull mother
Baiazet goeth to his father in feare. foreſlowes no time, but by letters ſecretly aduertiſed *Baiazet*, not to feare to come vnto his fa-
ther at ſuch time as he ſhould be ſent for: aſſuring him that there vvas no danger, for that his fa-
ther vvas by her meanes appeaſed, and he againe brought into his fauour. With vvhich good
news *Baiazet* vvell comforted, reſolued to go at ſuch time as he vvas ſent for: yet ful of feare, and
oftentimes looking backe vnto his brother *Muſtapha*, vvhoſe dreadful example ſufficiently war- M
ned him vvhat a danger he aduentured himſelf vnto. Yet he came to the place appointed for the
parley, vvhich vvas in a common Inne at a place called CARESTRAN, a few miles from CON-
STANTINOPLE: for ſuch is the ſuſpitious maner of the Turkiſh tyrants of theſe times, not to
ſuffer any of their ſonnes that be men growne, to ſet their foot within the gates of CONSTANTI-

NOPLE

A NOPLE, as dangerous for ſoliciting the ſouldiors of the court, and ſo conſequently for the altering of the ſtate. *Baiazet* was no ſooner lighted from his horſe, but his fathers guard were preſently readie to receiue him, commaunding him to lay aſide his ſword and dagger: which thing although it be an vſuall matter in others that are admitted to the preſence of the Turkiſh emperour, yet might it then in the mind of his guiltie ſonne raiſe a great feare. But his kind mother (who had before foreſeene in what feare and perplexitie he would come) had conuaied her ſelfe into a chamber faſt by the entrie of the ſame houſe as *Baiazet* was to paſſe, where out at a little caſement couered with a thin linnen cloth, ſhe called vnto him in paſſing by in theſe few words: *Corcoma oglan Corcoma* (which is as much as to ſay) *feare not my ſonne, feare not*: with which ſhort ſpeech *Baiazet* was not a little both comforted and encouraged. But as ſoone as he was
B come into his fathers preſence and had done his dutie, *Solyman* commaunded him to ſit downe by him: then began the grim ſire grieuouſly to reproue him of raſhneſſe and want of diſcretion in taking vp armes, which he could not otherwiſe conceiue of, but as taken vp againſt himſelfe. And admit they were as he would haue it, and the beſt that he could make of it, taken vp againſt his elder brother; yet was it neuertheleſſe a great preſumption and moſt wicked fact. Neither was there any want in him, but that the whole ſtate of the Mahometane religion (which at this day reſteth vpon the *Othoman* family) had by his domeſticall diſcord beene ſore ſhaken, and brought in perill of vtter ruine, to the great iniurie reproach and contempt of his maieſtie, a moſt deteſtable and horrible crime, which could not with condigne puniſhment be reuenged. Yet for all that, he had determined to pardon him, and to ſhew himſelfe rather a kind father than
C a ſeuere iudge; ſo that he would from thenceforth leaue the care of future things to God: foraſmuch as none of theſe things are done by our appointment, but that kingdomes & monarchies are beſtowed as pleaſeth him: So that if it were his deſtinie to enioy the empire after his death, he ſhould be moſt ſure thereof as of a thing that would of it ſelfe come vnto him, and was not by any mans power to be kept from him, as that which was by God ordained for him: but if it were otherwiſe appointed by God, then were it a mad thing for him to labour in vaine to ſtriue againſt the will of God, and as it were to fight with God. Wherefore he ſhould now as one well warned, ceaſe to rage and ſtorme, and not to moleſt his quiet brother, or trouble him his aged father: for that if he ſhould againe fall, and raiſe new ſtirs, it would aſſuredly fall vpon his owne head, neither would any place of mercie bee found for his ſecond offence, and that hee
D ſhould then find him not as now his gentle father, but a moſt ſeuere and reuenging iudge. Which when he had ſaid, and *Baiazet* had thereunto briefely anſwered as the time would permit, rather crauing pardon for his treſpaſſe, than excuſing that was not to be excuſed, and promiſing from thenceforth to liue moſt loyally at his commaund: *Solyman* according to the manner of that nation called for drinke, which he commaunded to be giuen to *Baiazet*, who not daring to refuſe it although he had rather haue ſo done, dranke thereof what he thought good, doubting leaſt that ſhould haue beene his laſt: of which feare his father forthwith deliuered him by drinking a good draught of the ſame cup. So *Baiazet* though guiltie, hauing with better ſucceſſe ſpoken with his father than had his brother *Muſtapha*, returned againe to the former place of his charge.

Roxolana comforteth her ſon Baiazet.

Solyman reproueth Baiazet of diſloyaltie, and afterward pardoneth him.

Baiazet returneth to his charge.

E This happened in the yeare 1555, from which time *Baiazet* ſo long as *Roxolana* his mother liued, behaued himſelfe with all dutifull and brotherly kindnes both towards his father and his brother; and that rather for to keepe her fauour, and not to cut off the hope which he had onely in her affection towards him, than for any confidence he had in his fathers kindneſſe, or for any loue he bare to his brother; the regard of her being the only thing that kept his fierce nature in quiet. But ſhe dead about two yeres after, he as a man bereft of all hope of long life, and diſcharged of all bonds of dutie, fell to his former courſe, and began more grieuouſly than before to reuiue the old grudges betwixt him and his brother, ſomtime ſeeking by ſecret practiſes to haue him made away, and otherſome times by open force entring into his prouince which was not farre off, there euill entreated ſome of his brothers followers as he light vpon, for their maſters
F ſake, omitting nothing which he thought might tend to the diſgrace of him whom of all other he wiſhed dead. Hee had alſo certaine of his fauourites at CONSTANTINOPLE, by whom hee cunningly wrought by all means to gaine the loue of the ſoldiors of the court, and doubted not as occaſion ſerued to paſſe ouer thither himſelfe, and there to lurke in ſecret with ſuch as were of his faction, and priuie to his deſignements. Of all which things *Solyman* had knowledge, but

especially by letters from *Selymus*, wherein he was also aduised to haue care of his owne safetie; G
for that he was farre deceiued, if he perceiued not, that these preambles of *Baiazet* his wicked intentions, would at last turn vpon his head, who regarded neither God nor man, so that he might alone raigne: vnto whose vnruly desires his fathers welfare was no lesse a barre than was his brothers, and that therefore through his sides was his life shot at: which treason had (as he said) beene of long time plotted, and now occasion sought to haue the same performed: wherefore he should take heed that he were not by such trecherie ouerwhelmed before he were aware thereof: That for himselfe he could easily beare with the iniuries of his brother *Baiazet*, yet could not chuse but be moued with the greatnesse of his fathers dangers. By which meanes *Solymans* hatred against *Baiazet* was still more and more encreased. Wherefore he by letters put him in remembrance of his dutie, how courteously he had vsed him, and againe what he had on his part H
promised; that there would not alwaies be place for forgiuenesse; that he should therefore cease to wrong his brother and trouble his father; that he had but a short time to liue; and that after his death God would assigne vnto each of them their fortunes. But all this was to no purpose with *Baiazet*, fully set downe to hazard whatsoeuer, rather than as a beast to haue his throat cut by his brother: which thing he as plainly saw would betide him in the raigne of *Selymus*, as if it had beene euen then in execution. Yet he answered to his fathers commaunds not impertinently, but his deeds agreed not with his sayings, neither did he alter any thing of his intended purpose.

Solyman admonisheth Baiazet of his duetie.

Solyman remoueth his two sons further asunder

Which thing as soone as *Solyman* perceiued, he thought it best to take another course, and to remoue his sonnes both further from himselfe, and also further the one from the other. Wherefore he gaue them to vnderstand, That it was his pleasure, that both of them within a certaine I
prefixed time should depart out of their gouernments (*Baiazet* being then Gouernour of CVTAI, and *Selymus* of MAGNESIA) and that now *Baiazet* should remoue to AMASIA, and *Selymus* to ICONIVM. *Selymus* was without imputation and altogether in fauour with his father: yet because no occasion should be giuen *Baiazet* to fall into extremities, if he should haue beene remoued alone, *Solyman* to seeme indifferent, commaunded them both to remoue: vnto which commaund it was adioyned, that the farther they were off one from another, they should be so much the neerer in mind and brotherly loue: for as much as neerenesse of dwelling of the Great, did many times hinder their good agreement, whilest by frowardnesse of officers and seruants many things are on both sides done to the grieuing of their masters: and that they should in any case doe as they were commaunded, and that he which stayed longest, should not be free from K
the suspition of contempt. *Selymus* made no long stay, as he that knew a great part of all this to be done for his sake: but *Baiazet* hung backe, and being gone a little on his way, stayed, complaining the vnluckie prouince of AMASIA, stained with the bloud of his late brother the noble *Mustapha*, to be assigned vnto him as ominous, and that he could be better contented with any prouince whatsoeuer than that, where the deadly remembrance of the miserable end of the neerest to him in bloud, should be euer before his eyes, to the wounding of his heart: Wherfore he requested, that he might at least Winter in those places, or else there from whence his brother was now departed: but *Solyman* would in no wise hearken vnto him. Now *Selymus* gone before certain dayes journies with such troups as his father had sent him beside his owne, for feare L
of *Baiazet*, who yet stayed loitering and trifling on the time, suddenly returning and fetching a compasse about, shewed himselfe at his brothers backe, marching towards PRVSA in BITHINIA, the auntient seat of the Turkish kings; which he did not without the priuitie of his father, who liked not of the lingering of *Baiazet*: for what if he hauing gained the good will of the Ianizaries, should haue gone either to PRVSA, or directly to CONSTANTINOPLE? what a danger might haue growne thereby to *Selymus*, yea vnto the whole state in generall? In this common feare *Solyman* thought it best for *Selymus* there to stay, from whence they might most conueniently help one another, if *Baiazet* should (as was feared) turn himselfe vpon either of them. Yet was not *Selymus* so strong as to aduenture to ioine battell with his brother, whom he knew readie to put all to the hazard of one day. But whē *Baiazet* (contrarie to his expectation) saw *Selymus* behind him, and that he had got nothing by his long delay, but that his brother should be M
the vndoubted heire of the empire, if his father should die, vvhich vvas thē by reason of his sickly constitution of bodie daily more & more feared: he vvrit vnto his father, accusing his brother that he could not more manifestly in any thing declare how maliciusly he was affected towards him, than by taking that indirect course, to no other purpose but to aspire vnto the empire, & to haue

Baiazet vnwilling to goe to Amasia, seeketh delayes.

A haue a ſhort cut ouer to CONSTANTINOPLE, if he ſhould haue any newes of his fathers death, which he ſtill gaped after: which his longing, if his fathers longer life ſhould delay, then by the ſecret miniſters of his treaſon to diſpatch him, and by the murdering of him to poſſeſſe himſelfe of the empire; and yet neuertheleſſe, this man as a moſt dutifull and obedient ſonne, ro be of him much made of, and as it were put in his boſome: Wheras he on the contrarie part meaning well, into whoſe conceit neuer any ſuch thought came, but was euer at commaund, was not had in any regard, but caſt off and contemned, whoſe greateſt requeſt was but to ſhun an vnfortunat ominous prouince. After that, he conuerted his ſtile to prayers, requeſting againe of his father to gratifie him with ſome other prouince, if it were but that from which his brother was departed, or with any other whatſoeuer, ſo that it were more luckie than that of AMASIA: for an-
B ſwere whereof he ſaid he would ſtay where he was, to the end that finding fauour in his requeſt, he ſhould not haue need further to retire: but if he ſhould not obtaine his requeſt, that then he was readie to go whither ſoeuer his father ſhould commaund. It was not altogither for nought that *Baiazet* found fault with AMASIA; being the manner of the Turks, of the ſmalleſt things of all to diuine vpon the greateſt. But *Solyman* vnderſtood the matter otherwiſe: who not ignorant of his ſonnes teares, knew right well, that he in them ſought for nothing els but a more commodious place for him to raiſe new ſtirs in, than was AMASIA, ſo farre diſtant from CONSTANTINOPLE. So *Baiazet* by many delaies did what he could to fruſtrate his fathers appointment, ceaſing not in the meane time to augment his ſtrength with new ſouldiors, to prouide armour, money, and whatſoeuer els, ſeruing for defence of himſelfe, and the impugning of his brother.
C Which *Solyman* tooke in no other part, than as intended againſt his owne perſon: yet would he ſeeme as not to haue any ſuch vnderſtanding of the matter: for why the warie old ſire would not by taking knowledge thereof, driue headlong his ſonne, who was alreadie running too faſt of himſelfe. Beſides that, he was not ignorant that the eyes of all nations were bent vpon this diſcord of his two ſonnes: and therefore he deſired by all meanes, that theſe grudges might be with as little ſtir as was poſſible appeaſed. Wherefore he anſwered *Baiazet* courteouſly, That concerning his gouernment of AMASIA, he could not alter it, as reſolutly ſet downe as well for his brother as himſelfe, and that therefore they ſhould do well to goe both to their appointed places, as he had before commanded. As for the reſt, they ſhould be of good comfort, for that he would take ſuch order, as that neither of them ſhould haue iuſt cauſe to complaine. *Partau*
D *Baſſa* the fourth of the great Baſſaes of the court was appointed to go with this meſſage to *Baiazet*, and *Mehemet* third of the ſame great Baſſaes with like charge to *Selymus*, becauſe the matter ſhould ſeeme to be done with all indifferencie: and both of theſe great men commaunded not to depart from them they were ſent vnto, before they were both come vnto the places of their gouernment, whereunto they were aſſigned. Which *Solyman* wiſely did, to keepe them both within the compaſſe of dutie by the preſence of ſuch two graue counſellors. Which thing *Selymus* tooke in good part, but *Baiazet* not ſo: who hauing reſolued with himſelfe to ſet all on a hurly burly, thought nothing more vnfit for his deſignes, than to haue one of his fathers greateſt counſellors ſtill at his elbow as Cenſor of all his ſpeeches and doings: wherefore hauing courteouſly entertained him, & rewarded him according to his ability, he diſmiſſed him (though
E vnwilling to depart) making this excuſe, That he would vſe him as his patrone and defendour with his father, for as much as he had no other in court to defend his cauſe, promiſing not to be vnto him an vnworthie or vnthankfull client: and to carrie word back againe vnto his father, That he would aboue all things haue care of his commaund, if he might ſo doe for his brother *Selymus*, whoſe iniuries and trecheries he had much adoe to brooke. *Partau* the great Baſſa ſo ſent away, aſſured *Solyman* what the verie mind and purpoſe of his younger ſonne was. And albeit, that *Baiazet* to make it ſeeme as if ſomething had been done by that embaſſage, made ſhew as if he would haue preſently gone towards AMASIA: yet *Solyman* neuertheleſſe fearing the worſt, made all the preparation he could againſt him, commanding the Beglerbeg of GREECE, although then ſicke of the gout, to make haſt and with his horſemen to paſſe ouer with all ſpeed
F to aid *Selymus*: and *Mehemet Baſſa* but lately returned, hee ſent forthwith backe again for the ſame purpoſe to *Selymus*, with certaine of the moſt truſtie companies of the Ianizaries: and the old man in readineſſe made ſemblant as if he would himſelfe in perſon haue gone ouer alſo. But the Ianizaries and other ſouldiors of the court came with euill will togither, deteſting that warre betweene the brethren, as altogither abhominable: for againſt whom ſhould they draw their

Partau Baſſa the fourth of the great Baſſaes of the court was appointed to go with this meſſage to Baiazet, and Mehemet third of the ſame great Baſſaes with like charge to Selymus, becauſe the matter ſhould ſeeme to be done with all indifferencie: and both of theſe great men commaunded not to depart from them they were ſent vnto, before they were both come vnto the places of their gouernment, whereunto they were aſſigned.

Solyman to be ſure that his two ſons ſhould go to their appointed prouinces, ſendeth Partau & Mehemet, two of the Viſier Baſſaes to ſee them brought thither

Baiazet ſendeth Partau Baſſa backe againe to his father.

Solyman maketh preparation againſt Baiazet, and ſendeth aid to Selymus.

The Ianizaries vnwilling to go againſt Baiazet.

ſwords? was it not againſt the emperours ſonne, and happily the heire of the empire? Where- G
fore this warre might(as they ſaid)well ynough be let alone, as altogither vnneceſſarie, and not
they to be inforced to embrue their hands one in anothers bloud, & to pollute themſelues with
ſuch impietie: as for that which *Baiazet* did,was to be holden excuſed,as proceeding from ne-
ceſſitie. Which ſpeeches of the Ianizaries being brought to *Solymans* eares,he forthwith decla-
red them to the Muphti (whom in all matters of doubt they flie vnto, as vnto a moſt ſacred
Oracle)demanding of him, How he was to be intreated who of himſelfe preſumed whiles he
yet liued,to leuie ſouldiors,raiſe an armie, ranſacke townes, and trouble the ſtate of the whole
empire? and what alſo he deemed of them that were his followers and tooke part with him?and
laſt of all of them alſo that refuſed to beare armes againſt him, and ſaid that he had in ſo doing
nothing offended? Whereunto the Muphti anſwered, That both the man and his part-takers H
were all worthie of death;& that ſuch as refuſed to take vp armes againſt him,were as prophane
and irreligious men,to be accounted inteſtable. Which the great prieſts anſwere, was publiſhed
vnto the people: and by the chiefe Chiaus ſent to *Baiazet*, to ſee if he might be therewith mo-
ued. Within a few daies after there came to CONSTANTINOPLE one of the Chiaus (whom
Baiazet his meſſage to his father requeſting him not to intermedle betwixt him and his brother. *Baiazet* had intercepted,being ſent from *Solyman* to *Selymus*) by whom *Baiazet* gaue his father
to vnderſtand, That he was in all dutie his,and that he had not taken vp armes againſt him, nei-
ther refuſed to be vnto him in all things obedient: but that he had onely to do with his brother
and with him to fight for his life, by whoſe ſword he muſt needs die, or elſe he by his,for that a
miſchiefe was to bee by one of them performed; which quarrell he was reſolued to trie whiles
he yet liued, and that therefore he ſhould doe beſt not to meddle in the quarrell, or giue aid to I
either: But if ſo be he would needs(as the report was)paſſe ouer the ſea to aid *Selymus*,he ſhould
not thinke eaſily to get him into his hands,for that he knew right well,if the worſt came,how to
eſcape and ſaue himſelfe; and would(before he could get ouer into ASIA)make ſuch ſpoile with
fire and ſword, as neuer had *Tamarlane* or other the cruelleſt enemie of the Turks that euer was.
Which meſſage did not a little trouble *Solyman*. And withall it was reported,that the towne of
AXVAR,where one of *Selymus* his ſonnes ruled as Sanzacke,was alreadie taken by *Baiazet*, and
Selymus departeth toward Iconium. ſhamefully ſacked. But *Selymus* hearing that his brother was gone toward AMASIA, and now
on his way as far as ANCYRA, being out of all ſuſpition of danger which he feared vpon the
way,ſo long as his brother was yet lingering in thoſe quarters, haſted now towards ICONIVM,
which was with a ſtrong garriſon kept for him: for amongſt other cares wherwith *Solyman* was K
vexed,it was not the leaſt, That *Baiazet* intercepting ICONIVM,ſhould get into SYRIA, and from
thence into ÆGYPT,an open countrie,and not yet throughly eſtabliſhed vnder the Turkiſh go-
uernment,neither forgetfull of the old gouernment of the Mamalukes,and therfore deſirous of
change; from whence it would haue beene an hard matter to haue driuen *Baiazet*, eſpecially
the Arabians being alwaies readie and at hand at euery light ſtirre, where any hope of prey
was: out of which prouince alſo in caſe of extremitie hee might eaſily tranſport himſelfe into
any of the Chriſtian kingdomes. *Solyman* therefore tooke great care, that this paſſage, which
might ſeeme the laſt refuge of *Baiazet* his deuiſes, might be ſtopped: and concerning the ſame
had giuen commaundement vnto moſt of his commanders in ASIA to be alwaies in readineſſe L
to aid *Selymus* whenſoeuer he ſhould call. With them *Selymus* lay encamped vnder the wals of
ICONIVM, attending euerie ſtirring of *Baiazet*, reſolued there to expect farther aid from his fa-
ther,and not by vntimely fight to commit his ſafetie to the hazard of one doubtfull battell. But
Baiazet on the other ſide,not vnmindfull what a matter he had taken in hand,ſlept not thereup-
on,but firſt entertained a valiant ſort of horſemen which the Turks call Chiurts, and are ſuppo-
ſed to be of that people which were ſometimes called Gordij, men for their knowne valour fa-
Baiazet ſtaieth at Ancyra, and there raiſeth his forces. mous. He yet lay in the plaine an open fields by ANCYRA,of the commodities of which citie
(which were indeed great)he made great vſe: In the caſtle thereof he beſtowed his concubines
and children; of the rich merchants he tooke vp mony,to be repaid with the vſe vpon the good
ſucceſſe of the war; and from thence he tooke whatſoeuer was needfull for the arming and fur-
niſhing of his men. Beſides his own familie,which was verie great,and thoſe Chiurts which we M
ſpoke of,many repaired vnto him, which had beene in former time beholden to his mother,his
ſiſter,and *Ruſtan* the great Baſſa; many alſo of the reliques of the valiant *Muſtapha*, and *Ache-
mates* the great Baſſa,valiant men and expert ſouldiours, who deſired to reuenge the vnworthie
death of their lords and maſters,euen with their own. Neither was there wanting an exceeding

rablement

A rablement of ſuch as weary of the preſent ſtate, deſired ſome new innouation and change. The commiſeration alſo of the ſtate of the vnfortunat *Baiazet*, eaſily drew many to take part with him, whoſe whole truſt was in his valour: they fauoured the yong prince, liuely reſembling his father: when as in *Selymus* appeared no likeneſſe of himſelfe, but the expreſſe lineaments of his mothers face and bodie, a woman whileſt ſhe liued generally hated of all the people: he went heauily as ouercharged with his greaſie paunch, blub cheeked, and exceeding red faced; ſo that the ſouldiors in ſport would ſay, he was fed with greene mault: he vvas altogether giuen to his eaſe, and ſpent his time in drunkennеſſe and ſleepe, neither was he courteous of ſpeach, nor willing to deſerue vvell of any man; for he would not (as he ſaid) offend his father by being popular, ſo was he onely of his father beloued, and of all other men hated: of all kind of men, he moſt
B miſliked of them that ſet all their hope in a bountifull and couragious prince. The ſame ſouldiors were alſo wont to call *Baiazet*, *Sofue* (that is to ſay) a man giuen to quietneſſe and ſtudie: but after that they ſaw him take vp armes, and for the ſafegard of himſelfe and his children ready to aduenture any thing, they began to admire him as a man of valour and courage: and to aske among themſelues, Why his father ſhould reiect him of ſuch worth, the expreſſe image of himſelfe, and preferre before him that gorbellied ſluggard, in whom no ſparke of his fathers valour was to be ſeene? This his entring into armes vvas no fault, being thereunto by neceſſitie enforced, for, had not *Selymus* their grandfather done the like? vvhereof no better example could be found; whom the force of neceſſity conſtrained not onely to take vp armes againſt his brother, but alſo to haſten the death of his father; and by ſo doing, purchaſed vnto himſelfe and his po-
C ſteritie the empire: which ſo gotten, if *Solyman* did not vniuſtly poſſeſſe, why might not his ſon vſe the ſame courſe? why ſhould he ſo rigorouſly reuenge that in his ſonne, that was ſo lawfull in the grandfather? Although there was (as they ſaid) great difference betweene that *Selymus* and this *Baiazet*; for that this man intended no harme againſt his father, but wiſhed him long to liue; neither yet againſt his brother, if he might by his leaue but liue, if he would but once ceaſe to doe him wrong: that it was alwayes accounted lawfull to repell force by force, and to ſhun preſent death, if the deſtinies would ſo permit. By ſuch affections and motiues, *Baiazet* his power increaſed daily: which being now growne almoſt to the greatneſſe of a full armie, he thought it not beſt to vſe longer delay, but to march forthwith againſt his brother to fight with him one battell for his life, ſtate, and empire: accounting it ſome commendation (although in
D vaine) to haue attempted ſo great an enterpriſe. His purpoſe was (as *Solyman* feared) to get into SYRIA, which if he could bring to paſſe, he then doubted not of the reſt. *Selymus* ſtrengthened with his fathers power, lay vvaiting for his comming before ICONIVM, well appointed of all warlike prouiſion: his armie was exceeding ſtrong, and in it many notable commaunders, martiall men of great experience, whom his father had ioyned vnto him; who all lay couered with their great ordinance planted in places moſt conuenient. But *Baiazet* nothing terrified therewith, as ſoone as he came within ſight of his brothers armie, exhorted his ſouldiors in few words to play the men, for that now was come the time they wiſhed for, and place for them to ſhew their valour in: wherefore they ſhould ſhew themſelues couragious and valiant, and he would make them all rich and fortunat: He told them, that their fortune was now in their owne
E hands, to frame it euery man as he would himſelfe; ſo that if any of them were vvearie of their preſent ſtate, there was the field wherein they might exchange it with better, and therein lay downe the miſeries of their former liues: that of him they ſhould if they ouercame, expect riches, promotions, honours, and whatſoeuer elſe, the rewards of valiant men: That with the victorie of one battell, all their deſires ſhould be ſatisfied, vvere they neuer ſo great: which victory was by the valour vvhich reſted in them to be gotten, and his brothers armie, the heartleſſe followers of a heartleſſe captaine, ouerthrovvne; for as his fathers ſouldiers that vvere with his brother, they were in body preſent, but in mind altogether on his ſide: That it vvas onely *Selymus* that vvithſtood his welfare and their felicitie, vvhom they ſhould therfore valiantly ſeek for in field as their common enemie; and not to be afraid of his multitude, foraſmuch as victorie
F vvas to be gained, not by number, but by valour: and the moſt mighty God of heauen and earth vvas ſtill preſent, not with the moſt, but with the beſt: Beſides that, he vvilled them to remember with vvhat a cruell enemy they were to fight, who thirſted after nothing more than their bloud: And to conclude, he vvilled them all, not to looke vpon his vvords, but his deeds; and ſaid, If as you ſhal ſee me fighting for your profit, you ſhall likewiſe fight for mine honour, I dare then aſ-

The deſcription of Selymus.

Baiazet and his quarrell generally fauoured of the ſouldiors.

Baiazet his purpoſe.

Baiazet goeth againſt his brother.

ſure

The battell betweene Baiazet and Selymus

sure you of the victory. Which said, hee with great courage charged the enemie, and fighting himselfe long time amongst the formost, and there performing all the parts of a valiant souldior, and worthy captaine, was for his notable valour no lesse commended of his enemies than of his owne souldiors. The battell was bloudie and terrible, and many fell on both sides. But after that they with wonderfull obstinacy had a great while fought with doubtful victory, so that for- G

Fortie thousand Turkes slaine.

tie thousand Turkes lay there dead vpon the ground; at length the victory began to encline to that side vvhereon stood the greater strength, the iuster cause, and better counsell. Many of the enemies being slaine, and many of his owne people also lost, *Baiazet* was enforced to retire; which he did so leisurely, and without shew of any feare, that it seemed to the beholders, he had welneere as well gained as lost the field: neither durst *Selymus* pursue him, but stood still fast in the same place, neuer more glad of any thing than to see his brothers backe. But *Baiazet* after H he had in contempt of his fathers commaund thus run his owne course, and satisfied his owne desire, though disappointed of his purpose, and not able to performe the iourney by him intended into SYRIA; turned now his course, and began in good earnest to goe to AMASIA his appointed prouince.

Baiazet goeth to Amasia.

Solyman speedily aduertised of the euent of this battell, forthwith passed ouer into ASIA: for as the great Bassaes his counsellors thought it not conuenient for him to go ouer the strait before the victorie: so after it was certainly knowne, they thought it not good longer to stay, least the ouerthrow of *Baiazet* might giue occasion to such as secretly fauoured his quarrel to shew themselues, and so to raise greater troubles. Besides that, the fame of his passage ouer, would (as they said) much auaile both to the discouragement of *Baiazet*, and the terrifying of his friends: and I therefore it was by them thought good, hastely to pursue him, now ouerthrowne, and not to suffer him to gather courage by the example of his grandfather *Selymus*, *Solymans* father; who had been more terribly vanquished then when he stood in his whole strength, and might seeme by that meanes to haue especially preuailed, for that he was at first vnfortunatly ouerthrowne: Neither were these things without reason foreseene: for it is almost incredible what admiration and loue, this battell (although vnfortunat) did get to *Baiazet*; men wondred that he durst with so small a power, and as it were but a handfull of men, encounter with his brother farre better appointed, and also supported by his fathers strength: not fearing either the disaduantage of the place, or the furie of the great artillerie; and to haue behaued himselfe in the battell not like a young souldior, but like an old and expert commaunder. *Selymus* might at his pleasure boast K of himselfe as they said (to his father) for the victorie: but *Baiazet* was the man that deserued to haue ouercome: and that *Selymus* might to any thing ascribe the victorie, rather than to his owne valour.

These and such like speeches, as they made *Baiazet* gratious amongst the people generally; so doubled they his fathers cares, and increased his hatred, to wish him the rather dead. For why, he was resolutely set down, not to leaue any other heire of his empire than *Selymus* his eldest son, alwaies loiall & obedient vnto him: whereas the other he abhorred as stubborne and rebellious, gaping after the empire whilst he yet liued; of whom he was therfore so much the more to stand in dread, by how much he was reputed to be of more valor; & for the aid he had now so openly giuen to *Selymus*. For these causes he passed ouer the strait into ASIA, with purpose not to go far L from the sea coast, but as it were a farre off with his fauorable aspect to countenance *Selymus* his proceedings: doubting by comming too neere with his army, to endanger himselfe by the sudden reuolt of the Ianizaries, which he aboue all things feared.

Augerius Busbequius epist. 2. legationis Turcicæ.

I my selfe (saith the author of this historie) saw him departing out of CONSTANTINOPLE the first of Iune in the yeare 1559, when as within a few dayes after I my selfe was also sent for thither: for the Bassaes thought it not amisse to haue me in the campe, and to vse me courteously as their friend, for which cause I was assigned to lodge in an Inne in a village neere vnto the campe, where I lay very well. The Turkes lay in the fields round about: but lying there three moneths, I had good leisure and opportunitie to see the manner of their campe, and in part to know the order of their martiall discipline. So I attiring my selfe in such apparell as the Christi- M ans commonly vse in those places, went vp and down with one or two companions at my pleasure vnknown. First I saw the soldiors of all sorts most orderly placed, & that, vvhich he vvould scarcely beleeue that knoweth the maner of our war, there vvas in euery place great silence, and as a man may say, dumbe quietnesse, no bravvling, no insolencie, no not so much as a vvord or laughter

The order of the Turks campe.

A laughter paſſing in ſport or drunkenneſſe. Beſides that wonderfull cleanelineſſe, no dunghils, no excrements that might offend either the eyes or noſe, for all ſuch things the Turkes doe either burie or carrie them far out of ſight. They themſelues ſo often as they are enforced to diſcharge the burthen of nature, dig an hole with a ſpade and burie it, ſo is all their campe without filth. There was not to be ſeene any drinking or feaſting, no dicing (the great ſhame of our wars) the loſſe of money or time at cards or dice, the Turks know not. I met onely with a rough Hungarian and his companions, a ſouldior, who heauie himſelfe, to the Lute rather houled than ſung a dolefull dittie, containing the laſt words of a fellow of his dying of his wounds vpon the greene banke of Danubius, wherein he requeſteth the riuer, becauſe it ran to the place where hee was born, to carrie newes to his friends and countrymen, that he died an honourable death and not
B vnreuenged, for the encreaſe of his religion, and honour of his countrey: whereunto his fellows ſighing bare a foot: *O happie and thrice happie wight, would fortune with thee change we might.* For the Turks are of opinion, That no mens ſoules goe more ſpeedily to heauen, than of ſuch valiant men as die in battell, for whoſe welfare their maidens dayly make prayers and vowes. I would alſo needs goe through their butcherie, where their beaſts were killed, to ſee what fleſh was to be ſold; where I ſaw but foure, or at moſt fiue weathers hanging readie dreſſed, and that was the butcherie for the Ianizaries, which I deemed to be in that campe not fewer than foure thouſand. I maruelled that ſo little fleſh ſhould ſuffice ſo many mē: but I was anſwered, That few of them did eat fleſh, for that moſt part of them had their victuals tranſported from CONSTANTINOPLE. Then I demaunding what it was, they ſhewed me a Ianizarie ſitting by who in an
C earthen diſh had killed a turnep, an onion, a head of garlike, a parſenep, and a coucumber, al ſauced with ſalt and vineger, or more truly to ſay with hunger, whereon he fed as ſauorly, as if they had beene feaſants or partridges: his drinke was the common drinke of all liuing creatures, euen faire water. By which frugall kind of diet they prouide both for the health of their bodies, and the ſparing of their purſe: and that I maruelled the more at, it was the time that their great faſt, or to ſpeake after our faſhion, their Lent was at hand: at which time with vs Chriſtians, euen in well ordered cities, much more in campes, all rings with playing, daunсing, ſinging, crying, quaffing, carouſing, and in breefe, with madding and phrenſie. So that it is not vainely reported, That a Turke ſent about that time embaſſadour into GERMANIE, comming home, reported, That the Chriſtians on certaine dayes did riot and became mad, vntill they, beſprinckled with a certaine
D kind of aſhes in the church, came to themſelues again, and ſo recouered; and that it was a wonderfull thing to ſee, how much they were changed by the efficacie of that remedie, that they ſeemed not to be the ſame men: meaning indeed the diſordered manners of the Chriſtians at Shrouetide, and the ceremonies vſed on Aſhwedneſday: which thing they to whom it was told, ſo much the more maruelled at, for that the Turks haue many medicines which cauſe madneſſe, but few or none which preſently eaſeth the ſame. And they vpon thoſe dayes that goe before their great faſts, change nothing of their wonted manner of life to the worſe: but rather contrariwiſe prepare themſelues to abſtinence, by taking ſomewhat from their vſuall fare, the better to endure the ſudden change of their faſt: which they ſo preciſely obſerue, that vpon their faſting dayes they will not ſo much as taſt a cup of water, or waſh their mouthes with water all the day
E long, before the ſtarres appeare in the skie: which maketh their faſts, eſpecially in Summer when the dayes be long and hot, to be vnto them very tedious.

The opinion the Turkes haue of them that die in their warres.

The ſpare diet of the Ianizaries.

The preciſe māner of the Turkes in their faſts.

Whiles I thus lay in the campe, there came vnto me one *Albertus* a learned man with certaine preſents from the emperour to *Solyman*, which were, certaine gilt plate, and a moſt curious clocke, which was carried vpon an Eliphant like a caſtle; and ſome crownes to be diſperſed among the Baſſaes: which *Solyman* would needs haue preſented vnto him in the campe in the ſight of the whole armie, to make it the better knowne what friendſhip was betweene him and the emperour, and that he needed not to feare any danger from the Chriſtian princes.

Preſents ſent frō the emperour Ferdinand to Solyman.

But to returne againe to *Baiazet*, from whom we haue a while digreſſed: he after the battell at ICONIVM had retired himſelfe to AMASIA, the place of his gouernment, as though he would
F haue now there quietly liued, if his father would ſo giue him leaue. He had now ſatisfied his youthfull deſires and greefe, and ſeemed willing from thenceforth to ſatisfie his fathers better expectation: and therefore ceaſed not by letters and fit men to proue his fathers mind. Neither did *Solyman* ſhew himſelfe ſtrange from ſuch a reconciliation: at firſt he eaſily gaue the meſſengers audience, read his ſons letters, and courteouſly returned anſwere; ſo that it was commonly reported

Baiazet goeth to Amaſia, and ſeeketh for his fathers fauor.

reported in the campe, that the father and the ſonne would agree, and that the old man would pardon the youthfull pranke alreadie paſt, ſo that he would from thenceforth remaine dutifull. G

Solyman diſſembleth with Baiazet.

But all this was by the counſell of the Baſſaes nothing but deepe diſſimulation in the craftie old ſire, vntill he had ſhut vp *Baiazet*, and ſo got him aliue into his hand: for it was feared, leaſt he deſpairing of pardon, ſhould with ſuch a power breake into the borders of PERSIA (now the onely place left for his refuge) as might preuent the watchfull diligence of his lieutenants vpon thoſe frontiers: whom *Solyman* charged by continual letters ſo to ſtop all the paſſages into PERSIA, as that there ſhould not be any crany for *Baiazet* to flie out by. In the mean time, if any came within his reach that were ſuſpected to haue taken part with *Baiazet*, or fauored his prceedings, thoſe he cauſed to be tortured and ſecretly made away, and amongſt them ſome whom *Baiazet* had of purpoſe ſent to excuſe themſelues. For *Solyman* fearing leaſt *Tamas* the Perſian king H (more mindful of his old quarels than of the late inforced peace) ſhould hardly with much ado ſuffer his ſonne to be got out of his hands if he ſhould flie thither, and ſo againe raiſe a long and dangerous warre; did therefore what he poſſibly might to oppreſſe him before he ſhould come thither. Which his purpoſe although it was couered with all ſecrecy, yet was it not hidden from ſome of *Baiazet* his friends, by whom he was oftentimes warned not to truſt his father, but to beware of treaſon, and in any caſe ſpeedily to prouide for his own ſafetie. But *Solyman* thinking he had now ſo prouided as that he could by no meanes eſcape, and happily the more to deceiue his ſonne, appointed to returne with his army to CONSTANTINOPLE the day after their Eaſter day. But *Baiazet* vpon the verie feaſt day hauing performed the ſolemnities thereof, com-

Baiazet departeth into Amaſia, with purpoſe to fly into Perſia

maunded all his things to be truſſed vp at AMASIA, and ſo ſet forward vpon his vnfortunat iour- I ney towards PERSIA, knowing right well, that he went to the auncient enemie of the *Othoman* family, but yet fully reſolued to make proofe of any mans mercie, rather then to fall into the hands of his angry father. Now were they all ſet forward, except ſuch weake ſoules as were not thought able to endure the labour of ſo long a iourney, amongſt whom was left *Solyman*, *Baiazet* his youngeſt ſonne, but then newly borne: which guiltleſſe babe, with his mother, *Baiazet* thought better to leaue vnto the mercie of his grandfather, than to take him with him, a poore companion of his wofull and miſerable flight: whom *Solyman* as yet vncertaine of his fathers fortune, commaunded to be nurſed at PRVSA. *Baiazet* ſo gone from AMASIA, vſed ſuch celeritie in his trauell, that almoſt in euery place hee preuented the fame of his comming, and light vpon many that were appointed to haue ſtaied his paſſage, before they were ready or aware of K

Baiazet deceiueth the Baſſa of Sebaſtia.

his comming. The Baſſa of SEBASTIA he thus deceiued: There was two wayes, whereof the one of them being intercepted, would greatly hinder his iourney, and that the Baſſa had already taken: wherfore he ſent certaine, as if they had been fugitiues, to tell the Baſſa that he was already gone the other way. Which the Baſſa beleeuing, left the place he had before taken, and riſing with all his power to purſue him the other way, vvhereby it was told him he was gone, left that way free and open for him to paſſe by.

The Baſſa of Erzirum deceiued by Baiazet.

The Baſſa of ERZIRVM he deceiued alſo by another not much vnlike ſhift: from whom when he was not farre diſtant, and knowing that in paſſing through his countrey, he was to endure great danger, he ſet vpon him with a wile, ſending vnto him certaine of his followers with commendations: who afterwards lamentably complaining of the yong princes calamitie, to moue L the Baſſa to pitie, at laſt requeſted that hee vvould giue him leaue to ſhoo his horſes in his territorie, telling him, That he came vnprouided of all things, and therefore deſirous in that fruitfull countrey to refreſh his horſes a day or two, and to new ſhoo them. Whereunto the Baſſa courteouſly anſwered, That he would not let him to take whatſoeuer he needed. But vvhether it vvas for the compaſſion that he had vpon the ſtate of *Baiazet*, or for the ſecret loue he bare him, or that he thought by that means the eaſilier to entrap him, is doubtfull, & happily preuented by *Baiazet* his quick ſpeed, had not as yet ſufficient time to draw together his ſouldiors. He ſent alſo vnto *Baiazet* certaine ſmall preſents, ſeeming to be glad of his welfare and comming: who neuertheleſſe kept on his way, reſting no part of the day, and but a little of the night. The Baſſa of ERZIRVM vnderſtanding that *Baiazet* came ſtill on, made what haſt he could alſo, and ioyned M his power to the reſt of the Baſſaes which followed after: for many Baſſaes and Sanzackes hearing that *Baiazet* was fled from AMASIA, purſued faſt after him, being charged by *Solyman* vpon paine of their heads to bring him backe either aliue or dead: but all in vaine, by reaſon of his ſpeedy departure, and for that he made more haſt to flie than they did to follow. Yet it coſt no

man

A man deerer then this Baſſa of ERZIRVM, of whom we haue now ſpoken, whom *Solyman* for this cauſe diſplaced: and *Selymus* afterwards ſlew with two of his ſonnes, young ſtriplings whom hee had before in deſpight ſhamefully abuſed againſt nature. Yea *Selymus* himſelf and *Mehemet* the great Baſſa, with the Berglerbeg of GRECIA, followed alſo after *Baiazet*, though it were a farre off. This his departure grieued *Solyman* aboue meaſure, aſſuring himſelf (as the truth was) that hee was fled into PERSIA: wherewith he was ſo much moued, that hee could ſcarcely containe himſelfe, but would needs haue gone with all his power in al haſt againſt the Perſian, to haue terrified him at hand from relieuing his rebellious ſonne. But theſe his raging fits his graue counſellors moderated, by declaring vnto him what danger he ſhould aduenture himſelfe vnto, by reaſon of the doubtfull faith of his beſt ſouldiors. And what if *Baiazet* (as he was a deſ-

Solyman much grieued with the flight of his ſon.

B perat and ſudden man, ſhould in the meane time turne about aboue PONTVS and the fens of Mœotis, and ſo fetching a compaſſe come to CONSTANTINOPLE, and proclaiming a generall libertie in his abſence, poſſeſſe himſelfe of the Empire. By which wholſome perſwaſion *Solyman* ſtaied his ſo haſtie a iourney: but *Baiazet* all the way as hee went, writ vpon the gates and doores, That he would giue double pay to al ſuch as ſhould follow him: which cauſed *Solymans* captaines to haue their owne ſouldiors in diſtruſt, and the more for that they might oftentimes heare amongſt them, ſpeeches of great good will and loue towards *Baiazet*.

The eager purſuit of the Baſſaes and Sanzacks.

After long flying, hee was at length come to the Riuer Araxis, which ſeparated the Turkes kingdome from the Perſian; which hauing paſſed ouer, and yet not ſo in ſafetie, he left certaine

C of his followers vpon the banke of the riuer to keep the Sanzacks, who ſtill eagerly purſued him from paſſing ouer: whom the Sanzacks eaſily repulſed, & ſo paſſing the riuer, entred a great way into the Perſian kingdome, vntill ſuch time as that they were met withall by certaine of the nobilitie of PERSIA with great troupes of horſemen; who demanding of them what they meant, and what they ſought for in another mans kingdome, were anſwered by the Turkes, That they purſued their kings fugitiue ſonne. To whom the Perſians replied, That they did not well, contrarie to the league with their Lord and Maſter, to come in armes beyond the bounds of their owne kingdome; and that there was a ſtrong league betweene King *Tamas* and *Solyman*, which it behoued them to regard: as for *Baiazet*, their king would conſider what was conuenient for him to doe, and not in that point forget himſelfe: in the meane time they ſhould doe well to get

D them out of that countrey wherein they had nothing to doe. Whereupon the Turks forthwith left this purſuit and retired.

But by and by came meſſengers from the Perſian King to *Baiazet* to ſalute him, and to demaund the cauſe of his comming, and alſo to ſee what ſtrength he brought with him; which as ſome account was about twentie thouſand. To whom *Baiazet* declared, That hee by his brothers iniuries and fathers hard dealing driuen out of his countrey, was fled vnto the ſacred maieſtie of the Perſian king, as his moſt aſſured refuge; who as he well hoped, in compaſſion of mans inſtabilitie, would not reiect him ſo diſtreſſed, and otherwiſe deſtitute of all helpe, Whereunto the Perſian replied, That he had done very vnvviſely to come vnto him that vvas in league and amity with his father, vvhereof one condition was, That they ſhould account the enemies of the one the enemies of the other, and the friends of the one the friends of the other. Which lavv to

Baiazet wel entertained by the Perſian king.

E breake, he accounted a thing vtterly vnlawfull: neuertheleſſe ſeeing the matter vvas ſo fallen out, he vvas vvelcome as vnto his friend, who in his behalfe would leaue nothing vnattempted to reconcile him to his father, vvhich he deſpaired not to bring to paſſe. So *Baiazet* meeteth with the Perſian king, but in an euill houre, although at their firſt meeting there vvas great vvelcome, friendly countenance, cheerfull lookes, mutuall kindneſſe, often conference, and great feaſting one of another; things whereby the ſecret thoughts of hollovv hearts are beſt concealed: there vvas alſo a motion made of a ſtraighter bond of alliance, and one of the Perſian kings daughters promiſed to *Orchanes* one of *Bazaiet* his ſonnes; and he put in hope that the Perſian king vvould neuer reſt in quiet, vntill *Solyman* had made him Gouernour either of MESOPOTAMIA, BABY-

F LON, or ERZIRVM (which Gouernements vvere by the Perſians greatly extolled) and that hee might there liue vvithout feare of his brother, farre from him and his father alſo; vvhere if any thing ſhould fall out othervviſe than vvell, hee might haue his brother the Perſian king a ſure refuge to retire vnto, and ſo ſafe from all danger. Which ſpeeches vvere happily giuen out, of purpoſe to auert *Baiazet* his thought from the feeling of the preſent danger; who ſeemed vnto himſelfe ſo aſſured of the loue and friendſhip of *Tamas* the Perſian King, that at ſuch time as he ſent

his

his embaſſadours to CONSTANTINOPLE, for a reconciliation to be made betweene *Solyman* and him (as was commonly ſuppoſed) he willed the ſame embaſſadour to tell his father, that he had loſt a father at CONSTANTINOPLE, and found another in PERSIA. But whether the Perſian delt ſincerely in this behalfe for *Baiazet* by his embaſſadours, which were many, may well be doubted. Like it is, that there was more faigned ſhew of double diligence, than of true meaning therein; and rather to feele the mind of *Solyman*, than to doe any good to the poore diſtreſſed prince: and the rather, for that in the meane time all things were ſeriouſly plotted that might tend to his deſtruction. Which were no ſooner growne to their full ripeneſſe, but there was of purpoſe a motion made, That ſuch a multitude as followed this yong prince lay too cloſe togither, that there was not in one place victuall ſufficient for them, and that it was therefore more conuenient to haue them billeted in the countrey thereabouts; which would be more commodious, as well for the better victualing of them, as for diuers other purpoſes alſo. Truth was, that *Tamas* the Perſian king, farre vnlike his noble father *Iſmaell*, ſtood in doubt leaſt hee brought vp a Serpent in his boſome. Yet there were many which thought, that it was not the Perſians mind at firſt to haue deſtroied *Baiazet*, but to haue beene thereunto enforced by the practiſe of ſome of his familiars and followers; who not regarding the courteſie of the Perſian king, nor the lawes of hoſpitalitie, perſuaded *Baiazet* to thruſt him out of his kingdome: whereof there was many euident tokens. And among other things it was told king *Tamas*, that one of *Baiazets* chiefe captaines ſhould ſay, What meane we? why ſtay we to kill this hereticall king, and to poſſeſſe his kingdome? for we ſhall no doubt by his treacherie all come to deſtruction. And that vpon ſuch occaſion the king was conſtrained to condiſcend to a deuiſe more neceſſarie than honourable. *Baiazet* had no great power, but moſt of them were valiant men, and ſouldiors of great experience, readie to aduenture vpon any thing: of whom the Perſian not without cauſe ſtood in ſome feare. He knew his kingdome to be neither auntient nor yet well aſſured, as gotten by his father by the counterfeit ſhow of a reformed religion: And who could aſſure him, but that amongſt ſo many nations ouer whom he lorded, but that there were many wearie of the preſent ſtate, and ſo deſirous of noueltie? vnto whom nothing could chance more fitting, than the comming of *Baiazet*, a noble and valiant yong gentleman; and that more was, deſperatly ſet: that as yet he himſelfe might of right rather ſeeme in the power of his gueſt, than he in his: And that therefore he was to alter the matter, and not longer to entertaine him as his gueſt, but to coupe him vp as a moſt dangerous wild beaſt. Which to doe, the eaſieſt way was to diſperſe his power, and ſo to take him vnawares: for that he could not without much bloudſhed be openly taken in the middeſt of his ſtrength, eſpecially by the daintie Perſian of long time not vſed to warre, and as yet not come togither; againſt *Baiazets* ſouldiors, men of great actiuitie and experience. So was the matter cunningly imparted vnto him for the diſperſing of his forces, and all the commodities to enſue thereof alleadged: which *Baiazet* might not well gainſay, although many of his wiſe followers (men of great reach) did ſhrewdly ſuſpect the ſequell. But what could he refuſe, vpon whom neceſſitie lay ſo heauie? where no other hope was left? where he liued as it pleaſed another man? and that againe to, where once to doubt of the fidelitie of his hoaſt, might be imputed to him for the greateſt treacherie? So theſe moſt valiant ſouldiors, the poore princes faithfull followers, neuer again to ſee one another, are diſperſed into diuers countrey villages, and beſtowed where the Perſians thought good. Not many daies after, at a time pickt out for the purpoſe, they in number few, and diſperſed in a ſtrange countrey, were incloſed by many and ſlaine: their horſes, armour, apparell, and whatſoeuer elſe, became a prey vnto the murtherers. At the ſame inſtant was *Baiazet* and his ſonnes caſt in bonds alſo, and that to his greater griefe as many report, taken as he was ſitting merrily at dinner at the kings table. The Perſian king ſeemed to haue foreſeene much in this his hard dealing with *Baiazet*: as if that he, being a valiant and couragious yong prince, and much better ſouldior than his brother, ſhould haue ſucceeded his father in his empire, much trouble and perill might haue growen thereby, both to himſelfe and his kingdome: And that it ſtood farre better with the ſafetie of his eſtate, that *Selymus* (a man wholy giuen to voluptuouſneſſe and eaſe) ſhould raigne ouer the Turkes; in whoſe time he might as it were promiſe vnto himſelfe all peace and ſecuritie: and therefore it was thought that he would neuer let *Baiazet* goe aliue out of his hand, but rather make him away in priſon, as if he had there died for melancholy and griefe. Well he was aſſured, that after he had ſlaine his followers, and impriſoned himſelfe and his ſonnes, hee would neuer be friends

Tamas the Perſia king in feare of Baiazet.

Baiazet his followers diſperſed and ſlaine.

Baiazet impriſoned.

A friends with him that had ſo notably wronged him.

Baiazet thus ſhamefully impriſoned, meſſengers ran continually too and fro betwixt the two old princes, *Solyman* and *Tamas*. Amongſt the reſt, the Perſian king ſent a ſolemne embaſſadour vnto the Turke with preſents, namely curious tents, coſtly carpets, an Alcaron containing the myſteries of their ſuperſtition, and certaine ſtrange beaſts. The cauſe of his comming was pretended to be, for a reconciliation to be made betweene *Solyman* and his ſonne; which embaſſadour was honourably entertained and feaſted by the great Baſſaes. Now vvas poore *Baiazet* in ſmall hope of life, his cruell father ſtill craving to haue him deliuered into his hands to be ſlaine: and the Perſian yet denying to deliuer him, and ſeeming to defend him, but not (as was thought) altogither faithfully. *Solyman* left no meanes vnattempted to haue wrung him from
B the Perſian; ſometimes he ſpake him faire, putting him in mind of his league, wherein it vvas agreed, That they ſhould both haue the ſame friends and the ſame enemies: otherwhile he terrified him with great words, and denouncing of vvar, except he would deliuer him his ſonne: he furniſhed with ſtrong garriſons all the frontiers of his dominion towards PERSIA: he filled all MESOPOTAMIA and the banks of the riuer Euphrates with ſouldiors, eſpecially vvith them of his owne guard, and ſuch as he had before vſed in the battell againſt *Baiazet*; ouer vvhom commanded *Mehemet Baſſa* the third of the Viſier Baſſaes, and the Beglerbeg of GRECE (for *Selymus* vvas ſoone wearie of the field, and ſo betime returned home:) he alſo incited the Georgian people to take vp armes againſt the Perſians, vvho vviſely anſwered, That they had not ſuch
C confidence in their own ſtrength, as to prouoke king *Tamas*; but let *Solyman* himſelfe come with his armie, and when they ſaw him preſent in the field, then they knew vvhat they had to doe, and that he ſhould then well ſee, that they vvanted neither diſcretion nor valour. And becauſe he vvould leaue nothing vnproued, he made ſhew as if he vvould in perſon himſelfe haue gone to ALEPPO in SYRIA, and ſo haue on that ſide inuaded the Perſian: neither vvas the Perſian king altogither out of feare, hauing to his coſt many times proued what *Solyman* was able to do. But the vnwillingneſſe of the ſouldiors, and their minds altogither eſtranged from that vvarre, eaſily ſtaied the raging Turke: they deteſted that war and forſooke their enſignes, a great number of vvhom (eſpecially horſemen) without leaue of their captaines returned to CONSTANTI-
D NOPLE; and being commaunded againe to the campe, went indeed, but with ſuch countenance and cheere, as well declared how they were affected, and what they would do if occaſion ſerued for them to reuolt.

The Perſian king ſendeth embaſſadors with preſents to Solyman.

For vvhich cauſe, after that *Solyman* perceiued that *Baiazet* could not aliue be got from the Perſian (excuſing himſelfe by feare of reuenge by him whom he had ſo grieuouſly offended, if he ſhould by any meanes eſcape:) he thought it beſt to follow that which was next, and to haue him there ſlaine, which he was in good hope to compaſſe; and the rather, for that the Perſian had but lately written vnto him, That he could not but much maruel, to ſee him deale ſo ſlenderly in a matter of ſo great importance; That he on his part had ſent him diuers embaſſadors, and that he on the other ſide had ſent him nothing but common meſſengers with papers, vvhich cauſed him to thinke that he made no great account of the matter: wherefore he ſhould doe well, to ſend vnto him men of account and place, vvith whom he might conferre and conclude alſo ac-
E cording to the waightineſſe and exigence of the cauſe: beſides that (he was as he ſaid) not a little in his debt, for that *Baiazet* and his followers had beene vnto him no ſmall charge, before hee could get him into his power: all which it vvere good reaſon that he ſhould haue conſideration of. Whereby *Solyman* perceiued, that money was the thing the Perſian king ſought after: and therefore rather than he would in an vnfit time of his life intangle himſelfe in a dangerous and vnneceſſarie warre, he determined by the councell of his Baſſaes, rather with mony than with the ſword to fight with the Perſian king. Hereupon was *Haſſan Aga* (one of the chiefe gentlemen of his chamber) appointed embaſſador into PERSIA, with whom was ioined the Baſſa of MARAS, a man both for his age and place, reuerend: who departing with a large commiſſi-
F on almoſt in the depth of Winter, with great ſpeed and wonderfull toile, by thoſe long and difficult waies, arriued at laſt at CASBIN the ſeat of the Perſian king, hauing by the way loſt diuers of their ſeruants and followers. Being come to the court, the firſt thing they deſired, was to ſee *Baiazet*, whom they found ſhut vp in a cloſe priſon, pale and wan as a man forlorne, with his haire and beard ſo long and ouergrowne, as that he was not to be knowne before he was new trimmed; which done, then appeared the liuely reſemblance of his wonted countenance & fa-

The cauſe why the Perſian king would by no meanes let Baiazet go out of his hands.

The miſerable eſtate of Baiazet

uour, ſo that *Haſſan* verily knew it to be him: for he had been brought vp with him of a child in the court, and for that cauſe eſpecially had *Solyman* ſent him thither to be aſſured that it was he. G

The agreement betweene the Perſian king & Solyman for the deſtruction of Baiazet.

At length after long diſcourſe and conference betweene the king and the embaſſadours, it was agreed vpon, that the king ſhould receiue from *Solyman*, full recompence of all the charges he had been at, and of the harmes by him ſuſtained ſince the comming of *Baiazet* into PERSIA, with ſuch farther reward as ſo great a good turne deſerued: which things performed, that then it ſhould be in *Solymans* power to haue *Baiazet* made away. With this newes *Haſſan* poſteth to his maſter at CONSTANTINOPLE, who forthwith cauſed the promiſed reward, togither with ſuch charges as the Perſian king demaunded, to be made readie, and with a ſafe conuoy to be ſent vnto the borders of PERSIA, where they were of the Perſians receiued. Preſently after, returneth *Haſſan* the appointed executioner of the vnfortunat *Baiazet*: for ſo *Solyman* had ſtraightly charged him, to ſtrangle him with his owne hands. Which thing this new made hangman accordingly performed, and with a bowſtring ſtrangled the vnfortunat prince; who is reported to haue requeſted of the executioner, but that he might ſee his children before he died, & take of them his laſt farewell: vvhich poore requeſt could not be granted, but he forthwith commanded to die. This was the wofull end of the vnluckie attempts of *Baiazet*, a prince of far more worth than was *Selymus* his brother, who in ſeeking to ſhun the death he feared, haſted the ſame before his time. Such as was the fathers end, was alſo the end of his foure ſonnes, *Omer*, *Amurat*, *Selym*, and *Muhamet*: of whom the three eldeſt were ſtrangled at CASBIN vvith their father, vvhoſe dead bodies togither vvith his, vvere ſolemnly brought to SEBASTIA and there buried. The youngeſt but new borne left at AMASIA, and ſent by his grandfather to PRVSA (as is before ſaid) to be there nurſed; vvas novv vpon the death of his father, commaunded by his ſaid grandfather to be ſtrangled alſo. The eunuch ſent by *Solyman* to haue done the deed, and loth to do it himſelfe, tooke with him one of the porters of the court, a deſperat, and otherwiſe a hard hearted ruffian, a man thought fit to haue performed any villanie: he comming into the chamber where the child lay, and fitting the bowſtring to the childs necke to haue ſtrangled it, the innocent babe ſmiled vpon him, & lifting it ſelfe vp as well as it could, with open armes offered to haue embraced the villaine about the necke and kiſſed him. Which guiltleſſe ſimplicitie ſo vvounded the ſtonie hearted man, that he vvas not able to performe the intended butcherie of the poore and ſimple child, but fell downe in a ſwoune, and there lay for dead. The eunuch ſtanding vvithout the doore, maruelling at his long, ſtay, goes in, and finding the ruffian lying along vpon the ground, vvith cruell hand performed that the other could not find in his heart to do; & ſo ſtrangled the guiltleſſe child as had been giuen him in charge. Whereby it euidently appeared, that it was not the mercie or compaſſion of *Solyman*, that ſo long cauſed the guiltleſſe infant to be ſpared; but rather the opinion generally receiued amongſt the Turks, who meaſuring all things by the good or bad ſucceſſe, referre all things that fall out well vnto God as the author thereof, be they neuer ſo vngratiouſly begun: and therefore ſo long as it was yet vncertaine vvhat ſucceſſe the attempts of *Baiazet* would haue, *Solyman* ſpared the infant, leaſt vpon his fathers good hap, he might ſeeme to haue ſtriuen againſt the will of God. But now that his father was dead, and his quarrell by the euill ſucceſſe thereof condemned as it were by the ſentence of the Almightie, he thought it not good longer to ſuffer him to liue, leaſt of an euill bird might come an euill chicke. I had ſometime (ſaith the reporter of this hiſtorie) great reaſoning with my Chiaus about this matter: for falling into talke with him of *Baiazet*, he began bitterly to inuay againſt him for taking vp armes againſt his brother. Whereunto (ſaith this authour) I replied, That in mine opinion he was worthie both to be pitied & pardoned, foraſmuch as he vvas of neceſſitie enforced either to take vp armes, or elſe ſhortly after to yeeld himſelfe to the ſlaughter. But he ſtill exclaiming againſt him, I ſaid vnto him, You blame poore *Baiazet* of great vvickedneſſe, for bearing armes againſt his brother: but *Selymus Solymans* father you blame not, who vpon like occaſion tooke vp armes both againſt his father and his brethren; yet he therein did nothing amiſſe, nor in your judgement blame worthie. And rightly, ſaith the *Chiaus*, for the euent of the matter ſhevveth ſufficiently, that that which he did, vvas done by the appointment of God, and that he was from heauen predeſtinate thereunto: whereas in *Baiazet* the euent ſheweth the cleane contrarie. So that which falleth out well, be it by neuer ſo wicked meanes compaſſed or brought to paſſe, they take it as done according to the will of God; but if it fall out othervviſe, they iudge it as a thing condemned by God himſelfe: depending wholy vpon the good or bad

Baiazet and his foure ſonnes ſtrangled.

H

I

The rare force of innocencie.

K

L

M

euent

A euent of things, and therefore iudging them to be well done or otherwise.

This yeare 1558 *Charles* the fift that noble emperour (of whom we haue in the course of this historie so often spoken) who wearie of the world had two yeares before deliuered all his hereditarie kingdomes and principalities to his sonne *Philip*, did now the 24 of Februarie, on which day he was borne, by his embassadours solemnly sent for that purpose, resigne that empire with all the honours and titles therof vnto his brother king *Ferdinand*, requesting the princes electors to confirme the same vnto him, which they did the 13 of March next following. So liuing as a priuat gentleman in that solitarie life wherunto he had to the wonder of the world certain yeres before retired himselfe from all worldly affaires, the 21 day of September following died of a feauer, when he had liued 58 years, and thereof raigned 39: a man no doubt to be worthily ac-
B counted amongst the greatest Christian emperours that liued before him. About which time also died his two sisters, *Marie* the queene of Hvngarie, and *Elenor* the French queene, both ladies of great honour. 1558 *Charles the emperor resigneth the empire to his brother Ferdinand, & shortly after dyeth.*

The knights of Malta, who of long had beene suters to the great Bishop and the king of
Spaine for the recouerie of Tripolis in Barbarie, about nine yeares before taken from
them by the Turkes; at which time they also surprised the Island of Zerbi, vpon the coast of
Barbarie betwixt Tripolis and Tvnes, from whence they much troubled the Christians,
trauelling by those seas: had now at length so much preuailed, that the king commaunded a
great fleet to be now forthwith made readie in September in the yeare 1559 to meet togither in
Sicilia, and from thence to go directly against the enemie by Malta: Vnto which fleet, the
C great bishop, the duke of Florence, and the knights of Malta, with many other valiant
men out of diuers parts of Christendome, ioined their forces also; so that at length there was a
hundred gallies and ships met togither vnder the conduct of *Andreas Gonzaga* the Generall.
But whilest this fleet from diuers places was long in comming thither, the duke of Medina
Cœli, came before with part of the fleet to Malta, and in the hauen of Marza Moxet
expected the comming of the rest, who about the end of the yeare came thither. But whilest
they were wintered, expecting the Spring, many of the souldiors fell sicke and died. At length
the time of the yeare fit for their setting forward, being come, the captaines consulted among
themselues, Whether they should first set vpon Tripolis, or the Island of Zerbi, otherwise
called Mening. The knights of Malta being of opinion, That it were better first to besiege
D Tripolis, and that with all speed, before *Dragut* should come thither to furnish it with souldi-
ors and prouision. Others thought it better first to inuade the Island of Zerbi, where the armie
might be relieued with plentie of all things necessarie, and from whence they might at all times 1560
of danger in safetie retire; and from thence afterwards as time should serue to go to Tripolis,
Which vnfortunat counsell was by the greater part agreed vpon. Wherefore in Februarie the
yeare following they departed from Malta, and sailed directly to Zerbi. In the meane time
Dragut the most famous pyrat of that time amongst the Turkes, and Gouernour of Tripolis,
was come thither with eight hundred of the Turks Ianizaries, & had notably strengthened the
citie with men, victual, and new fortifications; and presently sent messengers to *Solyman* at Con-
E stantinople, to certifie him of the arriuall of the Christian fleet in Affricke. But the Chri-
stians comming to the Island of Zerbi, were at the first landing encountered by the Moores,
whom they repulsed, and so at pleasure landed. This Island is not farre from the maine, here and
there full of bogs and marishes, other riuer hath it none, and in the middest is somewhat hillie.
It was inhabited with about thirtie thousand men, which dwelt in low cottages, simply appar-
relled: yet is the island reasonable fertile, yeelding dates, oliues, barley, mill, and such like. When
the Christians were there landed, they sent for *Caramanus*, a poore king amongst the Moores
(from whom *Dragut* had before taken that Island) to vse his counsell for their better proceeding
in that war. In the meane time they agreed, with eight thousand men to besiege the strongest
castle in the Island: in going whereunto the Spaniards went formost, the Germans next, & last
of all the Italians. By the way as they went they light vpon ten thousand Moores, which lay in
F ambush in a wood to haue vpon the sudden set vpon them vnawars; but being discouered, and
seuen hundred of them slaine in skirmish by the Spaniards, the rest fled. So comming to the ca-
stle, they planted their batterie, and laid hard siege vnto it. The captain of the castle finding him-
selfe too weake long to hold out, fled secretly with his Turks, leauing the castle for the Moores
to defend; who vpon condition that they might in safetie depart, yeelded the castle to the Spani-

1559 *The Christian princes set out a fleet for the recouerie of Tripolis in Barbary*

The Christian fleet arriueth at the Island of Zerbi.

The castle of Zerbi taken by the Christians.

ards: for keeping whereof, *Varona* and *Cerda*, two Spaniſh captaines, were there left with their companies. Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Carauanus* the Moore king came to the campe of the Chriſtians and there talked with the Generall, in whoſe hoarie countenance reſted a reuered maieſtie, his apparrell was after the Moores faſhion of white linnen, with him came alſo the king of TVNES his ſonne. In talking with the Generall, his manner was to ſit flat vpon the ground, and wiſely diſcourſed how the Turks were to be remooued out of AFFRICKE. But in the middeſt of theſe diſcourſes, when ſuch a thing vvas leaſt feared, ſuddenly a pinnace brought newes from ſea, That *Piall Baſſa* the Turkes great Admirall was comming thither with a great fleet of 85 gallies, and that moe were dayly repairing vnto him on euery ſide, which was indeed true. For *Solyman* vnderſtanding from *Dragut* the arch pyrat, that Iſland to be by the Chriſtians now poſſeſſed and fortified, thought it not (in his ſo great power and flouriſhing eſtate) to ſtand with his honour to ſuffer, but rather to giue aid vnto the Moores of that Iſland, a people agreeing in religion with himſelfe: and therfore commanded *Piall Baſſa* his Admirall to take in hand that expedition. Who thereupon rigged vp a great fleet well appointed and ſtrongly manned, with a number of the Turks beſt and moſt approued ſouldiors, aſwel Ianizaries as others: yet all both doubtfull and fearefull of the long iourney, as alſo of the fame of the enemies with whom they were to encounter: for why the Turkes had conceiued a great opinion of the valour of the Spaniards, as knowing great vvarres both of auncient and latter times to haue been by that nation (to the immortall praiſe therof) moſt happilie performed: they remembred well *Charles* the fift, and dayly heard much of king *Philip*, the heire both of his fathers vertues & kingdomes; which made them ſo carefull, that many of them before their ſetting forth (as in times of greateſt danger) made their wils, & ſo departed from CONSTANTINOPLE, taking their leaue of their friends, as if they ſhould neuer haue thither returned againe. So that all the citie was in a confuſed feare: neither was there any man whether he went or ſtaied, that hung not in ſuſpence with the doubtfull expectation of the euent of that war. Howbeit, *Piall* vvith this great fleet vvith long ſayling and a proſperous wind was at length come well neere as farre as MALTA, and knowledge thereof (as is aforeſaid) giuen vnto the Chriſtian fleet at ZERBI. With which vnexpected newes the Chriſtians there were not a little troubled: neuertheleſſe they fortified the caſtle with new fortifications and bulwarkes, and fell to agreement with the principall man amongſt the Moores of the Iſland (who commaunded the reſt, and had before pluckt down the enſignes of *Dragut*, and ſet vp the king of SPAINES) That he would yearely pay vnto the king of SPAINE (as he had before vnto *Dragut*) ſix thouſand crowns, one cammel, foure oſtriches, foure ſparrow haukes, and foure blew faulcons: a tribute fit for ſuch an Iſland.

Piall Baſſa Solymans Admirall ſent to remoue the Chriſtians out of Zerbi.

But ſhortly after, *viz.* the ninth of May, the Great maſter of MALTA by another pinnace gaue the Chriſtians at ZERBI againe to vnderſtand, That the Turks fleet vvas euen now at hand, and alreadie departed from the Iſland of GOZO, vvell appointed & ſtrongly manned: and that therfore he aduiſed them with ſpeed to hoiſe ſaile, and to get them to ſome place of more ſaftie, or els to come to him to MALTA, for feare of being by ſo great a power of the Turkes ſuddenly oppreſſed. Whereupon *Iohn Andreas Auria* the the Admirall ſent vnto the Generall, requeſting him preſently to come aboord, that ſo they might before the comming of the Turks fleet retire themſelues to ſome place of more aſſurance. But he for all that ſtaied ſtill at the caſtle, where the Chriſtians had built foure ſtrong bulwarks: whereof they had named one *Auriaes*, another *Gonzagaes*, the third the Viceroyes, and the fourth the Knights, not yet all perfectly finiſhed: as for the caſtle it ſelfe, they called it *Philip-Alcazer*, by the name of the King. But whileſt the Generall is thus buſie, and vainly hopeth to keepe both the caſtle and his ſhips, he the next day deſcrying from farre the comming of the Turks great fleet, haſted with the Admirall to be gone: and putting twice to ſea, was both times by a contrarie wind driuen again into the hauen, ſo that he and the Admirall had much adoe in time to get themſelues into the caſtle: for the wind was ſo fauourable for the Turks, and brought them ſo faſt on, that the Chriſtians diſmaied with their ſudden comming, knew not now well what to doe or which way to turne themſelues. But by good hap the greater part of the ſhips and foureteen gallies were got out and gone the night before, and the Great maſter had in Aprill called home his gallies, wherewith and ten others of his owne he afterwards defended the frontiers of his Iſland. As for the reſt of the fleet that ſtaied for the Generall and the Admirall, ſome few gallies eſcaped by flight, other ſome ran themſelues aground, ten of which were preſently taken by the Turkes, as were the reſt alſo that vvere left, although

Part of the Chriſtian fleet oppreſſed at Zerbi by the ſuddencomming of the Turkes.

A although they for a while did what they might to haue ſaued themſelues. The night following the Viceroy and the Admirall ſecertly ſtole out of the caſtle, and ſo by good fortune in two ſmal frigots fled to MALTA. *Caramanus* alſo the Moore king, with the prince of TVNIS, got them away into the maine. *Gonzaga* the Viceroy departing from MALTA in SICILIA, prouided as he might for the ſafetie of that countrie. *Auria* in the meane time gathered togither the remainder of the diſperſed fleet, hauing loſt in this vnfortunat expedition ſeuenteene gallies, with a great part of the ſhips.

Now in the caſtle was left as Generall *Don Aluarus de Sandes*, a valiant gentleman of great ſpirit and long experience, with fiue thouſand footmen, ſome Germanes, ſome Italians, but for the moſt part Spaniards: beſides a thouſand other that vvere no ſoldiors. So that the Turks be- *The caſtle of Zerbi beſieged by the Turks.*
B ginning to beſiege the ſame the ſeuenteenth of May, were by them many times notably encountered, and in their aſſaults repulſed. Vnto this ſiege at length came *Dragut* the pyrat, who with fifteene great pieces which he brought with him from TRIPOLIS, encreaſed the furie of the Turks batterie. Neither were the Chriſtians in the meane time wanting vnto themſelues, hauing in the caſtle fortie great pieces of artillerie, wherewith they ſlew a number of the Turkes and Moores: and ſometimes ſallying out, fought with them hand to hand; and hauing ſlaine and wounded many, retired againe into the caſtle. In this manner the ſiege continued three months with many an hot and deſperat skirmiſh: during which time, nothing more troubled the defendants than thirſt in that hot and drie climat and intemperat time of the yere: for why in the caſtle there was but one great ceſtrene, which although it yeelded ſome good ſtore of water, yet
C was it not ynough to ſuffice ſo great a multitude, but was by meaſure ſtil ſparingly giuen out vnto the ſouldiors ſo far as it would ſerue, no man hauing more allowed him than would ſuffice to keepe him aliue: the quantitie whereof ſome augmented by diſtilling of the ſea water, and mingling it with their allowance, and ſo wel eaſed their thirſt, vntil ſuch time as hauing ſpent all their wood, they wanted that poore help alſo. There might a man haue ſeen many poore ſoules lying vpon the ground halfe dead, gaping and ſtill crying out nothing but vvater, vvater; into whoſe drie mouths, if any man vpon compaſſion vouchſafed to poure a little water, they as men reuiued therewith would preſently ſit vp, vntill that for thirſt they fell downe againe, and ſo at length as men roſted gaue vp the ghoſt. Thus many died daily, beſide them whom the chance of warre and other diſeaſes without helpe conſumed in ſo great a diſtreſſe. *Don Aluarus* the gouer- *Don Aluarus with the reſt of the cheefe commaunders taken priſoners.*
D nour conſidering the great extremitie they were now brought vnto, attempted with *Don Sanchius de Leyua* Admirall of the Neapolitane gallies, *Bellingerius de Requeſenes* Admirall of the Sicilian gallies, & ſome others by night to haue eſpcaped away into a gallie which lay vnder the caſtle, but in doing therof were perceiued by the Turks, and ſo all all taken. Wherupon ſuch ſoldiors as ſickneſſe and the enemies ſword had yet left aliue, pinched with extreme neceſſitie, forſaken of their beſt captaines, and out of all hope of reliefe alſo, couenanting their liues only with the enemie, yeelded themſelues into moſt miſerable captiuitie. In this vnfortunat expedition pe- *The caſtle of Zerbi yeelded vnto the Turks.*
riſhed about eighteene thouſand Chriſtians, ſome with ſickneſſe, ſome drowned, but moſt ſlain, beſide the loſſe of a great part of the fleet alſo.

Of this victorie *Piall* ſent newes by one of his gallies to CONSTANTINOPLE, which for the
E more manifeſting thereof, dragged at the poupe thereof a great enſigne of the Chriſtians, with the picture of Chriſt crucified therein. Which was no ſooner come into the hauen, but that the rumour of the ouerthrow of the Chriſtians was forthwith blowne thorough the whole citie, the Turks exceedingly reioicing one vvith another for the news of ſo great a victorie: yea many of them not ſo contented, came by heaps to the gate of the houſe vvhere the emperor *Ferdinands* embaſſador lay, and there meeting with his ſeruants, by way of diriſion asked them, if they had any brethren, kinſmen, or friends in the Spaniſh fleet at ZERBI, for if you haue (ſaid they) you ſhall ſhortly ſee them here. Beſides that, they with many vvords moſt inſolently bragged of their owne valour, and ſcorned the cowardiſe of the Chriſtians, asking vvho vvere able to withſtand them, now that the Spaniards was alſo ouercome. All vvhich vvith much more the embaſſadors
F men with great griefe vvere enforced to heare, but there vvas no remedie, ſeeing God had ſo appointed it. Shortly after, in September the victorious fleet returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, *The Turks with victorie returne to Conſtantinople.*
dragging vvith it the priſoners, ſpoiles, and gallies of the Chriſtians, a ſight no leſſe pleaſant vnto the Turks, than heauie vnto the Chriſtians: and that night it lay at anker neere vnto the rocks in the face of the citie, vvith the greater pompe and glorie to come the next day into the hauen. At

which time *Solyman* himselfe was come downe into a gallerie neere vnto the hauens mouth, adioining vnto his garden, the better to see the comming in of the fleet, and the Christian captains set there to shew vpon the poupe of the Admirall gallie, namely, *Don Aluarus de Sandes*, *Don Sanchius de Leyua*, and *Don Bellingerus de Requesenes*, all of late great commaunders: as for the Christian gallies all disarmed and vnrigged, so to seeme the more contemptible in comparison of the Turks, they were towed at the taile of the Turkes gallies. They which then saw *Solymans* countenance, perceiued not in him any signe at all of any insolent ioy. I my selfe (saith * *Busbequius*, then the emperour *Ferdinands* embassadour there) saw him two daies after going to the church with the same countenance he had alwaies, with the same seueritie and grauitie, as if this victorie had nothing concerned him, nor any thing chanced strange or vnexpected: so capable was the great heart of that old sire of any fortune, were it neuer so great, and his mind so setled, as to receiue so great applause & reioicing vvithout mouing. Within a few daies after the Christian captiues (before almost starued with hunger) were brought to the court: many of vvhom could scarce stand vpon their legs, some others for weaknes fell downe and fainted, and other-some died outright: they were all scornfully led in triumph, vvith their Armes disordered and scornfully put vpon them: the Turks in the meane time insulting round about them, promising vnto themselues the empire of the whole vvorld: and vainly asking, What enemie they were to feare, now that the Spaniard was ouercome. *Aluarus Sandes*, as chiefe of all the prisoners, being brought into the Diuano before the Visier Bassaes, and demaunded by *Rustan Bassa*, What his master meant, being not able to defend his own, to inuade other mens? answered, That it beseemed not him to iudge thereon; and himselfe to haue done but his dutie, vvith such faithfulnes as vvas meet to put in execution what he vvas commaunded by his lord, although he had no good fortune therin. After that, be besought the Bassaes vpon his knee, to speak for him vnto *Solyman*, for that he had at home a poore wife, vvith certaine small children, for vvhom he requested him to spare him. Whereunto *Rustan Bassa* (contrarie to his manner) courteously answered, his soueraigne to be of a mild and gentle nature, and that he vvas in good hope his pardon might bee of him obtained: so vvas he commaunded away vnto *Caradines* his castle, towards the blacke sea. But he vvas not gone farre, but that he was called backe againe; for that the great Chamberlain, a man in great credit with *Solyman*, had not as yet seene him: for which cause he was sent for backe againe; vvherewith he was not a little troubled, fearing least the Bassaes hauing changed their minds, would haue put him to death. The rest of the captiues of the better sort vvere committed to the castle of PERA, and amongst them *Don Sanchius de Leyua*, with his two base sonnes, and also *Don Bellingerus Requesenes*: which two great men, with *Don Aluarus de Sandes*, vvere neuertheless afterwards with much adoe and almost beyond all hope, at the request of the emperour, and by the dexteritie of his embassadour, by *Solyman* set at libertie; although he had before denied them vnto *Saluiat* the French kings embassadour, who had beene an earnest intercessour for them. Yet before they were deliuered out of prison, the Muphti or Turkes great priest vvas asked his opinion, Whether it were lawfull for a greater number of Turkes to exchange a few Christian captiues (for the embassadour beside the rewards he had promised vnto the Bassaes, to further the matter, had also vndertaken, that fortie common prisoners of the Turkes should be set at libertie for them) whereunto the Muphti answered, That the doctors of their law vvere of diuers opinions concerning that question, some saying that it was lawfull, and some not; howbeit as then it was by him resolued vpon vnto the more fauourable part, and the exchange allowed.

Augerius Busbequius legationis Turcicæ epist. 4.

The miserie of the Christian captiues.

There were among the prisoners taken at ZERBI, besides these noblemen of whom we haue before spoken, two other noble gentlemen right honourably borne, *Don Iohn* of CARDONA *Don Bellinger* his sonne in law, and *Don Gasto* the duke of MEDINA his sonne, to whom yet but a youth his father neuertheless had giuen an honourable place in the armie. Of these two *Don Iohn* had wisely taken order for a great summe of mony to be left in the Island of CHIO, by the way as the Turkes fleet went to CONSTANTINOPLE, from whence he afterwards in safetie got into SPAINE. But *Gasto* was by *Piall Bassa* (vpon hope of a great ransome) purposely hid out of the way, which had like to haue wrought his destruction: for *Solyman* hauing gotten an inckling thereof by the instigation of *Rustan*, laboured for nothing more than to haue *Gasto* found out, so to haue a more iust occasion for the putting of *Piall* to death, being taken tardie in so manifest a fault. But all that labour was spent in vaine, *Gasto* being by death taken away, but whether

A ther by the plague(as ſome reported)or by *Piall* his meanes (as it was more like) leaſt the truth ſhould be found out,is vncertaine. But certaine it was,that being with great care ſought for by the duke his fathers ſeruants,he could neuer be heard of more: So that it was thought *Piall* for the ſafegard of his owne life,not to haue ſpared *Gaſto* his priſoners life. Who neuertheleſſe for a long time liued in great feare,and not daring to come to CONSTANTINOPLE, tooke occaſion with a few gallies to wander about amongſt the iſlands of ÆGEVM,as if he had there ſomething to doe: but indeed ſo ſhunning the ſight of his angrie lord,for feare he ſhould haue bene compelled in bonds to haue anſwered the matter. Vntill at length he appeaſed at the requeſt of *Suleiman Baſſa* (the eunuch and *Solymans* great chamberlain)and of *Selymus*, *Solymans* ſon, granted him his pardon in theſe words well worth the marking,out of the mouth of an infidell prince:

Piall in diſgrace with Solyman, ſhunneth to come to Conſtantinople.

B *Well haue hee from mee pardon and forgiueneſſe for ſo great an offence: but let God the moſt iuſt reuenger of all villanies take of him due puniſhment after this life.* So fully hee ſeemed to bee perſuaded that no euill deed ought to remaine without puniſhment, either in this life or in the life to come.

There was in this expedition a Colonell of the Turkes well acquainted with *Busbequius* the emperours embaſſador, then lying at CONSTANTINOPLE: into whoſe hands(in that diſcomfiture of the Chriſtians) by chance was come the Imperiall enſigne of the gallies of NAPLES; wherein within the compaſſe of an Eagle,were contained the armes of all the prouinces belonging to the kingdome of SPAINE. Which faire enſigne the embaſſadour vnderſtanding him to purpoſe to giue for a preſent vnto *Solyman*, thought good to preuent the matter,and to

One of the imperiall enſignes of Charles the fift redeemed frō the Turke.

C get it from him: which he eaſily obtained,by ſending him two ſutes of ſilke (ſuch as the Turks make reckoning of) for it: ſo prouiding that one of the Imperiall enſignes of *Charles* the fift, ſhould not to the eternall remembrance of that ouerthrow,remaine ſtill with the enemies of the Chriſtian religion. This ſo miſerable a calamitie receiued by the Chriſtians at ZERBI,made that iſland,before little or nothing ſpoken of,to be euer ſince famous.

About this time to end this vnfortunat yeare withall,the fiue and twentith day of Nouember died *Andreas Auria*,(that ſecond *Neptune*)being ninetie foure yeres old: a man in his time of great fame,and of the greateſt princes of that age had in no ſmall reputation, but eſpecially of *Charles* the fift, in whoſe ſeruice hee did much for the benefit of the Chriſtian common weale, being for moſt part imploied in his greateſt warres againſt the Turks and Moores. Yet amongſt

The death of the noble Andreas Auria.

D all the notable things done to his immortall glory,the kindneſſe by him ſhewed vnto his natiue countrey was greateſt; which oppreſſed by the French, hee ſet at libertie: and when he might haue taken vpon him the ſole gouernment therof(as had diuers others before him) moderating his deſires,and reſpecting the only good thereof,appeaſed the great diſſention that had of long raigned therein;and eſtabliſhed ſuch a forme of gouerment, confirmed with ſo good and wholſome lawes and orders(no mans liberty infringed)as that it hath euer ſince to his eternal praiſe in great wealth,ſtate,and libertie,thereby flouriſhed. Vnto whoſe remembrance (for that wee haue before of him much ſpoken in the courſe of this hiſtorie) I thought it not amiſſe to ioyne the liuely counterfeit of his reuerend aged countenance, by nature framed anſwerable vnto his noble vertues.

E

ANDREAS

Genua quem genuit, genui quam deinde viciſſim,
Auria qui merui Carolo ſub Cæſare quinto.
Turcarum terror, Piratarumq́ Subactor,
Barbara quem ſenſit tellus, & capta Thuniſſa,
Arx & Ahrodiſium, Moreaq́ vrbs celſa Corone,
Mors rapuit Luſtris decies prope quinque peractis.

L

As *Genua* did me beget, ſo I preſeru'd the ſame:
And ſeruing vnder *Charles* the fift, exalted haue my name.
A terrour to the Turkes I vvas, I brought the pyrats low:
And ſpoiling their Barbarian coaſt, made them my force to know
Faire TVNES and ſtrong APHRODISE, both by my helpe were woon:
And CORONE in MOREA, by me was ouerrun.
So hauing ſpent ninetie foure yeares in treading honours trace:
Full fraught with honour and with yeares, I ended haue my race.

1561 *A great ſhip-wracke.*

The Turks the yeare following, with their gallies robbed and ſpoiled diuers places vpon the M coaſts of ITALIE, SICILIE and MALTA: againſt whom *Phillip* king of SPAINE ſending forth his gallies by force of tempeſt loſt twentie fiue of them, the eighteenth day of September, togither with *Mendoza* admirall of that fleet.

Ferdinand the emperour, hauing with long ſute and much entreating obtained peace of *Solyman*

A *lyman*, and being now well ſtricken in yeares, and carefull both of the ſtate of the empire and of the aduauncement of his poſteritie, began to deale with the princes Electors for a choice to bee made of a king of the Romans; who after his death might without the trouble of GERMANIE, ſucceed him in the empire: commending vnto them his ſonne *Maximillian*, a prince of great hope, then king of BOHEMIA. Whereupon an aſſembly of the princes Electours was appointed to bee holden at FRANKFORD: who there meeting at the appointed time, with generall conſent the 24. day of Nouember in the yeare 1562, choſe *Maximilian* the emperours ſonne king of the Romans, and with all the accuſtomed ſolemnities crowned him: who alſo the yeare after was at PRESBVRG the eight of September with much ſolemnitie crowned king of HVNGARIE. Vnto this ſolemne aſſemblie of the empire at FRANKFORD, *Solyman* the Turkiſh emB perour ſent *Ibrahim Baſſa*, otherwiſe called *Abraham Strotzza* (a Polonian borne, of whom we haue before ſpoken) his embaſſadour with preſents and letters to *Ferdinand* the emperour, to confirme the peace for eight yeares betwixt them before concluded, who the ſeuenteenth day of Nouember in preſence of the emperour, the king of the Romans, and all the princes Electors, had audience: where, after much glorious ſpeech in ſetting forth his maſters greatneſſe, with his loue towards the emperour and his ſonne the new choſen king, as wiſhing vnto them all happineſſe, he deliuered his letters of credence vnto the emperor: the copy wherof I haue not thought amiſſe here to ſet downe, for that therein is notably to be ſeene the moſt inſolent pride of that barbarous prince, and miſerable eſtate of the rent kingdome of HVNGARIE, deuided as it were at his pleaſure betwixt him and the emperour.

1562

Maximilian choſen king of the Romans, & after crowned king of Hungarie.

Solyman by his embaſſador confirmeth a peace with Ferdinand the emperor for eight yeares.

C

I the lord of lords, ruler of the Eaſt and of the Weſt, who am of power to doe and not to doe whatſoeuer pleaſeth mee, lord of all GRÆCIA, PERSIA, *and* ARABIA, *commaunder of all things which can bee ſubiect to king and commaund, the great worthie of theſe times, and ſtrong champion of the moſt wide world, lord of all the white and blacke ſea, and of the holy citie of* MECHA *ſhining with the brightneſſe of God, and of the citie of* MEDINA, *and of the holy and chaſt citie of* IERVSALEM, *king of the moſt noble kingdome of* ÆGYPT, *lord of* IONIA, *and of the citie of* ATHENS, SENAV, *of the ſacred Temple of God,* ZABILON *and* BASSIO, RETHSAN *and* MAGODIM, *the ſeat and throne of the great king* Naſhin Rettam, *and lord of the iſland of* ALGIERS, *prince of the kingdomes of* TARTARIE, MESOPOTAMIA, MEDIA, *of the Georgians,* MOREA, ANATOLIA,
D ASIA, ARMENIA, WALACHIA, MOLDAVIA, *and of all* HVNGARIE, *and of many other kingdomes and territories, whereof I am Emperour; the moſt mightie Monarch Sultan* Solyman, *ſonne of the great Emperour Sultan* Selym, *who haue power from God to rule all people with a bridle, and ſtrength to breake open the gates and barres of all cities and ſtrong places: into whoſe mightie hand are deliuered all the ends of the world, none excepted. I the ruler of the Eaſt, from the Iſland of* ISBIN *vnto the fartheſt bounds of* AFFRICA, *whom God hath appointed a mightie warriour in the edge of the ſword: amongſt whoſe moſt mightie kingdomes the impregnable caſtle of* CESAREA *is reputed for the leaſt, and in whoſe hereditarie dominions the kingdome or empire of* Alexander *the Great is accounted as a trifle: with mee is the ſtrength of the whole world and vertue of the firmament. For as much as thou king* Ferdinand, *which art the mightie lord of Chriſtendome, and the choſen veſſell*
E *of the mightie Chriſtian faith, created and elected Emperour of the Romane people, of* BOHEMIA, VANDALIA, CRABATIA, *and many other countreyes king and lord &c. Not long ſince ſent vnto our court (which is the refuge of all kings, the protection and ſanctuarie of all that flie thereunto, and the throne of grace for all princes of theſe times which repaire vnto it) one* Augerius Buſbeck, *thy faithfull counſellour and embaſſadour, with letters of conſideration, to renew with vs a peace, and to enter into a further league and bond of amitie: which letters beare date the yeare from the prophet Ieſu (vpon whom and our prophet* Mahomet *reſt the brightneſſe and peace of God)* 1562, *the firſt day of Iune, requeſting of vs, That graunting you peace for eight yeares, wee would not with any hoſtilitie heereafter moleſt your cities, caſtles, countries, or ſubiects, but to ſuffer them to liue in ſecure peace*
F *and tranquilitie, &c. Vnto which your petition wee anſwere you, That from henceforth for the whole ſpace of eight yeares ſhall bee betwixt vs on both parts to bee continued a new, true, and firme league: of which agreement, peace, and confederation, theſe ſhall bee the conditions. Firſt, That you our beloued ſhall bee bound to ſend yearely to our court as a pledge of this league thirtie thouſand Hungarian ducketts, with that remainder which you owe vnto vs for the two yeares laſt paſt: for which wee promiſe vnto you, that wee from henceforth during this eight yeares leagne, will take no part either by way of hoſtili-*

Solymans proud letters to the emperour Ferdinand.

hoſtilitie or friendſhip with king Iohns ſonne, for as much as belongeth to his hereditarie countreyes, whether they bee in the hither part of HVNGARIE, or on the further ſide of TEISSE: all which for all that, by law of armes belong vnto vs. And the ſame king Iohns ſonne in time of this eight yeares league ſhall bee alſo bound in ſuch ſort to performe vnto vs his obedience, as that from henceforth it ſhall not bee lawfull for him to vſe any warre or hoſtilitie againſt you, neither to trouble your ſubiects with fire or ſword, nor to ſurpriſe your cities, caſtles, or townes, or by violence to take away or exact of your people or ſubiects, their ſheepe, their cattell, their goods, money, or reuenewes. We alſo our ſelues ſhall haue no right, nor take occaſion to driue away your people, to burne your countreyes, or carrie away any captiues: but rather in this eight yeares ſpace religiouſly keepe peace and concord with you. And vnder theſe conditions of peace ſhall alſo bee comprehended Michaell Balaſchus, Nicholas Bathor, with all their goods and territories, and diuers other ſuch like, which ſhall bee ſubiect vnto you and king Iohns ſonne. To bee briefe, if happily any of yours or king Iohns ſonnes ſubiects ſhall haue now before in time of warre thruſt one another out of his goods, lands, or poſſeſſions, whereof new quarrells or diſcord may ariſe; wee will and decree, That all ſuch controuerſies, quarrels and claimes, ſhall bee deferred vntill this definite time of the league expired. Beſide, if by chance any diſſention ſhall hereafter ariſe betwixt vs about our iuriſdiction, which can by no meanes bee compoſed and ordered; we will that yours ſhall in the meane time remaine as yours, and ours as ours, all contention and enmitie ſet apart: alſo many townes ſituat heere and there by Danubius and Tatta, ſhall be ſuffered to vſe the ſame law which they did in former time; ſo that the ſouldiors which are yet in garriſon in the caſtle of Tatta, ſhall haue no right to infeſt or vexe thoſe townes ſituate neere vnto Danubius. Furthermore, if after this peace concluded, any of your noblemen or gentlemen ſhall fortune to haue any of our noblemen by reuolt or other occaſion whatſoeuer, captiues, they ſhall diſmiſſe them and ſet them at libertie, to returne vnto their friends freely without hurt or ranſome; that ſo the concord and peace begun betwixt vs, may bee the more firmely kept, and our ſubiects liue in more ſecuritie. All and euery one of theſe things wee graunt and promiſe to bee of vs from henceforth vntill the end of the aforeſaid eight yeares, without all fraud or guile religiouſly obſerued and kept: and for that purpoſe haue cauſed theſe our letters of this peace and confederation to be publiſhed from our royall pallace: and moreouer, haue not onely prouided, that the copie of the ſame ſhould together with our edict bee proclaimed to all and euery the generalls, captaines, lieutenants of our armies both by ſea and land, in all the parts of our empire, and to all our mercinarie ſouldiers, but haue alſo ſtraightly commaunded, that it ſhall bee firmely and ſincerely kept. We will alſo, that this agreement of peace and amitie ſhall comprehend and concerne our two chiefe Gouernours or Vayuods of WALLACHIA and MOLDAVIA, ſo that none of your people of HVNGARIE, CRABATIA, SCLAVONIA, or other your countries or iſlands whatſoeuer, ſhall in any ſort bee moleſted or grieued by our ſubiects. And if it ſhall fortune that ſome ſhall on your part out of their caſtles ſet vpon our ſubiects, or by force take away their goods, the ſame men ſhall in any caſe bee bound to make thereof reſtitution. Alſo if any ſhall flie from vs, and carry away with them the money or goods of their maſters whom they ſerued, or if the like ſhall bee done by any of yours flying to vs, then the ſame goods on both parts are to be of right demaunded and recouered againe, and the fugitiues to the example of others to be corrected and puniſhed: foraſmuch as fugitiues goods of right appertaine vnto their lords and maſters. Furthermore it ſhall bee lawfull for your captaines and commaunders to fortifie or build caſtles, cities, or townes in the borders of HVNGARIE, and to put into the ſame victuall, armor, and ſuch like, but ſo that they doe none of theſe things out of their owne limits. And during the time of this league, it ſhall not bee lawfull to take or carrie away any of your ſubiects priſoners either in HVNGARIE or in other place of your iuriſdiction: which for all that, if it ſhall by any chance happen, that then ſuch captiues without delay bee ſuffered ſafely to returne home againe. Furthermore, whatſoeuer Chriſtian ſhall haue any buſineſſe to doe in our magnificent court or any part of our dominions, as are embaſſadours, officers, ſeruants, and ſuch others: vnto all theſe wee not onely graunt and permit, that they may come and goe about their buſineſſe, and ſo againe depart from our court or prouinces; but alſo haue willed and commaunded, them to bee well and courteouſly entreated by our ſubiects, and furthered with the interpretation of our language. And if it ſhall fortune any contention or diſcord to ariſe betwixt our ſubiects on either ſide, about the bounds and limitts of lands, or other ſuch like cauſes: ſuch controuerſies wee will to bee decided and determined by diſcreet and indifferent men on both parts; and the authors of ſuch diſcord and variance, to bee puniſhed as ſuſpected perſons and breakers of the league. Wee alſo prohibite thoſe skirmiſhes or combats, which were wont to bee ſometimes on both ſides made vpon the borders. And deſire, that the forme of this league and peace, and euery article thereof, may bee publickely

A publikely read and ſet vp in ſundrie places of your dominions; and commaundement giuen, that they may with due obedience and reuerence be obſerued and kept. Which wee likewiſe haue now before promiſed faithfully, and aſſuredly to performe: and your embaſſadour whom a few moneths agone you ſent vnto vs, in your name requeſted the ſame thing of vs, and hath with earneſt praiers moued vs by imperiall oath and theſe letters of credence, to witneſſe, that we did ratifie and confirme the ſame; as if wee our ſelues ſhould ſpeake to you in preſence. Wherefore we haue giuen to him theſe our letters of pacification to you directed, that your generals, ſouldiors, and ſubiects, may be bound alſo to obſerue and keepe all theſe things: wherefore, ſo long as nothing contrarie to this league ſhall be done on your part; ſo long in like manner, all theſe articles of peace ſhall be of me accepted and aſſured. For witneſſe and confirmation whereof, I ſweare this oath: By the true and liuing creator of heauen and earth, by the
B true ſignes of our great and reuerend prophet, by my imperiall power, and by my true faith; that nothing contrarie or repugning vnto the aforeſaid articles, conditions, and promiſes of the eight yeares league agreed vpon betwixt vs, ſhall be attempted or done by any our Gouernours, Generals, Vayuods, &c. Commaunding moreouer, all our ſworne gouernours of our moſt mightie empire, in WALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, and king Stephen himſelfe, and others which haue the gouernment of our empire confining vpon you, That they all and euerie of them as well as our ſelues, ſhall iuſtly, faithfully, and religiouſly, accept, reuerence, and keepe theſe conditions of peace, towards your ſubiects, cities, caſtles, townes, and other things appertaining to you; and in the leaſt thing, not to hurt, iniurie, or wrong any your ſubiects. In briefe, we ſhall as farre as our part concerneth vs, giue vnto this moſt mightie and great new made loue and friendſhip, ſo great honour, reuerence, and authoritie, that that
C which may euen in the leaſt things be had, ſhall not on our part be wanting. In token whereof, wee haue ſuffered certaine Chriſtian captiues, whom by your embaſſadour you requeſted to haue ſet at libertie, franckly to returne vnto you without raunſome; out of which captiuitie they could neuer haue beene redeemed, if in regard of this our amitie and friendſhip we had not granted them libertie: truſting that you will in like ſort ſet at libertie ſuch of ours as you haue captiues. Giuen at our imperiall pallace and ſeat in the moſt mightie citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, the firſt day of September, in the yeare of our great and reuerend prophet 969.

Preſents from Solyman to the emperour Ferdinand.

D The ſame embaſſadour, after he had deliuered theſe letters, preſented vnto the emperour the gifts he had brought from his Great maſter: which was two great cups of naturall chriſtall, curiouſly wrought, and ſet with ſtones of great price: a couragious Turkie horſe, with a ſaddle and trappings wrought with gold, and ſet with pretious ſtones, and garniſhed with chaines of pure gold: and foure of the faireſt camels that were to be got in all CONSTANTINOPLE. In deliuering of which preſents, the Baſſa made his excuſe, that the horſe and camels had loſt their beautie, being with foure moneths trauell from CONSTANTINOPLE, growne ſomewhat leane and wearie.

The death of the emperour Ferdinand.

1564. This peace thus concluded betwixt the emperour *Ferdinand* and *Solyman*, held firme vntill the death of *Ferdinand*, who about two yeares after in the yeare 1564 vpon S. *Iames* his day died, being ſixtie yeares old: whereof hee raigned as emperour not full ſeauen yeares. In whoſe place ſucceeded *Maximilian* his ſonne, before choſen king of the Romans. But immediatly af-

New troubles in Hungarie.

E ter the death of *Ferdinand*, the captaines on the frontiers of that part of HVNGARIE which was holden for the emperour on the one ſide, and the Turkes captaines with the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA on the other ſide, wearie of their eaſe, began contrarie to the forme of the league to ſurpriſe ſtrong holds and townes one in anothers confines, wherof enſued much trouble: The authour whereof was *Melchior Balas*, the emperours lieutenant in that part of HVNGARIE which bordereth vpon TRANSILVANIA, who firſt ſurpriſed certaine townes vpon the frontiers thereabouts: in reuenge whereof, the Vayuod ſuddenly ſet vpon SACKMAR, a town in the emperours territorie which he tooke, and therein *Balas* his wife and children. In deſpight whereof, *Balas* ranſacked and burnt DEBREZIN, a great towne of the Vayuods. But not long after, the Vayuod *Solymans* vaſſall, and aided by him with foure thouſand Turkes and three
F thouſand Moldauians, did much harme vpon the frontiers of that part of HVNGARIE which belonged to the emperour, and firſt tooke HADAD, and afterwards beſieged VNGAR. In requitall whereof, *Maximilian* the emperour ſent *Lazarus Suendi*, a valiant captaine, who with an armie of eight thouſand, beſieged the ſtrong caſtle of TOKAY, which he tooke the fift of Februarie, in the yeare 1565; and after that, tooke the rich towne of ERDEN. In the meane time *Solyman*, 1565

lyman,who had in himſelfe fully purpoſed to be reuenged of all theſe iniuries(as well appeared by that he did the yeare following) to ſtay the emperour from proceeding farther, vntill ſuch time as he were at better leiſure to be reuenged(for as then he was making great preparation for MALTA) ſent *Marcus Lilineſius* a renegat Tranſiluanian of CIBINIVM, his embaſſadour to *Maximilian*,to put him in remembrance of the league made with his father, and to wiſh him to haue regard how hee further proceeded to the breach thereof. Whereupon the emperour, becauſe he would not ſeeme vnwilling to hearken to peace, commanded his lieutenants and captaines no more to inuade TRANSILVANIA, or that part of HVNGARIE which the Turks held. Howbeit that,whileſt this embaſſadour was thus intreating of peace at VIENNA, the Baſſa of TEMESVVAR in the borders of TRANSILVANIA, made diuers incurſions into the borders of HVNGARIE,and with ſix thouſand ſouldiers beſieged the ſtrong caſtle of IVLA, and the Turkes in great number came daily into TRANSILVANIA. At which time alſo *Suendi* Generall of *Maximilian* his forces vpon the frontiers, by meſſengers ſent for that purpoſe, wiſhed him not to giue any credit vnto the Turks embaſſadour,who meaning nothing but warre, vnder the colour of peace,ſought nothing elſe but to take him vpon the ſudden vnprouided. Neither ceaſed theſe troubles thus,but daily grew from euill to worſe: for in Iune the Tranſiluanians beſieged ERDEN, before taken by the Imperials, and after two moneths ſiege had it yeelded vnto them. In the meane time, *Chernouich* the emperours embaſſadour to *Solyman* returned from CONSTANTINOPLE,aſſuring him,that the great Turke for all his faire ſhewes of peace, meant in deed nothing but warrs, for which he was(as he ſaid)making great preparation both by ſea and land. Wherupon the emperour began to raiſe new forces: which thing diuers noble men,both of GERMANIE and other places hearing of, came vnto him with their followers; and amongſt others, *Romerus* one of the knights of MALTA,and diuers others of his brethren, with fiue companies of ſouldiors well appointed,ſent thither by *George Hochenheime*,graund prior of that Order in GERMANIE, and then confirmed one of the princes of the empire. At the ſame time alſo,the Turkes being buſie vpon the borders of STIRIA, and the places thereabouts,were many times cut off by *Charles* the archduke; who taking them at an aduantage, ſlew at one time three thouſand of them. Yet for all this,the Turkes embaſſadour was ſtill at VIENNA, intreating for peace,and ſo cunningly handled the matter, that wheras *Eccius Salma*, a noble and valiant captaine,had corrupted the chiefe judge with certaine others of ALBA REGALIS, to haue betraied the citie vnto him; for performance wherof, they had deliuered their wiues and children as hoſtages,and he was now vpon his way from RAB, which is but eight miles off, in an aſſured hope to haue ſurpriſed the citie: hee was ſuddenly by letters in poſt from the emperour called backe again,for corrupting the hope conceiued of peace: & ſo was that notable deſignment vnfortunatly diſappointed;of which practiſe the Turks hauing knowledge,afterwards moſt cruelly executed fortie of the conſpirators,impaling ſome of them vpon ſharp ſtakes,and hanging others vpon yron hooks by the iawes vntill they were dead. Shortly after the Turks tooke NEOSTAT, which was not long after againe recouered by the emperour.

The Turks purpoſing warre, craftily ſue for peace.

At the ſame time one of the Turkes ſpies was taken at ZIGETH, who but thirteene dayes before was ſent from CONSATNTINOPLE,of purpoſe to view the ſtrength and ſituation of that place: hee being brought before *Charles* the archduke,and examined, ſaid, That *Solyman* would aſſuredly the next Spring come in perſon himſelfe into HVNGARIE,to beſiege the ſtrong caſtles of ZIGETH and IVLA. At which time alſo, countie *Serinus* tooke certaine other of the Turkes ſpies,by whom he was certainly aduertiſed of *Solymans* comming the next yeare; and amongſt others *Scaphir Vayda*,the Baſſa of BVDA his chiefe counſellor. Beſide this, the countrey men(contributors both to the Imperials and the Turks)were now ſtraightly commanded by the Turks,to pay no more contribution money vnto the Imperials: whereupon it was eaſily gathered, that all that talke of peace,was as *Suendi* had oftentimes written, nothing elſe but to delay the time,and to put them in ſecuritie. Beſide that,the Turkes made incurſions daily into one place or other of the emperors territories,ſhewing their auncient hate, and ſowing by thoſe light skirmiſhes,as it were,the ſeed of a greater war againſt the next Spring: which the emperour now out of doubt of(being alſo warned therof by many letters from his friends) put ſtrong garriſons into his frontier towns, eſpecially into RAB & ZIGETH. But knowing that to bee but a poore helpe againſt ſo puiſſant an enemie, hee reſolued as his father and vncle had done before,to reſt vpon the ſtrength of the empire, and againſt the next yeare to call a generall

aſſembly

A assemblie of the princes of the empire at AVGVSTA, for the better withstanding of the common enemie. The wars thus beginning againe in HVNGARIE, *Solyman* at the same time in reuenge of the manifold harmes done vnto his subiects by the knights of MALTA, whose hand he found euer against him in all his dealings with the other Christian princes, made great preparation both by sea and land: purposing (as seemed by the manner thereof) to haue rased the memoriall of those worthie men from off the earth. Whereunto, beside the naturall hatred which he bare against all Christians in generall, and them aboue the rest in particular, he was much incited by *Cassanes*, *Barbarussa* his sonne king of ALGIERS, and *Dragut* gouernour of TRIPOLIS: by whose persuasions he caused a strong fleet to be be rigged vp, commanding the lieutenants and gouernours of his ports and hauens all alongst the sea coast, to put to their helping hands, and to
B be readie against the next Spring. And not long after, vnderstanding partly of his own certaine knowledge, and partly by the relation of others, in what good forwardnes things were: he calling togither a great assemblie of his greatest princes and men of war, deliuered vnto them his mind as followeth.

Solymans preparation against the knights of Malta.

What thing I haue this fortie yeares alwaies wished, which was to haue so much leisure from other warres, as to plucke out of their nests and vtterly to root out these Crossed pirats, which vaunt themselues to be the bulwarke of Christendome: that same, me thinke I haue by the fauour of God and Muhamed *his prophet, at this time obtained. For wee haue so repressed the attempts of the Persians,*
C *that they cannot let vs: and in* HVNGARIE, *from whence certaine dreadfull motions were reported, wee our selues will shortly doe those things which shall enforce our enemies to hide their heads in the heart of* GERMANIE, *and to sue to vs for peace. You your selues daily heare the pitifull complaints of our subiects and merchants, whom these Maltases, I say not soldiors, but pirats, if they but looke into those seas, spoile and make prize of: whose iniuries to reuenge, all lawes both of God and man require. Neither can any thing happen vnto me more pleasing, or more honourable, than if I may before I die, accomplish those things, that is, to win* MALTA, *and to leaue all things in order in* HVNGARIE *and* POLONIA: *except perhaps some man thinke it a harder matter for vs to thrust these Crossed companions from the rocks of* MALTA, *than for our auncestors to haue driuen them from* IERVSALEM, *and so quite out of* SYRIA, *and for our selues to haue forced them out of the strong iland*
D *of the* RHODES. *But this some will say, is neerer vnto* ITALIE *from whence aid may easily be sent, and the place defended by a fleet. Beleeue me, they will neuer aduenture to fight with vs at sea, who remember themselues to haue been there so often by vs ouerthrowne: beside that, so little a place cannot containe any great garrison; neither if it could, could it long feed them. Wherefore vnto this expedition, we haue determined with the first of the Spring, to send a most strong fleet: and euen now we haue alreadie commaunded all our sea captaines and aduenturers which acknowledge our commaund, to be there present with their Ships. The king of* ALGIERS *will be there, the garrisons of* ALEXANDRIA *are in readinesse, so is also* Dragut *with his appointed fleet; as for our owne, it is by mine owne direction rigged vp: vnto which fleet I doubt not, but that all the strength of the West will giue*
E *place: Which thing (worthie captaines) wee speake, trusting vpon the helpe of Almightie God, and* Muhamed *his great prophet, with your knowne and approued Valour. Now remaineth onely, that euerie one of you thinke with vs, how this warre may best be managed, and so to referre your deuises vnto vs: which that you may the better doe, Loe, I heere deliuer vnto you the situation of the whole iland, and proiect of all their fortifications, which wee haue receiued of most expert and skilfull men.*

Solymans oration to his captaines for the inuasion of Malta.

Solymans purpose thus made knowne, and the matter well considered, after that they which best knew the strong places and manners of the Maltese, had declared their opinions what they thought to be most expedient, it was decreed, that they should with all speed set forward: wherfore victuall, and other things necessarie for such an expedition, being with wonderfull celeritie prepared, they expected but wind. Of these things, *Io. Valetta* a Frenchman, Graund master of
F MALTA and of the knights of the Order; being both by letters and messengers aduertised (for he had alwaies fit men his intelligencers at CONSTANTINOPLE, who warily noted the purposes and actions of *Solyman*) was not afraid, but knowing that of God depended the victorie, and that men were to watch, labour, and foresee: he assembled a counsell of his knights, and in few words spake vnto them in this sort.

Valetta the Grand master aduertised of Solymans purpose.

Valetta his Oration vnto his knights.

What Solyman *prepareth (most noble and valiant knights) and what a great warre he prouideth against vs, you with me of late right well vnderstand, wherefore it is needlesse for me to vse any long speech with you concerning that matter. The enemie is knowne, his insatiable ambition is knowne, his strength is knowne, and his mortall hate against vs and the Christian name, is sufficiently knowne. Wherefore let vs all as one first reconcile our selues to God, and then prouide all such things as shall be needfull for the warre. In breefe noble knights, to reconcile our selues vnto God, and to appease his displeasure, two things are of vs to be performed: whereof the one consisteth in amendment of life, with a holy conuersation: the other in the religious worshipping of him, with a firme and constant trust in his helpe, with prayer, which is called godlinesse. By these meanes our auncestors obtained many victories against the Infidels in the East. Neither is it to be doubted, but if wee shall in these things ioyne together, wee shall also frustrat all the force and furie of this proud tyrant. But for as much as God vsually helpeth them which labour and take paines, and not the negligent and slouthfull, wee must of necessitie ioyne vnto them those helpes, which both our profession and the course of warre requireth: which partly consisteth in our selues, and partly in the other Christian princes. For victuall, armour, money, and other such things as in warres are requisit, wee will so prouide, that no man shall iustly complaine, that wee spared either cost or paines. I will poure out all my store, neither will I for desire of life refuse any danger. As for the Christian princes, I cannot perswade my selfe, that they will lie still in so fit an oportunitie, and in so great a danger, not of our estate onely, but much more of their owne. Verely I will not spare to exhort euery one of them both by letters and by messengers, which in part wee haue alreadie done: and I doubt not but wee shall haue aid ynough from the Pope, the Emperour, and the king of Spaine (such is their Christian zeale) and they I hope shall moue the rest. As for you, the princes and very light of this sacred Order, and the rest of our brethren, most valiant knights, I am well assured you will so fight for the most holy Christian religion, for your liues and goods, and for the glorie of the Latine name, against a most cruell tyrant, the rooter out of all true religion, of all ciuilitie and good learning, the plague of the world, hated of God and man; as that hee shall feele the sting of the crosse which he so much contemneth, euen in the citie of* Constantinople, *yea in his houses of pleasure. For wee shall not haue now to doe with him in the Island of the* Rhodes, *farre from the helpe of our friends, from* Asia, *from* Evrope, *from* Ægipt, *inclosed with our enemies both by sea and land; but in the eyes of* Italie *and* Spaine, *in places strongly fortified, from whence the enemie may easily be circumuented: which that it may so fall out, let vs not cease to pray vnto Almightie God, and to craue his readie helpe.*

The knights make preparation for the Turks cõming.

When the Graund Master had thus said, all that were present promised with one assent rather to lose their liues, than in any part to faile the common cause, or to come into the power of *Solyman*. After that, publicke prayer and supplication was made in euerie church through the Ile, and three colonels chosen out of all the knights: one an Italian surnamed *Imperator*, another *Borneas* a Frenchman, and *Quatrius* a Spaniard the third, all aduised men and most expert souldiors, who should with all diligence prouide all things necessarie for the war. By whose appointment the suburbs and trees which might any way be hurtfull to the fortified places, vvere ouerthrown, the fortifications were thorowly viewed, the garrisons strengthened, and all maner of prouision most plentifully distributed: and letters from the Great master sent vnto the Great Bishop and other Christian princes, requesting their aid against the common enemie. Messengers were also dismissed into diuers places, to certifie both the knights of the Order and others, of the Turkes preparation.

Solymans fleet departeth from Constantinople.

Solymans fleet departing from Constantinople the two and twentieth day of March in the yeare 1565 kept a direct course towards Peloponesvs, and so came to Methon: where *Mustapha Bassa* one of the Turkes greatest captaines, a man of 75 yeares, and Generall of the land forces, mustered the armie, wherin were numbred seuen thousand horsmen of them which are of the Turkes called Spahi: out of the lesser Asia, conducted by the Gouernor of that countrie, and two lieutenants of Cilicia, fiue hundred: and of the Island of Lesbos, now called Metylene, four hundred: he had of the Ianizaries foure thousand and fiue hundred led by two colonels, appointed by *Solyman*; for that the chiefe captaine of the Ianizaries which they call the Aga, neuer departeth from the citie but when the Sultan goeth himselfe. Besides these, was a certaine kind of men amongst the Turkes, who liue of the reuenues of the church; of them there was in the armie thirteene thousand, who had at Constantinople vowed their

A their liues for their ſuperſtition. Out of THRACIA and PELOPONESVS were come two colonels and one lieutenant, with twelue hundred horſemen, & three thouſand fiue hundred voluntaries out of diuers countries. There alſo *Piall Baſſa, Solymans* Admirall, tooke view of the fleet, wherein were found a hundred and thirtie gallies, two and twentie ſhips for burthen, ſome greater, ſome leſſer; beſides one that was caſt away neere vnto METHONE, wherein was loſt ſix thouſand barrels of pouder, thirteene thouſand great ſhot, and foure hundred Spahi: beſides theſe, there were ten gallies from the RHODES commaunded by *Halyport*, a man of ſeuentie yeares; two gallies of MITYLENE, and about ſeuenteene galliots, and other ſmall pyrats ſhips. With this ſtrong fleet the Turks departing from METHONE the thirteenth of May, arriued at MALTA the eighteene of the ſame moneth, and put into a hauen in the Northeaſt part of the B iſle, which the inhabitants call MARZASIROC: but perceiuing themſelues not to be there in ſafetie, they remoued to another port called MAIOR. *The Turks fleet arriueth at Malta.*

The iſland of MALTA lying betwixt AFFRICA and SICILIA, might be doubted whether it were to be accounted in AFFRICKE or EVROPE, but that the auntient Coſmographers, and the Moores language, which the Maltaſes haue alwaies vſed, challenge it for AFFRICKE. It is in length from the Northeaſt to the Southweſt twentie miles; and in the broadeſt place twelue. It regardeth AFFRICKE Southward, oueragainſt LEPTIS PARVA; and SICILIA towards the North, but more towards PACHINVM than LILYBEVM: and is in circuit about threeſcore miles. It ſeemeth to haue taken the name of MELITA of Mel or honey, wherof it yeeldeth plentie. The trees there beare fruit twice a yeare, and they haue oftentimes twice harueſt eſpeC cially of barley and cotten wooll; yet is the iſle in ſome places ſtonie, grauellie, and bare of wood: neuertheleſſe it beareth figs, apples, almonds, grapes, and other fruit trees, planted by the induſtrie of man, date trees alſo, but not fruitfull; it beareth thiſtles of ſuch bigneſſe, that the inhabitants vſe them for wood: freſh water is there wonderfull ſcarce, and ſuch wels as they haue are filled with raine in Winter, for in Summer they are either cleane drie, or elſe the water becommeth brachie. The inhabitants are ſo burnt with the Sunne, that they differ little in colour from the Æthyopians: they are of a wholeſome conſtitution of bodie, ſpare of diet, induſtrious, rather painefull than warlike, dying more for age than of ſickneſſe: their buildings, except it bee in the citie, which is in the middeſt of the iſland, and in the ſuburbes, are long and low (like vnto the Moores) couered with turfe or reed. It is commonly ſuppoſed, that S. *Paule* was by ſhipD wracke caſt vpon this iſland: but it is with greater reaſon to be thought, that it was the other MELITA in the Adriaticke betwixt CORCYRA and ILLYRIA, and better agreeth with that which *Luke* writeth of the Apoſtles trouble and ſhipwracke in the Adriaticke, out of which ſea it is not to be gathered of the text, that *Paule* with the reſt were driuen. But againe to our purpoſe. That ſide of MALTA which reſpecteth SICILIA, hath in it many good harbours and commodious hauens, fit for ſhipping; where beſide the port MARZASIROC towards the Eaſt, where the Turkes fleet firſt landed, and the port of S. THOMAS, with another called SCALA, not farre off, it hath two other notable hauens, the one called MAIOR, and the other MARZAMOXET, deuided the one from the other by a narrow peece of ground: which with a ridge runneth in length from the South to the North, almoſt in manner of an iſland, hauing the hauen E MAIOR on the Eaſt, and MARZA MOXET on the Weſt. Vpon the head of this high ridge ſtandeth the caſtle of S. ELMO, of great ſtrength both by nature and art. As a man entreth into the hauen MAIOR, vpon the left hand are foure promontories, pointing farre into the hauen on that ſide, almoſt in manner of iſlands, making ſo many bayes: Vpon the firſt ſtandeth the gallowes, whereof alſo it taketh name: vpon the very point of the ſecond, on a rough and high rocke ſtandeth a moſt ſtrong caſtle, called the caſtle of S. ANGELO, whereunto adioyneth the towne, ſeperated from the caſtle onely with a wall and a ditch, & is placed in a hollowneſſe cut out of the maine rocke, ſtrengthened alſo with the ſea and the induſtrie of man; and is of ſome called the Burg, of others the new citie (in this caſtle reſideth the Grand maſter, and the ſouldiers in the Burg:) vpon the third promontorie ſtandeth another ſtrong caſtle, which they call alſo F the Burg of S. MICHAEL: the fourth promontorie is not inhabited, from whence the ſea runneth alongſt the winding bankes almoſt into the midſt of the iſland, vnto a place called AQVA MARSIA. Againe, after the port MARZA MOXET, Weſtward is the harbour S. GEORGE; and after that another called BENNORRAT: then followeth the port of S. PAVLE, no leſſe than the port MARZASIROC: after which commeth the port called SALINARVM SINVS: but on

The deſcription of Malta.

Acts 27 & 28.

that ſide of the Iſland towards APPRICKE, is only one port called MILLIARIA: neere vnto the G
Iſland of MALTA lie certaine other little Iſlands, as GAVLOSO now GOZA: two other called CVMINIA, and another called PIPER, all ſubiect to the Maltaſes.

Thus much I haue thought good to ſet downe concerning the Turkes fleet, and for the deſcription of thoſe places wherein this great action was performed, the brute whereof then filled the world. Now ſhall it not be amiſſe, in like manner to declare vpon what ſtrength, next vnto God, *Valetta* the Graund maſter ſtood againſt ſo mightie and puiſſant an enemie. Firſt there was in the Iſland thirteene hundred mercinaries, ſome Spaniards, ſome French, ſome Florentines, and the reſt of NAPLES: there was alſo a thouſand ſeamen of the knights fleet, and fiue hundred in the towne of *S. Angelo:* and of the countrie people which were fled into the ſtrong places, fiue thouſand, men not altogither vnskilfull of the warres: there was alſo fiue hundred H
knights of the Order, beſides prieſts and ſquires; for of theſe three ſorts of men, are they which are called brethren of the Order. This was the number of them which defended the caſtles and townes of *S. Elmo*, *S. Angelo*, and *S. Michael*, wherunto they were proportionably diuided: & in the citie it ſelfe, which is called MELITA, being in the middle of the Iſland, was two hundred ſouldiors, and as many citiſens, with three hundred of the countrie people all horſmen, commanded by *Io. Vagno* a valiant captaine. Beſides this, euery place was furniſhed with plentie of victuall, armour, weapons, artillerie, and whatſoeuer elſe was needfull for the enduring of a long ſiege, and a war that ſhould want many things: and that which paſſed all the reſt, minds armed with inuincible courage againſt whatſoeuer ſhould chance, which oftentimes maketh of the vanquiſhed, victors. All theſe things being in readineſſe, and orderly diſpoſed, as ſoone as they vnder- I
ſtood that ſeuen and twentie of the Turks gallies had put into the hauen MARZASIROCK, and were there landing their men: *Gyon*, Admirall for the Order, a valiant and couragious knight, marched thither with fiue hundred harquebuſiers, to haue skirmiſhed with them; but as ſoone as the Turkes ſaw them comming, they retired againe to their gallies. On the other part where the other fleet lay, two hundred of the Turkes going on ſhoare, met by chance with *Rinerius* a Frenchman, and eight knights moe; who hauing his horſe killed vnder him, and one of his companions ſlaine, fell with the reſt into the hands of the enemie. Whileſt theſe things were in doing, a certaine Chriſtian mariner fled out from the Turkes to the citie of MELITA, who diſcouered the enemies purpoſe, telling them, That the Turkes by the appointment of *Muſtapha*, had K
determined to haue landed the greateſt part of their forces, preſently to haue beſieged ſome ſtrong place, had not *Piall Baſſa* the Admirall exclaimed againſt it, doubting to be left too weak at ſea: ſaying plainly, That he would attempt nothing before the comming of *Dragut*, who was euerie houre expected. For *Solyman* had expreſſely commaunded, that they ſhonld do nothing without his counſell; ſo great an opinion had he of his policie and valour. But whether this his report was true or otherwiſe, the Turks for all that, returning with their fleet to the port of MARZASIROCK, landed twentie thouſand ſouldiours, and fiue field pieces, and ſo intrenched themſelues. This done, *Piall Baſſa* with ſeuen thouſand, went to view the caſtle of *S. Michaell*; but for feare of the great ſhot, durſt not to come nie it. Neuertheleſſe, they of the towne ſallying out, couragiouſly skirmiſhed with the Turkes; in which conflict, *Curſelinus* ſurnamed *Parda*, accom- L
panied but with one Spaniard, ſo furiouſly aſſailed the enemie, that he tooke from him one enſigne, and ſlew one of the Sanzacks a great commaunder, with diuers others. When *Piall* was come againe into the campe, the Generall began to conſult with the other captaines, whether it were better to lay ſiege to the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, or to the towne of *S. Michaell:* in concluſion it was agreed vpon, that they ſhould with all their forces beſiege the caſtle of *S. Elmo*. And going vp the hill to view the caſtle, they were encountred by the garriſon ſouldiours; in which fight ſome few vvere loſt on both ſides. Thus by degrees, things growing hoater and hoater, the Graund maſter thought it good to certifie *Garzias* of TOLEDO, viceroy of SICILIE, how things ſtood, that he might the ſooner rig vp his fleet to come to their reſcue. Wherefore he commaunded one gallie to put out of the hauen by night, and to paſſe ouer into SICILIE with *Saluagus* one of the knights ſent thither on meſſage. In the meane time, The Turks caſt vp a M
mount to haue battered the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, and beaten the gallies in the hauen MAIOR, and ſo to haue opened a way for their fleet to haue entred: but they were not able long to keepe that mount, for they had ſcarcely well ended the worke, but it was forthwith by the continuall thundring ſhot out of the caſtle, beaten downe againe, which thing greatly abated the Turkes courage,

Rinerius with other knights, taken of the Turkes.

The Turks land.

They of the caſtle of S. Michael skirmiſh with the Turkes.

A rage. About that time, *Ochial* came to the fleet with ſix ſhips, drawne out of them which were left for the defence of ALEXANDRIA, and in them nine hundred ſouldiors. The Turks beaten from their firſt mount, caſt vp another on a higher ground, whereon they placed three great pieces of ordinance, wherevvhith they annoied not only the hauen vvherein the fleet of MALTA, rid but the caſtle of *S. Angelo* alſo, the Great maſters ſeat, and with a rowling trench drew neerer and neerer vnto the caſtle of *S. Elmo*: which although they had at firſt in vaine attempted, hindred by them which were in the caſtle, yet at laſt with much labour and trauell they brought it to perfection (for the Turks in that kind of worke, ſtill performed by their multitude, are accounted to excel others:) wherfore in ſhort time, they planted their great ordinance in ſuch ſort, as that they might batter both the caſtles of *S. Elmo* and *S. Michaell*. There was in the Turkes
B campe a gentleman of SPAINE, but then a ſlaue vnto a Turke, who vnderſtanding the enemies purpoſe for the beſieging of the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, by a Chriſtian fugitiue aduertiſed the Great maſter thereof: whereupon he forthwith ſent *Cerda* and *Miranda*, with two companies of Spaniards into the caſtle, who were afterwards a great ſtrength vnto the caſtle, and hinderance vnto the enemie. At length came *Dragut* Gouernour of LEPTIS, long looked for of the Turkes, with thirteene gallies, and in them 1600 ſouldiours: after whom followed ten galliots from BONA, and in them two companies. In the meane time, *Saluagus* the worthie knight (ſent before into SICILIA) came to MESSANA, and hauing certified the viceroy, of the ſtate of MALTA; was by him commaunded to returne to MALTA in a galliot, conducted by two gallies of the
C Great maſters; vvhich hauing brought him neere vnto the Iſland, returned againe into SICILIA: but he with his galliot (not without moſt manifeſt danger) in the third watch of the night brake into the towne thorow the middeſt of the enemies fleet, with the loſſe of but one of his followers. Where hauing deliuered vnto the Great maſter, what he had in charge from the viceroy, he was the ſame night ſent backe againe by the Great maſter into SICILIA, to certifie the viceroy, That he had need of more aid, requeſting him with all ſpeed to ſend him ſome ſupply, whereby he might the better hold out againſt the force of ſo great an enemie. *Saluagus* diſcouraged neither with the labour nor the danger, preſently committed himſelfe againe to ſea, and in ſhort time arriued in the port of SIRACVSA, where finding the two gallies we before ſpake of, he ſent them to MALTA, as he had in charge with foure hundred ſouldiors, amongſt whom were diuers of the knights of the Order, and certain skilfull canoniers: willing them to ſhun the
D Weſt part of the Iſland, where as they muſt needs come into the enemies ſight, and to paſſe by the Eaſt end thereof, which vvas farther about, but ſafer; and turning Southward, to land in the port MILIARE, and from thence by the low places of the iſland to conuay the ſouldiours by night to the citie MELITA, which vvas but foure miles off; from whence they might eaſily paſſe vnto the caſtle of *S. Michael*. This order taken, he went to MESSANA, and there declared to the viceroy the danger of the vvar, vvith the ſmall number of the defendants, requeſting of him a thouſand footmen, vvhich vvith thoſe alreadie ſent, he thought would ſuffice to hold out the ſiege, vntill he vvith his whole fleet might come to relieue them. But whileſt theſe things vvere ſlowly prouided, which with much difficulties and delay could hardly be brought to paſſe, the
E Chriſtian princes as it were ſleeping in ſo great a danger: the Turks vpon the ſudden the third of Iune, aſſaulted the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, in hope with ſhort ſcaling ladders to get ouer that part of the rampiers which was neereſt vnto the bulwarke of the caſtle. But the defendants, in the ditch which before had no flanker to ſcoure the ſame, had of earth & fagots made a large ſtrong flanker, from whence the caſtle alſo helping them, they valiantly reſiſted the enemie, and filled the ditches with the dead bodies of the Turkes. Who for all that, truſting to their multitude (wherewith rather than vvith true valour they obtaine ſo many victories) thruſt ſtill on, vntill they had by obſtinat force (although long firſt) gained the flanker: whereby they commaunded all that part of the ditch, towards the port MARZA MOXET. In which place they with wonderful celeritie ſo fortified themſelues, that they could not be hurt by the defendants: wherein they were much holpen by their own great ordinance, planted on the other ſide the hauen MAR-
F ZA; for with it they draue the defendants from the place, beat down the corner of the rampire, and battered the front of the bulwarke, whoſe hight and greatnes troubled the enemie, but was not ſo commodious for the defendants, for that it was made without flankers. But night comming on, fiue thouſand of the nine thouſand Turks which gaue the aſſault, tarried there: wherfore the Chriſtians conſtrained to forſake the place, retired themſelues into the caſtle. The

The Turks beſiege the caſtle of S. Elmo.

Dragut commeth to aid the Turkes.

The Turks aſſault the caſtle S. Elmo.

Turks in the meane time couered with the darkeneſſe of the night, with ſackes filled vvith tow and earth, filled vp the ditch vvhich was vnder the bulwarke, but neither of any great wideneſſe or depth: vvhich done, they gaue a freſh aſſault, vvherein aboue eight hundred of them were ſlaine, part Ianizaries, and part Spachi, and beſides them many wounded, of whom the moſt part remained halfe dead in the ditch, vvhere they periſhed, and could not be relieued. Of the Chriſtians vvas loſt fiue and fortie: amongſt whom vvere fiue knights of the order, *Guardampes* an Auergnois, *Maſius* a colonell of NARBONA, *Contilia* a Spaniard, *Somaia* a Florentine, and *Neinec* a Germane. The ſame night the Great maſter thinking, as reaſon was, that they in the caſtle of *S. Elmo* might want helpe, ſent two hundred of his knights and as many other ſouldiours into the caſtle; who if they had bin moe, togither with the foure hundred which were before in the caſtle, might happily haue driuen the Turks both from the rampiers and the flanker, and alſo kept the place longer. But for as much as the Great maſter wanted ſouldiours, and had therefore ſent *Saluagus* into SICILIA for new ſupplies, as we haue before ſaid, hee in the meane time couragiouſly expected their comming, refuſing no labour or paine: yet bewailing ſometime with himſelfe the vnfortunateneſſe of the Chriſtian princes, by whoſe negligence ſo fit an occaſion for the ouerthrow of the barbarous enemie was let ſlip: But aboue all things he maruelled exceedingly that no helpe yet came, eſpecially thoſe two gallies which (as we haue ſaid) were in all haſt ſent by *Saluagus*: but they by the maſters default kept not the appointed courſe; for firſt whereas they ſhould haue ſhunned the Weſt part of the Iſle, and haue turned towards the Eaſt, they ſhaped their courſe Weſtward to the Iſland of GAVLOS, the maſter vainely affirming, that he ſaw certaine of the Turks galliots lying before port MILERIA: which was afterwards well knowne not to haue bin ſo; for the trueth was, that he for feare (whereby notable deſignes are many times fruſtrated) durſt not go forward. Whereby it came to paſſe, that the Great maſter was diſappointed of ſo neceſſarie a ſupplie: which thing much grieued both the viceroy and others, but eſpecially *Saluagus*. For he ſaw it would come to paſſe, that if the Turkes ſhould take the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, the moſt aſſured bulwarke and defence of the Iſland of MALTA, the other places muſt of neceſſitie be brought into extreame danger, all the way to relieue them being thereby ſhut vp. And that it might be taken, ſeemed not to him impoſſible, the enemie hauing alreadie taken one fort, and laying hard ſiege almoſt on euery ſide of that little pile. The due conſideration of theſe and ſuch like things grieued the minds of skilfull men, eſpecially ſeeing ſuch ſlacke preparation in a caſe requiring ſuch preſent relieſe. Yet in the meane time ſouldiors were taken vp at ROME by the commaundement of *Pius Quartus* then Biſhop, to be ſent to MALTA: and by his example to ſtir vp other princes to ſend aid vnto this ſacred war, he gaue a hundred pound of gold to *Cambianus* legat for the Order, and commanded gunpouder and other neceſſaries for that warre to be taken out of his caſtle *S. Angelo*, that ſo he might ſeeme to be wanting in nothing that was in him to performe. Ouer theſe ſouldiors, in number ſix hundred, he appointed *Pompeius Columna* Generall, and commaunded *Camillus Medices* his legate to accompanie him. With theſe went many voluntarie men, of purpoſe to lay downe their liues for the eterniſing of their names in ſo religious a warre, and that with ſuch an ardent deſire, as that euerie little delay ſeemed vnto them a yeare. Wherefore comming to NAPLES, they there found *Iohn Andreas Auria* with eleuen ſhips, the prince of POPVLONIA with nine, *Lanicius* with three, and three others, ſet forth by other priuate gentlemen. In theſe ſhips were imbarked all thoſe footmen which came from ROME, and ſo tranſported to MESSANA, where the kings fleet was prouiding. But whileſt the Chriſtians make ſlow preparation, conſidering the greatneſſe of the danger, the Turkes not ignorant thereof, reſolued to proue the vttermoſt before the ſtrength of the Chriſtians were readie or drawne togither. For the caſtle of *S. Elmo* once taken, they aſſured themſelues with more eaſe to carrie the reſt: for that therby they ſhould firſt haue the hauen MARZA MOXET in their power, where their fleet might in ſafetie ride ſo long as they pleaſed: and the riſing ridge betwixt the two hauens was commodious for them both to batter the towne of S. MICHAEL, and to keepe the hauen MAIOR, ſo that none could without their leaue paſſe in or out thereat. Wherfore vpon theſe and other ſuch like conſiderations they began againe to batter the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, as if it had bin with thunder: which furious batterie they continued for the ſpace of foure daies togither without intermiſſion. The night following they ſuddenly with great force gaue an aſſault, and with their ſcaling ladders had almoſt gained the top of the wall, when the Chriſtians deſirous of

S Elmo againe aſſaulted.

New ſupplie ſent into the caſtle S. Elmo.

The Great maſter diſappointed of a ſupplie by the fearefalneſſe of the ſhipmaſter.

S Elmo againe aſſaulted.

nothing

A nothing more than to come to handie blowes, draue them downe againe with ſuch violence, that neuer after they durſt ſet ladder to the wall, vntill the very laſt conflict. Whileſt things were thus hot at the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, *Dragut* his ſouldiors vpon a brauerie, as if they had been the only men, went to a place called MARTIA SCALA, which is betwixt the gallowes and *S. Thomas* roade, as if they would haue done more than the reſt: Which the Chriſtians beholding out of the towne of *S. Angelo*, to repreſſe their inſolencie, ſallied forth vpon them, and ſo welcommed them, that they were glad after they had receiued a great loſſe foorthwith to retire to the place from whence they came. Of the Chriſtians was ſlain *Bonnemius* a Frenchman, one of the knights and ſeuen others. *The Turkes repulſed.*

The ſame time *Monſerratus* was by the great maſter ſent into the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, to com-
B maund there as Gouernour in ſtead of *Brolia:* for that he with watching and paines taken in defence thereof, was fallen ſicke. The ſame *Brolia* had many times before written to the Great maſter, That the caſtle was ſo well fortified and furniſhed of all things needfull, as that he thought it impoſſible to be woon by the enemy: and had with cheerfull ſpeech and braue behauior, ſo encouraged the knights, and other the defendants, that they fought againſt their enemies with more than mens ſtrength, and greater courage than is to be beleeued. Neither were the Turkes for that diſcouraged, although they were with great loſſe ſtill repulſed: but for certain daies battered the caſtle with greater fury than before, and immediatly gaue an aſſault; for they had made a bridge ouer the ditch, of maſts and ſaile yards, of ſuch a breadth, that ten men might go theron in ranke: and had placed about the ditch foure thouſand harquebuſiers, and brought all their *The Turks make a bridge ouer the caſtle ditch.*
C fleet vnto *S. Georges* ſhoare, not far from the caſtle. And when they had by the ſpace of eighteen daies ſore ſhaken it, and torne the wals with thirteen thouſand great ſhot, and were now in hope euen preſently to win the caſtle: ſee, *Beragamus* a Biſcane, one of the knights, and *Medranus* a Spaniſh captaine, with certaine other valiant men, ran to the bridge, and to the great admiration of the beholders, oppoſed themſelues againſt the multitude of the miſcreants. The fight hand to hand was on both ſides both fierce and terrible: and now one of the Turks had aduanced a Turkiſh enſigne vpon the bulwarke, which whileſt *Medranus* layeth hand vpon, and the Turke on the other ſide ſtruggleth to cleare himſelfe from him, in ſtriuing together, they fell downe both dead, ſhot thorow with one bullet by one of the Turks. At which time the foure hundred which we ſaid were but a little before ſent thither by the Grand maſter, ſtood in good ſteed: for *A horrible battery.* *Medranus a valiant captaine*
D ſeeing all brought to ſo great a danger, ſome of them (whileſt other ſome fought with the enemie) thruſt barrels of gunpouder vnder the bridge, ſome caſt downe wild fire, ſtones, and whatſoeuer elſe came to hand vpon the enemie, and others farther off with their harquebuſiers ſore galled the Turkes; ſo in ſhort time the bridge was burnt and blowne vp, which in the fall therof, ouerwhelmed eight hundred Turkes: the reſt (as they might) retired, few whole, but moſt part wounded. In this conflict the Chriſtians pluckt downe two enſignes, the one *Muſtaphaes*, the other *Draguts*, which the Turkes had ſet vp vpon the verie battlements of the wals. On the other part toward the Southweſt, a band of the Turks had got to the top of the higheſt rampier; which as ſoone as they in the caſtle of *S. Angelo* perceiued, thinking to haue beaten them off with a great ſhot, ſlew by miſchance ſeauen of the defendants vpon the ſame rampier, as they *Eight hundred Turks ſlaine with the fall of the bridge.*
E were going to and fro: but to recompence that errour, at the next ſhot they rent in ſunder foure of the Turks captaines, with twelue other of their moſt forward ſouldiors. Whileſt they were here fighting, other Turkes in the meane time had caſt vp a trench on that ſide of the caſtle toward *S. Angelo*; out of which they were quickly driuen with fire, ſtones, and other ſuch like things throwne downe vpon them by the defendants. The Turks valiantly on euery ſide repulſed, retired into the campe, when they had in this aſſault loſt two thouſand of their beſt ſouldiors, and of the Chriſtians ſlaine almoſt a hundred, and wounded as many moe. The ſame day, *Valetta* the Grand maſter, perceiuing the port MARZA MOXET not to bee very ſtraightly kept by the Turkes, commaunded a light Brigandine to bee carried out of the hauen, ouerland to the place called MARTIA SCALA, that from thence he might ſend into SICILIA: for he (as reaſon *The Turkes retire*
F was) conſidering in what danger the caſtle of *S. Elmo* ſtood, by letters certified the Viceroy and the biſhop of ROME thereof, and of ſuch things as were there done; requeſting them of ſpeedie relieſe. The copie of the letters ſent to the Viceroy, I haue here ſet downe: as for thoſe which were ſent to the great Biſhop, becauſe they were almoſt of the ſame purport, I haue purpoſely omitted.

To

To *Garzias* of Toledo, Viceroy of Sicilia, and Admirall of the fleet, greeting. G

The Great maſter writes to Garzias Viceroy of Sicilia.

Since the time that I ſent Saluagus, *I haue ſent vnto you two letters, which I cauſed to bee ſent by* MELITA *into* GAVLOS; *which I pray God bee come to your hands. After that, when as neither meſſengers nor letters came vnto vs from you, I commaunded a man with inſtructions to haſte to* MESSANA, *who when hee had certaine nights attempted to goe out, and was at laſt got out, hee was ſcarcely gone two miles, but hee ſaw the Turkes with might and maine making after him; whom to eſcape, he was glad to runne his pinace on ground: And caſting his letters into the ſea, to forſake his boat, and by flight to ſaue himſelfe. Now the Turkes hauing remooued their fleet out of the port* VVLTVRNVS, H *I conſidering how much it concerneth to certifie you of thoſe things which are heere done, commaunded a Brigandine to bee carried to* MARTIA SCALA; *for ſeeing that the Turkes fleet is gone to another part of the Iſland, I hope my letters will without let in ſhort time come vnto you. And the things I would haue you to know, are theſe: The fifteenth of this moneth, all the enemies fleet (a little before night) paſſed by this port; the comming on of the night letted, that wee could not well perceiue the weakeneſſe thereof; whileſt the gallies almoſt vnarmed, were with much difficultie towed forth: want of water cauſed them chiefly to depart out of the port* VVLTVRNVS, *and peraduenture feare of your fleet. For, as I haue heard, they haue intelligence, that an hundred and fiftie ſaile lie at road in the port of* MESSANA; *for which cauſe alſo, they haue not put themſelues into the port of S.* Paul, *but haue placed their fleet aboue the port* MARZA MOXET; *yet a good part of their gallies lie at the* I *port S.* George, *ſo to bee neerer vnto their land forces: yet is not the neereneſſe ſuch, but that if your fleet come vpon the ſudden, they will with the ſame feare retire to their fleete, that they would if they were further off. No man is now to bee ſeene at* VULTVRNVS, *for they haue left their firſt campe at Saint* Katherins *and Saint* Iohns, *hauing burnt all the countrey villages, and now lie with their fleet as I haue ſaid: and with their armie at the caſtle Saint* Elmo, *which God hath as yet kept, and as I hope will: which thing is euen for this to bee hoped for, which was but yeſterday done; when as our moſt valiant ſouldiours (by the helpe of God) for the ſpace of foure houres couragiouſly endured a moſt terrible aſſault. The Turkes hauing alſo made a bridge Weſtward toward the port* MARZA MOXET, *wee haue foure times repulſed them to their great loſſe; yet not without ſome loſſe alſo on our part, amongſt whom* Medranus, *a worthie captaine was to my great griefe ſlaine. With* K *this victorie our men are ſo encouraged, that I am in hope the caſtle may bee defended vntill your comming, eſpecially the enemies batterie not ſo furiouſly now as before maintained. If I were relieued with certaine companies of freſh ſouldiors, or at leaſt with thoſe our two gallies, I would neuer thinke that this caſtle could bee taken from vs: in defence whereof, whileſt wee euery houre looke for helpe, wee haue ſpent both our men, and whatſoeuer warlike prouiſion wee had elſe. Wee are reſolued although it coſt vs all our liues, to goe thither, relying vpon you: who as wee hope for your deuotion and noble courage, will not bee vnmindfull of our health and welfare; but knowing the daunger whereinto wee muſt needes fall, if you ſhall deferre to ayd vs, will ſend vs out of hand certaine bands of men, eſpecially when they may ſo eaſily bee ſent: for now that the Turkes are departed from the Eaſt part of the iſland, our ſouldiors may bee landed at the* BLACKE ROCKS. *Our liues lie in your handes, on* L *whom (next vnto God) reſteth all our hope: wherefore wee moſt inſtantly requeſt you not to forſake vs: committing our ſelues, and all that ours is, to your compaſſion and protection. Fare you well from* MALTA *the* 17 *of Iune.*

Foure gallies ſent to the great maſter for the reliefe of Malta

Theſe letters receiued, and the diſtreſſe of the beſieged caſtle perceiued, the Viceroy was (as of right hee ought) greatly mooued, and made ſemblance as if he had been deſirous to haue brought foorth his whole fleet againſt the Turkes. But foraſmuch as the ſupply of ſhips from GENVA and SPAINE was not yet come, and that without them hee thought it not good to aduenture the fortune of a battell; he foorthwith ſent *Ioh. Cardona* with foure gallies, whereof two were of MALTA: and with *Cardona* ioyned one *Robles* campe-maſter, with a ſelect company of M Spaniards; with whom went alſo about eightie knights of MALTA, vvho ſtayed at MESSANA, awaiting ſome fit occaſion to paſſe ouer: Amongſt whom were theſe chiefe men of the Order, *Pariſot* the Great maſters nephew, *Vincentius Caraffa*, *Boninſcana* and *Maldonatus*, both Spaniards, *Centius* of AQVITANIA, and ſome others: who although letted by tempeſt and other occaſions,

A casions, they came too late to MALTA, as shall bee hereafter declared, yet serued they in great stead; and had they come in time, before the castle *S. Elmo* was lost, happily it might haue beene still kept.

The Turkes making no more account of so great a slaughter of their men, than of so many sheepe, desperatly renewed the fight, as men resolued to endure all extremities. And first they most horribly thundred day & night with their great ordinance vpon the castle: afterwards they assaulted the breaches with such a multitude and force, that if true valour and hope of immortalitie had not excluded all feare out of the hearts of the defendants, the terrour of the assault had enforced them either to haue fled or yeelded. Dreadfull was the fight, and had they not beene obstinately set down on both sides, the one to win the castle, the other to defend it, that day had
B ended the quarrell. Fiue houres endured that most terrible assault, at length the Turkes repulsed by the valour of the Christians, retired: yet did they not for all that passe the night following in quiet, but with their great ordinance did so beat the defendants, that they had much adoe to keepe the Turks from scaling the wals: which, that they should not then dare to attempt, was with exceeding endeuour prouided for by the Christians: of whom in this assault was lost two hundred, and of the Turks an infinit number. And *Dragut* himselfe, whilest he there performed the dutie both of a Generall, and most valiant souldior, got a blow on the head with a stone, whereof he in two dayes after died: his dead bodie was afterwards carried to TRIPOLIS, and there honourably buried.

A most terrible assault.

Dragut slaine

The commaunders of the Turkes armie, still more and more enraged with this valour of the
C Christians, and the slaughter of their men, gathering all their fleet together, commanded them to compasse about the castle, of purpose to giue thereunto their last assault, with all their forces both by sea and land; and to send new supplies of fresh souldiors one after another, vntill they had taken the castle. And therefore, they with great industry prepared bridges, ladders, engins, armour, weapons, shot, and whatsoeuer things else was needfull for the assault. Which *Valetta* perceiuing out of his castle *S. Angelo*, and fearing (as meet was) least they in the castle should not be able longer to endure so great a fury; called together in counsell his knights, two daies before the Turkes gaue their last assault: and told them, That they all as well as he, saw in what danger they which defended the castle *S. Elmo* were; and that he doubted not, but that euerie one of them (vpon a godly zeale and compassion) was no lesse mooued with the slaughter and
D danger of their fellowes and other their Christian souldiors, than with their owne: Wherefore he requested them, to declare what they thought best to be done for their safetie; yet so, as that they should not hastily determine any thing, that agreed not with the ancient valour and honor of their sacred militarie profession. Which motion once made, and their opinions in briefe deliuered, a decree was made, That forasmuch as the castle could not longer be holden, regard should be had for the safegard of them that were therein: for which purpose it was agreed, that twelue pinnaces should be sent to fetch them away. But before, three knights were chosen, who should in hast the night following go thither, and tell them what was in the counsell agreed vpon, and carefully to consider in what state the castle was: which if the defendants thought was to be abandoned, they should poison the water, & cloy the great ordinance, that it might not afterwards stand the Turks in stead. The three knights
E sent thither, was *Medina* a Spaniard, *Rocca* a Frenchman, and *Constantinus Castriot* an Italian; who not with out danger of their liues (being oftentimes shot at by the Turkes) got into the castle, and declared vnto them that were there in garrison, how carefull the Great master and the rest were of them. And they on their side, first of all gaue thanks to the Grand master and the rest, for the regard they had of them: and afterward concerning the castle, said, That if they considered the straightnesse of the place, the small number of the defendants, and multitude of the enemie, they should well perceiue in what danger they were, if the Turkes should often with such obstinacie renew the assault: yet forasmuch as they had euer hitherto felt the helpe of God so present, who had still mercifully defended them against the rage of the enemie, & wanted nothing needfull for the defence of the place; the
F keeping wherof they had requested of the Grand master as an honor, although they knew right well it could not without most manifest danger of their liues be holden: yet they would for all that, keep it to the last man. For that perhaps the like honorable occasion for them to shew themselues in, should neuer againe be offered: wherfore they had (as they said) resolued in that place, to spend their liues for the glory of God and the Christian religion. The course of this life (they said)

Three knights sent to view the state of the castle S. Elmo.

The resolute answere of them in the castle to the knights.

ſaid) was but ſhort, but that honor and fame was for euer: and whereas death is to all men pre- G
fined, it were to be wiſhed, that the life which is to nature due, ſhould rather ſeeme to be by vs
franckely giuen to God and our countrey, then reſerued as natures debt: Which if it ſhould ſo
happen, they would ſo vſe the matter, as that the barbarous enemy ſhould haue neither pleaſure
nor ioy, which ſhould not coſt him much bloud euen of his beſt ſouldiors. This they willed the
knights to tell the Great maſter, and to requeſt him not to be too carefull of them, but to pro-
miſe vnto himſelfe thoſe things of them which beſt beſeemed reſolute men, eſpecially of them
who had vowed themſelues to that ſacred warre. This anſwere of greater reſolution than for-
tune, receiued; the three knightes, when they had diligently viewed the caſtle, returned to the
Grand maſter: who calling to counſell his knights, and hauing heard the anſwere of the beſie-
ged, would needs heare alſo what opinion the three knights themſelues were of concerning the H
keeping of the caſtle: of whom *Caſtriot* was of opinion, That the place was ſtill to be defended,
and that if he were there to commaund, he would vndertake to performe it; and there rather to
loſe his life than to forſake it, after he had once taken vpon him the charge thereof. But *Rocca* the
French knight was farre of another mind, and ſaid plainly, that the place could not poſsibly be
holden againſt ſo ſtrong an enemie; and that if *Iulius Cæſar* himſelfe were aliue, & ſaw to what
ſtraight the place was brought (eſpecially al the rampiers being either beaten down or ſore ſha-
ken, & ſuch a power of obſtinate enemies lying round about it) he would neuer ſuffer ſo many
valiant ſoldiors to be loſt but quit the place, & reſerue his men to further ſeruice: for why it was
the part of valiant men to performe ſo much as was of men to be performed; but to ſtriue to do
more, was no manhood at all: Wherefore he thought it beſt to doe that which men vſe with I
members mortified, whoſe recouerie is deſperat; in which caſe we doubt not to make a ſeperati-
on, ſo to ſaue the reſt of the bodie with life. The Spaniſh knight in moſt part agreeing with *Ca-*
ſtriot, ſaid, That he thought it not good, that the place ſhould ſo eaſily be forſaken; firſt, for
that the ditches and bulwarkes were yet defencible; and then, becauſe he ſaw ſo great a conſent
amongſt the defendants, and ſuch a cheerefullneſſe to withſtand the enemie, which thing (as he
ſaid) preſaged victorie.

The three knights of diuers opinions concerning the keeping of the caſtle S. Elmo.

Theſe opinions of the knights thorowly in counſell debated, and euery particular wel way-
ed, it ſeemed good to the greater part, that they which were in the caſtle ſhould for certain daies
yet hold it out; eſpecially becauſe it was not the manner of the knights of the Order eaſily to
abandon their ſtrong holds, but rather to keepe them to the laſt, that euen therein the barbarous K
enemie might perceiue with whom he had to doe, and ſo ſee his pride abated. For if they ſhould
haue forſaken the place, they might haue beene thought to haue done it for feare: whereby the
enemies inſolencie might haue beene encreaſed, and the honourable Order of thoſe ſacred
knights diſgraced.

But the Turkes intentiue to that they had before determined, the three and twentith day of
Iune aſſembling all their forces both by ſea and land round about the caſtle, in the dead time of
the night on euery ſide ſet vp ſcaling ladders, made bridges, wrought mines, and with two and
thirtie great pieces of artillerie battered the reſt of the wals yet ſtanding, and preſently gaue a
moſt terrible aſſault. The defendants on the other ſide beat downe ſome, repulſed other, ſlew
many, euer more carfull how to wound the enemie, than to ſaue themſelues: and where he L
preſſed faſteſt on, there to ſhew their greateſt valour. Great were the outcries made on both ſides
mixt with exhortation, mirth, and mourning; the face of the whole fight was diuers, vncertaine,
cruell, and dreadfull: and now it was the third houre of the day, when ſtill the victorie ſtood
doubtfull; and had not the furie of the great ordinance beene ſo tirrible, that it now had beaten
downe all the wals vnto the very rocke wheron the caſtle ſtood, the defendants might for ſome
longer time haue endured the enemies force. But the very rocke bared both of wals and defen-
dants, and more than foure hundred ſlain, a man could ſcarcely now ſhew himſelfe, but he was
preſently ſtrucke in pieces. *Monſerratus* Gouernour of the caſtle, and *Garas* of E V B Œ A, men of
equall valour, integretie, and honour, were both ſlaine with one ſhot; for a ſhort and tranſitorie
life made partakers of immortalitie together. Yet the reſt which ſtood in defence of the caſtle, M
nothing terrified with ſo great a loſſe and ſlaughter of their fellowes, but augmented rather as it
were with new courage from aboue, fought with greater force then before, ouerthrew the Turks
enſigns now ſet vp in the caſtle, ſlew the enſign-bearers, captaines, and colonels; now reſpe-
cting nothing more, but honourably to lay downe their liues for their religion and the obtai-
ning

The Turkes furiouſly aſſault the citie.

A ning of immortall fame. By this time the ſunne was mounted to the middle of heauen, great was the heat, and men exceeding vvearie; the murdering ſhot neuer ceaſed, and ſuch vvas the multitude of the enemie, that hee ſent in freſh men in ſtead of them that were wearied or vvounded. On the other ſide, the ſmall number of the Chriſtians, and thoſe weakened vvith labor, watching, thirſt, and wounds, did what men might; yet at length were ouercome by a greater force, and ſo the caſtle by the Turks woon, but with ſuch ſlaughter of their men, that it was a wonder that ſo many ſhould be ſlaine of ſo few. The defendants were all ſlaine, euery man, in valiant fight. *The caſtle of S. Elmo taken by the Turke.*

Here may I not in ſilence paſſe ouer the inhumane and more than barbarous crueltie of the Turks againſt the dead bodies of the ſlaine knights, that therby may appeare, that cruelty neuer B wanteth wheron to ſhew it ſelfe mercileſſe, yea euen after death. The Turks after they had taken the caſtle, finding certaine of the knights yet breathing, and but halfe dead, firſt cut their hearts out of their breaſts, and then their heads from their bodies; after that they hanged them vp by the heeles in their red clokes with white croſſes, (which manner of attire they after an auncient cuſtome vſe in time war, as they doe blacke in time of peace) in the ſight of the caſtles *S. Angelo* and *S. Michaell.* And yet *Muſtapha* the Turkes Generall not ſo contented, commaunded them afterwards to be faſt bound together, & ſo caſt into the ſea, whoſe dead bodies were in few daies after by the ſurge of the ſea caſt vp in the hauen MAIOR, and knowne by their friends, were by the commandement of the ſorrowful Great maſter honourably buried. With which the enemies moſt barbarous crueltie he was ſo moued, that he commanded that no Turke ſhould from that C time be taken priſoner, but to be preſently ſlaine. And therupon all that were before taken, were foorthwith put to the ſword, and their heads caſt ouer the wals on that ſide towards the enemie. From the beginning of the ſiege to the taking of the caſtle, of the Chriſtians were ſlaine a thouſand three hundred, amongſt whom were a hundred and thirtie of the ſacred knights of the Order, all worthy to be regiſtred in the booke of euer laſting fame. *Barbarous crueltie exerciſed by the Turkes vpon the dead bodies of the knights.*

The caſtle *S. Elmo* thus loſt, *Valetta* although his mind (as hee had good cauſe) was inwardly attainted with exceeding griefe, yet made ſemblant otherwiſe, becauſe hee would not daunt the minds of his ſouldiors: telling them, that nothing was happened vnprouided for or vnforeſeen. *This was* (as hee ſaid) *the will of God, and the chance of warre, that ſometimes one, ſometimes another ſhould be ouercome: and that cowardiſe, not ſuch valour as was in them that were gone, gaue occaſion to* D *liuing friends to lament: yet that the enemy was not for that to be feared, who had alſo receiued ſuch a loſſe, as he might therby rather ſeeme conquered, than a victorious conquerour: wheras the loſſe of his knights was recompenced with honor and immortalitie, things of themſelues ſufficient to enflame all noble minds to behaue themſelues valiantly. As for himſelfe* (hee ſaid) *that truſting not in his owne ſtrength, but in the helpe of Almightie God, he had not yet caſt off the hope of victorie ouer the reliques of the diſcomfited enemy; and that he well hoped, they were all of the ſame mind, wherein he moſt earneſtly requeſted them to perſiſt vnto the end.* When he had thus ſaid, hee being a man armed againſt all fortunes, withdrew himſelfe a little aſide: where caſting many things in his troubled mind, he determined to ſend letters to *Petrus Meſquita*, Gouernor of the citie of MELITA, to certifie him and the knights of the Order that were at MESSANA, and the Viceroy, of the loſſe of *S. Elmo:* the copie wherof, E becauſe that in them euidently appeareth the Chriſtian minde of him the Great maſter, I haue thought good here to ſet downe as followeth: *Valetta encourageth his ſouldiors after the loſſe of the caſtle S. Elmo.*

Whileſt theſe knights are ſetting forward, in the meane time chaunced the miſerable misfortune of the caſtle S. Elmo: *which although it brought vnto vs that griefe you may eaſily imagine, wee for all that, as if it had happened by ſome ſecret appointment of God, haue taken it in that part, that he as a moſt mercifull father purpoſeth thereby to warne vs, but not vtterly to deſtroy vs. Neither do I thinke it lawfull to doubt of his mercie and power. Yet for all that, I may neuertheleſſe complaine, that wee are of them forſaken of whom it leaſt beſeemed. So that in the ſpace of ſeuen and thirtie daies, wherein our moſt valiant ſouldiours endured all the force of the enemie (which truely was done rather* F *by the power of God than of man) we were holpen of our owne (which owe ſo much vnto vs) not ſo much as with the leaſt helpe, which they might oftentimes haue ſent vs. But I liſt to aſcribe it whatſoeuer it is, to God, of whom alone as wee haue hitherto receiued ſo many good things, ſo reſt we in hope hereafter to receiue alſo. For, for any thing that I can ſee, wee muſt not now truſt to mans helpe: for as much as we could by no letters, no diligence, no prayers, no admonitions, and to bee briefe, by no commaunds* *Valetta his letters to the Gouernor of Melita.*

moue

moue them, who of all others ought moſt to haue obeyed it. The ſhortneſſe of the time ſuffereth vs not to G
write to the Viceroy of theſe things, it ſhall bee your part to certifie both him and other our friendes there-
of: who if they had obeyed our commaund, or aided vs with neuer ſo ſmall a ſupplie of ſouldiers, happily
wee had not loſt the caſtle S. Elmo: *in defence whereof wee haue ſpent the beſt part of our ſouldiours.*
Wherefore except the Viceroy make haſt to deliuer vs from this ſiege, I feare that he cannot in time come:
but eſpecially if wee bee heere beſieged before the comming of thoſe our ſmall helpes which wee as in a
dreame haue promiſed vnto our ſelues, and which we now ſcarce hope will be in time preſent. For all that,
wee doe not diſtruſt of God his loue and prouidence: by whoſe diuine inſpiration the rare courage of the
Viceroy being in ſhort time ſtirred vp, will haſten hither to relieue vs. For all our welfare conſiſteth in ce-
leritie. Our enemies hauing drawne all their fleet into the hauen Marza Moxet *are buſied in clean-*
ſing the caſtle, and repairing the breaches, that they may afterward the better vſe them againſt vs. Wher- H
fore vpon the ſight of theſe our letters, ſend vnto vs the captaines Catherine, Belcacar, Belmeſt, *and*
Zoricius, *with their companies, that wee may vſe their faithfull and valiant ſeruice. God of his mer-*
cie ſend vs aide from ſome place, and keepe you. Fare you well from our caſtle S. Angelo, *the 24. of*
June, 1565.

Meſquita hauing receiued theſe letters, commanded a galliot foorthwith to be launched, and therein imbarked *Maſius Codonellus*, one of the knights; to whom he deliuered both the letters of the Grand maſter to him, and others of his owne, almoſt of the ſame purport, directed to the knights of the order which lay at Messana, requeſting him with all ſpeed poſſible to paſſe ouer with them into Sicilia. I

Muſtapha Baſſa ſendeth meſſengers to the great maſter.

In the meane time *Muſtapha* the Turkes Generall ſent a meſſenger to *Valetta*, and with him an old Spaniſh captiue, with promiſe of libertie if he would goe with his meſſenger to the towne, to talke with *Valetta* concerning the yeelding vp thereof, and to trie if he would by any meanes come to agreement: who comming to the towne, the Turke ſtill waiting at the gate, the Chriſtian was let in, and brought to the Great maſter, to whom he declared what he had in charge from the Baſſa. But as ſoone as *Valetta* heard of the name of compoſition and yeelding, he was

The anſwer of the great maſter to the Turkes meſſengers.

ſo filled with indignation, that had he not been a Chriſtian, he would preſently haue commaunded him to haue been hanged. Wherefore he gaue him choice either to tarry ſtill in the towne, if he thought ſo good, or els forthwith to returne and tell his companion, that if he got him not packing quickly, he would ſend him farther off with a great ſhot. With this ſhort anſwere the K
Turke ſuddenly returned into the campe. Whereupon *Muſtapha* fell into ſuch a rage, that hee openly proteſted, neuer from that to forbeare any kind of crueltie againſt the Chriſtians.

Philip Laſcaris fleeth from the Turks to the caſtle S. Michaell.

There was then with *Muſtapha* one *Philip* of the moſt noble Græcian familie of *Laſcaris*, who of a boy taken priſoner by the Chriſtians in Patras, a citie of Achaia, and by them honeſtly and courteouſly vſed, was therefore euer after well affected toward the Chriſtians: He priuie to many of *Muſtaphaes* deſignes, by a certaine diuine motion thought he ſhould not a litle profit the Chriſtians by reuolting vnto them: wherefore he reſolued to flie vnto the caſtle of *S. Michaell.* Which thing when he had oftentimes attempted, at length the firſt of Iuly hee caſt himſelfe into the ſea (for by land he could no way eſcape) and ſwum to the caſtle, not without danger of his life: for diſcouered by the Turks, he was many times ſhot at both with their arrowes and L
ſmall ſhot. He, brought to the Great maſter, reuealed vnto him many of the enemies ſecrets, and alſo aduiſed him what was to be done at the point of *S. Michaels*, to fruſtrate the enemies purpoſe for the aſſailing of that place; with many other things, which were vnto the defendants no ſmall helpe: and afterwards as often as need was, during the ſiege, fought valiantly againſt the Turkes.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Codonellus* ſent as wee haue before ſaid into Sicilia, came in ſafetie to Messana, where he found the Chriſtian fleet not yet ready to relieue the diſtreſſed Maltæſes; for the Spaniſh ſhips were not yet come, and *Iohn Andreas Auria* with eight and twentie ſhips was ready to returne to take in foure thouſand footmen, taken vp in Etruria by *Capinus Vitellius*. Which backewardneſſe the knights of the Order conſidering, and what M
danger was in delay, after they had well debated the matter amongſt themſelues, they reſolued by the power of God by all meanes poſſible to helpe their brethren. And for this expedition choſe two moſt fit Generals of their owne fellowes, the Commandors of Messana and Baroli, who forthwith went to *Garzias* the Viceroy, declaring vnto him what things the ſacred knights

knights of their Order had done, not for the king of SPAINE only, but for the Christian commonweale, and also what great charge they had bin at the yeare before in the Pinionian expedition, wherein they had neither spared ships, victuall, nor munition, neither their owne liues, to profit the king and the Christian commonweale. Besides this, they besought him well to consider, that the losse of MALTA concerned not the sacred knights only, but all ITALIE, and especially SICILIA, for the neerenesse of so troublesome and puissant an enemie. For these and other like reasons, which the shortnes of the time suffered them not to rehearse, they requested of him foure thousand footmen, with whom all the knights of the order which were there, and many other noble and voluntarie men would make all possible speed to relieue the besieged, which they had before in vaine attempted; with which strength they were in good hope, if not to repulse the enemie, or to recouer that was alreadie lost, yet at last to stop & stay his farther proceeding, vntill such time as he hauing rigged vp and brought forth all his fleet, might set vpon the Turks, and (as was to be hoped) vanquish & disperse them. But whileſt the viceroy hauing heard their request, considereth what answere to make, a messenger came vnto him from SPAINE, but vvith vvhat command from the king (although men ghessed diuersly) could not be known. But vpon his comming, the viceroy gaue the knights this cold answere, That he could not graunt what they requested, for that in so doing he should disfurnish his fleet, & not be able afterwards to relieue them as he desired: but if it pleased them to transport the knights with part of the bishops souldiors into the Iſland, they might so doe with their owne two gallies they had alreadie, vvherunto he vvould also ioyne another of his owne. The knights when they could obtain no more, accepted of that vvhich vvas offered.

The knights of Malta craue aid of the Viceroy.

The cold answer of the Viceroy to the knights.

Whileſt these gallies are setting forward, those foure gallies (vvherof we haue before spoken) wherin vvere embarked foureſcore knights and six hundred other souldiors, hauing at sea suffered many troubles by the space of twentie daies, could not as yet arriue at MALTA: and because the Viceroy had commaunded, That they should not land, except they first knew vvhether the castle *S.* ELMO were still holden by the Christians, they sent out a frigot to land, promising that day and the next to tarrie in the sea for her returne. In the meane time a great tempest suddenly arising, it so fell out, that the frigot could not at the appointed time returne; vvherefore the gallies which expected her comming, fearing least she had been either by tempest lost, or by the enemie intercepted, retired to POZALO, a port vpon the coast of SICILIA neereſt to MALTA, there to expect some good newes: vvhere as soone as they had put in, they vnderstood that *S.* ELMO vvas yet defended: wherupon they put to sea againe, vvith purpose to haue arriued at MALTA. But when they were within two leagues of the place where they thought to haue landed, they saw a fire there, which caused them to mistrust that the place was possessed of the enemie, and that he lay therabout to intercept them: wherefore they returned again to POZALO; where now vnderstanding of the French knight, come from MALTA, that that fire was made by his commaundment, as a signe, that they might without feare haue come forward; they with all speed made again for the same place, and at the length the nine and twentieth day of Iune about midnight landed at the Black Rocks on the South side of the Iſland toward APPRYCKE, and vnseene of any, got in hast to the citie MALTA, vvhere they were ioyfully receiued, and there stayed to expect what the Great master should commaud. In the meane time it fortuned, a great foggie mist (which seldome times there chanceth) to arise so thicke, that a man could hardly see for it: at vvhich time a boy of about twelue yeares old looking by chance out of a window in the castle of MELITA, suddenly as one afraid, cried out, That he saw a Turke going from the citie to the castle of *S.* MICHAEL. Which thing some of the knights hearing, ran presently out that way, and found a Greeke of the citie of MELITA, who brought backe and examined (for that without the Gouernours passe it was not lawfull for any man to go out of the citie) confessed, That his purpose vvas to haue aduertised the Turks of the comming of those souldiors, that so they might haue intercepted them as they should haue come from MELITA to the Grand master: for vvhich treason he vvas as he had well deserued cut in foure pieces. Three daies after, this new supplie come from SICILIA, in the first watch of the night came all in safetie from MELITA to the Great master, except two or three boies, who charged with armour and other baggage, were not able to keepe way with the rest. It is not to be told how much the besieged reioyced at the comming of these their friends, and especially *Valetta*, who seeing the floure of his knights and other souldiors, as it were by diuine prouidence come vnto him;

A traitor taken and executed at Melita.

The souldiors new come out of Sicilia, come to the Great Master.

with teares trickling downe his cheekes, and his eies caſt vp to heauen, ſaid: G

The praier of Valetta. *I thanke thee (O heauenly Father) which heareſt my prayers, and forſakeſt not this thy little flocke, beſet round with moſt rauening Wolues: Theſe are the workes of thine euerlaſting goodneſſe, mercie and prouidence.*

Theſe new come ſouldiors, requeſted of the Great maſter as a reward of their paines, that they might bee put in garriſon into the towne *S. Michael*, a place now moſt laied vnto by the Turks: which thing (he commending their forwardneſſe) eaſily granted: yet for all that remoued not the old garriſon. Theſe freſh and couragious ſouldiors, deſirous of nothing more than to fight with the enemie, the next day ſallied out, and hauing ſlaine two hundred of the Turkes, and wounded as many more, without loſſe of a man returned, euery mans ſword imbrued vvith the bloud of his enemie. Which thing *Muſtapha* the Turkes Generall hearing, knew it vvas H they vvhich lately came into the towne; and therupon fell in rage with his captains, as that they had by their negligence entred. But the ſuſpition grew moſt vpon them which vvere appointed for the keeping of the vttermoſt part of the Iſland: vvhich was the more increaſed, for that three galliots of ALGIERS had withdrawne themſelues away; ſo that he neither truſted them nor the renegate Chriſtians, vvho as occaſion ſerued, fled daily from him. For vvhich cauſe, he gaue out proclamation, That none of them ſhould lie by night out of the gallies, & that ſuch as did otherwiſe, ſhould therfore be burnt or impaled vpon ſtakes: and ſo changing his warders, appointed *Salec* with his galliots, whom he thought to be more faithfull for the keeping of the iſland. And that neither they nor the Chriſtians ſhould be able to attempt any thing, he chained togither diuers gallies in the entrance of the hauen MARZA MOXET, and cauſed the reſt of the fleet to ride I neerer togither than before. But becauſe exceeding many vvere at that time ſicke in the Turkes campe, of the flix and other diſeaſes, three places vvere aſſigned for them; one for the wounded men neere vnto AQVA MARTIA, guarded vvith two thouſand Turkes; another in the poupes of their ſhips and gallies for the Turks voluntaries; and the third amongſt the banks, where the enforced Chriſtians were cured. At the ſame time, *Muſtapha* appointed *Ochiall Baſſa* Gouernour of TRIPOLIS, in ſtead of *Dragut* before ſlaine: who going thither vvith fiue gallies, and hauing ſet all things in order there, returned againe vnto the campe. With him the Baſſa had ſent two ſhips loaded vvith corne to TRIPOLIS, there to make bread, vvhereof they began to feele ſome vvant in the campe. He alſo ſent *Zaloch*, one of his Colonels to *Solyman*, to certifie him of the vvinning of the caſtle *S. Elmo*, and to deliuer vnto him the diſcription of the iſle of MALTA, as K they found it at their arriual: and farther, to declare vnto him, That he found the Malteſes ſtronger, and better prouided, than vvas at his ſetting forth ſuppoſed: Wherefore if it vvere his pleaſure longer to continue the ſiege, he ſhould ſend a new ſupplie of men, victuall, and other vvarlike prouiſion; vvhich if he did, he would then be in hope to take the other ſtrong places of the iſland alſo, though not ſo ſoone as vvas at the firſt ſuppoſed: and that in the meane time, vvhileſt he expected anſwere, he would not faile to doe vvhat he poſſibly might. And becauſe he vvould not ſeeme to haue vvritten an vntruth, he began his batterie in fourteene places, with ſeauentie great pieces of artillerie, amongſt which vvas three moſt huge baſilisks: for from the Gallowes promontorie to AQVA MARTIA, and from thence to the caſtle *S. Elmo*, wherein he had placed three hundred Ianizaries, the Turkes had incloſed all that compaſſe vvith ſundrie bul- L warks, trenches, and mounts, from whence they with their thundring ſhot, day and night inceſſantly battered the towns and caſtles of *S. Michael* and *S. Angelo*, ouerthrew the vvals, beat down the bulwarks, & brake down the houſes in ſuch terrible manner, that ſcarce any could be ſafe therein: which of all others moſt troubled the fearfull women and children. But the Turks in their trenches reſted in far more ſafetie: yet ſo, that they durſt not ſtray far out of the campe, but truſting vpon their multitude; and not that manys time vvithout their loſſe, being cut off by the horſemen of the garriſon of MALTA, vvho were euer readie at their heeles.

Ochiall Baſſa made Gouernor of Tripolis.

A terrible batterie.

When the loſſe of the caſtle *S. Elmo* was knowne at ROME, the citie was filled with mourning and heauineſſe; ſome were ſorie for the diſhonour, otherſome feared leaſt the calamities of the Malteſes ſhould redound vnto themſelues. There was alſo amongſt others, a certaine en- M uious and foule mouthed kind of men, altogither ignorant and vnacquainted with martiall affaires, who ſhamed not to lay the blame of the loſſe of *S. Elmo* vpon the Grand maſter: whom both his owne vallour, with the worthie teſtimonie of ſo many famous and valiant men as were there preſent with him; as alſo this hiſtorie, gathered out of the true light of things then done,

ſhall

A ſhall both for the time preſent, and for all poſteritie ſufficiently acquite of ſo falſe a ſlander. *But he will eaſily blemiſh another mans name, that ſpareth not his owne: neither can ignorance rightly iudge of the counſels of the skilfull, or cowardiſe of valiant deeds.*

But to returne againe to our purpoſe: we ſaid before, that three gallies were made readie at MESSANA; in ſetting forth whereof, they which had the charge vſed ſuch diligence, that the ſeauenth of Iuly, they departed out of harbour. In them (beſides the knights of the order) was embarked ſix hundred Spaniards, and three hundred of the great biſhops ſouldiors, conducted by *Pompeius Columna*; the mariners were part hired, part ſlaues, to whom libertie was promiſed if they would luſtily doe their endeuour to get into the hauen, and to be accounted of as the reſt of the ſouldiors were. And becauſe they would relieue the beſieged, not with men onely, but B with victuall alſo, they put into the ſame gallies fiue hundred buſhels of wheat, beſide gunpowder, ſaltpeter, and lead for ſhot. And although it was thought a moſt hard matter, by the hauen it ſelfe to enter the iſland, the Turks poſſeſſing both it and all the places thereabouts; neuertheleſſe, there was in the knights ſuch an earneſt deſire to relieue their brethren, that they promiſed both to themſelues and others, all things eaſie and ſafe: but when they began to approach the iſland, they ſent a ſcout before to vnderſtand by ſignes from the caſtle of S. *Angelo*, whether they were to proceed forward or not: who comming ſo farre that they might diſcouer the ſigne, perceiued thereby that they ſhould retire. Which thing the Turks perceiuing alſo, preſently with the ſmoake of their great ordinance and other things, they ſo obſcured the aire as with a thicke cloud, in ſuch ſort, as that thoſe ſignes were no more to be diſcerned; but all in vaine, for C why, our men had alreadie deſcried them: ſo thoſe three gallies returned againe into SICILIA. For *Valetta* that good prince, thought it not meet to bring ſo many of the ſacred knights, ſo many noble gentlemen & valiant ſoldiors, into a moſt manifeſt danger: for he ſaw certaine of the Turks gallies to lie by night in the mouth of the hauen MARZA MOXET, at a place called the Little ſands, to impeach the going in or out of the hauen MAIOR. About the ſame time, they which lay in garriſon in the citie MELITA, hearing of the notable ſallie made by the ſouldiors lately come; and taking heart thereupon, at ſuch time as the Turks were fetching in a certaine bootie of cattell, the horſemen purſued them; and hauing ſlain diuers of them, recouered the prey: and yet not ſo contented, chaſed them euen to their camp. But the other Turks ſeeing their fellowes flying in ſuch haſt towards them, raiſed an alarum, ran to the Generals tent, and for that time D ceaſed their batterie.

Three gallies depart from Meſſana with aid towards Malta.

The gallies vpon a ſigne giuen returne backe.

The Great maſter probably coniecturing, that the Turkes would in ſhort time aſſault both the towne and caſtle of *S. Michaell*, thought good by his preſence to encourage and ſtrengthen the garriſon; and therfore was about to haue gone thither by a bridge made of boats from the one point of the land to the other, between *S. Michaels* and *S. Angelo*: but quickely vnderſtanding the certaintie thereof, returned againe into his caſtle. Some there be that thinke, For him to haue ſo done, had bin a venturous part and full of danger, and therfore to haue bin diſcommended: for that great things are performed, not ſo much by ſtrength of bodie as of mind, by pollitike counſell and direction, wherwith a Generall (although abſent) may yet with his forces be alwaies preſent: but the Generall once loſt (which may eaſily happen, if he will preſent his E perſon to the danger) we ſee moſt commonly all fall togither with him, no otherwiſe than doth all parts of the bodie when the ſoule departeth: But otherſome are of contrarie opinion, That the Generals preſence, eſpecially in great dangers, is both praiſe worthy and moſt neceſſary; for that he as the ſoule, cannot prouide for or rule the bodie, except it be preſent, yea placed therin: and that *Valetta* in ſo doing, followed the examples of the greateſt kings and moſt famous Generals; as of *Alexander* the great, *Iulius Cæſar*, *Themiſtocles*, *Marius*, and others: whoſe words vnto their ſouldiors vvere theſe, *I my ſelfe will be your conducter in the field, in the battell partaker of the danger with you, you ſhalbe in all things as my ſelfe.* Beſides that, who knoweth not, that as in other things, ſo moſt of all in martiall affaires, all things are better, more orderly and more eaſily done when the maſter is preſent; neither was the learned Poet his meaning any thing elſe, when in the F wars betwixt the Latines and the Rutilians, he ſaith, *Vrget præſentia Turni?* wherupon they concluded, that the Great maſter in going, had done both valiantly, wiſely, and according to his dutie. But this we leaue for martiall men to determine.

At the ſame time the king of ALGIERS came to aid the Turkes with ſeuen gallies and ten galliots, and in them 2200 ſoldiors: who ſorie that he was not there at the beginning, and deſi-

The king of Algiers commeth to aid the Turkes

rous to do ſome notable act, and withall to make proofe of the valour of his ſouldiors, requeſted the great Baſſa to beſtow vpon him the firſt place in the beſieging the caſtle *S. Michaell*: which he not onely graunted, but ioyned vnto his forces two thouſand of his owne beſt ſouldiors. Theſe things obtained, he commaunded ninetie ſmall veſſels by deuices to be carried ouer land out of the port MARZA MOXET to AQVA MARTIA, for that he purpoſed on that ſide to beſiege the caſtle by water. But *Valetta* perceiuing the enemies purpoſe, both by ſeeing that was done, and alſo aduertiſed therof before by a Chriſtian fugitiue; preſently called vnto him two faithfull and skilfull ſhipmaſters of MALTA, and imparting the matter vnto them, demanded what they thought beſt to be done to keep the Turks from landing, as it ſeemed they purpoſed at the wals foot. They quickly conceiuing the matter, anſwered, That in their opinion, if a chaine were made of maſts and ſaile-yards as ſparres ioyned togither with yron rings, and ſo drawne all alongſt from the corner of the caſtle of *S. Angelo* to that place where the enemie thought to land, their purpoſe might be ſo defeated. This their deuice ſo pleaſed the Great maſter, that the night following ſuch a chaine was made, and faſt mored in the appointed place. The Turks ſo ſoone as it was day perceiuing this barre, ſtood as men doubfull, not knowing how by any meanes to land their men, as they had before purpoſed. Whileſt they ſtood ſo abaſhed, a Chriſtian fugitiue, a moſt deſperat villaine (in which kind of men fooliſh hardneſſe is accounted a vertue, and deſperation conſtancie) came to the king, and promiſed him to break the chaine, and ſo with a hatchet in his hand caſt himſelfe into the ſea, after whom followed two or three moe to helpe him: who ſwimming to the chaine, got vp vpon it, and began to hew apace with their hatchets. Which the Chriſtians beholding, ſuddenly fiue or ſix of the Malteſes ſwam thither with their drawne ſwords in their hands; & hauing ſlaine two of them, cauſed the other to flie: after which time none of the Turks was ſo hardie as to attempt the ſame. The barbarous king for all that gaue not ouer his purpoſe ſo, but with wonderfull diligence prepared for the ſiege, which the fifteenth day of Iuly began both by ſea and land. But the defendants turning their great ordinance vpon that place from whence the galliots came, with the furie thereof (in the ſpace of three houres, which the aſſault endured) ſlew two thouſand Turks and ſunke twelue of the galliots: the reſt comming as far as the chaine, when they could get no farther nor land their men, turned their prows vpon the corner of the caſtle, but were glad at laſt to retire and leaue that they came for vndone. The aſſault by land alſo endured fiue houres, wherein many of the Turks were ſlaine, and of the defendants two hundred: amongſt whom was *Federicus* the Viceroy of SICILIA his ſonne, ſtruck in ſunder with a great ſhot, *Gordius* a Frenchman, *Franciſcus Sanoghera*, and his nephew *Iohn*, Spaniards; all knights of the Order. *Medina* was alſo wounded, whereof he afterward died. But *Valetta* conſidering into what danger the ſtate of MALTA was like to fall, if he ſhould be conſtrained to fight many ſuch fights, where his ſoldiors wearied day and night without reſt, were ſtill to incounter with freſh men, & heard nothing of any aid or new ſupplie: the ſeuenteenth day of Iuly he ſent a meſſenger into SICILIA, who ſwam from the caſtle to the fartheſt part of the bay to AQVA MARTIA, and from thence eſcaped vnknowne thorow the middeſt of the enemies vnto the citie of MELITA, and ſo in a little frigot came to MESSANA; by him the Great maſter ſent letters to the Viceroy, requeſting him to ſend him his owne two gallies, with thoſe knights which were at MESSANA, and ſuch other ſouldiors as might in them be tranſported: willing them, that as ſoon as they came to the Iſland, they ſhould houer off aloofe before the hauen, readie vpon a ſigne giuen to thruſt in. The ſame time that this meſſenger arriued at MESSANA, came thither alſo the fleet from SPAINE, wherein were many of the knights of the Order from diuers nations. The Viceroy deſirous to ſend thoſe two gallies to *Valetta*, ſent letters before vnto him in ſecret caracters by two frigots wherein he certified him that he would ſend the gallies, requiring to haue from him ſome ſigne, whereby they might at their comming know whether they ſhould enter or retire: which frigots taking diuers courſes, one of them laded with medicines, as was afterwards known, was intercepted by the enemie: the other although ſhe came in ſafetie to MELITA, yet for as much as all the paſſages betwixt the caſtle of *S. Michaell* and the citie of MELITA were certaine daies before by the diligence of the enemie ſhut vp, and three which had vſed to paſſe too and fro, intercepted and moſt cruelly executed, and beſides that the hauen ſtraightly kept; the knights of MESSANA could haue no further direction from the Great maſter for the ſafe ſending of the two gallies: yet neuertheleſſe, becauſe he had requeſted them, and they themſelues were of the ſame opinion (as he

A deſperat fugitiue.

The king of Algiers notably repulſed both by ſea and land.

A hard ſhift to carrie newes.

A he had before written) that where all is in queſtion, the aduenture of a little part is leſſe to be feared; they thought it good to aduenture them: yet with this regard, not to expoſe all thoſe knights to ſo great a danger, but of them all to ſend onely fortie, with a conuenient number of other ſouldiors, and with them *Salazar* a Spaniſh captain was ſent by the Viceroy to be landed in the Iſland of GAVLOS, who ſhould afterwards from thence in a boat (for that purpoſe towed along by the gallies) paſſe ouer into the Iſland of MALTA as a ſpie, to take view both of the citie and enemies campe.

In the meane time the Turks mindfull of the loſſe receiued in the aſſault of the caſtle S. *Michael*, and deſirous of reuenge, did ſo violently batter the caſtle with their great ordinance, that what the defendants repaired by night, that they ſtill beat downe againe by day: and in time of
B the batterie made a bridge, which the twentieth day of Iuly before the Sun riſing they laid ouer the ditch, that they might as if it had bin vpon euen ground come to fight hand to hand with the Chriſtians. Which ſeene and quickly perceiued what danger it might bring, by and by *Pariſot* the Great maſters nephew, and *Agleria*, both knights, with certaine mercinarie ſouldiours ſallied out to haue burnt the bridge, but were ſo receiued of the Turkes, that they were almoſt all ſlaine togither with *Pariſot* and *Agleria*, and yet the exploit vnperformed. The Turkes without ceaſing continued their furious batterie vntill the eight and twentie of Iuly, which day in the afternoone they in diuers places aſſaulted the caſtle, thrice they with freſh and new ſupplies relieued their repulſed and wearied ſouldiors, and ſo fiercely maintained the aſſault, that they made no doubt but that day to win the caſtle. But the defendants with no leſſe reſolution withſtood
C them, repulſing them with their weapons, with ſhot, fire, and force, and at length enforced them with no ſmall loſſe of their men to retire from their wals. This victorie ſo encouraged the beſieged, that now they made ſmall reckoning of the enemie: but for as much as our men alwaies ſpared their great ordinance but in time to fight, & ſallied not out as they were wont, the Turkes thought that the garriſon was but weake, and that ſhot and pouder grew ſcarce in the caſtle. Yet deceiued in both, for that it was rather of purpoſe than for want ſo commaunded by the Great maſter: who hearing nothing of the comming of any aid, and ſeeing the enemie to giue dayly more fierce aſſaults, would not vainely ſpend his moſt neceſſarie helpes. The Turkes perceiuing what little good they had done with their often aſſaults, determined now to proone what might be done by vndermining the caſtle; and had almoſt brought one of their mines to perfection, be-
D fore it was by the Chriſtians diſcouered: and to the intent they ſhould the leſſe marke it, they cauſed two gallies to come as neere as they could to the wals, and to batter that place, in hope that whileſt our men gazed vpon that was done openly, they ſhould the leſſe regard what they were working in ſecret, that ſo they might in the meane time more eaſily get into the caſtle. But the beſieged carefull of all that was to be cared for, perceiuing their purpoſe, with a counter-mine defeated their mine, & by the couragiouſnes of certain of their ſouldiors, but eſpecially of one ancient, draue out the enemie, who hauing caſt certaine pots of wild fire before him into the mine, and following preſently after with a piece of fireworke in his hand, forced them out. For which good ſeruice he was by the Great maſter rewarded with a chaine of gold of fiue pound weight: and becauſe of vertue ſpringeth vertue, which ſtill reſteth vpon difficulties, the next day,
E which was the firſt of Auguſt, the bridge which we ſaid the enemie had made ouer the ditch, was by a ſallie made by the defendants burnt downe with fire and gunpouder caſt vpon it: which was in good time done, for the next day, the Sunne now declining, the Turks againe aſſaying that part of the caſtle where *Carolus Rufus* had the charge, were by our men valiantly repulſed. This aſſault endured three houres, in which time three hundred of the Turks were there ſlaine; and of the knights *Rufus* himſelfe and *Bareſus* with certaine mercinarie ſouldiors. At this time the Chriſtians were by the enemie ſo ſhut in with the multitude of great ordinance, that they could not ſo much as look into the ditch or ſhew themſelues, much leſſe ſallie out, but they were by and by ſet off. Yet did they not for all that make ſpare of their liues, when occaſion was giuen them to performe any notable exploit: as appeared by *Calderonius* a Spaniard, who ſeeing ſome
F viewing that part of the wall, which the enemie had moſt battered and ſhaken at the caſtle bulwarke, doubted not to ſallie out, but was preſently taken with a bullet and ſlaine: which miſchance when it might ſeeme of right to haue terrified the reſt from attempting the like, did indeed the more incenſe them; ſo that when they ſaw the enemie exceeding buſie in filling the ditch, they, reſolutly ſet downe to offer themſelues to moſt aſſured death rather than to fall into

A bridge made ouer the caſtle ditch by the Turkes.

The Turkes repulſed.

A mine of the Turks defeated.

The bridge made by the Turkes burnt.

the hands of the mercileſſe enemie, agreed to ſallie out by night, and to meet with his deſignes. G
Whereupon an hundred, part knights, part other ſouldiours, ſallyng forth, cauſed the enemie to forſake the ditch and betake himſelfe to flight, of whom they ſlew about foureſcore, and loſt of their own ten men: amongſt whom were *Ioannes* and *Manicrinus*, two knights, whoſe heads the Turkes the next day ſet vp vpon two ſpeares vpon their trenches, that they might be ſeene by the Chriſtians.

The ſame day they of the citie of MELITA at night made at one inſtant a number of fires; and as if it were in triumph diſcharged great vollies of ſmall ſhot, with many other tokens of ioy: which as wel the beſieged as the Turks thought verily to haue bin done vpon the diſcouery of the Chriſtian fleet, or els the landing of ſuch forces as were come to remoue the ſiege; whereas indeed it was neither, but done onely to ſhew their cheerefulnes, and to keepe the Turkes in H
ſuſpence with the noueltie of the matter: who for all that were not ſlacke in their buſines, but with earth filled vp the ditch at the caſtle bulwarke: whereby it came to paſſe, that they could not be hurt by the flankers, made in that place to ſcoure the ditch, but might therby as vpon plaine ground, without ſtay paſſe vnto the wall, now opened and ouerthrown with their continuall batterie, and vvith two great pieces (vvhich they had planted vpon a high mount, vvhich they had newly caſt vp on the right hand the bulwarke SAVOIA) they begun to play vpon the caſtle, and at the firſt ſhot, ſhot into the loupe where *Franciſcus Caſtilia* commaunded. *Ioannes Bernardus Godinetius*, a Spaniſh knight, was there ſlaine with a ſmall ſhot. The ſame day *Franciſcus Aquilates*, a Spaniard, one of the garriſon ſouldiors, perſuaded by feare & hope (in dangers I
two euill counſellors) fled out of the towne *S. Michael* to the enemie; perſuading the Turks colonels to giue a freſh aſſault, aſſuring them that they ſhould without doubt win the towne, becauſe there was but foure hundred ſoldiors left aliue in it, and they (as he ſaid) almoſt ſpent with labour and wounds, all the reſt being dead. Which the Turks hearing, and ſeeing faire breaches both in the wals of the new citie and of the caſtle of *S. Michael*, vvide ynough for carts to go thorow, they determined vvith all their forces to aſſault both places at once, and to proue if there vvere yet ſo much ſtrength left in thoſe holds, as againe to repulſe them: ſo the ſeuenth day of Auguſt at one inſtant they aſſaulted the new citie at the caſtle bulwarke, and the caſtle *S. Michael* at the breach, vvith ſuch a multitude, that all the earth ſeemed to be couered with men round about. The thundering of the great ordinance, the noiſe of the ſmall ſhot, vvith the clattering of K
armour, and noiſe of trumpets, drums, and other vvarlike inſtruments, vvith the crie of men on both ſides, vvas ſo confuſed and great, as if heauen and earth ſhould haue been confounded together. Which when the knights in the citie MELITA heard, and ſaw the heauens obſcured with ſmoake, fearing that the Turks (as at the caſtle *S. Elmo*) would neuer giue ouer the aſſault, vntil they had woon both the town and the caſtle; preſently all the garriſon horſmen iſſued out of the citie, and to auert the Turks from the aſſault, ſet vpon thoſe Turks which lay at AQVA MARTIA: who all ſurpriſed with a ſudden feare, fled, the Chriſtian horſemen hardly purſuing them vvith bloudie execution, and they in their fight piteouſly crying vpon their fellowes for help. Wherby it came to paſſe, that they which vvere aſſauling the citie & caſtle, to reſcue their diſcomfited fellowes, vvere glad to giue ouer the aſſault: ſo with great ſlaughter foiled on both L
ſides by the Chriſtians, they returned to their trenches, when they had loſt about fifteene hundred at the aſſault, beſide them which vvere ſlain in the chaſe by by the horſemen of MELITA. Of the defendants of both places were loſt aboue a hundred, and almoſt as many wounded. This fight endured aboue fiue houres. *Valetta* deliuered of ſo great a danger, that day and certaine others cauſed publick prayers to be made, and went himſelfe with the multitude of the citizens to the church, to giue thanks to Almightie God for that victorie.

Aquilates a Spaniard flieth to the Turkes.

The Turkes at one time aſſault the new citie and the caſtle S. Michaell.

The garriſon ſoldiors of Melita ſailing out, cauſe the Turkes to giue ouer the aſſault at S. Michaels.

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, *Garzias* the Viceroy was aduertiſed from CALABRIA, that certain ſhips laded with men, victual, and other prouiſion neceſſarie for the wars, were comming from CONSTANTINOPLE to MALTA, wherfore he forthwith ſent *Altamira* and *Gildandrada*, two noblemen, with fiue gallies to meet them: who being come within thirtie miles of MALTA, met with no ſuch ſhips, but only one frigot and a galliot; the frigot they tooke, but the galliot eſcaped to the enemies fleet at MALTA. M

Muſtapha the Turkes Generall now thinking no man ſo ſtrong which might not vvith continuall labour and watching be wearied and ouercome, reſolued not to giue vnto the beſieged any time of reſt, but commaunded his ſouldiors againe to aſſault the breach at the caſtle of ſaint

Michael;

A *Michael*; where they were by the valour of the defendants, with no ſmall ſlaughter quickly repulſed: Neither did the Baſſa giue ſo many aſſaults, for the hope he had to win thoſe places; but rather to performe the dutie of a valiant Generall, and to ſatisfie *Solymans* pleaſure, who had expreſſely commaunded, either to win that iſland, or there all to loſe their liues. He alſo ſent a galliot in haſt with letters to *Solyman*; wherein he ſhewed him the ſtate of the fleet, with what difficulties the armie was diſtreſſed, what ſmall hope there was of winning the places beſieged, how well the Chriſtians were prouided, with many other ſuch things. *Muſtapha ſendeth a meſſenger to Solyman.*

In the meane time thoſe two gallies of MALTA (which we haue before ſpoken of) departing from MESSANA, came to SYRACVSA, where they ſtayed a day. The next day after, in going out of the hauen, they met with one of MALTA in a ſmall boat comming from POZALO
B ſore wounded: he being demaunded how he vvas ſo hurt, told them, That landing by night with his boat and one companion, he was requeſted by two Sicilians which dwelt there, to reſt there that night, which they doing, about midnight fiue Turks brake into the houſe vpon them, killed his companion, carried away the Sicilians, and he wounded as he was, hardly eſcaped by the benefit of the night: moreouer he ſaid, That the Sicilians had told the Turkes, that two gallies were come into that port, vvith ſouldiours and other warlike prouiſion bound for MALTA. Whereby the knights perceiued, that their comming would be diſcouered vnto the enemie, and that it was a moſt dangerous thing, or rather impoſſible to get into the hauen of MALTA, as they had before purpoſed: neuertheleſſe, to conduct *Salazar* vvith his little boat, they kept on their courſe. But as they were ſailing, they deſcried two gallies and one galliot going before
C them, who ſeeing the gallies comming after them, made with all ſpeed to MALTA: and were no doubt thoſe gallies, from whence thoſe fiue Turks came, which had done thoſe things which the vvounded Malteſe reported. For all that, theſe gallies kept on their courſe as farre as POZALO, from whence they certified the Viceroy by letters, all that had happened: and not daring to put to ſea, the South vvind blowing vvith a ſtiffe gale againſt them, they returned backe againe to SYRACVSA, expecting there farther direction from the Viceroy. For vvhich cauſe, they forthwith ſent one of the knights to him to MESSANA; by whom they receiued anſwere, That they ſhould go no farther, but to ſtay for the comming of the whole fleet, ready in ſhort time to paſſe ouer to MALTA. But *Salazar* brought by the gallies to POZALO, reſolued with his little boat to go on: and although the day he departed thence, the aire was troubled with great wind, thun-
D der and raine, yet the dayes following prouing more calme, he in ſhort time arriued in the iſland of MALTA, and came in ſafetie to the citie MELITA; and there diſguiſed himſelfe in Turkiſh apparell, and taking vvith him one companion, who could alſo ſpeake the Turkiſh language, by night got into the enemies camp: where diligently marking all things, they perceiued that there was in all the Turks army of land ſoldiors ſcarce fourteen thouſand, and of them many wounded and ſick; and that the reſt was but an vnſeruiceable and feeble multitude, for that the courſe of wars had (as commonly it doth) conſumed their beſt ſouldiors. When they had thus vievved the campe, they returned againe to the citie; from whence *Salazar* with one *Petrus Paccius* a Spaniard, a venturous and valiant man, went to a certaine place neere vnto the vvatch towre of MALECA: vvhich when they had curiouſly viewed, *Paccius* was there left, that obſeruing the
E ſignes from the Iſland of GAVLOS and the citie of MELITA; he might giue knowledge of all things to the Viceroy at his approach, as he was by *Salazar* inſtructed. As for *Salazar* himſelfe, he in his little boat (vvhich at his comming into the Iſle hee had there left) happily returned to MESSANA, and there declared vnto the Viceroy all that hee had ſeene: conſtantly affirming amongſt other things, That the Turks fleet was but weake, lame, and diſfurniſhed both of men and munition, farre vnable to encounter with 10000. Chriſtians. About which time alſo, one of the two frigots which were before ſent to MALTA, returned with another Spaniard, and a fugitiue from the Turkes campe: and foure gallies before gone from MESSANA, were alſo come in with foureteene Turks, taken about the iſland of MALTA, vvho all confirmed the ſame that was by *Salazar* reported: vvhich was, That the Turkes armie was with often aſſaults wonderfully
F weakened, both in number and ſtrength; ſo that they could not with ſtripes be enforced to the aſſault, for which the Baſſa had with his own hands ſlaine diuers of them: and that which more increaſed their feare, they ſaw none of their men wounded, but that they died thereof: Beſides that, they ſaw the Chriſtians with inuincible courage to defend their ſtrong places, and not to ſpend one ſhot in vaine: wherefore they were ſorie, and repented that they euer tooke in hand *Salazar a Spaniſh captaine doth a ſpie entreth the Turkes campe.*

that

that expedition; they deteſted ſuch a war, ſhrinking as much as they could from the aſſault, and G
as they might ſtealing quite away, which many of them did, ſpecially ſuch as had before abiured
the Chriſtian faith. For which cauſe diligent watch and ward was kept, and commandement gi-
uen by the great Baſſa, that they ſhould reſolue with themſelues either to win the town, or there
all to lay vp their bones, for that the great Sultan *Solyman* had ſo commaunded, whom to gain-
ſay, was in it ſelfe death. Theſe and ſuch like perſuaſions, cauſed the Viceroy ſomewhat the ſoo-
ner to thinke of the bringing foorth of his fleet: the beſieged in the meane time did what men
might for defence of the place and themſelues. There was in the caſtle one *Franciſcus Ginara*
captaine of the vauntgard, a noble and valiant gentleman, of a great conceit; he about ten foot
from the towne wall, which the enemie had with their great ordinance beaten downe, cauſed a
curtaine to be drawne fiftie foot long, and fiue foot thicke, with flankers at both ends; which in H
The Turks mines defeated by the Chriſtians. two nights was bonght to perfection, and was afterwards a great helpe to the beſieged. The
enemy in the meane time began a mine vnder the corner of the towne ditch, where *Boninſegna*
a Spaniard and a moſt valiant knight had the charge: which the beſieged perceiuing, by a coun-
termine defeated the ſame. It happened in the meane time, that as a fugitiue was ſwimming to
the towne, hee was taken by the enemy; which much grieued the beſieged, deſirous to haue vn-
derſtood ſomething of the ſtate of the enemies campe, and of their purpoſes. Now when the
former mine had taken ſo euill ſucceſſe, part of the Turkes aſſailed the caſtle *S. Michael*, and part
with gunpowder thought to haue blowne vp the caſtle bulwarke: but by the carefulneſſe and
courage of the defendants, all their attempts were diſappointed; for many of the Turks were in
both places ſlaine, and certaine bags of pouder taken from them in the mine. With theſe and I
other ſuch difficulties, *Muſtapha* and *Piall* the Turkes Generals diſappointed of their hope, con-
ſulted with the other great captaines of the armie, Whether they ſhould there ſtill continue that
deſperat ſiege, or depart? where moſt were cleere of opinion, That it was beſt betime to depart.
Yet for all that, the old Baſſa ſaid, He would there ſtay, vntill the galliot (which he had before
ſent to CONSTANTINOPLE) were returned with anſwere from *Solyman*, and in the meane
time both by force and pollicie to ſeeke after victorie: which thing he oftner did, than ſtood
with the broken eſtate of his armie, or of the beſieged; neither reſting himſelfe nor ſuffering
others to take reſt: for one while he battered the wals, another while he wrought mines or elſe
made bridges; ſometime he caſt vp mounts, and then again filled the ditches; and euer and anon
gaue one aſſault or another. In all which doing he vſed ſuch induſtry, that whatſoeuer he tooke K
in hand, was in ſhort time brought to ſuch perfection as might haue carried a ſtronger place, had
not the valour of the defendants far exceeded all his ſtrong and pollitike deuiſes.

Robles gouernor of the caſtle of S. Michael, ſlaine. It fortuned, that as *Robles* the camp-maſter, and Gouernour of the caſtle *S. Michael*, was by
night viewing the ruines of the wall, he was ſtrucke in the head with a ſmall ſhot, and ſlaine; lea-
uing behind him to his fellowes, the great deſire of himſelfe: for why, hee was a man for many
his good parts (wherewith he had many times ſtood the defendants in great ſtead) worthily be-
loued. In whoſe ſtead the Great maſter ſent one of the Colonels that was with himſelfe, a moſt
expert and reſolute captaine, to take charge of *S. Michaels* caſtle; who by his vigilant care and
prouidence ſo well diſcharged the charge committed vnto him, that as often as the Turkes at- L
tempted the place, ſo often they were with loſſe repulſed.

The two gallies with the galliot, deſcried by the gallies of MALTA (as we haue before ſaid)
told *Piall Baſſa* the Admirall, that the Chriſtian fleet was ready to come foorth: wherefore hee
fearing the ſudden comming thereof, cauſed ſeuentie gallies to be in readineſſe; beſides which,
fortie others lay in the hauen MARZA MOXET vnſeruiceable, as wanting both men and other
equipage, for that was ſpent in making bridges, mines, and other ſuch things neceſſarie for the
ſiege: as for the men, they were part with ſickneſſe, and part with often aſſaults conſumed.
Wherefore *Piall* for certaine dayes kept himſelfe by day in the port MAIOR neere the ſhoare,
and by night put forth to ſea, expecting the comming of the fleet. But after long looking, when
he ſaw no man appeare, he againe landed his ſouldiors: and becauſe at land the Baſſa began to
want pouder, of euery thirtie barrels of pouder in euery gally, hee tooke out twentie, and of M
ſome twentie fiue, or according to that proportion. After which time, the Turkes began with
greater furie than at any time before, to batter the walls of both townes, eſpecially with thoſe
great pieces which they call baſiliskes, whoſe ſhot of two hundred pound waight was ſeauen
hands about; whereby the wals of the caſtle of *S. Michael* were beaten flat. And at the ſame
time,

A time,the Baſſa at the caſtle *S. Angelo*,had with continuall batterie ſo ſhaken the caſtle bulwarke, that it was almoſt fallen quite downe. Theſe breaches thus made, when the Turkes ſaw both townes bared of wals and other defendants,and laid ſo open, that nothing ſeemed now to let them to looke vpon their enemies,they made no longer ſtay, but the eighteenth day of Auguſt (the ſunne being now at the higheſt) with all their power fiercely aſſaulted both the townes. Thriſe they were repulſed,and ſtill came on a freſh; yet at length beaten downe on euery ſide with greater ſlaughter, they were glad ſhamefully to giue ouer the aſſault,and againe to retire to their trenches. In this moſt cruell fight (which endured fiue houres) the inuincible courage of the Great maſter notably appeared,who armed with a pike in his hand,and dreadful to behold, was ſtill valiantly fighting in the face of the breach,whoſe preſence encouraged not the ſoldiors
B only, but euen boies and women to fight: For ſo it is,that men are more mooued with example than with words. Yet of the great number of the Turks,part ſtood ſtill in the towne ditch; and to ſaue themſelues from the ſhot of the caſtle bulwarke,had with wonderfull celeritie caſt vp a defence of earth,fagots,and other like matter, which they did of purpoſe to approach and to vndermine the wals,and had therefore incloſed the ſpace of fifteene elnes: which when the beſieged perceiued,they bent certain pieces of artillerie vpon it,and ſlew many of them,and with fire conſumed what was left. The next day the aſſault was at the ſame places by the enemie renewed,who by reaſon of his number of ſouldiors might eaſily ſend freſh men in ſtead of them which vvere vvounded or vveary: and firſt, after their vvonted manner they battered both the
C townes all that day vntill night; afterwards,the moone ariſing,about midnight vvith a horrible crie they began a moſt terrible aſſault,which at the firſt much troubled the Chriſtians, who yet ſtill mindfull of their wonted valour,did ſo much with their weapons and fire-workes, that the enemie euill intreated,was glad after three houres fight to retire to his trenches. The ſame day a mine was by the defendants perceiued,at the caſtle bulwarke,wherein a hundred Turkes there found,were almoſt all ſlaine,and the mine deſtroyed. Yet for all this did not the enemie reſt at all,but the next day ſeauen times aſſaulted the ſame breaches,vſing now not weapons only,but fire-works alſo; wherewith *Boſninſegna* had his face ſo burnt,that he loſt one of his eyes. At the ſame time alſo,the Turks at a place called the Spvr, laboured mightily to haue gotten into the caſtle: where *Centius* a knight of an inuincible courage, got vp vpon the rampier, and with a
D pike couragiouſly thruſt them downe that were climing vp, and thruſting thorow one,diſcouraged the reſt; but was himſelfe wounded in the arme with a ſmall ſhot: Yet when he had a little vvithdrawn himſelfe to haue his wound bound vp,he came againe to the rampier,and neuer departed from the fight,vntill he had(as a valiant conquerour)preſerued the place. So the Turks with great ſlaughter on euery ſide repulſed, left the victorie to the Chriſtians, of whom vvere ſlaine almoſt an hundred,and moſt of them (as at other times)with ſhot: amongſt whom vvere theſe moſt valiant knights at the caſtle *Angelo*, *Fragus*,at the caſtle of *S. Michael*, *Scipio Piatus*, *Ioh. Baptiſta Soderinus*, *Paulus Bomportus*, *Marius Fagianus*, *Ruffinus*,and certaine others,men worthie of longer life. The Turks had alſo at the ſame time wrought a mine at the caſtle *S. Michael*,which vvas at once both diſcouered and deſtroied.

The Turkes at once aſſaile the townes S. Angelo and S. Michael, and are at both places repulſed.

Another aſſault.

E With theſe ſo many and ſo great aſſaults,certain of the knights(and thoſe not of the meaneſt ſort) fearing leſt that which was ſo often attempted by the enemie, ſhould at length be effected; told the Great maſter, That they thought it conuenient and neceſſarie, to remooue all the records,all the pictures and reliques of the Saints, and other their religious things into the caſtle *S. Angelo*, there to be kept as in a place of more ſtrength and aſſurance. The Great maſter, although he well knew that they which thus ſaid,ſpake it of a good mind, was for all that vvith that ſpeech exceedingly moued: wherfore he ſhortly anſwered them, That ſo to doe,were nothing elſe but to applauſe and diſcourage the minds,not of the Malteſes onely,who had hitherto valiantly behaued themſelues,and done more than any man could haue hoped for; but alſo of the mercenarie ſouldiors,if they ſhould perceiue it: wherefore he was reſolued, either together to keep all,or loſe all;and becauſe none ſhould from thenceforth repoſe any hope in the ſtrength
F of the caſtle S. *Angelo*, he ſaid he would bring all the garriſon out of the caſtle into the towne, that there they might together with others withſtand the enemie; and that he would leaue in the caſtle none but gunners,who ſhould as need required ſhoot at the enemie. An anſwer truly wel beſeeming a man of his place,and to be to all poſteritie commended: for how can the ſouldior hope,which ſeeth his captain deſpaire? or aduenture,where the chieftain ſeemeth to be ſtrucken

The reſolute anſwere of the great maſter.

with

The Turks assault both the towns the fourth time.

with feare? Whileſt the Graund maſter with this anſwere doth both aſhame them and alſo encourage their quailing minds; the Turks (that this day as the other three before ſhould not paſſe without aſſault) with the dawning of the day aſſailed the very ſame places with the greateſt furie poſſible, eſpecially at the ruines of the caſtle: where *San Romanus* an Auergnois, which had the charge of that place, loſt this ſhort and tranſitorie life, winning thereby immortall fame: and at *S. Michaels*, *Adurnius* one of the knights, and *Fagio*, with certaine others, were grieuouſly wounded: for the enemy ſuddenly retiring from the aſſault, preſently ſo thundred into the breaches vvith their great and ſmall ſhot, that all the iſland ſeemed to tremble, the heauens to burne, and the aire to be darkened vvith ſmoke. In the meane time *Valetta* thorowly wearied with the mornings fight, had withdrawne himſelfe a little to breath himſelfe: vvhen ſuddenly a Spaniſh prieſt, vvith his hands caſt vp to heauen, came running to him, roaring and crying out, That all vvas loſt and forlorne, and that three or foure enſignes of the enemies were by the caſtle breach broken into the towne. Which the Great maſter hearing, ſuddenly clapt his helmet vpon his head, and vvith a pike in his hand, ſaid vnto them that vvere about him: *Loe fellow ſouldiors, the houre is come wherein you may ſhew your ſelues the moſt valiant champions of the Chriſtian religion, if it be ſo, that you now alſo retaine the ſame valour which you haue in other battels ſhewed. There is no cauſe wherefore you ſhould doubt of this laſt, for the enemie is the ſame; and the ſame God which hath hitherto preſerued vs, will not now forſake vs: wherefore follow me valiant hearts.* This ſaid, he haſted to the place where moſt danger was, and with him all the ſouldiors, all the citiſens, men and vvomen, old and yong, yea the very children, all againſt the common enemy. There was fought a moſt dreadful & dangerous battell: ſome kept the enemy from entring, ſome ſet vpon thē that were already entred, whom they wounded, chaſed, and ſlew, although they notably reſiſted. Within, without, all was couered with darts, weapons, dead bodies, & blood. The great maſter was carefull of all, and in euery place preſent, commending, exhorting, directing, as occaſion required, performing at once all the duties of a moſt valiant ſouldior and worthy Generall. At length the Turks with the ſetting of the ſunne retired, and ſo the aſſault ceaſed. Thus was the Great maſter the vndoubted victor, but not without much bloud of his people, conſidering his ſmal number: for in this fight he loſt aboue 200 men, wheras of the enemies, beſide them which vvere entred, whereof not one eſcaped, were ſlaine aboue 2000. Theſe are thoſe foure terrible aſſaults, preſently giuen one after another vnto the beſieged.

The Turks enter the new citie.

The comfortable ſpeech of the Great maſter, when the Turks were entred.

The Turks with great ſlaughter againe repulſed

Garzias the Viceroy in the meane tarried for nothing elſe to tranſport his armie to MALTA, but for the comming of *Io. Cardona*, who vvith twelue gallies vvas gone to PANORMO, to conduct thence foure ſhips laded with prouiſion: but vvhen he ſaw him ſtay long, he ſent to him in poſt, That if he could not with ſuch ſpeed as was required tow forth thoſe ſhips, he ſhould ſpend no longer time, but take out the prouiſion into his gallies, and with ſpeed to come away. So the Viceroy with a fleet of threeſcore & twelue gallies the twentith day of Auguſt ſet forward from MESSANA to SIRACVSA, wherein he carried ten thouſand ſelect ſouldiors, amongſt whom vvere aboue two hundred knights of the Order of *S. Iohn*, and about fortie of the Order of *S. Stephen*, which is an Order of knights inſtituted by *Coſmos Medices*, duke of FLORENCE, to the imitation of the knights of MALTA in the yeare 1561, and haue their reſidence at COSMOPOLIS, an new built citie in the iſland of ELBA in the Tuſcane ſea, ouer againſt PIOMBINO. Beſides theſe knights in this fleet vvere diuers noble and valiant gentlemen of ITALIE, SICILIE, and other countries. The fleet being arriued at SIRACVSA, the Viceroy ſent *Auria* with one gallie and a boat to MALTA, to land a man, to know of *Paccius* (left, as we haue before ſaid, for a watch in the iſland at MALECA) what newes, or what he had ſeene. By whom it was vnderſtood, That no ſhip was ſeene at ſea, but one galliot, which the one and twentith day of Auguſt in the morning made towards GAVLOS, and the ſame day towards night as he was informed by the watchmen of MALECA, ſixteene gallies came to water at SALINE, but what became of them afterwards, by reaſon of the comming on of the night could not be deſcried.

In this vvhile the beſieged had notably repaired the breach at the caſtle bulwarke, and had in ſundry places aptly placed certaine great pieces to flanker the ditches, & to beat the mount caſt vp by the enemy at the bulwarke of BONINSEGNA, that they might from thence annoy all the plaine of the caſtle with their ſmall ſhot. But the Turks hauing determined with all their forces at once to aſſault both the townes as before, brought an engine made of ſpars and boords, able to couer thirtie men, vnder the breach at *S. Michaels*: whereby it came to paſſe, that none of the defen-

A defendants could without danger ſhew themſelues in the breach: which when they could by no meanes endure, they ſuddenly ſallied out, and putting them to flight which were there couered, ſet fire on the engine and burnt it. In like manner, they which beſieged the new citie, were repulſed at the caſtle breach, and another like engine burnt. The next night certaine of the watch of the caſtle iſſued out, and hauing deſtroyed the Turkes engines prepared for the aſſayling of that place, and ſlaine them that were ſet for the keeping therof, returned in ſafetie into the caſtle. But vvhen the enemies both that day and others following reſted not, but repairing their mines, mounts, and engines, laboured in both places to haue beaten the Chriſtians from the wals; all their endeuour and labour was by the induſtry and valor of the defendants made fruſtrate. The beſieged had at the caſtle breach made a mine, and laid in it eight barrels of pouder, that if the B enemy ſhould againe aſſault that place, he might there be blown vp: but whileſt the Turks were for like purpoſe working a mine in the ſame place, they chaunced vpon the mine before made, which they ſpoiled, and carried away all the pouder. Thus whileſt they labour both on the one ſide and the other, *Muſtapha* the Generall, a moſt expert and famous commaunder, conſidering that Summer now ſo farre ſpent, he was not to vſe longer delay; and withall, that reſolute perſeuerance oftentimes in vvarre findeth out a way to victory; determined with all his power once againe to aſſault the caſtle *S. Michael*. Wherefore diſplaying the ſtately ſtanderd of the Turkiſh emperour, vpon the point whereof was faſtened a globe of gold, he commanded his ſouldiors to enter the breach; vvho now like deſperat men attempted to haue performed his command, and were by the Chriſtians valiantly encountred: ſo that in the breach was made a moſt terrible and C doubtfull fight. But when the Turkes had now been twice reiected and beaten downe, *Muſtapha* perceiuing his ſouldiors as men halfe diſcouraged but faintly to maintaine the aſſault, came himſelfe to the places, praying and exhorting them not to be diſcouraged, but that day to confirme their former labours and victories, and not to ſuffer their vanquiſhed enemies to triumph ouer them: he told them that the enemy had now no defence left wherewith to couer himſelfe, that all was beaten downe flat, and that there remained onely a few wearie and maimed bodies, which were not able long to endure the edge of their ſwords; that with ſuch reſolution they had before woon the caſtle *S. Elmo*: laſt of all he by promiſing to ſome money, to ſome honour, and preferment, threatning ſome, and requeſting others, encouraged ſome one way, ſome another, euery one according to his qualitie and diſpoſition: who mooued either with their Gene- D rals preſence, promiſes, or threats, gaue a freſh and fierce aſſault. The fight was on both ſides terrible, yet at length the Turkes vvere againe enforced to retire: for the defendants had caſt vp a rampier, vvhereon they had fitly placed two field pieces, wherewith they ſore troubled the enemie, and at the firſt ſhot ſtrucke in ſunder one of thoſe wooden engines, which the enemie had made ſtronger than the reſt, couered with raw hides to keepe it from burning, and rent in pieces fortie ſoldiors which were vnder it: and the ſame night they which were in the other town & the caſtle bulwark, ſallying couragiouſly out, deſtroied all the enemies defences, & draue them from a mount, which they had made vpon the fortifications of the Chriſtians: wherby they perceiued plainly, what ſmall courage the Turks had to fight, for vpon that mount they were almoſt three hundred, wheras of our men was but fiue & twentie; with which ſmall number for all that they E had no mind to deale. The defendants had for like purpoſe as before made another mine at the caſtle bulwarke, but perceiuing that it was in danger to be found by the enemy in repairing his fortifications without, they ſuddenly put fire vnto it, by force wherof threeſcore Turkes which were within the danger of the place, were blowne vp and ſlaine.

A mine of the Chriſtians found by the Turks.

The Turks deſperatly aſſault the towne of S. Michael.

The Turks enforced to retire.

Garzias the Viceroy, in the meane while that theſe things were in doing, departing with his fleet from SYRACVSA, with a proſperous wind kept on his courſe toward PACHYNVM, vvhere they deſcried a tall ſhip at ſea, driuen thither (as was afterward knowne) by tempeſt: ſhe out of the iſland MENING was carrying a great ſupply of ſhot and pouder vnto the Turkes campe at MALTA; but now ouertaken by the Chriſtian fleet, eaſily yeelded, and was by the Viceroy ſent by other marriners to SYRACVSA. And now the Chriſtian fleet caried with a faire gale towards F MALTA, ſuddenly aroſe ſuch a tempeſt from the Eaſt, that they were driuen to the iſland ÆGVSA, two hundred and twentie miles Weſt of MALTA, from whence the firſt of September letters were brought from the Viceroy to the Great maſter, certifying him, That he would in ſhort time come with his fleet and relieue him. The ſame day alſo a Chriſtian fled out of the Turkes gallies, wherein he was captiue, to the citie *S. Angelo*; vvho reported, That in the Turkes campe vvere

The Chriſtian fleet driuen by tempeſt to the Iſland Ægoſa.

were few men able to fight, moſt of the armie being with wounds, famine, ſickeneſſe, and other miſeries brought to extreme weakeneſſe: and beſides that, that infinite numbers of them died daily: yet for all that he ſaid moreouer, that they were determined to beſiege the citie of MELITA, and had already for that purpoſe mounted fiue great pieces of artillery for batterie; and that they had but a few dayes before taken twelue, & the laſt day of all fourteen horſmen of the garriſon ſoldiors of that citie. In the meane while the fleet which was driuen (as we ſaid) to ÆOVSA, the rage of the ſea being now well appeaſed, came to DREPANVM, and from thence toward GAVLOS, as was before intended: where by the way the two gallies of MALTA light vpon two of the Turkes galliots, and tooke them. G

The Chriſtian fleet commeth to Gaulos.

The fift day of September the Chriſtian fleet came to GAVLOS, where the Viceroy perceiuing not the appointed ſignes from MALTA, whereby he might ſafely land, returned forthwith backe againe to POZALO, whether *Auria* immediatly following him, told him, That he had ſeen the ſignes, and aſſured him of ſafe landing in the iſland of MALTA: wherewith the Viceroy encouraged, the next day towards night returned againe to GAVLOS. H

A fugitiue diſcouereth the enemies purpoſes to the Great maſter.

The ſame day a Chriſtian captiue fled from the Turks to *S. Angelo*, and told the Great maſter, That he was come to bring him good newes, how that the Turkes had determined to prooue their laſt fortune in aſſaulting the caſtle *S. Michael*, which they would doe the next day: where if the ſucceſſe were anſwerable to their deſire, they would then tarrie, but if not, then forthwith be gone: and that *Muſtapha* the more to encourage his ſouldiors, had promiſed fiue talents of gold to the enſignebearers, that ſhould firſt aduance their enſignes vpon the wals, and farther to promote them to greater places of honor; as for the reſt, he would reward euery one of them according to their deſert, either with money or preferment. *Valetta* thinking all theſe things to be by Gods appointment diſcouered vnto him by ſuch men, as they had from time to time bene: firſt gaue thankes vnto Almightie God, and after that with all diligence prepared ſuch things as he thought moſt neceſſary for the repulſing of the enemy. But the Turks all that day with their great ordinance battered the new city, and the ſhipping in the hauen, in ſuch ſort that one of the great ſhips was there ſunke. I

The Viceroy arriueth at Malta, and landeth his forces.

In the morning *Garzias* the Viceroy with his fleet arriued at the iſland of MALTA, and there quickly and quietly landed his forces, and whileſt his gallies watered at GAVLOS, went forward with the armie about halfe a mile, inſtructing the Generals and Colonels what he thought needfull to be done, commaunding all proclamations and commaunds to bee made in the name of the king of SPAINE, vntill they came to the Great maſter, and then in all things to obey him as their ſoueraign: and charged *Aſcanius Cornia* the Generall in all his actions to follow the counſell of the greater part. So in few words exhorting them to play the men, he left them marching towards MELITA. About noone he retired to his gallies, and ſayling Eaſtward, came with all his fleet within the ſight of the citie of MELITA, about three miles diſtant from the South ſhore. They of the citie vpon ſight of the fleet, in token of joy diſcharged all the great artillerie, which was anſwered from the fleet, by diſcharging all their great ordinance twice. After that he returned as he had before determined into SICILIA, to take into his gallies the duke of VRBINS companies, which were come to MESSANA, and certaine bands of Spaniards at SYRACVSA, and ſo forthwith to returne to MALTA, to attend the departing of the Turks fleet, being now euill appointed, and already as good as halfe ouerthrowne. K L

The Turks, who (as is before ſaid) had purpoſed to proue their laſt fortune vpon the towne of *S. Michael*, had now certaine dayes before the comming of the fleet, begun to truſſe vp their baggage: but as ſoon as they heard that the fleet was come, and the army landed, there ſuddenly aroſe a wonderfull tumultuous confuſion amongſt them, ſome cried arme, arme, and otherſome as faſt to be gone: and being generally all afraid, euery one according to his diſpoſition, betooke himſelfe to his weapons or to his heeles; the greateſt number thruſt together into their trenches, as neere as they could vnto the great ordinance: and ſo burning the engines and fortifications, with all the ſpeed they could embarked their great ordinance and baggage. Which they in the town of *S. Angelo* perceiuing, not expecting the commandement of the Great maſter in ſo ſudden an opportunitie couragiouſly ſallied out to BVRMOLA, where certaine Turkes kept a huge great peece of ordinance; who now hauing no mind to fight, betooke themſelues to flight, and forſooke the peece, which they of the town preſently drew within their walls. And if the newcome forces had that day charged the enemy as they diſordery ran to their gallies, happily M

A pily they had either found an occasion of victorie, or at leastwise taken from thē the greatest part of their artillerie. But it may be, that they followed the old militarie saying, That vnto the flying enemie a man should make a bridge of siluer. Besides that, they thinking it not conuenient to depart from the prouision and things which they had brought for the relieſe of the beſieged; which for the roughneſſe of the way and want of horſes were hardly caried, would not prouoke the enemie with any skirmiſh: whereby it came to paſſe, that the Turks without let imbarked their great ordinance, their baggage, and moſt part of their armie. The eleuenth of September, whileſt the Turks fleet was brought out of the hauen MARZA MOXET, a fugitiue of GENOVA came in haſt to the Great maſter, and told him that ten thouſand Turks were marching towards MELITA, to meet with the Chriſtians vpon the way. Which thing the Great maſter hearing, pre-
B ſently ſent a ſufficient number of good ſouldiors to the caſtle *S. Elmo*, there to ſet vp one of the enſignes of the ſacred Order: who comming thither, found there foure and twentie great pieces, ſome for batterie, ſome for the field, which they could not in ſo great haſt remoue thence.

The Turkes fleet departing out of the hauen MARZA MOXET to the port *S. Paule*, there landed ſeuen thouſand men, with *Muſtapha* their Generall, who was falſely informed, That the Chriſtians were not aboue three thouſand ſtrong: and from thence, encouraged with the ſmall number of the enemie (as they ſuppoſed) they marched directly toward MELITA. The Chriſtians alſo marching orderly and readie to giue battell, held on their way to meet them: and at the riſing of an hill both armies meeting together, they gaue a great ſhout, and withall the formoſt began the battell, where ſome few were at the firſt ſlaine on both ſides. But the Chriſtians ſtill
C growing vpon them both in number and ſtrength, the Turkes finding themſelues ouercharged, fled, the Chriſtians purſuing them and killing them vntill they came to their gallies; where in ſtriuing who ſhould get in firſt, about foure hundred of them were drowned in the ſea, beſides eighteene hundred ſlaine in the battell at land: and had the Chriſtian ſouldiors well knowne the countrie, they had ſlaine them euery mothers ſonne. The Turkes thus driuen to their gallies, lay there in the hauen all the next day, and moſt part of the night following: but a little before day vpon the ſhooting off of a great piece, the ſigne of their departure, they all hoiſed ſaile for GRECIA, leauing the iſland of MALTA ſore impoueriſhed and waſted. In this ſiege the Turkes loſt about foure and twentie thouſand, whereof moſt part were of their beſt ſouldiors: and of the Chriſtians were ſlaine about fiue thouſand, beſides two hundred and fortie knights of the Order,
D men of diuers nations, but all worthie eternall fame, whoſe dead bodies the Great maſter cauſed to be honourably buried. The Turkes in their batterie during the ſiege, ſpent as is accounted threeſcore and eighteene thouſand great ſhot.

The Turkes ouerthrowen by the Chriſtians, flie to their gallies.

The Turkes depart from Malta.

If a man do well conſider the difficulties and dangers the beſieged paſſed thorow in this fiue months ſiege, the manifold labours and perils they endured in ſo many and ſo terrible aſſaults, the ſmall reliefe to them ſent in ſo great diſtreſſe, with the deſperat obſtinacie of ſo puiſſant an enemie; he ſhall hardly find any place theſe many yeres more mightily impugned, or with greater valour and reſolution defended. The late beſieged, and now victorious prince, honourably acquitted of ſo great an enemie, firſt commanded publike prayers with thankſgiuing to be made vnto the giuer of all victorie: after that, he rewarded the valiant, commended the reſt, and gaue
E thanks to all; he charitably relieued the ſick and wounded, bewailed the ſpoile of the iſland, and carefully prouided for the repairing of the breaches and places battered: and yet in all this doing, diligently enquired after the enemies courſe and purpoſe, and was not in any thing remiſſe or ſecure, as in victorie moſt men are. But becauſe ſo great harms could not without great helps in ſhort time be repaired, and the returne of the proud enemie, not without cauſe the next yere feared: he by letters to diuers great princes, and eſpecially to the grand priors of the Order, in diuers countries, requeſted helpe; amongſt whom *George*, grand prior of GERMANIE, and founder of the caſtle of *S. Elmo*, was one of the chiefeſt. The coppie of which letters, becauſe they briefly containe what we haue before in this hiſtorie at large written, I haue thought good here to ſet downe, that the ſame may in ſuch order be read, as it was by the Great maſter himſele re-
F ported.

The careſulnes of the Great maſter.

Brother *Valetta*, Maſter of the hoſpitall of Ieruſalem, to the reuerend and religious our welbeloued brother in Chriſt, *George* of Hohenheim, called *Bombaſt*, prior of our priorie in Almainie, greeting. G

The letters of the great maſter to the grand prior of Almaine, concerning the manner of the Turks proceedings in the ſiege of Malta.

Although we doubt not but that by the letters and relation of many, you alreadie vnderſtand of the comming of the Turkes to inuade theſe Iſlands, or rather vtterly to ſubuert our ſocietie: and the happily and heauenly victorie by vs obtained of it. Yet if the ſame things ſhall by our letters alſo bee brought vnto you, wee haue thought the ſame will bee vnto you a thing much more pleaſing. For ſeeing that wee are certainely perſuaded, that you in this no leſſe happie than wholeſome ſucceſſe will giue H *moſt heartie thankes to Almightie God, and that the fruit of this good ſhall moſt of all redound vnto you, for the honour which you beare in our Order; wee haue willingly determined to participate this our ioy with you, and plainely and openly to proteſt, That we attribute this ſo notable and wonderfull a victorie to our Lord Chriſt Ieſus, the greateſt king of all kings, and author of all good things. Which that you may the more worthely and willingly doe, wee will declare the whole matter, not at large (for that were to write an hiſtorie) but briefely and in few words. Sultan* Solyman *the moſt mortall enemie of the Chriſtian name, and eſpecially of our ſocietie, not contented to haue ſpoiled vs of the moſt famous Iſland of the* Rhodes, *the caſtle of* Tripolis, *and almoſt whatſoeuer we had els; commaunded a great and ſtrong fleet to be made readie againſt vs, which departing from* Constantinople *the one and twentieth* I *day of March, arriued here the eighteenth day of May: which fleet conſiſted of almoſt two hundred and fiftie galleis, galliots and other ſhips. The number of the enemie that bare armes according to the trueth, was about fortie thouſand, more or leſſe: Generall of the land forces, was* Muſtapha Baſſa; *and of the fleet* Piall Baſſa *was Admirall: who hauing ſpent a few daies in landing their forces, viewing the places, pitching their tents, and ſetting things in order (as the manner of warre is) they began firſt to aſſaile the caſtle of S.* Elmo *(ſituat in the mouth of the hauen) with great force, and a moſt furious batterie. Which when they had many daies done without intermiſsion, and had opened a great part of the wall, and with all kind of weapons aſſaulted the breach: yet was it by the valour and proweſſe of our knights and other worthie ſouldiours kept and defended by the ſpace of thirtie fiue daies, with the great loſſe and ſlaughter of the enemie: although the caſtle it ſelfe, in the iudgement of many, ſeemed not poſsible to bee* K *but a few daies defended againſt ſo great a force. At length the foure and twentieth day of June, when our men could no longer endure the multitude and furie of the enemie, enuironed and ſhut vp both by ſea and land, and deſtitute of all helpe, the caſtle was taken by the Turkes; thoſe few of our men which were left, being all ſlaine. Of which victorie they being proud, began to beſiege the caſtle and towne of S.* Michaell, *and this new citie, eſpecially at the caſtle and Portingall bulwarke: and (as their manner is) with great diligence and greater force and number of great artillerie and warlike engines, the began in diuers places at once to batter and beate downe the wals. Which ſiege the dreadfull armie of the Turks, by ſea and land, made to be moſt fearefull and terrible, with ſuch huge great ordinance as the like for bigneſſe and force was in no place to bee ſeene; day and night thundring out their yron and ſtone ſhot, fiue, and ſeuen hands about; wherewith not the thickeſt wals, but euen the verie mountaines themſelues might haue beene beaten downe and ouerthrowne: by furie whereof, the wals in many places were* L *ſo battered, that a man might eaſily haue entered as on plaine ground. Where, when the barbarous enemies had with wonderfull force and hideous outcries oftentimes attempted to enter, ſo often were they with great ſlaughter and diſhonour repulſed and beaten backe, many of their men ſlaine or wounded. Their Generals, as well at ſea as land, after that they had in ſo many places, with all their forces in almoſt foure moneths ſiege and aſſault, with exceeding furie in vaine attempted the breaches, and loſt the greateſt part of their old ſouldiours, eſpecially Winter now comming on, wherein all wars by law of nations ought to ceaſe; thought of nothing elſe but of departure, or rather of flight: which the comming of* Garzias *of* Toledo, *Viceroy of* Sicilia, *and Admirall of the king of* Spaine *his fleet, with ten thouſand ſelect ſouldiours (amongſt whom was at the leaſt two hundred and foureteene of our knights, and many other noble and valiant gentlemen; which onely with a Chriſtian zeale, vo-* M *luntarily met together from diuers parts of the World to helpe and relieue vs) cauſed them to haſten. So haue you ſummarily and in few words, the proceedings and flight of the Turkes fleet, and the victorie by vs (by the power of God) thereof obtained. It ſhall bee your part to conſider and coniecture, in what*

ſtate

A *ſtate our Order and this iſland now ſtandeth, into what poore eſtate we are brought, how many things we want; wherein except we be relieued by the helpe and aid of our brethren, eſpecially ſuch as you are, as we well hope and aſſuredly beliene we ſhall, our ſtate will quickly take end. Fare you well from* MALTA *the ninth of October* 1565.

The Great maſter thus deliuered of ſo great a ſiege, and bountifully relieued by the Chriſtian princes, and the great commenders of his Order; ſpeedily repaired the breaches and places battered, and with new fortifications ſtrengthened ſuch places as he had by the late paſſed dangers perceiued to be moſt ſubiect to the enemies force.

After the returne of the Turks fleet to CONSTANTINOPLE, *Solyman* being exceeding an- 1566
B grie with the Gouernor of the Iſland of CHIOS his tributarie, as well for that he had during the late ſiege of MALTA, had intelligence with the Great maſter, and reuealed vnto him many of the Turks deſignes; as alſo for detaining of two years tribute, which vvas yearely ten thouſand duckats; and had alſo neglected to ſend his wonted preſents to the great Baſſaes, who therefore the more incenſed, the tyrant commanded *Piall Baſſa* his Admirall to make readie his fleet, and by force or policie, to take that fruitfull and pleaſant Iſland wholly into his owne hand. Who without delay, with a fleet of eightie gallies, the fifteenth day of Aprill in the yeare 1566, being then Eaſterday, arriued at CHIOS. The chiefe men of the Iſland, vpon ſight of the fleet, forthwith ſent embaſſadours to the Baſſa with preſents, courteouſly offering vnto him the hauen, and whatſoeuer elſe he ſhould require. *Piall* with great kindneſſe accepted their offer, and preſently
C poſſeſſed himſelfe of the hauen in three places: and afterward landing, ſent for the Gouernor of the citie, and twelue of the chief citiſens to come vnto him, as if he had had ſome ſpeciall matter to confer with him about from the great Sultan, before his departure thence for MALTA or ITALIE. Who hauing a little conferred togither, went to him vvith great feare; and that not vvithout cauſe, for as ſoone as they were come before him, he commanded them to be laid hold vpon and caſt faſt into yrons: which done, the ſouldiors forthwith tooke the town hall, and vvithout reſiſtance pulling downe the townsenſigne (vvherin was the picture of *S. George* vvith a red croſſe) in ſtead therof ſet vp one of the Turks: the like vvherof vvas done with the great reioicing of the Turks, thorow the vvhole Iſland. After that, they riſled the Churches, and againe conſecrated them after their Mahometane manner. The Gouernour of the citie and the Sena-
D tours with their families, the Baſſa ſent in fiue ſhips to CONSTANTINOPLE: as for the vulgar people, they were at choice, either there to tarrie ſtill, or depart, as beſt ſtood vvith their liking. And ſo the Baſſa, when he had there placed a new Gouernour, one of the Turks, with a ſtrong garriſon, and ſet vp the Mahometane ſuperſtion in that moſt fertile Iſland, departed thence for ITALIE: vvhere ſayling alongſt the coaſt of APVLIA, he did exceeding much harme in burning and deſtroying the countrie villages, and carrying away of the poore people into captiuitie; and ſo returned.

The iſland of Chios taken by the Turks.

At this time, the kingdome of HVNGARIE was moſt miſerably rent in pieces by the lieutenants and captaines of *Solyman*, and *Maximilian* the emperour, and *Iohn* the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, *Solymans* vaſſall: who grieued with the harmes done vnto him by the emperours
E captaines, whereof himſelfe was the cauſe, and vainely hoping to haue obtained at *Solymans* hands the greateſt part of the kindome of HVNGARIE, as had ſometime king *Iohn*; ceaſed not continually to ſolicite him to come himſelfe in perſon to make a full conqueſt of the reliques of HVNGARIE, yet holden by the emperour, and ſome of the Hungarian nobilitie: And flattering himſelfe in that vaine hope, called himſelfe the king of HVNGARIE, and increaſing his ſtrength by letters vnto the nobilitie and burgeſſes of the cities of HVNGARIE, ſummoned them, as if it had bin by the appointment of *Solyman* his great patron, that they ſhould all the ninth of March meet together at THORDA, to determine with him of matters concerning their common good. Which thing, as ſoone as *Lazarus Suendi* the emperours lieutenant vnderſtood, he foorthwith by other letters countermanded thoſe of the Vayuods; perſuading the Hungarians, not to liſten
F to the charmes of the Vayuod and the Turke, tending to their deſtruction, but rather to yeeld their obedience to *Maximilian* the Chriſtian emperour, whoſe purpoſe was by the aid of the Chriſtian princes, to protect and preſerue them in peace. And hereby it came to paſſe, that the remainders of this ſore ſhaken kingdom, deuided into factions, and diuerſly carried, according to their affection, ſome to the one ſide, ſome to the other, began afreſh to worke one anothers

confusion, which fitly serued the Turkes to incroach more and more vpon them: Who at the same time surprised the towne of AINATSCH (the captaine thereof with certaine of the garrison souldiors being gone about their businesse to AGRIA) and put to the sword all them that they found in the towne. They thought also to haue taken the strong towne of SIGETH, but were by the valiant countie *Nicholaus Serinus* Gouernour thereof, couragiously encountred; and after foure houres hard fight, ouerthrowne and put to flight. Not long after, they ranged vp and downe the countrie, and set in booties as far as IVLA and RAB, and did the countrie people much harme. For which cause, *Maximilian* the emperour about the latter end of May brake vp the assemblie of the empire then holden at AVGVSTA, and began carefully to prouide things needfull for the warre: appointing his captaines for the raising of such forces in GERMANIE, as were but a little before granted vnto him by the princes and states of the empire, in their late assemblie; but went himselfe to VIENNA. For it was told him (as the truth was) That *Solyman* now in his extreame age, was with a mightie armie set forward from CONSTANTINOPLE, and marching thorow BVLGARIA and SERVIA, was come directly to BELGRADE: where *Iohn* the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA met him, and kissing his hand, had commended himselfe and all his state vnto his protection. At which time, *Suendi* the emperours lieutenant, laid hard siege to the towne of HYSTH in the borders of TRANSILVANIA. The Bassa of BVDA at the same time on the other side, by commaundment of *Solyman*, with eight thousand Turks and fiue and twentie pieces of great ordinance besieging PALOTTA, a strong towne about eight miles from RAB, had with continuall batterie by the space of eight daies, brought the same into great danger, although it was valiantly defended by *George Thuriger*. But hearing of the approach of *George* countie of *Helffenstein*, sent by the emperour with certaine companies of Germans to relieue the same, he rose in such hast from the siege, that he left certain of his great ordinance and a great part of his baggage behind him, and retired towards ALBA REGALIS. The countie hauing relieued the towne, caused the breaches to be forthwith repaired, and with a new supplie strengthened the old garrison. Thus was a most lamentable warre at once begun in diuers places of HVNGARIE. After that, the countie of *Helffenstein*, strengthened by the comming of countie *Salma* with certaine companies from RAB, departed from PALOTTA, and came to VESPRINIVM, a citie about two miles off, then holden by the Turks: which citie he tooke by force the last of Iune, and left not a Turke aliue therin, because that they a few daies before, had cruelly slaine certaine Christians whom they had taken prisoners: so leauing strong garrisons both in VESPRINIVM and PALOTTA, they returned to RAB. Shortly after, the countie *Salma* laied siege to TATTA a strong towne, otherwise called DOTIS, betwixt RAB and COMARA, which at length he tooke by assault the eight and twentieth day of Iuly, and slew all the Turks, except fiftie, which flying into one of the towers of the castle, yeelded vpon composition; amongst whom was the late Gouernour of VESPRINIVM, and the Gouernour of this place, with the Bassa of BVDA his nigh kinsman, who were all presently sent prisoners to VIENNA. So the countie following the course of his victorie (the terror of his former good fortune running before him into the Turkes strongest holds) was on his way to haue besieged GESTES, a town neere to PALOTTA; when the Turkes there in garrison, vpon the first sight of his armie, left all, and fled out at the farther side of the town to STRIGONIVM. After whose example, other of the Turks garrisons in Witha, Tschokiku, & Sambok, castles therabouts, set fire on that they could not carrie, and followed their fellowes to STRIGONIVM also. The emperor vnderstanding of the good successe of his captaines, caused publike praiers with thanksgiuing to Almightie God to be made thorow all the churches thereabouts.

The Turkes surprise townes in Hungarie.

Great troubles in Hungarie.

The good successe of the emperors captaines

Countie *Serinus*, Gouernour of the strong towne of SIGETH, and the countrey thereabout, certainly aduertised of the comming of *Solyman*, sent *Casparus Alapianus*, and *Nicholas Cobach*, two of his captaines, with a thousand foot, and fiue hundred horse, to lie in wait for the forerunners of the Turkes armie: who drawing neere vnto the place where these Turkes lay, not farre from QVINQVE ECCLESIE, suddenly in the shutting in of the next day, set vpon them, doubting no such matter, and put them in such feare, that they disorderedly fled some one way, some another, and were most of them slaine or wounded by the Hungarians in their flight. *Halibeg*, one of the Turkes great Sanzackes, and leader of that companie, sore wounded, and seeking to saue himselfe by flight in the mariishes, there perished: his sonne, and many other notable men amongst the Turkes, were there [illegible]en, and carried prisoners to *Sigeth*. The spoyle

the

A the Hungarians there tooke, was exceeding great: for beſide plate and coine, wherof they found good ſtore, they tooke eight camels, threeſcore horſes, fiue mules, and ſix carts laden with all maner of ſpoile, and many garments of great price; wherin the gentlemen attired, returned to SIGETH in great braueric, with two faire red enſignes of the enemies. *A great preye.*

Maximilian the emperour, long before aduertiſed of *Solymans* purpoſe for the conqueſt of the remainder of HVNGARIE; to withſtand ſo mightie an enemie, had beſide the forces raiſed in his owne dominions, procured great aid both of the ſtates of the empire and other Chriſtian princes, which about this time met togither at RAB. Firſt there repaired thither foure legions of German footmen, and vpwards of twentie thouſand horſemen, with foure thouſand Hungarians: The duke of SAVOY ſent thither foure hundred Argoleteirs: and many noble gen-
B tlemen out of diuers parts of EVROPE reſorted thither, to ſerue the emperour in thoſe wars of their owne charge, eſpecially the knights of MALTA: and out of ITALIE, *Proſper Columna*, and *Angelus Cæſius*: out of FRANCE, *Guiſe* the graund prior, *Briſſack* and *Lanſack*; who but a little before were going to MALTA, of purpoſe to haue ſerued there if the Turks fleet had come thither againe, as it was reported it would; but vnderſtanding that it came not, returned directly into HVNGARIE, with certaine other knights of the Order. Many alſo of the princes and free cities of ITALIE, declared their good will toward the emperour in this war; ſome ſending him men, as did *Coſmus Medices* duke of FLORENCE, who ſent thither of his owne charge three thouſand footmen; ſome mony, as MANTVA, GENVA, and LVCA. Thither came alſo *Alphonſus* duke
C of FERARA, with a gallant companie of noble gentlemen, and others his followers. Beſide which land forces, the emperor had alſo prouided vpon the riuer of Danubius twelue gallies, and thirtie other ſhips for burthen, ſo made, as that the men could not be hurt with the Turks arrowes: wherein was imbarked three thouſand ſouldiors, moſt part Italians, vnder the conduct of *Philippus Flachius* a German, and one of the knights of MALTA, who was afterward receiued into the number of the princes of the empire.

Solyman comming to the riuer Drauus, commaunded a bridge to be made ouer that great riuer, and the deepe fens on the farther ſide of the riuer towards SIGETH, for the tranſporting of his great armie; a worke of ſuch difficultie, that being thrice vnfortunatly begun, it was againe giuen ouer, as a thing almoſt impoſſible: wherwith *Solyman* was ſo moued, that in his rage he ſwore to hang vp the great Baſſa that had the charge of that worke, if he did not with as much
D ſpeed as were poſſible, bring it to perfection. Whereupon the worke was againe begun, all the boats that were to be found in the riuer taken vp, and timber for the purpoſe brought from farre, for the making of that bridge. In this worke were imploied, not the vulgar people onely of the countrie which was tributarie to the Turks, but the gentlemen themſelues alſo, were by the imperious Turke (now commanding for his life) enforced to lay their fingers to worke day and night without ceaſing, vntill the bridge (which before was thought ſcarce poſſible to haue bin made) was by the reſtleſſe induſtrie and labour of ſuch a multitude of men, in the ſpace of ten daies brought to perfection. Wherein the ſeueritie the barbarous tyrant vſeth towards his ſubiects, is worth the noting, wherby he extorteth from them, more than is almoſt poſſible for men to performe: ſo that it is not to be maruelled, that he hath ſo good ſucceſſe in whatſoeuer
E he taketh in hand. Ouer this bridge (a mile in length) paſſed *Solyman*, and encamped at a place called MVHATCHZ, where he ſtaied certaine daies, vntill his hugie armie was all come ouer. The laſt of Iuly, ninetie thouſand Turks (the vauntguard of *Solymans* armie) came before SIGETH; and encamped within a mile of the town: after whom ſhortly after followed an hundred thouſand mo out of *Solymans* campe, of whom many in approching the towne, were ſlaine with great ſhot out of the caſtle; the reſt for all that encamped themſelues as neere vnto the town as they could, and began the ſiege. *The Turkes encampe before Sigeth.*

The Turks with much labour make a bridge ouer the greet riuer of Drauus.

The towne of SIGETH is ſtrongly ſcituat in a Mariſh, on the North ſide of Drauus vpon the frontiers of DALMATIA, commaunding all the countrie round about it, which of it taketh name; and was at that time a ſtrong bulwarke againſt the Turkes, for entring farther into the
F countrie that way toward STIRIA. In this towne was Gouernour *Nicholaus Serinus*, commonly called the Countie, a valiant man, and a mortall enemie of the Turkes, with a garriſon of 2300 good ſoldiors: who ſeeing the hugie armie of the Turks, called togither into the caſtle the captaines of the garriſon and the chiefe of the citiſens; where ſtanding in the midſt of them, hee ſpake vnto them as followeth.

confuſion, which fitly ſerued the Turkes to incroach more and more vpon them: Who at the ſame time ſurpriſed the towne of AINATSCH (the captaine thereof with certaine of the garriſon ſouldiors being gone about their buſineſſe to AGRIA) and put to the ſword all them that they found in the towne. They thought alſo to haue taken the ſtrong towne of SIGETH, but were by the valiant countie *Nicholaus Serinus* Gouernour thereof, couragiouſly encountred; and after foure houres hard fight, ouerthrowne and put to flight. Not long after, they ranged vp and downe the countrie, and ſet in booties as far as IVLA and RAB, and did the countrie people much harme. For which cauſe, *Maximilian* the emperour about the latter end of May brake vp the aſſemblie of the empire then holden at AVGVSTA, and began carefully to prouide things needfull for the war: appointing his captaines for the raiſing of ſuch forces in GERMANIE, as were but a little before granted vnto him by the princes and ſtates of the empire, in their late aſſemblie; but went himſelfe to VIENNA. For it was told him (as the truth was) That *Solyman* now in his extreame age, was with a mightie armie ſet forward from CONSTANTINOPLE, and marching thorow BVLGARIA and SERVIA, was come directly to BELGRADE: where *Iohn* the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA met him, and kiſſing his hand, had commended himſelfe and all his ſtate vnto his protection. At which time, *Suendi* the emperours lieutenant, laid hard ſiege to the towne of HYSTH in the borders of TRANSILVANIA. The Baſſa of BVDA at the ſame time on the other ſide, by commaundment of *Solyman*, with eight thouſand Turks and fiue and twentie pieces of great ordinance beſieging PALOTTA, a ſtrong towne about eight miles from RAB, had with continuall batterie by the ſpace of eight daies, brought the ſame into great danger, although it was valiantly defended by *George Thuriger*. But hearing of the approach of *George* countie of *Helffenſtein*, ſent by the emperour with certaine companies of Germans to relieue the ſame, he rife in ſuch haſt from the ſiege, that he left certain of his great ordinance and a great part of his baggage behind him, and retired towards ALBA REGALIS. The countie hauing relieued the towne, cauſed the breaches to be forthwith repaired, and with a new ſupplie ſtrengthened the old garriſon. Thus was a moſt lamentable warre at once begun in diuers places of HVNGARIE. After that, the countie of *Helffenſtein*, ſtrengthened by the comming of countie *Salma* with certaine companies from RAB, departed from PALOTTA, and came to VESPRINIVM, a citie about two miles off, then holden by the Turks: which citie he tooke by force the laſt of Iune, and left not a Turke aliue therin, becauſe that they a few daies before, had cruelly ſlaine certaine Chriſtians whom they had taken priſoners: ſo leauing ſtrong garriſons both in VESPRINIVM and PALOTTA, they returned to RAB. Shortly after, the countie *Salma* laied ſiege to TATTA a ſtrong towne, otherwiſe called DOTIS, betwixt RAB and COMARA, which at length he tooke by aſſault the eight and twentieth day of Iuly, and ſlew all the Turks, except fiftie, which flying into one of the towers of the caſtle, yeelded vpon compoſition; amongſt whom was the late Gouernour of VESPRINIVM, and the Gouernour of this place, with the Baſſa of BVDA his nigh kinſman, who were all preſently ſent priſoners to VIENNA. So the countie following the courſe of his victorie (the terror of his former good fortune running before him into the Turkes ſtrongeſt holds) was on his way to haue beſieged GESTES, a town neere to PALOTTA; when the Turkes there in garriſon, vpon the firſt ſight of his armie, left all, and fled out at the farther ſide of the town to STRIGONIVM. After whoſe example, other of the Turks garriſons in Witha, Tſchokiku, & Sambok, caſtles therabouts, ſet fire on that they could not carrie, and followed their fellowes to STRIGONIVM alſo. The emperor vnderſtanding of the good ſucceſſe of his captaines, cauſed publike praiers with thankſgiuing to Almightie God to be made thorow all the churches thereabouts.

The Turkes ſurpriſe townes in Hungarie.

Great troubles in Hungarie.

The good ſucceſſe of the emperors captaines

Countie *Serinus*, Gouernour of the ſtrong towne of SIGETH, and the countrey thereabout, certainly aduertiſed of the comming of *Solyman*, ſent *Caſparus Alapianus*, and *Nicholas Cobach*, two of his captaines, with a thouſand foot, and fiue hundred horſe, to lie in wait for the forerunners of the Turkes armie: who drawing neere vnto the place where theſe Turkes lay, not farre from QVINQVE ECCLESIE, ſuddenly in the ſhutting in of the next day, ſet vpon them, doubting no ſuch matter, and put them in ſuch feare, that they diſorderedly fled ſome one way, ſome another, and were moſt of them ſlaine or wounded by the Hungarians in their flight. *Halibeg*, one of the Turkes great Sanzackes, and leader of that companie, ſore wounded, and ſeeking to ſaue himſelfe by flight in the mariſhes, there periſhed: his ſonne, and many other notable men amongſt the Turkes, were there taken, and carried priſoners to SIGETH. The ſpoyle

the

A the Hungarians there tooke, was exceeding great: for beſide plate and coine, wherof they found good ſtore, they tooke eight camels, threeſcore horſes, fiue mules, and ſix carts laden with all maner of ſpoile, and many garments of great price; wherin the gentlemen attired, returned to SIGETH in great braueric, with two faire red enſignes of the enemies. *A great prey.*

Maximilian the emperour, long before aduertiſed of *Solymans* purpoſe for the conqueſt of the remainder of HVNGARIE; to withſtand ſo mightie an enemie, had beſide the forces raiſed in his owne dominions, procured great aid both of the ſtates of the empire and other Chriſtian princes, which about this time met togither at RAB. Firſt there repaired thither foure legions of German footmen, and vpwards of twentie thouſand horſemen, with foure thouſand Hungarians: The duke of SAVOY ſent thither foure hundred Argoleteirs: and many noble gen-
B tlemen out of diuers parts of EVROPE reſorted thither, to ſerue the emperour in thoſe wars of their owne charge, eſpecially the knights of MALTA: and out of ITALIE, *Proſper Columna*, and *Angelus Cæſius*: out of FRANCE, *Guiſe* the graund prior, *Briſſack* and *Lanſack*; who but a little before were going to MALTA, of purpoſe to haue ſerued there if the Turks fleet had come thither againe, as it was reported it would; but vnderſtanding that it came not, returned directly into HVNGARIE, with certaine other knights of the Order. Many alſo of the princes and free cities of ITALIE, declared their good will toward the emperour in this war; ſome ſending him men, as did *Coſmus Medices* duke of FLORENCE, who ſent thither of his owne charge three thouſand footmen; ſome mony, as MANTVA, GENVA, and LVCA. Thither came alſo *Alphonſus* duke of FERARA, with a gallant companie of noble gentlemen, and others his followers. Beſide which
C land forces, the emperor had alſo prouided vpon the riuer of Danubius twelue gallies, and thirtie other ſhips for burthen, ſo made, as that the men could not be hurt with the Turks arrowes: wherein was imbarked three thouſand ſouldiors, moſt part Italians, vnder the conduct of *Philippus Flachius* a German, and one of the knights of MALTA, who was afterward receiued into the number of the princes of the empire.

Solyman comming to the riuer Drauus, commaunded a bridge to be made ouer that great riuer, and the deepe fens on the farther ſide of the riuer towards SIGETH, for the tranſporting of his great armie; a worke of ſuch difficultie, that being thrice vnfortunatly begun, it was againe giuen ouer, as a thing almoſt impoſſible: wherwith *Solyman* was ſo moued, that in his rage he ſwore to hang vp the great Baſſa that had the charge of that worke, if he did not with as much
D ſpeed as were poſſible, bring it to perfection. Whereupon the worke was againe begun, all the boats that were to be found in the riuer taken vp, and timber for the purpoſe brought from farre, for the making of that bridge. In this worke were imploied, not the vulgar people onely of the countrie which was tributarie to the Turks, but the gentlemen themſelues alſo, were by the imperious Turke (now commanding for his life) enforced to lay their fingers to worke day and night without ceaſing, vntill the bridge (which before was thought ſcarce poſſible to haue bin made) was by the reſtleſſe induſtrie and labour of ſuch a multitude of men, in the ſpace of ten daies brought to perfection. Wherein the ſeueritie the barbarous tyrant vſeth towards his ſubiects, is worth the noting, wherby he extorteth from them, more than is almoſt poſſible for men to performe: ſo that it is not to be maruelled, that he hath ſo good ſucceſſe in whatſoeuer
E he taketh in hand. Ouer this bridge (a mile in length) paſſed *Solyman*, and encamped at a place called MVHATCHZ, where he ſtaied certaine daies, vntill his hugie armie was all come ouer. The laſt of Iuly, ninetie thouſand Turks (the vauntguard of *Solymans* armie) came before SIGETH; and encamped within a mile of the town: after whom ſhortly after followed an hundred thouſand mo out of *Solymans* campe, of whom many in approching the towne, were ſlaine with great ſhot out of the caſtle; the reſt for all that encamped themſelues as neere vnto the town as they could, and began the ſiege.

The Turks with much labour make a bridge ouer the great riuer of Drauus.

The Turks encampe before Sigeth.

The towne of SIGETH is ſtrongly ſcituat in a Mariſh, on the North ſide of Drauus vpon the frontiers of DALMATIA, commaunding all the countrie round about it, which of it taketh name; and was at that time a ſtrong bulwarke againſt the Turkes, for entring farther into the
F countrie that way toward STIRIA. In this towne was Gouernour *Nicholaus Serinus*, commonly called the Countie, a valiant man, and a mortall enemie of the Turkes, with a garriſon of 2300 good ſoldiors: who ſeeing the hugie armie of the Turks, called togither into the caſtle the captaines of the garriſon and the chiefe of the citiſens; where ſtanding in the midſt of them, hee ſpake vnto them as followeth.

Countie Serinus his comfortable and resolute speech to his soudiors.

You see (said he) *how wee are on euery side beset with the multitude of our enemies, wherein resteth* G
their chiefe hope: But let not vs be therof afraid or discouraged; for that victorie dependeth not of a confused multitude of heartlesse men, but of the power of our God, who hath by a few at his pleasure many times ouerthrowne the mightie armies of the proud; and will not in the middest of these dangers now forsake vs, if wee putting our trust and confidence in him, doe what beseemeth valiant and courragious men. Besides that our iust cause, with the strength of the place we hold, our owne valour, and the helpe of our friends, who I assure my selfe will not faile vs at our need, counteruaileth their confused multitude, forced togither by their imperious commaunders out of far countries, and whatsoeuer els the proud tyrant hath brought with him into the field. Wherefore let vs all as becommeth valiant men, for the truth of our religion, and for the honour of our prince and countrie, liue and die together, knowing whatsoeuer befall, That to a life so lost, beside neuer dying fame, belongeth a most assured hope of endlesse H
ioy and felicitie. As for my selfe, I am resolued, and so (I hope) are you also, that as I am a Christian, and free borne, so will I (by the grace of God) in the same faith and freedome end my daies. Neither shall the proud Turke, so long as I am able to hold vp this hand, haue euer power to commaund ouer mee or the ground whereon I stand. This said, he first tooke himselfe a solemne oath, to performe what he had promised, and persuaded the rest, to take the like: which done, euery man returned to the place of his charge.

Solyman commeth into the camp at Sigeth.

The fift of Auguſt *Solyman* encamped within a mile of the towne, and the next day after came himselfe into the campe, at whose comming the great ordinance and small shot so thundered out of the Turks campe, as if heauen and earth should haue gone togither, the Turks after their wonted manner crying aloud their *Alla, Alla, Alla,* and the Christians answering them I
with the name of Iesus. The seuenth of Auguſt the Turkes cast vp a great mount, and thereon planted certaine great pieces of ordinance. The next day following they began most terribly to batter the new towne in three places, and with incredible labour cast vp a mount in the middest of the marrish, as it were in the towne ditch, from whence they the next day with certain pieces of great artillerie day and night battered the inner castle of the town without any intermission, and did great harme both to the castle and the defendants. The countie perceiuing the new citie to be now so laid open with the furie of the Turks batterie, as that it was not possible to be de-

The defendants burne the new towne.

fended; caused his soldiors to set it all on fire, and to retire into the old. The tenth of Auguſt the Turks furiously battered the old town in three places, & brought their ordinance into the new town: and with timber, earth, and rubbidge, made a bridge, the more commodiously to go ouer K
the marrish. For the speedier accomplishment whereof, all the Turkes were compelled to lay to their hands, and to carrie wood, fagots, earth, and such like things without ceasing. There might a man haue seene all the fields full of cammels, horses, and of the Turks themselues, like emmets, carrying wood, earth, stones, or one thing or other to fill vp the marrish: so was there with wonderfull labour two plaine waies made thorow the deepe fenne, from the towne to the castle: where the Ianizaries, defended from the great shot with sacks of wooll and such like things, did with the multitude of their smal shot so ouerwhelme the defendants, that they could not against those places without most manifest danger shew themselues vpon the wals. So that what by

The Turks win the old towne.

their vigilant industrie, and the furie of the great artillerie, the Turks (though not without great losse) by force entred the old rown the nineteenth of Auguſt, vsing in their victorie such celeritie, L
that they slew many of the most valiant defendants before they were able to recouer the safegard of the castle. Both the towns thus lost, & so many worthie men slaine, not without cause brought great heauines vpon the rest which were in the castle with the countie. The Turks possessed of the old town, the next day planted their batterie against the castle in foure places, and with fagots, rubbidge, & earth, made two plain waies vnto it, still filling vp the marrish: & hauing with continuall batterie made it saultable, the nine and twentie day of Auguſt they began fiercely to assaile the breaches: but when they had lost many of their men, and done what they could, they were enforced with shame to retire. In this assault amongst many other of their best souldiors was lost one of their great Bassaes also.

Solyman dyeth of the bloudie flix.

Whilest these things were in doing, *Solyman* far spent with yeares, and distempered with his M
long trauell, fell sicke of a loosenes of his bellie, and for the better recouerie of his health retired himselfe (the siege yet continuing) to QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ, a citie neere to SIGET, where shortly after he died of the bloudie flix, the fourth day of September, in the yeare of our Lord 1566, when he had liued 76 yeares, and raigned thereof 46. He was of stature tall, of feature slender,

A slender, long necked, his colour pale and wan, his nose long & hooked, of nature ambitious and bountiful, more faithfull of his word and promise than were for most part the Mahomitan kings his progenitors; wanting nothing worthy of so great an empire, but that wherin all happinesse is contained, faith in Christ Iesus. *Muhamet* the Visier Bassa (who all commanded in *Solymans* absence) fearing the insolencie of the Ianizaries, and lest some tumult should arise in the camp, if his death should be knowne, concealed it by all meanes: and to be sure of them that were of all others best able to make certaine report thereof, caused his physitions and Apothecaries to bee secretly strangled, and by a trusty messenger, sent in post, certified *Selymus* (*Solymans* only sonne, and his father in law, then lying in MAGNESIA) of the death of his father, willing him in hast to repaire to CONSTANTINOPLE, to take possession of the empire; and that done, foorthwith to B come to the armie in HVNGARIE. But this could not be so secretly done, but that the Ianizaries began to mistrust the matter: Which *Muhamet Bassa* quickly perceiuing, caused the dead bodie of *Solyman* in his wonted apparell to be brought into his tent sitting vpright in his horselitter, as if he had been sicke of the gout, his wonted disease; and so shewing him to the Ianizaries, both deceiued and contented them, and so went forward with the siege.

Muhamet Bassa concealeth the death of Solyman.

The Ianizaries hauing in the last assault lost many of their fellowes, began now to vndermine the greatest bulwarke of the castle, from which the defendants with their great ordinance did most annoy them: wherein they vsed such diligence, that the fifth of September they with gunpouder and other light matter prouided for that purpose, had set all the bulwarke on a light fire; and by that meanes possessed therof, with all their force assailed the bulwarke next vnto the C castle gate, from whence they were with great slaughter twice repulsed by the countie. But the raging fire stil increasing, he was inforced with those which were yet left aliue, to retire into the inner castle, wherin was but two great pieces, and fourteene others of small force. Thus the Turks still preuailing, and taking one place after another, the seuenth of September the furiously assaulted the little castle, whereinto they cast such abundance of fire, that in short time it caught hold on the buildings, and set all on fire. The countie thus assailed by the enemie without, and worse distressed with the fire within, which still increasing, left no place for him in safetie to retire vnto, went into his chamber, where putting on a rich new sute of apparell, came presently out againe with his sword and targuet in his hand; and finding his souldiors with cheerfull countenance and their weapons in their hands, attending his comming, spake vnto them these few his D last wordes. *The hard fortune of this sinfull kingdome hath together with our owne ouertaken vs: but let vs (noble hearts) with patience endure what is to vs by God assigned. You know what we haue before promised, which hitherto God be thanked we haue accordingly performed, and now let vs with like resolution performe this last. The place you see is not longer to bee kept, the deuouring fire groweth so still vpon vs, and we in number are but few: Wherefore let vs as becommeth valiant men breake out into the viter castle, there to die in the middest of our enemies, to liue afterwards with God for euer, I will bee the first that will goe out, follow you me like men.* This said, with his sword and targuet in his hand, without any other armour, calling thrice vpon the name of Iesus, he issued out at the castle gate, with the rest following him: where valiantly fighting with the Ianizaries vpon the bridge; and hauing slaine some of them, he was first wounded in two places of his bodie with small shot, and at last E strucke in the head with an vnluckie shot, fell downe dead; the Turkes for ioy crying out their wonted word *Alla*. The rest of the souldiors in flying backe againe into the castle, were all slaine by the Turks, except some few, whom some of the Ianizaries in regard of their valor, by putting their caps vpon their heads, saued from the fury of the rest. In this siege, the Turks (as they themselues reported) lost seauen thousand Ianizaries, and twentie eight thousand other soudiors, beside many voluntarie men not enrolled in their muster-bookes, and three of their great Bassaes. *Serinus* his head was presently cut off, and the next day (with the heads of the other slaine Christians) set vpon a pole, for all the armie to gaze vpon. After that, it was taken downe, and by *Muhamet* the great Bassa sent to *Mustapha* the Bassa of BVDA his kinseman; who by two countrey men, sent it wrapped in a red scarfe couered with a faire linnen cloth, to county *Salma* in the emF perours campe at RAB, with this taunting letter thus directed.

The great bulwarke vndermined & set on fire by the Ianizaries.

The little castle set on fire.

The last speech of countie Serinus to his souldiors.

Serinus slaine.

Serinus his head sent to countie Salma.

Muhamet Bassa to *Eccius Salma*, greeting.

The Bassaes quipping letter to county Salma

In token of my loue, behold, heere I send thee the head of a most resolute and valiant captaine thy friend

friend, the remainder of his bodie I haue honestly buried, as became such a man. SIGETH *biddeth thee farewell for euer.* G

The death of this noble and valiant captaine was much lamented of all the Christian armie, and his head with many teares by his sonne *Balthasar* honourably buried amongst his ancestors in TSCHACATVRNA, his owne castle. *Solyman* at his comming with this mightie armie into HVNGARIE, had purposed before his returne, if he had not been by death preuented, to haue conquered both the remainder of the kingdome of HVNGARIE, and to haue againe attempted the winning of VIENNA. For the accomplishing of which his designes, he at his first comming sent *Parthauus Bassa* with fortie thousand Turkes to helpe the Bassa of TEMESVVARE and the Tartars, in the behalfe of the Vayuod, to besiege the strong towne of GYVLA, situate vpon the H lake ZARKAD in the confines of TRANSILVANIA, not farre from whence *Suendi* had but in August before ouerthrowne the Tartars, called in by *Solyman* for the ayd of the Vayuod, and slaine of them ten thousand. And at the same time he sent *Mustapha Bassa* of BOSNA, and *Carambeius*, with a great power to ALBA REGALIS; who ioyning with the Bassa of BVDA, should keepe the emperour *Maximilian* busie, whilest hee in the meane time besieged SIGETH, as is before declared. *Parthauus Bassa* comming to GYVLA, and laying hard siege to the towne, was still notably repulsed by *Nicholas Keretschen*, Gouernour of the towne: insomuch, that in a sallie hee had certain pieces of his great ordinance taken from him by the defendants, and the rest cloied. But this braue captaine, not to haue been constrained by all that the Bassa could doe, was at last per- I suaded by his kinsman *George Bebicus* (from whō *Suendi* had a little before taken certain castles, for reuolting from the emperour to the Vayuod) for a great summe of money to deliuer vp the town to the Bassa: which he did, couenanting beside his reward, That the souldiors should with bag and baggage in safetie depart; all which was franckly graunted: who were not gone past a mile out of the town, but they were set vpon by the Turks, and all slaine, except some few which crept into the reeds growing in the marrish fast by, & so escaped. The traitor himselfe expecting his reward, vvas carried in bonds to CONSATNTINOPLE: where afterward, vpon complaint made how hardly he had vsed certaine Turkes, whom he had sometime taken prisoners, he was by the commaundement of *Selymus*, who succeeded *Solyman*, thrust into a hogshead struck full of nailes with the points inward, with this inscription vpon it: *Here receiue the reward of thy auarice and treason,* GYVLA *thou soldest for gold: if thou be not faithfull to* Maximilian *thy lord, neither* K *wilt thou be to me:* and so the hogshead closed fast vp, he was therein rolled vp and downe vntill he therein miserably died.

Nicholaus Keretschen corrupted for money, betrayeth Gyula to the Turks.

A traitor well rewarded.

The emperours campe then lying at RAB, and the Bassa of BVDA and BOSNA with thirtie thousand Turkes not farre off at ALBA REGALIS, and many hot skirmishes passing betweene them: it fortuned that the fift of September the Turks in hope to haue done some great piece of seruice vpon the Christians, came forth of the campe in great number, and by chance light vpon a few forragers of the army, of whome they slewe some, the rest flying, raised an alarum in the campe: wherupon the Hungarians and Burgundians with some others issuing out, pursuing the Turks, slew diuers of them: in which pursute *George Thuriger*, descrying the Gouernor of ALBA REGALIS, a man in great account, and very inward with *Solyman* whilest he liued, fiercely pur- L sued him in the middest of the flying enemies, and neuer left him vntill he had taken him prisoner: and at his returne presenting him to the emperour, was for that good seruice knighted, and rewarded with a chaine of gold. There was by chance then present a Spaniard, who had heard him say openly at CONSTANTINOPLE, That hee alone with his owne power was able to vanquish the Germane king (by which name the Turkes commonly tearme the emperour:) With which wordes when that the Spaniard hardly charged him in the presence of the emperour, still vrging him as it were to say something for himselfe, the Turke answered him in these few words following: *Such is the chance of warre, thou seest mee now a prisoner, and able to doe nothing.*

The Gouernor of Alba Regalis taken.

The Turks sharp answere to the Spaniard.

All these troubles, with many moe like in short time to haue ensued, were by the death of M *Solyman* vvithin a while after well appeased. *Muhamet Bassa* after hee had repaired the breaches, and placed a Turke Gouernour of SIGETH, with a strong garrison for the defence of the place and commaunding of the countrey, called backe the dispersed forces; and rising with the armie, retired toward BELGRADE, carrying *Solymans* dead bodie all the way sitting vp-

The Turks armie returneth with the bodie of Solyman to Belgrade.

right

A right in his horſelitter carried by mules, giuing it out that hee was ſicke of the gout: which thing the Ianizaries eaſily beleeued, knowing that hee had beene many yeares ſo carried: yet ſtill wiſhing his preſence, as alwayes vnto them fortunate, although that he were able for to doe nothing.

FINIS.

B

C

D

E

F

Christian Princes of the same time with Solyman.

- *Emperors of Germanie.*
  - *Charles the fift.* 1519. 39.
  - *Ferdinand.* 1558. 7.
  - *Maximilian the second.* 1565. 12.
- *Kings*
  - *Of England*
    - *Henrie the eight.* 1509. 38.
    - *Edward the sixt.* 1546. 6.
    - *Queene Marie.* 1553. 6.
    - *Queene Elizabeth.* 1558. 45.
  - *Of France*
    - *Francis the first.* 1514. 32.
    - *Henrie the second.* 1547. 12.
    - *Francis the second.* 1559. 1.
    - *Charles the ninth.* 1560. 14.
  - *Of Scotland*
    - *Iames the fifth.* 1514. 29.
    - *Queene Marie.* 1543.
- *Bishops of Rome*
  - *Leo the X.* 1513. 8.
  - *Hadrian the VI.* 1522. 1.
  - *Clement the VII.* 1523. 10.
  - *Paulus the III.* 1534. 15.
  - *Iulius the III.* 1550. 5.
  - *Marcellus the II.* 1555. 22. daies.
  - *Paulus the IIII.* 1555. 4.
  - *Pius the IIII.* 1560. 5.
  - *Pius the V.* 1566. 6.

Dißimilis patri, Selymus regalia Sceptra,
Corripit: & dira concutit arma manu.
Fœdus cum Venetis frangit. Quid fœdera prosunt?
Armata q. manu Cypria regna rapit
Instruit tumidum numerosis classibus Æquor:
Vt Naupactiacas nobilitaret aquas.
Moldauum fœda multauit morte Dynasten:
Et magni fines prorogat imperij.
Obruit Hispanos multa vi: Punica regna
Destruit: & regnis adjcit illa suis.
Sed nimis in venerem pronus, vinoq. sepultus,
Extremum properat præcipitare diem. R. KNOLL.

Vnlike his father, *Selymus* the royall Scepter takes:
And shaking armes with cruell hand, exceeding stirs he makes.
With VENICE state his league he breaks (with Turks what league can stand)
And CYPRVS kingdome takes from them by force of mightie hand.
He couered the swelling seas with hugie fleets to see:
That vanquished, vnto those seas he might an honour be.
The Vayuod of MOLDAVIA he brought to wofull end,
The borders of his kingdome great so that he might extend.
In GVLET he the Spaniards ouerwhelmd with mightie power:
And thereby TVNES kingdome did the selfe same time deuour.
But wholly giuen to venerie, vnto excesse and play,
He posteth on before his time to haste his fatall day. *R. K.*

THE

THE LIFE OF SELYMVS, THE SECOND OF THAT NAME, FIFT EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

Elymus, the only ſonne of *Solyman* then left aliue, by letters from *Muhamet Baſſa* vnderſtanding of the death of his father, haſted from CVTAI, a citie of GALATIA not farre from ANCYRA, towards CONSTANTINOPLE; and comming to SCVTARIE, was from thence by *Boſtanges Baſſa* of the court, conducted ouer the ſtrait to CONSTANTINOPLE: where, by him and *Scander Baſſa* (*Selymus* his ſonne in law, and then *Solymans* Vicegerent) he was conuaied into the imperiall palace the three and twentith of September, in the yeare 1566, and there poſſeſſed of his fathers ſeat, was by the Ianizaries there preſent, ſaluted emperour. He was about the age of fortie two yeares when hee began to raigne, a man of an vnconſtant and haſtie diſpoſition, wholy giuen to wantonneſſe and exceſſe: ſo that he neuer went to warres himſelfe, but performed them altogether by his lieutenants, contrarie to the charge of *Selymus* his grandfather, giuen by him to his father *Solyman*, wherof he was neuer vnmindfull. The next day he came abroad, and ſhewed himſelfe in his maieſtie; and in the temple of SOPHIA, after the manner of the Türkiſh ſuperſtition, cauſed ſolemne praiers and ſacrifices to be made for his father: which done, he gaue vnto the Ianizaries a largious of 100000 Sultanines, with promiſe to augment their wages. And all things being now in readineſſe for his intended iourney, he with a goodly retinue ſet forward from CONSTANTINOPLE the ſeuen and twentith of September: and the twentith of October a little from BELORADE met the armie comming from SIGETH, gallantly marching vnder their enſignes, with the dead bodie of *Solyman*, whom the ſouldiors generally ſuppoſed to haue been yet liuing, but troubled with the gout, to haue kept his horſe-litter as his manner was to trauell. *Selymus* alighting, came in his mourning attire to the horſe-litter, looked vpon the dead bodie of his father, kiſſed it, and wept ouer it, as did all the other great Baſſaes alſo. And that the death of *Selyman* might then be made known to all men, the enſigns were preſently let fall, and trailed vpon the ground, a dead march ſounded, and heauy ſilence commaunded to be kept through all the campe. Shortly after, *Selymus* was with the great applauſe of the whole armie proclaimed emperour, his enſignes aduanced, and euery one of the great commaunders of the armie, in their degree admitted to kiſſe his hand. So marching forward, he returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE, the two and twentieth of Nouember: but thinking to haue entred his palace (which they commonly call the SERAGLIO) he was by the diſcontented Ianizaries but now come from the wars, prohibited ſo to doe; they with great inſolencie demanding of him a greater donatiue, together with the confirmation both of their auncient and new priuiledges, before they would ſuffer him to enter. Againſt which their great preſumption, the Viſier Baſſaes, together with the Aga, oppoſing themſelues, and ſeeking by all meanes to appeaſe them, were by them fowly intreated, & well rapped about the pates with the ſtocks of their calliuars; but eſpecially the two great Baſſaes, *Muhamet* and *Partau*, as the chiefe authors that their lord had dealt no more liberally with them. With which ſo ſudden and vnexpected a mutinie of his beſt ſouldiors, *Selymus* not a little troubled, and calling

Selymus ſaluted emperour of the Turks in the yeare 1566.

ling vnto him the Aga(or captaine of the Ianizaries)demanded of him the cauſe thereof: who G
with teares trickling downe his cheekes for griefe,told him,That it was for money. Which by *Selymus* now promiſed vnto them,together with the confirmation of their liberties;and the Aga with faire words and heauy countenance moſt earneſtly entreating them,not to blemiſh the antient reputation of their wonted loyaltie with ſo foule a diſorder, nor to oppoſe the life of him their louing captaine, vnto the heauie diſpleaſure of their angrie Sultan; and farther aſſuring them,that he would not faile them in the leaſt of his promiſes, but content them to the full of their deſires; the mutinie was at length appeaſed, the inſolent Ianizaries againe quieted, and *Selymus* into the SERAGLIO receiued. Howbeit *Muhamet*,chiefe of the Viſier Baſſaes, for certaine dayes after went not out of his pallace,neither came (as hee was wont)into the DIVANO, but kept himſelfe cloſe,for feare of ſome greater miſchiefe from them.This tumult thus ouerpaſ- H
Soliman buried ſed, and all againe well quieted,*Selymus* with all royall ſolemntie buried his father in a chappel which he after the manner of the Mahometane kings, had in his life time moſt ſtately built,with a colledge and an hoſpitall. Where faſt by his ſide is to be ſeene the tombe of *Roxolana* his beſt beloued wife,and of certaine others his murthered children: and by him hangeth his ſcimitar,in token that he died in wars; an honour not otherwiſe granted to the Mahometane princes. The reuenues ariſing of the countrey about SIGETH, of late woon from the Chriſtians, at the time of his death,were giuen to the maintenance of the houſes by him built of deuotion; which for the magnificence thereof, exceed all the reſt before built by the Mahometane kings and emperours, except thoſe which were the buildings of *Mahomet* the great,and *Baiazet* the ſecond. It was by many thought, that *Solyman* was in good time by death cut off, as purpoſing that yeare I
to haue wintered in HVNGARIE,and the yeare following to haue done great matters againſt the Chriſtians,both by ſea and land.

The great armie of the Turks thus drawne out of HVNGARIE by the death of *Solyman*,in
1567 ſome part aſſwaged,but altogether appeaſed not the endleſſe troubles of that vnfortunat kingdome. *Maximilian* the emperour on the one ſide, and *Iohn* the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA
Troubles in Hungarie. with the Turks captaines on the other,renting it in pieces, as if they had ſworne the deſtruction thereof. The Vayuod deſiring to recouer the ſtrong caſtle of TOCKAY,in the frontiers of his countrey,but lately taken from him by *Suendi* the emperours lieutenant, laid hard ſiege vnto it, and had brought it to great extremitie, although it was notably defended by *Iames Ramınger* the captaine therof: when ſuddenly newes was brought vnto him,That the Tartars (whom he K
had called into his countrey to haue aided him againſt the emperour)did with all hoſtilitie after their barbarous manner,burne and deſtroy his countrey before them, making hauocke of all things; ſo that the countrey people were glad in defence of themſelues,to take vp armes againſt them. Whereupon he forthwith left the ſiege,and went to aid his diſtreſſed ſubiects againſt the Tartars,with whom he had many an hot skirmiſh; and after much bloudſhed, at laſt ouercame them,and with much adoe rid himſelfe of ſuch bad gueſts. Now in the meane time, *Suendi* ſtrengthened with new ſupplies ſent vnto him from the emperor,had taken the caſtle of ZACKMAR in the borders of TRANSILVANIA, and with like good fortune had the caſtle of MVNCATZ yeelded vnto him,and after that beſieged the towne of HVSTH: ſo that the Vayuod was L
glad to craue aid of the Turkiſh emperour *Selymus*,vnder whoſe protection hee was: who preſently commaunded *Partaw* one of his chiefe Baſſaes,& then his great lieuenant in ROMANIA, to goe with his forces into TRANSILVANIA,to relieue them. But hearing that embaſſadors were comming from *Maximilian* the emperour,he called him backe againe,vntill he had heard
The Baſſa of Buda deſirous to further the peace. the effect of that embaſſage. At which time alſo the Baſſa of BVDA enclining vnto peace, ſent preſents to the emperour,requeſting him to remoue certaine Hungarian captaines from off the frontiers, leaſt happily they ſhould interrupt the treatie of peace, then on both ſides purpoſed; promiſing for his part to puniſh with death all ſuch Turks as ſhould make any further inuaſion, or raiſe any new troubles.He writ letters alſo to county *Salma*,That he could not but maruel,to what end *Maximilian* the emperor was about to entreat with his lord & maſter of peace,whileſt *Suendi* in the meane time was raging in TRANSILVANIA,then vnder the Turkes protection; M
which if he proceeded ſtill to doe,*Selymus* would thereof take occaſion (as hee ſaid)to turne all his forces that way: wherefore he requeſted him to perſwade the emperour to take ſome more eaſie courſe in that behalfe,promiſing alſo,that he would for his part effectually trauell with his maſter,to haue better liking of peace than of warres, wiſhing him alſo to doe the like. Which

thing

A thing as ſoone as the emperour vnderſtood, he commaunded *Suendi* to giue ouer the ſiege of HVSTH, and to keepe himſelfe quiet, vntill he might by his embaſſadours vnderſtand what the great Turke purpoſed, and how he was affected towards peace.

Now in deed theſe two great princes, *Maximilian* and *Selymus* (although they notably diſſembled the matter) were both of them in heart deſirous of peace, and that for diuers great and vrgent conſiderations. *Maximilian* for want of money, ſaw it not poſſible for him to ſend into the field ſuch an armie the next yeare, as he had the yeare before. And *Selimus*, beſide his other troubles, was to take order for the appeaſing of a great and dangerous rebellion, in the fartheſt part of his dominions in ARABIA FŒLIX; where the people riſing vp in armes, and hauing ſlaine the Baſſaes and Sanzacks their Gouernours, were readie to haue caſt off the Turkiſh obe-
B dience: neither was he out of feare of the Perſians, readie (as was reported) to make war vpon him. For which cauſes he wiſhed rather for peace with the emperour *Maximilian*, than wars: and ſo much the more, for that it was impoſſible for him to ſend an armie of any puiſſance into HVNGARIE, for want of many neceſſarie prouiſions for the maintenance there of, in a countrie ſo much impouериſhed by reaſon of his late wars; wherein no victuals were to be found for the reliefe of ſuch a multitude of men as he was to ſend, if he would doe any good there. And truth it was (as the Turks themſelues afterward reported) that *Maximilian* with halfe the power he had in field the laſt yeare, might haue eaſily recouered the greateſt part of that kingdome before loſt: but well knowing his owne wants, and ignorant of theirs, he altogether inclining to peace;
and by countie *Salma* aduertiſed from the Baſſa of BVDA, That if he would ſend embaſſadors to
C CONSTANTINOPLE with the tribute woont to be there paid for HVNGARIE, a peace vpon reaſonable conditions might be eaſily obtained; he reſolued vpon that point. And ſo certaine meſſengers being ſent vp and downe to CONSTANTINOPLE to the ſame effect, it was concluded, That if the emperour would ſend embaſſadors to CONSTANTINOPLE with the tribute yet behind, and a large commiſſion for the treatie of peace, *Selymus* ſhould giue them his ſafe conduct, with libertie at their pleaſure to return in caſe either of peace or war. Which agreed vpon, and faithfully promiſed on both ſides, *Selymus* ſet at libertie the lord *Albert de Vuis*, who ſix yeares Lieger in CONSTANTINOPLE, firſt for the emperor *Ferdinand*, & after for *Maximilian*, had now bin ſtraightly impriſoned in his own houſe by the ſpace of two and twentie mo-
D neths, in ſuch ſort that neither he nor any of his houſhold could go abroad, watch and ward being kept both night and day about his houſe, and his windowes alſo borded vp, to the end he ſhould not ſo much as looke out into the citie or any whither elſe more than the court of his houſe onely. So the emperour *Maximilian* now reſolued to ſend embaſſadours to CONSTANTINOPLE with the tribute money, and diuers other rich gifts and preſents, as well to the great Turke himſelfe as the Viſier Baſſaes his counſellors: and conſidering with himſelfe, whom to be moſt fit with wiſedome and honour to bring this ſo waightie a matter about, hauing to doe with ſo barbarous, couetous, and mightie a people; made choice of the lord *Anthonius Verantius* of AGRIA (of his counſell for the kingdome of HVNGARIE) a prelat of great eſtimation, who being a man of threeſcore and three yeares old, beſide his great learning, had the experi-
E ence of ſeuen and twentie embaſſages; wherein he alwaies ſo diſcreetly bare himſelfe, as well contented his prince, and purchaſed vnto himſelfe the reputation of a moſt graue and wiſe man: and about ten yeares before this embaſſage, being by the emperour *Ferdinand* ſent embaſſadour to *Solyman*, and now by *Maximilian* to *Selymus* at CONSTANTINOPLE, returning thence with good ſucceſſe, was by the emperour created a prince of the empire, and biſhop of AGRIA. Vnto which ſo honourable a perſonage, hauing the charge of this ſo waightie a matter, the emperour the more to ennoble this embaſſage, as alſo to purchaſe the greater credit to his embaſſadour, ioyned vnto him a moſt honourable Baron, called the lord *Chriſtopher Teufenbatch* of STIRIA, one of his counſellors alſo for the wars; who with full inſtructions both taking their leaue of the emperour (then holding a parliament at PRESBVRG) departed: and being attended vpon with a great and honorable retinue, ſet forward the firſt of Iuly 1567, and ſo came to CO-
F MARA a ſtrong towne in HVNGARIE, not paſt a league from the Turkes frontires. In which place the embaſſadours ſtaying vntill the ſeuenth of Iuly; in the meane time gaue knowledge of their comming vnto the Gouernor of STRIGONIVM, demanding for their ſecuritie in the enemies countrie, to be met and receiued by ſome of his garriſon: which granted, they tooke their barkes brought from VIENNA and POSSONIVM, ſufficient for their greatneſſe to haue carryed

Maximilian and Selymus both deſirous of peace.

Maximilian the emperor ſendeth embaſſadours to Selymus.

them downe the riuer to BELGRADE, with horſe and wagon and their whole furniture: and ſo entring vpon the Turkes dominion about a league or a little more from COMARA, being ſo far G
wafted by the ſouldiors and gallies of COMARA, they were met by an Aga of the Turks with a Chiaus called *Becram* (ſent by the Baſſa of BVDA) in certaine gallies armed with Turkiſh ſoldiors. To whom the embaſſador at his landing deliuered his mind, and afterward his perſon, giuing them to vnderſtand, that they were with all ſafetie to conduct both him and all his to the Baſſa of BVDA; which they anſwered, they were readie to accompliſh: and ſo courteouſly inuited by the embaſſadors, they came aboord their barke, and there dined altogither. Here they that were ſent with them, leauing them in the hands of the Turks (hauing licence to depart) returned to COMARA: and they that day after fiue leagues ſayling arriued at STRIGONIVM,
where they were by the Gouernour of the citie denied landing: for which ſo diſhonourable a H
part, he was afterward ſharply rebuked by the Baſſa of BVDA. Yet as they lay that night vpon the water, certain Turkiſh minſtrels, to do them honour & to get a largeſſe, with their barbarous bawling inſtruments plaied them vp many a homely fit of mirth: and diuers others with ſundrie ſorts of vauting and tumbling, ſometime leaping one vpon anothers ſhoulders, and ſometime doing their tricks on the earth, all the euening ſhewed them great ſport and paſtime. From
The embaſſadors come to Buda.
STRIGONIVM they with fiue leagues ſayling came to BVDA, leauing behind them the caſtle of VICEGRADE, two leagues diſtant from STRIGONIVM. In this citie of BVDA lieth the great Baſſa, by whom all HVNGARIE, with the prouinces thereto belonging (in the Turkes power) is gouerned. This citie, ſometime the regall ſeat of the Hungarian kings, is ſituat vpon a little hill on the Southſide of Danubius, hauing in the South point thereof a caſtle, much I
higher than the citie, and of a moſt braue proſpect: in which caſtle lyeth a captaine with a garriſon of fiue hundred ſouldiors (as the Turks ſay) howbeit it is thought that they are not altogither ſo many: it is the loſſe of his head to ſtir out of his charge; and beſide, he hath commiſſion to denie the Baſſa himſelfe entrance, vnleſſe he come verie ſleightly accompanied: ſo iealous are the Turkes of that caſtle, as if the ſtate of HVNGARIE depended thereon. Herein ſtandeth the king pallace, which taketh vp moſt part of the place, greatly beautified by king *Mathias*, and ſhewing outwardly to haue bin a verie ſtately thing: for there are in it both large hals and faire galleries, and chambers built in moſt royall manner; where amongſt other roomes, the embaſſadours found a decaied librarie full of pictures and Latine titles of bookes: all which things, when they preſent themſelues vnto the eies of the Chriſtian beholders, offer a iuſt conſideration K
of noble and reuerend antiquitie, and withall, ſtrike into their hearts a certaine compaſſion ioyned with horror, to ſee the renowmed glorie of ſo many great kings, all waſted and brought to nothing. The next morning, the embaſſadours went to ſpeake with the Baſſa: whoſe houſe was reaſonable faire (conſidering their guiſe and cuſtome, not much delighting in the beautie of their priuat buildings) ſituat vpon the riuers ſide, at the bottome of the hill whereon the citie
Preſents giuen by the emperors embaſſadours vnto the Baſſa of Buda.
ſtandeth. Vnto this Baſſa the embaſſadors preſented two great gilt cups, a clocke all curiouſly wrought in gold, and a thouſand dollars: which preſent the Baſſa receiued in his Diuano (being a large hall) where he ſat with his counſellours, officers, and other Turks in their places and order; ſome on his right hand, & others on his left, all richly attired in garments of ſilke of diuers colours and faſhions, reaching downe to their ancles after their manner: their heads couered L
with their paſſing white and well made Turbants: in which aſſemblie, nothing being to be ſeen but goodly order and graue ſilence, they ſeemed to the ſtrange beholders, ſo many counſellours of exceeding grauitie and reputation. Round about the hall wherein the embaſſadours had audience, were many ſeats couered with Turkie carpets; the reſt of the room being all vacant. The Baſſa in a place more apparant than the reſt, ſitting in great maieſtie: before whom were ſet two little chaires, on which (after he had ſtood vp a while and embraced the embaſſadors) he cauſed them both to ſit downe. Whoſe ſpeech deliuered in the Italian tongue (after they had diſcharged themſelues of the emperors letters and greetings) was to effect this, *viz.* That his imperiall maieſtie (for the common benefit of their ſubiects in HVNGARIE) requeſted him to continue in his good purpoſe and dealing for peace: and further, to giue ſafe conduct vnto them his embaſ- M
ſadours with their retinue, vntill they were come vnto the Turks court, where they were to entreat and conclude a peace, to the ending of all troubles, and the publike benefit of their ſubiects in generall. Which ſpeech, with cheerefull and friendly countenance ended, many of the embaſſadors followers were admitted to kiſſe the Baſſaes hand, accounted no ſmal fauour amongſt

thoſe

A thoſe Barbarians. The interpretour of theſe things was a Iew of PADVA, who declared all that was ſpoken, in the Turkiſh language vnto the Baſſa, & in the Italian vnto the embaſſadors. And although (if it had bin their pleaſure) they might haue told their mind each to other in the Sclauonian tongue, without an interpretour: yet the Baſſa ſtanding more vpon his reputation, and for ſome other reſpects beſide, would haue the matter propounded, and likewiſe anſwered in the Turkiſh. In which ſort they alſo conferred continually afterward with the Baſſaes at CONSTANTINOPLE, vnleſſe it were in ſome particular and priuat talke of ſmall importance, or els in ſome point beſide the matter; for then the interpretours ſpake in the Crouatian or Sclauonian tongue, which is familiar to moſt of the Turks, but eſpecially to the men of war. Before this hall where the embaſſadors were entertained by the Baſſa; in the baſe court ſtood all the Iani-
B zaries in goodly array, and his ſlaues with their red zarcull on their heads, and other ſouldiours with high and long plumes of feathers ſtanding vpright: all which made a beautifull ſhew, and gaue all great grace to the Baſſaes court: theſe men ſtirre not one foot in their ſtandings, and if the conſultation do laſt foure houres long, ſo long are they to continue ſtanding without mooving. The embaſſadours hauing ſtaied two daies at BVDA, were by the Baſſa diſmiſſed, ſending with them his Checai (the Steward or gouernour of his houſe) a man of great reputation, and *Becram* the Chiaus (the ſame that came to meet them at COMARA) with a ſufficient guard, and certaine Ianizaries, ſent for their more ſafe trauelling, and to prouide for them from place to place of all things neceſſarie for their diet, as alſo for their horſes, at the Turks charges. And thus accompanied, they embarked the tenth day of the aforeſaid moneth, towed vp the Turks gal-
C lies, which holpen by the ſwiftneſſe of the riuer, caried them down in eight daies to BELGRADE, where they arriued the eighteenth of Iuly. So hauing ſtaied at BELGRADE, and there leauing their boats, and taking their coaches, they ſet forward by land the twentieth of the ſaid month, and with great paines trauelling through RASCIA, BVLGARIA, and THRACIA, and paſſing a part of the great mountaine SCARDVS, and after that the mountaine RHODOPE, ſo by the way of PHILIPPOPOLIS, and HADRIANOPLE, the two and twentieth of Auguſt gathered faſt vpon CONSTANTINOPLE: where many of the Spahies and Chiauſais of the court, with a num-
ber of the Ianizaries and other ſouldiours, for their greater honour came to meet them a great way without the citie. By whom the embaſſadours honourably mounted on horſebacke, were *The emperors embaſſadors honourably receiued by the Turks at Conſtantinople.*
by them conducted to their lodging appointed for them about the middeſt of the citie: where
D the lord *Albert de Vuis* the emperours embaſſadour Lieger (not long before enlarged) hauing long looked for their comming, now moſt ioyfully receiued them. It was then Friday the Turks Sabaoth, and a day of them aboue all other daies in the weeke regarded, and about ten of the clocke two houres before noone; at which time the embaſſadors were no ſooner alighted, but that *Selymus* going to heare the ceremonies of his religion, in the Moſchie of his father *Solyman* (as his manner was ſometime to doe) paſſed along before the gate where the embaſſadours lay, with the whole traine of his court; and peraduenture ſomewhat more than ordinarie, to ſhew the magnificence of his power and ſtate, to the end that the embaſſadors (aboue the former opinion by them conceiued) might holde him in the reputation of a moſt puiſſant and mighty monarch. He paſſing by, vouchſafed not once to giue them a regard, or ſo much as to caſt his eie
E aſide vpon them, although they were ſtrangers, and but euen then arriued: but with a countenance, as if he had knowne not ſo much as nothing of their comming, held on his way as it lay. But *Muhamet* the chiefe Viſier Baſſa, with the other Baſſaes and great courtiers, in moſt gratious manner as they paſſed by, caſt their eies vpon them; all the courteſie they could then ſhew them. Six daies after, being the eight and twentieth of Auguſt, the embaſſadours all three *Preſents giuen by the emperors embaſſadors to to the Great Baſſaes.*
went to viſit and ſalute *Muhamet* (or as the Turkes call him *Mehemet*) the chiefe Viſier Baſſa, as the manner was; preſenting him from the emperour with foure cups of ſiluer all guilt, of moſt faire and curious workmanſhip; of which, two of them being greater than the other, were three ſpans high, the other two being not ſo high by a ſpan, but hauing in them two thouſand duckats of gold: beſide which, they gaue him alſo a clocke, being a moſt curious piece of worke, and all
F ouer double guilt. After which greetings and preſents deliuered, beſide the contents of his maieſties letters, they declared vnto him in generall points, the cauſe of their comming, and the mind of the emperour well diſpoſed to a peace; and what great benefit would ariſe thereby to both parties: and laſtly turning ouer the blame of the late warres, and laying the fault thereof to the charge of others, ſweetned thereby the ſower of their former dealings. Neither was the Baſſa

likewise for his part to seeke of good words, but answered them in Turkish by the mouth of *Hibraim* the cheefe Dragoman, who deliuered his mind to them in Latin or Italian, accordingly as the embassadours had before vttered theirs: which parle so ended, certaine of the cheefe of the embassadours followers were admitted into the Diuano to kisse the proud Bassaes hand. The same day the embassadours also saluted *Partau* the second Bassa, and *Ferat* the third in order and authoritie. To *Partau* they presented two cups of siluer all guilt, beside a clock of the same making with the abouenamed, and two thousand dollers: and the like to *Ferat*. The next day they went to visit the other three Bassaes, *Acomat*, *Piall*, and *Muhamet*, presenting euery one of them with two faire cups, and a thousand dollars: These were the six Visier Bassaes to *Selymus*, then lying at Court with him, men that for wealth and authoritie went before all other in the Turkish empire, as in the course of this historie may appeare. And so hauing visited them in generall, the embassadours to set their affaires on foot, the fourth of September closed with *Muhamet*, to whom the ordering of state-matters was especially committed. Yet after this first conference, because it was necessarie before so weightie affaires were broached, first to doe the Great Turke reuerence, and to deliuer the presents, with the emperours letters to him written; for some few dayes there was not any point at all of the embassadours businesse handled.

Selymus not long after the embassadours were arriued, went out for his disport & pleasure on hunting: so that in the meane time (after the presents were giuen to the Bassaes) matters stood stil altogether vnaduanced, vntill the one and twentieth of September: and that day (*Selymus* being now returned from his disport) it was appointed that the embassadors should haue audience at the Court. Whereupon they made choice out of their followers of those that should attend vpon them, which were not in all aboue twelue persons: For they to whom this charge was committed, said it was neither the manner nor yet meet that any great train should come before so great a prince, and that they might not bring with them aboue that number: whereupon they appointed but six a peece to attend them: and of fifteene cups all of siluer and guilt, being most curiously and cunningly engrauen, one of the faireſt among the rest was giuen to each of those twelue to carrie, and they ordered to go by two and two before the rest that came after in order with the rest of the present: which was two exceeding pretious Clockes, like in bignesse to them before giuen to the Bassaes, but far aboue them in value; and fiue and fortie thousand Dollars for the tribute behind and yet vnpayed. The greatest of those cups was six spans and an halfe, and the least two spans in height: some of them being double cups after the high Dutch manner.

Presents sent vnto Selymus by the emperour.

The emperours embassadors honourably conducted by the Turks vnto the Court.

The embassadours (whose comming a great multitude of the Ianizaries attended below at the gate of their lodging: beside many of the Spahies and Chiausis, and others of good sort, which were come to honour them with their presence to the pallace) putting themselues in readinesse betimes in the morning, and taking horse, set forward toward the Court. The formost were they that did beare the present in their hands, the people of the citie in euery street flocking together in exceeding multitudes to behold them as they passed: and verily there had been seldome times seene the like embassage in those parts. For besides the fame that was blowne abroad in euery quarter, That they were men sent from one of the greatest princes of Christendome; the diuersitie of their attire (so few as they were) more than any thing beside, did represent the maiestie of the Christian emperour to them that gased vpon his embassadours and their traine, the people conceiuing thereby that he was lord and ruler of many prouinces and countries. For they that were Hungarians belonging to the bishop of Agria (the cheefe embassadour) being attired in long & sober garments of very fine purple cloth, hauing their shooes pieced ouer the soles with yron plates, and halfe of their heads shauen, seemed to differ from them but little. But on the other side the high Dutch attired in blacke, with their veluet caps, and short cloakes layed with siluer lace, and long breeches little lesse than Rutter wise, and chaines of gold about their neckes, appeared very strange and vncouth to the Turkish people: and so accompanied in this honourable wise,

The first Gate of the Great Turks pallace.

the embassadours entred the first gate of the Great Turks pallace. This gate is built of marble in most sumptuous manner, and of a stately height, with certaine words of their language in the front thereof engrauen and guilt in marble. So passing through the base Court, which hath on the right side very faire gardens, & on the left side diuers buildings seruing for other offices, with a little Moschie; they came to the second gate, where al such as come in riding, must of necessitie alight. Here so soon as they were entred in at this second gate, they came into a very large square Court, with buildings and galleries round about it, the kitchins standing on the right hand, with

The second Gate.

other

A other lodgings for ſuch as belonged to the court, and on the left hand likewiſe roomes deputed to like ſeruices. There are moreouer many hals and other roomes for reſort, where they ſit in counſell handling and executing the publike affaires either of the Court or of the Empire, with other matters, where the Baſſaes and other officers aſſemble together. Entring in at this ſecond gate, in one part of the Court, which ſeemed rather ſome large ſtreet, they ſaw the whole companie of the Solaches ſet in a goodly ranke, which are archers keeping alwaies neere vnto the perſon of the Great Turke, and ſeruing as his footmen when he rideth: they vſe high plumes of feathers, which are ſet bolt vpright ouer their foreheads. In another place there ſtood the Capitzi in like array, with blacke ſtaues of Indian canes in their hands: they are the porters and warders at the gates of the pallace, not much differing in their attire from the Ianizaries; who
B ſtood in ranke likewiſe in another quarter. And beſide all thoſe, with many more that were out of order, as well of the Court as of the common people, thoſe knights of the Court which accompanied the embaſſadors thither, with other great ones alſo of like degree, were marſhalled all in their ſeuerall companies. And among the reſt, the Mutfarachas, men of all nations and all religions (for their valour the onely freemen which liue at their owne libertie in the Turkiſh empire) ſtood there apparrelled in damaske, veluet, and cloth of gold, and garments of ſilke of ſundrie kinds and colours: their pompe was great, and the greater, for the turbants that they wore vpon their heads, being as white as whiteneſſe it ſelfe, made a moſt braue and goodly ſhew well worth the beholding. In briefe, whether they were to be conſidered all at once, or in particular,
C as well for the order that they kept, as for their ſumptuous preſence, altogither without noiſe or rumour; they made the embaſſadors and the reſt of their followers there preſent, eye witneſſes both of their obedience, and of the great eſtate and royaltie of the *Othoman* Court. Paſſing through them, the embaſſadours were led into the hall, where the Baſſaes and other great men of the Court were all readie to giue them intertainment: they of their traine being at the ſame time brought into a roome that ſtood a part vnder one of the aforeſaid lodgings all hung with Turkie carpets. Soone after (as their vſe and manner is) they brought in their dinner, couering the ground with table cloths of a great length, ſpred vpon carpets; and afterward ſcattering vpon them a maruelous number of woodden ſpoons, with ſo great ſtore of bread, as if they had been to feed three hundred perſons: then they ſet on meat in order; which was ſerued in two
D and fortie great platters of earth, full of rice pottage of three or foure kinds, differing one from another; ſome of them ſeaſoned with hony, and of the colour of hony; ſome with ſoure milk, and white of colour; & ſome with ſugar: they had fritters alſo which were made of like batter; and mutten beſide, or rather a daintie and toothſome morſell of an old ſodden Ewe. The table (if there had any ſuch beene) thus furniſhed, the gueſts without any cerimonie of waſhing ſat downe on the ground (for ſtooles there were none) and fell to their victuall, and dranke out of great earthen diſhes, water prepared with ſugar, which kind of drink they call Zerbet. But ſo hauing made a ſhort repaſt, they were no ſooner riſen, but certain young men whom they call Giamoglans, with others that ſtood round about them, ſnatcht it haſtily vp as their fees, and like greedie Harpies rauened it downe in a moment. The embaſſadors in the meane time dined in the hall with the Baſſaes. And after dinner certain of the Capitzies were ſent for the twelue of
E the embaſſadors followers, before appointed to do the great Sultan reuerence: by whom (their preſents being alreadie conuaied away) they were remooued out of the place where they dined, and brought on into an vnder roome, from whence there was an aſcent into the hall, where the Baſſaes were ſtaying for the embaſſadours: who ſoone after came forth, and for their eaſe ſat them downe vpon the benches, whileſt the Baſſaes went in to *Selymus*; who before this time had made an end of dinner, and was remoued in all his royalty into one of his chambers, expecting the comming of the embaſſadours. All things now in readineſſe, and the embaſſadors ſent for, they ſet forward with their traine, and came to the third gate which leadeth into the priuie pallace of the Turkiſh emperour, where none but himſelfe, his eunuchs, and the yong pages his minions, being in the eunuchs cuſtodie, hath continuall abiding: into which inward part of the
F pallace none entreth but the Capitzi Baſſa (who hath the keeping of this third gate) & the Cellig- *The third gate.*
niers (that ſerue in the great Turks meat) with the Baſſaes & ſome few other great men; and that onely when they haue occaſion ſo to do by reaſon of ſome great buſineſſe, or ſent for by the Sultan. Being entered in at this gate, which is of a ſtately and royall building, the Capitzi by whom they were conducted, ſuddenly cauſed them to ſtay, & ſet them one from another about

A homely feaſt giuen to the embaſſadors followers in the Turkes Court.

fiue paces; in a little roome, which neuertheſſe was paſſing delicate, all curiouſly painted ouer G
with diuers colours, and ſtood betweene the gate and the more inner lodgings. On both ſides of
which roome, when all things els were whiſt and in a deepe ſilence, certaine little birds onely
were heard to warble out their ſweet notes, and to flicker vp and downe the green trees of the
gardens (which all along caſt a pleaſant ſhaddow from them) as if they alone had obtained li-
cence to make a noiſe. *Selymus* himſelfe was in great maieſtie ſet in an vnder chamber, parted on-
ly with a wall from the roome wherein the embaſſadors followers attended, wherinto he might
looke thorough a little window, the portall of his ſaid chamber ſtanding in counterpoint with
the third gate aboue mentioned. The embaſſadours entring in, were led ſingle and one after
another, to make their reuerence vnto the Great Turke. And in the meane time certaine of the
Capitzi with the preſents in their hands fetching a compaſſe about before the window, muſte- H
red them in his ſight. All this while not the leaſt ſound in the world being raiſed, but a ſacred
ſilence kept in euerie corner, as if men had bin going to viſit the holieſt place in HIERVSALEM.
Yet for all that the embaſſadours followers placed one from another (as is aforeſaid) were not
aware that the great Sultan was ſo neere, looking ſtill when they ſhould haue bin led on for-
wards altogither: howbeit, they were ſet in one after another: neither did they that were ſo ſet
out, returne againe into the roome; but hauing ſeuerally done their reuerence, were all (except
the embaſſadours, that ſtill ſtayed in the chamber) by one and one ſent out another way into the
Court: neither could he that came after ſee his fellow that went before him, after he was once
taken in to do his reuerence: but ſuddenly as the former was let out, the next was aduaunced
forward to the dore, where *Iſman* the Capitzi-Baſſa and the Odda-Baſſa taking him by both I
arms & by the neck, the one at the right hand, & the other at the left, & ſo leading him a pace, by
the way ſoftly felt his wreſts with their hands, leaſt peraduentre he might haue ſome ſhort wea-
pon in his ſleeue. Yet were they not all thus groped, as *Marc Antonio Pigafetta*, the reporter of
this negotiation, ſayth of himſelfe and ſome others alſo. Howbeit this hath bin (and yet is) the
manner of giuing of acceſſe vnto the perſon of the Great Turke, euer ſince that *Amurath* the
firſt was after the battell of CASSOVA murthered by one of *Lazarus* the Deſpots men, who
admitted to his preſence (in reuenge of the wrong done vnto his maſter) with a ſhort poynard
that he had cloſely hidden about him, ſo ſtabbed him in the bellie that he preſently died. And
thus like men rather caried to priſon by ſergeants, than to the preſence of ſo mighty a Monarch,
they were preſented vnto his maieſtie: he ſitting vpon a pallet, which the Turks call Maſtabe, K
vſed by them in their chambers to ſleepe and to feed vpon, couered with carpets of ſilke, as was
the whole floore of the chamber alſo. The chamber it ſelfe being not very great, was but darke,
altogither without windowes, excepting that one whereof we haue before ſpoken: and hauing
the wals painted and ſet out in moſt freſh and liuely colours by great cunning, and with a moſt
delicat grace: vet vſe they neither pictures nor the image of any thing in their painting. The ſix
Viſier Baſſaes (before mentioned) were ſtanding at the left hand as they entred in at the chamber
doore one by another in one ſide of the chamber, and the embaſſadors on the right hand on the
other ſide, ſtanding likewiſe, & vncouered. The Dragomans were in another part of the cham-
ber, neere the place where the Sultan ſat gorgiouſly attired in a robe of cloth of gold, all embro- L
dered with iewels: when as the embaſſadors followers by one and one brought before him (as
is aforeſaid) and kneeling on the ground, a Turke ſtanding on his right ſide, with all reuerence
taking vp the hem of his garment, gaue it them in their hands to kiſſe. *Selymus* himſelfe all this
while ſitting like an image without mouing, and with a great ſtate and maieſty keeping his coun
tenance, dained not to giue them one of his lookes. This done, they were led backe againe, neuer
turning their backs towards him, but going ſtill backwards, vntill they were out of his preſence.
So after they had all thus made their reuerence, and were departed out of the chamber, the em-
baſſadors deliuered vnto *Selymus* the emperours letters, and briefely declared vnto him their
meſſage: whom he anſwering in foure words, as, That they were to conferre with his Baſſaes:
preſently they were diſmiſſed. And ſo comming out of the two inner gates, they mounted on
horſebacke, and tooke the way leading towards their lodging, being at their returne accompa- M
nied with the whole order of the Ianizaries, with their Aga, and other captains: among whom
were certain of their religious men called Haagi (which vſe to follow the Ianizaries) who conti-
nually turning about, and in their going, ſinging or rather howling out certain Pſalms and prai-
ers for the welfare of their Great Sultan, gaue the embaſſadours and their followers occaſion to
wonder

The embaſſadors brought in into Selymus, with the maner of the entertainment of thē and their followers.

Itinerario Di. Marc. Antonio Pigafetta. ca. 5.

A wonder, that they either left not for wearineſſe, or fel not downe like noddies for giddineſſe. All theſe were ſent, the more honourably to accompanie the embaſſadors to their lodging: and beſide theſe, many more on horſebacke than attended them at their foorth comming: in regard whereof, the embaſſadors when they were come to their lodging, to requite their greedie courteſie, frankely diſtributed amongſt them aboue foure thouſand dollars, and yet well contented them not.

The embaſſadours after this entertainment at court, had diuers times conference with the great Baſſaes concerning peace, as *Selymus* had commaunded: wherein by reaſon of the Turks vnreaſonable demaunds (as their manner is at their firſt meetings) nothing could be as then concluded: ſo that *Selymus* himſelfe being ſhortly after to depart for HADRIANOPLE, where hee
B was to continue for ſome month (but rather as it was thought for that they could not agree vpon a point of great conſequence) the treatie for peace was intermitted, vntil ſuch time as a meſſenger diſpatched in poſt, might returne vnto the Turkes court with ſome reſolute anſwer concerning that matter. So it was, that during the raigne of the late emperour *Ferdinand*, that the Turke his ſubiects in HVNGARIE payed all their taxes and tributes vnto their old lords and maſters, abiding and liuing in the emperors juriſdiction, as did the ſubiects of *Ferdinand* to their lords that dwelt in the Turks dominion and territories: Now in this treatie for peace, the Turks (amongſt other their vnreaſonable requeſts) demanded to haue their ſubiects freed, and yet the ſubiects of the emperor to pay as they were before accuſtomed. Which as it was a requeſt nothing indifferent, ſo was it no leſſe preiudiciall and hurtfull vnto the emperour his ſubiects in
C HVNGARIE: for which cauſe the embaſſadours would not by any meanes conſent thereunto, before they knew the emperours farther pleaſure concerning the ſame. Wherupon they diſpatched one *Sig. Odoardo* a gentleman of MANTVA, verie skilfull in the Turkiſh language and in ſuch like affaires, by reaſon that as wel about this buſineſſe as at diuers times before about other the like, hee had beene employed from VIENNA to CONSTANTINOPLE in the emperours ſeruice. So *Selymus* ſhortly after, *viz.* the twentieth of October, departing from CONSTANTINOPLE, in great magnificence paſſed by the gate where the embaſſadours lay, with his whole court in armes, and in the ſame order that is vſually kept when he goeth to warre or taketh any great iourney. After whoſe departure the embaſſadours hauing ſufficiently viewed the citie of
D CONSTANTINOPLE, and then at good leiſure, to paſſe the time and to ſee the countries they had ſo often both heard and read of, together with the ports and hauens on both ſides that narrow ſea which deuideth EVROPE from ASIA, embarking themſelues, and croſsing the mouth of the hauen betwixt CONSTANTINOPLE and PERA, paſſed all alongſt the coaſt on EVROPE ſide vnto the Euxine or blacke ſea, and ſo backe againe by the other ſide of that ſtraight ſea: curiouſly noting the great ruines of the ancient cities of BITHINIA, with ſome others alongſt the Aſian ſhore, together with the pleaſant ſituation they in former times had, whileſt they yet flouriſhed in their glory, but now for moſt part (or rather altogether) laid in the duſt & brought to nought: and ſo returned againe to CONSTANTINOPLE. But whileſt they thus deceiued the time, and lay long expecting the returne, as well of their own meſſenger ſent vnto the emperor, as of *Selymus* himſelfe; they were aduertiſed in all haſt to repaire vnto him to HADRIANOPLE,
E whether the aforeſaid meſſenger was now come with full inſtructions of all things concerning the treatie for peace. For which cauſe they with great ſpeed making themſelues ready, & taking their leaue of *Piall Baſſa* (who for that he was *Selymus* his great Admirall, then lay at CONSTANTINOPLE) ſet forward the firſt of Ianuary in the yeare 1568: and ſo after nine dayes trauell at length arriued at HADRIANOPLE about an hundred fiftie three Italian miles diſtant from CONSTANTINOPLE. Heere they ſtayed vntill the peace was concluded, which was the ſeauenteenth of Februarie: the chiefe capitulations whereof were, That either of thoſe great princes ſhould ſtill hold what they had got each from the other in the late warres, That the emperour ſhould yerely pay thirtie thouſand duckats to the Turkiſh Sultan, as a tribute for HVNGARIE, the tribute to begin in the beginning of Ianuarie laſt paſt this yeare 1568, That the ſubiects of
F the Turke ſhould pay nothing to the ſubiects of the emperour, neither the emperours any thing to the Turks, but to be both of thoſe paiments free. And that vpon theſe conditions there ſhould be a firme & ſure peace betwixt theſe two great monarchs for eight yeres next following: wherin the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA was (as the Turkes tributarie) to be alſo comprehended. Neuertheleſſe, all things at this time thus agreed vpon, the Turkes after their ſubtile manner finding

The principall point whereupon the embaſſadors differed from the Turks in the treatie of peace

1568

The chiefe capitulations whereon a peace was concluded betwixt Maximilian the emperor & Selymus.

ding ſundry cauillations, and raiſing many doubts about the aforeſaid capitulations, did what they might to haue in ſome part altered what they had before agreed vpon, to the bettering of themſelues and the hurt of the Chriſtians: and ſo with many their vnreaſonable demaunds ſtayed the departure of the embaſſadours vntill the twentith of March following. At which time hauing their diſpatch, and taking their leaue of the Great Turke and the Baſſaes, accompanied with *Hebraim-Beg* (*Selymus* his embaſſadour vnto the emperour) they by land returned towards VIENNA; where they with the ioyfull newes of peace the tenth of May arriued, being there two daies after at the Court moſt honourably receiued. And fiue daies after, audience was giuen vnto the Turks embaſſadour; who well heard, and better rewarded, ſhortly after returned with a full concluſion of peace from the emperour to CONSTANTINOPLE. G

Embaſſadours ſent from Tamas the Perſian king to Selymus.

But whileſt this peace was thus in concluding, and the embaſſadours yet reſident at HADRIANOPLE, the ſixteenth of Februarie came an honourable embaſſage from *Shach Tamas* the Perſian king vnto the Great Sultan *Selymus*, to entreat a peace betwixt them, or rather to conclude the ſame, being before agreed vpon the controuerſies, for which they afterwards fell to open war. Which embaſſage for that it is no leſſe truly than plainely ſet downe in a letter ſent from ERZIRVM (a citie then in the confines of the Turkes dominions towards the Perſians) written by a Chiaus to *Muhamet* cheefe of the Viſier Baſſaes; which Chiaus was of purpoſe ſent from CONSTANTINOPLE, to meet the ſaid Perſian embaſſadour: I thought it not amiſſe for the better vnderſtanding thereof, to ſet downe the effect of the ſame letter as it was tranſlated out of the Turkiſh into the Italian by the emperours embaſſadours interpreter. H

I

The effect of the letter written to *Muhamet Baſſa*, the cheefe Viſier, by a Chiaus ſent of purpoſe to meet the Perſian Embaſſadour.

*After due ſalutations, this is the effect of that which we thought good to make knowne vnto your lordſhip. Now at this preſent (to wit in the beginning of the month Giuma Sulacchir) is in good health arriued the embaſſadour of Perſia, the kings cheefe counſellour, called** Schach Culi Soltan, *attended vpon with a hundred and twentie gentlemen, with guilt turbants on their heads, & well furniſhed with ſpare horſes led in mens hands. Beſides whom hee was accompanied alſo with two hundred knights all apparelled in cloth of gold, with foure hundred Perſian marchants, in all aboue ſeuen hundred perſons; with a thouſand nine hundred beaſts, cammels, mules, and horſes; fiue couple of drums, euery couple being placed vpon a ſeuerall cammell, fiue Nacars, three trumpets, fiue flutes, and other inſtruments, in all about thirie muſitions, playing vpon theſe inſtruments: There were alſo two queriſters or chaunters of the Alcoran, one Organiſt, one playing vpon a Turkiſh inſtrument like a Lute, two players vpon Sagbuts, with two other muſitions, eight in all. There were alſo foure bondwomen ſeruing in the embaſſadours owne chamber. Who when he was with all this magnificent pompe come within one dayes iourney of* ERZIRVM, *the* * Sayms *and Spahies aſſembling themſelues together to the number of eight thouſand men, went to meet him: amongſt whom were an hundred and more, all apparrelled in cloth of gold and ſattin: two thouſand men with guilt morrions on their heads: in which brauerie we marching forward, the Perſian embaſſadour amazed to ſee ſo great maieſtie and pompe, ſaid that all the armie of* CONSTANTINOPLE *was come to meet him: and ſo being come into the citie, cauſed all the inſtruments to be played vpon, euen from morning vntill night. The next morning the embaſſadour inuited the Baſſa with all the lords and officers, who being come, he entreated them to heare his muſicke: and in like manner the lord Baſſa inuited the Perſians. But as the embaſſadour was going to the banquet, came another Sultan of the kings, who brought to the ſame embaſſadour a guilt Turbant, and a rich gowne wrought with gold, which he cauſed him to put on by the way. By this embaſſadour the Perſian king hath ſent all the armour of Sultan* Baiazet, *with all his cammels and other wealth. The cauſes of the long ſtay of this embaſſadour were ſpecially two: the one for that the Perſian king had cauſed to be made two pauilions of one peece, the curtaines being interlaced with gold, and the ſupporters imbrodered with the ſame: Beſides this, he ſent two bookes of hiſtories, and two pearles, which in weight weighed ten* * Meſcali: *one Balaſſo as big as a little pearle, foureſcore and two times an hundred* * Tumenlich *of ſtuffe, amounting to foureſcore and two ſummes of Aſpers, and fortie Falcons: all which the Perſian king hath ſent vnto the Great Sultan, as to the onely Monarch and Patrone of the world. This* Schach Culi *is the next in authoritie to the king, and ſo was in the time*

K

L

M

* *Schach Culi Soltan was not the proper name of this embaſſadour, but a title of honour, and ſignifieth as much as a prince ſeruant to the king.*

* *Sayms are ſoldiors of greater honour than the Spahi, hauing for their ſtipend yearely 2000 Aſpers at the leaſt, out of the reuenues of certaine townes and villages.*

* *A Meſcali is foure drams.*

* *Tumenlich is in value as much as the Turkes Aſper.*

A *time of the great king* Hyſmaell. *Theſe two Perſian Sultans are the kings cheeſe Sultans and courtiers, and therefore ſet themſelues forth with all the pompe they can. Yet notwithſtanding all their brauerie, being come to* Erzirvm *within the view of our armie, the Perſians were amazed to behold the goodly order of the* Othomans. *One part of theſe Perſians are returned againe into* Persia. *And if it pleaſe God at the comming of my meſſenger vnto you, your lordſhip ſhall vnderſtand of what condition and ſtate theſe two princes and Sultans are. They haue each of them yearely ſix Tumoni: which maketh after the computation of the* Othomans, *ſix thouſand Aſpers. Your lordſhip after this account may iudge of the reſt. The other cauſe of the long ſtay of this embaſſadour, was for that in* Sirvan *the people were vp in rebellion, wherein many of them were ſlaine: to the appeaſing of which ſedition, this* Schach Culi *was*
B *ſent, and now at laſt is come. From* Erzirvm *in the beginning of the moneth of* * *Giuma Sulacchir, in the yeare of the prophet* Mahomet 975. * *December.*

This the Perſian embaſſadour was with the greateſt pompe that might be entertained by the Turkes at his firſt comming to Hadrianople, all the braue Courtiers with the Ianizaries and other ſouldiors of the Court going forth in moſt ſeemely order to meet him. Who now entred the citie, and come before the houſe where the emperors embaſſadours then lay, and ſeeing certaine of their retinue before the dore, asked of *Iſnam* the Capitzi Baſſa, what people they were? who told him that they were the followers of an embaſſadour that there lay, ſent from one of the greateſt princes of the Chriſtians, namely the emperour, who was deſirous to make peace with the great Sultan his maſter. Whereunto the embaſſadour replied, That he would willing-
C ly ſalute them: which *Iſnam* hearing, ſtraightway turned his horſe towards the place where they ſtood. Now the emperours embaſſadour being ſecret within a lattiſe, and ſeeing him come towards them, went forth and ſtood vpon the dore threſhold, and ſo with ſignes and words ſaluted one another. Amongſt the others the Perſian embaſſadour ſaid vnto the emperours, That he would gladly talke with them, if it might ſo pleaſe the Grand Signior: *Hebraim* the Dragoman who then was with the emperours embaſſadours, being interpreter. So hauing courteouſly ſaluted one the other, they departed, but neuer after came together. Two dayes after the Perſian embaſſadours (according to the manner of thoſe barbarous nations, who with emptie hands ſalute not one another) by his Checaia or ſteward of his houſhold, preſented all the Viſier Baſſaes with diuers rich gifts and preſents, euery one of them according to their degrees & places. And
D the day after went himſelfe to viſit them: where by the way fell out a ſtrange matter, like ynough to haue coſt him his life. For a Giamoglan (as the embaſſadour was going to viſit *Muhamet* the cheeſe of the Viſier Baſſaes for the firſt) meeting him, ſhot at him with an harquebuſh, with purpoſe to haue ſlaine him; but as God would, miſſed him, and hurt but one of his cheeſe followers in the arme. Wherewith the embaſſadour not a little diſmayed, as ſuppoſing himſelfe to haue beene betrayed, turning his horſe, was about to haue gone to his lodging: but the great Baſſa in the meane time hauing knowledge thereof, preſently ſent out men to guard him, and to excuſe himſelfe of the fact. Whereof the embaſſadour being aſſured, held on his way. In the meane ſpace the fellow who ſhot the harquebuſh, being apprehended, was brought before the embaſſadour and the Baſsa: who asking him for what cauſe he diſcharged the ſhot againſt the embaſſa-
E dour? he without change of countenance boldly anſwered, That he did it for no other cauſe but for that the embaſſador was an heretick, and ſent from an hereticall king, and an enemie to their religion: and therefore that it was not conuenient he ſhould come to entreat of peace with his lord, adding further, that he was not worthie of any peace. Which the Baſſa hearing, adiudged the deſperat villaine the next day to be drawne at an horſe taile through the citie, & then to haue his right hand cut off, and afterward his head, which was accordingly put in execution. After this the Perſian embaſſadour the two and twentieth of the ſame moneth went to deliuer the preſents ſent from his maſter vnto the Grand Signior, and to kiſſe his hand: ſending firſt before him the preſents vpon foure and fortie cammels, whereof foure and thirtie were the kings of Persia,
F and the other ten his own. The kings preſent was an Alcoran, with the authoritie of *Ali*, as they hold. For this is their cuſtome, alwayes to preſent one ſuch Alcoran vnto the princes to whom they ſend their embaſsadours. It was couered with gold, & garniſhed with moſt pretious ſtones. Hee preſented alſo a booke of hiſtories, couered as the other: he gaue alſo a box, wherein was a very faire pretious ſtone called Balaſso, & two pearles of a wonderfull greatneſſe, with two purſes of an handfull long, full of iewels. Beſides theſe, he preſented alſo eight Firuari or Porceſlane

The Perſian embaſſadours honourably entertained by the Turkes at Hadrianople.

The Perſian embaſſador in going to viſit Muhamet the Viſier Baſſa, indanger to haue beene ſlaine.

The rich preſent ſent by the Perſian king vnto Selymus.

diſhes

dishes(which we call China dishes)made of most pure earth,kept aboue fiftie yeares buried vn- G
der the ground,to the end so to be fined and purified, which(as some say)will melt and dissolue if any poison be put into them. He gaue also two most stately pauilions,twentie great carpets of silke,and many other lesser of silke and gold; also nine faire canopies to hang ouer the ports of their pauillions,things not vsed among the Christians.He gaue also nine very faire carpets of camels haire,nine saddles set with stone after the Persian fashion,seuen staues of siluer,seuen scimitars with red scaberts, seuen bowes with arrowes and quiuers,all wrought with gold and precious stone; he presented also many other carpets called Teftich,made of the finest lawne,and so large,that seuen men could scarcely carry one of them. All the Faulcons were dead by the way.

The embassadors present to Selymus.

The presents which the embassadour gaue vnto the great Turke in his owne name, were also H
these: an Alcoran, a pauilion faire and large,certaine scimitars,bowes and arrows richly garnished,with certain carpets of silke,and camels haire.After which presents so deliuered,and reuerence done vnto the great Sultan by the embassadour,and thirtie of his followers all in cloth of gold,he returned to his lodging,verie honourably accompanied,as well by the Turkes as them of his owne retinue.First besides many others,there were a great companie of the Spahies and Chiausies,and other courtiers mounted vpon goodly horses,wel furnished and in decent order: here might a man haue seene store of cloth of gold,veluet,damaske,and other kinds of silk. After these there followed about three hundred Persian horsemen, apparelled after their manner, some with gowns made of diuers litle pieces of taffata of sundry colors,representing the picturs of men,women,horses,and other beasts;and some of them imbroidered with flowers and fruits of sundrie sorts;some had also gownes of cloth of gold,but not so faire as the Turkes;and some I
of veluet,but very few of cloth: for that the Persians haue no great plentie either of veluet or yet of cloth,except such as they haue from the Portingals that trauell into those Easterne countries;yet of silke and wooll it appeareth they haue great plenty,most part of their gownes being of wooll quilted with bombast. After these horsemen followed many Persian footmen,peraduenture all seruants; after whom came the Turkish horsemen: and last of all came a horse of the embassadors led by a Persian; after which horse followed two hundred Ianizaries: and in the rearward of all came the embassador alone,gorgeously attired both himselfe and his horse. He himselfe was inuested with crimosin veluet,mingled with some other colors: his saddle and bridle were all bedeckt with iewels: the caparison of his horse,was all imbroidred with Turquoies and other precious stones: the horne vpon the top of his Turbant(which the Turkes call Meteuenchia)was altogether wrought with gold,and set with precious stones: in briefe, vpon euery K
part of his body hanged iewels of great price. After the embassadour,followed about an hundred and fortie Persian horsemen,and others of his court apparelled as before,some well,some ill,according to their abilitie. Now although the Persians(as is to bee thought)shewed all their pompe,yet they made nothing so faire a shew as did the Turks: neither are they so faire men of complexion,being for the most part of a swart and browne colour,and rather little men than otherwise,not much vnlike to the Spaniards. The embassador being departed,the presents were

An honourable allowance.

all brought & shewed to *Selymus*; who allowed for their ordinary charges fiue hundred ducats a day,for that in deed their number was great,and their beasts many. These expences bestowed L
vpon the embassadors,doe presently begin as soone as any of them enter into his dominions; and end,so soone as the businesse for which they come is finished. But long it was not, but that this embassadour hauing concluded a peace betwixt the two great princes,*Tamas* and *Selymus*, and dispatched such matters as he came for, returned home againe in PERSIA. The Venetians also now at this same time,by their embassadors sought to renew the league they had made with the great Turke,now expired: which,as it was easily obtained,so was it of small assurance;*Selymus* the next yeare quarrelling with them, and raising new warres,to the great hurt and disturbance of that state,as shall forthwith appeare.

1569 *Selymus* now at peace with all the world (a thing of the Turkes not much desired) began to thinke of workes of charitie: and purposing to build a magnificent temple at HADRIANOPLE for his owne sepulture, with a monasterie, a colledge, and an almes-house (as had his M
father, and other his aunceſtors before him at PRVSA and CONSANTINOPLE, led thereunto with a vaine and superstitious deuotion)was troubled with nothing more, than how to endue the same with lands and reuenues sufficient for the maintenance of so great a charge: For that the Mahometan kings, are by their superstition prohibited to conuert any lands or possessions

to

A to ſuch holy vſes, other than ſuch as they haue with their own ſword woon from the enemies of their religion, which they may (as they are perſuaded) as a moſt acceptable ſacrifice, offer to their great prophet: which deuilliſh perſuaſion, ſerueth as a ſpurre to pricke forward euery of thoſe ambitious princes to adde ſomething to their empire. This his deuout purpoſe once knowne, wanted not the furtherance of many ripe heads, deuiſing ſome one thing, ſome another, as they thought beſt fitted his humor. But amongſt many things to him preſented, none pleaſed him ſo well, as the plot laid for the taking of the rich iſland of CYPRVS from the Venetians: a conqueſt of it ſelfe ſufficient, both for the eternizing of his name, and performance of his owne charitable works intended; with a large ouerplus, for the ſupplying of whatſoeuer wanted in his fathers like deuout works at CONSTANTINOPLE. But that which moued him moſt of all, was the glo-
B rie of ſuch a conqueſt, which as his flaterers bare him in hand, might make him equall with any his predeceſſors; who in the beginning of their raign, had vſually done or attempted ſome notable thing againſt the Chriſtians. Heereupon the matter was by *Selymus* propounded to the great Baſſaes to be conſidered of; without whoſe aduiſe and counſell, the Turkiſh emperors ſeldome or neuer take any great wars in hand. Amongſt theſe graue counſellours, *Muhamet* the chiefe Viſier Baſſa, a man of greateſt authoritie (vnto whom *Selymus* was beholden, that he had ſo quietly obtained the empire) and a ſecret friend vnto the Venetians, ſeemed much to miſlike of that motion, perſwading *Selymus* not to yeeld thereunto: alleadging, beſide the danger and vncertaintie of the expedition, that his father *Selyman* at the time of his death had charged him ſtraightly, that the league with the Venetians ſhould be religiouſly kept; and that he could not
C with his honour, without iuſt cauſe ſo quickly breake the league, which hee himſelfe had but a little before moſt ſolemnly confirmed. But *Muſtapha* the ſecond Baſſa, ſometime *Selymus* his tutor, and therefore of him much honoured, with *Piall Baſſa* the Admirall (both enuying at the great honour of the Viſier Baſſa) ſo mightily impugned that he had before ſaid, and ſo importuned *Selymus* with the ſhew both of honour and profit attending that action, as alſo with the eaſineſſe therof (a great part of the Venetian Arſenall being but a little before burnt, and their forces much weakned) that he reiected the counſell of *Muhamet*, calling him in his choller, Chriſtian (which among the Mahometanes is a word of no ſmall diſgrace:) and yeelding wholy to the perſuaſion of *Muſtapha* & *Piall*, preſently commanded preparation to be made both by ſea and land, for the performance of that his reſolution. Which was not ſo couertly carried in the
D Turkes court, but that it was diſcouered by *M. Antonius Barbarus* the Venetian embaſſadour; and not without cauſe ſuſpected by the Venetian merchants, whom the barbarous Turks began now to cut ſhort in their trafficke, looking big vpon them, as men ſuddenly changed, and euill entreating them with hard ſpeeches, the vndoubted ſignes of greater troubles to enſue. The Venetian embaſſadour now out of doubt of the Turkes purpoſe for the inuaſion of CYPRVS, came vnto *Muhamet* the chiefe Baſſa, complaining of the breach of the league: and putting him in mind of the fidelitie of the Venetian ſtate towards the Turkiſh emperor, requeſting him, that *Selymus* might not make too much haſt to begin that warre, which would ſet all EVROPE on a broile; but rather by his embaſſadours firſt to declare his minde vnto the Senat, for that ſo it might happily come to paſſe, that all might bee quieted, to the good of both parties without
E warre. Which the politike embaſſador requeſted not of the Baſſa for any hope he had to auert the warre, for which the Turke had now all things in a readineſſe, but onely by ſuch an hope of compoſition, to hinder the Turkes endeuours, and to win time, vntill that the State (being fully certified of all theſe matters) might make ready their fleet and forces, and ſo in armes be readie to anſwere their armed foes: neither did hee euer leaue the Baſſa, vntill he had by his meanes procured, That one *Cubates* ſhould be ſent embaſſadour to VENICE, to proue the minds of the Senatours, whether they would willingly deliuer the iſland, or aduenture to haue it taken from them by force. Theſe things and ſuch like as were then done at CONSTANTINOPLE, being by letters ſent in poſt from the embaſſadour, made knowne at VENICE, brought a generall heauineſſe vpon the citie: for why, that vnderſtanding and prouident State, warned by their former
F harmes, of all others moſt dread the Turks forces. *Cubates* the embaſſadour accompanied with *Aloyſius Barbarus* the embaſſadours ſonne, and *Bonricius* his ſecretarie, departing from CONSTANTINOPLE, came by long journeyes to RAGVSIVM, where *Angelus Surianus* ſent from VENICE to meete him, was readie to receiue him, who being taken into his gallie, brought him to VENICE.

Muhamet Baſſa diſſuadeth Selymus from the inuading of Cyprus.

Selymus ſendeth Cubates his embaſſadour to Venice.

In

In the meane time the Senatours ſitting oftentimes in counſell, were deuided in opinions concerning the chiefe matter they conſulted vpon: ſome there were, that thought it not good to wage warre againſt ſuch an inuincible enemy, nor to truſt vpon a vaine and idle hope, neither to commit all vnto the hazard of ſuch fortune as was vnto them in that warre by the enemie propounded: they alleadged, That they had alwayes vnfortunatly taken vp armes againſt the Turkes, and that therefore they ſhould ſet before their eyes, what harmes they had ſuffered, and how that beſide the loſſes alreadie ſuſtained, they had alwayes in the winding vp of the warres loſt ſomething more: that it were better to depart with CYPRVS, ſo that they might quietly enjoy the reſt, rather than to enter into armes: Time they ſaid, would at length giue them ſome one fit occaſion or other to recouer that they had loſt, and to reſtore their ſtate vnto the former honour; which for the preſent, was aboue their power to maintaine: To put their truſt in their confederates (they ſaid) was but to deceiue themſelues: they ſhould remember how often euen ſmall cauſes of falſe ſuſpition, or hope of profit, or feare of harme, had vtterly fruſtrated and broken in ſunder the moſt ſolemne capitulations of the ſtrongeſt leagues: how often deſtruction had come thence from whence aid was alwaies to haue bin hoped for, they needed not to ſeek farther for examples, than from their own domeſtical affaires. Others were of a contrary opinion, as that the iſland was by force of armes to be defended: ſaying, That nothing could be more diſhonourable, than without fight to depart with ſo notable a part of their ſeigniorie; neither any thing more commendable, than to proue all things for defence of their honour: Neither would the proud Turkes, with whom no aſſured league could bee made (as they ſaid) hold themſelues content with this yeelding vp of the iſland, but by intreating of them and giuing them way, become more inſolent: and when they had taken CYPRVS from them, would alſo ſeeke after CRETE and CORCYRA, and ſo yeelding them one thing after another, ſpoile themſelues of all together: Ambitious and greedy princes (they ſaid) grew more bold and inſolent by other mens feare: and that no great or notable matter was to be done without danger: that hard beginnings had oftentimes merry endings: that the fauor and good will of that inſatiable and greedy nation, was not to be gained but with ſo great loſſe and charge as that ſuch a coſtly peace would bee much more hurtfull then warre it ſelfe: beſide that, it much concerned other Chriſtian princes to haue the Venetian ſtate preſerued, and that therfore it was to be hoped, that they would to the vttermoſt of their power giue them aid. The matter thus debated too & fro, it was in the end reſolued vpon, to take vp armes in defence of their honour, and by plaine force to withſtand the Turke.

Hard to truſt vpon confederations.

The Turkes embaſſador homely entertainted at Venice.

So when *Cubates* the Turks embaſſadour came to VENICE, neither did any man of courteſie meet him, neither was any honour done vnto him, or ſo much as common courteſie ſhewed vnto him: but being afterward admitted into the Senat houſe with his two interpretors onely, he deliuered *Selymus* his letters, encloſed in a little bag wrought with ſilke and gold; and ſo whileſt the ſame letters were in breaking vp, and tranſlating out of the Turkiſh language into Italian, deliuered alſo his meſſage by word of mouth as followeth.

Cubates the Turks embaſſadors ſpeech in the Senate at Venice.

What great account the mightie Sultan my dread Soueraigne hath alwayes made of your moſt honourable friendſhip, is therein right well declared; That in the verie entrance of himſelfe into his empire, hee foorthwith and without any hard or newe conditions renewed his league with you: which hee hath on his part alwayes kept moſt faithfully and vnuiolate, worthily grieuing the like kindneſſe not to bee ſhewed on your behalfe, neither the like care of keeping your faith to appeare in you; who by harbouring of Pirats in your hauens, and murthering of his ſubiects, haue oftentimes broken the league. Which iniuries, although they were by warre to haue beene reuenged, yet hath hee, ſo mightie a monarch, hitherto beene alwayes more mindfull of your honour and friendſhip, than of his owne maieſtie and profit. But for ſo much as there is an end of theſe iniuries and wrongs, and that it is now come to that point, That longer to forbeare, might be imputed vnto him rather for cowardiſe than courteſie, as alſo that it much more concerneth your ſtate than him, and that therefore you ought no leſſe than hee to deſire that all cauſes of vnkindneſſe might bee cut off, and order taken, that in ſo great and mutuall good-will, there ſhould bee no falling out by new quarrels daily ariſing: the onely remedie thereof is, if you ſhall deliuer vnto him the Iſland of CYPRVS, the cauſe of all theſe grieuances. Now it beſeemeth you for your great wiſedome, to make ſmall reckoning of ſo ſmall a matter, in compariſon of the fauour of ſo great a prince; which if you willingly of your ſelues yeeld vnto him, you ſhall right wiſely

prouide

A *prouide for your affaires, and haue him ſo great a monarch alwaies your friend and confederat: wher as if you ſhall ſhew your ſelues obſtinate, and not to yeeld to this his ſo ſmall a requeſt, his purpoſe is by ſtrong hand not onely to take from you the Iſland, the cauſe of the war, but alſo to proſecute you with moſt cruell war both by ſea and land. And thereupon I take God to witneſſe, all the blame of the calamities to enſue of ſo mortall a war, to be imputed vnto your ſelues, as the worthie reward of your wilfulneſſe and breach of faith.*

Which ſaid, he in the name of *Muhamet* the Viſier Baſſa told the Senatours, that he was right ſorie that this breach was fallen out betwixt the emperor *Selymus* and them: and that although he doubted not, but that they would right wiſely conſider of all things; yet he could not for
B the good will he bare vnto them, but admoniſh them of ſuch things, as he deemed for them both profitable and wholeſome: and therefore did moſt inſtantly requeſt them, and withall aduiſe them, not to enter into armes againſt ſo mightie a prince, neither wilfully to plunge themſelues into ſuch dangers, as they could hardly or neuer find the way out; for that their ſtrength was nothing anſwerable vnto his, and that the euent of that war was like to be vnto them deadly, and therefore he tooke God, and the loue he bare vnto them to witneſſe, that he had in friendly ſort forewarned them of their harmes, and aduiſed them for their good. Giuing them farther to vnderſtand, that *Selymus* did nothing but thunder out moſt cruell threats againſt their State: which his indignation was raiſed of the manifold complaints brought againſt them to his court at CONSTANTINOPLE.

C *Selymus* his letters anſwerable to his embaſſadors ſpeech, were alſo full of falſe ſurmiſed grie- *The effect of Selymus his letters to the Venetians.* uances: he complained, That the Venetians had in warlike manner entred into the frontires of his empire in DALMATIA, and there had done great harme; that they had put to death certaine Turkiſh pyrats whom they had taken aliue: that their Iſland of CYPRVS was an harbour for the pyrats of the Weſt, and that from thence they robbed his peaceable countries, and ſurpriſed his ſubiects trauelling that way for deuotion vnto the temple of MECHA, or otherwiſe about their affaires. And that therefore thoſe cauſes of diſcord might be taken away, and the hinderance of traffique remoued, he required them to yeeld vnto him the Iſland of CYPRVS: which if they refuſed to do, he would by force of armes take it from them; and by force and ſtrong hand cauſe them to doe that which they might the better haue done frankly and of their
D owne accord; and farther, to make them to vnderſtand how farre the Turks did excell all other men in martiall proweſſe. As for the league before made betwixt his father and them, he ſaid he had renewed the ſame, not becauſe he had any liking thereunto, but becauſe he had as then ſet downe with himſelfe, for a while in the beginning of his empire, peaceably to endure all things.

The Venetians, for that they knew the embaſſadours errand before his comming, hauing *The anſwere of the Venetians to the Turkes demaunds.* now read his letters, gaue him ſuch anſwere as they had before reſolued vpon: which was, That the Venetians had at all times inuiolably kept their leagues with the *Othoman* emperours, and had in regard therof let ſlip many opportunities and fit occaſions for them to haue augmented their dominions in: That they could without any danger to themſelues, haue deſtroyed the
E Turkes fleet both at the RHODES and MALTA, and other places alſo; but that they more regarded their honour, and alwaies thought that nothing better became great and magnificent princes, than to performe their faith once giuen, and in all their actions to be like themſelues. And therfore had diſſembled, and put vp many grieuous and bitter indignities, leaſt they might be thought to haue firſt broken the league: That they had neuer paſſed their owne bounds, or inuaded the Turks: only to haue taken order, that no pyrats ſhould at their pleaſure roame vp and downe the ſeas. Now whereas all duties being on their part ſincerely and moſt religiouſly kept, *Selymus* complained himſelfe to be wronged, whereas he himſelfe had done the wrong, and had contrarie to the league denounced war againſt them, expecting nothing leſſe: ſithence
F that they could not by the power of the league, they would by force of armes defend that kingdome, which they by auncient and lawfull right poſſeſſed, deliuered vnto them by their auncеſtors: That God in whoſe help they truſted would weigh in indifferent ballance, all mens words and deeds, whom they tooke to witneſſe, that they were the authours of peace, and *Selymus* the cauſe of warre: and that the ſame God would be now preſent vnto their iuſt complaints, and forthwith after with his power to take reuenge on them, which falſifying their faith & promiſe

In the meane time the Senatours ſitting oftentimes in counſell, were deuided in opinions G
concerning the chiefe matter they conſulted vpon: ſome there were, that thought it not good
to wage warre againſt ſuch an inuincible enemy, nor to truſt vpon a vaine and idle hope, neither
to commit all vnto the hazard of ſuch fortune as was vnto them in that warre by the enemie
propounded: they alleadged, That they had alwayes vnfortunatly taken vp armes againſt the
Turkes, and that therefore they ſhould ſet before their eyes, what harmes they had ſuffered, and
how that beſide the loſſes alreadie ſuſtained, they had alwayes in the winding vp of the warres
loſt ſomething more: that it were better to depart with CYPRVS, ſo that they might quietly en-
joy the reſt, rather than to enter into armes: Time they ſaid, would at length giue them ſome
one fit occaſion or other to recouer that they had loſt, and to reſtore their ſtate vnto the for-
mer honour; which for the preſent, was aboue their power to maintaine: To put their truſt H
Hard to truſt vpon confederations. in their confederates (they ſaid) was but to deceiue themſelues: they ſhould remember how
often euen ſmall cauſes of falſe ſuſpition, or hope of profit, or feare of harme, had vtterly fruſtra-
ted and broken in ſunder the moſt ſolemne capitulations of the ſtrongeſt leagues: how often de-
ſtruction had come thence from whence aid was alwaies to haue bin hoped for, they needed not
to ſeek farther for examples, than from their own domeſtical affaires. Others were of a contrary
opinion, as that the iſland was by force of armes to be defended: ſaying, That nothing could be
more diſhonourable, than without fight to depart with ſo notable a part of their ſeigniorie; nei-
ther any thing more commendable, than to proue all things for defence of their honour: Nei-
ther would the proud Turkes, with whom no aſſured league could bee made (as they ſaid) hold
themſelues content with this yeelding vp of the iſland, but by intreating of them and giuing I
them way, become more inſolent: and when they had taken CYPRVS from them, would alſo
ſeeke after CRETE and CORCYRA, and ſo yeelding them one thing after another, ſpoile them-
ſelues of all together: Ambitious and greedy princes (they ſaid) grew more bold and inſolent
by other mens feare: and that no great or notable matter was to be done without danger: that
hard beginnings had oftentimes merry endings: that the fauor and good will of that inſatiable
and greedy nation, was not to be gained but with ſo great loſſe and charge as that ſuch a coſtly
peace would bee much more hurtfull then warre it ſelfe: beſide that, it much concerned other
Chriſtian princes to haue the Venetian ſtate preſerued, and that therfore it was to be hoped, that
they would to the vttermoſt of their power giue them aid. The matter thus debated too & fro,
it was in the end reſolued vpon, to take vp armes in defence of their honour, and by plaine force K
to withſtand the Turke.

The Turkes embaſſador homely entertained at Venice. So when *Cubates* the Turks embaſſadour came to VENICE, neither did any man of courteſie
meet him, neither was any honour done vnto him, or ſo much as common courteſie ſhewed vn-
to him: but being afterward admitted into the Senat houſe with his two interpretors onely, he
deliuered *Selymus* his letters, encloſed in a little bag wrought with ſilke and gold; and ſo whileſt
the ſame letters were in breaking vp, and tranſlating out of the Turkiſh language into Italian,
deliuered alſo his meſſage by word of mouth as followeth.

Cubates the Turks embaſſadors ſpeech in the Senate at Venice.

What great account the mightie Sultan my dread Soueraigne hath alwayes made of your moſt
honourable friendſhip, is therein right well declared; That in the verie entrance of himſelfe into his L
empire, hee foorthwith and without any hard or newe conditions renewed his league with you: which
hee hath on his part alwayes kept moſt faithfully and vnuiolate, worthily grieuing the like kindneſſe not
to bee ſhewed on your behalfe, neither the like care of keeping your faith to appeare in you; who by har-
bouring of Pirats in your hauens, and murthering of his ſubiects, haue oftentimes broken the league.
Which iniuries, although they were by warre to haue beene reuenged, yet hath hee, ſo mightie a monarch,
hitherto beene alwayes more mindfull of your honour and friendſhip, than of his owne maieſtie and pro-
fit. But for ſo much as there is an end of theſe iniuries and wrongs, and that it is now come to that point,
That longer to forbeare, might be imputed vnto him rather for cowardiſe than courteſie, as alſo that it
much more concerneth your ſtate than him, and that therefore you ought no leſſe than hee to deſire
that all cauſes of vnkindneſſe might bee cut off, and order taken, that in ſo great and mutuall good- M
will, there ſhould bee no falling out by new quarrels daily ariſing: the onely remedie thereof is, if you
ſhall deliuer vnto him the Iſland of CYPRVS, the cauſe of all theſe grieuances. Now it beſeemeth
you for your great wiſedome, to make ſmall reckoning of ſo ſmall a matter, in compariſon of the fauour
of ſo great a prince; which if you willingly of your ſelues yeeld vnto him, you ſhall right wiſely

prouide

A *prouide for your affaires, and haue him ſo great a monarch alwaies your friend and confederat: wher as if you ſhall ſhew your ſelues obſtinate, and not to yeeld to this his ſo ſmall a requeſt, his purpoſe is by ſtrong hand not onely to take from you the Iſland, the cauſe of the war, but alſo to proſecute you with moſt cruell war both by ſea and land. And thereupon I take God to witneſſe, all the blame of the calamities to enſue of ſo mortall a war, to be imputed vnto your ſelues, as the worthie reward of your wilfulneſſe and breach of faith.*

Which ſaid, he in the name of *Muhamet* the Viſier Baſſa told the Senatours, that he was right ſorie that this breach was fallen out betwixt the emperor *Selymus* and them: and that although he doubted not, but that they would right wiſely conſider of all things; yet he could not for
B the good will he bare vnto them, but admoniſh them of ſuch things, as he deemed for them both profitable and wholeſome: and therefore did moſt inſtantly requeſt them, and withall aduiſe them, not to enter into armes againſt ſo mightie a prince, neither wilfully to plunge themſelues into ſuch dangers, as they could hardly or neuer find the way out; for that their ſtrength was nothing anſwerable vnto his, and that the euent of that war was like to be vnto them deadly, and therefore he tooke God, and the loue he bare vnto them to witneſſe, that he had in friendly ſort forewarned them of their harmes, and aduiſed them for their good. Giuing them farther to vnderſtand, that *Selymus* did nothing but thunder out moſt cruell threats againſt their State: which his indignation was raiſed of the manifold complaints brought againſt them to his court at CONSTANTINOPLE.

C *Selymus* his letters anſwerable to his embaſſadors ſpeech, were alſo full of falſe ſurmiſed grie- *The effect of Selymus his letters to the Venetians.* uances: he complained, That the Venetians had in warlike manner entred into the frontires of his empire in DALMATIA, and there had done great harme; that they had put to death certaine Turkiſh pyrats whom they had taken aliue: that their Iſland of CYPRVS was an harbour for the pyrats of the Weſt, and that from thence they robbed his peaceable countries, and ſurpriſed his ſubiects trauelling that way for deuotion vnto the temple of MECHA, or otherwiſe about their affaires. And that therefore thoſe cauſes of diſcord might be taken away, and the hinderance of traffique remoued, he required them to yeeld vnto him the Iſland of CYPRVS: which if they refuſed to do, he would by force of armes take it from them; and by force and ſtrong hand cauſe them to doe that which they might the better haue done frankly and of their
D owne accord; and farther, to make them to vnderſtand how farre the Turks did excell all other men in martiall proweſſe. As for the league before made betwixt his father and them, he ſaid he had renewed the ſame, not becauſe he had any liking thereunto, but becauſe he had as then ſet downe with himſelfe, for a while in the beginning of his empire, peaceably to endure all things.

The Venetians, for that they knew the embaſſadours errand before his comming, hauing *The anſwere of the Venetians to the Turkes demaunds.* now read his letters, gaue him ſuch anſwere as they had before reſolued vpon: which was, That the Venetians had at all times inuiolably kept their leagues with the *Othoman* emperours, and had in regard therof let ſlip many opportunities and fit occaſions for them to haue augmented their dominions in: That they could without any danger to themſelues, haue deſtroyed the
E Turkes fleet both at the RHODES and MALTA, and other places alſo; but that they more regarded their honour, and alwaies thought that nothing better became great and magnificent princes, than to performe their faith once giuen, and in all their actions to be like themſelues. And therfore had diſſembled, and put vp many grieuous and bitter indignities, leaſt they might be thought to haue firſt broken the league: That they had neuer paſſed their owne bounds, or inuaded the Turks: only to haue taken order, that no pyrats ſhould at their pleaſure roame vp and downe the ſeas. Now whereas all duties being on their part ſincerely and moſt religiouſly kept, *Selymus* complained himſelfe to be wronged, whereas he himſelfe had done the wrong, and had contrarie to the league denounced war againſt them, expecting nothing leſſe: ſithence that they could not by the power of the league, they would by force of armes defend that king-
F dome, which they by auncient and lawfull right poſſeſſed, deliuered vnto them by their aunceſtors: That God in whoſe help they truſted would weigh in indifferent ballance, all mens words and deeds, whom they tooke to witneſſe, that they were the authours of peace, and *Selymus* the cauſe of warre: and that the ſame God would be now preſent vnto their iuſt complaints, and forthwith after with his power to take reuenge on them, which falſifying their faith & promiſe

giuen,and violating the ſacred league, had enforced them to take vp moſt iuſt and neceſſarie armes,which they would with the ſame courage manage that they had taken them in hand. G

The Turkes embaſſadour ſent away in ſecret from Venice.

With this aunſwere the embaſſadour departed, let out by a ſecret poſterne, for feare of the people; who hauing got knowledge of the matter,were in great number aſſembled to the Court gate,muttering among themſelues,that it were well done to rend in pieces that accurſed Turke, the meſſenger of his faithleſſe maſter. Which outrage it was thought they would in their furie haue performed, had not ſuch as by the commandement of the maieſtrates guarded him,better aſſured him of his ſafetie,than either regard of dutie or the law of nations; he by the way as he went ſtill ſtorming and ſwearing by his *Mahomet* to be of that ſo great an indignitie reuenged.

The reſo'ution of the Senat for war diuerſly liked, and diſliked of others.

This anſwere of the Senat vnto the Turkes embaſſadour concerning warre, was of ſome well liked and highly commended, as full of honour and valour. Others deemed it to ſharpe, liking H of nothing that was ſaid or done, to the further incenſing of the Turkiſh emperour: being of opinion,that they might haue of him obtained a more indifferent peace by courteſie than by rigour. As for the decreed war they vtterly diſliked,for as much as all wars were woful,but eſpecially thoſe which were to be maintained againſt them that are too ſtrong for vs. In ſuch diuerſitie of opinions it appeared, That the Senat ſhould of that ſo honourable a decree reape ſuch commendation, as the euent thereof ſhould affoord (than which nothing is more vnreaſonable:) if things fell out well,then was it wiſely and worthily done; if otherwiſe,than was it like to be reputed a fooliſh,a raſh,and wofull reſolution.

The greater the danger was now feared from the angrie Turke, the more carefull were the Venetians of their ſtate. Wherefore they forthwith ſent meſſengers with letters vnto the Go- I uernours of CYPRVS,charging them with all carefulnes and diligence to make themſelues readie to withſtand the Turke, and to raiſe what power they were able in the Iſland,not omitting any thing that might concerne the good of the ſtate: and at the ſame time made choice of their moſt valiant and expert captaines both by ſea and land,vnto whom they committed the defence of their diſperſed Seigniorie,with the leading of their forces. *Hieronimus Zanius* was appointed Admirall,*Lucas Michael* was ſent into CRETE, *Franciſcus Barbarus* into DALMATIA, *Sebaſtianus Venerius* into CORCYRA, all men of great honour,experience,and valour,Other meaner captaines were ſent alſo with leſſe charge into the aforeſaid places,as *Eugenius Singliticus*, a noble gentleman,with a thouſand footmen into CYPRVS, who had alſo the leading of all the horſemen in the Iſland: after whom countie *Martinengus* promiſed to follow with two thou- K ſand footmen moe. The ſtrong cities were now by the Venetians in all places new fortified, armour,ordinance,and victual prouided,and whatſoeuer elſe they thought needful for defence of their ſtate. And for as much as they well knew they had to do with too mightie an enemie, they by their embaſſadors ſent for that purpoſe, earneſtly ſollicited moſt of the Chriſtian princes to ioine with them in league,and to giue them aid againſt the common enemie, who as he was too ſtrong for any one of them, ſo were he not able to ſtand againſt their vnited forces. But the emperour *Maximilian* excuſed himſelfe by the league he had not long before made with the Turke for eight yeares,which(he ſaid) he might not breake: yet he had before his eyes a moſt pregnant example,what ſmall reckoning the Turke maketh of his faith and league,which he without any iuſt cauſe had broken with the Venetians. The like excuſe vſed alſo *Charles* the French king,and L *Sigiſmund* king of POLONIA, who both ſeemed to be very ſorrie for that the Venetians were fallen out with the Turke, but could not helpe them, for that they were in league with the Turkiſh emperour. Neuertheleſſe the French king did them the courteſie, to offer himſelfe to be a mediator, if they ſo pleaſed, betwixt them and *Selymus*. The young king of PORTINGAL *Don Sebaſtian* pretended alſo for his excuſe the great plague which had but a little before raged in his kingdome,and much deminiſhed his people;as alſo that he was to maintaine wars by ſea againſt the Turks in the Eaſt Indies, to the no leſſe benefit of the Chriſtian commonweale than if he ſhould aid the Venetians in the Mediterranean. Onely *Pius Quintus* then Pope,and *Philip* king of SPAINE, with certaine of the princes of ITALIE; namely *Philibert* duke of SAVOY, *Guido Vdebaldus* duke of VRBIN, *Coſmus Medices* duke of FLORENCE, and the knights of MALTA, M promiſed them aid,which they afterward moſt honourably performed.

The emperour, the French king and the king of Polonia entangled with their leagues, refuſed to aid the Venetians againſt the Turkes.

What Chriſtian princes promiſed to aid the Venetians.

Selymus of himſelfe angrie with the Venetians, and firme in his reſolution for the conqueſt of CYPRVS,was vpon the report of *Cubates* his embaſſadours bad entertainment at VENICE,farther enraged. He deemed the maieſtie of the Turkiſh empire contemned, and himſelfe in the

perſon

A perſon of his embaſſadour diſgraced: ſeeing that they whom he had thought would haue yeelded vnto any thing, rather than the league ſhould haue bin broken, had ſent him ſuch a ſhort anſwere, and ſo contemptuouſly vſed his embaſſadour, vnto whom they had not affoorded ſo much as common courteſie. It did not a little moue him alſo, that the Venetians had in their letters ſent by his embaſſadour, omitted the glorious titles vſually giuen the Turkiſh emperours. Wherefore in ſome part to ſatisfie his angrie mood, he cauſed *Marcus Anthonius Barbarus*, the Venetian embaſſadour, and all the Chriſtian merchants of the Weſt throughout his empire, to be clapt vp in priſon, and their ſhips ſtaied vnder an arreſt. And ſetting all other things apart, ſet himſelfe wholly for the preparing of ſuch things as ſhould be needfull for the intended war.

But for as much as the Iſland of CYPRVS was the prey wherafter the greedie tyrant ſo much
B gaped, and for which the bloudie wars betwixt the Turke and the Venetians, with their Chriſtian confederats, preſently enſued; it ſhall not be from our purpoſe to ſpend a few words in the deſcribing thereof, as the ſtage whereon the bloudie tragedie following was as it were acted: as alſo how it came firſt into the hands of the Venetians, and by what right of them ſo long poſſeſſed (although it be in ſome part before declared) vntill it was now by *Selymus* the great Turke againſt all right iniuriouſly demanded, and at length by ſtrong hand by him wreſted from them. This Iſland lieth in the fartheſt of the Cilician ſea: it hath on the Eaſt SYRIA, on the Weſt PAMPHILIA, Southward it regardeth ÆGYPT, and Northward CILICIA, now called CARA-
The deſcription of Cyprus.
MANNIA. It is worthily accounted amongſt the greateſt Iſlands of the Mediterranean, containing in circuit 427 miles, and is in length (after the deſcription of *Strabo*) 175 miles, & in bredth
C not aboue 65. It aboundeth with corne, wine, oyle, cotton wooll, ſaffron, honey, roſin, turpentine, ſugar canes, and whatſoeuer els is needfull for the ſuſtentation of man, whereof it ſendeth forth great abundance to other countries, of whom it craueth no helpe againe. It was in antient time called *Macaria*, that is to ſay, Bleſſed. The people therein generally liued ſo at eaſe and pleaſure, that thereof the Iſland was dedicated to *Venus*, who was there eſpecially worſhipped, and thereof called CYPRIA. *Marcellinus* to ſhew the fertilitie thereof, ſaith, That CYPRVS aboundeth with ſuch plentie of all things, that without the help of any other forraine countrie it is of it ſelfe able to build a tall ſhip, from the keele to the top ſaile, and ſo put it to ſea furniſhed of all things needfull. And *Sextus Rufus* writing thereof, ſaith: *Cyprus famoſa diuitijs, paupertatem populi Romani, vt occuparetur ſolicitauit, ita vt ius eius inſulæ auſtrius magis quam iuſtius ſimus*
D *aſſecuti, vz.* CYPRVS famous for wealth, allured the pouertie of the people of ROME to lay hold vpon it, ſo that we haue rather couetouſly than iuſtly got the rule thereof. In the heart of the Iſland ſtandeth NICOSIA, ſometime the regall and late metropoliticall citie thereof. And in the Eaſt end thereof FAMAGVSTA, ſometime called TAMASSVS, a famous rich citie, the chiefe and only port of all that moſt pleaſant iſland. Other faire cities there be alſo, as PAPHOS, AMATHVS (now called LIMISSO) and CYRENE. This iſland of it ſelfe long time maintained the maieſtie of a kingdome, as then when *Richard* the firſt king of ENGLAND paſſing that way with his
King Richard in Cyprus.
fleet for the reliefe of the Chriſtians then diſtreſſed in the Holy land about the yeare 1191, was prohibited there to land; and certain of his people by force of tempeſt there caſt on ſhore, were by the Cypriots either cruelly ſlain or taken priſoners: which barbarous violence king *Richard*
E tooke in ſo euill part, that he there by force landed his armie, had reſted not vntill he had taken *Iſaak* the king priſoner, and ſubdued the iſland. The king he ſent in chaines of ſiluer to TRIPOLIS, there to be kept in cloſe priſon; the kingdome he kept a while in his owne hand, which not long after he gaue, or as ſome ſay, exchanged with *Guido* the titular king of HIERVSALEM: for which cauſe the kings of ENGLAND for a certain time afterwards were honoured with the title of the kings of HIERVSALEM. This kingdome by many deſcents came at length to *Ianus* ſonne
How the kingdome of Cyprus came to the Venetians.
of king *Peter*, who in the yeare 1423 was by *Melechella* Sultan of ÆGYPT taken priſoner, but afterwards for the ranſome of an hundred & fifteene thouſand Sultanins, was ſet at libertie and reſtored to his kingdome, paying vnto the Sultan and his ſucceſſours a yearely tribute of fortie thouſand crownes. This *Ianus* left a ſonne called *Iohn*, who after the death of his father married
F the daughter of the Marques of MONT-FERRAT: after whoſe death he married one *Helena*, of the moſt noble houſe of the *Paleologi* in GRÆCIA, by whom he had one only daughter called *Carlotte*, but by another woman a baſe ſonne named *Iames*. This king *Iohn* was a man of no courage, altogither giuen to pleaſure, and according to the maner of his effeminate education, ſhewed himſelfe in all things more like a woman than a man: which *Helena* his wife, a woman

of a great ſpirit, quickly perceiuing, tooke vpon her the ſoueraigntie and whole gouernment of G
the realme, gracing and diſgracing whom ſhe pleaſed, and promoting to the eccleſiaſtical digni-
ties ſuch as ſhe beſt liked, aboliſhing the Latine ceremonies, and bringing in them of the Greeks,
and tooke ſuch further order as pleaſed her ſelfe in matters of ſtate concerning both peace and
warre, her huſband in the meane time regarding nothing but his vaine pleaſure: whereby it
came to paſſe, that all was brought into the power of the Greeks, the queenes friends. Now the
queene her ſelfe was much ruled by the counſell of her nurſe, and the nurſe by her daughter: ſo
that the people commonly ſaid, The daughter ruled the nurſe, the nurſe the queen, & the queen
the king. The nobilitie aſhamed and wearie of this manner of gouernment, by generall conſent
of the people ſent for *Iohn* the king of PORTINGALS couſin Germane (whom ſome call the
king of PORTINGALL) to whom they gaue *Carlotte* the kings daughter in marriage, with full H
power to ſupplie that want of gouerment which was in king *Iohn* his father in law. He taking
the authoritie into his hands, quickly reformed the diſordered kingdome, as wel in matters con-
cerning religion as ciuile policie. The Latine ceremonies were againe reſtored, and the gouerne-
ment of the daughter, the nurſe, and the queen brought to an end. But the miſchieuous daugh-
ter doubting the countenance of the yong king, perſuaded her mother, as ſhe tendered her own
life, to poyſon the king. Which thing the wretched woman, by the conſent of the queene mo-
ther (as was reported) in ſhort time performed, and ſo brought that noble prince, well worthie
longer life, vnto his vntimely end: whereby the gouernment was againe reſtored to the Greeke
queene, who in the name of her weake huſband commanded againe at her pleaſure. But aboue
all, the nurſe and her daughter inſulted vpon the young queene *Carlotte*: which ſhe not well I
brooking, grieuouſly complained thereof to *Iames* her baſe brother, requiring his helpe for re-
dreſſe therof: who not long after ſlew the nurſes daughter, not ſo much in reuenge of the wrong
by her done vnto his ſiſter, as to prepare a way for himſelfe for the obtaining of the kingdome:
grieuing inwardly, that ſhe or her huſband whoſoeuer, ſhould be preferred before himſelfe.
Which thing *Helena* the queene quickly perceiuing, perſuaded the king her huſband to cauſe
his baſe ſonne to enter into the orders of prieſthood; and ſo to become a church man, therby to
cut off all his hope of aſpiring vnto the kingdome: which the king at her inſtance did, and made
him archbiſhop of NICOSIA. In the meane time *Carlotte* by the perſuaſion of her mother and
the nobilitie of the countrie, married *Lewis* ſonne to the duke of SAVOY: who being for that
purpoſe ſent for, came with all ſpeed to CYPRVS. After that the queene mother and the old K
nurſe (deſiring nothing more than to reuenge the death of the nurſes daughter vpon *Iames*, now
archbiſhop) deuiſed firſt how to thruſt him out of all his ſpiritual promotions, which were great,
and afterward quite baniſh him the kingdome. Hereupon the queene wrote letters againſt him
to the Pope, to haue him diſgraded, for that he being a man baſe borne, with his hands embrued
with guiltleſſe blood, was vnworthie of holy orders. Which letters by chance came to *Iames* his
hands: who enraged therewith, accompanied with a number of his friends and fauorits, ſoden-
ly entred the Court, ſlew ſuch of his enemies as he found there, diuided their goods amongſt his
followers, and as king poſſeſſed himſelfe of the regall citie. In this broile the Greek queene *He-*
lena died, and ſhortly after her huſband alſo. All things being thus in a hurley and out of order,
certaine of the nobilitie for redreſſe therof ſent for *Lewis* the huſband of *Carlotte*, as for him to L
whom that kingdome in the right of his wife moſt iuſtly belonged: who vpon his arriuall was
of all ſorts of men ioifully receiued and welcommed as their king. *Iames* the vſurper vnderſtan-
ding before of the comming of *Lewis*, and perceiuing the inclination of the people towards
him, fled with diuers of his friends to ALEXANDRIA, to craue aid of the Ægyptian Sultan: in
whoſe Court he found ſuch fauour, as that he was by the Sultans commandment roially appar-
relled and honoured with the title of the king of CYPRVS, which he promiſed for euer to hold of
the Sultans of ÆGYPT as their vaſſall and tributarie. At which time the Sultan alſo by his embaſ-
ſadors commanded *Lewis* to depart the iſle: who by all meanes ſought to haue pacified the Sul-
tan, declaring vnto him his rightfull title, yet offering to pay vnto him the wonted tribute, and to
allow vnto *Iames* a yearely penſion of ten thouſand duckats, during his life. But all in vaine, for M
Iames ſtill preſent in the Sultans court, and wiſely following his own ſuit, at laſt concluded with
the great Sultan (who thought it more honour to make a king than to confirme a king) and re-
ceiuing of him a great armie, returned into CYPRVS, where in ſhort time he ſo diſtreſſed *Lewis*,
that he was glad to forſake the iſland, with his wife, and to returne into his countrie; leauing the

king-

A kingdome of CYPRVS againe to *Iames*: who now by the ſupportation of the Ægyptian Sultan poſſeſſed thereof, yet liued not without care of *Carlotte* and her huſband *Lewis*, whom he knew the Cypriots wonderfully affected. Wherefore for the more aſſurance of his eſtate, he though it beſt to ioine in league and friendſhip with the Venetians, whom he knew to be of great power at ſea, and of all other fitteſt to croſſe whatſoeuer *Lewis* ſhould in the right of his wife attempt againſt him. Which league he afterwards made, & the better to confirme the ſame tooke to wife *Catherine Cornelia*, the daughter of *Marcus Cornelius* a magnifico of VENICE, being before adopted by the Senat, and euer after, their reputed daughter. Not long after this mariage, *Iames* died in the yeare 1470, leauing the queene great with child, who in due time was deliuered of a faire ſonne, vnto whom with the mother the Venetian ſtate became tutors, as their
B adoptiue fathers, and in their behalfe tooke vpon them the gouernment of the realm. This child ſhortly after dyed alſo, not without ſome ſuſpition of poyſon, after whoſe death great troubles aroſe in the kingdome, inſomuch that *Andreas Cornelius* the queens vncle, a moſt graue counſellor, and Gouernour of the realme vnder the queene, was by the conſpiracie of certain noble men ſlaine, and all the iſland readie to reuolt from the queene. For appeaſing of which troubles the Venetians were glad oftentimes to ſend their Admirals with their gallies into CYPRVS, to take order in the matter, and to aid the queene: who at length perſuaded by *George Cornelius* her brother (whileſt it was yet in her power) as a louing daughter to yeeld vp the kingdome vnto her adoptiue fathers, which ſhe deſtitute both of counſell and power, could not long hold ſo far from her friends, beſet on the one ſide with the great Turke, and on the other with the mightie
C Sultan of ÆGYPT. She I ſay thus perſuaded by her brother, came to VENICE, where ſhe was with the greateſt honour that could be deuiſed, receiued by the duke and the whole State at ſea in their great and goodly ſhip the Beucentaure, and ſo with all royall triumph brought through the midſt of the citie vnto the place moſt richly for the time appointed for the receiuing of her: where ſhortly after, attired in all her royal habiliments, ſhe came in great maieſtie vnto the Senat houſe, and there before the Tribunall ſeat of *Auguſtinus Barbadicus*, then duke of VENICE, laied downe her crowne and ſcepter, and as a moſt louing daughter reſigned vp her kingdome, to the great honour and profit of her countrie. Thus the kindome of CYPRVS was deliuered into the hands of the Venetians in the yeare 1473; which they peaceably held from that time, paying vnto the Sultans of ÆGYPT ſuch tribut as they had the late king *Iames*: which yearely
D tribute they in like manner paied vnto the Turkiſh emperours, after that the kingdome of ÆGYPT was by *Selymus* the firſt conquered in the yeare 1517, as due vnto them by law of armes: with which yearely tribute both *Selymus* himſelfe, and *Solyman* after him, held themſelues well contented. But now this Turkiſh emperour *Selymus* the ſecond, of whom we ſpeake, deſirous both of the honour of ſuch a conqueſt, and of ſo rich a prey, made no account of the accuſtomed tribute, but of the fruitfull iſland it ſelfe: wherof he as is before declared, hath by his embaſſador made a proud demaund, but is thereof denied by the Senat.

Sabellic. Enead. 10. lib. 8.

Selymus throughly furniſhed with all things neceſſarie for the inuaſion of CYPRVS, in the beginning of Februarie ſent a great power both of horſe and foot into EPYRVS and the frontiers of DALMATIA, to forrage the Venetian territorie, eſpecially about IADERA; of purpoſe by that
E war ſo neere at home to withdraw them from the defence of CYPRVS ſo farre off. About the middle of Aprill following he ſent *Piall Baſſa* with foureſcore gallies and thirtie galliots to keep the Venetians from ſending aid into CYPRVS. This *Piall* was an Hungarian, borne of baſe parents, but turning Turke, and giuing himſelfe to armes, was firſt preferred for his valour ſhewed againſt the Chriſtians at ZERBI, and afterward by many degrees riſe to the honour of one of the greateſt Baſſaes. He departing from CONSTANTINOPLE, and cutting through PROPONTIS and HELLESPONTVS, came to EVBŒA, and there for certaine daies lay in ſuch order, as if he ſhould haue preſently giuen the enemie battell: but vnderſtanding by his eſpials, that the Venetians grieuouſly viſited with the plague, and ſlowly relieued by their friends, were not like in haſt to come out, he tooke his courſe to TENOS, an iſland of the Venetians, to haue taken it
F from them. This iſland is one of the Cyclades, and was by nature ſtrong, but ſtronger by the induſtrie of the defendants; who liuing far from the Chriſtian countries, & compaſſed about with ſuch cruel and warlike enemies as people far diſtant ſtood in dread of, could neuer for any feare or danger be remooued from the Chriſtian religion, or induced to ſubmit themſelues to the Turks gouernment, as moſt of the other iſlands had. *Piall* here landing his forces, ſought both

1570

Selymus inuadeth the Venetians.

Piall Baſſa ſent againſt the Venetians.

by faire means and foule to haue perſuaded the inhabitants to haue yeelded vp their towne; but G
when he could get nothing of them but foule words againe, he began by force to aſſault the ſame. Two daies the towne was valiantly both aſſaulted and defended, but at length the Turks perceiuing how little they preuailed, and that the defendants were reſolutly ſet down for the defence of themſelues and their countrie; ſhamefully gaue ouer the aſſault, and abandoning the Iſland, directed their courſe toward CYPRVS. For *Muſtapha*, author of that expedition (for his ancient hatred againſt the Chriſtians, made Generall by *Selymus*) had before appointed *Piall Baſſa* at a time prefixed, to meet him at the RHODES, and that he that came firſt ſhould tarrie for the other, that ſo they might togither ſaile into CYPRVS.

Muſtapha hauing before ſent a great part of his armie by land into PAMPHILIA, embarked the reſt with *Haly Baſſa* Generall of the forces at ſea, who yet ſtaied for him with the reſt of the H
fleet at CONSTANTINOPLE. This *Haly* was one of the chiefe Baſſaes, a man of great account, and ſometime an eſpeciall and noted follower of *Muhamet Baſſa*: but now (as it is oftentimes elſewhere ſeene, that men togither with the change of fortune, change their minds and affections alſo) was become a great fauourit of *Muſtapha*. Now to colour ſo manifeſt a wrong and breach of the Turks faith, *Muſtapha* the Generall, according to the Turkiſh manner, a little before his arriuall in CYPRVS, gaue the Venetians there to vnderſtand by letters of his comming, as alſo of his purpoſe for the taking of that Iſland from them: for that without ſome ſuch ſlender denouncing of war vnto them againſt whom it is intended, the Turkes generally account their expeditions not to be altogither ſo lawfull or fortunat as otherwiſe: and therfore writ vnto them in this ſort. I

Muſtapha Baſſa vnto the Venetians.

Muſtapha Baſſa his letters vnto the Venetians.

That the kingdome of CYPRVS *by auntient right belongeth vnto the kingdome of* ÆGYPT, *you are not ignorant; which being conquered by the Turkes, is togither with it become of right a part alſo of the* Othoman *empire: that iſland wee come to challenge, leading after vs two hundred thouſand valiant ſouldiors, vnto which power, and the wealth of the* Othoman *kingdomes (all which the moſt mightie emperour is about (if need ſhall be) to ſend thither, and to bend his whole ſtrength thereon (all the vnited forces of the Chriſtian kings are not comparable; much leſſe the Venetians (ſo ſmall a part of* EVROPE) *forſaken of their friends, can ſuffice. Wherefore, we will and exhort you for the auntient amitie which hath beene betwixt your State and the glorious* Othoman *family, to yeeld this kingdome vnto the moſt puiſſant emperour, whoſe verie name is become dreadfull vnto all the nations of the world: and quietly, and without reſiſtance to leaue the iſland, with the loue and friendſhip of ſo great a monarch to be for euer inuiolatly kept betwixt him and you. Whereas if you ſhall before ſuch wholeſome counſell fondly preferre your vaine hopes, you are to expect all the calamities of warre, with ſuch dreadfull examples as the angrie conquerours vſe to make of their vanquiſhed enemies. For reſolution whereof, wee yet giue you halfe a moneths ſpace to bethinke your ſelues in: and ſo fare you well.* K

Muſtapha Baſſa goeth for Cyprus All this being now in readineſſe, and a moſt royall gallie of wonderfull greatnes and beautie L
by the appointment of *Selymus* prepared for the great Baſſa the Generall: he togither with *Haly Baſſa* and the reſt of the fleet, departed from CONSTANTINOPLE, the ſix and twentieth of May, and at the RHODES met with *Piall* as he had before appointed. The whole fleet at that time
The Turks fleet deſcried in Cyprus. conſiſted of two hundred gallies, amongſt whom were diuers galliots, and ſmall men of warre, with diuers other veſſels prepared for the tranſportation of horſes: with this fleet *Muſtapha* kept on his courſe for CYPRVS. They of the Iſland in the meane time carefully attending the enemies comming, from their watch towers firſt diſcouered their fleet at the Weſt end of the Iſland not far from PAPHOS: from whence the Turkes turning vpon the right hand, and paſſing the promontorie CYRIO, now called DELLEGATE, landed diuers of their men, who burnt and ſpoiled certaine villages, and with ſuch ſpoile and priſoners as they had taken returned againe M
The Turke land in Cyprus. vnto the fleet: which holding on their former courſe, came at length to a place called SALINÆ (of the aboundance of ſalt there made) where they knew was beſt landing: and there in an open road came to an anchor, where the Baſſaes without any reſiſtance vpon a plaine ſhoare landed their armie.

Now

A Now all the hope of the Christians, was to haue kept the Turkes from landing, which they should with all their strength and power haue done; neither was it a matter of any great difficultie, for had the defendants but kept the shoare, and from the drie and firme land valiantly repulsed their enemies, they might vndoubtedly with their shot and weapons haue kept them from landing, or else haue done them greater harme: knowing in the meane time, that in all the iland was no good harbour for them to put into, and that riding in an open road subiect to all wind and weather, they could not long without danger of shipwrack ride it out: But they, either terrified with the greatnesse of the fleet, or preuented by the celeritie of the enemie, to their great hurt omitted so faire an opportunity, as the woful sequell of the matter declared. It exceedingly encouraged the Turks that they had so easily footed the iland, which they thought they should
B not haue done without a bloudie fight.

The Bassa now landed, presently entrenched his armie, and foorthwith sent the fleet to transport the rest of his forces out of PAMPHILIA into the iland. And at the same time sent out certaine scouts to take some prisoners, of whom they might learne the situation of the country, the best waies to passe them with his army, the strength of his enemies, & what they did, and many other such like things which it concerned him to know. But the greatest question amongst the Turkes themselues was, Whether they should first set vpon FAMAGVSTA or NICOSIA? FAMAGVSTA standeth low, altogether subiect to the scorching heat, which was then great, according as the time of the yeare, and nature of the countrey required: wherefore the Bassa for feare of diseases to arise in his armie of the immoderate heat and vnwholesome situation of the
C place, thought it better to begin his warres with the siege of NICOSIA, and to make that citie the seat of the warre, for the conquest of the rest of the iland. So hauing put all things in order, and well viewed the country, and finding nothing he needed to stand in doubt of, he set forward with his armie toward NICOSIA, which was about thirtie miles distant, being the chiefe and richest citie of all the Island. Which way soeuer the armie marched, it spread a great deale of ground; and the neerer it came, the greater was the slaughter of the countrey people, and the number of prisoners taken of all sorts. But when newes of the enemies approach was brought into the citie, a generall feare presaging future miserie possessed the hearts of all men. There was not in the city any valiant or renowmed captain, who as the danger of the time required, should haue taken vpon him the charge: neither any strong army in the iland to oppose against the e-
D nemy. The Gouernour of the citie was one *Nicholaus Dandulus*, a man too weake for so great a burthen; who alwaies brought vp in ciuile affaires, was to seeke how to defend a siege. Of the citisens and country people he had taken vp foure thousand footmen, and a thousand horsmen, all raw souldiors, commanded by the gentlemen of the countrey, men of all others most courteous: but as well the captains as the souldiors, as men brought vp in a plentifull country, fitter for pleasure than for warre. The greatest hope and strength of the citie, was reposed in twelue hundred Italian footmen, and sixe hundred horsemen. The whole number of the souldiors in garrison for defence of the citie, was deemed about eight thousand horse and foot: too weake a companie against so fierce and strong an enemie; and the more, for that the Bassa an olde and most expert Generall was there in person himselfe present, a most seuere and absolute com-
E mander, whom it would haue been a hard matter to haue withstood with equall power. The Venetians had euer had great care of the iland of CYPRVS, as lying farre from them, in the middest of the sworne enemies of the Christian religion, and had therefore oftentimes determined to haue fortified the same: yet fearing thereby to seeme to distrust or dread the Turkes, and so giue them occasion of offence, left it still vndone. This citie of NICOSIA standeth in the middest of the iland, in a plaine and champaine countrey, compassed round with a wall, as if it had bin drawn with a compasse, & is in circuit about fiue miles: for the manner of the situation, and magnificent buildings, as well publike as priuat, many haue compared it vnto the beautifull city of FLORENCE in ITALIE: and was for the wholsome and commodious situation thereof notably peopled. This citie had the Venetians of late fortified with new wals, thicke rampiers, and
F eleuen strong bulwarkes, according to the manner of the fortification of our time, and had raised three great fortresses for defence of the wall, which they furnished with a strong garrison, great store of artillerie, and other warlike prouision. Neuertheless, they found by experience in this warre, That fortifications are strengthened by the defendants, rather then the defendants by the fortifications,

Mustapha Bassa marcheth towards Nicosia

Nicholaus Dandulus Gouernor of Nicosia.

The description of Nicosia.

The

The Turks before Nicosia.

The two and twentith of Iuly, the Bassa with his armie encamped within a mile and a halfe of the citie, when presently the Turks by troupes issuing out of the campe, rid contemptuously before the wals and gates of the city, and with often & lowd outcries vpbraided the defendants: which by them being answered with silence, was taken as a token of their feare. And *Mustapha* himselfe comming as neere as he might without danger, tooke full view of the wals and situation of the citie. Shortly after, the enemy drew neerer vnto the citie into a more open plaine, and with their tents filled the lower part of the hill, which they called MANDIA: but the Bassaes tent they set aloft vpon the hill, to the terrour of the defendants and encouragement of the Turkes. The camp being fortified, the Turks with incredible labour and celeritie brought their trenches from farre, and at the first cast vp some few forts, but afterwards, as their armie increased, many moe; which they raised so high, that they ouertopped the wals of the citie, and made the place more dangerous for the Christians to defend. There hauing placed seauentie great pieces of battery, they began to batter the citie both day and night without intermission; with such an horrible thundring, that the earth trembled, the houses shooke as if they would haue fallen downe: at which time many were slaine, both with the deadly shot, and the broken pieces of stones beaten out of the wals: neuer was such a feare as then within the citie of NICOSIA: euerie day the enemie brought his trenches neerer and neerer, and rested not vntill he had with restlesse labour brought them vnto the verie brim of the towne ditch, which the citizens before the comming of the Turks had not well scoured. Being come so nigh, they first skirmished a far off with their small pieces: but afterwards, they not onely battered the wals with their great artillerie, but with small shot, arrowes, and stones, ouerwhelmed the defendants, as if it had been a shower of haile; so to haue driuen them from off the wall and rampiers. In few daies, not onely all the curtaines betwixt three of the bulwarkes, was by the furie of the great ordinance beaten down, but all places thereabout lay full of the dead bodies of the assailants and defendants. For although the Christians fought at great disaduantage, both for the number of men, and indifferencie of the place: yet desperation joyned with extreame necessitie, of all other the greatest weapon, gaue them such courage, as with shot, stones, timber, and such like, to keepe downe their enemies, and defend their wals; and oftentimes to make great slaughter of them, with their artillery and murthering pieces, bent vpon them as at a certaine marke, who the thicker they stood, the greater was their harme. They also oftentimes dismounted many of the great pieces and made them vnseruiceable; and with featherbeds and sackes of cotten wooll, made vp their breaches: which the Turks laboured againe to burne with pitch barrels, and earthen pots full of wild fire. After long fight the Turks entring the ditch, made themselues two wayes to the wals, which they fortified on both sides with fagots and earth, in such sort, as that they were safe from the loupes of the bulwarkes which flankered the ditch. All this quickly performed, some presently set vp scaling ladders: others filled the ditches with brushwood, fagots, and earth; and others in the meane time with mattocks and leauers were digging down the foundations of the bulwarks CONSTANCE and PODOCATERA, taking name of them that had the chiefe charge in the building thereof. The Christians right valiantly endured the first assault of the enemy, and strucke down dead into the ditches many of them that were climing vp the ladders: and had in short time slaine mo than they were themselues in number, and inforced the rest to giue ouer the assault. These things were done in the beginning of the siege, whilst yet both parties were strong: in which hard conflicts a great number of souldiors were lost, and most of the canoniers slaine. After this assault, both parties for a while busied themselues & spent the time in their ingenious deuises: wherein it appeared, that the Turks were much cunninger in deuising of means to take cities, than were those Christians in defending the same.

Nicosia battred and assaulted, & by the Christians valiantly defended.

¶ Now had the Venetians in the first motions of these wars, praied aid of diuers Christian princes, from most part of whom they receiued but cold comfort, as is before declared: yet now at length (though somewhat late) they had drawne into the confederation of this warre, the Pope and the king of SPAINE: by whose example some other princes of ITALIE mooued, put to also their helping hands. The Venetians, as they whom the matter most concerned, had in good time put their fleet to sea; but knowing themselues too weake to encounter the Turks, they lay still vpon the coast of DALMATIA, about IADERA, expecting the comming of the Spanish admirall with his gallies. Two moneths (wherein much might haue been done) were now past in this expedition, and yet no newes of his comming: so that what the speed and industrie of the

Venetians

A Venetians had well prepared, was by the delay and lingering of the Spaniard, marred. Beſides that, the plague began to ariſe in the fleet, lying ſo long in one place; which at length grew ſo hoat, that many of the gallies had neither marriner nor ſouldior left in them: neither did this mortalitie ſo ſeaſe, vntill there were twentie thouſand dead thereof; amongſt whom were many noble gentlemen of great account, which might haue done their country good ſeruice, had they been in time imploied.

Sommer now almoſt halfe ſpent, and the plague well ceaſed, the Venetian Admirall wearie of expecting of the comming of *Auria* the Spaniſh Admirall; gathering together his fleet which he had before diſperſed, to auoid the infection ſailed to CORCYRA, where hee met with *Venerius*, another of the Venetian commaunders, who there ſtayed for him, hauing but a little before B taken from the Turks CESTRIA, now called SVPPOTO, a towne vpon the ſea coaſt ouer againſt CORCYRA. The whole fleet of the Venetians being aſſembled together, was an hundred and ſeuenteene ſaile, amongſt which were twelue great galeaſſes; but all too weake to giue battell to the Turkes, as being themſelues ſtronger in ſhipping than in men. Neuertheleſſe, the Admirall ſorie and wearie to ſee the ſpoile of the Venetian territory, and mooued with the diſtreſſe of the beſieged in NICOSIA, rather than for any hope he had with that ſtrength to doe any good againſt the Turkes fleet, departed from CORCYRA towards CRETE, and the twelfth of Auguſt landed at SVDA, a port of that Iſland. In the latter end of this moneth, *Columnius* the Popes Admirall, and *Auria* Admirall for the king of SPAINE, arriued there alſo, whom the Venetian Admirall welcomed with great ioy and triumph. The whole fleet of the confederat princes now C at length met together, conſiſted of an hundred ninetie two gallies, and twelue galeaſſes, beſide victualers and other ſmall veſſels, laded with munition and other neceſſarie prouiſion for the fleet. Of theſe gallies the Pope had ſet foorth twelue, the king of SPAINE fortie two, the reſt with the galeaſſes were the Venetians. In this fleet were embarked thirteene thouſand ſix hundred threeſcore ſouldiors: of whom the Pope ſent eleuen hundred, the king of SPAINE three thouſand nine hundred, and the Venetians eight thouſand ſixe hundred and ſixtie. Theſe three great commanders entred into counſell, what courſe to take in their proceedings in this warre; after long diſcourſe too and fro, at length by the perſuaſion of *Zanius* the Venetian Admiral, reſolued to go directly for CYPRVS, and to giue the Turks battell, in hope thereby to raiſe them from the ſiege of NICOSIA. About the middeſt of September, this great fleet furniſhed with D all things needfull for ſuch an expedition, looſed from CRETE, and with a faire gale of winde ſet forward for CYPRVS; in all their courſe keeping ſuch order, as if they ſhould preſently haue met with the enemie. In the middeſt of theſe troubles died *Petrus Loredanus*, duke of VENICE, leauing the reſt of the care of that warre to *Aloyſius Mocenicus*, who ſucceeded him in the dukedome.

The Venetian fleet of an hundred and ſeuenteene ſaile at Corcyra.

The Chriſtian fleet ſetteth forward toward Cyprus.

Whileſt the Chriſtians thus ſlowly proceed in their ſo waightie affaires, *Muſtapha* in the meane time laid hard ſiege to NICOSIA: and diuiding his armie into foure parts, aſſaulted foure of the bulwarks of the citie, with greater force than at any time before from the beginning of the ſiege. The aſſault was both long and terrible: furie, and the very ſight of the warlike Generall, who was there a preſent witneſſe, and beholder of euery mans forwardneſſe or cowardE diſe (a matter of great moment) beſides their naturall fierceneſſe, carried the Turkes headlong without any perill or danger. And on the other ſide, the greatneſſe of the danger, the feare to loſe both life and libertie, with the hope of reliefe, encouraged the defendants to dare any thing: ſo that the Turks could not approach the wals, or mount the ſcaling ladders, but they were preſently ſlaine, or together with the ladders throwne to the ground. Many of the Turkes were there ſlain, but eſpecially ſuch as were moſt forward: and of the defendants were alſo more loſt than ſtood with the ſafetie of ſo ſmall a number: and for as much as few or none eſcaped out of that fight vnwounded, the poore defendants were brought vnto a ſmall number. Many skilfull men were of opinion, that the citie might haue bin that day taken, if the aſſault had by the Baſſa bin longer maintained, by bringing ſtill on freſh men: but ſuch was his loſſe, as that he was glad F for that time to giue ouer the aſſault, and ſo with diſhonour to retire.

After this aſſault, it was by ſome of the captaines thought good, that they ſhould (whileſt they were yet of ſome reaſonable ſtrength in the citie) ſally foorth vpon the enemy: ſo to make ſhew, that they had yet ſome good hope in themſelues, and withall by ſo ſudden an eruption to performe ſomething vpon the ſecure enemy. Of which motion *Dandulus* the Gouernour in no caſe

The Chriſtians ſally out of the citie vpon the Turks.

caſe liked, as loath by ſuch a dangerous piece of ſeruice to deminiſh the number of the defendants, and ſo to giue the enemie an eaſier meanes to take the citie. Yet ſeeing all the captaines generally of another mind, he yeelded vnto their deſire. So in the hoteſt time of the day, when as the Turkes leaſt thought that the Chriſtians would haue ſallied out, certaine Italian companies vnder the conduct of *Cæſar Plouianus* of VINCENTIA, and *Albertus Scotus*, iſſued out by the gate that leadeth to FAMAGVSTA, and vpon the ſudden brake into the enemies trenches: where they found the Turks ſome playing, ſome ſleeping, but fearing nothing leſſe than that the Chriſtians, whom they daily braued, durſt to haue aduentured to come forth. At the firſt entrance the Italians preuailed, and brought a great feare vpon that quarter of the Turks armie, and ſlew many. But when the Turks awaked with the alarum, came running in on euery ſide, the Italians oppreſſed with the multitude, were glad to retire: in which retreat diuers of them were ſlaine, and amongſt them their two leaders *Cæſar* and *Albertus:* ſo that this ſally ſerued to no other purpoſe than to weaken the defendants themſelues, and to cauſe the Turkes to keepe better watch and ward againſt ſuch ſudden eruptions. G H

Scouts ſent out of the city taken by the Turks, & executed.

All hope of long defending the citie now almoſt loſt, and that the defendants could hardly ſtand vpon the wals, or ſhew their heads without preſent danger, they for want of better counſel rather than for any hope of good ſucceſſe, ſent out certaine ſcouts, men skilfull of the wayes and paſſages of the countrey (whom they had for great reward induced to vndertake the matter) to craue aid of the countrey people, that there in great multitude fled into the ſafetie of the mountaines: and to tell them, that if they came not in time to their reliefe, their wiues and children, whom they had before ſent into the citie, muſt needs in ſhort time fall into the enemies hand, or periſh with hunger: but theſe meſſengers were by the vigilant enemy intercepted, and in the ſight of the beſieged tortured to death. I

Letters ſhot into the citie.

About the ſame time diuers letters were ſhot with arrowes into the citie, to perſuade the beſieged Chriſtians to yeeld themſelues; for that in ſo doing they ſhould find the Baſſa a mild & mercifull conqueror: whereas otherwiſe if they ſhould by wilful holding out delay his victory, they were ſure to endure whatſoeuer could be endured or ſuffered. But when *Muſtapha* had thus in vaine with hope and feare tried the minds of the defendants, he called foorth to parley certaine ſoldiors that were ſtanding vpon the bulwark called CONSTANTIVS, of whom ſome were by the conſent of the Gouernor ſent forth vnto him: vnto whom *Muſtapha* by his interpretor complained, That no anſwer was giuen vnto his letters; he ſet forth vnto them the glory, power, and greatneſſe of the Turkiſh empire; and debaſed the ſtrength of the Venetians: then he perſuaded them to yeeld, propounding vnto them the miſeries that would fal vpon them, if the city ſhould by force be taken; which he threatned would be farre greater than the danger the Turkes were to vndertake for the winning thereof: and that therefore it concerned none ſo much as themſelues, whether the citie were giuen vp by compoſition, or els woon by ſtrong hand: He ſhewed vnto them the profit that ſhould ariſe vnto them by yeelding of it vp, & offered vnto them large entertainement, if they would ſerue him: and to conclude, told them, that they ſhould neuer afterwards find at his hands ſo much grace as was at that inſtant offered them. The craftie Baſſa did what he mig ht to haſten the winning of the citie, both for that he doubted the comming of the Chriſtian fleet, and that his great army was exceedingly troubled with contagious and grieuous diſeaſes, ariſing of the immoderat heat and drought in that ſo hot a country. But the ſouldiors thinking any thing more aſſured than the Turkiſh faith, anſwered him, That they did not as yet doubt their owne ſtrength, and that they were ready to endure any thing that could happen, rather than to preferre the vncertain friendſhip of an vnknown prince, before the gracious fauour of ſuch worthy princes as they had ſo good experience of. K L

Muſtapha' Baſſa in vaine perſuadeth them of Nicoſia to yeeld.

This anſwere cut off all the Baſſaes hope for taking of the citie by compoſition: wherewith being both grieued and enraged, he commanded all things to be made ready for the aſſault: and the more to encourage his ſoldiors, promiſed vnto them great rewards and honors that ſhould firſt or ſecond mount the wals. After that he gaue a generall aſſault vnto the citie with all his power: wherein both he as a moſt worthie captaine, and his ſouldiors fought moſt fiercely. You haue to do (ſaid he) with the ſmall and laſt remainders of your enemies, which are ſcarce able to ſtand or hold their weapons in their hands, rather than with enemies indeed: ſhall you not then eaſily ouercome them, being both few and feeble, that haue vanquiſhed them when they were many and luſtie? The end of all your labours is at hand, your hoped rewards approch; onely M

Muſtapha encourageth his ſouldiors.

play

A play you the men,and faint not in this aſſault; the ſpoile of this rich citie ſhall be the worthie reward of your labours; the fruit of all your trauell conſiſteth in this one moment. Whileſt he thus encourageth ſome,and reproueth others, they mindfull of his promiſes, and theſe of the diſgrace,altogether with their thick ſhot ſuffer no man to ſtand in ſafetie vpon the wals,and out of their forts alſo with their great ordinance greatly annoyed the defendants. This done,they attempted by the ruines of the wall,and in other places by ſcaling ladders to haue entred the citie. Which terrible aſſault was by the cruell enemie maintained,not for ſome few houres,but for diuers dayes together without any intermiſſion, freſh men ſtill comming on in ſtead of them that were wounded or ſlaine. Yet did the defendants valiantly indure all that ſtorme,and in ſuch weake caſe as they were,worthily performed what was poſſible for ſo few to do: yet ſtill in hope
B (the poore comfort of men in miſerie) that reliefe might come by the approch of the Chriſtian fleet. At length,when the matter was brought to this point, that the Turkes were in great hope to haue gained the walls, & *Muſtapha* himſelfe probably gueſſed, That the Chriſtians were now wearie of the long aſſault,and ſore weakned with wounds and other infinit miſeries,not to ſeek in a city ſo hardly diſtreſſed,and was in that his opinion alſo confirmed by certain fugitiue chriſtians: he neuertheleſſe vpon the ſudden cauſed a retreat to be ſounded,and ſo retiring into his trenches,lay ſtil all the next day without any thing doing. The defendants thinking that he had giuen ouer the aſſault,becauſe of ſome aid that was comming to their reliefe,became more careleſſe of the enemy,and vpon the vaine hope of ſuch aid,with leſſe diligence repaired their breaches and prouided for the repulſing of their enemies. But the Baſſa in the meane time had choſen out of his whole army about two hundred of his beſt captaines and ſouldiors,all men of approued valour and agilitie of bodie,whom the next day after he ſent early in the morning, to
C make proofe if they could with ſcaling ladders ſecretly and without any noiſe ſet vp,get into the foure bulwarkes which he had before ſore ſhaken with his great ordinance. Theſe reſolute men leading the way,got firſt vp,after whom followed diuers others,and ſo tooke the aforeſaid bulwarkes: when preſently after other companies of their fellowes which ſtood readie for the purpoſe,comming on forward,did with their ſcaling ladders in diuers places recouer the top of the wals: for now the matter was not done by ſecret ſurpriſe,but by open force. In euery one of theſe bulwarkes were ſeuentie Italians,and as many Epirots,who there kept watch and ward; theſe men part aſleepe,as fearing no ſuch danger, and part lying laſily vpon the ground, were there
D ſurpriſed on the ſudden, and ſlaine: otherſome of them awaked with the ſtrange and vncouth noiſe,betooke not themſelues luſtily to their weapons, but forſaking their ſtations leapt downe out of the bulwarks at ſuch places as were next vnto them, ſome for feare ran vnawares into the middeſt of their enemies. Vpon this alarum ſome of the Chriſtian captains came ſpeedily to the wals with their companies,as did *Eugenius*, who whileſt he in vaine crieth out to ſuch fearefull ſouldiors as he met,that they ſhould not ſo cowardly flie,& ſtayeth others that were flying,was himſelfe ſhot thorow with a ſmall ſhot and ſlaine. Other captaines in other places likewiſe labored in vaine to haue ſtaied the flying ſouldiors, whoſe perſuaſions, requeſts, and authoritie in ſo generall a feare,nothing at that time preuailed.

Nicoſia moſt terribly aſſaulted by the Turks

The defendants thus beaten from the wals and bulwarkes,gathered themſelues into the mar-
E ket place: but the citiſens ſtealing home to their owne houſes,there ſtood in the entrances of the ſame,fearefully expecting the deſtruction of their countrey, together with their owne. In the meane time the Gouernour of ALEPPO with his regiment ſcoured the wals of the citie round about,as he had in charge from the Generall: and without reſpect put to ſword all that he met, armed or vnarmed. At the bulwarke called BARBARVS,it fortuned him to light vpon a companie of Italians,who for a while fought deſperatly, but were in the end ouerthrowne and ſlaine. When he had thus cleared the wals,and left ſuch companies as he thought good in places conuenient for the keeping of them,he came downe into the more open places of the citie: and ſeeing them that were gathered together into the market place to haue caſt themſelues into a ring, and to fight as men altogether deſperat, he cauſed certaine murthering pieces to be bent vpon
F them: which they perceiuing, layed downe their weapons, and yeelded themſelues vnto the mercie of the enemie. By and by all the gates of the citie were ſtrongly guarded by the enemie, to the intent that no man ſhould go in or out. *Dandulus* the gouernor,and *Contarenus* the biſhop of PAPHOS, with the reſt of the nobilitie,and better ſort of the citiſens,had got themſelues into the towne hall, and there ſtood vpon their guard: vnto whom *Muſtapha* ſent word, that hee would

Nicoſia taken by the Turks.

The Turks gaine the bulwarkes and wals of Nicoſia.

would take them all to mercie, if they would without further reſiſtance yeeld themſelues. But G
whiles meſſengers run to and fro, the Turks violently brake in vpon them, and there ſlew them euery man. After the death of theſe noblemen, the cruell enemy ſpared none: and hauing ſlaine ſuch as they found abroad in the ſtreets, brake into the houſes, where they made hauocke of all things: yong babes were violently taken out of the armes of their mothers, virgins were ſhamefully rauiſhed, and honeſt matrons before their husbands faces deſpightfully abuſed, churches
A great ſlaughter. were ſpoyled, and all places filled with mourning and dead bodies: the ſtreets were in all places ſtained with blood, for in the citie was ſlaine that day foureteene thouſand eight hundred threeſcore and ſix perſons. Neither was there any end of the ſpoile, vntill the greedy enemie had carried away all the wealth that long peace had heaped vp. It is reported, that the prey there taken, amounted to twentie hundred thouſand millions of duckats: two hundred of the moſt goodly H
and beautifull youths were choſen out of purpoſe to bee ſent vnto CONSANTINOPLE, for a preſent for *Selymus*. In the citie were taken alſo two hundred & fiftie pieces of great ordinance: wherof ſome were by the enemy carried away, and the reſt left for defence of the citie. Thus the famous citie of NICOSIA, ſometime the regall ſeat of the kings of CYPRVS, fell into the hands of the Turks, the ninth day of September in the yeare 1570, in whoſe power it ſtill remaineth.

Muſtapha hauing as he thought beſt diſpoſed of all things in NICOSIA, with the very terrour of his name, rather than by any force, brought moſt part of the reſt of the townes in the iſland vnder his obeiſance; and by faire intreatie and promiſe of good vſage, brought back again vnto their wonted dwellings the rude countrey people, who vpon the comming of the Turkes were fled with all that they had into the mountaines: them as men not to be feared, he commaunded I
Cyrene yeelded vnto the Turks. to till and ſow their land as they were wont. The citie of CYRENE is ſtrongly ſituated, not farre from the ſea, and was then well furniſhed of all things needfull for the enduring of a long ſiege. Hither the Baſſa ſent one of his Sanzackes to ſummon the citie, more to prooue the courage of the defendants, than for any hope hee had to haue the citie deliuered vnto him. But *Alphonſus Palacius* then Gouernour of the citie, terrified with the loſſe of NICOSIA, no ſooner ſaw the enemie, but that without any further deliberation or force vſed againſt him, he deliuered vp the towne vnto the Sanzacke; couenanting only in reward of his cowardiſe, That he might in ſafetie depart from thence with all his garriſon ſouldiors: which was eaſily graunted, and the citie ſurrendred.

Not long after *Muſtapha* leauing a thouſand horſemen, and three thouſand foot in garriſon K
Famaguſta beſieged. in NICOSIA, marched with the reſt of his armie to beſiege FAMAGVSTA. And the more to terrifie them of the citie, he by a poore countrey fellow, whom he had for that purpoſe ſet at libertie, ſent vnto them in a basket the head of *Nicholaus Dandulus*, late Gouernour of NICOSIA: and at the ſame time ſent before him diuers horſemen, who vpon their horſmens ſtaues carried the heads of many of the noblemen ſlaine at NICOSIA, wherewith they rid as in triumph about the wals of the citie. Which thing he did, in hope that they of FAMAGVSTA terrified with ſuch a ſpectacle, and the late ouerthrow of NICOSIA, would for feare of like miſerie yeeld themſelues. But deceiued in this his expectation, he encamped his armie about three miles from the
Muſtapha raiſeth his ſiege. citie. Afterwards hauing taken view of the citie, and well conſidered of the ſituation thereof, he with wonderfull celeritie caſt vp diuers mounts againſt the ſame, & at the ſame time cauſed bat- L
terie to be layed againſt the great tower which defended the hauen: he himſelfe alſo in the mean while battering the gate that leadeth to AMATHVS. But perceiuing by the deſperat ſallies of the defendants, their great courage, and that he was like to haue much more to do in this ſiege than he had in the winning of NICOSIA, and Winter alſo now drawing faſt on (being about the latter end of September) he thought it beſt betime to prouide, that by lying there he hazarded not the honour he had with ſo much labour and danger before gained: and the rather, for that it was commonly reported, that the Chriſtian fleet was at hand: wherefore he riſe with his armie, and retired himſelfe further off into the countrey, where he ſhortly after billited his ſouldiors in the villages round about for that Winter.

The Turks at ſea aduertiſed of the comming of the Chriſtian fleet, prepare themſelues for battell. The Baſſaes at ſea, *Haly* and *Piall*, lying before FAMAGVSTA, doubting the comming of the M
Chriſtian fleet, which then lay at CRETE, ſent out ſixe galliots to diſcouer the doings of the Chriſtians: who returning with certaine priſoners taken in the iſland of CRETE, declared vnto the Baſſaes what they had learned concerning the Chriſtian fleet, and that it was alreadie vpon the way to CYPRVS. Vpon which intelligence the Baſſaes put their fleet in order of battell, and ſet forward

A forwards towards LIMISSO, to haue met with the Christians: who with a prosperous wind were comming betwixt the islands of CARPATHOS and the RHODES: but there vnderstanding by their espials, that NICOSIA was lost, and that the Turkes were come to besiege FAMAGVSTA, they called a counsell of all the chiefe commaunders in the fleet, to consult what were best to do in so dangerous a case. *Columnius* the Popes Admirall, and then chiefe commaunder in the fleet, with *Zanius* the Venetian Admirall, were of opinion, That it were best to hold on their course for CYPRVS, and to relieue FAMAGVSTA: for that it was like that the Turkes proud of their late victorie, were for desire of prey for most part gone ashore into the island, & so left their fleet but slenderly manned. Beside that they alleadged, That the Venetian Senat had expressely decreed, that they should giue the Turks battell. But *Auria* the Spanish Admirall thinking it, as indeed it was, to be a matter of great difficultie and danger, was quite of another mind, saying, That he could not but maruell, how the Venetian Senatours sitting at their ease in counsell, could before they knew their owne strength, and power of the enemie, the nature of the countrie, and purpose of their foes, determine what were fit for martiall men to doe: vnto whose actions no certaine rule could be prescribed: All the shores (he said) were kept with the enemies garrisons: so that what need soeuer they should haue, they could neither come by water or wood, or put into any harbour. Besides that, the enemie would giue them battell at his own pleasure, & not at others: for that they were not of so much power as to enforce him to fight. And that if the Senate, which vsed to doe all things warily, and with great aduisement, did but see the weakenesse of their gallies, wanting both souldiours and marriners, they would be of another mind. He alleadged further, that they were to wage warre in the enemies countrie, where there was no port to receiue their fleet, no peaceable place, no confederat citie, nor king to friend: whereas the time of the yeare grew euery day worse and worse, when as they had neither harbour to put into, neither were able to abide the sea. And now that NICOSIA was lost, for the reliefe whereof they were come so farre, there was no reason for them longer to stay, the enemie so strongly possessing the island with his great armie, as that there was not any hope to doe any good against him. And that to keepe him from victuall, and so to distresse him, was not possible, lying in a most fertile island, and in the middest of his owne dominions: whereas they who were to be still relieued from far, should sooner feele the want than the enemie. He was victualled (as he said when he came from home) but for three months, in hope to haue made a short dispatch, and had now two thousand miles home. He said moreouer, That he had expresse commaundement from the king, to returne to MESSANA before Winter; and that therfore so soone as the moneth was out, he would depart. The Venetian Admiral desiring nothing more, than by battell at sea to ouerthrow the Turks, and so to relieue the distressed Cypriots, vrged the Spanish Admirall to proceed in the voyage, saying, That so great aid was not sent from the Pope and the king onely for the reliefe of NICOSIA, but to deliuer the whole island from the danger of the Turke. Of the same opinion with the Spanish Admirall were diuers other great captains in the fleet, namely *Sforția*; who said, That nothing was to be so done, as might rashly expose vnto casualtie or power of the enemie, the publike fortune and maiestie of the Christian commonweale, which was in that fleet greatly hazarded: That longer stay might bring farther danger. That in that fleet consisted the whole welfare of the commonweale, wherein more might be lost, if any mishap should chance therunto, than was good to be gained by the relieuing of FAMAGVSTA. The great commaunders thus differing in opinions, the counsel was in a heat dissolued, and nothing concluded. Vpon which so foule a disagreement the fleet began now to returne backe againe, but so, as that it was not now as before one, but three fleets, euery Admirall by himselfe drawing after him his fleet. *Auria* the Spanish Admirall, who first returned, after he had been two daies wonderfully with tempest tossed at sea, came at last to CARPATHOS, and departing thence, with much adoe arriued with his fleet in the island of CRETE: from whence he by a messenger sent of purpose, requested leaue of *Columnius* the Popes Admirall, that he might with his good will presently returne home: whereunto *Columnius* answered, That he would giue him no such leaue: but rather charged him in the dutie hee ought to the good of the Christian commonweale not to depart, but to keepe companie with the rest of the fleet, vntill it were past ZACYNTHVS; that so with their vnited forces they might more safely passe by their enemies countries: wheras otherwise, if any thing should by his hastie departure fall out otherwise than well, it should be imputed to the dishonor of him that had for-

The commanders of the Christian fleet of diuers opinios for giuing of the Turkes battell.

The christian fleet returneth vpon the foule disagreement of the commanders

ſaken his friends, and not of them that were ſo by him forſaken. But vnto this *Auria* anſwered, G
That the welfare of the kingdomes of SICILIE and NAPLES, conſiſted in the ſafetie of this fleet: and that therfore hauing haſt home, he could not ſtay to keepe companie with their heauie galeaſſes and other ſhips of burthen, which muſt oftentimes be towed forward. This he openly pretended for his departure, yet ſecretly ſought (as it was deemed) to find an occaſion whereby to withdraw himſelfe (being as he accounted the better man at ſea) from the command of *Columnius*, whereunto he was full ſore againſt his will ſubiect.

After they had thus a while ſpent the time with reaſoning the matter too and fro, *Auria* of himſelfe without farther leaue hoiſed ſaile, and ſo at length came to MESSANA in SICILIE, neither did *Columnius* and *Zanius* ſtay in thoſe quarters long after him, but hauing endured much trouble at ſea, arriued at laſt, *Columnius* in ITALIE, and *Zanius* at CORCYRA. Thus this mighty fleet, which had all this Sommer filled the Mediterranean with all the countries thereabout with the expectation of ſome great matter, was by the diſcord of the Generals diſſolued, hauing done nothing at all worth the remembrance. In this idle expedition many thouſands of right valiant men loſt their liues, being dead of diuers diſeaſes proceeding of change of diet, and vnſeaſonableneſſe of the weather in that hoat climat; amongſt whom was the valiant countie *Hieronimus Marteningus* ſent by the Senat with three thouſand ſouldiors, for the defence of FAMAGVSTA; who alſo moſt of them periſhed in that voiage. The Venetian fleet was no ſooner arriued at CORCYRA, but *Auguſtinus Barbadicus* was ſent from the Senat to diſcharge *Zanius* the Admirall of his office, and to ſend him priſoner to VENICE: in whoſe roome was placed *Sebaſtianus Venerius* Gouernour of that iſland. I

Zanius the Venetian Admirall diſcharged of his office, and ſent in bonds to Venice.

The Turks Baſſaes at ſea, certainely aduertiſed of the departure of the Chriſtian fleet, were not a little prowd thereof; as by the confeſſion of their enemies, their betters. Yet for as much as the ſeas began then to grow rough, and no enemie appeared, they thought it to no purpoſe to keepe the ſeas with ſo great a fleet, and therefore reſolued to leaue *Muſtapha* with his armie in CYPRVS, the next yere to make an end of his conqueſt ſo happily begun; and ſeuen gallies at ſea before FAMAGVSTA, that no reliefe ſhould that way be brought into the citie, and ſo to depart themſelues with the reſt of the fleet to Winter in more ſafer harbours: *Piall* with the greater part of the fleet to CONSTANTINOPLE, and *Haly* with the reſt to the RHODES. And becauſe they would for their greater credit prepare ſome worthie preſent for their great lord and maſter *Selymus*, they fraughted a great gallion of *Muhametes* the chiefe Baſſaes, and two other K
tall ſhips, with the richeſt of the ſpoile of NICOSIA, and the choice of the priſoners there taken. But when they were now readie to hoiſe ſaile and depart, as they were carrying out of the gallion certain barels of gunpounder which *Muſtapha* the Generall had commaunded for his better prouiſion to be landed, a noble gentlewoman captiue in the gallion, wiſhing rather to die with honour than to liue diſhonoured, ſecretly fiered the pouder: by force wherof, the ſame gallion with the other two ſhips were ſuddenly rent in pieces, and all that was therein blowne vp into the ayre. Of all that were in thoſe three veſſels, none eſcaped with life but the maſter of the gallion and two Chriſtian captiues, but there periſhed togither with the rich ſpoile. But the Baſſaes following their former reſolution departed from CYPRVS, and afterwards in ſafetie arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE: where both then and all the Winter following, ſuch preparation was L
in making, as if *Selymus* had the next yeare purpoſed ſome far greater matter than the conqueſt of CYPRVS.

A deſperat fact of a woman.

Whileſt *Sebaſtianus Venerius* (now the Venetian Admirall) yet lay at CORCYRA, the rude Acroceraunian people, more famous for nothing than for their theft, and want of all things, by truſtie meſſengers promiſed to deliuer into his power the ſtrong caſtle of CAYMERA, kept by a garriſon of three hundred Turks, if he himſelfe with a few gallies and a conuenient number of footmen would come into the bay of AMBRACIA; offering him good hoſtages for the better aſſurance of their promiſe. Of which their offer he gladly accepted, and forthwith went to the appointed place with a companie of horſemen, three thouſand footmen, and certaine gallies; who were no ſooner landed, but that preſently a thouſand of thoſe rough mountaine people M
came vnto them: with which power taking the hill, and repulſing the Turks garriſon; comming to the reliefe of the caſtle, he ſo diſcouraged them that were in the hold, that the next night they let themſelues downe with ropes into the valley below; but being deſcried, were there all either taken or ſlaine. And ſo in a verie ſhort time was that ſtrong caſtle taken by the Admirall, and a

The ſtrong caſtle of Caymera taken by Venerius

ſtrong,

A ſtrong garriſon of Chriſtians put into it in ſteed of the Turkes.

Not long after, *Quirinus* the Viceadmirall, a man of great courage, landed with foure and twentie gallies in PELOPONESVS neere the bay of MAINE, and there vpon the ſudden both by ſea and land beſieged a ſtrong caſtle, which the Turks but two yeres before had built to trouble the Chriſtians paſſing that way. Which caſtle he tooke in fiue houres, and put to the ſword fiue hundred Turks which lay there in garriſon, and raſing it down to the ground caried away with him foure and twentie great pieces of artillerie into the Iſland of ZACYNTHVS. *Quirinus taketh a caſtle of the Turks in Peloponeſus.*

At ſuch time as *Muſtapha* before lay at the ſiege of FAMAGVSTA, *Bragadinus* Gouernour of the towne, with *Baleonius* a moſt expert captaine, from out of the high places of the citie beholding the great armie of the Turkes (which couered the ground almoſt as far as they could ſee)
B with their cunning manner of their fortification, were therewith much moued: and therefore thought it good betime to giue the Senat knowledge thereof, and in ſo great a danger to craue their aid. And that their requeſt might be of more weight and haue the better hearing, they entreated *Hieronimus Ragazonius* biſhop of the citie, a reuerend and deuout man, to take vpon him that charge, vnto whom they ioined *Nicholas Donatus*, a noble gentleman of CYPRVS. The biſhop at the firſt was verie vnwilling to go, as loath in ſo great danger to leaue his flock: but at length ouercome with the entreatie of the Gouernour, and teares of the beſieged, ſuffered himſelfe to be entreated. And embarked in a gallie about the going downe of the Sunne, looſing out of the hauen, and hoiſing ſaile, with a faire gale of wind paſſed through the Turks fleet, which
C then lay at anchor before the citie; and by the comming on of the night, and by the great way he made, got him quickly out of ſight. After foure daies ſayling he came to CRETE, and ſo at length to VENICE: where, as he had before vnto the Admirall, ſo there vnto the Senat he declared the dangerous eſtate of the citie, the ſtrength of the enemie, the weakneſſe of the defendants againſt ſo great a multitude, and the want of many things needfull for the holding out of the ſiege: and to be briefe, that except they ſent ſpeedie reliefe, the citie could not be kept. *Zanius* at that time Admirall, carefull for the beſieged, cauſed foure tall ſhips to be laded with all maner of victuall, and a great quantitie of gunpouder, and put into them ſeuenteene hundred ſelect ſouldiors: all which he ſent from CRETE to the reliefe of them of FAMAGVSTA, appointing *M. Antonius Quirinus* with twelue of the beſt gallies in all the fleet, to conduct the ſame thither. This *Quirinus* was a moſt valiant and expert captaine, meanely diſcended, but by ſeruice
D growne to be a man both of great reputation and wealth: and therefore *Zanius* at his departure to VENICE, although he knew the matter required haſt, yet preſuming vpon his wiſedome and careſulneſſe, left it to his diſcretion, when, and how to performe that piece of ſeruice. *Quirinus* (not without cauſe) doubting to ſet forward, the ſeas as then full of the Turks gallies, ſtaied vntill Winter was well ſpent, and then ſetting forward the ſeuenteenth of Ianuarie, kept aloofe from the ſhips, which with a proſperous wind came directly before FAMAGVSTA: in hope, that the Turks gallies which lay in the mouth of the hauen, might ſo be drawne farther into the ſea, in hope of ſome good bootie, he himſelfe ſtaying with his gallies in place conuenient out of ſight. Neither had the euent deceiued his expectation, had not his fierce nature hindred the ſame: *Quirinus a valiant gentleman* 1571
E for the Turks vpon the dawning of the day deſcrying the ſhips, made haſtily toward them. But *Quirinus* not able longer to ſtay himſelfe, and before deſirous to fight with them, ſhewed himſelfe too ſoone in the open ſea before the enemie was come neere the ſhips: whom as ſoone as the Turks had ſeene, and that there was no hope to withſtand him, they ſtaied their oares, and with all ſpeed retired. But *Quirinus* following faſter vpon them, they were glad for ſafegard of their liues, with all the power they could, to run three of their gallies aground, and to run to ſhoare themſelues: which three gallies, *Quirinus* did with his great ordinance beat all to pieces, and ſore gauled the other foure. The hauen thus cleared, he returned againe vnto the ſhips, and brought them with the ſupplie in ſafetie to FAMAGVSTA; vpon whoſe arriuall was great reioicing, both amongſt the garriſon ſoldiors & the citiſens: for the Turks thought nothing leſſe than
F that the Chriſtian gallies durſt at that time of the yere haue put into thoſe dangerous ſeas: which *Quirinus* well knowing, came forth againe with his gallies, and roaming vp and downe at his pleaſure, tooke two of the enemies ſhips richly laded comming vnto the camp, with which bootie he enriched his ſouldiors: and farther incited by occaſion, landed his men in diuers places alongſt the ſea coaſt in PAMPHILIA, and there did great harme. So hauing filled the countrey with the terrour and fame of his name, he returned againe to FAMAGVSTA, where he notably

encouraged the garriſon ſouldiors, perſuading them to remember their wonted valour: and fil- G
ling them with hope, that the Chriſtian fleet would be with them in the beginning of the next Sommer, to deliuer them from their enemies, and to raiſe the ſiege. So hauing in twentie daies diſpatched that he came for, and done what good ſeruice elſe he could, he departed from FAMAGVSTA, and within fiue daies after arriued at CRETE.

Negligence ſeuerely puniſhed by Selymus.

It was not long, but *Selymus* had knowledge of this late ſupplie put into FAMAGVSTA, and of the harmes done by *Quirinus*; wherwith he was ſo highly diſpleaſed, that he commanded the Gouernor of CHIOS his head to be ſtruck off, and the Gouernor of the RHODES to be diſgraced, whoſe charge it was to haue kept thoſe ſeas ſo that nothing ſhould haue bin conueied into FAMAGVSTA. Neither ſpared he *Pial Baſſa*, but depriued him of his Admiraltie, and placed *Pertau Baſſa* Admirall in his ſtead, for that he had not the yere before diſcomfited the Chriſtian fleet at H
the iſland of CRETE, as it was ſuppoſed he might haue done.

From the beginning of this warre, the Venetians, with *Pius Quintus* then Pope, who greatly fauoured their cauſe, had moſt earneſtly from time to time ſolicited *Philip* king of SPAINE, to enter with them into the participation and fellowſhip of this war; which their requeſt ſtanding in deed with the good of his ſtate, he ſeemed eaſily to yeeld vnto: and therefore ſent *Auria* his Admirall the laſt yeare with his fleet to aid them, but with ſuch ſucceſſe as is before declared. As for to ioine with them in perpetuall league and confederation (as it was tearmed) againſt the common enemie, that he referred vnto the diſcreet conſideration of the two Cardinals, *Granuellan* and *Pace*, and *Io. Zunica* his embaſſadour, ſent for that purpoſe to ROME: promiſing to performe whatſoeuer they ſhould on his behalfe agree vpon or conſent vnto. At the ſame time, and I
for the ſame purpoſe lay alſo *Surianus* the Venetian embaſſadour at ROME: vnto whom the Pope ioyned Cardinall *Morone*, *Aldobrandinus*, and *Ruſticucius*, with certaine other of the chiefe Cardinals, as men indifferent to both parties, to moderate and compoſe ſuch differences and difficulties as ſhould ariſe betwixt the aforeſaid commiſſioners for the king, and the Venetians, concerning the intended league, But theſe graue men, ſent from ſo great princes about ſo great a matter (as well there could not be a greater) were no ſooner met togither and ſet in conſultation, but that forthwith they began to iarre about the capitulations of the league. Neceſſarie it was thought, that a league ſhould be agreed vpon againſt ſo puiſſant & dangerous an enemie, but to find the way how the ſame might be concluded to the contentment of all parts, ſeemed a matter almoſt impoſſible. Oftentimes theſe commiſſioners ſat, but the oftener the farther K
off: if one difficultie were by the diſcretion of ſome appeaſed, in ſtead therof at the next meeting ariſe three others. The chiefe commaund of the armie to be raiſed, the proportion of the forces, the maner of the war, with many other ſuch like circumſtances incident to ſo great actions, made great differences among them: but moſt of all, the indifferent proportioning of the charge, the Spaniſh commiſſioners ſeeking to turne the greateſt part thereof vpon the Venetians, & the Venetians vpon them: which was done with ſuch earneſtneſſe and ſtudie of euery man towards his owne part, as if they had all there met for the bettering of the particular ſtate from which they were ſent, rather than for the common good: For the Spaniard, who in former time was glad to keepe the frontiers of his large dominions in ITALIE, SICILIE, SARDINIA, CORSICA, L
MAIORCA, MINORCA, yea and of SPAINE it ſelfe, with ſtrong garriſons for feare of the Turke: now that the warre was riſen betwixt the Venetians and him, and the daunger therof tranſlated farre off into other mens territories; enioyed now in his owne an vnwonted quietneſſe, to the great content of his ſubiects, & eaſing of his own charge in maintaining of ſo many garriſons as before: whereof many were now thought needleſſe. Beſides that, he by the indulgence of the Pope, raiſed ſuch great ſummes of money vpon his cleargie, as was thought by many ſufficient to diſcharge the charge of the warre: For which cauſes he cared not for entring into any farther league with the Venetians, but as it were in courteſie to ſend them a yearely aid to maintaine a defenſiue lingering war, & ſo to keepe the Turke buſied vpon the Venetian a far off from his owne territories. But the Venetians, in whoſe dominions the fierce enemie daily raged, as wel in DALMATIA as in CYPRVS, were euen for the ſame reaſons moued to haſten and M
ſhorten the war, that the Spaniard was to protract it: for beſide the neernes of the danger, & the infinit calamities by thē ſuſtained, their yearly reuenues ariſing for moſt part of their cuſtomes, were gteatly empaired, and their traffique (the maintenance of their State) almoſt quite cut off; which cauſed them more earneſtly to confederat themſelues with the Spaniard. But hard it was

to

A to ioine in one, States ſo far differing in reſpect of their particular profit, and almoſt by nature contrarie. Thus was all the laſt yeare, and a great part of this alſo, ſpent by the aforeſaid commiſſioners in turbulent and fruitleſſe conferences, but nothing as yet concluded concerning the league: which troubled the Venetians not a little, being of themſelues too weake for ſo mightie an enemie as was *Selymus*, and yet no other certaine ſtrength from their friends to reſt vpon. But whiles they ſtood thus doubtfull of the league with SPAINE, and quite out of hope of any attonement with *Selymus*; vpon the ſudden when they leaſt expected, it was by good fortune laid as it were in their laps, to make choice whether they would (as they had before moſt earneſtly deſired) ioine in league with the Pope and the king of SPAINE, or elſe fall to agreement with *Selymus*: and that by this meanes.

B *Muhamet* the chiefe Baſſa, a ſecret friend vnto the Venetians, of whom he had been of long time honoured, had no great liking of the proſperous ſucceſſe of *Muſtapha* in CYPRVS, and therefore deuiſed night and day how to croſſe the riſing of him, the competitor of his honour; and withall, to help the Venetians vnto whom he was much beholden. He by ſecret meſſengers had before oftentimes ſounded the mind of the Venetian embaſſadour, and put him in hope that if ſute were made vnto *Selymus* for peace, it would vndoubtedly be graunted; and farther promiſed, to be himſelfe an helper and interceſſor for the ſame. But finding the embaſſadour to caſt many perils, and to giue ſmall credit vnto their talke, who had before by truſting them deceiued him: he did not ſo giue ouer the matter, but referring the farther tempering with him vnto a more fitter time, for the preſent he tooke opportunitie to enter into diſcourſe with *Selymus* C himſelfe concerning the Venetians, and told him that it was reported, That they wearie of the long altercation they had had with the Spaniards concerning the league, and now deſtitute of all hope & aid, would now happily of their own accord grant him that which they had before to him denied. And perceiuing him not vnwillingly to heare ſo of them, he proceeded farther in the matter, to know his pleaſure what he would haue done therein: cunningly by the way of good counſell perſuading him vnto that which he moſt wiſhed himſelfe to be done. Immediatly after he ſecretly aduertiſeth *M. Antonius* the Venetian embaſſadour, That there was great hope of peace, and that therfore the Senat ſhould vnder the colour of exchanging of priſoners, and redeeming of merchants goods, ſend ſome fit man to CONSTANTINOPLE, with whom he would in ſecret confer of all ſuch matters as might farther the pacification. This vnexpected D newes from the embaſſador brought to VENICE, was well heard of the Senat: for they thought it much to concerne their State, to haue a way opened whereby vpon tollerable conditions to make peace with the mightie tyrant, if that the league betwixt them and the king of SPAINE could not be concluded. Hereupon they made choice of one *Iacobus Ragazonius* to go about the matter to CONSTANTINOPLE. This *Ragazonius* was a man of great ſpirit and dexterity of wit to take any matter in hand, and of a great reach and deepe iudgement in the managing thereof; and withall exceeding rich, and of ſo good carriage of himſelfe, as that he was therfore famous: all which things were thought of great moment, to win the fauour of that couetous and barbarous nation. The Senat, although they had not yet made proofe what men thought of the matter, yet doubted they not, but that vpon the report of the ſending of this notable man, E men would thereof diuerſly diuine euery man according to his own fantaſie: and that many of the wiſer ſort would indeed ſurmiſe, as the truth was, that he was ſent for to intreat of peace, although the exchange of priſoners, and redemption of merchants goods, were the onely things were openly pretended: and the Senat, although they thought it not amiſſe to haue it ſo vnderſtood, becauſe ſuch a ſuſpition was like enough to ſtir vp both the Pope and the *Spaniard* to accept of ſuch conditions of the deſired league, as they had before reiected; yet leaſt the hope of the league (which they for many cauſes thought good to cheriſh) thereby cut off, might cauſe the Pope and the *Spaniard* both to be cold in the matter, they certified both them and other Chriſtian princes, of the ſending of *Ragazonius*; yet of purpoſe concealing the ſecret drift of his going. *Ragazonius* throughly inſtructed by the *Senat*, was in a gallie conducted to RAGVSIVM; which F *Caſſan-beg* (the great Baſſa *Muhametes* ſonne, Gouernour of LIBVRNIA) vnderſtanding, met him vpon the frontiers, and told him, That he was ſent by his father both to meet him and ſafe conduct him: which the martiall man, contrarie to the manner of the Turks courteoully performed, honourably entertaining him, and afterward ſending him with a ſafe conuoy vntill hee was out of all danger. *Ragazonius* comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, was there by night ſecretly

Muhemet Baſſa a ſecret friend vnto the Venetians, putteth them in hope of peace.

The Venetians ſend an embaſſadour to Selymus to entreat with him of peace.

Ragazonius the Venetian embaſſadour commeth to Conſtantinople.

cretly receiued into the citie, and at firſt brought into a little baſe Inne, and a guard ſet ouer him G
that he ſhould ſpeake with no man. But after three daies hee was remooued to a much better
place, and preſented with diuers kinds of daintie diſhes of ſundrie kinds of meats. The effect of
his meſſage was, to trie the Turkes minds, and after conference had with the embaſſador to en-
treat of peace. At length hauing acceſſe to the great Baſſa *Muhamet*, after he had deliuered vn-

The conference betwixt Muhamet the great Baſſa, and Ragazonius.

to him (as he had in charge) his meſſage concerning the exchange of priſoners and merchants
goods; *Muhamet* asked him, if he had nothing in charge from the Senat concerning a pacifica-
tion to be made? Wherunto he anſwered, that he had, but that he muſt firſt ſpeake with the em-
baſſadour, without whoſe aduice and counſell he was not of himſelfe to do any thing. At that
firſt encounter the Baſſa to terrifie the meſſenger, declared vnto him the innumerable multitude
of the Turks horſemen and footmen, which no nation (as he vainely boaſted) was able by force H
or policie to withſtand: alſo his great and inuincible fleets at ſea, with whom all the power of
the Chriſtians vnited togither, was not able to encounter; and much other ſuch like ſtrength and
wealth of his: and that the Venetians were now no more able to withſtand *Selymus*, than they
were in times paſt to reſiſt his father and his anceſtors. Yet he diſcourſed of this matter in ſuch
ſort, as not thereby to cut off the hope of the pacification: but ſaid, That the Venetians ſhould
beſt haue prouided for the ſafetie of their ſtate, if at the firſt they had liſtened vnto him, friendly
and faithfully aduiſing them not to haue entred into armes, in which doing they ſhewed more
courage than power: and that yet, as the caſe now ſtood, and that *Selymus* was in a moſt aſſured
hope, in ſhort time to become lord and maſter of the whole iſland, it ſhould bee to their great
good to preferre the fauour and good will of the Turks before war, and by the voluntarie yeel- I
ding vp of CYPRVS gaine vnto themſelues perpetuall peace and tranquilitie. As for the iſland
it ſelfe, it was not now worth the hazarding of ſo many dangers, being deſtitute of inhabitants,
which were almoſt either ſlaine or fled, the cattell driuen away, the townes ranſackt and burnt,
and the whole countrie, of late moſt pleaſant and beautifull, now ſo ſpoyled & vnpeopled, that
it could not of long time yeeld vnto him that ſhould haue it, any profit or commoditie. *Raga-
zonius* being a coole and aduiſed man, and withall perceiuing that the Baſſa was not to be con-
traried in his talke, ſo tempered his anſwere, as that he ſhewed no token of feare, neither let any
word fall that might offend his eares, ſaying, That he was right glad, that he had found ſo much
fauour in his ſight, as to haue acceſſe and leaue to talke with ſo great a prince, who for wiſedome
and grauitie excelled all the reſt of the princes of the great emperors court: who ſo farre as he K
might, with his loyaltie towards his ſoueraigne, had alwaies moſt gratiouſly fauoured the Ve-
netian ſtate: who alſo not ignorant of the vncertaintie of worldly things, knew of all others beſt
that on both ſides were both men and armes, and that moſt mightie princes had oftentimes with
ſmall forces bin ouerthrowne, the euent of things neuer deceiuing men more than in matters
of warre; no power vpon earth being ſure, which could not within ſome bounds containe the
ſtrength of it ſelfe: and that therefore he was in good hope, That he ſo worthie a man knowing
beſt what belonged both to peace and warre, would deuiſe ſome ſuch courſe as might ſort to
the good and quiet both of the Venetian ſtate and Turkiſh empire: in which doing hee ſhould
find ſufficient matter for his eternall praiſe and glorie, if by his diſcreet wiſedome a pacification
might be made. Such talke hauing paſſed at their firſt meeting, *Ragazonius* had leaue to ſpeake L
with the embaſſadour, who then lay at PERA vnder ſafe keeping. In paſſing ouer to PERA, *Ra-
gazonius* might ſee a fleet of Turkiſh gallies one encountering with another, in manner of a fight
at ſea, which the Turks had of purpoſe prouided, to ſhew vnto him as a ſtrange ſight. Whereat
Ragazonius ſmiling, ſaid vnto the Turks that were preſent with him, That it was a pretie childiſh
ſport for him that had neuer ſeene the like before: but not to the Venetians, who were acquain-
ted with theſe matters in earneſt; as the Turks ſhould well know, whenſoeuer they had a mind
to make proofe what they were able to do at ſea. *Ragazonius* comming to the embaſſadour, had
conference with him at large, & reſolued with him what to do in his negotiation. And ſo retur-
ning to *Muhamet*, eaſily diſpatched with him for the exchange of priſoners & marchants goods:
but when they came to talke of the capitulations of a pacification to be made, at the firſt they M
were ſo farre off, as if they would neuer haue met: but after much and often conference, ſome-
time the one yeelding, and ſometime the other, the matter was brought to ſome conformitie, ſo
that there was no ſuch great difference betwixt them, but that they were like ynough to haue
agreed. *Pius* the Pope, and *Philip* the king of SPAINE aduertiſed of the ſending of *Ragazonius*

to

A to CONSTANTINOPLE, began to imagine as the truth was, that hee was ſent about ſome treatie of peace, what colour ſoeuer the Senat pretended to couer the ſame. And therefore doubting leaſt the Turkiſh emperour hauing once made peace with the Venetians, ſhould turne his great forces already prepared, vpon the one or both of them, they thought it good for troubling of that peace, now with all ſpeed to haſten the league, which they had ſo long before delayed. For which purpoſe the Pope ſent the noble *Colampius* to VENICE: who admitted into the Senat, declared at large how matters had paſſed at ROME concerning the league: and afterwards what profit might ariſe of ſuch a league concluded, and what harmes might enſue of the ſame, neglected. And to haſten the matter, ſet as it were before their eies, how much it concerned the common good, but them eſpecially, to haue the ſame with ſpeed confirmed. As for to giue any
B truſt vnto the Turks, was (as he ſaid) not beſeeming their deepe wiſedome and iudgement, ſeeing they ſo often had beene by them rather deceiued than vanquiſhed. In concluſion, he requeſted them, That for his Holineſſe ſake, moderating in ſome part their hard demaunds, they would with ſpeed ioyne with him and the king in a moſt firme and Chriſtian league. Although this ſpeech of *Columnius* had much moued the minds of the Venetians, ſo that many enclined to the league, yet were there many doubtfull thereof, and could not be reſolued whether it were better to embrace peace with the Turke, or the league with the Pope and the king. Peace pleaſed them, neither did the league diſpleaſe them: it ſeemed a matter moſt difficult whether to reſolue vpon. They were fearefull of the league either receiued, or reiected: the hope of victory, the inconſtancie of the Turkes, their owne ſtrength at ſea, the large promiſes of the Chriſtian princes, the cer-
C taine hope of the league, and vncertaintie of the peace, perſwaded them to embrace the league. On the other ſide, the bad ſucceſſe of the yeare before, their forces ſhaken, and almoſt ſpent in CYPRVS, the ſuſpected and doubtfull faith of their confederates, with the vncertaintie of the ſucceſſe, induced them to preferre the hoped peace before the league. So the Venetians in ſuſpence betwixt both, gaue the embaſſadour daily more doubtfull anſwers than other: neither by promiſe binding themſelues, neither by flat deniall cutting off the hope of the league, by examples & arguments rather refelling what was by others alledged, than any way declaring what they themſelues thought. Sometime they alleadged ſuch things as might make a man beleeue, that they were willing to ioyne in league, and by and by againe they would ſeeme neither to re-
D iect nor accept of the ſame. In which doubtfulneſſe many daies paſſed. At length the matter being propounded in the Senate, there found not vnlike diſpoſition of minds that it had amongſt the meaner ſort: for ſome of the Senatours enclined to the league, whoſe reaſons were grounded not vpon profit only, but vpon credit and honour alſo, which they wiſhed to be chiefly regarded: declaring alſo what great ſecuritie, honor, and glory ſhould redound vnto them, by entring into ſuch an honourable league. But the remembrance of former loſſes, the ſtrength of the Turke poſſeſſing a great part of the world, compared vnto their owne, the terrour of the enemies name, the feare of euill ſucceſſe, the ſmall hope of preuailing, induced others to like better of peace: whoſe opinion was alſo confirmed by this, That the confederation with thoſe Chriſtians, was of no more aſſurance or continuance than the Turks peace: Beſides that, they alledged,
E That leagues were therfore of leſſe aſſurance, for that confederations and amities were ſeldome or neuer ſincerely & faithfully kept on both ſides, euery man commonly ſeruing his own turne, without care of other men. They alſo ſet as it were before their eyes what great occaſions, euen ſmall ſuſpitions might giue princes to breake their leagues, what ſtrange effects the feare of the loſſe of goods, or ſome part of their territorie might worke. After this ſo weightie a matter had been thus with great contention throughly debated on both ſides in the Senat, it was at laſt put to voices: and ſo by the conſent of the greater part the league was as more honorable receiued, and the Turkes peace reiected: and a decree of the Senat to that effect made. *Rugazonius* by ſe-
F cret letters from the Senat vnderſtanding of all theſe matters, began to deale more warily with *Muhamet* the great Baſſa in matter concerning the pacification, and more hardly to yeeld to his demaunds; and propounding many difficulties of purpoſe deuiſed, requeſted of him, That he might by his good leaue returne to VENICE, to be reſolued of many things by the Senat, whereof he was not able himſelfe to iudge, and ſo to returne to him againe with more certaine inſtructions: aſſuring him, that the Senat would vpon knowledge of the conditions of the peace do and deuiſe many things for the furtherance of the ſame: which could not ſo well bee done by letters, as if hee were there himſelfe preſent to reſolue them vpon euery particular. This his re-

The Pope and the K. of Spaine fearing leaſt the Venetians ſhould make peace with the Turk, haſten the confederatiõ

The Venetians reſolue to accept of the league with the Pope and the king.

queſt

queſt obtained, he with great ſpeed got him out of CONSTANTINOPLE: but was ſcarcely got G
out of the gates, when report of the league which the Venetians had made with the Pope and the king of SPAINE, was brought vnto the Court, and had in ſhort time filled the citie: Which made all the way as hee trauelled more troubleſome, and fruſtrated that alſo which was before concluded concerning the exchange of priſoners and marchants goods. *Ragazonius* being come to VENICE, declared at large in the Senat the drift and purpoſe of the Turke, and what conference he had had with the great Baſſa, and in what forwardneſſe the peace was: for which his diſcreet carriage of the matter, his wiſedome was highly by the whole Senat commended, and hee himſelfe afterward honourably rewarded.

A perpetuall league cõcluded betwixt the Pope, the K. of Spaine, and the Venetians.

In the meane time the commiſſioners at ROME after long conſultation concluded a league, which they would haue to bee perpetuall, as well for inuaſiue as defenſiue warres againſt the H
Turke: and was by ſolemne oath confirmed by the Pope, the king of SPAINE, and the Venetian Senat the foure and twentith day of May, in the yeare 1571. For the execution of which league, it was agreed vpon, That the ſea & land forces ſhould conſiſt of two hũdred gallies, an hundred ſhips, fiftie thouſand footmen, and foure thouſand fiue hundred horſemen; with a proportionat quantitie of great artillery, victuals, & other things neceſſary, to be euery yeare ready in March, or at fartheſt in Aprill, to meet together at ſuch place in the Eaſt, as ſhould be vnto them for that purpoſe appointed; to be employed as the Admirals ſaw cauſe, and as the preſent ſtate of things ſhould require. For maintenance of which charge it was agreed, That the king of SPAINE

The proportioning of the charge of the warres againſt the Turke: and the other capitulations of the league.

ſhould defray the one halfe, and the other halfe to be diuided into three equall parts; whereof the Venetians ſhould beare two parts, and the Pope the third; which if it ſhould be too heauie for him, then that remained by him vndiſcharged, to be diuided into fiue parts, whereof the I
king was to diſcharge three, and the Venetians two. The charge thus proportioned, they tooke order alſo for the prouiſion of victuals, to bee at a reaſonable price taken vp in any the confederats dominions, where the army or fleet ſhould chance to ſtay: yet ſo, that it ſhould be at the king of SPAINE his diſcretion, out of his kingdomes of NAPLES and SICILIE, firſt to take his prouiſion for the victualling of GVLETTA, MALTA, and his owne nauie. It was alſo agreed, That if the king of SPAINE ſhould at any time, when as the confederats had no common war, inuade ARGIERS, TRIPOLIS, or TVNES, that then the Venetians ſhould of their owne charge, aid him with fiftie gallies well appointed: As alſo, that the king ſhould in like manner and with like forces aid them, as oft as they ſhould by the Turks be inuaded. But if it ſhould fortune the K
Romane territorie to be inuaded, that then the aforeſaid princes ſhould be bound with all their forces, to the vttermoſt of their power, to defend thoſe places, and the perſon of the Pope. And that in managing of the confederate warre, the three Admirals ſhould conferre together of all matters, and whatſoeuer the greater part ſhould agree vpon, that to be reputed as agreed vpon by them all: That *Don Iohn* of AVSTRIA, *Charles* the fifth his naturall ſonne, and brother to the king, ſhould haue the chiefe commaund of the forces both at ſea and land: but not to diſplay his owne enſigne, but the common enſigne of the confederats: Alſo, that ſuch places as ſhould bee gained from the Turke by the confederate armie, ſhould be deuided amongſt the confederate princes, excepting TVNES, ARGIERS, and TRIPOLIS, which ſhould remaine onely to the king of SPAINE: That all controuerſies ariſing amongſt the Generals ſhould be decided by L
the Pope, vnto whom the Venetians ſhould lend twelue gallies, furniſhed of all things ſauing men and victuals, which the Pope ſhould of his owne charge ſupplie: which gallies at the end of the warre hee ſhould againe deliuer, in ſuch caſe as they then were: That an honourable place ſhould be left for *Maximilian* the emperour, the French king, the king of POLONIA, and the king of PORTINGALL to enter into this league, whom with the reſt of the Chriſtian princes it ſhould beſeeme the Pope to ſtir vp in ſo good a quarrel: And that it ſhould not be lawfull for any the aforeſaid confederat princes to entreat of peace, or enter into league, without the knowledge and conſent of the other confederats. And for the better proceeding of all things, it was agreed, That euer in Autumne the confederate princes ſhould by their embaſſadours at ROME conſult of the next yeares warres, and according as the time and occurrents ſhould M
require, to determine, whether their forces were to bee encreaſed or diminiſhed. This league thus at length with much adoe concluded, was not long after in Iune with great pompe and triumph openly proclaimed in ROME, VENICE, and SPAINE, to the great ioy of the greateſt part of Chriſtendome.

The league proclaimed.

Whileſt

A Whileſt theſe things were in doing, the Venetians the more to entangle the Turke, thought it good to make proofe, if they might by any meanes ſtirre vp *Tamas* the Perſian king to take vp armes againſt him: who as hee was a prince of great power, ſo did hee exceedingly hate the Turkes, as well for the difference betwixt the Perſians and them about matters of their vaine ſuperſtition, as for the manifold iniuries he had oftentimes ſuſtained. There was one *Vincent Alexander*, one of the Secretaries for the State; who hauing eſcaped out of priſon at CONSTANTINOPLE, was but a little before come to VENICE, a warie wiſe man, and of great experience, who for his dexteritie of wit, and skilfulneſſe in the Turkiſh language, was thought of all others moſt fit to take in hand ſo great a matter. He hauing receiued letters and inſtructions from the Senat, and furniſhed with all things neceſſary, trauelling through GERMANIE, POLONIA; and
B the forreſts of MŒSIA, in Turkiſh attire, came to MONCASTRON, a port towne vpon the ſide of the Euxine or blacke ſea, at the mouth of the great riuer Boriſthenes: where hee embarked himſelfe for TRAPEZOND, but was by a contrarie winde driuen to SINOPE, a citie of great trafficke; from whence he trauelled by rough and broken wayes to CVTAY, keeping ſtill vpon the left hand, becauſe he would not fall vpon any part of the Turks army (which was then marching towards CYPRVS through all thoſe countries) neuertheleſſe he fell vpon a part thereof, from which he with great danger rid himſelfe, being taken for a Turk, and by blind and troubleſome wayes, through rockes and forreſts arriued at length at ERZIRVM, a ſtrong citie of the Turks, then vpon the frontiers of the Turks dominions toward the Georgians. This iourney of *Alexanders* was not kept ſo ſecret, but that it was vented at CONSTANTINOPLE by a ſpie,
C who vnder the colour of friendſhip, haunting the Venetian embaſſadours houſe at PERA, had got certaine knowledge of the going of *Alexander* into PERSIA. Whereupon certaine courrours were ſent out with all ſpeed to beſet the three ſtraight paſſages into PERSIA, whereby it was ſuppoſed he muſt of neceſſitie paſſe, with certain notes alſo of the fauour of the man, of his ſtature, and other markes, whereby he was beſt to be knowne. But he in ſo dangerous a countrie doubting all things, and fearing ſuch a matter, leauing his company behind him, with incredible celeritie poſted from ERZIRVM to TAVRIS, and was a great way gone before the Turkes currors came into thoſe quarters: who yet hearing of him, followed after as farre as they durſt, but could not ouertake him. *Alexander* comming to TAVRIS, vnderſtood that the court lay at
CASBIN, about twelue dayes iourney farther vp into the countrey; comming thither, the foure-
D teenth of Auguſt of this yeare 1571, he chanced to meet with certaine Engliſh marchants, with whom he had been before acquainted: by whoſe helpe he not onely got to ſpeake with *Ayder Tamas* the kings third ſonne, but learned of them alſo the manners and faſhions of the Perſian Court, and how to beare himſelfe therein. The Perſians by reaſon of the intollerable heat doe moſt of their buſineſſe at that time of the yeare by night. Wherefore *Alexander* about midnight brought in to *Aider*, declared vnto him the cauſe of his comming: and the next night admitted vnto the ſpeach of his aged father, deliuered his letters of credence, & in the name of the Senat declared vnto him, with what perfidious dealing *Selymus* the Turkiſh emperor was about to take away CYPRVS from the Venetians, with what greedineſſe and pride he had ſet vpon the Chriſtians, and that diſcharged of that warre, he would of all likelihood ſet vpon the Perſians;
E hauing the ſelfeſame quarrell vnto the Perſians that he had vnto the Venetians, that is, an ardent and inſatiable deſire of ſoueraigntie: a ſufficient cauſe for the greedy Turke to repute euery king the richer that he was, the more his enemie. After that, ſetting foorth to the full the proweſſe of the Chriſtians, the wonderful preparation they had made both at ſea and land, he perſuaded the king with all his power to inuade the Turke, now altogether buſied in the warres of CYPRVS; and to recouer againe ſuch parts of his kingdome as *Solyman* the father of *Selymus* had taken from him. Warres he ſaid were more happily managed abroad than at home: that ſithence he alone (the Chriſtian princes all then at quiet) had withſtood the Turkes whole force and power, he needed not now to doubt of his moſt proſperous ſucceſſe, the Chriſtian princes now ioyning with him: That he was much vnmindfull of his former loſſes and wrongs, if he thought he en-
F ioyed an aſſured peace; which he ſhould find to be nothing els but a deferring of war vnto more cruell times: and that the Turke if he ſhould ouerrun CYPRVS, would forthwith turne his victorious armes vpon him: The end of one warre was (as he ſaid) but the beginning of another; and that the Turkiſh empire could neuer ſtay in one ſtate; and that hee would obſerue not the Turkes words, but his deeds; and how that the *Othoman* emperours according to the opportunitie

The venetians themore to trouble the Turke, ſeeke to ſtir vp Tamas the Perſian king to take vp armes againſt him.

Alexander the Venetiã embaſſadour hath audience with the Perſian king.

tunitie of the times, vſed by turnes, ſometime force, ſometime deceit, as beſt ſerued their purpo- G
ſes: That no princes had at all times by diſſembled peace and vncertaine leagues more de-
luded ſome, vntill they had oppreſſed others. Hee wiſhed alſo, that at length this his cunning
dealing might appeare vnto the world: and that princes would thinke, that being combined
together, they might more eaſily ouercome the Turke, than being ſeperated, defend their
owne: That in former times ſometime will, ſometime occaſion, was wanting to them to vnite
their forces: and that therefore they ſhould now combine themſelues for their common good
againſt the common enemy: That it concerned no leſſe the Perſians than the Chriſtians, to
haue the power of the Turke abated: and that this taking vp of armes, ſhould be for the good of
the Perſian king howſoeuer things ſhould fall out; if well, he ſhould then recouer what he had
before loſt, with much more that was the Turkes: if otherwiſe, yet by voluntarie entring into H
armes to countenance himſelfe, and to giue the Turks occaſion to think that he feared him not:
which was (as he ſaid) the onely way to preſerue their common ſafetie, which would be vnto all
the confederat princes eaſie enough, if they thēſelues made it not more difficult than the power
of the enemy. The ſpeech of the embaſſadour was willingly heard: wherunto the king anſwe-
red, that he would conſider therupon what he had to doe: and in the meane while, a faire houſe
was appointed for the embaſſadour and his followers, and bountifull allowance appointed of
the kings charge. Hee was alſo many times ſumptuouſly feaſted by the noblemen, whom hee
ſtill requeſted to be mediatours vnto the king, to take that honourable warre in hand. The king
had at that time a ſonne called *Iſmael*, a man of a great ſpirit, whom he then kept in durance, for
that hee with too much inſolencie made roades into the frontiers of the Turkes dominions, to I
the diſturbance of the league his father had before made with the late Turkiſh emperor *Solyman:*
vnto him *Alexander* hauing acceſſe, was of him courteouſly heard; who fretting and languiſh-
ing for verie griefe of reuenge vpon the Turkes, wiſhed, that either the king his father had his
mind, or he himſelfe the power of a king: and ſaid, That if euer it were his good fortune to ob-
taine the kingdome, he would in deed ſhew what hee then in mind thought. But of him more
ſhall be ſaid hereafter. Whileſt this matter went more ſlowly forward in the Perſian court than
the embaſſadour would haue had it, newes was brought vnto the court, of the great victorie
which the Chriſtians had much about that time obtained of the Turkes at ſea: vpon which occa-
ſion the embaſſadour ſolicited the king more earneſtly than before, to make himſelfe partaker
of the victorie of the Chriſtians, by entring into confederation with them, and by taking vp of K
armes; rather than to hold vncertaine friendſhip with the Turks in their miſeries, by whom hee
had been ſo often wronged. This he ſaid was the onely time for the Perſian king to recouer his
former glorie, the like offer whereof would neither often chance, neither long ſtay: and that if
he ſuffered ſo fit an opportunitie to ſlip away, he ſhould afterwards in vaine wiſh for the ſame,
when it were too late. This ſo wholeſome counſell was well heard, but preuailed nothing to ſtir
vp the aged king: who then troubled with rebellion in MEDIA, or wearie of the former warres
he had had with the Turke, and glad of ſuch peace as he had then with him, anſwered the em-
The anſwere of Tamas the Perſian king vnto the Venetian embaſſadour. baſſadour, That for as much as the Chriſtian princes had made a perpetuall league amongſt
themſelues, he would for two yeares expect the euent, and afterward as occaſion ſerued, ſo to
reſolue vpon peace and warre. This improuident reſolution of the king, brought afterward vn- L
profitable and too late repentance vnto the whole Perſian kingdome; when as within a few
yeares after, all the calamities which the Senat had by their embaſſadour (as true prophets) fore-
told, redounded vnto the great ſhaking thereof. For the Cyprian warre once ended, and peace
concluded with the Venetians, *Amurath* the ſonne of *Selymus* ſucceeding his father in the Tur-
kiſh empire, inuading the Perſian king, tooke from him the great countrey of MEDIA, now cal-
led SILVAN, with a great part of ARMENIA the great, and the regall citie of TAVRIS, as ſhall be
hereafter in due place declared. At which time the Perſian, who now refuſed to take vp armes, or
ioyne in league with the Chriſtian princes, repented that he had not before hearkened vnto the
wholſome counſell of the Venetians: and taught by his owne harmes, wiſhed in vaine, that the
Chriſtian princes would againe take vp armes and ioyne with him againſt the Turke. M

Muſtapha Baſſa returneth to the ſiege of Famagoſta. *Muſtapha* the great Baſſa and Generall of the Turks armie, furniſhed of all things that could
bee deſired for maintenance of his ſiege; and ſouldiors in great number daily repairing vnto
him out of CILICIA, SYRIA, the Leſſer ASIA, and the countreys thereabout, beſide great
ſupplies brought vnto him by *Haly Baſſa* from CONSTANTINOPLE; inſomuch, that it was
thought

A thought he had in his army two hundred thouſand men: began now that Winter was paſt, in the latter end of April, to draw neerer vnto FAMAGVSTA, & with incredible labor to caſt vp trenches and mounts againſt the citie, of ſuch height, that the defendants from the higheſt places of the citie could ſcarcely ſee the points of the Turks ſpeares, or tops of their tents, as they lay encamped: which was no great matter for the Baſſa to performe, hauing in his campe fortie thouſand pioners alwayes ready at his command.

The citie of FAMAGVSTA is ſcituat in the Eaſt end of the iſland, in a plaine and low ground betwixt two promontories, the one called S. *Andrewes* head, and the other the head of GRÆCIA. It is in circuit two miles, and in forme foureſquare; but that the ſide toward the Eaſt, longer and more winding than the reſt, doth much deforme the exact figure of a quadrant: it is al-
B moſt on two parts beaten vpon with the ſea, the other parts towards the land are defended with a ditch not aboue fifteen foot broad, a ſtone wall, and certain bulwarks and parapets. Vpon the gate that leadeth to AMATHVS ſtandeth a ſix cornered tower: other towers ſtand out alſo in the wall, euery of them ſcarce able to containe ſixe pieces of artillerie. It hath a hauen opening toward the Southeaſt, defended from the iniurie of the weather by two great rockes, betwixt which the ſea commeth in by a narrow paſſage about fortie paces ouer, but after opening wider giueth a conuenient harbour to ſhips, whereof it cannot containe any great number, and was now ſhut vp with a ſtrong chaine. Neere vnto the hauen ſtandeth an old caſtle with foure towers, after the auncient manner of building. There was in the citie one ſtrong bulwarke, built after the manner of the fortification of our time, with paliſadoes, curtaines, caſamets, and ſuch
C like, in ſuch manner, as that it ſeemed almoſt impregnable. All which, although they made ſhew of a ſtrong and well fortified citie, yet for that there wanted many things, it was thought too weake long to hold out againſt the great power of the Turke: but what wanted by reaſon of the ſituation and weake fortification, that the Gouernour and other noble captaines ſupplied in beſt ſort they might, with a ſtrong garriſon of moſt valiant ſouldiours, the ſureſt defence of ſtrong places. There was in the citie two thouſand and fiue hundred Italians, two hundred Albanois horſemen, before entertained by the Gouernour; and of the Cypriots themſelues were muſtered two thouſand and fiue hundred mo, all men reſolutely ſet down to ſpend their liues in defence of their countrey.

The deſcription of Famaguſta.

The number of the defendants of Famaguſta.

Muſtapha with wonderfull celeritie hauing brought to perfection his fortifications, planted
D his batterie of ſixtie foure great pieces; amongſt which were foure great baſiliskes of exceeding bigneſſe, wherewith hee continually without intermiſſion battered the wals of the citie in fiue places, but eſpecially that part of the wall that was betweene the hauen and the gate that leadeth to AMATHVS. And with great morter pieces caſt vp huge ſtones, which from high falling into the citie, with their waight brake downe the houſes they light vpon, and fell oftentimes through their vaults, euen into the bottom of their ſellars, to the great terrour of the beſieged. The wals in diuers places ſore ſhaken, and the houſes beaten downe, he began to aſſault the citie: which the defendants (their forces yet whole) valiantly repulſed, and not only defended their wals and draue the Turkes from the breaches, but furiouſly ſallied out vpon them, and hauing ſlaine and
E wounded many, wonderfully diſturbed their fortifications, & abated their courage: neither did the enemy with greater fury maintaine the battery or aſſault, than did the Chriſtians the defence of the citie, ſtill ſending their deadly ſhot into the thickeſt of that great multitude; inſomuch that in few daies the Baſſa had loſt thirtie thouſand of his men: and the captaines themſelues wondering at the valour of the defendants, as if they had not now to do with ſuch Chriſtians as they had before ſo oftentimes ouerthrowne, but with ſome other ſtrange people, began to deſſpaire of the winning of the citie. The Turks thus doubting, and almoſt at a ſtand, the Chriſtians in the meane time made vp their breaches with earth, baskets, wool-ſacks, and ſuch like, not ſparing their very beds and bedclothes, cheſts, carpets, and whatſoeuer elſe might ſerue to fill vp the breach. Amongſt many wants they feared, the greateſt was the want of pouder, which with continuall ſhooting began greatly to bee diminiſhed: wherefore to reſerue ſome part thereof
F againſt all extremities, they thought it beſt whileſt yet ſome ſtore was left, to vſe the ſame more ſparingly, and to ſhoot more ſeldome. But the Turkes ſtill drawing neerer and neerer the citie, and caſting vp mounts higher than the wals of the citie, with earth and fagots filled vp the ditch: which done, they of the broken ſtones made walls on either ſide, to ſaue themſelues from the flankering ſhot of the Chriſtians; then giuing a freſh aſſault, they vſed not onely their ſhot and other

Famaguſta aſſaulted & notably defended by the Chriſtians.

Famaguſta againe aſſaulted by the Turks.

other miſſiue weapons, but came foot to foot, and notably fought in the breach hand to hand. G
Which manner of fight(as if it had been ſo agreede vpon) they euery day maintained for the
ſpace of ſixe houres. And although the Turkes by reaſon of their multitude were diuided into
many parts, and freſh men ſtill ſucceeded them that were wearie; yet ſuch was the courage of
the defendants,that euery man requeſted to haue the places of moſt daunger,and from thence
with conragious hand repulſed the Turkes with exceeding great ſlaughter. But for all that, the
furious enemie maintaining the aſſault not onely by day,but by often alarums in the night alſo,
kept the Chriſtians continually in doubtfull ſuſpence & readineſſe,as if they ſhould haue recei-
ued a preſent aſſault: and aſſoon as it was day,with freſh men that had ſlept their fill,deſperatly
aſſailed the chriſtians almoſt ſpent and maigre for lacke of ſleepe and reſt. Force not preuailing,
the reſtleſſe enemy leauing nothing attempted, by a queint deuiſe was like to haue taken one of H
the gates of the citie: There was growing in the iſland great plentie of a kind of wood much of
the nature of the firre or pitch tree,eaſie to be ſet on fire,but hardly to be quenched,but differing
in this, that in burning it gaue foorth ſuch a noyſome ſmell,as was not by any man well to be
endured: of this kind of wood the Turkes brought a wonderfull quantitie to one of the gates
called Limosina, which once ſet one fire, could not by the defendants by any meanes quen-
ched,although they caſt whole pipes and tunnes of water at once into it; but moſt terribly bur-
ning cloſe vnto the gate by the ſpace of foure daies,with the vehemencie of the heat and loath-
ſomneſſe of the ſmell,ſo troubled the defendants,that ſcarce any of them could endure to ſtand
vpon the wall,but forſaking the ſame,were euer and anone like to haue giuen the enemie leaue
to enter. I

Bragadinus encourageth the defendants.

Bragadinus the Gouernour, more carefull of the common ſafetie than of his owne danger,
ceaſed not ſtill to be going about from one place to another,telling the Italians, That now was
giuen the fitteſt occaſion they could deſire for them to ſhew their valour in, and to gaine great
honor of their barbarous enemies: that it would be to their eternall glory,if by their only means
without any other helpe,the citie ſo farre off from the reliefe of the Chriſtians might be defen-
ded,and the great power of the Turke defeated: This (hee ſaid) was the onely time wherein it
ſtood them moſt vpon to play the men; for if they could keepe that little was left,the reſt of the
iſland would be eaſily recouered: and although the Turks armie exceeded farre in number,yet
did they excell them in proweſſe and valour; where by a fewe,and as it were but an handfull of
men,had oftentimes preuailed againſt moſt infinit multitudes: Now all the eyes of the world, K
as well friends as foes to be fixed vpon them, ſo that if they held out againſt ſo great a power,
both their enemies would admire their valour, and all Chriſtendome extoll their inuincible
courage and proweſſe; and that they themſelues ſhould therby reape both great profit and ho-
nour: Neither that any thing could be alleadged, why they ſhould not be compared with the
worthie knights of Malta, who to their eternall fame had deliuered themſelues out of the
mouth of the Turke,and left vnto the world a moſt faire example for men valiantly to ſtand in
ſo good a quarrell vpon their owne defence: Nicosia (he ſaid) was loſt rather by the cowar-
diſe of the defendants,than by the valour of the enemie. He alſo praiſed the fidelitie and cou-
rage of the Græcians,who for any feare or danger could neuer be remoued from the Venetians,
or induced to ſubmit themſelues vnto the Turkes gouernment: and perſwaded them, with the L
ſame reſolution to defend their owne citie that they ſaw in the Venetian ſouldiors, fighting for
them; and for their owne honour to ſtriue with the Italians,in defence of their State,their coun-
trey,their wiues and children, againſt the tyrannie of the Turkes; for as much as aid would in
ſhort time come,and ſet them free from all danger. The Senat alſo in like manner had ſent let-
ters to Famagvsta, willing them to bee of good cheere,and yet a while to hold out the ſiege,

Baleonius a valiant captaine.

and that they ſhould be in ſhort time relieued. *Baleonius* alſo Generall of the garriſon ſouldiors,
himſelfe in armes was preſent at euerie skirmiſh,carefully foreſeeing what was in euerie place
and at all times to be done;and by encouraging of his ſouldiors,and aduenturing of his perſon,
ſhewed himſelfe to be both a worthy commander,and valiant ſouldior. Neither did the ſouldi-
ors alone, but euen the women alſo what they might,ſtriuing aboue the power of the ſtrength M
both of the minds and bodies; ſome bringing meat, ſome weapons vnto the defendants, and
others ſtones,beds,cheſts,& ſuch like ſtuffe to make vp the breaches. But victuals beginning now
to wax ſcant,8000 of the vulgar ſort of the people were turned out of the citie,who all in ſafety
were ſuffred to paſſe thorow the midſt of the Turks army, to ſeeke their liuing in the countrey.

Thus

A Thus whileſt open force preuailed not according to the Turkes deſire, they began in foure places to vndermine the citie, in hope to haue found entrance. But the defendants doubting ſuch a matter, by diligent liſtening, and great veſſels ſet full of water neere vnto the wals, and drums laid vpon the ground, by the mouing thereof diſcouered their works, and with countermines fruſtrated thoſe of the enemies: yet in ſo great a ſtir and hurly burly, all things were not poſſibly to be diſcouered. Whereby it came to paſſe, that whileſt the defendants were altogither buſied in defending the wals; a mine not perceiued, was ſuddenly blowne vp neere vnto the tower ſtanding vpon the hauen: by force whereof, a great part of the wall therabout was in a moment with a moſt horrible noiſe ouerthrowne. With the fall thereof, the Turkes thinking the citie as good as taken, with an horrible ſhout & outcrie mounted the wall, and in the breach
B ſet vp their enſignes; Countie *Peter*, who had the charge of that part of the wall, being not now able to defend the ſame, ſo ſodenly ouerthrown: which *Neſtor Martinengus* quickly perceiuing, came ſpeedily from his owne ſtation, to repulſe the enemie now readie to haue entred. The fight became there moſt fierce and terrible: on the one ſide, hope; on the other, deſperation enraged their minds: the Turks were in hope, that if they forced themſelues but a little, they ſhould forthwith win the citie; and the defendants propounded nothing vnto themſelues, but ſhamefull death and torture, fought as men altogither deſperat. The Turks truſted to their multitude, and the Chriſtians to their valour. In the meane time, *Andreas Bragadinus* with certaine great pieces aptly placed, out of the caſtle ſlew a number of the Turks, as they were comming to the breach. *Baleonius* hearing of the danger, came in haſt with a companie of couragious ſouldiors
C to relieue them that were fighting at the breach, and chearing vp his followers, thruſt himſelfe with the formoſt into the face of the breach: and there not only appointed what was to be done, and with cheerefull ſpeeches encouraged his ſoldiors, but with his owne hand hauing ſlaine many, tooke one of the Turkes enſignes (when as he had before ſlaine the bearer thereof) and tumbled him headlong into the ditch. With the ſight whereof, others encouraged, both on the right hand, and on the left, made there a notable battell, as men fighting for their laſt hope. In fine the Turkes were glad to retire, leauing behind them foure thouſand carkaſes of their ſlaine fellowes in the towne ditch, with fourteene of their enſignes, which were brought into the citie. Neither was this victorie gained without ſome loſſe of the Chriſtians: about an hundred were ſlaine, among whom were *Robertus Maluetius*, *Dauid Nocius*, *Celſus Feto*, *Eraſmus Firmo*, all
D captaines.

The Turks freſh to vndermine the citie.

The breaches notably defended.

For all this they in the citie tooke ſmall reſt, the Turks great ſhot ſtill thundring in amongſt them; and that in ſuch furious ſort, as that in one day (which was the eighth of Iune) were numbred about fiue thouſand great ſhot, ſhot into the citie. With which continuall batterie, one of the round bulwarks of the towne was ſo ſhaken, as that a part of the front thereof was fallen downe into the ditch, and another part ſtood leaning readie to fall; in ſuch ſort, as that it was not longer to be defended: which the Chriſtians perceiuing, preſently vndermined the ſame bulwarke, and in the mine placed certaine barrels of gunpouder. The Turkes comming to aſſault the place they had ſo ſore battered, the defendants after ſome ſmal reſiſtance faigned themſelues to retire for feare, ſo to draw the enemie the faſter on; who was no ſooner come to the place de-
E fired, but that fire being put to the mine, blew vp the bulwarke with all them that ſtood thereon: of whom, ſome were ouerwhelmed with the earth it ſelfe, otherſome were blowne vp into the aire, and falling downe againe miſerably periſhed; and otherſome, ſhot as it were out of a gun, fell downe a great way off, and ſo were rent in pieces: which was vnto the defendants a moſt pleaſant fight. About ſix hundred of the Turkes periſhed at this aſſault, amongſt whom were *Muſtapha* Generall of the voluntarie ſouldiours, and *Feregates*, a man of great marke amongſt the Turkes. But by the haſtie fiering of the mine, there periſhed alſo about an hundred of the Chriſtians, ouertaken in their owne deuiſe, amongſt whom were alſo ſome of great account.

They of Famagusta blow vp one of their own battered bulwarks, with ſix hundred Turkes thereon.

The Turkes enflamed with their loſſes, were more enraged with the ſpeeches and perſuaſi-
F ons of *Muſtapha* their Generall; who moſt earneſtly exhorted them with one conſent to aſſaile their enemies, now driuen into a corner of the iſland, ſpoiled all their countrie, truſting more vnto the ſtrength of the place than of themſelues, entreating for nothing more than with their liues to depart thence. But what place (ſaid he) is there impregnable for the Turks? NICOSIA, ZIGETH, and ſuch other ſtrong townes woon, what are they but the monuments and teſtimo-

nies of the cowardiſe of the Chriſtians, and the proweſſe of the Turks? This day (ſaid he) will confirme all your former labours and victories; which you before vndertooke for honour, but here ſhall you haue honour mixt with gold, and prey ſufficient to make you all rich. The Turks encouraged with this ſpeech of their Generall, as men forgetfull of all dangers, began a more terrible ſiege than euer before: and hauing with incredible labour made three great mines, and blowing them vp, ouerthrew a great part of the wall with the caſtle, the notable defence of the hauen: which done, they with all their force oftentimes aſſailed the citie, as if it ſhould haue bin their laſt labour; neither ceaſed they ſo to do night or day. At which time alſo, that part of the citie which is beaten vpon with the ſea, was aſſaulted by them in the gallies alſo.

Famagusta hardly aſſaulted

The poore Chriſtians ſpent with deadly wounds, continuall labour, perpetuall watching both night and day, and now brought to ſmall number; hardly withſtood the furious enemie, aſſailing them in ſo many places at once, and held out that tempeſt rather with courage than ſtrength. In the meane time the enemies armie encreaſed daily, the Turkes in hope of the like ſpoile they had at NICOSIA, continually repairing out of the countries round about vnto the campe. The Chriſtian captaines ſeeing their men with continuall aſſaults ſore ſpent; inſomuch, that how many ſoeuer they ſeemed to be, there was not aboue three hundred ſound men left, but ſeuen barrels of pouder remaining, want of all things daily increaſing, hope of aid ſtill decreaſing, and the Venetians (their only comfort) ſo far from them; the captaines (I ſay) themſelues, began to quaile in courage: and the rather, for that ſuch reliefe as was ſent from VENICE, could not poſſibly be brought vnto them, but ſtaied at CRETE, the Turkes gallies ſtill lying before FAMAGVSTA; ſo that nothing could in ſafetie be brought thither. This feare of the captaines themſelues, could not long be hid or diſſembled, but that it was by the citiſens perceiued: who hauing neither power to hold out the ſiege, neither place left to flie vnto, ouercome with neceſſitie, came flocking to the Gouernor, crauing of him aid and comfort, and with abundance of teares beſought him in this common deſperation, to take compaſſion on them, their wiues and children, a people that had alwaies ſo well deſerued of the Venetian State. Their wals (they ſaid) were beaten downe, their bulwarks ouerthrowne, the few ſouldiours that remained, ſpent with wounds, watching, and famine; the enemies ſtrength encreaſing daily, ſo that they muſt needs in ſhort time all periſh with the ſword, if the citie were by force taken: wherfore they beſought him, that yeelding to neceſſitie, which no power was euer able to withſtand, hee would at laſt while time yet ſerued, prouide for the ſaftie of ſo faithfull and kind a people, and not to refuſe any conditions, how hard ſoeuer.

The citiſens of Famagusta requeſt the gouernour in time to yeeld vp the city

The requeſts and teares of the citiſens of FAMAGVSTA, with the due conſideration of the deſperat ſtate of the citie, moued *Bragadinus* to compaſſion; who comforting them in beſt ſort he could, perſuaded them to be of good cheere, for that he had care both of them & their ſtate, and would ſo prouide for them, as that they ſhould neuer repent themſelues of their fidelity and loialtie to the Venetian State. He in the meane time conſidering the greatneſſe of the daunger which preſently hung ouer all their heads, propounded the matter in a generall counſel called togither for the ſame purpoſe: wherein after a little debating of the matter, they all agreed to yeeld; onely *Baleonius* at the firſt diſſenting, as doubtfull of the Turkes faith, but afterwards yeelding vnto the opinion of the reſt. So an herauld being ſent vnto the Baſſa, a truce was token for certaine daies to parley in, and hoſtages on both ſides giuen: during which time, not ſo much as a dart was throwne, or an arrow ſhot from either ſide. After a few daies parley the conditions were agreed vpon, whereupon the citie ſhould bee yeeded into the power of the Baſſa, which were theſe: Firſt, that the inhabitants of the citie yet aliue, ſhould in ſafetie enioy their liues, libertie, and goods, with the free exerciſe of the Chriſtian religion: That the Gouernour with the reſt of the captains and ſouldiors might in ſafetie depart with bag and baggage, and at their departure to take with them fiue great pieces of ordinance, and three horſes, which ſoeuer it ſhould pleaſe them to make choice of: and that the Turkes ſhould ſafely conduct them into CRETE, finding them both victuall and ſhipping: all which things were with more kindneſſe promiſed, than with fidelitie preformed. Yet all theſe matters agreed vpon, and conceiued into writing, as alſo by ſolemne oath on both ſides confirmed: the Gouernur ſending a meſſenger before, requeſted that he might haue leaue to come to ſee the Baſſa, and to deliuer vnto him the keyes of the citie. Leaue being graunted, *Bragadinus* the Gouernour, *Baleonius*, *Andreas Bragadinus*, *Laurentius Theupolus* earle of PAPHOS, *Io. Antonius Quirinus*, *Aloyſius Martinengus*,

A parley betwixt them of Famagusta and the Turkes.

A *tinengus*, with a great sort of other captaines came into the campe: but before they entred into the Bassaes pauillion, they were commaunded to deliuer their weapons, which they all did. At the first meeting *Mustapha* entertained them courteously, and with many glorious words, as if it had beene in admiration, extolled their worthie valour and courage: saying, that he was glad now to know them by face, whose valiant minds he had before knowne by their most valiant deeds. Now, prowesse and valour seemed not onely in safetie, but also honoured euen of the enemie: when after a long discourse the false Bassa reuolued vnto the mischiefe and trecherie he had before resolued vpon: complaining that certaine of his men taken at the siege, had bin afterward against all reason and order slaine. Which the Gouernour and the rest vtterly denying, he start vp as in a rage, and with high words and sterne countenance vrging the fact, commaun-
B ded them all to be forthwith cast in bonds: and so bringing them out of his pauillion, in the sight of the armie, contrarie to his oath and promise, caused them all to be slaine. At which time *Bragadinus* and *Theupolus* were oftentimes commaunded to lay downe their heads, to haue had them strucke off: yet was their execution deferred, and their liues reserued, not to saue them, but with more exquisit punishment and torture to satisfie the barbarous crueltie of the faithles and vnmerciful tirant. The next day after, *Bragadinus* hauing his eares before cut off in despight, was brought forth to be wondered at, and tortured with the most extreamest kind of torture that tyrannie it selfe could haue deuised: for dispoiled of his iewels and attire, and a basket laid vpon his shoulders, filled with earth, he was enforced oftentimes to carie the same to repaire the ram-
C piers that were ouerthrowne; and euer as he passed by, the proud Bassa insulting vpon him to fall downe and to kisse the ground at his feet: and so buffeted with the Turks fists, & spurned as a dog with their feet, was in great derision and despight asked, Whether he hoped that Christ his God would come to helpe him or not? Which indignitie of it selfe bitter and miserable, the dignitie of the man made much more miserable: whose comely and stately countenance, with his long and reuerend beard, euen in that extreame miserie, added vnto him a certaine maiestie and grace. In this so foule a sight of vertue troden vnderfoot, the poore Christians could neither well stay their teares, nor let them fall, for feare of the displeasure of the Turks. But the forsworne Bassa, not only forgetfull of all humanitie, but enraged rather with extreame crueltie, caused that noble and worthie *Bragadinus* to be set in a chaire, and his skin to be flaine off from him
D quicke: a punishment vnworthie of him that suffered it, but most worthie him that inflicted the same. Yet in so grea[illegible] and horrible a torture he was not heard to let fall any word, not beseeming a faithfull Christian and the honour of his countrie: only he called vpon God for mercie, and detested the Turks perfidious trecherie, and so breathed out his life. But the tyrant worthie eternall infamie, not satisfied with the torture of the liuing man, caused the head to be cut from the dead bodie, and vpon the point of a speare to be set vp on a high place for all men to looke vpon. His skin also stuffed with chaffe, he caused to be hanged vp at the yards arme, and so to bee carried about: not so true a trophie of his victorie, as a testimonie of his perfidious and Turkish crueltie. Two daies after, countie *Theupolus*, after he had beene most shamefully entreated, full of the marks of the Turks crueltie, was (to make an end with all) shamefully hanged in the mar-
E ket place. With what crueltie the Bassa had tyrannised vpon the nobilitie, with the same he also raged vpon the meaner sort of the citisens, of whom some he slew, some he chained in the gallies, and carried away the rest into bondage. Three hundred Christians, some soldiors, some citisens, which came forth with the Gouernour to see the Turks campe, were there also all slaine. *Nestor Martinengus* a famous captaine, escaped the tyrants hands, being hidden by one of the Bassaes eunuchs, who by the helpe of a Greeke fisherman got to LEPTIS, and from thence to CRETE, and so afterwards to VENICE, where he faithfully reported to *Aloysius Mosenicus* the duke, the whole processe of that war, with the losse of the citie; and that in the space of threescore & ten daies there was aboue an hundred & fortie thousand great shot discharged against the citie. Such noblemen and gentlemen as escaped out of this so generall a slaughter, banished their countrie, and in miserie, dispersed without hope of returne, led afterward a miserable and
F vagrant life, though some of them euen at this day (as I haue been credibly informed) are by the Venetian state right well maintained. The countrie people and artificers were generally by the Turks spared, for the peopling of the countrie. This was the fatall ruine of CYPRVS, one of the most fruitful and beautiful islands of the Mediterranean: the losse wherof not without cause grieued many Christian princes, as sometime a kingdome of it selfe, and now a prouince of the

Bragadinus shamefully and horribly murthered by the faithlesse Bassa.

The forsworne Bassa tyrannizeth vpon the dead bodie of Bragadinus.

Theupolus hanged.

Nestor Martinengus by good fortune escapeth

Cyprus lost.

Turkiſh empire: our ſinnes, or the euill agreement of Chriſtian princes, or both, the cauſe ther- G
of I know not, neither if I did, durſt I ſo ſay.

Whileſt *Muſtapha* yet lay at the ſiege of FAMAGVSTA, the other two great Baſſaes *Partau* and *Haly*, the one the Admirall, and the other Generall of the ſoldiors (appointed by *Selymus* for the keeping of the ſea, that no reliefe ſhould be ſent by the Venetians to FAMAGVSTA, and further as occaſion ſerued to infeſt their dominions) about the middeſt of May arriued in EVBŒA with two hundred and thirtie gallies; whether *Vluzalis* viceroy of ALGIERS, with diuers other the Turks notable pyrats, reſorted vnto them with their gallies. With this fleet departing from EVBŒA, and ſayling alongſt the coaſt of MYSIA, IONIA, CARIA, and ſo directly toward the RHODES, they were met with thirtie gallies moe of the Turks aduenturers. After that, hauing left certaine
The Turkes arriue in Crete with a great fleet. gallies for to lie before FAMAGVSTA, they directed their courſe for the iſland of CRETE, and the H
thirteenth of Iune put into the bay of AMPHIMALEA, now called SVDA, and there landed twelue thouſand men.

The deſcription of Crete. The iſland of CRETE, now called CANDIA, is greater than CYPRVS, but leſſer than SICILIA or SARDINIA: but for fertilitie comparable with any of the iſlands of the Mediterranean. It was in auncient time famous for many things, but eſpecially for an hundred cities which therein ſtood, as witneſſeth amongſt others *Seneca: Vrbibus centum ſpacioſa Cretæ*, but at this day it hath only three: CANDIA, a colonie of the Venetians, whereof the iſland now taketh name, CANEA, and RHETIMO. The circuit of the iſland is fiue hundred and twentie miles: full of hils: for which cauſe the people of the countrie are much delighted in hunting. In it is no nauigable riuer or venomous beaſt. It is now moſt famous through a great part of the world, I
for the good Malmeſey which there groweth, and is from thence in great abundance ſent into many far countries. Therein alſo groweth great plentie of Cypreſſe trees, ſeruing for the vſe of ſhipping. It is at this day ſubiect to the Venetians. The Turkes being landed, and ranging
The Turkes driuen out of Crete vp and down the countrie, did what harme they poſſibly could, burning and ſpoiling all as they went: vntill that at laſt they were vpon the ſudden encountered by *Franciſcus Iuſtinianus*, who but a little before their landing was come into the iſland with a thouſand ſoldiors; and now ioining with the iſland people, notably charged them, being altogither diſperſed and ſeeking after prey: and hauing ſlaine many of them, enforced the reſt to retire to their gallies. The next day the Turks landing againe in greater number, burnt diuers townes, and ranſacked SETIA and RHETIMO, where they tooke a rich prey, and carried away many priſoners: but loded with K
their bootie, diſperſed, and fearing nothing leſſe than to be at that time ſet vpon, they were aſſailed by *Lucas Michael* a valiant captaine, two thouſand of them ſlaine, and with the loſſe of their bootie and priſoners glad to retire vnto their gallies. Thus repulſed from CRETE, they tooke their courſe to CYTHERA, ZATHINTHVS, and CEPHALENIA, iſlands ſubiect to the Venetians: where beſide other harmes by them done, they caried away with them ſix thouſand poore Chriſtians into moſt miſerable captiuitie.

Departing thence, and ſayling alongſt the coaſt of EPIRVS, they came to SVPPOLO, an hauen towne in EPIRVS, which *Venerius* in the beginning of theſe warres had taken from the Turkes, but was now againe by them recouered. After that, they came to DVLCIGNO, which the Turkes had but but a little before beſieged by land, for that the Gouernor therof and of AN- L
TIVARI (another towne of the Venetians vpon the frontiers of DALMATIA) had compacted with three hundred Epirots, to ſtir vp the countrie to rebellion, and to reuolt to the Venetians: for the effecting whereof the Epirots requeſted of the Venetians ſix thouſand ſouldiours to make head, which the Venetians promiſed to ſend them. Whereupon the aforeſaid Epirots forthwith tooke vp armes, and raiſed moſt part of EPIRVS into rebellion: vnto whom was ſent at the firſt one captaine with an hundred Italians from CATORA. But when the Epirots
A faire occaſion let ſlip. vainly expecting the promiſed aid, ſaw themſelues on euery ſide hardly beſet with their enemies; deſpairing of any good ſucceſſe, they yeeded themſelues to the mercie of *Achmetes Baſſa*, *Selymus* his great lieutenant in GRÆCIA (who to repreſſe that ſo daungerous a rebellion, was come thither with an armie of foureſcore thouſand Turkes:) ſo was a moſt faire occaſion loſt, when as M
the reſt of the Epirots, enflamed with the hope of libertie, were readie to haue come vnto their friends, alreadie in armes, and by their example like ynough to haue raiſed all GRÆCIA into rebellion. But now deceiued of their expectation, bewailed their miſerie, and truſting in the promiſes of the Venetians, they had caſt themſelues and all theirs into moſt manifeſt danger. They

of

A of Dvlcigno seeing themselues hardly beset both by sea and land, sent to *Partau Bassa*, and couenanting with him, that they might in safetie depart, deliuered vnto him the towne: and so *Sara Martinengus*, Gouernor of the towne, with the garrison souldiors, were in foure ships conueyed in safetie to Ragvsivm: as for the citisens, promise was kept with them after the Turkish manner. In the same hurle the Turks tooke also the townes of Antivari and Bvdva. Antivari was both by situation and fortification strong, and furnished with a good garrison: neuertheless, *Alexander Donatus* Gouernour thereof, a man of no experience in martiall affaires, ouercome with the present feare, and despairing to be able to hold the towne, cowardly yeelded the same vnto the enemie. Which his beastly cowardise the Senat suffered not vnpunished, but confiscating his goods, and remooving him from the Senat, cast him into exile. From Anti-
B vari the Turks following their good fortune, departed with their fleet into the bay called Rizonicvs, but now the bay of Catharo, and both by sea and land laied hard siege vnto the strong towne of Catharo, called in auncient time Ascrivivm; against which they cast vp two great bulwarks, and planted thereon nine great pieces of artillerie, wherewith to haue battered the towne and the castle: but the defendants as resolute men sallying out, put them from their ordinance, and enforced them againe vnto their gallies.

Dulcigno, Antiuari, & Rudue, strong townes of the Venetians vpon the coasts of Epirus and Dalmatia, yeelded to the Turk.

Cowardise punished.

Whilest these things were in doing, *Vluzalis* and *Caracossa*, both men of great account and name amongst the Turkes, got leaue for ten dayes of the Admirall, with threescore gallies to spoyle the islands neere thereabouts, subiect to the Venetians. Who comming to the island of
C Cvrzola, about fourescore miles Eastward from Ragvsivm landed their men, with purpose to assault the towne of Cvrzola, of the same name with the island. Which *Anthonius Contarenus* the Gouernour thereof perceiuing, in the dead time of the night fled for feare out of the towne into the rockes and places of more safetie, after whom the townsemen followed also: so that in the towne were not left aboue 20 men, and about 80 women; who with weapons in their hands, after the rest were fled, came to the wals, as wishing rather there to die, than to fal into the hands of the barbarous enemie. But at such time as the Turkes began to approch the towne, and the women with stones, fire, & such weapons as they had, were beating them off, & with greater courage defending the place than was to haue beene in their sex expected, by the goodnesse of God a great tempest suddenly arose out of the North, which so outragiously tossed the gallies, that *Vluzalis* and *Caracossa* were glad to giue ouer the assault, and to get them thence into a place
D of more safetie. Sayling alongst the coast, they by the way spoiled Lysna, Bracia, and Lissa, little islands vpon the coast of Dalmatia, out of which they carried away with them 1600 poore Christians into captiuitie. These arch pyrats at their pleasure roming vp & down the sea, fortuned to light vpon a ship of the Christians bound from Messana to Corcyra, which they tooke; and in rifling therof found certain letters directed to the gouernor of Corcyra, certifying him of the leagne, then but lately concluded amongst the Christian princes: which letters they sent in post to *Selymus* to giue him knowledge therof, who thereupon writ to his Admirals, with all hostilitie to infest any of the dominions of the Christian confederats.

Curzola forsaken by the men, is defended by women.

Selymus aduertised of the league lately concluded betwixt the Christian princes.

The Turks fleet thus raging and raigning in the Adriaticke, brought a great feare not onely vpon the coasts of Dalmatia, Istria, and the islands thereabouts, which were by them most
E afflicted; but also vpon the sea coasts of Apvlia, and all alongst that side of Italie, yea & vpon the citie of Venice it selfe: insomuch that they were glad to fortifie as well the citie as the frontiers of their dominions, with new fortifications and garrisons; as did also the king, and the Pope in Italie: for why no ship or gallie could now looke out of any port, but it was presently surprised and taken by the Turks: which with the sundrie calamities before receiued, so confounded the Venetians, that they in their assemblies and consultations seemed rather to quake for feare, than after their wonted maner grauely to consult how the enemie was to be repulsed. Yet for the more safetie of their citie, and for feare least the Turks fleet should forcibly break in vpon them, they strongly fortified the passages through the rock or bank which defendeth the citie from the sea, and kept continually 12000 men in readinesse in the citie for the more assurance thereof.

F All the Turks fleet being againe met togither, *Partau* and *Haly* departed from Avlona the 26 of August, and sayled directly to Corcyra, which little island seemed to be compassed in round with the great enemies fleet. *Partau Bassa* at his first arriuall there, landed eight hundred horsemen and a thousand foot, who ranging vp & down the island did great hurt, and burnt the very suburbs of the citie: at which time the garrison soldiors sallying out vpon thē with a thou-

ſand horſemen and fiue hundred foot, ſlew a great number of them, and amongſt thereſt one G
Paphus Rays, a man of great name. Thus the Turks fleet hauing done wonderfull harme in the Venetian territorie, as well in the iſlands, as vpon the frontiers of DALMATIA, enriched with the ſpoyle of thoſe countries, and carrying away with them fifteene thouſand moſt miſerable captiues; departing from CORCYRA, arriued all in the bay of CORINTH, now called the gulfe of LEPANTO, where we wil for a while leaue them to ride in ſafetie.

The Turkes put into the bay of Lepanto.

The fierceſt of the confederat princes meet togither at Meſſana

AT ſuch time as this great fleet (the terrour of that part of Chriſtendome) firſt put into the Adriaticke, *Venerius* the Venetian Admirall then lying with fiftie gallies at CORCYRA, and fearing if he ſtayed there longer, to be enforced with ſo ſmall a power to fight againſt ſo ſtrong an enemie, or elſe ſo to be ſhut vp that he could not ioyne his forces with the Spaniſh fleet, which was daily expected: vpon the comming of the fleet departed thence to MESSANA H there more commodiouſly and more ſafely to attend the comming of *Don Iohn* of AVSTRIA Generall of the Spaniſh forces. At his comming, *Columnius* met him with twelue gallies (which the great duke of FLORENCE had ſent in the aid of the confederats) and three gallies of MALTA, who only were yet come thither, and with great honour receiued him. Not long after, *M. Antonius Quirinus* and *Antonius Canalis* came thither alſo with threeſcore and two gallies, before appointed by the Venetians for the reliefe of FAMAGVSTA, but now called backe againe to ioine with the reſt of the fleet: and in ſhort time the gallies of SICILIE arriued there alſo. At laſt after long expectation, in the latter end of Auguſt came *Don Iohn* with the Spaniſh fleet, a man then about foure and twentie yeres old, in whom wanted no honourable parts, his mothers blemiſh only excepted: who although he was moſt deere vnto his father *Charles* the fifth, yet I left he him nothing by his will, but onely at his death commended him vnto his ſonne *Philip*, as his brother. The Venetian and the Popes Admirals hearing of his comming, went to meet him, and that with ſuch triumph and ioy, that all the former heauineſſe before conceiued of his long ſtaying, was turned into gladneſſe, with moſt aſſured hope of triumphant victorie: their doubled forces, and two great fleets ioined in one, encouraged them aboue meaſure, filling all the Weſt with the expectation of ſome great matter. The Venetian fleet conſiſted of an hundred and eight gallies, ſix galleaſes, two tall ſhips, and a great number of ſmall galliots. Vnto them were ioyned twelue gallies of the Popes, of whom *Columnius* was Admirall. And with *Don Iohn*, the Generall, and *Auria* the Spaniſh Admirall came fourſcore and one gallies, of whom three were from the knights of MALTA. In this fleet, beſide marriners, were reckoned to be twentie thouſand fighting men: an armie not onely beautifull for ſhew, as conſiſting of moſt choice bodies; but indeed moſt ſtrong and puiſſant, old beaten ſouldiors almoſt throughout it, in euery place intermixed with others of leſſe skill: many knowne to be men of great experience, rich and luſtie bodies, were by name called forth to this ſo honorable ſeruice; and diuers other of great nobilitie, as well old men as yong & luſtie gallants, for the naturall hatred they bare vnto the common enemie, came and as voluntarie men cheerefully thruſt themſelues into that religious war: euery of which noble gentlemen, as they were greater by birth or power, ſo had they drawn after them a greater number of their fauorits and followers, ſtrong and able bodies, of their owne charge brauely armed; who ſought for no other pay for their paines and danger, but by ſome notable victorie to eterniſe their names, or honourably to ſpend their liues in ſo iuſt a quarrell, as L for the defence of the Chriſtian faith and religion. Amongſt theſe moſt honourable and reſolute men, were three of greateſt mark, *Alexander Ferneſius* prince of PARMA, in time to be the honour and glorie of ITALIE his natiue countrey, whoſe vntimely death in the low countries euen his honourable enemies lamented; and being dead, is not without cauſe and worthie deſert accounted amongſt the moſt politicke and famous leaders of our age. The ſecond was *Franciſcus Maria* prince of VRBIN, a yong man honourably deſcended & of an inuincible courage: and the third *Pau. Iordanus Vrſinus*, an honourable gentleman of the familie of the *Vrſini* in ROME.

Don Iohn of Auſtria.

Alexander Farneſius prince of Parma.

All the power of the confederat princes thus met togither at MESSANA, and all things now in readineſſe; a counſell was called by the General, to reſolue what courſe to take in thoſe moſt dangerous wars, againſt ſo puiſſant an enemy: vnto which counſel were admitted only *Don Iohn* the Generall himſelfe: and *Aloyſius Rechezenes*, of ſome called *Requiſenius*, great commendor of CASTILE, the Generals lieutenant, or rather director of his actions: *Sebaſtianus Venerius* the Venetian Admirall: and *Auguſtinus Barbadicus* Generall proueditour, of equall authoritie and reputation with the Admirall: and one ſecretarie: *Marcus Anthonius Columna* the Popes

M

Admirall,

A Admirall, with *Pompeius Colonna* his kinſman. The chiefe point whereon theſe great commanders were to reſolue was, Whether they ſhould aduenture the general fortune of a battel againſt ſo ſtrong an enemy, or onely ſeeke to defend the frontiers of their owne dominions? Which queſtion (as all other of like ſort) was of diuers diuerſly phantaſied; euerie man pleaſing himſelfe with his owne reaſons. *Requiſenius* (*Don Iohn* his chiefe counſellor, without whom he willingly did nothing, and vndoubtedly a man of great valour and experience) ſpeaking firſt, ſaid, That the enemies ſtrength was neceſſarily to be known, before they committed al to the fortune of a battell: and that therfore delay was to be vſed, leſt improuident haſt ouerthrew all. Matters of warre that were to be decided by the ſword, were (as he ſaid) with great and ſound aduiſe to be adminiſtred; for that the errours of battell, whereby all was to be put in hazard, were not to
B be againe amended. He highly commended the aduiſe of *Scipio Africanus*, who counſelled great commaunders, not to fight with the enemie but vpon ſome great Aduantage, or elſe thereunto forced by neceſſitie. But as things now ſtood, what opportunitie could be miniſtred or aduantage taken; the enemie keeping himſelfe cloſe within the bay of CORINTH, and no apparant meanes how to draw him out of from thence? Neither that he for his part was of ſo great ſpirit, as within the harbor in place of diſaduantage, without hope, to ſet vpon an enemy in common eſtimation ſtronger then himſelfe: for what diſhonour ſhould they incurre, if hauing receiued ſome notable loſſe, they ſhould be enforced with ſhame to giue ouer the enterpriſe begun? And to beſiege ORICVS, DIRRACHIVM, or CASTRVM NOVUM, frontier townes of the Turks,
C ſo to draw them out to battell; what were this other than to ſhew a certaine feare and diſtruſt in themſelues, and to diſcourage the minds of the ſouldiors? for as well the enemie as the common ſouldior would forthwith deeme ſuch a poore attempt to proceed of a meere feare, as to make a vaine ſhew of ſomething doing, when as they durſt not encounter the enemie in his full ſtrength. As for the other reaſon drawne from Neceſſitie: what neceſſitie had they ſo deſperatly to ſet vpon the enemie? who vpon the approach of Winter muſt needs in ſhort time lay vp his gallies: and being alreadie in ſafe harbor, would neuer be drawne to the hazard of a battell, eſpecially like hope, like ſtrength, and like daunger appearing on both ſides. Wherefore, it were beſt (in his opinion) onely to make a great ſhew of their forces, ſo to terrifie the barbarous enemie: but in no caſe to hazard the hope of the whole Chriſtian Common weale, vpon the for-
D tune of a battell. Hee farther alſo propounded vnto them, the vncertaine euents of things, the common chaunce of warre, the ſtrength of the enemie, as well by ſea as by land; with whom they themſelues were not (as he ſaid) in deed comparable: then, what an infinit heape of miſeries was like to ouerwhelme the Chriſtian common weale, if they ſhould in any thing miſcarry: And that therefore, ſafe aduiſe was in this caſe to bee preferred before that which was attended vpon with greater danger.

On the other ſide, the Venetians, who thought all delay both infamous and dangerous to their State, were farre of another opinion. Wherefore *Venerius* and *Barbadicus* not onely vehemently perſuaded, but moſt inſtantly requeſted the Generall and the reſt of the great commanders, that ſo ſoone as opportunitie ſerued, they would commit the matter to the triall of a battel, and not to make that counſell, which their couragious minds might make moſt glorious and
E fortunat, by declining of battell to become diſhonourable or fruſtrat. If deſire of honour (ſaid they) mooue vs not, ſhall neither theſe things mooue vs? the loſſe of ſo great and chargeable a preparation, the ſpoiling of our frontiers, and the inſolencie of our enemies, which we encreaſe by delay? We defend our ſelues and ours, we inuade not them: wee goe not about to driue the Turke out of his empire; but that wee our ſelues be not by him driuen out of our owne countries. Wherefore we ought ſo much the more readily and ſpeedily to thinke of battell, by how much the neceſſitie of him is greater that repulſeth a danger, than of him that offereth the ſame. What, are our weapons blunt, or our hands benummed? ſhall the Turkes ſo often preuoke vs, and we ſtill be vnreuenged? ſhall we alwayes ſhew our weapons, and neuer fight? one fortunat
F battell is able to blot out the infamie of former time, and to fill vs with the hope of future happineſſe: If nothing elſe, let the verie indignitie of the matter ſtirre vs vp to battell. And what doubt is there, but that the enemie ſwelling with pride, will come foorth with his fleet, and giue vs battell? Thinke you that a ſmall diſcredit will enſue to our honour and reputation, if contented with a vaine brag, hauing not once skirmiſhed with the enemy, or ſo much as ſeene him, wee ſhall returne home, to the generall ſhame of all Chriſtendome? See how many peſtilent incon-

The Venetians vrge battell.

ueniences

ueniences will enſue, if we ſhall take this courſe. This manner of proceeding, will fill all mens G
minds with diſpaire: the people will murmure, That they are to no purpoſe oppreſſed with exactions and tributs: the confederat princes (carefull of this war) will ſay, that they haue in vaine wearied themſelues with often embaſſages and care therof: the prowd enemy will account our departure, or declining of battell, for a manifeſt victory. The next yeare we may looke for him againe with a greater and a ſtronger fleet, which ſhall not onely make a more heauie warre, but deſtroy and beare downe all before it: at which time, who can aſſure vs that the Chriſtians ſhall haue the like preparation, if we ſhall now delay to fight? what labour is to be taken, what coſt to be beſtowed, to ſet forth againe ſo great a fleet? Vnto theſe cauſes which impoſe vpon vs a neceſſitie and force to fight, is adioyned not onely a ſingular regard of our honour, but a moſt notable opportunitie alſo offered: we neuer had a greater fleet, nor better furniſhed with men, H
munition, & all things elſe to be required for the gaining of a notable victorie: and who knoweth not, that the Chriſtian gallies are farre ſtronger than the Turkes? beſides that, the greateſt part of their beſt ſouldiors are in hope of prey gone into CYPRVS, who there ſeeking after the ſpoile, and forgetfull of the enemie, without controlment glut themſelues with the pleaſures of that rich iſland; whereby their fleet is ſo much the weaker. All which things, as they promiſe no hard victorie, ſo doe they propound vnto vs honour, glorie, fame, and moſt honourable rewards; and open vnto vs the way both for the defence of the preſent, and recouerie of that hath been before loſt. What then ſtand we ſtill looking for? or why do we not in Gods name ioine that battell, which is vnto vs not only neceſſarie, but profitable alſo.

Thus much ſaid, they began to intreat and beſeech the Generall and the reſt, not longer to I
ſuffer the Chriſtian common-weale to receiue loſſe vpon loſſe, but to repoſe their only hope in the good ſucceſſe of one worthie battell: and neuer to looke for the like opportunitie, if they let ſlip the preſent. This matter of ſo great conſequence, thus throughly debated amongſt the greateſt commaunders, they thought it good to heare alſo the opinions of other notable captaines, of no leſſe experience than themſelues (then in the fleet) before they would conclude any thing.

Cornea and Serbellio perſwade the giuing of battell.

Amongſt the reſt, *Anthonius Cornea*, and *Gabriel Serbellio*, both Spaniards, and for their great wiſedome and valour had in generall reputation of all men; being demaunded their opinions, with moſt ſubſtantiall reaſons, declared the neceſſitie of giuing battel, and that it was not ſo dangerous, as to be therefore ſhunned or delaied: For ſo much as that violent enemy was far eaſier to be dealt withall at ſea than by land; where hee muſt fight without his huge multitude of men, K
the Turks chiefe hope and only meanes whereby they haue obtained ſo many victories againſt the Chriſtians. And ſo concluded their opinions, with an effectuall perſwaſion to ſet forward to CORCYRA, and without delay as occaſion ſerued to giue the enemy battell. Which their opinion being generally well liked, was ſhortly after by the Generall and the reſt approued, and a reſolution ſet downe for the giuing of battell: which was no ſooner knowne, but there was a generall reioicing through the army, euery man cherefully preparing himſelfe to lay down his life in the publike defence of the Chriſtian common weale, and that with ſuch an earneſt deſire of battell, that euery day ſeemed now nothing elſe, but a delay of a moſt aſſured victorie.

The confederats put their fleet in order of battell.

Yet before they ſhould come into the ſight of the enemie, the three Admirals thought it L
good to bring foorth the fleet into the ſea, and there to martiall the ſame, in ſuch ſort, as if they ſhould euen then preſently haue ioyned battell: to the intent, that by ſuch orderly diſpoſing of their fleet, and by appointing vnto euery man his place he was to keepe, they might ſo acquaint them with the order of the battell, as that they ſhould when time ſerued (of themſelues without farther direction) martiall themſelues, and ſo more readily enter into battell. The next day the Admirals brought foorth their fleetes into the open ſea: in the right wing (which conſiſted of three and fiftie gallies) was *Auria* placed: in the left wing was *Auguſtinus Barbadicus* with the like number of gallies alſo: and in the middle battell ſtood the Generall with ſeuentie gallies: on the right hand of the Generall ſtood *Columnius*, and on the left *Venerius*, his aſſociats. Thus with equall front the fleet ſet forward, as if they ſhould euen preſently haue ioyned battell. Betwixt the wings and the middle battell, was left no more ſpace but for three gallies to row: in M
the rearward behind the Generall, followed *Requiſenius*, the great Commendor of CASTILE, with his gallies: after *Columnius* followed the Admirall gallie of GENVA, wherein was *Alexander Farneſius* prince of PARMA: and behinde *Venerius* came the Admirall gallie of SAVOY, and in her the prince of VRBIN: in the ſpace betwixt the middle battel and the left wing, was placed

A placed *Paulus Iordanus*: and betwixt the middle battell and the right wing, was *Petrus Inſtinianus* with the gallies of MALTA: vpon the left wing attended *Anthonius Canalis*: and *Quirinus* on the right. About halfe a mile behind all the reſt, followed *Aluarus Bacianus* Marqueſſe of SANCRACE, and Admirall of the Neapolitane fleet, with thirtie gallies; a man of great experience in matters at ſea; and now ſo placed, to be at all times readie to relieue this or that part of the fleet, as the fortune of the battell, or impreſſion of the enemie ſhould require. The Chriſtians had repoſed great hope in ſix galeaſſes, which furniſhed with great ſtore of ordinance and certaine ſelect companies of moſt reſolute ſouldiors, ſeemed rather like caſtles than ſhips. Theſe galeaſſes conducted by *Franciſcus Dodus*, a moſt expert captaine, were placed about a mile before the fleet; two of them before each wing, and the other two before the middle battell: ſo far
B diſtant one from another, as that with equal ſpace they anſwered the whole breadth of the front of the fleet, which was almoſt the ſpace of fiue miles, and ſerued the ſame in ſtead of moſt ſtrong bulwarks. The gallies throughout the fleet kept not cloſe togither, but ſuch a conuenient diſtance one from another, as might ſerue for them at libertie to diſcharge their ordinance when time ſhould require. In the wings, as alſo in the maine battell, were the Popes, the kings, and the Venetian gallies indifferently intermixed; that by the equalitie of the danger they ſhould haue more care to relieue one another than if they had ſerued apart. *Ioannes Cardonius*, a moſt valiant captaine, with eight gallies of SICILIE and two galiots, was appointed to go ten miles before the fleet to deſcrie what he might of the enemies doings, and in his returne to ioine the one halfe of his gallies to the one wing, and the other halfe to the other.

Six galeaſſes.

C In this ſort they departed from MESSANA, with purpoſe to ſeeke out the enemie: and not long after came to PAXO, where (of a ſmall broile) at the firſt, was like to haue riſen a great miſchiefe: for the next day, whileſt *Don Iohn* ſtaied there to take a view of the Venetian gallies, and how they were furniſhed both of men and munition; he finding them but weakely manned for ſupplying of that want, appointed foure thouſand Spaniards and a thouſand Italians to be put aboord into the Venetian gallies, where moſt need was.

The Chriſtian fleet departeth from Meſſina to giue the Turks battell.

Amongſt theſe ſouldiors was one companie vnder the commaund of *Mutius Tortona* their captaine, a man of an vnquiet and furious nature: who going aboord the gallie of *Andreas Calergus*, firſt fell to words with the captaine of the gallie, and after much ſtirre into plaine fight; ſo that in a trice they were altogether by the eares, as well the ſouldiours as the captaines: of all
D which ſtirre *Mutius* was the onely author. *Venerius* being not farre off, and hearing of the matter, ſent the captaine of his owne gallie to appeaſe the tumult: who thruſting himſelfe into the middeſt of the furious multitude, was by *Mutius* in his furie fouly intreated, and diuers of them that came with him ſhrewdly beaten. Which thing *Venerius* (himſelfe alſo of an hoat nature) taking as done in diſgrace of the Venetians, and therewith exceedingly moued; to the terrour of others, cauſed *Mutius* & his enſign-bearer to be hanged vp at the yards arme o fthe ſame gallie, to the great offence of all the Spaniards. The Generall alſo taking this execution in euill part, full of choler and indignation, grieuouſly complained, That he himſelfe as Generall, was therein not a little wronged; and that it became euerie commaunder to know what belonged to his place, and not to encroach vpon his betters: ſo ſhould the conditions of the league be the better
E kept, if euerie commaunder could keepe himſelfe within the bounds of his owne authoritie. *Venerius* he ſaid, whoſe authoritie was inferiour vnto his, could not of right without his command determine any thing againſt *Mutius* a Spaniſh captaine: And that therein his honour was empaired: for which, if he had not a publike and honourable amends, he threatned by force of arms to redreſſe his wrong, and the league being broken, to carrie away with him the kings gallies. Neither wanted there ſome who fauoring *Don Iohn* his quarrell, and angrie with the Venetians, laid ſtill more coles on the fire that was alreadie too great. Hereunto *Venerius* ſent word vnto the General, That he ſhould do well to moderat his anger, and at leiſure to aduiſe himſelfe, and better to vnderſtand the matter, ſo ſhould hee plainly ſee, that there was neuer more iuſt or wholſome execution done vpon any, than vpon thoſe mutinous perſons: But if hee, carried a-
F way with the heat of youth, ſhould attempt any more violent courſe than ſtood with the common quiet, it were not to bee maruelled if hee afterward repented. He (as hee ſaid) was alſo in armes, and readie to ſhew himſelfe a man. The matter was growne to that heat, that it was not onely not farre from the breaking off of the league; but euen at the point to haue ſet all on a broile, and to haue put the whole fleet in danger: had not *Columnius* the Popes Admiall, againſt this

Mutius Tortona a Spaniard, raiſeth a mutinie in the fleet at Paxo.

Tortona and his antient hanged.

Diſtention betwixt Don Iohn and Venerius the Venetian Admirall.

this tempeſt oppoſed himſelfe: Hee with all his power laboured to cure the wounded mind of G
the Generall, and to appeaſe his anger: telling him, That the common enemy would hardly be withſtood by them all, being at vnitie and concord amongſt themſelues; but if vnto the forraine danger were alſo ioyned domeſticall diſcord, then were the Chriſtian commonwealth vndone. But if he would moderat his anger, and more regard the honour and credit of the Venetian Admiral, than the puniſhment of a ſeditious man, euen they which were vnto him friends, and enemies vnto the Venetians, would highly commend his moderation and ſtayednesſe: yea, that howſoeuer the matter was done, it could not now bee vndone. But whatſoeuer *Venerius* had done, was in his opinion iuſtly done, That it was alwayes ſo accounted and obſerued, that when many princes ioyned their forces together in matters that concerned the common managing of the warre, nothing was to be done without the command of the Generall: but in matters be- H
longing to the priuate gouernment of euerie mans regiment, euery Generall had power of life and death ouer them that were vnder his commaund: which to bee ſo, was as he ſaid hereby to bee vnderſtood; King *Philip* was king of many kingdomes, and that hee might long ſo bee, hee heartily wiſhed: Now if any Millanoies had committed any capitall crime worthy death in the kingdome of NAPLES, ſhould the iudgement of that crime be of right to bee referred vnto the king himſelfe, as the chiefe ſoueraigne? or vnto the Gouernour of MILLAINE, where the offendour was borne? or rather to the ciuill magiſtrate of NAPLES, in whoſe iuriſdiction the fault was committed, and ſo of right there to be executed? What difference was there then, but that *Mutius* might rightly ſeeme to haue beene iuſtly puniſhed by *Venerius*, who although hee were a Spaniſh captain, had yet raiſed a mutinie in a Venetian galley, which was vnder the command I
of the Venetian Admirall. Beſide that, the diſcipline of war ſometime required a ſeuere and exemplare kind of puniſhment: For which cauſe it was both notably and truly ſaid of *Clearchus*, That a Generall ought to be more feared of his ſouldiours, than the enemie: and that amongſt the auncient Romanes it had beene the cuſtome euen for priuat men with more ſeuere puniſhment to reſtraine the factious citizen than the moſt cruell enemie: That the fact was not ſo much to bee regarded, as the intention of him that did it: That it was the dutie of commaunders to withſtand the madneſſe of the mutinous. The authour of ſedition and tumult hee ſaid had ſuffered but condigne puniſhment to his fact: who if hee had eſcaped vnpuniſhed, would but haue beene the more diſordered, but now by his exemplarie puniſhment, would deterre others from the like inſolencie. Beſides that, the externall danger was ſuch, as ought to reconcile K
them, were they neuer ſo much enemies: That ſuch men as they were, ſhould aboue all things regard what might profit or hurt the common cauſe, in contemplation whereof all priuat iniuries were to be remitted: and the rather, for that the honor and diſhonor of the good or bad ſucceſſe of ſuch important an action ſhould redound vnto themſelues, but eſpecially vnto the Generall. His own dutie he had as he ſaid diſcharged, in dealing ſo plainly and faithfully with him, and could no more but pray vnto God, with merciſull eye to behold the troubled Chriſtian common weale in ſuch a moſt dangerous time.

Don Iohn ſtill beareth a grudge againſt Venerius.

Thus was the mutinie at PAXO by the great labour of *Columnius* hardly appeaſed: neuertheleſſe *Don Iohn* could not afterwards endure to participate vnto *Venerius* his counſels, or ſo much as to come in his companie: all was done by *Barbadicus* the Venetian Proueditor. This L

Barbadicus the Venetian Proueditor a notable man.

Barbadicus was not inferiour to *Venerius* in courage and valour, but farre beyond him in diſcretion; a tall and goodly perſonage, well coloured, his beard grizie, though not for age, for why hee was not aboue fiftie yeares old: beſides that, in his eyes and countenance appeared a viuacitie or liuelineſſe of ſpirit; in his very gate and comely motion of his bodie, he carried a certaine grace and maieſtie: his talke and ſpeech was alwayes calme and temperate, his counſell graue and ſound, ſo that hee was both greatly honoured and beloued of all men: his chiefe endeauour alſo was, to further the hope of attonement betwixt the Spaniards and the Venetians, ſo well begun by *Columnius*. And ſo all things brought into ſome reaſonable tearmes, they departed from PAXO, and came to CORCYRA; the ſpoyle thereof well de-

The Chriſtian fleet at Cephalenia.

clared the enemies late being there. From thence they departed to CEPHALENIA: where M
they by letters from *Pau. Contarenus*, Gouernour of ZACYNTHVS, were aduertiſed, That the Turkes fleet of three hundred and three and thirtie ſaile, of one ſort and other, lay in the gulfe of CORINTH, now called the gulfe of LEPANTO. Whereupon they ſhortly after remooued, with purpoſe to haue gone to PETALA, an hauen oppoſit ouer againſt the iſlands (or rather rockes)

A rockes called ECHINADES, but now CORZVLARES; and ſo to the bay of CORINTH, to draw the enemie forth to battell: but ſtaied with contrary winds, they put backe againe into the valley of ALEXANDRIA, another port in the iſland of CEPHALENIA: from whence they afterward departed to the iſlands CORZVLARES, where by the way they vnderſtood by letters out of CRETE, That FAMAGVSTA was loſt: with which bad newes they were no whit diſcouraged, but rather enflamed with the deſire of reuenge. From the iſlands they went to GALANGA, a good harbour, where they ſtaied one night, purpoſing the next day to haue gone to the mouth of the gulfe of LEPANTO, there to dare the Turks to battell.

The Turkes Baſſaes *Partau* and *Haly*, who then lay in good ſafetie within the gulfe, hearing of the approach of the Chriſtian fleet, began to conſult with the reſt of their moſt expert cap-
B taines, Whether to giue the Chriſtians battell, or to keepe themſelues ſtill within their ſafe harbour: vpon which doubt they were amongſt themſelues of diuers opinions. Amongſt the reſt *Chiroche* a man of great yeares and authoritie, and withall a moſt noble captaine, exhorted the Baſſaes, in no caſe, when no need was, vpon a vaine glorie to aduenture all to the fortune of an vncertaine battell: it was (as he ſaid) the part of wiſe and worthie commanders, to moderat with reaſon their happy fortunes, for that therunto were incident many accidents whereby their former felicitie might be diſgraced: They had already run alongſt the enemies coaſts, ſpoiled the frontiers of his countries, and were with much honour and greater ſpoile in ſafetie returned, hauing increaſed the Turkiſh empire with many ſtrong townes of the enemies: The iſland of CYPRVS was with wonderfull good fortune brought vnder the Turks obeiſance, the enemies great
C prouiſion at ſea fruſtrated, in ſuch ſort, as that hauing loſt diuers of their gallies, they were neuer yet able to draw their ſwords: They had with their fleet at their pleaſure romed vp & downe the Adraticke, and diſplayed their victorious enſignes almoſt vnto the very citie of VENICE. What could they then deuiſe or wiſh for more honourable or glorious, than with the ſafetie of their fleet, yea without any loſſe at all, to haue performed ſo great matters? Now the three generall commanders of the enemies fleet to be ſo at diſcord amongſt themſelues, as that they were readie to fall in ſunder of themſelues, who now vpon the approch of Winter, and for want of victuall, muſt needs in few dayes returne home with their fleet, neuer after to meet againe with the like ſtrength at ſea: and therefore to what purpoſe were it, by force of armes and vncertaine battell, with danger to ſeeke for the ſoueraigntie and commaund of the ſea, which would forth-
D with of it ſelfe without any danger fall vnto them? Neither ſhould they by the doubtful victory ſo much encreaſe their honour, as by the vncertaine euent of a battell blemiſh the ſame, if any thing ſhould fall out otherwiſe than well. And that therefore they ſhould do well to take heed, that in ſeeking to augment their former victories, they hazarded not their honour alreadie gained; but wholeſomely delay the warre, and keepe themſelues in ſafetie with their fleet within the gulfe, and not to goe out at the enemies pleaſure, but when they ſhould ſee good themſelues, at ſuch time as the enemy was not ſo well prouided: ſo ſhould they (as he ſaid) without any great labour or danger attaine to the full of their owne deſires.

Chiroche diſſuadeth the Baſſaes from giuing battell vnto the Chriſtians.

Partau Baſſa ſtandeth indifferent for giuing or not giuing battell.

Partau Baſſa was of opinion, That the Chriſtians would not at all offer him battell: which opinion the Chriſtians had alſo of him: and in this queſtion, for giuing or not giuing of battell,
E ſeemed neither to approue nor diſlike that *Chiroche* had ſo grauely ſpoken, but as a man indifferent and loath to incurre any blame, ſhewed himſelfe readie either to ſtay or to ſet forward, as ſhould be thought beſt by the greater part. But *Haly Baſſa*, a man of an hoter ſpirit, and the great champion of the Turks, could not endure to heare of any delay, but of preſent battell: The pleaſure of *Selymus*, the hope of victory, the remembrance of the diſpleaſure *Piali Baſſa* had the laſt yeare incurred, for not giuing the Chriſtians battell, induced him now in no caſe to refuſe battel: but forthwith to goe out of the gulfe, and to accept thereof, if it were offered. In which his opinion hee was the more confirmed by the relation of *Caracoza* a famous pyrat, and of great account amongſt the Turks: who in a ſwift galliot taking view of the Chriſtian fleet, had reported it to bee much leſſe than in indeed it was, deceiued as was afterward thought, by not taking full
F view thereof, by reaſon of his poſting haſt; or els blinded by the iſland, which lying behind the fleet, ſuffered him not perfitly to deſcry the ſame. Vpon which report there was great reioycing amongſt the Turks, who now after their accuſtomed manner dreamed of nothing but victory and ſpoile. So that *Haly* vainely perſwaded that his fleete was both the greater and ſtronger, would now needs fight, in hope that the Chriſtians vpon the firſt ſight of the Turks fleet would either

either retire and ſaue themſelues by ſhamefull flight: or els in aduenturing battell at ſo great ods, G
by their fooliſh hardineſſe receiue a notable ouerthrow. This opinion of the Baſſa was alſo not a
little confirmed by the perſuaſion of *Caſſanes*, *Barbaruſſa* his ſonne, *Vluzales*, and *Chais-Beg*, Go-
uernour of SMYRNA, all men of great marke and experience, eſpecially in matters at ſea. And
although *Partau* the other Baſſa ſtood wauering, as a man in doubt, and *Chiroche* Gouernour of
ALEXANDRIA, with *Carabuzes* Gouernor of SILICIA, and *Mechmet* Gouernor of EVBŒA,
men of no leſſe worth than the other, vpon better conſideration, were of a quite contrary mind,
The Turkes reſolue to giue the Chriſtians battell. for not giuing the Chriſtians battell: yet ſuch was the authoritie of *Haly*, or rather his importu-
nitie, forced to his owne deſtinie, that his opinion preuailed; ſo that now out they needs muſt,
and fight. Albeit that two other eſpials ſent out after *Caracoza*, & hauing more perfectly viewed
the fleet, returning with ſpeed, told the Baſſaes, as truth was, That the Chriſtians, very ſtrong and H
well appointed, were comming with enſignes diſplayed of purpoſe to fight: and that their fleet
was in number much greater than was before ſuppoſed. With which newes ſo farre contrary to
their expectation, the Baſſaes were exceedingly troubled: and demaunding whether the for-
moſt gallies were all Venetians or not: and being anſwered, that they were intermixt, ſome Ve-
netians, ſome Spaniſh, and of the other Weſterne countries: they began to doubt the worſt, and
became exceeding penſiue. Neuertheleſſe knowing themſelues to be of all things well furni-
ſhed, hauing new victualled in the bay of CORINTH, and there alſo taken in twelue thouſand
Ianizaries and Spahies, drawne out of the garriſons of ÆTOLIA, ACARNANIA, PELOPONE-
SVS, and the other countries thereby, all reſolute men, and foure thouſand other common ſoul-
diors; and that they could not now with their honor ſhrinke backe, they held it ſtill for the beſt, I
to hold on their former reſolution for the giuing of the Chriſtians battell. Yet before their ſet-
ting forward, calling together the captaines and cheefe commaunders of the fleet, *Partau* the
more to encourage them, ſpake vnto them as followeth:

Partau Baſſa encourageth the Turke.

Wee are to fight (ſaid he) *fellowes in armes, with that kind of men whom our anncеſtors haue driuen out of* EVBŒA, *the* RHODES, MITILENE, PELOPONESVS, *and* TRIPOLIS, *and wee our ſelues but yeſterday out of the famous iſland of* CYPRVS: *whoſe cities and ſtrong townes, in number infinite, our Emperour hath, as the rewards of his warres: whom wee haue alwayes vanquiſhed, as well by ſea as by land: and ſhall it then now repent you, that you in this warre embrued in the Chriſtian blood, haue ſunke or taken many of their Ships and Gallies? That you haue caried away great and rich* K
ſpoils? That you haue taken whole Iſlands and Cities at the firſt aſſault? That wee haue by prooſe ſhewed vnto the world what force is in the Turke to ſubdue ſtrong Cities and Townes? and what little power is in the Chriſtians to defend the ſame? What direction brought vs victorie before, the ſame ſhall alſo at this preſent giue vs the like. Not to ſpeake of that, that wee farre excell them both in number of men and gallies, this is more to be reckoned of, that wee excell them in valour and proweſſe: for you being old expert ſouldiours, from your infancie trained vp in the warres, hardened in infinit battels, and full of courage and ſtrength, ſhall fight againſt weake, freſh-water, and effeminat ſouldiours; who entertained for pay (of the refuſe of all nations) know nothing belonging to the warres; or forcibly preſſed out of cities, ſerue not becauſe they would, but becauſe they muſt neither will nor chooſe. But not to L
ſpeake more of the manner of he Chriſtian ſoul diors, who are nothing els than the perpetuall exer-ciſe of your renowne and proweſſe: and to come vnto him, vnder whoſe fortune and conduct they ſerue. What ſhould I ſay? ſhould I compare either of vs (who haue ſpent our liues in victories and triumphs: who borne and brought vp amongſt armes, haue with our right hands gained vnto our ſelues honour and fame) with this ſtripling and halfe moneths captaine, who neuer ſaw battels but theſe? who in a leſſe matter neuer ſhewed prooſe of himſelfe, why ſhould he be accounted of in a greater? who in ſo weightie a cauſe needeth a tutor: and ſuch a one, as indeed beareth the name of a Generall, more for his honour, than for any worth in himſelfe. Beſides, amongſt the enemies is ſuch diſſention, that euerie man regardeth his owne priuat, ſerueth as pleaſeth himſelfe, contemneth, and is contemned: Whereas with vs is ſuch conſent, that it cannot be deuiſed, how the ſouldiours in generall ſhould more truſt their commaunders, or the commaunders their ſouldiours. What things were by the diſcipline of warre or M
*carefulneſſe of a Generall to be prepared, all thoſe you haue abundantly and plentifully in readineſſe: onely this laſt warlike labour remaineth, which once diſpatched, our enemies ſhall be diſcomfited euen in that wherein their greateſt confidence reſteth. They ſhall be deſpoiled of their honour and trafficke at ſea: and that * citie onte ſubdued, which is alone the glorie of the ſea, there ſhall be no hope left for*

* Vz Venice.

A *for the Christians whether by sea or land: and (that wee haue alwaies wished)* ITALIE, *faire* ITALIE *(wherein these matters are plotted against vs) shall be in our hand and power: wherefore let vs with such courage assaile our enemies as beseemeth most victorious conquerours, men so many times conquered: And so set forward, as if you saw our emperour himselfe encouraging you, and giuing you the signall of battell; of his bountie, and the present victorie, expecting all felicitie and blisse.*

This comfortable speech with great grauitie deliuered by the Bassa, so encouraged the Turks as that they all with one voice and mind, seemed to desire nothing more than battell: for they still possessed with the first report of *Caracoza*, and encouraged by the Bassaes speech, were in
B good hope to haue fought the battel vpon great aduantage, and therfore thought vpon nothing but present victorie. Whereupon setting forward with great cheerefulnesse, they came out of the gulfe, and shaped their course for the islands ECHINADES, about midway betwixt LEPANTO and PATRAS; before little islands or rather obscure rockes, scarcely appearing in the sea, but now to be made famous throughout the world, by the most notable battel that euer was fought in those seas.

The Turks fleet commeth out of the gulfe of Lepanto.
The islands Echinades, or Corzulares.

The Christians also comming still on towards the enemie, the seuenth of October in the afternoone, vnderstood by their espials, that the Turkes fleet was comming, and euen now at hand: whereupon the Generall commaunded the great ensigne of the confederats (the appointed signall of battell) to be forthwith displaied, and a great warning piece to bee shot off out
C of his Admirall gallie. And himselfe glistering all in bright armour, with *Cardona* Admirall of SICILIA, and *Soto* his secretarie, in a long boat went to all the squadrons of the fleet one after another, exhorting them with cheerefull countenance to follow their leaders, and to play the men: remembring, that they that day carried in their hands, the wealth, honour, glorie, and libertie of their countries; yea and the verie religion of their forefathers; and that that daies victorie would bring vnto them and theirs perpetuall felicitie: whereas otherwise, if they should as cowards suffer themselues to be ouercome and vanquished, it would be vnto them the beginning of all manner of most wofull calamities. To which and other his like speeches, the captaines and soldiors (before of themselues cheerfull ynough) in euerie place where he came gaue such applause with the ioyfull crie of Victorie, Victorie, so often and so cheerful in all places re-
D sounded, as that it was taken as a luckie aboadment of the glorious victory shortly after ensuing. In like manner *Auria* in the right wing, and *Barbadicus* in the left (for the fleet kept the same order that they had appoointed before at MESSANA) ceased not by all comfortable speeches to encourage their followers: shewing vnto them, That now the time was come they had so long wished for, wherein they not oppressed with multitude, might at lenght shew their true valour against the false and faithlesse enemies: who being in deed nothing else but base and contemptible slaues, borne to bondage, and hauing lost their owne libertie, came to impugne the libertie of others; bringing with them a greater terrour of their name, than valour of their persons: and that therefore, if euer, they would now shew themselues valiant and couragious, and that day wherein of all others true force was to be seene, to abate the pride of the barbarous and cruell
E enemie; and to make their reioycing for the conquest of CYPRVS short, before they had well tasted the pleasure thereof. At which time also the captaines generally throughout the fleet, with cheerfull countenances and couragious speech, encouraged their souldiors: leauing nothing vnsaid, that might harten them on; or vndone, that might further the victorie.

Neither were the Turks wanting to themselues (although it was fallen out much contrarie to their expectation, to see the Christians, who they before thought durst not haue shewed themselues, now readie to dare them battell) but encouraged with their former victories, and furthered with a faire gale of wind, came on prowdly with their fleet, orderly and gallantly set after their wonted manner in forme of a Croisant or halfe Moone, their fortunat ensigne: neuertheless in their comming on they were much troubled with the brightnesse of the Sun, which
F then shining full in their faces with his bright beames, so dazled their eies, that they could not well see how to their most aduantage to direct their gallies. In this fleet of the Turkes were two hundred and fiftie gallies, fiftie galiots, and twentie brigandines & other small vessels: all which a farre off shewed like a thick wood, but comming neere hand, presented (as we said) the forme of a Croisant. The middle battell in number much like the Christians, was conducted by the great

The number and order of the Turks fleet.

great Baſſaes *Haly* and *Pertau*, attended vpon with *Agan* maſter of the Turks Arſenall: *Muſtapha Zelibi*, the treaſurer: *Achmat Bay*, with *Mahomet* his younger brother, the ſonnes of *Haly*: *Achmat Aga*, Gouernour of THRACIA: *Aßis Caiga*, Gouernour of CALIPOLIS: *Caracoza*: *Caſſanes*, the ſonne of *Barbaruſſa*: *Malamur*, Gouernour of MITYLENE: *Dely Solyman Gider*, captaine of CHIOS: *Caſſambeius*, Gouernour of the RHODES: *Proui Aga*, captaine of NAVPLIVM: *Giapar Zelibi*, preſident of CALABA: *Dordagnan*: *Dondomeni*, and many others, whoſe barbarous names I purpoſely omit: all men of great account and place, and for their experience at ſea, the chiefe ſtrength of the Turkiſh empire. The right wing was by the appointment of the Baſſaes, commaunded by *Mahomet Bey* with fiftie ſix gallies, with whom were alſo many worthie captaines: and in the left wing was *Vluzales* the old Archpyrat, but now the viceroy of ALGIERS with ninetie fiue gallies, accompanied with *Caraiolo* and *Arabey* his two ſonnes, with a multitude of pyrats, men of his owne profeſſion, but moſt valiant and expert ſouldiours. In the rearward came *Amurates Dragut* with thirtie gallies, and diuers other ſmall veſſels. G H

The great and notable battell betwixt the Turke and the Chriſtians, commonly called the battell of Lepanto.

Now was the day well ſpent, when both the fleets were readie to giue battell. The enemie ſtill comming on, almoſt in the ſame order that the Chriſtians did: for their middle battell came directly againſt our middle battell, and their wings againſt ours. So the ſignall of battell on both ſides giuen by the ſhooting off of certaine great pieces: the Turks, after their maner comming on with an hideous crie, firſt light vpon the ſix galleaſſes, which lying at anchor almoſt a mile before the fleet as moſt ſtrong bulwarks, out of their forecaſtles powred out their murthering ſhot vpon the Turks, now come within their danger; and in their paſſing by, ſo plagued them I by diſcharging their whole broad ſides, firſt the one, and eftſoones the other vpon them, that hauing receiued great loſſe, and diuers of their gallies ſunke, they were enforced to break their order, and to fall further off. Which ſo much the more troubled the Turkes, for that they had before ſuppoſed, thoſe great carts & vnſeruiceable ſhips (as they accounted of them) to haue caried little or no great ordinance on their ſides, after the manner of their gallies: for the vſe of the galleaſſes was not vnto the Turks knowne, vntill now that they had receiued from them moſt notable harme: which as it was the beginning of their miſerie, ſo was it vnto the Chriſtians of greateſt importance, for the gaining of the victorie. At which time alſo the wind, which all that day had much fauoured the Turks, was now (God no doubt fighting his owne battell) come about to the Weſt, and with a pleaſant gale in the time of the fight, carried the ſmoake of the K great ordinance vpon the Turks, to their no ſmall diſaduantage. Yet for all this loſſe and diſorder in their fleet, the fierce enemie with wonderfull pertinacie paſsing by theſe galeaſſes, quickly repared agine to their places, and made good their diſordered ſquadrons, & with all their force aſſailed the Chriſtian fleet. The trumpets, drums, and other inſtruments of warre, had ſcarcely well ſounded, when all ſhooke with confuſed cries, flames of fire, thundring of artillerie, and other noiſe of the marriners and ſeamen: wherewith many were ſo aſtonied, as if they had bin both deafe and blind, hauing vpon the ſudden almoſt loſt the vſe both of their ſight and hearing. At which verie inſtant, a man might haue ſeene the whole ſhowers as it were of arrowes and darts mixt with the deadly ſhot, flying from the one fleet to the other: the maſts broken, the ſaile- L yards ſtrucke downe, the tackles rent, and all confuſed with horrour and feare. *Haly* beholding the Admiral gallie (which was eaſie to be knowne by the flag) and vſing the ſurpaſsing cheerfulnes of his marriners and rowers, ran vpon her with ſuch violence as if he would haue preſently ſtemmed hir: but being with like force encountred by the Admirall, they met togither with ſuch violence, that both their beakes were with the feaze broken off, and ſo fell into the ſea. There began a moſt cruell fight betwixt thoſe two great commanders, who had before drawn vnto them the ſtrongeſt gallies in their fleets, and the choiſeſt men in their armies. In the Admirall gallie of the Chriſtians, were foure hundred ſelect men picked out of the whole armie, moſt of them captaines and auntients, men of approued valour: who not only valiantly repulſed the furious enemies, but with greater courage enforced them to ſhrinke backe, and preſsing hard vpon them entred the gallie euen to the maine maſt; where the enemie ſtrengthned with new ſupply, fought M couragiouſly, repulſed the Spaniards, and cleared againe their gallie. Many were there wounded on both ſides, and many ſlaine. *Don Iohn* ſeeing his men giue way, ſent in new ſupplie; wherwith the other encouraged, beſtirred themſelues more luſtily then before, and hardly charge the Turks: who with like hope and like courage encounter them. The battell was like vnto the ebbing

A terrible onſet

A dreadfull and doubtfull fight betwixt the two Admiral gallies

A ebbing and flowing of the ſea: Thriſe the Turkes were driuen euen vnto the maine maſt, and thriſe ſtrengthened with new ſupplies, they with great ſlaughter repulſed the Chriſtians backe againe.

Venerius perceiuing the danger of the Generall, was about to haue aſſailed the poupe of *Haly* his gallie, ſo to haue endangered her being ſet vpon both before and abathe: but in comming thither he was encountred by *Pertau* the other Baſſa, who with a companie of gallies oppoſed himſelfe againſt him, and that with ſuch celeritie, that hauing made ſhew as if he would haue charged him afront, he by and by ſet vpon his ſide. Which vnexpected manner of fight ſo ſuddenly faſhioned, at the firſt much troubled the Chriſtians, who afterward gathering courage, notably defended themſelues. *Venerius* vpon whoſe valour the Venetian ſtate reſted, gal-
B lātly armed, not only encouraged his men, one while with intreating, another while with threatning, but was himſelfe in the midſt of them fighting; whoſe great honor much moued the minds of his ſouldiors, but his reuerend yeares more; to ſee him (being aboue threeſcore and ſeauenteene yeares old) to performe all the parts of a braue youthfull commaunder, in the verie face of the greateſt danger. The fierce enemie hauing ſlaine many of the Chriſtians, preſſed on more furiouſly, and fighting cloſe togither, entred the prow of *Venerius* his gallie now bared of defendants, and with their multitude rather than true valour oppreſſed the Venetians; who had there no doubt been ouercome, had not *Ioannes Lauretanus*, and *Catherinus Malipetra*, two valiant captaines, and lying not farre off, ſpeedily come to their reliefe. By whoſe comming in, the fight was in the turning of an hand quite altered: ſo that they which a little before fiercely aſſai-
C led the Venetian gallies, were now glad to defend their owne: ſo for a ſpace the fight ſtood indifferent, but in proceſſe of the battell, thoſe two worthie captaines, whileſt they alſo performe the parts of moſt reſolute ſouldiors, were both ſlaine; ſhot through with ſmall ſhot. The fall of theſe notable men, did rather enrage than diſcourage the minds of their ſouldiers; ſo that blinded as it were with furie, and ſuddenly become other men, they deſperatly preſſed in vpon the Turks. So that whileſt they on the one ſide kill and wound them, & *Venerius* more hardly chargeth them on the other; the terrour of the battell was turned from them that were euen at the point to haue beene vanquiſhed, vpon the victors. And our men after great ſlaughter of the Turks, tooke two of their gallies: *Pertau* the Baſſa in a long boat eſcaped the danger, and ſo got
D him out of the battell. Not farre off thence, *Columnius* the Popes Admirall, as a valiant chieftaine hardly aſſailed other of the Turks gallies, and made amongſt them great ſlaughter: one ſingled from the reſt, he tooke, and diſordered the other. *Lignius* the Admirall of GENVA, with like courage thruſt himſelfe into the thickeſt of the enemies, and there made a notable fight. Many an enemie fell about the prince of PARMA, *Rueres*, *Vrſinus*, *Cornea* and *Iuſtinianus*; who for their preſent honour and future fame, fought moſt couragiouſly.

Venerius comming to the reliefe of Don Iohn is encountred by Pertan Baſſa.

Venerius in danger.

Lauretanus and *Malipetra* ſlaine.

At the ſame time *Chiroche* or *Sirocke* (of ſome called *Mahomet Bey*) with his right wing with great confidence came forward againſt the left wing of the Chriſtian fleet; but falling before he was aware into the danger of the galeaſſes, was from out of them miſerably beaten with the great ordinance, hauing many of his men ſlaine, and diuers of his gallies ſunke & torne, few
E of the hugie and deadly ſhot falling in vaine into the ſea, by reaſon of the thicke ſtanding of the Turkes gallies: where alſo diuers of the enemies were burnt with pots of wild fire, caſt into their gallies out of the tops of the galeaſſes. *Chiroche* to auoid the danger of the galeaſſes, and to ſhun the dangerous ſhelfe betwixt him and the maine (which the riuer Achelous running betweene the borders of ACHARNANIA and ÆTOLIA, & there falling into the ſea, maketh) ſent a great part of his gallies vnder the conduct of one *Alis*, a notable renegat of GENVA, to caſt about aloofe vpon the right hand, and ſo to come vpon the backe of *Barbadicus* the leader of the left wing of the Chriſtian fleet: Which he perceiuing, forthwith turned his gallies, and with their prowes receiued the firſt onſet. The great ordinance firſt on both ſides diſcharged; diuers of the gallies grapled faſt togither, in ſuch ſort, as that they encountred one another, not with their
F miſsiue weapons onely (as with their ſmall ſhot, arrowes, & darts) but with their drawne ſwords foot to foot. Amongſt the reſt, the fight of two of the Chriſtian gallies was moſt notable, in the one was *Barbadius* himſelfe, in the other *Marcus Cleonia*, vpon whom fell ſix of the enemies gallies, and vpon *Barbadicus* fiue: who although they were on euerie ſide diſtreſſed with a moſt doubtfull and dangerous fight, yet did they moſt valiantly with worthie reſolution endure the ſame. In the furie of this battell, *Barbadicus* encouraging his ſouldiors, and fighting himſelfe

The right wing of the Turks fleet ſore gaulled by the galeaſſes.

A terrible fight betwixt Chiroche and Barbadicus.

euen there where moſt danger was, was hit in the left eye with an arrow, and ſo ſtrucke into the braine almoſt through the head: wherewith falling preſently downe, he was taken vp for dead; howbeit he dyed not thereof vntill three daies after. The ſuppoſed death of this worthie man much troubled the Chriſtians, and both the armies felt his fall (ſuch force there is in the valour of one worthie man) for the Turks now as conquerors luſtily boorded the gallie, troubled with the loſſe of the captaine, and the Venetians as men diſcouraged, gaue way: the gallie had there vndoubtedly beene loſt, had not *Federicus Nanius* and *Syluius Porcia* with their gallies ſpredily come to her reliefe; by whoſe comming in, ſuch an alteration was made, as that the gallie before halfe taken, was not only cleared, but diuers of the Turks gallies alſo bourded, & ſome of them taken, not without the great ſlaughter of the Turks. In this ſo hard and mortall a conflict, *Syluius* was grieuouſly wounded in the thigh, and in his right ſide. It is reported of *Barbadicus*, That ly- H
ing that euening at the point of death, the battell then ended, he like another *Epaminondas* asked which part had got the victorie: and being told that the Chriſtians had got it, and that the Turks fleet was moſt part taken, and the reſt ſunke or burnt: he with his eyes caſt vp vnto heauen, gaue vnto God immortall thankes therefore, and not long after ioyfully departed this life, to liue in bliſſe for euer.

The death of Barbadicus.

Ciconia hardly beſet, and in danger to haue bin loſt, is relieued.

Ciconia in the meane time hardly beſet with ſix of the enemies gallies (as we haue beforeſaid) was himſelfe ſore burnt with wild fire, and hurt in the face: and hauing endured a long and terrible fight, was now euen at the point to haue bin loſt; when ſudden reliefe comming in, he was now contrarie to all hope ſaued, and therewith ſo much encouraged, that with his wearie and wounded ſouldiors, as men from death reuiued, he afreſh charged the enemie, and tooke one of I
his principall gallies, with one of the Turkes faireſt enſignes, which in the Venetian Armorie is yet there to be ſeene: of his worthie valour, his honeſt wounds in his face and the forepart of his bodie, were moſt certaine and vndoubted witneſſes.

A hard fight betwixt Io. Contarenus and Chiroche,

Not far off, in the ſame wing, *Ioannes Contarenus*, an honourable and valiant gentleman, did with his great ſhot exceeding great harme amongſt the Turks gallies: Which *Chiroche* perceiuing, and therewith enraged, ran ſo fiercely vpon the ſide of *Contarenus* his gallie, that with his beake he had well neere ſtemmed her; & preſently grapling faſt with her, was like to haue bourded her: whom neuertheleſſe the Chriſtians notably repulſed, with greater ſlaughter than was thought poſſible for ſo ſmall a number to haue made: neither did the enemies fall vnreuenged; K
but all embrued with the bloud of the Chriſtians. Seldome hath bin ſeene a more cruell fight, or more reſolute captaines to encounter hand to hand. But after the battell had of long time ſtood doubtfull, the hope of the Chriſtians encreaſed vpon two cauſes, for which the courage of the enemie quailed: firſt for that many of the Turks being ſlain or wounded, they were brought to a ſmall number; then for that both parties ſaw *Chiroche* himſelfe ſlain; from which time the enemie, as well deſtitute of a leader to conduct them, as of freſh ſupplies to relieue them, began to be cut down right, or taken. Which their danger was the more encreaſed, becauſe the gallie, bulged with the great ſhot, was now leake, and in danger to ſinke: wherefore the Turkes in that wing ouercome with deſpaire, began to thinke rather how to ſaue themſelues by flight than by fight, repoſing their truſt in nothing more than in the neereneſſe of the maine. But as they were turning about toward the ſhore, they were preuented by the Chriſtians: who entring the gallie, L
and hauing ſlaine or driuen ouer boord almoſt all that were left, tooke *Chiroche*, yet breathing, but halfe dead; and ſeeing ſmall hope of his life, with freſh wounds made an end of him.

Chiroche ſlaine, and his gallie taken.

Diuers and doubtfull was the whole face of the battell: as fortune offred vnto euery man his enemie, ſo he fought; according as euery mans diſpoſition put into him courage or feare, or as he met with moe or fewer enemies, ſo was there here and there ſometime victorie, and ſometime loſſe. Many fights were in ſundrie places ſeene mingled togither. Some gallies whiles they run to ſtemme others, are themſelues by others ſtemmed. Some, which you would thinke were flying away, falling by fortune vpon one victorious gallie or other, ſuddenly take them. Otherſome as if they had bin of neither part, row vp and downe betwixt the battels. The chance of warre in one place lifteth vp the vanquiſhed, and in another ouerthroweth the victorious. All M
was full of terrour, errour, ſorrow, and confuſion. And albeit that fortune had not yet determined which way to incline, yet the Chriſtians at length began to appeare much ſuperior both in courage and ſtrength: and the Turkes ſeemed now rather to defend themſelues, than to aſſaile their enemies.

A hard and doubtfull battel

A *Bacianus* in the rereward intentiuely marked all the whole fight, and euer as need required ſent in preſent aid, without reſpect whether they were the Popes gallies, the king of SPAINES, or the Venetians, that were diſtreſſed. In this long and terrible fight it chanced, that the Turkes ſeeing the Chriſtian Generals gallie hardly charged on the prow by *Haly Baſſa*, to be almoſt bared of defendants in the poup, all the ſoldiors hauing their hands full before, were about to haue bourded her abath, and to that purpoſe were fetching a compaſſe about her: Which *Bacianus* quickly perceiuing, gliſtring in bright armour, came ſpeedily in with certaine gallies, and by oppoſing of himſelfe againſt them, ſtayed their courſe. In all the battell was not ſeene a more cruell fight: for hauing diſcharged many volleys of ſhot, and arrows and darts without number, they grapled at length togither, and came to the ſword; where with the formoſt *Bacianus* not onely
B with words but with his preſence and valour wonderfully encouraged his ſouldiors, hauing receiued in his targuet of proofe two ſmall ſhot. Many were on both ſides ſlaine: the Spaniards attempting ſundrie times to haue entered the Turkes gallies, were with great loſſe repulſed: but not giuing it ſo ouer, neither giuing the enemie leaue to breath, or ſo much as to looke behind him, valour was vanquiſhed by pertinacie: and the Spaniards hauing ouerthrowne and ſlaine their enemies, enioyed their gallies.

Now had *Don Iohn* with like courage and ſtrength, but with doubtfull victorie, fought three houres and more with *Haly Baſſa*: when after ſo dreadfull and dangerous a fight, and many a deadly wound on both parts giuen and receiued, our men began to faint, and brought to the vttermoſt of their deuoire, were in danger to haue beene ouercome, had not *Don Iohn* betaken
C himſelfe vnto his only and laſt refuge. He had (as is beforeſaid) reſerued vnder the hatches foure hundred of his beſt and ſelect ſouldiors, for their valour choſen out of the whole armie againſt all the euents of ſo long and dangerous a battell: theſe men attentiuely attending euery beck of *Don Iohn*, vpon ſigne giuen, as was before appointed, ſuddenly ſtart out, and with a terrible crie and deſperat onſet aſſailed the enemie, before almoſt ſpent with labour and wounds. This freſh and vnexpected companie ſo ſodenly grown vp, firſt aſtonied, and afterwards confounded, and with a great ſlaughter vanquiſhed the Turks, and poſſeſſed the gallie. The Baſſa deadly wounded in the head with a ſhot, and all embrued with bloud, was taken, and as a ioyfull ſpectacle brought to *Don Iohn*: who ſeeing him readie to breath his laſt, commanded him to be deſpoyled of his armour, and his head ſtrucke off. Which preſently ſet vpon the point of a ſpeare, hee
D for a ſpace held vp aloft with his owne hand, as a trophey of his victorie, as alſo with the ſight thereof to ſtrike a terrour into the minds of the other Turkes, who in the other gallies faſt by fought yet right valiantly: neither was he therein deceiued, for the Turks beholding the known countenance of the Baſſa, their late Generall, and a flag of the croſſe ſet vp in the top of his gallie, and the noiſe of the Chriſtians (crying victorie) running through the armie, were therwith ſo diſcouraged, that confounded with feare, they turned their gallies and with might and maine made toward the land, which was not much more than a mile off. Which *Canalis* and *Quirinus* yet breathing with the late ſlaughter of the Turkes, perceiuing, with their gallies hardly purſued the flying enemie, and ſunke and tooke diuers of their gallies. *Partau* his ſonne by the ſtaying of
E the reſt got time to run his gallie on ground, and ſo forſaking her, ſaued himſelfe and his men by running aſhore: ſo did alſo diuers others run themſelues aground & forſake their gallies, which preſently became a prey vnto the Chriſtians. In this hot conflict was *Caracoza* the famous pyrat (who abiuring the Chriſtian religion, had turned Turke, and of long time done exceeding much miſchiefe vpon the coaſts of the Chriſtian countries) valiantly fighting, ſlaine by *Buzzacharinus* of PADVA, by whoſe death many were deliuered of a great feare.

A terrible fight betwixt Haly Baſſa and Don Iohn.

Haly Baſſa ſlain.

The Turks middle battell diſcomfited.

Caracoza the famous pyrat ſlaine.

Haly Baſſa had brought forth with him his two ſonnes *Achmat* and *Mahomet*, the one three and twentie yeares old, and the other thirteene, the nephewes of the great emperor *Selymus*, by his ſiſter maried to *Haly*; them their father had placed in a great gallie, with a ſtrong guard of the Ianizaries: who ſeeing the diſcomfiture of the maine battell, and the danger now drawing
F neere vnto themſelues, were exceedingly afraid; and therfore to ſaue themſelues, thought it beſt with all ſpeed to make toward the maine. But in ſo doing, they were preuented by *Requiſenius* the great Commendour, who with his furious Spaniards bourding the Turkes, alreadie diſmaied and running away, ſlew of them a great number; and after a great fight and much cruell execution done, tooke the gallie, and that which pleaſed him more, the two ſonnes of *Haly* both aliue: in the time of which fight, the poore Chriſtians, who faſt chained in the gallie, had as

ſlaues long ſerued in great miſerie: now perceiuing the Chriſtians to preuaile, brake of their giues, looſed one another, and with ſuch weapons as firſt came to hand luſtily laid about them, and notably furthered the victorie. G

Notwithſtanding all this good ſucceſſe, the fortune of the battell ſtood yet doubtfull in the right wing. There ſtood in either battell two of the moſt noble chieftaines, one againſt another: on the Chriſtian part *Iohn Andreas Auria*, the Spaniſh Admirall; and for the Turks *Vluzales*: both moſt valiant and expert commanders, well knowne the one to the other, for that they had of long vſed the ſame ſeas, equall for their militarie diſcipline, as alſo for their noble acts, but far vnequall for number of their gallies: for the Turks had of one ſort and other almoſt twice ſo many. *Auria*, whether it were for that he would in the beginning of the battell warily decline the danger, and not hazard his gallies, wherein his chiefe honour would be alſo endangered; or els afraid leaſt the enemie, who far exceeding him in number of gallies, ſhould extend his wing at large, and encloſe the Chriſtian fleet behind; vpon the ſignall of battell giuen, ſhrunke further off from the reſt of the battell: but whether vpon policie, that it might be at his choice either to fight, if the reſt of the armie preuailed, or to retire, if they ſhould be ouercome; or that he vpon martial policie declined the force of too ſtrong an enemie; diuers men diuerſly gloſed: but what the cauſe was indeed, the wiſeſt could not ſurely tell. Howſoeuer the matter ſtood, it ſeemed his purpoſe was by policie to counteruaile what he wanted in ſtrength. This his falling off ſeemed vnto the Turks moſt ſtrange, vnto whom his quicke departure ſeemed at the firſt in maner of a flight. Neither was *Auria* content with that ſpace he had firſt ſeperated himſelfe from the armie: but the ſecond time fell off further, and there ſtaying and houering aloofe off, ſeemed to await ſome good oportunitie, to take the enemie at ſome aduantage: hauing in the meane time one of the galeaſſes of PISA lying before him, as it were in ſtead of a bulwarke, which with often ſhot much troubled the enemie. *Vluzales* alſo extending his wing, tooke ſuch a ſpace, as that he ſeemed able to haue compaſſed in and incloſed *Auria*; yet offered not battell, but rather lay as expecting if any aduantage ſhould be giuen him by the Chriſtians, than raſhly or vnaduiſedly to offer himſelfe or his gallies to any deſperat danger. He had not long ſo lien, but that according to his deſire twelue of the Venetian gallies, which had withdrawne themſelues from *Auria* (and without any order or direction romed too & fro) fell into his danger: theſe gallies cut off from the reſt, *Vluzales* with wonderfull celeritie encloſed; and with the multitude of his gallies bourding them one by one, ſlew the defendants, and tooke the gallies. In this fight many of the knights of the Order of *S. Stephen* moſt valiantly fighting, were ſlaine. *Benedictus Superantius*, a noble Venetian, ſeeing moſt part of his men ſlaine, himſelfe mortally wounded, and his gallie now almoſt taken, reſoluing rather preſently to die, than to fall into the hands of his enemies; deſperatly put fire to the ſtore of pouder he had in the gallie, and blew vp himſelfe, his ſouldiors that were left, with a great number of the enemies togither. The report of the great ordinance, and noiſe of the battell in that part of the fleet being heard, they which had now in the middle battel got the victorie, togither turned their gallies thitherwards to aid *Auria*, but not in one ſquadron togither, but comming along one after another, as euery man had ſooner or later cleared himſelfe of his enemie: amongſt the reſt *Petrus Iuſtinianus* (Admirall of the gallies of MALTA) comming formoſt, was encountered with three of the Turkes gallies, with whom he with his knights had a great and moſt terrible fight. Which *Vluzales* beholding, and aboue all others hating the knights of the Order, ſpeedily ſent in other three gallies to help their fellowes. So *Iuſtinian* hardly beſet with ſix gallies, and oppreſſed with the multitude of his enemies, had loſt fiftie of his moſt valiant knights, with one of his enſignes, and with much ado hardly defended himſelfe. But being now brought to the laſt caſt, and the gallie in the iudgement of all men giuen for loſt, loe two of the other gallies of MALTA, who had ſo valiantly fought with other three of the enemies gallies that they were now vpon point to haue taken them all, ſeeing the danger of their Admirall, forſooke their vanquiſhed enemies, and with all ſpeed came to reſcue him: where they found him yet aliue, but ſhot in with three arrowes, and ſtill fighting couragiouſly at the deck of his gallie, with thoſe few he had yet left, beſet round with their enemies: but by the comming in of theſe two gallies, as if it had bin by helpe ſent from heauen, the Turks were notably repulſed, and the Admirall with his gallie reſcued, as a prey out of the mouth of the greedie lyon. *Vluzales* vnderſtanding that the maine battell and right wing of the fleet was ouerthrown by the Chriſtians, for feare gaue ouer the fight; and leauing the gallies he had taken and

The doubtfull lying of Iohn Andreas Auria with the right wing of the Chriſtian fleet. H

Twelue of the Venetian gallies taken by Vluzales. I K

A notable figt of the knights of Malta. L

Vluzales flieth. M

A and hoiſing ſaile, was the firſt in that wing that fled. Which *Cardonius* perceiuing, who was come in before the reſt, ſuddenly ſhewed himſelfe at his backe, and by aſſailing the hindermoſt gallies, did what he might to ſtay their flight vntil the reſt of the victorious gallies were come in. But whileſt he ſo eagerly purſueth the flying enemie, fifteene of the Turkes captaines enraged with ſuch an vnwonted diſgrace, and mindfull of their wonted proweſſe, ſtayed their flight, and contrary to the expectation of the Chriſtians, turned themſelues and renewed the battell: What minds they bare, the euent ſhewed, for in a trice almoſt all *Cardonius* his ſouldiors and marriners were ſlaine: nothing letted the taking of the gallie, but that *Vluzales* ſeeing *Don Iohn*, *Columnius*, and *Venerius* neere at hand, and making towards him, and *Auria* alſo comming faſt on, was afraid longer to ſtay, and therefore giuing ouer the ſight, fled as faſt as he could: yet carrying
B away with him one gallie of CYPRVS, and one enſigne of the knights of MALTA, as teſtimonies of his owne valour when he ſhould appeare before *Selymus*. The Chriſtians, although wearie of the long fight which they had almoſt by the ſpace of fiue houres endured, yet ſo long as they were in any hope to ouertake any of their flying enemies, hardly purſued them in chaſe: but when they perceiued it preuailed not to follow farther, and that it was more than time to ſee to their weary and wounded ſouldiors and marriners, they ſtaied from further purſuit; for why the night came now faſt on, vnder the couert whereof the craftie old pyrat flying for life with ſailes and oares, eſcaped with thirtie (or as ſome write, fortie) gallies againe into the bay of LEPANTO.

The Chriſtians hardly purſue the flying enemy.

It was a right horrible ſpectacle to ſee, how in this battell the ſea ſtained with bloud, and co-
C uered with dead bodies, weapons, and the fragments of the broken gallies: beſides the great number of them that were ſlaine, and beaten into the ſea; many of the Turks blinded with feare, caſting away their weapons, to eſcape the furie of the enemie, threw themſelues headlong into the ſea: but finding no hope to recouer the land, laboured againe to come to the gallies; or elſe fainting by the way, were miſerably drowned. Others, either halfe dead, weake, and vnskilfull of ſwimming, or ouercharged with their armour, the ſea alſo deuoured: yea many that could well ſwim, wearied and wounded, ſunke for feare. Others vpon plankes and the pieces of the broken gallies, ſought to ſaue themſelues, and not knowing what to follow or what to ſhun, wo-
D fully periſhed. Otherſome ſwimming, and pitifully entreating their enemies, rather to take them priſoners than to kill them, were (as it oftentimes chanceth where things are done vpon choller rather than vpon diſcretion) without compaſſion ſlaine: in which doing, the Chriſtians thought they did rather reuenge former iniuries to them done, than to doe them any wrong: with ſome mercie more preuailed than wrath, who remembring the common chaunce of warre, choſe rather to take the Turkes priſoners, wofully crauing nothing but their liues, than without mercie to kill them. The numbers of the Turks loſt in this moſt famous battell, could hardly be known, by reaſon that many of them were drowned. *Antonius Guarnerius* writing the hiſtorie of this warre, reporteth two and thirtie thouſand to haue periſhed: but they which write more ſparingly thereof, report not paſt halfe ſo many to haue beene ſlaine: of whom theſe were of greateſt name; *Haly Baſſa* the Generall, *Mahomet Bey* (otherwiſe called *Chiroche* or *Sirochus*) Gouernour of ALEXANDRIA, *Caſſanes* the ſonne of *Barbaruſſa*, with his ſonne *Malamar*, Gouernour of MI-
E TILENE, *Gider* Gouernour of CHIOS; *Caſſambeius* Gouernour of the RHODES, *Proni Aga* captaine of NAVPLIVM, *Muſtapha Zelibi* the great Treaſurer, *Caracoza* the famous pyrat, with many others whom but to name were tedious. The chiefe priſoners there taken, were *Achmat* and *Mahomet* the ſonnes of *Haly Baſſa*, both afterwards ſent as preſents to the Pope, of whom the eldeſt died by the way at NAPLES; the younger preſented vnto the Pope by *Columnius* at ROME, was there honourably kept priſoner: and *Mechmet Bey*, Gouernour of EVBŒA: and about three thouſand fiue hundred others were in that battell taken alſo. The chiefe of them that eſcaped by flight, were *Partau Baſſa*, who ſeeing all goe to wracke, fled in time in a long boat to land: and *Vluzales*, who (as it was afterwards certainly known) but with fiue and twentie gallies, and ten galliots fled to LEPANTO. Of the enemies gallies were taken an hundred threeſcore
F and one, fourtie ſunke or burnt: and of galliots and other ſmall veſſels were taken about ſixtie. The Admirall gallie then taken amongſt the reſt, was ſo goodly and beautifull a veſſell, that for beautie and richneſſe ſcarce any in the whole Ocean was comparable vnto her. The deck of this gally was on both ſides thriſe as great as any of the others, and made all of blacke Walnut tree like vnto Ebony, checkered, & wrought marueilous faire with diuers liuely colors and variety of hiſtories.

The number of the Turks ſlaine in the battell of Lepanto, diuerſly reported.

The ſurpaſſing beautie of the Admirall gallie.

hiſtories. There were alſo in her diuers liuely counterfets, engrauen and wrought with gold, G
with ſo cunning hand, that for the magnificence therof it might well haue been compared vnto ſome princes palace. The cabbin gliſtered in euery place with rich hangings wrought with gold twiſt, and ſet with diuers ſorts of precious ſtones, with certaine ſmall counterfeits moſt cunningly wrought. Beſides this, there was alſo found in her great ſtore of the Baſſaes rich apparell, wrought with the needle, ſo curiouſly and richly embоſſed with ſiluer and gold, that his great lord and maſter *Selymus* himſelfe could hardly put on more royall or rich attire. His caſket there alſo found with ſix thouſand duckats in it, with a yerely penſion of three hundred duckats, was giuen in reward to a Greeke, borne in MACEDONIA, which ſlew the Baſſa; and was therefore alſo knighted by *Don Iohn:* who had alſo giuen vnto him the Burrell of the Turkes ſtanderd, which at his returne to VENICE (where hee had of long time before dwelt, and ſerued H
in the Arſenall) he ſold vnto a goldſmith: Whereof the Senat hauing intelligence, redeemed it of the goldſmith, paying for euerie ounce a duckat, and layed it vp amongſt the trophies of that moſt famous victorie. It was all of maſſiue ſiluer, guilt and engrauen round about with Turkiſh letters. On the one ſide was written: *God doeth conduct and adorne the faithfull in worthie enterpriſes: God doth fauour Mahomet.* On the other ſide, *God hath no other God, and Mahomet is his Prophet.*

The Greek that ſlew the Baſſa, honourably rewarded.

This notable victorie thus happily obtained, *Don Iohn* the Generall, with *Venerius* and *Columna*, the other two Admirals, came together; whom the Generall friendly embraced, but eſpecially *Venerius*, calling him father, and attributing vnto him the greateſt part of the victorie. Afterwards, all together with their hands and eyes caſt vp towards heauen, they vpon their I
knees gaue immortall thankes to Almightie God. So did alſo the reſt of the captaines and maſters, commending one anothers valour and good ſeruice: but eſpecially theirs, who for their religion and countrey had there moſt honourably ſpent their liues; which were in number about 7566. Amongſt whom, the chiefe men that were ſlaine, were *Ioh.* and *Bernardinus*, of the honourable familie of *Cordona* in SPAINE, *Horatio Caraffa*, and *Ferantes Bisballus. Virginius* and *Horatius*, noble Romanes, of the honourable familie of the *Vrſini.* Of the Venetian nobilitie, *Auguſtinus Barbadicus, Benedictus Superantius, Vincentius Quirinus, Ioannes Lauretanus, Marinus Contarenus, Catherinus Malipetra, Georgius* and *Andreas Barbadicus, Marcus Antonius Landus, Franciſcus Bonus, Hieronimus Contarenus, Antonius Paſchaligus, Hieronimus Venerius*, all of the order of the Senatours. Beſides diuers other honourable gentlemen, K
who well deſerued to be enrolled in the eternall monuments of fame. Of the knights of MALTA were alſo many ſlaine, amongſt whom of the Germane nation theſe were chiefe: *Ioachim Spart*, Commendour of MOGVNTIA and FRANCKFORT, *Ro.* of *Hamberke*, Commendour of HEMMENDORF, and *Fra. Droſt.* Of them that were wounded, theſe were of greateſt name: *Don Iohn* the Generall, *Venerius* the Venetian Admirall ſhot through the foot, *Paulus Iordanus, Troilus Sauell*, and *Mar. Molinus*, with diuers others of leſſe fame, to the number of almoſt ſeuen thouſand.

The number of the Chriſtians ſlain in the battell of Lepanto.

Great was the ioy conceiued of this victorie, but to none more welcome than to the poore Chriſtians faſt chained in the Turkes gallies, of whom twelue thouſand were thereby deliuered from moſt miſerable thraldome, and contrary to all hope reſtored to their antient libertie. L

Two dayes after this victorie, *Venerius* ſent *Humfredus Iuſtinianus* with newes thereof vnto the Senate at VENICE: who comming in at the Adriaticke port about noone the nineteenth of October, by ſhooting off of certaine great pieces, gaue warning vnto the citie of his comming, which at that time hung in great ſuſpence betwixt hope and feare. The citizens generally awaked with the report of the great ordinance, came flocking by heapes to the port, euery man longing to heare the firſt newes. There they might ſee *Iuſtinian* comming afarre off with his gallie, but when he was come neerer, they might perceiue all the marriners attired like Turkes, and foure of the Turkes enſignes hanging behind at the poupe of the gallie, which filled their minds with the hope of good newes, deeming it to bee (as indeed it was) part of the ſpoyle of the enemie. But after that *Iuſtinian* was landed (which hee had much to doe for the preaſe) and M
was gone to the court, with a world of people following after him, crying out for newes: and had there deliuered his letters, and at large diſcourſed of all the ſucceſſe of the battell; which was foorthwith blowne into the citie; and that the marriners alſo after his departure had reported the victory; and that the enemy was in a great battell ouerthrowen: good God, how

A generall reioyſing, eſpecially in Venice, for the victorie.

the

A the people as men ouerioyed, ran vp and down the ſtreets, doubling and redoubling their ioyfull
name of victorie. The Senatours alſo reioycing together, gaue thankes to God with publicke
praiers and ioyfull hymnes in euery church: and afterwards by ringing of bels, peales of ordi-
nance, bone fires, and other ſuch like things, ſhewed all the tokens of ioy poſſible. And to make
this ioy the more generall, all priſoners were ſet at libertie, and all debts that exceeded not the
ſumme of fiue and twentie crownes, payed out of the common treaſurie, which was generally
done through all the Venetian ſeignorie: and a decree made, That that day whereon the victo-
rie was gotten, which was the ſeuenth of October, dedicated to the memoriall of *Iuſtina*, ſhould
for euer be kept holyday: and for the perpetuall remembrance therof, a great maſſe of money
was coyned, with the impreſſion of *Iuſtina* vpon it, and an inſcription declaring the victorie.
B Many alſo their neighbor princes ſent their embaſſadours congratulatorie to VENICE, namely,
the dukes of SAVOY, FLORENCE, FERRARA, PARMA, MANTVA, and VRBIN, and the
knights of MALTA. In which ſo publike ioy no man was ſeene to put on any mourning gar-
ments, or to ſhew any token of heauineſſe, although many had loſt their deareſt friends and nee-
reſt kinſmen, whoſe liues they reckoned not loſt, but giuen vnto the Chriſtian common weale.
The like reioycing was alſo made in ROME, in SPAINE, NAPLES, SICILIA, and MALTA, eſpecially
at ſuch times as embaſſadours from their neighbour princes, came to ioy them of this victorie:
yea and afterwards in other countries further off was like reioycing and ſignes of ioy, as with vs
here in ENGLAND.

This is that notable battell, commonly called the battell of LEPANTO, fought neere vnto the
C Iſland CVRZOLARI, the ſeuenth day of October, in the yeare 1571, the like whereof was neuer
fought at ſea againſt the Turke, wherein hee loſt his chiefe ſtrength at ſea, with moſt of his beſt
ſea captaines: and might thereby well perceiue what he and his ſucceſſours were to feare, if the
Chriſtian princes at vnitie amongſt themſelues, all diſcord ſet apart, ſhould in zeale of their reli-
gion ioyne their inuincible forces againſt them.

In the middeſt of all this ioy, generally conceiued of the late victorie, one of the chiefe priſo-
ners of the Turks, hearing it compared with the loſſe of CYPRVS (for that *Selymus* had therin loſt
his fleet, his beſt men of warre, with great ſtore of ordinance) by a fit compariſon ſhewed it not
to be ſo, ſaying, That the battell loſt, was vnto *Selymus* as if a man ſhould ſhaue his beard, which
would ere long grow againe; but that the loſſe of CYPRVS was vnto the Venetians, as the loſſe
D of an arme, which once cut off, could neuer bee againe recouered. Declaring thereby the great
inequalitie of the loſſe.

A wittie and fit compariſo made by a Turke, to ſhew that the loſſe of Cyprus was greater than the loſſe of the battell at Lepanto.

The rich ſpoyle taken from the enemie in this moſt glorious victorie, was thus deuided a-
mongſt the princes confederat. Vnto the Pope were allotted nineteene gallies, two galliots, nine
great pieces of ordnance, two and fortie leſſer pieces, and fourſcore and one priſoners. Vnto the
king of SPAINE eight and fiftie gallies and an halfe, ſix galliots and an halfe, eight and fiftie great
pieces and an halfe, eight great murthering pieces and an halfe, an hundred twentie eight leſſer
pieces, and a thouſand, ſeuen hundred and thirteen priſoners. Vnto the Venetians were aſſigned
for their ſhare, nine and thirtie gallies and an halfe, foure galliots and an halfe, nine and thirtie
great pieces and a halfe, fiue great murthering pieces and a halfe, fourſcore and ſix leſſer pieces,
E and a thouſand one hundred threeſcore and two priſoners. The reſt were beſtowed vpon ſuch
other princes as had giuen aid, or otherwiſe well deſerued in that ſeruice.

The ſpoile of the enemie diuided amongſt the confederats.

The ioy conceiued of this victorie was not ſo great amongſt the Chriſtians, but that the ſor-
row thereof was amongſt the Turkes farre greater. *Selymus* himſelfe was then at HADRIANO-
PLE, where eight dayes after the battell, newes was brought vnto him, That his fleet was ouer-
throwne and almoſt all taken or ſunke by the Chriſtians. Which ſo ſoone as he heard, hee was
ſtrucken with exceeding griefe: and ouercome with melancholy, would not that day ſuffer any
man to ſpeake with him. And the rumor of the ouerthrow ſtill encreaſing, had in ſhort time fil-
led all places with feare, teares, mourning, and heauineſſe: ſome bewayling their parents, ſome
their children, ſome their huſbands, ſome their friends or kinſmen there loſt. But that which moſt
F grieued the Turkiſh emperor, was the loſſe of ſo many worthy and expert captaines, of ſo ma-
ny skilfull maſters and notable ſouldiors; who brought vp all their liues at ſea, were not thought
inferiour to any then liuing: beſides the perpetuall ignominie and vnwonted diſgrace, thereby
inflicted vnto him and his poſteritie for euer. Wherefore full of wrath and indignation, he was
about to haue commanded all the Chriſtians in his dominions (in number infinit) to bee put to
death.

death. Doubting indeed nothing more, than that they wearie of the Turkish thraldome, and G
desirous of innouation, should with weapons put into their hands, rise vp against him, and take part with the other Christians his enemies. But whilest the other Bassaes (as men dismaied with the crueltie of the command) stood all silent, *Muhamet Bassa* for his former deserts in great fauor with the tyrant, thought it good to make proofe if his furie might by reasonable perswasion be mitigated, and some better course taken, both for the honour of *Selymus* himselfe, and the common good of the State: Yet well knowing how full of danger it was, in that tyrannicall government, openly to speake any thing contrarie to the good liking of the wilfull emperour, he durst not apertly contradict him: but leaning as it were to his opinion and pleasure, by little and little to draw him from himselfe; and so before he were aware, to lead him into his owne deuise, and by delay moderate the rigour of his former furie. To which purpose, he cunningly set vpon him H
in this sort.

Muhamet Bassa cunningly dissuadeth Selymus from so rigorous a resolution, by filling his head with most necessary considerations.

Your anger (said hee) *most magnificent and inuincible Emperour, against the Christians, is most iust: and in this my desire exceedeth all others, That they should endure and suffer such punishment as they haue of right deserued. Yet it behoueth vs so to satisfie our wrath, as men better regarding their owne good, than the hote desire of reuenge. And for as much as I am for your many and vndeserued fauours, in all loyaltie bounden vnto your highnesse aboue others; I reckon it in part my duetie, so much the more frankely to deliuer my opinion, such as it is, in matter of so great importance. Neither will I attemper my speech in any respect to the comforting of your grieued minde: for how can it bee that you, who following the worthie examples of your noble progenitors, haue alwayes heeretofore shewed* I
your most heroicall and couragious minde, contemning all the chaunces of fortune; should not for euer after shew your selfe to bee rather dreaded of all men, than dreadfull of any? Let others, whose kingdomes built vpon vncertaintie are subiect to the reuolution of time and chaunge of fortune, yeeld vnto their euill haps: as for you, whose empire is founded by the mightie hand of the most highest, and compassed about with an impregnable defence, and are your selfe by the power of God appointed king and commaunder of nations and people in number infinite, fortune may well a little pricke you, but neuer ouerthrow you. As for this late mischaunce, if it must needes so fall out, as proceeding from some immutable and eternall cause; must it bee therefore alwayes fixe and permanent? Onely those miseries and mischiefes which the cowardise or foolishnesse of men bring vnto themselues, haue their firme K
and certaine calamities: other common euents comming from other causes, haue also their common and sudden chaunges: But how this late mishap at sea may bee amended, and your former glorie there againe recouered, is heereafter to bee considered. Now for the present (in mine opinion) this one thing, as of all others most necessarie is to bee prouided; That the weake and worst fortified places of your empire, most subiect to daunger, may bee presently strengthened with strong garrisons; and that by your present repaire to the imperiall citie, you cheere vp the mindes of your heauie and dismayed subiects: which done, what shall let, but that you may at your pleasure bee reuenged to the full of the Christians? For there is no cause why we should feare the Christians, six hundred times and more before ouerthrowne: both our enemies and wee are the same men wee haue beene for many ages, wee beare the same minds, the same bodies, the same strength, the same weapons, wherewith wee haue gotten infinite victories, both of L
them and others. And although such bee the state of man, as that hee cannot otherwise but sometime or other taste of the worst turne; yet I thinke this present misfortune to bee rather imputed vnto some fatall cause to vs vnknowne, than to the valour of the Christians. Besides that, wee may well enough oppose one ouerthrow against our so many and infinite victories: yea wee are to giue immortall thankes vnto almightie God, that wee haue by force of armes subdued the rich and famous Island of CYPRVS, *and that your high designes haue in that point sorted to your hearts desire. And hard it is in mine opinion to iudge, whether this late vnfortunat battell shall more hurt vs, or the Christians: for besides that the multitude of the Turkes hath no feeling of so small a losse, they will not as men discouraged, giue themselues to mourning and vaine lamentations, but with greater courage and furie come foorth againe into battell, and reuenge this losse with the infinit calamities of the Christians: who after this their good hap,* M
will according to their woonted manner giue themselues to excesse, pleasure, carelesnesse, and ease, vnto their owne farther confusion. Thus haue I in briefe faithfully declared mine opinion: yet with that submissiue loyaltie, as that whatsoeuer shall proceed from the mouth of your imperiall Maiestie, shall be of me deemed most wisely and magnificently considered of.

The

A The Bassa was in such grace and authoritie with *Selymus*, that his opinion in counsell preuailed, and the tyrants wrath by his persuasion was well assuaged. But by the comming of *Vluzales* to court, the remainder of his former griefe and malancholy was fully quieted: who after he had excused himselfe of the late ouerthrow, and declared what he had himselfe done in the battell, and in testimonie thereof, presented him with one of the ensignes of the knights of MALTA, told him also how that he had left the Christian fleet so rent and torne, as that it could not possibly be made seruiceable against the next yeare: which newes was both of *Selymus* and the rest gladly heard. In the meane time *Selymus* placed this *Vluzales* in the stead of *Haly Bassa* that was slaine: and straightly commanded the great officers which had the charge of his nauie, to build new shipping night and day: and further enioyned euery Gouernor out of his prouince he had *Selymus repaireth his nauie with all diligence possible.*
B in charge, to haue in readinesse one gallie or two against the next Spring, as well for the defence of his owne dominions, as to reuenge the losse he had so lately sustained: whereunto also many of his great men put to their helping hands, and cheerfully furthered his desire. New supplies of soldiors were also presently raised, and put into his frontier towns, great store of new ordinance cast, weapons and armour prouided, and whatsoeuer else the necessitie of the present time required. So with the Turks stood reason and industry, rather than with the Christians, who (as some note) rather wanted discretion how to vse the victory, than valour to gaine the same: which whether it chanced for that prosperity begetteth negligence, or that men ioying in their present blisse regard little the time to come, I leaue it to the iudgement of the wiser to determine.

After this so memorable a victorie, the three great commanders of the fleet sat in counsell to *The Christian fleet dissolued*
C consult, what farther course they were best to take. But for as much as Winter began now to approach, and that they could not much doe vntill their fleet were new furnished and manned, they all resolued for that time to dissolue the fleet, and the next Spring in the beginning of April, to meet together againe at CORCYRA. Wherupon *Don Iohn* and *Columnius* returned to MESSANA, where they in safetie arriued in Nouember; and departing thence, and taking their leaue the one of the other, arriued, *Don Iohn* at NAPLES, and *Columnius* at ROME: where they were in both places with great ioy and triumph receiued.

The Venetians for all that grieued with the losse of CYPRVS, gaue not so ouer, but repairing their nauie with thirtie gallies, wherein were embarked sixe thousand souldiors, woon a castle in EPIRVS called MARGARITA: and also recouered the towne of SVPPOTO, which the Turkes had *Suppoto againe recouered by the Venetians*
D that Sommer before taken from them; but now hearing of this ouerthrow, did vpon the approch of the Venetian fleet, againe forsake it. The gallies also of CRETE conducted by *Canalis*, intercepted many of the Turks vessels laded with captiues and the spoiles of FAMAGVSTA, as they were passing thence to CONSTANTINOPLE.

Although vpon the late obtained victorie, a certaine reconciliation had beene made betwixt *Don Iohn* and *Venerius*, yet of the former dissention remained an inward heart-burning of one of them against the other: for which cause, the Spaniards requested the Venetians to appoint an other Admirall in his place. *Venerius* was now indeed a man of great yeres, and his strength far spent; yet for that in his aged body rested great wisedome and courage, and that they thought him for his great deserts worthy all honour, they were wonderfull loath, and vnwilling therein
E to gratifie the Spaniard: for why, they well knew there was no other cause of the Spaniards prowd hatred, but that he had stood against them vpon the honour of the Venetians: and farther, they liked not that the Spaniard should so presumptuonsly prescribe vnto them, whom they should place or displace in or out of their honorable offices. Neuertheless, not forgetting what commoditie came by concord, and what euils of discord, and that they might not against so mightie an enemie well spare the helpe of the Spaniard; they resolued to make choise of some other; who succeeding *Venerius*, might with one consent manage their wars together with *Don Iohn* and *Columnius*. There was then one *Iacobus Fuscarinus* their chiefe Gouernour in DALMATIA, who but a little before had notably fortified IADERA and the other frontier townes, and for the space of fourteene moneths had notably represt the furious incursions of the Turks:
F of him then absent and not desirous of the place (as of a man of worthie desert) the whole State by generall consent made choise for their Admirall & General by sea against the Turke: which most honourable place hee receiued not with all the solemne ceremonies thereto belonging, at VENICE, as the manner was, but at IADERA; from whence he in the Admirall gallie sent for that purpose by *Aloysius Grimanus* his successour in IADERA, sailed ouer to CORSYRA: where he found

found the old Admirall *Venerius*, with no leſſe care prouiding for all things, than if hee ſhould himſelfe haue ſtill continued the warre. Of which great care *Fuſcarinus* at his comming eaſed him, by taking it wholly vpon himſelfe. G

Caſtronouum in vain attempted by the Venetians

Whileſt *Fuſcarinus* thus lay making his preparation againſt the next Spring at CORCYRA, *Sara Martinengus*, who had the charge of the Adriaticke (by the counſell of *Venerius*, who was now returned to VENICE) vpon the ſudden landed his men, and beſieged CASTRO NOVUM, a ſtrong towne of the Turks in the borders of ISTRIA; where at his firſt comming he tooke the ſuburbs, and had in ſhort time brought the towne to great extremitie. But in the height of his hope to haue woon the towne, hearing that the Beglerbeg of GRECE was with great power comming thither, he was glad to raiſe his ſiege, and with all ſpeed to get him againe to ſea. The Turkes in like manner, to diſtreſſe the ſtrong towne of CATARO, holden by the Venetians in H the borders of DALMATIA, built a great and ſtrong fort vpon the paſſage from ſea to the town, wherein they placed great ſtore both of men and artillerie: in hope by keeping them of the towne from all reliefe by ſea, at length to gaine the towne which they had many times in vaine attempted by force; for by land it was alreadie enuironed with the cruell enemie, poſſeſſing the countrey round about it.

Superantius relieueth Cataro, and taketh a great fort of the Turkes.

Iacobus Superantius the great Prouidetour, then lying at CORCYRA with the Admirall, vnderſtanding how CATARO a towne of no ſmall importance, was thus both by ſea and land by the enemy diſtreſſed: with twentie gallies manned with the moſt choiſe ſouldiors could be pickt out of the whole fleet, tooke vpon him the raſing of the fort, and relieuing of the towne. *Superantius* with this ſelect companie, and certaine other gallies which met him by the way, came by night before the mouth of the bay of CATARO, and there diuiding I his fleet, left the one part therof at anchor before the fort, and with the other himſelfe couragiouſly paſſed by the fort, further into the bay: at whom the Turkes out of the fort made diuers ſhot, but (by reaſon it was darke) to ſmall purpoſe. In paſſing by, *Superantius* tooke ſuch view as he could of the fort, and by and by began on that ſide to batter the ſame; as did alſo the other gallies on the other ſide: and withall, landed their men on both ſides; who vpon ſignall giuen, ran reſolutely to the fort, and by plain force entring the ſame, preuailed vpon the fearful Turks, and put them to the ſword euery mothers ſonne; ſo that of all that great garriſon, was not one left aliue to carie newes of the ſlaughter. This fort was in length fiue hundred paces, but not ſtrong towards land, from whence no ſuch feare was doubted. In it was taken ſeuenteene great pieces of ordinance, with much faire armour, and great abundance of victuals: and ſeuen galliots which lay at anchor vnder the fort. CATARO thus relieued, *Superantius* with victorie returned againe to CORSYRA. K

1572 *Fuſcarinus* the Venetian Admirall with all things in readineſſe, hauing long lien at CORSYRA, expecting the comming of the confederats, as was before appointed; ſent *Superantius* the Prouidetour with fiue and twentie gallies to MESSANA, to haſten the comming of *Don Iohn*, and to attend vpon him by the way. But comming thither, and thinking to haue found a great fleete and a ſtrong power in good forwardneſſe to haue ſet forward; he found ſuch ſmall preparation, as well ſhewed the Spaniards ſmall care for repreſſing of the Turke, and that they would not be very forward in the ſeruice intended. Which filling him with griefe and indignation, cauſed him L to complaine vnto himſelfe of their vnfaithfulneſſe, and to bewaile the ſtate of his countrey, with the whole Chriſtian common-weale: for *Don Iohn* had before ſolemnely promiſed vnto the Venetian embaſſadour, that all things ſhould bee in readineſſe againſt the appointed time: but now a great part of Sommer was paſt, when ſcarce ſome few companies, and about fiftie gallies were met together at MESSANA; and when *Auria* would come with the reſt, no man could tell. So that the carefull Prouidetour ſtood now no leſſe in doubt of the Spaniards delay, than of the Turkes fury.

Selymus ſendeth out Vluzales with two hundred gallies.

Selymus, after the great ouerthrow he had receiued at the iſlands CVRZOLARES, for feare he ſhould be driuen quite out of the ſea, was aboue all things carefull for the renewing of his nauie: and hauing partly new built, partly repaired two hundred gallies, commended them to the conduct of *Vluzales*, with expreſſe charge, That by how much things had fallen out worſe the laſt M yeare, he ſhould with ſo much the more care now beware the like danger; and not to goe out of the bounds of the ARCHIPELAGO, or to aduenture battell but vpon aduantage, or at leaſtwiſe vpon an euen hand.

This *Vluzales* (otherwiſe called *Occhiall*) was an Italian borne in CALABRIA, who in his youth

A youth taken at ſea by the Turkes and chained in the gallie, and afterwards renouncing his faith, by many degrees grew vnto the higheſt preferments amongſt the Turks, & ſo became an exceeding plague, as well to his owne countrey as to all other of the Chriſtians bordering vpon the Mediterranean. He now Admirall for the Turke, after the manner of the prowd Barbarians, threatned with fire and ſword to be reuenged vpon the Venetians: which known at VENICE, much troubled them, aſwell acquainted with the furie of the old Archpyrat. Beſide that, *Ant. Barbarus* their embaſſador, all the time of this war kept in ſafe cuſtodie at CONSTANTINOPLE, had by letters certified them, what a great fleet, and what a ſtrong armie *Selymus* had prouided againſt them: and that he himſelfe told two hundred and fiftie ſaile of gallies when they ſet forward from CONSTANTINOPLE, beſide ſome other that were to meet with them at GALI-
B POLIS: and that therefore they ſhould beware how they encountred with the Turkes fleet, but vpon equall ſtrength. It was alſo at the ſame time commonly reported, that king *Philip* chiefe of the confederats, careleſſe of the warres againſt the Turke in the Eaſt, was about to turne his forces vpon the kingdomes of TVNES or ALGIERS, neerer vnto him (as in deed he did the yeare following.) The Venetians entangled with ſo many difficulties, were euen at their wits end, and day by day the Senat ſat from the riſing of the Sunne vnto the going down of the ſame, conſulting how all theſe miſchiefes were to be remedied. But for as much as the greateſt danger was to be feared from the Turks fleet, as then houering euen ouer their heads, they by letters commanded *Fuſcarinus* their Admirall, That whether the confederats came vnto him or not, he ſhould forthwith take his courſe towards the Eaſt; & there according to the enemies deſ-
C ſignes, & his own diſcretion and valour, to do what he ſhould think beſt to be done for the common good of his countrie: and not to refuſe to ioine with the enemie in battell, if he ſaw any good hope of victorie. Neither ceaſed they at the ſame time (both by their embaſſadours and letters) earneſtly to call both vpon the Pope and the king, to haſten their forces to encounter the enemie before he ſhould come out of his owne ſeas; and to carrie the terrour of the warre home to his owne doores, rather than to receiue it at their owne. The like meſſage was alſo done to *Don Iohn*, putting him in mind what his place, what the time, and what the danger of the time required: entreating him (if it were poſſible) of himſelfe to adde ſomething vnto that haſt which the neceſſitie of ſo important a cauſe required. Who neuertheleſſe for all the meſſages and letters to him ſent (which were many) went ſtil on faire & ſoftly, delaying from day to day; telling,
D that he would by and by come, and that the Spaniards would alwaies be ſo good as their word. Which was ſo far from his thought, that afterwards finding one excuſe after another, he not only ſtaied his comming, but called back again *Requiſenius* alſo, whom he had ſent before with 20 gallies to CORCYRA. Now were two months (fitteſt for the wars) vainly ſpent; when *Superantius* grieued to ſee time to no purpoſe ſo ſlip away, & fearing leaſt the reſt of the Sommer ſhould to as ſmal effect in like maner paſſe alſo, with great inſtance importuned him to haſten his iourney. Then at length *Don Iohn* anſwered, that the Venetians requeſted but reaſon, neither that he wiſhed for any thing more than to ſatisfie their deſires: but that a greater care hindred the leſſe, which was firſt to be preuented: He was aduertiſed (as he ſaid) that the French king pretending the ſuppreſſing of certain pyrats, had aſſembled a great fleet at ROCHEL, with purpoſe indeed to inuade
E SPAINE, now that the king was buſied in theſe wars againſt the Turk: & that therfore they muſt pardon him, if he preferred the regard of SPAINE before others, being expreſſely commanded from the king not to depart from MESSANA, vntill he had other commaundement from him. But whether this his excuſe by FRANCE, proceeded of a true feare or otherwiſe, the Venetians much doubted; and the rather, for that the French king vnderſtanding therof by the Venetians, was therewith (as reaſon was) exceedingly offended: proteſting, that he was euer ſo farre from that purpoſe of hindering any the confederat princes in that their religious warre, that if the troubles of his owne countrie would haue ſo permitted, he would gladly haue giuen them aid therein. Many there were alſo, that thought, *Enuie the auncient enemie of vertue and valour*, to haue had a great power in this delay: doubting whether the Spaniards would more reioyce of
F the victorie well hoped for, if they ſhould ioine with the Venetians, or grieue if the ſame ſhould by the Venetians be obtained without them. *Superantius* wearie of diſcourſes and long expectation, and almoſt out of hope of any helpe in time from the Spaniard; how vntowardly ſoeuer things went, thought better yet warily to moderat his griefe, than in ſo dangerous a time to giue any occaſion for the Spaniard to fall quite off. Yet ſpake he not fauningly or flatteringly of the

Vluzales a renegate Chriſtian, and now the Turks Admirall

Superantius hateneth Don Iohn.

matter, but with a certain modeſt grauitie declared, That he had thought heauen would ſooner G
haue fallen, than that *Don Iohn* would not at the appointed time haue come to CORCYRA. And withall beſought him, and wiſhed him to beware, that he brought not the common State into ſome great danger: if they had to do with ſuch an enemie as might be delaied with, then he ſaid he could eaſily abide delay; but now for that the warre and the enemie was ſuch, as wherein, or with whom neuer any Generall had dalied without loſſe, to what end did he longer deferre or trifle out the time? or what other fleet did he expect? If they ſhould diuide their forces, then were they all too weake; but vnited togither, ſtrong ynough to defend the common cauſe: The neerer the enemie came, the more haſt were to be made to ioine with the Venetian fleet. And what could be (as he told him) more honourable or glorious, than for him a noble yong gentleman royally deſcended, of whom the world had conceiued a great hope, that he would in mar- H
tiall honour exceed the glorie of his moſt famous anceſtors, againe to vanquiſh the proud Turk, the greateſt and moſt mightie monarch of the world; to fight the battel of the higheſt, to aſſure the Chriſtian common-wealth againſt ſo puiſſant an enemie, and to purchaſe vnto himſelfe immortall glorie and renowne. As for the French, there was no ſuch thing to be feared as was pretended, who with ſuch ſlender preparation not worth the name of a fleet, was not ſo vnaduiſed as to ſet vpon a kingdome of ſuch ſtrength and power as SPAINE. Furthermore (he ſaid) that it concerned not the Venetians more than the king himſelfe, to haue the Turks repreſſed: whoſe kingdomes of NAPLES, SICILIA, and SPAINE, were no leſſe than their territory, expoſed to danger by ſea. The good ſucceſſe of their affaires in the Eaſt, would open the way for the conqueſt of AFFRICKE: but if the Turke ſhould preuaile, then were they to deſpaire, not of AF- I
FRICKE, but of all ITALIE, SICILIE, yea and of SPAINE it ſelfe. The time (he ſaid) and neceſſitie of the war, with the extremitie of the danger of the whole and common *State*, required that he ſhould with all his power and ſpeed poſſible, take vpon him the defence of the common cauſe, or to ſay more truely of the Chriſtian common-weale, then ſo dangerouſly impugned. Theſe reaſons drawn from the common good and the truth it ſelfe, much moued the Ge-
neral: but the kings pleaſure was to be preferred before all reaſons or dangers that could be alleaged. But hearing afterward what reſolute command the Venetian *Senat* had ſent vnto their Admirall, he became exceeding carefull: for he feared leaſt if the Admirall ſhould without his helpe fight the battell and gaine the victorie, he would conuert all the glorie thereof vnto him-
ſelfe; but if he ſhould chance to be ouerthrowne, it would turne to his vtter reproach and per- K
petuall infamie, that in ſo neceſſarie a time he had withdrawn himſelfe from the common cauſe. Wherefore as a man perplexed, and in doubt what to do, he ſtood for a while as one at his wits end: yet at laſt, he vpon deliberation reſolued to take a middle courſe, and ſo neither without the command of the king (by whoſe preſcript order, all was to be done) to depart with the fleet from MESSANA; neither altogither to fruſtrat the confederats of the expected aid. And to that
He ſendeth Lilly of Andrada with 22 gallies. purpoſe ſent two and twentie gallies vnder the conduct of one *Lilly* of ANDRADA (a noble gentleman) to the Venetian Admirall at CORCYRA; with whom went alſo *Columnius* with the Popes fleet. Now was *Pius Quintus* the late Pope dead, and *Vgo Boncompanius* by the name of *Gregorius Decimus Tertius*, Pope in his ſtead, who vpon the ſame conditions with his pre-
deceſſour, had entred into the league; and liking verie well of *Columnius*, kept him ſtill for his L
Admirall.

Long had *Fuſcarinus* expected the comming of the confederats, and albeit that the yeare was farre ſpent, Auguſt being then come, and no ſuch aid ſent as he had expected; yet deſiring to do ſomething worth the remembrance and beſeeming their honour, he earneſtly perſuaded *Columnius* and *Lilly* to ſet forward with him toward the Eaſt, & with their vnited forces to giue the enemie battell: telling them, That if they were all of like courage, they ſhould go not only to the glory of the preſent battell, but to the great honour and aduancement of the whole Chriſtian common-weale. After that he extenuated the power of the enemie, ſaying, That he could not but maruell, from whence ſuch a number of gallies as was reported, could ſo ſuddenly be M
gathered; or wherupon ſo great confidence and boldnes was grown vnto them, ſo lately ouerthrown and put to flight: The enemies fleet (he ſaid) was the yeare before ouercome and diſperſed, the captaines and marriners ſlaine; and that therefore it was not credible, that ſo many gallies could with ſuch celerity be built, and ſuch a number of mariners & maſters as was needfull, in ſo ſhort time prouided: That the prouiſion of the enemy was by flying fame made far

Don Iohn in doubt whether to ſend aid to the Venetians, or not.

greater

A greater than indeed it was,or possibly could be; for why, they might easily guesse what the enemie was able to doe,by the Christians themselues,who could not without much ado and great labour build their fleets, and traine vp their marriners and masters: and that therefore letting fame flie,which commonly maketh things greater and more dreadfull than they are,he was verily perswaded, that the enemie was glad to vse most vnskilfull and ignorant as well marriners masters as souldiors; who suddenly taken vp in the inland countries, and put into the gallies, knew not so much as the very names of the ropes and tacklings,and other equippage: and then those gallies which they had, were like ynough to be but weake, as of them which were the last yeare rent and brused,and now againe botched vp; or in hast built of greene timber, could not be nimble or greatly seruiceable. Wherefore he exhorted them, as valiant men, to set forward
B against the enemie; and that with the greater courage, for that the last yeares victorie had opened vnto them the way for the gaining of another. Which if it should so fall out, as good hope there was, they should thereby take from the proud enemie both power and hope (but in long time) to be able to recouer his strength at sea: so that they in the meane time without feare might at their pleasure take the rich ilands in the ARCHIPELAGO. Now if the Turks declining battell should retire themselues into the HELLESPONT, then might they with fire and sword spoyle all the frontiers of their dominions on this side the straits, and open a way vnto the Christians to doe great matters.

Hardly were *Columnius* and *Lilly* perswaded by the Admirall: neither did they thereunto giue their consent, vntill it was decreed, That they should not in any case ioyne battell with the ene-
C mie,but with their galleons and galeasses first placed in the front of the battaile, in whom consisted the greatest hope of the victorie. So setting forward toward the enemie,and come to COMMENTITIA, letters were brought vnto them from *Don Iohn*, certifying them, That he was now by letters from the king commaunded to come towards the East, and to ioyne his forces with the confederats; but yet that for certain dayes he could not come, vntil he were better prouided of all things necessarie: and that therefore they should in the meane time carefully looke vnto all things, promising so soone as he possibly could to come vnto them. Vpon these letters *Columnius* and *Lilly* began to doubt, Whether to goe on further, or to expect the comming of the Generall: yet for as much as he had not expressely written any thing concerning their staying, and *Fuscarinus* vrged them forwards, on they went, with their fleet deuided into three battels.
D The whole fleet consisted of an hundred fiftie fiue gallies, six galleasses, and twentie tall ships: in the right wing was *Superantius*: in the left wing *Canalius*: and in the middle battell *Columnius*, *Fuscarinus*, and *Lilly*: and in the rereward followed *Quirinus*. Before each battell went two of the galleasses, still in readinesse for present battaile. In this order they came first to ZACYNTHVS (commonly called ZANTO) and so to CERIGO: the next day after to COLVBRARIA (commonly called DRAGONARIA, oueragainst CERIGO:) Here *Angelus Surianus*, a valiant gentleman, sent before to discouer the enemie and what strength he was of, returning vnto the fleet, declared vnto the Admirall, That the Turks fleet, consisting of an hundred and threescore gallies, threescore galliots, and foure great ships, lay about MALVASIA, in the entrance of the bay called SINVS ARGOLICVS, vpon the borders of PELOPONESVS, about fiftie miles off from
E the Christian fleet. Shortly after the same fleet was againe discouered, making for MALEA: whereupon the Christians before resolued to fight whereseoeuer they should meet the enemie, forthwith put themselues in order of battaile, and so with their galleasses in the front, made with what speed they could toward him. These two fleets were thought for many respects almost equall: the enemie was in number moe, but inferiour in strength. The Christian fleet by reason of the heauinesse of the galleasses, made but small way; and the enemie afraid of the great store of ordinance the galleasses carried, durst not come neere them. The Turks fleet was rather nimble than strong; but ours more firme and forward. Looke wherin each exceeded the other, therwith they endeuored to help themselues and annoy the enemie. The Christians fearing to be circumuented by the multitude of their enemies, opposed their ships and galleasses before them
F as a most sure fortresse: and the Turke, by how much he had had the worse successe the yeare before, was so much the more carefull to beware how he endangered himselfe within the reach of the galleasses. The Christians desired nothing more than to fight, & to come to handy blows: but the Turke, who thought it sufficient for the present not to be ouercome, sometime made away as fast as he could, and by and by stayed againe, if happily he might haue taken the gallies

The number and order of the Christian fleet.

The Christian fleet and the Turkes almost equall.

The Turkes warily declineth battell.

ſeperated from the galeaſſes, neuer ſeeming willing to aduenture further than reaſon and diſcre- G
tion were. The enemy ſeeing the Chriſtian fleet comming ſtill on, & ready to giue battel, firſt ſeemed as if he would haue done the like, but afterwards turned his courſe vpon the right hand, and kept alooſe alongſt the coaſt of MALEA: At which time the Chriſtians, although they were very deſirous to haue followed them, yet the Turks with their nimble fleet were quickly too far gone for the Chriſtian fleet to ouertake them, eſpecially with their heauie ſhips. That day almoſt ſpent as it were in the chaſe of the enemy, towards the going down of the Sunne the enemy put into the current of the ſea betwixt CERIGO and the Harts iſland, in breadth about ten miles; and there diuiding their fleet into three parts, lay in good order, as expecting the comming of the Chriſtians, with the prows of their gallies turned, as if vpon the confidence of the place, which they had filled ouerthwart, they had purpoſed nothing more than to fight. Yet H
both fleets ſeemed reſolued; the one not to fight without the galleaſſes, & the other not to come neare thoſe hot ſhips, from whom they had but the yeare before receiued ſo great harme. And
Vluzales meaning nothing leſſe, yet maketh ſhew of battell. although the enemy, as was afterwards knowne, purpoſed nothing leſſe than to fight, but vpon great aduantage: yet fearing by open flight to diſhonour his lord and maſter, and by granting as it were of victorie, to encreaſe the fame of the Chriſtians, the craftie pyrat made a great ſhew of that he leaſt indeed purpoſed. For pretending a great deſire to fight, he indeed deluded the Chriſtians hope: who although the wind had failed them, yet in hope the enemie would abide them battell, with much labour and rowing came ſo neere him, that the great ſhot began to flie too and fro on both ſides: but when the matter ſhould haue come to haue bin tried by dint of
The Turks politickly retire. ſword, then it plainly appeared what the enemie had indeed purpoſed: for ſtill keeping the I
prows of his gallies vpon the Chriſtians, he by little and little ſhrunke backe: and beſide that the ſhadow of the night began then to approch, he cauſed all his great ordinance, charged only with pouder, to be ſhot off, and ſo in the thicke of the ſmoke retired vnſeene; colouring his ſubtill departure alſo by certaine lights left in their cock-boats, making ſhew as if the whole fleet had ſtill there ſtaied. By this means the Turks with great celeritie eſcaped, being alſo holpen in this, that the Chriſtians hindred by the heauines of the galleaſſes, could not but faire and ſoftly purſue them: for theſe galleaſſes, as they are veſſels of great ſeruice, ſo are they alſo heauie & vnweldie, & not fit for chaſe. The departure of the enemie at length known, the Chriſtians alſo vnwilling to fight by night, returned to CERIGO. Two daies after the Turks ſtaied
in the bay of TENARVS, now called METAPAN, and the Chriſtians at CERIGO; contented in K
that, that the enemie was the cauſe that the battell was not fought, and reckoning his wearie and
The Chriſtians deſirous of battell, goe againſt the Turkes. couert declining of battell, as a ſecret confeſſion of the victorie. The third day after, the Chriſtians deſirous of nothing more than to ioine in battell with the enemie, in their former order ſet forward from CERIGO, and ſayling all the night, were in the breake of the day deſcried from land by the Turkes: whereupon *Vluzales* by ſhooting off of certain warning pieces, commanded all his men to go abourd, and to put themſelues in readines for battell. And now the Chriſtians were not far off, when as the Turks (leaſt declining of battell might reprooue them of feare) came out of the hauen, with their fleet diuided into three battels: wherof the left wing was extended a great way into the ſea, the right wing ſtill keeping neere vnto the main, and in
the middle battel was *Vluzales* himſelf: who came all on no faſter than the tide draue them, ſtay- L
ing their courſe oft times of purpoſe, to haue drawne the gallies of the Chriſtians from the galleaſſes and ſhips. *Vluzales* ſeeing his fleet thus in order, and fearing nothing more than the galeaſſes, commanded both the wings of his fleet (hauing in each of them fourſcore gallies) to fetch a great compaſſe about, the one on the right hand, and the other on the left, alooſe off from the galleaſſes, and ſo to aſſaile the wings of the Chriſtians on the ſides or behind: in hope ſo to haue diſordered their battell, and without danger to haue drawn the gallies from the galleaſſes and the other heauy ſhips. Which their intent the Chriſtians perceiuing, in their wings turned about their gallies alſo, in manner of the new Moone, their maine battell ſtill facing the middle battell of the Turks. The wings of the Turks fleet thus far ſeperated from the middle battell, ſeemed to preſent vnto the Chriſtians a great aduantage: which *Fuſcarinus* (intentiue to all the offers of M
good fortune) quickly perceiuing, and calling vnto *Columnius* and *Lilly*, and ſhewing them the enemies main battell at hand, and the wings gone a great way off, requeſted and perſuaded them, That not ſtaying for the heauie ſhips and galleaſſes, they would with him vpon the ſoden aſſaile the enemies middle battell, now deſtitute of the wings: not doubting, but ſo to ouerthrow

the

A the enemies greateſt ſtrength there, before the wings could, now they were ſo far gone, ioyne themſelues to the battell againe. What could as he ſaid haue happened more wiſhedly, than to haue their battell diuided? So that they might at more aduantage fight againſt euery part thereof, now ſeperated, than againſt all three parts at once. If they had thought themſelues not only equall, but too ſtrong for the whole enemies fleet vnited, ſhould they not the better ouercome them apart and diſperſed? The oportunitie he ſaid was but ſhort, and therefore to be forthwith reſolued vpon. If they would take the preſent occaſion of victorie then offered, and as reſolute men charge their enemies, little fearing any ſuch thing, they ſhould by their celeritie and valour teach the Turks, what the Chriſtian diſcipline of war and power was able to do: but if they would therin vſe delay, they ſhould ere long in vain wiſh for the like occaſion they had let ſlip,
B when as their battell was againe ſtrengthned with the wings. This the Admirals ſpeech was of moſt that heard it ioyfully receiued, and his counſell well liked; and that with ſuch a generall cheerfulnes of the ſouldiours, as ſhewed in them no want of courage to haue giuen the enemy preſent battell. But *Columnius* and *Lilly* being of the ſame mind they had bin alwaies, ſaid it were daungerous ſo to do, for feare of drawing the whole three battels of the enemy at once vpon them, againſt which they ſhould be too weak, without the helpe of the galleaſſes and heauie ſhips: and therfore ſaid flatly, That without thoſe veſſels, ſo much feared of their enemies, they would not in any caſe hazard the fortune of a battell. But whether *Columnius* and *Lilly* were of that opinion, for that they ſo thought, or were ſo charged by *Don Iohn* (of
C whom they altogither depended) not to fight in his abſence, many doubted. The wings of the Chriſtians in turning about to confront the wings of the enemie, were a little diſordered: which the Turks perceiuing, and taking the preſent oportunitie, with fifteen of their gallies were about to haue charged the ſtragling gallies. Which *Superantius* perceiuing, to ſtay their courſe, went out couragiouſly againſt them with foure gallies, and made with them a great fight: in the heat whereof, *Superantius* ſeeing fortie mo of the enemies gallies making towards him, and doubting to be incloſed, with all ſpeed ſent for reliefe, which came preſently in, namely, twentie gallies, with two of the galleaſſes: which forthwith ſent their thundering ſhot ſo thicke and furiouſly amongſt their enemies, that in a little time eighteen of their gallies were by them all rent and torne; and the Turks therwith diſmayed, were glad in ſuch haſt to returne, as if they had rather fled than retired. *Superantius* hauing at that fight but one of his gallies ſhot through, re-
D turned againe vnto his place. Of this light fight many deemed what would haue bin the euent of the whole battell, if the opinion of *Fuſcarinus* had preuailed. Both the fleets falling againe into their order, although the Chriſtians could not ſo faſt follow, as the Turks went before them; yet came they ſo neere them, that oftentimes they changed bullets, as well with their ſmall ſhot as their great. And yet for all that, it was by many ſignes gathered, that neither the Turks would abide preſent battell, neither the Chriſtians longer delay, if by their enemies they ſo might. The Chriſtians had agreed (as is before ſaid) not to ioine in battell without their galleaſſes and tall ſhips: which *Vluzales* well vnderſtood both by the fugitiues and his owne eſpials, as alſo by their manner of ſayling. And he himſelfe although he had no great deſire to fight: yet to be the
E better able to fruſtrate the endeauours of the Chriſtians, who with great labour drew with them the galleaſſes and other heauie ſhips, ſent his chargeable great ſhips to MALVASIA, there to be vnrigged; wherby he diſcharged himſelfe of a great burthen, and made himſelfe able at his own choice and pleaſure to leaue or take, to fight or not: and alſo with ſuch ſouldiors and other neceſſaries as were in the ſame great ſhips, ſupplyed the wants of his whole fleet. By which policie the matter was brought to that paſſe, that if the Chriſtians would needs draw the enemie to battell, they muſt of neceſſitie forſake their galleaſſes, their moſt aſſured ſtrength: or if they would not leaue them, then they could not by any means enforce the readie enemie to fight. The day now declining, the enemie ſuppoſing himſelf to haue done ynough for that time, both for the abating of the heat of the Chriſtians, and incouraging of his own people, in ſeemly or-
F der, as one not afraid, ſayled with his fleet to CORONA. The Chriſtians in like manner retiring themſelues to CERIGO.

The Turks fleet at Corona, and the Chriſtians at Cerigo.

Whileſt things thus went, *Don Iohn* by a frigot ſent of purpoſe gaue knowledge to the fleet, that he was come to CORCYRA, ſharply blaming the great commaunders for their departure, and that they ſtayed not for his comming: and further commanded them as their Generall, all other things ſet apart, forthwith to meet him at ZACYNTHVS, there to reſolue of all matters.

Don Iohn ſendeth word to the fleet to meet him at Zacinthus.

Columnius wholly deuouted to the Spaniards,and preferring the fauour of *Don Iohn* before the G
reſt,hearing his meſſage, was in ſuch haſt to haue returned, that he would haue perſuaded *Fuſcarinus* to haue left the heauie veſſels and other weake gallies at CERIGO, and with an hundred of the beſt gallies with all ſpeed to haue returned to the Generall. Of which opinion was alſo *Lilly*.But *Fuſcarinus* more carefull than the reſt,as he whom the danger more concerned,would not yeeld to that perſuaſion: for that in ſo doing they ſhould (as he ſaid)leaue the ſhips & galleaſſes,the chiefe part of their ſtrength, in danger to be ſpoyled by the enemy; whom they now kept at a bay,without the help of the Generall; and ſhould, as he well hoped, by often prouoking of him, at one time or other draw him to battell, and haue ouer him a notable victorie. And therefore requeſted them for the loue of God, and the zeale they bare vnto the common good of all Chriſtendome,not to depart farther off,nor to ſuffer the enemie to eſcape out of their H
hands, neither by their departure to leaue the iſlands of the Venetians ſubiect to the fury of the enemy: wheras the Generall might at his pleaſure and without danger come vnto them, they lying betwixt the enemy and him.But *Columnius* and *Lilly* reſolutely ſet downe, hap what hap ſhould,to do what *Don Iohn* had commanded, would not liſten vnto the reaſonable perſuaſions of the Venetian Admirall,but told him flatly, That if he would not in that they had ſaid yeeld vnto them,they would forthwith leaue him vnto himſelfe,and with their gallies preſently return to ZACYNTHVS, as the Generall had commaunded. Whileſt they were yet thus diſcourſing newes was brought, That the enemy was come with his fleet into the fret of CERIGO: which cauſed thē all with one conſent to reſolue in ſuch order to paſſe by the enemy,as if they ſhould haue giuen him preſent battell: wheras before,they were determined by the perſuaſion of *Fuſ-* I
carinus, to haue gone to CRETE,and their leauing the ſhips and galleaſſes in ſafetie, to haue afterwards returned to the Generall. In ſuch order the Chriſtians paſſed by the enemies fleet, which lay ſtill in the fret of the ſea without mouing, ſtanding as it were rather vpon the guard of themſelues,than reſolued for battell.In three daies ſayling they came to ZACYNTHVS,where they found not *Don Iohn*,but two of his gallies,and commandment,that they ſhould there leaue their heauie ſhips, and with their gallies come to CEPHALENIA, where they ſhould not faile to meet him.Hereupon the Venetians were exceedingly grieued,and muttered through the whole fleet,That the Spaniards bearing themſelues vpon their wealth, were too proud,and in compariſon of themſelues regarded neither the conditions of the league,neither any other mans credit, K
but trode all men vnderfoot; and would now vſe the Venetians not as their friends and confederats,but as their ſlaues & vaſſals,feeding them in the mean time but with vaine hope. Yet for as much as the time & neceſſitie ſo required, they were content to be ouerruled: and ſo leauing their ſhips and galleaſſes at ZACYNTHVS,went with the reſt of the fleet to CEPHALENIA: whither *Don Iohn* was not yet come, but had ſent word thither, That if they had any deſire to ioyne their forces with his,they ſhould yet come further backe vnto him in CORCYRA.This meſſage,which they had rather feared than expected,much troubled the Venetians:who readier to ſuſpect euery miſchiefe, than to hope for any good,began to fret and complaine, That the Spaniards could very well tell the Venetians what they had to doe, and forget in the mean time what was on their own part to be performed.A hard thing it was to ſay(and yet to be ſaid)that now they had more to do with thoſe their dallying friends and confederats,than with their ene- L
mies: for with their enemies they were to fight but in time of battell,but with them they were to wreſtle and ſtriue at all times and in all places.They were by them(as they ſaid)drawn from the ſight of their enemies,when as they might haue been ouerthrowne: not to the intent that with their vnited forces they might more ſafely fight againſt them,or vnder the conduct of *Don Iohn* gaine the victorie; but rather leaſt any thing ſhould haue bin done, which might be to the honour or profit of the Venetians: and that time which was to haue bin beſtowed in the managing of the war, ſpent in lingering and delaying,and vain going forward and backward to no purpoſe.One only way there was (as they ſaid) to haue diſpatched with the Turke, which was, by ouercomming him in annother notable battell,and ſo to haue vtterly broken his ſtrength at M
ſea: which courſe the confederats made no leſſe difficult by their ofwardnes and delaies, than the enemy by declining of battell: That they had long ago by many ſecret ſignes probably coniectured,that the Spaniards had more care to hinder & croſſe other mens doings,than to do any thing of themſelues: That their indeauors were, to fruſtrat thoſe great hopes which promiſed vnto the Chriſtian common-weale the greateſt felicitie and happineſſe, togither with immortall

Don Iohn ſendeth for the fleet to Cephalenia, where he alſo faileth to meet them.

Don Iohn commandeth the fleet to repaire vnto him to Corcyra.

A mortall glory: and, That the Turks, of late diſcouraged with the fortunate proceedings of the Chriſtians, might againe reioyce at their miſhaps.

The Venetians, notwithſtanding all theſe their murmuring ſpeeches, loath to fall off from the Spaniard, kept ſtill on with the reſt vntill they came to *Don Iohn* at CORCYRA, who then lay with three and fiftie gallies, and eighteene ſhips at SPILCA, in the vttermoſt end of the iſland. At their firſt meeting, *Don Iohn* ſhewed himſelfe not a little offended, that they had not with more dutie before attended his comming: and they againe not a little complained of his long ſtay, with many other their grieuances, which were tedious here to rehearſe. The fleet now all with much adoe at length met together, which conſiſted of two hundred gallies, nine galleaſſes, and thirtie ſix tall ſhips: it was by generall conſent agreed, that they ſhould againe ſet forward
B toward the enemie. They were not yet vnder ſaile, when two of their eſpials brought them newes, that the enemies fleet (weakly furniſhed both of marriners and ſouldiors) was come to NAVARINVM: which filled them all with good hope, that the Turks fleet ſo euill prouided, might in that place vpon the ſudden be eaſily oppreſſed; and the rather, if they came vpon them vnexpected. Wherefore, becauſe they would not be deſcried, they kept not their courſe on right forth, but ſailing by night, kept aloofe vpon the right hand: and hauing paſſed ZACYNTHVS, came with great ſilence vnto the STROPHADES, where they lay at anchor all that day. In the euening they looſed thence, ſo caſting their courſe, that the more to terrifie the enemie, they might before day fall vpon him; and be ſeene in the mouth of the hauen where he lay, before there could bee
C any report made of their comming thither. But this courſe ſo well ſet, the time was ſo euill caſt, that it was faire day long before they could come to the appoynted place; when the Turks out of their watch-towers diſcouering a farre off the comming of the Chriſtian fleet, gaue warning thereof vnto their fellowes: whereupon an alarum was preſently raiſed in the towne, and all men in armes ran headlong to the wals and to the hauen. But the Turkes out of hope with their euill rigged fleet to be able to withſtand the Chriſtians, and not daring to truſt to that weak harbour, and all now in a great hurly burly, ran confuſedly hand ouer head, ſouldiors and marriners aboord: and whileſt they had yet time, got them in haſt out of that harbour, and as men chaſed by their enemies, got them into ſafe harbour at MODON, a ſtrong towne of PELOPONESVS about ſixe miles off. *Columnius* was ſent before the reſt of the fleet to haue purſued them: but they were got ſo farre before him, that they had recouered the harbour before hee could ouer-
D take any of them. The Chriſtian fleet comming before the harbour, and leauing a ſpace as it were of purpoſe for the enemy to come out into, there lay in the face of the towne, daring the Turks battell. But when they had ſo lien almoſt all that day, and no man durſt come out; and now towards the euening certaine ſignes of tempeſt appeared, the Chriſtians fearing to bee by force of weather driuen on ground, put farther off againe to ſea. Then at length *Vluzales* ſent out certaine light gallies to follow in the taile of the fleet, when the confederates ſuddenly ſtaying their courſe, and turning their prowes vpon them, draue them headlong againe into the harbour: and afterwards retired themſelues with the whole fleet into the iſlands OENVSÆ, now called SAPIENTIA, right oppoſite againſt MODON. The next day wanting freſh water, they remooued vnto the bay of MESSANA, there to water in the mouth of the riuer Pamiſus, which there falleth
E into the ſea: where in paſſing by CORONE, they were oftentimes ſhot at out of the towne; and landing their men to water, were encountred by certaine troups of horſemen, ſent for that purpoſe by *Vluzales*. There was water dearely bought with the liues of many there ſlaine on both ſides: in the end, the Chriſtians preuailing, watered, and ſo againe returned vnto the OENVSÆ from whence they came.

The Chriſtian fleet altogether at Corcyra, ſetteth forward againe towards the enemy.

The Chriſtians offer the Turke battell.

METHONE or MODON (for it is by both names knowne) ſtandeth almoſt in an Iſland ſtretching farre into the ſea, where toward the Weſt runneth out a long point of the land a great way into the ſea; in the vttermoſt part whereof, ſtandeth a great round tower. The towne it ſelfe is on the one ſide encloſed with the ſea, and toward the land ſo ſtrongly fortified, as that it ſeemeth
F almoſt impregnable. Towards the South commeth in a faire bay about three miles wide, ſafe from all winds except the Northerly wind only: and ſhut vp by a litle iſland in the mouth of the bay, maketh a ſafe and quiet harbour, with two entrances thereinto on either ſide of the iſland. Within this bay lay the Turkes fleet, with the ſternes of their gallies toward the land, and their prows towards the ſea. At the Southerly comming in of the bay ſtandeth an hill, which the inhabitants call ALBVS; on the top whereof, the enemie had placed ſix great pieces of ordinance, where-

The deſcription of the bay of Modon.

wherewith to keepe the Christians from entring that way. So had they also vpon that point of G
the maine, which (as we said) runneth out from the towne, and vpon *S. Bernards* rocke, planted
other great pieces of ordinance to defend that passage also. The Christians comming vnto the
mouth of the bay, there lay with their fleet diuided into foure parts, but yet doubtfull what to
doe: for beside that the entrances of the bay were but narrow, they were also farre more dange-
rous to be entred, by reason of the great ordinance planted vpon them. Neuertheless, the Ve-
netian Admirall in hope of good successe, and loth to let the fearfull enemie so to escape out of
their hands, would faine haue perswaded the Generall with his whole fleet to haue entred the
bay, and there in the harbour to haue oppressed the enemy: which hee shewed to be no matter
to doe, for that the enemie was too weake in strength, and could not be from land relieued. In
which doing, they should indeed ouerthrow but one fleet; but in the ouerthrowing of that one, H
cut in sunder all the sinewes of the Turkish empire by sea: and raising a tumult in the bay, and
filling all with a generall feare, should vndoubtedly at the first onset put the enemie to flight:
Which done, what should let, but that carrying about with them the terrour of the victorie,
they should with their victorious fleet, take from the Turk all the islands of the ÆGEVM? That
truly and wisely it was said of *Themistocles*, That whosoeuer had the command of the sea, must
needs also preuaile in the rest, and at length carrie away the victorie by land also. It was (as he
said) the part of good chieftains, not to be wanting vnto themselues when occasion was offered:
besides that, they were the same Turks, whom they had but the yeare before vanquished; and
what had that one yeare either taken from them, or giuen vnto the Turks? or what should they
feare six pieces of ordinance mounted vpon a hill, who if they should vndertake the battel, were I
not to feare the great store of ordinance in two hundred & threescore of the enemies gallies and
galliots? I my selfe (said he) will be the guide and leader, in whatsoeuer shall seeme most diffi-
cult and dangerous: and will in person my selfe be the first that shall enter the harbour, and ad-
uenture the first danger. Great victories (he said) were not to be gained but with great aduen-
tures; and that therefore the matter were to be hasted, before more aid should be sent vnto the
Turkes. Wherefore they should as resolute men attempt that, the Turkes thought the Christi-
ans durst not to haue attempted; and with the same courage breake into the bay, wherwith they
had but the yere before broken the strength of the same enemy; and by the power of God, carry
away another notable triumph of the vanquished Turkes: who ouercome in a second battel at
Don Iohn refu-seth to follow the counsell of the Admirall. sea, must needs depart with all their maritime territories. With euill liking of the Spaniards was K
the Venetian Admiral heard. And *Don Iohn* the General, deeming both the time and place vnfit
for the attempting of so great an exploit, rehearsed on the one side, the strength of the enemy,
the disaduantage of the place, the difficultie of the battel, with the manifold and great calamities
receiued by the ouerhasty and rash attempts of their enemies: That the enemies strength was
not to be so much deemed by the eye, or by report, as by reason; and that many in seeking to in-
crease their former glory, had in so doing ouerthrown the same: That the Christians in entring
and aduenturing the harbour, should on the one side be beaten with the artillerie from the hill;
and on the other with the artillerie out of the castle of MODON: And that it was not like, that
Vluzales should if need were, lacke aid from land, who but the other day had sent great troups
of horsemen to haue kept the Christians from watering: That a matter of so great importance, L
was (by *Fuscarinus* his leaue) not rashly to be taken in hand, vpon an heat and hautinesse of sto-
macke, but vpon graue and mature deliberation: for if they should in a place of so great disad-
uantage, hazard the fortune of a generall battell, it should seeme that either he knew not that
kind of fight, and force of the enemy, or else would make the bay of MODON more famous
by the ouerthrow of the Christians, than was the CVRZVLARI by the slaughter of the Turks.
Then what a shame would it be, if they which were about to oppresse the enemies fleet, should
themselues be ouerthrown, and that in their owne deuice. He had rather (as he said) preserue his
owne fleet, than to take six hundred of the enemies gallies; and to account the same for a greater
honour. Which he determined not, for that he would not haue any thing done, but that vnripe
occasions should not be too much hastned, and as it were thrust headlong forward: wheras time M
would giue opportunitie for the ouerthrow of the Turks fleet, so that they ran not blindly on
headlong: and that in future time, the Venetians would reioice that they had so moderated their
desires. The Christians (he said) had sufficiently preuailed, if those things should fall out well,
which were warily and aduisedly considered and resolued vpon.

The

A The matter thus on both ſides debated, and nothing done, they returned with the fleet into the port of NAVARINVM. This proceeding, as it diuerſly mooued the Spaniards and the Venetians, ſo brought it foorth diuers ſpeaches, euery man ſpeaking in fauour of his owne nation. The Spaniard openly vaunted, That he had moſt prouidently reſolued; for that how deere the counſell of the Venetian Admirall would haue coſt if it had beene followed, the thing it ſelfe (as he ſaid) ſhewed, by the extreame danger thereof preſented, not in the doubtfull opinion of men, but laied open before their eyes. The Venetians on the other ſide more deſirous of battell, the neerer they had ſeene the opportunity to haue preuailed vpon the enemy, the more impatiently they endured ſo aſſured a victory to haue bene let ſlip out of their hands: and therof ſpake accordingly.

B The Chriſtians lying at NAVARINVM, conſulted of many things what they were beſt to take in hand: and reſoluing at laſt by ſea and land to beſiege the caſtle of MODON, which kept the paſſage into the bay, and defended the Turkiſh fleet; they returned again thither, and landed ſeauen thouſand of their beſt ſouldiours, to beſiege the caſtle. And at the ſame time, appointed the galeaſſes with certaine gallies to batter it alſo from ſea: which the more commodiouſly to doe, they ioyned two of their greateſt gallies together ſide to ſide, which they made faſt with maſts and ſtrong ropes, and ſo bourded them cleane ouer, whereon as on a platforme, they placed gabions all afront, filled with earth, and great ordinance betwixt to haue battered the caſtle. But when this engine (in maner of a floating fort) ſhould haue performed the ſeruice for which it was deuiſed, it prooued vnſeruiceable, after it had with much adoe been brought thither, being
C readie to ſinke with the weight of the great ordinance and other things wherewith it was ouercharged. For which cauſe, and for that they vnderſtood a great number of horſmen to be come into the towne, they gaue ouer the ſiege vainly begun, and put againe with their fleet to ſea. It fortuned at the ſame time, that a tall ſhip of VENICE departing from ZACYNTHVS, and comming alongſt the coaſt of PELOPONESVS with prouiſion for the fleet, was deſcried by the enemy; who thinking to doe the Chriſtians a great diſhonour, if they could almoſt in the ſight of their fleet ſurpriſe her, they ſent out certaine light gallies to haue taken her; *Vluzales* in the mean time with the reſt of his fleet, lying in the very mouth of the bay, ready to come out if the Chriſtian fleet ſhould once ſtirre to relieue her. Which the Chriſtians perceiuing, and well hoping that ſo the enemy would be drawne to battel, ſent out *Columnius* with his gallies to reſcue the ſhip; and
D others alſo which lying aloofe, might get in betwixt the Turks gallies and the bay: *Don Iohn* and the Venetian Admiral, lying ready to haue giuen battel, if *Vluzales* ſhould haue come forth. But the Chriſtians comming on with a ſmall gale, the enemy being afraid, by ſhooting off of certain warning pieces within the bay, in time called backe the gallies that were already gone out of the bay: who all forthwith came in, excepting *Mahomet* the nephew of *Barbaruſſa*, a moſt famous captaine amongſt the Turks, who as one of great courage, and deſirous of honor, ſtaied a little without the bay, with greater courage than diſcretion, expecting who ſhould aſſaile him. Him the Marques S. *Crucis* ſet vpon, and had with him a great and terrible fight: but in the end the Marques preuailing, ſlew *Mahomet* with all his Turks, and with honour caried away the gally. So the diſhonour which *Vluzales* would haue done the Chriſtians, fell vpon himſelfe, hauing in his own
E ſight loſt one of his beſt captaines with his gallie.

The caſtle of Modon in Greece beſieged by the Chriſtians.

Mahomet ſlaine

The next day, becauſe the yere ſhould not paſſe without ſomething done, nor the hope of ſo great a preparation come to nothing, the Chriſtians determined to beſiege the caſtle of NAVARINVM (which was in ancient time called PYLVS) more famous for nothing, than for that it was the natiue place of old *Neſtor*. The citie of NAVIRINVM ſtandeth vpon a riſing ground, ſtretching ſomewhat into the ſea; whereinto it hath a large proſpect, and a faire large hauen, but ſubiect to the Northwind. It is defended with a point of the maine, running compaſſe into the ſea, whereon ſtandeth an old caſtle. Some ſent before to view the ſituation of the place, brought word backe, that the caſtle might in three daies be woon. The performance of which exploit, was committed to *Alexander Farneſius* prince of PARMA, whom the Venetians furniſhed with
F munition and victuall. He landing with two thouſand Italians, a thouſand Spaniards, and fiue hundred Germans, began with twelue great pieces to batter the caſtle. And albeit that the batterie was planted ſo farre off, as that it did the enemie no great harme; yet happily the enterpriſe had taken effect, if by taking the ſtraight and troubleſome paſſages through a rough and thicke forreſt, the citie had been kept from reliefe: but for as much as thoſe paſſages were left free, the enemie

The prince of Parma in vaine beſiegeth Nauarinum.

enemy cunningly opposed policy against force, for sallying out of the citie, they gaue the Chri- G
stians an hot skirmish: and in the meane time whilest the Christians were so busied, by a port
toward the forrest on the other side of the citie, receiued in great number both of horse and
foot. The report of this new come aid caused the prince to raise his siege, and to goe againe a-
boord. And now rested all the hope of the gaining of the towne in the strength of the fleet: and
that not small, for that the Turks not relieued with victuals by land, were by the confederates
kept from them also by sea: for at that time the Turks were troubled with two great mischiefes,
the plague, and famine. For no prouision had there bin made, as in a thing not feared; and that
little being spent that was in the towne, they were enforced to seeke for victuals further off:
which comming but sparingly, as in time of dearth, was oftentimes by the way intercepted by
the souldiours that lay about in the countrey villages, wanting victuals no lesse than they in the H
citie. And the moe men the Beglerbeg of GREECE brought down for defence of the sea townes,
so much the more the wants of all things daily encreased. So that no man doubted, but that in
short time all would be brought to extreame penurie. What a death the mortalitie had made,
the want of men in the gallies well declared: for many of the gallies for lacke of marriners and
The weakenesse of the Turkes fleet. souldiors were sent away into EVBŒA, or left at MALVASIA, or carried away to CONSTAN-
TINOPLE. Those which staied in the bay of MODON, were scarce an hundred gallies, and for-
tie galliots: and they so slenderly manned, that the greatest gallies had scarcely an hundred and
twentie men left in them, and they so meagre and faint, as that they could scarcely hold vp their
weapons. The Christians vnderstanding of these things, were in good hope, that by continuing
the siege, they should without daunger gaine a notable victorie: For which cause *Fuscarinus* I
perswaded the Spaniards, of whose constancie he doubted, to hold it out, as men of resolution;
shewing them, that in the euent of this action rested for them for euer to be feared or contemned
of the Turks: who except they should be changed into fishes or into birds, could not (as he said)
without a notable ouerthrow escape their hands out of the Bay. But vnto this his hope and
counsell the euent was not correspondent: For the Spaniards, whether it were for the tedious-
nesse of the siege, or for want of victuals, or for the approch of winter, or else moued with some
other reasons, began to thinke of the matter diuersly: and at the first a report was raised, That
the Christians giuing ouer the siege, would shortly returne home: and the reason was, for that
they wanted bisket, and had scarcely victuals left for fifteene dayes, which was to be reserued for
their long iourney home: Besides that, the approch of Winter did call them from the action: K
and that hauing done what they might, they could neuer draw the enemie forth to battell; and
that therefore hauing sufficiently and as farre as was possible alreadie discharged their duties,
they were now also to regard their safetie, and to foresee that their fleet, wherein the welfare of
them all was reposed, were not too farre endangered. At the first these speeches were divul-
ged by the common souldiours and marriners of small credit or reputation, but afterwards
by moe, and they also men of better place and sort: Yea *Don Iohn* himselfe, whether it were to
some other purpose, or that he so spake in good earnest, began to lay the fault vpon others, why
that he, so lately come from MESSANA, should in so short time want victuals and all things els
necessarie.

The Venetians murmure against the Spaniards. With these vnexpected reports, and so farre different from the confederation, the Venetian L
Admirall with the rest of the Venetian commaunders were exceedingly troubled and grieued
aboue measure: for it seemed not credible, that they which but a little before were come from
the most fertile and plentifull countrey of SICILIA, in all ages the most faithfull and abundant
granarie and storehouse of ITALIE, both in peace and warre, could so soone want victuals.
Could eighteene tall ships (which ought by the capitulations of the league to haue come loaded
with bisket, victuals, and other warlike and necessary prouision) become emptie? or but to haue
brought so much as might but suffice for a moneth onely? If this were done without the know-
ledge of *Don Iohn*, where was then the care of a Generall? If he winking thereat, where was his
zeale to the confederation? or to what purpose came he to CORSYRA? was it to auert the Chri-
stian fleet (hauing once or twice met with the enemy) from doing any good vpon him? Could it M
come into any mans head (besides that in so doing he was therein to extinguish the glorie of a
most certaine victory, like to worke the Turks confusion) by the infamy of a voluntary returne
to encrease the glory and renowne of his enemy, and bring a perpetuall ignominy and disgrace
vnto the honour of the Christians? verely the Spaniards, therein to shew themselues not so

willing

A willing to haue the power of the Turks abated, as the ſtrength of the Venetians not encreaſed.

These things *Fuſcarinus* and the Venetians ſometimes fretted at amongſt themſelues; and otherwhiles the Admirall himſelfe expoſtulated the ſame with *Don Iohn* and *Columnius*: and in the preſence of the greateſt counſellors ſhewed, not onely how profitable but alſo how neceſſarie perſeuerance was in all martiall affaires: That it was an old and vſuall matter for men in beſieging of their enemies to ſuffer many difficulties: if they ſhould, hauing performed nothing, returne with the fleet, who would doubt but that both their labor and charge was againe the next yeare to be renewed? And what could this delay be elſe, but a propagation of their further calamities? That therefore it much concerned the Chriſtian commonweale, although they had not all things in abundance, yet reſolutely and with patience to endure the ſcarcitie of victuals. If
B want of bisket were feared, the Generall might eaſily remedie that matter, by ſpeedily ſending for thoſe ſhips which lay laded with victuals good ſtore at TARENTVM; which thing might in ſhort time bee performed. In the meane time he promiſed to ſupply the Spaniards wants with part of his owne ſtore: and that he had rather his men ſhould liue with roots, than to let the enemies fleet coupt vp, ſo to eſcape his hands: That the deſire to protect the honour of the Chriſtians, would ouercome all difficulties. Beſides that, the matter would be but ſhort, if it were done at once, in one continued courſe; and would vndoubtedly be by them performed, if they gaue not ouer the thing they had ſo well begun, vntill they had accompliſhed it. They (as hee ſaid)
C might in good ſafetie lie with their fleet in the ports of NAVARINVM, SAPIENTIA, and CAPRARIA: wheras the enemie, lying ſhut vp in the bay of MODON, ſhould haue but a bad and dangerous Winter harbour; and October being now begun, ſhould in ſhort time be in danger to periſh with bluſtering ſtormes and rage of the ſea, familiar vnto that time of the yeare; or els enforced with the extremitie of the weather, and with want, to aduenture into the open ſea, and with their weake forces to ioyne battell. What ſhould therfore let, why they ſhould not for ten or for fifteene dayes continue the ſiege, as beſt beſeemed the honor of themſelues, the valour of their ſouldiors, and worthineſſe of the Chriſtian name? What a terrour it would bee vnto the enemy, to ſee the Chriſtians ready to endure all extremities and wants to gaine the victory ouer the Turks? Againe, what diſhonor and diſcredit would it be vnto themſelues, if they ſhould ſuffer the enemy (ſhut vp and not daring to fight) to eſcape: eſpecially, when as they might ſitting
D ſtill, end the warre? The Senat of VENICE, he ſaid, moſt reſted vpon the valour and courage of *Don Iohn*, and therefore hee requeſted him not to deceiue the great hope they had of him conceiued: For how much ſhould he himſelfe blemiſh his owne honour, if when he had before relieued the afflicted ſtate of the commonweale, he ſhould now, when it was moſt of all to be holpen, forſake the ſame? Which ſhould not be much vnlike, as if a man ſhould with great labour purchaſe great ſtore of precious pearles, and vpon an humourous paſſion caſt them all into the ſea: That men generally held a great opinion of him the Generall, an honourable remembrance of his victorie, and regard of his valour; all which, how much the more pregnant and honourable ſhould they be, by the ſecond vanquiſhing and ſubduing the moſt mighty monarch of the world: And that if the action well begun ſhould be effectually proſecuted by the goodneſſe of
E God, the direction of the commanders, and the reſolution of the ſouldiors, in ſhort time the Chriſtians ſhould carrie the victorie from the Turkes, and make him their Generall equall not onely with the great chiefetaines of the preſent time, but euen with the moſt famous commaunders of all former ages. Whereunto *Don Iohn* replied, That the action then in hand no leſſe concerned the Spaniards than the Venetians: and that he had in his life deſired nothing more, than to ſtand the Chriſtian commonweale in ſtead: That he pointed at the ſame marke with *Fuſcarinus*, and in zeale to doe good vnto the Chriſtian commonweale, gaue place to no man; but indeed to performe it, was a thing much more difficult than to ſay it: Leſſer things he ſaid were to be ouerpaſſed, to reſerue themſelues for the performance of greater: and therfore marueiled that *Fuſcarinus* alone could not ſee things moſt manifeſt before his eyes, who otherwiſe could with
F his piercing wit ſee through the deepeſt matters: Could he thinke by any other meanes to abate the power of the Turke, than if they kept their fleet whole? That it was euer the manner of the greateſt and moſt worthie commaunders, rather to ſhun the preſent daungers, to to encreaſe their territories: That nothing was ſo well purpoſed, which might not be of ſome wrongfully ſuſpected: but his faithfull meaning to be pure and without ſpot; and albeit that the oportunity ſerued not for him to ſhew it, yet was his deſire and endeuour nothing leſſe: And that *Fuſcarinus*

The Venetian Admirall perſuadeth the Spaniards in no caſe to retyre from the enemy

Don Iohn replieth vpon the Venetian Admirall.

rinus ſhould doe well more intentiuely to conſider, what the cauſe, the matter, and the time re- G
quired: That the manner of warre at land and at ſea, were much different: And that although warres of both ſorts were to giue place vnto the moſt vnſeaſonable time of the yeare, vnfit for any kind of warr; yet might men at land, better endure the Winter ſtormes in their tents and cabins, than at ſea in their gallies, where oftentimes, will, skill, wiſdome, nor valour helpe not: but that (except it be ſo prouided and foreſeene, that the ſeaſonable time of the yeare, and commodious for ſayling may be taken) all muſt together periſh by ſhipwracke. What, would hee haue them to ſtriue aboue their power with the winter ſtormes, and famine, the greateſt extremities of nature? Beſides that, he was verily perſwaded, that the Turks enioying the commodities of a good harbour, and of a rich citie, would there in ſafetie winter; the countrey of PELOPONESVS relieuing them with all neceſſaries: When as the Chriſtians in the meane time, except H
they in time returned home, ſhould lie expoſed to the rage of the ſea, ſtanding as it were in a continual watch, not laying away their weapons in the depth of winter and dead time of the yeare, which in reaſon ought to giue reſt to all men. And that therefore euerie man ought for the preſent to beare his owne grieuances, and not by the harmes of his friends and confederats, to ſeek his owne auaile. And that hee, bearing himſelfe vpon the inward integritie of his good will toward the Venetians, would this ſay, howſoeuer *Fuſcarinus* ſhould vnderſtand it, that if the kings fleet ſhould by long ſtaying there periſh, it would no leſſe concern the Venetians, than the king himſelfe: and taking God to witneſſe, would ſolemnely promiſe, Nothing to be vnto him more leiſer or religious, than to be preſt ſo ſoone as the time of the yeare would giue leaue, and by his endeuour to make all men to know, that hee had no leſſe care of the Venetian State, than of the I
kings affaires; neither deſired any thing more, than to be accounted, & indeed to be, a moſt conſtant vpholder of that moſt Chriſtian league; and that beyond all expectation, euen in the iudgment of the Venetians themſelues: but for the preſent they muſt pardon him, if he gaue place vnto the neceſſity of the time. As for the offer of the communicating of their victuals, that would not be any helpe, but the deſtruction of both the fleets; for ſo they ſhould both ſooner feele the want: wherfore it were much better to preſerue the fleet which they might vſe in the next yeares warres, than wilfully to caſt away the ſame by famine, and the rage of the ſea. In briefe, what an indignitie ſhould the Chriſtians ſuſtaine, if they themſelues ſhould by the ſame meanes be ouerthrowne, whereby they had thought to haue ouerthrowne others.

The Spaniards about to return without the knowledge of the Venetians.

Now the Spaniards were ſo reſolutely ſet downe for their departure, that not only without K
the conſent of the Venetians, but euen without their priuitie, their departing was reſolued vpon, and ſecret commandement giuen vnto the maſters of the gallies, with all the haſt that might be, to depart thence to MESSANA. Which the Venetian Admirall vnderſtanding, and therewith troubled as with an vnexpected matter, came aboord the Generall, and greatly complained of his purpoſe for ſo ſudden a departure: requeſting him a while to ſtay, vntil the two gallies made faſt together in the harbour of NAVARINVM (as is before ſaid) with the ordinance vpon them, might be put in good ſafetie; and neither they, or any thing elſe left for a prey vnto the enemie. With much adoe, *Fuſcarinus* perſwaded him to ſtay that night, that thoſe gallies might bee brought out of the harbour, and all things put in order for their departure. The reſt of the night L
was ſpent in debating of the matter too and fro: where *Don Iohn* would needs haue it conceiued into a publike inſtrument in writing, That the fleet by the general conſent of the three Admirals returned for lacke of victuals: whereunto the Venetian Admirall hardly conſented. But when the inſtrument ſhould haue been made and confirmed, *Don Iohn* better aduiſed by one of his ſecretaries, That the ſame would redound vnto the great diſhonor both of the king and himſelfe, that the fleet comming out of the fruitfull countrey of SICILIA, ſhould in a moneths ſpace want victuals; changed his mind for the writing, and onely requeſted the Venetian Admirall to credit him and *Columnius*, in that they had ſaid concerning the want of victuals: promiſing him, that if vpon the way he ſhould meet with the victuals that were ſent for, he would forthwith returne and giue him aid, as the time and occurrents ſhould require: but in the meane time to proceed by common conſent, to doe that which was moſt needfull. Hereupon they returned: and M
comming to CORSYRA, they met the expected ſhip laded with victuals. Now is not *Fuſcarinus* vnmindfull of his dutie, but comming to *Don Iohn*, put him in remembrance of his promiſe, telling him, That it was not vnlike, but that the enemy ſo ſoone as he vnderſtood of their departure, would come out of the bay, and returne with his fleet towards CONSTANTINOPLE; and

being

A being but weake manned, and worse furnished of mariners, might easily be ouertaken vpon the way, and ouerthrown. But *Don Iohn* was not by any meanes to be therunto persuaded, pretending that he was by the king commanded forthwith to return. So the expectation of great matters to haue bin this yeare done, came to nought but vanished into smoake: and nothing performed worth so long a discourse, more than to see with what difficultie great actions are managed, wherin the hands of many great ones are required; who ielous of their own honour, or enuying at others, corrupt with delaies the faireſt opportunities, and by their crosse dealing, no lesse than the enemie hinder the common good whereas they would all faineſt seeme to aime. From CORCYRA *Don Iohn* departed to MESSANA, and *Columnius* vnto ROME. *Fuscarinus* with greater honour than ſucceſſe, returned to VENICE; where he was with great ioy receiued, both of the
B Senat and the citizens in generall: and ſo (no leſſe famous for his patience and moderation towards the other confederats, than for his policie and valour) with the good liking of all men gaue vp his charg, in few yeres after to receiue a greater.

About this time, *Amida* king of TVNES (of whom much is before ſpoken in the life of *Solyman*) being but a little before driuen out of his kingdome by the Turks (who had of long by little and litle encroched vpon him) and as a priuat man liued in exile with his two ſonnes at GVLETTA vth *Franciſcus Touares* Gouernour thereof: hearing of the great ouerthrow of the Turks at LEPANTO, and of the good ſucceſſe of the Christians, ſent embaſſadors to *Don Iohn* Generall of the confederat princes then lying in SICILIA, humbly requeſting his aid for the recouerie of his kingdome, promiſing to defray the whole charges of the warre, and for euer to
C hold his kingdome of the king of SPAINE, as his vaſſaile and tributarie. Which his requeſt well conſidered of, and the matter thought of no ſmall conſequence, for the ſafetie of the Christian countrie lying ouer against that part of AFFRICKE, to haue ſo dangerous an enemie remoued: *Don* the yeare following (in the beginning of October) by the commaundment of 1573
the king of SPAINE his brother, departing from DREPANVM in SICILIA with an hundred and fiue gallies and forty ſhips, arriued the next day about noone at GVLETTA, where the gallies of MALTA came vnto him; and ſhortly after, *Io. Andreas Auria* the Admirall with nineteene mo; *Columnius* the Popes Admirall with foureteene mo, all well appointed. At his arriuall at GVLETTA, he vnderſtood by *Amida* and the Gouernour, the whole eſtate both of the citie, and of kingdome of TVNES: and that the Turks and Moores, terrified with ſo great a
D fleet, were also forſake the citie. Wherefore hauing well viewed the place, he the next day after landed forces about foure miles from the citie, and ſent 2500 footmen before the reſt of the armie to citie; who found it all deſolat, the Turks and Moors being before for feare fled, ſome to CAPHANA, ſome to BISERTA: who entring without reſiſtance, came to the caſtle, wherein they found two hundred Moores, who ſaid, the kept it for *Amida* their king; but yet would by no meanes ſuffer the Christians to enter. All which was forthwith made knowne to *Don Iohn*, when because it was almoſt night would not moue, but early the next morning ſet forwith his whole armie: and entring the citie before abandoned by the inhabitants, and ſo ning to the caſtle, found nothing therein, but great ſtore of oyle, butter, and
wooll.

E *Amida* the king, by the commandment of *Don Iohn*, all this while ſtaied at GVLETTA. But whileſt *Don Io* yet at TVNES, newes was brought vnto him the thirteenth of October, That the Turks gar before fled out of TVNES, with diuers Moores, comming to BISERTA, were there kept out citizens and not ſuffred to enter: For which cauſe they began to burn and ſpoile the coutrie about. Wherupon the General ſent *Touares* the captain of GVLETTA thither with part armie, who encountring with thoſe Turks, ouerthrew them, and had the citie by the citizens quietly deliuered vnto him.

The kingdom of TVNES thus eaſily once againe recouered from the Turkes, *Don Iohn* throughly enformed of the faithles and cruel dealing of *Amida* the late king, and that in deteſtation of the Christians and their religion, he had alreadie had intelligence with the Turkes, and
F procured the deſtruction of ſome of the Christians: gaue this definitiue ſentence vpon him, being yet in the caſtle of TVNES: That for as much as he had of long time bin the authour of great diſcord, and troubles in that kingdome, and had moſt vnnaturally deprined *Muleaſſes* his father, firſt of kingdome, and afterward of his ſight; and in like maner tyrannized ouer his natural children the rightfull heires of that kingdome, whereby the Turks had taken occaſion

Amyda the exiled king of Tunes craueth aid of Don Iohn.

The iuſt iudgement of God vpon Amida the laſt King of Tunes.

ſion both to inuade and poſſeſſe the ſame: he ſhould therefore by the commaundement of the king of SPAINE, be carryed priſoner with his two ſonnes into SICILIA, there to remaine for euer. Which heauie doome hee taking moſt grieuouſly, and yet crying out for mercie, was forthwith thruſt into a gallie, and with his wife and children tranſported into SICILIA, there to liue in perpetuall exile: the iuſt reward of his mercileſſe and vnnaturall dealing with his father and brethren, God no doubt requiting him with the like meaſure he had before meaſured vnto them. G

Mahomet, Amydaha brother, made king of Tunes, and vaſſaile to the king of Spaine.

After that (the king of SPAINE ſo commaunding) *Mahomet, Amida* his elder brother, and right heire of that kingdome, was appointed king in his place: who departing from GVLETTA to TVNES, was receiued as king, and there by ſolemne oath promiſed for euer to be the king of SPAINE his vaſſaile, and to do whatſoeuer he ſhould commaund. H

There was before departed out of TVNES fortie thouſand Moores, who now came and offered their ſupplication to *Don Iohn*, that they might againe returne and liue with their new king: which their requeſt being eaſily granted, they in great numbers euery day returned into the citie. Shortly after, fifteen hundred Turks, with three thouſand of thoſe wild people which ſome call Arabians, ſome Alarbes, ſore troubled all the paſſages about the citie; who were at laſt by the Chriſtians ouerthrowne, and an hundred and fiftie Chriſtians whom they had taken priſoners, reſcued. After that, *Don Iohn* by the aduiſe of his moſt expert and skilfull captaines, commaunded a ſtrong caſtle to be built in the middle way betwixt GVLETTA and TVNES: and for the performing thereof, left *Gabriell Serbellio* with two thouſand Italians, and *Calazar* a Spaniard with other two thouſand at GVLETTA. And ſo hauing performed that he came for, and diſpoſed of all things as he thought beſt, returned againe into SICILIA. I

A griefe of griefes it is, and ſorrow almoſt vnconſolable, when worthie actions moſt happily begun, ſort not to ſuch happie end as was in reaſon hoped for. The greateſt and the moſt famous victorie of all ages gained againſt the Turke, ſeemed to haue lightened the Chriſtian common-weale: and great hope there was, that the Chriſtians falling into vnitie among themſelues, would by an happie exchange make the Turkiſh empire the ſeat of their wars; and to turne into the Turks dominions, the terrour, ſlaughter, and other calamities of warre, which had ſo many yeares afflicted the Chriſtian common-weale. But by how much the more the ioy was amidſt ſuch dayly calamities and teares; ſo much greater was the ſorrow, ſo great an hope to be come to nought, and men to be ſo blinded with the darkneſſe of enuie and diſdaine, that they could not ſo much as think with what diſhonour and danger of the common ſtate, they ſhould ſhrinke from ſo iuſt, ſo honourable, and ſo needfull a ſeruice, including in it ſelfe the generall good of all Chriſtendome. When poſteritie ſhall conſider what things might then haue beene done, and the deuiſes wherby the common cauſe was ouerthrown; it will worthily blame, and greatly lament ſo notable a victorie and fit opportunitie, ſent as it were from hauen, for the effecting of great matters, to haue bin let ſlip and paſſed ouer ſo lightly regarded. This made, that they who before had repoſed all their hope in armes, had now no other confidence or hope of their welfare, but in concluding of peace. Truly the Venetians both ſpoke and thought honourably of king *Philip*, as of a moſt faithfull, iuſt, deuout, and honourable prince: yet greatly blaming his officers, and others of great authoritie about him, as men more regarding their owne priuat, than the good of the Chriſtian common-weale. In theſe perplexities of the Venetians, king *Philip* promiſed them to ſet forth a greater and ſtronger fleet againſt the next yere, & to be ſooner in readineſſe with all his forces and warlike prouiſion, & ſo to help them in all he might: who for all that, gaue ſmall credit vnto thoſe promiſes, for that with the like they had bin oftentimes before deceiued. And therefore as truſting moſt vnto their owne ſtrength, they with all carefulneſſe and expedition entertained mo ſouldiors; of whom, ſome they put into their fleet, the reſt they placed in their garriſons, in CRETE, in DALMATIA, and their frontier townes in EPIRVS. Neither were the Turkes then idle, as the report went; yet were they thought to manage that warre with greater fame than ſtrength: for they had of purpoſe giuen it out, That they would the next Spring with diuers armies, inuade the Venetian territories in CRETE, in DALMATIA, in EPIRVS, yea and in ITALIE in ſelfe; and with their innumerable multitude both of horſe and foot, ſo ouerwhelme the Venetians, that they ſhould not be able poſſibly to hold out. This & more too they brauely vanted of: but in deed *Pluzales* comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, had brought his fleet ſo ſhaken & ſo weake, as that it ſeemed not poſſible, but in long time

The Venetians weary of the delaies & croſſe dealing of the Spaniard, reſolue to ſue vnto the Turke for peace.

K L M

to

A to be againe repaired, and furniſhed with ſouldiours and mariners, in ſtead of them that had bin loſt, ſome in fight, but moe by the contagiouſneſſe of the infection. But howſoeuer the matter ſtood, the Venetians carefull with the expectation of great matters, and in ſmall hope of good ſucceſſe, comparing their owne ſtrength with the ſtrength of the enemie: yet were they no leſſe diſcouraged with the delaies and croſſe dealing of the confederats, than with all the prouiſion of the enemie. It ſtucke in their minds, how that the Spaniards at ſuch time as CYPRVS might haue bin defended, delayed their comming ſo long, that NICOSIA being loſt, it was time to returne: Neither could they forget that lingring delay to haue beene the cauſe of the great mortalitie amongſt their men, dying in the fleet at IADERA: They remembred alſo, that the commodities, which of ſo notable a victorie were moſt plentifully to haue beene reaped,
B were by the ſlender proſecuting of the ſame, ſo ſparingly taken, that the former dangers ſtill remained. And that *Don Iohn*, who ought by appointment to haue bin at CORCYRA in the beginning of Summer, was ſcarcely come thither in the latter end of Auguſt: and that he in the third yeare of this war, at ſuch time as their fleet was with great labour and charge againe repaired, would not or liſted not to aduenture to haue againe ouerthrowne the enemies fleet, but in the verie action to haue alwaies trifled away the greateſt part of Summer, before his Spaniards could ſet forward: and when hee might ſafely haue come to CERIGO, to haue called backe *Fuſcarinus* and the reſt, then facing of the enemie, and euen readie to haue giuen him battell: It was then ſecretly ſuſpected, the Spaniards to haue ſtayed of purpoſe, and to haue dallyed on the time, that the Venetians hauing ſpent their forces might be the more expoſed and
C ſubiect to their iniuries: It ſtucke faſt not in their minds alſo, but euen almoſt in their eyes, what things had happened of former times in their confederations with that nation: They were grieued in the ſpace of three yeares an hundred times, twentie hundred thouſand duckats to haue been to little or ſmall purpoſe ſpent in that warre: Beſides that, they doubted leaſt the Flemmings with their confederats ſhould ſo intangle the king of SPAINE in defending of his owne territories, as that he ſhould not be at leiſure to ſend any aid into the Eaſt: in which caſe, what hope or helpe were they to looke for? How ſhould they then defend thereſt of their Seigniorie in the Eaſt? How ſhould their emptie cofers ſuffice to maintaine ſo great armies both by ſea and land, as might withſtand ſo puiſſant an enemy? Long were the diſcourſes, and effectuall the per-
D ſuaſions, that the Venetians had amongſt themſelues, to induce one another, and all in generall more circumſpectly to conſider, not only what had alreadie paſſed, or was preſently in hand; but alſo more warily to foreſee, what would be the courſe and what the euent of a matter ſo important: and betime to breake off the confederation, which they had alwaies found to haue ſtood them in ſmall ſtead. In reuoluing of theſe things, only one remedie ſeemed moſt effectuall for the curing of their afflicted ſtate: which was, By deſiſting from warre, to conclude a peace with the Turke, howſoeuer: which they were the rather in good hope to obtaine, for that diuers ſpeeches concerning the ſame had paſſed at CONSTANTINOPLE, and were from thence againe reported at VENICE. All men thus enclining to peace, the Senat referred the proceeding therein vnto *M. Antonius Barbarus* their embaſſadour (who all the time of theſe wars had lien
E in ſafe cuſtodie at CONSTANTINOPLE) willing him therein to vſe the helpe of the French embaſſador, who had alwaies bin a perſuader of peace.

Selymus hauing got the iſland of CYPRVS and diuers other places from the Venetians, and yet well wearied with the harmes and loſſes he had himſelfe receiued both by ſea and land, was alſo deſirous ynough of peace. So that the French embaſſadour might, as it was thought, haue got a reaſonable and indifferent peace, if he had but expected the opportunitie of time: But he, (whether mooued with the common harmes, or ſome other ſecret cauſes to him beſt known) in making too much haſt, and ſeeming too deſirous of peace, much hurt the common cauſe of the Venetians, which he moſt deſired to haue furthered. *Selymus* hauing found him, reſolued with *Muhamet* the great Baſſa, what he would haue done: who at ſuch time as the ſame embaſſadour
F came vnto him about the matter, told him, That he had himſelfe many times mooued, yea and ſo far forth as he might importuned his great lord and maſter for peace, but could neuer find him willing to heare therof, vntill that now at length ouercome and wearied with the continuall ſollicitation of ſuch as might do moſt with him, he had yeelded thereunto. So the thing that *Selymus* himſelfe vndoubtedly deſired, that the craftie Baſſa ſeemed him with much difficulty to grant, rather vpon the inſtance and contemplation of them that laboured for the ſame, than for

Selymus himſelf deſirous of peace

Muhamet Baſſa dealeth cunningly with the French embaſſador ſollicuting the peace in the behalfe of the Venetians.

any deſire he had thereunto of himſelfe. For certaine daies at the firſt the French embaſſadour was moſt courteouſly heard, and the Baſſa with faire and cunning ſpeech promiſed that the matter of pacification ſhould eaſily and in ſhort time be compoſed: and ſo at their firſt conferences things paſſed rather in generall tearmes, than that any conditions of peace were particularly agreed vpon: onely this was on both parties conſented vnto, That the Venetians ſhould ſend their embaſſadour of purpoſe, for the full concluding and confirming of the deſired peace. G

The Venetians ſend their embaſſador of purpoſe to Conſtantinople, to entreat a peace.

Which charge was by the Senat committed to *Iacobus Superantius*, in whoſe wiſedome and valour they had repoſed great hope and confidence. He was no ſooner come to CONSTANTINOPLE, and the Turks deliuered of the feare of the Chriſtian ſword by the diſſolution of the confederation, but that all things were changed; and the Venetians glad perforce to endure the proud lookes of the Turks, their diſdainefull eares, their diſpightfull ſpeeches, their long and H
inſolent attendance, with many other ſhamefull indignities: Yea the Baſſa was ſo ſhamleſſe, as proudly to aske them, How they durſt be ſo bold, as to impugne the great emperour *Selymus* his fleet at ſea; Whereunto the embaſſador anſwered, That the Venetians had alwaies honoured the maieſtie of the Turkiſh emperors, neither had at any time taken vp armes againſt them, but in their owne reaſonable defence, when force was by force to be repulſed, a thing lawfull euen for the wild beaſt in the wide wilderneſſe to do. At the firſt entreatie of the peace, the Baſſa ſeemed to put the Venetian embaſſador in good hope, that the Venetians according to his requeſt ſhould enioy their territories in DALMATIA in as ample maner as in former times, and bounded with the ſame bounds, whereof they had in theſe warres loſt ſome part about IADERA. But when the matter ſhould haue come to the ſhutting vp, the Turke began to ſhrinke from that he I
had before promiſed, refuſing not only the reſtitution of the territorie they had indeed by treaſon got; but by cautelous expoſitions of his meaning, framing the concluſion of the preſent peace vnto the forme of their former leagues, required, That as the Turks had then yeelded vnto them MALVASIA and NAVPLIVS, ſo now they ſhould redeliuer vnto them other two places of like worth and importance: As for not reſtoring the territorie they had taken about IADERA, to colour their deceit, they pretended, that they might not by their law reſtore vnto the Chriſtians any town or place, wherein were any church or temple dedicated or conuerted vnto the Mahometane religion, as was there; and further, That the ſame territorie was alreadie giuen by *Selymus* in reward to his ſouldiors, men of deſert, from whom without great iniurie it might not be againe taken. Hereupon the French embaſſadour complained, That promiſes were not performed: & the Venetians ſo fretted, that they were euen about to haue returned, as men ſhamfully deluded, without concluding of any thing. Yet when no better could be obtained, the Turke ſtil K
ſtanding vpon ſo hard tearmes, the embaſſadours by the appointment of the Senat concluded a peace with the Turke, whereof theſe were the chiefe capitulations: firſt, That the Venetians ſhould giue vnto *Selymus* three hundred thouſand duckats; one hundred to be preſently paied, and the other two hundred by equal portions in two yeres next following: then, That the merchants goods ſhould be indifferently on both ſides reſtored: and laſtly, That ſuch places of the Venetians as the Turke was alreadie poſſeſſed of, ſhould ſtill remaine vnto the Turks; but that ſuch townes or places as the Venetians had taken in the Turks dominion, ſhould be againe forthwith reſtored. For the firſt payment of the money, the Turke was earneſt, thereby as by a fine for L
an offence committed, to make this league vnto him more honourable.

A peace concluded betwixt Selymus and the Venetians.

This peace at CONSTANTINOPLE concluded the eleuenth day of Februarie, in the yeare 1574, was by the decree of the Senat confirmed: and afterwards the thirteenth of Aprill following ſolemnely proclaimed in VENICE, to the great wonder of the other confederats. For the better ſatisfying of whom, the Popes Nuntio, with the embaſſadour of SPAINE, were ſent for into the Senat houſe. And although there were many things that grieued the Venetians, yet did they forbeare all hard ſpeeches, and of that their moderation receiued ſo much the more honor, as it is more difficultie for an angrie man to ouercome himſelfe, than others. The duke with calme and temperate ſpeech, framed to the purpoſe, declared vnto them, That anger and hope, two euill counſellors, being ſet apart, he had concluded a peace with the Turke: not for that he M
was deſirous of the Turkes friendſhip, which what account it was to be made of, he right well knew; but for the loue he bare to the State, which was not only with loſſe, but euen with death it ſelfe, to be maintained. How he had been ſpoyled of the kingdome of CYPRVS, he further declared: and that the Venetian ſtate grew euery day weaker and weaker by the continual war:

1574

The peace proclaimed at Venice.

and

A and that therefore, before it were by losse vpon losse come to the vttermost of extremitie, they not able to maintaine so heauie a warre, were to take some better course for the preseruation of that which was yet alreadie left of their seigniorie: for that the safetie of the Venetian state should at all times be a sure fortresse and defence for the Christian commonweale against all the furious attempts of the enemie, and vncertaine euents of time.

The fame of this sudden and vnexpected peace was for the iust and common hatred of the Christians against the Turks, generally euill taken: and the Venetians for the concluding thereof hardly spoken of, as if they had betraied the whole Christian commonweale, or at least wise their confederats. For men were for the most part of opinion, That the Turkes peace would be but fained and deceitfull; and that hauing gained time to set things in order, according to his
B desire, he would for the naturall grudge he bare vnto the Christians, come to his old course, & as he had alwaies done, breake the league, and take vp armes. Some said, That the Venetians, forsaken of their friends and confederats, would in their own deuices perish; yet so, as that their destruction should turne to the generall harme of all Christendome: and these men were of opinion, That in that case, and against that enemie, a dangerous war was to be preferred before an vncertaine and dishonourable peace. Neuertheless the Venetians, besides that they for the present eased themselues of many an heauie burthen, so haue they thereby enioyed the fruits of a long and happie peace, and found the same vnto their state both wholesome and profitable euen vntill this day. It was thought by the sequell of matters, that *Selymus* was the more willing to haue peace with the Venetians, that hee might the better recouer the kingdome of TVNES,
C and the strong castle of GVLETTA from the Spaniards: who with the knights of MALTA now gaped more after TRIPOLIS and the other port townes holden by the Turkes vpon the coast of BARBARIE, than how to defend the Venetians their confederats. Thus with the losse of CYPRVS, and some part of the Venetian territorie in DALMATIA, ended the mortall and bloudie warre betwixt *Selymus* and the Venetians. In the course whereof is well to bee seene, what great matters the vnited forces of the Christian princes were able to do against this most mightie enemie, if all discord and contention set apart, they would in the quarrell of the Christian religion ioine with heart and hand against him, and fight the battell of Christ Iesus.

The peace by experience found profitable vnto the Venetians.

Selymus now at peace with them who before most troubled him: to keepe his men of warre
D busied, shortly after conuerted his forces against *Iohn*, Vayuod of VALACHIA, and so at length ioyned all that prouince to his empire. This countrie of VALACHIA was in auncient time called DACIA: it hath on the East the Euxine (now called the Blacke Sea) on the South the famous riuer Danubius, on the West TRANSILVANIA, and on the North RVSSIA. It is diuided into two parts, the one called TRANSALPINA, and the other MOLDAVIA (of the riuer Moldauus running through the middest thereof) but farre passing the other both in greatnes and abundance of pasture. That part called TRANSALPINA, *Mahomet* (surnamed the Great, which woon CONSTANTINOPLE) made subiect to the Turkish empire; but vpon MOLDAVIA, the other part, he only imposed a yearely tribute of two thousand duckats. After which time the Vayuods of that countrey, aided sometime by the Hungarians, and sometime by the Polo-
E nians, rise vp oftentimes against the Turks, and refused to do their homage. It chanced, that *Bogdanus*, Vayuod of that countrie, fauoring the Polonians, and ioyning in league with them, liued much in RVSSIA, as purposing from thence also to haue taken his wife. Which *Selymus* suspecting, with a great power chased him into exile, and placed in his stead one *Iohn* (called of his countriemen *Iwan*, and of some *Iuonia*) the supposed son of *Stephanus*, sometime Vayuod of that countrey: who with *Ieremias Czarnieuieczius* (a Moldauian, who afterward notably betraied him) hauing of long time liued amongst the Turks, to be the more gratious amongst them, renounced his faith, & being circumcised, turned Turke: and following the trade of merchandise, became among them a merchant of such fame, that he became very familiar & well acquainted with the great Bassaes of the Court, and at length with *Selymus* himselfe. He vnderstanding by
F his friends neere about the Turkish emperor of his purpose for the remouing of *Bogdanus*, corrupted with rewards the great Bassaes, to be mediators for him to *Selymus*, that commended by them, he might be preferred to be Vayuod of MOLDAVIA; still encreasing the suspitiō *Selymus* had conceiued of *Bogdanus*, & telling him, That he supported by the Polonians, was like ynough in short time to reiect his obedience to his imperial maiestie. *Selymus* at the instance of the Bassaes

Selymus chaseth Bogdanus out of Moldauia, and placeth Iohn Vayuod in his stead.

nominated this *Iohn* to be Vayuod: who with a great power of the Turks horſmen entring into MOLDAVIA, eaſily poſſeſſed himſelfe of the countrie, *Bogdanus* being then abſent in RVSSIA, and as then ſuſpecting no ſuch matter: who yet afterwards attempted in vaine by the helpe of the Polonians to haue againe recouered his countrie, but finding no poſſibilitie ſo to do, fled afterwards into MVSCOVIA, where he long time after liued. G

Iohn the Vayuod falleth into ſuſpition with Selymus and the Baſſaes of the Court.

Iohn now quietly poſſeſſed of MOLDAVIA, for ſome few yeares held the ſame with the good liking of the Turke, paying him his wonted tribute: but afterwards repenting himſelfe of his wicked reuolt from the Chriſtian faith, and now eftſoones againe embracing the ſame, and (ignorant of his owne fortune) perſecuting with too munh ſeueritie thoſe which withſtood his coming into the countrie, eſpecially ſuch great men as tooke part with *Bogdanus*; and now after his returne vnto the Chriſtian faith, not fauouring the Turkes as he was wont, but croſſing them in many matters, became ſuſpitious both vnto *Selymus* and the Baſſaes his old friends. Which the Vayuod of the leſſer VALACHIA (commonly called VALACHIA TRANSALPINA) vnderſtanding, he became a ſuter vnto the great Baſſaes of the Court for his brother *Peter*, and earneſtly trauelled with them, That as *Iohn* ſupported by *Selymus*, had driuen *Bogdanus* out of MOLDAVIA, ſo *Peter* his brother might in like maner by his help driue *Iohn* out alſo. In which his ſute he ſpared for no coſt, neither ceaſed by malicious ſuggeſtions to encreaſe the ſuſpition alreadie conceiued of *Iohn* the Vayuod: who hauing reiected the Mahometane religion, and againe embraced the Chriſtian faith, would (as he ſaid) in ſhort time, as had *Bogdanus*, ioine hands with the Polonians, and caſt off his obedience towards the great Sultan, by whom he had bin ſo highly promoted. Beſide that, this malicious man offered, That his brother *Peter* for ſuch his preferment ſhould pay yearly vnto *Selymus* twice ſo much more as did *Iohn*, namely an hundred and twentie thouſand duckats by the name of a tribute. H I

The Baſſaes before corrupted and moued with the greatneſſe of the tribute, perſuaded *Selymus*, by an embaſſadour to ſend for *Iohn* the Vayuod, to come vnto him himſelfe in perſon, and to commaund him to giue place to ſuch a man as he ſhould ſend thither in his ſtead: which if he ſhould refuſe to do, then to denounce vnto him open warre. Hereunto *Selymus*, who had euen then much emptied his cofers with the loſſe of his fleet in the battell of LEPANTO, & the chargeable wars againſt the Venetians, was eaſily induced: and to that purpoſe ſent his embaſſadour to the Vayuod; who hauing audience the one and twentieth of Februarie, at the ſame time that *Henry Valois*, afterward the French king was crowned at CRACOVIA, deliuered his meſſage as followeth: K

The commanding ſpeech of the Turks embaſſadour to Iohn the Vayuod.

Selymus *the great Emperour of the Turkes ſendeth mee vnto thee* Iohn, *Vayuod of* VALACHIA *his tributarie, with this commaund (whereunto his pleaſure is, that thou ſhouldeſt without delay ſend him anſwere:) firſt hee chargeth thee to ſend him not ſuch a tribute as hee was wont, but twice ſo much more, to wit, an hundred and twentie thouſand duckats. If thou ſhalt refuſe ſo to doe, there is another readie to giue it, both for himſelfe and his poſteritie.* But Selymus *mindfull of thy conſtancie, fidelitie, and valour, will not be troubleſome to thee in thy gouernment, if thou foorthwith ſend the aforeſaid tribute. Which if thou ſhalt refuſe to doe, then his will is, that thou ſhouldeſt giue place to another, and thy ſelfe returne with mee to* CONSTANTINOPLE, *there to anſwere the matter: otherwiſe I am in his name to denounce all hoſtilitie, and the calamities of warre both vnto thee and thy countrey.* L

This proud meſſage of the embaſſador ſtruck further into the mind of the Vayuod than any would haue thought: yet diſſembling his greefe, he commanded him to be brought to the lodging appointed for him, telling him, That in a matter of ſo great importance, and ſo much concerning the whole ſtate of his countrey, he could not giue him ſo preſent anſwer as he required; but that vpon mature deliberation had with his nobilitie and counſell, he would in ſhort time anſwere him accordingly. The embaſſadour being gone to his lodging, the Vayuod forthwith began deeply to cõſider of *Selymus* his demaunds; and that in the Turks faith was no aſſurance, which he kept or brake with the Chriſtian princes, as beſt fitted his own turne: and beſides that, that if he ſhould graunt to pay that ſo great and heauie a tribute, in ſo great pouertie of his kingdome, ſore waſted with ciuile warre, *Selymus* would not be therewith long contented, ſo long as any man would giue him more, but happily would the next yeare exact a greater, and in the M

end

A end ſuch an one as he with all his ſubiects ſhould not be able to pay; which it ſhould not be ſafe for him at any time to refuſe, ſo long as any man would giue it. Wherefore calling together the nobilitie and ſtates of his countrey, he brake with them in this ſort.

The ſpeech of the Vayuod vnto his nobilitie and ſubiects.

If euer you were to conſult and deliberate of a moſt important and difficult matter, this verily is that time: for Selymus *the Turkiſh emperour, enflamed with inſatiable auarice, and I know not by whoſe perſwaſion, not contented with his woonted tribute, exacteth of vs twiſe ſo much more. If you ſhall graunt it, it ſhall not much concerne mee, as not to bee payed by mee your ſoueraigne, but by your ſelues and your poſteritie: if wee denie it, foorthwith hee denounceth vnto vs fire and ſword, with all the calamities of warre. And in this bareneſſe of our kingdome, almoſt ſpoyled by by ciuill warres, how*
B *ſhall wee bee able to pay it him? wherefore declare your mindes. Verily I foreſee, that if you ſhall in this yeeld vnto* Selymus, *and graunt him ſo great a tribute, hee will not therewith long hold himſelfe contented, but euerie yeare extort a greater, vntill hee haue altogether eaten vs vp. Wherefore it were better for vs (in mine opinion) to looſe our liues together with our wiues and children, than to ſuffer ſo great an indignitie: neither is it mine owne eſtate that troubleth mee, for why it is you that are to pay it, and not I. Wherefore if you liſt not to endure this ſo diſhonourable and baſe a ſeruitude, let mee forthwith ſo vnderſtand from you: and I will for my part ſo prouide, as that I will not onely not pay vnto the barbarous tyrant the new and heauie tribute hee demaundeth, but not ſo much as any tribute at all; ſo that you be not wanting both to your ſelues and mee. I know right well (beloued and fellowes in armes) what I owe both vnto you and the common-weale, for whoſe good and welfare I am alwayes rea-*
C *die to lay downe my life.*

He had no ſooner thus ſaid, but that a ſecret ſorrow and vnwonted ſilence, had as it were oppreſſed the whole aſſembly. At length, as men awaked out of an heauie and dead ſleepe, they murmured among themſelues, that the Turkiſh emperour ſhould ſo without reaſon oppreſſe them, with doubling & redoubling of his tribute: and were generally of opinion, That the Vayuod had not ſo plainely as truly ſpoken of the intollerableneſſe thereof: and that therfore they had rather die, than to endure ſo great diſhonour, ioyned with ſo foule a ſlauerie. And therupon offered vnto the Vayuod to ſerue vpon their own charge, and with him vpon the banke of Danubius to meet the proud enemie, and there in defence of their liues and libertie, to fight it out
D vnto the laſt man. The Vayuod in few words commending their fidelitie, and taking of them an oath for the faithfull performance of that they had ſo reſolutely promiſed, ſent for the Turks embaſſadour, and gaue him this ſhort anſwere.

The anſwere of the Vayuod vnto the Turkes embaſſadour.

I, for the auncient fidelitie and allegeance which I owe vnto my lord and dread ſoueraigne, the mightie Emperour Selymus, *would willingly yeeld vnto him the tribute hee requireth, were it not that I know the minds of my people to abhorre the ſame: wiſhing rather to endure all calamities, hap whatſoeuer hap may, than to yeeld vnto ſo diſhonourable and ſhamefull ſlauerie. Wherefore ſithence I cannot by any meanes extort the ſame from my ſubiects, tell my lord* Selymus, *That I moſt humbly re-*
E *queſt him, not to take the ſame in euill part; whoſe amitie I wiſh to bee vnto mee, rather an ornament and refuge, than diſgrace or hinderance. And that vpon that good hope I both asked, and for my ſingular fidelitie obtained of him the Vayuodſhip of* Moldavia: *which my good hope I moſt heartily beſeech him may not deceiue me.*

With this anſwere he diſmiſſed the embaſſador vnrewarded, and with a ſafe conuoy brought him vnto the banke of Danubius: which his homely vſage of the ambaſſadour, cauſed him not a little to be ſuſpected, to be in mind changed from *Selymus*. The embaſſadour ſent away, the Vayuod not ignorant of the ſudden inuaſions of the Turks, forthwith began to raiſe his armie: and at the ſame time, ſent embaſſadours vnto *Henrie* king of Polonia his neereſt neighbour, certifying him of the dangerous ſtate of Moldavia, the ſureſt bulwarke of the Polonian king-
F dome, which once ouerthrowne, opened a faire and eaſie way for the common enemy into Polonia: and therefore requeſted him, that as the kings of Polonia had of auncient time, euen for the ſafetie of their owne ſtate, protected that countrey; ſo it would pleaſe him now in like manner in ſo dangerous a time, to giue him aid; or at leaſtwiſe to giue leaue vnto ſuch of his ſubiects as were willing to ſerue for entertainment, to come vnto him, whom he would with all

honour

honour and bountie vſe according to their place and qualitie. Whereunto the king anſwered, G
that for as much as he and his predeceſſours the kings of POLONIA, had for the ſpace of more than an hundred yeares been in league with the Turkiſh kings and emperours, he could not either ſend him aid, or yet giue leaue vnto any of his ſubiects to ſerue againſt the Turke as he deſired. With this anſwere the Vayuod was much troubled, as there deceiued where hee moſt hoped for reliefe: yet hearing of certaine companies of the Polonian Coſſacks, which hauing long lien in hope of prey vpon the ſide of the great riuer Boryſthenes, were returning emptie home, he by fit meſſengers ſent of purpoſe, offred them great entertainment to ſerue him in his warres againſt the Turk; of which his offer, they (as men liuing for moſt part by ſeruice) gladly accepted; and ſo without the knowledge of the king went vnto him, to the number of twelue hundred, with their captains, men of great courage and valor, of whom *Suierceuius* was chiefe: who were H
by the Vayuod honourably entertained, and did him in theſe wars right worthy ſeruice. Theſe Coſſacks are light horſmen, lying moſt commonly vpon the borders of the Polonian kingdom towards the Tartars: an hardie and valiant kind of men, whoſe beſt liuing, is the ſpoile they take from the enemie; and their beſt lands, their horſe and launce. For albeit that the Turks and Tartars are moſt commonly in league with the Polonians, and ſeem neuer ſo deſirous of peace; yet doe they oftentimes in great numbers, vpon the ſudden breake into the countries of PODOLIA, and RVSSIA, part of the Polonian kingdome, and there doe great harme, if they bee not in time repreſſed or cut off by the aforeſaid light horſemen, who for that purpoſe lie alwaies in wait for them, as doth the hawke for the prey.

The Vayuod entertaineth the Polonian Coſſackes.

Selymus vnderſtanding the anſwere of *Iohn* the Vayuod, was therewith exceedingly enra- I
ged, and the more by the bitter complaint of the embaſſadour, who angrie with the Vayuod, that he was of him no better regarded nor rewarded, ſpared not to the vttermoſt of his power, to incenſe the angrie emperour againſt him, as if his honour had bin in the perſon of himſelfe contemned and violated. Wherefore without delay, he ſent thirtie thouſand Turkes, and two thouſand Hungarians vnto the Palatine of VALACHIA TRANSALPINA, that ioyning thoſe forces to his owne, he might take *Iohn* the Vayuod, and ſending him in bonds to CONSTANTINOPLE, to place *Peter* his brother, Vayuod in his place. The Palatine glad of this commaund, and hauing raiſed his owne power, together with the Turkes & the Hungarians, ſwam ouer the riuer Moldauus, hauing in his armie about an hundred and two thouſand fighting men: a power, not onely ſufficient to haue driuen the Vayuod out of MOLDAVIA, but alſo to haue ſhaken a right K
puiſſant king in his kingdome. The Palatine in the middeſt of ſo great a ſtrength, little fearing, and leſſe regarding the ſudden comming of the Vayuod, ſuffered his men with their horſes to lie diſorderedly here and there, diſperſed in the large medowes and paſtures all alongſt the faire riuer ſide; ſo the better to refreſh themſelues, wearie of their long trauell. In the meane time certaine ſcouts came to the Vayuod then at dinner, certifying him, that the enemy with an huge armie, the certaine number wherof they could not well deſcry, was come ouer the riuer: and now reſting themſelues, had turned off their horſes into the rich medowes thereabout, in ſuch diſordered and careleſſe manner, as that they might with a ſmall power be eaſily ouerthrowne. The Vayuod glad of this newes, forthwith ſent before *Suierceuius* with his Coſſacks, and fiue thouſand other light horſemen, more certainly to deſcry what the enemy did, with the manner of his L
lying; and he himſelfe with the reſt of his army, followed faire and ſoftly after. *Suierceuius* with great ſilence approching the enemies campe, ſuddenly light vpon the enemies ſcouts, in number about fiue hundred; who encloſed before they were aware, were taken euery man by the Coſſacks, and by them ſtraightly examined of the ſtate of their armie and campe. Who for ſafegard of their liues now in their enemies power, frankely confeſſed, how that the Palatine lay ſecurely there by, reſting his armie, not ſo much for the refreſhing thereof after his trauell, as with greater ſtrength to ſet vpon the Vayuod with his freſh ſouldiors: and that in the armie were about ſeauentie thouſand Valachians, thirtie thouſand Turks, and three thouſand Hungarians; who now diſperſed, and ſleeping in ſecuritie, might eaſily be ouerthrowne. Of all theſe things *Suierceuius* aduertiſeth the Vayuod, requeſting him with all poſſible ſpeed to haſten his comming, for the M
obtaining of a moſt notable and aſſured victorie: he in the meane time lying cloſe with his men not farre from the enemie. The Vayuod certified of all theſe things, came without delay, and forthwith commaunded *Suierceuius* with his men to giue the onſet vpon the enemie: purpoſing himſelfe with the reſt of his armie on the other ſide, to charge the diſordered campe in three places.

Selymus ſendeth his forces againſt the Vayuod.

The Palatine with the Turks ouerthrowen by the Vayuod.

A ces. *Suierceuius* according as he had in charge, with a great and terrible outcrie, ſuddenly ſet vpon the ſecure enemies: who diſmaied with the ſuddenneſſe of the vnexpected danger, ſtood as men aſtonied, not knowing which way to flie, or how to make reſiſtance. But whiles *Suierceuius* with his light horſemen thus on the one ſide filleth the campe with tumult, terrour, ſlaughter, and feare; behold, euen as a ſudden tempeſt commeth the Vayuod, bearing all the diſordred campe downe before him: neither had the enemies any meanes to flie, hauing put their horſes a great way off from them into the rich paſtures; but there taken vnarmed, were miſerably ſlain. In all the campe was lamentation and mourning, death raging in euerie place, with ſuch furie, that of ſo great an army as of late paſſed the riuer, few or none eſcaped, more than the Palantine with *Peter* his brother, who by great chance with much adoe getting horſes, ſwam ouer the ri-
B uer, and ſo came to the caſtle of BRAILOVIA in VALACHIA; all the reſt were ſlaine, and left to bee of the beaſts of the field, and birds of the aire deuoured. It was a moſt horrible ſpectacle to ſee the ground couered with the bodies of the dead, all ſtained with gore bloud, and their weapons of all ſorts lying by them. In the campe were found great riches, all which the Vayuod gaue vnto his ſouldiors, and there ſtayed foure dayes to refreſh his wearied men. After that, he with his victorious armie entred into VALACHIA, the Palantines countrey, where hee tooke many caſtles and townes, and put to the ſword all that came in his way, men, women, and children, without reſpect of age or ſex: and burnt all the countrey townes and villages before him as he went; ſo that all that part of the countrey of VALACHIA TRANSALPINA, was couered with
C ſmoke and fire, to the terrour of the beholders. The aged fathers were in euery place drawen forth to ſlaughter, the yong babes were cut in pieces, the matrons and virgins defiled, and afterwards ſlaine: and in briefe all the crueltie that could be deuiſed, performed: in the bloudy execution whereof, the Vayuod commended his men, perſuading them in like manner ſtill to proſecute the victorie, and that the reſt of their labours was all but for prey and bootie, for the enriching of themſelues. In this hauock of all things, it was told him, that the Palatine with his brother *Peter*, the men whom hee moſt ſought after, were in the caſtle of BRAILOVIA not farre off: whereupon hee forthwith marched thither with his armie. The citie of BRAILOVIA ſtandeth vpon the riuer Danubius, and had in it a caſtle of ſome good ſtrength, defended both by the nature of the place, and a ſtrong garriſon of the Turkes which *Selymus* had appointed for the keeping thereof, as the key of the countrey: not farre from this citie the Vayuod encamping his
D army, writ vnto the captaine of the caſtle, forthwith to deliuer vnto him the Palatine, with *Peter* his brother, his mortall enemies; who neuer wronged by him, had inuaded his countrey, and ſought after his life, and being ouerthrowne in battell, were fled vnto him: which if he ſhould refuſe to doe, he threatned neuer to depart thence, vntill he had to his further harme, conſtrained him by force to yeeld them. Theſe letters he ſent by two Valachian captiues, to be deliuered vnto the captaine of the caſtle: whereunto hee returned anſwere by foure Turks, two of the citie, and two of his owne ſeruants, by whom he alſo ſent ten great ſhot, and as many ſmall, with two Turkiſh arrowes, and this meſſage.

E *For that I know thee to bee the ſeruant of my dread ſoueraigne* Selymus, *I regard thee: and will not denie the ſame men to bee with mee, whom thou ſo much requireſt. But for as much as I vnderſtand, that thou of late haſt ſlaine a great number of the ſeruants of the great Emperour, who by his commaundement were bringing* Peter *the brother of the Palatine into* MOLDAVIA: *I therefore tell thee, that except thou betime raiſe thy ſiege, I will feed thee and thy followers, with ſuch diſhes as theſe; whereupon thou and thine armie gorged to the full, ſhall all afterwards dangerouſly ſurfeit and caſt. Farewell.*

The blunt anſwer of the captaine to the Vayuod.

This rough anſwere ſo much mooued the Vayuod, that he commaunded hands to bee laid vpon the aforeſaid foure meſſengers: and their noſes, lips, and eares being cut off, both their feet to be with great nailes faſt nailed vnto a long piece of timber, and ſo with their heads hanging
F downward, to be ſet vp before the citie, and ſo left for the captaine & the citizens to gaze vpon. Signifying withall vnto the captaine that ſent them, that he himſelfe with the other fugitiues his gueſts, ſhould in like manner be ſerued, if they fell into his hands. Immediatly after he aſſaulted the citie, and vſing the cheerfulneſſe of his ſouldiors, by plaine force tooke the ſame, the defendants being not able to hold them out. There was made great ſlaughter of the Turkes, whereas no

Barbarous crueltie.

The citie of Brailouia taken by the Vayuod and raſed downe to the ground.

no man was taken to mercie; the very babes were ſlaine, together with their mothers, and bloud G
ran like riuers into the Danubius. For the ſpace of foure dayes this bloudie execution endured:
no place ſerued for refuge, euen the moſt ſecret and obſcure places were ſearched, and the poore
creatures there found, drawn forth and ſlaine. The fury was ſo great, that no liuing thing, no not
ſo much as the very dogs were ſpared. Much gold, ſiluer, plate, jewels, and other rich ſpoile was
there found, all which became a prey vnto the greedy ſouldiors: for that citie was of all others
in thoſe quarters the richeſt, as a place much frequented, and enioying long peace, as after ſuch
time the Turks were fully poſſeſſed of Græcia, not being troubled with any warres; vntil now,
that it was by the Vayuod firſt ranſackt, and afterwards raſed down to the ground, and nothing
thereof left ſtanding, more than the bare caſtle it ſelfe: which the Vayuod durſt not aduenture
vpon, for that it was well fortified, and furniſhed with ſo ſtrong a garriſon, as that it could not H
without his great loſſe be taken.

The Turkes againe ouerthrowen by the Vayuod.

Whiles the Vayuod was thus buſied in the ſpoile of Brailovia, newes was brought vnto
him of the comming of fifteene thouſand Turks to the reliefe of the caſtle: againſt whom hee
forthwith ſent *Suierceuius* with his Coſſackes, and other eight thouſand Moldauian horſemen;
who ſuddenly comming vpon the Turks, diſordered & fearing no ſuch matter, ſlew almoſt four-
teen thouſand of them, and chaſed the reſt vnto the caſtle of Teina. Of this victory *Suierceuius* in
all haſt certified the Vayuod; and withal, that there was another great power of the Turks com-
ming, which might eaſily be alſo ouerthrown, if he leauing the ſiege of the caſtle of Brailovia,
would without delay come and ioyne his forces with his. He glad of that news, and well perce-
iuing how difficult & dangerous that ſiege would be vnto him, riſe forthwith with his army, and I
went to *Suierceuius*: and afterwards vpon conference had with him, laid ſiege to Teina: which
citie taken without much labour, he put to ſword all the people found therin, not leauing one a-
liue: and by the ſeruice of *Suierceuius* ouerthrew the Turks comming towards Brailovia.

Selymus in doubt to haue bin thruſt out of Valachia by the Vayuod.

Selymus in the mean time much troubled with the proceedings of the Vayuod, and doubting
to be quite thruſt out of Valachia Transalpina (which he was like enough to haue been, had
not the treaſon of *Czarnieuiche* hindered the matter) prepared new forces for that ſeruice, and
after the manner of the Turks, in time of their greateſt diſtreſſe, appointed general ſupplications
and prayers to bee made vnto his prophet *Mahomet*, for the better ſucceſſe of his warres, the vn-
doubted ſigne of his feare.

The Vayuod after ſo many victories againſt the Turkes, purpoſing for a while to breake vp K
his great armie, called vnto him his old friend *Ieremias Czarnieuiche*, vnto whom, as vnto the
man he of all others moſt truſted, he had reſolued to commit the charge, with part of his armie,
to keepe the Turks from paſſing againe ouer the riuer Danubius into his countrey: and in deli-
uering to him his charge, ſpake vnto him as followeth:

The kind ſpeech of the Vayuod to Czarnieuiche

Sith fortune hath hitherto anſwered our deſires (worthie Czarnieuiche*) with moſt rare and per-
petuall ſucceſſe againſt the Turkes, our moſt cruell enemies, wee are thankefully to take the ſame, and
to render moſt humble and heartie thankes vnto Almightie God, that it hath pleaſed him, the Au-
thour of all victorie, ſo to haue proſpered our endeauours againſt theſe fierce and deuouring enemies.
Now what remaineth for the preſent, but to disband mine armie, wearied with labour and trauell, L
and to giue my ſouldiours leaue to depart home to reſt themſelues, that ſo I may as occaſion ſhall require
againe vſe their freſh forces for our better ſeruice: you in the meane time with thirteene thouſand of
my ſelect ſouldiours, ſhall lie vpon the ſide of Danubius, to keepe the Turkes from paſſing the riuer.
Haue good regard I pray you, vnto this your charge, which I vpon an eſpeciall truſt, grounded vpon
your auncient loue and fidelitie, haue at this time impoſed vpon you. And let mee from time to time with
all expedition vnderſtand from you of euery motion of the enemie, that ſo wee may in due time prouide
for him accordingly.*

And ſo in token of his greater fauour, taking his leaue of him with a kiſſe (as the manner of
thoſe people is) gaue leaue vnto the greateſt part of his ſouldiors to depart home, yet with this M
charge, to be alwaies in readineſſe whenſoeuer they ſhould be called vpon.

Czarnieuiche hauing receiued his charge, and promiſing vnto the Vayuod the vttermoſt of his
faithfull deuoire, went towards Danubius, and there moſt carefully kept the paſſages with conti-
nuall watch and ward. It was not long but that great numbers of the Turks were come downe

to

A to the other ſide of the riuer, and moe were ſtill comming, yet none of them was ſo hardie as to aduenture the great riuer; *Czarnieuiche* with his horſemen lying in the faces of them, readie to receiue them on the other ſide. Which the Baſſa whom *Selymus* had ſent with his armie, perceiuing, ſent certaine men pickt out for the purpoſe, to *Czarnieuiche*, to ſound him, if hee might by any meanes be drawne to come ouer, in ſecret to talke with him: and the more to mooue him, beſide his conduct for his ſafetie, ſent him by the ſame meſſengers thirtie thouſand Hungarian duckats for a preſent. With which ſo faire a bait *Czarnieuiche* allured, receiued the money, and faithfully promiſed to come. And ſo ſhortly after, ſecretly paſſing ouer the riuer, had conference with *Peter* the Palantines brother, who then lay on the further ſide of Danubius, with a great power of the Turks. In this conference, *Peter* declared vnto him in how great danger the Vay-
B uod ſtood, and how highly *Selymus* was offended with him, That he his tributarie and vaſſaile ſhould worke the deſtruction of his ſo great armies: which his heauie diſpleaſure hee could no otherwiſe ſatisfie but with his head: and that therefore he ſhould no longer rule in MOLDAVIA, for that gouernment was by the great emperour giuen vnto him. Wherefore (ſaid he) if thou be wiſe, whileſt it is yet in thy power, gaine the good will of *Selymus* by ſome good deſert: for an eaſie matter it is to begin any warre, but an hard matter to end the ſame. For as much as it is not alwaies in the ſame mans power to begin wars, and at his pleaſure to make an end. Euery foole may when he liſt enter into armes, but muſt lay the ſame down when it pleaſeth the conqueror. Now you haue a faire opportunitie, and it is in your owne power to procure his friendſhip for euer, better ſtanding with your affaires than war. And albeit you may hope well of the power of
C the Vayuod, yet wiſdome would not, that you ſhould prefer vncertainties before things certain: you haue now receiued thirtie thouſand duckats, the earneſt of your further deſerts, which ſhall hereafter haue alſo their due rewards in moſt full and bountifull meaſure. Wherefore if you will do your ſelfe good, and prouide both for your ſafetie and preferment, confound not your own good fortune, with the broken and deſperat ſtate of the Vayuod, but ſuffer the Turks to paſſe as friends ouer the riuer of Danubius. For I am come (ſaid he) with a great and puiſſant army from the mightie *Selymus*, to take vpon mee the gouernment of MOLDAVIA, and to ſend the Vayuod in bonds to CONSTANTINOPLE: and of mee, being once Vayuod, what is it that for ſo great deſert thou and thine may not aske and obtaine? Wherfore I pray thee conceale the comming of the Turks, and withdraw thy ſelfe from the riuer: ſo ſhal we, paſſing ouer the riuer with our po-
D pulous armie, eaſily oppreſſe the Vayuod with all his power, and at once reuenge all the former iniuries and diſgraces done both vnto *Selymus* and vs.

Czarnieuiche hath ſecret conference with Peter the Palantines brother, who cunningly perſwadeth him to giue the Turkes paſſage.

With greedie men what will not the foule deſire of gold worke? *Czarnieuiche* ouercome with the golden promiſes of *Peter*, and forgetfull of his faith before giuen vnto the Vayuod, yeelded vnto all he requeſted: and drawing his forces further off from the riuer, as if it had been for his more ſafetie, gaue the Turkes free paſſage. There was then in the Turks armie two hundred thouſand men, well appointed, & furniſhed with great ordinance, and all other things neceſſary both for the field and for ſiege, who by the ſufferance of the falſe traitour paſſed quietly ouer the riuer. *Czarnieuiche* forthwith poſting to the Vayuod, certified him, how that the Turks truſting to their multitude, had paſſed the riuer of Danubius, againſt whom hee was not able (as
E he ſaid) to make head: and that therfore hee ſhould doe well, without delay to goe againſt them with ſuch forces as he had then in a readineſſe; which ioyned vnto his, might eaſily ouerthrow them. Glad was the Vayuod of this newes, and filled with the hope of good ſucceſſe, demanded of him what ſtrength the enemy might be of? They are (ſaid hee) not much aboue twelue thouſand that be already come ouer, but are ſtil comming more and more, and wil before your comming thither be aboue fifteene thouſand.

Czarnieuiche corrupted, giueth the Turkes leaue quietly to paſſe ouer the riuer of Danubius.

The Vayuod lay then at the ſiege of the caſtle of TSINA (hauing before taken the citie) but hearing this newes, raiſed his ſiege, and ſo in foure dayes came and encamped within three miles of the enemy: and forthwith ſent foorth *Swierceuus* with his Coſſackes, and *Ieremias* Generall of the horſemen, with ſix thouſand horſe, to take view of the enemies campe, and to vnderſtand
F what might be of their deſignes. Theſe two captaines marching together, chanced to fall vpon the Turkes ſcouts, in number about ſixe thouſand horſemen, with whom they had a light skirmiſh, and in ſhort time put them to flight. Of theſe ſcouts they tooke one, and him grieuouſly wounded: who being examined of the ſtrength of the enemie, and feeling himſelfe wounded to death, told them diſſemblingly, that the Turks were not in number many. But the Coſſackes doubting

doubting of the truth of that report, and probably coniecturing by so great a number of scouts, G
that the enemy was of farre greater strength than was supposed or reported; quickly certified the
Vayuod thereof, wishing him in time to prouide for the safety of himselfe and his army, and not
too much to trust *Czarnieuiche*, whom they had a good while before suspected. But the Vay-
uod nothing doubting of the faith of him whom hee had a long time found most faithfull in
the time of his hardest distresse, and vsed as a most trustie companion in all his trauels, answered
nothing, but that he knew whom hee trusted, and that it was not now time to stand in doubt, or
to be afraid; and that hee would ere long come and take view of the enemies campe himselfe:
for that hee was not come so farre to flie, but to fight in defence of his countrey and subiects,
euen to the last gaspe. And so fortifying his campe neere vnto a lake that runneth out of Danu-
bius (for the more conuenient watering of his armie) hee set forward with all his power against H
the enemie.

Neere vnto the enemies campe was an high hill, from whence the Vayuod had thought to
haue descried the number of them, with the manner of their lying: but comming thither, hee
could descry nothing but foure companies of scouts afarre off, one company from another; who
also vpon the sight of the Moldauians withdrew themselues of purpose out of sight vnto the ar-
mie, which then lay in a low valley behind an hill, not to be discouered vntill a man were almost
vpon it. The Vayuod suspecting the enemy to be at hand, diuided his horsmen, in number thir-
tie thousand, into thirtie companies, and placing before euerie companie certain field pieces, so
marched readie to giue battell. His footmen, in number many, a rude and homely kind of peo-
ple, but vnto him of all others most faithfull, and armed with such countrey weapons as they I
had, he placed by themselues. So marching on, he came to another hill, from whence he might
not farre off easily descry the huge army of the enemy, and how he had been by the treason of
Czarnieuiche deceiued: whereupon he presently sent for him; who sent him word backe againe,
That he could not now come, the enemy being so nigh at hand, but that he should forthwith see
him in the field as forward as the forwardest against the enemy. *Czarnieuiche* had then vnder his
command thirteene thousand of the most choice souldiers in the armie: who vpon the signall
of battell on both sides giuen (for the Turks were now also ready) first according to his promise
set forward, as if it had beene to haue giuen the onset: but being come neere vnto the enemie,
Czarnieuiche reuolteth vnto the Turks. forthwith (as he had before agreed) caused his ensigne to be let fall, and his men with their caps
vpon the points of their speares and swords, in token of their voluntary yeelding and submission K
to bow downe their heads and bodies; whom the Turks with their speares and launces holden
vp on high, ioyfully receiued as their friends, or rather as men taken to mercie. The rest of the
armie almost discouraged with this so sudden a reuolt of so great a man, retired in hast to the
Vayuod, crying out vnto him, that all was lost. But he nothing discouraged therewith (as a most
resolute man in the most sudden daungers) with comfortable wordes cheared them vp, willing
them as couragious men to follow him against the enemie, whom they in all things exceeded,
excepting number, which alwaies gaue not the victory. The Turks perceiuing the Moldauians
lately reuolted vpon the ioyning of the battell (as men in conscience wounded) to shrinke back,
Traitors iustly rewarded. thrust them perforce into the head of their battell, making of them no more account, but to
blunt the enemies swords; and such as hung backe, they themselues slew: vpon whom as false L
traitors the Vayuod caused his field pieces to be most furiously discharged; so that most part of
these treacherous men there slaine, some by the Turkes, some by their owne friends, receiued
the iust reward of their infidelitie and treason, accompanied with perpetuall infamie. Ouer
The battell betwixt the Turks and the Moldauians. the dead bodies of these traitors the Turkes comming on, were at the first notably encountered
by the Moldauians; and after a most cruell fight, as if they had beene discouraged, began to re-
tire, but indeed of purpose to haue drawne the Christians before they were aware, within the
danger of their great ordinance, and ambushes, which they had before aptly & couertly placed
for that purpose. Which *Swierceuius* well acquainted with the Turks fineneſſe, perceiuing, with
much adoe staied their further pursuit, and so auoided the danger prepared for them. The Turks
deceiued of their expectation, came on againe afresh, with no lesse fury than at the first: whom M
the Christians right valiantly receiued, and made with them a most cruell and mortall battell;
wherein many both of the Turkes and Christians fell, and neuer rise againe. But what was so
The Moldauians ouerthrowne. small a power against such a world of men? After long fight, the Moldauians oppressed with the
multitude of their enemies, began to giue ground: and seeing no other remedy, but either to flie

or

A or to die, betooke themselues to flight, wherein most part of them were slaine, the furious enemie still hardly pursuing them at the heeles: of the Cossackes were left only two hundred and fiftie. The horsemen (the chiefest strength of the Vayuod) thus by the treason of *Charniauiche* ouerthrowne, the Vayuod with twentie thousand footmen, and such horsmen as had now after the battell ioyned themselues vnto the footmen, retired vnto a towne not far off, which he but a little before had rased; but was now glad in the ruines thereof to fortifie himselfe against the sudden and furious assaults of the Turks: who the same night so beset the Vayuods campe with such a multitude of men, that no man could go in or out of the campe; or the vttermost part of that hugie armie be from any place descried.

The Vayuod hauing fortified himselfe with the ruines of an old towne, is besieged by the Turks.

The next day (which was the eleuenth of Iune) the Turkes shot diuers great shot into the
B Vayuods camp, but to small purpose, for the Christians had (for so short a time) notably fortified themselues within the ruines of the old town. Which the Turks well perceiuing, and withall considering how hard and dangerous a matter it would be to assault the Vayuod in his strength: they sent messengers vnto him, to perswade him without delay to yeeld himselfe, and to repose more trust in the mercie of the Turks, than in his owne broken forces; especially in his so hard distresse, being so beset, as that he could not possibly escape, and out of hope of all relieFe; and therfore should by such voluntarie yeelding, seeke for grace of his enemies, rather than by a desperat obstinacie to cast himselfe into a most certaine destruction, where no mercie was to be expected. Whereunto the Vayuod answered, That he was not ignorant into what danger he was brought, rather by the treason of *Charniauiche* and his followers, than by the valour of the
C enemie; yet had left with him a strong power of most valiant and resolute men, who would in his quarrell and defence of themselues, sell their liues very deare vnto the Turks: neuertheless, that to auoid the farther effusion of bloud, he could for his part be content to yeeld vnto his hard fortune, so that the great commaunders of the Turks armie would condiscend vnto such reasonable conditions as he should propound, and for the performance thereof giue him their faith, not once or twice, but seuen times by solemne oath to be taken. Of this his offer the Turkes accepted, willing him to set downe the conditions: which were, first that the Polonian Cossackes might in safetie depart into their countrie, with their horses and armour: then, that they should without any violence offered to his person, send him aliue and in good safetie vnto the great emperour *Selymus*, before him to answere his owne cause: as for the Moldauians, he said he ne-
D ded not to couenant any thing, for that the iniurie offered vnto them tended also to the hurt of the emperor himselfe, and of him whom he should appoint Vayuod, whose subiects they were. These conditions (as reasonable) were well liked of the Turks, and so according to his desire, confirmed seuen times by the solemne oath of euery captaine and commaunder in the armie, both for themselues and their followers. Vpon this agreement, the Vayuod brought all his armie out of their trenches wherein they had lien strongly encamped, and there with heauie heart tooke his last leaue of his souldiors, to the generall griefe of them all: amongst whom he diuided such money and iewels as he had, as a remembrance of his kindnesse. And there in the sight of them all disarming himselfe, accompanied only with *Osmolius* a Polonian, went in manner of
E a suppliant to the Turks campe, where he had full foure houres talke with the great commaunders of the armie; vntill that at last *Capucius Bassa* (either offended with his speech, or vnmindful of his faith before giuen) with his scimitar vpon the sudden struck him a great blow ouerthwart the face, and another crosse the bellie: whom so wounded, and as yet but halfe dead, the Ianizaries tooke and cut off his head, which was forthwith set vp vpon a lance, for all men to behold. His dead bodie they bound by the feet vnto two camels, and so shamefully tore it in pieces: and happie was he that could get any little piece thereof, or embrue his sword with the least drope of his bloud. This was the lamentable and wofull end of *Iohn* the Vayuod of Moldavia, a right valiant and worthie man, shamefully murdered by the perfidious Turkes, who had hee beene more constant in the Christian faith, had not happily fallen into so great miserie. Whose wofull
F fall may serue as a most notable example of the vncertainetie of these worldly things: for as no man for a time had of the Turkes moe or more glorious victories, so in the end, and as it were in demonstration of mans fragilitie, no man perished more miserably. The Vayuod thus perfidiously murthered, the Turkes with like treacherie forthwith set vpon the Moldauians, and slew them downeright as beasts appointed for the slaughter. Which the Cossackes beholding, and hoping for no better measure, thrust themselues into the thickest of their enemies, and there va-

The Vayuod shamefully and perfideously murthered by the Turkes.

liantly fighting were all slaine, except some few of the better sort reserued for ransome, amongst G
whom was *Seuiercenius* with some other captaines; who were afterwards for great sums redeemed, when as they could by no meanes be perswaded to forsake their religion and turne Turke.

All Valachia made subiect to the Turkes.

After this victorie and shamefull murder of the Vayuod, the Turks ouerran all MOLDAVIA, and put to sword all the nobilitie of that countrie, with many of the countrie people: of whom they also as their maner is in countries new conquered, sent great numbers in colonies into the farther parts of the Turkish empire: and for the more assured possession thereof, placed strong garrisons in euery towne and castle, as they thought it most conuenient. Thus all VALACHIA (both the higher and the lower) fell into the Turks hands in the yeare 1574, and was by *Selymus* ioyned vnto the Turkish empire, none of the least things by him done: For beside the gaining of so great a countrie (the most assured bulwarke of POLONIA) he hath thereby opened a faire H
and easie way for his successors, at their pleasure to enter into PODOLIA, or RVSSIA, parts of the Polonian kingdome, yea and into POLONIA it selfe: which they will vndoubtedly in time doe, if God in mercie bridle not their immoderat desires, and with his mightie hand protect the dangerous state of that kingdome.

The losse of Moldauia dangerous to Polonia.

Selymus at the same time, not a little grieued with the losse of the kingdome of TVNES, and that *Don Iohn* had there done the yere before; began forthwith to cast in his mind, how he might againe recouer the same, and withall, thrust the Spaniards out of the strong castle of GVLETTA; which they had now almost fortie yeares kept, euer since that it was by *Charles* the fift taken from *Barbarussa* in the yeare 1535: for he well saw it to bee a matter of no small moment, to whom that strong fortresse (standing so commodiously in the frontiers of AFFRICKE) belonged. There was (and still is) vpon that coast diuers of the Turkes aduenturers, which liuing altogither vpon spoile, had to that place safe recourse, as to a most assured refuge: and if no bootie were to be met with thereabout, then would they run out towards MALTA, SARDINIA, SICILIA, and the other islands thereabouts; yea oftentimes into ITALIE and SPAINE, and from thence carrie away with them great booties both of men and cattell, and whatsoeuer thing else came in their way: for which cause, many of the Turkes men of war resorted thither in hope of purchase. But after that GVLETTA was possessed by the Spaniards, they were not onely depriued of that so commodious an harbour, but many times intercepted euen by them of that place, and by the gallies of MALTA: which two places serued as two most sure bulwarks against the Turkes and Moores aduenturers, by whose meanes they many times came short home. K
For which cause the Turkes, especially these pyrats (of whom the Turke maketh great account, as not his least strength at sea) wonderfully desired to haue both those strong places gotten out of the hands of the Christians. In the castle of GVLETTA was continually a strong garrison of a thousand Spaniards, who kept them of TVNES in great subiection, and oftentimes cut short these pyrats and rouers, who much troubled those seas. Wherefore the Turkish emperour *Selymus*, hauing made great preparation both for sea and land seruice, commanded *Sinan*, *Piall*, & *Vluzales*, his chiefe Bassaes, and men of great experience, with all speed to passe ouer with his fleet into AFFRICKE, to besiege TVNES and GVLETTA. Who when they had put all things in readinesse according as they had in charge, set forward, and with three hundred saile of gallies came before GVLETTA the thirteenth day of Iuly: whither also resorted vnto them other the Turks men of L
war, from ALEXANDRIA, ALGIERS, and other places, in such number, as that all that coast seemed to be couered with shipping. The Turks at their first arriual laied siege to the water tower, wherin were eight hundred souldiors well pronided of all things needfull for defence, who most valiantly maintained the place, vntill such time as that most of them being by the often assaults of the enemie slaine: the rest by the commandement of the captaine retired to him into the castle. In taking of this tower the Turkes lost 3000 of their men.

Gulettabesieged by the Turks.

After that they began to besiege the castle of GVLETTA, against which they cast vp diuers mounts, and from thence most terribly battered the castle: from whence the deadly shot was sent againe amongst them not sparingly; so that in one day two hundred great shot were reckoned to haue bin shot out of the castle amongst the thickest of the enemies. But after many furious assaults, too tedious to report, and much harme done on both sides, the Turkes to their M
great aduantage tooke the chanell of the lake of TVNES; and fearing least some relieue should be sent to the besieged, maintained their assault day & night without intermission. Neuertheless, certaine companies of Spaniards sent from the new castle by *Serbellio*, got into GVLETTA; after

which

A which, they in the beſieged caſtle ſallied out, and the twentith of Auguſt repulſed the Turkes, with an exceeding great ſlaughter. But the Baſſaes fully reſolued vpon the winning of the place to gage their whole forces, and without ceaſing ſtill bringing on freſh ſouldiors, after they had all the day continued a moſt terrible aſſault, at length about two houres after Sun ſet, they took the caſtle the 23 day of Auguſt, when there was now ſcarcely two hundred ſouldiors left aliue to defend the ſame; who altogither with the other weak people in the caſtle were without mercie cut in pieces. What wealth the Turkes found in this caſtle, is hard to ſay; but certaine it is, that they had therein great ſtore of victuals, armour, ſhot, and pouder, and foure hundred great pieces of artillerie. *Guletta taken by the Turkes.*

B GVLETTA thus taken, the Turkes forthwith laid ſiege to the new caſtle, appointed by *Don Iohn* the yeare before to haue bin built betwixt GVLETTA and TVNES, which was not yet altogither finiſhed: wherein the two auncient and valiant captaines, *Serbellio* and *Salazar* (left there of purpoſe for the building thereof by *Don Iohn*) lay with a garriſon of foure thouſand good ſoldiors. The Baſſaes when they gaue the firſt ſummons to the caſtle, the foure & twentith of Auguſt, required to haue it forthwith deliuered vnto them: to whom *Serbellio* ſtoutly anſwered, That he had promiſed the king his maſter, to giue him a better account of the place; and being now alſo very old, could not endure the Turks heauie yoake, but would therefore hold it out vnto the laſt man: which both he and *Salazar* truly performed, not omitting any thing that was by men to be done for defence of the place; and ſallying out, ſometime the one, and ſometimes the other, made great ſlaughter of the Turks, giuing them alſo repulſe vpon repulſe when C they came to the aſſault. But the great Baſſaes, little feeling, and leſſe regarding the loſſe of men, ſo that thereby they might gaine the place; after many moſt terrible and deſperat aſſaults, at length (namely the thirteenth day of September) when they had with all their force for the ſpace of ſix houres, furiouſly aſſaulted the caſtle, and ſlaine moſt of the defendants, at laſt tooke it. *Serbellio*, ſhot in with two bullets, and wiſhing rather to die than to fall into the hand of the enemie, thruſt himſelfe into the middeſt of the Turkes, there to haue periſhed: but by the haſtie comming in of *Piall Baſſa*, both he & *Salazar* were taken aliue; as for all the reſt that followed them, they were put to the ſword. The Baſſa in his rage ſtrucke *Serbellio*, and the more to grieue him, cauſed his ſonne to be cruelly murthered before his face. Neither was this victorie by the Turks obtained without bloud, hauing in leſſe than three moneths ſpace that the ſiege endured, loſt D aboue thirtie thouſand men. *The notable anſwere of Serbellio.* *The new caſtle taken.*

Theſe ſtrong holds (the greateſt ſtrength of that kingdome) thus taken, the Turkes marched to TVNES, which they eaſily tooke, and afterwards ouerthrew the fortifications thereof, becauſe it ſhould no more rebell. *Mahomet* the yong king, but the yere before placed in that kingdome by *Don Iohn*, was there taken, and in bonds ſent aboord to be caried with *Carrera* captaine of GVLETTA, priſoners to CONSTANTINOPLE. And thus the kingdome of TVNES, with the ſtrong caſtle of GVLETTA, fell againe into the poſſeſſion of the Turks, to the farther trouble of the Chriſtian countries lying ouer againſt it. The prowd Baſſaes hauing (as they thought) beſt diſpoſed of all things at TVNES and GVLETTA, departed thence, and with their fleet of 400 ſaile, came the fourth of October within ſight of MALTA. But vnderſtanding that they of MALTA were pro- E uided for their comming, and remembring what diſhonor their moſt magnificent emperor *Solyman* had not many years before there ſuſtained; wherof diuers of them had bin eye-witneſſes, they turned thence, and ſailed directly to CONSTANTINOPLE. *Tunes yeelded to the Turke.*

Shortly after, this great emperor *Selymus* ſpent with wine and women, vnto whom he had giuen his greateſt ſtrength, died, the ninth of December, in the yeare of our Lord 1574; when he had liued one and fiftie years, and thereof raigned eight, and lieth buried at HADRIANOPLE. He was but of a meane ſtature, and of an heauie diſpoſition; his face rather ſwollen than fat, much reſembling a drunkard. Of the *Othoman* kings and emperours he was of leaſt valour, and therefore leaſt regarded, altogither giuen to ſenſualitie and pleaſure: and ſo dying, left his empire vn- F to *Amurath* his eldeſt ſonne, a man of more temperance, but not much greater courage; who neuertheleſſe by his valiant Baſſaes and men of war did great matters, eſpecially againſt the Perſians, the mortall and dangerous enemies of the Turkes, as ſhall be hereafter in his Hiſtorie declared. *Selymus dyeth.*

FINIS.

Christian Princes of the same time with Selymus the second.

- *Emperors of Germanie.* — *Maximilian the second.* — 1565. 12.
- *Kings*
  - *Of England* — *Queene Elizabeth.* — 1558. 45.
  - *Of France* — *Charles the ninth.* — 1560. 14.
  - *Of Scotland* — *Queene Marie.* — 1543. 20.
  - *Of Scotland* — *Iames the sixt, that now raigneth.* — 1567.
- *Bishops of Rome*
  - *Pius the V.* — 1566. 6
  - *Iulius the XIII.* — 1572. 12.

Non ego fortis eram: Quis tanto nomine dignus?
Ni fortem faciat mens generosa virum.
Me tumidum fortuna tumens euexit in altum,
Et par fortunæ, mens mea ſemper erat.
Sic quamuis tenero mihi nil niſi molle placeret:
Nominis augendi raptus amore fui.
Emiſiq́ meos ad fortia facta miniſtros:
Per quos ſublatum eſt, nomen in aſtra meum.
Muſtapha, Ferrhates, Sinan, & ter maximus Oſman;
Terrores orbis ſuccubuere mihi.
Armenios domui fortes Medoſq́ feroces:
Et mihi paruerat Regia Tauriſij.
Sed mihi quid prodeſt tantorum parta labore
Gloria? Si ſubito maxima queque ruant?
Et nihil eſt tanti, quod non breuis auferet hora
Sic mea cum multis gloria victa iacet.

RICH. KNOLLEVS.

In Engliſh thus.

The Worthies praiſe I challenge not:
for who deſerues the ſame?
Except the noble Worthies minde,
deſerue the Worthies fame.
Prowd Fortune ſet me prowd aloft,
in honours higheſt grace:
And ſtill my haughtie thoughts they were
equall vnto my place.
So that although nought pleaſd but that
beſt fitted my deſire:
Yet to increaſe my fame, I ſtill
did more and more aſpire.
And ſent my mightie Worthies out,
to mannage my great warres:
By whoſe knowne valour my prowd name,
is mounted to the ſtarres.
Prowd *Sinan, Ferrat, Muſtapha,*
all men of high degree:
The terrours of the world ſo wide,
were vaſſals vnto me.
Th'Armenians ſtout I vanquiſhed,
and fild the Medes with feare:
And Regall TAVRIS ſtately towers,
at my commandement were.
But what auailes my glorie great,
got with ſuch Worthies paine,
If in the twinkling of an eye,
it come to nought againe?
And nothing is of ſo great State,
which Time ſhall not caſt downe:
Euen ſo with many others moe,
muſt periſh my renowne.

R. Knolls.

THE

THE LIFE OF AMVRATH, THE THIRD OF THAT NAME, SIXT EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

THe death of the late emperour *Selymus* was for feare of the insolent Ianizaries notably concealed by the great Bassaes, vntill such time as *Amurath* his eldest sonne, then in ASIA, by speedie messengers aduertised thereof about twelue daies after, arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE: and there receiued into the Seraglio, tooke possession of the empire, the fiue and twentieth day of December, solemne amongst vs Christians for the natiuitie of our Sauiour Christ Iesus. He was about thirtie, or (as some write) seuen and twentie yeares old, when he began to raigne: of a manly stature, but pale and corpulent, wearing his beard thin and long: in his countenance appeared not the fierce nature of the *Othoman* princes, being indeed himselfe of a peaceable dispositon, a louer of iustice, and in the manner of his superstition very zealous. The riot and excesse growne amongst the Turks by his fathers euill example, he reformed, by his owne temperance, and the seuere punishment of notorious drunkards: yet is it reported, that he would oftentimes himselfe drink plentifully of wormwood wine: he was much subiect to the falling sicknes, and sore troubled with the stone: more spare handed than was for the greatnes of his state: and yeelding more to the counsell of his mother, his wife, and sister, than of his great Bassaes; which was of many imputed to him for simplicitie. At his first comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, to appease the murmuring of the Ianizaries (grieued to see themselues so disappointed of the spoile of the Christians and Iewes, which they were wont to take in the vacancie of the empire) he beside the vsuall largesse which the Turkish emperours at their first entrance into the empire bestow vpon them, augmented also their dayly wages, and granted them this priuiledge, That their sonnes as soone as they came to be twentie yeares old, should be inrolled amongst the number of the younger Ianizaries, & be partakers also of their immunities; wherby he woon their fauours exceedingly. And immediatly to rid himselfe of all competitours, he after the vnnaturall maner of the Turkish policie, caused his fiue brethren, *Mustapha*, *Solyman*, *Abdulla*, *Osman*, and *Tzihanger*, to be all strangled in his owne presence. The mother of *Solyman* pierced through with the cruell death of her young sonne, as a woman ouercome with sorrow, desperatly struck her selfe to the heart with a dagger, and so died. At which so tragicall a sight it is reported that *Amurath* let some teares fall, as not delighting in such barbarous crueltie, but that the state and manner of his gouernment so required.

Amurath taketh vpon him the Turkish empire the 25 day of December, in the yeare 1574.

The description of Amurath.

He pacifieth the Ianizaries, and augmenteth their priuiledges.

He strangleth fiue of his brethren.

A desperat woman.

1575

In the beginning of his raigne he established diuers wholesome lawes, altered the coyne, and bountifully relieued the poore. And albeit that he was of a mild and peaceable nature, yet because he would not seeme to degenerat from the *Othoman* princes his progenitours, he prosecuted his fathers warres, and by the Tartars (called Præcopenses) in the month of October, in the yeare 1575 entred into RVSSIA, part of the Polonian kingdome, where he burnt and destroyed two hundred noblemens houses, besides an infinit number of towns and villages, made great slaughter

Russia invaded by the Turks.

Leon. Goreci. de Bel. oluonia.

ſlaughter of the poore countrey people, and carried away great numbers of cattell and priſoners bound in thongs made of raw hides. But whileſt they were diuiding the ſpoyle with *Peter* the new Vayuod of VALACHIA, who had before ſolemnely promiſed to giue the Tartars no paſſage that way, the Polonian Coſſackes, who had lien waiting for their returne vpon the riuer Boryſthenes, brake into the Tartars countrie, and there requited them with like harme, and brought backe with them a number of old captiues, who little expected that their ſo ſudden deliuerance. G

The Polonians at this time were at variance among themſulues about the election of their new king (*Henry Valois* their late king being the laſt yeare, after the death of *Charles* his brother the French king, ſecretly ſtolne from them into FRANCE, to take vpon him that kingdome: after whoſe departure ſome of the Polonian Nobilitie made choice of *Maximilian* the Emperour: otherſome no leſſe enclining vnto the choice of the great duke of MOSCOVIE, and ſome vnto others alſo.) Whereof *Amurah* vnderſtanding, and loth that either of thoſe two great princes his enemies ſhould bee inueſted or ſtrengthened with that ſo great a kingdome, and ſo neere vnto him: to hinder that their election, and to bring in another of leſſe power, and ſo leſſe dangerous vnto himſelfe, euen in the beginning of his reigne wrote vnto the Polonians to that purpoſe, commending vnto them *Stephen Battor* the Vayuod of TRANSYLVANIA, for their king, in manner following: H

Amurath God of the earth, Gouernour of the whole World, the meſſenger of God, and faithfull ſeruant of the Great Prophet: vnto the moſt honourable Nobilitie and Counſellors of the kingdome of POLONIA, greeting. I

Amurath his letters vnto the Nobilitie of Polonia.

It is not vnto the world vnknowne (moſt honourable and mightie Senatours) our noble Progenitours to haue of long time and for manie yeares holden good friendſhip and religious leagues with the kingdome of POLONIA: *For which cauſe it hath ſeemed good and reaſonable vnto vs, to put you in remembrance of this ſo auncient a league and bond of friendſhip; for that we vnderſtanding your kingdome to bee of late become deſtitute of a King, by the departure of the noble King* Henry, *your crowned King (deſcended of the royall race of the French kings) our friend: who for the ſmall regard you had of him (ſo great and worthie a prince) and for your diſloyaltie, is departed out of your kingdome, without purpoſe of returning any more into* POLONIA. *Whereupon, as it is reported vnto vs (but how truly we know not) you paſſing ouer your ſaid crowned king* Henrie, *are about to make choice of a new king, and eſpeciallie of* Maximilian *the emperour, or of the duke of* MOSCOVIE, *both men of running wits, and of vs greatly hated: for why, you may well know they will bee troubleſome and grieuous not vnto euerie one of you onely, but euen vnto vs alſo. Wherefore bee you ware that you bee not deceiued; and take heed leaſt your confederations and leagues cannot long by their valour and proweſſe be eſtabliſhed; and withall conſider well the great dangers and loſſes which you may thereby fall into, whereof wee haue thought good to giue you a taſt: wherefore beware that heauier things befall not your State. Wee know there are right noble and wiſe men amongſt you, which know better than they how to rule and gouerne: and if ſo bee it pleaſe you not to make choice of any of your owne nation; there is not farre from you one* Stephen Battor, *prince of* TRANSYLVANIA, *a man of great honour and valour, by whoſe labour and dexterie you may eaſily procure the peace and quiet of your Kingdome. Whereas if you ſhall doe otherwiſe, we take to witneſſe your God, and his ſeruant our Great Prophet, to deſtroy all your wealth and goods, which together with your ſelues, your wiues and children, ſhall be giuen for a prey vnto our ſouldiors; which the chiefe men of your cities of* CRACOVIA *and* LEPERIS: *which for all that we ſay not, as any thing at all doubting of your fidelitie and conſtancie towards vs. As for the reſt which it pleaſed vs by word of mouth to haue told vnto you, we haue giuen charge vnto this our embaſſadour and counſellour, vnto whom our deſire is that you ſhould giue full credence. From* CONSTANTINOPLE *the laſt of September in the yeare of your Prophet* Mahomet 983, *and firſt of our reigne.* K L M

This the great Sultans commendations ſo much preuailed with the Polonians, that notwithſtanding that *Maximilian* the emperour was by the Archbiſhop of GNESNA and ſome others choſen king, yet was that his election by the greater part of the Nobilitie reuoked, and both

A both he and the great duke of MVSCOVIA being paſſed ouer, the noble princeſſe *Anne* (of the moſt honourable *Iagellonian* houſe) choſen queene of POLONIA, yet with this condition, That ſhe ſhould marrie *Stephen* the Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, to them by *Amurath* commended. Who afterward elected king, all the time of his life right worthily gouerned that noble kingdome, not only defending the ſame in ſuch ſtate as he found it, but alſo notably extending the bounds thereof, enlarging it with ſuch territories as he by force of armes got from his neighbours, eſpecially the Muſcouite. Of this election *Amurath* would oftentimes afterwards boaſt and ſay, That he had giuen the Polonians their king. But of him and of the league by him made with *Amurath*, more ſhall be ſaid hereafter.

Stephen Vayuod of Tranſiuania vpon the commendation of Amurath choſen king of Polonia.

The yere following great troubles aroſe in PERSIA, wherby the flouriſhing ſtate of that moſt 1576
B mightie kingdome was ſore ſhaken, and opportunitie giuen for the Turkiſh emperor to inuade the ſame; which he laying hold vpon, entred into that bloudie war, which to the great quiet of the Chriſtian commonweale, for long time after exerciſed the forces of thoſe moſt puiſſant princes one vpon the other. For the better vnderſtanding wherof, it ſhal not be amiſſe compendiouſly to ſet downe the ſame troubles of the Perſian kingdome, the very ground of the long and mortall war between thoſe two moſt mightie Monarchs.

Old *Tamas* the Perſian king, ſonne to the noble *Hiſmaell*, who with great glorie had more than fiftie yeares worthily gouerned that large kingdome, and mightily withſtood the often inuaſions of the Turkiſh emperours, now ſpent with yeres, died the eleuenth of May in the yeare 1576, leauing behind him eleuen ſonnes, namely, *Mahomet* the eldeſt, of an infirmitie in his eies
C ſurnamed *Codabanda*, a man of a peaceable and quiet diſpoſition, more delighted with the ſweet pleaſures of a contented life than the carefull honors of ſo great a kingdome: *Iſmahel* the ſecond ſonne, of a more fierce and troubleſome nature, ſo much abhorring quietnes, that not regarding the league hardly concluded betwixt his aged father and the Turkiſh emperors *Solyman* and *Selymus*, hee would now and then without his fathers knowledge vpon a youthfull heat break out into the frontiers of the Turks dominions, and there make great ſpoyle; for which doing although he was both of his father and the people the more regarded, yet was he by his fathers commaundment (who in outward ſhew ſeemed to miſlike of thoſe his youthfull pranks, tending to the breach of the league) reſtrained of his libertie, and ſent to the caſtle of CAHACA, betwixt TAVRIS and CASBIN; where he remained at the time of his fathers death: *Aidere* the
D third ſonne, no leſſe ambitious than was his brother *Iſmahel*, but not of like valour, kept by *Zalchan*, *Piry Mahamet*, and other his kinſfolkes, all men of great power and authoritie: The other eight were, *Mamut*, *Solyman*, *Muſtapha*, *Emangali*, *Alichan*, *Amet*, *Abrahin*, and *Iſmahel* the younger.

The eleuen ſons of Tamas the Perſia king.

The old king before his death had by his laſt will and teſtament ſolemnly appointed *Iſmahel* his ſecond ſonne to ſucceed him in the kingdome; as of all his ſonnes moſt fit to take vpon him ſo great a charge. Which thing *Mahomet* his elder brother ſeemed not much to diſlike, contenting himſelfe with ſuch honours as his father had before beſtowed vpon him.

Iſmahel appointed by his father to ſucceed him in the kingdome.

Tamas thus dead, *Iſmahel* was by the Sultans ſent for to CAHACA, to take vpon him his fathers kingdome at CASBIN; when in the meane time there aroſe a great tumult in the citie, yea
E euen in the kings pallace: for *Aidere* the third brother, who in the time of his fathers greateſt ſickneſſe had entred the chamber where he lay drawing towards his end, and in his ſight moſt preſumptuouſly ſet the royall crown vpon his head, to the manifeſting of his ambitious deſires, for which he was then worthily reproued: now after the death of his aged father, caried headlong with the ſame aſpiring humour, and ſupported by *Zalchan*, and other his mightie fauorits, had ſo effectually dealt with the great ladie *Periaconcona*, his eldeſt ſiſter, and the other Sultans counſellors of eſtate, put in truſt to ſee the will of the dead king put in execution, as that the ſucceſſion could not be any longer kept from him, and preſerued for *Iſmahel*, but by the helpe of ſome fine and ſecret deceit. This ladie *Periaconcona* (elder than all the young princes the ſonnes of *Tamas*, her brethren, a woman of great ſpirit and deep conceit) left in great truſt by her father,
F ſeeing the proceeding of her brother *Aidere*, durſt neither openly to mooue any thing vnto the Sultans, preiudicial to his deſignes; neither could ſhe in her heart indure ſo great an iniurie to be done to her brother *Iſmahel*, appointed by his father to ſucceed him. Wherfore in this perplexitie ſhe caſt in her wily head, how to ſatisfie her ambitious brother preſent, how to ſaue the right of *Iſmahel* abſent, the honour of her dead fathers will and teſtament, and the ſafetie of the kingdome.

Aidere aſpireth to the kingdome of Perſia.

dome. For hauing throughly debated the matter with the Sultans, ſhe reſolued, That *Aidere* in- G
ueſted in royall apparell, and ſetled in the great gallerie, ſhould attend the acclamation of the people, and be there openly enthroniſed, as the very elected king. With which vaine ſhew the vnwiſe youth (blinded with ambition) ſuffered himſelfe to be led: and being ſet in his maieſtie, verely perſuaded himſelfe, that he ſhould now be honoured both of his friends and foes as king. But vnto theſe his ſo haſtie and proſperous deſignes, the ſucceſſe that ſprung from the ſubtiltie of thoſe counſellors and his diſſembling ſiſter, were nothing conformable: for that ſhee by their aduiſe tooke order for the gates of the pallace to be preſently locked, leauing at euerie paſſage a ſure guard, and onely one wicket open, ſafely warded with a companie of moſt faithful and valorous captaines and ſouldiors, wholly deuoted to *Tamas* and *Iſmahel:* with ſtreight charge, to ſuffer euerie man to enter in, ſauing onely the knowne friends of *Aidere*. In this ſort did ſhe H
thinke to haue entertained the young man, vntill ſuch time as *Iſmahel* ſhould arriue from CAHACA, and ſo put in execution what he thought beſt for the honour of himſelfe and the generall quiet of the kingdome.

Who ioyeth now but *Aidere?* in conceit a king, repleniſhed with vnwonted ioyes, receiuing honour from all men, ſauing from his beſt friends. By meanes wherof perceiuing now the prohibition of them, and mooued alſo with the great ſtirre of *Zalchan* his greateſt fauourit (who diſcouered the deceit, and crying vpon king *Aider*, threatened the ladie, the Sultans, and the reſt that waited vpon the faigned ſucceſſion, indeed ordained but for the ſcorne and deſpight of the ambitious man) ſtrucken with an exceeding feare, and full of ſorrow, he withdrew himſelfe cloſly amongſt certaine women of the court, hoping ſo to find ſome way to eſcape with life. I

In the meane time ſo greatly encreaſed the cries and threatnings of the friends and fauourites of *Aidere* (who now had all of them prepared themſelues for ſome dangerous and pernitious attempt (that the counſellors with conſent of the lady his ſiſter, were inforced to take order, That to bereaue this tumultuous & ſeditious people of al their hope and courage, *Aidere* ſhould be depriued of his life. Whereupon *Sahamal* the Georgian, vncle to *Aidere* by the mothers ſide, by the appointment of the lady *Periaconcona* and the Sultans, after long ſearch made for him, at laſt found him hidden amongſt the women, and without further delay taking him by the locks, ſtrucke his head from his ſhoulders; and in the place where *Zalchan* and the reſt of his vnfortunat fauourites ſtood crying and threatning, amongſt the thickeſt preaſe of the proud conſpirators flung the head all bloudy, and as it were yet breathing for heat, crying aloud vnto them: *Behold there your king, enioy him at your pleaſure.* At which ſudden and horrible ſpectacle euery man K
burned in rage and anger: neither for the preſent wanted there many a raſh head, that vainely threatned moſt cruell reuenge. But in the end, when they perceiued the neere ſucceſſion of *Iſmahel* ineuitable, and the death of *Aidere* irreuocable, euery man betooke himſelfe to his owne priuate affaires, and ſo at laſt diuided themſelues one from another, and ſo departing from the palace, ſcattered themſelues ſome one way, ſome another, euery man as hee thought beſt for his owne ſafetie.

Aider ſlain, and his head caſt amongſt his ſeruitis.

Iſmahel ſaluted king.

Shortly after *Iſmahel* the deſired king arriued at CASBIN, where he was of his ſiſter and the Sultans ioyfully receiued, as their lawfull and vndoubted ſoueraign, & with the great acclamation of the people ſaluted king: who as ſoone as he ſaw himſelfe poſſeſſed of the royall ſeat, and L
his power now anſwerable to his deſires, hee (after the manner of the Turkiſh policie) moſt vnnaturally cauſed the heads of his eight yonger brethren to be ſtricken off: and withall vſed ſuch further diligence, that not onely all thoſe which were neere vnto them in blood or affinitie, were bereaued of their liues, but alſo all the fauourits of his late ſlaine brother *Aidere*, were deſtroyed in that publike ſlaughter: ſo that all the ſtreets of CASBIN were defiled with bloud, and all the citie reſounded with mourning and complaints. Which vnexpected crueltie, altogether vnworthie ſo worthie a thought king, ſo altered the minds of his ſubiects in generall, that all their former hopes were now conuerted into new feares, and their ioy into mourning. But much greater and farre more lamentable did the miſeries grow, as ſoone as it was giuen out, That hee would M
change the religion of the Perſians (who with great deuotion honor their fooliſh prophet *Aly*) into the ſuperſtition of the Turks (who with no leſſe impiety obſerue and maintaine the wicked rites of *Ebubekir*, *Haumer*, *Oſman*, and others, by them ſuppoſed to bee the moſt true ſucceſſours of their great Prophet *Mahomet*.) For by meanes of this vncouth noueltie and vnexpected change, & by force of an edict concerning that matter, publiſhed by this new king, many of his

He murdereth eight of his yonger brethren.

prophane

A prophane prieſts,many of the gouernours of his friendly and ſubiect cities (too much deuoted to their former ſuperſtition)were driuen ſome into exile,ſome clapt into priſon,ſome had their eyes pluckt out(among whom was the Caliph of CASBIN)and not a few others in ſundry ſorts depriued of their liues. Yea many ladies(ioyned in blood with *Iſmahel* himſelfe, and diuers others of his kinsfolks,to whom neither ſex,nor age,nor innocency could be a ſufficient defence) endured ſundry torments and ſtrange calamities: ſo that in PERSIA was neuer felt greater troubles,or a more dangerous change.

In this ſo great an innouation,and among theſe tumults,there went abroad withall a generall rumour,not in the cities of PERSIA onely,but in the regions of the Turks alſo, euen as farre as CONSTANTINOPLE,That *Iſmahel* with a puiſſant army of ſuch as fauored this new pro-
B claimed vanitie,was determined in perſon himſelfe to go to BABYLON, now called BAGDAT, there to receiue the crowne of the empire,at the hands of him that he ſhould find to be the ſucceſſour of their great Caliph,and in the chiefeſt place among their vncleane prieſtes: as had ſometime *Solyman* the great emperour of the Turks,and the Perſian kings of ancient times. In this world of troubles,when as the feare of farther miſeries increaſed, rather than any hope of ancient quietneſſe; he was when he leaſt feared,by the helpe of the aforenamed lady *Periaconcona* ſuddenly bereft of his life: but whether ouertaken in ſome of his own amorous practiſes,or poyſoned by his ſaid ſiſter; or that ſhe (as ſome probably affirme) hauing ſecretly conſpired with *Calil Chan*, *Emir Chan*, *Pyry Mahamet*, *Curchi Baſſi* (being all at that time men of great account, and as it
C were preſidents of the kingdom) who diſguiſed in womens apparell & brought in by her,ſtrangled him at ſuch time as he had priuatly withdrawne himſelfe amongſt his paramours, is vncertaine. Howſoeuer it was,ſufficeth it, that hee by the helpe of the ſaid ladie *Periaconcona*, was by vnnaturall death taken out of this world the foure and twentieth day of Nouember,in the yeare of grace 1577;to the exceeding ioy of all thoſe nations, who by his death thought themſelues now freed of many great and dangerous troubles: when he had raigned one yeare, ſeauen moneths,and ſixe dayes. 1577

Iſmahel ſuddenly murdered by the deuiſe of his ſiſter Periaconcona.

Iſmahel thus taken out of the way,the lady began foorthwith to perſuade with the great Sultans(the miniſters of *Iſmahels* death)that as they had for the generall good of PERSIA contriued the death of the late king: ſo now that they would take vpon them the protection of that
D great kingdome,with the preſeruation of the maieſtie and libertie thereof, vntill ſuch time as it were known who ſhould worthily ſucceed in that crowne,which now remained in their hands. There was at that time many of the greateſt princes and gouernors of that kingdome aſſembled at CASBIN, there gaping after ſuch mutations of thoſe troubleſome times,as might beſt ſerue their priuat deſignes. *Emir Chan* burning in ambitious deſires,was in hope by means of a match to be made with a ſiſter of *Periaconcona*(who was already greatly enclining vnto him)to bee exalted to the ſoueraignetie of all PERSIA. *Mirize Salmas* the chiefe Sultan,hoped on the other ſide to aduance into the eſtate, either *Mahamet Codabanda* the eldeſt brother of the dead king, or elſe *Hamze* the eldeſt ſonne of the ſaid *Mahamet*; and by beſtowing vpon him his daughter in marriage (as afterwards hee did)ſo to encreaſe the grorie of his houſe. Others there were, that
E thought they ſhould be able to draw *Abas Mirize* (the middlemoſt ſonne of *Mahamet*) out of HERI, and to make him king. Neither wanted the infant *Tamas* his aſpiring friends,whoſe tutour waited likewiſe for ſome opportunitie to ſettle him in the kingdome, and ſo by meanes of his greatneſſe,to make himſelfe greateſt amongſt his fellowes. A number of others there were that ſecretly waited vpon euery occaſion that time ſhould preſent for their preferment. Howbeit in this ſo great variety of thoughts,the Sultans anſwered the ladie with one conſent,and promiſed her in moſt liberall tearmes,all the protection that their forces could affoord, or their weapons procure: and yet did euery one of them,both in action and word,clearkly diſſemble their ſeuerall imaginations,wherunto their minds were as prone and ready, as their hearts were cunning cloſely to conceale them.

F *Amurath* the Turkiſh emperour now wakened, firſt at the death of the old renowmed *Tamas*, and then at the rumour of the deſire *Iſmahel* had to paſſe with an armie to BABYLON, as alſo at the freſh report of the Turkiſh ſuperſtition newly publiſhed in PERSIA; and withall throughly inſtructed what harme this late king had done in PERSIA, what diſſentions hee had raiſed,and how hardly the prouinces of that empire had endured thoſe calamities: began forthwith to thinke hereby a faire occaſion to bee miniſtred vnto him, to take vp armes againſt the Perſians;

Amurath attentiue to the ſtate of Perſia.

Perſians, and matter ſufficient ſuggeſted for him to put in execution the great deſire he had of G
ſome new conqueſt. For it is an ancient cuſtom, which is grown to be as it were a law amongſt
the *Otheman* kings, That they may not challenge their due honours in their life time, nor their
prowd monuments after their death, vnleſſe they attempt ſome great and ambitious actions and
enterpriſes, and performe ſome exploit conformable to their maieſty. *Amurath* therfore bent
vpon theſe great ſtirs in PERSIA, would not direct his mind any other way, or take any other
war in hand, vntill he might firſt ſee what iſſue theſe marueilous innouations in PERSIA would
bring forth: which in the perſon of *Mahamet* the ſucceeding king, ſeemed to be more pregnant
than euer before, and miniſtred vnto *Amurath* new occaſions of victorious and ſtrange hopes.
For as ſoone as *Iſmahel* was dead, the aforenamed *Mirize Salmas* (in dignitie chiefe man among
the Sultans, though in bloud and nobilitie inferiour to them all) after many letters diſpatched to H
and fro, at laſt aſſured *Mahamet Codabanda*, how with all quietneſſe of mind, and ſecurity of per-
ſon, he might come and poſſeſſe himſelfe of the kingdome. He was alſo aduertiſed by the ſaid
Salmas, of the whole conſpiracie plotted againſt his brother to bring him to his end: and like-
wiſe made acquainted, how the fraudulent lady (with the Sultans) had capitally conſulted againſt
himſelfe; and how ſhe fauouring *Emir Chan*, and *Abas Mirize* of HERI (her nephew and his
ſonne) more than became her, did little regard the due and rightfull ſucceſſion of him being the
eldeſt brother. So *Mahamet* bearing himſelfe vpon the faith and diligence of *Mirize Salmas*,
and deſiring withal to ſee his eldeſt ſonne *Hamze Mirize* aduanced to ſome ſuch ſoueraign dig-
nitie, as he ſaw was due to the liuely hope euery man perceiued to be in him, in regard of his
vertue and prudence for managing the common-wealth, and matters of war (wherein alſo he I
ſhewed himſelfe vnto his father jealous and ſuſpitious, leſt ſome other man ſhould vſurpe vpon
him, that honour and authoritie which ſo properly appertained vnto him) reſolued in the end
not to leaue the kingdome in the hands of priuate perſons, nor the lightneſſe of an vnconſtant
woman of ſuſpected modeſtie, and a rebellious conſpiratour againſt her owne blood, wherwith
ſhe had without any pitie or remorſe of conſcience, now twiſe defiled her ſelfe. And therefore
he wrote backe againe, That he was minded to take the rightfull ſucceſſion vpon him, and that
for the ſame purpoſe he was putting himſelfe vpon his iourney: with ſtraight charge notwith-
ſtanding, that *Mirize Salmas* ſhould before his entrance within the gates of CASBIN, preſent
him with the miſchieuous head of *Periaconcona*; a woman (in reſpect of the ſcorne exerciſed
againſt her brother *Aidere*, and of the treacherous death of her other brother *Iſmahel*, and of K
the peruerſe imaginations which ſhee had conceiued to cauſe the ſucceſſion to fall into other
mens hands, and of the prodigall familiarity which ſhe had with ſome of the Sultans) well wor-
thy of a thouſand deaths. Secretly did *Mirize Salmas* put in execution what ſoeuer *Mahamet*
had priuatly enioyned him, ſo that by his means he was preſently and ſolemly proclaimed king
of PERSIA. And afterwards hauing gathered together many ſquadrons of men, wholly deuo-
ted to the bloud and name of *Mahamet*, the ſame *Mirize Salmas* met him on the way, carrying
the head of that manlike Virago *Periaconcona* vpon the poynt of a launce, with her haire diſper-
ſed, and ſome other vncouth ſights to the terrour of the beholders. From which nouelties (one
miſchiefe as it were hudling vpon the necke of another) there ſprung vp diuers inward hatreds,
ſundry tumultuous ſeditions, and much ciuile warres: this new king by the inſtigation of *Mi-* L
rize Salmas, ſeeking on the one ſide to be reuenged on the Sultans for his brothers death, and
they on the other ſide oppoſing themſelues with all their power againſt him, the ſtate of PERSIA
began to fall into great inconueniences, and of theſe nouelties to reape new loſſes. *Sahamal* the
Georgian fled into his mountaine of BRVS, fearing the wrath of this new lord: *Leuent ogli* like-
wiſe an other of the lords of GEORGIA, vnderſtanding of the flight of *Sahamal* his neighbour, e-
ſtranged himſelfe ſo farre from his old loue and auncient deuotion towards the Perſian kings,
that he ſeemed now to deſire ſome new innouation. The nations alſo that were neighbors to the
Turkes, and the people of MEDIA ANTROPATIA, now called SIRVAN, diſliked of this new king;
and in the end it appeared, that PERSIA vnder this king through many mutations, was in ſhort
time fallen into moſt notable miſerie, and the ſtate thereof more weakened than it had beene of M
long time before.

Mahamet reſol-ueth to take vpon him the kingdome of Perſia.

Mahamet pro-elamed king of Perſia.

The head of Periaconcona preſented to Mahomet on a launce

Of all theſe things had *Amurath* from diuers places intelligence, but more particularly from
Vſtreff of VAN, a citie of ARMENIA the greater, ſituate vpon the lake Actamar, who ſent him
moſt perfect information of all the ſtirs in PERSIA: Diſcourſing vnto him of the death of *Iſ-*

mahel,

A *mahel*, the conſultations of the Sultans, the trecheries and death of *Periaconcena*, the broiles betweene the king & the Sultans, the nature of the new king (being diſeaſed in his eyes, little eſteemed of his ſubiects, beſotted in affection towards his ſonnes) the facilitie to ouerrule the chiefe Gouernors of the Georgians, and the people of SERVAN, euill affected towards the new king: and to bee briefe, whatſoeuer had in truth ſucceeded in PERSIA, and might enflame the mind of the ambitious Sultan, to conuert his forces againſt an enemie of ſmall counſell, and much confuſion: adding thereunto, that neuer was there greater opportunitie to ouercome that king than now was offered; and therefore wiſhed him, not in any caſe to let ſlip ſo faire an occaſion, as the *Othoman* kings had neuer before, for the obtaining of ſo certaine and glorious victories.

B *Amurath* of long time wholly bent to marke the euent of the troubles in PERSIA, now ſtirred vp with theſe aduertiſements from *Vſtref*, ſetled himſelfe more deeply in his former conceits to proue his forces in ſubduing the Perſian king, the auncient enemie of the *Othoman* emperors, and his onely corriuall and odious competitour in the Eaſt. But no one thing did more enflame him thereunto, than to thinke, how hee ſhould haue to his enemie a king not acquainted with deeds of armes, doting vpon his children, and weakned with the diſſention of his ſubiects: and on the other ſide entring into the conſideration of his owne forces, of the infinit number of his men, both horſe and foot, of the meanes he had to find money, of his artillerie and engines of warre, wherein he farre ſurpaſſed the Perſians; he did more and more reſolue with himſelfe, to take the occaſion that was now offered him to begin the warre. For the compaſſing of which
C his purpoſe he was greatly fauoured by the preſent ſtate of Chriſtendome, at that time being wholly in league and amitie with him. So not finding any thing contrarie to his deſignements, he reſolued at laſt to confer with the chiefe Baſſaes, which had the gouernment of his empire, Whether it were better vpon this occaſion to begin the prepenſed warre; or if they thought not this opportunity to be ſo fit, then to lay it aſide, and to conuert his forces and counſel againſt the commonwealth of Chriſtendome. For ſuch is the barbarous pollicie whereby this empire is mannaged, That it is lawfull for them to breake any league, be it by neuer ſo many promiſes or ſolemne oaths confirmed, whenſoeuer any enterpriſe is to be attempted for the aduauncing thereof. So that although this warre could not be moued either againſt the Perſians or Chriſtians, without breach of their promiſed faith: yet among the manifold conſultations that paſſed a-
D mong the great Baſſaes, there was not any man found that made any account of that defect, but all with one accord, without further reſpect ſought to ſet forward the ambitious deſire of their proud lord and maſter. At laſt after long conſultation & large diſcourſes it was agreed vpon by the great Baſſaes *Mahomet*, *Sinan*, and *Muſtapha*, That it would be better and leſſe danger to attempt warre againſt the Perſians, than againſt the Chriſtian princes. *Muſtapha* among the reſt preferring the valour of the Latines (whereof he had made good triall eſpecially at FAMAGVSTA) before the armies and forces of the Georgians and Perſians. Wherby it is apparant to the world, that neither the zeale of their religion, nor any iniurie receiued from the Perſian king, but only the ambitious deſire of *Amurath* (to ſubdue a kingdome, both in his owne conceit and other mens relations, euill gouerned, by an effeminat and ſottiſh king, and through ciuile diſſention
E brought into great danger) was the firſt prouocation of making this war.

No aſſurance in the Turkes league.

Ambition the cauſe of the Perſian war.

Vpon this reſolution there aroſe new conſultations touching the manner thereof, and vpon what coaſt they ſhould begin their iourney, for the more honourable ſucceſſe thereof. Which point *Amurath* greatly vrged, proteſting before his chiefe counſellours, That he would not enter into that war, except he were in great hope to beare away the victorie. Some thought it moſt conuenient to ſend the armie to BABYLON, and from thence to SYRAS, called in old time PERSEPOLIS, the chiefe citie of the countrie of PERSIA: others there were that gaue aduiſe, That the armie ſhould be directly ſent to TAVRIS, there to erect ſtrong fortreſſes, and to take poſſeſſion of all the countrie round about it: & there wanted not ſome (as it is reported) that thought it better to ſend two ſeuerall armies for both the forenamed places; and ſo by bringing the ene-
F mie into a ſtraight, to enforce him to yeeld to whatſoeuer ſhould be of him required. But *Amurath* durſt not repoſe ſuch confidence in his forces, as to thinke, that with his battels diuided and ſo weakened he ſhould be able to conquer that enemie, who had alwaies moſt valiantly fought againſt the monſtrous and puiſſant armies of his anceſtours. And therefore firmely reſolued with himſelfe, to ſend one onely armie, and ſo with his vnited forces to ſeeke the ouerthrow of

A conſultation holden amongſt the Baſſaes about the maner of the inuaſion of Perſia.

the enemie. And ſo preferring the ſtrong hope he had conceiued to conquer the countrie of SIRVAN, and the chiefe cities of MEDIA the great, before the difficultie of making war vpon the coaſt of SCYRAS, repoſing alſo great hope in the notable helpe that was promiſed him by the Tartars called Præcopenſes, he confirmed the great Baſſaes his counſellours in the ſame opinion: and withal diſcouered vnto them a matter, which to all of them, but eſpecially to *Sinan*, ſeemed moſt ſtrange; namely, that he was determined not to go himſelfe in perſon with his armie, but to ſend one of his worthieſt captaines in his ſtead. The cauſes why he ſo did, were many, but eſpecially, for that he was troubled with the falling ſickneſſe, and feared greatly (and that not without good cauſe) leaſt his ſonne *Mahomet* (being much fauoured of the people) might peraduenture in his abſence be vntimely aduanced to the empire; beſide the dangers that he ſuſpected at the hands of the Chriſtian potentates: and withall perſuaded it to be vnto himſelfe a great honour to performe thoſe things by his ſeruants, which had in thoſe countries bin vnfortunatly attempted by his moſt noble predeceſſors in their owne perſons. G H

While they were thus conſulting about the expedition, and the great Baſſaes, *Sinan*, *Muſtapha*, and others, made means to be ſent as the ſoueraigne miniſters of their lords deſignement; he diſpatched away ſundrie poſts and light horſemen with order to the Baſſaes and Gouernors of VAN, BABILON, and ERZIRVM, in the frontires of his dominions, That they ſhould by often inrodes ſpoyle the townes and caſtles of the Perſians, and by all meanes to doe them what harme they could. Which they were not ſlacke to put in execution, and eſpecially *Vſtref* (or rather *Huſreue*) Baſſa of VAN: who with often incurſions did much miſchiefe, as well in the countries tributarie, as ſubiect to the Perſian king. A forcible preparatiue for greater troubles to enſue. I

Vſtref Baſſa beginneth the wars in Perſia.

Now in theſe great preparations for the Perſian warre (which for many yeares after notably exerciſed the greateſt part of Turks forces, to the great quiet of the Chriſtian commonweale) *Stephen Bathor* the late Vayuod of TRANSILVANIA, but now by the commendation of *Amurath* become king of POLONIA in the beginning of his raigne by his embaſſadors the great lord Iohn of SYENNA, entered into a ſtrong league and confederation with the great Turkiſh Sultan *Amurath* at CONSTANTINOPLE. Which for that it ſheweth in what tearmes that famous kingdome then and yet ſtandeth with the Turks great empire, and withall contayneth matter well worth the Chriſtian conſideration, it ſhall not be impertinent to our purpoſe (omitting the long and glorious ſtile of that barbarous Monarch, ſeruing to no other end but to ſhew the greatneſſe of his power) plainely to ſet it downe as it was on his part at the ſame time by him confirmed. K

The League betwixt the moſt puiſſant and mightie Princes, Sultan *Amurath* the Turkiſh emperour, and *Stephen* king of POLONIA, agreed vpon and concluded at CONSTANTINOPLE, in the yeare of our Sauiour Chriſt Ieſu 1577, and of the Prophet *Mahomet* 985.

L

The League betwixt Amurath the Turks Sultan, and Stephen king of Polonia.

I Sultan Amurath, *the ſonne of* Selym *Chan, the ſonne of* Solyman *Chan, the ſonne of* Selym *Chan, the ſonne of* Baiazet *Chan, the ſonne of the Great Emperour* Mahomet *Chan, &c. Prince of theſe preſent times, the onely Monarch of this age, of power able to confound the power of the whole world, the ſhaddow of diuine clemencie and grace, Great Emperour of many kingdomes, countries, prouinces, cities, and townes, lord of* MECHA, *that is to ſay, of the houſe of the glorie of God, of the reſplendent citie of* MEDINA, *and of the moſt bleſſed citie of* IERVSALEM, *prince of the moſt fruitfull countrey of* ÆGIPT, IMEN, ZENAN, ADEN, *and many other ſuch like: in moſt louing manner declare, That the moſt glorious and renowmed* Stephen *king of* POLONIA, *great Duke of* LITHVANIA, RVSSIA, PRVSIA, MASOVIA, SAMOGITIA, KIOVIA, LIVONIA, *and many other countries moe, Prince of the couragious followers of Ieſus, Gouernour of all the affaires of the people and familie of the Nazarets, the welcommeſt cloud of raine, and moſt ſweet fountaine of glorie and vertue, eternall lord and heire of the felicitie and honour of the aforeſaid noble kingdome of* POLONIA, *vnto whom all the diſtreſſed repaire for refuge, wiſhing a moſt happie ſucceſſe and bleſſed end to all his actions: offering vnto vs many religious vowes and eternall praiſes worthie our perpetuall loue and moſt holy league, and with great deuotion performing theſe and other like honours, as* M

for

A *for the diſpatch of his letters to our moſt glorious court, for the new confirming of the moſt ſacred league and confederation with vs, ſending the honourable lord* Iohn *of* Syenna *(his moſt faithfull counſellour) his embaſſadour to our imperiall court; declaring his loue and integritie, and purging himſelfe of all the ſuſpition of hoſtilitie, hath requeſted the league and confederation to be renewed. At whoſe inſtance wee haue giuen theſe our letters confirming the ſaid leagne of peace and confederation: wherein wee commaund, that none of our Counſellors, Beglerbegs, Sanzacks, Generals of our armies, Captaines or ſeruants, ſhall doe, or on my behalfe preſume to doe any hurt vnto the kingdome, countries, cities, caſtles, townes, iſlands, or whatſoeuer elſe to the kingdome of* Polonia *belonging. And in like manner, that none of the Nobilitie, Generals, Captaines, or others whoſoeuer belonging vnto the king of* Polonia, *ſhall dare to doe any harme vnto my kingdomes, cities, caſtles, or townes con-*
B *fining vnto the kingdome of* Polonia. *In briefe my will is, that hee being a mortall enemie vnto mine enemies, and a faſt friend vnto my friends, ſhall doe no grieuance or harme vnto any my ſubiects, or things whatſoeuer vnto my iuriſdiction belonging. So in like manner commanding alſo, that no hurt by any meanes, or for any occaſion be done by our people vnto the ſubiects, or whatſoeuer elſe vnto the iuriſdiction of the king of* Polonia *appertaining.*

The creatures, embaſſadours, meſſengers, and men of whatſoeuer condition elſe, ſhall on both ſides freely without let or trouble come and goe without any harme receiuing, either in their perſons or goods.

It ſhall be lawfull alſo for the king of Polonia *his ſubiects, to ſeeke throughout our empire for any the Polonian captiues taken before the time of this league; and the ſame ſo found (if they haue not*
C *receiued the Turkiſh religion, but ſtill remaine Chriſtians) to redeeme, without the contradiction of any man.*

And that whatſoeuer ſhall be taken and carried away after the confirmation of this league, ſhall be all againe freely and without any thing paying, deliuered and reſtored.

That the merchants on both parts may freely traffique with all kind of merchandiſe in the blacke and white ſea, as alſo vpon the maine; and ſo paying their vſuall and lawfull cuſtome, to be in nothing wronged or moleſted.

If any of the Polonian merchants ſhall die in our dominion, the goods of him ſo dead ſhall not be em-
beſeled, but kept in ſafetie vntill his brethren or other his friends ſhall come with the king of Polonia *his letters: vpon the ſhewing whereof, hauing alſo our letters mandatorie, the goods ſhall be forth-*
D *with reſtored vnto the dead mans heires. In which ſort alſo my merchants ſhall be dealt withall, if any of them ſhall chance to die in the kingdome of* Polonia.

If any wrong be done within the limits of mine empire, vnto any belonging vnto the kingdome of Polonia, *after the date of theſe letters confirming the league; the doer of the wrong ſhall by my commaundement be ſought out, and being found ſhall be puniſhed, and the wrong done, without any delay or contradiction forthwith recompenced. And the like Iuſtice to be alſo on the behalfe of the king of* Polonia *adminiſtred.*

If any debtor ſhall depart out of mine empire into the Polonian territorie, whereſoeuer he ſhall chance to be found by his creditor, he ſhall be brought to the Iudge of that place to be examined, and whatſoeuer it ſhall be proued him of right to owe, the Iudge of that place ſhall according to the equitie of the cauſe,
E *make the creditor to be ſatisfied.*

But if the debtor cannot himſelfe perſonally be found, no other man ſhall by reaſon of an other mans debt be taken, detained, or moleſted: neither ſhall the innocent be troubled for the guiltie, in either or both our kingdomes.

In briefe, vpon whatſoeuer conditions and capitulations the league of peace and confederation was in the time of my father, my grandfather, or great grandfather of famous memorie, made with the kings of Polonia, *vpon the ſame conditions and capitulations be it now made alſo.*

Whatſoeuer hurt hath hitherto been done to either part by reaſon of the diſagreement of the Gouernors and captaines, ſhall all be on both parties neglected and forgotten.

Alſo after the time of theſe letters confirming the league and confederation, Whereas the king of
F Polonia *ſhall in time pay a certaine ſumme of money vſed to be paied vnto the Tartars; the Tartar* Chan *and his ſonne* Mirzeleby *their princes, ſhall reſtore the ſame againe, and not to dare to ſuffer his armies by any meanes to hurt the Polonian territories. So that on the part of the Tartars and their armies, no harme ſhall be done vnto the kingdome of* Polonia: *neither on the part of the Polonians to the territories of the Tartars. And if any harme ſhall by the Tartars be done in the king*

of POLONIA *his territories, it shall by my commaundement be againe restored. And so likewise on the part of the Palatine of* MOLDAVIA, *or the inhabitants of the kingdome of* MOLDAVIA, *no harme shall be done vnto the countries subiect vnto the king of* POLONIA: *but if any be done and certainly knowne, to be by my commaundement againe recompenced.* G

On the part also of the king of POLONIA *and his subiects, whatsoeuer harme shall be done vnto the territorie or subiects of the Moldauian Palatine, or Tartars; the harme so done to be recompenced, and the doers thereof punished.*

Also that all such fugitiues as hauing done any notorious felonies or other villanies in MOLDAVIA, *and so are fled into* POLONIA, *shall at my request, or at the request of the Palatine of* MOLDAVIA, *be restored, and in no case denied.*

That all the Polonian captiues within my dominions, yet professing the Christian religion, may by the king of POLONIA *his subiects be redeemed, not paying any more for them than their lords and masters paid: euerie such master of the slaue taking his oath that he cost him so much. But such captiues as haue receiued the Turkish faith, to be forthwith set at libertie: and so the Turkes slaues in the kingdome of* POLONIA *to be likewise manumised.* H

That our embassadours on both sides (so long as we are in league and amitie) may freely come and go, and not be staied in any place; and being willing to meet together, may at their pleasure so doe. And being entred into the confines of either part, to be forthwith by some good and faithfull guide appointed vnto them, conducted vnto the place they are to goe vnto. And this to be on both sides kept.

No man to dare to hurt, or slay any Merchant, hauing paied his thirtith part, or lawfull custome.

If any of our subiects shall haue any suit with any of the king of POLONIA *his subiects, the Iudges shall without delay be bound to administer iustice. All theeues and robbers shall be diligently sought out; and being found, to be seuerely punished: and the goods taken away, without impeachment to be restored vnto the right owners, their heires, or to the king.* I

The Sanzacks of SILISTRIA *and* BOLOGRAVE, *the Customers and water-baylifs shall not suffer any man but Merchants and such as are sent in our seruice, to passe ouer the riuer Nyester; who passing ouer, if they shall bring with them any slaue or bondman out of* POLONIA, *hee shall be sent back againe. The shepheards, if they will transport their sheepe into the iurisdiction of the king of* POLONIA, *shall not so doe without the leaue of the Polonian Gouernours, before whom they shall also number their sheepe: of whom if any shall be lost, the Gouernours shall cause them to be sought for, and to be restored vnto the shepheards, as also to pay for their hey.* K

The Zauzij, Ianizaries, or Posts, shall not dare in time of peace or war, to take any horses from the Polonian merchants, or other the kings subiects comming into our kingdome.

The Palatines of MOLDAVIA, *in whatsoeuer condition they haue been towards the former kings of* POLONIA, *they shall now also still so be hereafter. The thirtiths and customes of both parts, shall continue in their old manner, and not be increased. The Polonian kings subiects and merchants, as well Armenians as of any other nation, whensoeuer they shall enter into* MOLDAVIA, *or any other part of our empire, shall not trauell by vncertaine and vnknowne, but by the common and high waies: wherein if they shall suffer any losse or harme, either in their goods or persons, the doers of such wrongs shall be sought for, and seuerely punished. Which merchants shall be suffered without any molestation quietly to come and goe, hauing paied their thirtiths: and no merchant to be troubled for anothers debt.* L

If any the Polonian kings merchants or subiects, be willing for readie money to redeeme and carrie away any slaues taken out of the Polonian kingdome, and yet professing the Christian religion; the Iudges shall in no case withstand them, neither presume to take them from them, or againe to redeeme them. But if any of such slaues haue receiued the Turkish religion, they shall not be againe demanded by the king of POLONIA.

Such slaues as haue not receiued the Turkish religion, if after a certaine space they shall be set at libertie by their masters, and in the letters testimoniall of their libertie, it shall be declared that they haue receiued the Turkish religion; yet shall they not by the Iudges be therefore detained.

In the citie of BVRVSA, *the Polonian merchants hauing paied their vsuall thirtiths, shall not be farther pressed with any other vnusuall payment.* M

My will is also, that the territories at this present in the possession of the king of POLONIA, *as hereafter to be by him taken from the Muscouite or any other the Christian princes, to be comprised within this league, and so to be royally by him possessed.*

And

A *And for the confirmation of the articles and conditions in these our letters of confederation contained. I sweare by the power of the most mightie God, and of his most holie prophet, and by the most cleane and pure spirits of all the prophets; that for all the daies of my life, and so long as nothing shall on the behalfe of the king of* POLONIA *be done contrarie to the peace and league, nothing shall also on my part be done contrarie vnto the same. Witnesse the Almightie, the vpright iudge and discerner of mens actions. From* CONSTANTINOPLE *the yeare of the holie prophet* Mahomet 985, *the* 14 *of the moneth Cziemassi Eumel, and of Christ* 1577.

This league betwixt these two mightie princes *Amurath* and king *Stephen* thus concluded, and after the death of *Stephen* by *Sigismond* the third (which now raigneth) renewed; as it hath
B beene euer since vnto the Polonian kingdome for the time commodious, so hath it as with an Adamantine band so bound that most famous kingdome, as that in the hardest distresses of the Christian common-weale, and most in deed concerning it selfe, it hath affoorded no more helpe than hath the members farther off, which is (I rue to say it) none at all. As in these late and present warres betwixt the Christian emperour and the two last Turkish Sultans, it is too plainly to be seene: wherein had it in due time giuen but such reasonable helpes as it might well haue spared, much nō doubt might haue bin done for the repressing of the common enemie, and the recouerie of the greatest part of that is lost of HVNGARIE: But thus bound, standeth as a dead member, seruing to no vse more than to the more speedie destruction of it selfe, togither with the rest of the sicke bodie. For what assurance it can haue in this long (I must needs say) but euill as-
C sured peace, is well to be seene in that in the great consultation of this great Sultan *Amurath* with his Bassaes after the Persian war, for the inuading of Christendome; the Polonians for all this league so solemnely constrained, were nothing the more regarded, but laied in the same ballance with the left, and preserued only by the Prouidence that all gouerneth: which leading the Turke against the Christian emperour their neighbour, hath giuen them that peace they were otherwise hardly to haue looked for. Vnto whom for all that, hauing to his endlesse praise maintained a long and most chargeable war, they haue not lent any great helpe or friendly hand; yet lying themselues still in the lyons mouth, and like ynough to be the next (God grant I be therein deceiued) that is to be of him deuoured.

But leauing these the heauie conceits of a melancholy mind, and ominous forbodings of that
D I wish not, to returne againe toward PERSIA, *Amurath* his greatest care. Amongst many the ambitious competitours for the mannaging of these Turkish so great designes, was the great Bassa *Mustapha* (euen he, who in the raigne of the late emperour *Selymus* conquered CYPRVS, carrying thence togither with his victorie perpetual infamie, for his faithlesse and cruell dealing with *Bragadine* the worthie and renowmed Gouernour of FAMAGVSTA) appointed Generall of the Turkes armie into PERSIA: and authoritie giuen him, to prouide whatsoeuer he should thinke needfull for so great a warre. And commaundment giuen vnto the Bassaes, and other commanders of the greatest part of the Turkish empire Eastward, that they should themselues with their souldiors of all sorts, bound by their perpetuall annuities to go to the warre, in the beginning of the Spring this yeare 1578, repaire to ERZIRVM, a citie of CAPADOCIA bor-
E dering vpon ARMENIA, there to attend the commaund of their new Generall. Who hauing his dispatch from CONSTANTINOPLE, and for fashion sake conducted by most of the court ouer the strait to SCVTARI, and from thence passing through the countries of AMASIA and SIVAS, in the verie beginning of Sommer arriued at ERZIRVM; and there staied vntill such time as his people, victuals, artillerie, & other his necessiarie prouision was come thither. From whence he departed for SERVAN, hauing first taken a diligent surueigh of his whole armie, mustering the souldiors of euery nation by themselues: namely, of the Mesopotamians twelue thousand, of the Assyrians and Babylonians fourteene thousand, of the Syrians two thousand, of them of the lesser ASIA (now comprehended vnder the name of NATOLIA) ten thousand, of the Iewes and Philistims one thousand, and of the Cilicians foure thousand. After whom followed the sol-
F diors of GRÆCIA, the glorie and hope of all the campe, valiant men to the number of ten thousand: and after them the familiar and faithfull guard of the Generall, ten thousand Ianizaries of CONSTANTINOPLE with harquebusiers on their shoulders, and scimitars by their sides: of the citie also of ERZIRVM, and the iurisdiction thereof, appeared foure thousand vnder the ensigne of *Beyran Bassa* their Generall. All these were stipendaries to the Turkish emperor: vnto

Mustapha Bassa made Generall of the Turkes armie.

1578

Mustapha commeth to Erzirum and there musfereth his armie.

whom other voluntarie aduenturers ioyned themſelues, in number not inferiour to the reſt, but better furniſhed, and of greater courage. So that in this generall furuey of the armie were found about an hundred and ten thouſand men, moſt part horſemen: yet was there not any ſtirred out of ARABIA, ÆGIPT, AFRICA, or HVNGARIE, or other places alongſt the ſea coaſts: neither were the prouinces from whence theſe ſouldiors were drawne, left deſtitute or vnfurniſhed of their ordinarie garriſons. Beſides this multitude of men, *Muſtapha* brought with him fiue hundred ſmall pieces of artillerie, with many loads of mony for his ſoldiors pay, with further order for the taking vp of more at ALEPPO, and other places, if his occaſions ſhould ſo require. He cauſed alſo great quantitie of corne to be tranſported by the Great ſea called in auncient time Pontus Euxinus, to TRAPEZONDE, ſo to be conueyed to ERZIRVM; being but foure daies iourney diſtant thence. To be ſhort, hauing taken order for all things he thought neceſſarie for the warre, he in ſeemely array departed from ERZIRVM, and in eight daies arriued at the ruines of CHARS, and in the fruitfull countrie thereabout reſted himſelfe: but was there ſurpriſed with ſuch a violent tempeſt of wind and raine, as rent in ſunder his tents, and did great harme, by means whereof many fell ſicke and were conſtrained to forſake the armie.

Muſtapha at Chars.

Hauing ſtayed three daies at CHARS, the bounder of the Turkiſh and Perſian empires, he departed thence with his armie, and that euening lodged vnder the mountaines of CHEILDER, ſuppoſed to be part of the hils PERIARDO: where hearing the Perſians to be in armes, he thought it beſt for the ſecuritie of his armie, ſo to pitch his tents as that he might well diſcouer the comming of the enemie, and not to be aſſaulted at vnawares. And therefore planting himſelfe in the plaine, he gaue order that *Beyran*, Baſſa of ERZIRVM, ſhould take poſſeſſion of a certaine hill on the right hand; and *Deruis* the Baſſa of CARAEMIT ſhould keepe another hill that ſtood on the left hand; and with them *Oſman Baſſa*, *Mahamet Baſſa*, *Muſtaffade Baſſa*, aduenturers, with many others as well ſtipendarie as voluntarie men, ſhould likewiſe pitch their tents vpon the ſame hils, in ſuch ſort, as that they making as it were two wings to the campe, might diſcouer the comming of euery man; and yet he himſelfe being ſhaddowed with the two hils, might lie vnperceiued of any.

Muſtapha cunningly encampeth his armie at Cheilder.

Mahamet the new king of PERSIA, as yet ſcarcely ſetled in his kingdome, ſtirred vp by the fame of theſe motions, reſolued in himſelfe to ſtand vpon the defence of his ſtate, and for a time to diſſemble the conceiued hatred which he bare to ſome of the Sultans of PERSIA, and princes of GEORGIA, and to make ſome apparant ſhew that he was reconciled to them; for that without them he could not promiſe vnto himſelfe any forme of an armie, or defence: wherein (notwithſtanding all the troubled ſtate of his kingdome) he wrought ſo cunningly, that almoſt all the great men of account tooke vpon them the protection of his ſtate and kindome. And ſo *Tocomac* a Sultan, the Chan and Gouernour of REIVAN, a famous man, well knowne vnto the Turkes, and of great reputation amongſt the Perſians, was choſen Generall of this expedition; with charge, That gathering togither the greateſt number of men he could out of ATROPATIA, out of MEDIA the greater, and other places neere vnto the Turks, he ſhould by all meanes poſſible ſtop their paſſage into GEORGIA and MEDIA ATROPATIA. And thereupon precepts were ſent out into all parts of the kingdome, That all the Chans, Sultans, and ſouldiours whatſoeuer ſhould come readie preſt to attend vpon their new Generall. Many obedient to the kings proclamation came, but many there were that would not ſtirre a foot, for their obſtinacie in the broiles begun, and for the ſuſpition they had of vnlooked for miſchiefes: at whoſe diſobedience the king much grieued; but now there was no remedie but to make the beſt of the matter, and for the ſafegard of his honour to make the beſt reſiſtance they could. So with thoſe few which for the loue of their prince and countrie were met togither in thoſe parts, being in number not aboue twentie thouſand, *Tocomac* was diſpatched about his buſineſſe, if happily he might with theſe ſmall forces oppreſſe the enemy in ſome ſtraight & trobleſome paſſage, where the great multitude ſhould rather ſerue to the confuſion of themſelues, than to the helpe of one another. Theſe twentie thouſand were all horſemen, armed with ſcimitar and bow, with ſome harquebuſies among, and furniſhed with very fine and well tempered armour; but aboue all couragious they were and reſolute, and well the more for the valour and proweſſe of their Generall. So prouided of all things neceſſarie, they ſet forward, and keeping the way of TAVRIS and GENGE, they came to the turning of CHARS, where they were aduertiſed that the enemies armie was alreadie paſſed.

Tocomac Generall of the Perſians.

They

A They were now come within a dayes iourney of CHIELDER, when they ſent quicke and faithfull ſcouts to bring them certaine newes of the condition and number of the Turks armie; who came thither euen at the very time that *Muſtapha* was encamping his armie betweene the two hils, whereupon the two Baſſaes *Beyran* and *Deruis*, with their people had alreadie pitched their tents. Theſe ſcouts diſcouering the Turkiſh hoaſt aloft, perſuaded themſelues that there was not any other battell than thoſe which they ſaw vpon the hils; whereof with all ſpeed they could they returned newes to *Tocomac*, who at eaſe had followed theſe his ſcouts afarre off. *Tocomac* thus miſinformed by his ſcouts of the number of his enemies, held on his way boldly, with purpoſe to aſſault them: and hauing diſcouered their tents vpon the hils, was throughly confirmed in the opinion he had before conceiued of the number of his enemies and the ſcouts rela-
B tion, and with ſo much the more confidence ſet forward to aſſaile them. But *Beyran* and *Deruis*, who quickly from the hils perceiued the Perſians comming in the plaine, although they knew them to bee men of great courage, yet repoſing an aſſured confidence in their Generals battell; with all ſpeed mounted vpon their horſes and ran to meet them. So in the aforeſaid plains vnder CHIELDER, within one houre after noone was ioyned a moſt bloudy battel, wherein at laſt were ſlaine ſeuen of the Turkes Sanzacks, with a very great number of ſouldiors, without any apparant loſſe at all among the Perſians; who fighting cloſe together in a great heat, and all beblou-died, vrged their happie and fortunat victorie.

But *Muſtapha* who perceiued all that had paſſed; and ſtayed waiting till the fight was at the hoteſt, and the medley at the thickeſt, that ſo the flight of the enemies might breed their greater
C diſorder: and now ſeeing that his people could no longer endure the furie of the enemies rage (euen as if it had lightened and thundred, and as though the earth had ſhaken) with ſuch cries and exclamations as the Turks vſe in their aſſaults, for the more terrour of the enemies, exciting his armie, ran as it were headlong vpon his aduerſaries, and ſo renewed a moſt terrible battell. The Perſians wonderfull courage endured this vnexpected and dreadfull aſſault, and with incredible ſignes of valour, in that little time of daylight that was left (for the night began now to approch) continued their manifold ſlaughters, and at laſt being fauoured by the darkneſſe of the night, withdrew themſelues with as little loſſe as poſſibly they might. Neither durſt *Muſtapha* any longer purſue them, but was glad by night to returne to his campe. Of the ſucceſſe of this battell the Perſians certified their king: as alſo of the greatneſſe of the Turkiſh armie, with
D their further purpoſe for the annoying thereof. And by the Turks alſo were preſented to *Muſtapha* (who had already ſent away poſts with newes to *Amurath*) fiue thouſand heads, which by their color, countenance, and beards, bewraied themſelues to be Perſians; and three thouſand Perſians aliue. Of this victory *Muſtapha* greatly reioyced, and to make it ſeeme the greater, ſeeking by all meanes to conceale his owne loſſes, and to raiſe a greater terrour by the fame thereof among his enemies) cauſed the heads of thoſe three thouſand that were brought before him aliue to be preſently cut from their ſhoulders, and gaue order, that of thoſe heads there ſhould be framed a bulwarke in thoſe fields for a moſt horrible and vncouth ſpectacle.

Muſtapha commeth with his battel to relieue his diſtreſſed people.

A bulwarke made of the heads of the ſlaine Perſians.

The ſame day that *Muſtapha* employed himſelfe about this barbarous and cruell worke, there came vnto him certaine meſſengers from *Manucchiar*, the younger ſonne of the Georgian wid-
E dow *Dedeſmit* (a great prince in that countrey) who told him, That with his good fauour and leaue *Manucchiar* their lord and maſter was comming to ſalute him, and to offer himſelfe vnto him as his obedient and deuoted ſeruant. At which newes *Muſtapha* redoubling his ioy, gaue commandement, That all the Baſſaes and captaines of the armie with all ſolemne pompe, with trumpets, drums, peales of ordnance, & all other ſignes of munificall and ioyfull entertainment, ſhould goe forth to meet the ſaid *Manucchiar*, and to accompanie him to his preſence. Which they did accordingly, and ſo encountering him with all ſignes of honour, conducted him to the great pauillion of *Muſtapha*, who there cauſed him againe to bee ſaluted with like triumph. *Manucchiar* diſmounted from his horſe, and againſt his will beholding the ſtrange and vncouth pile of heads, all pale and filthie to behold, and indeed imagining what the matter meant: yet not-
F withſtanding, before all other things hauing done his due reuerence to the great Baſſa; and according to his degree placed himſelfe next to his ſide, after he had preſented him with ſuch gifts as his countrey yeelded, he gaue him to vnderſtand, That for the honour and eſtimation which he bare to the Turkiſh valour, he was alwayes deuoted to the houſe of the *Othomans*; and as he had oftentimes deſired to ſpend his goods and life in their ſeruice, ſo at this preſent time, moued by

The ſpeech of Manucchiar to Muſtapha.

by his auncient deſire, allured by the ſtrange fame of this victorious and wonderfull armie, and ſtirred vp by a particular phantaſie to learne the painfull and hard precepts of the art militarie, vnder ſuch a Generall, commaunder of other commaunders; hee offered him all denotion and ſeruice, more than euer he had done to any heretofore, & himſelfe hauing nothing in the world more deere vnto him, conſecrated his owne life to his commandements; deſiring that the ſame might be employed in the conflicts of warre vnder his banners, among warriours and ſouldiors of fame and renowne: and therefore beſought him to accept of him in the name of *Amurath*, whoſe obedient vaſſale he vowed himſelfe to remaine for euer. G

The anſwere of Muſtapha.

Graciouſly did *Muſtapha* receiue all this diſcourſe from *Manucchiar*, and hauing ſhewed him againe the pile of heads, together with his battels, armour, and prouiſion of war, told him, That as all theſe forces are the gift of God, who alwayes fauoured the righteous counſels of the *Othoman* emperours, in ſuch ſort, that they Lord it ouer all the world, euen to the aſtoniſhment of all that liue in the world at this day: ſo had he for his particular choſen the better part, in comming now to yeeld himſelfe, and to ſubmit his obedience to his lord, although it had beene better if he had done it before. And as concerning the deſire he had to be his companion and fellow in theſe warlike affaires, hee did very friendly accept of his comming, and promiſed him all good entertainment and aſſured ſafetie. And ſo in exchange of the preſents which hee brought him, hee apparelled him in cloth of gold, honoured him with a battle axe and targuer, wrought with gold and ammell, and neuer permitted him to goe from his pauillion without a traine of his ſlaues following him. H

A terrible raine and tempeſt.

This Georgian prince thus ſolemnly entertained, the Generall gaue order through the camp, That they ſhould the next morning remoue from thoſe mountaines: and now euery man was putting himſelfe in readineſſe, when as there riſe a moſt terrible tempeſt of wind and raine, mixt with thunder and lightning; which continued with ſuch violence by the ſpace of foure dayes together, as if the heauens had beene diſſolued into waters. Whereby it came to paſſe, that out of the dead carkaſſes and heads before mentioned, iſſued a moſt horrible ſtinke: ſo that thereby, and by the foulneſſe of the weather, with the other annoiances alwaies attending vpon ſo great a camp, the whole army was exceedingly troubled, and diuers diſeaſes aroſe among the Turks. But at the laſt the weather breaking vp, *Muſtapha* riſe with his campe, and ſet forward toward TEFLIS: and being not able by reaſon of the fouleneſſe of the way to paſſe any further, that day ſtayed in the plaines, where the lake CHIBIDER GIOL ſtandeth, and there refreſhed his ſicke and wounded ſouldiors: remooving thence, the next day about noone he came to the caſtle of ARCHICHELEC, ſometime a caſtle of the Georgians, but taken from them by *Solyman* in his warres againſt *Tamas*, and euer ſince holden by the Turkes. Heere *Muſtapha* ſurueyed his armie, and by diligent account taken, found himſelfe to want fortie thouſand of his ſouldiours: wherof ſome were ſlaine in the battell, ſome were dead of ſickneſſe, and many wearie of ſo long and perillous a iourney were by night ſtolne out of the campe and returned to take their eaſe at home. From thence the armie remoued, and lodged at night neere the mariſh, called of the Turks PERVANA GIOL, or lake of ſlaues, and the next day came to TRIALA: where at this day are to be ſeene the ruines of a great citie, and of many churches; whereof ſome are yet repaired and maintained by deuout Chriſtians, the reliques of thoſe happie & religious forces, that with ſo great & faithfull zeale paſſed the ſeas and mountaines through thoſe barbarous nations into the holy land, men worthie of eternall praiſe. The next day the Turkes aſcended the high and craggie mountaine that ſtandeth vpon TEFLIS: from the top whereof deſcending the day following, they ſeized vpon a caſtle of the Georgians, called by the Turks GIVRGI CHALA. Departing thence, and lodging in certaine plaines, the next day they came neere to the riuer that runneth by TEFLIS. But in theſe foure dayes march from ARCHICHELEC, where *Muſtapha* tooke view of his armie, many of the Turks, who in ſeeking for victuals for themſelues and their horſes, had ſtragled from the armie, were cut off by the Georgian captaines; who with a number of their own countrey ſouldiors ſecretly followed the Turks armie, and well acquainted with all the waies of the country, lay in ambuſh vpō ſuch places as the victuallers were to paſſe through, and ſo ſuddenly ſetting vpon them, ſpoyled them at once both of their goods and liues. I K L M

Muſtapha ſurueyeth his armie at Archichelec, and lacketh fortie thouſand of his men.

The Turks victuallers cut off by the Georgians.

Muſtapha comming to TEFLIS, found that caſtle emptie, for that *Dant Chan* lord therof, hearing of the comming of the Turks, forſooke the ſame, and betooke himſelfe to the fields; prouiding better for himſelfe in ſo doing, than by ſtaying ſtill in the caſtle, to haue bin there taken priſoner.

A ſoner. This caſtle for the conuenient ſituation thereof *Muſtapha* cauſed to be repaired and fortified, and planted therein an hundred pieces of artillerie, and appointed *Mahamet Baſſa* Generall Gouernor of that place, with a garriſon of ſix thouſand ſouldiors: which done, he departed for SIRVAN. At which very time thoſe of SORIA, which had brought a thouſand loads of rent corne to the camp from ALEPPO, being themſelues in number a thouſand perſons, with fiue hundred others of OMPS (in antient time called HVS, the citie of the patient *Iob*) and other places of SORIA, men neither of dutie bound, nor of themſelues willing to follow the camp, returned homewards towards their owne countrey: but vpon the way they were ſet vpon by *Aleſſandro*, *Giuſuf*, and *Dauid* (three of the Georgian lords) and all ſlain, except ſome few, who by the ſwiftneſſe of their horſes eſcaped with *Naſſardin* their captaine.

B Now after that *Muſtapha* had paſſed the diſcent of the ſteepe mountaines of TEFLIS, the next day he encamped in certaine low plaines: where the embaſſadours of *Aleſſandro* ſurnamed the Great, ſonne of *Leuent* a Georgian prince, came vnto him and told him, That their lord was readie, if it ſo pleaſed him to come vnto him to doe him reuerence, and by word of mouth to promiſe him that deuotion he had alwaies in mind borne to the *Othomans* emperours. With a glad heart and cheerefull countenance did *Muſtapha* receiue theſe embaſſadors: and preſently ſent them backe to will their lord to come, and to tell him, That his friendſhip ſhould be vnto him moſt deare and acceptable. And after their departure tooke order with all the commanders of his armie to receiue him with all the ſignes of ioy that might bee; which at his comming was accordingly by them performed. Who after he had preſented vnto the general the rich gifts he C had brought with him, he offered his obedience to the Baſſa with moſt liuely ſpeeches he could poſſibly deuiſe, calling *Amurath* his lord: ſeeming to take it euill part, that hee paſſed not through his territory, where he ſhould (as he ſaid) haue had plentie of all things for the reliefe of his armie; yet hoping, that in his returne from SIRVAN, hee would take it in his way, where as hee ſhould find him moſt readie to beſtow all that he had in the ſeruice of his lord: telling him moreouer, That although hee could not for many vrgent reſpects goe with him in SIRVAN, yet he would alwayes accompanie him in mind, and continually pray vnto the Creator of all things for his proſperitie and moſt happie ſucceſſe. Courteouſly did *Muſtapha* receiue both his preſents and ſubmiſſion, and in exchange therof beſtowed vpon him certain gifts after the Turkiſh manner, and in magnificall tearmes gaue him anſwer, promiſing him in his returne to paſſe D through his countrey: and ſo diſmiſſed the Chriſtian duke with like honour, wherewith he was entertained at his comming.

Aleſſandro the Georgian ſendeth embaſſadors to Muſtapha.

Aleſſandro courteouſly entertained by Muſtapha.

Muſtapha holding on his iourney toward SIRVAN, through mooriſh and troubleſome wayes, in twelue dayes after he departed from TEFLIS, came into the confines of *Sirvan*, neere to the riuer Canac, and there reſted on this ſide the riuer one day. At which time they of the city of *Sechi*, bordering vpon the Siruanians and Georgians, foure dayes iourney from SVMACHIA, came to offer themſelues to *Muſtapha*, as ſubiects to the Turks. Of whoſe ſubmiſſion the General gratiouſly accepted, promiſing to them his aſſured protection.

The Turkes armie ouerwearied with the continuall trauell of twelue dayes march, but yet farre more afflicted with hunger, not finding in thoſe parts ſo much as one wild beaſt to aſſuage E their greedy deſire of meat, ſought by all meanes euery man for himſelfe to get ſomething, eſpecially when they vnderſtood their Generall would paſſe the riuer into a countrey vnto them all vnknowne, where they were altogether vncertaine what to find for their reliefe. So whileſt they were inquiring among themſelues, who were able to conduct them to ſome ſuch place as where they might ſupply their wants, behold certaine Perſians were taken; who being ſtraightly examined on that point, after much reſiſtance at laſt told them, that not far off, after they had paſſed certain mariſhes, where Canac diſchargeth it ſelfe into *Araxis*, they ſhould find many fields full of Ryſe & corne in the blade, and a little further certaine fat herds of cattell, ſufficient to relieue the whole armie. Of this newes was the Generall certified: who although he greatly doubted the ſubtilties of his enemie; yet to gratifie his ſouldiors, and to make them more willing to fol- F low him into SIRVAN, hee licenced euery man that had a deſire thereunto to goe and prouide themſelues of victuals, and ſo ſuffered all that would to goe freely. Whereupon there went of themſelues, and were ſent by their captaines about ten thouſand ſeruile perſons, with cammels, horſes, and mules, to fetch away this prouiſion of corne and cattell: but the euent anſwered not to their deſires. For *Tocomac* with the other Perſian captaines, and the reſt of the ſouldiors that were

The Turks army afflicted with hunger.

were eſcaped from the ouerthrow giuen them in the plaines of CHIELDER, hauing gathered togither the remainder of the armie, and recouered ſuch places as they thought ſafe & friendly for them, carefully attended the marching and paſſing of the Turkiſh armie. And being certainly enformed by them of REIVAN and GEORGIA what way they kept, and that of neceſſitie they muſt arriue at the banks of Canac; they began to deuiſe how they might in ſome meaſure be reuenged of their former loſſe, and empeach their enemies entrance into SIRVAN. But wanting rather ſtrength than courage to aſſaile the whole armie, they thought it beſt to ſtay in ambuſh in ſome fit place, vntill ſome part of the Turkiſh armie (allured with the prey of the corne and cattell) ſhould for the reliefe of their common neceſſities deſcend into thoſe fields. And the rather to draw them on, ſent out diuers men, who as if they had gone about their owne buſineſſe, and by chance at vnawares had lighted vpon the Turkes campe, reuealed vnto them as a great ſecret, what a good prey was hard by them. And ſo withdrawing themſelues out of ſight priuily, awaited the comming of the Turks: when as within the ſpace of three daies it ſo fell out, that the aforeſaid ten thouſand forragers arriued at the wiſhed place; where they had no ſooner begun to charge themſelues with the prey, but they were ſurpriſed by the Perſians, and all ſlain, ſauing a few who by haſtie flight ſaued themſelues. The noiſe of this hoat skirmiſh being heard into the Turkiſh hoaſt, cauſed *Muſtapha* to imagine that the matter was fallen out euen as in deed it was: and therefore riſing with his whole armie, haſted with all poſſible ſpeed to haue ſuccoured the poore people, who were now all ſlaine. And albeit he came not in ſo good time as to yeeld them reliefe, yet came he verie fitly to reuenge their death vpon the Perſians, ſtaying too long to load themſelues with the ſpoile of their enemies.

Ten thouſand of the Turkes forragers ſlaine.

The place from whence the Turks were to haue had the aforeſaid bootie, was almoſt in manner of an iſland, encloſed with the riuers of Araxis and Canac: whereinto *Muſtapha* entred with his whole power, *Deruis Baſſa* leading the one wing, as did *Beyran Baſſa* the other, and he himſelfe comming on in the middle with the maine battell. The Perſians ſeeing *Muſtapha* with all his forces haſting towards them, and withall remembring the late ouerthrow by them receiued in the plaines of CHIELDER; began to bethinke themſelues, how much better it had beene for them to haue contented themſelues with the late ſlaughter of the forragers, and with ſpeed to haue got them away out of that ſtrait, than by ſtaying longer to be encloſed with the multitude of their enemies, as that they could now no way eſcape without moſt manifeſt perill. In this perplexitie, diſcourſing among themſelues whether it were better for them to flie, or with ſo great diſaduantage to ioine battell, and ſo rather to die with honour than to liue with reproach: at laſt they reſolued to reſerue themſelues to the farther ſeruice of their prince & countrey; deeming it rather a point of wiſedome than of diſhonour, Not to aduenture vnto moſt deſperat and aſſured death; ſo many worthy men, as might in future time ſtand their countrey in great ſtead: yet did they not ſee how by flight well to eſcape, for that they were in ſuch ſort ſtrained within the riuers, as that there was no ground left for them to eſcape by, than that which contrary to their expectation was by the Turks alreadie poſſeſſed. In theſe difficulties euery man began to betake himſelfe to his owne priuat conceit and fortune. *Tocomac* with *Emir Chan*, and other the great commanders of the armie, were the firſt that turned their backes, and by the helpe of their couragious horſes, got ouer the riuer of Canac: whoſe example moued many others to attempt the like, though not with like fortune; for that their horſes being not of ſuch courage, and out of breath, lay many of them drowned in the riuer. Wherewith others being amazed, as perceiuing ineuitable death in flying preſent before their eyes, and repoſing all their hope euen in deſpaire, ran as it were headlong in a rage and fury vpon their enemies, and in fighting ſhewed vnſpeakable valor: but what was one againſt an hundred? for there they were alſo all ſlaine, though worthie of immortall fame. Thus was the Perſian armie quite diſcomfited in this demy iſland, being firſt ſtained with the blood of the enemie, and afterward with the ſlaughter of the neighbour and proper inhabitant: and ſo became the perpetuall ſepulchre of a moſt couragious and warlike people. The Turkes in this laſt conflict, loſt not aboue three thouſand men, beſide the ſlaughter of the ten thouſand forragers: although *Tocomac* to make his loſſe to ſeeme the more tollerable, made report to the king of a greater ſlaughter made. The Perſian captaines full of ſorrow for this vnexpected ouerthrow, with the licence of their Generall departed, euery man to his ſeuerall gouernment: as *Emanguli Chan* to GENGE, *Serap Chan* to NASSIVAN, *Tocomac* himſelfe to REIVAN, and all the reſt to other cities, to the gouernment whereof they were before

The Perſians flie, & in flying are many of them drowned in Canac.

A fore by the king appointed,and ſo remained expecting his farther pleaſure from CASBIN.

Muſtapha was now come to the riuer of Canac, which he was to paſſe ouer into SIRVAN, and therefore made ſtraight proclamation through his whole armie, That euerie man ſhould be in readineſſe againſt the next day to paſſe the riuer. At which proclamation all his people ſuddenly aroſe in a tumult, and with iniurious tearmes euen to his face reproued his folly and inhumanitie, propounding vtter danger vnto himſelfe, and an vniuerſall confuſion vnto the whole armie: and therefore praied him to ſurceaſe from proceeding any farther, vnleſſe he were minded to caſt them all away. But his reſolute mind was not by their threats or intreaties to be remoued, neither gaue he them other anſwere than this: *That ſo had* Amurath *commaunded: and that if all the reſt ſhould ſhew themſelues vnwilling to obey their Soueraigne, hee himſelfe would not nor* B *could not, but would be the firſt man to attempt and performe that, which they all ſo abhorred and reproued. Valiant ſouldiors (he ſaid) were diſcouered and knowne, not in idleneſſe and eaſe, but in great paines taking, and difficult enterpriſes: who neuer ought to be afraid to change this momentarie life for euerlaſting honour, or to ſhun death, if the ſeruice of their prince ſo required. And for mine owne part (ſaid he) I moſt earneſtly requeſt you, that after I haue attempted the paſſage of the riuer, if any thing happen vnto me otherwiſe than well, yet carrie my dead bodie to the other ſide of the riuer: to the end, that if I cannot whileſt I yet liue execute the commaundement of my Soueraigne, I may yet at leaſt performe the ſame when I am but a ſpeechleſſe and liueleſſe carkaſſe; for as much as the deſire of my lord is not in any ſort to be fruſtrated, for making too great account of mine owne life.*

The reſolute anſwere of Muſtapha to his tumultuous ſouldiers.

Diuers and ſundrie murmurings and whiſperings followed vpon this ſpeech of the Generall, C who notwithſtanding the next morning did firſt of all wade ouer the deepe and ſwift riuer himſelfe: after whom preſently followed the Baſſaes with all their ſlaues, by whoſe example the reſt alſo were induced at laſt to doe the like, and ſo continued vntill the darkneſſe of the night interrupted their paſſage; by which occaſion more than halfe the armie could not then get ouer. In this paſſage, being with great tumult and diſorder attempted, it came to paſſe that about eight thouſand perſons carried away with the violence of the riuer, were miſerably drowned, with the great outcrie of all the hoaſt. The like hapned alſo to many mules, camels, and ſumpter horſes, vpon whoſe backs diuers perſons being mounted, in hope to haue paſſed drie ouer the riuer, were likewiſe headlong ouerwhelmed therein. With great complaints and blaſphemous curſings was the whole night ſpent, by them that were yet on this ſide the riuer; whoſe feares were D not a little increaſed, by the example of their vnfortunate fellowes before drowned. And like enough it was, ſome peſtilent ſedition to haue enſued thereupon, had there not a ſhallow foord by great chance been diſcouered, which gaue ſafe paſſage to thoſe that were left. For in the paſſage which the people made that followed *Muſtapha*, the grauell of the bottome of the riuer being raiſed & remoued by the heauie hooues of the cattell, was driuen down the riuer to a place, where by great good hap there was alſo a foord: and there gathered togither in an heape, had in ſuch ſort raiſed the depth of the channell, that it made as it were a ſhelfe for their commodious paſſage, ſo that the remnant of the armie, carriages, and artillerie paſſing ouer the ſame, there was not ſo much as one man that periſhed. So hauing with much difficultie at laſt got ouer the riuer of Canac, they reſted themſelues that day and the next, and there ſtaied vntill the whole E armie was muſtered, and againe put in order. Remouing thence, the day following they encamped in certaine barren Champaines, where was neither corne nor cattell: neither could they perceiue or learne, that in thoſe quarters were any villages at all. By meanes whereof the hunger of their beaſts increaſing, they were inforced to giue their horſes and mules leaues, and ſtalks of verie drie and withered reeds, and ſuch other like things of little or no ſuſtenance at all: and the men themſelues were faine to ſatisfie their hunger with thoſe vttermoſt reliques, which they were faine to picke out of ſuch poore victuals, as now by corruption were become loathſome to mans nature: and that which worſe was, they ſaw no end of theſe miſeries they were ſo entred into. Notwithſtanding there was now no looking backe, but needs on they muſt, and follow the fortune of their leaders: among whom *Muſtapha* before all the reſt ſet forward on his F determined iourney. He had not long marched, but there was diſcouered good ſtore of ſundrie plants, and ſhortly after a verie large plaine countrey all greene and flouriſhing, and garniſhed with many trees: by the onely ſight whereof, euerie man was refreſhed with the hope of reliefe; and with more than ordinarie paces, haſted vntill they were entered into thoſe Champaines, abounding with all kind of corne & fruits that could be of an hungrie man deſired. In this place did

Eight thouſand Turks drowned in paſſing the riuer.

Famine in the Turks hoaſt.

The Turks army refreſhed.

did euery man ſatisfie his appetite, and forgot in part the forepaſſed calamities. Through this G
fruitfull and pleaſant countrey *Muſtapha* leading his army, at laſt arriued at ERES, the chiefe citie in that coaſt of SIRVAN, as you trauell from GEORGIA.

This citie of ERES was forſaken of a number of her inhabitants, as ſoone as it was knowne that the Turkes were come to Canac; who all followed their Gouernour *Samir Chan:* who with *Ares Chan* Gouernour of SVMACHIA, and other the Gouernours of SECHI, and other places of SIRVAN, forſooke the cities, and altogether withdrew themſelues into the mountaines, as places of more ſuretie, attending the euent of theſe ſo great motions. So that as the Turks entred the citie vndiſturbed, ſo were they with the prey they found therein, nothing enriched: for that in this common danger, euery man had caried away with him the beſt things he had. Here ſtaied *Muſtapha* two and twentie daies, during which time he erected a fortreſſe in the ſaid citie: wher- H
upon hee placed two hundred ſmall pieces of artillerie, and for the keeping thereof appoynted *Caitas Baſſa*, with a garriſon of fiue thouſand ſouldiors. In the meane time alſo he commanded *Oſman Baſſa* (one of the voluntarie captaines) with ten thouſand men to poſſeſſe SVMACHIA, ſometime the Metropoliticall citie of that prouince, with the title of Viſier and Gouernour generall of SIRVAN. Giuing him farther in charge, that in any caſe he ſhould cleare the paſſage to DERBENT, and giue preſent aduertiſements to the Tartarians of his arriuall there: whom he ſuppoſed by that time to be come into thoſe quarters, for that they had before ſo faithfully promiſed to *Amurath*. *Oſman* comming to SVMACHIA, preſently ſeazed vpon the citie, & was friendly entertained of thoſe that remained there: whom he likewiſe courteouſly entreated, without doing or ſuffring any outrage to be done vpon them. Of which his courteous vſage they of DER- I
BENT vnderſtanding, ſent preſently to offer their citie vnto him, beſeeching him to receiue them into his protection, and to defend them from the Perſians: vnder whom, although they had long liued in ſubiection, yet differed they from them in the ceremonies of their Mahometan ſuperſtition, wherein they better agreed with the Turks.

Muſtapha returneth out of Siruan.

Muſtapha hauing thus brought the countrey of SIRVAN into the Turkiſh ſubiection, and finiſhed his fortreſſe at ERES, and put all things in ſuch order as he thought beſt: importuned by the Ianizaries and the people of GRÆCIA, and ſomewhat enforced by the ſeaſon of the yeare which was now farre ſpent; departed from ERES, and turned his courſe homeward toward the countrey of *Alexander* ſurnamed the Great, as he had promiſed in his late paſſage into SIRVAN. And hauing trauelled a long iourney, he ſent before him certaine engines and pioners K
to make a bridge ouer Canac, ſo without danger to paſſe ouer his armie. Hauing paſſed the riuer, hee gaue notice to *Sahamall* (one of the lords of GEORGIA) of his arriuall, who preſently came and yeelded himſelfe as vaſſal to the Turks: and being entertained of the Baſſa with great pompe, and rewarded after the Turkiſh manner, took his leaue, and ſo returned into his mountaine of BRVS.

Muſtapha ſetting againe forward, and trauelling by night becauſe hee would not loſe the opportunitie of the faire weather; by the errour of his guides loſt his way, and ſo fell into rough and difficult paſſages, wherby he was enforced to ſtay and wait for day light: which ariſing, did manifeſt vnto them, that they were now entred into the countries of his friend *Alexander*. And L
therefore hee gaue forthwith proclamation through all the armie, That no man vpon paine of death ſhould be ſo hardie as to moleſt or diſquiet any of the ſubiects of *Alexander*, but to haue good reſpect vnto them, and to entreat them with all courteſie. The day following hee ſtill trauelled on in the ſame countrey, when there arriued from ZAGHEN, certaine embaſſadours of *Alexanders*, with great abundance of cattell, corne, fruits, and other reliefe ſent for a preſent to the Generall, with a ſolemne excuſe, that hee came not himſelfe, becauſe the infirmitie of his bodie would not ſuffer him. Wherewithall *Muſtapha* reſted ſatisfied, and leauing the citie of ZAGHEN on the right hand, cauſed the meſſengers of *Alexander* to guide him the way to TEFLIS: which they ſo directly did, that within the ſpace of three dayes they conducted him thither with his armie, without the feeling of any annoyance; from whence they returned, being well rewarded for their paines by the Generall. Who now come to TEFLIS, found the garri- M
ſon he had there left for the keeping thereof, ſo hardly pinched with famine, that they were glad to eat cats, dogs, ſheepskins, and ſuch like vnwonted food: for neither durſt they for feare of the enemy go out of the caſtle to prouide for themſelues; neither if they had ſo done had it any thing auailed, ſuch was the carefulneſſe of the enemie in keeping of his things: but now by the com-

Muſtapha reliueth his diſtreſſed garriſon at Teflis.

ming

A ming of the Generall they were relieued with meat, money, and plentie of all things. Hauing ſtaied there two daies, he put himſelfe againe vpon his way, and with fire and ſword deſtroied whatſoeuer came in his way in the Champaines ſubiect to the ſaid citie: onely the ſepulchres of *Simons* progenitors (lord of that countrie) were left vntouched by the Turks furie. The next day they trauelled ouer rough and ragged mountains, full of a thouſand difficulties, which were the more encreaſed by wonderfull great ſnowes that were fallen: by reaſon whereof, many ſoldiors, horſes, camels, and mules periſhed. In which diſtreſſe the armie continued two daies; during which time the ſouldiors were fallen into ſuch a diſorder, that forgetting the feare of the enemies countrie wherein they were, euery man without regard tooke vp his ſeuerall lodging apart, ſome here, ſome there, where they might find either ſome thicke buſh or ſome ſmall cot-
B tage, or ſome quiet valley to ſhelter themſelues in from the wind, the ſnow, and the ſtormes. Of which diſorder certaine Georgian lords vnderſtanding by the ſcouts which from time to time waited vpon the Turks armie, ioyned themſelues togither and in the night ſecretly approached vnto it, expecting the opportunitie of performing ſome notable exploit: and hauing obſerued, that *Hoſaine Bey* had withdrawne himſelfe with his regiment from the reſt of the armie vnder certaine mountaines, to defend himſelfe from the ſtorme and wind; they tooke the occaſion preſented, and ſo aſſayling him, ſlew his ſlaues and all his ſquadrons; tooke a great bootie of many loads of mony and apparrell; lead away with them all his horſes, and whatſoeuer elſe they could find, and ſcarce gaue him leiſure to ſaue himſelfe, by flying into the tents of *Beyran*
Baſſa. The next morning the Turkes remoued, and in the euening came to a caſtle called CHI-
C VRCHALA, where they ſtaied a whole day to make prouiſion of victuall: which was attempted by ſending abroad many of their ſlaues into the fields, conducted by them of the caſtle; who were all miſerably cut in pieces by the Georgians. From this place the Turks armie departed in great hunger, ouer diuers rough places of the Georgians, where they were faine oftentimes to reſt themſelues: and at laſt came to the confines of *Dedeſmit*, of her called the widdowes countrie. In the entrance whereof, they muſt needs paſſe through a narrow ſtrait, betweene certaine mountaines, where the riuer Araxis windeth it ſelfe with a thouſand turnings in the low vallies: a dangerous place, and ſo narrow, that no more but one man alone could at once paſſe through it. Betweene this ſtrait and a very thicke and hillie wood, they lodged vpon the banke
D of the ſaid riuer: and from thence they remoued the next morning, & trauelled ouer very ſteep mountaines and rough forreſts, ouer yſe and ſnow more harder than marble, and ouer other hanging rockes, in ſuch miſerable ſort, that many camels, mules, and horſes, tumbling downe headlong into the riuer, there miſerably periſhed. Through theſe ruinous crags and diuers other miſeries, they marched all the next day, and after that another day alſo, as miſerable to the armie as the former. And ſo at laſt being ſore afflicted with hunger, ſpoiled of the enemie, tormented with the hard ſeaſon of the yeare, and ſituation of the place, they arriued in the territories that lay vnder ALTVNCHALA, or Golden caſtle, the princely widowes pallace, where they had all maner of reliefe, for all the miſeries they had endured ſince their departure from CHIVRCHALA, by the ſpace of ſix daies: which if it had bin a faire common trauelled way, might haue bin perfor-
E med in one only daies iourney.

The miſerie of the Turkiſh armie in paſſing the ſtraits of Georgia.

The widow, with *Alexander* her eldeſt ſonne, came downe from her caſtle, and went vnto the pauillion of *Muſtapha*; offering him diuers preſents, and promiſing vnto him all faithfull obedience. Whom *Muſtapha* courteouſly receiued, declaring vnto her, what honourable entertainment he had giuen to *Manucchiar* her younger ſonne there preſent, who had been with him in all the expedition into SIRVAN. And for the preſent, diſſembling the priuie diſpleaſure he bare againſt *Alexander* (whom he thought to haue been one of them that ſpoiled the Soriana in their returne from the campe) he embraced him courteouſly, and praied her to be content to leaue him alſo there with him: giuing her farther to vnderſtand, that he would ſend both her ſons to CONSTANTINOPLE to *Amurath*, with letters of credence for their yeelded obe-
F dience, for their fauour ſhewed to his armie, in giuing it ſo ſecure paſſage, and ſo many helpes: and laſtly, that for their good deſerts, they might be of the ſaid great Sultan both honourably entertained and rewarded. The aged ladie, although her mind was herewithall ſore troubled, yet outwardly in her countenance ſhewed her ſelfe pleaſed; and ſeemed courteouſly to yeeld, what ſhe was of neceſſitie conſtrained to grant: as wel for that he was alreadie poſſeſſed of one of her ſonnes, as alſo for that both herſelfe and her whole ſtate were now in his power, and as it

The Georgian widow ſubmitteth her ſelfe, with her ſonne Alexander to Muſtapha.

were at his deuotion. And therefore leauing both her ſonnes behind her, ſhe returned her ſelfe heauie to her caſtle. G

Muſtapha commeth to Erzirum, & diſchargeth his armie.

In this place *Muſtapha* hauing refreſhed his armie two dayes, departed thence toward CHARS, and after many dayes trauell at laſt arriued at ERZIRVM, to the great reioycing of the whole armie, which was there preſently diſcharged by the Generall, without any muſtering at all, and leaue giuen for euery man to returne into his countrey.

Muſtapha magnifieth his owne exploits to Amurath.

Muſtapha ſetling himſelfe in ERZIRVM, diſpatched poſtes with letters of plentifull aduertiſements to his great lord and maſter, of all things that had paſſed: not forgetting to magnifie his owne exploits aboue meaſure. He certified him of the battels he had had with the Perſians, the obedience he had receiued of the Georgians and Siruanians, the mutiny of his owne ſouldiors, the fortreſſe he had built at ERES, the garriſons left in that citie with *Caitas Baſſa*, and in SVMACHIA with *Oſman Baſſa:* and in briefe, whatſoeuer elſe had paſſed, and whatſoeuer he had taken from the enemie. Neither did hee faile to propound vnto *Amurath*, what hee thought conuenient to be attempted the next yeare, for the ſtrengthening of thoſe places he had already conquered, and for preparing the way for new enterpriſes. And principally he put him in mind of a fortification to be made at CHARS, a place very fit for any paſſage into GEORGIA or ARMENIA, by ſituation fruitfull & commodious both for men and cattell. And withall he ſent vnto him the widdowes two ſonnes, *Alexander* and *Manucchiar*, the Georgian princes, certifying him of their ſubmiſſion, and that he had receiued in their country all good entertainment & friendly welcome: and withall declaring his opinion, That *Manucchiar* was the meeter man for gouernment than his brother *Alexander*, and the readier to do him ſeruice. Greatly did *Amurath* commend the valour & diligence of *Muſtapha*, and highly pleaſed himſelfe with this conceit, That of theſe beginnings might grow mightie conqueſts, to the enlargement of his empire, and that by this meanes he ſhould be able to ſurpaſſe the glory of his predeceſſors. And the more his ambitious thoughts were occupied about theſe wars, the leſſe he troubled himſelfe with thinking how to annoy EVROPE with his forces. H I

It was not long after the departure of *Muſtapha* from ERES, but that the Tartarians hauing left the fennes of MEOTIS, and the vnmountable ſhores of the Blacke ſea, and hauing paſſed ouer the rockes vpon CHOLCHIS, and ſurueyed the frozen crags of the mountaine CAVCASVS, were now arriued vpon the confines of SIRVAN, and there attended the commaundement of the Turks. Theſe Tartarians being of them that are called Præcopenſes, to the number of thirtie thouſand, conducted by their lord and captaine *Abdilcherai*, a yong man of great valour and fame, and of a comely perſonage, were come according to the faithfull promiſe of *Tartar Chan*, with a full reſolution to attempt whatſoeuer ſhould be commanded them in the name of *Amurath*. Now *Oſman Baſſa* vnderſtanding of their approch, according to the charge before giuen him by *Muſtapha* the Generall, enuited them to enter into SIRVAN, and by encreaſing of the Turks forces to further theſe beginnings of *Amurath* his glory, and theſe his conqueſts (or more truly to ſay, theſe magnifical & famous tearms of victory.) All which was moſt diligently put in execution by *Abdilcherai:* who hauing entred the yron gates where DERBENT ſtandeth (which by the Turks at this day is called *Demir Capi*, and ſignifieth the gates of yron) & ſo from thence paſſing into the countrey of SIRVAN, there ſtayed, and thereof gaue aduertiſement to *Oſman*, as was by him appoynted. *Ares Chan* late gouernour of SVMACHIA, who for feare of the great armie of the Turks, had abandoned the citie the chiefe place of his charge, and betaken himſelfe to the ſafegard of the mountaines, hearing of the departure of the Turkiſh Generall, reſolued with the other Gouernours of ERES and SECHI (who following his example, had in like manner fled) now to return againe to their forſaken country, and to make proofe if he could by any meanes take reuenge of the iniurie done vnto him by the Turks. So paſſing vnder SVMACHIA, and hauing put to the ſword certaine of *Oſmans* ſtragling victuallers that were gone out of the citie, hee encamped with all his people a little from SVMACHIA, and by good fortune ſurpriſed certaine meſſengers ſent from *Abdilcherai* the Tartar, to certifie *Oſman Baſſa* of his arriuall, and to know his pleaſure what he ſhould put in execution. Theſe Tartarians brought before *Ares*, after much torture diſcloſed the letters they caried: which the Perſian captaine read, and conſidring the great number of the Tartarians that were come (for the letters made mention of thirty thouſand) he reſolued not to ſtay any longer in thoſe quarters, but preſently raiſed his camp, and retired towards Canac, meaning from thence to certifie the king of theſe nouelties, & vpon the K L M

bankes

A banks of the ſaid riuer to attend the kings anſwere. The Tartarian captaine comming to SVMACHIA, was appointed by the Baſſa to paſſe ouer the riuer of Canac into GENGE, the countrie of *Emanguli* Chan, with the ſpoyle thereof to enrich himſelfe, and by all meanes to make his arriuall vnto the Perſians moſt terrible. With this charge the Barbarian departed, thirſting now for nothing more than for the bloud and ſpoile of the enemie: and with poſting iournies came to Canac, where *Ares* Chan was yet encamped: whom he vpon the ſudden moſt furiouſly aſſaulted, and like a deuouring flame diſcomfited all his hoaſt. And taking him aliue, ſent him to SVMACHIA to *Oſman*, who forthwith cauſed him to be hanged by the necke out of a lodging in the ſame ſtatehouſe where he had not long before ſate as Gouernor. The Tartarian after that, ſwimming ouer the riuer, and courſing a little aboue GENGE, found *Emanguli* Chan with his wife, and
B all his familie, and a great part of the nobilitie of GENGE in a valley hunting the wild bore; and aſſailing him, put him to flight, tooke from him his wife, all the ladies, and many ſlaues, and ſlew many of the reſt that were come thither to ſee the ſport: and after that rode on to GENGE, which he tooke, and yeelded it wholly to the furie and luſt of his barbarous ſouldiors, who left no maner of inhumane crueltie vnattempted, in ſatisfying their immoderat and barbarous affections. And ſo being loaded with the ſpoiles, & wearie with the ſlaughter of their enemies, they returned merrily toward SIRVAN: and paſſing againe ouer Canac, came to the higher ſide of ERES into certaine low champaigns, enuironed about with hils, and there hauing pitched their tents, without any feare ſetled themſelues to ſleepe and to reſt their wearie bodies.

Ares Chan hanged at Sumachia.

Emanguli Chan taken, & Genge ſacked by the Tartarians.

In the meane time, and long before theſe actions, were newes come to the Perſian Court of
C all the Turkes proceedings: whereupon the Perſian king hauing gathered new forces, had diſpatched *Emir Hamze Mirize* his eldeſt ſonne with 12000 ſouldiours to paſſe into SIRVAN, to ſee what hurt the enemie had done, and to attempt the reuenge of the forepaſſed iniuries; but aboue all things to puniſh the villanie of them of SECHI, and the other cities of SIRVAN, that not induced with any neceſſitie, had ſo voluntarily yeelded themſelues to follow the obedience and religion of the Turkes. The Perſian prince departing from CASBIN, accompanied with his mother *Begum*, who would needs follow her beloued ſonne, was on his way towards SIRVAN, vnder the guiding and gouernment of *Mirize Salmas*, chiefe of the Sultans; and had now left behind them the countries of ARDOVIL and CARACACH, when he was certified by the aduertiſements come from *Ares* Chan, of the arriuall of *Abdilcherai*, with his great number of Tarta-
D rians; and was thereby at the firſt ſtrucken into a great quandarie, and almoſt out of comfort: yet prickt forward with an honourable deſire of glorie and reuenge, he proſecuted his intended enterpriſe for SIRVAN, and haſtening his iourney, came to ERES long before the king his father thought he could haue ſo done. This his notable celeritie ſerued him to great purpoſe, for that *Caitas Baſſa* was boldly gone out of the fortreſſe, and went ſpoiling the countrie, carrying away with him whatſoeuer he met withall, and committing ſuch inſolencies as hungrie ſouldiors beyond all honeſtie vſe to doe in ſtrange and fruitfull countries. But when he was in the middeſt of theſe ſpoyles, and leaſt feared the enemie, he was ſuddenly aſſailed by the prince; and hauing no meanes to eſcape his furie in this extremitie, after a fierce and bloudie battell (wherein the Turks although in number few, yet ſhewed many effects of valour) he was there ſlaine with all his ſol-
E diors, leauing the fortreſſe, the ſpoyles, and the countrie committed to his cuſtodie, free to the pleaſure of the victor: which the Perſian prince hauing once againe gotten into his poſſeſſion, tooke away the two hundred pieces of artillerie that were left in the fort by *Muſtapha*, and preſently ſent them to CASBIN to his father.

Eres recouered by the Perſians.

The prince encouraged with ſo happie a beginning, leauing his mother at ERES, followed on his iourney toward SVLACHIA, but by the way deſcending the hils, he diſcouered where the Tartarians lay encamped. Whereupon he ſtood in great doubt, whether to aduenture vpon ſo mightie an enemie, or to content himſelfe with the victorie he had alreadie gotten, and ſo to returne into PERSIA: to returne he thought it too great a ſhame, and choſe rather to aduenture himſelfe to moſt manifeſt peril. And therefore deſcending the hill, and drawing nigh the enemie,
F he perceiued that the armie was all laid down to reſt, and that their horſes were ſome couched, ſome ſtanding, but all vnſadled: whereupon without any ſtay ſetting ſpurs to his horſe, he pricked forward with all his hoaſt, and moſt terribly aſſaulted the Tartarians, now buried in their ſpoiles & ſleep; and hauing ſlaine their firſt and ſecond watch, although with ſome loſſe, among the tumultuarie ſouldiors he made an vniuerſall confuſion and ſlaughter, putting ſome to flight,

killing others, and taking diuers of them captiues. Among whom was their Generall *Abdilcherai*, who was taken aliue, and sent to the king. G

Sumachia beseiged by the Persian prince.

After these victories the Persian prince scoured to SVMACHIA, and compassed the citie round about, wherein the Turkish Bassa *Osman* sat as Gouernor, to the reproch of PERSIA: and there encamping himselfe, sent word to *Osman*, That if he would yeeld himselfe, he would let him depart with life and goods: otherwise, if he would obstinately hold it out, and not yeeld the citie, which he so vniustly possessed, he should be constrained to surrender it by force, and his life withall. *Osman* who as then knew nothing of the Tartarians ouerthrow, but still hoped of their returne, thought it best to entertaine the prince with faire words vntil their comming, and therefore gaue him courteous answere, that he was very readie to yeeld vp the citie: but withall entreated him, that he would stay but for three daies, and graunt him time to put all things in readinesse, that so he might freely depart, as it had pleased him in courtesie to offer. The prince glad of such an answere, supposing it to haue proceeded of a sincere meaning, expected of the Turke the performance thereof. But *Osman* meaning nothing lesse, than to commit himselfe to the faith of his enemie, & seeing that the Tartarians, whom he looked for, appeared not, he resolued to saue himselfe by secret flight; doubting, as he had good reason, that if he should longer stay, to be betrayed by the inhabitants of the citie themselues: and therefore somewhat before the assigned tearme of the three daies appointed for the surrendring of the citie, he by the helpe of a darke night, and the couert of the high & rough crags, with great silence withdrew himselfe out of SVMACHIA, carying away with him all his substance, and so in safetie arriued at DERBENT. H

Sumachia yeelded vnto the prince.

The next morning the inhabitants of SVMACHIA opened the gates of the citie to the prince: who seeing their infidelitie, first by giuing of entertainment to *Osman*, and now by helping him to escape, without giuing him any knowledge therof, did put in execution the effect of his wrath and indignation, which euen in CASBIN he had conceiued in his mind against them; and with great crueltie did punish the miserable and vnfortunat citisens, laying their houses euen with the ground, rasing both the old and new wals of that citie, of late so desired a receit for the Turkes. But when he was to depart thence, he stood in doubt, Whether to goe on to DERBENT, or to returne to PERSIA: the strength of that citie, the approch of Winter, and the long iourney he was to take homeward, perswaded him to lay aside the enterprise for DERBENT, whereupon he resolued to returne to CASBIN: yet first to make his returne by them of ERES and SECHI, and vpon them as vpon rebels to inflict well deserued punishment. So making his present repaire thither, spared neither sex nor age, nor any condition of persons, but vpon them all poured forth his furious indignation, without exception. Which done, he with his aforesaid mother *Begum*, and his armie, though somewhat diminished, yet victorious and triumphant, returned to CASBIN. I K

Abdilcherai beloued of the Persian queene.

Yong *Abdilcherai* the Tartarian was kept safe in the kings pallace at CASBIN, but with such easie imprisonment as was agreeable to his calling: which was day by day so inlarged, as that he seemed not to liue as a prisoner, but rather as a companion of those of the Court, and as it were in apparant libertie. By which occasion hauing insinuated himselfe into the loue of *Begum* the kings wife, he spent his time in courting of her, and she againe in entertaining of him in all secret and couert maner. Yet these their mutuall affections and interchangeable fauours passed not so secretly, but that in the Court and all ouer the citie it was a rise report, That the shamelesse ladie, prodigal of her honour, had participated both her bed and her selfe with the Tartarian prisoner. Howbeit neither the king nor the prince knew any thing of it. But the king perceiuing the yong gentleman to be generally commended, valiant, courteous, and of a comely feature, & withall nobly borne (for he gaue it out that he was the brother of *Tatar* Chan) perswaded himselfe, that it would stand with the great good of his state, of a captiue to make him his sonne in law, by giuing him his daughter in marriage: whereby he was in good hope there might grow such an amitie and vnion betweene the Tartarian Præcopenses and himselfe, as that they would from thenceforth not only refuse to fauour *Amurath* in those warres, but also become enemies vnto him, and in the fauour of PERSIA turne their armes and affections against him. Which his deepe and considerat purpose so displeased the Sultans of CASBIN, that they sought by all meanes they could possibly deuise to auert the king from that so strange a policie: but all in vaine, for the king being fully resolued, and now vpon the point to make a conclusion of the mariage: the Sultans entering into the pallace with their followers, and finding there the vnfor- L M

tunat

A tunat Tartarian, ran him through the bodie, and cutting off his priuie members, flapped them vpon his mouth after a moſt barbarous and filthie maner. It is reported, that the queen was then alſo murdered by them: certaine it is, that the poore ladie neuer after that day ſaw the light of the Sunne: but whether it was put in execution by the appointment of the king her huſband, or that the Sultans did it for the publicke intereſt, is not certainely knowne. Vpon theſe murders ſprung vp many troubles, and much ciuile diſſention, threatning the vtter confuſion of the Perſian kingdome, to the ſingular benefit of *Amurath*. All which tumultuous diſorders the king by brideling his owne affections, and the motions of his ſonne *Emir Hamze Mirize*, well appeaſed, procuring at laſt a perfect vnitie, as then moſt neceſſarie for the defence of his kingdome.

Abd leherai ſlaine in the court. *The Perſian* queene ſent away.

Oſman Baſſa being in DERBENT (the only place of refuge now left for the Turkes in SIR-
B VAN) ceaſed not with all carefulneſſe to deuiſe what he poſſibly could, for the aſſuring of that countrie (of late woon, and now againe almoſt loſt) vnder the gouernment of *Amurath*. For the better eſtabliſhing whereof, togither with his owne ſafetie, he thought it good to enter into friendſhip with old *Sahamal* the Georgian, lord of the mountaine of BRVS. With this man did *Oſman* practiſe many tokens of good will, & he againe interchangeably towards *Oſman*: whereupon there aroſe great friendſhip betweene them, at leaſtwiſe in outward apparance: whereunto in ſhort time there was added a ſtraight knot of alliance: for that *Oſman* took to wife a daughter of the ſaid *Sahamals*, the greateſt ſigne of his ſincere loue towards him. Neuertheleſſe ſhortly after *Oſman* vpon ſome reaſonable coniectures began to ſuſpect (as indeed the truth was) that *Sahamal* for all the faire ſhew of friendſhip he made towards him, might for all that receiue ſome
C ſecret order from the Perſian king, to betray him, & to free the citie from the Turks, and ſo to reduce all that prouince vnto the ancient deuotion: in which iealous ſuſpition he was fully confirmed by the ſpeeches of his wife, the daughter of *Sahamal*; who rauiſhed with the honour, valour, and riches of her husband, could not conceale any thing that ſhe knew deuiſed againſt him, but frankely told him, That her father being ſecretly reconciled to the Perſian king, held friendſhip with him, and that letters went betweene them of great matters, and particularly of the affaires of SIRVAN. Hereupon the Baſſa perſuaded himſelfe, that all the friendſhip of *Sahamal* was but deepe diſſimulation, and the marriage of his daughter nothing but a meane to procure his death. Neuertheleſſe he made ſhew vnto his wife, as if he had made no ſuch reckoning of it as indeed he did, but kept it in ſtore to his owne ſafetie and the deſtruction of *Sahamal*,
D whom for all that he ſtill entertained with all honour and kindneſſe due vnto a moſt louing father in law. But to preuent the malitious purpoſe of *Sahamal*, hauing inuited him according to the cuſtome to a certaine ſolemne feaſt, he acquainted certain companies of his moſt truſtie and valiant ſouldiors with his determination, enioyning them, that as ſoone as *Sahamal* was entered into his court, euen in the very diſmounting from his horſe they ſhould all fall vpon him, cut off his head, and put all his retinue to the ſword. Which his cruell commaund was by him accordingly at *Sahamals* comming put in execution, he in lighting from his horſe being ſlaine, and all his followers murdered, when forthwith were ſent forth by *Oſman* two thouſand horſemen to ſpoyle and ſacke all the countrie of the ſaid Georgian lord, to the great maruell & aſtoniſhment both of far and neere. The Perſian king hearing of theſe newes, tooke the matter grieuouſly, as
E foreſeeing that the recouery of that countrie and prouince of SIRVAN would proue a matter of great difficultie, and fearing greatly that it would ſtill remaine (as indeed it doth) in the poſſeſſion of the Turkes. This was the end of the Turks attempts againſt the Perſians in SIRVAN this yere 1578, wherein they loſt aboue ſeuentie thouſand men, deuoured partly with the ſword, & partly with famine, and the other miſeries of warre. And ſo Winter comming on very ſharply, euery man withdrew himſelfe from the field, wholly attending the keeping of that they had alreadie gotten, vntill the comming on of the next Spring.

Sahamal ſlaine by *Oſman*.

Amurath aduertiſed by letters from *Muſtapha* of all that had happened in the late expediti- *The conſultati-*
on againſt the Perſians, vpon theſe proſperous ſucceſſes (which the Baſſa had for the aduancing *ons of Amurath.*
of his owne credit deſcribed to be far greater than indeed they were) began to caſt many deui-
F ces in his head touching ſuch matters as were to be attempted the next yere. And firſt he thought it neceſſarie to ſend his forces againe into SIRVAN, to recouer ſuch places as were firſt conquered by *Muſtapha*, but afterward againe ſubdued by the Perſian, ſo to eſtabliſh his gouernment in that countrie. But vpon better conſideration he ceaſed further to thinke of that matter, for the great hope he had conceiued of the aid that was promiſed him by *Tatar* Chan, who had

faithfully assured both him and *Osman*, that he would ouerrun that prouince anew, and do great G
matters in furtherance of the Turkes deſignes: all which for all that fell out to be but windie
words: yet in reſpect of this hope he laied SIRVAN aſide, and commited the defence thereof
to the falſe promiſes of the Tartarian, and the valour of *Osman*. And pleaſing his ambitious de-
ſires with more haughtie thoughts, he began to deuiſe with himſelfe, for ſending his army direct-
ly to TAVRIS, there to erect a fortreſſe; which being ſtrongly fortified and furniſhed with a gar-
riſon of moſt valiant ſouldiors, ſhould neuer be againe ſubdued by all the power of PERSIA;
and by this meanes to keep in ſubiection all thoſe great countries betweene TAVRIS and ER-
ZIRVM. Which his conceit being of great weight and importance, was much increaſed by the
perſuaſion of others, very inward with him; euery man being almoſt of opinion, That it was an
eaſie matter for ſo great an hoaſt in few daies to performe that ſeruice, and to pierce not onely H
into TAVRIS, but further to paſſe whether ſoeuer he would deſire. Yet after he had more deep-
ly conſidered of an enterpriſe of ſo great importance, & with more indifferent iudgement com-
pared his owne forces with his enemies, he began to find many difficulties and dangers, which
in the heat of his ambitious deſires he at the firſt ſaw not: For beſide the length and tediouſnes
of the iourney, he doubted that in ſending his armie for TAVRIS, it might be on the one ſide
aſſailed by the Georgians (of whoſe obedience he had as yet no great aſſurance) & on the other
ſide by the Perſians, and ſo brought into great danger; which he was alwaies to feare, whenſo-
euer he ſhould haue occaſion to ſend new ſupplies vnto the fortreſſe by him intended at TAV-
RIS. Whereupon laying aſide all his former conceits, as too eagre and perrillous, he reſolutely
concluded with himſelfe, firſt to make ſure his owne borders, and afterwards by little and little I
to enter into the enemies countrie, ſtill fortifying in conuenient places as he went, and ſo ſurely,
although but ſlowly, to triumph ouer his enemies; rather than by thruſting his armie headlong
vpon vncertainties into places ſtrongly fenced both by nature and the power of moſt mightie
enemies, to be inforced with ſhame to abandon the enterpriſe ſo haſtily begun.

Muſtapha carefull to put in execution Amurath his command.

Of this his reſolution he aduertiſed *Muſtapha* by writing, giuing him in charge, againſt the
next Spring to prouide all ſuch things as ſhould be neceſſarie for the building of certaine forts
vpon the way that leadeth from ERZIRVM into GEORGIA: that hauing made thoſe waies
ſafe, and brought the people vnder his obedience, he might afterwards attempt greater matters.
Whereupon *Muſtapha* preſently directed forth preceptsto the cities of ALEPPO, of DAMASCO,
CARAEMIT, and other places of SORIA and MESOPOTAMIA, for the taking vp of cunning K
workemen, of pioners, and ſuch like, to the number of twentie thouſand: and likewiſe wrot to
all the countries, out of which he had raiſed his armie the laſt yeare, That all their ſouldiours
(yea and in greater number alſo) ſhould be in readineſſe againſt the next Spring, to returne to
the warres. The rumour whereof he cauſed to be ſpread euen as far as ÆGYPT. He commaun-
ded alſo the taxes and tenths of thoſe countries to be collected, & further vſed the chambers of
ALEPPO, and other places, for ſuch maſſes of mony as he thought neceſſarie for theſe purpoſes.

In this while the two Georgian brethren, *Alexander* and *Manucchiar*, ſent (as we haue before
ſaid) by *Muſtapha* to *Amurath* at CONSTANTINOPLE, in doubtfull hope, expecting the end for
which they were ſent vnto the Court, were both examined, and exhorted to embrace the Ma-
Manucchiar turneth Turke. hometane religion: whereunto *Manucchiar* eaſily yeelded. Whereas on the other ſide *Alexan-* L
der his elder brother could by no allurements or meanes be induced to conſent to ſo infamous
Alexander conſtant in his religion. and damnable a change of his religion; although he knew he ſhould therefore be depriued of
his ſtate: but proteſting his obedience at all times to *Amurath*, and his loue to his brother, reque-
ſted onely, That he might but as a priuat man go and liue in his countrie, there to be buried a-
mongſt his anceſtors. Which his requeſt the Turkiſh emperor referred to the diſcretion of *Ma-
nucchiar*, to do therein as hee ſaw good: who conſented thereunto. Hereupon *Manucchiar* was
circumciſed, and the name of *Muſtaffa* giuen him, with the title of the Baſſa and Gouernour of
ALTVNCHALA, and of all his mothers and brothers countries: and being thus created a Turke,
had his brother *Alexander* a Chriſtian committed vnto him, and ſo both returned into their own
countries. M

Emanguli Chan taketh vpon him the defence of Sirvan.

Now in the Perſian court at CASBIN, were many conſultations had for the repreſſing of the
inuaſions of the Turks. And among others carefull of thoſe matters, *Emanguli Chan* Gouernor
of GENGE, doubting to looſe his honourable gouernment, by reaſon of the late ſacke of his ci-
tie, and ſpoile of his countrie by the Tartarian; by thoſe plots that were daily in contriuing for
the

A the ſending of men into SIRVAN, to impeach the deſignements of *Oſman Baſſa*, and (if it were poſſible) to driue him out of DERBENT; tooke occaſion to offer vnto the king, vpon paine of his head to defend SIRVAN, and not to ſuffer *Oſman* the Turke to attempt any new fortifications, or further conqueſts in that prouince. Of which his offer the king accepted, and thereupon the gouernment of GENGE, and guarding of the country of SIRVAN againſt the forces of *Oſman*, was frankly committed vnto him. And commandement giuen to the Gouernours of TAVRIS, REIVAN, and NASSIVAN, and to diuers other captaines that were neereſt, to bee readie at all times with their power to aſſiſt *Emanguli Chan*, if it ſhould fortune either the Tartarians, or Turks, with any great power to enter into SIRVAN: which order ſo taken, was thought ſufficient for the ſecuritie of that prouince.

B But how to protect the Georgian countrey, was thought to bee a matter of greater importance, euery man being almoſt of opinion, That ſome great power of the Turks ſhould be ſent thither, for the more aſſurance of the conqueſt thereof alreadie begun; and for the ſuccour of the fortreſſe at TEFLIS, which muſt needs otherwiſe fall againe into the hands of the Georgians. This matter ſo troubled the Perſian king, as that he ſeemed to haue bent his whole counſels and thoughts thereupon: when *Simon* a Georgian, a famous captaine (ſometime priſoner with *Iſmahel* the late king, at CAHACA, and by the familiaritie hee had with him, ſeduced from the Chriſtian faith; for defence whereof hee had in the time of king *Tamas* choſen to liue depriued of his libertie and ſtate) thinking it now a fit time to obtaine at the kings hand ſuch help as he had long deſired, for the recouery of his dominion vſurped by *Dauid*, otherwiſe called *Daut*
C *Chan* his yonger brother (who for the obtaining therof of king *Tamas*, had voluntarily renounced his Chriſtian religion) offered now vnto the king his faithfull ſeruice, for the defence of that part of the Georgian countrey wherein TEFLIS ſtood (being in right, part of his owne inheritance) againſt the Turks: reprouing by way of diſgrace, his yonger brother of cowardiſe, and promiſing the performance of great matters in himſelfe, both for the defence of that euil defended countrey, and further annoying of the enemie. With great contentment did the Perſian king conſent to the requeſt of *Simon*, and named him *Chan* of all that kingdome, which he poſ- *Simon with Aliculi Chan ſent for the defence of Georgia.*
ſeſſed before whileſt he was a Chriſtian: and ſent with him *Aliculi Chan* into GEORGIA, with
ſiue thouſand horſemen, and certaine pieces of artillerie taken at ERES, when *Caietas Baſſa* was
ſlaine. *Simon* afterwards comming to GEORGIA, was ioyfully receiued of his countreymen,
D and there preſſed about three thouſand ſoldiors of his own and of his neighbors; excuſing himſelfe that he was become a Perſian, not becauſe he preferred the Mahometan ſuperſtition before the chriſtian religion, but only ſo to be deliuered from his long impriſonment, & by that means to maintaine his eſtate. And in this order were the affaires of GEORGIA aſſured, and ſtrengthned in the beſt manner that might then be.

Now began the Spring to approach, and euery man prepared himſelfe to the diſcontinued 1579
trauels of the wars begun: and now were met together at ERZIRVM, out of all the wonted pro- *The meeting together of the Turks army at Erzirum.*
uinces, all the Turkes forces, with all things neceſſarie for the intended warre. With this armie in all things equall with the firſt, *Muſtapha* ſet forward, and in twelue daies came to CHARS, not
E perceiuing in his ſouldiors any ſigne of diſcontentment at all. And foraſmuch as here they were to ſtay, and to fortifie both with wals and ditches that ruinated citie, and that with as great ſpeed as was poſſible; there was no remedy, but that beſide the pioners & enginers that were brought for that purpoſe, many of the Spaoglani, yea and of the Ianizaries alſo muſt bee ſet to worke. Whereupon they all ſuddenly in a tumult, began with bitter proteſtations to tell the Generall, That their ſtipends wherewith it pleaſed the Sultan to fauour them, were not beſtowed vpon them to employ their forces and vertues in ſuch ſeruile workes; but onely with their ſwords and other weapons to exerciſe that force and hardineſſe for which they were eſteemed worthie of that honour. Whereunto the Generall anſwered in moſt haughtie tearmes, and not yeelding
one jot to their inciuilitie, but vſing all meanes of authoritie and terror, brought them to worke *Chars fortified in 23 dayes ſpace.*
ſo much as he deſired. So that within the ſpace of twentie three daies, the towers and wals were
F erected, the ditches digged, the artillerie orderly planted vpon the wals, and the water brought round about it. Many inconueniences happened in the armie while they were buſie in this worke; and namely vpon the 25 day of Auguſt, when they had almoſt euen finiſhed the whole *Snowes at Chars in Auguſt.*
building, the ſouldiors endured a moſt ſudden cold, by reaſon of the ſnow that then fell in great aboundance.

CHARS

CHARS thus fortified, the Generall resolued to send succours into GEORGIA to TEFLIS; G
without which it was most certaine, that the fortresse would be yeelded to the Georgians: but
in what sort to relieue it, he remained doubtful. To send part of his army with some valiant cap-
taine, seemed dangerous: and to go himselfe with all his forces, would sound (as he thought) to
his discredit with his great lord and master; whom he had already made beleeue, that he had sub-
dued all the Georgians, and brought all that prouince to his obedience & deuotion. In this am-
biguitie, the desire he had to preserue his credit with *Amurath* preuailed: and so he made choise
Hassan Bassa sent with 20000 to the succouring of Teflis. of *Hassan Bassa* of DAMASCO, sonne to *Muhamet* principall Visier of the court, a gallant gentle-
man and of great valour, to whom he deliuered betweene eighteene and twentie thousand soul-
diors; ioyning vnto him one *Resuan* captaine of certaine aduenturers, that voluntarily offered
themselues to follow the forces of *Hassan*; assigning vnto him likewise sortie thousand duckats, H
and many loads of meale, rise, and barley, with other things necessarie both for diet and war, and
so sent him away for TEFLIS.

Hassan with this charge set forward, fully resolued to put these succours into TEFLIS, or to
lose all: and at length came to the famous strait of TOMANIS, where the ouergrowne woods
on the one side, with the deep vallies and craggie rocks on the other, would astonish a right con-
stant beholder. When vpon the sudden, the Persians and the Georgians (vnder the conduct of
Aliculi Chan, and *Simon*) at vnawares set vpon the Turkes, and ioyned battell with them. For
these two valiant captaines remaining for the most part in the borders of TEFLIS and TOMA-
NIS with eight thousand souldiors, waiting for some opportunitie to annoy either them of the
fort of TEFLIS, or else such as should come to their succours; vnderstanding by their espials of I
the comming of *Hassan* with this aid, had scattered themselues all alongst the said strait, in hope
there to assaile the Turks; and holpen by the aduantage of the place, to driue them headlong into
the deepe valley, and at once to bereaue them both of their goods and life. But *Hassan* carefull
of nothing more than how to auoid that danger, chose rather to make his iourney through the
thicke woods, and so as he might to escape the ambush that the enemie might lay for him vpon
that straight passage. And so entring with his armie into the wood, which hee was to haue left
The Persians assaile the Turks and make of them a great slaughter. vpon his left hand, to discouer what might be plotted against him, he was hardly charged by the
enemie, and constrained to fight with a thousand windings and turnings in and out, through a
thousand crooked paths and doubtfull cranks, in a most confused medley, with great slaughter
of his men: who not accustomed to this kind of fight, nor acquainted with the situation of the K
place, were in the skirmish driuen so farre, that downe they fell, and being not able to recouer
themselues, were presently slaine. And thus with much adoe, hee at length passed the strait of
TOMANIS. *Hassan* deeming himselfe much disgraced, by suffering his enemies in number so
farre inferiour, to haue done him so much harme, and so to haue escaped his hands: and farther,
considering that in such places, sleights and stratagems more auaile then open forces; burning
with desire of reuenge, would needs stay neere vnto those straights, as if it had bin to refresh his
wearied armie; but in deed to trie if the Persians would aduenture againe to trouble him, or no:
and appoynted *Resuan Bassa* with certaine bands of the souldiors of GRECE, and of his owne
aduenturers, to lie in ambush within the couert of the strait, attentiue to euery stirre of the ene-
mie. Two dayes the Turkes armie lay thus diuided, and were now resolued the third day to re- L
moouе thence towards TEFLIS: when as the Persian captaines, *Aliculi Chan* and *Simon*, vainly
imagining that this stay of the Turks was for feare of the Persians, foolishly returned, and gaue
The Persians ouerthrowne, and Aliculi Chan taken. a fresh onset vpon the flanke of *Hassans* squadrons. Who forthwith raising all his souldiors, and
giuing a signe to *Resuan*, with all speed compassed in his enemies, and straightning them on both
sides, tooke some of them aliue, cut in pieces othersome, and put the rest all to flight. Among
others that were taken aliue, was *Aliculi Chan* the Persian captaine, who ouer rashly charging
vpon the face of *Hassan*, fell into his hands. The next day following (being the eleuenth day af-
ter *Hassans* departure from CHARS) he ioyfully arriued at TEFLIS, where he found among the
poore besieged Turks, many miseries; whereof some were alreadie dead, and some yet sicke:
for they were so plagued with famine, that they not onely deuoured their horses, but euen the M
The miserie of the Turks in garrison at Teflis. vetie skins of the same horses, of sheepe and of dogs, and in such most miserable wants had pas-
sed the time: whom *Hassan* at his arriuall comforted with gifts and good words, exhorting them
to persist constant in the seruice of their king, whose honour (as hee said) was neuer more than
there to be respected. And for as much as the souldiors of the fort did with one voyce request

Hassan

A *Haſſan* to appoint them a new Gouernour, becauſe they did all miſlike *Mahamet Baſſa*, who the laſt yeare was left by the Generall in that fort; *Haſſan* remoued the ſaid *Mahamet*, and put *Amet Baſſa* in his place: and ſo after he had filled vp the places of the dead ſoldiors with a new ſupply, and ſet all things in good order, hee tooke his leaue, recommending the charge and cuſtodie of that fortreſſe to their truſt and valour. *Haſſan* returning from TEFLIS, and being without any trouble come to the ſtrait of TOMANIS, was aduertiſed by his ſcouts, that it was ſo ſtrongly poſſeſſed by the enemie, and ſo ſhut vp with artillerie, as that it was not to bee paſſed through: for *Simon* thinking (as indeed it fell out) that *Haſſan* would returne that way, had ſo belayed that ſtrait, as that the Turks could not without moſt aſſured loſſe paſſe the ſame: which thing much troubled the Baſſa, and filled his head with many conceits, how he might make his iourney ſome
B other way, and decline the danger prepared for him. Thus perplexed, and altogether doubtfull what to doe, or which way to turne himſelfe: *Aliculi Chan* the Perſian (who to purchaſe his libertie could haue been content to haue done any thing) offered *Haſſan* to ſhew him a ſhort and ſafe cut, whereby he might without danger paſſe with his armie out of that troubleſome country; yet couenanting before, that he ſhould promiſe him to ſet him at libertie for his ſo good ſeruice. Which his requeſt the Baſſa did not ſticke in large manner to promiſe, although he afterwards to his great diſhonor performed not the ſame: ſo bending his iourney on the right hand, he was guided by *Aliculi* through ſtrange and vncouth wayes out of thoſe woods and dangers, not meeting ſo much as with any one of his enemies. But when the Perſian duke well hoping for his libertie put the Turk in mind of his promiſe; he with deep and faigned ſighs proteſted, That
C he was right ſorie that he could not performe what he had promiſed to do for him, for as much as it lay not in his power to ſet any man at libertie, that was taken in battell by the ſouldiors of his great lord and ſoueraigne: yet gaue him his faith, that ſo far as his intreaties and fauors with the Generall *Muſtapha* could preuaile, he would vſe all the moſt earneſt meanes he could to procure his libertie and returne to his owne countrey.

Simon the Georgian perceiuing that the Turks were remoued, imagined forthwith, that they had taken this new way. But being afterward certified by his faithful ſpies, that it was ſo indeed, he ran all headlong & as it were deſperat to meet with this ſo happie an army. And all inflamed with rage for this great fortune of the Turks, he fell vpon the taile of the Turkiſh hoaſt: which
D with vnmeaſurable furie he wholly deſtroied, leading away with him all the people, all the horſes, and all the treaſure of *Mahomet Baſſa*, which he brought from TEFLIS, and all the treaſure of *Haſſan Baſſa* likewiſe. As for *Aliculi Chan*, whom *Simon* moſt greedily ſought for, he was ſent away in the front of the army, & ſo not to be reſcued. *Haſſan* holding on his way came to CHARS in the ſpace of eight daies after his departure from TEFLIS, and there preſented vnto *Muſtapha* the Generall the Perſian captaine *Aliculi*, recounting vnto him the dangers he had endured, and whatſoeuer els had happened in that expedition. *Aliculi* the vnfortunat Perſian was by the commandement of *Muſtapha* carried to ERZIRVM, and there in the caſtle committed to priſon. Not long after *Muſtapha* returned himſelfe alſo to the ſaid citie of ERZIRVM, with his armie ſore weakened and diſcontented, which was there preſently by him diſcharged.

Simon deſtroied the rearward of Haſſans armie, and taketh from him his treaſure

Muſtapha returneth to Erzirum, and there diſchargeth his armie.

About the ſame time that theſe things were in doing, *Amurath* to make a ſafer and more eaſie paſſage for his forces into GEORGIA, ſent *Vluzales* his Admirall with a great fleet into the Euxine ſea to MENGRELIA, called in auncient time CHOLCHIS, who entring the famous riuer of Phaſis (now Faſſa) there fortified, and layed ſuch a beginning, that it is now one of the Turkes proud Beglerbegſhips, although thoſe fortifications ſhortly after the departure of the Admiral, were for the preſent againe by the Mengrelians demoliſhed. And this was the end of the ſtirres of this yeare 1579.

Of all theſe ſucceſſes *Muſtapha* afterwards ſent aduertiſements to the Court to *Amurath*, recounting vnto him the fortifying of CHARS, the deſerts of *Haſſan*, as well for the ſuccouring of TEFLIS, as for the taking of *Aliculi* the Perſian. And becauſe the ſaid Generall had the yeare before perſuaded *Amurath*, That the country of GEORGIA & the people thereof were brought
F vnder his obedience, to the end he ſhould not maruel at ſo many loſſes and ſo many battels, and therby doubt of ſome falſe informations, he declared vnto him, That all theſe troubles were not raiſed by the natural and homebred Georgians, but by two certaine captaines *Aliculi* and *Simon* ſent out of PERSIA, who had made all theſe ſtirres: of which one of them now remained with him in priſon, for him to determine of at his pleaſure. With great delight did the Turkiſh empe-

rour

Haſſan Baſſa for his good ſeruice rewarded by Amurath.

rour read all that *Muſtapha* had written, and by two of his gentlemen vſhiers ſent to *Haſſan* a battle axe all guilt, and ſet full of ſtones, a targuet of gold and pearle, and a rich garment of cloth of gold, in reward of his good ſeruice for which hee greatly commended him: and withall gaue order, That *Aliculi* ſhould be kept where he was in the caſtle of ERZIRVM, in diligent and ſafe cuſtodie. G

Theſe inuaſions of the Turks much troubled the Perſian king in his court at CASBIN, conſidering that now they had both throughly acquainted themſelues with all the paſſages into GEORGIA (in the difficultie and roughneſſe whereof conſiſted the chiefe defence of that prouince) as alſo that diuers of the Georgian princes were more than inclining vnto the Turks ſeruice: ſo that he could not but iuſtly feare, that his enemies would in time begin to pierce into the noble cities of MEDIA the greater, yea and peraduenture euen vnto TAVRIS before any of the reſt: which his care of forraine inuaſion was doubled with domeſticall feares: *Mirize Salmas* his chiefe Viſier, and vpon whom he moſt reſted, ſtill filling his head with a iealous ſuſpition, That *Abas Mirize* his ſonne (made Gouernour of HERI by *Tamas* his grandfather) was about (in theſe troubles with the Turke) to proclame himſelfe king of PERSIA, to the great ignominie of his father, and preiudice of *Emir Hamze* his eldeſt brother, the worthie and vndoubted heire of that great kingdome. This *Mirize Salmas* (according to his longing deſire) had married a daughter of his to the ſaid *Emir Hamze* with the conſent of the king his father: but yet not content with that great honour, ceaſed not continually with ambitious deuiſes, to ſeeke out meanes how to bring to paſſe that the Perſian eſtate might wholly remaine to his ſonne in law, vndeuided and entire from the participation of his brethren: and therefore little regarding the perils that might happen from the Turks, and blinded with the deſire of his owne greatneſſe, he went about to turne the king (being a man very credulous & inconſiderat) againſt *Abas Mirize*; either to take him and commit him to priſon, or at leaſt to bereaue him of all authoritie & commaund. And the better to perſuade the king thereunto, he diſcouered vnto him how little *Abas Mirize* his ſonne had reſpected him in diuers occaſions; and that in theſe late wars, he had not ſo much as ſent foorth one man againſt the Turkes, but had forbidden ſuch as were of his iuriſdiction of HERI to come to CASBIN, at ſuch time as they were ſummoned both by letters and commaundement to haue paſſed with *Emir Hamze* into SIRVAN; by reaſon whereof not one of them would not ſtirre a foot, anſwering, That they were enioyned ſo to doe by *Abas Mirize* their lord: who had not onely cauſed himſelfe to be called king of HERI, but had giuen it out, that he meant to claime the ſucceſſion in the whole kingdome. Theſe complaints much preuailed with the king, both in reſpect of the loue he bare to *Emir Hamze* his eldeſt ſonne, and alſo of the credit he gaue to his Viſier: eſpecially being accompanied with the crafty packing of the ſaid Viſier; who as he was verie cunning in ſuch practiſes of himſelfe, ſo did hee make them much more effectuall with the effeminate king by the meanes of diuers great ladies, and other deuiſes that were to him very familiar and vſuall. Inſomuch, that the king carried away with light beliefe, did continually bethink himſelfe how to find opportunitie to repreſſe the boldneſſe of his diſobedient ſon: not forgettiug for al that to make ſuch preparation againſt the Turks, as ſhould be ſufficient to ſtay their paſſage to TAVRIS, if they had any purpoſe ſo to doe. But leauing the Perſian king to his troubled cogitations for a while, let vs againe returne vnto the Turks Generall, the great Baſſa *Muſtapha*. H I K L

Muſtapha diſcharged of his Generalſhip, & called home to Conſtantinople

Hee now lying at ERZIRVM (after many troubles abroad) was ſurpriſed and almoſt ouerwhelmed with vnexpected quarrels at home, many grieuous complaints being made of him to *Amurath*, whereby hee was induced afterwards to take from him his Generalſhip, and to call him to the court to giue account of his actions. Which ſeemed not to bee done without cauſe, he hauing before raiſed a great diſcontentment in the mind of *Amurath*, by ſending ſuch a ſtrong power to the ſuccours of TEFLIS, whereby he couiectured, that the affaires of GEORGIA, were not in ſuch ſecuritie as *Muſtapha* had already enformed him they were; and alſo generally offended the minds of the ſouldiors of his armie, who all in an vprore accuſed him of improuidency and prodigality, for that now this ſecond yeare he had with ſo much ado gathered together ſuch a number of ſoldiors, to the trouble of the whole empire, and infinit charge of their lord, and yet performed nothing worthie the glorie of *Amurath*, or anſwerable to ſo great a charge. Which complaints, although they were of ſome moment, yet would the Turkiſh emperor for the great fauours hee bare vnto him his antient tutour, neuer haue conſtrued them ſo hardly againſt him, M

as

A as for the ſame to haue bin induced to haue depriued him of his place, if the inueterat enuie of *Sinan Baſſa* had not miniſtred ſtrength and force to theſe hard accuſations, and ſet (as it were) an edge vpon *Amurath* to do what he afterwards did.

But foraſmuch as the courſe of time and proceſſe of the preſent hiſtorie, bringeth now forth theſe two mightie champions of the Turks togither, the enuious competitours the one of the others honours; who liuing many yeares togither, haue left the woſull remembrance of their greatnes and valour vnto the world, but eſpecially vnto the afflicted ſtate of Chriſtendome, the large wounds by them made, as it were, yet bleeding: ſtay with me a while, and without griefe if thou canſt behold the liuely counterfeits of two ſo great enemies (who both liued within theſe few yeares, and the latter of them died but the other day) as they are by the skilfull hand of the B cunning workeman moſt perfectly deſcribed, and thus to be ſeene.

A compariſon betwixt Sinan Baſſa and Muſtapha, two ancient enemies both to themſelues and the Chriſtian commonweale.

MVSTAPHA.

Quid Cyprum iactas? Quid Medos marte ſubactos?
Quid fuſos Perſas? Quid tua facta referſ?
Dum te perfidiæ damnet Bragadinus: & ipſe
Theupulus indigna morte peremptus erit.
RICH. KNOLLEVS.

F What doſt thou boaſt of CYPRVS woon? or of the Medes orethrowne?
What of the Perſians put to flight? or of thy deeds ſo knowne?
Whileſt *Bragadinus* thee condemnes of extreame periurie,
And *Theupulus* to thy diſgrace, a ſhamefull death did die.

SINAN

Mitte Sinane tuos nimium iactare triumphos:
Et rigido vultu verba superba loqui.
Vltar nam& aderit mox Transyluanius heros:
Qui tumidum coget te dare terga fugæ.

RICH. KNOLLEVS.

Prowd *Sinan* ceaſe to vaunt too much of thy great triumphs woon,
Or with ſterne looke for to extoll the deeds by thee erſt done:
For why the Tranſyuanian prince will take reuenge of thee,
And ſwelling in thy greateſt pride, enforce thee for to flee.

R. Knolls.

This *Sinan* was a moſt auncient enemie to *Muſtapha*, and in all things thought himſelfe his match: For if *Muſtapha* had ſubdued CYPRVS, ſo had he conquered TRIPOLIS, GVLETTA, with the kingdome of TVNES in AFFRICKE: and if *Muſtapha* were a man of great courage, and reuerend for his yeres, *Sinan* would be his equall both in the one and the other: yea and did

A not sticke to thinke himselfe his better too, for that in the enterprise of GIAMEN in ARABIA, he performed such an exploit as *Mustapha* neither durst nor yet knew how to put in execution, so carrying away the glorie of that famous conquest: for which euer after there was betweene them a continual heart burning, one of them enuying at the others glorie, and both in word and deed, as occasions fell out, in all things opposing themselues one against the other. At last happens this opportunitie for *Sinan*: who taking the occasion of the complaints of so many against *Mustapha*, caused a great number of them to frame their supplications to *Amurath* (which hee for his part did in most malignant manner enforce and exaggerat against his old aduersarie) accusing him that this second yere he had most manifestly shewed himselfe to haue gone vnto the wars not as a worthie Generall desirous of noble and honourable enterprises, but as a man that
B would make merchandise of bloud, and of his soldiors paies; employing the most liberall prouision of corne and mony not as rewards of well deseruing men, nor to the erecting of such fabricks, as were needfull, and might haue bin built therwithall, but only to his own proper gaine; so to inrich himselfe with his peoples losses, to the great shame of his lord, and consuming of the publicke treasure: adding hereunto, that if the things done by *Mustapha* were well searched, it would be found, that he had neglected many good opportunities, attempted many things in vaine, and not done any good either to the emperor or his soldiors, but only to himselfe: whom rather than they would follow againe, as their Generall, all his people in an vprore shewed themselues readie and willing to aduenture themselues in any other far greater labour that by their lord and soueraigne should be commanded them.

Sinan accuseth Mustapha to Amurath.

C These and such like camplaints, with the hard opinion alreadie conceiued against him by *Amurath*, were the occasion why he resolued to put him from his place. Beside that, he thought it a thing dangerous to his state, to suffer one and the selfesame Generall any long time to command ouer so great armies, deeming it not so much for his honour still to imploy one man, as to shew that he had varietie and choice of subiects, worthie of so great a charge. And therefore being desirous to find out the truth of that was reported to him concerning *Mustapha*, he sent the chiefe of his gentlemen porters with fifteene others to bring him to the Court, with his Chancellor and Treasurer, to shew the accounts of such monies as he had receiued, and to giue vp an account of their whole office. Vnto this messenger had *Amurath* deliuered three diuers letters, which he should warily shew as occasion serued: one of them was so written of purpose,
D that *Mustapha* in the receiuing thereof might by the same messengers be strangled: in the second was the emperors warrant for the doing of that was to them commanded: and in the third was contained, that *Mustapha* should forthwith send his chancellor and treasurer to the Court by those messengers. *Mustapha* in the meane time by diuers means, but especially by the guilt of his owne conscience, venting the displeasure of the emperour towards him, and suspecting (as the truth was) his life to be by those messengers sought after, at such time as the captain porter came to his campe, found many delaies to put him off, and would not in any case be spoken withall. But when the messenger would endure no longer delay, he was at length admitted to his presence, hauing a circle appointed for him, out of which he and his companions might not stirre or approch neerer vnto him, the Bassaes guard standing in armes round about him. The messen-
E ger perceiuing the Bassaes warines, wilely pluckt forth the third letters, concerning the sending of his Chauncellor and Treasurer to the Court. Then began the craftie old Bassa to find many excuses to haue delayed the matter: but being hardly pressed by the messenger, and seeing no other remedie, he with much difficultie deliuered them both, couenanting before with the messenger to haue both their liues spared: who comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, where forthwith clapt fast into the tower called IADICVLA, as there to haue been seuerely examined of all the doings of the Bassa. But *Mustapha* after long delay comming at length to CONSTANTINOPLE the ninth of Aprill in the Spring following, and vsing the mightie & potent mediation
F of diuers great ladies and other his gratious friends in Court, preuailed so much in that corrupt gouernment, as that he was againe at length receiued into the fauour of *Amurath*, without any further proceeding against him, his chancellor, or treasurer, who by his meanes were afterwards also enlarged and set at libertie: yet was he neuer after admitted to those honours, which he persuaded himselfe were of right due vnto him, for his good and faithfull seruice of long time done to the *Othoman* emperors.

Mustapha by the mediation of certain great ladies appeaseth the displeasure of Amurath.

In this time that *Mustapha* was Generall at ERZIRVM, *Muhamet* the Visier Bassa was treacherously

Ioh. Leuncla. in supplement. Annal. Turcicorum, pag. 79.

cherouſly ſlaine at CONSTANTINOPLE: after whom ſhortly after died alſo *Achmet Baſſa*, who ſucceeded in his place: ſo that the ſaid ſoueraign dignitie, in honour next vnto the Turkiſh emperour, was by rightfull ſucceſſion due to *Muſtapha* the next Baſſa; but that he was not thought worthie of it by him that might and of right ought to haue gratified him therewith, as ſhall be a little hereafter declared, when we haue briefely ſet downe the ſudden and ſtrange death of the ſaid *Muhamet* the Viſier, worthie in all hiſtories to be regiſtred, as a mirrour for all ſuch as adminiſter iuſtice in ſo great place, to looke vpon. G

The ſtrange death of the great Viſier Baſſa Muhamet

This Baſſa, a man of as great fame as euer was any that had gouernment in the *Othoman* empire, in the time that he all commanded, had for ſome light cauſes depriued a certaine ſouldiour of CONSTANTINOPLE of his yearely penſion, which with many labours and dangers hee had gotten to maintaine himſelfe, which penſion the Baſſa beſtowed vpon another ſouldiour, ſo that the other poore ſoule remained in miſerie, altogither vnprouided for. Vnto which miſerable eſtate ſeeing him ſelfe now brought, and not guiltie to himſelfe of any fault worthy ſo great puniſhment, he determined with himſelfe to reuenge the iniurie with the bloud of that great Baſſa, and to bereaue him of life that had bereft him of liuing: which becauſe he could not by any fit meanes put in execution (by reaſon of the guard of ſlaues that keepe the perſon of the Viſier, ſo that no man can come neere him that holdeth that high place) except he could by ſome meanes acquaint himſelfe in the Viſiers houſe, & ſo inſinuat himſelfe into his acquaintance; he reſolued to take vpon him the rude habit of thoſe religious which the Turks call Deruiſlars, and after their manner to preſent himſelfe euerie morning before the Viſier to aske his almes: and ſo hee did, counterfeiting withall a certaine kind of follie and lightneſſe of mind, as do thoſe Deruiſlars, to make the people beleeue, that they contemne all worldly things, as men rauiſhed onely with heauenly cogitations, which yet was by ſome that knew him thought to haue happened in him, through the griefe he had conceiued for the loſſe of his ſtipend. *Muhamet* not onely the firſt time, but alſo at all other times that this counterfeit hypocrite came before him, cauſed him to be comforted with his almes, and as it were with a kind or priuat ſtipend, enioyned him euery morning to come vnto him into the Diuano, and there togither with others appointed for the ſame purpoſe, to ſay his deuout prayers, and in ſinging praiſes to their wicked Prophet, to entreat God for his ſaluation: for it is a cuſtome of all the noblemen, that at ordinarie houres of prayers all their prieſts aſſemble themſelues in the Diuano, which is made readie for them, and there all togither the infidell wretches do with their vncleane mouthes mumble vp their ſuperſtitious prayers or rather moſt abhominable blaſphemies. By this meanes did this diſſembling companion ſo inſinuat himſelfe into the Viſiers acquaintance, that the counterfeit foole went in and out of the Diuano at his pleaſure, no man gaineſaying either his going in or comming out, but dayly ſat in the preſence of the Viſier, and ſo hauing ſaid his prayers, and taken his almes, with all reuerence quietly departed. At laſt when the craftie hypocrite thought that the time was come wherein he might moſt fitly execute his purpoſe, hauing vtterly reſolued with himſelfe to die, ſo that he might ſatisfie the deſire he had of reuenge, ſo long couertly foſtered in his heart; hauing conueied a very ſharpe dagger ſecretly into one of his ſleeues, he went according to his cuſtome, to require his almes, with an aſſured reſolution (when he had ſaid his prayers, and reached out his hands to receiue his wonted almes) ſpeedily to charge vpon the Viſier, and with the dagger to ſtrike him to the heart. According to the accuſtomed manner was the counterfeit hypocrit (for who would euer haue ſuſpected ſo long and ſo traiterous a deſignment) admitted into the Diuano, where *Muhamet* the Viſiar ſat in his houſe, to giue publike audience, and after the vſuall manner, before any of the ſuters that attended for anſwers and diſpatch of their buſineſſe ſuſpected any ſuch deceit, he was admitted neere vnto the Viſier, & ſitting right againſt him, according to his old wont poured out thoſe vain deuotions which thoſe hypocritical Barbarians vſe to mumble vp in their prayers: which being finiſhed, whileſt the Viſier ſimply reacheth vnto him his wonted almes, the trayterous villaine in receiuing it ſuddenly drew out his dagger, and once or twice ſtabbed it into the Viſiers breaſt, out of which ſo deadly wounds guſhed out his bloud and life togither. Whereupon the ſtanders by aſtonied with the ſtrangneſſe of the act, ran in, but loe the old hoarie Viſier lay all ſoyled in his owne bloud, deadly pale, and breathing forth his laſt gaſpe. The miſchieuous murtherer they preſently laied hands vpon, and bound him faſt: but the rumour of the ſtrange fact did by and by flie vnto the emperors eares: who ſuſpecting that ſome of the other great Baſſaes deſiring to mount into that high dignitie, H I K L M had

A had prouoked the traitor to doe this deteſtable act, would needes vnderſtand of the traiterous murderer, What occaſion had mooued him ſo trecherouſly to kill his Viſier. Who reſolutely anſwered him, That he did it to deliuer the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE from the tyrannie of him, by whom he was vndeſeruedly deprined of his penſion. But when he could get no other anſwere of him, he deliuered him into the hands of the ſlaues of the dead Viſier, who with moſt exquiſit torments put him to death.

Muhamet thus dead, after him ſucceeded *Achmetes* the next Baſſa, who (as is before ſaid) ſhortly after died alſo; ſo that it was now *Muſtapha* his courſe to ſucceed in that chiefe roome, for that he was the third in the order of the Baſſaes. But when he had vſed all the meanes that he poſſibly could, to haue obtained that ſo honorable a place by order due vnto him; yet could he not find
B ſo much grace in the ſight of *Amurath* his great lord, as to haue it granted him vnder ſeale, although in effect he made him ſit as Viſier, and all matters of ſtate were brought vnto him as chiefe Viſier: but in his ſtead the ſeale was ſent to *Sinan Baſſa*, who was now made Generall for the Perſian wars. Which diſgrace not a little diſcontented *Muſtapha*, fearing leaſt ſome other ſtrange accident ſhould in ſhort time light vpon him.

After that *Muſtapha* was thus diſplaced from his Generalſhip, *Amurath* nominated *Sinan* 1580.
Baſſa to be Generall in his ſtead for this expedition againſt the Perſians, and for the preſeruation *Sinan Baſſa chooſen Generall for the Perſian war.*
of CHARS and TEFLIS; giuing him ſoueraigne authoritie to commaund, and to ſet in order all
C ſuch preparations as he ſhould thinke neceſſary for ſuch enterpriſes as he ſhould thinke good to attempt in his firſt yere: who although by reaſon of his great fauour he grew haughtie and glorious, yet did he not foreſlow to diſcourſe throughly with himſelfe vpon all his deſignments: and namely, beſide the ſuccouring of TEFLIS, he determined to build a fort at TOMANIS, to aſſure the paſſage thither from CHARS; and withall to attempt all the meanes he could to induce the Perſian king to ſend embaſſadors for peace, with ſuch conditions as ſhould be acceptable to *Amurath*. With theſe and ſuch like diſcourſes did he buſie himſelfe whileſt he was yet making preparation to ſet forwards towards ERZIRVM.

Of all theſe changes and alterations was the Perſian king aduertiſed, as alſo that this new Turkiſh Generall *Sinan* was carefull, how this long warre might by ſome meanes be appeaſed and a good peace concluded. Vpon which occaſion, and by the perſuaſion of *Leumtogli* the Georgian, and of *Mirize Salmas* his Viſier, he was induced to ſend embaſſadors to CONS TAN-
D TINOPLE, to demand peace of *Amurath*. Vpon which reſolution he diſpatched *Maxut Chan*, *The Perſian king ſendeth Maxut Chan his embaſſador to Amurath.*
(of ſome called *Maxudes*) his embaſſador, with direction that he ſhould go to *Sinan*, and of him to receiue guides to conduct him to CONSTANTINOPLE with letters to *Amurath*, & as much as lay in him to labour for the pacifying of all theſe troubles: and in any caſe to conclude vpon it, ſo that he would be content with CHARS and TEFLIS. With theſe inſtructions the embaſſador departed, and at length arriued at CHARS, and ſo came to ERZIRVM, and was from thence conducted towards AMASIA. But when he came to SIVAS, he found *Sinan* the Generall there
E encamped, gathering togither his armie for the execution of his deſignments: for *Sinan* vpon the arriuall of *Muſtapha*, departing from CONSTANTINOPLE the fiue and twentieth day of Aprill, was now come ſo farre on his way. Of the comming of this embaſſador, The Turks receiued great ioy, and newes thereof was in poſt ſent by *Cicala Baſſa* to the court. The Perſian embaſſadour enformed *Sinan* of all that he had to treat with *Amurath* on the behalfe of king *Mahamet*; and laboured earneſtly to perſuade him, of the equitie of the cauſe, & of his requeſt: declaring vnto him, that for as much as both the nations were conioyned vnder the law of *Mahomet* their common prophet (though there ſeemed ſome ſmall difference not worth thoſe troubles) it were a verie inconuenient thing for them to contend among themſelues, and to ſeeke the ouerthrow or vtter deſtruction of one another: and that therefore he was in good hope to obtaine of *Amurath* this deſired peace, if he had no other cauſe wherewith he found himſelfe agrieued, as in truth he had not. Wherefore he beſought the Generall, that he would with ſafe conuoy
F conduct him to *Amurath*, to the end that if it were poſſible theſe bloudie wars might take end; at the very report whereof the reſt of the world reioiced, and ſtood attentiuely waiting to ſee what would be the iſſue thereof.

This embaſſador, *Sinan* entertained after the beſt manner the rudeneſſe of his nature would affoord: and thinking that the very fame of his valour, had wrought in the minds of his enemies this reſolution to come to demand peace, granted vnto the embaſſador a ſure conuoy to con-

duct him to CONSTANTINOPLE; and wrote to *Amurath* in his letters, all that he thought G
was fit to be demanded, representing vnto him what great & important matters (he hoped) might
now be obtained. But before he dismissed the said embassadour, he aduised him not to goe to
The admonition of Sinan the Persian embassador. *Amurath*, without resolution to offer vnto him some great good conditions, and to yeeld vnto
him all that countrie which he by force of armes had before conquered: for he knew the mind
of *Amurath* verie well, that he was resolued in himselfe, not to yeeld so much as one hand
breadth of that ground which hee had woon with the sword. Which motion of the prowd
Bassa so troubled the embassador, that fearing he should not be able to conclude any thing, he
stood in doubt whether to proceed on his iourney to CONSTANTINOPLE, or to return backe
againe into PERSIA: but considering better what belonged to his dutie in so waightie a busi-
nesse, and hoping to receiue more reasonable conditions from the mouth of *Amurath* himselfe; H
he gaue large words to *Sinan*, and so with a safe conuoy departed from SIVAS, and by long iour-
nies came to SCVTARI, and so passing ouer that little strait, the fourth of August arriued at CON-
STANTINOPLE.

The preparations of the Persian king against the Turkes. The Persian king in the meane time, stirred vp with the report of the Turks preparations; to
cause it to be noised, that he likewise intended some important matters, commaunded all the
Chans and Gouernours of his kingdome, to meet togither with all their forces at TAVRIS,
where he himselfe with the prince *Emir Hamze* his sonne met them. And after many consulta-
tions there had for the repressing of the Trukish inuasion (for as yet it was not certainly known
what *Sinan* meant to attempt) he resolued to send souldiors into GEORGIA towards TEFLIS,
whether of necessitie succours must be sent by the Turks to them of the fort: and withall, deter- I
mined also to go himselfe withall his armie from TAVRIS to CARACACH, a place very com-
modious and neere to guard both TAVRIS and SIRVAN, being situat euen in the middest be-
tweene the one and the other; and there to expect the remouing of *Sinan*, whose ambitious na-
ture the king knowing, doubted that he to surmount *Mustapha*, would attempt some great enter-
prise, yea peraduenture to run euen vpon TAVRIS. But when it came to the point that he should
send some of his captains into GEORGIA, he made choise of such as had best experience of those
countries, and were neerest vnto them: with whom he sent *Tocomac* also, and the rest whose ser-
uice he had before vsed against the Turks; commanding them to ioine their forces with *Simon*
the Georgian, and by all meanes possible to annoy the enemie: whom if they should perceiue
to bend for TAVRIS, they should not faile to follow him; to the end they might ioine togither K
with him, and so incounter the enemies armie. All those captaines were resolute men, and led
with them ten thousand souldiors; which being ioined with them of GEORGIA, amounted to
the number of thirteene thousand: who arriuing at GENGE, gaue knowledge to *Simon* of their
comming, and that in his behalfe they were readie to do great matters.

Now was the Persian embassadour with all due honour receiued at CONSTANTINOPLE,
where he was honourably entertained by the great Bassaes of the court, but especially by *Mu-
stapha*, who within two daies after suddenly died; of a surfeit taken of eating too much of muske
Melons, and immoderat drinking of Zerbet (a kind of pleasant drinke which the Turkes vse,
made of water and sugar:) but most men thought him to haue poisoned himselfe, as fearing the
former indignation of *Amurath* to bee againe inflamed by the new complaints of the Persian L
embassadour against him, for that he in the time of his Generalship had dishonourably suppres-
sed certaine embassages sent from the Persian king; which he now fearing to bee called in que-
stion for, the former storms as yet scarce well appeased, made himself now away. After his death
it was commonly reported, that if he had longer liued he should haue been vndoubtedly stran-
gled: which to preuent, he became the worthie executioner of himselfe, that had most vniustly
caused others to be most shamefully murdered. Which was the more like to be true, & the rather
beleiued, for that the infinit wealth he had of long time scraped togither, was immediatly after
his death taken into the kings treasures, some small portion therof being left vnto his nephews:
a most certaine token of *Amuraths* indignation against him. The Persian embassadour hauing M
audience the seuenth of August, with many liuely reasons and much eloquence, persuaded the
Turkish emperour to desist from the warre begun, as contrarie to the will and pleasure of their
common Prophet *Mahomet*: as also to the peace, which was so roially, and with so many capi-
tulations, not long before concluded between *Tamas* and *Solyman* his grandfather; and was not
to haue bin broken and warres raised, but vpon some great quarrell or iniurie done; which the

Persians

A Perſians had not at any time offered, but had alwaies wiſhed vnto him all happineſſe; as they had manifeſtly declared, by ſending vnto him an embaſſage to that purpoſe by Sultan *Tocomac:* whereby he might plainly perceiue, the good mind and zeale the Perſian king had for the maintenance of the peace. And although in the ſhort raigne of *Iſmahel*, there was ſome rumor raiſed that he meant to go vnto BABYLONIA, and ſome ſuch like newes: yet that was but a youthfull part, and an effect of that heat which is commonly proper to ſuch as being kept long in ſtraight priſon cannot vſe their libertie with moderation, and had therefore receiued due puniſhment for it, by ſudden and vnexpected death. But as for the king that now is, he did aboue all others imbrace amitie with his maieſtie; and therefore did moſt earneſtly deſire, that it would pleaſe him to temper his anger conceiued, which had incenſed him to take vp armes againſt a king ſo
B much his friend, being of the ſame religion, and better affected towards him than all the reſt of the nations in the world.

This embaſſadour the Turkiſh emperour diſmiſſed without any reſolution at all; but onely gaue order, that whatſoeuer he had to ſay touching this peace, he ſhould communicat it with his Viſier. Many were the diſcourſes which happened; for that the Turk required all thoſe cities and countries, which till that time he had conquered with the ſword, or (as their prowd manner of phraſe is) wheron his Generals horſe had trod, to be yeelded againe vnto him: and the embaſſadour on the other ſide, had no warrant from his king to yeeld any more than that part of GEORGIA which is on this ſide the riuer of Araxis. Whereupon the ſaid embaſſadour began to feare, leaſt he ſhould be ſuſpected for a ſpie, and ſo be euill intreated: wherwithall he did find himſelfe
C too manifeſtly charged by the hard ſpeech that the Viſier vſed towards him. Being thus doubtfull whereupon to reſolue, perceiuing himſelfe ſtrained to the grant of theſe demands, and receiuing alſo ſome threatnings withall, he determined with himſelfe to enlarge his ſpeeches with the Viſier in diuers and ſundrie particularities, and to giue him good hope that he ſhould be able to perſuade with his king, the yeelding vp of ſo much as *Amurath* had and did demand. Hereupon was *Maxut Chan* the embaſſador in friendly maner and without any outrage ſent from CONSTANTINOPLE to CHARS, and commiſſion giuen to *Sinan* (then at CHARS) that without delay, and with all fidelitie, he ſhould cauſe the embaſſador to be conducted to VAN, and from thence into
PERSIA, whereſoeuer he did deſire: all which was faithfully performed.

But to returne againe to *Sinan* the Generall, who from SIVAS had ſent the ſaid embaſſador to *Sinan muſtereth his armie at Erzirum.*
D CONSTANTINOPLE (as is before declared:) and being departed thence, arriued at ERZIRVM, where he tooke a ſuruey of his armie, and other prouiſion neceſſarie for this expedition: and ſo from thence was now come to CHARS, from whence he diſpatched the Perſian embaſſadour, much diſcontented that no other concluſion for peace could be wrought.

Maxut Chan at laſt arriuing at the Perſian Court, reported vnto the king all that had happened in this his embaſſage: the ſumme whereof was, That *Amurath* would not condiſcend to any condition of peace, vnleſſe the whole countrie of SIRVAN might be yeelded vnto him, for that he had once (as he ſaid) conquered the ſame. Neither did the ſame embaſſadour forbeare to tell the king, the ſuſpition *Amurath* had conceiued of him, to haue beene a ſpie rather than an em-
E baſſador; and of the large promiſes he was faine to make to the Turke, to auoid the manifeſt danger of impriſonment or death: all which for all that, now lay in his maieſties power to performe or not. The king for the preſent remained well ſatisfied with that *Maxut* had done, and in reward of his great trauell and expences, gaue him the charge of the chamber at TAVRIS, naming him the chamberlaine of that rich and great citie. Of which new office (though verie honourable and of great importance) he tooke ſmall pleaſure, for that one *Emir Chan* his auntient enemie was chiefe Gouernour of that citie, from whom he feared ſome dangerous treacherie: wherefore he appointed his deputie for the execution of the office, and withdrew himſelfe from TAVRIS to CASSANGICH, a place of his owne, there to paſſe away the time vntill it ſhould pleaſe the king otherwiſe to diſpoſe of him. But *Emir Chan*, who ſtill nouriſhed in his mind the ancient hatred he had conceiued againſt him, tooke this as a moſt fit occaſion to bring him into
F diſgrace with the king: certifying him, That *Maxut* not contented with the great preferment it had pleaſed him to beſtow vpon him, had in contempt of his rewards abandoned TAVRIS, and ſubſtituted in his place a moſt baſe perſon to repreſent the kings maieſtie & to mannage his treaſure: and that he abſented himſelfe far from that citie and the court there, hauing withdrawne himſelfe into the confines of TVRKIE, no doubt for ſome miſchieuous intent, either to yeeld

Maxut Chan reporteth vnto the king what he hath done, & is for his good ſeruice by him rewarded.

himselfe vnto them, or els to haue intelligence with them, and was like ynough to be guiltie to himselfe of the great errour he had alreadie committed, by offering SIRVAN vnto the Turkish king; and making promise of so large conditions, whereby he had obtained such a sure and safe conuoy to conduct him; when as he had before discouered himself to be a fauorer of the Turks, and a traitor to his owne king: and that therefore it were good to make triall of his inclination, and so peraduenture to decline some great mischiefe, tending to the danger of the Persian state. This malitious accusation slily contriued, so wrought in the mind of the suspitious king, that he commanded *Emir Chan* secretly to apprehend *Maxut*, and to bring him to the Court, and (if he could not by other meanes) than by torture to wrest from him the truth of all those matters. Glad was *Emir* to haue his enemie thus put into his hands, and thought it long vntill he had brought this shame vpon *Maxut*: who hauing alreadie heard some inckling thereof, resolued with himselfe to doe any thing, rather than to fall into the power of his hatefull enemie. And therfore at such time as fifteen tall fellowes were for that purpose sent vnto him from *Emir Chan*, who in the kings name summoned him to the Court, he without making any shew that he took the matter otherwise than well, entertained them courteously, and made them great cheere: but when he perceiued them to be ouercome with sleepe, which crept vpon them by reason of the excesse wherwith they had ouercharged themselues, he caused them to be straightly bound, and with long cords hanged them down into a deepe well, and there shut them vp, secretly couered. Then gathering togither the most pretious things he had in his house, and setting his wiues, his children, his brethren, and nephewes on horsebacke, fled with all his familie in the euening, and the next day arriued at SALMAS, and was there friendly entertained by the Trukish Bassa, and from thence conueyed to VAN, where he was also courteously welcommed by *Cicala Bassa*, and honourably accompanied, sent to *Sinan* the Generall, who very glad of his comming, sent him with all diligence to CONSTANTINOPLE to *Amurath*. And this was in effect the end of the first enterparlance of peace betwixt the Persians and the Turks.

Maxut Chan flyeth vnto the Turkes.

Sinan remained at CAARS eight daies, and there againe surueyed his armie and prouision, and afterwards set forward towards TOMANIS, with resolution there to build a fort. But being come thither, he could by no means put that his designement in execution, by reason of the immoderat raine, which continually by the space of eight daies fell in such abundance, as that neither did the Sunne appeare, or the skie cleare. Beside that, *Sinan* greatly feared least the enemie taking the opportunitie of this raine, of the straight, and of the building, should assault his armie, and finding it in euill plight and out of order, greatly endamage it: Wherefore casting off his former determination for fortifying at TOMANIS, he remoued thence, to carrie succours to TEFLIS. But as soone as he was risen with his armie, and past the strait, *Tal-Ogli* captaine of the Ianizaries of DAMASCO, and *Homar* Sanzack of SAFFETO, hauing receiued secret intelligence that hard by a little out of the way, was good store both of corne and cattel, resolued with themselues to go thither to fetch in that bootie: and so with two thousand souldiors greedie of prey they set forward. Now *Simon* the Georgian and the Persians, following the Turkes armie afar off, had diuided his souldiors into all such places as where there was either corne, or water, or any such thing as might allure the Turks to scatter themselues from the campe: and perceiuing these hungrie Turks carelesly to run headlong to lay hold on this desired bootie, he suddenly fell vpon them, and cut them in pieces, being disordered, so that of those two thousand escaped but *Tal-Ogli* the captaine of the Ianizaries only, *Homar* the Sanzacke, and all the rest being left dead vpon the ground.

Sinan commeth to Tefis.

Sinan holding on his way, in two daies came to TEFLIS, where presently he called a counsell of all the chiefmen of his armie, taking order, That euery man vpon his oath should depose the truth touching the greatnesse of TEFLIS: which he did only in reproach of *Mustapha* the great Bassa, who most vntruly had informed *Amurath*, That it was as great and populous as DAMASCO; whereas in truth it was not in any respect to be compared vnto that so famous a citie. After that he diuided the treasure and succours he had brought, amongst the souldiours of the fortresse, chearing them vp with good words and promises of great matters. And because the souldiors there in garrison complained greatly against the Bassa their captaine, he caused a bill of complaint to be framed against him, & finding him guiltie that he had conuerted the souldiors pay to his owne vse, he condemned him to the restitution thereof, and so immediatly discharging him of his office, placed in his roome *Guisuf Bey*, a lord of GEORGIA, who for the antient

A tient enmitie betweene him and *Simon*, had yeelded himselfe to the Turkes, and was of them so welcommed, that *Sinan* trusted him with the custodie of that fort, which with so many dangers had been maintained and defended till that day.

All things thus set in order at TEFLIS, *Sinan* with his armie departed thence, and hauing againe passed the strait of TOMANIS, there came vnto him *Mustaffad Bassa*, afterward Gouernour of ALEPPO, declaring vnto him, That not farre off was great store of corne and cattell, and no body but only a few Georgians to keep the same, and therfore wished him to send forth some to fetch it in: whereof (though it had been much more) his armie then stood in great need. *Sinan* was well affected vnto this *Mustaffad*, and therefore the easilier enduced by him to send for the aforesaid bootie: but moued with the fresh remembrance of that which had happened to *Tal-Ogli* and *Homar*, he gaue order, That to fetch in this corne and cattell there should goe out ten thousand horsemen and their seruants, among whom was also the same *Mustaffad* as their Generall. Now stood *Tocomac*, *Simon*, and the other Persian captaines in secret ambush, waiting when any of the Turkes should come to fetch in this bootie. Whereupon the aforesaid souldiors being now come, as they desired, and hauing almost charged all their mules and horses with that which best pleased them to make choice of: the hidden Persians all on a sudden issued out of their lurking places amongst them, and with great slaughter put them to flight, and with such fury pursued the victory, that they slew of them seuen thousand, carried away many prisoners aliue, and the mules and horses laden with the stolne bootie. *Mustaffad* was the first that fled, and the first that brought the vnhappy news of that ouerthrow to *Sinan*: which was forthwith confirmed by the report of such as had by speedy flight escaped the fury of the enemy. Wherupon *Sinan* dispatched away the Bassa of CARAMANIA with a great power, charging him whersoeuer he should find the enemie, to set vpon him: and presently rising himselfe with his whole campe, followed the said Bassa. But all too late, for the Persians after the aforesaid victory, without staying had withdrawn themselues into their strong places, knowne onely to such as were well acquainted with the difficult passages of GEORGIA: and hauing there disposed of their prey, were now returning to await some fresh occasion of new slaughter. But when they descried the whol armie of the Turks vpon the rising of a certaine hill, they were afraid to meet them, yea & stood in some doubt also, lest *Sinan* should descend from the hill, and so assault them: for which cause they retired themselues againe into the strength of the mountaines: yet not with such speed, but that the Turks ouertooke some few of them, and slew about fiftie or threescore of them, whose heads in signe of triumph they caried a good part of their way vpon the points of their speares: and tooke prisoners about threescore and ten moe.

Sinan departeth from Tefis.

Seuen thousand Turkes slaine by the Georgians and Persians.

At last *Sinan* with all his armie hauing passed these dangerous places of GEORGIA, arriued at TRIALA, where it was told him, That the Persian king in person himselfe being alreadie departed from TAVRIS, with an exceeding great army was comming to bid him battell. At which news he caused proclamation to be presently made thorow all his army, That euery man should put himselfe in readinesse for the voyage to TAVRIS, whether he himselfe meant to go to meet with the king his enemie. In the meane time (as is reported) hee dispatched certaine posts to the Persian king, then at CARACACH, to entreat him to send another embassadour to *Amurath* for peace, thinking by that meanes (as some doe coniecture) to remoue the king from the resolution of comming to assaile him, if he had any such meaning. After this proclamation made, he descended into the open and large plains of CHEILDER, where presently he mustered his whole armie, and gaue it out, That before he would set forward toward TAVRIS, hee would make triall of the readinesse and nimblenesse of his souldiors, in such sort, as if they should presently ioyne battell with the enemy: which without further delay he put in execution the next morning, formally raunging his whole armie in order of battell; and then sending out some few others, to shew themselues vpon the tope of certaine hils, as if they had bin enemies that came to seize vpon his army; he caused all his artillery to be discharged, and commanded euery man to skirmish and bestirre himselfe, altogether after the same manner as if the enemie had beene there present before them: where the thundering of the great and small shot, the thicke stormes of arrowes, with the brightnesse of the armour and weapons, yeelding foorth lightnings as if it had beene fiery beames, and the noise of drums and trumpets and other instruments of warre, with the ensignes of blew and yellow flying in the wind, made such a medly of all things, as if it had beene the turmoile of a very battell indeed. In the end he caused the retreat to be sounded: and then

setting

ſetting all his armie in order againe, made the like ſhew the ſecond time, and ſo the third time al- G
Sinan derided of his ſouldiors. ſo: which was indeed performed with the great ſcorne & deriſion of his ſouldiors, who deemed it rather childrens play, than any commendation to the proud Baſſa. Theſe counterfeit ſhewes of war thus finiſhed, yet did he not ſet forward toward TAVRIS, as he had giuen it out, but loytered eight daies in thoſe plaines of CHIELDER. At which time there arriued out of PERSIA, one *Aider* the Aga, as an embaſſadour from the king, who was by *Sinan* with great ioy entertained. Diuers were the things by this embaſſadour propounded, ſuch as had *Muxut Chan* before: but the concluſion of all was, that the Perſian king would be content voluntarily to relinquiſh CHARS and TEFLIS, and ſo remaine (as hee did before) in amitie with *Amurath*, and ſo deſired *Sinan* to conclude a peace with his maſter, if it might be: as for himſelfe, this meſſage done, hee was preſently to returne into PERSIA. For this peace *Sinan* promiſed to deale with *Amurath*, ſo H
that the Perſian king would ſend another embaſſadour to CONSANTINOPLE. Vpon which concluſion the ſaid *Aider* returned into PERSIA, and at TAVRIS declared to the king what hee had ſeene, what promiſes he had receiued of *Sinan*, and withall exhorted him to ſend a new embaſſadour vnto the Turkiſh Court. After this, when the publike rumour of the comming of the Perſian king, was found to be falſe, *Sinan* in ſtead of going to TAVRIS, returned to CHARS, where he idlely ſtayed a whole moneth with the generall marueiling and murmuring of all his armie, aſtoniſhed to ſee themſelues (to the great charges of their king, and the diſturbance of his whole kingdome) brought foorth not for any honourable conqueſt, but as it were onely of purpoſe to make a vaine ſhew of warre.

Sinan commeth to Erzirum, and there breaketh vp his armie. At laſt he departed from CHARS, for that now Winter was come on, and the froſtes and I
ſnowes did his armie great harme: and ſo comming to ERZIRVM, there preſently diſmiſſed euery man to goe and winter in his owne countrey, but remained ſtill himſelfe in the ſame citie: from whence hee by ſpeedie poſts diligently enformed *Amurath* of the ſuccours he had left at TEFLIS, of the loſſes he had receiued from the enemy, of all that which was by *Muſtapha* miſreported, of the comming of the Perſian embaſſadour to him, of the promiſe made vnto him touching a new embaſſadour; and to be ſhort, of all his whole actions. Beſides all this, he aduertiſed *Amurath*, That the enterpriſe of PERSIA was a verie hard, long, and difficult matter, and ſuch a one as needed another manner of preparation than had been as yet appoynted for it: and that if he deſired to ſubdue PERSIA, it were then very neceſſarie that hee ſhould ſpeake with him at large, and diſcourſe vpon many particularities, which could not ſo well without exceeding tedi- K
ouſneſſe be declared by writing. After that he ſent other meſſengers alſo to ſollicit *Amurath* for his returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, continually telling him, That it was not poſſible for him to ſignifie by writing what hee purpoſed to report to him by word of mouth, for the better accompliſhing of the enterpriſe begun. Nothing in the world did *Sinan* abhorre more than this warre, hauing his mind altogether bent againſt the affaires of the Chriſtians in EVROPE, and therfore ſought by all meanes poſſible for the diuerting of thoſe warres from the Eaſt into ſome other quarters. At laſt he wrought ſo much, he entreated ſo much, hee writ ſo many letters, and ſollicited the matter ſo earneſtly, that *Amurath* was perſuaded to ſend for him to CONSTANTINOPLE, as ſoone as euer he was certified of the arriuall of the new embaſſadour from PERSIA, of whom *Sinan* had before aduertiſed him: for he was reſolued either to grow to a peace with L
the ſaid embaſſadour, if he came with honourable conditions; or if he came not, or that after his cõming they could not agree vpon the peace, then to put in execution thoſe his conceits wherof he muſt needs in particular talke with *Sinan* by word of mouth. At length the promiſed embaſſador called *Ebraim Chan*, a man of great eloquence, and highly honoured in PERSIA, came to *Sinan*, whereof *Sinan* gaue preſent intelligence to *Amurath*, beſeeching him againe to permit him to come to CONSTANTINOPLE: which his requeſt *Amurath* then graunted. Whereupon *Sinan* forthwith returned to the Court, where he attended the vniuerſall gouernment of the whole empire. At his firſt comming to the preſence of *Amurath* (wherein he diſcourſed not with him of any thing, but of the comming of the Perſian embaſſadour) the conditions were ſet downe, which they were to require for the reducing of the capitulations of this peace to a good M
end. After which agreement the embaſſadour (being now come, and moſt magnificently receiued in CONSTANTINOPLE) had audience: at which time hee with much glorious ſpeech laboured to perſuade *Amurath*, That his king had a moſt ardent deſire to bee reconciled vnto him, and to ioyne his forces with his againſt the enemies of the Mahometan religion, and that for that purpoſe

A poſe he was now eſpecially come thither: which his good purpoſe, if it were anſwered with like zeale on his part, there would thereof enſue the greateſt vnitie and friendſhip that euer was between any Mahometane princes. Whereunto *Amurath* gaue him no other anſwere, but that he ſhould therof talk with his Viſier, and with him entreat of all matters concerning the peace: and ſo he was by *Amurath* entertained and diſmiſſed, both at one time.

Now had *Amurath* called to CONSTANTINOPLE his eldeſt ſonne *Mahomet*, (who afterward ſucceeded him in the empire) being then about ſixteen yeres old, to circumciſe him according to the cuſtome of the Turkes; following therein the inueterat law of the Hebrewes. Vnto which ſolemnitie, many Chriſtian princes were ſolemnly inuited; who accordingly ſent thither their embaſſadours with great gifts and preſents, in token of peace and confederacie, B namely, *Rudolphus* the emperour, *Henrie* the third the French king, *Stephen* king of POLONIA: the State of VENICE, the king of PERSIA, the Moore kings of MAROCCO and FES, the princes of MOLDAVIA, VALACHIA, and others. With all triumph and ioy was the circumciſion of this young prince ſolemniſed, by the ſpace of fortie daies & fortie nights, in the great market place of CONSTANTINOPLE, where all the embaſſadours aforeſaid had their ſcaffolds prepared and furniſhed according to their degrees & ſtates, and receiued ſuch entertainment as might be ſhewed at ſuch a kind of barbarous ſpectacle: Only the Perſian embaſſadour, who had alſo his ſcaffold ſeuerall to himſelfe, but not regarded as the reſt, reioyced not at theſe feaſts and triumphs: for among ſundry other wrongs and ſcorne done by the commandement of *Amurath* vnto the Perſian nation (as by hanging vp of certaine counterfeit pictures of Perſians made of C laths and ſticks, and then burning them, and in many ſcornfull ſorts abuſing them) the Turk, for the great diſpleaſure he had conceiued for the harme done to *Oſman Baſſa* and the Turks in SIRVAN much about that time, and for the diſdaine hee had taken againſt *Ebraim Chan* (as one not condiſcending to the conditions of peace which he expected, nor yeelding to any more than the other embaſſador had done before, ſeemed to haue come as a ſpie to marke the Turkiſh affaires, or to mocke *Amurath*, rather than to put in execution any good matter to pacifie the mindes of the two mightie princes) commaunded the ſtanding before appointed for him, in diſgrace of him to be caſt downe, and himſelfe with all his followers to bee ſhut vp as cloſe priſoners in the houſe of *Mahamet Baſſa* at CONSTANTINOPLE: where he was ſo ſtraightly kept, that though an hundred of his followers there died of the plague, which ſhortly after began to wax hoat in D the citie, yet could he not obtain ſo much fauor as to be remoued to ſome other place, but there was enforced to tarry it out, vntill that afterward order was taken, he ſhould be caried thence as priſoner to ERZIRVM. To end theſe ſolemnities, *Mahomet* the young prince was circumciſed, not publikely, but in his fathers chamber, by *Mechmet* one of the inferiour Baſſaes, ſometime the emperour *Solymans* Barber.

1581

Amurath circumciſeth his eldeſt ſonne Mahomet.

Io Leuncl. ſuppl. Annal. Turc. pag. 82.

Now whileſt *Sinan* as great Viſier ſat commaunding in CONSTANTINOPLE, the garriſons in CHARS and TEFLIS (kept in by the enemie, and hauing receiued none other reliefe than a little which *Sinan* before his departure from ERZIRVM had by good hap cauſed to bee ſecretly conuaied vnto them) were thought to be driuen to great wants. Which thing *Sinan* right well knew, and fearing leaſt thoſe two places which had with ſo much adoe beene both gained and E maintained, ſhould for want of new ſuccours fall againe into the hand of the enemie: he both boldly and freely counſelled *Amurath*, to ſend a new garriſon to VAN for the ſafetie of the countrey thereabouts; and then vnder the conduct of ſome valiant captaine, to ſend ſuccours to TEFLIS. Vpon which point *Amurath* asked *Sinan* his opinion, and willed him to bethinke himſelfe of ſome fit man. Hereupon *Sinan* propounded diuers vnto him, but none of them pleaſed him; for why, hee was before reſolued, in deſpight of *Sinan* and of his counſell, to beſtow this charge vpon *Mahamet Baſſa*, nephew to *Muſtapha* the late Baſſa, and for his ſake hated of *Sinan*. This Baſſa *Mahamet* he ſent to ERZIRVM, with the title of the Baſſa of that prouince; honouring him withall with the name of Generall of the armie for TEFLIS. And preſently gaue com- F maundement to *Haſſan* the Baſſa of CARAEMIT, to *Muſtaffa* ſometime called *Manucchiar* the Georgian, to all the Sanzackes, the Curdi, and the ſouldiors of ERZIRVM, that they ſhould reſort to the ſtanderd of *Mahamet* their Generall, and ſo to follow him to TEFLIS. Whereupon there aſſembled together out of all the ſaid places about fiue and twentie thouſand ſouldiors, with all things neceſſarie for the reliefe of the diſtreſſed garriſon in TEFLIS. Commandement was alſo giuen to the Baſſaes of ALEPPO and MARAS, to repaire to VAN with all their

ſouldiors,

ſouldiors, and there to abide till Winter: which they accordingly did, not moleſted nor troubled by any enemie. G

In the end of Auguſt *Mahamet Baſſa* departed from ERZIRVM, with the Baſſa of CARAMIT, and all his armie, carrying with him money, corne, and all other things needfull for the reliefe of TEFLIS, and in eight daies came to CHARS, and from thence to ARCHELECH, not troubled by any. At ARCHELECH he found *Muſtaffa* (otherwiſe called *Manucchiar* the Georgian) with all his ſouldiors, whom the Generall moſt ioyfully entertained, and honoured with gifts: and withal admoniſhed him to continue in his obedience to *Amurath*, and to conduct him with his armie the ſhorteſt and ſafeſt way to TEFLIS: for that ſome were of opinion, that it were beſt to go by TOMANIS, and ſome other by the way of *Muſtaffa* his countrey: wherein *Muſtaffa* did readily reſolue him, that the eaſieſt and ſhorteſt way lay through his owne countrey, being H alſo in his opinion the ſafeſt. This counſel of *Muſtaffa* pleaſed *Mahamet* greatly, ſo that he made choiſe of him to be the guide of his armie, repoſing himſelfe wholly vpon his good direction: and ſo departed thence towards TEFLIS, paſſing through ALTVNCHALA, and CARACHALA, both belonging to the ſaid Georgian, abounding with all things neceſſarie for the ſuſtenance of man, neither were they euer diſturbed by any enemie. Hauing paſſed *Muſtaffa* his countrey, they came to a friendly caſtle called GORI, from whence they diſcouered in certaine fields a great armie of the Georgians, mingled with Perſians, but apparelled after the manner of GEORGIA: theſe were thoſe captaines of PERSIA, ſent from the Perſian king (as in other yeares before) to aid the Georgians; who ſecretly conioyned with *Simon Chan* the Georgian, had changed their apparel, becauſe the treatie of peace ſhould not be diſturbed, and their king accounted I vniuſt of his word; who vnder the colour of a treatie of peace, whiles *Amurath* attended nothing els but to ſuccor and defend his conquered countries, without purpoſe to annoy any other places, went about to procure the deſtruction of the Turkes. Theſe then as ſoone as they ſaw the Turkiſh army, and perceiued that they alſo themſelues were by them deſcried, ſent Heralds vnto them with haughtie words of defiance, and to offer them battell. With great griefe of mind did the Baſſa receiue this prowd defiance; but hauing no other purpoſe but onely to bring his ſuccours ſafe to TEFLIS, he diſmiſſed the Heraulds, and ſtudied by all meanes he could to ſhun battell. That euening hee was fauoured in his purpoſe by the great and continuall raine which then fell, and ſerued for a reaſonable excuſe of his delay: but the next day prouing faire, and the K Sunne ſhining bright, both the armies marched in ſight the one of the other all day, vntill about foure houres and an halfe before night; at what time the Turkes arriued neere to a riuer that ſeparated the one armie from the other. There the Baſſa fell in conſultation with *Muſtaffa*, whether they ſhould paſſe ouer the riuer before night, or ſtay on that ſide they were vntill the next morning. In which caſe *Muſtaffa* aduiſed him to ſtay, as fearing leſt the enemie ſhould ſet vpon the army diſordered in paſſing the riuer, and ſo annoy them. Notwithſtanding the Generall diſliked this aduiſe of *Muſtaffa*, hauing taken a ſtrong conceit, euen vpon the firſt diſcouerie of the enemie, that there was ſome intelligence and compact betweene *Muſtaffa* and the Perſians, and that to that end he had malitiouſly perſuaded him to come that way, and not by the way of TOMANIS: and therfore the Baſſa thinking, that if there were any ſuch plot laid between *Muſtaffa* and the enemy, to ſet it in ſome confuſion, would not in any caſe follow the counſel of the ſuſpected L Georgian, to ſtay that night; but commanded, that with the greateſt ſpeed that might be, all his ſouldiors with their treaſure & corne ſhould paſſe ouer the riuer; to the end that before night he might on the other ſide of the riuer encampe his armie in ſome good place, to the ſcorne and deriſion of his enemies. *Mahamet* his lieutenant, a bold young man and an hardie, was the firſt that ventured ouer, and after him the carriages of money and of corne, and then the whole armie, with ſuch ſpeed, that ſome of the confuſed multitude were drowned in the paſſage, being rather troden downe with the horſes and camels, than brought to their deaths either by the depth of the channell, or ſwiftneſſ. of the riuer.

Mahamet Baſſa refuſeth battell offered by the Georgians and Perſians.

As ſoone as the Georgians perceiued that the Turks had paſſed the riuer, without any ſtaying M vntil they might ſettle themſelues in any good order, they in great haſt and fury ran vpon them, and preſently aſſailed them whiles they were yet all in confuſion and out of order: by reaſon whereof, the Turks, although they turned their faces vpon their enemie, and made ſome good reſiſtance, yet in ſhort time you might haue ſeene the bankes of the riuer in many places ſtained with the Turkiſh bloud, and many carkaſes of the Turkes here and there ſcattered, without any

apparant

A apparant loſſe among the Georgians and Perſians. Amongſt them that fell in this ſlaughter, were a number of Sanzackes, of the Curdi, and Meſopotamians; which the reſt perceiuing, and by the ouerthrow of their owne, coniecturing the loſſe of others, turned their backes and fled: the like did the remnant of the Meſopotamians, and after them at laſt the whole armie: whom the Georgians preſſed ſo ſore in their flight, that many of the Turkes ſeeing no other way to eſcape, caſt themſelues into the riuer, and ſo (though hardly) eſcaped with their liues. Great was the ſhame, great was the confuſion, but greateſt was the loſſe they receiued, for that in the heat of the battell the kings money and corne was taken by the Georgians and Perſians, euery man ſauing onely ſo much for himſelfe as he could ſecretly hide vpon his owne bodie, or conuey by the meanes of ſome truſtie ſlaue, which by the help of their ſwift horſes was preſerued rather by
B fortune than by valour.

The Turks diſcomfited, & the treaſure and corne taken by the Georgians and Perſians.

The Turks thus diſcomfited & ſpoiled of their reliefe, the next morning gathered themſelues together againe, one with another curſing the heauens, their king, and their aduerſe fortune: ſome of them alſo threatning the Georgian renegate *Muſtaffa*, as though all this miſchiefe had happened through his treacherie, and ſecret intelligence with the enemie. Notwithſtanding, when they found that they had ſtill remaining ſo much money and other eaſements as might ſuffice to comfort the afflicted minds of the ſouldiors beſieged in the fort, they reſolued to hold on their way towards TEFLIS, and in their iourney vſed ſuch ſpeed, that the day following they arriued there in the euening. But when they of the fort ſaw their friends, whom they had ſo long expected, arriued in ſuch bad ſort, and ſo euill furniſhed, they were aſtonied, and wonderfully
C grieued at this common loſſe, and all in a confuſion proteſted to *Mahamet*, That they would abandon the place, if they had not forthwith neceſſary prouiſion made for them. But the General after he had with large promiſes mitigated their firſt furies and inſolencies, preſently in the morning cauſed a Diuano or counſell to be called in the caſtle, where hauing gathered together all the chiefe men in his armie, he ſpake vnto them in this manner:

Mahamet with his diſcomfited army commeth to Teflis.

For as much as it hath pleaſed God, that ſo great and important an occaſion of victorie, which was offered vnto vs for the honour and glorie of euerie one of vs, is now fallen out ſo vnfortunately, that it hath not onely not miniſtred vnto vs any matter of triumphing ouer our enemies, as wee ſhould haue done, but rather hath made them (I know not how) to carrie away from vs both the triumph, and alſo
D *our armour, our horſes, our ſlaues, and our ſpoyles; yea and (the remembrance whereof doth moſt grieuouſly trouble and afflict mee) our Sultans money, and our publike munition and forces ſolemnely deliuered to our conduct, is now become a bootie and a prey vnto them; that the honour which might haue made euerie one of vs famous among noble and valourous ſouldiors, is now fallen from our foreheads, and to our great detriment doeth adorne the heads of ſtrangers, or rather of our enemies; and that notwithſtanding all this, wee are now come to thoſe couragious ſouldiors, which with their great valour haue defended this fort, euen in the middeſt of their enemies weapons and treacheries: and to whom we ſhould yeeld that aid and reliefe, which the vertue of euerie one of their minds doeth deſerue, and which king* Amurath *had put into our hands to bring hither vnto them: there is now no remedie, but to reſolue vpon ſome good meanes, that wee fall not wholly into the vtter diſgrace of our lord and king, and*
E *that is, To maintaine theſe ſouldiors in the cuſtodie and defence of this fort: and though it bee with all our owne wants and all our owne diſhonours, to comfort theſe that haue ſo long time looked for vs, and ſo well deſerued all manner of releefe. Wee cannot excuſe our ſelues, that our enemies were better than wee either in number or inſtruments of warre, for both in the one and the other we were farre beyond them; neither yet can wee ſay, that they ſet vpon vs by night, or at vnawares: for when wee ſaw their number, their weapons, their horſes, and finally their approach, and their manner of aſſault, yet wee would needs paſſe ouer the riuer, and ioyne battell with them: which we now know hath fallen out verie lamentable to vs, becauſe wee were more readie to take our flight, than to endure the fight, and to vſe our feete than to occupie our hands. And therefore it is verie requiſit, as well to ſatisfie the rigour of*
F *iuſtice, as to performe the dutie of ſouldiors, that we ſuffer not our lord and king to looſe his money, which hee truſted into our hands, and which wee haue loſt, not by greater ſtrength, nor by any treacherous ſtratageme of our enemies, but by our owne too too important feare, and too baſe a regard of our liues, before which it was the dutie of euerie one of vs, to haue preferred the care of honour. For if by fighting and courrgious ſuſtaining the aſſaults of our enemies, though they had beene ſtronger and better armed than wee, this misfortune had happened vnto vs, and that we could in any ſort haue repreſented to*

The Oration of Mahamet Baſſa in the caſtle of Teflis.

the

the king and the world an honourable and bloudie battell, wee ſhould not now haue had any need to ſeeke G
meanes how to repay this loſſe, and to reſtore the thing that violently was taken from vs by ſuch as were more mightie than our ſelues, and theſe honourable ſouldiours alſo ſhould more eaſily haue diſgeſted with vs this lamentable calamitie. But wee haue loſt that money, and in verie deed hauing as it were willingly beſtowed it vpon the Georgians and Perſians to redeeme our liues, and to ſaue vs from their furie, are bound to repay it, or elſe for euer hereafter to bee challenged as lawfull debtors to the king for it. And therefore my good friends and companions, if you will take a good courſe, let euery one of vs, without further conſultation, put his hand into his priuate purſe (if hee haue not fooliſhly caſt that alſo into the hands of the rauenous enemie) and with our owne money let vs ſuccour the neceſsitie of theſe men, and haue regard to the honour of our king. So ſhall wee make our flight leſſe blame worthie, wee ſhall iuſtifie our actions more honeſtly (and that which is of greateſt importance) wee ſhall better pacifie the wrath H
of Amurath, *which hee might moſt iuſtly conceiue againſt vs. I my ſelfe before you all am moſt ready to diſburſe foure thouſand duckats towards it: if it ſhall pleaſe you all to follow me accordingly, wee ſhall deliuer theſe ſouldiors from their great neceſsitie, and acquite our ſelues from the intricat bonds of moſt troubleſome diſpleaſures.*

The Turkes among themſelues make a purſe of 30000 duckats for the releefe of the garriſon of Teflis.

There might a man haue ſeene a thouſand countenances changed a thouſand manner of wayes; for one ſoftly whiſpered many a curſe and ſhame vpon the king, vpon *Mahamet*, yea and vpon God himſelfe, another denied to diſburſe any thing, another determined priuily to ſteale away, and ſome ſaid one thing, and ſome another; but in the end euery man was induced to follow the example of *Mahamet:* and therupon hauing made a purſe according to euery mans abi- I
litiy, there was collected thirtie thouſand duckats among them. And preſently after, word was ſent to *Leuent Ogli* at Zaghen, to ſend thither graine, muttons, and other neceſſarie prouiſions, that they might the better continue the defence of the fort.

Two dayes onely ſtayed *Mahamet* in Teflis, and hauing changed ſuch ſouldiors as deſired to be diſmiſſed, and alſo appoynted *Homar Baſſa* Gouernour of Teflis in ſtead of *Giuſuf*, that there gouerned before, he departed. But before his departure, conſultation was had, Whether they ſhould keepe the way of Tomanis, or the way they came through the countrey of *Muſtaffa* the Georgian: and in the end they reſolued to keepe the way of Tomanis, and thereupon order was taken, that they ſhould all paſſe the riuer. The Curdi were the firſt that went ouer, and had already pitched their tents vpon the further ſide of the water, when the Generall K
began to reuoke his former order, & ſent them word, That they ſhould returne, becauſe he was now determined to go backe the ſame way he came. At which meſſage all the Sanzackes were in a rage, and in plain tearmes ſent him anſwere, That theſe mutabilities beſeemed not them, being men accuſtomed to war, but to be rather childrens play, than manly reſolution, and that for their parts they were not minded to change their iourney, but would goe on the ſame way they had begun: and ſo forwards they went (ſay the Generall what he could) and by the way of Tomanis arriued at Chars long before *Mahamet*, who was much grieued at this their ſo great diſobedience: but ſeeing no other remedie, he with the Baſſa of Caraemit, and *Muſtaffa* the Georgian, put themſelues on their iourney euen by the ſame way they came to Teflis. At laſt *Mahamet* arriued at Altvnchala, the chiefe caſtle of *Muſtaffa* the Georgian, and burning L
with the deſire of reuenge of thoſe loſſes which he thought himſelfe to haue receiued by the trecherie of *Muſtaffa*; or (as ſome thought) ſeeking by this meanes to make *Amurath* beleeue, that in truth all the forepaſſed miſchiefs had happened, not through their cowardiſe, but through the trecherous and malitious deuices of the Georgian, and ſo to make their receiued loſſes ſeeme more pardonable; he deuiſed with himſelfe, how to find out ſuch a plot, as that *Muſtaffa* might vpon the ſudden be taken away, as guiltie of ſo foule a treaſon: and that he had deuiſed was in this ſort. To call a counſell into his owne pauillion, as if he had receiued ſome commandement from the court, and hauing cauſed *Muſtaffa* to come into that roome, whiles the ſaid counterfeit commandement ſhould be in reading, to cauſe his lieutenant with thoſe chiefe of his band that ſtood about him, to fall vpon him, and preſently to cut off his head. This pretended counſel was M
accordingly called, wherein ſate the Baſſa himſelfe, and with him the Baſſa of Caraemit, certaine Sanzackes ſubiect to the iuriſdiction of Erzirvm, the Capigi Baſſa or chiefe gentleman vſhier, and the Generals lieutenant; with whom he had vpon their ſolemne oathes for ſecrecie communicated his entended deceit. The Georgian *Muſtaffa* was alſo called accordingly: who

Mahamet deuiſeth how to betray Muſtaffa the Georgian.

both

A both becauſe he was beloued of mo than one,and had alſo vſed all diligent circumſpection,but eſpecially hauing heard in the armie ſome priuie whiſperings of ſuch a matter,knew full wel of all that was deuiſed againſt him,and therefore prouided alſo for his owne defence. But as touching his going to the counſell,he thought he might not denie ſo to do, leaſt by his abſence he might ſeeme guiltie of the fault whereof hee was(peraduenture not without cauſe) ſuſpected; and thereby to leaue his cities for a prey to their enemies,now in the heart of his countrie.And therefore reſoluing to goe, he deuiſed how ſo to do with moſt ſafetie; and ſo, as if need ſhould be,he might be able to turne the miſchiefe intended againſt him vpon the head of the Generall himſelfe.And therefore hauing choſen out fiftie of his moſt faithfull and reſolute ſouldiours,he commaunded them to follow him to the counſell appointed in the Generals pauillion: and be-
B ing come thither,to ſtay there readie and attentiue at his firſt and one only call, ſuddenly and forcibly to ruſh into the pauillion with their weapons,& rather than any wrong ſhould be done vnto him,to ſhew their valour againſt the Turks, without exception of any perſon whatſoeuer. Theſe men by nature enemies vnto the Turks,vnderſtanding wel his meaning,ſetled themſelues vpon the execution: and taken vnto them ſome other alſo of their faithfull and truſtie friends, followed him euen to the pauillion of *Mahamet*: where *Muſtaffa* entring into the place of counſell,deſired of the Generall to know what his pleaſure was;who preſently cauſed the counterfeit commaundement to be read; whereunto *Muſtaffa* gaue an attentiue eare. But when the other Baſſaes and Sanzackes began to ſit downe (contrarie to the maner of the Turks, who whenſoeuer any commaundement of the emperours is in reading,vſe alwaies to ſtand vp,and not to ſit
C down vntil it be full read) the Georgian tooke his leaue,promiſing to be euer readie to perform not only that order of the kings, but alſo whatſoeuer els he ſhould commaund. And ſo being about to depart,the Capigi Baſſi(or great vſher) of *Mahamet* came vnto him,and plucking him by the ſleeue,would haue forced him to ſit downe. Then *Muſtaffa* crying out aloud, drew his ſword,wherewith he ſtrucke *Mahamets* lieutenant, that was right againſt him, and with his left hand hauing raught the roll from his pate, with his right hand ſuddenly (to the great aſtoniſhment of all that were preſent) at one onely blow parted his head, his necke, and his breaſt in twaine,euen to his very ſtomacke; ſo that he died(a ſtrange ſpectacle to behold) being thus cut in ſunder,with his cleft head and two ſhouldiors hanging down vpon their ſeuerall ſides. After this firſt, he redoubled his ſecond ſtroke, aiming at the head of the Baſſa of Caraemit: but it
D being defended with the wrythen rolls of the turbant,it ſlipped downe by his eare; yet ſo,that with a piece of the ſaid turbant it carried his eare quite away, with a little alſo of the fleſh of his cheeke: and all enraged,eagerly aſſailed *Mahamet Baſſa* the Generall(who now all in confuſion was riſen vp in the tumult)and wounded him with fiue mortall wounds; which were yet afterwards by cunning hand healed,when they had brought him euen to deaths dore. At the crie of this Georgian all his people ruſhed in togither: vpon whoſe confuſed tumult,and the feare that *Muſtaffa* through his furie had ſtrucke into the Turks,the campe was preſently raiſed:and euery man with all ſpeed departing thence,put him ſelfe on his way towards Chars,whether alſo were brought the two wounded Baſſaes & the reſt that were ill handled and greatly ſcared with theſe ſudden and vncouth ſtirres.

Muſtaffa notably reuengeth himſelfe of the trecherie intended againſt him by Mahamet the Generall.

E Of all this treacherie entended againſt him, *Muſtaffa* ſent preſent information to the Turkiſh emperour, finding himſelfe greatly grieued at the falſe ſuſpition that *Mahamet* had wrongfully conceiued againſt him, to his great diſhonour: and wrought ſo cunningly, that *Amurath* in token of his good liking and contentment ſent him both cloth of gold and a battleax all gilt. *Mahamet* on the other ſide entermedling here and there with all the art that poſſibly he could deuiſe, all hatefull and iniurious tearmes,ſent large aduertiſements of all the misfortunes that had happened, and aggrauated to the king both the treacheries of *Muſtaffa*, and alſo the ſlender ſecuritie of thoſe waies and countries.

As ſoone as *Amurath* vnderſtood the calamities of his ſouldiors,the loſſe of his mony, the great diſhonour of his people.and the apparant danger wherein the fort of Teflis ſtood,when
F it was like to be abandoned: all inflamed with rage and anger,he called vnto him the Baſſaes of his court(among whom ſat as chiefe the prowd and haughtie *Sinan*) and rated them all exceedingly,reprouing their lewd counſell, and recounting the loſſes that he had from time to time receiued,as if they had happened through their defaults, and eſpecially *Sinan*, as the principall occaſion of all theſe miſchiefes: Who like an improuident foole(as he ſaid)would needs relin-

quiſh the charge of his armie,and like a king ſit idle at CONSTANTINOPLE, ſtanding (as it G
were)at ſome publicke triumph to behold and heare the miſeries and misfortunes of others:ha-
uing before in the time that *Muſtapha* was general,moſt vainly boaſted,with the like power that
he had to fetch the Perſian king out of CASBIN, and to deliuer them in bonds to *Amurath*, but
had in deed performed nothing worth the remembrance. *Sinan* could doe no leſſe but make
anſwere to the wrathfull king, yet not with ſuch mildneſſe and modeſtie as in ſuch a caſe hee
ſhould peraduenture haue done,but in prowd and peremptorie maner, without any reuerence
The proud answer of Sinan to Amurath. or regard, told him plainly: That as the laſt yeare a little before his returne to CONSTANTI-
NOPLE,ſuccours had been conuaied to TEFLIS without any loſſe or trouble(as in truth they
were)euen ſo had they been this yeare alſo, if he had put his aduiſe in execution as much as he
deſpiſed and contemned it: for he did then giue him to vnderſtand, that *Mahamet Baſſa* could H
not be a fit man for ſo great a charge,& that it was neceſſarie to haue choſen in his roome ſome
other captain of valour & diſcretion; but ſeeing he would needs make choiſe of the ſame vnfit
man,he was not now to blame any other for this errour, but onely himſelfe. As for his com-
ming to CONSTANTINOPLE,it was a thing long before thought moſt needfull, not only for
his aduiſe how the matter of peace might be brought to ſome good paſſe;but alſo becauſe if that
treatie came not to the deſired iſſue, then he had to talke with him how he might compaſſe the
ouerthrow of his enemie: which thing as yet he had no fit time to declare vnto him, but was
now readie to reueale it it,if it were ſo his pleaſure. Wonderfully was *Amurath* grieued with this
ſullen anſwere,when he conſidered that a ſlaue of his own,ſhould ſo arrogantly and manifeſtly
reproue him of follie and improuidence. Notwithſtanding,being deſirous to know of him what I
that ſecret and important matter was,which he had to reueale vnto him for the eaſie compaſſing
of his commenced enterpriſe,he diſſembled his diſcontentment conceiued againſt him,& com-
manded him to diſcloſe thoſe his deuiſes which he had to vtter. *Sinan* in briefe,of all his aduiſes,propounded theſe two things: firſt his counſell was,not to proceed in this warre as they had
hitherto done, by ſeeking with forts and fortreſſes to hold and keepe the enemies countries; for
that their treaſures were not able to yeeld ſuch ſtore of money, as was ſufficient for the mainte-
nance of ſo many and ſo great garriſons:contrarie to the opinion of *Muſtapha*(of late dead)who
with great pertinacie had perſuaded that dangerous,chargeable,and difficult manner of warre.
His ſecond aduiſe was,that the true meanes to bring this war to wiſhed end,conſiſted eſpecially
in the reſolution of *Amurath* himſelfe,who if he would go in perſon himſelfe,& againſt ſo migh- K
tie a king oppoſe the perſon of a king,then might he moſt aſſuredly promiſe vnto himſelfe all
ſpeedie and honourable victorie: for that at the only name of his comming, the Perſians would
eaſily come to any agreement; or if not, he might then proceed in his wars, & ſo obtaine moſt
glorious conqueſts. This his aduiſe ſo little pleaſed the effeminat king, that in ſtead of the great
opinion he before held of him, he now conceiued an enuious affection againſt him: and a fur-
ther ſuſpition(foſtred by the great ladies of the court,eſpecially *Amuraths* mother) That *Sinan*
had thus counſelled the king himſelfe to go in perſon,not for any good could come therof, but
only that ſo he might find meanes for the prince his ſonne to make himſelfe king, and to driue
out his father. Which ſuſpition was in ſuch ſort nouriſhed in the mind of *Amurath*, eſpecially
being aſſured of the great affection which the prince carried towards *Sinan*, and he likewiſe to- L
wards him,that he reſolued to rid him out of his ſight; and ſo depriuing him of all charge, pre-
ſently baniſhed him the court,and out of CONSTANTINOPLE to DEMOTICA(a citie of THRACE)
Sciaus Baſſa made Viſier in Sinans place. from whence afterwards he by moſt humble ſupplication obtained to be remoued to MARMARA
a little beyond SELYMBRIA. And into his place of Viſierſhip was preferred *Sciaus Baſſa*(who had
married *Amurath* his ſiſter)an Hungarian borne,a goodly perſonage,and of honourable iudge-
ment: but aboue all men a ſeller of iuſtice and preferments, and yet a great friend to the peace
with the Chriſtian princes,which *Sinan* had alwaies moſt wickedly maligned

1582 The Perſian captaines in the meane time, with their ſpoyles and diuers of their enemies
enſignes, were with great ioy receiued at home in PERSIA: but when the diſcord that fell
out betweene *Mahamet Baſſa* and *Muſtaffa* the Georgian was alſo reported, the former ioy M
was redoubled; euerie man being of opinion, that theſe diſcords might bee great impedi-
ments vnto the Turkes further attempts into PERSIA, which it was feared they would the
next yeare attempt, to the great danger of NASSIVAN and TAVRIS. Vpon which occaſi-
ons,the Perſian king perceiuing that he could not haue a fitter opportunitie to imploy himſelfe
againſt

A againſt *Abas Mirize*,his ſonne (then with him in diſgrace) determined with himſelfe, to leaue the matters on this ſide of his kingdome in their preſent ſtate, and to march toward HERI: whereunto he was earneſtly ſolicited by his elder ſonne *Emir Hamze Mirize*, but eſpecially by *Mirize Salmas* his Viſier. Vpon which reſolution,committing the defence of REIVAN,NASSIVAN,and that ſide of his kingdome, to *Emir Chan* Gouernour of TAVRIS; he ſet forward himſelfe with his armie towards CASBIN, and ſo marching through diuers prouinces, arriued at length at SASVAR, being on that ſide the chiefe of all the cities ſubiect to the iuriſdiction of HERI: which citie he tooke by force,and without delay cauſed the Gouernor thereof to be beheaded,although he alleadged a thouſand excuſes for himſelfe,and obiected a thouſand accuſations moe againſt the ſeditious Viſier. The king after this departing thence,and hauing alſo put
B to death certaine captaines and Sultans,that were accuſed by the Viſier to be confederats in the rebellion of his ſonne,he arriued at laſt at the deſired citie of HERI. Very ſtrong is this citie,by ſituation compaſſed about with a good wall,& watered with deep channels of running ſprings; conuaied into it by *Tamerlaine* their founder, or reſtorer: beſides that, there was in it many valiant captaines,enemies to *Mirize Salmas*, readie to lay downe their liues in defence of themſelues and of *Abas* their lord; ſo that the winning therof, could not but proue both long and difficult. As ſoone as the king approched the citie, he felt in himſelfe many troubled paſſions ariſing of griefe and pietie, it grieued him to thinke that hee ſhould beget ſo graceleſſe a ſonne, who in ſtead of maintaining his ſtate and honour, ſhould ſeeke his ruine and deſtruction: it grieued
C him alſo to remember the bloud of his ſubiects, before ſpilt vpon ſo ſtrange an occaſion; and ſcarcely durſt he enter into the cogitation, thenceforth to ſhed any more of the bloud of his people. Neuertheleſſe,being ſtill more and more ſolicited by his Viſier,he attempted to vnderſtand the mind of his ſonne,and(if it might be poſſible) to get him into his hands. .But whiles the king trauelling with theſe thoughts lay with his armie before HERI, *Abas Mirize* in the meane time,writ diuers letters to his father and to his brother, wherein he beſought them, That they would make knowne vnto him the occaſion of this their ſtir: For if deſire of rule had moued them to ſeeke the depriuation of him, being their ſonne and brother, from the honour he lawfully poſſeſſed, and which his father himſelfe procured for him of his grandfather *Tamas*; they ought to abandon their imagination,for that he was alwaies readie to ſpend his wealth and
D his bloud togither with his eſtate in their ſeruice, and acknowledged his father to be his good father and king: But if they were not induced hereunto for this cauſe,but by a deſire to reuenge ſome treſpaſſes that he had committed to the preiudice of the crowne of PERSIA,or his fathers honour;he was moſt readie to ſubmit himſelfe to any amends,and with all reaſon to yeeld vnto them the kingdome, yea the whole world, and euen his owne life, the rather to ſatisfie their minds with a more full contentation. With twiſe and thriſe reading ouer, were theſe affectionat letters conſidered and digeſted: and at laſt both the father and the brother perceiuing in them ſuch liberalitie of words,and ouercome with pitie,or if not with pitie yet with great admiration and contentment,they determined to put the matter in practiſe,and moderating their deſire of reuenge,to attempt the reducing of the young mans mind to ſome good paſſe. Whereupon
E they wrote backe vnto him, That no greedie deſire to vſurpe his gouernment,had induced them to make ſo great a voyage, to trouble ſo much people, and to ſhed ſuch abundance of bloud; but onely his diſobedience and preſumption,in that he had cauſed himſelfe to be called the king of PERSIA; and had not ſent ſo much as one captaine to aid them in the late wars againſt the Turkes. Glad was *Abas* the young prince,when he vnderſtood the accuſations that were laied againſt him,hoping to make it manifeſt before all men,how the king and his brother were miſinformed in theſe particularities: and therefore incontiuently did write backe vnto them, That if they would faithfully promiſe him,honourably,& without any outrage to receiue his embaſſadors,he would ſend vnto them ſuch euident matter,and ſo cleare information touching thoſe
F his accuſations,as that they ſhould not only clearly perceiue that there was neuer any ſuch kind of thought in him,but alſo that he had alwaies deſired and laboured the contrarie: and would moreouer open vnto them ſuch matter, as in reſpect of other men,and not of himſelfe, might cauſe their comming to proue profitable and commodious to all the kingdome of PERSIA. Which his requeſt they both ſolemnly promiſed faithfully to performe,being verie deſirous to vnderſtand what thoſe ſtrange nouelties ſhould bee. Whereupon *Abas Miriſe* ſent vnto them two of his chiefe counſellors, men of great account and reuerence both for their yeres and wiſe-

Mahamet the Perſian king reſolueth to go to Heri againſt his ſonne Abas Mirize.

Mahamet commeth to Heri.

Abas Mirize by his embaſſadors purged of treaſon.

dome, with full inſtructions: Who after many ſpeeches, in the end ſwearing (according to their G
cuſtome) by the Creatour that ſpread out the aire, that founded the earth vpon the deepes, that adorned the heauen with ſtars, that powred abroad the water, that made the water, and briefly, of nothing brought forth all things, ſwearing by the head of *Ali*, and by the religion of their prophet *Mahomet*, that ſuch peruerſe thoughts neuer entred into the head of *Abas Mirize*: they alleaged many teſtimonies and manifeſt proofes, that moſt loyally in all due time, as well when he was aduanced to the kingdome of PERSIA, as alſo in his battels againſt the Turkes, his ſonne had alwaies cauſed deuout prayers and ſupplications to be made to God for his proſperitie, neither euer deſired to heare any other but happie and fortunat ſucceſſe of him. They brought with them a thouſand and a thouſand precepts and loyal letters, which the young man had cauſed to be written, as occaſions required to the Gouernors that were his ſubiects, for the gouern- H
ment of the State, wherein he neuer named himſelfe king of PERSIA, but onely, Your king and Gouernour of HERI. They prayed the king alſo, to cauſe a diligent proceſſe to bee framed againſt his ſonne, and if there ſhould be found in him any ſigne or ſhadow of ſo wicked a ſuſpition, then to take from him his eſtate and libertie; offering themſelues to remain as hoſtages for him. But when all this ſhould be done, and *Abas* found altogither free from theſe vniuſt accuſa-

The embaſſadors of Abas accuſe Mirize Salmas the Viſier.

tions, then (falling euen to the earth and kiſſing it) they beſought him, and as it were coniured him, not to leaue the matter thus imperfect, to the preiudice of his bloud, but returning to his counſellor, to take information likewiſe vpon what mind and conſideration he had aduiſed the king to take vpon him this vnorderly and dangerous voiage; where no doubt hee ſhould find nothing in him, but malignant, ambitious, and wicked affections; and ſuch as euen deſerued, I
that with his bloud there ſhould bee reuenged all the bloud of thoſe which till that houre had been brought to their vnworthie and vndeſerued deaths. And for as much as nothing remained, whereof the Viſier had enformed the king againſt his ſonne, but the commaundement that was giuen by *Abas Mirize* to the Gouernors vnder him, That they ſhould not go to the wars againſt the Turks: they confeſſed in truth that ſuch an order was taken, but not to that wicked and traiterous end and purpoſe as was reported to the king by his great counſellor, but only in reſpect of an inuaſion iuſtly feared in thoſe quarters by the Tartarian *Ieſſelbas*; who by diuers inroads had alreadie done great harme in the countrie about HERI, and put young *Abas* and his counſellors in ſuch a feare, that they durſt not diſfurniſh their cities of their guards and forces: and
therefore had commanded the ſaid Gouernours, not to go to war againſt the Turks, but to ſtay K
and expect further direction. And that all this was by writing ſignified vnto the Viſier himſelfe: which he of a malicious mind had concealed, only to trie, if in theſe common troubles he could bring to paſſe, that *Abas Mirize* and the king might be taken away, and *Emir Hamze* ſucceed in his place; and ſo he himſelfe remaine the Superintendent of his ſonne in law, and Moderator of that moſt famous kingdome. Of which ſo treacherous a purpoſe they (for all that) thought *Emir Hamze* the young prince altogither ignorant (knowing his honouroble diſpoſition and loue towards his owne kindred) but imputed it only to the immoderat and ambitious deſire of the wicked traitor *Mirize Salmas*.

Of theſe graue ſpeeches of the embaſſadours, *Mahamet* the father (by nature credulous) began to make great conſtruction; and deepely to conſider of their ſo earneſt and important re- L
queſts, which ſeemed vnto him ſo vpright and equall, as that he could not chuſe but hearken vnto the ſame. And therefore calling vnto him the Gouernours, the captaines, the iudges, and treaſurers of all the cities that were ſubiect to HERI: he demanded of them, how and in what ſort they eſteemed of *Abas Mirize*, and in what degree of honour he deſired to be eſteemed of them: and of them all receiued one anſwere, That they held him for their lord and lieutenant to the king of CASBIN, and that he himſelfe had alwaies deſired to be ſo taken and thought of: for proofe whereof, euery one of them brought in diuers letters, precepts, and orders, wherein hee neuer cauſed himſelfe to be honoured with any other title, but only, Your king of HERI. He demanded further, whether any ſuch warres were attempted by the Tartarian *Ieſſelbas* or no: wherof he receiued a large and ſolemne information, that ſo it was, to the great detriment of all M
thoſe territories. And thus the king was throughly perſuaded of the innocencie of his ſonne; who before was noted vnto him by his Viſier, to be an obſtinat rebell. Vpon which occaſion only, although he may iuſtly haue put him to death, as authour of ſo great troubles and bloudſhed; yet becauſe he would be better enformed of the truth of the accuſations laid againſt him by

the

A the embaſſadours, he reſolued to make a curious and diligent inquiſition thereof: and therefore firſt of all, in great ſecreſie he examined *Emir Hamze* his eldeſt ſonne, wherefore he had aduiſed this iourney againſt his brother *Abas*, whom he had found guiltleſſe of all thoſe crimes that were obiected againſt him? whereunto the prince anſwered, That he had no other certaintie of the pretended euill behauiour of his brother, but onely that which proceeded from the great credit that he alwaies gaue to his father in law *Mirize Salmas*, to whom as to a chiefe counſellor, his father in law, and protector of the kingdome, he had alwaies yeelded aſſured credence: and ſo diſcharged the whole tempeſts of all thoſe miſchiefes vpon the Viſier. Touching whom the king made diligent inquiſition, as well among thoſe of the court as of the armie; and thereby found him guiltie of all that the embaſſadours of HERI had accuſed him: and that being al-

B waies acquainted with the true occaſions which reſtrained the Gouernours of HERI (ſubiect to *Abas Mirize*) from going to the warre againſt the Turkes, he had moſt maliciouſly concealed the ſame, of purpoſe to hatch ſuch a ſtrange and dangerous diſcontentment, as had wrought the vnworthie death of many great men, and almoſt defiled the hands of the father with the innocent bloud of his guiltleſſe ſonne. For which ſo foule a treaſon the falſe Viſier was worthely condemned to die, and his wily head by the commaundement of the king ſtrucke from his carkaſſe. Iuſtly rewarded, with the ſame puniſhment which he vniuſtly ſought to haue conuerted vpon others; and with his owne deſtruction pacified the diſſentions and battels that were riſen betweene the two princes. And ſo the two brethren being reconciled togither, and the ſonne to the father; after that *Abas* had againe promiſed his wiſhed obedience (which he afterwards

C moſt dutifully performed) king *Mahamet* returned with the prince towards CASBIN: where by reaſon of new and vnexpected motions of the Turkes, he had now beene long looked for and deſired.

Mirize Salman the Viſier found guiltie of treaſon and beheaded.

Amurath through the rough ſpeeches of *Sinan*, was more and more ſetled in his purpoſe for the continuing of the Perſian warre; accounting it ſo much the more to his owne glorie, as it ſhould in happie ſucceſſe fall out contrarie to the opinion of many: and thereupon began to bethinke himſelfe whom he might chuſe for his Generall, to whom he might commit ſo great a charge. Among the Baſſaes of the court there was one *Ferat*, a man of ripe yeares, but yet fierce of courage, tough in opinion, in counſell as hardie as might beſeeme his age, readie for all ſudden and ſtrange aduentures, but aboue all a vaſſall moſt deuoted to the king: Of this man, at laſt

D he was reſolued to make choiſe to haue the leading of his armie: and therfore calling him apart, declared vnto him what he had in himſelfe purpoſed, encouraging him to take the charge vpon him, with a firme reſolution to performe all things anſwerable to ſo worthie an enterpriſe, with the opinion he had conceiued of his valour. Verie willingly did *Ferat* accept of this new office, and thought himſelfe (as indeed he was) highly fauoured by the king: and thereupon made him a large promiſe, to employ his ſtrength, his wit, and vttermoſt deuoire, to put in execution whatſoeuer ſhould be offered vnto him, either by occaſion, or by his royall commandement.

Ferat Baſſa choſen Generall of the armie in Sinans place.

At firſt *Amurath* had no other purpoſe to imploy him any further, but only to aſſure the paſſage to TEFLIS, and ſo into all GEORGIA; and to haue deſtroyed the country of *Muſtaffa* the Georgian, who had ſo audaciouſly iniured the lieutenant of *Amurath*, and put his whole army

E in confuſion: but being certainly aduertiſed of the troubles in PERSIA betweene the king and his ſonne, he changed his purpoſe, and commaunded *Ferat* to employ all his forces to erect a fortreſſe at REIVAN, a place belonging to *Tocomac*, and to aſſure the paſſage from CHARS to REIVAN; for ſo they ſhould be reuenged of many harmes they had receiued by him, and lay open the way to the citie of TAVRIS, to the great glorie of *Amurath*. As for *Muſtaffa* the Georgian, although he had well deſerued to be chaſtiſed for his raſh attempt againſt *Mahamet Baſſa*, being then his Generall, yet he willed *Ferat* to diſſemble his euill opinion of him, and (if it were poſſible) ſo to worke, as to vſe him as an inſtrument to conuay treaſure and ſuccours to TEFLIS: for by this meanes the paſſage being made ſafe, all GEORGIA would without any mo fortreſſes be ſubdued, and then the next yeare they might attempt the enterpriſe for

F TAVRIS.

Highly did *Ferat* commend the deuiſes of *Amurath* his lord, and ſhewed himſelfe readie for any attempt. And ſo the time being come wherein it behooued them to ſet on foot their important deſignments, in the beginning of the yeare 1583, commandements were ſent out to all the cities of the empire, which were wont to make their appearance at theſe warres, That vpon 1583

freſh ſummons, they ſhould be readie to returne againſt the Perſians, and to put in execution that ſhould be enioyned them by their new Generall. The fame whereof flew as farre as SORIA, IVRIE, PALESTINE, MESOPOTAMIA, BABILONIA, to BALSARA to SIVAS to MARAS, to al BITHYNIA, CAPADOCIA, CILICIA, ARMENIA, yea and beyond CONSTANTINOPLE to the borders of HVNGARIE and GRECE, and in briefe to all the regions that were wont to come to this warre: all which ſent their captains and ſouldiors accordingly. And ſo at the laſt Generall *Ferat* departing from CONSTANTINOPLE, and paſſing ouer to SCVTARI by the way of AMASIA and of SIVAS, came to ERZIRVM, where he tooke a view of all his armie and prouiſion: and from thence in eight daies arriued at CHARS, conducted by the Perſian fugitiue *Maxut Chan:* and from CHARS ſet himſelfe on his way towards REIVAN. Three daies before he came to REIVAN, of certaine ruines of an old caſtle which the Turkes call AGGIA CHALASI (or the caſtle of ſtrangers) he erected a new fortreſſe, and left in it a garriſon of foure hundred ſoldiors, with a Sanzacke, and certain pieces of ordinance, and then went to REIVAN. This countrie is diſtant from TAVRIS eight or nine daies iourney; between which two places are ſituat NASSIVAN, CHIVLFAL, MARANT, and SOFIAN, all enriched with goodly gardens and pleaſant greenes: but in the way are many craggie mountaines to be climed, and ſundrie hard paſſages either for armie or traueller.

Generall Ferat departeth from Conſtantinople.

He commeth to Reiuan.

Ferat in the ſpace of fifteene daies buildeth a fort at Reiuan 750 yards about

Here then did *Ferat* incampe himſelfe with his armie, and taking aduiſe of his chief captains where he ſhould build the fort, they all with one conſent aduiſed him, to ſeize vpon the houſes and gardens of *Tocomac*, and there to fortifie. Which he accordingly did, encloſing the gardens with ſtrong walls and deepe ditches round about, whereinto he conueied water from a certaine riuer, that comming downe from the mountaines, ran into Araxis. Which worke was performed with ſuch expedition, that within the ſpace of fifteene daies the fortreſſe was finiſhed, being in circuit ſeuen hundred and fiftie yards. It grieued *Tocomac* exceedingly thus to loſe his countrie and dwelling, and ſo much the more, becauſe it happened ſo ſuddenly, and as it were vnlooked for. Hee himſelfe as ſoone as he vnderſtood that the Turkiſh armie was comming to that coaſt, hauing withdrawne himſelfe and his men of warre out of the citie hee could not keepe, ſought by all meanes to be reuenged, if not altogither, yet in ſome part of this ſo great an iniurie. And therefore he wrote vnto the king at CORAZAN, to *Emir Chan* at TAVRIS, to *Simon* in GEORGIA, he gathered ſoldiors out of the villages, and vſed all his poſſible endeuour to enable himſelfe to annoy the enemies armie: But from none of theſe places could he receiue any help, the king being ſo far off in wars againſt his ſonne, the Georgian being buſied by hindering any reliefe to be brought to the beſieged in TEFLIS; as for *Emir Chan* (who by ſolemne promiſe vnto the king before his departure to HERI, had vndertaken the defence of that ſide of the kingdome againſt the Turkes) he either would not, or could not ſtir; neither ſent ſo much as one ſoldior, hauing as ſome ſuppoſed ſecret intelligence with Generall *Ferat*, not to diſturbe him in this his worke. So *Tocomac* deſtitute of all other helpe, and not able of himſelfe to doe much againſt ſo mightie an enemie; yet ceaſed not to lay ſuch priuie ambuſhes for the Turks as he could, killing of them ſometimes 100, ſometime 150, and ſometimes mo, as they fell into his danger. And to eaſe his ſtomacke againſt *Emir Chan* (who ſitting ſtill at TAVRIS as it were to behold his miſerie, would not ſo much as ſhake a ſword againſt theſe ſpoiling Turks) he ſpared not to diſpatch certaine horſemen in haſt to the king at CORAZAN, and by eloquent letters to amplifie the cowardiſe of *Emir Chan*; intermedling withal ſome cauſes of ſuſpition, that he had ſome intelligence with the Turkiſh Generall.

Ferat hauing thus built this new fort at REIVAN, as *Amurath* had commanded, and furniſhed it with artillerie, and all other things needful for the defence thereof; appointed *Sinan Baſſa* (the ſonne of *Cicala* a renegat of GENVA, and by *Selymus* the late emperor, in the flowre of his youth created Aga or captaine of the Ianizaries) with a garriſon of eight thouſand ſouldiors to keepe the ſame. And ſo departing thence, by the way of AGIA CHALASI, in ten daies arriued with his armie at CHARS.

Ferat had not long ſtayed at CHARS, but ſtrange newes were brought thither, That *Muſtaffa* the Georgian (to whom *Amurath* had ſent thirtie thouſand duckats, by two of his Capigi and two of his Chiaus, to haue by him beene conueyed to TEFLIS for the reliefe of them in the fort) was reuolted from the Turkiſh obedience, and being now become a rebel, had left that fortreſſe in manifeſt danger to yeeld, if by ſome other meanes it were not relieued. Which ſtrange

A nouelties exceedingly troubled the generall: who to know the certainetie thereof, called before him all such as were the messengers of this misfortune: by whom he was certainly enformed, That *Mustaffa*, the two Capigi, and the Chiaus, hauing put themselues vpon their way towards TEFLIS with the treasure, guarded with a conuoy of fiue hundred of his souldiors, in the mid way had met with his cousin *Simon* the Georgian, by whom he was perswaded to returne againe to his ancient faith and religion, which he had to the great peril of his soule so prophanely abandoned, and to shake off the seruice of *Amurath*, which would yeeld him no other recompence than an hard and infamous captiuitie, and in the end some fraudulent and trecherous death: and that his perswasion had so preuailed with *Mustaffa*, that he caused the two Capigi and the Chiaus to be apprehended and presently beheaded; and diuiding the treasure, with his said cousin
B had with him and his other kinsmen vowed a solemne and perpetuall confederacie: and so hauing withdrawne themselues to their wonted passages, lay there in wait for such succours as should by the Turks be brought to TEFLIS.

When *Ferat* vnderstood these and such other particularities, he all in a furie swore that he would not returne to ERZIRVM vntill he had put all the countrie of *Mustaffa* to fire and sword: yet first he thought it needfull to relieue TEFLIS, which would otherwise be in danger to be yeelded to the enemie: and for that purpose made choise of *Hassan Bassa*, who in the last yeare of the Generalship of *Mustapha* had most couragiously conueyed the like succours, and taken *Aliculi Chan*. Vnto him therefore did the Generall assigne fortie thousand duckats, with other prouision necessarie for that seruice, and for the more suretie appointed him fifteen thousand of
C the most choise and valiant souldiours in all the armie to conduct the same. In ten daies space *Hassan Bassa* went and came from TEFLIS, hauing in his iourney too and fro had many skirmishes with the Georgians, wherein he lost some few men, without any other losse worth the remembrance.

After this the Generall sent one *Resuan Bassa* with six thousand souldiours to spoile the countrey of *Mustaffa* the Georgian the late renegate, but now become a rebell to the Turke: which *Resuan*, without any long stay ouerran all his territorie, burnt his townes, and committed most vncouth outrages, which extended euen vnto the poore insensible trees, and carried away with him many captiue soules, with much corne and cattell, like a raging tempest destroying whatsoeuer came in his way. Now was the Generall also retired to ARDACHAN, whether came *Resuan*
D to meet him with his foresaid bootie. But because they had now performed what they had before intended, and the approch of Winter perswaded their returne, they remoued from ARDACHAN, and by the way of OLTI retired to ERZIRVM, from whence all the souldiors were licensed to depart to their seuerall places of abode, and a memorial sent vnto *Amurath* of all the actions had beene performed; and especially of the good seruice done by *Hassan Bassa*, who for the same was now once againe honoured by the king with cloth of gold, a battleaxe and targuet all gilt.

Ferat commeth to Erzirum, and there breaketh vp his armie.

About this time one *Podolouius* a gentleman of POLONIA, sent by *Sthehen* king of POLONIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, by the leaue of *Amurath* to by certain horses in ANATOLIA; returning homewards with foure and twentie goodly horses which he had bought, was notwithstanding the
E great Turks Passe, by his commandment stayed vpon the way, all his men (in number foure and thirtie) slaine, excepting one boy, who getting into a wood escaped, & *Podolouius* his head struck off. The horses brought backe to CONSTANTINOPLE, were by the appointment of *Amurath* some bestowed into his owne stable, and the rest giuen among the Bassaes, oftentimes pointed at with the fingers of the Turks in derision of the Polonian king. This *Amurath* commanded to be done in reuenge of an outrage done by the Polonian Cossackes against the Turks, whereof newes was but euen then brought to the court.

The death of Hama Chadum, Amurath his mother.

The nine and twentieth day of Nouember of this present yere 1583, died *Hama Chadum*, the widdow of the late emperor *Selymus* the second, and mother of this *Amurath*, and lyeth buried by her husband *Selymus* and his fiue sonnes, strangled by their brother *Amurath*.

1584.

F All the rest of this yeare 1583 *Ferat* spent at ERZIRVM, and afterwards sent out his ordinarie commandements to all the accustomed cities, to summon the souldiors against the next Spring in the yeare 1584, gathering togither a greater number of pioners and engineers than euer had beene gathered in these warres heretofore: and with all gaue it out, That he would go to NASSIVAN, and there doe great matters. At which report the Persians were much mooued, and began

Ferat raiseth a new armie.

gan to caſt many things in their heads about it: but aboue all others the king, who vnderſtanding at CASBIN of all that had before happened at REIVAN, and of the new preparations of the Turkes, began to feare that they would this yeare paſſe to TAVRIS, or at leaſt as was reported to NASSIVAN, and in thoſe places build new fortreſſes to the great danger of the Perſian empire: and therfore retaining ſtill ſuch forces as he brought with him from HERI, and commanding as many moe as he could out of all the cities that were ſubiect vnto him, to follow him to TAVRIS, he arriued there with his armie not long after the arriuall of *Ferat Baſſa* at ERZIRVM. This vnexpected comming of the Perſian king with ſo great an armie to TAVRIS, filled the world with expectation of great matters to haue beene done by him againſt the Turkes: inſomuch that *Ferat* the Generall, before he would proceed any further, thought it good to aduertiſe *Amurath* of the matter: declaring vnto him, That his deſire was to goe to NASSIVAN, and there to build a fortreſſe, according to his commaundement, ſo to lay open the paſſage to TAVRIS; but hauing receiued certain intelligence, That the Perſian king was come to TAVRIS with an huge armie, and full reſolution to encounter him, he thought it his dutie not to put in execution his aforeſaid determination, without his expreſſe commaundement. Vnto whom *Amurath* preſently wrote back, That the matter ſo ſtanding, he ſhould not goe to NASSIVAN, but only employ his forces to aſſure the paſſage to TOMANIS and LORI, that ſo the fort of TEFLIS might the yeare following be relieued by ſome ſmall band, without ſending of any great armie for the conueying of ſuccours thither. This new commaundement of his lord, *Ferat* kept ſecret to himſelfe, cauſing the rumour of his going to NASSIVAN to be more and more increaſed, of purpoſe to feed the opinion that the Perſians had before conceiued of his comming thither; and ſo deluding them, with leſſe danger to build the forts he had entended, for the quieting of thoſe moſt dangerous paſſages of LORI and TOMANIS.

The Perſian king with a great army commeth to Tauris.

Vpon this reſolution *Ferat* hauing gathered together his people, with all things neceſſarie for his purpoſe, remoued with his armie from ERZIRVM toward CHARS, where he ſtayed ten dayes, to take a new ſurucy both of his ſouldiors and prouiſion. And ſo departing thence, ſet forward toward LORI, ſending before him *Haſſan Baſſa* with fiue thouſand light horſemen to ſcoure the countrey euen to TOMANIS, and to learne what he poſſibly could of the enemies purpoſes, and the ſtate of GEORGIA. Which thing *Haſſan* dutifully performed, ſpeedily ſcouring ouer all the woods, and diſcloſing all the paſſages from thence to LORI, and ſo to TOMANIS, without meeting with any vpon whom to aſſay his valour, more than certaine robbers vpon the high way, whom he cauſed to be ſlaine (as men altogether ignorant of the Georgian and Perſian affaires) and their heads to be ſet on the tops of their launces, and ſo returned againe to LORI: where hauing ſtayed one day, he met with the Generall, to whom he recounted all that had happened in that his excurſion. *Ferat* being come to LORI, there encamped his armie. This place did ſometime belong to *Simon* the Georgian, well ſtrengthened with an high caſtle, compaſſed about with very deep ditches and a thick wall, almoſt a mile in circuit, but was then ſomwhat weakned with time: it is diſtant from TEFLIS about two daies iourney, of a carriers pace. Vpon this caſtle *Ferat* ſeized, and hauing repaired the wals, and ſtrengthened the breaches, he placed therein *Ali Baſſa* of GREECE with ſeuen thouſand ſouldiors for the defence thereof, and planted vpon the walles two hundred ſmall peices of ordinance. And ſo when hee had ſet all things there in good order, departed thence with his armie towards TOMANIS; hauing before commaunded *Ali Baſſa* at ſome conuenient time to fortifie SAITAN CHALASI, a caſtle about ten miles diſtant from LORI, and therein to place a conuenient garriſon of ſouldiors and artillerie.

Ferat cutteth downe a thicke wood at Tomanis, & buildeth a fort vpon the ſtrait.

Foure dayes were they going from LORI to TOMANIS, being ordinarily but one dayes worke from the one place to the other: but now the Generall would needs ſo make it, to take the ſpoile of thoſe rich fields, abounding with corne, cattell, & fruit, and to leaue vnto the countrey people a lamentable remembrance of his being there. At laſt being come to TOMANIS (in times paſt a caſtle of *Simons*, but by reaſon of theſe warres, by him then abandoned, he began to conſult with the other captains, how and where the fortreſſe ſhould be erected, for the aſſurance of that countrey. But after many diſcourſes, it was at laſt concluded not to fortifie in that caſtle, as being too farre from the ſtrait, to make that dangerous paſſage ſafe and ſecure; but to go a little further, and to build a fortreſſe vpon the very mouth of the ſtrait. So the armie marching forward a few miles, at the very entrance of the narrow paſſage found the ruines of another caſtle, and

A and neere thereunto ſtayed themſelues. This ſteepe headlong caſtle was ſo compaſſed round about with a thicke wood, which hindered all diſcouerie a farre off, that it was not conuenient to found ſuch a caſtle there, from whence their ordinance could neither auaile them to whom the defence thereof ſhould be committed, neither endomage thoſe that ſhould come to offend it. And therfore the general commanded, that euery man with all his endeauors ſhould lay to his hand for the cutting downe of that thicke wood, and making way through thick & thin to lay it for an open champaigne, that was before the receptacle of a thouſand dangerous treacheries. In very ſhort ſpace were the trees laied along on the ground, the place made lightſome & open, and a very commodious ſituation prepared for the foundation of a caſtle. The plot of the old ruined caſtle was compaſſed about with a wall of a thouſand and ſeuen hundred yards, & in the
B middeſt thereof was erected a ſtrong keepe, ſundrie lodgings and chambers builded, and two hundred pieces of Ordinance diſtributed vpon the new wals. After that, the Generall ſent *Reſuan Baſſa* and the Baſſa of CAIRAEMIT with twentie thouſand of his moſt choice ſouldiours, to conuey ſuccours to TEFLIS: who marching cloſely togither in the direct way, in one day arriued at the ſaid fort; wherein they beſtowed their ſupplies, and changing the Gouernour thereof, ſubſtituted in his roome one *Bagli*, being then vpon this occaſion only called a Baſſa. Whileſt *Reſuan* yet lay thus encamped vnder TEFLIS, *Daut Chan* the brother of *Simon*, who in the beginning of theſe wars, at the comming of *Muſtapha* the Turkes Generall into GEORGIA, had fled out of TEFLIS, came now with all his familie, offering himſelfe as a ſubiect and deuouted vaſſale to the Turkiſh emperour; whom *Reſuan* entertained with great promiſes and large aſſu-
C rances of all good ſucceſſe, according to his deſire.

The compaſſe of the caſtle built at Tomanis by Ferat.

In the meane while newes were brought to *Simon*, That Generall *Ferat* ſlaying at the ſtraits of TOMANIS with his armie, had ſent *Reſuan Baſſa* with a farre leſſe number than indeed he had, to ſuccour TEFLIS: Vpon which report hee tooke courage to encounter *Reſuan*, and to giue him battell. Vpon which reſolution without further delay being accompanied but with foure thouſand Georgians, partly ſubiects of his owne, and partly of *Manucchiars*, he with all ſpeed poſſible went againſt *Reſuan*. But whileſt *Simon* was going thitherwards, Generall *Ferat* fearing the worſt, had alreadie by chance diſpatched away the two Baſſaes of CARAMANIA and MARAS, with ten thouſand ſouldiours, to the end that ioining themſelues with the ſouldiors of *Reſuan*, they ſhould at all aduentures be ſo much the ſtronger. Now *Simon* going reſolutely
D on, found *Reſuan* encamped with ſix thouſand ſouldiors onely at the foot of an hill, on the back ſide whereof lay all the reſt of the armie, and preſently gaue a charge vpon him, when the ſoldiors behind the hill being aware of his approch, were readie all at once with their weapons to receiue him. Who now perceiuing his error, repented himſelfe to haue ſo raſhly aſſaulted his enemies, ſeeing now no other remedie but to be vtterly vndone. But ſeeing that he had now ſo far engaged himſelfe, as that he could not by flight but encreaſe his griefe and make the iſſue more lamentable, with theſe few ſouldiours which he had he endured the furie of the great armie of *Reſuan*, ſo that on both ſides there was ioyned a moſt cruell battell: wherein the ſtrang and vnuſuall valour of thoſe few Chriſtians was much to be wondred at. Yet in the end the huge number of the Turkiſh ſwords and ſpeares ſo preuailed vpon that ſmall number of the Georgians,
E as that they were brought to great extremitie: yea *Simon* himſelfe hauing his horſe ſlaine vnder him, fell downe headlong to the ground, and in his fall was very neere to haue beene taken priſoner, as was his lieutenant and many other his followers, had he not been relieued by an vnexpected and maruellous chance: for whiles the battell was euen at the greateſt heate betweene them, *Reſuan* diſcouered the two Baſſaes of CARAMANIA and MARAS, who (as is before ſaid) were newly ſent by Generall *Ferat* to ſuccour him; but both by the ſaid *Reſuan* and alſo by the reſt of his armie were indeed thought to be Perſians; whereupon they were incontinently ſurpriſed with a ſudden feare, inſomuch that they now became very doubtful of the victorie, wherof they thought themſelues before aſſured. In this ſuſpence and doubtfulneſſe of mind the battell was alſo intermitted, and the victorie by the ſight of thoſe their friends diſturbed: whereby
F the Georgians, and eſpecially *Simon*, whoſe ſtate was almoſt deſperat, tooke the oportunitie to eſcape and ſaue themſelues, leauing behind them moſt ſure ſignes of their valour among the Turkes; of whom many remained their ſlain, many wounded, and many filled with great maruell and vnexpected feare. Thus eſcaped poore *Simon* with the remainder of his followers into his known places of refuge, there to bewaile the death and captiuitie of his ſubiects. But *Reſuan*

Simon indanger to haue been taken, eſcapeth by a ſtrange chance

after

afrer he had diſcouered the Baſſaes approching towards him, to be his knowne friends and well willers, fretted in himſelfe exceedingly, that *Simon* had ſo eſcaped his hands: yet holding on his way to TOMANIS, he arriued there in great triumph, drawing the ſtanderds of *Simon* all along the ground, and cauſing many of the heads of the Georgians to be carried vpon his ſouldiors launces, to the great ioy of Generall *Ferat*; to whom he deliuered all the priſoners taken in the battell, and wicked *Daut Chan*, who hauing in times paſt renounced his firſt faith, was become a Perſian, and now againe deſpiſing the vaine ſuperſtition of the Perſians, had yeelded himſelfe to the vanitie of the Turkes, and made himſelfe a voluntarie ſlaue to *Amurath*. G

Now was the yeare ſo farre ſpent, that euery man began to feare the Winters approch, and therefore the Generall determined to remoue thence, and to withdraw himſelfe into places of more ſafetie. And ſo hauing ſet all things in order in the new fort, he appointed *Haſſan* to be the Baſſa of TOMANIS, and left with him eight thouſand ſelect ſouldiors, choſen out of all the armie for the defence of that fort, and the countrie thereabout. Deepely had *Ferat* laied vp the outrage committed by *Muſtaffa* the Georgian (being now returned to his old name of *Manuchiar*) in taking away the kings treaſure, and killing the two Capigi and the Chiaus: and therefore he reſolued with himſelfe not to returne to CHARS or ERZIRVM, vnleſſe he had firſt paſſed into the countrie of the ſaid Georgian, and in moſt cruell manner reuenged thoſe notable iniuries before receiued. In three daies he arriued at TRIALA, and there encamped. But lying there ſuch an vnwonted dearth and ſcarcitie of all things riſe in the armie, but eſpecially of victuals, that euerie fiue buſhels and a halfe of Wheat was ſold for fiue hundred duckats, to the vniuerſall calamitie of the whole armie. H

A wonderfull dearth in the Turkes armie at Triala.

I

From this place the Generall was minded to go on forwards towards the countrey of *Manuchiar*, but whiles he was vpon the raiſing of his tents, one *Veis Baſſa* of ALEPPO, came vnto him and told him, That it was not good now to ſpend the time in wandering about thoſe countries, for that there were three verie great enemies confederat togither, to make this enterpriſe very difficult, and almoſt impoſſible and deſperat: one was the ſeaſon of the yeare, being now full of ſnowes, froſt, and tempeſts; another was, the want & ſcarcitie of all things neceſſarie, eſpecially of victuall; the third was, the people of GEORGIA, who by a common vniting of themſelues togither, and peraduenture aided by the Perſians, might worke ſome notable miſchiefe againſt the armie. This ſpeech of *Veis* ſo much offended the Generall, that he moſt ſharpely rebuked him, and with bitter tearmes reproued him, telling him flatly, That he well perceiued he was brought vp among mountains and villages, and of a villaine (as he was) vpon ſome ſuperfluetie of grace, or fooliſh importunitie, aduanced to the honour of a Baſſa; & that therfore he ſhould not haue preſumed ſo much as to think it lawfull for him, ſo impudently & malapertly to come and giue him ſuch aduertiſements; wheras it had bin his dutie rather to haue held his peace, and to haue harkned vnto the commaundments of his betters and ſuperiors, yeelding himſelfe obedient and deuoted with all his power to performe the ſame. With this rebuke the General paſſed on to ARCHELECH, burning and in a maner deſtroying the countrie before him, though indeed it was in amitie and confederacie with the Turkes. But the inhabitants of ARCHELECH vpon the comming of the Turks had abandoned the citie, and for feare withdrawne themſelues into the mountaines. In ARCHELECH *Ferat* encamped, & ſtaied the ſpace of foure daies among the rockie crags and in a barren ſoile, yeelding neceſſarie ſuſtenance neither for man nor beaſt; ſo that euery man there endured vnſpeakeable miſeries: yet for the ſpace of foure daies the ſoldiors with patience endured this ſo great a calamitie. But in the end the fall of an huge ſnow being added to theſe extremities, did ſo greatly increaſe their griefes, that all the Ianizaries and Spaoglans of CONSTANTINOPLE aroſe in a tumult, and comming before *Ferat*, in deſpightfull and contemptuous maner with very haughtie and reſolute tearmes ſaid vnto him: K L

The inſolent ſpeech of the mutinous ſouldiors againſt Ferat their Generall.

And how long ſhall we endure this thy tedious and inſolent gouernment? Where is the due commiſeration that thou oughteſt to beare toward the vaſſales of thy Soueraigne, thou ruſticall and vnreaſonable captaine? Doeſt thou thinke happilie, that wee keepe our harlots as thou doeſt vnder thy ſumptuous pauillions, all fat and in good plight, with delicat viands, whileſt others liue in miſerie? Doeſt thou beleeue that wee haue, as thou haſt, our daintie ſugars, ſpices, and conſerues, whereby to reſtore vs, in the common calamitie of others? And that we haue at commaund meat and pretious wines, which thou mingleſt with thy cleare and pleaſant water, partly prouided for thee by the art of the cunning M

doctors,

A *doctors, and partly brought to thee from farre places? From this day forward it will be no longer endured, that ſo much people ſhould continue in this famine, afflicted with nakedneſſe, and many other inconueniences: and therefore get thy ſelfe vp, and returne toward* ERZIRVM, *otherwiſe we ſhall bee enforced to doe that which will breed more diſpleaſure vnto thee, than to any man aliue.*

The Generall in a great agonie preſently called a counſell, wherein it was concluded, That they ſhould all ſend their ſtrong ſumpter horſes to ARDACHAN, and the reſt to follow him into *Manucchiars* countrey, whither he had appointed to goe, onely to make an inrode, and with the ſpoile and bootie of that country, to refreſh the minds of his ſouldiors afflicted with the miſeries both paſt and preſent. This commandement of the Generals they all readily obeyed, as well be-
B cauſe hee promiſed them a ſpeedie voyage, as alſo for that euerie man deſired the ſacke of ALTVNCHALA, and other the territories of *Manucchiar*. So *Ferat* holding on his iourney through certaine low vallies betweene the high and craggie mountaines, continually accompanied with great famine and ſcarſitie, at length brought his armie to CLISCA, a place belonging to *Manucchiar*, but as then for feare of the Turkes quite abandoned and forſaken by the inhabitants; who with their wiues and children and all the beſt ſtuffe they had, were fled into remote and ſafe places, vntill the furie of the enemie were ouerpaſſed. In the fields neere vnto this place (abounding with corne and cattell & plentie of fruit) the General refreſhed his whole army, and hoping that all the ſouldiors would like it wel to ſtay a while in ſuch good eaſe, determined with himſelfe to
C erect a fort in that place. And with this reſolution gaue commandement to *Reſuan Baſſa* to go vp to the tower, and in the top thereof to ſet vp an enſigne with a proclamation and publike report, That he would in the name of *Amurath* there erect a fort, and fortifie it as he had the other forts before. *Reſuan* accompanied with *Amurath* the Baſſa of CARAMANIA, according to the commaundement of the Generall, in the top of the tower ſet vp an enſigne or two: which as ſoone as the ſouldiors had eſpied, the forenamed Ianizaries & Spaoglans, thinking themſelues too much abuſed by their Generall, ariſing againe all in an vprore, repleniſhed with fury and indignation, ran vp in a rage to take downe the enſignes that were ſet vp vpon the tower, and taking them in their hands, tapt the ſaid *Reſuan* once or twiſe about the pate, diſcharging withall a thouſand iniurious and deſpightfull words vpon him, and ſharply rebuked him. And then re-
D turning to the Generall (who was now come thither himſelfe to countenance the action of *Reſuan*) with geſtures full of deſpight, contempt, and diſdaine, reuiling him with many ſhameſull and ſcornfull tearmes, they proteſted vnto him:

That they were not come to the warres, to exerciſe the occupation of maſons and dawbers, and to bee employed in ſuch vile and diſhonourable offices, but onely to mannage their weapons, and thereby to demerite their ordinarie wages, and to purchaſe to themſelues glorie and renowme at the kings hands. And therefore if he loued his head, and would not ſee thoſe armes turned againſt himſelfe which hitherto had bene the reuengers of the enemies iniuries, he ſhould reſolue with himſelfe to leaue theſe new buildings and theſe vnſeaſonable deſignements; and giuing place to the contrarie ſeaſon of the yeare, to haue due care of their common deſires and neceſſitie. *The mutinous ſouldiors againe threaten their Generall.*

E

Whiles they were yet thus expoſtulating the matter with him, one more bold than the reſt, and more forgetfull of his duetie, did not ſticke to aſſault the Generall, and to threaten him to wreake his furie vpon him: which in that tumult had happily been done, had not the Baſſa of CARAMANIA lent the Generall his owne horſe, and ſo conducted him to his pauilion. Yet was he neuertheleſſe ſtill purſued by the tumultuous ſoldiors, and againe ſharply accuſed for the ſtay that he made there, and for not reſoluing preſently to remoue thence: and at laſt after many reproachfull ſpeeches told expreſſely, That if he did not the next morning remoue out of thoſe quarters, without all faile, he ſhould loſe his life for it. For all that, *Ferat* diſdaining to yeeld to them that ſhould of dutie haue been ready and obedient at euery beck of his, and ſeeking by all
F meanes (notwithſtanding all this ſtirre) to ſtay there ſo long time as ſhould be ſufficient to build a fort, that would ſo much offend *Manucchiar*, anſwered them againe.

That hee made no account of their threatning him with his life, which hee had alwayes offered to lay downe for any ſeruice of his king. But if they had no care to ſerue their ſoueraigne in this new buil- *The ſtout anſwer of Ferat.*

ding,

ding, they might goe their wayes; as for himselfe, hee was resolutely minded to obey his lord in whatsoeuer hee had commaunded him, for the honour of whom, euery one of them ought to thinke their liues verie well bestowed. G

Vpon this answere there followed diuers raylings and cursings against the king, against the Generall, and against them all; and in this confused tumult euerie man betooke himselfe to his weapons: in euery corner was heard grumlings and whisperings, full of wrath and indignation: so that there was a great feare of some dangerous euent, but greater was the suspition of the Generals life. And now euery man had withdrawne himselfe to the guarding of such things as he esteemed most; when suddenly and in a trice you might haue seen the pauilions of all the Bassaes and captains fall down flat to the ground, all the cords therof being cut in sunder by the wrathfull souldiors: and as it were in a moment, all the muttons and other cattell which the Generall and Bassaes led with them for their ordinarie vse, were seized vpon by the same souldiors, and guarded with all diligence possible. And so farre was it off that any man durst challenge or reuenge this their insolency, that they themselues turning afresh vpon their General (being now in a maze and deadly feare) began now the third time to threaten him, That if he did not forthwith remoue from those countries, and turne his iourney towards ERZIRVM, those vallies and fields should without all faile become the sepulchres of the Bassaes, and those hils retaine the eternall memorie of so bloudie a day. *The souldiours ouerthrow the Generals tents and threaten to kill him.* H

With a little liberalitie might the Generall haue done with this people whatsoeuer hee had listed, but being loth to gratifie them with any thing, he was enforced to performe their prowd and arrogant demands, and to his great shame to obey them whom with right vsage hee might haue made obedient to himselfe: and therefore to auoid their despightfull threats, to his exceeding great reproach, he was glad euen as they had commanded to remoue out of those quarters. The first day he arriued at ARDACHAN, with the great trouble of all his souldiors: for whereas the iourney was wont to bee two dayes worke ordinarily, as well in respect of the length of the way, as the difficultie of the passage, the Generall would now needs haue it done in one, the rather thereby to grieue his souldiors. But of this his wilfulnesse, he receiued euen the same day the iust reward; for that the chariots wherein his women rode, were conuaied away, together with the eunuchs that were their keepers: some say by the Georgians, that lay in wait for such a prey; some others say by the Ianizaries, who the more to dishonour their Generall, wrought him this iniurie. I K

Great was the reproch that *Ferat* receiued in the armie, but farre greater at CONSTANTINOPLE, when these newes were there known: but there was no remedy, he must now perforce endure it, and discontented as hee was, keepe on his way towards ERZIRVM. In ARDACHAN he tooke a suruey of his army, and there gaue his souldiors leaue to depart: himselfe afterwards arriuing at ERZIRVM, hated of all his souldiors, enuied by his captaines, derided for the losse of his women, and fallen into the disgrace of euerie man. No lesse than the rest was the Turkish emperor discontented with him also: first for that he had done nothing worth the speaking of, in reuenge of the shamefull iniury done by *Manucchiar* the Georgian, and yet so mightily discontented his souldiors: and secondly, for that without any care he had suffered *Aliculi Chan* the Persian prisoner to escape away; about whose flight it was thought he could not chuse but haue some intelligence. For *Ferat*, after hee was by new order from the court to diuert his iourney from NASSIVAN to the straits and narrow passages of GEORGIA, being desirous to be throughly enformed of those dangerous wayes; in this second yeare when hee remoued from ERZIRVM, took *Aliculi Chan* out of prison, of purpose to vse him as his guide in those dangerous straits, and therefore carried him vnder a guard (whatsoeuer it was afterwards) of his most faithfull vassals, still intreating him well, and taking such order as that hee wanted nothing: at last being come to the straits of TOMANIS in GEORGIA, where the castle (as wee haue before said) was erected, he from thence secretly escaped into PERSIA. The manner of his escape is diuersly reported: some say that *Ferat* in discharge of his promise, for his good direction had gratified him with his libertie: others say, that *Ferat* corrupted with money, gaue him opportunity to escape: some others (with more probabilitie) that this escape was made, neither for money, nor discharge of promise, but by the onely vigilancie of *Aliculi* himselfe, and the sleepinesse of his keepers; and that watching the opportunitie of the night (a friend to all escapes) hee started away. Howsoeuer *Ferat at Ardachan breaketh vp his armie.* L M

A euer it was, in fine he was deliuered from his long captiuitie to the diſcredit of *Ferat*, and returned into PERSIA, to performe ſuch enterpriſes againſt the Turks, as ſhall be hereafter declared.

General *Ferat* (before his departure out of GEORGIA) had commanded *Aly* the Baſſa of GRÆCIA (whom he left, as is before declared, in the new caſtle of LORI) to fortifie a certaine caſtle called SAITAN CHASI (in our language, *the Caſtle of the Diuell*) which he with great diligence performed, and left therein fiftie pieces of artillerie, and a thouſand ſouldiours vnder the charge of a Sanzacke: and ſo quieted the paſſages from fort to fort, as that all the waies from REIVAN to CHARS, and from CHARS to TEFLIS, were made eaſie and ſafe, and all the meanes taken away whereby the enemie might be able to plot any new treacherie vpon thoſe paſſages: which was
B no ſmall piece of good ſeruice. *The dangerous paſſage from Reiuan to Teflis ſecured vnto the Turkes.*

The Perſian king in the meane time lying at TAVRIS with his armie, vnderſtanding that the Turks had changed their purpoſe from NASSIVAN to GEORGIA, ſo that there was no further need to imploy his armie againſt them for the defence of TAVRIS or NASSIVAN: at laſt reſolued with himſelfe to licence his ſoldiors to depart, and to applie himſelfe to more priuat reuenges. For calling *Emir Chan* vnto him, whom he had left Gouernor of TAVRIS, and Generall for that part of his kingdome; he required of him the occaſion, why he had not performed the great promiſes which he had made to him before his departed to HERI, nor done his endeuour to hinder the Turks Fabrik at REIVAN: and why he went not out with other ſouldiors appointed for that purpoſe, and namely with the Turcomans (as he had promiſed) to reuenge ſo great
C an iniurie, and in beſt manner he could to haue endomaged the Trukiſh forces? Sundrie excuſes did *Emir Chan* alledge for the coloring of his manifeſt default, but none ſufficient to cleare him of the crimes obiected againſt him by the king and the Sultans: wherefore he was by the king adiudged to haue his eies burnt out with an hoat yron; and ſo depriued of his ſight, to be deſpoiled of all his goods and ſhut vp in cloſe priſon. Which heauie doome was without further delay accordingly put in execution: whereof within the ſpace of a few months, the wicked *Chan* (but yet a famous ſoldior) miſerably dyed in priſon. Whoſe death ſo highly offended the Turcoman nation (who had him alwaies in great eſtimation) that they abſolutly denied their defences for the crowne of PERSIA: and the more, when they heard that the king had beſtowed the roume of *Emir Chan* vpon *Aliculi*; who although he had in many reſpects deſerued all preferD ment, yet for that he was an ancient enemie to certaine Turcoman captaines, they would not in any wiſe endure that he ſhould be exalted to ſo great an honour. And therfore they waxed more diſdainfull and ill affected towards the king, wherby the Perſian forces became the more weakned and diuided. *Emir Chan hauing his eyes put out, dieth miſerably in priſon.*

The Turks notwithſtanding the league yet in force between *Amurath* and *Rodolph* the Chriſtian emperor that now is, did many times make incurſions into the vpper part of HVNGARIE, burning the countrie villages, and carrying away the people into captiuitie: but in their return, they were oftentimes cut off by the emperors ſouldiors, and ſlaine. Which being reported at CONSTANTINOPLE much moued the Turkiſh tyrant: but when he vnderſtood that his men had without any cauſe made thoſe inrodes into the territorie of the Chriſtians, and ſo receiued
E the foreſaid loſſes, he was againe appeaſed, and in the beginning of this yeare 1584, renewed the league betwixt him and the emperor for eight yeares more.

Ferat from ERZIRVM aduertiſed *Amurath* of all that had happened in his late expedition, deſiring him to commaund what he would haue taken in hand the next Spring. But beſides this information from him, there wanted not many others which did the like alſo, although in another manner: declaring vnto the king (and that in an odious ſort) the whole proceedings of *Ferat*, the eſcape of *Aliculi Chan*, the ſhamefull loſſe of his women, his quarrels with the Ianizaries, his falling out with *Vies Baſſa*, a man well regarded of *Amurath* himſelfe, the diſorders of his whole campe for his want of diſcretion; and to be ſhort, the particularities of all ſuch actions as had not altogither ſo honourably been by him performed that yeare: cauſes of themſelues ſuffiF cient to induce the king to remoue the ſaid *Ferat* from his Generalſhip. To which occaſions, were alſo added ſundrie other ſecret reſpects: for euer ſince the laſt departure of *Ferat* from ERZIRVM, *Amurath* had ſtill in his head, the next yeare following to attempt the enterpriſe of TAVRIS, and thereby to ſtirre vp through the world a famous report of his conqueſt correſpondent to his greatneſſe. Now among the captaines whom he eſteemed to be worthie men,

to whom he might with truſt commit this ſo great an enterpriſe, he bethought himſelfe of *Oſman Baſſa*, left at SYMACHIA in SIRVAN by Generall *Muſtapha* in the firſt yeare of this warre: who hauing in that poruince remained euer ſince, had without any helpe of the Tartarians, by his owne induſtrie and valour, to the great contentment of *Amurath*, brought that large countrie into a reaſonable obedience to the Turkiſh empire: and that which moſt of all pleaſed the Turkiſh emperor, had in a countrie ſo farre diſtant maintained his armie, wherewith hee had done all this without any expences at all to his king; hauing now a good while leuied his ſoldiors ſtipends vpon the lands and territories of that region; and ſtill exerciſed a kind of gouernment and ſoueraigntie ouer thoſe places. Of all which his good proceedings, he had cauſed intelligence from time to time to be ſent vnto the court: by which meanes, and other fauourers which he had about the king, there was foſtered in the mind of *Amurath* a wonderfull good opinion of him; ſo that now without delay he reſolued to ſend for him to CONSTANTINOPLE; and for that purpoſe, before *Ferat* was arriued at ERZIRVM, he had diſpatched certaine Capigi and Chiaus to call this famous warriour vnto him: yet wanted there not ſome (and thoſe not of the meaneſt ſort) that went about to hinder both his comming to the court, and alſo theſe deſignments of ſo great importance. For *Sciaus* the chiefe Viſier (who rather for the comelineſſe of his perſon and alliance with the king, than for any other his vertues, was mounted to that high roome) did greatly feare leaſt *Oſman*, whoſe courſe it was to ſit next vnto him in the order of the greateſt Baſſaes, partly for his experience in matters of warre, and partly for the good affection the king did beare vnto him, ſhould at his comming to CONSTANTINOPLE perſuade the king to what he liſted, and ſo peraduenture take from him the chiefeſt office, and get into his hands the whole gouernment of the empire, whereby ſo great wealth was to be gained. Wherefore to rid himſelfe of theſe feares, he caſt about by all means to keepe him from comming to the Court: but becauſe that to attempt the ſame openly, might proue a matter both difficult and dangerous, he thought it better to make triall of a more commodious and ſecret meanes. This *Sciaus* in conſideration of many gifts beſtowed vpon him by *Mahomet* the Cuman Tartar king, had many times excuſed him to *Amurath* of diuers accuſations which *Oſman* by his letters had laid to his charge, For not aiding him in the ſubduing of SIRVAN, as he was both by promiſe and duetie bound: and for all his ouerſights alleadged ſuch reaſons in his behalfe, as if they did not altogither perſuade *Amurath* to be kind vnto him, yet at the leaſt not to carie a mind of reuenge againſt him: and had ſo far proceeded in countenancing this Tartarian king, that there was betwixt them confirmed an interchangeable amitie and mutual confederacie. Him *Sciaus* imagined to find willing and readie by all meanes poſſible, to hinder the comming of *Oſman* his enemie to the Court, if he were but made acquainted with the matter. And therefore *Sciaus*, as ſoone as he vnderſtood the certaine reſolution of *Amurath* to call *Oſman* to the Court, ſecretly wrote to the Tartar king, who lay encamped neere to the hauen of CAFFA vpon the Fens of MEOTIS, certifying him, That *Oſman* was to come to the Court, & that therefore it were good for him to call to mind, how great an enemie he had beene to him, and how much he had endeuoured by letters to *Amurath*, to turne all his hatred and diſpleaſure againſt him: and withal, That if he was able to do ſo much by letters, as if *Sciaus* had not defended him with verie reaſonable excuſes, the king had executed his wrathfull indignation vpon him to his great danger; he ſhould then imagine with himſelfe, what *Oſman* ſhould be able to do when he ſhould come in perſon to the preſence of *Amurath*, and without any mediator, between themſelues determine of all matters what they ſhould thinke conuenient. Theſe, and peraduenture worſe letters which *Sciaus* wrote to the Tartar, miniſtred matter enough vnto him to reſolue to do what he might, not to ſuffer ſo pernitious an enemie of his to arriue at CONSTANTINOPLE: and eſpecially perceiuing that *Sciaus*, in whoſe breaſt he repoſed all his hope and all his protection, did ſo greatly feare his comming. Wherefore he rid himſelfe of that feare, hee commaunded twelue thouſand ſouldiors, that changing their weapons and apparrell, they ſhould go and lie in wait for *Oſman* in the borders betweene COLCHIS and IBERIA, towards the Tartarian Nomades, by which way he was to come; and ſo making an aſſault vpon him, to bereaue him of his life. Hoping that ſuch an outrage once done could not, or would not be imputed to his procurement, but rather to the Tartar Nomades, or to the Mengrellians, or to the Georgians, or to the Moſcouites, or to the robbers by the high way; and to bee ſhort, rather to any bodie elſe than to him. This commandement of the Tartar king, was accordingly by the ſouldi-

Amurath ſendeth for Oſman into Sirnan.

The Tartar king ſendeth twelue thouſand Tartars to lie in wait for to kill Oſman.

ors

A ors put in practise: who without further stay ioyned themselues togither, and so rode towards the place appointed.

And now were the messengers sent from *Amurath*, come to *Osman*, who presently put himselfe on his way towards CONSTANTINOPLE, hauing left behind him at DERBENT and SVMACHIA two Bassaes, thought to bee the most sufficient men in SERVANIA: hauing also appointed very good orders in the same, and an assured establishment of all those countries and places which *Mustapha* first had subdued, and he himselfe had afterwards maintained vnder the obedience of *Amurath*. He had also prouided for the safetie of his own person, in passing those troublesome and dangerous passages through which he was to trauell, by chusing out foure thousand souldiors which he had tried in diuers battels, and brought vp vnder his owne discipline; through whose
B valour he doubted not safely to passe through the treacheries of the Albanians, and the populous squadrons as well of the Tartarians as of the Mengrellians.

Thus departed he from DERBENT, and coasting along the rockes of CAVCASVS (that at all times of the yeare are all white and hoarie with continuall snowes) leauing on his left hand MEDIA, IBERIA, and CHOLCHIS, and on the right hand the famous riuers of Tanais and Volga, euen at his first entrance vnto the shores of the Euxine sea, he was by the abouenamed twelue thousand Tartarians, being apparrelled like theeues that lie vpon those waies, suddenly assailed and fought withall. But like as an huge rocke lying open to tempest and waues, standing fast and vnmoueable in it selfe, resisteth the thundrings and rushings of the great and fearefull billowes:
C so stood *Osman* fast and firme, & couragiously sustained this trecherous assault, turning the bold countenances of his resolute souldiors against the rebellious multitude of those traiterous squadrons: who as is their maner in the beginning vsed great force, but finding so stout resistance in those few, whom they had thought with their onely lookes and shoutings to haue put to flight, they began at length to quaile. Which *Osman* quickely perceiuing, couragiously forced vpon them, and in a verie short space and with a verie small losse of his own, put those Tartarians to flight, killing a number of them, and also taking many of them prisoners: by whom *Osman* was afterwards informed (as the truth was) that their king for feare that he had conceiued, least when he came to CONSTANTINOPLE he would procure his destruction from *Amurath*, had sent this armie to seeke his death. Of which treason *Osman* caused a perfect processe to be made, togi-
D ther with the depositions of the Tartarian prisoners, which he sent the shortest way he could deuise to *Amurath* at CONSTANTINOPLE; with letters declaring all that had passed, enflaming him to reuenge so dangerous an iniurie and so wicked a practise. *Amurath* receiuing these aduertisements from *Osman*, according to the necessitie of the matter tooke order that *Vuzales* his Admirall with certaine gallies well appointed, should passe ouer to CAFFA to fetch *Osman*; and withall to carrie with him *Islan*, a brother of the Tartar kings, commaunding *Osman* by letters, that he should (to the terror of others) put to death the trecherous king, and place his brother in his rome.

Osman assaulted by twelue thousand Tartars.

Osman ouercommeth the Tartars.

This Tartar king was one of those mightie princes, who basely yeelding to the *Othoman* power, led vnder them a most vile and troublesome life, as their tributaries and vassals, alwaies at command: whose younger brother *Islan* (presuming of the sufficiencie of himselfe & the fa-
E uour of the people) going to CONSTANTINOPLE, became a suter vnto the Turkish emperour, to haue his eldest brother thrust out of his kingdome, as a man for his euill gouernment hated of his subiects, and to be placed himselfe in his roome. Which his sute was so crossed by the embassadours of the king his brother, who spared for no cost in the behalfe of their master, that the ambitious youth was sent from the Turkes court to ICONIVM, and there clapt fast vp in prison: where apparelled like an Eremit, he led his life altogither conformable to his miserie, with such a kind of externall innocencie, as if he had been void of all hope or ambitious desire of a kingdome, but rather like a forlorne and vnhappie wretch with vaine affliction and impious deuotion to prepare himselfe to a laudable and honourable death. But whilest he thus liued, sequestred
F from all worldly cogitations, vpon the discouerie of the king his brothers rebellion hee was in more than post hast sent for to CONSTANTINOPLE, and put into the gallies bound for CAFFA, with letters to *Osman* of the tenour aforesaid. Now in the meane time *Osman* had by cunning meanes got into his hands this Tartar king, being as is reported betraied by his owne counsellours, corrupted by the Turkes gold: whom with his two sonnes *Osman* vpon the receit of the aforesaid letters from *Amurath*, caused to be presently strangled with a bowstring, and *Islan* his younger

Osman strangleth Mahomet the Tartar king with his two sons, & placeth Islanhis brother in his stead.

yonger brother to be ſaluted king in his place, yet as vaſſale to *Amurath*. This ſhamefull death, the vſuall reward of the Turkiſh friendſhip, was thought iuſtly to haue happened vnto his Tartar king, for that he not long before, ſupported by *Amurath*, had moſt vnnaturally depoſed his aged father from that kingdome, iuſt reuenge now proſecuting his ſo great diſloyaltie. G

Oſman embarked himſelfe at the forenamed gallies at the port of CAFFA, paſſing ouer the Euxine ſea, and entring into the Thracian Boſphorus, arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was receiued with great pompe and ſingular ſignifications of good loue. But with moſt euident and expreſſe kinds of ioy was he ſaluted by *Amurath* himſelfe, when by his owne ſpeech and preſence he declared vnto him euerie particularitie of the matters that had happened in his long and important voiage, and in liuely manner repreſented vnto him the perils & trauels that he had paſſed, and the conqueſts that he had made in SIRVAN. After all which diſcourſes *Amurath* who longed after nothing more than to ſee the Perſian king ſomewhat bridled, and the famous citie of TAVRIS brought vnder his own ſubiection, began to enter into conference with *Oſman* about that enterpriſe, and in the end would needs know throughly of him, what iſſue he could promiſe him of this his deſire, and in what ſort by his aduiſe & counſell the forces ſhould be imploied, and the armies diſpoſed for the ſubduing of that citie, which ouer all the nations of the world was ſo famous and ſo great an honour to the Perſian kingdome. To all which demaunds his anſwere and reſolution was, That for ſo much as the matters of GEORGIA were now well ſetled, the trecherous paſſages by the new built forts aſſured, and the prouince of SIRVAN vnder his obedience eſtabliſhed, there was now no cauſe why he ſhould any longer foreſlow ſo famous an enterpriſe, but by the conqueſt of TAVRIS, & erecting of a fort in that prowd citie, to bring a terrour vpon all PERSIA, and to raiſe a glorious renowne of ſo mightie a conqueſt among the nations of EVROPE: for the accompliſhment whereof, he thought that either the ſame armie, or at the moſt a very little greater would ſuffice, ſo that it were raiſed of the beſt and choiſeſt ſouldiors. H I

Amurath demãdeth Oſmans opinion concerning the enterpriſe of Tauris.

Oſmans reſolution.

By reaſon of one of the letters which *Sciaus Baſſa* had written to the late Tartar king, and by the inſtigation of the young Sultan *Mahomets* mother (iealous of the neere alliance of the great Baſſa with her huſband, as preiudiciall and dangerous to her ſonne) *Amurath* had in the open Diuano depriued the ſaid *Sciaus* from the office of the chiefe Viſier, and hardly pardoning him his life, at the interceſſion of his wife, being his ſiſter, had baniſhed him the court, ſo that he liued afterwards about CALCEDON, vpon the borders of ASIA, not far from CONSTANTINOPLE, in a cloſe pallace he had there built for his owne pleaſure: in whoſe roome he appointed *Oſman* to be chiefe Viſier; and to honour him the more, nominated him the Generall of his armie againſt the Perſians. Such power hath vertue, that euen from the very ſcum of the raſcall ſort, and out of the ruſticall rout of mountaine peaſants (which notwithſtanding cannot be truly iuſtified of this *Oſman*, his father being Beglerbeg of DAMASCO, and his mother the daughter of the Beglerbeg of BABILON) it doth oftentimes in the courſe of this variable world draw diuers men into princes Courts, and aduance them to the higheſt dignities. Truth it is, that from a priuat ſouldior, though well borne, he by ſundrie degrees grew vp to the higheſt honour of that ſo great an empire, and was at one inſtant created the chiefe Counſellor and Generall of the *Othoman* forces. Great was the ioy that *Oſman* conceiued hereat, and great was the deſire hee had to make himſelfe worthie of ſo honourable fauours; and the greater confidence he perceiued that *Amurath* had repoſed in him, the more eagarly was hee ſpurred on to doe any thing poſſible whereby he might ſhew himſelfe to haue deſerued the ſame. And therefore aduiſing with himſelfe, that for as much as the greatneſſe of the enterpriſe required a greater armie than was leuied in former yeares, ſo it was neceſſarie alſo for him the ſooner to ſend out his aduertiſements into all his ſubiect prouinces, and by his owne example to ſtir vp the other captaines and ſouldiors euen in the Winter (though it were as yet ſomewhat troubleſome) to paſſe ouer to SCVTARI, and from thence to ANGORI, to AMASIA, to SIVAS, and there in thoſe territories to driue out the time, vntill his ſoldiors which were ſummoned were all gathered togither. And becauſe vpon this his great ſpeed it might peraduenture fall out, that the enemie miſdoubting his purpoſe for TAVRIS, might prouide a greater armie than they would otherwiſe, he cauſed it to be giuen out, That he muſt goe for NASSIVAN; to the end, that the Perſians ſo beguiled, ſhould not regard the gathering of ſo mightie an armie as they would haue done if they ſhould haue heard of the Turkes comming to TAVRIS: and ſo the generall couſening rumor flew, not only K L M

Oſman Baſſa made chiefe Viſier and Generall of the army

through

A through all the cities ſubiect to the Turkes, but into the countries of the Perſian alſo: who notwithſtanding being very iealous of the citie of TAVRIS, and fearing that the matter would fall out, as indeed afterward it did, ceaſed not to make moſt curious and diligent inquirie about it. And although the diſgrace offered to his embaſſador at CONSTANTINOPLE, diſſuaded him from ſending any other for treatie of peace: yet to ſpie out the ſecrets of the Turks, and to vnderſtand the certaintie of their purpoſe for NASSIVAN or TAVRIS, he ſent diuers meſſengers to *Oſman*, as if he had meant to feele his mind touching a peace, but in very deed for nothing els but to ſound his deſignements: which for all that he could not with all the cunning he could vſe poſſibly diſcouer, but ſtill remained doubtfull as at the firſt, the fame ſtill running for NASSIVAN.

B In the beginning of this yeare, now growing towards an end, *Amurath* ſent one *Muſtapha*, one of the meaneſt of his Chiaus, vnto *Stephen* king of POLONIA, to excuſe the death of *Podolonius* (ſo ſhamefully murthered as is before declared) as if the ſame had happened by the inſolencie of certaine ſoldiors, and not by his commandment: who the better to colour the matter, had brought with him two baſe fellowes, as authors of that outrage, for the king to take reuenge vpon; but were indeed no ſuch men as they were pretended to be, but rather (as it was thought) men before condemned for ſome other fact worthie of death, and now ſent thither to ſerue that purpoſe: for whom the Chiaus (in proud and threatning maner in the name of his maſter) required to haue preſent reſtitution made of all ſuch goods as the Polonian Coſſacks had not long before taken from the Turks, and the captaine of the ſaid Coſſackes to be deliuered alſo vnto
C him, to be caried to *Amurath*: and ſo hardly vrged the matter, that (notwithſtanding the vnworthie death of *Podolouius* and his followers, and the taking away of his horſes) all the goods taken by the Coſſackes, were forthwith reſtored: which the Chiaus almoſt in triumphant maner preſented vnto *Amurath* at CONSTANTINOPLE.

This Summer alſo *Amurath* diſporting himſelfe with his Muts, was almoſt dead. Theſe Muts are luſtie ſtrong fellows, depriued of their ſpeech; who neuertheleſſe by certain ſignes can both aptly expreſſe their owne conceits, and vnderſtand the meaning of others: theſe men for their ſecrecie are the cruell miniſters of the Turkiſh tyrants moſt horrible commaunds, and therefore of them had in great regard. With theſe Muts mounted vpon faire and fat but heauie and vnreadie horſes, was *Amurath*, vpon a light and readie horſe, ſporting himſelfe (as the manner of
D the Turkiſh emperors is) riding ſometime about one, ſometime about another, & ſtriking now the horſe now the man at his pleaſure; when ſuddenly he was taken with a fit of the falling ſickneſſe, his old diſeaſe, and ſo falling from his horſe, was taken vp for dead: inſo much, that the Ianizaries ſuppoſing him to haue bin indeed dead, after their wonted maner fell to the ſpoiling of the Chriſtians and Iewes, & were proceeding to further outrages, had not their Aga or captaine to reſtraine their inſolencie, to the terror of the reſt hanged vp one of them taken in the manner, and certaine others in the habit of Ianizaries. Neuertheleſſe, *Amurath* ſhortly after recouered againe, and to appeaſe that rumour of his death (openly vpon their Sabbath, which is the Friday) rid from his pallace to the temple of *Sophia*; where I with many others ſaw him (ſaith *Lewnclauius*) his countenance yet all pale and diſcoloured. Io. Leunel. ſup. Annal. Turcicorum, pag 91.

E This yeare alſo happened ſuch a chance as had like to haue raiſed new warres betwixt the Turks and the Venetians: which for as much as it is worth the reporting, I thought it not good in ſilence to paſſe ouer. The widow of *Ramadan Baſſa*, late Gouernor of TRIPOLIS in BARBARIE, with her ſonne, her familie, and a great number of ſlaues of both ſorts, being about to depart from TRIPOLIS to CONSTANTINOPLE, had rigged vp a faire gallie for the tranſporting of her ſelfe & her ſubſtance, reported to be worth eight hundred thouſand duckats: vpon which gallie for her more ſafetie ſhe had ioyned two others, as conſorts. Thus embarked, ſhe came to the mouth of the Adriaticke, where ſayling by CORFV, ſhe was by force of tempeſt driuen into the gulfe of the Adriaticke. At which time one *Petrus Emus*, one of the Venetian Senatours,
F with certaine gallies had the charge for the keeping of that ſea againſt pyrats, and all other enemies whatſoeuer. He hearing of the Turkes comming into the gulfe, without delay ſet vpon them, and being too ſtrong for them, tooke them all: and hauing them now in his power, exerciſed moſt barbarous crueltie, as well vpon the women as the men: for hauing ſlain the men, in number two hundred and fiftie, and the ſonne of *Ramadan* in his mothers lap, he cauſed the women, being before rauiſhed, to haue their breaſts cut off, and afterwards to bee caſt ouerbourd *A moſt barbarous outrage committed by Petrus Emus a Venetian.*

into the ſea, being in number about fortie. The brother of *Emus* chancing vpon a beautiful virgine, was by her moſt earneſtly entreated to haue ſpared her honour; and the rather for that (as ſhe ſaid) ſhe was a Chriſtian, taken priſoner about twelue yeares before in CYPRVS, ſince which time ſhe had liued in moſt miſerable captiuitie among the Turkes, & being now fallen by good hap into the hands of a noble Venetians, was in good hope to be ſet at libertie inuiolated: which ſhe moſt humbly beſought him for the loue of God to doe, and not to embrue his hands with her guiltleſſe blood, or to diſhonour himſelfe by forcing of her. But all ſhe could ſay preuailed nothing with the cruell & vnbridled youth, who after he had at his pleaſure abuſed her, caſt her with the reſt into the ſea. It is thought that *Emus* ſuffered this ſo great an outrage (and ſo farre vnbeſeeming the honor of the Venetians) to be done, to the intent that none ſhould be left aliue to bewray the greatneſſe of the bootie, or of the villanie there committed: which was neuertheleſſe (God ſo appointing it) reuailed by one of the Turkes, who ſaued by a ſurgion of CRETE, which knew him, and afterwards comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, openly declared the ſame. With the odious report whereof, the Turks were ſo enraged, that in euery corner of the citie a man might haue heard them threatning vnto the Venetians moſt cruell reuenge: yea they had much adoe to hold their hands from the Bilo or Gouernour of the Venetian Merchants in CONSTANTINOPLE, and to forbeare to ſpit in his face, as he went in the ſtreets. At that time was one *Io. Franciſcus Maurocenus* (or as they commonly called him, *Moreſin*) Bilo at CONSTANTINOPLE: who vnderſtanding that *Amurath* in his rage was about to ſend one of the great gentlemen of his Court, whom the Turkes call Zauſij (the great Turkes vſuall embaſſadours) to VENICE about that matter, found meanes to haue him ſtaied at CONSTANTINOPLE, and another of leſſe authoritie ſent to expoſtulate the matter with the Senat, and in the name of *Amurath* to require to haue the offendor puniſhed, and the gallies with the ſlaues and goods reſtored: ſo ſhould the league betwixt him and them continue firme, whereas otherwiſe he ſhould be conſtrained by force of armes to reuenge the wrongs done to his ſubiects. This meſſage being by the ſaid meſſenger deliuered at VENICE, the Senators after diligent examination of the matter, returned this anſwer: That the widdow of *Ramadan* with her familie comming to ZACYNTHVS, an iſland of theirs, was there honourably entertained, and preſented with certaine courteous preſents; but departing thence, and comming to CEPHALENIA, another of their iſlands, her people running on land, contrarie to the conditions of the league, made ſpoile of whatſoeuer they could light vpon, ſparing neither man nor beaſt: Of which their inſolencie their Proueditour vnderſtanding, and making after them, found them in armes within the gulfe; and comming neere vnto them, was neither by them ſaluted, as the manner at ſea is, neither was any top ſaile ſtrucke, in token that the commaund of that ſea belonged vnto the Venetians, all which they ought by the league to haue done: for which their outrages and proud contempt their Proueditor had taken ſo ſharpe a reuenge: neuertheleſſe, they promiſed in that caſe to do what beſeemed them in reaſon and iuſtice to do, for the ſatisfying of his deſire. With which ſo reaſonable an anſwere *Amurath* ſeemed to be well contented, but being indeed loth to intangle himſelfe with wars againſt that mightie State at ſea, his wars againſt the Perſians being not yet finiſhed: yet ſhortly after *Emus* was for his diſhonorable and cruell dealing with the ladie and her familie worthily condemned and beheaded, and the gallies with all the goods and ſlaues reſtored. This great woman had in thoſe gallies foure hundred Chriſtian ſlaues, all which vpon the taking of the gallies were (as the manner is) ſet at libertie, for whom the Venetians made reſtitution of as many others of the Turks.

The villanie diſcouered.

Amurath ſendeth a meſſenger to Venice, to expoſtulat the iniurie done vnto his ſubiects.

Petrus Emus beheaded.

Io. Leunel. ſup. Annal. Turcicorum, pag. 92.

Ramadan Baſſa the huſband of the aforeſaid great ladie, was Gouernour of TRIPOLIS in BARBARIE and of the countrie thereabouts: who hauing warres with one of the barbarous kings of the Moores, went out againſt him with all his forces, wherein were certaine companies of Ianizaries, ſent by *Amurath* from CONSTANTINOPLE. Now in this countrie, as in many other places of AFFRICKE, are great and deſart ſands, ouer which whoſoeuer is to paſſe, muſt prouide himſelfe both of victuals and skilful guids, without which they are not without danger to be paſſed: *Ramadan* with his armie vnprouided both of the one and the other, hauing entred theſe deſarts, was at length brought to that caſe, that he could neither go forward, neither without loſſe of his men returne. Yet at length he retired, and got home, but not without the loſſe of ſome of his people, and the manifeſt danger of his whole armie: for which his improuidence the Ianizaries fell into ſuch a rage, that not reſpecting the honour of the man, or regarding the diſplea-

Ramadan Baſſa ſlaine by the inſolent Ianizaries.

A displeasure of their soueraigne, they fell vpon him and slew him. At which their insolencie, if *Amurath* did winke and passe it ouer vnpunished, let no man maruell: for why, the auntient obedience of those martiall men is not now as it was in former times, when they were with a more seuere discipline gouerned; but now growne proud and insolent (as the maner of men is, liuing in continuall pay) with weapons in their hands doubt not to do whatsoeuer seemeth vnto themselues best, be it neuer so foule or vnreasonable. Which although it be in many places of this Historie to bee seene; yet for the more manifestation thereof I thought it not amisse heere briefly to set downe an example or two of their notorious insolencie.

Not many yeares before, the Ianizaries in CYPRVS with like insolencie slew *Achmetes Bassa* Gouernor of that island: pretending for the colour of so foule a fact, that he had defrauded them
B of their pay, and oppressed them of the countrey with intollerable exactions. *Amurath* highlie offended with this their disloialtie in killing their Generall, whom they had neuer before complained of; thought it much to concerne the maiestie of himselfe, and the repressing of the like insolencie in others, not to suffer it to go vnpunished: and for that purpose sent another new Gouernour into CYPRS, with ten gallies furnished as well with other necessary prouision, as with such a conuenient number of souldiours, as might suffice to chastice the insolencie of the chiefe offendours. This new Gouernour arriued in CYPRVS, dissembling the secret commandement he had for the executing of the transgressours, by certaine trustie men gaue it out among the Ianizaries, That *Amurath* was so farre from being angrie with the death of *Achmetes*, as that hee
C thought him worthily slaine by the Ianizaries for defrauding them of their wages, and oppressing of his other subiects: which report the new Gouernour had of purpose giuen out, to put them in securitie, and without farther trouble to bring them into his danger. Hereupon the Ianizaries cheerfully and with al due reuerence receiued their new Gouernor: but shortly after to be sure, they by an vnexpected guile when as nothing was lesse feared, compassed in all the new come souldiors, and slew them euerie mothers sonne; and not so contented, seized also vpon the gallies that brought them. Which second outrage, though *Amurath* tooke in euill part as seeing his maiesty therein contemned, yet was he content to passe it ouer, being loth to adde domesticall troubles to the great warres he had in hand with the Persian.

Achmetes Bassa Gouernour of Cipres slaine by the Ianizaries.

Another insolencie of the Ianizaries.

But to end this matter with the opinion of one of their own greatest Bassaes concerning these
D masterfull men: It fortuned, that whilest *Busbequius* embassadour for *Ferdinand* the emperour vnto *Solyman*, lay in the Turkes campe (at such time as *Solyman* in person himselfe was gone ouer the straight in ASIA, to countenance his eldest sonne *Selymus* against his younger brother *Baiazet*) that vpon a light quarrell (though heauily taken) betweene the followers of the said embassadour, and certaine Ianizaries washing themselues at the sea side; the embassador for the quieting thereof, was glad to vse the helpe of *Rustan* the great Bassa, *Solyman* his sonne in law; who vnderstanding the matter (by a messenger sent of purpose) aduiseth the embassador to cut off all occasion of contention with those most naughtie fellowes: asking him farther, if hee knew not that it was now the time of warre, in which time they so raigned, as that *Solyman* himself was not able to rule them, but stood in feare of them. Which speech fell not rashly from *Rustan*, a
E man right well acquainted with his Lord and Masters griefe: for that most notable prince feared nothing more, than least some secret and dangerous treason should lie hidden among the Ianizaries, which breaking out vpon the sudden, might worke his finall destruction; whereof he needed not to seeke for any farther example, than to his grandfather *Baiazet*. For, as true it is, That great are the commodities of a perpetuall armie of a princes owne; so are the incommodities also not smal, if they be not carefully met withal: but especially for that the prince is euer in doubt of rebellion; and that it is still in the power of those armed souldiors, at their pleasure to translate the kingdome to whom they list. Whereof there haue bin many great examples, although there are many waies for the remedying of the same.

Busbequius legationis Turcicæ, epist. 3.

But now that we haue by occasion of the occurrents of that time a little stept out of the way,
F let vs returne againe vnto the warres of PERSIA, the chiefe obiect of *Amuraths* hautie desires. Now according to the commandements gone out through all the cities of the empire, the souldiors of all sorts began to flock together: and all those that were either desirous to be established in their former charges and gouernments, or ambitiously sought to be now promoted, repaired to *Osman* as vnto a king, and the soueraigne moderator of the Turkish empire, presenting him verie large and liberall gifts, whereby he gathered together a huge heape of infinit treasure: and so

1585.

ſo entertaining them with all affable courteſie, and promiſing both rewards and honors to ſuch G
as would follow him in his purpoſed expedition, hee leuied a wonderfull great number both of
men and monies. And now was the time come that called him away to go towards ERZIRVM,
where hee was greatly expected of his huge armie there aſſembled together. And notwithſtan-
ding the great dearth of victuall that commonly raigneth in thoſe quarters, yet thither he muſt,
where he arriued about the latter end of the moneth of Iuly, in the yeare 1585: and there taking
a view of his whole armie, and of all the prouiſion neceſſary for ſo important and famous an en-
terprice, he daily laboured to haſten his departure. In this citie of ERZIRVM were met toge-
ther all the ſouldiors of the prouinces that were wont to ſend helpe, but yet in a greater number
than euer was gathered by any Generall before: for that euerie man forſooke his owne priuate
buſineſſe, and vpon aſſured hopes of new rewards and vnwonted honours, were all induced to H
follow the fame of this their new Viſier and Generall: onely the people of EGYPT and DA-
MASCO were buſied with other more priuat quarrels at home, whereof becauſe they were both
of great importance, and alſo fell out at this verie inſtant (leauing *Oſman* with his armie for a
while at ERZIRVM) I will in as few words as I may make a briefe rehearſall.

Haſſan Baſſa the Queenes Eunuch ſent to Caire to gouerne there.

Amurath had heretofore taken *Haſſan Baſſa* the Eunuch out of the Serraglio, from the charge
he had there to ſerue in the Queenes Court, and at her inſtance ſent him as Baſſa to CAIRE
the great citie of EGYPT. Which great office, beſide the honour belonging vnto it, is alſo be-
neficiall to them whoſe good hap it is to be aduanced thereunto: the riches, the multitude of peo-
ple inhabiting therein being ſo great, that it ſeemeth not to bee one citie, but rather to containe
within the large circuit thereof many cities. This man being exceeding couetous, and therfore I
deſirous to handle the matter in ſuch ſort, as that he ſhould little need to ſeek for any more ſuch
grants at the kings hands, ſought by all manner of meanes to oppreſſe the whole nation, and by
all importunities to wring and extort from them rewards and bribes, without regard of honeſty
or reaſon. By which his ſiniſter and corrupt dealing, he had now made himſelfe ſo odious and
intollerable to the people in generall, that they in great number, and many times, began to go
to CONSTANTINOPLE, and with humble petitions to requeſt the king to take from them
ſuch a cruell and vniuſt Gouernour; ſo that generally in the Court there was no talke but of the
villanies and miſchiefes that were reported of the couetous Eunuch. At laſt *Amurath* ſeeing that
theſe publike exclamations went daily ſo farre, as that he could not for ſhame let them goe any K
further without due puniſhment, he reſolued with himſelfe to call him to the Court; and hauing
ſent vnto him certaine meſſengers, admoniſhed him ſundrie times to returne home. But the Eu-
nuch loth to leaue ſo fit an occaſion to enrich himſelfe, did ſtill delay his returne, alleadging di-
uers faigned excuſes for his longer ſtay. Which thing when *Amurath* vnderſtood, thinking
himſelfe thereby deluded, he determined to prouide for ſo great a diſorder, and by puniſhing of
the miſchieuous Eunuch, to ſatisfie in ſome part the diſcontented mindes of his oppreſſed ſub-
iects in CAIRE.

Ebrain Baſſa in ſpeech to marrie Amuraths daughter.

There ſat at that time among the chiefe Baſſaes of the Court one *Ebrain* (or as moſt call him,
Ibrahim) by nation a Sclauonian, a young man of the age of two and thirty yeres or therabouts,
of verie faire conditions, and of a reaſonable iudgement: vpon whom *Amurath* himſelfe had
determined to beſtow his owne daughter to wife, and ſo to make him his ſonne in law. And L
therefore being now minded to remoue the Eunuch from his office, and to ſatisfie the citie; and
being alſo willing withall to giue meanes to his ſaid ſonne in law to enrich himſelfe: he reſolued
to ſend him as generall Syndic, and ſoueraigne Iudge into EGYPT, giuing him in particular
charge, to remember how wickedly his predeceſſour had dealt before him. And ſo this new
Baſſa tooke his iourney towards EGYPT, although there ran before him a great rumour of his
comming, and of the great authoritie wherewith he was ſent. At which report, as the Egyptia-
ans reſted content and ioyfull, ſo the Eunuch waxed verie ſad and ſorrowfull: perſuading him-
ſelfe, that this alteration could not but engender ſome ſtrange iſſue and effect againſt him.
Whereupon aduiſing himſelfe, to prouide better for his owne affaires and the ſafetie of his life, M
he reſolued not to ſtay the comming of the new Gouernour: but departing out of EGYPT, with
great care and circumſpection for feare of meeting with *Ebrain*, hee trauelled towards CON-
STANTINOPLE in hope to appeaſe the kings wrath, or at leaſt by mediation of bribes, and by
the interceſſion of the Queene to find him more fauourable, than hee ſhould find *Ebrain*; who
without doubt would not haue ſpared any extremitie or crueltie, to haue bereft him both of his

goods

A goods and life together. *Amurath* aduertised from *Ebrain* of the sudden flight of the Eunuch Bassa out of EGYPT, and hearing withall that he kept not the high way from CAIRE to CONSTANTINOPLE, began to feare, least when hee came into SORIA, he should flie into PERSIA to the king, and so worke him double and treble domage; as one that had already gathered a huge treasure, and hauing long liued in the Court, knew the most secret affaires thereof, and had learned all the priuie deuises and fashions of the Serraglio. Whereupon he with all diligence dispatched his Imbrahur Bassi (whom we may call Master of his horse) with fortie of his Capigi (all gentlemen Vshers, and officers of most secret & neerest roomes about him) with charge and commaundement, that if they met him, they should bring him to the Court; vsing all the aid and assistance of his people that might bee requisit: and for that purpose deliuered vnto him
B verie effectuall and large letters, after the best manner of the Court. This messenger with his appointed traine departed, and without any extraordinarie enquirie found the Eunuch in SORIA, encamped in the plaines neere vnto the citie now called AMAN, but in times past APAMEA, the principall citie of that countrey. As soone as the Eunuch vnderstood of the comming of the Imbrahur himselfe, he gaue order to his guard of slaues, which in great number with speares and arcubuses did ordinarily keepe his pauilion, that they should not grant entrance into his tent to any, but onely vnto the Imbrahur himselfe, and if neede were, by force to keepe the rest of the Capigi from comming in. Which order was in verie good time giuen; for as soone as the kings officer had discouered the tents of the fugitiue Bassa, in all hast he ran towards the same, and seeking out the greatest among them, went presently thither to haue entred with all his follow-
C ers: but the slaues being in armour opposed themselues against them, and permitting only the Imbrahur to enter in, entertained the rest of his traine without. The Imbrahur being come in, read vnto him the commaundement which he had from the king to bring him to the Court, and most instantly moued him, that without any further resistance hee would quietly goe with him. To whom the warie Eunuch answered: *Behold, how without any calling of the king, or conducting by you, I come of my selfe, well assured to find not onely pardon and pitie, but also fauour and grace in the sight of my Lord; whose vpright and mild nature, the wicked treacheries of my false accusers cannot abuse, to the preiudice of me an innocent.* And so without more adoe they went all to CONSTANTINO-
PLE: the Eunuch yet still standing vpon his guard.

The warinesse of the craftie Eunuch.

The pollitick and craftie Eunuch had in this meane time dispatched diuers posts with letters
D to the Sultan ladies, certifying them of his comming, and principally beseeching the queene to protect him, and to appease the kings wrathfull indignation, that happily he might haue conceiued against him: and so at length they arriued at SCVTARI. As soone as *Amurath* vnderstood of his comming thither, he caused all the treasure which hee had gathered to be taken from him, with all the rest of his priuat substance, and the wretch himselfe to be clapt vp in prison in the Iadicula, or seauen Towers. Where after he had languished many daies, still fearing some deadly blow, he at length receiued from the queene, an vnexpected, but most welcome aduertisement, That he should be of good cheere and quiet himselfe, for that his wealth had already saued his life, and that she hoped in short time to procure him also his libertie: Which indeed she brought to passe; for she her selfe made earnest petition to *Amurath* her husband, that for as much as he
E had bereft her Eunuch of all his goods, hee would yet at least deliuer him out of prison, and restore him vnto her againe. Which request of the queenes was granted accordingly, and the Eunuch enlarged: but the treasure that he had so vniustly scraped together in EGYPT, that remained still among the gold and other iewels of the kings.

The Eunuch cast in prison at Constantinople, and his euill gotten goods confiscated.

But *Ebrain* Bassa with his new commission now arriued in EGYPT, had in short space by far more sinister deuises than had the Eunuch before him, scrapt together such an infinit heape of riches, as was able onely of it selfe to make him worthie of his promised wife, and therefore he was called home to the Court to accomplish the intended marriage. With this commaundement to returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, he receiued also in charge, to make his iourney through the people of DRVSIA; and such as he should find loyall, to confirme them in their due obedi-
F ence, and to make them pay their antient duties; but such as he should find stubborne and disobedient, he should quite root them out and destroy them. This commaundement *Ebrain* presently put in execution, & hauing packt vp together all the riches he had gathered in the time of his gouernment, and raised good store of souldiors in that prouince, he tooke with him thirteen Sanzacks, that were ordinarily accustomed to sit as assistants vnder the gouernment of the Bassa

in

in the ruling of the populous territories of CAIRE: and so set forwards towards GAZA, G
passing ouer those vast and huge wildernesses of sand that lie betweene CAIRE and GAZA.
From GAZA, ioyning the Sanzacke thereof with him, he went to IERVSALEM: and from thence
causing the Sanzacke there also to follow his traine, he turned by SAFFETTO, by LEZIVM,
by NAPLOS (called in times past SAMARIA) still taking with him the Sanzackes of all those places,
and at last turned himselfe towards DAMASCO: so that before hee ioyned with the band of
DAMASCO, he had gotten together eighteene Sanzacks, with all their squadrons of souldiours
and slaues. Besides these, hee had also his owne priuat Court, which was wonderfull populous,
and two hundred Ianizaries of CONSTANTINOPLE, whom *Amurath* would needs haue him
to take with him at his departure from the Court, so that he had in his army almost twelue thou-
sand horsemen. From DAMASCO, *Vies* the Bassa was come as farre as IERVSALEM to meet H
him, with all the souldiors vnder his gouernment, in number about two thousand persons. Be-
sides that, there came vnto him by the way of SIDON the Aga of the Ianizaries of CYPRVS,
with all the band of that desolate and destroyed iland: which captaine with his souldiors was
transported ouer into the maine in those gallies that by the kings appointment were sent to
fetch *Ebrain*: who now strengthened with all these souldiors, had purposed the vtter ruine of the
disobedient Drusians, and the raising of his owne glorie, by triumphing ouer them.

The Drusian people what they are.

These Drusians, against whom these great preparations were now made by this new cap-
taine, and of whom the Turkish emperour is so suspitious and doubtfull, are supposed to bee by
descent, Frenchmen, the reliques of those that with great deuotion did in times past fight those
memorable and Christian battels in IVRIE, and recouered the holy citie: but being afterwards I
brought low, partly by the plague, and partly by the furie of the Barbarians, mingled their seed
with the circumcised nation, and so together with their authoritie and commaund lost also their
first faith and religion: yet so, that they grew into an hatred of the Turkish superstition, and ab-
horring the circumcision of the Iewes, betooke themselues to a new prophet of their owne cal-
led *Isman*, whose doctrine they follow. The right Drusians liue vncircumcised, neither do they
forbeare wine as doe the Turks: they make it lawfull among them (most vnlawfully) to marrie
with their owne daughters: the Turkish gouernment they haue sought by all meanes to eschue,
and notwithstanding all the endeuors and attempts of the Turkish tyrants, but especially of *Se-*
lymus the second, yet haue they alwayes beene subiect to their owne naturall princes, and would
neuer admit any captaine or gouernour of the Turks within the counties which they possessed. K
They are a people very warlike, stout, resolute, and religious obseruers of their owne superstiti-
on: in battell they vse the arcubuse and scimitar, yet some of them at this day do serue with laun-
ces and darts: they are apparrelled after the manner of the Easterne people, with a turbant on
their heads, and breeches they neuer weare, but in stead thereof they couer those parts with their
coat, which reacheth downe to their knees, buttoning it vp before. Their feeding is grosse, and of

The countrey which the Drusians inhabite.

mountaine meats. They inhabit all the countrey that is enuironed within the confines of IOP-
PA, aboue CÆSAREA and PALESTINA, and within the riuers of Orontes and Iordan, stret-
ching it selfe euen to the plaine of DAMASCO, neere to the hils that compasse it about vpon the
coast of mount Libanus. They were all in times past good friends and confederats, so that they

Fiue chiefe rulers or gouernors among the Drusians.

were greatly esteemed: but now being at variance, through greedinesse and couetousnesse, they L
were deuided among themselues, one seeking the destruction of another. At this time they were
gouerned by fiue chiefe captaines or gouernours: one of them was called *Ebne-man*, and of the
Turkes *Man-Ogli*; another *Serafadin*; the third *Mahamet Ebne-mansur*; the fourth *Ebne-frec*;
and the fift *Ali-Ebne-Carfus*, by the Turkes called *Ali-Carfus-Ogli*. Vnder these, who indeed car-
rie the title and authoritie of an Emir (that is to say, King or Chiefe) there are diuers their lieute-
nants or deputies, whom they call their Macademi or agents. *Ebne-man* or *Man-Ogli* inhabited
the mountaines and fields that are contained vnder the iurisdictions of CÆSAREA, of PTOLE-
MAIDA, of TIRVS, and of SIDON, and had his residence for most part vpon the hill, in a towne
called ANDERA: he was very mightie in men and armour, and since the time that by treachery M
his father was murthered by *Mustapha* then Bassa of DAMASCO, alwaies a deadly enemy to the
name of the Turkes. *Ebne-frec*, *Ebne-carfus*, and *Ebne-mansur*, were alwayes great friends, but
now especially at the comming of *Ebrain Bassa* they shewed themselues more straightly confe-
derated together. *Serafadin* and *Man-Ogli* were euer opposit against them: so that the one side
procuring the ouerthrow of the other, they lost their strength, and left no means to defend them-

selues

A ſelues againſt the Turkes, who had long lien in wait for their libertie. Now as ſoone as the newes came among them, That *Ebrain* being departed from CAIRE, was comming into SORIA to ſubdue them; the three confederates aboue named reſolued among themſelues to goe and meet this great Baſſa, and to ſubmit themſelues vnto him, of purpoſe to turne all the intended miſchiefe vpon *Serafadin* and *Man-Ogli*, their enemies. And ſo hauing packed vp great ſtore of money, cloth of ſilke, cloth of woollen, and cloth of gold, with many loades of ſilkes, and other things of exceeding value, euerie of the three being accompanied, one with ſome two thouſand, another with ſome three thouſand men, they put themſelues vpon their iourny towards *Ebrain*, and met him at IERVSALEM, where he was already arriued. This their comming *Ebrain* tooke in wonderfull good part, and courteouſly accepted thoſe their rich and great preſents which they
B brought him; and by the offers of their fidelitie, and the grieuous accuſations they made againſt the other two Druſian lords their enemies, began to conceiue great hope of his entended enterpriſe: for why, he ſaw that nothing could more eaſily compaſſe their ouerthrow than this their diſcord. Being thus accompanied, hee came by the way of DAMASCO to the champaigne of BOCCA, and there encamped. This was in the moneth of Iuly this yeare 1585. The whole army that was with *Ebrain*, reckoning alſo the ſouldiors of the three Druſian lords, was about the number of twentie thouſand horſmen ſtrong. In this place there came people out of all quarters thereabouts with preſents to honour the Baſſa, to whom hee likewiſe yeelded ſuch ſmall fauours as his couetous nature could affoord them.

Three of the Druſian lords meet Ebrain at Ieruſalem with rich preſents, and a great traine of men.

From this place alſo *Ebrain* preſently ſent letters to *Serafadin* and *Ebneman*, whereby he inui-
C ted them to come vnto him, to acknowledge their obedience vnto the Sultan: for that otherwiſe they might aſſure themſelues to be in ſhort time depriued both of their eſtates and liues. For all that, *Man-Ogli* would not by any meanes come in. But *Serafadin* being poore both in wealth and forces, reſolued to come, in hope by rich preſents to purchaſe his attonement with the great Baſſa. And therefore hauing packed vp together diuers loades of ſilkes, great ſtore of money, and many clothes of good value and beautie, and alſo attended vpon with diuers of his ſubiects, he arriued at laſt at the pauillion of *Ebrain* with theſe his rich preſents; which were there readily receiued, and hee himſelfe with great attention heard: whoſe ſpeech in effect tended to no other end, but onely to perſuade the Baſſa, That he had alwaies beene a deuoted vaſſale vnto *Amurath*, and that he had carried a continuall deſire to be employed in any his ſeruice: and that now
D being led by the ſame affection, and aſſured of his fauour, by the friendly and courteous offers made him in his letters, he was come to ſhew himſelfe vnto him to be the ſame man, and ſo profered him whatſoeuer lay in his ſlender power to performe. Whereunto *Ebrain* made no anſwer at all, but onely asked him the cauſe why he liued continually in diſcord and brawles with the three Emirs (who alſo ſat at that time in the ſame pauillion.) Whereunto *Sarafadin* anſwered, That it was not long of him, who as one deſirous of peace, had not at any time taken vp armes but in the iuſt defence of himſelfe, againſt the iniuries of thoſe his enemies; who becauſe they were more mightie than he, ſought continually to oppreſſe him. Hereat the three conſpirators aroſe, and with their grim lookes bewraying their inward hatred, falſely charged him to haue beene euer the author of thoſe brawles: adding moreouer, That his inſolencie was at that time
E growne ſo great, as that no ſtrange veſſell durſt for feare of him arriue at the Ports of SIDON, TIRVS, or BERITO, nor any marchant or marchandiſe paſſe ouer the plaines: but that thoſe countries, as though they were a prey and ſpoyle to the theeues of ARABIA, were generally ſhunned of all trauellers both by ſea and land; to the great hinderance of the Sultans cuſtomes. *Serafadin* would hereunto haue gladly replied, but preuented by *Ebrain*, and ſurcharged with many iniurious words, was committed to the cuſtodie of the two hundred Ianizaries of CONSTANTINOPLE. And ſo being by them brought into a rotten tent that was appointed for him, was euery night from thence forward put in the ſtockes faſt chained, and continually guarded with a truſtie guard of the ſame Ianizaries. In the meane time came the anſwere of *Man-Ogli*, who wrote backe vnto the great Baſſa *Ebrain* as followeth:

Serafadin commeth with preſents to Ebrain.

F

A letter of Man-Ogli to Ebrain Baſſa.

To the Lord of Lords, Soueraigne aboue the great ones, the mightie, the noble captaine, couſin to the graund Lord, and the worthieſt among the elect of the Prophet Mahomet, *the noble and famous Lord*, Ebrain Baſſa, *God giue good ſucceſſe to his haughtie enterpriſes, and proſperitie in all his honour. I wiſh (euen as thou doeſt louingly inuite and exhort mee) that I might come before thee, and follow*

thee,

thee, and ſerue thee alwaies in any occaſion that it may happen thee to ſtand in need of my helpe. For G
I know that thou wouldeſt reſt aſſured of the reuerence that I beare towards thy lord, and of the moſt
feruent deſire wherein I liue to ſerue him, and to employ both my ſubſtance and my life in his ſeruice:
whereof I haue alſo giuen ſome teſtimonie, though but ſmall, in the managing of his cuſtomes that I
haue receiued: wherein I haue alwaies ſo carried my ſelfe, as that I am not his debtor of one Aſpre;
a thing iwis that Ebne-Manſur *(who is now with thee) hath not done. For although by his comming*
to meet thee euen as farre as IERVSALEM *he would make a ſhew of his fidelitie, yet doth he vſurpe*
more than two hundred thouſand duckats of the kings, which he doth moſt vniuſtly detaine from him
of his cuſtomes. But my hard fortune will not graunt me the fauour that I may come vnto thee: for
there are at this preſent with thee three of mine enemies, who (I know well) being not contented to
haue alwaies diſquieted and troubled my eſtate, doe now ſeeke to bring me into ſo great hatred with H
thy heart, that if thou haddeſt me in thy hands, thou wouldeſt without any conſideration bereaue me
of my life. And I am aſſured, that this ſending for mee importeth no other thing, but onely a deſire
thou haſt to impriſon mee, and ſo to kill mee. For I know how much thou art giuen to great enterpriſes.
Beſides this, my comming is alſo hindered by mine auncient oath that I tooke: when being as yet but
a child, I ſaw mine owne father ſo villanouſly betrayed by the murthering ſword of Muſtapha, *be-*
ing at that time the Baſſa of DAMASCO: *who vnder the colour of vnfeigned friendſhip got him*
into his hands, and traiterouſly ſtrucke off his head. For in truth I carrie the image of my fathers re-
uerend head, all pale, and yet as it were breathing, imprinted in my mind, which oftentimes preſen-
teth it ſelfe vnto mee, as well ſleeping in the darkeneſſe of the night, as alſo waking in the light of the
day, and talking with mee, calleth to my remembrance the infidelitie of the murthering tyrant, and ex- I
horteth mee to keepe my ſelfe aloofe from the hands of the mightie. And therefore I neither can nor
may obey thy requeſts, and in that reſpect it grieueth mee, that I ſhall ſeeme diſobedient vnto thee,
being in any other action and in all my cogitations wholly addicted to doe any ſeruice not onely to
thee, who art moſt worthie to be reuerenced of farre greater perſons than I am, but alſo to euery the
leaſt vaſſals of Amuraths. *Thou wilt pardon me I hope, and thou ſhalt well perceiue, that if there be*
any thing neere me that may be acceptable to thee, all that I haue whatſoeuer, though in reſpect of thy ſelfe
it may ſeeme vile and baſe, yet is it thine, and is now reſerued wholly for thee, and not for me. Farewell,
and commaund me, and hold me excuſed vpon theſe iuſt cauſes which thou heareſt, for my being ſo
backward in comming to honour thee, as my dutie requireth.

K

The poore and the leaſt among the ſlaues of the graund Lord,

The Sonne of Man.

Ebrain burneth 24. townes of Man-oglies.

Ebrain perceiuing by this letter the reſolution of *Man-ogli*, reſolued alſo in himſelfe to goe vpon him with all his armie, and either by force or ſleight to get him into his hands; or at leaſt to draw from him ſo many arcubuſes, and as great gifts & tributes as poſſibly he might: and therfore riſing with his campe, and turning himſelfe toward the countrey of *Man-ogli*, he burnt and deſtroyed foure and twentie of his townes; and ſo mounting vp certaine rocks of LIBANVS, vpon the top of a large hill (that ſtandeth ouer ANDARA and other places belonging to *Man-* L
ogli) he encamped himſelfe. But whiles the armie was thus marching forward, *Veis Baſſa* of DAMASCO with a great part of his people, and his ſonne the Sanzacke of IERVSALEM, with his ſouldiers likewiſe, to the number of fifteene hundred perſons, hauing ſeparated themſelues from the reſt of the armie, in manner of a rereward; as they were buſie in raiſing their tents, vpon the ſudden were furiouſly aſſaulted by a great band of Druſians, of the faction of *Man-ogli*, and diſcomfited. Which victorie the Druſians ſo proſecuted, that they became lords of the pauillions, the wealth and armour of the Turks: and leading away with them their horſes and their carriages, put to the ſword fiue hundred perſons, and ſcarce gaue any leaſure to eſcape either to the Baſſa the father, or the Sanzacke his ſonne, who fled ſtraight to IERVSALEM, and neuer returned againe to *Ebrain*; but *Veis* his father ſtill followed the armie with thoſe few which he M
had left, and was thought worthie of all men to be pitied.

Veis Baſſa and his ſonne diſcomfited by the Druſians.

Vpon the hill aforeſaid *Ebrain* continued foure and twentie daies togither, with aboundance of all things neceſſary for victuall: during which time he attended nothing elſe, but to trie all deuiſes how he might draw money and preſents from *Man-ogli*, or how he might traine him into his

A his hands. For the compaſſing whereof, he diſpatched one *Gomeda* (*Ebne-Manſurs* Agent) to *Man-ogli*, being in ANDREA; to tell him, That for as much as he would not giue credit to the promiſe which was made him, nor aduenture himſelf into the hand of his friend, he ſhould ſend vnto him all the arcubuſes he had: for that the Sultans pleaſure was, that his people that went not to the wars in his ſeruice, ſhould not be furniſhed with ſo great ſtore of weapons, to the danger of their neighbours, and of the ſubiects themſelues. With great griefe of mind did *Man ogli* behold the meſſenger, as the man whom he wel knew to be the Agent of his deadly enemie; yet in regard of him that ſent him, he forbeare to do him iniurie, or to giue him any reproach; telling him, That all his people and weapons were diſperſed abroad ouer his territorie, ſo that he could not tell what arcubuſes to ſend him: with which cold anſwere *Gomeda* returned. Which
B thing when *Aly Baſſa* of ALEPPO vnderſtood, he offered himſelfe to the Generall, that hee would go vnto him, and that to ſome better purpoſe. Many reaſons did *Aly Baſſa* vſe to perſuade the warie Druſian to come and yeeld his obedience to *Ebrain*, ſwearing that no harme ſhould be done vnto him: and withall promiſing him great and honourable fauours. But neuer could he remoue the reſolute and prouident mind of *Man-ogli*, or win him to yeeld himſelf into the hands of a man, whom he thought to be ſo murtherous: yet a laſt with much adoe he preuailed ſo much with the Druſian lord, that in ſigne of the reuerence he did beare towards the Generall, and of his obedience towards *Amurath*, he was content to ſend a preſent to *Ebrain*. And therupon gaue him three hundred and twentie arcubuſes, twentie packs of Andarine ſilks, and fiftie thouſand duckats to carrie to the Baſſa for a gift, and to reconcile him vnto him. For
C the better effecting whereof, he ſent his owne mother to the great Baſſa, who in the behalfe of her ſonne performed a verie worthie meſſage, excuſing him as well in reſpect of his enemies that ſat there ſo neere vnto him, as alſo in regard of his oath which he had ſolemnely ſworne, That for the trecherie of *Muſtapha* he would neuer commit himſelfe into the hands of a Turke: and therefore beſought him to accept of the gifts that were ſent him, and withall, a mind and heart moſt readie to ſerue and obey the king in all occaſions; and that he would hold him excuſed, for that his excuſes were both iuſt and reaſonable. Wherunto the Turke replied, That although ſhe had found ſo foule a fault in *Muſtapha*, who vnder the aſſurance of his promiſe and fidelitie had betraied her huſband: yet for all that ſhe ought not to feare any ſuch wicked or infamous act at his hands, who ſtood vpon his honour and the word of a ſouldior: And ſo by oath pro-
D teſting all faithfull and conſtant friendſhip towards him, in token of his ſincere meaning he caſt a white vaile about her necke, and put another vpon himſelfe, and the third he gaue her in her hands: willing her to report to her ſonne the oaths he had made, and to carrie him that vaile and bring him with her, proteſting no otherwiſe to intreat him, but as a friend and a brother. The peaceable old woman went her way accordingly, but ſhe neither could nor would go about to alter the purpoſe of her ſonne, but returned to *Ebrain* ſuch anſwer as did not greatly pleaſe him. After which time, he ſought more than euer he did before, to get the warie Druſian into his hands, or at leaſt without regard of ſhame to draw from him mo preſents and weapons. And therfore once againe he ſent the craftie *Gomeda*, to exhort him vpon the faith and promiſe giuen, to come vnto him: but for all the craft and lying ſpeeches that the trecherous meſſenger could
E cunningly vſe, he could obtaine nothing of the Druſian lord, but good words onely. Yet at laſt after much fineneſſe he preuailed ſo much, as that *Man-ogli* was contented by him to ſend another preſent to *Ebrain*, with an expreſſe condition notwithſtanding, that he ſhould cauſe *Ebrain* to depart out of thoſe quarters, and that he ſhould not himſelfe returne any more to requeſt any thing farther of him. Which he verie largely promiſed, only deſiring him to ſend a good number of arcubuſes, thereby to content the Baſſa fully: ſo he gaue him fiftie thouſand duckats more, and foure hundred and foureſcore arcubuſes, with a thouſand Goats, an hundred and fiftie Camels, an hundred and fiftie Buffes, a thouſand Oxen, and two hundred Weathers. With this rich preſent came *Gomeda* to *Ebrain*, declaring vnto him that this he had got from him, vpon promiſe that he ſhould not moleſt the Druſian any more. For which promiſe ſo made, *Ebrain*
F ſharply reproued *Gomeda*, and threatned to make him know what it was to take vpon him ſo dangerous a libertie: and for the greater deſpight both to the one and to the other, *Ebrain* would needs haue *Gomeda* himſelfe to returne againe with like meſſage to trouble the Druſian. Whereunto although he went in great feare of ſome miſchiefe by the hands of *Man-ogli*, yet was there no remedie but needs he muſt follow the command of him, in whoſe power it was to take from

Ebrain ſendeth for arcubuſes to Man-ogli.

The notable diſſimulation of Ebrain Baſſa.

him both his honour and life; and therefore on he went. But as ſoone as *Man-ogli* ſaw *Gomeda* G
(thinking as truth was, that he came againe about his wonted requeſts) hee was with the very
ſight of him ſo farre moued, as that he was euen at the point to haue throwne a dart at him, and
ſo to haue diſpatched him, had not the regard of more dangerous effects ſtaied his furie; yet ſpa-
red he not with ignominious words and deadly threats to diſburden his choller. Notwithſtan-
ding *Gomeda* could doe no leſſe but accompliſh the effect of his fraudulent requeſts, and ſo
wrought with him, that hee drew from him foure burdens more of arcubuſes, ten ſwords and
ten guilt daggers, certain ſiluer belts, ten packs of ſilke, and ſome few pence: cauſing him withall
to proteſt vnto him, neuer to ſuffer himſelfe to be perſuaded to come againe vnto him; for if he
did, he threatned to kill him, happen afterward what might of it. With exceeding ioy and tri-
umph did *Ebrain* receiue this preſent, and thinking now with himſelfe that he had gotten a ſuf- H
ficient bootie from him, hee determined to riſe with his armie, and to ſacke all the reſt of *Man-
oglies* countrie. Which he performed accordingly, and being conducted by *Emir Ebne-frec*,
burnt ANDREA the place of *Man-ogli* his reſidence, and in two daies burnt and deſtroyed nine-
teene other of his towns, with vnſpeakeable crueltie committing all things to fire and ſword. Af-
ter all this ſacking and raiſing, *Ebrain* ſent diuers meſſengers to *Man-ogli*, to trie whether hee
would yet be perſuaded to come vnto him, but nothing could moue the reſolute Druſian to
commit himſelfe into his hands, but rather encreaſed his conſtancie to auoid a moſt certaine
death. Now the great Baſſa ſtill thirſting after bloud and reuenge, vnderſtanding by a ſpie, that
Emir Ebne-frec entiſeth Man-ogli his Macademo or lieutenant to come to Ebrain.
the captaine of ANDREA (being one of the factors of *Man-ogli*) with three hundred and fiftie
ſouldiors was got vp to a certain hill, into a place of great ſecuritie, he ſent *Emir Ebne-frec* to en- I
tice him, and to tell him, That ſeeing his lord *Man-ogli* would not come and yeeld himſelfe, hee
ſhould come vnto him; which if he would doe, he would aſſuredly in deſpight of *Man-ogli*
make him a Sanzacke of ſome of thoſe places which he moſt deſired. The ambitious & vnheed-
die Macademo ſuffered himſelfe to be eaſily perſuaded, and being accompanied with his three
hundred and fiftie followers, went with the ſaid *Ebne-frec*, and came at laſt to the pauillion of
Ebrain, hauing firſt cauſed his aforeſaid men to ſtay behind in a valley two or three miles off. But
Ebrain would not ſo much as ſee the Macademo, although both in reſpect of the nimblenes of
his perſon, and alſo the fierceneſſe of his lookes he was worthie to be looked vpon: but com-
manded him to keepe in a ſeuerall place from *Serafadin*, and in the meane time deuiſed how
he might with leaſt loſſe of his own men, put to death thoſe three hundred and fiftie the Maca- K
demoes followers: which was by training them, by means of the ſaid *Ebne-frec*, into a certaine
vineyard, & ſo hauing brought them into a ſtrait, ſuddenly to ſet vpon them & kill them. Which
was accordingly performed: for being by the treacherous Emir brought into the place appoin-
ted for their ſlaughter, fearing nothing leſſe, they were ſuddenly encloſed by the Turks San-
zackes or Ianizaries, and ſlaine euery mothers ſonne. This maſſacre thus finiſhed, *Ebrain*
commaunded the Macademo to be brought before him, and without delay to be ſtripped and
flaid quicke: who being come, ſtoutly vpbraided *Ebrain* with his promiſe and his oath; and
amongſt other ſpeeches which he vttered whiles they ſtripped him, ſaid: *Cut me off my mem-
bers, and firſt putting them into the priuities of that infamous* Ebrains *wife, put them afterwards into
the mouth of himſelfe: for ſo (I trow) he will be contented and ſatisfied with my fleſh.* And to them L
that were the executioners of his painefull death, he ſaid: *It is your great good fortune indeed, that
with ſuch violence and needleſſe deformitie, yee are now able to ſpill my bloud, and to take my life from
mee: whereas none of you all had bin able, or once durſt man to man to haue drawn one drop of it from me,
no nor to haue endured my countenance. But go to, proceed in your wicked and vnſatiable deſire of my
bloud, and fulfill the cruell commaund of your Viſier: for in the end there will alſo light vpon you the iuſt
reward of this ſo villanous a fact.* With theſe and other ſuch like ſpeeches the miſerable wretch
The Macademo by the commandement of Ebrain flaine quicke.
was ſtripped, and three great flaſhes made on his backe, where they began to flea him; he in the
meane time not ceaſing to blaſpheme their religion, and to curſe their king, and their falſe pro-
phet alſo. But the barbarous ſouldiors proceeding in their cruell action, made other like gaſhes
vpon his breaſt and ſtomacke; and ſo drawing the skin downward, could not bring it to his na- M
uell before he was with the extremitie of the paine dead. After this, *Ebrain* cauſed the followers
of *Serafadin* (in number about 150) to be cruelly ſlaine, and all his countrie to be moſt miſera-
bly waſted: he himſelfe ſtill remaining in chaines.

Whileſt the fire and ſword thus raged in the Druſian countrie, *Ebrain* by ſpeedie poſts ſent

to

A to SINON, where his gallies lay at rode, commaunded, That disbarking foure thousand soldiors, they should sacke all those countries alongst the sea coast euen as far as CAESAREA in PALESTINE, sparing neither age nor sex, nor any person of condition whatsoeuer. Which his cruell commaund was presently put in execution, and three thousand soules brought away captiues, great boories made of much rich merchandise, many townes burnt, sundrie castles rased and laid euen with the ground, and to be short, all the whole countrie of *Kerfudin* and *Mancgli* laid vtterly wast and desolate.

Ebrain was now in readinesse to depart for CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was by *Amurath* expected, as well for his gold as the accomplishment of the marriage. But bethinking himselfe, that whatsoeuer hitherto he had done would be accounted either little or nothing, vnlesse
B he prouided in some sort for the quieting of those people vnder the Turkish obedience, he determined to nominat one of the three Drusian Emirs that came to him to bee VISALEM, to be Bassa of all those regions. And because Emir *Ebne-carfus* was the richest and most obedient of them all, he thought good to commit that charge vnto him, and honoured him with that dignitie; yet not without a bribe, but for the price of an hundred thousand duckats. Wherefore he apparelled him in cloth of gold, gaue him a horsemans mase, and a sword all guilt, and deliuered vnto him the kings commission, causing him withall to sweare faith and obedience to *Amurath*. And so hauing (at least to shew) set in order the affaires of those mountaines, which an hundred of the Turks great captaines had in former time vainely attempted, he returned to
C DAMASCO, where he staied twelue daies, by shamefull shifts extorting mony from diuers persons. At last hauing no more to doe in those parts, he turned himselfe towards GEZIR and BARVTO, places vnder the gouernment of *Ebne-mansur*, where he arriued with all his armie, and found the gallies which he had left in the port of SINON, now in the hauen of BARVTO as he had before commanded. Now vpon a certaine hill aboue BARVTO neere vnto the sea, *Ebrain* hath pitched his owne tent only and none other, and hauing sent all the rest of his best & goodly things which hee meant to carrie with him to CONSTANTINOPLE aboord the gallies, shrow-

Ebrain notably dissembleth with Ebne-mansur.

ded himselfe only vnder that narrow and base tent. Thither he called *Ebne-Mansur*, and in pleasant maner told him, That now it was time for him to make payment of the debt of an hun-
D dred and threescore thousand duckats, which he ought the king his lord for the custome of TRIPOLI and BARVTO: for that he could not longer stay in those those quarters, but was to returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, which he knew not how to do vnlesse he carried with him the discharge of that debt. Whereunto *Ebne-mansur* made answere, That it would not bse long before his Macademoes would come with his monies, and that then he would without farther delay make payment. Which thing *Ebrain* well knew to be but an excuse, and therefore determined with himselfe to thurst him into the gallies; and because he could not carrie the mony vnto the king, yet at the least to bring him his debtor. But for as much as he doubted to put this his determination openly in execution, for feare of some insurrection amongst the people, as well for that he was within the territories of the said *Ebne-mansur*, as for that he saw him greatly beloued and fauoured of the other two Drusian lords, *Ebne-free* and *Ebne-carfus*: he therfore thought it bet-
E ter policie by concealing this his purpose, to shew him in his outward actions all good countenance, and by secret and subtile meanes to take him prisoner. Whereupon he deceifully told him, That for as much as he was to stay there for his businesse that night, and was resolued the next day to make a road into the countrie of *Mancgli*, he therefore prayed him to doe him the fauour to be his guide: and for that purpose, when he should send for him at midnight, that he would come vnto him verie secretly, because he was minded to depart without any stirre, onely with fiue hundred men in his companie. The Drusian lord verily beleeued the matter that so it was, and withall was in good hope by that means to find some way to escape his hands. Wher-

Ebne-mansur in chaines sent the the gallies.

upon being called vp at midnight, he readily went to the tent of *Ebrain*, who presently charging him (whom all men thought he had especially affected) with many abhominable and foule
F tearmes, caused a chaine to be cast about his necke, and his armes, and so fast bound to be caried into the gallies. And yet not so contented, tooke the spoile of all his countrey, whereby there was leuied such a prey as was maruellous to behold: for besides mony (wherof there was a very huge summe) the store of cloths of silke and gold was such & so great, as might better beseeme some great prince, than such a mountaine rusticall lord as he was. When the Bassa had conueied all this into his gallies he sailed to TRIPOLI, where he found *Serafaden* in the custodie of

Pelo Bassa and Aly Bassa: and hauing staied there some few daies, wherein hee committed sundrie villanous and abhominable robberies, he caused the said Serasadin to be put into the gallies, with all his silkes and other wealth, and so departed for CONSTANTINOPLE: where at such time as he entred into the channell of the citie, accompanied with foure and twentie gallies, hee was encountred and receiued by a wonderfull number of his friends and fauourits, and saluted with an honourable peale of artillerie out of the Seraglio. *Iohn Thomas Minadoi* the best reporter of this historie, as also of the late warres betwixt the Turkes and the Persians, being then at CONSTANTINOPLE, and hauing (as he reporteth of himselfe) good means to see the bountifull and beautifull presents which the spoiling and rauenous Bassa gaue the Turkish king, reporteth the summe thereof to haue beene a million of gold, besides the yearely reuenue of CAIRA amounting to six hundred thousand duckats, with threescore horses most richly garnished, of singular beautie, but especially of the Arabian race, a liue Elephant, & a liue Giraffle (which is a beast like a Cammell and a Panther) two great Crocodiles dead, a chaire of massie gold richly set with pretious stones, a casket also beset with pretious stones & gold, many packs of most fine clothes, woollen and silkes, certaine other cloths with fringe of gold & siluer and the Barbarian embroderie, most fine linnen of ALEXANDRIA, and all the arcubuses taken from the Drusians: besides sundrie rich presents giuen by the prowd Bassa to the great laides of the court, reported by *Leunclauius* to haue bin worth two hundred thousand Sultanines.

The rich presents giuen to Amurath to Ebrain.

Io. Leuncl. sup. Annal. Turcicorum, pag. 95.

But now for as much as we haue before made mention of the Sanzacke of IERVSALEM, and his flight, it shall not be altogither impertinent to our historie (though somewhat out of time) in few words to declare what passed between him and the Arabians of PALESTINE, a little before the comming of *Ebrain* the great Bassa into those quarters: by which little, the desirous Reader may easily perceiue the wofull and troublesome state of that sometime most blessed and fruitfull but now most miserable and barren land of IVRIE, and of those places in holie Writ so much renowned.

The land of Iurie much troubled with the Arabian theeues and robbers.

In the confines of SODOME, and in the places that lie not only between the lake ASPHALTITES and DAMASCO, but also in the plaines and in the vallies of IERICHO, and of SAMARIA, and in other places about BETHLEHEM, EMAVS, BETHANIE, BETHFAGE, CAPHARNAVM, NAZARETH, LEVIR, BETHSAIDA, NAPLOS, and other townes of name thereabouts, there doe haunt and liue certaine Arabian captaines; who spreading themselues euen as far as RAMA and IOPPA, ouerrun at their pleasure all the countries there round about, and continually commit grieuous outrages as well against the said cities as also vpon the goods and wealth not only of the inhabitants there, but also of strangers: yea and their insolencie oftentimes groweth so great, that they dare to assault the fenced cities, beside the spoiling of trauellers, that by reason of their businesse haue occasion to passe from one citie to another. They are good horsemen, but vse no armour: their horses are very swift to run, and spare of diet, and are themselues bold and aduenturous theeues. These Arabians hauing had intelligence, that the aforesaid ambitious youth, appointed Sanzacke of IERVSALEM, was in mind to raise all the Sanzackes thereabout; and ioyning himselfe with them, and his father the Bassa of DAMASCO, to restraine their insolent libertie, and to worke their destruction; resolued with themselues not to stay vntill he and his confederats were readie, but rather by sundrie inuasions vpon him, euen vnto the gates of IERVSALEM, to prouoke him to come out into the field. And the rather to induce him so to do, they compacted with a certaine Subbassi of BETHLEHEM, their friend, to encourage and animate the Sanzacke thereunto, by promising vnto him good successe and prosperous euents. The ambitious young man, seduced with the glorious persuasions of the false Subbassi, of whom he made good reckoning, and prouoked by their insolencies, resolued (as they had wished) to issue out of the citie into the open field: and thereupon hauing armed an hundred of his vassals, and raised all the horsemen that were vnder his gouernment, to the number of six hundred, he made a rode towards IERICHO, sending before defiance vnto them: against whom the Arabians came accordingly, and with their arrowes and Indian canes ouerwhelmed his arcubuses, as if it had bin a raging floud, wrought him great wo: when in the very nicke the battel yet being at the hoatest, the traiterous Subbassi fled towards BETHLEHEM, and left the souldiors of IERVSALEM in the hands of the Arabians, who put most part of them to the edge of the sword, and scarcely gaue libertie to the Sanzacke to saue himself by flight. The Sanzack certainly informed oft his fraud of the dissembling Subbassi, to bee reuenged vpon him, began also in like manner to dissemble

with

A with him, faigning that he would once more trie his forces againſt the ſame Arabians; and ſo vſed the matter, that the Subbaſſi arming himſelfe, came vnto him, without any ſuſpition of the miſchiefe intended againſt him. But as ſoone as he was come, the Sanzacke tooke him aliue, and preſently cauſed him in moſt cruell manner to be ſlaine quicke. *The ſubbaſſi of Bethlehem ſlaine quicke.*

Thus hauing paſſed ouer the troubles that ſtaied the people of Æ GYPT and DAMASCO and the countries thereabouts, from reſorting to *Oſman* the Turks great Generall at ERZIRVM: let vs againe returne thither where we left him, taking a view of the preparations againſt the Perſian; and proſecute thoſe affaires, which of all others moſt exerciſed the forces of the two mightieſt Mahometane Monarchs, and with the expectation thereof filled the world from the Eaſt to the Weſt.

B The ſtraight commaundement from *Amurath*, together with the fame and reputation of *Oſman* the Generall, had drawne together ſuch a world of people of all ſorts to ERZIRVM, as that it ſeemed not the power of one king alone, but rather the vnited forces of many kings. Wherefore *Oſman* perceiuing that he had gathered together too great a number of people and too huge an armie, and that it might ſo fall out that he might want victuall for ſo great a multitude; neither ſo greatly fearing his enemies forces, as that he needed to lead ſo populous an armie againſt them; determined to diſcharge a great number of ſuch as he thought moſt weake, and leaſt able to endure trauell: ſo that out of this great multitude hee drew out about fortie thouſand perſons, who liberally according to euery mans abilitie redeeming the ordinarie perils of the warres, returned home to their owne dwellings. And ſo in *Oſmans* armie remained the
C number of an hundred and foureſcore thouſand perſons or thereabouts. With this multitude the Generall departed from ERZIRVM (about the eleuenth of Auguſt this yeare 1585) towards TAVRIS, continuing for all that the ſpeech for NASSIVAN. But he had ſcarce marched two dayes, when diuers ſouldiors of GRÆCIA and CONSTANTINOPLE preſented themſelues before him, vpbraiding him with great improuidencie, and telling him that they began alreadie to feele the want of victuall, by wanting the ſame day their ordinarie allowance of corne for their horſes: ſo that if in the beginning, and as it were in the enterance of ſo long a iourney they felt ſuch want, they could not tell with what iudgement or diſcretion he meant to lead ſo great a companie ſo farre as NASSIVAN, nor by what cunning conceit he had preſumed to ſuſtaine ſo great an armie in the ſeruice of their lord. *Oſman* quietly heard their complaints, and pre-
D ſently prouided for them, by cauſing ſuch ſtore of barley to be deſtributed among them, as they deſired; and ſeuerely puniſhed the officers that had the charge for the allowance of corne, who moſt couetouſly began to make marchandiſe of the cõmon prouiſion, by conuerting it to their own priuat vſes. And hauing thus quieted their troubled minds, he proceeded on his iourney, and by the way of HASSAN CHALASSI and of CHARS arriued vpon the Calderan plaines, famous for the memorable battels there fought betweene *Selymus* and *Hyſmaell*. In theſe plaines he tooke a generall review of his armie, wherein there wanted a number, that by reaſon of ſickneſſe being not able to continue the iourney were enforced to ſtay behind, ſome in one place, ſome in another. Remouing thence, he tooke the way not to NASSIVAN, as he had ſtill hitherto giuen it out he would, but now directly to TAVRIS. Which ſo ſudden an alteration of the iour-
E ney, as ſoone as the ſouldiours of GREECE and CONSTANTINOPLE heard, they fell into a great rage, and comming againe before the Generall, reuelled with him in this ſort to his face. *The number of Oſmans armie.*

And what are wee thou villaine, thou Turke, thou dolt, whom thou handleſt in this ſort? Wee are neither oxen nor ſheepe of the mountaines, for the leading of whom thou thinkeſt thou art come out: neither can wee brooke theſe thy lies and deceits. If thou haſt publickly profeſſed to lead vs to NASSIVAN, *and by that ſpeech haſt trained vs from the furtheſt bounds of* GRÆCIA, *to what end now after thou haſt wearied vs ſo much, doeſt thou deceiue vs with ſuch vanities, and prolong our iourney, and ſet before vs ſuch ſtrange and important dangers as our minds neuer once thought on? But if this was thy firſt purpoſe and intent, and that now not fooliſhly or by chaunce, but vpon premeditation and good aduice thou changeſt thine opinion, why diddeſt thou diſmiſſe ſo many ſouldiours, as might haue*
F *made the armie more terrible and ſtronger for the enterpriſe of* TAVRIS? *Doeſt thou thinke that by ſuffering others to redeeme their liberties, and ſo to increaſe thy riches, thou ſhalt ſet our liues to ſale, and to make vs ſlaues to the Perſians?* *The moſt inſolent ſpeech of the ſouldiers of Conſtantinople and Greece vnto Oſman their Generall.*

At theſe arrogant ſpeeches the Generall was exceedingly troubled; ſeeing his good meaning, and the earneſt deſire he had to aduance the maieſtie and glorie of his king, taken in ſo euill part, and *Oſman wiſely appeaſeth his mutenous ſouldiers.*

and thoſe his beſt ſouldiours ſo highly offended. And although he could indeed haue readily G
vſed the ſharpeſt and hardeſt prouiſions and remedies for it, that in ſuch occaſions are ordina-
rily applied: yet vpon good aduice he forbare ſo to doe, and in ſtead of rigour and puniſhment
reſolued to worke by more eaſie meanes. Whereupon cauſing many of the captaines and chiefe
men amongſt thoſe ſeditious ſouldiors to come before him, he firſt perſuaded them: *That the
former ſpeech for* NASSIVAN *was not raiſed at all by him, nor that he was minded at that time to
goe for* TAVRIS: *but all that was done, he had done to fulfill the commaundement of the Sultan,
who had charged him ſo to doe, to the end to leſſen the Perſian preparations; which they would vn-
doubtedly haue made farre greater, if the ſpeech had beene giuen out at the firſt for* TAVRIS. *Which
his princely care of their ſafetie they for their parts ought willingly to further, for that in ſo doing
they ſhould ſtill preſerue that great opinion, which both the king and the world had conceiued of their* H
*valour and fidelitie. Neither needed they to feare, that the ſouldiors which were diſmiſſed might
weaken the armie, for that they themſelues were not onely ſufficient to pierce into* TAVRIS, *and to
open the way vpon the enemies, but to daunt them euen with their lookes: and that thoſe which were
diſcharged, had but purged the hoaſt of all cowardiſe, and left nothing in it but vertue and courage.*
By this mild anſwere of the Generall the tumultuous ſouldiours were ſufficiently pacified, but
much better apayed and contented they were, as ſoone as he put his hand to the common purſe,
and beſtowed among them all a ſmall quantitie of monies: for by this his kind vſage all their
ſtomacks were ouercome, and they themſelues became ſo willing and ſo couragious, that now
they durſt venture not to TAVRIS only, but to CASBIN, yea euen to the furtheſt parts of all
the Perſian kingdome. I

Theſe important outrages thus appeaſed, the Generall turned himſelfe with all his armie to-
wards COY, a citie ſituat beyond VAN, in the middeſt betweene TAVRIS and the Martian
Meere, where he refreſhed his armie with all things he could deſire. From COY he paſſed to MA-
RANT, a citie ſubiect to the Perſians, plentifull alſo of all things needfull for man or beaſt. From
thence he leaned downe towards SOFFIAN, a fruitfull place, ſubiect alſo to the Perſians; from
whence he began to diſcouer TAVRIS. Great was the ioy of the whole campe, and now the
The Turks re-ioice vpon the diſcouerie of Tauris. mutinous ſouldiors of GREECE and CONSTANTINOPLE could highly commend the aduice
of the Generall, or rather of *Amurath* himſelfe, in giuing out the rumour of NASSIVAN for
TAVRIS, as the onely meanes whereby they were in quiet come ſo farre, the Perſians being
wholly occupied (as they ſuppoſed) about NASSIVAN: inſomuch that euery man being waxen K
couragious, & repleniſhed with ioy, without any feare at all began prowdly to plot vnto them-
ſelues nothing but ſackings, pillings, taking of priſoners, rauiſhments, robberies, and all thoſe in-
ſolent & outragious actions that vſe raſhly to proceed from the greedie affections of thoſe bar-
barous victors; eſpecially they of the vauward, who being deſirous of bootie, and to diſcouer
the enemies countrey, deſcended downe toward certaine pleaſant gardens full of all ſorts of
trees, ſprings, & fruits: where hauing ſatisfied their appetites, they withdrew themſelues to a cer-
tain little riuer neere to a bridge called *The Bridge of ſalt water*, and there ſtayed at pleaſure atten-
The Perſian prince ouerrun-neth the vau-ward of the Turkes armie. ding the comming of the armie. But euen whiles they were thus enioying the water, the fruits,
the ſhade, the greene graſſe, and other delights of the place, the Perſian prince *Emir Hamze*, king
Mahamets eldeſt ſonne, who with ten thouſand good ſouldiors had cloſely couched himſelfe, L
watching ſtil when ſome of the enemies bands ſhould come downe to thoſe reſting places, ſud-
denly ſet vpon them with ſuch ſpeed, courage, and furie, that as if it had beene a lightening and
in a manner without any reſiſtance he ouerran all thoſe Turks, and diſperſed them, putting to
the ſword about ſeuen thouſand of them. And ſo leading away with him many priſoners, hor-
ſes, ſlaues, with ſundrie enſignes and Turkiſh drums, he withdrew himſelfe backe towards his
blind father, who lay then encamped about 12. miles from TAVRIS with fiftie thouſand ſouldiors
or thereabouts; *Aliculi Chan* Gouernour of TAVRIS being left in the citie with foure thouſand
ſouldiors onely. A greater armie than this, not exceeding the number of threeſcore and foure
thouſand men, was not the Perſian king able to leuie; the principall occaſion whereof was the
death of *Emir Chan*, for which the Turcoman nation being waxen rebellious and diſobedient, M
would not by any meanes be brought to defend that citie, whereof *Aliculi Chan* their capitall
enemie was now Gouernour: and from GHEILAN and HERI there came not ſo much as one
ſouldior to relieue the neceſſities of PERSIA. So that with theſe ſmall forces in compariſon of
the enemies, the Perſian king had no ſtomacke to meet the Turkiſh armie in plaine battell, but

ſought

A ſought how he might with as little loſſe to himſelfe as poſſibly he could, make triall of his forces, and by all politike meanes to weaken and annoy his ſtrong enemie.

Oſman vnderſtanding of this diſcomfiture of his vauward, forthwith diſpatched *Sinan Baſſa*, the ſonne of *Cicala*, and *Mahamet* the Baſſa of CARAEMIT, with fourteene thouſand ſouldiors to purſue the victorious prince: who in their purſuit vſed ſuch expedition, that at length they ouertooke him in the way towards his fathers campe. But as ſoone as the prince ſaw the Turkes ſo neere him, that without a ſhamefull and dangerous flight he could not auoid the battell, couragiouſly he turned his face, and ioyned with them a moſt bloudie conflict: which being begun two houres before night, was moſt fiercely maintained, vntill that the darkneſſe of the night bereauing them of the vſe of their weapons, enforced both the one ſide and the other to retire.

Oſman ſendeth two Baſſaes with 14000. ſouldiors to ouertake the Perſian prince.

B Which was done with the notable loſſe of the Turkes, who in this ſecond conflict (as it was commonly reported) loſt ſix thouſand men: and had (as it was thought) ſuffered a generall ſlaughter, had not the night interrupted ſo vncouth an action, well worthie of a thouſand daylights. So that hitherto the Turkes ſuſtained the loſſe of more than ten thouſand ſouldiors, and yet had ſcarce diſcouered or ſeene the citie which they ſo greedily longed after.

The next morning the Turkes campe remoued and came within two miles of TAVRIS, where they encamped. But whileſt they were ſetting vp their tents, *Aliculi Chan* iſſuing out of the citie with all his garriſon, and ſuch of the citiſens as were fit to beare armes, ſet vpon the face of the vauward being now renewed, and with many cunning turnings and windings ſo charged them, that with great loſſe he forced them to retire euen vnto the maine battell: where after hee

C had eſpied the great artillerie, he without hurt withdrew himſelfe againe to the citie. The confuſion of the Turks in this skirmiſh was notable, for in a verie ſmall time the vauward was diſordered, and almoſt three thouſand ſlaine. But *Aliculi* not ſo contented, in the ſhutting in of the euening ſallied out of the citie the ſecond time, and ſwiftly running along that ſide of the army that lay towards TAVRVS, ſlew the Baſſa of MARAS, and did great hurt in that quarter: which done, without any ſtay he fled to the kings campe, and forſooke the defence of that ſorrowfull citie which he could not hold. Neuertheleſſe the Tauriſians (as many of them as remained in the citie) gathered themſelues together to the gates of the citie, well armed, prepared to make a bloudie entrance for the Turkes whenſoeuer they ſhould come. All the night was ſpent in watching without reſt on either ſide, and yet nothing attempted: but vpon the breake of the day, a

D great multitude of the ſeruile ſort of the Turkes, and of the common raſcall rout, without any order from their captaines, armed with corſelets, ſpeares, and ſwords, went to the city with reſolution to haue ſacked it, and ſo to haue enriched themſelues with the ſpoile and pillage of that wealthie citie. But when they came to the guarded gates of the citie, they found there contrary to their expectation, a terrible reſcue, and were enforced there to ioyne an hard and mortall battell; ſo that the wals, the entrance, yea all the ground thereabours was bathed with bloud, and as it were couered with weapons and dead carkaſes. And yet for all that, though the Perſians ſtood faſt and firme at the arriuall of this ſeruile rout; at the laſt they were conſtrained to yeeld the entrance, being ouercome by the multitude of them that out of the campe flowed in vpon them like a floud; and retiring into the citie, now aſtonied and amazed on euerie ſide, they fortified

A great ſlaughter in the gates of Tauris.

E themſelues in their houſes vnder the ground, and in the corners and winding turnings of the ſtreets: from whence with their arrowes and ſome few arcubuſes, they did the Turks that entred great harme. Yet were they not able to kill and deſtroy ſo many of their enemies, but that at the laſt they were too mightie for them, and wrought many grieuous miſchiefes in that wofull citie. And ſo a great number of this raſcall people that remained aliue, returned to the Turkiſh camp, carrying away with them too manifeſt tokens of the poore oppreſſed citie: wherein the miſerable women and impotent ſoules ſtood embracing and ſtraining the doores and poaſts of their houſes, and kiſſing their natiue ſoile, with prayers, mournings, and complaints, bewailing their preſent miſerie, and yet fearing worſe to come. *Oſman* the Turks Generall now made acquainted with theſe calamities, cauſed proclamation to be publiſhed, That no man ſhould be ſo har-

F dy as to moleſt the Tauriſians, and in the meane time went himſelfe about the citie, viewing throughly the ſituation of it, and ſurueying the place wherein he might both encampe himſelfe ſafely, and with better foundation and greater ſecuritie erect a caſtle or fort, for the more aſſurance of that conquered countrey.

The citie of TAVRIS is ſeated at the foot of the hill ORONTES, about eight daies iourney from

The deſcription of Tauris.

from the Caſpian ſea, and is ſubiect to winds, cold, and ſnow: yet of a verie wholeſome ayre, G
abounding with all things neceſſarie for mans life: and wonderfull rich, with perpetuall con-
courſe of merchandiſe brought thither out of the Eaſt, to be conuayed vnto the Weſt; and alſo
of others brought out of theſe Weſterne parts, to bee diſperſed into the Eaſt. It is verie popu-
lous, ſo that it feedeth almoſt two hundred thouſand perſons: but yet open to the fury of euery
armie, without wals, and vnfortified. The buildings (after the manner of thoſe of the Eaſt) are
of burnt clay, and rather low than high. For all things it carrieth the name, and was the place of
the Perſian kings reſidence, vntill ſuch time as that the late king *Tamas* remoued his ſeat from
thence farther into his kingdome to CASBIN: neuertheleſſe both before and ſince, although it
had been ſundrie times moleſted by the inrodes and furie of the Turkiſh emperors, yet was it ſtil
in great eſtimation and renowne. H

Of this citie *Oſman Baſſa* hauing taken diligent view, cauſed his tents to be pitched on the
South ſide thereof, where was a ſpatious garden all flouriſhing and beautifull, repleniſhed with
ſundrie kind of trees and ſweet ſmelling plants, and a thouſand fountaines and brooks deriued
from a pretie riuer, which with his pleaſant ſtreame diuided the garden from the citie of TAV-
RIS: and was of ſo great beautie, that for the delicacie thereof, it was by the country inhabitants
called *Sechis Genet* (that is to ſay) the eight Paradiſes: and was in times paſt the ſtanding houſe of
their kings, while they kept their reſidence in this citie, and after they had withdrawne their ſeat
from thence to CASBIN, became the habitation and place of abroad for the Gouernors of TAV-
RIS. Of theſe gardens and places *Oſman* made choiſe to build his caſtle in; whereof he gaue the
modell himſelf, and commaunded that all the whole circuit of thoſe pleaſant greenes ſhould be I
enuironed with wals, & trenches digged round about them to conuay the water from the fore-
ſaid riuer. Which was accordingly begun with the greateſt care that poſſibly might bee: the
foundation of the embatteled wals laid, the ditches digged fourteen foot broad, & a mans height
in depth; and in the ſpace of ſixe and thirtie daies the whole worke finiſhed and brought to an
end: great ſtore of artillerie mounted vpon the walles, and diuers bathes, lodgings, and ſuch
other houſes neceſſarie for the Turkiſh vſes built within the caſtle, The firſt day of this buil-
ding *Oſman* fell ſicke of a feauer with a bloudie flix, which happilie was the cauſe both of
the ſlowneſſe of the building, and of manie other loſſes that afterwards happened, as ſhall
be hereafter declared.

The caſtle of Tauris built in 36. daies.

Eight Ianizaries with certaine Spagolans found ſtrangled in a bath at Tauris.

Fiue daies after the building of the caſtle was begun, newes was brought into the Turkiſh K
camp, That eight Ianizaries and diuers Spaoglans were ſeene ſtrangled in a bath within the city
of TAVRIS. Whereupon the Zaini, Spahini, and Ianizaries came preſently vnto the Generall,
declaring vnto him, That although he had with too much clemencie giuen order, that no man
ſhould hurt or moleſt the Tauriſians, and that according to his pleaſure euery man had vſed mo-
deſtie towards them and obedience to him: yet the Tauriſians themſelues had moſt audatiouſly
ſtrangled in one of their baines eight Ianizaries, and certaine Spaoglans, which iniurie and inſo-
lencie (they ſaid) in their iudgement was not to be ſuffered. This outrage ſo moued the Generall,
that without any farther delay hee commanded the citie to bee ſacked, leauing it wholly to the
pleaſure of his ſouldiors: who forthwith ſo vſed the matter, not as if they would haue reuen-
ged an iniurie, but rather at once haue brought an vtter deſtruction vpon the whole citie. Eue- L

The miſerie of the Tauriſians.

rie place was filled with ſlaughter, rauiſhment, rapine and murther; virgines were deflowred,
men-children defiled with horrible and vnſpeakable ſins; younglings ſnatched out of their pa-
rents armes, houſes laid euen with the ground and burnt, riches and money carried away; and
in briefe, all things ruinated and waſted. Neither were theſe miſchiefes committed once onely,
but the ſecond followed worſe than the firſt, and the third vpon that worſe than the ſecond: ſo
that it was a miſerie almoſt inexplicable, to behold that citie ſo populous, ſo rich, ſometimes the
court and pallace of the Perſian kings, and honour of that empire, now ſubiect to the furie of the
Turkes, plunged in calamitie and vtter deſtruction.

The wofull aduertiſement hereof ſore troubled the Perſian king, but the young prince his
ſonne much more; who moued with the paſſions of moſt inward griefe, diſdaine, and diſpaire, M
and deſiring nothing more then reuenge, reſolued to attempt any thing whereby to requite ſo
great a wrong. In which reſolution hauing confirmed his armie, he commaunded fiue hundred
of his horſemen to preſent themſelues euen to the verie ſight of their enemies tents, and as it
were to dare them to battel: which thing they performed accordingly, and made a gallant ſhow

of

A of themſelues. At the diſcouerie whereof, the Turkes imagining that the Perſians were come in great number to aſſaile the armie, order was giuen by the ſicke Generall, that *Cicala Baſſa*, and *Mahamet* the Baſſa of CARABMIT, with the people of GRÆCIA, and all their owne forces ſhould goe to encounter the enemie: who preſently with their enſignes diſplaied vnder which there ſtood about foure and thirtie thouſand ſtrong, beſides a number of ſeruile people, yet men exerciſed in labours and perils, in all well neere fortie thouſand, ſet forward. Now the fiue hundred Perſians, with a maruellous cunning kind of skirmiſhing dallied with the Turkiſh ſouldiors, and drew them forward for the ſpace of eight miles and more: and being brought ſo far on, and now forwearied with the skirmiſh, were luſtily aſſailed by the Perſian prince, who with part of his army (to the number of about twenty thouſand perſons) courageouſly ſet vpon the two
B Baſſaes, and ioyned with them the deadlieſt and cruelleſt battell that euer was written of. Wherein the Perſians hauing giuen a moſt perilous onſet, and done great harme, it was thought that they would haue contented themſelues with ſo luckie an encounter, and ſo retired: which the Turks minding to preſent, and not to returne without a notable victorie, hardly preſſed vpon them, hoping in the end to put them to flight, and ſo to giue them a bloudy and deadly ouerthrow. But the Perſians hauing quietly and with great aſſurance for a reaſonable ſpace endured their charge, at laſt as if they had bin freſh men, made head vpon them afreſh, and began a moſt terrible battell anew: wherein the Baſſa of CARAMMIT (aboue named) was put to flight, and being wholly diſmaied and diſcomfited, fled backe againe to the campe, carrying with him the moſt manifeſt tokens of the vnhappie iſſue of the battell. *Cicala* the other Baſſa notwithſtanding
C valiantly and with great cunning ſtill ſuſtained the furie of the Perſians, labouring by al meanes to encourage his ſouldiours, and to haue reſtored the battell: but when hee had done what hee could, ouercome at laſt by greater valour, he was enforced to betake himſelfe to flight alſo; and ſo altogether diſcomfited, came to the campe without any enſigne, hauing left behind him 8000 of his ſouldiors dead vpon the ground. *Eight thouſand Turkes ſlaine.*

The Perſian prince encouraged with this ſo fortunat a victorie, by ſpeedy heraulds ſent to the ſicke Viſier (whom he thought notwithſtanding to haue been in health) and gaue him to vnderſtand, that if he were willing to fight he was readie for him, and in what ſort ſoeuer it pleaſed him to accept of battell, to make him good account of his valour; and to cauſe him to know, not only that *Amurath* his maſter had moſt vniuſtly raiſed this warre, but alſo that it had been good
D for himſelfe not to haue taken the ſame in hand. Of this offer *Oſman* accepted, but being not able himſelfe to goe and anſwere the prince in perſon hand to hand, by reaſon of his ſickneſſe which euerie houre mortally encreaſed, hee ſent out all his captaines with his armie to dare him battell.

The prince lay ten miles, or therabouts diſtant from the campe of *Oſman*, towards whom the Turkes ſet forward in this manner: The maine battell was guided by the Baſſa of CARAEMIT and *Sinan Cicala*, with all the ſouldiors of ASSIRIA and BABYLON: the left wing was led by the Baſſa of NATOLIA, with the band of GRÆCIA; and the right wing was conducted by *Amurath Baſſa* of CARAMANIA, with the people of SORIA, to the number of threeſcore thouſand: beſide ſuch as were left behind at TAVRIS, with the truſty guard of the Ianizaries, and the
E artillery, for the ſafegard of the ſicke Viſier. In this order they confronted the Perſian pince, who was himſelfe in the middeſt of his armie. with all his people in verie good order: hauing on the one ſide the ſouldiors of PERSIA and HIRCANIA, and on the other them of PARTHIA and ATROPATIA, in all to the number of fortie thouſand. The Turkes feared nothing more, than that the Perſians fetching a great compaſſe about, ſhould with all celeritie and furie ſet vpon their tents, and the riches they had laied vp together in their pauillions: and therefore at euery motion of theirs, they continually feared this ſudden outroad; whereof they had ſuch eſpeciall care, that retiring themſelues as much as they might, and faigning as if they had giuen place to the Perſians, it wanted not much but that they had brought them euen within the iuſt leuell and marke of the artillerie. Which the Perſians perceiuing, without any further dallying hard-
F ly began to aſſaile the maine bodie of the battell. The prince himſelfe being entred amongſt the ſouldiors of the Baſſa of CARABMIT (who as Generall ſuſtained the place of *Oſman*) and preſſing into the middeſt of the battell, diſpatched euerie man that came in his way; and hauing ſingled out the Baſſa from the reſt, ſmote off his head, and gaue it to one of his followers to carrie vpon the top of his launce. Which being openly deſcried, brought a great terrour vpon the Turkes, *The Baſſa of Caraemit ſlaine by the Perſian prince, and his head cut off.*

Turkes, and exceedingly encouraged the Persians; who embrued with the bloud of their ene- G
mies, and intermingling themselues more and more among them, made of them a most confu-
sed and generall slaughter: wherein beside the Bassa before named, there died also the Bassa of
TRABSZONDA, the Sanzacke of BRVSIA, with fiue other Sanzackes, and as it was commonly re-
ported twentie thousand Turkes moe. It fell also to the lot of *Amurath Bassa* of CARAMANIA to
be there taken prisoner, with diuers other common souldiours. But night comming now on,
and the Persians being come somewhat too nigh the Turkish artillerie, they gaue ouer the fight,
and withdrew themselues backe to the place where the king lay encamped with the rest of his
armie.

But now were diuers dayes spent, wherein the new fortresse at TAVRIS (as we haue before
said) was fully finished, when the souldiers of GRÆCIA and CONSTANTINOPLE wearied to H
see their friends and fellowes thus slaine before their faces, and hauing also safely layed vp in
their owne custodie such preyes and booties as they had gotten in the sacke of the city, resolued
with themselues to procure their owne departure, and so much the rather, for that the winter was
now fast comming on. And for as much as the Generall was through the immoderate flux of
bloud brought weake, and in despaire of life, and quite abandoned of all hope by his phisitions,
and therefore not to be spoke withall; they were faine by the mouth of such as were their trustie
friends about him, to represent vnto him the necessitie of their returne, and withall after many
reuerent entreaties caused it also to be signified vnto him, That if he stood obstinate, and would
needs stay dallying out the time in those dangerous places where no such need was, they should
be enforced to withdraw themselues, and to forsake him. *Osman*, who had now nothing else to I
doe in those countries, but onely to leaue some conuenient garrison in the new fortresse at TAV-
RIS, liberally promised to satisfie their requests, by departing thence the next morning. So cal-
ling vnto him *Giaffer* the Eunuch Bassa of TRIPOLIS, a man of a crafty and cruell nature, made
him gouernor and keeper of the new built fortresse at TAVRIS. And the more to encourage him
to take that charge vpon him, he gaue him freely for the space of three whole yeares not onelie
the office and authoritie, but also the rents and reuenewes of the Bassa of CARAMIT, lately slaine
by the Persian prince, and withall honoured him with the title of a Bassa of the Court: so that
hauing finished his three yeares office of CARAEMIT, he was then to goe and sit among the soue-
raigne seates of the Bassaes of the Porta. The Bassa seeing so faire and so high a way for him to K
mount to those high honours (greater than which there is none in the Turkish empire) readily
accepted the offer, and dispatching his lieutenant for CARAEMIT to the gouernment of those
countries in his absence, with an hundred of his owne followers; setled himselfe in the said fort
with a garrison of twelue thousand souldiors, furnished with all necessarie prouision vntill the
next spring. The General hauing thus set all things in order, and carefully prouided for the safe-
tie of the fortresse, departed according to his promise, and the same morning, which was the
fourescore and seuenth day after his departure from ERZIRVM, came to a place called SANCAZAN
seuen miles distant from TAVRIS.

Giaffer Bassa of Tripolis an Eunuch made Gouernor of Tauris

Osman the Generall departeth from Tauris, and commeth to Sancazan.

The Turkes were now vpon the point of their encamping in a confused disorder and hurly-
burly, when those that were hindermost in the armie heard the neighing of horses, and the noise
of drums and trumpets, as if it had beene the comming of an armie. Which when the whole L
campe vnderstood, they ran all headlong, and disordered as they were to the rescue, on that side
where the noise of the horses and warlike instruments was heard. But whilest the Turkes were
thus intentiuely busied on that side to expect the comming of the enemie, the Persian prince
without any signe or token of battell, with eight and twentie thousand horsemen was readie vp-
on them on the other side: who hauing discouered the cammels and other carriages whereupon
their bootie, their spoiles, and their riches were laden, which they had taken in TAVRIS, beside
much of their prouision for victuals for the sustenance of the armie, he turned vpon them, and
with a prouident and safe conuoy had taken for a prey eighteene thousand of the cammels and
mules, well loden with the same booties and victuals; which the prince sent presently away M
with six thousand of his souldiors, and hee himselfe with his two and twentie thousand Persians
entred into the Turkes armie, who now to withstand his assault, had on that side also made head
against him. A gallant thing it was, and terrible withall, to see what a mortall battell was made,
what singular prowesse shewed euen presently in the forefront of the battel; for in a mom̃et you
might haue seene the tents and pauillions turned vpside downe, and their encamping lodgings

The battell of Sancazan.

reple-

A repleniſhed with dead carkaſſes and bloud, victorious death raunging and raigning in euery corner. The Turkes themſelues were aſtoniſhed and maruelled to ſee their enemies (ſo few in number, and intermingled among ſo populous an army of warlike people) more like fatall miniſters of death, than mortall men, to brandiſh their ſwords ouer them, as if it had lightened, and to make ſo generall a ſlaughter; and doe to this day with great admiration recount the valour and proweſſe of the Perſians. But they all now doubting leaſt the enemie in this furie ſhould forcibly haue entred the very lodgings of the ſicke Viſier, it was commaunded not by himſelfe (for he lay now at the laſt gaſpe) but by him who at that time commaunded in his name, That without delay the artillerie ſhould be vnbarred, and diſcharged: which in that medley and confuſion of both armies, without any exception or diſtinction of perſons, ouerthrew both friends and
B foes, and did perhaps more harme among the Turkes themſelues than among the Perſians: for at the firſt thundering noiſe thereof the prince with all ſpeed retired, after whom preſently followed all the reſt; ſo that the Turkes which remained behind were more annoyed with the deadly ſhot than were the Perſians, who flying away could not feele the dammage, but that the Turkes muſt firſt be well payed for their labour. The Turkes purſuing the flying Perſians, made ſhew as if they would gladly haue ouertaken them: but night comming on, they feared to proceed any further than they might without danger returne. In this battell of SANCAZAN were ſlaine twentie thouſand Turks, without any notable loſſe of the Perſians.

Twentie thouſand Turkes ſlaine.

Among the reſt in the ſame place died the Viſier *Oſman*, General of the late dreadful, but now deſolate armie; not by the hand of the enemie, but conſumed by the vehemencie of an ague and
C a flux of bloud. Whoſe death notwithſtanding was kept ſecret from the whole army, euery man verily thinking, that it was but onely the continuance of his ſickneſſe, becauſe the chariots wherin he lay, were ſtill kept cloſe: and in his name *Cicala Baſſa* (for ſo hee had appointed in his will) gaue out anſweres and commaundements to the whole army. Neuertheleſſe it was diſcloſed to the Perſians, by meanes of three young men, who in the life of *Oſman* hauing charge of his iewels and treaſure, were with the beſt thereof and the faireſt of his horſes fled to the Perſian king, to whom they reuealed the death of the Generall. The Perſians who before had thought it not poſſible for ſo great cowardiſe, and diſhonourable kind of fighting and ordering of an armie to haue proceeded from the vertue and valour of *Oſman*, of whoſe worth they had too manifeſt a triall and experience in times paſt; now vnderſtanding of his death, were thereby encouraged
D to attempt the vtter ouerthrow of the Turkiſh remnant, and ſo to giue them an honourable farewell. Whereupon the Perſian prince with foureteene thouſand men followed the Turkes, who had now raiſed their campe, and were remooued to a certaine riuer of ſalt water, not farre from SANCAZAN; where the prince cauſed a few tents to bee pitched, about foure or fiue miles diſtant from the Turkiſh campe, the aforeſaid brooke running in the middeſt betweene the two armies. Now the prince had purpoſed to haue aſſailed the Turks in the morning, whiles they were loading their carriages, hoping in that confuſion to haue wrought them ſome notable miſchiefe: which his deſignement was reuealed vnto the Turks by one of his ſpies whom they had caught. And therefore they did neither riſe ſo early in the morning as their manner was, nor load their ſtuffe vntill ſuch time as they were all armed, and on horſeback readie to receiue their enemies.
E By which their wary and vnuſual maner of riſing, the Perſians perceiued, that their purpoſe was by ſome meanes diſcouered. And yet conſidering that if they ſhould looſe this occaſion, they ſhould find no other good oportunitie to annoy them before the next Spring, they vtterly reſolued to aduenture the aſſault: and hauing obſerued, that the enemies artillerie was on the right ſide of the armie, they in the ſight of euerie man began to enter on the left. But the Turkes preſently ſo vncouered and vnbarred their artillerie againſt the aſſailants, as was to their great loſſe and danger. Howbeit they were ſo nimble and ſo quicke to ſhrowd themſelues vnder the enemies armie, and to auoid the miſchieuous tempeſt, that being come now very neere the Turkes ſquadrons, they muſt needs ioyne battell with them. The Perſians had purpoſed before as ſoone as they ſaw the Turkes begin to ſtirre, to retire, and ſo to draw them on into a very filthie and
F deepe mariſh; which being then drie, was not feared or doubted of any, but onely by thoſe that were acquainted withall, or borne thereabouts. Which their policie the rebell *Maxut Chan*, and with him *Daut Chan* (as being wel acquainted with thoſe places) perceiuing, gaue notice thereof to *Cicala Baſſa*: who preſently cauſed a great compaſſing wing to be made, commanding them to ſet vpon the Perſians, and to charge them home: which was forthwith put in execution, ſo that

Oſman the Viſier and Generall dieth at Sancazan.

that their forefront opened it ſelfe with very large and ſpacious corners vpon the prince: who G
no ſooner ſaw this their vnwonted order of comming on, but by and by hee perceiued that his purpoſe was diſcouered. And thereupon without any ſtay he began to retire, calling his people after him: which could not ſo readily bee done, but that three thouſand of them remained behind, all miſerably ſtifled, ouertroden in the mire, with very little loſſe to the Turks: and this only battell of fiue that were fought vnder TAVRIS, and in thoſe quarters, was leſſe hurtfull to the Turkes, than to the Perſians.

The Prince returned to the king his fathers campe, recounting vnto him the whole action, together with the departure of the enemie. And ſo the Turkes came to SALMAS, where the death of the Generall was publiſhed: from SALMAS they went afterwards to VAN, where they took a ſuruey of their army, and found wanting therin about foureſcore and fiue thouſand per- H
ſons, or as ſome ſay more. At VAN all the ſouldiors were diſmiſſed: and *Cicala* from thence gaue
The Turks army diſcharged at Van. notice to *Amurath* at CONSTANTINOPLE of all that had happened. Where firſt was publiſhed the death of *Oſman* the Generall; for whom were made many ſignes of great ſorrow: and together with his death were blazed the bloudie and mortall actions that were in that expedition performed: ſo that the whole citie ſeemed to bee greatlie diſcomforted, and in many places were heard much ſecret railing vpon the king, many curſes of this warre, and inſolent maledictions of theſe manifold miſchiefes. After that, was diſperſed the great fame of the new fortreſſe erected at TAVRIS, of the ſacking of the citie, and of all the loſſe that had happened therein: and a general edict publiſhed in the kings name, That through al the cities of his empire they ſhould make ſolemne feaſts, with other expreſſe tokens of ioy and reioycing: which was accordingly I
done both in CONSTANTINOPLE and other places. There was alſo word ſent to the embaſſadours of HVNGARIE, of FRANCE, of VENICE, and of other countries, that they ſhould do the like: but they all with one accord anſwered, That it was neuer the cuſtome of embaſſadours to make any ſuch ſigne of reioyſing, but onely when the king himſelfe in perſon returned from the like victories.

In the meane time conſultation was held at VAN for the ſending of ſuccours to TEFLIS in GEORGIA: vnto which important ſeruice, *Daut Chan* to deſerue ſome reward at *Amuraths* hand, offered himſelfe: vnto whom *Cicala Baſſa* deliuered thirtie thouſand Cecchini to be conueyed to the fort at TEFLIS. Which piece of ſeruice the renegate performed, and without trouble relieued the ſouldiors in the fort: which was ſo well accepted of *Amurath*, that he for the K
ſame good ſeruice honoured him with the dignitie of the Baſſa of MARAS. *Maxut Chan* alſo the other Perſian rebell, that guided the Turkiſh armie to *Reiuan*, and afterwards to TAVRIS, was in like manner by the ſame *Amurath* honoured with the great rich office of the Baſſa of ALEPPO.

The miſeries the Turkes armie endured at Tauris. The miſeries the Turkiſh armie endured in this expedition for TAVRIS, beſide the loſſes before rehearſed, were wonderfull: for as the Sanzacke of AMAN, a citie of SORIA (called in antient time APAMEA) preſent in all this action, reporteth in a letter which he wrote to *Ali Baſſa* of ALEPPO, there was ſuch a dearth in the Turks army, that they were enforced to giue their cammels bisket and rice, and when that failed, they gaue them their pack-ſaddles to eat, and after that pieces of wood beaten into pouder, and at laſt the very earth: which dearth endured vntill they L
arriued at VAN. And at TAVRIS whileſt the fortreſſe was in building, they were of neceſſity conſtrained to giue their horſes their dung in very drie pouder. By reaſon whereof there followed a grieuous mortalitie of horſes, cammels, mules, and men, and the ſtinke which grew of this mortalitie became ſo great, that euery man was faine to carie a piece of a ſtrong ſmelling onyon ſtill vnder his noſe, to auoid the heauineſſe thereof.

The fort ſo lately built in the royal city of TAVRIS exceedingly grieued the Perſians in generall, but eſpecially the king and the prince his ſon: to let it alone, they reckoned it too great a ſhame, and how to demoliſh it they well knew not, finding themſelues not only deſtitute of artillerie, but alſo of ſuch ſufficient ſtrength as was requiſit for the performance of ſo great an enterpriſe: yet prickt on with deſire of glorie and the neceſſitie of the cauſe, they determined euen M
in the ſharpeneſſe of Winter to gather new forces, and with trenches of earth to approach the ditch. and to trie if they could aduance a countermure as high as their wals, and ſo to attaine to the conqueſt thereof. But in the gathering of their men they diſcouered new difficulties, for, to hire any ſouldiors either from HERI or GHEILAN, was denied them by *Abas* and *Amet Chan*;

and

A and their Turcoman nation, which might haue bin the readieſt and the neereſt at ſuch a need, for the late death of *Emir Chan*, and for the ſucceſſion of *Aliculi*, were grown verie contumatious: ſo that neither the king, nor the prince, nor the preſidents and gouernors of the kingdome, could tell which way to turne themſelues. At laſt for the common ſafetie they determined to draw the Turcomans to a reconciliation, hoping that by promiſing them any honeſt ſatisfaction for the wrong wherwith they challenged themſelues grieued for the death of their captaine, they would become more tractable to do them ſeruice in their common neceſſities. Whereupon the king ſent kind letters to the heads and captaines of thoſe nations, & principally to *Mahamet Chan*, and to *Caliſe* the Sultan, declaring plainly vnto them the perils of his ſtate, & of the libertie of the whole kingdome, with the confidence he had in their valour: and that therfore for-
B getting all that was paſt, as done not in ſhame or ſcorne of their nation, but only for zeale and loue to the kingdome, they would demaund ſuch ſatisfaction as they deſired, and that he would be readie to agree to any iuſt requeſt they ſhould make. To which letters they readily anſwered, That they would come vnto him, to put in execution whatſoeuer he ſhould for the common neceſſitie or the honour of his State commaund. Now they had craftilie among themſelues alreadie concluded, not to ſuffer any other to ſit in the roome of *Emir Chan* their late Gouernor, but onely young *Tamas* the kings third ſonne. Which concluſion they had plotted to themſelues, with a reſolution in the end to cauſe him to be accepted for king at CASBIN, in deſpight of the king himſelfe and of the prince *Hamze*: nothing regarding, that by this action far greater troubles would ariſe in PERSIA than euer were yet heard of, but only being wholly bent to
C reuenge the death of one only *Emir Chan*. With this malitious and fraudulent reſolution, they to the number of ten thouſand (vnder the conduct of two captains, *Mahamet* and *Caliſe*) went to the king, in all reuerence offering themſelues with all readineſſe to be imployed in the enterpriſe whereunto they were called. The old credulous king, not ſuſpecting any miſchiefe plotted by theſe ſecret rebels, was greatly comforted at their comming: and although by ſome of his Sultans that had felt ſome inkling of his conſpiracie, he was aduiſed to deale circumſpectly and warily with them, and not commit any matter of importance to their truſt, yet did he thinke euerie houre a thouſand vntill he had offered them ſatisfaction: promiſing them, that what captaine ſoeuer they would deſire in the roume of *Emir Chan*, if it were poſſible they ſhould haue him. Whereunto the diſſembling *Mahamet Chan* made anſwere, That their deſire aboue all
D things, was to doe him pleaſure and ſeruice; not doubting but he would appoint them ſuch a Chieftaine, as ſhould be valorous, noble, and acceptable vnto them. The king could ſtay no longer, but frankly declared vnto them, That to aſſure them of his good will, and to giue them an hoſtage in pawne thereof, he had made choiſe of young *Tamas* his ſonne to ſucceed in the roume of *Emir Chan* their late Gouernour. As ſoone as *Mahamet Chan* heard this reſolution of the king; who beſide all expectation voluntarily of himſelfe yeelded them the meanes to put in execution, what they had malitiouſly before contriued againſt the peace and libertie of the kingdome: he became more iocund than he was wont to be, and outwardly ſhewed himſelfe readie for whatſoeuer the king would command him: and in the names of the reſt yeelded alſo large promiſes of fidelitie and obedience, ſo that the matter might be performed for which he
E had now giuen his word.

Ten thouſand Turcomans offer their ſeruice vnto the Perſian king.

The king, who deſired nothing more than to ſee the fort of TAVRIS raſed (which could hardly be done without the helpe of thoſe Turcomans) contrarie to the aduiſe of the wiſeſt of the Sultans, and of the prince, ſecretly & as it were by ſtealth gaue his young ſonne *Tamas* into the hands of *Mahamet*, as chiefe of all the Turcomans. Who to nouriſh the good opinion and credulitie of the king, and to ſecure the prince and the Sultans, gaue a luſtie beginning by the helpe of his followers, with trenches and rampiers to approch the fort. Neither was there any great time ſpent therein; for they had now almoſt made their trenches and mounts euen with the enemies wall, and the ditch it ſelfe was almoſt filled vp with earth, ſo that there wanted but little more labour to begin the deſired aſſault: when contrarie to all mens expectation, the falſe
F and wicked traitor *Mahamet Chan* with all his Turcomans, leading away with them the child *Tamas*, departed in the night time and vpon a ſudden, from ſo noble and honourable an enterpriſe. And blinded with deſire to put in execution his ill hatched purpoſe, couertly and without any noiſe remoued from the beſieged wals, and put himſelfe on his way towards CASBIN: ſtill tearming *Tamas* by the name of the king of PERSIA, and ſundrie waies abuſing and mocking

The Turcomans forſake the ſiege and fall into rebellion.

the poore old king and the prince. This ſo ſudden and ſo dangerous a rebellion, whereby not G
only ſo honourable and ſo neceſſarie an enterpriſe was to be abandoned, but the whole ſtate of
the kingdome like to be indangered, exceedingly grieued all good men, but moſt of all the old
king and the prince his ſonne: who no leſſe carefull of his rightfull ſucceſſion, than was the
aged king of his preſent eſtate, both now hazarded by this rebellion; wholly incenſed with grief
and anguiſh of mind, began to caſt a thouſand deuiſes in his troubled head, what courſe to take,
and what to reſolue vpon. To abandon the ſiege it grieued him aboue meaſure, and to ſuffer ſo
pernitious a rebellion to go forward, ſeemed too dangerous for the ſtate of PERSIA: and to pro-
uide for both theſe miſchiefes at once, was altogither impoſſible. In theſe huge waues of con-
trarie thoughts, he reſolued at laſt to turne himſelfe againſt the Turcomans, and to ſuppreſſe
that rebellion as moſt dangerous to the ſtate. And ſo with twelue thouſand ſouldiors, and a H
part alſo of the kings ordinarie guard, all couragious and hardie men, he followed after the re-
bellious Turcomans; and marching directly toward CASBIN, he ouertooke them at a place
called CALISTEZA, a daies iourney on this ſide CASBIN, and there ioyned battell with them.
Wherein many of them being ſorie for that they had done, would not ſo much as draw their
ſwords againſt the prince: many others fled alſo away for feare, ſo that he eaſily obtained a wi-
ſhed victorie ouer them. The ſeditious *Mahamet Chan* was taken priſoner, and by the princes
The Turcomans diſcomfited, and Mahamet Chan and Caliſe the Sultan beheaded. commaundement preſently beheaded: ſo was alſo *Caliſe* the Sultan, and diuers other captains
of this peſtilent conſpiracie. Young *Tamas* was alſo taken, & by the direction of the prince ſent
to the caſtle of CAHACA. Fiue thouſand Turcomans of the late followers of the rebell *Maha-*
met, fled out of the battell towards BABYLON by the way of SIRAS, and yeelded themſelues to I
Solyman Baſſa of that citie; who afterwards repenting themſelues of their follie, ſought to return
againe into the fauour of their king, but all in vaine: ſo that being become rebels to the one, and
ſuſpected to the other, they did at on time looſe their countrie, their libertie, their honour, & the
fauour of all men as well friends as foes. The prince after this victorie held on his way to CAS-
BIN, and there ſtaying, laboured to gather the diſperſed Turcomans, eſpecially thoſe that moued
with the honeſtie of the cauſe, would not beare armes in ſo vniuſt an action; intending after-
wards to returne to TAVRIS, to attend the beſieging and conqueſt of the fort. This was the end
of this dangerous rebellion, the chiefe cauſe that TAVRIS was not againe recouered out of the
hands of the Turks, to the great weakning of the Perſian kingdome.

Giaffer Baſſa ſendeth to Cicala Baſſa for aid. Now *Giaffer* the Eunuch Baſſa Gouernor of the caſtle of TAVRIS, fearing leaſt the Perſian K
prince would with a greater armie againe returne to the ſiege: perceiuing himſelfe to wax euery
day weaker & weaker, by reaſon that many of his men ſecretly fled from him, beſide them that
periſhed with ſickneſſe, and others ſlaine in aduenturing too boldly to go abroad to ſeeke for vi-
ctuals; ſent aduertiſement therof to *Cicala Baſſa* at VAN, ſignifying farther vnto him by writing,
That if the prince ſhould againe returne to aſſault the fort, he ſhould of neceſſitie be enforced to
yeeld it: and that therefore as he tendered the honour of his Sultan, he would be carefull to
ſend him ſuccour, whereby he might be able to maintaine the fort: adding moreouer, That now
it was moſt eaſily to be done, becauſe there was no forces of the enemies in thoſe quarters, ſa-
uing onely a few which remained about the king, lying twelue miles off from TAVRIS. *Cicala*
moued with the importance of the enterpriſe propounded, and withall deſirous to gaine ſome L
credit of glorie and renowne with his king, entertained the aduiſes of *Giaffer*, and getting him
to horſe with a traine of three thouſand harquebuſiers and good ſtore of munition, ſet forward
toward TAVRIS. The Perſian king aduertiſed thereof, ſent out ſpies to learne what way they
held, meaning to meet them and to ſet vpon them: but theſe ſpies comming neere to SALMAS
were apprehended by the forerunners of *Cicala*, and being put to torture, reuealed at laſt how
that their king was in armes, and on his way towards SANCAZAN. At which newes *Cicala* was
greatly aſtonied, as well for the danger whereinto the forces and munition which he had with
him were likely to fall, as alſo for that by any loſſe which his troups ſhould ſuſtaine in this expe-
dition, the citie of VAN (being indeed the greater and moſt noble frontier towne in all thoſe
countries) muſt needs be in hazard to be loſt, hauing left in it but his lieutenant with a verie few M
ſouldiours. Whereupon he determined to relinquiſh this dangerous enterpriſe, and to with-
draw himſelfe backe to the defence and preſeruation of the citie committed to his truſt and go-
uernment. But although theſe expected and deſired ſuccours were not conuaied to TAVRIS
as was intended, yet had *Giaffer* as good fortune as he could wiſh: for the preparations of the

prince

A prince were ſo long and troubleſome, and his returne ſo much prolonged, that there was time enough yeelded vnto the Turks great Generall now newly choſen (as by and by ſhall be declared) to go with a ſtrong armie into thoſe quarters, and ſo to preſerue all that which the only expedition and celeritie of the enemie might haue put in great hazard, and almoſt haue brought to a deſperat caſe.

In the meane time, *Amurath* the Turkiſh emperor was greatly troubled at CONSTANTINOPLE in making choiſe of a new General: on the one ſide *Oſman Baſſa* hauing by his laſt will left *Sinan Cicala* to be his ſucceſſor, as a man of approued valour, and the many dangers he had run through in the late ſeruice about TAVRIS, with the great fauours he had in the Court, did not a little encline the king to his election: on the other ſide, he heard of a publike rumor ſpread
B amongſt the ſouldiors, that they could by no meanes endure to be commanded by ſo young a captaine, and that ſome in plaine tearmes ſhould ſay, That they would not obey him: which cauſed *Amurath* to doubt, that ſome dangerous diſcord might thereof inſue in the armie, if he ſhould proceed to make choiſe of him. Then there was alſo *Ferat Baſſa*, the ſame man which had alreadie ſuſtained that charge before *Oſman*; who now verie ambitiouſly ſought againe for this honour, hauing of late performed ſome good ſeruice to the good liking of the king. Of any other to make better choiſe he had none, ſo that he ſtood in great doubt what to doe. In the end, becauſe he was in good time to prouide for his affaires, he made choiſe of *Ferat Baſſa*, the ſame man whom he had before made proofe of: a man of great fidelitie, of an honourable cariage, and alreadie experienced in the leading and commaunding of ſuch an armie, to whom he
C granted the ordinarie authority, to mannage at his pleaſure ſuch affaires of the empire as concerned his iourney. Vpon this reſolution generall precepts were ſent out to all cities within the kingdome, to the Baſſaes and other Gouernours with ſpeciall commaundement, That all their ſouldiours, togither with their taxes, tenths, munitions, victuals, armour, artificers, and to be ſhort, all their neceſſarie furniture & prouiſion ſhould be readie and in order, vpon the firſt warning ſhould be ſent them the next Spring. Great prouiſion of money was made, and in SORIA (beſides the ordinarie ſumme that is beſtowed vpon the yearely pay of ſouldiors in REIVAN ERZIRVM, LORI, TOMANIS, TEBLIS and CHARS, which ſwallow vp all the reuenue of that couutrie, and of the citie of TRIPOLI, amounting to the ſumme of ſix hundred thouſand duckats) there was taken vp in preſt of priuat merchants in the citie of ALEPPO only, the ſumme of three-
D ſcore thouſand Cecchini, to be repaied vnto them with the firſt monies that ſhould be receiued by the officers of his cuſtome houſes. A matter that moued an extraordinarie grudging among the people, for that it ſeemed to euery man a very ſtrange and intollerable exaction, beſide ſo many grieuances laid vpon them, for corne, for carriages, for poiners, and for workmen, to endure this burden alſo of lending their mony without hope of reſtitution therof: yea and indeed euery man did greatly wonder how they were thus ill aduiſed, to make it known to the Chriſtian princes what ſcarcitie and want of mony they had. The Generall had alſo with him foure hundred pieces of artillerie, and did beſide ſo worke the matter, as that *Maxut Chan* (who was appointed Baſſa of ALEPPO) was granted vnto him to be the guid of his armie, as he had bin of *Oſmans*; and that *Cicala Baſſa* of VAN (ſcarce his good friend) was remoued from thence, and ſent farther
E off out of his way as Baſſa to BABILON.

The returne of Soria ſix hundred thouſand duckats.

And thus hauing put all things in readineſſe, he departed from CONSTANTINOPLE in the month of Aprill, in the yeare 1586; and paſſing ouer the ſtrait into ASIA, came to SIVAS ſomething latter than he ſhould haue done, being hindered partly by the plague which then raged exceedingly in CONSTANTINOPLE, and partly by other occaſions incident to ſuch actions. At SIVAS he ſtaied ſo long for the comming togither of his armie, and in muſtering men, that it was the latter end of Iuly before he departed thence; ſtaying indeed the longer at SIVAS, by reaſon of the exceeding dearth and want of victuals at ERZIRVM: which dearth was alſo ſo great in ALEPPO, that a VENICE buſhell of wheat was ſold for twelue Cecchini. 1586

Ferat departeth from Conſtantinople and commeth to Sivas.

Ferat yet making his aboad at SIVAS, but readie to depart, was aduertiſed by certaine poſtes
F ſent from *Gaiffer* the Baſſa of TAVRIS, how that the Perſian prince was hourely expected with a great armie, and that if he did foreſlow to ſend ſuccours, and to preuent the comming of the prince, and ſo to giue him time & leaſure to aſſault the caſtle, he doubted greatly how he ſhould be able to hold the ſame. Vpon which aduertiſement *Ferat* preſently remoued, and ſo haſted his iourney, that about the beginning of Auguſt he was at ERZIRVM: and ſtil hearing more and

more of the princes comming, ſtayed not there, but haſted to VAN: where hauing gathered to- G
gither all his ſoldiors, and taken a new ſuruey of his armie, he departed thence; and being pre-
ſently come into the open and large champaines, to make proofe of the readineſſe of his ſould-
diors, he marſhalled them in ſuch ſort as if he ſhould forthwith haue ioined battell with the ene-
mie, and ſo in ſeemely order marched on.

The Turkiſh Generall continually feared leaſt the Perſians ſhould come vpon him with
ſome ſudden aſſault: beſides that, the conſtant report of the princes comming to TAVRIS with
his armie, much increaſed his troubled thoughts. But on the other ſide, he repoſed great confi-
dence in the conſpiracie that was now plotted againſt the life of the prince, with the priuitie of
Aluculi Chan the protector and champion of *Abas Mirize* of HERI: who vnder colour of
accompanying the prince to aſſiſt his forces, had reſolutly concluded with himſelfe, and abſo- H
lutely promiſed *Abas* (hauing alſo giuen intelligence thereof to the Turkiſh Generall) to rid the
prince *Hamze* of his life; or at leaſt (which he thought might more eaſily be brought to paſſe)
in the ſundrie reuolutions & variable chances of the battell at ſome time or other to make him
fall into the hands of *Ferat*, and ſo to ſettle his lord and maſter *Abas* in his eſtate. Vpon theſe
trecheries *Ferat* grounding himſelfe, began with greater confidence to diſpoſe his deſignments,
and ſomewhat leſſe to feare the fame of the huge preparations of PERSIA againſt him. Which
preparations in truth as by moſt wicked deuices and malicious conſpiracies they were turned
quite contrarie from that end whereunto the prince *Hamze* had continually appointed them: ſo
if they had been employed with ſuch faith and fidelitie as ſo righteous a cauſe required, without
all doubt the writers of our time ſhould haue had matter ynough in this foureſcore & ſixt yeare I
to ſhew & repreſent vnto the world ſuch accidents as ſhould be nothing inferior to thoſe of the
yeare before going. But for as much as rebellion and diſcord, the two infernall miniſters of the
diuell, haue for the vtter vndoing & ouerthrow of the glorie of PERSIA continually fauoured
the Turks armie, no maruell it is that the Perſian nation cannot vaunt of any reuenge taken for
the indignities offered them by their enemies; and that our writers cannot chuſe but write of the
true and vndoubted victories of the Turks, & the bare ſhaddows of the Perſian exploits; which
notwithſtanding many Chriſtians vainly beleeue, becauſe they moſt earneſtly deſire them to be
true although they do ſee to the contrary the manifeſt proſpering and euident conqueſts which
the Turkes haue in diuers their ſtates and countries.

The glorie of the Perſia kingdome ouerthrown by rebellion and diſcord

The Perſian prince about the latter end of Iuly arriued at TAVRIS with the greateſt part of K
his armie, where he (contrarie to the opinion of all men) ſtaied not, for what cauſe is vncertaine.
But vnderſtanding that *Zeinel Baſſa* of SALMAS, by nation a Curdo, lay encamped before the ci-
tie, who of a Perſian was become a Turke, and had done great harme againſt the ſtate of PER-
SIA; he determined ſuddenly to ſet vpon him, and to chaſtiſe him for his rebellion. According to
which reſolution, being accompanied with twelue thouſand ſouldiours, he rode to SALMAS,
where finding *Zeinell* with all his people encamped as he had beene before enformed, hee gaue
him the aſſault. *Zeinell* more readie to flie than to fight, and his ſoldiors as readie as he, fled pre-
ſently, and fel before the Perſians, ſo that the Baſſa himſelfe with a few others had much adoe to
eſcape and ſaue themſelues in the cloſeſt corners thereabouts, leauing the citie committed to his
charge, for a prey vnto the angrie enemie: who entering into the ſame, ſacked and ſpoiled it, ex- L
erciſing thereon all ſuch cruelties, as partly the naturall deſires of ſouldiors vſe to practiſe, and
partly ſuch as the Turkes themſelues ſhewed vnto them in that miſerable and moſt lamentable
ſacking of TAVRIS the laſt yeare. The like ſpoiles did the Perſian armie in all thoſe quarters
round about, and ſo would haue peraduenture returned to TAVRIS, but that certaine ſpies arri-
ued vpon them, with aduertiſement, That the Baſſa of REIVAN being iſſued out of his fortreſſe
with fifteene hundred harquebuſiers, had committed the like outrages in the villages and fields
thereabouts, as the prince had done about SALMAS. With which newes the prince was greatly
moued; and immediatly riſing with his armie, and marching towards REIVAN, not farre from
the citie encountred the Baſſa: who diſcouering the enemies forces afar off, began in great diſ- M
order to flie and retire into his fort, leauing the greateſt part of his ſoldiors (making not ſo much
ſpeed in flight as himſelfe) to the furie of the prince, who put them all to the ſword, and did what
harme he poſſibly could in all the places thereabouts.

At the very ſame time great troubles aroſe in the Druſian countrie for *Man-ogli* the valiant
Druſian (of whom we haue before ſpoken) in reuenge of the iniuries done vnto him & his peo-

ple

A ple by *Ebrain Baſſa*, and by a violent kind of reſtitution to recompence himſelfe of all thoſe bribes and preſents which by ſo many ſhifts and ſubtilties were by the couetous Baſſa wrung from him (as is before declared) had now taken vp armes, and hauing waſted and ſacked all the territorie of *Ebne-manſur* and of his other enemies who had yeelded their obedience vnto the Turkes, without let forced all that countrey with ſudden inuaſions and inrodes, euen very neere vnto the cities of BALBECKE and TRIPOLI, and did there exceeding harme. For redreſſe whereof, *Amurath* was glad to diſpatch away from the Court *Ali Baſſa* borne at ALEPPO, with the title of the Baſſa of DAMASCO, and with authoritie to muſter freſh ſouldiors, and ſo wholly to attend the vtter ſubuerſion of *Man-ogli*. But comming thither, he found all againe quiet, ſo that his preſence in that countrie ſerued rather for a reconciliation and peace making amongſt
B them, than for the proſecuting of any further war; which at that time was moſt neceſſarie for the Turks to be auoided, as well for want of mony in the common treaſurie, as for the exceeding ſcarcitie of victuals.

Now the Perſian prince hauing made an end of the outrodes and ſpoiles before mentioned, retired himſelfe to TAVRIS, and ſo towards his fathers campe, where the reſt of his armie was now arriued, to the number of about fortie thouſand: of whom the prince diſpatched away the ſouldiors of HERI to the number of eight thouſand, vnder the conduct of the traiterous *Aliculi Chan* their Generall; and part alſo of the Turcomans, vnder the leading of *Emanguli Chan*; with ſpeciall charge, That they ſhould by the way in places of moſt aduantage meet and receiue the enemies armie, and in thoſe narrow and trobleſome paſſages to doe them what miſchiefe they
C poſſibly could. Which the prince thus appointed, thinking by this meanes to weaken the enemies forces, and ſo at their arriuall at TAVRIS to come vpon them with all his power, and ſo vtterly to deſtroy them.

Both theſe captaines departed accordingly, making ſhew that they would with all affection accompliſh the commaundement of their prince: yet neuer was there heard any ſeruice of moment put in execution by them: For *Aliculi* full of treaſon, after their departure began to alledge many forced reaſons and excuſes, Why they ſhould ſurceaſe from meeting with the Turks: and *Emanguli* as yet vtterly ignorant of the wicked purpoſes and miſchieuous trecherie of *Aliculi*, ſuffered himſelfe to be miſſe-led by him alſo. By the delaies and negligence of theſe two Perſian captaines, the Turkiſh Generall tooke leiſure without any loſſe or hinderance at all to arriue at
D TAVRIS, and to put the deſired ſuccours into the fort: at what time the Perſian prince by good hap had got knowledge of the treacherie of *Aliculi*, and of the deſignments which many of the Sultans had lately contriued, for the betraying of him aliue into the hands of the Turkiſh Generall. Of which ſuſpition he being greatly afraid, durſt not onely not truſt himſelfe to performe thoſe battels that he had before determined to haue performed; but quite abandoning this noble and honorable enterpriſe, wholly imploied all his care and ſtudie for the ſaferie of his own perſon, and ſo left the triumph of the matter in the power of the Turkes. And thus thoſe great hopes and expectations which the Perſians had conceiued of great exploits to haue been done againſt the enemie, did not onely proue vaine and come to no good iſſue, but contrariwiſe by this diſcouery were conuerted into moſt ſtrange diſturbances, and all PERSIA therby endured
E ſundrie alterations and reuolutions of moſt important conſequences. For both *Aliculi Chan* and his complices were purſued by the prince, as rebels and traitours: and alſo *Abas Mirize* of HERI was manifeſtly diſcouered for a wicked and treacherous contriuer of his brothers death: whereby the common miſchiefes were encreaſed more than euer they were before, and the publike calamities yeelded greater hopes vnto the Turkes than they had euer before conceiued in all the courſe of theſe wars.

Aliculi and Emanguli Chan perform nothing againſt the Turks, as was by the prince expected.

Ferat putteth ſuccors into the fort at Tauris.

When *Ferat* had thus relieued them in the caſtle of TAVRIS, leauing for the cuſtodie thereof *Giaffer* the Baſſa with his former companies, hee returned towards ERZIRVM: hauing firſt cauſed a fort to be erected at CVRCHIVE TAVRIS, a place neere vnto TAVRIS, another at COY, and the third at CVM: in euery one of which forts he left a conuenient number of ſoul-
F diours, with all things neceſſarie and ſufficient for their maintenance, and defence of the places they were to keep. He ſent alſo ſuccours to the fort at TEFLIS in GEORGIA, which they had long expected, and now moſt ioyfully receiued. But the Perſian prince hauing hunted *Aliculi Chan* out of the quarters of TAVRIS, thought himſelfe now wholly deliuered from the great feare of treaſon and rebellion, wherin he of late liued: and therfore in as great haſt as he could, put himſelfe

selfe on his iourney towards GENGE: in which place hauing gathered togither a good number of souldiours, he determined to remoue thence: to intercept the succours that were by the Turkes to be brought to TEFLIS. Now he had alwaies found *Emanguli Chan* to be both faithfull and wise, and in him he reposed an assured confidence for performing any enterprise that he had in hand, & communicated with him euery deuice that he had conceiued in these wars. And therefore he made head and ioyned with him; and lodging most familiarly in his citie, he staied there for the setting in order and disposing of his foresaid designement, being very desirous not to let such an oportunitie to ouerslip, without signification vnto the world of some notable noueltie, which might be correspondent to the fame that of matters passed and performed the yere before, was now spread and published abroad ouer all the world. But when he was euen at the very faireſt to haue put this his desire in execution, and least of all feared any treacherie or treason, vpon a sudden in the night time as he slept vpon a pallet he was miserably strucken through the bodie, by an Eunuch of his that attended vpon him: and so the most resplendent and bright lustre that euer shined in PERSIA, was vtterly extinguished. What was the occasion therof, and who procured his death, diuers and sundrie are the opinions of men. Some thinke, that his brother *Abas Mirize* of HERI, who had before conspired to haue had had him betraied into the hands of the Turkish Generall, had now by force of mony and gifts enduced the wicked Eunuch thereunto. Others deemed it not to haue beene done without the priuitie of his father, as more desirous to preferre *Abas Mirize* his other sonne vnto the kingdome. Diuers others doe diuersly reason of the matter; so that to affirme of a certaintie, that thus or thus the death of so worthie a prince was procured, were great rashnesse: and therefore we leaue it, with the further processe of the Persian state, vnto the further discouerie of Time, the auntient mother of trueth.

The Persian prince slaine by one of his Eunuchs.

Notwithstanding the league betwixt the Christian emperour *Rodolph* the second and *Amurath* the great Turke, many sharpe skirmishes oftentimes fell out betwixt the Christians and the Turks vpon the frontiers of their territories and dominions, especially in HVNGARIE, CROATIA, and STIRIA: as now in the latter end of this yeare 1586 in the moneth of December, the Turks after their insolent manner making an inrode into the borders of CROATIA, receiued a notable ouerthrow by the Christians, being in number much fewer: where amongst others the Bassa of BOSNA with his brother was slaine; whose head with certaine prisoners was sent to VIENNA to *Ernestus* Archduke of AVSTRIA, the emperours brother. This Bassa of BOSNA and his brother, slain in this conflict (as we haue said) are reported to haue bin the sonnes of *Muhamet* the late great Visier, by one of the daughters of *Selymus* the second, *Amurath* his sister. For diuers yeres following *Amurath* did no great matter worth the rememberance, contenting himselfe (as it should seeme) with that he had alreadie got from the Persians: and holding his league in some reasonable sort with the Christians: yet not so, but that many a bloodie broile tending at last euen to the breach of the league passed betwixt the Turkes and the Christians, which for the continuation of the historie we will briefely set downe, as they are vnto vs by the writers of our time reported.

1587 In Februarie the yeare following, which was the yeare 1587, the Christians prouoked by the often outrages of the Turkes, setting vpon the castle of KOPPAN, not farre from the lake of BABYLON, being then frozen, by good fortune surprised it. There was at that time in the castle three of the Turks Sanzacks, and about a thousand Turkes, of whom an hundred and ninetie of the better sort, with seuentie women, besides diuers of the meaner sort, fell into the hands of the Christians; the rest sauing themselues by flight, or by creeping into secret corners. An hundred horses for seruice were there taken also, and so much bootie as was esteemed to be worth fortie thousand duckats. Of the three Sanzackes that were there present, *Alis* Sanzacke of KOPPAN was taken, and brought first to VIENNA, and afterward presented to the emperour: Another of them standing vpon his defence in a vault vnder ground, was there smothered: The third escaped by flight, but was afterwards the same yeare taken, with diuers others, as shall be forthwith declared.

The castle of Koppan in Hungarie surprised by the Christians.

The eight of August following, foure of the Turks great commanders in HVNGARIE, *viz.* the Bassa of ZIGET, the Sanzackes of MOHAS, of QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ, and the new Sanzacke of KOPPAN, with fiue thousand souldiors brake into the borders of the Christians, and in most cruell manner destroyed seuenteen countrie villages about LIMBACH: carrying away with them

A them all the miſerable countrey people, with the ſpoyle of the countrey. Whereof *George* Countie *Serinus* (ſonne to that moſt valiant Countie *Nicholas Serinus* ſlaine at ZIGET) commander of the garriſon of CANISIA vnderſtanding, with as much ſpeed as was poſſible raiſed ſuch forces as he was able out of his territorie betwixt the riuers of Drauus and Mura: and calling vnto his aid the Countie *Nadaſti*, the Lo. *Bathianius*, and ſome other valiant captaines that had the charge of thoſe frontiers, with ſuch diligence tooke the ſtraits and paſſages wherby the Turkes muſt needs returne amongſt the mariſhes, that the Turkes comming backe againe that way with a very rich prey and many priſoners, being in the breake of the day hardly charged by thoſe moſt expert and reſolute ſoldiors, in thoſe ſtraight and troubleſome paſſages about a mile from CANISIA, were at lengh diſcomfited and put to flight; with ſuch a miſerable ſlaughter, that
B many of them yeelded vp their ſcimitars, pitifully crying for mercy; otherſome fled backe into the woods and forreſts, and many running headlong into the mariſhes, there periſhed, or ſticking faſt in the deepe mud, cried together for mercie and helpe of their enemies. In this conflict *Mahamet* the Sanzack of QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ (ſonne to *Hali Baſſa* ſlaine in the battell of LEPANTO) was taken priſoner. *Sinan Beg* Sanzacke of MOHAS, thinking to eſcape thorow the mariſh, ſtucke faſt with his horſe, and was ſhot through the head with a ſmall ſhot, and there died. The Baſſa of ZIGET with *Chaſan* the new Sanzacke of KOPPAN, ſeeing all deſperat and loſt, fled betimes out of the battell: but he of KOPPAN, wandring vp and down in the woods, was the next night after the battell, with others taken: the Baſſa of ZIGET almoſt ſpent with hunger & griefe of mind, eſcaped on foot ſeuen daies after to BRISENZA. There were taken of the Turks a thou-
C ſand three hundred, of whom many died afterwards of their wounds. In this battell there was ſlaine of the Turkes, with them that periſhed in the mariſhes and woods, about two thouſand: and of the Turkes horſes were taken aboue fifteene hundred. All the prey before taken by the Turks with the miſerable captiues, was againe recouered. The number of them that performed this notable ſeruice, was in all but fifteene hundred foot and fiue hundred horſe: of whom there was but eleuen ſlaine, but moſt of the reſt wounded. Foure hundred heads of the ſlaine Turkes were (after the manner of thoſe bordering ſouldiors) caried for ſhew to CANISIA, with fiue hundred priſoners. The Chriſtian ſouldiors with the helpe of the countrey people, ceaſed not for certain daies to hunt after the Turks that were fled into the woods, as after wild beaſts; of whom they found a great number: diuers others alſo ſeeing no meanes to eſcape, came forth of their
D lurking places, and yeelded themſelues.

Amurath vnderſtanding of all theſe troubles that had ſo happened, commanded *Aly* the Baſſa of BVDA to be ſtrangled, for that he had broken the league, and not reſtrained the inſolencie of his Sanzacks, whom he might haue commanded: and in his ſtead placed *Sinan Baſſa*, whom before in diſgrace, he had now at the requeſt of his wife againe receiued into fauour, and reſtored to his former dignitie. About this time alſo, *Sigiſmund* (the king of SVVEDEN his ſonne) now after the death of king *Stephen* choſen king of POLONIA, and *Maximilian* the emperonrs brother reiected: euen in the beginning of his raign ſought to renew the league, which *Stephen* his predeceſſor and other the Polonian kings had before made with *Amurath*, and his predeceſſors the Turkiſh Sultans. And to that purpoſe writ vnto him as followeth.

Aly baſſa of Buda ſtrangled by the commandement of Amurath.

Sinan Baſſa againe receiued into fauour.

E

Sigiſmund the third, King of Polonia; vnto *Amurath* the third, Emperour of the Turks, ſendeth greeting.

The Almightie long keepe and preſerue your Maieſtie in health and honour. Moſt mightie prince, our beſt beloued friend and neighbour, after that wee by the grace and goodneſſe of God were choſen to gouerne the kingdome of POLONIA, *and the embaſſadours of that kingdome had ſignified ſo much vnto vs: wee prouiding vs of neceſſaries, came to* DANSKE *the* 18 *of October, from whence wee ſend* Iohn Zamogil *our Secretarie, to giue your Maieſtie to vnderſtand of this our comming. For being told by the Polonian embaſſadours, that wee were choſen vnto the gouernment of that kingdome*
F *vpon condition, That according vnto the cuſtome of our predeceſſors the Polonian kings, wee ſhould keepe loue and friendſhip with the moſt excellent* * Muſſulman *emperours: we promiſe vnto your ſoueraigne Maieſtie, that wee are willing with the like or greater zeale and deuotion, to continue that amitie and friendſhip with your moſt excellent Maieſtie, and the* Othoman *emperours your ſucceſſours. For confirmation whereof, ſo ſoone as wee ſhall come vnto* CRACOVIA, *the regall citie of* POLONIA,

Sigiſmund the Polonian king his letter vnto Amurath.

* *The Turks deſire to be called Muſſulman, which in their language ſignifieth a right beleeuer.*

LONIA, *and there bee crowned; wee will forthwith ſend our great embaſſadour vnto your maieſtie.* G
In the meane time we moſt earneſtly requeſt your maieſtie, that our kingdome may on your maieſties behalfe reſt in ſafetie and peace: which we perſuade our ſelues you will eaſily grant. So wiſhing vnto you all health and happineſſe, we bid you farewell, from DANSKE *the* 18 *of October, in the yeare* 1587, *and of our raigne the firſt.*

Vnto which the kings requeſt and letters, *Amurath* not long after returned this anſwere in writing.

Amurath the third, Emperour of the Turkes, vnto *Sigiſmund*, King of POLONIA, greeting.

H

Amurath his anſwer vnto the letters of Sigiſmund.

I take it well, and as a token of your loue, that your Embaſſadour Iohn Zamogil *came with your letters vnto our moſt high and glorious Court, the refuge of diſtreſſed princes: wherein you haue giuen vs to vnderſtand, how that in ſtead of the moſt excellent and famous king* Stephen *of worthy memorie, late king of* POLONIA; *you, deſcended of the ſame noble ſtocke and race of the Polonian kings, are by the free election of the whole State of the famous kingdome of* POLONIA, *and the great kingdome of* LITHVANIA, *choſen king of* POLONIA: *and being ſent for by lawfull embaſſadours, by the fauour and goodneſſe of God, to be come vnto the citie of* DANSKE, *and from thence to bee about to goe vnto* CRACOVIA, *the chiefe citie of the kingdome of* POLONIA. *And when you are there arriued, to ſend your great embaſſadour vnto our moſt high and glorious Court, to confirme, preſerue, and eſtabliſh the league and amitie commodious and neceſſarie for both our kingdomes, honoured and kept by* I
your auncient predeceſſours, with our grandfathers and great grandfathers; yea and that with greater zeale and deuotion than any your noble anneſtors. And therefore your embaſſadour in your name requeſteth, That no inuaſion on our behalfe be made into the borders of the kingdome of POLONIA, *or any harme there done: and that the moſt noble Tartar prince* Iſbam Gerai *(whom God bleſſe) ſhould bee warned and reſtrained, that he neither make nor ſuffer any incurſion to bee made into the confines of the kingdome of* POLONIA. *All which things in your letters contained, with the reſt which your embaſſadour hath by word of mouth deliuered, are with ſpeed orderly by vs conceiued. Know you therefore our moſt ſtately and magnificent Court to be alwayes open vnto ſuch as reſort thereunto, and that from thence neuer man had repulſe, neither ſhall hereafter haue: wherefore it beſeemeth you, as ſoone as theſe our letters ſhall bee brought vnto you, to open your eyes, and to beware that nothing be on your part done againſt* K
the maieſtie of our Court, and the league; and that our peace and amitie bee neither in much or little diſturbed, but as beſt beſeemeth, well and ſincerely kept: and ſo perſuade your ſelfe it ſhall on our part alſo be moſt inuiolatly obſerued. Our letters are alſo directed vnto the moſt excellent Tartar prince Iſbam Gerai, *whom God bleſſe, ſtraightly charging and commanding him, not to make or ſuffer any incurſion to bee made into the borders of* POLONIA. *In briefe, the league and amitie ſhall on our part be religiouſly kept: and whoſoeuer ſhall preſume to doe any harme vnto the kingdome or confines of* POLONIA, *ſhall therefore without faile receiue from vs due puniſhment. So on your part alſo it is requiſite that the ſame bee done, and that in declaration of your loue, you forget not oftentimes to intimate vnto our moſt high and glorious Court, ſuch certaine occurrents and newes as ſhall happen in thoſe parts, which ſhall bee* L
vnto vs a ſigne of your ſincere loue and friendſhip. So know you, and giue credit vnto this our ſeale from CONSTANTINOPLE.

Neither was king *Sigiſmund* vnmindfull of this his promiſe before made for the ſending of his embaſſadour: but being poſſeſſed of the Polonian kingdome, ſent *Chriſtopher Dziercius* (his Secretary) embaſſador vnto *Amurath* for the confirming of the league: which he hath euer ſince ſo firmely kept with the Turke, as that he could neuer by any intreatie of the emperor, or of the princes electors, or others, or in reſpect of the common danger, be drawn into the fellowſhip of this long and religious war, ſo hardly maintained by the emperour, and ſome few other Chriſtian princes his confederats; firſt againſt *Amurath* whileſt he liued, and euer ſince againſt *Mahomet* his ſonne, which now raigneth: the iſſue whereof, God grant it proue not as well vnto the Polo- M
nians as others farther off, in fine lamentable.

1588 *Gonze taken by Ferat.*

The yeare following, *Ferat* (yet the Turkes Generall in PERSIA) tooke the citie of GENOA, being before for feare of the Turks quite abandoned and forſaken by the inhabitants; who yet vpon his faith giuen for their ſafetie returned again, yeelding to pay vnto the Turke a yerely tribute

A bute of fiue thouſand duckats. But when he would haue gone farther into the enemies countrie, hauing part of his armie cut off by the way, hee was by his mutinous ſouldiors fouly intreated, wounded, and enforced to retire. *Cicala Baſſa* alſo paſſing ouer the riuer Euphrates, had in thoſe quarters diuers bloudie skirmiſhes with the Perſians, ſometime carrying away the better, and ſometime the worſe, as the fortune of the field ſerued. Vntill at length *Amurath* himſelfe, no leſſe wearie than his people of that long and chargeable warre, and the Perſian king alſo enclining to peace; he by the perſuaſion of *Sinan Baſſa* (but lately before receiued into fauour) was now contented to be entreated to hearken vnto the ſame: moued thereunto as well by reaſon of new troubles then in other places ariſing, as for the great famine & plague then raging in CONSTANTINOPLE. And conſidering withall what a great territorie he had woon from the Perſians,
B and how neceſſary it was for him by peace to confirme himſelfe in thoſe his new conqueſts, and by the building of certain ſtrong forts for the ſuccour of one another, and by the placing of his Timariots therein to aſſure the ſame vnto him: all which without peace hee could not poſſibly do, as the old Baſſa right wiſely told him. For which reaſons he yeelded to peace; and ſo embaſſadors paſſing too and fro, a peace was at length agreed vpon betwixt theſe two great Mahometan princes: the Turke couenanting to keep vnto himſelfe the places he had already gained, namely, TAVRIS, GENGE, SIRVAN, and CHARS, with all the profits thereof ariſing, for the maintenance of his garriſons and Timariots there. Whereof it was thought new ſtirs would eftſoones ariſe; the Turks grown inſolent of their late victories, being not able to content themſelues with
C the conditions of the league; and the Perſians not willing to liue in continual feare of the Turks, eſpecially ſeeing themſelues to be daily by them more and more oppreſſed; and withall doubting leaſt the Turkes after they had taken faſt footing in thoſe new conquered countries, and ſo growne ſtrong, and gotten better knowledge of the paſſages, ſhould (after their ambitious manner) ſeeke to poſſeſſe themſelues of the reſt; not keeping the couenants agreed vpon betwixt them, not at all regarding the capitulations of the league. Which was neuertheleſſe (as we ſaid) on both ſides for the ſpace of ten yeres orderly confirmed, with all due circumſtances and ceremonies in like occurrents by the great potentats of the world vſed: and for the more aſſurance thereof, one of the Perſian kings ſonnes (or as ſome others ſay, one of his nephewes) giuen vnto the Turks in hoſtage, as *Amurath* required.

D Theſe long warres thus ended, ſhortly after a great ſedition was raiſed at CONSTANTINOPLE by the ſouldiors of the Court, which returning out of PERSIA, with great inſolencie demanded their pay. For the ſatisfying of whom, by the conſent of the great Sultan himſelfe, the value of the coyne was enhaunſed; and a new kind of ſubſidie for leuying of money impoſed vpon the ſubiects in generall, none excepted: who ſtanding vpon their ancient liberties and priuiledges, refuſed to pay it, eſpecially the Ianizaries and other ſouldiors of the Court. Wherefore their Aga (or captaine) was commaunded to appeaſe them, and to perſwade them to pay the demaunded tribute: in attempting whereof he was in danger to haue been ſlaine by the inſolent Ianizaries, and yet neuertheleſſe for preuailing no more with them, was in diſpleaſure thruſt out of his office, and another placed in his roome, that ſhould haue married *Amuraths* daughter; of whom for all that the Ianizaries would not accept in any caſe, but threw ſtones at
E him, and threatned to kill him. The next night a great fire aroſe in the citie, for the quenching whereof, the Ianizaries were commaunded (as their duetie was) to put to their helping hands: which they not only moſt obſtinatly refuſed to do, but alſo kept back others that brought water for the quenching therof, & together with the other ſouldiors of the court did what they might to make it burne the faſter. With the rage of this fire were conſumed ſeauen of their temples, fiue and twentie great Innes, fifteene thouſand houſes, with many warehouſes and ſhops. To appeaſe this dangerous ſtirre, and to preuent farther miſchiefe, commaundement was giuen to the Beglerbeg of GRÆCIA, and *Dauid Paſſy* a Iew, the firſt authors of this new impoſition, that they ſhould either gather the aforeſaid tribute by them deuiſed, and pay the ſoldiors, or by ſome
F other meanes to giue them contentment. But heere began the prieſts publikely to diſſwade the people from paiment of this new tribute, or any other ſuch like; perſuading them in any caſe to defend their auncient liberties and cuſtomes: whereupon the churches were by the prieſts ſhut vp, publike prayers for the health of the Sultan intermitted, the Baſſaes houſes aſſaulted, and all the citie on a new hurly burly. For the appeaſing whereof, *Amurath* was glad to yeeld vnto the Ianizaries, to pay the ſouldiors out of his owne treaſurie, to reuoke his mandates giuen out for the

The Ianizaries in a tumult at Conſtantinople.

Great harme done by fire in Conſtantinople.

the exaction of the new tribute, and to deliuer the two perſuaders thereof to the pleaſure of the Ianizaries; who drew them vp and down the ſtreets at horſes tailes, and afterwards cutting off their heads, in ſcorne toſſed them from hand to hand on to another, as if they had beene tenniſe balls. G

Sinan Baſſa of Buda inuadeth the vpper part of Hungarie.

About the latter end of September *Sinan Baſſa* of BVDA hauing with the aſſiſtance of the Sanzacks about FILLE, raiſed an armie of eleuen thouſand ſouldiors, with purpoſe to haue ſpoiled all the vpper part of HVNGARIE, came the ſixt of October before the caſtle of PVTNOC, and gaue therunto ſummons: but finding them in the caſtle better prouided and more reſolute than he had before ſuppoſed, he departed thence, and paſſing the riuer Sqhayo, came to SIXO, a town of about fiue hundred houſes, which after a ſore batterie hee tooke, and burnt it downe to the ground. In the meane while *Claudius Ruſſell*, Generall for the warres in that part of HVNGARIE, H hauing aſſembled his forces, came vpon him, and after an hard fight put him to the worſe, when he had ſlaine of his Turks about two thouſand fiue hundred, beſides three hundred other drowned in the riuer Schayo. Shortly after, the Chriſtians in like maner breaking into the frontiers of the Turks, tooke from them the caſtles of BLAVENSTIEN, GESTES, with ſome other ſmall forts thereabouts in the vpper part of HVNGARIE.

Sinan ouerthrowne.

1589 *Sinan* for that he had contrarie to the league, and without commandement from *Amurath*, ſo vnfortunatly attempted warre in HVNGARIE, was the next yeare in great diſpleaſure ſent for to CONSTANTINOPLE, and *Ferat Baſſa* of BOSNA (late Generall of the Turks armie againſt the Perſians, and now but newly come home) placed in his roome at BVDA.

Amurath before not ignorant of the great preparation that *Philip* the king of SPAINE had made, I and of the inuincible Armado (as it was tearmed) by him ſet forth for the inuaſion of ENGLAND (the fame whereof had long before filled a great part of the world;) as alſo of the euill ſucceſſe thereof the laſt yeare, *viz.* 1588; and of the purpoſe her Maieſtie of ENGLAND had for the troubling of his rich trade, eſpecially into the Weſt Indies, and for the relieuing of *Don Anthonio*, by him driuen out of PORTINGALL: writ vnto her about this time concerning thoſe and ſuch like matters as had been mooued by her Agent as followeth.

Nicholaus Reuſnerus epiſt. Turcic. lib. 12. pag. 42.

Amurath his letters vnto the Queen of England.

Amurath the third, Emperour of the Turkes, vnto *Elizabeth*, Queene of ENGLAND, FRANCE, and IRELAND, greeting. K

Moſt honourable Matrone of the Chriſtian Religion, mirrour of chaſtitie, adorned with the brightneſſe of ſouereignetie and power amongſt the moſt chaſte women of the people which ſerue Ieſu, Miſtris of great kingdomes, reputed of greateſt maieſtie and praiſe among the Nazarites, Elizabeth *queene of* ENGLAND, *to whom wee wiſh a moſt happie and proſperous raigne. You ſhall vnderſtand by our high and imperiall letters directed vnto you, how that your Oratour reſiant in our ſtately and magnificent Court, hath preſented vnto the throne of our Maieſtie a certaine writing, wherein hee hath certified vs, how that about foure yeares agoe you haue made warre vpon the King of* SPAINE, *for the abating and breaking of his forces, wherewith hee threateneth all other Chriſtian princes, and purpoſeth to make himſelfe the ſole Monarch both of them and all the world beſide: as alſo how that the ſame King of* SPAINE *hath by force taken from* Don Anthonio, *lawfully created king of* PORTINGALL, *his* L *kingdome: and that your intention is, that his ſhips which goe and come into the Indies, may from henceforth bee embarred and ſtaied from that nauigation: wherein are yearely brought into* SPAINE, *pretious ſtones, ſpices, golde, and ſiluer, eſteemed worth many millions, wherewith the aforeſaid king as with a great treaſure enriched, hath meanes to moleſt and trouble all other Chriſtian princes: which if hee ſhall ſtill proceed to do, hee will make himſelfe daily ſtronger and ſtronger, and ſuch an one as may not eaſily bee weakened. After that your aforeſaid Oratour requeſted our Highneſſe in the beginning of the next Spring to ſend out our imperiall fleet againſt him, being aſſured that the king of* SPAINE *could not bee able eaſily to withſtand it, for that hee had now alreadie receiued a great ouerthrow by your fleet: and being ſcarce able to withſtand you alone, if hee ſhould be on diuers parts inuaded, muſt needs bee ouercome, to the great benefit of all the Chriſtian princes, as alſo of our imperiall ſtate. Beſides this,* M *that whereas the aforeſaid* Don Anthonio *is by force driuen out, and depriued of his kingdome, that wee (to the imitation of our noble Progenitours of happie memorie; whoſe graues the Almightie lighten) ſhould alſo giue the ayd and ſuccour of our magnificent ſtate, as did they vnto all ſuch as had recourſe vnto their high Courts and pallaces for reliefe. In briefe, all theſe things, with many others,*

which

A *which your aforesaid Oratour hath at large declared vnto our emperiall throne, we haue well vnderstood, and laied them vp in our deepe remembrance. But for as much as we for many yeares past haue made warres in* PERSIA, *with a full resolution and intent vtterly to conquere and subdue the kingdome of that accursed Persian heretike, and to ioyne the same vnto our auncient dominions; and now by the grace of God, and helpe of our great Prophet, are now vpon the point for the satisfying of our desire: that once done, due prouision shall bee assigned vnto all such things as you haue of vs requested or desired. Wherefore if you shall sincerely and purely continue the bond of amitie and friendship with our high Court, you shall finde no more secure refuge or safer harbour of good will or loue. So at length all things shall goe well and according to your hearts desire in your warres with* SPAINE, *vnder the shaddow of our happie throne. And for as much as the king of* SPAINE *hath by fraud and deceit got whatsoeuer he hol-*
B *deth, without doubt these deceitfull deceiuers shall by the power of God in short time bee dispatched and taken out of the way. In the meane time wee exhort you not to loose any opportunitie or time, but to bee alwaies vigilant, and according to the conuentions betwixt vs, fauourable vnto our friends, and vnto our enemies a foe. And giue notice here to our high Court of all the new warres which you shall vnderstand of concerning the said king of* SPAINE, *for the behoofe both of your selfe and vs. To bee briefe, your embassadour after he had with all care and diligence dispatched his embassage, and heere left in his place one* Edward Bardon *his Deputie and Agent, now by our leaue maketh his returne towards your kingdome, being for the good and faithfull seruice he here did, worthie to be of you esteemed, honoured, and before others promoted: who when hee hath obtained of you all those his deserued honours and preferments, let him or some other principall embassadour without delay bee appointed to our emperiall Court, to continue*
C *this office of legation. This wee thought good to haue you certified of vnder our most honourable Seale, whereunto you may giue vndoubted credence. From our imperiall pallace at* CONSTANTINOPLE *the 15 of the blessed moneth * Ramazan* 1589. * September.

Yet for all these faire shewes it may seeme vnto him that looketh more neere into the state of the Turkish affaires at those times, and that which hath ensued since, that *Amurath* glad of the discord of these two so great Christian princes, and not yet well assured of his new conquests in PERSIA, had no great mind to the inuasion of *SPAINE*, as too farre from the strength of his empire, an enterprise not to be so easily managed by sea, as were the warres hee shortly after vndertooke against the Christian emperour *Rodolph* by land: wherewith for all that (God be thanked)
D he found his hands ful all the remainder of his life, as hath his sonne *Mahomet* that now raigneth after him, euen vnto this day.

About this time also the Polonian borderers (whom they call Cossackes) a rough and warlike kind of people, after their wonted manner making an inrode vpon the Turkes and Tartarians, vpon the sudden surprised KOSLAVV, a port towne within a daies iourney of CAFFA, where they had the spoile of many rich warehouses of the Turkes marchants, and the rifling of certain ships lying there in harbour; and hauing taken their pleasure, burnt the rest, and so with a great bootie returned to their lurking places. With which iniury the Tartars prouoked, & set on by the Turks to the number of fortie thousand brake into PODOLIA, and the prouinces neere vnto POLONIA, and resting in no place, but burning the country before them, slew the poore country peo-
E ple without mercie; and making hauocke of all that they light vpon, beside the spoile, carried away with them many thousands of most miserable captiues: the greatest part whereof for all that, the Polonians rescued, with the notable slaughter of the enemie, surprised in his returne. Whereupon such vnkindnesse rise between the Turkish emperour and *Sigismund* the Polonian king, that it was thought it would haue broken out out into open warres, had not the Polonian by his embassadors, and the mediation of the Queen of ENGLAND wisely appeased the angrie Turke, and so againe renewed his league.

The Polonian Cossacks inuade the Tartarians and Turkes.

Amurath now at peace with the world, from which he by nature abhorred not, and sitting idle and melancholy at home, was perswaded by the Bassaes his counsellors to take some new warre in hand. For that great empires (as they said) could not without the continual vse of armes long
F stand or continue: as appeared by the Romane state, which so long as it was at wars with CARTHAGE, or their great captaines and commaunders occupied in armes against their neighbour princes, still remained triumphant, and commanded ouer a great part of the world; but giuing it selfe to ease and pleasure, and the martiall men not after their wonted manner employed, it in short time by ciuil discord fell, and of the mistresse of the world became it selfe a prey euen vnto the

1590

The reasons wherewith the Visier Bassaes perswade Amurath to make warre.

the baſeſt nations. Which old *Cato* in his great wiſdome foreſeeing, cried out in the Senat, That G
the ſouldiors and men of warre were to be kept ſtill buſied in armes farre from home; for that in
ſo doing, all ſhould goe well with the ſtate, and the glorie thereof encreaſe. Wherunto the *Otho-*
man emperors, his noble progenitors, hauing reſpect, propounded not peace as the end of their
warres (as do other weak princes, hauing their own forces in diſtruſt) but as inuincible conque-
rours ſtill ſowed warres vpon warres, making one victorie the beginning of another: whereby
they not onely brought that their empire vnto that greatnes it was now of, but by ſuch continu-
all employment made their ſouldiors more couragious and readie, and alſo kept them from re-
bellions and tumults: whereunto, in time of peace and liuing at eaſe, theſe martiall men are moſt
commonly enclined, learning (as all others doe by doing nothing) to doe that is euill and
nought. Euery thing (as they ſaid) was by the ſame meanes to be maintained, whereby it was at H
the firſt encreaſed: and that therefore great empires as they were by warres begun and augmen-
ted, ſo were they by continuall wars alſo to be from time to time eſtabliſhed; whereas otherwiſe
the ſouldiors liuing in peace, and forgetting their martiall proweſſe, would for moſt part grow
cowardly, as giuing themſelues ouer to the loue of their owne dwellings, of their wiues, and of
their children, & other pleaſures; or els conuerting their ſtudies vnto marchandiſe or other pro-
fitable trades, would in time forget the vſe of armes, and be thereunto againe hardly drawn: vnto
the great weakening of his ſtrength both by ſea and land, and the deminiſhing of the number of
his great commanders and expert captaines, not to be had without the continuall vſe of warre.
With theſe and ſuch like reaſons, the great Baſſaes of the Court perſuaded *Amurath*, That he
muſt of neceſſitie take ſome new expedition in hand, and not to ſuffer his valiant ſouldiours, but I
now lately returned out of Persia, to grow laſie or inſolent for lacke of employment. Which
they did not ſo much for the loue of their prince, or zeale vnto the State, as for their own parti-
cular profit, eſpecially the two old Baſſaes *Sinan* and *Ferrat*, the enuious competitors the one of
the others honour: who although they both much and almoſt all commaunded both in peace
and warre, yet was their honours greater, and their profit farre more in commaunding of the
Turkes great armies abroad, than in ſitting in the Diuano at home: vnto which no leſſe honou-
rable than profitable preferment they both with like ambition aſpired, accompanied with the
hot deſires of their great and many fauourites both at home and elſewhere. Theſe perſuaſions
well pleaſed *Amurath*, who although he were himſelfe no ſouldior, yet was he deſirous of new
conqueſts, and to encreaſe his name: accounting it no leſſe honour vnto himſelfe by his ſeruants K
at his appointment to performe great things, that it was vnto his auncеſtours to doe that they
The cauſes why Amurath would not ſuddenly reſolue vpon war. did themſelues in perſon. But in this ſo ſerious a matter, and of ſo great conſequench, *Amurath* at
the firſt could not tell what beſt to reſolue vpon; not for that he was nor deſirous of warres, but
becauſe as yet certainely knew not againſt whom hee might with greateſt profit, and leaſt diffi-
culty and danger conuert his forces. vpon which point his counſellors agreed not, but for diuers
reaſons were of diuers opinions. Which for as much as they containe matters of greateſt im-
portance of all things then in the world done, but eſpecially concerning the profit of the Chri-
ſtian commonweale, I ſhall not thinke it vnworth my labour to ſet them downe in ſuch order as
I find them credibly reported: hauing moreouer in them many ſecrets and moſt weighty mat-
ters not yet come to all mens knowledge: as alſo opening the deuices of the Turkiſh tyrant a- L
gainſt the Chriſtian princes; a motiue not onely for them to ioyne in counſell together how to
withſtand him, but for the common Chriſtian commonweales ſake to forget and forgiue all
their priuat diſpleaſures, and with their vnited forces and power honorably and couragiouſly to
make warre vpon him, and ſo at length by the mercie of God to ouerthrow him, together with
his tyrannicall empire, the greateſt terrour of our time.

Eight ſeuerall opinions of the Viſier Baſſaes concerning the warre to be taken in hand.

The great Baſſaes concerning the intended warre were of eight ſundrie opinions: whereof
the firſt was, That the warres againſt the Perſian ſhould be renewed: the ſecond, for the inuaſion
of the king of Morocco and Fes: the third, for warre to bee taken in hand againſt the king of
Spaine: the fourth, for the beſieging againe of Malta: the fifth, was to ſet vpon the Veneti-
ans: the ſixt, for the inuading of ſome part of Italie: the ſeuenth, for the king of Polonia: M
the eight and laſt was, for warre to be made vpon the emperour and the kingdome of Hvnga-
rie. With all the which aforeſaid princes, except the Spaniard, although the Turke were then
in league, and could not with all or any of them make warre, without the notable breach of his
faith and honour: yet was that neuer made queſtion or ſcruple of, but only, Which might beſt

ſtand

A ſtand with the profit of his ſtate for him to ſet vpon: his barbarous law allowing him that libertie, for the more aſſuring of his ſtate or inlarging of his empire, to breake all faith and promiſe eſpecially with the Chriſtians; not more in any thing to be pitied, than in repoſing any credit or confidence in the faith of ſuch a miſcreant.

The firſt opinion and reaſons of thē that would haue the wars renewed in Perſia.

The reaſons the great Baſſaes alleadged for the renewing of the Perſian warre, were, For that the Perſian king was of himſelfe like to breake the league ſo lately with him concluded, ſo ſoone as he ſhould know the Turkes entangled in any other warre; moued thereunto, as well for the recouerie of his countrey to his great diſhonour loſt, as alſo in reuenge of ſo many and ſo great iniuries to him of late done by the Turkiſh emperours. Beſide that, the Chriſtian princes would perſuade him and prick him forward thereunto: eſpecially the Spanyard, who for the
B neereneſſe of INDIA might without his great charge procure him ſo to doe, and alſo conueniently furniſh him with great ordinance and canoniers, which it was well knowne he of late did. The countries alſo but lately conquered, were not yet (as they ſaid) in quietneſſe or ſafetie, and the fortreſſes therein but of late built, together with the garriſons therein, to be in great danger, being for the length of the way and difficultie of the paſſage, not to be ſtill ſpeedily relieued: inſomuch, that if the Perſians did them no other harme, but onely to forrage and waſt the countrey about them, they ſhould bring the inhabitants into ſuch diſtreſſe, as that thoſe new conquered countries were againe by the defendants to be forſaken, or elſe they muſt themſelues with hunger periſh. True glorie (they ſaid) conſiſted not ſo much in conquering, as in the vſe of the
C conqueſt, and the proſecution of the happie victorie: and that therefore *Amurath* ſhould take heed, that he prouoked not the wrath and indignation of the Great prophet *Mahomet* againſt him; who hauing by his good fauour and guide obtained mo victories than any of his predeceſſours againſt the enemies of his religion, ought as a religious and deuout prince ſeuerely to reuenge the wrong by them done both to God and man. Vnto which religious warre *Vsbeg Han* the Tartar king, as alſo the prince of GEILAN offered their readie helpe: as for the euent of the victorie now as good as in his hand, he was to iudge by the ſucceſſe of his former warres. Neither that he need to feare the Perſian horſemen, although they vſed Arabian horſes, being by his men many times ſhamefully put to flight: or yet to doubt leaſt the Georgians in fauour of the Perſians ſhould take vp armes, for that many of them were alreadie vnder his obeiſance, and
D ſubiect vnto the Baſſa of TEFLIS and other his commaunders; the reſt were his vaſſals, or elſe ſuch as following the fortune of their princes, *Simon* and *Alexander*, ſought after no greater matter, but contenting themſelues with their owne countrey, although but ſmall, thought themſelues well if they might keepe and defend the ſame; by nature and ſituation ſo ſtrong, as that there is ſcarce any way vnto it, by reaſon of the high and broken mountaines, the thicke woods, and ſtrait paſſages.

The ſecond opinion for making of war vpō the king of Fez and Morocco & the reaſon thereof.

The ſecond opinion which was deliuered, was for the tranſportation of his warres into AFFRICKE againſt the king of MOROCCO, commonly called the Seriphe: and that for theſe cauſes moſt, It would be a great ſhame and reproach (as they ſaid) vnto the *Othoman* empire, that it was not yet able to ſubdue theſe Moores and people of AFFRICKE, in number but few: neither was it leſſe ſhame or diſhonour vnto the *Othoman* emperours, to haue ſo ſmall a territorie
E in AFRICA, being the third part of the world, which by reaſon of the neereneſſe vnto ITALIE, had long time held wars with the Romans. Beſide that, ALGIERS and TVNES could neuer be ſafely kept by the Turks; neither that the ſubiects & pyrats which inhabited thoſe cities would euer be content or at quiet, vntill they had againe got that kingdome into their hands. The promontorie of AGVERO and port of LARACE (two ports without the ſtraits) were (as they ſaid) to be taken, as places very commodious for the Turks friends, ſeeking in thoſe ſeas after bootie, and for the ſecuring of their trade. And although the Seriphe were himſelfe a Mahometane, and held his kingdome as a tributarie vnto the *Othoman* empire; yet had he ſecret intelligence with the Spaniard and the knights of MALTA, whereby they not long ſince had vpon the ſudden al-
F moſt ſurpriſed TRIPOLIS, he in the meane time as it were winking thereat. And that although the Spaniard poſſeſſed in AFFRICKE, MARASCHEBIR, ORAN, PEGNON, TANGER, ARZILIA, MAZAGA, CEVTE or *SEPTA*, places whereby he might helpe and aſſiſt the Moores; yet might his force and attempts by a ſtrong fleet be eaſily hindred, and SPAINE it ſelfe infeſted. Beſide that, the *S*paniards had yet in ſuch freſh remembrance the loſſe of TVNES, GVLETTA (places by them thought inexpugnable, and yet by *Sinan Baſſa* to his immortall praiſe taken)

ken) as that they would not for the Moores ſake eaſily ſeeme to attempt any thing againſt the Turks.. G

The third opinion concerning the conqueſt of Malta.

The third opinion was concerning the war to be made againſt them of MALTA, which was by a ſtrong fleet to be performed: for that the gallies of MALTA did daily great hurt, as well vnto the Turks merchants, as vnto ſuch as for deuotion ſake trauelled by ſea vnto MECHA. And that therefore the war was thither to be transferred, not onely for religions ſake and to aſſecure the paſſage thither from the incurſions of the Malteſes, but in reuenge of the old and late iniuries by them done; and eſpecially to blot out the infamie and diſgrace which the Great Sultan *Solyman* had incurred, at ſuch time as he had in vaine beſieged that iſland, & to requite the loſſe by him there ſuſtained. Beſide that, they alſo alledged the common complaints of the ſubiects: for that there were many which pitiouſly lamented the miſerie and calamitie, ſome of their H friends, ſome their kinsfolk, whom they knew to liue in moſt woful ſeruitude with thoſe knights, and whom they moſt earneſtly deſired to haue now ſet at libertie: complaining, his ſubiects to haue bin ſo far from ſuffering of any ſuch things from thoſe knights in the time of his anceſtors, as that contrariwiſe they themſelues were by them driuen out of the iſland of the RHODES, the ſtrongeſt bulwarke of the Chriſtian common-weale toward the Eaſt. Being moreouer worthie alſo to be chaſtiſed, for that they had holpen the rebellious Moores with all kind of munition, and had themſelues attempted to haue ſurpriſed MODON.

The fourth opinion for war to be made againſt the K. of Spaine, and the reaſons thereof.

In the fourth place were they which were of opinion, that it were beſt for him to make warre vpon the king of SPAINE. Theſe men alleadged it to be impoſſible for the Turkiſh empire to aſpire vnto the Monarchie of the whole world (whereunto all the Turks actions and deuiſes I were alwaies as at a certain marke directed) except the Spaniard his great ſtrength and power were firſt weakned, wherein he ſeemed to ſurpaſſe all other the Chriſtian kings and princes: and that there was no feare leaſt he ſhould beſiege ALGIERS, which he knew to be now much better fortified than it was in the time of the emperour *Charles* the fifth. And that although the Spaniards without ceaſing beſought their king for the vndertaking of that expedition, by reaſon of the new loſſes and harmes which they daily receiued from the pyrats of AFRICA; yet would he not hearken vnto their requeſt, for feare of the danger imminent both to himſelfe & his ſubiects from the enemies fleet, which he ſhould in ſo doing draw into the Spaniſh ſeas: neither would the Spaniſh gallies eaſily come into the Turkes countries in the Eaſt, for being too farre from their owne countrie, which for the moſt part ſtood in need of their helpe. And that the king of K SPAINE was with the multitude of his buſineſſe, or other his vrgent affaires ſtill ſo hindred, as that he could not ſuddenly put in execution what his counſell for the wars ſhould decree. As alſo how much it was to be gathered by that which happened not long ſince at PREVEZA and NAVARINVM, That the Spaniards ſhunned the *Othoman* forces: as alſo how warily the king delt in all his affaires, leaſt at length againſt his will he ſhould be enforced to enter into warres with the Turke, was moſt manifeſt; as was to be ſeene when as of late about the end of the Perſian warre, he refuſed to giue aide vnto the Perſian king whom he might haue holpen, and was ſo before wont to do. And in caſe that he would ſtand vpon his guard, and by force ſeeke to repell force; yet ſhould he ſcarce haue ſo much ſtrength as (beſide thoſe wars which he now maketh in diuers places) to be able to vndertake alſo a new warre, and to find ſo many ſouldiors, with ſo L much coine and other things neceſſarie for ſo great a war. It ſtood him in hand (as they ſaid) to defend the low countries, and to recouer againe the prouinces their loſt, which of themſelues wonderful ſtrong, both by reaſon of the ſea and the multitude of the riuers, were alſo with wonderfull courage and pertinacie defended by the inhabitants, for there libertie and religions ſake. Whereunto the Engliſh (at deadly hatred with the Spaniard) might many waies giue great helpe, if they ſhould inuade PORTINGAL, or with their ſhips lie in wait for his Indian fleet, or make incurſions into other his kingdomes, as they did not long ſince at the GROINE and CADEZ; places moſt fit to trouble SPAINE, and to hinder his traffique into the Indies or other places. Beſide that, he was at that time ſo intangled with his warres in FRANCE, as that he could ſcarce find how to diſpatch himſelfe therof, without the loſſe of his honour and credit. And ad- M mit he ſhould make peace with the aforſaid princes, in ſuch ſort as that he ſhould not frō thence forth from them receiue any harme; yet were other means to be ſought & taken in hand for his farther diſturbance; as by troubling his rich trade for ſpices & other merchandiſe, wherof he receiueth great profit; as alſo if need were, by driuing his ſhips out of the Perſian gulfe, by the help

of

A of thoſe gallies which ſtill lie at rode at POSSIDIVM, which we now call SVZ. And that the fortreſſes and ſtrong holds he there poſſeſſeth, were to be ſet vpon, and if it might be taken from him; as was once attempted againſt the Portingals at DIV and ORMVZ: the like whereof *Alfonſus Albuquercius* (the king of PORTINGAL his viceroy in INDIA) attempted, when as with his light horſemen running through that countrie, he thought vpon a ſudden to haue ſpoyled MECHA, and to haue robbed the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* (as had happened vnder the empire of the Sultans) and as *Traian* the emperour had long ſince in like manner attempted to rage and ſpoyle. Thoſe places which he poſſeſſed in AFFRICKE were (as they ſaid) to bee ſet vpon, and the coaſt of SPAINE towards the Mediterranean to bee infeſted: ſo at length to gratifie the Moores his ſubiects, who ſtill inſtantly requeſted the ſame, that ſo they might more ſafely traffique and trauell, and that ſo the Moores might at length be deliuered from the imperious command of the Spaniards: of which exploit Sultan *Selymus* lately before dead, was in his life time well perſuaded; but might now at this time be much more commodiouſly done, for that the Mooriſh nation was now greatly increaſed, and much oppreſſed by the Spaniards; and hauing got great wealth by the trade of merchandiſe, euen by nature or religion had conceiued a mortall hatred againſt the Spaniards: whereunto might not a little auaile the ports in AFFICKE, where into the Turkes fleet might at all times in ſafetie retire. And in briefe, that which was of greateſt importance to the better ſucceſſe of this war, the French king and the queene of ENGLAND, had of their owne accord promiſed the continuation of their wars, and that the French king ſhould inuade NAVARRE, and by force of armes recouer the right he pretended vnto that kingdome; whileſt in the meane time, the queene of ENGLAND ſhould not only trouble him in the Weſt Indies, and other places of the Ocean towards the North and the Weſt, but might alſo ſtir vp new broiles in the kingdome of PORTINGALE, where moſt part of the people with great impatiencie beare the prowd commaund of the Spaniard: as perſuaded (& that truly) all their proſperitie and quietnes to haue been loſt, togither with their laſt king their true and lawfull ſoueraigne. For he at peace with the kings of FRANCE and ENGLAND, exceedingly thereby enriched his ſubiects by traffick: whereas ſince they fell into the hands of the *Spaniard*, they daily complaine of their new loſſes and dangers by reaſon of his perpetuall wars. Moreouer, that there was to be found great ſtore of exiled *Spaniards* diſperſed here and there, which being malecontent and wearie of the *Spaniſh* gouernment, were fled not only out of PORTINGAL, but euen out of ARAGON & other parts of his kingdome: which now liuing in FRANCE, ENGLAND, and CONSTANTINOPLE, both ſecretly and openly liberally offered great helps: the like whereof many of the Moores alſo promiſed. All which togither ſeemed to promiſe a moſt eaſie expedition and certaine victorie, if any ſhould vpon the ſudden inuade *SPAINE*; for that there was almoſt no vſe of armes, the inhabitants at home ſeldome times exerciſing themſelues therein: neither in places needfull hauing any ordinarie garriſons, and but few horſes fit for ſeruice. And that in fine it was to be conſidered, *SPAINE* to be greatly bared of men which knew how valiantly and couragiouſly to mannage armes, for the often choiſe they make of them, which almoſt moſt daily tranſported into the Indies, ITALIE, and the low countries, whereby the ſtrength of his countrie muſt needs be exceedingly impaired: ſo that if they ſhould be inuaded with any ſtrong and mightie armie, they might ſeeme hardly able to be holpen or defended by their owne people, but ſhould need of the aid and help of the other neere prouinces ſubiect vnto this kingdom: which if they ſhould be either letted, or ſtay to come in good time, they ſhould leaue ſo much the more eaſie victorie vnto their enemies.

B G D E

In the fift place were they which went about to perſuade *Amurath* to breake his league with the Venetians, vſing reaſons rather probable than true; although they might ſeeme vnto the Turks leſſe doubtfull, for that men eaſily and willingly beleeue ſuch things as they themſelues deſire. Theſe men went about to proue no expedition to be of leſſe difficultie than this, as iudging of things preſent by the euent of former warres paſſed; wherin the Turks had alwaies taken ſomething from the Venetians: who to redeeme their peace, were diuers waies enforced to ſatisfie the Turkes. That the Venetian common-weale was affraid of the Turks and abhorred war, was manifeſt they ſaid in that, that in all actions it had propounded vnto it ſelfe peace, as the end thereof; and after the manner of their anceſtors, neuer entred into wars, but enforced thereunto: and would happily vpon the firſt denouncing of warres, willingly depart with certaine places for feare of greater harme, or to be vtterly ouercome, as it appeared they did in the yeelding

The firſt opinion for the inuaſion of the Venetians, and the reaſons why.

F

yeelding vp of CYPRVS. The power and forcewhereof was not ſo great,as that it could alone ſtand againſt the great Sultan: and to confederat it ſelfe with others,would require no ſmall delay,for the great and many difficulties which commonly vſed to ariſe in making of leagues;not being now ſo conioined with the Spaniard as in times paſt,of whoſe aid it being of late deſtitut, was conſtrained to make an hard peace with *Selymus*. And if ſo be the Spaniard would needs ioyne himſelfe vnto the Venetians againſt the Turkes, yet that he could by no meanes affourd vnto them ſuch aid and ſupplies as were of neceſſitie to be required vnto ſo great a war,he himſelfe being in his warres otherwiſe ſo intangled: as for all other confederation they could make without him,to be but weake and to no purpoſe. That which the Pope could do herein to be but little: for albeit he ſhould according to his duetie exhort other Chriſtian princes to giue aid,and to ſtirre them vp vnto this warre, yet that beſide ſome little ſupplie of mony hardly drawne out of his owne coffers and the eccleſiaſticall reuenues,he could ſcarcely performe any thing more; or when he had done his vttermoſt deuoire, could but ioyne fiue gallies of his owne vnto the Venetian fleet: which with the gallies of the duke of SAVOY,of the knights of MALTA,and of the Florentines, could but make a fleet of ſome twentie gallies,which was but a ſmall matter. Beſides that the Turks were perſuaded,that betwixt the Venetian ſtate and the other Chriſtian princes was no ſuch friendſhip and good agreement, as the greatneſſe of the imminent danger of that war,and as the neceſſitie of the cauſe would require: and that hitherto their treaſures had bin ſo exhauſted in paying the debt they were run into in the laſt war,and in building of fortreſſes,that happily they were not now ſo furniſhed with coyne,as was requiſit for the defraying of ſo great a war. And vnto this war againſt the Venetians, conſented almoſt all the Viſier Baſſaes, differing only in this, Where or againſt what place of the Venetian territorie this war were to be firſt begun: ſome naming one place,and ſome another (for diuers reaſons them thereunto leading) which for breuitie we paſſe ouer. G H I

The ſixt opinion for the attempting of Italie, and the reaſons thereof.

Otherſome of the Baſſaes in the ſixt place, reiecting all the former opinions concerning the warre to be taken in hand,would haue had all the forces of the *Othoman* empire,as well by land as ſea, to haue beene conuerted againſt ITALIE: for that otherwiſe the Turkes ſhould neuer come vnto the Monarchie of the whole would (whereunto as at a marke they had directed all their actions) except they did firſt ſubdue ITALIE. For that this countrie, as the centre of the whole world,was wont to giue both counſell and aid vnto the reſt of the limbes,whereby the deuices of others were croſſed: and that the Romanes had at length commaunded ouer all the world,eſpecially for that they held in poſſeſſion this countrey. Hereat did the Hunnes, the Alani and Gothes, the Vandales, the Frenchmen, Spaniards, and Saraſins, direct all their thoughts and cogitations. In fine they concluded, That no expedition could be taken in hand more honourable or profitable than this: for that ITALIE was as a queene amongſt other prouinces,for commodious ſituation, the wholeſomeneſſe of the aire,the plentie of all things neceſſarie for mans life,for great, faire, and moſt rich cities, for the auncient glorie and maieſtie of the Romane empire,and many other cauſes alſo. Neither that this expedition was to be deemed of much difficultie, for that ITALIE was vnder the rule of diuers princes, vnto whoſe commaund moſt of their ſubiects vnwillingly obeyed: as alſo for that the inhabitants of that countrie had now for many yeares liued in continuall peace, and were therefore the more effeminate and fearefull,and ſo vnfit for the warres: and that if that expedition were in one or diuers places taken in hand before the corne were full ripe,the Turks in that ſo fruitfull a countrie could neuer want neceſſaries for them to liue vpon; whereas the inhabitants in great number wanting the ſame,and ſhut vp within the wals and fortifications of their cities and ſtrong towns,ſhould be brought into extreame wants: which was the more euidently to bee ſeene, for that at this time wherein they were at peace, they had not corne ſufficient in the countrie for ſuch a multitude of people to liue vpon, but were glad to haue it brought vnto them from other places,eſpecially from PELOPONESVS, CONSTANTINOPLE, and the cities vpon the coaſt of the great Ocean. Furthermore,that it was to be conſidered,that moſt part of the Italians liued by no other meanes than by their handie labour,or the trade of merchandiſe; of which meanes if they were depriued,they ſhould in ſhort time be brought to that point,as to be glad to accept of ſuch conditions as the victor ſhould propound vnto them,or as tributaries to ſubmit themſelues vnto the *Othoman* gouernment. Neither that the ſouldiors would vnwillingly be drawne vnto that war; for that they were not to paſſe through barren regions of the enemie,froſen with yſe,or deſolat, K L M

either

A either by rough woods or inacceſſible mountains; but were all the way thither to trauel through their owne countrie, and as it were in the ſight of their own houſes: and if the Turks could oftentimes enter ſo far, when as they had their confines more remote, and their paſſages more difficult, that the ſame might now much more eaſily be effected, when as they had a far greater opportunitie, and their enemies ſo neere at hand.

The ſeuenth opinion for war to be made againſt the Polonian, and the reaſons thereof.

The ſeuenth opinion was theirs, which thought it beſt to haue the war transferred into Polonia, and from thence into Hvngaria and Germanie: for which they alleadged theſe reaſons, Firſt, for that they thought it a diſgrace vnto the maieſtie & reputation of the *Othoman* empire, That the king of Polonia had ſometime refuſed to pay his tribute due (for ſo the Turks account of all ſuch preſents as are vnto their Sultan vſually ſent by their neighbor princes, of courteſie) & that therefore he was by force of armes to be compelled therunto. Which they thought B would the more eaſily be obtained, for that there was much ſecret hatred and heart-burning amongſt the Polonian nobilitie. Neither that it would be any difficult or dangerous war to bee taken in hand: for as much as Polonia was confined with Moldavia, the Tartars, and the Sanzacks of Acherman, Bendera, and Vosia: and moreouer, for that the Turks could neuer haue any aſſured or full poſſeſſion of Moldavia or Valachia, except the inſolencie of the Polonians were repreſſed; the Vayuods of which countries, when they had enriched themſelues with much wealth, vſed ſtil to flie into the kingdome of Polonia. Beſides that, they ſhould thereby reuenge themſelues for the iniuries done them by the Coſſackes, and haue more free and ſafe trafficke into Mvscovie, and bring a terrour vpon the duke of Mvscovie, by reaſon of the C nighneſſe of the countrie: which great duke was an impediment vnto the *Othoman* emperour, that he conquered not the whole kingdome of Persia. And when they had by this meanes by little and little drawne vnto Germanie, happily it might ſo come to paſſe, as that the Chriſtian emperor ſhould thereby receiue ſome notable loſſe, his empire being ſtill more and more expoſed and enuironed with the Turks forces & garriſons. Polonia they ſaid to be a plaine & open countrie, neither to haue any ſtrong places for to withſtand them, and the inhabitants to haue ſmall skill in martiall affaires, for that they had now long liued in peace. For as for the war that they had with *Maximilian* the Archduke of Avstria, it continued not long: and king *Stephen* in the late wars he had with the Muſcouite, vſed for moſt part the Hungarian ſouldiors, and ended thoſe wars rather by beſieging than fighting.

The eight opinion for war to be made againſt the Emperor, and the reaſons thereof.

D They which in the eight and laſt place deliuered their opinions concerning the intended war, perſuaded, to haue it conuerted vpon the Chriſtian emperour; whom the Turks call the king of Vienna. The cauſes they alleadged for the beginning of this warre was, For that the Vſcocchi were growne ſo inſolent as to make good priſe of the Turks both by ſea and land; in ſuch ſort, as that not onely for the harmes which they did, but euen for the maieſtie and honour of the *Othoman* empire, their inſolencie was not longer to be ſuffered. By whoſe iniuries it was eſpecially brought to paſſe, that the merchants to their great hinderance in priuat, & the Sultans great loſſe in common, hauing left the towne of Narenta or Narona in the Turkes dominion, had remoued their mart to Salona (now called Spalato) a towne of the Venetians: and that yet for all that was not ſo ſufficiently prouided for the ſecuritie of the ſaid merchants, al- E though there were peace betwixt the emperor and the Venetians: for that theſe vnruly men for moſt part liuing vpon the ſpoyle, troubled all both by ſea and land with their robberies, driuing away mens cattell, burning the villages, and taking away the young babes out of the mothers armes and laps. Whereby it was eaſily to be ſeene, what mind they were of: and that it was not to be doubted, but that if occaſion ſhould ſerue for them to ſurpriſe any of the Turkes ſtrong holds vpon the frontires, they would with all their power attempt the ſame: which what a diſhonour and infamie (not to ſpeake of the loſſe) it would be vnto the whole *Othoman* empire, euery man might eaſily gheſſe. Neither that it was vnknowne how little the Chriſtian emperor had eſteemed of the Turke, at ſuch time as he was in warre with the Perſian, paying his tribute F too late at his pleaſure; an euident ſigne rather of violating than of eſtabliſhing the league. And that the good ſucceſſe of this warre was not to be deemed either difficult or doubtfull: for that the attempt might be giuen both by Croatia, Hvngarie, and Avstria, countries abounding with all things neceſſarie for the maintenance of a great armie; as alſo for that they were almoſt to trauell all the way in the Turkes owne territorie. Beſide that, the chiefe fortreſſes of Hvngarie, namely Belgrade, Bvda, and Alba Regalis, with many other ſtrong pla-

ces,were alreadie holden by the Turks garrisons, whether their armies might in all cases of extremitie in safetie retire, or out of the same garrisons repaire their losses, if any should be. The Roman empire (as they said)was more desirous of peace than war;and the princes,of nothing more carefull than how to heape vp and preserue their treasures: and the people of GERMANIE for that of long they had had no wars,to be lesse fit now to beare armes, and worse to be commaunded by their captaine; alwaies hauing in distrust the Hungarians,the Italians,and Spaniards,for that those nations are not beloued,but rather hated of the Germans,being not at vnitie among themselues,but diuided,especially about matters of religion. Neither that it was to bee feared,least forreine princes should giue aid vnto the emperor in this warre: The Polonian and Transyluanian to liue now in peace with the Turke,and therfore would by no means turne the heat of this warre into their owne bosomes: as also for that the Polonians were afraid,least in so doing they should be driuen out of their countrie,and enforced to remoue themselues toward the frosen sea: and the Transyluanian hauing receiued his soueraigntie from the Turke,no lesse in feare(if he should so do)to be of him againe stript and spoyled of the same: As for the king of SPAINE, although he were of such power, as might affoord vnto the house of AVSTRIA great aid,yet that he was in other places now too much busied: and that the bishop of ROME could not in all places be readie to serue his turne: the princes of ITALIE would not spend their subiects and treasures to pleasure another man: and that the Venetian State would not rashly stir vp the Turks armes against themselues, but rather at ease expect the euent of the warre than to entangle themselues with other mens dangers. These were the chiefe opinions of the great Bassaes concerning the war to be taken in hand, not so much proceeding from any ripe or sound aduice(as commonly they do)but rather from a certaine barbarous insolencie and contempt of others,wherewith they moued,doe oftentimes vainely persuade them of the easie performance of diuers expeditions: which in proofe they find to be not only most difficult, but vnto themselues also most pernitious.

Amurath resolueth to make war vpon the emperor, with the reasons moouing him thereunto.

In this so great diuersitie of opinions stood *Amurath*, of long in doubt what to resolue vpon: desirous he was in all places to shew his power,and(if it were possible)to exceed the glorie of his predecessors,as he thought himselfe to haue alreadie done in PERSIA;hauing as he boasted, by his seruants there performed more than they could themselues in person with their mightie armies. Wherefore contenting himselfe with that he had alreadie done in the East, hee resolued now to turne his forces against the Christian emperor towards the West, and that for diuers respects. First, it grieued him to see the honour of the house of AVSTRIA, and that it durst to make head against him: besides that,to make warre vpon a countrie confining vpon his owne,would be a thing of farre lesse difficultie than was the Persian war, where his armies were now still to be led through his owne peaceable countries, from whence they were to be at all times plentifully relieued with victuals & whatsoeuer els they needed. In which opinion he was also confirmed by *Sinan Bassa*; who hauing in vaine persuaded him to haue made war against the Venetians, furthered now this warre, in hope thereby to recouer his credit and reputation, (before greatly impayred abroad by the little he did in PERSIA,as also at CONSTANTINOPLE, by the discord betwixt him and *Ferat Bassa*, commonly called the Blacke Serpent) as also to encrease his wealth and riches: which shortly after sorted to his desire,being by the great Sultan *Amurath* appointed Generall for those wars. But aboue all others, *Hassan Bassa* of BOSNA furthered this matter,in hope thereby to haue gained great riches(as the Turkes manner is) together with the greatest honours of the field,as hee was most vainely persuaded by his cold prophets, to whom he gaue no small credit. He therefore daily certified *Amurath* of the harmes which the Vscocchi and other the Archduke his seruants and subiects did vpon the frontires of his territories: telling him of their burnings, spoylings,and robbings, inciting him to begin his war in CROATIA,and so to continue the same either against the emperour, or the Venetians, or els vpon the sudden that way to breake into ITALIE,as had sometime the like beene done in the time of *Mahomet*, *Baiazet*, and *Solyman*, his noble progenitours: whereby to bring a great terrour vpon all the princes of ITALIE, and to enrich his souldiours with rich spoiles. By which his importunitie he(as a most mortall enemie not only vnto the house of AVSTRIA, but vnto all Christendome)got leaue to begin those stirs in the frontires of the empire, which were first fatall vnto himselfe,and haue euer since euen vntill this day notably exercised the armes of these two last *Othoman* emperours *Amurath* and *Mahomet*; as also the Christian emperour, with others

A others his friends and confederats. Yet vnto this leaue granted vnto the Baſſa, was this conditi" on at the firſt annexed, That he ſhould not ſeeme to do it by the commandement of *Amurath* but of himſelfe, vnder colour to reſtraine the Vſcocchi; who as well by land as by ſea (as he pretended) ſpoiled both the Chriſtians and Turks, by the great libertie of the princes of AVSTRIA, hauing ſmall care to chaſten them.

Now was it no great matter for *Haſſan Baſſa* to do what *Amurath* his great lord and maſter had commanded, for the diſturbing of the peace betwixt him and the Chriſtian emperour: the Turkes leagues with their neighbour princes being ſeldome ſo religiouſly kept, but that as well their ſouldiors in garriſon vpon their frontiers by land, as their aduenturers by ſea, might to keep themſelues doing, vpon a militarie inſolencie (as the Turkes tearme it) now and then at their
B pleaſures make incurſions for bootie both by ſea and land: which anſwered with the like from their neighbours ſo moleſted, there neuer wanted new grieuances and iuſt cauſes of complaint, to the ſtirring vp of greater troubles, euen amongſt the greateſt princes. The Venetians thus wronged at ſea, and their merchants robbed; by their embaſſadours complained at CONSTANTINOPLE of the iniuries done them by the Turkes pyrats, requiring to haue them called home, and iuſtice done vpon them. In like manner the emperour alſo, ſeeing many things both this yeare and the next attempted by *Haſſan Baſſa* in CROATIA, and the other Turkes in HVNGARIE, contrary to the league, to the great diſturbance of his ſubiects in both thoſe countries, by his embaſſadour then lying at CONSTANTINOPLE, complained of theſe outrages, deſiring to
C know whether they were done by the conſent and knowledge of *Amurath* or not; and if not, then to require that order might bee taken for the reſtraining thereof: which was accordingly done, and thoſe incurſions for a while ſtaied, and the former peace continued. *Amurath* ſtill making ſhew as if hee were willing that the league agreed vpon for eight yeares, ſhould not be in any wiſe on his part infringed. At which time the Perſian kings ſonne (the league not long before concluded) died in the Turks court, where hee lay in hoſtage: whoſe dead bodie *Amurath* cauſed to be honorably ſent home to his father into PERSIA, with an apologie in defence of himſelfe, againſt the ſuſpition conceiued by ſome, that he ſhould haue been the cauſe of the vntimely death of that yong prince, ſtill vrging withall the confirmation of the league, which by the death of the prince was like enough to haue been broken. Whereof *Amurath* was the
D more deſirous, for that perſuaded by his Baſſaes (as is aforeſaid) to make warres with the emperour (although hee notably diſſembled the ſame) hee was in hope thereby to adde vnto his empire the reliques of HVNGARIE, with ſome good part of the territories of the houſe of AVSTRIA alſo, and ſo to open himſelfe a way into the heart of GERMANIE. For which purpoſes hee now cauſed very great preparation to bee made, and a ſtrong armie to bee raiſed: and at the ſame time put a great fleet of gallies into the Archipelago for the ſafetie of his iſlands in that ſea.

1591

The Perſian kings ſonne ſlaine dieth in the Turkes court.

According to theſe deſignements, the Baſſa of BOSNA, by the commandement of *Amurath*, with an armie of fiftie thouſand entred into CROATIA, and without reſiſtance burnt and deſtroied the countrey before him, ſparing nothing that came in his way. And not ſo contented, laid
E ſiege to the citie of WIHITZ, being the metropoliticall citie of that countrey, ſtrongly ſituate as it were in an iſland, compaſſed about with the riuer Vna: Which citie, after hee had ſore battered, and twiſe aſſalted, was by the diſtreſſed defendants (now deſpairing of reliefe, and vnable longer to hold it out) yeelded vnto the Baſſa vpon compoſition, That the Germain ſoldiors there in gariſon, might in ſafetie with bagge and baggage depart; and that ſuch of the Chriſtian citiſens as would, might there ſtill remain without hurt from the Turks, either in body or goods. Which conditions the Baſſa faithfully performed to the garriſon ſouldiors, whom in number but foure hundred, he ſent with ſafe conuoy into their owne territorie: but afterwards contrarie to his faith and promiſe, exerciſed all manner of Turkiſh tyrannie vpon the poore citiſens. The emperour troubled with this vnexpected inuaſion of the Turks, ſent the lord *Petzen* (whom he
F had many times imployed in embaſſages to the Turke) to pray ayd of the Germain princes againſt the common enemie: who according to the greatneſſe of the danger, in large tearmes promiſed their helpe. The firſt that made head, was *Erneſtus* archduke of AVSTRIA, the emperours brother; who with fiue thouſand ſouldiors came from VIENNA to SAVARIA, commonly called GREIS, the Metropolis of STIRIA: to whom repaired daily more ſtrength out of CARINTHIA.

1592

Wihitz the Metropoliticall city of Croatia yeelded to the Turke.

In

The Christians ouerthrowne.

In the meane time, the Turks army daily increasing in CROATIA, inclosed sixe thousand foot- G
men, and fiue hundred horsemen of the Christians, who had taken the mountaines, woods, and
strait passages, and so straitly beset them, that of all that number few escaped with life: amongst
whom many valiant souldiors and expert captaines were slaine; namely, *Iames Prants*, *George*
Plesbach, and *Iohn Weluerdurff*. The Bassa after the barbarous maner of the Turkes, to make his
victory more famous, laded sixe wagons with the heads of the slaine Christians. The Turks thus
raging in CROATIA, brought a generall feare vpon all HVNGARIE, BAVARIA, BOHEMIA, STIRIA,
CARINTHIA, SILESIA, and the rest of the prouinces thereabouts. Whereupon the emperour
calling together the states of SILESIA and MOLDAVIA, declared vnto them the imminent danger;
persuading them to ioyne their forces with the rest, for the repulsing of so dangerous an enemy,
and so imminent a danger. H

After long delay, *Ernestus* the archduke (the tenth of August) came to the emperour his bro-
ther, with the embassador of HVNGARIE; and the seauenth day after were called together the
embassadours of the kingdomes and prouinces of the empire, where it was throughly debated,
how the Turkes were to be resisted, and their attempts infringed; as also from whence, forces,
money, and other warlike prouision was to be raised. For now it was manifestly seene, that lon-
ger to delay the matter was dangerous: and the rather, for that the Beglerbeg (or great com-
maunder) of GRÆCIA, with threescore thousand select souldiors both horse and foot, of long
time exercised in the Persian warres, was ere long expected; who ioyning with the rest of the
Turks armie, might doe great matters both in HVNGARIE, and the places adioyning. For pre-
uenting of which so great and manifest dangers, they sate daily in counsell in PRAGE, yea often- I
times euen from morning vntil night: for the Hungarians, & especially the lord *Nadasti*, a most
noble and valiant gentleman amongst them, instantly vrged to haue succours sent into HVNGA-
RIE; for as much as the Turkish emperour, if he should get into his hands the rest of the townes
and castles yet holden by the Christians in HVNGARIE, it was to be feared lest he should in short
time after endanger the whole state of GERMANIE: the strength whereof the Turke feared not
so much, as hee did those poore reliques of HVNGARIE. Others were no lesse carefull of the
dangers of CROATIA and STIRIA, as more proper to themselues, the enemie now there ra-
ging. In these so great dangers, the Hungarians with the rest of the distressed, cried vpon the em-
perour for helpe; and he likewise called vpon the princes of the empire. Diuers assemblies were
made in BOHEMIA, HVNGARIE, MORAVIA, SILESIA, and the other prouinces of the emperours, and K
embassadours sent from almost all the Germane princes to the emperour: all was full of con-
sultation, but as for helpe, that came in very slowly; yet such as was to be had, was forthwith sent
into CROATIA, to defend the fortresses there against the farther attempts and proceedings of the
furious enemie.

Certaine vaine attempts of the Turkes.

The eighteenth of September, the Turks with all warlike prouision, vpon the sudden by night
assaulted the strong castle of TOCCAY in the vpper HVNGARIE, in hope to haue surprised it: but
finding it a matter of more difficultie than they had before imagined, they departed thence, and
attempted the lesser COMARA, which standing in a marish ground, was also easily defended. At
which time also the Bassa of BVDA, with his power entred into the frontiers of the Christians,
but hauing well viewed the cities, townes, castles, and forts vpon those borders, and finding no- L
thing for his purpose, he without any thing doing returned againe to BVDA.

Turopolis spoiled by the Turkes.

The six and twentieth day of September, *Hassan* the Bassa of BOSNA encamped with his army
betwixt the riuers of Kulp and Sauus, and in the darkenesse of the night passing ouer part of his
armie into TVROPOLIS, with fire and sword most miserably spoiled all that pleasant and fertile
island; the lord of *Bonny* to whom the keeping thereof was committed, labouring in vaine to
defend the same.

About the end of this moneth, the Bassa of ZIGET, with the Sanzackes of MOHAS, KOP-
PAN, and QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ, and other Turkes of great name, came with a strong armie,
and encamped betweene ZIGET and RODESTO. And shortly after newes was brought to the M
emperours court, that KANYSIA a citie of STIRIA (not farre from the riuer Zala) was hardly
besieged by the enemy, and that the Turks in comming thither had taken many christians cap-
tiues, whom they had sent to be sold at CONSTANTINOPLE; and that there was in the Turkes ar-
my about an hundred & threescore thousand men. But for as much as the Christian army daily
increased also, and was now growen to the number of threescore thousand, men began to hope
well,

A well, that the enemies rage would be ſtaied from any farther proceeding. About the ſame time *Erneſtus* the archduke appointed Generall of the army, with the Marqueſſe (ſonne to *Ferdinand* the archduke) his lieutenant, came both vnto the armie.

In theſe preparations, about the beginning of October, heauie newes was brought vnto the Emperours Court, how that ſeauen thouſand men, whom hee but a little before had ſent into CROATIA, vnder the conduct of *Thomas Artelius Beane*, *George Gleichſpacher*, and *Dionyſius Denke*, to hinder the courſe of the Turks proceedings, being encamped betwixt WIHITZ and CAROLSTAT; and hauing the twelfth of September diſcouered from an high hill certaine companies of the Turks (which were indeed of purpoſe come thither to view the armie of the Chriſtians) ſent out fiftie horſmen to diſcouer the Turkes armie where it lay, and what it attempted.
B Who finding no mo of the Turkes, than thoſe whom they had before ſeene from the mountaine, returned againe vnto the armie with ſuch ſimple intelligence: whereunto the Chriſtians giuing credit, became ſecure in their tents, as men out of feare of the enemie, and ſo kept but negligent watch. But in this ſo great ſecuritie, the enemie on a ſudden came vpon them, and with an hundred thouſand men brake into their trenches: where the Chriſtian footmen for all that, for the ſpace of foure houres, maintained a notable fight, wherein many were on both ſides ſlaine. But the poore Chriſtians being beſet round, and oppreſſed with the multitude of their enemies, were there ſlaine almoſt all: yet the captaines ſeeing the danger, by ſpeedie flight ſaued their liues; for which their cowardiſe & careleſſe negligence, they were afterwards apprehended and beheaded. Almoſt all the common ſoldiors were there ſlaine: yea ſuch as fell aliue
C into the hand of the enemie, were moſt cruelly cut in pieces. The ſpoile alſo of the tents of the Chriſtians, fell vnto the enemy: wherin beſide the abundance of other things, they found ſixtie thouſand dollars, brought but two daies before from LINTZ for the ſouldiors pay. The Turkes after their barbarous manner, in oſtentation of their victory, laded fourteene wagons with the heads of the ſlaine Chriſtians, which they ſent vnto diuers of their places thereabouts. This was indeed a great victory, but gained by the Turkes with much blood: for the Chriſtians fighting as men deſperate, ſlew of their enemies aboue twelue thouſand, and died themſelues as men rather with number oppreſſed, than with true valour vanquiſhed.

The night following, the Turks vpon the ſudden in the dead time of the night, ſurpriſed the caſtle of *S. George*, and without reſpect of age or ſex cruelly put to the ſword all them that were
D therein, except an hundred and fiftie perſons whom they caried away captiues; and ſo ſetting the caſtle on fire, departed. At the ſame time, diuers companies of the Turkes were ſeene about SISEG, who led away with them about ſix hundred Chriſtians into moſt miſerable captiuitie. And that nothing might be wanting vnto the calamities of this ſo miſerable a waſted countrey: three hundred wagons charged with all manner of prouiſion ſent out of the prouinces thereby for the reliefe of the garriſon ſouldiors in CROATIA, were all intercepted by the Turkes, and ſo carried away.

The caſtle Saint George ſurpriſed by the Turks.

The emperour conſidering theſe proceedings of the Turkes, and that their ſtrength daily encreaſed, gaue notice by writing to all the princes and ſtates of the empire, what incurſions the Turks had of late made into CROATIA, and the frontiers of HVNGARIE, with other places neere
E vnto them: and that the Beglerbeg of GRÆCIA, with the Baſſaes of BOSNA, BVDA, and TEMESVVAR, without regard of the league yet in force, had taken diuers cities, townes, caſtles, & ſtrong places, and ſo extended the bounds of their dominion aboue fortie German miles, hauing ſlain or caried away into captiuitie the poore inhabitants of thoſe countries; and now to be growne to that height of pride, that except their farther proceedings were with like forces repreſſed, they would in ſhort time ſet foot into GERMANIE it ſelfe, and poſſeſſing themſelues of STIRIA and CARINTHIA, would from thence daily more and more encroach vpon the empire; which to hinder was not in his power only, but required their helpe in generall: wherfore he requeſted them now at length, in ſo publike a danger to open their cofers, & to ſend out their forces againſt the common enemy. Which requeſt of the emperors, with the due conſideration of ſo great a dan-
F ger, moued not only the princes and ſtates of the empire, but others alſo farther off, to yeeld liberall contribution vnto ſo neceſſarie and generall a cauſe.

The emperour prayeth aid again of the Germane princes.

The Turkes now hearing of the great preparation of the Chriſtian princes, beſide the armie which was alreadie in the field; and that they had made a ſtrong bridge ouer the riuer of Drauus, which they had alſo fortified, thereby in ſafetie at their pleaſure to tranſport their armie:

without

without further delay furniſhed ſuch places as they had gotten with ſtrong garriſons, and ſo withdrew themſelues into their owne territorie: which they did the rather, for that the plague then raged ſore in CONSTANTINOPLE, inſomuch that there died a thouſand a day. Which contagion had alſo taken hold of the Turkiſh army: ſo that the Chriſtians for feare of infection forthwith ſlew what Turk ſoeuer fell into their hands. And thus ended the troubles of this year, being as it were an introduction for greater to enſue the yeare following. G

1593 *Diuers incurſions of the Turks into the frõtiers of the Chriſtians in Croatia and Hungarie.*

The Turks together with the beginning of the new yeare began alſo their wonted incurſions into the frontiers of the Chriſtians. They of the garriſon of PETRINIA (a ſtrong fort but lately and contrary to the league built by the Turkes vpon the riuer Colapis or Kulp, for the further inuaſion of CROATIA) made daily excurſions out of that new fort, and entring into the iſland TVROPOLIS, ſpoyled and burnt the towne and caſtle of BECK-VOCHORINAM, and hauing H made a great ſlaughter, carried away with them foure hundred priſoners. And in HVNGARIE, the Turkiſh garriſons to ſupply their wants, made diuers rodes vpon the Chriſtians, and did exceeding much harme; of which aduenturers ſix hundred in paſſing ouer the froſen lake, were all drowned in the midſt thereof. In another place three thouſand of them neere vnto NVHVSE, diuided themſelues into two companies, whereof the one ſhewed it ſelfe in the ſight of the townesmen, the other ſtill lying cloſe in ambuſh: They of the towne vpon the ſight of theſe Turks ſallied out, and cauſing them to retire, followed them ſo far, that they were paſt the place where the reſt of the Turkes lay: who preſently ſtarting vp, ran with all ſpeed toward the town in hope to haue ſurpriſed it, and wanted not much of that they deſired: for there was ſcarce an hundred of the Germanes there in garriſon left in the towne, who had ſcarce ſo much time as to I draw vp the bridges: which done, they with the great ordinance from the walls enforced the Turkes to retire and forſake the towne. About the ſame time alſo the Turks in garriſon at PETRINIA ſallying out vpon the ſudden, tooke the towne of MARTENIZE, which they ſpoiled; and hauing ſlaine and taken about ſeuen hundred perſons, ſet fire on the town, and ſo returned, hauing loſt in this exploit not paſt an hundred and fiftie of their owne men. Not long after, the ſame garriſon ſouldiours of PETRINIA tooke another caſtle, three miles diſtant from the riuer of Kulp, whereinto the Chriſtians dwelling round about, had for feare of the enemie conueyed all their wealth with great ſtore of victuals: all which the Turkes tooke, and hauing ſlaine ſix hundred men in the caſtle, returned with an exceeding rich bootie to PETRINIA: which they K bought with the liues of fiue huudred of their fellowes, ſlaine in taking of the caſtle. With like inſolencie did alſo the other garriſons of the Turkes rage in all the other parts of HVNGARIE. About SASSOVIA, in the vpper HVNGARIE, they carried away about three hundred Chriſtian captiues: and in the nether part of HVNGARIE they tooke the ſtrong caſtle of *S. Hedwig* vpon the lake of Balaton, which they ſpoyled and burnt: and ſo likewiſe the caſtle of ISNA: but attempting the leſſer COMARA, they were by the garriſon ſouldiors valiantly repulſed. They alſo fortified the caſtle of STOCKE, which they had but a little before taken, that ſo it might ſerue for a ſafe refuge for their aduenturers. Which their manifold outrages, contrarie to the league, euidently declared the deſire they had to begin that bloudie warre, which preſently after enſued: and was indeed the more ſuſpected, for that at the ſame time the emperours embaſſadour *Fredericke Crocowitts* was by the commandement of *Amurath* ſhut vp cloſe in his houſe at CONSTANL TINOPLE, and not ſuffered to ſpeake with any man, neither to write or to ſend any meſſenger to the emperour: which cauſed him the more to ſuſpect ſome great matter to be by the Turke entended, and therfore began to raiſe new forces. The Hungarians & Bohemians alſo ſeeing their townes and caſtles thus taken, their prouinces ſpoiled, infinite number of people led away into captiuitie, and the enemy daily encreaſing in ſtrength: at length agreed, vpon their owne charges to maintaine a certaine number both of horſe and foot, for the repreſſing of theſe the Turkiſh incurſions.

Now although the emperour knew right well all theſe outrages of the Turkes, contrarie vnto the league, could not be done without the knowledge and good liking alſo of *Amurath*; as before enformed thereof by his embaſſador from CONSTANTINOPLE: yet to ſhew himſelfe M willing to haue the league on his behalfe kept, as alſo to make a further proofe of *Amurath* his reſolution for peace or warre, he wrote vnto him as followeth.

Rodolph

A

Rodolph the second, Emperour of the Romanes; vnto *Amurath* king of the Turkes.

Whereas nothing is hitherto on our behalfe omitted, for the preseruation and continuance of the league and amitie betwixt your most excellent Maiestie and vs, by the renewed capitulations of peace; and that wee haue with all sinceritie and loue performed, and are hereafter ready to performe whatsoeuer is on our part to bee performed and done; and as wee haue hitherto, so for euer hereafter also make offer of the same: wee most assuredly promise vnto our selues on your Maiesties behalfe, that you in like manner will not suffer any thing on your part to bee wanting; but gladly and willingly to doe all things which shall bee B *meet and needfull for the preseruation and keeping of this our mutuall loue and friendship. Vpon which good hope grounding our selues, to declare our plaine meaning and sinceritie indeed, we will cause our honourable Present (which is now readie) to be brought vnto your most royall Maiestie, at such time as shall bee agreed vpon betwixt our embassador and you: vnto whom in all such matters as he by our commandement shall haue to deale with your most excellent Maiestie, your visiers or seruants, wee request you to giue full credence. In the meane time your excellencie shall doe well to prouide, that as we haue now seuerely commanded our subiects to keepe the peace vpon our frontiers, so that your souldiors also make no incursions as enemies into our territories, nor doe in them any harme, but to endeauour themselues also to peace and quietnesse: and especially, that all such things as contrarie to the capitulations of the league haue beene there of late taken from our people, or otherwise vniustly possessed, may bee againe restored, the losses* C *recompensed, the new fort of* Petrinia *demolished, and the Bassa of* Bosna *and others the authors of breaking of the league punished and displaced: whereby wee shall gather your royall maiesties most noble and kind affection towards vs and our State: which as it shall be a thing most iust, so shall it be a singular confirmation of our league. But concerning these matters, and others to the same belonging, our embassadour is to declare our minde more at large, that so our prest desire for the continuance of our league and friendship with your maiestie, may more plainly be known. So wish we all health and prosperitie vnto your most royall maiestie. From* Prage *the eight of March*, 1593.

The emperours letters vnto Amurath.

The emperour also at the same time and to the same purpose writ to *Sinan Bassa* in this sort.

D

Rodolph the second, Emperour of the Romanes; to *Sinan Bassa* the chiefe Visier, greeting.

We write at this present vnto your most excellent Emperour, our most honoured friend and neighbour, concerning such matters as we thought fit for the preseruation of the peace and league betwixt vs, lest happily otherwise we might seeme to haue forgotten our dutie. Now it shall well beseeme your vprightnesse and good will, which we haue at other times proued, for the high place and authoritie which you hold (and which wee reioyce to bee againe restored vnto you) to giue vnto these things such easie passage before his Maiestie, as that we may acknowledge your kindnesse and fauour, and haue occasion therefore to shew our selues vnto you thankfull. First, wee offer our selues most readie to continue the peace, and to performe whatsoeuer is according to the conuentions of the renued peace on our part to be performed: as also to send E *the honourable Present (which is not as yet by vs sent) when as our embassadour shall haue with you appointed any certaine time wherein it may be sent. And we also assuredly hope so to preuaile with your Emperour, that on your part the places within our territories, by your people forcibly possessed, together with all such things as haue been wrongfully taken away, may be againe restored, and the fort of* Petrinia *raised. The Bassa of* Bosna *also (who we thinke would haue been kept within the compasse of dutie, if you had at that time held the place of the chiefe Visier) and whosoeuer els, guiltie of the wicked breach of the league, to be worthily according to their deserts punished and displaced, and your souldiors seuerely charged not to make any further incursions, nor to doe any thing that may tend to the breach of the league: as we likewise shall with new and straight commands most carefully restraine our garrison souldiors vpon our frontiers from all such excursions and enemies actions. But of these things our embassadour is more fully and at* F *large to entreat with you: vnto whose speech we desire such credence to be giuen, as vnto our owne; and we will so prouide, that you shall haue good proofe of our great good will towards you. From* Prage *the eight of March* 1593.

The emperours letters vnto Sinan Bassa.

Vnto which the emperours letters *Sinan* returned answere as followeth.

Sinan

Sinan Baſſa, chiefe Viſier to *Amurath* the third, Emperour of the Turkes; vnto *Rodolph* the ſecond, Emperour of the Romanes, greeting.

Sinan Baſſa his letters to the emperour.

By theſe wee giue your Maieſtie to vnderſtand, That two of your Maieſties letters were brought hither before wee were choſen and confirmed chiefe Viſier in this moſt royall Court; wherein your Maieſtie excuſe your ſelfe, and ſhew the cauſes why the ſending of the wonted Preſents hath beene ſo long deferred, by laying the fault vpon the inſolencie of our garriſon ſouldours in Bosna, *and the breach of the publicke peace. Which your letters being by vs read before our moſt mightie emperour, his Highneſſe in great choller burſt out into theſe wordes: And thy ſonne the Beglerbeg of* Buda *hath ſtill hitherto writ and giuen vs to vnderſtand, that the vſuall Preſents would certainely come: and that the king of* Vienna *would not in any caſe conſent vnto the breach of the league, or of the amitie betwixt vs and him: and yet for all that the preſents are not hitherto come: wherefore thy ſonnes writings and relations are not true. But now the Baſſa of* Bosna *hath ſent word vnto the Court, that your Maieſtie will not ſend them, and all your doings to be but meere deceit and fraud. For which cauſe our moſt mightie Emperour hath remooued my ſonne from his place in* Buda, *and rewarded the Baſſa of* Bosna *with honourable garments, whereas my ſonne is for your Maieſties ſake diſplaced. Now on our behalfe nothing is done againſt the peace, but our ſouldiours as with a bridle kept in: whereas on your Maieſties part, excurſions and harmes into the territories of our emperour neuer ceaſe, eſpecially into* Bosna, *whereinto your ſouldiours haue of late in warlike manner broken, although they were by our garriſons ouercome, their great ordinance taken, and brought hither vnto the Court. Wherefore ſeeing the caſe ſo ſtandeth, your Maieſtie is to reſolue vs vpon two poynts, whereof the firſt is, Whether you bee minded to keepe friendſhip with vs as beſeemeth; and to ſend hither the two laſt yeares Preſents or not? and the ſecond, Whether you will ſet at libertie our captiue Sanzackes or no? Now if your Maieſtie ſhall bee content to keepe the league, and within theſe two moneths next to ſend the two yeares preſents, as alſo to diſmiſſe our Sanzackes; the league ſhall on our part bee likewiſe vndoubtedly kept, your territories ſhall bee in no caſe moleſted, ſuch Chriſtian captiues as your Mateſtie ſhall require, bee enlarged, and a moſt firme and ſure friendſhip by vs continued. Whereas if you ſhall vpon any cauſe or excuſe longer delay the ſending of thoſe honourable Preſents, and vnto theſe our demaunds ſend vs nothing but certaine vaine and windie anſweres, let God on high bee therefore for euer praiſed: for now our moſt mightie and victorious emperour, who wanteth neither abilitie nor power, hath commaunded, That wee our ſelfe ſhould in perſon goe in this warre, and putting our confidence in the Higheſt, with the armie of the right beleeuing Turkes to come into thoſe parts: And therefore aſſure your Maieſtie, that wee will not faile there to encounter you: At which time ſhall appeare vnto the world what is by God our Creatour (whoſe holy name bee for euer bleſſed) in his deepe wiſedome preordained and ſet downe for vs. Wherefore ſeeing that all which concerneth the league, together with the ſafetie and quiet of our people on both ſides, is vnto your Maieſtie thus declared; you are to conſider the end, and to follow our good aduice: whereas if otherwiſe you ſhall bee the cauſe of the breach of this ſo wholeſome a peace and vnitie (which we hitherto haue ſo ſincerely and firmely kept) the excuſe therof both in this world, and in the world to come, ſhall lie vpon your ſelfe. Now wee requeſt of you no more, but forthwith to ſend vs anſwere of theſe our letters. As for the reſt, well may he ſpeed that taketh the right way. From* Constantinople *the laſt of the moneth* Giuma Zuleuel, in the yeare of our holy Prophet* Mahomet 1001.

*Which is the 16. of March in the yeare of Chriſt. 1593.

Yet for all theſe faire offers of peace thus made by *Sinan Baſſa* in his letters, was his purpoſe nothing leſſe than to haue performed the ſame, ſeeking onely to haue drawne the two yeares Preſents from the emperour, amounting to a great ſumme of money, and ſo neuertheleſſe to haue proſecuted the intended warre, the emperour being the only man, of whom *Amurath* his great maſter had amongſt all the Chriſtian princes made choice of to exerciſe his force vpon. Of all which things the emperor was not ignorant, being therof (as wee ſaid) fully before by his embaſſadour aduertiſed from Constantinople.

Theſe troubles of the Spring thus paſt, enſued the Sommer much more troubleſome, for *Haſſan Baſſa* of Bosna, chiefe author aud deuiſer of all theſe broiles, ceaſed not for the increaſe of his credit, to worke what miſchiefe he could againſt the Chriſtians that bordered vpon him.

This

A This great Baſſa mortally hated the Gouernour, or as ſome call him the Abbot of SISEG, a ſtrong caſtle ſituat vpon the borders of that part of CROATIA, yet holden by the Chriſtians, where the riuer Kulp falleth into the famous riuer of Sauus or Saw (and was in deed the verie bulwarke of that countrey) the cauſe of which his hatred is reported to haue beene this: The yeare before, the Baſſa had ſent a meſſenger to this Abbot, to require him to deliuer the caſtle or monaſterie vnto him: which meſſenger for certaine daies the Abbot entertained with many honourable ſpeeches, learning in the meane time of him ſo much as he poſſibly could of the Baſſaes intention, with what power, in what place, and with what engines he had determined to beſiege the caſtle. In the meane time it was diſcouered, that his ſteward had long before plotted
B with the Turke to haue betraied the caſtle, and had for certaine yeares paſt receiued of him a yearely penſion. Vpon which occaſion, the Abbot cauſed both the meſſenger and his owne ſteward to be apprehended, and ſo faſt bound hand and foot, to be caſt out at a window of the caſtle into the riuer of Saw. The Baſſa ſeeing his meſſenger not to returne, ſent another to the Abbot, grieuouſly threatning him, if he did not ſend him back againe his meſſenger: whereunto the Abbot anſwered, That he had diſmiſſed him certaine daies before, and therefore maruelled if he were not as yet returned: neuertheleſſe concerning his demaund, that he was reſolued to yeeld the monaſterie vnto the Baſſa, againſt whoſe forces he ſaw himſelfe vnable to hold it: requeſting only, that it would pleaſe him to ſend ſome men of account to receiue it at his hand, for that it would be no ſmall diſhonour vnto him to deliuer it vp vnto common ſouldiors. The Baſ-
C ſa glad of this meſſage, ſent forthwith certaine principall men of great account, hoping now without any loſſe to haue that ſtrong place yeelded vnto him, which had ſo long time ſtood in his way. Three daies after certaine troupes of horſemen ſent from the Baſſa, came to the monaſterie as was appointed, and finding the gates open entred, firſt the noblemen, and after them fiue hundred others or thereabouts: who were no ſooner within the gates, but that the portcul-leis was let fall, and certaine murthering pieces (ſecretly placed in the court for that purpoſe) diſcharged: with the violence whereof, the Turkes that were alreadie entred, were moſt miſe-rably rent in pieces, their heads, armes, and legs flying in the ayre; when preſently the garriſon ſouldiors ſtarting out of their lurking places, made a quick diſpatch of all them that had eſca-ped the furie of the great artillerie. The reſt of the Turks ſhut out, hearing the noiſe and crie of them within, turning their horſes, betooke themſelues to ſpeedie flight. The great Baſſa hea-
D ring of this ſlaughter of his men, and how he had been deceiued, ſwore in great rage by his *Mahomet*, to raſe this monaſterie downe to the ground, and to pluck the Abbots skin ouer his eares: and ſo by threatning letters gaue him to vnderſtand as followeth.

Haſſan Baſſa of Boſna, vnto the Abbot of Siſeg.

It is not to thee vnknowne, how often we haue ſent vnto thee our meſſengers with letters, declaring vnto thee our loue and good will; requeſting thee in friendly ſort, and without farther reſiſtance to yeeld vp vnto vs thy fortreſſe of SISEG, *not longer to be by thee holden. Vnto which our requeſt thou* E *haſt hitherto moſt wilfully at thy pleaſure oppoſed thy ſelfe, not without the ſlaughter of our men; and in ſo doing, haſt giuen cauſe vnto the great Sultan to ouerthrow and raſe that thy fortreſſe, whereof thou for the Emperour wilt needs be the chiefe. Thinkeſt thou it will be for thy good, or yet well taken, that thou haſt ſo ſhamefully and perfidiouſly circumuented and ſlaine our embaſſadours and ſeruants ſent vnto thee? Nay aſſure thy ſelfe, that if* Mahomet *graunt vs life, we will neuer giue ouer the ſiege of that thy fort wherein thou ſo much truſteſt, vntill I haue before thy face ouerthrowne it, and (if thy God ſhall giue thee aliue into my hands) haue pluckt thy skin ouer thine eares, to the great reproach and ſhame of the Chriſtians: for I am fully reſolued, not to depart from this place, but to continue the ſiege thereof vntill I haue it. Let a little time yet paſſe, and thou ſhalt ſee thy ſelfe on euerie ſide beſieged, thy fort with mo and greater pieces of artillerie than euer, battered; and our power ſtrong enough to con-*
F *ſtraine thee. Thou haſt hitherto put thy greateſt hope and comfort in the* Banne* Erodius, *for whom by the helpe of* Mahomet *we are much too ſtrong. In briefe, we are of nothing more carefull than how to get thee into our power: which if we doe, looke not for any mercie at our hands.*

The threatning letter of Haſſan Baſſa of Boſna vnto the Abbot of Siſeg.

** The Hungerie Bannes are noble men, in power much like vnto the Turkes Baſſaes.*

Neither was the Baſſa vnmindfull of his promiſe, or of the loſſe he had receiued, but now in the beginning of Iune with an armie of thirtie thouſand horſe and foot, came and beſieged the

Haſſan Baſſa inuadeth Croatiæ.

fortreſſe of TRENSCHIN, which with continuall batterie and often aſſaults he at length tooke, G
ſacked the towne, ſlew moſt part of the inhabitants, except eight hundred or thereabouts of the younger ſort, which he caried away with him into captiuitie. And being prowd of this victorie, remoued thence by a bridge which he had made, paſſed ouer the riuer, and ſo the twelfth of
Siſeg beſieged by Haſſan Baſſa Iune came and encamped before the monaſterie of SISEG: and after vaine ſummons giuen to the ſame, the next day cauſed his great ordinance to be planted, and with great furie thundring againſt the wals, in ſhort time ouerthrew the new tower, in the fall whereof two of the Chriſtian canoniers periſhed. This furious batterie he maintained by the ſpace of ten daies without intermiſſion, giuing no time of reſt vnto the beſieged; ſo that it ſeemed not poſſible for the monaſterie to be any long time defended, if it were not with ſpeed relieued. The biſhop of ZAGRABIA, and *Rupertus Eggenberg* Generall of the emperours forces that then were at ZAGRABIA, H
gaue knowledge thereof to *Andrew* lord *Auersberg* Gouernour of CAROLSTAT, crauing his aid and counſell: who calling togither his own forces, raiſed a good number of good horſe and foot, and called alſo vnto him the bordering horſemen of KARNIA and CARAINIA; who the ſeuenteenth day of Iune met altogither not far from INSTAVVITZ, and there tarried that night. The next day paſſing ouer the riuer Sauus neere vnto ZAGRABIA, they ioyned themſelues with the emperors forces, and marched the nineteenth day in good order to SCELINE, where they expected the comming of Countie *Serinus*. The twentieth day *Peter Herdelius* with his Huſſars, and the lord *Stephen Graſwein* came into the campe, with many of thoſe light horſemen whom the Hungarians called Vſcocchi. The one and twentieth day they lodged at GRADIVM, ſtill expecting the comming of the countie *Serinus*, who otherwiſe buſied, could not come. The next I
day after, a ſouldiour ſent out from the beſieged, came into the campe, who gaue the captains to vnderſtand, that except they made haſt that day to relieue the diſtreſſed monaſterie, it would vndoubtedly be loſt: for that the enimie had made it faultable, and would that night giue the aſſault; and the defendants, doubting how they ſhould be able to maintain the place, began before his departure thence to thinke of compoſition with the enemie. Vpon which newes the captaines forthwith began to conſult among themſelues, what courſe to take in ſo doubtful and dangerous a caſe: where *Auersberg* was of opinion, That it were beſt to march on, & to giue the enemie battel; with whom alſo agreed the lord *Rederen*: The reſt of the captains being of a contrarie mind, for that the ſtrength of the Chriſtians compared to the Turkes, was too weak; and therefore they thought it better in time to retire whiles they yet might, than to hazard vnto moſt K
manifeſt perill the liues of ſo many valiant men, at ſo great ods. At which counſell *Auersberg* was at the firſt much moued, but afterwards (as he was a man of great eloquence) plainly ſet before them the neceſſitie of the cauſe, and with liuely reaſons cheered vp the fearefull Croatians; notably perſuading them all in generall, to put their whole truſt & confidence in God, to whom it was as eaſie to giue victorie by few as by many: and to fight like valiant men, for their religion, their countrie, their liues, their wiues, their children and friends, and whatſoeuer elſe they held deare; againſt that cowardly enemie, whoſe valour neuer brought him into the field, but only the vaine truſt he had in his multitude; and would therfore no doubt eaſily be put to flight, if he ſhould contrarie to his expectation find himſelfe but a little hardly laid vnto. With theſe and other like reaſons hee preuailed ſo much, that they all yeelded vnto his opinion, and with L
one conſent reſolued to go againſt the enemie, and to doe what they might to relieue their beſieged friends. So vpon a ſigne giuen, the whole armie (in number not aboue foure thouſand) forthwith remoued, and with great ſpeed haſted towards the enemie; and being come within a mile of the campe, put themſelues in order of battell. The Turks by their eſpials vnderſtanding of the approach of the Chriſtians, brought all their horſmen ouer the riuer of Kulp, by a bridge which they had made, and hauing put themſelues in order, came on to ioyne battell with the Chriſtians: who had in their vauntgard placed the Croatians and Huſſars; in the left wing them of CAROLSTAT, and the harquebuſiers of KARNIA; in the right wing the borderers of CRAINIA, all horſemen; in the maine battell the reſt of the ſoldiors, with the horſemen of SILESIA,
A great battell betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians. vnder the conduct of *Sigiſmund Paradiſe*; the rearward was incloſed with three companies of M
the emperors ſouldiors. The Croatians and Huſſars in the vauntgard gaue the firſt charge vpon the enemie: but hauing for a good ſpace made a great fight, they were about to haue retired, and diſcouraged with the multitude of the enemies, were euen vpon the point to haue fled: when *Auersberg* (Generall of the Chriſtian armie) came on with his ſquadron, and not onely reſtored

the

A the battell,but ſo reſolutely charged the maine battell of the Turkes, that the Baſſa was conſtrained at the firſt to retire,and afterwards to flie,after whom all the reſt of the armie followed. The Chriſtians ſtill keeping their array, purſued them with great ſpeed, and comming to the new made bridge before them,tooke from them that paſſage,to the great diſcomfiture of the Turks, who ſeeing the miſerable ſlaughter of themſelues, and no way to eſcape,ran headlong ſome into the riuer Odera, ſome into Kulp, and were there for moſt part drowned; the reſt were all ſlaine by the Chriſtians, before determined not to take any priſoners. In the meane time, the Turkes that remained at the ſiege, vnderſtanding of the ouerthrow of their fellows, ſet fire on their pouder and other prouiſion, and ſo in great feare betooke themſelues to flight. Whoſe tents the Chriſtians immediatly after tooke, and in them nine great pieces of artillerie, & good
B ſtore of great ſhot of 44 & 45 pound waight a piece,with the ſumptuous pauillion of the Baſſa, and much other rich ſpoile,which was all carried into the monaſterie of SISEG. The number of the Turkes ſlaine in this battell,and drowned in the riuers, is of diuers diuerſly reported,but moſt agree vpon eighteene thouſand. And amongſt them was *Haſſan Baſſa* himſelfe, found in the riuer neere vnto the bridge,known by his moſt rich and ſumptuous apparell; and neere vnto him *Mahomet-Beg*, and *Achmet-Beg*. In other places were alſo found the dead bodies of *Saffer-Beg* the Baſſaes brother,of *Meni-beg*, *Haramatan-Beg*, *Curti-Beg*, *Operd-Beg*, and *Goſchus*, the Baſſaes chiefe counſellor and maſter of his houſhold.But of all others,the vntimely death of *Sinan-Beg Amurath* his nephew, his ſiſters only ſonne, ſent thither to haue learned the feats of armes vnder *Haſſan* the great Baſſa,was of the Turks moſt lamented.Of twenty thouſand Turks
C that came ouer the riuer Kulp,ſcarcely two thouſand eſcaped.This ſo great a victory obtained, all the armie of the Chriſtians went thrice about the monaſterie,and euery time falling all down vpon their knees,gaue vnto God moſt heartie thankes for the ſame, as by him miraculouſly giuen,and not by themſelues woon; and afterwards made all the ſhew of ioy and gladneſſe they could poſſibly deuiſe.

Siſeg relieued.

Eighteene thouſand Turkes ſlaine.

SISEG thus deliuered,and the Turks armie ouerthrown,the Chriſtians with all ſpeed laid ſiege to PETRINIA the ſtrong new fort of the Turks,which they for the ſpace of fiue daies moſt furiouſly battered: but hearing that the great Gouernor of GRÆCIA(whom the Turks call the Beglerbeg of ROMANIA) was with a great power comming to the reliefe of the fort,they raiſed their ſiege,brake vp their armie, and returned euery man to his wonted charge.

D Whileſt theſe things were in doing at PETRINIA,a poſt came from CONSTANTINOPLE to BVDA,who brought thither the firſt newes of the ouerthrow of SISEG; for the report therof was not as yet come to BVDA. Wherfore the Baſſa called vnto him the meſſenger,author of ſo bad news, and diligently examined him of the trueth thereof: who told him, That at his departure from CONSTANTINOPLE,nothing was there knowne of that loſſe,but that vpon the way as he came he met with diuers horſemen but lately eſcaped from the ſlaughter, who told him of a certaintie, that the Baſſa was ſlaine,and his armie deſtroyed. Wherunto the Baſſa of BVDA replied,That he was happie in his death,for that if he had by chance eſcaped, he ſhould for his indiſcretion vndoubtedly haue ſuffered ſome other more ſhamefull death at the court.

Newes of the ouerthrow of the Turkes at Siſeg, brought to Buda

E When newes of the aforeſaid victorie was brought to the emperour at PRAGE,he commaunded publike prayers,with thankeſgiuing to almightie God to be made in all churches: and ſent a meſſenger with letters to *Amurath*, to know of him how he vnderſtood theſe inſolent proceedings of his ſoldiors, and eſpecially this late expedition of the Baſſa of BOSNA and his complices,contrarie to the league yet in force betwixt them. After which meſſenger he ſent alſo the lord *Popelius*,with the yearely preſent(or rather tribute)he vſed to ſend vnto the Turkiſh emperour at CONSTANTINOPLE; yet with this charge, that when he was come as farre as COMARA in the borders of HVNGARIE, he ſhould there ſtay vntill the returne of the aforeſaid meſſenger: who if he brought tidings of peace from *Amurath*, then to proceed on his iourney to the Turkes Court; otherwiſe,to returne againe with his preſent:as he afterwards did. For *Amu-*
F *rath* enraged with the notable loſſe receiued at SISEG, and prickt forward with the teares and prayers of his ſiſter(deſirous of nothing more than to bee reuenged for the death of her ſonne) the ſeuenth of Auguſt cauſed open war to be proclaimed againſt the Chriſtian emperor,both at CONSTANTINOPLE and BVDA. The mannaging whereof he committed to *Sinan Baſſa* the old enemie of the Chriſtians,his lieutenant generall,and perſuader of this war: who departing from CONSTANTINOPLE with an armie of fortie thouſand, wherein were 5600 Ianizaries,

was by *Amurath* himselfe and the great men of the Court brought a mile on his way: hauing G
in charge from the great Sultan, by the assistance of the Beglerbeg, of GREECE, the Bassaes of BVDA and TEMESVVARE, and other his Sanzacks and commanders in that part of his empire, to reuenge the death of his nephew, and the dishonour receiued at SISEG.

This war *Amurath* with great pride denounced vnto the Christian emperor and the rest of the princes his confederats in this sort.

Amurath the third, by the grace of the great God in heauen, the onely Monarch of the World, a great and mightie God on earth, an inuincible *Cæsar*, King of all Kings from the East vnto the West, Sultan of BABYLON, Soueraigne of the most noble families of PERSIA and ARMENIA, triumphant victor of HIERVSALEM, Lord H
possessour of the Sepulchre of the crucified God, subuerter and sworne enemie of the Christians, and of all them that call vpon the name of Christ.

The proud and blasphemous denuntiation of war giuen out by Amurath against Rodolph the Christian emperour.

We denounce vnto thee Rodolph *the Emperour, and to all the Germane nation taking part with thee, vnto the great Bishop also, all the Cardinals and Bishops, to all your Sennes and Subiects: wee earnestly (Isay) by our crowne and empire denounce vnto you open warre. And giue you to vnderstand, that our purpose is, with the power of thirteene kingdomes, and certaine hundred thousands of men, horse and foot, with our Turkes and Turkish armes, yea with all our strength and power (such as neither thou nor any of thine hath euer yet seene or heard of, much lesse had any proofe of) to besiege* I
you in your chiefe and metropoliticall cities, and with fire and sword to persecute you and all yours, and whosoeuer shall giue you helpe, to burne, destroy, and kill, and with most exquisit torments we can deuise to torture vnto death and slay such Christian captiues as shall fall into our hands, or else to keepe them as dogs, captiues in perpetuall miserie; to empaile vpon stakes your fairest Sonnes and daughters: and to the further shame and reproch of you and yours, to kill like dogs you women great with child, and the children in their bellies: for now we are fully resolued to bring into our subiection you which rule but in a small countrie, and by strong hand and force of armes to keepe from you your kingdome, as also to oppresse, root vp and destroy the keyes and See of ROME, *togither with the golden scepter thereof: and we will proue whether your crucified Iesus will helpe you and do for you as yours persuade you. Beleeue* K
him still, and trust in him, and see how he hath holpen his messengers which haue put their confidence in him: for we neither beleeue, neither can we endure to heare such incomprehensible things, that he can help, which is dead so many worlds of yeares agoe, which could not helpe himselfe, nor deliuer his owne countrie and inheritance from our power, ouer which we haue so long time raigned. These things ô yee poore and miserable of the world, we thought good to signifie vnto you, that you with your princes and confederats may know what you haue to do and to looke for. Giuen in our most mightie and imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, *which our ancestrrs by force of armes tooke from yours, and hauing slaine or taken prisoners all their citizens, reserued such of their wiues and children as they pleased vnto their lust, to your perpetuall infamie and shame.*

L

Sinan with his armie thus setting forward, kept still on his way towards BVDA, but the Beglerbeg of GRÆCIA with a far greater power marched towards CROATIA, as well to relieue the forts distressed by the Christians, as againe to besiege the strong castle or monasterie of SISEG: which he with his huge armie at his first arriuall compassed about without resistance, and with continuall batterie ouerthrew the wals thereof, giuing no time of rest vnto the defendants. Which breaches they for all that valiantly defended, and with restlesse labour notably repaired, the very fearefull women bringing tables, stooles, and whatsoeuer els came to hand, that might any wise helpe to keepe the enemie out, of whom a great number was in the breaches slaine. But what was that handful against such a multitude? At length the third day of September the Turks by maine force entered the Monasterie, & put to sword all the soldiors therein: amongst whom M
were two hundred Germans, of whom the Turks cut some in pieces, and the rest they threw into the riuer Kulp. One religious man there found among the rest, they did flea quicke in detestation of his profession, and afterward cutting him in small pieces, burnt them to ashes. So taking the spoile of all that was there to be had; and leauing a strong garrison for the keeping of the place, they passed ouer Sauus, burning the countrie before him, and carried away with them

Siseg taken by the Turkes.

about

A about a thouſand poore Chriſtians into perpetual captiuitie. Theſe inuaſions of the Turks cauſed the emperor to craue aid both of the ſtates of the empire, and other forreine princes farther off, which was by ſome eaſily granted, but not ſo ſpeedily performed.

About this time *Peter* ſurnamed *le Huſſar* (for that he commanded ouer thoſe horſmen whom the Hungarians call Huſſars) captaine of PAPPA, by the appointment of *Ferdinand* countie *Hardeck* gouernor of RAB, lay in wait for the Turks Treaſurer in HVNGARIE, who had the command of fiue thouſand Turks: him this Hungarian tooke at aduantage, as he was muſtering and paying certaine companies of his ſoldiors, miſtruſting no ſuch danger, & deſperatly charging him, ſlew him with diuers of his men, and put the reſt to flight, and ſo with the ſpoile and ſome few priſoners he returned againe to his caſtle, carrying with him the Treaſurer.

B Now *Sinan* the Generall being come with his armie to BVDA, reſolued with himſelfe to begin his warres in that part of HVNGARIE, with the ſiege of VESPRINIVM. This eſpiſcopall citie was by *Solyman* the great Turke taken from the Chriſtians in the yeare 1552, and againe by them recouered about fourteen yeares after, about the yeare 1566, ſince which time vntill now it had remained in the hands of the Chriſtians. *Sinan* without delay marching with his armie to VESPRINIVM, compaſſed the citie round, and encamping as he ſaw good, planted his batterie wherwith he continually thundered againſt the citie. The Chriſtians there in garriſon eaſily perceiuing that the citie was not long to be holden againſt ſo great a power, placed diuers barrels of gunpouder in certaine mines they had made vnder the wals and bulwarks of the towne, with traines that ſhould at a certaine time take fire. Which done, they departed ſecretly out of the ci- *Sinan Baſſa beſiegeth Veſprinium.*

C tie in the dead time of the night, hoping ſo in the darke to haue eſcaped the hands of the enemie: which they did not ſo ſecretly, but that they were by the Turks deſcried, and moſt of them ſlain. *Ferdinand Samaria* Gouernour of the citie, after he had for a ſpace valiantly defended himſelfe, fell at laſt into the enemies hand, and ſo was taken aliue, togither with one *Hofkirke* a Germane captain. The Turks entred the citie the ſixt of October, ſtriuing who ſhould get firſt in, for greedineſſe of the prey, when ſuddenly the pouder in the mines tooke fire, and blowing vp the very foundations of the wals and bulwarks, ſlew a number of the Turks that were within the danger thereof, and wonderfully defaced the citie.

From VESPRINIVM the Baſſa remoued with his armie to PALOTTA, and gaue ſummons to the caſtle: but receiuing ſuch anſwere as pleaſed him not, hee layed ſiege vnto it with all his *Palotta yeelded vnto the Turkes*

D power. Which at the firſt *Peter Ornand* captaine of the caſtle cheerefully receiued: but being afterward without any great cauſe diſcouraged (the caſtle as yet being but little ſhaken, & but one man ſlaine, and the reſt of the ſoldiors readie to ſpend their liues in defence therof) he ſent vnto the Baſſa, offering to yeeld the caſtle vnto him, ſo that he with his ſouldiors might with bag and baggage in ſafetie depart. Of which his offer the Baſſa accepted, and granted his requeſt. But he was no ſooner come out of the caſtle with his ſouldiors, and readie to depart, but the faithleſſe Turke contrarie to his oath and promiſe cauſed them all to be cruelly ſlain, except only the captaine and two other. After that the Baſſa without any great labour tooke in all the countrie therabouts neere vnto the lake of Balaton.

Now at laſt, though long firſt, about the middle of October the Chriſtians began to muſter

E their armie, in number about 18000, all good & expert ſoldiors: with which power they ſhortly after paſſing ouer Danubius, at the firſt encounter with the Turks put them to the worſe, ſlew a great number of them, and reſcued a number of poore Chriſtian captiues.

In the latter end of this moneth countie *Hardeck* Gouernour of RAB, and Generall of the Chriſtian armie in that part of HVNGARIE, departing from KOMARA with all his power, came and layed ſiege to the ſtrong citie of ALBA REGALIS, which by the force of his artillerie hee in ſhort time made ſaultable; but in aſſaulting the breaches, was by the Turkes there in garriſon notably repulſed. So hauing made ſufficient proofe both of the ſtrength and courage of the defendants, and perceiuing no good could be done without a long ſiege, for which he was not as then prouided; after conſultation had with the reſt of the captaines, he reſolued to raiſe his ſiege: *Alba Regalis beſieged by the Chriſtians.*

F which he did the ſecond of Nouember, remouing that day but halfe a mile from the citie, becauſe he would be ſure of all his armie. But as he was about the next day to remoue, news was brought him by his eſpials, that the enemies power was at hand, and euen now almoſt in ſight, which proued to be ſo indeed. For the Baſſa of BVDA by the commaundement of *Sinan Baſſa* the Generall, was come forth with thirteene Sanzacks, and twentie thouſand ſoldiors, thirtie field pie-

ces, and fiue hundred wagons laded with victuall and other warlike prouision, to raise the siege, and to relieue the citie; & was now euen at hand, comming directly vpon the Christians: wherupon the countie, assisted by the countie *Serinus*, the lord *Palfi*, the lord *Naddasti*, *Peter le Hussar*, and other valiant captaines of great experience, with wonderfull celeritie put his armie in order of battell, and so coragiously set forward to encounter the enemie. The Bassa seeing the Christians marching towards him, tooke the aduantage of the higher ground, and from thence discharged his field pieces vpon them; which mounted too high, by good hap did them little or no hurt at all. The Christians for all that desirous of battell, and nothing regarding the disaduantage of the ground, but calling vpon the name of the Almightie, mounted the hill, and ioyning battell with the Turkes, by plaine force constrained them to flie. In this armie of the Turkes, being for most part horsemen, were about fiue thousand foot, and many of them Ianizaries, who in flying, oftentimes made stands, and wounded many, and yet neuertheless were almost all there slaine, with many others: amongst whom were three great men, the Sanzacks of STRIGONIVM, SETCHINE, and NOVIGRAD; seuen Chiaus, and many other men of marke, the most valiant captaines of the Turkes borderers. The lord *Nadasti* with some others taking view of the Turkes that were slaine and lost in this battell, deemed them to haue beene at the least in number eight thousand: few prisoners were saued, all being put to the sword, which caused *Sinan* to sweare by his *Mahomet* neuer more to spare any Christian. All the Turkes artillerie, wagons, and prouision became a prey vnto the Christians: many ensignes were there found, and weapons of great value. It is hard to be beleiued, how much this victorie encouraged the Christians, and danted the Turkes. Whereupon the countie with great ioy brought backe his armie to ALBA REGALIS, and encamped neere the bulwarke called STOPASEH, where the Turkes most feared to be assaulted. *Palfi*, *Nadasti*, and some others, earnestly perswaded with the countie, not to depart from the citie before he had woon it: But he considering the hard time of the yeare, the strength of the citie (which was now full of souldiors, by reason of them that were fled in thither from the late ouerthrow) with the want of things necessarie in his armie to maintaine a longer siege; and fearing also after long lying to be enforced with dishonour to forsake it, would not hearken to their persuasions, but calling a counsell, resolued to raise his siege, and to content himselfe with the victorie he had alreadie gotten, which was afterward imputed vnto him for more than an ouersight. So setting fire vpon the suburbs of the citie, he rise with his armie, and departed thence the fift of Nouember, and returned to RAB.

Sabatzka taken by the lord Teuffenbach.

Not long after, *Christopher* lord *Teuffenbach*, the emperours lieutenant in the vpper part of HVNGARIE, who lay encamped at CASSOVIA with his armie of foureteene thousand souldiours remooued thence, and marching along the countrie two daies, came and laied siege to SABATZKA, one of the Turkes strongest castles in those quarters, out of which they vsually did much harme among the Christians. This castle *Teuffenbach* battered in three places; and hauing at length made it saultable, tooke it by force the nineteenth of Nouember, and put to the sword all the Turkes there in garrison, in number about two hundred and fiftie, and in stead of them left a strong garrison of his owne: whereby all the countrie thereabouts was restored to great quietnesse.

Filek besieged by the Christians

SABATZKA thus taken, the Christian Generall remoued with all speed to FILEK, a strong citie of the higher HVNGARIE, which *Solyman* the Turkish emperour tooke from the Christians in the yeare 1560, and placed therin a Sanzacke, vnder the commaund of the Bassa of BVDA. The General encamping before this citie, the next day after planted his batterie, and in most terrible manner without intermission thundring against the wals and gates of the citie. The Sanzacke Gouernour thereof, considering the power of the Christians, got out secretly by night with a few souldiors, to acquaint the other Turkish Sanzacks his neighbours with the comming of the Christians, and the number of their armie; and further to consult with them how the citie might be relieued. The Bassa of TEMESVVARE, with the Sanzackes of GIVLA, HADVVAN, SCANTTZAG, and SCIRME, vndertooke the matter: and thereupon the Bassa sent for eight hundred Ianizaries, of late left by *Sinan Bassa* in garrison at BVDA and ALBA REGALIS; who all flatly refused to go to this seruice, saying, That they would not bee led as beasts to the slaughter, as were their fellowes but a little before at ALBA REGALIS: neuertheless they enforced the Armenians, whom *Sinan* and his sonne had brought thither, to go; but of BVDA, ALBA REGALIS, and SCAMBOTH, were sent onely fifteene hundred common souldiors. For all that, the

Bassa

A Bassa with the Sanzacks his followers, firme in their former resolution for the relieſe of the diſtreſſed citie, hauing made great preparation, and raiſed an armie of eighteen thouſand ſtrong, with many field pieces, by night drew neere vnto FILEK, and ſtaied within two miles of the citie. But the Generall of the Chriſtians, with *Stephen Bathor* and the other captaines, vnderſtanding of their comming, with ſeauen thouſand good ſouldiors choſen out of the whole armie, went out preſently againſt them; and the one and twentieth of Nouember ſuddenly aſſailing them in their tents, ouerthrew them, and put them all to flight; whom the Chriſtians fiercely purſued with a moſt terrible execution. In this fight and flight there was ſlaine ſixe thouſand Turkes, and but few or none taken. The Baſſa himſelfe, with the Sanzacke of FILEK and many others of great name, were found amongſt the bodies of the ſlaine Turks. This victorie gained
B with little or no loſſe, yeelded vnto the Chriſtians a rich prey, many gorgious tents, and faire enſignes, much cattell, and nine and twentie field pieces, with two hundred wagons laded with victuall and other prouiſion; all which they carried into the campe at FILEK, and ſo more ſtraightly beſieged the citie than before. The ſame day the lord *Palfi* and *Martin Laſla* came to the campe with ſix thouſand ſouldiors: and forthwith three trumpetters were ſent to them of the city, That if without farther reſiſtance they would forthwith yeeld the citie, they ſhould haue leaue in ſafetie to depart with life and goods, although the Turks had of late in like caſe broken their faith with the Chriſtians at PALOTTA: but if they refuſed his grace, and would needs hold it out to the vttermoſt, then to denounce vnto them all extremities. For all this, the Turks nothing diſmaied, refuſed to yeeld: wherupon the battery began afreſh, and in more terrible maner
C than before: ſo that though the citie was moſt ſtrongly fortified both with wals and rampiers, yet had the Chriſtians in three dayes ſpace with continuall batterie made a faire breach into it, wherby they in deſpight of the enemie entred without any notable loſſe the foure and twentith of Nouember, ranſacked the citie, and burnt a great part therof. The ſame day they alſo tooke the vttermoſt caſtle, wherein the Sanzackes pallace ſtood: this caſtle ſtandeth vpon a verie high hill, ſtrengthned both by art and nature, and had in it a ſtrong garriſon of valiant ſoldiors, who ſpared not luſtily to beſtow their ſhot amongſt their enemies, of whom they ſlew a great number. Neuertheleſſe, the Chriſtians after they had for the ſpace of two daies and two nights with a moſt furious batterie ſhaken the wals, by plaine force entred the caſtle the ſixe and twentith of
D Nouember, and put to ſword all the garriſon ſouldiors; except ſuch as had in good time forſaken this caſtle, and retired themſelues into another more inward. Who being in number eight hundred, with their wiues and children, without hope of reliefe, and ſeeing the canon now bent vpon them, ſet out a white enſigne in token of parley: which graunted, it was agreed that they ſhould depart with life, and ſo much of their goods as euery one of them could carrie. Vpon which agreement, the caſtle was yeelded the eight & twentith day of Nouember, and the Turks with a ſafe conuoy brought vnto the place they deſired. In this caſtle was found a great bootie, many pieces of artillerie, with much other warlike prouiſion, but of victuals ſmall ſtore. The Generall with the reſt of the captaines entring the caſtle, fell downe vpon their knees, and with their hearts & hands caſt vp towards heauen, thanked God for their victory, & for the recouery of that ſtrong city; but eſpecially for the deliuery of ſo many Chriſtians out of the Turkiſh thral-
E dome: For it is reported, that there were aboue 800 countrey villages ſubiect to the iuriſdiction of FILEK, the poore inhabitants whereof were now all freed from the Turkiſh ſeruitude, by the taking of this only citie. The Chriſtians forthwith repaired the wals, bulwarks and trenches, and ſtrongly fortified euery place againſt the enemie: and ſo leauing a ſufficient garriſon in the citie and caſtles, departed with their army, now in number about twentie thouſand, towards SODOCH, ſix miles from FILEK. But as they were vpon the way, newes was brought vnto the Generall, how that the Turkes had for feare abandoned the caſtles of DITVVIN and SOMOSKE: whereupon he ſent out certaine companies of ſouldiors to take in both thoſe places; who comming thither, found them indeed forſaken of the enemy, but yet many pieces of artillerie and other warlike prouiſion there ſtill left.

Filek taken by the Chriſtians.

F In the latter end of Nouember the Generall marched with his armie towards SETSCHINE, a ſtrong towne in the Dioceſſe of AGRIA, but the Turkes in that place had two or three daies before prepared themſelues to flie, and ſent their wiues, their children, and the beſt of their ſubſtance, ſome to HATVVAN, ſome to BVDA: and now hearing of the approach of the Chriſtian armie, ſet fire on the towne and fled. The Chriſtians immediatly entring, did what they could

Seiſchine, Blauenſtein, and Sallek abandoned by the Turks

to

to quench the fire, and saued a great part of the towne: so leauing there a conuenient garrison, he G
hasted with speed to BLAVENSTEIN, which the Turkes did also set on fire, and betooke themselues to flight. The Christians comming thither the next day after, namely, the fourth of December, found a great part of the towne yet vnburnt, wherein they left a strong garrison: and from thence marched to SALLEK, which town they also tooke being forsaken by the enemy, and put thereinto a good garrison. The Generall was of nothing more desirous, than to haue prosecuted this so happy a course of victory: but such was the foulenesse of the winter weather, that hee could not trauell with his great artillerie, without which no great matter was to be done against the enemy, still keeping himselfe in his strong hold. And his army in that wasted and forsaken country, began now to feele the want of victuals; so that many had withdrawn themselues out of the armie vnto their dwelling places. H

At the same time time also, the lord *Palfi* going to DREGEL and PALANKA, and finding them forsaken by the enemie, furnished both places with garrisons of his owne men. Certaine other strong places were also this moneth recouered from the Turkes, as AINACKE, SOLLOCKE, WESTKE, and others, and so much territory gained by the Christians, as was in circuit thought equall with the lower AVSTRIA. The ioyfull newes of the aforesaid victories, with the recouery of so much of the countrey, and so many strong townes and castles, made great reioycing both at VIENNA and PRAGE: for which cause publike praiers with thanksgiuing to Almightie God were made in both places, with many other tokens of ioy and triumph, both there and in diuers other places of the empire. Yet were not the dead bodies of the Turkes slaine at ALBA REGALIS buried; whereof rise such a loathsome and noysome smell thereabout, that no man could abide I
The Turks in burying their dead, slaine by the Christians. to come nigh the place, to the great trouble of the inhabitants round about. At length certaine Turks out of BVDA and ALBA REGALIS, to the number of 350, met together, to haue buried those loathsome carkases: vpon whom it chanced a captaine of the Hussars to light with his horsemen, who fiercely assailing them, left most of them there dead for others to burie, and carried away the rest prisoners.

The Bassa of BVDA had caused *Murat* Sanzack of PALOTTA to be strangled, for that he suspected him to haue had intelligence with the Christians: in whose roome he placed another, who comming with 600 Turks to take possession of the preferment, was by the way set vpon by *Peter le Hussar*, with the garrison souldiors of PAPPA and THVRN, and slaine with most part of his followers. Fiue and thirtie of them were taken aliue, with all the Sanzacks rich furniture. To end K
this yeare with all, the Turks in garrison at PETRINIA, SISEG, CASTROVVITZ, and other places therabouts, met together in number about 3000, who the 19 of December passing ouer the riuer Sauus, began to spoile the frontiers of those countries. But before they were gone farre, they were so encountred by the lord *Graswin* and the borderers thereabout, that 500 of them were left dead vpon the ground, diuers of good account taken prisoners, & almost all the rest drownd in the riuer; so that of all them that came ouer, few escaped with life. In the latter end of this moneth, great numbers of souldiors were taken vp in SAXONIE, and other places of GERMANIE; whereof some were sent to PRAGE, and some to VIENNA in AVSTRIA: and in HVNGARIE the Christians increased their strength with new supplies. In AVSTRIA also a new armie was raised, L
and two and twentie great pieces of artillerie sent downe the riuer of Danubius to COMARA, and and new preparation made in euerie place for the next yeares warres.

1594 *Amurath* the Turkish emperour, going out of the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE the 11 of Ianuarie, to muster the army he had prepared against the Christians for this yeare, was suddenly
A great tempest at Constantinople. ouertaken with such a tempest of wind and raine, that it ouerthrew his tents, his chariots, yea his horses and men had much adoe to withstand it. Wherewith hee being (as with an ominous prodigie) exceedingly troubled, returned with his armie into the citie, and oppressed with melancholy, cast himselfe downe vpon his bed as a man halfe sicke. Where falling asleepe, hee
Amurath dreameth. dreamed that he saw a man of an exceeding stature, standing with one of his feet vpon the tower of CONSTANTINOPLE, and the other ouer the strait in ASIA; who stretching out his armes, held the Sunne in one of his armes, and the Moone in the other: whom whiles hee wondred at, M
the monster with is foot strucke the tower, which foorthwith fell downe, and in falling ouerthrew the great temple with the imperiall pallace. *Amurath* awaked (as hee thought) with the noise, and much troubled with the dreame (for the Turks are in such vanities very superstitious) sent for all his wisards and interpreters of dreams, to know the meaning of this his so strange or

rather

A rather ſo melancholy a dreame. Who hypocritically anſwered him, That foraſmuch as he had not with all his force as a tempeſt impugned the Chriſtians, their great prophet *Mahomet* threatned by that dreame, to ouerthrow the tower, the temple, and the imperiall palace; that is to ſay, the religion and empire of the Turks. Which vaine and fained interpretation ſo much moued the ſuperſtitious tyrant, that he ſwore from thenceforth to turne all his forces vpon the Chriſtians, and not to giue ouer war vntill he had done what he might to ſubdue them. This the Turks dreame, with the interpretation therof, and the ſolemne vow he had made for the deſtruction of the Chriſtians, was publikely read in the Churches of TRANSYLVANIA, and many godly exhortations made vnto the people, to moue them by praier and all other good meanes, to auert that ſo threatned thraldome.

B Of the rich ſpoile taken from the Turkes in the late victorie neere vnto ALBA REGALIS, the Chriſtian captaines made a preſent for the Emperour and the Archduke *Matthias* his brother, which they ſent by the lords *Gall* and *Brun:* and was by them preſented vnto the emperour and his brother the 11 of Ianuarie at VIENNA, in order as followeth. Firſt went the maſter of the ordinance of RAB, on both ſides attended vpon with the other officers of the artillerie: after them were drawen thirtie great pieces of ordinance, taken in that battell. After theſe pieces followed three Turkiſh horſes, with rich ſaddles, and furniture ſtudded with gold, the ſtirrups and bridles being of ſiluer, guilt and moſt curiouſly wrought: after them were caried two and twentie of the Turks enſignes, three of them very rich, and the other right faire. Then followed the two embaſſadors aforeſaid, with each of them a guilt maſe in his hand, ſuch as the Turks Baſſaes vſe to C carie: after them were brought many inſtruments of war, guilt ſcimitars, gleaues, bowes and arrowes, targets, and ten of the Ianizaries drums. Two of the aforeſaid horſes were preſented to the emperour, and the third to the archduke. The field pieces brought to the caſtle gate, and orderly placed vpon the plaine, were all (at ſuch time as the reſt of the preſent entred the caſtle) forthwith by the cannoniers diſcharged: and there for certaine daies left vpon the plaine for the people to feed their eies vpon. The embaſſadors diſcharged of their preſent, and rewarded by the emperour with chaines of gold & other gifts, returned againe vnto the campe. Notwithſtanding that it was now deepe winter, yet many ſharpe skirmiſhes daily paſſed vpon the borders, betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians. The fifteenth of this preſent moneth, two thouſand of the Turks aſſembled together, were making an inroad into the countrey about FILEK: whereof the D Lo. *Teuffenbach* hauing intelligence, lay in wait for them, and ſetting vpon them fearing no ſuch danger, ſlew and tooke of them fifteene hundred.

A faire preſent of the ſpoile of the Turks, ſent vnto the emperour.

Matthias archduke of AVSTRIA, now Gouernour of STIRIA, CARINTHIA, and the countreys therabout (by the departure of *Erneſtus* his brother, but a little before by *Philip* king of SPAINE made Gouernor of the low countries) was now alſo by the emperour appointed Generall of the Chriſtian army againſt the Turkes: who to be nearer vnto the enemy, and to further the new war, departed the ſix and twentith day of February from VIENNA to RAB, after whom daily followed the forces newly raiſed in SILESIA, MORAVIA, and HVNGARIE, with others alſo ſent from PRAGE and VIENNA. Hee conſidering to what ſmall purpoſe it would be to haue the laſt yeare taken ſo many ſtrong townes and caſtles, except the ſame alſo were well manned and furniſhed E with all needfull prouiſion; by the perſwaſion of the lord *Teuffenbach*, ſent Countie *Schlike* with a thouſand horſe to FILEK, for the more ſafetie of that place, and the countrey therabout ſo lately gained from the Turks.

It fortuned that about this time, a ſouldior of the Turks taken not farre from DREGEL, and brought into the campe; among other things wherof he was examined, confeſſed that in NOVIGRAD, a ſtrong towne and of great importance (but one mile diſtant from VACIA, and three from BVDA) was left but a weake garriſon of about eight hundred ſouldiors, who there liued in great feare to be beſieged, and that the Turks doubting ſuch a matter, had brought thither much prouiſion for the better fortifying of the towne. Vpon which intelligence the Chriſtians began F to remoue with their armie, and being come betwixt DREGEL and NOVIGRAD, vnderſtood by the countrey people, that it was true that the Turke had reported: wherefore they reſolued that night to lay ſiege vnto the towne. So forthwith ſome were ſent to DREGEL, to fetch thence certaine pieces of artillerie, whom certaine troupes of Germane horſemen went to meet: who vſed ſuch diligence, that the eight of March a little before the riſing of the Sunne, the whole armie with the great ordinance was come before NOVIGRAD. That day the Chriſtians ſpent in pitching

Nouigrad beſieged by the Chriſtians.

Pitching their tents,and incamping themſelues: yet before night they had planted certain great pieces vpon an high hill,from whence they might ſee into the caſtle; whereof the maſter of the ordinance cauſed three of the greateſt(about the going downe of the ſunne)to be diſcharged againſt the caſtle, to giue the Turke to vnderſtand,that they wanted nothing for the ſiege. The ſame night alſo the Chriſtians caſt vp a great mount in the valley, from whence they preſently ſent ſix great ſhot into the caſtle: but early in the morning the ſunne being yet ſcarce vp,and all things now in readineſſe,they began to batter the caſtle,and that day out of ten great pieces diſcharged three hundred great ſhot againſt the caſtle; but to ſmall purpoſe,for the caſtle was built vpon a moſt ſtrong rocke,fortified with high and thick wals,and a deepe ditch hewen out of the maine rocke,which compaſſed the caſtle round;and for the more ſtrength therof was ſo fortified with palliſadoes made of ſtrong timber,as that there was no acceſſe vnto the wals: yet by the commandement of the Generall, certaine companies of the Chriſtians prepared themſelues to aſſault the breach,ſuch as it was;who beſides their weapons, carying with them drie fagots,and ſetting them on fire, burnt the palliſado in diuers places, and ſo opened the way vnto the wals; and encouraged with the ſucceſſe,approched neerer, and ſlew diuers of the Turkes vpon their rampiers: who diſcouraged with their owne weakeneſſe and the forwardneſſe of the enemie, faintly defended themſelues, and yet ſlew diuers of them, beating them downe from the wals with ſtones,timber,fire-workes,and ſuch like. This aſſault giuen in the night,was continued vntill foure a clocke in the morning, and ſo giuen ouer. Shortly after came the Archduke with a thouſand horſe into the campe,and cauſed the batterie to be againe renewed: whereby it chanced,that the chiefe canonier in the caſtle being a renegate German, was taken with a great ſhot, and ſlaine; whoſe death ſo diſmaied the reſt of the defendants,that they preſently ſet forth three white enſignes in ſigne of parle: which for all that the Chriſtians ſeemed not to regard,but ſtill continued their battery. The Turks then pitifully crying out,named two captaines,whom they deſired to haue ſent vnto them,with whom they might fall to ſome reaſonable compoſition. So for a while the battery ceaſed,and thoſe captaines being ſent vnto the town,brought nine of the beſt of the Turks in the citie with them vnto the Archduke: who by their interpreter declared, That they well conſidered the force of the Chriſtians, and ſeeing no reliefe to come from the Baſſa of Byda, as he had promiſed,thought themſelues to haue alreadie diſcharged the parts of good ſouldiors,and ſeeing no other remedie, were contented to yeeld the caſtle, yet ſo, as that with bag and baggage they might in ſafetie depart. Whereunto the lord *Palfi* taking vpon him the perſon of the Archduke(for that he himſelfe would not be knowne) anſwered, That for as much as they had not yeelded at the firſt ſummons,but holden it out to the loſſe of many of his mens liues,and his great charge,they were vnworthie any fauour,yet of his owne clemencie he would receiue them,if they would abſolutly without any further condition yeeld themſelues to his mercy. This anſwere being reported to the Sanzacke,gouernor of the towne, pleaſed him not,and therefore ſaid he would ſtill ſtand vpon his defence. Whereupon the Chriſtians were about to haue begun a freſh aſſault. But after a new parley it was at laſt agreed, That the Turks yeelding the towne vnto the Archduke,ſhould in ſafety depart with their apparel and ſcimitars onely. With which agreement two of the Turks were ſent backe into the caſtle, and the reſt detained. Foure houres the Turkes in the caſtle delaied the time, as men doubtfull what to doe: but being earneſtly called vpon by the lord *Palfi* for a reſolute anſwer,and ſeeing the Chriſtians ready again to aſſault them,they for feare yeelded: and ſo foure hundred and fifty of them came forth,amongſt whom was the Sanzacke gouernor of the towne,with his wife and daughter,the Sanzacke of Selendre, ſent thither to haue ayded him,and one Chiaus lately come from the court. Theſe great men brauely mounted, were commaunded to alight from their gallant horſes,and had in their ſteads other bad jades giuen them to ride vpon: and as they paſſed by,as well the women as the men were ſearched, that they carried with them nothing more than their clothes: if any thing els were found,it fell vnto the ſouldiors ſhare for good bootie. This ſtrong town of Novigrad, had continued in the poſſeſſion of the Turkes about threeſcore yeares,and ſerued as it were for a bulwarke to Pesth and Byda, which now recouered out of their hands, opened a way vnto their further harmes. The keeping of this towne was by the Archduke committed to the lord *Rebei*,a noble man of Hvngarie,and kinſman to *Palfi*,with a ſtrong garriſon and certaine troups of Huſſars.

Nouigrad yeelded vnto the archduke.

The Sanzacke of Novigrad,after he had loſt the towne, comming to Byda, was preſently apprehen-

A apprehended by the Baſſa, and laid in priſon: who although he excuſed himſelfe, by alleadging that the towne was not poſſibly to be holden with ſo ſmall a garriſon againſt ſo great a power, and that if any fault were, it was to be imputed to them of BVDA, for not ſending reliefe in time; and therfore appealed vnto the further hearing of *Amurath* himſelfe: yét all ſerued him not, but was by the Baſſaes commaundement in the night hanged vpon a tree neere vnto the gate of the citie, and afterwards cut in pieces.

The Sanzacke of Nouigrad hanged at Buda

Whileſt theſe things were in doing, the emperour ſent his embaſſadours to the great duke of MVSCOVIA, the king of POLONIA, and the prince of TRANSILVANIA, to prooue how they ſtood affected towards thoſe his warres againſt the Turke, and what aid he might procure from them. Into MVSCOVIE was ſent one *Warkutſch* a gentleman of SILESIA, who comming to
B Mvsco, found in that Court the embaſſadors of the Tartar, the Turke, the Perſian, the Polonian, and the Dane. Of all theſe the embaſſadors of the Tartar and the Turke could haue no audience, but were with contumelious words reiected, as miſcreants. The emperours embaſſadour was honourably entertained, and after the maner of that countrey, a large proportion of wine, mede, aquauita, fleſh, fiſh, and foule of ſundrie ſorts allowed him daily all the time of his abode. At length hauing audience, he declared vnto the great duke the cauſe of his comming, and in the name of his maſter requeſted his aid againſt the Turke. Whereunto the duke anſwered, That he would giue the emperour towards the maintenance of his warres againſt the common enemie, fiue hundred thouſand duckets, and allow him yearely foure hundred thouſand, during the time of that warre; requeſting him not to make any peace with the Turke, and promiſing to ſend him
C aid alſo of men in this warre, if hee ſhould ſo need. The Perſian embaſſadour alſo honourably feaſted the emperours embaſſador, and had with him great conference concerning the warres of the Chriſtians with the Turks, and in his maſters name promiſed the continuation of his warres againſt the Turk, ſo that the emperor would likewiſe promiſe not to haue any league with him, ſo to giue him leiſure to turne all his forces againe into PERSIA. This embaſſador after he had almoſt foure moneths taried in MVSCOVIA, returned to the emperor. At which time doctor *Wacker*, the emperours embaſſador into POLONIA, retured alſo with ioyfull newes, how that the Polonians with an armie of eight & twentie thouſand had ſtopped the paſſage of an hundred thouſand Tartars, whom the Turk had ſent for againſt the emperor; and that if he needed, he ſhould be aided with the Polonian Coſſacks: But vnto the reſt of his requeſts he could haue no anſwer
D of the ſtates of that kingdome, for that the king was then abſent in SVVEDEN, and was therefore referred to be further anſwered at his returne.

At the ſame time Countie *Serinus* with three hundred harquebeſiers, and certaine troupes of horſemen, and the footmen of STIRIA, and the countries thereabout aſſembled, to the number of ten thouſand, departed from CANISIA, to beſiege BRESENZA, a caſtle of the Turkes: but they vnderſtanding before of his comming, conueyed away the beſt of their ſubſtance, and ſetting the caſtle on fire, departed the three and twentieth of March. The earle comming thither, tooke the forſaken caſtle, and put thereinto a garriſon of his owne ſouldiors. In like manner he tooke alſo SIGESTA, forſaken of the Turkes, where hee alſo placed a garriſon of the Chriſtians. And ſo going on to BABOSTCHA, beſieged it: which caſtle although it was ſtrongly ſituated
E in a mariſh, and could not eaſily haue been woon, was for all that for feare abandoned by the Turks, and ſo taken by the Countie: by recouery of which places there was a ſafe and eaſie way layed open euen to ZIGET, the Baſſa whereof ſtood in no ſmall doubt to haue been euen then beſieged.

Certaine caſtles of the Turks vpon the borders of Stiria taken by the Countie Serinus.

Amurath intending by all meanes he could to vex the Emperour, had determined to ſend his fleet into the Adriaticke, to beſiege ZEGNA, a cirie of the Emperours, ſituate vpon the ſea coaſt, in the bay QVERNERO, called in auntient time FLANATICVS SINVS. Which the better to effect he ſent one of his Chiaus embaſſadour to the Venetians, to requeſt them, That his fleet might by their leaue paſſe alongſt the Adriaticke, and haue the vſe of their ports and harbours, as need ſhould require. Which his requeſt the Venetians hearing, refuſed in any caſe to yeeld therunto:
F fearing (and not without cauſe) the vnfaithfulneſſe and treacherie of the Turkes, whoſe oathes and promiſes are no longer ſtrong, or by them regarded, than ſtandeth with their owne good and profit: neuertheleſſe, they moſt honorably vſed the embaſſador, and ſo ſent him away, without obtaining of that he was eſpecially ſent for.

In the vpper part of HVNGARIE *Chriſtopher* lord *Teuffenbach* the Archdukes lieutenant hauing

uing gathered an armie of twentie thouſand ſouldiors, the ſixteenth of Aprill laid ſiege to HATVVAN, a ſtrong towne, ſix miles from BVDA, fortified with a triple ditch, and bulwarks of exceeding ſtrength. Againſt which although the Chriſtians could not doe much either by mines or mounts, by reaſon it was ſo enuironed with water: yet they ſo ſhut vp all the paſſages thereunto, that nothing could be brought or caried in or out of the towne. They of the town ſeeing themſelues thus blockt vp, by ſecret meſſengers certified the Baſſa of BVDA in what caſe they ſtood, praying him of aid: who with ten thouſand choſen ſouldiours, which he had then in readineſſe, and the Sanzacks of SERNAH, GIVLA, LIPPA, LERVVOGE, and TSCHANGRAD, with fiue thouſand moe, forthwith ſet forward toward HATVVAN to raiſe the ſiege: and the laſt of Aprill being come within ſight of the Chriſtian armie, about one of the clocke in the afternoone encamped on the ſide of the riuer Sagiwa: but when he could not or els durſt not for the deepeneſſe of the way, the abundance of the water, and neereneſſe of the enemie, aduenture to paſſe the riuer, he retired back againe, to paſſe ouer at Iaſperin (otherwiſe called Iasbrin) where the riuer was ioyned with a bridge, and not farre off a good fourd alſo to paſſe ouer at; thinking ſo to haue come vpon the backs of the Chriſtians, and with more ſafetie to haue relieued the beſieged towne. But *Teuffenbach* perceiuing his purpoſe, forthwith after his departure paſſed the riuer with much difficultie, and ouertaking him with his armie the next day, being the firſt of May, about one of the clock in the afternoone, between ZARCHA and FVSCASALVA, with his great ordinance diſordered the rereward of the enemies battell; and comming on couragiouſly with his whole armie, began a moſt cruell fight: which the Turks a great while endured with wonderfull reſolution: but now deſtitute of their wonted multitude (their greateſt confidence) and hardly layed vnto by the Chriſtians, they in the end turned their backs and fled: whom ſix thouſand Hungarians and Germanes fiercely purſued, and had the killing of them almoſt to BVDA. In this battell the Chriſtians tooke all the enemies great ordinance, with ſeuenteene enſigns, and alſo the caſtle of Iaſperin, which the Turks had for feare abandoned; wherein was found good ſtore of victuals, certaine great pieces, with much other warlike prouiſion. Of this ſo notable a victorie *Teuffenbach* by letters preſently aduertiſed the Archduke, after he was againe returned to the ſiege of HATVVAN. Which letters becauſe they containe many particularities and circumſtances of this battell, I haue thought it not amiſſe here to inſert.

Hatwan beſieged by the Chriſtians.

G H I

The copie of the letters of the L. Teuffenbach to Matthias the Archduke, Generall of the Emperours armie againſt the Turke.

K

Although (ſayth he) *I haue by a ſpeedie meſſenger vpon the very kalends of May certified your excellencie of the notable victorie, which God of his great goodneſſe gaue vnto vs the ſame day ouer our hereditarie enemie: yet afterward vpon diligent inquiſition wee vnderſtood many particularities, as well of the captiues themſelues, as of the inhabitants about* ZOLNOCK, PESTH, *and* BVDA, *whereof I thought good to aduertiſe you. The captiues themſelues confeſſe, That the Baſſa of* BVDA, *with the Sanzacks of* ZOLNOC, ZARVVACE, GIVLA, *and* TSCHANGRAD, CIPPAIO, GENNE, *and others, had with great celeritie raiſed an armie of thirteene thouſand ſouldiours, amongſt whom were many Tartars, with purpoſe to haue relieued the beſieged towne of* HATVVAN, *and vpon the ſudden to haue oppreſſed vs in our tents: Filled with which hope, they in great haſt came with all their power the laſt of Aprill towards* HATVVAN: *but for as much as they could not paſſe ouer the riuer Zagiwa, by reaſon of the height of the water, they were the next day, being the firſt of May, conducted by the captaine of Iaſparin to a more commodious paſſage, ſo to come the neerer vnto vs, and the next day in the morning to haue ſurprized vs in our tents. But our moſt mercifull God hath auerted this ſo great a miſchiefe from vs, and turned it vpon their owne heads. For as it is moſt conſtantly reported from* ZOLNOC, PESTH, *and* BVDA, *and confirmed by the inhabitants of the ſame places, there are two thouſand fiue hundred of the Turkes ſlaine, and as many wounded, of whom many periſhed, and are found dead vpon the high wayes leading to* PESTH *and* ZOLNOC: *of theſe wee haue ſent a thouſand heads to* CASSOVIA, *and cauſed many of the Turkes to be buried for feare of infection in this ſo great heat. Verely it was a bloudie battell, ſo that the old ſouldiours ſay, they haue not remembred or ſeene the Turkes (no moe in number) to haue ſtood ſo long in battell, and to haue ſo fought it out without flying. Many men of great name and place there periſhed and fell, amongſt whom are redeemed the Sanzacks of* PESTH, NOVIGRAD, *and* TEMESKE: GENNE, ALAVIUS, BOGSTE, ALVSTAFA, MARIELAVS, *and certain Chiaus lately ſent from the Court with the Baſſa his guard, wherein were eight hundred right valiant ſoldiors, of whom few eſcaped with life. Many fell that would haue yeelded great ranſome; but it was agreed vpon betweene the Germanes and the Hungarians, not*

L M

to

A *to ſpare any of the enemies, but to put them all to ſword; and that whoſoeuer did otherwiſe, it ſhould be imputed vnto him for diſhonour. So that more than ſixteene common ſouldiors, none were taken priſoners, of whom wee might learne how things went amongſt the Turkes, with other circumſtances of the battell. Wee tooke thirteene field pieces, whereof foure were greater than the reſt, which they called organes, and foure and twentie of the enemies enſignes. The Baſſa of* BVDA *(beſide other three wounds by him receiued) was grieuouſly wounded in the ſide. Of our men were loſt about an hundred, and many of them moſt expert ſouldiors: and about ſix hundred others grieuouſly wounded, of whom there is ſmall hope, many of them being alreadie dead. Neither is the loſſe ſmall wee haue receiued in our horſes and armour, for there be few amongſt the Germane horſemen, which haue not loſt one, two, or three of their horſes or ſeruants, whereby our horſemen are wonderfully weakened: yet*
B *was the victorie great, to God be the praiſe, to him be the glorie and thankes therefore. Let vs in the meane time proſecute the ſiege begun. The laſt night I commaunded the water to be drawne another way, ſo that now our trenches may be aduanced many paces, and bulwarks raiſed within two hundred paces of the wall. Wee haue alreadie planted fiue great pieces of artillerie in one bulwarke, and hope the next night to place fiue moe vpon a mount faſt by, and will doe what ſhall bee needfull for a ſtraight ſiege: and when time ſhall ſerue, vndertake the towne with all our power, God graunt vs therein good ſucceſſe and victorie.*

The Turkes in garriſon at ZABOLA, a fort thereby, diſcouraged with the ouerthrow of their friends, forſooke the fort; which for ſtrength and greatneſſe was comparable with TOCAY or
C ERLA. Which ſtrong place the Chriſtians without any loſſe now recouered.

Whileſt this valiant captaine the lord *Teuffenbach* thus lay at the ſiege of HATVVAN, *Matthias* the archduke Generall of the Chriſtian armie in HVNGARIE, encouraged with the good ſucceſſe he had at NOVIGRAD, came with his armie (being 44000 ſtrong) before STRIGONIVM (ſometime the Metropoliticall citie of HVNGARIE, but now of long a ſure receptacle of the Turkes) and the ſixt of May encamped his armie about a quarter of a mile from the caſtle in a moſt pleaſant medow, from whence both the citie and the caſtle were plainely to be ſeene. Vpon whom the Turkes out of the caſtle, and three gallies that lay vpon the riuer, diſcharged certaine great pieces without any great harme doing: but after the Chriſtian fleet was a little before night come downe the riuer, and with their great ordinance began to anſwere
D them againe, the enemie ceaſed ſhooting, and lay ſtill that night. In the meane time it fortuned, that a Turkiſh youth taken in a garden thereby, & brought into the campe and examined, confeſſed that there was no garriſon in the citie, more than foure hundred Ianizaries, and that a new ſupply was daily expected from BVDA. The Chriſtians labouring that night, were by the breaking of the day, come with their trenches to a hil ouer againſt the caſtle, where they placed their batterie, and forthwith began to batter the citie. The ſame day (being the ſeauenth of May) two and twentie Turkes heads were preſented to the archduke, and foure men taken aliue, newly ſent out of the citie to haue viewed the Chriſtian campe. About night certaine bals of wild fire were ſhot into the citie, whereof one fell vpon the tower called S. *Adelbert*, and ſet it on fire; wherewith firſt the church, and afterward a great part of the towne fell on fire. The Sanzacks
E houſe, with all his horſes and armor, and a great quantitie of pouder was then burnt, and ineſtimable hurt done in the citie. The next day the Chriſtians had with continuall batterie made a breach in the caſtle wall: but adioyning vnto the wall was an high and broad ſandie rampier, which could hardly be battered; for all that the Germans gaue a fierce aſſault vnto the breach, hoping to haue entred by the ruines of the wall, but not being able to get ouer the ſandie rampier, were enforced with loſſe to retire. The day following they began againe the batterie with eighteene great pieces; when about eight a clocke in the morning, the Raſcians that were in the old citie gaue the General to vnderſtand, That if he would at a place by them appointed, aſſault the greater citie to draw the Turks thither, they would in the meane time deliuer vnto the Chriſtians certaine little poſternes, and receiue them into the old citie; vpon condition, that no vio-
F lence ſhould be done vnto them or theirs. Which being ſo agreed vpon, the Chriſtians accordingly gaue the aſſault the eleuenth of May in the euening, and by the helpe of the Raſcians tooke the citie; who according to promiſe were all taken to mercie, and the Turkes ſlaine, except ſuch as by their good hap recouered the new towne. The keeping of this citie was committed to the charge of two companies of German footmen, and ſix hundred Hungarians, with

Strigonium beſieged by the Chriſtians.

The old citie deliuered by the Raſcians vnto the Chriſtians.

three hundred Rascians and other townesmen. Thus was the old citie of STRIGONIVM gai- G
ned by the Christians, the suburbs whereof they presently burnt; neuertheless the new towne
with the castle was still holden by the Turkes. Wherefore the Christians hauing cast vp certaine
trenches and mounts, and placed their artillerie as they thought most conuenient, began again
The castle as-saulted. to batter the castle, and after they had by the furie of the cannon made it saultable, with great
courage assailed the breach, which the Turkes valiantly defended: so that the Christians were
glad to retire, leauing behind them about an hundred and thirtie of their sellowes slaine in the
breach. The Turkes a little before the comming of the Christians, had fortified an hill, where-
unto the castle was something subiect, called of the Christians S. *Nicholas* his hill; this hill so
fortified, the Christians with continuall batterie and assault gained the 17 of May, and put all
the Turkes left aliue therein to the sword; and turning the ordinance, from thence also batte- H
red the castle. The two and twentith of May a little before the going downe of the Sunne, cer-
taine ensignes of footmen were drawne out of the campe, to haue the next day assaulted the
lower towne; who taking the benefit of the night, attempting to haue entred the towne in the
dead time of the night, were notably encountred by the Turkes sallying out of the towne vpon
them. The Christians for all that hauing enforced them to retire, prosecuted their former reso-
lution, and with much adoe got ouer the vttermost wall: but finding there, contrarie to their ex-
pectation, such a deepe and broad countermure as was not possible to be passed, they stood as
men dismaied: neither could they in the darkenesse of the night, well see how to get back againe
ouer the towne ditch, but disorderly retiring, stucke fast many of them in the deepe mud, and
there perished. In this assault there were about a thousand of the Christians wounded and slain: I
and albeit that they twise or thrise renewed the assault, yet preuailed they nothing, but were still
repulsed with losse. Many also of the Turkish garrison were likewise slaine; yea the Sanzacke
himselfe hurt with a great shot, with many other wounded men sent downe the riuer to BVDA,
brought thither true newes of the aforesaid assaults, and of the state of the besieged.

The Rascians rise vp against the Turks. In the meane time newes was brought to the campe, That *Sinan Bassa* the old enemie of the
Christians, and the Turks great lieutenent, comming towards HVNGARIE with a great armie,
and hauing by boats conuaied ouer part thereof, was set vpon by the Rascians (these are poore
oppressed Christians dwelling on both sides of Danubius, who weary of the Turkish thral-
dome, and desirous of their auncient libertie, haue oftentimes taken vp armes against the Turks,
as they now did, encouraged by the good successe of the Christians on the other side of HVN- K
GARIE) and that after diuers skirmishes, they had taken thirteene of the Turks vessels, wherein
beside victuals and certaine great pieces of artillerie, they found about 2400 waight of powder,
447 hundred of lead, 46454 bundles of match, 1200 great shot, whereof 1005 were of 66
pound waight, and of small shot for harquebusiers 48500, with much other warlike prouision:
a great part whereof was brought into the campe at STRIGONIVM, and the rest reserued to fu-
ture vses. This losse so troubled the great Bassa, that he altered his purpose before entended
for CASSOVIA.

The fourth of Iune, about fiue hundred Turks sent vp the riuer from BVDA, conducted by
two Sanzacks vnder two red and white ensignes, landed neere to GOKARA on the farther side
of Danubius, ouer against STRIGONIVM: where after they had awhile refreshed themselues, L
and left some few for the more assurance of the place, all the rest were conuaied ouer the riuer
into STRIGONIVM, where they had been long looked for, the old garrison being now sore weak-
ned by the former assaults. Foure daies after, the Turks encouraged with this supply, sallied out
vpon a sudden, and had entred one of the forts of the Christians; but were forthwith againe re-
pulsed, hauing lost six and twentie of their men, and two of their ensignes: not farre off lay a
troupe of horsemen, who if they had in time come in, not one of the Turks had escaped. Long
it were to tell, how often and in what manner the Christians assaulted this citie, but were by the
Fiue thousand Christians lost at the siege of Strigonium. Turkes so receiued, that in fiue assaults they lost fiue thousand of their men, amongst whom
were diuers captaines, lieutenants, auntients, and others of good account: three and twentie ca-
noniers were also slaine, and ten great pieces of artillerie so spoiled, as that they were no more M
seruiceable. The garrison of this citie consisted for most part of the Ianizaries (the Turkes best
souldiors) whose notable valour in holding out of this siege, was both of their owne people and
their enemies much commended: whatsoeuer was beaten downe by day, that they againe re-
paired by night; and still relieued with victuall and things necessarie from BVDA, did what was
possible

A possible to be done for defence of the citie. About the same time certaine Turkes chancing vpon a troupe of Germane horsemen, in fight slew about fiftie of them, and put the rest to flight: whereupon an alarum being raised in the campe, many ran out to the rescue of their fellowes, taking with them certaine small field pieces. Which the Turkes perceiuing, began to flie: whom the Christians eagerly pursuing, were suddenly assailed by other Turkes, sallying out of a fort fast by, and enforced shamefully to retire, and to leaue their field pieces behind them. Which the Turkes seazing vpon, cloyed them, brake their carriages, and made them altogither vnserviceable.

All this while the lord *Teuffenbach* lying at the siege of HATVVAN, about this time requested aid of the Archduke, for that his power was with often conflicts, hunger, and other difficulties alwaies attending long sieges, so much weakned, as that he had scarcely six thousand sound men in his camp, to whom the Archduke forthwith sent twelue hundred footmen, being loth to spare any mo, for too much weakening of his owne armie. *The Archduke sendeth aid to the siege of Hatwan.*

Amurath disdaining to see the frontiers of his empire in so many places impugned by the Christians, and dayly to receiue from them so great harmes, sought by all meanes to bee reuenged: wherefore beside the great power of his owne, which he was now about to send with *Sinan Bassa* into HVNGARIE, he had also procured from the great Tartar a wonderfull number of those rough and sauage people, to be sent into HVNGARIE, there to ioine with his armie. These wild people to the number of seuentie thousand, according to direction giuen, breaking into PODOLIA, WALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, gathered togither an incredible number of oxen and kine; to this end and purpose, that driuing them before them, they might both be assured of victuals, and the safer trauell through a part of POLONIA. But when they were come vnto the borders of that countrie, and there found the power of *Samoschie* the great Chancellor and the Polonian Cossackes in armes, they easily perceiued that they could not that way passe without great losse. Wherefore they placed the aforesaid heards of cattell, some before, some behind, and some on each side of the armie, and so inclosed round about with those cattell as with a trench, marched on. But when they were come neere vnto the Polonians, this rude deuice serued them to no other purpose than the ouerthrow of themselues: for the Polonians discharging their great ordinance, so terrified the cattell, that they turned vpon the Tartars, and ouerthrowing whomsoeuer came in their way, did exceeding much harme: whom the Polonians immediatly following, and hardly charging the confused armie, armed onely with bow and arrowes, after some small fight put them at last to flight, and obtained of them a notable victorie, with an exceeding rich prey. Of the Polonians were lost about eighteene hundred, but of the Tartars were slaine thirtie thousand. The rest retiring into PODOLIA, and passing the riuer Nester by the way of TRANSYLVANIA, where they did exceeding much harme, came to TEMESVVARE, and so afterwards further into HVNGARIE: vnto whom the Turks sent seuen hundred horsemen, to conduct them to the armie.

But to returne againe to the siege of STRIGONIVM. The foureteenth day of Iune the Christians betweene eight and nine of the clocke in the morning with great furie assaulted the town in three places: which assault they most notably maintained, vntill it was almost three a clocke in the afternoone. Neuertheless, the Turkes so valiantly defended themselues, that at last the Christians were glad to giue ouer the assault, and with losse to retire. The Archduke from an high place beholding the assault, had one of his footmen slaine fast by him with a small shot. Many of the Turkes were also slaine in this assault, and amongst them one of the three Sanzacks that defended the citie. The night following there arose a most horrible tempest, with such raging wind, and abundance of raine, that many thought they should neuer haue seen day: with the violence whereof the Archdukes tent was ouerthrowne, and diuers others blowne downe or rent in sunder, were in the aire carried from place to place. About the same time the lord *Palfi* within the sight of the castle cast vp a notable fort, with high mounts and strong trenches (euen in the selfesame place where *Solyman* lay about fiftie yeares before, when he besieged and woon STRIGONIVM (by which fort so built, the enemie was embarred to conuey any thing vp the riuer for reliefe of the citie, to the great discomfiture of the besieged: for to haue hindered the which worke, the enemie oftentimes sallied out, but to no purpose. This fort being brought to perfection, the Christians tooke also another fort in an island on the further side of the riuer, which the Turkes had but few daies before taken from the Christians, and cloyed the great pieces there- *Strigonium assaulted.*

in: which fort the Christians now againe repaired, furnished it with a sufficient garrison and other great ordinance. G

Strigonium fore battered.

These things thus done, the castle and the lower towne were in fiue diuers places out of the new built fort, the old towne, and the island, so battered with continuall shot, that a man should haue said, that one stone would not haue beene left vpon another, but that all should haue beene beaten downe and laied euen with the ground. The seuenteenth of Iune one of the Christian canoniers so dismounted one of the great pieces in the castle, that the piece togither with the Turkish canonier that had charge thereof fell downe out of the castle into the ditch. And the same day a mason that fled out of the castle into the campe, amongst other things reported, That many of the Turks were slaine with this continuall batterie and often assaults, and that not past H an houre before fortie of them were slaine in one chamber, and now acknowledged themselues to be indeed besieged: and to haue resolued, that when they were brought to the last cast, then desperatly to sallie out vpon the Christians, and so either to return with victorie, or to make shift euery man for himselfe as he might. Which his report seemed not altogither faigned: for about midnight a thousand of the Turks sallying out of the castle vpon the fort newly built vpon the riuer, in hope to haue surprised it, were by the Christians therein notably repulsed and enforced to retire: in which conflict fiftie of the Turkes were slaine, and many moe wounded and taken prisoners. And the same day toward euening eight Turks of good sort being taken & brought into the campe, confessed, That but six daies before, they had seene seuen boats full of wounded and dead men sent downe the riuer from STRIGONIVM to BVDA. Whereby it was easily to bee I gathered how bloodie a siege this was vnto the Turks, for as much as all those bodies were the bodies of men of good account and place; for the bodies of such common souldiors as were slaine, they still threw into the riuer running by

The new built fort hardly assaulted by the Turkes.

The fort newly built vpon the banke of Danubius, much troubled the besieged Turkes in STRIGONIVM, because nothing could without danger of it be sent vp the riuer for their relieſe, Wherefore they by fit messengers sent word out of the castle vnto the Admirall of the Turkes gallies lying below in the riuer, That he should at an appointed time come vp the riuer with his gallies as high as the fort, and on that side at leastwise to make shew as if he would assault it: at which time they of the towne would be likewise readie to sallie out, and to assaile it indeed on the other side by land. The Admirall accordingly came vp the riuer with his gallies, and by dis- K charging of certaine great pieces, made shew as if he would on that side haue battered the fort: but was so welcommed thereout of, that he was glad with his rent gallies quickly to fall downe the riuer againe further off out of danger. But whiles the thundring shot was thus flying too and fro towards the riuer, they of the towne sallying out, assaulted the fort on the other side toward the land, and that with such desperat resolution, that some of them were got vp to the top of the rampiers, and there for the space of two houres maintained a most cruell fight: wherein many of them were slaine, and wounded, and the rest enforced with shame to retire.

The Christians thus still lying at the siege, and intentiue to all occasions, partly by their espials, and partly by such as they had taken prisoners, vnderstood, that a new supplie both of men and victuals was shortly to be put into STRIGONIVM: and therefore sent out certaine companies of soldiors, who lying in two conuenient places, the one vpon the riuer, the other by land, L might intercept the said supply. Both which places were before by the prouident enemie possessed: who suddenly assayling the Christians comming thither, and fearing no such matter, slew some of them, and put the rest to flight: who neuertheles in their retreat, brake the bridge which the Turkes had made of boats vnder the castle of STRIGONIVM ouer Danubius. Of which boats some were carried away with the violence of the streame, & of the rest thirtie fell into the hands of the Christians, without losse of any man more than fiue, who making too much hast out of a little boat, fell into the riuer, & so perished. In this time, Fame the forerunner of all great attempts had brought newes into the Christian campe, That *Sinan Bassa* the Turks great Generall was comming to the relieſe of STRIGONIVM: of whose power, diuers diuersly reported. But the greater part doubting the worst, and wearie of the long siege and of the calamities in- M cident thereunto, added still something to the last report, to make the danger of longer stay to seeme the greater: certaine it is, that the newes of the comming of so great and puissant an enemie, raised many a troubled thought in the minds of so great a multitude. Now were the besieged Turkes in great wants in STRIGONIVM, as appeared by letters intercepted from the San-

zacke

A zacke to the Baſſa of Byda, declaring vnto him the hard eſtate of the beſieged, and humbly craauing his promiſed helpe, without which the citie could not for want of victuals poſſibly be defended by the fainting ſouldiors aboue three daies. Which letters being read in the campe, cauſed great preparation to be made for the continuing of the ſiege & the withſtanding of the enemie, whoſe comming was euery houre expected. All this while the great ordinance neuer ceaſed on either ſide: wherby many were ſlaine, as well of the Chriſtians as of the Turks; and amongſt others many of the cannoniers.

But for as much as the rife fame of *Sinan Baſſaes* comming encreaſed dayly, and the Chriſtian campe poſſeſſed with a generall feare, gaue vnto the wiſe iuſt ſuſpition of ſome great miſchiefe likely to enſue: *Matthias* the Generall entered into counſell with countie *Ferdinand Hardeck*,
B the lord *Palfi*, the lord *Vngenade* preſident of the counſell for the warres, and *Eraſmus Eraun* gouernor of Comora, What were beſt to be done in ſo dangerous a time? who with generall conſent agreed betimes (before the comming of *Sinan*) to raiſe the ſiege, and to remoue with the armie into ſome place of more ſafetie. Which their determinat reſolution, the day following, being the ſix and twentieth of Iune, they made knowne to the other princes and great commanders in the armie: who wonderfully diſcontented therwith, eſpecially the Germans, both openly by word, and ſolemnly by writing, proteſted againſt the ſame, as moſt diſhonourable, and altogither made without their knowledge or good liking. To whom the preſident of the counſell for their further ſatisfaction, declared, That the enemie was comming with a very great armie,
C and euen now at hand, whoſe ſtrength encreaſed daily, and with what power hee had purpoſed to aſſaile them in their tents, was vncertaine: beſides that, it was manifeſtly knowne vnto the world, how that in the former aſſaults they had loſt many of their beſt ſouldiors, beſide others that died in the camp: and that the place wherin they lay encamped, was ſubiect to many dangers: For which ſo vrgent cauſes the General had reſolued to raiſe his ſiege, and before the comming of ſo ſtrong an enemie, to remoue his armie into a place of more ſafetie. Which reaſons for all that did not ſo well ſatisfie the Germane princes and commanders, but that they ſtill vrged their former proteſtation, requeſting his excellencie to haue them excuſed before God and the world, if they yeelding to his commaund, as to their Generall, did that which they thought not altogither beſt, and which they would not haue otherwiſe done. For the more euidence
D whereof, the ſaid Germane princes and great commanders cauſed their ſaid proteſtation to bee ſolemnly conceiued in writing, which they firmed with their ſeales, and ſubſcribed with their owne hands in order as followeth: *Francis* duke of Saxonie, *Auguſtus* duke of Brvnsvvick, *Sebaſtian Schlick*, countie *Wigand Maltzan*, *Erneſtus* of Alstan, *Henry Phluck*, *Iohn Nicholas Ruſwormb*, *Henrie Curwigger Heerrath*, *Iohn* Oberhavsen, *Henrie Rottcirch*, *Melchior* of Nothvvith.

But the Archduke with the reſt conſtant in their former reſolution, firſt ſent away the great ordinance, and raiſing the ſiege the eight and twentieth of Iune, followed after with the whole armie, paſſing ouer Danubius not farre from *Kokara*, doubtfully expecting what courſe *Sinan* the great Baſſa (who was then reported to be euen at hand) would take. Yet before their departure they ſet the old towne on fire, and raſed the fort S. *Nicholas*, before taken from the enemie,
E which they had once purpoſed to haue kept. This vnexpected departure of the chriſtians much gladded the beſieged Turkes: who for want of victuals had not been able long to haue holden out. Yet lay the lord *Teuffenbach* ſtill at the ſiege of Hatvvan, labouring by all meanes to take from the beſieged Turks their water, and with earth and faggots to fill vp their ditches, which worke he had now happily brought to ſome good perfection. Whereof they in the towne by letters aduertiſed the Baſſa of Byda, and that except they were within the ſpace of three daies relieued, they ſhould be enforced to yeeld the towne. Which their diſtreſſe the Baſſa conſidering, with ſpeed aſſembled all his forces, & ſo ſet forward to relieue them, hoping to haue come vpon the Chriſtians before they were aware of his comming. But *Teuffenbach* vnderſtanding thereof,
F with fiue thouſand choſen horſemen went out of the campe to meet him, & ſuddenly comming vpon him, fearing no ſuch thing, ſlew fiue thouſand of the Turks, put the Baſſa to flight, and togither with the victorie obtained an exceeding rich prey.

The Archduke raiſeth his ſiege, and with his armie paſſeth the riuer.

Fiue thouſand Turks ſlaine.

Now was there no leſſe expectation and hope of the winning or yeelding vp of Hatvvan, than was before of Strigonivm: but according to the chance of warre it fell out otherwiſe. For *Teuffenbach* hauing with continuall batterie layed the breaches faire open, and made choiſe

Hatwanin vain aſſaulted by the Chriſtians.

of ſuch ſouldiors as he thought meeteſt for the aſſault, was in the performing thereof ſo notably repulſed by the Turks, that he was glad to retire with the loſſe of his beſt and moſt reſolut ſouldiors: which put him out of all hope of taking the towne by force. For beſide the loſſe of theſe good men, he had ſcarce ſo many ſound men left, as might ſuffice to furniſh his garriſons for defence of thoſe frontires: by reaſon that the Hungarians were almoſt all ſhrunk home, and of the Germans were left ſcarce two thouſand. Beſides that he had oftentimes craued new ſupplies of the Archduke, but all in vaine: for which cauſes he was glad to abandon two ſtrong forts he had built before HATVVAN, and to leaue the towne now brought to great extremitie. Thus two notable cities, which were now as it were in the hands of the Chriſtians, and by the recouerie whereof the broken ſtate of the afflicted Chriſtians in HVNGARIE had bin much ſtrengthened, were as it were againe reſtored vnto the barbarous and cruell enemie. G H

Teuffenbach ſiueth ouer the ſiege of Hatwan

Whileſt the Chriſtians thus lay at the ſiege of STRIGONIVM and HATVVAN, the Raſcians (of whom we haue before ſpoken) ſtriuing ſtill more and more to rid themſelues from the Turkiſh thraldome, gathered themſelues togither to the number of fifteene thouſand, betweene BVDA and BELGRADE, vnder a Generall of their owne chuſing. For feare of whom, the Baſſa of TEMESVVAR with an armie of foureteene thouſand, went to fortifie and victuall LIPPA, doubting leaſt it ſhould by them bee ſurpriſed: but hauing done that he went for, in his returne he was met with by the ſame Raſcians, and twice fought withall in one day, and both times put to the worſe, with the loſſe of the greateſt part of his armie. After which victorie the Raſcians tooke BECZKEREK a ſtrong towne, ſtanding in a marſh foure miles from BELGRADE, and ſlew all the Turkes they found therein. After that they tooke a caſtle called OTTADT, and dealt with the Turkes in like manner. From thence they went and beſieged BECHE, a caſtle ſtanding vpon the riuer Tibiſcus or Teiſe, where the town adioyning vnto it yeelded preſently; but they in the caſtle ſtanding a while vpon their guard, offered at laſt to yeeld alſo vpon certaine conditions. But the Raſcians knowing that the Turks thereabouts had conuaied into that caſtle the beſt part of their wealth, and withall that it was but weakely manned, would accept of no conditions, but needs haue it abſolutely deliuered vp to their pleaſure. In the meane time the old Baſſa of TEMESVVAR and his ſonne, knowing it to tend to their diſhonour to ſuffer this baſe people ſo to rage at their pleaſure about them, gathered togither 11000 Turkes, and ſo in great haſt came to relieue the beſieged caſtle. Vpon whom the Raſcians turned themſelues, and in plain battell ouerthrew the Baſſa, & ſo purſued the victorie, that of thoſe 11000 Turks ſcarcely eſcaped 1000: the Baſſa himſelfe being there ſlain, and with him three Sanzacks, his ſonne eſcaped by flight. In this battell the Raſcians tooke 18 great pieces of artillerie: and not long after tooke alſo WERSETZ and LVTZ, two ſtrong places. After which ſo happie ſucceſſe, they ſent vnto the archduke *Matthias* for aid, but eſpecially for canoniers, profeſſing themſelues now vtter enemies vnto the Turkes. The Raſcians alſo about TEMESVVAR ſent word vnto the other in the campe, that they would come and ioine with them. And they which inhabite the countrie betweene the riuers Danubius and Tibiſcus, by meſſengers ſent of purpoſe vnto the lord *Teuffenbach* (the archdukes lieutenant in the vpper part of HVNGARIE) offered in ſhort time to ſend him ten or twelue thouſand men, ſo that he would receiue them and their countrie into the emperors protection; which he eaſily granted them, & therof aſſured them by writing. And to the archduke himſelfe they ſent alſo their truſty meſſengers, requeſting him to ſend them a Generall to leade them, promiſing vnto him all obedience: which meſſengers departing from them the fourteenth of Iune, ſhortly after returned with ſuch anſwere as was thought moſt conuenient for their preſent ſtate. Thus againſt the comming of *Sinan*, was HVNGARIE almoſt all on a broile. I K L

A Diet of the empire holden at Ratiſbone for the withſtanding of the Turkes.

The emperour long before diſtruſting the Turkes purpoſe for warre, and well conſidering what a difficultie it would be for him with his owne forces only to withſtand ſo puiſſant an enemie as was *Amurath*; had by his embaſſadours praied aid of diuers Chriſtian princes, but eſpecially of them of the empire, as thoſe whom this warre concerned moſt. Wherefore he after the ancient and wonted maner of his ſtate in ſo common and imminent a danger, appointed a generall aſſembly of the Princes and States of the empire, to be holden at RATISBONE, in the latter end of Februarie: which for ſundrie vrgent cauſes was put off vntill March, and againe vntill Aprill, and ſo afterward vntill May. At which time the emperour in perſon himſelfe, with the Princes Electors, and other the great States of the empire, being met togither with great M

pompe

A pompe at RATISBONE, and ſolemnely aſſembled in the Biſhops pallace, began there to ſit in counſell the 2. of Iune. Vnto which princes and ſtates ſo aſſembled, after that the emperour had firſt by the mouth of *Philip* Countie Palatine of RHENE, giuen great thanks for their ſo readie apparance, & briefly declared the cauſe of their aſſembly; he himſelfe after ſome complaint made of the Turkiſh infidelity, in expreſſe words declared vnto them, how that he by his embaſſadour then lying at CONSTANTINOPLE, had in the yeare 1591 made a league for eight yeares, with the preſent Turkiſh Sultan *Amurath*: which league *Amurath* himſelfe had approued and confirmed, and thereof ſent him publike and ſolemne inſtruments: wherein it was prouided, That no hoſtilitie ſhould bee on either ſide during that time attempted. And yet notwithſtanding that he, contrarie to his faith giuen, as an hereditarie enemie of the Chriſtians, had violated this league, and by ſundrie incurſions barbarouſly ſpoyled and waſted, not HVNGARIE onely, but other of his imperiall prouinces alſo: But eſpecially by *Haſſan Baſſa* of BOSNA, who firſt with a ſtrong armie beſieged, battered, and tooke REPITZ, an ancient frontier caſtle, and after that WIHITZ, DRENIK, CRASSOVVITZ, with other places of name: And had in his dominion and territorie built PETRINIA, a moſt ſtrong fort, hurtfull to all that countrey, out of which hee had done incredible miſchiefe in CROATIA, WINDISMARCH, and the moſt fruitfull iſland TVROPOLIE; and had out of thoſe places carried away aboue fiue and thirtie thouſand Chriſtians into moſt miſerable captiuitie. Of which ſhamefull iniuries and breach of faith, he had many times by his embaſſadours complained vnto the Turkiſh Sultan at CONSTANTINOPLE, and requeſted, that all hoſtilitie ſet apart, due reſtitution might haue been made, but to haue therein preuailed nothing: and that the ſame Baſſa in ſtead of condigne puniſhment, had been for the doing thereof honoured by the great Sultan his lord with honourable gifts, the ſure tokens of his fauour: Whereby he was ſo confirmed in his barbarous proceedings, that he began to make open warre, and hauing raiſed a full army, and ſtrengthened alſo with certain companies of Ianizaries ſent from the Court, had paſſed ouer the riuer of Kulp, and beſieged the caſtle of SISEG: but by the iuſt iudgement of God the reuenger of wrongs, had there receiued the reward of his faithleſſe and cruell dealing, being there ſlaine, and almoſt all his armie vtterly deſtroyed by his ſmall forces, raiſed in haſte for his owne lawfull defence. Neuertheleſſe the faithleſſe Turke (as if hee had beene highly wronged himſelfe) to haue made this his breach both of league and faith forthwith knowen to all the world, by commanding open warre to be ſolemnly proclaimed againſt the kingdome of HVNGARIE, both in CONSTANTINOPLE and BVDA: and by the Beglerbeg of GRÆCE, to haue againe beſieged and taken the ſtrong fortreſſe of SISEG. Whereas on the other ſide (becauſe nothing ſhould on his part be wanting, which might make his deſire of peace more knowne) hee had againe, and oftentimes by his embaſſadour put the Turke in remembrance of his league made, and confirmed by his faith: who for all that had changed nothing of his purpoſe, but ſent his great Vilier *Sinan Baſſa* with the Beglerbeg of GRÆCIA, and many inferiour Baſſaes and Sanzackes into HVNGARIE, who with fire and ſword enforced the inhabitants and countrey people (ſuch as they left aliue) to ſweare vnto the Turke obedience, and to become his ſubiects: and at the ſame time tooke VESPRINIVM and PALOTTA, two famous fortreſſes of that kingdome. And that the ſame Baſſa by commandement from his lord and maſter, had contrary to the law of nations impriſoned *Frederik Kreckowitz* his embaſſadour, firſt at CONSTANTINOPLE, and cauſed the greater part of his followers to bee thruſt into the gallies; and afterwards to haue ſent him with a few of his ſeruants to BELGRADE, and there to haue kept him ſo long in priſon, that he there miſerably died. In reuenge of which ſo great and open wrong, and for the defence and comfort of his afflicted ſubiects ſo neere the enemie, he had raiſed a good ſtrength both of horſe and foot, by whoſe helpe and the aſſiſtance of almightie God, the Baſſa of BOSNA had reaped the fruit of his perfidious dealing: as had alſo the Baſſa of BVDA, with many thouſands of their great ſouldiors, ouerthrowne neere vnto ALBA REGALIS; beſides many of their caſtles and townes taken or raſed. Yet for all that was it eaſie to be ſeene, theſe ſo great victories by the goodneſſe of God had and obtained againſt ſo mightie and cruell an enemie, not to ſuffice; but that there was ſtill need of a perſeuerant and continual ſupply for the maintenance of a perpetual warre: and that it was daily to be expected, or rather euen now preſently to be deſcried, That the Turke in his quarrell which hee deemeth alwaies iuſt againſt the Chriſtians, & in reuenge of theſe ouerthrowes, would draw forth all his forces, and aduenture his whole ſtrength. For which cauſes he had by the knowledge and conſent

The emperour grieuouſly complaineth vnto the princes Electors, and State s of the empire, of the infidelitie of the Turke, and craueth their aid.

ſent of the princes electors of the ſacred empire, appointed that preſent Diet of the empire; and G
not for the aforeſaid cauſes only, but for diuers others both neceſſarie and waightie alſo: as the
generall peace of the empire, the pacification of the Low countries, the reformation of iuſtice,
and amendment of the coine: but eſpecially and aboue all other things, to make it knowne vnto
the world, how much it concerned to haue the Turkes pride betime abated, and ſome effectuall
defence for HVNGARIE (now in danger) at length prouided; being the moſt ſure defence and
ſtrongeſt bulwarke of that part of Chriſtendome. And that whereas his owne hereditarie pro-
uinces were not of themſelues alone ſufficient to maintaine ſo chargeable a war, he therefore re-
queſted the Electors, Princes, and States both preſent and abſent, not to grudge to be preſent
with their helpe, their counſell, and whatſoeuer elſe ſhould bee needfull againſt ſo puiſſant and
dangerous an enemie. So ending his ſpeech, he cauſed all his demaunds before conceiued into H
writing to be read, and ſo deliuered vnto them. For anſwering whereunto, the Princes electors
and others there preſent required time; which granted, after many ſittings & long conſultations
they at laſt with one conſent anſwered, That it was a hard matter by reaſon of the late dearth,
and other like occaſions, for them to grant ſuch help and aid as the emperour had in writing re-
quired: yet hauing before their eies the great and imminent danger wherein the Chriſtian com-
mon weale then ſtood, they not regarding their own proper and neere difficulties, had in regard
of his ſacred and imperiall maieſtie, for the comfort and defence of the endangered Chriſtians,
and for the repreſſing of the Turkiſh furie, of their owne free will and meere compaſſion, gran-
ted beſide their accuſtomed contribution, ſuch farther reliefe for the ſpace of ſix yeares, as they
thought ſufficient for the maintenance of a defenſiue warre, both for the preſent and the time to I
come. What was by them farther decreed concerning the emperors other demands, as not per-
tinent to our purpoſe, we willingly paſſe ouer.

Sinan Baſſa with an army of 150 thouſand betweene Buda & Alba Regalis.

Of all theſe things, as alſo whatſoeuer elſe had happened at STRIGONIVM, HATVVAN, or other places of HVNGARIE, was not *Sinan Baſſa* ignorant: who now euen vpon the departure of the Chriſtians from STRIGONIVM, was come with an huge armie betweene BVDA and ALBA REGALIS: vnto whom alſo fortie thouſand Tartars, that by force had made themſelues way through PODOLIA and the vpper part of HVNGARIE, had now ioyned themſelues: ſo that in his armie were reckoned aboue an hundred and fiftie thouſand fighting men; to the great terrour, not onely of HVNGARIE, AVSTRIA, STIRIA, CROATIA, BOHEMIA, and the prouinces thereabout, but alſo of the whole ſtate of GERMANIE. With this great armie the old Baſſa had purpoſed to haue ouerwhelmed the Chriſtians in their campe at STRIGONIVM: but now that they were before his comming departed ouer the riuer towards COMARA, he reſolued to keepe on his way, and to beſiege the ſtrong citie IAVRINVM, now called RAB. And to make all ſure before him, he thought it beſt to take in his way DOTIS, a ſtrong towne of the Chriſtians, in the mid way between STRIGONIVM and RAB, about fiue Hungarian miles ſhort of RAB. The Chriſtian armie but newly paſſed ouer Danubius, in marching towards KOMARA, might ſee the mountains and fields on the other ſide of the riuer all couered with the multitude of the Turks armie: who though they were in deed many, yet marching diſperſedly, made ſhow of moe than in truth they were. So both armies marching in ſight the one of the other, and ſeparated onely with the L
riuer, held on their way: the Chriſtians to KOMARA, where they encamped vnder the verie wals of the citie, yet in ſuch ſort, as that they might a farre off well deſcrie one another; and the Turkes towards DOTIS, where the Baſſa with all his armie encamped the 21 day of Iuly. The night following, hauing planted his batterie, he began in furious manner to batter the caſtle, the chiefe ſtrength of the towne; the Chriſtian armie looking on, but not daring at ſo great ods to relieue their diſtreſſed friends. So whiles the Baſſa granteth no breathing time vnto the beſieged, but tireth them out with continuall batterie and alarums, they of the towne diſpairing of their owne ſtrength, and to be able for any long time to hold out againſt ſo mightie an enemy, within three dayes after yeelded the towne, being in that ſhort time ſore battered, and in diuers places vndermined: yet with this condition, That it ſhould be lawfull for the garriſon ſoldiors and townesmen, with their wiues & children in ſafetie to depart. Which was vnto them by the Baſſa frankly granted, but not ſo faithfully performed: for at their departure many of their wiues and children were ſtaied by the Turks, and the lord *Baxi* Gouernour of the towne fouly entreated. Immediatly after, the Baſſa without much adoe tooke *S. Martins* caſtle alſo, not farre DOTIS, being by the captaine yeelded vnto him. M

Dotis and Saint Martins yeelded to the Turks

In

A In the meane time the countrey villages round about forſaken of the poore Chriſtians, were by the Turks moſt miſerably burnt, and all the countrey laied waſt. Yea ſome of the forerunners of the Turks armie paſſing ouer the riuer Rabnitz, ran into the country as farre as ALTENBVRG, within fiue miles of VIENNA, burning the country villages as they went, and killing the poore people, or that worſe was, carying them away into perpetuall captiuitie: yet not without ſome loſſe, foure hundred of theſe roaming forragers being cut off by the lord *Nadaſti*. *Palfi* alſo, and *Brun* Gouernour of KOMARA following in the taile of the Turkes armie, ſet vpon them that had the charge of the victuals; of whom they ſlew a great number, tooke 120 of them priſoners, and 150 camels, and 30 mules laded with meale and rice, which they carried away with them to KOMARA.

B DOTIS and *S. Martins* thus taken, *Sinan Baſſa* conſtant in his former determination, ſet forward againe towards RAB, and being come within a mile of the citie, there encamped; the Chriſtian armie then lying not far off on the other ſide of the riuer. This citie of RAB is a ſtrong *Rab.* and populous citie, honored with a Biſhops See, and was worthily accounted the ſtrongeſt bulwarke of VIENNA, from whence it is diſtant about twelue Germane miles, ſtanding vpon the South ſide of Danubius, whence the riuer diuiding it ſelfe, maketh a moſt fertile iſland called SCHVT; in the Eaſt point whereof ſtandeth the ſtrong citie of KOMARA. The defence of this citie of RAB was commited to Countie *Hardek*, a man of greater courage than fidelitie, with a garriſon of twelue hundred choiſe ſouldiors, vnto whom a little before the comming of the Baſſa were certaine companies of Italians ioyned, who together with the citizens made vp the
C number of fiue thouſand able men: a ſtrength in all mens iudgement ſufficient for the long defence of that place. The laſt of Iuly (*Matthias* the Archduke about the going downe of the Sunne departing out of the citie of RAB, ouer the riuer into the iſland ouer againſt it) came *Sinan Baſſa* with his huge armie and beſet it round, caſting vp trenches and mounts, whereon hee skilfully placed his gabions and great artillerie, and whatſoeuer elſe was neceſſarie for ſo great a ſiege: and that with ſuch celeritie, as was to the beholders thought moſt ſtrange. The ſecond of Auguſt, he with great furie battered the citie, and brought his trenches within musket ſhot of the wals. At which time foure thouſand Tartarian horſmen ſwam ouer the Danubius betweene RAB and KOMARA; after whom followed ſix thouſand Turkes, who being with much adoe got ouer to the farther ſide, ſuddenly ſurpriſed a fort of the Chriſtians next vnto the riuer; and *The Turks and Tartars paſſing ouer the riuer, ouerthrowne.*
D forthwith turning fiue great pieces of ordinance which they found therein, diſcharged them vpon the campe of the Chriſtians: who terrified with the ſudden accident, riſe vp all in armes, and hardly charging thoſe deſperat aduenturers, ſlew many of them; eſpecially ſuch as ſeeking after bootie had diſperſed themſelues from their fellowes, and forced the reſt againe to take the riuer, wherin moſt of them periſhed. About fiue daies after, the Tartarians (liuing for moſt part vpon *The Tartarians the ſecond time ouerthrowne.* prey) ſwam againe ouer the riuer, and vpon the ſudden burnt a village in the iſland, and ſlew certaine Chriſtians in their tents; but being quickly encountred by the Chriſtian horſemen, they were eaſily ouerthrown, and many of them ſlain: the reſt caſting away their weapons and forſaking their horſes, ran headlong into the riuer, truſting more to their ſwimming than to their fighting; whom the Chriſtians hardly purſuing, in the verie riuer ſlew about two thouſand of them:
E and by this victory obtained many of the Tartarians ſwift horſes, with their ſcimitars, their bows and arrowes, and ſuch enſignes as they had. All this while *Sinan Baſſa* without intermiſſion, lay *Rab battered.* thundring with threeſcore great pieces of battery againſt the citie: but to little or ſmall purpoſe, for as yet he had made no breach whereby to enter, but the harme that was done, was vpon the towers, or high built houſes, or in the campe, by ſuch randon ſhot as flying ouer the towne, fell by chance among the tents of the Chriſtians. And the Ianizaries intentiue to all opportunities, in a great raine furiouſly and with a moſt horrible cry (as their manner is) aſſaulted an vtter bulwarke of the Chriſtians, which they for feare forſook, and retired themſelues into the citie; vpon which bulwarke ſo taken, the Ianizaries had ſet vp three of their enſignes: When the Chriſtians aſhamed of that they had done, and better aduiſed, taking courage vnto them, forthwith ſallied
F out againe, and couragiouſly charging the Ianizaries but now entred, ſlew many of them, and recouered againe the bulwarke.

Sinan Baſſa leauing nothing vnattempted that might further his deſire for the winnig of the *A Baſſa ſlaine.* citie, was now caſting vp a great mount againſt the citie: which whileſt he daily ſurueyed, hee chanced to fall ſicke, and therfore appointed one of the Baſſaes in his owne ſtead to ouerſee the worke:

worke; who whileſt he was walking too and fro, haſtening the worke, and commaunding this G
and that thing to be done, he was taken with a ſhot out of the towne and ſlaine.

The fifteenth of Auguſt certaine Turks before the riſing of the Sunne getting ouer Danubius in boats, aſſailed a fort of the Chriſtians: which the ſouldiours that had the keeping of it, preſently forſooke, and left it to the enemie. Which *Iohn de Medices*, lately come into the campe with two thouſand Italians, perceiuing, forthwith came to the reſcue of the fort, draue out the Turks, and hauing ſlaine diuers of them, forced the reſt into the riuer, where they were all drowned. At which time 5000 Tartars in another place, paſſing ouer the riuer into the iſland were encountered by the lord *Palfi* and the Huſſars his followers, and without any great reſiſtance put to flight, wherein many of them were ſlaine: the reſt taking the riuer, were in good hope to haue got ouer, and ſo to haue ſaued themſelues. But other Turks meeting them in the riuer, H
would with their weapons haue beaten them back, and ſtayed their flight: againſt whom the Tartars oppoſing themſelues, made with them in the very riuer a moſt cruell fight, but with ſuch loſſe vnto the Tartars, that of the fiue thouſand which aduentured ouer, few returned to carrie newes vnto their fellowes how they had ſped. Now began great ſcarcitie of victuals in the Turks campe, ſo that the ſouldiors were faine to feed vpon vnripe fruit and ſuch other vnwholeſome things: whereof enſued the bloudie flix, with many other dangerous diſeaſes: which raging amongſt them, did wonderfully conſume the Baſſaes armie. Beſide that, they of the citie with continuall ſhot had ſlaine many, and amongſt them a ſonne in law of the great Baſſaes, whoſe death he is reported to haue taken ſo vnpatiently, that he fell ſick for griefe, but in ſhort time after paſſed it ouer, and recouered againe. I

A fight in the riuer betwixt the Turks and the Tartars.

The Tartars not yet warned by their often loſſes, but paſſing againe ouer the riuer into the iſland the nineteenth of this moneth, were there three thouſand of them ſlaine. In the mean time certaine companies alſo of the Turks hauing ſecretly paſſed the riuer, in another quarter aſſayled the Chriſtians in their campe: in which hurlyburly other of the Tartars got ouer the riuer not farre from KOMARA, hoping now at length to performe ſome great matter, which they had before ſo often to their coſt vainely attempted. But finding the Turks ouerthrowne before their comming, and the Chriſtians (contrarie to their expectation) in armes readie to receiue them, they were eaſily diſcomfited, and two thouſand of them ſlaine. In this conflict the Sanzacke of STRIGONIVM, with two others, and many moe of great account among the Turkes periſhed. Shortly after the Chriſtians ſallying out of the citie, ſlew a great number of the Turkes, and ſo K
retired with ſmall loſſe. Thus was the Turks armie dayly deminiſhed, beſides that the want of victuals with the bloudie flix ſo increaſed, that many perſwaded the Baſſa to haue raiſed his ſiege, and to haue remooued with his armie to ſome other more wholeſome place, and of greater plentie: but he reſolutely ſet downe not to depart before he had either woon the towne, or enforced them therein to yeeld, would not hearken to any perſwaſions to the contrarie.

Whileſt *Sinan* thus lay at the ſiege of RAB, *Maximilian* the Emperours brother tooke *Craſtowitz*, a fortreſſe of the Turks vpon the borders of CROATIA, and put to ſword all the Turks there in garriſon. After that he layed ſiege to PETRINIA, a ſtrong fortreſſe of the Turks, which they but a few yeares before had contrarie to the league built in the Emperours territorie, for the annoying of CROATIA, and for the exceeding ſtrength thereof was thought almoſt impregnable. Yet ſuch was the induſtrie of *Maximilian* and his ſouldiors, that what with continuall batterie and mines they ſo terrified the Turks there in garriſon, that they for feare ſet fire on the fort, and flying away by night made ſhift euery man for himſelfe, as he might. Which they in the caſtle of SISEG hearing, ſet fire alſo vpon it, and ſo left it to the Chriſtians: whoſe example they alſo of GARA followed: by which ſo proſperous and happie ſucceſſe of *Maximilians*, not the frontiers only, but euen the whole countrey of CROATIA was for that time deliuered of a wonderfull trouble and no leſſe danger. L

A great skirmiſh betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians.

The eight and twentith day of Auguſt twentie thouſand of the Chriſtians paſſing ouer the riuer by a bridge out of the iſland, and ioyning with them of the towne, ſallied out vpon the Turks camp. The Hungarian Heidons in the foreward at the firſt onſet tooke two of the Turks M
bulwarks; and hauing beaten out the enemies, cloyed certaine of their great pieces: but the Turks returning with greater power, enforced the Chriſtians to retire, and recouered again their loſt bulwarks. In this conflict many were ſlaine, as well Chriſtians as Turks. In the meane while *Thonhauſe* a great captaine of the Chriſtians, and *Geitzhofler*, countie *Hardecke* his lieutenant,

A nant, with fifteene hundred Hungarians and Germane footmen came in great boats to haue holpen their fellowes, but landing ſomewhat too late, they were by the enemie beaten back, and enforced with ſuch ſpeed to retire, that many of them being not able to recouer the boats, were drowned in the riuer, amongſt whom *Geitzhofler* himſelfe periſhed, and *Thonhauſe* was deadly wounded in his breaſt. Yet the Chriſtians not diſcouraged with this loſſe, but gathering themſelues together vnder the very wals of the citie, gaue a ſecond aſſault vnto the enemie. In the foreward were the footmen, who were by the enemies horſemen eaſily repulſed: but by the comming in of the lord *Rinsberg* (who was at the firſt onſet ſlaine) the Turks were enforced into their trenches, except ſome few, which deuided from the reſt hid themſelues in the vineyards, but being found out by the Chriſtians, were there all ſlaine. In this skirmiſh the lord *Palfi* was
B grieuouſly wounded in his thigh. Of the Chriſtians were ſlaine foure hundred, and of the Turks about two thouſand. Theſe conflicts endured from ſeuen a clock in the morning vntill twelue, at which time the Chriſtians returning into the citie, and ſo into the campe, amongſt other ſpoyles carried away with them ſeuenteene of the enemies enſignes.

Two thouſand Turks ſlain, and 17 of their enſignes taken.

No day now paſſing without ſome skirmiſh, at length the ninth of September ten thouſand Turkes, ſome in boates, ſome by other meanes, hauing got ouer the riuer of Danubius into the iſland of SCHVT, ſuddenly ſet vpon the Chriſtians, all ſleeping in ſecuritie, and little fearing any ſuch danger: of whom they ſlew about two thouſand, and after ſome ſmall fight put the reſt to moſt ſhamefull flight, in ſuch ſort, that *Matthias* the Archduke himſelfe with the other noblemen and captaines had much adoe by flight to eſcape. Thus whileſt euery man ſurprized with
C feare, made what ſhift he could for himſelfe; the enemie in the meane time entered the trenches, tooke their tents, the great ordinance, the ſhot and pouder, and all the money which but a little before was brought for the ſouldiors pay; beſides about a thouſand waggons, and two hundred boats well loaded with prouiſion for the campe, and ten gallies, wherein were an hundred and twentie pieces of great ordinance. The loſſe receiued this day was valued at fiue hundred thouſand duckats. And albeit that this victorie coſt the Turks two thouſand and fiue hundred of their liues, yet thereby they gained the maſterie both vpon the riuer and the land, ſo that now roming far and neere without reſiſtance, they ſpoyled the countrey all about, and burnt certain countrey villages not far from VIENNA: ſo that for many miles ſpace the countrey townes were for feare of the enemie forſaken by the inhabitants; of whom ſome were taken and ſlaine, ſome
D carried into captiuitie, and ſome others (reſerued to a better fortune) with ſuch things as they had, got themſelues farther off into places of more ſecuritie. And the more to encreaſe theſe calamities, the Tartars ſhortly after paſſing ouer Danubius neere vnto ALTENBVRG, firſt ſacked WEISENBVRG, and after burnt it, with certaine townes thereabout: but aduenturing to haue gone further into the countrey, they were with loſſe enforced to returne.

A great ſpoile taken by the Turks.

Whileſt the Turks thus preuaile in HVNGARIE, *Cicala Baſſa* the Turks Admirall then at ſea with a fleet of gallies, landing his men in diuers places of ITALIE, did exceeding much harme but eſpecially in CALABRIA, where he vpon the ſudden ſurprized RHEGIVM, rifled the towne, and afterwards burnt it. From thence taking his courſe towards SICILIA, he in the ſight of
E MESSANA landed certaine of his men; who aduenturing too farre aſhore, were by the countrey people ouerthrowne and put to flight. So the Turks returning againe to RHEGIVM, vtterly raſed what they had before left of that towne. In the meane time not farre from MESSANA, euen in the ſight of the garriſon of the towne, they tooke a certaine ſhip comming out of the Eaſt countries, and three other comming from APVLIA. Afterward chancing vpon certaine gallies of the Eaſt, they changed ſome few ſhot with thē, but to no great purpoſe. And ſo turning their courſe, and ſailing alongſt the coaſt of CALABRIA, they oftentimes landed certain companies, which skirmiſhing with the Calabrians, had ſometime the better and ſometime the worſe, and ſo with ſuch fortune as befell them, were againe receiued into the gallies. They of MESSANA, vnto whoſe eyes theſe dangers were dayly preſented both by letters & ſpeedie meſſengers, gaue the Viceroy knowledge thereof (who then for his pleaſure lay at PALERMO) requeſting his pre-
F ſent aid: but he dallying of the time, they for the more ſafegard of the citie and of the ſea coaſt, of themſelues raiſed fiue hundred horſemen, whom they committed to the leading of *Philip Cicala*, the renegate Turkiſh Admirals brother; and beſide ſtored the citie with all ſuch things as they thought neceſſarie for the enduring of a ſiege, if it ſhould chance the Turke to haue any ſuch purpoſe: of all which they certified the king of SPAINE, as alſo of the negligence of the Viceroy,

Rhegium raſed by the Turks.

Viceroy, requeſting his ſpeedie aid againſt theſe terrours of the Turks. In the meane while the G
Neapolitanes for ſafegard of their coaſt put to ſea thirtie gallies: vnto whom the Pope, the duke of FLORENCE, the Genowayes, and the knights of MALTA, ioyned alſo theirs, in all to the number of about foureſcore gallies, vnder the conduct of *Auria*. The prouident Venetians alſo although they were as then in league with the Turke; yet for the more ſafetie of their ſtate, put to ſea a fleet of about an hundred ſaile, ſome ſhips, ſome gallies, vnder the leading of *Foſcarin* their Admirall. Which two fleets ſayling vp and down thoſe ſeas, deliuered ITALIE, SICILIE, DALMATIA, with many other prouinces and iſlands of the Chriſtians of a great feare.

Rab aſſaulted by the Turks.

Sinan Baſſa hauing before encouraged his ſoldiors with great hope and large promiſes, commaunded an aſſault to be giuen to the citie of RAB: which was accordingly by them begun the three and twentith day of September, the Sun being as yet ſcarce vp, and furiouſly maintained H
all that day from morning vntill night. But they of the towne ſo valiantly defended themſelues, that at laſt the Turks were glad to giue ouer the aſſault, & with loſſe to retire. Neuertheleſſe the next day the aſſault was again renewed, & moſt deſperatly cõtinued by the ſpace of two daies:

Twelue thouſand Turks ſlaine.

wherein aboue 12. thouſand of the Turks there loſt their liues, the other with ſhame retiring themſelues into their trenches. In few dayes after, the Turks by a mine blew vp one of the bulwarks of the towne, with the fall whereof the towne ditch was in that place ſomewhat filled: wherby the Turks with all their power attempted thrice the next day to haue entered, but were by the valour of the defendants ſtill notably with loſſe repulſed. Yet notwithſtanding all this chearefulneſſe and couragiouſneſſe of them in the towne, the puiſſant enemie ceaſed not with continual batterie & furious aſſaults to attempt the citie, vntill that at length he had gained two I
of the bulwarks, from whence he might to his great aduantage, by the rubbiſh and earth fallen out of the battered bulwarks and rampiers, haue acceſſe vnto the towne, to the great terrour of the defendants. Whereupon countie *Hardeck* the Gouernor (who corrupted by the Turke, had of purpoſe many times before ſaid that the towne could not poſſibly be long defended) now tooke occaſion to enter into counſell with the other captaines of the town (diuers of whom he had alreadie framed to his purpoſe) what courſe were beſt to take for the yeelding of it vp. And ſo after a little conſultation, holden more for faſhion ſake, than for that he doubted what to do; reſolued to ſend a meſſenger vnto the Baſſa, for a truce to be graunted for a while, to ſee if happily in the meane time ſome reaſonable compoſition might be agreed vpõ. Yet the Gouernour K
conſidering vnto what ſcorne & danger he ſhould expoſe himſelfe, by yeelding vp of ſo ſtrong a towne; to colour the matter, and to excuſe his doings vnto the reſt of the nobilitie and garriſons of HVNGARIE, cauſed a publicke inſtrument to be in his and all the reſt of the captaines names cõceiued in writing, wherin they ſolemnely proteſted vnto the world, That for as much as it was impoſſible (by reaſon of the weakneſſe of the garriſon) for them longer to defend the town againſt ſo mightie an enemy, without new ſupplies in ſtead of them that were ſlain, which they had oftentimes in vaine requeſted, they were therefore of neceſſitie enforced to come to compoſition with the enemie. Which proteſtation ſo made, the Gouernour with the chief captaines confirmed with their hands & ſeales. So after a truce granted, and pledges giuen on both ſides, at length it was agreed vpon, That all the garriſon ſouldiors, together with the countie & L
other captaines ſhould in armes with enſignes diſplayed with bag & baggage depart in ſafetie, and with a ſafe conuoy be brought to ALTENBVRG. Which agreement though by oath confirmed, was not on the Turks part altogether performed: for whẽ the countie had the 29. day of September, at 10. a clock in the forenoone deliuered vp the citie vnto the Baſſa, & the Chriſtian garriſon was all come out, the countie himſelfe with a few of his friends was with a conuoy of Turks brought in ſafetie to the appointed place: but the Italians and other garriſon ſouldiors

Countie Hardeck corrupted by the Turks, yeeldeth the ſtrong towne of Rab vnto Sinan Baſſa.

that came behind, and ought to haue beene by the Gouernour protected, were contrary to the Turks promiſe ſpoyled of all that they had, and hardly eſcaping with life, came that night to HOCHSTRATE, and the next day to ALTENBVRG. Thus was RAB, one of the ſtrongeſt bulwarks of Chriſtendome, traiterouſly deliuered vnto the moſt mortall enemie of the Chriſtian religion; being euen then when it was giuen vp, victualled for a yeare, and ſufficiently furniſhed M
with all things neceſſarie for defence: all which prouiſion together with the citie fell into the hands of the faithleſſe enemie. A loſſe neuer to haue been ſufficiently lamented, had it not been about foure yeares after, euen as it were miraculouſly againe recouered, to the great reioyſing of all that ſide of Chriſtendome, as in the proceſſe of this Hiſtorie ſhall appeare.

Sinan

A *Sinan* glad of this victorie, as the greateſt trophey of his maſters glorie ouer the Chriſtians, gaue him ſpeedie knowledge thereof, both by letters and meſſengers. Of whom hee was for that good ſeruice highly commended, and afterward bountifully rewarded: for now had *Amurath* alreadie in hope deuoured all AVSTRIA, with the prouinces thereabout. The great Baſſa, becauſe he would not with too long ſtay hinder the courſe of his victorie, without delay repaired the rent citie, new fortified the battered bulwarkes, enlarged the ditches, and filled the Cathedrall church with earth, in maner of a ſtrong bulwarke, whereupon he planted great ſtore of great ordinance: and with exceeding ſpeed diſpatched all things neceſſary for the holding of the place. In the meane time he ſent certaine Tartars to ſummon the towne and caſtle of PAPPA; which caſtle and little towne ſubiect thereunto, the Chriſtians the night following ſet on
B fire, becauſe it ſhould not ſtand the enemy in any ſtead for the farther troubling of the country; and ſo fled. *Rab repaired by the Turkes.*

The Baſſa hauing at his pleaſure diſpoſed of all things in RAB, and leauing there foure thouſand Ianizaries, and two thouſand horſmen in garriſon, departed thence with his armie and laid ſiege to KOMARA, a ſtrong towne of that moſt fertile iſland, which the Hungarians call SCHVT; which ſituated in the verie point therof about foure miles from RAB, is on the Eaſt, South, and North encloſed with the two armes of Danubius. All theſe waies *Sinan* with his fleet (which he had there notably well appointed) laid hard ſiege vnto the towne, and gaue thereunto diuers aſſaults: and by land, the Beglerbeg of GRÆCE ceaſed not both by continuall batterie and mines, to ſhake the wals and bulwarkes thereof. Thus was the citie on all ſides both by water and by
C land hardly laid vnto. But the Chriſtians within, with no leſſe courage defended themſelues and the citie, than did the Turks aſſaile them; ſhewing indeed, that the libertie of their religion and countrey, was vnto them dearer than their liues. *Matthias* the archduke in the meane time, not ignorant how much it concerned the emperour his brother to haue this citie defended, hauing after his late ouerthrow gathered together a good armie of Germanes, Bohemians, and Hungarians, reſolued to go and raiſe the ſiege: and ſo marching forward with his armie, came and encamped the 28. day of October at NITRIA, about fiue miles from KOMARA. Now were the Tartars a little before departed from the campe, with purpoſe to returne home: yea the Turkes themſelues wearie of the ſiege, and wanting victuall both for themſelues and their horſes, began alſo as men diſcouraged to ſhrinke away. Which the Baſſa well conſidering, thought it not beſt
D with his heartleſſe ſouldiors and armie now ſore weakened, to abide the comming of the Chriſtians: and therefore vpon their approch he foorthwith forſooke the citie, which he had by the ſpace of three weeks hardly beſieged, and by a bridge made of boats tranſported his armie and artillerie ouer Danubius to DOTIS, where the next day after he brake vp his armie. Immediatly after the Turks were thus departed, the Archduke arriued at KOMARA, where hee with great diligence cauſed the breaches to be repaired, the mines to be filled vp, and new bulwarks and rampiers to be made in diuers places for the more ſtrength of the citie, leauing the charge thereof ſtill vnto the lord *Braun* the old gouernor, who in the defence therof had receiued a grieuous wound in his right knee: of whom alſo this notable fact is reported. The Baſſa in time of the late ſiege of KOMARA, vnder the colour of a parley, had ſent fiue Turkes into the citie to the Gouernour,
E but in deed to proue if he were by any meanes to be woon to yeeld vp the citie, and not to hold it out to the laſt: The faithfull Gouernour, hauing giuen them the hearing vntill they had diſcharged their whole treachery, preſently cauſed foure of their heads to be ſtrucken off, and to be ſet vpon long pikes vpon one of the bulwarks for the Baſſa to looke vpon; but the fift (the beholder of this this tragedie) he ſent back vnto the Baſſa, to tell him, That although he had found one in RAB to ſerue his turne, he was much deceiued if in him he thought to find Countie *Hardeck*; and that he wiſhed rather to die the emperours faithfull ſeruant in the bloud of the Turks, than to betray the citie committed to his charge. *Komara beſieged by Sinan Baſſa.*

Countie *Hardeck* late Gouernour of RAB, generally before ſuſpected to haue treacherouſly betrayed that ſtrong towne vnto the Baſſa, was therefore ſent for to VIENNA, and there by the
F Emperours commaundement committed to priſon. Where among many things laid to his charge, as that he ſhould in the beginning of the ſiege negligently haue ſuffered many things to be done by the enemie, which afterwards turned to the great danger of the towne: and that in the time of the ſiege, he had cauſed ſome of the canoniers to diſcharge certaine great pieces againſt the enemie, with powder onely without ſhot: and that ſeeing one piece among the reſt to do the *Sinan Baſſa raiſeth his ſiege.*

enemy much harme, he had cauſed the ſame to be remooued, and ſo placed, as that it ſerued to little or no vſe: beſide that, he (as it ſhould ſeeme) making ſmall reckoning of the towne, ſhould oftentimes ſay, That if the Turks ſhould winne it, he ſhould be but one towne the richer: with diuers other ſuch things, giuing iuſt cauſe of ſuſpition. The thing that lay moſt heauy vpon him, was the teſtimonie of one of *Sinan Baſſa* his chamber, who being taken yong by the Turks, and ſeruing in the Baſſaes chamber, was now fled from the Turks, and comming to the Archduke in the time of his ſiege, declared vnto him, that there was treaſon in his campe: and that hee but three daies before by the commandement of his maſter, had deliuered two bags full of duckats vnto two Chriſtians, of whom the one had a notable ſcarre in his face, & was afterwards known to haue bin one of the Counties ſeruants. Vpon this and ſuch like proofs, the Countie was after many daies hearing, in open court by the iudgment of ſeuen and fortie noblemen and captains of name, condemned of treaſon, and adiudged to be hanged, his dead bodie to remaine vpon the gallowes by the ſpace of three daies, and all his lands and goods to be confiſcat: The rigour of which ſentence was afterward by the emperour mitigated, and the traitour by him adiudged to haue his right hand (by him before giuen to the emperour, in pawne of his faith) and his head ſtrucke off vpon a ſcaffold at VIENNA, and ſo buried. Which ſeuere ſentence was afterwards accordingly put in execution: for the tenth of Iune following, the traitour being brought to the ſcaffold built of purpoſe in the hie ſtreet of VIENNA, after the ſentence of his condemnation there ſolemnly read, commending himſelfe vpon his knees to the mercie of God, with his eies couered, & his right hand laid vpon a block couered with blacke, had both his hand and head ſo ſuddenly ſtrucke off by the executioners, as that the beholders could hardly iudge which of them was firſt off. His dead bodie with his head and hand, was preſently by his ſeruant wrapped in a black cloth, and laid in his coach, which ſtood there by of purpoſe couered with black, and was afterwards buried amongſt his anceſtors.

County Hardeck condemned and executed for betraying of Rab.

The Tartars but lately before departed from *Sinans* campe, paſſing ouer Danubius at STRIGONIVM, had purpoſed through the vpper part of HVNGARIE, and by the borders of TRANSYLVANIA and MOLDAVIA, to haue againe returned into their countrey: of whom two companies falling into the hands of the lord *Palfi*, were by him cut off and vtterly defeated: the reſt comming vnto the borders of TRANSYLVANIA, and finding the paſſages ſo beſet by the prince and the Vayuod of VALACHIA, as that they could not without moſt manifeſt danger paſſe that way, returned againe the ſame way they came: and hauing rifled and burnt certaine townes and villages in the vpper HVNGARIE about TOCKAIE, paſſed the riuer againe at STRIGONIVM, and wintering at VESPRINIM, PALOTTA, and other places in the countrey about RAB, liued vpon the ſpoile of the poore Chriſtians, vpon the frontiers of AVSTRIA, euen as far as MEINERSDORF.

These Tartars (of whom we haue ſo often ſpoken) at their firſt comming to the aid of *Sinan*, by direction from the Turkiſh Sultan, ſtaied vpon the frontiers of TRANSILVANIA, of purpoſe to haue ſurpriſed that countrey, and either to haue thruſt *Sigiſmund Bator* the young prince out of the gouernment therof, or elſe to haue ſent him in bonds to CONSTANTINOPLE: For it was commonly reported, That he weary of the heauie tribute which he yearely payed vnto the Turke, and had now after their greedie manner been diuers times enhaunſed: had purpoſed to reuolt from the Turkiſh Sultan, and to enter into contederation with the Chriſtian emperour. Which innouation and change, certaine of the nobilitie and chiefe States of TRANSILVANIA, ſought by all meanes to hinder: and acquainting *Amurath* with the matter, and entring into conſpiracie with the Tartars, vndertooke to deliuer the whole countrey into their hands, and to ſend the prince priſoner to HVSTT, where the Tartars then lay vpon the borders encamped. Wherefore diſſembling their purpoſe, they cunningly perſwaded the Prince, that *Samoſche* the great Chauncellor of POLONIA, in the confines of his countrey lay with a great power expecting his comming, to conclude with him of matters of great importance. And the better to colour this their treacherie, they had counterfeited letters to that effect from the Chancelor to the prince, and had wrought ſo effectually, that the prince not ſuſpecting any ſuch treaſon, gaue credit to their perſwaſions, and ſo put himſelfe vpon his way towards the Chancelor (as he ſuppoſed:) but by the way, he was aduiſed by ſome of his friends which had got ſome ſuſpition of the matter, not to go any farther, for that his comming was not attēded by the Polonians his friends (as he was perſuaded) but by the Tartars his enemies, who lay in wait for him at HVSTT, to be-

reaue

A reaue him of his life and gouernement. The Prince aſtonied with the noueltie of the matter, liſtned vnto their perſuaſion, and retired with his traine to the ſtrong fort of KEHVVERB; where he ſtayed fourteene daies, as if it had been only for feare of the Tartars. In the meane time, hee gaue notice to the nobilitie and gouernours of the countrie, his friends, of the imminent and common danger; who forthwith repaired vnto him in armes. But the traitors proceeding in their purpoſe, ceaſed not to perſuade *Bornemiſſa*, who had the leading of the princes armie, that to fight with the Tartars was a matter of no ſmall danger: and that therefore if he wiſhed well to his countrie, he ſhould not haue to do with them, but onely ſhew himſelfe neere vnto them, and that he was not vnprouided for them: which was accordingly done, and the Tranſyluanian armie brought ſo nigh vnto the Tartars, as that they might heare the noiſe of their drums and
B trumpets. Whereby the Tartars as by the watchword, perceiuing themſelues diſcouered, and nothing to fall out according to their expectation, as had bin vnto them promiſed for the betraying of the prince: they remoued thence, and by another way breaking through the midſt of TRANSYLVANIA, and ſo into HVNGARIE, rifled and burnt fiue hundred villages, ſlew all the males that were aboue twelue yeres of age, and carried away the reſt vnto the Turkiſh army then lying at the ſiege of RAB. In the meane time the traitours (when as this firſt plot ſerued them not) conſpired to ſet vp one *Baltazar Bator*, the young princes nigh kinſman, and with the good fouour of *Amurath* to preferre him to the ſoueraigne gouernment of their countrie. Which their purpoſe the Prince perceiuing, and doubting altogither to truſt vnto the fidelitie of his owne ſubiects; writ to his neighbours the Raſcians, and other his confederats, praying
C their aid in this his ſo dangerous and doubtfull eſtate. Which after he had receiued, he appointed a generall aſſembly of all his ſtates to be holden at CLAVSENBVRG, and that vpon a great pain to be inflicted vpon all ſuch as ſhould not there perſonally appeare: ſo at the prefixed day all came, except the Cardinall *Bator* and *Stephen* his brother, who guiltie of ſo foule a treaſon againſt their owne bloud, were now before fled into POLONIA. Being all thus met togither, the Prince commanded the gates of the citie to be ſhut, and diligent watch and ward to be kept, forbidding by open proclamation, that any man vpon paine of death ſhould ſo much as ſpeake of any imagined treaſon. And at the ſame time politickly cauſed to be publiſhed in writing, how that the Germans, had in the farther ſide of HVNGARIE got a notable victorie ouer the Turks; for ioy whereof he commanded bonefires to be made, and the great ordinance to be in triumph
D ſhot off, with many other ſignes of ioy and gladneſſe: and withall cauſed a notable banquet to be prepared, whereunto togither with others, were inuited alſo all the chiefe of the conſpirators: Of whom, euen as they were at dinner & leaſt feared any ſuch matter, he commanded fourteene to be apprehended and committed to priſon: and the next morning cauſed fiue of them to be executed in the open market place. The principall of whom, who had vndertaken to haue himſelfe ſlaine the prince, after three or foure light cuts in the necke, he cauſed to be drawne in pieces with foure horſes: the other foure, namely *Alexander*, and *Gabriell Gengi*, *Gregorie Diaco*, and *Ladiſlaus Sallentz* were beheaded, and their dead bodies all that day left in the market place for the people to behold: the reſt were alſo afterwards worthily executed; and *Balthazor Bator*, whom the conſpirators had intended to haue exalted, ſtrangled. Hauing thus reuenged him-
E ſelfe vpon his enemies, he by a publicke edict diuulged through all his dominion, gaue leaue to all his ſubiects in generall, of their own charge to take vp armes againſt the Turks, & whatſoeuer they could take from them, to haue it to themſelues, as good prize gotten from their lawfull enemies. By which vnwonted libertie, the Tranſyluanians encouraged as with a great bountie, armed themſelues on all hands to the number of fortie thouſand, who being muſtred & ſworne to hold togither againſt the Turkes, made their firſt expedition towards Danubius; where at their firſt arriuall, by good hap the light vpon certaine of the Turks ſhips laded with prouiſion for the campe, and marchandiſe of all ſorts, and much treaſure: of which rich ſhips, they at the firſt onſet tooke ſeuen, but the eighth (being indeed the Admirall) eſcaped their hands. In theſe ſhips they tooke an exceeding rich bootie, ſlew many of the Turks, and in token of the victo-
F rie, carried backe vnto the prince ſeuen of the Turkiſh enſignes. This victorie cauſed great ioy in TRANSILVANIA, euery man of ſo proſperous a beginning, conceiuing good hope of moſt happie ſucceſſe. It is reported, that *Sinan Baſſa* hearing of this loſſe, ſhould ſay, That if this prouiſion had come to him in ſafetie, he could with that treaſure more eaſily haue bought VIENNA in AVSTRIA, than he had RAB in HVNGARIE. After this victorie the prince laied ſiege

Great harme done in Tranſyluania by the Tartars.

The conſpirators againſt the prince, apprehended and executed.

to TEMESVVAR, but hearing of the returne of the Tartars from the Turks campe, and that they G
were comming toward TRANSYLVANIA (as is beforesaid) he left TEMESVVAR, to looke to the de-
fence of his owne countrie.

The Ianizaries in a tumult at Constantinople.

Not long after, about the two and twentith of December a tumult rise among the Ianizaries of the Court at CONSTANTINOPLE, which grew to such an height, that in the heat thereof one of the Bassaes was by them slaine, with some others of good account, and one of *Amuraths* sonnes sore wounded, and with much adoe saued. Vpon conceit whereof, *Amurath* for anger and griefe fell into a fit of the falling sicknes (wherunto he was much subiect) and was therwith for the space of three daies and three nights so grieuously vexed, as if he should haue presently giuen vp the ghost: so that the citie was filled with heauinesse and feare, and the great men of the Court were euen readie to thinke vpon a new lord. This tumult of the insolent Ianizaries many H

Amurath sicke.

suppосed to haue been the cause of *Amurath* his death, which shortly after ensued: his griefe and maladie encreasing dayly by the euill newes still brought vnto him both by messengers and letters, especially out of TRANSYLVAINA, where the prince waiting vpon euery occasion, was still at hand with the Turks, cutting them short in euery place; and in sundrie rodes which he made vpon them this month, tooke many of their castles and forts from them. He had at that time in the field in diuers places three armies: one vnder the conduct of *Gesty Ferens*, in the countrie of LVGAZ neere vnto TEMESVVARE: another vnder the leading of *Michaell Horwat*, on the side of Danubius, to intercept the Turkes comming to BYDA: and the third commaunded by *Caspar Cornoyse* in the countrie neere to GIVLA, vnto whom came shortly after fifteene hundred horsemen out of the vpper HVNGARIE. I

1595 The Transyluanian prince *Sigismund Bator* thus lately reuolted from the Turk, for the strengthening of his state thought it best betime to enter into confederation with his neighbors of VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA (who moued by his example, shortly after in like manner also cast off the seruile yoke of the Turke) but especially with the Christian emperour *Rodolph*. For which purpose he sent his embassadours honourably accompanied: who comming to COSSOVIA in HVNGARIE the foureteenth of December, arriued at PRAGE the twelfth of Ianuarie, with twentie waggons, and an hundred and fiftie horse, where they were by the emperours appointment most honourably receiued and royally entertained: and after a few daies hauing deliuered vnto the emperor the summe of their embassage, which was for a confederation to be made betweene the emperor and the prince: after much graue consultation and serious discourse it was K
fully concluded and agreed vpon: the chiefe points wherof I thought it not amisse here in briefe to set downe, for the satisfying of such as desire to know in what tearmes that worthie prince next neighbour vnto the Turke then stood with the Christian emperour.

The capitulations of the league betwixt the emperor and the Transyluanian prince.

First it was agreed vpon, That the emperour for himselfe and for the states of HVNGARIE should promise to proceed in his wars begun against the common enemie, and not to conclude any peace with him, without the knowledge and good liking of the prince. And that in all conclusions of peace to be made betwixt him and the Turke, the countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, should be alwaies comprised: in regard whereof, the prince likewise promised for himselfe and the states of TRANSYLVANIA, to prosecute the commenced warre, and not to enter into any league with the Turke, without the knowledge and consent of L
the emperor and the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, and this to be confirmed by solemne oath on both sides.

Secondly, that the prouince of TRANSILVANIA with all the parts and confines thereof hitherto possessed by the prince in HVNGARIE, should remaine vnto the said prince *Sigismund* and his heires male, with all the profits arising thereof, in such sort as they had done in the time of *Iohn*, *Stephen*, and *Christopher*, his predecessours, to haue therein a most free and absolute authoritie: yet so, as that they should acknowledge his imperiall maiestie and his lawful successors for their lawfull soueraignes; vnto whom they should alwaies sweare their fealtie, but without any homage doing: and that to be performed by his successours at the time of the change; but M
by the prince himselfe, presently after the confirming of this league. But that for lacke of heires male, the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA with all the territories thereunto annexed, should discend vnto his sacred maiestie and his successours, the kings of HVNGARIE, as a true and inseparable member thereof: whereunto the prince and all the states of TRANSYLVANIA should bind themselues by solemne oath. But yet that at such time as the heires male should faile in the

line

A line of the preſent prince, and that the countrie of TRANSILVANIA ſhould according to theſe preſent conditions be deuolued to the crowne of HVNGARIE; as well his preſent imperiall and royall maieſtie as his ſucceſſors, ſhould keepe inuiolate the ancient laws, priuiledges, & cuſtomes of that countrie, and alwaies appoint one of the nobilitie of TRANSYLVANIA to be Gouernour or Vayuod of the ſame, and no other ſtranger.

Thirdly, that his maieſtie ſhould acknowledge the prince of TRANSILVANIA for an abſolute prince, and by ſpeciall charter confirme vnto him the title of *Moſt excellent*.

Fourthly, that his imperiall maieſtie ſhould procure one of the daughters of the late archduke *Charles* his vncle, for a wife for the prince, that as they were now to be ioined in league, ſo they might be ioyned in affinitie alſo.

B Fiftly, that the emperour ſhould procure him to bee made one of the order of the Golden Fleece.

Sixtly, that the prince might with more cheerefulnes and ſecuritie make war againſt the common enemie, his imperiall and royall maieſtie ſhould not at any time, howſoeuer things fell out, forſake the ſaid prince or any of the countries ſubiect vnto him: and euen now preſently to aid him according as the preſent occaſion required, and afterward (if greater need ſhould be) with greater helpe, whether it was by his Generall of CASSOVIA, or others: and this giuing of aid to be on both ſides mutuall and reciprocall, according as the neceſſitie of the one or other part ſhould require: and that where moſt need was, thither ſhould moſt helpe be conuerted.

C Seuenthly, that the ſacred Romane empire ſhould take vpon it the protection and defence of the prince and his territories. And that his imperial maieſtie ſhould create the ſaid prince and the princes his ſucceſſours, princes of the empire: yet ſo, as that they ſhould haue neither voice nor place among the ſaid princes.

Eightly, that whatſoeuer caſtles, towns, cities, or other places of ſtrength ſhould by their common forces be taken or recouered from the common enemie, at ſuch time as his imperiall maieſtie ſhould ſend into the field a full armie, ſhould be all his maieſties: But ſuch places as the prince ſhould by his own forces or policie gaine from the enemie, ſhould remain vnto the prince himſelfe. Yet that what places ſoeuer the prince ſhould recouer, which at any time before belonged to the kingdome of HVNGARIE, before it was taken by the Turke, thoſe he ſhould forthwith deliuer to his maieſtie, as ſoone as reaſonable recompence were by him therefore made vnto

D the prince.

Ninthly, his ſacred maieſtie ſhould promiſe of his owne bountie to giue vnto his excellencie ſufficient aid for the fortifying and defence of ſuch places as ſhould be thought neceſſary for the behoofe of the Chriſtians: as againe the ſaid prince ſhould likewiſe promiſe not to ſpare his owne cofers or forces, that the ſame places ſhould be throughly fortified and defended, for the behoofe of his maieſtie and the common good of the Chriſtian commonweale.

Laſtly, that for as much as the euents of warre are vncertain, and many things ſuddenly happen contrarie to mens expectation, if ſuch neceſſitie ſhould chance vnto his excellencie or his ſucceſſors (which miſhap God forbid) that hauing ſpent themſelues, they ſhould not be able longer to defend their ſtate and countrie, but that the mightie enemie preuailing, they ſhould at

E laſt be enforced to forſake the ſame: in this their extremitie, his imperial & royal maieſtie ſhould promiſe both for himſelfe and his ſucceſſours, within the ſpace of one moneth to aſſigne ſome certaine place in ſome other of his dominions, where the ſaid prince & his ſucceſſors might honorably liue. And the like regard to be had alſo of other ſuch principall men, as ſhould togither with the prince aduenture their liues and liuings in defence of the Chriſtian commonweale.

Which articles of confederation agreed vpon, & ſolemnly confirmed, the ſame embaſſadors were with all kindnes, bountie, and magnificence diſmiſſed and ſent back again vnto the prince: who was not himſelfe in the meane time idle, but labouring by all the meanes he could to draw vnto him *Michael* the Vayuod of VALACHIA, a man of no leſſe worth than himſelfe, and *Aaron* the Palatine of MOLDAVIA, both of them then the Turkes tributaries; and by them to alienate from the Turke both thoſe countries, that ſo with their combined forces they might the better defend their libertie, and withſtand their common enemie: wherein he did ſo much, and preuailed ſo farre with them both, that caſting off the Turkes obeiſance, they ſhortly after to the great benefit of the Chriſtian commonweale, and no leſſe hinderance of the Turkes proceedings in HVNGARIE, ioined hands both togither with him for the recouerie of their loſt libertie. Which

reuolt of theſe bordering princes,for that it ſo much concerned the common good, as that the G
ſafegard of AVSTRIA,and of the remnants of HVNGARIE,with ſome good part of GERMANIE
alſo,is euen by them that in thoſe matters ſaw much,not without cauſe ſuppoſed to haue reſted
therin; and that this noble Vayuod(of whom much is to be ſaid hereafter)was the ſecond actor
herein,it ſhall not be from our purpoſe to ſee the maner of his reuolt alſo from the Turke, as we
haue alreadie the Tranſyluanians.For the more euidence whereof,as for the honour of the man
(whileſt he liued,a moſt worthie member of the Chriſtian common-weale) we will a little ſtep
backe to ſee how he obtained of the Great Turke this ſo honourable a preferment as was the
Vayuodſhip of VALACHIA, not without his reuolt long now to be holden.

Valachia oppreſſed by the Turkes.

Alexander the late Vayuod of VALACHIA, a Moldauian borne,and by *Amurath* himſelfe
promoted to that dignitie, proud aboue meaſure of this his ſo great a preferment,as alſo of his H
owne nobilitie,and the deceitfull fauour of fortune ſtill fawning vpon him; not only oppreſſed
his people himſelfe with intollerable impoſitions, but to be in farther fauour with the Turks,
brought into that countrie(too much before exhauſted)ſuch a companie of them, as that they
ſeemed now almoſt wholly to haue poſſeſſed the ſame,oppreſſing the poore Chriſtians(the na-
turall inhabitants)with new exactions,and more than tyrannicall iniuries,euen ſuch as were not
elſewhere by the Turks themſelues vſed; not only breaking at their pleaſure into their houſes,
and diſpoyling them of their goods, but taking tythe alſo of their children, as if it had beene
of their cattell,a thing neuer before their ſeene: and for the ſatisfying of their beaſtly luſt, rauiſ-
hing their wiues and daughters,euen in the ſight of their huſbands & parents,with diuers other
ſuch outragious villanies,not with modeſtie to be rehearſed. So that by this means he had vio- I
lently taken from his Chriſtian ſubiects all hope of recouerie of their ancient libertie,had it not
as ſometime it falleth out in theſe worldly things both vnto men and commonweales, which
brought vnto the laſt caſt,& euen as it were to the bottome of diſpaire,by the goodneſſe of God
contrarie to all hope find ſometime ſuch vnexpected helpe and reliefe,as that thereby they, be-
yond their hope,euen to the aſtoniſhment of the world,mount vp againe vnto a greater luſtre of
their ſtate than was that from which they before fell: it had euen ſo by the ſingular mercie of God
now happened vnto the Valachians,not knowing which way to turne themſelues. There was at
CRAILOVVA,a citie in the confines of VALACHIA towards the confines of the Hungarians
and Turks(where the gouernour of theſe borders is for the defence thereof with a ſtrong garri-
ſon alwaies reſiant)a noble gentleman called * *Ion Michael*, ſonne to *Peter* the Palatine of that K
countrie, the aforeſaid *Alexander* his predeceſſor: who as he was vnto the people for the ho-
nour of his father,the prerogatiue of his birth,the comelineſſe of his perſon,and talneſſe of his
ſtature,well knowne: ſo was he for his zeale towards the Chriſtian religion, his loue towards
his countrie,his kindneſſe towards his equals, his courteſie towards his inferiours, his vpright
dealing,his conſtancie and bountie vnto them,no leſſe gracious; and for other the noble vertues
of his heroicall mind and naturall diſpoſition for the performance of great matters, his deepe
wiſdome and quicke foreſight,his ſweet & pleaſing ſpeech,void of all affectation,vnto all good
men moſt deare: whoſe fame, both for the honour of his houſe, and of his owne vertues, ſtill
more and more encreaſing,and rife in the eares of *Alexander* the Vayuod,was the cauſe that he
commanded him as the readie or rather naturall competitor of his ſtate and honour to bee ſe- L
cretly apprehended,and ſo taken out of the way: whereof hee by good fortune hauing intelli-
gence,and carefull of his owne health,for ſafegard of himſelfe fled firſt into HVNGARIE,and
there not ſtaying long(God ſo directing him)went to CONSTANTINOPLE in the yeare 1591,
to ſue for the Vayuod his place, all the nobilitie of his countrie and the prouinces thereunto
adioyning,ſecretly reioicing thereat. About which time the chiefe and moſt graue of the Vala-
chian nobilitie and counſellours proſtrating themſelues at the feet of *Amurath*,moſt grieuouſly
complained vnto him of the manifold and intollerable iniuries they had alreadie ſuſtained,and
were ſtill like to endure,without hope of redreſſe, from *Alexander* their Vayuod, and the fol-
lowers of his Court,the Turks garriſons and merchants with plentifull teares orderly declaring
many his moſt foule and deteſtable facts,& afterward highly commending *Ion Michael* for his M
rare vertues,as the true heire of their prouince; moſt humbly requeſted *Amurath* either to haue
him appointed the lawfull Gouernour of their countrie,or els ſome other place by him aſſigned
for them to dwell in, wiſhing any where to liue,rather than vnder the heauie commaund of ſo
mercileſſe a man as was *Alexander*. For the furthering of which their ſute, *Michael* his vncle by

* Ion *ſignifieth with the Valachians as much as Chriſtian, which ſome miſtaking, call this Michael alſo by the name of Iohn.*

the

A the mothers ſide, a Greek borne, and a man for his exceeding wealth in great fauor in the Turks Court, ſpared for no coſt. So *Michael* by the goodneſſe of God was by *Amurath* with great ſolemnitie created Vayuod of VALACHIA, and the oppreſſed and almoſt forlorne ſtate of that ſometime moſt flouriſhing countrey by little and little well relieued (although not altogether without moſt ſharpe and violent remedies, ſuch as extremities oft require) began now againe to lift vp the head, and to aſpire vnto the auncient libertie and honour thereof. At the beginning of whoſe happie ſoueraigntie, *Alexander* his predeceſſour in his owne conſcience guiltie of his euill and ſhamefull gouernment of that ſo notable and great a prouince; and now in feare to be called to account, ſecretly fled. But certaine yeares after remooving to CONSTANTINOPLE with his wife, and there attempting diuers euill meanes for the obtaining of the Palatinat of
B MOLDAVIA, and for thoſe his vnlawfull practiſes accuſed by the Palatines Agent: hee was by the commandement of *Amurath* taken in his own houſe, and there in his princely apparel moſt miſerably ſtrangled vpon Palme ſunday, in the yeare 1597, about ſix yeares after his departure out of VALACHIA.

Michael on *Amurath* created Vayuod of Valachia.

Alexander ſtrangled at Conſtantinople.

Michael thus made Vayuod of VALACHIA, long it was not but that it fortuned the reuerend father *Cornelius de Nona*, ſent from Pope *Clement* the eight, vnto the Great duke of MVSCOVIE, in his returne conferring with *Sigiſmund* the Tranſyluanian prince, and *Aaron* the Palatine of MOLDAVIA, enformed them of the great conſent of diuers zealous Chriſtian princes, for the maintenance of the war againſt the dangerous and common enemie; with many graue and effectuall reaſons perſuading them (but eſpecially for that they were themſelues chriſtians) in that
C Chriſtian quarell to ioyne vnto them their forces alſo, raiſed in thoſe their countries neere vnto the great riuers Danubius and Neſter: but vnto *Michael* the Vayuod of VALACHIA, hee could not for diuers his other important buſineſſes then come; whom for all that, the aforeſaid Tranſyluanian prince *Sigiſmund* his neighbour, deſirouſly ſought to draw into the fellowſhip of that warre, euen for the ſame reaſons almoſt wherewith he had beene himſelfe mooued. Firſt by diuers great reaſons remouing ſuch doubts as might iuſtly ſeeme to hinder him from giuing thereunto his conſent; and then, by declaring the Turkiſh inſolencie daily increaſing, with the infinit grieuances by them deuiſed againſt the miſerable Valachians: when as the incurſions of the Turks or Tartars, or their paſſages that way (no leſſe troubleſome than their inroads) was almoſt
D euerie moneth to be feared, their armies as friends to be in Winter and Sommer receiued, their ſouldiors to their great charges relieued, and their commaunders and captaines rewarded. VALACHIA thus impoueriſhed, was not able (as he ſaid) to pay the great ſums it did already owe, neither was to expect any releaſement of the euils it was wrapped in; much leſſe was it able to ſuffice vnto the grieuous exactions to be thereunto by them afterwards impoſed. None of his predeceſſors (as he told him, and as truth was) had for many yeares now paſt, for any long time or with any ſecuritie held their ſtate or gouernment: but that either by the calumniation of the enuious, or bribes of their ambitious competitors, brought into ſuſpition with the Sultan, they were violently thruſt out, or moſt cruelly put to death. In briefe, he ſaid, it was a wiſe mans part, not without moſt manifeſt & waightie reaſons, to promiſe vnto himſelfe better fortune or more aſſurance of his ſtate, than had his vnfortunat predeceſſours before him; but warned by their
E harmes, betimes to prouide for his owne ſafetie. By which perſuaſion he ſo preuailed, that the Vayuod (whoſe name, whoſe fame, whoſe wealth and life together with his ſubiects was all therby endangered) although he would not (for the waightineſſe of the matter) at the firſt yeeld thereunto; yet aſſuredly promiſed, with his friends and the reſt of the nobilitie of his countrey, to conſider thereupon. Hauing it by the prince plainly laid downe before him, how a ſufficient number of ſoldiors might at all times be raiſed, their pay prouided, and aid ſtil ſent him as need ſhould be from the Germane emperour, or himſelfe out of TRANSYLVANIA: as alſo that *Aaron* the Palatine of MOLDAVIA, would at all times bee readie to combine himſelfe vnto them; that ſo with their vnited forces, they might vpon the bankes of Danubius and Neſter, eaſily repreſſe
F the incurſions both of the Turkes and Tartars their enemies: the Chriſtian emperour in the meane time, with leſſe trouble proceeding in his warres againſt the Turke in the other ſide of HVNGARIE.

Now whileſt this plot was thus in laying, and matters too and fro in debating, not altogether without the Turkes ſuſpition; *Sinan Baſſa* comming with a great armie into HVNGARIE, had taken the ſtrong towne of RAB, as is before declared: with which miſchance ſo much concer-

ning

ning the poore remainders of HVNGARIE, the Vayuod not a little mooued, began more deeply to conſider of his own eſtate. And as he was a man of a great ſpirit and no leſſe zeale towards his countrey, grieuing to ſee his ſubiects committed to his charge, to be ſo daily by the inſolent Turks ſtill more and more oppreſſed: he (as he had before promiſed to the Tranſyluanian) called an aſſembly of all the States of VALACHIA, to conſult with them what were beſt to be done for the remedie of ſo great euils, as alſo for the preuenting of greater, not without cauſe then to be feared. Where by the generall conſent of them all it was agreed, rather to ioyne with the Emperour and the other Chriſtian princes in confederation (as they had been oftentimes by them requeſted) than longer to endure that heauie yoake of the Turkiſh thraldome and ſlauerie. Whereupon the Vayuod taking vnto him two thouſand of the Hungarian garriſon ſouldiors, now before for that purpoſe ſecretly laid vpon the frontiers of his countrey; and calling vpon the name of *Chriſt Ieſus*, in one day to begin withall, ſlew about two thouſand of the Ianizaries (who without his leaue had in that countrey prowdly ſeated themſelues) with all the reſt of the Turks (in the middeſt of their inſolencie) togither with the traiterous Iewes, not leauing one of them that he could come by aliue in all the open countrey. And purpoſing to driue them out of their ſtrong holds alſo, and ſo to make a cleane riddance of them, he within foureteene daies after ſet vpon DZIVRDZOVVA, a great towne of the Turks, vpon the banke of Danubius, which he burnt all ſauing the caſtle; and hauing there made a great ſlaughter, and loded with the ſpoile of the Turks, returned to BVCARESTA the chiefe ſeat of his Palatinat.

Michael the Vayuod of Valachia reuolteth from the Turks.

But long it was not after this his ſo great preſumption, but that he perceiued the Turkes in reuenge thereof to ſeeke after his life: although he yet ſeemed to yeeld his obedience vnto *Amurath*, and to haue done that he did, as enforced thereunto by the inſolencie of the Turks, and for the neceſſarie reliefe both of himſelfe and his ſubiects. For the ſame moneth, RAB being (as is aforeſaid) taken by *Sinan*: one of the Turks * Emirs, diſcended of the great family and ſtocke of *Mahomet* their falſe Prophet, and then Cadileſcher (a man of great account and place amongſt the Turks) accompanied with two thouſand choſen ſouldiors, fiftie of the great Sultans chamber, and many of the Zauſij and Spahi, vpon the ſudden came to BVCARESTA vnder the colour of refreſhing themſelues after their long traueli, but in deed with purpoſe to haue taken the Vayuod; where they without controlement committed all kind of outragious villanie: and taking vp all the chiefe houſes in the citie, imperiouſly demaunded of the Vayuod (who then lay at his pallace neere vnto the new monaſtery without the city, built without any caſtle or defence vpon the riuer Dembowiza) ten thouſand Florens for a preſent, with victuals and other neceſſarie prouiſion for his followers. And preſently after, being certainly enformed that he lay there but ſlenderly accompanied, and almoſt himſelfe alone, the Emir himſelfe on foot with a thouſand of his ſouldiors, went out of the citie as if it had been but for his pleaſure, and in curteſie to haue ſeene him. Of which ſo ſuſpitious a gueſts comming the Vayuod vnderſtanding, got him betimes away into the campe of his Hungarian mercinaries, which then lay but faſt by: when the Turke thus deceiued of the hope he had before conceiued for the taking of him, craftily ſent certaine of his followers, to know of him, to what end he in time of peace did entertaine ſuch a number of Hungarian ſouldiors? Whereunto the Vayuod cunningly anſwered, That they were at the firſt entertained for the taking of *Peter* the ſonne of *Alexander*, ſometime Palatine of MOLDAVIA; who although he were now before apprehended, and openly hanged vpon an hooke at CONSTANTINOPLE, yet that thoſe ſouldiours were for their readie ſeruice, of neceſſitie ſtill to be billited in the countrey, vntill ſuch time as their pay might be prouided. Which the Turke hearing, commaunded the Vayuod forthwith to diſcharge them as men vnneceſſarie, and to his ſubiects troubleſome, promiſing the next day to lend him a tunne of gold to pay them their wages. Which faigned promiſe the Vayuod ſeemed thankfully to take; yet neuertheleſſe commaunded the Hungarians forthwith in armes to ſtand in readineſſe in the campe, for the intercepting of the Turks, if happily by him diſtreſſed they ſhould betake themſelues to flight: whileſt he in the meane time with his courtiers and other ſouldiors, ſecretly aſſembled into a valley thereby, came ſuddenly vpon the Turks (not as then dreaming of any ſuch thing) compaſſed about the Innes wherein they lay, and ſetting fire vpon them in fiue places, notably forced them both with fire and the ſword, the two greateſt extremities of war; ſeeking now for nothing more, than the iuſt reuenge of his ſpoiled citie, his forced virgins, and wronged ſubiects. Howbeit the Turks for a ſpace right valiantly defended themſelues, and by plaine force (although

**The Turks call all them that are diſcended of the ſtock of their Prophet Mahomet by the name of Emirs or Lords.*

A (although in vaine) ſought to haue broken through the middeſt of their enemies, and ſo to haue fled. Yea many of them by force of the fire driuen out of their lodgings, and tearing off their burning cloathes, fought ſtarke naked: but moſt of them which could, fled vnto the pallace where the great Emir lay, there with him readie to die or liue. All which their laſt endeauours of deſperation, the Vayuod eaſily fruſtrated, with two great pieces of artillerie opening a way for his ſouldiors vnto them. So that the proud Emir now in deſpaire (like the hunted Caſtor) threw downe out of a window a great cheſt full of gold and pretious ſtones, and other iewels of great valour, if happily hee might haue ſo appeaſed the Vayuods wrath, humbly now requeſting no more, but to haue his life ſpared; fearefully promiſing a large raunſome for himſelfe, and thoſe few which were yet left aliue with him. Howbeit the Vayuod mindfull of the manifold iniuries *The Caderkeſſer with all the Turke his followers ſlaine.*

B by them done vnto him and his ſubiects, and nothing mitigated or moued with the rich ſpoiles thruſt vpon him, or the large promiſes the Turks had made him; commanded all thoſe his enemies now in his power, to be ſlaine euery mothers ſonne: of whom his ſouldiors had a wonderfull rich ſpoile, although much more was loſt in the fire: and ſo giuing thanks vnto God for the victorie, reſted with his people a while at quiet. Yet within leſſe than a moneth after, he ſent *Albertus Kirall* his lieutenant with an armie to PHLOCH (a great open vnwalled towne on the farther ſide of Danubius, equally diſtant from VROSCZVK and NICOPOLIS) from whence the Turks oftentimes paſſing ouer that frozen riuer into VALACHIA, had there done great harme: which towne, not inferiour vnto a good citie, he ſuddenly ſurpriſed, and ſacking it, put to the ſword all *Phloch ſpoiled by the Vaiuod.*

C the inhabitants thereof, except ſuch as were before his comming fled. And ſhortly after (the more to annoy the Turkes, marching againe ouer the frozen riuer to haue ſurpriſed HERSOVVA a walled city, but one daies iourney from BRAILOVA, he was by the way vpon the yſe encountred by the Turkes, whom he there in a great conflict ouerthrew; and hauing ſlaine many of them and put the reſt to flight, holding on his intended iourney, tooke that rich citie, which hee rifled and burnt downe to the ground, all except the caſtle, which was yet by the Turks valiantly defended: and ſo with the ſpoile of the citie returned againe ouer the riuer, there to refreſh his ſoldiors, wearied with labor, and the extremitie of the Winter weather. And yet not ſo contented, *Herſowa taken.* *Silſtria burnt*

D within ſix daies after paſſing againe ouer the riuer, and hauing vpon the ſide thereof in a great battell ouerthrowne the Turks garriſons, tooke SILISTRA, a great citie of MACEDONIA, built by *Conſtantine* the Great (being the ſeat of one of the Turks Sanzacks, and well inhabited with rich merchants) which faire citie he ranſacked, and hauing ſlaine moſt part of the inhabitants, burnt it downe to the ground as he had the other, no leſſe terrour than griefe vnto the Turks.

But whileſt the aforeſaid confederation betwixt the emperour and the Tranſyluanian prince was yet in hand, and the troubles in VALACHIA thus ariſing; *Amurath* the great Sultan grieuouſly vexed with the ſtoan, and attainted with the falling ſickneſſe, his wonted diſeaſe; and in- *Amurath dieth.*

E wardly alſo tormented with the late inſolencie of the Ianizaries, and reuolt of the countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, no ſmall hinderance to the proceeding of his warres in HVNGARIE: as a man both in bodie and ſoule tormented with great impatiencie and agonie of mind, departed this life the eighteenth day of Ianuarie, in the yeare of our Lord 1595: when he had liued one and fiftie, or as ſome ſay two and fiftie yeares, and therof raigned nineteene. At the time of his death ariſe ſuch a ſudden and terrible tempeſt at CONSTANTINOPLE, that many thought the world ſhould euen preſently haue bene diſſolued. His dead bodie was not long after with great pompe and ſolemnitie buried by *Mahomet* his eldeſt ſonne, in a Moſchie which he himſelfe had before built at CONSTANTINOPLE.

FINIS.

Christian Princes of the same time with Amurath the third.

Emperors of Germanie.	*Maximilian the second.*		1565. 12.
	Rodolph the second.		1577.
Kings	*of England*	*Queene Elizabeth.*	1558. 45.
	Of France	*Charles the ninth.*	1560. 14.
		Henrie the third.	1574. 14.
		Henrie the fourth.	1589.
	Of Scotland	*Iames the sixt, that now raigneth.*	1567.
Bishops of Rome	*Gregorie the XIII.*		1572. 12.
	Xius the V.		1585. 5.
	Vrban the VII.		1590. 12. dayes
	Gregorie the XIIII.		1590. 10. months, 10. dayes
	Innocent the IX.		1591. 2. months & one day.
	Clement the VIII.		1592.

Si quid in humanis, magnum te reddere poſſit:
Quid prohibet magnis nomen ineſſe tuum?
Qui ſubiecta vides, tot diſſona regna, tot vrbes:
Et nulli cedens, ſceptra ſuperba geris.
Cum tamen ignores, quid ſit ſapientia Chriſti,
Omnia quæ tacta, ſunt Mahomete nihil.

RICH. KNOLLEVS.

In Engliſh thus.

If ought there be might make thee great, that on the earth is found;
What then ſhould let, thy name amongſt the greateſt for to ſound?
That ſees thy kingdomes and thy townes, ſo many and ſo great:
And giuing place thy ſelfe to none, doeſt ſit on royall ſeat.
Yet ſith thou knoweſt not aright, for grace by Chriſt to call:
All that thou boaſts, O *Mahomet*, is nothing worth at all.

R. K.

THE

THE LIFE OF MAHOMET, THE THIRD OF THAT NAME, SEVENTH EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

1595

THe death of the late great Sultan *Amurath* was not forthwith made knowne in the Court, but with wonderfull ſecrecie concealed, not only for feare of the Ianizaries, who in time of the vacancie of the empire alwaies do whatſoeuer pleaſeth themſelues: but alſo for that the people hauing in diſtruſt the fierce nature of *Mahomet*, *Amurath* his eldeſt ſonne, were generally better affected to *Amurath* the younger brother, a prince of a more mild ſpirit and courteous diſpoſition, vnto whom they in heart wiſhed thoſe ſtatelie honours, which could by no meanes without the great wrong and preiudice of his elder brother, & danger of the whole ſtate bee giuen vnto him. Ten daies after came *Mahomet* in poſt from AMASIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, and was there by the great Baſſaes and other his mightie fauourites ſaluted emperor: which done, he preſently after cauſed all his brethren to be inuited to a ſolemne feaſt in the court: wherunto they yet ignorant of the death of their father, came chearefully as men fearing no harme, but being come, were there all by his commaundement moſt miſerably ſtrangled: and at once to rid himſelfe of the feare of all competitors (the greateſt torment of the mighty) he the ſame day (as is reported) cauſed ten of his fathers wiues and concubines, ſuch as by whom any iſſue was to be feared, to bee all drowned in the ſea.

Mahomet ſaluted Emperour of the Turkes.

He murthereth his brethren.

The Ianizaries and other ſouldiours of the Court not before acquainted with the death of *Amurath*, neither with the choice that the great Baſſaes had without their priuitie made of *Mahomet*, and not a little offended to ſee themſelues ſo diſappointed of ſuch ſpoyles as they reckon due vnto them in the time of their vacancie, as men diſcontented riſe vp in a rage, and made ſuch hauocke and ſpoyle in the imperiall citie, as greater they could not well haue made, had there beene as yet no emperor choſen at all; and not ſo contented, were now euen vpon the point to haue rifled their new emperors Court, and to haue laied violent hands vpon the perſon of himſelfe, in reuenge of the tyrannie by him executed vpon his brethren and fathers wiues (which inhumane crueltie the Turkiſh emperors eaſily excuſe by the name of, The policie of their ſtate.) For the appeaſing of which ſo dangerous a tumult, *Mahomet* called vnto him certaine of the chiefe men among theſe ſeditious, ſuch as were thought to be able to do moſt with them, whom hee ſought by faire perſuaſions and large promiſes to win vnto him, and by them to pacifie the reſt: Which ſerued him to little or no purpoſe, vntill ſuch time as the great Baſſaes themſelues came out with their followers, who with many faire perſuaſions, mixt with moſt grieuous threats and firme promiſe of a generall pardon, with much ado appeaſed the tumult: yet for the more ſafetie kept all the chiefe ſtreets of the citie with ſtrong watch and ward. This broile thus ouerblowne, a new tent was by the commandement of the new emperour ſet vp before the temple of *Sophia*: wherein on the right hand was placed the dead bodie of the late Sultan *Amurath*, his father, and on the left hand the bodies of his nineteene ſtrangled brethren, layed forth of purpoſe,

The Ianizaries in a tumult.

The tumult appeaſed.

A poſe, as an heauie ſpectacle for the people to behold: who all not long after were togither with their father with great ſolemnitie after the Turkiſh manner buried, and *Mahomet* himſelfe (being about nine and twentie yeares old) now openly proclaimed great emperor of the Turkes, and lord of all, from the riſing of the Sunne to the going downe of the ſame. After that returning to his pallace, hee made vnto his Baſſaes and other great men a ſumptuous and royall feaſt, as the manner was: but whileſt they were in the middeſt of their mirth, vpon the ſudden all the citie was againe in an vproare, and the people in armes, in ſuch ſort, as that it was thought ſcarce one man would haue eſcaped aliue, from that banket, had not the chiefe Baſſa with his grauitie and wiſdome and wonderfull labour in good time appeaſed their furie, and withall to their greater terror cauſed all the great ordinance in the citie to be brought forth into the ſtreets, readie char-

The Janizaries againe in an vproare.

B ged, to be ſhot off amongſt them.

Whileſt theſe troubles thus paſſed at CONSTANTINOPLE, vpon the late confederation made betweene the emperor, the Tranſyluanian prince, the Valachians and Moldauians, diuers fortunate inrodes and skirmiſhes wer by them made in the frontiers of the Turkes dominions, many ſtrong places were ſurpriſed, many rich booties taken, and notable exploits done, which we will but briefely paſſe ouer, as the precedents of a greater warre. The citie of WEITZE, before taken by the Turks, was now againe in the beginning of this yeare recouered: and the Chriſtians about SCVTHIA, in number about foure thouſand, breaking into the Turks frontiers, carried away an exceeding rich prey, with diuers notable captiues. The like did alſo the Chriſtians of VIVARIA: at which time alſo the garriſon ſouldiours of ALTENBVRG making a rode into

Diuers fortunat rodes made by the Chriſtians vpon the Turkes

C the countrie about RAB, encountered with foure thouſand Turkes, of whom they ſlew two hundred, tooke certaine priſoners, whom they ſent ſome to PRESBVRG, ſome to ALTENBVRG: and *Sinan Baſſa* the late General returning towards CONSTANTINOPLE with much treaſure, which he had greedily ſcraped togither in the late wars in HVNGARIE, was by the Valachians ſet vpon by the way not farre from BELGRADE, and ſtript of all that he had, hauing much adoe to eſcape himſelfe with ſome few of his followers. The ſame Valachians, togither with the Tranſyluanians, vnder the conduct of their valiant captain *Geſtius Ferens*, entering further vpon the Turks, tooke from them diuers of their townes and caſtles, as PONDESIE, NICOPLISE, KILLA, and REBNICHI, and meeting with twelue thouſand Tartars, ſlew a great number of them, and put the reſt to flight. With this inſolencie of the Valachians his late tributaries, but

D now his enemies, the Turkiſh emperor was highly offended: and therefore ſent one *Bogdanus* a Valachian borne, deſcended of the Palatines houſe, with a great power to expulſe the old Vayuod, and to poſſeſſe himſelfe of that honour, as his tributarie; promiſing vnto him all fauour and kindneſſe. *Bogdanus* thus ſupported and furniſhed, came with his power into VALACHIA, yet thought it beſt before he attempted any great matter, to expect the comming of the Tartars left the laſt yeare in HVNGARIE by *Sinan*: of whoſe comming the Valachians and Tranſyluanians hauing vnderſtanding, met them by the way, and ioyning battel with them, ſlew eight thouſand of them, put the reſt to flight, and ſo returned: vnto whom preſently after this victorie the Tranſyluanian prince ſent foureteene thouſand ſouldiours moe to aid them againſt the Turkes. But *Bogdanus* vnderſtanding both of the ouerthrow of the Tartars and the comming of this new

E ſupplie, durſt not proceed any farther in his enterpriſe, but kept himſelfe ſtill in his trenches. Not long after by the commandement of the Turkiſh emperour, *Han* the Crim Tartar with a great power of his Tartarian horſemen entred into MOLDAVIA, with purpoſe to haue by fire and ſword reduced that countrie againe vnto the Turks obeiſance: of whoſe comming *Aaron* Vayuod of MOLDAVIA hauing knowledge, and aided by his neighbor *Michael* Vayuod of VALACHIA, ſo belaied the Tartars, that he in three diuers battels ouerthrew them, and hauing ſlaine twelue thouſand of them, enforced the reſt to retire againe out of his countrie: and following the courſe of this victorie, preſently after tooke BENDAR, SCHINITZ, TIONA, MECHNIS, with ſome other caſtles and fortreſſes of the Turkes neere vnto the riuer of Danubius, all which he furniſhed with his owne garriſons; and withall tooke in the rich countrie of BOBRA-

F GA, the inhabitants thereof willingly ſubmitting themſelues vnto him, as men wearie of the Turkiſh thraldome. With like good fortune, aided by the Polonian Coſſackes, he ouerthrew *Ianicula* the ſonne of *Bogdanus*, ſometime Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, now ſent by *Mahomet* with a great power, as a moſt fit inſtrument to trouble the Vayuod, and to recouer againe that countrey: with whom *Aaron* couragiouſly encountring at SCARPETRA, a mile from Danubius,

ouerthrew him in plaine battel, and hauing ſlaine eight thouſand of his Turks, put him to flight, G
and tooke the ſpoile of his whole campe. Neither yet ſo contented, marched preſently to NE-
STER ALBA, where he put the Turkes in a great feare, and afterwards burnt the ſuburbs of the ci-
tie, and ſo retired.

The emperors embaſſador lieth in priſon at Belgrade.

How *Amurath* the late Sultan in the beginning of theſe troubles, had at CONSTANTI-
NOPLE thut vp in priſon *Frederick Krecowitz* the emperours embaſſadour, is before declared. This embaſſadour *Sinan Baſſa* brought with him the laſt yeare when he came into HVN-
GARIE, who after many indignities by him ſuffered both vpon the way and at BELGRADE, there died: fiue of whoſe ſeruants the falſe Baſſa cauſed to be kept in ſtraight priſon, as guiltie of their maſters death, ſo to auert the infamie thereof from himſelfe. But now lying himſelfe at BEL-
GRADE for the better mannaging of this yeares warres, vpon the comming of a new treaſurer H
from the Court, he cauſed the fiue poore priſoners to be brought before him, and moſt impudently charged them with the death of their maſter: ſaying, that they ſhould anſwere for the ſame vnto God and their emperour; and that his purpoſe in bringing of him from CONSTAN-
TINOPLE, was to no other end but to haue vſed his helpe in concluding a peace betwixt the Great Sultan and the emperour, and ſo to haue ſet him with all his at libertie: but now that hee was dead, he would ſend them his treacherous ſeruants to the emperour to bee by him examined: and withall to tell him, That he was ſent from the Great Sultan, (whoſe power was not by any but God onely to be withſtood) to beſiege VIENNA, which he could (as he ſaid) the laſt yeare haue taken with leſſe labour than he had done RAB: and that therefore it were beſt for him betime to ſeeke for peace, before ſo great a power had taken the field: And that for farther I
inſtructions, he would referre them to his ſonne the Baſſa of BVDA, to whom he ſent them from BELGRADE, togither with the new come treaſurer. Being come to BVDA, they were forthwith brought before the Baſſa, and amongſt them the late embaſſadours ſecretarie, vnto whom after he had ſaid ſomewhat of the hard dealing with the embaſſadour and his followers, he declared that he had alwaies diſliked of that manner of proceeding, and oftentimes entreated his father for their libertie, and now at laſt to haue obtained, that the embaſſador being dead, his ſeruants might be ſet free: and ſo put them in good hope, that they ſhould in ſhort time be reſtored to their wonted libertie. In the meane time, that one of them ſhould go vnto the emperours Court, & there ſpeake with one of his Secretaries, whom he had before aduiſed to bethinke himſelfe of peace: vnto whom alſo he afterwards writ, vpon what conditions he thought peace K
might be at the Sultans hand obtained. Which were, if all the caſtles and ſtrong holds taken by the emperours forces in theſe warres, as FILEK, SETCHINE, and NOVIGRAD, with their territories, ſhould be reſtored, SISEK in CROATIA ſurrendred; if the emperour ſhould from thence forth refuſe to aid or protect the Tranſyluanians, Moldauians, and Valachians, and leaue them to the Great Sultan to be chaſtiſed as rebels; if finally the emperour would at once ſend vnto the Turks Court his wonted tribute for the yeares paſt, and ſo yearely afterwards: ſo he could be content by the mediation of his father, to attempt to appeaſe the fierce and inueterat diſpleaſure of the Sultan, and to farther the treatie of peace. This he commaunded the Secretarie to write, and to ſend it by the young lord *Perling*, and to require thereof anſwere: yet that he ſhould go with this condition, That if the ſaid *Perling* within the ſpace of fiue and twentie daies L
returned not with anſwere, all the reſt ſhould for his default loſe their heads. A ſubtile deuiſe and full of deceit, wherein the craftie Baſſaes, both the father and the ſonne ſought for nothing els but to ſee what confidence the Chriſtians had in themſelues, and to breake the confederation made betweene the emperour, the Tranſyluanians, Moldauians, and Valachians: and that other princes, whom God had ſtirred vp in defence of ſo iuſt a cauſe, hearing of a rumour of peace, might grow cold, and deferre to ſend their promiſed aid. For now the Turkes had found by experience, how hurtfull and dangerous the reuolt of the three countries of TRANSYLVANIA, MOLDAVIA, and VALACHIA was vnto them, as they which brought ten hundred thouſand duckats yearely into the Great Sultans treaſurie: beſides that, thoſe people now become their M
enemies, were of all other fitteſt to intercept all maner of prouiſion to be brought by land either to or from CONSTANTINOPLE, were it victuall or other warlike prouiſion. Notwithſtanding this motion of peace made by the two Baſſaes, *Sinan* the old Baſſa in the meane time, with great diligence at BELGRADE prepared all things neceſſarie for warre, and cauſed three bridges to be made, whereby he might in diuers places as he thought beſt, tranſport his armie ouer Danubius;

and

A and at the ſame time ſent for the garriſons round about, and other ſoldiors before billited in the countrie, and put in readineſſe all things neceſſarie for a moſt mortall war.

Within the appointed time came *Perling* from the emperours Court with anſwere to the letters written by the embaſſadours Secretarie, at the commandement of the Baſſa; the effect whereof was, That he had receiued his letters by *Perling*, and did thereby vnderſtand what had paſſed betweene the captiue ſeruants of the late embaſſadour, and *Sinan Baſſa* at BELORADES and alſo betweene them and *Sinan Baſſa* his ſonne at BVDA; and that the emperours mind was neuer other, but that a firme peace might haue been made betweene him and the Sultan; and that the emperour had done nothing elſe by his embaſſadour at CONSTANTINOPLE, or by others in other places, but that ſuch reaſonable conditions might haue been found out, as might
B haue ended thoſe warres, and haue on both ſides deliuered their innocent ſubiects from their great and dayly calamities; which might eaſily haue beene done, if *Sinan* the author and fautor of this warre, had with like deſire furthered the peace. But that it was manifeſt vnto the whole world, that all complaints of infinit grieuances, being by the embaſſadour, yea and by the emperor himſelfe, by his letters laied open vnto the Sultan and his chiefe Baſſaes, had not only nothing preuailed, but alſo to haue bin with great contempt reiected, and the treatie of peace once begun, to haue by the inſolencie of the Baſſa of BOSNA been interrupted: That the emperour, becauſe the matter ſhould not breake out into open warre, had ſent his double tribute into the confines of HVNGARIE, which was a great while laid vp at KOMARA vntill the Sultans mind were knowne. But when all his deſſignes tended to warre, and the Chriſtian prouinces were by
C his robbers on euery ſide ſpoiled, the inhabitants led away into moſt miſerable captiuitie, the townes and villages burnt, yea whole countries left deſolate, and all manner of outrages were vpon a meere pride and contempt as it were of the whole world exerciſed: then the emperour to haue taken his refuge vnto the defence of his iuſt cauſe, and to haue vſed ſuch remedies as are both before God and the world to bee allowed, and ſo by lawfull warre to haue repulſed warre. And that although all had not the laſt yeare proſpered in his hand, but that he had receiued ſome loſſe: yet that *Sinan Baſſa* himſelfe, and the Baſſa of BVDA his ſonne, with other of the wiſer ſort of the Turks muſt needs confeſſe, that to haue chanced, that by their wiſedome, policie or power, but by the ſufferance of God by a rare misfortune, through the inexcuſable neg-
D ligence and treaſon of ſuch as he had put in truſt with the confines of his empire, worthie moſt ſeuere chaſtiſement. And that no man could denie, but that great powers of the Turks, had not once, but oftentimes been ouerthrowne and diſcomfited, by ſmall handfuls of the Chriſtians: therefore their power not to be ſo inuincible, as they vainly vaunted of. But whereas it is written, that the great Viſier *Sinan* and the Baſſa his ſonne are of opinion, that the emperour is brought to ſo low an ebbe, that he muſt be glad to accept of moſt hard and diſhonourable conditions of peace propounded by them: therein they erre much and deceiue themſelues far, for by the power of God they ſhould ſhortly by experience know, that his imperiall maieſtie wanteth neither power nor wealth, to repaire the loſſe receiued through the treaſon of them he truſted, yea and to recouer whatſoeuer he had loſt elſe: and that it ſhould in ſhort time bee witneſſed vnto the whole world, by the helpe of God and the defence of a moſt iuſt cauſe, that the
E emperour was not ſo poore and weake as they ſuppoſed him to bee. Yet as he of his owne naturall goodnes and clemencie, with his own incomparable loſſe and harme, had alwaies ſought for the quiet and profit of his ſubiects, and to the vttermoſt of his power ſtaied the effuſion of innocent bloud; ſo now alſo forgetting all iniuries, he could happily be content to thinke of an honourable peace: whereunto hee was more enclined than to protract the warre with the vnſpeakable harms of the ſubiects on both ſides. Yet aboue all things it behooued *Sinan* to know, that he was to reſtore all ſuch caſtles and townes as haue in this warre been taken by the Turks, beginning at WIHITZ in CROATIA euen to the laſt innocent ſubiect by them carried way into captiuitie. And that the Tranſyluanians, Moldauians, and Valachians (people many ages ioyned and vnited as inſeperable members to the kingdome of HVNGARIE, as vnto the true
F bodie, and now of late by the practiſe and treacherie of certaine rebellious perſons ſeperated from the ſame) were from henceforth to be left vnder the protection & gouernment of his imperiall maieſtie, and neuer more to be impugned by the Turkes. If theſe things were done, and order taken that the iniurie and diſgrace done vnto the emperours late embaſſadour (a fact that all the princes of the world cried ſhame of) might not remaine vnpuniſhed: & that his ſeruants

The Baſſaes ſubtill demaunes anſwered with like.

in durance at Byda and Constantinople, might be restored vnto their wonted libertie, G
then some good forme of peace, and bounding of their territories might happily be agreed vpon: without which conditions, all talke of peace was but vaine; for that God the iust and mightie protector of such as put their trust in him, would not faile to helpe his imperial maiestie, with the rest of the confederat princes, in their so iust a quarrell, and abate the pride of such as trust in their owne strength and power.

This answere the captiues at Byda were commaunded to giue vnto the Bassa, either by writing or by word of mouth: and withall earnestly to request him both for their owne libertie and their fellowes, wrongfully detayned at Constantinople. Which if it could not bee obtained, yet to comfort themselues with that, that they should in bounteous manner receiue from the emperour such allowance, as should suffice to prouide them things necessarie: as hee H
had granted to *Perling*, whom he might haue iustly detained and not sent him backe againe, but for his oaths sake, being no lawfull prisoner. Thus were the vnreasonable conditions of peace craftily by the Bassa propounded, by others answered: but by whom he knew not, no mans name being set thereunto.

The emperor not ignorant with what an enemie hee had to doe, and of nothing more carefull than of the kingdome (or more truely to say, of the reliques of the kingdome) of Hvngarie, lying now as it were in the lyons mouth, ceased not to pray aid, not of the princes electors only, but of others also farther off; yea euen as farre as Italie and Spaine, but especially of the king of Polonia, as his neere alliance and neighbour. Vnto whom both he and the States of Hvngarie sent their embassadours, at such time as he moued with the dayly incursions of I
the Turkes and Tartars into the countries adioyning vpon his, had for the safetie of his owne kingdome, called a parliament of all his States in Februarie last, at Cracovia. Whereof *Mahomet* the Great Turke hearing, sent also two of his chiefe Chiaus, his vsuall embassadours vnto the king and his States so assembled, to craue his aid in his wars in Hvngarie: which if the king should not refuse, then to promise him to want no coine to pay his souldiors; and that *Mahomet* mindfull of so great a courtesie, would at all times be readie to requit him with like, when his occasions should require. These embassadours, hauing obtained safe conduct from *Michael* the Vayuod of Valachia for their passage through his countrie, comming thither, were by the Vayuod himselfe honourably entertained and welcomed, and so brought into a faire lodging, where they discoursed with him of many matters. But the Vayuods followers, grieued to K
see so great honour done to these their sworn and mortall enemies, with weapons in their hands brake into the roome where the embassadours were, and without more adoe slew them both: and in the same furie setting vpon the rest of the Turkes their followers, cut them all in pieces, so that of them none came into Polonia to do their great Masters message, either yet returned to Constantinople to carrie newes of the rest, but there altogither perished. Of which outrage *Mahomet* yet vnderstanding, was therewith wonderfully enraged, threatning all euils both to the Moldauians and Valachians, and forthwith sent out other embassadors to the same purpose, who with better fortune afterwards in safetie arriued in Polonia.

The Turkes embassadors sent vnto the Polonian king slaine in Valachia.

The Tartars in many places (as is before declared) ouerthrown, and many strong castles and forts taken from the Turks by the Transyluanians, Valachians, and Moldauians, the Turkish L
affaires going to wracke in those quarters, and sore shaken on that side of Hvngarie; *Mahomet* the Turkish emperor called home to the Court *Sinan Bassa* his Generall in Hvngarie, to conferre with him (as it was thought) of some great matters. In whose place hee sent *Ferat Bassa*, hee who sometime had the leading of *Amuraths* great armies against the Persians: who now departing from Constantinople, came to Belgrade in Aprill, and there tooke the charge vpon him. Where at his first comming in the night time, all the ropes and cordes of the tents were suddenly cut in sunder, and so his tent let fall about his eares: which some supposed to haue bin done to his disgrace, by the procurement of *Cicala Bassa* before by him wronged; or as others thought, by the insolent Ianizaries, who disliking of him, did it in despight, wishing rather to haue beene led by *Mahomet* himselfe. Now at his comming, the famine which the last M
yeare began amongst the Turks, was growne exceeding great, not at Byda and Belgrade onely, but euen generally in most places of Hvngarie possessed by the Turkes: insomuch, that the Tartar women that followed the campe, were faine to roast their owne children & eate them. This famine was also accompanied with a most terrible plague, whereof great numbers of

The plague and famine among the Turkes.

the

A the Turkes and Tartars died dayly: ſo that of foureſcore fiue thouſand Tartars which came the laſt yeare into Hvngarie, now remained ſcarce eight thouſand, the reſt being all deuoured with the ſword, famin, and the peſtilence.

Great were the harmes the Turkes ſtill daily receiued from the late reuolted countries of Transylvania, Valachia, and Moldavia, the Chriſtians, of thoſe places ſeeking by all meanes to annoy them. *Michael* Vaiuod of Valachia, not contented with that he had alreadie done, but entring into the Turkes frontires, ſurpriſed Schimele, together with the caſtle, wherin he found 14. field pieces, amongſt which were two which had vpō them the armes of the emperour *Ferdinand*, and other two hauing vpon them the armes of *Huniades*: which pieces he afterward ſent as a preſent to the Tranſyluanian prince. After that he tooke Orosig, a famous

Michael vaynod of Valachia doth the Turkes great harme.

B port town, the dwelling place of the Turks great purueyor for butter, cheeſe, and hony, and ſuch other prouiſion for the Court; wherein he found ſuch ſtore of the aforeſaid prouiſion, as might well haue ſufficed eight thouſand men for a whole yere: and ſtill proſecuting his good fortune, tooke from the Turkes Kilec and Galempe, with the ſtrong caſtle of S. *George*, commonly called Grigio, and at lenghth beſieged Laganoc.

With the beginning of the Spring came *Matthias* the Archduke and Generall of the Chriſtian armie, from the aſſembly of the nobilitie of Hvngarie at Presbvrg, to Vienna, and ſo from thence to the emporour his brother at Prage; who appointed him Generall of the lower

C Hvngarie, and *Maximilian* his brother Generall of the vpper country: giuing them for their lieutenants, vnto *Maximilian* the lord *Teuffenbach*, and to *Matthias* the countie *Charles Mansfelt*, by him ſent for out of Flanders, and after created one of the princes of the empire. *Iohn de Medices*, who was yet in Hvngarie, he made maſter of the great ordinance, which charge to fortifie Komara: which he ſo well performed, as that it was thought nothing in ſtrength inferior to Rab. All this while the emperor ceaſed not both by his embaſſadors and letters to ſollicite the Chriſtian princes, for the repreſsing of the common enemie to put to their helping hands: and ſo much preuailed with them, that out of his owne hereditarie prouinces, & from other princes his friends, he had this Spring raiſed a right puiſſant and ſtrong armie for the defence of Hvngarie: which how it was raiſed, and from whom, it ſhall not be much from our purpoſe briefely to remember, as the chiefe ſtrength vnder God, wherby the Chriſtian commonweale was this yeare moſt notably defended. Out of the higher Saxonie came a thouſand two hundred

The notable armie of the Chriſtians and from whence it was raiſed.

D horſemen, and out of the lower Saxonie ſix hundred: from Franconia a thouſand horſemen: from Svevia foure thouſand footmen: out of the countie of Tirol as many: from Bavaria three thouſand: out of Bomemia two thouſand men at armes, ſix hundred light horſemen, and ſix thouſand footmen: from Silesia a thouſand fiue hundred horſemen: from Lvsatia fiue hundred horſe and a thouſand foot: from Moravia a thouſand horſe, and two thouſand foot: out of Avstria two thouſand horſe and ſix thouſand foot: from Hvngarie fiue hundred horſemen and a thouſand foot: from the nobilitie of Svevia and Franconia foure thouſand foot: from the king of Spaine out of the low countries vnder the conduct of *Charles* countie *Mansfelt*, two thouſand horſemen and ſix thouſand foot: Vnto theſe the biſhop of Rome added two thouſand horſemen and eight thouſand foot: the great duke of

E Florence ſent fiue hundred horſe and three thouſand foot: the duke Ferrara a thouſand fiue hundred footmen: the duke of Mantva a thouſand foot: and duke *Ventureo* fiue hundred horſe. All which being put together, fill vp the number of fifteene thouſand nine hundred horſemen, and fiftie thouſand fiue hundred foot. Which notable armie, raiſed from the power of diuers Chriſtian princes, and conducted by worthie chiefetaines, had by the goodneſſe of God much better ſucceſſe this Summer againſt the auntient enemies of Chriſtendome, than had the like armie the yeare before, as in the proceſſe of this Hiſtorie ſhall appeare.

Among the worthie commaunders that were in this puiſſant armie, *Charles* countie *Mansfelt* the ſonne of *Peter Erneſtus* the old countie, from his youth brought vp in armes, was by the king of Spaine at the requeſt of the emprour ſent with the aforeſaid forces of two thouſand

F horſe and ſix thouſand foot out of the Low countries, as a man for his approued valour and direction, fit to manage theſe dangerous warres againſt the Turke vnder *Matthias* the Archduke, as his lieutenant Generall: who hauing raiſed the appointed forces, for moſt part Wallons, departed from Brvxelles about the midſt of Februarie, and by the way taking his leaue of his aged father at Lvxenbvrg, and trauelling through Germanie, came in March to Prage,

where he was by the Emprour and the Archduke his brother moſt honourably entertained, and G
ſhortly after with great ſolemnitie created one of the Princes of the empire. His forces following after him were by the way ſtaied, partly by the inundation of waters, the riuers they were to paſſe ouer (at that time riſing to an vnwonted height,) partly by the iealouſie of ſome of the Germane princes, who denied them paſſage through their territories, vntill ſuch time as that the emperour by his letters had opened vnto him the way: which princes for all that ſtood vpon their guard, and ſo gaue him paſſage.

Now ran great rumours of the wonderfull preparations of the Turks, as alſo of the Chriſtians; Fame after her wonted manner, encreaſing the report of all things aboue meaſure: which cauſed the Turks with exceeding care to looke to the fortification of their frontier towns, eſpecially of RAB and STRIGONIVM, as did the Chriſtians to the fortification of KOMARA and H
ALTENBVRG. In the meane time many hoat skirmiſhes paſſed betweene the Chriſtians and the Turks, eſpecially in the late reuoulted countries of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, wherein the Turkes were ſtill put to the worſe, to the great diſcontentment of their emperour. Neere vnto TEMESVVAR the Baſſa of BVDA was ouerthrowne, by the valiant captaine *Geſtius Ferentz*, and the Tranſyluanians. And in VALACHIA the Turks Generall, entring with a great armie was there alſo by the lord *Nadaſti* and the Valachians aided with the Tranſyluanians, in a great battell diſcomfited and ouerthrowne. Eight thouſand of the Turkes heads in token of this victorie the lord *Nadaſti* ſent to ALBAIVLIA to the Tranſyluanian prince, and certaine enſigns, amongſt which one was moſt richly garniſhed with pretious ſtones and pearle, thought to be worth thirtie thouſand dollars; which the prince afterward reſtored againe to *Nadaſti*, of- I
fering him great poſſeſſions in TRANSYLVAINA, if he could haue bin content there to haue ſeated himſelfe.

Ferat Baſſa ouerthrowne in Valachia.

All this Spring the Turkes countenanced their warres with greater boaſts and threats than true force, giuing it out, That they would in ſhort time worke wonders both by ſea and land. For the more credit whereof, *Murat Rays*, a notable pyrat, was ſent out with twelue gallies; who landing here and there vpon the coaſts of ITALIE, did much harme, cauſing it to bee reported in euery place where he landed, That this was but the beginning of a greater war, and that a wonderfull fleet was to follow him: which raiſed a great feare, as well in other places as in ITALIE. Howbeit, no ſuch fleet afterwards appeared: for why the Turkiſh emperor, much troubled with the reuolt of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, and the great mortalitie then K
raging both among his ſouldiors and their horſes, was not at leaſure to looke into the ſea, hauing his hands full ynough with the troubles of HVNGARIE, where his men of war enioyed little reſt in the frontires of his territories.

Sigiſmund the Tranſyluanian prince, had vpon ſome iuſt cauſes of late ſuſpected *Aaron* the Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, to haue intelligence not only with the Polonians, but alſo with the Cardinall *Bator* and other his mortall enemies, and ſecretly to haue beene about to make his peace with *Mahomet*, and ſo againe to fall off from him vnto the Turke: Which vehement ſuſpition growing dayly more and more, was about this time manifeſtly confirmed by certain letters intercepted concerning that matter. For the preuenting whereof, the prince cauſed *Aaron* to be apprehended, and with his wife and ſonne to bee ſent as priſoners to PRAGE: in whoſe L
roome he by the conſent of the nobilitie of the countrie, placed one *Stephen Rozwan*, a wiſe and diſcreet man amongſt them, and ſuch an one as had been vnto him alwaies faithfull. So as much as in him was, prouiding that that countrie ſhould not be rent from him, and the vnion of the other. But againſt the ſecret practiſes of the Polonians, he proteſted openly by letters vnto the emperor, by the power of God, and aid of his faithful ſubiects to redreſſe thoſe ſo great iniuries himſelfe by the ſword.

Mahomet ſendeth embaſſadors to the prince of Tranſyluania.

In the middeſt of theſe troubles came three Chiaus, embaſſadours from the Turkiſh Sultan vnto the prince, to perſuade him againe to put himſelfe into his protection, and to giue him paſſage through his countrey, as in former time into HVNGARIE; promiſing him, that all the iniuries by him or his people done, ſhould be for euer forgotten and forgiuen: and that hee ſhould M
haue thoſe three countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, as his owne free inheritance, without paying any tribute, and ſo to be accounted as the Turks moſt louing friend and vaſſale. What the prince anſwered thereunto, was not knowne, but by his doings afterwards it was eaſily to be gathered, that hee hearkened not vnto the deceitfull charmes of the

faithleſſe

A faithleſſe tyrant, truſting more vnto the league he had with the Chriſtian Emperour. Theſe embaſſadors were ſcarce gone, but that a ſecret meſſenger came with letters from the chiefe of the Chriſtians in BVLGARIA to the prince, declaring vnto him, That if he did with any good ſucceſſe proſecute his warres, they would be readie to follow his fortune, and to ioyne hands with him againſt the cruell tyrant, and to ſhut vp all the paſſages that way into VALACHIA, MOLDAVIA, and HVNGARIE.

Whileſt theſe troubleſome times thus paſſed in TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE, one of the old Ianizaries, called *Waſuode Giezi*, an old ſouldior, but a confident bold ſpoken fellow, moued as ſhould ſeeme with the diſcontentments of the time, came vnto *Mahomet* the great Sultan at CONSTANTINOPLE, and there openly ſet vpon him with this rough abrupt ſpeech.

B *How long at laſt moſt mightie Emperour, wilt thou endure thy ſelfe to bee ſeduced and blinded by the great Baſſaes of thy Court, and commaunders of thine armies? How long wilt thou ſuffer thy ſelfe to be deceiued, to the great danger of thy ſelfe, and hurt of thy ſubiects? Seeſt thou not how ouerthwartly, fraudulently, and cunningly, they mooued onely with their owne couetous and ambitious humour, haue hitherto dealt with thee and thy father? eſpecially in that, that perſuaded by them, thou haſt diſhonorably broken thy league, and taken vp armes againſt the Chriſtian Emperour. At length open thine eyes, and ſee their deceit, and how much they abuſe thy power.* Sinan Baſſa, *who muſt haue himſelfe honoured and exalted aboue all others, hath not by ſtrong hand honourably woon* RAB, *as hath beene the manner of thine anncеſtors, but hath craftily bought it with thy money, and thereby caſt thee into a moſt dangerous*

The preſumptuous ſpeech of one Waſuode an old Ianizarie to Mahomet the great Sultan.

C *warre, and infinite troubles. O* RAB, RAB, *now the cauſe of great triumph and reioycing, as if thereby all Chriſtendome ſhould in ſhort time bee ſubdued to thy ſcepter. But thou art therein much deceiued, thy barnes, thy ſtore-houſes, as are* TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, MOLDAVIA, BVLGARIA, *and other prouinces adioyning, from whence this thy imperiall citie of* CONSTANTINOPLE, *with the countrey about it, thy court, yea thy ſelfe, art to be relieued, are by this warre ſhut vp; ſo that downe the riuer of Danubius out of the Weſt, or by the Euxine out of the Eaſt, thou art not able to looke for any prouiſion. From whence then, O mightie Emperour, wilt thou maintaine thy ſelfe, thy Court, this populous citie, and the countrey hereabout? Not to ſpeake in the meane time of thy mightie armie now in* HVNGARIE, *fleſh, fiſh, corne, all manner of victuall are now at ſuch a price, that the common ſouldior cannot buy them. In this extreame dearth of all things, not men onely, but euen the very beaſts and cattell ſtarue for hunger.*

D *Thy horſes go fat perhaps into* HVNGARIE, *but neither thou nor thy ſelect ſouldiors can liue by graſſe and weeds, all that is left in that countrey. This miſerie and calamitie of thy people thou ſeeſt daily, and yet thou wilt not with ſound iudgement lift vp thine eyes, to ſee from whence theſe harmes come, and how that they by thee put in greateſt truſt, ſtudie not for thy profit or the profit of the common weale, but only how by all meanes to enrich themſelues.*

Mahomet much mooued with the confident ſpeach of the old Ianizarie, commaunded him to bee foorthwith committed to ward, and by faire meanes to be examined, by whoſe ſetting on, and for what cauſe he had ſo boldly vttered this rude ſpeech vnto his Soueraigne, and what further thing he had intended: but the reſt of the Ianizaries hearing thereof, riſe preſent-

E ly in a tumult, and by ſtrong hand tooke him out of priſon, and by ſolemne oath combined themſelues to defend him, euen to the ſpending of their owne blood, whereat *Mahomet* was glad to winke.

The greateſt part of the aid promiſed by the Chriſtian princes for the maintenance of this yeares warres againſt the Turke being now come to VIENNA in AVSTRIA, Countie *Mansfelt*, lieutenant Generall vnder the Archduke, forthwith called a counſell of the Colonels, captaines and other great commanders of the armie, to conſult with them what courſe to take for the beginning of this great warre: as whether they ſhould preſently lay ſiege to ſome towne of the enemies, or els to expect him in the plaine field and to giue him battell. All things well conſidered, and that reſolued vpon which was thought moſt expedient, he remoued from VIENNA to

F ALTENBVRG, where hee muſtered his whole armie: and departed thence with ſome few of his followers, came to WALKENBVRG, a village vpon the ſide of Danubius, where hee made choiſe of a place to encampe his armie in: which after he had marked out, he returned again with ſpeed to ALTENBVRG, and by open proclamation through the campe, gaue ſtraight commaundement, That againſt a certaine houre euery man ſhould be in readineſſe to remoue and ſet forward

The army of the Chriſtians muſtered at Altenburg.

ward toward the enemy. But diuers of the ſouldiors, and eſpecially the Germanes, began forth- G
with after their wonted manner to crie out for their pay before they would ſtirre any farther: ſo that the Countie was glad by a ſecond proclamation to command them to riſe, promiſing them their pay within eight daies. But they ſtil ſtanding vpon their former reſolution for their pay, refuſed any further to follow their captaines, and ſent ſix of the beſt ſort among thoſe mutinous ſouldiors to the Countie, in the name of all the reſt to demand their pay; whom he foorthwith commaunded to be all hanged: but three of them hauing reaſonably excuſed themſelues, he let them go, and cauſing the other three to caſt lots for their liues, hanged vp two of them. Which ſeuere execution ſo terrified the reſt, that vpon the ſigne giuen they all riſe, and with the reſt of the armie followed the Countie. The whole army being come to WALKENBVRG vnto the place where they were to incamp; the countie himſelfe with others of the nobilitie, began with ſpades H
and ſhouels to dig & caſt vp the trenches, and ſo wrought vntill they ſweat againe: with whoſe example all the reſt of the armie, of what degree ſoeuer, being moued to labor, had in ſhort time caſt vp a verie great trench from Danubius vnto the mariſhes, large enough for foureſcore thouſand men to encampe in, the great worke with reſtleſſe labour going forward both night and
The vigilant carefulneſſe of Countie Manſfield. day, vntill it was fully finiſhed. The Countie lying thus intrenched with his armie, was ſtill carefull by his eſpials to vnderſtand where the enemie lay, and what he did. Hee was readie ſtill to heare all, but to beleeue that which ſeemed to be moſt like to be true: what he purpoſed, he kept moſt ſecret; ſo that the enemie could neuer diſcouer any of his deſignes (wherein the Generals of late yeares before him had much erred:) and commonly his moſt certaine reſolutions were ſhadowed vnder the open ſhew of ſome other matter nothing meant: ſecuritie he much abhor- I
red, as neuer free from danger: and although it was by diuers meſſengers brought vnto him, That the enemy was but of ſmall ſtrength, vnable to meet him, diſorderedly encamped, and in great diſtreſſe for want of victuals; yet would he giue little credit therunto, as knowing ſuch reports to haue oftentimes bin of purpoſe giuen out by the Turks to lull the chriſtians in ſecurity, the more eaſily to oppreſſe them. The Chriſtian armie thus ſtrongly entrenched, and the trenches planted with great ordinance, the Countie himſelfe with certain troups of horſmen would oftentimes ſhew himſelfe before RAB, and ſometime before DOTIS, viewing ſometime the one place, and ſometime the other, as if he had verely purpoſed to haue beſieged the one of them: and to giue the greater ſhew that he had ſo determined, he cauſed the ground to be marked out for his armie moſt conuenientlie to encampe in, and for the caſting vp of his mounts. Which K
cauſed the Turks of SERIGONIVM, VMSPRINIVM, PALOTTA, and other places farther off, to ſend part as well of their warlike prouiſion as of their garriſon ſouldiors, ſome to RAB, ſome to Do-
Dotis beſieged by the Chriſtians TIS for the defence of thoſe places neereſt (as they thought) vnto danger. The Countie in the meane time hauing now put all things in readineſſe, came with his armie and ſat downe before DOTIS, demanding to haue it yeelded vnto him. And the more to confirme the Turkes that he would aſſuredly beſiege that place, hee began to caſt vp his trenches, and to raiſe his mounts as ſeemed moſt conuenient, ſtraitly commanding euery man of what condition ſoeuer, to put his hand in ſome meaſure to the furtherance of thoſe works: and the more by his owne example to encourage others, would oftentimes himſelfe carrie a fagot or ſome other thing before him vp-
on his horſe, for the raiſing of the mount. For all that certaine Hungarian gentlemen, diſdai- L
ning ſuch baſe labour (as they deemed it) refuſed to doe any thing therein: which the Countie perceiuing, ſtraitly charged one of them by his example, to carrie a fagot to the mount, which the Hungarian gentleman refuſing, the Countie therewith much mooued, laid the fagot he was carrying himſelfe, before the Hungarian vpon his horſe, charging him to ſee that he caried it to the appointed place: the Hungarian diſdainfully taking it, caried it vntil he thought he was out of the Counties ſight, and then in ſcorne threw it down: which the Countie (hauing ſtill an eye after him) perceiuing, commanded him to be taken, and all armed as he rid, to be preſently hanged vpon the next tree for his obſtinacie. Which wholſome ſeueritie both then and afterwards, cauſed others more diligently to do what they were commanded by their ſuperiors.

An obſtinate Turke. It happened about this time, that three Turkes being taken priſoners, were brought into the M
campe: whom the Countie ſtraitly examined of many matters. But the firſt of the three could neither by faire or foule meanes be induced to anſwer to any thing that he was asked: and was therefore by the commaundement of the Countie in the ſight of the other two, cut into ſmall pieces. Who terrified with his diſmembring, confeſſed many things whereof they were asked:

and

A and among others, that the Turkish Sultan had determined to turn his greatest forces into TRANSYLVANIA, MOLDAVIA, and the vpper part of HVNGARIE: and therefore would this Summer send small forces, or else none at all into those quarters.

Now was DOTIS so belaid by the Countie, as that no man doubted, but that he had thereon purposed to haue gaged his whole forces, when suddenly the last of Iune, commaundement was giuen through the campe, that euery man vpon signe giuen, should bee in readinesse to follow his leaders, for that the Countie had determined foorthwith to remoue: yet whither the armie was to be remooued, few or none knew, more than certaine of the chiefe commaunders. As for to goe to STRIGONIVM, few there were that so much as dreamed thereof, all was kept so secret: yet was it the Counties purpose, euen from the beginning to attempt the winning of that citie, *Countie M... fold remo... with the ar... from Dotis to Strigonium.*
B which the Archduke had in vaine the last yeare besieged. The next night being both darke and foule, the Countie rise with all his armie, and the next day being the first of Iuly, came to STRIGONIVM, they of the citie not hearing of his comming before they saw him vnder their walles. Wherefore the Turkes in the suburbs called the Rascian citie, and they in the fort vnder Saint *Thomas* hill, despairing of the keeping of those places, setting fire on the houses, and defacing the fort so much as in that sudden feare they possibly could, fled into the lower towne. The next day the Countie without resistance tooke the aforesaid places forsaken by the Turks, which hee manned with certaine companies of Wallons, and made a bridge of boats ouer Danubius, cast vp certaine mounts, and did many other things for the furtherance of the siege. In three dayes he had againe repaired the fort vnder Saint *Thomas* hill abandoned by the Turkes, and therein
C placed foure great pieces of artillerie, wherewith hee began to batter the lower towne, and in other places to strait the besieged more than they had been the yeare before. The Bassa of BVDA, not ignorant of the want both of men and munition in the besieged citie (and the rather for that they had but a little before sent part of their garrison with shot and pouder to RAB and DOTIS) attempted thrise (as he did many times after during the time of the siege) to haue by the riuer put new supplies both of men and munition into the citie: but was still by the diligence of the Christians excluded, and enforced with losse to returne. In short time the lower towne which they call WASSERSTAT, or the Water towne, was with continuall batterie sore beaten, so that scarcely any house or building was left whole; and a counterscarfe made the last yere, beaten downe. Whereunto certaine Wallons were sent, onely to haue viewed the breadth and
D manner of the ditches, after whom certain companies of the Hungarian Heidons presently followed, without any commaund from their captaines, who with great courage got to the top of another high counterscarfe, & there set vp some of their ensignes. Which the Turks beholding, and comming on close together, by plain force inforced them with losse to retire. Among these Hungarians were diuers also of the Wallons slaine, with some others of good name and place, to the great griefe of the Countie, being not a little offended with that disordered seruice: yet day and night the batterie ceased not, and the Christians out of their trenches with their musket shot, slew many of the Turkes vpon the wals, receiuing little hurt againe, the Turks still shooting but sparingly, for feare of wanting shot and pouder at their greater need; yet that they spent they bestowed so well, that amongst others they had slain foure of the Christian canoniers, & one Wal- *The Christians repulsed.*
E lon captaine. About the middest of Iuly, the Countie with continuall batterie had made the water towne (as he thought) faultable: and therefore sent certaine companies to begin the assault, who hauing passed the counterscarfe, found the ditch full of deep mud, and but newly cut broader certaine paces by the Turkes, so that it was thought scarse possible to bee passed without a bridge; behind which ditch was an high wall, with strong bulwarks; and within all this was another new cast ditch, and vpon the very brinke therof a thicke and high parapit: all which for all that, certaine companies of the Wallons with great labour and danger aduentured to passe: but such was the valour of the defendants, and the smal number of them that came on to the assault, with the disaduantage of the place wherin they stood, that at length they were glad to retire, with the losse of many of their fellowes. The Christians in the beginning of this siege had taken a little
F island in the riuer before the citie, which was kept with some few companies of the lord *Palfi* his Heidons; whereof the Turks hauing intelligence at BVDA, with three gallies and certaine other vessels, landed in the island 3000 souldiors, which slew the Heidons, vnto whom no succour could be suddenly sent, and so recouered againe the island: wherin they left a sufficient garrison for the keeping thereof, furnished with all things necessarie, and so departed.

About

About three dayes after the former assault, the Christians in hope of better successe the second time assaulted the Water towne: in which assault the chiefe leaders were the lord *Greis* and *Anthonie Zinne*, a famous captaine, had he not stained his honor with countie *Hardeck* at RAB; but being pardoned by the Emperour, did now together with the rest appointed to that seruice, most couragiously assault the breach; but were againe by the Turks notably repulsed, and enforced at last to giue ouer the assault, and so to retire with the losse of an hundred and fiftie men: amongst whom *Zinne* himselfe was slaine, with one captaine *Ruger*, and some of the counties owne guard: the lord *Greis* was wounded in the head, and the yonger lord *Schuendi* with diuers other captaines grieuously hurt. The next day after, six hundred of the mountaine people came into the campe vnto the countie with supplications to request him, Not to giue ouer the siege vntill he had woon the citie, promising in the name of those townes and villages from whence they were sent, of their owne charges to repaire for him what harme soeuer he should doe in the city for the taking therof, yea though he should lay it euen with the ground: for why the harmes they daily receiued from the garrison of that citie, were wonderfull.

Mahomet carefull of Strigonium.

At the same time also he was aduertised by his espials (of whom he maintained many for the discouerie of the enimies doings) that *Mahomet* the Turkish Sultan had writ vnto the Bassa of BVDA, carfully to prouide, that his beloued citie of STRIGONIVM took no harme, and not to spare either for men or money betime to relieue it: and therin to do nothing without the aduice and good liking of his old and faithfull seruant *Alis Beg*, who of long time had gouerned and also defended that citie: and to the intent that nothing should be wanting for the performance hereof, that he had sent *Alexander* Aga of the Ianizaries from the Court (whose seruice he might euill haue spared) whose approued counsell and helpe he might also vse in all things: for that he had rather loose some other whole kingdome than that one citie: And that therefore he should beware that it were not by the enemie woon, or by any composition yeelded: wherin if he failed, he threatned vnto him his heauie displeasure, not to be appeased without the price of his head. Which so seuere a commaundement of the great Sultans, the Bassa sent to them of STRIGONIVM, with most grieuous threats from himselfe, if they, terrified with any batterie, vndermining, or assault, should yeeld the city, and not hold it out as became valiant soldiors vnto the last man, swearing to empaile them all vpon stakes, that should consent to the yeelding vp thereof. The old Gouernour *Alis* hauing receiued this so straight a command from him that was both able and like ynough to performe what hee had threatned, vtterly to deterre the souldiors from once thinking of yeelding, caused diligent enquirie to be made throughout the garrison, if any of thé had at any time made any motion of yeelding vp the city, or otherwise murmured against their captaines or commaunders, appointing them to any seruice: and such as he found to haue so don, he to the terror of others caused to be presently executed: & after that went down himselfe into the lower town, to see that nothing were there wanting or amisse where most danger was. But when he would haue againe returned into the vpper towne, he was stayed by the Ianizaries, who told him, That seeing he was of so valiant and couragious a mind, and their Gouernour, he should there stay with them, and take such part as they did, were it better or worse: and so would he or would he not, there needs stay he must.

Now the Bassaes of BVDA and TEMESVVAR, with diuers Sanzackes as well of those parts of HVNGARIE which the Turkes possessed, as other places, were assembling their forces for the reliefe of the besieged in STRIGONIVM: whereof the Transyluanian prince hearing, made shew as if he would forthwith haue the besieged TEMESVVAR, so that the Bassa thereof leauing the intended expedition for STRIGONIVM, was glad to return for the defence of his own charge: They also of STIRIA, CARINTHIA & CROATIA, with the troupes of countie *Serinus*, had so stopped all the passages, that twelue thousand Turks which were comming from ZIGETH and the places thereabout, could by no meanes come to ioyne themselues with their fellowes for the reliefe of the distressed citie.

The higher citie of Strigonium battered by the Christians.

The countie leauing nothing vntattempted or vndone that might helpe for the gaining of STRIGONIVM, had made a notable fort vpon S. *Thomas* hill, and therein placed fiue great culuerines, wherewith he furiously battered the higher citie, and did therein great harme: and thereby also brought to passe, that no man could goe vp or downe the hill, betwixt the vpper towne and the lower, but he was in danger to be set off with those pieces, or the musketiers, who defended by those great pieces, lay vpon the side of the hill in caues and bushes, awaiting for such as

should

A ſhould goe vp or downe betwixt the two townes. Thus the Chriſtians at one time battered the vpper towne, the lower towne, and the ſtrong towne and fort of GOKARA, ſtanding on the farther ſide of Danubius, ouer againſt STRIGONIVM, beſieged by the lord *Palfi*. But of all theſe places, GOKARA was with the furie of the great ordinance moſt ſhaken: which the Countie perceiuing, cauſed the battery to be increaſed, and ſo continued, vntil he had beaten down the counterſcarſe, and made certaine faire breaches in the wall. Whereunto the Morauians (vnto whoſe lot it fell) the one and twentith of Iuly gaue an aſſault in fiue diuers places, whom the lord *Palfi* ſeconded with his Hungarians, of whom certaine were of purpoſe appointed beſide their armes to bring things with them for the firing of the towne, which they in the time of the aſſault found means ſo well to beſtow, that in a while the towne was all on a light fire. The Turks at firſt made
B notable reſiſtance, but finding themſelues ouerpreſſed, and ſeeing the town now on a fire about their eares, which with the force of the wind ſo encreaſed, that it caught hold of the lower town on the other ſide of the riuer, they retired to the riuer ſide, where ſome of them by boats got ouer to STRIGONIVM, otherſome periſhed in the riuer, the reſt falling into the hands of the Chriſtians, were by them all put to the ſword. GOKARA thus taken, and the fire quenched, the Chriſtians repairing the breaches, and ſtoring it with all warlike prouiſion, left in it a ſtrong garriſon. Within a night or two after were two hundred of the Turks horſemen deſcried in a field faſt by, which cauſed an alarum to be raiſed in the campe, as if the whole armie of the Turks had bin at hand: howbeit thoſe horſemen retiring, and no other appearing, it was afterwards knowne, that they were only ſcouts ſent out by the Turks to take view of the armie of the Chriſtians in what ſort
C they lay encamped.

Gokara taken by the Chriſtians.

The latter end of this moneth it fortuned that a young countrey fellow, ſecretly ſent out of the citie by the Gouernor, and falling into the hands of *Palfi*, was by him ſent to the Countie, by whom he was in friendly maner demanded, From whence he came, whether he was going, and whereabouts? Whereunto the youth frankly anſwered, That he was ſent from the Gouernour with letters to the Baſſa of BVDA, which hee preſently drew out of his boſome, and deliuered them vnto the countie; who after he had read them, cauſed them to be cloſed vp againe, and ſo deliuered them to the young man, with ſome few crownes, commanding him to carrie them to the Baſſa, as he was about, and in his returne to bring him the Baſſaes anſwere, promiſing for his ſo doing to reward him bountifully: which the young man vndertooke to doe, and ſo departed.
D Now the purport of the gouernors letters was, That if the Baſſa did not within ſix or ſeuen daies ſend him aid and relieue him, hee ſhould for want of victuals and other things neceſſarie for the holding out of the ſiege, be inforced either to abandon the citie, or to yeeld it vp into the enemies hands. Whereunto the Baſſa returned anſwer by the aforeſaid meſſenger, That he would within the appointed time be with him, willing him in the meane while to be mindfull of his wonted valour, and not to be with any thing diſcouraged: appointing him the day, the houre, the way, the meane, with all the other circumſtances how he would relieue him. Which letters the young man according to his promiſe deliuered vnto the Countie: who therupon prouided accordingly for the welcomming of the Baſſa. Within a day after alſo, one of the Turks canoniers conſidering the danger the citie lay in, and fearing that it would be loſt, fled out of it into the campe:
E who beſides that hee aptly declared the ſtate of the citie, and the wants the beſieged were in, did alſo afterwards good ſeruice during the time of the ſiege. The Turkes had in this while many times ſallied out, to their great loſſe: yet now vpon hope of better ſucceſſe they aduentured the nine and twentith of this month to ſally out again, but with like fortune as before, leauing fourſcore of their men behind them, hauing ſlaine but fiue of the Chriſtians.

Now had the Turks in great wants by the ſpace of a moneth right worthily defended STRIGONIVM, expecting ſtill for reliefe. At length newes was brought into the campe, That the Baſſa of BVDA with twentie thouſand men was comming to raiſe the ſiege: who the ſecond of Auguſt came accordingly, and with his armie encamped within foure miles of the Chriſtians: lying ſo nigh, certaine of the Turkes horſemen ſeeking after bootie, came verie neere vnto the
F campe of the Chriſtians, and out of the paſtures, euen vnder their noſes, carried away ſome few horſes: againſt theſe deſperate aduenturers certaine troupes of the Hungarian and Germane horſemen iſſuing out, had with them an hot skirmiſh: but the Turks of purpoſe retiring as men ouercharged, and the Chriſtians ſtill following on, had at length drawen them vnto the place where diuers other troupes of the Turks lay in ambuſh for them, who now ſtarting foorth on euery

A skirmiſh betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians.

euery ſide, hardly charged them. The Hungarian light horſmen well acquainted with ſuch skir- G
miſhes, ſeeing the danger, preſently fled and left the Germanes to themſelues; who for a while valiantly encountred their enemies, but oppreſſed with multitude, were glad at laſt to flie alſo. In this skirmiſh of the Chriſtians were loſt and grieuouſly wounded about an hundred. The Turkes encouraged with this ſo proſperous a beginning, came on the next day with all their armie, being before reſolued by plaine force to open themſelues a way into the citie, and ſo to relieue the beſieged. Of all theſe things was not the Countie ignorant, as therof forewarned by the Baſſaes letters before deliuered vnto him, and had therefore with his armie ſtrongly belayed all the wayes vnto the citie: neuertheleſſe the enemy came ſtill on betweene the hils S. *Thomas* and S. *George*, and neere vnto the ſuburbs called the Raſcian citie, put themſelues in order of battell, as did alſo the Chriſtians, giuing the enemie leaue to come euen to their trenches. In the meane H
time the lord *Palfi* with his Hungarian horſemen, fetching a compaſſe about the hill on the one ſide, and the lord *Swartzenburg* with his horſemen on the other, had ſo incloſed the Turkes be-
A cruell battell betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turks before Strigonium. hind, as that they could not without great danger retire. Both armies orderly ranged, and the ſignall of battell giuen, the Turks hauing before without any great harme done diſcharged ſe-
uenteene field pieces, came on after their wonted manner with a moſt hideous crie, and at the firſt onſet with their Turkie arrowes, as with a thicke ſhower, darkened the skie: when on the other ſide the Germane and Wallon horſemen with their petronels ſent their deadly ſhot as thicke as haile amongſt them againe; and the men at armes after them taught the Turks to their coſt, how vnfit their light and halfe naked horſmen were in a ſet battel to meet with men ſo well appointed: in a trice but not without great ſlaughter the battell was brought to the ſword, and I
to be tried by true valour: There was to be heard a crie heauens high, the thundring artillerie both great and ſmall, the clattering armour, the gliſtring weapons, the neighing of the horſes, the crying of the wounded, the heauie groanings of the dying, with the noyſe of the trumpets, drums, and other warlike inſtruments, made deafe the eares of the hearers, preſenting vnto them
The Turks ouerthrowen. nothing but horror and euen preſent death. It was a moſt miſerable ſight to ſee ſo many men in ſo ſhort time ſlaine: for the battell had ſcarcely endured halfe an houre, when many thouſands of the Turks lay dead vpon the ground, & the reſt ſeeing the victorie encline to the Chriſtians, betooke themſelues to flight, leauing behind them their great ordinance and whatſoeuer elſe they brought for the reliefe of the beſieged: whom ſo flying, the lord *Palfi* and *Swartzenburg* (who had before taken the ſtraits whereby they were to paſſe betweene the mountaines) ſo K
receiued with their freſh horſmen, that of them that came that way, few eſcaped. The Baſſa himſelfe, who ſtood vpon the hill, ſeeing the diſcomfiture of his armie, fled alſo himſelfe: the Baſſa of Natolia with about an hundred of the Turks moe by good fortune got into Strigonivm. The number of the Turks ſlaine in this battell was great, and is of diuers diuerſly reported, ſome ſaying that there were ſlaine fourteene thouſand; and ſome, fewer. Beſides them that were ſlaine, many were alſo taken, and ſome of them men of great name and place. There were alſo taken ſeuen and twenty enſigns, with a multitude of cammels, aſſes, and mules, laded with mony, ſhot, pouder, and other neceſſarie prouiſion: all which, brought thither for the reliefe of the beſieged, became a prey vnto the Chriſtians. In the heat of this battell they of the citie ſallying out, had entred a fort of the Chriſtians vpon the riuer ſide, but were again preſently driuen out, and with L
loſſe enforced againe to retire. After this victorie the Countie ſent certaine companies of the Hungarian and Germane horſemen with fiue hundred waggons to the enemies campe, not far off in the mountaines; who comming thither, found it vtterly forſaken by the enemie, but well ſtored with all manner of neceſſarie prouiſion, which they carried all away, together with ſix hundred tents, many whereof were lined with damaske, ſatin, and other ſilke, richly embrodered or laied with gold lace or twiſt. The Baſſaes rich tent taken by the colonell of the horſmen, was afterwards by him giuen vnto the Countie, as was alſo the plate and money there found, all which he diuided among the ſouldiors according to their deſerts. In the Turks campe were alſo found certeine heads of the Chriſtians, with the dead bodie of the lord *Brandenſteine*, ſlaine in the conflict but the day before; which the Chriſtians caried away with them into the campe, and M
there honourably buried them. Thoſe that remained of the Turks armie, hid themſelues in the mountaines and woods, and ſo holpen by the darkeneſſe of the night, made beſt ſhift for themſelues that they could. The Baſſa himſelfe accompanied but with twentie horſe, came to Byda about midnight, and by his comming filled the citie with great heauineſſe, euery man lamenting his

his loſt friends. The Hungarian Heidons beſt acquainted with the countrie, pricking vp and downe the mountaines and by waies, for certaine daies after the battel, brought in daily into the campe ſuch priſoners as they tooke, or elſe the heads of ſuch Turks as they ſlew. Of this ſo notable a victorie, the Countie by a ſpeedie meſſenger certified the Archduke at VIENNA, who rewarded him for his good news with a chaine worth fiue hundred duckats: and preſently cauſed the ſong of thankeſgiuing to be ſung in the church of the Auguſtine Friers, and afterward in all the churches of the citie. The Countie alſo to gratifie the emperour, ſent him by the lord *Chalon* his nephew vnto PRAGE, two of the chiefe priſoners taken in the late battell, with foure horſemens Guidons cunningly made of horſe haires, ſuch as are commonly carried before the greateſt commanders of the Turkes armies, and fourteene other enſignes of the Turks, with fourteen moſt goodly horſes of the Turks for a preſent.

The next day after this battell, the Countie ſent the lord *Palſi* with an interpretor vnto the citie, to demaund it to be yeelded: who hauing audience, declared vnto the Turkes in what danger they were, that the helpe they looked for was now quite ouerthrowne, new reliefe could not but in long time be ſent vnto them; and that therefore it ſhould be good for them, whileſt yet they might, to be well aduiſed, and betime to bethinke themſelues of yeelding vp the citie, leaſt happily when they would, it then would not be accepted: promiſing to intreat with the General, that they might in ſafetie depart, and with ſure conuoy be brought vnto ſuch place of ſafetie as were conuenient. Whereunto the beſieged Turkes anſwered, That the Chriſtians had now fiue weekes lien at the ſiege, and muſt yet lie three weekes longer: and that whereas of late ſome few of their friends came to haue relieued them, and had failed therein; there was yet an hundred thouſand moe to come after them, who if they ſhould not be able to performe that they came for, yet that they would not for that deliuer or forſake the citie, before they were readie to be drawne out of it by the heeles, and that yet they would then take three daies to reſolue thereupon.

Now had the Chriſtians with long and continual batterie ſore beaten both the vpper and the lower towne, which batterie they now maintained with greater furie than at any time from the beginning of the ſiege; and within the citie their wants increaſed dayly, hauing nothing left to liue vpon but a little wheat and barley, with ſome horſefleſh: vnto whom thus diſtreſſed, the lord *Palſi* by the commandment of the Countie (to trie what confidence they yet had in themſelues) the ninth of Auguſt, ſent two Gentlemen to the citie, to do a meſſage from him to the Gouernor. Who aduertiſed thereof, being a very aged and courteous man, accompanied with the Aga of the Ianizaries, came to the wals to heare what they had to ſay; where one of the ſaid gentlemen in few words deliuered him this ſhort meſſage.

The meſſage ſent by the lord Palſi to the Gouernour of Strigonium.

My moſt gratious Lord the lord Palſi, *moſt worthie Gouernour greeteth thee well, and knowing thee to bee a Captaine both valiant and wiſe, and one that hath alwaies courteouſly vſed ſuch as haue fallen into thy hands, hath compaſſion of thy deſperate obſtinacie: and therefore, whereas thou art to looke or hope for nothing elſe but preſent death and deſtruction, hee as thy neighbour and a louer of thy vertues, aduiſeth and exhorteth thee, if thou wilt ſaue thy ſelfe and thine from moſt vndoubted and imminent death and vtter confuſion, without delay to deliuer vp this citie, which thou canſt not longer hold.*

Vnto whom the old Gouernour thus without ſtay courteouſly anſwered.

The reſolute anſwere of the old Gouernor to the meſſage ſent him by Palſi.

Thy ſpeech my friend, and thy maſters aduiſe are vnto me both vaine. Tell the lord Palſi *in my name, that I cannot pleaſure him with the leaſt ſtone in this citie. One foot I haue alreadie in the graue, and will with honour carrie theſe my graie haires into the ſame: and am yet comforted with a moſt certaine and vndoubted hope, that my moſt dread and mightie ſoueraigne, and my lord* Sinan Baſſa *will not forſake me: yea and that if they ſhould write vnto me, that they could find no meanes or way to relieue me (which I am ſure they can) yet would I well, and at leaſure conſider, whether it were fit for me to deliuer vp this citie or not; ſeeing that of the defence thereof, dependeth all mine honour and credit. Beſides that, what reward they haue on both ſides, that ſo eaſily deliuer ouer the cities they haue in charge, all the world doth ſee.*

With this anſwere he ſent them away. All this while the Aga of the Ianizaries ſtanding by, ſpoke not one word, but ſighing in ſilence and grinding his teeth, declared by his countenance his indignation and inward griefe.

In the mid way betwixt BVDA and STRIGONIVM, in the middeſt of the riuer of Danubius

lieth a little iſland called Vizze, wherein many rich clothiers dwelt: this iſland the Hungarian Heidons ſpoyled, and in returning thence, met with foure and twentie wagons laded with corn, going to Byda, which they tooke, with eight and twentie priſoners which they brought into the campe. The lower towne being with long and continuall batterie made faultable, was by the Chriſtians the thirteenth of Auguſt, in three diuers places at once aſſaulted. The Bauarians were by lot to giue the firſt charge, who in the performing thereof, begininng to faint (for that they were notably repulſed by the Turkes) but ſeconded by them of Reitnavv and Svevia, pluckt downe a great paliſado, filled the ditches, remoued whatſoeuer ſtood in their way, and ſo long fought with the Turks in the breaches, that by the comming in of the Marqueſſe of Brgavvr with ſix enſignes of freſh men, they preuailed vpon the enemie, and ſo altogither brake in the towne. In the middeſt of this dangerous fight was the Marqueſſe himſelfe, who both with his preſence and cheereful ſpeech ſo encouraged his ſouldiors, that they as men fearing no perill, ran headlong into all danger vntill they had entred the towne: There might a man haue heard a moſt miſerable crie, eſpecially of women and children throughout the citie; when as the Chriſtians breaking in on euery ſide ſlew whoſoeuer came in their way, without reſpect of age or ſex, ſparing neither woman great with child, neither the little children hanging at their mothers breaſts. Yet did not all that were entred, ſo much attend the preſent execution, as ſome of them did the ſpoile and prey; and eſpecially the Hungarians, vnto whom all was good bootie, euen the very hinges of the doores and windowes: whereby many eſcaped into the caſtle and vpper towne with the Baſſa and *Alis-Beg* the old Gouernour. The Chriſtians had not many houres poſſeſſed the towne, but that diuers fires began to breake out in diuers places, but by what meanes was not at the firſt knowne. At laſt it was found out, that the Turkes doubting the loſſe of the towne, had before where they thought beſt left gunpouder, which taking fire by matches left burning for that purpoſe, ſhould at a certaine time ſet all on fire: by which means many moſt horrible fires were raiſed in the towne, which conſumed many goodly buildings, and other things which might haue ſtood the Chriſtians in great ſtead, and could hardly be in a day or two quenched.

The lower town taken by the Chriſtians.

Countie Manſfeld died at Komara.

This ſo ioyful a victorie ſaw not he, by whoſe good direction next vnder God it was gained, the worthie Countie: for he a few daies before being fallen ſick of a feauer, taken by drinking too much cold drinke in his heat, with immoderat paines taking in the late battell, and ſo afterwards falling into a great flix with a feauer, was by the counſell of his phyſitians (for the better recouering of his health) remoued to Komara, as a place of more quietneſſe: hauing before his departure ſent for the Archduke to come into the campe, and for *Blankemier* into Bavaria to ſupplie his owne roome. But his diſeaſe ſtill encreaſing, became at laſt deſperat, ſo that the phyſitions themſelues now diſpaired of his health. Yet lying thus drawing towards his end, he almoſt euery houre inquired how the armie did, and whether the citie were yet taken, or what hope there was of the taking thereof. But when it was told him a little before his death, that the lower towne was woon, he thereat greatly reioiced, and the next day being the fourteenth of Auguſt towards night quietly departed this world, to the great loſſe of the Chrihian commonweale, and the exceeding griefe of the whole armie. A man euen from his childhood brought vp in armes, of ſtature great, but of courage greater, and painefull aboue meaſure, not the leaſt cauſe of his vntimely death. All the time of this ſiege he tooke little reſt either by day or night, ſcarce ſo much as to lie downe vpon his bed in two or three nights togither. The little meat he did eat, he moſt part eat it ſtanding or walking, yea and ſometimes on horſeback: he was a moſt ſeuere obſeruer of martiall diſcipline, which cauſed him to be of his ſoldiors both beloued and feared. His bowels were with due ſolemnitie buried at Komara where he died, but his bodie was brought backe againe to Luxenburg, there to be honourably enterred with his anceſtors.

About which time *Theodore* the Great duke of Myscovia, hearing of the wars betwixt the emperor and the Turke, ſent two embaſſadors with letters and preſents to the emperor: which embaſſadours comming to Prage the ſixteenth of Auguſt, accompanied with two hundred and fiftie horſe, were by the emperors appointment, honourably receiued and entertained. And afterward hauing audience, firſt deliuered the letters of credence from the Great duke, reported to haue beene of this purport,

Your

A *Your Maieſtie hath ſent vnto vs your embaſſadour* Nicholas Warkotſie, *requeſting our brotherly aid againſt the hereditarie enemie of all Chriſtianitie, the Turkiſh Sultan. Wherefore wee alſo deſiring to liue with you our deere and welbeloued brother in all perpetuall amitie and friendſhip, ſend vnto you by our faithfull counſellour and ſeruant* Michael Iwanowitze *and* Iohn Sohnie, *aid out of our treaſurie againſt the ſaid enemie: vnto whom we haue alſo giuen other things in charge to be propounded to your maieſtie, requeſting you to giue vnto them in all things full credit. Giuen in the great Court of our power at* Mvsco, *in the yeare of the world* 7103, *and from the natiuitie of Chriſt* 1595, *in the moneth of Aprill.* The copy of the great dukes letters vnto the emperour.

What things in particular theſe embaſſadours were ſent for, was not commonly knowne, but among others it is ſaid, That the Muſcouite requeſted the emperour to ſend an embaſſador
B vnto the Perſian king, to draw him alſo into the league with them againſt the Turke: which embaſſadour ſhould firſt come into Mvscovia, and that way to paſſe into Persia. The preſents which the great duke ſent vnto the emperour were, an hundred and fiftie thouſand Florens of gold, great ſtore of moſt rich furs, and pretious perfumes deemed to bee of exceeding value, two white faulcons, and three leopards aliue. And *Iwanowitze* the embaſſadour himſelfe, preſented vnto the emperour of himſelfe, certaine rich Turkie, Perſian, and Babylonian hangings and carpets, certain timbers of Sables, with other rich furs no leſſe pretious than Sables, ſo many as eight porters could hardly carrie. Theſe embaſſadors tarried at Praoe vntill the ſeuen and twentith day of December, and then taking their leaue, returned with the emperours anſwere to the duke.

C But to returne againe vnto Strigonivm. The Chriſtians now poſſeſſed of the lower towne, bent their whole batterie vpon the higher towne, where it fortuned the foureteenth of Auguſt that the old Gouernour *Alis-Beg*, whileſt he was carefully walking from place to place to ſee where moſt danger was, had his arme ſtrucke off with a great ſhot, of which hurt he preſently died. Hee was a man of great grauitie, about the age of foureſcore yeares, and had of long time notably both gouerned and defended that famous citie, the loſſe whereof was like ynough to haue beene vnto him greater griefe than was the loſſe of his life there. Much about the ſame time alſo died the Aga of the Ianizaries, being before mortally wounded. Both the chiefe commaunders thus ſlaine, the Ianizaries with the other ſouldiours and citizens made choice of the Baſſa of Natolia (who as is aforeſaid eſcaped out of the late battell into the citie) for their
D Gouernour) who with heauie cheere tooke vpon him that forlorne charge. The Chriſtians not ignorant of the death of theſe two worthie men, in whoſe great and approued valour they ſuppoſed the chiefe defence of the citie to haue reſted, were in good hope that now the reſt would the more readily hearken to ſome good compoſition; and therfore ſent a meſſenger to demand if they would yet whileſt there were ſome mercie left, yeeld the citie. Who though they had loſt their chiefe commaunders with the greateſt part of the garriſon, and were in great wants both of victuals and all things elſe neceſſarie for their defence; yet their anſwere was in few words, That they would hold it out euen to the laſt man. The greateſt cauſe of which their obſtinat reſolution, was the ſtrait charge the Baſſa of Buda had giuen them for the defence therof: beſides that, they accounted their citie holy, as woon by their magnificent emperour *Solyman*,
E whom the Turkes generally yet haue in a deuout remembrance; and therefore thought it a great impietie to deliuer it vp vnto the Chriſtians. The next day after came *Matthias* the archduke into the campe; who after he had well viewed the whole armie and the manner of the ſiege, he called togither into his tent the chiefe commaunders, namely the Marqueſſe of Burgavv his couſin, *Iohn de Medices* the Florentine, and the lord *Palfi* the Hungarian, to conſult with them what were farther to be done for the winning of the citie. Shortly after he commanded the citie to be at once in two places aſſaulted, which was by the Wallons and Germanes couragiouſly performed: but ſuch was the valour of the defendants, that when the Chriſtians had done what they could, they were glad at laſt to giue ouer the aſſault, and with loſſe to re-
F tire. About this time came the Duke of Mantva, with the three Counties his brethren to the ſiege: and now the Turkes began againe to draw togither neere vnto Buda, there to make head for the reliefe of Strigonivm, and to be reuenged of the loſſe they had there before receiued. Whereof the Archduke hauing intelligence, ſent out againſt them eight thouſand choſen ſouldiors out of the campe, who ſuddenly ſetting vpon the Turks in their campe, before the riſing of the Sunne made a great ſlaughter amongſt them, and tooke certaine priſo-

Alis-Beg the old Gouernor of Strigonium ſlaine with a great ſhot.

ners, of whom the Sanzacke of COPAN was one: and so with victorie returned to the siege. G

The besieged Turkes in STRIGONIVM vnderstanding of this ouerthrow of their friends, from whom they expected most speedie reliefe, and beside the terrour of the continuall batterie and still feared assaults, pinched also with extreame wants of all things, began now to faint. Wherefore the Bassa with the other captaines, ouercome with the aforesaid difficulties, and the generall outcrie of the fearefull people, resolued with one consent to come now to parley, and vpon reasonable conditions to yeeld vp the citie: wherupon a flag of truce was set vp, and parley craued. Which granted, the Archduke after the going downe of the Sunne came into the lower town, where nine of the Turks attended his comming: who entring into parley, required that they might vnder safe conuoy with bag and baggage depart, & so leaue him the citie: which the Archduke would not by any meanes agree vnto. At length with much entreatie, they ob- H
tained that they might vpon the same conditions depart that the Christians did at RAB; with their scimitars by their sides, and so much of their goods as they could carrie vpon their backes, vnto such ships as were to be appointed for the carriage of them to BVDA. For the performance wherof, hostages were on both sides giuen: and so the next day (being the second of September) they began to come out of the citie, moe in number than either the prisoners taken in the time of the siege had confessed, or the Christians had thought. Thirtie ships were appointed for the conuaying of them downe the riuer to BVDA, which not suffising, many of them tarried in the citie vntill the next day, at which time the Bassa with the sicke and wounded sayled to BVDA, the prisoners and pledges on both sides being before faithfully deliuered. Thus by the goodnesse of God and the good conduct of a few valiant Christians, was STRIGONIVM the Metropoliticall I
citie of HVNGARIE, after it had 52 yeres groaned vnder the miserable yoake of the Turkish seruitude, againe restored vnto the Christian common-weale: which the Christians forthwith repaired and new fortified, as was thought best for the defence thereof against the enemie. All which being done, about the middest of this moneth the Archduke sent eighteene thousand to besiege VICEGRADE, other wise called PLINDENBVRG, a strong castle of the Turkes vpon the riuer betweene STRIGONIVM and BVDA, which castle they tooke. Which when they of BVDA vnderstood, they were strucken with such a feare, that many of the better sort were readie to forsake the citie, insomuch, that the Bassa to stay their flight, was glad to command the gates of the citie to be shut vpon them, and no man suffered to passe out. This good successe of the Christians in these wars, caused great reioycing to be made in most parts of Christendome. K

Strigonium yeelded vnto the Christians.

The castle of Vicegrade taken by the Christians.

All this while the Christians were thus busied at the siege of STRIGONIVM, the Transyluanian prince was not idle, but in diuers places did the Turkes exceeding much harme; so that now his name began to be dreadfull vnto them. It fortuned that the same day that the Countie *Mansfelt* departed at KOMARA, that the prince at ALBA IVLIA with great solemnitie maried *Maria Christina*, the daughter of the late Archduke *Charles* the sonne of the emperor *Ferdinand*, her other sister *Anna* being before married vnto *Sigismund*, now king of POLONIA: for so it was agreed for the more assurance of the league betweene the emperor and him, that he should take his wife out of the house of AASTRIA, which he now did. Of this solemnitie the Turkes (his euill neighbors) hauing intelligence, assembling to the numbe of 30000 or more, thought as vnwelcome guests to haue come vnbidden or vnlooked for, thereunto: but the vigilant prince vnderstan- L
ding of their comming, prouided for their entertainment accordingly, and setting his pleasures for a while apart, and comming vpon them when they least looked for him, in a great battell ouerthrew them, and slew most part of them, carrying away with him as a triumphant victour, the whole spoile of his enemies.

About the same time the Transyluauians also besiged FAGIAT, a towne holden by the Turkes, not farre from TEMESVVAR; where after they had lien twelue daies, they of the towne dispairing to be able long to hold out, came to parley, and couenanting to depart with bag and baggage, began to go out of the towne. But in their departure, vnderstanding that the Bassa of TEMESVVAR with the Sanzackes of LIPPA and IENNE were comming to their reliefe, they that were yet in the towne began to find delaies, and they that were alreadie gone out began to M
returne. Wherewith the Transyluanians much moued, by plaine force entred the towne, and put them all to the sword: and afterward turning vpon the Bassa, who with ten thousand Turks and certaine field pieces was comming to haue relieued the town, had with them a cruel battell; wherein most part of the Turks fell with small losse of the Transyluanians: who so eagarly pursued

A ſued the victorie, that the Baſſa himſelfe had much adoe with fiue hundred others to eſcape. The two Sanzackes, with diuers others of good place, were taken and ſent priſoners to the prince. Not long after, about the latter end of Auguſt the Tranſyluanians alſo beſieged LIPPA, a famous citie of HVNGARIE, ſtanding vpon the riuer Maracz, not far from TEMESVVAR, which the Turks being not able longer to hold, fled into the caſtle: where finding themſelues in no great ſafetie, after three daies ſiege they came to parle, and ſo yeelded, vpon condition that they might in ſafetie depart with ſo much of their goods as they could themſelues carrie. About which time alſo the Baſſa of BOSNA with ten thouſand Turks and Tartars went forth to haue againe recouered BABOTSCA, a frontier town, before taken by the Chriſtians: which the Stirians and the reſt of the Chriſtians dwelling thereabouts, betweene the two riuers of Sauus and Drauus, vnderſtanding,
B conducted by the lords *Herbenſtein*, *Lewcowitz*, and *Eckenberg*, that had the charge of thoſe frontiers, ouertooke the ſaid Turks and Tartars neere vnto BABOTSCA, fought with them, and in the plaine field ouerthrew them.

Lippa taken by the Tranſyluanians.

Mahomet not a little grieued with the good ſucceſſe of the Chriſtians in euery part of HVNGARIE, and aboue meaſure offended with *Ferat Baſſa* his Generall, through whoſe negligence all or at leaſtwiſe moſt part of this had happened (as he was by the enuie of *Sinan Baſſa* perſuaded) ſent for *Ferat* home, and in his place ſent out *Sinan*. Of which the great Sultans diſpleaſure *Ferat* was not ignorant, as forewarned thereof by her that beſt knew, euen the Sultans mother, & adUiſed not to come in ſight vntill his peace were made. Who neuertheleſſe truſting to his owne innocencie (the comfortable, but moſt dangerous and weak ſtay of the great) and doubting not
C to anſwere whatſoeuer *Sinan* ſhould be able to charge him with, came to the Court: where hee was by the commandement of *Mahomet* ſhortly after ſtrangled, and his goods to the value of fiue hundred thouſand duckats confiſcated.

Ferat Baſſa ſent for to Conſtantinople, and there ſtrangled.

Sinan Baſſa ſent in Ferats ſtead.

Among all the dangerous enemies of the Chriſtian common-weale, was none at this time more cruell than was *Sinan*, an Epyrot borne, a fiſhers ſonne, of a rough and vnciuile diſpoſition, now about foureſcore and theer yeares old, euen from his youth brought vp in the warres: and yet (as his motto was) breathing nothing but, *Bloud and Warre*. Hee had many times fortunately led the huge armies of the Turkiſh Emperours, *Solyman*, *Selymus*, and *Amurath*, and is now ſent by the great Sultan *Mahomet*, as the fitteſt man to reduce the late reuolted countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA, to their former thral-
D dome; which he before promiſed vnto *Mahomet*, vpon perill of his head to doe. Hee hauing raiſed a right puiſſant armie, by a bridge made of boats (after a moneths labour ſpent therein) paſſed ouer the great riuer of Danubius into VALACHIA: of whoſe comming the Tranſyluanians, with the Valachians and Moldauians, hauing knowledge, had before ſo ſhut vp the paſſages of the countrie, as that he could not without much danger haue farre entered; and were alſo readie with their vnited forces euen at his firſt enterance to giue him battell. Which hee not refuſing, there began a moſt mortall and cruell fight, with much bloudſhead on both
ſides. Thrice were the Tranſyluanians enforced to retire, but ſtill relieued with new ſupplies, and knowing that they then carried in their armes the welfare of their whole countrie, came on freſh againe, and as hardly charged the Turks, as they had beene by them charged. Thus
E with doubtfull fortune and great ſlaughter was the battell maintained, from the morning vntill night, victorie with doubtfull wings houering now ouer the one ſide, now ouer the other: vntill that at length, the Turkes ouercome by true valour, their battels being quite diſordered and broken, were now glad to ſeeke to ſaue themſelues by flight. In this battell, being fought the eleuenth of September, beſides many thouſands of the common ſouldiors, were ſlaine alſo diuers of great account amongſt the Turkes: and amongſt the reſt *Haidar Baſſa*, a man of them much regarded, was found dead euen in the ſame place where the battell was fought. *Sinan* himſelfe, in making too much haſt to get ouer the bridge, fell into the deepe mud, and in that generall confuſion of his armie, was like ynough there to haue periſhed: but as the common prouerbe goeth, *Seldome lieth the diuell dead in a dike*, the old Veiliarde was
F with much adoe drawne out by them of his guard, and ſo ſaued to further miſchiefe. Neuertheleſſe, the danger was ſo great, that for certaine daies it was commonly reported, that he was there drowned, moſt of his owne people not as yet certainly knowing what was become of him. All the ſpoile of the Turks became a prey vnto the Chriſtians, as did alſo their great ordinance, and many of their enſignes; amongſt which was one greene one, which they accounted religious, as

A mortall battell betwixt Sinan and the Tranſyluanian prince.

The Turks ouerthrowne.

Sinan in flying like to be drowned.

ſacred to their prophet *Mahomet*, whereunto they in time of their greateſt diſtreſſe flie as vnto G
their laſt refuge: there was taken alſo all their tents, with great aboundance of victuals and other warlike prouiſion.

The old Baſſa thus ouerthrowne, full of griefe, and euen mad for deſpight, poſted himſelfe in all haſt to the Court, thinking it better himſelfe to make the beſt of that which was indeed nought, than to haue it made worſe than nought by the enuious report of others: and withall to fill the mind of the great Sultan with deſire of reuenge, which no man ſo much longed after, as himſelfe: wherein he ſo diſcreetly vſed the matter, as that the late loſſe was eaſily paſſed ouer, as receiued by the common chance of warre, or any other occaſion els whatſoeuer rather than by any default of his; and new commiſſion giuen him for the raiſing of another armie for the ſubduing of the late reuolted countries. In the meane time, to ſhew his hatred vnto the Chriſti- H
ans, and to pleaſe the eyes of them of the Court with the noueltie of the ſight, he cauſed an hundred and twelue Chriſtian captiues whom he had in priſon at BELGRADE, to be brought in chaines like beaſts to CONSTANTINOPLE; and ſo being led through the principall ſtreets of the citie, to the vaine contentment of the citizens, to be brought to the Court gate for the Sultan to looke vpon, and the Courtiers to deride: from whence they were after many vnſpeakeable indignities conueyed to moſt miſerable and loathſome priſons, there to be fed with the bread of tribulation.

The Turks ouerthrowne in Croatia.

About this time the Turks vnder the command of the Baſſa of BOSNA, to the number of almoſt twentie thouſand, made a rode into CROATIA, where they were by the Chriſtians vnder the leading of the lord *Eckenberg* and *Leucowitz* ouerthrowne and almoſt all ſlaine: the Chri- I
ſtians following the chaſe euen into the Turks frontiers, burnt fifteen of their villages, and took the caſtle of VARVIVAR: immediatly after, their forces encreaſing by the comming in of the lord *Herbenſteine*, Gouernour of VALERIA and WINDISMARCHE, and certaine other troupes of horſemen out of CARINTHIA and the countries thereabouts, they returned the thirteenth of September to beſiege PETRINIA, otherwiſe called PETROVVINA; which becauſe they were in hope to take by aſſault, they euen at their firſt comming couragiouſly aſſailed. But after two houres hard fight, finding both greater reſiſtance, and more difficultie than they had before ſuppoſed to haue found, and that without great ordinance (which could not in ſhort time bee got ouer the mountaines) there was no good to be done, they were glad to giue ouer the aſſault, and with ſuch loſſe as they had receiued to returne to SISEG, there to conſult further of the matter. K
But the ſame night a fugitiue horſeman fled from the enemie, came to the campe and told the Chriſtians, That *Rnſtan Beg* Gouernour of PETRINIA was in the late aſſault wounded in the breaſt with a ſmall ſhot, and dead: and that the Turkes in the towne diſcouraged with his death and the late ouerthrow of their friends in CROATIA, would vpon the firſt ſight of them abandon the towne, if they would but againe returne to beſiege it. Vpon which good hope the Chriſtians preſently riſe, and ſet forward againe towards PETRINIA: which the Turkes hearing of their comming, had before (as the ſouldior reported) for feare abandoned. So the Chriſtians without reſiſtance entring the towne, found therein ſome pillage, but better ſtore of ſhot and powder: and preſently ſending forth certaine troups of horſmen to purſue the flying Turks, tooke diuers of them, and among the reſt the late Gouernors lieutenant, whom they brought backe againe L
into the towne. Thus was PETRINIA againe recouered from the Turkes, to the great quiet and ſafetie of all that ſide of the countrey.

Petrinia taken by the Chriſtians.

Sigiſmund the Tranſyluanian prince not ignorant with what an enemie he had to doe, either of the malice of old *Sinan*, who he knew would not be long before he returned, or yet of the ſecret practiſe of the Polonians for the withdrawing of the countrey of MOLDAVIA from him, ſought now by all means (as it ſtood him vpon) to make himſelfe ſo ſtrong as he could againſt ſo many ſtormes ariſing. It fortuned that euen at the ſame time the Zaculians (better known by the name of Siculi) in former time a free people, but as then tributarie vnto the Turkes, bordering vpon the Northeaſt part of TRANSYLVANIA, now wearie of the Turkiſh thraldome, and ſeeing the good ſucceſſe of the prince, and the late reuolted countries their neighbors, offered vnto M
the prince their ſeruice; promiſing of their own charge to maintaine fortie thouſand men in the field during his warres with the Turke, and yearely to pay him of euery houſe a dollar, with a certaine meaſure of wheat, oates, and barley, after the manner of their owne countrey: and further, That if God ſhould bleſſe him with a ſonne to ſucceed him in his gouernment, euery houſholder

A ſholder ſhould giue vnto him a good fat oxe. For all which ſeruice they craued no more, but that they might as his ſubiects liue vnder his protection: yet ſo, as to be gouerned by their owne auncient lawes and cuſtomes. Of which their offer the prince accepting, it was forthwith by them proclaimed in their campe, and all the people ſworne to the performance of the aforeſaid agreements. And hauing at that preſent but fiue and twentie thouſand in the field, they without delay ſent out their officers to preſſe out fifteene thouſand moe, for the filling vp of the promiſed number of fortie thouſand, wherewith they came vnto the prince, who taking a view of his armie, found himſelfe to be now foureſcore thouſand men ſtrong, to welcome the Baſſa withall when he ſhould come againe into his countrey.

The prince taketh a view of his armie.

B Now had *Sinan* with great ſpeed raiſed an armie of ſeauentie thouſand choice ſouldiours, amongſt whom were many whole bands of the Ianizaries, the ſtrength of the Turkiſh empire. With which power ioyned vnto the reliques of his other broken forces, he thought himſelfe ſtrong ynough for the ſubduing of the prince: vnto whom came alſo afterward *Haſſan Baſſa*, the ſonne of the great Baſſa *Muhamet*, one of the Turkes moſt renowned men of warre, and *Bogdanus* the late expulſed Vayuod of VALACHIA, with many others of great name. With this armie the old Baſſa by a bridge, which he with exceeding charge had made of boats, paſſed ouer the great riuer of Danubius at a towne called ZORZA or GIORGO (with vs S. *George*) in VALACHIA, a great way beneath that place where ſometime the emperour *Traian* built his famous bridge of ſtone, worthily accounted amongſt the rare and wonderfull buildings of the world.

Sinan Baſſa by a bridge made of boats paſſeth ouer Danubius into Valachia.

C From ZORZA he marched with his armie to TERGOVISTA (ſometime the Vayuod his chiefe citie, but then in the power of the Turks) where is a notable monaſterie, which he conuerted into a caſtle, fortifying it with deep trenches & ſtrong bulwarks, & good ſtore of great ordinance, purpoſing to make that the ſeat of his warre, vntill he had againe reſtored thoſe late reuolted countries vnto the Turkiſh empire, which hee vpon paine of his head had vndertaken to performe. The prince both by meſſengers and letters vnderſtanding of the Baſſaes arriuall there, and hauing his armie in good readineſſe, ſet forward to meet him and to giue him battell. But being come into VALACHIA, and there encamped, it is reported, that a great Eagle deſcending from an high rock therby, called, The Kings rock, and houering ouer the Chriſtian armie, flew about the princes tent, and there lighting, was taken and preſented to the prince, who commanded her to be kept as the preſage of his good fortune; holding on ſtill his way, and the fifteenth

D of October being come within halfe a dayes march of TERGOVISTA, he vnderſtood by two Chriſtians lately eſcaped from the Turks, That two daies before the Turks hearing of his comming, were ſtrucken with ſuch a generall and ſudden feare, that *Sinan* had much adoe either by faire meanes or by foule to ſtay the Ianizaries from flight; and that when he had done what he could, yet that certaine companies of them were quite fled and gone. But the truth was, that *Sinan* ſeeing the generall feare of his armie, and he himſelfe no leſſe fearefull than the reſt, vpon the princes approch fled with all his armie, leauing behind him for haſt his tents, his great ordinance, with much victuals, and other warlike prouiſion, carrying with him onely ſuch things as were of moſt value. As for the citie of TERGOVISTA, with the caſtle which he had made of the

E monaſterie, he committed it to the keeping of *Haſſan Baſſa*; and *Bogdanus* the late Vayuod, now become a renegate Turke, with a garriſon of foure thouſand choſen ſouldiors, promiſing within a few daies, if need ſhould be, to relieue them, but fled himſelfe in all haſt with his armie to BVCARESTA, a daies iourney from TERGOVISTA. From whence he preſently writ back again to *Haſſan Baſſa*, willing him if he could to defend the caſtle: but if he ſhould think it not poſſible to be kept againſt the power of the prince, then betime to forſake it & to ſhift for himſelfe. But theſe letters being intercepted by the Chriſtians, neuer came to the Baſſaes hands. Not long after the departing of *Sinan*, the prince comming to TERGOVISTA, entred the forſaken campe, where he found many tents, with ſome ordinance, and great ſtore of victuals, and without further delay ſummoned both the citie & the caſtle, which for all that were both denied him. But the next day

F after, *Haſſan* conſidering the flight of *Sinan*, the power of the prince, and without all doubting if need ſhould be to be relieued by *Sinan*, whom he not without cauſe ſuſpected not to loue him, was about vpon ſome reaſonable compoſition to haue yielded vp both the citie and the caſtle: whereunto the garriſon ſouldiors (being moſt part of the Ianizaries) would not in any caſe giue their conſent, but ſtood vpon the defence of the place. Wherupon the prince began furiouſly to batter both the citie & the caſtle, and after ſome few houres batterie by aſſault took both, & put

to

Hassan Bassa taken.

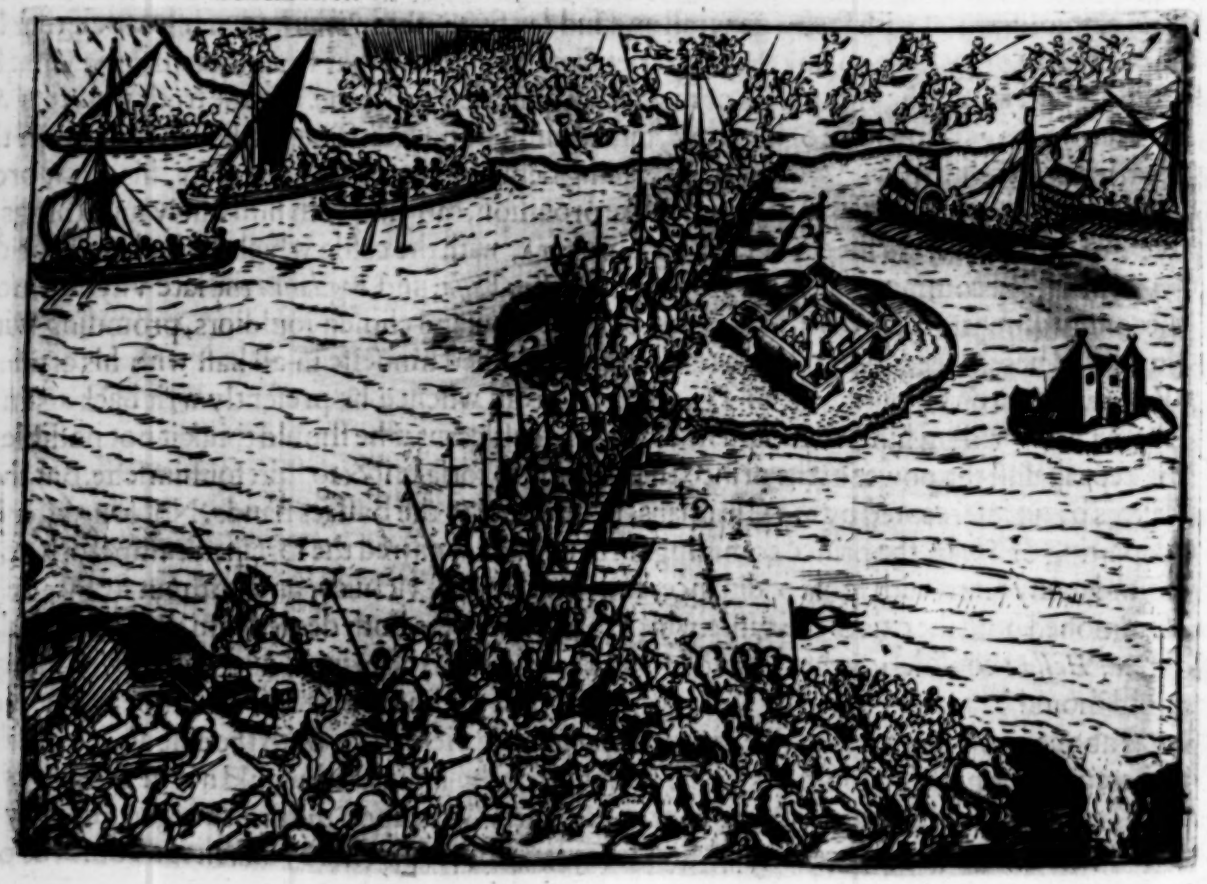
to sword the whole garrison: only *Hassan Bassa*, as taken with his owne hand, he spared, and two other Sanzacks. *Bogdanus* the renegate was there slaine among the rest. The Christians had there a rich prey, besides 42 great pieces of ordinance, and good store of all maner of warlike prouision. *Hassan* thus taken, grieuously complained that *Sinan* had of a malitious purpose exposed him to so manifest danger, for the grudge he bare vnto his dead father the Visier *Muhamet*, vpon whom because he could neuer be reuenged, he now by sinister means had cunningly performed it vpon his sonne; yet he craued of the prince to be well vsed, offering for his ransome 100000 Hungarian duckats. Whilest the prince yet thus lay at TERGOVISTA, came thither 4000 Turks, whom *Sinan* had before his departure thence sent forth to spoile the countrie and to seeke after prey, thinking to haue there found him still: who now falling into the hands of the Christians, were there all slaine, and 60000 head of cattell recouered, which these Turks had taken out of VALACHIA and MOLDAAIA, and should by *Sinans* appointment haue bin sent to CONSTANTINOPLE. For VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA do so abound with corne and cattell, that they plentifully serue the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE not only with corne and flesh, but also yearely send at the least 150 ships, thither by the black sea, laded with other kind of victuals. Of which so great commodities the Turks were now depriued by the reuolt of the aforesaid countries.

The fruitfulnes of Valachia and Moldauia.

The prince leauing a strong garrison in TERGOVISTA, set forward with his armie towards BVCARESTA, hoping there to haue found *Sinan*. But he hearing of the losse of TERGOVISTA, & thinking himselfe in no good safetie at BVCARESTA, fled thence also to ZORZA. The prince comming to BVCARESTA, found it abandoned by the Turks, & so tooke it without resistance, yet had therein certain field pieces, with good store of shot and pouder left there by *Sinan*. Hauing there stayed a while for the manning of the place, he set forwards againe towards ZORZA, and that with such speed, that he ouertooke great numbers of the Turkes, whom he put all to the sword: so that the fields betwixt BVCARESTA and ZORZA, were in many places couered with the dead bodies of the Turkes. Neuertheless, he could not make so great hast, marching still in good order, but that the fearefull Bassa disorderly hasting, was about some six houres or more before come to the bridge he had with great charge made ouer the riuer of Danubius, the forme whereof you may here see.

Bucaresta taken by the prince.

The picture of the Bridge made ouer Danubius by Sinan Bassa, *Anno* 1595.



A Ouer the hithermoſt part of which bridge (being in length about a mile) was *Sinan* with the greateſt part of his armie (before the comming of the prince) got ouer into an iſland in the middeſt of the riuer, wherein hee had at his comming ouer, encamped: but doubting now there to ſtay, with all the ſpeed hee could got him ouer the other part of the bridge alſo vnto the farther ſide of the riuer, with ſo many of his men as in ſo ſhort time poſſibly could. Where to ſtay the farther purſuit of the prince, hee brake the bridge on that ſide, and ſet fire vpon it: and thereby cut off alſo many of his owne men that were not as yet come ouer. Whom the prince enclo- ſing, forced many of them into the riuer, where they periſhed: the reſt flying into the iſland, were by the Chriſtians fiercely purſuing of them, either there ſlaine, or ſeeking by the other part B of the bridge to haue got ouer (whereof the farther end before broken downe by *Sinan*, and the hither end toward the iſland now cut off by the Chriſtians) were together with the bridge carri- ed away by the violence of the riuer, and ſo altogether periſhed. Otherſome of the Chriſtians in the meane time tooke the bridge that leadeth vnto the caſtle of Zorza, which ſtandeth compaſ- ſed about with an arme of Danubius, and being not verie great, was kept by a garriſon of ſeuen hundred ſelect ſouldiors. Vnto which caſtle the prince preſently laid ſiege (the reſolute ſouldi- ors being not by any meanes to be perſuaded to yeeld it vp, but to hold it out euen vnto the laſt man) and after he had ſore battered it, by plaine force tooke it, and put to the ſword all the garri- ſon ſoldiors he could lay hands vpon. About an hundred of theſe Turks ſeeing they muſt needs fall into the power of their enemies, deſperatly leapt from the top of the caſtle into the riuer, where not one of them eſcaped, being all either drowned or ſlaine with ſmall ſhot. In the win- C ning of this caſtle, two hundred and fiftie of the Chriſtians were loſt, and many wounded: but of the Turks & Tartars, betwixt the eighteenth and the laſt of October periſhed aboue ſix and twentie thouſand. In this caſtle were taken thirtie nine great pieces, with ſuch ſtore of armour and other warlike prouiſion, as might haue ſerued for an whole kingdome: and foure thouſand Chriſtians beſide women and children, whom *Sinan* had taken out of Valachia, reſtored to their former libertie. With whom the prince after he had ſet all things in order, returned in great triumph to Tergovista, and ſo afterwards to his pallace at Alba Iulia, where, as alſo at Clavdiopolis and other cities through his dominions, he cauſed publike praiers with thankſ- giuing to almightie God, to bee deuoutly made for ſo great a victorie: as did alſo *Michael* the Vayuod in Valachia, who in all theſe great warres againſt the Turkes, was nothing inferiour D vnto the Tranſyluanian himſelfe. A greater loſſe than this the Turkiſh emperour receiued not at land in many yeares before, being by this ſo happie and victorious a prince, and the reuolt of theſe three countries, depriued of ſo much territory, as they had not from the Chriſtians of long time gained. It was by ſome of them of the better ſort of the Turkes that were taken, reported, that *Sinan Baſſa* ſhould oftentimes ſay, That this yong Tranſyluanian prince had bereft him of all the honour and renowne he had with great trauell got in the courſe of his long life: and that although he had eſcaped his hands, yet that he feared he would be the cauſe for him in theſe his great yeares, euen in the winding vp of all, to looſe his life together with his goods and honour. Now was the Tranſyluanian princes name (after the ouerthrow of this great Baſſa) become dreadfull vnto the Turkes, and alſo famous through all Chriſtendome: Which as it hath filled E the eares of many with admiration, ſo happily may the liuely repreſentation of his feature by cunning hand ſet forth, feed the longing eies of ſome with delight, and ſerue in better ſtead than the rude deſcription of his perſon.

Sinan fleeth ouer Danubius.

The Prince returneth with victory to Alba Iulia.

The opinion Sinan Baſſa had of the Tranſyluanian.

SIGIS-

Miles eras Chriſti, nulli pietate ſecundus
Et ſolus patriæ gloria magna tuæ
Inclita ſi virtus, quæ te ſuper æthera vexit:
Tam ſtabili curſu continuata foret. R. KNOLLEVS.

Of Chriſt thou waſt a ſouldior true, inferiour vnto none:
Thy countries ioy and glorie great, vnto the world well knowne.
If worthie vertue, that thee raiſd aboue the ſtarrie skie,
With ſtedfaſt pace had runne the race ſo well begun by thee.

Ienna yeelded to the Tranſylvanians.

Whileſt this worthie Prince was thus buſied in this expedition againſt *Sinan*, hee cauſed the caſtle of IENNA (ſtanding vpon the high way betweene TEMESVVAR and GIVLA) to be beſieged by certaine of his captaines appointed to that ſeruice: in which caſtle lay one of the Turks Sanzackes with a garriſon of ſeuen hundred Turkes, who much troubled ſuch as paſſed that way. They now brought to ſome extremitie, and terrified with the ſucceſſe of the prince, offered to giue vp the caſtle, ſo that as ſouldiors with their ſcimitars by their ſides they might in ſafetie be brought to PANODA. Which their offer being accepted of, and they now vpon their way, the Hungarian light horſemen that ſhould haue conducted them (enformed that theſe Turks now vnder their charge, had ſecret intelligence with the Turkes in garriſon at GIVLA and TEMESVVAR, that they ſhould lie in ambuſh for them neere PANODA, and ſo cut them off by the way) ſet

A ſet vpon theſe Turks whom they ſhould haue conducted, and cut the throats of foure hundred of them: and yet ſtill holding on their way, met with theſe Turkes that lay in ambuſh for them, whom they after a ſharpe skirmiſh ouerthrew, and hauing ſlaine a great many of them, put the reſt to flight. By the taking of IENNA the wayes thereabout were quieted, eſpecially for them of WARADEN. The Sanzacke of IENNA reported, that *Mahomet* had a little before ſent word vnto his Baſſaes and Sanzackes in HVNGARIE, that ſuch caſtles and townes as they thought were not to bee defended againſt the Chriſtians, they ſhould betimes as occaſion ſerued yeeld them vp, or forſake them, ſo to ſpare the needleſſe loſſe of his good ſouldiors: of whom he had with ſo many townes and ſtrong holds loſt no ſmall number this yeare in HVNGARIE. IENNA
B thus taken, diuers of the richer ſort in TEMESVVAR fearing to bee euen preſently beſieged, ſent their wiues and children with their treaſure and ſuch other things as they made moſt reckoning of, out of the citie in wagons to be conueyed vnto places of more ſafetie: of which wagons, ſeuentie were by the Chriſtians (lying thereabout in garriſon) intercepted, and in them an exceeding rich bootie.

Mahomet hauing this yere fully purpoſed the vtter ruine of the Tranſyluanian prince, and the reducing of the countries of TRANSYLVANIA, MOLDAVIA, and VALACHIA, vnto his obeiſance by the great Baſſa *Sinan:* had for the better effecting therof, before prouided that the Grim Tartar (ready ſtill at his call) ſhould with his own people (wherof he hath great ſtore) and certain bands of the Turkes, at the ſame time inuade MOLDAVIA; and poſſeſſing himſelfe of this coun-
C trey, to place one *Sidriake* Vayuod in ſtead of *Stephen* placed by the prince, and to people the countrey with his Tartars in reward of his good ſeruice (as he ſaid) but indeed to haue them alwayes neere at hand to doe his commands in HVNGARIE, POLONIA, TRANSYLVANIA, or the other countries of the Chriſtians therunto adioyning. The Tartar according to his appoinment came with ſeuentie thouſand Tartars, accompanied with their wiues and children, to haue planted themſelues in the countrey, at the verie ſame time that *Sinan* came to TERGOVISTA: but being come vpon the frontiers of MOLDAVIA, to haue put in execution what he was by *Mahomet* commaunded, hee found there *Zamoſchie* the great Chauncellor of POLONIA, readie with a ſtrong armie to oppoſe himſelfe againſt him, and to ſtay his further paſſage. Wherupon ſome light skirmiſhes paſſed betweene the Tartars and Polonians: where the Tartars were ſtill put to the worſe, with the loſſe of three thouſand of their men. The Tartar *Cham* with *Sidriake*
D the Vayuod appointed by the Turke, finding themſelues, though in number mo, yet in ſtrength inferiour vnto the Polonian, and that without his good leaue he could not paſſe; ſent vnto the Chancellor to excuſe that was alreadie paſt, as done without their conſent by the inſolencie of their ſouldiors, and to tell him, That their comming was not to fight with him, as hauing expreſſe commaundement from the great Sultan *Mahomet*, in no caſe to diſturbe the league betwixt him and the Polonians; but quietly to paſſe by their frontiers into MOLDAVIA, and there to place *Sidriake* Vayuod his tributarie in ſtead of *Stephen* that now vſurped the place, by the appointment of the Tranſyluanian: which that they might doe, they craued his leaue as friends to paſſe. Whereunto the Chancelor anſwered, That he was come thither by the commandement of the king, to defend thoſe countries from the inuaſion of ſuch as had in them no right: and
E that there had of long time been an ancient league betwixt the Polonian kings and the Turkiſh emperours, vpon certaine conditions which he would for his part keepe inuiolat, with the fauor of the Turkiſh emperour; yet ſo, as that the kingdome of POLONIA tooke no harme thereby, and that they might quietly liue by him as their good neighbour: which league he proteſted not to haue been by him, but by them infringed: as for to giue them paſſage, he ſaid he could not. Meſſengers paſſing thus too and fro, and ſome parley had, at laſt certaine articles were agreed vpon, to the reaſonable contentment both of the Tartar and of the Chancellor (though not of *Sidriake*, diſappointed therby of his Vayuodſhip) as alſo of the Turkiſh Sultan, whoſe pleaſure they both ſeemed to haue in ſpeciall regard: Hereupon the Tartar with his multitude preſently returned, leauing the Chancelor to his owne deſignes. Now was it commonly thought, that the
F Chancelor had done the Tranſyluanian prince great ſeruice by keeping out of the Tartars, and much honour was by many that ſaw leaſt ſpoke of him therefore: But farre was it from his thought to do the Tranſyluanian therin any ſuch good, at whoſe glory he enuied, and had with the cardinall and his brother, the princes vncles (but moſt deadly enemies) ſecretly conſpired ſo much as in them was, his vtter ruine and ouerthrow: wiſhing thoſe countries rather in the ſubie-

Mahomet calleth in the Tartars to inuade Moldania.

ction

ction of the Turke, than to see them so honourably at libertie, gouerned by the prince: such is the force of malicious enuie, the inseparable companion of worthy vertue. Which the Chancelour (otherwise a man of great fame and honour) began now openly to poure forth: for presently after the departure of the Tartars, he with all his power passing ouer the riuer Nijester or Tyros into MOLDAVIA, euen at such time as the prince was going against *Sinan* at TERGOVISTA, first seized vpon the castle of Chotijm, which he furnished with his owne souldiours: and from thence marching to ZORONA, the metropoliticall citie of that prouince, & seat of the Vayuod, had it yielded vnto him: and so proceeding on, had in short time almost the whole country deliuered vnto him; *Stephen* the Vayuod placed by the prince, flying from place to place before him from whom he least feared any such thing, hauing made acount of no other enemies but of the Turks and Tartars. *Stephen* the Vayuod thus driuen out, and the Chancellor possessed of the countrey, he presently placed one *Hieremias* Vayuod in stead of *Stephen*, to hold that honour of the Polonian king as his soueraigne. Yet neuertheless, to satisfie the Turke, he sent a messenger to *Sinan Bassa*, then but newly come to TERGOVISTA, requesting him not to take it in euill part that he had entred into MOLDAVIA, and there placed a new Vayuod, but in the name of the great Sultan *Mahomet*, to confirme this his doing, and the Vayuod by him placed; promising the countrey of MOLDAVIA to remaine tributarie still vnto the Sultan, and that this new Vayuod should forthwith pay vnto him what tribute was behind, and from thenceforth a far greater tribute yearely than had the countrey of MOLDAVIA before. Whereunto the hautie Bassa (then fearing nothing lesse than that which immediatly after hapned, to be driuen out of those countries by the prince, proudly answered, That it was not the great Sultans mind, that the Polonians should at all inuade MOLDAVIA: for that beside hee could without their helpe reduce those countries to his obedience, he had giuen that country vnto the Tartar, in reward of his good seruice already done in HVNGARIE and other places; whose subiects the Tartars would ere long be ready with their wiues and children to take possession thereof. Neuertheless the Chancellor proceeded to defend the new Vayuod by him placed: which was no great matter for him to do, *Sinan* the Turks champion (as is before declared) being presently after ouerthrowne, and driuen quite out of those countries by the prince. Who if he had not then gained the victory, the Chancellour had not now holden MOLDAVIA, but the Turke; whose quarrell he seemed rather to fauour, than the princes. The Chancelor to colour this his inuasion, pretended, That the country of MOLDAVIA did of ancient right belong vnto the kingdome of POLONIA: which the Transyluanians tooke to be no other but meere and open wrong. This supposed title, such as it was, the Chancelor had so fashioned out vnto the king and the states of that kingdome, that they referred it to his discretion to inuade the country, and remouing the Vayuod placed by the prince, to place another in his stead: and the rather to persuade them, laboured by many forced reasons to shew the power of the Transyluanian prince to be so far inferiour vnto the Turks, that it was to be feared he should at length be thrust out of all his dominions, & so they together with MOLDAVIA become subiect to the Turke. Which if it should so come to passe, then should the Polonians haue an vntrustie and troublesome neighbour. And that therefore it were better that MOLDAVIA were possessed by them that were better able to defend it than was he, that so the Turke might be kept further of from POLONIA. Which occasion he said was not longer to bee delaied, but now betime to be laid hold vpon: persuading himselfe to find such grace and fauour with the Turkish emperor, as that he should be therwith right well contented: which was like enough for a time to be, for that the Transyluanian should thereby be much weakened. By these and such like reasons, framed to serue his owne turne, the Chancelor so preuailed with the king and the states of the kingdome, that he receiued from them (as I said) full authoritie to proceed in the matter, as he did, and as is before declared, to the great trouble of the prince, and benefit of the Turk: the late chosen Vayuod not long after opening a way in three places for the Tartars into TRANSYLVANIA, one by the countrey of SICVLI, another by the way that leadeth to ALBA IVLIA, and the third by VALACHIA.

The reasons pretended by the Chancelor for the inuasion of Moldauia

The late chosen Vayuod openeth three waies vnto the Turks & Tartars into Transyluania.

The Transyluanian prince seeing the countrey of MOLDAVIA by the practise of the Chancellour thus taken from him, and disseuered from the other vnited prouinces, to the great weakning of his state, after the flight of *Sinan*, sent certaine companies both of horse and foot to *Stephen* the late Vayuod, but now driuen out by the Polonians, to proue if happily he could by that meanes driue out the Polonians againe, and recouer his former dignitie. With this aid sent from

A from the prince and others that fauoured his quarrell, he ioyned a bloudie battell with the Polonians: but being therein by them ouercome and taken, and for a ſpace kept (as the prince feared, to haue beene deliuered vnto the Turke) he was by them (as is reported) cruelly afterwards put to death.

This foule dealing of the Polonian in MOLDAVIA much grieued many good Chriſtians, as tending to the generall hurt of the Chriſtian commonweale. For which cauſe the Emperour by his embaſſadours ſent for that purpoſe vnto the Polonian king, ſought to perſwade him to deſiſt from ſuch inuaſion of the Tranſyluanian prince by his Chancellour, as nothing ſtanding with his honour; and that ſome good reconciliation might be made betweene the prince and the Cardinall *Bator* and his brother, the princes vncles, authors of all theſe troubles. To which pur-
B poſe alſo the Pope ſent a meſſenger with like inſtructions and letters vnto the king, perſwading him, not ſo to proſecute his warres againſt the prince, but to turne his thoughts vnto a more peaceable and Chriſtianlike courſe, eſpecially with him with whom he was ſo neere linked in mariage. To the like effect he writ alſo vnto the Cardinall *Bator*, and after many graue admonitions peremptorily cited him to ROME. But for as much as the proceedings of the Polonian againſt the prince are more plainely to be gathered by the Popes letters vnto the king, it ſhal not I hope be miſtaken, if I here ſet them downe thus as I find them by others reported.

Pope Clement *the eight to our beſt beloued ſonne in Chriſt*, Sigiſmund, *by the grace of God king* The Popes letters vnto the king of Polonia, to diſſuade him from maintaining the prince.
C *of* POLONIA, *with the benediction Apoſtolicall ſendeth greeting. By how much greater affection of fatherly loue wee embrace your Maieſtie in the Lord, ſo much the more feruently wee wiſh all your actions to be adorned with the greateſt commendation of true godlineſſe and wiſedome, both before God and men: Whereof it proceedeth, that wee are ſo much the more vehemently and grieuouſly moued, if wee heare any ſuch thing of you, as may ſeeme not agreeable to your vertue and approued zeale toward the Catholike religion, or tending to the obſcuring of the glorie of your name, as is now brought vnto vs concerning the affaires of* MOLDAVIA; *whereof not without great griefe wee write vnto you. And to rehearſe things a little before paſt: With what earneſtneſſe and feruencie dealt I with you, that for Gods cauſe, and the defence of the health and libertie of the Chriſtian commonweale againſt the tyrannie of the Turkes, you would combine your ſelfe with our moſt dearely beloued ſonne* Rodolph *the Emperour, and diuers other Chriſtian princes? and that you ſhould not let ſlip ſo no-*
D *table an occaſion, ſo worthily to deſerue of God, of the Catholike faith, and of the Chriſtian commonweale in generall? And albeit wee then thought, as well for many your owne priuat reſpects, as alſo of your kingdomes, That you were to be borne withall and excuſed if you did not now openly deſcend into this confederation of the Chriſtian princes againſt the moſt mortall and common enemie, neither openly ioyne your forces or giue aid for the repreſſing of his inſolencie; yet wee alwayes aſſured our ſelues, that no let ſhould in any caſe proceed from you, whereby either the Emperour or the other Chriſtian princes ſhould be the rather hindered, iuſtly to proſecute their iniuries, or to caſt off from their necks the heauie yoke of the moſt cruell tyrant: whoſe deſire of ſouereignetie is not comprized within the compaſſe of any bounds. But that you ſhould in fauour of the Turkes impugne the Catholike princes and de-*
E *fendors of the Chriſtian faith, and ſo ioyne hands with the enemies of the Croſſe of Chriſt, as that by your helpe their force and furie ſhould be encreaſed, and ours not onely weakened, but in the very courſe of victorie hindered, and caſt into moſt grieuous perils; this wee haue not onely not thought of you, but not ſo much as once ſuſpected: yea and can now ſcarce be perſwaded to beleeue thoſe things to bee done by you, which are reported vnto vs as moſt true and vndoubted. For the report goeth, That you hauing intelligence with the Turkes and Tartars, haue with them conſpired, and namely againſt our welbeloued ſonne* Sigiſmund, *prince of* TRANSYLVANIA, *who with inuincible courage fighteth the battels of the Lord: and leaſt he ſhould be able to abate the force and attempts of the moſt proud enemie (which by the ſingular mercie of God he hath hitherto aboue his owne power performed) but rather be enforced much to feare his owne eſtate, a new Vaynod and Prince as it were by a triumuirat authoritie and compact to be placed in* MOLDAVIA, *and him by the Turkes, you and the Tartars*
F *together, to be made gouernour of that countrey. Which vnto vs ſeemed ſo new and ſo ſtrange, and contrarie to the good opinion wee had alwayes conceiued of you, yea and ſo vnbeſeeming your zeale and wiſedome, that for griefe and admiration I had almoſt cried out with the Prophet,* You heauens be amazed at this, and you gates thereof be you exceedingly heauie. *For what could be ſuſpected or imagined farther from the expectation of vs and all good men, or more incredible, than that* Sigiſmund

the most religious king of Polonia *and* Svveden, *who had alwaies professed himselfe a most* G
earnest defendor of the Catholike religion, who was readie euen with his owne bloud to redeeme the victorie of the Christians, and glorie of the Crosse, against the most wicked enemies of the same, to be vpon the sudden become so vnlike vnto himselfe? and (so much as in him was) to cut off the hope and happie successe of that religious warre, and to doe harme to a Christian and Catholike prince, not to refuse to ioyne in league and friendship, euen with the most barbarous nations and the Tartars, the perpetuall enemies of himselfe, and of the kingdome of Polonia. *For which causes our mind is tormented with such bitternesse of griefe, that wee could not but by speedie messengers write vnto you concerning this matter, that hereby you might the sooner see the greatnesse of our griefe: and wee also without delay might signifie vnto you, what our fatherly loue towards you requesteth in so important a*
matter. For happely wee will send one euen of purpose to you concerning this cause, the care whereof H
grieueth vs more than can well be expressed. Wherefore most dearely beloued sonne, wee exhort you, and in the most effectuall manner we can, aduise you, and beseech you in the Lord more attentiuely to consider what great displeasure both of God and man this your action and resolution may incurre, what a staine it may bring vnto your crowne and dignitie. For beleeue vs, that are to you in stead of a father in Christ, who loue you not fainedly, but faithfully, and in deed; who wish for your glorie in this world, and your eternall felicitie in the world to come: Beleeue vs (I say) this doth much blemish your fame with all Christian kings and princes; all men take it in euill part, and detest it as a thing monstrous, that it should by your meanes be wrought, that the Christian affaires should not prosper, that an heroicall prince, who hath vowed himselfe for Christ and his countrey, should not haue prosperous suc-
cesse in this so religious and necessarie a warre against the Infidels, Turkes, and Tartars, no lesse yours, or I
peraduenture also more yours, and other Christian princes enemies, than his. But what doe wee say, you to hinder the proceedings of the Transyluanian prince, this were happely but a small matter: nay verely, by this means not onely a Christian and Catholike prince, and valiant champion of the Christian faith (a vertue both admirable and amiable in the verie enemie) but your owne brother in law, bound vnto you with so many bonds of affinitie, whose children shall be as it were your childrens brethren, is by this meanes brought into great danger, and exposed vnto the furie of the most mercilesse Turkes. What doe you then my most dearely beloued sonne? Beware that all men, both now liuing, and hereafter to come, condemne you not of the greatest inhumanitie: But beware yet more, that you seeme not ingratefull not onely to your owne nigh kinsman, but to God himselfe, who hath bountifully blessed you with two great kingdomes, and so many good things: and that you prouoke not him to wrath against your selfe, K
that reiecteth and confoundeth all euill and wicked deuices: and that this mischiefe that you haue brought vpon your brother, by the iust iudgement of God redound not to the greatest destruction of you and your kingdome, which he in mercie forbid. Doe you thinke, that the Transyluanian being ouercome, you shall in safetie liue from the trecherie of the Turke? Doe you not know him to be a faithlesse man, which measureth all things by his owne profit, which keepeth faith with none, but as standeth with his owne commoditie, who with an vnsatiable desire gapeth after euery kingdome, nay thirsteth after the destruction of all Christendome? Thinke also my sonne what wrong you shall doe vnto the Emperour your cousin, out of whose imperiall bloud you haue begotten sonnes and heires, and by the grace of God shall moe, but also our dignitie, and the dignitie of this Apostolicall seat, which you
haue alwaies so deuoutly honoured, is thereby hurt, and your most deare mother (which wee know you of L
all other least would) the Romane Church is offended, which for the maintenance of this sacred warre is at great and wonderfull charges: and our forces, which by you ought to haue beene relieued and encreased, being in so vnfit a time by these stirres in Moldavia *disseuered and deminished, and the enemies on the contrarie part encreased and strengthened, into what danger and distresse may both our armie of the Church and the Emperours fall? And withall, how greatly all the manner and managing of this whole warre is thereby confounded, there is no man that seeth not. Yea and this moreouer, which no little concerneth the dignitie of vs and this holy See, wee haue vndertaken and certainely promised to our most dearely beloued sonnes* Rodolph *and* Sigismund, *that your royall maiestie should not in any thing hinder or hurt their affaires. neither did wee hereof assure them vpon a light occasi-*
on, but moued with great reason, not onely for that wee deseruedly ought so to promise of you in so iust M
a cause, but also for that it was so vnto vs plainely and expressely written by the reuerend father, the Bishop of S. Seuerus, *our Apostolicall Nuntio with you, whom wee know to be both vnto vs faithfull, and to you dutifull: neither can wee by any meanes doubt thereof, because he hath writ vnto vs concerning so weightie a matter, that he receiued it euen from your owne mouth. Which things so standing,*

seeing

A *seeing you of your selfe see the manifold absurdities of this fact on euerie side, not to speake of the hay-nousnesse thereof: we request you againe, yea and oftentimes, forthwith to apply the necessarie remedies to these hurts. The Transyluanian prince your brother in law, deuoted to your selfe, and desirous of your fauour, either protect with your defence, or at leastwise hurt him not: yea hurt not the whole state of the Christian common-weale, and relieue not by any meanes the quarrell of the enemies of Christ. If you haue any controuersie with the prince* Sigismund, *or desire of him any thing, referre it vnto vs, that is to say, vnto your most louing father: you know your affaires to be of vs fauoured, and we hope by the power of God that it may easly come to passe that some conuenient meanes may be found whereby peace and quietnesse may be confirmed betwixt you, and good vnitie grow betwixt you two brethren our sonnes and so all the root of bitternesse and displeasure to be vtterly pluckt out of your minds. This haue I writ*
B *vnto you my sonne, frankly and from a sincere heart, though truely much grieued, because we loue you, and are much carefull of your honour and good: Shew you agatne in deed that you take it so, as written from your father; and that you altogither preferre our fatherly and wholsome exhortations before the sinister persuasions of others. Farther concerning these matters, you shall vnderstand by the same bishop our Nuntio now with you, to whom you may (as you haue done) giue credit in all things as to our selfe.*

These letters dated from Rome the 8 day of Nouember, were deliuered to the king in December, with others to the Cardinall and Chancelor, whom the Pope sharply reproued as the authors and contriuers of all these mischiefes.

C The Tartar Cham before stirred vp by the Turkish emperour *Mahomet*, for the inuasion of Moldavia (as is alreadie before declared) about this time sent his embassadour also vnto the Polonian king, for the confirmation of such articles as he had before agreed vpon with the Chācelor: which because they manifestly declare the ground and purpose of his intended expedition into Moldavia, with the foule collusion of the Chauncelor with the Turks and Tartars against the Transyluanian prince, I thought it not amisse or from our purpose (for the more manifestation of that which is alreadie said) here to set them downe, as they are translated out of the Tartar language.

The copie of the letters of the Tartar vnto the king of Polonia

D *Cham* Kazikiery *vnto the king of* Polonia, *and* Svveden *our brother, one of the great lords among the Christians, humbly boweth his head. First we signifie vnto you, that* Aaron *Palantine of* Moldavia *was a forsworne traitour; who hauing gathered a power of the Valachians, and ioyning vnto him the Polonian Cossackes, spoiled the territories of the great Sultan. But afterward dissention arising among them, the Hungarian Cossackes liuing in* Valachia, *sent* Aaron *in bonds vnto the king of* Vienna: *after him followed an other traitour called* Rozwan, *who also hauing raised certaine companies of souldiors, began in the like manner to forrage the countries of the Turkish emperor thereabout: which as soone as he had knowledge of, he writ vnto me his brother, That I should with all possible speed go into* Valachia *to chastice these rebels, to burne their houses and townes; and hauing with the edge of the sword slaine their men, to carrie away with me their wiues and children into captiuitie. Hauing this in charge, I the great Cham of the great territorie of the great Lord* Karykterey, *with my brother*
E Letikerry Galga, *and other my brethren and counsellors, warlike and valiant captaines and Murzis; mounting my horse, came with mine army into* Valachia *vnto the riuer Prut where it meeteth with another riuer called Cocoza: here we chanced vpon a faithfull seruitour of yours, our brother the Chancelor, who was also come a little before vs into* Valachia *with whom after some light contention when we began to be more tractable, he declared vnto vs, that he was of purpose come into* Valachia *to place there a new Vayuod, which (as he said) of antient right belonged vnto the Polonians; without any wrong or preiudice therein to be done to the couenants and league they had with the emperour of the Turkes; and farther that his desire was, that one* Hieremias *whom he had appointed Vayuod, might haue the comaund of that prouince; and that the antient amitie, such as was in the time of Sultan* Solyman *and Cham*
F Dawlethgerd, *might be faithfully kept. Which when I had for my part faithfully sworne to doe, and he likewise had caused the same to be done by such of his as he had therefore sent vnto me, we decreed togither, that the Cossackes on the farther side of Nijester (disordered and rebellious men) should be vtterly rooted out, that they should not hereafter doe any harme in the territories of the great Sultan: and that the presents vsually sent vnto vs of long, euen since the time of Sultan* Solyman, *should no more be detained, nor any harmes be hereafter done in any part of our dominions. And therefore when the Chan-*

cellor had promiſed vnto vs, that he would take order that theſe Coſſackes ſhould bee vtterly deſtroyed, I G
alſo conſented, that according to the pleaſure of the royall maieſtie of you my brother, Hieremias *ſhould*
hold the Vayuodſhip of VALACHIA: *which I forthwith by letters ſignified vnto the Turkiſh emperor.*
Now if it be ſo, that your maieſtie ſhall giue your conſent vnto thoſe things which wee haue here agreed
vpon with your Chauncellour, you ſhall then for euer find brotherly friendſhip with me, my brother and
all other our captaines and Murzis: but if you ſhall not deſtroy theſe Coſſackes, you ſhall not then perform
the oath and couenants made. Theſe things we haue commaunded to be declared vnto you by our embaſſa-
dour our brother Gianach Metagra, *whom we requeſt your maieſtie courteouſly to entertaine, and by him*
to ſend the preſents vnto vs: for we will not now this yeare ſend any other. Giuen at the riuer Prut in
the yeare of Mahomet 1004.

H

The Preſent offered by the Tartar embaſſador to the king of Polonia.

After the Tartar embaſſador had deliuered thoſe letters vnto the king, with a ſpeech in effect to the ſame purpoſe, he in the name of the Cham gaue vnto him an horſe and an arrow for a preſent: and afterward being brought to a lodging appointed for him, was commaunded there to expect his anſwere. At length his diſpatch was giuen him in letters ſealed vp, which hee tooke much againſt his will, requeſting the king to ſend an embaſſadour vnto the Cham: and farther by word of mouth, to tell him what to anſwere vnto his lord. But other anſwere could hee get none, than was alreadie deliuered him in writing: and ſo rewarded with a gowne furred with Sables, was diſmiſſed without the preſent requeſted by the Cham, or any embaſſador to accompanie him.

Thus the Tranſyluanian prince, on the one ſide mightily impugned by the Turke, and on I
the other by the ſetting on of the Turke readie to haue beene no leſſe endangered by the inuaſion of the Tartar, receiued greater harme from the Polonians being Chriſtians than from both thoſe great Mahometane princes: The Polonian in ſome ſort performing for the Turke, what hee had plotted to haue beene done by the Tartar: and ſo by the taking away of MOLDAVIA from the prince, not onely weakened his ſtrength, but alſo opened a way for the barbarous enemies into his countrie. Howbeit much it is that the Polonians alleadge for the excuſe of themſelues, and the defence of that which was by the great Chauncellour then done in MOLDAVIA: which for that it cannot be better told than by the great Chauncellour himſelfe, let vs heare how he by his letters anſwereth the matter, euen vnto *Clement* the Pope himſelfe. K

Iohn Zamoſchie vnto *Clement* the Eight the great Biſhop.

Zamoſchie the great Chancelor his letters vnto Clement the Pope.

Moſt holy and bleſſed father in Chriſt, and moſt gratious lord, after the kiſſing of your moſt bleſſed feet, and my moſt humble commendations; I haue by your Holineſſe letters directed both vnto the Kings Maieſtie and my ſelfe, vnderſtood as well his royall Maieſtie and my moſt gratious Lord and maſter, as alſo my ſelfe as his ſeruant to bee both accuſed vnto your Holineſſe: as if by thoſe things by vs done in MOLDAVIA, *the endeauours of the Chriſtians had beene hindered, and the power of the enemie confirmed. Whereof I am not with many words to purge my ſelfe vnto your Holineſſe, for-* L
aſmuch as I aſſure my ſelfe your Holineſſe to haue alreadie fully vnderſtood both what the things were that were done in MOLDAVIA, *and how they were done: partly by the kings maieſties letters, and partly by his principall ſecretarie, for that cauſe eſpecially ſent vnto your Holineſſe. Yet doubt I not to requeſt this one thing of your Holineſſe, that if it hath knowne mee for a man, I will not ſay of any capacitie or wit, but euen of the leaſt experience in the world, or of any religion at all; ſo to perſuade it ſelfe of me, nothing to haue beene done, eſpecially in this matter, either raſhly, or to the hinderance of the Chriſtian common-weale. I will not now repeate what mine opinion was concerning the league and confederation to bee made with the reſt of the Chriſtian princes, for the combining of their forces againſt the common enemie, eſpecially his ſacred Maieſties: as alſo what myne owne labour and ende-* M
uour was in the laſt aſſemblie of the States in the high Court of Parliament. Which thing after it was euen by them whom it moſt concerned, either delayed or neglected, or vtterly caſt aſide: and yet his Maieſtie had ſtill a great deſire to doe the Chriſtian common-weale ſome great good, I alſo to the vttermoſt of my power laboured to that end; that by the common decree of the kingdome, an expedition might be made into TARTARIA, *not ſo much in reuenge of the iniuries done by that enemie in theſe*

late

A late yeares past, as so in the meane time to turne him from the necks of the Christians, as that he should not ioyne his forces with the Turks: or if it so pleased God to blesse those our endeuours, vtterly at length to root out that so great a mischiefe. But how it came to passe that this expedition, so much by the king desired (yet scarcely begun or taken in hand) tooke not effect, it is not needfull for mee to declare, for that I suppose your Holinesse hath by others, especially your Nuntio, vnderstood the same. In the meane time, by others and often messengers newes was brought, That Sinan Bassa with a great armie was alreadie come ouer Danubius; and I by letters from the Vayuod of the further VALACHIA was aduertised, how that hee not able to encounter him, had forsaken that prouince; which at the first impression taken and almost vtterly wasted by Sinan, he was now come fast vpon TRANSYLVANIA: and in MOLDAVIA
B the Tartar was still expected, insomuch that Rolwan (who hauing taken prisoner Aaron the Palatine whom he serued, in his house, and so himselfe inuaded the Palatine) began now also to quake for feare, and to craue helpe of me, or rather to seeke how he might flie away (as not long after he did) neither hauing any great strength about him, or expecting any greater from the people of that countrey: for why that prouince was brought so low by the miseries of the former yeares, but especially by such as had euill gouerned the same, that at such time as I entred into MOLDAVIA, I assure your Holinesse there were not in it of housholders aboue 15000, and those also for the most part poore countrey people of the basest sort, in whom there could neither be any great helpe, neither if they had bin able to haue done any thing, durst Rolwan haue trusted himselfe with them, vpon whom he had with all kind of crueltie tyranised. Chotim a castle in the very confines of this kingdome, was kept with no greater garison than 200 Hun-
C garians, who perceiuing themselues neither of sufficient strength to hold the place, nor to withstand the enemie, they also by and by followed after Rolwan. All the rest of the prouince was not onely vnarmed, but altogether poore vnd naked, without any certain gouernment, without counsell, without strength, and without any defence at all, two castles onely excepted: which standing vpon the confines of POLONIA, might haue serued better for the enemy, out of them to haue infested vs, than for the defence of MOLDAVIA against them: so that had the enemie once set foot into that prouince, neither could it without a great power haue bin recouered, neither being recouered, could easily haue bin defended against so puissant an enemy: and that which worse was, was not it selfe alone to haue bin consumed with that fire, but like ynough to haue caried away with it PODOLIA also, bordering vpon it, with a great part of RVSCIA. Wherefore in this state of things, when as both that prouince was in greatest danger to haue bin lost, and so many enemies houered not more ouer the heads of all Christendome than ouer this kingdome,
D what was of vs to be done? I knaw to whom I speake these things, euen vnto him, not onely whose diuine wisedome but singular loue also towards my natiue countrey is to me most knowne. Verely I entred into MOLDAVIA with no great armie, yet such anone as happily (as in like case it often chanceth) fame had made amongst the enemies a very great one: so that Sinan fearing if he should thrust himselfe with his army into the straits whereby he was to breake into TRANSYLVANIA, to be shut in by our armie, stayed his iourney: and the Tartar the more earnestly he was called vpon by Sinan (by reason of the fame of this our armie) resolued to make himselfe so much the stronger: So that whilest he assembleth the Nogaian Tartars and others further off, and so from all parts raiseth the greatest power he could, the matter was delaied almost vnto the end of Nouember: at which time he with a most huge armie, accompanied with Sendziak Iehiuense, and a great power of the Turkes raised out of their prouinces there-
E by, came directly vpon me in the fields of COROCI. Sendziak the Tartar Cham his sisters sonne, now called himselfe the Basse of MOLDAVIA, as did the Tartars eldest sonne name himselfe prince of another part of that prouince also: for so that countrey was to haue beene deuided betwixt them, that that part which was next vnto the Tartars dominions should be allotted vnto the Tartar, and the other part confining vpon this kingdome, to be gouerned by Sendziak, as Basse thereof, and so to make it the seat of a perpetuall war, from whence PODOLIA, RVSCIA, and the lesser POLONIA might be with continuall incursions wasted euen before our faces; concerning which matter they now dispersed their letters, wherein they published the power and authoritie giuen them from the grand signior, exhorting the people of that countrey to receiue the same. A whole day wee fought with this multitude, our men alwaies by the goodnesse of God hauing not onely the vpper hand, but without any notable losse also;
F yet not without great slaughter of theirs: and would to God I had had such strength, as that not onely the conditions of peace, but euen the enemies themselues might haue beene in my power. But when wee were oftentimes come to parle (they still requiring the same) and so at length vnto conditions of peace; if such were giuen them, as whereby this onely kingdome had without the wrong of any other beene deliuered from so great and sudden a danger, what reasonable man could find fault there-

therewith, if wee ſhould haue preferred the health and welfare of our country (whereunto all good men G
owe all they haue) before other mens profits? But now theſe things were ſo done, as that it was no leſſe
prouided for the good of the neighbour Chriſtians, yea and happily not the leaſt for theirs, who for the
ſame ſlander this kingdome vnto your Holineſſe: the furie of Sinan Baſſa *was by this meanes repreſ-*
ſed, who whileſt he feared to be ſhut vp in the ſtraits by our armie now come into Moldavia, *and*
expected the Tartars comming, ſpent almoſt all the reſt of the Summer idely and without any thing do-
ing. The Tartar himſelfe was not onely turned from the bowels of Chriſtendome, whereinto hee had
purpoſed (as the yeare before) to haue entered, we hauing with our owne breaſts receiued his force and
furie: but being brought vnto conditions, was expreſſely enioyned in a moſt ſhort prefined time, and
without any more harme doing to returne againe into his country by the ſelfeſame way he came, and by
no other: whereby it is come to paſſe, that vntill this day Chriſtendome hath not this yeare yet felt the H
Tartars weapons. But vnto Transylvania *and* Hvngaria, *what a ſpace and power was gi-*
uen for them to gather their ſtrength and forces together, and out of the ſame places to oppoſe them a-
gainſt the enemie, when as our armie kept them ſafe at their backes, and eaſed not onely Molda-
via but Valachia *and* Transylvania *alſo of that care? Whereas if this cauſe of delay had*
not beene obiected vnto the Turkes firſt, and after vnto the Tartars; not to ſay any thing of the Turkes,
the Tartars at the very ſelfeſame time that the Tranſyluanian armie was gone into Valachia *a-*
gainſt Sinan, *might haue broken into* Transylvania *before it could haue returned home, or els*
marching directly towards that armie, might haue met with it out of Transylvania. *As for*
Moldavia, *which together with the memorie of the Chriſtian name, yet left in it, had vtterly pe-*
riſhed, was moſt manifeſtly preſerued by the comming of our armie. Which what end it would haue I
had, if the enemie might at his pleaſure haue raged as he did in the farther Valachia, *thoſe moſt*
bitter remembrances in it yet at this day ſmoking, doe well declare: out of which it is well knowen moe
thouſands of Chriſtian captiues to haue beene carried away into moſt wofull captiuitie, than almoſt out
of any other prouince in all the time of theſe miſerable warres. Which although it bee thus, yet boaſt
wee not thereof, neither ſend wee any triumphant letters vnto your Holineſſe, nor brag wee of our good
ſeruice done for the Chriſtian commonweale, contenting our ſelues with the conſcience of the thing it
ſelfe. In the meane time wee are accuſed vnto your Holineſſe: but for what cauſe? If any man com-
plaine for the taking of Moldavia, *I will not ſay it was by them before willingly forſaken, whileſt*
I was yet in the frontiers thereof; but that this kingdome hath a moſt auncient right vnto it, and ſuch
a right, as that when our kings being buſied in their warres againſt the Muſcouite, the Cruciat Teu- K
tonie *brethren, or others; ſome others alſo troubling the ſtate thereof, it for a time became a prey vn-*
to the Turkiſh tyrants, yet in all the leagues made or renewed betwixt this kingdome and them, was
ſtill excepted, That all ſuch things as the Palatine of Moldavia *was of dutie to performe vnto the*
king, ſhould by him ſtill be performed. Which kings of Polonia, *and namely* Auguſtus *himſelfe,*
the laſt of the Iagellonian *race, appointed diuers of thoſe Palatines themſelues. Which although they*
be things moſt manifeſt, yet hauing more regard vnto the welfare of that prouince, as a Chriſtian
countrey, than of our right, wee reſtored the ſame into the ſame ſtate wherein it hath beene for many
* viz. to become tributarie vnto the Turks. *yeares before theſe * warres. Wherefore if any man thinke any thing done, whereby the enemies of the*
croſſe of Chriſt might be eaſed or ſtrengthened, or the defendors of the faith hindered, it is ſo farre
from any ſuch thing to be done, that rather (as is before declared) the enemies force is repreſſed and L
auerted, and greater meanes giuen to the Chriſtians afront to impugne them, the enemie being at
their backes by vs ſhut from them. But I feare that they haue not fully enformed your Holineſſe how
theſe things were done, who haue reported vnto your ſaid Holineſſe not onely the name of the Turkes
to haue beene proclaimed together with the Polonians in Moldavia, *but alſo the name of the Tar-*
tars the proper enemies of the Polonians, and by the power and decrees of them three, as it were confe-
derat together, things to haue beene ordered in Moldavia. *Which their complaint if it tend to*
that end, as if a confederation were made with them, I frankely confeſſe certaine conditions to haue beene
giuen them, but ſuch as whereby is prouided not onely for the quiet and ſecuritie of this kingdome, but
no leſſe alſo for the whole Chriſtian commonweale, as is before declared. All which things for all that
although they were done for the good of this kingdome, and all Chriſtendome in generall, yet were they M
ſo done, that they were all by mee referred vnto the kings maieſtie and the ſtates of the kingdome: ſo
that at this preſent the kingdome is at free libertie either to ioyne in confederation with the reſt of the
Chriſtian princes, or if that cannot vpon certaine and indifferent conditions be agreed vpon, yet with
no mans iniurie or hurt to ratifie this, ioyned with the health and good of a great part of the Chriſtian
commonweale:

commonweale: onely God graunt that the Chriſtian princes may ſerionſly thinke both of this ſo Chriſtian a confederation againſt the common enemie, and ſtriue alſo all together againſt the enemie with their weapons, and not with miſreports and ſlanders one againſt another. They are not to aſſaile the enemies feet, but his throat: neither is the ſeat of the warre to be placed in the borders of Polonia, *where it concerneth themſelues much to haue all things rather peaceable behind them: but let the warre be vndertaken with no leſſe charge and preparation, than if the enemies royall ſeat were to be aſſailed; which ſtanding in an open and plaine countrey ſhall alwaies without much adoe be his that being ſtrongeſt can take it. This haue I written at large as my purpoſe was, all which I moſt humbly beſeech your Holineſſe with your diuine wiſedome to conſider of, and with your wonted clemencie to accept the ſame: and ſo proſtrate at your Holineſſe feet, I moſt humbly commend me to your clemencie. From Za-*
moſchie *the tenth of Ianuarie* 1596.

Thus much the great Chancelour in defence of himſelfe and of that he had done in Moldavia: which howſoeuer it contented the Pope, well I wot it nothing pleaſed the Emperour, and much leſſe the Tranſyluanian prince, now not a little weakened by the taking away of the countrey of Moldavia from him.

To end this troubleſome yeare withall, many ſharp and bloudie skirmiſhes yet daily paſſed in diuers places of thoſe frontier countries, the Turkes almoſt in euery place ſtill going to the worſe. In the beginning of Nouember, *Lenconits* Gouernour of Carolstat, the ſecond time ſurprized Wihitz in the frontiers of Croatia, where theſe wars firſt begun: but being not able to take the caſtle, contented himſelfe as before with the ſpoile of the citie, and afterward ſetting it on fire, departed. *Maximilian* alſo attempted Zolnoc: and the Chriſtians in garriſon at Strigonivm and Plindenbvrg now become neere neighbours vnto the Turkes at Byda, did with continuall inrodes not a little moleſt them both all the latter end of this yeare and the beginning of the next. And the Turkes in Braila in Valachia, vpon the ſide of Danubius, fearing after the flight of *Sinan* to be beſieged by the Vayuod, forſooke the citie, and in ſuch haſt paſſed the riuer, that in that tumultuous paſſage three hundred of them periſhed. *Sinan Baſſa*, by the Tranſyluanian prince of late driuen out of Valachia, was not long after ſent for to Constantinople, but the craftie old fox not ignorant of the fierce nature of the great Sultan, and warned by the late miſerie of *Ferat*, found occaſions to delay the time ſo long, vntill that he was ſent for againe, and after that, the third time alſo. In the meane while he had ſo wrought by his mightie friends in Court, and by rich rewards, mightier than they, that at his comming to the Court he was there honourably receiued, as the chiefeſt of the Baſſaes: and being afterwards offered to be diſcharged of the warres, as a man of aboue foureſcore yeares old, he refuſed ſo to be, ſaying, That he was borne & brought vp amongſt ſouldiors & martiall men, and ſo wiſhed amongſt them to die: as not long after he did; dying as was thought of conceit of the euill ſucceſſe he had in his warres againſt the Tranſyluanian.

Sinan Baſſa ſent for to Conſtantinople.

His death.

Mahomet the Turkiſh Emperour exceedingly grieued with the loſſe of ſo many his cities and ſtrong places this yeare loſt, as namely Strigonivm, Vicegrade, Sisec, Petrinia, Lippa, Ienna, Tergovista, Bvcaresta, Zorza, and many others of leſſe name: and both by letters and meſſengers vnderſtanding daily of the ſlaughter of his people, and waſting of his frontiers, commaunded great preparation to be made againſt the next Spring, giuing it out, That he would then in perſon himſelf come down into Hvngarie with ſuch a power as neuer had any his predeceſſours the *Othoman* kings and emperours, and there take moſt ſharp reuenge of all his former wrongs. Neuertheleſſe, theſe his ſo haſtie deſignes were by the plague & famine, (which then both raged extreamely in moſt part of his empire) and by other great occurrents of the ſame time ſo croſſed, that by that time the Spring came, he ſcarcely wel knew which way to turne himſelf firſt. For beſide theſe troubles of the Weſt, of themſelues ynough to haue filled his hands, the Georgians in the Eaſt, a warlike people, moued with the good ſucceſſe of the Chriſtians in Valachia and Hvngarie, had taken vp arms againſt him: and the old Perſian king but a little before dead, had left that great kingdome to his ſonne, a man of greater ſpirit than was like to endure the manifold iniuries before done vnto his father by the Turks, to the great diſhonor of that kingdome, & preiudice of himſelf. Of which things the Baſſa of Tavris gaue him ample intelligence, wiſhing him betimes to prouide for ſuch ſtormes: which ioyned to the reſt, filled his head with many troubled thoughts, whereunto we leaue him vntill the next Spring.

Mahomet perplexed.

The

1596 The Tranſyluanian prince carefull of his eſtate, and not a little troubled with the diſſeuering G
of MOLDAVIA: thought it not vnfit for his affaires, now after the flight of *Sinan* and diſcomfi-
ture of the Turks, to go in perſon himſelfe vnto the Emperour, to declare vnto him the wrong
done him by the Polonian; and farther to conferre with him, concerning the mannaging of the
warres againſt the common enemie. So hauing put all things in readineſſe for his iourney, he
ſet forward in Ianuarie 1596, and by the way of CASSOVIA the fourth of Februarie, arriued at
PRAGE in BOHEMIA, where he was by the emperours appointment moſt honourably enter-
tained. But immediatly after his comming thither he fell ſick of an ague, which grieuouſly vex-
ed him for the ſpace of three weekes. In the latter end of Februarie hauing ſomewhat recouered
his health, he went to the church: where after his deuotions done, he was by the Deane of the
Cathedrall church welcomed with a moſt eloquent oration, ſetting forth his worthie praiſes, H
and farther animating him vnto the like exploits againſt the common enemie of all Chriſtiani-
tie: Whereunto he forthwith anſwered in Latin, ſo eloquently and ſo readily, that all men
maruelled that heard him: proteſting in his ſpeech, That as he and his ſubiects had not hitherto
ſpared their liues or goods in defence of the common cauſe: ſo would they not afterwards ſpare
the ſame, but aduenture all for the benefit of the Chriſtian common-weale; well hoping that the
emperour and the other Chriſtian princes would not as occaſion ſhould require, be wanting vn-
to him with their forces, or the cleargie with their prayers: which done, he doubted not (as he
ſaid) by the power of God, but to obtaine more notable victories than he had yet againſt the
Turks the enemies of God.

The Siculi rebell againſt the prince.

Whileſt he yet thus lay at the emperours Court, it fortuned that the people called Siculi, of- I
fended to haue their liberties in ſome part infringed in the late aſſembly of the States holden in
TRANSYLVANIA in December laſt: riſe now vp in armes in diuers places, refuſing to yeeld
their former obedience vnto the prince. A matter like enough to haue wrought him much trou-
ble, and ſuppoſed not to haue been done without the priuitie of the Cardinall his vncle: but by
the wiſedome and courage of ſuch as he had in his abſence put in truſt with the gouernment of
his countrey, diuers of the ringleaders of this rebellion were apprehended, and in diuers ſorts
executed: and three hundred of their complices to the terrour of their fellowes, had their noſes
and eares cut off. By which wholſome ſeueritie, all thoſe troubles were appeaſed, and the coun-
trey againe quieted.

At the ſame time alſo the Tranſyluanians obtained of the Turks a notable victory, with an K
exceeding rich bootie. *Mahomet* the Turkiſh Sultan had about this time ſent a new Baſſa for the
gouernment of TEMESVVAR: againſt whoſe comming the old Baſſa before Gouernour, had in
ſeuentie fiue wagons truſſed vp a wonderfull deale of wealth, which he had there gotten in the
time of his former gouernment, to haue been togither with himſelfe with a ſtrong conuoy con-

The Baſſa of Temeſwar ſlaine, and a great bootie taken.

ducted to BELGRADE. Of this his purpoſe, the Hungarian Heidons lying at LIPPA and IEN-
NA hauing intelligence, lay in wait for him vpon the way, and in his paſſing by ſet vpon him:
where in a ſharp conflict they ouerthrew the conuoy, and ſlew the Baſſa, whoſe head they ſent
for a preſent to the princeſſe at ALBA IVLIA: and tooke the ſpoyle of the Baſſaes carriages,
wherein was taken a wonderfull wealth, for in one of thoſe wagons is reported to haue beene
found twentie thouſand of Hungarian duckats. L

In this abſence alſo of the prince, ten thouſand of the Raſcians reuolting from the Turke,
came and offered their ſeruice vnto the princeſſe, wherof ſhe by letters with great ſpeed certified
the prince her huſband; who thereupon haſted to diſpatch with the emperour: and hauing pro-
cured both from him and the Pope the promiſe of ſome aid to be afterward ſent him, tooke of
him his leaue, and being honourably accompanied, departed from PRAGE to VIENNA: where
he ariued the eleuenth of March, ſitting in a princely chariot, drawn with ſix moſt beatifull hor-
ſes, the gift of the emperour. At his comming thither he was met by the nobilitie of the coun-
trey, and by *Aldobrandinus* the Popes nephew, who preſented him with three goodly horſes for
ſeruice, moſt richly furniſhed. Him the prince tooke into his chariot, and ſo accompanied ente-
red the citie, where he was with all due honour receiued & ioyfully entertained, and ſo brought M
vnto the emperours pallace, where by the learned ſtudents of that Vniuerſitie, was for his plea-
ſure acted before him the notable hiſtorie of *Ioſua*. Hauing ſtaied there three dayes, and purpo-
ſing to haue in his returne viſited his mother in law at GREICZ in CROATIA: newes was
brought him, that the Turks & Tartars by the ſetting on of *Stephen Bator* his vncle, were about

to

A to breake into TRANSYLVANIA. Wherefore changing his purpose, he departed thence to PRESBVRG, and so with all speed kept on his way towards TRANSYLVANIA: where he to the great ioy and comfort of his subiects in generall arriued in safetie in the beginning of Aprill.

In this while many hoat skirmishes passed betwixt the Christians and the Turks in the frontiers of their territories: and now the plague and famine, which had of long raged in CONSTANTINOPLE, and other places of the Turks dominions, began to asswage. Of which so great calamities as had deuoured many thousands of his people, the Turkish emperour finding himselfe somewhat eased, forthwith caused the continuation of his warres against the emperour and the Transyluanian prince, to be three daies together proclaimed in CONSTANTINOPLE, and a great armie to be raised to be sent into TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE: giuing it out, that he would
B with that so puissant an army in person himselfe come into HVNGARIE. At which time it was also reported, that hee had already sent his tents and other his necessarie prouision before to HADRIANOPLE: for now was nothing more odious in the Turkes court, than the name of the Transyluanian prince.

Warres proclaimed in Constantinople against the emperor & the Transyluanian prince.

Of all these things was not the emperour ignorant, as fully thereof certified both by letters and espials, as also by the vniforme confession of such Turks as were daily taken prisoners. For which cause, he also with as much speed and care as he could, prouided for the raising of his armie, as he had the yeare before; as also for the leuying of mony, and prouision of all things necessary, that the enemie at his comming might not find him vnprouided. Neither spared he to pray aid of the other Christian princes his neighbors, especially of the Polonian, whom he had diuers
C times sought after to haue drawn him into the confederation with the other Christian princes against the Turke. To which purpose hee now also sent vnto him the bishop of PRESLAVV and the lord *Poppelius* his embassadours: as did the Pope also send vnto him the Cardinall *Caietane* his legat, and the princes electors also their embassadors: vnto whom the Polonian gaue good hearing and good words, but would not by any meanes be persuaded to breake his league with the Turk, or to affoord any aid vnto the Christians; although the Cardinall with many pregnant reasons shewed him what small assurance there was in the Turkes leagues, and how dangerous it might be to his state if the Turke making peace with the emperour, should turne his force vpon him, which it was like enough hee would, as knowing no man longer for friend than stood with his profit; beside the immortall blemish of his honour by disseuering himselfe from the vnion of
D the Christian princes, to hold friendship with the Turks & infidels. But all this and much more to no purpose, so resolutely was the Polonian set downe for the keeping of the Turks fauour; so that of all the Christian princes so neere vnto the deuouring enemie, none stood the Christian common-weale in lesse stead than he. Which for all that, most men imputed not so much vnto the king as to others about him, especially to *Zamoschie* the great Chancelor, by whom that state was most swaied, who was not onely supposed but openly reported to haue secret intelligence both with the Turke and the Tartar.

All this while the lord *Palfi* Gouernour of STRIGONIVM, ceased not with continuall inroads to vex the Turks euen to the gates of BVDA, as did also the other Christian captaines in other places of the Turkes frontiers in HVNGARIE. Neere vnto BVDA were two great countrey villa-
E ges, for most part inhabited by Christians, who hauing giuen their oath of obedience vnto the Turke, liued a miserable life for the paiment of an excessiue tribute yearely. These poore Christians, weary of the Turkish thraldome and the continuall spoile of their labors by them of STRIGONIVM, by secret messengers requested of the lord *Palfi*, of mercie to carrie them with their goods and cattell away into some other place of the Christian territorie, that so they might yet liue amongst Christians, as he had but a little before done for them of old BVDA. Vnto which their so reasonable a request, the Christian Gouernor charitably hearkened; willing them against a certaine appointed time, to put themselues with all their things in readinesse. There was of these Christians about 755 families, who with their wiues and children, and such trash as they had, packt vp into eightie wagons drawne with fourteene and sixteene oxen apiece, at the ap-
F pointed time about midnight committed themselues with all that they had vnto the conduct of them of STRGONIVM, sent out of purpose for them; by whom they were in safetie brought to STRIGONIVM. Amongst them were many rich men, who brought with them good store of coyne, with an exceeding great number of cattell. Vnto these newcome guests, *Palfi* assigned certaine fields betwixt STRIGONIVM and VIVARIA, on the North side of Danubius: where they

they ſo commodiouſly liued, as was poſsible in ſo troubled an eſtate of a countrey. G

Six hundred of the garriſon ſoldiors of Lippa ſlaine by the Turkes.

Shortly after, ſix hundred garriſon ſouldiors of LIPPA ſeeking after bootie, and aduenturing too farre into the enemies territorie, were diſcouered by the Turks ſcouts: and ſo beſet by the Turkes and Tartars billeted in the countrie about TEMESVVAR, that there was no way left for them to eſcape. Which they well perceiuing, reſolued among themſelues (as became valiant men) to fight it out euen vnto the laſt man; and with no leſſe reſolution performed what they had before determined: for being on euerie ſide beſet and hardly charged by their enemies, they as men before reſolued to die, although ſcarce one to twenty, fought moſt deſperatly, ſeeking for nothing elſe but to ſell their liues as deare as they could vnto their enemies: and ſo fighting were all ſlaine, except ſome few which by great fortune eſcaped, leauing vnto the enemy a right bloudie victorie. Yet by this loſſe of ſo great a partie, was the garriſon of LIPPA greatly weakened, H which the enemie knew right well, and therevpon began forthwith to prepare to beſiege the towne. Which *Barbelus* the Gouernour (a moſt valiant man) wiſely foreſeeing, ſent in poſt vnto the Tranſyluanian prince, to requeſt him with all ſpeed to ſend him foure or fiue thouſand good ſouldiors, with which power he doubted not by the helpe of God, to be able to defend the towne againſt all the forces the enemie was at that time able to bring againſt it. vnto whom

Lippa beſieged by the Turkes and Tartars

the prince with out delay ſent eight thouſand, who all in ſafetie in good time arriued at LIPPA: for ſhortly after their arriuall fortie thouſand of the Turkes and Tartars came & ſat down before the towne, encloſing it on euerie ſide, and ſo lay for certaine daies without any thing doing worth the ſpeaking of; they of the towne in the meane time doing them all the harme they could with their great ſhot, which they ſent amongſt them not ſparingly. But they had not thus I long lien, but that newes was brought into the campe; that the Tranſyluanian prince was with a great power comming thither to relieue the towne: whereupon they preſently riſe, and retired to the place where they had before encamped, about two miles from LIPPA; where certainly vnderſtanding that the prince neither was neither could in ſhort time be in ſuch readines as was before reported, they forthwith returned, and more ſtraitly beſieged the towne than before. They had now brought with them ſeuenteene pieces of batterie, eight wagons laded with ſhot and pouder, and fortie ſix others laded with ſcaling ladders and other warlike prouiſion: thus appointed they began to batter the towne, & afterwards gaue therunto diuers deſperat aſſaults; which the Chriſtians valiantly receiued, and ſtill with great ſlaughter repulſed their enemies. For that ſtrong towne was with towers and bulwarkes flanking one another ſo fortified, that out of K them the Chriſtians with their murthering pieces made great ſpoile of their enemies, and ſtil enforced them with loſſe to retire, no bullet almoſt flying in vaine. In the heat of one of theſe aſſaults, the Gouernour cauſed one of the gats of the towue to be ſet open, hauing before within in the towne placed ſixteene great pieces, at the verie entrance of the ſame gate, charged with all kind of murthering ſhot: vnto which gate, as of meere deſperation ſet open by the defendants, the Turkes and Tartars deſiorus of reuenge, came thronging as thicke as might be, thinking to haue thereby entred: when ſuddenly, and as it were in the turning of an hand, they were with the aforeſaid murthering pieces cut downe as with a ſithe, and ſo againe, and the third and fourth time, before they could cleare themſelues of the danger thereof, their heads, armes, & legges and other rent limbes, flying in the ayre moſt miſerably to behold. Neuertheleſſe the ſiege was by L them continued, & the often aſſaults ſo reſolutly maintained, as if they had therupon purpoſed to haue gaged all their liues. But this ſo obſtinat a reſolution, was by an vnexpected accident when they leaſt thought, conuerted into ſuch a deſperat feare and aſtoniſhment, that they vpon the ſudden (no man forcing them) forſooke their trenches wherein they lay encamped, and leauing behind them their tents, their greate ordinance, and whatſoeuer elſe they had, they betooke themſelues to a moſt diſordered flight. The Tranſyluanians, who by chance were euen then comming thither, purſuing them, ſlew diuers of them, and tooke ſome others of them priſoners. At this ſiege the Baſſa of TEMESVVAR himſelfe was mortally wounded, and *Hamat* Sanzacke of GIVLA with diuers others of good place ſlaine, & foure thouſand of the common ſouldiors. M The cauſe of the Turkes ſo great and ſudden feare was this, Whileſt the Baſſa of TEMESVVAR lay at the ſiege of LIPPA, as is aforeſaid, they that were left in the citie fearing no harme, liued in great ſecuritie; in the meane time the Gouernour of LVGAZ ſent out ſix thouſand ſouldiors towards TEMESVVAR, now in the abſence of the Baſſa to ſeeke after bootie; who comming to TEMESVVAR, with great ſpeed rifled the ſuburbs of the citie, ſlew all the Turks they could light

vpon

A vpon, and ſet at libertie a thouſand captiues: and ſo hauing truſſed vp their bootie, ſet on fire all the ſuburbs, and departed. Which fire grew ſo great and ſo terrible, that it was plainly ſeene into the campe at LIPPA, making a ſhew as if the whole citie had beene on a light fire. Which ſo daunted the hearts of the Turkes at the ſiege, that they preſently fled (as is before ſaid) leauing all that they had behind them.

Plenia a towne of the Turkes ſacked by the Chriſtians.

The Tranſyluanian all this while buſied in raiſing of his armie, and prouiding of things neceſſarie for the maintenance of his warres, was come into the confines of HVNGARIE, towards TEMESVVAR, euen as the Turkes fled from LIPPA. At which time certaine Hungarian Heidons that ſerued him, getting ouer Danubius, not farre from NICOPOLIS tooke PLENIA, a little towne of the Turkes, which they ranſacked and burnt, and hauing ſlaine in the countrey
B thereabout aboue three thouſand of the Turks, returned with a rich prey vnto the prince.

Cliſſa lately ſurprized by the Chriſtians, loſt againe to the Turkes.

Not long before the Chriſtians had ſurprized CLISSA, a ſtrong frontier towne of the Turks in DALMATIA, not far from SPALATO: which towne the Baſſa of BOSNA ſought now againe to recouer, and thereto layed hard ſiege: for the reliefe wherof, *Leucowitz* gouernour of STIRIA and the other prouinces thereabouts belonging to the houſe of AVSTRIA, and the gouernour of ZENG, with a fleet of two and fortie ſhips, wherein they had embarked foure thouſand ſouldiors well appointed, with all things neceſſarie ſet forward toward CLISSA: and by the way lighting vpõ a gallie of the Venetians, bound with certain warlike prouiſion towards the Turks campe, tooke her as good prize, and rifled her. This fleet with a faire wind arriued at SIRET, neere vnto TRAV, where the gouernour landing his men, marched that night part of his way to-
C ward CLISSA, and all the next day lay cloſe. The night following they ſet forward againe, and hauing marched fifteene miles, came vnto the enemies campe before day: where ſetting vpon the Turkes in their trenches, fearing no ſuch perill, they brought ſuch a generall feare vpon the whole camp, that the Turks as men amazed fled ſome one way, ſome another, euery man (as in ſuch ſudden feare it commonly happeneth) making ſhift for himſelfe, leauing whatſoeuer they had in their trenches behind them. The Chriſtians contented ſo to haue put their enemies to flight, fel preſently to the ſpoile, as more deſirous therof, than by the haſtie purſute of their enemies to put thẽſelues in poſſeſſion of an aſſured victory. Which the Turks quickly perceiuing, and from the hills with the dawning of the day diſcouering the ſmall number of the Chriſtians, and how they were diſordered, they gathered themſelues again together, and comming downe,
D encloſed on euery ſide the diſordered Chriſtians (greedily hunting after the ſpoyle) and ſlew them downeright. *Leucowitz* himſelfe with the gouernor of ZENG and ſome others got into CLISSA: where hauing ſtaied two daies, and doubting to be able to keep the towne, they ſecretly by night iſſued out with 600 men, in hope to haue recouered their fleet: but the Turks ſuſpecting ſuch a matter, had ſo beſet the paſſages, that of all that companie *Leucowitz* had much adoe himſelfe with three others to eſcape. The enemie now againe poſſeſſed of his trenches, laid ſtraighter ſiege to the towne than before: which they of the garriſon perceiuing, and now out of hope of reliefe, agreed with the Baſſa, that they might with bag and baggage depart; and ſo yeelded vp the towne. Thus CLISSA, one of the ſtrongeſt townes of DALMATIA, through the greedie couetouſneſſe of the diſordered ſouldiors, fell againe into the hands of the Turks.

Sombock taken by the lord Palfi.

E About the ſame time, *Palfi* gouernour of STRIGONIVM vnderſtanding of the meeting together of certaine notable aduenturers of the Turks at SOMBOCK, a caſtle almoſt in the mid way betwixt ALBA REGALIS and BVDA, raiſed the greateſt ſtrength he could, and ſo with certain pieces of artillerie, and other things neceſſarie for an aſſault, ſet forward from STRIGONIVM the two and twentith of May before the riſing of the Sunne, and about three a clocke in the afternoone came to the aforeſaid caſtle, whereunto he preſently gaue a moſt terrible aſſault; which he neuer gaue ouer vntill he had taken it: For after that he had by the ſpace of three houres together with great danger maintained a moſt deſperat aſſault, at length he with much difficultie preuailed, and put to the ſword all the Turkes he found therein, man, woman, and child; and with the reſt, fiftie Ianizaries but that day come thither. This caſtle was of great beautie, and
F moſt pleaſantly ſituated, whereunto the Baſſa of BVDA oftentimes for his pleaſure repaired: for which cauſe *Palfi* was very deſirous to haue taken it without ſpoyling: but the fire he had therein alreadie raiſed, ſo preuailed, that it burnt downe all the goodly buildings thereof, with great ſtore of victuals and other prouiſion, nothing remaining, but what the Chriſtians had ſaued for themſelues.

The

Temeſwar beſieged by the Tranſyluanian prince.

The Tranſyluanian prince hauing raiſed a great armie for the relieſe of LIPPA, being by great chance a little before his comming relieued, came and layed ſiege to the citie of TEMESVVAR: where he had not long lien, but that the Turks and Tartars fearing to looſe that ſo famous a citie, aſſembled together from all places thereabouts, to the number of fortie thouſand, and ſo came to raiſe the ſiege. Of whoſe comming the prince hearing, riſe with his armie, and went to meet them, and had with them a great and terrible battell, the victorie for a great while ſtanding very doubtfull, yet ſeeming to encline rather to the Turks and Tartars, than to the Chriſtians: but at length the Turks diſordered with the great artillerie, and the Tranſyluanians charging them afreſh, began to giue ground, and ſo at laſt to betake themſelues to plain flight. In this battell were ſlaine of the Turks and Tartars fiue thouſand, and of the Chriſtians fifteene hundred. It was for a time reported, that the prince himſelfe was in this battell ſlaine, which was not ſo, being reſerued to the further plague of the Turks, and comfort of his afflicted countrey. After this victorie he returned again to the ſiege, which he more ſtraightly continued than before, leauing nothing vnattempted that he could poſſibly deuiſe for the winning of the citie. Where whileſt he yet thus lay battering the citie both night and day, newes was brought him, That *Giaffar Baſſa* and the Tartars were comming with a great armie to the reliefe of the beſieged: whereupon hee conſidering his owne ſtrength and the power of his enemies, and that the aid promiſed him both from the Emperour and out of HVNGARIE, was not yet readie, with great griefe of mind raiſed his ſiege, and retired with his armie to LIPPA, there expecting new ſupplies as well of his owne as from his friends. Whileſt he yet there lay, he was certainely aduertiſed, That the Baſſa of NATOLIA, the forerunner of the great Sultan *Mahomet*, was come to BELGRADE with foureteene thouſand horſe and foure thouſand Ianizaries to ioyne with the Baſſa of BVDA for the relieuing of TEMESVVAR; whoſe forces ioyned together, were in number about threeſcore thouſand: and that *Mahomet* himſelfe, of whoſe comming riſe report had been all this yeare, was now comming after with a farre greater power. Whereupon he departed from LIPPA, leauing therein a ſtrong garriſon, and ſo returning to ALBA IVLIA, called there an aſſembly of all his ſtates, for the repreſſing of ſo puiſſant an enemie.

The prince raiſeth his ſiege.

Mahomet for the better ſucceſſe of his warres in HVNGARIE had drawne forth the Tartar with a mightie power: who although he was at the firſt ſo vnwilling to that ſeruice (conſidering the great loſſes he had therein before receiued) that he would not as he ſaid ſend ſo much as one Aſſe thereunto: yet ouercome with great gifts, and the reſpect he had of the Turkiſh Sultan, was now ready with a ſtrong armie vpon the frontiers of MOLDAVIA to meet him in HVNGARIE: vnto whom the late choſen Vayuod ſent certain preſents with ſuch ſtore of victuals as he could poſſibly prouide for him. Yet for as much as he was not that way to paſſe without the leaue of the Polonian, *Mahomet* had both by letters and diuers his embaſſadours entreated with the Polonian king for his paſſage: as alſo for the confirmation of the auncient league hee and the Polonian kings his predeceſſours had to their good of long time had with the *Othoman* emperors; from which he well knew the Chriſtian Emperour, with diuers other Chriſtian princes to ſeeke by all meanes to withdraw him. *Mahomet* alſo not ignorant how hurtfull and dangerous the confederation betwixt *Michael* the Vayuod of VALACHIA and the Tranſyluanian was vnto him and his deſignes, ſent vnto him an embaſſador, by the ſhew of great dangers to deterre him from the Tranſyluanian, and by many glorious promiſes to allure him to ſubmit himſelfe againe vnto his protection, and in token of his fidelitie to deliuer vnto the Sultan two of his frontier townes, ſuch as he ſhould require: in regard whereof he ſhould together with the Sultans fauour receiue golden mountaines. Whereunto the Vayuod anſwered, That as yet he was not wearie of the friendſhip he held with the prince: and for the townes he required, that they were not in his power to giue, as belonging to the prince; vnto whom he ſaid he would write, and ſtay the embaſſadour in the meane time vntill he had from him anſwere.

The Emperour on the other ſide had with all carefulneſſe ſo farre as in him was, prouided that his armie might be readie to take the field with the beginning of the Spring: but as it commonly chanceth, the ſpeedie proceedings of great actions (wherein the hands of many mightie is required) to be much hindered by delaies, ſometimes of one, and ſometimes of another; ſo fell it out with him now: for albeit that his owne forces were in ſome good time readie, yet was the Spring, yea and a good part of Summer alſo farre paſt, before the aid promiſed from other princes met together. At length after long expectance, when ſome conuenient number for an armie

A armie was from diuers places come togither at VIENNA: they were by the lord *Swartzenburg* and their other commaunders brought forth into the field, and not farre from ALTENBVRG encamped, within the selfesame trenches that were the last yeare cast vp by countie *Mansfeld* for the safetie of his armie; there to expect the comming downe of the great ordinance and other prouision by the riuer from VIENNA, as also the rest of the Christian forces dayly looked for. From ALTENBVRG the Christian armie remoued to KOMARA, and not staying there long, the foure and twentieth of Iuly marched towards VACIA, otherwise called WOCZEN: but before it came thither, the Turks hearing of the approach of the Christians, forsooke the towne, and with their cattel and best part of their substance fled to PESTH, carying also away with them the great ordinance; the greatest whereof they buried by the way, which was neuertheless afB terwards found out by the Christians. And although the Turkes at their departure had set fire both vpon the town and the castle, yet the Christians left therein did what they might to quench the same: by whose diligence and the helpe of two thousand footmen, and certaine troupes of horsemen sent thither by *Swartzenburg*, a great part both of the towne and the castle was preserued: the whole armie of the Christians following after, encamped in the open field, and with their horsemen braued the Turks euen to the gates of PESTH. This so sudden a comming of the Christians, brought a great feare both vpon them of PESTH and BVDA; insomuch, that they sent their wiues and children, with the chiefest of their substance downe the riuer vnto places of more safetie, and farther off from danger: which was done so disorderedly (as it happeneth in such common feares) that many of them for haft thrust one another into the riuer, and C so perished,

Vacia abandoned of the Turks is taken by the Christians.

Hitherto in the former wars against the Turke, had *Matthias* bin Generall of the Christian armies: but now of late, *Ferdinand* the emperors vncle Countie of TIROL being dead, *Matthias* was by the emperor his brother preferred to the gouernment of that rich countrie and the prouinces thereabouts, not inferiour to some kingdomes; and *Maximilian* his younger brother appointed Generall in his stead: who departing from VIENNA in the latter end of Iuly, came into the campe the fourth of August, where he was by the lord *Swartzenburg* his lieutenant, and the lord *Palfi*, honourably and with great triumph receiued.

Now were the Christians threescore thousand strong, and hauing fortified VACIA, and therein placed a conuenient garrison, resolued by common consent to besiege HATVAN, a D strong towne of the Turkes in the vpper HVNGARIA. And thereupon rising with their armie from VACHIA the thirteenth of August, came the fifteenth of the same month about noone and sate downe before the towne; and that with such speed, that they were before seene of the Turks in the towne, than that they heard any thing of their comming: insomuch, that at the first shew of them, they of the towne tooke them to haue beene some come out to seeke after bootie; and therfore sallying out vpon them, skirmished with them a while, vntill they perceiued the whole battell comming. The Christians approching the towne, encamped themselue, as they thought most conuenient, and began in three places to batter the counterscarfe. This frontier towne of the Turkes, besids that it was kept with a strong garrison, was also strengthened with a broad ditch, and fortified with a broad counterscarfe and strong palisadoes. Whilest the Christians E thus lay at the siege, the Turks sallying out of the towne brake into their trenches, and there did great harme, and like ynough they were to haue done more, had not the horsemen in good time come in vpon them and enforced them to retire. In this sally, amongst others was one *Greis* a notable captaine slaine, being shamefully forsaken of his owne men; who for that their cowardise, were all in the sight of the whole armie disarmed, and so turned out of the campe as men vnworthie any longer to beare armes. One morning also as the Christians were at their deuotions in their trenches, a Turkish priest frome out of an high tower not far off, railed most bitterly vpon them, cursing and deriding them: wherewith one of the Christian canoniers much moued, made a shot at the tower, which he so well bestowed, that therewith he stroke downe the tower togither with the idolatrous priest, as he was yet rayling and blaspheming. At length the F Christians had with exceeding labour and continuall batterie made the town faultable; wherewith the Turks discouraged, offered (but all too late) to yeeld vp the towne vpon the same conditions, that they of STRIGONIVM had: whereunto they receiued no answere, yea commaundement was giuen throughout the campe, that no man vpon paine of death, should haue any parley with them. Shortly after all things being now in readines for the assault, the Christi-

Hatuan besieged by the Christians.

Cowardise punished.

Hatwan woon by the Christians

ans one day about fiue a clocke in the afternoone, assaulted the towne in foure places; and after three houres hard fight, by strong hand tooke it, with the scriching and lamenting of the women and children, and other fearefull people, who now gaue themselues all lost and forlorne. G

Extreme cruelitie.

Foure houres execution was done vpon all that came to hand, without respect of age, sex, or condition: women were slaine great with child, and young children hanging at their mothers breasts, it booted not to crie for mercie, the bloudie sword deuouring all. The furie of the Wallons here exceeded, who ript the children out of their mothers wombs, and made thongs and points of the skins of men and women, whom they had slaine quick. Which their crueltie they afterwards excused when they were therefore reproued, by pretending that thereby they did teach the Turks hereafter not so wickedly to blaspheme against Christ, or with such their wonted and barbarous crueltie to torment the Christians that fell into their hands, for feare of like themselues. In this assault & furie perished of the Turks about foure thousand, and of the Christians not past three hundred. In this towne beside that which the fire deuoured, was found a very rich prey. The first that entred the towne was one *Terskie*, a notable captaine with his companie: after whom followed *Ruswurme*, who each of them were thought in their entrance at the breach, to haue slaine with their owne hand eight or ten Turks. H

Mahomet the great Sultan commeth to Buda with an army of two hundred thousand.

Now in the meane time *Mahomet* the great Sultan being come to Belgrade, remoued thence to come down into the heart of Hvngarie, sending *Cicala Bassa* before him: and at length after long looking for, the second of September arriued at Bvda, hauing in his armie about two hundred thousand men, and three hundred field pieces. From thence he presently sent fortie thousand to Temesvvar; but staied there himselfe with the rest of his armie. I

The Christians yet lying at Hatvvan, and doubting least the Sultan suddenly passing the riuer should come vpon them not yet readie for battell; departing thence, and retiring backe againe, came and encamped not farre from Vachia. And albeit that the Archduke before his departure from Hatvvan, had left a conuenient garrison for the keeping of the towne; yet such was the terrour of the Turkes approach, that the next day after, they that were there left in garrison forsooke the towne, and setting it on fire, followed themselues after the campe. This comming of the Turkish Sultan to Bvda, brought also a great feare vpon them at Vienna, as much doubting least he should that way haue turned his forces, which caused them both day and night to labour for the better fortification of the citie, and for the prouision of all things, as if it had bin for a present siege. K

But *Mahomet* not prouided for the vndertaking of so strong a place, and not ignorant of the disgrace his great grandfather the victorious *Solyman* had sometime receiued vnder the walles thereof; had no purpose thereto, as hauing bent his thoughts quite another way. In the vpper part of Hvngarie is an ancient famous citie, well fortified and honoured with a bishops See called Agria, not farre from Hatvvan: Vpon this citie, as the chiefe fortresse of the Christians in those quarters, had *Mahomet* at his comming into Hvngarie cast his eyes, and began now that way to make head; with purpose by taking of that citie, and placing there of a strong garrison, to hinder the vniting of the emperours forces with the Transyluanians, for the mutuall strengthening of the one the other by the way of the vpper Hvngarie. Which the Archduke perceiuing, sent thither forthwith the valiant Colonell *Terskie* with a notable companie of Italians and Germanes, and a thousand other harquebusiers, who all arriued there in safetie. At which time also the lord *Teuffenbach* sent into the citie three thousand footmen, vnder the conduct of countie *Turn*, with good store of warlike prouision needfull for the defence therof. The one and twentieth of September, *Mahomet* attended vpon by the great Bassaes, *Ibrahim*, *Giaffar*, *Hassan*, and *Cicala*, for old *Sinan* was now dead, with his armie of an hundred and fiftie thousand men, came and encamped between the two riuers of Danubius and Tibiscus, couering a great part of the countrie with his tents. Approaching the citie, he with wonderfull celeritie cast vp fiue great mounts, and from them with such furie battered the wals, that the Christians were glad night and day to stand in armes for the defence thereof. And although that the wals were so great, and in many places so weakely fortified as that they were not but by a greater garrison to be defended against so puissant an enemie; and that therefore the defendants with their honour lawfully might euen the first day haue set the citie on fire, and retired themselues into the castle, which was both faire and strong, and the only place to be trusted vnto; yet for the space of sixe daies they worthily defended the whole citie against the furie of the enemies, and out of it did L M

Agria besieged by Mahomet.

them

A them great harme. But ſeeing the danger greatly encreaſing, and that the citie was not longer to be holden, they ſet it on fire; hauing before conuaied all the beſt of their ſubſtance with themſelues into the caſtle: which the Turks quickly perceiuing, brake ſo ſuddenly into the citie, as if they would togither with the Chriſtians haue entred the caſtle alſo; but in the attempt thereof they were notably repulſed and many of them ſlaine. Adioyning to the caſtle was a great and ſtrong bulwarke, againſt which the Turks for certaine daies furiouſly thundred with their great ordinance, and that without intermiſſion: and hauing in diuers places ſore ſhaken it, in the ſpace of two daies aſſaulted it twelue times, but not without the wonderfull loſſe of their men: and yet gaue it not ſo ouer, but as men with their loſſe more enraged, came on againe with greater furie than before. and ſo at laſt by plaine force tooke it: and there put to the ſword all them they
B found therein, except ſuch as by good hap got betimes into the caſtle. This bulwarke thus loſt, the Chriſtians the next day ſallying out, againe recouered; wherein they ſlew a great number of the Turks, with the loſſe of ſome thirtie men, and as many moe wounded. The beſieged now diuers times both by letters and meſſengers craued aid of *Maximilian* the Generall, giuing him to vnderſtand, that they could not long hold out for want of ſhot and pouder, if they were not betimes relieued (whereof the enemie alſo was not ignorant) yet were they reſolued to hold it out euen to the laſt man; although the great Sultan had oftentimes by meſſengers ſent of purpoſe, willed them to yeeld it vp, with promiſe that they ſhould in ſafetie with life and goods depart, otherwiſe threatning vnto them greater extremities than was of late ſhewed vnto the Turks at HATVVAN, if they ſhould as obſtinat men hold it out vnto the laſt. Whereunto they neuer
C anſwered him any thing: for *Terskie* had forbid them all parley with the enemie; and in the middeſt of the market place had cauſed a paire of gallowes to be ſet vp, threatning to hang him thereon, whoſoeuer he were that ſhould once make motion of yeelding vp the citie.

A bulwarke twelue times aſſaulted in two daies.

Whileſt the beſieged thus liue in hope of reliefe, the Archduke vpon the comming ouer of the Sultan towards AGRIA, hauing retired with his armie to STRIGONIVM, and there ſtayed ſomewhat too long expecting the comming of more aid: began now at length to ſet forward, and to make ſome ſhew as if hee had indeed purpoſed to haue relieued his diſtreſſed friends ſo hardly beſet at AGRIA. But ſuch was the foulenеſſe of the weather, hindering the paſſage of his great ordinance (not to ſpeake of any thing elſe) that in fourteene daies he marched ſcarcely twelue miles forward. Whereby the enemie tooke occaſion to preuaile as he did in his ſiege:
D who now hearing of the comming of the Chriſtians, and ſeeing to how little purpoſe he had ſo long battered the caſtle, conuerted all his endeauours to the filling vp of the ditch of the old caſtle, with fagots, earth, and ſuch like matter: for the haſtening of which worke, *Mahomet* himſelfe ſpared not to ride vp and downe in all places of his armie, with his preſence and cheerefull ſpeech encouraging his men in that deſperat worke. But whileſt the Turkes are thus buſie in fulfilling his commaund, the Chriſtians ſallying out vpon them made great ſlaughter of them, and put to flight *Ibrahim* the great Baſſa with ſuch as were about him: after whom they ſo eagerly followed, that he in the flight loſt his tulipant for haſt, and was there very like to haue bin taken. Neuertheleſſe the worke went ſtill forward, and was now at length with the reſtleſſe labour of ſo great a multitude brought to ſuch perfection, that the Turkes thought it now no
E great matter by aſſault to enter the caſtle: and therupon the tenth of October gaue vnto it foure deſperat aſſaults one vpon another, being ſtil with great ſlaughter of his men repulſed. But comming on againe the fift time with freſh ſupplies, and greater furie than at the firſt, they preuailed; and ſo entring, put to the ſword all they found in the caſtle, in number about eight hundred: foure hundred of whoſe heads, one of the Turks captaines cauſed to be caried vnto *Mahomet* in the campe, in the beholding whereof, he is ſaid to haue taken great pleaſure, as in the vndoubted ſignes of his victorie.

The old caſtle taken.

The old caſtle thus taken, nothing remained but the new caſtle, againſt which the Turks conuerted their whole forces, wherein they repoſed not ſo much hope, although their batterie were verie terrible and their power great, as in the ſecret mines wherewith they had in fourteene pla-
F ces vndermined the caſtle, and were now almoſt readie to bee blowne vp. Which the beſieged perceiuing, and withall conſidering the ſtate wherein they ſtood, and not hearing any thing of reliefe; reſolued amongſt themſelues (without the conſent of their chiefe commaunders) no longer to hold out, but to yeeld. And thereupon altogither as if it had beene but one man, riſe vp in a mutinie againſt their two Gouernours, *Paul Niari* and *Terskie*; who at the firſt by all

the reasons they could deuise, dissuaded them from such cowardise, putting them in mind of the G
oath they had taken: which not preuailing, they afterwards vpon their knees requested them
as men to hold it out yet a while, in hope of speedie reliefe: yea *Terskie* with his hands cast vp en-
treated them, that if they would no longer hold it out but needs yeeld, then they should first kill
him with their owne hands, that he might not liue to see so great a dishonour. But what auaileth
persuasion with men possessed with so great feare? And in the meane time two hundred and fif-
tie of the common souldiors, amongst whom were many Italians, secretly escaping out of the
castle fled into the campe, of whom diuers became renegats and turned Turke; which added to
the former feare, so much discouraged the minds of the rest, that they forthwith required to come
to parley with the enemie, and so agreed, That they might with bag and baggage & their swords
Agria yeelded vnto the Turkes by their sides in safetie depart: the great Sultan giuing his faith for the performance thereof, H
with hostages deliuered on either side. So the thirteenth of October about noone, the garrison
souldiors came out of the castle in number about two thousand: but they were not gone farre,
but that they were in a great plaine set vpon by the Turks and Tartars, and there cut in pieces;
some of them were slaine quicke, and some other of them otherwise shamefully dismembred;
the Turkes in the meane time vpbraiding them, and saying, That faith was not to be kept with
them that had so cruelly before dealt with them of HATVVAN. This perfidious dealing much of-
fended diuers of the better sort of the Turks, insomuch, that some of them complained there-
of vnto the Sultan; who (as is reported) caused some of the chiefe authors thereof to be put to
death: and afterward by open proclamation commanded, that if any of the Turks or Tartars
had taken any of them prisoners, they should forthwith set them at libertie. Thus is the famous I
citie of AGRIA, of long time a Christian bishops seat, now become a sure receptacle for the
Turks and Infidels.

Petrinia besieged by the Turks Whilest *Mahomet* thus lay at the siege of AGRIA, the Bassa of BOSNA with certaine other
of the Sanzacks thereabouts, hauing raised a great armie, came and besieged PETRINIA in the
borders of CROATIA: which he at his first comming so furiously battered by the space of se-
uen daies, that it was of many thought not possible for it to hold out two daies longer. In the
meane time the lord *Herbenstein* and *Leukowitz*, with all the power they could make out of
CROATIA and WINDISMARCH, came towards PETRINIA: but hauing no meanes in so
great haste to make a bridge ouer the riuer of Kulp, they retired towards SISEG there to passe
ouer. The Turkes hearing of their retire, and supposing them to haue fled for feare, put sixe K
thousand horsemen ouer the riuer to pursue them: vpon whom the Christians turning, and
charging them home, ouerthrew them; and hauing slain many of them, draue the rest headlong
into the riuer, where most of them perished. The Christians neuertheless keeping on their way
to SISEG, there the next day by a bridge passed ouer the riuer, and so marching towards PETRI-
NIA, and being come neere vnto the towne, were encountred by eight thousand Turkes, whom
they also put to flight; and by certaine prisoners there taken, vnderstood that the Bassa the day
Petrinia re-lieued. before was risen from before the towne and gone: which they at the first beleiued not, but
comming thither found it so, to their owne good contentment, and the great ioy of the late
besieged.

Maximilian the Generall marching on faire and softly from STRIGONIVM, at length the L
seuenteenth of October came to CASSOVIA, foure daies after that AGRIA was lost; and there
met with the Transyluanian prince, who was come thither with eighteene thousand men, and
fortie field pieces to aid him: of whom eight thousand were mercinarie horsemen, fifteene hun-
dred were of the nobilitie of his countrie, and the rest footmen. The next day after they setting
forward from CASSOVIA, ioyned themselues with the rest of the armie led by the lord *Teuffen-
bach* and *Palfi*, and so of all their vnited forces made one armie, consisting now of two and thir-
tie thousand horsemen and eight and twentie thousand foot: who drew with them an hundred
and twentie field pieces, and twentie thousand wagons, wherewith they euery night enclosed
their armie as with a most sure trench. So orderly marching, they kept on their way towards M
AGRIA, with a full resolution to giue the Turks battell, whereof the whole armie seemed to bee
very desirous. By the way at length they came to a faire heath two miles long and foure broad,
where they were to passe ouer a certaine riuer, the passage whereof *Giaffar Bassa* had before ta-
ken with twentie thousand Turkes and Tartars, the rest of the Turkes armie lying still not farre
from AGRIA. Now the purpose of the Bassa was, to haue enlarged the passage of the riuer, and

so

A ſo to haue made way for the whole armie, to haue afterwards paſſed vnto the other ſide, as moſt commodious for many purpoſes, eſpecially for water, whereof they ſo might themſelues haue had plentie, and yet kept the Chriſtians from it. But of this his purpoſe, by the comming of the Chriſtians he was quite diſappointed: for the next day being the three and twentith of October, they skirmiſhed with him in diuers places, eſpecially at the paſſage of the riuer, where at the firſt encounter he loſt three hundred of his men, & in the end ſeeing himſelfe too weake to withſtand the whole power comming on, fled to the Sultan, hauing loſt two of his enſignes & twentie field pieces, but of his men not many, both for that he fled betime, and the approch of the night hindered the purſuit of the Chriſtians, who were now become maſters both of the paſſage of the riuer, and of the place where the Baſſa lay: which they finding not ſo commodious for them as
B they had at the firſt ſuppoſed (eſpecially for lacke of wood, the weather then being extreme cold, as alſo hearing of the approch of the Sultan with his whole armie) they forthwith forſooke the ſame, & retired againe ouer the riuer to the place where they lay before, encloſing themſelues with their waggons, as if it had been a citie ſtrongly encloſed with wooden wals. The next day, which was the foure and twentith of October, towards night, *Mahomet* with all his armie ſhewed himſelfe vnto the view of the Chriſtians, and ſent three thouſand Tartars to paſſe the riuer: of whom the Chriſtians ſlew a great number with their great ſhot, and put the reſt to flight. Both the armies were populous and ſtrong, and couered a great deale of ground, a moſt goodly ſight to behold: both drunk of the ſame riuer, as well the men as their horſes, and therefore kept continuall watch all that night on both ſides of the riuer, eſpecially at the paſſage. In the morning
C betwixt ſix and ſeuen a clocke, *Mahomet* with his armie ranged in order of battell, came within ſight of the Chriſtians, his ſquadrons as it were couering all the countrie on that ſide of the riuer as farre as the Chriſtians could well ſee; and now againe ſent part of his armie ouer the riuer: with whom the Chriſtians skirmiſhed from morning till night, both the armies parted but by the riuer, all this while ſtanding faſt, and as it were facing the one the other. But being at length on both ſides well wearied, and many ſlain, the Turks retired againe ouer the riuer to the campe: in the meane time (as if it had bin by conſent) they reſolued on both ſides the next day to trie the fortune of a battell, and ſo commaundement was giuen through both the armies, for euery man againſt a certaine appointed time to make himſelfe readie. So the next day, being the ſix and twentith of October, *Mahomet* brought forth his armie againe out of his campe, which
D was not farre from the Chriſtians; and began now to draw downe towards the riuer. Neere vnto this place were the ruines of an old church, where *Mahomet* placed certaine companies of Ianizaries, and foure and twentie field pieces, and commanded ten thouſand of his ſelect ſoldiors to paſſe the riuer, which they readily did. The Chriſtians alſo readie for battell, and now thinking it time vpon the comming ouer of the enemie to begin; with part of their armie thereunto appointed, ſo fiercely charged the Turkes that were alreadie come ouer, that they quickly ouerthrew them, and not them onely, but certaine companies of Tartars alſo that were in another place came ouer the riuer: and not ſo contented, but following them they had in chaſe, put to flight them alſo that ſtood on the further ſide of the riuer, of whom they ſlew a great number, and by the comming on of the reſt of the armie tooke from them an hundred and ninetie great
E pieces of artillerie: whereof ſo great a feare riſe in the enemies campe, that *Mahomet* with *Ibrahim* the great Baſſa ſeeing the diſcomfiture of the armie, fled in all haſt towards AGRIA, ſhedding ſome teares by the way as he went, and wiping his eyes with a piece of *Mahomets* garment, which he for reuerence carried about him as a relique. It drew now towards night, & the Archduke was about to haue cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, and that day to haue done no more. But the Tranſyluanian prince, the lord *Palfi*, and the reſt, perſuaded him in that ſo great feare of the enemie to proſecute the victorie; and the rather, for that the Turks began againe to make head, and to repaire their diſordered battels. Wherefore the Chriſtians ſtill keeping their array, charged afreſh the front of their enemies reſtored battell, conſiſting of fortie thouſand men, and that with ſuch violence, as that they in ſhort time had ſlaine the moſt part of them, and put the reſt to
F flight: and with the like good fortune charging the bodie of the maine battell, forced the diſcouraged Turkes with great ſlaughter into their owne campe. Now commaundement was before giuen throughout the Chriſtian armie, that no man vpon paine of death ſhould in ſeeking after ſpoile breake his array, or forſake his place, before the victorie were aſſuredly gotten. But they in this hot purſuit breaking togither with the Turks into their tents, & there killing a great number

A great and long skirmiſh betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians.

Ten thouſand Turks paſſe the riuer, and are together with the Tartars put to flight.

of them, and seeing in euery place great store of rich spoile, contrarie to the aforesaid commandement, left the pursuit of the enemie, and disorderly fell to the spoile of the tents, vntill they came to the very tent, of the great Sultan. But here began all the mischiefe, with a most sudden change of fortune. For here these greedie disordered men, not now worth the name of soldiors, light vpon a strong squadron of resolute men, with good store of great ordinance readie charged, which they discharged amongst the thickest of their enemies, and rent in sunder a number of them, and after that came on resolutely themselues: when in the meane time *Cicala Bassa* with his horsemen yet vntouched, brake in vpon them also, and with the terrour of his comming brought such a feare vpon them, that they began a maine to flie, especially the Hungarians and Germanes, most busied in the spoile. Neither could they in that feare, by any threats or intreatie of their commanders be perswaded to make a stand, or so much as once to looke backe, or to shew any token of true valour: which their hastie flight was the ouerthrow not of themselues onely, but of others also that would haue fought: for whilest they fled headlong vpon the spur, and could not be staied, they ouerran their owne footmen, and so furthered the enemies victorie. Thus for want of good order, through the greedie couetousnes of a sort of disordered men the most notable victorie that euer the Christians were like to haue had ouer the Turks, was let slip out of their hands. Many noble gentemen and commanders, in seeking to stay the flight of their owne men, were here slaine: and although the enemie followed the chase scarce halfe a mile, yet were the Christians possessed with such a feare, that they fled amaine all ouer the countrie with greater shame than losse, no man pursuing them. The Archduke himselfe seeing all desperat, fled to CASSOVIA. The Transyluanian of all others most orderly retired himselfe towards TOCAII, hauing not lost in this battell aboue two hundred men, and of them neuer a man of name. All this losse he imputed to the couetousnesse of the Hungarians, and cowardise of the Germane horsmen. The lord *Bernstein* hauing charge of the great artillerie, fled also, and made shift for himselfe, as did *Palfi*, and in fine all the rest. Neither was the feare lesse amongst the Turkes (a wonderfull thing to be spoken) than it was amongst the Christians: for the night following they for feare of the return of the Christians, trussing vp the best of their things, fled also towards AGRIA. And it was afterwards knowne, that the Turks great ordinance, tents, and baggage stood three daies in their trenches, either altogither vnguarded, or so slenderly guarded, as that they might haue bin easily taken by the Christians, if they would but haue made head again. Yea *Mahomet* himselfe is reported oftentimes to haue confessed the danger & feare he was then in to haue bin taken, and all his armie destroied, if the Christians had (as they should) pursued the victorie, and not so basely run after the spoile: by which danger he then warned, afterwards euer shunned to aduenture his person to the like perill in the field. In this battell of KARESTA (for so it is of a place thereby called) and at the siege of AGRIA were lost of the Christians about twentie thousand, and of the Turks threescore thousand. *Mahomet* after this victorie fortified AGRIA, and for the keeping thereof left in it 10000 souldiors, and so returned to BELGRADE.

The Christians in seeking too greedily after the spoile, ouerthrown and discomfited.

Twentie thousand Christians slaine, & three-score thousand Turke.

The Bassa of BVDA perswading himselfe that the Christians after so great an ouerthrow could not this yere to any purpose recouer their strength, came with all the power he was able to make, and the fourth of Nouember besieged VACIA, in hope to haue easily carred it: but finding there greater resistance than he had before imagined, and hearing that the dispersed Christians in the vpper part of HVNGARIE were making head for to come to the relefe of the towne, he more afraid than hurt, brake vp his siege, and so returned to BVDA: for indeed the dispersed reliques of the late armie of the Christians were drawing togither, but vnarmed and vnseruiceable, as hauing in the late flight shamefully cast away their armes, and therfore could haue done the Bassa small harme if he had continued the siege.

Vacia besieged by the Bassa of Buda.

Mahomet thinking it honour ynough for him to haue thus woon AGRIA, and driuen the Christians out of the field, diuided his armie into two parts at BELGRADE: wherof the one he billetted in the countrie thereabout, to be readie for all euents; and with the other he returned to CONSTANTINOPLE: but by the way he was set vpon by *Barbelius Ianuschi* the Transyluanian princes lieutenant, and the Vayuod of VALACHIA, who with a great power both of horse and foot being got ouer the riuer Danubius, and secretly fauored by the countrie people, lay in ambush for him in places of aduantage, and still following in the taile of his armie, cut off 7000 of his men before he could be rid of them: and so with much trouble arriued at length at CONSTANTINOPLE, where we will for this yeare leaue him, vntill we heare of him more.

Maximi-

A *Maximilian* with a ſmall retinue arriued at VIENNA in the latter end of Nouember, where he found the Vicount of BVRGAVV, *Swartzenburg*, with ſome other of the commaunders of his late armie; moſt of the reſt, eſpecially the Italians being ſlaine. The ſmall remainder of this vnfortunate yeare was ſpent with often skirmiſhes and inrodes one into anothers frontiers, as the manner of war is, without any other great thing done worth the remembrance.

Rodolph the Chriſtian emperour, notwithſtanding the late diſcomfiture of his armie not farre from AGRIA, made choice againe of his brother *Maximilian* the Archduke, for the managing of his forces for his next yeares wars againſt the Turke. Whereunto the Pope by his legate *Fran. Aldobrandino* promiſed of his owne charge to ſend ten thouſnd Italians, vnder the conduct of the duke of MANTVA: as did alſo the Germane princes their wonted aid, with ſome others: All
B which ſlowly at length meeting together neere vnto POSSONIVM and ALTENBVRG, in the moneths of Iuly & Auguſt, departing thence, marched to PAPPA; which after eight daies hard ſiege they tooke, and ſo againe retired to ALTENBVRG, where they tooke a generall muſter of the armie: and afterwards in the beginning of September ſhewed themſelues before the ſtrong town of RAB: where the lord *Bernſteine* approching too neere the wals, was with a ſhot ſlaine. Neuertheleſſe the reſt there ſtaied, vntill that hearing of the comming of *Mahomet Baſſa* the Turks Generall with a great armie, they left the ſiege, and the foure and twentith day of September paſſing ouer the riuer Danubius into the iſland SCHVT towards KOMARA, there on the North ſide of the riuer encamped. Where they had not lien paſt eight daies, but that the caſtle of DOTIS, ſtanding vpon the South ſide of Danubius, was by the Baſſa before their faces, and as it were euen vnder
C their noſes beſieged and taken, the whole armie of the chriſtians in the meane time as idle beholders looking on, but not daring to relieue their diſtreſſed friends: but afterwards ariſing, marched to VACIA, where hearing of the Turks comming againſt them from PESTH, they ſet fire on the caſtle, and ſo retired alongſt the North ſide of the riuer, vntill they came ouer againſt VICEGRADE, a caſtle of their owne on the other ſide of Danubius: where by the good direction of the lord *George Baſta* a moſt expert captaine, and lieutenant Generall of the armie, they encamped ſo ſtrongly, as that the Turkes after many braue attempts giuen to haue forced them in their trenches, were glad with ſome loſſe to depart.

Pappa taken by the Chriſtians.

Dotis taken by the Turke.

Neither went things this yeare better forward with the Chriſtians in other places than in this ſide of HVNGARIE. For *Sigiſmund* the Tranſyluanian prince by his Chancellour beſieging the
D ſtrong citie of TEMESVVAR in October, was by the valour of the defendants and the vnſeaſonableneſſe of the weather enforced to raiſe his ſiege, and with diſhonor to depart. *Michael* alſo the Vayuod of VALACHIA, who mooued with the example and perſuaſions of the Tranſyluanian prince, had reuolted from the Turkes, and done them great harme (as is in part before declared) now wearied with their often inuaſions and the ſpoile of his countrey, almoſt brought to vtter deſolation, many thouſands of his ſubiects being by the Turks & Tartars caried away captiues; and his townes and caſtles for the moſt part raſed, to giue his people a time of breathing, ſubmitted himſelfe againe vnto the Turkiſh obeiſance, ſolemnely receiuing at the hands of one of the Turkes Chiaus (for that purpoſe ſent from CONSTANTINOPLE) an enſigne in token of his ſubmiſſion vnto the Turkiſh emperour, as alſo of his fauour towards him. Which the more to aſ-
E ſure him of, he by another honourable meſſenger ſhortly after receiued from *Mahomet* the Turkiſh emperour more kind letters than at any time before, with the confirmation of the Vayuodſhip of VALACHIA, by the graund ſignior his ſolemne oath vnto *Michael* the Vayuod and his ſonne *Peter*, then about thirteene yeares old, for the tearme of both their liues, without diſturbance, paying but the halfe of the old yearely tribute by the Turkes before demanded: ſo glad they were vpon any condition to haue reduced that martiall man with his countrey vnto their obeiſance: and in token of further grace together with theſe letters, he receiued alſo a goodly horſe, moſt richly furniſhed, with a faire ſcimitar and an horſemans maſe, in ſigne of the martiall power and gouernment committed vnto him by the great Sultan *Mahomet*. All which goodly gifts and honours the Vayuod ſeemed thankfully to accept: neuertheleſſe not daring too far to
F truſt vnto the Turkiſh faith, of the ſmall aſſurance whereof he had before had ſufficient experience, he ſtill kept ſtrong garriſons vpon the frontiers of his countrey, with ſuch other forces alſo as he was wont, excuſing the ſame to be done for feare of the Tartars; by whom he alſo excuſed himſelfe, for not going with the Turks Generall this yeare into HVNGARIE, as hee was by ſpeciall meſſengers from the grand ſignior himſelfe requeſted, telling him that he might not in any caſe

Michael the Vayuod yeeldeth his obeyſance vnto the Turke, and yet refuſeth to aid him againſt the Chriſtians.

caſe ſo do for feare of the Tartars moſt horrible incurſions,and the ſpoiles of his countrey: yet G
knew he right well how that they were by the great Sultan his expreſſe commaundement charged not to do any harme either in MOLDAVIA or VALACHIA, as they went into HVNGARIE. But this warie Vayuod not greatly truſting either the Sultan or them,as alſo loth himſelfe a chriſtian to goe againſt the Chriſtians his friends and late confederats,excuſed himſelfe by the neceſſarie care he had of his ſubiects and country,and ſo requeſted that his reaſonable excuſe to be in good part of the great Sultan accepted: but of him more is to be ſaid hereafter. Thus paſſed this yeare without any great thing done more than is before declared, both theſe great princes,the emperour and the Turkiſh Sultan, being warned by the laſt years worke what it was to put all to the fortune of a battell: and therfore now contenting themſelues to haue ſhewed their forces,as not
1598 afraid one of the other,countenanced this yeares wars with greater ſhewes than deeds. H

What great things might by the Chriſtian princes at vnitie amongſt themſelues bee done againſt the Turks,is by the conſiderat right eaſily to be gathered: but eſpecially by the notable victorie of the famous Tranſyluanian prince *Sigiſmund*,who confederated but with his poore oppreſſed neighbors the Valachians and Moldauians, and ſtrengthened with ſome ſmall aid from the emperour and the Hungarians, not only deliuered thoſe three countries from the heauy burthen of the Turkiſh thraldome,but vanquiſhed alſo their moſt renowned captaines, ouerthrew their mightie armies,burnt and ſpoiled their countries,raſed their townes and cities, which as it hath bin in part before declared,ſo if it ſhould be all particularly ſet downe,beſide that it would be tedious, ſo alſo might it happily ſeeme almoſt incredible. Beſide which calamities of warre (commonly more felt of the ſubiects than of the prince)the great Sultan himſelfe found no ſmal I
wants,as well in his cofers,as other his neceſſarie ſupplies for the maintenance of his wars,eſpe-
A great tribute. cially in HVNGARIE,the only country of MOLDAVIA(before theſe troubles)yeelding vnto him yearely a tunne of gold,two thouſand horſes for ſeruice,ten thouſand great meaſures of wheat, with as much barley,and a wonderfull proportion of butter,honie,and other victuals;the other two prouinces paying alſo the like or more,as a yearely tribute: wherof he had of late to his great diſcontentment by the generall reuolt of theſe three countries bin quite diſapointed. But this ſo wholeſome a confederation,to the great hurt of the chriſtian commonweale and benefit of the Turks,now broken,and MOLDAVIA by the Polonians diſſeuered from the reſt, and again made tributarie vnto the Turk(as is before declared)and now VALACHIA alſo in a ſort acknowledging the Turks obeiſance,the noble Tranſyluanian prince,who hitherto with great cheerfulneſſe and K
courage had fought the moſt Chriſtian battels againſt the Turk,now left as it were all alone,and doubting how with his own ſmall forces to be able long to defend his country againſt the Turk and the Polonian,whom he feared not much leſſe than him; leaſt the ſame ſhould together with himſelfe fall into the hands of the Turkes,or ſome other his enemies, by a wonderfull change voluntarily reſigned this his country of TRANSYLVANIA vnto *Rodolph* the Chriſtian emperour
The prince of Tranſyluania reſigneth his countrey vnto the emperour. and his heires for euer: and ſo leauing his wife in TRANSYLVANIA, went himſelfe into SILESIA, there to take poſſeſſion of the dukedomes of OPPELL and RATIBOR, which together with the yearely penſion of 50000 Ioachims,or the reuenues of the biſhopricke of VRATISLAVIA, he had in lieu thereof receiued of the emperour: whereupon the poſſeſſion of TRANSYLVANIA, by the generall conſent of all the ſtates of that country,was in the beginning of this yeare 1598 de- L
liuered vnto the Archbiſhop of VACIA,the countie *Nadaſti*, and Doctor *Petzi* the emperours commiſſioners;and a ſolemne oath of obedience and loialtie taken of them all in generall: albeit that the aforeſaid commiſſioners as alſo the emperour himſelfe would haue perſuaded the prince either not at all,or at leaſtwiſe not ſo ſuddenly to haue forſaken his countrey, but to haue ſtill kept the gouernment thereof himſelfe yet for a yeare or two; well foreſeeing that the ſame could not ſo conueniently be gouerned by any other as by himſelfe, a naturall prince therein borne,and exceedingly beloued of his ſubiects. The ſame commiſſioners alſo in Iune following
Michael the Vayuod ſubmitteth himſelfe with his people vnto the emperors protection. going into VALACHIA,there tooke the like oath of obedience of *Michael* the Vayuod and his people: who loathing the Turkiſh ſoueraigntie, all willingly yeelded themſelues into the emperors protection. Theſe commiſſioners alſo at the ſame time came to agreement with the Tartars em- M
baſſadors,offering vnto the emperour peace and aid for the yearely penſion of 40000 duckats, and as many ſheep-skin gownes, their vſuall maner of apparell.

All this while continued the Diet of the empire,begun in December laſt paſt at RATISBONE, *Matthias* the emperours brother being there his deputie,and in his maieſties name demanding a

greater

A greater aid for the maintenance of his warres againſt the Turke the common enemie, than was by the princes and ſtates of the empire offered: where after great and long deliberation, a large proportion was by them all agreed vpon for the defraying of the charges of thoſe wars and defence of the Chriſtian commonweale, to be paied in three yeares next, and ſo thereupon was the aſſembly diſſolued. But as they were returning home, behold contrarie to all hope, RAB one of the ſtrongeſt fortreſſes of Chriſtendome, three yeres before betrayed vnto the Turks by countie *Hardeck*, was now by the wiſdom and valour of *Adolphus* Baron of *Swartzenburg*, the Emperors lieutenant in the lower HVNGARIE, againe recouered, to the great griefe of the Turks, and wonderfull reioycing of the Chriſtians, in ſuch ſort as followeth.

This noble gentleman the lord *Swartzenburg* of no leſſe corage than experience, then lying at
B KOMARA, and ſtill in doubt leaſt the Turks ſo neere vnto him at RAB, ſhould attempt ſomething againſt him and his charge, prouided for his owne defence all that Winter time with a ſtrong garriſon, keeping continuall watch and ward, although it were as then no time for the enemie with any armie to keepe the field. So Winter paſſing and the Spring approaching, it fortuned that the two and twentith day of March about ſeuen a clocke in the night, the gates being ſhut, were heard neere vnto the wals of the towne two men, who by their ſpeach ſeemed to be Italians: with great inſtance requeſting, for the ſafegard of their liues to be let in, for feare of the enemies purſuit. Which by one of the Sentinels was forthwith reported vnto the Gouernor; who doubting it to be ſome ſubtile practiſe of the enemie, commaunded them there to take their fortune vntill the morning: at which time they were receiued into the citie, and being brought be-
C fore the Gouernour, proſtrating themſelues forthwith at his feet, pitifully requeſted him to haue compaſſion of their miſery, and to comfort them with his charitable reliefe, that ſo they might at length returne againe into their countrey: who at the firſt asked them, what countrey men they were? and from whence they came at that time of the night? Whereunto they anſwered, That they were Italians, and that they had but euen then eſcaped out of the cruell hands of the Turkes at RAB. But deſiring to know of them ſome newes, they after their manner humbled themſelues, ſhewing by their geſture not to know any; yet would he needs vnderſtand of them the particularities, when and how they were taken by the Turkes, and the meanes they had vſed to eſcape out of that cruell ſeruitude, in all order as had befallen them. Where the younger of them beginning, told him, That now almoſt two yeares ago, at ſuch time as the Chriſtians were
D ouerthrowne by the Turkes vnder AGRIA, and euery man in that confuſion then ſeeking the beſt and neereſt way to ſaue themſelues: they hauing by flight now eſcaped the greateſt danger of the enemie, and ſo trauailing ouer the countrey towards VIENNA, were to their great misfortune (by an hundred Turks come out of RAB to ſcoure the countrey, and to ſeeke after prey) taken priſoners, and as ſlaues committed to the chaine, where they had almoſt two yeares vntill now, with great patience ſerued. Theſe two fugitiues by their outward appearance, ſeemed to be men of good ſpirit and valour, which cauſed the Gouernour to be more deſirous to know of them the meanes they had vſed for their eſcape. So the yonger proceeding in his tale, gaue him to vnderſtand of the whole matter, telling him, That they had bin three months before ſtill carefully deuiſing how to recouer their loſt libertie, which now ſeemed to make ſome offer of it ſelfe
E vnto them: For that ſince the time that the emperours armie riſe the laſt yeare from before the towne, they were not kept ſo ſtrait, or looked vnto as before, but lay as men by the Turkes not much regarded: which cauſed them the more cheerfully to take the offer of the time, and to reſolue either the ſooner to die, or to ſet themſelues at libertie. And that ſo one day as they were carying certaine munition from the pallace of *Giaffer Baſſa* for the ſouldiors, they ſecretly conuaied three pieces of coard of ſome reaſonable bigneſſe, therwith by night to let themſelues downe from the wall, & ſo as they might to eſcape: which ſtolne coard that it ſhould not be ſeen, and ſo their purpoſe ſuſpected, they buried in the ground. But the night being come for them to effect in what they had ſo long deſired, and they roaming vp and downe in the darke, and ſtill finding one let or other, they were enforced for that time to ſtay, and to deferre it vntill the night follow-
F ing: which being come, and choiſe made of a moſt conuenient place, they made faſt the coard aboue, and ſo thereby ſlid downe, firſt the elder, and then the younger; who not knowing how to ſwimme, was yet by the good direction and helpe of his fellow conducted ouer vnto the farther ſide of the broad and deepe ditch: and that ſo, in the night (ſo darke as that one of them could hardly ſee the other) they were come by chance to KOMARA, thinking to haue

Two Italian priſoners flying out of Rab, diſcouer the ſtate of the town to the lord Swartzenburg.

taken

taken the way to VIENNA. The Gouernour thus fully inſtructed of their eſcape, demaunded of G
them farther, how the ſtrong towne of RAB was by the Turks gouerned and guarded: who told
him verie euill, and with ſmall care, eſpecially ſince the departure of the emperours campe: and
alſo, that foure gates of the towne were filled vp with earth, which if they were broken open,
would all fall into the towne ditch, and ſo further them that would attempt to enter: with diuers
other particularities. Whereof the Gouernour hauing well conſidered, thought with himſelfe,
that if by ſome ingenious deuice hee might by night with ſome good ſtrength vpon the ſudden
enter the towne, it might happily be ſo againe recouered. Vpon which ſo great a deſignement
he thought good to conſult farther with the lord *Palfi*, whom he requeſted in all haſt and with as
much ſecreſie as was poſſible, with 1600 foot and as many horſe as he could make, to come vn-
to him to KOMARA. Who vpon the aduertiſement ſo giuen ſtaied not, but preſently giuing or- H
der vnto his men, ſet forward by night, and the ſix and twentith day of March before day with
1400 foot, and 120 horſe arriued at KOMARA; where they were all ioyfully receiued, and the
gates after they were entred, againe faſt ſhut, and ſo kept for feare of the enemies ſecret ſpies, of
whom no man can be too wary, be he neuer ſo wiſe. Now whileſt theſe ſoldiors were refreſhing
themſelues, in the mean time the Gouernor with the lord *Palfi* diſcourſed to the full concerning
the entended enterpriſe: which reſolued vpon, they found themſelues vpon the view of their
men to haue two thouſand ſix hundred foot of the garriſon ſouldiors, and three hundred horſe,
all good and couragious men, and well appointed for the entended ſeruice: who there ſtaying
two dayes after their comming, and many of them in the meane time (after the manner of their
religion) confeſſing themſelues, and receiuing the ſacrament, were become ſo couragious, as that I
they doubted not in the quarrell of the Chriſtian Religion to encounter a farre greater number
of the Turks than themſelues. And the more to ſtirre them vp, the lord *Palfi* at the ſame time
The notable ſpeech of the lord Palfi vnto his ſouldiors. deliuered vnto them a notable ſpeech: not for all that telling them whither they were to go, but
that they were his Chriſtian ſoldiors and brethren, vnder his leading both of long and late time;
who neuer by him deceiued of their wonted pay at ſuch time as it was due, would not now as he
hoped forſake him. And albeit that he well knew them to haue deſerued at his hands a greater
contentment: neuertheleſſe being himſelfe depriued of his reuenue by theſe late warres, and his
poſſeſſions euery houre ſubiect vnto the incurſions of the Turks, could not therfore according
to his deſire and their deſerts, ſhew vnto them the great good will he bare them: Yet that now,
and euen preſently was come the time wherein they might not onely abundantly enrich them- K
ſelues, but alſo adorne their heads with an immortall crowne of glory, and make themſelues for
euer famous, by performing the moſt happie and glorious exploit that euer was by valorous
ſouldiors attempted or atchieued in that part of the world. And to the intent that they might
know how dearely he accounted of the life and honour of euerie one of them, he would there-
fore himſelfe with the lord *Swartzenburg* (of whom proceeded all that faire deuiſe and new ſtra-
tageme) bee preſent with them in the action: and that therefore they were not to thinke, that
they were led foorth to any priuat danger, farther than their commaunders themſelues: whoſe
folly were to be accounted great, if raſhly & vpon no good ground they ſhould aduenture their
liues and honors together: wherof they ought not now to doubt, hauing by a thouſand proofes
knowne, how much they had been of them alwaies regarded. And that therefore it behoued L
them ſo much the more to ſhew their valour in this piece of ſeruice vndertaken for the great be-
nefit of the Chriſtian common weale, and the honour of Chriſt Ieſu: vnto whom they were
with one accord to make their praiers, with his mightie hand to ſtrengthen their hearts, and with
glorious victory to bring to happie end the intended exploit againſt his enemies, to the honour
of his name, and the aduancement of the chriſtian religion and faith. At the end of which ſpeech
all the ſouldiors cried aloud, That they were moſt readie to do any their commands, and to fol-
low them whither ſoeuer. So order was taken, that within three houres they ſhould euery man
be preſt & ready with their armes according to their places: and ſo hauing well refreſhed them-
ſelues, about eleuen a clocke the ſeuen and twentith day of March, they in good order began to
ſet forwards toward RAB. But for that the multitude of ſouldiors oftentimes giueth the enemie M
warning of that is intended againſt him, *Palfi* gaue order to one *Iohn Stroine* his Sergiant maior,
to follow faire and ſoftly after him with 1700 horſe and foot, which he well performed. And ſo
vpon the breake of the day they began to draw towards RAB, and there lay cloſe in ambuſh all
that day vntill night, about ſeuen miles ſhort of the towne: refreſhing themſelues in the meane
time

A time with plentie of victuals, which they had brought with them from KOMARA. Night (the fauourer of deceit) being come, in two houres march they began to draw neere to RAB, and there ſtayed about fiue houres: from whence they ſent before them a French enginer, a man of great iudgement, with thirteene others (before rewarded with 1500 duckats) hauing with them foure Petardes (engines of force to blow vp into the aire any thing whereunto they be faſtened, be it neuer ſo great or weightie;) where by good chance they found the draw bridge down, and the portculleis vp: for that the Turkes then caſting no perill, expected euerie houre for certaine wagons with prouiſion from ALBA REGALIS. By which good hap the Chriſtians vnperceiued comming to the gate, and thereunto faſtening their Petardes, in good order gaue fire to the
B ſame, which preſently tooke not hold: yet were they not farre gone, but that they were by a Sentinell deſcried, who demaunding what they were, was preſently anſwered by the violent engines, which in a trice tore in ſunder the gate, with ſome part of the wall and of the fortifications neere vnto it. When now the watch (but all too late) began to giue the alarum, and the Chriſtians in the foreward thruſting preſently in, tooke the gate, none of the Turks yet comming to the defence thereof, or to hinder them from entring. The firſt that appeared were two hundred Turkes, which with their wonted crie, *Alla, Alla*, in ſuch hideous manner as if they would therewith haue rent the heauens, would haue ſtayed the Chriſtians from farther entring, but were themſelues ouercharged by three hundred which were alreadie entred. At which time alſo the Baſſa came on, with more than a thouſand following him, and that with ſuch courage and furie, as was neuer greater to be ſeene in any Turke: where after a moſt terrible fight maintained by
C the ſpace of two houres, the Baſſa himſelfe being ſlain, the Turks began by a little to retire; whereby a thouſand Chriſtians mo had leiſure to enter: when ſtrait waies after came *Giaffer* the great Baſſa with aboue a thouſand tall ſouldiors following him, all the inhabitants alſo of RAB running after him, and that with ſuch force, that they conſtrained the Chriſtians to retire vnto the gate wherby they entred. Who (reſolued rather honourably to die within the towne, than with diſhonour to bee forced out) there with incredible courage ſuſtained the greateſt impreſſion of the furious enemie: where was to be ſeene the true Chriſtian valour, for the performance of ſo great an exploit, well worthie of eternall memorie. But this Baſſa alſo (the other being dead of a wound in his necke) encountred by the lord *Swartzenburg*, after he had in that ſharpe conflict ſhewed great tokens of his valour, was there at length ſlaine alſo: both whoſe heads ſtrucke off,
D were for a preſent afterwards ſent to the emperour at PRAGA, with all the particularities of the whole action. But now the Turkes perceiuing that all their chiefe commaunders were ſlaine, retired moſt part of them into the citie: ſome three hundred of them crept vnderneath one of the bulwarks, where ſtood certaine barrels of gunpouder, which they deſperately ſet on fire, and ſo together with themſelues blew vp 300 Chriſtians that were aboue vpon the bulwarke, the greateſt loſſe the Chriſtians had in all that victorie, who were otherwiſe ſuppoſed not to haue loſt therein aboue 200 of their men. Thus the Turks diſcomfited and altogether full of feare, looſing both their force and courage, fled in euery place before the Chriſtians, they in euery corner making of them a moſt horrible ſlaughter. The Turkiſh women all this while out of their windowes and other high places, ceaſed not to caſt downe ſtones, timber, and ſuch like things vpon
E the heads of the Chriſtians, whom they thought by all means to annoy, and to helpe the Turks. The bloudie execution continued all that day vntill night, the Chriſtians ſtill finding one or other hidden in the moſt ſecret places of the citie, vpon whom to exerciſe their wrath: who ranſacking alſo euery corner thereof, were by the wealth therein found greatly enriched. But comming to the palace of *Giaffer* the great Baſſa, they found ſuch great ſtore of rich furniture, as better beſeemed ſome great prince than a Turkiſh ſlaue. There they found alſo letters written in carracters of gold from the Baſſa of BVDA to this Baſſa, greeting him, and promiſing him in his behalfe to deale with the grand ſignior againſt the next ſpring, with the firſt that his army ſhould take the field, That he might therein haue ſome honourable place of commaund, to the end hee might in the field ſhew his greater valour, and no longer lie idly in that ſtrong towne. So found
F they there alſo many things written from the great Sultan himſelfe vnto this Baſſa, with great ſtore of coine, which all fell to the ſouldiors ſhare; inſomuch that by this ſo notable an exploit, ſo well performed, ... publicke ſtate, together with the ſouldiors priuat, was not a little bettered. There amongſt other things were recouered threeſcore and ſix pieces of artillerie, which were knowne to haue been ſometime the Emperours, and foure and twentie others, which the Baſſa had

Rab ſurpriſed by the Chriſtians

Two of the Turks Baſſaes ſlaine.

A great bootie.

taken the way to VIENNA. The Gouernour thus fully inſtructed of their eſcape, demaunded of G
them farther, how the ſtrong towne of RAB was by the Turks gouerned and guarded: who told
him verie euill, and with ſmall care, eſpecially ſince the departure of the emperours campe: and
alſo, that foure gates of the towne were filled vp with earth, which if they were broken open,
would all fall into the towne ditch, and ſo further them that would attempt to enter: with diuers
other particularities. Whereof the Gouernour hauing well conſidered, thought with himſelfe,
that if by ſome ingenious deuice hee might by night with ſome good ſtrength vpon the ſudden
enter the towne, it might happily be ſo againe recouered. Vpon which ſo great a deſignement
he thought good to conſult farther with the lord *Palfi*, whom he requeſted in all haſt and with as
much ſecreſie as was poſſible, with 1600 foot and as many horſe as he could make, to come vn-
to him to KOMARA. Who vpon the aduertiſement ſo giuen ſtaied not, but preſently giuing or- H
der vnto his men, ſet forward by night, and the ſixand twentith day of March before day with
1400 foot, and 120 horſe arriued at KOMARA; where they were all ioyfully receiued, and the
gates after they were entred, againe faſt ſhut, and ſo kept for feare of the enemies ſecret ſpies, of
whom no man can be too wary, be he neuer ſo wiſe. Now whileſt theſe ſoldiors were refreſhing
themſelues, in the mean time the Gouernor with the lord *Palfi* diſcourſed to the full concerning
the entended enterpriſe: which reſolued vpon, they found themſelues vpon the view of their
men to haue two thouſand ſix hundred foot of the garriſon ſouldiors, and three hundred horſe,
all good and couragious men, and well appointed for the entended ſeruice: who there ſtaying
two dayes after their comming, and many of them in the meane time (after the manner of their
religion) confeſſing themſelues, and receiuing the ſacrament, were become ſo couragious, as that I
they doubted not in the quarrell of the Chriſtian Religion to encounter a farre greater number
of the Turks than themſelues. And the more to ſtirre them vp, the lord *Palfi* at the ſame time
The notable ſpeech of the lord Palfi vnto his ſouldiors. deliuered vnto them a notable ſpeech: not for all that telling them whither they were to go, but
that they were his Chriſtian ſoldiors and brethren, vnder his leading both of long and late time;
who neuer by him deceiued of their wonted pay at ſuch time as it was due, would not now as he
hoped forſake him. And albeit that he well knew them to haue deſerued at his hands a greater
contentment: neuertheleſſe being himſelfe depriued of his reuenue by theſe late warres, and his
poſſeſſions euery houre ſubiect vnto the incurſions of the Turks, could not therfore according
to his deſire and their deſerts, ſhew vnto them the great good will he bare them: Yet that now,
and euen preſently was come the time wherein they might not onely abundantly enrich them- K
ſelues, but alſo adorne their heads with an immortall crowne of glory, and make themſelues for
euer famous, by performing the moſt happie and glorious exploit that euer was by valorous
ſouldiors attempted or atchieued in that patt of the world. And to the intent that they might
know how dearely he accounted of the life and honour of euerie one of them, he would there-
fore himſelfe with the lord *Swartzenburg* (of whom proceeded all that faire deuiſe and new ſtra-
tageme) bee preſent with them in the action: and that therefore they were not to thinke, that
they were led foorth to any priuat danger, farther than their commaunders themſelues: whoſe
folly were to be accounted great, if raſhly & vpon no good ground they ſhould aduenture their
liues and honors together: wherof they ought not now to doubt, hauing by a thouſand proofes
knowne, how much they had been of them alwaies regarded. And that therefore it behoued L
them ſo much the more to ſhew their valour in this piece of ſeruice vndertaken for the great be-
nefit of the Chriſtian common weale, and the honour of Chriſt Ieſu: vnto whom they were
with one accord to make their praiers, with his mightie hand to ſtrengthen their hearts, and with
glorious victory to bring to happie end the intended exploit againſt his enemies, to the honour
of his name, and the aduancement of the chriſtian religion and faith. At the end of which ſpeech
all the ſouldiors cried aloud, That they were moſt readie to do any their commands, and to fol-
low them whither ſoeuer. So order was taken, that within three houres they ſhould euery man
be preſt & ready with their armes according to their places: and ſo hauing well refreſhed them-
ſelues, about eleuen a clocke the ſeuen and twentith day of March, they in good order began to M
ſet forwards toward RAB. But for that the multitude of ſouldiors oftentimes giueth the enemie
warning of that is intended againſt him, *Palfi* gaue order to one *Iohn Stroine* his Sergiant maior,
to follow faire and ſoftly after him with 1700 horſe and foot, which he well performed. And ſo
vpon the breake of the day they began to draw towards RAB, and there lay cloſe in ambuſh all
that day vntill night, about ſeuen miles ſhort of the towne: refreſhing themſelues in the meane
time

A time with plentie of victuals, which they had brought with them from KOMARA. Night (the fauourer of deceit) being come, in two houres march they began to draw neere to RAB, and there ſtayed about fiue houres: from whence they ſent before them a French enginer, a man of great iudgement, with thirteene others (before rewarded with 1500 duckats) hauing with them foure Petardes (engines of force to blow vp into the aire any thing whereunto they be faſtened, be it neuer ſo great or weightie;) where by good chance they found the draw bridge down, and the portculleis vp: for that the Turkes then caſting no perill, expected euerie houre for certaine wagons with prouiſion from ALBA REGALIS. By which good hap the Chriſtians vnperceiued comming to the gate, and thereunto faſtening their Petardes, in good order gaue fire to the
B ſame, which preſently tooke not hold: yet were they not farre gone, but that they were by a Sentinell deſcried, who demaunding what they were, was preſently anſwered by the violent engines, which in a trice tore in ſunder the gate, with ſome part of the wall and of the fortifications neere vnto it. When now the watch (but all too late) began to giue the alarum, and the Chriſtians in the foreward thruſting preſently in, tooke the gate, none of the Turks yet comming to the defence thereof, or to hinder them from entring. The firſt that appeared were two hundred Turkes, which with their wonted crie, *Alla, Alla*, in ſuch hideous manner as if they would therewith haue rent the heauens, would haue ſtayed the Chriſtians from farther entring, but were themſelues ouercharged by three hundred which were alreadie entred. At which time alſo the Baſſa came on, with more than a thouſand following him, and that with ſuch courage and furie, as was neuer greater to be ſeene in any Turke: where after a moſt terrible fight maintained by
C the ſpace of two houres, the Baſſa himſelfe being ſlain, the Turks began by a little to retire; whereby a thouſand Chriſtians mo had leiſure to enter: when ſtrait waies after came *Giaffer* the great Baſſa with aboue a thouſand tall ſouldiors following him, all the inhabitants alſo of RAB running after him, and that with ſuch force, that they conſtrained the Chriſtians to retire vnto the gate wherby they entred. Who (reſolued rather honourably to die within the towne, than with diſhonour to bee forced out) there with incredible courage ſuſtained the greateſt impreſſion of the furious enemie: where was to be ſeene the true Chriſtian valour, for the performance of ſo great an exploit, well worthie of eternall memorie. But this Baſſa alſo (the other being dead of a wound in his necke) encountred by the lord *Swartzenburg*, after he had in that ſharpe conflict ſhewed great tokens of his valour, was there at length ſlaine alſo: both whoſe heads ſtrucke off,
D were for a preſent afterwards ſent to the emperour at PRAGA, with all the particularities of the whole action. But now the Turkes perceiuing that all their chiefe commaunders were ſlaine, retired moſt part of them into the citie: ſome three hundred of them crept vnderneath one of the bulwarks, where ſtood certaine barrels of gunpouder, which they deſperately ſet on fire, and ſo together with themſelues blew vp 300 Chriſtians that were aboue vpon the bulwarke, the greateſt loſſe the Chriſtians had in all that victorie, who were otherwiſe ſuppoſed not to haue loſt therein aboue 200 of their men. Thus the Turks diſcomfited and altogether full of feare, looſing both their force and courage, fled in euery place before the Chriſtians, they in euery corner making of them a moſt horrible ſlaughter. The Turkiſh women all this while out of their windowes and other high places, ceaſed not to caſt downe ſtones, timber, and ſuch like things vpon
E the heads of the Chriſtians, whom they thought by all means to annoy, and to helpe the Turks. The bloudie execution continued all that day vntill night, the Chriſtians ſtill finding one or other hidden in the moſt ſecret places of the citie, vpon whom to exerciſe their wrath: who ranſacking alſo euery corner thereof, were by the wealth therein found greatly enriched. But comming to the palace of *Giaffer* the great Baſſa, they found ſuch great ſtore of rich furniture, as better beſeemed ſome great prince than a Turkiſh ſlaue. There they found alſo letters written in carracters of gold from the Baſſa of BVDA to this Baſſa, greeting him, and promiſing him in his behalfe to deale with the grand ſignior againſt the next ſpring, with the firſt that his army ſhould take the field, That he might therein haue ſome honourable place of commaund, to the end hee might in the field ſhew his greater valour, and no longer lie idly in that ſtrong towne. So found
F they there alſo many things written from the great Sultan himſelfe vnto this Baſſa, with great ſtore of coine, which all fell to the ſouldiors ſhare; inſomuch that by this ſo notable an exploit, ſo well performed, ... publicke ſtate, together with the ſouldiors priuat, was not a little bettered. There amongſt other things were recouered threeſcore and ſix pieces of artillerie, which were knowne to haue been ſometime the Emperours, and foure and twentie others, which the Baſſa had

Rab ſurpriſed by the Chriſtians

Two of the Turks Baſſaes ſlaine.

A great bootie.

had caused to be brought from BVDA, with great store of shot and pouder and other small pie- G
ces, and meale sufficient to haue serued foure thousand men for a yeare and a halfe, but of wine (little vsed of the Turkes) onely foure vessels. In the Bassaes palace was also found of armour and weapons of all sorts, great store, with abundance of cloth and apparell, which was all giuen in spoile to the souldiors. Thus RAB, one of the strongest fortresses of Christendome, not full foure yeares before besieged by *Sinan Bassa* with 150 thousand men, by the space of almost of three months, and then at length by the treason of the Gouernour to him betraid; was now in one night, by the valour and policie of a few resolute men to their immortall glorie againe restored to the Christian common-weale, the nineteenth day of March in the yeare 1598. Of which so notable a victorie, the Christians reioyced not a little both in HVNGARIE and elsewhere: the great Sultan with the Turkes in the meane time no lesse grieuing and storming, as H
well for the losse of the towne before got with no small charge, as for the death of his people there slaine, to the number of about six thousand and moe, with the losse of scarce six hundred Christians.

A great tumult betweene the Ianizaries and the Spahi.

Yet for all this *Mahomet* the great Sultan ceased not to make great prouision for his wars in HVNGARIE, and that greater than before; and so with greater furie also, to prosecute his wrathfull indignation, to be reuenged vpon the Christians. Whereunto order was giuen vnto *Ibrahim Bassa* his brother in law, and Generall of his armie, with all conuenient speed to take the field: which for all that fell out farre otherwise, for that now thinking to haue had all things in good forwardnesse, a great dissention rise betwixt the Ianizaries and the Spahi: the Ianizaries being the best footmen, and the Spahi the best horsemen of the Turkish empire; both the faith- I
full keepers of the person of their prince, and the greatest strength of his state: whereby it commeth to passe, that in setting forward towards the wars, these two sorts of valiant souldiors, the one standing vpon their strength, and the other vpon their honour, and both iealous of their reputation and credit, haue no good liking of one the other, but oftentimes, and especially of late in this corruption of their martiall discipline vnder their degenerat emperors, fall at ods among themselues, as now they did, to the great hinderance of their affaires, & trouble of their Generall. Insomuch that to appease this tumult, he was glad to put to death certain of the insolent Ianizaries, refusing to set forward as they were by their Aga commanded. But proceeding farther, and thinking to haue executed some others of them also, to the farther terror of the rest; hee was by them and their adherents put in such feare of his life, that to auoid the present danger, he was glad K
to excuse himselfe by his lieutenant, laying all the blame vpon him as the cause therof: who was therfore as a sacrifice deliuered vnto the fury of the Ianizaries, by whom he was there presently slaine, with some others of the Bassa his followers. So these broiles with much adoe ouerpast, *Ibrahim* hauing taken a generall reuiew of his army at SOPHIA, there staied, expecting order from the great Sultan where to begin his wars, in HVNGARIE or in TRANSYLVANIA (for as yet that was in question:) which could not well be before the beginning of Iuly, by reason of the scarcitie of victuals euen then arising in the camp: for the supplying wherof *Mahomet* himselfe had no small care. But this long delay was the cause that a great number of the Ianizaries comming from HADRIANOPLE, and hearing by the way that the Generall would not as yet set forward, not knowing the cause of his stay, and doubting to bee deceiued of their promised entertainment, L
were about to haue returned back againe: which known at the court, commandement was presently sent thence vnto the Generall, without longer stay to set forward toward HVNGARIE, which the more hastened his departure with his armie.

In this the Turkes so long delay, the Christians had good leisure to prepare their new forces, being now the latter end of Sommer: for well they might thinke that the enemie slept not, knowing what prouision hee had made as well in CONSTANTINOPLE as in other places. Wherefore reasonably doubting, that Sommer well spent, and August now at hand, hee would not so late turne his forces into the lower HVNGARIE, they thought it best to prouide for the safetie of the vpper countrey: And to the end that the enemie approching those frontiers might there find forces readie to encounter him, the lord *George Basta*, a man of great experience and M
valour, was appointed lieutenant Generall for that countrey; to the great contentment of the souldiors in generall, all shewing themselues most readie at his commaund. The lord *Swartzenburg* in the meane time remaining in the lower HVNGARIE at RAB, with eight thousand good souldiors: and the Archduke *Matthias* at VIENNA for the dispatch of *George Basta*, and the

A the haſting of him forward: for that the vpper HVNGARIE to the great hurt thereof began now to feele the incurſions of the Turks and Tartars: beſides that, he was afterwards to returne himſelfe to ſpeake with the emperour his brother, ſtill expecting a Chiaus of the Turkes by the appointment of the grand ſeignior, ſent by the way of POLONIA for PRAGE, to intreat with the emperor concerning a peace.

They of BVDA in the mean while ſeeing the delay of the Turks, of whom not one band yet appeared in thoſe quarters; and on the other ſide perceiuing the great preparation of the Imperials, and the great garriſon at RAB ſo neere at hand; began now to doubt ſome new reſolution of the Chriſtians: wherein they were no whit deceiued; for no armie of the Turkes being then in field in the lower HVNGARIE, and the countrey plaine and open, the lord *Palſi* with a conue- *Buda beſieged by the Chriſtians.*
B nient power & certain pieces of batterie ſet forward to attempt the enterpriſe, and the ſixteenth of October with ſixteene pieces of artillerie began to batter the citie of BVDA, to the great feare and diſcomfiture of them within: hauing firſt taken the fort S. *Gerarde*, with hope to haue gained the reſt alſo. For which cauſe, the men, the women, and all that dwelt in the citie, moſt inſtantly beſought the Baſſa, not to endure the deſtruction of the ſame, with the inhabitants and wealth thereof altogither; but being not able long to hold out againſt ſo furious a batterie, in time to hearken vnto ſome reaſonable compoſition, that ſo they might yet euery man at leaſt with life depart. Whereunto the Baſſa for all that would not hearken, but put them ſtill in hope that they ſhould be preſently relieued. Howbeit the batterie ſtill continuing, and they not able longer to endure the force of the Imperials, nor any reliefe yet comming, they were glad at
C length to abandon the citie with the loſſe of two thouſand of the Ianizaries, and but three hundred of the Chriſtians ſlaine, and eight hundred hurt: the reſt of the Turkes at the ſame time retiring themſelues into the caſtle, where they might for a ſpace deeme themſelues ſafe. So the lord *Palſi* poſſeſſed of the citie, with all his forces laid ſiege vnto the caſtle, which although it were in ſome places ſhaken with the continuall furie of the cannon, yet were the defendants ſtill readie to make good the ſame: inſomuch, that *Palſi* vpon good hope of ſucceſſe giuing thereunto a generall aſſault, was by their valour enforced to retire; they within in the meane time with great labour and induſtrie repairing the breaches and gaules made by the artillerie. So that *Palſi* conſidering the difficultie of the aſſault, thought it better by vndermining to ſhake the rock whereon the caſtle ſtood, than by a new aſſault to expoſe ſo many worthie men vnto ſo mani-
D feſt a danger: which his purpoſe by the enemie diſcouered, was by them alſo by countermining diſappointed: yet for all that were the Chriſtians ſtill in good hope by another mine not yet by the enemie perceiued, to ſort to the full of their deſire: and the more, for that they ſaw not ſo much brauerie, or ſhew of courage in the defendants as before. Who now kept themſelues ſilent and quiet, as if they had bin conſulting about the yeelding vp of the caſtle, as men bereft of all hope of reliefe and ſuccour; the Chriſtians being now poſſeſſed of a ſtrong abbey and fortreſſe faſt by, and hauing broken downe all the bridges ouer the riuer Danubius, in ſuch ſort, as that the beſieged could not receiue any reliefe either by land or water. But foraſmuch as the time of the yere began now to grow tedious, & the Winter weather ſharp, the Chriſtians thought it not beſt there long to protract the time; and therfore reſolued to preſent vnto the caſtle another
E generall aſſault, and at the ſame inſtant to blow vp the mine: but in giuing this aſſault, they were againe repulſed with the loſſe of two hundred men. At which time alſo a number of the Turks ſallying out of the caſtle, couragiouſly encountred the Chriſtians, but not with ſucceſſe anſwerable to their valour, being there almoſt all cut in pieces: neither did the mine take the deſired effect, but being blowne vp did little or no harme at all. So that the Chriſtians wearie of their long ſuffering of the extremitie of the weather, and withall conſidering the great courage of the defendants, were euen vpon the point to haue riſen: yet willing to giue a freſh attempt by the mine, they began againe to worke in the ſame, and in hope to preuaile began to parley with the defendants about the giuing vp of the caſte, but all to little or no purpoſe; for that the mine hauing taken no effect, the ſouldiours could hardly be drawne on through the deepe and muddie
F ditches, to giue a new aſſault. In fine, ſeeing no hope to preuaile, and hearing alſo of the com- *The Chriſtians depart from the ſiege of Buda.*
ming of a great armie of the Turks for the reliefe of the beſieged, they raiſed their ſiege, and at their departure burnt their ſuburbs, carrying away with them a great bootie: and ſo retiring towards STRIGONIVM, expected farther direction where to winter. Where ſhortly after order was taken, that the forces diſbanded ſhould be diſperſed, ſome into the garriſons, and ſome into

the countrie thereabout; to the intent they might ſo be in the more readineſſe with the firſt of G
the next Spring to take the field, or as occaſion ſhould ſerue to be otherwiſe imploied.

But *Sigiſmund* the Tranſyluanian prince in the mean time repenting himſelfe of the vnequall exchange he had made with the emperour, in diſguiſed apparell haſting in poſt out of SILESIA came to CLAVSENBVRG in TRASYLVANIA: and there ioyfully receiued of his ſubiects, and taking of them a new oath of obedience, by meſſengers ſent of purpoſe certified *Maximilian* the Archduke (appointed by the emperour for the gouernment of TRANSYLVANIA, and now vpon his way as farre as CASSOVIA) of the cauſes of his returne, perſuading him rather to conuert his forces againſt the Turkes for the recouerie of AGRIA, than to trouble himſelfe to come any farther for TRANSYLVANIA, now againe by him to the great contentment of his ſubiects repoſſeſſed: as did alſo the princeſſe his wife (*Maximilian* his couſin german) wiſhing him to H
conſider what hurt and diſhonour he ſhould do vnto the emperour his maieſtie, himſelfe, the Roman empire, and the whole Chriſtian common-weale in generall, if in ſo dangerous a time hee ſhould attempt any thing againſt the prince her huſband, and vnto him by her ſo neerely allied.

Veradinum beſieged by the Turkes.

Now the Turks great armie being come into the vpper HVNGARIE, lay encamped vnder the wals of the ſtrong citie of VERADINVM, where that worthie captaine *George Baſta* was lieutenant Generall for the emperour: but not hauing ſuch ſtrength, as without farther helpe to goe againſt ſo mightie an enemie, or to relieue the beſieged citie, not as then furniſhed with a ſufficient garriſon, he gaue knowledge thereof vnto *Maximilian* the Archduke, who (as is aforeſaid) with a conuenient power was but a little before come to CASSOVIA; to haue gone into TRANSILVANIA, I
had he not there by the way beene ſtaied by embaſſadours from the prince *Sigiſmund* but lately before returned out of SILESIA; and hauing againe taken vpon him the gouernment, by theſe his embaſſadours requeſted him no farther to trouble himſelfe with that iourney, offering to giue him aid againſt the Turkes whenſoeuer he ſhould require it. The beſieged neuertheleſſe in the meane time notably defended themſelues, and with certain braue ſallies did the enemie great harme; ſtill expecting, that *Baſta* the lieutenant, or the Tranſyluanian prince, or *Maximilian* the Archduke, or they all with their vnited forces ſhould ſend them reliefe: vnto whom they gaue knowledge the nineteenth of October, how that the Turkes with all the force and furie they had vſed, had as yet little preuailed, being by their valour ſtill repulſed, and with many ſharpe ſallies to their great loſſe encountred, and ſome of their great ordinance cloyed, in K
ſuch ſort, as that they were in good hope to protract the time vntill they might by them their friends be relieued: yet not doubting, but that the Turkes according to their wonted manner, would do what they might to ſubdue them. According to whoſe expectation, the Tranſyluanian prince with a great power taking the field to haue relieued them, was letted ſo to do by the Tartars, to that purpoſe ſtirred vp by the Turks: ſo that he could by no means ioine his forces with *Maximilian*, for looking to the ſafetie of his owne people and countrie. Yet in token of forwardneſſe, he ſent certain companies of braue ſouldiors vnto the lieutenant *Baſta*: who vnderſtanding that of two thouſand good ſouldiors in garriſon in the citie at the beginning of the ſiege, there were ſcarce ſeuen hundred left aliue; all the reſt being with continuall aſſaults ſlaine

A new ſupplie put into Veradinum by Baſta.

or mortally wounded, vſed a notable ſtratageme to delude the enemie withall: for hauing put L
his men in good order, and comming brauely on, as if he would euen preſently haue ioyned battell (a thing which the Turkes moſt deſired) whileſt they likewiſe with great ſtirre were putting themſelues in order of battell, and wholly buſied therein, he by another way (of the Turks leaſt ſuſpected) cunningly thruſt into the citie eight hundred good ſoldiors; and that done, preſently retired againe into his trenches, wherein he ſtrongly encamped feared not all the Turkes forces: who thinking euen then to haue come to a day of battell, and ſtill in vaine expecting the ſame, returned deceiued by this fineneſſe. And ſo ſhortly after (enforced by contiuall foule weather) raiſed their ſiege, not without great difficultie & danger (reliefe lying ſo neere at hand, and the defendants ſtrengthned with new ſupplies) to haue beene longer maintained. So paſſed the troubles of this yeare, with no gaine but great loſſe of the Turks: who at their departure enforced by the vnſeaſonablenes of the weather and feare togither, left behind them in their trenches M
many tents, with ſome great pieces of artillerie, being not able to conuay the ſame by water to BVDA: and withall fearing greatly to be encountred by the forces of *Baſta*, ſtrengthned with new ſupplies euen then ſent vnto him from the emperour.

The

A the ſix and twentith of october with all his armie, before deuided into three parts, but now againe vnited, came into the plaines neere TEMISON, about three leagues from HARMENSTAT: where vnderſtanding that his lieutenant corrupted by *Ibrahim Baſſa*, had promiſed to kill him; and now well aſſured thereof, to rid himſelfe of that danger, with his owne hands preſently cut his throat, and ſo diſpatched him. When by and by after came vnto him the Popes Nuntio, ſent by a fineneſſe from the Cardinall, accompanied with another embaſſadour, the better to countenance out the matter, telling him, that the ſame embaſſadour had commiſſion from the emperor, to will him forthwith to deſiſt from armes, and without further delay to depart out of TRANSYLVANIA. Which thing ſeeming vnto the Vayuod very ſtrange and almoſt impoſſible, hee deſired to ſee the ſaid commiſſion. Whereunto the Nuncio before inſtructed, anſwered, that he
B had left it with the Cardinall himſelfe: but I (ſaid the Vayuod) haue one here preſent from the Emperour of another purport, which I purpoſe fully to put in execution: yet was he for that day entreated by the Nuncio to ſtay his armie. And ſo in the meane time lying both ſtill, and in great ſuſpence, the Vayuod deſired to know of the Nuncio the cauſe why the Cardinall forgetting himſelfe, ſo troubled that countrey, by intruding himſelfe thereinto, to the great preiudice of them vnto whom it of better right belonged, not attending vnto the gouernment of the church, better beſeeming his calling than the managing of armes, to the diſturbance of the chriſtian peace. Whereunto he receiued no anſwere. So the eight and twentith of October, a day dedicated to the commemoration of the Apoſtles *Simon* and *Iude*, theſe meſſengers were ſent backe againe vnto the Cardinall: who preſently returned them back vnto the Vayuod with new
C inſtructions (being then buſie with his yong ſonne, in ſetting his men in order of battell, preſently to goe againſt the Cardinall:) of whom they could get no other anſwer, but that he was reſolued forthwith to come vnto the triall of a battell with him. So the two armies lying encamped not paſt a quarter of a league the one from the other, and the ſame day meeting together, ioyned a moſt terrible and cruell battell, which for the ſpace of fiue houres was with ſuch deſperat obſtinacie fought, as if they had euerie man vowed to haue carried away the victorie ouer his enemie, or there to haue left themſelues dead vpon the ground; vntill the Cardinals people at length ouercome in a long and bloudie fight, were there vtterly ouerthrowne: amongſt whom were thirtie thouſand Turks and Tartars, ſent vnto him from *Ibrahim Baſſa* the Turks Generall. The cardinall himſelfe ſeeing the diſcomfiture of his armie, was by ſome reported to haue ſaued
D himſelfe by flight: but by ſome others was ſaid to haue beene drowned in paſſing a riuer, as he fled from the Valachians that had him in chaſe. But the truth was, that the Vayuod now maſter of the field, ſent out certaine troups of horſemen diuers wayes ſtill to purſue him: and himſelfe with the reſt of his armie proſecuting the victorie, came to the Cardinals campe, now by the Tranſyluanians and Turkes quite forſaken, wherein he found fiue and fortie pieces of artillerie, with great ſtore of coine and wealth, beſide a number of tents and horſes, all which became vnto him a prey. From thence he marched vnto ALBA IVLIA, where hee was with great ioy receiued of his friends and confederats there: for though the greater part of the Tranſyluanians, eſpecially the nobilitie, had together with the Cardinall ſubmitted themſelues vnto the Turkes protection, and followed his enſignes: yet were there diuers others alſo, who ſtill fauoured the em-
E perour, and therefore reioyced not a little of this victorie. The Vayuod after that ſent his lieutenant to CLAVDIOPOLIS, to ſee if they would yeeld alſo: which they willingly did, with many other cities and caſtles in diuers parts of that countrey, which hauing none to reſt vpon, now yeelded alſo: in ſuch ſort, that ſhortly after all TRANSYLVANIA ſubmitted it ſelfe againe vnto the emperours obeiſance, and ſwore vnto him obedience: moſt of the nobilitie of that countrey being either ſlaine in the battell, or afterwards put to death by the Vayuod: amongſt whom were fiue, which corrupted by the Cardinall, had before vndertaken to kill him. Now the foureteenth of Nouember, after diuers reports of the Cardinals eſcape, his vngratious head was for all that preſented vnto the Vayuod, which to the terrour of others, being for a while ſet vp in ALBA IVLIA (where he but a little before had commaunded as a prince) was afterwards taken
F downe, and ſent for a preſent from the Vayuod vnto the Emperour and the Archdukes his brethren; his headleſſe bodie being afterward by the commaundement of the Vayuod honourably buried in a monaſterie at ALBA IVLIA, in the ſame tombe he had before made for his brother, beheaded by his couſin *Sigiſmund Bathor*. The Cardinals treaſure alſo fell into his hands, which was ſaid to haue beene three millions of gold. Thus the countrey of TRANSYLVANIA, latelie before

A terrible battell betwixt the Vayuod and the Cardinall.

The Cardinals head ſent for a preſent vnto the emperour.

before by the Cardinall yeelded vnto the obeiſance of the Turke, was againe by this worthie Vayuod recouered, and reſtored vnto the Chriſtian empire; the proud Cardinall caſt out and brought to confuſion, hauing not yet poſſeſſed theſe his new honours full eight moneths. His couſin *Sigiſmund*, the late Tranſyluanian prince, who almoſt all this while had ſtaied at BORVSIA, and in diſguiſed apparell ſeene DASNKE, and diuers other the free cities therabouts, now hearing newes of the Cardinals ouerthrow, ſecretly got him away from thence into POLONIA to ſeeke againe his new fortunes. The lord *Swartzenburg* at the ſame time vniting his forces in the lower HVNGARIE with them of STIRIA, and now twentie thouſand ſtrong, ſought by all meanes to reduce ſo many places vpon thoſe frontiers as he could vnto the emperors obeiſance, & ſo tooke in aboue two hundred villages. But afterward thinking to haue ſurpriſed the ſtrong caſtle of CAPISVAR, and by night ſecretly approching one of the gates with a Petarde, which tooke not the expected effect, hee was diſcouered by the watch, and ſo by the garriſon ſouldiors (now raiſed with the alarum) repulſed, and inforced to retire with the loſſe of about an hundred men, and diuers others wounded, all men of good account: in reuenge whereof *Swartzenburg* afterwards ſent out diuers troups of horſmen, which ſcouring all ouer the countrey as far as SIGETH, burnt it alſo, and ſo returning, caried away with them a great bootie. G H

Ibrahim Baſſa hearing of this ouerthrow of the Cardinall, with all the forces he had ſent him, much troubled therewith, ſent newes thereof in poſt to CONSTANTINOPLE: the brute whereof brought a general feare vpon the whole citie alſo, inſomuch that commiſſion was forthwith ſent vnto him from the great Sultan, giuing him power (if it might be) to come to ſome honourable peace with the emperour, and to bring it with him to CONSTANTINOPLE: whither hee was ſhortly to returne, being now no longer time to keepe the field with his armie, which beſide the cold ſeaſon of the yeare, ſuffred great want of bread, the plague alſo then raging therin with the death of many his beſt ſouldiors both horſe and foot, beſide the wonderfull mortalitie of their cattell alſo: in ſuch ſort, that the ſouldiors not able longer to endure the famine & wants increaſing, fell to robbing of one another, and ſo at length into mutinie; wherein diuers of them being ſlaine and cut in pieces by their fellows, the reſt for the moſt part brake in ſunder of themſelues, and ſo by diuers waies returned home, not well truſting one another. So that nothing more was now done with the great preparation of the Turkes, their armie being diſcomfited with wants and the euill ſucceſſe of their affaires, as well in HVNGARIE as in TRANSYLVANIA. Neither did *Ibrahim* the great Baſſa for the reliefe of thoſe euils, at his returne bring any concluſion of peace vnto his great lord and maſter, as was commonly expected.

The Turks great armie of it ſelfe diſſolued. I K

Cuſahin Baſſa of Caramania riſeth vp in rebellion againſt the great Sultan.

Now beſide theſe troubles of TRANSYLVANIA and the other reuolted countries, *Cuſahin* (or as ſome call him *Caſſan*) the ſonne of one of the Sultaneſſes, brought vp in the Seraglio according to the manner thereof, and hauing long ſerued in the wars of PERSIA and HVNGARIE, and ſo at length made Baſſa of CARAMANIA, a man of great ſpirit, and not able to endure the imperfections he daily ſaw in the *Othoman* empire, and the cowardiſe of the graund ſignior; vpon the report of the euill ſucceſſe of the affaires of HVNGARIE on the one ſide, and the deſire he ſaw in the Perſians to recouer their loſt fortreſſes on the other, and grieued alſo with more particular wrongs concerning himſelfe; as a man altogether diſcontented, reſolued to take vp armes: and calling vnto him his ſouldiors, and (as he was a well ſpoken man) laying before them the deformities of the preſent ſtate, gallantly perſuaded them with the promiſe of honour, ſoueraignetie, and rich rewards, what an eaſie thing it were to chaſe the grand ſignior out of ASIA, and to ſet themſelues with all that part of the empire at libertie. And ſo euen at the firſt hauing woon vnto him three thouſand harquebuſiers, and fiue thouſand horſmen, tooke the field to the great hurt of the Turkes, and trouble of the ſtate. A ſtrange matter in that tyrannicall empire. The newes whereof comming in poſt to the Court, commiſſion was forthwith directed vnto foure of the Sanzakes of ASIA neereſt vnto him, for the ſpeedie ſuppreſſing of that rebellion but euen then ariſing. Whereof *Cuſahin* vnderſtanding, and that they with ten thouſand horſe and foot were comming to oppreſſe him: without farther ſtay went couragiouſly to meet them, and ſo encountring of them, ouerthrew them with a great ſlaughter, and tooke from them their baggage with ſix pieces of great ordinance. And after with his people ſeized vpon all the caſtles thereabouts, giuing whatſoeuer he found therein for a prey vnto his ſouldiors: who alſo much enriched themſelues with the ſpoile of the Iewes, as the people whom they moſt hated, and neuer reſted vntill he had made almoſt all the countrey of CARAMANIA his owne. After that he L M

laid

A the Spaniards in the lower ſide of GERMANIE) which made him the more to dread the enemies comming, who he knew after his accuſtomed manner would that Summer appeare in the field with a farre greater number. But to haue holpen this want, the great duke of MVSCOVIE about this time, by his embaſſadours amongſt other things requeſted leaue of the Polonian, for fortie thouſand horſemen to paſſe through his countrey, which horſemen he had determined (as hee ſaid) to ſend in aid of the emperour againſt the Turke. Which his requeſt the Polonian would by no meanes graunt, as dangerous to his eſtate. wherefore the Muſcouite offended with the Polonian, ſent other his embaſſadours vnto the emperour by ſea: who embarked in an Engliſh ſhip in the port of *S. Nicolas*, and ſayling about the kingdomes of SVVEDEN, NORVVAY and DENMARKE, after long trouble at ſea, at length arriued at STOAD, and ſo from thence by land
B trauelling to HAMBOROVV, LVBECKE, and MAIDENBOROVV, and in euery place honourably entertained, came at laſt vnto the emperour into BOHEMIA, then lying at PLISENA, for that the plague was then hot at PRAGE: where they hauing with great ſtate deliuered their perſents and letters of credence vnto the emperour; had audience, and were by him moſt honorably vſed. Yet the Polonian hauing thus denied the Muſcouite paſſage, ſuffered the Turks embaſſadour, who called himſelfe *Gabriel* a Iew, to paſſe through his countrey vnto the emperour, to entreat with him of a peace to be made betwixt him and the Turk. Which *Gabriel* comming to PRAGE as embaſſador from the great Turke, and hauing no letters of credence to ſhew for his negotiation (for that they were, as he ſaid, vpon the way taken from him by the Polonian Coſſackes, and certaine of his retinue ſlaine) was there taken for a ſpie, and ſo ſent to VIENNA:
C where at his firſt arriuall he was well vſed in a common Inne: but the night following being taken in his chamber by the Martiall, was ſo clapt faſt in priſon, with as many yrons vpon him as hee could beare, and all his followers with gyues vpon their legs compelled as ſlaues daily to worke in the towne ditch.

The Turkes embaſſador taken for a ſpie, and impriſoned at Vienna.

About this time alſo *Sigiſmund* the Tranſyluanian prince (whom hitherto all men admired as a man euen ſent from heauen, for the benefit of his country and of the Chriſtian commonweale) by a wonderfull change gaue a moſt manifeſt token of a diuers and vnconſtant nature, to the great wonder of the world: For hauing broken the agreement made with the emperour the laſt yeare, and being ſecretly in poſt returned out of SILESIA into TRANSYLVANIA, and againe taken vpon him the gouernment (as is before declared) and hauing withall requeſted himſelfe
D and the Tranſyluanians his countreymen to be diſcharged of the oath of obedience & loyaltie by them before giuen vnto the emperour, and the citie of VERADINVM, with the country thereabout, to be againe reſtored vnto him; and the emperour pauſing thereupon: did now (doubting of his own abilitie for the keeping of that countrey) in the beginning of this yeare 1599, by his embaſſadours the Biſhop of ALBA IVLIA, and *Stephen Paſchai* his Chauncellour, ſent of purpoſe vnto the emperour, requeſt him to haue the firſt agreements againe renewed, and the principalitie of TREBNITZ in MORVIA, to be added vnto the two dukedomes of OPPELL and RATIBOR in SILESIA, with fiftie thouſand duckats to be yearely paied vnto him out of the chamber of the empire: and a generall pardon to be giuen vnto all the Tranſyluanians, that following him had of late reuolted from the emperour, and their auntient liberties to be againe vn-
E to euery one of them confirmed. With all which conditions obtained at the emperours hands (as of him that ſaw how needfull it was for him by any meanes to keepe that ſtrong countrey in his power) the ſame embaſſadours with their diſpatch returned from PRAGE the nineteenth of Aprill.

But *Sigiſmund* in the meane time at home, was entred into new conceits with certaine of the Polonian nobilitie, farre differing from the former agreement with the emperour: and hauing ſent for one of the Turks Chiaus from CONSTANTINOPLE; and for his couſin *Andrew Bathor* the proud Cardinall out of BORVSIA, and ſo meeting with them in an obſcure village in the confines of TRANSYLVANIA, towards POLONIA, accompanied with certaine of the chiefeſt of the ſtates of his countrey: there in the preſence of the Polonians and of the Turkiſh em-
F baſſadour, reſigned all the right and title he had in the countrey of TRANSYLVANIA, vnto the Cardinall his couſin, commaunding all the States there preſent to ſweare vnto him their obedience and fidelity who ſhortly after together with the Polonian embaſſadour ſent on of his eſpeciall fauorits to CONSTANTINOPLE, to deſire ſafe conduct for his embaſſadors to be ſent thither to conclude of all matters with the Turke. Which meſſengers ſo ſent, together with the

Sigiſmund yeeldeth his country of Tranſiluania vnto the Cardinall Bathor his couſin

Polonian embaſſador, were both courteouſly receiued in the Turks Court, and as with an eſpe- G
ciall fauour rewarded with right ſumptuous garments, and charge giuen them, That the Cardi-
nall within three months next ſhould ſend thither a ſolemne embaſſador, with the old accuſto-
med tribute by the Turke demanded. Thus through the inconſtancie of the prince, the ambiti-
on of the proud Cardinall, and the foule colluſion of the Polonian, the countrie of TRANSYL-
VANIA (one of the ſtrongeſt fortreſſes of that ſide of Chriſtendome) falling from the obedience
of the emperor, and ſo in ſort bereft from the Chriſtian commonweale, became againe tributa-
rie vnto the Turke; moſt good men deteſting the lightnes of the one, the ambition of the other,
and the ſlineſſe of the third.

Now the Turkes of BVDA not able longer to endure the great famine therein, had moſt ear-
neſtly requeſted reliefe from the other Turks their friends in HVNGARIE, who on all hands ran H
to haue relieued them: but comming neere thereunto, could not put therein ſuch prouiſion as
they had brought for the reliefe of the ſame, being letted ſo to do by the Imperials; who about
a league off diligently attended euery motion of the enemie: from whence the lord *Swartzen-
burg* in the night ſecretly approching one of the gates with his followers, thought with a Petrad
to haue broken it open, and ſo to haue entred. Which his deuiſe taking not effect, as did that at
RAB, the gate being within ſtrongly fortified by the enemie, he was enforced to depart, being al-
ſo diſcouered by the Turks from the wall. Now ſhortly after the Baſſa of BVDA with ſix hun-
The Baſſa of Buda taken priſoner. dred horſe iſſuing out of the citie to haue met with victuals that were comming thither, fell into
an ambuſh of the Haiducks, who after their maner fiercely encountered him, and putting him
to flight, tooke him priſoner, his horſe in his chaſe falling vnder him: whom his ſouldiours ſee- I
king to reſcue, there began a new skirmiſh, encreaſing their former ouerthrow with the loſſe of
the greateſt part of them that were left: amongſt whom the Baſſa his ſonne, with the Aga of the
Ianizaries, there loſt their liues alſo. Which conflict thus ended, the Baſſa was with ſafe conduct
brought to the campe, and there with great threats enforced to reueale the ſtate of his citie, with
other the ſecret deſignes of the Turkes. Whereupon the Haiduckes returned againe towards
BVDA, ſeeking by all meanes to ſtop the comming of victuals thither, ſo in hope at length to
haue gained the diſtreſſed citie. But whileſt they thus lay vpon the paſſages, behold newes was
brought vnto them, how that the Baſſa of BOSNA, with the Sanzackes of SIGETH, QVINQVE
ECCLESIÆ, and COPPAN, with ten thouſand Turkes were comming to oppreſſe them, and to
The Turks ouerthrown, and the Baſſa of Boſna ſlaine. open the paſſages by them holden. But they knowing their owne ſtrength, and nothing fearing K
ſo ſmal a force, ſtayed not for their comming but went to meet them; and in a place of good ad-
uantage waiting for them, vpon their firſt appearance with great aſſurance and courage charged
them, brake their array, and ſlew the greateſt part of them, togither with the Baſſa himſelfe: yet
with ſo much adoe, as that had not the lord *Palfi* in good time ſent in vnto their aid certain com-
panies of freſh men, it was not without cauſe doubted but that the Haiduckes had bin put to the
worſe, about three hundred of them hauing there alreadie loſt their liues. The Tartars yet neuer-
theleſſe in good number held on their way towards BVDA, with purpoſe to haue ouerrun the
countrie, and ſo haue withdrawne the Imperials from the citie: but for as much as that baſe na-
tion was knowne to be good for nothing but to rob and ſpoile, the lord *Swartzenburg* his regi-
ment only going againſt them, and encountrering them, ouerthrew them, in ſuch ſort, that part L
of them being there ſlaine in fight, and part for feare driuen into Daunbie, the greater number
of them there moſt miſerably periſhed.

Baſta the emperors lieutenant iu the vpper HVNGARIE at the ſame time lay at CASSOVIA
with eighteene thouſand men, doubting leaſt the enemies armie, which he heard to be at hand,
ſhould come to beſiege that citie. In the meane time *Ibrahim Baſſa* Generall of the Turkes for-
ces, came to SOLNOCH with an armie of fiftie thouſand ſtrong, amongſt whom were ten thou-
ſand Ianizaries: but for all that, vnderſtanding that *Baſta* nothing diſmaied awaited his com-
ming at CASSOVIA, not thinking it good to goe any further (his ſouldiours being alreadie wea-
rie with long trauell) neither yet ſafe there to ſtay ſo neere vnto his ſtrong enemie, retired backe
againe to BELGRADE, a place of more ſtrength and ſecuritie; expecting a great fleet of ſhips, M
which charged vpon the Danubius, were to bring victuals for the armie, as alſo for the reliefe of
BVDA, ALBA REGALIS, and other ſuch diſtreſſed places, with diuers great pieces for batterie,
and other leſſe artillerie vpon carriages, with a number of ladders and other inſtruments of war,
declaring their purpoſe for the performãce of ſome notable exploit, all guarded with fiue thou-
ſand

A ſand Turks, which conducted it vp the riuer. Of all which the imperials vnderſtanding, the lord *Palſi* diſpatched his lieutenant with a conuenient power, and the captaine of the Huſſars with his followers, all good and valiant ſouldiors, to cut off this conuoy: Who to make the matter ſhort, ſuddenly aſſailing them, and ſo comming to handie blowes, cut in pieces the conuoy, and rifled the ſhips, of whom the greater part were there ſunke in the deepe riuer; and ſo tooke an exceeding great bootie, deemed to be worth a million of gold: where amongſt other things of great value, there was found abourd an hundred thouſand dollars, which were all diuided amongſt the ſouldiors as a reward of their trauell. This great ouerthrow once knowne at BVDA, ALBA REGALIS, and the cities thereabouts, brought vpon them a great feare: yea the armie of *Ibrahim* grew thereby much diſcontented, as being at once diſappointed both of their victuals
B and their pay. Beſides that, the Imperials ouerran all the country therabout, ranſacking, ſacking, and deſtroying the country villages and caſtles without mercie, although the poore inhabitants offered them large contribution to haue ſtaied their furie, which would not be accepted. Vpon this notable ouerthrow alſo the lord *Swartzenburg* was determined with all his forces to come againe to the ſiege of BVDA, in hope in ſo great a diſcomfiture and want of victuals to haue had it deliuered vnto him; and for that purpoſe ſent for certaine great pieces of artillerie to VIENNA. But whileſt things went thus well in the lower HVNGARIE, colonell *Rodoler* of S. *Andrewes* in the vpper countrey, tooke occaſion alſo vpon this ouerthrow of the Turks with fiue hundred horſe and ſix hundred foot, to ſhew himſelfe with this ſmall company before AGRIA, hauing yet left the greateſt part of his forces a little off in ſecret ambuſh: Which ſmall companie the Baſſa
C of AGRIA beholding, preſently put himſelfe in armes, and ſo ſallying out, began an hot & braue skirmiſh: when ſuddenly the other ſouldiors left in ambuſh, ſtarting out and couragiouſly aſſailing their enemies, brake their order, & put them to flight, purſuing them at the heels euen to the gates of the citie: and had there been a greater force of footmen, it was verily thought, that the Turks (diſmaied with the flight, and altogether confounded) had abandoned the defence of the place, and the Chriſtians euen then become maſters of the citie, which had bin the cauſe of their notable ouerthrow in the yeare 1596. Neuertheleſſe they with great brauerie and ſmall loſſe retired, hauing ſlaine a great number of the Turks, and carrying away with them an hundred priſoners, with a bootie of fiue hundred horſe, and much other cattell.

The Turkes receiue a notable ouerthrow vpon the riuer of Danubius.

The free Haiduckes alſo ſtrengthened with new ſupplies, had done great harme in the coun-
D trey about BVDA, ſcouring freely all ouer it, finding none to oppoſe themſelues againſt them: for which cauſe the poore Chriſtians, which yet dwelt in that countrey, riſe vp againſt the Turks, promiſing their obedience vnto the emperour: and moreouer, to the intent they might be no more moleſted by the Imperials, offered to take vp armes themſelues againſt the enemie, and to the vttermoſt of their power to hinder his paſſage both by land & water. Theſe ſame Haiducks alſo had broken downe all the bridges which the Turkes had made betwixt BVDA and ALBA REGALIS, to the end they ſhould not that way commodiouſly bring either victuals or munition from the one place to the other. And the lord *Palſi* and *Nadaſti* vnderſtanding by their eſpials, That the Tartars diuided into three companies, had ouerrunne a great part of the countrey, and with a great bootie were retiring towards BVDA, preſently went out againſt them and enforced
E them to fight: which barbarous people, better inured to filch than to fight, there loſt all their liues, together with that they had before ſtolne. After which victory, theſe valiant men turning their forces againſt certaine other places of the Turkes thereby, tooke two of their caſtles with much rich ſpoile: which caſtles they ſacked and burnt, together with the great towne of ZOLNA, breaking downe alſo the bridge vpon the riuer Traua.

Now at this time the Turkes at BVDA held themſelues malecontent within the citie, hauing no Gouernour, their Baſſa being before taken by the Haiduckes, and they themſelues pinched alſo with great want of victuals. Wherefore doubting ſome ſudden attempt of the Chriſtians, as men diſmaied, they for their more ſafetie retired themſelues into the caſtle, a place of great
F ſtrength, leauing the citie vnto the Imperials then ready to haue beſieged it: but doubting of the Turkes great armie, which as they heard was marching thitherwards, the auauntguard thereof being come to MOATTESH, where *Sartes Baſſa* was alſo looked for; the report being giuen out, that the Turkes hauing relieued BVDA, would goe to beſiege CANISIA or elſe STRIGONIVM, they ſtayed to goe any farther, as men in doubt what to reſolue vpon. So were ſent certaine colonels and other captaines with their ſouldiors, to fortifie certaine paſſages whereby the

The Turkes for feare forſake the citie at Buda, and flie into the caſtle.

Turkes

The Christians vpō the approch of the Turkes great armie retire.

Turkes armie was to passe. The rest in the meane time retiring, for that the puissant enemie began now to approach; as also for that they knew the great desire that *Ibrahim Bassa* had to recouer againe STRIGONIVM, and had therefore sent a great number of Tartars to forrage and wast the countrey, and so suddenly hauing relieued BVDA & AGRIA, there to resolue whether to turne his forces. The Imperials in the meane time encamping neere vnto HATVVAN and ZOLNOK, to hinder the Turks from victualling of BVDA, as they desired, cut off fiue hundred of them at their first arriuall, who to that purpose were going towards BVDA; and tooke also one of the Turkes Chiaus prisoner: who sent from *Ibrahim* the Generall, was going to AGRIA, to put them in hope of their speedie relieſe. They also at the same time attempted to haue surprised ZOLNOK: where a good number of them with certaine Petardes approching the gates, in hope so to haue broken them open, being discouered by the watch, were inforced to retire, leauing fortie behind them slaine, and carying away with them many moe of their fellowes wounded: in reuenge whereof, the rest shewed their furie vpon the country therabout, destroying the villages, and intercepting a great deale of munition, which together with other victuals they met by the way as it was going to BVDA and AGRIA.

Summer now almost spent, *Ibrahim* the great Bassa in the beginning of September came to BVDA with an armie of an hundred and thirtie thousand strong, and from thence in the name of his great lord and master gaue the emperour to vnderstand at PRAGE, That for the sauing of further effusion of innocent blood, and not for any feare or distrust of his owne strength and power, he could bee content to hearken vnto some reasonable conditions or treatie of peace. Whereunto both these great princes (hauing well wearied themselues with these long warres, and exhausted their treasures) seemed not now vnwilling, expecting (as was thought) nothing more than for the honour to bee the first entreated: and the rather, for that the old Sultanesse, *Mahomet* his mother (whom by the weakenesse of her sonnes gouernment, such as neuer was in any the *Othoman* kings or emperours before, did beare the greatest sway in his affaires) seemed in what she might to further the same. Wherefore in the latter end of September a place was agreed vpon for a parley for peace, which was in an island in the riuer of Danubie beneath STRIGONIVM: whither the lord *Swartzenburg*, *Nadasti*, *Palfi*, and the bishop of VACCIA, being come for the emperour; and *Amurath* the Bassa of BVDA, with the lieutenant Generall of the Tartars, and some others for the Graund signior: the Turks at the first (after their vnreasonable manner) demaunded to haue RAB, STRIGONIVM, FILEK, SETCHIN, with all the rest of the townes and castles in fiue yeares before taken from them by the Christians, to bee now againe surrendred vnto them, with a certaine yearely tribute by the emperour to be payed vnto the great Sultan at CONSTANTINOPLE; as also there to haue his embassadour leiger continually attending vpon the Turkes Court: for which they offered to deliuer againe vnto the emperour the citie of AGRIA onely. All which their proud and vnreasonable demaunds being by the aforesaid commissioners on the emperours behalfe reiected, they were contented to come to some more reasonable talke, offering to leaue vnto the emperour RAB and AGRIA (whereof RAB was his owne alreadie) onely for STRIGONIVM, exchanging as it were STRIGONIVM for AGRIA. Which when it could neither be obtained, the parley was so broken off, and nothing concluded, and so the warres againe continued, without any memorable thing more this yeare betwixt them done, either on the one side or the other: the Christians contenting themselues to haue distressed the chiefe cities the Turks held in HVNGARIE, and the Turks no lesse apaied to haue relieued the same.

A parley for peace.

Machael the Vaynod with a great army entreth into Transyluania.

But whilest things thus passed betwixt the Christians and the Turks in HVNGARIE, *Michael* the Vayuod of VALACHIA, yet the emperours friend and confederat, and vnder his protection, certainely enformed his life to be sought after in the Turkes Court by the ambitious Cardinall *Bathor* his enuious neighbour, but lately become the prince of TRANSYLVANIA (as is before declared:) by commaundement from the emperour, and to be reuenged of so great a wrong, as also betimes to prouide for his own safety, with an armie of threescore thousand strong suddenly entred into TRANSYLVANIA, in most horrible manner burning the countrey, and killing the people before him as he went. Where whilest the Cardinall (who was thought to haue purposed to haue serued him in like sort, had hee not been by him preuented) was making head against him, he in the meane time had the citie of CORONA (commonly called BRASSO) with the strong castle of FOGARAS yeelded vnto him: from whence he marching toward ALBA IVLIA, the

A The Archduke *Matthias*, *Swartzenburg*, and the other commanders of the armie in the lower HVNGARIE, being twelue thouſand ſtrong, with the garriſon ſoldiors of RAB, STRIGONIVM, and KOMARA, in the meane time becauſe they would not ſtand idle, togither with the Hungarian horſemen, ouerran all the countrie thereabout euen vnto the gates of BVDA: in good hope alſo to haue met with eight thouſand Turks (as they were by their eſpials aduertiſed) comming towards PESTH with victuals for the reliefe of the caſtle of BVDA.

Whileſt things thus paſſed in HVNGARIE, *Mahomet* to ſhew his greatneſſe, as alſo the more to keepe the Chriſtian princes in ſuſpence, ſent *Cicala* (or as the Turkes call him *Cigala*) *Baſſa* his Admirall with a great fleet to ſea: wherewith being come vpon the coaſt of SICILIA;
B he requeſted the viceroy of that kingdome, to ſend him abourd his fleet the ladie *Lucretia* his mother, which dwelt in MESSINA, for that he greatly deſired to ſee her and to doe her honour; promiſing ſo quietly to depart without any harme doing. And the Viceroy againe conſidering how that the angrie renegat for the like courteſie to him at another time before denied, had in his rage done great harme all alongſt the ſea coaſt; couenanting with him to ſend her in ſafetie backe againe, ſent her honourably accompanied abourd the Admirall gallie: whom *Cicala* her ſonne receiued with great ioy and triumph, and hauing kept her with him one day with all the honour that might be, according to his promiſe ſent her back againe to MESSINA; & ſo without any harme done for her ſake to any part of Chriſtendome, peaceably returned backe againe with his fleet.

Now in the meane time *Michael* the Vayuod of VALACHIA with good forces of his owne,
C becauſe he would be doing ſomething alſo, reſolued to giue an attempt vpon NICOPOLIS, a citie of the Turks in BVLGARIA: and ſo giuing order to his people, cauſed a bridge to be made ouer Danubius to paſſe that great riuer by. Whereof the Baſſaes of SILISTRIA and BADOVA vnderſtanding, thought it good with all their power to diſturbe him in that worke: and ſo comming, as the ſaid bridge was by the Vayuod his ſouldiors laid ouer the riuer vpon boats, without farther ſtay attempted to haue broken the ſame, to the intent that the Vayuod ſhould not that way paſſe. Who haſting thither with his armie, reſcued his worke, and enforced the Baſſaes to forſake the exploit by them begun: where betwixt them for a ſpace was fought a moſt hard conflict, vntill at length the Turks were with a great ſlaughter ouerthrowne; and ſo glad, ſome here, ſome there, by flight as they might to ſaue their liues. After which victorie, he without let paſſing
D ouer the riuer with his whole forces, came and encamped vnder the wals of NICOPOLIS: where they of the citie vnderſtanding of the late ſtaughter of the Turks, & finding themſelues not able to hold out againſt the force and valour of the Valachies, and now out of hope of any helpe or reliefe in time to come from the Turkes, without farther reſiſtance yeelded themſelues into the power of the Vayuod. Who hauing ſacked the citie and ſet it on fire, caried thence a great ſpoile and bootie, with a number of the Bulgarians: chuſing out the beſt and moſt able bodies amongſt them to ſerue him in his wars, and appointing the reſt to inhabit & manure the waſted places of VALACHIA. The report of this ouerthrow giuen vnto the Turks by the Valachian, with the ſacking of NICOPOLIS, running abroad, brought a generall feare vpon the Turks euen in the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE. For the ſtaying whereof *Mahomet* commaunded the chiefe of his
E Baſſaes, with a great power of tumultuarie ſoldiors taken vp in haſt to go forthwith againſt the Vayuod, to ſtay the courſe of his farther proceedings, to the diſmaying of his people, himſelfe thundring out moſt horrible threats againſt him: who encouraged with his late victorie, and well acquainted with the Turkes manners, little regarded the ſame, as knowing that he was not with words but with armes to be vanquiſhed.

Nicopolis ſacked and burnt by the Vayuod.

Now *Mahomet* the Turkiſh emperour oppreſſed with melancholie to ſee himſelfe at once 1599
aſſailed with the plague then raging in CONSTANTINOPLE, the bloudie wars in HVNGARIE, and the horrible mortalitie & loſſe of his people in both places; and withall not ignorant of the euill ſucceſſe of his armie at VERADINVM, and of the great harme done at NICOPOLIS by the Valachian: yet for all that ceaſed not in what he might to prouide for ſo many euils, but gaue or-
F der to *Taut Baſſa* with all ſpeed to ſet forward (as we haue ſaid) from CONSTANTINOPLE toward VALACHIA; as from whence he feared the greateſt danger: who without delay to make the Vayuod to vnderſtand how highly the great Sultan was diſpleaſed with him, put himſelfe vpon the way with ſixe hundred Ianizaries towards HADRIANOPLE, with purpoſe there to Winter vntill the Spring, and ſo to expect the comming of the reſt of the armie, that ſo with the

ſame, vnited vnto the forces of *Mehemet Satergi* (who the laſt yere beſieged VERADINVM) he might in the field appeare more terrible vnto his enemies. The Chriſtian emperor alſo at the ſame time reſted much diſcontented, that his people in ſo faire a way for the winning of the caſtle of BVDA, had yet failed thereof: the Wallons laying the fault vpon the lords *Swartzenburg*, *Palfi*, and the reſt of the commaunders, that it was not woon; for that when they as valiant men offered to haue done therein the vttermoſt of their deuoir, their leaders had made choiſe by the ſpade and mattocke rather than by the ſword to performe the ſame. G

The Turkes againe ſpoiled by the Vayuod.

But *Michael* the Vayuod ſeeing the Turkes not a little diſmayed with the ſacking of NICOPOLIS, began afreſh to their greater terrour and hurt to make new inrodes vpon them, in ſuch ſort, as that he was entred an hundred miles into their territorie: againſt whom *Mehemet Satergi* (as yet the Turks generall in HVNGARIE) comming with his forces, he againe retired, carrying away with him the ſpoile of the countrie by him waſted. H

Buda diſtreſſed.

They of BVDA in the meane time fearing ſome ſudden aſſault to bee giuen vpon them, and ſuffring within great want of victuals, expected long to be relieued both with victuals and other neceſſaries: vnderſtanding yet withall, that the Grand ſeignior had cauſed it to bee giuen out in CONSTANTINOPLE, that he was raiſing a great power of his beſt and moſt expert ſouldiors, and had therefore ſent for vnto the court all his old men of war, ſuch as had ſerued in the wars of PERSIA, to be now againe employed in HVNGARIE. Where the Turks in the meane time prouiding to relieue the diſtreſſed citie of BVDA both with men and many other neceſſaries; certaine reſolute Hungarians vnderſtanding by their eſpials, that one of the Turks Baſſaes with three thouſand ſoldiors was comming thither to encreaſe the garriſon, laied themſelues cloſe in ambuſh in a place whereby the Turkes were to paſſe: where they had not long ſtayed, but that the Turks as men without feare diſorderedly paſſing by, were by them with ſuch force and furie aſſailed, that in a moment, when they leaſt thought, they were ouerthrowne and put to flight, with the loſſe of many of their horſes, much money and iewels, and many captains there taken priſoners, the Baſſa himſelfe with much ado hardly eſcaping into the citie. But ſhortly after foure hundred Chriſtians ſcouring the countrie about BVDA, and hauing taken a good bootie of cattell and other pillage, returning loaded with the prey, were by the way aſſaulted by the Turks, and enforced to forſake the ſame, and to fight for their liues: whom for all that they notably repulſed, with the ſlaughter of diuers of them, & ſo againe recouering their bootie, returned with victorie. And about this time or not long after in the vpper HVNGARIE, a great power of the Turkes and Tartars hauing forraged a great part of that countrie, and done the Chriſtians great harme, came before COSSOVIA, making ſhew as if they would euen preſently haue beſieged that citie: which put the inhabitants in ſuch a feare, that many of them without further deliberation fled forthwith as faſt as they could into the mountaines, thinking themſelues more ſafe there than in the citie. Neuertheleſſe, by the perſuaſion of *George Baſta*, the emperours lieutenant in thoſe parts, two thouſand valiant and expert ſouldiors ſtaied there with him, expecting what the Turkes would doe: who approching the wals, demanded of them in the citie a great ſumme of money, by way of contribution, threatning otherwiſe the vtter ruine and deſtruction thereof. Which their proud demaund was by *Baſta* ſtoutly reiected, and they with the loſſe of a great many of their liues enforced to get them further off. Wherfore ſeeing themſelues not able to preuaile againſt a citie ſo well prouided, they for feare by night riſe, and departed quite another way than that wherby they came, doing great harme ſtill as they went. The free Haiduckes of VALACHIA alſo, a warlike kind of people, liuing for the moſt part vpon prey, and willing to ſhew ſome token of their hatred toward the Turks, by certaine bridges paſſing ouer the Danubius, encountred with the Baſſa of NATOLIA with a great power, whom they ouerthrew with much ſlaughter of his people, and the loſſe of his brother there ſlaine alſo: and ſo afterwards ouerrunning the countrie, did there exceeding harme, and tooke the ſame Baſſa his ſonne priſoner. Thus paſſed the Winter with many light skirmiſhes and incurſions in diuers parts of HVNGARIE and other the frontier countries, which had done great harme had it not beene before hand well prouided for by the Imperials; who in moſt places ſtrengthened with new ſupplies, ſtayed the furie of their barbarous enemies. *Maximilian* the Archduke in the meane time comming from PRAGE to VIENNA, found himſelfe there to haue in his campe but foure and twentie thouſand foot and ten thouſand horſe, readie againſt the next Spring (diuers of the Germane princes this yere not ſending thither any aid at all, by reaſon of their troubles neerer home, with I K L M

the

A laid ſiege to COGNA, a citie in the confines of NATOLIA, which was foorthwith yeelded vnto him. And yet not ſo contented, gaue it out by open proclamation, that for the reformation of the diſordered ſtate, he would ere long goe to beſiege the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE: and that therfore all ſuch as would follow him, ſhould of him be intreated as his friends & companions, threatning vnto the reſt moſt cruell death and deſtruction. Of which his proceedings *Mahomet* (as then diſporting himſelfe at his gardens of pleaſure in the countrey, all alongſt the ſide of PROPONTIS) vnderſtanding, and fearing to be there ſurpriſed, or that ſome ſudden innouation might be raiſed in the citie, haſted with all ſpeed to CONSTANTINOPLE, and from thence in all haſt diſpatched *Mehemet* one of the Viſier Baſſaes the ſonne of *Sinan*, with all the forces he could make to goe againſt him. Who paſſing ouer into ASIA with a great power, and
B yet fearing to come to the triall of a battell with him whom he knew to be a man of himſelfe deſperatly ſet, and not a little fauoured alſo euen of his own ſoldiors: ſo ſecretly wrought by large promiſes, that *Cuſahin* his footmen were euen vpon the point to haue forſaken him. Which he quickly perceiuing, fled foorthwith through SIRIA into ARABIA with his horſemen, and the horſmen of *Simon* the Georgian: purpoſing the next ſpring by the helpe of Arabians and Perſians to appeare in the field with greater forces than before. After whom *Mehemet* the great Baſſa following, came with his armie to ALEPPO, there to Winter, and to expect the returne of the rebell together with the Spring. This ſo dangerous a rebellion, with the troubles of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, were the cauſe that the graund ſignior ſeeing himſelfe in ſo many places forſaken of his ſubiects, was the readier to encline vnto peace with the emperour, whereunto for
C all that the emperour was not haſtie to hearken, but vpon honourable conditions: as knowing that the Turke required the ſame, not for any deſire he had to liue in quiet, but for that his troubled affaires both at home and elſewhere abroad ſo required; his Ianizaries and other men of warre in this his ſo weake gouernment being grown ſo inſolent, as that they were hardly to bee by him commaunded; openly threatning in their diſcontented humors not onely the depoſing of the principall officers about him, but of himſelfe alſo, and of the baniſhment of the Sultaneſſe his mother, ſaying, that ſhe had bewitched him, to the end ſhe might her ſelfe rule, which ſhe indeed did in all his greateſt affaires. But the rebell *Cuſahin* the next yeare growne againe very ſtrong, was now come into the field, and euen readie to haue giuen the Baſſa battell: who as hee was a man of great wiſdome and experience, well conſidering with what a deſperate enemie he
D had to doe, thought it beſt againe to proue, if his rebellious followers might by faire meanes bee drawne from him: and ſo comming neere vnto him, by open proclamation promiſed a free and generall pardon to all ſuch as had followed the rebell in thoſe wars, if forſaking him, they ſhould forthwith return home to their dwellings, and ſo to the obedience of their iuſt and lawfull prince and ſoueraigne. Which generall pardon ſo proclaimed, was the ruine of *Cuſahin*, for that the greateſt part of his followers now inriched with the great booties they had gotten, and now alſo hauing free pardon offred them, returned home into their owne countries, there at eaſe to liue of their euill gotten goods, leauing their captaine with ſome few others which ſtaied with him, with little hope to be ſaued. So that within a few daies after *Cuſahin* thus forſaken of his followers, was himſelfe taken and brought priſoner to CONSTANTINOPLE, where ſhortly after he was
E with moſt exquiſit torments tortured to death.

Mehemet one of the viſier Baſſaes ſent againſt the rebell.

Cuſahin the rebell taken and tortured to death at Conſtantinople.

The troubles of this yeare thus paſt, *Rodolph* the Chriſtian emperour with the beginning of the next (whileſt the ground yet couered with ſnow, and the vnſeaſonableneſſe of the weather would not ſuffer the ſouldiors to keep the field) cauſed a Diet of the princes of the empire to be called, to conſider with him of ſuch helps as were by them to be giuen againſt the Spring, for the maintenance of the warres which yet he had againſt the Turke: who all promiſed to ſend their ſoldiors with their pay, and ſuch further contribution as might ſerue for the maintenance of that defenſiue warre againſt the common enemie. Whereunto alſo *Clement* now biſhop of Rome (this yeare of Iubilie) put to his helping hand, as hee had diuers times before, by ſending thither ſuch aid both of men and money as he had before promiſed: ſo that by this meanes great pre-
F paration was made by the Chriſtians for the taking of the field with the firſt of the Spring. At which time the Turkes alſo began to ſtirre: who although *Ibrahim Baſſa* their Generall by the appointment of his great lord was then in ſome ſpeech with the emperor about a peace, yet ceaſed not they in the meane time that this treatie was from day to day prolonged, with their companies ſcattering here and there, to doe what harme they could vpon the frontiers of the empe-

1600

The emperour maketh proviſion againſt the Turkes.

rours

rors territories, the cauſe why he with more ſpeed called vpon his friends for their promiſed aid. G
And for the better managing of this yeares warres againſt the Turke, he appointed duke *Mercurie* (who had drawne a great number of Frenchmen both horſe and foot out of FRANCE) Generall of all his forces, ſending *Ferrant Gonzaga* ſurnamed the Lame (whom for his approoued valour and experience in martiall affaires, hee had ſent for to MANTVA) gouernour into the vpper HVNGARIE. So the ſouldiors now day by day by companies reſorting from diuers parts into AVSTRIA, were from thence ſent vnto ſuch places as were by the Turkes moſt moleſted, ſo to repreſſe their often incurſions, as in many places they did. For eight thouſand of the Turks going out vpon the ſudden to haue ſurpriſed PAPPA, were by the garriſon ſouldiors of that place encountered and ouerthrowen. And on the other ſide, whileſt *Ferdinand* the Archduke was aſſembling his people in CROATIA, for the defence of that countrey againſt the incurſions H
of the enemie, ſix thouſand Turks without reſiſtance entring the ſame as farre as BVCCARI, and burning the country villages as they went, had taken many priſoners, with a great bootie of cattell; and ſo (merrie and out of feare) being about to haue returned, were ſuddenly ſet vpon by the Countie *Serinus* in certaine ſtraight and troubleſome paſſages, where they leaſt feared any ſuch matter, and ouercharged alſo with their prey, were (I ſay) eaſily by him for the moſt part ouerthrowne, and the reſt put to flight, and ſo the priſoners with all the reſt of the bootie againe recouered. At which time alſo one of the imperiall colonels with fifteene hundred horſe making an inrode into the countrey about ALBA REGALIS, and meeting with the Turkes and Tartars thereabouts, ſlew ſix hundred of them, and tooke diuers of their captaines priſoners. Six thouſand other Tartars alſo at this time returning out of HVNGARIE home towards their owne I
countrey, were by the Coſſackes neere vnto the Blacke ſea ſet vpon with ſuch force, that many of them being ſlaine, the reſt for feare ran into the ſea, leauing all the prey they had got in HVNGARIE vnto their enemies. In the heat of theſe broiles the noble lord *Palfi* Gouernour of STRIGONIVM, a man that all his life long had done great ſeruice for his prince and country, & whom we haue ſo often in this hiſtory remembred, died the three and twentith of March in his caſtle at BIBERSPVRG, to the great griefe of many, eſpecially the Hungarians his countreymen. And for that STRIGONIVM (ſo neere vnto the enemie) required in his ſtead to haue a right valiant and couragious gouernor, the emperour appointed the lord *Swartzenburg* to that charge: the fame ſtill running, that *Ibrahim Baſſa* would come thither with the great armie he was in prouiding, if the peace went not forward, which was now ſtil leſſe and leſſe hoped for, by reaſon of his prowd K
and inſolent demaunds.

The death of the lord Palfi.

The Frenchmen and Wallons mutinie in Pappa.

But whileſt theſe troubles with ſuch others too long to rehearſe, thus paſſed in diuers parts of this miſerable countrey of HVNGARIE: twelue hundred Frenchmen and Wallons in garriſon at PAPPA (a ſtrong frontier towne of the emperours in the lower HVNGARIE) for want of pay began to mutiny. For which cauſe it was thought good to the chiefe commanders to haue them thence remoued, and others placed in their roome. Which they perceiuing, and withall knowing themſelues too ſtrong for the reſt of the garriſon, all Hungarians or Almaines, not partakers of their conſpiracie; they firſt reſolued to thruſt their owne captaines out of the towne, as lets vnto their deſires: and then laying hands vpon *Michael Marotti* the paymaſter, and other the Hungarian and Dutch commanders, with their ſouldiors, tooke from them their weapons, and L
caſt the ſaid *Marotti* with the other captaines, and ſome of the better ſort of their ſouldiors into yrons, exacting of the reſt as well Hungarians as Dutch, in number about a thouſand perſons, a thouſand duckats; threatning otherwiſe to deliuer them into the hands of the Turkes: and albeit that *Marotti* offered for his libertie eighteene hundred duckats; yet would they not bee ſo contented, but ſpoiling both him and the reſt of all that they had, with their apparell and weapons furniſhed ſuch Turkes as were there priſoners, and ſo ſent them away to ALBA REGALIS; and afterwards rifling euery mans houſe, as if they had been enemies, tooke from them whatſoeuer pleaſed themſelues: and that which worſe was, to encreaſe theſe outrages, compacted with the Turks of ALBA REGALIS and BVDA, for the pay which (they ſaid) the emperour ought M
them, to deliuer them the town; certifying them withall, how that the lord *Swartzenburg* within two daies was comming with money to giue them contentment; promiſing if hee came into the towne, to deliuer him with the ſame into their hands: or to bee the more ſure of him, they might if they ſo pleaſed intercept him at the paſſage ZESNEGKH, whereby he muſt needs come. For the more credit of which their wicked purpoſe, they ſent an enſigne of the emperours, as a

Pappa offered vnto the Turks by the mutiners.

token

A token vnto the Turks at ALBA REGALIS: who for all that altogither belieued them not, yet willing farther to trie them, ſent them for hoſtages two Chiaus; from whom the rebels ſent alſo two others of the better ſort of them to ALBA REGALIS; with concluſion, that the fiue and twentieth of Iune at the furtheſt the mony ſhould be paied, and the towne deliuered. For the receiuing whereof, and for feare of ſome hidden treaſon, the Turkes and Tartars began to make themſelues ſtrong: the Imperials alſo doing what they might for the appeaſing of ſo dangerous a tumult. So the tenth of Iune the lord *Swartzenburg* with two thouſand horſe and foot came within two miles of the towne, and from thence ſent foure and twentie horſemen to diſſuade the rebels from yeelding the towne vnto the Turkes, & to tell them that they ſhould ſhortly receiue their pay: who ſhamefully deriding them, ſent them backe againe as wiſe as they came: ſo that
B *Swartzenburg* perceiuing himſelfe with ſo ſmall forces to be able to doe nothing againſt them, neither yet by faire meanes to perſuade them, retired againe to RAB, vntill ſome greater ſtrength were come vnto him. Immediatly after, doctor *Petzen*, Counſellor for the warres, a man of great authoritie, grauitie and wiſedome, was by *Matthias* the Archduke with foure hundred horſe conducted to PAPPA, to ſee if he by his diſcretion could haue diſſuaded them from their ſo vngodly a purpoſe, for the yeelding of the towne vnto the enemie: whom they not only refuſed to heare, although he ſpake vnto them moſt kindly, but alſo bent their muskets and harquebuſies vpon him, threatning to kill him if he did not forthwith depart. When ſhortly after, twentie of the Hungarians impriſoned in a cellar in the towne, brake out, and comming to RAB, brought newes thither, That the Frenchmen and Wallons in PAPPA were at variance among
C themſelues about the yeelding vp of the towne vnto the Turkes (ſome better minded than the reſt, not willing to conſent therunto) inſomuch, that they in the caſtle ſhot at them in the towne, and they againe at them in the caſtle: and that they had alreadie receiued from the Turks twentie thouſand duckats, with ſome prouiſion of victuals, & were ſhortly after to receiue from them the reſt of the money promiſed them, and ſo to deliuer the towne. For preuenting whereof, the lord *Swartzenburg* the two and twentith of Iune ſent the lord *Sharpfenſtein* with a French colonell, three thouſand ſouldiors, certaine Petardes, and a number of ſcaling ladders towards PAPPA: whom the falſe rebels ſuffered peaceably to enter the towne the foure and twentith of Iune, ſtill encouraging them to come on, calling them their countriemen and brethren, and in token of friendſhip ſhaking them by the hands, telling them, that hauing aſſurance of their pay, they
D deſired no more: But hauing now receiued in ſo many of them as they thought good, and as they knew they were wel able to deale with, ſhutting the reſt out, they cut them all in pieces, and afterwards in deriſion called vpon the high Dutches to come on in like manner. Three hundred of theſe rebels at the ſame time had laied themſelues in ambuſh by a mill faſt without the town, who by the Wallons and Haiduckes without diſcouered, were alſo by them charged: vpon whom for all that, by reaſon of the ſhot out of the towne, they could do no good; but hauing loſt three hundred men, and amongſt them *Hanniball Kralzs*, the lord *Sharpſenſteine* his lieutenant generall, and one *Del la Margoſe* the chiefe enginer, they retired: Which loſſe the deſperat rebels (if it had bin in their choiſe) had wiſhed rather to haue happened vnto the Dutches than to the Wallons or Hungarians. About three daies after, three of theſe rebels being by chance taken priſoners by the Imperials, and brought to RAB, were not only apparelled but alſo trimmed after the Turkiſh faſhion, as men not deſiring longer to be accounted Chriſtians, the reſt of their fellowes in the towne alſo imitating the Turkes faſhions, as well in their apparrell as in their manner of ſeruice: yet for all that would not theſe metamorphoſed monſters yeeld the towne vnto the Turkes, before they had the full ſumme by them agreed vpon, the Baſſa of BOSNA being commaunded from the Grand ſeignior in all haſt to prouid it for them, and ſo to receiue of them the towne. Neuertheleſſe, for their more ſtrength and their more credit with the Turks, they receiued into the towne one enſigne of the Turks, with certain wagons of victuals, brought thither with ſo ſtrong a connoy as that the Imperials durſt not meddle therwith: in which wag- *A moſt wicked fact.*
F gons (being diſcharged) they ſent in bonds ſix hundred Hungarians & Dutch, men, women, and children, priſoners to ALBA REGALIS; being all of them glad to be ſo ſent away, in hope to find more fauour & courteſie at the hands of their enemies, than they had found with theſe renegat Chriſtians. So ſhortly after, theſe rebels ſent out certaine meſſengers vnto the gouernour of ALBA REGALIS, to know his full reſolution; which meſſengers (conducted by certaine Turkes of great account) were vpon the way by the free Haiduckes all intercepted, and the meſſengers ta-

ken, with an hundred Turkes moe. In the meane while *Michael Marotti*, before impriſoned by the rebels in PAPPA, by letters ſecretly aduertiſed the lord *Swartzenburg* of a certaine place, whereby he might (as he ſaid) eaſily enter the towne, and the rather, for that the rebels were at variance amongſt themſelues. Who thereupon the twelfth of Iuly came to PAPPA with nine thouſand horſe and foot, but diſappointed of his purpoſe for entering the towne, hardly neuertheleſſe belaied the ſame: vpon whom the mutiniers many times deſperatly ſallied out, & right valiantly encountered them, albeit that they were ſtill, without any notable loſſe, by their enemies (too ſtrong for them) beaten backe againe into the town. In one of which ſallies it fortuned one of their captaines to be taken, who to the terror of the reſt was preſently ſlaine quicke, and his head and skin vpon a pike ſet vp before the towne, for his fellowes to behold. But the lord *Swartzenburg* ſtill more and more preuailing vpon them, they ſent ſecretly for aid to the Turks: whereof he for all that getting intelligence, ſent alſo for three regiments of ſouldiours moe to come vnto him to the ſiege; by whoſe comming he well ſtrengthened, and bringing his approches neerer the towne, tooke from the rebels the mill, a ſtrength which they very vnwillingly loſt, as in hope thereby to haue the more eaſily receiued aid from the Turks; who hauing made prepration to haue relieued them, were letted ſo to doe by the riſing of the water, which had ſpoiled all the prouiſion for their reliefe at the bridge of ESSEC, as alſo hindered them for marching forward. At length the Imperials were come with their trenches euen to the towne ditches, out of which they had let out all the water: where ſome of the townſmen eſcaping out of the towne, declared, how that the mutinous ſoldiors within laboured both day and night to fortifie the towne, but to be in their worke much letted by the continuall aſſaults of the Imperials: as alſo that they now had neither bread nor wine, nor other victuals left, more than a little ſalt, and threeſcore horſe, of which they had alreadie begun to eat: and that although they were not altogither ſo valiant, yet that they had reſolued to die by the hands of the ſouldiors, as men expecting no other mercie. Yet ſhortly after, *viz.* the nine and twentith of Iuly, they deſperatly fel out vpon the trenches of *Marſpurgiſch*, a Dutch captaine, of whoſe ſouldiors they ſlew many, being drunke, and driuing the reſt out of their trenches, raiſed a great alarum. Which the lord *Swartzenburg* hearing, haſted thither to the reſcue; where with an vnluckie muſket ſhot he was ſtrucke in the head and ſlaine. Whereof the rebels got knowledge the ſame euening, and *Del la Mota* their Generall in reward of that ſeruice gaue vnto them that had made that ſallie a thouſand dollars to be diuided amongſt them. The dead bodie of that ſo worthie a man, as had done great ſeruice for the Chriſtian common-weale, was afterwards with great ſolemnitie brought to RAB, and there honourably interred. The like deſperate ſallie they made againe the next day, and ſlew of the Imperials an hundred and thirtie, and tooke certaine priſoners: and in retiring backe againe into the towne, cryed aloud, That when they lacked meat, rather than they would yeeld the towne, they would eate Chriſtians, whereof *Marotti* ſhould be the firſt.

The lord Swartzenburg ſlaine.

The lord *Swartzenburg* thus ſlaine, the gouernment of the armie was by *Matthias* the Archduke committed to the lord *Redern*, a noble man both valiant and learned, who although hee were very ſickely came vnto the camp before PAPPA the eight of Auguſt; where vnderſtanding that the rebels now brough vnto extremitie, had a purpoſe by night to flie away and ſo be gone, he cauſed a more vigilant & ſtrong watch to be kept; when lo according to his expectation the next night after about two houres before day they began to iſſue out: wherof the watch giuing knowledge vnto the Generall, they were indeed ſuffered to go out as vnperceiued, but preſently after at their heeles were ſent out the lord *Nadaſti* and the earle of *Thurn* with two hundred Huſſars, and after them the chiefe colonell and countie *Solmes* with part of their horſmen alſo, who in three diuers places ouertaking them neere vnto a great wood called Packem, ſlew moſt part of them: *Del la Mota* their chiefe captain or ringleader being ſlaine by the chiefe colonel, becauſe he would not yeeld, and his head afterwards by him preſented vnto the Generall in the campe. Two hundred Wallons the Huſſars vnder the leading of the lord *Nadaſti*, countie *Solmes*, and countie *Thurn*, found out in the wood; who albeit that they for a ſpace made great reſiſtance, yet in the end were enforced to yeeld, and ſo with their two enſignes were brought into the campe. The Huſſars alſo vpon another paſſage light vpon other two hundred mo of theſe rebellious Wallons, who becauſe they ſtood ſtrongly vpon their guard, and were more deſperatly ſet than the reſt, the Generall ſent out other two hundred of the colonels horſmen vpon them, by whom

Pappa abandoned by the mutiniers.

Papp vnto by the

A whom and the Huſſars they were almoſt all ſlaine: diuers others of them alſo were ſlaine in comming out of the town; and in the mariſhes therabouts. Their Generals lieutenant with ſuch other of their principall commanders as were taken, were by the lord *Rederns* commandment deliuered vnto the Prouoſt martiall; the reſt of the rebellious traitours hee at the requeſt of the ſouldiors diuided into diuers parts of the armie, there to the terrour of others to be executed, from whom the ſouldiors could hardly be perſuaded euen for the preſent to hold their hands. But afterwards hauing brought them to RAB, and leaue giuen them to doe with them their pleaſure, they as farre exceeded in the cruell manner of their execution, as had they before in their outragious dealings, eſpecially the Hungarians and Wallons, notwithſtanding moſt of them were of the Wallon countries. Some of them they impailed, ſome they brake vpon the
B wheele; ſome of their skins they cut off their bodies as it were into thongs, and ſo poured into the wounds, vinegar, ſalt, and pepper; from ſome others they cut off their priuities, ſome they roaſted, and ſome they put vnto the Tenalia; vpon ſome they dropped molten pitch, and then caſting gunpouder vpon them, ſo burnt them to death; otherſome they hanged vpon yron hookes; and ſome they put in the ground vp to the chin, and for their diſport with yron bullets bowled at their heads. In all which torments no ſigne of compaſſion was to be ſeene, the tormentours to make their paine the greater doing nothing but deride them: the miſerable wretches in the meane time confeſſing the hainouſneſſe of their offence, and crauing for death as a
C fauour. A moſt horrible thing it was to ſee, how whileſt ſome were thus tortured, others were brought to ſee the ſame miſerie they themſelues were by and by to endure. Amongſt the reſt of theſe exquiſit torments, one *Peter Orſy* cauſed one of the mutiners to be ſowed vp in the belly of a mare, with his head hanging out, and ſo to be roaſted; in which miſerable torment he liued three houres, and then died: after which he cauſed the loathſome bodie ſo roaſted, to be giuen to them that lay ſtaruing vpon the wheele to eat. Thus was the dangerous mutinie at PAPPA with much adoe ended, and that ſtrong towne like to haue bin loſt, preſerued: the rebels themſelues being become a dreadfull example to all poſteritie, for all them to looke vpon that ſhal attempt the like villanie.

Now at this ſame time alſo, though neither the Chriſtians nor the Turkes had as then any great armie in the field, yet many an hoat and bloudie skirmiſh paſſed daily betwixt them in one place or other of HVNGARIE: all which to recount as it would be much tedious, ſo in ſilence to
D paſſe them all ouer, were greatly to wrong thoſe worthie perſonages by whom they were not without their great aduenture done. Among the reſt one *Nicholas Horbath* countie *Serinus* his lieutenant, with an hundred and fiftie ſouldiours, and *Andrew Thuſſi* another great commaunder, going forth to ſeeke for bootie; *Thuſſi* hearing that the Turkes were abroad for the ſurpriſing of certaine Haiducks then gone out, ſtaied faſt in a ſecret place vntill he might heare farther newes, *Horbath* another way ſtill going on. Now it happened that the Baſſa of SIGETH hauing bin abroad, in returning home by chance met with *Horbath*, and encountering with him ouerthrew him, and ſlew moſt of his men, *Horbath* himſelfe by flight hardly eſcaping. But *Thuſſi* hearing this skirmiſh, as lying cloſe not farre off, and now haſting thither to haue been partaker thereof, found the Baſſa yet in the field on foot, viewing the bodies of the ſlaine: vpon whom
E he came ſo ſuddenly and with ſuch force, as that the Baſſa with his diſordered men had much adoe to take horſe, and ſo without any great reſiſtance to betake himſelfe to flight: after whom the Hungarians fiercely following ſlew many of the Turks, and amongſt the reſt the Baſſa himſelfe, whoſe head preſently cut off, *Horbath* ſent to the countie *Serinus*, who ſhortly after by *Thuſſi* himſelfe ſent it to *Matthias* the Archduke. This Baſſa was a man of great ſtrength and courage, a moſt expert and aduenturous captaine, about thirtie ſix yeares old, & for his valour of a common ſouldior created a Baſſa by the great Sultan. His head being brought to VIENNA, and there ſhewed to the Baſſa of BVDA then their priſoner, and he demanded whether he knew it or not, ſighing anſwered, that he knew it well, and that it was the head of the Baſſa of SIGETH, a brauer man than whom the Sultan had none in all his empire, earneſtly withall deſiring to
F know how he was ſlaine. And not long after the aduenturers out of COMORA, STRIGONIVM, and other places therabout hauing made a great partie, & taken a great bootie from the Turks at a faire at GOMBAR, and by TRA and ESSEG, thinking to haue paſſed Danubius in hope of a greater bootie, ſeuen hundred of them being paſſed the riuer, were by the new Baſſa of SIGETH and others with fiue thouſand Turkes in an hoat skirmiſh ouerthrowne; yet not without their great

Two Baſſaes of Sigeth ſlain one after another.

great losse also: the Bassa himselfe with two other Sanzackes and fiue hundred Turkes being G
there slaine, and but fiftie of the Christian aduenturers left dead in the place, the rest disordredly
retiring to their boats, being for most part drowned in the Danubie. The free Haiduckes also
Iula surprised and burnt by the free Haiduckes. surprised IVLA and set it on fire, in which confusion the Turkes flying into the castle, for hast
thrust one another from the bridge into the castle ditch; wherein so many of them were drow-
ned, that a man might haue gone drie foot ouer vpon the bodies of the dead. They tooke there
also six hundred prisoners with much other bootie, & deliuered two hundred Christians which
were there captiues. And albeit that these Haiduckes after this exploit done were hardly pursued
by the Turks from other places, yet they in safetie retired with such bootie as they had alreadie
gotten.

But now to leaue these the troubles of HVNGARIE for a while, as the forerunners of greater H
ere long to ensue; let vs againe looke backe into TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, to see
how *Michaell* the Vayuod now in the meane time behaued himselfe there. The Cardinall *Ba-*
thor ouerthrowne and slaine, and the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA againe brought vnder the
emperours obedience; the Vayuod by his embassadours gaue him forthwith to vnderstand of
all his proceedings, with the whole successe thereof, as also of a purpose he had to inuade MOL-
DAVIA: for that it was commonly reported, and also belieued, that *Sigismund* the late prince
(not a little moued with the death of the Cardinall his cousin, and the reuolt of his countrie)
aided by the Turkes, the Tartars, the Polonians, and Moldauians, would now attempt some
great matter for the recouerie of TRANSYLVANIA: All which was shortly after the rather
thought to be true, for that diuers of his spies being taken, some at CLAVSENBVRG, some at I
NESSEN, beside the letters that were found about them for him vnto the nobilitie and states
of TRANSYLVANIA (perswading them to reuolt from the Vayuod vnto him, and that his mea-
ning was shortly to come with a great armie out of POLONIA for the repulsing of him) they
also of themselues confessed, how that *Sigismund* in disguised apparrell had himselfe bin in
TRANSILVANIA, to conferre with diuers his secret friends concerning that matter. Which
The gouernment of Transyluania by the emperour confirmed vnto Michael the Vayuod. his embassadours the emperour honourably entertained, and by them confirmed vnto the Vay-
uod the gouernment of TRANSILVANIA, sending also vnto him diuers honourable presents,
forbidding him neuertheless to inuade MOLDAVIA, for feare of raising a new and dangerous
warre against the Polonians also, vnder whose protection and the Turkes the Palatine thereof
then rested. According vnto which commaund the Vayuod stayed his intended expedition; yet K
sending some good part of his forces vnto the frontiers of MOLDAVIA, for feare of *Sigismund*
whom he heard to bee hatching some mischiefe in POLONIA, and euen then to lie vpon the
frontiers of that countrie. Some few moneths thus passing, *Husraim Aga* (a graue reuerend old
man, and much employed by the Turkish Sultan) with fiue other Turks of good account, em-
bassadours from the great Sultan, and a great retinue following him, came to CRONSTAT in
TRANSILVANIA where the Vayuod then lay. Of whose comming the Vayuod hearing, with foure
thousand horsemen most brauely mounted, went halfe a mile out of the citie to meet them:
the footmen in the meane time on both sides of the street standing in good order, from the gate
of the citie whereby they were to enter, euen vnto the Vayuods lodging; where stood also his
guard all in red and white silke. So meeting in the field, they both alighted from their horses, L
with great reuerence saluting the one the other: when presently the embassador embracing the
Vayuod, vngirt his scimitar, and in the name of the great Sultan put another about him, so rich-
ly garnished with gold and pretious stones, as that no part of the scaberd was therefore to bee
seene: Besides this, he presented him with a faire plume of blacke Hearnes feathers mixed with
some white (a right goodly ornament, in forme of a great bush) which the Vayuod would not
in the field put vpon his head, although he were therunto by the embassador most earnestly re-
Papp. vnto by the quested, but caused it to be carried before him: He also presented him with two verie faire red
ensignes, in token of the Turks fauour and protection; the one for himselfe, and the other for
his sonne *Petrasco:* moreouer, hee gaue vnto him two exceeding faire horses richly furnished,
with foure others, and a most faire faulcon. The Vayuod himselfe was most brauely mounted, M
and (after the maner of his countrie) had ten very faire spare horses led before him. At whose en-
terance into the towne, all the great ordinance was discharged, with great vollies of small shot.
And so the embassador stil riding on the left hand of the Vayuod, being brought to his lodging,
had six of his chiefe followers euery one of them presented with a rich robe of cloth of gold; in
requitall

A requitall whereof the embaſſadour rewarded an hundred of the Vayuod his followers euerie one of them with a good ſuit of apparrell: with this embaſſadour of the Turkes was alſo the Polonian embaſſadour, whom the Vayuod in like manner honourably entertained. Theſe embaſſadours (as was thought) did what they might to haue drawne this worthie and renowmed man, togither with the countries of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, from the emperor vnto the Turkes obeiſance: howbeit he ſeldome or neuer ſpake with them, but that either before or after he had conference with the lords *Vngnad* and *Zeckell* (the emperors commiſſioners) concerning their requeſts; alwaies proteſting vnto them, not to yeeld to any thing without the emperours conſent and good liking. Whereof *Mahomet* aduertiſed, and that he was not by any thing yet ſaid or done to be remoued from the emperour, gaue him by the ſame embaſſadours
B to vnderſtand, How that he was in ſome ſpeech with the emperor concerning peace (as indeed he then was by meſſengers from the Baſſaes at PRESBVRG) which if it ſorted to effect, that then all ſhould be well; but if not, that then it ſhould be good for him whileſt he had yet time, wiſely to conſider of his owne eſtate, and to ſubmit himſelfe vnto his protection who was able to defend him, rather than for the vaine praiſe of a certain fooliſh conſtancie, to aduenture himſelfe with all that he had vnto moſt certaine danger and deſtruction: promiſing him in recompence of that his loyaltie, to giue vnto him for euer the countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, and at his need to furniſh him both with men and money; offering moreouer to make him a great commaunder in his armie in HVNGARIE, and the Baſſa of TEMESVVAR as his friend to be at all times readie with fiftie thouſand horſe & foot (as need ſhould
C be) to aſſiſt him againſt the emperor, reſeruing vnto himſelfe whatſoeuer he ſhould more win from him: for all which bountie and kindneſſe, requiring onely to haue him vnto him loyall. All which his large offers the Vayuod little regarding, declared the ſame vnto the emperours commiſſioners: yet ſtill proteſting neuer to ſtart, but to ſtand faſt for the Chriſtian emperour. Notwithſtanding as a man deſirous to better his eſtate, he tooke hereupon occaſion to requeſt of the emperour the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA, by him ſo lately taken in, vnto him and his ſonne in inheritance for euer, with ſuch frontier townes as in former time belonged vnto TRANSYLVANIA: and that whatſoeuer he ſhould win from the Turkes, might bee his and his ſonnes: He alſo requeſted, that all the preferments and dignities in former time granted by his Imperial maieſtie vnto *Sigiſmund* the late prince, might now be beſtowed vpon himſelfe; and for his ſer-
D uice done, to be furniſhed with money for the payment of his ſouldiors: And that the emperor with the other princes of the empire ſhould aſſure him, That if he were taken by the Turke, they ſhould raunſome him: but in caſe he were by the great power of the Turke driuen out of thoſe countries, then by the emperors appointment to haue ſome conuenient place allotted vnto him in the vpper HVNGARIE to liue in, with the yearely penſion of an hundred thouſand dollars. All which his requeſts if it would pleaſe him to grant, he promiſed this yeare to do ſo much againſt the Turke, as had not in an hundred yeares bin done before: with vaunt, that if he had had the imployment of the money which was ſpent in the time of this war, he would not haue doubted but to haue brought all the countries from the Euxine (or Blacke ſea) to BVDA, ALBA REGALIS, and SOLNOCK, vnder the emperors obeiſance. A large promiſe indeed, but hardly to haue bin
E performed by a far greater prince than he.

Thus whileſt things ſtood in diſcourſe after the Cardinals death, *Sigiſmund* the late prince in the meane time ſupported by the Polonians, with the aide of the Turks, the Tartars, and the Moldauians, was readie to haue inuaded TRANSYLVANIA: yea the Tartars (as the forerunners of his greater power) were alreadie entred the countrie, and had out of the frontiers therof carried away ſome bootie. Wherefore the Vayuod vnderſtanding, in great haſt aſſembled his forces out of all places, which in ſhort time was growne to ſome good head, the countrie people togither with the free Haiduckes (an aduenturous and reſolute kind of ſouldiors) in great number daily reſorting vnto him. So being now eight thouſand ſtrong, and moſt of them braue and luſtie men, he with them and twentie pieces of artillerie remoued to CRONSTAT the foure and
F twentith day of Aprill, ſending part of his armie (which euerie day more and more encreaſed) before him to NESBAN: where all his forces being aſſembled to the number of almoſt fiftie thouſand horſe and foot, hee with great celeritie paſſed the rough and high mountaines into MOLDAVIA without reſiſtance, but yet not without ſome trouble, his ſouldiours by the way being glad ſometimes to eat the leaues of trees, the enemie hauing of purpoſe before carried away

Michael the Vayuod goeth againſt Sigiſmund Bathor and the Vayuod of Moldauia.

whatsoeuer he could that might haue yeelded him reliefe. Of whose speedie comming and great strength, *Sigismund* and *Ieremias* the Vayuod of MOLDAVIA hearing, and vpon the reasonable estimate of their owne forces finding themselues too weake to encounter him, retired themselues out of MOLDAVIA into the frontires of POLONIA, there to gather greater strength, and so to meet him: for as yet *Ieremias* the Vayuod had not receiued from the Turke such forces as were vnto him promised, and as he still expected. *Michaell* the Vayuod in the meane time (his enemies thus fled) with fire and sword entering into MOLDAVIA, tooke in the greatest part thereof, the fearefull countrie people still yeelding vnto him as he went: and the rather, for that *Ieremias* their Vayuod (placed by the Polonian, but tributarie vnto the Turke) had laied vpon them a most grieuous imposition, as vpon euery man a duckat a month, for which they exceedingly hated him. But here in MOLDAVIA, *Michael* the Vayuod (hauing still in his companie one of the emperors commissioners in TRANSILVANIA most trustie seruants, who might faithfully report vnto them the whole manner of his proceedings) after the departure of *Sigismund* and *Ieremias* his enemies, stayed not long; but hearing that they were retired towards the confines of POLONIA, without longer delay made towards them, and the eighteenth of May found them by the castle OTHVNE neere vnto the riuer Nester, being thirtie thousand strong; Polonians, Moldauians, Turkes, and Tartars: with whom he ioyned a most fierce and cruell battell, which begun about ten a clocke before noone, was with great courage but greater obstinacie on both sides maintained vntill the euening. At which time the fortune of the Valachian preuailing, his enemies at last betooke themselues to flight, of whom were there slaine eight thousand, beside many others of them drowned in the riuer Nester: where of the Valachians were lost two thousand only. Concerning *Sigismund* and *Ieremias*, diuers reports were after this ouerthrow giuen out, some saying that they were slain, and some that they were in flying drowned: howbeit the truth was, that they both by flight escaped, to the greater trouble of themselues as of their afflicted countries also. *Michael* after this so notable a victorie, taking in the rest of MOLDAVIA, caused the people to sweare their obedience vnto the emperour, himselfe, and his sonne, to the great offence of the Polonians, not a little (as they tooke it) wronged therein; but especially of the great Chauncellour, an old enemie vnto the house of AVSTRIA. Whereof ensued greater troubles in those frontier countries than before, to the further effusion of more Christia bloud, much better to haue bin emploied against the fatall enemie in defence of the Christian common-weale. Yet thus the three warlike & frontier countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA, the surest bulwarks of that side of Christendome, and most exposed vnto the furie of the common enemie, were now once againe vnited vnder the obeysance of the emperor, to the great benefit (no doubt) of the Christian common-weale, and hurt of the Turks; if they might haue so continued, as God wot they did not long.

Sigismund and the Moldauian ouerthrowne by Michaell the Vayuod.

Moldauia subdued by Michaell

Now the Vayuod notwithstanding this so great a victorie, well considering that he of himselfe could hardly keepe this new gained prouince of MOLDAVIA against the power of the Turke, pretending that to him it belonged as his own to giue to whom he pleased: as also against the Polonians (not more desirous to restore *Ieremias* againe into MOLDAVIA, than the prince *Sigismund* into TRANSYLVANIA) without the helpe of some other more mightie prince whom he might rest vpon: by his embassadors (sent for that purpose) offered the soueraignte of all those three countries vnto the emperour, with condition, that he should appoint him perpetual Gouernour of the same vnder him. The Emperour also vnderstood how that *Mahomet* the great Turke had not long before againe sent vnto him another of his Chiaus, commaunding him without delay to restore the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA vnto the prince *Sigismund* (vnto whom he was by the mediation of the king of POLONIA now before reconciled) threatning otherwise with fire and sword to destroy VALACHIA, & by force of armes to depriue him both of TRANSILVANIA and his life together. Wherefore the emperour doubting least the Vayuod either for feare, or for the better assuring of his owne estate, should to his preiudice fall to some agreement with the Turke, yeelded to all that his embassadors had of him requested; with condition, that he should be bound as need should require to serue with his people against the Turke; and that in TRANSYLVANIA neere vnto his owne person should be alwaies resident one of the emperors counsellors, as Superintendent ouer the whole countrie. Wherewith the Vayuod being contented, the Emperour sent thither doctor *Petzen* with sixe thousand souldiors, and a great summe of mony to pay the Vayuods souldiors, as he had before requested; and so

A ſo to take of them an oath, That they ſhould from thenceforth become his maieſties faithful ſeruants. Which Superintendent ſo by the emperor ſent, the Vayuod receiued with great honour, as vnto him of all others moſt welcome. Neuertheleſſe being again returned into TRANSYLVANIA, it was not long, but that (without regard of him) he began with new exactions to oppreſſe the people of the countrey, and in ſome ſort to tyrannize ouer them; vſing great ſeueritie againſt diuers of the nobilitie alſo, eſpecially ſuch as he knew to haue taken part before with the Cardinall, or now of late with *Sigiſmund* his couſin, or any way to haue fauoured his quarrell. All which he did without the conſent or good liking of *Petzen*, contrary to his promiſe made, No more to imbrue his hands in the bloud of the nobilitie of TRANSYLVANIA, without the knowledge or conſent of his Imperiall maieſtie, or the Superintendent by him appoynted: which for
B all that he had not done, hee could not poſſibly haue kept them (diſdaining to be gouerned by him) vnder his obeiſance. Neuertheles the Tranſyluanians taking it in euill part to be ſo oppreſſed, and the nobilitie almoſt extinguiſhed, yea and indeed to bee at all ruled by him; by generall conſent as if it had been but one man, riſe all vp in armes againſt him: inſomuch, that he finding himſelfe with his Valachians and other his fauourits too weake for them, retired with all ſuch as would follow him into the mountaines, and from thence ſent preſently for aid vnto the lord *George Baſta*, (a worthie captaine and then the emperours lieutenant in the vpper HVNGARIE) for the ſubduing of theſe rebellious people, and the reducing of them to their former obedience. Who by letters from *Matthias* the Archduke, at the inſtance of the Vayuod commaunded ſo to doe, with about ſix thouſand horſe and foot, and eight field pieces, remoued from CASSO-
C VIA in the vpper HVNGARIE the fourth of September: Where by the way came vnto him embaſſadours alſo from the people of TRANSYLVANIA now vp in armes, and confederate alſo againſt the Vayuod: who in like manner alſo requeſted his aid, pretending themſelues to be the emperours moſt loyall ſubiects, but not vnder the gouernment of ſuch a tyrant as was the Vayuod: alledging and exaggerating many his moſt cruell actions, and clearly proteſting, That for the preſent want of a good Gouernor they were enforced for the ſafegard of their owne liues to band themſelues together: which if happily it might be in any thing preiudicial vnto the emperour his claime and intereſt, which he with ſo great toile and coſt had procured in that prouince, it was againſt their wils, as enforced by neceſſitie to doe that they did in defence of themſelues. Which embaſſadors ſo ſent from the people, *Baſta* with all ſpeed diſpatched away backe againe,
D comforting them without farther ſtir to expect his arriuall in TRANSILVANIA: yet couenanting withall, That they ſhould before conceiue into writing the oath of their fidelitie and allegiance vnto his Imperiall maieſtie. Now might many and important conſiderations trouble the mind of *Baſta* in ſo doubtfull a caſe. To giue aid vnto the Vayuod againſt the people, was the expreſſe order from *Matthias* the Archduke the emperours lieutenant Generall: but to aid the people confederat againſt him as they had requeſted, ſeemed now both more profitable and honeſt, eſpecially hauing moſt certaine tokens of the ſmall and doubtful faith of the Vayuod; who onely by diſputation intereſſed in that prouince, was not ſo carefull of another mans; neither ſeeming to haue regard of *Petzen*, or of his own word giuen, for not farther imbruing his hands in the bloud of the nobilitie of TRANSILVANIA, without the emperours knowledge and leaue:
E vpon which promiſe was alſo grounded the archdukes order for giuing of him aid. So that ſuch breach of his faith, and contempt of *Petzen* had haſtened the conſpiracie of the people againſt him, deſpairing of all other health than that which by force of armes they could procure vnto themſelues. To ſtand doubtfull himſelfe, or to hold others in ſuſpence, vntill that by courrors in this new caſe he might receiue new inſtructions from the emperour or the archduke, had in it too much danger, as giuing leiſure to each partie to make ſides, and to encreaſe the ſlander of the laſt yeare, That he might ſo eaſily (and eſpecially from the Valachian) haue aſſured that prouince to his maieſtie, had he not beene an heartleſſe man of no reſolution, euen ſuch an one as durſt not looke vpon a cat (as ſome had ſaid:) all which might not a little pricke an honourable mind. To take part with the people confederat againſt the Vayuod, if it ſhould not happily fall
F out at the firſt encounter; might betwixt the two contendants giue an entrance vnto the third, either the Turke or the Polonian in the fauour of *Bathor*: but if it ſhould ſort to the quite contrarie, and ſo himſelfe to looſe the day; then he ſaw himſelfe void of all defence againſt the malicious, eſpecially in that the world commonly meaſureth the wiſdome vſed in any action, according to the ſucceſſe thereof, than which nothing can be more vnreaſonable, but aboue all others

Michael tyrannizeth in Tranſyluania.

The Tranſyluanians rebell.

in

in matters of warre. In this ſo troubled a tempeſt of contrary winds, of power to haue driuen a right good mariner out of his courſe, *Baſta* laid hand vpon the helme of good meaning, and ſpread the ſailes of ſuch diſcretion as taught him, in matters of war to be lawful for a Generall to depart euen from the inſtructions of his prince, not concerning the end, but the meanes leading to that end: eſpecially when the preſent occaſion ſo requireth, which the prince could not with reaſon before comprehend; as depending of the moſt mightie fortune of warre, which ſuffereth not ſo much delay as to expect counſell from far. So in this ambiguitie, *Baſta* reſolued to ioyne himſelfe vnto the confederats, moſt in his iudgement concerning his imperiall maiefty, as being the vttermoſt ſcope of his ſo great coſt and charge, to keepe the country of TRANSYLVANIA at his deuotion, which conſiſted in the people, and not in the woods or mountaines: the matter being not great by what meanes ſoeuer it were done, ſo that it were honourable and honeſt. G H

Baſta taketh part with the Tranſyluanians againſt the Vayuod in whoſe aid he was ſent.

Vpon this deſire *Baſta* ſet forward, and the 14 day arriued at TORDA, and there ioyned himſelf vnto the confederats (to the great wonder of the Vayuod) in whoſe help he was ſent:)where repoſing himſelfe one day conſulting and conſidering of their forces, about twelue thouſand ſtrong, with foure field pieces, beſides eight of his owne, with the ſixe thouſand ſouldiors he brought with him, in all about eighteene thouſand, he determined not to giue leyſure vnto the Vayuod to call vnto him farther helpe, hauing now with him about twentie thouſand foot, and twelue thouſand horſe, with ſeuen and twentie field pieces; amongſt whom were diuers of the Siculi, in hope of their auncient libertie, men of good account and ſort, with a mixture of the Coſſackes, Valachians, Raſcians, and Seruians, people of prey ſeruing onely to ſpoyle: whom *Baſta* knew to be farre inferiour in courage to his twelue thouſand foot and ſix thouſand horſe; I not onely for the valour of his owne men accuſtomed vnto the frontier ſeruice, but alſo for the confederates: who engaged with their goods, liues, and honour, and deſirous to be reuenged of the Vayuod, were like enough to ſtand well by it. Wherefore hee ſet forward the ſixteenth day, and in two dayes march came within ſight of the Vayuod: who hauing ſent out certaine great troups of horſemen to take view of the enemie, and ſeeing them repulſed, ſet fire on MIRISLO, a village laſt by, out of which they had before drawne certaine ſmall field pieces into the campe.

MIRISLO is a village two leagues on this ſide of ALBA IVLIA, directly vpon the high way, ſtretching from the ſide of Maracz, a nauigable riuer, vnto the foot of an hill; alongſt which the riuer running, ſometimes neerer, and ſometimes further off, together with the riſing of the hill, K maketh an vnequall liſt of ground, in ſome places halfe a mile broad and more, and in ſome other ſhut vp as it were into a narrow throat, as in the ſelfeſame place where the aforeaid village ſtandeth, and where the Vayuod lay encamped in a place of great aduantage, behind a great trench drawn from the riuer croſſe that little ſpace of ground betwixt the mountaine and the riuer. On this ſide, which from MIRISLO the further a man goeth, the further the plaine enlargeth, *Baſta* encamping cloſe vnto the village, oppoſed againſt the comming of the enemy three great *corps du guard*, two of them Hungarians, towards the hill fauoured with a Church, and the third towards the riuer, of the Almaine footmen, vnder the charge of Countie *Tomaſo Cauriſli* of BRESCIA, Sergeant Maior of the field, with all the artillery: who as in a place neer and very open vnto the enemy there entrenched himſelf, ſtill approching neerer and neerer both on the one ſide and the L other. Towards the euening of the ſelfeſame ſeuenteenth day came to *Baſta* one *Peter Armenio* with letters from the Vayuod, containing, That hauing vnderſtood of his arriuall in the campe of the conſpirators, hee now further deſired to know whether it were by the conſent and commandement of the emperour, or not; and how it came to paſſe, that he would ſo doe, conſidering the diuers chances of warre, the ſword hanging as it were euen ouer his head, if hee ſhould chance to loſe the battell? Whereunto *Baſta* anſwered, That the morrow following hee would ſhew him the authoritie he had from the emperour (alluding to the imperiall ſtanderd he carried with him:) and that as concerning the fortune and danger to enſue, he referred that vnto the wil and pleaſure of the Almightie, the iuſt iudge of all controuerſies. But in the meane time he exhorted him to leaue that prouince he had ſo euil gouerned, vnto his imperiall maieſtie, as he was M in dutie bound; promiſing him free paſſage into VALACHIA, and giuing him time to conſider therupon vntill eight a clock the next morning; after which time it ſhould be free for euery man to doe for himſelfe what he could. Which anſwere the Vayuod hauing read, enflamed with diſdaine, with many proud wordes full of threats and diſgrace, although it was then night, preſently

A ſently cauſed by the ſound of the drumme and trumpet the battell to be proclaimed againſt the next day.

On the other ſide, *Baſſa* after he had aſſured his campe, hauing not onely ſent, but gone himſelfe to haue the counſell of his owne eyes, for his better vnderſtanding how the enemy lay: and finding no reaſonable means for him there to attempt any exploit by, as well for the ſtrength of the trench before the front, and in part along the ſide of the enemies campe, as alſo for the danger of a riſing ground on the left hand, whereunto all the plaine betwixt the enemies campe and the village was ſubiect: thought it beſt to remoue, and to make a ſhort retreat about the ſpace of an Italian mile, according to the commodiouſnes of the place; thinking it no hard matter, of ſo proud an enemy, and not altogether ſo well acquainted with martial ſtratagemes, to gaine a no-
B table victory. This his purpoſe propounded in counſell, was greatly diſliked of the captains of the confederates: vnto whom it ſeemed more ſafetie to aſſault the Vayuod, yet lying in his ſtrength, than to retire before the face of an enemy ſo ſtrong and aduenturous: for that ſuch a retreat according to the maner of that countrey, would be deemed no other than a plaine flight: and to breake his order and ariſe, was (as they ſaid) but to diſcourage his own people, and to encourage his enemies. But *Baſſa* the better to perſuade them, promiſed therin to ſhew vnto them a more cunning kind of fight than was yet vnto them known; and declared the aſſurance that he in his owne perſon, with the Almaines in the rereward would giue them in that retreat, in ſuch ſort, as that they ſhould not loſe ſo much as a man, much leſſe they needed to feare to fall into any diſorder in ſo ſhort a ſpace, his purpoſe being only to giue the plain vnto the enemy, wherin
C to ſhew himſelfe in the open field. So the retreat being agreed vpon, the morning following being the eight and twentith of ſeptember, the three *corps du guard* (before ſpoken of) were betimes called backe, and the baggage ſent away: after which followed the Tranſyluanians and Hungarians, the Almaines in the rearward encloſing the great ordinance.

The Vayuod aware of their departure, ſent forth with a great troupe of horſemen, eſpecially of the Coſſackes, to take view of them, and to skirmiſh with them; which were ſo farre kept off by a company of musketiers in the rereward, as that they could not come ſo nigh as to doe any harme, although that all the way they went they were by them ſtill charged, to the great contentment of *Baſſa*, to ſee ſo good a beginning of his deſignes as might bring them all to their wiſhed effect. But when he ſaw the great artillerie vpon the carriages to come out of the village,
D a certain ſigne that the enemy ſet forward with all his forces, he marched faire and ſoftly to giue him hope to ouertake him: and ſo retired as farre as he thought good from the village, hauing before thought of a conuenient place wherein his people might with roome ynough vpon aduantage ſtay: when as about halfe a mile from him, and as farre from the village, he might ſee the enemy march with his people in order of battell, then began he to march towards him alſo: and perceiuing the enemie to come on in one onely thick front, by reaſon of the ſtraightneſſe of the place, hauing on the right hand towards the riuer placed as it were all his horſemen, and towards the mountaine his footmen alone, and fiue hundred foot placed aloft without any artillerie, as it ſeemed he would haue done, hauing planted ſom below at the foot of the hill in the way, and in the middeſt, euen before the front of the battell, where the horſemen came after the foot-
E men: he alſo placed his ſquadron in one front onely, to the intent not to be encloſed by the enemie on the flanke of his army. The body of his maine battell conſiſted of one great ſquadron of about three thouſand Almaine footmen, flanked on each ſide with a hundred and fiftie Rutters of Silesia: before the ſquadron toward the right hand he had ſet a looſe wing of three hundred musketiers: in the right wing towards the hill he placed a companie of launces, with two ſquadrons of the country footmen: and in the left wing toward the riuer one ſquadron of Tranſyluanian footmen, and two of launces, for that the enemie was at that time verie ſtrong in horſemen: the Coſſacks, archers, and harquebuſiers he placed in the rereward: of his great artillery he would make no vſe, for that hauing not much, he would not ſtand vpon the defence therof, but deſired rather with al ſpeed to come to the ſword with the enemy, vnacquainted with ſuch cloſe
F fight, foot to foot; and well the leſſe fit, by reaſon of their light armour. And therfore he thought it beſt firſt to ſet forward his ſquadron of Almains to giue the charge, bending towards the right hand, amongſt the thickeſt of the footmen towards the artillerie at the foot of the hill, as there whereas was the ſtrength of the enemies infanterie. And doubting in the performing hereof, to be charged on the left ſide with a great ſquadron of about three thouſand lances, which ſeemed

The battell of Miriſlo betwixt Michael the Vayuod and Baſſa the emperors lieutenant.

to

to ſtand vpon that wing to giue the firſt charge; hee gaue order vnto *Rodowiz* his lieutenant, G
and colonell of the Rutters, which had the leading of the left wing, that hee ſhould at a certaine
ſigne giuen, ſet forward towards the left hand, for the charging of that great ſquadron. So his
people being ſet in order, and the manner of proceeding ſet downe, hee putting on his hel-
met, with cheerefull countenance ſaid, That at that time hee truſted hee ſhould ſhew vnto the
Vayuod, that his trunchion could doe more than his ſcimitar: And himſelfe ſetting forward
betwixt the ſquadron of the Almaine footmen and the wing of the musketiers, about two
houres after noone, marched faire and ſoftly towards the enemie: who without mooving ex-
pected the diſcharging of their artillerie; whereunto the neerer that the enemie came vnto it,
the leſſe harme it did him, by ſhooting either ouer or ſhort in the field, which eaſily aſcended.
The wing of musketiers went directly to giue a charge vnto the artillerie; and the ſquadron to- H
wards the foot of the hill, where *Baſta* deſired forcibly to charge, that thereby they might bee
enforced to ſpend their firſt vollies, and with ſome diſcouragement or diſorder to retire, pre-
ſently came in all afront iuſt vpon the ſigne giuen; and ſo with his Almaine footmen and the
Rutters on the right hand, encloſed and compaſſed in behind the greateſt part of the enemies
footmen. At which very inſtant, the Rutters on the left hand alſo ſo couragiouſly charged vp-
on the three thouſand launces, that better could not haue beene deſired of any band of moſt
old and expert ſouldiors. The launces retiring without any hurt, and the firſt volley diſchar-
Michael the Vayuod ouer throwne. ged, forced the infanterie, and ſo diſordered the reſt. Whereupon the wings charging, there
enſued preſently a great ſlaughter and ouerthrow, onely fortie of *Baſta* his men being ſlaine,
and as many hurt; where of the enemies were loſt in the battell ten thouſand: and greater had I
the ſlaughter beene, if the village and approach of the night had not couered many of them
that fled, and ſtayed the purſuite of the victors that followed them. Which putteth mee in re-
membrance of the great victorie that *Scipio Aſiaticus* had againſt *Antiochus*, wherein were
ſlaine of the Romanes but three hundred (although that in the fight one of the wings ſtood
for a time doubtfull) there being loſt of the enemies aboue fiftie thouſand. Howbeit there were
afterwards found in all (as was by the peaſants the countrey reported) twentie thouſand
ſlaine in this battell. By this victorie *Baſta* recouered many enſignes and much armour, be-
fore ſent by the Emperour vnto the Vayuod, together with all his tents and baggage. And
preſently after the ouerthrow there were many troupes of horſemen ſent out euerie way with
proclamation, To ſpare the liues of ſuch of the Siculi as ſhould lay downe their armes: of K
whome many were ſent priſoners vnto diuers places, eſpecially to FOGARAS, a ſtrong towne
toward VALACHIA. As for the Vayuod himſelfe, hee with certaine Coſſakes eſcaped by
flight.

The morrow following, *Baſta* diſpatched away the Countie *Caurioli*, to enforme the em-
perour of all the particularities of the ſucceſſe of that expedition: who ſeemed to bee there-
with pleaſed, yet neither gaue reward vnto the Countie, neither commended *Baſta* in that hee
had done, (foreſeeing perhaps what was to enſue thereof) although hee had in writing before
approoued his reſolution and motion made in fauour of the Confederates. Staying that day
in that quarter, *Baſta* gaue order vnto the Chiaki, to ſend out a thouſand horſemen to pur-
This Chiaki was the chiefe man and as it were the ringleader of the Tranſyl-uanians into rebellion. ſue the flying Vayuod: who in ſtead of ſo doing, ioyning themſelues with other their con- L
ſorts, ſetled themſelues to ranſacke ALBA IVLIA, vnder the colour, that there was the Vay-
uods wealth and ſubſtance; yet (as the manner of ſuch men is) ſparing neither marchant nor
citizen: which worthily ſeemed vnto *Baſta* a great wrong, for to ſee the innocent puniſhed, and
the guiltie to eſcape free. And albeit that hee made what haſt he might thitherwards with all
his campe, and ſo ſtayed one day not farre from thence, to haue giuen ſome redreſſe vnto the
ſpoyle that had happened: yet was all that his labour loſt, for that ſo many of the greater ſort
and chiefeſt amongſt them had their hands therein, with whom hee thought it more wiſedome
as then to diſſemble, than to fall into any rearmes of ſeueritie, without hope of doing any
good. So hee reſolued in all haſt to march towards FOGARAS (whither hee heard ſay the Vay- M
uod was come with new forces out of VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA) and in in ſixe daies march
came to CIBINIVM, where hee receiued certaine newes, That the Great Chauncellour of PO-
LONIA, and *Sigiſmund* (ſometime the Tranſyluanian prince) were with a ſtrong armie vpon
the frontiers of MOLDAVIA; hauing ſent before them *Moyſes* the Siculian, with about
eight thouſand of the Siculi (his ſouldiours) to what purpoſe was eaſie to bee ſeene. Which
aduer-

A aduertiſement interrupted the courſe of *Baſta* his victorie, for that it ſeemed not reaſonable to purſue the enemie, and to leaue behind him a doubt of ſo great importance: and eſpecially, for that he thought he could not aſſure himſelfe of the aid of the countrey people, in caſe that *Sigiſmund* their old prince were once ſeene in TRANSILVANIA. Wherefore hee thought good to ſtay where he was, to prouide for all euents as need ſhould be; and ſo reſolued to ſend the Chiaki, and one *Ladiſlaus Pithi* to parley with *Moſes*, who made a ſhew of no great moment of his good will towards the confederats. In the meane time came two meſſengers from the Vayuod, offering in his name, that he ſhould doe whatſoeuer were in the behalfe of the emperour to bee impoſed vpon him: vnto whom theſe conditions were by *Baſta* and the reſt of the counſell propounded: Firſt, that hee ſhould for euer reſigne all the claime hee had or might haue into the
B countrey of TRANSYLVANIA; then, that he altogether with his armie ſhould giue his oath of fidelitie vnto his imperiall maieſtie; alſo, that he ſhould foorthwith through VALACHIA goe with his armie vnto the frontiers of MOLDAVIA, to ſtay the Polonians from further entrance; and moreouer, to giue his wife and little ſonne in hoſtage for the performance of theſe things. With which meſſengers was ſent one *Sebaſtian Techelli*, to receiue the oath and promiſed hoſtages: vnto whom was appointed for the place of their ſafe keeping, the biſhops caſtle in ALBA IVLIA, the Vayuod hauing before requeſted, that they might be ſo kept in TRANSYLVANIA: although *Baſta* thought it much better to haue had them kept in the vpper HVNGARIE. This agreement being made, *Baſta* kept on his way towards FOGARAS, which he found alreadie poſſeſſed by the Chiaki, and ſo from thence to CORONA. After which the Vayuod diſtruſting of the articles
C agreed vpon, went directly into VALACHIA, but not at all into MOLDAVIA; not ſo much diſcomfited with the forces of the Polonians whom he went againſt (not doubting to giue them a great ouerthrow) as for the diſtruſt he had of *Moſes* the Siculian, who in the battell might ſhew himſelfe his enemie behind him. Now whether it were for the diſtruſt hee had in his owne followers, or onely for feare of treaſon by the Polonians plotted, being not likely that they with ſo ſmall forces were come to fight, without ſome greater ſecret deceit; hee not knowing whom to truſt or to feare, of his owne accord tooke his flight into the ſtrength of the mountaines, without any great loſſe of his people, hauing left his baggage behind him, which was aſſailed and taken by the Haiducks and ſuch other ſharkers enured to prey, and alwaies readie in like occaſion helpe to ſpoile and chaſe them that are alreadie running: although that afterwards in diuers
D skirmiſhes with the Turkes (who to cauſe him the rather to turne his backe vnto the Polonians, had preſumptuouſly ſcoured vp and downe the countrey) he loſt many. In fine, giuing MOLDAVIA loſt, he was now out of hope how to be able to hold only VALACHIA, his old gouernment. Euen he which but a little before commaunded aboue an hundred thouſand ſouldiors in field: hee (which in deſpight of who ſaid nay) was able to commaund VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA, and happily the other countries alſo neere vnto him; as hauing receiued the commaund of TRANSYLVANIA, as gouernour for the emperour: he that made CONSTANTINOPLE to tremble, and found no empire equall to his deſignes. But it fareth oftentimes with the great, as with birds of prey, who greedily ſeeking to prey vpon others, become themſelues a prey vnto other, greater than themſelues: for they neuer contented, and attributing only vnto their owne
E valour and wiſedome, their owne proſperous proceedings, are the true ſhoares of the vnſtable wheele of fortune: or what ſay I of fortune? being rather the verie children of follie. So commonly falleth it out with princes (eſpecially the new) which in the garboiles of warre betwixt their mightie neighbours, not gouerned by their owne wiſdome, reſt themſelues only vpon the aduice of their counſellours, are by them led they wote not whither, for the greateſt intereſt they haue in them. For had the Vayuod had but the leaſt in-ſight into politicall gouernment; hee might well haue vnderſtood, that amongſt ſo many mightie princes, hee could not much grow or yet well root himſelfe, without the aſſured ſtay of ſome one or other of them. He ſhould alſo haue knowen within what compaſſe a new prince ought to haue vſed ſeueritie and rigour; and that he ought to abſtaine from all offence in good, or otherwiſe, which might any way procure
F vnto him the diſpleaſure or hatred of his ſubiects. Whereas his counſellours not ſo much reſpecting his profit as their owne, had not the power or not the will to perſuade him ſo by good meanes to plant himſelfe ſure in TRANSYLVANIA; but ſo both caſt him headlong from his high eſtate, and at the ſame time furthered the loſſe of CANISIA, a matter of important conſeqence.

A reconciliatiō made betwixt Michael the Vayuod & Baſta

Michael for feare of being betrayed vnto the Polonians, taketh his flight into the mountaines.

Now

Now lay *Baſta* encamped in the field in TRANSYLVANIA, when a meſſenger came vnto G
him from the great Chauncellor of POLONIA, to declare vnto him, That it was not his purpoſe to
trouble TRANSYLVANIA, hauing no ſuch order from the king: albeit that he would aduiſe
the Tranſyluanians if they wiſhed to liue in quiet, to make choice of a prince of their owne na-
tion, and ſuch an one as the Turke ſhould well like of, whereas otherwiſe they ſhould but ſeeke
their owne deſtruction, together with their neighbors. Which his counſell was well marked of
them all, albeit that it was thought by many of the wiſer ſort not ſo much to proceed of any
good meaning he had towards the Tranſyluanians, as of an old grudge and inueterat hatred he
had alwaies borne againſt the houſe of AVSTRIA: as alſo that he euen then countenanced the
prince *Sigiſmund* with his armie, to no other end, but by him to raiſe vp new ſtirres in that pro-
uince, and ſo to draw it from the emperours obeiſance, although thereby it became againe tri- H
butarie vnto the Turke, who in all theſe matters had a great hand. Yea ſome ſticked not to ſay,
That he couertly aimed at that principalitie for his ſonne, howſoeuer he masked the ſame vnder
the ſhew of *Sigiſmund* the late prince. But vnto him anſwer was giuen by the Tranſyluanians in
generall (with thankes for his good will) that in all their conſultations they would haue a princi-
pall regard of their owne welfare, together with the common. Which anſwere he hauing recei-
ued, foorthwith placed on *Simon* (the brother of *Hieremias* the Moldauian) Vayuod of VA-
The Chancellor placeth a new Vayuod in Valachia in ſtead of Michael, by him driuen out LACHIA in ſtead of *Michael* by him driuen out, and ſo leauing a conuenient number of ſouldi-
ors with him, returned himſelfe towards POLONIA. Vnto which election ſo made by the Polo-
nian, the Turks craftily gaue place, knowing well to play the foxes where they could not play
the lyons, wiſely for a time comporting the iniurie: and the old Chancelor as craftie as they, ha- I
uing a ſecret purpoſe by occaſion of theſe preſent troubles, to preferre his ſonne at length vnto
the principalitie of TRANSYLVANIA, and thereunto alſo to ioyne the countries of MOLDAVIA,
and VALACHIA, had therein of purpoſe placed the aforeſaid *Simon*, a man of no valour, and of
a ſmal apprehenſion, whom he might againe at his pleaſure diſplace, and ioyne thoſe prouinces
vnto his new purchaſe; which he could not ſo well doe, if he ſhould haue there placed a man of
greater reach and courage. So worke the heads of the great, and ſo trauell the braines of the am-
bitious aſpiring.

Baſta vnderſtanding of the retiring of the Polonians, entred into conſultation with the Chiaki
False rumours raiſed to haue terrified Baſta and other the principall men of that prouince (which lodged with the armie in the country vil-
lages thereabout) for calling together the ſtates and people, to make choice of ſome ſuch men as K
they thought meeteſt to be ſent vnto the emperour, to know his pleaſure for the gouernment of
that prouince. But now in the meane time, whileſt there was no ſuſpition of the forraine enemie,
began to work certaine malecontents, which thinking with greater libertie to liue vnder a weake
prince than vnder one of greater power, with one voice cried out, That *Sigiſmund* with a great
power was entred into the confines of TRANSILVANIA, one whiles towards VALACHIA, another
while by the way of MOLDAVIA; and that the ſtrength of the country and others thereby ſtill
reſorted vnto him: with other ſuch like inuentions, of purpoſe deuiſed to haue made *Baſta* ſud-
denly departed, or at leaſtwiſe to haue troubled the Diet or aſſembly called, and the conſulta-
tion alſo. But he well aduiſed of their purpoſe, moued not out of his quarter, but there lay verie
priuatly, to declare therby the great confidence he had in the thankfulneſſe of the nobilitie of the L
countrey, as by him deliuered from the oppreſſion of the Vayuod: as alſo to make them to vn-
derſtand, That the gouernment to be appointed, was not to be ſetled in the ſole power of a ty-
rant, but in the fidelitie of the ſubiects protected vnder a moſt gentle, royall, and moſt fatherlike
gouernment, not ambitiouſly ſought after, but moſt voluntarily of themſelues offered, and (for
the common good) by the emperour accepted. Beſide that, he knew right well how that *Caſtaldo*
(in like caſe before in the yeare 1551 ſent into TRANSYLVANIA with eight thouſand Almaines)
left behind him his armie, and without any precedent courteſie went priuatly to ALBA IVLIA,
where queen *Iſabel* had for her defence aſſembled a Diet of all the ſtates, and there by well hand-
ling of the matter got to *Ferdinand* the emperor that kingdom, which he could not by the feare
of his forces haue gained: for which doing, Writers attribute vnto him the name of great wiſ- M
dome; notwithſtanding that the yeare following he was forced to abandon his conqueſt, but yet
not through any default in himſelfe.

But it is truely ſaid, That men pleaſured, according to the occaſion change their manners, as
doth the chamelion his color according to the place: nothing being by nature ſo ſhort, nothing
of

A of leſſe life than the remembrance of a benefit with the vnthankfull, which the greater it is, the more it is repaied with vngratitude; either by making it to haue been of little worth, or to haue proceeded not of courteſie, but from ſome other more priuat and proper conſiderations of the giuer. The Diet (aforeſaid) being aſſembled, diuers broiles were their raiſed by the malecontents, as vſually it commeth to paſſe where the people haue to do with the gouernment; apt to be moued with euerie rumour, alwaies readie to change their opinion as ſtraight glutted therewith, headſtrong, faithleſſe, all in words to no end: Some of them in that aſſemblie cried out, that the Almaines might be paied, diſcharged, and thanked for the paines they had taken for them as their neighbours, with offering to doe them the like pleaſure as their occaſions ſhould require: otherwiſe cried to haue them put all to the ſword, ſo much they were deuoid of reaſon:
B others cried out as faſt, that they were not by any meanes to endure the gouernment of *Maximilian* the Archduke, but by ſome nominated vnto them would needs haue a prince of their owne countrie, and ſuch an one as the great Turke ſhould well like of, as the Chancellor had perſuaded them. *Baſta* for all that not diſmaied with ſo vnexpected an encounter (albeit that he began to ſuſpect that he had loſt all his labour, if he were not in ſhort time with greater forces relieued) at ſuch time as the Chiaki with other the chiefe men amongſt the people, came as their maner was euery other day to viſit him: with couragious ſpeech and vnappauled countenance told them plainly. That he well perceiued their drift & purpoſe; and yet doubted not either of their oath of obedience giuen vnto his Imperial maieſtie, either of the freſh remembrance of the great benefit they had from him ſo lately receiued; and in caſe it might happen them little to
C eſteem of thoſe things (greater than which could not happen amongſt men) that yet they ſhould well know, that he was not a man to bee feared with words, but fully reſolued not to ſtirre one foot thence with his forces but rather to loſe his life, which he would for all that ſell as deere as he could. Whereunto anſwer was giuen with much courteous ſpeech, That he ſhould not giue eare vnto any the ſpeeches of the light vulgar people; but to content himſelfe that the Nobilitie in whoſe hands the chiefe power of that prouince was, had not done any thing not beſeeming themſelues. So after much diſpute, were appointed thre perſons according to the three eſtates (the Nobilitie, the Commons, & the State in general) to go vnto the Emperor, to requeſt of him *Maximilian* the Archduke for their Gouernour: with ſpeciall requeſt alſo, that it would pleaſe him not to ouercharge with forein ſoldiors that prouince alreadie ſore impoueriſhed; eſpecially
D hauing in it ſelfe people ſufficient for the defence thereof, & more nimble to encounter with the Turkes, than the heauie and ſlow Almaines and they alſo of double charge. Theſe difficulties with much adoe thus appeaſed by ſuch as ſtood faſt for the emperor, *Baſta* thought it not good againe to call any ſuch aſſembly, hoping that time and the emperors great wiſdome, would for all theſe matters find conuenient remedie. Yet ſaw he plainly the mind of the people was to reſolue to remaine for euer free, if they ſhould haue come to a ſecond conſultation; and in them a princely deſire to commaund rather than to be commaunded: Yea in that ſelfeſame Diet the Chiaki was declared Gouernour on the behalfe of the people, with authoritie in many things of himſelfe to determine without calling togither of any aſſemblie of the reſt of the States: which they ſaid they did only vntill they were by his Imperiall maieſtie prouided of a Gouernor. Ne-
E uertheleſſe *Baſta* well perceiued more than a Tribunitial power to be now ioined by the people vnto the emperours commiſſioners, knowing that this Chiaki was in great hope to haue been proclaimed prince of the confederats, in caſe they had not been preſently relieued againſt the Vayuod: and hauing in him yet noted ſtill his great ambition, for that marching from TORDA toward the Vayuod, he cauſed to bee carried before him a ſpeare with an Hungarian cap, and a plume of feathers vpon a launce, in token of his chiefe command; albeit that afterwards at the complaint of *Baſta*, pretending therein a wrong to be done vnto his regiment marching vnder the Imperiall ſtandard, he tooke it downe: neither was he then a little ſuſpected to haue ſuffered his ſoldiors to haue ſacked ALBA IVLIA, as alſo to haue ſurpriſed FOGARAS, and to haue vſed diuers other meanes all tending vnto popularitie and ambitious aſpiring: wherein he deemed
F it yet better to diſſemble than to proceed farther, and then to do it indeed when he had power ſufficient.

The ſtout ſpeech of Baſta, vnto the Chiaki and the reſt of the nobilitie of Tranſyluania.

The next day following came all the Counſell of that prouince, with the Deputies (appointed to haue gone vnto the emperor) and the people vnto the houſe of *Baſta*, requeſting him (although ſuch their manner of comming might ſeeme to exceed the bounds of requeſt) that he

would ſend his Germanes out of the countrie, and ſo after ſo many troubles to giue it leaue a G
little to breath: as for himſelfe, that he might ſtay at ALBA IVLIA, vntill the men deputed to
that purpoſe might go vnto his maieſtie with their requeſts. *Baſta* not a little troubled with ſuch
an imperious requeſt, and now (but not before) perceiuing the occaſion of this great diſcontent-
The errour of Baſta. ment, ſaw himſelfe much deceiued in a moſt material point and the ground of all this action, by
truſting too much vnto his owne too ſmall forces, too weake for the defence of his own perſon,
much leſſe to keepe vnder ſo populous a prouince, ſuch as before in the yeare 1552 vnder the
leading of *Caſtaldo*, had of it ſelfe ſent out 70 thouſand fighting men for the beſieging of LIP-
PA, and now vpon the ſudden twelue thouſand with a few noblemen in the face of a mighty and
armed enemie; where they now held an armed conſultation with him, the nobilitie meeting to-
gither with their great retinues; and ſo much the greater, by how much the ſuſpition was the H
more by them feared, for them to be enforced to reſolue vpon any thing contrarie to their good
liking: whereas he contenting himſelfe only with their oath without any other hoſtages, and
ſo giuing aid vnto the confederats, had put himſelfe vpon their faith, togither with all his peo-
ple, into the middeſt of TRANSYLVANIA; a matter of far greater importance than any pledge
they were able to haue giuen him. Beſides that, of the ſix thouſand men which he had brought
with him into that countrie, three thouſand fiue hundred of SILESIA now brought to two
thouſand, could not be perſuaded longer to ſtay without their pay before hand, the pay of their
countrie being alreadie ſpent: & the reſt drawne out of the garriſons of the vpper HVNGARIE,
or elſe there preſſed, were at a certaine time to returne. Yet neuertheleſſe he attempted in ſome
ſort to ſatisfie their requeſt, for not grieuing of the countrie, by requeſting of them to deliuer vn- I
to him ſome ſtrong place, whereinto he putting his men into garriſon, they might ſo lie without
any further charge or trouble to the countrie, liuing vpon their owne wages. Which when he
could not obtaine, and withall conſidering that if thoſe few of his people which yet remained
could be contented to ſtay with him, the retaining of them might giue occaſion vnto the deſi-
rous of new ſtirs vpon euery the leaſt diſorder of the ſoldiors, to alter the matter and their plea-
ſure; as had happened vnto the eight thouſand Almaines of *Caſtaldo*, driuen ſometimes out of
that countrie vnder the colour of ſome inſolencie by them committed, although others had
bin the chiefe doers thereof, namely about ſome twentie Polonians: hee reſolued of all theſe
things to giue notice to the Court, and ſo faire and ſoftly to march with his ſouldiors vnto the
confines of that countrie, and to ſaue his eight pieces of artillerie with his other munition in Sa- K
mos Viuar caſtle, a ſtrong fortreſſe a good way within the confines, which togither with the
ſtrong caſtle of KVIVAR, *Aga Leche* an Albanoiſe and Generall of the Vayuods horſemen de-
liuered to *Zakell* captaine of ZACCOMAR, one of his maieſties commiſſioners; who there pro-
uided for the Gouernor *Baſta* his familiar fauorit: although that the Tranſyluanians had with
great promiſes ſought to haue croſſed ſuch deliuerie of the aforeſaid caſtles, and to haue had
them in their owne power.

The diſcretion of the doer is not alwaies to be deemed by the euent of the thing done.

Wherfore *Baſta* not deceiued, but by neceſſitie enforced, yeelded that he could not hold, and
gaue that he could not ſell, making a vertue of neceſſitie; deceiued in the euent of the matter
which he had propounded vnto himſelfe from the beginning, for the aſſurance of that countrie
vnto the emperor, by an excuſable error, if it be true that ſome wiſe men ſay, Nothing to be more L
vnreaſonable than by the euent of matters to iudge of their wiſedome by whom they were ma-
naged; which conſiſteth not in diuining before of the certaintie of the euent, but in the reaſona-
ble coniecture thereof, by the means leading thereunto, than which nothing is more deceitfull,
as not depending from our owne actions onely, but from other mens alſo more groſſe and vn-
reaſonable: none knowing better how much the wiſedome of man deceiueth it ſelfe, than thoſe
which are vnto themſelues true witneſſes of the euent of their owne conſultations. Neuerthe-
leſſe the matter was afterward ſo well handled by *Baſta*, *Petzen*, and others the emperours great
fauourits in TRANSYLVANIA, that in a Diet holden by the Tranſyluanians, he was with a con-
uenient guard againe by them receiued as the Emperours lieutenant, vntill further order were
by him taken for the gouernment and aſſurance of that countrie: the Chiaki and his complices M
faintly conſenting thereunto, as not greatly pleaſed therewith. Neither had *Baſta* much cauſe
to be proud of ſuch his gouernment, hauing therof no longer aſſurance than pleaſed that fickle
people to affoord him: yet ſith no better could be had, hee muſt take it as he might, deeming it
better in ſome ſort for the preſent to hold it for the Emperour, than not at all: with which his

weake

A weake ſtate amongſt moe enemies than friends, we will for a while leaue him.

But whileſt things thus paſſed (as we haue ſaid) in TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE (the treatie for peace betwixt the emperour and the Turke being vaniſhed into ſmoake;) *Ibrahim Baſſa* the Turkes generall in HVNGARIE, hauing all the laſt Winter made great preparation for the inuaſion of the emperours territories, and the doing of ſome notable enterpriſe for the recouerie of his reputation ſomewhat impaired by the euill ſucceſſe of the laſt yeares warres; and euen in theſe his greateſt preparations of this yeare, not a little troubled by the mutinie of the Ianizaries and Spahi for want of their pay at CONSTANTINOPLE, as alſo with the rebellion in CARAMANIA: now at length in the latter end of Auguſt (by order from the Grand ſignior his great lord and maſter) began to ſet forward with his armie from BELGRADE, ſuppoſed to be
B aboue two hundred thouſand men ſtrong. And comming to BABOTSCA, a ſtrong fortreſſe of the Chriſtians in the neither HVNGARIE, ſat downe before it, and hauing planted his artillerie, furiouſly battered it, with purpoſe to haue the next day aſſaulted it: but the captaine of the caſtle conſidering the weakeneſſe of his garriſon to withſtand ſo puiſſant an enemie, and that the wals to be alreadie ſore ſhaken with the furie of the great ordinance, came to a reaſonable compoſition with the Baſſa, and ſo deliuered vnto him the place. Which exploit done and the caſtle to him ſurrendred, he marched from thence to CANISIA, a ſtrong towne in the frontiers of STIRIA, of moſt men before ſuppoſed a place impregnable; for that it was ſituat in a very deepe mariſh, and furniſhed with a ſtrong garriſon of valiant ſouldiors, part Hungarians and part Almains: after this ſtrong town *Ibrahim* the great Baſſa eſpecially longed, ſo to free thoſe frontires
C of the Turkes from the often incurſions that the garriſon ſoldiors of that place made therin; as alſo by the taking of that ſo ſtrong a fortreſſe from the Chriſtians, to open a more free and ſafe paſſage for the Turks into AVSTRIA, to the indangering of other places of the empire alſo farther off. Wherefore encamping his great armie on the ſide of the marſh which compaſſed the Iſle round whereon the towne ſtood, he began with fagots and earth to fill vp the mariſh, ſo to paſſe ouer his armie; they in the towne in the meane time not ceaſing with their thundring ſhot to diſturbe them, and to doe them what harme they might: who for all that proceeding in their worke, had brought it now almoſt cloſe vnto the iſland, where whileſt they were about to haue landed, they were by the ſouldiours of the garriſon ſo encountred, that hauing loſt a number of their men as well Ianizaries as others, with two of their beſt captaines alſo, they were by plaine
D valour enforced to retire. But preparing themſelues againſt the next day with a greater force to haue againe returned vnto the aſſault of the Iſle, they ſaw the Imperiall armie now at their backs, and come ſo neere them, that with their artillerie they did them great harme; which put them in no ſmall feare, ſeeing themſelues encloſed betwixt the towne and the campe, and both out of the one and the other to receiue no ſmall hurt, as well with the ſmall ſhot as the great: beſides that out of the campe diuers whole bands ſometimes ſallied, diſcharging great vollies of ſhot euen into their trenches. In the Imperiall armie were about two and fortie thouſand horſe and foot, men of diuers nations, vnder the leading of duke *Mercurie*, now Generall of the Emperors forces in HVNGARIE; with whom were alſo the lords *Nadaſti*, *Eſdrin*, *Bacchian*, and the Gouernour of CROATIA, with diuers other famous captaines, come thither for the reliefe of CA-
E NISIA, a place of ſo great importance for the defence of that ſide of the countrie, and to helpe that it fell not into the power of the barbarous enemie. But *Ibrahim Baſſa* vnderſtanding by his eſpials the ſmall number of the Chriſtians; and well knowing how much he was too ſtrong for them by reaſon of his great multitude, went out againſt them, & finding them as readie as himſelfe, ioyned battell with them, with great ſlaughter of men both on the one ſide and the other: which bloudie fight (the victorie yet ſtanding doubtfull, but in all mens iudgement more inclining vnto the Chriſtians than to the Turkes) was at length by the comming on of the night broken off. At which time the Chriſtians retiring themſelues into their trenches, the Turkes ſtood all the night in the field with their weapons in their hands, as fearing to haue bin againe in the night by their enemies aſſailed. Meane while the Chriſtian captaines in the campe at variance
F amongſt themſelues, and ſo not now to be commaunded by duke *Mercurie* their Generall (at ſuch time as the Turkes preſuming on their multitude dared them to battell the next day) could by no meanes be perſuaded to go out againſt them, or once to ſtirre out of their trenches. Inſomuch that the Generall of the Tartars therupon taking courage, made an inrode into the countrie thereby, and meeting with two hundred wagons laded with victuals going vnto the Chri-

Canisia beſieged by the Turkes.

The battell betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turkes before Canisia.

ſtian campe, ſlew the conuoy that guarded them, and ſo carried them quite away. Whereby G
ſuch want aroſe in the Chriſtian campe, that hauing not what to eat, and out of hope of any
new ſupplie of reliefe in time to come, they were glad by night to diſlodge and retire, which
could not ſo ſecretly be done, but that it was by the Turkes perceiued, who preſently following
after them in the taile of the armie, cut off about three thouſand of them, with certaine pieces of
great ordinance, and moſt part of the baggage; the reſt of the armie in the meane time retiring
farther off into places of more ſafetie. From this victorie the Turks returned againe to the ſiege
of CANISIA, where after a few daies, the garriſon ſouldiors now out of hope to be in good time
relieued, ſuddenly fell into mutinie, refuſing any longer to defend the towne now hardly laied
vnto by the Turkes; and the rather, for that diuers of the Hungarians were alreadie fled out of
the town vnto the Baſſa, hauing (as it was thought) reuealed vnto him the whole eſtate of the be- H
ſieged: ſo that now there was no remedie but that the towne muſt be deliuered vnto the enemie,
Canisia yeelded vnto the Turkes although *Paradiſer* with ſome other of the captaines did what they might (as they ſaid afterwards) to haue perſuaded the contrarie. Whereupon they came to parley with the Baſſa, and
couenanting with him that they might with bag and baggage depart, and with a ſafe conuoy be
brought ouer the riuer Mur, promiſed to yeeld vnto him the towne: all which the Baſſa granted, fearing how to haue bin able to haue kept the field, if they ſhould for any long time haue
holden out, Winter now ſo faſt approaching. So the two and twentith of October the towne
was vnto the Baſſa right cowardly deliuered, and the garriſon ſoldiors with their baggage in an
hundred wagons let them by the Turks, ſafely conducted ouer the Mur as was vnto them pro-
miſed. After the agreement made for the yeelding vp of the towne, the Baſſa in courteſie ſent I
vnto *Paradiſer* the gouernour a very rich gowne of cloth of gold; which albeit that he refuſed,
yet was it afterwards laid to his charge as a preſumption of ſome treacherous colluſion betwixt
him and the Baſſa for the betraying of the towne, which it was thought he might much longer
Stiria forraged by the Turkes. haue kept. *Ibrahim* now thus poſſeſſed of the towne he ſo much deſired, fortified it more ſtrongly than euer it was before; and for the more aſſurance thereof, put into it a ſtrong garriſon of
foure thouſand foot and fiue hundred horſe, all old expert ſoldiors. And immeniatly after without reſiſtance, forraged the countrie round about CANISIA, burning all before him as he went;
the poore Chriſtian inhabitants ſtil flying as faſt as they could for ſafegard of their liues. But ha-
uing thus with the ſpoile of the countrie well pleaſed his ſouldiors, he deſirous to haue the ſame
againe in time repeopled, as thereby to yeeld vnto the Turkes the more profit, ſtaid their farther K
outrage, vpon great paine forbidding the ſame; by open proclamations in euery place ſet vp,
inuiting the Chriſtians without feare of farther harme to return againe into the countrie, where
ſubmitting them vnto the great Sultans obeiſance, they ſhould vnder his protection ſafely dwel,
without any tribute to be of them exacted for the ſpace of three yeares next following. Which
proclamations were in his name thus publiſhed.

Ibrahim Baſſa to the inhabitants of the countrey about CANISIA, greeting.

Ibrahim Baſſa his proclamation. *We* Ibrahim Baſſa *by the grace of God, Viſier, and Couſin vnto the moſt puiſſant and inuincible Sul-* L
tan Mahomet, *Emperor of the Turkes, vnto all the inhabitants of the marches about* CANISIA, *and the reſt of the countrie of* STEIRMARCK, *from the greateſt to the leaſt, greeting. Whereas we haue willingly heard that ſome of you willing to ſubmit your ſelues vnto the great Sultan, and to ſweare vnto him fealtie, are againe returned vnto your old dwellings: We promiſe and aſſure you vpon the faith of the ſaid emperor, that whoſoeuer ſhall be found neere vnto the fortreſſe of* CANISIA *now belonging vnto the great Sultan, with all reuerence ſubmitting himſelfe as his ſubiect vnder his gouernment, acknowledging him for his ſouereigne; ſhall enioy moe priuiledges than euer he did before, and alſo be protected in the ſame. And for that we know that your houſes are for the moſt part deſtroied, as alſo your poſteritie; you ſhall therefore for theſe three yeare next following be exempted and free from all tributes and charges whatſoeuer, to the intent you may the better recouer your ſelues. Of which grace if you ſhall willingly accept,* M
we promiſe you, that neither you, your wiues, or children, ſhall be in any thing wronged, or your goods in any part impaired, but ſo much as in vs poſſibly is to be defended: ſo that ſo many of you as pleaſe, may in ſafetie returne into your owne old dwellings, giuing before knowledge thereof vnto the Gouernour of this our fortreſſe. Giuen in our campe after the conqueſt of CANISIA.

Many

A Many of theſe poore countrey people before fled for feare of the Turkes, and not knowing where to beſtow themſelues, now vpon this proclamation returned again to their antient dwelling places, there to begin the world againe vnder the Turkiſh obeiſance. But for that Countie *Serinus* was the man whom of all others in that countrey the great Baſſa ſought after, as him whom he moſt feared after his departure to trouble this his new conqueſt, and to ſeeke to be reuenged; hauing in this ſo generall a calamitie of SYRIA his countrie, loſt twentie villages of his owne, quite burnt by the Turks, and the people moſt ſlaine or els taken priſoners: the Baſſa hauing many times before ſought to haue perſuaded him to haue yeelded his obedience vnto the Turkiſh Sultan, and now in hope after ſo great loſſe to bring him in, before he were come into the vtter ruine of all his fortunes (now by the loſſe of CANISIA, and the entrance of the Turkes
B into SYRIA, not a little endangered) writ vnto him as followeth:

Ibrahim Baſſa his letters vnto the Countie Serinus.

We Ibrahim Baſſa, *chiefe of the Vifier Baſſaes, and couſin vnto the moſt puiſſant Sultan* Mahomet, *to the countie* Serinus *ſendeth greeting. We haue oftentimes heretofore written vnto thee concerning the matter thou knoweſt of: but what the cauſe is that we receiued no anſwere, we cannot tell. Yet could I not but write to thee againe, that if yet thou canſt be content to begin the matter aright, and to ſubmit thy ſelfe vnto our protection, we will be readie to receiue thee. Thou ſeeſt, that what we foretold thee, is now more than fulfilled both vpon thee and thine, which thou wouldeſt neuer beleeue. Neuertheleſſe, for the ſtaying of the further effuſion of the bloud as well of thy ſubiects as ours, and to come to ſome good attonement, it is high time for thee to lay thine hand vpon thine heart, and to conſider how much more it con-*
C *cerneth thee than vs, and that the benefit therof redoundeth more vnto thine than ours. What our affection is towards thee,* Hierome *the Vayuod can tell thee. Fare thou well from our campe after the conqueſt of* CANISIA *the ſeuenth of Nouember,* 1600.

Ibrahim Baſſa returneth vnto his armie to Belgrade.

But theſe letters being alſo as the reſt anſwered with ſilence, the great Baſſa hauing diſpoſed of all as he thought beſt at CANISIA and in the countrie thereabout, returned with his armie to BELGRADE, there to Winter: hauing before fully certified the great Sultan of all his proceedings, and the ſucceſſe of this war, vaunting after his vaine maner, the next Spring to beſiege VIENNA alſo, if it ſhould pleaſe him ſo to commaund. Of all which things *Mahomet* vnderſtanding, & not a little therwith pleaſed, cauſed great triumphs to be made by the ſpace of foure
D dayes at CONSTANTINOPLE, and in token of his loue and fauour ſent a rich robe of cloth of gold, with a leading ſtaffe, all ſet with pearle and precious ſtones, vnto the Baſſa, yet lying at BELGRADE.

This loſſe of CANISIA much troubled all that ſide of Chriſtendome, eſpecially them of the territories belonging vnto the houſe of AVSTRIA, in a ſort diſmayed to ſee the Turkes ſo eaſily poſſeſſed of a towne, before thought almoſt impregnable, and the ſtrongeſt defence of all that countrey againſt the furious impreſſions of the Turks, to whom it was now become a moſt ſafe and ſure receptacle, all men with one voice blaming the diſcord of the captains in the imperiall armie for ſo retiring without any good doing: but aboue all deteſting the cowardiſe of *Paradiſer*, who knowne to haue in the towne a ſtrong garriſon, with good ſtore of munition and
E victuals (as was ſuppoſed) had ſo baſely deliuered the ſame vnto the enemie, not doing the vttermoſt of his deuoir as had beſeemed him for the defence thereof: whereas if he had ſo done, happily in the meane time the cold & vnſeaſonableneſſe of the weather (though no other reliefe had beene) Winter being now come, might haue inforced the Turkes to haue raiſed their ſiege. Whereupon he was for this ſo foule a fact by the emperours commandement apprehended and caſt in priſon at VIENNA, where after he had long lien, and his cauſe oftentimes examined, he was the next yere following condemned of felony and cowardiſe, and ſo the fifteenth day of October executed, hauing firſt his hand at foure ſtrokes of the executioner ſtruck off, and after that his head: with him was alſo in like maner executed his enſigne-bearer: and after them his lieutenant with the maior of the towne, who both bound faſt to a ſtake, had firſt their tongues cut out, and
F afterwards their heads chopt off.

Paradiſer executed for the yeelding vp of Caniſa to the Turkes.

Now the rebellion before raiſed in CARAMANIA by *Cuſſahin Baſſa*, (as is aforeſaid) was not with his death altogether appeaſed. Alſo ORFA, a great citie of that countrey (which hauing taſted the ſweetneſſe of libertie in the time of *Cuſſahin*) yet ſtill holding out againſt *Mehemet* the great Baſſa, the Sultans lieutenant Generall there. At which time alſo a companion of *Cuſſahin*

the late rebell, called the *Scrimano*, and one of his greateſt fauorits; ſeeing how hardly not only *Cuſſabin* himſelfe, but the reſt of his followers had bin handled by the Turkes, began to make head, and to call vnto him all ſuch as loued their libertie: vnto the ſweet name whereof, ſo many were in ſhort time come about him, as that out of them he formed ſuch an armie, as made him now dreadfull vnto the Turkes his enemies. Againſt whom, *Mehemet Baſſa* going with all his power to haue oppreſſed him, found him with thoſe his rebellious followers ſo couragious (for the deſire they all had to breake out of the *Othoman* ſlauerie, and to liue in ſuch libertie as was promiſed them by their captaine and Generall) that ioyning battell with them, he receiued of them a notable ouerthrow, inſomuch that fearing to haue loſt his whole armie, he was glad to retire, and to ſend out commiſſions for the raiſing of greater forces. Sultan *Mahomet* in the mean time, whether it was for feare of this new rebellion, or for that he vnderſtood of the embaſſadors ſent from the Perſian vnto the Chriſtian princes, began to ſuſpect leaſt that king ſhould breake the league he had with him, and ſo to his farther trouble take vp armes alſo againſt him. Wherefore vpon a Turkiſh pride he ſent an embaſſador into PERSIA, to giue the king to vnderſtand, That for the more aſſurance of the league betwixt them, he demanded to haue one of his ſonnes ſent vnto him in hoſtage, as a pledge of his fathers faith. Which ſo proud a demand the Perſian king tooke in ſuch diſdaine, that he commanded in his rage the embaſſador to be forthwith ſlain: but that his furie being by his graue counſellors ſomewhat appeaſed, he remitted the ſeueritie of that his rigorous command, and ſparing his life, was contented, that in deſpight and contempt of him that had ſent him, he ſhould be put to the Baſtonado only: and ſo grieuouſly threatned, ſent backe againe vnto his maſter. Who hauing receiued this ſhamefull anſwere, and in doubt of ſome further matter from that angrie king, commanded new and ſtrong garriſons to be put in all his ſtrong holds confining vpon the Perſian kingdome.

The Turkes embaſſador euill entreated by the king of Perſia.

1601 This troubleſome yeare of Iubile thus paſt, the Emperour much troubled with the loſſe of CANISIA, and in doubt of worſe to come (albeit that *Ibrahim Baſſa*, whom for all that he truſted not, did afreſh entreat with him concerning peace) and ſeeing alſo the great need he had of greater aid to withſtand the mightie power of the Turke, with great inſtancie requeſted aid of the Pope and of the other princes of ITALIE: who conſidering alſo how much it concerned the reſt of the Chriſtian commonweale, to haue the frontires of HVNGARIE defended, condiſcended vnto the emperors requeſt: and ſo the Pope with the beginning of the Spring ſent him eight thouſand ſouldiours in pay, vnder the leading of *Io. Franceſco Aldobrandino* his nephew their Generall, who with the like charge had now ſerued euer ſince the yeare 1599: King *Philip* alſo at the inſtance of the emperour gaue order vnto the Countie *Fuentes* to ſend into CROATIA certain bands of Dutches; who by direction from him, were forthwith conducted to MILLAINE: The great duke of FLORENCE alſo ſent vnto him two thouſand ſouldiours, vnder the leading of *Franceſco de Monte*; with whom alſo by his appointment went the lord *Io. de Medices*, whom *Ferdinand* the Archduke forthwith requeſted for to be maſter of his campe: Thither came alſo the duke of MANTVA with an honourable companie both of horſe and foot, being forthwith by the Archduke made his lieutenant generall. And ſo whileſt theſe people aſſembled togither into CROATIA, the emperor ſent alſo another good armie into HVNGARIE, drawne for moſt part out of GERMANIE, which vnder the leading of the Archduke *Matthias* his brother, and the duke *Mercurie* his lieutenant generall, went into thoſe parts to withſtand the Turke. A third armie he alſo made of the Imperials: which ſtrengthened with the forces of *Don Ferrant Gonzaga*, Gouernour of the vpper HVNGARIE, ioyned themſelues with *Baſta*, for the recouerie of TRANSYLVANIA; out of which he had beene of late driuen, as ſhall hereafter be declared.

The aid ſent out of Italie vnto the emperor.

And ſo whileſt theſe armies were in preparing, many hot skirmiſhes paſſed in HVNGARIE betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turks, the loſſe falling ſometime to the one ſide and ſometime to the other. But the time now come that ſouldiors might well take the field, *Ibrahim Baſſa* being now before dead at BELGRADE, whileſt he was yet entreating of a diſſembled peace, and *Haſſan* one of the Viſier Baſſaes by *Mahomet* appointed Generall in HVNGARIE in his place: yet delaying his comming, the parley for peace laied aſide (as neuer indeed by the Turks intended, but onely by them entertained to dallie off the time to their owne more aduantage) duke *Mercurie* Generall of the emperours forces taking the offer of ſo fit an oportunitie, came with his armie from COMORA (where he had lien expecting the euent of the parley) and laied ſiege to ALBA REGA-

Ibrahim Baſſa dieth at Belgrade.

Alba Regalis beſieged by duke Mercurie.

A REGALIS, one of the chiefe and ſtrongeſt cities of HVNGARIE: which ſeated in the middeſt of a mariſh, was thought almoſt impregnable, being hardly to be approached but by the ſuburbes; which ſtrongly fortified and defended by the mariſh, ſerued the citie in ſtead of three moſt ſure bulwarkes, within which ſtood alſo the citie it ſelfe, well defended with a good wall and a ditch. This citie the duke for certain daies continually battered, as if he had purpoſed at length to haue taken it by aſſault: but in the meane time certainly informed by a fugitiue (but lately fled out of the citie) that the broad lake on the other ſide of the citie ouer againſt the place where he lay, was not ſo deepe, but that it was to be paſſed (contrarie to the opinion both of the Turkes captiues, and of the naturall inhabitants, whom hee had vpon that point examined) and that the Turkes preſuming vpon the ſtrength therof, and thinking themſelus on that ſide ſafe, had turned almoſt
B all their care and forces vnto that ſide of the citie which was now by him battered, without regard of any great perill to be from the other ſide feared: he appointed the lord *Ruſſworm* with his ſouldiors to make proofe if the SIGETH ſuburbs (for ſo they were called) on the aforeſaid ſide of the citie ſo little regarded by the Turks, were not to be ſurpriſed: for that theſe ſuburbes being taken, the citie could not long hold out. For the vndertaking of which enterpriſe, *Ruſſworm* was both by the captiue Turks and countrey people thereby dwelling, much diſcouraged, they all with one conſent affirming, That albeit he ſhould find no other difficulties in the attempting thereof, yet the lake it ſelfe was not poſſible to be paſſed: who neuertheleſſe not altogether truſting them, ſent certaine of his men ſecretly to trie the matter: who hauing ſo done, brought him word, That the lake was vndoubtedly (though with much difficultie) to be paſſed. Whereupon
C hee with a thouſand ſelect ſouldiours with euery one of them a good faggot on his backe beſide his armes, to fill vp the deepeſt of the mariſh, by night entred the ſame; wherein he had not gone farre, but that he almoſt with the danger of his life found it much deeper and more troubleſome than the ſpies had vnto him before reported: but caried with an inuincible courage himſelf, and his ſouldiors moued by his example, hee ſtill went on, they alſo following of him. It is almoſt a thing incredible, to tell what theſe aduenturous men indured, plunged in the deep mud amongſt the flags and bulruſhes, going ſtil vp in water and mud vnto the waſt euen where the mariſh was the ſhalloweſt; where alſo if one miſſed but a ſtep, he was by and by ouer head and eares, and in danger to be drowned, if he were not by his fellowes preſently holden: yet at length by God his helpe hauing with the loſſe but of ſixe or ſeauen men a little before day got ouer, the duke by an
D appointed ſigne aduertiſed thereof, with greater ſtirre and tumult than at any time before aſſailed that ſide of the citie where he lay; as if euen then and there he had onely meant to haue engaged his whole forces for the winning thereof. When in the meane time the lord *Ruſſworm* on the other ſide with his reſolute ſouldiors, with ladders prouided for the purpoſe ſcaled the wals of the ſuburbs, and almoſt vnperceiued, recouered the top thereof (the Turkes being at the ſame time wholly bent for the defence of the other ſide of the citie, where moſt ſtirre and apparent danger was) and ſo being got into the ſuburbes, with a great and terrible crie aſſailed the Turks; who ſurpriſed with an exceeding feare, and not well knowing which way to turne themſelues, without any great reſiſtance fled into the citie, the Chriſtians following them at the heeles, and making of them a great ſlaughter. In which ſo great a confuſion, euen where was leaſt feared,
E the duke by other his ſouldiors tooke the reſt of the ſuburbes as he had before determined, the Turks there alſo for feare forſaking them, and retiring with all the haſt they could vnto their fellowes in the citie, there to liue or die together. The Chriſtians in theſe ſuburbes, beſide much other rich prey, tooke alſo foureteene great pieces of artillerie, with good ſtore of ſhot and pouder. The ſuburbes (the greateſt ſtrength of the citie) thus happily taken, the duke againe ſummoned the citie, requiring to haue it deliuered vnto him: whereunto the Turkes gaue no other anſwere but by their pieces, which they diſcharged vpon the Chriſtians ſo perſwading them to yeeld. Wherewith the duke much diſpleaſed, ſent them word, That he would ſend them other manner of meſſengers to morrow, and by Gods helpe ſup with them in the citie, although hee were not vnto them welcome. Neither failed he of that his promiſe: for the next day hauing
F out of the ſuburbs by the furie of his artillerie made two faire breaches into the citie, he by the ruines thereof with great ſlaughter of the enemie entred the citie, albeit that the Turkes did what they might to haue defended the ſame, by caſting downe vpon the Chriſtians as they entered, darts, wild fire, and ſuch like things, vſually prouided for ſuch purpoſe. But ſeeing now no remedie, but that they muſt needs giue place vnto the fortune of their enemies, they fled amaine into

The ſuburbs of Alba Regalis ſurpriſed by the lord Ruſſworm.

Alba Regalis taken by the Chriſtians.

into their houſes, there to defend themſelues, or els to die: many of which houſes they had before of purpoſe ſo vndermined, as that they could eaſily ouerthrow them, and ſo ouerwhelme as many as ſhould come within the danger of them: which ſo ſtrange a reſolution was by many of thē as deſperatly performed, inſomuch that the goodly church, the pallace, with many other ſumptuous buildings, were left vnto the Chriſtians all rent and torne, not much better than rude heapes of rubbidge and ſtones. Howbeit the Baſſa vpon promiſe of life yeelded himſelfe, and was by the Duke preſently ſent vnto the camp; the reſt of the ſouldiors being (as in ſuch caſe it commonly happeneth) all or moſt of them put to the ſword. The greateſt part of the prey fell vnto the Wallons; who by heapes breaking into the richeſt houſes, not onely tooke what themſelues light vpon, but ſtript the Germans alſo of ſuch things as they had by chance gotten, to their great heart-burning & griefe: yea theſe rauenous & irreligious men not ſo contented, opened the tombes of the Hungarian kings, there long before buried, to ſpoile euen the dead of ſuch things as had for honours ſake beene long before enterred with them (if happily any ſuch thing were there to be found) ſhewing themſelues therin more barbarous than the Turks, who by the ſpace of threeſcore yeares hauing had the citie in their poſſeſſion, had yet ſpared thoſe reuerend monuments, and ſuffered the reliques of thoſe worthie princes to reſt in peace. Of this taking of ALBA REGALIS, the Baſſa of BVDA long before taken priſoner, and then lying at VIENNA, hearing, abſtained from meat with his two ſeruants a whole day proſtrate vpon his face, praying vnto his prophet *Mahomet*, who had (as he ſaid) all this yeare beene angrie with the Turks. Which had the ſiege of CANISIA taken the like effect, had then vndoubtedly beene vnto them moſt vnfortunat: but God in his wiſdome ſtill tempereth the ſweet with the ſoure.

Aſſan Baſſa commeth out of ſeaſon to haue relieued Alba Regalis.

Now in the meane while was *Aſſan* the Viſier Baſſa and Generall of the Turkes armie with ſuch ſouldiors as were alreadie aſſembled at BELGRADE, comming to haue relieued ALBA REGALIS: and albeit that he vnderſtood by the way as he marched, that the citie was by the Chriſtians woon, yet held he on his entended iourney: and ſo taking with him the Baſſa of BVDA, with the other Sanzackes and commaunders of the townes and caſtles thereabout, had formed an armie of about threeſcore thouſand ſtrong, but for moſt part raw and vnexpert ſouldiours: with which power he ſtill held on his way towards ALBA REGALIS, as well thereby to giue ſome contentment vnto the angrie Sultan his maſter, as in hope alſo to ouerthrow the Chriſtian armie, or at leaſtwiſe to find the citie as yet vnrepaired, and ſo to regaine it. But vaine was that his deſignement, eſpecially for the recouerie of the citie: for that the duke had no ſooner taken it, but that he forthwith cauſed the breaches to be repaired, and for the more aſſurance of it, put into it a ſtrong garriſon of old expert ſouldiours: and being himſelfe about twentie thouſand ſtrong, and hearing of the Baſſaes comming, ſet forward to meet him, and being come neere vnto him, began an hot and bloudie skirmiſh with him. Yet the Baſſa to proſecute his entended purpoſe for the recouerie of ALBA REGALIS, the next day ſent away part of his armie, to make proofe if happily the citie might yet be againe recouered, and himſelfe in the meane time with the reſt of his armie offered battell vnto the Chriſtians, ſo to buſie them, that they ſhould not be able to trouble them whom he had ſent to ALBA REGALIS, or to relieue the citie, if it ſhould chance to be by them diſtreſſed. When as the duke, before enformed of the baſeneſſe of the ſouldiors in the Baſſaes armie, and that although he were for number of men farre aboue him, yet that for old, hardie, and expert ſouldiors he was ſtrong ynough for him, valiantly went out and encountered him: and ſo euen at the firſt onſet by plaine valour diſordering the formoſt ſquadrons of the Turkes battell, enforced them to retire with the loſſe of ſix thouſand men; amongſt whom were the Baſſa of BVDA, ſix Sanzackes, with diuers other captaines and commaunders of good place and marke. At which time he alſo tooke from them diuers pieces of great artillerie, and had vndoubtedly with a notable ſlaughter ouerthrowne all the reſt of the Baſſaes armie, had not a great ſquadron of the Tartars euen at that inſtant ſhewed themſelus at the backs of the Chriſtians, and ſo ſtaying them, giuen leiſure vnto the Baſſa again to reſtore his diſordered battaile. Whereupon the duke contenting himſelfe with the victorie he had alreadie gotten, in good order retired againe into his trenches, hauing in this conflict not loſt aboue three hundred of his people. But whileſt both armies thus lay, and new ſupplies ſtill repairing vnto them, expecting but when they ſhould come to a generall day of battaile; the Ianizaries ſtill murmuring, that it was now no time of the yeare longer to keepe the field, by their importunitie enforced the Baſſa to retire to BVDA, and there to disband his armie. In which his

The victorie of the Chriſtians ouer the Turks.

The Baſſa of Buda ſlaine.

retreat

A retreat many were by the Chriſtians cut off in the taile of his armie, and a number of priſoners taken, and amongſt the reſt fiftie of the French mutiners of PAPPA, whom the archduke *Matthias* at the inſtance of duke *Mercurie* afterwards pardoned. Neither ſped they much better that were ſent by the Baſſa to haue attempted the taking of ALBA REGALIS, for being come neere thereunto, they were ſo welcomed with great ſhot out of the citie, and charged with often ſallies by the ſtrong garriſon, that ſeeing no hope to preuaile, they were glad to riſe and to returne againe vnto the Baſſa that ſent them.

About the ſame time that the duke began to beſiege ALBA REGALIS, *Ferdinand* the archduke hauing receiued great aid from the Pope, with the other princes of ITALIE and the king of SPAINE, and ſo now thirtie thouſand ſtrong, by the aduiſe of the duke of MANTVA his lieu-
B tenant Generall, reſolued to beſiege CANISIA; which to haue again recouered out of the hands of the Turkes concerned much, not them of STIRIA and AVSTRIA onely, but the other prouinces adioyning, yea and ITALIE it ſelfe alſo: whereupon hee with his armie in good order came the tenth of September and encamped before it; the duke of MANTVA and *Don Iohn di Medices* with two thouſand harquebuſiers and two cornets of horſe, being come the day before to take view of the towne, at whom the Turkes made diuers ſhot, but without any harme doing. And albeit that the Turks there in garriſon in number not paſt a thouſand (accounting amongſt them three hundred of the Wallons ſometime of the garriſon of PAPPA) with their often and gallant ſallies greatly troubled the Chriſtians; and that great bands of other Turkes came many times out of the ſtrong towne and fortreſſes thereby, to skirmiſh with them, and to ſee if they
C could put any moe ſouldiors into the towne for the more aſſurance thereof: yet ſuch was the carefulneſſe of the Chriſtian commanders, and valour of their ſouldiors, that the Turks both in the one place and the other, were to their coſt ſtill repulſed and put to flight, with the loſſe alſo of ſome of their ſmall caſtles and forts thereabout. To approch this ſtrong towne and to plant a battery againſt it, ſeemed to be a matter of great difficultie, for that it was (as we haue elſewhere ſaid) enuironed round with a mariſh: yet meanes was found to drie it a little, and to fill it vp on the one ſide, and to come ſo neere the towne, that hauing planted three tyre of artillerie againſt it, the Chriſtians began furiouſly to batter it, beating downe both the walls, the houſes, and other buildings therein. Yea at length they had brought their approaches ſo neere, that they were come with their trenches euen cloſe vnto the towne ditch, perſuading the Turks now whi-
D leſt they might vpon good conditions to ſurrender the towne, and ſo to ſaue their liues. Whereunto their fierce and enraged minds were ſo farre from hearkening, that brauing the Chriſtians they ſaid, That they would in deſpight of all their forces keepe the place for their Sultan doe what they could. Whereupon the Archduke and the duke of MANTVA, by the aduiſe of *Medices* and the reſt of the principall captaines and commanders in the armie, reſolued to giue a generall aſſault vnto the towne. In the meane time newes was brought into the campe, of the winning of ALBA REGALIS, which there made great reioycing, in ſigne whereof the Chriſtians (as the manner is) in triumph many times diſcharged their great ordinance: and by fit men perſuaded the garriſon ſouldiors in CANISIA to yeeld, and not to caſt themſelues into ſuch danger as had their fellowes at ALBA REGALIS, for that in ſo doing they ſhould not onely ſaue
E their liues, but eaſily alſo obtaine ſuch other good conditions as they could reaſonably deſire, whereas otherwiſe they ſhould to their coſt finde the Chriſtians ſtrong enough to conſtraine them, which muſt needs bring with it their vtter ruine and deſtruction. Whereunto the garriſon ſouldiors (amongſt whom the renegate Wallons were the chiefe) contemptuouſly anſwered, That they little feared ſuch weake aſſailants: and with great crie and ſcorne commaunding the meſſengers to depart, in token of their confidence as alſo not to ſeeme inferiour vnto the Chriſtians, oftentimes to ſmall purpoſe diſcharged their great ordinance, as had the Chriſtians the day before. Now though the wals of the towne were with continuall batterie ſore ſhaken, and the breaches almoſt laid open; yet was the intended aſſault for a while delaid, vntill the bridges might be made that were to bee laid ouer the towne ditch, for the Chriſtians to paſſe ouer
F vpon. But all things (as was thought) now in a readineſſe, and the Florentines with ſome other of the Italians (whoſe lot it was to giue the firſt aſſault) being come forward, the bridge whereby they were to paſſe the towne ditch was found both too ſhort and too weake for them to get ouer vnto the other ſide by: ſo that ſinking vnder them, not the ſouldiors onely, but euen the commaunders themſelues, and namely *Herberſtein*, were in great danger to haue been loſt. By

Canisia beſieged by Ferdinand the Archduke.

which

which meanes they hindred, and the enemies murthering pieces continually flanking them, and G
their musketiers ſtil playing vpon them afront, they were inforced to retire, leauing behind them
three hundred of their men ſlaine. Yet were not the Chriſtian commaunders any thing there-
with diſcouraged, but being generally reſolued not to giue ouer that they had taken in hand vn-
till they had brought it to effect, began to make ſuch prouiſion as they knew to be needfull to
preſerue their armie vnder, againſt the violence of the winter weather, as alſo to hinder that no
victuals might bee brought vnto the towne, ſo by famine at length to enforce the Turks and
Wallons to yeeld: who although they were already pinched with wants, inſomuch that horſ-
fleſh was daintie cheere with them; yet for all that they nothing abated of their wonted fierce-
neſſe, but being againe required to yeeld, vouchſafed not to anſwere them one word, but inſtead
thereof ſhooke their naked ſwords a farre off at them, in token of their vndaunted courage. But H
yet for all this reſolution of the commanders for the continuance of the ſiege, *Aldobrandino* Ge-
nerall of the Italians being now a little before dead (of an old infirmitie he had) the Italians be-
gan at the firſt ſome few of them ſecretly to withdraw themſelues out of their quarter: but after-
ward by greater numbers to depart, and ſo to returne againe into their countrey; alleaging for
their excuſe, want both of pay and victuals. But the reſt better minded, vnderſtanding that the
Turkes were riſen from before ALBA REGALIS, and the reſt of their armie diſbanded, began
to enter into new hope by ſome deuiſe or other to paſſe the ditch, and ſo by force to take the
towne: and the rather, for that they were by a French fugitiue informed both of the weakneſſe
and wants of the beſieged. Whereupon they began afreſh to make new engines for the approa-
ching of the wals, without danger of the enemies ordinance any more to flanke them. At which I
time alſo (*viz.* the fourth of Nouember) the lord *Ruſſworm* came vnto the campe, ſent thither
from duke *Mercurie* with eight thouſand ſouldiors (after that *Haſſan Baſſa* had broke vp his ar-
mie) by whoſe comming they were alſo the more encouraged to proſecute that they had ta-
ken in hand: neither failed the Turks in the meane time with often ſallies to trouble the Chri-
ſtians, attempting aboue all things to haue fired their tents; for that ſo lying open in that ſo cold
a ſeaſon of the yeare, they muſt thereby of neceſſitie be inforced to raiſe their ſiege and be gone.
But the ſucceſſe of theſe their ſo great deſignes was not anſwerable to their hopes, being ſtill to
their loſſe beaten backe into the towne by the Chriſtians: whom it behooued to looke well
about them, for that the beſieged deſperatly ſet, and all reſolued rather to die that to yeeld, ad-
uentured themſelues to all dangers, neuer ceaſing to doe what they might to put the Chriſtians K
out of hope for winning the towne. But whileſt the Turkes with doubtfull and as it were deſpe-
rate hope ſo defend the place, & the Chriſtians grown ſtronger by the comming of their friends
lay in hope to win the ſame: loe, in the latter end of Nouember, the North wind accompanied
with a deepe ſnow, ſo furiouſly raged, that it ouerthrew the greateſt part of the tents and pauilli-
ons of the Chriſtians, and as it were buried their whole armie in the ſnow and iſe; in ſuch wiſe,
as that in *Ferdinand* the archdukes campe (being reaſonably well prouided for) were a thouſand
fiue hundred men, with three hundred horſes, ſtarued and frozen to death. At which time the
ſtate of them that came with the lord *Ruſſworm* was moſt miſerable, who wearied with the ſiege
of ALBA REGALIS, and as it were ſpent with the dirtie trauell of the deep way, had not brought
with them their tents or other prouiſion, and were therfore enforced to lie abroad in ſo cold and L
vnreaſonable a time: with whoſe miſeries, although their good Generall was much grieued, yet
to doe the Chriſtian common weale ſeruice, he with them right patiently endured. In which ſo
great an extreamitie, the Archduke with the reſt of the commanders vpon view taken, well con-
ſidering what ſmall hope there was in good time to take the towne, the vnreaſonableneſſe of the
winter weather ſtill more and more increaſing; thought it better in time to riſe, than longer to
expoſe their armie vnto moſt certaine deſtruction, either of the enemie or the cold. Which was
done with ſuch haſt and confuſed tumult, as that their riſing ſeemed rather an haſtie flight than
honourable departure; leauing behind them for haſt their great ordinance, with their tents and
baggage; a common voice ſtill running, That they were well if they might but ſaue themſelues:
ſo that the ſoldiors euery man mindfull but of himſelfe, and in feare to be purſued by the enemy M
no man chaſing them, fled, but ſtill accompanied with ſuch furious winds, ſnow, and extreame
cold, that with all the labour they could take they could get them no heat, but fell downe to the
earth many of them frozen, and ſo once falling neuer roſe more, being vnable for want of heat to
helpe themſelues: in which caſe they were not to expect for helpe from others, euery man ha-

uing

The Chriſtians by tempeſt and extremitie of weather inforced to giue ouer the ſiege of Camiſa.

A uing ynough to doe to looke vnto himſelfe: ſo that vpon the way whereby the armie went thus diſperſed with the weather, lay aboue fiue hundred dead of cold, beſide foure hundred others left ſicke in the forſaken trenches, who forthwith after the departure of the armie were thought to haue been all put to the ſword by them of the garriſon of CANISIA.

But hauing thus paſſed through theſe troubles of HVNGARIE, it is time now alſo to looke backe againe into the frontier countries of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA; which to haue kept in the emperors obeiſance, and ſo preſerued as a liuely member of the Chriſtian commonweale, no leſſe concerned him, than the keeping of any other his frontier territories, which are many. *Michael* the Vayuod of VALACHIA, the laſt yeare for his crueltie firſt driuen out of TRANSYLVANIA by *Baſta*, and afterwards out of VALACHIA by the Great Chauncellour of
B POLONIA (as is aforeſaid) and another placed in his ſtead, as a man forſaken euen of his owne better fortunes, and not well knowing which way to turne himſelfe: thought it beſt now at laſt to ſubmit himſelfe vnto the emperour, if ſo happily by his meanes he might in ſome ſort repaire his broken eſtate, and ſo at leaſtwiſe recouer his gouernment in VALACHIA. So reſolued, he ſet forward, and in the beginning of this yeare, *viz.* the three and twentieth of Ianuarie, with fiue and thirtie of his followers and ſix coaches arriued at PRAGE, where he was by the emperours appointment honourably receiued, and his coſt at the emperours charge defrayed. Vnto whom he excuſed himſelfe of the ſeueritie by him vſed in TRANSYLVANIA (the cauſe of thoſe late troubles in that countrey) as enforced thereunto by the ſtubborneneſſe of the Tranſyluanians themſelues, whom he found ſtill enclined to rebellion, and vnwilling to be commanded by any
C but by themſelues. Which his excuſe (as true) was well admitted, and he with all kindneſſe vſed. Now at this ſame time *Baſta* lying alſo in TRANSYLVANIA, as Gouernour for the Emperour, right ſlenderly accompanied, (as is before alſo declared) the parliament at CLAVSENBVRG being ended, and all controuerſies (as was thought) well compoſed, now without feare one night the watch being ſet, went to bed to take his reſt; where he had not long lien, but that certaine of the Tranſyluanian lords, among whom the Chiaki was chiefe, came with their followers, and ſurpriſing the watch, and entring the pallace, brake into the chamber where hee lay, tooke him out of his bed, and ſo kept him priſoner all that night. And the next morning going forth, about twelue miles off met with *Sigiſmund Bathor* their late prince, before ſecretly by them called in, whom they honourably conducted to CLAVSENBVRG, and there deliuered vnto him *Baſta*,
D the late gouernour for the emperour, whom hee commaunded to be caſt into yrons: and ſo going to the pallace, gaue like order for the apprehending and ſafe keeping of the reſt of the nobilitie alſo, ſuch as had taken part with *Baſta* in the behalfe of the emperour. For now the Tranſyluanians were diuided into three parts: whereof the one ſtood for the emperour; the ſecond for *Iſtuan Bathor* (pretending, that vnto him belonged the ſoueraignetie of that prouince) but the third and farre the greateſt, for *Sigiſmund* their antient lord and leader, who now by meanes of the king of POLONIA reconciled vnto the great Turke, and in this troubleſome time by his fauourites called againe into his countrey, was by them ioyfully receiued at ALBA IVLIA, CLAVSENBVRG, and the reſt of the chiefe cities of TRANSYLVANIA. Who now thereof againe poſſeſſed, for the better aſſuring of his eſtate forthwith writ vnto the emperour what had
E happened, requeſting him to content himſelfe, that he was deſirous of his loue and fauour, promiſing to be alwaies his good friend and neighbor, and for euer to keepe good amitie with him: giuing *Baſta* alſo (whom hee had now at the interceſſion of certaine great friends againe enlarged) to vnderſtand, That hee was forthwith to depart from all the places belonging vnto his principalitie, as alſo to ceaſe from further moleſting of his people that were now voluntarily againe returned vnto his obedience. which his requeſt was neither of the one, nor of the other much regarded or hearkened vnto: for the emperour vpon the firſt aduertiſement of this ſo great an alteration in TRANSILVANIA, calling vnto him *Michael* the Vayuod (not ſo much troubled with the ſtrangeneſſe of the matter, as for that his wife and ſonne, whom he had left as hoſtages with *Baſta*, were now come into the hands of the Tranſyluanians his mortall enemies)
F and ſatisfying him in many things that hee had before requeſted, tooke order with him, That with all conuenient ſpeed returning home againe into VALACHIA, where he was now much longed for (the people generally diſliking of the ſimple Vayuod, by the great Chauncellour ſet ouer them) and gathering together ſuch power as he could, he ſhould ioyne himſelfe with *Baſta* his lieutenant generall, vnto whom he had alreadie ſent great companies both of horſe and foot

Michael the Vayuod ſubmitteth himſelfe vnto the emperour.

Baſta taken priſoner by the Tranſyluanians.

Sigiſmund recouereth his ſtate in Tranſyluania.

for

for the expulſing of *Sigiſmund* out of TRANSYLVANIA, and the reducing againe of that prouince vnder his obeiſance. Whereupon the Vayuod forthwith returning into VALACHIA, and aſſembling about ten thouſand of his friends, all good and expert ſouldiors, went to ſeeke for *Baſta* as he had with the emperour agreed; whom he found readie in the field with about twentie thouſand foot and eight thouſand horſe, but newly departed from VERADINVM: where muſtering their armie, they with their vnited forces entred into TRANSYLVANIA, there to put in execution what the emperour had commanded. Where the Vayuod in diſdaine of the people which loued him not, with fire & ſword waſted all the country before him as he went: not without the great diſcontentment of *Baſta*, to whom it ſeemed not good to make deſolat that countrey which he was in good hope ſhould in ſhort time be his lord and maſters the emperors. But *Sigiſmund* vnderſtanding both of the comming of his enemies, and of the harme they did in his countrey, riſe from SOLNOCK, where hee lay encamped with his armie, and ſo to hinder their further proceeding went to meet them: howbeit being come ſo neer vnto them as that he might well diſcouer them, he would not come to the triall of a battell with them, which was by them offered; but fortified himſelfe in his trenches, ſo ſeeking but to delay the time vntil the comming of the Tartars, which were to haue come vnto him from the Chauncellor of POLONIA, as alſo of ſix thouſand Turkes to haue beene ſent him from the Baſſa of BELGRADE. Where hauing afterward vnderſtood that the paſſage of the Tartars to haue been ſent him, was ſtayed by *Don Ferrante Gonzaga*, the emperors lieutenant in the vpper HVNGARIE; and that the Turks ſtaying at GIVLA, would come no farther except they had their pay before hand: finding himſelfe too weake with his owne power to encounter with his enemies, he riſe with his armie, with purpoſe to haue retired a little backe, and to haue taken certaine ſtraight paſſages whereby the enemie muſt needs paſſe, ſo by the aduantage of the place to haue hopen his owne weake ſtrength. But *Baſta* and the Vayuod perceiuing his riſing (whereunto they were ſtill attentiue) followed him with ſuch ſpeed, that they ouertooke him before he could get thither, and ſo hardly preſſed him, that needes he muſt turne his face and ioyne battell, or elſe ſuffer his people altogether like beaſts to be ſlaine. In which doing, albeit that neither he nor his failed to doe what was by men to be done for the obtaining of a notable victory, yet ſuch was the valour of the ſouldiors of *Baſta* and the Vayuod, that in a great fight hauing diſordered his footmen, they put them to flight, and ſo cut them all in pieces. Which the prince beholding, and not able to remedie the matter, betime fled with his horſemen from the furie of his enemies, and ſo retired to the vttermoſt confines of TRANSYLVANIA, hauing in this battell loſt ten thouſand of his faithfull ſouldiors. Whereupon CLAVDIOPOLIS with diuers other cities and townes of that countrey, returned againe vnto the emperours obeyſance.

Sigiſmund ouer thrown by Baſta and the Vayuod fleeth out of Tranſyluania.

In the proſecuting of this victorie, the Vayuod to ſatisfie the hatred hee had of long borne againſt the Tranſyluanians, did what ſpoyle he could, vtterly waſting all the places whereby he paſſed: which *Baſta* not liking, requeſted him to vſe his victorie with more modeſtie, and to haue more reſpect to what he did, eſpecially vnto ſuch places or perſons as of themſelues returned vnto the Emperours obeyſance. Whereunto hee prowdly anſwered, That he would doe what he thought good without his appointment or the emperors either, eſpecially in that countrey which he had now with his owne ſword twiſe conquered: and that therefore *Baſta* might commaund them that were by him to be commaunded, as for himſelfe he acknowledged no ſoueraignetie that either *Baſta* or the Emperour had ouer him. Vnto which his ſo preſumptuous a ſpeech *Baſta* replied not, but yet much therewith diſcontented, began to enter into a great ſuſpition from what ground thoſe his haughtie conceits (eaſily by his words to bee gathered) might grow. And ſo from that time better obſeruing his proceedings, perceiued him to haue intelligence with the Turkes, with purpoſe to ioyne hands with them, that ſo by their helpe chaſing the Imperials out of TRANSYLVANIA, hee might hold it to himſelfe as tributarie to the *Othoman* emperour, of all others beſt able to defend him. Which to bee true (beſide diuers other ſtrong preſumptions) he certainly vnderſtood by certaine letters of his written to that purpoſe, intercepted by his ſouldiors and brought vnto him: whereupon he became verie penſiue and heauie, for the great power the Vayuod was of in thoſe countries, as alſo for the great ſtrength he had euen then preſent about him, and wherewith hee was as it were then guarded. So conſulting with certaine of his Colonels and chiefe Commaunders of his armie, what were beſt to be done in that ſo dangerous a caſe, whereof ſo much depended? a Wallon captaine offered himſelfe

A himſelfe to goe into the Vayuod his campe, and there in his owne tent to kill him as a traitour. Which his offer well liked of, and he as readie to performe as hee was to promiſe, going into the Vayuods campe accompanied with ſome threeſcore men, and finding him in his tent, boldly ſtepping to him, willed him to yeeld himſelfe the emperors priſoner: Whereat he being about to lay his hand vpon his ſcimitar, the Wallon captain with an holbard thruſt him into the breaſt, at which very inſtant another with a ſword at one blow claue his head downe to the ſhoulders. *Michaell the Vayuod ſlaine.* An vnworthie death for ſo worthie a captaine, had not ambition the torment of great ſpirits, caried him too high with the wings of immoderat deſire, beyond the bounds of loyaltie and reaſon. But there he lyeth now dead among his friends, whom the great Turke ſometime more feared euen in his pallace at CONSTANTINOPLE, than he did all the reſt of the emperors com-
B manders. Preſently vpon his death a great tumult and hurly burly was raiſed by the ſouldiours in his campe: but *Baſta* forthwith ſhewing himſelfe with all his ſouldiors in armes, and withall producing the letters declaring the treaſon by the Vayuod contriued with the Baſſa of TEMESVVAR againſt the emperour, all was againe appeaſed: but eſpecially for that his ſouldiours now ſaw themſelues without an head, and too weake alſo for the Imperials there preſent and alreadie in armes. In the Vayuods tent were alſo other letters found, ſo plainly declaring his ſecret colluſion with the Turke, and treaſon againſt the Emperour, that the Walachians who at the firſt were wonderfully mooued with his death, and hearing the ſame read, reſted not now onely contented, but ſaid moreouer, that he was worthily ſlaine, and that if they had knowne him to haue had any ſuch traiterous purpoſe, they would themſelues long before haue ta-
C ken of him deſerued puniſhment. Now vnto his ſouldiours *Baſta* offered, at their choice, either to depart whether they would without danger; or els taking the oath of obedience vnto the emperour to enter into his pay, which moſt part of them did. The tumult appeaſed, the dead bodie of the Vayuod was layed out a whole day for the ſouldiors to gaze vpon, and ſo afterward buried. So lyeth he, that but of late and many times before, had ſo fortunatly ouerthrown his enemies; vnhappie man himſelfe now ouerthrowne by his owne ambition and vnconſtancie.

Baſta now deliuered of the great feare he had before of the Vayuod, what by force, what by agreement, in ſhort time tooke in moſt part of the countrie: for that the Tranſyluanians ſeeing the ſmall power of *Sigiſmund*, & well comforted with the death of *Michael* the Vayuod ſo much
D of them hated; as alſo to auoid the dangers euen preſently hanging ouer their heads from the Imperials, if they ſhould in any thing ſhew themſelues obſtinate againſt them, ſubmitted themſelues wholly to the courteſie of *Baſta*, ſo that the places were but few that yet held out for the prince *Sigiſmund*: who in the mean time was doing what he might for the raiſing of a new armie (hauing not altogither with this late ouerthrow forthwith alſo loſt his hope) by the helpe of the Turkes, Tartars, and Polonians, to recouer againe the poſſeſſion of his ſtate, and by force of armes to chaſe out the Imperials. But he being brought to ſo low an ebbe, and almoſt all the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA poſſeſſed by *Baſta*; who would not haue thought but that now after ſo long trauels it would haue remained wholly at the emperors deuotion? and ſo many that thought themſelues to ſee much, ſaid aſſuredly it would. But ſee the change, and what ſmall aſ-
E ſurance euen the greateſt haue of the conſtancie of the vaine multitude: neuer more like themſelues, than in diſliking to morrow what they beſt liked to day, fooliſh, ſenceleſſe, improuident, raſh, headſtrong, violent, and aboue all things mutable, and vnconſtant. So now for all that *Baſta* had done for the aſſurance of this countrie vnto the Emperour (being ſo much as moſt men thought to haue bin ſufficient, and in deed as much as was poſſible for him to do) euen in the winding vp of this yeare 1601, the Tranſyluanians vnderſtanding that *Sigiſmund* with a great armie of Polonians, Turks, & Tartars, was now comming againſt the Imperials, moſt part of them preſently tooke vp armes in his fauour, ſaying, That their firſt oath voluntarily giuen vnto him as their naturall prince and Gouernor, was more to be reſpected than any other afterwards by force extorted from them by a forreine prince. Inſomuch that *Baſta* perceiuing with
F what a tempeſt he was like euen preſently to be ouerwhelmed, to ſaue himſelfe and his people from the rage thereof, withdrew himſelfe with his followers vnto a ſtrong towne in a corner of that countrie: from whence he with all ſpeed ſent vnto the emperour for greater aid, as well for the defence of the place he yet held, as for the ſubduing againe of that rebellious people. After

The Tranſyluanians ſubmit themſelues vnto Baſta.

The Tranſyluanians reuolt againe vnto Sigiſmund their old prince.

Baſta ſtieth.

whose departure *Sigismund* without resistance entring the countrie, was of the people in general ioyfully receiued as their most lawfull prince and soueraigne, and all the honour done vnto him that was by them possible: in which his so princely, but dangerous estate, now twice in lesse than the space of one yere by him regained, and yet therof no whit assured, we will for a while leaue him to ioy therein with his subiects. G

The Bassa of Agria ouerthrowne by Ferrant Gonzaga.

But whilest the state thus turneth vpside downe in TRANSYLVANIA, the Bassa of AGRIA going out with ten thousand Turks in hope to haue surprised TOCCAIE (a strong hold of the Christians in the vpper HVNGARIE) was encountred by *Ferrant Gonzaga* the emperours lieutenant there, and by him ouerthrowne, and with great slaughter of his Turks chased to the gates of AGRIA.

Now was *Mahomet* the Turkish emperour this yeare also, no lesse troubled with the proceedings of the *Scriuano* in CARAMANIA and NATOLIA, than with the euill successe of his affaires in TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE. For the *Scriuano* by his last yeares victorie growne into great credit with the common people, and still by them more and more followed; to maintaine the reputation of his credit, came now againe this yeare with a great power into the field, to meet with *Mahomet* the great Bassa and Generall of the Turkes armie; who with fiftie thousand good souldiors (a power thought sufficient to haue represt him) was readie to encounter him. With whom the *Scriuano* ioyning battell, in a great fight cut in sunder a great part of the Bassaes armie, and so became master of the field, forraged all the countries adioyning almost as far as ALEPPO, still calling the people vnto libertie; and causing himselfe to be proclaimed the true defender of the Mahometane faith, and of the libertie of those countries with him combined: in such sort, as that it now stood the great Turke vpon to send another great armie to the aid of *Mahomet* the discomfited Bassa. With whom also the *Scriuano* (presuming of his former fortune) comming to a day of battell, and ouercharged with the multitude of his enemies, was at the first encounter with his people put to the worse: but forthwith by his good direction hauing repaired his disordered battell, and thereby giuen as it were new courage to his fainting souldiors, he with a great slaughter disordered also the Bassaes armie. Yet hauing not any other firme state or stay to rest vpon, more than the fauour and reputation he held with these his rebellious followers, of whom he had now lost a great many, he thought it not best to aduenture too far (not knowing how presently to repaire his losses) but contenting himselfe with what he had alreadie done, retired with his armie into the strength of the mountaines, there that Winter to liue vpon the spoile of the countries adioyning, and the next yeare to do more harme than euer he had done before. H I K

The Ianizaries in mutinie at Constantinople.

Beside all which former troubles, the plague also this yeare sore raged both in CONSTANTINOPLE and many other places of the Turkish empire. At which time also the Ianizaries at CONSTANTINOPLE hauing receiued some disgrace by some of the great Sultans fauourits, and with great insolencie requiring to haue their heads, caused their Agawell accompanied presumptuously to enter into the Seraglio to prefer this their request: Whom *Mahomet* to the terror of the rest, caused for his presumption to be taken into the middest of the Spahi, and so by them to bee cut in pieces; which was not done without the great slaughter of the Spahi themselues also, slaine by the Ianizaries. Whereupon the other Ianizaries arising vp in armes also, and euen now readie to haue reuenged the death of their captaine, were yet by the wisedome of *Cicala Bassa*, bestowing amongst them a great summe of mony, againe appeased, without further harme doing. Which their so great insolencie *Mahomet* imputing vnto their excessiue drinking of wine, contrarie to the law of their great Prophet; by the persuasion of the Mufti, commanded all such as had any wine in their houses in CONSTANTINOPLE or PERA, vpon paine of death to bring it out and to staue it, except the embassadours of the Queene of ENGLAND, the French king, and of the state of VENICE: so that (as some report) wine for a space ran down the channels of the streets in CONSTANTINOPLE, as if it had bin water after a great shower of raine. L

1602 *Sigismund* the Transyluanian prince now of late againe possessed of TRANSYLVANIA (as is before declared) could not yet well assure himselfe of the keeping thereof: for that he with the Transyluanians of his faction alone, was not able to withstand the force of *Bassa*; who still strengthened with new supplies both of men and all things else necessarie for the warres from M

the

A the Emperour, was now with a great power alreadie entred into TRANSYLVANIA: the Polonians buſied in the warres of SVEVIA, and the Turkes with their other greater affaires, neither of them ſending him their promiſed aid, the greateſt hope and ſtay of himſelfe in that newneſſe of his eſtate. Wherefore ſeeing himſelfe euerie day to looſe one place or other, and fearing alſo leaſt his ſouldiours for want of pay ſhould in ſhort time quite forſake him and go ouer to *Baſta*: he thought it beſt betimes and whileſt he had yet ſomething left, and was not yet altogither become deſperat, otherwiſe to prouide for his eſtate, eſpecially hauing ſmall truſt in the Turkes, to whom he had before beene ſo great an enemie. Wherefore he dealt with *Baſta* for a truce or ceſſation from armes, vntill embaſſadors might be ſent vnto the Emperour, to intreat with him for ſome good attonement. Wherewith *Baſta* being content, and the embaſſadours
B ſent, the matter was ſo handled with the Emperour, that *Sigiſmund* to make an end of all theſe troubles, was contented to the behoofe of his Imperial maieſtie, to reſigne vnto *Baſta* his lieutenant all ſuch places as he yet held in TRANSYLVANIA, vpon much like conditions he had about three yeres before made with him: and ſo in all, and for all, to ſubmit himſelfe vnto his maieſtie. Which intended ſurrender of the princes being bruted in TRANSYLVANIA, *Zachell Moiſes* his lieutenant (and now in field with the princes forces) not able to endure or to heare that that noble prouince ſhould againe fall into the hands of the Germans, encouraging his ſouldiors, went vpon the ſudden to aſſaile *Baſta*, in hope to haue found him vnprouided, and ſo diſcomfiting his armie, to haue driuen the Imperials quite out of TRANSILVANIA: But he an old & expert commaunder, perceiuing euen the firſt moouing of the Tranſyluanians, with great celeritie put
C his armie in good order, and ſo ioyned battell with them: wherein hee with the loſſe of ſome fiue hundred men ouerthrew *Moiſes*, with his armie of Tranſyluanians, Turkes, and Tartars, hauing ſlaine aboue three thouſand of them, and put the reſt to flight: *Moiſes* himſelfe with ſome few others being now glad to take their refuge into the frontiers of the Turks territories towards TEMESVVAR. But when *Sigiſmund* vnderſtood what his lieutenant had without his knowledge done, he in token of his owne innocencie went himſelfe vnto the Imperiall campe, accompanied only with certain of his gentlemen, and there vnto *Baſta* excuſed himſelfe of that which was by his lieutenant againſt his will, and without his priuitie done; frankly offering to performe whatſoeuer was on his part to be performed, according to the agreement made betwixt the Emperour and him. And ſo preſently calling his garriſons out of all ſuch ſtrong pla-
D ces as were yet for him holden, he ſurrendred them to *Baſta*; and ſo forthwith honourably accompanied, put himſelfe vpon his way towards the Emperour. After whoſe departure out of TRANSYLVANIA, all that prouince voluntarily and without more ado yeelded to *Baſta* as to the Emperours lieutenant: who preſently called an aſſemblie of all the Nobilitie of the countrie, taking of them an oath for their obedience & loyaltie vnto the emperor. Thus by the wiſedome and prowes of this worthie commander, is the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA once againe brought vnder the emperors obeiſance; a matter of far greater importance, than to haue woon the ſtrongeſt citie the Turke holdeth in HVNGARIE.

Zachell Moiſes ouerthrowne by Baſta.

But whileſt theſe things thus paſſed in TRANSYLVANIA, great troubles ariſe in VALACHIA (the countrie next adioyning) for that the people of that prouince not able longer to endure
E the great inſolencie of the Turks (who after the death of *Michael* had by their power made one *Hieremias* Vayuod there) by a generall conſent tooke vp armes, and proclaiming one *Radoll* (a fauourite of the Emperours) Vayuod, chaſed *Hieremias* (before placed by the Turkes) quite out of the countrie: who flying vnto *Simon* Palatine of MOLDAVIA, his friend, by his means and the helpe of the Turks, returning vnto VALACHIA, draue out thence *Radoll* againe: who being now at this preſent with *Baſta*, with about ten thouſand Valachians his followers, earneſtly requeſted of him (now that hee was ſo quietly poſſeſſed of TRANSYLVANIA) to helpe him with his forces for the recouerie of VALACHIA. And *Baſta* well conſidering how much it concerned the quiet and ſure keeping of the poſſeſſion of TRANSYLVANIA for the Emperour, to haue that ſo neere a prouince to friend, eaſily yeelded to his requeſt; and gaue
F him a great regiment of his old approoued ſouldiours, and ſo ſent him away to recouer his eſtate: with whom (at his entrance into VALACHIA) the Moldauian meeting with a great power both of his owne and of the Turkes, come thither in the fauour of *Hieremias*, there was fought betwixt them a moſt terrible and bloudie battell, the glorie whereof fell vnto *Radoll*, hee

Great troubles in Valachia.

carrying away the victorie. In which battell two of the Turkes Baſſaes were there ſlaine, with a great number of others both of the Moldauians and Turkes. After which victorie *Radoll* recouered againe the ſoueraignetie of VALACHIA, for which he was beholding to *Baſſa:* and ſhortly after with the ſame aid cut in pieces a great power of the Tartars, that were comming to haue aided the Moldauian. G

Troubles in Hungarie.

Now in the meane time in HVNGARIE alſo paſſed many an hot skirmiſh betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turkes, whoſe garriſons at BVDA and in other places in the lower HVNGARIE, attempting to haue ſurpriſed ALBA REGALIS, and diſcouered by the Chriſtians, were with great ſlaughter enforced to retire. At which time alſo, Countie *Serinus* vnderſtanding by his eſpials, that the Turkes with two hundred waggons with munition and victuals were going to CANISIA, vpon the ſudden ſet vpon them, and hauing ſlain and put to flight the conuoy that guarded them, carried the waggons with all that was in them away with him. And ſhortly after the free Haiduckes of COMARA in a great partie going out towards BVDA to ſeeke after bootie, and hauing taken threeſcore Turkes priſoners, and ſo with them about to haue returned home; vnderſtanding by the way, that *Ali* ſometime the Baſſa of BVDA, and now gouernour of PESTH, was with a ſmall retinue about to come downe the riuer Danubius from BVDA towards BELGRADE, there to meet the Viſier Baſſa, but then comming into HVNGARIE, they ſlew all the priſoners; and hauing got two ſmall boats, about fifteen miles beneath BVDA, lay in wait for the Baſſa: who according to their expectation comming downe the riuer, was by theſe aduenturers fiercely aſſailed, and of his thirtie followers hauing fourteene ſlaine, being H

Ali Baſſa taken priſoner.

himſelfe alſo ſhot in two places of his bodie, was there with a great bootie taken, & ſo brought to COMORA, and ſhortly after preſented vnto *Matthias* the archduke at VIENNA: who amongſt other things certainly enformed, that *Haſſan Baſſa* was with a great armie by the commaundement of the great Sultan *Mahomet* comming to beſiege ALBA REGALIS, and that he was now vpon his way as far as BELGRADE; preſently ſent thither the Countie *Iſolan* gouernour thereof, who with much ado got into the citie, the Turks hauing alreadie taken all the paſſages, to haue hindered the Chriſtians from putting in either men or munition, more than was therein alreadie. Howbeit the Countie now got in there, and being no leſſe good enginer than a valiant commaunder, cauſed all them in the citie to labour vpon the rampiers: ſo that beſide the naturall ſituation thereof, which was very ſtrong, he had in ſhort time ſo fortified it, as that in moſt mens iudgement it ſeemed a place almoſt impregnable. This *Ali Baſſa* was ſometime the Great Turkes butler, but after the taking of AGRIA made Baſſa of BVDA; which great place he held but three moneths, being by the enuie and ambition of ſome, but eſpecially of *Amurath Baſſa*, remoued thence, and made gouernour of PESTH: from whence now going downe the riuer to BELGRADE, it was his fortune to be thus taken by the Haiduckes, vnto whom he offered for his ranſome three hundred thouſand Sultanines; and had with him when he was taken ſeuentie thouſand duckats. I K

A great ranſome offered by Ali Baſſa.

Mahomet the great Sultan not a little troubled with the loſſe of ALBA REGALIS (taken from him by the Chriſtians the laſt yeare) and now reſolued for the recouerie of the ſame to ingage if need ſhould be a great part of his forces; had cauſed an armie of an hundred and fiftie thouſand ſtrong, to meet at meet at HADRIANOPLE for that purpoſe, vnder the leading of *Haſſan Baſſa* one of the chiefe Viſiers, to be ſent into HVNGARIE. Who by the way of BELGRADE comming to BVDA, and from thence to ALBA REGALIS, there the twelfth of Auguſt encamped (as he had oftentimes before threatned) with the multitude of his tents couering all the countrie round about, as if it had bin a whit ſnow: where hauing well entrenched himſelf, and planted his artillerie, he began a moſt terrible and furious batterie, in ſuch ſort as if he had not meant to haue made a breach only, but to haue beaten the citie euen from the face of the earth, which ſeemed now to tremble vnder his feet, and the clouds to rend with the thundering of his great ordinance: and for that the mariſh and deepe ditches were a great let vnto his men for tn come vnto the aſſault, he cauſed thē with the number of his pioners to be filled vp, a work thought almoſt impoſſible, & ſo brought on his men to aſſault the counterſcarf, which the gouernor had cauſed to be made before the citie for the better defence therof: which aſſault coſt him much blod, by reaſon of the wonderful valor of the defendants: yet in the end the great number of the Turks preuailing, the Chriſtians were enforced to forſake it & retire into the citie. But ſhortly after ſallying out again, they L M

Alba Regalis beſieged by the Turkes.

A they with ſuch force aſſailed the Turkes now got within the counterſcarſe, that hauing ſlaine moſt part of them that were entred, they forced the other out againe: at the bruit whereof, an alarme being raiſed throughout the camp, infinit numbers of the barbarous enemies came running thither with ſuch ſauage furie, that without regard of their liues they as deſperat men preſſing ſtill on, fell twice as many as before: inſomuch that the Chriſtians wearie of that long and bloudie fight, & on euery ſide charged or, rather ouerwhelmed with the enemies ſhot, were glad againe, but not without great loſſe, to abandon the place. With which skirmiſhes and diuers others that they had, the number of the defendants was greatly diminiſhed, to keepe a weak citie, ſhewing as yet the ruines of the late ſiege, when it was by the Chriſtians woone; the breaches thereof being but euill repaired, and the mines yet gaping, requiring great and ſtrong fortifica-
B tions to hold out and endure any long ſiege againſt ſo puiſſant an enemie. Yet was not the courage of the valiant countie *Ysolan* the Italian Gouernour, any whit therewith abated, but by his letters gaue the Archduke *Matthias* to vnderſtand in what caſe things ſtood with them in the citie, requeſting him with all ſpeed to ſend him reliefe, for that otherwiſe the citie, ſo weakly both manned & fortified, would be in danger to be loſt; many of the garriſon ſoldiors being aleadie ſlaine in the defence thereof, and diuers of the Hungarians forſaking the wals, daily flying vnto the Turkes campe: promiſing yet neuertheleſſe himſelfe to doe the vttermoſt of his deuoire. Vpon the receit of which letters, the Archduke gaue order vnto the lord *Ruſſworm* (maſter of the camp) to go forthwith to Comora, and there with ſuch forces as were from diuers places come thither, to go forth and to proue if by any meanes the weake garriſon of Alba Regalis might
C ſo be relieued, by putting in ſome good ſupplie of freſh ſouldiors. According vnto which commaund, *Ruſſworm* comming thither, without delay tooke the field with twelue thouſand men which he found there, to ſee if he might with them put into the citie the deſired reliefe. But whileſt the matter was in the performance thereof too long delaied, by diſcord ariſing betwixt him and the other Colonels, about the maner of relieuing the towne, the Baſſa had time to effect his purpoſe: who the eight and twentith of the ſame moneth of Auguſt, after a long and terrible batterie, cauſed a generall aſſault to be giuen vnto the citie: which the Turkes from time to time renewing, continued all that day and the next night, with ſome part of the day following alſo, without ceaſing: ſo that the defendants now much weakned, and they alſo that were left ſo wearied or wounded, as that they were not wel able to make any longer reſiſtance (& the coun-
D tie himſelfe, who gaue as it were life vnto them all, being now all caried away, dangerouſly hurt in the thigh with a musket ſhot) there was a ſigne of parley giuen vnto the enemie: which the Baſſa graunting, and the furie of the aſſault ſtaied, certaine of the chiefe captains and commanders in the citie, going vnto the Gouernor, put him in mind of the weakneſſe of the place, of the force of the enemie, of the number of his moſt valiant men ſlaine, of the want of the defendant. They had (as they ſaid) done ynough for their honour, hauing endured ſo many and ſo great aſſaults, in a place not defencible: and ynough to diſcharge their fidelitie, hauing holden it out to the vttermoſt of their power. That they could do no more than they had done, being not relieued; and that the ſame bond which bound them to defend the place, bound the emperor alſo to relieue them, ſeeing that otherwiſe it was not in their power to maintaine it. That they had,
E with the loſſe of their liues and bloud, ſhewed their fidelitie vnto the emperor, no ſufficient armie appearing from him (according to his promiſe) for their ſuccour. That to fight any longer was but to encreaſe the glorie of their enemies, and their owne loſſes: ſeeing that after they had done what they poſſibly could, expoſed to a thouſand dangers, they ſhould neuertheles be vanquiſhed, and the citie taken. That the ſame conſideration which carried valiant minds vnto the effects of honour, when they are relieued with hope, diſſuaded them being out of all hope of any happie end of their troubles: and to loſe themſelues to no purpoſe, was as great a ſigne of follie, as to let ſlip a faire opportunitie, was a ſigne of cowardiſe. That they were to expect nothing but extreme miſerie, if the enemy ſhould againe force them; the breaches being ſo broad, as wherby they might eaſily enter: and their owne beſt men ſlaine, that ſhould keepe them out.
F And that therfore he ſhould do well, to come to ſome good compoſition with the enemie, whileſt they had yet ſomething to yeeld vp vnto him, and that he ſtood in ſome feare of them: and not to expect, whileſt they were ſpoiled of all means, either to reſiſt him by force, or to bind him by courteſie: nothing remaining for them in the place, but death, if they ſhould obſtinatly ſtand

A long and terrible aſſault.

Reaſons wherby the beſieded captains perſuaded the Gouernor to yeeld the citie.

to the defence thereof; nor no way left to ſaue their liues, but by yeelding. G

With theſe perſuaſions the Gouernour moued, came to a parley with the Baſſa, being right glad thereof; aſwell knowing that a towne beſieged comming to a parley, is commonly more than half woon: and glad by any means to gaine it, for that therof depended the aſſurance both of his head & honor: where after ſome ſhort talke it was agreed, That the Countie ſhould yeeld the towne into the hands of the Baſſa, with all the great ordinance, and other warlike munition therein: And that the Countie with his garriſon, ſhould with bag and baggage in ſafetie depart with their armes, by the ſuburbs leading toward R A B; and with a good conuoy in ſafetie to be brought halfe way thither. This capitulation agreed vpon, and by the Baſſa and the countie ſigned, euery man aſſured himſelfe of the Baſſaes faith, and thereon reſted. But what faith is to be expected from a faithleſſe man? Vpon the firſt brute of this compoſition, yea and before it H was altogither well concluded; whileſt the merchants in the towne were ſeeking for wagons to carrie their merchandiſe, and the ſouldiours for horſes to carrie their baggage, the ſcarceneſſe thereof bred a great confuſion and ſturre among the people; as commonly it falleth out in things done in haſt, but eſpecially where men for ſafeguard of their liues, in their flight for haſt fall into a thouſand errours: So whileſt ſome in this hurly burly were quarrelling about their horſes and carriages, and otherſome were opening the gates to be gone; others were as buſie in robbing and pilfering the baggages of their captaines and companions: miſerable men, who all appointed for a prey vnto the greeedie and mercileſſe Turks, yet fell to preying one vpon another. Which diſorders encouraged the reſt of the ſouldiors to fall to pillage all alſo, ſome loading themſelues with ſuch goods as the merchants had for lacke of carriages left behind them; I and otherſome euen with the goods of their owne captaines: which the ſouldiours appointed for defence of the breaches ſeeing, left their charge, and came thronging into the towne, and thruſt themſelues in amongſt theſe pilferers, as if the pillage of the towne had been vnto them by triumphant victorie aſſured, and that they themſelues had bin victors, and not men vanquiſhed. The Tartars lodged at the foot of the breach, ſeeing it forſaken, and without any great ſtrength to defend it, let not this opportunitie ſlip, but preſſing on without any great reſiſtance, entred the ſame; and ſo in a trice full thirtie thouſand of them thruſt into the towne, and there ſurpriſed the vanquiſhed Chriſtians at once loaded with prey, feare, and deſpaire. After whom, euen by the ſame breach, the Turks entred alſo, to be partakers of the ſpoile: ſo that in a moment the towne was full of enemies both Turks and Tartars. The Turks beſide the K bootie they tooke themſelues, fell to quarrelling with the Tartars, for ſome part of theirs: & ſo long as there was any thing that might pleaſe their eyes, or fill their hands, they abſtained from ſlaughter and bloudſhed, buſying themſelues with that which for the preſent was more for their profit: But the pillaging ceaſing, by reaſon there was no more to bee had, then the perfidious wretches fell to maſſacring of the miſerable Chriſtians, the ſword deuouring all that they could light vpon, ſo that all the citie flowed with bloud. Neither was there any end thereof, vntill that by the comming in of the Baſſa the ſlaughter was ſtaied; by which means Countie *Tſolan* the late Gouernor with ſome other captains and ſouldiors were ſaued, hauing eſcaped the enemies furie.

The capitulation betwixt the Baſſa and the Countie for the yeelding vp of the citie of Alba Regalis.

Great diſorder and confuſion among the beſieged.

Alba Regalis taken by the Turkes.

The Chriſtians cruelly murdered in Alba Regalis.

In this maſſacre were ſlaine three thouſand Chriſtian ſouldiors, beſide others of the citizens, L in number not few. The captaines that were ſpared, were led priſoners to CONSTANTINOPLE, there to be fed with the bread of tribulation: & with them the countie *Iſolan*, for his valour and noble courage vnworthie of ſo hard a fortune. Howbeit, that he by liuely and pregnant reaſons ſhewed, both himſelfe & the reſt to be vniuſtly detained, as taken priſoners contrarie to the publique faith vnto them before giuen; within the aſſurance of the capitulation agreed vpon with the Baſſa, and out of the actions of warre. Whereunto it was againe anſwered him, That the towne when he was taken, was yet ſtill in his power; and he at choice whether he would deliuer it or no. That if he would by the yeelding vp of the town challenge his libertie, according to the articles of the capitulation, he ought then to haue deliuered it as was agreed, & not to haue ſuffered it to haue bin taken by force, according to the ordinarie proceeding of warre: the lawes M wherof do iuſtly condemne to death, or to captiuitie, ſuch as are by force of armes vanquiſhed. That euery town which during the treatie of capitulation, is by force taken, followeth the courſe of the latter condition and ſtate, & not of the former, ſeeing that it is conquered and not deliuered.

Countie Iſolan carried awey priſoner to Conſtantinople.

A red. That this is the reaſon that they are puniſhed by the rigour of armes, which haue not beene carefull to preſerue themſelues by the ſweetneſſe of peace: for that a man is not to expect of his mortal enemie any other courteſie, than that which neceſſitie cauſed him to promiſe, which hee may for his owne good againe violate, as hee for the good of his enemie, againſt his will hath graunted. With ſuch quirkes and quillets the Countie deluded, ſay what he could, was carried away priſoner to CONSTANTINOPLE, where we muſt for a while leaue him. And ſo the Baſſa hauing in eighteene dayes taken ALBA REGALIS (now being eleuen moneths poſſeſſed by the Chriſtians) cauſed the breaches he had made to bee againe repaired, and the citie well prouided for both of victuals and munition, leauing therin a ſtrong garriſon of 6000 good ſouldiors: and
B with his people hauing ouerrun all the countrey as farre as STRIGONIVM, roſe with his armie, and retired againe to BVDA: whereas he was making a bridge of boats ouer the Danubius betwixt BVDA and PESTH, for the more eaſie tranſporting of victuall, and better relieuing of the one the other as need ſhould require; and hauing brought that worke to paſſe, and about to haue gone to the ſiege of STRIGONIVM, commandement came from the great Sultan, That he ſhould with all ſpeed returne to CONSTANTINOPLE; for that *Mahomet* accounting of him as of a moſt valiant man, was now minded to employ him in his wars againſt his rebels in NATOLIA, where things now went not well (as ſhall hereafter bee declared.) Vpon which commaundement, the Baſſa gaue leaue to all ſuch in his armie as had charge of any place, forthwith to returne to their ſeuerall places of gouernment: appoynting ſome others with 30000 ſouldiours
C in the companie of *Zachael Moiſes* (but of late prince *Sigiſmund* his lieutenant) to goe with him into TRANSYLVANIA; who after the ouerthrow he had there receiued by *Baſta*, was come vnto this great Baſſa, offering vnto him (with ſuch an aid as was now appointed for him, and the helpe of ſuch other his friends as he had in TRANSYLVANIA) to chaſe *Baſta* with his Germans from out thence, and to reduce that prouince againe vnto the deuotion of the *Othoman* Emperours, as it had in former time beene. And ſo by the way of BELGRADE haſted himſelfe with the reſt of his armie towards CONSTANTINOPLE: which he was thought the more willingly to doe, for that the great Sultan before his ſetting foorth had put him in good hope to marrie one of his aunts, a woman of great wealth and honour, if by the winning againe of ALBA REGALIS, he ſhould make himſelfe worthie ſo honourable a match, after which he now
D longed.

But long it was not after his departure, but that the Imperials now at laſt aſſembled together at COMARA, to the number of about thirtie thouſand men, with twelue * Naſſadies and two gallies, ſome by water, ſome by land, marched downe alongſt the riuer to STIOONIVM; where were alſo twenty other ſhips ready to receiue them, and ſo all embarked, were by the lord *Ruſſworm* and other the Imperiall captaines conducted to BVDA, there with ſome notable enterpriſe to redeeme the diſgrace by them before receiued in not relieuing of ALBA REGALIS. Whoſe comming was ſo ſuddaine and ſo vnlooked for of the Turkes there, as that they had no time to take in any greater helpe or prouiſion, than was alreadie in the citie. And for as much as the Chriſtians knew the good ſucceſſe of this their enterpriſe taken in hand, not ſo much to de-
E pend of their ſtrength, as of their politike proceeding and ſpeedy diſpatch of the matter begun, they thought it not good to vſe any long delay, or to ſpare for any labour, but ſo ſoone as they might by taking of the Water citie (or as ſome call it, the Iewes ſuburbes) ſo to cut off the paſſage of them of BVDA to PESTH: as alſo from thence to trouble them in the caſtle and the vpper citie of BVDA. Which their intended exploit they happily attempted and brought to paſſe in this ſort: The citie of PESTH ſtanding right ouer againſt BVDA, is (as we haue oftentimes before ſaid) diuided from the ſame with the great and ſwift riuer of Danubius: ouer which the Turkes vpon boates had with great labour and coſt of late built a moſt eaſie and commodious bridge, for paſſage or carriage of things from the one citie to the other. This bridge the Imperials thought neceſſarie firſt to breake, the more eaſie to beſiege either the one or other citie; and
F for that purpoſe had by a ſtrange deuice built a ſhip, which by the force of the ſtreame carried downe the riuer, and reſting vpon the bridge, ſhould by a wonderfull power breake the ſame. Which ſhip the Turkes ſeeing comming downe the riuer with the reſt of the fleet after her, they ranne by heapes, eſpecially out of the Water citie to the bridge, for the defence thereof: where whileſt they were thus buſied, Countie *Sultze* on the other ſide by land with a Petarde blew vp one

The Naſſadies are a certaine kind of boats which the Hungarians vſe vpon the riuer of Danubius.

The lower citie of Buda taken by the Chriſtians.

one of the gates of the citie, and ſo entring, and killing all ſuch as he light vpon, came vnlooked G
for vpon the backes of the Turks at the bridge, of whom, ſome he ſlewe, ſome he draue into the riuer, who there periſhed; the reſt in number not many, by ſpeedy flight retiring themſelues into the citie: whereupon he had now brought ſuch a generall feare, that they all, as well the ſoldiors as the citiſens, with the Chriſtians at their heeles, with as much haſt as they could tooke their refuge into the vpper citie of BVDA, much ſtronger and better fortified than was the lower city. At which time the bridge was by them vpon the riuer broken alſo, ſo that now the one citie could no more thereby relieue the other as before.

The Water-citie thus woone, and the bridge broken, the next was for the Imperials to beſiege either the one or the other citie. But for that they of PESTH might with their great ordinance much annoy them in the beſieging of the caſtle and the vpper citie of BVDA, they H
thought beſt to begin with it firſt: which they did in much like ſort as they had before done at the lower citie of BVDA, the ſame deuice againe well proſpering in their hand. For the lord *Ruffworm* with the fleet vpon the riuer making a great ſhew, as if hee would euen preſently on that ſide haue entred, had with the ſtirre by him raiſed, drawne downe moſt part of the garriſon ſouldiors vnto that ſide of the citie where moſt ſhew of danger was: whileſt in the meane while Countie *Sultze* with the Gouernour of ALTHEM (before vndiſcouered) vpon the ſudden by land ſcaled the other ſide of the citie, and gained the wals, the Turkes yet dreaming of no ſuch matter. But hereupon began a great outcrie, the Turkes ſtanding as men aſtonied, eſpecially now feeling the Chriſtians weapons in their bodies, before they knew they were got into
The citie of Peſth taken by the Chriſtians.
the citie. In this ſo great an amazement, ſuch of them as could, fled into the ſtrongeſt towers, I
the reſt hid themſelues in cellars, and other the moſt ſecret corners they could find, out of which they were afterwards by the Chriſtians drawne and ſlaine. They which were retired alſo into the towers and other ſtronger places of the citie, ſeeing the great ordinance in euery place bent vpon them, and now out of all hope of reliefe, offered to yeeld, requeſting onely, that they might with their wiues and children with life depart; promiſing for that fauour ſo ſhewed them, to perſwade them of BVDA alſo in like maner to yeeld: Vpon which promiſe, that their poore requeſt was graunted, and the lord *Nadaſti* with certaine other captaines ſent with ſome of theſe citizens of PESTH with their wiues and children to BVDA: who comming thither, according to their promiſe moſt earneſtly requeſted them of BVDA to yeeld, for that they were not
now to expect any further helpe, and that by their fooliſh obſtinacie they ſhould bee the cauſe K
of the death of them, their friends, their wiues and children. Vnto whom alſo, to mooue them the more, the lord *Nadaſti* promiſed in the name of Generall, That they ſhould all, excepting ſome few of their chiefe commaunders, in ſafetie depart: howbeit, they of BVDA would not hearken thereunto, but ſtood ſtill vpon their guard. In this citie of PESTH, well inhabited with Turkiſh marchants, the Chriſtians found great ſtore of wealth, which all became a prey vnto the ſoldiors, with a thouſand horſes for ſeruice, many great pieces of artillerie, and much other warlike prouiſion.

The vpper citie and caſtle of Buda beſieged by the Chriſtians.

PESTH thus woon, and a ſtrong garriſon left therein, they returned againe ouer the riuer to beſiege the caſtle and vpper citie of BVDA: which they attempted by vndermining the ſame, as alſo by batterie; hauing placed ſome of their great ordinance ſo high, that they could at their L
pleaſure ſhoot into the middeſt of the ſtreetes of the citie, wherewith they much troubled the Turkes, not a little before diſcouraged with the loſſe of PESTH; thundring alſo at the ſame time with their other batteries in diuers places of the wals both of the caſtle and of the citie, Where vnderſtanding, that the Turkes garriſons of the frontier townes and caſtles thereabouts (hearing of the ſiege) were comming to the reliefe of their diſtreſſed friends, they ſent out their horſemen with ſome part of their footmen againſt them: who meeting with them, gaue them a great ouerthrow, and ſo with victorie returned againe vnto the reſt of the armie lying at the ſiege, being ſtill in hope either by force or compoſition to become maſters of the citie.

But whileſt they lay in this hope, and, hauing the twelfth of October brought their approaches neerer vnto the walls, had there planted certaine notable pieces of batterie, with purpoſe M
the next day with all their power to haue aſſaulted the citie: behold, the Viſier Baſſa hearing (by the way as hee was going to BELGRADE, and ſo to CONSTANTINOPLE) that PESTH

was

A was woon, and BVDA beſieged; changing his mind, returned in haſt with ſuch forces as hee had yet left; and ſo vnlooked for, came and ſat downe before PESTH, being not then aboue fiue and twentie thouſand ſtrong, but thoſe all for the moſt part old and expert ſouldiours. But whileſt the Baſſa thus lay at the ſiege of PESTH on the one ſide of the riuer, and the Imperials at the ſiege of BVDA on the other, diuers braue attempts were in both places giuen both on the one ſide and the other. The Chriſtians in PESTH beſieged by the Turkes, hauing amongſt them diuers braue captaines, and deſirous of honour, one day vnder their conduct ſallied out of the citie to skirmiſh with the Turkes; and comming with them to the ſword, by plaine valour diſordered them, and enforced them to flie; and ſo allured with the ſweetneſſe of the victorie, purſued them euen to the trenches: from whence a great ſquadron of the Turkes horſemen
B and harquebuſiers at the ſame inſtant iſſuing out, and with their multitude ouercharging the Imperials, conſtrained them of force to retire: in which retreat, Countie *Maximilian Martinengo* (one of theſe aduenturers) doing what hee might both with his valour and direction to haue ſtaied the diſordered retreat of the Chriſtians, was with many others ſlaine: wherewith the reſt diſcouraged, tooke their refuge towards the citie. Which they of the garriſon beholding, ſent out certaine companies to relieue them; by whoſe comming out, the furie of the Turkes was not onely repreſſed, but they alſo euen vnto their trenches againe repulſed. Shortly after which hot skirmiſhes, the lord *Ruſſworm* with the other Chriſtian Captaines on the other ſide of the riuer, hauing with continuall batterie made ſuch a breach into the caſtle, as that the ſame ſeemed to be now ſaultable, in good order came on with certaine companies of their foot-
C men appointed for that ſeruice, and ſo couragiouſly aſſailed the breach: where the Turkes, who before had expected this aſſault, hauing in beſt ſort they could repaired the breach, and on both ſides thereof placed diuers murthering pieces, with great ſtore of dangerous fire workes, at ſuch time as the firſt companies of the Chriſtians ſought couragiouſly to haue entred the breach, ouerwhelmed them with that deadly fire, and ſo rent them with their murthering ſhot, that they no ſaſter entred, but that they were foorthwith cut off, and ſlaine: with the ſight whereof, they which were appointed to ſecond them, nothing diſcouraged, but ſeeking deſperately to haue entred, and with the taking of the caſtle, and ſlaughter of the Turkes to haue requited the death of their fellowes, were themſelues in like ſort welcommed. So that now a thouſand of them being loſt, the captaines conſidering how much the loſſe of ſo many braue
D ſoldiors concerned the whole enterpriſe taken in hand, and that the breach could not be gained without the loſſe of the greateſt part of them, they cauſed a retreat to be ſounded, and ſo the aſſault for that time to be giuen ouer.

A notable skirmiſh betwixt the Chriſtians, and the Turkes.

But long it was not that the Viſier Baſſa (thus retired as aforeſaid) had lien before PESTH, but that by reaſon of his ſo ſudden returne, great wants began to ariſe in his campe; his ſouldiors for want of food being glad to eat their dead horſes, a pound of bread being ſold for two Hungarian duckats, and a buſhell of oates for fiue, and yet hardly ſo to bee gotten: which wants in that ſo waſted a countrey ſtill more and more encreaſing, and many of his ſouldiors ſecretly ſtealing away from him, hee had much adoe by all the meanes he could vſe, to perſuade them there to ſtay eight dayes longer. Which time expired, and nothing more done, than ſome
E fewe weake attempts giuen, and ſome light skirmiſhes made, rather for faſhions ſake than for any hope of preuailing, and the want of all things ſtill encreaſing; he with the reſt of the commaunders fearing ſome ſudden miſchiefe to bee done them by the hungrie and diſcontented ſouldiors, the ſecond of Nouember, cauſing his baggage to bee truſſed vp in the dead time of the darke and ſilent night, riſe with his armie, and ſo in haſte retired directly to BELGRADE, leauing behind him in his campe three hundred dead horſes, not yet eaten by his hunger-ſtarued ſouldiours. Immediately after whoſe departure, the lord *Nadaſti* and ſome other of the commaunders in the armie, with fiue thouſand ſouldiors and certaine great pieces of artillerie, ſome by land, ſome by water, went downe alongſt the riuer to ADOM, a faire well built towne vpon the banke of Danubius, about foure Hungarian miles from BVDA, and ſeruing as it were
F for a ſtore-houſe for the garriſon there: which towne *Nadaſti* ſummoned by his Huſſars ſent before, requiring to haue it deliuered vnto him. Which they of the towne at the firſt refuſed to doe: but afterwards ſeeing a farre greater power come, prouided of great ordnance and all things elſe requiſit for a ſiege, they with the ſight thereof diſcouraged, without more adoe offe-

The Viſier Baſſa raiſeth his ſiege.

red

red to yeeld the towne, ſo that they might with bag and baggage in ſafetie depart: which they G
did, the Chriſtians conducting them as farre as FELDVVAR, which caſtle was alſo at the firſt ſummons, by the perſuaſion of them of ADOM deliuered vnto them: for they of the caſtle, by them enformed of the great ſtrength of the Chriſtians, and of the ſtore of great ordinance they had brought with them, and that they ſtaied therewith but faſt by, were eaſily perſuaded to hearken to their friends, and ſo yeelded. Which done, the free Haiduckes the ſame night ſurpriſed alſo the caſtle of PAX: from whence the Chriſtians ſtill marching on alongſt the riuer, tooke in alſo the citie of TOLNA.

But whileſt *Nadaſti* with the reſt were thus buſied in taking theſe caſtles and townes alongſt the South ſide of Danubius, they in the campe at BVDA were aduertiſed of the new deſignes of the Turkes lieutenants and captaines thereabout, for the reliefe of the beſieged: as that the H
Baſſa of BOSNA, with the Gouernours of CANISIA, SIGETH, and others, had aſſembled an armie of thirtie thouſand for the raiſing of the ſiege. Wherefore the Chriſtians doubting as they lay at the ſiege diſperſed, to be by them oppreſſed; leauing their tents in their trenches, gathered themſelues together into the Water citie: which the Turkes out of the vper citie quickely perceiuing, as feeling themſelues now at ſome more libertie, preſently ſallying out, tooke both the trenches and the tents ſo left, with no ſmall ſlaughter of ſuch as were left for the keeping of them: and ſo poſſeſſed of the trenches and tents, held them by the ſpace of two houres, vntill they were by ſtrong hand by the Chriſtians beaten out, and ſo with ſome loſſe enforced againe to retire into the citie. The lord *Nadaſti* alſo, with the reſt that had taken the aforeſaid caſtles and townes vpon the ſide of Danubius, making a rode towards ALBA REGALIS, I
in their returne within a mile of BVDA light vpon a thouſand Turks there gathered together, moſt part of whom they ſlew, and hauing put the reſt to flight, tooke ſome fiftie of them priſoners. At which time alſo an other of the Imperiall Colonels meeting with certaine other companies of the Turkes comming to the reliefe of the beſieged, not farre from BVDA, ſlew moſt part of them: tooke an hundred and threeſcore of them priſoners, with a number of horſes and much other rich bootie, all which hee brought into the campe. Neither were they at the ſiege in the meane time idle, their great artillerie ſtill thundering againſt the walles both of the caſtle and the citie: ſo that by the furie of the cannon hauing beaten downe a ſtrong tower next vnto the Danubius, not farre from the Kings ſtable, they were a little before night about to haue there entred, when ſuddenly ſuch a tempeſt of wind and raine ariſe, as that they could not poſ- K
ſibly vſe their pieces, or well any other weapon: ſo that the heauens as it were then fighting for the enemie, they were enforced for that time to giue ouer the aſſault begun. Which ſtorme was no ſooner ended, but that two thouſand of the Turkes both horſe and foot, to keepe the Chriſtians otherwiſe buſied, ſuddenly iſſuing out of the citie, charged vpon the Stirian horſemen; who preſently relieued by the men at armes, ſo welcommed them, that hauing loſt an hundred and threeſcore of their men, they were glad with more ſpeed to retire than they came out. But ſeeing ſome of the Chriſtians that ſo hardly purſued them, ſome ſlaine, and ſome hurt from the wals, taking heart againe, the next day (being the eleuenth of Nouember) they ſallied out againe; where albeit that a great number of them were ſlaine, yet fell they out againe the third day alſo, and were againe by the Countie *Thurn* with great loſſe of their men beaten backe L
into the citie: where in purſuing of them, the Chriſtians were by certaine Ianizaries (layd cloſe for that purpoſe) ſuddenly aſſayled and dangerouſly gauled, the Countie himſelfe being hurt in his left arme, and ſome other captaines ſlaine. In all which ſallies, although the Turks were ſtill put to the worſe, yet thereby they gained time in ſome good ſort to repaire againe their breaches.

Shortly after, the imperials thus lying at the ſiege, certainly enformed that a world of the fierce and rude Tartars by the incitement of the Turke (hauing made themſelues way through VALACHIA) were comming as farre as TEMESVVAR to relieue BVDA; thought it not beſt (eſpecially now that winter was come) to abide the comming of that ſo great a Northren tem-
The ſiege of Buda for feare of the Tartars giuen ouer by the Chriſtians. peſt, but betimes whileſt they had yet ſpace, to raiſe their ſiege and be gone: Which they did the M
ſixteenth of Nouember, leauing the Water citie, with all that they had got about BVDA againe vnto the enemie: onely PESTH they furniſhed with victuals and all things elſe neceſſarie, leauing therein almoſt ten thouſand ſouldiors in garriſon, for the defence therof againſt the barba-

rous

A rous enemie. As for ADOM, it was ſtrengthened with a garriſon of Hungarians only, with their wages offred to be paid before hand; which for all that they refuſed to accept, alledging that for the great danger this place was expoſed vnto aboue others, they could not ſafely take their oath for the defence thereof: yet offering withall to vndertake the charge, and to doe what beſeemed valiant ſouldiors, in ſuch ſort, as that all men ſhould well vnderſtand, that nothing euill ſhould happen thereunto through their default or negligence.

The ſiege of BVDA for feare of the Tartars thus giuen ouer, and the Imperials departed and gone, the Turkes foorthwith came downe out of the higher citie into the lower, declaring their ioy for the recouerie thereof, by the often thundering of their great ordinance, with diuers other ſignes of triumph. But whileſt in their iolitie they ſpared not by the mouth of the cannon to
B ſend commendations to them of PESTH, they from them againe receiued the like; but in ſuch rude manner, that the Turkes wearie of ſuch greetings, requeſted them to ſpare their ſhot and powder, and quietly to liue by them as became neighbours for that Winter vntill the next Spring, at which time it was to be thought that this ſtrife ſhould be ended by their Emperours, the weaker yeelding vnto the ſtronger either the one or the other citie. Yet for all this their great ioy, their cheere in BVDA was not great, victuals by this ſiege being become ſo ſcarce, that it was by the Turkes feared, That if the Chriſtians had there longer lyen, they ſhould for very want haue been enforced to haue yeelded the citie. Of which their need their friends not ignorant; and hauing made what prouiſion they were able for their reliefe, were with a great conuoy bringing the ſame towards BVDA: whereof the garriſons of COMARA and STRIGONIVM ha-
C uing intelligence, went preſently out, and meeting with the Turkes in the mid way betwixt ALBA REGALIS and BVDA, ouerthrew the conuoy, and carried all that prouiſion of victuall, like vnbidden gueſts making themſelues merrie with that which was neuer prouided for them.

Mahomet much troubled with the Scriuano.

Theſe doubtfull warres of HVNGARIE, with the generall reuolt of TRANSYLVANIA, much troubled *Mahomet* the great Sultan, but nothing like vnto the warres hee had in ASIA againſt the *Scriuano* and the rebels his followers: the euill ſucceſſe whereof (as moſt dangerous to his ſtate) ſo much tormented his haughtie mind, as that it would ſcarce ſuffer him to thinke of any thing elſe. For the rebell encouraged with the ſucceſſe of the laſt yeares warres, and ſtill growing ſtronger and ſtronger (by reaſon of the great number, which allured with the ſweet name of
D libertie, hope of prey, or the good entertainment by him giuen, daily more and more reſorted vnto his campe) had this yeare ouerrun a great part of the Turkes dominions in ASIA, putting all to fire and ſword that ſtood in his way, ranſacking alſo diuers walled and fenced cities by the way as he went: Which he might the more eaſily doe, for that the Ianizaries of ALEPPO and DAMASCO, with many other their partakers and fauourites, which might greatly haue hindered his proceedings, were at the ſame time alſo vp in armes and together by the eares amongſt them ſelues, to the great benefit of the *Scriuano*: who in the middeſt of the courſe of theſe his deſired fortunes, fell ſicke of a naturall diſeaſe, and ſo died. By whoſe death the rebellion was no whit appeaſed (as commonly in like caſe it falleth out, and as was then of many expected) but in ſhort time grew to be both farre greater and more dangerous than before: for the *Scriuano* was no ſoo-
E ner dead, but that a yonger brother of his, no leſſe warlike and couragious than himſelfe (to the great contentment of the rebellious) ſtept vp in his place, fiercely proſecuting the warres his brother had before him taken in hand. Againſt whom, *Haſſan Baſſa* by commandement from the Graund ſignior with a great armie ſetting forward, with hope in that newneſſe of his commaund to haue oppreſſed him, and ſo to haue quenched that ſo ſpreading a fire; at length met with him that was eaſie enough to be found, and ioyning battell with him, was by him in a great and bloody fight ouerthrowne and ſlaine together with his whole armie, except ſuch as by ſpeedie flight ſaued themſelues from the furie of their fierce enemies. So that *Mahomet* the great Sultan now inforced to employ his beſt commanders and ſouldiors into thoſe parts for the ſubduing of him, for that cauſe called *Mahomet* the Viſier Baſſa out of HVNGARIE, to ſerue againſt
F this new rebell: who in the meane time following the courſe of his victorie, made hauocke of all as he went, taking vnto his owne vſe all ſuch tribute as was in thoſe countreys and others alſo further off, due vnto the great Sultan; hauing of late exacted onely of the citie of ANCYRA and

The death of the Scriuano.

The Scriuano his younger brother taketh vpon him the leading of the rebels in his brothers ſtead.

Haſſan Baſſa ſlaine, & his armie ouerthrowne by the rebels.

and the country therabout, three hundred thousand duckats: so by exacting of great summes of mony from the country people (such as be his enemies) heaping vp great treasures for the maintenance of his warres. G

Diuers incursi. of the Tartars into the frontiers of the emperours territories, and much harme by them there done.

Now though *Mahomet* the Turkish emperour had called home *Mahomet* the Visier Bassa out of HVNGARIE to goe against the rebels in ASIA (as is aforesaid) yet had he before prouided, that for the better assurance of his townes and territories in HVNGARIE, the Tartar *Han* with a great power of his Crim Tartars should euen against that time come downe into that country. Which rough and needie people (dwelling neere vnto the fennes of MEOTIS) for pay or prey, alwayes readie to doe the *Othoman* emperours seruice, setting forward vnder the leading of their great *Han* himselfe, and of his two sonnes; and by plaine force breaking through VALACHIA, though not without great losse of their men (being fought with by the Valachians and free Haiduckes a whole day) were now in the latter end of December with their huge companies come into HVNGARIE; the *Han* himselfe with fortie thousand to QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ, and his sonnes with twentie thousand moe into POSSEGA (a fertile countrey lying betweene the great riuer SAVVS and DRAVVS:) where they spoiled as well the Turkes as the other poore Christians, pretending all that frontier countrey with the whole commaund thereof to be giuen vnto them by the Turkish emperour in reward of their seruice. But long they lay not there quiet, but that to shew for what they came, they enforced the Christians thereabout to victuall CANISIA for the Turkes: and so breaking into STIRIA, not farre from CARAMANT, the neerest fortresse of the Christians towards CANISIA, caried away aboue two thousand Christians captiues: and shortly after surprising KESCHEMET, a great and populous towne, slew most part of the inhabitants, and caried away the rest prisoners. Othersome of them also at the same time making an inrode to SHARVAR, and hauing burnt twentie countrey villages downe to the ground, carried away thence about a thousand soules into most miserable captiuitie and thraldome. They also at their first comming, relieued them of BVDA, the lord *Nadasti* with his Hussars, who before kept them from victuals, not being able (for the great number of them) now longer so to doe. By them also the Turkes encouraged, tooke and burnt certaine places possessed by the Christians neere vnto BVDA, putting them all to the sword that they found therein. So that the poore countrey of HVNGARIE (neuer to bee sufficiently pitied) with the rest of the countries and prouinces belonging vnto the house of AVSTRIA, and confining vpon the Turke, were not so much eased by the calling home of the Visier Bassa with his armie, as they were now annoyed by the comming of these roguish Tartars, a people wholly euen from their infancie giuen to the spoyle. Against whom for all that, the Christians beside their ordinarie garrisons began now euen in the depth of Winter to oppose some other of their forces also: the Palatine of RHENE sending ten companies of horsemen to POSSONIVM, from thence to bee sent to SHARVAR, for the defence of STIRIA: and *Collonitz* (but lately knighted by the emperour) for his part raising foure hundred horse, a thousand Hussars, and three thousand of the free Haiduckes, for the repressing of those Tartars: the duke of BRVNSVVICKE also at that time for the same seruice sending thither a thousand horse, with two thousand foot, against those sworne enemies of the Christian Religion. H I K L

THE

A

THe troubles of this yeare thus ouerpaſt, ALBA REGALIS being by the Chriſtians loſt, PESTH with ſome other places woon, TRANSYLVANIA recouered, BVDA beſieged, the Viſier Baſſa returned, and the Tartars come into HVNGARIE, Ianuarie with a ſharp froſt began to open the next yeare; by force whereof the riuers in many places, but eſpecially in thoſe more Eaſterly countries, were not onely froſen ouer, but ſeemed rather euen wholly turned into yce: Danubius that great riuer (for all his ſwift courſe) being then alſo (as it is often) ſo hard froſen, that men and carts might ſafely paſſe to and fro thereupon. Which ſo hard a ſeaſon for all that did no whit freeſe but rather encreaſe the hote deſires of the greedie Turks, ſtill breathing after the vtter ſpoyle and ruine of the Chriſtians dwelling neere vn- 1602 *A great froſt.*

B to them. For which purpoſe, they euen in this dead time of the yeare, and extremitie of nature (which commonly affoordeth vnto moſt mortall enemies a ceſſation from armes) out of their garriſons of SIGETH, BVDA, CANISIA, ALBA REGALIS, BABOTZ, and ſuch other places, raiſed an armie of eighteene thouſand ſtrong, to haue forraged and ouerrun the Chriſtians, with their territories confining vpon them, QVERMANIE with the countrie thereabout being the places by them aſſigned to haue felt the firſt force of their ſudden rage and furie. *An armie of the Turks raiſed out of their garriſons.*

Of which their deſignes *Collonitz*, Gouernor for the Emperor in thoſe parts, vnderſtanding, to preuent the ſame, and to meet with their forces, with all ſpeed put into the ſuburbes of QVERMANIE a thouſand Reiſters, and two thouſand Lanſquenets; and in the burroughes thereabouts laded the regiment of the Countie *Reingraue*, with ſix companies of the Coſ- *Collonitz in armes againſt the Turkes.*

C ſackes, foure thouſand Haiduckes, foure hundred Carabins, French and Wallons, two hundred horſe of the regiment of *Collonitz*; with whom was *Collonitz* himſelfe, commaunding ouer all theſe troupes: a man for his worth euery way anſwerable vnto his charge. Who for the more aſſurance of this countrie, ouer which the enemie now houered, commaunded all the inhabitants thereabout to take vp armes; and withall, with good and ſtrong barricadoes to ſtrengthen the waies, and ſtop vp the paſſages into their countrie: which they right cherefully performed, with their weapons in the one hand, and their ſpades and ſhouels in the other. Of which their ſo great reſolution the Turkes vnderſtanding, changed their purpoſe. For they conſidering the aſſured danger they were to vndergoe, in forcing of theſe troupes, ſtanding vpon the wals of their defence, and ſtrong in their reſolution, changed their former

D deſigne, for the inuading of QVERMANIE, where they for the ſpace of fiue weekes togither had by the Chriſtians bin expected; and vpon a new reſolution marched along by ROQVESBOVRG, with purpoſe to haue loaded themſelues with the ſpoyle of the countrie thereabout. Which their new deſigne cauſed *Collonitz* to gather togither his forces to croſſe and fruſtrat them therein: which he did by fauour of the riuer, which both ſtrengthned him againſt their incurſions, and was well to be defended. But the Turkes, whoſe purpoſe was not to fight, but to haue robbed and ſpoyled the countrie at their pleaſure, finding now contrarie to their expectation, ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, and their deſignes diſturbed, in fine, gaue ouer their enter- *The Turkes for feare of the Chriſtians cowardly retire.*

E priſe, and ſo againe retired; contenting themſelues to gather a conuoy of victuals to put into CANISIA, which then lay in great extremitie for want thereof. Which victuals they drew out of the villages thereabout, and ſo came to BABOTZ, to march to CANISIA, a towne moſt commodious for ſuch an aſſemblie, and for the relieuing of CANISIA. Of this their purpoſe *Collonitz* (who ſpared for nó coſt) by his eſpials aduertiſed, euen he which before was appointed as a prey vnto his enemies, began now to plot with himſelfe, that they ſhould become a prey vnto him: their cowardiſe, by ſo many precedent effects declared, had giuen him the meane to aduenture vpon them, and the hope to ouerthrow them. A neceſſarie conſideration in martiall affaires for commanders to put in execution their deſignes, at what price ſoeuer: for that it is better to looſe in the performance of them, with the preſeruation of their reputation, than otherwiſe to gaine with the loſſe thereof: for that it preſerued, ſtill ſtriketh a feare of their valour into the minds of their enemies, oftentimes ouercome euen with this their appre-

F henſion thereof: whereas otherwiſe they might happily ouercome, in the aſſurance by them conceiued of their enemies cowardiſe.

Vpon which reſolution this braue Colonell the foure and twentieth of March with his troupes marched towards little COMORA, about two leagues from CANISIA, and lay with *Collonitz lyeth in ambuſh for the Turkes.*

them close in ambush in the woods neere vnto two marishes, ouer which the Turks had made G
two bridges to passe the great artillerie and wagons vpon: the Turks being well neere 20000
strong, and our men but 8200, whereof there were 2200 horsemen, and 6000 foot, a small
number in comparison of their enemies. But whilest that those men lye thus close in ambush,
with a purpose to do some notable exploit, let vs in the meane time run to PESTH, to see what
there in the meane time passed.

The Turks after the losse of PESTH much grieued to haue this impostume so neere their
hearts, sought to breake it to our hurt, employing all their trecherie to gaine our garrison sol-
diors, and with their forces to distresse them of victuals. And the Christian armie was no soo-
ner risen from before BVDA, but that the Turks came downe againe into their base towne,
which they found much ruinated and in euill estate. But the ioy of their conquest buried in it H
all the obiect of their sorrow, and the feeling of their griefe; the lesser passions alwaies giuing
place vnto the greater, and sorrow finding no place at all in the middest of their immoderate
ioy. Whereof they gaue a number of testimonies, by the thundring of their great ordnance,
by fires of ioy, and vollies of small shot: all which their furie they discharged vpon them of
PESTH; who with the like courtesie requited them, sending them back againe bullets for bul-
lets. Which now became a common exercise among the cannoniers, passing the time in
these actions, more vpon a brauerie than to any purpose, small harme being done thereby ei-
ther on the one side or one the other: in such sort, that in the end the Turks better aduised, re-
quested our men to cease from such shooting, as they on their part would do likewise, and to
expect the end of the negotiation of peace, of a certain begun (as they said) betwixt their prin- I
ces, but meaning indeed by this means to spare their pouder, shot, and paines, and to reserue
them to their better vses.

Buda distressed for want of victuals.

And yet for all this triumphant ioy, the Turks in BVDA were in great want of victuals, the
late siege hauing deuoured all their prouisions, and no new supplie thereof as yet come vnto
them: insomuch, that their greatest care was now how to come by victuals, without which
they must needs forsake their citie. Of which their so great necessitie the other garrisons in the
places thereabout aduertised, assembled themselues to take order therefore; and hauing pro-
uided 200 wagons, loaded with all maner of necessarie prouisions at ALBA REGALIS, with a
conuoy of 6000 souldiours put themselues vpon the way toward BVDA. Of all which their
proceedings the garrison of STRIGONIVM hauing got vnderstanding, and ioining vnto them K
the garrison of COMARA, met with them vpon the way betwixt ALBA REGALIS and BVDA, and
charged them; and so with great confidence on both sides came to handy blowes, the Turks
being in number stronger, & our men in valour and resolution; the wagons in the mean time
standing still, as the motiue of the charge, and appointed for a prey vnto the victors. But our
horsmen being for the most part Hussards, wel acquainted with such charge, with their diuers
courses greatly troubled the enemies, our footmen in the meane time charging them also
with a number of harquebusiers: against whom the Turks with the same armes and like cou-
rage defending themselues, and many of them being slaine, and the waggons gained from
them, gaue place vnto their valour, & so were almost all cut in pieces. The waggons thus sur-
prised, were diuided as a rich bootie among the victors: fortie whereof were sent vnto the L
garrison at PESTH; who were well content that the enemies trauell and wealth had been ga-
thered for their good, and without their owne paines to solace themselues with the fruit of
their enemies labours.

The Turkes in carying a conuoy of victuals to Buda ouerthrowne by the Christians.

But what should we say? The most sure resolutions are sometimes by chances crossed, and
tempests otherwhiles ouertake vs, euen in the entrance of the desired port. The Turks of BV-
DA vnderstanding of the bruit of this medley, and that it was for their bread, posted in hast
to haue succoured their troupes, and arriued at the same time that our men victoriously
led along by the riuer of Danubius the waggons they had before gained. At the sight of
which obiect, they animated with hunger after the victuals, and with desire to be reuen-
ged vpon the men, charged them. But our men, who thought of nothing more, but that M
they were victorious, and possessors of their enemies bootie, seeing these new come ene-
mies so furiously to charge them, daunted with the present perill, and with the consideration
thereof only possessed, bethought themselues of nothing else, but how to saue themselues,

and

A and to leaue their honour, bootie, and the field, all as ſpoiles vnto their enemies. The furious countenance of the Turkes, and their number ſurmounting ours by 1500, ſo bereft them of their reſolution for to fight for their liues and waggons, as that they without more adoe quite forſooke them, accounting themſelues happie enough if they might but ſaue themſelues. And the Turks without further purſuing of them, contented to haue recouered their victuals, left them, and ſo returned homeward, driuing their waggons along the banke of Danubius. But ſee the wind which by and by changed, and hauing as it were with a ſudden tempeſt vndertaken euen at the entrance of the port to ſwallow vp both the one and the other, ſent the garriſon of PESTH vpon them of BVDA to ſtay them. Great changes of fortune in one moment
B of time, which mocketh men with ſhews, bringing forth effects quite contrarie to their expectation. Theſe Turkes ſtayed vpon their retreat by the comming of theſe new come aduerſaries, did euen as ours had done before. For not willing to preferre their good before their life, and more greedie of victual than of battell, they quitted their prize, and retired. For our men in number 2000, were ſeized of a forreſt about the midſt of the way wherby the Turks were to paſſe, and which they could by no meanes ſhun; and diuided into two companies, kept themſelues cloſe there in ambuſh, reſolutely attending for the comming of their enemies. Of which their purpoſe the Turkes not aware, and ſtill preſſing on forward, found themſelues hardly charged, before they could ſee them by whom they were ſo charged; one of our companies charging them afront, and the other behind. So that the Turks encloſed betwixt them,
C and in ſo great and ſudden a feare not knowing againſt whom to defend themſelues, without any great reſiſtance betooke themſelues to flight, leauing their waggons, and caſting away their armes: yet ſo, that a number of them were left dead vpon the place, ſome others of them taken priſoners, & the reſt chaſed euen vnto the gates of their citie. But our men being victors, with the waggons, & a number of priſoners returned home, and by the mouth of their great artillerie gaue a thouſand teſtimonies of their victorie vnto the ſorrowfull cowards: who themſelues alſo carried the heauie news thereof vnto the reſt of their fellowes ſhut vp within the citie of BVDA.

The conuoy of victuals againe recouered from the Chriſtians by the garriſon of Buda.

The ſame conuoy of victuals recouered from the Turks by the garriſon of Peſth.

But ſee againe the change of fortune, conſtant only in vnconſtancie, as the ſequele ſhortly after ſhewed. Danubius that great riuer was then alſo (as it is often) ſo hard froſen, that men
D and carts might now ſafely paſſe to and fro thereupon. In which ſo hard ſeaſon, the Turkes in garriſon at BVDA hauing once vpon the froſen riuer braued the Chriſtians in PESTH, and the two and twentith of Ianuarie in like brauerie comming out the ſecond time, were by the garriſon ſouldiors of PESTH put to flight, and by two hundred of the moſt forward and valiant ſouldiors hardly purſued; vpon whom, not onely they which fled, but other of the Turkes alſo out of BVDA in greater number returning, chaſed them likewiſe backe againe euen to the bridge, whereby they were to haue paſſed into the citie: which now drawne vp for feare of greater harme from ſuch a number of Turkes as were now come out, and were readie to haue entred at the heeles of the flying ſouldiours; the poore ſoules ſo ſhut out, and too weake for ſuch a multitude as then had them in chaſe, were there euen in
E their friends ſight euerie man ſlaine, the Turkes themſelues with little harme returning to BVDA.

The garriſon ſoldiors of Peſth ouerthrowne by the Turkes of Buda.

Neither long laſted the ioy of this victorie: for within a few daies after one *Lethner*, a captaine of the Chriſtian garriſon in PESTH, more grieued than the reſt with the loſſe of ſo many valiant men, and ſome of them his friends and companions alſo, certainly vnderſtanding that certaine of the chiefe of the Turkes of BVDA, with two of their greateſt commanders, and a great traine of gallant gentlewomen, were for their pleaſure the next day about to goe vnto the hoat Bathes neere vnto BVDA; and taking with him threeſcore musketiers, the night before ſecretly vpon the yce paſſed ouer the riuer, and ſo not farre from the Bathes lay cloſe in ambuſh, expecting the comming of their deſired prey. In which ex-
F pectance they lay not long, but that theſe Turks caſting no perill, came accordingly as they could haue wiſhed, and in thoſe pleaſant bathes merrily bathed and ſolaced themſelues: Fooles to ſeeke after the pleaſures of peace amidſt the gulfe of the miſeries of warres, and euill aduiſed to aſſure themſelues of faire weather in a ſtorme ſo neere at hand. For in the middeſt of all their delights theſe reſolute men came ſuddenly vpon them, not fearing any

The Turkes in bathing themſelues at Buda by them of Peſth ſurpriſed and ſlaine.

ſuch danger, and ſlew all the men, ſparing none, but one boy and the Gentlewomen: who in the time of the conflict, naked as they were, ranne as faſt as they could into the citie, feare hauing in them ouercome the modeſtie of their ſexe. Which exploit done, the captaine leauing the Turkes ſlaine in the Bath, now become red with their blood, returned with his ſouldiors, laded with the rich bootie, and merily ſporting at the naked gentlewomen: with whoſe fearefull crie they of BVDA ſtirred vp, ſent out certaine of their garriſon after them, but to no purpoſe, for why, they were in ſafety before got home. By continuance of this froſt, by reaſon whereof victuals could not be ſent downe the riuer, the ſouldiors in garriſon in PESTH were driuen to ſuch wants, as that dogs & cats were accounted good meat among them; the Turks their enemies ſtill roaming about in the fields, to keepe them from victuals, and to encreaſe their neceſſitie. G H

Great want of victuals in Peſth.

Of theſe neceſſities the Turkes of BVDA were partakers alſo, hunger-ſtarued as were the other, but yet euery day in the field to ſeeke reliefe. They knew right well, that hunger was hard to be deceiued, being ſtill in action and vigilant; and therefore they ſought ſome meanes how to deceiue our men, ſtill attending vpon them, and ſo to aſſure themſelues of victuals. To which end they gaue it out, and made ſhew as if they would haue beſieged the fort of ADOM, diſtant about two leagues from BVDA: vnder the colour whereof, they receiued into their citie a conuoy of fiftie waggons laden with victuals and munition: which our men hindered not, for that they had no ſuſpition of any ſuch purpoſe of theirs. With which reliefe the Turks encouraged, gaue knowledge thereof vnto their ouerthwart neighbours in PESTH by a thouſand great ſhot, which they in thundring manner ſent ouer the riuer vnto them, as from men of courage, and deuoid of feare. Howbeit, that this action was more vaine than profitable vnto the Turkes, who for the diſpence of their ſhot and powder gayned not ſo much as the life of one ſouldiour, nor one ſtone out of the wals of PESTH. Vpon this iolitie theſe ſame garriſon ſouldiours of BVDA ſhortly after thought to haue vpon the ſudden ſurpriſed PALOTTA, a ſmall caſtle of the Chriſtians, by night: but being in good time diſcouered, were deceiued of their hope, and with the loſſe of an hundred and twentie of their men inforced to retire: vnto whom *Gaſpar Horwad* captaine of the caſtle, by a countrie peaſant before ſworne to do the errand, ſent a little pot full of ſalt, and a bottle of wine, willing them (in derſion) with that ſalt to ſeaſon the Veniſon they had taken in their late hunting, and to emptie that bottell to quench their thirſt, and to cheere them vp after their late conqueſt. I K

Buda victualled

The Turkes ſeeking to ſurpriſe Palotta, themſelues ouerthrowne.

This ieaſt more prouoked theſe enemies, galled ſo to heare of their ſhame and loſſe; in ſuch ſort, that in reuenge therof they diſcharged a ſhower of thundring great ſhot and ſmall bullets vpon the garriſon of PESTH, which in great abundance fell out of the cloud of their rage. But all to ſmall purpoſe: For that their canons being euill leuelled, ouerſhot the town, carrying with their thundring bullets more feare than they did hurt: yea, that worſe was, the ruine made by their great batterie fell vpon their own citie. For while they were thus thundering, fire by negligence of the cannoniers fell into one of their barrels of pouder, which taking hold of another, and ſo running along, as if it had bin by a traine of purpoſe laied, burſt out with ſuch force, that it ouerthrew a long piece of the wall of BVDA, which in the fall thereof ouerwhelmed a great number of the ſouldiors neere vnto it. The noiſe of this thunderclap was great, and the force thereof terrible, ſo that it reuiued them of PESTH with ſome good hope, by this breach to force the place, the Turkes being from thence retired. Vpon which occaſion the Gouernor of PESTH reſolued to giue an aſſault vnto the place, & to make vſe of the meane that fortune, without his paine or trauell, had put into his hand. Wherupon taking with him a thouſand Almaines, and three hundred Hungarians, he forthwith (in hope of good ſucceſſe) marched toward the breach; and happily had preuailed, but that by the way they by chance met with a companie of Turkes, who gaue an alarme vnto them of the vpper towne, who vpon that bruit of their approch manned their wals, and with great ſpeed repaired the breach. Now all that they of PESTH could do, was to reuenge themſelues vpon theſe Turkes whom they had met withall, who were there all ſlaine, except ſome few, whom they ſaued, and carried priſoners vnto PESTH, to bee by them inſtructed of the enemies affaires. L M

A breach made in the wals of Buda by the negligence of a canonier.

About

Siliſtria ſpoyled by the Vayuod of Valachia.

A About this time *Radul* Vayuod of VALACHIA aduertiſed, That the Turkes in garriſon at SILISTRIA were gone abroad into the countrey to ſeeke after bootie and victuals, with his ſouldiors paſſed forthwith ouer the riuer Danubius vpon the yce, to ſurpriſe the towne, now bared of the garriſon: whoſe men for the deſire of the riches of the place, and for feare leaſt the garriſon ſouldiors ſhould returne before they had gained the place, with redoubled force and courage ſo aſſailed the towne, that the Turkes, diſmayed, and deeming the number of the Chriſtians that ſo furiouſly aſſayled them to be greater than indeed it was, by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the enterpriſe by them taken in hand; after ſome ſmall reſiſtance, left the way open for them to enter: who forthwith ouer the dead bodyes of their enemies thruſt into the towne, tooke the whole ſpoyle thereof, which was both great and rich, (as
B being a towne well peopled) and ſo ſet fire vpon it, to the intent that it ſhould no more ſerue for a place for the enemie to retire vnto. The Vayuod thus victorious and rich, returned with his ſouldiors laded with ſpoyles of their enemies, before that the Turkes could gather themſelues together to hinder their retreat. And vnto *George Baſta*, who was then in TRANSYLVANIA in armes againſt the Turkes, for his part of the bootie he ſent him thirteene of the enemies enſignes.

But our troupes are now too long in their ambuſh, where the valiant *Collonitz* holdeth them cloſe, attending the comming of the Turkes, and of their conuoy to CANISIA, now we muſt draw them out of their Sentinels and ſee what effects their deſignes ſhall bring forth. Theſe braue ſouldiors had now lyen three dayes in their ambuſhes without diſcouering of any
C enemie, vntill that the ſixt of March three eſpies fell into their hands, whom the Turkes had ſent forth before, to diſcouer what enemies were then abroad in the field. But theſe faithfull Infidels ſo taken, would not by any meanes diſcouer any thing hurtfull vnto their friends, or profitable for ours: So that in fine the Generall mooued with their obſtinacie, commaunded one of their heads to be ſtrucke off, to terrifie the other two, and by force to draw from them that which faire entreatie and perſuaſion could not. The other two that were yet aliue diſmayed with his ſpectacle, and well beaten to tell the truth, were at laſt conſtrained to confeſſe, That they were the enemies ſpyes, ſent forth to view the countrey, to ſee if the Chriſtians had any forces there, able to let their cannons and waggons to enter into CANISIA: which not appearing, and they reporting vnto their companies, that the countrey was cleare, that then
D within two dayes after the conuoy was to paſſe euen by the ſame place where they then lay, to be put into CANISIA, ſetting foorth from BABOTZ two houres before day. Our men thus enformed of the enemies deſignes, forced their hope to defeat them, and againe retired themſelues into their ambuſcadoes, attending for their hoped prey, in ſuch ſort, that our men in their conceits held the victorie now as good as gained; howbeit, that it was yet but in hope and expectation. And that which more confirmed the matter, was, that within two houres after the taking of theſe ſpyes, the Haiduckes, layed without the principall ambuſcado, and hidden in the thickets and buſhes, diſcouered a cornet of horſemen; with fiue enſignes of the Turks, come out of CANISIA, marching to meet with the conuoy, in ſafetie to conduct the ſame into the towne. At which ouerture the Hungarians awaked, gaue knowledge vnto the Gene-
E rall of the arriuall of the enemie, to the end hee might reſolue what was beſt in that caſe to bee done. Which opportunitie *Collonitz* embracing, and making much of time, put his horſemen in good order, to encloſe the Turkes betwixt the mariſh and the wood, and to cut them ſo encloſed in pieces. The Turkes hauing diſcouered nothing but the mariſhes and the woods, held on their way, and ſo as men hauing their hands and feet bound, fell into the power of their enemies. For being come into the danger, the Chriſtian Carabins charged them in the head of their companies as they marched, and diſordered them: The Hungarians fell vpon their flankes which they opened, and the horſemen preſſed them at their backes. Theſe poore miſerable men ſo encloſed, not knowing againſt whom firſt to defend themſelues, and ſeeing death vpon euerie ſide of them, became as beaſtes to be ſacrificed vnto the furie
F of the Chriſtians. The ſmall reſiſtance that they made deſerued not the name of a fight, being all ſlaine, and hauing themſelues not ſlaine one man; layed by heapes one vpon another, not hauing ouerthrowne ſo much as one of their enemies: In ſuch ſort, that of ſixe hundred men that were there together, there were not foure of them ſaued. Their

Three of the Turkes ſpies taken.

The Turkes by Collonitz ouerthrowne.

horſemen which followeth them, ſeeing them ſurpriſed, in ſtead of relieuing them, ſhamefully G
flied; and thinking by flight to ſaue themſelues, whileſt that their companions were in maſſacring, preferred their liues before their honour: For if it bee a ſhame for ſouldiors in fight to flie with the ſafetie of their friends, it muſt needs be an irreparable diſhonour to flie and leaue them to the ſlaughter. But our Carabins taking the occaſion for their aduantage, no more ſpared their horſes in the purſuit of theſe Infidels, than they had done their hands in the defeating of their fellowes: but purſuing amaine after theſe fugitiues, ſlew a number of ſuch of them as were worſt mounted, and purſued the reſt euen vnto the gates of CANISIA. Thoſe of the towne at this tumult raiſed an alarme, ſhot off their great artillerie, and diſcharged many vollies of ſmall ſhot againſt our men, aſwell to ſtay the purſuit of our men, and to ſaue their own, as to giue warning vnto them that were to bring the conuoy, that our men were in the field, readie to ſurpriſe H
them. But during this fight, three of the Turkes horſemen paſſing well mounted, and exceeding hardie, aduentured to paſſe by our troupes, and vpon the ſpurre to meet with them which were bringing of the conuoy, and to giue them warning of the ouerthrow, and that they ſhould againe returne to BABOTZ. Which their ſo braue an attempt Fortune fauoured, as not willing to fruſtrate the deſert of ſo well deſeruing valour. And the Turkes vpon the way with the conuoy, now vpon this aduertiſement returned, and retired themſelues againe into the caſtle from whence they came.

Babotz in vaine beſieged by Collonitz.

But our men aduertiſed of this their retreate, and as it were deceiued of the hope by them conceiued for the intercepting of the conuoy, vndertooke an exploit much more hautie, braue, and dangerous. For forthwith they made head toward BABOTZ, with a reſolution to carie the I
place; and though they were almoſt ſixteene miles from it, yet they reſolued to goe thither, and to make themſelues maſters thereof. And ſo marching cheerefully on, therein vſed ſuch diligence, that about nine of the clocke at night they arriued at the place: whither they were no ſooner come, but that they did what they might to daunt their enemies, to make their conqueſt the more eaſie. The greatneſſe of the attempt it ſelfe ſerued well to that purpoſe, but yet the beliefe more, if they could driue into their enemies mindes the ſufficiencie of their forces, for the performance of ſo great an exploit. Which cauſed them to ſound their trumpets, to ſtrike vp their drums, to remooue their artillerie, to ruſle with their armes, to keepe a ſtir with their ſouldiours, and to make the noiſe not of a ſmall, but of a puiſſant and great armie. But the Turks in number twice ſo many as were our men, and within a good and ſtrong place, were K
not with ſuch a bruit to bee carried away, but ſtanding faſt vpon their guard and reſolution, prepared themſelues for fight, and how to receiue our men, if they ſhould attempt to aſſaile them. Now whileſt the alarme thus ſounded, our companies aduanced themſelues, repeating oft times the name of *Ieſus*, and making themſelues readie for to fight. This skirmiſh began with a thouſand cannon ſhot, which the Turkes out of their caſtle deliuered vpon the troups of the Chriſtians, and their muskets ſtill playing from the curtaine of their wals, ſo that the caſtle ſeemed as if it had beene a mountaine of fire. All which terrors no whit ſtayed the hope of our reſolute footmen, who paſſing thwart theſe flaming ſhowers, marched along the counterſcarp of the ditch toward the gate of the town, to haue broken open and forced the ſame. The Turks at the ſame time were come forth out of the towne, making ſhew as if they would haue ſallied L
forth vpon our men, and haue fought with them. But at the ſame inſtant that they charged the front of our footmen, they were by them ſo encountered and beaten backe, that hauing loſt ſome of their men, they were glad, againe to retire into the towne: where they did there endeuor to defend themſelues, not daring afterward to fight without the fauor of their wals: within which it ſtood them vpon to haue both courage and power, being ſtill furiouſly aſſayled by our men, who planted vpon the towne-ditch with their muskets and harquebuſes, ſo plyed the Turks vpon the wals and in their holds, as that they durſt not ſhew themſelues or looke out for the ſhowers of lead which they thundered vpon them. And aſſuredly, if our men had then had inſtruments wherewith to haue opened the gates or the wals, as well as their muskets and harquebuſes had made a breach into the reſolution of the Turkes, the towne had vndoubtedly bin M
ours: but this deſigne being not before foreſeene, neither intended, wanted the meanes to put it in execution; ſo that, for want of Petards and of ſcaling ladders, the place remained ſtill the Turkes, and ſaued it ſelfe out of our hands. In fine, our men hauing beene foure houres in fight

before

A before it, both doing and receiuing harme, and finding no meane to enter the place, were enforced to ſound a retreat, and to leaue it.

In which retreat the Chriſtians burnt certaine villages of the enemies, rather to ſhew that they had beene there, than for any their valour therein: ſeeing that things inſenſible, which follow the order of their nature, are without offence, and they which hurt them, without reaſon. This done, they of purpoſe retired to little COMARA: for, the long time that they had kept the field, the diuers exploits by them done againſt the enemies, and the common report of the vanquiſhed, had ſtirred vp the enemies, ſo that they began now on euery ſide by heaps to flocke together, to ſwallow them vp, and euen now preſſed vpon their retreat. So *Collonitz* in deſpight of the enemie, in ſafetie brought backe his ſouldiors: and being entred into COMARA, cauſed the

Collonitz retireth to Comark.

B heads of the principall of the ſlaine enemies, to be ſet vpon the pikes of the paliſadoes, and vpon a great pine tree ſtanding before the gate, which for this purpoſe had almoſt all the branches lopped off. An action learned from the crueltie of the Turkes, and now done by the Chriſtians, more to aſtoniſh and deterre them from this their cruell cuſtome, than for any glorie or profit enſuing thereby: ſeeing that to tyrannize vpon a dead bodie, is but a ſigne of cowardiſe, and an action altogether vnprofitable.

This done, our men departed from this caſtle, as men worne, and almoſt ſpent with trauell and wearineſſe, but yet more with famine. For why, they thinking to haue executed but that deſigne which had put them in armes, and that in ſo ſhort a time alſo, had taken no prouiſion of victualls with them: ſo that they were all pined with hunger, ouercome with

C watching, and halfe dead with labour. Their horſes alſo in like ſort languiſhed, the countrey beeing alike cruell both to the one and to the other. For beſide that it was vnfruitfull for ſuch as helde the field, all the fruites thereof being gathered together and carried into the townes by the men of warre, it was not poſſible for our men to forrage, or to ſeeke for victuall there, and to come to an happie end of their deſigne, for that they had rayſed an alarme abroad in the countrey, and ſo perhaps might themſelues haue become a prey vnto them, whome they ought to prey vpon. Which was the cauſe that our ſouldiours had for the ſpace of three dayes eaten nothing but crabbes and acornes which they found in the woods which couered their ambuſhes: ſo that being now come vnto this caſtle, they deuoured a world of victuals, and requeſted euerie one of them to returne againe vnto their garri-

D ſons; their bodies weakened with hunger, being ſcarce able to beare their armes. But that was not all: for departing from little COMARA, they were aduertiſed, that the Turkse, ſhut vp the wayes whereby they were to make their retreat home; in hope eaſily to ouercome men alreadie with hunger brought low and to kill the bodies which trauel alreadie, had ſpent. Howbeit, the great courage of our men fruſtrated this the enemies deſigne, and ſaued themſelues. But ſo farre off was it that this aduertiſement diſmayed *Collonitz*, that euen to the contrarie it the more increaſed his courage, as appointed for his glorie: being glad to haue ſuch an occaſion offererd him for the ſhewing of his valour, although it were through the middeſt of daunger, death, and ſlaughter. So that in ſtead of ſhunning the combat, whereas it was reported that the Turkes with great aſſurance marched, neere vnto a caſtle of the Chriſtians, to make head

The notable reſolution of Collonitz.

E vpon a paſſage whereby our men were to retire: he turned head toward the ſame place, with a firme reſolution with true valour vpon the ſudden to encounter the enemie; which had thought to haue ſurpriſed him by cowardiſe. And the ſouldiours, weakened with hunger, although they well apprehended the danger of this deſigne; yet reſting vpon the great reſolution of their Generall, and conſidering the neceſſitie they had to goe farther for their ſafetie, vpon a good courage were content to follow whither ſoeuer their Generall would: who led them directly vnto the aforeſaid caſtle, where it was expected that the Turkes ſhould haue charged them. But being come thither, there was no bodie to be ſeene: and yet our men, as hungrie as they were, ſtayed there one day in ambuſh, expecting the comming of their enemies, who for all that, hauing no mind to meet them, appeared not, but gaue them time and libertie in ſafetie

F to retire themſelues euery man vnto his own garriſon, to refreſh themſelues, and to recouer their ſtrength.

But now whileſt our men of warre, after theſe troubles in TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE, repoſe themſelues; let vs in the meane time take our iourney to CONSTANTINOPLE; and goe vnto the marriage of *Haſſan Baſſa*, one of the Viſiers of the Graund Seignior, and laſt

yeare

yeare Generall of the Turks armie in HVNGARIE.

At ſuch time as he departed from this great citie, to goe vnto the conqueſt of ALBA-REGALIS, *Mahomet* the Turkiſh emperour reſolued to ſet all vpon the regaining of this citie; cauſed to be preſented vnto him a Crowne and a Sword, the one in reward of his valour, if hee returned with victorie from this exploit; and the other in reuenge of his cowardiſe, if he failed in the performance thereof: promiſing him indeed his ſiſter in mariage, amongſt other the glorious rewards and trophies of his victorie: and thretning him with death, as a puniſhment amongſt the griefes of his diſhonour. But it came to paſſe, that by the cowardiſe of our men, he came vnto the effect of his deſire (as is aforeſaid) and tooke the citie, which promiſed vnto him the glorious triumph in CONSTANTINOPLE. And vnder the ſweet influence of this Planet he returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he found all things in readines for the ſatisfying of his expectation, and the aduancement of his glorie. He is magnificently receiued of his prince, courteouſly ſaluted by all the nobilitie, and with greateſt reuerence poſſible honored of the people. And as he had happily diſcharged his charge, hee found in like manner all things prepared and in readineſſe, for the performance of the promiſe of the grand Seignieor his lord and maſter: who had cauſed them to be in moſt ſumptuous manner prouided for the ſolemnizing of the marriage, and the contentment of the Baſſa. But nothing now wanting that hee could haue deſired or wiſhed, more than the verie ſolemnizing of the mariage it ſelfe, and that alſo euerie day of all men expected; the Ianizaries and Spahi, with the other ſouldiors of the Court, to the number of fiue and twentie thouſand, euen vpon the ſudden, when as no ſuch thing was feared, came and in armes preſented themſelues before the Diuano, or Tribunall, holden for the cheife adminiſtration of juſtice in the Turkes palace, the firſt foure dayes in euerie weeke: And hauing ſet guards at the Court gates, the more ſafely to execute what they were before reſolued vpon, proudly demaunded to haue audience, for certaine of the Spahi and Ianizaries, of whom they had made choice, in the names of them all to deliuer vnto the great Baſſaes their grieuances, and the cauſes of that their aſſembly. Who as ſoone as they were entered into the Diuano before the Baſſaes, of whom the moſt couragious of them was not without feare, as looking for nothing but for preſent death, they at the firſt demaunded to haue *Haſſan Baſſa* deliuered vnto them: Who thinking that his head ſhould haue ſerued for a ſacrifice to pacifie this their furie; as a man altogether diſmayed, wan and pale, paſſed through this mutinous multitude, to haue gone vnto the great Sultan, proteſting of his owne innocencie, and calling vpon his prophet *Mahomet*, to diſcouer vnto them them the truth of all things. But they, after a thouſand iniuries and reproaches by them heaped vpon him, rudely demaunded of him, Whence it proceeded, that whileſt hee with a great part of the forces of the empire was buſied in HVNGARIE, for the recouering of ALBA REGALIS, there was in the meane time no good order taken for the repreſſing of the rebell in ASIA; who by ſufferance was (as they ſaid) now growne ſo proud, as with enſignes diſplayed to come within three or foure dayes iourney of CONSTANTINOPLE, the imperiall ſeat of the *Othoman* emperours. Whereunto hee in no ſmall feare anſwered, That hee for his part had done his duetie, as well while hee had the charge of the armie in ASIA, as now of late whileſt hee had the like charge againſt the Chriſtians in HVNGARIE, as euen the enemies themſelues could witneſſe. But ſeeing himſelfe euen readie to die, hee yet requeſted them, That his guiltleſſe death might bee vnto the ſtate in generall profitable: and in diſcharging of his conſcience, to declare vnto them the cauſes of this contempt, and neglect, for the ſuppreſſing of the Aſian rebell, which they were ſo deſirous to know. It proceedeth (ſaid hee) onely from the euill gouernment of the Graund Sultans mother (who then all commaunded) and from the negligent careleſſeneſſe of the Capi-Aga. Which his ſpeech although they with much impatience and ſtorming gaue eare vnto, yet hearing him ſo well to excuſe himſelfe, and to lay the blame there where they were well content it ſhould reſt; they gaue him leaue to goe to the great Sultan, to requeſt him that they might ſpeake with him, and further to deale with him, that they might haue the head of them who had beene the cauſe of this diſhonourable ſeruice, or otherwiſe cowardly behaued themſelues in the mannaging of the warres againſt the rebels in ASIA: Threatening him withall, That if he failed to performe this his charge, he ſhould not faile to feele the heauie effects of their iuſt furie. An heauie charge, yet glad was the Baſſa to vndergoe the ſame, to rid himſelfe out of their hands, where he ſaw himſelfe in greater danger, amongſt them,

Haſſan Baſſa after the winning of Alba Regalis honorably receiued at Conſtantinople

The Spahi and Ianizaries in mutiny, demand audience of the great Baſſas.

Haſſan Baſſa in great feare of his life

A them, moſt of whom had ſometimes ſerued vnder him, than amongſt ſo many his moſt mortal enemies: but what remedy, he muſt now ſo doe, or die therfore; for which he was the more to be excuſed. So in great feare comming vnto the great Sultan, almoſt as fearefull as himſelfe, he ſhewed vnto him the great daunger like euen preſently to enſue, by the mutinie of his beſt ſouldiours, and guarders of his perſon: perſuading him, betime to appeaſe their furie, before they had embrued themſelues with bloud; for feare of further danger like ynough to enſue, as well vnto his owne perſon as vnto the reſt of his moſt faithfull and truſtie councellours, from ſuch furious and headſtrong men, vp in tumult, with their armes in their hands. And although that a prince ought not for the greatneſſe of his eſtate to doe any thing as therunto forced by his ſubiects, leaſt in ſo doing he might breed in them a contempt of himſelfe,
B and encreaſe their inſolencie; that yet neuertheleſſe in this action being altogether extraordinarie, he was not to reſt vpon this point: for that theſe mutinous ſouldiors turned not their weapons (as they pretended) againſt his imperiall power and ſoueraigntie, but rather to the contrarie, againſt the contemners thereof, ſeeking to be reuenged vpon them that had done him ſuch euill ſeruice for the maintenance of his honour and maieſtie, and for the puniſhmẽt of the inſolent aud diſloyall. And that therfore the juſtice of the cauſe requiting and couering the malice of the fact, he was of opinion, That it were beſt for him to yeeld a little vnto the zeale of theſe his beſt ſouldiours; and to ſatisfie their juſt deſire, although they had by verie euill and vnlawfull meanes ſought for the ſame. And therefore aduiſed his maieſtie, in ſome ſort to ſatisfie the juſt complaints of theſe men, armed for the reuenge of his honour:
C an to chaſtiſe the chiefe commanders of his Aſian forces, ſuch as by whoſe trecherie or cowardiſe, his ſeruice being neglected, had armed theſe men againſt them: with the ſame hand puniſhing ſuch as had wronged his maieſtie in honour, & appeaſing the diſcontented for the good of his ſeruice. *Mahomet* thus by the Baſſa perſuaded, as alſo to ſhew himſelfe in his maieſtie vnto theſe his diſcontented ſubiects, one part of their deſire; the neceſſitie of the cauſe ſo requiring, in his imperiall ſeat preſented himſelfe vnto them, accompained with the Mufti (the great Mahometan prieſt) and ſome few others of the reuerend doctors of their law: who by the Sultan commanded to ſit downe, and the Baſſaes ſtanding vp (ſo great the reſpect is to men of that ſort, euen in a barbarous nation of ſo ſmall reſpect) the chiefe of the ſeditious ſtepping forth, demanded leaue to ſpeake both for himſelfe and the reſt. Which being gran-
D ted, he boldly thus began.

Haſſan Baſſa perſuadeth the great Sultan to giue way vnto the Ianizaries, and to grant them their requeſt.

Mahomet by the perſuaſion of Auſſan Baſſa, ſheweth himſelfe vnto the mutenous ſouldiors of the court.

Moſt happie and mightie Emperour, wee the Spahies and Ianizaries they obedient ſlaues, full of griefe and diſcontentment, to ſee a great part of thine empire in daunger to bee loſt; deſire to know of thee the cauſe, why thy greatneſſe doth not remedie it, and imploy the meanes which God hath giuen thee. They ſuppoſe that the rebels courſes in Asia *are vnto thee vnknowne, ſeeing they haue been ſo hardie as to come in armes ſo neere vnto thy imperiall citie, the place of thine abode, and that without any let or reſiſtance. They deſire to know, if all this haue beene made knowne vnto thee, and whether thou wilt take vpon thy ſelfe the care of the gouerenment of thy great Monarchie, or no: which through the negligent careleſneſſe, and euill gouernment of ſome by thee put in truſt, is like vnto a bo-*
E *die with great and well proportioned members, but of little or no ſtrength or power. Or elſe, that thou void of care, canſt be content that all ſhould be diſmembred, and ſo euerie man to take vnto himſelfe what he can lay hand of, as the rebels do in* Asia.

The proud and rude ſpeech of one of the mutiners vnto Mahomet the great Sultan.

Now let no man maruel at this preſumptuous rude ſpeech of a proud Ianizary vnto his ſoueraigne: for why, they are the men which may moſt boldly ſpeake in Tvrkie, they are the ſtay of the Turks empire, the great Sultans children acknowledging no other father but him: nay rather the great Turke himſelfe is their creature, for they raiſe him vp, & confirme him in the empire: they are his greateſt ſtrength, and vnto them he is moſt beholden. If *Mahomet* were with ſo inſolent a ſpeech much moued, he was not iuſtly to be therefore blamed: how-
F beit being beſet with ſuch a furious multitude, with weapons in their hands, and hauing no meanes to withſtand their furie, he wiſely diſſembled his inward choller, and with a faire coũtenance, and a maieſtie full of mildneſſe, with the beſt and calmeſt words hee could deuiſe, ſought to appeaſe them: imputing the diſorder and euill ſucceſſe of his affaires vnto the vnfaithfullneſſe of his miniſters, and the concealing of the truth therof from him. Saying more-

Sultan Mahomet with mild words ſeeketh to appeaſe the mutinous ſouldiors of the court.

ouer

ouer, That before this their complaint hee had reſolued to reſome theſe matters, and to take G
from them all ocaſion of diſcontentment, or for them to vſe any ſuch ſpeech as was not beſeeming them, whoſe obedience and reſpect of loyall duetie vnto him their ſoueraigne, ſhould haue been an example vnto all the reſt of his ſubiects. Vpon which ſpeech they fiercely demaunded of *Haſſan Baſſa*, Why he had not giuen an account vnto his maieſtie, of the rebels proceeding in Asia. Who anſwered, That he had neuer failed of his dutie therein, but that he had been alwayes hindred ſo to do by the Capi-Aga; ſaying, that it was not needfull to trouble him their ſoueraigne therewith, hauing committed theſe matters to others: but to reforme and amend them as well as they might otherwiſe, without giuing of him any ſuch diſtaſt concerning theſe matters. And farther, that the cauſe of all theſe diſorders proceeded
Haſſan Baſſa excuſeth himſelfe, and layeth the fault vpon the empreſſe, Mahomet his mother and the Capi-Aga. from the empreſſe his mother, the Capi-Aga, and ſome few others, vnto whom hee had com- H
mended the mannaging of thoſe his affaires. With which his anſwer the mutiners more moued, furiouſly ſaid, That they were thither aſſembled to demand the heads of ſuch offendors, being reſolued to take another courſe, if he ſhould refuſe to graunt it them: meaning thereby to make a new emperour. Whereunto for all that the great Sultan anſwered, That it was no reaſon, neither that he would for their humours put ſuch as they demaunded innocently to death: but willed them to reſt themſelues contented, vntill it might by order of iuſtice be tried whether they had deſerued death or no, & that then he would giue them euen his owne ſonne, if hee were found culpable. But the mutiners conſtant in their reſolution, againe replied, That he had not by iuſtice put his brethren to death, but for the preſeruation of the ſtate: and that thoſe whom they ſo demaunded, were ſo guiltie of that wherewith they were I
charged, as that they deſerued not to haue an orderly triall: That the lawes, how iuſt ſoeuer, ſhould be vnprofitable, and iuſtice iniurie, if they were not by them to be puniſhed: and that therefore it muſt needs be ſo, or elſe that they would take therein a courſe themſelues. As for the Empreſſe his mother, they were contented that ſhe ſhould bee confined into ſome place farther off, and no more to meddle in matters of eſtate. A ſtrange thing it was to ſee ſo great a prince ſo to be forced by the ſedition and mutinie of his ſubiects, to deliuer ſo great an officer of his Court as was the Capi-Aga, with ſuch others as they required, to bee vſed at their diſcretion. But they violent reſolution of theſe moſt inſolent men ſo vp in mutinie, made the Sultan *Mahomet* wiſely to yeeld to what they demaunded, cauſing the Capi-Aga and the o-
thers to bee brought foorth, who preſented themſelues vnto their furie, as men alreadie halfe K
The Capi-Aga with ſome others executed. dead. *Mahomet* did what hee might to haue ſaued them, but the mutiners with a great and dreadfull clamor ſtill cried out to haue them diſpatched: neither could they be appeaſed, vntill they ſaw their heads ſtrucke from their bodies. For the loſſe of whom, ſo deare vnto him, *Mahomet* inwardly grieued, to bee in ſome part reuenged, commaunded the executioner, to proceed, and to do vnto ſome other of the chiefe Baſſas (whom he knew to be much beloued and reſpected of the Ianizaries, and whom he could haue been content to haue been rid of) as he had done vnto the Capi-Aga and the reſt: but then the murmuring and mutinie of the
Mahomet glad to giue way vnto his mutinous ſouldiers. Ianizaries was in ſuch ſort encreaſed, and as it were redoubled, as that *Mahomet* was for feare forced with patience to temper his choller, and by giuing way ſo to appeaſe them. The em-
preſſe the Sultans mother, for all that was not then confined, but reſerued to the farther trou- L
bling of the ſtate.

Other cruelties of Sultan Mahomet. With like tyrannie, and no leſſe iniuſtice, *Mahomet* but a few dayes before had cauſed *Capin* one of his great Baſſaes to be beheaded; but whether it were for the deſire he had of his wealth and riches, or for the enuie of his honor and valour, was vncertain: howbeit the former cauſe ſeemed vnto many to bee the more probable, for that *Mahomet* immediatly after his death tooke the whole ſpoyle of his wealth, and ſeiſed vpon all his goods, except 400000 duckats which *Calil Baſſa*, father of the dead Baſſa, had detained for himſelfe. Which his purloyning *Mahomet* hauing diſcouered (as the eie of the couetous man is alwaies fixed vpon his prey) demanded one day of the Baſſa, if it were true that he had retained vnto himſelfe thoſe 400000 duckats. Which fact the Baſſa partly for feare, and partly for couetouſneſſe, conſtantly deni- M
ed, & ſwore himſelfe to be guiltleſſe from any ſuch crime. Whereupon he was forthwith taken, and thinking by lying to haue ſaued his life, was for the trueth put to death, without any farther examination of the matter, hauing his head ſtruck off. Such is the ſmal aſſurance euen of the greateſt that liue in tyrants courts. Neither reſted his greedie mind ſo contented with

the

A the Baſſaes bloud,for why,that ſerued but for a ſhew; it was his wealth muſt worke that cure, which was all forthwith ſeiſed vpon,rifled,and caried away to ſatisfie in effect the greedy appetite of the hungrie tyrant,who changed the dowry and ſucceſſion of the wife and children of the dead Baſſa,into bonds,chaines,priſons,and ſlaueries.

Mahomet another Baſſa with theſe cruelties diſmaied, and perceiuing the like euill hap and danger to hang ouer his owne head, that had ouerwhelmed *Calil* and his ſonne; reſolued to haue prouided for himſelfe againſt this miſchiefe,by flying vnto the rebels in Asia. But this his purpoſe diſcouered by certain ſpies(which ſerue as meanes to open a way vnto the Turks crueltie)and he with one of the chiefe followers of *Capin Baſſa* taken by the Ianizaries, were both by them cut in pieces. *Mahomet Baſſa by the Ianizaries ſlaine.*

B But whileſt theſe things thus paſſed at Constantinople,the rebels with all diligence proſecuted their rebellion in Asia,and bent their forces againſt the great townes there. Their armie was exceeding great, euerie man ioyning himſelfe vnto the firſt forces, which were in good eſtate,being not as yet by any greater power repreſſed, and rich with the ſpoiles that they had taken. Theſe men had beſieged Angore, a great and ſtrong towne in Asia, and ſeemed reſolutely ſet downe for the carrying thereof. Whereof the citizens being afraid,and out of hope of reliefe,came to parley,offring vnto them a ſumme of money to redeem themſelues and their citie: And ſo in fine agreed to giue them 200000 duckats, vpon the ready paiment whereof,the rebels without more ado preſently departed. *The ſucceſſe of the rebels in Aſia.*

Shortly after the new captaines of Sultan *Mahomet* arriued there alſo,whom he had placed
C in the places of them whom he had before executed for the appeaſing of the ſouldiors of the court,who would needs make it treaſon,and put to death the citizens, for hauing giuen ſuch money as is aforeſaid,vnto the rebels,though it were done for the preſeruation of their liues: as if the lawes were to be reſpected in the horrours of neceſſitie,or that life were to become a ſlaue vnto riches, and riches not made for the vſe of mans life. Well, needs they would for this ſuppoſed treaſon(as they pretended)haue put them to death, and ſacked their citie; but indeed all was in their greedie furie to haue carried away that which the rebels had in their mercie left them. Theſe poore citizens with this ſo cruell a reſolution diſmayed, and out of all hope of finding fauour at ſuch mercileſſe mens hands,reſolued now to hazard all, and ſo vpon the ſudden taking vp armes,ſtood vpon their own defence.Hereupon aroſe a great and
D cruell fight betwixt theſe ſouldiours and the citizens,both the ſubiects of one prince,and all of them of one and the ſelfeſame ſuperſtition: but the one ſide armed with pride and couetouſneſſe, and the other with neceſſitie and deſpaire: howbeit at laſt the iuſter cauſe preuailing, the citizens ouercame theſe new come ſouldiours,and hauing ſlaine a great number of them, chaſed the reſt out of the citie. This euill encounter of theſe new captaines euen at the firſt entrance into their charges giuen them,by the ſubiects themſelues, encreaſed the rebels courage, ſo that they being in number fourtie thouſand,vnder the leading of one of the Tartar Han his brethren, beſieged Bvrsa a great and rich citie,being the ſtore-houſe for the warlike prouiſions of Asia,and the place whereunto the Turkes cuſtomes, taxes, and ſubſidies of Asia were brought,and there kept. Theſe men after certaine dayes beſtowed in the
E ſiege,and great reſiſtance made by the beſieged, at length by force carried the place,ſlew the inhabitants,& ſacked the citie.Which exploit gracing their fortune with honour and bootie, encreaſed alſo their power and reputation, ſo that redoubled on all ſides, and encreaſed with courage & ſpoiles,*Mahomet* diſmaied,reſolued by faire means to appeaſe them,and to intreat with them of peace. This good fortune had drawne vnto their part the Gouernour of Babylon,either weary of the ſeruice of the Turk,or deſirous by the ruine of the ſtate in generall,to increaſe his own power: whoſe reuolt greatly increaſed the rebels power,and diminiſhed the grand Seigniors. Beſide theſe miſhaps alſo,the great Shaugh of Persia(commonly called the Sophy)thruſting himſelfe into theſe diſorders,to make his gain,and to fiſh(as they ſay)in
F a troubled water,had now taken Corberie,a ſtrong town vpon the borders of the Turks empire,& was making himſelfe ready for new conqueſts.All which tempeſts ariſing as it were in one together, cauſed *Mahomet* to ſtrike ſaile,and maugre his imperiall dignitie and honour to ſeek for peace;which indeed could not be great in ſuch weaknes of his nature, neither braue in ſuch his great want of courage. For great dignities and honours without valour to maintaine them,are but like rich garments which couer bodies almoſt rotten, but heale them not. *The Turkes together by the eares amongſt themſelues.*

Mahomet

Mahomet desirous to come to some good agreement with his rebellious subiects, at length, G
but not without his great dishonour, obtained the same; graunting vnto them all their demaunds, disarming them by yeelding vnto them, and not by valour: and giuing vnto *Zellalie* one of their chieftaines, the honorable place of the Bassa of Bosna, to content his ambition, and to bind him therewith to doe his seruice. The readie way by sufferance to encrease the disloyall subiects courage, instead of stopping their furie by the seueritie of iustice: For to grace a rebell with offices of authoritie, is but to arme him with lawfull power, for him the better to vndertake whatsoeuer shall best fit his appetite and desire, vpon the hope of his own priuat and certaine profit or aduancement.

The captaines and souldiors murmure against their Sultan Mahomet.

Mahomet his other captaines and men of warre, seeing this dishonourable peace of their prince, and preferment of the rebels, honoured with honours and dignities, in stead of paines H
and punishments which they should of right haue for their rebellion indured; began to enter into great murmuring and discontentment against their great Sultan. They considered his vniust dealing and base feare, in aduancing the rebels vnto such honours and dignities, as of right belonged vnto his most faithfull and loyall officers and seruants, by such their vnworthie preferments making them slaues vnto his enemies, and vassales vnto the rebels: they, to their dishonour and losse, by their insolencie and treacherie, enioying the honors and preferments of right due vnto their faithfull and loyall seruices. Which daungerous persuasions transported them so farre from their allegeance and dutie, as to vndertake a greater and more perillous matter against his crowne and dignitie, than had the rebels before by taking vp of armes in the field against him, whereunto the assured knowledge they had of his cowardise I
encouraged them also: so that their resolution was to thrust him out of his imperiall state, and to set vp his eldest sonne called also *Mahomet* in his place. These are the ordinarie effects of iniustice and cowardise, the ouerthrow of princes; their iniustice through crueltie arming all creatures against them; and their cowardise through contempt dispensing with euery man for his duetie: so that he must be iust, that will keepe his subiects in order; and valiant, that must hold them in awe.

Mahomet in danger to haue been deposed from his empire and his eldest sonne set vp in his place.

Vnto these discontentments these mutiners ioyned also (as I said) the slothfulnesse, effeminateness, and insufficiencie of *Mahomet*, vnfit to deale in matters of estate, and altogether vnable to mannage armes. He was too cowardly, as they thought, to represse their valour by force, and too weake to crosse their designes by wisdome: which not a little encouraged them K
in that their so desperate and dangerous a resolution. They drew also into this their plot the Sultaness, *Mahomet* his chiefe wife, and mother to the yong prince: who blinded with ambition (the bane of great spirits) had not the hap to reiect their persuasions, as dangerous vnto her and her sonne, but shutting her eyes against the due consideration of loyaltie and duetie, cast both her selfe and her sonne headlong into the middest of most desperat dangers.

This proiect of no lesse importance, than of the deposing of one of the greatest Monarchs of the world) resolued vpon, some of these men, according to the manner of the Turkes, ioyning superstition vnto their designes, consulted with an Astrologer, concerning the successe of the actions of the young prince, whom they were about to enstall in his fathers imperiall throne. This man to be excused in his trumperies, seeing that to deceiue is the chiefe point L
of his art, erected the figure of the princes natiuitie, consulted with his spirits, considered the celestiall bodies, and in fine arriued at the poynt of his iudgement, for the good and welfare of the prince: and thereupon dispatched an Eunuch towards the Sultaness, with these pleasing speeches, That she should be of good courage, and in assured hope that the yong prince her sonne within a few dayes should haue the imperiall crown set vpon his head, and the roiall scepter put into his hand: his art (as he said) promising vnto him these honours, by the fauour of the celestiall bodies, of whom he had learned these newes; and by the conference with spirits, from whom he had this assurance. But ô the vaine and foolish knowledge of man against God! attributing vnto the second causes, that which altogether belongeth vnto his owne power, robbing him of his own prouidence, which extendeth ouer all, to giue the same
vnto creatures, which neither haue their owne being, neither are able of themselues to bring M
forth, or to worke any effects at all without it: And that more is, to giue certaine credit vnto the enemie of all faith and beliefe, euen to the father of leasing, who taketh as much glorie in falshood, as God himselfe doth in truth; as being the proper marke of his power. For it chanced

A ced that theſe letters ſent by the Eunuch to the Sultaneſſe, were intercepted & brought vnto *Mahomet* the great Sultan, whom they moſt concerned: wherupon it ſo fel our, that he which tooke vpon him to foretell the long life and empire to befall to another man, could not foreſee the end of his owne life, which followed him faſt euen at the heeles, being himſelfe by the commaundment of the great Sultan, with the young prince, the Eunuch, and fiftie others of the conſpirators, & ſuch as were conſenting vnto the conſpiracie, moſt cruelly ſtrangled, and the Sultaneſſe her ſelfe drowned. Howbeit ſome report this young prince to haue bin ſtrangled vpon ſuſpition of conſpiring againſt his father with the rebels of Asia: which after his death being found not to be ſo, the Baſſa, which put that ſuſpition into *Mahomets* head, to haue bin therefore worthily hanged. But with theſe contentments taken from the croſſes of

Mahomet cauſeth his eldeſt ſonne with diuers others to be ſtrangled.

B our enemies, let vs againe returne into Hvngarie.

The laſt yeare ended with the great bruit of the comming of the Tartar Han with a great armie into Hvngarie, and now he had diſpatched his embaſſadors towards the king of Polonia, to demaund of him tribute, and paſſage through his countrie. Great and proud demaunds to be both at once required. But the king of Polonia requited him againe with the like, denying him both the one and the other, roughly anſwering of his threats. Which ſo reſolute and blunt a refuſall, cauſed the proud Tartar to change his intended courſe, and for feare of being defeated by the Polonians in paſſing through their countrie (as the Tartars had often beene) before he could come into Hvngarie, tooke another way, and turned with his armie toward Valachia. Of whoſe comming, *Radul* the Vayuod vnderſtanding,

The Polonian denieth the Tartars paſſage through his countrie into Hungarie.

C and that beſide the forraging of his countrie, they had a purpoſe to diſplace him, & to ſet vp another Vayuod in his ſtead; with great diligence gathered togither the greateſt power that he could, and ſo marched vnto the borders of his countrie, there to attend the comming of theſe Tartars, and to ſtay them from entring. Which in effect fell out according to his deſire: for the barbarous people being arriued, and attempting with all their force to haue entred, were by this little armie encountred, which comaunding the countrie, tooke all the aduantages of the ſtrait paſſages, and there notably repulſed the fierce enemie. Two of the firſt encounters fell out fortunatly vnto the Valachians, who therein ſlew about three thouſand of the Tartars, whoſe auantguard for all that ſtill came on, and at the third encounter ſo long maintained the fight, that their whole armie was now come in, and hardly charged the Va-

Diuers hard cõflicts betwixt the Tartars and the Valachies in their paſſage through Valachia.

D lachians: whoſe fortune ſurcharged, began then to change, the hardie being conſtrained to bow vnder the multitude, & valour forced to yeeld vnto number. Which was not done without a long and cruell fight, both armies encountring with great courage and furie, the one for the defence of their countrie, and the other for an entrance vnto their conqueſts. Howbeit the ſtrong enemie at length preuailed, and entring into Valachia, brought in with it ruine, death, and deſtruction.

The Tartars hauing by force thus opened themſelues a way through Valachia, and grieuouſly ſpoiled the countrie, were come with their armie to Qvinqve Ecclesiæ, a towne in Hvngarie, to ioine their forces with *Haſſan Baſſa*, now after his mariage returned into this countrie with a great armie to continue his charge: Who cauſed the Tartars to bee muſtered in his preſence, and found them to be fortie thouſand ſtrong. Men of great courage a-

The Tartars in Hungarie.

E gainſt the weake, but meere cowards before the couragious: who in ſteed of aſſaulting the wals of any ſtrong towne, fell vpon the cottages of poore countrie villages, ranſacking and pilling the poore inhabitants, as well in the villages of the territories ſubiect vnto the Turks, as in the territories of the Chriſtians: conſtraining the poore people contrarie to their conſcience, and to the preiudice of their faith, to ſweare to ſerue the Turke: Beſides that, they enforced them to furniſh them with all warlike prouiſion and munition, which they put into Canisia, but a while after that our men had defeated the garriſon there. Neither were they ſo contented, all the neighbours thereabouts being ſubiect to this tempeſt. For they paſſed into Syria with their families, and ouerran a part of that prouince, ſpoiling it of men

Great ſpoyle made by the Tartars in Hungarie, Stiria, & Shauaria.

F cattell, and goods; leauing in ſtead of them deſtruction, miſerie, and death: and carried away with them two thouſand poore Chriſtians for ſlaues, whom they ſold vnto the Turkes, and made great profit of them. From thence they went into the countrie of Shavarie, embruing themſelues with the bloud of the Chriſtians, rifling their villages, and after that burning them; carrying away with them a thouſand Chriſtian captiues into moſt miſerable

bondage and ſlauerie. Which cruell outrages afterward thruſt the valiant Colonell *Collonitz* into the field againſt theſe barbarous people, to ſtay their incurſions, and to defeat them if he could. G

Collonitz oppoſeth his forces againſt the Tartars.

This worthie commaunder had but a few daies before been much troubled in appeaſing the French light horſmen in garriſon in the villages about ROQVESBVRG, riſen vp in mutinie for their pay: whoſe hote and moued ſpirits he by his wiſdome ſo calmed, as that they were content to be againe ſworne vnto the emperor, and ſo ioined themſelues vnto the armie of *Collonitz*, which was then 10000 good men ſtrong.

In the meane time the Tartars greedie of prey, and ſtill ſeeking after bootie, ranſackt and ſpoyled fiue and twentie countrie villages about VERADIN; all which they afterward burned alſo, carrying away with them a great bootie both of men and cattell, no man reſiſting them. At which time other companies of them alſo inuading the Countie *Serin* his iſland as farre as RACKENSPVRGE, made in it great ſpoyle, as had their fellowes elſewhere, and beſide other bootie, carryed away with them two thouſand Chriſtian captiues. Theſe outrages of the Tartars armed the Countie on the one ſide, and *Collonitz* on the other: who couragiouſly oppoſing themſelues againſt theſe Barbarians, for a time ſtayed their incurſions, they not daring to abide the force of this little armie, ſufficient ynough by the valour thereof to haue ouerthrowne that of their enemies, for number dreadfull. This made them to turne their courſe another way into SCLAVONIA, being in number fiue and thirtie thouſand men, leauing nothing behind them there but death and deſolation, for the number of priſoners and great booties, which they carryed from thence. Amongſt other their ſpoyles, it was their fortune by the way to meet with ſixe hundred of the Chriſtian ſouldiors, of whom not one eſcaped their hands, but were ſlaine euerie mothers ſonne. At length it fortuned, that certaine of their troupes in roaming abroad, fell into the danger of Countie *Serin*, who with his followers ſtill houered a loofe off, for feare to bee of their great multitude ouerwhelmed: a part whereof now falling into his hands, were by his ſouldiours ouerthrowne and all cut in pieces, and a number of Chriſtian captiues by them taken, deliuered out of chaines, and ſet at libertie. Which exploit was greater for the feare it brought vpon the enemie, than for the ſlaughter there made. For the Tartars ſtill in doubt, to meete againe with the Chriſtian troupes (who left not one of them aliue that they could light vpon) were glad now to keep themſelues cloſer togither, and ſo did a great deale the leſſe harme than when they without feare roamed vp and downe at their pleaſure: ſo that euen by this little victorie the countrie receiued ſome comfort, and the earle greater honour. Small helpes being infinit treaſures in time of neceſſitie, which out of it would not bee to bee reckoned of. H I K

The Tartars repreſſed by countie Serin.

The garriſon ſouldiors of CANISIA of late defeated by *Collonitz* in going to meet the conuoy comming towards them with victuals (as is before declared) the reſt of the garriſon deſirous to be reuenged, were coſulting of the meanes, how to bring the ſame to paſſe. It fortuned, that at the ſame time there was a fugitiue Chriſtian ſouldiour in the towne, who made ſhew of a man malecontent, deſirous to turne Turke: of whom the Turkes made much reckoning, for that he ſeemed to know much of the deſignes of the Chriſtians, and the meanes how to croſſe them: Whereof hee ſo aſſured them, as if the matter had beene now alreadie done; promiſing to bring them euen into the middeſt of the Chriſtian campe, and to deliuer it into their hands and power. Howbeit his meaning was nothing leſſe: for ſeeing the Turkes much buſied with carrying in of victualls into the caſtle, brought into the towne after the ouerthrow of their fellowes before ſent foorth for the bringing in thereof, and wholly intentiue to that buſineſſe; knowing the place in the caſtle where the powder and munition lay, he at the ſame time by a traine layed fire thereunto, and afterward amiddeſt the tumult and the ſturre, by a loope in the wall, got himſelfe out of the towne, and came to *Collonitz*, who with his troupes lay neere there by in ambuſh, expecting the opportunitie to performe ſome notable exploit, vpon the ſucceſſe of ſo daungerous an aduenture, whereunto hee had before beene made priuie. Neither fayled the fire any thing of the accuſtomed violence thereof, but ſeemed rather to redouble the ſame, it had ſo ſuddenly conſumed the buildings, munitions, & perſons. All the place felt the furie thereof, the cannons, cannoniers, ſouldiours, and whatſoeuer elſe, was ſubiect L M

A notable exploit done by a fugitiue Chriſtian.

vnto

A vnto this dreadfull blaſt: all was ſhaken and turned vpſide down, yea the fire burſt out of the caſtle, and burnt the greateſt part of the towne alſo. There was a confuſion of feare, miſhap, and miſerie together, the terror whereof cauſed many of the Turkes to caſt themſelues ouer the wals, in hope ſo to haue ſaued their liues. But whileſt they thought ſo to haue eſcaped the danger of the fire, they preſently fell vpon the edge of the ſword: for meting with the ſouldiours of *Collonitz*, who lying in ambuſh neere there by, awaited the opportunitie in that ſo confuſed a tumult to haue ſeiſed vpon the place, they were all either taken priſoners, or ſlaine. But ſee the happe, how one croſſe chance of fortune ouerthrewe this ſo notable a deſigne, as had it beene well followed, might in one moment haue recouered that ſtrong
B place which had before for the ſpace of many dayes endured the greateſt forces of the *Othoman* Emperours; neither yet was then ſo loſt, but through the infamous trecherie of our owne men.

Aſſine opportunitie for the reconery of Canisia ouerſlipped through the diſloyaltie of the French and Wallons.

You haue heard before how that *Collonitz* had by faire perſuaſions, rather than by true effects, appeaſed the French men and Wallons vp in mutinie for their pay; ſo that by him perſuaded, they had againe giuen their oath of fidelitie vnto the Emperour, and to follow his armie. But now when occaſion ſerued, and held out as it were both her armes vnto the Chriſtians, for the regaining and conqueſt of CANISIA, theſe Frenchmen and Wallons, the greateſt part of *Collonitz* his ſtrength, iniuriouſly refuſed her ſo faire an offer, and, at ſuch
C time as they ſhould rather haue fought naked, than haue failed in their duetie (it being to haue gained a moſt great and rich conqueſt) for want of pay (as they pretended) turned their backes, and being by no intreatie or perſuaſions to bee mooued, to the diſcouragement of the reſt, who were better minded, and their owne eternall infamie, withdrew themſelues from the armie: So that *Collonitz* rather by the wicked vnfaithfulneſſe of his owne diſloyall ſouldiors, than by the valour of his enemies, diſappointed of his purpoſe, was to his great diſcontentment, contrarie to that he hoped, enforced to retire, without any thing more doing.

The Tartars defeated by the Huſſars of the lord Nadaſti.

While this exploit ſo well begun, but euill performed, was in hand, the Turkes and Tartars aſſembled togither, made a cruell ſpoile in the countrie about RAB, euen almoſt vnto the gates of the towne, carrying away with them a great number both of men and beaſts.
D In fine, it chanced that the Huſſars of the Lord *Nadaſti* came that way, who vnderſtanding what hae happened, with all ſpeed made after theſe robbers, ouertooke them in their retreat neere vnto ALBA REGALIS, ſlew a great number of them, and enforced the reſt to leaue a great part of their prey behind them. With which bootie recouered euen out of the Lyons mouth, they returned to RAB, of whom the poore inhabitants and countrie people, with teares ſtanding in their eyes, requeſted to heue againe their owne goods. But warre the enemie of charitie, and nurſe of barbarous crueltie, had ſo hardened the hearts of theſe men of warre, as that they were not to bee mooued to reſtore them their cattell againe, but that they muſt redeeme them for preſent money, which they did, and ſo receiued them.

2000 Turks defeated by Collonitz

E Now the noble *Collonitz* ſeeing himſelfe ſo ſhamefully forſaken of his owne ſouldiours, and diſappointed of his purpoſe; and the Turks and Tartars in great numbers comming to the reliefe and repairing of this ſo ſore ſhaken towne; and out of hope to do any good thereon, full of griefe and indignation returned towards COMORA. And howbeit that euill hap had cruelly fruſtrated the glorie of his enterpriſe, yet the heauens in deſpight of fortunes frown, left not this noble and valiant captaine altogither without honour, but as amorous of his vertues and valour, preſented vnto him in this Winter of fortunes diſpleaſure, ſome tro-
phies of glory. For vpon the way as he was returning home, he met with two thouſand Turks,
F whom after ſome ſmall reſiſtance he cut all in pieces: meſerable ſacrifices appointed vnto the furie of his wrath. In this fight their enſignes were all taken, and a number of priſoners, the chiefe of whom togither with the enſignes, he ſent to PRAGE, as a preſent for the emperor, and a token of his good ſeruice.

The report then was, That the Turkes and Tartars with their vnited forces had forraged SCLAVONIA, taken diuers ſtrong holds, burnt a number of villages, and carryed away eight thouſand Chriſtians priſoners, beſide a great number moe ſlaine with the ſword, or conſu-

med with fire; and all the cattell of the countrie driuen away: and that being with this booG
tie come to QVINQVE ECCLESIÆ, they had there receiued commaund with *Mahomet Bessa* to besiege COMORA, and that all the commaunders of the Turks armie were thereupon resolued. All which reports no whit dismaied the valiant *Collonitz*, or any thing altred his designes, but hauing fortified COMARA against the intended siege of the Turkes, and taken from thence foure culuerins, according to a former purpose by himselfe intended, resolued now to take from the Turks the castles of LOQVA and BOVLONNEVAR, the garrisons wherof greately annoyed the territories of the Christians, and hindred the designes of this great captaine. These two castles are situat vpon a great marish which seperateth HVNGARIE from RASCIA, and are therefore as bounders of HVNGARIE, and strong ynough to be defended against a small armie. H

The castle of Loqua besieged by Collonitz.

Vpon which resolution he set forward with his small and valiant power, & the fourth day arriued within the sight of LOQVA, a castle well manned, and furnished with all things necessarie for the defence therof. The armie lodged, *Collonitz* by a drum summoned the besieged to yeeld vp the place, with promises of courtesie if they should now accept of the same whilest it was offered them: Which they stoutly refused to do, swearing to the contrarie, That they would die and liue within those their walls. *Collonitz* seeing them so resolued, first caused a mill to be assaulted, which placed ouer against the castle, and well fortified, serued it in stead of a bulwarke, and seemed hard to be taken: howbeit his men, loath to haue their good fortune euen in the beginning checked, gaue thereunto so braue an assault, that after the enemie had done what he could for the defence thereof, they became masters of the place, carried I
it, and therein lodged. But finding it daungerous to bee kept, and to stand them in small stead, they set it on fire, and afterward planted foure culuerins in batterie before the castle. But as they were thus busied, the Turks couragiously sallyed out vpon them, not doubting to aduenture themselues, for the hope they had to bee in short time by their great armie relieued. In this sallie they met afront with the Haiduckes, whom they fiercely charged, and so gauled them, that hauing slaine thirtie of them, they retired without any losse, forthwith discharging so many thundering shot and arrowes vpon our men, as that they well knew not how to saue themselues from the daunger of them, in such sort, that all the waies to approch the place being stopped, they began to deuise how to set the castle on fire: which they by certaine fire workes attempted, but to small purpose; the fire being no sooner kindled, but that K
it was forthwith by the Turks quenched. This done, and our men disappointed of their hope, they deuised to set fire vpon the timber which ioined the palisadoe to the castle stretching toward the port. Which their attempt sorted but to small effect also, the fire burning but slowly to do the enemies any great harme. All which deuises failing, they resolued by plaine force to assault the castle, and to scale the same. Which enterprise resolued vpon, the Haiduckes carrying before them certaine strong and thicke plankes of wood, in stead of targuets, to defend themselues from the small shot and arrowes of their enemies, by this deuise gained the palisadoe placed vpon the ditch: and being there in some safetie, with their muskets and harquebusies so applied the besieged, that they draue them from their curtaines, and made that they durst no more shew themselues vpon the wals. And immediatly L
after two companies of the Haiduckes placed ten ladders against one of the towers of the castle: and so with their ensignes in their hands, couragiously mounted the ladders, in hope to haue gained the place. But the Turkes as men resolued to die and liue in their castle, valiantly repulsed those Haiduckes, and by force drew in vnto them from off the ladders the two ensigne-bearers of the Haiduckes; whose heads they cut off, and cast them downe vnto their fellowes which were yet comming vp the ladders: and the two ensignes so gained vpon the wals, they placed in the middest of their owne, as the trophies of the spoiles of them who would haue spoiled them. With which so great courage of the enemies, and death of their fellowes, our men not a little dismaied, kept themselues close at the foot of the wall, as M
afraid any farther to force the place, which to their losse they saw stored with such valiant men to defend it.

Notable resistance made by the besieged Turkes.

Collonitz perceiuing this discomfiture of these men, and wel assured that the castle was not but by valour to be woon, immediatly drew out of euery companie of the Countie *Ringraue*, cer-

A cermine of the beſt and moſt reſolute ſouldiors, to renew the aſſault: Which ſo honourable a charge they cheerfelly vndertooke, and as men of courage began foorthwith to mount the ladders. Which the Haiduckes beholding, againe tooke courage, and partly aſhamed of themſelues, and partly to be partakers of the ſpoile and prey, if they ſhould preuaile, did what they might for the winning the place, ſtriuing now who ſhould do beſt. Which aſſault was with ſuch furie and preaſe of men maintained, that the Turkes not able longer to withſtand ſo great forces, were conſtrained to yeeld both themſelues and their caſtle vnto the furie of their angrie enemies. Which caſtle indeed coſt much Chriſtian blood, but yet more of the Turkes: For the Haiduckes armed with rage and reuenge, ſlew almoſt all in the caſtle, as well Raſcians as Turks, and tooke the reſt priſoners. Among others there was an Hungarian renegate there taken, whom for haſt they beheaded, being not at leaſure to empaile him, B the ordinarie puniſhment for ſuch faithleſſe miſcreants. But during this ſpoile made by men chafed with furie, the wind and fire were on their part exerciſing of their rage alſo. For the fire which they had caſt vpon the paliſadoe, and which they had before neglected, as of little or no force, now encreaſed with the wind, by little and little getting hold of one thing after another, hauing burnt the paliſadoe, got hold of the caſtle alſo. Whereunto the ſouldiours loaded with prey and bootie (the things they moſt deſired) had no regard at all: ſo that the fire vtterly conſumed the caſtle, with whatſoeuer elſe had eſcaped their greedie hands.

The caſtle of Lequa by the Chriſtians taken and ſacked.

The Turks in garriſon at Bovlovvenar, a fortreſſe but a league diſtant from this burnt C caſtle, ſeeing theſe flames of fire, and doubting what might betide themſelues, began to conſult what courſe were beſt for them to take, as either to attend the comming of the enemie, and ſo to abide the chance of war, or elſe betimes to prouide for themſelues by flight: the conſideration of their honour and duetie perſuaded them to ſtay, but the ruine of their neighbours, as ſtrong and valiant as themſelues, perſuaded them otherwiſe. In fine, the care for the preſeruation of their liues preuailed, and the reſolution was, That they ſhould flie. And ſo putting all their houſhold-ſtuffe and goods into certaine boats there readie vpon the lake, they by the middeſt thereof fled: fooliſhly perſuading themſelues, that our men comming thither, and finding nothing there, would not long there ſtay, but bee gone; after whoſe departure they might as they thought returne againe vnto their old dwellings, and in D the meane time hid themſelues in the mariſh vntill that the enemie were paſt. But our men comming thither, and finding no man in the caſtle, neither yet any thing elſe that could well be carried away, wondered to ſee that there were any men ſo cowardly, as for feare to abandon ſuch a place, as for the ſtrength thereof might haue been an example to others, to ſtand vpon their guard and defence: and ſought out euery corner thereabout, to find out whither theſe Turks were fled. At laſt after much diligent ſearch, they found certaine boats, which the Turks had ſunke in the channell neere vnto the caſtle gate, which cauſed them to thinke that they were fled by water, and happily were in ſome place not farre off. Theſe boats were forthwith drawne vp out of the water, and found furniſhed with oares, and ſuch other things as belonged vnto them. Which done, *Collonitz* choſe out certaine of the moſt valiant and re-E ſolute of the Haiducks, whom he commanded in thoſe boats to follow after the Turks in the lake. Who accuſtomed to ſuch exploits, and not ignorant of the places and ſecrets of their countrie, went aboord, and did as they were commanded. Neither had they gone paſt two leagues vpon the lake, but that they diſcouered a partie of theſe fugitiues hid in a little iſland, awaiting the end of this tempeſt, to recouer againe that which they had forſaken. The Turks diſmaied with the ſight of theſe men, & forced by neceſſitie to ſtand vpon their guard, welcomed them with certaine little faulcon ſhot, which they had brought with them in their boats, thinking ſo haue hindered them from landing. But they were too well acquainted with ſuch muſick, to be moued therwith: beſides that, the deſire of the bootie which was by the Turkes brought out of the caſtle into the iſle, exceedingly animated them for the gaining F therof: ſo that all fear of danger ſet apart they landed in the iſle. Whom ſo landing, the Turks with great courage receiued, ſo that betwixt them was fought a greater fight than is for ſo ſmal a number on both ſides to be beleiued, only valour & not number holding the balance of the victorie. But in the end the chiefe of the Turkes, and he which was their Gouernour in Bovlovvenar, ſlaine, the reſt diſcouraged, came to parley, yeelding themſelues with their

The Turkes for feare forſake the caſtle of Boulounenar.

The Turkes fled out of the caſtle of Boulounenar ſurpriſed and ouerthrowne.

their wiues and children, and all that they had, as a prey vnto the victors. The prisoners were brought backe againe vnto the castle, vntill the next day, that our men hauing put a good and strong garrison of foure hundred Haiduckes, and two hundred Hussars into BOVLOVVENAR, with their prisoners and their bootie returned toward COMORA: where they, notwithstanding diuers reports of the assembly of the Turks garrisons for the surprising of them vpon the way, in safetie arriued, with a rich bootie, and a number of wagons loaded with the spoiles of their enemies. The emperour had for his part thirteene ensignes, beside the places woon; which being nigh vnto CANISIA, much bridled the spoilings and incursions of that garrison. G

Moyses by Basta ouerthrown flyeth vnto his strong castle of Solomose.

But leauing these endlesse troubles of HVNGARIE for a while, let vs now againe looke into TRANSYLVANIA, to see what they there do. *Moyses* the rebell by *Basta* the emperours lieutenant (as we haue before said) ouerthrowne, and disappointed of his hope, betooke himselfe vnto a strong castle of his owne, called SOLOMOSE, there in feare attending the finall successe of his affaires. *Basta* in the meane time being as wise to make vse of his victorie, as he was valiant to obtain the same, subdued the rest of the countrie, repressed the rebels, stopped the way of sedition, and put *Moyses* in despaire of all safetie. Who seeing himselfe brought vnto such extremitie, offered to yeeld his castle vnto the Turks, and so without farther acquainting of any man with his purpose, thrust himselfe with his wife and familie, and all the rest of his substance into TEMESVVAR, a strong citie of the Turks not far off. Whom the Bassa in shew most courteously receiued, and the rather, for that he was in good hope to make a prey of the great wealth of this new come fugitiue. Who had not there long stayed, but that he had persuaded the captaine of GIVASGAR, a strong frontier castle there by, to deliuer the same vnto the Turks, and that without the priuitie of the garrison souldiours, for that he doubted that they would hardly be therunto drawn: who yet getting knowledge thereof, put their captaine in remembrance of his dutie, beseeching him not to draw such an infamie both vpon himselfe & them, by committing of so foule a fact. But afterward finding him resolutely set downe for the betraying of the castle, they suddenly laied hands vpon him, & struck off his head; and so with the bloud of their traiterous captain, hauing auerted the imminent danger, with great honour held the place. H I

He with his wife and familie flyeth vnto the Turkes.

Moyses now as he thought in safetie at TEMESVVAR, was yet still plotting how to trouble the state of TRANSYLVANIA, and to raise new stirs therein, and to that end sent a number of spies with letters of credence vnto the principall men of that countrie, assuring them of great and sufficient aid from the great Turke, if they would but take vp armes for their libertie (as he tearmed it) and shew themselues in field against the Imperials. Neither was *Basta* in the meane time careless of him, or negligent in his so waightie affaires; but knowing that he as a notorious rebell had yeelded his castle vnto the Turkes, and was himselfe retired vnto TEMESVVAR, forthwith made choice of six thousand of the best souldiours in his whole armie, and so set forward to besiege it: whom at his arriuall the Turkes there in garrison derided, in hope to frustrat his designes. For why, they thought that the castle seated vpon a steepe high hill, fortified with good and strong wals, enuironed with a broad and deep ditch, and not subiect vnto batterie, could not but with much labour, great daunger, and long time be gained out of their hands, it being impossible (as they supposed) for their enemies to make a breach or find an entrance thereinto. And indeed our men seeing the strength of the place, and the difficultie to force it, stood at the first as men dismaied at the foot of the hil where the castle stood; yet more discouraged with the impregnablenes of the place, than with the valor of the defendants. But what cannot industrie and valour do? in seeking about to find some means to make shew of their corage & valour, they discouered a little sharp steepe hill, ouer against the castle, from the top whereof the castle was to be battered, and the besieged distressed: But to bring the cannon thither, and especially with horses, was impossible, by reason of the steep roughnesse of the ascent thereunto, with broken and hanging rockes, ouergrowne with trees and bushes, as if it had been another Alpes, not but with fire and vinegre to be opened: yet in fine, our men resolued to gaine the place, did themselues that which their horses should haue done, but could not, & by force of hand drew their cannon vp to the top of the hill; and hauing planted it ouer against the midst of their enemies great ordnance, began to batter the castle: which done, they day & night made their approches, fortified their forts & K L M

Basta besiegeth the Turkes in the castle Solomose.

trenches,

A trenches, brought on their warlike munitions, and put all things in ſuch order, as if they would euen by plaine force haue carried the place. But the Turkes more admiring the valorous reſolution of our men, then reſolued themſelues vpon their reſiſtance, being not many in number within the place, and ſeeing themſelues to haue to do with men of inuincible courage, laying aſide both their hope and weapons, craued to come to a parley. Which graunted, it was at length agreed, That they ſhould deliuer vp the caſtle, leauing behind them their great ordnance, their munition, and enſignes, and ſo with their armes and lines only ſaued to depart. A great and glorious conqueſt got with ſmall charge; onely by reſolution gained by our men without perill: thoſe being indeed the true victories, which neither draw bloud out of the veines, nor teares out of the eyes.

The caſtle of Solomoſt by the Turks yeelded vp to Baſta.

B This ſtrong place ſo gained, contrary to the common opinion conceiued thereof, led the whole prouince as it were by the hand vnto the obeiſance of the emperour: in ſuch ſort, that *Baſta* hauing called together all the principall men of TRANSYLVANIA, declared vnto them the iuſtice of his cauſe, the right of the Emperour, with the malice and trechery of the Turkes and rebels: How they might liue in aſſurance with the one, and become miſerable with the others: That the Emperour was alwaies armed for their defence and health, deſiring nothing but their welfare and preſeruation; whereas their enemies to the contrarie ſought altogether their ruine and decay: That as they were not to expect light flames of fire out of the ſea, no more they were to looke for aid from thoſe their mortall enemies, whom they knew to haue before decreed to haue put them all to death, and to haue giuen their countrey vnto the Tar-

Baſta his admonitions vnto the of Tranſſiluania

C tars their enemies: That this diſaſter had not now beene to fall vpon them, either euer haue been by them perceiued, without the aid of the Emperour; who oppoſing himſelfe againſt this fire, had quenched it and put it out; preſeruing them with his great charge, and ſauing them euen in the middeſt of their greateſt perils and dangers: That they ſhould therefore remember theſe his ſo great benefites, to the intent to make him recompence according to the publique faith, which bindeth vs to the reward of good deſerts: and that all the recompence that the Emperour deſired, was the welfare of the eſtate, as concerning their owne good: inſomuch, that he deſired nothing of them but their obeyſance, for being bound to defend them and preſerue them to his power: whereby it ſhould come to paſſe, that he ſhould be ſatisfied for his trauels, and they preſerued from their enemies; the prince and the ſubiects to-

D gether iointly working their mutuall health and welfare, each of them according vnto their proportion, for that this mutual performance of dutie preſerued the ſcepter for the good gouernment of their eſtate. Whereunto their anſwere was, That they beſought him that their countrey might bee relieued from the croud and crueltie of the men of warre, and deliuered from the intollerable burthens of tributes, which ſo heauily oppreſſed it: That theſe obiects and inconueniences could not keepe them conſtant in their obedience, ſeeing that they both felt them, and receiued them from the hand of them, vnto whom they had yeelded their obedience, in hope to haue been by them relieued: That the new feeling of the wound did continually renew in them the hatred, and the obiect of their harmes ſtill kept both their eies and their minds occupied vpon them who were the cauſers therof; ſo that they could not well ei-

The anſwere of the Tranſyluanians vnto the admonitions of Baſta.

E ther looke vpon them, or make reckoning of them: That therfore it would pleaſe him to eaſe them of thoſe grieuances, in recompence whereof they would pay him 15000 Hungarian duckats yerely for to pay his men of war, and would farther furniſh them with all prouiſions neceſſarie; it being a thing more honourable and profitable alſo vnto a prince, moderatly to vſe his ſubiects means to keepe his ſtate in perpertuitie, than through couetouſnes to deuour them in one day, in their loſſe to vndoe himſelfe for euer. This their offer was by *Baſta* accepted, and the minds of theſe people by this contentment giuen them, kept in their dutifull allegeance and loyaltie vnto the Emperour.

But whileſt *Baſta* thus trauelled for the quieting of TRANSYLVANIA, *Moyſes* the rebell in the meane time was for his part no leſſe buſied for the diſturbing thereof againe; inſomuch, that hauing by the appointment of the Viſier Baſſa receiued tenne thouſand Tartars in his aid, and aſſiſted with a great number of Turks, he with enſignes diſplaied entred into TRANSYLVANIA, proteſting there to die, or to be reuenged of *Baſta*, who had before chaſed him out thence. And the better to effect this his troubleſome deſigne, he now had made choice of a moſt fit time for the performance thereof. *Baſta* vpon the truſt hee had of the publike faith

New enterpriſes by the rebell Moyſes in Tranſſluania.

He with enſignes diſplaied entred into Tranſſluania.

which

which he came to take of the Transyluanians, for their allegeance vnto the Emperor, which assured him from all stirres and tumults in that prouince, being with a smal power come from CLAVDIOPOLIS in HVNGARIE, and then lying at WISCEBOVRG, vpon the confines of HVNGARIE. Which his iourney, and the necessitie of his presence in HVNGARIE for the defence thereof, had caused the Transyluanians to beleeue, that he should for that yeare stay in HVNGARIE as Generall of the Emperours armie there. Vpon which persuasion of his absence many of them began againe to hold vp their heads, and to entertaine high conceits of new stirs, whereunto *Moyses* by his espials had prepared them, and now by his presence not a little encouraged: insomuch, that many as well of the nobilitie as others ioyned themselues vnto him, and increased his armie against the Imperials. G

Moyses with this power being come into the prouince, first forced a castle, about three leagues distant from WISCEBOVRG, and slew all the garrison therein. Which exploit encouraged him farther, full of hope in the absence of *Basta*; and seeing himselfe now the absolute master of the field, which he at his pleasure without resistance forraged, robbed, and spoyled, with his men loaded with bootie, besieged WISCEBOVRG, a little towne vpon the confines of HVNGARIE and TRANSYLVANIA, neither by art nor by nature strong, but exposed as a prey vnto him that is in the field strongest, if succours be not at hand to relieue it. Howbeit, weake as it was, it held out three weekes siege, and hauing a breach made in the walles, endured two assaults against all the forces of the rebell. After which the besieged thinking themselues to haue sufficiently discharged their duetie, in holding out so long, and enduring of so much, and out of hope to be relieued by the weake forces of *Basta*, came to parley with the enemie, and their liues and goods saued, yeelded vnto him the towne, and so departed themselues to VARADIN. H I

Wiscebourg besieged by Moyses

Wiscebourg yielded to Moyses.

Now, albeit that there were no great forces of the Emperours on foot in TRANSYLVANIA, yet the hungrie Haiduckes for all that fayled not to follow these warres, euen amidst the great clouds of their enemies, and were euer taking of some prey or bootie from the enemie, the chiefest and almost the onely meanes whereby they liue. In which doing, as they benefited themselues (the chiefe motiues of their aduentures) so they not a little eased the countrey, by repressing the excursions and pillages of the Turkes, whereof the countrey had endured the furie. Where, amongst other prisoners by them taken, it was their fortune to light vpon a Chiaus of the Turkes come from CONSTANTINOPLE, going toward the rebell *Moyses* from the Great Sultan *Mahomet*. Who by them examined, confessed, That *Moyses* was a man in great grace and reputation with his Lord and Master the Graund Seignior: And that hee was sent to assure him thereof; as also of all the needfull assistance of his Prince, if hee should faithfully and effectually serue him in TRANSILVANIA, and bring it vnder his subiection and power, as hee had promised and sworne. In which doing, he should not onely gaine the credit of a noble and faithfull seruant towards him, but should farther obtaine thereby the honour to bee the Lieutenant Generall of his armie in this Prouince; the Great Sultan (as hee said) hauing meanes as easie as wordes to aduaunce his faithfull seruitours, who might draw moe good fortunes in one houre out of this infinite source of felicitie and greatnesse, than they could in a thousand yeares out of the pouertie of the Princes of EVROPE. Hee sayd also, That the Great Sultan had on foot an armie of an hundred and fiftie thousand men strong, for the conquest of PESTH, and STRIGONIVM, furnished with all things necessarie, which had now alreadie turned head toward HVNGARIE, had it not been for the rebellion of some of his disloyall subiects, whom for all that hee would in short time chastise, and so turne his whole forces vpon the Emperour. K L

Moyses in great fauour with Mahomet.

Moyses prowd of his late conquest, and hauing found a great deale of great ordnance in WISCEBOVRG, resolued to prosecute his victorie, and to besiege *Basta* in SOMOSINNAR, whereinto hee had thrust himselfe, with the rest of his small forces. But *Basta* better acquainted with martiall affaires than hee, and knowing that a Generall departed from his charge, and brought to the mercie of a wall for his chiefe defence, hath lost his credit and reputation, with his friends, and they also all hope of safetie from him; thought it best first to take order for the strengthening of the place, so to put *Moyses* out of hope of the winning thereof, and afterward as he might to prouide for the safetie of himselfe and his. M

A Generall besieged looseth his reputation.

Where-

A Wherefore hee in good time aduertiſed the Gouernour of CASSOVA (who was neereſt vnto him) of *Moyſes* his deſignes, and of the neceſſitie wherewith he was himſelfe encloſed. Who forthwith conceiuing the conſequence of ſo great an exploit, as concerned both the loſſe of the place, and of ſo great a commander as was *Baſta*, a loſſe irreparable; preſently commanded ſix companies of horſemen to thruſt themſelues into the place, for the better defence thereof. Theſe horſemen either afraid of the rebels armie, or elſe fauouring his proceedings, without reſpect of that they had in charge, or of their honour (things deerer vnto men of worth than their liues) without any attempt at all giuen returned againe to CASSOVA; hauing with their pilfering and outrages by the way much offended and prouoked the minds of the countrey people by them ſpoiled. But being now better aduiſed, and repenting themſelues
B of their faults, and crauing pardon of their Gouernour, who was about with the reſt of his power to haue cut them in pieces, they offered him for ſatisfaction, ſix of the principall authors of their diſloyaltie; who were all forthwith executed, and their quarters (to the terrour of others) hanged vp vpon gibbets by the high waies ſide. But *Baſta* by their trechery lay in the meane time without ſuccour, forſaken by his friends, and the place wherein he lay in danger to be taken: when the Tranſyluanians dwelling neere thereby reſolued to relieue him as well for feare of the Turks bondage, as for the tyrrannie of *Moyſes*; one of whoſe Secretaries with letters of credence then threatened all the countrey with fire and ſword, and all kind of miſeries, if the inhabitants helped not with all their power to force the place, and to winne it. Which threats by *Moiſes* publiſhed before he had any abſolute power, diſmaied euery man:
C for why, they could not hope for any moderation or kindneſſe in the proſperitie of him, who in the time of his aduerſitie gaue ſuch apparent teſtimonies of his crueltie. So that the people doubting this angrie man, reſolued to preuent his ſo grieuous threats by relieuing of *Baſta*, who onely was able to ſtop him. Amongſt others, *Radul* Vayuod of VALACHIA mindful of the aid that *Baſta* had giuen him againſt the Tartars, and willing now as a friend to reach his hand in time of his ſo hard diſtreſſe, immediatly raiſed a power of eight thouſand Valachians, which he preſently ſent to the reliefe of *Baſta*. *Moyſes* aduertiſed of their comming, and farther vnderſtanding, that *Baſta* hauing wel fortified the place, was departed thence, hauing before his departure aſſuredly promiſed his men there left to relieue them, and that hee was now in the middeſt of the field gathering together his army, changed both his reſolution
D and purpoſe, of himſelfe raiſed his ſiege, and ſo departed. After which, miſhaps began to fall vpon him by heapes. The Turks forthwith forſooke him, taking their way to TEMESVVAR, whither they were by the Baſſa called backe, to repreſſe the Haiduckes, who were now euerie day euen at the gates of the citie. Theſe actiue and couragious men for their profit attending vpon all occaſions, knowing that the better part of the garriſon of TEMESVVAR was gone to aid *Moyſes*, vpon the ſudden had deſperatly aſſailed the ſuburbs of that ſtrong citie, ſlaine all that they found there, rifled them, and burnt them: and ſo loaded with a great and rich prey both of cattell and other things, returned to VERADIN, no man purſuing of them. And not ſo contented, were euery day abroad ſeeking after new bootie. Which was the cauſe that the Baſſa now called backe the Turks from *Moyſes* home againe into their garriſons.

E *Moyſes* notwithſtanding this departure of the garriſon Turks of TEMESVVAR, was yet maſter of the field, *Baſta* with his ſmall forces not daring to oppoſe himſelfe againſt him, yet by farre too ſtrong for him, the ſuccours from the Vayuod of VALACHIA being not yet come, which hee daily expected, howbeit that many hote skirmiſhes paſſed betwixt the ſtragling ſouldiors on both ſides, as they by chance met together roaming abroad in the countrey ſeeking after bootie. *Moyſes* therefore ſeeing not any ſufficient enemie to appeare in field able to ſtay him, laid ſiege to CLAVDINOPLE, a great but weake citie, and not very well manned; for that it was thought a place fitter by the weakneſſe thereof to weaken and deſtroy ſuch as ſhould vndertake the defence thereof, then ſufficient to bee maintained by their valour. Neuertheleſſe, the garriſon ſouldiors and the inhabitants (more to make a ſhew of their fidelitie
F and allegeance toward the Emperor, than for any hope they had to maintain the place) ſtanding vpon their guard & defence, *Moyſes* was conſtrained to plant his great ordnance againſt it, and to batter it, which he did, and in a very ſhort time with the furie of the cannon had betten downe the bulwarkes and flankers therof, and made a faire breach in the wall, ready now to haue giuen thereunto an aſſault, and to haue entred. Whereupon the beſieged not ignorant,

Baſta prayeth aid of the Gouernor of Caſſoua.

The Vayuod of Valachia ſendeth aid to the reliefe of Baſta.

Moyſes raiſeth his ſiege.

The Baſſa of Temeſwar calleth home his Turkes out of Tranſyluania, for therepreſſing of the Haiduckes

Claudinople beſieged by Moyſes

Claudinople yeelded to Moyses.

rant of their owne weakeneſſe, came to parley, and agreed to giue vp the citie, the citizens ha- G
uing their liues, goods, libertie, and religion ſaued, to ſtay there ſtill, and the ſouldiours with their armes and baggage to bee in ſafetie brought ouer the mountaines into ſome place of ſuretie. The taking of this citie much encouraged the rebell, reſolued there to make his reſi-ance, and the ſeat of his principalitie. Full eares of corne draw birds to pick vpon them, and the good fortunes of Generals ſouldiours to follow them: they forſake none but ſuch as are before forſaken of their better fortunes; to become ſlaues vnto gaine, and enemies vnto ho-nour. The Turkes and Tartars thirſting after theſe commodities, and allured with the ſmell of riches, repaired thither on euery ſide; in ſuch ſort, that the army of *Moiſes* increaſed in num-ber, his mind with hope, and his fortune with power. Armed with theſe aſſurances, he ſent for his wife and familie then at TEMESVVAR to come vnto him to CLAVDINOPLE, to bee parta- H

Moyſes ſendeth for his wife and family to Temeſwar.

kers with him of his good hap. And for that purpoſe ſent a conuoy of 400 Turks to conduct them on the way thither. Who being come to TEMESVVAR, and about to haue led the wife and familie of *Moyſes* out of the citie, were not ſuffered by the Ianizaries that had the guar-ding of the towne, ſo to do: who told them, That the great Sultan had in former times found ſo many diſloialties, trecheries, & treaſons in the Hungarians, Tranſyluanians, and Valachi-ans, to the great hurt and hinderance of his eſtate, that hee could no more aſſure himſelfe of

The Ianizaries of Temeſwar refuſe to deliuer Moyſes his wife and family.

them: and that doubting of the fidelitie of *Moyſes*, being a Tranſyluanian, he was reſolued to keepe this gage for his more aſſurance: aſſuring him withall, That his wife and family be-ing in his power, ſhould receiue nothing from him but fauour and grace, ſo long as he recei-ued from him the effects of his loyaltie, but that hee ſhould neuer hope to enioy them but in I
TEMESVVAR, or ſome other ſuch like place aſſured for his ſeruice. *Moyſes* aſtonied at this an-ſwere, was much mooued againſt the great Sultan, complained in his ſoule, that hauing ruí-nated his faith, his honor, and the welfare of his country, to aſſure him of his fidelitie towards him, he yet doubted of his conſtancie, as if all theſe crimes did not bind him to ſerue him with his perſon for euer, were it euen but for feare of puniſhment from them whom hee had ſo grieuouſly offended.

In the meane time the ſuccours ſent from the Vayuod of VALACHIA were vpon the bor-ders of TRANSYLVANIA vnder the conduct of *Marſa* the Vayuod his lieutenant, and *Baſta* was gathering together his forces, to recouer againe his former ſtate; expecting euery houre the comming of two thouſand horſemen out of SILESIA, with which vnited power hee was K
in good hope to diſcomfit the rebel, and to recouer his former loſſes. All which *Moyſes* by his eſpials right well knew, and for the remedie thereof reſolued to march with thirtie thouſand men to meet with the Valachians, and to cut them off, before they could come far into TRAN-SYLVANIA, or ioyne their forces with *Baſta*. For the furthering of which his purpoſe, he had learned the place whereby they were to enter, their number, and the way they were to hold, the better to conduct his armie againſt them; and being in number more than three to one, al-readie aſſured himſelfe of the victory. All which fell out according to his deſire: for the Va-lachians comming on, being in number but eight thouſand, fell as it were a prey into his mouth. For needs fight they muſt, or die therefore, although the number were vnequall; for that to flie was more dangerous vnto the Valachians (hauing the Turks and Tartarian horſ- L

The Valachians by Moyſes put to flight

men at their backes) than manfully to fight it out. Neceſſitie gaue courage vnto the weaker ſide, and feare cauſed them to performe more than they would haue done, had they had li-bertie to haue fled: yet for all that the greater number at length preuailed againſt the leſſe; ſo that after a great and mortall fight, wherein a great number of the Turks and Tartars were ſlaine, the Valachians in the end were enforced to leaue their dead companions, their ho-nour, and their tents, with all their baggage in the field, and to betake themſelues to flight; but not all in rout as freſh water ſouldiours, but with often making ſtands, as men diſdai-ning by true valour, but onely with number oppreſſed, to bee ouercome. The Rebels proud of their victorie, and now fearing no more harme, forthwith gaue themſelues to the rifling of the enemies campe, diuided the ſpoyle, and filling the heauens with the noyſe of their M
trumpets, publiſhing thereby the trophies of their victorie. Which diſorder the Valachi-ans perceiuing, and thereof conceiuing hope of ſome good to bee done, turned head, and ſerred cloſe together, couragiouſly thruſt themſelues into the middeſt of theſe proud and tri-umphant victors. Which vnexpected thunderclap ſo diſmaied them and troubled their wits,

that

A that ſurpriſed in diſorder, with their hands full of ſpoiles in ſtead of weapons, they could neither recouer their courage, nor put themſelues againe order. Such confuſion maketh men oftentimes to feele the blowes of death, before they bee aware of the arme that giueth the ſame: ſo, of theſe men ſo confounded, ſome ſtood as men amazed, otherſome ran away to ſaue themſelues, and otherſome ſtood vpon their defence, but all were alike ſlaine: ſo that in fine, this great armie was for the moſt part cut in pieces, and the reſt put to flight. *Moyſes* himſelfe was there among the reſt ſlaine, worthie for his treaſon to haue beene reſerued to a more ſhamefull death.

Moyſes with his army by the Valachians ouerthrowne, and himſelfe ſlaine.

Of this victorie the Vayuod by letters certified *Baſta*, to whom hee ſent fiue and twentie of
B the enemies enſignes for an honourable preſent, with this ioyfull newes of the death and ouerthrow of the rebell; whoſe bodie, as the Vayuod writ, was found dead among the middeſt of the dead, ſlaine euen at the firſt charge, wherein his guard was ouerthrowen. And for that it was commonly beleeued, that hee was not yet dead, neither preſent at that battell, as ſome had giuen it out, to manifeſt the contrarie vnto the world, and by his example to terrifie others, his head was vpon a launce ſet vp at CAROLSTAD for all men to behold: a preferment well beſeeming ſuch an ambitious head, as had made ſo great troubles, and beene the death of ſo many Chriſtians.

Moyſes his head vpon a lance ſet vp at Carolſtad.

This rebell ſuppreſſed, another by and by ſtart vp called *Albert Nage*, who gathering
C together the rebels of TRANSYLVANIA, mingled with certaine Turkes, Tartars, Coſſackes, and Moldauians, all together amounting to the number of ſix thouſand, made head toward LIPPA. Againſt whom, *Baſta* with all ſpeed ſent foorth three thouſand Haiduckes well acquainted with the countrey, which ſometimes ſerued them to better purpoſe than their armes, for that the rebels ſought not ſo much to come to a ſet battell, and to trie the matter by true valour, as by taking the aduantages of places to delay the time and gaine purchaſe, the chiefe end of their rebellion. Theſe rebels the Haiduckes ſurpriſed, neere vnto a caſtle called FERRE, where they meant to haue lodged, and charged them. Who ſo vpon the ſuddaine ouertaken, and ignorant of their enemies power, ſuppoſing them to haue beene in number moe than indeed they were, made ſmall reſiſtance, but as a many of raſcals, gathered by villanie, and without truſting of one another, by flight prouided euerie
D man for himſelfe as hee might. In which flight the greateſt number of them were ſlaine, and their chiefetaine with much adoe ſaued, to bee at another time for his euill deſerts iuſtly executed.

New rebels in Tranſiluania diſcomfited.

Baſta by theſe good haps, and the aid of the Vayuod of VALACHIA, being againe become maſter of the field, in very ſhort time after had againe reduced all TRANSYLVANIA vnder the Emperours obeyſance; vnto whom he together with the Vayuod, for an honourable preſent and a teſtimonie of their good ſeruice, ſent to VIENNA, and from thence to PRAGE an hundred enſignes gained from the rebels. All which, with ſome other rich ſpoiles, the maſter of the Ceremonies in great pompe and triumph led, together with *Moyſes* the late rebels horſe, exceeding richly furniſhed with furniture of pure gold, and was for his paines by the Emperor
E rewarded with a chaine of gold, ſent vnto him by the Countie *Fuſtenberg*.

An honourable preſent by the Baſta ſent vnto the Emperour.

The troubles of TRANSYLVANIA thus once againe quieted, *Baſta* reſolued to beſiege TEMESVVAR, with his power marched toward LIPPA, there to meet with the forces of the Vayuod of VALACHIA, the better to vndertake and performe the intended exploit. His armie conſiſted of twentie thouſand men ſtrong, carrying with them fiue and twentie pieces of great ordinance, furniſhed with all things neceſſarie. And of the enterpriſe it ſelfe euerie man had good hope, as well for the ſufficiencie of him the Generall that had vndertaken it, as for the want of reliefe that was not any way like to bee brought vnto the beſieged. But while hee ſo lay at the ſiege thereof, his ſouldiours too greedily and exceſſiuely feeding vpon fruit (whereof there was that yeare great ſtore) fell ſo into the bloudie flix, and thereof
F in ſuch number died (although he had giuen moſt ſtrait commaund, That none ſhould be eaten, or vpon great penalties be brought into the campe) that he was glad to riſe with his armie and be gone.

Whileſt this was in doing, the Countie *Solmes* lying in garriſon at CAROLSTAD, tooke vpon him to ſurpriſe WISCENBOVRG, and ſetting foorth but with foure hundred ſouldiours of his garriſon, with wonderfull diligence ſurpriſed the place, and without any great reſiſtance

Countie Solmes ſurpriſing Wiſcenbourg, is himſelfe taken priſoner.

reſiſtance became maſters therof. But the citizens ouer-grieued with the inſolent outrages of theſe men of war, opened the gates of their town vnto the rebels of TRANSYLVANIA, euen then fled from the late ouerthrow: who full of reuenge, tooke the place, and being too ſtrong for the Countie and his ſoldiors, made ſuch ſlaughter of them in the ſtreets (they of the town out of their windows, and from the tops of their houſes helping them) that of all thoſe which the Countie brought with him, there were but 60 left aliue; who all taken, were together with the Countie thruſt into a ſtrong and loathſome priſon. G

Now the bruit of the comming of the Turks great armie into HVNGARIE had awaked the Chriſtian forces to aſſemble themſelues together, and to doe their endeuour to withſtand the ſame; ſo that a number of companies were raiſed in GERMANIE, who came into HVNGARIE, marching toward STRIGONIVM, where the armie was to be aſſembled. The good ſucceſſe of things paſt, the opinion men had of the Turkes troubles with his rebels, and the great promiſes of the Emperour, drew many into theſe liſts of honour; in ſuch ſort, that there was come together an armie of fiue and twentie thouſand foot and tenne thouſand horſe; all good and braue companies, well appointed and well conducted. Of this braue and gallant armie the Lord *Ruſſworm* was for this yeare appointed Generall; who therewith marched within the ſight of STRIGONIVM, to aſſure the inhabitants of reliefe, if the enemie ſhould chance to beſiege them, as the newes then went. About three weekes this armie lay there by encamped, attending the comming of the reſt of the forces, which were to ſtrengthen and make vp the ſame; during which time Generall diſpoſed of all things neceſſarie for the keeping of STRIGONIVM, and put into the fort of S. *Andrew* neere vnto it three thouſand Lanſquenets for reliefe of the citie: which done, he remooued with his armie toward PESTH, and encamped within a league therof toward the weſt, reſolued ſo to croſſe the deſignes of the enemie if he ſhould attempt to beſiege this place (as it was doubted he would) and in hope that the preſeruation thereof might in time be a cauſe for the winning of BVDA, and a meane to impeach the enemies forces. H I

A great army of the Chriſtians.

The Turks armie within a few daies after vpon a contrary deſigne conducted for the winning of PESTH (and reſolued to raiſe the Chriſtians campe) in number an hundred thouſand men, came, and face to face incamped within the ſight of the Chriſtian army on the other ſide of the riuer Danubius. In the meane time whileſt they ſo lay, certaine cowardly ſouldiors of PESTH, more in loue with their bellies than with their honour, by ſtealth fled out of their garriſon in PESTH vnto the Turks ouer againſt them in BVDA, ſhamefully crauing of them victuals; whom the Turks being themſelues almoſt in as great want, yet bounteouſly relieued. Beſides that, the Baſſa of BVDA to corrupt the reſt of their fellowes, cauſed theſe renegate fugitiues to be entertained with double pay: who therefore gaue the Baſſa a thouſand thanks, extolling his bountie vnto the heauens; and from the wals inuiting their companions to doe as they had done, and ſo to become partakers of ſuch bountie and pleaſure as they were. Howbeit, theſe fugitiues nothing profited the Baſſa, either by their perſuaſion or example: for albeit that they from the mouth of the Baſſa promiſed vnto their companions plentie of victuals, good entertainment, and foure moneths pay more, yet was there not any of them which hearkened or gaue eare vnto their allurements: but rather, the more to aſſure their commaunders of their fidelitie, of themſelues offered to be ſworne again vnto their allegeance vnto the Emperour, and to die in the place rather than to forſake it. Yet was the want of victuals then in PESTH great, and the garriſon therewith extreamely pinched, fed almoſt as much with hope, as with that little which was left them. Neither was it long after, but that according to their deſires the 15 of May a great ſhip arriued there, laded with wine and victuals ſufficient for the reliefe of their preſent neceſſities. Of the comming of which ſhip the Turke hauing heard, attended the paſſage thereof in the Iſle, to haue intercepted it. Of which their purpoſe the garriſon ſouldiors of PESTH hauing knowledge, and armed with neceſſitie, ſallied out vpon them, and killing a number of them, inforced the reſt to quit the place. This ſhip was but the forerunner of greater ſuccours; for ſhortly after followed a number of other ſhips: which arriuing at PESTH, laded with victuals and other neceſſaries, filled the place with as great plentie, as there had been before want. Which ſupply was conducted vnto PESTH by 500 harquebuſiers of STRIGONIVM, the Turks from BVDA looking on, but not daring or not able to ſtay the ſame. K L M

The Turks army of 100000 men in field.

The ſhamefull flight of certain of the garriſon ſoldiors of Peſth vnto the Turkes at Buda.

Peſth victualled

It

A It fortuned at the ſelfeſame time that a captain of the Turks fled from ALBA REGALIS to RAB, ſhewed vnto the Chriſtians there the way and the meane how they might come to the ſuburbs of ALBA REGALIS, and take the ſpoile of the ſame; yea, and happily, as things might fall out, find occaſion to ſurpriſe the town it ſelfe alſo; offering himſelfe to be the guid in the ſame action. And albeit that this Turke was an enemie to be feared and diſtruſted, yet the Chriſtian ſoldiors as men deſirous both of honor & of prey, and induced alſo with the probabilitie of the attempt, gaue credit vnto him, and embraced the ſame. Neither failed he of his promiſe, neither the Chriſtians of their deuoir in performance of the exploit. For the two garriſons of RAB and STRIGONIVM aſſembled togither, by the leading of this Turke ſurpri-
B ſed the ſuburbs of ALBA REGALIS, ſlew all them that made reſiſtance, rifled them on all hands, ſet them on fire, and ſo laded with riches and ſpoile, returned home againe in ſafetie.

The ſuburbes of Alba Regalis by the Chriſtians ſacked & burnt

At the ſame time alſo the Chriſtians on the other ſide Danubius gathered an head togither to conduct another conuoy of victuals into PESTH, with a reſolution to march with the ſame through the plaine field at noone time of the day, euen in the eye of the enemie, ſo to braue him. And to this purpoſe the Lo. *Nadaſti* was there preſent with a good number of Hungarians, Colonel *Aesbourg* with a regiment of Almaines, and the Countie *Thur* with a number of Huſſars, all good ſoldiors and men of courage, deſirous to haue made proofe thereof vpon their enemies. This conuoy with the trumpets gallantly ſounding, brauely marched ouer the plaine at mid day, the Turks from the wals of BVDA beholding the ſame, but not daring
C to aduenture vpon it. And ſo PESTH for want of victuals before diſtreſſed, was now both by water and by land plentifully relieued.

Another conuoy of victuals by land put into Peſth.

The Chriſtians the laſt yeare hauing left the ſiege of BVDA for the reaſons before written, in their returne tooke the caſtle of ADOM, ſeated vpon the banke of Danubius, about two leagues from BVDA, and for the keeping thereof left therein a garriſon of Haiduckes. This caſtle was commodious for the annoying of the Turks in BVDA, and for the relieſe of the Chriſtians in PESTH, for that it impeacheth the bringing of victuals vnto the one, and fauored the victualling of the other. The good and faithfull defence of which place, theſe Haiducks vndertooke to the vttermoſt of their power, vpon their honour and credit, as they would be accounted valiant and couragious men: but yet refuſed to be bound by oath to render an ac-
D count of the place whatſoeuer might befal; a thing (as they truly ſaid) aboue their forces, and more than was in their power to performe. Theſe men now vpon the bruit of the comming of the Turks great armie afraid of their ſhaddowes, hauing before truſſed vp their baggage, ſet fire on the caſtle, & ſo departed, retyring themſelues to STRIGONIVM: where examined by the gouernor *Althenne* of the cauſe of their flight, and what enemies had chaſed them thence, and being not able to make therfore any excuſe, neither to yeeld therof any reaſon more than their imaginarie feare, were by his commandment impriſoned, there to remaine, vntill order were taken by the generall of the armie for their farther puniſhment.

The caſtle of Adom vpon a vaine feare forſaken by the Haiduckes, who had the keeping therof.

Sultan *Mahomet* now wallowing amid his ſenſual delights in CONSTANTINOPLE, yet found not therein ſo full contentment, but that his pleaſures had alſo their griefes fully mixt with
E them. In CONSTANTINOPLE, the ſtrong ſeat of his mightie Empire, he was in the midſt of the inſolencies & mutinies of his proud Baſſaes and tumultuous Ianizaries, and abroad he was in wars both againſt his rebellious ſubiects in ASIA, and the Chriſtians in EVROPE. Vnto all which troubles he ſaw not how to giue remedie at once, & therefore reſolued (if it were poſſible) firſt to appeaſe the troubles abroad with his rebellious ſubiects in ASIA; as more deſirous to be at peace with his owne ſubiects than with ſtrangers: howbeit, that the puniſhing of rebellion is more neceſſarie in a prince for the maintenance of his ſtate, than is war againſt a ſtranger for the conquering of a new countrie or kingdome: the one preuenting the danger hanging ouer his head, the other ſeruing but his vaine and ambitious deſire: ſo he preferring peace with the rebels his ſubiects before peace with the Chriſtians his enemies, reſolued (as I
F ſaid) to pacifie the firſt, the more eaſily to ruinate the other. But whether he vpon good faith or vpon policie entred into this reſolution, and whether he indeed meant plainly with theſe rebels, or but only to deceiue them, is hard to ſay. Howbeit, as the ſequele of the matter ſhewed, falſhood and treacherie was the ground of all this buſineſſe both on the one ſide and the other. For theſe men reſpecting only the ſafetie and aſſurance of their eſtate, held all other actions to them indifferent, whether they were good or bad, ſo that they ſerued to that effect:

Sultan Mahomet amongſt his greateſt pleaſures perplexed.

Mahomet in vaine ſeeketh to make peace with the rebels in Aſia.

and nouriſhed with the ſame milke of infidelitie that their prince was, trained vp in the ſame G
ſchoole, and ſoſtered with the ſame ayre, feared in him againſt them, that which they felt in themſelues againſt him. An hard matter it is to aſſure minds fraught with like craft, ſubtiltie, and deceit, and poſſeſſed with like diſtruſt one of them of another. Howbeit, *Mahomet* ſpared no kind of cunning to deceiue theſe craftie & ſubtill men; offering vnto them, together with his gracious pardon, great preferments, dignities, and honours, ſo that they would but yeeld vnto him their due obedience, lay downe their armes, and no more take vp the ſame but in his ſeruice. But theſe wily foxes knew right well, that the promiſes of faithleſſe princes coſt them nothing but words, the honour and credit whereof they regarded not, ſo that thereby they might attaine vnto the effect of their deſires, which they eſteemed aboue all other things: ſo that for them to truſt vnto a thing of ſo ſmall value, with him that was ſo prodigall there- H
of, and for the ſame ſo eaſily to yeeld vp their liues & fortunes, which they eſteemed as their onely treaſure, they thought right worthily to deſerue all ſhame and miſhap that might betide them. So that they not only refuſed to lay downe arms, and to yeeld their obedience vnto him, as he deſired, but euen to haue peace with him vpon any conditions whatſoeuer, ſeeing them dangerous vnto themſelues, and good only for him their enemie.

Mahomet ſeeing his offers reiected by the rebels of Aſia, couertly ſeeketh for peace with the Chriſtians.

Mahomet finding the rebels ſo reſolutely ſet downe, as not by any means but by force to be appeaſed, thought it now beſt to turne his purpoſe vnto the Chriſtians, and to offer them that which the other had refuſed, in hope that peace made with the one ſhould be the ruine and deſtruction of the other. Vpon which point he being in himſelfe reſolued, ſought now but ſome honeſt means, not vnbeſeeming his greatneſſe, to ioyne vnto this his proiect, to giue I
him a way thereunto. For the eaſing him of which care, the French embaſſadour, then Leger at CONSTANTINOPLE, was very fitly then entreating with the Viſier Baſſaes for the deliuerance of the Countie *Yſolan*, taken at ALBA REGALIS the laſt yeare, and againſt all law of arms detained priſoner at CONSTANTINOPLE. This noble gentleman *Mahomet* thought fit as well for the ſufficiencie of himſelfe as with inſtructions to deale with the Emperour concerning an entreatie of peace to be had. Whereupon he commanded him to be ſet at liberty, with charge, That he ſhould both diſcreetly and faithfully deale with the Emperour concerning this matter of peace: which if he ſhould by his induſtrie effect, to the good liking and contentment of *Mahomet* the great Sultan, that then he ſhould become and remaine free, otherwiſe to returne againe into his former captiuitie and bondage; for whom the French K
embaſſadour gaue his word, and became pledge. Vpon which barbarous conditions the Earle was forthwith deliuered, who by the law of armes ſhould not at all haue beene detained. Beſides this plot layd for the negotiation of this peace, *Achmet Baſſa* to this purpoſe writ to *Collonitz*, then Cammaunder of the Emperours armie in HVNGARIE. But ſee the copie of the letters themſelues.

The letters of Achmet Baſſa to Collonitz concerning a treatie of peace to be had.

To thee our friend Collonitz *health and greeting. I ſuppoſe that you yet remember the propoſitions concerning peace which our ſoueraigne and moſt mightie Monarch not long ago cauſed to be opened and propounded vnto you by certain of his Baſſaes neere vnto* STRIGONIVM, *which as then remained not reſolued. But if now it ſhall ſeeme vnto you good, that we ſhould aſſemble our ſelues toge-* L
ther into ſome place of aſſurance both to the one ſide and the other, we may againe conferre about that buſineſſe, as hauing on my part full power and commaundement from my Prince ſo to doe, yet with charge, that before all other things STRIGONIVM *ſhould be againe deliuered vnto vs. Which being done, wee may eaſily afterward determine the other difficulties, and conclude a good and wholeſome peace. God which raigneth alone in the heauens aboue is witneſſe of our faithfull and iuſt deſire, to aſſure a quiet and firme peace betwixt vs, and that to auert theſe flouds of warre from the poore people, and to giue them ſome repoſe and reſt after ſo great troubles. This is our intent and purpoſe, which God knoweth to be void of all fraud and guile; which we now declare vnto you, in hope to vnderſtand yours alſo. But if you be not reſolued to render vnto vs* STRIGONIVM *before we begin to intreat of any other matter, it is not needfull for you to trouble your ſelfe to giue any anſwere to theſe our letters. But if you* M
ſhall reſolue to the contrarie, to deliuer the ſame, with as much ſpeed as you can let vs in few words vnderſtand your reſolution, the time, and the place fit for our aſſemblie and meeting, to the intent fully to determine of theſe affaires. You know alſo, that you haue beene of long time accuſtomed to pay tribute vnto our Prince: which if you ſhall continue to pay for the time to come, and diſcharge the

arrerages

A *arrerages for the time paſt, it ſhall bee commodious for vs, and honourable for you, ſeeing that it is an honour vnto you to be tributaries vnto the Graund Seignior, it hauing alwaies in time paſt bin for your good and profit. Beſides that, peace ſhall likewiſe bee entreated of with the Great Cham of* TARTARIE, *who as commaunded by our moſt mightie and gratious Emperour vpon iuſt and reaſonable conditions to entertaine the ſame, and neuer more but in peaceable maner to come into* HVNGARIE. *Now, if that you ſhall neglect or reiect this treatie for peace, it is certaine that you ſhall be the author of the miſerie and ruine of the whole countrie, it being impoſſible that the townes and villages conſumed with fire ſhould euer recouer their former beautie or felicitie; God which raigneth in heauen is there witneſſe vnto me, and my dread emperor vpon earth, that I ſpeak frrankely with you, and without diſſimulation concerning this matter. Now on your part, let vs vnderſtand if you haue a deſire to attend*
B *vnto this treatie of peace, according to the purport of our letters: for if you ſhall reſolue to the contrarie, we proteſt vnto you to write no more concerning theſe affaires.*

Collonitz hauing receiued theſe letters, ſent them forthwith vnto the Emperor, requeſting his Maieſtie to conſider what anſwere he would haue giuen vnto them. Whom the emperor, deſirous of a good peace, commanded to embrace the occaſion, & by proofe to learne whether the Turkes deſire were indeed conformable to their words, or not. Wherupon *Collonitz* taking vnto him certaine of the beſt commanders in the armie, vndertooke the buſineſſe, and entred into the treatie of peace with the Turkes: wherein he found the vnreaſonableneſſe of their demaunds to tend ſo much vnto the hurt and diſhonour of the Emperour, as that they
C euen at the firſt entrance ſhut vp the way to all farther or reaſonable conference, it being altogither impoſſible to bring to any conformitie minds ſet downe vpon reſolutions ſo far different. For the Turkes (as if the Emperour would haue beene glad of peace vpon any condition) after their proud manner, vnreaſonably demaunded to haue TRANSYLVANIA, STRIGONIVM, and PESTH reſtored vnto them; for which they offered to deliuer vnto the Emperour AGRIA and CANISIA, peble for pearles. So that vpon propoſitions ſo farre different, being able to conclude nothing, they departed on both ſides as they came, to trie by armes that which by talke and conference they could not agree vpon. But as all the Turkes treaties of peace with the Chriſtians are indeed but falſe ſhewes to abuſe the facilitie of the Chriſtians by, euen ſo now alſo it was knowne, that they in the meane time, whileſt this treatie of
D peace was in hand, gathered together great ſtore both of men and munition at BELGRADE, wherewith to arme a great conuoy of victuals, which they had thought during this interparley for peace to haue put into BVDA. But *Collonitz* vnderſtanding thereof, ceaſed farther to entreat of peace, which with the falſe ſhew thereof did but hurt and deceiue the Chriſtians, and betooke himſelfe againe to his armes, his and their ſafeſt and ſureſt refuge, reſolued with the other captaines and commaunders of the armie to do what they might for the croſſing and hindring of the Turks in their purpoſe for the putting of victuals into BVDA: whereof there was now ſuch want, that the Turks in garriſon there hauing alreadie eaten all their horſes, and for victuals rifled the Gouernours houſe, were reſolued to abandon the citie, if they ſhould not be within ſome few daies relieued.

E Now vpon this reſolution for the keeping of the Turkes from the victualling of BVDA, the Chriſtians for the more aſſurance of their purpoſe, prepared therefore both by water and by land, embarking their footmen vpon the riuer, vnder the conduct of Colonel *Altmeine* and *Saltze*, the one the Gouernor of STRIGONIVM, and the other of PESTH; whileſt that *Collonitz* with the horſmen ſcouring alongſt the banks of the riuer of Danubius, tooke the charge by land. And ſo it fortuned, that vpon the 22 day of Auguſt he with his horſmen neere vnto the village of MOHATSCH (famous for the death of king *Lewis*) fell vpon the head of the Turks armie, led by the Baſſa *Murat*, conſiſting of ſix thouſand Turks, two thouſand of them being Ianizaries: who all togither lay encamped vpon an euen plain, verie commodious for our horſemen, who let ſlip neither the time nor the opportunitie of ſo great an aduantage of-
F fered them, but forthwith charged them: where, after a number of notable charges both giuen and receiued, which ſtill abated both the number and courage of the Turkes, they at laſt retired toward the bodie of their armie, and that in ſuch haſt, as that their retreat little differed from a ſpeedie flight. After whom *Collonitz* followed, with like heate as hee had charged them, but euill followed by his friends, who euill performed their charge, ſeeking after

The Emperor aduertiſed of the Turks mot on for peace, giueth order to Collonitz for the entertaining thereof.

The Turkes vnreaſonable demands breake off all the treatie of peace.

A notable enterpriſe of Collonitz vpon the auantguard of the Turks army

the ſpoile in ſtead of purſuing of their enemies; the Turks perceiuing the ſmall number that purſued them, turned vpon them, and ſo began againe not only to make ſtrong reſiſtance, but euen right hardly to charge them. Who ſo by them preſſed with no leſſe courage than power, were now glad themſelues to retire in ſtead of purſuing of the victorie; but yet ſo, as that the retreat was made without any great loſſe therein receiued. Howbeit, the Turkes not a little encouraged with this change of fortune, and perceiuing themſelues too ſtrong for their enemies that charged them, came on ſo faſt and ſo couragiouſly, as that in fine they had defeated the Chriſtians, had not the Haiduckes out of their boats from the riuer in good time come reſolutely to their reliefe. Which cloud the Turkes perceiuing, readie to poure forth a great tempeſt vpon their heads, and not daring to abide the ſame, againe retyred, leauing the Chriſtians victors both in the firſt and laſt charge: who not content with the retreat of the Turks, furiouſly charged them, and purſued them euen vnto their great campe, and ſo returned, carrying backe with them both the glorie of the field, and the ſpoile of their enemies.

Collenitz in good time relieued by the Haiduckes.

In this conflict the red cornet of *Murat Baſſa*, the cogniſance of his great commaund, was taken, with two field-pieces, ſeuen hundred Turks were left dead vpon the place, & ſix ſcore mo taken priſoners; amongſt whom was *Saxar Beg:* who being a man of vnderſtanding, and by the Chriſtians examined, confeſſed, That *Haſſan Baſſa* the day before this conflict came into the campe, and there honourably dined with the great Cham: with whom after their great cheere he entring into diſcourſe of many great matters, & among the reſt, concerning his returne into his countrie, was much againſt the ſame, vntill ſuch time as they had new victualled Bvda, wherunto he was (as he ſaid) both in honour and in duetie bound to giue his aſſiſtance, the loſſe of this good place being of ſo great importance vnto the Great Sultan. That otherwiſe his aid had bin vnto him rather hurtfull than profitable, his people hauing deuoured ſo much victuals and performed nothing, if he ſhould now at this time faile to doe his Prince ſeruice, who could neuer thinke either valour or fidelitie to be in him, if he ſhould faile in ſuch actions as wherein his valour and fidelitie ſhould appeare; all things hauing no other credit and reputation, but according to their effects. And that therefore he ſhould reſolue to ſee the end of this exploit, which required euery mans helping hand for the performance thereof, conſidering the forces of the enemie in readineſſe to hinder the ſame. Moreouer, he aſſured them, that the Baſſaes purpoſe was to new fortifie Hasvvar, Pax, and Kalbtsch, frontier caſtles, and neceſſarie for this action, and ſo to goe to the ſiege of Pesth; and that done, to beſiege Strigonivm; which for all that he doubted to win this yeare, as well by reaſon of the approch of Winter, as for that a great part of his forces were far off, and not eaſily in a little time to bee aſſembled togither. That the Tartars were yet a great way from the campe, where the Baſſas of Asia and Caramania were within a few daies expected; the one of them leading with him the reconciled rebels of Asia, and the other 6000 Ianizaries. Which his confeſſion although it were not altogither true, yet carried it ſome ſhew of probabilitie, as time by proofe afterward declared.

The Turkes aſſaires and deſignes made knowne vnto the Chriſtians by Saxar Beg, by them taken priſoner.

Some of our men were in this charge ſlaine alſo, but few in compariſon of the Turks, who there loſt ſome of their beſt men. It was noted, that in this conflict the ſouldiours of Colonell *Sultze* had euill behaued themſelues, refuſing to purſue the enemie being in flight, whether it were for that they feared ſome ambuſh laid for them, or for that they diſdained to follow the Generall *Collonitz:* the reaſons perhaps for which their Colonell ſtaied them from the purſuit of the enemie, but to euill purpoſe: for being out of order at ſuch time as the Turkes turning backe, renewed the fight, they had beene all ſlaine and cut in pieces, had not the Haiduckes in good time (as we ſaid) come on to their reſcue. As for *Collonitz*, he moſt brauely bare himſelf in this conflict, ſo much as in him was vrging his good fortune, for the obtaining of a full victorie; ſometime performing the part of a good captaine, and ſometime of a valiant ſouldior; ſometime forcing the charge, and againe ſtaying his men in their retreat: inſomuch, that oftentimes loſt amongſt his enemies, and againe returning by the grace of God, hee eſcaped death as it were by miracle, and from being taken priſoner, by chaunce. Into neither of which daungers hee could haue fallen, without the daunger of the whole armie; which, next vnto God, was for the ſafetie thereof beholding vnto the valour of him, their ſo braue a leader. But God in his wiſedome createth not ſuch worthie men, but by his prouidence

The negligence of certain Chriſtian ſouldiors forgetfull of diuers duelies.

The great and braue endeauor of Collonitz to haue obtained the victory ouer the Turkes.

A uidence alſo to preſerue them: wonder it were otherwiſe, that euer ſuch worthie men ſhould returne from amongſt the middeſt of ſo many deſperat dangers, death as it were enuying at their liues, and their enemies for their glorie chuſing them out to triumph of their ſpoyles and ouerthrow. And without doubt, had the reſt of the Chriſtians after his example proſecuted their good fortune, and done what good ſouldiors ſhould of dutie haue done, their enemies had bin quit ouerthrown, and they themſelues had bin both victorious and rich, where now for lacke of good reſolution the victorie was almoſt equall. For beſide the ſpoiles by them gotten, they might haue carried away with them a whole yeres pay, due to the garriſon of BVDA, which the Turks (put into a feare, and carefull onely of their liues) had left in their camp; which they afterward againe recouered, vpon the recouerie of their force and courage.
B This mony, with much more, was all appointed as a prey vnto the good fortune of our men, had their valour had the courage to haue gone to fetch it; but failing of their endeauour in ſo glorious an action, fortune failed them alſo of her bountie.

A great & rich bootie loſt through the negligence of the Chriſtians.

Now at length the armie of the Chriſtians was met togither, about the fourth of September, wherein the Lord *Ruſſworm* commaunded as Generall: who deſirous to vnderſtand of the Turkes affaires and deſignes, ſent forth two of his moſt truſtie and expert ſouldiours to performe that piece of ſeruice: who in Turkes apparrell being got into the Turkes armie, were there eight daies vndiſcouered or ſuſpected of any. Where, after that they roaming vp and down, had taken a full view of the Turks armie, and in what they might diſcouered their deſignes, they returning backe, declared vnto the Generall what they had there both heard
C and ſeene: as that the Turkes armie was verie great, but yet not ſuch, as that which the laſt yeare had beſieged PESTH: That the Turkes lay encamped at large, and not cloſe togither, which cauſed their armie to ſeeme the greater, taking vp for the lodgement thereof halfe a league, being well prouided of cannon and other field pieces: That *Haſſan Baſſa* commaunded therein as Generall, hauing brought with him twelue thouſand Ianizaries, beſide his horſemen, and reconciled rebels of ASIA, which were daily looked for, the leader of whom was not knowne: ſome thinking it to be him, who had alwaies commaunded them, being a moſt valiant man, and expert commaunder; but ſome other deeming him to be but one of his captaines that had forſaken him (as indeed he was) a right valiant man alſo, but not of ſo great experience as hee: That the great Tartar Han, come to aid the Turkes in their wars
D in HVNGARIE, was (to the great diſcontentment of *Haſſan Baſſa* the Turks Generall) now alreadie returned towards his owne countrie (with ſuch bootie and priſoners as he had got from the poore Chriſtians) to appeaſe a rebellion there raiſed by a young Tartar prince his nephew, who by his vncle the great Han (giuen in hoſtage vnto Sultan *Mahomet*, and kept at CONSTANTINOPLE as in priſon) hauing found means to make an eſcape, and to returne into TARTARIE, was about to trouble his vncles affaires, in hope now in his abſence to mount vnto the throne of his eſtate: And that the Tartar being come to the banke of Danubius, and by the Turks denied boats to paſſe ouer the riuer in (and with many railing and opprobrious ſpeeches by them charged for his departure as a coward) had found means to make a floting bridge of great faggots, whereby he paſſed his footmen ouer the riuer, his horſemen
E ſwimming ouer the ſame; and ſo was by great iournies returning home, boaſting by the way as he went, that he had reiected and troden vnder foot all the prayers and requeſts of *Haſſan Baſſa*, entreating him yet to ſtay a while in HVNGARIE for the ſeruice of the Great Sultan his maſter. Beſides that, that they had ſeen ſix great veſſels vpon the riuer of Danubius, with ten leſſer veſſels following of them, manned with three thouſand ſouldiors well armed, and men of good ſort, three hundred of them being Ianizaries, appointed to ſafe conduct the munition to be brought vp the riuer, & to ſerue for a conuoy vnto the other veſſels that were to follow them with victuals, if haply the Chriſtians ſhould attempt to do any thing againſt them. And in fine, that the Turks armie could not this yere poſſibly be great, by reaſon of many great lets wherwith the great Sultan was this yere troubled: which much abated both the courage
F and hope of his captains; who hanging their heads, came vnwillingly to theſe wars, accounting themſelues happie, if they might in this expedition but take PESTH, that they might not returne ſo much diſhonoured, as they came danted and diſcouraged. With which newes the Chriſtians were ſo much encouraged to encounter with the Turks, as if they had bin aſſured to fight with men alreadie diſcouraged and out of heart.

The L. Ruſſworm Generall of the Chriſtian armie by his eſpials certainly enformed of the eſtate of the Turkes armie.

The Turkes ouerthrown by the garrison of Strigonium.

In the meane time the Huſſars of STRIGONIVM, alwaies readie for fight, by good fortune going forth, met with foure hundred Turkes ſeeking for forrage: who encountring together, at the firſt made a moſt braue and gallant fight, euerie one of them wiſhing, that their priuate ſucceſſe might be the beginning of their generall victorie. But the Huſſars being both more skilfull in that maner of skirmiſhing and ſudden encounter, and alſo of greater courage, at length brake the Turks rankes: of whom, ſix ſcore lay dead vpon the ground, moſt of the reſt were taken priſoners, with an hundred and thirtie good an ſeruiceable horſes, wherewith both the glorie and the profit of their victorie was encreaſed. Colonell *Sultze* alſo with three hundred men marching out from the campe, chaunced to diſcouer an hundred of thoſe braue horſemen, which but newly came out of ASIA with *Zellaly* the rebell; who hauing neuer ſeene the armie of the Chriſtians, nor yet felt of their forces, were with three hundred Ianizaries vpon a brauerie come ouer the riuer of Danubius, to take a view of the Chriſtian campe: for the drawing on of whom, the politique Colonel had ſent forth fiftie of his horſemen a great way from the reſt of his troupe, as it were to diſcouer the countrie thereabout. Theſe fore-runners fayled not to meet with the Turkes, as if it had bin by chaunce, and were by them forthwith charged, as thinking to haue had a great hand ouer that ſo ſmall a number; when vpon the ſudden *Sultze* with the reſt of his companie comming on, and hotely charging them, encouraged his owne men, and diſcouraged the Turkes: who ſurpriſed with feare, thinking the Chriſtians to bee moe in number than indeed they were, hauing left ſome fiftie of their men dead vpon the place, as men diſmayed and void of vnderſtanding fled. In which flight, ſuch as were not by the Chriſtians ſlaine, were in the riuer of Danubius drowned, whereinto they for feare all headlong plunged themſelues.

The Turkes defeated by Colonel Sultze.

The General of the Chriſtian armie prouidētly fortifieth vpon the riuer of Danubius.

All theſe little conflicts ſerued but as ſparkes to kindle the great fire by the Baſſa entended, his firſt purpoſe being to put a conuoy of victuals into BVDA, which the Chriſtians thought by all meanes to hinder; which ſo contrarie intentions were not but by force and policie to be decided. The Chriſtian Generall wiſely doubting leaſt the Baſſa ſhould come and lodge his armie betwixt VICEGRADE and BVDA, and ſo victuall the citie at his pleaſure, raiſed a ſtrong fort of an old church betwixt the ſaid two places, and therein lodged a regiment of Lanſquenets. Beſide which fort, called the fort of S. *Andrew*, he built another at the head thereof in the Iſle of VICEGRADE, in ſuch order and proportion, that theſe two forts might one of them defend the other and annoy them that ſhould attempt to force either of them. Together with this commodiouſneſſe, the fort in the Iſle kept the paſſage vpon Danubius, free and open for the bringing of victuals and other neceſſaries to the campe of the Chriſtians; and was but a league and an halfe from BVDA: into which fort was put a regiment of 4000 Italians, being all very wel armed. Which done, he made a bridge of boats vpon the riuer, which began in the campe, and ended at the Iſle, for the relieuing of the fort, and ſo from thence paſſed quite ouer the riuer to VACIA, a little towne, which it was needefull for the Chriſtians to keepe.

The Turks aſſailing one of the forts of the Chriſtians, with loſſe repulſed.

Theſe forts finiſhed according to the neceſſitie of the time, it was not long after, but that the Baſſa ſent tenne thouſand Turks both horſe and foot to take the firſt of them, which they ſuppoſed to haue beene but weakely fortified. Who comming thither, were with ſuch courage receiued by the Lanſquenets with their harquebuſes, as that the whole fort ſeemed to haue beene on fire. Wherewith the Turks diſmaied, as men in their expectation deceiued, and in approching of the ſame hauing ſome of their men ſlaine, and moe hurt, they ſounded a retreat, and hauing done nothing, but loſt a number of their men, returned to their campe from whence they came. In which enterpriſe they failing, they reſolued vpon another, and began to make a bridge ouer Danubius, in hope therby to paſſe ouer, and to annoy the Chriſtians on the other ſide of the riuer. Whereof the Generall of the Chriſtians vnderſtanding, ſuffered them without any interruption to ſpend the time in performing of the ſame. But certainely enformed by his eſpials, both of the day and houre wherein they were about to paſſe ouer, he laid an ambuſh of foure thouſand Lanſquenets and two thouſand Reiſters for them, in ſuch place as from whence they might without danger do great harme vnto the enemie, and aſſure the bodie of the Chriſtian armie. The riuer of Danubius had growing vpon the bankes thereof, and eſpecially in the deſolate and vnfrequented places, great ſtore of flags

The Turks made a bridge ouer the riuer of Danubius.

A great ambuſh laied for the intercepting of the Turkes.

and

A and reeds; which were now thick & high enough to couer theſe footmen in, hauing with them foure culuerins ready charged. Behind this ambuſh lay colonel *Collonitz* with his regiment, & in the head of it the prince *Ioinuille*, with a certaine number of French gentlemen, who vpon a braue courage, and a deſire they had to ſee ſeruice, had followed him into thoſe warres. There was alſo the lord of BASSOMPERRE, another French lord, with his owne priuate followers, in number few, but in valour great. Vpon the flanks lay foure troups of *Carabins* French men, Loranoiſes and Wallons, moſt expert and reſolute ſouldiors.

The Turkes hauing made their bridge, began now to paſſe ouer the ſame, being charged by ſome few ſtragling and looſe forerunners of the Chriſtians, ſent before for that purpoſe: B whom the Turkes not much regarding, ſtill preſſed on, in hope to ouertake them, and to cut them in pieces, not aware of the ambuſh laid for them, nor of their enemies counter deſignes. The footmen in the meane while lying ſtill cloſe in the reeds in ambuſh, beholding how and in what order they paſſed, and expecting but the time when they were to begin their charge: But hauing perceiued ten thouſand of the Turks to be now come ouer, and making head toward them, the Wallons vpon the banke of the riuer (as was before appointed) firſt diſcharged their pieces vpon them, and ſlew ſome few of them. Neuertheleſſe the Turks ſtill paſſing on by them, ſlew of them alſo about foure and twentie, and ſo keeping their way, marched directly toward the Chriſtians. But this their forwardneſſe was quickly ſtaied, and their courage abated: For in paſſing by they were vpon the ſudden aſſailed by the Lanſquenets and Reiſters, now riſen out of ambuſh, and by them hardly laid vnto on euery ſide; as alſo by the C horſmen, who now come in, had put them into ſome diſorder before they were well aware of them. The Wallons alſo at the firſt by the Turks ſcattered, but now againe rallied, and deſirous to reuenge the death of their friends and fellowes, now plaied their parts, and on another ſide right furiouſly charged their enemies. During all which fight the culuerins ceaſed not to open the flanks of the Turks battell, with the loſſe of a number of their men, by the furie of them rent in pieces. Neither did *Collonitz* forſlow ſo faire an opportunitie, but afront charging this diſmaied companie, by plaine force cauſed them to giue ground; the Carabins in the meane time charging them vpon their flanks, and the Wallons behind. Who thus on euerie ſide beſet, and hardly layed vnto, as men diſcouraged, and out of hope to be relieued, turned their backs and fled amaine, to haue recouered the bridge wherby they came ouer. In D which fight and flight two thouſand of them being ſlaine, and the reſt not able to recouer the bridge, driuen headlong into the riuer, were therein drowned and ſlaine to the number of fiue thouſand of them, thoſe which remained aliue being all taken priſoners. Amongſt the reſt one of the Baſſaes, a man of great account amongſt the Turkes, was ſlaine, with many other captaines and commanders of great note, and fifteene hundred Ianizaries. There were alſo foure field pieces taken, with thirtie enſigns, and two cornets, beſide a very rich prey of braue and couragious horſes, with much faire armour, rich apparel, and good ſcimitars, weapons of no ſmall account and price among the Turks. This ouerthrow much abated the courage and hope of the reſt of the Turkes for comming to the effect of their deſignes; and increaſed the courage and hope of the Chriſtians, reaſonably well hereby aſſured of the good ſucceſſe of E their affaires, for this yeare in HVNGARIE.

The Turks falling into the ambuſh laid for them by the Chriſtians, receiue a notable ouerthrow.

About this time Sultan *Mahomet* hauing put a fleet of gallies to ſea, to haue gone againſt the king of FEZ, was certainely enformed, how that the ſame with tempeſt ſore beaten, to auoyd ſhipwracke, was againe returned vnto the ſame port from whence it looſed, bringing backe with it nothing for all his great charges, but ſickneſſe and great loſſes at ſea receiued. The like euill hap or worſe hauing at the ſame time alſo betided another fleet by him ſet out into the Euxine or blacke ſea, to defend thoſe ſea coaſtes from being rifled and ſpoiled by the rebels in ASIA, who with their daily incurſions did there ſtill great harme. For albeit that *Zellaly* one of the captaines of the rebels, allured with *Mahomet* his faire promiſes, was by the ſtrait of the DARDANELLI (called in ancient time the ſtrait of HELLESPONT) come with 12 F thouſand good ſouldiors, out of ASIA into EVROPE, and ſo marching through MACEDONIA, was come into HVNGARIE, there to doe his lord and maſter ſeruice: yet the chiefe rebell held ſtill out, and both now and for diuers yeres after maintained a moſt cruell and dangerous warre, to the great trouble of the graund Seigniour, and the hindering of his affaires. And euen now the craftie rebell hauing made ſhew as if hee would haue ſubmitted himſelfe,

Sultan Mahomet much troubled in his affaires.

The doings of the rebels in Aſia.

and

and come ouer into EVROPE as *Zellaly* did; and had therefore certaine gallies ſent vnto him from *Mahomet*, to haue tranſported him and his ſouldiors in: he now of them poſſeſſed, ſlew all them that were ſent therin, & kept the gallies to himſelfe. So that ſo farre from was it, that the rebellion was extinguiſhed in ASIA, and the rebels ſuppreſſed, as that they were now vp in greater number than euer, and ſo did alſo more harme. Whereunto they were alſo the more encouraged by the example of *Haſſan Baſſa* (not him the Generall in HVNGARIE, but another Baſſa of the ſame name) who by the great Sultan ſent againſt theſe rebels, had for a time kept them vnder, and ſomewhat repreſſed their inſolencie: but now by *Mahomet* diſplaced, and another being ſent to ſucceed him, he therwith diſcontented, ſo animated & incenſed his ſoldiors againſt him, as that comming to haue taken vpon him his charge, hee found moſt part of the ſouldiors ready to turne their weapons vpon him: ſo that at length they fell together by the eares about the matter, ſome taking part with the old General, and ſome with the new. In which tumultuous quarel a number of ſoldiors were ſlaine, all they of the richer ſort ſpoiled, and the great Sultans ſeruice and authoritie neglected. But the new Generall armed with his princes authoritie, and ſome of the old ſoldiors alſo taking his part, at laſt preuailing, *Haſſan* the old Generall with his partakers, were glad to flie and ſhift for themſelues: who for all that hauing afterward gathered together the diſperſed ſouldiors, and ioyning with the reſt of the rebels, held ſtill the body of a good army on foot; by his example ſtirring vp the people to rebellion, croſſing the ſeruice of his ſoueraigne, & doing what harme he could, ſo to ſeeme vnto his followers the more valiant. The Perſian king on the other ſide, taking the aduantage of theſe the Turks troubles at home, as alſo of his wars with the chriſtians, at the ſame time with a great armie beſieged the great citie of TAVRIS, as then kept by the Turks with a moſt ſtrong garriſon. In which ſiege he for battery vſed the help of the canon, an engine of long time by the Perſians ſcorned, as not beſeeming valiant men; vntill that by their owne harmes taught, he was now content to vſe it, being with the ſame, as alſo with skilfull canoniers furniſhed by the Portingals: By which means he in ſhort time after againe recouered this great citie from the Turkes, being before by Sultan *Amurah* taken from *Mahomet* the Perſian king, but now againe reſtored vnto the Perſian kingdome.

The great citie of Tauris beſieged and taken by the Perſian king.

Sultan *Mahomet* thus on euery ſide beſet with troubles, and not well knowing which way to turne himſelf for to remedy the ſame, being in mind much troubled and perplexed, began to enter into conſideration of the vanity of theſe worldly things, & of the frailty of his eſtate. And ſo ſtruck as it were with a remorſe of conſcience, & a firm beliefe that God did thus chaſtiſe & puniſh him for his offences, conſidering that his anceſtors had neuer bin troubled with any ſuch attaints or diſgraces, he conuerted all his thoughts vnto praiers towards God: and therfore gaue commaundement for publike praiers to be continually ſaid in all the Moſquies or churches throughout all his dominions, giuing himſelfe wholy alſo vnto ſuch deuout exerciſes and works of charity: and withal ſent two of his moſt reuerend prieſts bareheaded and barefooted, on pilgrimage to MECHA (where the chiefe temple of their great prophet is, and wherin they vainly beleeue their ſuperſtitious praiers to be of him moſt ſpeedily heard) there to pray vnto him for the health and proſperitie of him their prince and ſoueraigne.

Sultan Mahomet perplexed with the euill ſucceſſe of his affaires, falleth to his ſuperſtitious deuotions.

At the ſame time *Amurat Rais*, an old pirat, the Turks Admiral for the weſt part of the Mediterranean, roaming there vp & down, and doing what harme he could, chanced to light vpon a great Flemiſh ſhip, which hee with his gallies forthwith encloſed, the calmeneſſe of the weather then fauouring him, & hindring the Flemings, their ſhip being able to make no way. Who ſo beſet, & hauing made a great fight againſt the whole fleet, and ſlain a number of the Turks, & ſore rent diuers of their gallies, though not without loſſe of many of their own men alſo, being not able longer to fight, and ſeeing themſelues now boorded by as many Turks as could wel ſtand vpon the hatches of the ſhip, & their gallies hanging round about her, as men of inuincible courage, and reſolued to die, and yet to ſell their liues at as deere a rate as they could, laid all the powder they had left in the ſhip on an heape together, & therunto vpon the ſudden put fire, by force wherof the Turks with the hatches were all blown vp, the Flemings with their ſhip rent in pieces, together with diuers of the gallies that were faſt grapled vnto her, and an incredible harme done vnto ſuch other of the gallies as were neere vnto her. Men worthie alwayes to vanquiſh, ſeeing that they feare nothing more than to bee themſelues vanquiſhed: and more worthie to haue liued for the glorie of men, than by their crueltie to haue

A great fight of a Flemiſh ſhip with the gallies of Amurat Rais.

A haue periſhed to the diſhonor of men. The old pirat aſtonied at ſo great and deſparat a reſolution, hauing in this exploit loſt much, & gained nothing, haſted to the ſhore to repaire his rent gallies, and ſo to put to ſea againe: Where he had not long been, but that he by chaunce (and that ful ſore againſt his will) met with the great duke of FLORENCE his gallies, accounted the beſt gallies in the world, and ſuch as now at this preſent moſt troubled the Turks deſigns. At which meeting, after many a thundring canon ſhot on both ſides diſcharged, not without the apparant loſſe on the Turks behalfe, when they ſhould haue come to haue grapled together, and to haue fought hand to hand, a thing which the Florentines moſt deſired, as in hope to haue made that famous pirat the prize of their victorie: he not willing ſo to do, ſuddenly
B turned about and fled; after whom the Florentines followed amaine, and in the chaſe ſunke ſome of his gallies, and tooke other ſome full of great riches: and ſo brake the credit of this old and renowned pirat, as that for a great while after hee was little by the Chriſtians feared vpon that coaſt. But leauing *Mahomet* to his deuotions, and the old pirat to bewaile his loſſes, let vs againe returne to ſee what the great armies of the Turks and of the Chriſtians, did more in HVNGARIE.

While theſe armies lay encamped the one attending vpon the other, many an hot skirmiſh paſſed betwixt them, moſt wherof ſorted vnto the hurt & loſſe of the Turks. Amongſt others it fortuned, that a troupe of aduenturers going out of the Chriſtian army to ſeeke after bootie,
C fell vpon a like troupe of the Turkes, come out for the like purpoſe: where after a ſharpe encounter on both ſides giuen and receiued, the Turks at length put to the worſe and defeated, betooke themſelues to flight, hauing left a number of their fellowes dead vpon the place, and loſt two of their enſignes, with an hundred and thirty horſes of ſeruice. In which chace the Chriſtians hardly purſuing them, draue a number mo of them into the Danubius, wherein they moſt miſerably periſhed: and tooke a great many mo priſoners, amongſt whom were found aboue fourſcore Italian renegates, who brought into the campe, were as enemies vnto God, in a martiall court all condemned to bee hanged, and ſo accordingly executed, ſauing the captaine himſelfe, who for the regard of his place was beheaded.

The Turks in a skirmiſh by the Chriſtians ouerthrowne.

80 Italian renegates hanged

Shortly after the great Baſſa riſing with his armie, came in the beginning of October and
D encamped neere BVDA, both for the preſeruation of the place, and the ſaſtie of his army, now greatly diminiſhed both in number and courage. For it was certainly known by diuers fugitiues from the Turkes, that in theſe many conflicts they had loſt a number of their beſt ſouldiours, but eſpecially of their Ianizaries. So that the Baſſa for the ſupplying of that defect, was glad to make choice of ſix thouſand of his beſt ſoldiors, whom armed with muskets and ſcimitars, the proper armes of the Ianizaries, he entertained into the roomes & pay of the Ianizaries that were dead and ſlaine: the reſt of his armie for the moſt part conſiſting of bare and feeble baſe raw ſoldiors. Beſides this, that all the army was ful of mourning and lamentation, the ſoldiors in all places bewailing the loſſe of their brethren, their friends and companions: ſo that in ſtead of their wonted threats and brauerie, nothing was to be heard but ſighing and complaining. And moreouer, that the generall opinion conceiued of the greatneſſe of the
E chriſtian army (imagined to be much greater and ſtronger than indeed it was) had ſtruck ſuch a feare into the minds of the Turks, as that they were reſolued, BVDA being once victualed, to returne home, all their other proud deſignes for this yeare ſet apart: which was the cauſe that they had diſlodged with their armie, and drawne neere vnto the citie, the better to attend to the new victualing therof, & ſo to be gone; accounting themſelues right happie, if they might but performe that good piece of ſeruice and ſaue themſelues.

The Turks army greatly diminiſhed and diſcouraged.

The Chriſtians before in doubt leaſt the Turkes ſhould haue beſieged PESTH, as they had before giuen it forth they would, and ſeeing them now to be riſen with their armie and encamped neere vnto BVDA, reſolued to follow them, and in what they might to croſſe their deſignes: and thereupon leauing PESTH, as now out of danger, they roſe alſo, and came and en-
F camped before the fort in the iſle of VICEGRADE, betwixt the ſaid fort and VACIA, where they ſtayed foure dayes; and then by a bridge which they made vpon the Danubie, whereby to paſſe from the iſle where the Italians lay in garriſon, vnto the fort of S. *Andrew*, kept by the Lanſquenets, they with the whole armie paſſed the riuer, and ſo came and encamped before the fort of Saint *Andrew*, in the face of the enemie. Now the field betwixt the heads of the two armies was plaine and open, without woods, buſhes, or riuers, to hinder the ioyning of

The Chriſtians with their army follow the Turks

of a ſet battell. In which ſo fit a place, the Chriſtians encouraged with the feare of their ene- G
mies, and the diminiſhing of their number and courage, whereof they had got knowledge as well by their tumultuous riſing, as by other aduertiſements, were deſirous in ſo fauourable occaſions, to haue giuen them battell; and for the deſire they had thereof, were come thither to ſeeke it: which the Turkes on the other ſide ſought as much to ſhun, not daring to aduenture themſelues vnto the fortune of a generall battell, for all the bragges they had made. Neuertheleſſe, very ſhame arming them with ſome reſolution, they put forth into the field a battalion of fiue thouſand men, fiue daies after that the Chriſtians were encamped, on that ſide of the riuer. This battall of the Turkes came marching on, within halfe a quarter of a league of the Chriſtians; which they would not haue done but vpon the confidence of a greater number following of them, hauing behind them ten thouſand men both horſe and foot H
layed as cloſe as they poſſibly could a little out of the way. Now the Chriſtians thinking of no other forces ready to fight, but thoſe which appeared in their ſight, ſent forth twelue hundred men againſt theſe fiue thouſand Turkes, to skirmiſh with them, vntill the whole armie were put into order, euen for a generall battell that day to haue been fought, if the Turkes

The Chriſtians refuſed to giue the Turke battel

ſhould accept thereof, whereunto the Generall, the Colonels, captaines, and ſouldiors in generall, were fully enclined, the whole armie with great cheerefulneſſe marching on foot, at this lowd alarme of their common deſire. Which had not failed to bring forth great change of effects, had the Turkes been likewiſe diſpoſed for the producing of the ſame. But they be the extraordinarie fauours of fortune, when fit occaſions ioyne themſelues with braue reſolutions, and ſuch reſolutions with meanes to effect the ſame. This is the let of many moſt no- I
ble trophies, which moſt commonly faile, either for lacke of fit occaſion, or for lacke of good reſolution for the performance of them. But as moſt men iudge of other mens conceits by their owne inclination, ſo the Chriſtians themſelues reſolued to giue battell, thought the Turkes their enemies to haue beene of the ſame reſolution: and thoſe fiue thouſand men to haue been the head of the auantguard, followed with the whole armie, comming to draw them out to skirmiſh vntill the comming on of the reſt of their forces. Howbeit their deſigne

The Turks ſeek to draw the Chriſtians into the danger of their ambuſh.

was quite contrarie to this the Chriſtians hope, for their purpoſe was onely to traine them out into their ambuſhes, ſo without danger to cut them in pieces. Of which their purpoſe they gaue ſufficient teſtimonie; and cauſe of ſuſpect, for that the skirmiſh hauing continued three houres, with ſome loſſe on both ſides, the Turkes armie appeared not: and theſe fiue K
thouſand Turkes now in skirmiſh, by little and little retiring, ſought ſo to haue drawne the Chriſtians into the danger of their ambuſh. Which their manner of fight cauſed the Chriſtians to ſuſpect the matter: for it was not like, that fiue thouſand men ſhould giue ground to twelue hundred, if they had not had ſome ſecret meaning therein, which they ſought to effect to their more aduantage. Which cauſed the Chriſtian Carabins which followed them, not to be too earneſt in purſuing of them, and more cloſely to ſerre themſelues together, the better to endure the ſhocke of their enemies, if they ſhould charge them. Neither were they in that their prouident feare deceiued: for the Turkes ſeeing their purpoſe diſcouered, and themſelues now out of hope to effect the ſame, vpon the ſudden made a ſtand, and ſo preſently comming on, hardly charged the formoſt of our Carabins: who as men halfe ſurpri- L
ſed, to ſee themſelues ſo readily and reſolutely charged, by men who but now made ſhew as if they would haue fled, were not able ſo valianty to receiue the charge (conſidering the

A conflict betwixt the Turks and the Chriſtians.

great number of them by whom they were charged) but that ſome few of them were ouerthrowne and ſlaine, with ſome of the Hungarians amongſt them. Howbeit they made good reſiſtance, and right valiantly repulſed their enemies, of whom they ſlew a good number alſo. The preaſe in this conflict was great, euery one deſiring to ſhew himſelfe braue and courageous in the head of his owne armie. But new ſupplies ſtill comming in, the Turkes in fine ſhrunke backe and retired, hauing left three hundred of their fellowes dead vpon the place, accompanied with an hundred of the Chriſtians there ſlaine likewiſe. Now vpon the retreat on both ſides, euery man in his conceit appointed the next day for the general day of battel: M
the bragging ſpeeches of the Turkes giuing the Chriſtians occaſion ſo to thinke; for why, they ſeldome or neuer refuſe battell being offered them by the Chriſtians, as well for the confidence they commonly haue in their multitude, as for the fooliſh opinion they haue of the ineuitable predeſtination of men to life or death: accounting it amongſt them an eternall in-

famie,

A famie, to refuſe any combat againſt the Chriſtians; which howſoeuer it fall out, ſhould ſort to their aduantage, by vanquiſhing gaining the fruites of their victorie; and by looſing their liues in battell, to gaiue the ioyes of heauen: being vainely perſuaded, no mens ſoules to go more readily vnto heauen, than the ſoules of ſuch as die in battell againſt the Chriſtians. Such effects old ſuperſtitious opinions are able to worke in the minds of men, euen to the deſperat aduenturing and ſpending of their liues. Howbeit that this effect for this time witneſſeth, that theſe men with all theſe aduantages as much feared the danger, as any other poore faint hearted men: and that a ſtrong apprehenſion of feare is able to preuaile againſt all cuſtoms and perſuaſions, be they neuer ſo old; as alſo againſt all other accidents whatſoeuer. For why, the
B Turks contenting themſelues with their great bragges and vaine threats, came not forth according to their promiſe, neither could by any meanes be drawne to aduenture themſelues vnto the hazard of a generall battell. The loſſe of their great and choyſeſt men diſcouraged and deterred them from aduenturing all to the hazard of ſo great a perill. For (as I haue ſaid) almoſt all their Ianizaries and moſt valiant ſouldiours were dead or ſlaine, and the reſt, men of ſmall ſpirit or courage, reſerued that little which was in them, for the ſafeguard of themſelues, and not for the gaining of any notable victory. They had alſo in theſe ofen conflicts loſt all their Eraſbles, which are a deſperat kind of ſoldiors, fighting on horſeback without ſaddles, hauing onely a little piece of tapeſtrie vpon their horſes backes, and by the readineſſe of their horſes, do for a long time in one ſort maintaine their fight. They cary light darts
C made of ſtraight and faire canes, excellently well made, and ſtrongly armed: and their handy weapons are good ſables, or broad and ſharpe curtelaſſes. Theſe men a great while fought moſt valiantly in the laſt combates, but in fine were all ſlaine, except ſome few which caſt themſelues into Danubius, and were there drowned. The loſſe of which men much diſcouraged the Turks: for why, their ſeruice ſtood them in great ſtead in receiuing the enemies charges, and with their bodies couering of the Turkes ſquadrons in their greateſt perils and combats. Howbeit the Turks receiued not theſe loſſes without returning of ſome part thereof to vs again: For *Collonitz* had a little before fallen into great danger of his perſon, and loſt ſome of his followers in an enterpriſe of great moment, had the effect anſwered vnto the proiect thereof. While the Turks yet lodged in the iſle of VICEGRADE, he cauſed eight great
D field pieces to be ſo placed, as that therewith he ſo annoyed the Turkes, that they were about to haue forſaken the place. And the more to force them ſo to do, the ſecond of October hee embarked himſelfe with 600 Haiduckes, vpon the Danubius, and ſo by night with great ſilence landed neere vnto the enemies, thinking ſo vpon the ſudden to haue ſurpriſed them. Which for all that could not ſo ſecretly be done, by reaſon of the comming on of the day, but that the Turks were thereof aware: who therupon with great preaſe iſſued out of their trenches, and with all their force & power charged him. Againſt whom he made head, rather vpon a braue & conſtant reſolution, than vpon any confidence be had in his forces, not hauing men ynow to withſtand the leaſt part of his enemies. Which his ſo great reſolution ſo abated the Turks furie, as that they ſtood a good while in doubt to charge men ſo reſolued. The field
E pieces which he had brought ouer with him into the iſle, then ſerued him to good purpoſe, beating them backe with their murdering bullets, who with their number thought to haue ouerwhelmed him. Which good help oppoſed againſt the number of the enemies, for a time balanced the victorie, and wrought the death of many on both ſides. This maner of fight endured the ſpace of two houres, maintained more by reſolution, than by ſtrength and power. At length for all that the Turks with their number preuailing, the Chriſtians therwith rather oppreſſed than vanquiſhed, forſaking their field pieces, diſorderly retired toward their boats. After whom the Turks eagerly following, in that purſuit ſlew 400 of the Haiduckes, the reſt with much ado recouering their boats, carying with them their Generall, by them hardly defended from the furie of the enemie. Which loſſe hapned not ſo vnto the Chriſtians, but that
F it was mingled with ſome loſſe of the Turks alſo, of whom the moſt forward and couragious were in that fight ſlaine, as was afterwards knowne by certaine priſoners of theirs afterwards taken, who made report of the loſſes by them there receiued. The Turks by this ſo deſperat & dangerous an attempt warned to preuent the like for the time to come, caſt vp great trenches in the iſle alongſt the bank of Danubius, wherin they placed certain of the Ianizaries & other their beſt ſoldiors, who there lay vntil the diſlodgement of the camp to go to lie before BVDA.

The Turks refuſe to come to a generall battell with the Chriſtians.

Eraſbles what manner of ſouldiors they be among the Turks.

Collonitz in going about to ſurpriſe the Turkes, with loſſe repulſed, and himſelfe endangered.

The

The Turkes had before built a bridge of boats at LAMASCIN, which gaue them passage into STIRIA, where they did great harme, for the strengthening whereof they had built at both ends thereof a strong fort, well furnished both with men and munition. This bridge so commodious for the Turkes, and hurtfull to the Christians, *Trantmestorf* Gouernour of STIRIA, and a great commaunder in those parts, with his Stirian troupes, and some good aid brought vnto him by the Countie *Serin*, vndertooke to breake. Vpon which resolution hee vpon the sudden approached one of the aforesaid forts, and so right furiously assailed the same, before they in the fort were well aware of his comming. In which doing he caused the greatest noise and stirre that was possible to be made with trumpets, drummes, and clattering of armor, as if it had bin some great armie imploied in that action, the more to terrifie the besieged. Which so great and dreadfull a noise ioyned vnto so braue an attempt, with so great courage begun, strucke such a terrour into the minds of the Turkes, that they without any great resistance quitted the place, and fled ouer the bridge to the other fort. Of which forsaken fort the Christians became masters, and withall speed prosecuting their good fortune, presently drew out therof three canons, and therwith battered the other fort. In which the Turkes, hauing no other place of refuge to flie vnto, nor hope of safetie but in their last valour, so well behaued themselues, as that the christians had much ado to force them. Howbeit a breach being made by the fury of the canon, and scaling ladders set vp, the fort was on euery side assaulted, which the Turkes for the space of fiue houres so valiantly endured, as that it was hard to say who should preuaile or haue the better. In this assault were many on both sides slaine, the Turkes not being to be ouercome, but with the losse both of their liues and honor; nor the Christians able to retire without losing the fruit of that their so great and rich an enterprise: So that the assault was with great resolution on both sides maintained, the Turks fighting for their liues, and the Christians for their honor, vntil that at last the Turks with much slaughter ouercome, the fort was by the Christians taken, and most of the Turks therin being slain, and the rest taken prisoners, both the forts were forthwith rased, and the bridge broken, which before had serued for an ordinary passage for the Turkes to forrage and spoile the Christian territories by. The boats wherof the bridge was made were all burnt, and some great ordnance therein found, broken in pieces, and cast into the riuer.

The bridge of Lamestin taken and broken by the Gouernor of Stiria.

At the same time LVGAZE, a place of great importance for the seruice of the emperour, and so neere vnto the Turks, as that they could hardly attempt any thing thereabouts, but that it might from thence be discouered & knowne, was by the Transyluanians deliuered to *Basta*, Generall for the emperor in that country. From which place he sending out certain scouts toward BELGRADE, they brought in with them certain prisoners; who being examined, said, that *Hassan Bassa* the Turks Generall in HVNGARIE, had writ to *Giaffer Bassa* the Gouernor of TEMESVVAR, That he should only attend to the preseruation of his towne, without attempting any thing farther against the Christians, the present estate of their affaires so requiring: And that hauing reuictualled BVDA, his purpose was for this yere to returne, in hope of some good peace to be ere long concluded betwixt the great Sultan and the Emperor.

Lugaze a strong place deliuered to Basta.

The two armies of the Turkes and of the Christians, lay still neere the one of them vnto the other, the Turkes carefull for the reuictualling of BVDA, and the Christians still intentiue to their doings, and desirous in what they might to hinder and frustrate the same. Which because they could no way better doe, than by offering of them battell, they thereupon generally resolued, vpon a Friday being the seuenteenth of October, the day by them assigned for the battell (hauing by the shooting off of three canons giuen warning vnto the souldiors throughout the campe, for the preparing of themselues first toward God, and then to the seruice of their prince, after they had well refreshed themselues) in good order tooke the field, and so stood ready ranged there, either to giue or to accept of battel. Before whom the countie *Ringrane* was sent forth with his regiment, about halfe the way betwixt the two armies, to discouer the mouing of the enemie, and to receiue his first charge, if occasion should so require. Whose scouts before sent forth, about noone discouered a troupe of horsemen come out of the Turks campe, about some businesse they had to do, but to them vnknown: whom the scouts supposing to haue been the forerunners of the Turkes armie, and by them almost surprised, in hast retired back again, & by their hasty retreat put the whole army in an alarme, which came brauely marching on, in hope now to haue come to trie the matter by true valour

The Christians offer the Turkes battell.

A lour, and by the fortune of a generall battell to haue made that day for euer famous by their victorie and the ouerthrow of their proud enemies. And in the heat of their so great courage like ynough it was for them to haue performed the same, had the Turks had but so much courage in them as to haue met them in the field, as was well hoped they now would. But they with their former losses discouraged, and resolued only vpon the safegard of themselues, and the victualling of BVDA, had no mind to enter into these honorable lists, but kept themselues close within the couert of their tents and the strength of their trenches. And so the Christians with a false alarme moued, and hauing for the most part of the day in vaine expected the comming forth of their enemies, returned into their campe deceiued of their expectation.

The Turks refuse to accept of battell offred them by the Christians.

The same day there was an espie taken, whom they which tooke him, thought to haue
B bin a Turke, howbeit he was found to be one of their owne men; by whom they were better enformed of the cowardise of the Turks, of their purpose for the shunning of battel, and of their resolution for the keeping of themselues within the safegard of their trenches, and that they so did, aswell for the losses they had before receiued, as for diuers other vnluckie accidents, which caused them to misdoubt some euill succes in the end & winding vp of this their expedition. Neuertheles, the Christians not greatly trusting to these reports, still kept their armie in readines, to giue their enemies battell vpon the least occasion offered them. Howbeit, that indeed they had no great cause of feare, the Turks hauing no desire at all to come to a generall battell: so that in stead of great effects that were expected, the time passed but in light skirmishes and vaine alarmes betwixt the two armies; vntill that at length the Turks hauing
C by the riuer sufficiently stored the citie of BVDA with victuals, the great Bassa secretly by night rose with his armie, and so retired toward BELGRADE. Which so base a retreat differed not much from a cowardly flight, being with such silence made vnder the darke couert of the night, as that the Christians had therof no perceiuing vntill that the were quite departed and gone. This victualling of BVDA & of some other few places of the Turks in HVNGARIE, was all that the great Bassa did this yeare with his great armie, whereas at his first comming it was giuen out, that he would therwith take both STRIGONIVM and PESTH from the Christians.

The great Bassa hauing victualled Buda, secretly by night riseth with his armie, and so retireth out of Hungarie

The next day the hastie and sudden departure of the enemie being perceiued, the Generall of the Christians called togither the colonels and other great commaunders of the armie, to consult with them, what were best to be done in so vnexpected an occurrent? Of whom, some
D were of opinion, That it was best forthwith in all hast to pursue their fearefull enemies: othersome for many reasons dissuading the same, and othersome withal propounding some other notable exploits to be taken in hand. But in conclusion, the safest point was resolued vpon, which was, not to hazard any their troupes in pursuing of their flying enemies, who were hardly to be ouertaken; but now immediatly after their departure to attempt the taking in of some one of their strong holds: where, amongst others that were propounded, HATVVAN was thought to be the most necessary place, being so seated, as that beside the great harme it did to the Christians thereabout, it much hindered both aduertisements and victuals to be brought vnto PESTH. Which exploit resolued vpon, they forthwith rased the fort of *S. Andrew*, & the fort by them built in the isle of VICEGRADE, because they should not stand the Turks in any
E stead after their departure, and so with all their power set forward toward HATVVAN. This towne is seated beyond the riuer of Danubius toward the North, about eight leagues from BVDA, crossing the way to TRANSYLVANIA and CASSOVA, vpon a faire and euen plaine, neere vnto a great and deepe marish, and was sometime defended with good & strong wals, with a castle, and three large & deep ditches; for a long time in the power of the Turks, and which without losse a great while held out against the valiant baron *Teuffenbach*, by whom it was most straitly in vaine besieged: vntill that afterward it was againe besieged by *Maximilian* the Archduke, the emperors brother, then generall of his armie in HVNGARIE in the yeare 1594, vnto whom it was by composition surrendred, after it had for a certain space bin by the Turks notably defended: who considering the harm this place did vnto the emperors territories, by
F reason of the situation thereof, wherin a great and strong garrison of the Turks alwaies lying, forraged all the Christian territories as farre as the riuer Vague, yea, and oftentimes tooke booties as far as STRIGONIVM, and by spoiling of all that side of HVNGARIE, caused the countrie to pay contribution as far as TERNAVIE, standing within foure leagues of the mountaines which seperat HVNGARIE and MORAVIA: all irreparable losses to the Christians, and

The Christians after the departure of the Turks resolue to besege Hatwan

Hatwan taken and dismantled by Maximilian the Archduke in the yeare 1594.

hardly to be auoided: For which reaſons he cauſed it then to be diſmantled, and to be made vnſeruiceable for the wars. After which time for all that, the Turks, for the commodiouſnes of the place, had with great labour againe new fortified the ſame, with wals made with great pyles of wood and faggots, with earth rammed in betwixt them; a ſtronger kind of fortification, and better able to withſtand the furie of the cannon, than are wals of ſtone: in which ſort the Turks vſe moſt commonly to fortifie ſuch places as they mean to defend, and which oftentimes coſt much for the Chriſtians to gaine the ſame from them. G

Hatwan again fortified by the Turkes.

This place thus fortified, and both with men and munition well furniſhed, and with all things needfull ſtored, was able to endure a great and long ſiege, whereunto the garriſon therein was as reſolutely ſet downe, as were the Chriſtians to attempt it: where now, at their firſt comming vnto it, a part of the Italian regiment, aſſiſted with 300 Lanſquenets, vnder the leading of Countie *Sultze*, and *Graſold* Generall of the Italians, were appointed to go before the reſt of the armie, and to begin to make the approches: which they did by forcing of a water-mill, driuen by the water of the mariſh, not paſt a musket ſhot from the towne. Wherein while they were buſied, the Turks ſallying out of the towne, came to fight hand to hand with the Chriſtians, and had with them a ſharpe combate, the Turks fighting for the defending of the place and of their liues, and the Chriſtians for the gaining of the ſame, and for their honour. Which ſo contrarie a reſolution in that conflict coſt the liues of many, and amongſt others the life of *Graſold*, General of the Italians, there ſlaine with a harquebuſe ſhot, vnto the great hurt of the whole armie, but eſpecially of the Italians, now depriued of ſo great & expert a commaunder. At laſt for all that the Turkes were enforced confuſedly to retire againe into the towne, hauing in this ſallie loſt a number of their men alſo. The Chriſtians neuertheleſſe hauing driuen the Turkes backe into the town, went forward with their buſineſſe in making their approaches, and placing their gabions to couer their cannon: wherein the Turks with their great and ſmall ſhot did them great harme, but eſpecially with their murthering pieces, charged with nailes and other ſmall pieces of yron. Howbeit, by the comming of the Lo. *Ruſſworm* with the reſt of the armie, the approches were the next day brought on, & the batterie planted ſo neere vnto the towne, as that the Turkes could not without moſt manifeſt danger and loſſe any more ſally out, to trouble the Chriſtians in their works. The firſt inconuenience the beſieged felt, was the want of water, which through the diligence of our men was ſoone taken from them, the cannon right furiouſly battering the wals in the mean ſpace. Wherewith the Turks diſcouraged, and now out of hope to be relieued, thought it not beſt for them to expect either whileſt a breach were made, or an aſſault giuen, but by parley to preuent theſe dangers, in hope ſo to come to ſome eaſier compoſition, while yet they ſtood in their whole ſtrength. And ſo parley by the Turkes demanded, and by the Chriſtians granted, and hoſtages for the ſuretie thereof on both ſides giuen, they ſent two of the chiefe men amongſt them to entreat of the ſame: who at the firſt demaunded, That their liues and libertie ſaued, they might with bag and baggage depart. Whereunto anſwere was giuen them, That they ſhould only with their liues and libertie be gone, with ſome few hundreds of their worſt horſes of courteſie giuen them, to carie them to ſuch place as they meant to retire themſelues vnto, and to deliuer into the hands of the Chriſtians all ſuch renegats as were in the towne.

Hatwan beſieged by the Chriſtians.

Graſold general of the Italians ſlaine.

The Turks in Hatwan craue parley.

Now the beſieged Turks carrying yet the markes of the crueltie by the Wallons exerciſed vpon them in the former ſiege, when as the ſame town was by force taken, & filled with dead bodies of all ages & ſex, and doubting now this ſecond ſhipwreck, with like miſerie threatned vnto them by the Chriſtian Generall, if they ſhould expect the dreadfull euent of a generall aſſault, accepted of theſe hard conditions, ſeing no better could be obtained; & ſo couenanting, that they with their families, their liues, and liberties ſaued, might with a ſafe conuoy bee conducted vnto ſome place of ſurety within their own territory, they promiſed to giue vp the town. Which agreement on both parties reſolued vpon, they ful of ſorrow and heauines with their families departing out of the town the 29 of Nouember, were by colonel *Andaſt*, with certain Huſſars, ſafely conducted to Solnoc. The Chriſtians entring the town, found therin great ſtore of victuals & munition, the houſes full of corne, and other neceſſaries, & the ſhops ſtored with weapons, ſhot & pouder, with 24 pieces of great ordnance ready mounted, which might haue well ſufficed for the defence of the place. But all theſe things are but acceſſories vnto one principall, that is to ſay, to reſolution, without which they are but of ſmal force, and

Hatwan yeelded vnto the Chriſtians.

with

A with which they are able to doe much. Beſide that, the place it ſelfe thus furniſhed well conſidered, ſeemed almoſt impoſſible to haue beene forced; but eſpecially now that Winter was come on, which might haue brought a thouſand ſtormes and difficulties, by the Chriſtians not to haue beene endured: So that euery man beholding the ſame, with his eyes caſt vp towards heauen, gaue God the praiſe, for taking away the Turkes courages in their ſo great aduantages, and encreaſing of the Chriſtians in their no leſſe difficulties: vnto whom the glorie of this victorie was wholly attributed, ſeeing that contrarie to all apparance and mans forces he had giuen to the Chriſtians the victorie, no way able by their owne forces to haue bin gained. But God which in his prouidence from heauen beholdeth all things vpon earth, diſpoſeth of the ſame as he ſeeth beſt for his glorie, and the welfare of his: ſo that in this action he
B was the only pilot which brought this our ſhip into the hauen of health; for the haires of our head are of him numbred, and euen the leaſt creatures vpon earth are by him regarded.

Into this new gained towne the Chriſtian Generall put a good and ſtrong garriſon of a thouſand Lanſquenets and fiue hundred Hungarians, part horſemen, and part footmen, for the keeping of the place, and of the countrie thereabout: Which done, he retired with his armie toward PESTH, which he relieued with victuals, and ſtrengthened with the troups of the colonels *Collonitz*, *Geisberg*, and *Rouer*, who were there billited to paſſe the Winter, & to preſerue the place againſt the deuiſes and enterpriſes of the Turks of BVDA, who were ſtill deuiſing and practiſing for the regaining thereof.

The time of the yeare for ſouldiors any longer to keepe the field now paſt, and the great
C armie of the Turks riſen and gone, the Lo. *Ruſſworm* breaking vp his armie neere vnto STRIGONIVM, cauſed all the enſignes by him this yere gained from the Turks, euen 64 in number, to be gathered togither, all very braue and gallant; all which he ſent with great pompe and triumph to VIENNA, for a preſent to the Archduke *Matthias*; who receiued them with great thankes giuen both vnto the General that ſent them, and the ſouldiors that had gained them, and bountifully rewarding them that had brought them. They of VIENNA at the ſame time highly commending the Generall, and not a little reioycing to ſee thoſe ſame enſignes, now in their power within the citie, which not long before had proudly braued them in the field.

The L. Ruſſworm breaketh vp his army, and ſendeth the enſigns gained from the Turks, for a preſent to the Archduke Matthias.

Now after the breaking vp of the Chriſtian armie, a great number of inſolent and ſeditious ſoldiors, eſpecially of the regiment of colonel *Altmein*, roming vp & down the countrie
D to ſeeke for bootie, moſt cruelly rifled and ſpoiled the countrie villages, with the inhabitants therein, as well the Chriſtians as the Turkes, ſparing no more the one than the other: whoſe outrage not otherwiſe to be ſtaied, they were by commandment from the Emperor by force charged at WIDHOF, and 230 of them being brought in priſoners to VIENNA, foure and thirtie of them were there for example hanged, and the reſt as men not worthie of entertainment caſhiered.

Inſolent ſoldiors iuſtly puniſhed.

The time of the yere hauing (as we ſaid) broken vp the army of the Chriſtians, the regiment of the countie *Reingrane* was put in garriſon into the villages of CHIANTE and TERNAVIE, alwaies at hand with the enemies, as fitteſt to repulſe them. Theſe ſoldiors were alwaies kept in doings, ſtill fighting whileſt others were at peace, and mannaging their armes, whileſt others
E hanged theirs by the wals. For beſide the trobles they had with the Turks, their nigh but bad neighbors, the very inhabitants of the countrie (who held all that might hurt them, for enemies, were they neuer ſo much their friends) oftentimes, & that for little or no occaſion at all, tooke vp armes, & right furiouſly charged them as their mortall enemies. Of which combats there was no end, the countrie peſants ſtill ſtriuing to rid themſelues of ſuch gheſts. So that theſe valiant men ſtill enforced to buy their bread with the price of their bloud, as men become deſperat, vſed the Chriſtians as they did the Turks, diuiding all things with them by the ſword. But in theſe ſmall and often fights mo men were ſlaine & loſt than would haue bin in a general battel, ſome good number either on the one ſide or the other being euery day ſlain: Which daily inconueniencies cauſed theſe ſoldiors to reſolue to go to ſeeke their liuing elſe-
F where, rather than in the midſt of the graues of their fellowes. Wherunto they were the rather induced, for that but a little before the troupe of captaine *Clinchampe*, the beſt and braueſt of the whole regiment, was one night right furiouſly aſſayled, and almoſt ſurpriſed by the countrie peſants. Wherefore they departed out of HVNGARIE into AVSTRIA without victuals, apparel, or mony, their pay due vnto them for 17 months being kept from thé. A cruelty full of

The ſouldiors of the regiment of the Ringraue euill billited, by extremities driuen to prouide for themſelues.

couetousnesse, and a couetousnesse full of crueltie, by wrong and hard dealing to leaue those G
men to the desperat extremitie of hunger, who for our safetie had exposed themselues to all
manner of danger. For if the Prince (as he may of right) demaund the liues of his subiects in
his seruice, as bound vnto their loyaltie, they may also of right require due prouision for
their maintenance: of which two offices where one faileth, the whole state must needs fall.
For prouiding wherefore, great was the wisdome of *Augustus*, who laid vp the publicke re-
uenue apart by it selfe, to defray the publick charge; and that which was his owne priuat, to
serue his owne priuat vses.

These poore souldiors thus resolued, craued leaue of the bishop of Bresbovrg to passe by
the suburbs of his towne, without doing therein any harme: which their request he courte-
ously granted; and so according to their word they indeed passed, not so much as once wish- H
ing for that they durst not once touch. Which their so quiet passage caused the bishop to fur-
nish them with boats, wherby to passe ouer the riuer which diuideth Hvngarie frō Avstria.
The pesants of Austria seeke by force to stay the passage of the souldiors of the Reingraues regiment into their countrie.
Which once knowne vnto the pesants of Avstria, they assembled themselues together, to
the number of 1500 men, and cast vp a fort vpon the bank of the riuer, with three faulconers
in it, resolutely set down to keepe them from comming ouer into their country. Which their
so forward a resolution for a while staied these men of warre: who to auoid further trouble,
courteously requested passage of these men, promissing all their good behauior in passing qui
etly through their countrie: which the carles in most churlish manner refused to graunt, with
proud threats of the danger of their liues, if they should by force attempt the passage, & not
with quietnesse returne. With which brauadoes of the countrie churles these troupes of mar- I
tiall men prouoked, resolued by force to remoue these lets, and by the sword to open them-
selues a way: so turning the head of their baggages toward the fort, as if they would haue
there passed, while the pesants stood gazing vpon them, *Camgaillard* with his troupe of horse-
men vnperceiued of them tooke the riuer a little higher vp, and by swimming gained the far-
ther banke; after whom captaine *Clinchamp* with his troupes immediatly followed also. In
which passage they were much troubled with great flakes of yce, with the great deepnesse of
the riuer, with the steepnesse of the bankes where they were to land, and many other difficul-
ties: all which they regarded not, to be reuenged of their enemies. These valiant men being
The churles of Austria ouer-throwne.
got ouer, vppon the sudden surprising these rude countrie churles, and furiously charging of
them, quickely ouerthrew them and cut them in pieces: of whom, 300 were lefe dead vpon K
the place, as many mo hurt, & the rest put to flight. Which was no sooner done, but that the
rest of the troupes of the regiment without let passed the riuer, and so ioyned themselues vnto
their victorious companions. Seuen weekes this regiment stayed in Avstria, and so longer
had, but that vpon the complaint and request of the nobilitie & of the people of the countrie,
they hauing for 17 months pay due vnto them receiued nine moneths pay, were licenced to
depart. Which was a great ouersight in them that had to do therewith, at once to disband so
many good men, as had not their like amongst all the rest of the emperors garrison; & who
being staied with a little mony, might with their good seruice haue stood the emperor in great
stead: as by proofe afterward appeared; when as the emperour by necessitie forced to call
them togither againe, could not of all that strong regiment raise but three companies; the rest L
being some of them returned into their owne countries, other some of them gone to serue in
other places, or else otherwise dispersed. Of which three companies, the first was giuen to
Camgaillard, the second to *Baltazar Marades*, a Spaniard, and the last to *Iohn Paul* an Italian:
Which three captaines had before commanded in the Reingraues regiment, and done the
Emperor good seruice, as they did afterward also.

Diuers happie conflicts of the Christians with the Turkes and Tartars.
The rest of this yere ended in Hvngarie, with diuers other encounters & combats, for-
tune therein still fauouring the Christians. As, 300 Haiducks, going forth to seeke for bootie,
by good hap chanced to meet with a companie of the Turks being very rich, and diuers of
them men of good account; amongst whom, the Gouernor of Mohatz was one: all whom
these Haiduckes cut in pieces; to be born withall, for shewing no fauor vnto them, who most M
cruelly had before spoyled them of their parents, lands, and goods. Besides that, they tooke
the Gouernour of Copan, with his sonne, and 24 other very rich Turkes, with 170 horses of
seruice, and eight fat Oxen prepared for their prouision, Which fat booties drew forth other
souldiors also to seeke out for the like: of whom, certain troups of the Christians going forth
toward

A toward BATSVVAR, a towne of the enemies, met the Gouernour of the towne and of the territorie thereabout come out with his garriſon againſt them; where betwixt them was made a right hot and ſharpe fight: wherein at the firſt encounter the Turks ſeemed to haue the better, but in the end the Chriſtians taking courage, ouerthrew them and cut them in pieces. In this conflict diuers priſoners were taken, with three enſignes, & many other rich ſpoiles. This happie exploit was ſeconded with newsagreeable thereunto out of MOLDAVIA, whereof the Vayuod by a curror ſent of purpoſe, gaue our men to vnderſtand; which was, of the generall ouerthrow of the Tartars: who hauing with all manner of crueltie waſted the countrey, had in the end made the inhabitants ſo deſperate, that repoſing more comfort in a ſpeedy death,
B the end of all miſeries, than in a lingring life, turmoiled with ſo many intollerable calamities, they generally arming themſelues, ioyned themſelues with their Vayuod, ſo to trie their laſt fortune. With which reſolution they in battell encountring with the Tartars, gaue them a great ouerthrow, a number of them being left dead vpon the field, and the reſt put to flight, and chaſed out of the countrey, the Moldauians notably reuenging their former loſſes, and in their owne territories burying their enemies.

Neither were the Turks in this cold and hard time of the yeare on their parts idle, but ſtill plotting of their great and notable deſignes, euen through the middeſt of the froſt and ſnow to haue been performed. The Baſſa *Beged* hearing that the Lo. *Baſta* lay with his troups diſperſed in the countrey about LIPPA, in great ſecuritie by reaſon of the extremitie of the time,
C altogether vnfit for men to keepe the field: and therefore imagining it to be no great matter, now amidſt the froſt and the ſnow to ſurprize him, acquainted three other of the Turks captaines and commanders therabout with the matter, who liking well thereof, with 5000 men all together ſet forward, in hope to haue vpon the ſudden ſurpriſed him. But he an old expert captaine, and not ſo careleſſe as they ſuppoſed, had his ſecret ſpies ſtill abroad among them: by whom he, aduertiſed both of their purpoſe and of their comming, reſolued in both to preuent them; and to that end hauing called together his forces, ſet forward to meet them in the mid way, and ſo before they were aware to intercept them; neither failed he of his purpoſe: for meeting with the Turkes fearing no ſuch matter in place of diſaduantage, and vpon the ſudden charging them round, they, deceiued of their expectation for the eaſineſſe of the vi-
D ctorie promiſed them, as men diſmaied after ſome ſmall reſiſtance fled. Aboue eleuen hundred of them being in this conflict ſlaine, and the reſt put in rout, and driuen into the riuer Maruze, there periſhing; ſome few only by ſpeedie flight with the Baſſa eſcaping. Twentie of the Turkes captaines were here taken, with ſome few other priſoners, and a great and rich bootie.

Beged Baſſa thinking to haue ſurpriſed the L. Baſta, is himſelf by him ſurpriſed and ouerthrowne.

Much about the ſame time *George Barbell*, one of the chief of the rebels in TRANSYLVANIA, acknowledging his fault, came to CLAVDIONOPLE, to take the oath for his allegeance vnto the Emperor: by whoſe example a great number of others moued, came in and ſubmitted themſelues alſo: and haply he being a good & valiant captaine had done much more for the ſeruice of the emperor, had he not bin by death preuented; for ſhortly after he ſuddenly died.
E The other rebels moued neither by his example, nor by the comming in of ſome others of their companions, made choiſe of one *Bethlin Habor* (a moſt renouned captain, and of great reputation amongſt the ſoldiors) for their chieftaine: who proud of ſuch a choice, immediatly after ſent an herauld vnto *Baſta*, to wil him forthwith to deliuer vnto him all the countrie of TRANSYLVANIA, as to him that was of late choſen prince therof, or els to denounce vnto him moſt cruell war: and to tell him farther, That if he refuſed ſo to do, he was in good hope by his owne forces, without any aid from the Turke, to driue him out, being well aſſured of the faithfull deuoir of the Tranſyluanians. At whoſe proud threats *Baſta* ſmiling, only ſhewed him his open hand in ſigne that he accepted of his proud threats, not vouchſafeing him any other anſwer at all. This glorious boaſter bare himſelfe the higher, for that he had maried the
F widow of *Moyſes* the chief rebel, wherby he had gained both great riches, & much credit and reputation among the common people, both which hee enioyed but a while: for the fourth day after that he was maried he died, and ſo was buried. *Baſta* neuertheleſſe, for the better aſſuring of the ſtrong places of TRANSYLVANIA, put into them garriſons of his moſt faithfull Germanes, and diſpatched *Crauſenich* away toward the Emperor, to requeſt of him a ſupplie of a thouſand horſemen and foure thouſand foot, without which he thought it impoſſible to

Bethlin Habor choſen chiefe of the rebels in Tranſyluania.

Baſta his ſcornefull anſwer vnto the meſſenger of Bethlin.

Bassa sendeth for new supplies vnto the Emperour for the keeping of Transylvania.

p reserue and keepe the prouince troubled with so great factions, and so earnestly sought after by the Turkes: And farther to certifie him, that the little forces he had left was not sufficient for the keeping of the places beset with so many enemies, and all lying as it were in their mouthes: That the prouince swarmed with seditious people, one thrusting another forward in mischiefe and rebellion, as the eares of wheat driuen with the wind doe one another in the field: That the Turkes were alwayes making of new incursions, which hee was not able to represse without greater forces, which he expected from his Maiestie with all speed possible; protesting, for want of such supply to be in time sent vnto him, to lay the losse of the prouince vpon the negligence of them which might and ought to haue sent the same, acquiting himselfe for the losse thereof, seeing that hee durst not to repose any trust or confidence in the faith of the citizens and inhabitants of the townes although they were disarmed, for hauing so often falsified their faith, and put their prouince in danger of vtter ruine and destruction. But leauing these troubles of TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE, let vs a little step back to see what happened among the Turkes themselues, after the departure of the great Bassa with his armie out of HVNGARIE.

Mahomet the great Sultan had (as is before declared) by great promises made vnto his rebels, sought to appease the rebellion in ASIA, and by that meanes drawne *Zellaly*, one of the chiefe rebels, with twelue thousand good soldiors out of ASIA in EVROPE, and so into his warres in HVNGARIE, vpon an assured promise made vnto him of the gouernment of BOSNA: the hope whereof, as it had drawne him into these late warres, so had it also encouraged him with his gallant troupes of most braue horsemen to doe the best seruice he could, so to shew himselfe worthie of so honourable a preferment: which he right notably performed during all the time of the Bassaes abode in HVNGARIE, to his owne great commendation, and the furthering of his lord and masters seruice. But the Bassa with his weake armie tetired out of HVNGARIE, and the Bassa himselfe returned toward CONSTANTINOPLE: *Zellaly* with three thousand horse withdrew himselfe into his promised gouernment of BOSNA, to possesse himselfe thereof: and being come neere to BAGVALVE, the chiefe towne of that prouince, he there encamped in a faire large medow, within sight of the citie. Now *Zeffer Bassa*, then Gouernour of the prouince, and not as yet thereof discharged, seeing this rebell thus to encroach vpon his charge, as if he would euen by force intrude himselfe thereinto, with all speed called together his garrisons and men of warre (euer readie at his beck) and so went forth against *Zellaly*, with a purpose to haue quickly, and without any great trouble, cut him with his so small a companie all in pieces. But the old rebell not ignorant either of his owne weakenesse, or of the Bassaes strength, hauing himselfe lost the best part of his forces before in HVNGARIE (as he was a man of no lesse wisedome than courage) resolued now to attempt by policie that which he well knew he could not by force effect. Wherefore he as a great Prince, vpon some braue resolution, began to encampe himselfe as if he had meant there to haue lyen, when as immediatly after vpon a faire night hauing caused diuers great fires to be made in his tents, as if it had beene to beguile the enemie with, he suddenly rose and departed. Of whose flight (for so it was like) the Bassa vnderstanding, and that he had forsaken his campe, hasted thither with all speed with his souldiors to take and pillage the same; not making any other account of him that was so fled and gone, but as of a base and faint-hearted coward, who for feare & want of courage had left both his camp and honour as a prey vnto his enemies; the spoile wherof the Bassa (being possessed of the camp) gaue vnto his soldiors; who glad of such a morsell, greedily swallowed it vp, which by and by after became their bane & vtter destruction: For whilest that they were charging themselues with booties, & euery man was thinking of his prey, nothing carefull of their common safetie, *Zelally* with his 3000 horse, all valiant and resolute men, suddenly the same night returning, surprised the Turkes being fast on sleepe, as buried in securitie, and cut them in pieces. Some of greater courage than the rest, began to make head, and to giue some shew of their valour, but ouercome with the generall feare, out of order, and not resolued what to do, they were quickly with the rest forced, ouerthrowne, and slaine. In this surprise there were of the Bassaes men six thousand found dead vpon the place. A very great slaughter to be made by so few men: But what cannot valiant resolution do against carelessenesse, lulled asleepe in the lap of securitie? The Bassa himselfe escaped by flight, with such as could get out of the campe to follow him.

Zelally commeth into Bosna

By policie ouerthroweth Zeffer Bassa the Gouernour, and possesseth it himselfe.

Now

A Now *Zellaly* well knowing how to vſe his victorie, marched in haſt to all the chiefe places of the prouince, and with his forces more feared for their victorie than for their number, cauſed all the inhabitants of thoſe places, with moſt part of the reſt of the people of the countrey, to ſweare vnto him their obedience and fidelitie. In which doing he gathered together great ſtore of wealth, with a great number of braue horſes for ſeruice: all which he put into BALNALVC, a ſtrong towne, wherinto he in triumphant manner entred, with a crowne of laurell vpon his head, and his ſouldiors ſinging his praiſes amiddeſt the ſmoke of a thouſand pieces of great ordnance, which he cauſed inceſſantly to be ſhot off for the ſpace of two daies together: giuing it out withall (amongſt all the ioyfull feaſtes and triumphes, made for the
B magnifying and ſetting foorth of his praiſe and glorie) That his reſolution was, to take part with the Chriſtian emperour, if the great Baſſaes, or other his enemies, in great place in court, ſhould ſeeke to croſſe his deſires, or to formalize his actions or proceedings in this maner of the obtaining of his gouernment.

Now *Mahomet* doubting what this man, ſo well acquainted with rebellion, would do, had by diuers meſſengers ſent for him to CONSTANTINOPLE, after the breaking vp of the armie in HVNGARIE, there of his imperiall and infinit bountie, to receiue the honorable rewards of his good ſeruice and valour, the greatneſſe wherof he had (as he ſaid) alreadie vnderſtood by *Haſſan Baſſa* the Generall: which ſo bound him to the reward thereof, as that his deſire and pleaſure was, to grace him in court with his own hands, for the greater teſtimony of the loue
C he bare him, and of the eſteeme he had of him. But the craftie and miſtruſtfull rebell, doubting that theſe faire words were all but baits to draw him into his power, to the endangering or aſſured loſſe both of his life and libertie, ſhut his eares againſt theſe ſo ſweet charmes, and as a man well aduiſed, & one which knew that the hand of a prince iuſtly offended, is alwaies open for to puniſh his rebellious ſubiects, being once in his power, with as great iuſtice in puniſhing him, as he with wrong and diſloialtie offended him; would in no wiſe accept of the offer: but ciuilly anſwered, That he moſt humbly thanked the great Sultan, for his ſo great and honorable offers, and that he was ſo mindfull of him: but that he for his part deſired not any greater reward, for the ſeruices by him done, more than the gouernment which his Maieſtie had before promiſed him, whereof (according to which promiſe, which hee could not
D thinke, but to be agreeable to his good liking) he was now poſſeſſed, with a reſolution to hold and keepe the ſame for his Maieſties ſeruice. Which was as much in effect, as for a diſloyall ſubiect to talke with his angrie Soueraigne, with his hand vpon his ſword. But with this ſlie anſwer, ſuch as it was, Sultan *Mahomet* for all his greatneſſe, muſt as yet content himſelfe, for feare leaſt if he ſhould haue ſought to haue by force remoued him, hee might ſo haue raiſed a more dangerous rebellion in EVROPE, than was already in ASIA: *Zellaly* ſo politique and reſolute a man, and not to ſeek what to do in ſuch matters, being poſſeſſed of ſo great a gouernment, and the Chriſtian emperour at hand ready to haue backed him, if he ſhould vpon any diſcontentment haue reuolted.

Sultan Mahomet ſendeth for Zellaly to come vnto him to conſtantinople

Zellaly refuſeth to come to Conſtantinople at the great Sultans ſending for

The troubles of this yeare 1603 thus ouerpaſt, the beginning of the next was like vnto a 1604
E faire blooming tree, which promiſing great ſtore of fruit, but afterward blaſted with the extremitie of the weather, proueth in effect as barren, as it before ſeemed in hope fruitfull. For beginning with the ſoote Weſterne winds of peace, it ended with the ſterne Northren blaſts of warre. The Turks had oftentimes the laſt yeare made motion of peace, but eſpecially toward the end thereof; outwardly making ſhew of a great deſire and forwardneſſe in themſelues thereunto. Which buſineſſe the laſt yeare begun, was euen with the beginning of this yeare alſo effectually continued, that commiſſioners were on both ſides appointed to con-
F ferre and conclude vpon the ſame. Among theſe commiſſioners Colonell *Althem* was one, who to performe his charge, hauing taken with him the other commiſſioners deputed with him for this purpoſe, with certaine other captaines, embarqued himſelfe with them in 13 ſhips from STRIGONIVM, and from thence ſailing downe the riuer, landed with his traine in the iſland betwixt BVDA and PESTH. Of whoſe arriuall there the Turkes of BVDA aduertiſed, and on their part readie, came forthwith thither alſo, with all the outward ſhewes that might be, of their moſt earneſt deſire for the concluding of peace: whereas our men, who by a thouſand effects were aſſured of the vnfaithfulneſſe of the Turks, and that neceſſitie, and not the deſire of any quietneſſe, had drawne them to ſeeke for peace, to the contrarie ſhewed them-

Commiſſioners appointed to confer vpon a peace to be made betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turkes.

The cauſes which moued the Turkes to incline to peace

themſelues verie backward in this buſineſſe. For why, they knew right well, that the Turks had not taken this matter in hand, but to ouertake them, and by this time of peace to gaine a time of war more commodious and fit for their ambitious and cruell deſignes. They had the yeare before made ſufficient proofe of our forces, accompanied with good fortune, which cauſed them to deſpaire by ſtrong hand to vanquiſh and ouercome vs: beſides that they ſtill euerie houre in one place or other receiued a thouſand loſſes and croſſes from our garriſons; who diſtreſſed & anoyed them both with their forces, and with driuing of them vnto the extremitie of wants. Our men knew moreouer alſo, that the troubles of Asia as well from the rebels as from the Perſian which lay ſo heauie vpon the great Sultan, drew them to this neceſſitie, to ſeeke for a breathing time of peace, wherein to repaire that which was in their forces and ſtrength by wars impaired. And euen yet alſo the manner of the Turks demeaning of themſelues in this action, their delayes, their excuſes, & deferring from day to day to cõclude vpon ſome point of this treatie, gaue our men good cauſe to ſuſpect them of euill meaning, as men reſpecting their profit, more than their faith: and more ſubtil & cruell in all their actions, than honorable and valorous. The fift of Ianuary was the day by our men expected for the treaty, for as then the Baſſa of Buda had appointed with the reſt of the cõmiſſioners to come into the iſle, to heare what our commiſſioners ſhould demand, and to entreat of the peace. But he was too true an infidel to faile of his infidelitie, and ſo came not at all, but deceiued our men both of their hope and expectation. At length, in ſtead of himſelfe, letters were brought from him to colonell *Althem*, wherby he excuſed himſelfe for not comming; requeſting him with the reſt of the commiſſioners, to come ouer the riuer to Buda, the more commodiouſly for them to confer together, & ſo the better to conclude their negotiation. Now though *Althem* for the maieſtie of his prince, and the honor of the ſtate, ought not at the requeſt of theſe his enemies to haue put himſelfe into their power, but to haue ſtood faſt vpon the tearms of honor, yet to the end that the countrey of Hungarie, ſo miſerably ſpoiled with wars, ſhould not take occaſion to complaine of his negligence in this negotiation of peace, he reſolued to go to Buda, as the Baſſa had requeſted: deeming euery action tending to the hinderance of the common good, to be but in ſhew honourable, and indeed hurtfull. Vpon which reſolution he ſent before the gentleman of his ſtable, and his cooke, with a gentleman of the Turks, ſent but the day before from the Baſſa: which men going aboord together, were aſſailed with ſuch a cruell tempeſt vpon the riuer, that neither the skill of the watermen, nor goodneſſe of the veſſell, was able to reſiſt the force therof, ſo that the boat was ſunke, & the men drowned. An euil preſage of the peace to be made, the raging waters as it were foreſhewing the troubles to come. But this tempeſt by the ſacrifice of theſe poore drowned men appeaſed, *Althem* and *Geisberg*, two of the chiefe commiſſioners, embarqued themſelues, & ſo paſſed ouer the riuer to Buda. At whoſe arriuall the Turkes gaue, in ſhew, a thouſand teſtimonies of their ioy for their comming. Neither did the Germans refuſe their kind offered courteſies, but largely fed of the good cheere, and filled themſelues with the good wines, whereof the Turks had giuen them plentie: and they again vſing them as kindly, as if they had been their brethren, and conuerſing with them as with their own countreymen. Amiddeſt this carowſing and platters full of good cheere, the propoſition of peace, which the Turkes meant to demand, were ſerued in alſo, and a truce for 12 dayes demaunded to conſider of the matter: during which time it ſhould be lawfull for euery man without let freely to come & go whither they would: which was forthwith on both ſides agreed vpon. And for better teſtimonie of the Turks true meaning in this their negotiation of peace, the Baſſa in the preſence of our commiſſioners diſpatched a courrour toward the great Sultan, to aduertiſe him of this buſineſſe, & of the proceeding therein, according to the commaundement by him before giuen. Which he did, to cauſe our men to beleeue, that the great Sultan himſelfe was deſirous of peace, and that his captaines well affected thereunto, were willing to further the ſame. Which done, the Baſſa preſented vnto colonell *Althem* two caſes full of Turks armes, of all manner of faſhions, verie rich, and cunningly wrought; both carried by a mule, with furniture for an horſe, embroydered with gold and pearle, verie ſumptuous and rich, as a preſent from the great Sultan, his Lord and Maſter, to the Emperour. And for the Archduke *Matthias*, hee preſented vnto the colonell, a robe of purple veluet, with ſleeues cunningly embroydered with gold and pearle, emboſſed with fine and curions figures, cunningly wrought with the needle: for

The Baſſa of Buda faileth to meet the Chriſtian commiſſioners according to his promiſe.

An euill preſage of the future peace.

The Chriſtian commiſſioners courteouſly entertained at Buda.

A truce for twelue daies agreed vponbe twixt the Turks and the Chriſtians.

Preſents by the Turkes giuen to the Chriſtian commiſſioners.

A for the rareneſſe therof as adminable to behold,as for the richneſſe thereof to haue been deſired: which was by euery man wondred at,when as ſhortly after it was by *Althem* preſented vnto the Archduke,together with other preſents from the Turks. Beſides that,the ſame Baſſa,in token of friendſhip,preſented vnto *Althem* himſelfe another very faire and rich robe:all the reſt of the commiſſioners receiuing alſo from the Baſſa other robes of leſſe value, but yet all verie rich and ſumptuous.

This buſineſſe for this time thus ended,and the truce for twelue daies concluded,the Chriſtian commiſſioners loaded with preſents,tooke their leaue of the Turkes, with the ſhewes of their good wils,and ſo returned backe againe to PESTH. Howbeit theſe the enemies faire preſents,ſtill ſauoured but of enmitie, being indeed but like to the preſents of *Hector* and *Aiax*,
B tending rather to war,than to peace.

Now the death of the moſt valiant and renowmed lord *Nadaſti*, which at this time happened,was another euill preſage of the bad ſucceſſe of this treatie of peace now at hand: who hauing of long been a barre vnto the Turks rage in that part of HVNGARIE where he dwelt, they now after his death with the violence of their forces, as with an headie ſtreame, bare downe before them all our good fortune in that prouince. This worthie man of great fame and deſert,had ſpent both his yeares and fortunes in the moſt honourable warres againſt the Turks: wherein he was ſo skilfull and expert,that he was of them feared as another *Huniades:* and of the Chriſtians honoured,as another *Matthias.* He had a thouſand times moſt valiantly fought againſt theſe miſcreants,and as many times foiled them, to the great benefit of the
C Chriſtian commonweale,the aduancement of the emperours ſeruice,and the reliefe of his diſtreſſed countrey. Theſe his heroicall deeds of armes, were engrauen vpon the gates of the townes and cities of HVNGARIE,and within the rockes of TRANSYLVANIA,hauing both in the one countrey and the other,right happily defeated theſe infidels. He had the honour to haue receiued the firſt incurſions and attempts of the Turks,at ſuch time as *Amurath* the third hauing perfidiouſly broken the league made with *Maximilian* the emperor,with his forces inuaded HVNGARIE: and was the firſt of all the Chriſtian chiefetaines that made head againſt them; and being by their ſudden comming in,by them almoſt ſurpriſed,performed yet great and worthie exploits and ſeruice againſt theſe faithleſſe men. It ſhould ſeeme that good fortune fauoured the countrey of HVNGARIE but onely in reſpect of him: for he being dead,
D it died alſo,burying it ſelfe as it were in his graue, and him in glory,not ſuffring him to grow old,and ſo to languiſh in the ruines of his natiue countrey. He died of a naturall death about fiftie and foure yeares old,moſt part wherof he liued in armes, ſtill charged with the burthen of his armour, and euen at the yeelding vp of the ghoſt yet breathing wars againſt theſe the enemies of the Chriſtian faith. His death was much lamented for of many faithfull Chriſtians,but eſpecially of his own tenants and ſubiects,whom he had alwaies kept and preſerued in ſafetie,and ſtill maintained them in all peace and tranquilitie,during all theſe former wars, the Turkes not daring once to aſſaile them,nor to enter into their territorie; being ſtaid from ſo doing by the bulwarke of his valour,right dreadfull to their attempts. Neuer Turke was buried in his territorie, no more than were the Barbarians vpon the bankes of the riuer Eu-
E rotas,his wiſdom had ſo wiſely prouided for the preſeruation of his people;and his valour ſo worthily aſſured them of their health & ſafetie. He was for his country another *Epiminondas* who made his towne not onely free from the armes and inuaſions of their enemies, but alſo dreadfull to their forces ſo long as he liued. The Turks on the contrarie part no leſſe reioyced for his death;but accounting his country now rich and plentiful(for that it had neuer bin by them ſpoiled) for their moſt aſſured prey, came now thither on all ſides,to haue taken the ſpoile therof,and therewith to haue enriched themſelues. But as they were about ſo to haue done,the valiant *Collonitz* honoring the remembrance of the lord *Nadaſti*,his late fellow and companion in armes,and holding that for his own which he had left,oppoſed himſelfe with his forces againſt theſe rauening wolues. So that they were no ſooner entred into this his ter-
F ritory,but that,contrary to their expectation,they were encountred by this new *Nadaſti*,and by him ſo ouerthrowne and cut in pieces, that for a good while after they durſt no more attempt the like.

The true and iuſt commendation of the lord Nadaſti.

The death of the lord Nadaſti.

This ſo great a loſſe of ſo worthie a man, was a little eaſed by the victorie about the ſame time gained by the Vayuod of VALACHIA againſt the Turks,ſpoyling of his countrey. This

valiant

The Turks ouerthrowen by the Vayuod of Valachia.

valiant champion not able longer to endure the proud insolencie and tyranny of those barbarour people, gathered together his troups of horsemen, with such other small forces as he had, wherof the Turks hauing made small reckoning, and therefore without order pillaging and ransacking his countrey, were when they least feared, by him vpon the sudden surprised and ouerthrowne, many of them being cut in pieces, a number moe taken prisoners, with all the spoils they had got, and the rest with such feare chased out of his country, as that being glad to haue escaped, they tooke no pleasure for a great while after, to looke into that his prouince againe. G

But to returne againe to the Commissioners for the peace to bee made betwixt the great Sultan and the Emperour, the Bassa of BVDA, to the end that the captaines and gouernors of the Turkes and castles belonging to the Turkes, being ignorant of the truce, should not continue their warlike actions, to the preiudice of his faith giuen, (immediately after the departure of the Christian commissioners from BVDA) dispatched diuers courrours towards them, to giue them knowledge thereof, and especially to the Gouernour of AGRIA, commaunding them from thenceforth to abstaine from their ordinarie incursions into their enemies territories, and from all other actions of hostilitie, and so to keepe themselues quiet, vntill they were from him otherwise commaunded. This little time of respite and breathing from warre, gaue great contentment vnto the poore countrey people, now with wars almost exhausted and spent. And now our souldiors during this time of truce laying their armes aside, ran by heaps with spades and shouels, vnto the places where our armies had sometime lyen encamped, there to delue and search to find such things as the armies rising in hast had haply left there buried. In which action they so busied themselues, as if they had been labourers in harueſt, so that nothing was in the fields to be seene, but men digging and remoning of stones and earth. A right fooliſh businesse, and yet so exceedingly pleasing the greedy minds of these couetous men, as that amiddest their such moiling labor, they accounted themselues at great ease. The Turks did the like also, mingled together with our men, and our men with them, without any iniurie doing one to another, either by word or deed. And no doubt it is, but that there they found more trauell than wealth, the greedie desire which drew them into this worke, deceiuing them in effect. And in this madde labour both the parties spent many daies without any let or iniurie doing, either on the one side or the other. The Christians of PESTH also passing ouer the Danubie, went into the victualling houses of the Turks at BVDA, whereinto they were suffered to enter, and at libertie to walke vp and down the town at their pleasure. And so the Turks of BVDA likewise came ouer the riuer vnto PESTH, and there walked at their pleasure, no man letting of them. Which manner of liuing was verie commodious and pleasing both for the one side and the other, the Christians buying of the Turks such things as they needed, and the Turks of them likewise. Through which quiet and peaceable intercourse and traffique, the people in generall, seemed euen in that short time, to haue forgotten a great part of their forepassed miseries, this little time of peace, ioyned with securitie hauing well assuaged the same. But while these mutuall and vnwonted courtesies thus passed betwixt the Christians and the Turks, and the minds of most men were filled with the expectation of an assured peace to haue bin euen forthwith concluded, the great Sultan *Mahomet* in the middest of all his pleasures and delights, died in his imperiall palace at CONSTANTINOPLE: the newes whereof being in the euening brought to BVDA, by a courrour of purpose sent from CONSTANTINOPLE, the Bassa forthwith sent the captain of the sentinels of BVDA, to Colonell *Geisberg* at PESTH, to assure him of the death of the great Sultan *Mahomet*, and of the succession of his young sonne *Achmat* into his empire, now already both at CONSTANTINOPLE, and other places therabout proclaimed Emperor. By which messenger he also wrote vnto colonell *Althem*, to certifie him both of the death of the great Sultan, and of the succession of his sonne, as also that he was by him commaunded to continue the negotiation of the peace, and so if he could to conclude the same. For the more euidence whereof, behold the copie of the letters themselues.

The small time of truce yeldeth great contentment both vnto the Christians and Turkes in Hungarie.

The death of the great Sultan Mahomet.

H I K L M

The letters of the Bassa of Buda to Colonell *Althem*.

Our due commendations remembred, noble Lo. Gouernour, our deere friend, and right honourable neighbour,

A *neighbour, Wee haue thought good to aduertiſe you, that the fourth day after your departure from this city wee receiued letters from* CONSTANTINOPLE, *giuing vs certainly to vnderſtand of the death of our moſt mightie Emperour* Mahomet, *and of the ſucceſſion of his ſonne Sultan* Achmat, *into all his dominions and empires: whereby we were, as his moſt humble ſubiects, ſummoned to yeeld vnto him, our oath of faithfull obedience, as vnto our rightfull lord, and lawfull ſucceſſor of his father into all his eſtates and dominions. Moreouer, hee particularly commandeth vs, to giue him certaine aduice and knowledge concerning the negotiation of the peace begun betwixt vs and you, by the commandement of his deceaſed father: promiſing to confirme and ratifie all that whatſoeuer he ſhall find done and agreed vpon concerning that buſineſſe, without any qualification at all. And that if the treatie bee not yet concluded and en-*
B *ded, that his will and deſire was, that it ſhould be ſo, according to the iuſt meanes and aſſurances, that wee ſhould faithfully and carefully together deuiſe. Whereof I ſhould readily giue him aduice and anſwer, which I haue deferred to do, vntill I haue receiued your anſwer, which may inſtruct me what to reſolue vpon. Which your anſwer I attending, haue ſtaied the courrour of* CONSTANTINOPLE, *to the intent he may carrie backe word vnto our Emperour, what he is to hope for concerning this buſineſſe, by the anſwer that you ſhall giue vs. Theſe are now therefore to aduize you, as our deere friend, and a moſt valiant Gouernour, to ſet downe that which you ſhall thinke to be moſt fit and neceſſarie in this buſineſſe: giuing you withall to vnderſtand, that our new Emperour is a man of reſolution euen in theſe his young yeares, wherein hee now flouriſheth, hating idleneſſe, deeming no loſſe greater, and altogether irrepa-*
C *rable, than the loſſe of time. If then you be ſtill deſirous, that the peace betwixt our Emperours ſhould be made and confirmed, I hope you will employ your whole endeuour with ſpeed to determine this moſt happie negotiation, and ſo neceſſarie for euery mans good. As alſo to auert farre from our owne heads, the curſes of the common people, for whom it is moſt needfull that the peace ſhould for their good and quietneſſe be concluded, ſeeing that the fruit thereof is expected to be vnto them happie, and the glorie thereof for euer ours, for hauing by our diligence and true endeuour concluded the ſame. Which maketh me to hope, that when you ſhall find your ſelfe readie to conclude this treatie, you will not bring with you men enemies vnto peace, or ſuch as ſhall diſſwade the ſame: but rather wiſe and graue men, which to the vttermoſt of their power may aduance the ſame; and find out good and reaſonable meanes to aſſure an eternall and faithfull peace betwixt our Emperours, vnto which ſo generall a good euery one of vs is in*
D *duetie bound to imploy the vttermoſt of his ſufficiencie and power. And this is that I haue of truth to write vnto you at this time. And ſo I bid you farewell.*

Now theſe letters although they moſt concerned the continuation of the treatie of peace, alreadie begun, and were too friendly from an enemie, to haue in them any good meaning, yet did they well aſſure the colonell, to whom they were written, of the death of the great and late Sultan *Mahomet*, and of the ſucceſſion of his ſonne *Achmat* into his Empire, to which end they are here ſet downe.

This late mightie Monarch, and now nothing but a loathſome lump of dead fleſh, the great Sultan *Mahomet* departed this life about the later end of Ianuarie, in the yeare of grace 1604 (according to their computation which begin the yeare at Chriſtmas) when hee had liued a-
E bout 44 yeares, and thereof raigned eight. He was a man of no great ſpirit, and yet exceeding proud, which was the cauſe, that hee was both the leſſe beloued and feared of his ſubiects in generall, but eſpecially of the Ianizaries and other his ſouldiours and men of warre, who ſcorning his looſe gouernment, and grieued to ſee euen the greateſt affaires of ſtate not onely imparted to women, but by them mannaged and ouerruled alſo (as by his mother, the Sultaneſſe his wife, and others) not onely rebelled againſt him, but were ofttimes in their rages about to haue depoſed him. He was altogether giuen to ſenſualitie and voluptuous pleaſure, the marks whereof he ſtill carried about with him, a foule, ſwolne, vnweldie, and ouergrowne bodie, vnfit for any princely office or function: and a mind thereto anſwerable, wholly giuen ouer vnto idleneſſe, pleaſure, and exceſſe, no ſmall meanes for the ſhortening of his dayes, which he ended
F with obloquie, vnregarded of his ſubiects, and but of few or none of them lamented.

Mahomet, why he was not regarded of his men of warre.

He had iſſue foure ſonnes, and three daughters maried vnto three of the great Baſſaes.

Mahomet his iſſue.

His firſt and eldeſt ſonne was called *Mahomet* (after his owne name) whom hee cauſed to bee ſtrangled in his owne ſight, vpon ſuſpition of aſpiring to the Empire, and conſpiring with the rebels in ASIA: but afterward finding him guiltleſſe, cauſed his bodie to be buried in his own ſepulchre, and hanged the Baſſa that had miſinformed him.

His

His ſecond ſonne died a naturall death, being yet verie young. G

His third ſonne was Sultan *Achmat*, who ſucceeded his father, and came to the empire by the vntimely death of *Mahomet* his eldeſt brother.

His fourth ſonne being then a youth of about ſixteene yeares old, was carefully kept within the Seraglio, with ſuch a ſtrait guard ſet ouer him, as that his name was not to bee learned, euen by a good vnderſtanding friend of mine, of late lying aboue three moneths together at CONSTANTINOPLE, who moſt curiouſly enquired after the ſame, hauing verie good meanes to haue learned it. He was reported to haue been long ſince murthered, howbeit that hee of late liued, but looking euery day to be by his brothers cruell commandement ſtrangled, which is accounted but a matter of courſe, and a death hereditarie to all the younger male children of the *Othoman* Emperours: the policie for the maintenance of their great empire entire and whole, ſo H requiring.

Mahomet, how he lieth buried at Conſtãtinople

His dead bodie lyeth buried at CONSTANTINOPLE, in a faire chappell of white marble (neere vnto the moſt famous and beautifull church of S. *Sophia*) for that onely purpoſe by himſelfe moſt ſumptuouſly built about fiftie foot ſquare, with foure high ſmall round towers, about the which are certaine ſmall round galleries of ſtone: from which the Turkiſh prieſtes and church-men, at certaine houres, vſe to call the people euery day to church: For they vſe no bels themſelues, neither will they ſuffer the Chriſtians to vſe any. But the top of this chappell is built round, like vnto the auncient Temples of the Heathen gods in ROME. In the middeſt of this chappell (being indeed nothing elſe but this great Sultans ſepulchre) ſtandeth his tombe, which is nothing elſe but a great vrne or coffin of faire white marble, wherein lyeth his bodie, couered I with a great couering of the ſame ſtone ouer it, made riſing in the middeſt, and ſtooping on each ſide: not much vnlike to the coffins of the auncient tombes of the Saxon kings, which are to be ſeene on the North ſide of the quire of S. *Pauls* Church, and in other places of this land: but that this coffin of the great Sultan is much greater and more ſtately than are thoſe of the Saxon kings; it being aboue fiue foot high at the end thereof, and by little and little falling toward the feet, couered with a rich hearſe of cloth of gold downe to the ground: his turbant ſtanding at his head, and two exceeding great candles of white waxe, about three or foure yards long, ſtanding in great braſſe or ſiluer candleſtickes guilded, the one at his head, the other at his feet, which neuer burne, but there ſtand for ſhew onely. All the floare of the chappell being couered with matts, and faire Turkie carpets vpon them. And round about this his toombe, euen K in the ſame chappell, are the like toombes for his wiues and children, but nothing ſo great and faire. Into this chappell, or any other the Turks churches or chappels, it is not lawfull for either Turke or Chriſtian to enter, but firſt hee muſt put off his ſhoocs, leauing them at the church or chappell gate, or carrying them in his hand. Neere vnto this chappell, and the great temple of *Sophia*, are diuers other chappels of the other great Turks, as of Sultan *Selim*, this mans grandfather, with his ſeuen and thirtie children about him: of Sultan *Amurath*, this mans father, with his fiue and fortie children entombed about him. And in other places not farre from them, are the chappels and ſepulchres of the reſt of the great Sultans, as of Sultan *Mahomet* the Great, of Sultan *Baiazet*, Sultan *Selym* the firſt, Sultan *Solyman*: all by theſe great Mahometane emperours built, whoſe names they beare. And being all of almoſt one forme and faſhion, haue eue- L rie one of them a faire hoſpitall adioyning vnto them, wherein a great multitude of poore people are daily ſtill relieued.

Some others of the great Baſſaes haue their chappels and ſepulchres, with their great and ſtately almes-houſes alſo, not much inferiour vnto thoſe of the great Sultans; as namely *Ibrahim Baſſa*, of all the Baſſaes that euer were among the Turkes the moſt magnificent, hath his ſtately chappell, ſepulchre, and almes-houſes, neere both in place and beautie, vnto that of *Solymans*. The Turkes burie not at all within their churches, neither are any at all buried within

The Turks burie not in their churches, neither within the walls of their cities, but in the fields.

the walles of the citie, but the great Turkiſh Emperours themſelues, with their wiues and children about them, and ſome few other of their great Baſſaes, and thoſe onely in chappels by themſelues built for that purpoſe. All the reſt of the Turks are buried in the fields; ſome of the better ſort in tombes of marble; but the reſt with tombe ſtones laid vpon them, or with two M great ſtones, the one ſet vp at the head, and the other at the feet of euerie graue, the greateſt part of them being of white marble, brought from the iſle of MARMORA. They will not burie any man where another hath beene buried, accounting it impietie to digge vp another mans

bones.

A bones. By reaſon whereof they couer all the beſt ground about the citie with ſuch great white ſtones. which for the infinite number of them, are thought ſufficient to make another wall about the citie. But not to ſtand longer vpon the maner of the Turks burials, leauing this great Sultan to reſt with his anceſtors, let vs now proſecute the courſe of our hiſtorie.

FINIS.

Chriſtian Princes of the ſame time with Mahomet the third.

- *Emperors of Germanie.* — *Rodolph the ſecond.* — 1577.
- *Kings* — *Of England* — *Queene Elizabeth.* — 1558. 45.
- *Kings* — *Of France* — *Henrie the fourth.* — 1589.
- *Kings* — *Of Scotland* — *Iames the ſixt, now King of great Britaine.* — 1567.
- *Biſhops of Rome* — *Clement the VIII.* — 1592. 13.
- *Biſhops of Rome* — *Leo the XI.* — 1605. 26. dayes.
- *Biſhops of Rome* — *Paul the V.* — 1605.

Charlotte Princess of Wales and Queen Dowager.	Married to King George the 3d.		1761.
Augusta Princess of Wales.	Died the 8th of February.		1772.
	Married to the Duke of Brunswick.		1764.
Caroline Princess of Wales.	Married to the Prince of Wales afterwards King George the 2d.		1705.
	Died the 20th of August.		1737.
	Married to Count Bernstorff.		1735.
	Died the 11th of July.		1760.
Amelia Princess of Wales.	Died unmarried the 31st of October.		1786.
Caroline Princess of Wales.	Died unmarried the 28th of December.		1757.
Frederick Prince of Wales.	Married the Princess Augusta of Saxe Gotha.		1736.
	Died the 31st of March.		1751.
George Prince of Wales.	Born the 4th of June.		1738.
Edward Prince of Wales.	Born the 15th of November.		1739.
Augusta Princess of Wales.	Born the 31st of August.		1737.
Elizabeth Princess of Wales.	Born the 30th of April.		1741.
Louisa Princess of Wales.	Born the 7th of December.		1749.
Caroline Princess of Wales.	Born the 11th of July.		1751.
Charlotte Princess of Wales.	Born the 29th of September.		1754.

Non tua te virtus, non ingens copia rerum
Te faciunt magnum, non tua dextra potens:
Maximus at ſuperûm, nutu qui territat orbem,
Hinc Achmate tibi gloria tota manat.
Hic tibi tunc tenero regalia ſceptra parauit,
Hic tibi nunc iuueni maxima quæq; dedit.
Non quod ſis alijs melior, multúmue beatus,
Sed quò ſis alijs terror & ira Dei.
Quid turges igitur, faſtùve ſuperbis inani?
Sic te cum miſeris numinis ira premat.
Pone modũ magnis, ni vis ſuccumbere magnus:
Maxima quæq; ſuo pondere preſſa ruunt.
Nec tibi promittes regnandi tempora longa
Te tua fata vocant, te tua fata premunt.

RICH. KNOLLES.

The ſame in Engliſh.

Thy vertue doth not make thee great,
nor yet thy ſtore of pelfe:
Nor is it thine owne mightie arme,
that doth exalt thy ſelfe.
But God aboue, who with a becke,
doth ſhake the world from hie,
From him all glorie doth proceed,
that doth belong to thee.
He gaue to thee then but a child,
thine empire large and wide;
And giues to thee, now growne a man,
all worldly bliſſe beſide:
Not that thou better art, or bleſt,
more than ſome others bee;
But that to plague the world for ſinne,
he hath appointed thee.
Why doeſt thou therefore ſwell with pride,
ſtill ſeeking after more,
Sith that there is for thee by God,
vengeance laid vp in ſtore?
Vnto thy greatneſſe bounds prefixe,
leaſt thou be crusht withall:
The greateſt things with their owne weight,
haue of the greateſt fall.
Nor promiſe to thy ſelfe, that thou
ſhalt long time liue and raigne:
Thy deſtinies doe call thee hence,
and thruſt thee on a maine.

ACHMAT

THE LIFE OF ACHMAT, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, EIGHT EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

MAhomet the late Sultan in the middeſt of his exceſſiue pleaſures by vntimely death taken away, *Achmat*, the elder of his two ſonnes yet liuing, who was to ſucceed him in the empire, to preuent the vſuall and inſolent tumults of the Ianizaries and other ſouldiors of the court at the change of the Emperours, and to take from them all occaſions of diſcontentment, by the counſell of the great Baſſes (before he tooke vpon him the gouernment) cauſed an exceeding great ſumme of mony (*viz.* two millions and an halfe) as a token of his bountie, to be diſtributed amongſt them: the Spahi and Silictars his chiefe horſemen receiuing thereof 10 crowns a man, with 5 aſpers a day more to encreaſe their pay; and the Ianizaries 30 crowns a man, and one aſper a day more of ordinarie pay: they of his court, but eſpecially the chiefe officers, taſting of this his bounteous liberalitie alſo. With which ſo great a larges, all men wel contented, he in a moſt rich & ſtately chariot, ſo placed as that all men might well ſee him, was in great maieſtie caried through all the chief ſtreets of CONSTANTINOPLE, the people on euery ſide gazing vpon him, & ſtil as he paſſed by them, proſecuting him with their moſt ioyful and happie acclamations. Some wiſhing that he being but yong, might as another *Solyman* begin his raigne with the conqueſt of MALTA, as had the other with the conqueſt of the RHODES: and other ſome as heartily praying that with glorious and victorious conqueſts he might be like vnto *Mahomet* the Great, whom he was then reported much to reſemble. In which ſo great and publique magnificence, he being about 15 yeres old, was with all the accuſtomed ſolemnities openly crowned, euery man wiſhing vnto him a moſt long and happie raigne. And albeit that no great fruit was for the preſent from ſo young and tender a plant to bee expected, yet neuertheleſſe by his authoritie and in his name, many good orders were taken for the reliefe of his ſubiects, with moſt heauie grieuances generally oppreſſed, duting the looſe and careleſſe raigne of his father. His grandmother alſo a moſt proud, ambitious, and imperious woman, & withall exceeding rich, who with great authoritie at her pleaſure ouerruled all in the time of the raigne of her ſonne *Mahomet*, he now remoued from the ſtate, as not fit for her to haue to doe therein, and ſo depriued her of all her former power and commaund. The Perſian embaſſadour, whom his father in his diſpleaſure had cloſe ſhut vp, he ſet at libertie, and with him ſent the Baſſa of ALEPPO to intreat of peace with the great Shaugh of PERSIA, who not long before (as was reported) had recouered the great citie of TAVRIS, and was then preparing himſelfe for new conqueſts. Which report for the motion of peace with the Perſian, diſcouered in his ſubiects their diuers opinions concerning him ſelfe; ſome condemning his patience, as not beſeeming the *Othoman* Emperours, vnto whom furie and rage had alwaies made them a way vnto their great and dreadfull conqueſts euen againſt the moſt puiſſant armies and ſtrongeſt townes and fortreſſes of their enemies: and ſome other to the contrarie praiſing therein his wiſedome, in ſeeking by faire meanes (now in the beginning of his raigne) to diſarme his enemies when they might moſt hurt him, at his better opportunitie, in his ſetled eſtate, to oppreſſe them,

Achmat by exceſſiue bountie procureth the fauour of the great Lordes and men of war

Achmat crowned emperor of the Turkes at Conſtantinople,

Achmat remoueth his grandmother from dealing with matters of ſtate.

The Turkes diuerſly conceited of their new emperour.

for euer. So the actions of Princes are like vnto ſtrange lights appearing by night in the ayre, which hold mens eyes buſied with the intentiue beholding of them, ſome thereof diuining well, and ſome others euill, according to the diuerſitie of the beholders conceits and humours. G

The treatie for peace in Hungarie continued.

The treatie for peace alſo in HVNGARIE was notwithſtanding the death of *Mahomet*, by the Baſſa of BVDA ſtill continued, who (as hee ſaid) by the new Sultan authorized, by letters incited the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM to repaire vnto ſome ſuch conuenient place as wherein the matter might be ſafely concluded. Vpon which motion the Gouernour with the reſt of the Commiſſioners departing from STRIGONIVM, the fourth of Februarie came to *Collonitz* his campe, from whence they were by the ſouldiours moſt brauely conducted along the banks of Danubius, vnto the ſhips which lay readie for them, to carie them downe the riuer to PESTH: during which time of their paſſage nothing was to be ſeene or heard but fire and ſmoke, and the thundering of the great artillerie both from PESTH and BVDA, the Chriſtians and the Turkes both ſtriuing to excell each other in theſe their ſhewes of ioy and triumph. The Gouernour with the reſt of his companie being happily arriued at PESTH, met there with a number of the better ſort of the Turkes ſent thither by the Baſſa to meet him, and in his name to greet him: who with a thouſand honours againe receiued and ſaluted them. All ſhewes of kindneſſe, and ſignes of the happie ſucceſſe of the negotiation begun. And now the Chriſtians deſirous to excell the Turks, as well in courteſie as in valour, appointed a number of them the next day to goe to BVDA, to inuite certaine of the chiefeſt and moſt honourable men amongſt the Turks, vnto a banquet at PESTH: Who willingly accepted of the offer, and ſo came ſix hundred of the better ſort of them ouer the Danubie to PESTH, where the feaſt was moſt ſumptuouſly and magnificently prepared for them. There were tenne faire and rich pauillions, ſet vp for the entertainment of them a little diſtant from PESTH, in a faire place, and fit for this purpoſe. In the firſt whereof were placed three verie proud and ſtately tables. At the firſt of which tables, on the right hand, were ſet the Commiſſioners for the Emperour, with the two Baſſaes, and one Muftie, or Archprieſt, with a myter vpon his head, a long furred gowne vpon his backe, and vnder that a robe of moſt fine and exceeding rich ſilke. Vpon the left hand, at the ſame table were placed certaine of the Turkes lords, and other great men. At the other two tables were ſet other of the beſt ſort of the Turkes mingled with the Chriſtians: and ſo at all the other tables in like order were ſet a Chriſtian and a Turke, vntill that the ſix hundred Turkes were placed, with as many Chriſtians among them, who by their good countenance and behauiour one of them to another, might haue ſeemed to haue beene all of one and the ſame beliefe, nation, and countrie. The Turkes after the manner of their ſuperſtition, would not ſit downe before the ſetting of the Sunne, which being ſet, they with a thouſand ceremonies, to the imitation of their Archprieſt, ſet themſelues downe at the tables in order as is aforeſaid, and there merrily repoſed themſelues vntill nine of the clocke at night. At which time the tables with great reuerence taken away, the Turkes as men well contented and full of ioy, returned to BVDA, the inſtruments of muſicke, trumpets, and drummes, on euerie ſide ſounding about them with much glee, and as it were witneſſing vnto heauen and earth the great contentment they had receiued. And yet was all this faire ſhew nothing elſe but deepe diſſimulation mixt with moſt foule treacherie. For a little before their departure, they of PESTH were aduertiſed, That the Turkes in great number well appointed, were come out from BVDA to ſurpriſe PESTH, during the time of the feaſt, being in hope that the Chriſtians all buſied in this action, had left the walles of the towne vnfurniſhed of defence. But they too well acquainted with their treacheries, to put any truſt or confidence in their faire ſhewes, had as well prouided for the defence and ſafetie of the towne, as for the magnificence of the feaſt abroad. By which meanes the Turkes diſappointed of their intended purpoſe, were in the attempting thereof repulſed, and ſo glad to returne as they came backe againe to BVDA. H I K L

The Turkes honorably feaſted by the Chriſtians neere Peſth.

The Turkes treacherie ſeeke to ſurpriſe Peſth

The Turkes Commiſſioners diſauow the practiſe for the ſurpriſing of Peſth.

The next day after the Commiſſioners for the Emperour complained vnto the Baſſa and the reſt of the Turkes Commiſſioners, of this ſo treacherous dealing: who excuſed themſelues as altogether ignorant thereof, diſauowing the action for want of ſucceſſe, which had it beene effected, they would to the vttermoſt haue ſhamefully maintained. An ordinarie M

courſe

A course among the great, with speech and countenance in shew to condemne that for want of effect, which they in heart and mind could for their owne profit haue wished to haue been performed.

Neuertheleſſe the Turkes the next day (as if no ſuch thing had beene meant) requeſted the Chriſtian Commiſſioners to come to BVDA, as they had done to PESTH: but they as well by proofe as by report perceiuing the euill meaning of the Turks, excuſing themſelues, returned to STRIGONIVM, as loth any more to aduenture themſelues into the power of their faithleſſe enemies; yet left they *Geisberg* at PESTH, with commiſſion to continue the negotiation for peace with the Baſſa of BVDA, if he ſhould find him therunto diſpoſed, or any hope of bringing the treatie to good effect or iſſue. *The Commiſſioners for the emperor refuſe any more to goe to Buda.*

B *Mahomet* the late Sultan had a little before his death (as is before declared) ſet at libertie the Countie *Iſolan* (carried away priſoner to CONSTANTINOPLE after the taking of ALBA REGALIS) and ſent him with letters of credence to entreat of a peace to bee made with the Emperour, with promiſe to yeeld himſelfe againe priſoner, if he failed to obtaine the ſame; for whom the French Embaſſadour became pledge. He hauing now deliuered his letters of credence vnto the Emperour, and commaunded to ſay what hee had further in charge, declared, That the Great Sultan offered to deliuer vnto his Maieſtie the ſtrong townes of BVDA, ALBA REGALIS, and CANISIA, in exchange of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, whereunto hee layed claime, promiſing on his part to make a moſt firme and ſure peace with the Emperour for the time to come, and to giue thereof ſuch aſſurance as ſhould of him reaſonably bee demaunded. *The meſſage of Countie Iſolan from the great Sultan to the Emperour.*

C The Baſſa of BVDA alſo amongſt other the faire remonſtrances of peace, had offered vnto the Emperours Commiſſioners to reſtore CANISIA and AGRIA for PESTH, HATVVAN, and VACIA, together with the remiſſion of all ſuch payments and tributes as were by the Emperour due vnto the Great Sultan for the kingdome of HVNGARIE. All which faire ſhewes and offers, though much vnreaſonable, were nothing but windie words to delay the time, and ſubtill baits to deceiue the Chriſtians: for the euent and iſſue, which giueth life to all actions, with a forme vnto them agreeable, hath by experience taught the Chriſtians, That all the glorious and glozing proceedings of the Turkes in this buſineſſe of the peace, ſo much wiſhed and expected of the Chriſtians, were but netts and ſnares wherewith to entangle them with the vaine hope thereof, vntill that they in the meane time *The Turks in all the negotiation for peace did nothing but diſſemble with the Emperors Commiſſioners.*

D might fortifie their townes with new ſupplies of men, munition, victuals, and whatſoeuer elſe was needfull, the more eaſily afterward to annoy them at their pleaſure, and ſo to laugh at their ſimplicitie and light beliefe: For *Mahomet* being dead, and *Achmat* his ſonne (yet by reaſon of his minoritie vnder the tuition of his mother and other the great Baſſaes) ſucceeding in his place, the Turks aggrauated the conditions of the peace, and propounded them ſo farre from reaſon, as that any man might ſee them now to haue no more deſire or regard of peace, after that they had diſpatched that for which they ſeemed before deſirous thereof; inſomuch, that they ſent a meſſenger in poſt from CONSTANTINOPLE vnto the Baſſa of BVDA, to forbid him vpon the paine of his head any further to continue the treatie of peace, but forthwith to renew the warre. So this peace ſo much expected, and now of the people generally hol-

E den for as good as concluded, ſuddainely vaniſhed into ſmoake, nothing remaining of that bodie, compoſed of ſo many wiſhes, more than a vaine expectation, now diſperſed with the wind of the Turkiſh treacherie. And yet during the time of this negotiation for peace ſought for by the Turks both by often letters and meſſengers, many a ſolemne oath had paſſed both from the Sultan *Mahomet*, and from the Viſier Baſſa for their faithfull and ſincere dealing in the treatie thereof, as, *By the God of heauen and earth, By the bookes of* Moyſes, *By the Pſalmes of* Dauid, and *By the holy Euangeliſts*, oathes much vſed of Turkes, and reſerued for their greateſt ſolemnities, and ſtrongeſt aſſurances of their leagues and promiſes: all which for all that hauing ſerued but as baits and traines to beguile the ſimple and well meaning men, lay now neglected and vnregarded: ſuch is the faith and aſſurance which men haue from faithleſſe and *The Treatie for peace with the Turks commeth to nothing.*

F vntruſtie men.

The treatie of peace thus broken off, it was foorthwith by ſome bruited, That *Achmat* the great Sultan, vnder the conduct of the Viſier Baſſa his Gouernor, was himſelfe in perſon with a moſt huge armie about to come into HVNGARIE: Some others in the meane time reporting, that he was letted ſo to do by reaſon of the Perſian warres, wherunto he was of neceſſitie *Diuers reports concerning the Turkes great preparations and deſignes.*

to ſend the greateſt part of his forces: ſo that he would but only ſend one of his great Baſſaes G
with the remainder of his ſo great an armie againſt the Chriſtians in HVNGARIE, being be-
fore ſworne neuer to returne againe vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, vntill he had brought the coun-
tries of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, with the remainder of HVNGARIE, vnder the obey-
ſance of the great Sultan, together with the countrey of AVSTRIA, and eſpecially the ſtrong
citie of VIENNA, the end of the Turkiſh Emperours conqueſts: and that to this purpoſe the
grand Seignior had with great rigor in all places leuied great ſummes of mony vpon his ſub-
iects for the maintenance of his ſo great an armie. It was by others reported alſo, That onely
the preparations for ſo great an armie ſhould be made this yeare, the Turkes being reſolued
to do much therewith the next yeare, and therefore willing to beſtow much, in hope with
ſo great and puiſſant an armie as they were about to rayſe, to make an end of the warres in H
HVNGARIE, and not to returne vntill they had conquered all the reſt of that kingdome, in the
rent relliques whereof the fortune of the *Othoman* Emperours had ſtayed: ſo that all handy-
crafts men were ſet to worke by day and night not onely to forge weapons, to caſt great
ordnance, and to make pouder, but prepare all other things neceſſary alſo for ſo great an
exploit.

All theſe great preparations were made for the ſeruice of the Viſier Baſſa for the warre in
HVNGARIE, and of *Cicala Baſſa* in PERSIA, whereof he was appointed Generall, hauing be-
fore perſumptuouſly promiſed vtterly to ruinate the Perſians eſtate, and with ſo great a pow-
Babylon reported to haue been taken by the Perſian king. er euen to ſwallow him vp. And indeed theſe Eaſterne warres greatly troubled the Turkes;
newes comming ſtill concerning the conqueſts of the Perſian vpon his territories; and that I
euen of late the Perſian king proſecuting his victories, had taken BABYLON, with all the coun-
trey thereabout: and that diuers other townes and cites, more mooued with feare then with
the faith wherewith they had bound themſelues vnto the Turks, now yeelded themſelues vn-
to the Perſian, as wearie of the Turks ſeruitude, and deſirous of their auncient libertie. And
yet for all that, the Turks (as they are wiſe to diſſemble their loſſes, and to ſtrike a feare into
The Turks wiſely diſſemble their loſſes. their enemies) had giuen it out in CONSTANTINOPLE, That the Perſian king was neere vn-
to BABYLON diſcomfited, all his armie ouerthrowne, and he himſelfe taken priſoner; ſo that
the Turkes forces before diſtracted ſhould now wholly ioyne togther, to the vtter ruine and
deſtruction of the Chriſtians in HVNGARIE. And the more to confirme this euill newes, it
was reported, That the Beglerbeg of GRECIA had raiſed a great power to ioyne with the K
Viſier Baſſa his forces, to the intent to leaue nothing vnconquered in HVNGARIE. For the
better effecting whereof it was ſaid alſo, That the Viſier Baſſa had cauſed a great number of
veſſels loded with pouder and other warlike prouiſion to be brought by water out of ÆGYPT
to BELGRADE, to ruinate the eſtate of the Chriſtians. All which reports were by the Turkes
giuen out, to couer their owne miſhaps, and to terrifie their enemies: as knowing right well,
warres to depend much vpon reports, and that a falſe bruit beleeued, worketh oft times the
effect of a thing in deed done. Howſoeuer it was, thoſe ſo dreadfull reports might well haue
ſerued to haue ſtirred vp the ſpirits of the Chriſtians to haue prouided for their owne de-
fence, and to haue ſtood vpon their guard: For hee that faileth to prouide againſt the pre-
parations of his enemie, well deſerueth either bondage or death, which ſoeuer ſhall befall L
him, for hauing by his negligence betrayed his owne abilitie and power to haue withſtood
him.

The great report of the Turks preparations and forces had now daſht all the talke of peace
The great opinion the Turkes haue of the power of their great Sultan. at CONSTANTINOPLE, and the hot fire of ambition had quite ſcorched the ſweet flowers
appearing vpon the ouerture of the late hope of the common repoſe; ſome perſuading the
Great Sultan, that hee was able with his power at the ſame time both to ſubdue the Perſian
king, and to confound the forces of the Chriſtian Emperour, hauing ſo many kingdomes
within his Empire, ſo many armories ſtored for his ſeruice, and ſuch ſtore of treaſure readie
for his deſignes, promiſing vnto him moſt happy and eaſie ſucceſſe both in the one and other
expedition, euen at one and the ſelfe ſame time: ſo that he might vanquiſh the Perſian by *Ci-*
cala, chiefetaine of his armie in Perſia, and conquer the remainder of HVNGARIE, with the M
countries of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA, by the Viſier Baſſa, Generall of his forces a-
gainſt the Chriſtians; it being (as they ſaid) a thing both honourable and profitable for a
Prince to beſtow both men and money, thereby to gaine men, honour, and empire: So that

things

things which with great charge might be done all at once, were more profitable than were those which with lesse charge were done at diuers times: For that things so done at once, yeelded present profit, as being in our power, and recompensing our charge; the other in long time putting vs to great charge, and yeelding little or no profit at all. And indeed men stand in great feare of this the Turkes yong Emperour, being by nature fierce, hastie, vigilant, cruell, ambitious, and proud, and who in his behauiour and actions much resembleth *Mahomet* the second, he which tooke from the Christians so many kingdomes, townes, and cities, and amongst the rest, the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE. He like vnto a young *Alexander*, occupieth himselfe in all the exercises of warre, hateth idlenesse, his fathers greatest pleasure: he causeth armes to be made, cannons to be cast, ships and gallies to be built, and taketh a pleasure to discourse how the same are to be employed against his enemies: so that it is greatly to be feared, that he being but a child in CONSTANTINOPLE, will proue a man growen in Christendome, in bringing the same vnder his power and obeysance. He spareth no person nor meanes which may serue to satisfie his desire. So that strangers are to expect small courtesie at his hands, when as they see him to vse such bloudie crueltie against his noblemen and domesticall seruants, of the chiefest of whom since he was Emperour hee hath alreadie put diuers to death, with one of his Bassaes also, who was the Gouernour of PESTH when as our men woon it. But as iustice and clemencie vnto good princes are the surest bonds to keepe their subiects fast bound vnto them in their obedience and duties, so are crueltie and rage bridles wherewith the Turkish Emperours keepe their subjects in awe and subjection vnto them, and themselues in their estate

The disposition of the yong Turkish Emperour

Furie and tiranie the chiefe meanes whereby the Turkish emperors cõmand their subiects

But leauing the Turks busie about their preparations for the accomplishing of their young Emperours high designes, let vs returne into HVNGARIE, taking TRANSYLVNIA in our way, the wofull miseries of which countrey my mind abhorreth to thinke vpon, and my penne thereof to write. This prouince, sometime much renowmed, for the great victories obtained against the Turkes by the inhabitants thereof, vnder the leading of their prince *Sigismund Bator*, and others, and abounding with plenty of all things, was now not by any inuasion of the Turks, but by ciuil discord amongst themselues and rebellion against the Emperour, now their Soueraigne, so wasted and spoyled by the souldiors one all sides, that many of the poore inhabitants for want of food fell down dead as they went in the streets & fields: miserable wretches, alwaies sowing, but neuer reaping, alwayes labouring, but nothing profiting, the mercilesse and greedie souldior still spoyling or deuouring all. By long continuance of which daily outrages the fields at length lay now vntilled, the pastures vnstored and neglected, and all things else vnmanured and quite out of course: by meanes whereof, the famine so encreased, that the poore pesants of the countrey hauing eaten vp for great dainties al the dogs and cats, mice and rats, that they could get, fell to eating of dead horses, & the loathsome carrion of other hunger-starued beasts. It is reported also, That one man should eat another: And that at HERMANSTAT a woman hauing sixe children, did among them eat one another, vntill they were at length all six deuoured: and to the contrarie, that two men did eat their own mother: yea, theeues and other malefactors hanged for their villanies, were by the poore and miserable hungrie people cut downe from the gallowes, & deuoured, the people generally liuing vpon nothing but vpon the roots of weeds, greene hearbes, and the leaues of trees. For remedie of which so extreame miseries, it was on all partes agreed, That a generall assembly of the States of the whole prouince should be holden at DEVVA: Wherein it was accorded, That all hostilitie set apart, the gentlemen of TRANSYLVANIA hauing by their rebellion forfeited both their liues and lands, should bee pardoned their liues, with three fourth parts of their lands reserued vnto them, and that for readie money they might of the Emperour redeeme the fourth part also. But concerning the moueables of such as were dead in the time of these troubles, and alreadie confiscat vnto the Emperour, they should so remaine; and that they should pay their dismes, or tenth part of their wine and fruits, vnto the Emperour. And farther, That there should be no farther exercise of religion permitted vnto them, but onely the Romish religion: And that the townes of CRONSTADT and CLAVSENBVRG should within the space of three weekes pay, the one twentie thousand dollars, and the other eight thousand; and the magistrats of those townes should deliuer the keyes of their townes, with all their power, into the hands of the Emperours

The miserable estate of the countrey of Transyluania.

An horrible famine.

An assembly of the States of Transyluania for the appeasing of the troubles there.

rours Lieutenant: and that the gentlemen of these townes which would not be accounted in the G
number of the rebels, should for the safetie of their persons take letters of pardon for their rebellion, of the Generall of the armie. This pacification gaue some little time of breathing vnto this poore distressed country, which bared of all strength, and as it were vpon the graues brinke, had now but euen the last gaspe to giue; and the countrey people began agane to giue themselues vnto their wonted labours, in hope at length to reape the profit thereof themselues; but alas all in vaine: for why, the rauening souldiors enured to prey, after their wonted manner made hauoke and spoyle of all things, leauing nothing vnto the poore countrey man, but his labour for his paine, and time ynough to bewaile his manifold and remedilesse miseries: the causes whereof were the nobilitie and gentlemen themselues; who not liking to bee gouerned, or rather (as they tooke it) oppressed by the Germans, and hauing not vpon any desire they had H
of peace, but rather by necessitie enforced, yeelded vnto the pacification aforesaid, ceased not still vnder hand to incite the souldiors (readie ynough of themselues to doe mischiefe) and in what they might to trouble the gouernment of the state by the Germanes, being vnto them (as they accounted of them) but strangers. All which their doings *Basta* the Emperours Liuetenant well perceiuing, caused three of the greatest of the gentlemen of the countrey, and whom hee most suspected to bee the authors of these troubles, to bee apprehended and fast mured vp betwixt two strong wals in an old ruinous monasterie; whither their friends afterwards comming to haue visited them, and finding them starued to death, were therewith much abashed, as were also other their complices, as soone as they heard thereof. But leauing them to worke themselues farther troubles, let vs againe returne vnto the I
Turks affaires.

The troubles of Transyluania secretly maintained by the nobilitie of the Country.

A seuere and miserable kind of punishment

Now was all the hope of peace betwixt the Christians and the Turkes become desperate, the Turks making thereof no more account, seeing that according to their desire they had prouided ALBA REGALIS, AGRIA, and BVDA of their necessarie prouisions. They had in foure waggons put into AGRIA the pay due vnto their garrisons; so that their affaires being now in good estate, and their courages reuiued, they began to scoffe and jest at our credulitie, to beleeue that they had had any purpose to conclude vpon any thing that was not agreeing with their profit, how farre soeuer it were differing from their honour or from their faith: So that now these faithlesse men began againe to renew their wonted incursions and pillages vpon the Christians, with all other manner of hostilitie, and that in more cruell manner than euer before: And K
our Hussards on the other side well requited them with the like, being as well contented as they with these manner of doings, their whole fortune depending vpon the points of their weapons, and euer readie to the seruice of their prince for their pay. Now it fortuned, that fourescore of the Turks going forth to seek for bootie, chaunced to meet with certaine of these Hussards, who finding themselus too weake to encounter with our men, and betaking themselues to flight, were certaine of them taken prisoners, and so brought vnto the Generall: vnto whom they vpon examination confessed, That the Turks much maruelled at the simplicitie and foolishnesse of the Christians, to beleeue that they where desirous of peace, and not to haue discouered their so manifest intentions to the contrarie, tending onely to the pleasuring of themselues, and the annoying of them their enemies, to the strengthening of themselues and destruction of the L
Christians, as by proofe it appeared, so soone as their desires were accomplished, vnto the prejudice of their enemies: And that their yong Emperour was alwaies against this treatie of peace, whatsoeuer shew he had made to the contrarie, constrained thereunto by the victories and conquests of the Persian king; all his wishes and desires aiming at no other marke, than at the generall ruine of Christendome. Our garrisons also seeing themselues charged by the Turks, tooke vp armes likewise, and requited them with like outrages, as they did. They of PAPPA, and VESPRINIVM, were the first which began these broyles after the treatie of the peace, who hauing joyned their forces together, and making heade toward ALBA REGALIS, met with a number of Turkes, driuing of sheep and cattell thither, whom they surprized, and together with their cattell carried them away with them prisoners. Which good hap was seconded with the libertie of twentie Christian prisoners from BVDA, who one night seeing their keepers opressed with sleepe and with wine, cut their throats, and so happily escaped ouer the riuer to PESTH. M

The treatie of peace betwixt the Christians and the Turkes quite broken off and the warre againe begun

Booties taken from the Turk by the Christians

The Christians by the Turkes prisoners informed of their euill meaning in the treatie of the peace

Now

A Now while theſe troubles betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turkes (after the treatie of peace broken off) thus began againe in HVNGRIE, the Turks, beſide the rebellion in ASIA, were together by the eares in the prouince of BOSNA. *Zellaly* hauing by force ioyned vnto policie, driuen *Zeffer Baſſa* (as is aforeſaid) out of BOSNA, and poſſeſſed himſelfe of that prouince, thought himſelfe now ſure ynough within the ſtrength of his gouernment, although he being by the great Sultan ſent for to CONSTANTINOPLE, had refuſed to come, as knowing right well himſelfe to hold that ſo great a gouernment much againſt his will and pleaſure. But *Zeffer Baſſa* now ſupported with the authoritie of the Great Sultan, and deſirous to be reuenged of the great diſhonour and loſſe he had before receiued from *Zellaly* his enemie, with a great armie ſuddainely entred into BOSNA, and ſo comming vnto *Zellaly*, fearing as then no ſuch matter, ouerthrew him with all his power, and neuer left purſuing of him, vntill he had chaſed him
B quite out of the prouince, and ſo againe recouered the gouernment thereof. But ſhort was the ioy the Baſſa receiued of this ſo pleaſing a victorie, for within a few daies after he died, comforting himſelfe onely in this, that he died not vnreuenged. Of all which things the great Baſſaes of the Court vnderſtanding, and loath to loſe ſo great a ſouldiour as was *Zellaly* (who as a man diſtreſſed was now making ſhift for himſelfe) or by vſing of him hardly, to deterre the other Aſian rebels from comming in, and yet not willing to truſt him with ſo great a gouernment as was the prouince of BOSNA, they to prouide for all euents, appointed him to bee Gouernour of TEMESVVAR, and *Begedes Baſſa*, before Gouernour there, to ſucceed *Zeffer Baſſa* in the gouern-
C ment of BOSNA: So contenting all parties, to keepe their forces whole and entire againſt the Chriſtians.

Zeffer Baſſa recouereth the gouernment of Boſna from Zellaly, and ſhortly after dieth.

Zellaly made Gouernor of Temeſwar.

But as the Turkes were troubled with their affaires in BOSNA, ſo the Chriſtians were no leſſe but rather more buſied with theirs both in TRANSILVANIA and HVNGARIE. The Eſtates of HVNGARIE had appointed a generall meeting at POSSONIVM, wherein the Archduke *Matthias* was to ſit as Preſident, there to conſult of the meanes for the maintenance of this yeares warres againſt the Turke. But as the Archduke was about to haue entred into the citie in the middeſt of his ſouldiors, ſuch a fire vpon the ſuddaine aroſe in the citie, as conſumed the greateſt part thereof: an euill preſage of the action then in hand, and a wofull ſpectacle to behold, with the terrour whereof all mens minds poſſeſſed, turned them from the magnificent entertaining of the Arch-duke (as was before determined) to the quenching of the raging fire, as
D more neceſſarie and concerning them than the other. Beſides that, the miſeries then to be ſeene in the other parts of HVNGARIE, yet holden by the Chriſtians, were both great and lamentable: for beſide the harmes therin done by the Turks, the regiment of Colonel *Althem* had made ſuch ſpoile and hauocke all ouer the countrey where it lay, that the townes and people in generall ſo grieuouſly complained thereof vnto the Emperour, that hee moued with their iuſt complaints, cauſed the authors of theſe ſo great outrages to be apprehended and brought priſoners to VIENNA, where ſome of them were beheaded, and ſome others of them hanged: Beſide whom ſo condemned and executed, there were ſome other captaines and lieutenants, of whom, ſome denying the fact, and otherſome ſtanding vpon the iuſtifying of that they had done, as thereunto by extreame neceſſitie enforced, were for their farther triall ſent priſoners vnto PRAGE, where
E they were committed vnto priſon into the caſtle, vntill their cauſes might bee heard: amongſt which captains and lieutenants, and other ſuch great officers, was one *Genderot* Colonel *Althem* his Auncient, who moſt wickedly but a little before had ſlaine *Neudercy*, a gentleman of good ſort, and his fellow & companion in armes: For which murther he was committed priſoner into a very high and ſtrong tower within the caſtle (wherein Countie *Paradiſer*, who ſold CANISIA vnto the Turks, lay ſometime priſoner) vntill his triall might within a few daies after bee made. The horror of which criminall place, together with the guilt of conſcience, ſo troubled & wounded the mind of *Genderot*, as that all the hope now to ſaue his life, was by making of an eſcape, and ſo to auoid the ſtroke of juſtice. Which he happily brought to paſſe by the helpe of one of his lacquies, who had found meanes to bring vnto him a long cord, where, by ſtraining himſelfe
F out at a little window (whereby it was thought almoſt impoſſible for any man to haue got out) he in ſafetie got down to the ground, and there hauing two good horſes ready for him, hee with his man fled amaine, and ſo eſcaped, his keepers drunken ouer night, being in the morning found yet ſleeping, without perceiuing of any thing, whoſe drunkennes & fauour toward the priſoner had

The regiment of Colonel Althem in mutinie.

had giuen him meanes to escape. The rest of the captaines and licutenants in prison at PRAGE G
were some of them beheaded, and some of them hanged, and the rest at the intercession of the nobilitie of AVSTRIA, and of other great men pardoned, yet with condition, That they should pay the fines set vpon them, and serue the Emperour in his warres three moneths of their owne charge, without pay: some few of the common souldiors, to the terror of others, had two of the fore-fingers of their right hands cut off, and afterward fast nayled vnto gibbets set vp by the high waies side.

The regiment of Colonell Meysberg in mutinie.

In like maner also the regiment of Colonell *Meysberg* rose in mutinie for their pay, and came and encamped at SNECHE, about a league from VIENNA, threatning to destroy the countrie, and to kill the chiefe men therein, if they were not paid their pay. Which rebellious mutinie the captains did what they might to appease, they besought them but in vaine, they entreated them but H
to no purpose, they promised them pay, but preuailed not; yea, the Colonel himself thrust himselfe into the middest of them, with most earnest prayers, and his hands cast vp, putting them in mind of their dutie, and laying before them the danger of most assured death and dishonour, if they continued farther to proceed in that their disloyaltie, whereunto their headstrong furie so so disordredly led them. But they as men enraged, carried headlong with their furie, breathing nothing but threats and destruction, and by no prayers or persuasion to be mooued, presently made choice of another chiefetaine, vnder whose conduct and leading they resolued to rifle the suburbs of VIENNA, & with the spoile of them to pay themselues. Vpon which resolution they marched on, and so drew neere vnto the citie: with which their so great and dangerous an insolencie the gouernors of the citie moued (the sufferance wherof they accounted to be vnto them- I
selues both dishonourable & harmfull) they on the other side resolued by plaine force to repres them, and by iust armes to chastice them, who were not otherwise to be reclaimed. But such bee the miserable calamities of war, where violent remedies must purge out of the bodie of the commonweale the good humours, togither with the bad, so to recouer the health thereof: which remedies, not but vpon necessitie to be vsed, are so quicke & violent in their working, as that they affoord not leisure to discerne the whole and sound from the sicke and infected, to saue the one and to spill the other, but that they must altogither run the selfesame way. For albeit that the whole regiment was in this mutinous action, and so all in like danger, yet were they not thereof all alike guiltie, many of them being euen against their wils and good liking carried away headlong, as with the violent course of an headie riuer. K

Now the captaines of the towne with their troupes and companies, strengthened with some other supplie sent from other places, were to set forward against these rebellious mutiners, and to frustrate their designes: for the greater strengthening of whom, diuers of the burgesses of the towne were enforced to enter into this action also: amongst whom, there were two accounted very honest religious men, who by all meanes sought to excuse themselues from going, labouring both by liuely reasons, and by the word of God, to prooue, that they neither might nor ought of right to enter into armes against their Christian brethren, enforced with extremities, for want of their due pay, to forget their duetie, and to do that beseemed them not. But what auaileth it to alleadge either reason or law amongst the clattering of armes; the noise whereof is so great, as that reason and law cannot there bee heard. These L
two men seeing themselues enforced to goe, and much grieued in conscience to doe that they were enioyned to doe, and to helpe to shed the guiltlesse bloud of their innocent brethren (as they accounted them) entred both of them into a most strange and wofull resolution, which was, to die themselues; rather than to embrue their hands with the bloud of the guiltlesse: whereupon one of them hauing oftentimes called vpon the name of *Iesus*, with his owne sword thrust himselfe through the bodie, and so died; the other vpon the like resolution threw himselfe into the riuer, and so perished also: men worthie to bee pitied for their conscience sake, but iustly to bee condemned for their so weake and desperat a resolution. In fine, the rebellious mutiners seeing in what perill they were, being euen now readie to be charged, and M
withall considering the weakenesse of their power in comparison of them that came against them, thought it best vpon the sight of so great a tempest to strike sayle; and so changing their former determination, and laying downe their armes, craued pardon of the Archduke, who graciously graunted it them, and so tooke them to his mercie, yet with condition, that they

A strange action of two of the citizens of Vienna.

should

A ſhould againe returne vnto their garriſons, and deliuer into his hands the ringleaders and chiefe authors of that mutinie to be puniſhed according to their deſerts, as afterwards they were: the ordinarie end of ſuch inſolent and diſordered actions, which haue nothing aſſured vnto them but death, which (all things elſe failing) attendeth onely vpon them.

But while the Chriſtians thus diuided were at variance among themſelues, the Turks were readie ynough to take aduantage of ſuch their dangerous diſcord. And firſt of all, *Zellaly* the old rebell, but now gouernour of TEMESVVAR, hauing in his craftie head plotted the taking of the citie of LIPPA by ſurprize, and to that purpoſe gathering the greateſt power that he was able to make, in the euening ſet forward from TEMESVVAR, and ſo trauelling by night, came to LIPPA, vnto the walls whereof he planted ſcaling ladders, and at the ſame time la-
B boured to haue forced the gates, in hope ſo to haue gained the towne: which was done with ſuch a terrible noyſe & outcrie as was poſſible by the Turks to be made, after that they were once diſcouered, thereby to haue diſmayed the Chriſtians within the towne; who well acquainted with ſuch ſtratagemes of their enemies, and now therewith awaked, came readily to the wals, and there ſo well defended themſelues and their towne, that the Turks repulſed, were glad to giue ouer the aſſault, and hauing loſt a number of their men, with all ſpeed to retyre; vpon whom the Chriſtians ſallying out, ſlew many of them in that their diſordered retreat, little differing from plaine flight, and tooke many moe of them priſoners: yea, *Zellaly*, who not many houres before had thought to haue ſurpriſed LIPPA, was now glad himſelfe to haue recouered the wals of TEMESVVAR. Some of the Turkes that were there ta-
C ken priſoners being examined, reported, That the armie that was this yeare to come into HVNGARIE, was like to be very great, and that a part thereof was now come to BELGRADE, expecting there the comming of the Tartars, who were together with them to enter into HVNGARIE: and that by reaſon of the warres with the Perſian, which deuoured almoſt all the ſouldiours in CONSTANTINOPLE, and yet could not be therewith ſatisfied, the Great Sultan had commaunded, That all ſuch as were able to beare armes, as well in BOSNA, as in that part of HVNGARIE which was ſubiect vnto him, and in the other prouinces thereunto adioyning, ſhould be readie to ioine with his armie in HVNGARIE, for the furthering of his conqueſts there: And that the Perſian king proſecuting the courſe of his victories, had ouerthrowne *Cicala Baſſa* with his armie, and taken his ſonne priſoner, almoſt ſlaine all his troups,
D and entred into confederacie with *Caracaſe*, chiefe of the rebels in ASIA, a man of great power, who had following of him a great number of valiant men, all reſolutely ſet downe for the troubling of the Great Sultans eſtate.

The Turks in vaine ſeeke to ſurprize Lippa.

About the ſame time the Gouernour of CASSOVIA (a great and ſtrong citie in the vpper part of HVNGARIE) going forth with ſome good part of his garriſon to appeaſe the ſouldiours lying about in the countrie, but now vp in mutinie for their pay, and there ſpending ſome few daies about this buſineſſe, in ſhewing of them the danger of their inſolencie, and perſuading them by the euill ſucceſſe and end of ſuch like actions to returne againe vnto their dueties; and they againe to the contrarie obſtinatly vrging the payment of their pay, or elſe to haue leaue to depart, as being not able longer to continue without the one or the o-
E ther: and ſo the time paſſing, it fortuned, that certain Turks, then priſoners in CASSOVIA, encouraged by the abſence of the Gouernour and of the garriſon ſouldiours to attempt the gaining of their libertie, brake their yrons, and ſlew their keepers, in hope ſo to haue eſcaped: but being in the doing thereof diſcouered, and ſo againe ſurprized, before they could do any further harme, and vpon torture examined, by what means they thought to haue eſcaped out of the citie, the wals thereof being kept with contiuall ſentinels: they confeſſed, That their purpoſe was, the ſame night to haue ſet fire vpon diuers places of the citie (ſo to haue drawne the people to the quenching thereof) and at the ſame time to haue ſlain the ſentinels vpon the wals, and ſo to haue made their eſcape: for which their ſo miſchieuous a fact and purpoſe, they were ſome of them executed, and the reſt againe committed to priſon, and
F more ſtraitly kept and looked vnto than before.

Caſſona in danger to haue been burnt by the Turkes.

Now as CASSOVIA had by the prouidence of God eſcaped ſo great an intended miſchiefe, ſo CANISIA at the ſame time alone felt the euill hap by the Turkes, intended both to CASSOVIA and LIPPA: for a ſoldior of the garriſon in the citadell there hauing through negligence or miſhap caſt fire into the pouder, prouided for the ſtore of the caſtle, the pouder

The citadell of Caniſia by chance burnt.

taking fire, blew vp the citadell, the towers, the houſes and wals: and to be briefe, made this poore place like vnto another ROME burnt by *Nero*. So that had any of the Chriſtian forces beene then neere vnto the place, it had beene an eaſie matter to haue woon the ſame, as well for the ſmall reſiſtance that was therein to haue been found in ſo great an aſtoniſhment of the men, and deſtruction of the place. But ſuch accidents haue no certaine houres limited to their beginnings, nor aſſurance of their comming, ſo that they oftentimes chance, without any man to make vſe of them, and againe flie away, when men make their greateſt preparations to obtaine them. G

The Turks of Buda ouerthrown by the Chriſtians of Peſth.

At the ſame time the Turks of BVDA ſent two hundred of the ſouldiours of their garriſon to fetch in forrage a little from PERTH, who as they were in the doing thereof too preſumptuous, ſo were they well puniſhed for their pride: For the Chriſtians in PESTH hauing diſcouered them in this action, ſallied out vpon them and charged them; againſt whom they for a while right valiantly defended themſelues, but at length oppreſſed with number, and ouerthrowne, they were moſt of them ſlaine, and the reſt taken priſoners: Wherwith the Baſſa of BVDA was ſo much offended, that in reuenge thereof he in his rage threatened with fire and ſword to do what harme he might vnto the Chriſtians. But (as the common prouerbe ſaith) men warned are halfe armed; and enemies threats bring this comfort with them, that in receiuing of the threatned harmes, we are in hope to be thereof reuenged, as therefore before prouided. H

Vnto theſe wofull troubles of HVNGARIE, proceeding as well from the inſolencies of the Chriſtian ſouldiours themſelues, as from the furie of the Turkes, who were their auncient and mortall enemies, were ioyned the like or rather worſe calamities in TRANSYLVANIA, extreame famine and want of all things ſore raging in both countries; ſo that hardly hath any miſerie or extreamitie beene ſeene or read of, euen in countries by the iuſt and heauie iudgements of the Almightie God appointed to deſtruction, which were not in thoſe two countries to bee found, and of many felt. For remedie whereof, *George Baſta* the Emperours Lieutenant in TRANSYLVANIA, had there done what he might for the appeaſing of the tumults and troubles of that prouince, and now of late brought the ſame into ſome good tearmes, as was thought, and as is before declared. Howbeit, that in proofe it fell out farre otherwiſe, and that the more he therein laboured, the farther he was off from his intent and purpoſe: fore the nobilitie of that Prouince who were generally enclined vnto rebellion, and deteſting the Germanes, together with their gouernement, reiected the decrees and orders which were agreed vpon in their late meeting together for the concluding of peace; inſomuch, that aſſiſted by the Turkes, they had taken certaine caſtles and ſtrong places in that Prouince: and the better to ſupport their rebellion and inſolencie, they had appointed a certaine place to meet at, where the Turkes and they might conferre together of the meanes which they intended for the effecting of their deſignes. Wherefore *Baſta* hauing by ſecret means got vnderſtanding, to remedie this pretended miſchiefe, he ſent away a great number of Haiduckes, to lye in wait to ſurpriſe them vpon the way. Which men, who were skilfull in the paſſages of the countrie, failed not in this action, but lay cloſe in ambuſh, verie conueniently for the ſurpriſing of their enemies: who proceeding in their intended purpoſe, and thinking of nothing leſſe than of that which was intended againſt them, were ſuddenly, before they were aware, Turkes and Tranſyluanians, altogether ſurpriſed and ſlaine. Which exploit being performed, theſe Haiduckes and other ſouldiours deſtitute of their pay, and enraged with furie, fell vpon the prouince, vſing therein all hoſtilitie, as if they had been mortall enemies vnto it, puniſhing the guiltleſſe for the guiltie, and ſeiſing vpon all mens goods in common, to pay themſelues that which was by ſome few in priuate kept from them. All the whole Prouince was ſubiect vnto the rage and furie of theſe and other ſuch mercileſſe men of warre, who without any remorſe at all indifferently ſlew and maſſacred all of them that came in their way, but eſpecially the poore and weake innocent people, who called vpon the Almightie God for remedie and redreſſe of theſe euils which they ſuſtained, and cried out vnto him for reuenge of their ſo great and cruell wrongs. The high waies were euerie where ſo full of theeues, that no man could trauell from place to place, but that hee was in great danger to be ſet vpon, and ſpoiled. For the Haiducks (being men that liue altogether by prey, and roaming vp and downe the countrie) made good prize and bootie of whatſoeuer I K L M

New tumults in Tranſyluania.

The rebels in Tranſyluania ſurpriſed and ſlaine.

The miſerable eſtate of Tranſyluania.

came

A came in their way, ſparing neither Turkes nor Chriſtians: inſomuch, that they hearing, how that the Zecclers with a good conuoy were bringing a number of waggons laden with victuals, and a great many of oxen and other cattell to CLAVDINOPLE, although they were of the ſame partie, beliefe, and nation, yet they lay in wait for them to ſurprize them: againſt whom the Zecclers ſeeking to defend themſelues, were by them cruelly maſſacred, and their waggons, with their Beeues and other cattell, all carried quite away. But what ſhould wee ſay? Hunger breaketh euen the ſtone walls, and forceth men vnto all extremities: And now the famine in that Prouince was ſuch, as that the people were for the moſt part glad to liue by feeding vpon the roots of hearbes and weeds, and ſuch other vnwhole-
B ſome things, whereof great mortalitie afterward enſued amongſt them: Which was the cauſe that *Horwat*, captaine of theſe Haiduckes, being reproued for the outrages by them committed, and charged to take order, that no more ſuch like ſhould afterward bee done, anſwered, That it was not poſſible to keepe ſouldiours in any order amiddeſt the extremitie of famine; for that the belly was an inexorable vſurer, which tooke pitie vpon nothing, but with great rage exacting that which it thought due for the nouriſhment of it ſelfe.

Captaine Horwat his anſwer in excuſe of the Haiduckes.

Amiddeſt theſe troubles of TRANSYLVANIA and HVNGARIE, there were two of the Turkes ſpyes of BVDA diſcouered and taken, who at VIENNA, had obſerued all the actions and proceedings of the Chriſtians, and to the vttermoſt of their power had in-
C formed themſelues of their deſignes, as alſo of their preparations and forces to be rayſed and leuied for this yeares warres: of which two ſpyes, the one was empayled, and the other kept in cloſe and ſtrait priſon, vntill that further matter might bee drawne out from him.

Two of the Turks ſpies of Buda taken.

The forces of the Chriſtians were now beginning to gather themſelues together and to make an head in HVNGARIE, a rife report at that time going, That they would forthwith take the field: whereof the Baſſa of BVDA vnderſtanding, and deſirous in what he might to hinder that their forwardneſſe, whereof hee doubted the effects, thought it beſt to betake himſelfe to his old and cunning practiſe, for the treatie and concluding of a peace with the Chriſtians, whereof hee now made ſhew himſelfe, together with the reſt
D of the Turkes, to be verie deſirous, ſo by putting the Chriſtians in hope thereof, to make them the more remiſſe and negligent in their doings, and to gaine time of them, vntill that the Turkes great armie (then in preparing) might be brought downe into HVNGARIE. To which purpoſe hee in moſt friendly manner thus writ vnto the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM.

Wee know right well (Noble Gouernour) that you are not ignorant, how that your brother the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM *before you, hath moſt earneſtly embraced the negotiation of peace, in ſuch ſort, as that wee cannot ſo much yeeld vnto our ordinarie quarrels and diſſentin, but that wee muſt giue you to vnderſtand the cauſes which haue croſſed and hindered the concluE ding of ſo great a good the laſt yeare now paſſed. The firſt let came by reaſon of the time, choſen too late to bee employed in that treatie for peace, when as now both the armies were alreadie on foot, and euen in readineſſe to ioyne battaile, and could not bee then ſtayed by that entreatie, nor bee ſent backe againe without ſome exploit doing: Each part had reſolued vpon their proper deſignes, and euen choſen their ground for battaile, and were then hardly to be turned from that whereupon they were before reſolued. And albeit, that during this laſt Winter, the treatie for the peace was againe begun, and that the men of warre on both ſides in hope thereof, reſted vnarmed, and free from all hoſtilitie; a moſt fit time to haue begun and ended this treatie of peace, which hath beene ſo much wiſhed for of our Soueraigne Emperour, deſired of his ſubiects, and requeſted by thoſe of your Emperours, with whom my dread Soueraigne would confirme and conF tract a firme and continuall peace: yet for all that, ſince the departure of the Gouernour from* STRIGONIVM, *wee ſee three monethes to haue beene paſſed, without any letters at all, or meſſage by word of mouth brought vnto vs concerning this matter; ſo that wee haue not any thing whereof to certifie our Soueraigne Emperour. And for as much as the courſe of time hath brought theſe two contrarie armies euen vnto the point of battell, and that they are marching one of them*

The letters of the Baſſa of Buda to the Gouernour of Strigonium.

to encounter with the other, and ſo to enter into the liſts of honour, wee haue thought good before to deſire to know of you, what wee are to expect concerning the peace. Wee therefore requeſt you as our verie good brother and friend, in what wee may to ſtay the comming of our armies into this kingdome, and to attend to that which may produce the concluſion of this treatie, being on our part moſt readie to lend both our eare and deſire to whatſoeuer ſhall bee iuſt and meete in this treatie, and neceſſarie for the common good: beſeeching you to belieue vs in this buſineſſe, and not to doubt of our good will, more affected to your good, than is yours to our welfare: whereof wee in good time aduertiſe you, for that our armie which is now before BELGRADE, *being once arriued here, and marching in field, wee cannot poſsibly cauſe it to returne without ſomething doing, conſidering the great harmes, which vnder the aſſurance of your faith giuen, wee haue receiued from your people during the time of the truce, which they haue many waies violated. Which their euill dealing hath greatly incenſed vs againſt your men in captiuitie with vs, and cauſed our ſoldiors to ſhew great rigour againſt their ſlaues: we therefore attend your anſwere, and the returne of your brother, to the end we may together reſolue according vnto reaſon and equitie, of that which ſhall bee needfull to bee done for the common good and welfare.*

Now for all this faire gloſing, it was no hard matter to gheſſe at the Baſſaes ſecret meaning: for how deſirous ſoeuer hee ſeemed to bee of peace, and willing to the furtherance thereof, yet neuertheleſſe true it is, that during the time of all theſe faire ſhewes, the Turkes hauing aſſembled their garriſons on all ſides, had by night ſurprized the caſtle of SIMNIN vpon the Chriſtians, ſlaine part of the ſouldiours therein, carried away the reſt priſoners, and moſt cruelly afterwards burnt the place. So manifeſting by their foule deedes the euill meaning of their faire and deceitfull words. But now leauing the Baſſa for a while vnto his craftie deuices, and paſſing ouer many ſmall skirmiſhes which happened in HVNGARIE and TRANSILVANIA, as not beſeeming the grauitie of an Hiſtorie, let vs now out of EVROPE looke ouer into ASIA, to ſee how the Great Turkes affaires there in the meane time went.

The rebellion in ASIA was by the comming ouer of *Zellaly* and his followers for a time ſomewhat weakened, but not ſuppreſſed, that peſtilent humour of diſloyaltie hauing before infected the minds of ſo many, as that in ſhort time after the rebels were much ſtronger, and the rebellion much more daungerous than before: for the appeaſing and repreſſing whereof, *Cicala Baſſa* the old renegate, and a man of great experience and ſeruice, was as Generall ſent ouer with a great and mightie armie into ASIA, where he needed not long to ſeeke for his enemies, they being as readie as he either to giue or to accept of battaile: So that for men ſo on both ſides reſolued, it was no hard matter to bring them to the trial of battaile: which they with like deſire and equall hope ioyning, there made a great and terrible fight, the Baſſa fighting for his honour, and the rebell for his life. Howbeit, that at length the Baſſa after much bloudſhed & a great number on both ſides ſlain, being put to the worſe, fled with his armie altogether diſordered and in rout, hauing in that ſo dangerous a confuſion of his people much adoe to ſaue himſelfe. With which ſo ſhamefull an ouerthrow giuen him by the rebell, the Baſſa who was more aſhamed than diſcouraged, againe repaired his armie, ioyning thereunto great and mightie ſupplies, and ſo ſtrengthened, came now againe the ſecond time to reuenge himſelfe of the great diſhonour which hee had before receiued, and vtterly to ſuppreſſe the rebels: who now finding themſelues too weake to encounter with ſo great and mightie a power, wiſely betime retyred, praying aide of the Perſian king, who ſent vnto them his owne ſonne with a great armie of good and valiant ſouldiours; which might haue giuen the Baſſa cauſe ynough to haue ſtayed his haſt, and to haue beene well aduiſed how he ioyned battaile with ſuch deſperate and reſolute enemies, and now backt with ſuch ſtrong ſupplies: But hee being blinded with the furie of his former loſſe, and too much deſirous to be thereof reuenged, with more haſt than good ſpeed came on, and ioyned battaile with theſe his enemies, now in readineſſe and well prouided to receiue him. The two armies were in number equall, but the rebels of the two more reſolute and carefull of themſelues and of their welfare, as they which had repoſed all their hope and confidence in their owne armes and valour, ſo that the battaile was with great outcries and furie begun both on the

Cicala Baſſa with his armie ouerthrowne by the rebels in Aſia.

one

A one ſide and the other: in the beginning whereof the Turkes right furiouſly charged the rebels, and ſeemed ſomewhat to preuayle vpon them, vntill that the Perſian kings ſonne with certaine troupes of his moſt braue horſemen charging them in the rereward, and ſome other of the rebels with like furie aſſayling them vpon their flankes, their whole armie was ſo diſordered, that *Cicala* doing what he could to haue put his men againe in order, and ſo to haue reſtored the battaile, nothing therein preuailed, but was glad together with the reſt of his armie, now all in rout, to betake himſelfe to flight. In this battell were fortie thouſand men on the one ſide and the other ſlaine, whereof thirtie thouſand were of the Baſſaes armie, and the reſt of the rebels; who by this their ſo great a victorie gained no leſſe honour and reputation, than had the old Baſſa got of contempt and diſgrace. The Perſian king alſo after
B this diſcomfiture of Turkes continuing his conqueſts, tooke in the countrie of SIRVAN (a matter of great importance) being now deſtitute of all relieſe by the ouerthrow of *Cicala Baſſa*, who, had he preuayled againſt the rebels, ſhould haue marched thither againſt the Perſian king, to haue ſtayed the courſe of his victories: who now victorious and out of feare, made head toward ARVSTA, a verie great and ſtrong towne, neere whereunto the riuer Tygris diſchargeth it ſelfe into the great riuer Euphrates, which citie hee at laſt woon, with all the places and countries thereunto adioyning; and hath ſince as a moſt happie and victorious Prince againe recouered from the Turks whatſoeuer they had ſince the time of Sultan *Solyman* by force of armes taken from the Perſian kings his predeceſſours, two or three ſtrong places onely excepted. Of which moſt notable warres betwixt theſe two of the moſt
C mightie Eaſterne princes, *viz.* the Great Turkes and the Perſian king, I can rather wiſh than hope to be better enformed, and that, not ſo much for curioſitie (although that the knowledge of ſuch maters yeeld vnto ſuch as be deſirous thereof much pleaſure, with no leſſe contentment) as for that they (though farre off) in ſome ſort much concerne the good and quiet of the Chriſtian Commonweale, the Perſian warres being the only means whereby the furie of the Great Turkiſh Sultan hath beene and yet is for a time auerted from the Chriſtians in EVROPE vpon the Perſians in ASIA: as it is greatly to be feared, that ſome one or other (if not moe) of the Chriſtian Princes neereſt vnto him, ſhall to their great coſt and harme feele, ſo ſoone as theſe two great Mahometane princes ſhall bee at peace betwixt themſelues. But leaue wee the Baſſa a while to grieue at his ouerthrowes, and the Perſian
D king to triumph of this victories, and ſee what the Great Sultan himſelfe in the meane time doth.

Cicala Baſſa againe ouerthrow.

The ſucceſſe of the Perſian king

This young Prince *Achmat*, now one of the greateſt Monarches of the world, had not many moneths raigned, but that hee fell ſicke of the ſmall poxe, wherewith hee hauing a groſſe and full bodie, was ſo foulely tormented for the ſpace of foureteene dayes, that oftentimes fainting, it was generally thought he would thereof haue died: yea, diuers of the great Baſſaes were in ſpeech concerning his younger brother to bee taken out of the Seraglio to ſucceed him: which was thought would haue coſt the younger brother his life, after that the Sultan his elder brother was againe recouered; as no doubt it had, but that hee was the onely heire that was then left of the *Othoman* familie, if that his brother the Sultan
E ſhould haue fayled. But he againe recouered of his foule and childiſh diſeaſe, to ſhew vnto the Ianizaries and others (who doubted thereof) that he was ſo recouered, proudly mounted vpon a goodly horſe, moſt ſumptuouſly furniſhed, and in great ſtate and magnificence rid vp and downe through moſt of the chiefe ſtreets of the imperiall citie, the people (as their accuſtomed manner is) in euerie place as he went reioycing to ſee him, and proſecuting him with their moſt ioyfull acclamations, wiſhing vnto him a moſt long and happie raigne. Neither is it to be maruelled, ſeeing that the Almightie God hath euen in the faces and countenances of Princes engrauen ſome reſemblance of his owne, if they become reſpectuous and admirable in the eyes and ſight of the common people, who cannot but honour them with their voices, whom God hath bleſſed with his power, & other his extraordinarie world-
F ly bleſſings.

Sultan Achmat ſick of the ſmall pox.

This young prince ſo recouered of his ſickneſſe, and hauing ſhewed himſelfe vnto his ſubiects, began forthwith to giue himſelfe (according vnto the heate of his youthfull ſpirit) immoderatly vnto the pleaſures of the field, and other ſuch violent exerciſes, being in their moderate vſe wholeſome, but in their violences much hurtfull, but eſpecially

vpon the new recouerie of his late ſicknes, the griefes wherof came in haſt, but were to leaue him at leiſure. Whereupon two of his Baſſaes carefull of his health, were ſo bold, as out of their loue to reprooue him for ſuch his violent and immoderate exerciſes (the day not being long ynough for them) and by effectuall reaſons to diſſuade him from the ſame. But ſo farre off was hee from hearkening vnto their wholeſome perſuaſions, as that to the contrarie hee therewith enraged, thruſt them both out of their places. So dangerous a thing it is, euen in zeale and loue to preſume to controll great princes in their moſt vaine pleaſures; others in the meane time not louing them at all, but onely for their own profit attending vpon their idle appetites, enioying the preferments due vnto their more faithfull and loyall ſubiects, and yet ſecretly in themſelues ſmiling at the vanitie of ſuch as by whom they be ſo vnworthily honoured and promoted. G H

Good counſell taken in euill part by Sultan Achmat.

But as in the immoderat vſe of all things there is a ſacietie which breedeth a diſliking and diſtaſt of them; pleaſures being not by any meanes more commended, than by their nouelties and ſeldome vſe: ſo this young Sultan *Achmat* hauing glutted himſelfe with his pleaſures, began now to caſt his eyes vpon his other more neceſſarie affaires of ſtate, but eſpecially vpon his warres both with the Chriſtian Emperour and the Mahometane Perſian king. Now he was not ignorant of the great valour and ſufficiencie of *Haſſan* the Viſier Baſſa, for the managing of his warres in Hvngarie, wherein he had of long time beene exerciſed, and ſo therein beſt experienced. This old captaine pleaſed him beſt, whom as an old, expert, and politicke Generall, he reſolued to continue in his charge as Lieutenant Generall of his warres in Hvngarie, and by the continuation of him in ſo great and honourable a place, to bind him to all loyall ſeruices in thoſe warres, euen to the vttermoſt of his power. This Great Baſſa was then at Belgrade, vpon the frontier of his gouernment in doubtfull ſuſpence expecting the reſolution of his Prince concerning this buſineſſe, and yet in hope longing after a ſecond charge: Whoſe longing deſire *Achmat* quickly ſatisfied, by ſending vnto him both a commiſſion for the continuation of his charge and dignitie, and certaine honourable preſents in token of his extraordinarie fauour towards him; which were a Generals enſigne, with an Hungarian Mace of pure gold. Now whether theſe preſents ioyned vnto the continuation of his charge, were welcome vnto him, or not, ambitious minds (ſuch as was his) can eaſily tell: and hee to ſhew his contentment therewith, gaue thereof good teſtimonie by the publicke actions of ioy, cauſing all the great Ordnance of the place in thundering wiſe to be oftentimes diſcharged, and the Trumpets and Drummes to be moſt ioyfully ſounded. I K

Haſſan Baſſa appointed Lieutenant Generall of the Turkes warres in Hungarie.

In the meane time newes was brought to Constantinople, how that the Perſian king hauing muſtered his men, was in the field with aboue an hundred thouſand good ſouldiors, and that *Bagages Baſſa*, one of the great rebels in Asia, had confederated himſelfe with him, to the farther troubling of the Turkes eſtate. Whereupon *Achmat*, although he had before giuen order vnto *Haſſan* the Viſier Baſſa, his Lieutenant in Hvngarie for the beſieging and taking of Veradinvm, a ſtrong citie in the vpper Hvngarie, now by a meſſenger ſent in haſt, commaunded the ſame Baſſa, all other buſineſſes ſet apart, with all the power that he could make, forthwith to returne to Constantinople, there with him and the reſt of the Baſſaes to conſult and reſolue vpon the moſt neceſſarie warre, and of the readieſt meanes for the continuing of the ſame. For albeit that the Turkes were moſt deſirous to haue warres with the Chriſtians, and ſo (if it were poſſible) to haue conquered the remainders of Hvngarie, yet the danger of the Perſian warres and of the rebellion in Asia dayly more and more encreaſing, ſuffered them not wholly to attend vnto the warres againſt the Chriſtians in Hvngarie, but drew them now into a doubtful conſultation, which way firſt to turne their forces. But the Baſſa being come to Constantinople, the Graund Seignior tooke the paines and did him the honour to come vnto his houſe, whither the Counſell for the ſtate being aſſembled, it was there moſt proudly reſolued vpon, euen forthwith at one and the ſelfeſame time with equall forces to make warre both vpon the Chriſtian Emperour in Hvngarie, and the Perſian king in Asia, accounting themſelues ſtrong ynough to ſubdue and bring vnder foot both the one and the other, no power vpon earth being in their proud conceit of themſelues able to encounter or withſtand theirs. So for the managing of theſe warres, and of their ſo proud a reſolution to bee performed in ſo remote L M

Haſſan Baſſa ſent for to come to Conſtantinople.

A remote parts of the world, *Hassan Bassa* was continued in his charge, as Generall of the armie in HVNGARIE; and *Cicala Bassa* was appointed to haue the commaund of the armie to bee sent against the Persian: Two most expert captaines, being to fight against their hereditarie enemies, *Hassan* against the Christians, and *Cicala* against the Persians, by whom hee had not long before been euill vsed. An ordinarie policie of the *Othoman* emperours, not to commit the charge of their armies against the Christians, vnto renegates; for feare least they touched with some remorse of conscience, might betray the same, or otherwise deale vnfaithfully in their charge: but still to imploy them against the Persians, of whom they haue no further knowledge, but as of their enemies in the field. But *Cicala Bassa* well acquainted both with the difficultie and the danger of the Persian war, the scarres whereof he yet bare about with him,

Hassan Bassa continued Generall of the Turks armie against the Christians, and Cicala appointed generall of their armie against the Persians.

B made shew as if he had been vnwilling to take vpon him the charge thereof, and so begun to excuse himselfe, vntill that at length vpon promise made vnto him, for the furnishing of him with a sufficient armie, and all things els necessarie for so great a warre, with a large and most honourable entertainment for himselfe, and all the Persian prisoners being also giuen vnto him in reward; he therewith contented, accepted of the honorable charge, wherof in his ambitious mind he was indeed most desirous. And so receiuing the Generals ensigne, with the other marks and cognisanes of his honor, causing the drums to be strucken vp, and the trumpets to be ioyfully sounded, he cheerfully prepared himselfe for that his so great an expedition; expecting but the comming of his sonne, who at the request of the Venetians, was gone forth with a fleet of gallies to scoure the Leuant seas of the pirats, who then exceedingly troubled the traffique of the Venetian merchants.

Cicala Bassa maketh shew as if he were vnwilling to be Generall in the wars against the Persians.

C Amiddest which the Turkes so great designes, the Tartar Cham bound for his pay to serue the great Turke in his warres against the Christians, by his embassadour excused himselfe vnto the great Sultan, for that he could not himselfe in person come this yeare with his forces into HVNGARIE, by reason that hee was otherwise necessarily busied with the most vrgent affaires of his owne estate: yet promising withall in stead of himselfe, to send his sonne with a good power of men. Now whereas many men maruell, why the Tartar Cham, being so great a prince, and not much in danger vnto the Turke, being separated from him by the blacke or Euxine sea, should bee still so readie at the Turkes call, to doe him seruice in his warres. The causes thereof are diuers, and those not farre to seeke: First, their neere affinitie

The reasons why the Tartar Cham is so ready to serue the great Turke in his wars against the Christians.

D (as both descended from the same beginning) by often mariages still confirmed: then, their likenesse of manners and condition, no small bonds of loue and friendship: And thirdly, for that the Turkish empire, for want of heires males of the *Othoman* familie, is assured, and as it were entailed vnto the Tartar Cham: But most of all, for the yearely pention and great pay which hee, being a bare prince, receiueth from the Turkes; his rude and needie people being also euer readie, in hope of the spoyle, to follow him into these warres. But this his excuse for not comming himselfe this yeare into HVNGARIE, being by the great Sultan accepted of, *Hassan Bassa* resolued vpon his expedition for HVNGARIE, made great preparation for the good successe of the warre there, gaue great hope thereof vnto the great Sultan, and caused himselfe to be proclaimed Lieutenant Generall of all the great Sultans

E forces against the Christians: euerie man affoording vnto these good hopes, a thousand wishes for his health and welfare: but especially the Mahometane priestes assured him of their helpe, so that he would not faile to doe the vttermost of his endeauour against the Christians their enemies. For why, the Turkes doe account him the best and most zealous man, which can do the Christians most harme. And so with these so great acclamations of ioy and honour, *Hassan* the great Bassa set forward with his armie from CONSTANTINOPLE toward HVNGARIE.

Hassan Bassa setteth forward with his armie toward Hungarie.

The Christian emperour not ignorant of all these the Turkes great preparations and hawtie designes, sought by all meanes how to resist them, sparing nothing that might any way

Maximilian the Archduke sent embassador frō the emperor vnto the Pope, to craue his aid against the Turk.

F serue or stand him in stead to that purpose. Experience had assured him of the Popes readinesse in contributing to this action what in his power was, hauing before receiued so many testimonies of his good wil: which caused him now to dispatch also his brother *Maximilian* the Archduke, a good and a deuout prince vnto him, with expresse charge in the emperors name to yeeld all submission vnto his Holinesse, to moue him to relieue the wofull estate of his distressed affaires. *Maximilian* setting forward about this businesse, arriued at VENICE, where

he

hee was by that ſtate right honourably entertained. From VENICE hee trauelling towards G
ROME, and with a great retinue approaching the citie, was there met by a great number of noblemen with their followers, ſent from the Pope, and ſo by them with great honour was brought into the Vaticane palace, to the intent that ſo hee might the oftner, and with more eaſe haue acceſſe vnto the Pope, who then lay there ſicke of the gout. The next day he being brought vnto the Popes preſence, & after vſuall reuerence done, hauing audience giuen him, in the preſence of all the Cardinals, he began to deliuer vnto him the cauſes of his comming, which (as hee ſaid) were two. Firſt, to put his Holineſſe in remembrance of the manifeſt perill and danger which hung ouer the heads of the Chriſtians in generall, from the Turke, but eſpecially ouer them of ITALIE, being ſo neere vnto the Turkiſh empire, and a great gappe layed open for the Turkes thereinto to enter, by the way of CANISIA, the key of STIRIA. H
And then in the Emperours behalfe to requeſt him, to ſtretch forth his helping hand againſt this his mortall enemie, who was now drawing all his power together into one head, to deſtroy him; hauing certaine vnderſtanding of the great preparation by him made throughout all his dominions, to thruſt him out of his, if in theſe extremities he were not relieued by ſuch princes as could not in the end themſelues auoyd the laſt violences of theſe harmes, whereof he felt the firſt aſſaults. Which his Holineſſe conſidering in the zeale of his deuotion, and by the encreaſing of the danger, hee was in hope to find of it the like aſſiſtance in this his ſecond need, that hee had before receiued in his former affaires: the precious balme of his deuout charitie being of greater vertue than to ſerue but for one time, but being of ſufficient power to ſerue for all ages, and all times of neceſſitie. And that therefore hee beſought his I
Holineſſe to applie the ſame vpon the preſent wound, ſeeing that without his helpe hee was more like to periſh than to liue. Whereunto the Pope anſwered, That his former actions alreadie paſſed, ſpake ynough for him in this action, to manifeſt his deuout meaning, ſo that it was needleſſe for him to vſe further words to expreſſe the ſame. That the great ſupplies both of men and mony, which he had ſent forth for the good of the Chriſtian commonweale, were the ſure teſtimonies of his carefulneſſe for the ſame. And albeit that theſe euill haps had ſo far preuailed in HVNGARIE, yet that he for his part neuertheleſſe had ſtil done what he might for the remedying of thoſe ſo great euils. And that now by the aduice of his honorable Counſellors there preſent, he had appointed an hundred and fiftie thouſand crownes to be paid, toward the maintenance of the chriſtian armie in HVNGARIE this yere) in hope to do more than K
that afterward for the Emperour, in his warres againſt the Turks: whom God had (as he ſaid) ſuffered to preuaile vpon the Chriſtians, nor for any goodneſſe that was in them, but for the chaſtiſing of the wickedneſſe of the Chriſtians themſelues.

The Popes anſwer vnto the emperours demaunds.

Which ſumme of an hundred and fiftie thouſand crowns was afterward according to a decree made by the Pope & Cardinals, leuied and paid of the tenths of the Clergie throughout all ITALIE. And ſo *Maximilian* the Archduke moſt magnificently feaſted and entertained by the Pope, and by him rewarded with foure thouſand crowns, hauing well diſpatched the buſineſſe he came for, returned againe vnto the Emperor his brother.

But as the Chriſtian Emperour was thus carefull about his prouiſions for the withſtanding of the Turkes, they were not any whit behind him in augmenting of their forces for the inuading of him. And now the Tartars in great number being about to come vnto their aid into L
HVNGARIE, being denied paſſage by the Polonians, had turned head towards VALACHIA, with a purpoſe by force and ſtrong hand to get that of theſe weake people, which the power of the ſtronger had embarred them off. And ſo preſuming vpon their number, they entred into the ſame prouince, which they all ouer rifled and ſpoiled at their pleaſure. Where ſuch of the countrey people as could eſcape their furie, fled into the townes, leauing their goods behind them vnto their mercileſſe rage, not with any thing to bee ſatisfied. *Radulph* the Vayuod himſelfe as a man with furie diſmaied, fled to CRONSTAT to *George Baſta:* where he conſidering the danger he was now in, and that hee was ſtill to expect the like, ſo often as the Tartars were for the ſeruice of the Turke to come into HVNGARIE: before *Baſta* tooke a new oath of M
allegeance vnto the emperor, ſolemnly proteſting to die and liue in his ſeruice, neceſſitie now enforcing him to acknowledge his dutie, and to ſeeke for the remedie of his harmes which he had before oftentimes moſt proudly reiected. Vpon which his ſo humble ſubmiſſion *Baſta* receiued him and his countrey into his protection.

Valachia ſpoiled by the Tartars.

Radulph the Vayuod ſubmitteth himſelfe & his countrey to the emperours protection.

In

A In the meane time two traitours were brought to CLAVDIOPLE, who hauing by wonderfull craft ſurpriſed a ſtrong caſtle belonging vnto a certain great ladie, a widow, neere vnto a burrough called CARASEBE, and rifled and ſacked the ſame, traiterouſly afterward ſold it vnto the Turkes, to the great hurt of the emperours ſubiects neere vnto the place, and the no leſſe aduantage of the Turkes. Wherof the Haiduckes hauing gotten vnderſtanding, and cunning in ſuch matters, vpon the ſudden ſurpriſed the Turkes by the way, as they were comming to haue taken poſſeſſion of the place: who ſeeing themſelues too weake to withſtand their enemies, and out of hope to ſaue themſelues by flight, were there as men diſmaied, and appointed to the ſlaughter, moſt of them by the Haiducks cut in pieces, and the reſt taken priſoners. The two traitors being according to their deſerts, for their ſhamefull treacherie, moſt cruelly put to death, to the terrour of others.

The Turkes ſurpriſed by the Haiduckes.

B The Haiduckes hauing no houſes but the fields, nor other trade but their armes, ſpoiled of the one by the Turkes, and armed with the other by neceſſitie, are alwayes in readineſſe for ſeruice. In hope of profit, it is to them a pleaſure to paſſe ouer the mountaines of yce, to trauell through the ſtormes of thunder and lightning, to ſwim ouer the deepe riuers, and to thruſt themſelues into a thouſand dangers: which as it is no commendable kind of life, ſo is the practiſe of it vniuſt. For as in this, ſo in other their actions, they ſpare neither friend nor foe, all that comes in their way being ſubiect, and as it were, appointed to their furie: but eſpecially when they want their pay, which affoordeth vnto them a thouſand excuſes, for the robbing & ſpoiling of all men without reſpect. With which manner of furie they were euen

The Haiduckes what manner of men they be, and their outragious inſolencie.

C at this time enraged for want of their pay, in ſuch ſort, as that if their right hands ſpoiled the Turks, their left hands robbed the chriſtians: as vpon one & the ſelfeſame day, they took from the Turkes of AGRIA, a number of beaſts and cattell, and rifled diuers villages of the Chriſtians. And not content with theſe outrages, meeting with an hundred, or ſix ſcore wagons, laded with great ſtore of victuals, going toward ALBA IVLIA, conducted by the Zeclers, ſet vpon them, ſlew them that driue them, and carried away the wagons with them. But theſe wrongs by Chriſtians done vnto Chriſtians, euen the mortall enemies of the Chriſtians, the Turkes themſelues, reuenged. For the Turkes of TEMESVVAR hauing beene abroad toward LIPPA, and found good ſtore of bootie, meeting with theſe ſharkers, were by them charged, not ſo much for that they were their enemies, or for the zeale of Chriſtianitie, or for the de-

D ſire of honour, as for to haue had from them their prey and bootie. But the Turkes being in number twice as many as they, and withall well acquainted with ſuch buſineſſe, were not ſo eaſily to be ſpoyled; but knowing their owne ſtrength, with their number, oppreſſed their enemies, moſt of whom they ſlew, and tooke the reſt priſoners. God being as iuſt in his puniſhments, as hee is in his workes powerfull, puniſhing the wicked, by the weapons of others as wicked, or rather worſe than they.

The Turkes in the meane time, whileſt things thus paſſed, began againe to fall to their old practiſe, for the ſoliciting of a peace: but ſuch fantaſies were too ſtale and common for them any more to deceiue the Chriſtians with: howbeit that they yet gaue ſome eare thereunto, to diſcouer in their policie the commodities and inconueniences of the peace by them in

The Turkes in their hearts meaning war, make ſhew as if they were deſirous of peace.

E ſhew offered, with a thouſand proteſtations in words, but farre differing from their thoughts and deeds: who during the time of the parley laboured in what they might to benefit themſelues, and to hurt vs. For euen in that ſame very time they fortified their townes and caſtles with men and victuals, but eſpecially the citie of BVDA, whereinto by a conuoy of three thouſand Turkes come from BELGRADE, they put an exceeding quantitie of all ſort of neceſſary prouiſion, ſufficient to ſerue the ſame for an whole yeare. Beſides that, it was certainly known by certaine Turkes taken priſoners, and brought to POSCONIVM, that all this parley and treatie of peace, was but of purpoſe fained to put the Chriſtians in ſecuritie, for that the Baſſa of BVDA, who was the chiefe publiſher of the ſame, had no ſuch commiſſion from the great Sultan, for the concluding of any peace in the abſence of the Viſier Baſſa, vnto whom the grand

F Seigniour had giuen charge, not to make any peace with the emperour, but vpon condition, That he ſhould firſt deliuer vnto him the citie of STRIGONIVM: which if he would not yeeld, that then he ſhould beſiege it, and by force take it from him; and after the winning thereof, to refuſe all other treatie of peace, it being the onely cauſe for which the Turkes deſired peace. Of all which their double dealing, and craftie deſigns, the emperor vnderſtanding, and wholly

ly reſolued for war, preſently ſent Countie *Sultze* with commiſſion to VIENNA, and appointed *George Baſta* Lieutenant Generall of his armie in HVNGARIE; aduiſing them carefully to looke to their charge, and not too much to truſt vnto the gloſing and flattering ſpeeches of the Turkes. G

The caſtle of Reouin ſurpriſed by the Haiducks

The Haiduckes in the meane time, alwaies in armes, as hauing no other inheritance whereon to liue, ceaſed not ſtill to looke abroad, to find that was neuer loſt. Now, it fortuned them in roaming abroad toward BELGRADE, to light vpon REOVIN, a ſtrong and faire caſtle of the Turkes, wherein 800 of the Turkes ſouldiours, and other of their countrey people had their abode, together with the greateſt part of their ſubſtance. In the ſtrength of which caſtle the Turks truſting, and there lying in ſecuritie, without farther care of their ſafetie, were vpon the ſudden, before they were aware, by theſe aduenturous men ſurpriſed, who, for haſt thruſting one another forward, at length caried the place, ſlew the greateſt part of the Turks, and taking the reſt priſoners, with a great and rich bootie returned to LIPPA. The like exploit they of the garriſon of CANISIA attempted vpon the caſtle and burrough of LAMBAC, which they tooke, and ſpoyled, and afterwards ſet it on fire: The flame whereof ſerued for a ſignall vnto the troupes of Countie *Serin*, which paſſing that way, and lighting vpon the Turks ouerloded with the ſpoiles they had there taken, cut them in pieces, and ſo recouered from them the bootie. H

Petrinia in danger to haue been betraied vnto the Turke.

About this time certaine of the garriſon ſouldiours of PETRINIA, hauing ſecretly conſpired with the Turkes (by whom they were before corrupted) to deliuer vnto them that ſtrong caſtle: and being about to haue betraied the ſame by a myne which they were in making vnder a ſtable, neere vnto a ſtore-houſe wherein the powder for for the ſtore of the caſtle lay, with a purpoſe by firing of the ſame to haue giuen the Turkes entrance by the ruines thereof, who lay cloſe hidden in a wood neere vnto the place; it fortuned this their wicked purpoſe to be perceiued by certain offendors then kept priſoners in the ſame ſtable neere vnto the myne: who hauing diſcouered the traitours whole purpoſe, and in feare to bee burned or blowen vp by the furie of the myne ſo neere vnto them, diſcouered the ſame vnto the goaler, who made the Gouernour therewith acquainted, by whoſe commaundement they were forthwith apprehended, and being conuicted of their ſo foule a treaſon, were with exemplarie puniſhment executed. I

Now, as the Turkes had oftentimes made ſhew as if they had beene deſirous of peace, ſo ceaſed they not yet with great earneſtneſſe to ſolicite the ſame: ſo that the emperor although he knew it to be a thing rather to be wiſhed than hoped for, yet leaſt he ſhould ſeeme careleſſe of the common quiet of his ſubiects and people, and to refuſe ſo great a good ſo oftentimes offered him, now once againe appointed certaine perſonages of great place and authoritie to attend the propoſitions of peace to be on the Turks behalfe propounded. Of which Commiſſioners, *Cæſar Gallen* Sherife of STRIGONIVM, an Italian, and a man of great experience in matters of State, was one: Whom the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM had of purpoſe ſent to PESTH, to conſider of ſome good meanes for the concluding of the peace, wherof he himſelfe in perſon had laid the firſt foundation, and vnderſtood the Turks demands and pretentions, not much differing from thoſe which they had many times before demanded. Whereof the firſt was, That the Emperour ſhonld for the time to come, well and truely pay vnto the great Sultan and his ſucceſſors, all ſuch tribute as he was wont to pay vnto the Turkiſh emperours his predeceſſors during the time of his leagues with them, and that without any demaund to be thereof made. The ſecond, That the emperour ſhould alwaies haue his embaſſadour leager at the great Sultans court, with honourable preſents, there to ſolicite the continuation of his loue and friendſhip toward the emperor his maſter. The third, That the emperor ſhould deliuer vnto the Turks all the townes & caſtles which he had taken from them either by force or by ſurpriſe, during the time of this warre, together with the countries of TRANSYLVANIA and VALACHIA. Vpon which demaunds granted, they promiſed to ſend a meſſenger vnto the great Sultan, in their names, to intreat him to ſurrender CANISIA vnto the emperour, but not AGRIA, which (as they ſaid) they might in no wiſe deliuer, except they were thereunto by force of armes conſtrained. K

The inſolent & vnreaſonable demands of the Turkes, for the concluding of a peace with the Chriſtians.

The anſwer of the emperours deputies vnto the Turks proud demaunds.

L

M

Vnto which their ſo proud and vnreaſonable demaunds the Commiſſioners for the emperour anſwered, That the emperour long before this time had made peace with Sultan *Selym*, the

A the ſecond of that name, and with Sultan *Amurath* the third, this Sultan *Achmat* his predeceſſours. An aſſured peace, ſworne vnto and confirmed by all the iuſt and ſolemne Oathes that could haue beene by any man deſired: and for the more aſſurance thereof, into writing conceiued, and with the moſt authentique ſeales of their Maieſties confirmed: whereby both parties were moſt ſeuerely and ſtraitly forbidden one of them to attempt any thing againſt the other, or to encroach the one of them vpon the other, during the time of ſuch their league: And if ſo bee that contrarie to the tenour thereof, either part ſhould vndertake to ſurpriſe any place belonging to the other, and ſo become maſters thereof, that vpon the leaſt requeſt of the partie ſo wronged, the places ſurpriſed ſhould bee againe forthwith reſtored, as vſurped vpon, contrarie to the publique faith; and the vſurpers to bee ſe-
B uerely for the ſame puniſhed. And that yet the Turkes notwithſtanding thruſting by heaps beyond the barres of this ſo ſtrong and holy a league, had violated and broken the ſame, by ſurpriſing a number of places both in the high and low countreyes of Hvngarie, neuer giuing eare vnto any ſpeech or requeſt that could bee made vnto them for the reſtitution thereof. And yet not ſo contented, had alſo taken a number of places from the Emperour in Sclavonia, betweene the riuers of Culpe and Vnna: which places hee had oftentimes by as iuſt right redemaunded, as they were by vniuſt forces vſurped, before the beginning of theſe warres. Demaunds eſteemed iuſt and reaſonable euen by the Turkes themſelues, and yet for all that altogether reiected by the Great Sultans themſelues: of which their ſo great iniuſtice the Emperour had oftentimes moſt iuſtly complained, and ſo did euen at this
C day, at the feeling of ſuch his hurts and harmes. And that the Emperour hauing by ſo many perfidious dealings made proofe of the vntruſtineſſe of the Graund Seigniour his predeceſſours, what aſſurance then can hee conceiue of his fidelitie? or vpon what foundation of faith can he build the ſure building of peace, ſo much deſired of him? And yet if hee might hope ſo much of the faith of another man, as he is aſſured of his owne iuſt meaning, differing much from that of the Graund Seigniours, which he knew to bee neuer anſwerable vnto his, that he for his part could be well content to embrace the peace; prouided alwayes, That hee might haue Canisia and Agria deliuered vnto him. Or that if they would needs ſtill hold thoſe places, that he likewiſe might in peace hold the places that hee had before woon in that warre, the reaſons being on both ſides alike. And that as concerning Transylvania,
D hee could not deliuer that without betraying of his owne right, and the welfare of that prouince, hauing obtained the ſame as well by agreements and couenants betweene him and the ſonne of the laſt Duke, *Iohn*, as by the free and voluntarie releaſement which *Sigiſmund Bathor*, the laſt and immediate prince thereof had not long before made vnto him: for the defence of which his rights, he had ſpent many men, and great ſummes of money, and all for the keeping of that prouince by force of armes, which by ſo good right belonged vnto him. And that for Valachia hee could bee content to yeeld ſome part of his right vnto that prouince, ſo that the Turks ſhould ceaſe from thenceforth to demand of him any yerely tribute, or that he ſhould as of ordinarie duetie ſend his embaſſadours with yearely preſents vnto the grand Seignior, not being able without need, to conſent vnto ſuch a needleſſe ſeruitude: ſee-
E ing that euery prince ought to be at libertie, at his owne choice to ſend his embaſſadours, and not at the appointment of another man.

Which anſwere of the Emperours Commiſſioners ſerued to no other purpoſe, but for the Turkes to laugh and ſport at, how iuſt and reaſonable ſoeuer they were: ſtill preſſing them to yeeld vnto their vnreaſonable demaunds; or elſe threatning to aduertiſe the Great Sultan thereof, who by force would take that from them to their further loſſe, which they refuſed to graunt him by faire meanes, to their owne good. And ſo the Treatie was for that time broken off, without any thing concluded: which cauſed the Gouernour of Strigonivm to retire himſelfe backe againe vnto his charge; yet for all that leauing *Cæſar Gallen* behinde him, to entertaine it in ſuch ſmall hope as was there-
F of yet left: Who afterwards ſeeing it almoſt deſperate, making a great feaſt vnto certaine of the chiefe of the Turkes of Bvda, and hauing in that meriment drawne from them a promiſe to liue as friendes with them of the garriſon of Presth, and of other places which lay neere vnto that towne, hee retyred himſelfe afterwards vnto Strigonivm alſo.

The Turkes ſcorne and deride the reaſonable anſwers of the emperors Commiſſioners.

Short-

The shamefull cowardise of Iagenreuter gouernor of Pesth

Shortly after whose departure *Iagenreuter* Gouernour of PESTH, notwithstanding the late promises of the Turkes of BVDA, for their liuing by him in peace and amitie; and the assured promise of *Cæsar Gallen*, at his last departure, for the speedy furnishing of the town both with men and all things else necessary for the defence therof, which he ought with great assurance to haue expected, yet dismaied with the brute of the comming of *Hassan Bassa* the Turks Generall with his great armie, and that by the strait commandement of the great Sultan, hee was to begin his conquests in HVNGARIE with the winning of PESTH; as a man afraid of his own shadow, thought good betime to prouide for himselfe: and vpon that resolution, hauing yet seene no enemie at all to force him, trussing vp his baggage, the fift of September forsooke the towne, with fiue companies of footmen, and six troupes of horsemen following him: a sufficient number to haue for a time defended the towne, and endured a siege, especially in so strong a place, and so well prouided both of victuals and munition. All which, this most cowardly Gouernour (but vnworthie that name) left together with his honour, for a prey vnto his enemies: hauing yet before his departure out of the towne, caused the principall buildings thereof to be vndermined, and barrels of gunpowder to be laid vnder them, wherewith they were shortly after all ouerthrown, and most part of the towne burnt. But being gone not past halfe a league from the place, he met with foure hundred Haiducks all well armed, whom the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM had sent for the reliefe of PESTH, with a number of boates loaded with corne, munition, & other necessaries of all sorts, for the better assurance of the place, and the performing of the promise before to that end made by the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM: which Hungarian Haiduckes meeting with these dismayed cowards vpon the way, thought it not best to goe any farther, as thinking themselues not able to doe that with their so small a number, which the other durst not to vndertake with their farre greater: and so ioyning themselues with the other fearefull fugitiues, they with them returned to STRIGONIVM, leauing their vessels and munitions vnto their enemies, who immediatly after seized vpon them.

Pesth most shamefully abandoned by the Christians.

Pesth taken by the Turkes,

The next day after the mines hauing taken their effect, the Turks wondring to see so great and terrible a fire in PESTH, which still more and more encreased, there being none that went about to quench it, aduentured to come ouer the riuer from BVDA, and to draw neere vnto the towne now all on a light fire. Which they finding abandoned and forsaken by the Christians, they with great diligence quenched, repaired the ruines of the towne, and so without any losse became masters of the same.

Iagenreuter for his cowardise worthily committed to prison

Iagenreuter the cowardly late Gouernour with his fearefull troups in the meane time comming to STRIGONIVM, and by the Gouernour there examined of the causes of his flight, and of the so shamefull leauing of his charge: and being able to alledge no other cause or reason, but the great brute and report of the Visier Bassaes comming with his armie to besiege the towne, was therefore committed to prison, and there reserued to be afterward iustly punished for his disloyaltie and cowardise.

The Bassa of Buda excuseth himselfe for the taking of Pesth.

The Bassa of BVDA by the cowardise of the Gouernor thus possessed of PESTH, by letters excused himselfe vnto the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM, for the taking thereof, the treatie of peace being not as yet quite broken off: alleaging for himselfe (as the truth was) That he had taken it as a place by the Christians vpon a vaine feare forsaken, & desperatly set on fire, without any such cause giuen them so to doe by the Turkes, or on his behalfe. And farther, offered vnto the Gouernour, if hee so pleased, to deale with him for the exchange of prisoners on both sides taken, offering to exchange one of them for another. And as for the concluding of the peace so oftentimes treated of, and euen yet in hand, that hee for his part was wonderfull desirous that it might be fully concluded and ended, before the arriuall of *Hassan* the Visier Bassa with his armie in HVNGARIE: for that hee being once come, there would then bee no time amiddest the noyse of so many weapons, and so many men of warre, to talke of peace.

Hassan Bassa commeth into Hungarie.

Hassan the Visier Bassa was now for all that already entred into HVNGARIE, drawing after him a world of men, and was come towards SEXART, for the viewing of which armie the Gouernour of PALLANTVVAR going forth with an hundred horsemen, by euill hap chanced, before he was aware, vpon the sudden to meet with fiue hundred Turks, by the Bassa himselfe likewise sent foorth to discouer the countrey, and the passages thereof: by whom he charged,

and

A and with the multitude of his enemies oppreſſed, was himſelfe taken priſoner, moſt of his men being in that conflict ſlain, ſome few of them that were left aliue by ſpeedie flight hardly eſcaping. Which euill hap on the Chriſtians ſide, was forthwith recompenced with the better ſucceſſe of the Countie *Serin*, who falling vpon three hundred Turkes neere vnto SIGETH, being in number ſcarce halfe ſo many as they, yet ſet vpon them with ſuch courage, that giuing them no leaſure to conſider of the weakeneſſe of his forces, they were by them ouerthrowne and cut in pieces, before they were well aware of him.

But togither with the time of the yeare, to come vnto the maine point of theſe preſent warres in HVNGARIE, the Turkes finding themſelues out of hope by any capitulations or treaties of peace, to regaine the ſtrong towne of STRIGONIVM out of the hands of the
B Chriſtians, were now reſolued to employ the vttermoſt of their forces for the obtaining of the ſame; with a thouſand proteſtations, That if by force of armes and ſtrong hand they ſhould gaine the place, they would neuer more haue peace with the Chriſtians. At which their vaine threats and ſpeeches, the Chriſtians before reſolutely ſet downe for the defending of the place by them ſo much deſired, and well acquainted with their great brags, could not but with ſcorne ſmile, as men nothing therewith diſmayed, nor ſo to be remooued. Neuertheleſſe the Baſſa conſtant in his reſolution for the regaining STRIGONIVM, with all his forces came the eighteenth day of September and layed ſiege vnto it. Now vnto this ſiege *Strigonium beſieged by the Turkes.* the Turkes, in hope of ſpoyle and bootie, came flocking from all places, as it had been to
C ſome great mart; and the fields in all the countrie thereabout were couered, and ſwarmed with armes, men, horſes, and tents. They encamped neere vnto *Charles* his hill, taking vp with their tents halfe a league of the countrie round about: and at their firſt comming moſt brauely aduanced their enſignes with their halfe Moones, the armes of their ſtill increaſing empire. Whom the beſieged in this action imitated, brauely aduaunncing their enſignes vpon their wals, as did the Turks in the fields, and further brauing and prouoking them with a thouſand thundering ſhot, diſcharged out of the towne amongſt them. All the walles round about the towne, gliſtered with armes and flames of fire, out of which the deadly bullets flew carrying with them death and terrour into the middeſt of theſe new come enemies, for their welcome. The Turks neuertheleſſe came ſtill reſolutely on, and as men prodigall of their liues euen in the middeſt of ſo many dangers, began to make their approches.
D Vpon whom the Chriſtians with great courage ſallied forth, to diſturbe them in their works, *The Chriſtians ſallie forth vpon the Turkes.* and ſo for the ſpace of certaine houres hauing had with them an hoat and ſharpe skirmiſh, without any great hurt receiued, retired againe into the towne, leauing vnto their enemies by that they had done, a good teſtimonie of their valour and reſolution. The Turkes for all that lodged themſelues, made their trenches, and ſo encamped before the mount of Saint *Thomas*, where by the placing of their cannon, they well declared their meaning for the battering of that fort.

Againſt which their deſignes, *George Baſta*, Lieutenant Generall of the Imperiall armie, *The careſull endeuors of Baſſa the Emperours Lieutenant Generall, for the preſeruation of Strigonium.* right reſolutly oppoſed himſelfe, hauing neere vnto STRIGONIVM caſt vp a ſtrong fort, well furniſhed with men and great artillerie, from which he greatly annoyed the Turkes with his
E great ordnance, and with the furie thereof enforced them to remooue farther off with their approaches: his armie vpon the riuer of Danubius in the meane time lying betwixt the Iſle of STRIGONIVM, and the old towne of the Raſcians, to keepe the enemie from entring either into the one place or the other.

Countie *Sultze* Gouernour of the place alſo hauing taken a generall muſter of his men, *The comfortable ſpeech of County Sultze Gouernor of Strigonium, to his garriſon.* and with comfortable and cheerefull ſpeeches encouraged his ſouldiors, putting them in mind of their duetie, and of the honourableneſſe of the action now in hand, as vndertaken for the maintenance of the Chriſtian religion, for the ſeruice of the emperor, and the ſafegard of their own liues: perſuading them withall, not to put any truſt or confidence in the Turks
F faith, or faire promiſes, conſidering that their weapons were euen yet wet with the bloud of their Chriſtian brethren, moſt perfidiouſly by them of late maſſacred and ſlaine at the taking of ALBA REGALIS: encouraging them alſo with the goodneſſe of their cauſe, with the carefulneſſe of their friends abroad for their reliefe, with the regard of their own valour, and cowardiſe of their barbarous enemies, whoſe onely hope and truſt was in their multitude: and

withall comforting them, that holding out but ſome few moneths, the very elements themſelues, and time of the yeare, would as it were fight for them, and affoord them aid, their enemies being not able with their great armie, in the extreamitie of Winter weather, without their irreparable loſſes, to hold the field. And that as for himſelfe, his honour together with his life, were ſo bound vnto his graue and ſepulchre, at the foot of the wals of that place, as that they could not be from the ſame ſeperated; hauing propoſed the glorie of the preſeruation of that place, or elſe of an honourable death, as the end of all his actions, and conſummation of all his hopes. And that therefore he moſt earneſtly beſought them to follow his ſo honourable a purpoſe, in aſſiſting him in that action, ſo much concerning their liues and honour, and wholly depending of their courage and reſolution. And that for teſtimonie of his earneſt deſire to the furthering of this ſeruice, he was willing to depart with a good part of his ſubſtance and treaſure, to be beſtowed vpon them, amiddeſt theſe the trophies of his honour; hauing commanded them to haue certaine months pay paied before hand vnto them, which was accordingly done.

Now the Turkes hauing a purpoſe eaſily to begin the conqueſt of STRIGONIVM by the taking of the ſtrong fort of Saint *Thomas*, came the foure and twentieth day of September to aſſault and batter the ſame: vpon whom fiue hundred horſemen, and two thouſand footmen ſallying out of the fort, cauſed them, after a ſharpe and bloudie conflict, and not without ſome loſſe on both ſides, to retire backe againe, and to forſake the mount, whereupon they were encamped. But in purſuing of them too farre, they fell into a great ambuſh, before by the Turkes for that purpoſe laied to entrap them; where betwixt them was fought a moſt ſharpe and bloudie fight, the Turkes preſuming vpon their multitude, and the Chriſtians ſtanding vpon their valor and honour. Vntill that in fine, valour by number being oppreſſed, ſeuen hundred of the Turkes being ſlaine, the Chriſtians were enforced to retire, hauing loſt about an hundred of their men, and amongſt them the valiant Countie *Caſimir* of HOLENLOTH, for whoſe bodie there was a notable fight betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turks; not much vnlike vnto that which the Poet *Homer* deſcribeth, to haue beene fought betwixt the Troianes and the Greekes, for the bodie of *Patroclus*. Howbeit that at length the Chriſtians being ouercharged with the comming on of the whole armie of the Turkes, were glad (as I ſaid) to retire, and ſo to leaue the dead bodie of the Countie *Caſimir* in the power of their mercileſſe enemies, who as dogges which reuenge themſelues vpon the ſtones which are caſt at them, being not able to bite the hands of them that threw them, ſo did they vpon the bodie of this gentle Knight, by cutting off his noſe and eares, and afterwards his head. But within ſome few dayes after, this bodie ſo diſfigured was againe deliuered vnto the Chriſtians for a Turke of good account, who was about that time by them taken priſoner. At which time the Turks ſeemed to bee verie deſirous of peace, moſt earneſtly requeſting Countie *Fredericke* of HOLENLOTH (the ſlaine Counties brother) not to be an hinderer thereof. Howbeit that this was but one of their old practiſes, depending ſtill vpon vnreaſonable conditions, whereof the yeelding vp of STRIGONIVM was one of the chiefeſt, as the place by them moſt deſired.

A notable ſallie of the Chriſtians out of the fort of S. Thomas

The Chriſtians falling into an ambuſh of the Turkes, looſe one of their chiefe commanders.

More than beaſtly cruelties exerciſed by the Turks vpon the dead bodie of Countie Holenloth.

But if this ſiege of the Turks auailed them not againſt the place beſieged, yet was it profitable for them againſt another place by them not attempted, which was the ſtrong towne of HATVVAN, more ſubiect vnto feare, without any danger, than was STRIGONIVM vnto the bullets and batterie of the Turks, with iuſt cauſe of diſtruſt. For the ſouldiors which lay there in garriſon, terrified with the ſiege of STRIGONIVM, and doubting leaſt the Turks leauing that ſiege, ſhould come and beſiege them, truſſing vp their bagge and baggage, the nineteenth of September abandoned the place, and carrying away with them the beſt of the great ordinance, left the reſt altogether with the place, and great ſtore of prouiſion, vnto the enemie, not in hope of any ſuch matter.

Hatwan moſt ſhamefully forſaken by the Chriſtians.

The bruit of the ſiege of STRIGONIVM had called thither all the forces of both parties in HVNGARIE, and the countrie therabouts, on the one ſide for the winning thereof, and on the other for the defence of the ſame. Amonſt others the Countie of TAMBIER, Gouernour of LIPPA, was about to haue gone thither with certaine of his troups to haue aided his General, for the preſeruation of the place. But in the meane time *Bethlin Habor*, chiefe of the rebels in

TRANSYLVANIA

A TRANSYLVANIA, assisted by *Beckheres Bassa* with foure thousand Turks entred into the pro- uince to haue made himselfe master thereof vnder the protection of the Turke. Whereof the Countie hauing got knowledge, resolued to goe to meet him, and to encounter him at the verie first enterance of him into the Pouince. This old rebell knowing that *George Bassa* was by the emperours appointment gone out of the countrie with the best troupes of his horsemen, the greatest strength of the prouince, came on in great securitie, thinking of nothing but of victorie, and of performing his intended exploit, without feare of any to let him: so that casting no further perill, hee was surprised by the Countie, before he was aware, and put to flight. Neither was the fight long betwixt men accustomed to van- B quish, resolutely set downe, and well armed, against men dismayed, halfe naked, and sur- prised. In which conflict aboue a thousand of them being slaine, and a thousand of horses of seruice taken, the rest fled; amongst whom *Bethlin* himselfe with his Bassa flying, were glad by swimming to saue themselues amiddest a thousand chances and dangers of their liues.

Bethlin Habor the rebel surprised and ouerthrowne by the Countie Tamber.

The Bassa of TEMESVVAR aduertised of this ouerthrow by one of them that was fled from the same, presently he sent forth his Lieutenant with a good number of men, to re- lieue the vanquished Turks: Who by the way vnderstanding of the generall ouerthrow of them whom he was sent forth to relieue, as also of the strength of his enemies, and that hee was come too late to the relieue of his friends, retired as fast as he could with his men backe C againe homeward toward TEMESVVAR. But being in their retreat discouered, and hoatly pur- sued by these men imbrued with the bloud of their enemies, and yet breathing with victoie, they were by them ouertaken euen almost at the gates of their citie, and there (as men before ouercome with feare, and ouerwhelmed with despaire) cut in pieces, without any fight or re- sistance by them made, beseeming men of their sort; the Lieutenant himselfe being there slaine also.

Suctors sent to the rebell by the Bassa of Temeswar, defeated by the countie Tamber, and the Bassa his lieutenant slain

After which exploits done, the Countie turning towards IVLA, chaunced to light vpon certaine companies of Turkes loaded with bootie which they had got in roaming abroad into the countrie thereabout, whom he pursued euen vnto the gates of the towne, which they found shut against them; for that they within the towne seeing the Christians euen D at the heeles of their companions, had shut their gates, neither durst now open the same for feare least the Christians should together with them enter the towne, and so become masters thereof. Who so shut out by their owne friends, were there all by the Christians slaine, euen in the sight of their companions, not daring to let them in, nor able to relieue them. After which massacre done, the Christians not yet so contented, burnt the sub- urbes of the towne, and so loaded with the spoyles of their enemies, departed. The Coun- tie after so many honourable exploits in a small time by him performed, returned to LIPPA, where he arriued the fiue and twentieth of September, and from thence afterward aduertising *Bassa* the emperors lieutenant generall, of these his exploits done, caused ten of the Turkes ensignes, all stained with their own bloud, to be presented vnto him, as the sure tokens of his E good seruice done.

But to returne againe vnto the siege of STRIGONIVM, the greatest exploit by the Turkes intended for this yeare, from which we haue from the occurrent of the same time a little stra- ied. The Visier Bassa perceiuing by the valiant and resolute defence of our men, how little he preuailed in this siege, and that it was like ynough to tend at length to his dishonour, thought it good once againe to prooue, if he might by composition gaine that which he was now almost out of hope by force to obtaine. And to that purpose caused a motion to bee made vnto the besieged, for a treatie to bee had concerning a peace, and a day appoin- ted for the same. Vnto which motion for peace the Imperials (although they had no hope at all, of any peace to bee concluded) easily yeelded, least they might be thought F obstinately to haue reiected the same. Whereupon Commissioners were on both sides appoynted to meet together, to conferre of the matter. And so for the Emperour *Al- them* himselfe, with *Ferdinand Collonitz*, and *Fredericke* of HOHENLO, Countie of RHENE, were appointed neere vnto the Rascian towne to meete with the Turkes Commissioners, to heare what they would say. Howbeit the Commissioners on both sides being met at the place aforesaid, all their conference was but vaine, and to no purpose; the Turks still

The Visier Bassa seeketh to gaine Strigonium by offering of the Christians peace

Deputies appointed to entreat with the Turks of peace.

The treatie for peace broke off.

vrging the yeelding vp of SZRIGONIVM, and the Imperials as earnestly refusing the same. G So that the treatie for peace being broken off, and the Commissioners departing, the siege was more cruelly by the Turks continued than before.

The Cossacks depart out of the Turks camp vnto the Christian.

Now there were in the Turkes armie lying at the siege, certaine companies of Cossacks, men for their pay indifferent to serue any prince of what religion soeuer. Which seruiceable men, in number 700, had agreed together the 28 of September, by night to forsake the Turkes campe, and to come vnto the Christians. Of which their purpose and designe the Visier Bassa hauing by some vntrustie among them got knowledge, caused the footmen of these companies to be apprehended and slaine; the horsmen in the meane time making themselues way ouer the bellies of such as would haue staied them, fled, and escaped, some of them to KOMARA, and some to DORIS. Threescore of these Cossacks being by the Turks H hardly pursued, aduentured to swim ouer DANVBIVS, and so all naked came to *Collonitz*, by whom they were courteously entertained and apparelled. And within three dayes after 200 horsemen moe of the same Cossacks came vnto *Collonitz* also: who marching in good order vnto the head of the Christian campe, were there sworne vnto the Emperours seruice, and in token of their loyaltie there discharged their pistols thrice. Which horsemen *Collonitz* diuided amongst the rest of his troupes, as hauing before time had good experience of the courage and good seruice of diuers such others of their fellowes.

The Ianizaries in mutinie against the Visier Bassa.

The reason of the mutinie of the Ianizaries against the Bassa their Generall.

By these fugitiue souldiours it was vnderstood, that the Ianizaries in great number vp in mutinie against the Visier Bassa, would haue enforced him to haue raised the siege, and so to haue departed. The cause of their so great discontentment (as they pretended) was the ma- I nifest and assured danger of their liues, with little or no hope at all for the gaining of the place: They themselues being still exposed to the dangers both of the siege and of the field, hauing the besieged on head of them armed with an assured resolution, and the Christian armie at their backs of knowne valour and experience. Besides that, the place it selfe was (as they said) impregnable, being at all times to be releeued, by reason that it commaunded ouer the DANVBIE, which might alwayes releeue it both with men and victuals. And that therefore, after that they had satisfied their honour, by giuing of an assault or two vnto the fort of S. *Thomas*, they had resolued to arise, and to be gone. And much about this time; *viz.* the 29 of September, in the night time, was a most dreadfull fierie impression seene, in fashion much like a Rainebow, of a fierie red colour, which beginning ouer COCKERA, and rising higher K ouer STRIGONIVM, at length vanished away ouer the fort of S. *Thomas*. The sight whereof much troubled the beholders thereof, as well the Christians as the Turks: such strange meteors and apparitions being oftentimes the presages of the ruine of them to whom they appeare.

In the meane time whilest the Turks thus lay before STRIGONIVM, at the siege of Saint *Thomas* fort, the lord *Basta*, Lieutenant Generall of the Emperours forces, to giue the Turks to vnderstand, how that he was alwayes in readinesse to attend vpon their doings, & to take hold of all such opportunities as should by them be offered, & so to keepe them in suspence, came with seuen thousand braue horsemen, and shewed himselfe in the plaine field in order of battell, so, as it were, brauing the Turks euen vnto their owne trenches: where hauing L discharged their pistols thrice, they returned as victorious, alwayes keeping themselues in order, as men readie either to giue or to accept of battell. Howbeit the Turkes for the present keeping themselues close within their trenches, moued not; but afterwards being desirous to counterbraue this the Christians presumption, the third day of October they came forth of their trenches, and gaue a second assault vnto saint *Thomas* fort, imploying the vttermost of their power in this action, whereupon they well knew a great part both of their honour and of their safetie to depend. But in assaying the fort they met with them as resolutely set downe for the defence thereof, and for the maintenance of their honour, as were they for the winnning of the same. So the assault was begun with great furie and aduenture, as was the other before: howbeit that it endured not long, for that the Turkes fought rather for the M discharge of their dutie, and to haue some iust cause to raise their siege, than for any hope they had to preuaile, or to carrie the place. For it befell them according as they had expected, so that after that the fight had endured little more than halfe an houre, amiddest the tempests of armes and furie, in fine the Turkes out of hope to preuaile, gaue ouer the siege, and retired,

The fort of S. Thomas the second time assaulted by the Turks.

hauing

A hauing in that conflict loſt fiue hundred of their beſt ſouldiours.

The Gouernour of STRIGONIVM had in the citie vnder his charge 6000 Haiduckes, who attainted with treaſon and feare, all forſooke the place excepting fiue hundred, preferring their liues, vnworthie the ſauing, before their duetie, and the life and honour of their General. With which ſhamefull treaſon, and the reſolution of the great Baſſa for forcing of the place, the Germaines there left, ſeeing their captains diſmayed, gathered themſelues together, promiſing by their own valour, to ſupplie what wanted by reaſon of the trecherie of the others, offering themſelues to be ſworne againe vnto the ſeruice of the emperour, and rather to dye all in the place, than to yeeld it vp vnto the Turkes, or to leaue it vnto their enemies: where
B by their generall conſent a ſolemne decree was made, That whoſoeuer he were which ſhould ſpeake or once make mention of yeelding the towne, ſhould forthwith therefore be hanged vpon a gibbet. The Turkes although they had now in two aſſaults bin twice repulſed, came yet forth once againe the fift day of October, and aſſaulted ſaint *Thomas* fort the third time: wherein they failed not to doe what they might, but were by the Chriſtians therein ſo receiued, that deſpairing of the winning thereof, they with great loſſe and ſhame retired. Which diſgrace cauſed them to returne to their old practiſes, for the taking of places by policie. For hauing in many places vndermined the wals, and filled them with gunpowder, they were in hope by that meanes to haue opened themſelues a way vnto their conqueſt. Of which their hope for all that they were deceiued: For the Chriſtians hauing perceiued their meaning, did by countermining not onely fruſtrate their endeauour, but carried away the powder alſo,
C which they had before laied in the mynes, reſeruing it to their owne further neceſſitie and vſe. Wherefore the Turks ſeeing themſelues of their hope deceiued, returned againe vnto their old practiſes, to come to a parley for peace. Of which their motion the Chriſtians nothing diſliked. But the Commiſſioners on both ſides being met together for that purpoſe, in a little Iſland beneath STRIGONIVM, when as the Turkes had offered vnto the Chriſtians the citie of AGRIA for STRIGONIVM: or if ſo bee that that exchange pleaſed them not, but that they would needs keepe the citie of STRIGONIVM ſtill, that then in conſideration of the peace, they ſhould deliuer vnto them the ſtrong townes of FILECK, ſaint SETSCHIN, PALLANKE, and NOVIGRADE; both of which demaunds were verie vnreaſonable. The Commiſſioners thereupon againe departed without concluding of any
D thing.

The ſhamefull treaſon of the Haiduckes of Strigonium.

The ſort of S. Thomas the third time aſſaulted by the Turkes.

The Turkes ſeeking to undermine the ſort of S. Thomas, diſappointed of their purpoſe.

A treatie for peace.

The treatie broken off, and nothing concluded

Now the armie of the Turkes was in it ſelfe diuerſly diuided with quite contrarie deſires, the Viſier Baſſa with ſome other of the Commanders, ſtood ſtifly for the taking of the place, as men willing either to returne from thence with victorie, or elſe there to end their daies: but the Ianizaries to the contrarie, were as earneſt to be gone, and to raiſe the ſiege, deeming it impoſſible as then to preuaile againſt a place ſo ſtrong, ſo well manned, and ſo eaſily to be ſtil relieued. With which their reſolution ſo contrarie vnto his, the Baſſa enraged, and yet propoſing before his departure to proue the vttermoſt of his forces againſt the fort now alreadie by him thrice before aſſaulted, the tenth of October gaue thereunto ſix great aſſaults, but with like ſucceſſe as before, finding there ſtill the ſame defendants, no whit diſcouraged, but armed
E with their accuſtomed reſolution. For the defendants encouraged by their moſt valiant commanders, with ſuch furie repulſed the Turks, that they were glad to giue ouer aſſault vpon aſſault, and with great loſſe of their men to retire. Their often retreats alſo being vnto them no leſſe hurtfull than were their aſſaults, the deadly bullets being out of the fort diſcharged vpon them like ſhowers of haile. So that the Baſſa now after ſo many aſſaults, out of all hope to gaine the fort, and ſtill preſſed by the Ianizaries for the raiſing of the ſiege, immediatly after roſe with his armie, quitted his trenches, and retired with his campe neere vnto a caſtle, about a league diſtant from STRIGONIVM. From whence the Turks, the better to couer their diſhonour, and to hinder the Chriſtians from purſuing of them in their retreat, the next day after came into the field with a good part of their armie, and ſhewed themſelues before the Raſ-
F cian towne, and there skirmiſhed with the Chriſtian Haiduckes. Which manner of skirmiſhing for all that was more in ſhew, than in effect, neither partie therein receiuing any great loſſe or hurt. In the meane time, the beſieged which were in STRIGONIVM, hauing gotten certaine knowledge, that the enemie had alreadie remoued his cannon and other prouiſion for the ſiege backe againe into BVDA, in token of ioy diſcharged all their great ordinance

The Ianizaries vnwilling to continue the ſiege of Strigonium.

The ſort of S. Thomas ſix times in one day aſſaulted by the Turkes.

The ſiege of Strigonium giuen ouer by the Turkes.

out of the citie and the fort; by the report thereof giuing knowledge vnto the other townes G
and castles of the Christians, of their deliuerance. Of which so common a ioy euery one of
them were partakers, as deliuered from some part of the feare which the siege of so great a
a citie as was STRIGONIVM, had brought vpon them. And so the siege of STRIGONIVM be-
gun the eighteenth day of September, was by the Turkes giuen ouer, the thirteenth of Octo-
ber: the Ianizaries insolently threatning to haue slaine the great Bassa their Generall, if hee
had there any longer stayed.

Bassa pursueth the Turks army departing from the siege of Strigonium.

Bassa, the emperours lieutenant in the meane time awaiting all opportunities, failed not to
take hold of so fit an occasion, but with his horsmen following after the Turks armie, slew of
them a great number, and tooke some other of them prisoners. And afterward returning vn-
to their campe, found it void of men, but full of bullets, with certain pieces of great ordnance, H
which the Turks had left there, hauing not time to remoue the same to BVDA. Vpon this rising
of the Turkes armie, the Commaunders thereof were diuersly affected vnto the seruice that
was further to be done, as they had before been in the time of the siege. Such of them as lay
in HVNGARIE, or neere thereunto, desiring still to hold the field, in hope of the spoile of the
countrey: but they which dwelt further off, especially such as were come out of ASIA, desi-
ring as much to bee discharged, their horses being almost all dead with faintnesse and trauell,
and themselues wearie of the seruice.

Shortly after the rising of the Turks army from STRIGONIVM, two fugitiues of the Turks
most brauely mounted, came vnto *Bassa* the emperors lieutenant, and presenting him with a
ring of great value, and a most faire Turkish ensigne, told him most part of the Turks armie I
to lie then incamped in the countrey neere vnto PESTH; and the great Cham, a yong prince of
about twentie yeares old to be come thither with a great power of Tartars, to aid the Bassa:
And that the Turks by their comming incouraged, were determined yet to make a great ex-
cursion for the spoiling of the countrey. All which shortly after was certainly knowne to be

The vpper Hungarie by the Turks and Tartars spoiled and burnt.

true, the plaine countrey of the vpper HVNGARIE about PALANKA, SETSCHIN, and VILLE-
CAMPE, being by them, but especially by these new come Tartars, all spoiled and burnt. For
remedie whereof *Sigefride Collonitz* opposing himselfe with his Hungarian horsmen, against
these insolent forragers, so daunted them, that ceasing further to spoile the countrey, they de-
parted, carrying away with them such prisoners & spoile as they had there taken, and leauing
behind them a strong garison of 3000 good soldiors, for the repairing & keeping of PESTH, K
but a little before cowardly (as we said) by the Christians forsaken. But within some few daies
after, *viz.* the foure and twentieth of October, the Visier Bassa by his letters written vnto

The Visier Bassa by his letters maketh a motion for the treatie of peace.

Countie *Althem*, Gouernour of STRIGONIVM, made a mention for a treatie of peace to bee
had for the comfort of the distressed people of that spoyled countrey, solemnly protesting
most religiously on his part to keepe the same, if it should bee once concluded: and yet in
the meane time with fire and sword spoiling all the counrey by the way as hee departed out
of HVNGARIE.

New rebellion in Transyluania raised by Istuan, sirnamed Botscay.

But now as this poore countrey began to feele relieue by the departure of the great Bassa
with his armie out therof, so the countrey of TRANSYLVANIA ioyning thereunto, was at the
same time as much with rebellion & discord distressed. *Bethlin Habor* the rebell, with his Bas- L
sa ouerthrown and driuen out of TRANSYLVANIA (as is aforelaid) the L. *Belgiosa*, *Bassa* his
lieutenant in this prouince, thinking all things now at quiet, was making himselfe ready with
his troups, to haue gone to aid the L. *Bassa* his generall, then encamped in the plains of STRI-
GONIVM, to hinder the Turkes designes for the taking of this towne. But as he was about so
to haue done, behold euen at the same time when he least feared, a second rebell there started
vp, far worse than the first, namely the lord *Istuan* (otherwise surnamed *Botscay*, or more tru-

He was in scorn called Potscay (which in the Bohemian language signifieth tarie, or stay) of the long delayes he by way of disgrace had before endured in the emperors Court.

ly* *Potscay*) who accompanied with great troups of men of war, vnder the protection of the
Turke, and stiling himselfe by the name of the prince of TRANSYLVANIA, entring that pro-
uince, miserably burnt and spoyled the same. For the repressing of which so sudden a rebelli-
on, *Belgiosa* with a thousand horse, vnder the leading of *Rotkonitz* and *Peter Lasla*, marched to- M
ward VERADIN: and with his troupe comming to ADOR, a countrie village about a league
distant from VERADIN, and meaning thither to assemble togither his armie, hee sent to *Petsie*
Gouernour of VERADIN, to put him in mind of his dutie, and to craue his aid. Which valiant
captaine, alwaies prest and readie to do his prince seruice, failed not now of his dutie, but cal-

ling

A ling together ſix companies of footmen out of ROMOSA, and ioyning vnto them foure companies out of VERADIN, together with the Sileſian horſemen of *Schnet-Kenhut* his regiment (whom by reaſon of his ſickneſſe he was not able to lead) and with them the Haiduckes of Countie *Tambier*, came vnto the place of the rendezuous, bringing with him all warlike prouiſion, in token of his fidelitie. With this armie *Belgioſa* marched againſt the rebels, who as reſolute men attended his comming: for why, *Botſcay* knowing the Haiducks of Countie *Tambier* ſecretly to fauour him and his rebellion more than they did *Belgioſa* and his iuſt quarrels; ſtood in no feare of them, but aſſured himſelfe of them as of his friends; who failed not of his hope and expectation, but euen at the firſt ioyning of the battaile turned themſelues to his
B part: with the going ouer of whom, the number of the rebels was much encreaſed, and *Belgioſa* his power both in force and courage much weakened, ſeeing themſelues at once expoſed both vnto the force of their enemies & to the trecherie of their fellowes, who now with conioyned forces moſt fiercely aſſailed them: who finding theſelues now on all ſides enuironed with ſo great a multitude, and not able with ſo ſmall a number as was left to withſtand the violence of their enemies, & the treaſon of their companions, after they had to the vttermoſt of their power performed all the parts of valiant and couragious men, were there almoſt all cut in pieces, and there buried in the field of their loyaltie, honoured with their own bloud, and altogether embrued with the bloud of their enemies. In this vnluckie and diſloyall fight were diuers good and faithful captains ſlaine: *Petſie* Gouernor of VERADIN, and *Pallas Lipa*,
C both great captains, and grieuouſly wounded, were there taken priſoners. The Lieutenant of *Petſie* alſo hauing retyred himſelfe with ſome of his troupes into a place of good ſtrength, there ſo valiantly defended themſelues, that *Botſcay* out of hope to ouercome them by force, to get them into his power, promiſed them vpon his oath, if they would yeeld themſelues, to ſuffer them in ſafetie to depart. But what truſt or credit is to be giuen vnto him, who hath before broken his faith and loyaltie to his prince, this rebell well ſhewed by the death of theſe valiant and warlike men, who after that they had vpon his faith and promiſe yeelded themſelues, were by his appointment cruelly ſlaine and cut in pieces. The Sileſian horſemen were there alſo all ouerthrown and buried in the middeſt of their enemies: and as for *Belgioſa* himſelfe, he ſtrangely eſcaped out of the battaile, and ſaued himſelfe by flying to VERADIN. The
D victorious rebell after the battaile in ſtead of praiſing God ſacrificed to the deuill, by ſending a great part of the enſignes by him gained, vnto the Viſier Baſſa, with a thouſand praiſes of his glorie, for ſupporting of him in his rebellion: and vaunting much of this his victorie, gaue him withall to vnderſtand, that he had ſlaine aboue 6000 of his enemies.

Belgioſa goeth againſt the rebels of Tranſyluania.

Belgioſa in a great battaile ouerthrowne by Botſcay the rebell.

Botſcay dealeth vnfaithfully with ſuch as vpon his faith giuen vnto him, yeelded vnto him.

This victorie gotten, together with the humble ſubmiſſion of *Botſcay*, obtained of the great Sultan, That from thenceforth he ſhould be ſtiled by the name of the Prince of TRANSYLVANIA, with a further charge from him, to doe the vttermoſt of his endeuour for the ſubduing vnto his obeyſance the reſt of TRANSYLVANIA, promiſing plentifully to ſupplie his wants both with men and money, and out of hand to ſend him three thouſand Tartars to his aid. And indeed this was a very great and bloudie battaile, fought from the firſt breake
E of the day vntill eleuen a clocke at noone: but whether ſo many were ſlaine there, or no, it cannot certainly be told, for that diuers of them who were ſaid to be ſlaine and ſo accounted among the dead, had hid themſelnes in the wood thereby, and ſome others of them by ſome other meanes eſcaped death alſo. *Petſie* himſelfe had with him when he was taken two Monkes, whom the ſouldiors in deſpight cut into many pieces, and carried him faſt bound in chaines to DERRITZA, to be there cured of the dangerous wounds by him in the battaile receiued.

Botſcay in his rebellion countenanced by the Great Sultan, and called prince of Tranſyluania.

But as for *Pallas Lippa*, who being wounded, was taken priſoner with *Petſie*, he was afterwards by *Botſcay* appointed his Lieutenant Generall, & ſo by his commandement was publickly proclaimed; as he which was deſirous to take vpon him the defence of the reformed
F religion, and of ſuch as were willing to profeſſe the ſame: who forthwith made a generall proclamation, That all they which were deſirous of the libertie of conſcience, & to liue free from the ſuperſtitions of the Romiſh Church, ſhould repaire vnto him as vnto their head and chiefetaine, readie to entertaine them, and to allow to euery one of them fiue dollars a moneth for their pay. Vpon which proclamation made, a great multitude of men vpon the ſuddaine reſorted vnto him; ſo that in a ſhort time he had following of him tenne thouſand

Pallas Lippa, Botſcay his lieutenant, pretendeth the defence of religion for the ſtrengthning of Boſcay in his rebellion.

Hai-

Haiduckes, beside a number of other of the common rascall people: yea, almost all the gen- G
tlemen of the country repairing vnto him, bound themselues by oath to him, and one of them to another, That as they would not take vp armes to fight against the Christian Emperour, so they would not submit themselues vnto the Turke, but onely stand vpon the defence of their religion and the libertie of conscience.

The rebell *Botscay* thus wonderfully encreased in strength and number, beset almost all the passages of the country, and with the sword of rebellion in his hand, and his souldiors following him, commaunded the cities still as he went to yeeld vnto him: but, hearing that *Belgiosa* was after the late ouerthrow gone from VERADIN to CASSOVIA, where his wife lay, and being come thither, to haue been by the citizens reiected, who would not onely not receiue him into their citie, but turned his wife also out of the citie vnto him, hee with a great armie com- H
ming thither, tooke the citie without resistance, the citizens for the most part enclining vnto him: Of which citie being possessed, hee foorthwith changed both the Religion and ciuile gouernment thereof, slew part of such as were of the Romish religion, and thrust the rest out of the citie, with all the Church-men, tooke the Bishop and the Emperours Treasurour prisoners, and so changed the whole gouernment of the towne vp-side downe. The onely man hee stood in feare of, was *Belgiosa*, for whom hee laid wait by all meanes he could to haue taken him, with a purpose to haue vsed him most hardly, if hee had fallen into his hands.

The great citie of Cassouia yeelded to the rebel Botscay.

These things thus done in TRANSYLVANIA and in HVNGARIE, the Visier Bassa being about to returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, to grace that little which hee had done I
this yeare in HVNGARIE, and to auoyd the suspition of his euill successe in that prouince, borrowed of *Botscay* the rest of the ensignes, together with *Petsie* and other the noble Christian captiues which hee had taken in the late battaile with *Belgiosa:* which ensignes and prisoners hee confidently afterwards caused to bee presented vnto the Great Sultan *Achmat*, as taken by himselfe, and in recompence thereof, left three thousand Turkes and Tartars with the rebell, to ayd him in his warres both in TRANSILVANIA, and HVNGARIE.

An impudent shift of the Visier Bassa for the sauing of his credit with the Great Sultan.

Bassa the Emperours Lieutenant in HVNGARIE, and Gouernour of TRANSYLVANIA, hearing of the stirres and troubles of late raised in both those countreys by *Botscay* and his rebellious followers, and hauing as hee thought best set all things in order againe at K
STRIGONIVM, marched thence with his armie, being fourteene thousand strong, toward CASSOVIA, with a purpose to haue suppressed the rebellion in the vpper HVNGARIE, before it should haue spread farther, to the endangering of the whole estate of both those countries, as afterward it did. Howbeit, before hee could come thither, the rebels after the taking of CASSOVIA being wonderfully encreased both in strength and number, had taken in most of the strong townes and places in the vpper HVNGARIE, the people almost generally now fauouring their quarrell, carrying with it the face of religion, with the suppressing of the Germane gouernment, both things vnto them much pleasing. And now hearing that *Belgiosa*, a man of them most hated, being (as wee said) shut out of CASSOVIA, was fled into the castle of ZIPZE, they by letters required of *Turson*, captaine of the castle, to L
haue him deliuered vnto them, to bee according to his deserts punished; promising withall, to doe *Turson* himselfe no harme, so that hee would take part with them in the defence of their religion, and of the libertie of conscience: which if hee should refuse to doe, yet that they would giue him free libertie to depart whither hee would out of his castle, and in safetie to conduct him thither, so that hee would foorthwith resolue what course he would take: But if hee should of this his offer mislike also, then they threatned to spoyle his countrey, to kill his people, to raze his Castle, and to make himselfe an example vnto others. Wherewith for all that hee nothing mooued, refused to deliuer vnto them *Belgiosa*, the man whome they so much desired, or yet to accept of any of their other offers. Whereupon the rebels with great labour repairing the broken way betwixt CASSOVIA and the castle, and bringing certaine peeces of great ordnance from CASSOVIA, in great number came and straitly besieged the castle. With whose attemps the valiant captaine nothing mooued, with his thundering shot out of the castle so welcommed them, that hauing thereby receiued great harme, they thought it not their best course to stay any longer there M
with

Bassa goeth with his army against the rebels in the vpper Hungary.

Belgiosa in the castle of Zipze besieged by the rebels.

A with ſo great a power, but with the greateſt part thereof to goe to PRESBVRG, to reforme that citie and ſome other places by the way; perſuading themſelues, That the captain of this caſtle ſo ſhut vp, and on euery ſide beſet with his enemies, would at length of himſelfe yeeld vp his caſtle.

But while the rebels thus lay at the ſiege of this caſtle, certaine companies of them went to haue taken the ſpoile of a religious houſe there by: but comming thither, and breaking open the dores, and ſearching euery ſecret corner of the houſe, they found therein nothing worth the reckoning of, but ſo returned almoſt emptie handed: for the prieſts had for feare of them before carried away with them all the beſt of their goods and ſubſtance into the beſieged ca-

B ſtle. And ſo likewiſe the rife report of their comming to PRESBVRG flying abroad, almoſt all the prieſts and Ieſuits in PRESBVRG and the countrey thereabout, leauing their Churches and Colledges, fled with their ſubſtance to VIENNA, ſcarcely accounting themſelues ſafe there, vntill that the garriſon of that ſtrong citie was encreaſed with a new ſupply of ſixe hundred good ſouldiors.

The Prieſts and Ieſuits for feare of the Haiducks flie from Preſburg to Vienna.

And now the rebels their number ſtill more and more encreaſing, and hauing ſet all the vpper part of HVNGARIE on a broile, were beſieging diuers other caſtles and ſtrong places, yet holden for the Emperour; when as *Baſta* in the meane time, comming from the ſiege of STRIGONIVM, came and with his armie incamped about three miles from FILEK. Of whoſe comming the rebels hearing, and thereupon retyring, he foorthwith followed after them to-

C ward BVDNOC, which caſtle they alſo left, and ſo neere vnto RAMOSAMBAT, the place of their rendezuous, gathered together in great number, with an intent to haue giuen *Baſta* battaile. Whereof *Baſta* hauing knowledge, to ſpare the effuſion of more Chriſtian bloud, by an herauld, ſent vnto them in friendly and courteous manner, aduiſed them to change their minds, and to returne againe vnto their former allegeance: but finding them obſtinatly ſet downe in their former purpoſe, for the maintaining of their rebellion, and the giuing of him battaile, he marching forward with his armie, with great force charged certaine companies of the re-

Certain companies of the rebels diſcomfited and ouerthrowne by the lord Baſta.

bels, appointed to keepe the paſſage of FILEK; who at the firſt right valiantly receiued the charge, and defended the paſſage, vntil that at length with number oppreſſed, and aboue 400 of them ſlaine, they were put to the worſe, and enforced to flie: in which flight, amongſt o-

D thers there taken priſoner, *Blaſe Nemet* their captaine was taken alſo, whom *Baſta* cauſed to be hanged vp by the heeles, with the enſignes ſet vp about him which he had taken from the rebels in the late fight; and after he had for a time ſo hung, made him to be taken downe, and his head to be ſtrucke off from his ſhoulders. In this conflict fiftie of *Baſta* his men were ſlaine alſo, and many moe hurt, and amongſt them *Collonitz*, hurt in his ſhoulder and his foot with a ſmall ſhot.

Blaſe Nemet one of the captaines of the rebels taken and put to death.

Baſta after this victorie marching on with his armie, by the way met with certaine other companies of the rebellious Haiduckes as was going to *S. Peters*, with whom he had many an hote skirmiſh for the ſpace of three dayes together, being by them ſtill put the worſe, inſomuch, that hauing burnt many of his carriages, tents and other luggage, he was of nothing

E more carefull, than how well to get out of their hands. Neuertheleſſe, ſeeing no other reme-

Baſta diſtreſſed by the rebels.

die, he with great courage not onely endured the often and fierce aſſaults of his enemies, ſtill more and more increaſing vpon him, but the fourth day after ſo many vnfortunat skirmiſhes (being the eight and twentieth of Nouember) putting his men in order of battaile, right valiantly againe charged the rebels: who by reaſon of the darkneſſe of the weather, it being then a very thicke miſt, being not able to perceiue where the enemies attempts were moſt to be fea-

The rebels by Baſta ouerthrowne.

red, or what way to turne their owne forces, as men diſmayed, were eaſily by them ouerthrowne, and put to flight: whom ſo flying, *Baſta* with his ſouldiors fiercely purſuing, made of them a great ſlaughter; ſo that in the ſpace of leſſe than three houres fifteene hundred of them were in this thicke and darke miſt ſlaine, with ſome few alſo of *Baſta* his ſouldiors, and

F amongſt them *Friderick* Earle of SOLMES, and the Countie of ERBACH wounded. Vpon the report of which ouerthrow, the rebels which yet lay at the ſiege of the caſtle of ZIPZE, in hope there at length to haue taken BELGIOSA, foorthwith roſe, and retired themſelues to LEVTSA. But *Baſta* after this victorie remouing to *S. Andrewes*, and hauing recouered that towne from the rebels, and thereinto put a new garriſon, and ſo by this meanes ſomewhat daunted and repreſſed the inſolencie of the Haiduckes in thoſe quarters, and being not well able longer

to

to keepe the field with his armie in ſo vnſeaſonable a time of the yeare, and ſo to maintaine warre as it were both againſt his enemies, and the extremities of nature, ſought by letters to haue reclaimed them of CASSOVIA againe vnto their allegeance, offering vnto them pardon for all their offences paſt, ſo that they would now at laſt acknowledge their fault, and receiue into their towne a garriſon of the Emperours. To which purpoſe he writ alſo to them of EPERIA, in hope that if he might ſo haue gained thoſe two ſtrong townes, to haue in them wintered in ſafetie with his armie. But they of CASSOVIA hauing in the citie a ſtrong garriſon of 6000 good ſouldiours, and out of feare to be by *Baſta* beſieged at that time of the yeare, and withall in hope (if need were) to be by *Botſcay* relieued, who was then reported to be 40000 ſtrong, vtterly refuſed to hearken vnto *Baſta* his motion for their reconciliation, or at all to ſubmit themſelues againe vnto the emperour: Which cauſed him with his armie to come neerer vnto the citie, yet ſtill ſeeking rather by faire meanes to haue perſuaded the citizens to haue returned vnto their loyaltie, than by force to haue conſtrained them. But finding them obſtinately ſet downe, and by no perſuaſions to be remoued, but with their great ordnance in what they might to trouble his campe, hee ſent before the Countie *Hohenloh* and *Rotuitz* with part of his armie to EPERIA, to command them vpon their allegeance to receiue the Emperours ſouldiors into the citie, and to relieue them with ſuch things as they were able; and within a few dayes after, *viz.* the fifth of December, followed himſelfe with the reſt of his army. But being come thither, after much talke had with the chiefe men of the citie, it was at length contrary to all mens expectation agreed, That *Baſta* aſſuring them of the free exerciſe of their religion, of the good behauiour of the ſouldiors towards them, and to defend them from the iniurie and incurſions of their enemies, they ſhould open their gates vnto the Imperials, and relieue them with what they were able, and ſo as before to continue in their allegeance and obedience vnto the emperour. Of all which things when *Baſta* had vpon his faith giuen aſſured them, they opened their gates, and receiued in the ſouldiors: vnto whom (now almoſt dead and ſtarued with hunger) nothing could haue happened more comfortable or welcome. LEVSTA, BARBELD, and ZEBENA, famous townes in thoſe places, following the example of EPERIA, ſubmitted themſelues in like manner, and helped *Baſta* his ſouldiors with reliefe. Thither with great danger came vnto *Baſta*, *Sigefrid Collonitz*, a man of great power and authoritie in that part of HVNGARIE, to conferre with him about the appeaſing of theſe troubles: who afterward by his letters vnto the States and the reſt of the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, yea, and to *Botſcay* himſelfe, in vaine perſuaded them to lay downe armes, and to returne againe vnto their wonted obedience vnto the Emperour.

The citizens of Caſſouia refuſe to ſubmit themſelues, and to receiue emperours ſouldiors into their citie.

Eperia yeelded vnto Baſta.

There had bin hitherto in the imperiall camp great ſcarcitie of victuals and of other neceſſaries, ſo that for want thereof, and for the extremitie of the cold, and other miſeries, it was greatly feared leaſt the campe ſhould haue bin broken vp, to the irreparable loſſe of his imperiall maieſtie, as the ſtate of things then ſtood in HVNGARIE.) For the remedie whereof, 30 waggons loaded with money and cloth were ſent from VIENNA vnder the conduct of Countie *Solmes*, Colonell *Starenberg*, the Treaſurer, and others: vnto whom *Tanhuſar* ioyned 1500 Huſſars (Hungarian horſemen ſo called) to ſtrengthen the conuoy againſt the danger which was feared from the Haiducks which lay vpon the way, and who indeed were now roming about and ſeeking after bootie in euery corner of the countrey. Which Huſſars being come with the reſt of the conuoy into a thicke wood, about two miles from FILEK like enemies ſet vpon the waggoners, whom they ſhould haue conducted, and there made a great ſlaughter of ſuch as were about to reſiſt them, inſomuch that the Countie *Solmes* had much adoe to ſaue himſelfe, and to get out of their hands, leauing the waggons as a prey vnto the treacherous Huſſars, who now become maſters of them, draue them away to *Botſcay* the rebels campe; *Tanhuſar* their captaine in vaine purſuing after them (with ſuch of his Huſſars, as more faithfull than the reſt, had no hand in that ſo foule a treacherie) and recouering nothing but tenne waggons loaded with cloth, which the traitors had left behind them, hauing taken the horſes out of them, and put them into the other waggons wherin the money was (which was reported to bee 130000 florens) with the more ſpeed to bring them vnto *Botſcay*: Who hauing vpon the ſudden receiued ſo great a ſumme of money, by him not looked for, foorthwith diuided the ſame amongſt his ſouldiours, the more to encourage them in their rebellion againſt the Emperour.

The Huſſars traiterouſly ſpoyle them whom they ſhould haue conducted.

The

A The newes of this ſo great a loſſe being quickly ſpred thorow all the Emperours campe, at the firſt filled the ſouldiors with griefe and diſdaine againſt the treacherous Huſſars, but afterwards with wrath and indignation againſt their owne commaunders, as deeming it to haue bin nothing but a falſe report by them deuiſed and giuen out to deceiue them, & to feed them with a vaine hope. Which perſuaſion, though not true, had now ſo ſtrongly poſſeſſed their minds, as that they were about all to haue riſen vp in mutiny, and to haue forſaken the ſeruice to the vtter perill of their captaines, & endangering of the whole prouince, now vpon point to haue beene for euer loſt. All which miſchiefes *Baſta* foreſeeing, did firſt what hee might with words & faire promiſes to haue appeaſed them: which not ſeruing, he with certain thouſands of duckats and waggons of cloth taken vp at Levsta and other townes there by, wiſely con-
B tented them, in ſome good meaſure furniſhing the old ſoldiors, before halfe naked, both with money and apparell, the ſouldiors greateſt contentments.

Baſta wiſely appeaſeth his ſouldiors, readie to forſake his ſeruice.

Which mutinie ſo againe appeaſed, the imperials ſhortly after ſurpriſing a caſtle not farre from Eperia, found therein a great many of Hungarian Gentlemen, whom they caried away with them priſoners, to learne of them what they might concerning the rebels proceedings, and further deſignes. In the meane time the Haiduckes on the other ſide beſieged the caſtle of Sendra, which they after many aſſaults tooke and put to the ſword all the garriſon ſouldiors therin; and departing thence, firſt rifled & after burnt the towne of Filek. They alſo took the caſtles of Bolvar, Setschin, Dregel, Bvrac, Holloc, Blavenstein, and the ſtrong ca-
C ſtle of Cabragetia, whither they of Hatvvan not long before had caried their great ordnance at ſuch time as they for feare of the Turks, then lying at the ſiege of Strigonivm, had abandoned the place: all ſtrong holds in the vpper Hvngarie. After the taking of which places, *Ferentius Radius*, and *Charles Iſtuan* (*Botſcay* his neere kinſman, and the chiefe captaines and ringleaders of the rebels) exacted contribution money of the mine rall townes (as they call them) belonging vnto the Emperor in the vpper Hvngarie, but eſpecially of the citie of Nevvsoll, enforcing them alſo to ſweare to be in all things obedient to *Botſcay*, & to take his part againſt the Imperials, threatning with fire and ſword to infeſt ſuch places as ſhould refuſe to doe the like. And to the intent that they ſhould not by *Collonitz* bee incouraged or defended, who to that end was comming thither, the rebels in great number went to meet him, and hauing belayed all the paſſages, enforced him to retire himſelfe vnto his caſtle of Lebentsia; where hee
D lying in great danger with his wife then in child-bed, accompanied but with 50 German ſoldiors onely, for that he durſt not to truſt his Hungarian Coſſacks, now in heart altogether enclining vnto the rebels, was glad in poſt to ſend to Vienna, moſt humbly requeſting to haue a new ſupply of German ſouldiors ſent vnto him for his reliefe, and the furtherance of the emperors ſeruice, in that ſo dangerous a time and wauering eſtate of that countrey, being the beſt part of that the Emperour then held in Hvngarie.

Diuers places taken by the Haiduckes.

Collonitz prayeth aid from Vienna.

Now while *Baſta* thus lay with his armie at Eperia and in the countrey thereabout, he daily receiued great harme from the Haiduckes, who were ſtill houering about him, as hawkes ouer their prey; his ſouldiors, by neceſſitie enforced to fetch in wood, and other things neceſſarie into the campe, being ſtill moſt miſerably ſlaine and cut in pieces: yea, they were ſo
E bold, as oftentimes to trouble him in his campe, and to aſſaile his ſouldiors where they lay quartered in their trenches; as amongſt other times, they did in the latter end of December, to end the yeare withall: at which time they by night breaking into the quarter where *Charles Collonitz*, with *Copell* and *Pettinger*, two captaines of Avstria, with their companies lay, they ſlew the ſaid *Copell*, with almoſt all his ſouldiours, and burnt *Pettinger* in his tent, *Collonitz* himſelfe being at the ſame time in great danger, and hardly by them beſet alſo; vntill that encouraging his men, by performing all the parts both of a good captaine and valiant ſouldiour, hee by true valour enforced them at length to retyre backe againe into the woods, from whence they came, hauing in this conflict ſlaine foureteene of them with his owne hand.

Capell and Pettinger ſlaine by the Haiduckes.

F About this time was a ſpie taken in the Imperiall campe, one of *Botſcay* his chiefe men, diſcouered by one comming from Cassovia to Eperia which knew him: who by *Baſta* his commaundement apprehended, and vpon torture examined, and confeſſing what hee had done, was for his good ſeruice hanged and afterward quartered, to the terrour of others attempting the like.

A ſpie taken.

The

The Turks this yeare were not much fortunate in their warres: *Hassan* the Visier Bassa and G
their Generall against the Christians in HVNGARIE hauing in vaine (as is before declared) be-
sieged STRIGONIVM, and with all his forces done nothing worth the remembrance; and *Ci-*
The euill successe of Cicala Bassa against the Persians. *cala Bassa* their other Generall against the Persians in the East being with all his great power
by the Persian king ouerthrowne and put to flight, and the citie of BABYLON, now called BAG-
DAT taken: and was first at PRAGE the two and twentieth of October reported by the Secre-
tarie of the Vayuod of VALACHIA, sent thither in embassage from his master vnto the Empe-
ror, and afterward confirmed by an embassador sent from the Persian king himselfe vnto the
Emperour, who hauing audience, told his maiestie, how that the king his master was not ig-
norant of the great and difficult warre by him now for many yeares maintained against the
The effect of the embassage of the Persian king vnto the emperour. Turkish Sultan, with whom although hee for his part might haue liued in peace and amitie, H
yet that mooued with the zeale which one prince ought to haue to the reliefe of another, hee
had taken vp armes against him, so to auert some part of that heauie warre from his maiestie
euen vpon himselfe: and that he had already obtained many great and notable victories and
conquestes against him, and recouered a great territorie, wrongfully before taken from the
Persian kings his predecessors by the Turkish Sultans: and that now he was of nothing more
desirous, than to ioyne in a perpetuall league and amitie with his Maiestie, that so in a most
strong confederation combined together, they might neuer afterward be disseuered, or euer
make peace with the Sultan, without one anothers knowledge and consent. And further,
That for his part hee was minded neuer to giue ouer the warre so happily by him begun, vn-
till hee had driuen him euen into his imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, so that his ma- I
iestie would on his part doe the like, by continuing of his present warres; it being not possi-
ble for the Turke to hold out against them both, and the onely meanes to abate his great-
nesse, and to assure them in their estates: requesting him withall, to send backe with him
some graue man, his embassadour, with sufficient authoritie and instructions to conferre a-
bout these matters with him; that so knowing and vnderstanding one anothers mind, the
league and confederation betwixt them might the more easily and commodiously bee made
and concluded.

The Turkes troubled with ciuill warres. Neither were the Turkes busied with these forraine warres only, against these so great and
mightie princes, in places so remote and farre off, but vnto these were ioyned their owne in-
testine and ciuill warres and troubles also; the rebels being yet vp in the lesser ASIA, and the K
Bassaes of ALEPPO and DAMASCO, two of the most famous cities in SIRIA, and both of them
men of great place and command, of late vp in armes one of them against the other: inso-
much, that they had brought the matter to be tried by the sword in the plaine field, where the
Bassa of ALEPPO in a great and bloodie battell ouercome, and flying vnto his owne citie, was
by the Bassa of DAMASCO pursued hither, and so straitly by him besieged with an armie of
30000 men, that in fine he was glad to reconcile himself vnto him, and to make his peace, by
yeelding vnto whatsoeuer the other Bassa his enemie pleased to demaund of him; as being
thereunto driuen by the extremitie of famine, which then reigned in the citie; as also for that
he had lost a great number of his men, whom he had sent secretly out of the citie to seeke for
victuals, being all slaine by the Bassa of DAMASCO his souldiors. With which so great matters L
the Bassaes of the Court (who had the managing of the State vnder the young Sultan) were
much troubled, he himselfe (as was fittest for his yeares) in the meane time delighting himselfe
Sultan Achmat his first sonne borne. with the pleasures of the Court, and much reioycing at the birth of his first begotten sonne,
who was about that time borne.

1605 The reuolution of time had now thus brought this yeare to an end, the troubles of HVNGA-
Ciuill discord the ruine of Hungarie. RIE and TRANSYLVANIA yet still more and more so encreasing, as if that those most miserable
countries had by the iust and heauie iudgements of God beene now appointed vnto their last
and vtter ruine and destruction: the causes of their so great miseries proceeding not so much
from the Turks their enemies, as from the natural inhabitants themselues; who in minds diui-
ded both in religion and affection, some of them continuing in their allegeance vnto the em- M
Belioiosa author of the great rebellion in Hungarie. perour, and other some following the ensignes of the rebell *Botscay*, did both vnto themselues
and to their country more harme in a little time, than had the Turks in many yeres before. Of
which so dangerous a dissention, and of the harmes therof ensuing, *Belioiosa* left by *Basta* as his
Lieutenant, was reported to haue been the first and chiefe authour: For whereas the yeare
before

A before the biſhops and other Clergie men, in an aſſembly of them at POSSONIVM, had without the knowledge of the Nobilitie and States of HVNGARIE, publiſhed a decree by them there made, for the burning, or perpetuall baniſhing of all ſuch as were of the reformed religion in HVNGARIE: and that the States of that kingdome vnderſtanding thereof, and ſolemnly proteſting againſt the ſame vnder the ſeale of the Lo. *Palatine*, had publikely affirmed, with iuſt armes to defend themſelues, if they ſhould for their religion be called into queſtion, or troubled: and had againe repeated the ſame their proteſtation at GALSET. Yet *Belioioſa* neuertheleſſe in the meane time by cunning ſeizing vpon the reformed churches at CASSOVIA, would not ſuffer the citizens of the reformed religion there, to haue any ſermons in their own
B priuat houſes, or ſo much as to read on the holy Bible. Neither any whit moued with the former proteſtations of the Nobilitie and States, had taken vnto himſelfe all the lands & goods of them of the religion in CASSOVIA, not ſuffering them to burie the bodies of their dead within the citie, neere vnto the Monaſteries. And requeſting to haue borrowed of *Botſcay* certaine thouſands of crownes, and thereof by him denied, cauſed his ſouldiours to ranſack two of his caſtles, and to ſpoyle him of all the wealth and treaſure he therein had. For which indignities and iniuries *Botſcay* enraged, cauſed open proclamation to bee made, That hee would giue vnto euerie Haiducke that would ſerue him, foure crownes a moneth pay, with all the bootie that they could get. Whereupon ſix thouſand Haiduckes, which then ſerued vnder *Belioioſa*, forthwith reuoulted vnto *Botſcay*, their number encreaſing daily. But after that vnto this extraordinarie pay, *Pallas Lippa*, his lieutenant, had alſo ioined the protection of the
C reformed religion, it is wonderfull to ſay, how the Haiducks by heaps reſorted vnto him, and how the people in all parts of HVNGARIE generally fauoured him and his quarel, being in all places whereas he came, readie to ioine hands with him againſt the Imperials. The Turks and Tartars alſo, both with men and money furthering him in all his doings, whoſe helpe he refuſed not. Whereof proceeded all the aforeſaid miſeries both in HVNGARIE and TRANSYLVANIA, with many other worſe than they, which together with the beginning of this yeare tooke their beginning and encreaſe alſo. Vnto which ſo great troubles ſtill more & more encreaſing, *Baſta* not able by force to giue remedie, ſought by lenitie & faire perſuaſions to haue eaſed the ſame: by letters oftentimes aduiſing euen *Botſcay* the chief rebel himſelfe, to change his mind, to lay downe armes, to diſband his forces, & to perſuade with the reſt of his ſeditiD ous followers, to ſubmit themſelues vnto the Emperor, and to return againe vnto their wonted obedience. Wherunto he at length anſwered, That if the gouernment of all TRANSYLVANIA might be left vnto himſelfe alone: if a naturall Hungarian born might be ſtil choſen Lieutenant Generall in HVNGARIE: if none but ſuch as were Hungarians borne ſhould haue the gouernment and command of all the garriſons in HVNGARIE: if the Wallon and French ſouldiours might be ſhut out of HVNGARIE: if the naturall Hungarians borne, might from thenceforth be regarded and prouided of their pay: if it might be lawfull for euery man to haue the free exerciſe of his religion: if the authors of theſe troubles might be deliuered vnto the Hungarians to be puniſhed: if the Emperour himſelfe in perſon ſhould come and be preſent at the parliament at PRESBVRG: if the Germane garriſon ſoldiors ſhould ſtill keepe
E themſelues within the places wherunto they were appointed, without making of any excurcurſions into the towns or villages neere vnto them, or hurting of the poore countrie men: he could then be content to come to ſuch a good agreement for peace. With which offer he ſent two of the rebels, his followers, vnto *Baſta*, who not liking thereof, returned them backe againe, without concluding of any thing.

The chiefe cauſes of Botſcay his diſcontentment.

Botſcay his vnreaſonable demaunds for to come to a peace.

But while things were thus in talke, ſome of the Haiduckes in the meane time with a number of Tartars ioyned vnto them, in ſeeking after bootie ſurpriſed GOKARA, a towne ouer againſt STRIGONIVM: where hauing ſlaine certaine Germanes which had the keeping of the place, and rifled the towne, as they were about to haue ſet it on fire, by the comming ouer of the Gouernour of STRIGONIVM, with his garriſon, they were enforced to forſake the place,
F and againe to retire. This loſſe receiued at GOKARA, was againe by our men requited by the taking of PALANTVVAR, a good fortreſſe of the Turkes, after a long and cruell fight taken by captaine *Bathian* (commander of the Imperiall troups on this ſide of the riuer of Danubius:) whereinto a number of the Turkes being retired, were there together with the garriſon ſouldiours all ſlaine, and amongſt them diuers men of great account, who but ſome few dayes

Gokara ſurpriſed by the Haiduckes.

Palantwar taken by the Imperials.

before were come thither. Which fortreſſe the captain cauſed to be forthwith raſed, becauſe it ſhould no more ſtand the Turkes in ſtead for the annoying of the Chriſtians. G

Vacia moſt ſhamefully by the Haiducks betrayed, and deliuered vnto the Turkes.

The Turkes about this time had a purpoſe to beſiege VACIA, a citie not farre from VICEGRADE on the other ſide of DANVBIVS, a place which ſtill did them great harme, and ſtood the Chriſtians in great ſtead. The garriſon of which place was part Germans, part Hungarians, as the reſt of all the garriſons in the Imperiall townes of HVNGARY were. Of which the Turks purpoſe for the ſiege, the treacherous Haiduckes there in garriſon hauing got vnderſtanding, conſpired to deliuer vnto them the place: and yet not ſo contented, to joyne thereunto a treaſon more bloudie and treacherous, than was the betraying of the towne: For finding themſelues by far too ſtrong for the Germanes in garriſon in the towne with them, they H fell vpon them, fearing no ſuch matter, and ſlew moſt part of them, the reſt ſauing themſelues by ſpeedie flight to STRIGONIVM: and ſo afterward according to their former pretended treaſon, deliuered the towne vnto the Turks, joyning with them & the Tartars, and directing them for the more eaſie ſpoyling of the Chriſtians, and the countrey thereabout.

The taking of this citie of VACIA had in ſhort time called together great numbers of the Turkes and Tartars out of all places of the realme: who together with the Haiduckes made a great and puiſſant armie, to the terrour of the Chriſtians, not then able to hold the field againſt them, and the encouraging of the Turkes, thus holpen euen by the Chriſtians themſelues, to the deſtroying of one another. With this armie they turned from VACIA to GOKARA, with a purpoſe from thence to haue paſſed ouer the DANVBIVS, vpon the yce, and to haue I ſurpriſed STRIGONIVM. Which exploit they had once before attempted againſt the baſe towne, being then by the Chriſtians repulſed, and beaten back with their great and ſmal ſhot out of the towne, as now they were againe. Howbeit, that ſeeing the number of their enemies daily more and more to encreaſe, they in STRIGONIVM ſtood more in doubt of a ſecond ſiege, than they had done of the firſt, whereof we haue before ſpoken.

Strigonium in vain attempted to haue beene ſurpriſed by the Turkes and the Haiduckes.

The report of theſe ſo great troubles, and of the generall reuolt of the diſcontented Haiduckes in HVNGARIE, much troubled and grieued the Chriſtian Emperour: Who both in reſpect of his honour, and of the ſafetie of his eſtate, raiſed what power hee might out of his prouinces thereabout, and leuied great ſummes of money from his ſubiects, taking a ducat vpon euery houſe in AVSTRIA, being then in great feare of theſe miſeries and miſchiefes ſo K faſt ſpreading, and ſtill more and more encreaſing, and approaching that way. Vnto whoſe forces already on foot, had the aid promiſed from the king of SPAINE, the Pope, the Princes of ITALIE and GERMANIE, with 6000 footmen, and 2000 horſe, out of BOHEMIA, been in time joyned, they might haue made a ſufficient armie vnder the conduct of *Baſta*, the Emperours lieutenant, to haue repreſſed both the attempts of the enemie, and the inſolencie of the rebellious Haiduckes. All or moſt part of which aid, this yeare failing, and *Baſta* with his ſmall forces much weakened with wants and the extreamitie of Winter, and not able to keepe the field; the enemies ſtill increaſing both in number and in ſtrength, and without feare of any to encounter them, at their pleaſure roming vp and down, began now to draw neer vnto VICEGRADE (a good and ſtrong towne of HVNGARIE, ſtanding vpon the ſide of DANVBIVS, about L the midway betwixt BVDA and STRIGONIVM) with a purpoſe to haue beſieged the ſame. Of whoſe comming the Germans there in garriſon hearing, and warned by the treacherie of the Haiduckes of VACIA, what to feare from the Haiducks in garriſon with them in VICEGRADE, betime retired themſelues out of the towne into the caſtle. In which doing they were wel aduiſed, being otherwiſe like enough to haue run the ſame fortune that the Germanes their fellowes before had done at VACIA. For the Turks with the rebelliour Haiducks were no ſooner come thither, but that the Haiducks in the towne, without more ado, opened the gates of the towne vnto them, as vnto their friends, directing them in beſt ſort they could both for the beſieging and winning of the caſtle. Which while the Turkes hardly beſieged, and the Germanes therein notably defended, *Haſſan* the Viſier Baſſa, together with *Begedes Baſſa*, to perſuade them to yeeld vp the caſtle, writ vnto them in this ſort. M

The towne of Vicegrade by the Haiduckes yeelded vnto the Turkes.

The letters of Huſſan the Viſier, & of Begedes Baſſa, vnto the Germane ſouldiors beſieged in the caſtle

Right worthie and valiant friends, it is not to you vnknowne, the Caſtle of VICEGRADE *of right to belong vnto our moſt mightie and dread Soueraigne, the great Sultan. And therefore ſeeing that it is reaſon that euery man ſhould haue that which of right belongeth vnto him, Wee aduertiſe and requeſt*

A *queſt you to yeeld vp the ſame Caſtle vnto our moſt mightie Emperor, and the honourable Lord* Stephen *Botſcay, Prince of* Hvngarie; *and with all your ſubſtance to depart thence. Promiſing you vpon our faith and honour, to ſuffer you quietly and in ſafetie with your wiues and children, bagge and baggage, to depart thence; and to prouide you ſufficient ſhipping for the carrying away of your things to* Strigonivm. *And if it ſhall pleaſe you to take part with vs, we promiſe you the ſame pay from our Emperour, that you had from your owne; and the ſame kinde entertainment which the Wallons haue before had with vs. But if that you vpon an obſtinate reſolution ſhall refuſe this our friendly motion and grace offered you, blame vs not, if we ſhall by ſtrong hand and force of armes ſeeke to obtaine our right. In kindneſſe wee offer you our friendſhip, and ſo with ſpeed expect your*
B *anſwer.*

But the Germanes harkening not vnto theſe letters, as men reſolued, valiantly ſtood vpon the defence of themſelues, and of the place, vntill that by extreame neceſſitie forced thereunto, they yeelded the ſame by compoſition.

Baſta in the meane time with his forces much diminiſhed, lying at Epperia, and in the countrey thereabout, ſeeing the generall reuolt of the Haiduckes, of late the Emperours greateſt ſtrength in Hvngarie, and *Botſcay* the rebels ſtrength daily to encreaſe more and more; with no poſſibilitie for himſelfe with ſuch ſmall forces as hee then had, to repreſſe the rebels inſolencie, or to remedie theſe ſo farre ſpreading euils, but for want of greater ſtrength hee muſt
C lye ſtill as it were a man beſieged, was therewith exceedingly grieued, and as it were almoſt ouerwhelmed with the heauie burthen of ſo many great miſeries at once beſetting him. To threaten without power he knew to be but folly, and to ſpeake faire to be but vaine. Neuertheleſſe hauing procured from the Emperour a generall pardon, for all ſuch as hauing taken part with the rebels, were willing to returne againe to their allegeance: hee to aſſure all them whom it might concerne, of the Emperours gracious fauor, and to put them all out of feare, cauſed letters of generall pardon to be publiſhed, for all men to take knowledge of: the purport whereof was this.

Baſta perplexed, publiſheth a generall pardon vnto the rebels.

Wee George Baſta *Countie of* Hvst *and* Marmar, *Lord of* Svlt, *Knight, Counſellour to his*
D *Imperiall Maieſtie, Gouernour of the realme of* Transylvania, *and Lieutenant of the Chriſtian armies of the Emperour, to all faithfull, loue and greeting. Whereas in this ſo troubleſome a ſtate of things, ſome as well of the Nobilitie as others, in theſe vpper parts of* Hvngarie, *partlie of their owne accord, and partly for feare, haue reuolted from his Imperiall Maieſtie, and taken part with the traiterous Haiduckes in their rebellion, to the great preiudice of the Emperour his ſeruice, and the ſtaining of their faith: We in the name of his Imperiall and Royall Maieſtie, whom wee know to be greatly enclined, and readie to pardon his ſubiects euen of his owne naturall goodneſſe and clemencie, haue by vertue of the full power and authority, by his ſaid Imperiall Maeſty granted vnto vs, giuen free grace and pardon to all them which haue withdrawne themſelues from his obeyſance, or forſaken the ſame, of what order, quality, or condition ſoeuer they be, whom we will receiue into our prote-*
E *ction, as void of all crime: and requeſt them, as much as in vs is poßible, to make their profit of this grace, and to returne vnto their former duty and obeyſance, vnder all aſſurance of impunity for their forepaſſed faults; and without any ſearch or inquirie to be of the ſame hereafter made, as well for matters of religion, as of ſtate: aſſuring them of their liues, goods, fortunes, dignities, franchiſes, priuiledges, and immunities whatſoeuer, as is more at large declared by his Maieſties letters patents which remain with vs. And if any, letted either with their vrgent affaires, or with ſickneſſe, cannot repaire vnto vs within the day in the ſame letters patents nominated, we will accept of their iuſt excuſes. But if any, contrary to our hope, ſhall vpon any iudurate mind, or obſtinate contumacie, faile to repent, and to make their appearance before vs within the day limited, we denounce them to be rebels, ſubiect vnto the*
F *paine of rebellion, and ſtained with the note of infamie: pronouncing their liues, their goods, and dignities, to be confiſcate and deuolued vnto the Emperour his cofers: for which they ſhall by vs the Chiefetaines and captaines of his armies, with all rigour and extremitie be proſecuted. Proteſting before the Maieſtie of God, before the Maieſtie of the Emperour, and before all Chriſtendome, vs not to be in any ſort culpable of the euills, calamities, and miſeries, which ſhall enſue of the warres and diſaſters which ſuch their rebellion ſhall cauſe: but to be therefrom exempt and acquited, the onely authors of theſe diſorders hauing deſerued theſe imprecations and calamities: vpon the heads of whom we inſt-*

The proclamation giuen out by Baſta for the appeaſing of the rebellion in Hungarie.

ly from henceforth lay them, as vpon the miſerable authors thereof, by their wickednes hauing refuſed G
ſo great grace from the Emperor and vs; vnto all men made knowne by theſe preſents,

This Proclamation ſolemnely by *Baſta* publiſhed with the ſound of many drummes and trumpets, the ſixteenth of Ianuarie, and ten dayes libertie giuen for ſuch as would to come in, and againe ſubmit themſelues; diuers gentlemen of the countrie neere vnto EPERIA, where *Baſta* with his armie lay, for feare of being ſpoiled, came in, and accepted of the grace offered: other of the ſeditious, dwelling farther off, little or nothing at all regarding the ſame. In ſo much, that the rebels in number daily encreaſing, and the rebellion ſtill farther and farther ſpreading, *Botſcay* was now growne ſo ſtrong, that hee diſmiſſed from him moſt part of the Turks, whoſe ſeruice he had in all theſe troubles hitherto vſed; reſeruing yet certaine H Ianizaries, whom he mingled with the garriſon of Haiduckes, which he had put into CASSOVIA.

Baſta his proclamation little regarded.

Pallas Lippa Botſcay his lieutenant by his commandement beheaded.

Pallas Lippa before by *Botſcay* taken priſoner, and vpon his reuolt from the Emperour by *Botſcay* made his Lieutenant Generall, and a great man amongſt the rebels (as is before declared) was now of many thought to be a moſt fortunat and happie man. But in the middeſt of ſuch his happineſſe, and the greatneſſe of his command, he was by the malice of ſome, enuying at his eſtate, accuſed to *Botſcay*, as if he had had a purpoſe to haue made him away; and deliuering the ſtrong citie of CASSOVIA vnto *Baſta*, to haue gone ouer againe vnto the Emperor, and to haue followed his enſignes. Vpon which ſuſpition he was by the commandment of *Botſcay* beheaded, with fiue other men mo, of good place, ſuſpected to haue bin partakers I of the conſpiracie with *Lippa*. In whoſe treaſure, after that he was executed, were found an hundred thouſand Hungarian duckats, with ſeuen hundred chains of gold; all which he had ſcraped together in that ſmall time wherein he had bin *Botſcay* his lieutenant amongſt the rebels. With which mony *Botſcay* in his rebellion confirmed, became therein more obſtinat and furious than before; not admitting any talke with *Baſta*, concerning peace, but vpon ſuch vnreaſonable conditions, as beſt ſtood with his owne good liking.

Now long and tedious it were to proſecute euery particular exploit, with the diuers wofull euents thereof, during this ſo great and dangerous a rebellion in HVNGARIE: which how heauie ſo euer they were for the poore Chriſtians there dwelling, to endure, as tending all to the ruine and deſtruction both of themſelues and of their countrie (ſometime one of K the moſt flouriſhing kingdomes of Chriſtendome, but now become as it were a large Theatre, for all the world to behold moſt wofull tragedies, and bloudie maſſacres acted in) yet for all that vnto ſome nothing is pleaſing, but what is written of the greateſt actions; as of great and bloudie battels, of the conqueſts of whole kingdomes, and the ruine of moſt mightie and famous princes; all other things elſe being vnto them tedious. In ſome part to eaſe them of ſuch wearineſſe, and to pleaſe their appetites, I will briefly paſſe ouer, and euen lightly touch ſuch things as for the moſt part of this yere paſſed in this troubleſome countrie, not ſtaying but vpon matters of greateſt weight and importance. The Haiduckes ſtill proceeding in their rebellion, in the beginning of Februarie beſieged the caſtle of SACMAR, a place verie fit for their purpoſe: which caſtle the ſouldiours there in garriſon doubting to bee able L to hold againſt them (being not paſt threeſcore ſound men left in it) & deſtitute alſo of their neceſſarie prouiſion, couenanting to haue their liues ſpared, at length yeelded vnto them. But in going thence, meeting with certaine other companies of Haiduckes neere vnto TOKAY, they were by them moſt part of them ſlaine, ſome few of them by ſpeedie flight eſcaping. The ſame Haiduckes which had taken SACMAR, immediatly after attempted to haue ſurpriſed the towne and caſtle of TOKAY alſo: But the Gouernour of the place in good time aduertiſed of their intent and purpoſe, cauſed the yce wherewith the riuer was hard frozen, to be broken fortie paces ouer, neere vnto the caſtle, and the ſame to be lightly couered ouer with ſtraw. Whither the Haiducks comming by night, and finding the yce on the other ſide M the riuer, whereunto they firſt came, ſtrong ynough to beare them, by heaps thruſting one another forward, to haue ſcaled the caſtle, the yce breaking vnder them, they there together by heaps moſt miſerably periſhed, many of the reſt which eſcaped that danger, being with ſhot out of the caſtle ſlaine alſo. In this caſtle was no great ſtore of victuals: whereof *Baſta* vnderſtanding, with his armie marched from EPERIA toward BODAC, a towne holden by the rebels,

The caſtle of Sacmar yeelded to the Haiducks

Tokay in vaine attempted to haue bin ſurpriſed by the Haiduckes.

A rebels, in hope with the ſpoile thereof to haue relieued TOKAY. But the rebels hearing of his comming, hauing themſelues burnt the town, had got themſelues with that they had, into the caſtle, and from thence with their great ordnance ſo welcomed *Baſta* at his comming, that diſappointed of his purpoſe, and hauing loſt ſome of his men, he was glad with all ſpeed (not hauing ſtayed aboue foure houres) to return againe to EPERIA: certain of the nobilitie of that countrie, which tooke part with the rebels, being reported, in his abſence, to haue made a road towards EPERIA, to the endangering of that citie. In which his returne towards EPERIA, the troups of counte *Turon*, and of *Charles Collonitz*, by chance lighting vpon 500 Haiducks in a countrie village, ſet the ſame on fire, and therein burnt moſt of the ſaid rebels, and ſlew the reſt of them that remained, in ſeeking by flight to haue ſaued themſelues.

B In the meane time one of the great men amongſt the Turkes, came to CASSOVIA, bringing with him a great ſumme of mony; which being diuided amongſt the rebels there, much confirmed them, both in their rebellion, and deuotion towards the Turks: which rebellion they ſpared not for any coſt by all meanes to maintaine, as more preuailing thereby, than by the greateſt forces they could vſe for the conquering of HVNGARIE. *The Turks with mony maintain the rebellion in Hungarie.*

But *Baſta* was no ſooner with his armie returned againe to EPERIA, but that the ſouldiours generally exclaiming, and calling vpon him for their pay, were about in a mutiny to haue forſaken him. For the appeaſing of which tumult, he was glad preſently to make what ſhift hee could for mony, wherewith he in ſome meaſure gaue them contentment, and ſo with much ado agreed with them for ſix weekes ſeruice longer: thereby deliuering the citizens of EPE- *Baſta his ſouldiors in mutinie for their pay.*

C RIA from a great feare, wherein they were, for being ſpoiled by thoſe mutinous ſouldiors, of whom they ſtood in no leſſe doubt than they did of their enemies.

And now the ſeditious Haiducks after their wonted maner ſtil roaming vp and down the vpper part of HVNGARIE, the ſecond day of March, about ſeuen of the clock in the morning came to NEVVSOLL, a faire citie in that countrie, and there by many reaſons perſuading the citizens to reuolt, and to take part with them, had parley with them vntill it was full twelue of the clocke, but drawing ſtill neerer and neerer vnto the towne. In ſo much that *Turbelius* Gouernor of the place, perceiuing a yeelding inclination in the citizens, and doubting without their helpe to be able to defend ſo great a citie againſt the Haiducks, with ſo weake a garriſon as he then had therein, he with his Caſſockes, for his more ſafetie, retired himſelfe into the ca- *Newſoll ſurpriſed by the Haiducks, & again recouered from them.*

D ſtle. Which done, the Hhiduckes forthwith breaking into the citie with ſix companies ſummoned the caſtle, requiring to haue it deliuered vnto them. Of whom *Turbelius* ſlew diuers with ſhot out of the caſtle: and the ſame day in the euening couragiouſly ſallying out of the caſtle, with certaine companies of harquebuſiers, driue the Haiduckes againe out of the citie; which he afterward better fortified againſt their like attempts. And the next day vnderſtanding by a countrie man, That certain companies of Haiducks and Turks together, were comming to TVRTZO, a towne not far off, carrying with them a great number of cattell, women, and children, which they had got out of the countrie townes and villages thereabout: he preſently ſent forth his lieutenant againſt them, with his Coſſackes (a deſperat kind of horſmen) who meeting with theſe Haiduckes and Turks, ſlew of them about 150, and reco-

E uered from them all the captiues, the cattell, with 200 horſes, and a mule loaded with 4000 Hungarian duckats.

Now had FILEK (a moſt beautifull caſtle, and as it were the key of that part of the vpper HVNGARIE, which the Chriſtian Emperor yet held againſt the Turks) for certain months bin hardly beſieged by the Haiducks: which although it was ſo well ſtored with victuals, and other neceſſarie prouiſion, as that it might haue holden out three moneths longer ſiege, yet the ſouldiors there in garriſon, for want of water, were enforced now at length to yeeld the ſame. For the keeping of which caſtle *Redeius Ferentſius*, captain of the Haiducks which had woon it, placed therein a garriſon, part Haiducks, part Turks: as not daring to truſt either of them alone; the Haiducks for feare of their treacherie, nor the Turks, for that he knew them *Filek yeelded vnto the Haiducks.*

F to be deſirous of the place, for the commodious ſituation thereof, as giuing them a way to enter farther into the territories of the Chriſtians: which *Redeius*, though a rebell, would not yet in any ſort grant them.

This caſtle of FILEK ſo (as is beforeſaid) beſieged, the valiant *Collonitz* had ofttimes in vaine ſought to haue relieued; all the waies being ſo beſet, and as it were, fortified with the

infinite number of the Turks, Tartars, and rebels, as that there was no comming vnto it: and G
moſt part of his owne ſouldiours being Haiduckes alſo, to whom he durſt not well truſt, for feare of being betraied by them. Concerning which matters he ſhortly after writing to a certaine nobleman, after that he had ſhewed vnto him, That hee deſired nothing more of the Emperour, than to be diſcharged of his ſeruice; he thus breaketh forth.

The letters of Colloritz to a certaine nobleman, concerning the troubles raiſed by the rebels in Hungarie.

I cannot (ſaith hee) *any more performe faithfull ſeruice vnto the Emperour: for beeing attended vpon with very traitours, I am enforced to hazard euen mine honeſt reputation. I would willinglie ſerue with German horſemen; and I could alſo wiſh, three thouſand Caſſockes and two thouſand Polonian Huſſars to be againe raiſed; who would doe notable ſeruice in purſuing of the enemie: but* H
ſeuerie moneth they muſt needes haue their wages paied them. The number of the enemie encreaſeth dailie; and their ſtrength ſtill more and more: ſo that things cannot be in worſe ſtate than now they are. All deuiſes are directed to the hurt of the Emperour: neither is there any place quiet. What courage I am of, which haue loſt all my wealth and ſubſtance, is eaſie for any man to iudge: all which, for all that, I could conceale, and diſſemble, ſo that I might faithfully, and according to my deſire, ſerue the Emperour: which for all that is not poſſible for me to doe without a ſufficient ſtrength of Germane ſouldiours. But this of all doth moſt comfort mee, for that I know mee to haue done my dutie; for otherwiſe this miſchiefe had ſpread further. Many were in hope that I would rather haue reuolted from the Emperour, then haue loſt my goods: and ſome there were which doubted not to ſay ſo of me. The enemies are now in my Dukedome of CLEVE, *and there made ſpoyle of all.* SETCHIN, IARMETA, I

Strong townes & places by the Turkes and rebels taken in the vpper Hungarie.

TREGLA, PALANKA, SAMOSCHIN, BLAVENSTEIN, RABENSTEIN, VACIA, REGIOMONT, DILLENA, PVGANTZA, TABRA, LIBETNA, SITNA, DIBINA, SACMARIA, SENDRA, ONOTH, DISGIORA, ZATNAR, CALO, SCHAROSPOTAC, BVDNOC, NAGIBANA, FILEK, *and almoſt all* TRANSYLVANIA, *are now ſubiect to the rebels: ſo that what will enſue thereof, except they ſpeedilie be confronted, euery man may right eaſily gueſſe.*

Now if *Collonitz* one of the greateſt and beſt Commaunders of the Emperours forces againſt the Turkes in HVNGARIE, was thus beſet, and ſpoyled of his ſubſtance, by the rebels, as hee in theſe his letters complaineth, and as indeed he was, hauing at one time receiued from them ſo great harme, as was deemed to haue amounted to an hundred thouſand K
ducats; and not daring to truſt his owne Hungarian ſouldiours, whoſe hearts hee knew to be with the rebels: In what ſtate may the reſt of the people of that diſtreſſed Prouince, bee thought to haue beene, being at the ſame time expoſed vnto the ſame rebels as a prey and ſpoyle, and their countrey layed open for the Turkes and Tartars to forrage and ouerrun at their pleaſure.

Wiolaſe in vain attempted to haue beene ſurpriſed by the Haiduckes.

But in briefe, to run along with the Haiducks, foure thouſand of them attempting to haue ſurpriſed WIOLASE, were ſo from thence repulſed, as that many of them being there ſlaine, fiue & thirty wagons were ſcarce ſufficient to cary the reſt of the wounded ouer the mountaines, of whom an hundred died by the way. But going from thence, they brake into *Turſon* his countrey: where they hauing rifled all the townes and villages, commaunded all the L
States of the countrey, within three daies next after, to ſubmit themſelues to *Botſcay*, and to ſweare vnto him fealtie; or otherwiſe to expect all extreamities: Who with feare diſmaied, all promiſed to ſubmit themſelues vnto *Redeius*, *Botſcay* his lieutenant.

Now for remedie of theſe euils, *Napragius* and *Forgatius*, two graue counſellors, were ſent in the Emperours name, to entreat of peace with *Botſcay*: who the ſeuen and twentieth of March departing from EPERIA, with foureſcore harquebuſiers towards CASSOVIA, before they came thither, ſent before them an herauld, to aduertiſe *Botſcay* of their comming. Which meſſenger, ſo ſoone as hee was come into CASSOVIA, the Turkes ſo ſtraitly kept, as that no man might ſpeake with him but *Botſcay* himſelfe; and not he alſo, but in open place, and that in the hearing of the Turkes. Who at his firſt meeting with him, told him, That if the embaſſadours from whom he came, were ſent from the Nobilitie and States of HVNGARIE, they ſhould be right welcome vnto him, and haue audience: but if they came from the Emperour, as had *Rogatſius* and *Ciaccius* before ſent from *Baſta*, they ſhould then ſpare their labour, and come no farther: for that all matters had with him been often ynough talked vpon; it being now more than time, that things ſo often conſulted vpon, ſhould bee no more

Botſcay refuſeth to receiue the Emperors embaſſadours.

talked

A talked of, but indeed performed. Which messenger returning vnto the embassadours, told them what *Botscay* had said, and that the Haiduckes had in CASSOVIA built a bulwarke of a wonderfull height, beset the gates with strong gards, and so filled the trenches with souldiors, that a man could hardly enter into the citie; howbeit, that euery man might safely come and goe thither about his trade and businesse. He told them also, how that *Botscay* his Lieutenant had called together all the gouernours of the places thereabout, and aduised them for the space of fourteene daies to beware of the excursions of the Haiducks, and in the meane time, for their more safetie, to bring their wiues and children, with such other things as they made most reckoning of, into the citie, for that he could not as yet (as hee said) represse and
B gouerne the vnruly and headstrong Haiducks, being yet in their rage and fury, as the manner of the discontented multitude is. Of which Haiducks, some going forth toward NEVVHVSE, and bringing home a great bootie of cattell, were by *Collonitz* and *Trautmanstorf*, pursuing them with their horsemen, ouerthrowne, and all the bootie againe recouered.

Botscay about this time, *viz.* the nine and twentieth day of March, summoned all the Nobilitie and States of HVNGARY vnto an assembly, to be holden at SERENTIVM the seuenteenth day of Aprill, writing vnto them in this sort.

Botscay his letters to the Nobility & States of Hungarie, to call them together to Serents.

You know (said hee) *right worthie and valiant men, into what extreame miseries our afflicted*
C *countrey (all the ancient priuiledges and immunities thereof being contemned and troden vnder foot) is by the comming in of strangers brought: whose insolencie is gone so farre, that wee cannot onely not quietlie possesse our own goods, but so much as enioy the libertie of our owne consciences. For which cause the Nobilitie of the whole Kingdome being the last yeere sent in embassie, and as it were foreseeing what was to come, the assembly of the Empire being ended, openly protested before the whole Imperiall Diet, and by their letters oftentimes declared, that they should of necessity be at length enforced to take vpon themselues the defence of their priuiledges and of their religion: by which their protestation for all that they so little preuailed, that forthwith after, such an intollerable Edict was by the Emperours commandement published, as had exposed vs all and euery one of vs to most certaine death, had we not betime prouided for our selues: all which things are vnto you all most certainely knowne, both by the vnlawfull acts themselues, and the whole proceeding of the Prouost Generall. All which things considered, you met together at* GALEST, *and from thence againe openly signified vnto the aforesaid*
D *Prouost Generall (vnto whom his Imperiall Maiesty had committed the shedding of our bloud, the abolishing of our Priuiledges and Religion,* VIZ. *the execution of this cruell Edict) That if he proceeded to goe forward in that businesse, you would put into execution what you had before publikely protested in the generall assembly of the whole Empire at* PRESBVRG. *But what answer you receiued from him, for as much as it is not vnto any of you vnknowne, it is not needfull heere to rehearse. Wherfore when as hee going about the execution of the aforesaid Edict did in forcible manner with certaine peeces of great ordnance impugne the armie of his Imperiall Maiesty, both in his and our dread Lord and Soueraigne, and by force tooke from vs some of our castles, and besieged some others; we found no other remedie against these so great euils, but that which God himselfe euen then shewed vnto vs; which was, by force of armes to defend our selues so farre as we might. In which our purpose seeing that the grace*
E *of God, and the good successe which we haue hitherto had, will vs to continue, although we haue suffred no little harme from the Germanes and Haiduckes (which for all that is for the recouering of the libertie of our countrey patiently to be borne) to the intent that we vnited with other our brethren through* HVNGARIE, *may the better withstand our enemies and fight against them; it is most necessary that we should meet together, and all matters set apart, enter into consultation, how hereafter to resist our enemies, and set our countrey in peace and quietnesse. Wherefore seeing that we haue determined to hold an assembly at* SERENTS *the 17 day of Aprill, we by these presents warne and request you all, there at the aforesaid 17 day of Aprill to make your personall appearance, to ioyne in amitie with vs, and after the name of God called vpon, to consult and conclude vpon such things as may be both acceptable and pleasing vnto God, and most profitable and necessary for the good of our afflicted countrey in generall. But if there shall be any which vpon a presumptuous or careless contempt shall not at the time appointed come, nor seeme to regard such things as so much concerne the common good and welfare of*
F *their natiue countrey, let them assuredly know both themselues to be therefore to be accounted for enemies vnto their countrey, and their goods also so to be disposed of as shall vnto the Nobilitie and States then and there assembled be thought meet and conuenient.*

Much

A great tumult and fire in Constantinople.

Much about this time a great tumult was raiſed amongſt the Ianizaries and other ſouldiours of the court at CONSTANTINOPLE, at which time a great fire aroſe alſo in the citie (as oft times the like hath before done through the inſolencie of the Ianizaries, who in ſuch confuſion of mens mindes vſe to make their owne gaines) wherein many both men and women periſhed, with aboue 500 ſhops and warehouſes full of rich marchandize, moſt part whereof belonged vnto the Iewes; of whom, almoſt 200 are ſaid to haue been there burnt; the deformitie and ſpoile made by which fire in the citie remaining euen yet to be ſeene. Theſe troubles brought a great feare vpon the young Sultan, who firſt therewith halfe diſmayed, and ſeeing the like to ariſe in PERA alſo on the other ſide of the hauen, about a mile off from the Seraglio, could not otherwiſe thinke but that the ſouldiours were about ſome dangerous treaſon. Which ſuſpition two meſſengers but a little before come from *Cicala Baſſa* encreaſed: who by the ſame meſſengers deſired new ſupplies to be forthwith ſent vnto him; proteſting, that for as much as he had not long before, in a great battell loſt a number of his men, if he were not with new ſuppies ſpeedily relieued, he muſt of force retire, and leaue all vnto the Perſian. Howbeit the fire quenched, and the Ianizaries and other ſouldiours with the ſpoyle they had of the loſſes of others gotten ſatisfied, the tumult was without much adoe againe quieted.

The Emperors ſouldiours in mutinie for their pay, threaten their Generall, and ſpoile the country betwixt Eperia and Presburg.

Now beſide the aforeſaid troubles from the rebels in TRANSYLVANIA and the vpper HVNGARIE, that nothing might be wanting vnto the miſerie of thoſe ſo miſerable countries, the Emperors ſouldiors which ſerued vnder *Baſta* hauing of long from day to day in vaine expected their pay, and ſeeing neither pay nor other reliefe to come vnto them, roſe vp in mutinie, and ſo in a great rage brake into *Baſta* the Generall his lodging, where hauing heaped vpon him many vnworthie and deſpightfull reproches, with their peeces bent againſt him, and taking the ſpoile of certaine cariages loaded with many rich commodities, they departed from him, and ſo marching through the country toward PRESBVRG, by the way vſed ſuch inſolencie and crueltie, by rifling and ſpoiling whatſoeuer came in their way, as that they ſeemed vnto the people as they went worſe and more inhumane than the very Turks and Tartars them ſelues: where amongſt the other prey by them taken, which were very great, they caried away with them toward PRESBVRG aboue 10000 oxen, and 2000 horſes; threatening by the way as they went to burne the ſuburbs of the citie ſo ſoone as they came thither, if they were not forthwith paid their pay: whereupon many of the citizens for feare forſooke their dwellings, and remooued to VIENNA.

Newſoll taken by the Haiduks.

But the rebels on the other ſide hauing (as is before declared) in vaine attempted to haue taken NEVVSOLL, being foorthwith driuen out of it againe, aſſembling themſelues in great number, came now againe and beſieged it, and the ſixteenth day of Aprill tooke it, to the great and incomparable loſſe of the citizens: other of their fellowes in other places hauing but the day before taken CIBINIVM, PORTFELD, SCHEMNITSE, with ſome other places alſo.

The miſerable eſtate of Hungarie through ciuill diſcord.

Thus while the Haiducks at their pleaſure on the one ſide ſpoile the vpper part of HVNGARIE, and the Emperors ſouldiors on the other ſide for want of pay doe therein no leſſe harme than they, as enemies rifling and ranſacking euery corner of the countrey as they went, the poore huſbandmen dwelling here and there diſperſed abroad in the country, for feare leauing their homely dwellings, with ſuch things as they had, fled ſome of them into POLONIA, other-ſome into the mountains, where many of them periſhed with hunger; the poore huſbandman not daring now to go forth to till his land, neither the ſheepheard to feed his flocke, all places being filled with miſerie, mourning, and heauineſſe, the Turks and Tartars, the common enemies of the Chriſtians being not the cauſers thereof, but euen the Chriſtians themſelues, one of them euen with greedineſſe ſeeking the ruine and deſtruction of another, as moſt commonly it falleth out in kingdomes and ſtates diuided.

Moravia ſpoiled by the rebellious Haiducks.

Neither did theſe ſo great troubles, the ground of ſo many miſeries, containe themſelues within the bounds of HVNGARIE onely, but brake out into other countries and prouinces thereunto adioyning alſo; but eſpecially into MORAVIA, into which countrey the Haiduckes breaking, miſerably ſpoiled the ſame, by force tooke certaine townes, which they robbed and rifled, carrying away with them euen the very little children, taken from their heauie parents to be ſold afterwards vnto the Turkes: a miſerable kind of marchandiſe, & of all Chriſtians to be

A be deteſted. For remedie of which miſchiefes, by ſufferance ſtill more and more encreaſing, *Lichtenſtein* Gouernour of the countrey hauing raiſed all the power that hee was able for to make, went againſt them, and with much adoe at length draue them out of the countrey, with fire and ſword now by them moſt grieuouſly ſpoiled: they for al that carying away with them a great part of the wealth of the country, with 4000 captiues, all by them appointed vnto the Turkes ſlauerie.

About this time alſo *Baſta* lying at PRESBVRG, and vnderſtanding that foureteene thouſand Turkes and Tartars being come to S. *Georges*, ſix thouſand of them were gone ouer the Danubius, about a myle beneath PRESBVRG, to the end that whileſt they were making a rode into AVSTRIA, the reſt in the meane time might proue their forces vpon PRESBVRG; with his
B horſemen followed after them himſelfe, to cut off ſuch ſtragling companies of them as otherwiſe might haue done great harme abroad in the countrey, leauing behind him in PRESBVRG but three hundred Wallon horſmen, with certaine companies of footmen for the keeping of the citie. Which three hundred horſmen being very good and expert ſouldiors, and deſirous to be doing ſomething, by night made a rode out of the citie toward S. *Georges*, where the reſt of the Haiducks and Turkes in great ſecuritie lay: vpon whom theſe reſolute men vpon the ſudden falling, brought a great feare vpon the whole campe, and hauing ſlain of them aboue fiue hundred before the reſt could arme themſelues, returned with a great victory, though but with ſmall prey, carying with them ſome few horſes of ſeruice to PRESBVRG: where, by that they had done, it was reaſonably thought, that had they been but a thouſand ſtrong, they had
C diſcomfited the enemies whole campe.

A notable exploit by a few performed.

In the meane time they of the garriſon of COMORA vnderſtanding that *Begedes Baſſa* was determined with a notable conuoy to goe from BVDA with ſeuenteene waggons loaded with money and other things of great value, to *Botſcay* the rebell and the Tartar Cham his ſonne, who with certaine thouſands of Tartars was come to SOLNOK to the aid of *Botſcay* and the rebels: they in hope of ſo great a bootie lay in wait for him vpon the way whereby hee muſt needs paſſe, and at his comming ſet vpon him, and ſlew a number of his men; amongſt whom it fortuned the Baſſa himſelfe to be ſlaine, ſhot in the breaſt with a ſmall ſhot, whileſt hee was mounting vp his horſe: whoſe dead bodie the Turks about him hauing taken vp, and therewith about to flie, were there ſome of them ſlaine, and ſome of them taken priſoners, the reſt
D by ſpeedie flight eſcaping. Here were alſo all the aforeſaid wagons taken with an exceeding rich bootie; all which the garriſon ſouldiours well worthie thereof, caried away with them to COMORA, together with the Baſſaes head, ſtrucke from his bodie with his owne ſcimitar: which ſcimitar, with the Baſſaes rich coat, *Pogranius* the Gouernour of COMORA afterward ſent as a preſent vnto the Emperour at PRAGE. This Baſſa while he liued was a moſt craftie and ſubtill man, the chiefe plotter and author of all the late troubles in HVNGARIE, hauing before put all TRANSILVANIA into moſt dangerous ſtirrs and tumults, and greatly confirmed *Botſcay* in his rebellion: he ſpake the Hungarian language naturally, and was therein very eloquent, which ſerued him to great purpoſe both for the raiſing and maitaining of the rebellion both in TRANSYLVANIA and in HVNGARIE. Which ſo dangerous a man taken out of the way,
E many were in good hope of ſome good end to be made of theſe ciuill warres, more dangerous vnto the ſtate of both theſe afflicted countries, than were the great and puiſſant armies of the Turkes, which were almoſt euery yeare in the heart of the one or of the other of them to bee ſeene.

Begedes Baſſa ſlaine.

Now was the rebellion growne ſo great in HVNGARIE, and the rebels ſo ſtrong, that euen the very name of the Germans was become vnto the Hungarians both odious and contemptible: inſomuch that *Baſta* offering to haue put new ſupplies of Germane ſouldiors into the citie of TYRNA, then in danger of the Haiduckes, the Gouernous of the place not only refuſed to receiue them, but alſo to let them haue any thing of them for their readie money, ſaying, That they had citizens ynow in the citie to defend the ſame againſt their enemies, and
F that therefore as they needed not of the helpe of the Germans, ſo they would haue nothing to doe with them. And yet ſo ſoone as *Redeius Botſcay* his lieutenant was with his armie come thither, they without more adoe opened vnto him the gates of the citie, and receiuing him in, were about to haue ſlaine all the Germanes there dwelling amongſt them, being welneere a third part of the inhabitants; and had ſo done, but that ſome wiſer than the reſt, conſidering that

The name of the Germans odious vnto the Hungarians.

that the Germanes hauing there long dwelt, were by often marriages ioyned in affinity with G
The Germane in Tyrna constrained to weare garments like to the Hungarians. the Hungarians,and the Hungarians with them,otherwise perſuaded them, leaſt in ſo doing they might ſeeme to be cruell againſt their owne bloud. And ſo the matter being referred to *Redeius* himſelfe,it was by him(by the counſell of one of the greateſt men of the Turks)ordered, That the Germans ſhould be ſpared their liues, ſo that from thenceforth they ſhould no more vſe the Germane but the Hungarian apparell and attire: only the German attire being taken away for the Germanes themſelues.

Great townes taken & rifled by the rebels in Hungarie. But to proceed with theſe troubles according to the courſe of the time and of the yeare, about the 24 of May the Turks and Tartars joyning their forces with the rebels, burnt foureteene countrey villages about the lake of NEVSIDLER, and as many moe in other places alſo H
towards NEVSTAT,leauing behind them moſt lamentable remembrances and teſtimonies of their barbarous and inhumane crueltie, hauing put moſt of the women and children to the ſword,and empaled diuers vpon ſtakes,carrying the men away with them as captiues, & the beaſts and cattell as a prey;and ſo leauing the countrey as they went almoſt deſolate, ſcarce any being therein left to bewaile the miſeries thereof. And about the end of this ſame month the rebels ſurpriſed SIMEGA,GROTTA, and COPPERNACVM,and a little while after GINSIVM alſo: all which places they rifled and ſpoyled, as they did alſo HOGENGOA, a great towne of the Lord *Lichtenſteins*, and NIDERSPRVNGA, a towne of *Collonitzes*, which they firſt rifled and afterward burnt; and with the terrour of this their dealing enforced all the countrey thereabout both farre and neere to yeeld vnto them, onely ALTSOLL and CHREMNICZ I
continued in their loyaltie, and ſtanding faſt for the Emperour, did the rebels much harme.

The Haiducks and Turks ouerthrowne at Presburg by the Wallons. About the beginning of Iune certaine companies of Turkes and Haiduckes mingled together came againe as they had before done to PRESBVRG: ofwhoſe comming the Gouernour of the citie hauing aduertiſement,with three troops of Wallon horſemen and certaine companies of harquebuſiers breaking out of the citie,cauſed them forthwith to retire:which the Wallon horſemen ſeeing, to preuent them in their retreat, fetching a compaſſe about, met with them when they thought themſelues paſt all danger, and falling vpon them, ſlew of them fiue hundred, and draue the reſt into Danubius; ſo that of all thoſe Turks and Haiduckes none eſcaped but only foureteene, amongſt whom three Turks and one fugitiue citizen of PRESBVRG were found, whom together with a great ſpoyle the garriſon ſouldiers carried backe with them into the citie. K

Vesprinium yeelded vnto the rebels. At the ſelfeſame time the citizens of VESPRINIVM fauouring the proceedings of the Haiduckes, roſe themſelues in rebellion alſo,and taking the captaine of the caſtle, together with his lieutenant,and the keyes of the caſtle,cauſed them to be carried to *Redeius Botſcay* his lieutenant, yeelding themſelues into his protection. Of which reuolt of the citie the Turkes tooke exceeding pleaſure,and forthwith ſent newes thereof vnto the Sultan, wiſhing him to haſt the comming of his armie, for that the paſſages were now layed open vnto his further conqueſt, and further aduiſing him ſtill more and more to encourage *Botſcay* in his rebellion, L

Stiria and Austria ſpoyled by the rebels. And now was HVNGARIE too little or elſe too bare to containe and ſatisfie the ſtill encreaſing rebels, who in great number breaking into STIRIA (as they had before done on the other ſide of HVNGARIE into MORAVIA) did therein great harme, waſting and ſpoyling all before them as they went, inſomuch, that Countie *Serin*, the Lord *Nadaſti*, and *Budian*, all right worthie men and ſuch as heretofore had done great things againſt the Turkes for the Chriſtian Commonweale, ſeeing themſelues and all that they had in danger to be ſpoyled, being themſelues not able to withſtand the rebels, nor any other ſtay whereon to reſt, ſubmitted themſelues vnto *Botſcay*, as did many other noblemen of that countrey alſo. Out of STIRIA the rebels made head into AVSTRIA, and there roming vp and downe the countrey, did like harme. M

Thus was the ſtate of AVSTRIA and HVNGARIE at this time moſt miſerable, which for that it is ſo well ſet downe in certaine letters by a graue and vnderſtanding citizen of VIENNA,who was himſelfe an eye-witneſſe of moſt part thereof, as that it cannot well better be expreſſed, I haue thought it good to referre the report thereof vnto the letters themſelues.

A

All AVSTRIA (*saith hee*) *is full of miserie and calamitie. From out of the Castle and Bulwarkes heere at* VIENNA, *a man may sometime at once behold fifteene townes and villages all on fire in the countrey hereabout, kindled partly by the Rebels and Turkes, and partly by our owne mutinous Souldiours.* ODENBVRG *is yet besieged: and the Hasduckes haue forraged the countrey as farre as* HINBERG: *whom had not the regiment of* Collonitz *represſed, these our ſuburbes of* VIENNA *had now beene taken, ranſackt, and burnt.* NEVSTAT *is on euery ſide beſieged by the enemie; all the Villages about* VIENNA *as farre as* DRESSKIRC *are with fire deſtroyed: they of* NEVSTAT *went about to haue cut off ſome part of the enemies forces, but with euill ſucceſſe, hauing loſt aboue fiftie of their owne men:* BRVNNA *and* ENTZENDORFF B *are alſo with fire conſumed: The Wallons lye encamped at* MIEDLING, *moſt miſerably ſpoyling the Countrey people of all that they had: The Haiduckes hauing by night ſurprized the great towne of* ALTENBVRG, *and from thence carrying a great prey, haue burnt it: The Caſtle had endured the like fortune, had not an hundred harquebuſiers, that were by chaunce come thither, holpen to defend it. Sixe thouſand of the enemies lye about* VISSELBVRG, *but whether the Wallons will attempt any thing againſt them, or no, it is greatly doubted.* PRESBVRG *is alſo in great danger: for the garriſon ſouldiours there doe threaten the cruell ſpoyle of the Citizens, and all extreamities, if by a certaine day they receiue not their Pay: who if they ſhall depart thence, there is no doubt but that the Haiduckes will forthwith ſucceed them in their places: Theſe men indeed doe pretend Religion, but what louers they be thereof, the late example of a* C *Miniſter by them moſt cruelly tormented, not farre from* COBBELSDORFF, *doth manifeſtlie ſhew. The report is, that the Vayuod of* VALACHIA *doth fauour neyther part: into which Prouince a great number of Tartars are come in the ayde of* Botſcay. *All the market places and ſtreetes heere in this citie lye full of poore fugitiue creatures, of all ſexe and ages; a moſt miſerable ſight to behold. Our owne mutinous ſouldiours beſet all the waies to the citie, and exclude vs from all manner of victuall; and not to vſe many words, in crueltie and hoſtilitie almoſt exceed the very enemies. The Hungarian rebels, who of late forraged* AVSTRIA, *haue carried away with them aboue eight thouſand head of cattell, which together with the priſoners by them taken, they haue ſent into Turkey. The little boyes and children, which cannot by reaſon of their tender yeares goe, they carrie along with them vpon horſes, whoſe pittifull mourning and lamen-* D *tation might mooue euen the very ſtones; and yet are they (inhumane men) no whit mooued: Yea, manie of thoſe poore ſoules are heere and there by the way found daſhed againſt the ground, with their braines beaten out: and theſe rebels in their behauiour ſhew ſuch crueltie, as whereat the verie Turkes themſelues were amazed. All things about* ISENSTAD *are by the enemies taken and carried away. They of* NEVHVSE *beſieged by thirtie thouſand of their enemies, haue hitherto played the men, and of late repulſed the ſecond aſſault, with much ſlaughter of their enemies. They ſay, That two thouſand Tartars, as many rebels, and thirteene thouſand Turkes, are to bee yet expected to come vnto the Campe at* NEVHVSE; *who if they ſhall chance to come, it can ſcarce bee, that they of* NEVHVSE *can long well hold out againſt them, eſpeciallie beeing not well appointed of neceſſarie proniſion. The report is, That hauing taken* NEV- E HVSE, *they will remooue to* STRIGONIVM. *It is ſaid alſo, twelue thouſand Turkes to haue now paſſed ouer the bridge at* ESSEC, *and great ſupplies both of men and money to come to* Botſcay, *who lyeth encamped about* EPERIA, *and is ſayd to haue made a couenant with the Great Sultan, That what place ſoeuer eyther of them ſhall firſt take, hee ſhall hold the ſame wholly vnto himſelfe.* Tanhuſer, *who of late was Gouernour of* FILEK, *is now (as the report goeth) of counſell with* Botſcay. Germenchius *hath put in three moneths victuall into* HVST *in* TRANSYLVANIA. *God in his mercie behold our poore afflicted and diſtreſſed countrey.*

The miſerable troubles of Hungarie and of Auſtria notably deſcribed by the letters of a Citizen of Vienna.

Thus farre hee: Whereby the Reader (as I ſuppoſe) may eaſily gather the miſerable eſtate F of both the countries of HVNGARIE and AVSTRIA, the Chriſtians themſelues being the chiefe authors thereof.

The rebellious Haiduckes had hitherto moſt ſtraitly beſieged the citie of ODENBVRG, hauing aſſaulted it in fiue ſundrie places at once: vpon whom *Trautmanſtorfe*, Generall of the Garriſon there, cauſing part of his horſemen to ſallie forth, skirmiſhed with them from

Odenburg beſieged by the rebels, & by Baſta relieued.

from eleuen of the clocke in the forenoone, vntill two of the clock in the afternoone, at which time the Haiducks beginning to preuaile, the Gouernor with the reſt of his horſmen, certain enſignes of footmen, with ſome of the citizens, with three field-pieces, vpon the ſuddaine breaking out of the gate, diſcomfited the Haiduckes, put them to flight, and ſlew many of them, hauing taken from them twelue enſignes, with many priſoners, whom he carried with him into the citie. Of which ouerthrow the Haiduckes deſirous to be reuenged, with their renued forces ſhortly after returned againe vnto the citie, burnt the ſuburbes of the ſame, and ſpoyled the villages thereabout. But whileſt they thus lay about Odenbvrg, *Baſta* but with a ſmall power drawing neere vnto them, they preſently roſe, and paſſing ouer the riuer Drauus, carried away with them two thouſand head of cattell, with a great number of Chriſtian captiues. G

The Turks ſeeke to haue Caſſouia deliuered vnto them by Botſcay.

The Turks being not to learne to make vſe of the diſcord of the Chriſtians among themſelues had oftentimes bin in hand with *Botſcay* to deliuer Cassovia wholly into their hands. Of which ſtrong citie, being the beſt that the Chriſtians now held in the vpper Hvngarie, the Turkes were moſt deſirous, both for the commodious ſituation thereof, and alſo for that they deemed themſelues partly thereof alreadie poſſeſſed, ſome good part of the garriſon therein, being Turkes as well Ianizaries as others. The full poſſeſſion of which ſtrong citie, the better to obtaine from *Botſcay*, and to get it into their owne hands, they ſent vnto him three waggons loaded with money and other rich commodities for a preſent, and to ſupplie his wants, by a good conuoy of foure hundred Haiducks with certaine Turks ioyned vnto them. Which Haiduckes as they were by the way to Cassovia to paſſe by Tokay, a ſtrong towne holden by the Chriſtians, gaue ſecret knowledge vnto the Gouernour of the place of their comming that way, and that if he would receiue them into the towne, and ſo into his protection, they would with ſome ſmall helpe from him deliuer into his hands that ſo rich a bootie, and ſo continue with him as his faithfull and truſtie ſouldiours. Of whoſe offer the Gouernour well aſſured, forthwith ſent forth foure hundred of the ſouldiors of his own garriſon to meet them, who ioyning with the aforeſaid Haiduckes which came with the conuoy, ſet vpon the Turks which came with them, and ſlew them euery mothers ſonne: and ſo with the rich bootie were by the Gouernour receiued into the towne, and by him courteouſly entertained: where they had not long lyen, but that after their woonted manner looking abroad into the countrie, they chaunced to meet with certaine companies of *Botſcay* his men, with whom they encountering, and hauing ſlaine of them neere about fiue hundred, tooke from them ſeuen waggons loaded with good prouiſion, and thirtie horſes, beſide much other rich ſpoile. H

The Turks with a rich bootie by 400 Haiducks betraied to the Gouernour of Tokay. I K

Totiſa yeelded vnto the Turks

But the rebels, notwithſtanding theſe and ſuch other loſſes, encreaſing both in number and in power, ſtill more and more in all places preuailed, but eſpecially in the vpper part of Hvngarie, the townes there one after another daily reuolting vnto them, as among the reſt, the ſtrong towne of Totisa did, whereinto the rebels entring, ſent from thence part of the great ordnance, together with *Relinger* a Germane captaine, Gouernour of the towne, and certaine other Germane ſouldiors there taken, vnto *Redeias Botſcay* his lieutenant, then lying with a great armie of thirtie thouſand Hungarian rebels and Turkes at the ſiege of the ſtrong towne and caſtle of Nevvhvse: Which as it had oftentimes by him beene ſharpely aſſaulted, ſo was it by the ſouldiors therein moſt notably defended; proteſting neuer to yeeld the ſame, but to hold it out euen to the laſt man therein to be left aliue. Which cauſed *Redeius* for the encouraging of his ſouldiours (who had now lyen there certaine moneths at the ſiege thereof) to promiſe vnto them the whole ſpoile of the towne and of that therein was. And yet for all that oft times kept backe the Turkes from aſſaulting the ſame, for feare leaſt if they ſhould by force haue taken it, they would by force alſo haue holden it vnto themſelues, as a place for them moſt commodious for the conquering of that which remained of the vpper part of Hvngarie: which he, though one of the greateſt rebels, was yet loth to haue it to fall into their hands: and yet himſelfe, with the Haiduckes the Hungarian rebels, afterward, *viz.* the 25 of Iuly, gaue thereunto a moſt furious aſſault, inſomuch, that hauing aduaunced tenne of their enſignes to the top of the rampiers, they were in great hope euen preſently to haue taken it, but yet were by the reſolute valour of the defendants notably repulſed, and enforced againe to retire, leauing behind them aboue ſeuen hundred of their moſt forward men dead L

Newhuſt hardly aſſaulted and valiantly defended.

M

A dead in the trenches. Vnto which ſiege the Baſſa of AGRIA came alſo afterward with three thouſand horſemen & a number of Ianizaries; ſo that the beſieged, partly with mynes, partly with ſhot and often aſſaults diſtreſſed, were ſo waſted and wounded, that there were ſcarcely two hundred whole & ſound men left in the whole garriſon: beſide that both victuals and pouder begun now to grow ſcarce alſo, ſo that they were brought vnto ſuch extremitie, as that well they could not be in worſe caſe: and yet armed with a conſtant reſolution they ſeemed not to be any thing therwith danted or diſcouraged, but ſtill valiantly held it out. *Neuhuſe diſtreſſed.*

The Hungarians dwelling in the Iſle of SHVT in the riuer of Danubius, hauing before ſubmitted themſelues vnto the rebels did with their helpe much trouble the paſſages, vnto B the towne of RAB and COMARA, and the citie of STRIGONIVM; vnto whom certaine meſſengers were ſent on the Emperours behalfe to perſuade with them to forſake the rebels and to returne againe vnto their auncient obedience. Who ſo well vſed the matter with them, that taking a truce for eight dayes, they in the meane time ſent fiue of the chiefe men amongſt them by ſhip to PRESBVRG offering vnto the gouernour there, That if they might be ſecured of their goods and ſafetie, and that the Haiducks that were with them might be entertained in pay, they would be readie againe to take the oath of allegiance and faithfully to ſerue him as became his loyall ſubiects and valiant ſouldiors: and for the aſſurance thereof, to leaue their wiues and children as pledges at PRESBVRG. Which their offer was vnto the gouernour verie acceptable and welcome, who yeelding vnto their requeſt, in friendly ſort diſmiſſed them. *The rebels in the iſle of Shut ſubmit themſelues againe vnto the Emperour.*

C But they being returned home, and hauing declared to the reſt of their fellowes what they had done; it was by generall conſent agreed, that foure thouſand of them ſhould ioine themſelues vnto the emperours power vnder the regiment of *Collonitz*, who to be knowne from others, wore in their creſts certaine ſpeciall feathers; their wiues and children being carried to PRESBVRG as pledges of their faith: but this agreement by them made with the Gouernour of PRESBVRG being once knowne, the reſt of the rebels in the countrie thereabout together aſſembled with the Turks, inuaded the iſle, in hope vpon the ſodaine to haue ſurpriſed them: but deceiued of their expectation, were by the inhabitants of the Iſle and by the help of certaine Germane troupes ouerthrowne and put to flight, and three thouſand of them there ſlaine.

D About the beginning of Iuly certaine commiſſioners were ſent on the emperours behalfe to COSSOVIA, to intreat with *Botſcay* concerning a pacification to be made, who being by him there honorably entertained, and hauing with him ſtayed almoſt a whole moneth, were at length the nine and twentith of the ſame month againe diſmiſſed. Now the articles, which *Botſcay* propounded vnto theſe commiſſioners to be conſidered of for the making of a peace and which for the moſt part were agreed vpon in the peace afterward concluded betwixt the great Sultan and the Emperor, were theſe.

Articles by Botſcay propounded vnto the Emperors Commiſſioners for the appeaſing of the tumults in the vpper Hungary

Firſt, that it ſhould be lawfull for all ſuch as would, to haue the free exerciſe of the reformed religion. For although (as he ſaid) he was not ignorant that there was an ancient decree amongſt the Hungarians, whereby all that profeſſed not the Catholicke religion, or that reE uolted from the ſame, were to be burnt, and that hee deſired not to haue that article repealed; yet that his requeſt was, That the Emperour hauing regard vnto the troubles of the preſent time, would promiſe and aſſure, That from thenceforth no man ſhould be troubled for his religion, or called in queſtion for his conſcience and beliefe. Beſides that, he requeſted to haue the Principalitie of TRANSYLVANIA during his life, yet with this condition, that after his death it ſhould againe returne vnto the emperour, ſo that the emperor in his abſence ſhould appoint a naturall Hungarian to gouerne the ſame, as alſo to haue the chiefe gouernment in HVNGARIE. That there ſhould no more Biſhops ſit in counſell but one, and that he, if it ſhould ſo be thought meet, ſhould beare the office of the Chauncellor. That the liberties and priuiledges of that kingdome ſhould be kept whole and inuiolate. That it ſhould F be lawfull for him onely to make choice of the chiefe Palatine of the kingdome. That goods confiſcated for any offence comm itted, ſhould not be diſperſed or ſold, but giuen to men of deſert. That all offendors againſt the State from thenceforth ſhould be iudged by the counſell of HVNGARIE. That none ſhould be preferred to Biſhoprickes in HVNGARIE, but ſuch as were of the noble Hungarian bloud. That all iniuries heretofore done ſhould be abſolutly

pardoned, forgiuen and forgetten. All which things if they might be granted, he promiſed to G
labour to the vttermoſt of his power, vpon the beſt conditions he might to procure a peace betwixt the great Sultan & the Emperor. Laſt of all he requeſted, That the charters of peace containing theſe articles thus agreed vpon, might be ſubſcribed & confirmed by the Biſhop of ROME, the emperor, the king of POLONIA, and all the imperiall kingdomes & prouinces.

The great Sultan loath that Botſcay ſhould come to a peace with the Emperour.

The Turkiſh Sultan vnderſtanding of this treatie of peace betwixt the emperor and *Botſcay*, by a meſſenger ſent in haſt to *Botſcay*, ſought by great offers and promiſſes to hinder the ſame: putting him withall in remembrance, that a little before this treatie made he had not only by words but by letters alſo, ſubſcribed with his owne hand, promiſed vnto *Botſcay* his embaſſadors ſent to CONSTANTINOPLE, That he would bring to paſſe, that *Botſcay* rewarded with ſuch priuiledges as king *Iohn* in former time enioyed, ſhould in ſhort time bee proclai- H
med and crowned king of HVNGARIE, & that to that purpoſe he was euen now readie to ſend a ſcepter and a crown, the ornaments of a king, to ALBA REGALIS. But for the preſent, he by theſe meſſengers ſent vnto *Botſcay* two goodly horſes, with furniture of gold, gliſtering with pretious ſtones. He ſent him alſo a rich ſcimitar, a paire of golden ſpurs, & a long horſemans coat garniſhed with gold and pretious ſtones of great price; perſuading him valiantly to perſiſt in his former courſe and purpoſe. Which he failed not to do: for imediatly after, he with

Botſcay goeth into Tranſyl-uania.

a gallant traine went from CASSOVIA into TRANSYLVANIA, there to take of the Nobilitie of that prouince the oth of their fidelity vnto him; accounting no pains or labor great, which he tooke to turne the people from their obedience vnto the emperor, and to ſtrengthen himſelfe. At which time he alſo ſent *Redeius* his Chauncelor, with ſome others, into POLONIA, to I

He ſendeth embaſſadours into Polonia, and is there denied aid.

renew the confederation which was ſometime betwixt the Polonians and the Hungarians: who being admitted vnto the kings preſence, & audience giuen him, firſt declared the cauſes of the diſcord and ciuile war that then was in HVNGARIE, which he imputed chiefly vnto the oppreſſion of religion, the free exercíſe thereof being forbidden them, and to the inſolencie of the Germans, who there at their pleaſure commanded ouer them. Vpon which two points he ſtood much, labouring with many words to perſuade the king therof: and afterwards requeſting him of his gratious goodneſſe, & of the care which he, together with other Chriſtian princes had for the common quiet of the Chriſtian commonweale in general, and eſpecially of thoſe two diſtreſſed countries, lying as it were euen in the enemies mouth, to enter into
conſultation how the ſame euils might be remedied, & thoſe ſo great troubles againe appea- K
ſed, and to the effecting of ſo good a worke to put to his helping hand. Whereunto the king anſwered, That the friendſhip wherein *Botſcay* offered to ioyne with him being but the renuing of the auncient amitie betwixt the countries of POLONIA and HVNGARIE, to be vnto him pleaſing: howbeit, he could not for all that (as he ſaid) wel like of *Botſcay* his reuolt from that houſe and familie, whereunto he was himſelfe ſo neere ioyned in affinitie; promiſing yet neuertheles, that he would propound the matter vnto his nobilitie, to be further conſidered of: which when he had indeed done, it was by common conſent agreed, That no aid ſhould be giuen out of POLONIA vnto *Botſcay* or the rebels, and that whoſoeuer ſhould from thence afford him any aid, ſhould therefore loſe his head. With which anſwere the embaſſadors returned to *Botſcay* much diſcontented, being now with a great power againe returned out of L
TRANSYLVANIA to CASSOVIA.

The L. Ruſſworm beheaded

About this time the Lo. *Ruſſworm* (ſometimes Generall of the Emperors armie againſt the Turks in HVNGARIE, a man of great note and valor, and of whom we haue before much ſpoken) at PRAGE falling into words, and from words to blows, with *Francis*, Count *Belioioſa* his brother, and their men taking their parts on both ſides, it fortuned the ſaid *Francis*, the Earles brother, being grieuouſly wounded, to be there ſlaine, *Belioioſa* himſelfe being alſo in fiue places dangerouſly hurt; who ſo hardly proſecuted the death of his brother againſt the L. *Ruſſworm*, that within a while after he was therefore by the Emperour condemned, and at PRAGE beheaded, and diuers of his men hanged, with ſuch weapons hanging at their heeles, as wher- M
with they had ſlaine the ſaid *Fracis*, the Earles brother.

The Turks troubles againſt his rebels, and the Perſians in the Eaſt, an eaſe vnto the Chriſtians in the Weſt.

Now was the time of the yeare come, when as the Turks great armies were woont to bee ſeene euen in the heart of HVNGARIE: howbeit, ſuch were their troubles in ASIA, both with the Perſian and their owne rebels, that they were not at lieſure now to ſend ſuch great forces

as

A as they had before vſed, into HVNGARIE: neither could the Chriſtian Emperour on the other ſide now raiſe ſuch a power as he had in former times done to oppoſe againſt them, & to hinder their proceedings. The Hungarians themſelues (his greateſt ſtrength in thoſe wars) were now generally reuolted from him, and for moſt part followed the enſignes of the rebel *Botſkay*. The Princes wont to ſend him aid both out of ITALIE and out of GERMANIE, now affoorded him little or none at all: and his mercinarie ſouldiors for want of pay were now almoſt euery where vp in mutinie readie to forſake his ſeruice, & to pay themſelues with the ſpoyle of his countries euen vnto the gates of VIENNA. So that had not the Turkes beene ſo buſied in the Eaſt, but at leiſure to haue turned their whole power into HVNGARIE, as oftentimes
B they had before done, it is hardly to be imagined, what ſhould haue letted thé to haue ouerrun not only that which remained of HVNGARIE, but euen all AVSTRIA, with ſome good part of GERMANIE alſo; the Emperors preparations being then ſo ſmall, and his forces ſo weake, as that they were not able to hold the field againſt his own rebellious ſubiects, much leſſe againſt ſo puiſſant and dreadful an enemie. But God which with his word hath ſet bounds vnto the raging ſea, beyond which it cannot paſſe, & by whoſe power kings do raigne and princes bare rule, had by other means auerted the greateſt part of the Turks forces Eaſtwards: ſo that *Serdar Baſſa*, Sultan *Achmat* his Lieutenant Generall for his wars againſt the Chriſtians, came this yeare but with a right ſmall armie (in compariſon of thoſe which the Turkiſh Sultans were wont to ſend) into HVNGARIE. Howbeit, with ſuch forces as he brought, and with
C ſuch ſupplies of the rebels in HVNGARIE as came vnto him, he being growne 50000 ſtrong, and out of feare of the Emperors forces, came the 29 day of Auguſt to STRIGONIVM, and with his armie (part Turks, part Tartars, and part diſloyall Chriſtians) encamped in the ſelfe-ſame place where the Turks armie had but the yere before lodged, hauing brought with him fortie great pieces of batterie, with all things elſe neceſſarie for the ſiege. Neither were the Turkes ſooner encamped, but that the Tartars which came with them to the ſiege (after their wonted manner) more deſirous of prey and bootie, then of honor and victory, paſſing ouer riuer of Gran into the territorie of the Chriſtians, there ſpoyled and burnt all before them as they went.

Strigoniam beſieged by the Turkes.

The Turkes in the meane time to depriue the beſieged of all reliefe to bee ſent vnto them
D down the riuer of Danubius, made a great bridge of boats ouer the riuer, well fortified at both ends thereof on each ſide the riuer with a ſtrong *Corps de garde* for the defence thereof, ſo that nothing could that way paſſe to or from the beſieged citie. Which things much diſmayed them in the citie, ſeeing no preparations to be made on the other ſide for their defence or reliefe: yea *Baſta* himſelf, Generall of ſuch ſmall forces as the emperor had then, ſeeing the enemie ſo ſtrong, & himſelfe ſo weake, began greatly to doubt of the euent of this ſiege: and yet neuertheleſſe reſolutly ſet downe to employ both his valor and his wiſdome for the ſafegard of the place, he during the time of the ſiege failed not to the vttermoſt of his power to ſhew the effects both of the one and of the other.

The Turkes make a bridge ouer the riuer of Danubius, to keep Strigonium from being that way relieued.

And now the Turks aſſiſted with the Hungarian rebels, had performed an exploit vpon the
E Iſle of STRIGONIVM, aſwel to take the ſame from the Imperials, as for the ſpoile and pillage thereof. The inhabitants there had ſtill remained faithfull vnto the ſeruice of the Emperour, whom the rebels for all that had oftentimes ſought both by force and by perſuaſion to haue remoued from this their loyaltie & iuſt deuoir. Within this iſle were 200 Haiducks returned again to the emperors ſeruice, who were ioined vnto the Iſlanders, for the better defence both of them & of the Iſland. But the rebels knowing well the paſſages and entrances into the iſle, vpon the ſudden ſurpriſed the ſame, and in it theſe poore Haiducks, whom they cut all in pieces: which loſſe cauſed *Baſta* to reſolue to ſend the Wallons he had in his armie into the iſle for the defence thereof. Which they of the iſland vnderſtanding, made requeſt vnto the Generall, That he would not in any wiſe ſo doe, for that they greatly feared leaſt the Wallons
F being men altogether giuen to the ſpoyle, not finding the rebels to prey vpon, ſhould after their woonted manner prey vpon them, the Emperours faithfull ſubiects. At whoſe inſtance the former purpoſe for the ſending of the Wallons being changed, *Collonitz* himſelfe was appointed vnto that ſeruice; with whom *Monſieur de Laual*, a noble young gentleman of FRAVNCE (who but a few dayes before was newly come vnto the campe, for

The Iſle of Strigonium ſpoyled by the Haiducks.

the honourable deſire he had to ſee ſeruice, and to ſerue himſelfe, with his troupe of horſe- G
men whom hee had brought with him out of FRAVNCE) went ouer into the Iſland alſo:
Whereinto when as the rebels ſhortly after againe entred, they were by *Collonitz* ouer-
The Haiduckes inuading the Iſle of Strigonium, by Collonitz ouerthrowne. throwne and driuen out of the iſle, two hundred and fiftie of them being ſlaine, and aboue
fiftie moe of them taken priſoners. In which conflict the noble young gentleman *Laual* ſo
brauely behaued himſelfe, as that hee gained vnto himſelfe much honour and renowne, eue-
ry mans mouth being full of his prayſes, and wondering to ſee ſo great courage in ſo young
yeares, hee being then ſcarce nineteene yeares old. With which loſſe the rebels rather en-
raged than diſcouraged, ſhortly after returned againe, in greater number and better reſol-
ued, where betwixt them, and them that were left for the defence of the iſland, was fought H
a more ſharpe and bloudie fight than was the former, yet ſo, as that the rebels were enfor-
ced againe with loſſe to retire. In which ſo hote and bloudie a skirmiſh, *Monſieur Laual* ha-
uing moſt valiantly borne himſelfe againſt the enemie, and done enough for his honour, but
not ſo contented, but carried away with the heat of youth, and the deſire of glorie, and not
otherwiſe to be perſwaded, but ſtill aduenturouſly preſſing on the retiring enemy, was there
with a ſmall ſhot ſlaine; all they which knew him much lamenting his vntimely death. But
Monſieur Laual ſlaine. the rebels not ſo diſcouraged, but ſtill in one place or other inuading the Iſland, and threate-
ning the Iſlanders with all extremities, except they would take part with them, what by
force, what by perſuaſion, ſo much preuailed with them, that the moſt part of them reuol-
ting from the Emperour, vpon the ſuddaine ſet vpon the Count of RHENE, being I
then in the Iſland, and hauing ſlaine three hundred of his men, grieuouſly wounded him-
ſelfe alſo. For the ſpeedie appeaſing of which tumult, *Baſta* ſent ouer into the Iſland cer-
taine companies of the Ratzians and Wallons, who not regarding that the Iſlanders were
daily damnified by the rebels, moſt miſerably ſpoyled them of whatſoeuer the rebels had yet
left them.

S. Thomas fort battered and aſſaulted by the Turkes. The Turkes encamped before STRIGONIVM, firſt planted their batterie againſt the ſtrong
fort, ſtanding aloft vpon *S. Thomas* hill: for that from thence they ſhould haue receiued infinit
harme, if they ſhould before the winning thereof haue attempted to haue woon the citie; it
ſtanding on their backes, and all the plaine betwixt the hill and the citie wherein they were to
plant their batterie being ſubiect vnto it. Which fort, though very ſtrong, they with conti- K
nuall batterie by the ſpace of almoſt three weekes, hauing with infinit charge, and the loſſe of
a number of their men, made ſaultable the 24 day of September monnted the hill to aſſault
the ſame. Vnto which aſſault they went vp the hill ſo thicke one thruſting an other forward,
that the hill ſeemed now to be nothing but a mount or heape of armed men, ſcarce any part
of it being to be ſeene, it was ſo couered with them. Vpon whom ſo ſwarming vp, the Chri-
ſtians in the fort, hauing repoſed all the hope of their welfare in their valour, and reſolued
thereby to die or liue, couragiouſly diſcharged their murthering ſhot both great and ſmall,
ſcarce any of their deadly bullets falling in vaine. Howbeit the Turkes, reſolutely ſet downe
for the performing of that they had taken in hand, without reſpect of death or danger, came
ſtill deſperately on, vntill that they were come to the puſh of pike, and ſo to handy blowes L
euen in the very breaches, which the long furie of the Turks cannon had made very ſaulta-
ble. Fiue houres this furious aſſault was by the Turks maintained, and by the Chriſtians with
inuincible courage and reſolution endured, many braue & valiant men falling on both ſides:
and thrice the Turkes repulſed, were enforced to retire, but were ſtill by their Commanders
brought on againe. The loſſe was to both ſides common, many worthy men there ending
their daies, worthy of eternall fame. The Chriſtians fell dead vpon the Turks, ſlaine by their
valour, and the Turkes vpon the Chriſtians ſlaine by their multitude. But what ſhould wee
ſay? The Turkes by numbers died, but not their force, that being by their great numbers ſtill
maintained euen in deſpight of death, and alwaies liuing in their great multitude, yet left a-
liue. Which was not ſo with the defendants, but euen quite contrarie; who could not looſe M
one onely man, without diminiſhing of their forces, and means of reſiſtance: ſo that they ſtill
loſt without hope of ſafegard, and yet could not be in ſafetie, without continuing of their ſo
great loſſes. But he that ſtill fighteth onely for to ſaue his life, without hope of killing of his e-
nemie, being too mighty for him to ouercome, muſt needs at laſt die ouercome, if it were but

with

A with very wearineſſe. So in the end of this long and furious aſſault, nine hundred of the Chriſtians being ſlaine, together with the Count *Oetingen*, their Chiefetaine, and his Lieutenant mortally wounded, and nothing now more left but a few ſore hurt men, & the dead wals for the Turks to ouercome, they entred the place, ſlew thoſe few whom they found yet brething, made bootie of their death, bloud, and armes; and by the infinite price of their owne bloud, gained that place which had now no more bloud or life left in it. From whence they carried certaine great peeces, to helpe to batter the citie withall, and to vanquiſh them, for whoſe defence they were but a little before appointed. *S. Thomas fort woon by the Turkes.*

The Turks hauing thus gained S. *Thomas* fort, euen as they were yet embrued with bloud, and prickt forward with furie, forthwith planted thirty great peeces of batterie againſt the B baſe towne of STRAGONIVM, ſtanding low by the ſide of *Danubius*, and commonlie called the Water Towne; which they with all their force and furie moſt terribly battered. This baſe towne was enuironed with a palliſado of wood, to defend it againſt all ſudden ſurprizes, as almoſt all the townes of HVNGARIE are: Whereunto the confuſed multitude of the Turkes carried a number of bruſh faggots, ſtuffed with gunpouder and brimſtone, which being ſet on fire, preſently ſet fire vpon the palliſado alſo, and burnt it downe to the ground, making a way for the Turks to come euen vnto the wals of the citie; which they with their great ordnance both night and day inceſſantly moſt terribly battered, vntil that by the furie of the canon they had therein made a faire and large faultable breach. A great ſhame for our men to ſuffer the ſame ſo to be made, and not againe repaired: whereas the Turks before in the ſame C place, had made it good againſt the great armie of the Archduke *Matthias*, being neuer to be driuen and forced out of it by the Chriſtians valour, vntill they were therein ſlaine; and to be now by our men through their cowardize not to be able to be made good. For why, it was euen the ſame place of battell, the ſame men, the ſame armes, and the ſame form of fight, but not the ſame courages. The Turks can very well learn of vs that which is for them profitable, and make vſe thereof to their own aduantage, whereas we can borrow nothing of them to ſerue vs againſt them, & ſo profit our ſelues by their example: Beſides that, the confidence they haue in their multitude carrieth them vnto ſuch aduantages, as from which the deſpaire of being ſeconded and relieued keepeth vs: whoſe boldneſſe alſo firmely grounded vpon a reſolution to die, paſſeth our reſolution far, in fighting only to ſaue our liues. *The baſe towne of Stragonium battered.*

D The breach ſo made the Turks in good order, ſtayed vpon a firme reſolution, came brauely marching on, one of them thruſting another, and as it were ſtriuing among themſelues who ſhould haue the honour to giue the firſt charge, their hautineſſe of mind animating of them to ſeek for honor euen where perils were riteſt; ſo to haue the honor to die amongſt the moſt forward and valiant men of war, rather than to liue among cowards of no reputation or valour. During the heat of which their ſo great and firme a reſolution, they regarded not the ſhowers of deadly bullets falling amongſt them as thicke as haile, as too weake to dant their haughtie courages; but thruſting one another amidſt theſe ſo great dangers, came vnto the breach, there to trie the matter hand to hand with our men. The Ianizaries were the men eſpecially appointed to this ſeruice, & had taken the ſame vpon them, who with their great muſ- E kets on their reſts cruelly galled our men, expoſed to the danger of their deadly ſhot vpon the brinke as it were of their own graues. The great Baſſa himſelfe was there preſent at the aſſault, encoraging his ſoldiors with ſpeeches ful of terror & of comfort, as he ſaw occaſion for either to be vſed, wherewith he ſtirred vp their valor as is a ſhip with a faire or rough gale of wind. Death it ſelfe could not ouercome theſe miſcreants, their number ſtill repairing in a moment what death had taken away in an houre: where as our men ſlew others but to bee ſlaine themſelues; and fought not but to become ſacrifices vnto death themſelues, & not by their reſiſtance to carie away the victorie againſt inexorable deſtinie. The fight was great and terrible and the bullets ſtill flew, few of them falling in vaine among ſuch a multitude and preaſe of men. They of the high towne, who themſelues expected the like danger, where- F in their companions now floated betwixt life and death, ſtood aboue looking on, not daring to giue them ayde, or to remooue out of their ſtrength, but reſeruing themſelues with all their forces for the ſole ſafegard of themſelues and for their owne defence. Howbeit, all this while the enemies forces ſtill encreaſed, and the Chriſtians diminiſhed; for death could not *A terrible aſſault.* *The great Baſſa encourageth his ſouldiors in the time of the aſſault.*

weaken theirs, whereas it ſtill deſtroyed ours, who failed but in number, not in valour, and G
gaue place but vnto the force of death, & not vnto the force of men. All the deadly blowes appointed to be giuen for the defence of a breach, had bin by our men giuen; all the armes neceſſarie for ſuch a purpoſe had bin employed, all reſiſtance that could be deſired had been made, and all the duties of valiant and worthie men performed; ſo that nothing here wanted but number, and not valour. But in all ſuch actions there are two things neceſſary the one for the helping of the other, for the correſpondencie of their powers; which both ioyned in one bodie, may doe all things, but being diuided, can neither of them doe any thing againſt him which is poſſeſſed of both.

Power and valour the life of great actions.

In fine, after foure attempts in this aſſault, moſt of the Chriſtian defendants being ſlaine, the Turks forced the reſt and gained the breach, treading vnder foot the dead bodies both H
of the Turkes and of the Chriſtians, to get into the citie. This place thus woon, and thoſe that were left put to the ſword, and the towne rifled, the Turkes yet in breath, and all embrued in bloud, gaue an attempt vnto the high towne, in ſome hope euen at that time in ſo great a confuſion of the defendants to haue carried the ſame alſo. Howbeit, the defendants beholding their weapons yet dropping with the bloud of their friends and companions, and readie to ſhed theirs alſo, for the preſent notably repulſed them: Who ſo diſappointed of their purpoſe, and deſiring to gaine the place with the leaſt loſſe they might, reſolued to take the ſame by vndermining of it, repoſing more truſt in the ſpade and the mattocke than in their ſwords and harquebuſiers, being by experience of their former ſieges taught how hard and daungerous a thing it was by batterie and aſſault to obtaine the I
ſame. This trauell in the mynes tooke ſucceſſe according to their deſire: for within a few dayes the mynes (with much labour) being brought to perfection, and fire put vnto them, they failed not to worke their effect, but with their great violence blew vp the walls, rampiers, men, and munition, altogether, caſting forth ſuch ſmoakes and flames, as wherewith a number of the defendants were ſmothered and burnt. Which breaches ſo made, and the defences of the citie blowne vp, in ſuch ſort, that the Chriſtians lay open to the enemies deadly ſhot, being not able any more to ſhew themſelues without daunger of their liues, the Turks in order forthwith came to aſſault and force the ſame. Which the captaines of the Chriſtians beholding, prepared themſelues to withſtand them, and to that purpoſe would haue giuen order vnto their ſouldiours for the defence both of the breach and of the walles, K
whom they found ſuch as *Eumenes* at his greateſt need found his, not willing in any wiſe to fight, and in the moſt aſſured perill of death, without courage either to vanquiſh their enemies, or defend themſelues; in ſuch ſort, that not one of them would put themſelues in order, ſhew themſelues vpon the breach, or come neere the wals. Lazie cowards, chuſing rather to attend an aſſured death in their cowardize and want of courage, than to aduenture their liues into the daunger of armes, well deſeruing to endure the ſame with diſhonour, ſeeing that they refuſed by honourable reſiſtance to preſerue their liues. The Captaines for all that by faire ſpeeches and by threats ceaſed not to ſtirre them vp; praying, exhorting, and ſometime with death threatening them, if they thus refuſed to doe their duetie, and with their naked ſwords in their hands would haue enforced them to the breach. L
But all in vaine; their dead courages being not to bee reuiued or ſtirred vp in their ſo great a feare of death: Which much diſmayed the captaines, ſeeing their liues and honour, together with the place (through this tumult and cowardiſe of their ſouldiors) to be in extreame perill. During which time the Turks comming on, had without any great reſiſtance gained the foot of the breach: whom the ſouldiours now ſeeing ſo neere vnto them, and out of hope to be relieued, and deſtitute of courage alſo, in ſtead of truſting vnto their armes and valour, betooke themſelues vnto the refuge of their ſhame and cowardize. For compaſſing in the Count *Dampierre*, Gouernour of the place, they would by reaſons haue perſuaded him to haue yeelded, and by threats haue feared him from farther reſiſting of the ene- M
mie. Their furie emboldened them, proceeding not from their valour, but from their feare; ſtorming againſt their Generall for not being a coward, as they themſelues were, trembling for feare of their enemies, and inſulting againſt him. They had but one man of him to fight againſt, which made them furious and hardie: hardie with cowardiſe againſt one,

The base towne of Strigonium woon by the Turkes.

The vpper town of Strigonium in vaine by the Turks aſſaulted.

Strigonium vndermined.

Great cowardiſe in the garriſon ſouldiors of Strigonium.

The garriſon ſouldiors in mutinie againſt the gouernor, would enforce him to yeeld vp the city

A one, not daring to hold vp their weapons againſt their enemies, being many. Howbeit the Count in the middle of theſe feares inraged, continued firme in his reſolution, his courage encreaſing in this ſtorme of mutinie, wiſhing rather to die by the hands of his owne ſouldiours, in the performing of his duetie, than to bee ſaued by the Turkes in the bottome of his diſhonour. Which his ſo braue a reſolution, cauſed him euen in the middeſt of theſe furious and tumultuous companies, to put them in mind of their duties, and to perſuade with them: That the perill they ſo much feared, was greater through their owne feare than indeed it was: that only their fearefull apprehenſion made the danger, and not the action that was by them to bee performed; ſeeing that it was impoſſible for the enemie to ouercome them, if they would but reſolutely ſtand vpon their valour to reſiſt him. That all things reſting but in opi-

B nion, were by themſelues to be ſubdued, if they had but the deſire to ouercome them, and yet of power to ouerthrow them, if they will yeeld to their diſhonour. That therfore they ſhould propound vnto themſelues the honor and the ſhame that was to enſue vnto them, by the different deportment of themſelues in this action, how much the deformitie of the one differed from the beautie of the other, and aſpire vnto the honor which their enemies had ſometimes got in the ſame place, and in the verie ſame action wherein they were now, for hauing with leſſe appearance of their ſafetie ouercome the like danger, wherin their holding out had made them victorious with honour, without any great fight at all. That it ſhould be an eternall infamie vnto them, that the Turks ſhould ſurmount them by their reſolution in an action wher-

C in they ought to ſhew themſelues moſt valorous, & by their cowardiſe become ſubiect vnto them, whom at other times they had accounted vnworthie to bee compared with them in valour. That they ſhould lay their hands vpon their hearts, and remember their eſtate and faith, bound vnto the firſt by their honour, and to the ſecond by their dutie. That they were men of warre, liuing by their pay, which bound them to the ſeruice of him from whom they receiued it, euen vnto death; hauing before obliged their liues vnto their pay: and that they were Chriſtian ſubiects, bound to keepe their promiſe giuen by oath before God. That forgetting either the one or the other of theſe things, they depriued themſelues of the pay promiſed to them, which performed their ſeruice, and loſing their renown in this world, for their cowardiſe, and in the world to come for breaking their faith. That therefore they ſhould continue conſtant in the performance of their dutie, reſoluing themſelues rather to endure an honorable death,

D vnto which belonged the recompence of an eternall fame for their valour and fidelitie: than to prolong a miſerable life with perpetuall infamie for their cowardiſe: whereof for all that they could no more aſſure themſelues by the yeelding vp of the place, than by the defending thereof, for as much as the Turkes were oft times euen as cruell vpon them that yeelded, as thoſe that reſiſted; keeping no faith with the Chriſtians, but as beſt ſtood with their profit and their pleaſure. And that therefore for his part, he was reſolued rather to die with honour in the place, that to be beholden to his enemies for an infamous and miſerable life. And that therfore he beſought them to follow him in this laſt action of their deuoire, which caried with it all the trophies of their precedent actions, wherein they had oftentimes aſſiſted him in many actions of leſſe worth, and of much greater perill.

The braue reſolution of Count Dampierre Gouernour of Strigonium.

His notable remonſtrances vnto his diſcouraged ſouldiors, to perſuade them to hold out the ſiege.

E This diſcourſe grounded vpon ſo good reaſons, and proceeding from ſo great valour, might haue preuailed with any other generous minds, except with theſe degenerate ſouldiours, who by their cowardiſe had hardened themſelues againſt all the points of honor which might any way moue them; in ſuch ſort, that they ſtood as faſt in their baſe cowardiſe, as did their Generall in his valorous and conſtant reſolution. They ſtood with their hands behind them, without any weapons in them, as was their mindes without any courage at all: and as men appointed to be ſacrificed vpon the altar of death, attending without mouing but the hands of them that ſhould ſacrifice them. Great and ſhameleſſe cowardiſe, not daring by reſiſtance to withſtand the violence of their enemies, for feare of hindring them in their deſires,

F being indeed ſuch as had vowed their death to ſatisfie their owne furie. Meane while ſome of theſe ſouldiors ſeeing their ſpeeches to be but vaine, and not able to mooue the Gouernour to ſatisfie their deſire, conceiued the ſame their requeſts, with the reaſons thereof, into writing, which they ſent vnto him. Which the Gouernour hauing read, in their ſight tore their letters in pieces, and trode the ſame vnder his feet, reiecting as well their demaunds by letters,

Moſt ſhamefull cowardiſe.

as he had done their requeſt by words. In briefe, hauing forgotten nothing of the duetie of a worthie Generall, and valiant captaine, ioyned now thereunto the office of a ſimple ſouldiour, going himſelfe vnto the breach with ſome few, to defend the ſame. But the more the Count ſtood vpon this his ſo great reſolution, the more theſe cowardly and mutinous villaines proceeded in their baſe obſtinacie, in ſo much that they fell from prayers to furie and rage, threatening to deliuer him their Gouernour together with the place vnto the enemie, to ſaue their liues, if hee himſelfe would not by treatie ſaue them from the eminent perills. If theſe baſe cowards were before deafe vnto the iuſt remonſtrances of their Gouernour, which might haue preſerued them from death and infamie, hee was alſo as deafe as they, to conceiue their requeſts, or to bee mooued with their threats, knowing that hee had more reaſon on his ſide, by conſtant valour to withſtand the wicked and ſhamefull reſolution of his ſouldiours, than they had with diſhonour to enforce him, or to offer him violence, to their eternall ſhame and infamie. G H

Moſt horrible inſolency of mutinous ſouldiors againſt their Gouernour.

In the meane time theſe obſtinate and inraged cowards proceeded from words to deeds, and from requeſtes to violence, as did oft times the diſloyall ſouldiours of Rome, in ſlaying the good Emperours. For they in cruell manner, without reuerence, by force layed hands vpon the Gouernour, put him in priſon, and afterwards crauing parley, fell to treatie with the great Baſſa, about the deliuerie vp of the place. Wherewith the Baſſa well contented, ſent in vnto them *Haly Baſſa*, to conclude the matter: where, after ſome little talke,

The conditions wherupon Strigonium was to be deliuered vnto the Turks.

it was agreed, That they ſhould deliuer vp the place (which was not in deede theirs to diſpoſe of) and that the Baſſa ſhould therefore promiſe and ſuffer them with bagge and baggage in ſafetie to depart whither they would, with their enſignes frilled vp, and fire in their matches: leauing behinde them their great ordinance, with all their other munition, and warlike prouiſion. Which onely compoſition by the perfidious ſouldiours made in the abſence and indurance of their Generall, was by the Turkes faithfully kept, amongſt a thouſand others like before by them broken: whether it were in reſpect of the eaſie conqueſt of the citie, being one of the chiefe and principall places of all Hvngarie, or for that they beeing ouer-ioyed with the gaining of that which they had ſo long defired, and now ſo little hoped for, they forgate their woonted crueltie, and breach of faith, is doubted. I K

The extraordinary courteſie of the Turkes toward the garriſon ſouldiors of Strigonium at their departure thence.

This citie thus yeelded, the third day of October, and the Turkes forgetting their wonted crueltie, according to their faith and promiſe before giuen, in ſafetie conducted theſe cowardly ſoldiors within a league of Comora, helping them by the way to carrie their ſicke & wounded men, together with their fardels, which the Turks oftimes caried vpon their owne ſhoulders. Theſe cowards which thus went out, with their Gouernour ſent out alſo with them, were in number a thouſand whole and ſound men, fitted (whileſt they were in the citie) with all things neceſſarie for their honor, and defence of the place: but themſelues deſtitute and void of all honour, and courage. A thouſand, which altogether were not worth their Gouernour alone, ſeeing that in him alone there remained more valour than in all that whole multitude. Many of the inhabitants which had there long dwelt, would not forſake the place, but by the leaue of the Turks there remained ſtill, the reſt which would not, hauing leaue in ſafetie to depart whither they would. L

Thus this famous citie of Strigonivm, one of the ſtrongeſt bulwarks of Chriſtendome againſt the Turks, which the Chriſtians had now holden by the ſpace of tenne yeares and one month, after that it was by Count *Charles Mansfelt* woon from the Turks, when as it had long time before been in the Turks poſſeſſion, woon from the Chriſtians by Sultan *Solyman*, now againe (as is before ſaid) fell into the power of the Turkes, with threeſcore and ten peeces of great ordnance, and a wonderfull deale of other warlike prouiſion.

The captains & chiefe authors of the mutiny, and yeelding vp of Strigonium, imprisoned, condemned, & moſt ſhamefully, but worthily executed.

Theſe baſe and cowardly ſouldiours, together with the Count their Gouernour, being come to Comora, were iuſtly deſpoyled both of their honour, and of their armes, and ſent backe againe to Presbvrg, where curſed and deteſted of all the world, and eſpecially of the Hungarians themſelues (who although they were reuolted from their alleageance toward the Emperour, yet could they not but much deteſt their ſo ſhamefull and notable cowardiſe) were there, the chiefe of them, committed to priſon; where after they had for a M

cer-

A a certaine time lien, and being brought to iudgement, and conuicted of treaſon, in deliuering vp the citie of STRIGONIVM vnto the Turkes, and in ſo doing, to haue greatly damnified the Chriſtian common weale, they were therefore condemned, and according to the qualitie of their offences diuerſly in this maner executed. Captaine *Leonard Fredericke Schleker* had his iudgement, firſt to haue his right hand cut off, and his tongue drawen out behind in his neck, and both of them nailed to the gallowes, and afterwards to be hanged: howbeit through the interceſſion of many of his friends, he was not hanged, but beheaded. *Iohn Michael Schorer*, *Iohn Hopfie*, *Adam Lindawar*, *Philip Dur*, and *Caſpar Lielharter*, all captaines, were adiudged to haue their right hands firſt cut off, and nailed to the gallowes, and afterward hanged: but
B through the interceſſion of Countie *Mansfeld*, they were hanged, and their hands not cut off. *Iohn Lautenberger* was condemned to be quartered aliue, but was at the intereeſſion of countie *Mansfeld* firſt beheaded, and afterward quartered. *Iohn Diſchoff* with eleuen other, were only hanged. *Laurence Marſhall* was inioyned to ſerue two yeres againſt the Turks, as a common ſouldior, without pay: but through the interceſſion of Countie *Mansfeld*, had one yeare pardoned him. *Ieremie Strelin* with diuers other, which were either fled, or elſe remained ſtill in STRIGONIVM, were iudged, their names to bee ſet vpon the gallowes, and being afterwards caught, ſome of them to be quartered, and otherſome their hands to be cut off, and nailed vpon the gallows, and afterward hanged. And thus theſe diſloyall captaines, by ſhunning of an honorable death in defence of STRIGONIVM, and performing of their dutie, by neglecting the
C ſame, procured vnto themſelues a moſt ſhamefull death, attended vpon with perpetuall infamie and diſhonour.

But as the loſſe of this ſtrong place was vnto the Chriſtians heauie and grieuous, ſo was it vnto the Turkes no leſſe pleaſing and ioyfull; it being the place they had of long aboue all others deſired, and whereat they had euer ſince the loſſe thereof, with their great armies in HVNGARIE, for the ſpace of ten yeares ſtill aimed. Howbeit this their ioy endured not long, their proſperitie being too hoat to hold out without ſome cooling blaſt of aduerſe fortune. For the ſame report of Fame, which with the right hand preſented vnto the great Sultan at CONSTANTINOPLE the pleaſing newes of the winning of STRIGONIVM in HVNGARIE, euen with the left hand deliuered likewiſe vnto him the melancholy report of the ouerthrow
D of his great armies in ASIA, with the loſſe of DAMASCO, the greateſt citie of SYRIA. For, to begin with the greateſt firſt: The king of PERSIA, inuaded by *Cicala Baſſa*, Sultan *Achmat* great Lieutenant in ASIA; and hearing that the Baſſa of CARAMANIA had in charge, with all ſpeed to come vnto him with a great ſupplie of ſouldiors to bee taken vp in CARAMANIA and the countreys thereabout: hee then hauing a puiſſant armie on foot, before prepared for all euents, preſently ſet forward againſt *Cicala*: whom hee comming vpon not yet readie to fight, by his vnexpected comming, and ſudden charge, ouerthrew his army, and tooke from him all his great ordnance: *Cicala* himſelfe with three hundred ſouldiours, with much adoe eſcaping, and retiring himſelfe to ADENA, which citie the Perſian king, purſuing *Cicala*, ſhortly after ſtraitly beſieged. With which vnluckie newes Sultan *Achmat* much troubled, forth-
E with writ vnto the Baſſa of TREBESOND, with all ſpeed to ſend ayd vnto *Cicala*: who taking vnto him ſome other of the Turks commaunders, with a great armie ſet forward on his iourney. Of whoſe comming *Cicala* hearing, the better to direct the Baſſa in his proceeding, cauſed himſelfe with ten of his ſouldiors, whom he beſt truſted, ſecretly by night to be let downe ouer the wals of the citie. And ſo comming to the Baſſa, together with him kept on his way to ioyne battell with the king, as neere vnto the citie as hee could, for that hee had taken order before he came out of the citie, that ſo ſoone as they ſhould perceiue the battell to be ioyned, they ſhould forthwith ſallie out vpon the backes of the Perſians, and ſo by holding of them with a doubtfull battell, to further the victorie. All which the Perſian king, hearing of the Baſſaes comming, wiſely doubting, and not willing to forſake the ſiege, diuided his armie, and
F leauing one part thereof to continue the ſiege, went himſelfe with the other to meet the Baſſa. Wherein he vſed ſuch expedition and ſpeed, that with all his power falling vpon him, before he could put his men in order, or range his battell, hee made of the Turkes (now confuſedly, and without all order fighting more for the ſafegard of their liues, than for any hope they had of victorie) ſuch an exceeding great ſlaughter, that few of them eſcaped, but were there almoſt all ſlaine. *Cicala* himſelfe but with two or three moe, hauing much adoe by getting

Cicala Baſſa with his armie ouerthrown by the Perſian king.

The Baſſa of Trebeſond with his armie diſcomfited by the Perſian.

ting into a little boat,and ſo by paſſing ouer the riuer,to eſcape the danger. After which victo- G
rie ſo eaſily gained,the king returning againe to the ſiege, after many ſharp and great aſſaults thereunto giuen,and many men on both ſides loſt, had the ſame at length yeelded vnto his mercie.

Now with this newes of the loſſe of his armies,and of the victories of the Perſian king,Sultan *Achmat* enraged,cauſed *Cicala Baſſa* his houſe at CONSTANTINOPLE, full of treaſure and wealth,to bee rifled; after the manner of the world,deeming of the doings of him ſo great a captaine,according to the euent and euill ſucceſſe thereof, though not in his power to haue been remedied: neuertheleſſe,ſhortly after he cauſed great ſummes of money to bee deliuered out of his treaſures,and new forces raiſed,for the renewing of the war againſt the Perſian king. Vnto which ſeruice(now become vnto the Turkes dreadfull)when as many of the Ia- H
The Ianizaries mutinie. nizaries were to be appointed,they after their proud and inſolent maner,all ariſing vp in mutinie,ſaid flatly, That they would not ſtirre one foot out of CONSTANTINOPLE, except they were both before hand paied,and aſſured alſo to haue their wages encreaſed: complaining grieuouſly withall,of the Baſſa of DAMASCO, the great Sultan his high Treaſurer,that he conuerting the Sultans treaſures to his owne vſe, did not pay the ſouldiors their wages due. For the appeaſing of which mutiny and tumult,the Sultan cauſed the ſame Baſſa to be apprehended and his head ſtrucken off,and ſo with the price of his bloud againe appeaſed them.

But leauing the Perſian king triumphing in his victories, and the great Sultan grieuing at his loſſes,let vs turne aſide into SYRIA, to ſee the troubles the Turkes had euen among themſelues,to the weakening of their ſtate, and the increaſing of the great Sultans cares and griefe. I
The two Baſſaes of DAMASCO and ALEPPO had (as is before declared) beene at great diſcord and variance betwixt themſelues,and the Baſſa of ALEPPO in field ouerthowne,and in his citie beſieged,glad to make his peace with the other Baſſa,by yeelding vnto all ſuch things as it pleaſed him to demand. Which two Baſſaes for all that being diuerſly affected vnto the ſtate. long agreed not,hee of DAMASCO continuing faithfull in his alleageance towards the great Sultan,and the other of ALEPPO ſecretly inclining vnto rebellion. Which the Baſſa of DAMASCO perceiuing,and ioyning vnto him the Baſſaes of TRIPOLIS and GAZARE,with their vnited forces went againſt the Baſſa of ALEPPO,leading with them 60000 good men,with purpoſe to haue beſieged the Baſſa of ALEPPO his enemie, in his citie. But hee betimes aduertiſed of this his deſigne,& not vnprouided for his comming,quickly called together his forces,and K
had in very ſhort time raiſed an armie of 30000 valiant men,whom he incouraging,and finding them readie cheerfully to follow him whither ſoeuer he would lead them, marched directly towards his enemies;with whom hee meeting, readily ioyned battell with them,which was fought with ſuch furie & hideous noiſe,as if it had bin two thunderclaps oppoſing each other in one cloud,ſtriuing of themſelues which ſhould burſt out firſt,being like people, like
The Baſſaes of Damaſco, Tripolis, and Gazare ouerthrown by the Baſſa of Aleppo. armes,and like order of fight. The medley for a great time continued ſharpe and furious, the number of the one ſide counteruailing the valour of the other;& the others valor ballancing the others great number: howbeit in the end the lone Baſſa ouercame the other three,and the ſmaller number the greater,and putting them to flight, remained ſole victors of the field. Now the victorious Baſſa,as wiſe to vſe the victorie, as he was valiant to obtaine the ſame, ſo L
eagerly purſued them,that without giuing them leaue to breathe, he beſieged TRIPOLIS. The Baſſa whereof,at his comming abandoned the ſame,and carrying with him all his treaſure,fled into CYPRVS,which made the taking of the place vnto the victorious Baſſa eaſie, who rifled and ranſackt the ſame: and not content with this conqueſt, forthwith beſieged the great and ſtrong citie of DAMASCO, reſolued to die in the plaines thereof, or to become victorious within the wals of the ſame. During which ſiege the Baſſa of TRIPOLIS had out of the prouinces and countries of the Turks therabouts,raiſed another great armie,and was comming to raiſe the ſiege,and to reſcue the citie. Whereof the Baſſa of ALEPPO hearing,riſe with the greateſt
The Baſſa of Tripolis the ſecond time ouerthrowne by the Baſſa of Aleppo. Damaſco taken & rifled by the Baſſa of Aleppo. part of his armie, and meeting with him, gaue him battell, and therein the ſecond time ouerthrew him,and put him to flight. Which misfortune ſo diſmaied the minds of the beſieged, M
that deſpairing of all ſuccour and reliefe, they,by the conſent of their Gouernor fell to parley with the enemie,and ſo vpon certaine capitulations yeelded vnto him the place. Whereinto the Baſſa entring,found therein great treaſure,raiſed of the Turkes tributes, whereupon hee ſeized, and by the meanes thereof reſolued to make himſelfe maſter of all SYRIA, the chiefe

citie

A citie whereof he had now in his own power: whereunto he gaue free acceſſe and traffike vnto all the marchants of PERSIA, and of the INDIES.

Now in the time of this his proſperitie, newes was brought him; That the Beglerbeg of NATOLIA had ſent his lieutenant with a great armie againſt him; who knowing that diligence was the ſpirit of conqueſt, and that to conquer was to little purpoſe, without a vigilant care for the preſeruation thereof, reſted not vpon his former good fortune, but marched directly towards his enemies. Wherein his ſucceſſe was anſwerable vnto his deſigne, for within the ſpace of two dayes hee had taken all the paſſages which might giue way vnto his enemies to diſtreſſe him: and in the ſtraits of the mountaines, whereby the enemie was to paſſe, layed a great ambuſh of two thouſand harquebuſiers, and three thouſand horſe, who the enemies B being paſſed, and hee charging them a head, ſet vpon them in the rereward, and brought ſuch a feare vpon them, that hauing made a great fight, in fine they hauing loſt a number of men, were glad to flie, and to leaue the victorie to the Baſſa. And to the encreaſing of his good haps, hee intercepted a ſhippe, caſt by weather vpon that coaſt, laded with great treaſure, bound from ALEXANDRIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, with the tributes of ÆGYPT, belonging to the Great Sultan. Of all which things the Perſian king aduertiſed, ſought to ioyne with him in amitie, highly commending his valiant actes, and ſending vnto him honourable preſents, to wit, a Piſtoll, an Helmet, and a Targuet, all ſet with precious ſtones, eſteemed to bee worth fiftie thouſand crownes. This flame of rebellion ſpread abroad out of SYRIA into CARAMANIA, and ſo farther and farther into the leſſer ASIA: Which C was the cauſe that the Great Sultan ſent with all ſpeede vnto the Viſier Baſſa, then in HVNGARIE, commaunding him, now that STRIGONIVM was taken, which before had hindered the concluding of peace, hee ſhould now vpon reaſonable conditions conclude the ſame, to the end that his affaires on this ſide of his empire, being ſet in quiet and ſecuritie, hee might foorthwith after turne his forces againſt the Perſians, and the rebels in ASIA.

The Beglerbeg of Natolia his lieutenant with his armie diſcomfited by the Baſſa of Aleppo.

But after all theſe great troubles to returne againe into HVNGARIE. The rebels there had of long beſieged the ſtrong towne of NEVVHVSE (as is before declared) which beeing hitherto valiantly defended by the Germane garriſon therein, was now brought to ſuch extremitie, as that it was thought almoſt impoſſible to bee longer defended, the garriſon ſoul- D diours therein, being with often aſſaults for the moſt part ſlaine, and the reſt of them that were left, grieuouſly wounded. Of which ſtrong towne, being as it were the key of that ſide of the countrey, the Turkes which together with the rebels beſieged the ſame, were for the commodious ſituation therof very deſirous: and the rebels therunto as vnwilling, for that it being once in their hand, would hardly euer be again from them recouered. For which cauſe *Illiſhaſcius*, one of the captaines of the Hungarian rebels then at the ſiege thereof, perceiuing it could not long be kept, to the intent that the Turkes ſhould not by force obtaine the ſame, by letters requeſted of *Baſta*, the Emperours Lieutenant, though then his enemie, That the towne might bee deliuered vnto *Humanoius*, another captaine of the Hungarian rebels, leaſt the Turks ſhould by force obtaine the ſame: aſſuring him vpon the perill of his E owne life, and the confiſcation of all his goods to the Emperour, that vpon a reconciliation and peace to bee made betwixt the Emperour and the Hungarians his ſubiects, hee ſhould againe deliuer the ſame towne and fortreſſe into his poſſeſſion. Whereupon by commaundement of the Arch-duke, and of *Baſta*, the towne was yeelded vp the ſeuenteenth day of the moneth of October, vnto the foreſaid *Humanoius*, and the Hungarians onely receiued into the towne; yet with this condition, That the Germane ſoldiors which were yet left, and who had valiantly thus long endured the ſiege, might ſtill ſtay in the towne in pay, and keepe watch and ward together with the reſt of the Hungarians, *Humanoius* hauing commaund ouer them all.

Newhuſe yeelded vnto the Hungarian rebels.

Wherefore the Turkes ſeeing themſelues diſappointed of their purpoſe, for the obtaining F of this ſtrong towne, riſing by night, and not a little diſcontented with the Hungarians, marched towards STRIGONIVM, at the ſiege whereof the Viſier Baſſa lay. Howbeit within a few dayes after, the Hungarians not liking to haue the Germanes in garriſon with them, turned them with their Captaine *Strenius* out of the towne, and yet ſafely conducted them to COMORA.

At

Altensol yelded to the Hungarian rebels.

At the ſame time they of ALTENSOL, another ſtrong towne of the vpper HVNGARIE, not far G
from NEVHVSE, hauing bin long beſieged by the rebels, and driuen for want of victuall to eat their horſes for the ſpace of fiue weeks; and hauing now eaten them all but ſeuen, and nothing elſe left, yeelded themſelues together with their towne to the rebels: as did alſo they of WIGLAS, SHEMNITZ, and CREMNITZ.

In the meane time *Botſcay* with a verie great armie of his Hungarian rebels, came to TIRNA, a ſtrong towne about ſixteene miles diſtant from VIENNA, attended vpon with a gard of an hundred tall ſouldiours, gallantly apparelled all in blew: a little before whoſe comming, *Humanoius*, vnto whom NEVHVSE was a little before yeelded, had ſummoned PRESBVRG, requiring the ſame to be yeelded vnto him. Which thing *Botſcay*, being now come, by H
letters likewiſe required of the citizens, threatening otherwiſe moſt ſtraitly to beſiege them. Whereupon *Schonberg* Gouernour of PRESBVRG, doubting of the faithfulneſſe of the citizens, being almoſt all Hungarians, retired himſelfe with a good part of his ſouldiors into the caſtle; with proteſtation, to ſpend his life and all that hee had for the keeping and defence thereof. With whoſe conſtancie the citizens mooued, continued firme in their allegiance to the emperor. Which *Botſcay* perceiuing, and that the citie was not to be got by threats, forthwith remoued and went to PESTH, where he was moſt honorably receiued by the Viſier Baſſa and by him preſented with a crowne of curious workmanſhip, and threeſcore thouſand duckats, with fiue and twentie moſt goodly horſes: and there hauing receiued from him full po-

Botſcay obtaineth the aide of the Viſier Baſſa to intreat of peace with the emperors Commiſſioners.

wer to entreat of peace, and to conclude the ſame with the Imperialls, with *Haly Baſſa* and I
certaine other of the chiefe of the Turkes ioyned in commiſſion with him, againe departed and went to KIRPA, vnto an aſſembly of the Hungarians there to be holden: whither but a little before *Sigiſmund Forgatt* was come with the emperors reſolution, concerning the negotiation of peace; when as in the meane time other commiſſioners from the emperour were come to COMORA about the treatie of peace with the Turkes, they themſelues ſo requiring. Howbeit *Collonitz* at the ſame time by letters writ vnto the Archduke, aduiſing him that this treatie of peace might not, together and at one time, be taken in hand with the Turks and the rebels: but that if it were poſſible, an attonement ſhould bee firſt made with the rebels, and afterward a peace concluded with the Turkes, the common good of the common weale ſo requiring: for that he perceiued the Turkes indeed not to be deſirous of peace at all, but only K
to go about, by keeping of the Chriſtians at variance among themſelues, and in ſuſpence betwixt hope and feare, to doe them harme, and themſelues good; which was afterward found to be ſo indeed.

The Perſian King had ſome moneths before ſent three Embaſſadours vnto his Imperiall Maieſtie, who being come at diuers times one after another, were all with peculiar letters diſmiſſed from PRAGE the 29 of Nouember. Vnto the firſt of which embaſſadors letters were giuen, of this purport.

The emperours letters vnto the Perſian king.

Zinel Chan Beg *whom your Maieſtie hath ſent embaſſadour vnto vs, we haue willingly ſeene and receiued, and giuen him audience, in declaring of ſuch things as he had from you in charge. It is vnto vs* L
both acceptable and pleaſing, that your Maieſtie hath regard, ſo friendly to ſalute vs, and ſo carefully to ſeeke to ioyne in amitie and friendſhip with vs, whereby your Maieſtie much bindeth vs vnto the like deſire of mutuall loue and friendſhip; and that we againe on our parts ſhould be readie to performe ſuch things as may be vnto your Maieſtie pleaſing: and that we ſhould wiſh for nothing more, than that our friendſhip ſhould daily more & more be confirmed, and for the common good of vs both, for many yeres preſerued: wherein for our parts we will not bee wanting. Whereas your Maieſtie with great courage hath vndertaken, and with ſo happy ſucceſſe of victories continued your wars againſt the Turk, wherof you had ſo iuſt cauſe, we from our hearts in your behalfe reioyce as all other Chriſtians worthily do: And wee our ſelues are therby much animated valiantly and conſtantly to proceed in our warres, which wee now ſo many yeares haue made with the ſame enemy, nothing doubting, but that God the re- M
uenger of wrong will ſo proſper the honourable indeuours of your Maieſtie, as that you ſhall not onely recouer ſuch things as haue beene wrongfully taken from you, but alſo weaken and deſtroy the power of that perfidious enemie. Which that it may the better bee brought to paſſe, wee alſo renue our warres, raiſe greater forces, and by our Embaſſadours and letters exhort and incite the greateſt Chriſtian princes and potentates to extend their power againſt this our common enemie: and

thereby

A *thereby to giue fitter opportunitie and occaſion vnto your Maieſtie for the better proceeding of your affaires in* Asia. *The courſe of our notable victories, which we haue in few yeares paſt obtained againſt the Turkes, the tumults and troubles which the Turkes haue by ſecret deuiſes raiſed in* Hvngarie, *haue ſomewhat hindred: howbeit we hope by Gods permiſſion, that all things ſhall ſhortly bee againe reſtored vnto their former eſtate, ſo that we may wholly without let turne our ſelues with our power againſt the Turks. Yet in the meane time we haue thus much preuailed with the king of* Spaine, *as that he hath already ſet forth a fleet vnto the borders of his territories, to diſtract his forces: the proſperous ſucceſſe of which fleet wee daily expect. We haue alſo moued the Pope, that he ſhould alſo giue aid in this common cauſe, and excite other princes alſo to doe the like, which hee with great in-*

B *deuour doth. But concerning ſuch things as ſhall heereafter happen, we ſhall by letters and embaſſadours certifie your Maieſtie as occaſion ſhall require; as at this preſent we had appointed to ſend vnto you the Baron of* Dohna, *a famous and noble gentleman, who (all things being ready for his iourney) ſodainely dyed: and would now haue ſent another, had not the vnexpected change of the affaires of the Muſcouites otherwiſe diſſwaded vs, wee hauing no other way but that, at this time, to ſend into* Persia. *For concerning this great Prince, who is now reported there to raigne, what his minde is, or how he ſtandeth affected, we haue as yet no experience. In the meane time we ſo deſire a perpetuall and firme friendſhip to bee eſtabliſhed betwixt vs and your Maieſtie, with a certaine ſecure and free commerce, that if your Maieſtie (which we wiſh) ſhall extend your victories vnto the ſea, your ſubiects may haue free acceſſe and traffique vnto all our kingdomes and dominions. We alſo thanke your Maeſty, that you ſo kindely entertaine the Chriſtians into your kindomes, and graunt to*

C *them to haue the free exerciſe of their religion: as alſo for that you haue ſent your embaſſadours vnto the king of Fraunce, although without wiſhed ſucceſſe, whereby we eaſily gather your Maieſties great care and circumſpection euerie way. As concerning them whom your Maieſtie hath ſent vnto vs, they haue diligently and faithfully performed their dutie, ſo that they haue deſerued praiſe and fauour both here and in* Persia: *whom we much commend vnto your Maieſtie, to whom in all things we offer our greateſt loue and affection.*

Vnto the ſecond embaſſadour were alſo giuen letters from the Emperour, to this effect.

D *Whileſt wee were yet buſied in the diſpatch of* Zinel Chan Beg, *your Maieſties former embaſſadour, in the meane time* Methi Culi Beg, *another embaſſadour of yours, came vnto vs, whom we haue courteouſly entertained, and gratiouſly heard: By whoſe ſpeech, as alſo by your Maieſties letters, we haue with exceeding great pleaſure vnderſtood both your friendly greeting of vs, as alſo of the happie ſucceſſe of your affaires againſt the Turkes, ſince the departure of your former embaſſadour, together with your kinde affection towards the Chriſtians in thoſe parts. One of the ſeruants alſo of our embaſſadour which died by the way, hath reported vnto vs, how courteouſly our ſaid embaſſadour was by your Maieſty receiued: and how you haue ſhewed your ſelfe affected againſt the common enemie, which was vnto vs a thing both acceptable and pleaſing. Vnto both which your embaſies the more ſolemnely to anſwer, we had appointed againe to ſend an honourable embaſſage vnto your Maie-*

E *ſtie, had not thoſe lets and impediments happened, which in our letters giuen vnto your former embaſſadour are declared. But ſo ſoone and as often as may be, we will indeuour either by letters or by embaſſadours, more at large to manifeſt our loue and affection towards you. Wherfore we greatly deſire that your Maieſty may continue in perfect amitie with vs, and valiantly proceed in ſubduing of the common enemie; we on our part being ready to performe all things whereby we may teſtifie vnto you the deſire we haue for the preſeruation of our mutuall loue and friendſhip; as alſo of our indeuors in our wars againſt him. God almightie long preſerue your Maieſtie in health, and make you ſtill victorious againſt the common enemie.*

Vnto the third embaſſadour were likewiſe letters giuen from the

F Emperour, of this purpoſe.

Whereas Ius Baſſi Haſſan Beg, *your Maieſties embaſſador vnto the French King, came this way at the ſame time that other two of your embaſſadours were here preſent with vs, we receiued him with*

the ſame courteſie wherewith we receiued them, making ſtay of him, vntill that they might all three be together diſmiſſed. And for becauſe that his embaſſage was vndertaken for the furtherance of the common good, although it wanted the wiſhed ſucceſſe, yet we haue thought it good to giue thankes vnto your Maieſtie therefore, and in moſt friendly manner to greet you by this your ſaid embaſſadour, whom wee highly commend vnto you, for that for the time he here ſtayed in our Court, he ſo behaued himſelfe, as that he well deſerued both our and your Maieſties fauour, whereof we wiſh him to be partaker. Almightie God bleſſe your Maieſtie with all felicitie, and long to his good pleaſure preſerue the ſame. G

The Turkes and Hungarian rebels by the Imperials ouerthrowne.

Theſe embaſſadors with theſe letters thus diſmiſſed, one of them went into POLONIA, H and there declared vnto the king the great loue and affection of the Perſian king towards him, offering vnto him al loue and kindneſſe: firſt requeſting him, That he would joyne with his Majeſtie in all friendſhip and brotherly loue: and then, that hee would take vp armes againſt the Turke their common enemie: promiſing on his maſters behalfe, That hee ſhould not lay downe armes vntill that enemie were vtterly brought to nought and deſtroyed, ſo that the Chriſtian princes would on the other ſide likewiſe impugne him. This was a ſtrange meſſage, and not before heard of in POLONIA, where, for all that, the meſſenger was courteouſly and bountifully entertained, and afterward with good words put in hope of obtaining what he had requeſted, was ſo honourably diſmiſſed.

But leauing theſe embaſſadours vnto their long journey: to returne againe into HVNGA- I RIE. A great number of the Turkes and Hungarian rebels meeting together at HIDVVEG, had a purpoſe ſecretly to haue ſurpriſed & oppreſſed the Imperiall ſouldiors in their campe: Of which their purpoſe they in good time aduertiſed, and therfore keeping good watch and ward, ſo receiued the Turks and rebels at their comming, contrary to their expectation, as that after a ſmall fight they cauſed them to betake themſelues to flight: whom the Imperialls ſo hotly purſued towards CANISIA, that they ſlew of them aboue 1000, tooke about 200 more of them priſoners, with 1500 horſe which they caried away with them. And ſo hauing left ſufficient garriſons on that ſide of the country towards CANISIA, returned themſelues towards VIENNA. In the meane time the Commiſſioners from the Emperour being met together at COMORA, about the treatie of peace with the Turks and the Hungarians, the ſixt of K

The treaty of peace with the Turkes and rebels begun.

December receiuing letters from the Baſſa of BADA, certaine of them the next day after went by water downe the riuer of Daubius to BVDA: where they being honourably receiued, and hauing much & long talk with the Baſſa concerning a peace, found little difficultie therin, but that the Turks ſaid they could thereof determine nothing, without the preſence and conſent of the Hungarians. With which anſwer they ful of hope returned back again to COMORA, as did alſo *Sigiſmund Forgat* with the like hope of peace from *Botſcay*. At which time *Botſcay* being about to depart from the aſſembly at KIRPAY, backe againe to CASSOVIA, gaue power and authority to *Illiſhaſchius* for the furthering of the treatie for peace: who hauing receiued letters of ſafe conduct from the Archduke *Matthias*, about the end of December, together with his wife went to VIENNA: who being admitted vnto the Archdukes preſence, and L hauing had an houre and halfes talke with him, and euerie day after conferred with the counſellors from eight a clocke to twelue, at length compoſed all difficulties and differences touching the treaty of peace, excepting fiue articles onely concerning religion, the free exerciſe wherof the Hungarians in any wiſe required, ſo that now men began to conceiue ſome good hope of a peace to be in time concluded.

1606 This yere thus ending with the beginning of the treaty for peace, the next yere begun with the wonted troubles of war, the rebellious Haiduckes in HVNGARIE doing great harme in the vpper HVNGARIE, tyrannizing after their wonted maner vpon men of all ſort and condition. Where giuing diuers aſſaults vnto diuers cities, they being valiantly repulſed, were conſtrained to retire (the Polonians and Coſſacks defending the ſame) yet did they neuertheleſſe no M little harme vnto the countrey inhabitants. Whereof complaint being made vnto the king of POLONIA, hee by his embaſſador ſent to *Botſcay* at CASSOVIA, obtained, that thoſe ſpoyling Haiducks ſhould be called backe againe out of theſe parts.

The Haiducks do great harme in the vpper Hungarie.

Now had *Illiſhaſchius* the negotiator for the treaty of peace to be made with the rebels, ſo well

A well dealt in that matter, as that the ſame, in the later end of Ianuarie ſhould haue been publiſhed at VIENNA, but that certaine of the chiefe of the Clergie could not be brought to conſent, that the free exerciſe of religion ſhould indifferently be granted to all the people in generall, but to the Nobilitie only. Whereupon *Illiſhaſchius* with the reſt of the Commiſſioners for the Hungarians, with great diſcontentment being about to returne home againe without any thing at all concluded, the deputies for the Emperour ſeeing that it could not be otherwiſe brought to paſſe, at length agreed (although neuer ſo much contrarie to the liking of the clergie men) to ſatisfie the Hungarians in this their requeſt, and that the free exerciſe as well of the reformed, as of the Romiſh religion, ſhould be permitted to all men throughout all HVNGARIE, in ſuch ſort as it had before beene in the time of the Emperors *Maximilian* and *Ferdinand*. Concerning which point for the libertie of the religion, letters were deliuered to *Illiſhaſchius*, all the other points concerning the peace being put off vnto the next aſſemblie of the States of HVNGARIE, ſhortly after to be holden at PRESBVRG.

The free exerciſe of religion granted to the Hungarians.

B

About the beginning of March the Spahi at CONSTANTINOPLE had requeſted of the Viſier Baſſa, That it might be lawfull for themſelues to take vp their woonted penſion of the farmers and huſbandmen here and there in the countrie: which although it were vnto them by the Viſier Baſſa denied, who had commaundement from the Great Sultan within a few daies after, to giue euery one of them his preſent pay in money; yet they not ſo contented, but going out of the citie preſumptuouſly preſumed to trouble the countrie men, and to do
C the farmers great harme. For which their inſolencie the great Sultan, the chiefe captains and leaders of them being againe returned into the citie, cauſed them ſome to be beheaded, ſome to be hanged, and otherſome to be bound in chaines and drowned: whereby no ſmall feare was ſtrucke into the reſt of the common ſoldiors. But the rebellion in ASIA ſtill encreaſing, and the rebels there ſecretly both fauouring and furthering the proceedings of the Perſian king, the Sultan forthwith ſent for the Viſier Baſſa, who the laſt yeare had ſerued in HVNGARIE, to go into ASIA, to repreſſe the rebels there, and alſo to withſtand the proceedings of the Perſian king: committing in the meane time the managing of the war in HVNGARIE vnto his lieutenant.

The Sphai inſolently oppreſſing the countrie people, iuſtly puniſhed.

The treatie of peace both with the Turks and the rebels, was yet in hand, whereunto how
D much the Turkes were for their part inclined, the garriſon ſoldiors of RAB had good proofe. For the eighteenth day of March, being the day at their requeſt appointed for the treatie, and whereon the Commiſſioners on both parts there meeting together, ſhould haue furthered the negotiation of the peace, not paſt fiftie of the Turks comming to the gate of the towne, required to be let in, as if they had come for that purpoſe. Whom our men nothing ſuſpecting, were about to receiue them into the towne; when as a ſentinell without the towne, it being a thicke miſt, perceiued 3000 more of the Turks lurking there by, and forthwith giuing an alarme to thoſe of the towne, bewrayed the enemies treacherie, who thereupon retired, they of the towne diſcharging their great ordnance after them. The next moneth, about the beginning of Aprill, certaine meſſengers came from EPERIA (a citie of the vpper
E HVNGARIE, yet holden for the Emperour) to VIENNA, declaring the moſt miſerable ſtate of that citie: which although the way thereunto being three or foure weeks before opened, it had receiued ſome good ſtore of victuall, yet now (as they ſaid) was ſo on euery ſide by the rebels beſet, as that no prouiſion at all could more therunto come: hoping by that means to bring to paſſe, that the citizens pinched with hunger and want of things neceſſarie, ſhould at length yeeld themſelues together with the citie into their power. By which meanes they but a little before had obtained the ſtrong towne of TOKAY: wherin the famine was ſo great, that the ſouldiours had not onely eaten their ſhooes and leather ierkins, but had now alſo kild two boyes to eat, and ſome others of them had caſt lots among themſelues, which ſhould be kild for the other to eat. By which extremitie *Ruber* the Gouernor of the place, was enforced to
F yeeld: vnto whom *Botſcay*, who then lay at CASSOVIA, is ſaid to haue offered a great ſumme of money, with many other good things, to haue taken his part; all which he moſt conſtantly refuſed, proteſting euen vnto death to continue faithfull in his obedience to the Emperour.

Rab attempted to haue beene by the Turkes ſurpriſed.

Eperia by the rebels diſtreſſed

Tokay by the rebels taken.

The letters of Illiſhaſchius ſent to a notable man of Vienna.

About the ſame time *Illiſhaſchius* who had before not a little laboured about the furthering of the peace in HVNGARIE, writ letters from CASSOVIA vnto a certaine great man at VIENNA; whereby he declared that *Botſcay* without the conſent of the eſtates of HVNGARIE could of himſelfe determine nothing, concerning the concluſion of the peace: who had oft times told him to his face, that rather than they would againe ſubmit themſelues to a forreine gouernour, they would for euer put themſelues vnder the Turkes protection: and yet promiſed by the ſame letters, that although he had got vnto himſelfe great diſpleaſure thereby with the Haiducks, he would not for all that ceaſe by all means to draw the ſtates of the countrie in their next aſſembly vnto his part, ſo that that which was before concluded at VIENNA concerning religion ſhould not againe be reuerſed: for many of them (as hee ſaid) were afraid that it would not be performed which was there promiſed vnto the ſtates concerning the exerciſe of their religion. And that therefore they could not yet bee perſuaded to put themſelues from vnder the Turkes protection, vntill they ſaw themſelues ſufficiently ſecured, both for the libertie of their religion and the keeping of their ancient priuiledges. And that they could not, nor would not indure a forraine gouernour to rule ouer them, with whom they could not talke; nor yet ſuffer clergie men to haue any voyces in their ciuill affaires. And therefore (he ſaid) he thought it very neceſſarie that the Emperour ſhould not doubt in this point to gratifie the Hungarians. And that TRANSILVANIA, whereupon he had bin hitherto inforced to beſtow ſo great coſt for the keeping therof, being now left vnto *Botſcay*, hee ſhould appoint ſuch a gouernor ouer HVNGARIE as the States of that countrie ſhould require. For that there was no hope of any peace to be made with the Turkes, except *Botſcay* and the States of HVNGARIE ſhould vndertake the treatie thereof; ſeeing that they but only ſeeking for a peace in ſhew, were oft time diſcouered but to ſeeke for their own aduantages and profits.

Illiſhaſchius reproachfully vſed by the Hungarians.

But concerning *Illiſhaſchius* himſelfe, the Hungarian rebels ſeeing him ſo much to labour about the concluding of a peace, in ſcorne called him by the by-name of *Cripeliſhacius*, as he that too much inclined vnto the Germans; which by-name he tooke in ſo ill part, as that hee departed ſtraight to EPERIA with a purpoſe not to haue bin preſent at the next aſſemblie of the States: but being againe pacified, and by *Botſcay* called backe, hee made ſuch a notable ſpeech vnto the ſtates in their next aſſemblie, that all men now began both to hope and wiſh more for peace than they had before done.

In the meane time the Turks in great number being gathered together to BELGRADE, expected the end of this treatie for peace, and letters from the great Sultan to *Botſcay* were intercepted alſo: whereby hee aduiſeth him to proceed in his purpoſe, and ioyning with his powers, to ſeize vpon AVSTRIA, BOHEMIA, and MORAVIA; for that he could be contented with HVNGARIE and TRANSYLVANIA, and leaue the reſt of the prouinces vnto *Botſcay* as his inheritance.

The Haiducks incenſed againſt the Turks and Tartars, truſt neither of them.

The Tartars about this time were about to make a road into POLONIA, but when as they with their oft incurſions had not a little troubled the Haiducks alſo in the vpper HVNGARIE, they reſolued among themſelues to ioyne their forces together, and to fight as well againſt the Turkes as the Tartars, and from thenceforth neither to truſt the one nor the other.

Heereupon, when as the Turkes in great number came to aſſault LIPPA, a towne of the Haiduckes, they forſaking the towne, fortified the caſtle with certaine companies of armed men, and afterwards beſtowed many others here and there in caues and cellars in the towne, and layed great ſtore of gunpowder in the ſtreets. Vnto which towne the Turkes comming, and finding the gates open, and none to reſiſt them, haſted to haue taken the caſtle. But in the meane time, the powder which the Haiduckes had layed taking fire, blew vp a number of them, and they which lay hid in the caues and cellars forthwith breaking out, ſlew of them whomſoeuer they met, and ſo made of the Turkes a great ſlaughter, and againe cleered the towne.

The Eſtates of AVSTRIA conſidering the great harmes they had in theſe late troubles receiued, aſwel from the Hungarian rebels, as from the emperors mutinous ſoldiors, and by experience taught how daungerous a thing it was for them to reſt vpon other mens protection,

being

A being vnto them ſtrangers: reſolued now in a general aſſemblie of the Eſtates by them about this time holden to take vpon themſelues the defence of their countrie, againſt ſuch ſudden incurſions and tumults of the mutinous ſoldiors, and no more to relie vpon forain protection, ſtill to ſeek when they had moſt need thereof. Wherfore to aſſure themſelues in their own ſtrength they with a generall conſent agreed to haue alwaies in readines two thouſand horſmen & eight thouſand footmen, to be maintained of the common charge; fiftie of the countrie peſants ſtill finding of one of the ſaid ſouldiors.

The inhabitants of Auſtria prouide to ſtand vpon their own ſtrength for the defence of their owne countrie.

And much about this time, *viz.* the third of Iune *Illiſhaſchius* a great man amongſt the rebels and yet the greateſt furtherer of the peace, (as appeared by his doings and by that wee
B haue before of him written) hauing before obtained letters of ſafe conduct from the Archducke, came now againe with his wife alſo to VIENNA, there more at large to conferre vpon the articles for a peace to bee concluded, with ſuch as were on the Emperours behalfe for that purpoſe deputed. Where comming to conferre and talke vpon the matter, hee was ſo croſſed by *Nicholas* Biſhop of VIENNA who hitherto had been preſent in Counſell together with the reſt of the Commiſſioners (a great enemie vnto the peace in reſpect of the article concerning the libertie of Religion) hee was I ſay by him ſo croſſed, as that there was no hope of any thing to bee for the common quiet concluded, ſo long as he was there preſent. For which cauſe he on both ſides and of all men deſirous of the peace diſliked, was in the Archdukes name willed no more to come into the Counſell for the diſturbing of the
C peace. In which negotiation for the concluding of the peace *Illiſhaſchius* had taken ſuch paines in trauelling to and fro betwixt the Archduke then liuing at VIENNA and *Botſcay* with the States of HVNGARIE then lying at CASSOVIA, and ſo debated the matter on both ſides, that all things being as good as agreed vpon, for a full concluſion of all matters, he himſelfe, together with *George Humanoius*, *Francis Magott*, *Sebaſtian Tockell*, *Staniſlaus Turſon*, and others, with two hundred horſe, and two and thirtie waggons, in all foure hundred perſons, the ſeuenth of September came to VIENNA with fiftie Huſſars following of them: ſhortly after whoſe comming the treatie for peace was earneſtly begun with often meſſengers paſſing to and fro betwixt VIENNA and CASSOVIA to *Botſcay* lying then verie daungerouſly ſicke, vntill that all the articles of peace were neere about the foureteenth of September ful-
D ly on both parts agreed vpon: moſt difference ariſing about the article for the free exerciſe of religion. For although it was before declared that men might haue the free exerciſe of religion: yet the Hungarians recalling that generall word of religion vnto a particularitie, would needs haue it ſet down that men might haue the free exerciſe of thoſe religions which are at this day called the Lutheran, Caluinian, and Romiſh religion: neither would they conclude any peace vntill they were of their requeſt in that point ſatisfied. Which peace ſo concluded the next day after the Deputies for the Hungarians ſent an Embaſſador to the Viſier Baſſa at BVDA to certifie him of all their proceedings, and to requeſt him not as yet to attempt any thing for the diſturbing of the peace: Now the articles whereupon the peace was concluded were theſe:

The Biſhop of Vienna a great enemie to the peace to haue bin concluded betwixt the emperor and his diſcontented ſubiects.

A peace concluded betwixt the Emperour and his diſcontented ſubiects of the vpper Hungarie

E

Firſt, That from thenceforth it ſhould be lawfull for euery man throughout the kingdome of Hungarie to haue the free vſe of his religion, and to beleeue what he would.

2 *That if the Hungarians ſo thought good, they might chuſe a Palatine for their Gouernour, and that in the meane time the Archduke* Matthias *ſhould no more vſe the title of a Gouernour, but of a Viceroy.*

3 *That the crowne of* HVNGARIE *ſhould ſtill be left in the Emperors keeping.*

4 *That the Biſhops that were nobly deſcended in* HVNGARIE *and had lands of their owne, ſhould from thenceforth be admitted into the Counſell, but the other biſhops not ſo to be receiued.*

5 *That* Botſcay *for himſelfe and his heires male ſhould for euer hold* TRANSYLVANIA.

F 6 *That the ſame countrie of* TRANSYLVANIA *ſhould be ſtill ſubiect vnto the Kingdome of* HVNGARIE.

7 *That for his Armes he ſhould beare three royall Crownes and three open Helmets.*

8 *That he ſhould no more afterwards ſtile himſelfe Prince, but Lord of part of the Kingdome of* HVNGARIE.

9 *That they ſhould pay the Haiduckes their wages which had leuied them.* G

10 *That the harmes done on both ſides ſhould for euer be forgotten.*

11 *That* Bohemia, Moravia, Silesia, Lavsnisivm, *and* Avstria, *ſhould not onely with their letters and ſeales confirme the articles, but alſo ſweare at* Vienna *to keepe the ſame ſo far as ſhould concerne them.*

12 *That the Hungarians ſhould likewiſe ſend ſome to* Vienna, *who in their behalfe ſhould with their letters, ſeales and oathes, confirme and ratifie theſe articles.*

13 *That the aſſemblie of the Eſtates of* Hvngarie, *ſhould be referred vntill a more conuenient time for them.*

14 *That all theſe things being done, this agreement ſhould be publickely confirmed and inrolled in* H *the records of the kingdome of* Hvngarie.

15 *That it ſhould be lawfull for the Hungarians, by their embaſſadours to inuite the princes of the Empire, to the approuing and confirming of theſe articles.*

Which fifteene articles were on the Emperours part ſubſcribed by *Trauſam, Mollart, Sigiſrid, Pruner, Lichtenſtein,* and *Kreuberge:* and on the part of the Hungarians, by *Illiſhaſchius, Peter Erdkod, George Turſo,* and *Sigiſmund Forgat,* and others.

The twentith of September following, the embaſſador for the Hungarians and of *Botſcay*, being admitted vnto the preſence of the Archduke *Matthias*, obtained of him pardon for the forepaſſed rebellion, and all that was therein done: vnto whom ſecuritie for I the ſame was afterward giuen by the prouinces, thereby alſo to aſſure them, that they ſhould not be therefore afterwards troubled. But yet for all that was before done, the title of the Prince of Transylvania was left vnto *Botſcay* for terme of his life: who feeling his ſickneſſe daily to encreaſe, would oft times ſay, That he could willingly die, ſo that it might pleaſe God, before his death, to giue him leaue to excuſe himſelfe of his rebellion before the whole Romane Empire: and ſo about the end of September all the aforeſaid embaſſadours for the Hungarians and *Botſcay*, being aſſembled into the caſtle of Vienna, together with the Emperours Counſell, and certaine other noblemen of the prouinces belonging to the Emperour, receiued euerie one of them the articles of the peace copied out, and faire written in parchment: which done, they returned euerie one to his owne dwel- K ling. But *Illiſhaſchius* went from thence to Nevhvse, to bee preſent at the peace to bee afterwards made with Turkes alſo, from whence hee afterwards writ letters vnto the Viſier Baſſa, to requeſt him, not as yet to attempt any thing againſt the Emperors prouinces, but peaceably and quietly to expect his Commiſſioners, which were ſhortly to come vnto him.

A great fire at Conſtantinople.

But in the meane time whileſt this peace was thus in concluding, certaine Tartars at Constantinople, in their inſolencie ſet fire vpon a certaine Iewes houſe, wherof aroſe ſuch a terrible fire, as burnt not onely many houſes, but a great number of the Iewes themſelues alſo: the harme there done being eſteemed at fortie hundred thouſand duckats. In which tumult and noiſe of the people running to and fro, and quenching of the fire the great Sultan L hauing a fall from his horſe, was thereof for a while ſicke.

The Turkes ſeeking to ſurpriſe others, themſelues ſurpriſed

The Turkes of Canisia alſo hauing conſpired with the captaine of the leſſer Comora, came to haue ſurpriſed the ſame. But the garriſon ſouldiors there, hauing before had a ſuſpition thereof, ſuffered ſo many of the Turks as they knew they were able to ouercome, to enter; and ſo ſhutting the gates of the citie, kild them euery mothers ſonne, the reſt which were without returning againe to Canisia.

The Commiſſioners for the emperop, to entreat of peace with the Turks come to Presburge.

Peace thus (as is aforeſaid) concluded with the Hungarians, *George Turſon, Nicholas Iſtuan, Iohn Mollart,* and *Althem*, with ſome others, the Emperors Commiſſioners for a peace to bee made with the Turkes, went to Comora; *Sigifrid Collonitz* and *Budin* following them with the armie; for as yet the ſaid Commiſſioners durſt not altogether truſt the Turks M for intercepting of them by the way. Which Commiſſioners carried with them *Solyman* the Baſſa of Byda, who had now beene ſeuen yeares kept priſoner in the caſtle of Vienna, and *Aly Baſſa*, both brauely apparrelled in blew ſilke; ſix wagons following of them, wherin were carried certaine preſents for the great Sultan, to witt, a moſt curious cloke, certaine

A taine faire peeces of plate, an hundred thousand duckats, with diuers other things of great value.

But whilest they there stayed, expecting to heare from the Visier Bassa then at BVDA, a suddaine insolent accident fell out, like ynough to haue broken off againe the peace, already made with the Hungarians, as also to haue vtterly cut off the treatie of peace to bee had with the Turks, and to haue set them all together by the eares againe. For albeit that the first article of the peace made with the Hungarians, was, That euery man should haue the free exercise of his religion, yet the 8 day of October, about three of the clocke in the afternoone, when as a certaine Hungarian Lutheran preacher was in the pulpit preaching to the people in a church, B in the suburbs of COMORA, *Buchem* and *Kneuie*, two captaines, comming from dinner with certaine of their seruants more than halfe drunke, with their swords drawn rusht in the Church, and draue out thence the preacher, vpon whom captaine *Buchem* his trumpeter also discharged a pistoll, and raised such a tumult in the church, that diuers children were troden to death vnderfoot, and the rest put in great feare of their liues.

The peace already concluded with the Hungarians, like enough to haue againe bin broken off through the insolencie of some few disordered persons.

Which insolent fact so mooued the Hungarians, that *Turson* and *Budian*, there present with the rest of the Commissioners, readie to haue gone about the treatie of the peace, would needs the next day haue departed from COMORA, and were hardly by *Mollart* and *Collonitz* entreated to stay, *Buchem* and *Kneuie* the two captaines being bound to their appearance for the answering of the matter, and the trumpeter with yrons on his heeles clapt in prison. But C the newes hereof being carried to NEVHVSEL, and (as the manner of reports is) by fame made farre greater than it was, as that an hundred and fiftie persons was slaine in the church, there arose such a tumult among the Hungarians there, as that *Illishaschius* with the rest of the captains had much ado to quiet and appease the same: who ioyning with the Turkes of STRIGONIVM, and the Haiducks of the Island, had determined now by night to haue inuaded COMORA, where the outrage was committed, had not *Pogranius* the elder (a man of great grauitie) comming from thence, declared vnto *Illishaschius* and the rest of the captaines all the matter as it was done, vpon whose relation the whole tumult was again appeased. But forasmuch as the two aforesaid captaines, bound to their appearance, were by night fled from COMORA to VIENNA, the Hungarians were very earnest to haue them seuerely punished, as breakers of D the first article of the peace concerning religion. *Botscay* in the meane time beheaded *Catayus* his Chauncellor, who had gone about to huue poysoned him, in hope after his death to haue been prince of TRANSYLVANIA himselfe, placing *Iohn Ianusy* in his stead, and giuing him *Catay* his lands.

Botscay causeth his Chancellor to be beheaded.

Peace now made with the Hungarians (as is aforesaid) and Commissioners appointed for a treatie of peace to be had with the Turkes also (wherunto the Visier Bassa then lying at BVDA was as forward as any, being so commanded from the great Sultan his master) there wanted but a place commodious for the said Commissioners, without suspition of danger, and indifferent for them all to meet in. Whereupon *Cæsar Gallen*, a man of great experience in such matters, with some other captaines, were appointed to find out some such conuenient place E for them to meet in: who hauing viewed many, at length made choise of one within halfe a league of COMORA, so fit for that purpose, as if nature had prouided it for the same. The great riuer of Danubius being there diuided into diuers parts, made therin three islands, all compassed round with the armes thereof, into which Islands the Commissioners for the Emperour, for the Turke, and for the Hungarians, might come without let one of another to entreat of their affaires, and so in little boats prepared for that purpose passe ouer one to another, as their occasions required. Into this place, so commodious for all three parties, the deputies for the Emperor the fiue and twentith day of October came, conducted by the horsmen of MANSFELD, HOHENLO, and BONCHIMIN. After whom followed *Illishaschius*, and the other deputies for the Hungarians, assisted with the nobilitie of HVNGARIE, all attending the comming of the F Great Sultans Commissioners; who likewise immediatly after came, being brought vp the riuer in foure and twentie braue ships well appointed.

The Commissioners for the Emperor, the Turks, and the Hungarians meet together to entreat of a peace.

These Commissioners being thus apart arriued in the Islands, began first to consult by themselues euery one of their seueral affaires and businesses, and afterwards many times meeting together, with much grauitie consulted and conferred of the best wayes and meanes for the

the making of a good and assured peace for the appeasing of these warres: which euery one of them, and all together, to that end imploying the vttermost of their endeauors, at last the 19 of Nouember it was betwixt all the three parties fully agreed vpon and concluded, and hostages on on all parts giuen one to another, with oaths and promises solemnly on all sides giuen and receiued for the inuiolate keeping and obseruing of the same: the articles whereupon the said peace was concluded being these. G

A peace concluded betwixt the Emperor & the great Sultan.

Articles of the peace concluded betwixt the emperour and the great Sulan.

First, That the Emperour and the great Sultan in all their Letters, Dispatches, Instruments, and Embassages, should not stile themselues by any other names or additions, but by the names of Welbeloued Father and Sonne, to wit, the Emperour calling the great Sultan his Sonne, and the great Sultan the Emperour (in respect of his yeares) his Father. H

That in the beginning of their letters they should take vpon them the name and qualitie of Emperor, and not of King, respectiuely one of them to another.

That these two Emperors should take order, that the realm of Hvngarie *and the Archdukedome of* Avstria *might bee in rest, peace, and tranquilitie, and altogether deliuered and assured from all incursions, oppressions, and outrages of the men of war on both parties.*

That it should be lawfull for the king of Spaine, *if he so thought good, to enter into this treatie of peace, without the opposition or let of one or of the other of both these Emperors in any sort.*

That the Tartars and all other people, vsually wont to come in armes into Hvngarie, *should be comprised within this treatie of the peace, so to be disarmed of all power, by their armes to doe harme within* I *the realme of* Hvngarie, *and they there assured from their violences and robberies.*

That euery one both on the one part and on the other should forbeare from making incursions and pillages, and enterprises of war, and from all actes of hostilitie one against another; and yet euery one neuertheless to haue power to pursue theeues and robbers, and such others seeking after bootie, to the disturbing of the peace, and iniurying of the commonweale: whereof euery man should haue power to giue knowledge, to the intent by common force to suppresse them, and to cause them to recompence the wrongs and harmes by them done.

That all places, castles, townes and forts should remaine without attempt either on the one part or on the other, whether it were by force, surprize, or treason, and so likewise the goods, families, and cattell of the countrymen, which were of their territories and iurisdiction, Botscay *stil holding all that was lately to him graunted by the treatie of* Vienna. K

That all prisoners taken in the warres should be set at libertie, but especially such as had beene taken in townes and citadels, which by their valour and courage they sought to haue defended, and the other prisoners to bee deliuered by exchange and ransome, as should bee most expedient and easie for both parties.

That all controuersies happening as well on this side as beyond the riuer of Dannbius, should be peaceably ended by the iudgement of the gouernor of Rab, *of the Bassa of* Bvda, *of the gouernor of* Sclavonia, *and of the gouernours of other places; and that if they should chaunce to be of such important weight and consequence, as that they could not by these Magistrates bee determined and composed, that they should in that case be reserued to be decided by their Imperiall Maiesties: and that it should be lawfull both for the one partie and the other to repaire and build the places ruined, but not to build places of new, which might preiudice either the one part or the other.* L

That Amurath *the Visier Bassa should send his messengers with presents to the Archduke* Mathias, *and that the Emperour should dispatch an embassador toward the great Sultan with 200000 duckats, and that the great Sultan likewise should send his embassador to* Prage, *with great and rich presents to the Emperour.*

That this peace should begin in the yeare 1607, and continue for the space of twentie yeares, and that one of the Emperours should send vnto the other euery three yeares their embassadours with their honourable and rich presents, according to the pleasure and power of their Maiesties.

That all the Emperours successors, as also those of the kingdome of Hvngarie, *should bee comprehended within this agreement of peace, together with all their kinsmen, allies, and confederates, as likewise those of the Great Sultans also.* M

That the Christians should againe haue the citie of Vacia, *which they should at their pleasure keepe and fortifie, and that* Strigonivm, *with all the villages thereto belonging, should remaine*

vnto

A *vnto the Great Sultan, yet ſo, as that no man ſhould bee with any new tribute oppreſſed: and that ſuch as had before bin free from paying of tribute, ſhould ſtill keepe the ſame priuiledges.*

And that the Turkes ſhould not exact their tributes by the poynt of their ſwords, but by the way of iuſtice, which they ſhould commit vnto the diſcretion of Iudges and receiuers, to that end appointed, that ſo it might bee paid without oppreſſing of the people, except happily they which ſhould pay it, vpon preſumption ſhould denie it, or too long deferre the payment of it, in which caſe it ſhould bee lawfull both for the one ſide and the other to vſe ſuch meanes as ſhould ſeeme vnto them good for the obtaining thereof.

Theſe are the articles of this peace, which God turne to the glorie of his name and the be- *Great ioy and triumph in Hungary for the peace concluded with the Turke.*
B nefite of the Chriſtian Common weale; and for which all the townes of HVNGARIE made great ioy and triumph, which they declared by the thundering of their cannons, which they in great number diſcharged with many other ſolemnities and triumphs. The commiſſioners themſelues in token of their conceiued ioy, magnificently feaſted one another alſo; which the Turkes firſt began, and not content to haue made them great cheere, gaue vnto our Commiſſioners great preſents alſo: for the Baſſa of BVDA gaue vnto *Mollart*, *Althem*, *Turſon*, *Iſtuan*, *Collonitz*, *Budian*, *Hendoc*, *Cæſar Gallen*, and *Eleſchin*, braue and couragious horſes moſt gallantly furniſhed; and to the reſt exceeding rich garments and taeſtrie hangings of great value. And as at the time of this feaſt, the troope of *Mansfeld* had by many ſallies and vollies of ſhot giuen great pleaſure vnto the Turkes as they ſate at the table *Alla Baſſa* to
C declare the contentment and pleaſure hee had therein receiued, ſent to the captaine of this troope 200 duckats, which he would not accept, requeſting in ſtead of them to haue deliuered vnto him a certain captaine by the Turks then kept priſoner, whom the Baſſa cauſed freely to be deliuered vnto him, and with all ſent backe againe the two hundred duckats to be deuided among the ſouldiours, which for all that *Mansfeld* refuſed, ſending them backe againe vnto the Baſſa. After which actions of ioy and peace, euery man returned home well content and pleaſed.

Theſe things thus done, and the peace confirmed, the Baſſa of BVDA forthwith ſent his em- *The great Sultã giueth thanks to his Prophet Mahomet for the peace concluded with the Chriſtians.*
baſſadors to CONSTANTINOPLE, certifying the great Sultan of the peace now made with the Chriſtians, who thereof conceauing great ioy, with a number of Ianizaries, and others
D in great magnificence went to the church to giue thanks therefore vnto his prophet *Mahomet*, and ſpent the next day with great ſport and pleaſure, purpoſing from thenceforth to turne all his force and power for the ſuppreſſing of his rebels in ASIA, and the ſubduing of the Perſian king.

Now albeit that there was a peace of late concluded with the Hungarians at VIENNA (as *The Haiducks begin new ſtirr in Hungaria.*
is before declared) yet diuers ſtirres and tumults were neuertheleſſe by the Haiducks in diuers places of the vpper HVNGARIE ſtill raiſed: inſomuch, that about the end of Nouember the inhabitants of the countie of BOCOTSIE were through their inſolencies enforced to ioyne battell with them, wherein a number were on both ſides ſlaine, and three countrey villages burnt: ſo that as it ſhould ſeeme no peace can be ſo well and indifferently made, but that ſome will bee
E ſtill troubling and impugning the ſame.

Shortly after, *viz.* the thirteenth of December, *Botſcay* calling together an aſſembly of the *Botſcay calleth an aſſembly of the States of Hungary, and inſtructeth them what to doe at their next generall aſſembly.*
Eſtates of HVNGARIE, propounded to them to bee conſidered of, firſt, That the late reuolt, almoſt generally made throughout all HVNGARIE, with all the ſtirres and troubles thereby raiſed, had all beene hitherto to no other end made, but for the defence of their religion, and the maintenance of their auncient libertie: Then, that whereas they by their generall good liking had made choice of him for their Prince, and that hitherto he had done nothing without their knowledge and conſent: and that euen now at this preſent he was by their conſent readie to depart from the caſtles and free cities in the vpper HVNGARIE, and had now ſent his letters vnto the Archduke *Matthias*, for the ſending of his deputies to receiue them; whether
F he ſhould from thencefoorth relinquiſh the title of a prince, or not. And that for as much as no warre could be made without great harme doing, that he would therfore for the auoiding of farther troubles about ſuch matters, that a decree ſhould bee made, That all ſuch wrongs and iniuries ſhould be forgiuen and forgotten, and that euery man ſhould ſtill hold all ſuch goods,

goods, whether they were moueable or immoueable, during the time of this late warre. Hee G
wished them also in the next generall assembly of the States, with all their power and endea-
uour to vrge the repealing of the article concerning the burning of heretickes, with all other
articles contrary to their religion: and not to remit any thing concerning the choice of their
Palatine, as had in former time beene vsed: neither in this next generall assembly of the E-
states to neglect any thing which might seeme to concerne their priuiledges and liberty. And
that therefore they should be carefull to send thither wise and powerfull men, such as should
not easily be ouercome with the clamours and outcries of the contrarie part. At length hee
wished them to consider of this also, how a true and sincere confederation might be made be-
twixt HVNGARIE and TRANSYLVANIA, so that a safe and quiet traffique and commerce might H
in both places be vsed.

Botscay dieth at Cassouia.

These things thus done, *Botsay* his sickneſſe still more and more encreasing vpon him, so at length preuailed, that it made an end of him, to the great sorrow and griefe of all the people in generall, who had him in great honor and regard. He died at CASSOVIA the 30 of December, in the yeare 1606. He was honorably descended, and a man of a great spirit, ambitious, wise, and politike, a great louer of his countrey, but an extreame enemy vnto the Germanes, and their gouernment in HVNGARIE.

A little before his death he earnestly perſuaded *Iohn Iansie* his Chancellour to continue in his allegeance vnto the Emperour, and not to raise new stirres, or so much as in him was not to suffer any to bee raised. Neuertheleſſe, such his wholesome counsell not regarded, there I were some, who immediatly after his death were about to haue raised new forces, for to haue seized vpon TRANSYLVANIA, and so to haue stirred vp new troubles. For preuenting wherof, *Matthias* the Archduke forthwith sent a messenger vnto the States of the vpper HVNGARIE, aduising them, That the great harmes and miseries considered which that part of HVNGARIE had of late felt and endured, almost to the vtter ruine and destruction thereof (which proceeded not so much from the wars with the Turkes, as from their owne ciuill tumults and seditions) they should from thenceforth giue themselues to quietneſſe & peace, and not againe insolently to prescribe vnto the Emperour what to do, or how he was to dispose of the country of TRANSILVANIA; assuring them, that the Emperour would not hereafter winke at such their rebellious plots and deuices, but foorthwith turne all his power and forces to the vtter destruction and rooting out of such rebellious and seditious persons, the disturbers of the common K
peace and quiet. By which the Archdukes warning, some, otherwise ready enough to haue raised new stirs and troubles, were not therin so forward as otherwise haply they would haue been, but kept themselues quiet.

The Emperour not tobe blamed formaking peace with the Turke.

Now many there were (and yet are) which much maruelled, that the Christian Emperour would thus make peace with the great Sultan (as is aforesaid) he being then so much troubled with warres, both against his owne rebels, and the Persian king in ASIA, most part of his forces being turned that way; so that a fitter time, or of more aduantage, could not haue been wished for the Emperour to haue done great matters against him in, and not onely to haue holden his owne (which he did not) in HVNGARIE, but to haue recouered some good part of his L
losses there before receiued also. And indeed true it is, that the time then well serued for both: but what auaileth opportunitie without power? And had the Hungarians (the greatest strength the Emperour hath hitherto had for the defence of that little which is yet left of that so great a kingdome) been at quiet and at his commaund, and he himselfe a prince which had rested vpon his owne strength and power, euer at his pleasure to haue been raised, and as need should require supplied, without depending vpon his friends and allies, then haply it might haue bin in him accounted a great ouersight, to haue omitted and ouerslipped so faire an opportunitie. But the Hungarians being then not onely reuolted from him, but taking part with the Turks, and the Turks with them, and he of himselfe with his owne power not able to hold the field against them, or well to maintaine a defensiue warre; and his friends and allies, his M
wonted and greatest staies, then at his greatest need failing of him also, what should he in such a case do but as he did? to accept of a reasonable peace whilest he might haue it; especially against such an enemie, as whose whole power being turned against him, might haue easily endangered his whole estate. For it is not reasonably to be thought, how the Emperour should

of

A of himselfe, without the great aid of the other Christian princes, his friends and allies, be able to withstand the huge and dreadfull power of the *Othoman* Emperour: as (without ominous presage be it spoken) it is to be feared it will too true appeare, whensoeuer his wars and troubles in the East being ended, he shall againe turne his forces this way toward the West.

Now *Botscay* was no sooner dead, but that some others of the nobilitie both of HVNGARIE and TRANSYLVANIA (haply no lesse ambitious then was hee) began by diuers meanes to seeke after and to aspire to that principalitie. Ofwhom, though some either with the weakenesse of their owne meanes or with the threates of *Matthias* the Archduke deterred, ceased farther to seeke after it: yet were there some others, who better supported, & nothing 1607
B afraid of the Archdukes great words, laboured vnder hand to haue obtained it. For the crossing of whom, and the auoyding of farther troubles to be raised by these ambitious competitors, certaine of the nobilitie of TRANSYLVANIA gathered together at CLAVDIOPLE the 12 of Februarie, made choyce of *Sigismund Ragotsie* for their gouernour and their prince of TRANSYLVANIA, and the more to assure him of their loue and affection towards him, bound themselues vnto him by the oath of their allegiance solemnely taken in the chiefe Church there. And afterward sent messengers to the Archduke *Matthias* at VIENNA, to certifie him what they had done, and to excuse themselues thereof: who comming to PRESBVRG the 12 of March, there openly protested this election of *Ragotsie* for their prince to haue been made, not for that they were about to rebell, or to reuolt from the Emperour, whom they would alwaies acknowledge for their soueraigne lord; but for that their necessity so required,
C many of the nobilitie both of TRANSYLVANIA and of HVNGARIE gaping after this Principalitie, and going about, for the obtaining thereof, to raise new stirres and troubles. Howbeit, the same *Ragotsie* afterward doubting not to be able, without great trouble and danger, besides the Emperours displeasure, to hold the same Principalitie, of his own accord about a yeare after gaue the same vp againe, and got himselfe out of the way to SARENTVM: who was no sooner gone, but that *Gabriel Bathor* was about to haue stept into his place: vnto whom the States of TRANSYLVANIA sent word by two of the noblemen, That the free election of the Prince belonged to them, and that therefore he should not seeke by force to intrude himselfe into the Principality, but quietly to come vnto the election, and not to bring with him aboue 1000 horsemen, and 500 foot.

Sigismund Ragotsie chosen Prince of Transyluania, afterward yeeldeth vp the same principalitie againe.

D About this time the strong towne of NEVHVSE (otherwise called NEVHEVSEL) the last yere so hardly wonne by the Hungarian rebels, was againe deliuered to *Sigefrid Collonitz* for the Emperor; who shortly after comming to VIENNA, brought newes of a great number of the Turks to haue risen vp in rebellion at BELORADE, to haue rifled the towne, and to haue burnt another towne, called ALISCHRIA, downe to the ground, and so with a great prey to be gone ouer to the rebels: And also *Redeius*, *Botscay* his Lieutenant, in going to take possession of certaine lands giuen him by *Botscay*, to haue bene by his owne tenants, lying in wait for him vpon a strait passage, slaine.

Neuhusse againe deliuered vnto the Emperour.

Amongst the articles of the peace before concluded betwixt the Emperour and the Great Sultan, one was for the mutuall sending of presents one of them vnto another: With which
E presents, when as the embassadour, by the Emperour appointed for the carriage of the same to CONSTANTINOPLE, from day to day deferred to set forward, the Turkes and Tartars began to doubt, or else seemed to doubt, of the good meaning of the Christians, for the obseruing of the aforesaid peace; and thereupon began againe not onely to rome abroad into the territories of the Christians, but also caused the pledges left at BVDA for the obseruing of the peace to be hardly handled & clapt fast in prison: whom when as the Bassa of BVDA shortly after suffered againe a little to walke abroad, the proud Ianizaries were therewith so much offended, that rising in a tumult, they had almost slaine the Bassa with stones, heaping vp-on him many reproachfull words, and vnto his face calling him traytor and betrayer of his prince and countrey; one of which pledges they grieuously wounded also. Which their in-
F solencie the Bassa in some sort to chastice, and to deterre them from doing the like againe, caused certaine of them the night following to bee secretlie taken, and beeing bound to bee so cast into the riuer of Danubius. And yet shortly after they purposing to make a road vpon the Christians, to colour such harmes as they should therein doe, and to lay all the blame

The Ianizaries in mutinie against the Bassa of Buda.

blame thereof vpon the Christians, and to excuse themselues, they procured the Bassa to write vnto the Archduke *Matthias*, of great wrongs done vnto the Turkes by the Christians, when as there was no such thing at all: the effect of which letters were, That whereas it was in the articles of peace set downe and agreed, that both parties should abstaine from roades and incursions of each others countries, yet that the Christians for al that had aboue an hundred times since the conclusion of the peace made roads into diuers territories of the Turks, and slaine many of them: but especially they of LEOVEN and SETSCHIN, who (as they said) had slaine diuers Turkish marchants of PESTH, and taken from them great sums of money, as they had also taken from them of POTSEN a hundred and twenty horses, with diuers other cattell. Besides that, there were (as he said) foure Turks more by the Christians slaine, neere vnto CANISIA, and eight and twenty more taken prisoners: and that in the midway betwixt HATVVAN and BVDA fiue and twenty Turkes moe were slaine, and their horses, with all that they had beside, carried away. Which things for that they tended to the breach of the peace, he could not (as he said) but aduertise his Highnesse of, for that he thought the Christian captaines vpon the borders of their territories to be men that hated peace, and to seeke by their excursions, as heretofore they had done, so now likewise also, to disturb this good work begun, and by all means to encrease their owne priuat profit. And that therefore seeing that he and the Turks on their part wished not to attempt or go about any thing contrarie to the articles of the peace, that so likewise the Christians should containe themselues within their owne bounds, and with all speed by letters to giue him to vnderstand, whether they would keepe the peace, or not.

The effect of the letters of the Bassa of Buda to the Archduke Matthias.

The great Sultan (as is aforesaid) hauing made peace with the Christian Emperour, and now purposing to turne all his forces against his rebels in ASIA, and the Persian king (as wee haue oftentimes said) and desirous first to appease those his troubles at home, before he had further to doe with the Persian, he sent a messenger vnto the Bassa of ALEPPO, to lay downe armes, and to deliuer ouer his charge vnto another, to whom he had appointed the same; promising, that if he would shew himselfe obedient vnto this his commaund, he would not only pardon him all that was past, but receiue him into his grace and fauour also. Whereunto the Bassa answered, That he had neuer taken vp armes against his Majestie, but to be reuenged of the Bassaes of TRIPOLIS and DAMASCO, his sworn enemies; who once taken out of the way, he would not onely yeeld himselfe vnto his Majestie, but redeliuer also the tribute sent him from CAIRE and ALEXANDRIA, by him before intercepted, and (if hee so pleased to employ him) to bring great forces in his seruice against the Persian king. With which answere the Sultan not contented, shortly after sent the Visier Bassa with a great armie against the rebels into ASIA: who by his wisedome & discretion more then by force of armes hauing appeased the rebels in the lesser ASIA, and receiued certaine of the chiefest of them into his fauor, with an army of an hundred & thirty thousand men marched directly towards ALEPPO in SIRIA. Of whose comming the Bassa of ALEPPO hauing intelligence, with an armie of fortie thousand men, most part of them harquebusiers, went against him, & in a place of aduantage, not past two myles from the citie, there encountred him, and in three notable battailes one after another, withstood his whole forces. But making himselfe ready to haue encountred him the fourth time, vnderstanding of great aid comming to the Visier, from the Bassaes of DAMASCO and TRIPOLIS, he with speed retired, and returning into the citie, and hauing trussed vp his treasure, with such things as he made most reckoning of, fled into the mountaines towards PERSIA, with the greatest part of his armie yet left still following him. After which vnfortunate battell, the Visier Bassa with his armie comming vnto the city, at length by force tooke the same, and there to the terror of the inhabitants put to the sword all the garrison souldiors which the Bassa had there left.

The rebels in the lesser Asia by the Visier Bassa appeased.

The Bassa of Aleppo after three notable encounters with the Visier, flieth.

But the Bassa purposing with new forces to haue encountred with the Visier, finding himselfe, together with his better fortune, forsaken by many of his former friends and companions, thought it best at length to take his refuge vnto the mercy of the great Sultan: and so resolued, by letters requested the Visier Bassa to write in his behalfe vnto the Sultan, and so, if it were possible, to procure his peace. Which the Visier hauing easily obtained, he was by letters from the great Sultan sent for to CONSTANTINOPLE, with assured promise, that hee should

The Bassa of Aleppo by the great Sultan pardoned, and againe receiued into fauour.

A ſhould be employed in ſeruice againſt the Perſian king. Vpon receit of which letters, the Baſſa with an hundred horſe ſet forward, and comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, therein the preſence of many other of the Baſſaes humbled himſelfe vnto the Sultan; who not only kept his promiſe with him in pardoning of him, but alſo, in regard of the auncient familie whereof he was deſcended, as alſo of his great valour and faire conditions, receiued him againe into his fauour, and cauſed all the goods taken from him in SYRIA, to be againe vnto him reſtored.

The great ſultan ſeeketh in vaine by the meanes of the Tartar to make peace with the Perſian.

Now in the meane time the great Sultan had by the meanes of the great Cham of TARTARIE ſought to make peace with the Perſian king; but all in vaine: for that hee demaunded the Citie of TAVRIS, with all the prouinces before taken from him by the Perſians, to be
B againe vnto him reſtored: which the Perſian king vtterly denied, for as much as he had now by force of armes recouered the ſame, and which in former time belonged vnto his aunceſtors. At which time the ſayd Perſian king, the more to entangle the Turke, writ vnto the king of Spaine, for the turning of his forces alſo againſt the Turke their common enemie, the letters being to this effect: That though they were in religion diuided, yet that in power and in common hatred againſt the *Othoman* Empire they were conjoyned: and that hee, conſidering the greatneſſe of his power and armes; whereby he was become his neighbour in the Eaſt, hee could not but moſt entirely loue and fauour him: and that therefore he had commanded all his prouinces, as well in INDIA as in other places thereabouts, that they ſhould ſhew vnto his ſubjects all manner of courteſie, and to demaund of them no tribute.

The letters of the Perſian king vnto the king of Spaine.

C And that hee hauing by force recouered the fortreſſe of ADEN, which *Solyman* the Turkiſh Sultan had ſometime by treaſon ſurprized, he had appointed the ſame vnto the ſeruice of the Spaniſh Gouernour dwelling in GOA. And that his pleaſure was, that all the Chriſtians dwelling in his kingdom ſhould enioy the ſame libertie and priuiledges which his owne faithfull ſubiects had. And beſides declared, that hee had now for ſeuen yeares ſpace made continuall warres againſt the Turkiſh Sultan, who by treaſon had taken from him the ſtrong towne of CHIAMON, for the recouerie whereof hee had now diuers times ouerthrowne his armies. But for as much as he was determined to make no end of this warre, vntill he had driuen the Sultan out of thoſe parts of the Eaſt, and recouered the ſeat of *Iſmael*, and *Iuchell*, his auncеſtors in BABYLON and CAIRE, hee therefore requeſted him, being a king of
D ſo great power, to ioyne in league with him, and to ſend his dreadfull fleet into the Perſian gulfe, promiſing, that by ſuch meanes the *Othoman* power driuen out, he could eaſily make himſelfe Lord of SYRIA and of ÆGYPT. Laſt of all, hee reckoneth vp the preſents hee ſent him, to wit, the Images of *Iſmael*, *Iuchell*, and of *Ionas*, together with his owne, caſt in gold, and ſet with moſt rich precious ſtones and pearles; a Perſian writing table, garniſhed with faire precious ſtones, foure dogs by nature wonderfully ſpotted with red, yellow, and blew ſpots, two pieces of arras adorned with moſt precious ſtones and pearle, wherein the worthie acts of him that great *Tamberlane* were liuely to bee ſeene: foure hunters-hornes very ſmooth and richly garniſhed: twelue moſt gallant plumes of feathers of diuers colors: ſixe drinking glaſſes which could not be broken, and couch beds ſo cunningly made, as that they
E were like vnto chaires, hauing wrought in them the auncient warres betwixt *Aſcanius* and *Chiuſa* king of the Medes.

The States of Hungary about to depart from Presburg, by the perſwaſion of the Archbiſhop, there ſtayed.

Now the Emperour, for the better appeaſing of all former troubles, and the preuenting of new, and the better aſſurance of the ſtate, had about the middeſt of Auguſt called an aſſembly of the States of HVNGARIE to PRESBVRG: whither they being come, and hauing long in vaine expected the comming of *Matthias* the Archduke, by the Emperour appointed to haue beene Preſident in that aſſembly, were in the beginning of September about to haue returned home, but that requeſted by the Archbiſhop to ſtay yet fifteene dayes longer, they were contented ſo to doe, but yet vpon condition, that if the Archduke then came not, they ſhould not be bound to ſtay any longer: For why, they by letters certified of the
F attempts of the Tartars (who had requeſted to haue a place in the borders of HVNGARIE, appointed them to dwell in) were deſirous in any wiſe to haue that aſſembly of Parliament put off to a farther time, that ſo they might the better betime preuent and meet with ſuch the Tartars deſignes, whom they were loth to haue for their bad and troubleſome neigh-

The Turkes in great number ber repaire to Buda.

bours. And now the Turkes in the meane time, in hope that the peace betwixt them and the Christians would not long hold, were come to BVDA in such multitude, that the houses in the towne being not able to hold them, they were glad to set vp tents for them to lye in within the citie: for that the Bassa would not suffer them to set vp any tents abroad in the fields, lest the Christians should suspect them to be about the raising of an armie, and so to disturbe the the peace. G

The States of Hungarie depart from Presburg without any thing doing.

But the states of HVNGARIE hauing stayed full 15 daies, as the Archbishop had requested, and the Archduke not comming; made a solemne protestation before the Chapter of the Cathedrall church at PRESBVRG, that they departed from PRESBVRG, and so returned home not vpon any discontentment or contumacie, but for want of things necessarie, & other their vrgent occasions (hauing aboue 7 weeks expected the Archdukes comming, without whom nothing could be done) and yet that if it should please the Emperor by solemne summons at any time after to call another parliament, they would be readie vpon such summons giuen, to returne againe to PRESBVRG, & there to consult of all such things, as should be for the good and welfare of the Common-weale: so that nothing were propounded contrarie to the articles the yere before agree vpon at VIENNA, which they would haue in all points kept whole and inuiolate: so that if any man should go about or attempt any thing in disposing & ordering of the publike affaires contrarie to that agreement, they would not in any wise ratifie the same, although it were by the Emperor himselfe allowed: which their protestation they requested to haue registred, and sealed with the Chapters seale; and so not hauing done any thing at all for which they came, againe retnrned. H I

The Haiduckes go about to raise new sturres in Hungarie.

After whose departure from PRESBVRG the Haiduckes (men vsed to liue by their swords, and not by their labour) of all others most discontented with this generall peace, began now to raise new stirs and tumults, and dayly to grow stronger and stronger, craving aid of the Turkes and Tartars, and not of the other Hungarians, their countrie men now againe returned to their wonted alleageance vnto the Christian Emperor: a number of which Haiducks flocking to BVDA, the Bassa there with some other of the Turks captaines and commanders, entred into consultation what to do with these so fit instruments for the trobling of the Christians, and the disturbing of the peace. To entertaine them he durst not, and to cast them off he was loath; but yet purposing to vse them & to set them a worke as occasion should serue, he to prepare an enterance thereunto, by letters threatned them of COMORA, that except they better kept the capitulations and articles of the late peace, they should shortly heare of new matters. But in the meane time letters were sent from the great Sultan to the Bassa of BVDA, with charge that although the Christians were reported to encrease their strength, he should yet keep himselfe within his bounds, & to attempt nothing against them, except they should proceed to manifest force: in which case he should not faile by all lawfull meanes to reuenge himselfe. Which the Sultans mind once made knowne, the Turkes againe departed from BVDA, most part of the great ordnance that they brought with them being caried backe againe to SIGETH. K

The Bassa of Buda forbidden to make wars vpō the Christians.

An assembly of the States of the vpper Hungary and the decrees by them there made.

But the states of HVNGARIE, being returned home from PRESBVG, and againe assembled the 14 day of October, by their generall consent, decreed that TOCKAY should againe be ioyned vnto their iurisdiction; and that the great ordnance throughout all the free cities, should be remooued and carried home vnto the places whereunto they before belonged: that the Vaiuod of TRANSYLVANIA should be admonished not to seperate TRANSILVANIA from HVNGARIE: that the Bassa of BVDA should be warned for to keepe his Turkes within their owne bounds: and that the nobilitie of HVNGARIE should betime be admonished with all their force to represse the Haiduckes, and all other their enemies. L

The Haiduckes conspire against the Germanes.

Howbeit the Haiducks proceeding in their insolent outrages more than before, tooke certaine forts, and with fire and sword spoiled many places of the countrie, causing the people to sweare to be friends to them and the Turks, and enemies vnto the Germans & Wallons; and demaunding of *Humanoius* the crowne, wherewith *Botscay* had sometime been rewarded from the grand Seigniour, had a purpose to haue crowned him, or some other for their king; who for all that by a messenger sent word vnto them, that he would not at their hands accept that dignitie, but faithfully continue in his alleageance toward the Emperour. *But* M

when

A when the States of the vpper HVNGARIE were about to haue gone againſt theſe ſeditious and rebellious people to haue ſuppreſſed them; they were from ſo doing deterred by the Baſſa of AGRIA, threatning with his Turkes and Tartars to take their parts if they ſhould once take vp armes againſt them. *The Turks further the inſolent attempts of the Haiducks.*

About the ſame time ſix hundred Haiducks going to the caſtle of S. *Andrew*, and comming thither, could not be let in by the garriſon ſouldiors as they had deſired, and perceiuing them to make no reckoning of their ſeruice, could no longer hold, but openly profeſſed themſelues to become the Great Sultans ſeruants: who from thence marching to BVDNOC, tooke it by force, and ranſacked it: and ſo ſtill ſeeking after bootie, ran out towards TOCKAY;
B where by the way they were in a ſtrait by *Humanoius*, lying in wait for them, entrapped, and almoſt all ſlaine; who afterward ſent two of the Turks enſignes, taken from them to VIENNA, and to the terror of others empaled ſome of them vpon ſtakes, being brought priſoners to CASSOVIA. For which vnfortunat expedition, ſome other of the Haiducks lighting vpon two of the captaines, who by chance had eſcaped out of *Humanoius* his hands, put them both to death for the euill leading of their fellows, hanging vp the one, and with their ſwords hewing the other all to pieces. Now, by the report of ſome of the priſoners there taken it was knowne, this new rebellion of the Haiducks to haue beene raiſed by the procurement of the Baſſaes of BVDA and AGRIA, who by their meſſengers had promiſed vnto them all help. Which report to haue beene true, the euent did ſhortly after confirme: for the 27 day of
C Nouember almoſt 15000 of theſe Haiducks hauing before receiued from the Great Sultan 300000 duckats for pay, came and moſt ſtraitly beſieged FILEK, a ſtrong caſtle, the Turks ſending them great ordnance from AGRIA; vnto whom theſe Haiducks had promiſed to deliuer all ſuch places as they ſhould win. Howbeit, the euent of this ſiege anſwered not to their deſire: for *Thomas Boſnias*, captaine of FILEK, with his garriſon all of Germane ſouldiors ſo valiantly repulſed them, and the extremitie of the Winter weather ſo diſtreſſed them, that they were glad to rayſe their ſiege, and be gone. *Six hundred Haiducks intercepted by Humanoius.* *The Haiducks in their rebellion ſupported by the Turks.*

Now much about the ſame time *viz.* about the beginning of Nouember, a great fire aroſe at CONSTANTINOPLE, wherein almoſt 500 ſhops of wares with many other faire buildings were burnt, ſo that the harme there by fire done was eſteemed to amount to aboue two
D millions of gold. *A great fire at Conſtantinople.*

At the ſame time that the aſſemblie of the States of HVNGARIE ſhould haue bin holden at PRESBVRG (as is before declared) the Emperour had appointed alſo another aſſembly of the nobilitie and States of AVSTRIA to be holden at VIENNA; where after they were aſſembled; certaine articles were vnto them on the Emperours behalfe propounded for them in that aſſembly then to conſider of: as firſt, that for the keeping of the frontiers of AVSTRIA in quiet, the contribution by them graunted among themſelues the laſt yeare; ſhould this yeare following be doubled. Then, that if it ſhould fortune the enemie to attempt any thing of new againſt that prouince, that in ſtead of the horſes and money which they were wont to ſend vnto the warres, they ſhould for the ſpace of twelue months, or of the greateſt part there-
E of, as occaſion ſhould require, of their own coſts maintaine ten companies of German footmen, euery companie being three hundred ſtrong, and as many troups of German horſmen, euery troope conſiſting of an 100 horſe. And, that if for the better defence of the borders of AVSTRIA there ſhould haply need a greater ſtrength, the ſame ſhould be raiſed in no other ſort than was vſed in HVNGARIE, nor at greater charges maintained. And, that if it ſhould continue peace, theſe charges ſhould be conuerted to the payment of the ſouldiours wages: and that the States & other ſubiects of that prouince ſhould ſo much as might be, be eaſed from the trouble of ſending either of horſe or foot for the defence of the frontiers. Thirdly, that Commiſſaries ſhould be maintained this yeare alſo to attend the armie, and certaine skilfull captaines appointed for the chooſing of a fit Generall for the armie. That diligent regard
F and care ſhould be had for the prouiſion of corne and victuals for the vſe of the people in generall, as well in the time of peace as of warre. And that for as much as it much concerned the good of the Commonweale, to haue the frontiers of the countrey toward CANISIA diligently viewed, for feare of the Turkes great garriſon there ſtill lying, that therefore certaine good and expert ſouldiours, which knew thoſe places well, ſhould be *An aſſembly of the States of Auſtria, and the Emperours demaunds therein.*

choſen, who together with the deputies of the Emperour, Hungarians, and Stirians, riding about theſe confines, ſhould forthwith conſider what were beſt to be done for the ſaftie ther- G
of. In briefe, ſeeing that of the ſafetie of RAB the welfare of the citie of VIENNA and of the forts thereabouts depended, that for the repairing of the fortifications thereof, and the better ſtrengthening of the ſame, the ſumme of 4000 florens ſhould be appointed: and for the defence of the frontiers of AVSTRIA from the incurſion of the Turkes garriſon of CANISIA, 5000: and for the furthering of the buildings at NVSTORFE, 5000 mo ſhould be paied: And that thoſe who hitherto had been ſlacke in paying of their contribution mony, ſhould forthwith be enforced to pay the ſame. And alſo that it might be conſidred of, how that too much inhauncing of the value of monies might be reſtrained: that good orders might be kept: all H
the countrie cleered from the robberies of the ſoldiors, ſtragling here and there vp & downe the ſame: that the counterfeit Hungarian and Polonian mony ſhould be prohibited, as not currant: that good order might be taken for the ſtaying of the plague, which then began in many places in AVSTRIA.

The aſſembly broken vp, and nothing concluded.

Concerning which articles, when as the States there aſſembled complained, all that countrie to be with the long wars againſt the Turke, the incurſions of the rebels, and the outrages of the muntious ſoldiors, alreadie almoſt exhauſted, and miſerably bared of mony; no reſolution could then, according as the neceſſitie required, be made, but was vnto a further time deferred, and the aſſemblie broken vp.

1608 *A Diet of the Empire by the Emperour appointed at Ratisbone.*

The Emperour at the ſame time appointed a Diet of the Empire to be holden at RATISBON: wherin he hauing appointed *Ferdinand*, Archduke of AVSTRIA, to be chiefe in his place, I
he with a notable traine of ſeuen hundred horſe, and a gallant gard of footmen, came thither the eight and twentieth of Nouember, and was there by the citizens honourably receiued. Vnto which aſſemblie, when as the Deputies of the Electors, and of the other princes and cities of the Empire, were in great number come, at length the twelfth of Ianuarie diuine ſeruice being done in the Cathedrall Church, *Ferdinand* the Archduke, with his courtiers, the Emperours counſellors, and other the princes deputies being there preſent, taking horſe before the church, with a great companie of the nobilitie & princes deputies following of him, went to the Court, the citizens in their armes ſtanding on both ſides: where *Godfrey Ortelius* the Emperors Secretarie hauing in a notable Oration ſet forth the Emperours loue and af- K
fection towards the Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire, and why the Emperor himſelfe could not be preſent at this aſſemblie, as willingly he would haue bin, he propounded in his name fiue articles for them in this their aſſemblie to be eſpecially conſidered of. Firſt,

The articles by the Emperour propounded to be conſidered of in the Diet of the Empire at Ratisbone.

how the Empire might hereafter bee preſerued and defended againſt the violence of the Turks, and the dangerous rebellions by their procurement ſtirred vp in HVNGARIE, to the endangering of the whole Empire; eſpecially ſeeing that the Turks themſelues (with whom the peace was of late concluded) by their doings had heretofore more than ſufficiently declared what truſt or credit was to bee giuen vnto them: and ſeeing that it is moſt manifeſt, them therein to haue ſought for nothing elſe, than that hauing made or rather counterfeited a peace with the Chriſtians for a time, for the ſuppreſſing of the rebels, and the repreſſing of L
the inuaſions of the Perſians, they might after ſuch victorie againſt them obtayned, come better prouided, and ſtronger to ouercome the Chriſtians. Which was eaſie to bee ſeene: for that whileſt they were yet intreating of peace, they had taken STRIGONIVM, and hauing concluded peace, they ceaſed not as yet with their counſell and aid to helpe the rebels in their rebellious tumults: which was manifeſtly to be perceiued by the Haiduckes themſelus, who were not aſhamed openly to profeſſe themſelues to bee the Great Sultans ſeruants, to require cities and fortreſſes to be yeelded vnto the Sultan, and to conſpire againſt the very name of the Germanes. For the ſpeedie remedie of which miſchiefe, the Emperour had thought good, that conſideration of this point ſhould ſo be had, as that the Princes ſhould either conſent vnto a certaine ſtanding and perpetuall contribution, whereby a M
ſufficient ſtrength might alwaies be readie, wherewith to withſtand the enemies attempts: or elſe that for certaine yeares twentie thouſand footmen and foure thouſand horſe might there bee ſtill in readineſſe, to be maintayned at the common charges of the Empire, which the Emperour (need ſo requiring) might vſe againſt the common enemie. Or that if this were

A were heauie or troubleſome vnto the States of the Empire, yet at leaſt they ſhould conſent yearely to contribute ſo much money as might ſuffice for the ſuſtayning of ſuch a power. Another point of this concluſion, was about the correcting and reforming of the adminiſtration of iuſtice in the Imperiall chamber. For ſeeing that in the former aſſemblies and meetings this matter could not be fully decided, by reaſon of certaine hindrances and impediments which then fell out, and that without the due adminiſtration and execution of iuſtice no Empire could long ſtand or flouriſh, no more than the world could without the Sunne, his Imperiall Maieſtie therefore would not haue the deliberation of this ſo neceſſarie a point to be put off or referred vnto any other aſſemblie, but to be done and concluded in
B this preſent aſſembly. The third point to be conſidered of, was the warre which hath been now ſo many yeares made in the Low Countries, and the inconueniencie thereof redounding vnto the Empire. For whereas in the treatie of peace in the Low Countries (at which treatie both hee and the whole Empire ought to haue beene there preſent) for the better concluding and ending of the ſame, hee had heard the confederate princes to be now acknowledged for a free State, hee could not now any longer (as hee ſaid) forbeare, but that (ſeeing the Low Countries to be a member and fee of the Empire, and that by the auncient records of the Empire, and of the Emperours, and by many other proofes it appeareth, the Gouernours of the Low Countries to haue beene vaſſales of the Empire) he ſhould by letters which were written vnto the king of SPAINE, the Archduke *Albertus*, and the States of
C the confederate prouinces, admoniſh them, That they ſhould not proceed to doe or determine any thing in this matter, which might any way tend to the hurt or preiudice of the Emperour, of the Empire, and of the houſe of AVSTRIA. And for as much as that warre in the Low Countries had hitherto done no ſmall harme vnto the Empire, if happily it could not be agreed vpon betweene the parties, and that it ſhould happen the ſame warre to bee any longer continued, or rather againe renewed, it ſhould then be conſidered vpon, how the Empire might be ſatisfied for the great harme it had vntill this preſent thereby receiued, and how it might be from the like harme hereafter kept and preſerued. The fourth point in this conſultotion, which was to be conſidered of, concerned the coyne. For whereas it is manifeſt, that the value of the money to bee dayly more and more inhaunced and rayſed, and
D that thereby not onely the Magiſtrates in the publicke receipt, but the ſubiects alſo in generall receiued great and manifeſt harme, for as much as the price of ſuch neceſſarie things which we muſt in this life haue ordinarie vſe of, muſt of neceſſitie bee ſtill more and more encreaſed, according to the value of the money, the Emperor thought good with mature deliberation to remedie this miſchiefe in this preſent aſſembly of the Empire. The fift and laſt point which was to be conſidered vpon, was the perfecting of the Matriculer of the Empire, for the giuing vnto euery man that which of due belongeth vnto him: the perfecting of which Matriculer, the Emperour would haue in this aſſemblie to be amongſt them conſidered of.

Which articles thus propounded, there fell a great controuerſie amongſt the deputies of
E the princes concerning the manner of their proceeding in theſe matters: as whether they ſhould conſider of theſe articles in ſuch order as they were propounded, or otherwiſe. And when as many thought it beſt firſt to conſider of the article, for the reformation of iuſtice, being the ſecond article propounded to be conſidered of, and afterwards to come vnto the reſt of the articles to be afterward conſulted of: when as the two and twentieth day of Ianuarie they came againe to counſell, a writing was by the Emperours commaund read vnto them, whereby it was ſignified vnto the States of the Empire: the rebellious tumults by *Botſcay* and ſome others rayſed in HVNGARIE to bee yet by the Haiduckes continued, the Sultan himſelfe ſending of them rewards, and furniſhing them with ordnance and other things neceſſarie for the warres by the Gouernour of AGRIA, and the Baſſa of BVDA threat-
F ning all extremities vnto them which ſhould go about to reſiſt them; & then augmenting the danger which thereby might enſue vnto the empire, and eſpecially vnto the Cermane name, ſeeing that it was manifeſt thoſe rebellious Haiducks, to haue eſpecially conſpired the diſtruction of the Germanes, and to haue confirmed that their league, by drinking of an health: It was requeſted, that leauing of theſe contentions, for the manner of their proceeding, they

would turne their conſultations vnto the firſt article, and reſolue how remedie might in time be giuen vnto this miſchiefe, and how aid might be ſent vnto the Emperour againſt his enemies. G

The Deputies for the ſtates of the Empire, in the aſſemblie at Ratisbone, at variance among themſelues.

But when as in their often meetings, nothing could be concluded, by reaſon of the diuers and different opinions betwixt the Proteſtants and Catholickes, *Ferdinand* the Archduke againe calling togither the Deputies of the Electors, of the Princes, and of the Imperiall cities, cauſed it by letters to be declared vnto them, how that the Emperour not without his great griefe and ſorrow had heard, that for certaine diſſention among them they could not yet come to conſult of the articles propounded, in that aſſemblie to be by them conſidered of, but to his great griefe to be from day to day protracted: and that therefore he requeſted them, That either they themſelues would quietly end thoſe diſſentions among themſelues, or elſe ſend their differences conceiued in writing vnto the Emperour to be decided, and ſo at length to come effectually to conſult of the propounded articles. And indeed the Deputies aforeſaid had in writing before exhibited their minds concerning that point, for the manner of their proceeding, vnto the Archduke *Ferdinand*. But for as much as that writing was according to the manner of the Catholickes and the Proteſtants, of two different ſorts; the former thinking it meet to conſult of the aforeſaid articles in ſuch order as they were propounded, and firſt of all, to conſider of the contribution to be giuen againſt the Turks, and other enemies in HVNGARIE; but the other labouring firſt for the reformation of iuſtice, and the confirming of the peace of Religion, and afterward to prouide for aid againſt the forraine enemies, that ſo remedie might firſt bee prouided for inward, then for outward griefes; eſpecially ſeeing that they had no expreſſe commaundment firſt to determine of the contribution. Vnto whom the Archduke by writing againe anſwered, That he had receiued no other inſtruction from the Emperour, than that hee ſhould conſult of the aforeſaid articles, with the Deputies there preſent, in ſuch order as they were propounded: neither that it was conuenient, that the firſt article concerning contribution being neglected, they ſhould proceed vnto the ſecond, ſeeing that the enemies might eaſily, by the delay of putting of the ſame in effect, take occaſion in the meane time to doe the Chriſtians great harme. Beſides that, that hee had ſufficiently proteſted, That conſultation concerning the reformation of iuſtice ſhould in this preſent aſſemblie bee had alſo; neither that it was the Emperours mind to haue it deferred vnto any other aſſemblie. Wherefore he exhorted the Proteſtants, That they ſhould forthwith endeauour by their letters vnto the Electors and Princes, and other their ſuperiours, to obtaine leaue, that they might firſt determine ſome certaintie about the firſt article concerning contribution, that ſo giuing way to the opinion of the other partie, they might inſtantly prepare themſelues for the making of the contribution. Howbeit, this his perſuaſion preuayled nothing, by reaſon of their diſcord and diſſention about the order of their conſultation; the one part ſtill labouring for the contribution to be firſt agreed vpon, and the other part holding as hard for the reformation of iuſtice: So that *Ferdinand* the Archduke out of hope of concluding any thing that good was, not in vaine to ſpend his coſt and time any longer, the fift of May diſmiſſed the aſſemblie, and returned home, as did all the reſt of the Electors and Princes Deputies, no one article that was propounded being ſo much as once reaſoned of, but all left vndecided: ſo ſmall care was there of the common good, either for the raiſing of money for the withſtanding of the Turkes and rebels, or for the reformation of iuſtice; the neceſſitie of both, either on the one ſide or the other, ſo hardly vrged, and yet in concluſion bee neither reſpected or regarded. H I K L

The Diet of the ſtates of the empire at Ratisbone broken off, and nothing concluded.

Matthias the Archduke commeth to Preſburg.

Whileſt the Diet to no purpoſe (as is aforeſaid) was by the Archduke *Ferdinand* holden at RATISBON, *Matthias* the Archduke with a great traine following of him, came in the meane time to PRESBVRG, where he was with much ioy and triumph receiued, the garriſon ſouldiors in order ſtanding on both ſides the way as he went vnto the caſtle: *Napragius* the biſhop of RAB, with an eloquent oration welcomming of him, in the preſence of certaine of the Hungarian nobilitie, who had gone out as far as HAINBVRG to meet him, and now alſo honourably welcommed him, much reioicing at his comming. The next day the Archbiſhop and Cardinal of STRIGONIVM with a notable traine of Hungarian gentlemen came to PRES- M

A BVRG, who foorthwith receiued into the caſtle, and hauing ſaluted the Archduke, conferred with him of many things in this aſſembly to be conſulted of. In the meane time *Illiſhaſchius* that noble Hungarian (of whom we haue ſo often ſpoken) arriued there alſo with twelue coaches, ninetie harquebuſiers, and forty Hungarian horſemen going before him, and three hundred Haiduckes which had attended vpon him, being at the gate diſmiſſed. So the chiefe of the Hungarian States being come, the conſultation was begun the three and twentieth day of Ianuarie: where when as the Archduke had propounded vnto the Hungarian nobilitie, what things they were eſpecially to conſider of; it was by them anſwered, The Haiduckes before their comming out to haue determined, not one whit to depart from the articles the yere
B before propounded and agreed of at VIENNA, nor to admit any limitation at all of them: ſo that for the appeaſing of the tumults of the Haiduckes, there was no need of any new conſultation, but onely to confirme ſuch things as was then and there conſulted and agreed vpon. From which their reſolution, when as the Hungarians were not to be remoued, and being grieued with the ſcoffing at of certaine of the Clergie (thereupon refuſed in any wiſe to make their appearance, as they were commaunded, before the Cardinall in the caſtle) were about againe to depart, making a ſolemne proteſtation themſelues to bee guiltleſſe of ſuch harmes as ſhould therof afterwards enſue: it was at length on all parts agreed vpon, That the whole matter ſhould be committed vnto ten choſen out of the Hungarian counſellours, and ten moe of the counſellors of AVSTRIA, to be conſulted and determined of. By whom, being
C met all together the eight and twentieth day of Ianuarie, in the houſe of *Illiſhaſchius*; it was concluded, That ſeeing that peace and quietneſſe in thoſe countries of HVNGARIA and AVSTRIA could not otherwiſe be made, that thoſe articles and conditions, concerning which no agreement could the yeare before be made in the treatie at VIENNA, being quite left off and neglected, the reſt of the articles which were there agreed vpon, ſhould bee ſtill intirely obſerued and kept: and that it ſhould be lawfull for euerie man to haue the free exerciſe of his religion. Which thing the Commiſſioners of AVSTRIA by a ſpeciall writing there confirmed vnto the Hungarians: Whereby they declared themſelues after long and mature deliberation, to haue perceiued not only by the true relation and report of the Hungarians, but alſo by their owne experience, vnto how great inconueniences the whole kingdom of HVN-
D GARIE hath of long time beene expoſed, as well for the warres it hath had with the common enemie of the Chriſtians, as for diuers the ciuile tumults and ſeditions therein; and that therfore they not willing that ſuch harme ſhould in thoſe countries againe increaſe and grow to the infinit effuſion of Chriſtian bloud, after the articles of pacification agreed vpon at VIENNA, ſaw no other better remedie for theſe ſo great inconueniences, than that all parties ſhould ſtill hold themſelues contented with the ſame articles of pacification, concluded and agreed vpon in the ſaid aſſembly at VIENNA. And that therefore they had decreed, thoſe articles to be ſincerely and inuiolately kept: and promiſed vnto the States of HVNGARIE, to giue their aid for the defence of theſe articles, againſt all their enemies, being readie to giue good reaſon thereof before God, the Church, the Emperour *Radolph*, the Archduke *Matthias*, and his other brethren, and all the houſe of AVSTRIA, as the neceſſitie of thoſe coun-
E tries ſhould ſeeme to require: hoping alſo, that the States of HVNGARIE would reſt themſelues likewiſe in that pacification of VIENNA, and the aſſurance thereof, in all points obſeruing the ſame: and that they would alwayes giue their readie helpe and aid vnto the countries of AVSTRIA, againſt their enemies in like manner. Which things thus agreed vpon, and determined, letters of confederation were in the name of *Matthias* the Archduke, and of all as well the Eccleſiaſticall as Temporall States of HVNGARIE and AVSTRIA, to this purpoſe written, That whereas for the appeaſing and ſuppreſſing of the tumults and ſeditions which the Haiduckes, by the inſtigation of the Turks, had of late not doubted to raiſe, for the concluding of peace with the great Sultan, they were met together at PRESBVRG, & therin alto-
F gether buſied, to deuiſe how the kingdome of HVNGARIE, with the countries adioyning, might from deſtruction bee deliuered, in the Chriſtian religion preſerued, and from waſting and ſpoyling, whereunto they had hitherto been expoſed, ſaued: vpon mature deliberation had as well in the name of them that were preſent, as of them that were abſent, made ſuch a confederation and league: That if hereafter it ſhould fortune any detriment or warre

Commiſſioners appointed for the appeaſing of the new troubles in Hungarie.

Letters of confederation betwixt the States of Auſtria and Hungaria, for the maintaining of the articles of pacification agreed vpon at Vienna.

to be by any man made or done vnto the Hungarians, or the countries thereabout, for the a- G
foreſaid articles of pacification, which they had determined religiouſly to keepe, that they would forthwith, with their vnited forces, come to aid their confederate brethren, and together with them to liue or die.

With theſe letters ſigned and ſealed with the hand of the Archduke, and of the noble men there preſent, the firſt of Februarie, *Illiſhaſchius* with *George Turſon*, were ſent vnto the tumultuous Haiduckes (who had now appointed their meſſengers to bee ſent vnto the Sultan, and the Tartar Cham, to craue their aid) to diſſuade them from ſuch their purpoſe, and to perſuade them to quietneſſe; threatning them withall, That if they would not hearken vnto ſuch honeſt conditions, they ſhould altogether, and at once, bee ſet vpon and oppreſſed, by the H
whole power of the States.

The States of Enſeric cõmanded by the Archduke Matthias to be alwaies in a readineſſe againſt the Haiduckes.

The aſſembly at PRESBVRG thus ended, *Matthias* the Archduke returning to VIENNA, and forthwith calling together the States of ENSERIC, declared vnto them all that was done in the aſſembly at PRESBVRG. And for as much as that aſſembly was chiefly to that end appointed, That the kingdome of HVNGARIE ſhould not altogether bee pluckt away from the empire; and that after the reuolt therof, the greateſt harmes to be done by the incurſions and ſpoiling of the enemies, would lie vpon the countries of AVSTRIA, he aduiſed them ſo to looke vnto themſelues, and carefully to prouide for the Commonweale, as that hauing money alwayes in readineſſe to maintaine an armie, they might with all conuenient ſpeed goe to meet with the Haiduckes, if haply they would not conforme themſelues vnto the articles of paci- I
fication, but againe raiſe new broiles; that ſo they might defend and preſerue their countrey from their outrages.

The prince of Valachia dieth, whoſe widow notably preſerueth the country for her ſonne.

About the beginning of this Spring, when as *Ierome* prince of VALACHIA was dead, leauing behind him a ſonne but thirteene yeares old, the Emperour admitted him, as yet not capable of the gouernment, vnder Tutors, vnto the ſucceſſion of his heritage. Which thing the Valachians being by no meanes willing to endure, and bearing themſelues vpon the helpe of the Turks, went about to make choice of another in ſtead of their prince of late dead. For which cauſe the princes widow by letters certified *Polloſcie* her ſonne in law, of this outrage and iniury of her ſubiects: and hauing obtained of him a great ſumme of money, and therewith raiſed an armie of ten thouſand good ſouldiors went forth againſt the Valachians, and K
in open field ouercame them in ſo bloudy and terrible a battell, that hauing ſlaine fiue thouſand of the Valachians and Turks, ſhe had ouer them a notable victorie, and by that meanes preſerued the principalitie of that countrey for her ſonne.

The duke of Florence in vaine requeſted by the Turkes to ſpare their gallies.

The great Duke of FLORENCE had hitherto done great harme with his fleete vnto the Turkes in the Mediterranean ſea: for which cauſe a meſſenger about this time comming vnto him in the great Sultans name, promiſed him great matters, ſo that he would from thenceforth forbeare to hurt and purſue the Turkes gallies. Which his requeſt ſerued the Turks to no other vſe, but as it were to put oile vnto the fire. For the Duke afterward cauſed new gallies to be made, and his fleet increaſed, and therewith did more harme than formerly hee had done. L

The Haidukes refuſe to admit of the pacification made at Vienna.

Now although that after the ending of the aſſembly at PRESBVRG, *Illiſhaſchius* and *George Turſon*, had deliuered vnto the Haiduckes the articles of the pacification, and commaunded them from thencefoorth to keepe themſelues quiet, yet for all that could they not yet bee perſwaded to hearken vnto ſuch their counſell: for that they being men ſtill accuſtomed to the warres, and liuing by their ſwords, could not endure to fall to huſbandrie, and ſuch other labours. For which cauſe they of the Countrey about GYMERIC writ vnto them which dwelt in the Countrey about NVSOLL, letters to this effect: That for as much as they beeing diuers times certified of the miſerable eſtate of their neighbours, had refuſed to come to ayd them, they ſhould yet now remember how neceſſarie a thing it were, with their conioyned mindes and forces to helpe one another; for that the M
Haiduckes hauing now paſſed the riuer of Teiſe, were broken into that prouince, and were runne as farre as BVDNOC: neither were they minded ſo to ſtay, but to robbe and ſpoyle all the countrey before them, if they were not with ſpeed encountred. And the rather, for that but a few daies before they had receiued thirtie thouſand Hungarian Duckats

from

A from the Turkes, whom they now acknowledged for their lords, with horſes and other gifts to be diuided among their leaders and captaines: and moreouer, daily expected aid from the Tartars, who in great number lay about BELGRADE. Wherefore ſeeing that it could not be expreſſed, what great harme and loſſe was by the Haiducks done as well vnto the noblemen themſelues, as to the common countrey men; that they ſhould therefore thereof giue their neighbours to vnderſtand, and with all ſpeed to take vp armes againſt the ſame rebellious Haiduckes.

Not long after, about the latter end of March, proclamation was made by the commaundement of *Matthias* the Archduke, throughout all AVSTRIA, that euery man ſhould prouide himſelfe to take vp armes: the cauſe whereof men diuerſly ſuſpected: howbeit that vn-
B to this proclamation was this reaſon ioyned, That the Archduke was determined himſelfe to goe about the fourteenth of April into MORAVIA, and there to gather together all his power, as well Hungarians as Auſtrians and Haiduckes, for the warre hee was to take in hand. There were alſo letters in the Archdukes name ſent vnto the vaſſals of AVSTRIA, to giue them to vnderſtand, That whereas they were not ignorant, what, for the obtaining of peace, and defence of theſe countries, had of late been decreed at PRESBVRG, and that all the States of ENSBRIC had approued the report thereof receiued from their deputies; and ſo promiſed their helpe and aid vnto the Archduke, as if that he himſelfe would take in hand any expedition, they would joyne themſelues vnto him, and together with him to liue or die: yet that there were ſome which being more deſirous of warre than peace, did not onely not reſt vpon
C the former pacification, but gathered an armie alſo in the borders of MORAVIA, with a purpoſe to make an inroad as well into MORAVIA, as into AVSTRIA it ſelfe. For which cauſe the States of MORAVIA alſo were enforced, for defence of themſelues, to raiſe an armie, and to craue helpe from their neighbours. And that therefore ſeeing the Archduke mindfull of his promiſe for the common defence of the countrey, was reſolued to beſtow his life, and all his fortunes, and in his owne perſon to vndertake an expedition vnto thoſe places from whence the greateſt daunger was to bee feared to fall vpon thoſe countreys, neceſſitie then required, that the States themſelues alſo ſhould ſuffer nothing to bee wanting on their behalfe, but e-
D uerie one of them together with their ſeruants to ioyne themſelues vnto the Archduke, and to the vttermoſt of their power to indeuor themſelues to deliuer them and theirs from death and deſtruction. That God, in whoſe name this expedition was by them to be taken in hand, as by the louers of peace, might ſo in ſhort time make an end of all tumults; and grant vnto thoſe countries wiſhed peace and quietneſſe. And that therefore they were to be admoniſhed, that according to the tenour of the decree made at PRESBVRG, they with ſuch a number of horſe and foot as they could vpon the ſudden raiſe at a day to bee ſhortly after vnto them named, ſhould ioyne themſelues vnto the Archduke, and not to ſuffer any thing to let them in ſo doing. So that if haply any chance or ſickneſſe ſhould happen vnto their Generall, yet notwithſtanding that they ſhould ſend their power vnder the leading of ſome other man, ſeeing that the Archduke himſelfe ſpared not to aduenture his life and fortunes, and (if God
E ſhould ſee it ſo good) account it a great gaine euen to loſe the ſame, ſo that thereby he might doe his countrey good.

The States of Auſtria warned by the Archduke to prepare themſelues for an expedition to be made into Moravia.

About the beginning of Aprill the Cardinall returning from PRAGE to VIENNA, brought with him the Emperors anſwer and reſolution, *viz.* That he did ratifie & confirme all things that were done and concluded with the Hungarians and Turks, but that his will was that the confederation made betwixt the States of HVNGARIE and AVSTRIA, at PRESBVRG, ſhould bee void and of none effect. Which the Archduke proteſting, that he could by no meanes like of, or ſuffer to be done, he the fifteenth of Aprill afterwards with a great number of the Peeres, Nobilitie, and Counſellors, and a multitude of good ſouldiors, going out of VIENNA towards the monaſterie of NEOBVRG, ſet forward vpon his iourny, carying with him eight and twentie peeces of ordnance, there expecting his ſouldiors in all places leuied: by publike letters
F proteſting, That no man ſhould from his armie receiue any harme; or if that by chance any harme were done vnto any man by his armie, aſſuring his ſubiects it ſhould bee againe vnto them reſtored and recompenſed.

The Archduke Mathias preparath himſelfe for his expedition into Moravia.

But the rumor of this expedition being brought into BOHEMIA, the Nobilitie of the countrey began to aſſemble themſelues the fifteenth day of Aprill; whither when as many of the deputies

The Nobilitie of Bohemia are by the Emperour commanded to be readie in arms.

deputies of the other countries were assembled also, it being decreed, That the Nobilitie of the faithfull States there present, should with all speed returne home, and so prouide themselues and their subiects of necessarie armes, that, need so requiring, they should therewith be able to defend themselues and their countrey, the assembly was dismissed. Besides that, the Emperour himselfe carefull for all euents, caused many both horse and foot, to be brought to PRAGE, and to be diuersly billited in the citizens houses: and furthermore, the eighteenth of Aprill, by letters directed vnto certaine princes of the empire, and to certaine earles also, citizens, and other vassales of the kingdome of BOHEMIA, warned them with all speed to send aid vnto him at PRAGE. G

The Archduke Matthias with his armie cometh to Znaime in Meravia.

But *Matthias* the Archduke in the meane time marching forward with an armie of twentie thousand horse and foot, the foure and twentieth day of Aprill came to ZNAIME, a citie of MORAVIA; and was there, by the States of MORAVIA (who the day before were come thither also with foure hnndred horse) honourably receiued and brought into the citie. From thence sending out letters into the territories of BOHEMIA, and to the citie of PRAGE, he requested, That they would send out of euerie place two deputies for them, vnto the assembly to be holden at ZASLAVIA, the fourth day of May: promising withall, That hee himselfe there being present, would yeeld vnto their deputies a reason of his doings, as also what hee meant to doe hereafter. Besides that, hee by letters sent vnto the electers and other princes of the empire, declared the cause why he was enforced to make this expedition: and withall sending vnto them a copie of the agreement made at VIENNA, the fiue and twentieth day of April, in the yeare 1606, by the common consent of the Archdukes, in most friendly maner requested them, That they would not intermedle in this businesse, but rather with their counsell and aid to further the same. H I

The Emperour sendeth embassadors to the Archduke Matthias at Znaime.

But the three and twentieth day of Aprill the Emperour sent the Popes embassadors, with the embassadours of diuers other princes and States, then lying at PRAGE with sundrie of the Bohemian ministers, in embassage to the Archduke *Matthias*, still lying at ZNAIME: whom the Cardinall the next day after followed also, to make some good pacification, if it were possible, with the Archduke. But the Emperour in the meane time calling vnto him the counsellors of the old and new towne of PRAGE (contrarie to his woonted manner) most courteously with his owne hand receiued them, and giuing them thanks for the faithfull dueties by them hitherto performed, requested them, That hereafter they would continue in their like fidelitie and loyaltie also: most liberally promising vnto them all kindnesse, with the restitution of the priuiledges concerning the shutting of the gates of the citie: which libertie they had before lost in the time of the Emperour *Ferdinand.* And not long after a generall muster was taken, not onely in the citie of PRAGE, and the townes thereabouts, but also throughout all the kingdome of BOHEMIA, and three hundred musketiers appointed for the gard and keeping of the castle, vnder the commaund of Count *Solmes*, who had commission for the raising of other souldiors also. K

The Tartar Cham dyeth.

At the verie same time it was from CONSTANTINOPLE certainely reported, the Tartar Cham to haue dyed, and the Turkish Sultan hauing receiued newes thereof, to haue dismissed his sonne, whom he hitherto had detained as a pledge, and with diuers ships and gallies, to haue caused him to bee transported ouer the Blacke sea, vnto the borders of TARTARIE, there to take possession of his fathers kingdome. It was also then reported, certaine of the seditious Turkes making of a road to haue surprized SMIRNA, a rich citie of ASIA, and to haue forraged all the countrey about it farre and neere, and comming vnto MAGNESIA, a chiefe citie of that countrey, to haue had ten thousand crownes by the inhabitants offered, from thenceforth to spare the countrey thereabouts. The Persian king also at the same time notably to proceed in his wars, and to doe the Turke great harme, the Turkes and Tartars seeking in vaine to withstand him. L

The seditious Turkes raise new strifes in the lesser Asia, and spoyle Smirna with the countrie thereabouts.

Embassadors sent from the Electors of Saxonie and of Brandenburg for the appeasing of the troubles betwixt the Emperour and Matthias.

In the meane time embassadours comming vnto PRAGE from the Electors of SAXONIE and BRANDENBVRG, part of them, the ninth of May, went vnto the Archduke *Matthias* to ZASLAVIA, who still lay there encamped with an armie of fiue and twentie thousand men: of whom they requesting a truce for the space of eight dayes, for the making of a pacification betwixt the Emperour and him, and for friendly ending of this businesse, easily obtained the same, especially seeing that those princes Electors, being ioyned and bound vnto the Emperour M

A rour in a double confederation as well for their Electorſhip, as in reſpect of the kingdom of Bohemia, could not, as they ſaid, otherwiſe do, but ſend preſent aid vnto the Emperor, his neceſſitie ſo requiring; to which end they had now in readineſſe certaine thouſands of ſouldiours in the frontiers of their countries, to be forthwith ſent vnto him: The other part of theſe embaſſadours in the meane time ſtaying with the Emperor, where after the Germane manet they were well prouided of good cheere and wine.

About the ſeuenteenth of May *Matthias* the Archduke with 18000 men riſe and marched towards Prage, *Collonitz* with the reſt of the armie following him. And although that the Archduke had ſeuerely commanded his ſouldiors to abſtaine from robbing, ſpoyling, and burning of the countrey, and had diuers times ſeuerely puniſhed ſome offenders therein, by B hanging of ſome, and heading of others, yet could he by no meanes ſo reſtraine them, and keep them in, but that ſome of them would ſometimes be ſtragling abroad, and doing harm, eſpecially the Hungarians, who were ſtill running out euen as farre as the Emperors campe, and the new citie of Prage. Whom for all that the Emperors ſouldiors being then twentie thouſand ſtrong, would not meddle withall, being ſo commanded by the Emperor. Howbeit ſome of theſe ſtraglers going too farre abroad into the countrey, were by the countrey men cut off and ſlaine.

Matthias the Archduke marcheth towards Prage.

The three and twentieth day of May an aſſembly of the States of Bohemia was called at Prage, the Emperour himſelfe being there preſent, *Adam Waldſtein* carrying the drawen ſword before him. In which aſſembly the Nobilitie and States of the countrey, with one C conſent promiſed to ſpend their goods and liues in the Emperors quarrell: yet in the meane time requeſting theſe things following to be granted and confirmed vnto them, *viz.* That religion, according to the confeſſion of Bohemia & Avgvsta, ſhould inuiolately be kept, and that they which profeſſed the one, ſhould not therefore ſcoffe, or deſpiſe the other. That Bohemians only ſhould be preferred to Arckbiſhopricks, Abbotſhips, and other ſpirituall preferments. That the Archbiſhop ſhould not meddle with ciuill and political affaires. That Eccleſiaſticall offices ſhould be permitted vnto the Proteſtant miniſters, as in former time, the Catholikes in the mean time holding that they had. That the pontificiall diſpenſation in cauſes of Matrimonie, according to the decree of the aſſembly holden in the yeare 1602, ſhould be abrogated & taken away. That it ſhould not be lawfull for prieſts, and other Eccleſiaſtical D perſons, to buy lands or territories, without the expreſſe conſent of all the three States, but to hold themſelues contented with their tithes, and other their reuenues. That it ſhold be lawful for all men, in their own ground and territories, to build churches for religion, on both ſides. That Proteſtants and patrons of the Vniuerſitie of Prage, ſhould be ioyned to the conſiſtorie, as they were in the time of the Emperor *Ferdinand*. That one ſhould be choſen for Burgraue in this aſſembly. That chiefe politicall offices ſhould not be left void aboue a moneth. That vnto theſe political offices men of both religions ſhould be admitted: ſo that if the Burgraue were a Catholike, the chiefe judge ſhold be a Proteſtant. That euery man ſhould enioy his right, and that no decree ſhould bee publiſhed againſt the ſame: neither that they which were of the order of Knights ſhold be raſhly ſued, or bound to any areſt. That one of the Bo- E hemians ſhould alwaies be choſen in, to the ſecret counſell, & made acquainted with the Bohemian affaires. That euery man might haue acceſſe to the Emperor, and not all things to be done by his counſellors. That it ſhould be declared to all men, what was to be vnderſtood by the crime of treaſon. That a difference ſhould be made betwixt offences: and that no man ſhould for any light offence, together with his goods loſe his life & reputation. That the ſuits of widowes, orphans, and others alſo, ſhould with expedition be diſpatched, & not from day to day deferred. That from henceforth the father ſhould not be bound to pay the ſons debt, which he was run into without his knowledge; neither yet the ſon himſelfe. That in politicall offices men ſhould not be too much grieued with too heauy exactions. That men ſued ſhould not be ſummoned but in good tearms, and that ſuch as were in any reputation be bound vn- F to any areſt, without the hearing of their cauſe, & much leſſe be impriſoned. That the ſword vpon frowardnes or madneſſe taken out of the church of Thine, certain yeres before, ſhould be againe ſet in the former place. That Lawyers which pleaded mens cauſes, ſhould be contented with ſuch fees as were by common decrees apointed them. And laſt of all to conclude they

An aſſembly of the States of Bohemia, holden at Prage in the preſence of the Emperour.

The requeſts of the nobilitie & States of Bohemia vnto the Emperour.

they in any wise requested the Emperour that it would please him to ease the Nobilitie and G
States of BOHEMIA of these griefes, before they were compelled to answer vnto such things as were to be propounded vnto them on his behalfe. Who easily granted vnto most of these articles, those which concerned Religion onely excepted; so that the Senatours of the olde towne of PRAGE obtained the desired sword to bee againe forthwith set in the wonted place. But as for the businesse of Religion it was altogether put off and deferred vnto the next assembly to be holden at the feast of Saint *Michaell*.

Matthias the Archdukes Embassadors come to Prage.

About the end of May the Archduke *Matthias* his Embassadors hauing receiued safe conduct from the Emperour and the nobilitie of the kingdome of BOHEMIA, came to PRAGE: and being admitted into the councell of the Nobilitie, *Charles* count *Tseratin* to whom that charge was giuen, hauing in the Archdukes name first saluted the Nobilitie, caused what he H
and the rest had in charge to be before them out of a long writing in the Bohemian tongue read: which done, when as, the nobility so requiring, they were put aside, & almost an houre after were called againe, they receiued answere, That the points of the Embassage by them propounded were greater and of more weight than that sufficient deliberation could thereof in so short a time be had; and that therefore it was by the nobilitie thought meet that Commissioners on both sides meeting together in the open field neere vnto DEBRITSE should there consult of these articles, and by the consent of the Emperour and Archduke to do what they might to end the matter: Vnto which answer the Archdukes Embassadours consenting, the ninth of Iune returned againe vnto the campe. The Emperors Embassadors within two daies after with fortie coaches and an hundred horse following them vnto the place I
appointed: who oftentimes going to and fro, at length so wrought the matter on both sides, that the businesse quietly and friendly ended they were againe made friends.

Commissioners appointed for the ending of the troubles betwixt the Emperour and Matthias the Archduke.

The articles of which pacification & agreement betwixt the Emperor and the Archduke were the seuenteenth day of Iune in the castle of PRAGE openly read in the Bohemian tongue *Lichtenstein*, *Kintskie*, and other chiefetaines the Archdukes Embassadours, being there also present, in order thus:

The articles of pacification betwixt the Emperour and the Archduke Matthias.

That the Emperour refused not but that the Crowne of HVNGARIE should be deliuered into the Archduke *Matthias* his hands: and to yeeld vnto him the kingdome of HVNGARIE, and to remit vnto his subjects the oath of their allegiance before giuen vnto him, so that the Nobilitie and States of HVNGARIE should choose no other King but the Archduke. K
That in the next Diet of the Empire hee should propound vnto the States of the Empire to be considered of, what contribution they ought to make vnto the Archduke for the defence of the frontiers, if happily longer warre were to be made with the Turke. That hee should cause the writings which concerned that kingdome of HVNGARIE within the space of two moneths to be deliuered vnto the Archduke. That he should likewise also surrender vp the Archdukedome of AVSTRIA by himselfe hitherto possessed vnto the Archduke: yet so as that the Archduke should take vpon himselfe all the Emperors debt as well in HVNGARIE as in AVSTRIA, and within a yeere should cause sufficient recognizance or caution sealed with his owne hand to be deliuered vnto the creditors. That hee should cause all the letters and writings, as well concerning the vpper AVSTRIA as the nether within the same time to be deliuered vnto him; together with a copie of the priuiledges therein, vntill that deliberation might be had concerning them to be transferred vnto him also. That the Nobilitie and States of BOHEMIA should in the Emperors name ratifie and confirme the treatie held at VIENNA, for the making of the peace betwixt the Emperour, the Turkes and Hungarians. That they also should not refuse at the Emperours request, to promise vnto the Archduke a certaine succession into the kingdome of BOHEMIA, but yet with condition, so that if it should happen the Emperor to die without heires male before the death of the Archduke his brother: but if he should leaue heires male lawfully begotten and vnder age, that in that case he should onely haue the rule and gouernment of the kingdome of BOHEMIA, yet with M
certaine Bohemian Councellours joyned vnto him. That the Archduke should by writing confirme vnto the Nobilitie and States of BOHEMIA, that hee should after the vsuall maner and fashion demand the kingdome of BOHEMIA being void of a king. That he should take the vsuall oath of a king, & alwaies haue like regard of all their priuiledges as the other kings

his

A his predeceſſors had. That the States of Bohemia ſhould not gainesay, but that the Archduke might heereafter vſe the title of the deſigned king of Hvngarie. That the adminiſtration of the Marquiſet of Moravia ſhould bee graunted vnto the Archduke *Matthias* and his heires, together with the title of a Marqueſſe, vntill that after the death of the Emperour this prouince was againe to reuert vnto him which was to enioy the kingdome of Bohemia. But if it ſhould happen the Archduke to die before the Emperour, the States of Bohemia ſhould not refuſe, but that this prouince ſeparate apart, might (as ſhould ſeeme good) chuſe vnto it ſelfe a patron and defendor, vnto the death of the Emperour. That the Biſhopricke of Almits, hitherto in temporalities ſubject vnto the king of Bohemia, ſhould from thenceforth acknowledge the Archduke *Matthias* to be the gouernour thereof, leaſt there ſhould
B be a confuſion of ſuites in Moravia, the Biſhop in the meane time hauing regard vnto his owne priuiledges. That the Emperour at the requeſt of the Archduke ſhould maintaine the priuiledges of them of Silesia, and of the States of the ſix cities, and augment them alſo with new priuiledges, being reaſonable and conuenient. That for the defence of the borders againſt the Turks, the nobilitie and States of Bohemia ſhould not contribute more than hitherto they were wont; yet ſauing vnto the Archduke power & abilitie in the generall meetings and aſſemblies of the kingdome to entreat thereof, as the Emperour had hitherto had. That the titles of al the prouinces which the Emperor did now ſurrender vnto the Archduke *Matthias*, ſhould be ſtill vnto him reſerued. That the Archduke *Matthias* ſhould vtterly renounce the Countie of Tirali, and ſurrender his part thereof vnto the Emperour. That in
C the meetings and aſſemblies to come, the Archduke ſhould by all meanes endeuour, that the Emperour ſhould receiue a reaſonable yearely contribution out of thoſe prouinces which he now departed with. That all offences hitherto committed, ſhould generally bee forgiuen and pardoned, all and euery the perſons on both parties, onely *Verkauious* excepted, concerning whom, as alſo concerning his debt, the Nobilitie of Moravia had vndertaken in their next aſſemblie to take order. And that armes ſhould on both ſides be layed apart.

Which articles thus agreed vpon, and on both parts accepted of, the Crowne of Hvngarie, with the ornaments thereto belonging, ſuch as are king *Stephen* his Sword, the golden Apple, with the Croſſe of the kingdome vpon it, two paire of rich ſhooes, a very
D ancient Robe, with a royall Scepter, were by the Emperours chiefe Lieutenant carried into the campe, and there in a broad and open field deliuered vnto the Archduke *Matthias*: who with his armie in order raunged, and ſixteene thouſand horſe and foot diuided into three battaillons, after hee had receiued theſe royall ornaments, commaunded three great vollies of ſhot to be diſcharged, and afterwards royally feaſted the Emperors embaſſadors. Which pacification thus made, many out of the Archdukes campe, but eſpecially the Hungarians, went into the citie of Prage, there to buy things neceſſarie; and many came alſo out of the citie to ſee the Archdukes campe. But in the meane time certaine inſolent ſoldiors hauing by night broken vp certain ſhops of the Iews, and caried out of them much rich wares, were the cauſe of great ſtirres and tumults in the citie, inſomuch that diuers of the ſouldiors
E were therefore caſt into priſon.

The crowne of Hungarie deliuered vnto the Archduke Matthias.

The firſt of Iuly king *Matthias* riſing with his armie, departed from before Prage, taking his way with his chiefe counſellors towards Lintze, and diuiding his armie into three parts, that ſo they might the more eaſilier paſſe through thoſe countries home. After the riſing of which armie, a certaine noble Bohemian and a good ſouldiour, called *Cottouits*, vnto whom the Hungarians and Haiduckes had in this expedition done great harme, with ſix hundred harquebuſiers and a number of countriemen went foorth to a place called Partovitse, where hauing cut off the paſſage, and cut downe trees croſſe the wayes, that none might that way conueniently paſſe, hee with ſuch furie in a place of aduantage charged the Hun-
F garians, comming that way, that hauing ſlaine about nine hundred of them, ſome others were alſo carried away priſoners, with a great bootie of horſes, waggons, and other goods. With which deed the Hungarians grieued, trod downe the corne as they went, and began to ſet fire on the villages and houſes in the countrie thereabouts. But the newes thereof being brought vnto the King, he forthwith by *Herbenſtein*, Generall of the horſemen, commaunded the Hungarians and Haiduckes not only to deſiſt from this their inſolencie,

King Matthias departeth with his armie out of Bohemia.

The Hungarians and Haiaucket by Cottouist ſlaine.

but themſelues alſo, vpon a great penaltie, to helpe to quench the fires by them raiſed. G

King Matthias entreth into Hungarie, and is royally receiued into Vienna.

In the meane time the comming of K. *Matthias* being reported at VIENNA, great preparation was there made for the receiuing of him and bringing of him into the citie, according to his royall dignitie: who the 14 of Iuly toward night being come thither, with the Archduke *Maximilian* his brother, & 3000 horſe, the Archbiſhop of HVNGARIE, who with Count *Trautſamius* and many other the Emperors counſellors and ſeruants went out of the citie to meet him, and there amidſt eight enſignes of Germane ſoldiors, and 1500 horſmen, as it were ſet in order of battell, receiued him with a long & eloquent Oration, as did afterwards *Trautſamius* in the name of the States of AVSTRIA, the emperors counſellors alſo honorably welcomming him. Which done, mounting againe to horſe, the king, with the Archduke *Maximilian* his brother, ſtayed vntill that two troupes of the horſemen of VIENNA (each of them conſiſting of 200 horſe) were all entred into the citie; and afterward, 1500 of *Bucheime* his horſemen and the aforeſaid eight enſignes of Germanes going before, and the Emperours counſellors following them, the king himſelfe, with the Archduke his brother, & all his train, ſet forward, and paſſing ouer the bridge, whereon three triumphall arches were moſt ſumptuouſly erected, he was by 3000 citizens of VIENNA, gallantly apparelled and armed, with much thundering of the great ordnance and vollies of ſmall ſhot, moſt magnificently receiued, diuers other triumphes and ſports, to manifeſt the ioy of the people, being there made alſo; which for breuitie ſake we paſſe ouer. But being gone a little further, he was by the Senators of VIENNA on horſebacke receiued vnder a rich canopie, borne vp by ſixe of the auncienteſt of the ſaid Senatours, and ſo brought to S. *Stephens* church: whither hee was no ſooner come, but that lighting from his horſe, he was there receiued by the whole Clergie, and vnder a canopie brought into the Church: where, after Seruice done, hee was with like triumph and magnificence, through diuers other triumphall arches, brought to the caſtle, the great ordnance on all ſides ſtill thundering off from the caſtle, the walls, and bulwarkes of the towne. H I

But theſe triumphes and ſolemnities ended, ſhortly after when as they began to conſult about ſuch things as concerned the good gouernment of the kingdom of HVNGARIE, and the crowning of the king, and that the Proteſtant States of AVSTRIA in many places began to exerciſe their religion according to the manner of the Confeſſion of AVGVSTA, and that the Miniſters began openly to preach in the Churches there, *Leopold* the Archduke and Biſhop of PASSAVIA comming to VIENNA, with *Melinus* the Popes Nuntio (but a little before come to PRAGE) with Cardinall *Forgatſius* and the Biſhop of VIENNA with earneſt and importunate ſoliciting of the king, obtained from him a commandement, That that exerciſe of religion ſhould be againe abrogated, the churches ſhut, & publike preaching forbidden. Which thing forthwith brought forth new ſtirs and troubles in AVSTRIA. For the Proteſtant States forthwith calling a counſell among themſelues, by generall conſent refuſed by oath of loyalty and allegeance to bind themſelues vnto the new king, vntill they had of him obtained the libertie for the free exerciſe of their religion; and combining themſelues together, reſolued euen with the loſſe of their liues and goods to maintaine the free preaching of the Word, and the exerciſe of their religion, according to the Confeſſion of AVGVSTA, and to that end commanded all their ſubjects and tenants to be readie in armes, that need ſo requiring, euery thirtieth man, tenth, or fift might be preſt to come forth vnto the wars. But hauing ſent a ſupplication vnto the king, whereunto 180 of the nobilitie had ſet their hands, & receiuing no anſwer, but that they ſhould deſiſt from their purpoſe, and without delay to make their appearance to take the oath of their allegeance vnto the king, they forthwith the 14 of Septemper going to HORNE, by letters ſent vnto the reſt of the Roman Catholike ſtates, proteſted themſelues to be cleare before God and the whole world of all the euils and miſchiefes that were afterward to enſue, if thoſe ſtates not regarding the appeaſing and ending of thoſe troubles, or the ſafety of them their countrimen, ſhould take their oath of allegeance vnto the king. And ſo forthwith raiſing an army, leaſt vpon the ſuddain they ſhould be at HORNE oppreſſed, they began by al means to prouide for their affaires. But the report thereof comming vnto the ſtates of BOHEMIA and MORAVIA, their neighbours, they were from them giuen to vnderſtand, that they would become interceſſors for them vnto the king, and yet not to be wanting vnto them at their need, as occaſion ſhould require. K L M

The Proteſtant States in Auſtria require to haue the free exerciſe of their religon granted vnto them.

The Proteſtant States of Auſtria refuſe to take their oath of allegeance vnto the king vntill they might be ſecured of the free exerciſe of their religion.

In

A In the meane time letters were brought from CONSTANTINOPLE to VIENNA, declaring king *Matthias* his embaſſadors (hauing audience with the great Sultan) to haue in an eloquent Oration on the kings behalfe promiſed religiouſly to keepe the peace, of late made betwixt him the *Othoman* Emperour and the Hungarians: and afterward in the kings name to haue offered his preſents vnto the Sultan, and he in the preſence of his chiefe Baſſaes to haue receiued them. But when he came to requeſt the gouernment of TRANSYLVANIA, he would in no wiſe thereto conſent, but gaue the ſame to *Gabriel Bathor*, with commaundement vnto the Baſſa of BVDA for the eſtabliſhing of him in this Principalitie.

Preſents ſent vnto the great Sultan from king Matthias.

About the beginning of October, the Counties of TRAVTSAME and FVRTSENBVRG were
B from K. *Matthias* ſent vnto the Proteſtant States at HORNE, and ſhortly after them, *Maximilian* the Archduke followed alſo: who although they with moſt glorious promiſes ſought to appeaſe them, and by all meanes to draw them to take the oath of their allegeance, yet could they with them no whit preuaile, without granting of them the free exerciſe of their religion. But the 16 of October the Catholike ſtates not expecting the conſent of the Proteſtant ſtates at VIENNA, tooke the oath of allegeance vnto *Matthias* the new king of HVNGARIE, the great ordnance in the meane time thundring off, with drums and trumpets in euery place of the citie ſounding, and the reſt of the day being with great feaſting, triumph, and ſolemnitie ſpent.

Matthias ſendeth vnto the Proteſtant States at Horne

The Catholicke States take the oath of allegeance vnto king Matthias.

K. *Matthias* hauing thus at VIENNA receiued the oath of allegeance of the Catholiks, ſhortly after departing thence, the 22 of October comming to PRESBVRG, was there by the nobi-
C litie of HVNGARIE receiued & brought into the citie with 10000 ſoldiors: which ſtates afterwards, *viz.* the 6 of Nouember, offered in writing vnto the king certaine articles, whereof they deſired to be by him aſſured: moſt of which articles were drawn out of the pacification made at VIENNA the 23 day of Auguſt, in the yeare 1606, the chiefe effect wherof was this: That the free exerciſe of religion ſhould be permitted vnto all men in all the cities & towns of HVNGARIE, not ſo much as that citie excepted wherein the K. ſhould be reſident: That no German captaine ſhould be ſuffered in any the ſtrong forts of HVNGARIE, but that the ſtrong townes of RAB, COMORA, VIVARIA, and others ſhould be committed vnto the gouernment of naturall Hungarians borne: That the crown of HVNGARIE ſhould ſtill be kept in HVNGARIE, and committed to the keeping of temporall men: That firſt and before all other things a Count Palatine ſhould be choſen: That the K. himſelfe ſhould alwaies reſide in HVNGARIE,
D or if not, that the Palatine ſhould in his abſence haue ful power, with the counſellors of eſtate of HVNGARIE, to determine & conclude of all things, & that the K. ſhould therwithall hold himſelfe contented: That no publike office ſhould be beſtowed vpon any, but vpon ſuch naturall Hungarians as had of their countrie well deſerued, nor permitted vnto any for mony: That no Ieſuits ſhould be ſuffred in the kingdome, neither that Eccleſiaſticall men ſhould be ſo much fauoured as formerly they had bin: That officers ſhould not be bound to giue account of the adminiſtration of their offices, but before the treaſurers of PRESBVRG, being naturall Hungarians borne: That from henceforth mony ſhould not be caried out of the kingdome, as hitherto it had bin: That the Palatine being dead, the K. ſhould within a yeare chuſe another, the chiefe Iuſtice in the meane time after the old maner ſupplying his roome.

King Matthias goeth to Preſburg.

Articles by the Hungarians preferred vnto king Matthias at Preſburg.

E The Proteſtant States of AVSTRIA had a little before ſent their embaſſadors vnto the nobilitie and States of HVNGARIE, then gathered together at PRESBVRG, with requeſt, that foraſmuch as they could not by any intreatie obtaine of the K. the free exerciſe of their religion, aſwel withing their cities as without, & that very neceſſitie had driuen them by force of arms to ſeeke for the ſame, that they would by ſending of them men, affoord them ſuch aid as was vnto them due by the former pacification made at VIENNA in the yere 1606. Which troubles of AVSTRIA the nobilitie and States of HVNGARIE deſiring to haue appeaſed, ſent *George Turſon* & ſome others with letters of interceſſion in their behalf vnto the Archduke *Maximilian:* which when they had deliuered vnto him, they receiued from him this anſwer, that K. *Matthias* neuer thought to diſturbe the common quiet of that countrie, or to attempt any thing a-
F gainſt the priuiledges therof, granted by the emperor *Maximilian* of happie memory: but to grant vnto the cities the libertie of religion, he could by no means, partly in reſpect of conſcience, partly for the danger that might therof enſue from the Pope & the K. of SPAINE, & yet neuertheles, that he would promiſe to ſuffer & tollerate the free exerciſe of religion without the cities, and in the beſtowing of the publike offices to haue no reſpect of religion: yet with

The Proteſtant States of Auſtria craue aid of the nobilitie and States of Hungarie.

this condition, that they ſhould lay downe armes, ſubmit themſelues vnto the king, acknow- G
ledge their fault, and craue pardon for the ſame; for that in ſo doing the States ſhould happily preuaile more then by force of armes.

The Proteſtant ſtates of Auſtria by the Hungarians aduiſed to lay down armes and to ſubmit themſelues vnto the king.

With which anſwer, ſeeing no better could be got, the Hungarian embaſſadors going vnto the Proteſtant States of AVSTRIA, began by diuers reaſons earneſtly to perſuade them to ſubmit themſelues vnto the king. If the Hungarians ſhould (as they ſaid) giue aid vnto them of AVSTRIA, they ſhould in ſo doing, in ſtead of helping of them, but doe them more harme; for that the Hungarian power could not be brought into AASTRIA, but to the vtter deſtruction thereof. That the league betwixt the Hungarians and them of AVSTRIA was a generall league, and concerned as well the Catholiques as the Proteſtants. That the Chriſtian religion was neuer with the ſword planted or defended, Chriſt himſelf ſaying thē to be happy which H
therfore ſuffer perſecution, & commanding *Peter* to put vp his ſword into his ſcabberd. That it was an eaſie matter for euery man to raiſe ſtirs and tumults, but that again to appeaſe them was a farre harder matter. That by the taking vp of armes, the free exerciſe of religion could not be furthered or prouided for, it being rather dangerous, leſt the contrary part preuailing, it ſhould be vtterly ſuppreſſed. That by this meanes HVNGARIE it ſelfe ſhould be expoſed to many dangers, for that not only new ſtirres might vpon this occaſion by the ſubjects thereof be raiſed, but other forrain princes take vp arms againſt it alſo; the Emperor by force of arms ſeeking for his right, & the Turkiſh Sultan by a new inuaſion going about to bring the ſame vnder his ſubiection: and telling them farther, the Archduke to haue promiſed to take good order for all things, ſo that they would lay downe armes: and that the clemencie and bounty I
of thoſe princes being knowne, they were not to doubt, but that they would indeed performe what they had in word promiſed: and that the Hungarians could not now do or attempt any thing againſt the king, but that if it ſhould happen, that theſe two Archdukes being dead without heirs male, the gouernment of theſe two prouinces ſhould come vnto the Archduke *Ferdinand*, that then they ſhould haue more cauſe to help them of AVSTRIA againſt him. MORAVIA they ſaid to be a free countrey, and yet the king to haue thereunto giuen no more aſſurance for the libertie of religion, more then his bare promiſe. Wherefore ſeeing that both the fortune and chance of warre was doubtfull, and that war was not without the great expence of mony to be maintained, that they were of opinion, it to be beſt for the Proteſtant States of AVSTRIA to lay downe armes, and by way of requeſt to ſolicite their cauſe with the king. K

Illiſhaſchius choſen Palatine of Hungarie. Matthias at Presburg crowned king of Hungarie.

In the meane time, the griefes whereof the Hungarians complained being taken away, and al controuerſies happily ended, *Illiſhaſcius* was by a general conſent choſen to be Palatine, & *Matthias* the 14 of Nouember openly proclaimed king of HVNGARIE, and the 19 of the ſame month in *S. Martins* church at PRESBVRG in this manner crowned: Firſt, the royal crown was in a ſtately chariot caried out of the caſtle vnto the church, with a great number of the counſellors & nobilitie of the kingdome of HVNGARIE attending the ſame; in which chariot were alſo caried ten enſigns, with the armes of the kindome in them frilled vp: foure of the Hungarian counſellors taking it out of the chariot in a little chiſt couered with cloth of gold, and ſo carying of it into the chancel of the church. After which, K. *Matthias*, together with the Archduke *Maximilian* his brother, followed on horſeback, both attired in Hungarian apparell, and ſo going into the chancell, there ſtaied about halfe an houre, vntil that he was by two biſhops L
brought forth vnto the altar, before whom ten of the Hungarian nobility caried the ten aforeſaid enſignes: after whom followed the Palatine with the Crowne, *Endeodius* with the royall ſcepter, *Forgatſie* with the Apple of the kingdome, *Turſo* with K. *Stephens* ſword, *Tſechius* carrying the Pax (as they call it,) *Budian* the Croſſe, the Cardinall *Forgatſie* ſaying Maſſe, with diuers biſhops & prelats helping of him, by whom the king was at the beginning of ſeruice annointed with oyle: where, while the Epiſtle and Goſpell were in reading, the Cardinall ſet the crowne vpon the kings head, al the people crying out, *Long liue* Matthias *the king of* HVNGARIE. But the king with the crowne vpon his head taking a drawn ſword out of *Sigefrid Collonitz* the Marſhals hand, thrice brandiſhed it acroſſe ouer the clergy mens heads, and receiued M
the ſacrament at the Cardinals hand. The Maſſe being ended, hee by an high way, couered with cloth, going in his royall robes from *S. Martins* church vnto the bare-foot Friers church, as he went cauſed mony to be caſt abroad among the people. In which church, after the firſt chapter of the Goſpel of *S. Iohn* being read, he made 28 knights. Frō thence the king with the

crowne

A crowne yet on his head, and in his ſtately robes, went out of the citie at *S. Michaels* gate, and there on horſebacke was brought vnto an high ſtage couered with cloth, whereon hee was ſworne vnto the Hungarians as their king, and they vnto him as his ſubiects: And afterward thrice mounting vp to horſe vpon a little hill made for that purpoſe, and ſo down again, and thrice brandiſhing his ſword acroſſe, he returned backe againe into the caſtle, where hee with *Maximilian* the Archduke, Cardinall *Forgatſie*, the Popes Nuntio, and the Palatine ſat downe at one table, the reſt of the Hungarian nobilitie, to the number of 70, ſitting down at ſix other tables, and ſo dining with great mirth; the Haiducks and common ſort of people being there bountifully feaſted alſo: where many of them, in ſcrambling for the money that was caſt a-
B broad, and in taking vp of the cloth from the ſcaffold, hauing their hands and fingers cut off, and ſo lamed, caried from thence the wofull remembrance of that was there then done.

The ſolemnitie of this coronation thus paſt, K. *Matthias* thought it good for him yet for a time to ſtay at PRESBVRG, vntil that the new building in the caſtle was ended, which the nobilitie of HVNGARIE had appointed for the keeping of the Crowne of HVNGARIE, to the intent that he himſelfe might ſee the ſame, with other the royall ornaments, put thereinto, and ſealed vp with his owne ſeale: he in the meane while labouring to appeaſe diuers contentions, and to place fit men again in the great offices of the Commonweale: for that the Hungarians would by no means ſuffer the Germans to enioy any of the ſame: for which cauſe many of the chiefe officers, men of great authoritie, were diſplaced; and amongſt them, *Sigifrid Collonitz* alſo, a man who had moſt wel deſerued of the kingdom of HVNGARIE: howbeit, ſhortly after
C he by the counſel of *Maximilian* the Archduke was by the Hungarians themſelues (repenting them of that they had done) not only reſtor'd vnto his former offices, but had by them (& that not without his iuſt deſert) euen greater preferments offered him alſo: ſo mutable a thing the iudgement of the common people is. Bnt *Illiſhaſcius*, now the Palatine of HVNGARIE, the 28 day of Nouember talking with the K. *Matthias*, at large & earneſtly entreated with him in the behalfe of the Proteſtant ſtates of AVSTRIA; eſpecially for that the other Proteſtant ſtates of HVNGARIE ſeemed now in their behalfe to be much moued alſo; and the Morauian embaſſadors openly at the ſame time proteſting, that their ſtates could in no wiſe forſake them, their friends the ſtates of AVSTRIA, if their need ſo required. And albeit that both the Elector of SAXONIE, and other princes of the empire, were become earneſt interceſſors alſo vnto the K. for
D them, yet the Popes Nuntio ſo hardly withſtood them, as nothing could as then be granted.

Illiſhaſcius and others in vaine intreat for the ſtates of Auſtria

About the beginning of December the king returning again from PRESBVRG to VIENNA, about the 16 of December the Proteſtant States of AVSTRIA at length ſent *Erneſtus* the free Baron of LANDAV, *Maximilian Polheime*, *Sebaſtian Grobner*, *Charles Forberger*, *Pilgram Sitſendorff*, and *Chriſtopher Buchner*, their embaſſador vnto the king, to bring them anſwer wherunto to truſt: who the 27 of December receiued anſwer, That they ſhould hold themſelues contented with ſuch anſwer as they had before receiued, & to ſubmit themſelues to the K. pleaſure, or els to do what they thēſelues ſaw good. With which anſwer they returning, the ſtates forthwith began to leuie new forces, and to perſuade their ſouldiours, that mindfull of their oathes, they ſhould faithfully ſerue whither ſoeuer and againſt whomſoeuer they were led.

The ſtates prepare themſelues for war.

E And now a great army of the Proteſtant ſtates of AVSTRIA lay in the villages about CREMBSA and SPAINE, ſo that thoſe two towns were thoght to be in great danger of them: for the ſtrengthening of which places, *Bucheime* was by the K. ſent thither with 1500 horſe & certaine pieces of great ordnance, & an Edict withall publiſhed the 10 of Ianuary, charging the ſtates to be preſent at VIENNA the 21 day of the ſame month, to take the oth of their allegeance to the K. Howbeit, they moſt ſtifly ſtil refuſed ſo to do, or to remit any thing of that which they had before required: inſomuch, that *Maximilian* the Archducke, who hitherto had not a little labored in this cauſe, was quite out of hope to bring them to any conformitie, or make any good end therof. In the mean time certaine of *Bucheime* his horſmen on the kings part being about to haue taken vp a place, ſuch as they thought conuenient for thē to lodge in, had like to haue
F bin diſapointed of the ſame by the horſmen of *Gerrane*, on the ſtates ſide. About which matter *Bucheime* comming forth with 7 troups of horſmen, & *Gerrane* but with 3 troupes of horſe, and 3 companies of foot, there was betwixt them an hot skirmiſh for the time fought the 13 of Ianuary: in which skirmiſh 100 of *Bucheime* his horſmen were ſlain, but of *Gerrane* his men not ſo many, they hauing the aduantage of the ground, & ſo therwith in the skirmiſh holpen

1609

An hot skirmiſh.

both for the defence of themſelues and the annoying of their enemies. Wherof the king ha- G
uing knowledge, and therewith much mooued, beſide the aforeſaid edict, cauſed another to be proclaimed at VIENNA, againſt ſuch ſoldiors as ſerued the Proteſtants; proſcribing them all, and pronouncing them rebels, except before the 21 day of Ianuarie, they laying downe armes, departed out of the Proteſtants campe. Howbeit, the Proteſtant ſtates were ſo far from diſmiſſing their forces, as that they with new ſupplies ſtrengthened the ſame: and hauing taken an hil not far from HALLENBYNNE, and from thence diſcharging three tire of 20 pieces of great ordnance, ſtrucke a great feare and terror into the minds of the kings ſouldiors within the towne.

The States of Morauia make interceſſion for the Proteſtant States of Auſtria.

About this time alſo the ſtates of MORAVIA (that nothing might on their part be wanting H
for the making of an attonement betwixt the king and the Proteſtant ſtates of AVSTRIA) ſent ſome of their embaſſadors vnto thoſe ſtates at HORNE, and otherſome vnto the king at VIENNA: who hauing acceſſe vnto the king, declared vnto him the ſtates of MORAVIA, from whom they came, to be earneſtly importuned by the Proteſtant ſtates of AVSTRIA, to ſend them aid according to the agreement made with them the yere before: and told him moreouer, that this maner of his proceeding tended not vnto peace and quietneſſe, but rather vnto the trouble and deſtruction both of the kingdome and of all the other prouinces to him belonging: all that error, the ground of thoſe troubles (they ſaid) to depend of a peruerſe interpretation or miſconſtruing of words, rather than of the matter it ſelfe, ſo that it might by men deſirous of peace eaſily be compoſed and ended. And that therfore the requeſt vnto his Maieſtie was, I
That he hauing regard not onely vnto the good & welfare of his prouinces and ſubiects, but euen of himſelfe and of his honor alſo, would of his clemencie & goodnes vouchſafe to giue remedie vnto the preſent danger, and auert the miſerable calamities now hanging ouer them, and euen readie to fall vpon their heads: The Proteſtant ſtates (they ſaid) to be content to put the controuerſie to be decided and compoſed by certaine graue and wiſe men, to be choſen arbitrators on both parts; yet with this condition, that for the ſpace of 14 daies no hoſtilitie ſhould on either ſide be vſed: that the inhabitants both aboue and beneath AMISVM ſhould be compriſed within this truce: that ſuch as were kept in durance for their religion, ſhould be ſet at libertie: and that all high waies and paſſes ſhould be from all ambuſhes and other dangers cleared. Vnto which their requeſts the king condeſcending, gaue leaue vnto the ſtates of K
MORAVIA, vpon the moſt equall conditions they could deuiſe, to compoſe & end all matters: who ſo laboured in this buſineſſe betwixt the king and the Proteſtant ſtates of AVSTRIA, that at length, *viz.* the 12 of March, a pacification was made betwixt the king & them his ſubiects, *Leopold* the Archduke, *Melinus* the Popes Nuncio, the biſhop of VIENNA, & other great men of the contrary religion and faction, ſeeking in vaine to haue letted the ſame: the chiefe articles and points of which pacification were theſe: That the nobility in their caſtles & towns, as alſo in their houſes in the cities, ſhould for themſelues and their people haue the free exerciſe of their religion: That the free exerciſe of preaching might be vſed in the three churches at ISERSDORF, TRIHELSVINCEL, and HORNE: That the other churches ſhut vp, might againe be opened by three of the Romiſh and three of the reformed religion, and the free exerciſe of L
religion in them vſed: That Couuſellors and other publike officers ſhould from thenceforth indifferently be choſen of men of both religions; but that ſuch offices as were hereditarie ſhould ſo ſtill remaine: That the elections of magiſtrates and other publike officers in towns and cities ſhould from thenceforth be made by the magiſtrats & citizens themſelues, and not to be nominated from the Court, as hitherto they had bin: That no church ſhould hereafter be ſhut againſt either part, but their owne churches to be left vnto them both, quietly to vſe: That the townesmen and citizens in their townes and cities ſhould from thenceforth haue power to make choice of their miniſters & preachers: and that for them it ſhould be lawful to viſit the ſick, & to adminiſter vnto them the Lords Supper: That the oath of allegeance ſhold be taken of them of the reformed religion, in like manner as it had bin before taken of them of M
the Romiſh, but yet not with the ſame ceremonies of the Romiſh church: all vnion and confederation with them to be had, to be taken away: that all grudging hatred, & quarrel ſhould be on both ſides forgiuen, & for euer forgotten: *Wolfgang* of HOFFKIRCH, *Volſogius* & others remoued & put from their offices, for not taking the oath of allegeance, being again receiued into fauour, and reſtored into their places: That it might be lawfull for the townes and cities

The articles of the pacification in Auſtria.

aboue

A aboue AMISVM to haue the free exercise of the reformed Religion in their suburbes and hospitals

It was not long after this pacification so made, but that king *Matthias* the seuenteenth of May going to LINTZE with three hundred horse, was there with eight troupes of horsemen, and fifteene companies of foot, by the States sent foorth to meet him, most honourably receiued, and by three triumphal arches brought into the citie; where hee receiued of the states of the religion, the oath of their obedience: which with much ioy, triumph, and feasting, performed, he the seuen and twentith day of the same moneth againe returned to VIENNA. The aforesaid states of AVSTRIA in the meane time with great zeale continuing the free exercise
B of their Religion at HORNE, a great multitude of people daily resorting vnto the Sermons there made: they of the Romish religion much grieuing and fretting thereat. The king himselfe also being come to VIENNA, put diuers of the Romane Catholiques out of their Offices, and placed others of the reformed religion in their roomes, to the great discontentment of many.

The states of the reformed religion in Austria take the oath of obedience vnto king Matthias.

About this time the Bassa of AGRIA, notwithstanding the peace, had for the summe of twentie thousand crownes before hand payed, secretly compacted with one *Andrew Drake*, to haue the strong towne of FILEK in the vpper HVNGARIE, deliuered vnto him. Which the traitor had intended (as he himselfe confessed) to haue performed, by setting of the house wherein he himselfe dwelt, by night, on fire: vnto the quenching whereof the garrison soul-
C diours resorting, his purpose was in the meane time to haue secretly let in the Turkes, and so to haue deliuered the towne into their hands. But this his so wicked a purpose in good time discouered, and by him confessed, hee was therefore, as hee had well deserued, aliue cut into foure pieces: a iust reward for his foule intended treason. The Bassa of BVDA also, contrarie to the treatie of the peace, about the same time went about to haue exacted the oath of alleageance of aboue foure hundred countrey villages of the Christians, being not comprised within the foresaid treatie. But as the Turks for their part were secretly plotting how to encroach vpon the Christians, and to do them harme; so the Haiducks on the other side, in great numbers gathered together in the vpper HVNGARIE, began here and there to molest and trouble the Turkes, vntill they were by their superiours commaunded to desist from so doing,
D for disturbing of the peace.

The Turks seeke secretly to encroach vpon the Christians, and the Christians seeke againe to annoy them.

Now about this time also *Illishaschius*, the countie Palatine of HVNGARIE, died at VIENNA, a man much beloued of the Hungarians his countrymen, and now by them no lesse lamented for: whose dead bodie was with great honour afterward conueied from VIENNA vnto his owne territorie in HVNGARIE, and there with all funerall pompe buried with his ancestors. In whose stead *George Turson* was afterward by the generall consent of an hundred and fiftie of the Hungarian nobilitie, chosen Countie Palatine of HVNGARIE, and so with the vniuersall and solemne acclamations of the people saluted.

Illishaschius the Palatine of Hungary dieth.

And now the troubles for religion were scarcely wel ended in AVSTRIA (as is aforesaid) but that the like, or rather worse, began forthwith, euen for the same quarell, to arise in BOHEMIA,
E the Hussites (as they call them) most earnestly importuning the Emperour for the free exercise of their religion, or rather for the taking away of certaine grieuances done to their religion: and the Romane Catholiques euen at the same time, leauing nothing vnattempted, which might serue to bring them of the Religion into hatred with the Emperour, and others sitting at the helme of the gouernement of the estate, and so to frustrate whatsoeuer the Emperour had in the generall assembly of the States, the last yeare graunted vnto them of the religion, for the free exercise and aduauncement thereof. The composing of which controuersie (tending vnto the rending in sunder of the whole kingdome) when as the Emperour had referred vnto certaine of his chiefe Counsellors, and they altogether fauouring the Romane Catholiques, would giue them of the religion no certaine answer whereon to rest; they there-
F with much discontented, as out of hope to bee by them relieued, and in great feare to bee by their aduersaries, as enemies vnto the state, oppressed, laid their heads together, and after good deliberation taken, what were best for them to doe, both for the safetie of themselues, their wiues, children, and religion: they by a generall consent, of themselues appointed the fourth of May to hold a generall meeting of them of the religion, in the new court at PRAGE, there

New troubles for religion arise in Bohemia.

The States of the religion appoint an assembly of themselues to be holden in the new Court at Prage.

there to consult of all matters concerning the businesse of religion. And yet in the meane G
time openly in parliament protesting by the mouth of *Wenceslaus Bodouitsius*, a Baron of Bo-
HEMIA, Them to haue appointed this assembly for the Emperours good, and for the com-
mon quiet of the whole realme; as also for the better informing of the Emperour of all mat-
ters: and to prouide that the Emperour and the kingdome might not through the meanes
and persuasions of those his euill counsellors be brought into extreme perill and danger. Im-
mediately after, the *S*tates of the Religion with all speed dispatched their embassadours vnto
king *Matthias*, the Elector Palatine, the Duke of SAXONIE, and the Duke of BRVNSVVICK,
to request them, by their intercession to become mediators for them vnto the emperour, for
the obtaining of the free exercise of their Religion, which in all points agreed with the Con- H
fession of AVGVSTA, and which long before was exhibited vnto *Maximilian* the Emperour,
and by him allowed. Now in the meane time these the States of the Religion were by some
for these their proceedings commended; but by other some not onely blamed, but also ac-
The emperour maketh faire weather with the States of the Religion in Bohemia. cused of rebellion against the Emperour and the State. But the matter being declared vnto
the Emperour, he complaining vnto himselfe of the inconsideratnesse of his counsellors; to
maintaine his authoritie, caused the parliament then in hand to be proroged; and to seeme of
himselfe to grant that which he could not wel withstand, commanded by a decree, that same
very day to be appointed for the concluding of that article of religion, on which the States
themselues had before appointed their assembly to be holden in the new court at PRAGE. Not-
withstanding which decree, many troublesome spirits publikely set forth other their conceits I
in writing, to farre other purpose, grieuously therein reprehending the states of the Religion,
for that of themselues they had appointed a day for their assembly into the new court at
PRAGE: Which (as they said) was nothing else, but in a rebellious manner to rise against the
lawes of the kingdome, and the authoritie of their lawfull prince: AND therfore aduised them
to forbeare from making any such assembly as was by them appointed. Heereof arose great
troubles euen vnder the Emperours nose in PRAGE, the chiefe citie of BOHEMIA, they of the
Religion not daring to trust the Romane Catholiques, neither they them; being still readie
vpon euery false report, or vaine surmise, to go together by the eares: vntill that the Emperor
for the staying of these troubles, and the auoiding of further danger, was glad to cause it to be
openly proclaimed in the new court at PRAGE, That his Imperiall Maiestie hauing receiued K
and vnderstood the Apologie of the states, now did abrogate that his edict published against
them but a few daies before: and by this his new edict did account all the states of the Religi-
on for his faithfull and well beloued subiects: and as of them vnto whom the right of the
kingdome, and the king his oath belonged, as wel as to all other states of the kingdome. And
that he also had those the same states excused, in that they for the good of his Maiestie, and of
the whole kingdome, had appointed their assembly in the new court at PRAGE: and that ther-
fore he denounced them in so doing, not in any thing to haue done any thing contrary vnto
his Maiestie. And that hee appointed the fiue and twentieth day of May, for the generall as-
sembly of parliament to be holden in the castle of PRAGE, for the ending of the article concer-
ning religion, and the reforming of other the publike grieuances of the common weale: yet L
with this prouiso, That the said States should safely and quietly come vnto the said parlia-
ment, without entertaining of any forreine souldiors; as that his Maiestie should also, not by
himselfe nor any other, for pay entertaine any, or suffer any forreine souldiors to come into
the kingdome. Which the Emperors edict being proclaimed, the states of the Religion ha-
uing made their publike praiers, and sung certaine Hymnes and Psalmes vnto the glorie of
God, for the good successe of their businesse, left the new court at PRAGE, and returned euerie
man home to their owne houses, to make themselues readie to come vnto the parliament to
be holden at the appointed day.

But the day appointed for the parliament being come, and the Emperor still delaying the
The states of Bohemia by writing declare vn. to the Emperour their purpose for the defence of their religion. matter, the States of the Religion wearie of such long delayes, and in doubt to bee there- M
with deluded, as hauing not receiued from the Emperour any such answere as whereon to
rest, the third of Iune offered vnto the Emperour a short writing, concerning their griefe
and further purpose, to this effect. They had (as they said) expected, and well hoped, that
regard being had not onely of so many requests of so great and most noble princes, made in
their

A their behalfe; but euen of the Emperour his promiſe alſo, made vnto them, both in the generall aſſembly of the *States* the laſt yeare, and in the late precept of the Emperours alſo, they ſhould at length haue receiued ſuch anſwere vnto their petition, concerning the free exerciſe of their Religion, as whereon they might haue ſafely reſted. Which for that it had not been yet done, they referred the doing thereof vnto God and future time, imputing the blame therof not vnto his Imperiall maieſtie, but vnto the vnquiet & troubleſome natures of ſome as well the Eccleſiaſticall as Temporall magiſtrates and perſons. But for as much as they meant not longer to be deluded by their enemies, and much leſſe to be defrauded of his Maieſties royall promiſe, which was now vnto the world knowne, they had thought good to offer and preſent vnto his Maieſtie a writing conceiued in the Bohemian tongue: according
B vnto which they deſired to bee ſecured, concerning the free exerciſe of their Religion; moſt humbly requeſting his Maieſtie to accept of the ſame, and at length to ſatisfie their requeſts. Which if it might not be graunted (the Emperour his Maieſtie hauing more reſpect vnto the troubleſome Cleargie men, and ſome other his euill affected counſellors, than to the faithfull *States* and ſubiects of his kingdome) that then they would reſt themſelues vpon the decree made in the aſſembly holden in the yeare 1608, and vpon the laſt edict of his Maieſtie: yet with this ſolemne proteſtation, That ſeeing they had by certain information vnderſtood, much warlike preparation (but eſpecially in Bavaria) to bee made, and diuers conſultations in many places to be holden againſt the ſtates of the Religion (his Imperiall Maieſtie and the other his faithfull counſellors, therof not knowing) which might tend vnto the ruine and de-
C ſtruction both of his maieſtie and of the whole kingdome: they themſelues would take vpon them the defence thereof, and to doe their endeauour, that furniſhed with men and armes, they might to the vttermoſt of their power defend him their *Soueraigne*, together with themſelues, and the whole kingdome, againſt the force and inuaſion of their forraine enemies.

Embaſſadors from the Duke of Saxonie in the behalfe of the States.

In the meane time while theſe things were thus in doing, an embaſſadour came from the duke of Saxonie to Prage, to intreat the Emperour for the *States*, and for the graunting of them the free exerciſe of their religion: the embaſſadors of the ſtates of *Silesia* foorthwith following of them alſo, who in like manner requeſting alſo of the Emperour, to haue the li-
D bertie for the free exerciſe of their religion by him confirmed vnto them, promiſed their moſt readie helpe and aid vnto the *States* of Bohemia, if need ſhould ſo require. But the *States* of Bohemia hauing from day to day in vaine expected anſwere from the Emperour, turning themſelues vnto their former reſolution for the defence of themſelues and of their Religion; forthwith raiſed a great number both of horſe and foot, whom with their well knowne captaines and commanders they brought euen vnto the citie of Prage. Howbeit at length, *viz.* the eleuenth of Iuly, the *Saxon* embaſſadors earneſtly ſoliciting their cauſe, and vrging their requeſt, they according to their deſire receiued anſwer from the Emperour, by letters from his Maieſtie written to this effect.

The States of Bohemia raiſe their forces.

The emperor his letters vnto the States of the Religion in Bohemia, for the free exerciſe of their Religion.

Hee gaue all men (as hee ſaid) to vnderſtand, and by theſe his letters witneſſed to eternall memorie, That after that all the three *States* of his kingdome of Bohemia, which, in the re-
E ceiuing of the Lords ſupper, participate the bodie and blood of our Lord Chriſt Ieſus, vnder both kindes, his faithfull ſubiects, had in the aſſemblie holden in the caſtle at Prage in the yeare 1608, in all humilitie requeſted, That it might be lawfull for them to hold, and freely to exerciſe their Religion, according to the Confeſſion of Avgvsta (as ſome call it) exhibited vnto his father *Maximilian* the Emperour of moſt happie memorie, and by him vnto the ſaid *States* allowed: and that he then and at that time, by reaſon of other moſt weightie buſineſſe, for which that aſſemblie was then called, and ſuch as could ſuffer no procraſtination or delay, had thought it good to deferre the allowing and ratifying of this their petition, vnto this preſent aſſembly of Parliament: and that the ſame *States* now againe aſſembled, inceſſantly renewing this their former petition, and hauing thereunto ioyned alſo the requeſt and
F interceſſion of certaine noble perſonages, had requeſted to be therein ſatisfied: and that hee with his Counſellours would conſult how prouiſion might bee made for his ſubiects in the kingdome of Bohemia, as well communicating vnder both kindes, as vnder one; now at length to haue effected the ſame. Wherefore ſeeing that his will and deſire was, that both

in

in these and future times peace and quietnesse might for the encreasing of the kindome bee G
preserued and kept amongst his subiects of all the three estates of the kingdome of BOHEMIA, communicating as well vnder the one, as vnder both kindes: that both parties might freely and without any impediment or let, haue the free exercise of their religion, whereby they were both in hope to obtaine euerlasting saluation. And to the intent that accomplishment and satisfaction might in all points bee made, as well according vnto the breaking vp of the assembly of Parliament in the yeare 1608, as to the performance of his owne precept, of late published (whereby he hath acknowledged, and euen yet acknowledgeth, those same Estates communicating vnder both kindes, and subscribing to this confession, for his faithfull and loyall subiects, vnto whom the rights and immunities of H
the kingdome of BOHEMIA belonged) hee by the common consent of the Councellours, and other Magistrates of the kingdome did determine, That his subiects communicating both vnder one and both kindes, should friendly and peaceably liue together, without wronging or reuiling of one another; and that vpon the paine and penaltie in the law set downe, to bee inflicted vpon them that should otherwise doe. And moreouer, seeing that they which communicated but vnder one kinde, enioyed the free exercise of their Religion in all poynts throughout the kingdome of BOHEMIA, that hee gaue leaue and commaunded, that they also which communicated vnder both kindes, *viz.* all the States of the Religion, with all such a embraced the Confession of BOHEMIA, sometime exhibited to *Maximilian* the Emperour his father, in the Parliament holden in the yeare I
1575, and now againe to himselfe presented, should euerie where, and in all places of the kingdome, haue the free exercise of their Religion, without the let or interruption of any; to retaine the same, vntill a generall vnion of Religion, and an ending of all dissention and controuersies might bee made. Moreouer, That hee did graunt vnto the States of the Religion this fauour, That they should haue the lower Consistorie at PRAGE, with power to conforme the same according to their owne Confession. That they might lawfully make their Priestes, as well in the Bohemian as Germane tongue, and set them ouer their Churches, without any let of the Archbishop of PRAGE. That hee did also restore vnto them the Vniuersitie of PRAGE, which for many yeares agoe belonged vnto the States of the Religion vnder both kinds: giuing them power againe to open the same, K
to furnish it with graue and learned men of their owne Confession, to beautifie it with good Lawes, and to appoynt certaine of their owne companie and profession for Gouernours, and defendours as well of the Consistorie as of the Vniuersitie: whome so by the States appointed and chosen, hee without any stay or delay, or other instruction or information than they should from the States receiue, would confirme in that their office, and pronounce them for the lawfull Defendors: yet so, as that if hee being letted by other greater businesse, cannot perfourme the same within the space of foureteene dayes, they shall neuertheless continue Defendours, and as well enioy the charge of the office committed vnto them, as if they had beene therein by him confirmed: and that one or other of their number beeing dead, it shall bee lawfull for the States to chuse other in their places. And if that beside L
the Churches which they now holde, they would build other moe, or erect moe schooles for the instructing of the youth, it shall bee lawfull for them freely and without any let so to doe, as well in the cities as in the countrey townes and villages. And for as much as in some of the cities of the kingdome of BOHEMIA, men of both religions dwelt together, hee therefore did will and commaund, That for the preseruation of peace and quietnesse, either part freely exercising their Religion, and obeying their Priestes, should by no meanes either hurt or trouble them on the other part; and much lesse to hinder them to burie their dead in their Churches or Church-yards, with the ringing or tolling of the bells, or goe about to turne any man from his Religion, of what state or condition soeuer hee
bee, whether hee dwell in the citie or in the countrey towne or village; or by force to draw M
them to their opinion, or to take their part. For that hee onely respected that peace and quietnesse might bee kept, and that mutuall loue might still grow amongst all the three States: Vnto which end and purpose, that hee for himselfe and his heires, and the Kings of BOHEMIA, his Successours, in the Faith and word of a King, did graunt and promise vnto the States

A States of the Religion vnto whome this common peace of Religion (as they call it) belongeth as to a principall member of the Empire, all theſe things to be for euer inuiolably kept, (the Eccleſiaſticall and temporall perſons whoſoeuer in vaine reſiſting) ſo that no contrarie precept or edict ſhould either by himſelfe, or any other his heires or ſucceſſors bee publiſhed againſt the States of the Religion, or being publiſhed by any, ſhould be accounted effectuall and ſtrong: eſpecially ſeeing that hee by theſe his letters, pronounceth all the Edicts hitherto publiſhed againſt theſe the States of the Religion, to bee void, fruſtrate and of none effect. Neither would that any thing of thoſe, which were done by the States of the Religion, whileſt they ſought for the confirmation of this article concerning Religion, ſhould
B for euer be laied to their charge, or by any man by way of reproch obiected vnto them. And that therefore he ſtraitly charged and commaunded all Magiſtrates, and ſuch as bare rule in BOHEMIA to the vttermoſt of their power, to protect and defend all the three States together with them of the Religion: and neither themſelues to trouble them, nor to ſuffer them to bee by any others for the exerciſe of their Religion, moleſted or troubled: For that hee and other the kings of BOHEMIA, his ſucceſſours would moſt ſeuerely chaſtiſe all ſuch as ſhould offend againſt theſe his Maieſties letters (which to bee for euer remembred, he would cauſe the ſame to bee enrolled in the publique Recordes of Parliament) whether ſuch offendors were Eccleſiaſticall or Temporall men, to bee ſharply puniſhed as the troublers of the common peace.

C This was the ſumme of his maieſties letters which he cauſed to bee publikely ſet vp in the caſtle at PRAGE the thirteenth of Iuly, that it might bee to all men knowne, this article of religion, which was the firſt of the Articles in this Parliament propounded, to bee concluded and agreed vpon according to the minde of the States of the Religion, and ſo their requeſtes to be in all poynts ſatisfied. Who forthwith thereupon the fifteenth day of Iuly, cauſed the firſt publique Sermon according to the confeſſion of AVGVSTA, to bee preached in the Germane tongue in a Church of them of the Religion, which had for a long time before beene ſhut vp. At which time they alſo ſent vnto the Elector of SAXONIE, to ſend vnto them certaine learned men, for the ſetting vp of the Vniuerſitie, and the gouerning of the Conſiſtorie at PRAGE. And yet for all this, the Embaſſadors for the States of SILESIA ſtill earneſtly labo-
D ring with the Emperour for the libertie of Religion to be granted to the ſaid States and the reſt of the inhabitants of that prouince; the ſtates of BOHEMIA refuſed in any wiſe to diſmiſſe their ſouldiors whom they had muſtered neere vnto ROGGENSON, vntill the Sileſians were of their requeſt in that point ſatisfied: offring alſo vnto the Emperour a large libell of the griefes of them the ſaid States.

Now it may be that ſome hauing read ſo much as is before written concerning theſe late troubles, about the free exerciſe of the reformed religion, but ſpecially in BOHEMIA, AVSTRIA, MORAVIA, and SILESIA, may deeme the ſame both tedious and beſide our purpoſe: vnto whom in deed it is not written, but rather vnto ſuch as who together with my ſelfe, the wars betwixt the Chriſtians and the Turkes ended, and the peace concluded as is aforeſaid, deſire
E yet to know in what ſtate thoſe frontier countries ſtand; which being the greateſt bulwarkes of that ſide of Chriſtendome, and the chiefe territorie of the houſe of AVSTRIA, are (the peace being either expired, or otherwiſe broken off) moſt ſubiect vnto the fury of the puiſſant enemie, as neereſt vnto him, and ſo like ſooneſt to feele of his great force and power, preſining vnto it ſelfe neither bounds nor meaſure, ſo long as there is any thing farther. Againſt whom the Chriſtian Emperor had no other forces of his owne to oppoſe, more than ſuch as he could raiſe out of the relikes of HVNGARIE, and the aforeſaid frontier countries. All, together, but weake helps againſt ſo puiſſant an enemie, as neuer commeth into the field, but with a world of men following of him: but yet much weaker being (as now of late they were) enerie of them apart diuided in themſelues about matters of Religion, the incurable maladie of
F the Chriſtian eſtates and common weales, the heauy and lamentable effect wherof too much of late appeared in the loſſe of STRIGONIVM, woon by the Turks with a farre leſſe armie, than euer the Grand ſigniors lieutenant generall was wont to come into HVNGARIE withall: and yet the chriſtian Emperor by reaſon of the reuolt of the Hungarians (vpon a diſcontentment about the exerciſe of their Religion) not able of himſelfe to releeue the diſtreſſed citie of

STRI-

STRIGONIVM, or yet to put an armie of any ſtrength into the field, for the defence of the reſt of his cities or territories. So weake are euen the greateſt princes, their ſubiects being among themſelues in minds diuided. G

The Turkes embaſſador commeth to Vienna & from thence to Prage.

But not to ſtray further, the Turkes embaſſadour in the meane time with a notable traine of an hundred and fiftie Turks comming from VIENNA the one and twentith of September, and there hauing ſaluted, and with great gifts preſented the king, ſet forward toward PRAGE, where he was by the citizens and certaine of the Nobilitie of the Emperours Councell, the twelfth of October honourably receiued; and the nineteenth of the ſame moneth admitted vnto the Emperours preſence, firſt preſented vnto him from the great Sultan his maſter, a rich tent of diuers colours, moſt curiouſly wrought with faire orient pearle, of great value; and then foure couragious horſes, all furniſhed with moſt rich and ſumptuous furniture. He H preſented vnto him alſo, certaine Turkiſh weapons, ſet and garniſhed with rich precious ſtones, and a princely Turks robe, ſuch as they vſe at their mariages, gliſtering with gold and pretious ſtones, with diuers other rare things of leſſe value. Together with which hee deliuered vnto him the great Sultans letters, and withall deſired the confirmation of the peace before made for twentie yeares, to be now againe renewed. Vnto which embaſſador, letters were afterward deliuered from the Emperour, together with certaine other rich preſents, to bee by him preſented vnto the great Sultan: *viz.* certaine Carroches lined within with Damaske, and couered without with blacke Veluet; ſixe faire and gallant horſes, moſt richly furniſhed: a clocke of wonderfull workmanſhip; two faire deskes to write vpon of Ebonie; with diuers other like preſents of no ſmall price. I

Who ſo charged with preſents, and bountifully rewarded, and to his good liking anſwered, was afterward in the beginning of Ianuarie, with a traine of two hundred horſe, from PRAGE honourably diſmiſſed.

HERE

Here followeth a continuation of this Hiſtorie, with all the occurrents which haue happened during the reignes of *Achmat*, *Muſtapha*, and *Oſman* the ſonne of *Achmat*, to the end of this preſent yeare 1620.

By EDVVARD GRIMSTON, *Sargeant at Armes.*

THe Turkiſh Emperour, hauing beene freed ſome yeares from the care of warres in HVNGARIE, in regard that he had concluded a truce for twentie yeares with the Emperour *Rodulphus*, he now bent all his forces againſt his rebels in ASIA, and the Sophie of PERSIA, where he had no good ſucceſſe this yere. For the Perſians hauing formerly extended their monarchie farre into the Turkes empire, and defeated *Cicala Baſſa* and others in diuers battels, now they entred into the prouince of BABYLON, with a deſigne to ioyne it to PERSIA. *Achmat* to ſtay the courſe of their proſperitie, ſends a mightie armie thither, vnder the command of *Naſſut Baſſa*: But his fortune was no better than thoſe that went before him. The Perſians came to meet him, gaue him battel, defeated him, and ſlew 20000 of his men. Theſe mournfull newes comming to court, did much diſtemper the Sultans mind, he could not indure it ſhould be ſaid that the Perſian had defeated his mightie armies thrice in open battell; and much leſſe that it ſhould be ſo, and that he ſhould ſeize vpon his countreys: wherefore to repaire this loſſe, he leuies new forces to be commanded by *Gambolat Baſſa* of ALEPPO, who had been the moſt powerfull rebell in ASIA, and was newly reconciled and brought into fauour with the graund Seignior. This man came to the Port to receiue the Sultans commandements, and to paſſe his armie into ASIA: but whether hauing ſome ſuſpition, that he had intelligence with the Perſians, or that ſuch as enuied his greatneſſe, had giuen ſome bad impreſſion of his loyaltie to the Sultan: within ſome few dayes after his arriuall, *Achmat* cauſed him to be ſlaine by his Capigi: whereby wee may well obſerue, that he that is a rebell to his prince, which hath ſo violently oppreſt his ſubiects, & ſet his countries on fire by ſedition, the which he hath beene forced to quench with the blood of innocents, cannot but end his daies violently and miſerably, ſeeing that God reuengeth the blood of innocents vpon the guiltie.

1610

The Perſians enter into the prouince of Babylon.

The Turkes defeated.

The Turke makes Gambolat Generall of his armie.

He commands him to be ſlaine

The Perſian ſeeing what aduantage he had gotten of the Turke, laboured by the bruit of his victories, to draw the Chriſtian princes vnto his partie, and with them wholly to ruine the *Othomans*, the which he had ſo happily begun. For the effecting whereof, he ſent his embaſſadors to the emperor being at PRAGE, to perſuade him to break the peace with the Turk, & to ioyne with him. The embaſſadors arriued at PRAGE this yeare with rich & rare preſents: firſt a croſſe of gold inricht with many precious ſtones, amongſt which there was one piece of amber, wheron was ſeen the figure of the virgin *Marie*, holding her yong babe in her armes, the which was ſo artificially grauen, as it might be thought the worke of nature: a topas of exceeding greatnes, giuen to the king of PERSIA by an Indian king: two kniues of damaske, with hafts of iaſper, & their ſheaths couered with diamonds: a certaine kind of Indian wood of moſt excellent vertue, moſt ſoueraign to cure the paines of the breſt, and to purge the ſtomack: the gall of a pellican excellent to cure the pleuriſie, appoplexie, and feuer: two topazes the one white, and the other violet; this laſt was ſo big, as it was capable to make a cup: an amathiſt as big as a hens egge; a Perſian bow, inlaid with the veines of a cammel, and a rough diamond exceeding great; a white ſtone of the colour of water, which was a preſeruatiue againſt the plague, being hung about ones neck; three orientall pearls exceeding big; three rich eſcarbuncles, and three marueilous faire diamonds; and withal this a ſerpents horne, much eſteemed for the rare vertues. All theſe preſents were very well accepted, and the embaſſadors much honored. But what apparance was there for the emperor who had ſo great differences with his brother *Matthias* king of HVNGARIE, who ſaw the greateſt part of his ſubiects rebelled againſt him, his prouinces in deuiſion, TRANSYLVANIA in combuſtion, by the conſpiracie which had bin diſcouered againſt *Battori*, and finally a generall diſorder ouer all, to break the peace with the Turk, who was at his dore, retained only with this barre, and to allie himſelfe with the Perſian ſo farre from his countries, from whom hee could draw no ſuccours, but

Embaſſadours come from the Perſian to the Emperour.

Preſents ſent to the Emperour.

His affaires will not ſuffer him to ioyne with the Perſian.

onely that he might keepe the *Othoman* busie in Asia. Thus the Embassadors returned, carying home nothing but good words. G

The proceedings of Leopold in Bohemia.

Since, the troubles which hapned in Bohemia, made him see of what importance it was to entertaine peace with the Turke: for if he had broken it by the Persians persuasion, hee had giuen his enemy an assured meanes to ruine him: for the Archduke *Leopold* entred Bohemia with an armie of 9000 foot, and 3000 horse; he surprised pettie Prage, attempted the old town, and seeking to force it, he slew many which made resistance. *Mathias* king of Hvngarie aduertised of this disorder, parts from Avstria with a powerful army, & aduanceth speedily towards Bohemia. It was to be feared, that if *Mathias* army & *Leopolds* had met neere vnto Prage, it had bin the losse and ouerthrow of the one, and the desolation & ruine of the country. The Emperour foreseeing this danger, caused 300000 florins to be deliuered to *Romeo*, H
Leopolds lieutenant for the paiment of his armie, & so sent him out of Bohemia. This diuision

Causes of the troubles of Bohemia.

betwixt the princes of the house of Avstria, grew by the practises of some of the Emperors counsell, who being delegated iudges to compound the differences of the Bohemians of diuers religions, instead of labouring to reconcile and vnite those people, for the good of the publike, they made themselues partisans to the one to oppresse the other, and thereby they drew the princes into a dangerous deuision, for the support of parties. And moreouer, the Archdukes *Ferdinand* and *Leopold*, practised to depriue *Matthias* king of Hvngarie of the succession which he pretended of Bohemia; left that being master, he should take reuenge vpon their partisans for the troubles wherwith they had formerly afflicted the countrey. Such was the estate of affaires in Germanie, giuing the Turke a faire opportunitie, if he could haue I
imbraced so rich an occasion, to make his profit of their combustions. But the confirmation of the truce, and the affaires of his house, kept him in Thrace.

The gallions of Malta defeated by the Turks.

Let vs see how the Turke speedes at sea, where he hath the knights of Malta, the Sicilians, and Neapolitanes, and the Florentines, vigilant and valiant enemies to annoy him, and crosse his designes. The last yeare, which was 1609, the Christians had no good successe, losse fell particularly vpon the knights of Malta: for he that fights often, can hardly vanquish alwayes. The gallion of the order, commaunded by *Chevalier Guidoti*, an Italian, had made two voyages to sea very fortunately, and brought to Malta 300 Turkish slaues. The incouragement of this good successe ingaged many knights to diuers enterprises. They armed certaine gallions, and made a fleet of ten good ships of warre, as vnfortunate in their K
courses as the gallion of the order had been before successefull: for meeting with the Turkes fleet in the seas of Cyprvs, they were set vpon and most of them slaine or made slaues. The knight *Fressinet* was slaine, and the red gallion wherein he commanded taken by the Turks: but it was after a whole daies fight. *Ambuson* otherwise called *Fueillade* another knight, was made a slaue, and his gallion taken: the knight *Ouges* ran the same fortune, with the losse of a gallion. *Fressinet* hauing brought a pinnace with him to attend his ship, after some fight neer vnto the gallion, it escaped by night. In this voiage vnfortunat for them of Malta, the gallion

The gallion of the Order sets vpon the Turks Carauan.

of the order would needs seek some better aduenture: the knights of *Baillon*, and Rhodes did accompany him either of them with a small gallion. He set vpon the carauan of the Turkes fleet, neer the island of Rhodes, his successeful beginning of this combat made him hope for L
victory, & the number of the enemies vessels for a rich booty: for there were among the rest 2 great gallions of the Sultans; these are ships which belong to the great Seigniors women, loaden commonly with great riches: but 20 gallies of Rhodes seeing this fight, came out of their port to succor them, and by the fauour of a faire wind, drew them into safetie.

At Malta the brute was that the Turks armie consisting of fourescore gallies, should go and besiege the isle of Goza, whereas a knight called *Saint-Liger* commaunded. Whereupon the Great Master had resolued to fortifie the castle of the island with a good counterscarfe, which hee caused to bee made, sending thither two hundred souldiours, and thirtie knights for supplie, all braue souldiors, who might haue made a great resistaunce, if the Turkes had attempted it: but the enemies fleete passed one, and gaue them time M
to rest.

But this yeare 1610, *Vignancourt* the Great Maister of Malta, sent the fiue Gallies of the order into Barbarie, towards port Farino, memorable, for that it was the hauen where Saint *Lewis* the French King ended the nauigation of his dayes,

and

A and at his returne from IERVSALEM and PALESTINA, went to receiue in heauen the glorious palmes of his holy actions. The gallies of BISERTA had beene accuſtomed to fetch palmes there in that ſeaſon (which was in the ſpring time) whom the gallies of MALTA had a deſigne to ſurpriſe. But the contrary winds, and the tempeſtuous ſeas ouerthrew that enterpriſe, yet their voyage was not altogether vnprofitable; for returning towards MALTA, being within the chanell, which diuides the Iſland from that of SICILIE, they encountred with a great gallion of TVNES, armed by a Turke called *Carouſinan*, being in view of the gallies of MALTA: The Rayſe, (who commaunded) aſſured his companie, and (ſmiling) promiſed to free them from their enemies. Being ſo tranſported with vanitie, as he ſpake confidently, that he would B not feare twentie of the gallies of MALTA; but this his pride was ſoone abated with his ruine: for the fiue gallies came cloſe vnder him, and plyed him ſo furiouſly with their cannon, as they ſunke him. The gallie wherein *Verdelli* an Italian knight commaunded, had like to haue been loſt, for being grapled with the gallion, if the diligence of *Verdelli* had not ſpeedily retired it. The Turkes after the loſſe of their veſſell, began to ſwimme away, but they were all made ſlaues to ſerue in the gallies of MALTA, who this yeare had no other fruits of their generous enterpriſes.

The gallies of Malta goe to ſurpriſe them of Biſerta.

They ſinke a gallion of Tunes.

The gallies of *Coſmo de Medicis* great duke of TVSCANIE, parted from LIGORNE, vnder the conduct of the commaunder, and Admirall *Inghirami*, and running alongſt the coaſt of BARBARIE, they took a Turkiſh ſhip in the ſight of ALGIER, loaden with merchandiſe, armes C and munition of warre, freeing many Chriſtian ſlaues which were in it. This happie beginning promiſed them better fortune. They paſſe on, and ſome 25 leagues beyond ALGIERS; they goe to ſurprize the towne of BISQVERRE, a ſmall towne in circuit, but ſtrong and well walled. *Inghirami* drawing neere vnto the coaſt, tooke downe his maſts, leſt they ſhould diſcouer his comming. In the meane time he ſent two long boats to find ſome place fit for their landing; the which being carefully obſerued, colonel *Bindij* landed his men, and about eleuen a clocke at night marched in good order towards the towne, and forced it. The darkneſſe of the night kept them from ſpoyling it; Being content onely to ſet their guards and centinels in the moſt important places of the wall: but day being come, the ſouldiours made themſelues maiſters of the towne, which they ſackt and ſpoyled. Certaine Moores and D Turkes, during the obſcuritie of the night, had retired themſelues into a Moſque which they fortified: They were ſummoned to yeeld; but the feare of being ſlaues, (which they could not auoyd) made them reſolue to die in their owne defence; ſo as the Florentines hauing forced the place, put them all to the ſword; and then imbarqued their troupes, hauing filled BISQVERRE with fire and blood. The night following, being in the Gulph called the Bad woman, they met with a pinnace loaden with corne, the which they tooke, and ſent to LIGORNE, and then they paſt on to increaſe their conqueſt. Being vpon the coaſt of SARDINIA, two Galliots of BISERTA, did furniſh them with a faire occaſion. *Inghirami* ſends his gallies to purſue them, who hauing had them in chace threeſcore leagues, tooke the one, wherein they had one hundred and twentie ſlaues, and freed manie E poore Chriſtians from the chaine, who ſuffered the tyrannie of the Turkiſh ſeruitude. They alſo tooke a Turkiſh gallie within halfe a league of ALGIER, and ſpoyled it. And thus triumphing ouer their enemies, they tooke their courſe towards LIGORNE, hauing taken foure Turkiſh veſſels, ſpoyled the towne of BISQVERRE, and twice braued that of ALGIER.

The courſes of the duke of Tuſcanie his gallies.

They take a Turkiſh ſhip.

Biſquerre taken by the Florentines.

They take diuers Turkiſh veſſels.

This yeare was fatall for the Moriſques or new Chriſtians in SPAINE, who being in number 900000 perſons, as the originall writes, and had continued there from father to ſonne, for the ſpace of almoſt 900 yeares, were now in an inſtant baniſhed, and made vagabonds with a blaſt of the kings mouth. Men diſcourſed diuerſly heereof; Some ſaid that the King had reaſon to doe it, for that they had ſecret practiſes and intelligence with the F Turke his capitall enemie. Others affirmed, that hee did wiſely to preuent their attempts againſt his Eſtate, which were to bee feared conſidering their numbers were ſo great. And ſome ſaid plainely, that it was to haue their lands and inheritances, which had continued ſo long in their races. But the king declared his owne intent by his Edict, the which hee publiſhed in theſe tearmes.

The Moriſques or new Chriſtians chaſed out of Spaine.

The king of Spaines edict.

The King. For that reaſon doth in conſcience binde a good and Chriſtian gouernment, G
to expell out of all Realmes and Common weales thoſe things which breed ſcandall, and
bring hurt to our good ſubiects, and daunger to the Eſtate, but eſpecially which are offen-
ſiue to God, and preiudiciall to his ſeruice: for this cauſe experience hauing taught vs, that
the reſidence of the new Chriſtian Moriſques, and their abode in the realmes of GRANADO,
MVRCIA, and ANDELOSIA, hath beene the cauſe of all theſe inconueniences: For that
beſides the manner of their proceeding, which ioyned in the rebellion of GRANADO, the
which began by cruell murthers of all the Prieſtes and old Chriſtians which liued amongſt
them, calling the Turke in to their aid; yet hauing drawen them out of the ſaid Coun-
trey, and ſuffered them to liue in our other prouinces, ſo as they would repent them
of their faults, and liue faithfully and Chriſtian like, according to the precepts and iuſt or- H
dinances, which were giuen them: They haue not obſerued and kept them according to
the ſtrict and direct rules of our holy Faith: but haue alwayes made ſhew to contemne it,
and to haue no feare to offend God, as hath beene ſeene by the great numbers which haue
beene puniſhed by the Inquiſition: and beſides, they haue committed many theſts and
murthers againſt the old Chriſtians. And not content heerewith, they haue conſpired a-
gainſt my royall Crowne and Realmes, ſeeking ayd and ſuccours from the Turke, cer-
taine interpoſed perſons being ſent to that effect, and doing the like with other prin-
ces, promiſing vnto themſelues ayde and aſſiſtance, offering vnto them their perſons
and meanes. And ſeeing that during ſo many yeares, in which they haue practized
theſe treaſons and conſpiracies, not any one hath come to reueale them, but they haue I
alwayes couered, concealed, and denied them. It is a moſt apparant ſigne, that they
haue all beene of one minde and will, againſt the ſeruice of God and of mee, and a-
gainſt the good of this Realme; yet they might haue imitated many Knights of theirs,
of generous extraction, who haue done ſeruice to God, to the Kings our progenitours, and
to vs, like good Chriſtians, and moſt loyall vaſſals.

Wherefore conſidering all this, and how much I am bound to ſet downe ſome good
order, and to procure the preſeruation and increaſe of my Realmes and ſubiects, and de-
ſiring to prouide for all, I haue decreed with the aduice and councell of manie iudicious lear-
ned men, and others, that are verie religious, wiſe, and iealous of Gods ſeruice and
mine, to chaſe out of the ſaid Realmes of GRANADO, MVRCIA, and ANDELO- K
SIA, and out of the towne of HERNACHE (although it bee not within the limits of the
ſaid Realmes) all the new Chriſtians Moriſques, both men, women, and children. For
when as a great or deteſtable crime is committed in any Colledge or Communaltie, It is fit
that Colledge or Communaltie ſhould bee ruined, and that the leſſe for the greater, and
one with another ſhould bee puniſhed: And that ſuch as peruert the good and ſincere
life of Commonweales, and of their townes and cities, ſhould be baniſhed from other in-
habitants, leaſt their contagion infect them.

For this cauſe, by vertue of theſe preſents, wee ordaine and commaund, that all the
newe Chriſtians Moriſques, without any exception of age or ſexe, of thoſe that liue and
reſide in the ſaid Realmes, and in the towne of HERNACHE, except ſuch as bee ſlaues, L
ſhall within the ſpace of thirtie dayes after the publication heereof, depart out of all our
Realmes and Dominions of SPAINE, with their wiues, children, ſeruants, and others
of their nation: and that they ſhall not preſume to returne nor to make any reſidence in
them, in any ſort whatſoeuer. And wee forbid them to depart by the Realmes of VALEN-
CIA, or ARAGON, nor to enter into them, nor to ſtay in any of our Realmes or Countries
after the time prefixed, vpon paine of death, and confiſcation of all their goods. And wee
commaund, that no perſon within our Realmes and Seigniories of what eſtate, qualities,
or condition ſoeuer, ſhall preſume to receiue, conceale, or defend publikely nor ſecretly any
Moriſque man or woman, after the ſaid tearme, vpon paine to looſe all their goods, vaſſalls,
forts, and lands; and moreouer to looſe all the graces, and benefits which they haue from me, M
to bee applied to my exchequer.

And though I may iuſtly confiſcate all the goods moueable and vnmoueable of the ſaid
Moriſques, as belonging to traitors, and guiltie of high treaſon, yet vſing clemencie, I am

content

A content, that during the ſaid tearme of thirtie dayes, they may diſpoſe of their mooueable goods, and carrie them away, not in golde, ſiluer, iewels, nor letters of exchange, but in merchandize, which is not prohibited, bought of the naturall ſubiects of this realme, and not of others, or in the commodities of the ſaid countrey. And to the end they may during the time of thirtie dayes diſpoſe thereof, and of their mooueable goods, and imploy it in merchandiſe, or in the commodities of the countrey, and tranſport what they ſhall buy (for as for their lands, that muſt bee annexed to my reuenues, to bee imployed in the ſeruice of God and the common weale, as I ſhall thinke moſt fit.) I declare by theſe preſents, that I take them into my royall protection, and aſſure them and their goods, that during
B the ſaid time they may goe and come, to ſell, exchaunge, and alienate all their mooueable goods, and to imploy their money, golde, ſiluer, and iewells in merchandize not prohibited, or in the commodities of the countrey, and to tranſport the ſame freely, without any let or interruption, by land or by ſea, paying vſuall cuſtomes; ſo as they carrie no gold or ſiluer coyned, or to coyne, nor any other thing prohibited by the lawes of my realme. Yet we are content, they ſhall carrie ſo much money as ſhalbe needfull for their paſſage by land, and imbarking by ſea: commaunding all our officers and louing ſubiects to ſee this preſent edict duely obſerued &c. ſigned. *I the King.*

After the publication of this Edict, the tearme of thirtie dayes was reſtrained to twentie, ſo as the Moriſques were haſtened to depart: and the ſhippes and veſſels of what
C countrey ſoeuer, were ſtaied in all the ports of SPAINE, to tranſport them whither they would goe. Many paſſed from SPAINE into BARBARIE: But during this yeare there came aboue 150000 of theſe Moriſques into FRANCE, the king ſending commiſſaries, to ſee them well vſed, and orderly tranſported away.

There was a warre fallen out in BARBARIE betwixt *Muley Xequy*, king of FEZ, and *Muley Sidan* his younger brother, both Mahometanes, in which warre the younger forced the elder to flie his countrey, and to come and craue ayd from *Philip* king of SPAINE: But the vnfortunate loſſe of *Don Sebaſtian* king of PORTVGALL, was a good preſident for the Spaniard not to truſt in barbarous Kings without good aſſurance: Hee treated with the Barbarian, and promiſed him ſuccours, with 100000 duckats to re-
D turne to ALARACHE, (a place which held for him) where by money or other practiſes, hee ſhould drawe vnto him as many ſouldiours as hee could: And that for the faſetie of the ſuccourrs that hee ſhould giue him, hee ſhould put ALARACHE or ARRACHE into his handes. This ARRACHE is a ſtrong towne in the Realme of FEZ, in the prouince of ALGAR, ſeated vpon the Ocean, at the mouth of the riuer of Lucus, whereon part of it is built, and the other vpon the Ocean: It hath a goodly Port, and hard to take, for that it is defended by a Fort, in the which the kings of FEZ doe vſually entertaine a garriſon of three hundred light horſe, and three hundred harquebuſiers: for that the Portugalls and Caſtillians, holde in a manner all the Sea townes of the prouinces of HABAT, and
E ERIF, where they haue great garriſons. This prouince is from the riuer of Nocor along the Mediterranean Sea, vnto the ſtraight of Gibralter, the other is vpon the Ocean from the ſaid ſtraight vnto the riuer Lucus, in the which the King of SPAINE holdes at this day the ſtrong townes of TANGER, ARZILLA, and others. According to the former accord, the Barbarian returned to ARRACHE, with his money in one of the King of SPAINE his ſhippes, to whome in a ſhort time repaired many of his friends and ſeruants. The Spaniard in the meane time hauing prepared a fleet of a great number of gallies and ſhippes, and embarked tenne thouſand ſouldiours therein, hee gaue the commaund thereof vnto Marqueſſe of Saint *Germaine*, who arriued on the twentieth of Nouember in the euening at the port of ARRACHE, and there rode at anchor all the night. The next day in the morning the Marqueſſe calling all the Captaines to a coun-
F ſell, imparting vnto them his deſigne for to force ARRACHE, in caſe that the Mooriſh King did not keepe his promiſe: they gaue him aſſurance, that they would carrie themſelues like vnto braue and valiant ſouldiours. But ſee what happened: The king of FEZ hauing no meanes to goe from his word, ſeeing the Spaniard ſo ſtrong as hee might well force it, many of his followers and people, fearing to fall vnder the power of SPAINE, they would haue abandoned him; but hauing the Gouernour of the caſtle at his deuotion, hee

warre in Barbarie.

Deſcription of the towne of Arrache or Allarache.

thruſt out the garriſon, and deliuered the keyes himſelfe vnto the Marqueſſe of *S. Germaine.* G
Vpon the firſt bruite that the Spaniards were entred into the caſtle, all the inhabitants ranne to armes, and thinking to reſiſt them, after that many of them had ended their dayes valiantly, during three houres combate, they were forced to yeeld vnto the Marqueſſe, who preſently planted the Croſſe and armes of CASTILE vpon all the towers and ſteeples. Thus this ſtrong towne which the Caſtillians and Portugals, had ſo long deſired, and whereas the inhabitants receiued a great ruine, is in the end fallen vnder the domination of their King. The newes of this exploit being brought into SPAINE, pleaſed the king much, and the people made bonefires for ioy. Theſe are the alterations of times. The Moores in old time were wont to ouerrunne SPAINE, and now the Spaniards take their pleaſures in MAVRITANIA.

Arrache in Barbarie taken by the Spaniards.

About the end of this yeare newes came to CONSTANTINOPLE, of the great warres H
which had been betweene the Vncle and the Nephew, by the death of the great Cham of the Tartars: The ſonne, who during his fathers life time, had continued at CONSTANTINOPLE as an hoſtage, and was now ſent backe into his countrey by the Sultan *Achmat*, thinking to enioy his fathers eſtate; his vncle, brother to the deceaſed Cham, practized to ſeize vpon the crowne: but either of them hauing drawne an armie of 60000 men together, in the end they ioyned battell, whereas after the ſlaughter of 40000 men vpon the place, the ſonne had the victorie, and by that meanes obtained the crowne of TARTARIA.

A great battell in Tartarie.

I will conclude this yeare 1610, with the relation of a particular buſineſſe, to ſhew the greedie deſire of the Turks to get by any vniuſt meanes whatſoeuer, and their infidelitie and falſhood to ſay and ſweare any thing for bribes. Some yeres before one maſter *Willoughbie* an I
Engliſh Gentleman, hauing rigged out a ſhip for war into the Leuant, he came in to ALGIER in BARBARIE, to ſel his prize, where at that time one *Solyman Catania* was Baſſa. This ſhip was ſuddenly ſeazed on, and rifled, by the command of this Baſſa, vpon no other ſubiect, but that the Baſſa pretended this ſhip had burnt a Carra mouſall of his, which in truth the Baſſa himſelfe had cauſed to be ſet on fire, that vnder colour thereof hee might ſeize vpon the ſhip and goods. Maſter *Willoughby* went to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there made his complaint to Sir *Henrie Lilloe*, then embaſſadour for the Engliſh, but yet could get no ſatisfaction: Whereupon he returned into England, and obtained letters from his Maieſtie to the Grand Seignior, and to *Sir Thomas Glouer*, then embaſſadour reſiding at CONSTANTINOPLE, which hauing K
receiued, hee went preſently to the Chimacham (who was lieutenant to *Murath Baſſa* the grand Viſier, he being then imploied in the warres againſt the Perſian.) The Chimacham hauing read theſe letters, would not ſuffer them to bee deliuered to the Grand Seignior, promiſing to doe iuſtice vpon *Solyman Catania*, whom hee diſcharged from his place, and ſent for him to CONSTANTINOPLE; who being come, and called in queſtion, hee denied the fact: Maſter *Willoughbie* (hauing no certaine proofe of his loſſe) ſuborned one *Oſiſh Baſſa* a Turke, who had been at MECHA, and was therefore held a verie holy man, who ſet a brother of his to procure falſe witneſſes, vpon promiſe to haue the tenth part of what ſhould be recouered: The witneſſes being readie to ſweare to his aſſertion, *Solyman Catania* hearing their oath, compounded with maſter *Willoughbie*, and gaue him foure or fiue thouſand dollars: ſo the buſineſſe ended. Which ſhowes the corruption of the Turks, and that the holieſt of them L
for money will not ſticke to beare falſe witneſſe, and take falſe oathes.

This yeare 1611 the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE was wonderfully afflicted with the plague, the which diſperſt it ſelfe ouer all, and crept into the graund Seigniors Seraglio, whereas one of his ſonnes died of that infection, whereupon the Graund Seigniour was forced to retire for his ſafetie, and to paſſe the remainder of the ſummer in his pallace or Seraglio of *Darut Baſſa*, about a league and a halfe diſtant from the citie, this violent contagion did ſo rage in CONSTANTINOPLE for the ſpace of fiue moneths, as there were numbred 200000 perſons dead within the time, and they did commonly carrie euerie day twelue or fifteene hundred bodies to be buried. The greatneſſe of this mortalitie is not to bee imputed ſo much to the corruption of the aire, as to the wilfull negligence of the Turkes, who would not vouchſafe M
to turne away from a bodie dead of this diſeaſe, when it goes to buriall, nor to forbeare to viſite their friends being infected. The obſtinate beliefe they haue of predeſtination makes them bruitiſhly contemne all ſorts of dangers: for ſay they, as ſoone as man comes out of his mothers wombe to enioy the light of the world, God writes in his forehead all the good

A great plague in Conſtantinople.

200000 perſons died of the plague.

The Turkt obſtinate beliefe touching predeſtination.

or

A or euill ſhall happen vnto him, and particularly of what death hee ſhall die, the neceſſitie whereof no humane power can auoid. All is gouerned (ſay they) by deſtinie, and therefore they regard not any infection, but contrariwiſe when any one is dead, another takes his clothes, and weares them: which is the cauſe that CONSTANTINOPLE, and the grand CAIRE are ſeldom free; and when as the aire is any thing diſpoſed to contagion, there dies ſuch multitudes of people, as they doe not number them, but by hundred thouſands.

Death of the French embaſſador at Conſtantinople.

Before the beginning of this plague, the Baron of SALIONAC Embaſſador for the French king at CONSTANTINOPLE, ended his embaſſage with his life. His moſt Chriſtian maieſtie ſent the Baron of MOLE, eldeſt ſonne to the Baron of SANSIE to ſupply his place: he arriued
B at PERA this yeare in the beginning of September, and about the ende of October the Sultan being returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, after that hee had viſited the Muphti, who is the chiefe of their law; the graund Viſier, the Deſtorda, who is the Sultans high Treaſurer, the Boſtangi Baſſa his chiefe Gardiner, with other great men of the Port, which were highly in fauour: in the end hee was admitted to audience, and to kiſſe the Sultans hand. A ceremonie which in mine opinion I owe vnto the hiſtorie, to ſhew that the maieſtie of the Turkiſh Emperours is ſo great, as to approach neere vnto them, the embaſſadors of forreine princes as forced to diſguiſe themſelues, and leauing the habits of their nation, to attire themſelues and their traine after the Turkiſh manner. Thus the embaſſadour of FRANCE parted from his lodging at PERA, wearing vpon his French apparell, a long Turkiſh robe of cloath of
C gold curld, furred with ſables: his gentlemen and ſecretaries, to the number of ſixteene, had the like robes, but of meaner ſtuffe, wearing caps of black veluet: he had 20 ſeruants in long caſſocks of ſcarlet called in Turkiſh, Ferrages, and vpon them long robes of the ſame ſtuffe, with caps of blacke taffetie, the foure Dragomans, or the kings interpreters, the captaines, maſters of ſhips, and other Frenchmen attended all in long robes, accompanied the traine; he paſt the channell which doth ſeparate PERA from CONSTANTINOPLE, being come to the other ſide, he found many goodly horſes for him and his traine, which ſome Turks that were friends to FRANCE had ſent him to conduct him to the citie, at the gate whereof many Chiaus and Ianizaries attended him to conduct him to the Seraglio, two Chiaus Baſſaes went of either ſide him, accompanying him thither, the reſt of the Turkes going before. His arriuall
D was no leſſe honourable at the pallace royall, than his comming to the towne: two Capigi Baſſaes, or chiefe of the Porters, receiued him at the entrie of a great court, and conducted him to the graund Viſier, who attended him at dinner in the hall, where he was feaſted, being accompanied onely with one Dragoman or interpreter: the reſt of his traine were conducted into a low gallerie, whereas dinner was prepared for them after the Turkiſh manner: That is to ſay, a great tapiſtrie vpon the ground without cloth or napkins, and ſome diſhes thinne ſet. The meat was watergruell with ſugar, and ſome pottage with pullets: there were two men either of them holding a certaine inſtrument of ſodden leather, in which there was a beuerage which they call Cerbet, made of the iuice of lymons water and ſugar, and withall they held a cup of blancht copper, giuing to euerie one drink, & going among the diſhes
E to ſerue them more commodiouſly. From this feaſt diſtaſtfull to them that had liued after the French faſhion, they paſt into another gallerie, whereas the Embaſſador and 16 of his companie, receiued each of them a robe of tinſell, the which hauing put on vpon their other, they were conducted through a little court paued with marble, towards the Graund Seigniours chamber, which was enricht on the outſide with many pillars of marble, and ſquare ſtones of the ſame ſtuffe, and beautified with two little fountaines of either ſide: The chamber within was about ten paces ſquare, the planchard was guilt, the wals enameled with flowers after the Turkiſh manner, and the floore couered with Tapiſtrie of gold and ſilke. At the entrie of this Imperiall chamber, ſtood ſixe Capigi or Porters, whereof two of them tooke the embaſſador vnder the armes, and led him to kiſſe the Sultans hand, or rather his robe, for
F hauing ſaluted him from the greateſt of Chriſtian kings, hee kiſt but his robe, and then was led on the one ſide going backwards, to the end he ſhould not turne his backe to the Emperour. The French gentlemen were conducted after the like manner to kiſſe his robe: But they could hardly ſee the Sultan; for his face was turned towards a window that was grated, before the which during the ceremonie there paſt thirtie Capigi, euerie one carrying a peece of the preſents which the embaſſadour had brought, during the which, the Frencemen could

The ceremony of Embaſſadors at their firſt audience.

The Turkes feaſt the French.

The Sultans chamber.

not

not see him but on the one side. This salutation being ended, the Embassador made a short speech, and presented vnto the Sultan the principall letter of his embassage written in the Turkish tongue. G

Troubles in Transyluania.

This past at CONSTANTINOPLE, whereas the Sultan did willingly see an Embassador his allie, whom he honoured aboue all others. But in TRANSYLVANIA the affaires went after another straine; the combustions which seemed inseparable to this miserable prouince, made it still the theater of all disorders. *Gabriell Battori* who gouerned it since the cession of *Ragotzi*, had put himselfe into the Turkes protection, against King *Matthias*, who pretended a title, by reason of the cession made by prince *Sigismund* vnto the Emperor, as king of HVNGARIE, and had recouered HERMSTAD, and chased *Raduille* Vayuod of VALACHIA out of his countrey, where hauing setled a new Gouernour, and filled the garrisons with Haiduckes, he returned toward TRANSYLVANIA, to oppose himselfe against *Fortgatsi* king *Matthias* his lieutenant, who came with troups out of high HVNGARIE, and past the riuer of Tibisce. The Vayuod *Raduille* had retired himselfe into MOLDAVIA to prince *Constantine*, whom hee gaue to vnderstand, that *Battori* had an intent to seaze vpon his countrey, and to make but one monarchie of their three prouinces; whereupon they ioyned their forces together, and in the end of Iune entred into VALACHIA, from whence they expelled *Battori* his lieutenant, with all the garrisons. This exploit made them to hope of a continuance in the prosperitie of their armes; they entred into TRANSYLVANIA, whereas they pursued *Battori* with such diligence, as they forced him to come to a battell neere vnto CROMSTAR, the which hee lost with part of his troupes, being constrained to saue himselfe with his horsmen in HERMSTAD, whereas some of the chiefe inhabitants seeing him receiue this disgrace, attempted to submit themselues vnder the obedience of king *Matthias:* but the practise being discouered by him, hee did such execution, as he purchased to himselfe the name of cruell. H I

The Valachian expelled his countrey by Battori.

Battori defeated by the Valachian.

Fortgatsi lieutenant to king Matthias enters Transyluania.

In the meane time *Fortgatsi* lieutenant to king *Matthias*, makes vse of this defeat to seaze vpon TRANSYLVANIA; hee made an accord with *Andrew Nage* (who had drawen high HVNGARIE into rebellion, and caused the Haiduckes to reuolt) so as being freed from that feare, he enters into TRANSYLVANIA, where hauing taken some townes and castles, he laid siege to CLAVSENBVRG, the which hee battered so furiously, as the garrison and inhabitants seeing themselues readie to be forced, yeelded, and tooke the oath of alleageance to king *Matthias* the fiue and twentieth of Iuly. But as these prosperities of *Fortgatsi* were humane, so did they not long continue. *Battori* being shut vp in HERMSTAD, coniures all his friends to come vnto him, and intreated the Bassaes of BVDA and TEMESVVAR, to succour him, according to the commaundement which they had receiued from the graund Seignior: he practised with *Nage* (a man which did swimme continually in the flotes of inconstancie) and makes him to reuolt againe in high HVNGARIE, vpon a surmise that *Fortgatsi* had not kept promise with him, so as *Nage* tooke armes againe, seized vpon the fort of BAYENS, and filled all high HVNGARIE with combustions, so as *Fortgatsi* could expect no succours at his need from thence: then hauing receiued some forces from the Turkes and Tartarians, he went to field, pursuing *Fortgatsi* with such heat and furie, as he forced him to abandon all that he had taken in TRANSILVANIA, and to retire into VALACHIA. What desolations did this warre bring vnto these prouinces by so many prises and reprises? *Battori* going with a thousand horse to surprise TOCAI, vpon the frontiers of VALACHIA, whereas they then held a great faire, hee found the garrison so watchfull vpon their guard, as hauing lost part of his horsemen, hee was forced to returne into TRANSYLVANIA. K L

Battori his practises.

Fortgatsi expelled Transylua. nia by Battori.

Fortgatsi himiserable retreit.

On the other side *Fortgatsi* with his Hungarians, thinking from VALACHIA to recouer high HVNGARIE, by the countrey of the Zeclerians could not effect his designe: for *Battori* being aduertised thereof, stopped his passage, and in like manner the Earles of *Bucheim* and *Dampier* had past the riuer of Tibisce to meet him; so as *Battori* set such guardes in all the passages and straights, that *Fortgatsi* was forced to retire towards POLONIA by the steepe mountaines, and desert places, whereas his armie was so oppresst with famine, and all other necessities, as they perished miserably, there remaining few aliue, with the which he ended his passage into POLONIA, and from thence soone after hee returned into HVNGARIE, but with a very poore equipage. M

Thus the storme ceasing in TRANSYLVANIA, by the restraint of *Forgatsi*, a more violent tempest

A tempeſt riſeth in MOLDAVIA, to the end that theſe vnfortunate regions ſhould neuer be without ſome touch of miſerie: For the Turke hauing vnderſtood, that *Conſtantine* prince of that countrey had relieued the Valachian againſt *Battori* his allie, or rather his tributarie, hee ſends a new prince into MOLDAVIA, the ſuppoſed ſonne of one *Thomas*, or *Aaron* as ſome write, who had in former time commanded there, and with him fifteene hundred ſouldiors, with letters of commaund to the Turkes and Tartarians thereabouts, to aſſiſt him with their forces. This new prince was ſometime in FRANCE, and afterwards detained priſoner in the fort of *Iaques* in SPAINE, within the Pirenean mountaines. Thus two princes contend for MOLDAVIA, the one ſupported by the Polonian, and the other by the Turke. But behold, a B third prince comes in and pretends a title, being ſonne to one *Ianicolo*, who had commanded there. This man had been a priſoner in the blacke tower at CONSTANTINOPLE, to which he was committed by the Sultan *Amurath*, for that hee had loſt a battell in the yeare 1601, againſt *Michaell* who then poſſeſt MOLDAVIA, who eſcaping from thence, wandered through diuers countries, and at laſt comming into ENGLAND, his Maieſtie of great BRITAINE pitying his miſerable eſtate, recommended him by his letters to Sir *Thomas Glouer*, his Maieſties Embaſſadour, then reſiding at CONSTANTINOPLE, with commandement to aſſiſt him, and to ſollicite his reſtitution with the Graund Seignior. Vpon the receipt of which letters, hee retired this wandring prince into his houſe at PERA, where hee entertained him, with many of his friends and followers which repaired vnto him for a long time; and in the meane time he ſo- C licited the graund Seignior for his reſtitution, hauing good acceſſe vnto him, by reaſon that he ſpake the Turkiſh tongue perfectly, and needed no Dragoman or Interpreter: to whom the Sultan ſtill gaue good anſwers, but with delayes, that it was not yet time, but hee ſhould haue ſatisfaction. His competitor (who was in poſſeſſion of MOLDAVIA) hearing of this practiſe, made friends at the great Turks court, and corrupted ſome of the Baſſaes by bribes, (they being all by nature verie couetous) to the end hee might croſſe his deſigne, and make him away if it were poſſible: and among the reſt he had wonne *Murath Baſſa* the grand Viſier, a man of great power and authoritie, who practiſed many meanes to get the Moldauian into his hands. Firſt, he ſent word vnto the Embaſſadour, that the Sultan hauing a meaning to reſtore him, deſired to ſee the man, if hee were capable of the place or no: but being ad- D uertiſed of their intent, and well acquainted with their practiſes, he refuſed to ſend him; after which he wrote vnto him, that it was the Graund ſeigniors pleaſure, he ſhould ſend the Moldauian vnto him, that he might conferre with him. To whom the Embaſſador made anſwer, that vnleſſe he might ſee a warrant vnder the grand Seigniors owne hand, he would not deliuer him. *Murath Baſſa* ſeeing that none of theſe practiſes could preuaile, reſolued to fetch him out by force. For the effecting whereof, he drew together two thouſand Ianizaries. The Embaſſadour hearing of his intent, fortified his houſe, and armed his people with the Moldauians which were with their prince, meaning to ſtand vpon his defence. *Murath Baſſa* deſirous to know what the Embaſſadour did in his lodging, diſguiſed a Ianizarie like vnto a Greekiſh ſheepheard, who entring into the Embaſſadours houſe, found them all in armes: E then returning vnto the Baſſa, he told him, that he had to doe with a mad man, and if he proceeded in his enterpriſe, he would hazard the loſſe of many Ianizaries: whereupon he gaue it ouer. After which the Embaſſador being called home into ENGLAND, the Moldauian deſpairing of reſtitution from the Sultan, hee turned Turke; and being preſented to the graund Seignior, was made Bey of BVASIA in ASIA, the which hee enioyed not long; for *Naſſaf* comming from the Perſian warres, diſcharged him. Thus MOLDAVIA hauing many preten- ding ſoueraignes, ſuffered many miſeries, and was a prey to Turke, Tartarians, and Polonians, all partiſans to theſe ſoueraignes.

Troubles in Moldauia.

Three princes pretending to Moldauia.

The negotiation of the Embaſſador of England for one of the princes of Moldauia.

These were the troubles which the Turke cauſed at land for the ruine of Chriſtians. But behold what he ſuffered at ſea by the gallies of FLORENCE, MALTA, and NAPLES; the Flo- F rentines made their enterpriſe apart. The great duke of TVSCANIE being aduertiſed that the Carauan, which tranſported the tribute of AEGYPT to CONSTANTINOPLE, prepared to put to ſea, he reſolued to diuert this tribute, and by the valour of his armes to bring it to LIGORNE: and for the effecting hereof, he ſpeedily armed foure gallions, vnder the command of *Beauregard* a Frenchman, who was Admirall. The firſt was called the new gallion, in which the ſaid Admirall went: the ſecond the great Ligorne, commaunded by *Brandequedor*,

The voyage of the gallions of Florece againſt the Turks.

dor, Generall at land, and allied to the Duke; and the other two were commaunded by two French captaines. *Beauregard* hauing receiued commaundement, to paſſe with this fleet into the Leuant, to meet with the Carauan, he bent his courſe towards CANDIE, a fertile iſland inhabited by the Grecians: Being arriued in the port of CALISMENE to water, he continued there ſixe daies. Leauing this Iſland, he ſailed towards CYPRVS, which is held by the Turks, and ſo coaſting SIRIA, they learned of a ſhip of MARSEILLES, that the Carauan was yet in the port of ALEXANDRIA, where they prepared for their voyage to CONSTANTINOPLE. To attend them, the Admirall *Beauregard*, went and caſt anchor at the fort of SIDON, called SAREPTA, gouerned by *Emir*, or *Armill Facardin*, a rebell to the Turke, and a great friend to the Florentines, where he ſtaied twelue dayes, to take in Bisket, fleſh, and other neceſſarie refreſhings. And hauing made a more ſtrict league of friendſhip with *Facardin*, hee honoured him with a cofer full of armes, whereby the Florentines ſhippes came as freely into thoſe parts, as into their owne countrey.

The enterpriſe to take the Caravan of Egypt

Beauregard hauing well victualled and munitioned his gallions, hee returned towards the Iſle of CYPRVS, whereas hee found a Chriſtians ſhip called the Flying Dragon, which came from DAMIETTA, by whom he was aſſured that the Turks armie, conſiſting of a great number of gallies, was gone out of the port of RHODES, and had taken a Flemiſh ſhip. Theſe newes made him thinke that he ſhould meet the fleet, and that hee muſt of force defend himſelfe. Wherefore hee made all things readie, and preſcribed the order which his captaines ſhould hold during the fight, cauſing his ordinance to be mounted as if they were to ioyne. Hee had foure as good gallions, and as well furniſhed, as any were in the Leuant ſeas, either of them being armed with fortie pieces of ordinance, and 400 good ſouldiors. Betwixt the Iſland of CYPRVS and CARAMANIA they incountred this Turkiſh fleet conſiſting of fortie gallies, and two galliaſſes, vnder the commaund of Baſſa *Muſtapha Grego*, who was Generall of this fleet, which was in ſight of the Florentines ſhips: the galliaſſes aduance to take view of them, and to finde how farre their cannon would reach; and in the meane time the gallies put themſelues into the forme of a Croiſſant, readie for the combat. *Beauregard* an old ſea captaine, and well practiſed in ſea fights, would not make a ſhot againſt the gallies, but attended vntill the whole fleet came cloſe vp to him, which being neere, he ſaluted them ſo furiouſly with his cannon, giuing them the broad ſides, as the Turkes (who expected no ſuch reception) were all amazed, and making a ſtand, would proceed no further. Their Generall hauing well obſerued the reſolute countenance of the Florentines, diuided his gallies into two ſquadrons, giuing charge to the one to giue an aſſault to the Florentines gallions; and in the meane time the reſt ſhould prepare themſelues to fight.

The Florentines meet with the Turkes fleet.

The Turkes aſſaile the gallions of Florence.

Being thus diuided, they came one after another to the aſſault, the which continued for the ſpace of ſixe houres, and yet could not board them. *Muſtapha* ſeeing fiue of his gallies ſunke by the enemies cannon, with the loſſe of all the men that were within them; but ſuddenly the wind changed, and proued fauourable to the Florentines, who imbraced this aduantage, giuing chaſe to the Turkes gallies, forcing them to ſeeke their ſafetie in the hauen of FAMAGVSTA, the chiefe fort of CYPRVS; ſo of aſſailants (being beaten) they became runne awaies: ſo inconſtant are the accidents of warre; and eſpecially at ſea, wheras the good or bad ſucceſſe many times dependeth of a little wind.

Fiue Turkiſh gallies ſunke.

The Turkes put to flight.

This Turkiſh fleet, hauing loſt fiue gallies, and recouered a Port in CYPRVS, the Admirall *Beauregard*, ſeeing his deſigne againſt the Carauan diſappointed, hee reſolued to returne towards LIGORNE with his Gallions: being at ſea, hee incountred a Turkiſh veſſell called a Caramouſall, which came from RAODES to goe vnto CYPRVS: they chaſed it, and in the end ouertooke it, which they preſt ſo with their ordinance, as they ſlew 130 Turkes, and tooke 300 ſlaues. The bootie was verie rich, being valued at 140000 crownes. After this prize, their victuals beginning to faile, hauing beene ſo long at ſea, they bent their courſe for LIGORNE: but the wind falling contrary, the were forced to ſtay eight dayes in the Iſland of SCARPANTE, paſt the bar of MESSINA, and hauing giuen chaſe to certaine gallies of TVNES, they arriued at LIGORNE the fifteenth of Iune, where there was great ioy for their returne, and the prize which they had brought, the which according to the cuſtome was to bee diuided; one third to the ſouldiors and marriners, and the other two parts imploied for the entertainment of the ſhips, and the paiment of the captaines.

The Florentines take a rich ſhip of the Turkes.

This

A This Carauan which goes from Egypt to Constantinople, is euery yeare attended for, not onely by the gallions and gallies of Florence, but by those of Malta and Naples; and by all the pirats of the Mediterranean sea; like vnto the English and Hollanders, who yearely lay in wait for the Indian fleet, before the conclusion of the peace and truce with the Spaniard. And although their principall designe was to take some part of this Carauan, yet they had other enterprises vpon the Turkes countrie, besides the spoile of merchants which they met by chance, which many times paid the charge of their voiage: and sometimes they that thought to take were taken, and lost both their ships and liues.

The exploits of the gallies of Malta and Naples.

B The gallies of Malta, commanded by the Bailife of *Venouge*, and those of Naples by the Marquis of *S. Croix* ioyned together soon after, with a designe to set vpon the carauan, which caried the reuenue and tribute of Egypt to Constantinople, or else to put in execution the enterprise which they had long before proiected, vpon certaine places in Albania, or to surprise or spoile some island in the Archipelague, which might pay their charges: but the first failing, they met with a Venetian ship laden with merchādise, to the value of 100000 crowns.

A Venetian ship taken

The Spaniards who commanded in the gallies of Naples, seized vpon this ship, but the Generall of Malta would by no meanes consent vnto it, nor suffer any of the merchandize to be put into his gallies, for that he would not vniustly violat the friendship which was betwixt his order and the state of Venice. This example did touch the Spaniards consciences, so as within few daies they sent away the Venetian ship, but in courtesie they had vnloaden all the

C merchandise.

The Christians gallies go to the island of Lango

After this prey of a Christian ship, the fleet discouered two sailes at sea, sending presently after them, they were two barks, the one comming from Candie loaden with wood, and the other from Scarpanta charged with wine, the which being brought vnto the Generals, gaue them to vnderstand, that the carauan of Egypt was not yet past, being aduertised that 50 christians gallies attended them in their passage. Vpon this aduice the Christian Generals being out of hope to surprise the carauan, presently resolued to vndertake a more great and glorious enterprise, and to surprise the island and castle of Lango, in the Archipelague, vpon the coast of Natolia, and about seuen of the clocke at night they set saile with a good wind, but being changed in the morning, they were forced to returne to the Island of Porchere,

D from whence they parted againe at eight of the clock at night, and continuing their course in the morning they discouered three Florentine ships, who told them that they had entred into the Isle of Nigropont with seuen gallies; but hauing been discouered, they could not effect any thing, and that their gallies were separated from them in the chase of foure galliots. The Christian fleet continuing their course, they arriued about 11 of the clocke in the morning, at *S. Iean de Seruae*, where hauing cast anchor, there was a counsel called in the Admiral, where they resolued to petarde the castle of Lango, toward the sea: for the execution wherof they should land 200 men; that is to say, 30 knights, and 50 souldiors, out of the gallies of Malta, and 120 Spaniards out of the gallies of Naples, and that they should carrie two petardes with them, the one giuen in charge to captain *Beaulaigue*, in the troupe of them of Mal-

E ta, & the other was cdūcted by the Spaniards; the rest of their men which they should land, should go and assault the towne of Lango. With this resolution they parted from *S. Iean de Seruae*, with a good wind, and arriued at the island of Lango on the sixt of Iune, an houre after midnight, whereas they landed 3 miles from the towne: they that were appointed for the enterprise, marcht on with their petardes, according to direction; but the night being very dark, the troupe of Malta straied from their guide, but their valour brought them directly to the wals of the towne, where after many turnings and windings, to finde a fit place to plant the petard, (notwithstanding that they were discouered and much shot at) *Beaulague* set it to a port next the sea, well flankt by the castle, the which hee forced, and his men entring with furie, went from street to street, and put all to the sword that made resistance. The Spa-

Lango forced by the christians

F niards on the other side, made another breach with their petarde, and entred the towne; notwithstanding, that at their first approach, the Turkes (hauing discouered them) played vpon them with their great ordnance and small shot: the troups being ioyned together, hauing cut all the Turkes in pieces they met with, they came to the place before the castle, which they thought to surprise: but the bridge was drawen, and they lay open at the mercie of their shot; so as there were fifteene knights of Malta hurt, one slaine, with a Spanish

captaine,

captaine, and ſome ſixe and thirtie ſouldiors of the gallies of NAPLES, and as many wounded. Day being come, the Bailife of VENOVCE, Generall of the gallies of MALTA, came vnto the towne with the foreward, wherein were 150 knights, and 450 ſouldiors, the Marqueſſe of Saint *Croix* followed him with the two ſonnes of the Viceroy of NAPLES, and 1500 Spaniards, who ſpoiled the towne and ſuburbs, and tooke all that were liuing captiue: But the caſtle being well fortified, they found it impoſſible to force; wherupon imbarking their men and ſpoile, they reſolued in their returne to MALTA and NAPLES, to make an enterpriſe vpon ſome townes of ALBANIA, but vpon the way they were aduertiſed, that the Turkes had diſcouered the intelligence which the Spaniards and knights of MALTA had with the Grecians of the countrey; whereupon they tooke reuenge vpon them, putting many of them to death, and amongſt others a Patriarch, who (being accuſed to haue practiſed the Chriſtians reuolt againſt the Turks) was cruelly fleied aliue, and his skinne ſent to CONSTANTINOPLE: ſo dangerous a thing it is to ſeeke for libertie with this Mahometan nation.

An enterpriſe vpon Albania diſcouered by the Turks

A Patriarch of Greece fleyed aliue.

The Carauan of ÆGYPT was ſtill in the port of ALEXANDRIA, attending a paſſage, and to be freed from ſo many Chriſtian gallies which lay in wait for it; and it ſtayed the longer by reaſon of the great plague, wherewith CONSTANTINOPLE was afflicted. But in the end of October, *Mechmet* Baſſa of CAIRE (who would conduct it in perſon) hauing a conuoy of fiftie gallies well armed, put to ſea, and arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE without any encounter: At his landing, this Baſſa cauſed to march before him 60 mules, euery one laden with 20000 Sequins in kind, being a whole yeares tribute of the kingdome of EGYPT, the which he cauſed to bee carried to the Sultans Serail. This money was welcome to the Port: For the former warres both in HVNGARIE, TRANSYLVANIA, in ASIA againſt the rebels, and in PERSIA, had ſo waſted the Emperours treaſure, as it would hardly intertaine one of his armies. The Baſſa who had gathered this tribute together faithfully, and with great diligence, was at his comming to the Sultans Port, honoured with the charge of Baſſa of the ſea (hee who had it before being aduaunced to the dignitie of Viſier) and moreouer the *Sultan* promiſed him his daughter in marriage, being but three yeares old.

The Carauan of Egypt arriues at Conſtãtinople

The Baſſaes recompence that brought it.

Newes came to the Port, that certaine ſhips, gallies, and galleaſſes of the Chriſtians, to the number of fiftie, came neere vnto the Helleſpont, which put the Turkes in great feare, and complaints being brought vnto the Graund *Seigniour*, that certaine Caramouſalls had been taken by the Chriſtian gallies. He ſent preſently for the Captaine Baſſa or Admirall of the ſea, demaunding of him, whether the report of theſe loſſes were true or no? To whom he anſwered yes. Why are not you then at ſea, ſaith hee? Hee anſwered, For that I can get neither men nor money. Whereupon the Deftardar or Treaſurer was ſent for, who had loſt his head, had not the Aga of the grand Seigniors women intreated for him.

The Turkes are in feare of the Chriſtians gallies.

This Summer CONSTANTINOPLE and the countrey thereabouts, was ſo plagued with ſuch clouds of graſhoppers, as they did ſhadow the verie ſunne beames, and fell vpon the citie and countrey round about. The Turkes conſulted with their wiſemen, what it might portend: who anſwered, That they did foreſhew great plentie to follow: but indeed they left not a greene hearbe nor a leafe in all the countrey adioyning, nor in the citie, where they entred into their very chambers, and annoyed them much, being almoſt as bigge as dormiſe with red wings. And ſoone after there fell ſuch extraordinarie great haile in CONSTANTINOPLE, & GALLATA, with ſuch abundance of raine, as the violence of the water did ſuddenly ſhut vp one of the gates of the citie, and ſo rebounding filled their ſhops and houſes, that very many were in great danger of drowning. Some houſes fell downe; and ſome people were ſlaine, the pauements of the ſtreetes were torne vp, and the ſtones carried together into great heapes.

Graſhopers at Conſtantinople ſpoile the countrey.

Violent raine in the citie.

Wee haue formerly made relation of the Perſians victories, and of the defeat and death of *Cicala* Generall of the Turkes armie, in the yeare 1605. And that the yeare following the Sophie hauing recouered whatſoeuer the Turks had taken from his predeceſſors, had extended the bounds of his Empire vnto the backe ſea, from whence he ſent an Embaſſador vnto the Graund *Seignior*, to let him vnderſtand, that hauing recouered what had beene vniuſtly vſurped from him, he would proceed no further, but deſired to liue in peace, the which might now bee the better aſſured, the one holding nothing from the other. Moreouer, this Perſian Embaſſadour hauing remained ſeuen moneths at the Sultans port, was in the end forced to retire

A retire into PERSIA without audience. And lastly, that *Amurath Serder* the graund Visier, was afterwards forced to conuert his armes against *Gambolat* and the rebels of ASIA, and to neglect the warre of PERSIA.

Notwithstanding the Persian warre, there arriued this yeare at CONSTANTINOPLE, an Embassador from PERSIA, who according to the Turks manner, was attended on by a great troup of Chaoux on horsebacke, Capigis, Ianizaries and their captaines, sent by the Sultan to conduct him to his lodging. Within few dayes after his arriuall, there was a great show made in CONSTANTINOPLE, by the seuerall trades of the citie, euery one marching by themselues before the graund Seigniors serraill, and representing vnto him their manner of marching in B the warres, and the order of their prouision; some carying on their shoulders sheepe, others lambes, calues, beefe, &c. All which was done of pollicie to daunt and dishearten the Persian Embassador, and to encourage their own people, and withall to let him know, that there should be as great plentie in their campes, as hee saw at that present. And to abuse him still with the imagination of their great preparation, the Chimacham or Visiers Lieutenant, sent the next day for this Persian Embassador, and during their conference had taken order that the Emperour of Tartarias brother (who was then in the Sultans court) should come in, at whose entrance the Chimacham arose from his place, *Oh* (saith he) *I know for what you come, It is for money for your soudiours: you shall receiue it at such a place.* Which words were heard by a Dragoman to the English Embassador being then present: the which was done to terrifie C the Persian embassador, and at the same time and to the same end they sent ouer diuers troups of soldiors to SCVDARET, as if they had bin ready to march with an armie.

1611

A Persian Embassador comes to Constantinople

The Turkes great armies are not raised in haste, neither doe they march in post: when as the Spahis, that is to say, the horsemen, which make the greatest part of his armie, and haue no other pay or entertainement than the reuenues of certaine land, are discharged, they must haue a whole yeare to recouer their reuenue, and to put themselues in equipage; and moreouer, it is threescore dayes march for an armie, from CONSTANTINOPLE into PERSIA.

The Turks armie against the Persian.

Also in the yeare 1609 and 1610, the Turke had not attempted any thing against the Persian, who still solicited him for peace. The greatnesse of the *Ottoman* Empire, could not resolue to make a peace, hauing receiued so great defeats, they would giue it, but as victors, not as vanquished. But this yeare *Achmat* resolued to send a puissant armie of aboue 150000 D men, against this auntient enemie of his house, vnder the command of *Amurath Serder* his Graund Visier: But before the armie entred into PERSIA, it was without a commander, by the death of *Serder*, in the end of Iuly; so as they were forced to stay and attend the Sultans pleasure from CONSTANTINOPLE.

The death of Amurath Seder

It was suspected that hee had beene poysoned by *Nassuf Bassa*, one that stood out in rebellion against the Graund Seigniour, and yet hee had many friendes in the Turkes armie: Wherefore to preuent all mutinies, and consequently, the ouerthrowe of the whole armie, *Amurath Bassa* in his sickenesse aduised the Graund Seigniour (by letters which hee sent vnto him) to make *Nassuf* Generall of the whole armie, and so by faire meanes to drawe him home, and then to dispose of him at his pleasure. The Sultan E with his Bassaes approoued well of this aduice, and chose him Graund Visier, and Generall of the armie; who hauing receiued the Seale and Authoritie, did foorthwith put many of *Amuraths* friends to death, and with their money payed all the souldiors, which had wanted pay, whereof some had beene without fiue yeares before: hee also sent vnto the Graund Seigniour threescore and tenne mules loaden with money of *Amuraths* treasure, and threescore with goods, all which the Sultan gaue vnto *Amuraths* wife and children.

It is strange to read, how the Grand Seignior doth tyrannise ouer his subiects, and how seuerely he doth punish the least omission in any of his officers: for I finde it obserued, that the F 7 of Ianuary in the end of this yeare 1611, the grand seignior being abroad in the snow, and not well prouided for of fuell, he caused *Stambol Aga* who had that charge to be stript naked, and set in the snowe foure or fiue houres. Indeed this Winter was verie rigorous, and there fell aboundance of snowe throughout all Turkie, with great stormes, manie houses were beaten downe; and amongst other the French Consull at ALEPPO was slaine with the fall of his owne house.

Seueritie of the Sultan.

Naſsuf parted from Asia, and marched with his armie vnto to the frontiers of Persia, G
where he committed ſuch ſpoiles, as the Sophie was conſtrained to draw all his forces toge-
ther, to preuent the ruine of his countrey, being then about the midſt of Auguſt. But when
they were come to a battell, the Perſian finding the partie vnequall for him, and dangerous,
The Perſian offers conditions of peace and a tribute. offered conditions of peace, & promiſed to giue the Turke a quantitie of ſilke which ſhould
make the charge of 200 cammels, for a yearely tribute, in acknowledgement of ſome coun-
tries which he had conquered from the *Ottomans*. Theſe offers were accepted at Constanti-
nople; but there was added that the Perſians ſonne ſhould be called Baſſa of Tavris, and
that the magiſtrat and iudge of that citie, called the Cady, ſhould bee ſent from Constanti-
nople. We ſhall ſee in the following yere the effects of theſe propoſitions, by the Embaſſa-
dor of Persia, whom *Naſſuf* ſhall bring to Constantinople; in the meane time let vs return H
to the Mediterranean ſea, to take a ſuruey of the valiant exploits of the knights of Malta a-
gainſt the Turkes.

The falſhood of a Turke puniſhed by the iuſtice of God. On the 26 of April, a Turk hauing lent a good ſum of mony to a Chriſtian, to be paid at a
certain day; he came before the appointed day with another Turk, & willed the chriſtian to
pay the mony to that other Turk when the day came, which the chriſtian promiſed to do, &
performed it accordingly: but the Turk denied the receit therof: wherupon he to whom the
mony was properly due, came & demanded it, to whom the chriſtian anſwered, that he had
paid it to that partie to whom he had aſſigned it: wherunto the Turk replied, that if it were ſo
he was ſatisfied, but yet the other Turk denied it: wherupon the matter was broght before the
Iudge, and the Turke who had receiued the mony, taking an oath to the contrary: the Chri- I
ſtian according to the Turkiſh iuſtice, was inforced to pay the money againe: the which hee
did, but withall hee praied God to ſhew ſome publike ſigne which of them had done the
wrong. And thereupon the Turke going forth to repaire home to his houſe, fell downe dead
in the ſtreet.

The great Maſter *Vignancourt* continuing his generous deſignes to ruine the Turke, had an
enterpriſe againſt Navarrin, a place importing this common enemie of Chriſtians: for the
execution whereof, he ſent the fiue gallies of his order, vnder the charge of *Vaqueras*, great
commaunder of the order, and chiefe of the nation of Provence. They came within ſome
miles of the ſhore, but found their landing very difficult, for that they had bin diſcouered by
one of the caſtles of Navarrin, which had giuen the alarum vnto the whole countrey, ſo as K
they were forced to paſſe on to ſome more eaſie conqueſt, to the end their voiage might not
proue vnprofitable: wherfore they ſailed into the Archipelague, & came neere to the coaſt of
Morea, ten leagus from Corinth, where in the night they landed 800 men vnder the con-
Corinth taken and ſpoiled by the knights of Malta. duct of the commander of *Cremeaux*, generall at land; this troup marched towards Corinth
and an houre before day were at the town gates to force them. Some Turks tooke armes, but
this weake reſiſtance could not ſtay the knights from entring with their troups, they ſackt the
towne, and hauing taken what ſpoile was portable, they caried away with them 500 ſlaues.
After this triumph, the Chriſtians made a happy retrait, and in good order, notwithſtanding
all the attempts of the Turks horſe and foot, who were drawn together in great numbers, ma-
king 10000 ſouldiors, for the countrey is very populous; in view of whom they imbarked L
their ſpoile and ſlaues. Hereby it appeares that this was one of the moſt deſperat enterpriſes
that hath been of long time ſeene. For to attempt a place ſo far from their retrait, in ſo popu-
lous a countrey, which vpon the leaſt alarum, may draw together tenne or twelue thouſand
Turkes, and to make their retreat with ſo ſmall a number, againſt ſuch great troupes
which purſued them: Doubtleſſe wee muſt confeſſe, that as they ſhewed great valour, and
had good fortune, ſo they vndertooke a very daungerous enterpriſe. Thus the knights of
Malta vanquiſhed, whom we might terme the maſters of the Mediterranean ſea, if the reue-
nues of their order would ſuffer them to ſet forth ſhipping, and forces equall to their valour.

But to follow the variable courſe of the hiſtorie, let vs obſerue the different occupations of
Chriſtians. At Prage the Germanes entertained themſelues, with the conſideration of M
a Crowne which appeared in the Firmament, ouer that Citie about the middeſt of
October, giuing a verie great light, and about it armies of men fighting who ſhould
haue it. At that time the Emperour *Rodulphus* was vpon the Weſt, or declining of his
dayes, and *Matthias* who ſucceeded him in the Empire, then king of Hvngarie, was vp-

on

A on the ſunne riſing of his triumphs. Many expounded this heauenly apparition, as a preſage of happineſſe and good fortune to *Matthias:* he enioyed the crowne of HVNGIRIA already, and by deſignation that of BOHEMIA, and now they did prognoſticate vnto him that of the Romanes. Doubtleſſe men which aſpire after great fortunes, doe rather adorne the ſun riſing, than the ſetting; and mans life when it declines, taſtes of the lees. The flouriſhing glorie of *Matthias*, his age, and his actions in the warres, did adde nothing to the authoritie of other men in the countrie, but did mightily ſettle his owne. Three ſunnes which were ſeene in the firmament ouer VIENNA, the chiefe citie of AVSTRIA, confirmed the Germanes more in this their hope, that he ſhould haue the third crowne of the Romans. This laſt apparition
B happened the yeare following.

About the end of the yeare, ſome of the Engliſh Embaſſadours men entring into quarrell with certaine Iamoglans of the next Serail: from words they fell to blowes; during which tumult one of the embaſſadors men threw a ſtone, & ſmote a Iamoglan on the forhead, wherof he died within few houres after. The Aga of the ſerraill cõplained hereof to the grand Viſier, who preſently ſent the Subbaſſa of GALATA, to make inquiry of the fact: the embaſſador went himſelfe to the ſerraill, & ſent for his men which had bin in the quarrel, willing the Turks to deſigne the partie which had thrown the ſtone: who all with one ſhout ran vpon one *Simon Dibbins*, a man that was newly come from CANDIE where he had ſerued in the Venetian garriſons, and was now entertained into the embaſſadors ſeruice. This *Simon* was not hee that
C threw the ſtone: notwithſtanding the Turks would none but him; on him they laid hands, and dragd him away. The embaſſador interpoſing himſelfe, & offring to pledge for him, was thruſt away by them, his men beaten, & one of his pages wounded: whereupon he complained to the graund Viſier, but preuailed little; for to priſon they dragged this *Simon*, and there kept him a whole month; neither could he be releaſed, albeit the Engliſh nation offred great ſums to ranſome his life: for the Turks would needs haue blood for blood. The day of execution being appointed, the embaſſador ſent his chaplain to the priſon where this *Simon* was, to prepare him for death: vnto whom (examining him how he had formerly liued) hee confeſſed, that in ENGLAND ſome few yeres before he had killed a man, for which fact he fled thẽce into CANDIE: from whence he came to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he was to ſuffer for that which
D he did not: the iuſt iudgment of God purſuing him to the ſhedding of his blood in CONSTANTINOPLE among Turkes vndeſeruedly, for the blood which he ſhed in ENGLAND wilfully. He was hanged at the Embaſſadors gates, his head and heeles the next night were ſtollen away by the Turkes, as it was thought, to vſe in ſome kind of ſorcery, the other parts of his body they had leaue to take downe and burie.

This yeare 1612 they did celebrate at CONSTANTINOPLE a double nuptiall feaſt; for the mariages of Baſſa *Mehemet* ſonne to the deceaſed *Cicala*, with the Sultans ſiſter, and of Baſſa *Mechmet*, Admirall at ſea, he whom wee haue ſeene lately returne from EGYPT, and bring to CONSTANTINOPLE the reuenues of that rich kingdom, with the eldeſt daughter of his emperour. For the feaſts of yong *Cycala*, the Spahi made courſes on horſebacke with battleaxes
E and barres, in the open place neere vnto the ſeraill, where they made diuers fireworks of verie great charge, but of ſmal inuention, & they gaue preſents to aboue 2000 perſons, beſides the charge of the banqueting ſtuffe which amounted to aboue 20000 crownes. The pompe was double, for the Sultans women did celebrat that day with the greateſt ladies of the Port, and the men ſeparated in other places did ſolemniſe it in like maner. But the magnificence of the mariage of the Baſſa Admirall at ſea with *Achmats* eldeſt daughter, had far more luſtre at the port. The ceremony was performed on the 30 of Iune, 20 daies after the other; and the order of this pompe, as well as ſome other which we haue deſcribed in this Hiſtorie, requires a particular relation.

The ceremonies at the daughters mariage.

The day before the conſummation of the mariage, they ſent the brides moueables and ie-
F wels, from the Seraill to the bridegromes lodging, with this order and ſtate that followeth: Firſt there marched 500 Ianizaries on foot, being followed with the grand Prouoſt of CONSTANTINOPLE, and the generall Surueiour, both on horſebacke and attired in cloth of gold: the Aga or Collonell of the Ianizaries very proudly adorned, and inuironed with ſome Ianizaries marched alone on horſback: after theſe two hundred men of qualitie wel mounted, and richly attired, followed with a ſlow pace. The laſt which marcht in this pompe or cere-

The order of the Brides Truſſe or moueables.

monie, were the Taliſmans, Centons, Emirs, and other miniſters of *Mahomets* Clergie. And presently followed after the Baſſa *Achmat*, Deftarda, or high Treaſurer, who conducted the mooueables, as choſen by the Sultan to be godfather or Sagois to the bride, being inuironed with twelue footmen attired in long robes of gold. After him followed the moueables, apparell, and iewels, which made the brides truſſe, hauing in the head excellent muſicke after the Turkiſh manner, of Hoboyes and Kettledrums on horſbacke. G

Wherein the brides moueables conſiſted.

Theſe mooueables, or this truſſe conſiſted of 27 preſents. The firſt was a little hat all of gold, couered with pretious ſtones, & with pantofles or womens ſhoes after the Turkiſh faſhion of pure gold, enricht with turquoiſes, and rubies: A booke of *Mahomets* law, the couering whereof was of maſſie gold all ſet with diamonds, many braceletes, and other rare deuices for women of pure gold, with many precious ſtones: A little coffer a cubit long, and H halfe as broad, all of chriſtall of the rocke, hauing the corners of gold, in the which were to be ſeene great diamonds and huge pearles, to the value of 80000 pounds ſterling: After this pretious coffer, were caried many ſmocks imbroidered with gold and pearle, and headbands for the forehead, with many robes of cloth of gold. All this was diſtributed into 27 preſents as we haue ſaid, and caried with great pompe by 27 men on foot.

The brides ſlaues.

After theſe preſents followed 11 caroches full of yong maidens, ſlaues to ſerue the bride: theſe caroches were couered & ſhut, and either of them attended by 2 eunuchs Moores: after theſe followed 28 virgins ſlaues, attired in cloth of gold, and accompanied by 28 blacke Eunuches all on horſebacke, and richly clad. After which were ſeene 240 mules, loaden with tents of tapiſtry, cloth of gold, ſattin, veluet, with the ground of gold, with many cuſhions, I which are the chaires the ladies of Turkie vſe, with many other rich and ſumptuous mooueables. Such was the Truſſe which this yong princeſſe brought to her ſpouſes houſe. Doubtleſſe this equipage was ſtately, and did well become the pompe and greatneſſe of the *Othomans* houſe, from whence ſhe had iſſued, the mightieſt and richeſt of all the royall houſes in EVROPE, yea I dare boldly ſay of all the world.

The order of the brides conducting to her husband.

The mariage day being come, the bride was conducted to her husbands lodging, with no leſſe pompe and ſtate than her moueables. The Ianizaries marcht firſt as they had formerly done, being followed by the grand Prouoſt, the Surueior, their Aga, and many other officers of the port. The Emirs (who are deſcended from *Mahomet*, and alone carrie greene turbants) marcht after to the number of 80. This name of Emir is as much to ſay as lord. They which K

Emirs & their priuiledges.

weare them anſwer not, and obey none but their chiefe, called Mirabachi, and their voice in iudgement ſtands for two: they were followed by the Taliſmans or prieſts of *Mahomets* law, and by a great number which ſtudie it, and which aſpire to the offices of Cadis or Iudges, of Cadileſquiers or Mufti. The Viſiers or ſupreme Iudges of the Turks eſtate, who iudge of all affaires in counſel, came after with the grand Viſier, who is lieutenant general to the Turkiſh emperor throughout his whole empire, and keeps the ſeales of his empire. He had on his left hand (which is the moſt honourable ranke in Turkie) the grand Mufti, or ſupreme Biſhop of their law. The muſicke followed after on horſebacke conſiſting of 30 men with drummes and Hoboies, being followed by 8 Egiptians, which caried biſcaine, tabors, & did a thouſand apiſh trickes. Theſe were followed by 40 muſitians, marching two & two, ſome playing of L citterns, others of harps, and ſome of lutes after the Turkiſh maner. A foole (held for a ſaint amongſt them) being muſled with a cap & a cloke couered with mutton bones, danc't & ſung with theſe inſtruments: fiftie of the chiefe officers of the Arſenall marcht after them, and 30 men with hammers & other iron inſtruments, to breake down whatſoeuer aduanced too far in the ſtreets, and might hinder the free paſſage of two trees of an immenſe height, laden with diuers ſorts of fruits all of wax, caried by many men, & ſupported from the top and the midſt with ropes. After theſe trees came 20 officers belonging to *Achmat Baſſa* the high Treaſurer, Godfather to the bride. And he himſelf alone richly attired, & proudly mounted, after whom came 2 great torches light, caried by many ſlaues, & then a third torch of a wonderfull bignes, all couered with plats of gold, & ſhining more with pretious ſtones than the flame which M burnt. The *Raiſſer Aga* with 50 of the princeſſes officers, followed theſe lights, & after them was carried a great canopie of crimſon veluet, and after it another greater, couered with plates of gold, whoſe curtaines being ſhut on all ſides, hung down to the ground. Vnder this canopie was the princeſſe on horſebacke, with ſome of her blacke eunuches, her caroch followed

A lowed couered with cloth of gold, and drawen by foure great white horſes, wonderful beautifull. Then followed eight other caroches, in which were a great number of the brides maids with many Negroes gelt; and finally, 25 virgin ſlaues, choſen amongſt the faireſt, all on horſbacke, hauing their haire confuſedly hanging vpon their ſhoulders. Such was the pompe of this mariage: But many times the nuptiall feaſt is intermixt with funerall mourning. For not many dayes after, the Sultans ſecond daughter, promiſed to *Naſſuf Baſſa*, was caried to her graue without any pompe or honour: for the Turks make no great eſteeme of women. *The death of the Sultans daughter.*

The day after the mariage, the graund Seignior did cruelly beat his Sultana, the mother of this daughter whom he had maried to the captaine Baſſa, he ſtabbed her with his handiarre or B dagger thorow the cheek, and trod her vnder his feet. The reaſon was, becauſe ſhe had ſtrangled a fauourite of his, which was one of his ſiſters ſlaues, whom the graund Seignior hauing ſeene, and being enamoured with her, ſent for her. The Sultana hearing thereof, cauſed her to bee brought to her lodging, where ſhee ſtript her of her apparell, ſtrangled her, and put her clothes vpon one of her owne ſlaues, whom ſhee ſent to the Sultan inſtead of the other, and at her returne ſtrangled her alſo, as ſhee had done many others when they once appeared to be with child by the graund Seignior. *The grand Seignior beats his Sultana.*

The plague beginning furiouſly to ſpoile the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, the Sultan was forced to return to his country palace, called the Serail of *Darut Baſſa*, to auoid the danger of this violent contagion: the which makes me thinke, that the Turkiſh emperors for their own C profit diſpenſe with ſome articles of their faith; for as we haue ſaid before, The Turks are ſo obſtinatly tied to the belieſe of predeſtination, as they will not vouchſafe to turne from a peſtiferous bodie, when it is caried to the graue, and much leſſe forbeare to viſit his friends being ſick of the plague, for that (ſay they) if we muſt need die of this contagion, it is in vaine to flie it, for it will find vs whereſoeuer; if not, our health ſhall neuer be impaired, although we conuerſe with thoſe that are ſicke of this diſeaſe. But their Sultans know well how to flie the danger, yea & to cauſe them to be led vnder the arms that come to kiſſe his hand, leſt they ſhould offer him ſome violence. Thus we ſee the defect of falſe religions, when as we ſee this mark of vniuerſalitie in the faith taken away: for there euery man beleeues according to his priuat intereſt, as well as among many others which haue ſeparated themſelues from the truth, to canD ton themſelues in their errors, where we doe often trie the diuerſitie of their beliefe. *A great plague at Constantinople.*

Sultan *Achmat* being in his place of *Darut Baſſa*, and going to viſit a ſtately Moſque which he cauſed to be built there; a Deruis or religious Turke thruſt on by ſome deuilliſh furie, caſt a great ſtone at him to beat him downe; but the blow of this deteſtable traitour, fell vpon his ſhoulder, and hurt him but lightly. *Achmat* commanded they ſhould draw from this wretch the confeſſion of his confederats: but the officers of the Port cauſed him to bee executed the next day, ſomewhat to ſuddenly, and bv a death too honourable, for a crime ſo full of abomination; for they cauſed his head to be cut off. A Deruis of the ſame order had in former times ſought to murther the emperour *Mahomet* the ſecond. *A Deruis ſticket to kill the emperour.*

On the 14 of Aprill the ladie *Anne Glouer*, wife to ſir *Thomas Glouer*, embaſſador reſiding at E CONSTANTINOPLE for the Engliſh, was buried with very great ſolemnitie, the like had not bin ſeene in that countrey, ſince the Turks conquered CONSTANTINOPLE. There were preſent at this funerall of moſt nations in the world; the ſermon was preached in a large garden vnder a cypres tree: and although but few of thoſe preſent did vnderſtand it, yet it wrought this effect; that whereas the Ieſuites and Friers had formerly poſſeſt both Turks, Iewes, and other people, that the Engliſh nation ſince the change of their Religion, had neither churches, nor any forme of diuine ſeruice. Hereby they perceiued, that they had both, and ſerued God far more decently and deuoutly than they themſelues; inſomuch that the Ieſuits being aſhamed of their impoſtures, and ſlaunderous vntruth, durſt not for a while after walke the ſtreets, for feare of the Turks, who threatned them for ſo much belying the Engliſh. The ſermon being F ended, the body was carried from PERA vnto the Engliſh graues, which were almoſt a mile from the place, it was cloſed in lead & laid in a charoch couered ouer with black veluet, and the horſes with black cloth. The Dutch Embaſſador, the Hungarian Agent, the French Collonell, with a great number of all nations both men and women followed her to her graue. The tombe was of faire marble built foure ſquare almoſt the height of a man, hauing an Epitaph ingrauen thereon. *The funerall of the lady Glouer the embaſſadors wife.*

The castle of Lango taken by the Florentines.

Wee haue ſeene the yeare before the Iſland and towne of LANGO ſpoiled by the gallies of G
MALTA and NAPLES, but the caſtle was ſaued from ruine, by the reſiſtance it made againſt the Chriſtians attempts: But this yeare in Iune the great duke of Tuſcans gallies running ouer the Archepelague, aſſailed it ſo furiouſly, as they forced and ſpoiled it, carrying away 1200 priſoners. *Mechmet Baſſa* Admirall at ſea, whom wee ſaw euen now buſied at his nuptiall pompe, with the Emperours eldeſt daughter, being aduertiſed of theſe ſpoiles of the Florentines, by the daily complaints of the Turkes which loſt their ſhipping, and of many other enterpriſes attempted vpon his maſters countries lying neere the ſea ſhore, hee parted from CONSTANTINOPLE in Auguſt with three and thirtie great gallies, hauing commanded all the Beys of the iſlands and townes in the Archipelague, to ioyne with him, with as many gallies as they could make, to ſtop the Chriſtians courſes in the Weſt. But whileſt that he is buſied in thoſe ſeas, the Pirates of RVSSIA deſcending into the Euxine ſea, by the mouthes of H
thoſe riuers which diſcharge their waters into that ſea, ouerran and ſpoiled the Turks coaſts in thoſe parts.

Courſes of the Ruſſians and Tartars vpon the Turks.

At the firme land *Conſtantine* one of the pretending princes in MOLDAVIA, annoid all that had any dependance vpon the Turk. A part of that great armie of the king of Polands, which had mutined for their pay, ſpoiled PODOLIA; and a prince of the Tartarians diſcontent for that *Achmat* had preferred a couſin of his before him in the inueſtiture of the Realme of the Tartars Precopians, with 5000 ſouldiors ſpoiled the riuers of MOLDAVIA vnder the Turkes dominion, and he did the like in the gulph of Nicopolis.

Troubles in Moldauia.

This was at ſuch time when as miſerable MOLDAVIA was the theater, whereas the Turkes, I
Tartars, and Moldauians acted a bloodie tragedie, at the coſtes and charges of the poore countreymen. For *Tomſho* hauing beene choſen Vayuod or prince of that prouince by the Turke; *Conſtantine* who could not indure that he ſhould raigne, armed the countrie, ouerran it, ſpoiled it, and made hauocke of all, detaining two Capigi priſoners, whom the Sultan had ſent vnto him, with commandement to obey his wil, and a prohibition not to trouble *Tomſho* in the poſſeſſion of his prouince. But this was a meſſage of hard diſgeſtion to *Conſtantine*, hee could not with patience yeeld to this ceſſion of MOLDAVIA: And inſtead of ſending theſe meſſengers backe to the Turke with an anſwer, he carried them with him into POLONIA, whither he went to demand ſuccours, and cauſed them to be guarded as priſoners. In the meane time by the ſupport and aid of *Potoſſy* Gouernour of VELIN his brother in law, he obtained K
from the king of POLAND, that he ſhould be ſupported againſt prince *Tomſho* his competitor, whom the Turke had aduaunced; and to make his entrie into MOLDAVIA more eaſie, they reſolued to ſend an Embaſſadour vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, to intreat *Achmat* to call backe *Tomſho* to his Port, that *Conſtantine* might quietly enioy MOLDAVIA, and to acquaint him with the right and intereſt the Polonians had by their capitulations with the Turkes to name a Vayuod or Prince in that prouince, to the end no wrong might be done vnto them.

A Polonian embaſſador arreſted at Conſtantinople.

This Polonian Embaſſador being arriued at CONSTANTINOPLE, (thinking to be preſently diſpatcht, either by a grant or deniall of his demaund, and not to ſtay aboue fifteene or twentie dayes) being viſited at his arriuall by all the Embaſſadours of Chriſtian kings and princes which remained there: But inſtead of audience after ſixe weeks attendance, he was arreſted L
and detained priſoner: vnderſtanding from the Turkes that he ſhould haue no libertie, vntill that the two Capigi, whom prince *Conſtantine* caried into POLAND, were releaſed.

The Turk armes to inuade Moldauia.

The troubles and deuiſions among Chriſtians, neighbours to the Turke, haue alwaies ſerued as a bridge for this infidell to inuade them, and by this aduantage to vſurpe ſuch townes and countries as lie fit for him. Now that VALACHIA, MOLDAVIA, yea and TRANSYLVANIA, are toſt and turmoild with continuall diſorders and combuſtions: the Sultan ſeemes to embrace this occaſion, to make himſelfe ſoueraigne of theſe prouinces, and to get poſſeſſion of all that lies betwixt the riuer of Danow, the mountaines of SARMATIA, the riuer of Tibiſcus, and the Euxine ſea. He imployes all his thoughts and inuentions vpon this ſubiect, to bring his deſignes to effect. He armes and drawes forces about BELGRADE, vnder the conduct of M
Baſſa *Mahomet Belzergi*: He commands the Tartarians to enter into MOLDAVIA, and he ſent a nauall armie towards the mouth of the riuer Danowe, which made the fregats of RVSSIA to diſlodge, the which had continually made inroades and ſpoyles vpon his lands. *Battori* prince of TRANSYLVENIA was at that time before the towne of CROMSTAD, which hee had beſieged,

Cromſtad beſieged by Battori.

besieged, but the tediousnesse of this siege made him resolue to send an Embassador to CONSTANTINOPLE, to demaund succours from the Grand Seignior, to the end hee might be able to continue this siege and to take the towne: hee gaue this charge to *Andrew Giezy*, and sent him to the Sultans Port: but instead of seruing his master faithfully, he practised a detestable treason against him, to put the Turke in full possession of TRANSYLVANIA, and to make him absolute soueraigne. The practise was concluded after this manner, That the Bassa *Mahomet Belzergi* should enter the prouince with his armie, and that *Giezi* should ioyne with him with certaine troups, and should deliuer vnto him VARADIN, LIPPA, and some other strong and important places; and for recompence he should inuest him in the principalitie of TRANSYLVANIA, in the place of *Battori*, and vnder the authoritie of *Achmat*.

He demaunds succours from the Turke, and is betrayed.

This treason might haue drawen this miserable prouince into ruine, and it may be the rest neer adiacent, if it had taken the effect which the treachery of *Giezy* had promised vnto himselfe. But the Bassa of BVDA vnderstanding that *Battori* had some vent of the practise at the Port, and that being now in great feare and perturbation, he had raised the siege from before CROMSTAD, and was readie to cast himselfe into the armes of the Palatine of HVNGARIE, and to craue relefe from him; The craftie Bassa knowing that this course would be preiudiciall for the Sultan; and finding that the deposing of *Battori* would be more difficult than they expected, hee diuerted *Mahomet Bassa* from attempting any thing against *Battori* or TRANSYLVANIA. This act shewes sufficiently that Christian princes which thinke to shelter themselues vnder the shadow of the Turkish Crescent, are verie ill assured: for he neuer failes to stirre vp enemies against them, to make them sue for succours, and himselfe necessarie; Then in the end he expels them, and becomes absolute master of their countries. It was also said, that the Bassa *Mahomet* would not attempt any thing in TRANSYLVANIA, by reason of the election of the Emperour *Matthias*, whereof the Bassa of BVDA was assured by the Embassadour which the said Emperour sent to CONSTANTINOPLE, to carrie the presents vnto the Sultan, which Embassadour was honourably entertained at BVDA by the said Bassa, and from thence conducted safely to CONSTANTINOPLE.

But not to keepe these Turkish troupes idle, *Mahomet Bassa* being aduertised that *Constantine* the pretending prince in MOLDAVIA, had bin in POLAND to craue some assistance from thence, hee resolued to imploy his forces that way, to dispossesse him, and to settle another.

But the better to vnderstand the beginning and successe of these Moldauian warres, wee must make a repetition of that which past some yeares before. In the yere 1608, *Ieremy Mohyla* prince or Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, died, committing the gouernment to his brother *Simeon*, during the minoritie of his three sonnes, *Constantine*, *Alexander*, and *Bougdan*, the eldest being but eight yeares old. He left three daughters maried to three generous princes of POLONIA, *Potosky*, *Visinouisky*, and *Corresky*. Prince *Simeon* continued in the gouernment vntill the yeare 1611; After whose decease the young prince *Constantine* by the persuasion of his mother, that hee might safely take vpon him the gouernment of MOLDAVIA, and not attend any confirmation from the Sultan: For that prince *Simeon* who had beene confirmed by the Turke which then raigned, was but Tutor to his nephew, entred the gouernment. At this time there remained at CONSTANTINOPLE, one *Stephano*, or *Tomsho*, who had of a long time practised the fauour of one of the Visiers called *Mehemet*, an Eunuch of GEORGIA (who was then Chimacham, or Lieutenant to the graund Visier) and of some other Bassaes, as well by money as by other practises, suggesting falsely that he was sonne to prince *Aaron*, who had been Vayuod of MOLDAVIA before the deceased *Ieremie*, and he preuailed so by his practises and corruption (whereunto the Turkes are more subiect than any nation in the world) as he was admitted to the principalitie by the graund Seignior, and hauing giuen him to vnderstand by the Visier, that *Constantine* had thrust himselfe rashly into the gouernment, and that hee would not acknowledge him for his lord and soueraigne, nor pay the yearely tribute, which was 40000 chequines, he sent *Foussеyen Aga* with 20000 Turkes and Tartarians, to settle *Stephen* or *Tomsho* in MOLDAVIA, and to expell prince *Constantine*; which armie marched so secretly, as they had in a manner surprised him, yet drawing together a head of 10000 men, hee resolued to attend the euent. The Aga sent to acquaint him with his commission, and among other things threatned him, that if he would not suffer him to proclaime *Stephen* Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, and yeeld him the citie of YAS free, hee would cut him in pieces.

Constantine son of Ieremie enters the gouernment.

Stephen made Vayuod of Moldauia by the Turke.

Where-

Constantines answer to the Turks Aga.

Whereunto *Constantine* made answere, by the aduice of the prince *Potosky* his brother in law, That the graund Seignior had been abused: for if hee had vnderstood, that his predecessour had graunted to the deceased prince *Ieremie* his father, and to prince *Simeon* his vnckle, that he should succeed his said father in the gouernment: It was not credible that he would seeke to dispossesse him by force without hearing, and install in his place an vnknown person, who had falsely supposed himselfe to be the sonne of a prince of MOLDAVIA: neither should they find, that hee had refused to acknowledge the Sultan for his soueraigne prince, or denied to continue the same tribute which his father and vnckle had paid: But if the Aga would proceed without any respect to his offers, hee did hope that the true God of battaile would maintaine him in his iust defence, and would not suffer an vsurper to preuaile ouer a lawfull prince. *Fousseyen Aga*, who had no will to capitulat with prince *Constantine*, being corrupted by *Stephen* with presents and promises, aduanced with his armie, so as the next day they ioyned battell; but the Moldauians opprest with multitudes of Turkes, Tartarians, and Valachians, could not make it good. Wherefore *Potosky* intreated prince *Constantine* to saue himselfe, and to suffer him to finish the battaile: But he could by no meanes persuade him, still resoluing to attend the euent. Wherupon they went both again to the charge with such troups as they had left, and defeated many of the Turkes forces; but being opprest with a new supply of 2000 horse which the Aga sent by *Stephen*, they were constrained to yeeld themselues to the mercy of their enemies. Prince *Constantine* fell to the Tartarians share, either for that he had beene taken prisoner by some of them, or else was giuen them by *Fousseyen Aga*, to draw a ransome from him, and be instead of their pay. But they made no great vse of him: for as they led him away, passing the riuer of Niestre, he leapt into it, thinking either to saue himselfe by swimming, or vnwilling to suruiue his disgrace. And as for prince *Potosky*, hee was carried to CONSTANTINOPLE, and was put into the blacke tower, which is a prison appointed by men of qualitie, where he continued vntill the yeare 1616. The losse of this battell by *Constantine*, gaue an easie entrance to *Stephen* into MOLDAVIA, no man daring oppose himselfe against the Turkes forces: so as *Fousseyen Aga* caused *Stephen* to bee proclaimed prince of MOLDAVIA in the citie of YAS, and then dismist his armie, and returned to CONSTANTINOPLE. Such was the fortune of the prince of MOLDAVIA, ruined by the Turks, and such was the disorder and confusion of his miserable countrey.

Constantine and Potosky taken prisoners.

Stephen proclaimed prince of Moldauia

Constantinople afflicted with grashoppers.

This summer CONSTANTINOPLE and the country round about was annoyed with abundance of grashoppers, as it had been in the former yeare: But to free themselues from this deuouring vermine, about the midst of Iuly, the Patriarch of CONSTANTINOPLE, and ALEXANDRIA, with diuers other Bishops, and Calloires attired in their copes and other ornaments, went forth in solemne manner at the gate of ANDRIANOPLE, being the North gate of the citie. Whereupon (said the Greekes) they all perisht: and indeed about this time infinit heaps of them were found dead; but not by reason of their curse, for most were dead before they cursed them, and were to bee seene dead vpon euery bush and twigge of a tree before their curse, and many liued after their curse, and continued vntill the next summer. The cold deawes which fell this summer (being extraordinarie) were thought to bee the naturall cause thereof, God causing these deawes to fall, to free the countrey from these deuouring creatures.

The troubles of Transyluania.

Let vs now describe the miseries of the Transyluanian, and of his prouince, a table so often represented in this historie. *Gabriel Battori* who gouerned TRANSYLVANIA, as lawfully descended from the soueraigne princes thereof, hauing made himselfe a tributarie to the Turke, and by his impious actions mingled Mahomets impietie with the Christian religion, and moreouer, exceeding in his crueltie, became a memorable example to all posteritie, that princes which carrie the glorious name of Christians, when they haue once layed aside all feare of the soueraigne of princes, cannot attend, but a miserable end in their raigne, conformable to the course of their enormities. So *Gabriell Battori* holding it a law of state, to settle his affaires with the ruine of Religion, allies himselfe with the Turke, and with him afflicts the Christian prouinces. But seeing many factions made against him, as well by the descendents of *Botscay*, as by *Giezy*, *Bethlem Gabor*, and some other, he supports himselfe with the forces of *Andrew Nage*, the head of the rebels in high HVNGARIE, who came vnto him to the siege before CROMSTAD to assist him in his affaires. *Battori* entertained him with all shewes

A shewes of courtesie, inuited him to dinner in his Tent, and for a greater demonstration of friendship after dinner they two went to take the aire on horseback. *Nage* had drunke after the Hungarian manner, *Battori* intreated him to runne his horse a carreere, and he refused it, the which *Battori* taking for an offence, spake many words of contempt vnto him, and he answered him in the same manner, being more inflamed with wine, then gouerned by reason. *Battori* being wonderfully offended, that a man of no sort, being but a poore souldier of fortune, crept vp to some authority among souldiers, but by degrees of Rebellion should giue him such words for indignitie, gaue him three blowes on the head with a Battleaxe which he held in his hand and slew him. Thus *Nage* swims iustly in his owne blood, hauing wickedly and to the ruin of his Country floted in the waies of inconstancie, and populer Tu-
B mults; and so he died as he had liued. *Battori kils Nage.*

But *Battori* found himselfe dayly oppresst with many affaires, which draue him insensibly to his ruine. *Peter Decaci* kinsman to the deceased *Botscay* annoyed him on the one side with troupes of souldiors. *Andrew Giezi* (who had betrayed him in his embassie to CONSTANTINOPLE) leuied forces to prosecute him; and *Bethlehem Gabor* a Nobleman of TRANSYLVANIA, and assisted by the Turke, tooke many places from him, after that *Giezi* had forced him to raise his siege at CROMSTAD, and generally all TRANSYLVANIA, reuolted against this prince. To see more plainely in the obscuritie of these confused disorders, you must vnderstand that this prouince is peopled by three seuerall nations, the Sicules, Saxons, and Hun-
C garians. The Sicules (descended from the Scithians) came with *Attila* king of the Hunnes into PANNONIA, now called HVNGARIE, and taking their way towards their countrie, they inhabited that part of TRANSYLVANIA, which lies next to MOLDAVIA, and deuiding themselues into seuen Colloneys; they built the townes of KISDI, ORBAI, SCIPSI, CYKVDVARHEH, ARANIOS and MAROS. The Saxons (mutinying against the gouernment of the Emperour *Charlemaine* king of FRANCE, for certaine impositions wherewith he had charged them) retired into TRANSYLVANIA, and by force seized vpon that part of the countrey which confineth vpon VALACHIA, where they built the townes of HERMEINSTAD, otherwise called CIBIN, CROMSTAD, NEZEN, or BISTRIC, MEDVVISCH, SCHESBVRG, CLAVSENBVRG, and ALBA IVLIA. The Hungarians inhabited this prouince from the time of saint *Stephen* king of
D HVNGARIE, and hauing mastred the other nations, they obtained such preheminence among them, as since their successors haue caused themselues to bee called Nobles of TRANSYLVANIA, and the Vayuods or princes of the countrey, haue been taken from among them. The townes of VARRADIN, DEVER, ZILAHI, GELA, and some others owe their beginnings vnto them. The greatest part of these three nations which inhabit TRANSYLVANIA, were reuolted against *Battori:* but particularly the Saxons had taken armes against him, his great crueltie hauing forced them to this extreame remedie.

Parties against Battori.

Deuision of the people of Transyluania.

All the three nations against Battori.

Battori being thus abandoned by his subiects prosecuted by his nobilitie, and forsaken of all the world, knowing not whither to flie for succour, and not daring to trust vnto the Turk, who openly fauoured *Gabor*, he resolued to trie if he could by presents draw the Emperour
E *Matthias* to giue him any assistance: Wherefore hee sent Embassadors vnto him to promise all subiection and obedience; and hee sent for presents, a long robe or sacerdotall cloake of gold, set with pearle and precious stones, certaine plumes of blacke Herrons, adorned with precious stones, a Turkish sword, the scabberd being of siluer richly set with iewels, tenne blacke horses with rich furniture embroidered with gold and siluer, and a Turkish horse hauing halfe the body and legges of the colour of gold, with his furniture of crimson richly imbroidered. He laboured to haue the Emperour giue notice to the Bassa of BVDA that this attempt of the Turkes against TRANSYLVANIA was against the articles of peace: but the Bassa made answere, That his Emperour was not to bee blamed, if hee seized vpon that prouince which did immediatly belong vnto him, and kept it quiet from the practises of others. But
F *Battori* relying not wholly vpon this support, but desiring to haue more strings to his bowe, sent Embassadours to the Sultan, with rare and rich presents, who had secret treaties and counsells with the Bassaes, the which *Negronius* the Emperours Embassadour residing at CONSTANTINOPLE discouering, hee sent word vnto the Emperour, that he entertained a monster among men.

Battori sends an Embassador to the Emperor Matthias.

About the same time there came Embassadours from the Saxon townes of TRANSYLVANIA,

Conſtantines anſwer to the Turki Aga.

Whereunto *Conſtantine* made anſwere, by the aduice of the prince *Potosky* his brother in law, That the graund Seignior had been abuſed: for if hee had vnderſtood, that his predeceſſour had graunted to the deceaſed prince *Ieremie* his father, and to prince *Simeon* his vnckle, that he ſhould ſucceed his ſaid father in the gouernment: It was not credible that he would ſeeke to diſpoſſeſſe him by force without hearing, and inſtall in his place an vnknown perſon, who had falſely ſuppoſed himſelfe to be the ſonne of a prince of MOLDAVIA: neither ſhould they find, that hee had refuſed to acknowledge the Sultan for his ſoueraigne prince, or denied to continue the ſame tribute which his father and vnckle had paid: But if the Aga would proceed without any reſpect to his offers, hee did hope that the true God of battaile would maintaine him in his iuſt defence, and would not ſuffer an vſurper to preuaile ouer a lawfull prince. *Fouſſeyen Aga*, who had no will to capitulat with prince *Conſtantine*, being corrupted by *Stephen* with preſents and promiſes, aduanced with his armie, ſo as the next day they ioyned battell; but the Moldauians oppreſt with multitudes of Turkes, Tartarians, and Valachians, could not make it good. Wherefore *Potosky* intreated prince *Conſtantine* to ſaue himſelfe, and to ſuffer him to finiſh the battaile: But he could by no meanes perſuade him, ſtill reſoluing to attend the euent. Wherupon they went both again to the charge with ſuch troups as they had left, and defeated many of the Turkes forces; but being oppreſt with a new ſupply of 2000 horſe which the Aga ſent by *Stephen*, they were conſtrained to yeeld themſelues to the mercy of their enemies. Prince *Conſtantine* fell to the Tartarians ſhare, either for that he had beene taken priſoner by ſome of them, or elſe was giuen them by *Fouſſeyen Aga*, to draw a ranſome from him, and be inſtead of their pay. But they made no great vſe of him: for as they led him away, paſſing the riuer of Nieſtre, he leapt into it, thinking either to ſaue himſelfe by ſwimming, or vnwilling to ſuruiue his diſgrace. And as for prince *Potosky*, hee was carried to CONSTANTINOPLE, and was put into the blacke tower, which is a priſon appointed by men of qualitie, where he continued vntill the yeare 1616. The loſſe of this battell by *Conſtantine*, gaue an eaſie entrance to *Stephen* into MOLDAVIA, no man daring oppoſe himſelfe againſt the Turkes forces: ſo as *Fouſſeyen Aga* cauſed *Stephen* to bee proclaimed prince of MOLDAVIA in the citie of YAS, and then diſmiſt his armie, and returned to CONSTANTINOPLE. Such was the fortune of the prince of MOLDAVIA, ruined by the Turks, and ſuch was the diſorder and confuſion of his miſerable countrey.

Conſtantine and Potosky taken priſoners.

Stephen proclaimed prince of Moldauia

Conſtantinople afflicted with graſhoppers.

This ſummer CONSTANTINOPLE and the country round about was annoyed with abundance of graſhoppers, as it had been in the former yeare: But to free themſelues from this deuouring vermine, about the midſt of Iuly, the Patriarch of CONSTANTINOPLE, and ALEXANDRIA, with diuers other Biſhops, and Calloires attired in their copes and other ornaments, went forth in ſolemne manner at the gate of ANDRIANOPLE, being the North gate of the citie. Whereupon (ſaid the Greekes) they all periſht: and indeed about this time infinit heaps of them were found dead; but not by reaſon of their curſe, for moſt were dead before they curſed them, and were to bee ſeene dead vpon euery buſh and twigge of a tree before their curſe, and many liued after their curſe, and continued vntill the next ſummer. The cold deawes which fell this ſummer (being extraordinarie) were thought to bee the naturall cauſe thereof, God cauſing theſe deawes to fall, to free the countrey from theſe deuouring creatures.

The troubles of Tranſyluania.

Let vs now deſcribe the miſeries of the Tranſyluanian, and of his prouince, a table ſo often repreſented in this hiſtorie. *Gabriel Battori* who gouerned TRANSYLVANIA, as lawfully deſcended from the ſoueraigne princes thereof, hauing made himſelfe a tributarie to the Turke, and by his impious actions mingled Mahomets impietie with the Chriſtian religion, and moreouer, exceeding in his crueltie, became a memorable example to all poſteritie, that princes which carrie the glorious name of Chriſtians, when they haue once layed aſide all feare of the ſoueraigne of princes, cannot attend, but a miſerable end in their raigne, conformable to the courſe of their enormities. So *Gabriell Battori* holding it a law of ſtate, to ſettle his affaires with the ruine of Religion, allies himſelfe with the Turke, and with him afflicts the Chriſtian prouinces. But ſeeing many factions made againſt him, as well by the deſcendents of *Botſcay*, as by *Giezy*, *Bethlem Gabor*, and ſome other, he ſupports himſelfe with the forces of *Andrew Nage*, the head of the rebels in high HVNGARIE, who came vnto him to the ſiege before CROMSTAD to aſſiſt him in his affaires. *Battori* entertained him with all

ſhewes

A shewes of courteſie, inuited him to dinner in his Tent, and for a greater demonſtration of friendſhip after dinner they two went to take the aire on horſeback. *Nage* had drunke after the Hungarian manner, *Battori* intreated him to runne his horſe a carreere, and he refuſed it, the which *Battori* taking for an offence, ſpake many words of contempt vnto him, and he anſwered him in the ſame manner, being more inflamed with wine, then gouerned by reaſon. *Battori* being wonderfully offended, that a man of no ſort, being but a poore ſouldier of fortune, crept vp to ſome authority among ſouldiers, but by degrees of Rebellion ſhould giue him ſuch words for indignitie, gaue him three blowes on the head with a Battleaxe which he held in his hand and ſlew him. Thus *Nage* ſwims iuſtly in his owne blood, hauing wickedly and to the ruin of his Country floted in the waies of inconſtancie, and populer Tumults; and ſo he died as he had liued. *Battori kils Nage.*

But *Battori* found himſelfe dayly oppreſt with many affaires, which draue him inſenſibly to his ruine. *Peter Decaci* kinſman to the deceaſed *Botſcay* annoyed him on the one ſide with troupes of ſouldiors. *Andrew Giezi* (who had betrayed him in his embaſſie to CONSTANTINOPLE) leuied forces to proſecute him; and *Bethlehem Gabor* a Nobleman of TRANSYLVANIA, and aſſiſted by the Turke, tooke many places from him, after that *Giezi* had forced him to raiſe his ſiege at CROMSTAD, and generally all TRANSYLVANIA, reuolted againſt this prince. To ſee more plainely in the obſcuritie of theſe confuſed diſorders, you muſt vnderſtand that this prouince is peopled by three ſeuerall nations, the Sicules, Saxons, and Hungarians. The Sicules (deſcended from the Scithians) came with *Attila* king of the Hunnes into PANNONIA, now called HVNGARIE, and taking their way towards their countrie, they inhabited that part of TRANSYLVANIA, which lies next to MOLDAVIA, and deuiding themſelues into ſeuen Colloneys; they built the townes of KISDI, ORBAI, SCIPSI, CYKVDVARHEH, ARANIOS and MAROS. The Saxons (mutinying againſt the gouernment of the Emperour *Charlemaine* king of FRANCE, for certaine impoſitions wherewith he had charged them) retired into TRANSYLVANIA, and by force ſeized vpon that part of the countrey which confineth vpon VALACHIA, where they built the townes of HERMEINSTAD, otherwiſe called CIBIN, CROMSTAD, NEZEN, or BISTRIC, MEDVVISCH, SCIESBVRG, CLAVSENBVRG, and ALBA IVLIA. The Hungarians inhabited this prouince from the time of ſaint *Stephen* king of HVNGARIE, and hauing maſtred the other nations, they obtained ſuch preheminence among them, as ſince their ſucceſſors haue cauſed themſelues to bee called Nobles of TRANSYLVANIA, and the Vayuods or princes of the countrey, haue been taken from among them. The townes of VARRADIN, DEVER, ZILAHI, GELA, and ſome others owe their beginnings vnto them. The greateſt part of theſe three nations which inhabit TRANSYLVANIA, were reuolted againſt *Battori:* but particularly the Saxons had taken armes againſt him, his great crueltie hauing forced them to this extreame remedie. *Parties againſt Battori.* *Deuiſion of the people of Tranſyluania.* *All the three nations againſt Battori.*

Battori being thus abandoned by his ſubiects proſecuted by his nobilitie, and forſaken of all the world, knowing not whither to flie for ſuccour, and not daring to truſt vnto the Turk, who openly fauoured *Gabor*, he reſolued to trie if he could by preſents draw the Emperour *Matthias* to giue him any aſſiſtance: Wherefore hee ſent Embaſſadors vnto him to promiſe all ſubiection and obedience; and hee ſent for preſents, a long robe or ſacerdotall cloake of gold, ſet with pearle and precious ſtones, certaine plumes of blacke Herrons, adorned with precious ſtones, a Turkiſh ſword, the ſcabberd being of ſiluer richly ſet with iewels, tenne blacke horſes with rich furniture embroidered with gold and ſiluer, and a Turkiſh horſe hauing halfe the body and legges of the colour of gold, with his furniture of crimſon richly imbroidered. He laboured to haue the Emperour giue notice to the Baſſa of BVDA that this attempt of the Turkes againſt TRANSYLVANIA was againſt the articles of peace: but the Baſſa made anſwere, That his Emperour was not to bee blamed, if hee ſeized vpon that prouince which did immediatly belong vnto him, and kept it quiet from the practiſes of others. But *Battori* relying not wholly vpon this ſupport, but deſiring to haue more ſtrings to his bowe, ſent Embaſſadours to the Sultan, with rare and rich preſents, who had ſecret treaties and counſells with the Baſſaes, the which *Negronius* the Emperours Embaſſadour reſiding at CONSTANTINOPLE diſcouering, hee ſent word vnto the Emperour, that he entertained a monſter among men. *Battori ſends an Embaſſador to the Emperor Matthias.*

About the ſame time there came Embaſſadours from the Saxon townes of TRANSYLVANIA,

VANIA, complaining much of the crueltie and tyrannie of *Battori*. The Saxons (ſaid they) liuing many yeares in TRANSYLVANIA, had beawtified the Prouince with Townes, Villages, and Markets, and had by their vertue obtained many priuiledges from former Emperours; but *Battori* (againſt his promiſed faith, and the oath which he had taken) had depriued them of their priuiledges, and afflicted them in ſuch ſort, as they were in a manner ruined: that from his firſt entrance he had ſought to root out the auncient familie of the Saxons: that he had afflicted them with impriſonments and miſerable ſeruitude, and had detained *Iohn Benner* three yeeres in priſon, for no other cauſe, but for that he knew he had brought a great eſtate out of GERMANIE; he had depriued honeſt Widdowes of their eſtates, and had oppreſt others with vniuſt exactions: he had ſurprized HERMSTAD the chiefe Citie of the Saxons, and ſuffred the Haiduks to ſpoile it, and to commit all ſorts of inſolencies. That hee had expelled the Magiſtrate, baniſhed honeſt citizens, rauiſhed women, ſlaine the parents to depriue the children of their inheritance, and committed all the barbarous cruelties that could be deuiſed. That he had ſent 300 captiues to the Sultan for a preſent; many he cut into ſmall peeces, ſome he had throwne downe from the tops of mountaines and towers, ſome he had hung vp by the feet, others he had drawne in pieces with horſes and trees, and to conclude, he had practiſed all kinds of barbarous cruelties. That hauing expelled religious princes out of MOLDAVIA and VALACHIA, he had made them ſubiect to the Turke, for no other end, but getting an occaſion to circumuent the Chriſtians, he might waſte all with fire and ſword, hauing multitudes of Barbarians to ſecond him, and for a concluſion of his notable crueltie, hauing freed the towne of GAVDIN, he made choice of twentie of the principall inhabitants, and deliuering to euerie one of them a Pike, he forced them in his preſence to kill one another in the midſt of the market place.

Crueltie of Battori.

G H I

But God reuengeth his exceſſe by his ruine, whereinto wee ſhall preſently ſee him runne headlong miſerably: For *Bethlem Gabor* his capitall enemie, hauing ioyned his forces with thoſe of Baſſa *Serder*, they both entred together into TRANSYLVANIA, forced LVGATSI, take DEVE, and ſtrike a terrour into the whole countrey. *Ogli Baſſa* on the other ſide ſurmounts the difficultie of the wayes, and lodgeth with his troups in the ſuburbes of CROMSTAD, and from thence went and camped ouer all the tract of BARRY or BARSAC. Thus *Battori* ſees himſelfe preſt by an enemie from whom he can expect nothing but his miſerie and ruine; he attended ſuccours from the Emperour, vnder the conduct of the Palatine of HVNGARIE and *Fortgatſi*: they came, but not ſuch as were able to reſiſt the Turke. This made him write to *Trinau* for the leuying of ſouldiours; but the hatred they bare him, generally deceiued his hopes, no man would march vnder his enſignes. This refuſall makes him diſtruſtfull, hee dares not conferre with any man touching the affaires of the warre. A treatie of peace ſeemes more fit for his affaires, he makes an ouerture to his moſt familiar friends, and tels them that he holds it neceſſarie to purchaſe his peace with *Sarder Baſſa* at what price ſoeuer, yea, were it in deliuering into his hands the places of greateſt importance. But he receiues no other anſweres from them, but that they had rather die than aduiſe him to it. Thus he ſees himſelfe void of all hope of ſafetie in his affaires; he wanted money, his ſubiects, yea euen his ſouldiours hated him, as a prince abandoned to all crueltie, and for his laſt remedie, and the moſt ordinarie in baſe and cowardly minds, he fell into deſpaire, intreating one of his ſeruants to kill him; but the other refuſed him that honour, ſuffering him to draw on his miſerable life, vntill that within ſome few dayes after going forth to view where his troupes were lodged, being in an open chariot, accompanied onely with two gentlemen, fiftie of his ſouldiours (which attended him in the ambuſh) ſhot at him, ſlew him, & hurt thoſe that did accompany him. It is true, this accident hapned in the yeare 1613, when as this infortunate *Battori* went to giue an account vnto God, of the bad gouernment of his eſtate.

Gabor and the Turke preſſe Battori.

The miſeriet and deſpaire of Battori.

Battori ſlaine by his owne ſouldiors.

K L

Some few dayes after, *Bethlem Gabor* was declared prince of TRANSYLVANIA by Baſſa *Sarder*, who gaue him this aduertiſement at his introduction; *Battori ſhall ſerue for an example to badde princes; I doe not thinke that you will follow his ſteppes. Beware you attempt not any thing without the priuitie of my maſter: Maintaine peace with your neighbours, and make men of experience and honeſtie of your counſell.* TRANSYLVANIA did yet feare the continuance of a ſtorme of a fatall warre, when as in leſſe than fortie dayes it ſaw it ſelfe ſetled in the calme of ſweet peace, by the acknowledgement which all the townes made vnto *Bethlem Gabor*, and the

Bethlem Gabor made prince of Tranſiluania by the Turke.

M

A the oath of fidelitie which they tooke vnto him, as to their elected prince; notwithstanding, that the Emperour imployed all his credit to hinder it. But the desire of peace, and the feare of the Turkes armies, drew all the Gouernours of townes to acknowledge *Gabor*: Such were the affaires of TRANSYLVANIA, disordered by the Turke. Let vs now make an end of the remainder of the yere 1612, the which we haue deferred, for that we would not interrupt the relation of the affaires of this prouince.

We haue said elsewhere, that the king of PERSIA had offered conditions of peace to Sultan *Achmat*, much to his aduantage, seeing that he yeelded himselfe the Turkes tributarie, in regard of certaine lands which he had conquered from them. Now the Visier *Nassuf* Gene- *A Persian Embassador comes to Constantinople*
B rall of the armie against the Persian, brings his Embassadour to CONSTANTINOPLE, to conclude this peace. *Nassuf* arriued with his armie and the Persian Embassador at SCVDARET, right ouer against CONSTANTINOPLE, whither most of the Bassaes of the Port went to salute him, and then returned; but the Graund Visier stayed there two dayes: on the third he past ouer to CONSTANTINOPLE, where hee was entertained at the water side by all the Bassaes which accompanied him, an infinite number of Ianizaries going before with their pieces, and some of them in armour, after whom followed their Aga on horsebacke; then came a great number of Iamoglans, and the Emirs or kindred of *Mahomet* with their green Turbants, with many blind men shouting aloud: these holy men caried the banner (as they say) of *Mahomet*, and the people standing by, kissed it with great deuotion as they past; after
C them came the Chaoux on horsebacke, the Bassaes, then the chiefe Muphti, and last of all *Nassuf Bassa* himselfe: after whom followed the treasure which he brought with him for the Emperour, being two hundred thirtie foure mules loaden with gold and siluer. The Visier as he past by the Sultans window bowed himselfe verie low vnto him, from whom hee had a nod with his head, and so set spurres to his horse, and rode away fast, as the manner of the Turkes is, when they salute a greater man than themselues, presently to runne or ride away apace. The Visier being come to the Seraill, went in to the Sultan to kisse his hand, where he continued a whole houre, the rest of the Bassaes attending without. There were present at this dayes pompe, the Emperours Embassadour, the French, the English, Polonian, Lowe Countries, and Venetian, the Persian remaining still at SCVDARET. The graund Visier as he
D past by the Emperours Embassadour, put off his hat and saluted him, but not the rest. The same day *Tomsho*, who had beene lately made prince of MOLDAVIA by the Graund Seignior, sent many Polonians to CONSTANTINOPLE, whom hee had taken in the warres: All which (notwithstanding they threw down their caps, and offred to turne Turks) were put to death. And within few daies after, the Visier *Nassuf* sitting in the publike Diuan, had three robes sent him from the grand Seignior, to grace him.

Achmat hauing a will to let the Persian see the magnificence of his Court, went out of CONSTANTINOPLE, and vnder a pretext to go take the aire at his countrie pallace, called *Darut Bassa*, he takes occasion at his returne to make a stately entry at his Imperiall citie. The generall Surueyor being aduertised of his will, caused the wayes from this pallace of *Darut*
E vnto the citie, to be couered with sand, the which containes two French leagues, or foure English miles. This done, the Emperour parted for his returne, and entred in pompe into CONSTANTINOPLE. The order of this entry was in this manner: A great number of men at armes marched first on horsebacke, and after them some troupes of foot, the Cadis of CONSTANTINOPLE, or men of Iustice, and all the Talismans, or they of *Mahomets* law, in verie great numbers followed after, and after these marcht the Visiers and Bassaes in great pompe: after whom followed the Sultans houshold, that is to say, tenne men leading in their hands tenne goodly horses richly caparisoned, the last of which had the bridle and saddle all couered with precious stones; the Sultans targer was made fast vnto the saddle, and vpon it did hang euen to the ground a great tassell of pearles: and ouer all this a long horse cloth or co-
F uering for a horse, the which was embroidered so thicke with pearle, as the ground could not be discerned: after which followed the rest of the Emperours houshold in diuers troupes: First, fiftie Ianizaries on foot, euery one leading dogges in leashes, mastiffes, or Irish greyhounds, the goodliest of all were those which the French Embassadour had presented vnto the Sultan. Secondly, the graund Seigniors footmen, called Peiks, Persians by nation, all well attired, wearing on their heads bonnets of siluer and guilt in forme of pots. Thirdly,

The Sultan enters in state into Constantinople

The order how his houshold marched.

threescore

threescore Archers on foot, in the middest of which the Sultan came, attired in a rich roabe of cloth of gold imbrodered with Pearles and Diamonds, his slaues were enricht after the same manner, his Turban couered with fiue plumes of black Herons feathers enricht with great Diamonds, and a chaine of the same stones about the lower part of his Turban: vpon his little finger he had a Diamond of a large bigneſſe and ineſtimable price, the which gaue a maruelous great light, he was proudly mounted vpon a goodly horſe richly caparisoned Emperourlike, the saddle was imbrodered with gold pearle and Diamonds, the stirrops of pure gold set with many Diamonds, and from the horse neck did hang a great tassell of pearle, the which were so great, as they were esteemed very rich and pretious. 4. After the graund Seigniour followed three men on horseback, carrying in their hands the one his armes, the other his cloke, and the third his Imperiall Turban, and these were attended on by certaine Esquiers and Gentlemen all on horseback. 5. Then came the Musick after the Turkish manner, consisting of threescore men on horseback, which plaied vpon Phises, Clerons, and trumpets. 6. There followed a hundred Pages of the Sultans, brauely mounted, and followed by many Eunukes, 50 of which Pages carried euery oue a Faulcon vpon his fist, hauing their heads inricht with Diamonds, and these were followed by thirtie guards of the Port. 7. fiftie Faulconers and huntsmen richly attired and well mounted, 4. whereof had either of them before him vpon his saddle bow a Leopard couered with cloth of gold. 8. A great number of other pages fairer then the pictures of *Adonis* or Loue, chosen amongst the infants of the tribute, and vnfortunately appointed for the filthie and vnnaturall pleasures of their master, whose garments after the Turkish manner were pretious, and made of rich cloth of gold curled. They were followed by a great troupe of yong men plainely attired in cloth, hauing vpon their heads yellow caps pointed in forme of a sugar loafe, and these were ordained to serue the Sultans pages.

Pages chosen among the fairest for the Sultans pleasure.

There were moreouer attending the Sultan in this pompe diuers Beglerbegs, as of Bosna, Byda, Romania, Natolia, and others, euery companie going distinct both of horse and foot, with the Bassaes seruants all gallantly attired and well mounted: and after them followed *Nassufs* atendants, being fiue hundred in number richly armed: there were also the kings firemen, Calkers, Azappes, the Rices or officers of gallies, with speares in their hands, all that belonged to the Arsenall; the Carters which gouerned the cartes going to warre, and their captaines, then the shot-men with their banner, and the Armourers all in armour, with their banner. There were also the Banners of the Graund Seignior, *Mahomet*, and of the Graund Visier euery one in his order before the Graund Seignior; and after all followed the Capigis, and officers of his kitchin. The number of all sorts of attendants in this pompe was so great, as it was esteemed to amount to the number of 40000 persons.

A largesse of the Persian embassador when as the Sultan past.

The Persian Embassador, for whose sake the Emperor *Achmat* had made this stately show, to the end he might carie backe into his countrey a patterne of the *Ottoman* state and greatnesse, caused to be cast out before his lodging, when as the Sultan past by, 100 pieces of silk, the which were gathered vp by the archers of his guard, whereof they made good purchase. All these magnificences added to those which we haue formerly related at the marriages of the Sultans sister and daughter, with other pompe celebrated in France, Spaine, Naples, and Germanie, for the mariages of *Lewes* the thirteenth king of France, with *Anne* of Avstria infant of Spaine, and of the prince of Spaine with the Ladie *Elizabeth* of *Burbon*, the kings eldest sister, and for the coronation of the Empresse, and the Emperours entrie into Nvremberg, may giue vnto this yeare 1612, the title of magnifique or stately.

The Persians presents to the Turke.

Foure dayes after Sultan *Achmats* entrie into his imperiall citie, the Persian embassadour had audience, and was receiued to kisse his hands: he presented vnto his maiestie, in the behalfe of the king of Parsia his master, 400 balls of silke, a Besonard stone as big as a mans fist, with some others that were lesse, nine bags of leather full of Turquoises, the which were a foot and an halfe long, and aboue foure fingers broad, a great number of Tapistries of woll, silke cloth of gold and siluer, with many other things of great prize, and verie rare. The complements being ended, they began to treat seriously of a peace betwixt two great and ancient enemies, the Turke and the Persian; the which after some difficulties, was concluded vpon these conditions: That the Persian king should pay yearely vnto the Turkish Emperour by way of tribute a quantitie of silke to the burthen of 200 camels, that the king

of

A of PERSIA his ſonne ſhould bee called Baſſa of TAVRIS; and that the Cadi or ſoueraigne Iudge of that towne ſhould be ſent from CONSTANTINOPLE. This peace thus concluded to the Turks aduantage, the Perſian Embaſſadour returned vnto his maſter, hauing left moſt of his traine dead of the plague at CONSTANTINOPLE. Being arriued at TAVRIS, the king of PERSIA ſeeing this peace to be ſo diſhonorable, and burthenſome for him, he cauſed this Embaſſadors head to be cut off; and ſent backe the Chiaux, who was come from CONSTANTINOPLE, to ſee him ſweare the peace. Some write that he did him ſome indignities, which made theſe two great monarchs returne againe to armes.

B The graund Viſier *Naſſuf* after his returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, to ſhew his great power and authoritie, procured meanes to haue the Chimacham, (who had formerly ſupplied the place of the graund Viſier in the abſence of *Amurath Baſſa*, and vntill the returne of *Naſſuf*) to be depriued of his Baſſaes place, and ſent preſently ouer vnto SCVDARET, vnder pretence of preferring him to a gouernment neere vnto TREBIZOND in the confines of Turkie, but with an intent to depriue him of his head. The friends of this Chimacham, (who were many and great in court) ſeeing him ſo diſgracefully ſent away, and doubting *Naſſufs* purpoſe, procured leaue from the Grand Seignior to haue him ſent for backe againe, for that hee was an old man, and might from thenceforth liue at home in quiet; and for his former ſeruices a thouſand aſpers a day allowed him for his entertainement: which *Naſſuf* tooke verie diſcontentedly.

The Chimacham put from his place.

C During the Perſian Embaſſadours abode at CONSTANTINOPLE, the Emperour *Matthias* (ſucceſſour to *Rodulphus* his brother) ſent an Embaſſadour to the Sultan, to complaine of the enterpriſes which were made daily vpon TRANSYLVANIA, a prouince which hee ſaid belonged vnto him, as a dependance of his realme of HVNGARIE. This Embaſſadour called *Negroni* was receiued at the Court, and admitted to kiſſe the Sultans hand: but his preſents were little eſteemed, for that they were of leſſe value than thoſe which they had lately receiued from the Perſian. His demaunds to haue the prouince of TRANSYLVANIA, were grounded vpon an article inſerted among thoſe of the peace betwixt the Emperour and *Botskay*, at that time choſen prince of TRANSYLVANIA; that is to ſay: *That* Botskay *dying without iſſue male*, TRANSYLVANIA *ſhould remaine at the diſpoſition of his Imperiall Maieſtie*. This article being read by *Negroni* in the Turkes Counſell, whither he had been admitted: the Muphti or ſoueraigne prieſt of *Mahomets* law anſwered, That it was contrarie to his law: ſo the demaunds of this Embaſſadour touching TRANSYLVANIA were reiected, ſeeing that *Botskay* had no power from the Sultan (ſaid the graund Viſier) to treat with the Emperour, and to giue him TRANSYLVANIA after his death. *Negroni* grounded this gift of *Botskay* (mentioned in the ſaid article) vpon the eight article of the peace betwixt the Turke and the Emperor, concluded in the Iſle of Dannow, by *Amurath* Viſier, and the deputies of his Imperiall Maieſtie, in theſe words, *That all which had beene graunted in the treatie of peace made at* VIENNA *to* Botskay, *ſhould bee duely and faithfully obſerued.* *Naſſuf* the graund Viſier replied, That the Baſſa *Amurath* being then Viſier, might erre in ſigning theſe articles of the peace vpon the Dannow: and at the ſame inſtant hee ſhewed foorth ſome other Articles, whereas that was not inſerted, ſaying, That the Sultan would faithfully performe thoſe and no others, preſſing the Embaſſador *Negroni* to ſigne them, the which he refuſed to doe; ſo as *Naſſuf* vſed ſome threats to terrifie him; but *Negroni* replied, That he was in their power, and that in this caſe he had rather looſe his life, and die glorioufly for the good of his maſters affaires, than to haue it taken from him at his returne to VIENNA with ſhame and infamy, hauing ſigned thoſe articles. Finally hee promiſed to aduertiſe his Imperiall maieſtie, and to certifie them of his pleaſure: which promiſe for this time ended the contention.

The Emperour Matthias ſendes an Embaſſador to Conſtãtinople

The malice and falſhood of the Turkes.

In the beginning of this yeare, Sultan *Achmat*, after the reception of the Perſian Embaſſadour, and the ſtately entrie he made into CONSTANTINOPLE, went to lie at ADRIANOPLE, where his Ianizaries and Spahies began to mutinie, ſpurning at their bread and rice which was giuen them for their daily entertainement: and being demaunded the reaſon of this their inſolencie, they anſwered, That no Emperour before him had ſo carried out his men in the depth of Winter: which anſwere did much incenſe *Naſſuf Baſſa*. This Viſier was in ſuch credit with the Graund Seigniour, as during his abode at

ADRIANOPLE, hee came three times in perſon priuately to viſite him, who grewe ſo G
powerfull ouer his maſters affections, as hee obtained a priuiledge, That it might not
bee lawfull for any man to ſpeake with the Graund Seigniour priuately, but himſelfe. Be-
ing returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, there happened a great fire, in which there were
fiue hundred houſes burnt. The Viſier *Naſſuf* comming to ſee it quenched, and finding
ſome Ianizaries more carefull to breake open lockes, and rifle ſhoppes, than to doe any
good ſeruice, hee ſtrucke out the braines of one of them with his mace, and brake the
arme of another.

It had been an auncient cuſtome in CONSTANTINOPLE, that the owner of the houſe
with all his familie where the fire began, ſhould be put to death for their negligence: But H
it happening that the Emperours owne Serraill, in the time of *Mahomet* father to *Achmat*,
being ſet on fire, *Cicala Baſſa* preſented a petition vnto him, that this cuſtome might bee
aboliſhed; holding it vniuſt that other men ſhould bee put to death, and the ſame let paſſe
in the Emperours owne houſe: whereunto he yeelded, holding it reaſonable. And ſoone
after there happened another great fire, at which the Viſier cauſed many Ianizaries to bee
hanged, finding them too buſie in rifling houſes; and hee went vp and downe the ſtreets
with his Cemiter in one hand, and a Ianizaries head in the other, which he had cut off. The
Graund Seigniour ſent holy water vnto the Viſier, wherein hee had dipt a piece of *Ma-*
homets garment, the which being powred into the fire, the Turkes ſaid, it ceaſed pre-
ſently; yet by the report of viſible witneſſes, it burned foure houres after. The graund I
Viſier *Naſſuf* was a cruell enemie to the Ianizaries, of whom hee ſent ſixteene thouſand
away into ASIA, and would not ſuffer any moe to bee made, but onely Spahies: and
ouer ſuch Ianizaries as remained hee made his owne ſeruants to bee Churbagies, and
Agaes or Captaines ouer fifties and hundreds, fortifying himſelfe by all the meanes hee
could deuiſe, againſt the future time, to preuent his ſudden ruine; but all this could not pre-
ſerue him from a ſhamefull fall, as you ſhall hereafter heare.

Troubles in the realme of Fez and Moroco.

In the meane time let vs paſſe vnto AFFRICKE, to obſerue the troubles which fell in the
realmes of FEZ and MOROCO, the quarrels betwixt prince *Xerif Muley Cidan*, and the *Xerif*
Muley Achmet, Ben-Abdalla his nephew, and the victories of *Cidan* againſt *Abdalla*. The family
of the *Xerifs* princes of FEZ and MOROCO, tooke its beginning ſome 104 yeares ſince, from K
Mahomet Xerif, borne at TIGVMEDET in DARA, at this preſent one of the prouinces of MO-
ROCO: he was Alfaqui or preacher of Mahomets law, who ſeeing the deuiſions betwixt the

The beginning of the Xerifs of Fez & Moroco

ſouereigne princes of thoſe realmes, and that the Portugals had ſeiſed of the chiefe Forts of
MOROCO, he began with three of his ſonnes, *Abdalla, Hamet*, and *Mahomet*, to lay the foun-
dation of a new monarchie, ſupported by three pillars. That is to ſay, by a counterfeit pietie
and diſguiſed religion; vpon a godly pretext to make warre againſt the Portugals Chriſti-
ans, which were in AFFRICKE; and vpon a paſſionate deſire to retire the Mahometan Moores
which were in their pay, to the end they might by that meanes weaken them, and chaſe them
with more eaſe out of the territories of MOROCO. The king who at that time held the
ſcepter of FEZ (ſeeing nothing but the outſide of the *Xerifs* deſignes) ſuffered his three ſonnes L
to diſplay their ſtanderd againſt the Chriſtian Portugalls in the realme of MOROCO: In-
nouations and nouelties are commonly pleaſing to the common people. At this beginning

The children of the Xerif grow potent.

theſe three Leaders were followed by a great number of ſouldiours; they vanquiſhed in ma-
ny incounters, and the bruit of their new victories flying into the realme of MOROCO, retired
the Moores from the Portugalls ſeruice, whom they defeated ſoone after, with their com-
maunder *Lopes Barriga*. True it is, that it was to their loſſe; for *Abdalla* the eldeſt of theſe
three brethren loſt his life in this combat. But they ſeiſed vpon the great towne of TARA-
DENTE in the prouince of SVS, and of the prouinces of HERRA, IDEVACA, VBIDEVACA, CVS,
GVZVLE, and in a manner of the whole countrie betwixt MOROCO and mount ATLAS, ſetling
their principalitie in TARADENTE, whereas the *Xerif* their father carried the name of the gouer- M
nour of the prouince of SVS.

They kill the king of Moroco.

The King of MOROCO fearing the greatneſſe of theſe new conquerours, diſſembled the
deſire he had to bring them vnder, aſſuring himſelfe that time would preſent him ſome good
occaſion: ſo ſuffering them to enter into MOROCO: but they preuented him, they tooke
away

away his life by poiſon, and ſeized vpon his realme. The king of Fez, who had by an indiſcreet ſimplicitie ſuffered them to take armes, and by that meanes to open the way to a great fortune, he ſaw afarre off the tempeſt of theſe vniuſt ſpoilers to fall vpon Moroco and other places. The feare of the like calamitie did much afflict his mind: but the Xerifs entertained this idle prince with faire ſhewes; they abuſed his bountie, and with the fourth part of the rich ſpoiles which they had taken in ſo many townes and prouinces, they lull his diſtruſt aſleep: moreouer, they ſend him the tribute due for the realm of Moroco. *Hamet* takes vpon him the name of king of Moroco, *Mahomet* that of king of Svs, in the towne of Taradentes; and by a good intelligence betwixt them, they make themſelues fearefull to all thoſe countries, ſo as they haue nothing more to feare, than the threats and vengeance of heauen. They then began to contemne the king of Fez, and plainely to denie the tribute of Moroco, pretending for their reaſon, that they were iſſued from the line of *Mahomet*. This contempt made the king of Fez to open his eyes; he finds the faults paſt by the intreſt of the preſent; he ſees the Xerifs had abuſed the libertie which he had giuen them, whereupon he went to field with an armie of 18000 men, and planted his ſiege bufore Moroco; but as his enemies partie was ſtronger than his, ſo he was chaſed away, & his armie defeated at the paſſage of a riuer. Thus the *Xerifs* became peaceable poſſeſſors of Moroco. The peace of the countrey made theſe men idle, and idleneſſe drew the two brethren into quarrell; they muſtred vp their forces, and came to fight, where after two bloudie battels, *Mahomet* being victor, he tooke his elder brother *Hamet*, depriued him of his realme and libertie, and made him end his daies miſerably in priſon. Thus God doth puniſh the vniuſt ſpoiler of another mans good: we ſhall ſee in their poſteritie the continuance of the ſame quarrell.

The king of Fez begins to feare them.

The king of Fez beſiegeth Moroco, and is defeated.

Quarrels betwixt the Xerifs, and the eldeſt taken by his brother.

Mahomet ſetled ſoueraigne in Moroco by blood and fratricide, as monſtrous in ambition as in crueltie, he turned the ſame armes wherewith hee had beaten and vanquiſhed his eldeſt brother, againſt the king of Fez, (whoſe improuidence had ſuffered *Mahomet* and his brethren to take armes vnder the deceitfull title and pretence of making war againſt the Chriſtian Portugals) he aſſaulted him with great forces, vanquiſhed him, tooke him priſoner, and depriued him both of realme and life. Thus the *Xerifs* in the perſon of this *Mahomet* became ſoueraigne princes of Fez and Moroco. The victorie ſo happily gotten of ſo many nations made him fearfull; but by his crueltie he drew vpon his deſcendents the iuſt iudgment of him who puniſheth the exceſſe and enormitie of crimes vnto the fourth generation. His poſterity was miſerable, the vniuſt deſire of raign (one ruining another) entertained the brethren in perpetuall diſcord. For *Cidan* now king of Fez and Moroco, was lately expelled by his brother *Kequi*, but afterwards fortune changing her inconſtant fauour, *Kequi* was purſued by *Cidan*, defeated and forced in the yeare 1610 to ſaue his life in Algarbe in Portvgal. *Abdalla* the ſonne of *Kequi* ſeeing his fathers affaires thus deſolat, retires himſelfe towards the mountaines in the prouince of Svs, where finding opportunitie to annoy his vncle *Cidan*, he made daily incurſions vpon his territories, with ſome troups of Arabians, who had ioined with him being 200 horſe and 200 foot. But finding this to be a long courſe to attaine vnto the conqueſt of the realme, from whence he had bin expelled: he bethought himſelfe that ſome certaine counterfet fictions in religion, had in former times brought in his grandfather, & made him abſolute lord of a great country; wherfore he made vſe of a propheſie forged in his ambitious ſpirit, and to worke an impreſſion in the peoples minds (eaſie to be moued with a paſſion of religion) he ſent certaine religious Mahometans throughout the country, with a ſhew of holy ſimplicitie, who went preaching from place to place, that one *Falquere* a man of holy life, had giuen vnto a ſonne of his a Drumme of an admirable power and vertue, commaunding him expreſſely to keepe it carefully, vntill that a prince called *Abdalla* ſhould come into Moroco, being expelled by the iniuſtice of his owne blood: and that then hee ſhould beat this drumme, and that the people at the ſound thereof, might go to the warre with all ſafetie; that it ſhould be helpefull to them, giue peace vnto the realme, and ſettle all the cuſtomes and ancient lawes to their common content. Thus they preached this propheſie, the which they ſaid was now accompliſhed, ſeeing that this propheticall drumme had beene found, that *Abdalla* the eldeſt prince of the houſe of the *Xerifs* had cauſed it to bee beaten, exhorting all men to follow the warre for the common good of the countrey.

The Xerif aſſaults the king of Fez.

Cidan and Kequi brethren expell one another.

A propheſie inuented by Kequi, and preached by religious Turkes.

These vanities being preached by these ignorant and malicious religious Turks, increa- G
sed the number of *Abdallaes* partie, whereof *Cydan* being aduertised, hee sent a great ar-
mie against him into the prouince of Svs, vnder the commaund of *Alcas Elmye*, to hinder
the progresse of his designes: but *Abdalla* finding these forces to approach, retired himselfe
towards the mountaines, from whence hee might charge the enemies armie; the which hee
did so happily, as within few dayes he cut off fiue thousand of his men. This successe did so
Abdalla defea- aduance his affaires, as his troupes increased daily, so as *Cidan* was forced to goe with new
ted and slaine forces to fight with him, the which was the cause of his ruine: for at this time hee was inue-
notwithstan- sted, and notwithstanding the good successe of his false prophesies, lightly grounded vpon
ding his false the sound of a drumme, hee was defeated and slaine in this yeare one thousand fixe hundred H
prophesies. and twelue.

Gotardus discoursing of this miraculous king of Mavritania, whom hee calles *Muley*
The miraculous *Hamet*, writes that hee was charmed with deuillish incantations, and freed from all out-
king of Mau- ward force, carrying himselfe for a diuine prophet; That with one hundred and eigh-
ritania. tie horse, and two hundred foot, hee went to make head against *Cydan* king of Mo-
roco, hauing fortie thousand men: That his souldiours (who were so few in number)
being readie to flye, hee persuaded them with a cunning speech to prepare to fight: That
comming neere to *Cidans* campe, they might see a great armie of enemies fighting against
them, in which there were fiue thousand of *Cidans* armie ouerthrowne, and the rest put to
flight, and yet *Hamet* had not aduaunced with his troupes: That within few dayes after, I
comming with his troupes tyred to a riuer side, hee commaunded them not to drinke nor
wash in that riuer, which if they did, they would die: but some neglecting his commaund,
thinking to quench their thirst, dyed suddenly. Hee tooke many places in those mountai-
nous regions, which no man had formerly subdued; his forces increasing daily, hauing
Cidan king of 25000 men, and vowing to goe against the Christians, more came vnto him: so as he went
Fez ouer- against *Cidan* with a good armie, who likewise attended him. *Hamet* persuaded his souldiors
throwen. that no shot could hurt them; so as they assaulted *Cidans* campe with such furie, as within
lesse than an houres space they had slaine aboue fixe thousand men, and put the rest to
flight. They write that *Hamet* lost not aboue foure or fiue, and that such as were strucke
with any bullet, shewed markes, but no wounds; and that the great ordnance either shot K
ouer them, or the powder vented out at the touch-hole, and wrought no effect. *Cidan* ha-
uing lost his brother in the fight, fled with all his treasure, to recouer new forces, and in
the meane time *Hamet* made himselfe master of the whole countrey. There were certaine
Hollanders admitted vnto him, whom they found sitting vpon a carpet made of the barke
of trees, hauing a white shirt, and a long garment vpon it, a red cap on his head, bare thighs,
and red shooes, a bag about his necke, and in it hee hid his Alcaron, a short crooked sword
and a dagger hanging by him. Being saluted by the Hollanders, hee willed them to sit
downe by him, telling them that hee was sent from heauen, to purge the world from euill,
and to prepare the law of God; to expell *Cidan* out of his kingdome, and to restore peace
vnto the world: wherefore he aduised them not to haue any commerce with *Cidan*, nor to L
assist him in any sort. They obserued many markes vpon his bodie, he had one blew tooth,
all the rest being white, haire vpon either shoulder, a red circle in the palme of his right hand,
and the proportion of a spurre vpon his right foot. Hauing gotten some victories against
Cidan, and taken the towne of Moroco, in the end his deuillish art failing him, hee was
slaine as you haue heard. Such were the affaires of Affricke, in the realmes of Fez
and Moroco.

A great drought But in Algier a wonderfull drought had caused cruell combustions, it had so deuoured
and sterilitie the fruits of the earth before their maturitie, as there followed a wonderfull famine through
at Algier. out the whole land. The Turks attributed the cause of their miserie sometimes to their sins,
then to the comming of the Moores, who had beene expelled out of Spaine, as a pernici- M
ous vermine, and sometimes to the licentiousnesse of Christians, which liued in those places.
Wherefore in the beginning of May this yeare, the Iudge of the towne ordained, That all
the Turkes should make their deuout prayers to *Mahomet* their prophet to obtaine raine, so
necessarie in that country; That the Moores should depart the town within three daies vpon

paine

A paine of death; and that all the Chriſtians, as well free as bond-ſlaues, ſhould cauſe their heads and their beards to be ſhauen, this was ſpeedily executed; for the Turks decrees require a prompt obedience. But the miſerable Moores which could not get out of ALGIER within their three dayes prefixed, detained either by ſickeneſſe, or ſome other impediment, were all cut in pieces. For thirteene dayes, there was nothing ſeene within the towne but proceſſions of Turkes without Turbants, crying and howling after their manner to obtaine raine from their falſe prophet: But hee which commaunds ſoueraignetie ouer times, from whoſe hand proceedes faire weather and raine, and which makes the earth fruitfull, held the pipes of heauen yet ſtopped, to open them at more religious and holy vowes than the ſu-
B perſtitious clamours of theſe infidells. For *Bernard Murroy*, of the order of the Redemption of captiues, hearing that the Turkes meant to reuenge their miſeries vpon them, and to ruine a little Chappell which the Chriſtian ſlaues had in the priſon, for the pious exerciſes of their Religion, obtained (by the meanes of *Bius* Conſull of the French in ALGIER) permiſſion from the Douan, or Turkiſh Iudge, to make proceſſions, and to pray vnto God to ſend them the deawe of heauen, which was ſo neceſſarie for them. All the chriſtian ſlaues which were priſoners, continued their deuotions for the ſpace of fiue dayes: But on the fourth day being the eight of May, there fell ſuch abundance of raine vpon ALGIER, as theſe poore Chriſtians ſeeing their prayers heard in the midſt of the enemies of their faith, gaue infinit thanks vnto God for his great mercy and grace.

Proceſſions of the Turkes.

The deuout praiers of the Chriſtians obtaine raine.

C Theſe miſerable Chriſtian ſlaues were ſtill detained in yrons and cruell ſeruitude, by this accident; This *Murroy* of the Order of the Redemption of captiues, accompanied with two others of the ſame Order, had redeemed to the number of one hundred thirtie and ſixe: but when hee was readie to imbarke them, their euill fortune would haue it, that the gallies of GENOA running along that coaſt, landed ſome men neere vnto ALGIER, where they tooke the Baſſaes ſonne of that towne, with many other Turks, and amongſt this number a virgin of ALGIER, of a verie noble familie, and of as rare a beautie for the miſerie of theſe ſlaues, that when as the Baſſaes ſonne and the others were redeemed by a Fregat which the father had ſent, the faire Algerian virgine was ſtill detained by a captaine of the Genowayes, who had retyred to CALVY an Iſland
D adioyning, there to ſatisfie his deſires with more eaſe, vpon the fraile and fading perfection of this faire ſlaue, which had depriued him of his libertie. In the meane time the Baſſa of ALGIER ſeeing his ſonne returned with the other Turkes, and not the Algerian virgine, commaunded that the 136 ſlaues ſhould bee put againe into yrons, with the three religious men which had redeemed them. Thus this feminine beautie, or rather the paſſion of this Genoways, who holdes the poſſeſſion ſo deare, makes a great number of Chriſtian ſoules to ſuffer by in ſupportable ſeruitude, howſoeuer they of his nation (flattering his diſordered luſt) ſay that his deſire to winne her to God, and to make her a Chriſtian, cauſed him to keepe her ſo carefully.

Theſe ſuffered in ALGIER the loſſe of their libertie: But a Capuchen Frier, a Florentine
E by nation, indured at TVNES the loſſe of his life, by the crueltie of the Moores chaſed out of SPAINE, and retired into thoſe countries. This religious man being a ſlaue among the Turkes, attended daily from FLORENCE, or from ſome other place, money to redeeme his libertie: But it happened one day diſputing in a Barbers houſe with a Moriſque, concerning Chriſtian Religion, the zeale of his faith tranſported him ſo farre, as to ſay among diuers Turkes, that his Religion was better than that of *Mahomets*. Theſe wordes tooke crimonouſly in that place, were reported by the Moriſques to the Cadi or Iudge of the towne, whom they preſt with ſuch horrible clamors and cries, as he pronounced ſentence of death againſt this Capuchen. Hee was deliuered vnto them, and they ſtripped him naked, leading him with infamie through TVNES, ſome ſpitting in his face, others caſting durt at
F him, and ſo they ledde him out of the towne, where they tyed him vnto a poſt, and they being cruelly incenſed by a ſpeach which a Morrabour or religious Turke ſaid vnto them, *That hee among them that gaue him not one blowe with a ſtone, ſhould bee no good Turke*, they ſtoned him to death, where afterwards they burnt his bodie, and threwe the aſhes into the winde.

A Capuchen of Florence in captiuitie at Tunes.

He dies gloriouſly for the faith.

An enterhrise of foure slaues.

The martyrdome of this Capuchen, was followed by the constant confession (amidst the violence of torments) of a penitent Renegado, a Florentine by nation, and captaine of the chiefe gallie of CHIO; Foure Frenchmen being slaues in the Island of CHIO, in the patron or chiefe gallie, belonging to the Bey or Gouernor of the Island, they resolued to recouer their libertie with the hazard of their liues, to returne into FRANCE, and carrie into some port of Christendome that gallie, being the best appointed in the whole hauen. They drew vnto their partie the Captaine which commaunded being a Florentine Renegado. Their enterprise should haue beene executed, when as they should goe to land to cut wood. But whether that the scribe were treacherous to his companions or transported with some rash indiscretion, being on land, hee spake these words aloud, the which ouerthrew both the desigue, and them that proiected it; *Hoe, wee shall returne into Christendome.* A Turke which was neere taking hold of these wordes, reported them vnto the Patron, who presently layd hold vpon the scribe, and drew from him the confession of all the enterprise. Hee presently sends an hundred men towards the gallie, to seize vpon the foure French slaues, and the captaine. But these fiue made such a generous resistance, as if the other slaues, who were for the most part Moldauians, or of the prouinces which border vpon the blacke sea, had had the courage to fight for their libertie, without doubt the Frenchmens enterprise had succeeded happily. But what could fiue men doe against an hundred? yet they slew fifteene, and wounded many: the foure Frenchmen were all slaine, and the Florentine captaine was taken aliue, and reserued to the rigour of a cruell death. For they continued him sixe houres together in most violent torments, he still calling vpon the holy and sacred name of *Iesus Christ*, euen to the last gaspe, and detesting the errours and falshood of the law of *Mahomet*. This happened in October this yeare.

They are discouered.

They defend themselues, and kill many.

The captaine cruelly executed.

The vnited Estates send an Embassador to Constantinople

A little before, the Estates of the vnited Prouinces, and Count *Maurice* seeing the losses which the shippes of HOLLAND suffred in the Mediterranean sea, many of them being taken by the Turkish gallies, and a great number of their men made slaues: to the end they might bee freed from that daunger, and haue a safe passage for their ships, and procure libertie for their captiues, they resolued to make a league with the Turke. Wherefore they sent *Cornelius Hage* to CONSTANTINOPLE, who not onely willingly accepted of that Embassie, but performed it with such discretion, as hee purchased great credit and commendation to himselfe, and much profit to the prouinces; he had resolued at first to passe through HVNGARIE; but he found so many crosses & obstacles, by some that were creatures to the Pope and Spaniard, as he was forced to turne out of the way, and fetch a great circuit. First of all, he fell into the hands of the Archduke *Ferdinand*, who caused him to bee examined, and admonished to desist from his purpose: After which he was tost at sea, and in the end hauing surmounted all daungers, hee recouered CONSTANTINOPLE, the first of May. Hee had expresse charge from the vnited Estates to labour for three things. The first was, to treat of the deliuerance of the Hollanders that were slaues. The second, to make a league with the Turke. And the third, to obtaine from him a free nauigation for the Hollanders, throughout all the seas and ports of his empire.

This Embassadour was brought to kisse the Sultans hands, and was fauourably receiued; he presented vnto his maiestie in the name of the Estates of the vnited prouinces, his letters of Embassie, with the presents which follow: Three birds of Paradise of rare and precious plumes, wonderfull goodly to behold, and valued at eight hundred pound sterling: two vessels of Christall wonderfull rich and beautifull: foure other vessels made of fishes bones, whereas the art seemed miraculous in the grauing: fourtie pieces of cloth of gold of diuers colours: fiue pieces of silke, fiue of damaske, fiue of silke watered, and fiue plaine: A staffe of an Elephants tooth grauen with admirable industrie. A Parrat shut in a cage of Christall, so artificially done, as no man could discerne the entrie: and many faire and rich tableclothes of Holland cloth, most part powdered with flowers to the life, and wrought in their liuely colours. The which the Sultan did accept with admiration. All these things shew sufficiently, that the Estates from the beginning or soone after haue raised handiworks as well as traffike and nauigation to the highest point of perfection.

Presents sent from the vnited Estates to the Turke.

The sixt of Iulie following, the league was sworne betwixt the *Ottoman* Emperour, and the

A the vnited prouinces of the Low Countries, by the which *Achmat* promiſed to cauſe to bee ſet at libertie, all the Hollanders that were deteined ſlaues within his empire; that the traffike ſhould bee free for the Hollanders ſhippes throughout all his ſeas and hauens: and moreouer hee graunted, that the Eſtates ſhould haue an Embaſſadour reſiding at his Port. This alliance with the Turke, for the which they haue ſo often, and with little reaſon blamed the French, hath beene affected and ſought by the Engliſh and Spaniards, as we haue ſaid elſewhere; and now by the Hollanders, whoſe Eſtates proceed in all their affaires with ſuch weight and meaſure, as it ſeemes they doe nothing but with great reaſon, and to good purpoſe. *A league betwixt the Turke and the Hollanders.*

B About the end of this yeare, the Iewes whoſe long ſlauerie throughout the world reprocheth their wretched and miſerable obſtinacie, receiued at PERA neere CONSTANTINOPLE the weight of a furious tempeſt which fell vpon them, ſtirred vp againſt them by the malice of the Moriſques Granadines chaſed out of SPAINE, and retired into the Leuant. Theſe hauing by preſents wonne the fauour of the Cadi, or Iudge of the place, who was a Negro newly ſetled in that charge by the graund Viſier *Naßuf*; they obtained power from him, to thruſt all the Iewes out of PERA, and to ruine their Synagogues. This power they executed with all violence: And yet theſe miſerable Iewes durſt not make their complaints vnto the Magiſtrate, except one of their ſect which dwelt in the Iſle of CHIO, who being then at CONSTANTINOPLE, and ſuppoſing hee had more credit than the reſt, went to complaine to C this Cadi Negro, who preſently cauſed to bee giuen vnto him fiue hundred blowes with a cudgell, in ſtead of doing him iuſtice; ſo dangerous a thing it is to haue to doe with ſuch vniuſt Magiſtrates. *The Moriſques chaſe the Iewes out of Pera.*

The inſolences of the Moriſques, tranſported them further: for after they had expelled the Iewes out of their dwellings, they threatned to doe vnto the Chriſtians at PERA, as much as had been done vnto them in SPAINE: and they bragged, that they would ſeize vpon their Churches, and eſpecially of that of the Franciſcan Friers, the which was reaſonable faire for the place. But the French Embaſſadour, hauing made his complaint to the chiefe Viſier, he prohibited them to make any attempt againſt the Chriſtians, vpon paine of rigorous puniſhment. This prohibition ſtayed their furie: but they did not forbeare in all other occaſions D to ſhew the cruell hatred they owe vnto Chriſtians: ſo as throughout all the Leuant, in all incounters where they came, they doe a thouſand times more miſchiefe than the Turks themſelues. *The preſſiſes of the Moriſques againſt the chriſtians of Pera.*

At the ſame time the Sultan *Achmat* had drawen together a mightie armie to goe into TRANSYLVANIA; he cauſed it to campe in tents neere vnto CONSTANTINOPLE, about his palace called Darut Baſſa, whither the people of CONSTANTINOPLE went to walke, and to ſee his forces. within few dayes after he went to ADRIANOPLE; meaning from thence to proceed in his voiage, carrying with him all the chiefe men of his Port, except the Baſſa of the ſea, or Admirall, who remained at CONSTANTINOPLE, to haue a care of the citie. And for the greater ſafetie thereof, this Baſſa cauſed an Edict to bee publiſhed, That no man ſhould goe E out of his houſe, nor keepe any light in it after the ordinary crie, which is made an houre within night, when as the Taliſmans crying from the top of their Moſques, inuite the people to make the Sala, or prayer. After the publication of this ordinance, he ſent certaine Chaoux to intreat all the Embaſſadours reſiding at the Port, not to ſuffer their people to goe out by night, to the end that their libertie might not ſerue as a dangerous example to others. But notwithſtanding all the Baſſaes intreaties and prohibitions, three Engliſhmen of the Embaſſadours traine, went out by night into the ſtreet, where they were met by the Prouoſt of PERA, who tooke them, and preſently (without reſpect of the qualitie) cauſed either of them to to haue an hundred and fiftie blowes with a cudgell, and then committed them to priſon, the dores whereof are neuer opened but with a ſiluer key: ſo ſtrictly do they obſerue in Turkie F the orders of the princes lieutenants, without exception of perſons. *The Turks army for Tranſiuania*

About the end of the yeare the Patriarch of CONSTANTINOPLE (by reaſon of diuers complaints made againſt him) was depriued by the Graund Viſier, and one *Cyrillus*, Patriarch of ALEXANDRIA, (a learned and religious Biſhop) was (much againſt his will) preferred to the place. The former Patriarch hereupon excommunicated all ſuch as had wrought his ouer- *A queſtion for the Patriarchſhip of Conſtantinople.*

throw;

throw, but he himſelfe was baniſhed into the Iſle of RHODES. In his paſſage the Barke where- G
in he went was caſt vpon MITILENE, in which place hee renounced all right and claime
to the Patriarchſhip, before the Biſhop of that place, and reſigned it to the Biſhop of PA-
TRAS: whereupon that Biſhop came from PATRAS to CONSTANTINOPLE, and labored with
the Viſier *Naſſuf* for the place, who vpon promiſe to pay him fifteene thouſand Che-
quines (which is ten thouſand more then they were wont to pay) made him a graunt there-
of. Which *Cyrillus* the late elected Patriarch vnderſtanding, he came with all the Grecians to
expoſtulate the buſineſſe with the Grand Viſier; who anſwered, that he was to doe what he
could for the Emperours profit, and nothing againſt it, wherefore if they would giue ſo much
as the other had promiſed, *Cyrillus* ſhould continue in the place: which the people were very H
willing to performe, but *Cyrillus* refuſed it, and ſo the other was made Patriarke: who pre-
ſently ſent for the old Patriarke to come from RHODES to make peace with him, for that they
held his excommunication iuſt, being not depriued by a Counſell, but onely by the King.
About the ſame time *Naſſuf* the Graund Viſier ſent for the foure Embaſſadors of ENGLAND,
FRANCE, VENICE, and the Eſtates of the Low Countries, and the reaſon why he ſent for them,
was to raiſe their cuſtome one in the hundred more then the Marchants had formerly paid.

The enterpriſe of the great Duke of Tuſkany vpon Agliman.

Whileſt that the Sultan *Achmats* armie drew neere to TRANSYLVANIA, and fortified the
places which he held in thoſe Countries, *Coſmo de Medicis* great Duke of TVSCANIE bent
his generous deſignes againſt the fort of AGLIMAN in CARAMANIA, in old time called
SILICIA, a Prouince, which in the writings of Auntients hath beene honoured with two fa- I
mous cities, that is to ſay, THARSIS, the countrey of Saint *Paul*, and SELEVCIA, the fort and
port wherof is called AGLIMAN, a hauen which in old time hath contained within its boſome
the moſt fearefull forces of the Pirats of thoſe dayes: from thence in former times hath
come forth a powerfull armie of Pirats, with 1000 ſaile, ſo proudly rigged, as many of them
had their ſailes of purple, the tackling of gold threed, and the oares garniſhed with ſiluer,
markes of the ſpoiles of aboue foure hundred cities ruined by thoſe pirats, who ſtroke a ter-
ror euen to the Romanes, and forced them, to auoid their furie, to ſet to ſea that great fleet
whereof *Pompey* the great was Generall.

1613 The trophie erected vpon the walles of AGLIMAN, of the heads of fortie Florentines, loſt
in a ſhip called the Proſper, by the ignorance of the captaine which commaunded in it, made K

The number of the dukes gallies, and the commanders.

the great Duke to ſtudie to haue his reuenge for this affront; and his deſire to abate the pride
of the common enemie, eleuated his minde to generous enterpriſes. In the end of March
this yeare 1613, hee armed ſix gallies vnder the commaund of the Admirall *Inghirami*, the
which he manned with ſix companies of foot, commaunded by *Iulio de Conty*, called *Mon-
tano*, Generall at land, beſides fortie knights of the order of Saint *Stephen*, and a good num-
ber of Gentlemen aduenturers, among the which was *Don Petro de Medicis*. This fleet par-
ted from LIGORNE, and came to CIVITA VECCHIA: in the beginning of Aprill they tooke
in many Noblemen and Gentlemen of FRANCE, which attended them, and would be pertа-
kers in the enterpriſe, the which were, the Earle of *Candale* eldeſt ſonne to the Duke of *Eſper-
non*, *Cipierre*, *Themines*, *De Vic*, *Montterrault*, *De la Tour*, and his brother *Boiſſiere*, *Villandre*, L
Vernegue, *Du Pleſſis*, *De la Motte magnus*, *Auenes*, *Del Tour*, *Sainct Cyre*, *Monplaiſir* and *Loyres*.
About mid Aprill the gallies landed in the night neere vnto a little towne in ASIA the leſſe,

They land at at Ieronda.

called IERONDA, held for that GERONDA of the ancients: But their diſcent was fruitleſſe, they
found it deſart by the flight of the inhabitants, who had preuented all ſurpriſes. They re-
turned againe to their gallies, and ſailing towards the Eaſt, they incountred three veſſels like
vnto their Caramouſſals, the which they ſet vpon and tooke; and about the fifteenth of May
hauing ſcoured the Leuant ſeas, they reſolued to attempt AGLIMAN. Vpon the way they
tooke a veſſell called Grippe, which inſtructed them of the eſtate of the fortreſſe: they vn-

The ſtate of the fort of Agliman

derſtood there were two gallies of CYPRVS in the port, that the place was well furniſhed with
all things neceſſarie, and guarded without by a good number of horſemen; and that within M
few dayes after, one of the ſaid gallies ſhould come out of the port of AGLIMAN, and goe to
the Iſland of PAPPADVLA, to fetch a new maſt. *Inghirami* thought to preuent it, carrying his
whole fleet thither, the which he laid cloſe in the iſland, to ſurpriſe the Turkiſh gallie; but it
hauing diſcouered his fleet, put out to ſea, and with ſpeed returned to the port of AGLIMAN,

to

A to giue the alarum vnto the Countrey. Notwithſtanding the Chriſtians reſolued to aſſault it, they went with their fleet to the port CAVALIER, twelue miles from AGLIMAN, from whence they ſent a long Boat to diſcouer, the which brings them word that the whole countrie was in armes. Theſe newes might well haue daunted the courages of ſome that had bin leſſe generous, yet they paſſe on, and about three of the clocke in the morning they came neere the ſhore, being couered with the ſilence of the night, ſo as before ſix of the clock they had made their landing about a mile and a halfe from the port. The Seignior of *Montanto*, and the Earle of CANDALE with ſome few choice men landed firſt, to diſcouer a mile from the ſhore, they encountered the Turkiſh horſemen, yet notwithſtanding *Montanto* com-
B manded they ſhould finiſh their landing, leauing twentie men for the guard of euerie Gally.

The Chriſtians land at Agliman.

This fort of AGLIMAN is ſeated vpon a little pleaſant hill, which looks towards the South: It extends from the hill vnto the ſea ſhore: the forme is ovall; that part which is next to the Sea is altogether Meridionall, and the other which riſeth vpon the top of the hill, lookes towards the North. The walls are built of good ſtone and lyme, the which are fiue fadome high, and one broad. Within there was a wall drawne from the Eaſt to the Weſt, which deuides it into two vnequall parts, the which they enter by a port ſet in the midſt. The circuite of the wall is fortified with eight towres, whereof fiue be whole, and three are but halfe towres: thoſe which bee whole are of a ſquare forme, and haue fiue fadome in breadth on either ſide: the halfe towres haue the ſame greatnes on the one ſide, and halfe as much
C on the other; their height exceeds not the wall vnleſſe it be that which is built on the top of the hill, which is raiſed about eight foot aboue the wall. Within the place were aboue three hundred fighting men, with ſtore of victuals, munitions for warre, and many pieces of ordnance: without, there were an hundred horſe ſcouring vp and downe for the guard of the place: and within the port there were two gallies, a caramouſſall, and a Greeke brigandine, with ſome 150 fighting men. The order of the combat was diuided after this manner, by the Seignior *Montanto* Generall at land: For the principall port, and that of the retrait, he ſent two companies of foot, which were thoſe of the Admirals gallie, of the captaines gallie, and of S. *Stephen*, with the Petards, all vnder the charge of the Earle of *Candale*, who leading this foreward, diſcouered a *corps de gard* of Turkes horſe and foot together, whereof he preſent-
D ly aduertiſed the Generall, ſending him word that he would march on towards the fort, and if the Turkes came to charge him, he would cut them all in pieces. Many aduiſed him to returne to the gallies: but *Montanto* allowed the reſolution of the Earle of *Candale*, who paſt on without charge vntill he came within 120 paces of the wall, where he was charged before by the musket ſhot of the fort, behind by the gallies, and in flanke by them of the mountaine, with ſuch horrible howling and crying out, as the mariners which carried the Petards being wonderfully amazed and terrified, let them fall to the ground, and fled away. The Baron of *Mont-terault*, and *Tiel*, a ſouldior of *Languezа* tooke them vp. They continued their way vntill they came within fifteene paces of the wals, when as twentie Turkes ſallied forth with a ſhew to make head againſt the Earle of *Candales* troupes: but ſeeing themſelues too
E weake, they fled preſently againe backe to the towne. The Earle aduaunced to enter with them, but the port was as ſoone ſhut as they were in: wherefore they muſt of force ſet the Petard to worke. But whileſt they were making it faſt vnto the gate, there fell a ſhowre of great ſtones vpon the troupe, wherewith *Don Petro de Medicis* (who would needs be preſent) was ouerthrowne and halfe ſlaine; *Callonge*, *Mont-terault*, *La Tour*, *Dauenes*, and *Deltour* had taken vpon them the charge of the Petard, euerie one carrying a part, to put it ſpeedily in execution.

The deſcription of Agliman.

The fortification of the place.

The order giuen to aſſault the fort.

Whileſt they were thus buſied to force the Port, the Sergeant Maior came vnto the Earle of *Candale* and told him, that there was a troup of three hundred musketiers came to charge him: theſe were two Beys which came out of the gallies with their troups, by reaſon of the
F bad guard which the two companies that *Montanto* had left to hinder their landing, had kept. The Earle of *Candale* had left part of his troupe with the Petard, and turned head with the reſt againſt theſe Beys to charge them; but they had no meaning to fight, but onely to make a ſhew, and ſeeing they ſhould be forced if they ſtayed longer, they tooke their way towards the mountaine, and in their retreat made many ſhot. The Chriſtians purſued them not,

The Turks come from their gallies to charge the Chriſtians.

not, holding it fitter to returne to the petard, the which plaied ſo happily, as it made a breach capable for three men to enter in front. G

The Turkes retire to their towers and walles.

The ſquadron of the knights of S. *Stephen*, commaunded by the Commiſſarie *Lenzong*, and the companie of the gallies of S. *Marie Magdalen*, with two ladders were to aſſault the high tower. The companie of the Admirall gallie with one ladder, had charge to force the port of the retrait; and the companie of the gally of S. *Iean* was to fight with the gallies and veſſels in the hauen: all theſe troups (being led by the Generall *Montanto*, and by captaine *Alexander* of TARENTVM, Sargeant Maior) marched in order towards the fort. But the petard hauing effected as we haue ſaid, the Earle of *Candale* entred firſt with all his troupe, and ſuddenly ranne vnto the port of the retrait, there to applie a petard, the which alſo very fortunatly made a breach. The Turkes amazed at the noiſe and forcing of their gates, fled vnto their walles; ſome retiring into their towers, and others into the barracadoes which they had made in the ſtreet. At the ſame inſtant they planted two ladders on the lower part of the towne ſomewhat neere adioyning to the ſea, whereof one was broken with the loſſe of them that were vpon it: By the other (notwithſtanding that the Turkes horſemen charged them behind) a good number of Chriſtians got vp to the walles, making their way by their armes, whileſt that the reſt put the Turkes to rout: hauing taken their Cornet, they forced the reſt for to flie vnto the mountaines. The ſquadron of knights with the companie of the gallie of S. *Marie*, hauing had a longer way to march, came not to the tower vpon the hill vntill that after the petards had wrought their effects: ſo as the Turkes being retired thither, they found very great reſiſtance, beſides the attemps of the enemies horſe which charged them behind; thrice they planted their ladders againſt the wall, and could not make them hold. Wherefore the Commiſſarie *Lanzoni*, hauing performed as much as a braue and reſolute man could doe in that extremitie, reſolued to leaue that place, and goe vnto ſome other where he might be more neceſſary: But being the laſt to make the retrait, he was ſhot through with two musket bullets, and ſuddenly ſlaine. The companie of the gallie of S. *Iohn*, vanquiſhed the two gallies in the port, wherof *Inghirami* the Admirall at ſea went to take poſſeſſion as ſoone as they had giuen him a ſigne, hauing the other two veſſels at libertie. H I

The Commiſſary of the knights of S. Stephen ſlaine.

A bloody combat within the Fort.

Within the fort, in the towers, and at the barracadoes, the combat was hot and dangerous; the Turks had deſpaire and the aduantage of the place on their ſides. The Chriſtians thruſt on by their valour and conſtant reſolution, preſt them on all ſides, there was nothing to bee ſeene but blood, wounded or dead men; but much more of the Turks ſide than of the Chriſtians. In the end, after a combat of foure houres, the Turkes fainted, ſome were taken, many were ſlaine, and the Chriſtians obtained an abſolute victorie: But as it could not be made without loſſe of their enemies, who made great reſiſtance: ſo there were 55 Chriſtians wounded, of which number *De Vic* a French Gentleman was one, who had a musket ſhot through his thigh going to charge a troupe of Turkes, which were retired into a tower: and ſome gentlemen were ſlaine, among the which was young *Boiſſierre*, a French man, whoſe valour in this action made them that ſaw him fight ſo generouſly, conceiue a certaine hope, that hee would haue prooued a valiant captaine, if heauen had lent him longer life. The ſorrow for his death was generall, as well among the Italian troupes, as among thoſe of his owne nation. *Vernegue* and *Villandre*, two other braue French gentlemen were alſo ſlaine. The dead and the wounded were carried vnto their gallies: They emptied the Fort of all the artillery, munition for warre, and victuals: the trophie of fortie Florentines heads was beaten down, and all the houſes ſet on fire. AGLIMAN being thus ruined, they ſhipped their bootie, with three hundred and fiftie Turkiſh ſlaues, hauing freed about two hundred and fortie Chriſtians which were in yrons. The two Turkiſh gallies were drawne out of the Port, and carried away, with eight other veſſels. In this triumph as the Admirall *Inghirami* bent his courſe towards LIGORNE; vpon the way a Turkiſh Caramouſall came into the midſt of the fleet, as into a toyle: It prepared to defend it ſelfe, the Patrons gallie inueſted it, but not without loſſe; for the Turkes made ſo great reſiſtance, as there were aboue foureſcore Chriſtians hurt or ſlaine; the Earle of *Candale* fighting alone at the prowe of the gallie, by the permiſſion of the Generall. But this Caramouſall being taken, and the Florentine marriners entred, it ſplit and ſunke ſuddenly. The great Dukes gallies incountred ſome other K L M

The Chriſtians get the victory.

Agliman ruined

ſmaller

A ſmaller veſſels, the which they tooke, and afterwards arriued happily at their port.

The twelfth of Auguſt following, *Octauio* of ARRAGON Generall of the gallies of SICILY, by the commaundement of the Duke of *Oſſuna*, Viceroy in that realme, parted from the hauen of PALERMO, with eight gallies well armed and manned, to ſaile into the Leuant. His firſt touch was vpon the Iſland of CERIGO, where he vnderſtood that the Admirall Baſſa of the ſea was gone from CONSTANTINOPLE with thirtie gallies, bending his courſe to the Iſland of NEGROPONT, whereas ſixtie others attended him in the hauen; and moreouer, that the gallies of RHODES prepared to goe and ioyne with him, all which Nauall fleet was to fall vpon SORIA, againſt the Turks rebels. *The voiage of the gallies of Sicilie in the Leuant.*

B Notwithſtanding theſe newes, *Octauio* continues his courſe vnto the Iſland of NICARIA, where hee vnderſtood by a Greeke veſſell, that the Turkiſh Admirall meant to ſend twelue gallies to RHODES, to guard certaine veſſels of the fleet, which came from ALEXANDRIA by the channell of SAMOS. True it is, that of twelue which were together when they parted, two were ſent by the Bey or captain which commanded them into the Iſland of CHIO, ſo as there remained but ten together. *Octauio* reſolued to charge theſe ten, cauſing his fleet to row that day, and almoſt a whole night as ſecretly as they could, along the ſhore of the firme land of NATOLIA, and at the breake of day he arriued at the cape of CORVO, twentie miles from CHIO, from whence he ſent his long boat to diſcouer. But in the meane time hee himſelfe eſpied the ten Turkiſh gallies not farre from him; at ſight whereof he ordered his gallies for *They ſet vpon ten Turkiſh gallies.*

C battell, with ſuch diligence, as at ſunne riſing hee was about the enemies gallies, and had inueſted them. At his firſt approach hee diſcharged all his ordnance, and then with his Admirall gallie he ioyned with the Turks gallie which carried the ſtanderd; the Spaniards entred, ſlew and maſſacred all that made reſiſtance: The combat began at the prowe, from whence they went to the poope, whereas the Bey or commander of the ten gallies ſtood, whom they forced to yeeld. In the meane time the other gallies of SICILIE charged the Turkes ſo furiouſly, as they tooke fiue, all great veſſels carrying lanthornes; two fled towards the land, hoping to ſaue themſelues, but the Turkes had ſcarce leaſure to leape to land, and to flie into the country, abandoning their veſſels to the Spaniards, who purſued them; the other three gallies hauing gotten ſome aduantage eſcaped by flight: ſo ſeauen onely came into the Spa-

D niards power, in the which they had a very rich bootie, freeing aboue a thouſand Chriſtian ſlaues, which were at the chaine, and by a ſtrange change of fortune, putting into their places the Turkes which had inchained them. Among the moſt remarkeable of the priſoners, were the commander of the ten gallies called *Sinan*, Bey of GRIGNA in the Iſland of CYPRVS; the Bey of ALEXANDRIA (ſonne to *Piali Baſſa*, who was defeated in the battell of LEPANTO, by *Don Iohn* of AVSTRIA) and ſome Raiſe or Captaines, and Patrons of gallies.

This Summer the Emperour *Matthias* being gone to an aſſembly of the Eſtates at PRESBVRG in HVNGARIE, in the meane time *Sigiſmund Battori*, who had beene prince of TRANSYLVANIA, and ſo great a terrour and ſcourge vnto the Turkes, as hee made *Sinan Baſſa*, ha- *Sigiſmund Battori prince of Tranſyluania dies at Proge.*

E uing an armie of 150000 men, to flie thrice within tenne dayes from before him, and would neuer indure the ſight of him, he hauing but 40000 men in his armie. But afterwards being the authour of his owne misfortunes and miſeries, by his inconſtant humours, he came and liued a priuate life at PRAGE, and there died of an Appoplexie. At the Eſtates of PRESBVRG they conſulted of the fortifying of their frontier townes, and manning them with good garriſons, knowing the infidelitie of the Turks, and doubting they would not obſerue the truce: but there was ſome queſtion in the aſſembly, touching the admiſſions of Germans into their garriſons; for that the Hungarians maintained they had a decree to the contrarie; and yet they could not defend themſelues without the aſſiſtance of Germanes: but in the end it was concluded, that the Germanes ſhould bee admitted equally with the Hungarians into their garriſons, but all other ſtrange ſouldiors ſhould be excluded. The Turks in the meane time *The Turkes threaten warre in Hungarie.*

F had burnt and ſpoiled many villages in HVNGARIE and TRANSYLVANIA, carried away many Chriſtians captiue, and committed many other actes of hoſtilitie, ſo as all men feared a new warre in HVNGARIE, but by the prouidence of God it was diuerted. For Sultan *Achmat* marching toward TRANSYLVANIA with a mightie armie, hearing vpon the way that *Bethlem Gabor* was acknowledged prince, vnder his protection, hee turned head toward CONSTANTI-

NOPLE,

NOPLE. But rather for the affaires of ASIA, whereas the rebels of NATOLIA had ſpoyled and burnt many places; and a certaine Arabian had reuolted againſt him, and vſurped the title of king, hauing drawne vnto his partie fiftie thouſand rebels, the which did ouerrunne and ſpoile the countrey which yeelded obedience vnto him, threatning his dominions with a greater ruine. Moreouer, the Portugals and Spaniards had made many incurſions vpon his places ioyning to the Red ſea, and had taken and ſpoiled ADEN, a place of importance: ſo as all theſe diſorders haſtened his returne into THRACE, to ſend forces againſt his Turkiſh rebels, and his Spaniſh enemies. But approching neere vnto the Imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, the plague was ſo violent, as he ſtaied at ADRIANOPLE vntill the end of this yeare, when as that horrible contagion ceaſed. He then came vnto the citie, whereas he made a very ſtately entrie; before him there marched his ordinary guard of fiue and twentie or thirtie thouſand Ianizaries, all the Baſſaes of the Court followed him in very great pompe, and before him there marched on horſeback two of his ſonnes, the pillars and hope of his affaires, the eldeſt being about ſeuen or eight yeares old. Paſſing before the Moſques, the Taliſmans or prieſtes of his law, made ſacrifices in his preſence for his proſperitie, they ſlew ſheepe and oxen vpon altars erected for that purpoſe, then they cut them in pieces, and gaue them vnto the people.

A great plague at Conſtantinople

The graund Seignior being returned to CONSTANTINOPLE after the great plague, notwithſtanding the Turkes hold a firme opinion of Predeſtination, and that they ſhall not die before their appointed time, and that the time of their death is written in their foreheads; yet apprehending the infection, by the aduice of ſome about him, hee commaunded all the dogges in the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, to be tranſported vnto SCVTARIB in ASIA (a towne aunciently called CHRISOPOLIS) and for the due execution thereof, euerie houſholder was to bring in his dogge firſt to the Cadi (which is the Iudge of the place) and to receiue from him a Tuſcarie or ticket for his paſſage, or elſe he was to pay foure chequines; by which meanes there were tranſported to the number of 50000 dogges. The reaſon of his ſending them away was, for that reading the actes of his father, hee found that thirtie yeares before, he had ſent away all the dogges for feare of the infection. The Sultan commaunded allowance of bread and fleſh to be carried euerie day to ſuſtaine them, which not ſufficing, the inhabitants were much oppreſſed, and readie to fall into mutinie; but by the aduice of his Muphti, they were at length tranſported from thence to an Iſland that was not inhabited, ſome ſixteene miles from CONSTANTINOPLE, where they all periſhed. Before their ſending away, the Graund Seigniour had propounded to his Muphti, to haue them all ſlaine: who made anſwere, That euerie dogge had a ſoule, and therefore it was not fit to kill them.

All the dogs ſent out of Conſtantinople.

The Turkes are wonderfull glad when they winne any one to their religion, and ſeeke by all meanes to ſeduce men either by force or by faire perſuaſion; whereof you may ſee an aſſured proofe, by a Iew who being turned Turke, ſoone after buying of grapes of another Turke, fell at variance with him about the weighing of his grapes; from wordes they fell to blowes, and the Iew-Turke beat the other, which hee indured verie patiently to incourage him as it ſeemed in his new religion. Soone after another Iew came to the Turke who had beene beaten, and demaunded of him why hee had ſuffered himſelfe to bee ſo abuſed? Who anſwered, You ſhall beat me as much if you will turne Muſulman, ſo zealous they are to winne Proſolites.

The care of the Turks to winne men to their religion.

This yeare in October, the Turkes obſeruing their feaſtes of Bairan (which is as our Eaſter) the which they obſerue twiſe a yeare, a Turke hauing drunke wine too freely (the drinking whereof is forbidden amongſt them, although they loue it well, and drinke in priuate) was apprehended, and carried before the grand Viſier, who ſeeing the fact verified, inflicted this puniſhment vpon him, to haue boiling lead powred into his mouth and eares, the which was ſpeedily executed.

A ſeuere puniſhment of a drunkard

Bethlem Gabor as you haue heard was ſeated quietly in the principalitie of TRANSYLVANIA, the Sultan ſupported him, and had ſent *Sarder Baſſa* with an armie againſt *Gabriell Batteri* who was then in poſſeſſion, but weake both of men, money, and friends, hee was not able to make head againſt them; ſo as being abandoned of his friends, and hated of his

ſubiects

A ſubiects for his tyrannie, he grew into deſpaire and was ſlain by his own ſoldiors. Wherupon the country yeelding obedience to *Gabor*, *Sarder Baſſa* retired out of TRANSYLVANIA with his Turks. Yet afterwards, ſome neerly alied to *Battori* (deſiring to reuenge his death) cauſed ſome alterations; and others ſeeking to get the prouince from the Emperour, had ſurpriſed HVST and other places in his name. The Sultan hearing this, wrote his letters to the noblemen and ſtates of the prouince. They were not ignorant he ſaid, that ſince the time that TRANSYLVANIA yeelded obedience to his predeceſſors, and him, they had alwaies liued in peace vnder his protection, and had often deſired and obtained ſuccour againſt their enemies: That, when as *Botskay* had bin annoied by the Germanes, aſſiſting him with great forces he had ſhakt off

The Sultan admoniſheth the Transſiuanians to obey Bethlem

B the yoke: That when as *Battori* his ſucceſſour had liued after his own will, they ſent *Bethlem Gabor* with complaints to his court by their generall conſent, and did eaſily obtaine forces to free the prouince from tyrannie. He being taken away, now a wiſhed day began to ſhine, the cloudes of tribulation being all diſperſed: That he had held *Bethlem* worthy to ſucceed *Battori*, and to enioy that prouince. Wherefore he had commanded all the noblemen to ſubmit themſelues vnto him, and to enioy a wiſhed peace: That *Bethlem* had ſent to aduertiſe him of the new practiſes of the Germans; wherefore he had giuen charge to the Baſſas of TEMESVVAR and AGRIA, and to the prince of VALACHIA to be watchfull to repell all theſe iniuries, admoniſhing the noblemen to yeeld ſpeedie obedience to *Bethlem:* to which end he had ſent them thoſe letters, that vpon the ſight thereof they might be admoniſhed of their duties; and

C if the Germans ſhould attempt any thing, they ſhould make reſiſtance vntil the comming of his forces: and following *Bethlem* in all things, they ſhould acknowledge him for their true and lawfull prince, and continue conſtant in their fidelitie, leaſt they ſhould prouoke his wrath againſt them, and draw vpon themſelues ſome great miſerie, writing much more to the like effect, concluding, That hee had fully purpoſed and reſolued, not to ſpoyle any one village or any fort in TRANSYLVANIA, nor to doe wrong to any man, nor ſuffer it to be done by any other, but would defend that prouince from all oppreſsion. Wherefore he would haue the Emperour aduertiſed, that if he meant to haue the peace inuiolably kept, he ſhould cauſe the ſaid places of TRANSYLVANIA to be preſently reſtored vnto the prince, or ſignifie his mind vnto him by letters.

D Of theſe rebels of ASIA, whereof we haue made mention, the Gouernour of SAREPTA or SIDON in SIRIA, called *Armill* or *Emir Facardin*, he who gaue entrance into his port to the Florentines, and receiued them in their courſes to the Leuant, hearing that the Baſſa of DAMAS, and the Baſſa of the ſea, with the gallies which he brought from CONSTANTINOPLE, and the threeſcore which he tooke at NEGROPONT (whereof we haue made mention) came to fall vpon him with a mightie and fearefull armie, he left his eldeſt ſonne within SIDON with forces to commaund there, and in other forts about it, and flying from a furious tempeſt of enemies, he went to ſea with three ſhippes, to retire himſelfe into EVROPE, with his foure wiues, tenne children, ſeuentie Turkes, and 14000 pound weight in gold. Hee arriued at LIGORNE, and went from thence to FLORENCE, vnder the protection of *Coſmo de Medicis*

Emir Facardin abandoned Sidon.

Emir retires to Florence.

The great Duke receiues him courteouſly.

E great duke of TVSCANIE, whoſe hands he kiſt, preſenting vnto him a Cuttelas verie curiouſly wrought, and inricht with ſtone, and two iewells to the great Dutcheſſe, to the value of ſixe thouſand crownes. This Turke though hee had no faith, yet hee found faith with this prince of TVSCANIE. *Coſmo* receiued him, defrayed him and all his traine, furniſhed him with money, whether it were by way of gratification, or that *Emir* had conſumed his owne: and by all kinde of courteſies made this Infidell ſee what difference there is to flye vnto the protection of a Chriſtian prince, or to haue recourſe vnto a Mahometan. They ſay that *Emir* made manie goodly ouertures for the ſetling of the Chriſtians in ASIA: but to attempt it with a good and happie ſucceſſe, it ſhould be neceſſarie that moſt of the Chriſtian princes would ioyne their wills and armes together for the generall good of Chriſtendome.

F It is true, that the great Duke *Ferdinand* deceaſed, and *Coſmo* his ſucceſſor had made proofe of their good intentions, by many generous enterpriſes againſt the Turke. But one prince alone cannot doe all.

Theſe things paſt in the yeare 1613, the end whereof concludes with the furie of terrible tempeſtes in the Mediterranean ſea. The tenth of Nouember a fearefull tempeſt full of lightning, thunder, and furious winds, was the cauſe of the loſſe of many gallies and ſhips in

A horrible tempeſt in the Mediterranean ſea.

the port of GENOA, with a great nnmber of persons which were miserably drowned, which G
losse was valued at abone 800000 crownes. The Port of NAPLES was not free from this
storme, and the gallies of MALTA, with a great number of other vessels receiued great losse.

The grand Seignior hauing this yeare and the yeare before sustained great losse of his gal-
lies and frigats in the Mediterranean sea, by the gallies of NAPLES, MALTA, and FLORENCE, and
in the blacke sea by the Cossacks, who had taken two gallies well manned and richly laden;
he now imposed a great taxe vpon all his Christian subiects towards the reparation of that
losse, so as hee charged the Armenians to build him nine gallies at their owne costs, and the
Grecians twentie: such is the tyrannie of the Turke, as he suffers not the poore Christians to
enioy any thing, but he finds meanes to pull it from them. H

A conspiracie against the Visier Nassuf.

The grand Visier *Nassuf* held his credit with the prince, at whose returne from ADRIANO-
PLE, many Ianizaries (to whom the Visier was very odious) conspired to kill him as he should
enter in at the North gate comming from ADRIANOPLE, and had placed themselues there for
the effecting of what they had intended: but comming neere vnto the gate, the Sultan (being
ignorant of what was intended against the Visier) called for him to speake with him, keeping
him by him vntill he was entred into the citie, by which means he escaped the pretended pra-
ctise. Soone after *Nassuf* inuited the Sultan to a sumptuous feast, and within few daves after
the Emperor feasted the Visier; who presuming vpon his great credit, caused all the crosses in
the Church of *S. Sophia* (which is one of the goodliest monuments in CONSTANTINOPLE)
to be thrown downe, and all the Images to be defaced, the which had stood intire euer since I
the Christians gouernment.

The king of Persias crueltie against the Armenians.

The yeare before, the king of PERSIA had put to death 1200 Armenians vpon a false sug-
gestion as if they had intended to reconcile themselues to the Pope: that king hating the Pa-
pists, & yet suffers diuers Iesuits to liue in his dominions. The English Embassadors chaplein
desirous to know the reason of the Persians crueltie, conferred with the Patriarke of the Ar-
menians which resided at CONSTANTINOPLE (for there are 2 Patriarks, wherof the one is vnder
the Persian, & the other at CONSTANTINOPLE vnder the Turke) who told him that it was true
he had miserably slaine many of their nation by the cunning practises of an Armenian, who
had counterfetted letters from the Patriark of ARMENIA to the Pope, by which the Patriarke
with his whole Church of Armenians, made offer to reconcile themselues to the Church of K
ROME, and to acknowledge the Pope as their head, intreating the Pope to write to the king of
PERSIA to giue them leaue to doe it freely; which letters the Pope receiuing, he rewarded the
messenger bountifully, & returned letters by him to the king of PERSIA, wherby he intreated
him to suffer the Armenians in his country to vse their consciences freely. The king of PERSIA
hauing receiued these letters, grew into a great rage, causing many of them to be put to death
saying, *That if they would be obedient to the Pope, he could expect no seruice nor obedience from them:*
notwithstanding the Papists said that this was done directly by the Patriarke, but the Arme-
nians affirme that it was the practise of a counterfet rogue. Soone after there arriued 3 Em-
bassadors at CONSTANTINOPLE, the one was a Circassian, the second a Georgian (and
this was a Bishop) and the third a Mingrelian, all of them to complain of the Persians oppres- L
sion & cruelty, imploring succors from the grand Seignior for their support. Presently after
them arriued a Persian embassador, whom the Sultan would not admit to audience, vntill all
controuersies were concluded betwixt himselfe & the Emperor, which was then in question,
the Sultan hauing sent one *Gasparo* (sometime a seruant in the English embassadors house) to
treat with the Emperor, by whose means at length all matters were reconciled betwixt them.

1614 *The fall of Nassuf's fortune.*

The yeare 1614 began by the horror of great prodigies, which were seen in diuers parts of
HVNGARIE and *SILESIA*. Ouer the towne of VIENNA in AVSTRIA, the heauens grew so red and
fearfully darkned, as they feared that either the last day was come, or else there would follow
some horrible effusion of blood. But all these signes had no other effect this yeare, than the
ruine of the great fortune, and prodigious authoritie of *Nassuf Bassa*, grand Visier of the Tur- M
kish empire, formerly one of the greatest and most fearfull rebels which had carried armes in
ASIA against the soueraigne power of their *Sultan*: but to comprehend more plainly the fall
and declining of his fortune, let vs behold him in his beginning and first rising. Hee was
the sonne of a Greeke Priest, borne in a little village neere vnto SOLONICA, and hauing been
taken by the tribute, which the Turkes exact from Christians vpon their miserable children,

ta-

A taking one of three; he was carried verie young to CONSTANTINOPLE, and there sold for three chequines or sultanins (euery one of which is not aboue eight shillings starling) to an Eunuch of the Sultans, who nourished him and bred him vp till he came to the age of twentie yeares, and afterwards sold him to a Steward of the Sultanaes house, to serue him in his charge: who finding this slaue to haue a spirit capable of greater affaires than the houshold, imployed him in the ouersight of the building of a rich and stately Mosque, which the Sultana caused to be erected at her charge: In this place he gaue such proofe of his wit and iudgement, to the Sultanaes content, that soone after shee gaue him the gouerment of her houshold. *The beginning and progresse of Nassufs fortune*

B The Sultan had a will to employ him in his seruice, and retired him from the Sultanaes house into his seraglio, where hee was honoured with the charge of the Capigi Bassa, or captaine of the Porters or Vshers of the seraglio; from thence hee was aduaunced to the dignitie of the Bassa of ALEPPO, and soone after hee was made Gouernour generall of MESOPOTAMIA. The commoditie of his gouernment (frontiring vpon PERSIA) stirred vp his ambitious thoughts, and his disordinate desire to become soueraigne of that countrey, and made him to entertaine many practises with the King of PERSIA, an ancient enemie to his master. The report of his practises came to CONSTANTINOPLE: the Sultan is aduertised, hee knowes the ambitious and stirring spirit of this *Nassuf*, and findes that he is verie profitable for his seruice, if he can by any mild course withdraw him from his C disloialties and intelligences with the Persian; wherefore hee dissembled the knowledge of his treacherous designes, and to gaine him the more powerfully, he gorged his ambitious appetite with the greatest dignitie of his empire. After the death of *Murath Bassa*, he honoured him with the place of graund Visier, and gaue him all his goods, and in his place made him Generall of the armie against the Persian, with promise to giue him his daughter in mariage. Thus was *Nassuf* aduanced by his dexteritie, wit, diligence, and trecherie, to the greatest charges of the greatest empire of the world. *He is made gouernor of Mesopotamia.* *Nassuf made grand Visier and generall of the armie.*

He entred into PERSIA, as Lieutenant generall of his masters armie, with the which hee made so great a spoile, as he forced *Ka Abbas* king of PERSIA now raigning, to demaund a peace; and after that he had granted him a surcease of armes, he brought his Embassador to D CONSTANTINOPLE, to conclude this peace to his masters benefit, as we haue formerly obserued. He enters in pompe, presents a million of gold vnto his Emperour, is well receiued at the seraglio, much made of by the Bassas, but more by the Sultan, who caused him to marrie his daughter. Fortune hauing thus aduaunced him to the height of greatnesse, not being possible to climbe higher, she ouerthrowes him, & doth precipitate him to the lowest degrees of misery. The Sultan feares his spirit, too headstrong by reason of his ambition; he growes iealous of his actions, and about the end of the yeare concludes his ruine and death. The commandement is giuen to Bostangi Bassa, that is to say, the Sultans chiefe gardiner, & ouerseer of his seraglio, and all his houses, one of the goodliest dignities of the court. *Nassuf* was at that time sicke in his house, Bostangi goes thither to visit him, & to cause him to be strangled, E being accompanied onely with 7 or 8 men; for that he would not giue any suspition of the commandment he had receiued from his master. Being come vnto his lodging, he demanded to speak with him, and *Nassuf* excused himselfe by his seruants, by reason of the discommoditie of his health, but the Bostangi (who would needs execute his commission) replied, that he could not return to the Sultan (who had sent him to haue certain newes of his health) before he had seen him, to be the better assured. At this reply *Nassuf* grew distrustful, & would without all doubt haue bin far from thence in some place of MESOPOTAMIA; but beleeuing whatsoeuer hapned to him was ineuitable, he commanded them to suffer the Bostangi to enter, who at his first approch entertained him with many complements of curtesie, and hauing demanded some questions of him touching his health, he drew out of his pocket a commandement F from the Sultan to *Nassuf*, to deliuer vnto him the seales of the empire, the which being presently done, he drew out another commandement vnto him, by the which he was enioyned to send him his head: then *Nassuf* cryed out aloud, and desired to speake with the Sultan, but the Bostangi answered, that he had no commission to conduct him to the seraglio, but to cause his life to be taken away presently: vpon this refusall, he intreats him to giue him leaue *He forceth the Persian to a peace.* *The Sultan resolues to be rid of him, and concludes his ruine*

to waſh himſelfe in the next chamber, to the end that his ſoule (ſaid hee) ſhould not depart G
this world in the eſtate of pollution, according to the Turkes beliefe, who hold the waſhing
of the bodie for a true purification. This fauour was alſo denied him; he ſaw there was no
remedie in his miſerie, nor any hope of grace. Boſtangi Baſſas followers (which were ſeuen
or eight Capigies) being come to take away his life, and inuironing his bed, which was an
vndoubted ſummons that hee muſt die; in the end he reſolues, and turning himſelfe vnto
theſe executioners, he willed them to doe their dueties: whereupon they fell to worke, and
caſting themſelues vpon him, they put a coad about his necke, and ſought to ſtrangle him;
but ſeeing that the fatneſſe of his repleat bodie would not ſuffer them to take away his life
Naſſufs throat cut. preſently, they cut his throat with a knife. His death could not be diſpleaſing to the Chri- H
ſtians, ſeing that all his deſignes tended to their ruine: He had perſuaded his maſter to break
the peace with the Emperour, the French king, and the Venetians, promiſing to make him
ſoueraigne monarch of the whole world, to the end he might keepe his ſpirit in action, and
make himſelfe neceſſarie to his maſter, and liue more ſafely in combuſtions than in a calme;
whereas the enuie and malice of his enemies gaue him a thouſand furious aſſaults. Thus
Naſſuf Baſſa ended his dayes and fortune; before Gouernor of MESOPOTAMIA, Generall of an
Imperiall armie, and grand Viſier of the Turkiſh Empire, aduanced to theſe ſupreme digni-
ties by the great actions of his mind, but ouerthrowne ſhamefully to his ruine by his boun-
An inſolent fauourite continues little. leſſe ambition. Doubtleſſe it is a difficult thing for a fauourite that is inſolently audacious to
continue long in grace with his prince, eſpecially when his vnreſtrained ambition, hath once I
broken the bounds which reaſon preſcribeth to thoſe that fortune aduanceth by the fauour
of her blaſtes; and that he followes obſtinatly that pernitious curioſitie to know by experi-
ence how high fortune can aduance him: for then the deſire to enioy that which is aboue
his condition, blinding the eyes of reaſon, he doth precipitate himſelfe by his raſh and in-
ſolent actions, to the loweſt ſtep of ſhamefull ruine. The riches of *Naſſuf* were ſo great
The treaſures of Naſſuf. and proportionable to his fortune, as after his death they found about two buſhels of dia-
monds and pearles. Doubtleſſe this rich and ſtately ſpoyle deſerued to be enioyed by ſome
great Prince. So the Emperour *Achmat* ſeized thereon, and applied it to his Chaſna, or
Treaſurie.

Another diſcourſe of Naſſufs death. This death of *Naſſuf* is related after another maner by one who was then preſent in CON- K
STANTINOPLE, the which I haue thought good to ſet downe as I haue receiued it from him.
The grand Seignior being much diſcontented with his Viſier; whether incenſed with ſuch as
were neere about him, who both hated and feared *Naſſuf*, or doubting his great power, hee
diſſembled his ſpleene, vntill hee might find ſome opportunitie for reuenge: yet it was not
ſo ſecretly carried, but *Naſſuf* had diſcouered the Sultans diſcontent, and laboured by great
guifts both to the Sultana and others to pacifie him, prouiding notwithſtanding in the
meane time for his owne ſafetie, ſending horſemen daily ouer into ASIA, meaning to paſſe
himſelfe when hee had gathered together a ſufficient ſtrength. But it fell out on the ſeuenth
day of October, it being the Turkes ſabbath, that the Moone about eight a clocke at night
was much eclipſed, which made the Turks expect ſome great accident. The grand Seignior L
hauing formerly cauſed it to be bruited, that hee would about that time paſſe to viſite a new
Moſque which was then in building; whereupon all the ſtreets were hanged with cloth and
arras, and as the cuſtome was, a crie went before, that *The king commeth*; at the noiſe whereof
Naſſuf (being then in his houſe) could not but diſcend to ſalute the Sultan as hee paſſed by:
But it was not the graund Seignior himſelfe, but his Boſtangi Baſſa, whom hee had cauſed to
be attired like himſelfe, who being come before *Naſſufs* dore, and finding him ſtanding there,
he ſuddenly leapt vnto him, and told him that the Sultans pleaſure was he ſhould deliuer vp
his ſeale, whereat *Naſſuf* being amazed, demaunded what the Sultan meant to do; to whom
the Boſtangi Baſſa replied, That he knew not what the princes pleaſure was, but if he would
not deliuer it, he would return with that meſſage vnto him. Wherupon *Naſſuf* drew the ſeale M
out of his boſome, and deliuered it. Then the Boſtangi Baſſa ſhewed him a warrant for his
head, whereunto he preſently ſubmitted himſelfe, and then two Iamoglans ſtrangled him: his
head was preſently cut off, and carried to the graund Seignior, and his bodie throwne into
the ſtreet to be trampled on.

It was

A It was thought his death was procured by the wife of *Cicala*, Bassa of BABYLON, who had beene manzoled or deposed from his gouernment there by *Nassuf*, and was a little before returned to CONSTANTINOBLE, but could not bee allowed by *Nassuf* to haue any accesse vnto the grand Seigniors presence; whereupon he wrote a letter vnto the Sultan, wherin he accused *Nassuf* to haue conspired with the Persian to kill him, charging him with many things that were capitall. This letter he sent by his wife who was sister to the grand Seignior, who comming to his speech (although shee were watchfully obserued by *Nassuf* who was then present) left the letter in his chamber, and so departed. The grand Seignior finding this letter, and reading it, was much incensed against *Nassuf*, and neuer quiet in mind vntill he
B had his head. He writes that there were found in *Nassufs* house 80 bagges of gold, each bag containing 10000 chequinos. After *Nassufs* death *Mechmet Bassa* Admirall at sea (who had married Sultan *Achmats* eldest daughter) was made chiefe Visier; hee was borne in CONSTANTINOPLE, and the first naturall Turke that was euer Visier since CONSTANTINOPLE was wonne.

You haue heard in the last yeares relation, of some combustions which were growing in TRANSYLVANIA, and how the Sultan had written his letters of an imperious stile vnto the noblemen and states of the countrey, which letters were fixed vp in forme of a mandate throughout all TRANSYLVANIA, & in places that were neerest vnto those noblemen which held the Emperors partie against *Bethlem*. At the same time *Bethlem* defeated certaine troups
C of the garrisons at LIPPA and GENOA, which ouerranne and spoiled the countrey, so as the Gouernors of those places were forced to send to VIENNA, to demand succours of men and money. A Chiaus arriued at that time at LINTS, bringing letters vnto the Emperour from the graund Seigniour; the first point contained in them was, That his Imperiall Maiestie should haue a care, that the peace made betwixt them for twentie yeares should not bee violated, and that for his part he desired to obserue it faithfully. 2. That in the name of his Imperiall maiestie they had seized vpon certain places in TRANSYLVANIA, a prouince which had beene alwayes vnder his protection, which receiued her princes from his hand, and the which he was bound to defend against all her enemies. 3. That the tyrannie of prince *Battori* had constrained him to giue forces to *Bethlem Gabor* to dispossesse him of the principalitie of
D TRANSYLVANIA: That after the death of the said *Battori*, he had inuested *Bethlem* to gouern it in peace. 4. That since, he had bin aduertised how that some troups of souldiors in the name of his Imperiall maiestie, contrary to the articles of peace, had by force seized vpon the forts of HVST and VIVAR, and the townes of NAGIPAN and TONASE. 5. That he had giuen expresse charge to *Bethlem*, not to suffer any enterprise, no not vpon the least village of his principalitie, to the end that nothing might be separated; but that he should repell the iniurie of the aggressor by force. 6. That he exhorted his imperiall maiestie, if he desired the continuance of the peace, to command his people to make restitution of the places vsurped, or to signifie his intention by the same Chiaus which hee had sent, to the end hee might bee fully assured: for the mischiefe increasing daily, the affection which he bare to the good of peace
E might grow cold.

Letters from the Sultan to the Emperor.

The Emperour receiued the Chiaus at LINTS verie honourably, and gaue him an answer to his letter wrapt in a piece of cloth of gold; the sence wherof was, That this businesse being of great importance, his Imperiall maiestie desired to confer with the princes Electors, and states of the empire to heare their aduice; after which he would acquaint him with his last resolution: And finally that he should rest assured, that for his part he would not attempt any thing contrarie to the peace. In the meane time there was a pettie warre in HVNGARIE, the incursions and spoyles betwixt the Christians and the Turkes beginning againe. The
Turkes of the garrison of AGRIA going foorth, tooke a great number of cattell from the Christians; eight hundred Hayduckes aduertised of this spoile, pursued them so speedily,
F as they met them before they came within halfe a league of their retrait, when they made them to leaue their prize, and put them to flight. The Bassa of AGRIA aduertised of the defeate of his out-riders, goeth foorth with one thousand men, to recouer the bootie from the Hayduckes, which they had newly taken from his souldiors: But after a sharpe encounter hee lost his horse, and two hundred of his men, being forced to make his retrait.

The Emperours answer to the Turke.

The Turkes courses in Hungarie.

From thence the Haiduckes went and spoiled the countrey about SOLNOC; some others hol- G
ding the waies of STRIGONIVM or GRAN, tooke a Turkish Bride with her baggage, who was going from GRAN to BVDA; and foure hundred Boothalers (some of them Haiducks and the rest Turkes, men which hold no partie but their owne, to rob with the more impunitie) seized vpon BALASTER, MICOLVT, and FELAC: But at the recouerie of them, they were so ill intreated by the Hungarians, as most of them lost their liues there, and the rest were taken prisoners.

The Estates of Bohemia, Austria, Stiria, and others.

But the Emperour who desired to bee resolued in the important businesse of TRANSYL- VANIA, assembled the Estates of BOHEMIA, AVSTRIA, STIRIA, CARINTHIA, CAR- NIOLA, SILESIA, LVSATIA, MORAVIA, and HVNGARIE, his hereditarie countries, H whom he gaue to vnderstand, that the peace was violated in HVNGARIE, by the hostilities of the Turkes vpon the Christians; to whose preiudice Sultan *Achmat* had subiected vnto himselfe the prouinces of VALACHIA, MOLDAVIA, and TRANSYLVANIA: this last vnder the gouernment of *Bethlem Gabor*, who had made himselfe his vassaile. That the Sultan had sent word to his Imperiall maiestie, that hee should not pretend any thing there, to the end this countrey might bee wholly vnited to the Turkes Empire. Whereupon hee earnestly exhorted the assembly to consider wisely: First, whether TRANSYLVANIA should be left wholly in the Turkes power; Secondly, why the Sultan would not consent to the ratification of the truce; Thirdly, of the meanes to make war, if the necessitie of his affaires should force him; Fourthly, to what end the Turke would hinder his Imperiall Maiestie, that hee I should pretend no right to TRANSYLVANIA; Fiftly, that the Turke had sent him an Embassadour, who contrarie to the articles of peace, had not brought any presents; Sixtly, If they should make a new accord with the Turke, to consider aduisedly what assurance they might take, seeing that he would not consent vnto the sixt article of the peace.

The resolution of the Estates.

Their opinions were diuers vpon these propositions; but all ioyntly consented to maintaine the authoritie of the Imperiall Maiestie. The Hungarians onely interessed in their resolutions to warre, by reason of the spoyle of their country, as a passage for all their troups, they besought the Emperour, that if he meant to send any forces into TRANSYLVANIA, they might haue commaundement to march some other way, and not ouer their lands. *Bethlem*

The designes of Bethlem vpon diuers places.

Gabor in the meane time laboured to recouer those places which had been lost. Wherefore K
he prouided himselfe to make some attempts vpon LIPPA, and other places, as at BORENE GENOE, and ARACH. The Gouernours of these places gaue aduice vnto *Forgatsi* Lieutenant generall to the Emperour in high HVNGARIE, representing vnto him the estate of their garrison, and the feare they had, that if *Bethlem* should once get them into his possession and power, hee would deliuer them ouer vnto the Turke: That if they would send them succours, they would rather endure all extremities, than yeeld them to the enemie. Yet for all this they make no haste to send them succours: and *Sander Bassa* according to the commandement he had receiued from the Sultan, hauing brought forces to *Bethlem*, the siege of LIPPA was resolued in the Estates of TRANSYLVANIA. On the fiue and twentieth of October

He receiues forces from the Turke, and besiegeth Lippa.

the cannon being drawne out of VARRADIN to batter the fort; *Bethlem* went to inuest it, L
made his approches, and battered it so furiously, as hauing made a reasonable breach, it serued first for a passage for foure hundred men to escape, who left the Gouernour with verie small meanes to defend the place, and without hope of succours from HVNGARIE, which made him come to a parley, promising to yeeld the place, to haue their liues and goods saued. The forts of GENOE and ARACH, were deliuered by the same capitulation. That these three places should not be put into the Turkes hands, but should remaine perpetually vnited to the principalitie of TRANSYLVANIA: and to take all interest from the Turkes, the Estates of the countrey should pay vnto *Sander Bassa* the charges and entertainement of his troups. These places thus gotten by *Bethlem*, hee manned them with new garrisons: the Imperialls which were within them being retired to *Forgatsi* the Emperours lieutenant in high HVN- M
GARIE. But the Estates of TRANSYLVANIA being assembled at VARRADIN, disputed diuersly, whether they should resigne these three places into the Sultans power: some represented the discontentment he would haue if they were refused, and the inconuenience that might ensue: others were not of opinion that the prouince should be so dismembred, giuing

the

A the moſt important places thereof vnto infidels. Thus without conſenting or refuſing the deliuerie of theſe places to the Turke; the Eſtates concluded, that prince *Bethlem* ſhould doe therein what hee held moſt neceſſarie for the tranquilitie of the countrey: beſeeching him moſt humbly to free them from the Imperials, who had ſeized vpon Hvst and Vivar. Such were the affaires of Transylvania this yeare, a prouince diſtracted from the Emperours power by the Turkes practiſes.

At Constantinople, Sultan *Achmat*, deſirous to beautifie the outward part of his Seraigle with a goodly and ſpacious place vpon the ſea ſhore, he cauſed a platforme to bee made within the ſea, being eight hundred paces long, and one hundred and twentie broad. *The Sultan cauſeth a platforme to be made at Conſtantinople.*

B The Prouoſt of Constantinople cauſed this reſolution to be proclaimed, when as preſently euery houſe ſent forth a man, and the chiefe of families themſelues laboured there in perſon. There might you ſee the Baſſaes ſerue as ouerſeers of the workemen, and the Ianizaries and Spahies carying ſcuttles with a wonderfull alacritie; and at all houres of the day there was muſicke of diuers ſorts of inſtruments, to eaſe their labour, and to encourage them to continue. The Viſiers going to viſite the workemen, cauſed a largeſſe of pieces of ſiluer to bee caſt amongſt them. Thus the Sultan being ſerued with admirable diligence in this his worke of pleaſure, hee ſaw it finiſhed in three moneths, hauing beene begun in October this yeare.

Whileſt that the Sultan imployed his leaſure after this manner, in the ſtructure of a plat-
C forme within the ſea of Constantinople, certaine religious men parting from Pera, had a deſigne to build another in the waues of infidelitie; but more profitable for the health of ſoules. This was an imployment of Ieſuits into the countrey of Mingrelia, in old time called Cholcos: *Lewis Grangier* a Prieſt of this ſocietie, with two others of his Order, and an Armenian for their Interpreter, parted from Thrace with this godly reſolution, to preach vnto the people farre from God, the truth of his holy word, and to guide them happily in the way to heauen. He paſt the Boſphorus of Thrace, and the famous caſtles of *Leander* and *Hero*, and cut through thoſe waues, whereas he that could not quench the fire of his paſſion, quenched the flame of his life: he paſt beyond *Pompeyes* pillar, or rather that of the moſt happie *Daniel Stylita*, who erected his towards this mouth of the ſea: and about the
D ſixt of Iune this ſame yeare they arriued at Verna, a famous towne in Thrace, whereas a companie of French ſouldiours (whom the violence of neceſſitie had ſome yeares ſince forced to leaue the Emperours ſeruice in Hvngarie) were in garriſon for the Turke, to defend his ſubiects againſt the incurſions of the Coſſaques: yet theſe French men doe ſtill obſerue the Catholique Religion inuiolably. From thence he ſailed towards Cordvla, and by the incounter of a little gallion he entred into the Port of Trebyzond. Within few dayes after he was carried in the ſame veſſell to Eriſſa in the countrey of Laxia or Lassia, which on the one ſide lookes towards the countrey of the Georgians, and on the other that of Trebizond. The Chriſtian religion hath been for a long time planted among thoſe people, but verie ill manured: for the fathers to free their miſerable children from the tribute where-
E with the Turkes oppreſſe them, cauſe their children to be circumciſed after the Mahometan manner, and for the ſame conſideration they marrie their daughters vnto Ianizaries. Moreouer they abandon themſelues to the Mahometan impietie, to the end they may be deliuered from their inſupportable oppreſſions, and their Turkiſh yoke. The Ieſuites found there a good ſubiect to worke vpon for the health of ſoules: during their abode there for certaine dayes they catechiſed the men, baptiſed the children, and aduertiſed the women maried vnto Turkes, what they were to doe for the maintenance of their faith: But for that their commiſſion or charge was to goe vnto Mingrelia or Cholcos, they went againe to ſea and ſailed towards Govea, which is the furtheſt corner of the blacke ſea: this hauen being verie vnfit to caſt anchor in, they followed the gallies which carried a Baſſa called *Oneze* from
F Constantinople, who ſhould treat a peace on the behalfe of Sultan *Achmat*, with the prince of the Mingrelians, and diſpoſe him to pay a tribute; with theſe veſſels they went into a port called Macrogalo, nine miles from that of Govea, holding this place more ſafe than the other: But in truth there is little aſſurance whereas the waues and winds command ſoueraigntie. A Northweſt wind riſing about midnight on the fifteenth of September, draue their gallies neere vnto the ſhelfes and rockes, whereas one was broken and caſt away. *Certaine Ieſuits go to Mingrelia or Cholcos.* *The ſhipwracke of certaine gallies.*

away. This tempest continued many daies, and during the violence thereof, another gallie was lost, in the which the Iesuites had beene, by good aduice they had retired to land during the furie of the sea and winds. The Iesuites imputed the cause of this losse, to the prohibition which *Oneze* the Bassa had made vnto them, not to passe into MINGRELIA before the peace were concluded with the princes of that countrie; the which grew long, by reason of the difficulties which happened in the treatie. In the end those princes resoluing to pay the tribute vnto the Turke, it was concluded. G

A peace betwixt the Turks and the Georgians.

The libertie of trauell followes peace, *Grangier* and his companions proceeded in their iourney; twentie daies after their departure from MACROGALO, they arriued at SATRAPELLA, a place of GEORGIA, whereas the princes Visier came to visit them, and after the Georgian manner saluted them, bare headed, and kneeling vpon one knee. *Gorell* prince of the Georgians, (who was then at BARLET, whereas the court was to passe the feasts of Christenmas) being aduertised of the arriuall of these new Christian and French preachers, sent for them, receiued them fauourably, and saluted them bare headed and kneeling. After that he had made them to blesse his court, he held many discourses with them of the trueth of the Romane church; and of the Popes power, as the father of all Christendome; being mooued partly thereunto by a feeling of pietie to the church, and partly from the instructions he receiued from these Iesuites, so as enlightened with a new beame of the true light; he intreated *Grangier* to craue absolution of his sinnes from the Pope, the which (said hee) he may giue me by the power he hath from God; promising to send him his confession in writing. But vnderstanding that the Iesuite had power from the Pope to absolue him; he purged his conscience of all his sinnes, by a generall confession of his life. Without doubt the zeale of these soules, so farre from succour, shewes plainely what the haruest would be, if so many labourers were sent as are necessarie. A Monke of GEORGIA, who had liued at Rome for the space of twelue yeares, had in former times planted pietie there: the which they of this mission did now alter. This prince *Gorell* intreated the Iesuites, to send him some of their companie at their returne into EVROPE, promising to make great esteeme of them, and to giue them a church, a house, and all things necessarie for their maintenance. The prince offered them siluer, which they refused modestly, excusing themselues vpon the rules of their institution, which forbids them to receiue any temporall recompence for the administration of holie things: Thus they parted from this prince, who commended much their manner of liuing, and caused them to be conducted to SATRAPELLA, to continue on their iourney into MINGRELIA. H

The salutation of the Georgians.

The reception of the Iesuites by a prince of Asia.

I

K

The third of Februarie in the yeare 1615, they parted from this towne with the Turkes, who came to conclude the peace, and passing by the bankes of Fasso (a riuer which doth water the countrie of COLCHOS, now called MINGRELIA) they arriued at HERAILCANO, otherwise called HERACLIA, and from thence to MARGOVLA, whereas the prince of the Mingreliens (called *Dodran*) then remained, being busie in the reception of *Threbis Cham* king of GEORGIA, who was come thither to visit him, being expeld his countrie by the king of PERSIA. The Iesuites were brought to kisse the hands of prince *Dodran*, and of *Lipartia* his vncle, who was regent of the realme during his minoritie. They both promised them assistance in their affaires, sending them to the towne of MACAVRY, to make their abode there whilest they were busied in the affaires of the countrie, the which at that time were somewhat confused. The Bishop of that place entertained them with great demonstration of loue, and soone after, making a feast to *Threbis Cham*, or prince of the Georgians, he would needs haue the Iesuites assist at this banquet, for a great testimonie of his loue. It is the manner of those of COLCHOS or the Mingreliens, as well as the Georgians, to sing at their meat, the *Threbis Cham* desired that the Iesuites might sing some note when it came to their turne, whereof they excused themselues diuers times: But there was no remedie they must do as others haue done, whereupon they sung the hymne of *Plange Lingua &c.* appointed for Holie Thursday. Being thus fauourably entertained in MINGRELIA; they make their residence at MOCAVRY, with hope to labour profitably for the health of soules, which erre in that countrie through the darkenesse of ignorance, for want of men to teach them the way of trueth. They are Christians of the Greeke profession, vnder the commaundment of diuers princes, alwaies in war either against the Turke or the Persian: They carrie the name

L

The custome of Mingreliens at their feasts.

M

of

A of Cham, which is as much to say, as king or soueraigne prince: The Sophie had dispossest *Threbis Cham* chiefe king of GEORGIA of all his countries, in the yeare 1613, who had retired himselfe into MINGRELIA as you haue heard.

Whilest those men labour to sow the seeds of true doctrine of the Apostles in the soil of Mahometisme, a Turke passing out of ASIA, comes into Christendome to seeke the light of the trueth, and demands fauourable assistance and succors from Christian Princes, to enter into the possession of the Empire, whereunto his birth and the degrees of a lawfull succession seemed to call him by a iust title. The discourse of his birth, of his fortunes, and of his pretensions to the Turkish Empire, is comprehended in this following relation. He tearmed
B himselfe the sonne of *Mahomet* the third, father to *Achmat*, now sitting in the imperiall throne at CONSTANTINOPLE; he maintained that his father by foure wiues or concubines had had foure sonnes, that is to say, *Mustapha*, who was strangled, for that he would haue dispossest his father of his kingdome; *Iacaia* (which was himselfe) *Achmat* now raigning, and *Osman*: yet it seemes by the sequell of the historie that he had another *Mustapha*: That hauing been sent for to come out of MAGNESIA to CONSTANTINOPLE, his mother (who had beene a Christian, and baptized vnder the name of *Hellen*; but was afterward ingaged in the companie of *Mahomet* the third, for the worth of her beautie, and knowne in the Turkie by the name of the *Sultana Lalpare*) could not conduct him to his father, for that he was dangerously sicke of the small pockes. And this princesse desired much, to find some fauourable occa-
C sion, whereby she might be freed from the damnable errors of *Mahomets* law, and returne to the wholesome way of the Christian faith, and retire her sonne *Iacaia* farre from the power of those bloodie lawes, which sprinckle the Imperial Scepter of him that comes vnto the crowne with the blood of his brethren; she well foresaw that *Iacaia* being but the second of *Mahomets* sonnes, should one day by his death secure the life of *Mustapha* his elder, and that the onely meanes to preserue him was to retire him into Christendome. Wherefore she laboured seriously in this designe, and made vse of a fauourable fiction, giuing it out, that her sonne *Iacaia* was dead of the small pockes; and hauing supposed in his place the sonne of an Eunuch dead of the same disease assisted at his funerall, and by her constrained teares subtilly disguised her designe. An Eunuch called *Astam Mehemet* was the faithfull secreta-
D rie of her enterprise; with him she leaues MAGNESIA, a prouince in ASIA, and vnder pretext to go vnto certain bathes there by, she gets her down to the sea side, passes into EVROPE, and transports her sonne into MOREA, sometimes called HELLESPONT, and lodgeth him (as vnknowne) in the Bishops pallace in the towne of MICLO. *Iacaia* was aboue nine yeares old; she held him not secure at MICLO, but transported him into MACEDONIA, vnder the habite of a Greeke Monke; and retires him into the towne of CASSANDRIA; where she discouers vnto the Archbishop of THESSALONICA, a man learned and of a holie life, the qualitie of her sonne, and the desire she had to make him a Christian: intreating him in charitie to take them both into his protection. This Archbishop lodgeth the mother in the monasterie of religious women of our Ladie of THESSALONICA, and giues the cu-
E stodie of the sonne vnto an Abbot of *S. Michaell*, a man learned in all the sciences, vnder whom he profited wonderfully, aswell in the Greeke tongue as in many goodly arts. I doe well know this to be true, for that I haue conuersed with him for the space of sixe moneths, and haue seene him often in the companie of learned men speake the Greeke, with as great facilitie as his Turkish and mother tongue. He continued in this Monasterie, vnder the care and gouernment of this learned Abbot, vntill the age of seuenteene yeares, that is to say, for the space of eight whole yeares; during which time, his mothers teares, the holie instructions of the Abbot, (but rather the diuine fauour) made him to enter into the way of his soules health, and become a Christian. The Archbishop of THESSALONICA clensed his soule from the pollutions of the law of *Mahomet*, and baptised him in the church of *S. Anastasius*,
F without the citie of THESSALONICA; yet secretly, for feare least the Eunuch comming to discouer this misterie, should abandon him and publish abroad the place and estate of his solitarie aboad, and so be miserably taken. Thus *Iacaia* calling himselfe Sultan, being alreadie in some assurance of the crowne of Heauen by the promises of holie baptisme, whilest that he was in the beginning of his pretensions to that of the Turkish empire, he leaues the monasterie where he had beene instructed; and in the companie of the Eunuch trauels vp

The Historie of Sultan Iacaia held by many to be Emperor Achmats brother.

His mother was a Christian.

She passeth out of Asia into Europe.

She discouers herselfe and him to an Archbishop.

Iacaia becomes a Christian.

and

and downe GREECE, passing away (in the length and varietie of his voyage) the impatiencie of his age and desires; and for that he would not be knowne, he takes vpon him the habite and the licence of a Deruis or religious Turke. But when he came to the citie of SIOPIA, he vnderstood the newes of the death of the Emperour *Mahomet* the third his father, and the reioycing for the new aduancement of Sultan *Achmat* to the Empire; learning at the same instant, that *Mustapha* his elder brother had beene strangled by the commandment of his father. The displeasure which he conceiued for that he had not been bred vp at CONSTANTINOPLE with the rest, to receiue so rich a crowne as that of the Turkish Empire, made him to wauer in diuers irresolutions; sometimes he would go into PERSIA to the *Sophie*, to haue succours from him, and with him to make warre against his brother: sometimes he would serue for a support and countenance to the rebels of ASIA, and iustifie their partie. After many discourses with the Eunuch touching his affaires, he sends him vnto the sonne of *Peri Bassa*, a rebell against the Emperour *Achmat*; the Eunuch treats for his maister, and receiues for him the rebells oath; and returning to TARLIS, where the Sultan *Iacaia* remained; he conducted him to *Peri Bassa*, to bee the head of his troupes. *Iacaia* arriues and sees himselfe obeyed by an armie readie to fight: for the Deftarden or treasurer being sent against the rebell *Peri* by the Grand Seignior with seuen thousand horse and three thousand foot, was alreadie vpon the bankes of the riuer Bardate readie to giue him battell. The Bassaes troupes (being lesse in number of fighting men) went to assaile him. There was a sharpe incounter; but in the end the Deftarden was victor, and the troupes of *Peri Bassa* defeated, and *Iacaia* being wounded in foure places of his bodie, was forced to saue himselfe on the other side of the riuer, where wandring vp and downe the fields, he found reliefe with a poore peasant, and soone after with an Abbot there by, who entertained him, and caused him to bee cured, holding him to be one of the Deftardens pages, as he himselfe said.

He ioines with the rebels of Asia.

The rebels defeated, and Iacaia wounded.

He sends to Constantinople and corrupted the Visier.

His wounds being cured, *Iacaia* returnes againe towards GREECE, where he finds his mother, confers with her, and soone after with the Eunuch, of the estate of his affaires; and concludes with both of them, to send to CONSTANTINOPLE, to the Visier Deruis (who at that time was discontented with the Emperour *Achmat*) to sound his disposition, and to see if he might gaine him to his partie: The Eunuch vndertakes the voyage, he speakes with the Deruis, and finds him disposed to entertaine the offers of *Iacaia*: The conspiracie was concluded, and they sweare to kill *Achmat*, and to settle *Iacaia* in the Imperiall throne. Hereupon he transports himselfe to CONSTANTINOPLE in a disguised habite: But when as they were readie to execute their enterprise (say they) the Deruis died; be it that the Emperour *Achmat* had discouered their designe, or otherwise. Thus *Iacaia* being frustrate of his hope to effect any thing by this meanes, he left the citie and fled towards the blacke sea, and then wandred into the countries of VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA, following the Carock of a POLAND embassadour on foot, vntill he came vnto the citie of CRACOVIA, whereas fortune had laid a snare for him, which brought him in danger of his life; For a Chiaus being come from CONSTANTINOPLE, and knowing him, he desired the king of POLAND in his masters name, to stay him, assuring him that by this meanes, he should strictly bind vnto him the affections of Sultan *Achmat*: the king refused his vniust demand, holding himselfe much honoured to see his Court the refuge of vnfortunate princes. After this refusall the Chiaus flies to trecherie; he corrupts certaine Tartarians of the kings guard with money, who promised to murder *Iacaia*; and doubtlesse they had performed it, if a Flemish imbroitherer had not aduertized him, and lent him his lodging for certain daies to hide himselfe; after which he freed himselfe from danger and past to PRAGVE towards the Emperour *Rodulphus* who was then liuing.

Iacaia in danger of his life at Cracouia.

He retires to Prague to the Emperour.

In this Imperiall Court he found reliefe, and meanes to ease his forepast miseries: The Emperour furnished him with all things necessarie: he spent a whole yeare there, and was acknowledged during his aboad, by many Turkes which came to PRAGVE, for brother to their Emperour *Achmat*. There wanted nothing but succours to effect his designes: But he findes nothing but faire words and good wishes at PRAGVE; so as he was forced to seeke the effects elsewhere. Certaine Saxons that were his friendes, aduised him to passe to FLORENCE to *Ferdinand* the great duke of TVSCANIE: he takes directions from that princes embassador

He comes to Florence to the great duke of Tuscanie.

A Embaſſador reſiding at PRAGE, and goes on his iourney: But entring into ITALIE hee heares that *Ferdinand* was dead; theſe mournfull newes made him to reſolue to ſeeke ſome other place, if *Coſmo* ſucceſſor to *Ferdinand*, and the great dutcheſſe his mother had not called him backe. He came then to FLORENCE, where he was honourably entertained, and lodged for the ſafetie of his perſon in the fort of *S. Iohn*, where he was ſupplied with all ſorts of commodities. The great duke *Coſmo* gaue him the title of Excellencie, appointed him horſes and caroches, and ſuch companie as he delighted in, for the pleaſure of hunting. He had not ſtaied long at FLORENCE, but he ſaw himſelfe aſſiſted with ſuch forces as he deſired. The great duke *Coſmo* cauſed his Gallions to be armed, ſending them into the Leuant,
B vnder the commaund of the knight *Beauregard*, where he had conference with *Naſſuf Baſſa*, at that time cheife of the rebels of ASIA. He offers him men, armes, and money if he would come to land and march towards PERSIA, whither many rebels were retired. But hee who commaunded the Florentine Gallions, had no commiſſion to leaue him in the hands of *Naſſuf*; wherefore he carried him backe to FLORENCE to his highneſſe.

He maketh a voyage into the Leuant in the dukes Gallions.

During the time that *Iacaia* was aboord the Gallions, the great Duke ſent diuers perſons into many parts of the Leuant, to informe themſelues carefully of theſe things which he had deliuered, not onely touching his owne perſon, but alſo of his mother, and they all brought backe certaine prooſes of the truth of his diſcourſes. This gaue the great duke ſubiect to impart this faire occaſion vnto SPAINE, to labour for the common good of Chriſtendome:
C He wrote vnto the Catholique king, and informed him of the qualitie of *Iacaia*, to the end that contributing ſuccours to his perſonage, they might vndertake ſome happie enterpriſe againſt the Turke. The king of SPAINE was content he ſhould be ſent to NAPLES: commaunding the Viceroy to giue him a reception fit for his qualitie. *Iacaia* went on his iourney, being accompanied by ſome, by the great dukes commaundement: But according to the newes which he receiued from NAPLES, he ſtaied at AVERSO, where he was receiued by the Gouernour with much honour. The Viceroy came to viſite him, gaue him the right hand, and the title of Excellencie. But as the counſell of SPAINE was tedious in their reſolutions, and delayed too long (as *Iacaia* ſuppoſed) the ſuccours which he expected; he parted from AVERSO to go to MILLAN, and from thence in a diſguiſed habite paſt again
D into the Leuant, to ſound their willes that might aduance his pretenſions and bring them to a happie end, but he preuailed as little as he had done before. Beſides all theſe voyages which we haue deſcribed, to the end he might leaue no means vnattempted to aduance his affaires, he went to ROME to kiſſe his holineſſe feet. Cardinall *Belarmine* receiued him, gaue him the right hand, and the title of Excellencie: the Pope aſſured him of his affection and ſuccours; but it was neceſſarie the ſecular powers ſhould begin to leuie men, and make the firſt ouerture to warre.

Iacaia goes to Naples and Millan.

He comes to Rome.

Since, we haue ſeene him in FRANCE, and at PARIS, vnder the protection of the duke of NEVERS, entertained by the bountie of this prince, and aſſiſted by his councell: And doubtleſſe if the troubleſome combuſtions of a ciuill war had not directed the armies of this
E duke, we had ſeene ſome happie ſucceſſe of the affaires which he treated in LORAINE, GERMANIE, and other places, to the ruine of the Turkes, and the good of Chriſtendome. Finally, as for this Turke called *Iacaia*, tearming himſelfe eldeſt brother to the Emperour *Achmat* now raigning at CONSTANTNOPLE, and for ſuch acknowledged by many: Yet ſome affirme (yea ſuch as haue conuerſed in the Eaſt) that Sultan *Mahomet* had but three ſonnes, which were *Muſtapha*, *Achmat*, & *Oſman*: Notwithſtanding it is heard to diſcouer in this perſonage any ſignes of an Impoſture; I haue often frequented with him, and carefully obſerued his carriage and actions: And haue alwaies noted in him a carriage and mind borne to great matters. This is all that we could learne of this man.

Stephano or *Tomſho* of whom we haue made mention in the yere 1612, hauing ouerthrown
F *Conſtantine* the lawfull prince, and made himſelfe Vayuod of MOLDAVIA by the ſupport and tyrannie of the Turke: as he held it by vſurpation, without any iuſt title, ſo he gouerned with all crueltie and inhumanitie, preferring crueltie before clemencie, and imitating that tyrant, who ſaid openly; *That he reſpected not the loue of his ſubiects ſo as they feared him*. Euen ſo this *Stephano* at his firſt entrance plotted how hee might root out all the noblemen in the countrie, whom in their language they call Boyers, with all others of credit and authoritie in

Tyrannies of Stephano.

in the countrie, both for that they ſupported *Conſtantine*, as for the iealouzie he had of them, being beſt able to reſiſt his tyrannous deſſignes: being alſo the common diſpoſition of ſuch as vſurpe any eſtate by wicked practiſes, to be alwaies in feare to be diſpoſſeſſed, and to bee entreated according to their merits. He began firſt with the Lord of BOTACAN brother to the princeſſe widdow to *Ierimie*, whom he cauſed with two others of the chiefe noblemen to be miſerably and inhumanely impaled, as if they had beene two notable theeues and murderers; and not content herewith, ſoone after he cauſed three ſcore and fifteen Boyers to be apprehended, cutting off all their heads, and would not pardon any one, notwithſtanding the great inſtance that was made by their kinsfolkes, charging them with the crime of treaſon, as if they had conſpired againſt his perſon, hauing no proofe at all: But theſe his cruelties did nothing daunt the Boyers, as *Stephano* had perſuaded himſelfe; but contrariwiſe they were the more incenſed, and many of them tooke armes openly, and had then ſeazed vpon him, beene reuenged of his cruelties, and ſet their countrie at libertie (which had not beene ruined as it was afterwards) if he had not beene aſſiſted by the citizens of YAS, whom he coniured to ſecond him in this occaſion, promiſing them immunities of all ſubſidies: In regard of which promiſe, theſe poore wretches preferring their priuate profit before their publique ſafetie; imployed themſelues in the ſeruice of this tyrant, and fought valiantly againſt the Boyers, who were come to aſſault him in the citie of YAS; But finding that hee was better aſſiſted than they expected (after ſome light skirmiſh) they retired aſwell as they could; whereof many were taken priſoners, whom the tyrant cauſed to be ſlaine in cold blood, or impaled, to terrifie the reſt.

The noblemen reuoult againſt Stephano.

The Boyers which eſcaped from this defeat, knowing that there was no hope of mercie in *Stephano*, who was full of reuenge, nor by conſequence any ſafetie in MOLDAVIA during his gouernment, they reſolued to haue recourſe vnto the princeſſe (widow to *Ieremie*) who had fled into POLONIA when as ſhe receiued newes of the taking of her ſonne *Conſtantine*. This princeſſe vnderſtanding from the Boyers of the tyrannous gouernment of *Stephano*, and that moſt of the Moldauians were reſolued to ſhake off the yoke of his tyrannie, and deſired to haue prince *Alexander* in his place, remembring the good vſage they had receiued from the deceaſed prince *Ieremie* his father: Theſe conſiderations, together with a deſire of commaund vnder her ſonne (who was then but ſixteene yeares old) were ſtrong motiues to perſuade both her and her ſonne to imbrace this occaſion, the which they imparted to prince *Viſinowiskie* ſonne in law to the princeſſe, and to prince *Correskie*, who at that time aſpired to marrie her youngeſt daughter: Theſe princes not onely allowed of this deſigne, but they offered themſelues willingly to accompanie prince *Alexander* into MOLDAVIA, and to take the whole care of his armie. This reſolution being taken they preſently emploied all their credit to leuie men, and had within leſſe than two moneths drawne together tenne or twelue thouſand foot and horſe, Polonians, Coſſackes, and Tranſyluanians: whereof the Vayuod *Stephano* being aduertized, he preſently leuied what forces he could, of Moldauians, Tartarians, and Valachians, hauing drawne together an armie of almoſt 20000 men, which he kept about YAS, and there reſolued to attend the princes of POLONIA.

Prince Alexander called into Moldauia by the Boyers.

Prince *Alexander* being aduanced with his armie within two leagues of CAMINITHE in PODOLIA, he was much troubled to paſſe the riuer of Nieſtre, which diuides that countrie from MOLDAVIA, fearing the fort of COCHINA, in the which there was a ſtrong garriſon of Moldauians, and ſtore of munition to defend the paſſage of the ſaid riuer: But it fell out happily for prince *Alexander*; for the captaine which commaunded in the ſaid fort, being much diſcontented at the cruelties of the Vayuod *Stephano*, came voluntarily of himſelfe to offer his ſeruice to *Alexander*, and brought him the keyes of the fort, leauing all to his diſpoſition; ſo as he paſt his armie eaſily into MOLDAVIA, and in ſigne of ioy diſcharged many vollies of his great ordnance, which made *Stephano* diſtruſt the affections of the Moldauians, and to feele a pricking in his conſcience which doth neuer abandon tyrants and vſurpers.

The fort of Cochina yelded vnto prince Alexander.

Prince *Alexander* making ſome ſtay with his armie at COCHINA in the yeare 1615, aduanced towards Yas, and being come within halfe a daies iourney, he ſent forth eight hundred Coſſackes (choſen out of a great number) to diſcouer the countenance of his enemies armie: but they were not farre aduanced before they encountred 1500 Tartarians, ſent by

1500 Tartarians defeated by the Coſſackes.

Stephano

A *Stephano* to giue ſome charge to the Polonians. Although the Coſſackes were fewer in number, yet finding the Tartarians in diſorder, they charged them ſo reſolutely as they defeated a great part, and put the reſt to rout. After which exploit they brought word to prince *Alexander* that *Stephanos* armie might be about the number of fifteen thouſand men, but they were ſuch as were gathered vp in the countrie, and not trained vp to armes, who were rather drawne to it by conſtraint than of their free will, and therefore were not much to be feared. This happie ſucceſſe, together with the report made by the Coſſackes, did greatly encourage *Alexanders* armie, being alſo much incenſed againſt *Stephano* for certaine letters which hee had written to their prince, full of threats, as if both hee and they had beene alreadie at his
B mercie, the which did the more incourage the Polonians, and made them reſolue rather to die fighting, than to fall into the hands of this cruell tyrant. The ſame day there came certaine deputies of the Moldauians to prince *Alexander*, without the priuitie of *Stephano*, to know what his deſſigne was, and to intreat him to take pittie of MOLDAVIA, which was threatened with a ſpeedie ruine, if the warre continued any longer; to whom the prince made anſwere, that his intent was not to oppreſſe MOLDAVIA, but to free it from the tyrannie of *Stephano*; that he had beene inuited by a great number of the Boyers, who had come vnto him into POLONIA to that end, and had giuen him aſſurance, that it was the common deſire of the Moldauians, That vpon this confidence he had marcht with what forces he could draw together, and that if he did preuaile in his deſſignes (as he aſſured himſelfe with their aſſiſtance) he would gouerne them with no leſſe mildnes than his father prince
C *Ieremie* had done, whoſe ſonne and lawfull ſucceſſor he was. The deputies returned well ſatisfied with this anſwere, and hauing publiſhed it in diuers places, many Moldauians came and ioined with the prince his armie, and aſſiſted him faithfully in this action.

Deputies ſent from the Moldauians to prince Alexander.

In October prince *Alexander* aduancing about three leagues with his armie, hee made a ſtand in a faire champian where there were good ſprings to refreſh them, and in the meane time he called a councell at war, to reſolue what courſe he ſhould take, and when he ſhould draw the enemie to fight. In the meane time he had ſent a troupe of Coſſackes to diſcouer the armie, who brought word that they were ranged in battell, and that they had twentie cannons readie in front, the which did not much amaze prince *Alexander*, for that ſome daies
D before, the Generall of *Stephanos* artilerie had ſent to aſſure him, that if he gaue battell, hee would annoy his men as little as hee could, hauing a deſire to ſerue the prince, and by this meanes be reuenged of *Stephano*, who had cauſed his brother in lawes head to be cut off, vpon a falſe ſuſpect which he had conceiued againſt him being innocent. The which ſhould teach princes, that nothing doth procure them more ſecret enemies than crueltie, and that at one time or other they in whom they moſt relie abandon them whenas they leaſt expect it. The Vayuod *Stephano* meaning to make a ſecond diſcouery of the princes armie, ſent 1200 Tartarians, and two or three hundred Moldauians, who being ſeene a far off (for that it was in a plaine champaine) the prince ſent 500 Coſſackes with 400 Polonian lances to incoun-
E ter them: The Tartarians perceiuing it, made a ſhew at the firſt as if they would retire, to draw them by little and little from their campe; and being about a league off, they made a ſtand, thinking that they durſt not charge them: But they were ſoone deceiued, for the Polonians fell vpon the Tartarians with ſuch furie, as they ouerthrew them, and ſlew moſt of them, ſo as there eſcaped not aboue fiue or ſix hundred, who retiring to their campe cauſed a great amaſement. The princes armie was much encouraged by this exploit, and increaſed dayly in number, as it is vſual in ciuil war to follow that partie which hath the firſt aduanced.

The Generall of Stephanos artilleriey e ſolues to betray him.

A ſecond deſeat of Stephanos Tartarians.

Preſently after this execution, the prince meaning to aduance his armie towards the enemies campe, his foreward was ſtayed by a battalion of one thouſand horſe, who had the night before ſeaſed vpon a narrow paſſage betwixt a poole and a marriſh, by the which they knew the Polonian armie muſt paſſe: But this obſtacle was ſoone taken away, by the
F aduice which was giuen by certaine Moldauians, to ſend a companie of horſemen by a way vnknowne to the enemie, by which meanes they might ſurpriſe them behind, before they ſhould be diſcouered. The execution of this ſtratagem was giuen to the Coſſacks, who ſpeedily went, being guided by certain Moldauians; who comming within 50 paces of the enemie vndiſcouered, they charged them, & were ſeconded ſo fitly by the forward, that ſtaid on

1000 of Stephanos horſes defeated.

the other ſide; as of one thouſand horſe there returned not aboue fiftie to their campe, to carrie newes of their bad ſucceſſe. G

Prince *Alexander* hauing happily opened this paſſage, he aduanced with his armie within cannon ſhot of *Stephanos* campe. Prince *Viſnouiskie* was of opinion that they ſhould make a kind of incloſure with their carts, which might ſerue them as a fort, hauing no place of retreat within tenne leagues; the which being diſcouered by *Stephano*, he ſhot certaine vollies of cannon through their fort, ſo as there were ſome ſouldiours ſlaine and ſome hurt: And the prince anſwered him with the like, but to ſmall effect, for that night ſurpriſed them, neither had they aboue eight ſmall pieces. Prince *Viſnouiskie* ſpent the night to encourage his ſouldiours, letting them vnderſtand that they had no reaſon to be amazed, although their enemies were more in number, for that moſt of them were peaſants, neuer trained vp in armes nor ſeene battell; whereof they had had good proofe in many encounters, where they had euer beene victors ouer their enemies, although they were inferiour in number: That they were ſo many teſtimonies and aſſurances that God did fight for them, and would vſe them to puniſh the tyrannies of *Stephano*, and his cruelties againſt MOLDAVIA. Finally if they were victors (whereof he doubted not, if they did their duties) there was not any one but ſhould returne loaden with rich ſpoiles and recompences from prince *Alexander*. This did ſo encourage the ſouldiours, as they proteſted all with one voice, rather to die than to faile of their duties. Moreouer the princes gaue the Colonels and Captaines to vnderſtand of the intelligence they had with the Generall of *Stephanos* artillerie, wherewith they were much comforted. H I

Prince Viſnouiskie encourageth his ſoldiors

The diſpoſition of the two armies.

The next day being the eleuenth of October, they began to put their armies in battaile, during the which there were diuers skirmiſhes, wherein *Alexanders* partie had ſtill the aduantage; ſo as it ſeemed they were ſo many preſages of good fortune which ſhould befall them that day. The princes armie was ordered by *Viſnouiskie*, to whom prince *Alexander* had giuen the charge of Generall, as moſt capable, hauing ſundrie times giuen ſufficient proofes of his ſufficiencie and valour in other battells. This Generall ſeeing *Stephanos* horſemen diuided into three ſquadrons, and the Tartarians moſt aduanced, he appointed the Coſſackes to incounter with them, the which was iuditiouſly and diſcreetly done, for they both go freely to the charge, neither are they couered with any armes, but onely with the skinnes of certaine beaſtes, wherewith they make themſelues to ſeeme as fearefull as they can, obſeruing no order in their fighting, and vſing cries which are fearefull to ſuch as are not accuſtomed vnto them; and being once broken they ſeldome returne againe to the charge. The Polonian Lanciers called in their language Houſſarskie, being about one thouſand and fiue hundred men well armed, made the ſecond battallion of *Alexanders* armie, led by prince *Coreskie*, and were placed on the right hand againſt 3000 Tartarian, Valachian, and Moldauian horſemen. The Hungarian foot being about 3000 men were in the middeſt of prince *Alexanders* armie with the cannon, vpon a little hill of ſome aduantage; and on the left hand was the reſt of the Chaualrie, who were led by the princes *Alexander* and *Viſnouiskie*; and the baggage was a little behind the foot in the campe where they had lodged the night before. K L

The battell betwixt prince Alexander and the Vayuod Stephano.

The tyrant *Stephano* hauing diſpoſed his armie into diuers ſquadrons, began about nine of the clocke in the morning to play with his cannon vpon *Alexanders* armie, who found that the Generall of the Artillerie had kept his promiſe, for moſt of the bullets flew ouer his men and hurt them not; vpon which confidence hee commaunded the Coſſackes to charge the Tartarians which were aduanced, whom they ſoone defeated. At the ſame inſtant two thouſand light horſe gaue charge to the Hungarian foot men which guarded *Stephanos* cannon, and in an inſtant cut moſt of them in pieces, and the reſt yeelded themſelues; ſo as *Alexander* became maſter of his cannon. The tyrant ſeeing his Infanterie in danger to be defeated and his cannon loſt, cauſed a battallion of three thouſand Valachian and Moldauian horſemen to aduance, who without doubt had recouered the cannon, but the generous prince *Coreskie* with his Polonian Launciers charged them ſo furiouſly in the flanke, as that they ſlew almoſt the one halfe of them vpon the place, and put the reſt that remained to rout. Preſently after this followed another ſquadron, the which *Coreskie* perceiuing, M

he

A he wisely retired towards his campe, seeing his men wearied and tyred with the slaughter of their enemies, and not able to maintaine the fight without some rest. Then came prince *Alexander* and *Visnouiskie* who was his faithfull guide, with the rest of his horsemen to incounter this last battalion of the enemie, whereunto they went with greater courage, for that they were assured the Vayuod *Stephano* was there present, which charge continued for the space of a quarter of an houre, during which time prince *Coreskie* had leisure to take breath, and to gather togither what possibly hee could of those of his partie, to succour them that were then in fight, who were almost tired, and prince *Alexander* farre ingaged. But seeing these vnexpected succours, hee and his men recouered their forces, and their
B enemies were so much amazed at it, as that all them that remained aliue were put to rout and fled. *Stephanos army defeated.*

But *Stephano* (being naturally a coward) apprehending blowes, had retired himselfe to the rest of his footmen, who had not yet come to fight, making a shew that he would rather die with them than flie away; but seeing the euent of this last charge, and his horsemen all in rout, hee soone resolued to saue himselfe by flight, hauing neuer giuen one stroke in this battell. The footmen which remained being about foure thousand men, seeing the successe of the battell yeelded to the mercie of the victors, and cried out God saue *Alexander* Vayuod of MOLDAVIA. The day of the victorie prince *Alexander* made his entrie into the citie of YAS, hauing the princes *Coreskie* and *Visnouiskie* on either side, after whom
C followed his whole armie. Entring into the castle hee was there proclaimed Prince and Vayuod of MOLDAVIA by all the Nobles and Boyers of the countrie, the which hee would neuer accept vntill that time. The next day prince *Alexander* vnderstanding that a great number of the chiefest of the inhabitants of YAS were fled into the mountaines and forrests to attend the euents of these troubles, hee sent certaine Boyers to inuite them to returne backe againe (with all assurance) to their houses, causing part of his armie to dislodge, and to bee quartered in the countrie thereabouts; and there were one thousand and fiue hundred foot, and fiue hundred horse (vnder the leading of prince *Coreskie*) sent to the citie of VASSELLOY, for that *Stephano* had fled that way, and might returne backe againe into MOLDAVIA. As for the Artillerie some were sent into POLONIA,
D and some were put into the fort of COCHINA, the which is as it were the Arsenall of MOLDAVIA. *The flight of Stephano.* *Alexander proclaimed prince of Moldauia.*

At the same time prince *Alexander* knowing that it was no lesse glorie to preserue than to get, hee called the chiefe Noblemen of his Court to counsell, to resolue what was fit to doe to maintaine him in his estate, which hee had newly gotten by the sword: where it was concluded among other things, that he should speedily send an Embassadour to the Grand Seignior, to let him vnderstand that he had neuer any intent to take armes against his maiestie, nor to withdraw MOLDAVIA from his obedience; but that hee had beene sought vnto being in POLONIA, and inuited by the Boyers of MOLDAVIA, for the vnspeakable cruelties of the Vayuod *Stephano*, who had resolued to root out the nobilitie
E of the said countrie, hauing put many of the chiefe to death without any occasion. They had also charge to giue the Sultan to vnderstand, that when as his maiestie aduanced *Stephano* to be Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, he had falsely suggested that he was sonne to a prince of MOLDAVIA, that he was not truely aduertised by his Bassaes and Councellours, that his predecessor had promised to the deceased father of prince *Alexander*, and to prince *Simeon* his vncle, that after his decease his sonnes should succeed him in the said estate, if they shewed not themselues vnworthie, and did pay the yearely tribute of fortie thousand Chequines, which tribute since the death of *Ieremie* had beene offered by prince *Constantine* his eldest sonne, to *Houssine Aga*, when as hee was sent to settle the said *Stephano*, as also that prince *Alexander* promised to pay it hereafter; and if need should be, he would giue prince *Bogdan* his brother as a sure and certaine pledge for the performance of his promises during the
F first yeare. *Embassadors sent by prince Alexander to the Grand Seignior.*

The Embassadours hauing receiued these instructions, they tooke their iourney speedily to CONSTANTINOPLE: But in steed of passing through THRACE which was their directest course, they were forced to go by TRANSYLVANIA fearing to be hindred by the men of *Prince Alexanders embassaders put to death by Stephano.*

of warre which then troubled all THRACE. Comming to BVDA they went to ſalute the G
Baſſa which commanded there, who being a ſpeciall friend to *Stephano* put them in priſon,
violating the law of Nations obſerued by the moſt barbarous; and afterwards he ſent them
to BRAILLE whither the tyrant *Stephano* had fled. They ſay he gaue 15000 Chequinos in
recompence to the Baſſa, and to reuenge himſelfe in ſome ſort of prince *Alexander* in the
perſons of his Embaſſadors, he cauſed their heads to be cut off one night after ſupper, and
their bodies to be caſt into the Danowe. The death of theſe embaſſadours were very preiu-
diciall to prince *Alexander*, by meanes whereof the Grand Seignior was not truely aduerti-
ſed of what had paſt in MOLDAVIA, nor receiued the complements, offers, and ſubmiſſion
of prince *Alexander*, ſo as he was wonderfully incenſed againſt him, and ſware his ruine, as H
you ſhall heare hereafter.

Stephano hauing receiued foure thouſand men from *Michna* prince of VALACHIA, and
Stephano returnes into Moldauia. gathered together the reliques of his ſcattered armie, he marcht toward VALACHIA; wher-
of prince *Alexander* being aduertiſed, he ſent prince *Coreskie* with ſix thouſand horſe Polo-
nians and Coſſackes to TICOVCH a ſtrong frontier towne to guard that paſſage: And
prince *Alexander* and *Viſnowiskie*, they ſtaied at YAS with the reſt of the armie to preſerue
the countrie, and to preuent all alterations in fauour of *Stephano*, who had ſome intelli-
gences. Within few daies after, the prince had newes that the inhabitants of HORREOVA
(a countrie in MOLDAVIA containing about fifteene or ſixteene French leagues in circu-
it) were in armes, and had ioyned with a great troupe of Tartarians to come and inueſt I
him, knowing well that prince *Coreskie* was otherwiſe imployed with part of the Polonian
armie. *Alexander* ſtayed not to haue theſe rebels come to YAS; but ſent *Viſnowiskie* his
brother in law with ſuch forces as hee could draw together to incounter with them. They
The inhabitants of Horreoua defeated with the Tartarians. met together within two leagues of the citie, where *Viſnowiskie* charged the Tartarians with
ſuch furie, as halfe of them were ſlaine vpon the place, and the reſt of them fled: There were
a great number of priſoners taken, and all the poore inhabitants of HORREOVA were
brought vnto YAS in token of triumph. The dead being numbred, there were found a-
bout eight hundred Tartarians and others ſlaine, and of the Polonians onely fiftie, and ſome
hundred hurt.

Prince *Alexander* hauing receiued newes of this defeat was wonderfully glad, and went K
preſently to horſebacke with his companie of French, which he had onely reſerued about
him, to goe and meet with *Viſnowiskie*, and to congratulate his happie victorie. This being
done with many complements and imbracings, he caſt his eye vpon the poore inhabitants
of HORREOVA, whom they led like a troupe of ſheepe, and had ſuch commiſeration on
them, as he preſently ſent them backe againe, hauing taken their oath of fidelitie, hoping
that this his clemencie would draw the moſt factious to obedience, hauing formerly tried
the oppreſſions of a moſt cruell prince. Prince *Alexander* hauing giuen thankes to God
for this new and vnexpected victorie, he ſent a gentleman vnto prince *Coreskie* to aduer-
tiſe him thereof, who at the ſame inſtant was buſie to diſpoſe of his troupes to meet with
Stephano, who returned into MOLDAVIA. The incounter was in a plaine champaine, L
hauing on the one ſide the riuer of Sirette, the which diuides MOLDAVIA from VALA-
CHIA: the skirmiſh continued from ten of the clocke vntill it was noone with like aduan-
tage; but prince *Coreskie* being aduertiſed that *Stephano* was in a ſquadron of horſe which
was ſome two hundred paces diſtant from him: he ioyned vnto his troupe foure hundred
Gerbeys who were well armed, and led by a verie valiant captaine, with the which hee char-
ged him with ſuch violence and furie as he forced them to giue backe, yet fighting in ſuch
ſort, as the euent ſeemed to bee doubtfull: the which being diſcouered by another of the
Stephano defeated the ſecond time. princes Captaines, who led a troupe of fiue hundred light horſe: he came ſo fitly to ſuccour
him, as *Stephano* and his horſemen were forced to flie, whom the prince purſued and cut in
pieces. *Stephano* eſcaped with a troupe which he had reſerued rather for the guard of his per- M
ſon than to fight. Prince *Coreskie* at his returne from the chace of his enemies, cauſed the dead
to be numbred, where he found that of *Stephanos* ſide were three thouſand and foure hundred
men ſlaine vpon the place, beſides thoſe that were priſoners and wounded; and of his part
onely three hundred and fiftie.

Preſently

A Presently after this victorie, the season of the yeare being cold (it being the twelueth of Nouember) prince *Coreskie* put his troupes into garrison, and returned with one hundred and fiftie horse to YAS, where he was receiued with much honour and ioy. The princesse, mother to *Alexander*, was yet in POLAND, but being aduertised of her sonnes fortunate successe, she returned to YAS, and brought with her prince *Bougdan* her youngest sonne, with *Alexandrina* her daughter, who was yet to marrie. At whose arriuall there was great feasting and ioy; then they began to treate of a marriage betwixt prince *Coreskie* and the princesse *Alexandrina*, the which had beene then consummated, if *Bellona* had not opposed it, stirring vp new and more powerfull armies than the precedent, to exercise the vertues and
B vallours of the said princes, and to trie the patience of the two louers, who loued one another reciprocally from their youth.

A false alarme giuen to Alexander.

To continue the deduction of new affaires which troubled the quiet of the said princes more than euer, you must vnderstand that about the end of Nouember this yeare 1615 they were aduertised that *Michna* prince of VALACHIA with a Bassa called *Hebraim*, came against them with an armie of fortie thousand men, Turkes, Tartarians, and Valachians, to succour the Vayuod *Stephano*: and moreouer that *Bethlem Gabor* prince of TRANSYLVANIA, had charge from the Grand Seigniour to arme against them, and to assaile them, which in effect was a false alarme; for the said Bassa had beene sent by the Grand Seigniour to bring Caphtanes (which are roabes of cloth of gold which the Grand Seigniour doth vsually send in fa-
C uour to princes that are vnder his power) both to *Michna* and *Stephano*, who he held to be in peaceable possession of MOLDAVIA; but not with any armie nor with an intent to make warre against the said princes; for he was yet ignorant what had passed against *Stephano*.

An embassador from prince Alexander to prince Michna

Notwithstanding the princes holding this aduertisement to be true, assembled a counsell of the chiefe noblemen in court, where it was resolued, that an Embassadour should bee speedily sent to prince *Michna*, both to know his intent, and to discouer whether he marcht toward MOLDAVIA and with what forces. This charge was giuen vnto a braue gentleman of POLONIA called *Boyartstkie*, who parted presently from YAS, and being entred into VALACHIA hee vnderstood that prince *Michna* was then in his towne of BOVZA, some twentie French leagues distant from the frontiers of MOLDAVIA. The Embassador being
D arriued demaunded audience before *Michna*, by whom he was sent vnto the Bassa, who at his first entrance (without hearing the subiect of his embassage) demaunded, who had made his master *Alexander* so bold, as to carrie armes in the countrie of the Grand Seigniour without his authoritie; for the which he should be punisht, and those that did assist him: commanding the embassadour presently to be put in yrons, as if he had beene a thiefe or some miserable catife. The embassadours seruants seeing how they entreated their master, escaped as they could, fearing the like; who returning to YAS, enformed prince *Alexander* what had past; assuring him that *Michna* had no armie readie, nor any intent to enter into MOLDAVIA at that time. The Bassa disdaining to speake any more to the said Embassadour, he gaue charge to some of his officers to examine him particularly of all matters concerning *Alex-*
E *ander*, and what forces hee had: And within few daies after he returned to CONSTANTINOPLE, leading the said Embassadour thither with him. But as soone as they were arriued, they sent the Embassadour vnto the Diuano, where hee was againe examined by a Visier, and in the end he was condemned by him to the gallies there to remaine perpetually. So little accompt doe these barbarous people make to violate the Law of Nations, especially with Christians, presuming that all the world should bow vnto them, as if they were Gods vpon earth.

Alexanders embassador put in prison by the Bassa.

Prince Alexander sendeth an embassador to Bethlem Gabor.

There was another Embassadour sent by prince *Alexander* vnto *Bethlem Gabor* who was prince of TRANSYLVANIA, being at FVRSVAR or ALBA IVLIA, whom he receiued verie courteously; to whom the Embassadour deliuered the subiect of his charge.
F That prince *Alexander* his master had beene aduertised that he made some leuie of men to ioyne with *Michna* prince of VALACHIA, and to make warre against him, the which he could not easily belieue, for that he had made profession of friendshippe to his deceased father, and had no cause now to leaue it; intreating and coniuring him, not to meddle in the affaires which hee had to decide with *Michna*; and that in requitall (if any occa-

sion were offered to serue him) hee would imploie all his meanes. The Embassadour G
hauing ended his speech, he deliuered his princes letters of credit: To whom *Bethlem Gabor* made this aunswere, That hee neuer had any intent to take armes, nor to attempt any thing against prince *Alexander*, whose father was his true friend; neither would hee euer giue any cause to discontinue this loue and friendship betwixt them, whereof he would giue good proofe in all occasions, especially in this subiect now in question. The Embassadour was much satisfied with this answere, the which was also confirmed by letters; yet he afterwards leuied forces against prince *Alexander*, but he would not ioine with *Michna* his armie.

To returne to the course of our historie, presently after the Bassa his departure from H
CICOVCH to returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, Prince *Michna* sent an Embassadour to *Alexander*, with letters by the which he excused himselfe, for the ill vsage of his Embassadour by the Bassa, protesting that he was much grieued, and that it was not with his consent that hee had carried him with him, promising him to imploie his best meanes to mediate his deliuerie. Moreouer that hee was not ignorant what authoritie and power the Graund Seigniour had ouer him, whom he might not resist, nor by consequence his Bassaes; that hee had no armie on foot, as he was giuen to vnderstand, and that his desligne was not to support the cause of the Vayuod *Stephano*, vnlesse he were forced by the commaundment of the Graund Seigniour. And whereas he intreated him to deliuer his enemie *Stephano* into his hands, he could not do it, vnlesse he should violate the lawes of hospitalitie, in betraying his friend who had fled vnto him for succour, and withall he should incurre the indignation of the Sultan, and he in danger to be dispossest of his owne estate, hauing no sufficient meanes to maintaine himselfe against so great a power. Prince *Alexander* hauing heard this Embassadour, and receiued an answere from the Prince of TRASYLVANIA, by the aduice of his councell, dismissed all his footmen, and part of the Cossackes, retaining only fiue or sixe thousand men with him during the Winter. I

Prince Visnowiskie poisoned by a priest.

About this time there was one of the most cursed and impious acts committed that euer was heard of. Prince *Visnowiskie* who was a Protestant of the Greeke Church, hauing prepared at Christmas to receiue the Communion after their manner, the priest (who had vsually serued him in that deuotion, being corrupted with money by his enemies) poisoned the K
bread, which the prince hauing receiued, he fell suddenly sicke, and his torments were so violent, as he died the next day. This bred a suspition that he had beene poisoned; whereupon the priest was apprehended, who presently confessed that he was guiltie, and had beene prouoked by his enemies. As his offence was terrible, being committed by a man of that coat, who had made vse of so reuerent a Sacrament, to poison a prince beloued of all men for his rare vertues; so his punishment was verie seuere and long: being bound in a chaire made of copper wire, and a fire made round about him, so as he was heard for twelue houres crying out fearefully for the insupportable paines which he endured. Whilest that prince *Alexander* and his whole court mourned for this fatall and vnexpected accident, there arriued a spie

Skinder Bassa comes with an armie against prince Alexander.

which he had sent into VALACHIA, to obserue the actions of prince *Michna*, who gaue him L
to vnderstand that there was a Bassa arriued called *Skinder*, with a great and powerfull armie, and that *Stephano* was there in like manner, who pressed them daily to march into MOLDAVIA; and to begin the warre, he sent foure hundred men to surprise the towne of BERLADA, whereas prince *Coreskie* had left part of his men in garrison during the Winter, who keeping bad guard were surprised, and most of them cut in pieces, which so puft vp *Stephano* with pride, as he assured himselfe of an easie victorie. But prince *Alexander* hearing of

Stephanos men defeated by the Cossackes.

this defeat, hee sent foure hundred Cossackes, who made such speed, as within three dayes after they arriued at BERLADA a towne not walled, no more than the rest, where hauing set fire in many places, they forced his men to come foorth, cutting them in pieces, and the rest were burnt; so as there escaped not aboue fiue or six to carrie this bad newes vnto their M
master, who was much afflicted.

At the same instant, when as the Cossackes were sent vpon this expedition, prince *Coreskie*

A defeat of Turkes at Vasselloy.

desiring to bee reuenged for the defeat of his men, tooke two thousand and fiue hundred choice horse, and put himselfe speedily into VASSELLOY, fearing the garrison hee had left there

A there would be in like manner ſurpriſed: whereof the Baſſa being aduertiſed, by ſome of the countrie men, he ſent his ſonne (being twelue or thirteene yeares old) and gaue him an old Turke of great experience for his conductor, with ſeuen thouſand men, holding this a good occaſion to get reputation to his ſonne. Prince *Coreskie* being aduertiſed of his march by ſome Moldauians, and that they ſhould ſurprize them early in the morning, knowing that they were of neceſſitie to paſſe a bridge of wood ouer a riuer that runnes by the towne, hee diſpoſed his men in ſuch ſort as that the enemie could hardly diſcouer them, ſome of them were lodged within VASSELLOY, and the reſt were couered with a little mountaine that adioyned vpon the towne: when as ſome of the Turkes had paſſed the bridge, two ſquadrons
B ſallied from the towne, and charged their foreward ſo furiouſly, as they were in a manner all put to the ſword, and amongſt them the conductor of the whole troupe, the which was no difficult thing to execute; for that the Turkes who had marched in a manner all night, to arriue early in the morning, were benumbed and halfe dead with cold; the reſt of the Turkes which had not yet paſt hearing the noiſe of this hote alarme, durſt not aduaunce, but retired ſpeedily, fearing perchance that the Baſſaes ſonne might bee loſt as well as his conductor. Prince *Coreskie* purſued them vnto a village foure leagues diſtant from VASSELLOY, killing and taking priſoners all he found in the way. Among the priſoners there was one who gaue it out that he was neere kinſman vnto the Baſſa, who being brought to prince *Alexander*, he receiued him verie courteouſly, and gaue him a garment fit for him, hauing been ſtript
C of his owne, he alſo gaue him a horſe, and ſent him backe vnto the Baſſa with a good conuoy, to whom he ſent a letter, by the which he intreated him not to aduance in fauour of *Stephano*, promiſing that if the graund Seignior would ſuffer him to enioy MOLDAVIA quietly, he would be moſt faithful vnto him afterwards, and pay him the yearely accuſtomed tribute: wherof the Baſſa made no great account; for he was wonderfully incenſed, both for his ſons bad ſucceſſe in this enterpriſe, and for the death of his Turkiſh captaine.

The Baſſaes kinſman taken

Vpon the day of this victorie, prince *Alexander* ſent fifteene hundred horſe to fortifie prince *Coreskie*, whereof eight hundred were lodged in a certaine Borough ſixe leagues from TICOVTH, whereas the Baſſa and *Michna* were then with their armie, being about fiue and twentie thouſand men. Theſe eight hundred men neglecting their guards, did nothing but
D drinke drunke, and moleſt their hoſtes with all kind of inſolencies, and forcing their wiues and daughters, which made them take a reſolution to be reuenged, and to that end they called vnto them certain Boyers out of the country, who chuſing their time, cut all their throats when they were aſleep, and moſt of them drunke.

800 of prince Alexanders men ſlaine by their hoſtes for their inſolencies

About the end of this yeare prince *Alexander* called a generall councell, whereas the princeſſe his mother, prince *Coreskie*, and all the chiefe noblemen and captaines aſſiſted, where it was reſolued that they ſhould retire to COCHINA, being thirtie French leagues off; for that it was the ſtrongeſt place and the beſt furniſhed of all MOLDAVIA, and withal they ſhould be far from their enemies, and neere vnto POLONIA. According to this reſolution, prince *Alexander* parted the next day with his whole armie, and came in foure daies march to Co-
E CHINA, in the extreameſt cold ſeaſon that could be; hauing lodged his troupes, the princes ſent diuers gentlemen to all their friends and confederates to coniure them to come ſpeedily to ſuccour them; and in the meane time they gaue order to make prouiſion of victuals, and of all other things neceſſarie for their armie. The Baſſa being aduertiſed of this retreat, he marched with *Michna* and *Stephano* towards YAS, notwithſtanding the extreamitie of the cold, which was ſo violent that many dyed vpon the way; whereupon they ſtaied vntill the time was more milde.

Prince Alexander retires to Cochina.

In the beginning of March, the lord of *Tiſcheuich* came vnto prince *Alexander* with 3500 Coſſackes, and within few dayes after arriued the lord *Potoskie*, nephew to him who had been taken at the firſt battell, and carried priſoner to CONSTANTINOPLE, who brought
F with him a troupe of fifteene hundred Polonians well armed, there came alſo other ſuccors vnto him, ſo as by the end of that moneth the princes armie was tenne or twelue thouſand ſtrong foot and horſe.

Succours come to prince Alexander.

Prince *Alexander* hearing of the enemies approach, hee ſent foorth 1000 horſe with his companie of French Caualliers to diſcouer the enemies armie, who ſtaying to refreſh themſelues

Some of them defeated.

selues within halfe a league of the towne of ESPANOCHA, wheras *Michna* his Tartarians were lodged: they were discouered and presently inuested by them and by a great number of Turks; and although that there were little hope to resist so great a multitude, yet *Alexanders* men (who had alwayes beene accustomed to vanquish) behaued themselues very valiantly, desiring rather to die, than to yeeld basely without giuing proofes of their valour. This fight continued from tenne of the clock in the morning, vntill night, and of the whole troupe there escaped but twelue, seuen Polonians, and fiue French, the rest were either slaine or taken prisoners, among the which was the captaine of the French companie called *Mountespin*, whom they would haue sent with the rest vnto the grand Seigniors gallies: But *Stephano* preserued him vpon promise that he would doe him good seruice. Heere fortune (which had hitherto beene fauourable vnto prince *Alexander*) began to shew her inconstancie, to teach princes not to runne rashly into dangers, although they haue had some aduauntage ouer their enemies.

1616

Iesuits at Constantinople accused.

At CONSTANTINOPLE about the end of August this yeare 1616, enuie, the most furious of all the winds that shake the affaires of the world, stirred vp a horrible tempest, whose violent gusts fell daungerously vpon the Iesuites setled at PERA, by the Sultans permission, at the persuasion of *Henrie* the fourth, the French king; and labours to cast them vpon the rockes, where they might suffer shipwracke, shamefull to their order, and preiudiciall to the Christians, which liue in the midst of Mahometisme. And to ruine them without all hope of help or relieſe, they accused them before the graund Visier, to be spies to SPAINE; to giue absolution to renegadoes; to baptize Turkes; to conceale fugitiue slaues, and to send them into Christendome; and withall they obiected the doctrine of killing of kings, if they were tyrants, the which had been rashly written by a Spaniard of their coat: all which crimes are commonly punished at CONSTANTINOPLE with death. They seized vpon their persons, and lodged them in a dungeon, they were sixe in number, that is to say, *Francis Bouton*, *Denis Guilier*, *Dominick Maurice* of CHIO, and *Iohn Baptista Iobert* their superiour, all foure priests, and two assistants, and with them a Franciscan Frier, vicar to the Patriarke of CONSTANTINOPLE. A suspition of danger in an estate is easily beleeued vpon the least accident. In the meane time the Emperours Embassadour came to CONSTANTINOPLE, to renew the truce; they entred with their drummes beating and their ensignes displayed. They which thought to erect trophies to their glorie by their ruine of the Iesuites, made vse of this entrie, and gaue false aduertisements to the Seraglio, that there were in CONSTANTINOPLE, and at PERA many thousands of Christians disguised in the habits of Greekes and Turkes, which came with this Embassadour, with an intent to put that in execution which the Iesuites had projected. Moreouer, they informed the grand Visier, and the Muphti, that the Churches in PERA, and the Embassadours houses were full of armes; and that now when as the Turkes estate, and especially CONSTANTINOPLE, was vnprouided of forces, hauing imploied their armies in diuers places, and at one instant, as in POLAND, PERSIA, and both the seas, that they meant to draw the Greekes into rebellion, and giue an entrie to the Cossackes, by the blacke sea. The Sultan and his Bassaes tooke an alarme, they commanded euery man to weare the habit of his owne nation, with a prohibition to weare any hat except the Frankes, and they to weare a Grecian habit; they also inrolled all the Christians in CONSTANTINOPLE and PERA. But the Sultan did not thinke his citie of CONSTANTINOPLE free from the danger of surprise by this diligent search, but hee would seeke his assurance in the blood of Christians: so as he commaunded that all the Franckes should be slaine without exception. But yet this commaundement tooke no effect, by reason of the remonstrances which the graund Visier and the Muphti made him, representing vnto him that by this crueltie, he should draw vpon his estate a daungerous warre from all the Christian princes in generall. But all this freed him not from feare, he walkes all night on horsebacke vp and down the citie contrarie to his custome, and he causeth a Frier, vicar to the Patriarke, who had been taken with the Iesuites, to be executed in his presence; and he doth expressely forbid the passage from CONSTANTINOPLE to PERA, and from PERA to CONSTANTINOPLE. During this prohibition, the French Embassador had past from PERA to the citie, to sollicite the Iesuites libertie. At his returne he found the passage stopt, he goes vnto the Muphti, and leaues his people in the

They are imprisoned.

The Turke commands all the Christians to be slaine.

A the meane time at the ſea ſide (for it is the cuſtome, to goe to the ſoueraigne of *Mahomets* law with a ſmall traine) during the time of his being there, a multitude of people ranne downe to the ſhore, to ſee theſe men, thinking for certaine, that they went to put them to death: They lamenting their miſerable fortune, and the Turks charging them furiouſly with iniuries, as the men whom they thought practiſed by conſpiracie their ruine. But the graund Viſier hauing written with his owne hand, and ſent one of his people to them that kept the paſſage, the Embaſſadour with his whole traine was ſuffered to paſſe to PERA, but he found the ſtorme as raging at PERA as from whence he came: for one night after, the people of that *A tumult at Pera.*
B place fell into ſuch a furie, as it was to be feared the law of nations would haue been violated by the inſolencie of ſome furious people, although the ſubiect were of ſmall importance. About fiue hundred paces from the French Embaſſadors quarter, there fell out a diſpute in a lodging, betwixt ſome who ſpent the night in ſome kind of imployment: the Turkes that dwelt neere, being awaked with this noiſe, ranne to armes, and troupt together in the ſtreet, being in all 1000 men armed, crying out that this noiſe came from the Franckes, (that is to ſay from the Chriſtians in the Weſt, as Italians, French, Spaniſh, Engliſh, and others) who meant to riſe; and they reſolued to force the Embaſſadours houſes, and to put all to fire and ſword, if ſome better aduiſed of the troupe had not perſuaded them to delay the execution vntill day, the which being come, the French Embaſſadour had meanes to get the Sultan to
C interpoſe his ſoueraigne authoritie, to bridle the inſolencie of a multitude inconſideratly incenſed. Such is the daunger, in the which many times the miniſters of Chriſtian princes find themſelues, who for their maſters ſeruice liue at the mercie of a nation barbarouſly furious, as the Turkiſh.

The Ieſuites in the meane time continued priſoners in the dungeon, vntill that the Baron of *Sanſy* Embaſſadour for FRANCE, had let the graund Viſier ſee their innocencie, and pro- *The Ieſuits ſet at libertie.*
cured their libertie, and the Sultan by his letters patents did publiſh the falſhood of the malitious accuſations inuented againſt them: but to auoid the furie of a multitude blind in their paſſions, and dangerous in their furie, they went to ſea to returne to FRANCE: But after they had ſoiourned ſometime at the Dardanels, they were againe committed to priſon, by reaſon
D of ſome certaine aduertiſement that was giuen to the Sultan of the ſame ſubſtance: The Sultan informed himſelfe truely of their probitie, gaue them their libertie, calling backe two to PERA, to liue there with the ſame priuiledges they formerly had, and ſuffered the reſt to returne into FRANCE.

Alexander prince of MOLDAVIA hauing loſt a thouſand horſe neere vnto COCHINA, the laſt yeare as you haue heard, the Baſſa and *Stephano* were puft vp with this good ſucceſſe; but *Michna* had no ioy of it, who hearing that the princes attended him at COCHINA, with a re- *Michna ſtaies to fight with the Polonians.*
ſolution to defend themſelues, remembring that a certaine Italian making profeſſion to foretell future things, had told him, That if he euer came to fight with the Polonians, he would be in danger of his life. Wherefore by the aduice of his Chancellor and Campe-maſter, called
E *Spaterlecha*, he pretended, that hee had receiued newes from his lieutenant, that there was a great troupe of Tartarians entred into VALACHIA, and ſpoyled the countrey; vpon which pretext he tooke leaue of the Baſſa and returned, leauing all his ſouldiors in the armie, reſeruing only an hundred horſe for his guard. Being in VALACHIA, *Stephano* wrote vnto him that he had defeated the Polonians in battaile, in the which there were ſlaine ſixe thouſand men vpon the place, and had taken a great number of priſoners, which they meant to ſend to the graund Seignior, all which was but a meere inuention to mocke *Michna*, and to make him ſorie that hee was not in the action: whereupon he was ſo much diſcontented, as he cauſed the heades of his Chauncellour and Campe-maſter to be cut off, for their bad counſell, charging them that they had ſome ſecret intelligence with the Polonians.

F About the end of March, the Baſſa with *Stephano*, and a Tartarian prince called *Monoza*, reſolued to aduaunce with their whole armie (being twentie thouſand men) towards COCHI- *The Baſſa and Stephano defeated at Cochina.*
NA, and being within two leagues, they made a ſtand a whole day to refreſh their men. In the meane time the princes put their armie in order of battell, in a little plaine within a quarter of a league of COCHINA, leauing 1000 choice horſe within the town vnder the command of prince *Coreskie*, aſſuring themſelues that the Turkes would not faile to campe betwixt the

towne

towne and the princes armie, that if they were defeated, they might haue no meanes to retire into the fort, which was held impregnable. The princes drew eight pieces of cannon out of the fort, which they planted within a trench which was couered with a wood. The Bassa on the other side thought that he had the princes at his mercie, being aduertised that they had not halfe so many men in their armie; early in the morning hee caused his men to march in good order, who arriued neere to COCHINA by seuen of the clocke in the morning, where hauing made a stand to discouer the princes armie, he went and encamped betwixt them and the towne, as it had beene foreseene. His men being put in order, the Tartarians who had a great desire to be reuenged of the Cossackes, who had defeated them in many incounters, intreated to haue the point, the which was graunted, and the trumpets sounding they aduanced towards a battalion of Cossackes, nothing distrusting the cannon which was planted on that side, and not seene. Comming within the shot, they presently played vpon them, and ouerthrew a great number of the Tartarians and terrified the rest, the which the Cossacks perceiuing, they charged them furiously, and cut the rest in pieces, and so retired towards their armie, seeing another squadron of Valachians and Moldauians come to succour the Tartarians. The lord of *Tischeuisch* with his troupe of fifteene or sixteene hundred horse well armed, went to encounter the said squadron, which aduanced brauely towards the princes cannon. The combate was long without any shew of aduantage, which made the Marshall of the Turkes armie to send three thousand Turkes to succour them: and the princes caused a squadron of Cossackes and Moldauians to aduaunce, who carried themselues so valiantly, as they forced the Turkes to retire aboue an hundred paces. Then prince *Alexander* cried out, Now my companions, behold the enemie is in disorder, let vs charge them resolutely, and the victorie is certaine. After which he aduaunced with the rest of his armie, commaunding two cannons to bee shot off together, for a signe to prince *Coreskie*, that hee might sallie foorth, and charge the Turkes reereward, as it had beene resolued: But hee stayed not for the signall, beeing alreadie aduaunced aboue three hundred paces, fearing that the partie would bee ended without him, or that hee should faile at need.

The Bassa seeing this stratageme which hee feared not, and the bad successe of his men, which hee had sent to fight, and that he was charged both before and behind, he began to be amazed, and hauing caused a squadron of two thousand horse, Turkes and Valachians to aduaunce, to second his other troupes, hee retired apart with *Stephano*, (who was no lesse afraid than himselfe) with the rest of the Turkish Cauallarie, to attend the euent of the battell. There was neuer a more furious combate seene (which continued for the space of two houres) full of fearefull howlings of Turkes, who in the end fainted, seeing no succours come vnto them: whereas if the Bassa and the cowardly *Stephano* had ioyned with them, they had without doubt fortified their carriages, and renewed their forces, and by all apparance wonne the victorie, which they lost beyond all mans expectation. When as the Bassa and *Stephano* saw that their forces were in rout, and no meanes to draw them againe together, they began to make a retrait with aboue two thousand horse, which had not yet fought. In the meane time the princes *Tischeuisch* and *Coreskie* (like two thunderbolts of warre) cut all in pieces they could meet; and fearing lest they should make a new head, the princes drew all their men together, and made a stand vpon the place of battell, not suffering their souldiors to go to the spoile, before they were assured that the enemie was retired in great haste, fearing the princes would haue pursued them; the which they would willingly haue done, if their men and horses had not been almost tired in the former battell, in which there was slaine aboue 12000 men besides the wounded and prisoners.

Flight of the Bassa and Stephano.

Prince *Alexander* being returned to COCHINA with the other princes and noblemen, they gaue thankes to God for the victorie they had obtained against the Turkes and their confederates; and there was much ioy with the Princesse and all the Ladies, who were retired into the fort, attending the euent of this fearefull battell. Prince *Coreskie* burned with desire to enioy his Mistresse, whom hee loued as his owne life; so as by a free consent of all parties, they were married within two dayes after the victorie, to the great content of all the Court.

Prince Coreskie marries with the Princesse Alexandrina.

Whilest

A Whileſt that the princes began to enioy the fruits of their victorie, the Baſſa and wretched *Stephano* returned to YAS, but finding no ſafetie there, they parted preſently, the Baſſa to CONSTANTINOPLE, and the tyrant into VALACHIA to prince *Michna*, who was his onely ſupport, notwithſtanding that hee had mocked him apparantly. But before this wretch departed from YAS (hauing no hope euer to returne againe) hee cauſed the towne to bee ſet on fire in manie places; ſo as of two and twentie thouſand houſes, there were not aboue ſixe hundred vntouched. The princes hauing aduice heereof in the beginning of Aprill, they marched ſpeedily thither, where finding it ſo deſolate, they reſolued to purſue *Stephano* into VALACHIA, and puniſh him according to his deſeruing. The next day they *A defeat of 400 of Michnas men.*

B marched towards VALACHIA, being to paſſe the riuer of Siretta, there being on the other ſide a borough in which *Michna* had foure hundred men in garriſon, to keepe the frontiers. The princes arriuing at this place, the garriſon put themſelues in defence, but they were ſoone forced and cut in pieces, ſo as there eſcaped not one, and as for the inhabitants, they were well intreated, hauing made no reſiſtance, and withall they hated *Michna* for the vexations they receiued from the ſaid garriſon. The armie hauing reſted there three dayes, aduaunced with all ſpeed towards the citie of BONZA, whereas *Michna* then remained with wretched *Stephano*, who had no care but to make good cheere. The armie being come within a league of BONZA, it was diſcouered by ſome countreymen, who ranne to aduertiſe their

C prince, wiſhing him to ſaue himſelfe ſpeedily, for that they had diſcouered the Polonian armie neere the citie. *Michna* was readie to ſit downe to dinner, hauing inuited *Stephano* to accompanie him: but he was ſo amazed at this vnexpected comming of the princes, as hee ranne himſelfe to his ſtable, and mounted vpon the firſt horſe he could finde, without ſadle, and ſo tooke his way towards TERGOVIST, being followed by few of his people, one of which gaue him his own horſe, which was better furniſhed, and as for *Stephano*, hauing ſadled his owne horſe, he fled all alone towards NICOPOLIS. *Prince Michna and Stephano flie from Bonza*

The princes being entred BONZA without any reſiſtance, they were wonderfully grieued that they had not found *Stephano*, which was their whole deſigne, and that prince *Michna* (to whom they intended no harme) had beene ſo amazed. The armie at their firſt entrance

D ſpoyled the citie, which the princes could not hinder, nor yet the rauiſhing of many wiues and virgines, which drew the wrath of God vpon them, and in all appearance was the true cauſe of the miſeries which afterward befell the princes. During their abode at BONZA to refreſh their men, manie Boyers or Noblemen of the countrey (deſiring to ſhake off the yoke of prince *Michnas* command, who gouerned inſolently) came vnto prince *Alexander*, beſeeching him to ſtay in VALACHIA, promiſing that the whole Nobilitie would willingly yeeld him all obedience and fidelitie. But the prince (hauing no intent to diſpoſſeſſe *Michna*) thanked them for their good will, the which the Boyers vnderſtanding, they told him that they would be glad (ſeeing hee refuſed it) that prince *Cherbanne* (who had been their Vayuod before *Michna*, and had beene expelled VALACHIA by *Bethlem Gabor*, and forced to *Prince Alexander refuſeth the eſtate of Valachia.*

E retire into GERMANIE to the Emperour) might returne and take vpon him the gouernement of VALACHIA, intreating him to giue him paſſage through MOLDAVIA if he preſented himſelfe, the which prince *Alexander* willingly graunted, deſiring much that prince *Cherbanne* were reſtored, for that *Michna* fauoured his enemy, and had himſelfe a deſigne vpon the eſtate of MOLDAVIA, which in the end he obtained.

Prince *Michna* being come to PLAYA, which is betwixt BONZA and TERGOVIST, hee ſtayed ſome dayes there attending his traine, during the which hee ſent ſpeedily to his wife being at TERGOVIST, willing her to goe with all ſpeed to NICOPOLIS: for that hee feared the princes would ſeize both vpon them and their eſtates, as they might eaſily haue done, if they had foreſeene what afterwards befell them. *Michna* being come to TERGOVIST, he *Michna ſends an Embaſſador to prince Alexander.*

F preſently ſent an Embaſſadour to prince *Alexander*, to know vpon what deſigne he had entred VALACHIA with an armie, hauing no cauſe; but contrariwiſe, that he had giuen good teſtimonie that he was his friend, for that hee would not aſſiſt the Baſſa and *Stephano*, when they purſued him to COCHINA, notwithſtanding that they were much ſtronger in ſhew; That if his intent were onely to ſeaze vpon *Stephano*, he aſſured him that hee was not with him, but was fled another way, promiſing that if hee could euer take him, hee would deliuer him

him into his hands: intreating him withall to retire out of his eſtate, not ſuffering his armie to ſpoyle it any more, and that they might continue good friends. Prince *Alexander* receiued this Embaſſadour verie courteouſly, who hearing the ſubiect of his embaſſie, made anſwere, That hee had the day before ſent vnto his maſter to informe him of his intent, which was not to attempt any thing againſt his perſon nor eſtate, but onely to purſue *Stephano*, who had ſet fire on the citie of YAS before he parted; and to let *Michna* know, that he meant not to wrong him, nor to enrich himſelfe with any thing that was his: hee had ſent him backe his plate, with all his rich mooueables. *Michnas* Embaſſadour hauing thanked prince *Alexander*, returned to TERGOVIST, and found all true that the prince had ſaid; the which freed *Michna* from further feare. G

1500 *Tartarians defeated by Troianoskie.*

Before prince *Alexanders* departure from BONZA, he ſent the Lord *Troianoskie* with two thouſand horſe to purſue *Stephano*: but it was without effect, for he vnderſtood that hee had paſſed the riuer of Danowe with his wife, and a ſmall traine. At the ſame time a troupe of fifteene hundred Tartarians, being aduertiſed that the Polonians purſued *Stephano* only with a thouſand horſe, and that they were tyred with their long marches, aduaunced to charge them; but it was not with that ſucceſſe they expected: for *Troianoskie* diſcouering them a farre off in a plaine champion field, had leaſure to put his men into foure ſquadrons, and there attended them, who appraoching neere to diſcouer the number of the Polonians, would gladly returne without blows, but it was too late: for *Troianoskie* commanded two of his ſquadrons to charge them ſuddenly, ſo as within leſſe than a quarter of an houre they were defeated, and aboue foure hundred ſlaine vpon the place, the reſt fled the ſame way that they came: of the Polonians there were not aboue fiue and twentie ſlaine, and about fiftie hurt. H I

The inhabitants of Horreouа reuolt the ſecond time.

The princes had reſolued to leaue VALACHIA, forbidding all captaines and ſouldiors vpon paine of death to carrie away any Valachian of either ſexe with them, hearing they had ſeized vpon ſome, and meant to draw a ranſome from them: after which they began to march, and being vpon the way, they were aduertiſed that the inhabitants of HORREOVA, were againe reuolted and in armes, refuſing to acknowledge prince *Alexander*, or to pay the accuſtomed tribute, vnleſſe he would make it appeare that hee was confirmed by the graund Seigniour. Prince *Coreskie* was ſent thither with fiue thouſand men, whoſe comming did ſo amaze them, as they yeelded without any reſiſtance. This prince being loath to looſe any time, laid ſiege to the towne and fort of BIALIGRONT, ſeated vpon the riuer of Bohou, the which was held by the Tartarians Præcopences, in which fort there was a garriſon of Ianizaries, and many Boyers of MOLDAVIA, who defended themſelues valiantly, and made manie ſallies, in which they ſlew aboue three hundred of the princes men, and he himſelfe was in danger to bee taken, if he had not been ſpeedily deliuered by the Lord of *Tiſcheuich* and his troupe, who charged the Ianizaries ſo reſolutely, as they forced them to retire, leauing many of their men dead vpon the place. The prince ſeeing there was no hope to take the place without cannon, raiſed his ſiege and returned to YAS to prince *Alexander*. K

Hebrain Baſſa writes to prince Alexander.

Soone after *Hebraym Baſſa* wrote to prince *Alexander* (as if he had been his friend) giuing him to vnderſtand, that from thencefoorth he ſhould liue quietly in MOLDAVIA, for that the graund Seigniors Lieutenant generall or chiefe Viſier (from whom *Stephano* had alwaies drawne his chiefe ſupport) was in diſgrace, promiſing the prince to imploy himſelfe for him to his maſter, the which he did either to make him careleſſe of his owne ſtrength, or to draw ſome recompence or reward from him, if the graund Seigniour ſhould confirme him in MOLDAVIA, as there was ſome likelihood, ſeeing that *Stephano* had made himſelfe altogether vnworthie; as well by his flight, as by his wicked actions, which made him in the end ſo odious to the graund Seignior, as hee reſolued to ruine him. So as ſoone after they were aduertiſed, that the graund Seignior had giuen commaundement vnto the ſaid Baſſa to ſeize vpon *Stephano*, who had retired himſelfe to BRAHILE, and to bring him vnto him aliue or dead, with whatſoeuer did belong vnto him: the which he executed after this manner: The ſaid Baſſa marcht with all diligence towards BRAHILE, carrying a Chiaus with him, and being within foure or fiue leagues of the towne, he ſent one of his people to aduertiſe *Stephano* of his comming, and that he meant the next day to dine with him. *Stephano* (who diſtruſted nothing) L

Stephano in diſgrace with the Sultan. M

A nothing) holding the Visier to be still his friend, parted early in the morning to meet him, and comming neer him he alighted from his horse to do him reuerence, and the Bassa did the like, where after some little conference together, he drew out the commission he had to seize vpon his person, and to carrie him to CONSTANTINOPLE: the which *Stephano* perceiuing, he turned him to his seruants, and willed them to shift for themselues, for that he saw he went to his death. His men being retired, the Chiaus who had his mace in his hand, gaue him a blow betwixt the sholders, and then caused him to be bound hand & foot, and cast into a cart drawn by foure good horses, and in this manner they caried him to CONSTANTINOPLE, where being arriued, to auoid the punishment he had deserued, he denied his faith, & became a renegado: *Stephano carried to Constantinople and turns Turke.*

B and withal he became very poore and miserable: for at the same instant that he was taken, the Bassa sent to seize and carrie away whatsoeuer he had at BRAHILE and NICOPOLIS, where his wife remained, so as hee had nothing left him but the remorse of conscience that tormented him continually, for the barbarous cruelties which he had practised in MOLDAVIA. Some of his men returned to YAS, and there declared what had befallen *Stephano* in their presence, for which they generally gaue thanks vnto God, and were very ioyfull.

Soone after newes came to YAS, that the Sultan had appointed prince *Michna* to succeed *Stephano* in the principalitie of MOLDAVIA (which is verie much better than that of VALACHIA) and that he sent *Skinder Bassa* his generall in EVROPE, with a powerful army to settle the said *Michna*, and to expell *Alexander*. The which prooued so true, as on the 25 of Iune this

C yeare 1616, the said Bassa came to TERGOVIST, where prince *Michna* attended him, with great preparatiues both to receiue him, and to refresh his armie. The Bassa making his entrie into TERGOVIST, had amongst other things of note thirtie or fortie musicians on horse backe, playing vpon certain instruments almost like vnto gitternes, which made but silly musick, he had also many pages, who instead of clokes, ware the skinnes of leopards, lions, & tigres, as if they meant to terrifie the world, and his armie consisted of about 20000 men, some Turks, some Tartarians, to whom *Michna* ioyned his forces, hauing 10000 horse and foot, which he had drawn from VALACHIA and the neighbour countries. The Bassa being entred the castle whereas prince *Michna* attended him: after many complements, they entred into a great hall well appointed, where the Bassa presented him his letters patents, & a robe which his master *Michna proclaimed prince of Moldania.*

D had sent to *Michna*, which hee caused to be put on in the presence of all the noblemen of his court, proclaiming him prince and Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, with many ceremonies too long to relate. After which, prince *Michna* led the Bassa into another great hall where a feast was prepared, as well for himselfe, as for such as hee would admit to his table, *Michna* offering to serue the said Bassa, but he would not suffer him, causing him to sit downe right against him. On the second of Iuly they parted from TERGOVIST, and marcht into MOLDAVIA, whereof the Polonian princes were aduertised: but the princesse mother to *Alexander* maintained that the Bassa came only to bring the patents to prince *Alexander* her son, which dangerous opinion of hers grew by reason of the letters which *Hebraim Bassa* had sent to prince *Alexander* not remembring that it came from a Turk his sworn enemy, and therfore not to be credited,

E especially in a matter of that importance, so as she was the cause of their vtter ruine.

About this time the generall of the king of Poloniaes armie called *Zolkelchy*, enuying the honor which the Polonian princes had gotten by so many victories, & withall drawn by his *The treachtrie of the generall of Polonia.*

own priuat intrest, writ to prince *Michna*, and the Bassa, that if they would promise to procure the Sultan to aduance the eldest son of the deceased prince *Simeon* (who liued with him) to be prince of VALACHIA, whereof his father had bin formerly Vayuod, he would so weaken the princes armie, as they should be forced to yeeld or flie; whose demand being easily granted, this traitor writ to certain captains of the Cossacks, that they should leaue the princes armie, and come with all speed into POLAND, to accompany *Vladislaus* their kings son, who had bin chosen duke of MVSCOVIA, and meant to goe thither with a great armie by reason of some

F crosses, & they should be very wel paid. The Cossacks (who depend vpon the crown of POLAND, seruing those that promise most) began to mutinie, saying plainly, that if they had not mony speedily, they would retire into their country, yet concealing that they had bin called *The Cossackes mutinie and leaue prince Alexander.*

to any other seruice: and without any long stay there parted early in a morning about 8000, carying with them great store of oxen, sheepe, and other cattell, with all the spoiles they had gotten in the precedent victories.

After their example *Bicho* generall of prince *Alexanders* army, whether corrupted by bribes, or for that he had an apprehenſion of this powerfull armie which came againſt them, retired alſo ſecretly toward *Michna* and the Baſſa, being followed by 2000 horſe. This was a ſubiect of great amazement to the princes armie; and yet as if they had bin inchaunted by ſome deuilliſh charms, they could not reſolue to make a retrait, as they might eaſily haue done without danger. Many aduiſed prince *Alexander* to this courſe, euen prince *Michna* writ vnto him, aduiſing him to retire into POLONIA before that his armie approched neerer to YAS; the which he did for feare of the ſucceſſe wherof his falſe prophet had forewarned him, as we haue formerly obſerued: wherupon *Alexander* went to counſell on the 25 of Iuly, but they could not reſolue; the commanders and ſouldiors being much diuided, moſt of them demanding their pay, elſe they would not fight; the which they tooke for a pretext of their retrait. In the mean time the Tartarians which made the vauntgard of prince *Michnas* armie approched, which made the princes to leaue YAS, and to march toward COCHINA; but they could not doe it ſo ſecretly but the Tartarians were aduertiſed, who paſt ſpeedily thorow the citie, and charged them in the reer, in which incounter *George Potoskie*, nephew to him that was taken with *Conſtantine*, hauing fought valiantly, and ſlain many Tartarians with his own hand, was in the end ſhot thorow the bodie with an arrow, whereof hee died preſently. The Lord of *Tiſcheuich* came ſpeedily to the charge with a troupe of Coſſacks which he had ſtaied, and charged the Tartarians ſo furiouſly, as he ſlew 800 vpon the place, and put the reſt to rout.

Bicho generall of prince Alexanders armie forſakes him treacherouſly.

Alexander hauing receiued the letter aboue mentioned from prince *Michna*, he made anſwer, that (contrary to his promiſe to continue his friend and neuer to take armes againſt him) he had craued aid from the Turk to diſpoſſeſſe him of MOLDAVIA, to the which his predeceſſor had neuer pretended, neither could they according to the fundamental lawes of the country, and the conuentions accorded by the grand Seignior, when as the Moldauians ſubmitted themſelues vnder his ſoueraigntie, by the which no man could be Vayuod of MOLDAVIA vnleſſe he were borne in the country. Moreouer, he ſhould remember that it was in his power to diſpoſſeſſe him of VALACHIA, when as he entred BONZA with his armie in purſuit of *Stephano*, the which he would not do, nor detain any of his pretious moueables, which he had reſerued & ſent vnto him: that if he abuſed the power which he then had, God would not ſuffer ſo great an ingratitude & vſurpation to remaine vnpuniſhed. And although his armie were far inferior to his, yet he would let him know, that he neither feared him nor the Baſſa, putting his chiefe confidence in the aſſiſtance of the almightie, who had in many occaſions vſed them to abate the Turkes pride, which hee ſhould abhorre if he were a true Chriſtian, rather than to ioyne with them to ſatisfie his ambition.

Prince Alexanders anſwer to Prince Michna.

Prince *Michna* hauing ſent this letter to *Skinder Baſſa* generall of the Turkes armie, he was ſo incenſed, as he preſently commanded his lieutenant to purſue the Polonians with 12000 choice men, they being then at COTNARD, betwixt YAS and COCHINA. Prince *Alexander* being aduertiſed hereof, he ſuddenly cauſed his armie to aduance towards the fort of COCHINA. At the ſame time the Chancellor to prince *Cherbanne* who came with 150 horſe to prince *Alexander*, to aſſure him that his maſter was comming to his aid with fiue or ſix thouſand men, was purſued by the Turks neere vnto YAS, whereas he thought to haue found the ſaid prince, and of all his troupe only himſelfe and one more eſcaped, ſo as the prince could haue no certain news of the ſaid *Cherbanne*. Prince *Coreskie* who had remained with 2500 horſe not far from COTNARD, was alſo incountred by a great troupe of Turkes and Tartarians, which he could not wel diſcouer by reaſon of a little mountain that couered them: the prince ſeeing ſome of them appeare, charged them; but finding that as he defeated one troupe, a freſh ſucceeded in his place, he was forced to make his retrait, with this aduantage, that he had ſlain almoſt 6000 of his enemies, hauing not loſt aboue 250 of his owne men. But the prince was wounded with two arrowes, one in the thigh, and the other in the backe, which was a great diſaſter for himſelfe and for the whole armie. Hee which commaunded this troupe of Turkes being much amazed at this vnexpected incounter, hauing gathered his men together, and ioyned them to 15000 others whom the Baſſa had ſent, hee being yet at YAS, he cauſed this armie to approach within a quarter of a league to the Polonians, where hauing encouraged his men in what hee could, hee told them that to ſhew his affection vnto the Sultans ſeruice in this occaſion, he was reſolued to ſend a challenge to prince *Coreskie*, whom hee confeſt

A challenge ſent to prince Coreskie from the Turks generall.

to

A to be the moſt valiant of all the Polonian armie, ſo as he preſently diſpatched one of his captaines to goe vnto the prince, and to call him in the behalfe of his Generall. The captaine comming to *Alexanders* campe, demanded to ſpeak with prince *Coreskie*, who being brought vnto him, deliuered the charge he had from his Generall. The prince although he were neither able to ſtand nor to ſit on horſebacke, by reaſon of his wounds, yet would he needs haue accepted this challenge, if prince *Alexander*, and the chiefe noblemen of the armie had not coniured him to excuſe himſelfe by reaſon of his indiſpoſition: letting him know, that the euent of ſuch a combat did not onely import him, but all thoſe of his partie, who had their chiefe hope in him: whereunto the princeſſes added their inſtant intreaties, and among o-
B thers his deare ſpouſe, who was much afflicted for his wounds. The Lord of *Tiſcheuich* (a braue & valiant gentleman) being then preſent, intreated prince *Alexander* to giue him leaue to accept of the challenge for prince *Coreskie* his couſin, the which was willingly granted: ſo as he ſent a gentleman with the ſaid Turke, to know if the Generall would yeeld thereunto, which hee did willingly, not being ignorant of the qualitie and valour of the ſaid *Tiſcheuich*. It was agreed that the combate ſhould bee betwixt both armies, lying in a plaine open field, within a quarter of a league one of another, with promiſe, that neither partie ſhould bee aſſiſted.

A combat betwixt Tiſcheuich and the generall of the Turks armie.

Theſe two braue Warriours hauing taken leaue of their friendes, came to the place appointed, in view of both armies. The Turkes Generall being about fiftie paces from
C his armie, cauſed water to bee brought, with the which hee waſhed his mouth, eyes, noſe, eares, and priuie parts, beleeuing (according to his law) that this waſhing would ſerue as a purifying; then turning toward the Eaſt hee made his prayer: after which he went to horſbacke, being richly armed and furniſhed, and then marched ſoftly towards his aduerſarie, who attended him well mounted and armed; and ſo they began their combat, their chiefe armes being bowes and arrowes, which they ſpent without hurting one another, till at laſt *Tiſcheuich* hauing a Petronell, ſhot the Turke thorow the bodie and ouerthrew him, who ſtriuing to riſe againe, *Tiſcheuich* paſt ouer him with his horſe, and wounded him in the right arme, and at the next blowe ſlewe him: After which hee cut off his head, and carried it to prince *Alexander*.

The princes of Polonia enuironed by their enemies.

D The Polonians were verie ioyfull of the happie ſucceſſe of this famous combate, and the Turkes being much amazed, aduertiſed the Baſſa and *Michna*, that it was neceſſarie they ſhould bring the reſt of their armie and their cannon, if they would be reuenged of the Polonians. In the meane time the traytour *Bicho*, who had abandoned prince *Alexander*, with a troupe of two thouſand Tartarians and Moldauians, found meanes to get before the Polonian armie, and to cut off the way betwixt COTNARDE and the towne of BOTHOCAN ſixe leagues off. The Valachians and Tranſyluanians ledde by the Generall of *Michnas* armie, inueſted them vpon the right hand, and the bodie of the Turkes armie followed behinde: ſo as there remained nothing but vpon the left hand a wood of timber trees which might fauour their retrait. *Skinder Baſſa* hearing the ſuc-
E ceſſe of the combate, commaunded his armie to aduaunce preſently with ſixteene cannons. The princes ſeeing themſelues inuironed by ſo manie enemies, they reſolued to fortifie themſelues with their carts and carriages, and to defend themſelues: But what could fiue or ſixe thouſand men preuaile againſt two or three and twentie thouſand, for ſo many were thought to bee in the Turkes armie: True it is, they expected daily prince *Cherbanne*, and the lord *Boſſi*, who were within two dayes iourney, and brought with them tenne or twelue thouſand men. This made the Baſſa and *Michna* to aduaunce, to force the Polonians to yeeld, or to fight. Comming neere vnto their campe, and ſee-
The princes armie ſummoned to yeeld.
ing them inueſted on all ſides but towardes the wood, they approached their cannon, which had beene able to haue ſpoyled their campe, but it was not their deſigne; they
F onely deſired to take the Princes and Princeſſes priſoners, with the chiefe Noblemen: Whereuppon they ſent to ſummon the Polonian armie to deliuer into their handes the ſaid Princes and Lordes, promiſing that the reſt of the armie ſhould depart with bagge and baggage; whereunto they would not yeeld, but made an anſwere all with one conſent, That they would rather die than commit ſuch baſeneſſe and trecherie. This being reported

to the Baſſa and prince *Michna*, they commaunded that ſome of their cannon ſhould bee G
charged with ſmall bullets, and diſcharged through the Polonian armie; whereby there were
a great number ſlaine and wounded. The princes who had but ſome ſmall pieces, made cer-
taine vollies, but to ſmall purpoſe; neither had they any more bullets left and little powder
for that by ill chance part had been burnt ſome few dayes before: ſo as all things ſeemed to
A braue retrait made by Tiſcheuich. foretell their ruine at hand. The Lord of *Tiſcheuich*, hauing iudiciouſly obſerued, that re-
maining in that encloſure, hee could not eſcape death, or at leaſt captiuitie, reſolued with
fiue hundred horſe (the moſt valiant among the Polonians) to force through three or foure
ſquadrons which were ſet in guard by the wood ſide, to the end none might eſcape, that place
being moſt ſuſpected to the Turkes: the which they executed with ſuch furie, as they ouer- H
threw all they incountred, ſhewing that it is a verie daungerous thing to make head againſt
thoſe who are reduced to that extremitie, as they muſt either vanquiſh or die. Prince *Coreſ-
kie* would not haue failed to haue made the like retrait, and to haue carried prince *Alexander*
with him: but he could not ſit on horſebacke by reaſon of his wounds; and beſides hee had
rather haue died than to leaue his wife in that extremitie. His laſt refuge was to diſguiſe him-
ſelfe as well as he could, giuing it out that he had eſcaped with *Tiſcheuich*, to the end he might
paſſe for a common ſouldior, if the priſoners were put to ranſome. In like manner the prin-
ceſſes diſguiſed themſelues in the beſt manner they could for the like intent.

The Tukes cannon hauing ouerthrowne many of their carriages, which ſerued as a ram-
pier, two ſquadrons, one of Tartarians, and the other of Turks, preſented themſelues at one I
inſtant in two ſeuerall places to force the Polonians campe, who ſeeing no meanes to make
The princes taken priſoners, and carried to Conſtantinople. reſiſtance, and to repell the enemy, laid down their armes, crying out with a loud voice, that
they yeelded, wherat their enemies were exceeding glad, deſiring nothing more than to take
theſe noble princes priſoners, and to diſpoſe of the reſt at their pleaſures. The Turkes and
Tartarians hauing entred their camp, making ſpoile of all, and ſeizing vpon what they could
lay their hands on, beginning to ſhare their priſoners, the princes *Alexander* & *Bougdan*, with
their mother were deliuered vnto *Skinder Baſſa*, who led them to CONSTANTINOPLE, whereas
ſoone after their arriual they forſooke their God, denied their faith, and became renegadoes,
for feare of perpetuall impriſonment, wherewith they were threatned. For which infidelitie
Bougdan was preſently puniſhed; for hauing cauſed himſelfe to be circumciſed according to K
the law of *Mahomet*, he died, and the princeſſe his mother was confined to the old Seraglio.
As for prince *Coreskie* (in this generall ruine of a Chriſtian armie being forced to yeeld and
ſubmit it ſelfe to the Turkes tyrannie) he had ſo diſguiſed himſelfe, as hee paſt for a time vn-
known, and was led to YAS among the common ſouldiors, where he was afterward diſcoue-
red by a ſouldior of his own partie, who obtained his libertie by this baſe trecherie. The Tur-
kiſh captaine who had gotten this prince, hearing of his qualitie by the aforeſaid villaine, hee
led him to *Skinder Baſſa* his generall, who recompenced him well, and made both him & the
ſouldior who diſcouered him, to take ſolemne oathes not to impart it to any man: for he had
an intent to draw ſome great ranſom from this prince, and to reſtore him to his former liber-
Prince Coreskie being diſguiſed, is diſcouered. tie, knowing well that if he carried him to CONSTANTINOPLE, the grand Seignior would con- L
fine him into his priſons, by which meanes he ſhould make no vſe nor benefit by his taking:
But it hapned, that another perfidious of the Polonian armie aduertiſed *Michna* of *Coreskies*
captiuitie, and in whoſe hands he was, who was ſo iealous, as he croſt & ouerthrew the good
deſigne of *Skinder Baſſa*, telling him plainely in the preſence of many, that he knew for cer-
taine prince *Coreskie* was among his ſlaues, and that he ſhould beware he did not eſcape, for
that the graund Seignior would call him to account. The Generall made anſwere, That hee
would be glad it were ſo, but he had not yet any notice of him, thanking *Michna* for his good
aduice. But fearing that if he did what hee intended, ſuffering prince *Coreskie* to eſcape for a
ranſome, the Sultan comming to the knowledge thereof, would be much incenſed, and pu-
niſh him with diſgrace or death, the next day he told prince *Michna* plainely, that the aduice M
that he had giuen him was true, and that *Coreskie* had bin found diſguiſed amongſt his other
priſoners, whom he would preſent vnto his maſter, with the princes *Alexander* and *Bougdan*,
as he did, of whoſe deliuerie you ſhall heare hereafter. The young princeſſe, wife to *Coreſ-
kie*, hauing diſguiſed herſelfe, and disfigured her face with her nayles, and other helpes, fell

into

A into the hands of a Tartarian captaine, with many others, who caried her into TARTARIA, whereas she was inhumanely intreated.

In the Mediterranean sea, *Cosmo* great Duke of TVSCANIE, continued his enterprises this yeare against the Turkes: his gallies part from LIGORNE, and runne into the Leuant, in quest of some occasions to annoy these infidels. They drew neere vnto CERIGO, in old time CITHAREA, the fiue and twentieth of Aprill, where meeting with certaine Christian ships, some Venetians aduertized them, that in the Island of CHIO, the Turkes had prepared two gallies to passe into BARBARIE. *Inghirami* (Admirall to the great Duke) resolued to set vpon them; being on the way, hee turned with his fleet where they were to passe, and
B being couered by the night, he cast anchor vnder castle ROVX. But as hee attended a fauourable occasion, the Moone shining, discouered him to the Turkes, and the guards hauing aduertised the Turkes gallies, they presently began to flie, the one rowing amaine towards land, and the other continued her course at sea with all speed. *Inghirami* with his Admirall gallie got before that which was going to land, inuested it, being followed by the gallie called Saint *Stephen*, and three houres within night grapled with it, and laboured to enter it: but the Turkes (who were all good souldiours) defended it valiantly, so as they were aboue an houre fastened together, hewing one another furiously: yea, the Turkes (who were entred into *Inghirami* his gallie) fought valiantly vpon the hatches: But in the end the Florentines had the victorie, and tooke this gallie, yet with much losse of Christian blood.
C It was the Patron gallie of that famous Pirate *Amurath Raise*, which was commaunded by the sonne of *Mammi* a Portugall, called *Mustapha Celebi*, who was taken aliue, but sore wounded. The other gallie which had fled to sea and was the Captaine gallie of the said *Amurath Rais*, commanded by the Bey of MITILENE, nephew and sonne in law to that Pirate, called *Amurath*, who had married his daughter, being his brothers sonne, was inuested by the gallies of Saint *Marie Magdalene*, and the Patron S. *Cosmo*; the combate was no lesse furious than the other, the Turkes making a wonderfull defence: But after some houres fight, in which time the blood of either side was aboundantly spilt, the Florentines had the victorie: *Amurath* Bey of MITILENE was slaine, and *Mustapha*, whome these Turkish gallies carried to ALGIER in BARBARIE. They were of fiue and twentie bankes
D a piece, carrying lanthornes, and furnished with all things necessarie, and manned with foure hundred and twentie Ianizaries, all men of action, and practised in piracies with that pirate *Amurath Rais*. In this prize the Florentines tooke two hundred and fortie Turkes, and freed foure hundred and thirtie Christians: amongst the artillerie of these gallies, they recouered a cannon and two sacres of the gallie of S. *Iohn*, and a saile belonging to the great Dukes captaine gallie, which the Pirate *Amurath Rais* had formerly spoiled. These Turkish gallies were loaden with great store of rich commodities, the which was valued at two hundred thousand crownes. But this conqueste was gotten with the losse of much blood: for the Florentines had two hundred twentie three men wounded, and fiue and thirtie slaine in these two combats; the which made the Admirall *Inghirami* to rest satisfied in this voyage with the ta-
E king of two gallies, after which he returned to LIGORNE.

The courses of the Florentine gallies.

Turkish gallies taken by the Florentines.

Wee haue formerly made mention in the Iesuites businesse, being presented at CONSTANTINOPLE, of the entrie which the Emperours Embassadour made into that citie. And this was the effect of his embassage. The peace concluded at SITVA TOROK, in the yeare 1606, betwixt the Emperour and the Sultan, was somewhat altered by the diuers interpretations and explications, which they made of the Articles therein contained. But this yeare 1616, in the moneth of March, the Embassadours of both their Imperiall maiesties assembled at VIENNA in AVSTRIA; that is to say, the Cardinall *Forgatsi* Archbishop of STRIGONIVM, and Chauncellour to the Emperour, the Cardinall *Klessel*, Bishop of VIENNA, the Baron of *Rainek*, Count *Adolph Althen*, the Earle of *Solmes*, the Earle of *Thoron*,
F and *Pauli Apponi Nagi*, for the Emperour: *Hali* Bassa of BVDA, *Achmat Tybata*, and *Gaspar Gratsiani*, for the Turke, where they concluded these following Articles; to take away all pretext of controuersie in the explication of those which were agreed vpon at SITVA TOROK. But it was after that Embassadors had been sent of either side, as well to CONSTANTINOPLE, as to PRAGE, with royall and rich presents.

Deputies meet at Vienna, to confirme the peace betwixt the Emperor & the Turke.

Articles extracted out of the Letters Patents of ACHMAT, Emperour of the Turkes.

Articles touching the differences of the peace.

1 *For as much as many things haue happened of either side contrarie to the peace concluded at* SITVA TOROK, *it hath beene necessarie to confirme it anew, and to reduce it into the right course. Wherefore this holy peace made and concluded at* SITVA TOROK, *shall be obserued for twentie yeares compleat, to begin at the date of these presents. Giuen in the moneth of Chomazzilahil, in the yeare of the prophet* 1024.

2 *That the peace heretofore concluded at* SITVA TOROK, *shall remaine firme in all the Articles, according to the Treatie which the Emperour* Rodulphus *did send vnto vs, signed with his hand, and sealed with his seale, the which wee haue receiued willingly, and the same Treatie wee also sent backe confirmed backe to the Emperour of the Romans, the which he receiued in like manner. And this treatie which was sent vnto vs bare date the ninth of December, in the yeare* 1606 *of Iesus of reuerend and happie memorie: And that which we sent vnto the Emperour of Romanes, wherewith he was satisfied, was dated in the yeare of the prophet* 1021.

3 *Since the time that* AGRIA, CANISE, ALBA REGALIS, PESTH, BVDA, ZOLNOK, HATVVAN, *and other places haue bin taken, that the villages which were of their appurtenances, shall hereafter remaine annexed vnto them. But those villages which since the peace of* SITVA TOROK, *haue beene hindred from paying of their tribute by either side, or haue been held by force, contrarie to the treatie of peace, that those villages shall bee viewed by Commissaries appointed by vs and the Emperour of the Romanes, and presently shall bee set at libertie, and restored to their lords and right owners. As for the villages which pay tribute to either part, those which are situate vpon the frontiers of the Emperour of the Romans, towards* NOVIGRADE *and other places, shall be viewed by Commissaries thereunto deputed, who shall take a Register, to the end those villages may not be molested by our neighbors, in like manner the Commissarie shall make a Register of the villages which pay to both sides, lying neere the townes of the Emperour of Romanes, of* STRIGONIVM *and other places, to the end they may take notice what villages are bound to the one or the other partie, that hereafter there might grow no controuersie. And for that which concerned the* 158 *villages about* STRIGONIVM, *for the which there was some controuersie, the* 60 *lying neerest to the said towne shall be adiudged, as it hath been agreed, and the Commissaries of either side shall take order for it. The foresaid villages lying neere to* STRIGONIVM, *and all others of the realme of* HVNGARIE, *which shalbe adiudged to the one or other partie, shall not in any sort be disquieted, more then of ancient custome, and there shalbe nothing exacted from them more than the tribute.*

The Iudges of villages shall pay vnto the Lord the tributes according to the antient custome; If the Iudges do not bring the tribute, the Bassa or Beg of the place shall summon the inhabitants thrice, to the end their Iudges may come and pay the tribute, and if they doe it not after these summonings, hee shall write vnto the next gouernour for the Romane Emperour, that the Iudges of the villages may be sent vnto him with the tribute: And finally, if after all these formalities it be not paid, the Bassa or Beg may vse force to fetch in these inhabitants, and make them slaues: The which shall be obserued throughout all the villages which owe vs tribute in the realme of HVNGARIE, *yet nothing shall bee exacted or demanded of them, more than they haue been accustomed to pay in antient times. The Commissaries deputed shall view and set downe by a ioynt consent the limits and bounds of the lands and Seigniories, which are held by either part in the vpper or lower* HVNGARIE, *and in the realmes of* CROATIA, *and* SCLAVONIA.

4 *They that shall breake the peace of either part, if they cannot be conuicted and punished instantly; we haue decreed, that there shall be order taken of either side, and iustice shall be done within three moneths. All prisoners of warre, and others which haue been taken since the peace of* SITVA TOROK, *shall be set at libertie without ransome.*

5 Achmet Tyhaia *hath presented vnto vs a Roule of places built and fortified since the peace, for the retrait of souldiors. Whereupon we haue ordained, that informations should be taken of all fortifications made on either side since the peace of* SITVA TOROK; *and if it be found that any fortification hath been made contrary to the peace, it shall bee visited within foure moneths by the Captaines on both sides, or by a Nobleman of either partie, and the fortifications which shall bee found to haue beene thus made contrary to the peace, shall be demolished.*

6 *And*

A 6 And for that some wicked and malicious spirits, haue attempted many things vniustly to infringe this holy peace and good amitie, we haue ordained, that if hereafter any persons of either side shal attempt or practise any thing that is wicked and lewd, contrarie to the peace and mutuall coresponden-cie, we will aduertise the Emperour of the Romans thereof, and in like manner the Romane Emperor, king of HVNGARIE and BOHEMIA, shall write vnto vs to our court, and no credit shall be giuen to the reports of such persons.

7 The Priestes, religious men, and Iesuites, among the people of holy Iesus, which follow the Popes religion, may build Temples in our realmes there to say diuine seruice after their manner, and read the Gospell. Wee will yeeld them all fauour, and will not suffer any one to disturbe them contrarie to law
B and equitie,

8 It shall be lawfull for the inhabitants borne in the realme of HVNGARIE of either part, to re-edifie the villages ruined and laid waste, and after they are inhabited, they shall pay tribute to the one and the other, if they be such villages as haue been accustomed to pay to both.

9 Merchants shall haue free leaue to traffique, passing from our port into those countries, and the transport of merchandise shall be free to such as shall take letters from the Gouernours of the frontires, or from the Receiuors of the thirties; the which they shall represent in passing, and the Lord of the place or the Receiuor shall attest the said letters by his manuall signe or seale; for the which they shall not take any thing of the merchant. If the merchant be to passe by any dangerous place, they
C shall giue him a sufficient conuoy to conduct him in safetie: and after that the merchant hath paied of either side the thirtith which is the full due, no man shall molest him nor hinder him to go where he pleaseth.

10 The merchants which would passe from the realmes and seigniories of the emperour of the Romanes and the house of AVSTRIA into our kingdomes with merchandise or money, shall come vnder the ensigne of the Emperour of Romanes, and shall haue his letters pattents to vs, without the which they shall not be suffered to passe. And if they enter without ensigne or the said patents, the Agents and Consuls of the Roman Emperour may seize vpon their vessels, merchandise, and money, and shall giue aduice thereof vnto their Emperour: Wherefore all the merchants of the Emperours Countries, of the house of AVSTRIA, and of the king of SPAINE, both aswell those of the Low Countries,
D as his other Realmes, may come with all assurance into our realmes, with their ships, money, and merchandize paying three in the hundred. And as for the Agents and Consuls of the Romane Emperour, they shall pay vnto them two Aspers for the hundred: And in doing so the said Agents and Counsuls of the Roman Emperour shall haue a care of the merchants affaires. If any merchant chance to die, the Emperours Agent and Consull shall cause his goods to be sealed vp, and shall take them into their possession, to the which our Treasuror shall haue no colour of pretension. And when as the merchants haue paied the custome of three for the hundred in one place, they shall not be bound to pay it in another for the same merchandize. If the merchants haue any controuersie among themselues or with others, the Cadi or Iudge of that place may take knowledge of the cause, if it exceed not the value of 4000 aspers, but it shall be iudged by the Cadi of our Port.

E 11 As long as this holie peace shall continue, the posts which shall be sent with letters by the Bassaes, Begues, Lords, and Agents, or by the Visiers, on our behalfe to the Emperour of the Romanes; and respectiuely from him to our Court, shall be honourably entertained by our officers: And if the way be dangerous, they shall giue them assistance to conduct them into a place of safetie with their letters. And if the Agent which is with vs, desire to write any particular letter vnto the Emperour, and not send an expresse messenger, that this letter shall be carried by the post, and deliuered safely where it is directed. That the messengers of the Bassaes and Begues shal go no more into the villages, but the Iudges shall bring the tribute and deliuer it where they ought.

An accord for the execution of the Articles touching the villages in controuersie, and the razing of fortifications.

F To conclude all differences touching the deuision of villages, and demolition of fortifications made in preiudice of the peace of SILVA TOROK: Wee the Commissaries deputed, had agreed vpon the time of foure moneths: But for that all controuersies cannot be decided within that time, by a common consent wee haue concluded the time of twelue moneths, for the expedition of all that shall remaine vndeci-

vndecided; all things remaining in the same estate during the time. For the ending of these affaires, on the behalfe of the maiestie of the Romane Emperor, shall be sent the noble lord Adolph *of* Aithen *Earle of the sacred Empire, with others according to his maiesties good pleasure. And on the behalfe of the Otoman emperour hath beene named the Noble Lord* Ali *Visier Bassa.* G

For the greater assurance of these things, wee the said commissioners haue caused six copies of this treatie to be dispatched, in the Italian, Hungarian, and Turkish tongues. And we the director or president of the priuie Councell, to his Imperiall maiestie and Cardinall, with other Counsellors of his priuie councell, and Commissioners, hauing full power and authoritie, haue confirmed these presents vnder our hands and the seales of our Armes.

As also we Ali Bassa *of* Buda, *Visier to the most powerfull Sultan* Achmat. Tyhaia Mutafaraga, *and* Gaspar Gratiani *embassadors to the Turkish Emperour, with the Imperiall Maiestie of the Roman Emperour, hauing full power and authoritie to conclude this treatie, haue signed it with our hands, and sealed it with our ordinarie seales; whereof there were three copies deliuered to either partie. Giuen at* Vienna *the first of March* 1616. H

This new declaration of the Ottoman Emperor, vpon the first Articles concluded at Sitvatorok, shewes plainely how much the Turkes are of late daies refined from their ancient barbarisme and rudenesse, hauing made themselues capable of great affaires. And these frequent meetings betwixt the emperour of the Romanes, and the Sultan, by their embassadors, as a holie watring of the oliue tree of peace, seemes to make it so flourishing, as the sweet sauour may pierce further and make vs hope that God will make vse of this peacefull vnion, to prepare vnto himselfe some meanes to a new harueſt, or a healthfull conquest of soules wandring amidst the falshoods of the Alchoran. I

Prince Coreskie his wife carried into Tartaria.

Alexandrina wife to prince *Coreskie* hauing beene taken at that vnfortunate ouerthrowe of the Polonian princes in Moldavia, by *Skinder Bassa* and prince *Michna*; she was carried away (as you haue formerly heard) by a Tartarian Captaine, and led captiue vnknowne to Bialigrot, where she receiued many indignities, being with child; yea during the time of her lying in, which was fiue or six moneths after her taking: all which time shee bethought herselfe of a meanes to hasten her owne deliuerie, and withall to free a Polonian souldiour called *Iaques*, who had carried armes vnder prince *Coreskie*. This man although he knew the princesse well, and might by her discouerie haue purchased his owne libertie; yet he would not do it: Wherefore the princesse hauing tried his fidelitie, taught him a meanes how to worke his owne libertie, and hers in the end, by his care and diligence. The Tartarian being one day absent from his lodging, *Alexandrina* tooke occasion to talke with *Iaques* the Polonian, telling him, That hauing found him faithfull vnto her, she would direct him a course, whereby he might redeeme himselfe from captiuitie; so as he would principally obserue what she did prescribe. *Iaques* hauing promised to execute whatsoeuer this ladie should enioine him, yea with the hazard of his life, she then said vnto him: You know the Tartarian whose captiues we are, hath an elder brother, a verie rich man, who of late is become blind and deafe, by reason of a great cattarch and defluction which is fallen downe into his eyes and eares, wherwith his brother seemes to be much afflicted: I haue a iewell which my great lord and husband gaue me when we were made sure, the which I haue kept carefully, hiding it sometimes in my haire, sometimes in my old ratterd rags which I haue worn since my captiuitie, the which I haue much esteemed; for that my deare spouse had assured mee, that the stone which was set in this iewell, had many and singular vertues, & amongst others, that it would restore the sight, which had been lost by defluction, and cure deafenesse, so as it were not naturall or too inueterate. I am resolued to take out the stone, and deliuer it thee: after thou hast sounded the Tartarian, whether he will set thee at libertie if thou dost cure his brother of his infirmities; making him sweare solemnly not to retaine the stone, but to suffer thee to carrie it away, to the end thou mayest restore it vnto me without his knowledge. Hauing resolued vpon this plot, the ladie said vnto him, you must also demaund of the sicke man a horse and some money with passe-ports to goe into your countrie, to the end thou maiest go speedily to my deare husband, whereseuer thou shalt heare of him, and to deliuer him my letters, and bring me an answere if it be possible. The Polonian hauing sworne to K L M

per-

A performe whatsoeuer the ladie commaunded him being at libertie; the princesse deliuered him the stone, he swearing to restore it vnto her againe, as soone as he had done his cure, if it were not taken from him by violence.

The Polonian attended with impatiencie vntill the Tartarian did talke vnto him of his brothers infirmitie; who finding him one day much afflicted, tooke occasion to tell him, that he knew a certaine meanes how to cure his brother, without any paine, or taking any thing inwardly: I beleeue nothing, replyed the Tartarian, for all the physitians in the countrie could not do it; but if he could effect his saying, he promised to set him at libertie without ransome, and to giue him wherewithall to conduct him into his countrie: it is the recom-
B pence said the prisoner I meant to demand, and that you sweare vnto me by your great god not to faile of your promise when I haue performed mine, and not to retaine, nor suffer any one to take from me the thing I shall vse in the cure. The Tartarian hauing solemnly sworn, and laid his right hand vpon his heart, the Polonian tooke a time to make preparation for his cure. The Tartarian although he distrusted his new physition, yet he acquainted his brother with the proiect, who being desirous to recouer his sences, intreated his brother not to neglect the offer, promising to saue him harmelesse, both in regard of the ransome which he expected from the Polonian, and for the mony he should giue him. The day appointed being come, the Tartarian prest the prisoner to performe his promise; to whom the sicke man also promised a horse and fiftie chequines to returne into his countrie, taking the same
C oath which his brother had formerly done. All things being readie, he applyed his physicall stone binding it fast to one of his eyes for the space of seuen houres, after which being taken away he saw clearely, and in like manner he recouered his other eye, and afterwards his hearing by the like application: whereat the Tartarians much reioiced; giuing vnto the Polonian what they had promised, and procuring him passe-ports from the gouernor, without which he could hardly get out of the countrie.

The Polonian before his departure told the Tartarian captaine that hee had a suit vnto him, that was, that the Polonian woman which was also his prisoner was his neere kinswoman, intreating him that in respect of his good office he had done to his brother, he would vse her and her little infant better, and that as soone as hee were returned into his countrie, *Iaques seekes out Coreskie.*
D he would take a course for her ransome, and it might be would bring it himselfe. The Polonian hauing acquainted the ladie with what had past, and deliuered her iewell faithfully vnto her, hauing receiued her letters to prince *Coreskie*, and vowed to find him out, he tooke his leaue. This Polonian trauelling towards his countrie, met with one of the same nation, who hauing beene taken prisoner with prince *Alexander*, made an escape: these two discoursing freely of their aduentures, *Iaques* inquired carefully what was become of the princes which had been carried prisoners to CONSTANTINOPLE by *Skinder Bassa*, and especially of *Coreskie*; and hearing that he was in the prisons of the Blacke Sea, he inquired by what meanes he might speake with this prince, or at least how he might conuey some letters vnto him: to whom he answered that it was verie difficult, for that he was straightly guarded. But hee
E vnderstood that the French embassador had sometimes leaue to send to visit him, whereof he might informe himselfe more particularly. After this, *Iaques* intreated his countrieman to deliuer certaine letters which the princesse had written vnto her kinsfolkes, the which hee promised to performe faithfully, and so they parted. *Iaques* comming to CONSTANTINOPLE, he grew acquainted with one of the French embassadors men, who was sometimes imployed to visit the prince, and to carrie him mony and other necessaries, by whose meanes he got accesse vnto the prince, and deliuered his letters, the which he receiued with much ioy hearing of his wiues health. Eight daies after the Polonian comming to visit the prince, he receiued from him an answere to his wife, and so tooke his leaue; who after many troublesome incounters, returned to BIALIGROT, where finding the ladie all alone (the Tartarian *He returnes into Tartaria.*
F and his seruants being gone a hunting) he gaue an account vnto her of his negotiation, and deliuered his letters, whereat she was much ioyed, hearing that he was aliue, though infinitly grieued for his captiuitie, vnderstanding that the Grand Seignior had refused to put him to ransome. After their discourse, the princes aduertised her faithfull Agent, that since his departure, the Tartar had growne iealous of her qualitie, and had enquired of her what her husband,

husband, her kinsfolkes and their estates were; to whom she had answered that her husband was a captaine who had beene taken prisoner with prince *Alexander*, and carried with him into Turkie; and as for her other kinsfolkes they were all souldiors, which had beene ruined during the troubles of MOLDAVIA, desiring the Polonian to remember it well, least they should be found to differ when they should come to treat of her ransome. The Tartarian returning soone after to his house, he found *Iaques* the Polonian there, whom he entertained very kindly, both in reward of the good offices he had done to his brother, and for the hope he had of his prisoners ransome, remembring that *Iaques* had told him that she was his kinswoman, and that it might be he would bring it. After some little discourse, *Iaques* asked him what ransome he would require for his Polonian prisoner, to whom the Tartarian answered, That he would haue 6000 chequines for her and her sonne, vnlesse he would giue him the stone with the which he had cured his brother: to whom the Polonian replyed, that as for the stone it was not in his power, hauing restored it to a nobleman whom he had followed when he was taken prisoner. And as for the ransome which he demannded for his prisoner and her child, it was more than she and all her kinred were worth, she being wife to a captaine who had beene taken prisoner at the defeat of *Alexander*, and for want of meanes was still detained. The Tartarian interrupted him, saying, That he vnderstood she was of noble extraction, and that she had rich kinsfolkes, who would not suffer her to spend her life in captiuitie. I confesse said the Polonian, that she is issued from noble parents, but they are ruined during the troubles of MOLDAVIA; adding withall, that he would not haue returned if he had thought he would haue demaunded aboue 1000 chequines, the which he offered him, intreating him to accept it, in regard she was his kinswoman, and for the good office he had done for his brother. You haue beene satisfied replyed the Tartarian, and haue no cause to complaine: Notwithstanding after some contesting, by the mediation of the captaines brother who had beene so well cured, the ladies ransome was set at three thousand chequines, whereof her faithfull agent gaue present intelligence to prince *Charles* brother to prince *Coreskie*, who sent this summe with all possible speed; and so the princesse and her little infant were redeemed from captiuitie, and conducted into POLONIA by their faithfull solicitor: From whence she aduertised the prince by letters of her deliuerie. This relation was written by a French man, who by his report was present in all the troules of MOLDAVIA: but as touching her deliuerie by meanes of the cure I cannot warrant it, but leaue it to the censure of Physitians and Naturalists, who can best iudge of the vertues of stones, hearbes, and plants; but it is certaine that shee was imprisoned and ransomed as an vnknowne person.

Prince Coreskie his wife redeemed from the Tartarians.

1617 In the yere 1617, there came to PARIS a Chiaus, a Spanish Renegado, called *Solyman*, sent from CONSTANTINOPLE with letters from the emperor *Achmat* to the king, for the deliuerie of eight and twentie slaues, who had redeemed their libertie for money in diuers ports of ITALIE, and in their returne to CONSTANTINOPLE, had beene taken by the ships of MARCEILLES. The king caused them to be set at libertie. But the Chiaus had also charge to intreat his maiestie to cause iustice to bee done vnto the Moores Grannadines, expelled out of SPAINE, and wronged in their goods and persons, vpon their passage into FRANCE; wherein he had what contentment he could expect of iustice. Notwithstanding he did witnesse openly his amazement at their long delaies, in the dispatch of suits, saying plainely, That FRANCE which had the reputation throughout the world, to maintaine euery mans right inuiolably, did no iustice, but after long and tedious pursuits; and that the execution of decrees, was many times longer than the suit it selfe. Whereas the Turkes iustice (said he) was speedily administred to euery man; and within eight daies they saw an end of the greatest and most important suits. This Chiaus was fauourably entertained, and defraied with his traine for the space of six or seuen moneths at the kings charge.

A Chiaus sent from Constantinople to Paris.

The cause of his voyage.

The estate of the Turkes empire this yeare.

As the Turkes estate hath not growne great but by combustions, so it is ordinarily full of troubles; whereby it seemes that the preseruation thereof depends in making warre vpon others, or to support it when as neighbour princes seeke to recouer that which they had vniustly wrested from them, by the Ottoman force. So this great estate entertained this yeare foure great armies, two at land, the one against the Persians his auncient enemy, the other

(con-

A (conſiſting in a manner all of Tartarians) againſt the king of POLAND, as ſupporting the part of the Vayuod of MOLDAVIA againſt the Turke, who had ſetled another in that prouince: And two nauall armies, the one in the blacke ſea againſt the Coſſackes or Ruſſians; who made daily incurſions into the Ottomans countrie, men wholly giuen to armes, which go to ſea in ſmal boats, able to carrie but fiue or ſix men, made of the bodies of hollow trees; but they are in a manner inuincible with theſe kind of boats: for when as the diſaduantage of a combat forces them to ſound a retrait, they retire neere vnto the land, and in ſuch places whereas the Turkiſh gallies cannot approach; and ſo they eaſily preuent a totall ouerthrow. Finally in caſe of neceſſitie, they carrie their veſſels with them. For in the end of
B the laſt yeare finding the paſſage of the blacke ſea ſtopt at the mouth of the riuer of Danow by the Turkiſh gallies, they put their boats into carts, and taking the way by the mountains they brought them eaſily into the ſea. The Turkes fourth armie is in the white ſea, as they call it, employed either to conduct the Carauan, which brings the tribute from EGYPT to CONSTANTINOPLE, or in ſearch of the gallies of MALTA, and FLORENCE, which ſcoure thoſe ſeas continually to annoy the Turke. The armie againſt the Perſian is led by *Haly Baſſa*, ſucceſſour to *Mehemet Baſſa*, he who fled into PERSIA after that he had loſt 60000 men in a ſet battell: After which being ſent for to come to CONSTANTINOPLE, fearing that the Sultan would take reuenge of ſo great a loſſe vpon his life, he retired to the Sophie, where he now remaines.

He entertaine fiue armies.

C The Turks being much annoyed both at ſea and land by the Vſcoques, made great complaint to the eſtate of VENICE, with whom they are in league, being greatly grieued at their theſts; and complaining much that they could not paſſe by ſea without danger of ſeruitude or death: adding withall that theſe pyrats hauing gotten a way into Turkie by the Venetians territories, they were by them made ſlaues and ſlaine in their owne countries; and although they went not from their houſes, nor vndertooke any voyages, yet they were ſtill in alarme, and ſubiect vnto ruine. That the ſmall reſiſtance which was made, gaue great cauſe of icaloſie, that there was ſome ſecret intelligence betwixt the ſubiects of the Seigniorie of VENICE and the Vſcoques, and that they diuided the ſpoile betwixt them. Finally that in what ſort ſoeuer the matter paſt, they held them inſupportable to all men, but eſpecially to themſelues.
D The Turkes threatned to take their iuſt reuenge, the which being impoſſible to effect in the countrie of the *Vſcoques*: for that by the letters of the commonwealth of VENICE their paſſage was ſtopt, they reſolued to be reuenged vpon *their ſubiects*, and recouer a part of their goods which they had loſt. Finally, they prepared to come into the gulph of VENICE with a mightie armie, the which without doubt had brought that State into great extremities, and beene verie preiudiciall to many prouinces of Chriſtendome. But for that the inſolencies and theſts of the *Vſcoques* had like to haue ingaged the Venetians in a dangerous war againſt the Turke *with whom they were in league*, it ſhall neither be vnpleaſant nor vnprofitable to make a little digreſſion, and *ſhew what theſe Vſcoques* were. About the yere 1550,
E there aſſembled together in certaine pleines neere the ſea *belonging to the princes of the* houſe of AVSTRIA, people (who were cruell, violent, and infamous) from diuers parts of the countrie of CHIMERA, DALMATIA, and the other confines of HVNGARIE, and ſuch as had beene baniſhed from the ſtate of VENICE, whoſe delight was onely to liue vpon ſpoile and blood. All theſe theeues being thus gathered together (whom they called by a generall name Vſcoques) as enemies to all art and induſtrie to liue honeſtly by their labours, retired themſelues into a deſart countrie, receiuing no pay from the princes of AVSTRIA who commaunds there. Being thus by their naturall inclination giuen to ſpoile, adding thereunto the ſpurre of pouertie, nothing moued them to ſtay in thoſe places, but all libertie was left them to rob and ſpoile: whereupon they applyed all their minds and forces; ſo as hauing made certaine light foiſts, they began to make courſes at ſea, with the moſt barbarous and
F impious crueltie that euer was practiſed among the Sithians, Tartarians, or any other inhumane nation whatſoeuer. And for that it is an ordinarie courſe for any one that will commit a great villanie, to ſeeke out ſome goodly pretext to couer it; ſo they concluded among themſelues, to ſhadow their inſolencies and theſts with a colour to go againſt the Infidels. Wherefore in the beginning, *there were no merchants were they Turkes, Iewes, or ſubiects*

The Turks complaine to the Venetians of the Vſcoques ſpoiles.

The beginning of the Vſcoques

Enemies to all art and induſtrie.

to

They rob the Turks & Iewes trafficking to Venice.

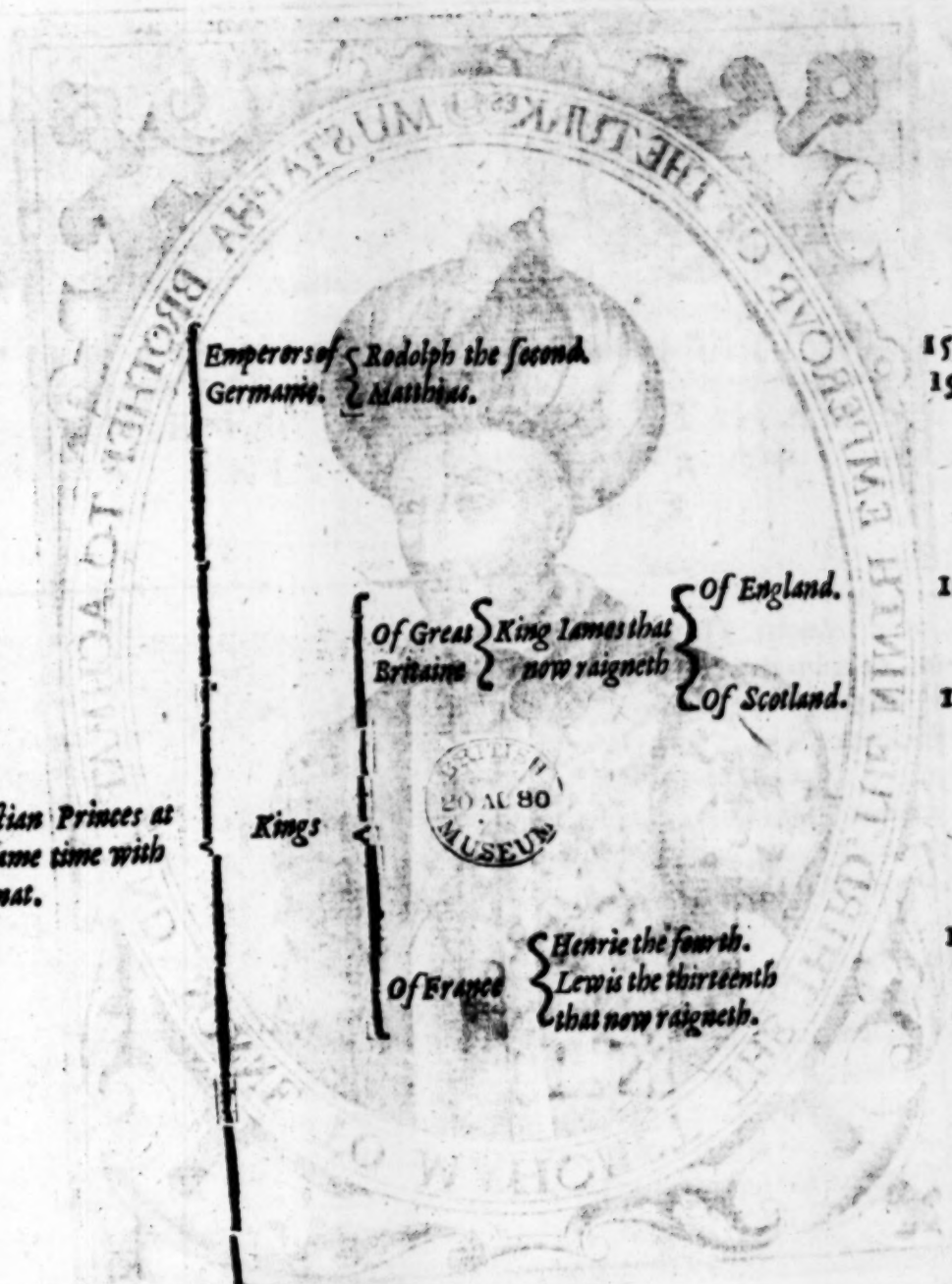
to the Turke, although they were Christians, but if they entred into the gulph either to traffique or to furnish VENICE with prouision and merchandize, they were taken by them, their goods diuided amongst them, and they forced to pay a great ransome or to die miserably. All the ports of the state of VENICE, both of ISTRIA, DALMATIA, and the Islands from whence they receiued their victuals and prouision were soone after shut vp by these pirats, who not content to spoile the Turkes (which trafficked no more by reason of their great dangers and losse) allured by the rich spoiles which they tooke, and the desire they had to increase them, they began to set vpon the Venetian ships, forcing the merchants whom they tooke to confesse by torments, that the goods belonged to Turkes, although in effect their chiefe bootie came from Christians. Hauing drawne many vnto them of their owne humours, and thinking their spoiles at sea not sufficient to satisfie their couetous desires, nor the presents which they were to giue to others, to bee fauoured and supported in the courts of princes, they staied not long before they entred with all violence into the Turkes countrie, through the Venetian territorie, to whome they were as hurtfull as to the Turkes; from whence they carried away rich spoiles and many prisoners. There was nothing that was pretious, rich, or good, but was subiect to the insatiable greedines of those pittilesse theeues and pirats, if passing by sea they came neere vnto the maritine coasts. Whereupon grew the great complaint you haue heard made by the Turkes, threatening to be reuenged vpon the estate of VENICE for the insolencie of the Vscoques, which afterward bred a cruell warre, betwixt that State and the Archduke *Ferdinand* of *Grets* now Emperour, who seemed to support them, thereby to engage the State in a war with the Turke. But for that the successe thereof doth not belong to our historie, we will leaue it to them that haue written it at large.

They spoile the Turkes country and the Venetians.

Death of Achmat.

On the fifteenth of Nouember this yeare Sultan *Athmat Chan* hauing liued 30 yeres, and gouerned that great empire of Turkie fifteene, died. When he came to the empire hee was but 15 yeares old; he was of a good constitution, well complexioned, and somewhat inclined to bee fat, strong and actiue, which appeared by his exercise in casting of a horsemans mace of nine or ten pounds weight, wherein he exceeded any one of his court; in memorie whereof there are two pillars set vp in one of the courts of the Seraglio at CONSTANTINOPLE with an inscription, as markes of his dexteritie. He was by nature ambitious and proud, which some hold qualities befitting his great estate. He was not so cruell as many of his predecessors: But he was much giuen to sensualitie and pleasure; for the which he entertained 3000 concubines and virgins in a Seraglio; being the faireſt daughters of the Christians. His mother was a Christian of BOSNA, or of CIPRES, and therefore it is thought he was somewhat fauourable to Christians. He was much delighted in hawking and hunting; and namely for hawking he kept in GRECIA and NATOLIA 40000 faulkoners, who attended his comming, and kept his hawkes in their seuerall places of charge, and had good yearely pensions. Neither were his huntsmen much fewer in number, or of lesse charge. As the Turkish emperours are bound by the law of their religion once euerie day to practise some manuall trade, so *Mahomet* his father gaue himselfe to the making of arrowes, and *Achmat* to the fashioning of horne rings, such as the Turkes weare when they draw their bowes. This they do in the morning, after they are readie and haue said their prayers, then they call for their exercise, but it is onely for forme, for they scarce make an arrow or a ring in a whole yeare.

The disposition of Sultan Achmat.



Christian Princes at the same time with Achmat.

- Emperors of Germanie. { Rodolph the second. 1577. 35 / Matthias. 1612.
- Kings
  - Of Great Britaine { King Iames that now raigneth { Of England. 1602 / Of Scotland. 1567.
  - Of France { Henrie the fourth. 1589. / Lewis the thirteenth that now raigneth. 1610.
- Bishops of Rome { Paul the V. 1605.

BRITISH MUSEUM

Nought but Affliction, thundring out of Heauen,
makes men of earth to any Goodneſſe giuen:
Nor longer than ſhe thunders, any feare
that any Heauen holds any Thunderer:
So *Muſtapha*; (while Heauen reſtrain'd his ſtate,
and held him fettered in his brothers hate)
To vertuous actions did his ſtudies driue,
was courteous, pious, and contemplatiue:
But when his brother could no longer liue,
and Libertie did to him Power giue:
Then Pride, and Tyrannie his horſes were,
and driue him alwaies paſt Heauens Loue or Feare.
Greatneſſe on Goodneſſe, loues to ſlide not ſtand,
and leaues for Fortunes ice, Vertues firme land.
Honour had rather be with danger driuen,
than ſtay with Vertue on the hand of Heauen.

THE

THE RAIGNE OF MVSTAPHA,
THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, NINTH EMPEROVR OF THE TVRKES.

Sman the eldeſt ſonne of *Achmat*, being not aboue twelue yeares old, *Muſtapha* brother to *Achmat* being fiue and twentie was drawne out of a cell where he liued as it were religiouſly and in contemplation, and proclaimed Sultan *Muſtapha Chan*. They write of him that he grew cruell, cauſing young *Oſman* to bee kept vnder ſure guards, putting to death his brethren: He alſo did many indignities vnto the Chriſtian embaſſadors; and to confirme him in his Throne hee gaue great ſummes of mony to the Ianizaries and Spahis, and ſent a meſſenger to VIENNA to the emperor, to aſſure him that he would maintain inuiolably whatſoeuer had beene concluded betwixt him and his deceaſed brother *Achmat*. But growing odious by reaſon of his tyrannie, the graund Viſier came out of PERSIA with an armie and depoſed him, forcing him to returne to his cell, ſetting prince *Oſman* at libertie, and ſeating him in the imperiall throne. But for that it may ſeeme ſtrange that *Muſtapha* ſhould be preſerued aliue, during the raigne of his brother *Achmat*, (contrarie to the cuſtome of the Ottoman Emperours, who do vſually kill all their brethren at their firſt comming to the crowne, thinking thereby the better to aſſure their eſtates) it ſhal be fit to make mention thereof. *Mahomet* the third of that name, dying in the yeare 1602, and leauing *Achmat* and *Muſtapha* his ſonnes by the Sultana *Filatra* a ladie of CIPRES, ſome ſay of BOSNA, *Achmat* the eldeſt was ſent for ſpeedily out of MAGNESIA by the Baſſaes, to take poſſeſſion of his fathers crowne, being the firſt emperor of that name. And for that the cuſtome of the Turkiſh emperors was (as we haue ſaid) to haue neither brother nor nephew aliue, vnleſſe they could ſaue themſelues by flight; yet the Viſier, Baſſaes, and other officers of the court concluded in counſell, that it was not fit that *Muſtapha* brother to *Achmat* ſhould die, grounding their opinion vpon a good reaſon of State; for that their emperour being but fifteene yeares old, they feared (that dying in his nonage, without children able to gouerne) the empire might fall into combuſtion and ruine it ſelfe by reaſon of ciuile warres. Whereupon they decreed that *Muſtaphaes* life ſhould bee preſerued, but with that caution and reſtriction, that he ſhould remaine ſtill a priſoner in ſome chambers of the emperors Seraglio at CONSTANTINOPLE.

Muſtapha aduanced to the Empire.

Depoſed againe.

During *Achmats* minoritie, and before he had children, there was no cruell decree made againſt *Muſtapha*, but hee onely continued in his contemplation without any libertie: But when as the emperor ſaw himſelfe fortified with iſſue, and remembring the cruell cuſtome of his predeceſſors, he many times propounded the putting of his brother to death to his Councell; the which may ſeeme verie ſtrange it tooke not effect, hauing beene often concluded

ded. Among others, it is written that his death was concluded one euening, and that it ſhould G
haue beene put in execution the next day: But *Achmat* was ſo frighted in the night with ap-
pariſions and fearefull dreames, as day being come, he ſaid, Seeing that the onely reſolution
to put his brother to death had ſo terrified him, he did belieue that his torments would much
increaſe if he ſhould put it in execution; and therefore he commaunded his brother ſhould
liue, more in regard of the terrour of his mind, than for any brotherly affection. Another
time Sultan *Achmat* being in one of the windowes of his Seraglio, he beheld his brother *Mu-*
ſtapha, who by his permiſſion was walking in the gardens with his guard: Some one of his
Baſſaes or other officers that was neere vnto him, and willing to flatter his humour, told him
that it was a matter of dangerous conſequence to ſuffer him to haue ſo great libertie. *Ach-* H
mat (moued with iealouſie and diſtruſt) grew into rage at his wordes, whereupon he ſuddenly
tooke his bow and arrow (being a verie expert archer, as all the Turkiſh nation generally
are) and aimed at his brother to kill him, but at that verie inſtant he felt ſo great a paine in
his arme and ſhoulder as not able to let looſe his arrow, nor to performe what he had inten-
ded, he ſaid with a loud voice, That *Mahomet* would not haue *Muſtapha* to die. This prince
had three chambers in the Seraglio, where he remained a priſoner fifteene yeares, and ſpent
his time in a contemplatiue kind of life, after the manner of the Muſulmans; his whole de-
light was to read the Arabian bookes of their doctors in diuers ſciences. The Grand Seigni-
or gaue him leaue ſometimes to take the aire of his gardens with his guard, and called him
to conſult with him of affaires of eſtate, taking his aduice many times, knowing him to be of I
a ſound iudgement.

After a long impriſonment, and a dayly apprehenſion of death, the emperor *Achmat* fal-
ling grieuouſly ſicke in Nouember as you haue heard, his Baſſaes and other Councellors a-
bout him (ſeeing the danger he was in) perſuaded him to take ſome good courſe for the ſuc-
ceſſion of his empire. He had children by the Sultana, but they ſo young as they were not ca-
pable to gouern the empire. Moreouer this Sultana was dead, and the children left friendles,
and none to ſpeake for them. But on the other ſide the Sultana *Flatra* mother to the emperor
Muſtapha was yet liuing, who thought that if the Baſſaes ſhould vndertake to gouerne the
State during the minoritie of the emperours children, her honour would be much eclipſed:
wherefore ſhe fauoured *Muſtapha*, & perſuaded the dying emperor to make him his ſucceſſor. K
On the 15 of Nouember *Achmat* ſeeing his end grow neere, he called for his brother, and told
him that ſeeing death approched, he deſired to prouide for the preſeruation of the empire,
and therfore had made choice of him to ſucceed him, intreating him to take the gouernment
vpon him preſently after his death. *Muſtapha* was much amaſed at his ſpeech, and anſwered
him with words full of feare and humilitie, that he might not accept of the honour which he
did him, ſeeing that the empire did rightly belong vnto his eldeſt ſonne. *Achmat* diſabled his
ſonne for ſo great a gouernment, both for his age and capacitie; being neceſſarie for the
maintenance of ſo great a monarchie, that he (who was of ripe yeares and deepe iudge-
ment) ſhould take vpon him the mannaging thereof; recommending the children hee had
by the Sultana vnto him, intreating him to vſe them in the ſame manner that hee had vſed L
him; leauing the other children which he had by concubines being his ſlaues to his diſcreti-
on. Soone after theſe words, *Achmat* dyed, and *Muſtapha* was generally acknowledged for
ſucceſſour to the Turkiſh empire, who at the firſt was ſo amazed as he thought he had beene
in a dreame, to ſee himſelfe aduanced to ſo great a power and ſoueraigntie, from a ſtraight
priſon and a daily apprehenſion of death. At his firſt comming to the empire he cauſed the
Perſian embaſſadour to be ſet at libertie, whom his brother *Achmat* had cauſed to be reſtrai-
ned, contrarie to the publique faith; for that newes came vnto the court of ſome combuſti-
ons raiſed by the Perſian. After which he ſent ſpeedily to the Baſſa of BVDA in HVNGA-
RIE, commaunding him to entertaine the treatie of peace made by his predeceſſor with the
emperour inuiolably. Yet notwithſtanding he carried himſelfe during the ſmall time of his M
raigne inſolently and cruelly; for violating the lawes of nations, he had ill intreated the ba-
ron of *Mole* or *Sancie* embaſſador to the moſt Chriſtian king, ſetting guards vpon him as a
priſoner, hauing cauſed his people to be put in priſon, and tortured after their manner. The
reaſon of this indignitie which *Muſtapha* did vnto the French embaſſador, and to his people,

grew

A grew vpon an occaſion which will require an ample diſcourſe; for the better vnderſtanding of that which hath gone before. After the ouerthrow and taking of the princes of MOLDAVIA, prince *Coreskie* as you haue heard was brought by *Skinder Baſſa* to CONSTANTINOPLE, whereat the Grand Seignior was wonderfully well pleaſed, for that he was held (euen by his enemies) for one of the moſt valiant and redoubted princes of Chriſtendome, wherefore he was ſent away priſoner, and confined to the towers of the black ſea, the which are fiue miles diſtant from CONSTANTINOPLE, a place appointed for the guard of priſoners of great qualitie and importance, ſuch as he was. He was ſhut vp with a French Captaine called *Rigaut*, in a little chamber which was on the top of one of thoſe towers, in which chamber
B there was a window capable for a man to paſſe through, and yet it had no barres, for that the height of the place freed it from all ſuſpition. This prince was much ſolicited by the Turke to become a Renegado, as the princes *Alexander* and *Bougdan* his brothers in law had done, but he reſiſted it with a generous reſolution, reſoluing rather to die in that tedious captiuitie, than to commit ſo baſe an act againſt God and his conſcience: The which being made knowne vnto the king of POLONIA, it moued him to compaſſion, and made him write to the French embaſſadour, and to intreat him to be a meanes that this prince might be put to ranſome, and freed from captiuitie, at what price ſoeuer; the which the embaſſador durſt not vndertake, although he deſired it much, for that he had no charge from the king his maſter. The Emperours embaſſadour did what poſſibly hee could, knowing how much the
C libertie of this prince might bee auaileable to Chriſtendome: For which conſiderations, the Turke would not yeeld in any ſort to ſuffer him to be releaſed; ſo as the friends of this captiue prince were out of hope euer to ſee him at libertie. But moſt commonly in ſuch extremities the Almightie workes by the ſecret inſtruments of his diuine prouidence, and giues aſſiſtance vnto them that feare him, when as all humane helpe and hope failes, as you may vnderſtand in the ſequell of this hiſtorie, whence grew the embaſſadors affront which he receiued.

The generous reſolution of Prince Coreskie

About the ſame time, there had beene a Ladie taken out of PODOLIA with a faire young daughter of hers and a maide ſeruant, by the Tartarians, who ſold them vnto a Turke, and he brought them vnto CONSTANTINOPLE to make his profit. This Ladie
D who was a Chriſtian, hearing nothing from her husband for the ſpace of nine moneths, went accompanied with her daughter to the French Embaſſadours houſe which was at PERA, to craue his aide and aſſiſtance; where his Secretarie (who was called *Martine*) moued with compaſſion and loue promiſed vnto them all ſeruice, and afterwards aſſured the mother, that if ſhe would promiſe he ſhould marrie her daughter, he would endeauour to redeeme them from captiuitie, whereunto the Ladies yeelded, and they paſt their promiſe in writing to the Secretarie, whereupon he payed two thouſand and fiue hundred crownes for their ranſome, and ſent them home into their countrie. Being returned, the ladie made her husband and the reſt of her friends acquainted how they had been freed from captiuitie, and of the contract of marriage which was paſt betweene her daughter and the French
E embaſſadours Secretarie; but the father did altogether diſlike of this marriage, for that *Martine* he ſaid was no gentleman, and had not an eſtate to entertaine his daughter according to her qualitie. The mother aduertiſed *Martine* ſoone after of the fathers refuſall, proteſting vnto him that he alone was the hinderance: And as for the money which hee had diſburſed for their ranſome, they would ſend it vnto him if he pleaſed to CONSTANTINOPLE with intereſt. *Martine* was much diſcontented, and diuers letters and expoſtulations paſt betwixt them, but he could not obtaine the execution of his deſire, and their promiſe; whereupon hee grew full of griefe and melancholie, and thereupon went to viſite prince *Coreskie* who was in the Blacke Tower, to make his complaint vnto him, and to take his aduice what courſe were beſt for him to follow: He made his excuſe that hee had
F beene ſent by his maſter to carrie the prince ſome money, as he had done at other times, who making the prince acquainted with his diſcontent, (for that he knew theſe Podolians, and had formerly allowed of the ſuit which hee had made to this virgin,) he comforted him ſaying, That if he might by any meanes get out of priſon, he would willingly ſupplie the defects which they obiected againſt him, and would maintaine him againſt all that ſhould

ded. Among others, it is written that his death was concluded one euening, and that it ſhould G
haue beene put in execution the next day: But *Achmat* was ſo frighted in the night with apariſions and fearefull dreames, as day being come, he ſaid, Seeing that the onely reſolution to put his brother to death had ſo terrified him, he did belieue that his torments would much increaſe if he ſhould put it in execution; and therefore he commaunded his brother ſhould liue, more in regard of the terrour of his mind, than for any brotherly affection. Another time Sultan *Achmat* being in one of the windowes of his Seraglio, he beheld his brother *Muſtapha*, who by his permiſſion was walking in the gardens with his guard: Some one of his Baſſaes or other officers that was neere vnto him, and willing to flatter his humour, told him that it was a matter of dangerous conſequence to ſuffer him to haue ſo great libertie. *Ach-* H
mat (moued with iealouſie and diſtruſt) grew into rage at his wordes, whereupon he ſuddenly tooke his bow and arrow (being a verie expert archer, as all the Turkiſh nation generally are) and aimed at his brother to kill him, but at that verie inſtant he felt ſo great a paine in his arme and ſhoulder as not able to let looſe his arrow, nor to performe what he had intended, he ſaid with a loud voice, That *Mahomet* would not haue *Muſtapha* to die. This prince had three chambers in the Seraglio, where he remained a priſoner fifteene yeares, and ſpent his time in a contemplatiue kind of life, after the manner of the Muſulmans; his whole delight was to read the Arabian bookes of their doctors in diuers ſciences. The Grand Seignior gaue him leaue ſometimes to take the aire of his gardens with his guard, and called him to conſult with him of affaires of eſtate, taking his aduice many times, knowing him to be of I
a ſound iudgement.

After a long impriſonment, and a dayly apprehenſion of death, the emperor *Achmat* falling grieuouſly ſicke in Nouember as you haue heard, his Baſſaes and other Councellors about him (ſeeing the danger he was in) perſuaded him to take ſome good courſe for the ſucceſſion of his empire. He had children by the Sultana, but they ſo young as they were not capable to gouern the empire. Moreouer this Sultana was dead, and the children left friendles, and none to ſpeake for them. But on the other ſide the Sultana *Flatra* mother to the emperor *Muſtapha* was yet liuing, who thought that if the Baſſaes ſhould vndertake to gouerne the State during the minoritie of the emperours children, her honour would be much eclipſed: wherefore ſhe fauoured *Muſtapha*, & perſuaded the dying emperor to make him his ſucceſſor. K
On the 15 of Nouember *Achmat* ſeeing his end grow neere, he called for his brother, and told him that ſeeing death approched, he deſired to prouide for the preſeruation of the empire, and therfore had made choice of him to ſucceed him, intreating him to take the gouernment vpon him preſently after his death. *Muſtapha* was much amaſed at his ſpeech, and anſwered him with words full of feare and humilitie, that he might not accept of the honour which he did him, ſeeing that the empire did rightly belong vnto his eldeſt ſonne. *Achmat* diſabled his ſonne for ſo great a gouernment, both for his age and capacitie; being neceſſarie for the maintenance of ſo great a monarchie, that he (who was of ripe yeares and deepe iudgement) ſhould take vpon him the mannaging thereof; recommending the children hee had by the Sultana vnto him, intreating him to vſe them in the ſame manner that hee had vſed L
him; leauing the other children which he had by concubines being his ſlaues to his diſcretion. Soone after theſe words, *Achmat* dyed, and *Muſtapha* was generally acknowledged for ſucceſſour to the Turkiſh empire, who at the firſt was ſo amazed as he thought he had beene in a dreame, to ſee himſelfe aduanced to ſo great a power and ſoueraigntie, from a ſtraight priſon and a daily apprehenſion of death. At his firſt comming to the empire he cauſed the Perſian embaſſadour to be ſet at libertie, whom his brother *Achmat* had cauſed to be reſtrained, contrarie to the publique faith; for that newes came vnto the court of ſome combuſtions raiſed by the Perſian. After which he ſent ſpeedily to the Baſſa of BVDA in HVNGARIE, commaunding him to entertaine the treatie of peace made by his predeceſſor with the emperour inuiolably. Yet notwithſtanding he carried himſelfe during the ſmall time of his M
raigne inſolently and cruelly; for violating the lawes of nations, he had ill intreated the baron of *Mole* or *Sancie* embaſſador to the moſt Chriſtian king, ſetting guards vpon him as a priſoner, hauing cauſed his people to be put in priſon, and tortured after their manner. The reaſon of this indignitie which *Muſtapha* did vnto the French embaſſador, and to his people,

grew

A grew vpon an occasion which will require an ample discourse; for the better vnderstanding of that which hath gone before. After the ouerthrow and taking of the princes of MOLDAVIA, prince *Coreskie* as you haue heard was brought by *Skinder Bassa* to CONSTANTINOPLE, whereat the Grand Seignior was wonderfully well pleased, for that he was held (euen by his enemies) for one of the most valiant and redoubted princes of Christendome, wherefore he was sent away prisoner, and confined to the towers of the black sea, the which are fiue miles distant from CONSTANTINOPLE, a place appointed for the guard of prisoners of great qualitie and importance, such as he was. He was shut vp with a French Captaine called *Rigaut*, in a little chamber which was on the top of one of those towers, in which chamber
B there was a window capable for a man to passe through, and yet it had no barres, for that the height of the place freed it from all suspition. This prince was much solicited by the Turke to become a Renegado, as the princes *Alexander* and *Bougdan* his brothers in law had done, but he resisted it with a generous resolution, resoluing rather to die in that tedious captiuitie, than to commit so base an act against God and his conscience: The which being made knowne vnto the king of POLONIA, it moued him to compassion, and made him write to the French embassadour, and to intreat him to be a meanes that this prince might be put to ransome, and freed from captiuitie, at what price soeuer; the which the embassador durst not vndertake, although he desired it much, for that he had no charge from the king his master. The Emperours embassadour did what possibly hee could, knowing how much the
C libertie of this prince might bee auaileable to Christendome: For which considerations, the Turke would not yeeld in any sort to suffer him to be released; so as the friends of this captiue prince were out of hope euer to see him at libertie. But most commonly in such extremities the Almightie workes by the secret instruments of his diuine prouidence, and giues assistance vnto them that feare him, when as all humane helpe and hope failes, as you may vnderstand in the sequell of this historie, whence grew the embassadors affront which he receiued.

The generous resolution of Prince Coreskie

About the same time, there had beene a Ladie taken out of PODOLIA with a faire young daughter of hers and a maide seruant, by the Tartarians, who sold them vnto a Turke, and he brought them vnto CONSTANTINOPLE to make his profit. This Ladie
D who was a Christian, hearing nothing from her husband for the space of nine moneths, went accompanied with her daughter to the French Embassadours house which was at PERA, to craue his aide and assistance; where his Secretarie (who was called *Martine*) moued with compassion and loue promised vnto them all seruice, and afterwards assured the mother, that if she would promise he should marrie her daughter, he would endeauour to redeeme them from captiuitie, whereunto the Ladies yeelded, and they past their promise in writing to the Secretarie, whereupon he payed two thousand and fiue hundred crownes for their ransome, and sent them home into their countrie. Being returned, the ladie made her husband and the rest of her friends acquainted how they had been freed from captiuitie, and of the contract of marriage which was past betweene her daughter and the French
E embassadours Secretarie; but the father did altogether dislike of this marriage, for that *Martine* he said was no gentleman, and had not an estate to entertaine his daughter according to her qualitie. The mother aduertised *Martine* soone after of the fathers refusall, protesting vnto him that he alone was the hinderance: And as for the money which hee had disbursed for their ransome, they would send it vnto him if he pleased to CONSTANTINOPLE with interest. *Martine* was much discontented, and diuers letters and expostulations past betwixt them, but he could not obtaine the execution of his desire, and their promise; whereupon hee grew full of griefe and melanchollie, and thereupon went to visite prince *Coreskie* who was in the Blacke Tower, to make his complaint vnto him, and to take his aduice what course were best for him to follow: He made his excuse that hee had
F beene sent by his master to carrie the prince some money, as he had done at other times, who making the prince acquainted with his discontent, (for that he knew these Podolians, and had formerly allowed of the suit which hee had made to this virgin,) he comforted him saying, That if he might by any meanes get out of prison, he would willingly supplie the defects which they obiected against him, and would maintaine him against all that should

A deuice to free prince Coreskie from prison.

oppose themselues against the accomplishing of his desires. This made *Martine* studie by G
what meanes he might free the prince, to the end he might bind him to succour him when he
was at libertie, and loue which is many times the author of many goodly inuentions, sug-
gested one vnto him which was verie subtile and difficult to execute: which was to send vn-
to prince *Coreskie* a bottome of packethred in a little pie, which he sent him with other meat,
aduertising him by letter that vpon a certaine night concluded betwixt them, he should put
downe the packethred at his chamber window, whereunto a ladder of cords should be ti-
ed, by the which he might descend from the tower: The which was afterwards punctually
effected, not by *Martine* himselfe, but by a Greeke priest, who liued in CONSTANTINO-
PLE, to whom he had imparted his enterprise, and had ingaged him vpon hope of great re- H
ward from the prince. In the mean time *Martine* doubting that he should be suspected to pra-
ctise this escape, resolued to be gone, and tooke leaue of the embassadour, whom hee
gaue to vnderstand that he had some speciall vrgent affaires which did presse his speedie
returne into FRANCE; and therefore hee left the execution of his dessigne to the Greeke
priest, who failed not at the time appointed to do as the Secretarie had directed him. The

Prince Coreskie escapes out of prison.

prince hauing drawne vp this ladder of roapes with the helpe of his packethred, and being
come to the foot of the tower, with his chamber fellow, he found the Greeke priest atten-
ding for them, who told him that he had charge from *Martine* to conduct them to a certain
caue, which was in a great rocke a league from thence, where they must remaine all the
day, and that in the euening hee would not faile to come vnto them, and bring them ha- I
bits like vnto his owne, that being so disguised, hee might conduct them to his lodging in
CONSTANTINOPLE, and there conceale them as long as they should thinke fit. This de-
uice pleased them well, and so they went all three vnto the said caue, whereas the two Came-
radoes hid themselues, and the priest returned to his house.

At the breake of day, it being the three and twentieth of Nouember 1617, some of the
guards entring the prisoners chamber, saw that they were escaped, and found the ladder
of roapes which they had vsed, tied to the window, whereat they were much amased, know-
ing wel that they should smart for it: Notwithstanding he who had charge of the prisons, sent
speedily to CONSTANTINOPLE, to giue notice of their escapes. As soone as this was knowne,
they sent posts speedily to all parts, to make inquirie of these fugitiues, especially at the ports K
and passages, giuing them speciall charge to obserue all men that past, if there were not one
who had the little finger of his right hand shrunke vp as prince *Coreskie* had by a wound

The French embassadors men tortured by the Turkes.

which hee had receiued. Within few daies after the Turke seased vpon the seruants of the
Baron of *Sancie* or *Mole*, embassador for the French, torturing two of them after their man-
ner; which is to lay the partie vpon a table on his bellie, and to giue him three or foure hun-
dred blowes with a staffe vpon the soles of their feet, the calues of their legges, and their but-
tockes, yet could they not make them say any thing that might charge their master, as these
Turkish tormentors did hope. Not content herewith, they did as much to a poore Turke,
who was a weauer by his trade, and dwelt neere vnto the embassadour, thinking to force
him by this cruell torture to depose falsely, that he had seene the Secretarie *Martine* going L
and comming to his masters lodging, vntill the time of the prisoners escape; but God would
not suffer the weauer to depose any thing but the trueth, notwithstanding all the miserable
and cruell torments which hee had suffered. The which is worthie the obseruation, for
that the Turkes doe generally hate Christians mortally, and do greatly reioice at their dis-
asters. As for the guardes of the Towers, some of them were impaled, and some were poun-
ded or beaten to pieces in great mortars of yron, wherein they do vsually pound their rice to
reduce it to meale.

Thre daies after the Chiaus Bassa had charge to sease vpon the person of the French em-
bassadour, the which he performed verie seuerely and vnciuilly, without any respect vnto

The French embassador imprisoned by the Turkes.

his qualitie. Hauing taken him, the said Chiaus led him vnto the Visiers house, where M
hauing beene examined vpon many circumstances touching the escape of prince *Cores-
kie*, they left him as a prisoner in the hands of the said Chiaus, where he continued for the
space of three daies; during the which, the said embassadour desiring to write to some of his
friends, & also to speake with the Mufti which is the Turks high priest, to acquaint him with
his

A his iuſt grieuances, he could not obtaine leaue but by giuing two thouſand crowns vnto his Iaylor: True it is, that this preſent made the Chiaus tell the Embaſſadour, that if he would obtaine any fauour from the Muphti, he muſt procure it by money, according to which aduice he gaue three or foure thouſand crownes, whereupon the Muphti became tractable, acquainting the graund Seigniour *Muſtapha* with the Embaſſadours iuſt complaints, and of what importance his detention was, ſeeing there was nothing found to charge him that hee had fauoured the eſcape of prince *Coreskie*, as it was ſuſpected; and that his Secretarie who had practiſed it for his owne priuate profit, had left his maſter aboue tenne or twelue dayes before the ſaid eſcape, with an intent as he ſaid to returne into FRANCE: Finally, that all
B the world would taxe him to haue violated the law of nations, and that no Chriſtian prince nor other would hereafter put any confidence in him, and it was to be feared that they would all ioyne together, and make warre againſt him: And in truth the Embaſſadors, both the king of ENGLANDS and the Low Countries, were much diſcontented at this vnworthie vſage of the French, proteſting openly, that if he were not ſpeedily ſet at libertie, they would retire themſelues into their countries. All which conſiderations repreſented by the Muphti, mooued the graund Seigniour to commaund that the ſaid Baron of *Mole* or *Sancie* ſhould *The embaſſador ſet at libertie.*
bee ſent backe to his houſe without any further diſpleaſure. But all this could not free his houſhold ſeruants from their impriſonment, but he was forced to pay two or three and twentie thouſand crownes for their redemption; for elſe they ſhould haue been ſo tormented, as
C their liues had been in danger, for ſo they were threatned. Soone after the graund Viſier, hearing of the tyrannous gouernment of Sultan *Muſtapha*, returned from PERSIA with his whole armie towards CONSTANTINOPLE, where he forced him to leaue the empire, and to retire to his Cell, hauing raigned but two months and ſome odde daies.

But to returne to prince *Coreskie*, whom we left with captaine *Rigaut* in the lodging of the Greeke prieſt at CONSTANTINOPLE, whereas they lay hidden for the ſpace of two moneths, vntill that their good hoſt got leaue from the Patriarke of ALEXANDRIA, as well for himſelfe, as for two others (who he ſaid wer of his ſocietie) to goe and confine themſelues in the deſarts of the Archepelagus with many Hermits, which liued there after the manner of *Prince Coreskie eſcapes from Conſtantinople.*
D the antient Anchorites. Hauing gotten this leaue and paſſe-port, they imbarqued being diſguiſed like prieſts, and arriued at ETCHVT, where they found an Engliſh ſhip readie to ſet ſaile for MESSINA in SICILIE, from whence he went by land to NAPLES, where hee made himſelfe knowen to the king of POLANDS Embaſſadour, who was wonderfull glad of his libertie, leading him to the Duke of OSSVNA, then *Viceroy* of NAPLES, who furniſhed him with all things neceſſarie, and a good conuoy to goe to ROME, where the Pope receiued ſingular content to ſee him, and to heare of his ſtrange aduentures. From thence hee paſt to VIENNA, where the Emperour entertained him according to his merits. After which he retired to his owne houſe, full of honour, gotten by his valour and conſtancie in his afflictions. Our Embaſſador that was late in CONSTANTINOPLE ſaith, he eſcaped by the blacke
E ſea, and ſo into POLONIA.

OSMAN

Osman, thy gentle Nature farre declinde
from Turkiſh tyrannie and pride of minde,
Which made heauen raiſe thee and extirpat them,
the proud vſurpers of thy diadem.
O! would all princes (when their States are bleſt
with Power, and Empire) thinke their intereſt
In thoſe their bleſſings, held but by the grace
of Gratitude, and Goodneſſe; and no place
Is held without them long: They ſoone would trie,
that Truth preuailes paſt all their Policie.

THE

OSMAN THE FIRST OF that name, tenth Emperor of the Turks,

he that now ſwaieth that mightie Empire.

PRince *Oſman* being ſet at libertie by thegraund Viſier, he cauſed him to be proclaimed Sultan, and ſeated in the Imperiall throne of the *Ottomans*, with the general applauſe of all the Baſſaes and armie. The French Embaſſadour being by the ſame meanes freed from his guard, aduertiſed the king his maſter, how barbarouſly he had been intreated by *Muſtapha*, intreating his maieſtie to reuoke him from that charge. Wherupon the king ſent two gentlemen to CONSTANTINOPLE to the new Emperour *Oſman*, to demaund reparation of the indignitie done vnto his Embaſſadour and Secretarie; and to let him vnderſtand, that he could not ſend any other Embaſſadour to his Court to condole the death of Sultan *Achmat* his father, nor congratulate his comming to the Eaſt, vntill that he had receiued ſatisfaction from him befitting his dignitie, and the wrongs he had receiued in his Embaſſadour. The graund Viſier and the Muphti hearing this embaſſie, and conſidering of the actions which had paſt, aduiſed the Emperour *Oſman* to ſend an Embaſſadour to the moſt Chriſtian king, to confirme their league, and to teſtifie both by word and letters how much he was diſpleaſed for his diſcontent. 1618

The French king ſends to Conſtantinople.

The Grand Seignior by the aduice of his Viſier and others, ſent *Vri* Chiaus into FRANCE to confirme the Articles of peace betwixt the French and the Turkes. At his firſt audience he preſented a letter vnto his maieſtie with this ſuperſcription.

The Turk ſends an Embaſſador into France.

To the moſt glorious and puiſſant prince of the beliefe of Ieſus, arbitrator of all the differences which happen among the Chriſtian nations, and of all the moſt noble, and the moſt ancient, the Emperour of FRANCE, *to whom we wiſh the end of his dayes to be happie, and his deſires accompliſhed.*

Know, that I ſend vnto you the capitulations and treaties of peace which are betwixt our maieſties: giuing you to vnderſtand that there is not any thing firme or ſtable in this world, neither king nor beggar, although they liue long: That which pleaſeth God cannot faile. If all mens deſires ſhould ſucceed, without doubt all men would goe to heauen. Man whatſoeuer hee doth, or in what dignitie ſoeuer hee bee, ſhall not remaine in this fraile life; wiſe men know it, and it is apparant to the learned. By that which we haue ſaid, we deſire to let you know, that hee who was in health, hath incountred death, and is gone to a goodlier place, to Paradiſe, my father Sultan Achmat Chan; *the God which hath no reſemblance haue mercie on him. No man ſhall remaine in this lying world: And in Paradiſe are the approches to God, where there is no death. Finally he is gone.*

His letter to the French king.

Since the beginning of the Ottomans *vntill this preſent, the empire of my fathers & their countries from*

from father and sonne, from hand to hand, and from father to sonne, the inheritance comming so vnto vs; our vnkle Sultan Mustapha Chan, *for that hee was elder than our selfe, was preferred before vs to the throne of the* Ottomans, *and was some daies in peaceable possession of the empire, yeelding iustice equally to all men both great and small. But as he was shut vp many yeares in secret places, praying vnto God continually: so of himselfe hee hath relinquished the dignitie of the Emperour, and contemned it. The empire then belonging to those of our high linage, and for that by right it should come vnto me, the almightie God by his infinite bountie and mercie hath restored it into my hands, my Visiers, Bassaes, Lieutenants, the Muphti, and other great personages, and they that are in any respect with mee: and finally, all my subiects and vassals, by a generall consent haue acknowledged me for Emperour, in the happie yeare* 1027. *About the first day of the moone of Ianuarie, in a good houre. Wherefore I am seated in the great throne of the* Ottomans, *like vnto that of* Salomon, *a powerfull and able Emperour, and in all our countries and cities: All the Musulmans being assembled together in their churches to preach, the greatnesse of my name hath been proclaimed, and through all the mints of mine empire they haue grauen it in their stampes, to coyne peeces of gold and siluer. Finally, whersoeuer there are any Musulmans, and in what places there are men, my name shines like gold. Heereafter iniustice nor impietie shall haue no place, but iustice shall be done equally. Now we are in ioy, and for that our naturall disposition is good, and the ancient friendship betwixt vs is perfect, I therfore thought good to aduertise you of all that hath passed here, & to send you our letters of Imperiall alliance by* Vreiu Chiaus, *who is my ancient seruant, hauing had the managing of my treasure, whereof hee hath giuen mee good account, being arriued at your court, carrying my said letter, hee deserues to be receiued with honour: swearing and protesting againe vnto you, to obserue in all points the full capitulation made betwixt my predecessors, and your great grandfathers, and for our part you may bee assured, that the faith promised shalbe maintained as it hath been heretofore by our predecessors. And from the day I entred into my throne, I haue made my will knowne to all my Viceroyes, and other officers which doe my iustice, and generally to all those of my obedience, intreating you to giue the like commandement to your gouernours of prouinces, and other officers of iustice, as in like maner to all your subiects. And as your grandfathers haue taken the faith of our high family, so it may please you to continue with me, and we desire that on both sides it may be good and firme. Know then that for my part it shalbe obserued, so as of your side there be nothing done contrarie to the promised faith. And if before we came vnto the Imperiall throne, your Embassador which did your affaires hath receiued any distaste, and hath not receiued the honour and friendship accustomed, in my time he shall be the more honoured and respected as the chiefest Embassadors haue been: I haue commaunded that he shalbe greatly fauoured, and our respect shall be vnto him as Quineo, that is to say, Gold; and doubt nothing of it: For I doe certifie you.*

The French king hauing receiued by this action as a full satisfaction for indignitie done vnto his Embassador: soone after he called the Baron of *Mole* or *Sancie* home into France, sending the Earle of *Sezi* to succeed him as Embassador at Constantinople.

A battell betwixt the Turks & the Persians.

The warre continuing still betwixt the Turkes and the Persians, the graund Visier was sent to inuade Persia with a great armie, where after many exploites of warre, newes came to Constantinople, that the Visier had gotten a great aduauntage vpon the Sophie of Persia in a battell which had been fought, wherein there had been 100000 men slaine. And although the Turks lost the greatest number, yet they remained masters of the field, and spoiled the Persians campe, who was retired or fled. For that the maner of the Sophie is to fight with the Turks in retiring or giuing way a little; and with this manner of fighting they haue alwaies made head against the Turkes. After this ouerthrow the Visier aduanced with his armie, and entred farre into Persia, which made many doubt that his returne would proone difficult: yet soone after there came letters to Constantinople, importing that the Turkes being in Persia in great distresse for victuals, the Sophie had sent an Embassadour to the Visier to demaund peace, promising hereafter to satisfie the tribute of silkes which he ought yearely vnto the Turke; And that the Visier (in regard of the necessitie of his armie) had accepted his offer, and graunted him peace, the which Sultan *Osman* did afterwards ratifie. After the conclusion whereof, the Sophie sent many cammels loaden with victuals vnto the Turks armie, which was in great distresse and want.

A peace concluded betwixt them.

A commet seen ouer Constantinople.

During the Turks warre in Persia, vpon the anniuersarie day of Sultan *Achmat*, there appeared in the night a Commet ouer the citie of Constantinople, in forme like vnto a crooked

A crooked sword, or Turks cimiter: and it was so great, as it extended from the meridian neere vnto our zenith, vnto the horizon: the point began to shew it selfe an houre after midnight, and then it appeared little and somewhat whitish; and gaue but a glimpse, after an howre it was more apparant and of a deeper coulor, and the more it did rise, the redder it was and like vnto blood; but at the breake of day it vanished by little and little in the light: And it was so big when the point approched neere vnto the zenith, as the hilt was hidden vnder the horizon; the Mathematicians did obserue, that it followed the motions of the heauens; It did alwaies rise in one place, and the bending of the said sword was toward CRATES, more Southerly than it. It did appeare directly in the East a quarter towards the South, the point com-
B ming directly towards CONSTANTINOPLE; and the blade extending it selfe to the said East a quarter to the South, which is iustly the part where PERSIA is situated. The edge looked directly towards CONSTANTINOPLE, the which made men discourse diuersly, and many were amazed, fearing that it did signifie the losse and defeat of their armie in PERSIA, whose returne they feared much.

Vri or *Husseine* Chiaus hauing finished his embassie in FRANCE, came into ENGLAND with the like charge, and had audience from his Maiestie at WHITEHALL, Sir *Thomas Glouer* being Interpreter, from whom I receiued a true discourse of his whole speech as followeth.

The Turkish Embassadors speech to his Maiestie.

C

Hac subhanehu, ve Allahuteale, Saadetlu, ve izzetlu Padishah hazeretlerinung vmriny ve deuletiny ziyad ve berziyud eileie, Amin yah Rabil alemin.

Ziyade cudretlu ve saadetlu Sultan Alli Osman Chan Padishah hazeretleri; saadetlu Padishah Hazeretlerine iuz bin selamler ve doaler idub, bu namei humaiun saadet maakrunile, Sultanum Hazeretlerine irsal idub: vmidleri oldurchi, maabenilerinde munakid olan sulhu selah, bu anedeghin, ne veczuzre chywz olundise, halia dachi ol vslub vzre her daim giunden giune artirub mucarer olmasina murad humaiunleridur.

Ali Osman Padishahung dachi Lala, ve Bash vezirazam Bassa hazeretleri, saadetlu
D *Sultanum hazeretlerine iuz bin selamber idub, bu mektub sherifleri dachi haki pay sherislerine irsal idub doaler ider.*

Assitanei saadette dachi mutemekin olan elczighiz nam Paulo Pinder Cullighiz haki pay sherislerine iuz kylyndikdensongra, mubarek aiaghyn pusse idub, bu mektub Sultanum hazeretleryne irsall eiledy ler.

The Interpretation hereof is thus.

That most true, incomprehensible, and most high God, encrease and multiply your Maesties yeares
E *in all happinesse and felicitie, Amen oh thou Lord of the world.*

The most inuincible, most mightie, and most happie Sulan Osman Chan *of the* Ottoman *empire, Monarch, sendeth vnto your excellent Maestie a hundred thousand salutations and greetings, euermore praying the most high God for your Maesties happinesse, sendeth vnto your Highnesse with all possible honour and renowne, this his Imperiall and most noble Letter; and withall hopeth, that the sacred bond of peace, which hath been hitherto inuiolable on your Maesties parts kept and obserued; your Maestie will be pleased still on your part, with daily encrease more and more of friendship, earnestly to continue therein. And his Imperiall maestie on his behalfe is also resolued in the like manner euermore punctually to keepe and obserue the same.*

Also the most mightie Emperour his Tutor, and his chiefe Visier Bassa, hath addressed to the dust
F *of your noble feet, this his most honorable letter, with a thousand commendations, praying euerlastingly that mightie God for your Maesties long life and happinesse.*

Also your Maesties Embassadour at CONSTANTINOPLE, *your slaue* Paul Pinder, *bowing his forehead to the dust of your Maesties feet, and most humbly kissing your highnesse blessed feet, hath directed vnto your Maestie this his submissiue Letter.*

This

This that now followeth, is the said Embassadors speech to his Maiestie at the taking of his leaue at WHITEHALL. G

Saadetlu Padishahum, Nitekim bu kullighiz haki pay sherislerine effendimuzolan Cudretlu ve adaletlu Ali Osman Padishah Hazeretlerinung name humaiunlerin destimuz ile teslin eileduk: Regia ve temenamuz budurki Sultanum hazaretcleri dachi angha giore effendimuze name sherislerile giouab idub bu killighize teslim eilemek erzany buiurila, ve herdaim saadette ve deulette peydar ola. H

The Interpretation *verbatim* is thus.

Most happie Emperour, as I haue with my owne hands, bowing my selfe to the dust of your princely feet appresented vnto your excellent maiestie the most mightie and high Sultan Ottoman *my Lord and Master his Imperiall Letter, so likewise I most humbly beseech your Maiestie, that you will bee pleased in conformitie thereof, to vouchsafe your princely answere by your noble Letter, and to deliuer the same into the hands of me your slaue: and be euer partaker of all blessednesse and happinesse.*

A Copie of the Letter of Sultan *Osman* the present *Ottoman* Emperor, written to the Kings Maiestie, and presented by *Husseine* Chiaus. I

Although in this transitorie world, if the king or the beggar should enioy the longest terme of life that might be, and obtain all that his heart could wish: yet it is most certaine, that in the end he must depart and be transported to the world eternall; and it is well knowne vnto the wise, that it is impossible for man to abide for euer in this world. The occasion of this prologue is, that the immortall, omnipotent, and onely God hath by his diuine will and pleasure called vnto himselfe our father of blessed memorie Sultan Achmat Chan, *who in life was happie, and in death laudable; and departing out of this momentarie world to be neere the mercifull Creatour, being changed into perfect glorie, and eternall blisse, hath his habitation on high, and his rest in Paradise. This paternall empire and monarchicall* K *kingdome hath almost vntill this present blessed time, beene alwaies hereditarie, from grandfather to father, from father to sonne, and so cursiuely in that manner; but hauing regard vnto the age and yeares of our great and noble vnkle Sultan* Mustapha, *he was preferred and honored to sit on the* Ottoman *throne, and being setled for some time, tooke care for the affaires of the Empire, and for all that might concerne the people both in generall and particular. But he hauing been manie yeares retired in solitarinesse, and giuen to deuotion and diuine obedience, being also as it were wearied with the cares of the empire, of his owne accord withdrew himselfe from the gouernment; for that the diademe and scepter of the empire of the seuen Climats, was the true right and inheritance of our most excellent Maiestie, of the which (with the meeting and consent of all the Visiers, and other deputies of State, of the Primat of the Mussulman law, and of the other honourable Doctors, of the Souldiors, and of all subiects both publike and priuat) the almightie God hath made an high Present and worthy guift vnto vs. And in the happie day in the beinning of the moone Rebea-il-euel of this present yeare* 1027, *in an expected time, and in an acceptable houre, was our blessed and happie sitting established vpon the most fortunate* Ottoman *throne, the seat and wisdome of* Salomon. *In the pulpits of all the Mosques (the congregations of the faithfull and deuotion of the Mussulmen) throughout all our dominions is read to our Imperiall name the* * Hutbeh. *And in the mints (where innumerable summes of mony are coined, as well vpon the siluer as the gold) our happie name and stampe is signed. And our most powerfull commandements are obeyed in all the parts and dominions of the world: And the brightnesse of the light of the Sunne of Iustice and equitie, hath caused the darkenesse of iniuries and molestations to vanish away.* M

* Hutbeh, is a prayer only for the prosperitie of the king.

Now seeing it hath been an ancient custom of our famous Predecessors to giue notice of the same vnto such Princes as are in sincere friendship, and doe continue it with the House of great Maiestie and our Imperiall Court: Wee also haue written these our princely letters, and appointed for their Bearer the choice among his equals Husseine *Chiaus (whose power is great) one of the honoured and respected seruants,*

A *seruants of our magnificent Port, the refuge of the world, to the end that such newes might cause great ioy of our most honourable assumption. And wee doe hope that when they shall come to your hands (in conformitie of the well grounded friendship vpon the sure league, articles, and writings, which hath bin established of old with our most royall Race, and permanent Empire) you will manifest infinite ioy and gladnesse, and certifie as much to the rulers and gouernours of the dominions and countries vnder you, that they may know that the articles of peace and league, and the points of the oath which are firme and*
B *to be desired on both parts, from the time of our graundfather and predecessors of royall stocke now in paradise (whose soules God enlighten) vndoubtedly during the time of our raigne shall bee obserued with all respect. And let there not bee the least imagination of any want of due obseruance of the signes of friendship on our part, or by any manner of meanes on your part, for the violating the foundation of the peace and league.*

The Copie of a Letter written by *Halil Bassa*, chiefe Visier, and Generall in the expedition against the Persian, at his returne from the warres to the citie of SENIT in Aprill 1618, vnto Sir *Paul Pinder* Knight, then Embassadour for the Kings Maiestie at CONSTANTINOPLE.

The humble Visier Halil Bassa.

C *To the courteous Lord of the nation of the* Messiah, *both great and honorable among the people of Iesus, & the true determiner of Christian affaires; our good friend* Paul Pinder, *the English embassador whose later daies be with all felicitie. To whose noble presence (after our many kind salutations tending to all good affection and manifestation of ioy, worthy and beseeming our friendship) our louing aduice is this, That if you desire to heare of our state and being, you shal vnderstand, that after we departed from the happie port with the armie for the wars of* ASIA, *we arriued and wintered in* MESOPOTAMIA, *and remouing thence in the Spring with all the Mussulman host (alwaies victorious) wee went to* VAN, *from which place vntill we came to* TAVRIS, *the Mussulman armie went on alwaies sacking and*
D *destroying all those places and townes of the Persians which wee met withall by the way in those parts, where were burnt, pillaged and ruined some thousands of villages, and tormenting all those people that came to hand. And when we were come neere to* TAVRIS, *the generall of the Persian forces (of peruerse religion) called* Carelghai Han *(the accursed) retired himselfe into the said* TAVRIS, *where beating vp his drummes in euery quarter, he made a shew that he had a will to fight, so wee sent a little before vs some Tartars and others of our armie to hearken out and take notice of the enemie, who meeting with 7 or 8 hundred Persians of note, put them to the sword, very few escaping, & that with very great difficultie and hazard. By which the said generall finding himselfe vnable to resist the power and fury of the Mussulman host, or to stay any longer in the said place, the very same day that we arriued there, the said generall hauing spoiled all the citie, fled away; so wee tooke the place, ransacked it, and*
E *burned all the buildings, towers, gardens, and whatsoeuer else we found within it: And thus the great citie* TAVRIS *by diuine fauour and grace became ours. Then forthwith we sent after the enemy, the Tartar with some Beglerbegs, who ouertaking them, gaue them battell; and albeit some of ours did fall, yet they which fell on the enemies side were innumerable. And so going forward towards* ERDEVIL *(their obscure residence) about ten daies iourney of country, we went burning and spoiling it, and killing all the Persians that we met; that indeed there was so much glory & honor wonne, as that all the antient men of the country doe affirme, there was neuer seene the like; insomuch, that from the confines vnto* ERDEVIL, *20 daies iourney of countrie was on that maner by vs destroied. Thus afterward the king caused to emptie the said place of* ERDEVIL, *and fled into a place called* HVLCHAL, *and caused his armie to go to the top of a high mountaine, from whence hauing sent 3 or 4 times men of qualitie vnto vs seeking and entreating for peace, with promise to giue yearely to our Emperor 100 Somes of silke, and all such places as are vpon the confines gotten in the time of Sultan* Solyman, *except* DER NE *and* DER
F TINK; *Wherewith we were contented with the peace, and his Embassadour is vpon the way comming toward vs. And so we returning the same way againe (alwaies spoiling) we came to* ERZIRVM. *And this our present Letter is written vnto you for the respect and preseruation of our friendship: and euen as our amitie hath euer bin hitherto sincere and firme, so likewise by the grace of God at our arriuall in the happie Port, it shall be in like manner maintained and continued, that more cannot possibly be. And so God keepe you in health.*

The wars growing hot in BOHEMIA against the Protestants, and the emperor raising what G
1619 forces he could to suppresse them, the directors or gouernors of the country wrote their letters to *Bethlem Gabor* prince of TRANSYLVANIA, to acquaint him with the estate of their affaires. To whom he made answere, That his countrie standing euen in the very iawes of the Turks, whose counsels were neuer quiet, but euer working like to the waues of the vast ocean, and alwaies watchfull to imbrace all occasions vpon any discord of the Christians, especially now when they had pacified all quarrels with the Persian, & had no rebels in ASIA, against whom they might imploy their forces; he had propounded to himselfe to attend the consent and fauor of the *Ottoman* Emperor, wherby he might take from him all occasion to make any irruption into the neigbor countries, and haue the better meanes to imploy his best means to H
reconcile the discords among the Christians; wherefore hauing sent vnto CONSTANTINOPLE to acquaint the Graund Seigniour with his intent, and to craue his fauour, he receiued letters from thence of the 17 of August, whereby hee was assured of the graund Seigniors consent and fauour: whereupon he resolued (notwithstanding the opposition of the house of AVSTRIA, the Pope of ROME, and others of that faction) to take armes in defence of the Bohemians, promising to be in September following vpon the confines of MORAVIA, vnlesse hee found some stay in HVNGARIE. Being aduertised of the state of BOHEMIA and MORAVIA, he leuied an armie at CLAVSENBVRG, and entred into the vpper HVNGARIE, whereas most of the Barons submitted themselues vnto him, onely *Humanoie* a great man in that countrey opposed himselfe: but not able to make his partie good, he fled into POLONIA. After which he sent his I
armie (being 18000 strong) and took FILEK, TERNAV, VACCI, NOVIGRADE and others; after which he seised vpon NEVHEVSAL, the gouernour being deliuered bound vnto him. The Palatine of HVNGARIE wrote letters to *Redei* generall of the prince of TRANSYLVANIAS armie, wishing him to consider what the forces of the kings of SPAINE and FRANCE were, with the house of AVSTRIA and their allies, and that the electors of the empire (some excepted) would send aid vnto the Emperor; who answered, that he doubted not of the power of those kings, and that the Electors would send supplies vnto the Emperour; yet he hoped that before they came, all should be ended, and their dinners should be prouided.

Bethlem Gabor takes many townes in Hungarie.

Soone after the prince of TRANSYLVANIA came to PRESBVRG with his armie, a town of note in HVNGARIE, whereas their kings are vsually crowned. The newes thereof comming to VIENNA, they sent 3000 soldiors with three pieces of ordnance down the riuer of Danow, who K
entred the suburbs on the 13 of October, the night was very stormie & rainie, and the Transyluanians taking this opportunitie charged them, and slew the greatest part, their commander flying away with some few. The suburbs being taken, *Bethlem Gabor* sent to the Palatine, to know whether he would yeeld the town and castle without force, giuing him some time to resolue; who after consultation with some noblemen, they resolued to yeeld, and so the town was deliuered into his hands. After which he sent part of his armie vnder good commanders into AVSTRIA, to the gates of VIENNA, where they committed great spoile, the particular relation whereof I leaue to the historie of the Emperors liues, to which it doth properly belong.

Propositions made by the Transyluanians and Hungarians to the Bohemians

In Nouember *Bethlem Gabor* prince of TRANSYLVANIA and the Estates of HVNGARIE sent L
Embassadors to PRAGE, where they propounded diuers articles vnto the Councell, & among others, that they should ioyntly send embassadors to the grand Seignior, and that the prince of TRANSYLVANIA should negotiat the businesse. And for that the kingdom of HVNGARIE was much exhausted, whatsoeuer should be taken in STIRIA, CARINTHIA, and CARNIOLA should bee vnited vnto it, to the end it might be the better able to resist the Turke, all which tended to the preiudice and ruine of the house of AVSTRIA. The prince of TRANSYLVANIA hauing taken diuers townes in HVNGARIE, belonging to the Emperour as king of HVNGARIE, and entred AVSTRIA in hostile manner in fauour of the Bohemians; knowing that he had thereby much incensed the Emperour, and the whole house of AVSTRIA, and that if he should preuaile ouer the Bohemians, the whole burthen of the warre would lie vpon him, he therfore in the end of M
this yeare sent an Embassador with presents to CONSTANTINOPLE, to craue assurance of the graund Seigniors ayd and support (vpon whose fauour he had alwaies depended) in case the Emperour should inuade TRANSYLVANIA, where being countenanced by many of the chiefe Bassaes, he had assurance of Sultan *Osmans* support and protection, the which he confirmed by a solemne oath vnder his hand, as followeth.

The

A

The Great Turkes Oath to *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of TRANSYLVANIA.

Sultan Osman,

By the grace of God vnconquerable Turkish Emperour, sweares by the Highest, Almightiest, and Almightie Gods holinesse, by his kingdome, by the substance of the heauens, the Sunne, the Moone and the Starres, by the earth, and by all vnder the earth, by the braines and all the hairie scalpe of my mother, by my head, and all the strength of my soule and bodie, by the holy great Mahomet, *and by*
B *my Circumcision, that I thee my brother and sonne* Bethlem Gabor, *succeeding king of* HVNGARIE, *in no manner of way, in thy great and waightie affaires will leaue, though it be to the ouerthrow of my kingdome, to bee brought to nothing, vntill there shall bee no more left but my selfe, or foure or fiue Turkes at the most, yet will I bee still obliged to defend thee, and all those that doe any wayes appertaine vnto thee. And if thou shalt haue need of mee, I will bee alwayes readie to goe with thee. And in case this my promise shall in any wise bee frustrated, then let Gods iustice fall vpon my head and destroy mee and my posteritie, and wipe away whatsoeuer belongeth vnto mee, and gather it together into a rocke of stone or substance of earth, and that the earth may cleaue asunder and swallow mee vp bodie and soule.*

C

Dated at CONSTANTINOPLE the fifth of Ianuarie 1619.

Bethlem Gabor being assured by this oath of protection made by the graund Seigniour, in the beginning of the yeare 1620, hee called an assembly of the Estates of HVNGARIE at PRESBVRG, whither Embassadors were sent from the king of BOHEMIA, and the States of that countrey, with the incorporated prouinces, where a perpetuall league was concluded betwixt them, and afterwards concluded at PRAGVE, where among other articles it was con-
D cluded, that for as much as necessitie did chiefly require, that a peace should bee concluded, and inuiolably kept with the Turke, therefore a new embasie should bee sent to the Graund Seignior from all the confederate kingdomes and prouinces, and that *Bethlem Gabor* should take vpon him the chiefe care of that businesse, but yet in such sort, as the Bohemians and incorporated prouinces should send their Embassadours with the Hungarians, and beare their shares of all that should bee disbursed, as well for the presents, as for the Embassadours charges.

1620

A league betwixt the prince of Transyluania Bohemians, and Hungarians.

In Iune following *Bethlem Gabor* went to an assembly of the Estates of HVNGARIE at NEVHEVSALL, where he propounded diuers heads vnto the States: That he desired nothing more than to restore the kingdome of HVNGARIE so miserably afflicted to libertie, and that they might enioy their Religion and priuiledges: That he had spared no cost for the lawfull defence of the countrey, and for a testimonie that he desired peace, he had refused the crown
E which the Estates offered him at PRESBVRG: That the ground of peace was to maintaine the league which they had begun with the Bohemians: That he had alwayes desired peace with the helpe of other princes, so as it were sincere and without fraud or deceit, for the obtaining whereof he had assisted his confederats miserably afflicted: That he knew for certaine the Emperour desired not peace but warre, hauing suffered the Cossackes to enter into HVNGARIE, and to spoile many places with fire and sword, and denied passage for the Embassadors of BOHEMIA and AVSTRIA, for this cause they were not now to treat of peace but of warre, and to consult how it might be begun and maintained: for the leuying of money which is the sinewes of warre: for the furnishing of their forts vpon the frontiers, and for the speedie sending of Embassadours to the Turkish Emperour, least being ingaged in
F an intestine warre, there might bee some attempts made vpon those bordring forts. Hauing deliuered his minde vnto the Estates, there came diuers Embassadors thither from BOHEMIA, AVSTRIA, SILESIA, and LVSATIA, VENICE, POLAND, and TVRKIE: The Venetian Embassadour was content their Commonwealth should enter into the league, and the Turke made offer to conclude a perpetuall league with them.

An assemblie of the Estates of Hungarie at Neuhensall.

Bethlem Gabor proclaimed king of Hungarie.

On the fiue and twentieth day of Auguſt *Bethlem Gabor* prince of TRANSYLVANIA was G proclaimed king of HVNGARIE by the Palatine, at the inſtance of the Turkiſh Embaſſadour, and with the conſent and applauſe of moſt part of the Eſtates of the countrey: after which hee leuied a great armie of thirtie (ſome ſay fiftie) thouſand horſe and foot, and made many enſignes with diuers Emblemes and deuices, which being knowne, the Proteſtants of VIENNA, with the conſent of the Emperour, wrote vnto him, humbly intreating him to ſpare the citie and countrey, for their innocent wiues and childrens ſakes: but in the meane time all the citizens were commaunded to make prouiſion of victualls for ſixe moneths.

A viſion ſeene at Medina Talnabi.

There came newes to CONSTANTINOPLE of a ſtrange apparition or viſion, which was H ſeene at MEDINA TALNABI in ARABIA, whereas *Mahomet* their great prophet was buried, to viſit whoſe tombe the Turks vſe to go in pilgrimage, but they muſt firſt go to MECHA, which is ſome few daies iourny off, and there they take a ticket from the grand Seigniors Beglerbeg, elſe they are not alowed to go to MEDINA. This viſion continued three weeks together, which terrified the whole country, for that no man could diſcouer the truth thereof. About the 20 of September, there fell ſo great a tempeſt, and ſo fearefull a thunder about midnight, as the heauens were darkened, and thoſe that were awake, almoſt diſtracted, but the vapours being diſperſed, and the element cleare, the people might read in Arabian characters theſe wordes in the firmament: *O why will you beleeue in lies?* Betweene two and three in the morning, there was ſeene a woman in white compaſſed about with the Sunne, hauing a cheerefull I countenance, and holding in her hand a booke: comming from the Northweſt, oppoſite againſt her were armies of Turks, Perſians, Arabians, and other Mahometans, ranged in order of battell, and ready to charge her, but ſhee kept her ſtanding, and onely opened the booke, at the ſight whereof theſe armies fled, and preſently all the lampes about *Mahomets* tombe went out; for as ſoone as euer the viſion vaniſhed (which was commonly an houre before ſunne riſing) a murmuring wind was heard, whereunto they imputed the extinguiſhing of the lampes. The auncient pilgrimes of *Mahomets* race, who after they haue viſited this place neuer vſe to cut their haire, were much amazed, for that they could not conceiue the meaning of this viſion: onely one of the Deruices (which is a ſtrict religious order amongſt the Turkes, like vnto the Capuchins among the Papiſtes, and liue in contem- K plation) ſtepped vp verie boldly, and made a ſpeech vnto the companie, which incenſed them much againſt him, ſo as this poore prieſt for his plaine dealing loſt his life, as you ſhall heare.

A Deruice ſpeech vnto the Turkes.

„ The ſumme of his ſpeech was this: That the world had neuer but three true religions, euery „ one of which had a prophet; firſt God choſe the Iewes, and did wonders for them in EGYPT, „ and brought them foorth by their Prophet *Moiſes*, who preſcribed them a law, wherein he „ would haue maintained them, if they had not bin obſtinat and rebellious, and fallen to idola- „ trie: whereupon he gaue them ouer, and ſcattered them vpon the face of the earth. Then pre- „ ſently after he raiſed a new Prophet, who taught the Chriſtian religion. This good man the „ Iewes condemned and crucified for a ſeducer of the people, not moued with the pietie of his L „ life, his great miracles, nor his doctrine. Yet after his death, the preaching of a few fiſhermen, „ did ſo moue the hearts of men, as the greateſt monarchs of the world bowed to his verie title, „ and yeelded to the command of his miniſters. But it ſeems they grew as corrupt as the Iewes, „ their Church being diſmembred with the diſtinction of the Eaſt and Weſt, committing ido- „ latrie againe by ſetting vp of Images, with many other idle ceremonies, beſides the corrupti- „ on of their liues, ſo as God was weary of them too, and not only ſent diuiſions among them, „ but forſook them, diſpoſſeſſing them of their chiefeſt cities HIERVSALEM and CONSTAN- „ TINOPLE, yet God is ſtill the gouernour of the world, and prouides himſelfe of another pro- „ phet and people, raiſing our great *Mahomet*, and giuing way to our nation, ſo as no doubt we „ ſhall be happie for euer, if wee can ſerue this God aright, and take example by the fall of o- M „ thers. But ahlas! I tremble to ſpeake it, wee haue erred in euerie point, and wilfully bro- „ ken our firſt inſtitutions, ſo as God hath manifeſted his wrath by euident ſignes and „ tokens, keeping our Prophet from vs, who prefixed a time to returne with all happi- „ neſſe to his people, ſo as there are now fourtie yeares paſt by our account: wherefore „ this ſtrange and fearefull viſion is a prediction of ſome great troubles and alterations.

For

A For either the opening of this booke in the womans hand, doth foretell our falling away » from the first intent of our law, whereat these armed men departed as confounded with the » guilt of their own consciences; or else it signifies some other booke in which we haue not yet » read, and against which no power shall preuaile, so as I feare our religion will be proued cor- » rupt, and our Prophet an Impostor, and then this *Christ* whom they talke of, shall shine like » the sunne, and set vp his name euerlastingly. Hitherto the companie was silent, but hearing him speake so boldly, they charged him with blasphemie; & knowing their law, which makes all blasphemie capitall, they presently condemned him, and hauing the Beglerbegs consent and warrant, they put him to death.

B As their rage against him was violent, so their execution was extraordinarie, for they neither cut of his head nor strangled him, as they vsually doe to malefactors, but they tortured him by degrees: for stripping him first naked, they gaue him a hundred blowes on the soles of his feet with a flat cudgell, vntill the blood issued forth, the poore priest crying continually on the woman that opened the booke. After which they tooke a bulls pizzell, and beat all his body vntill his sinewes crackt, & in the end they laid him vpon a wheele, and with an Indian sword made of sinews, they brake his bones to pieces, the poore man crying to the last gaspe, *O thou woman with the booke, saue me*, and so he died: At which time there was a fearefull tempest. The Beglerbeg sent certaine Spahis to the port of SIDON to imbarke for CONSTANTINOPLE, to the end they might aduertise the Emperour of these tidings. *The Dervice put to death for his speech.*

C Sultan *Osman* from the first entrance into his raigne was freed from all cares of forraine war, or intestine combustions, for he had that happinesse (being himselfe very yong, and not able to gouerne so potent an estate) as by the counsell and assistance of *Halil Bassa* his graund Visier, hee had forced the king of PERSIA to demaund a peace, and to pay the tribute which had bin formerly promised. His rebels in ASIA were all pacified, and the truce with the Emperour (which had been somewhat interrupted by misinterpretation, or the practise of bad ministers) was newly confirmed a little before his comming to the crowne, only MOLDAVIA had been the theator of warre for some yeares, where his father had exercised his armes, and imployed his forces, to aduaunce whom he pleased to be Vayuod of that countrey, against another partie that was supported by the Polonians, as you haue formerly heard. *Michna*

D prince of VALACHIA, being made Vayuod of MOLDAVIA by *Achmat*, and the Polonian partie wholly ouerthrowne in the yeare one thousand six hundred and sixteene, he enioyed it not long: but whether he died of a naturall death, or fell into disgrace with the graund Seignior, I doe not read: yet I finde that after him there was another Vayuod or prince of MOLDAVIA, who is yet liuing, but in disgrace with the Sultan, his name is *Gasparo Gratsiani:* and to the end you may vnderstand, that the Turkes neuer respects the birth and qualitie of any man in their aduauncements, I will relate what this man was, from the mouth of him that knew him verie well.

This *Gasparo* was borne at GRETZ, (a Towne of great strength belonging to the Archdukes of AVSTRIA, by the which a braunch of that house is distinguished from

E the rest, and whereof the Emperour now raigning is the head) but being a man of small fortune, and little expectance in his owne countrey, hee went to CONSTANTINOPLE, and put himselfe in seruice with Sir *Thomas Glouer*, before that hee was Embassadour for his Maiestie to the Graund Seignior, vnder whom he learned both to write and read the Turkish tongue. After which he came with him into ENGLAND, and there by his recommendation was imploied to CONSTANTINOPLE for the redeeming of yong sir *Thomas Sherley*, who was then a prisoner among the Turkes. Hauing performed his charge orderly, and being come to VENICE with the young knight, hearing that sir *Thomas Glouer* was sent Embassadour to the Graund Seignior, he left sir *Thomas Sherley*, and went to CONSTANTINOPLE to his old master, where he was imploied yearely to buy or exchange Christians for Turks, carying

F the Christians into ITALIE, and so returning Turkes for them. About the end of *Achmats* raigne arriuing at CONSTANTINOPLE with a ship full of Turkes, which he had exchanged, he acquainted the Bassa Visier with the good seruice he had done vnto the grand Seignior, who demanding of what country he was and his breeding, asked him if he would vndertake a seruice which should be for his aduancement, which was to go vnto the Emperour to reconcile

all difficulties concerning the peace, wherein he carried himselfe so discreetly, as Commissioners were appointed, who concluded all difficulties as you haue heard. But before his returne home, the Graund Seigniour was dead, yet hee pressed the Bassa for the performance of his promise, desiring him, that hee might bee made Vayuod of MOLDAVIA, which the Bassa effected: but the presents he gaue aduanced him more than his merits. Since he grew into some disgrace; so as the Graund Seigniour making choice of another Vayuod, gaue charge to certaine Capigis, to go into MOLDAVIA to strangle *Gasparo*, and that they should take foure hundred Turkes vpon the frontiers to assist them: But *Gasparo* hauing good spies at CONSTANTINOPLE, who aduertised him of their desligne, resolued to preuent them; wherefore taking some troupes with him, hee met them vpon the way, and cut them all in pieces; then returning to YAS, he slew one thousand Turkes. After which he fled into POLAND with two thousand horse, from whence they write that he hath made diuers incursions into MOLDAVIA, and committed great spoiles vpon the Turkes, being assisted by the Cossackes, and keepes possession of the countrie, although there be another Vayuod made by the Turke.

Gaspar made Vayuod of Moldauia.

He is in disgrace and flies into Polonia.

Sultan *Osman* seemes to be much incensed against the Polonians, as well for this support, as for former quarrells, making it his colour for the leuying of the greatest armie that hath beene seene since that *Solyman* went vnto the siege of AGRIA, consisting as it is said of three hundred thousand men, hauing drawne down all his forces out of ASIA. God knowes where he will imploy it, but it is much to be feared that he will make vse of this diuision betwixt Christian princes, who should vnite their willes and forces, to oppose them against the common enemie of Christendome, who watcheth only to get an aduantage, little regarding his word and promise.

The Turks preparation to armes.

The Turke hauing no imployment for his forces by land, sent three score gallies to sea, to make some enterprise vpon the Christians. They came into the Mediterranean sea, and hauing coasted the Island of SICILIE, they sent twentie gallies to land in the kingdome of NAPLES, where they surprised the town of MANFREDONIA, and spoiled it, carrying away foureteene or fifteene hundred captiues, and so retyred againe to sea. The rest of their fleet lay about VELLONA in the gulfe, which made the *Spaniards* iealous that the Venetian had beene acquainted with this enterprise. And since there is newes, that the Gallions and Galliots of ALGIERS, haue taken IVISA, a small Island of foure miles compasse, neere vnto MAIORCA: It is a place of great importance, for that it hath a hauen, able to containe much shipping; for the guard whereof the king of *SPAINE* entertaines a great garrison, and it did much annoy them of ALGIERS. They tooke the towne; but it is not yet certaine whether they haue taken the castle.

Manfredonia taken by the Turkes.

Iuisa taken by the Turkes.

This is all I could learne of the Turkes affaires since the yere 1609 vntill this present. The reader may obserue that since the raigne of *Ottoman* their first emperor, this great empire of the Turkes, is proudly built vpon the foure monarches of the world, that is to say, of the Assirian, Persian, Greeke, and Romane. For they enioy BABYLON, and all CHALDEA, with the countrie of the Medes: We haue seene them in TAVRIS the capitall citie of PERSIA, GREECE is subiect to the yoke of their command, CONSTANTINOPLE sometimes called New ROME by the transport of the Imperiall seat, is now made their throne, and so many prouinces and realmes which in former times depended vpon the Romane Empire, do now acknowledge their power; they are masters of the realms of EGYPT and CYPRES; the Islands of RHODES, METELINE, NEGREPONT, CIO, and many others acknowledge them, the empire of TREBISOND is theirs; the realme of COLCHOS now called MINGRELIA paies them tribute: they of TVNIS and ALGIER in AFFRICKE obey them; DALMATIA, the Illerians, Triballiens, the countries of TRANSYLVANIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA do them homage, and we see them commaund euen in the chiefe townes of the realmes of HVNGARIE: But all this power of the Ottomans had neuer beene so great nor so fearefull, but by the discord, diuision, and bad intelligence betwixt Christian princes, as you may reade in the course of this historie, as well in GREECE, at CONSTANTINOPLE, as in other parts of EVROPE, whereas these princes contending one with another, haue furnished matter and meanes to the Turke to dispossesse them of the chiefe pieces

The greatnesse of the Turkes Empire.

of

of their monarchies. They meaſure the continuance of their empire by the diſcord betwixt the princes of the beliefe of the name of Ieſus, and they confeſſe truely that this diuiſion is the onely cauſe of their greatneſſe, the which hath made them belieue, that among Chriſtians there was a bad Angell enemie to peace, which they call *the ſtrong or powerfull ſpirit*, which kindling the fire of reuenge and ambition in the hearts of great men, drawes from their affections the good of their beliefe, to entertaine them in perpetuall diſcord, during the which, they promiſe vnto themſelues a firme and an aſſured raigne. So the Mufti and the Taliſmans praying on Friday in their Moſques, demaund of their Prophet the circumſtance of this bad intelligence betwixt Chriſtian princes, to the end they may enioy the empire which they haue vniuſtly vſurped. Yet their Propheſies do not promiſe them a perpetuall poſſeſſion; behold one in their owne tongue, which hath alwaies made them feare the vnion of Chriſtians.

Patiſſahomomos ghelur, caiferun menleker alur keuzul almai alur kapze iler ie di yladegh Giaur Keleci cſikmaße on ikigladegh on laron Begbhgheder. Enſi iapar, baghi diker, bathesai baglar, ogli keſi olar, onichi ylddenſora Hriſtianon-keleci cſcchar, al Turkci ghereßine Tuſchure. *A Turkiſh Propheſie.*

That is to ſay

Our Emperour ſhall come, he ſhall poſſeſſe the realme of an Infidell prince, he ſhall take the red apple, and make it ſubiect to his power: If at the ſeuenth yere of his command the Chriſtians ſword doth not aduance, he ſhall rule vnto the twelfth yeare, he ſhall build houſes, plant vines, compaſſe in gardens with hedges, and beget children: But after the twelfth yeare that he hath held the red apple, the Chriſtians ſword ſhall appeare and put the Turke to flight.

By the *Infidell* prince they vnderſtand a Chriſtian prince (for ſo they call them) and by the *Red Apple* an Imperiall towne ſtrong and important, in the which, and elſewhere the Turkes ſhall *build houſes*, that is to ſay, conuert holie Temples to the vſe of the Mahometane impietie, for by this word *to build*, they that haue commented vpon this propheſie vnderſtand vſurpation of the houſes of God: *Plant vines*, by theſe words they ſignifie the extent of the Turkiſh Empire, and the ſetling of their collonies, as we ſee in HVNGARIA and TRANSYLVANA: *compaßing in Gardens*, that is to ſay, they ſhall fortifie the townes which they haue taken from their enemies: *Beget children*, extend the Mahometan religion, far in the Chriſtians countries. *But after the twelfth yeare &c.* within a certaine time beſt knowne to God, his diuine maieſtie, opening the eyes of his clemencie vpon the Chriſtians, will vnite the willes of their princes, kindle their affections with a holie zeale, and bleſſing their armes, will make them victorious ouer the Turke, whom *he will baniſh out of the Eaſt, and chaſe into* SCITHIA from whence they came to bee a ſcourge vnto Chriſtendome. *Theſe* are my wiſhes, wherein I hope all good Chriſtians do concurre. *The expoſition of their propheſie.*

Hauing runne ouer the occurrents which haue happened in the Turkes eſtate for the ſpace of eleuen yeares, I muſt according to Maſter *Knolles* his method, conclude the worke with a deſcription of the Graund Seigniours Port or Court, of his Gouernment, Officers, Riches, Force, and Religion. The Turks (a people of SCITHIA) hauing like a violent deluge ouerthrowne a great part of the Eaſt, and taken diuers prouinces, being expelled from HIERVSALEM by *Godfrey* of BOVILLON, and the Chriſtians, their remainder retired to NICEA where they liued without any head or ſoueraigne commaunder, vntill that *Ottoman*, about the yeare of our Redeemer 1300, by practiſe, made himſelfe ſole and abſolute monarch. His ſonne conquering diuers prouinces, remoued his imperiall ſeat to PRVSIA, now called BVRSIA, the chiefe aboad of the kings of BITHINIA. *Amurath* the firſt (being drawne in by the Emperour of CONSTANTINOPLE to ſuccour him, and allured with the wealth of EVROPE) turned his armes againſt him, taking diuers prouinces and townes from him, amongſt others ADRIANOPOLIS, which he made the ſeat and reſidence of the Turkiſh Emperours, in the *The beginning of the Turkiſh Empire.*

yeare 1363. But *Mahomet* the second hauing taken the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, and expelled the Emperour in the yeare 1453, he made it the royall seat of the *Ottomans*, for which he had great reason, being one of the faireſt and ſweeteſt ſeats of the world. G

Deſcription of Conſtantinople.

CONSTANTINOPLE hath in circuit by the opinion of ſome writers fifteene or ſixteene miles, and is called by the Turkes themſelues STAMBVLL or STAMBOLDA, the ſea beating vpon it vpon the North and South ſides: towards the Eaſt it is diuided from ASIA by a large channell, which runneth from the one ſea to the other, and is about ſeuen miles in length. The citie is built vpon the declining of a hill, in which there are many rare ſingularities which I omit being deſcribed elſewhere. There are in this citie ſeuen little hills, vpon the which are built ſeuen principall Moſques or Churches, by ſeuerall Emperours, whereof the faireſt and moſt ſtately is that of Sultan *Solyman*. Vpon the North ſide of the citie ſtandeth the Graund Seigniours Pallace or Seraglio, commonly called by the name of the Port, the which hath on the one ſide thereof the ſea, and of the other ſide of it the hauen; the other two being towards the citie, being about three miles in compaſſe, ſome write of foure. It is walled about, and within it are many gardens, orchards, medowes, and woods. Being entred into the firſt Port (which hath double gates of yron) into a large court, on the left hand there ſtands a building like vnto a Turkiſh Moſquee, which now the Graund Seigniour vſeth for a ſtore-houſe, wherein are great ſtore of armes which are for the defence of his Seraglio. And on the other ſide of this Court are ſeuerall gardens walled in, from which they paſſe to another court with a gate like vnto the former, where are targuers and cemitars hanging, and many porters attending, as at the former. After this they paſſe into another large court, which is planted with cypreſſe trees, and full of graſſe, where deere feed; but round about it is a cloiſter which is in length about ſix hundred and foure ſcore foot, and aboue fiue hundred in bredth, paued with ſtone, and couered with lead, it being ſupported with one hundred and fortie pillars of white and gray marble, ſtanding vpon baſſes of copper, with capitals of the ſame, vpon the North ſide whereof ſtands the Diuano, whereas the Viſier Baſſa and the other Baſſaes ſit in counſell, and heare cauſes of importance, whereof we will ſpeake hereafter. H I

Attendants vpon the Grand Seigniour.

In this Seraglio the Grand Seigniour hath many chambers which are richly appointed, wherein he remaines, and there he hath ſix young men which attend his perſon and the ſeruice of his chamber, whereof two waite daily, and at night they watch when he ſleepes, the one of them at his head, and the other at his feet, with two torches burning in their hands. In the morning (as *Sanzouino* writes) when the Graund Seigniour attiers himſelfe, they put into one of his pockets a thouſand aſpers, and into the other pocket twentie duckats of gold, the which if hee giue not away that day, is their fee at night, neither (as they ſay) doth hee euer put on the ſame clothes: and whenſoeuer he goes to hunting, or to any other exerciſe, (beſides the money which hee hath with him) his Caſnadar Baſſa or chiefe Treaſuror ſtill followes him with great ſtore of money to giue away. The office of theſe ſix young men (who are changed as it pleaſeth the Graund Seigniour) is diſtinct, for the one carries his ſhooes, the ſecond his bow and arrows, the third his veſt, the fourth a veſſell with water, the fift carries a ſeat, and the ſixt called *Oda Baſſa* is head of the chamber. K L

The chiefe officers of his houſe.

He hath dayly a great number of perſons reſident in his pallace, imployed in their ſeuerall charges, ſome in one place, ſome in another, vnder their ſeuerall commaunders: But among all the great men in his court theſe are of chiefeſt eminencie and note.

Firſt the *Capi Aga*, that is to ſay, the mouth of the grand ſeigniour, by whom the Sultan ſpeaketh to ſuch as haue any great ſuit vnto him; for no embaſſadour it admitted vnto him, but at his firſt arriuall when he deliuers his letters of credit and his preſents, and when he hath any buſines to treat of he repaires to the Viſier Baſſa or his Aga.

The ſecond is *Caſnadar Baſſa*, the chiefe Treaſurour of the houſhold, or ſuperintendent of the Treaſurors. M

The third *Chilergi Baſſa*, chiefe cupbearer.

The fourth is *Seraglio Agaſi*, ſteward or maſter of the houſhold.

The fift is *Chiller Agaſi*, or *Saraidar Baſſa*, Ouerſeer of his Seraglio of concubines, who is alwaies an Eunuch as the reſt be.

The

A The ſixt and laſt is *Boſtangi Baſſa*, chiefe Gardiner, and ouerſeer of all his gardens, Captaine of his Iamoglans, and ſtearer of of his Barge whenſoeuer he goeth by water. He hath a Protogero or Lieutenant, and many Gardiners vnder him, which are called Boſtangi, who when they come out of the Seraglio, become Ianizaries, Solacchi, or Capigi, according to their qualities.

Theſe ſixe Officers of the Sultans houſe aboue mentioned haue no authoritie out of his pallace, yet the greateſt Baſſaes ſtand in awe of them, and feare them, for that they haue free acceſſe vnto the Sultan, and haue dayly opportunitie to incenſe him againſt them: for by their ſecret ſuggeſtion and falſe informations, manie of the greateſt Baſ-
B ſaes are manie times ſuddenly and vndeſeruedly cut off in the height of all their pompe and glorie.

Hee hath many Mutes or dumbe men attending about him, whereof eight bee his daily companions and play-fellowes in the *Seraglio*, in whoſe companie hee takes great delight: beſides manie others to the number of fourtie, which attend vpon him as pages. They are all borne deafe and dumbe, yet by long practiſe they growe ſo perfect, as they will vnderſtand any thing that ſhall bee acted vnto them by ſignes and geſtures; and will themſelues by the geſture of their eyes, bodies, handes and feet, deliuer matters of great difficultie, to the great admiration of ſtrangers. *The Sultans dumbe men.*

The Graund Seigniour hath within his pallace a Seraglio of young men to the num-
C ber of fiue hundred, from eight yeares of age to twentie: theſe are the well-fauouredſt and beſt proportioned of all the tribute children which hee draweth from GRECIA and NATOLIA, and they are choſen out of his *Seraglioes* at PERA, ADRIANOPOLIS, and other places, and brought to this to bee bred vp, where they are inſtructed in diuers Arts according to their diſpoſition, but eſpecially to read and write, and in the doctrine of their Lawe, and to ride, there being a great number of horſes kept within this Seraglio for their exerciſe, and for the Eunuches. They neuer goe out of the Seraglio till the Sultan thinks them to be of fit age to vndergoe ſome charge, and then he makes them *Spacoglani*, or *Silichtari*, and to ſome he giues greater places, according to their valour, or the fauour they haue gotten with him. *A Seraglio of young men.*

D Hee hath in like manner about foureſcore Mutaferache, that is to ſay, Launce-bearers to the Graund Seigniour: which carrie his Launce whenſoeuer hee goeth to field, and acknowledge no other Commaunder, and in time by his fauour or their merites, are made Captaines. *They that carry his Launce.*

Hee hath alwayes aboue one thouſand Eunuches entertained in ſeuerall places, where-
E of ſome of them are in verie great credit with him, and can preuaile much: they are called Hadurni, many of them are imployed to attend his Concubines and Virgines in his *Seraglio*. They are not onely depriued of their genitors, but in their youth they haue their whole priuities ſmoothed off by their bellies, and in their turbants they beare ſhort quills of ſiluer, through which they make water. *This inhumane cuſtome was firſt inuented by Sultan Solyman*, who ſeeing a Gelding make offer to couer a Mare, grewe ſuſpitious that they were able to doe ſome ſmall thing, notwithſtanding the loſſe of their genitors. *The Sultans Eunuches.*

The Graund *Seigniour* hath a *Seraglio* for his women without his pallace, in the
F which there are alwayes foure or fiue hundred young virgines, the faireſt of the Chriſtians children, which he gathereth vp out of GRECIA for tribute. The *Sultan* repaires ſometime thither to make choice of ſuch as he ſhall like beſt for his pleaſure, whereof they are aduertiſed the day before by the Eunuches, that they may prepare themſelues in their beſt habits to giue him content. Being all in a roome, and ſtanding vpon either ſide, the *Sultan* enters attended by an Eunuch or two, and viewes them; to her that hee likes, hee caſtes a handkercher, (whereof hee hath many hanging at his girdle) and in this manner it may bee hee makes choice of halfe a dozen, the which his Eunuches obſeruing, they put them preſently into a coach, and are carried into another little *Seraglio* within his pallace. In this ſeraglio they haue good entertainment, and are apparelled in ſilke twice a yeare, and are tauhgt to make diuers workes by auncient matrons, and are attended on by the younger ſort. *The Sultans Seraglio of women.*

They

They haue many Eunuches with their Aga or Captaine, and they haue 100 Capigis and Ianizaries, which keepe their gates. When as the number of these virgine slaues decreaseth, and they haue not wherewithall to supplie them with their tributarie children, they send to the market in CONSTANTINOPLE, where they say there are daily tenne thousand slaues of all ages and sexes to be sold: and there they buy the faireſt they can get, but they will not haue them aboue eight yeares old, lest they should be corrupted before they come into the Turkes Seraglio. G

The estate of his concubines.

As for the other Seraglio within the Sultans palace, there remaines the Sultanaes with their children, and such other Concubines as he hath made choice of for his delight. Hee neuer marries, but when any one is brought vnto him, hee giues her an attire for her head of gold, and ten thousand aspers, causing her to liue in a chamber apart, increasing her daily maintenance. The first that beares him a child, is called Sultana, and is mistresse of all the rest, and most fauoured by him, as the chiefest of all his women, the rest as they are fauoured by the prince, are brought vnto him to haue his pleasure, and then returned backe againe: if they chance to be with child, they are put in the number of the Sultanaes, and are much respected by him. Such as the prince hath had the vse of, but no children by them, are giuen in marriage to his slaues, who are aduaunced to dignities, and made Gouernours of Countreyes. H

His guard, footmen, & porters.

He hath three hundred Sollacchi, which march continually about his person, and make as it were his guard, being vnder the commaund of the Aga of Ianizaries; they are richly attired, hauing lawne garments hanging downe beneath their knees, and ouer it a quilted waistcoate with halfe sleeues of taffatie, damaske, or satten, and on their heads caps and feathers like vnto the Captaine of the Ianazaries, and they attend on him with bowes and arrowes. Hee hath also still about him when he rides abroad fortie Peichi, that is to say, footmen or postes which runne wonderfull swiftly, and are still at hand to attend his commandements, where he shall please to imploy them: they weare long coates of cloth of gold with a broad girdle of the same, and cappes like vnto womens thimbles, with a horne of siluer and guilt standing vp before. There are about foure thousand Capigis or Porters which continually attend his pallace and seraglioes, they are attired like vnto the Ianizaries, and haue ouer them three Capigi Bassaes. These men are many times imployed to execute the Graund Seigniours commaundements, when hee will haue any great mans head, or his throat cut, as wee haue seene of late yeares in *Gambolat Bassa*, and in *Nassuf Bassa*, who was graund Visier to *Achmat*. I K

The Turkes gouernment.

The Graund Seigniors gouerment is so absolute, as they all tearme themselues his slaues, and no man how great soeuer can assure himselfe of his estate, no not of his life, but by the great Turkes speciall fauour. Hee commits the mannaging of his estate to such as haue abiured the Christian Religion, and haue beene brought by way of tithing in their infancies from GREECE and NATOLIA, and afterwards for their merits are aduaunced to great dignities, as Bassaes, Beglerbegs, and such other. The prince hath a Court or Councell which they call Diuano, and this is held within the Seraglio foure dayes in the weeke, that is to say, Saterday, Sunday, Munday and Tuesday, where they treat of matters of state, and afterwards of the affaires of priuate men. To this Councell are admitted the graund Visier, eight or nine Bassaes who are also called Visiers, and are continually resident at CONSTANTINOPLE, (for there are many more which are imployed abroad in the conduct of armies or gouernment of countries) the Beglerbegs and others. At the rising of the court or councell, the Grand Visier informes the Sultan of all the proceedings in particular, wherin he dares not dissemble, for that the prince hath a window ioining to the Diuano, where he may heare and see any thing and not be seene. He seldome impugnes what they haue resolsolued, vnlesse it be to moderate some rigorous sentence, or to giue answere to some embassador, and what he himselfe concludes is irreuokable. L M

The Turks iustice.

Their suits are verie short, for they haue no aduocates to breed delaies, as they haue in Christendome; yet commonly he that bribes most speeds best, for the Turkes are the most couetous and corrupt nation in the world, neither will they doe any man a kindnesse without a fee; and yet they are not sure to enioy any thing they get no longer than it shall please

the

A the prince. They punish crimes with great seueritie, and speedily, the fact being prooued, which doth so terrifie them as by the report of such as haue conuersed long there, you shall seldome see a murther or a theft committed by any Turke; and if any foule fact be committed, it is most commonly done by Grecians.

The chiefe of the Graund Seigniors Councell, is the graund Visier, who weares the princes signet, and is as it were the Lieutenant generall of the whole monarchie: he hath authoritie ouer the other Bassaes, and they are bound to yeeld him an account of their imployments. Hee is still about the prince his person, and is not sent abroad for any imploiment vnlesse it bee for an important warre, as they haue done of late yeares against the Persian. *The Graund Visier.*

B When the Visier is sent abroad, he makes choice of one of the Bassaes to be his Lieutenant, and to execute his authoritie, and hee is called Chimacham. *Mechmet Bassa* is at this present chiefe Visier.

Next vnto the Bassa (which is as much to say as great Lord) follow the Beglerbegs, and haue their places in court next vnto them. They are men of great authoritie, and haue the commaund of great kingdomes and armies, vnder whose obedience are diuers Sanzackes, which are sent as gouernours into prouinces during the princes pleasure. These are men of great experience, and haue commaund ouer the Spahi, and Timariots, the Turkes chiefe forces on horseback, whom they call continually to exercise their armes. There is one Beglerbeg of GREECE, which hath all the countries in EVROPE in the Turkes dominions vnder *The Beglerbegs and Sanzacks.*

C his charge, and this is the first of all the Beglerbegs, who hath vnder him aboue thirtie Sanzackes. There are six other Beglerbegs in ASIA, whereof the first is he of NATOLIA or ASIA the lesse. Hee hath the gouernment of PONTVS, BITHINIA, and other kingdomes, and hath vnder him twelue Sanzackes. The Beglerbeg of CARAMANIA with seuen Sanzackes. The Beglerbeg of ALADVLEY, vnder whose commaund are seuen Sanzackes. The Beglerbeg of AMAZIA and TOCCATO, hauing foure Sanzackes. There is also one in MESOPOTAMIA, and vnder his commaund twelue Sanzackes or Gouernours of prouinces. There is likewise a Beglerbeg of DAMAS, SVRIA, and IVDEA, who hath vnder him twelue Sanzacks. And there is one of CAIRE, who commaunds ouer sixteene Sanzackes, his charge extends to the Arabians, but they are not so obedient as the Turkes other countries.

D As for the Turkes forces, they consist of horsemen, footmen, and fleets at sea. His horse- *The great Turkes forces.*
men consist of Spahi, Timari, Spachoglani, Silictari and Olofagi, who haue assignations of lands for the intertainement of them and their horses. For no man can enioy any possessions, but he is enioyned to intertaine a certaine number of souldiors proportionable to the reuenues of the land: so as the Gouernour or Bassa is alwayes bound to haue this number ready to march when they are called. Of these Timariots they are able to raise about 150000 *The Timariots.*
horse alwaies readie at the first call, for the which the prince disburseth not a penie, for in regard of the land which is allotted them, they are bound to maintaine themselues, their horse and armes in the warre. Whereseuer the Turke conquereth any countrey, hee diuides it among his souldiors, assigning 4000 aspers yearely (which is little aboue ten pound sterling)

E to euery one for himselfe and his horse, and so proportionably if he haue more land. These horsemen are much pestered with armes when they go to war: for they haue a iacke, a speare with a little white banner, a caliuer hanging vnder his left arme, a cemitar, a bow and arrowes at his girdle, and a battle axe at his saddle bow. And of these kind of horsmen they say there are 80000 in GREECE, besides an infinite number in his other countries. This Turkish Cauallerie worke two great effects, for they serue as a support to his estate, to suppresse all seditions, and they are readie to vndertake any enterprise. Besides these he entertaines many horsmen about his person, whereof some are Spahi, and these are Christian slaues bred vp young *The Spahi.*
in the princes seraglio, who by their merits attaine to that degree, and afterwards to greater dignities. They are alwaies attending about the princes person whereseuer hee goes, being

F commonly thirteene hundred.

The *Caripices* are held for the flower of all his horsemen, being in number about 800, who *The Caripices & Spachoglani*
march still about the princes person during the warres. The *Spachoglani* which is as much to say as yong men on horsebacke, are aboue three thousand, who haue yearely pensions in money, which they are bound to receiue yearely at CONSTANTINOPLE, or else they are held as dead men. In the warres they march on the right hand of the graund Seigniour, and are

knowne from the Spahis by the banners of their launces, which haue two points and of diuers colours, the others being pointed and all white, but they are armed alike. They are men at armes of a good fashion, and are commonly aduanced by the Sultan to higher places. They haue a Captaine or Aga of great esteeme, with a Lieutenant, and euerie twentie haue a Boluch Bassa. G

The Salichtari. The *Salichtari* are also horsemen, and lodge vpon the left hand of the prince being in number about 3000: Their breeding is like to the Spahi, and there is no difference betwixt them but in their march, the one hauing the right hand, and the other the left, which is the more honourable among the Turkes.

The Olofagi. There is yet another sort of horsemen, which they call *Olofagi*, being about 2000 in number, and they march on the right and left hand of the prince. These seuerall troupes are as it were a nurserie for all the chiefe officers of that empire, out of which they doe commonly chuse their great commanders. Besides they haue their mercinarie souldiors called *Alcanzÿs*, which come to serue the Turke from TARTARIA, VALACHIA, and MOLDAVIA. H

The Ianizaries and their breeding. As for his foot forces they consist chiefely in Ianizaries, into which number they haue not vsed to inroll many of ASIA, whom they haue held faint hearted, but those of EVROPE, who haue alwaies had the reputation to be valiant. Their manner to entertaine this discipline, is, to send euerie three yeares into all the prouinces of EVROPE, from whence they bring ten or twelue thousand Christian children as a tribute, making choice of such as haue any shew of magnanimitie, agilitie, or courage, which are parts fit for a souldiour. These children being brought to CONSTANTINOPLE and visited, some of them are sent into NATOLIA, CARAMANIA, and other prouinces to dig and weed the ground, where they forget their parents, countrie, and faith, and learne the language, and vices of them with whom they conuerse, and so become Mahometans. They continue in those places 3 or 4 yeares, without any charge to the prince, being entertained by them for whom they labour; after which time they are called home, and put into the Sultans Seraglios at PERA, ADRIANOPOLIS, and other places. But they that haue the best faces and are most actiue, are reserued for the princes seruice. I

The Aiamoglani. These children being brought into the princes Seraglios, are of two sorts; the one are called *Aiamoglani*, that is to say, simple boy: they are instructed by seueere masters in diuers manuall and painefull exercises, as shoomakers, gardeners, and such like base trades. Their feeding and apparrell is verie meane, and for the most part they lie in great and spacious roomes, like vnto religious men, hauing a light continually burning, and guards about them. These haue libertie to go abroad, who after the age of twentie yeares, are dismissed, whereof some are sent into the Sultans gardens, which are many and great; others are imploied as car-men to carrie wood, hay, water and other prouision for the pallace, and some are sent to the kitchins and stables; yet when places fall they are preferred to be Ianizaries, and haue competent pensions to maintaine them during their liues. The least hath fiue aspers a day, and none aboue eight, and the Spahis ten. They are attired in long blew gownes girt with a broad girdle, and on their heade they haue long yellow caps without brims, and sharpe like vnto sugar loaues: And of these *Aiamoglanes* there are alwaies aboue twentie thousand which serue to supplie his armies. K L

The Ich-Oglani. The other sort of youthes, which are bred vp in the Turkes seraglios or nurseries, are called *Ich-Oglani*, that is to say, chamber pages being the choice of all the Christians children for proportion and fauonr, and these are better bred vp than the *Aiamogloni*, and come to better preferment, of whom we haue formerly made mention; for the meanest places these young men attaine vnto at the first is to be Spahies, or to attend vpon the grand seigniour as his chamberlaines and pages. And many of them hauing extraordinarie parts are suddenly aduanced to places of great dignitie. Of these the prince hath euer 5000, who vntill they come vnto the age of twentie yeares are neuer suffered to go out of their seraglio, nor to see any person but such as instruct them and attend vpon them.

The Ianizaries. The Ianizaries (who are the grand seigniors chiefe strength on foot) are raised out of Christians children, bred vp in these nurseries as we haue said, where they are taught to shoot with their bowes and arrowes, to vse the harquebuse, and all other weapons fit for seruice; and are at length inrolled among the Ianizaries, and are held the most valiant and resolute souldiors among all the Turkes. There are commonly resident in CONSTANTINOPLE and thereabouts M

A abouts 24000 of theſe Ianizaries when as the grand ſeigniour is there, (for in his whole eſtate he hath a far greater number) vnder their Aga or Captaine generall, which is a place of great credit, but not like vnto any of their Baſſaes; the great Turke fearing to ioine power and authoritie together. Being once Ianizaries, they are either ſent to the wars, or put in garriſon, or elſe they remaine at the Sultans court (which they call Port) where they haue certaine ſpacious places for their dwelling, like to religious houſes, where they liue vnder their commaunders: And the younger ſerue the ancient with great reſpect. All the Ianizaries of one ſquadron eat together at one table, and ſleepe in certaine long halls, and if any one chance to be abſent all night, he ſhal (the next night) be beaten with a cudgell, which he takes ſo patiently,
B as he kiſſeth his hand that hath thus corrected him. They are much reſpected and feared of all men, and are diuerſly imployed in the citie; as to ſee the peace and good orders kept, to looke to the prices of things, to arreſt malefactors, and to guard the gates. If they buy any thing they will haue it at their owne rate; they cannot be iudged but by their Aga or Captaine. There is ſeldome any one puniſhed with death by the courſe of iuſtice, without danger of a mutinie; and therefore they execute them very ſecretly. They haue many means to get money; for ſome attend vpon embaſſadors and keep their houſes, others go with trauellers, to guard them ſafely through the Turks Eſtate. They haue a great power in their princes election, ſo as to winne their loues euerie new emperor at his firſt comming to the crowne giues them a donatiue, and increaſeth their pay, preſuming vpon their valour and multitude.
C They many times commit ſtrange inſolencies vpon any diſcontents; as in firing of houſes, brauing the Baſſaes, and ſometimes bearding the Sultan himſelfe, as you may read in this Hiſtorie.

The chiefe ſtrength of the Turkes forces conſiſts in theſe Ianizaries; and yet there are other ſorts of footmen, whereof ſome are called *Acouizes*, which is a forelorne hope, and receiue no pay, but march before the armie, and haue leaue to ſpoile; ſo as they giue the fift part of their bootie to the prince. There is another kind called *Azapi*: theſe are ſouldiors of ſmall effect, and ſerue rather with the pickaxe and ſpade than with the ſword: they are fitter to tire an enemie with their numbers, than to vanquiſh them with their vallor; and they are accuſtomed to fill vp ditches with their dead bodies to make a paſſage for the Ianizaries
D to aſcend vnto a breach. The grand ſeignior hath euer 6000 Gunners in pay whom they call *Topegi*. And for the guard of the powder and ſhot when the armie marcheth, there are alwaies 12000 men in pay, whom they call *Iebegi*.

Acouizes.

Azapi.

Topegi and Iebegi.

The grand ſeignior hath alſo certaine officers attending on him to the number of 3000, whom they call *Chiaus*, which are as it were ſergeants at armes. Theſe are men well eſteemed, and are often imployed in embaſſies to forreine princes: They alſo carrie letters and commendations from the prince or his chiefe Viſier, and they apprehend offendors. Theſe neuer go to the war but when as the Sultan is there in perſon. They are commanded by a Chiaus Baſſa, who is of ſo great credit with all men (as *Sanſouino* writes) that when he is ſent by the grand ſeignior to any Baſſa, Sanzack, or Cadi, with order to haue any mans head cut off,
E he is obeyed, although he haue no warrant in writing, as if the prince were there himſelfe, and commanded it.

The Chiaus.

Thus we haue ſet downe the grand ſeigniors forces at land, whoſe numbers are ſo great, as in ſhew they ſhould breed confuſion and ruine themſelues; but they keepe verie good order and diſcipline, ſo as in that point they yeeld not to any. They liue of a little bread baked in the aſhes, with rice and the powder of fleſh dried in the ſunne: They may drinke no wine, and there are no women ſeene in their armies: they obſerue a wonderfull ſilence, and all the ſouldiors are gouerned by the becke of the hand, or any ſhew of the countenance. Quarrels and thefts are ſeuerely puniſhed. When they march they dare not enter into any corne fields nor vines. The valiant are aſſured of preferments, and cowards of puniſhment.

The Turkes diſcipline in their armies.

F Hauing ſpoken ſufficiently of their land forces, let vs ſee what ſtrength he hath at ſea: they haue great ſtore of foreſts for the building of ſhips; neither want they good ſhipwrights, for that couetouſneſſe hath drawen many Chriſtian carpenters into the grand ſeigniors arſenal: And he hath great numbers of men trained vp in marine affaires, in regard of the gallies which he hath at MITILENE, RHODES, CYPRES, and ALEXANDRIA, and for the retreate hee giues pyrats at TVNIS, BONA, BVGIA, and ALGIERS, from whence he drawes commaunders and

and his best mariners, as hath been seene by experience in the enterprises of MALTA, GVLETTE, and elsewhere. G

The Turkes reuenues.

To maintaine these great forces, it is requisite he should haue the sinews of war; yet his ordinarie reuenews (considering his large dominions) are not so great, as in reason they should be: for some are of opinion, that he hath not aboue eight millions of gold for his ordinarie reuenew; for which they giue diuers reasons: first, that the Turks haue no care but of armes, the which do rather ruine than inrich a countrie: secondly, they consume so many men in their enterprises, as they scarce leaue sufficient to manure their land, so as the subiects (despairing to enioy their wealth and necessarie commodities, which they might get by their labour and industrie) imploy not themselues to worke nor trafficke, no more than necessitie shall H constraine them: for to what purpose is it say they to sow that another man must reape? or to reape that which another will consume? And for this reason you shall see in the Turkes estate whole countries lie wast, & many times great dearth which growes by the want of men to manure their land; for that the countrie men for the most part either die in the voyages which they make, or in carrying victuals, and other necessarie things for their armies; for of 10000 which they draw from their houses to row in their gallies, scarce the fourth part returns to their houses, by reason of the great toyles they indure. Another reason why the Sultans reuenues be no greater, is, for that when he conquers any countrie, he assignes the lands to his Timarri, who are bound to maintaine so many men and so many horses according to the proportion of land which he giues them, reseruing no rent. I

But although his ordinarie reuenues be no greater than we haue spoken, yet hee drawes great profit by his extraordinaries, especially by confiscations and presents; for being all his slaues, no man enioyeth any thing longer than it pleaseth him: yea the Bassaes and greatest officers of that crowne, which oppresse his subiects, and gather together inestimable wealth, in the end for the most part, it comes into the Turks Casna or Treasurie. It is not strange there to send for any subiects head, vpon any suggestion whatsoeuer, which no man dare contradict: after which execution, his slaues and goods are sold in the market at CONSTANTINOPLE, and the mony applyed to the princes coffers. His presents also amount to great summes, for no embassador may come before him without a present, neither may any man expect any office or dignitie without mony: no gouernor being returned from his prouince, dares present himselfe to the Sultan emptie handed, neither are their presents of small price. The Sultans exchequer is gouerned by two Treasurers called *Defterdari*, who are more rightly gouernors of the reuenues, for that they keepe an account of the princes Casna or treasure, the one hath charge of the reuenues which are raised in NATOLIA, and the other in EVROPE. Also they draw great profits from their tributarie prouinces, especially, from VALACHIA, MOLDAVIA, and TRANSYLVANIA, where the princes maintaine themselues by presents and gifts; so as they change daily, for that they that offer most are aduanced, whereby they are forced to ruine the countrie to performe what they haue promised. K

The lawes whereby the Turks are gouerned.

But hauing spoken of the Turks forces and reuenues, whereby they maintain their armies to inuade their neighbors, we must now speake something of their laws whereby the subiects L are gouerned, which are institutions and answers of wise men, the which they hold as an interpretation of their Alcaron, which is the ground of their law. These institutions are contained in 12 volumes, treating of all things belonging to ciuile conuersation. Some prouinces of TVRKIE are gouerned by customes, and enioie their priuiledges, and their wise Iudges supplie many things which are not written. The Sultan makes choice of the wisest and worthiest person that can be found, of a sincere life according to their law, and he is called Mufti, that is, Interpreter of their Alcaron; he is (as it were) their high priest attending only matters of religion & faith: he is head of the church among the Turks, and decideth all questions of their law. He is of such eminencie as all the Bassaes are subiect to his direction: he abaseth not himselfe so much as to sit in the Diuano, only passeth through it when he is sent for by the M Sultan, who (so soone as he seeth him) riseth from his seat as it were, to honour him, and then they both sit downe face to face and so confer together.

The Mufti.

The Cadileſquiri.

They make triall of the sufficientest of their Iudges, before they chuse any, for which there are two *Cadileſquiri Taliſmani*, that is, Doctors of the law, and Examiners at CONSTANTINOPLE, or whereſoeuer the prince remaines; These examine the Iudges or Cadis of diuers prouin-

A prouinces: The one hath his charge ouer EVROPE, and is called *Cadileſquirie Romly*, before whom (after good information of his life, and ſufficiencie) he ſweares that he will do iuſtice to all men, and yeeld an account of his charge when he ſhalbe called. The other *Cadileſquirie* is for NATOLIA: They are ſoueraigne Iudges in all cauſes, and as it were Patriarks. They are of great authorie, and haue place in the Diuano with the Baſſaes to conſult of weightie matters.

There is a third degree of their church men, belonging to their law, called *Mulli*, which are biſhops & chiefe gouernors vnder the Mufti; and their office is to place and diſplace churchmen at their diſcretion. Next are the *Nuderiſi*, who are ſuffragans to the biſhops, and their charge is to ſee the Cadies do their duties. Next come the *Cadis* who are Iudges to puniſh
B offendors, of which there is one in euery citie vnder the Seigniors commaund. *The Mulli, Muderiſi, and Cadi.*

Vnder theſe are another kind of young doctors of the law called *Naipi*, who are not ſo well read as to be abſolute Iudges, but yet ſupplie their places in their abſence. *The Naipi.*

After theſe are the *Hogi*, who write their bookes, for that they allow no printing: and inferior vnto them are the *Calfi*, who read vnto them that write. And the youngeſt of all are called *Soſti*, who are young ſtudents or nouices in their law. *The Hogi, Calfi, and Soſti.*

Theſe are their ſeuerall degrees of lawyers or churchmen: for the Turks are gouerned by a kind of Eccleſiaſticall law, according to their Alcaron. They haue colledges (called Medreſſæ) at CONSTANTINOPLE, & in other places, where they liue and ſtudie their law and diuinitie, and ſo they aſcend by degrees to the higheſt dignitie of their profeſſion.

C As for their religion, it began in the time of the emperor *Heraclius*, when as the empire was much diſmembred by the heriſies of *Arius* and *Neſtorius*: *Mahomet* borne in ARABIA imbraced this opportunitie, ſeeking to ouerthrow the diuinitie of *Ieſus Chriſt*, which was oppoſed by the Iewes and Arabians: He was aſſiſted by two hereticks, the one was *Iohn* a Neſtorian, and the other *Sergius* an Arian. After which (being aſſiſted by many ſlaues, to whom he allowed all that was pleaſing to the ſence and fleſh if they ſhould receiue this law) he obtained many victories. By *Mahomets* law they make a diſtinction of cleane & vnclean meats to content the Iews, and alſo it maintaines circumciſion, but not at the eight day of their birth, as the Iewes vſe it, but after the eight yeare, when the infant is able to make confeſſion of his faith, where lifting vp his finger he ſpeakes theſe words, which are grauen in their temples in the *The Turkes religion.*
D Arabian tongue: *There is but one God whoſe prophet* Mahomet *is, one God and equall prophets.* The circumciſion being ended, they feaſt three daies together, and then they carrie the circumciſed to a bath with great pompe; after which the gueſts conduct him to his houſe, and preſent him with gifts. The women are not circumciſed, but onely ſpeake the words. If any Chriſtian abiure his faith & indure circumciſion (as they often do by reaſon of their tributes and vexations) they are led through the towne with great honor and reioicing of the people, who do alſo giue vnto them, and they pay no tributes. *Mahomets* law denies the diuinitie of *Ieſus Chriſt*, to pleaſe the Arians who were then powerfull: It is full of fables to pleaſe Idolaters, and it giues libertie to the fleſh, *which is pleaſing* to moſt men.

They confeſſe one God, and honor *Ieſus Chriſt*, not as the ſonne of God, but as a prophet
E borne of the virgin *Marie*. They neither honour nor allow images. Friday is their Sabbath as Sunday is ours. They obſerue a Lent of 30 daies, which they call Ramadan, during which they eat nothing in the day time, but when night comes all meats are indifferent, but ſwines fleſh; yet they abſtaine from wine and women. They haue their Eaſter, called Bayran, which continues three daies, in which they enioy all pleaſures: But this feaſt is not alwaies prefixed, for that they account not the day according to the courſe of the Sunne, but of the Moone; and therefore they do carefullv obſerue the new Moone, and ſalute it.

They haue no bels in their Moſques, neither do they ſuffer the Chriſtians which liue there to haue any. They put off their ſhooes when they go into their Moſques, & take them againe at their comming forth. Whereſoeuer they ſit in their churches or houſes, they haue tapeſtrie
F couerlets or mats vnder them: they are not much giuen to contemplation or learning, yet the Turkiſh women being married and hauing iſſue, are carefull to breed vp their children, and to be inſtructed; for the which there are many ſchooles, where they read their laws, to the end they may ſerue in their Moſques, and be able to gouerne the common weale.

The Turks by *Mahomets* law haue leaue to marrie as many wiues as they can maintaine; and a Turkiſh woman being once with child, her husband neuer toucheth her vntill ſhe be

deliue-

deliuered, but lies with his slaues out of the house where his wife remaines. They haue a certaine kind of marriage made at pleasure, which they call Kebin, the which is many times practised by strangers, who being out of their countrie contract with women, whom they are to enioy during their pleasure, and when they cast them off, they giue them a certaine summe of money, and keepe the children. The Cadis or Iudges allow not this kind of contract, especially among Christians, vnlesse it be with an oath of marriage. A Turke hauing had the vse of a Christian woman, they are both condemned to die, vnlesse she will abiure her faith: the like is obserued betwixt a Christian and a Turkish woman, if they haue bin found together. Diuorce is allowed among them in case of barrennesse and incontinencie. G

There are foure orders of religious men among the Turks which differ in their liuing, habite, and ceremonies. These bee the *Terlaques*, *Deruis*, *Kalenders*, and *Huquiemales*, and these last are very vicious, and wicked impostors, deceiuing of the common people. The Deruis is a strict order liuing in contemplation, much like vnto the Capuchins among the Romish Papists. The Turks forbeare to blaspeme either God, Christ, or Mahomet, or any other Saint whatsoeuer, and they punish blasphemie seuerely. They conuerse with Christians, and eat and trafficke with them freely; yea sometimes they marie their daughters, and suffer them to liue after their owne religion. But they hate the Iews, and despise them as the basest people n the world. They haue an assured confidence, that he that shall duely obserue the lawes of *Mahomet*, shall haue eternall life, and a Paradise full of delights: And contrariwise they that shall breake the lawes of their Alcaron are threatned with hell and eternall death; yet they haue an opinion that he that beleeues in the Alcaron when he dies, shall bee vndoubtedly saued. H I

The disposition of the Turkes.

To conclude this relation with some few lines of their humours and dispositions; they write of them that they are grosse witted, idle, and vnfit for labour. They are exceeding couetous and corrupt, aboue all other nations, for iustice is sold to him that offers most. They are humble among themselues, and obey their superiors with great silence. They are proud and insupportable to strangers, thinking none fit to be compared with them. They are giuen to gluttonie and drunkennesse, and will spend whole daies together in feasting, and will drinke wine with excesse if it be in priuat, for that it is forbidden by their law. They are vaineglorious, proud, and deceitfull, neuer keeping their words but when it may be to their profit. They are much inclined to venerie, and are for the most part all Sodomites. They are very superstitious, giuing credit to dreames and diuinations; and they hold that euery mans destinie is written in his forehead, which cannot be altered or auoided. K

Thus I haue continued this historie for eleuen yeares, hauing informed my selfe out of the best authors and intelligencers I could find that concerne this subiect: I should haue beene glad that some which haue resided at CONSTANTINOPLE most part of this time, would haue assisted me with their obseruations which should haue been for the generall good of our nation; but I hope notwithstanding the reader shall find content and satisfaction.

A briefe diſcourſe of the greatneſſe of the Turkiſh Empire: as alſo wherein the greateſt ſtrength thereof conſiſteth, and of what power the bordering Princes, as well Mahometans as Chriſtians, are in compariſon of it.

By RICHARD KNOLLES.

THe Hiſtorie of the Turkes (being indeed nothing elſe but the true record of the wofull ruines of the greater part of the Chriſtian commonweale) thus as before paſſed through, and at length brought to an end; and their empire (of all others now vpon earth farre the greateſt) as a proud champion ſtill ſtanding vp as it were in defiance of the whole world: I thought it good for the concluſion of this my labour, to propoſe vnto the view of the zealous Chriſtian, the greatneſſe thereof; and ſo neere as I could to ſet down the bounds and limits within the which it is (by the goodnes of God) as yet contained, together with the ſtrength and power thereof, as alſo in what regard it hath the neighbor princes bordering or confining vpon it, with ſome other particularities tending vnto the ſame purpoſe. All or moſt part whereof, although it be by the conſiderat well to be gathered out of the whole courſe of the Hiſtorie before going, yet ſhall it more plainly here together in the full thereof appeare, than by the long and particular conſideration of the riſing and encreaſe thereof be perceiued: not much vnlike the ouergrowne tree, at the greatneſſe whereof euery man wondereth, no man in the mean time either perceiuing or marking how by little and little in tract of time it grew vp to that bigneſſe, as now to ouertop all the reſt of the wood. The imperiall ſeat of this ſo great and dreadfull an empire, is the moſt famous citie of CONSTANTINOPLE, ſometime the glorie of the Greeke empire, but now the place where *Achmat* the firſt of that name, and foureteenth of the *Othoman* emperours, acknowledging no man like vnto himſelfe, triumpheth ouer many nations: a city fatally founded to commaund, and by the great conqueror *Tamerlan* of all others thought to be the beſt ſeated for the empire of the world. In which citie (taken from the Chriſtians by *Mahomet* the ſecond, by the Turkes ſurnamed the Great, and the Greeke empire by him ſubuerted) as the *Othoman* emperours haue euer ſince ſeated themſelues, ſo haue they wonderfully euen to the aſtoniſhment of the world, out of the ruines of that ſo glorious a State encreaſed both their ſtrength and empire, almoſt altogether fixed euen in the ſelfeſame kingdomes, countries, and regions, as was ſometimes that; though not as yet (God be thanked) able to attaine to the vttermoſt bounds that that empire ſometimes had, eſpecially in EVROPE; albeit that it haue oftentimes in pride thereof moſt mightily ſwolne, and in ſome few places thereof ſomewhat alſo exceeded the ſame. Amongſt the reſt of the *Othoman* emperours, this great Monarch of whom we ſpeak (namely *Achmat* the firſt, which now raigneth in that moſt ſtately and imperiall citie) hath at this preſent vnder his commaund and empire, the chiefe and moſt fruitfull parts of the three firſt knowne parts of the world: only AMERICA remaining free from him, not more happie with the rich mines thereof, than in that it is ſo farre from out of his reach. For in EVROPE hee hath all the ſea coaſt from the confines of EPIDAVRVS (the vttermoſt bound of his empire in EVROPE Weſtward) vnto the mouth of the riuer TANAIS, now called DON, with whatſoeuer lyeth betwixt BVDA in HVNGARIE, and the imperiall citie of CONSTANTINOPLE: in which ſpace is comprehended the better part of HVNGARIE, all BOSNA, SERVIA, BVLGARIA, with a great part of DALMATIA, EPIRVS, MACEDONIA, GRECIA, PELOPONESVS, THRACIA, the ARCHIPELAGO, with the rich iſlands contained therein. In AFRICA he

Conſtantinople the ſeat of the Turkes empire.

The bounds of the Turkes empire in Europe, Africa, & Aſia.

he poſſeſſeth all the ſea coaſt from VELEZ (or as ſome call it BELIS) DE GOMERA, or more truely to ſay, from the riuer MVLVIA (the bounder of the kingdome of FEZ) euen vnto the Arabian gulfe or red ſea Eaſtward, except ſome few places vpon the riuage of the ſea, holden by the king of SPAINE, *viz.* MERSALCABIR, MELILLA, ORAN, and PENNON: and from ALEXANDRIA Northward vnto the citie of ASNA, called of old SIENE, Southward: in which ſpace are contained the famous kingdomes of TREMIZEN, ALGIERS, TVNES, and EGYPT, with diuers other great cities and prouinces. In ASIA all is his from the ſtraits of HELLESPONTVS Weſtward, vnto the great citie of TAVRIS Eaſtward: & from DERBENT neere vnto the Caſpian ſea Northward, vnto ADENA vpon the gulfe of ARABIA Southward. The greatnes of this his empire may the better be conceiued by the greatneſſe of ſome parts thereof: the meere of MEOTIS, which is all at the Turkiſh emperours command, being in compaſſe a thouſand miles; and the Euxine or Blacke ſea in circuit two thouſand and ſeuen hundred; and the Mediterranean coaſt which is ſubiect vnto him, containing in compaſſe about eight thouſand miles. But to ſpeake of his whole territorie together, he goeth in his owne dominion from TAVRIS to BVDA, about three thouſand two hundred miles. The like diſtance is from DERBENT vnto ADENA. From BALSERA vpon the Perſian gulfe vnto TREMISENA in BARBARIE, are accounted little leſſe than 4000 miles. He hath alſo in the ſea, the moſt noble iſlands of CYPRVS, EVBŒA, RHODVS, SAMOS, CHIOS, LESBOS, and others of the ARCHIPELAGO. In this ſo large and ſpacious an empire are contained many great and large countries, ſometime moſt famous kingdomes, abounding with all maner of worldly bleſſings and natures ſtore: For what kingdome or countrie is more fruitfull than EGYPT, SYRIA, and a great part of ASIA? What countrie more wealthie or more plentifull of all good things than was ſometime HVNGARIE, GRECIA, and THRACIA? In which countries he hath alſo many rich and famous cities, but eſpecially foure, which bee of greateſt wealth and trade: namely CONSTANTINOPLE, CAIRE, ALEPPO, and TAVRIS. CONSTANTINOPLE for multitude of people exceedeth all the cities of EVROPE; wherein are deemed to be aboue ſeuen hundred thouſand men: which if it be ſo, is almoſt equall to two ſuch cities as PARIS in FRANCE. ALEPPO is the greateſt citie of SYRIA, and as it were the centre whereunto all the merchandiſe of ASIA repaire. TAVRIS of late the royall ſeat of the Perſian kings, and one of the greateſt cities of that kingdome, from whom it was in this our age taken by *Amurath* the third, hath in it aboue two hundred thouſand men. CAIRE amongſt all the citie cities of AFRICA is the chiefe, leauing all others far behind it (although that ſome make the citie CANO equall vnto it in greatneſſe) being as it were the ſtorehouſe not of EGYPT only, and of a great part of AFRICA, but of INDEA alſo; the riches whereof being brought by the red ſea to SVES, and from thence vpon cammels to CAIRE, and ſo downe the riuer Nilus to ALEXANDRIA, are thence diſperſed into all theſe Weſterne parts: albeit that this rich trade hath of late time been much impaired, and ſo like more to be, the Chriſtians (eſpecially the Portugals) trafficking into the Eaſt Indies, and by the vaſt Ocean tranſporting the rich commodities of thoſe Eaſterne countries into the Weſt, to the great hinderance of the grand ſeignior his cuſtomes in CAIRE.

The greatneſſe of the Turkes empire.

The foure chiefe cities for trade in the Turkes empire.

The *Othoman* gouernment in this his ſo great an empire, is altogether like the gouernment of the maſter ouer his ſlaue, and indeed meere tyranicall: for the great Sultan is ſo abſolute a lord of all things within the compaſſe of his empire, that all his ſubiects & people, be they neuer ſo great, do call themſelues his ſlaues, & not his ſubiects: neither hath any man power ouer himſelfe, much leſſe is he lord of the houſe wherein he dwelleth, or of the land which he tilleth, except ſome few families in CONSTANTINOPLE, vnto whom ſome few ſuch things were by way of reward and vpon ſpeciall fauour giuen by *Mahomet* the ſecond, at ſuch time as he woon the ſame. Neither is any man in that empire ſo great or yet ſo far in fauor with the great Sultan, as that he can aſſure himſelfe of his life, much leſſe of his preſent fortune or ſtate longer than it pleaſeth the Sultan. In which ſo abſolut a ſoueraignty (by any free borne people not to be endured) the tyrant preſerueth himſelfe by two moſt eſpecial meanes: firſt, by taking of all armes from his naturall ſubiects; and then by putting the ſame & all things elſe concerning the ſtate and the gouernment therof into the hands of the Apoſtata or renegate Chriſtians, whō for moſt part euery third, fourth, or fift yere (or oftner if his need ſo require) he

The Othoman gouernment meere tyranical.

The meanes whereby the Turkiſh emperours preſerue themſelues in ſo abſolute a ſoueraignte.

A he taketh in their childhood from their miſerable parents, as his tenths or tribute children. Whereby he gaineth two great commodities: firſt, for that in ſo doing he ſpoyleth the prouinces he moſt feareth, of the flower, ſinewes, and ſtrength of the people, choice being ſtill made of the ſtrongeſt youthes, and fitteſt for warre: then, for that with theſe as with his own creatures he armeth himſelfe, and by them aſſureth his ſtate: for they in their childhood taken from their parents laps, and deliuered in charge to one or other appointed to that purpoſe, quickly & before they be aware become Mahometans; and ſo no more acknowledging father or mother, depend wholly of the great Sultan, who to make vſe of them, both feeds them and foſters them, at whoſe hands only they looke for all things, and whom alone they
B thanke for all. Of which frie ſo taken from their Chriſtian parents (the onely ſeminarie of his warres) ſome become horſemen, ſome footmen, and ſo in time the greateſt commaunders of his ſtate and empire next vnto himſelfe, the naturall Turkes in the meane time giuing themſelues wholly vnto the trade of merchandiſe and other their mechanicall occupations: or elſe to the feeding of cattell, their moſt auncient and naturall vocation, nut intermedling at all with matters of gouernment or ſtate. So that if vnto theſe his ſouldiors, all of the Chriſtian race, you ioine alſo his fleet and money, you haue as it were the whole ſtrength of his empire: for in theſe foure, his horſemen, footmen, his fleet, and money, eſpecially conſiſteth his great force and power: whereof to ſpeake more particularly, & firſt concerning his money, it is commonly thought, that his ordinarie reuenew exceedeth not eight millions of
C gold. And albeit that it might ſeeme, that he might of ſo large an empire receiue a far greater reuenew, yet doth he not, for that both he and his men of warre (in whoſe power all things are) haue their greateſt and almoſt only care vpon armes, fitter by nature to waſt and deſtroy countries, than to preſerue and enrich them: inſomuch, that for the preſeruation of their armies, and furtherance of their expeditions (euerie yeare to doe) they moſt grieuouſly ſpoile euen their owne people and prouinces whereby they paſſe, ſcarce leauing them neceſſaries wherewith to liue; ſo that the ſubiects deſpairing to enioy the fruits of the earth, much leſſe the riches which by their induſtrie and labour they might get vnto themſelues, doe now no further endeauor themſelues either to husbandrie or trafficke than they needs muſt, yea than verie neceſſitie it ſelfe enforceth them: For to what end auaileth it to ſow that another man
D muſt reape? or to reap that which another man is readie to deuour? Whereupon it commeth that in the territories of the *Othoman* empire, yea euen in the moſt fruitfull countries of MACEDONIA and GRECE are ſeene great foreſts, all euery where waſt, few cities well peopled, and the greateſt part of thoſe countries lying deſolate and deſart: ſo that husbandrie (in all well ordered commonweales the princes greateſt ſtore) decaying, the earth neither yeelderh her encreaſe vnto the painefull husbandman, neither he matter vnto the artificer, neither the artificer wares to furniſh the merchant with, all together with the plough running into ruine and decay. As for the trade of merchandiſe, it is almoſt all in the hands of the Iewes, or the Chriſtians of EVROPE, *viz.* the Raguſians, Venetians, *Genowaies*, *French*, or *Engliſh*; the naturall Turks hauing therein the leaſt to doe, holding in that their ſo large an empire no other
E famous cities for trade, more than the foure aboue named, *viz.* CONSTANTINOPLE, TAVRIS, ALEPPO, and CAIRE: whereunto may be added CAFFA and THESSALONICA in EVROPE, DAMASCVS, TRIPOLIS, and ADEN, in ASIA: ALEXANDRIA and ALGIERS in AFRICKE. In our countries here in this Weſt part of EVROPE, of the aboundance of people oftentimes ariſeth dearth; but in many parts of the Turks dominions, for want of men to manure the ground: moſt part of the poore countrie people drawne from their owne dwellings, being enforced with victuals and other neceſſaries to follow their great armies in their long expeditions, of whom ſcarcely one of ten euer return home to their dwellings againe, there by the way periſhing, if not by the enemies ſword, yet by the wants, the intemperatnes of the aire, or immoderat pains taking. But to come neerer vnto our purpoſe, although the great Turks ordinary
F reuenews be no greater than is aforeſaid, yet are his extraordinary eſcheats to be greatly accounted of, eſpecially his confiſcations, forfeitures, fines, amerciaments (which are right many) his tributes, cuſtomes, tithes & tenths of all preyes taken by ſea or land, with diuers other ſuch like, far exceeding his ſtanding and certain reuenew: his Baſſaes and other his great officers, like rauening Harpies as it were ſucking out the bloud of his poore ſubiects, and heaping

Foure things wherein the greateſt ſtrength of the Othoman empire conſiſteth

The Turks ordinary reuenews, and why they are no greater;

The Turks caſualties more than his ordinarie reuenewes.

vp ineſtimable treaſures, which for the moſt part fall againe into the grand Seignior his coffers. *Ibrahim* the Viſier Baſſa (who liued not long ſince) is ſuppoſed to haue brought with him from CAIRE to the value of ſix millions: & *Mahomet* another of the Viſiers was thought to haue had a far greater ſumme. His preſents alſo amount vnto a great matter: for no embaſſador can come before him without gifts, no man is to hope for any commodious office or preferment without mony, no man may with emptie hands come to the preſence of him ſo great a prince, either from the prouince he had the charge of, or from any great expedition he was ſent vpon; neither vnto ſo great and mightie a prince are trifles preſented. The Vaynods of MOLDAVIA, VALACHIA, and TRANSYLVANIA (before their late reuolt) by gifts preſerued themſelues in their principalities, being almoſt dayly changed, eſpecially in VALACHIA and MOLDAVIA: for thoſe honours were by the graund ſeigniour ſtill giuen to them that would giue moſt; who to performe what they had offered, miſerably oppreſſed the people, and brought their prouinces into great pouertie. In briefe, an eaſie thing it is for the great tyrant to find occaſion for him at his pleaſure to take away any mans life, together with his wealth, be it neuer ſo great: ſo that he cannot well be ſaid to lacke money, ſo long as any of his ſubiects hath it. Neuertheleſſe, the late Perſian war ſo emptied the moſt couetous Sultan *Amurath* his coffers, and exhauſted his treaſures; that all ouer his empire the value of his gold was beyond all credit enhanced, inſomuch, that a Chiquine was twice ſo much worth as before: beſide that, the mettall whereof his gold and ſiluer was made, was ſo embaſed, that it gaue occaſion vnto the Ianizaries to ſet fire vpon the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE; to the great terrour not of the vulgar ſort only, but of the grand Seignior himſelfe alſo. And in the citie of ALEPPO only were in the name of the great Sultan 60000 Chequines taken vp in preſt of the merchants there, which how well they were repaied, we leaue for them to report.

The Turks Timariots of greater value than his reuenewes.

Now albeit that the Turks reuenewes be not ſo great as the largenes of his empire and the fruitfulneſſe of his countries might ſeeme to affoord, all the ſoile being his owne; yet hath he in his dominion a commoditie of greater value and vſe than are the reuenewes themſelues; which is the multitude of the Timariots, or penſioners, which are all horſemen, ſo called of *Timaro*, that is a ſtipend which they haue of the great Sultan, *viz.* the poſſeſſion of certain villages and towns, which they hold during their life, and for which they ſtand bound for euery threeſcore duckats they haue of yearely reuenew to maintaine one horſman, either with bow and arrowes, or els with targuet and launce; and that as well in time of peace as warre: for the *Othoman* emperours take vnto themſelues all ſuch lands as they by the ſword win from their enemies, as well Mahometanes as Chriſtians, all which they diuide into Timars, or as we may call them Commendams, which they giue vnto their ſouldiours of good deſert for terme of life, vpon condition, that they ſhall (as is aforeſaid) according to the proportion thereof keepe certaine men and horſes fit for ſeruice alwaies readie whenſoeuer they ſhall be called vpon. Wherein conſiſteth the greateſt policie of the Turkes, and the ſureſt meane for the preſeruation of their empire. For if by this meanes the care of manuring the ground were not committed vnto the ſouldiors, for the profit they hope thereof, but left in the hand of the plaine painfull husbandman, all would in that ſo warlike an empire lie waſt and deſolat; the Turks themſelues commonly ſaying, That whereſoeuer the grand ſeigniour his horſe ſetteth his foot, the graſſe will there no more grow: meaning, the deſtruction that their great armies bring in all places where they come. The inſtitution of theſe Timariots, and the taking vp of the Azamoglans (for ſo they call thoſe children which are taken vp from their Chriſtian parents to be brought vp for Ianizaries) are the two chiefe pillars of the Turks empire, and the ſtrength of their wars: both which ſeeme to be deuiſed vnto the imitation of the Romanes, as are diuers things moe in the Turkiſh gouernment; for the Romane emperors vſed their owne ſubiects in their wars, and of them conſiſted the Prætorian armie, which neuer departed from the emperours ſide, but were ſtill to guard his perſon, as do the Ianizaries the great Turke. And in the Romane empire lands were giuen vnto ſoldiors of good deſert for them to take the profit of during their liues, in reward of their good ſeruice and valour, which were called *Beneficia*, and they which had them, *Beneficiarij*, or as we tearme them, Benefices, and Beneficed men. *Alexander Seuerus* graunted vnto ſuch ſouldiours heires that they might enioy thoſe lands and commendams, vpon condition alſo, that they themſelues ſhould

The two chiefe pillars of the Othoman empire.

ſerue

A ſerue as had their fathers, otherwiſe not. *Conſtantine* alſo the Great gaue vnto his captaines that had well deſerued of him, certaine lands for them to liue vpon during the terme of their life. The like fees in FRANCE, which the called *Feuda*, were of temporaries made perpetuities by theſe their late kings. Theſe Timariot horſemen in the Turkiſh empire, ſerue to two great and moſt notable purpoſes: whereof the firſt is, that by them the Grand Seignior, as with a bridle, keepeth the reſt of his ſubiects in euery part of his great empire in awe, ſo that they cannot ſo ſoone moue, but that they ſhall haue theſe his Timariots as faulcons in their necks; for to that purpoſe they are diſperſed all ouer his dominions and empire: The other vſe of them (and no leſſe profitable than the former) is, for that out of them he is alwaies able

B at his pleaſure to draw into the field an hundred and fiftie thouſand horſmen well furniſhed, readie to go whither ſoeuer he ſhall command them; with all whom he is not at one farthing charge. Which ſo great a power of horſmen cannot be continually maintained for leſſe than 14 millions of duckats yearely. Wherefore it is to be maruelled, that ſome comparing the Turks reuenewes with the Chriſtians, make no mention of this ſo great a part of the *Othoman* emperors wealth and ſtrength, ſeruing him firſt for the ſuppreſſing of all ſuch tumults as might ariſe in his empire, and then as a moſt principal ſtrength of his continual wars, alwaies readie to ſerue him in his greateſt expeditions. The number of theſe Timariot horſemen is now growne verie great, taking increaſe together with the Turks empire. It is reported, that *Amurath* the third, grandfather to *Achmat* that now raigneth, in his late warres againſt the

C Perſian, ſubdued vnto himſelfe ſo much territorie, as ſerued him to erect therein fortie thouſand Timariots: and appointed at TAVRIS a new receit, which was yerely worth vnto him a million of gold. Theſe Timariots are in all accounted to be ſeuen hundred & nineteen thouſand fighting men: of whom 257000 haue their aboad and dwelling in EVROPE; & 462000 in ASIA and AFRICKE. Beſide theſe Timariots, the grand ſeignior had a great number of other horſmen alſo, vnto whom he giueth pay, which are his Spahi, Vlufagi, and Carapici of his Court, being indeed the nurſeries and ſeminaries of the great officers and gouernours of his empire: for from among them are ordinarily choſen the Sanzackes, which afterwards through their good deſerts, or the Sultans great fauour, become Viſiers, Beglerbegs, and Baſſaes, the chiefe rulers of that ſo mightie a monarchie. He hath alſo ſtill in his armies a great

D multitude of other horſemen called Acanzij, being indeed but rurall clownes, yet for certain priuiledges which they haue are bound to go vnto the wars, being euen of the Turks themſelues accounted of ſmall worth or value in compariſon of the Timariots. Hee receiueth great aid alſo from the Tartars in his wars, as alſo from the Valachians and Moldauians (vntill that now of late by the example of the Tranſylua ians, they haue, to the great benefit of the reſt of the Chriſtian commonweale, reuolted from him:) all which are to be accounted as the Romanes Auxiliarij, that is to ſay, ſuch as come to aid and aſſiſt him. And thus much for his horeſemen.

The great vſe of the Timariot horſmen in the Turkiſh empire.

The number of the Timariots.

The Spahi, Vlufagi, & Carapici, ſeminaries of the great offices in the Turks Empire.

The Acanzij.

Another great part of his ſtrength conſiſteth in his footmen, and eſpecially in his Ianizaries: in whom two things are to be conſidered, their Nation, and Dexteritie in armes. Con-

E cerning their Nation, ſuch of the Azamoglans as are borne in ASIA, are not ordinarily enrolled in the number of the Ianizaries, but ſuch as are borne in EVROPE: for they of ASIA are accounted more effeminate, as they haue been alwaies, more readie to flie than to fight: whereas the people of EVROPE haue euen in the Eaſt been accounted for better and more valiant ſouldiours, hauing there, to their immortall glorie, ſet vp the notable trophies of their moſt glorious victories. The ſouldiors of ASIA be called Turkes, after the name of their nation, and not of their countrie (no countrie being indeed ſo properly called) and they of EVROPE Rumi, that is to ſay, Romani, or Romans, as the countrie, eſpecially about CONSTANTINOPLE, is called by the name of RVM-ILI, that is, the Romane countrie, as it was in auncient time, of the notable Roman Colonies therein, knowne by the name of ROMANIA. Now as concer-

F ning their dexteritie, ſuch male children are culled out from the Chriſtians, as in whom appeareth the greateſt ſignes of ſtrength, actiuitie, and courage: for theſe three qualities are in a ſouldior eſpecially required. This choice is made euery third yeare, except neceſſitie enforce it to be made ſooner, as it happened in the late Perſian warre: wherin not only oftner choice was made, but they were glad to vſe the Azamoglans alſo, a thing neuer before by them done. For thoſe youthes, the children of Chriſtian parents, being by them that haue taken them vp

The Ianizaries the ſecond ſtrength of the Turks Empire.

What maner of children are taken vp to make Ianizaries of.

The Azamoglans are ſuch vntrained youths as are taken vp to become Ianizaries but yet are not of their order.

vp brought to CONSTANTINOPLE, are taken view of by the Aga of the Ianizaries, who cauſeth to be regiſtred the name of the youth, with the name of his father and countrie wherein he was borne: which done, part of them are ſent into the leſſer ASIA (now called NATOLIA) and other prouinces, where learning the Turkiſh language & law, they are alſo infected with the vices and manners of them with whom they liue, and ſo in ſhort time become right Mahometanes. Another part of them, and thoſe of the moſt towardlieſt, is diuided into cloiſters which the grand ſeignior hath at CONSTANTINOPLE and PERA, of whom the faireſt and moſt handſome are appointed for the Seraglio of the great Sultan himſelfe. All the time that theſe youths thus ſent abroad, liue in the leſſer ASIA, or other the Turkes prouinces, they are not appointed to any certaine exerciſes, but ſtill kept buſied ſome at husbandrie, ſome in gardening, ſome in building, ſome in other domeſticall ſeruices, neuer ſuffered to be idle, but alwaies occupied in painefull labour; where after certaine yeares they haue been thus enured to labour and paines taking, they are called thence into the cloiſters of the Azamoglans (for ſo they are called all the time vntill they be inrolled into the number of the Ianizaries) & are there deliuered vnto certaine ſpeciall gouernours appointed to take charge of them: who keepe them ſtill exerciſed in painefull worke and labour, entreating them euill ynough, as well in their diet, as in their apparell and lodging: they ſleepe together in large roomes, like vnto the religious Dormitories, wherein are lampes ſtill burning, and tutors attending, without whoſe leaue they may not ſtirre out of their places. There they learne to ſhoot both in the Bow and Piece, the vſe of the Scimitar, with many feats of actiuitie: and being well trained in thoſe exerciſes, are enrolled amongſt the Ianizaries or Spahi: of whom the Ianizaries receiue not leſſe than fiue aſpers, nor more than eight for their daily pay; and the Spahi ten. Being recorded among the Ianizaries, they are either ſent away into the warres, or into ſome garriſon, or elſe attend at the Court. Theſe laſt haue for their dwelling three great places like vnto three monaſteries in the citie of CONSTANTINOPLE: there they liue vnder their gouernours, to whom they are deputed, the younger with great obedience and ſilence ſeruing the elder in buying of things for them, in dreſſing of their meat, and ſuch like ſeruices. They that be of one ſeat or calling, liue together at one table, and ſleepe in long walkes. If any of them vpon occaſion chance to lie all night abroad without leaue, the next euening he is notably beaten, with ſuch nurture and diſcipline, that after his beating he like an Ape kiſſeth his Gouernours hands that ſo corrected him. Theſe Ianizaries haue many large priuiledges, are honoured, although they be moſt inſolent, and are feared of all men, yea euen of the great Sultan himſelfe, who is ſtill glad to make faire weather with them. In their expeditions or trauell they rob the poore Chriſtians cottages and houſes, who muſt not ſay one word to the contrarie. When they buy any thing, they giue for it but what they liſt themſelues. They can be iudged by none but by their Aga: neither can they be executed without danger of an inſurrection, and therfore ſuch execution is ſeldome done, and that very ſecretly. They haue a thouſand roialties: ſome of them are appointed to the keeping of embaſſadors ſent from forrein princes: otherſome of them are aſſigned to accompanie ſtrangers, trauellers, eſpecially them that be men of the better ſort, to the intent they may ſafely paſſe in the Turkes dominions; for which ſeruice they are commonly well rewarded. They haue made choice of their prince, namely of *Selymus* the firſt, his father *Baiazet* yet liuing; neither can any the Turkes Sultans account themſelues fully inueſted in their imperial dignitie, or aſſured of their eſtate, vntill they bee by them approoued and proclaimed. Euerie one of their Sultans at his firſt comming to the empire, doth giue them ſome great largeſſe; and ſometime the better to pleaſe them, encreaſeth alſo their pay. In euerie great expedition ſome of them goeth forth with their Aga, or his lieutenant, and are the laſt of all that fight. There is no office among the Turkes, that moe enuie at, than at the office of the Aga of the Ianizaries, for the greatneſſe of his authoritie and commaund: onely he and the Beglerbeg of GRECIA chuſe not their owne lieutenant, but haue them nominated vnto them by the Grand Seigniour. Vnto this great man the Aga of the Ianizaries, nothing can portend a more certaine deſtruction, than to be of them beloued, for then is he of the great Sultan ſtraightway feared or miſtruſted, and ſo occaſion ſought for to take him out of the way. The number of the Ianizaries of the Court is betwixt tenne and foureteene thouſand. This warlike order of ſouldiours is in theſe our daies much embaſed: for now natural Turks are taken in for Ianizaries, as are alſo

The manner of their bringing vp.

The dayly pay of the Ianizaries and Spahi

The Ianizaries inſolent.

Their great priuiledges and royalties.

The order of the Ianizaries in our time much embaſed.

G H I K L M

A ſo the people of Asia; whereas in former times none were admitted into that order, but the Chriſtians of Evrope only: beſide that, they marrie wiues alſo contrarie to their antient cuſtome, which is not now forbidden them. And becauſe of their long lying ſtill at Constantinople (a citie abounding with all manner of pleaſure) they are become much more effeminate and ſlothfull, but withall moſt inſolent, or more truely to ſay intollerable. It is commonly reported the ſtrength of the Turkiſh empire to conſiſt in this order of the Ianizaries, which is not altogether ſo, for albeit that they be indeed the Turks beſt footmen and ſureſt guard of the great Sultans perſon, yet vndoubtedly the greateſt ſtrength of his ſtate and empire reſteth nothing ſo much in them, as in the great multitude of his horſmen, eſpecially his Timariots.

B Beſide theſe Ianizaries, the Turkiſh emperor hath a great number of baſe footmen, whom the Turks call Aſapi, better acquainted with the ſpade than with the ſword, ſeruing rather to the wearying of their enemies with their multitude, than the vanquiſhing of them with their valour: with whoſe dead bodies the Ianizaries vſe to fill vp the ditches of towns beſieged, or to ſerue them for ladders to clime ouer the enemies wals vpon. But as the Romans had both their old Legionarie, and other vntrained ſoldiors, which they called Tirones; of whom the firſt were the chiefe ſtrength of their wars, and the other but as it were an aid or ſupplie; euen ſo the Turke accounteth his Timariot horſemen the ſtrength of his armie, and the Acanzij (which is another ſort of baſe and common horſemen) but as an acceſſorie: and ſo amongſt his footmen he eſteemeth of his Ianizaries, as did the Romans of their Prætorian legions, but

C of his Aſapi as of ſhadowes. The Ianizaries are by none to be commaunded, more than by the great Sultan himſelfe, and their Aga: as for the Baſſaes, they much regard them not, but in their rage oftentimes foule entreat euen the greateſt of them. The Aſapi as they are but baſe and common ſouldiours, ſo haue they alſo their ordinarie captains and commaunders, men of no great place or marke.

The Turks Aſapi, in what ſmal regard they are had.

The whole ſtate of the great empire of the Turkes is commanded by the great Sultan, by the graue aduice and counſell of his Viſier Baſſaes, which were not wont to be in number aboue foure, ſo prouiding for the ſecrecie of his high deſignes or important reſolutions, hardly by a greater multitude to be concealed: howbeit that the Sultans of latter times haue had ſometimes moe, ſometimes fewer, as their pleaſure was. Theſe men are of all others in that

D empire the greateſt, & for their high places moſt honored: vnto them euen the greateſt princes that haue any thing to doe in the Turkes Court, ſue and ſend their honourable preſents. By their aduice the great Sultan taketh his warres in hand, neither without them concludeth he any peace. They giue audience vnto the Embaſſadors of forreine princes, and from them receiue their diſpatch. The greateſt honors and preferments (which are many in that ſo great and large an empire) are all by their means to be obtained: which maketh them of all others to be ſought vnto. Some one or other of them are ſtill Generals ouer the great armies of the Turkes, eſpecially in theſe their late warres, their three laſt emperours neuer themſelues going forth into the field (excepting once that *Mahomet* the third for the maintenance of his credit with his men of warre, came downe into Hvngaria, and there woon the citie of

E Agria:) which leading of ſuch mightie armies is ſtill with great emulation and ambition of the Viſier Baſſaes amongſt themſelues ſought after, as well for the great profit thereby vnto them ariſing, as for the honor therof, which is of all other the greateſt. But leauing theſe great ones, the cheife counſellors for his ſtate; the whole bodie of his ſo large and mightie an empire (all in the hands of martiall men) is gouerned by other great Baſſaes, whom they by a moſt proud barbarous name cal Beglerbegs, that is to ſay Lords of Lords, euery one of them hauing vnder him certaine Begs or Sanzacks, who are lords and rulers alſo ouer ſome particular cities and countries, with the Timariots therein; yet all ſtill at the command & beck of their Beglerbeg. In antient time there was wont to be but two of theſe proud Beglerbegs in all the Turks empire: the one commanding ouer all the prouinces the Turke had in Evrope;

F and the other ouer all that he had in the leſſer Asia, now of the Turkes called Natolia. But the Turkiſh empire greatly augmented in Asia by *Selymus* the firſt, & alſo afterwards much enlarged both in Evrope and Asia by *Selymus* his ſon, the number of the Beglerbegs were by him increaſed, and in ſome ſort alſo changed: who although that they be all Beglerbegs, and that one of them (eſpecially in the time of peace) in the managing of his ſoldiors and affaires

The great commanders of the Turks empire.

The great authoritie of the Viſier Baſſaes.

The great authoritie of the Beglerbegs.

of his countrey, is not ſubiect to any other, but is only at the commaund of the great Turke, yet notwithſtanding in time of warre, where the Beglerbeg of ROMANIA is, all are obedient vnto him, as the chiefeſt of the reſt; inſomuch, that none of them but only he and the Baſſa of NATOLIA are called by the ſtately name of Beglerbegs, the others being then only called the Baſſaes of ſuch and ſuch places, as of BVDA, ALEPPO, and ſuch like, although indeed they are in nature Beglerbegs, and ſo written in their records. For the more manifeſting of which their gouernment, as alſo that they which come hereafter, may by comparing of that which is here written, with the ſtate that then ſhall be, ſee how much this great Empire in the meane time increaſeth or diminiſheth, I haue thought good here briefly to ſet downe all the ſaid Beglerbegs with their Sanzacks and Timariots, and as neer as I could (either by reading, or the credible relation of others well trauelled in thoſe countries) together, and as it were at one ſhew ſet forth the whole ſtrength and power of this ſo mighty an Empire, as alſo in what countries and prouinces the ſame is eſpecially placed.

The Beglerbegs or great Commaunders of the Turkes Empire in EVROPE.

1 *The Beglerbeg of Romania chiefe of the Beglerbegs of the Turks Empire in Europe.*

The firſt and chiefeſt of all the Beglerbegs in the Turkiſh empire, is the Beglerbeg of ROMANIA or GRECIA, called of the Turkes RVM-ILI (or as we ſay, the Romane countrey) the principall reſidence of whole Beglerbegſhip, is at SOPHIA, a citie of BVLGARIA; ſo appointed for the commodious ſituation thereof, for the better commaund of the reſt of the prouinces of EVROPE: howbeit, that he for the moſt part or rather altogether abideth at the court, which the other Beglerbegs cannot doe, for that they are bound not to depart from the gouernment of their prouinces: in which charge they ordinarily continue but three yeres only, the great Sultan ſtill changing and altering them at his pleaſure. This Beglerbeg hath vnder his owne enſigne and commaund fortie thouſand Timariots alwaies readie at his call, vnder the conduct of theſe and twentie Sanzakes following, namely, the

Sanzacke of
1 *Sophia* in *Bulgaria.*
2 *Nicopolis.*
3 *Cliſſe*, or *Quadraginta Eccleſiæ.*
4 *Vyza* in *Thracia.*
5 *Kirmen*
6 *Siliſtria* } all in *Macedonia.*
7 *Giuſtandill*
8 *Bender*, neere vnto the Euxine.
9 *Acherman*, in the confines of *Moldauia.*
10 *Vſcopia.*

Sanzacke of
11 *Priſrem.*
12 *Salonichi* } all in *Theſſalia.*
13 *Trichala*
14 *Miſtra*, of old called *Sparta*, in *Morea.*
15 *Palæopatra*, in the ſame prouince.
16 *Ioannina* in *Etolia.*
17 *Deluina* } both in *Achaia.*
18 *Elbaſſan*
19 *Auelona* or *Aulona* in *Albania.*
20 *Dacaem* in *Epirus.*
21 *Iſcodra* or *Scodra* in *Albania.*

2 *The Beglerbeg of Buda.*

The Beglerbeg of BVDA, who there reſideth in the frontiers of the Turkiſh empire, hauing vnder his charge 8000 Timariots, beſide 12000 other ſouldiors, which in continuall pay lie ſtill readie in garriſon in the confines of HVNGARIE, CROATIA, STYRIA, and other places bordering vpon the Chriſtians, but eſpecially the territories belonging to the houſe of AVSTRIA. He had of late vnder his enſigne and commaund theſe fifteene Sanzackes, *viz.* the

Sanzacke of
1 *Nouigrad.*
2 *Filek.*
3 *Zetſchen.*
4 *Zolnock.*
5 *Gran* or *Strigonium.*
6 *Segedin.*
7 *Alba Regalis.*
8 *Sexard.*

Sanzacke of
9 *Simontorna.*
10 *Colan.*
11 *Mapatz.*
12 *Zigeth* or *Saſwar.*
13 *Perſchen* or *Quinque Eccleſiæ.*
14 *Sirmium.*
15 *Semendria.*

Of which FILEK, ZETSCHEN, and STRIGONIVM are in theſe late warres woon from the Turks by the Imperials, and ſo yet by them holden; as was alſo ALBA REGALIS, which but of late was by the Turks againe recouered.

The

A The Beglerbeg of TEMESVVAR in HVNGARIA, who there hath his abode, hauing vnder his commaund ſeuen thouſand Timariots, with theſe eight Sanzacks, the 3 The Beglerbeg of Temeſwar.

Sanzacke of
1 *Temeſwar.*
2 *Mudaua.*
3 *Vlaoſwar.*
4 *Tſchinnad.*
5 *Meſchitura.*
6 *Iſwornick.*
7 *Vidin.*
8 *Lipa.*

The Beglerbeg of BOSNA, who lieth at BAGNALVCA, hath vnder him theſe Sanzackes, the 4 The Beglerbeg of Boſna.

B Sanzacke of
1 *Bagnaluca.*
2 *Poſchega.*
3 *Cliſſa.*
4 *Hertzegouina.*
5 *Lika.*
6 *Sazefchna.*
7 *Giula.*
8 *Briſrem.*
9 *Allatſhiſſar.*

The Beglerbeg of COFFE or CAPHA, who there reſideth in TAVRICA CHARSONESVS, and beſide the countrey thereabout, commaundeth ouer all the Sanzackes neere vnto the great riuer TANAIS, and the fennes of MEOTIS. It was at firſt but a Sanzackſhip, ſubiect to the Beglerbeg of GRECIA, and is in truth rather a Beglerbegs place in name, than in ſtrength and power. 5 The Beglerbeg of Coffe or Capha.

The Beglerbegs or great Commaunders of the Turkes Empire in ASIA.

C The Beglerbegs of the Turkes Empire in Aſia.

1 *Anatolia*, who hath his reſiance in *Cutaie*, the metropolitall citie of the greater *Phrigia* (called in auncient time *Cayai*) and hath vnder his enſigne and commaund thirtie thouſand of the Timariot horſemen, with twelue Sanzacks.

2 *Caramania*, who hath his abode at *Caſaria* (in auncient time called *Caſaria*) citie of *Cilicia*, and hath vnder him ſeuen Sanzackes, with twentie thouſand Timariots.

3 *Sinas*, who hath his abiding at *Sebaſtia*, a citie of the leſſer *Armenia*, and hath vnder his gouernment ten thouſand Timariots.

D 4 *Tocatun*, who reſideth at *Amaſia*, the metropolis of *Capadocia*, and hath vnder him fiue Sanzackes.

5 *Dulgadir*, ſometime part of the kingdome of *Thadentes*, and commandeth ouer foure Sanzackes.

6 *Halep*, commonly called *Aleppo*, a citie of *Syria*, and one of the moſt famous marts of the East, who hath vnder his regiment fiue and twentie thouſand Timariots.

7 *Sham*, otherwiſe called *Damaſca*, a moſt famous citie of Syria, who commaundeth ouer fortie thouſand Timariots.

E The Beglerbeg of

8 *Tarapolos* or *Trapolis*, commonly called *Tripolis*, another famous citie of *Syria*.

9 *Marra*, a citie vpon the great riuer Euphrates, betwixt *Aleppo* and *Meſopotamia*, who hath vnder his commaund ten thouſand Timariots.

10 *Diarbekir*, otherwiſe called *Meſopotamia*, who maketh his abode at the citie of *Amida*, or as the Turkes call it, *Carahamit*, who commaundeth ouer twelue Sanzacks, and thirtie thouſand Timariots.

11 *Bagdat* (or new *Babylon*) where he reſideth, not farre from the ruines of old *Babylon*, who hath vnder him fortie thouſand Timariots.

12 *Buſſara*, neere vnto the Perſian gulfe, who hath vnder his rule or gouernment fifteene thouſand Timariots.

13 *Laxa*, towards *Ormus*, and neere vnto the Perſian, hath vnder his regiment ten thouſand Timariots.

M 14 *Semenane* and *Rahamo*, two famous cities in *Arabia Felix*, vpon the coaſt of the red ſea, who hath vnder him thirtie thouſand Timariots.

F 15 *Cheber* or *Zebid* (vpon the coaſt of the Arabian gulfe, neere vnto the kingdome of the great Ethiopian king, commonly (but corruptly) called *Presbiter Iohn*.

16 *Cyprus*,

16 *Cyprus*, who lieth at *Nicoſia* or *Famaguſta*, commaunding ouer all that great Iſland, ſometime of it ſelfe a kingdome. G

17 *Scheherezul* in *Aſſyria*, bordering vpon the Perſian, who hath vnder his gouernment ten thouſand Timariots.

18 *Wan*, a citie in the confines of the greater *Armenia* towards *Media*, who hath vnder him twelue thouſand Timariots.

19 *Artzerum* or *Erzerum*, in the borders of *Armenia* towards *Capadocia*, about foure dayes iourney from *Trapezonde*, who commaundeth ouer twentie thouſand Timariots.

20 *Teflis*, neere vnto the Georgians, erected by *Muſtapha Baſſa*, Generall of *Amurath* the third his armie againſt the Perſian, in the yeare 1578. H

21 *Sirnan* or *Media*, erected by the ſame *Muſtapha*, and at the ſame time, commandeth ouer all that great countrey, ſometime a famous kingdome.

22 *Temir-Capi* or *Derbent*, neere vnto the Caſpian ſea, taken by *Oſman Baſſa* the ſame yeare 1578, who hauing ſlaine *Schehemet Chan* his father in law, reduced that countrey into the forme of a Beglerbegſhip.

The Beglerbeg of

23 *Cars*, a citie of *Armenia* the greater, diſtant from *Artzerum* foure daies iourney, by *Muſtapha Baſſa* made a Beglerbegſhip in the yeare 1579.

24 *Tſchilder* or *Tzilder* in the confines of the Georgians, erected by the ſame Generall *Muſtapha* the ſame yeare 1579. I

25 *Faſſa* or *Phaſis* in *Mengrelia*, neere vnto the Georgians, erected by *Vluzales* the Turks Admirall the ſame yeare 1579.

26 *Sochum*, in the borders of the Georgians, erected by the great Baſſa *Sinan* in the yeare 1580.

27 *Batin*, there erected alſo by the ſame *Sinan Baſſa*.

28 *Reiuan*, erected by *Ferat Baſſa*, Generall of the Turkes armie, taken from *Tocomac Chan* the Perſian in the yeare 1582, whereof *Cicala Baſſa* was the firſt Beglerbeg.

29 *Somachia*, in the countrey of *Media*, erected by *Oſman Baſſa* in the yeare 1583. K

30 *Tauris*, a moſt famous citie of *Armenia* the greater, ſometime the regall ſeat of the Perſian kings, but of late taken from them by *Oſman Baſſa*, and conuerted into a Beglerbegſhip in the ſame yeare 1583.

But theſe late erected honours, namely, the Beglerbegſhips of TEFLIS, SIRVAN, TEMIR-CAPI, CARS, TSCHILDER, FASSA, and the reſt gained by *Amurath* from the Perſians and the Georgians, although they containe a great territorie, are not of themſelues any of them worthie of thoſe proud titles, or yet able to maintaine the ſame, SIRVAN, REIVAN, and TAVRIS onely excepted; but were by the great Baſſaes, *Muſtapha*, *Sinan*, *Ferat*, and *Oſman*, *Amurath* his lieutenants, for their own greater honor, and the encouraging of them which were to defend L
thoſe their new conqueſts, erected, being indeed nothing either in power or ſtrength comparable with the other more auncient Beglerbegs either in EVROPE or ASIA. But hauing thus paſſed through the great kingdomes and prouinces by the Turkes holden in EVROPE and ASIA, with their proud honours therein, let vs go forward toward the South, to ſee what great kingdomes and territories they at this preſent hold in AFRICKE alſo.

The Beglerbegs or great Commaunders of the Turkes Empire in AFRICKE.

The Beglerbeg of

1 *Miſsir*, who ſtill making his abode at the great citie of *Caire*, hath vnder his commaund all the kingdome of *Aegipt*, with ſixteene Sanzackes, and an hundred thouſand Timariots. M

2 *Ceſsir* (in anciente time called *Iulia Ceſarie*) but now commonly *Algiers*, where the Beglerbeg ſtill reſiding, commandeth ouer all that kingdome, wherein are fortie thouſand Timariots.

3 *Tunis*,

A The Beglerbeg of
3 *Tunis*, where he ſtill remaining as a Viceroy, commaundeth all that great and large kingdome.
4 *Tripolis*, the ſeat of his Beglerbegſhip, by *Sinan Baſſa* taken from the Knights of *Malta* in the yeare 1551.

There are beſide theſe, two other kingdomes in AFRICKE enrolled in the Turks records as their owne, although they be not as yet by them brought into the forme of Beglerbegſhips: namely the kingdomes of FES and MAROCO, but are as yet holden by them as their tributaries and vaſſales.

But hauing thus as it were taken view of the greatneſſe and forces of this ſo mightie a Mo-
B narchs empire by land, & ſo in ſome ſort bounded it out, let vs conſider alſo his power by ſea With the great Ocean he much medleth not, more than a little in the gulfes of PERSIA and ARABIA: moſt of his territories lying vpon the Mediterranean and Euxine ſeas, or elſe more inwarly into the heart of ASIA, neere vnto no ſea. Now for theſe ſeas, no prince in the world hath greater or better means to ſet forth his fleets than hath he: for the ouergrown woods of EPIRVS and CILICIA, and more than they, thoſe of NICOMEDIA and TRAPEZONDE, are ſo great and thicke, and ſo full of tall trees fit for the building of ſhips and gallies of all ſorts, as is almoſt incredible. Neither wanteth he ſtore of ſhipwrights and other carpenters for the framing of that ſo great ſtore of timber, large pay drawing euen the Chriſtian skilfull carpenters and workmen into his Arſenals at CONSTANTINOPLE, SINOPE, CALLIPPOLIS, & others.

The great power of the Turke in the Mediterranean & Euxine ſeas.

C For proofe wherof it is worth the noting, that *Selymus* the ſecond in our freſh remembrance, the next yeare after that notable ouerthrow by him receiued at the ECHINADES (commonly called the battel of LEPANTO) rigged vp a fleet wherwith *Vluzales* his admirall was not afraid to face the whole power of the confederat Chriſtian princes at CERIGO. Neither hath the Turk euer wanted good ſtore of expert ſeamen, after the maner of thoſe ſeas: for beſide thoſe he hath in ſtore at CALLIPPOLIS and SINOPE, out of his gallies which he hath alwaies in readineſſe in LESBOS, CHIOS, RHODVS, CYPRVS, & ALEXANDRIA, and from the pyrats which he continually receiueth into the ports of TVNIS, BVGIA, TRIPOLIS, & ALGIERS, he can and doth from them when need is chuſe captains, mariners, and rowers ſufficient for the manning and ſtoring of his fleet. What he is able to doe in thoſe ſeas, was well ſeene in our time, by thoſe
D fleets which he had at MALTA, CYPRVS, the ECHINADES, and GVLETTA. He hath beſide of all neceſſary and warlike prouiſion abundant ſtore, & of great ordnance to furniſh himſelfe withall both by ſea & land an infinit quantitie. Out of HVNGARIE he hath caried away aboue 5000 great pieces, out of CYPRVS 500, and few leſſe from GVLETTA, not to ſpeake what he hath more got from the Chriſtians in diuers other places alſo. What ſtore he hath of ſhot and pouder, he ſhewed at MALTA, where he diſcharged aboue 60000 great ſhot; at FAMAGVSTA, where he beſtowed 118000; & at GVLETTA, where in the ſpace of 39 daies he by the fury of his great ordnance ouerthrew the fortifications which the Chriſtians had bin 40 yeres in building. So that to returne againe to our purpoſe, the great Turke ſo well prouided of men, money, ſhipping, & great ordnance, and hauing done ſo great matters at ſea as is before rehearſed, is not
E in reaſon otherwiſe to be accounted of than as of a moſt mighty & puiſſant prince, as well by ſea as land: which to be ſo, the greatnes of his Denizi Beglerbeg or great Admirall (cõmonly called *Capitan Baſſa*, of whom we haue not yet ſpoken) well declareth. This great man hauing charge of all the Grand Seignior his ſtrength at ſea, is alwayes one of the Viſier Baſſaes, not bound ſtill to follow the court, as the other Viſier Baſſaes be, but alwaies or for moſt part reſiant at CONSTANTINOPLE or CALLIPPOLIS, ſo to be the neerer vnto his charge. He that now hath this honorable place, is called of the Turks *Cigala Baſſa*, diſcẽded of an honorable family of that name in GENVA: who commonly reſiding at CONSTANTINOPLE or CALLIPPOLIS, hath vnder him 14 Sanzacks, all of them great commaunders and men of great place, namely, the

6 *The Denizi Beglerbeg, the Turks great admirall, to be accounted ſixt of the Beglerbegs in Europe.*

F Sanzacke of
1 *Gallipolis*, or *Callipolis*.
2 *Galata*, or *Pera*.
3 *Nicomedia*.
4 *Limnos*, or *Lemnus*.
5 *Mitylene*, or *Lesbos*.
6 *Chios*, or *Sio*.
7 *Nexia*, or *Naxus*.
8 *Negropont*, or *Eubœa*.
9 *Rhodus*.
10 *Cauala* in the frontiers of *Macedonia*.
11 *Napolidi Romania*.
12 *Lepanto*, or *Naupactus*.
13 *S. Maura*.
14 *Alexandria*.

The

The princes as well Mahometans as Chriſtians, vpon whom the great empire of the Turk confineth, and of what power they bee in compariſon of the Turke.

The greatneſſe, wealth, and ſtrength of this ſo mightie an Empire, as well by ſea as land, G
thus in ſome ſort declared, let vs now ſee vpon what princes it alſo confineth, and of what
power euery one of them is in compariſon of it, ſo great and ouergrown a State. The Turks
toward the Eaſt border vpon the Perſians, according to a right line, drawne by imagination
from TAVRIS to BALSARA: vpon the Portugals at the Perſian gulfe, and ſo there likewiſe to-
ward the South: at the red ſea, vpon the great Æthiopian king *Preianes*, commonly called
Preſter Iohn: towards the Weſt, in AFRICKE vpon the king of MAROCO: and in EVROPE vp-
on the kingdom of NAPLES, with ſome part of the Venetian ſigniorie: towards the North vp-
on the Polonians, and the territories of the houſe of AVSTRIA. Now to begin with the Per-

The Perſian too weake for the great Turke.

ſian, the great Turke no doubt is in field too ſtrong for him, as by proofe hath bin oftentimes H
ſeene: For *Mahomet* the Great in plaine battell ouercame the valiant *Vſun-caſſanes*: *Selymus*
the firſt, and after him *Solyman* his ſonne, put to flight the noble *Hyſmael* and *Tamas*, the two
great and famous Perſian kings: and now of late in our time, *Amurath* the third by his lieute-
nants hath taken from the Perſians all MEDIA, with the greater ARMENIA, both ſometimes fa-
mous kingdomes, together with the regall citie of TAVRIS. That the Turke ſo preuaileth, is
by reaſon of his footmen, which the Perſian wanteth, and of his great ordnance, wherof the
Perſian hath neither ſtore nor vſe: and although the Perſian by valours of their horſmen hath
ſometime in open field foiled the Turke, yet haue they ſtill loſt ſome part of their countrey,
Solyman taking from them MESOPOTAMIA, and *Amurath* MEDIA and ARMENIA. Neither did
the Perſians alone feele that harme, and looſe their owne, but vndid their confederats alſo; I
Selymus the firſt ſpoiling the Mamalukes of EGYPT & SYRIA, and vtterly rooting them from
off the face of the earth, and *Amurath* by his lieutenants hauing brought to a low ebbe the
warlike Georgians, both of them the Perſian kings friends and confederats. Now is not the

The Portugals too ſtrong for the Turke in the Eaſt Indies.

Turke ſo much too ſtrong at land for the Perſian, but that he is as much too weake at ſea for
the Portugals: in thoſe ſeas I mean where their forces haue more than once to the Turks coſt
met together in the Eaſt Indies. The Portugals hauing in thoſe rich but remote countries
many ſure harbours and ports, yea faire countries & territories abounding with victuals and
all prouiſion neceſſary for ſhipping, with ſome alſo of thoſe great Eaſterne princes, their allies
and confederats: whereas the Turke on the other ſide hath nothing in the Perſian gulfe ſtrong,
beſide BALSARA; the ſea-coaſt of ARABIA, which might ſtand him in beſt ſtead, hauing no K
more but foure townes, and thoſe but weake and of ſmall worth. So that there, as alſo in the
red ſea, it is a matter of exceeding charge and difficultie for him to ſet out any great fleet into
thoſe ſeas; for that thoſe countries are vtterly deſtitute of wood fit to make ſhips of. For which
cauſe, thoſe few times that he prepared his fleets in the red ſea (to haue cut off the Portugals
trade into the Eaſt Indies) being not able to performe the ſame in the Perſian gulfe, he was
enforced to bring the timber for the building of his gallies out of the ports of BITHINIA and
CILICIA (out of another world as it were) vp the Nile vnto CAIRE, and from thence vpon
cammels by land to SVES, where he hath his Arſenall, a thing almoſt incredible. And yet ha-
uing done what he could, as oft as he hath made any expedition againſt them, he neuer gained
any thing but loſſe and diſhonor: as in the yeare 1538 at the citie of DIVM; and in the yeare L
1552 at the Iſland of ARMVZ; and after that at MOMBAZA, where foure of the Turks gallies,
with one galliot, which by the fauour of the king of MOMBAZA had thought to haue ſtay-
ed in thoſe ſeas, were by the Portugals taken: who ſtill haue an eſpeciall regard and care, that
the Turkes ſettle not themſelues in thoſe ſeas; but as ſoone as they perceiue them to prepare
any fleet, they forthwith ſet vpon them, and to that end oftentimes without reſiſtance enter

Preſter Iohn too weake for the great Turke.

into the red ſea. *Preſter Iohn*, of whom although men ſpeak much, yet is he nothing in ſtrength
to be compared vnto the Turke, but far inferiour vnto him both for commanders and ſoul-
diors, as alſo for weapons and munition: for that great prince hath a great kingdom without
fortification, and a multitude of ſouldiors without armes: as appeared by the ouerthrow of
Barnagaſſo his lieutenant towards the red ſea; who hauing loſt all that ſea coaſt vnto the M

The king of Marocco and the Turke both in doubt of the king of Spaine.

Turkes, was brought to that extremitie, that to haue peace with them, he yeelded to pay
vnto them a yearely tribute of a thouſand ounces of gold. In AFRICKE the Turke hath more
territories than hath the king of MAROCO, otherwiſe called the Xerife: for he poſſeſſeth all
that there lieth betwixt the red ſea and the kingdome of FES; but the Xerife hath the better
part, the richer, ſtronger, and more vnited: yet dare neither of them well make warre vpon
the

A the other for the neereneſſe of the king of SPAINE, enemy vnto them both. Now then there remaineth the reſt of the Chriſtian princes bordering vpon the Turke; and firſt the king of POLONIA. What theſe two princes can doe the one againſt the other, hath bin ſeene in ſome former expeditions, wherein the Polonian had ſtill the worſe. Yet it ſhould ſeeme, that of later time the Turke hath not bin greatly deſirous to mooue the Polonian too farre: For that being prouoked by diuers occaſions (namely, in the reigne of *Henry* the third, in the wars that *Iohn* the Vayuod of VALACHIA had with the Turks, many Polonian horſmen ſerued the ſaid Vayuod, though not indeed ſent from the king: and in the time of *Sigiſmund* the third, the Polonian Coſſackes haue with diuers incurſions not a little troubled them: beſide the late
B motions of *Iohn Zamoſchie* the great Chancelor and Generall of the Polonian forces, for the ſtaying of the Tartars by the Turke ſent for) he hath been content to comport the ſame, and not with his wonted pride ſought to be thereof reuenged, as he hath for farre leſſe vpon ſome other princes. And on the other ſide, the Polonians ſince the vnfortunat expedition of king *Ladiſlaus*, neuer tooke vpon them any warres againſt the Turks, neither gaue ſuch aid as they ſhould vnto the Valachians their confederats, but ſuffered to be taken from themſelues, whatſoeuer they had toward the Euxine or blacke ſea: a thing imputed rather vnto the want of courage in their kings, than in the Nobilitie of that kingdome. *Sigiſmund* the firſt being by Pope *Leo* the tenth inuited to the wars againſt the Turks, anſwered them in theſe few words:
C Set you the Chriſtian princes at vnitie amongſt themſelues, and I for my part will not be wanting. *Sigiſmund* the ſecond ſo abhorred the wars, that he not onely declined the Turks, but prouoked by the Muſcouites, neuer ſought to reuenge the ſame. King *Stephen* (by the commendation of *Amurath* choſen king of POLONIA) an indifferent eſteemer both of his enemies forces and his owne, thought it a moſt dangerous thing to ioyne battell with the Turke, and yet in priuat talke with his friends would oftentimes ſay, That with thirty thouſand foot ioyned vnto his Polonian horſemen, hee durſt well to vndertake an expedition againſt the Turke: which he was ſuppoſed oftentimes to haue thought vpon. The Emperour, with the reſt of the princes of the houſe of AVSTRIA, are by a longer tract of ground ioyned vnto this great Empire of the Turks, than any one other prince of the world, & beſtow in fortifications and the maintenance of their Garriſons (wherein they haue continually aboue twentie thou-
D ſand horſe and foot) the greateſt part of their reuenues euen in the time of peace, much more in theſe their long warres; and with the Germane forces ioyned vnto their owne, are more careful how to defend that they haue yet left, than how to recouer that they haue already loſt or to enlage their Empire. The Emperor *Ferdinand* with greater force than ſucceſſe vndertooke the vnfortunat expeditions of BADA and POSSEGA: which ſo euill fell out, not for that his forces were not ſufficient or ſtrong ynough; but for that they wanted agilitie and dexteritie. The truth is, thoſe his armies were ſtrong ynough, and ſufficiently furniſhed with all things neceſſarie, but conſiſted for the moſt part of Germans and Bohemians, ſlow and heauie people, vnfit to encounter with the Turkes, a more readie and nimble kind of ſouldiors.
The Venetians alſo confrontier the Turks by many hundred miles both by ſea and land, and
E defend themſelues rather by peaceable policie than force of armes: notably fortifying their ſtrong holds vpon their frontiers, declining by all meanes the dangers and charges of war, by embaſſages and rich preſents; leauing nothing vnattempted (their libertie and ſtate preſerued) rather than to fall to wars. To ſay the truth of them, although they had both coyne and warlike prouiſion ſufficient, yet want they men and victuals anſwerable to ſo great a war againſt ſo puiſſant an enemie. There remaineth only the king of SPAINE, of all other the great princes either Chriſtians or Mahometans (bordering vpon him) the beſt able to deale with him; his yearely reuenewes ſo farre exceeding thoſe of the Turkes, as that they are alſo probably thought to counteruaile the greateſt part of his Timariots: and his great dominions in SPAINE, PORTVGALL, NAPLES, SICILIA, MILLAINE, SARDINIA, and the Low Countries
F (if they were with him at vnitie) able to affourd vnto him ſo great and powerfull a ſtrength both by ſea and land, as might make him dreadfull euen vnto the Great Turke when he ſwelleth in his greateſt pride: But conſidering how his forces are diſtracted for the maintenance of his warres at once in diuers places; as alſo for the neceſſarie defence and keeping of his ſo large and diſperſed territories, not all the beſt of themſelues affected to the Spaniſh gouernment,

The king of Polonia vnwilling to meddle with the Turke, or the Turke with him

The Emperour with the reſt of the princes of the houſe of Auſtria, together with the aid of the Germanes, haue much adoe to defend themſelues againſt the Turke.

The Venetians by policy rather than by force maintaine their ſtate againſt the Turke.

The K. of Spaine of al other princes that border vpon the Turke beſt able to wage warre with him.

ment, he is not to be thought of himſelfe ſtrong enough againſt the vnited forces of the great Turke, whenſoeuer they ſhould chance to be imploied vpon him. So that by this we haue alreadie ſaid, is eaſily to be gathered how much the Turke is too ſtrong for any one the neighbour princes, either Mahometanes or Chriſtians, bordering vpon him, and therefore to be of them the more feared. Yet leaſt ſome miſtaking me, might thinke, What, is then the Turke inuincible? Farre be that thought from me, to thinke any enemie of Chriſt Ieſu (be his arme neuer ſo ſtrong) to be able to withſtand his power, either quite to deuour his little flocke, rage hee neuer ſo much about it. As for the Turke, the moſt daungerous and profeſſed enemie of the Chriſtian Commonweale, bee his ſtrength ſo great, yea and haply greater too than is before declared (the greatneſſe of his dominions and empire conſidered) yet is he not to bee thought therefore either inuincible, or his power indeed ſo great as it in ſhew ſeemeth for to be: his Timariot horſmen (his greateſt ſtrength) diſperſed ouer his whole empire, being neuer poſſibly the one halfe of them by him to be gathered into the bodie of one armie: neither if they ſo were, poſſible in ſuch a multitude long to be kept together, liuing vpon no pay of his, but vpon ſuch ſtore and prouiſion onely as they bring with them from their Timari, neuer ſufficient long to maintaine them. Beſides that, the policie of his ſtate hardly or neuer ſuffereth him to draw aboue a third part of his Timariots out of his countries where they dwell, for feare leſt the reſt of the people by them ſtill kept vnder, ſhould in their abſence take vp armes againſt him in defence of themſelues and their auncient libertie: whereafter the greateſt part of thoſe poore oppreſſed ſoules, as well Mahometanes as Chriſtians in euery prouince of his Empire awaiting but the opportunitie, moſt deſirouſly longeth: ſo that more than two parts of them being alwaies to be left at home, for the neceſſarie defence of the ſpacious borders of his ſo large an Empire, as alſo for the keeping in obedience of ſo many diſcontented nations; it is a great matter, if hee euen in his greateſt warres draw together of theſe kind of ſouldiours the full number of an hundred and fiftie thouſand ſtrong, making vp the reſt of his huge multitude with his Acanzij, liuing of no pay of his, but vpon the ſpoile of the enemie onely, the fift part whereof they pay vnto him alſo. All which put together, what manner of men they be, and of what valour, not onely the ſmall armies of the Chriſtians vnder the leading of their worthie chiefetaines *Huniades*, *Scanderbeg*, king *Matthias*, and others, haue to their immortal glory in former times made good proofe: but euen in this our age, and that as it were but the other day, the Tranſyluanian prince with diuers other valiant captaines and commanders yet liuing, haue done the like alſo; as well witneſſeth the late battell of AGRIA, wherein the Chriſtians, in number not halfe ſo many as the Turkes, by plaine valour draue the great Sultan *Mahomet* himſelfe (with *Ibrahim Baſſa* his lieutenant Generall) out of the field, and had of him had the moſt glorious victorie that euer was got againſt that enemie, had they not by too much careleſneſſe and vntimely deſire of ſpoyle, themſelues ſhamefully interrupted the ſame. But thus to let his horſmen paſſe, the chiefe ſtrength of his footmen are his Ianizaries, neuer in number exceeding twelue or foureteene thouſand, yea ſeldome times halfe ſo many, euen in his greateſt armies, except he himſelfe be there in perſon preſent in the middeſt of them: who beſide the ſmall number of them, in the time of theſe their late voluptuous and effeminate Emperors, corrupted with the pleaſures of CONSTANTINOPLE, and for want of their woonted diſcipline, haue together with their auncient obedience and patience, loſt alſo a great part of their former reputation and valour: all the reſt of his footmen filling vp the bodie of his populous armie, being his Aſapi, rather pioners than ſouldiours, men of ſmall worth, and ſo accounted of, both of the Turks and their enemies alſo. So that all things well conſidered, his beſt ſouldiours being the leaſt part of his greateſt armies, and they alſo farre vnlike their predeceſſors, the ſterne followers of the former *Othoman* kings and emperours, but men now giuen to pleaſure and delight: it is not otherwiſe to be thought, but that he bringeth into the field far mo. men than good ſouldiors, more brauerie than true valour, more ſhew than worth, his multitude being his chiefeſt ſtrength, his ſuppoſed greatneſſe the terror of his neighbour princes, and both together the very maieſtie of his empire. Which although it be indeed verie ſtrong (for the reaſons before alleadged) yet is it by many probably thought to be now vpon the declining hand, their late emperors in their owne perſons far degenerating from their warlike progenitours, their ſouldiours generally

giuing

Why the Turk is not to be thoght inuincible, neither his power ſo ſtrong, as it in ſhew ſeemeth to bee.

The ſignes of the declining of the Turks empire.

A giuing themſelues to vnwonted pleaſures, their auncient diſcipline of warre neglected, their ſuperſtition not with ſo much zeale as of old regarded, and rebellions in diuers parts of his Empire of late ſtrangely raiſed, and mightily ſupported: all the ſignes of a declining ſtate. Which were they not at all to be ſeene, as indeed they be verie pregnant, yet the greatneſſe of this Empire being ſuch, as that it laboureth with nothing more than the weightineſſe of it ſelfe, it muſt needs (after the manner of worldly things) of it ſelfe fall, and againe come to nought, no man knowing when or how ſo great a worke ſhall be brought to paſſe, but hee in whoſe deepe counſels all theſe great reuolutions of Empires and Kingdomes are from e-
ternitie ſhut vp: who at his pleaſure ſhall in due time by ſuch meanes as he ſeeth beſt accoun-
B pliſh the ſame, to the vnſpeakeable comfort of his poore afflicted flocke, in one place or o-
ther ſtill in danger to be by this roaring Lyon deuoured. Which worke of ſo great wonder, he for his Sonne our Sauiour Chriſt his ſake, the glorie of his name, and comfort of many thouſand oppreſſed Chriſtians, fed with the bread of carefulneſſe a-
midſt the furnace of tribulation, in mercie haſten, that wee with them, and they with vs, all as members of one bo-
die, may continually ſing, Vnto him be all honour and praiſe world without end.

FINIS.

BRITISH
20 AL 80
MUSEUM

¶ A Table or Index, pointing vnto all the most notable things in the Hiſtorie of the Turkes before written,

wherein ſuch directorie letters as are ſet without numbers, are to be ſtill referred to the next number of the page precedent.

Aaron, Vayuod of Moldauia, ſuſpected by the Tranſyluanian prince to haue intelligence with the Turke, with his wife and ſonne ſent priſoners vnto Prage. 1062.*l*

Abas Mirize by the practiſe of Mirize Salmas brought into ſuſpition with Mahomet his father the Perſian king, 946.*i. by his embaſſadours purgeth himſelf of the ſuppoſed treaſon* 964.*g*

Abdulcheray with his Tartars commeth into Siruan, 838.*k. taketh Ares Chan,* 939.*a. ſpoileth Genge, is himſelfe ouerthrowne and taken priſoner by the Perſian prince,* 940.*g. beloued of the Perſian queene, k. ſlaine in the Court.* 941.*a*

Abedin Baſſa with a great armie ſent by Amurath to reuenge the death Meſites ſpoyleth Valachia, and ſo entreth into Tranſyluania, 271.*a. encourageth his Turkes,* 273.*b. in a great and mortall battell ouerthrown by Huniades at Vaſcape.* 274.*l*

Abraham, otherwiſe called Pyramet, laſt king of Caramania ſlaine by Baiazet. 447.*b*

Abraham Baſſa his deſcription, 645.*f. his bringing vp in Court,* 646.*g. his great credit with Solyman, i. he perſuadeth him to make warre vpon the Perſians,* 647.*e. maligned by Solymans mother and Roxalana,* 649.*b. ſent before by Solyman with an army into Syria, c. hath the citie of Tauris yeelded vnto him, d. in diſgrace with Solyman,* 653.*f. ſhamefully murthered in the Court by the commaundement of Solyman.* 654.*b*

Abydus ſurpriſed by the Turkes, 183.*a*

Acanzij what they be. 415.*b*

Achmetes Baſſa, Gouernor of Cyprus, ſlaine by the Ianizaries. 979.*b*

Achmetes the great Baſſa his notable ſpeech to Mahomet, to diſſuade him from any more aſſaulting of Scodra, 423.*f. landeth with his armie in Apulia,* 432.*i. by Baiazet made Generall of his armie againſt his brother Zemes,* 438.*l. his death contriued by Iſaacke Baſſa.* 443.*b. in danger to haue beene put to death, deliuered by the Ianizaries,* 444.*h. ſuddainely ſlaine, k*

Achmetes Baſſa with his armie ouerthrowne by the Mamaluckes, taken, and ſent priſoner vnto Caitbeius at Caire. 448.*i*

Achomates politicke and valiant, but too much giuen to pleaſure, 478.*k. diſcontented,* 487.*a. threatneth the Cadeleſcher ſent vnto him by his father,* 488.*g. entreth with his ſonnes into rebellion, h. killeth his fathers embaſſadour, proclaymed traitour,* 489.*f. ſecretly fauoured by diuers great men in Selymus his armie,* 503 *a. ouerthrowne in battell, taken, and by the commaundement of his brother Selymus ſtrangled.* 504.*i*

Achomates the great Baſſa appeaſeth the ſouldiors, vp in armes for the vnworthie death of Muſtapha, 764.*h his miſerable end.* 765.*c*

Agria in vaine beſieged by the Turkes, 756.*k. yeelded vnto Mahomet the third.* 1096.*h*

Aladin, the ſonne of Kei-Huſreu, of the Selzuccian familie, driuen out of Perſia, ſeiſeth vpon Cilicia. 76.*l*

Aladin his modeſtie about the diuiſion of his father Othomans inheritance and goods with his brother Orchanes. 179.*d*

Aladin the Caramanian king hanged. 208.*m*

Aladin, Amurath his eldeſt ſonne ſlaine with a fall from his horſe. 289.*d*

Alba Regalis yeelded to King Ferdinand, 700.*l. beſieged by Solyman,* 740.*i. the lake and ditches with incredible labour filled vp by the Turkes, l. the ſuburbs woon,* 741.*c. the miſerable ſlaughter of the Chriſtians in their flight, d. yeelded vnto Solyman,* 742.*g. beſieged by duke Mercurie,* 1134.*l. the ſuburbs of the citie ſurpriſed by lord Ruſſworm,* 1135.*d. the citie taken by the Chriſtians,* 1136.*g. beſieged by the Turkes,* 1144 *l. terribly aſſaulted,* 1145. *woon by the Turkes, d*

Aladeules his kingdom, 519.*a. the battell betwixt him and Selymus, e. hee flyeth into the mountaines,* 520.*g. taken by Sinan Baſſa, and brought to Selymus, it put to death, l. his head ſent to Venice for a preſent, and his kingdome brought into the forme of a prouince, m*

Albuchomar diſcouereth vnto Selymus the power of Tomombeius, and the treaſon intended by them of Caire. 547.*e*

Aleppo in Syria betraied & taken from the Chriſtians by Saladin, Sultan of Damaſco, 61.*a. by the Tartars taken from the Turkes, and by them ſacked and raſed,* 113.*d. by Cayerbeius the traitor deliuered to Selymus.* 530.*l*

Aleſſandro the Georgian ſubmitteth himſelfe vnto Muſtapha. 933.*e*

Alexius the great preſident of Conſtantinople committed to priſon. 45.*f. his eyes put out by the commaundement of Andronicus.* 46.*b*

Alexius Comnenus, otherwiſe called Porphyrogenitus, ſucceedeth his father Emanuell in the Empire, 43.*b. by the practiſe of Andronicus is deprined of the Empire, and ſtrangled,* 50.*b*

Alexius the young prince craueth aid of Philip the Emperor and the Latine princes againſt his vncle the vſurper, 77.*a. commeth to the army of the Chriſtian princes going towards the Holy land.* 78.*g. arriueth with a great fleet of the Latins before Conſtantinople, l. taketh land, and after an hot skirmiſh forceth the old tirant Alexius to flie out of the citie.* 79.*c. ſeeketh to bring the Latines againe into the citie.* 80.*k. is betraied and ſtrangled by Murzuſle, l.*

Alexius Philanthropenus by Andronicus the Emperour made Gouernor of the frontiers of his Empire in Aſia againſt the Turkes. 147.*e. aſpireth.* 148.*i. betraied, hath his eyes put out.* 149.*a*

Alexius

Alexius Strategopulus with a small power sent into Grecia by the Emperour Michael Paleologus, by the treason of two Greekes taketh the citie of Constantinople from the Latines. 115.d

Algiers described. 720.g. *in vaine besieged by Charles the Emperour.* h

Aliculi Chan taken. 944.l. *in hope of libertie conducteth Hassan Bassa through the strait passages of Georgia.* 945.b. *cast in prison at Erzirũ.* d. *escapeth from Ferat.* 972.m. *by the Persian king (to the great discontentmẽt of the Turcomans) made Gouernour of Tauris.* 973.c. *killeth th' Bassa of Maras, doth the Turks great harme, and so flieth from Tauris.* 991.c. *conspireth with Abas Mirize against the Persian prince.* 1000.h. *being by the prince sent against the Turkes, performeth nothing.* 1001.c

Alis Bassa with a great armie ouerthrowne by Scanderbeg. 288.k

Alis Bassa sent by Baiazet with an armie out of Europe against Techellis, slaine. 474.l

Alis Beg and his foure sonnes trecherously slaine by Ferat Bassa. 600.l

Alis Bassa of Buda by the commaundement of Amurath strangled. 1003.d

Alis Beg gouernor of Strigonium comming downe into the lower towne, there staied by his Ianizaries. 1066 k. *his resolute answere vnto the message sent him from the Lord Palsi.* 1069. e. *slaine with a great shot.* 1071.e

Almericus earl of Ioppa after the death of his brother Baldwin chosen sixt king of Ierusalem. 53.d. *with a puissant armie entreth Ægipt, and in plaine battell ouerthroweth Dargan the Sultan.* e. *aideth Sanar the Sultan against Saracon, Noradins Generall, whom he ouerthroweth in Egipt.* 56.i. *taketh Alexandria.* l. *winneth Pelusium* 57. *dieth,* 58.k

Aloysius Grittus the duke of Venice his sonne sent by Solyman as his lieutenant into Hungarie, to ouersee king Iohn. 631. f. *contemned by Americus, causeth him to be murthered.* 633.d. *besieged by the Transyluanians.* 634.b. *taken and beheaded.* l. *the great riches found about him.* 635.a

Alphonsus king of Naples sendeth aid vnto Scanderbeg. 369.f. *with Alexander the Bishop of Rome craueth aid of Baiazet the Turke against Charles the French king.* 551.a

Alphonsus resigneth his kingdome of Naples vnto his sonne Ferdinand. 453.e

Alphonsus Danalus Vastius, lieutenant Generall of the Emperours land forces in his expedition for Tunes. 655.b. *his speech vnto the Spanish captaines.* 659.b. *commaundeth the Emperour.* 665.d. *with Hannibaldus sent embassadours from the Emperour and the French King to the state of Venice, for a confederation betwixt that State and them to bee made against Solyman.* 992.g. *his Oration in the Venetian Senate.* h. *the answer of the duke.* m. *the Senatours diuersly affected towards the confederation.* 693.d

Alteration of Religion in the Greeke Church the cause of great trouble. 144.m

Ameſa with his Turks ouerthrown and taken prisoner by Scanderbeg. 366.g

Ameſa employed by his vncle Scanderbeg for the recouerie of Croia out of the hands of Turks. 284.h. *corrupted, flieth to Mahomet the Turke.* 373.b. *his first speech to Mahomet.* c. *honourably entertained.* 376.i. *by Isaack Bassa created king of Epirus.* 375.d. *taken prisoner by Scanderbeg.* 381.d. *sent prisoner into Italie.* 382.h. *enlarged, returneth to Constantinople, and there dieth.* 383.b

Amurath the first succeedeth his father Orchanes in the Turkish kingdome. 189.e. *inuadeth Europe.* d. *taketh Hadrianople.* f. *maketh his royall seat in Europe.* 191.b. *beginneth the order of the Ianizaries.* e. *returneth into Asia.* 192.g. *marieth his sonne Baiazet vnto Hatune, the daughter of the prince Gyrmean, with a great dowrie.* 193.c. *purchaseth the principalitie of Amisum, of Chusen Beg.* d. *inuadeth Seruia, and taketh Nissa, the metropoliticall citie thereof.* e. *imposeth a yearely tribute vpon the countrie of Seruia.* f. *in a great battaile ouerthroweth Aladin the king of Caramania his son in law with the other Mahometane princes his confederats.* 196.g. *by his captaines winneth & spoileth a great part of Bulgaria.* 199.a. *in a great and mortall battaile ouerthroweth Lazarus the Despot of Seruia, with his confederats in the plains of Cossoua.* 200.i. *slaine.* k. *buried at Prusa.* 201.b

Amurath the second placed in his fathers seat. 255.c. *afraid to go against the rebell Mustapha.* 256.h. *in vaine besieged Constantinople.* 258. g. *strangleth his brother Mustapha.* l. *winneth Thessalonica.* 260.g. *taketh vnto himselfe the greatest part of Ætolia.* i. *enforceth the princes of Athens, Phocis, & Beotia to become his tributaries.* h. *falsifieth his faith with Iohn Castriot prince of Epyrus, and poysoneth his three eldest sonnes his hostages.* l. *oppresseth the Mahometan princes in Asia,* 261.c. *spoileth Hungarie,* d. *contrarie to his faith inuadeth Seruia, and subdueth it,* 262.g. *putteth out the eyes of the Despots sonnes, his wiues brethren.* g. *besiegeth Belgrade,* 263.c. *dealeth subtilly with the embassadors of king Vladislaus,* 264.g. *notably encourageth his souldiours to the assault of Belgrade,* h. *shamefully repulsed.* 266.h. *his sullen answere vnto the embassadours of king Vladislaus.* i. *sendeth Mesites Bassa, to inuade Transyluania,* 276.f. *grieued with the losse of Mesites and his armie, sendeth Abedin Bassa to reuenge his death,* 270.l. *in despaire about to haue slaine himselfe,* 289.a. *by the mediation of the Despot of Seruia obtaineth peace of K. Vladislaus for ten yeres,* b. *inuadeth Caramania,* d. *wearie of the world, committeth the gouernment of his kingdome to his sonne Mahomet, and retyreth himselfe vnto a monasticall life,* e. *at the report of those preparations of the Hungarians, and request of his Bassaes, forsaketh his solitarie life, and raiseth a great armie in Asia,* 296. k *by the Genowayes transported with his armie into Europe,* l. *ioyneth battaile with K. Vladislaus at Varna,* 297.b. *about to haue fled, reproued of cowardise by a common souldiour,* c. *prayeth vnto Christ,* e. *in danger to haue bin slaine,* 298.h. *wisheth not many times so to ouercome as hee did at the battell of Varna,* m. *to perform his vow, resigneth his kingdome to his sonne Mahomet, which he shortly after resumeth againe,* 299.b. *his craftie letters to Scanderbeg,* 300.g *his passionate speech in his rage against Scanderbeg,* 302.i. *breaketh through the Hexamylum, and imposeth a yearely tribute vpon them of Peloponnesus,* 304.h. *after three daies hard fight with great slaughter of his men ouercommeth Huniades in the plaines of Cassoua,* 309.b *inuadeth the Despot,* 310.k. *his graue letters of aduice to Mustapha concerning his inuading of Epyrus,* 311.e. *commeth with a great armie to Sfetigrade,* 316.l. *in vaine with great furie giueth many a desperat assault vnto the citie,* 319.b. *in one assault looseth seuen thousand of his Turkes.*

Turks, 320. i. by great promises seeketh to corrupt the garrison of Sfetigarde, l. by the practise of one man hath the citie of Sfetigarde yeelded vnto him, 321. e. hauing lost 30000 of his Turkes at the siege of Sfetigarde, returneth to Hadrianople, 322. h. with a great armie commeth againe into Epyrus, and besiegeth Croia, 323. c. in two assaults looseth 8000 of his souldiors, 326. k. content to buy the life of one Christian with the losse of twentie of his Turks, 327. a. seeketh by great gifts to corrupt Vranacontes the Gouernour of Croia, 328. i. ouercome with melancholie, tormenteth himselfe, 330. g. by his embassadors offereth Scanderbeg peace, h. his last speech vnto his sonne Mahomet concerning such things as at his death grieued him most, k. dieth, 331. b. buried at Prusa 332. g

Amurath the sonne of Achomates flieth vnto Hysmaell the Persian king, 504 k. marrieth his daughter, 505. a. spoileth Capadocia, and for feare of his vncle Selymus retireth, d

Amurath the third taketh vpon him the Turkish Empire, 919. c. pacifieth the Ianizaries, and augmenteth their priuiledges, d. strangleth his fiue brethren, e. his letters vnto the nobilitie of Poloma in the behalfe of Stephen Bathor Vayuod of Transyluania, 920. i. attentiue to the stirres in Persia, 923. f. informed thereof by Vstref Bassa of Van, 924. m. resolueth to take the Persian warre in hand. 925. d. by Mustapha aduertised of the successe of the Persian warres, 938. g. consulteth of his proceeding therein, 941. e. discharged Mustapha of his Generalship, and calleth him home to Constantinople, 946. l. appointeth Sinan Generall for the Persian warres, 951. b. in despight of Sinan appointeth Mahamet Bassa Generall for those warres in his stead, 957. e. circumcis. th his eldest sonne Mahomet, 957. a. displaceth Sinan Bassa, & casteth him into exile, 962. l. appointeth Ferat Generall for his warres in Persia, 965. d sendeth for Osman Bassa into Siruan, 974. h. maketh him chiefe Visier and Generall of his armie into Persia, 976. k. in disporting himselfe with his Muts, taken with a fit of the falling sicknes, 977. d. causeth great triumph to bee made throughout his Empire for the winning of Tauris, 996. h. maketh choice againe of Ferat Bassa to succeed Osman Bassa, dead in the Persian warres, 999. b. concluded a peace with the Persian king, 1005. b. his answere to the letters of Sigismund the third king of Polonia, 1004. b. glad himselfe to yeeld vnto insolencie of the Ianizaries. 1005. f. his letters to Elizabeth Queene of England, 1006. k. perswaded by his Visier Bossaes to take some new warre in hand. 1007. e. in doubt whom first to begin withall, 1008. k. resolueth to make warre vpon the Emperour, with the reasons leading him thereunto, 1014. k giueth leaue to Hassan Bassa of Bosna as it were without his knowledge to picke quarrels with the Emperor, and so to disturbe the peace, m. sendeth home the bodie of the Persian hostage dead in his Court, 1015. c. proclaimeth warre against the Emperour, 1023. f. the proud and blasphemous maner of his denuntiation of warre, 1024. h. he dreameth, 1028. l. sicke of the falling sickenesse, 1048. h. dieth 1053. d

Andrew king of Hungarie maketh an expedition into the Holy land, 88. k. bathing himselfe in the riuer Iordan, returneth with all his power, l

Andronicus aspireth to the Empire, 43 d. ouerthroweth Angelus, set against him with a great power by Alexius the great President, 44. l. encampeth ouer against Constantinople, 45. a. taketh vpon him the gouernment, and tyrannizeth, 47. b. causeth Mary the daughter of Emanuell the Emperor with her husband Cesar to be poysoned, e. causeth Xene the faire Empresse to be vniustly condemned and strangled, 49. k. by his fauorits and flatterers ioined in the fellowship of the Empire with Alexius the young Emperor, 46. c. depriueth Alexius of the Empire, and causeth him to be strangled, 50. b. destroyeth the Nobilitie, to establish his estate, i. seeketh in vaine to appease the people, in a tumult risen vp against him, 52. b. forsaken of his flattering fauorits. flieth, is taken, and brought back in chaines to Angelus, 53. c. committed to the furie of the people, who with extreme cruelties put him to most shamefull death 54

Andronicus Paleologus the younger exceedingly beloued by old Andronicus his grandfather, 158. h. by the perswasion of Syrgiannes conspireth against his aged grandfather, 159. f. being sent for, commeth vnto him secretly armed, with purpose to haue slaine him, 160. k. secretly flyeth out of Constantinople, 161. b. proclaimed traitour, and proscribed, a. stirreth vp the people of Thracia to rebellion. d. reconciled to his Grandfather, 164 i. crowned fellow in the Empire with his grandfather. m. againe conspireth against his grandfather, 165 b. his craftie speech vnto his grandfathers embassadours, 167 c. seeketh in vaine by night to haue beene receiued into Constantinople, 169 e. is receiued into Thessalonica, 170 g. taketh in the greatest part of Macedonia and Thratia. m. by treason entreth into the citie of Constantinople. 171 e. forbiddeth his captaines and souldiours to violate the wastlie of the old Emperour or any about him, 172 i. humbleth himselfe vnto his grandfather, 173 a. euill perswaded, committeth him to strait keeping, 174 g. wounded in the battaile with Orchanes at Philocrene, 180 m. by his owne departure from his campe discomfiteth his whole Armie, 181 a.

Andronicus Paleologus the old Emperor in restoring againe the Greeke ceremonies, by his father before altered, falleth into great troubles, 146 b. sparing to maintaine his Nauie, weakeneth his Empire. k. suspitions of his brother Constantine. l. by taking him away, leaueth the East side of his Empire to bee spoyled by the Turks, 147 e. reposing more trust in forraine aid than in his owne subiects, greatly hurteth his state, 149 b. immoderatly fauoureth his nephew Andronicus, 158 h. setteth Syrgiannes to obserue his doings, 159 a. sendeth embassadors vnto him, 161 d. in his trouble as of an heauenly Oracle asketh counsell of the Psalter, and so maketh peace with his nephew, 164 h. enformed of the euill meaning of his nephew, forbiddeth him to come into the citie, 166 g. his notable speech vnto the Patriarch and the rest of the Bishops and Nobilitie concerning the young Emperour his nephew, 168 k. forsaken of the Patriarch and some others of the Bishops, 169 b. reposeth his whole trust in God, 172 i. his pitifull request vnto the young Emperour his nephew. l. by him deprined of his imperiall dignitie, 174 g. falleth blind. h. against his will made a Monke, and called Anthonie. k. his notable answere vnto the catching question of the proud Patriarch. l. enforced to sweare, neuer againe to resume vnto himselfe the Empire, 175. d. dieth, 176 g. his death by many prodigies

Alexius Strategopulus with a ſmall power ſent into Grecia by the Emperour Michael Paleologus, by the treaſon of two Greekes taketh the citie of Conſtantinople from the Latines. 115.d

Algiers deſcribed. 720.g. *in vaine beſieged by Charles the Emperour.* h

Aliculi Chan taken. 944.l. *in hope of libertie conducteth Haſſan Baſſa through the ſtrait paſſages of Georgia.* 945.b. *caſt in priſon at Erzirũ.* d. *eſcapeth from Ferat.* 972.m. *by the Perſian king (to the great diſcontentmẽt of the Turcomans) made Gouernour of Tauris.* 973.c. *killeth th' Baſſa of Maras, doth the Turks great harme, and ſo flieth from Tauris.* 991.c. *conſpireth with Abas Mirize againſt the Perſian prince.* 1000.h. *being by the prince ſent againſt the Turkes, performeth nothing.* 1001.c

Alis Baſſa with a great armie ouerthrowne by Scanderbeg. 288.k

Alis Baſſa ſent by Baiazet with an armie out of Europe againſt Techellis, ſlaine. 474.l

Alis Beg and his foure ſonnes trecherouſly ſlaine by Ferat Baſſa. 600.l

Alis Baſſa of Buda by the commaundement of Amurath ſtrangled. 1003.d

Alis Beg gouernor of Strigenium comming downe into the lower towne, there ſtaied by his Ianizaries. 1066 k. *his reſolute anſwere vnto the meſſage ſent him from the Lord Palſi.* 1069. e. *ſlaine with a great ſhot.* 1071.e

Almericus earl of Ioppa after the death of his brother Baldwin choſen ſixt king of Ieruſalem. 53.d. *with a puiſſant armie entreth Ægipt, and in plaine battell ouerthroweth Dargan the Sultan.* e. *aideth Sanar the Sultan againſt Saracon, Noradins Generall, whom he ouerthroweth in Egipt.* 56.i. *taketh Alexandria.* l. *winneth Peluſium* 57. *dieth,* 58.k

Aloyſius Gritti the duke of Venice his ſonne ſent by Solyman as his lieutenant into Hungarie, to ouerſee king Iohn. 631. f. *contemned by Americus, cauſeth him to be murthered.* 633.d. *beſieged by the Tranſyluanians.* 634.b. *taken and beheaded.* l. *the great riches found about him.* 635.a

Alphonſus king of Naples ſendeth aid vnto Scanderbeg. 369.f. *with Alexander the Biſhop of Rome craueth aid of Baiazet the Turke againſt Charles the French king.* 551.a

Alphonſus reſigneth his kingdome of Naples vnto his ſonne Ferdinand. 453.e

Alphonſus Daualus Vaſtius, lieutenant Generall of the Emperours land forces in his expedition for Tunes. 655.b. *his ſpeech vnto the Spaniſh captaines.* 659.b. *commaundeth the Emperour.* 665.d. *with Hannibaldus ſent embaſſadours from the Emperour and the French King to the ſtate of Venice, for a confederation betwixt that State and them to bee made againſt Solyman.* 992.g. *his Oration in the Venetian Senate.* h. *the anſwer of the duke.* m. *the Senatours diuerſly affected towards the confederation.* 693.d

Alteration of Religion in the Greeke Church the cauſe of great trouble. 144.m

Ameſa with his Turks ouerthrown and taken priſoner by Scanderbeg. 366.g

Ameſa employed by his vncle Scanderbeg for the recouerie of Croia out of the hands of Turks. 284.h. *corrupted, flieth to Mahomet the Turke.* 373.b. *his firſt ſpeech to Mahomet.* c. *honourably entertained.* 376.i. *by Iſaack Baſſa created king of Epirus.* 375.d. *taken priſoner by Scanderbeg.* 381.d. *ſent priſoner into Italie.* 382.h. *enlarged, returneth to Conſtantinople, and there dieth.* 383.b

Amurath the firſt ſucceedeth his father Orchanes in the Turkiſh kingdome. 189.c. *inuadeth Europe.* d. *taketh Hadrianople.* f. *maketh his royall ſeat in Europe.* 191.b. *beginneth the order of the Ianizaries.* e. *returneth into Aſia.* 192.g. *marieth his ſonne Baiazet vnto Hatune, the daughter of the prince Gyrmean, with a great dowrie.* 193.c. *purchaſeth the principalitie of Amiſum, of Chuſen Beg.* d. *inuadeth Seruia, and taketh Niſſa, the metropoliticall citie thereof.* e. *impoſeth a yearely tribute vpon the countrie of Seruia.* f. *in a great battaile ouerthroweth Aladin the king of Caramania his ſon in law with the other Mahometane princes his confederats.* 196.g. *by his captaines winneth & ſpoileth a great part of Bulgaria.* 199.a. *in a great and mortall battaile ouerthroweth Lazarus the Deſpot of Seruia, with his confederats in the plains of Coſſoua.* 200.i. *ſlaine.* k. *buried at Pruſa.* 201.b

Amurath the ſecond placed in his fathers ſeat. 255.c. *afraid to go againſt the rebell Muſtapha.* 256.h. *in vaine beſieged Conſtantinople.* 258. g. *ſtrangleth his brother Muſtapha.* l. *winneth Theſſalonica.* 260.g. *taketh vnto himſelfe the greateſt part of Ætolia.* i. *enforceth the princes of Athens, Phocis, & Beotia to become his tributaries.* h. *falſifieth his faith with Iohn Caſtriot prince of Epyrus, and poyſoneth his three eldeſt ſonnes his hoſtages.* l. *oppreſſeth the Mahometan princes in Aſia,* 261.c. *ſpoileth Hungarie,* d. *contrarie to his faith inuadeth Seruia, and ſubdueth it,* 262.g. *putteth out the eyes of the Deſpots ſonnes, his wiues brethren.* g. *beſiegeth Belgrade,* 263.c. *dealeth ſubtilly with the embaſſadors of king Vladiſlaus,* 264.g. *notably encourageth his ſouldiours to the aſſault of Belgrade,* h. *ſhamefully repulſed.* 266.h. *his ſullen anſwere vnto the embaſſadours of king Vladiſlaus.* i. *ſendeth Meſites Baſſa, to inuade Tranſyluania,* 276.f. *grieued with the loſſe of Meſites and his armie, ſendeth Abedin Baſſa to reuenge his death,* 270.l. *in deſpaire about to haue ſlaine himſelfe,* 289. a. *by the mediation of the Deſpot of Seruia obtaineth peace of K. Vladiſlaus for ten yeres,* b. *inuadeth Caramania,* d. *wearie of the world, committeth the gouernment of his kingdome to his ſonne Mahomet, and retyreth himſelfe vnto a monaſticall life,* e. *at the report of thoſe preparations of the Hungarians, and requeſt of his Baſſaes, forſaketh his ſolitarie life, and raiſeth a great armie in Aſia,* 296. k *by the Genowayes tranſported with his armie into Europe,* l. *ioyneth battaile with K. Vladiſlaus at Varna,* 297.b. *about to haue fled, reproued of cowardiſe by a common ſouldiour,* c. *prayeth vnto Chriſt,* e. *in danger to haue bin ſlaine,* 298.h. *wiſheth not many times ſo to ouercome as hee did at the battell of Varna,* m. *to perform his vow, reſigneth his kingdome to his ſonne Mahomet, which he ſhortly after reſumeth againe,* 299.b. *his craftie letters to Scanderbeg,* 300.g *his paſſionate ſpeech in his rage againſt Scanderbeg,* 302.i. *breaketh through the Hexamylum, and impoſeth a yearely tribute vpon them of Peloponneſus,* 304.h. *after three daies hard fight with great ſlaughter of his men ouercommeth Huniades in the plaines of Caſſoua,* 309.b *inuadeth the Deſpot,* 310.k. *his graue letters of aduice to Muſtapha concerning his inuading of Epyrus,* 311.e. *commeth with a great armie to Sfetigrade,* 316.l. *in vaine with great furie giueth many a deſperat aſſault vnto the citie,* 319.b. *in one aſſault looſeth ſeuen thouſand of his Turkes.*

Turks, 320.i. by great promises seeketh to corrupt the garrison of Sfetigarde, l. by the practise of one man hath the citie of Sfetigarde yeelded vnto him, 321.e. hauing lost 30000 of his Turkes at the siege of Sfetigarde, returneth to Hadrianople, 322.h. with a great armie commeth againe into Epyrus, and besiegeth Croia, 323.c. in two assaults looseth 8000 of his souldiors, 326.k. content to buy the life of one Christian with the losse of twentie of his Turks, 327.a. seeketh by great gifts to corrupt Vranacontes the Gouernour of Croia, 328.i. ouercome with melancholie, tormenteth himselfe, 330.g. by his embassadors offereth Scanderbeg peace, h. his last speech vnto his sonne Mahomet concerning such things as at his death grieued him most, k. dieth, 331.b. buried at Prusa 332.g

Amurath the sonne of Achomates flieth vnto Hysmaell the Persian king, 504 k. marrieth his daughter, 505.a. spoileth Capadocia, and for feare of his vncle Selymus retireth, d

Amurath the third taketh vpon him the Turkish Empire, 919.c. pacifieth the Ianizaries, and augmenteth their priuiledges, d. strangleth his fiue brethren, e. his letters vnto the nobilitie of Poloma in the behalfe of Stephen Bathor Vayuod of Transyluania, 920.i. attentiue to the stirres in Persia, 923.f. informed thereof by Vstref Bassa of Van, 924.m. resolueth to take the Persian warre in hand. 925.d. by Mustapha aduertised of the successe of the Persian warres, 938.g. consulteth of his proceeding therein, 941.e. discharged Mustapha of his Generalship, and calleth him home to Constantinople, 946.l. appointeth Sinan Generall for the Persian warres, 951.b. in despight of Sinan appointeth Mahamet Bassa Generall for those warres in his stead, 957.e. circumcis. th his eldest sonne Mahomet, 957.a. displaceth Sinan Bassa, & casteth him into exile, 962.l. appointeth Ferat Generall for his warres in Persia, 965.d sendeth for Osman Bassa into Sirnan, 974.h. maketh him chiefe Visier and Generall of his armie into Persia, 976.k. in disporting himselfe with his Muts, taken with a fit of the falling sicknes, 977.d. causeth great triumph to bee made throughout his Empire for the winning of Tauris, 996.b. maketh choice againe of Ferat Bassa to succeed Osman Bassa, dead in the Persian warres, 999.b. concluded a peace with the Persian king, 1005.b. his answere to the letters of Sigismund the third king of Polonia, 1004.b. glad himselfe to yeeld vnto insolencie of the Ianizaries. 1005.f. his letters to Elizabeth Queene of England, 1006.k. perswaded by his Visier Bossaes to take some new warre in hand. 1007.e. in doubt whom first to begin withall, 1008.k. resolueth to make warre vpon the Emperour, with the reasons leading him thereunto, 1014.k giueth leaue to Hassan Bassa of Bosna as it were without his knowledge to picke quarrels with the Emperor, and so to disturbe the peace, m. sendeth home the bodie of the Persian hostage dead in his Court, 1015.c. proclaimeth warre against the Emperour, 1023.f. the proud and blasphemous manner of his denuntiation of warre, 1024.h. he dreameth, 1028.l. sicke of the falling sickenesse, 1048.h. dieth 1053.d

Andrew king of Hungarie maketh an expedition into the Holy land, 88.k. bathing himselfe in the riuer Iordan, returneth with all his power, l

Andronicus aspireth to the Empire, 43 d. ouerthroweth Angelus, set against him with a great power by Alexius the great President, 44.l. encampeth ouer against Constantinople, 45.a. taketh vpon him the gouernment, and tyrannizeth, 47.b. causeth Mary the daughter of Emanuell the Emperor with her husband Cæsar to be poysoned, e. causeth Xene the faire Empresse to be vniustly condemned and strangled, 49.k. by his fauorits and flatterers ioined in the fellowship of the Empire with Alexius the young Emperor, 46.c. depriueth Alexius of the Empire, and causeth him to be strangled, 50.b. destroyeth the Nobilitie, to establish his estate, i. seeketh in vaine to appease the people, in a tumult risen vp against him, 52.b. forsaken of his flattering fauorits. flieth, is taken, and brought back in chaines to Angelus, 53.c. committed to the furie of the people, who with extreme crueltie put him to most shamefull death 54

Andronicus Paleologus the younger exceedingly beloued by old Andronicus his grandfather, 158.h. by the persuasion of Syrgiannes conspireth against his aged grandfather, 159.f. being sent for, commeth vnto him secretly armed, with purpose to haue slaine him, 160.k. secretly flyeth out of Constantinople, 161, b. proclaimed traitour, and prescribed, a. stirreth vp the people of Thracia to rebellion. d. reconciled to his Grandfather, 164 i. crowned fellow in the Empire with his grandfather. m. againe conspireth against his grandfather, 165 b. his craftie speech vnto his grandfathers embassadors, 167 c. seeketh in vaine by night to haue beene receiued into Constantinople, 169 e. is receiued into Thessalonica, 170 g. taketh in the greatest part of Macedonia and Thratia. m. by treason entreth into the citie of Constantinople. 171 e. forbiddeth his captaines and souldiours to violate the maiestie of the old Emperour or any about him, 172 i. humbleth himselfe vnto his grandfather, 173 a. euill perswaded, committeth him to strait keeping, 174 g. wounded in the battaile with Orchanes at Philocrene, 180 m. by his owne departure from his campe discomfiteth his whole Armie, 181 a.

Andronicus Paleologus the old Emperor in restoring againe the Greeke ceremonies, by his father before altered, falleth into great troubles, 146 b. sparing to maintaine his Nauie, weakeneth his Empire. k. suspitious of his brother Constantine. l. by making him away, leaueth the East side of his Empire to bee spoyled by the Turks, 147 e. reposing more trust in forraine aid than in his owne subiects, greatly hurteth his state, 149 b. immoderatly fauoureth his nephew Andronicus, 158 h. setteth Syrgiannes to obserue his doings, 159 a. sendeth embassadors vnto him, 161 d. in his trouble as of an heauenly Oracle asketh counsell of the Psalter, and so maketh peace with his nephew, 164 h. enformed of the euill meaning of his nephew, forbiddeth him to come into the citie, 166 g. his notable speech vnto the Patriarch and the rest of the Bishops and Nobilitie concerning the young Emperour his nephew, 168 k. forsaken of the Patriarch and some others of the Bishops, 169 b. reposeth his whole trust in God, 172 i. his pitifull request vnto the young Emperour his nephew. l. by him depriued of his imperiall dignitie, 174 g. falleth blind. h. against his will made a Monke, and called Anthonie. k. his notable answere vnto the catching question of the proud Patriarch. l. enforced to sweare, neuer againe to resume vnto himselfe the Empire, 175. d. dieth, 176 g. his death by many prodigies

digies foreshowne. h.
Antioche described, 18 h. by the Patriarch betraied to Saladin. 65 a
Apulia spoiled by the Turkes. 671 f
Ares Chan hanged. 939 a
Artillery of exceeding greatnesse made by Mahomet at the siege of Scodra. 418 g.
Asam-Beg with his armie ouerthrown and taken prisoner by Scanderbeg. 383 f.
Asmehemedi iustly rewarded for his treacherie. 178 k
Assan Aga derideth the messengers sent vnto him from Charles the Emperour, 719 b. taketh the Spaniards to mercie. 724 k
Auria with his fleet doth the Turkes great harme in Peloponesus, 626 h. besiegeth Corone, and hath it yeelded vnto him, 627 a. taketh and ransacketh Patras, with the castles of Rhium and Molycreum. c. returneth to Genua. e. trobleth the Turks fleet, and taketh twelue of their gallies full of Ianizaries and of Solymans other best souldiors, 672 l. braueth Barbarussa in the bay of Ambracia, 688 g. shamefully flieth with his fleet, 689 e. dieth. 787 c
Austria spoiled by the Turke, 616 i. Altenburg taken, k.
Austria sore wasted by Cason. 621
Axalla a Christian in great fauour with Tamerlan, and his lieutenant Generall in his warres against the Turke, 214 b. taketh Baiazet the great Turke prisoner, 219 d. without resistance taketh Prusa, 221 b. ouerthroweth one of the Turkes Bassaes, with the slaughter of 30000 Turks, 235 d.

B

Babylon taken and sacked by the Tartars, 113 b. with the countries of Mesopotamia and Assyria yeelded to Solyman. 651 a
Baiazet the first, why surnamed Gilderun, or lightning, 195 f. succeedeth his father Amurath in the Turkish kingdome, 203 b. inuadeth Seruia, c. by Ferises his lieutenant spoyleth Valachia, f. oppresseth most of the Mahometane princes, the successors of Sultan Aladin in the lesser Asia. 204 k. inuadeth Valachia, ouerthroweth the Vayuod, and causeth him to become his tributarie, 205. a. besiegeth Constantinople eight yeares. c. in a great battell at Nicopolis ouerthroweth Sigismund king of Hungarie with his confederats, 206 g. returneth againe to the siege of Constantinople. k. marrieth Despina the faire daughter of Lazarus the Despot, 207 a. pretily reproued by his teacher. d. in battell ouercommeth Aladin the Caramanian king, and deliuereth him prisoner to Temurtases his lieutenant, 208 m. subdueth the Caramanian kingdome, 209 a. hath the great cities of Amasia and Sebastia yeelded vnto him, a. oppresseth the Mahometane princes of the lesser Asia, d. vnciuilely entertaineth the embassadours of Tamerlan sent vnto him in the behalfe of the poore princes by him oppressed, 211. accounteth a shepheard more happy than himself, 216 k. ioyneth a great and mortall battell with Tamerlan, 219 b. forsaken of his owne souldiours, c. ouerthrowne and taken prisoner by Axalla, d. brought to Tamerlan, 220. shut vp in an yron cage like a wild beast, m. dieth miserably, 227 b. his issue, as also his immediat successor vncertaine, 231 c. his true posteritie, 232 g.
Baiazet the second excluded from the succession in the Turkish empire by his sonne Corcutus, commeth to Constantinople, 437 e. by the mediation of the great Bassaes obtaineth the kingdome of Corcutus, 438 g. goeth against his brother Zemes, vp in rebellion against him, i. in doubt to haue beene betraied by his souldiors, 441 c. reuiled by the Ianizaries, 444 h. putteth some of thē to death, 445 a. purposeth their vtter destruction. b. glad to dissemble his purpose and to reconcile himselfe vnto them, f. sendeth Dautins his embassadour to Alexander bishop of Rome, 451 d glad to heare that diuers of the Christian princes had combined thēselues against the French King, 456 i. in danger to haue beene slaine by a Dernistar or Turkish Monk. 463. c. Baiazet by nature peaceable, d. his children, 467, k. sendeth embassadors with presents vnto his sonne Selymus 480. i. seeking to preferre Achomates his eldest son to the empire, himselfe yet liuing, is mightily withstood by the souldiours of the Court, before corrupted by Selymus, 481. b. hee forbiddeth Selymus to come vnto him, and threateneth him. 482. h. fearing to loose Constantinople, departeth from Hadrionople, i. his resolute speech vnto the Ianizaries and other souldiors of the Court, 484. l. in plaine battell ouercommeth his son Selymus at Tzurulum. 485. d. willing the second time to haue resigned his empire vnto Achomates, is again withstood by his men of war, 487. b. his resolute answere vnto Mustapha and the other traiterous Bassaes, after that Selymus was by their practise by the souldiors of the Court saluted Emperour, 494. k. poisoned by Hamon his physitian, a Iew, 495. f dyeth 496. g
Baiazet Solyman his younger sonne seeketh to aspire vnto the Empire, his father yet liuing, 768. h. setteth vp a counterfeit Mustapha to make an head to his intended rebellion, k. the subtile and crafty dealing of the supposed Mustapha, to deceiue the people, l. forsaken of his followers, is taken and brought to Solyman at Constantinople, 770. g. secretly with his complices drowned, h. Baiazet sent for by his father, goeth vnto him in feare. l. in few words comforted by his mother, 771. a. sharpely for his disloyaltie disproued by his father, & so by him pardoned, b. returneth againe to his charge, d. after the death of Roxolana, his mother, raiseth new stirres, e. admonished of his dueti e by his father, 772. h. vnwilling to goe to Amasia, the prouince appointed him by his father, seeketh delaies, 773. k. by a Chiaus requesteth his father not to intermeddle betwixt his brother and him. 774. h. making shew as if hee would go to Amasia, stayeth at Ancyra, and there raiseth his forces, l. his quarell generally fauoured of the souldiours, 775. b. his purpose. d. hee goeth against his brother towards Iconium, e. fighteth a bloudie battaile with his brother Selymus, wherein were fortie thousand Turkes slaine, 776. g. put to the worse, retyreth, and so goeth to Amasia. h. more commended by the souldiours in his ouerthrowe, than was his brother in his victorie, i. seeketh againe for his fathers fauour, 777. f. despairing thereof, flyeth into Persia, deceiuing by the way the Bassaes of Sebastia and Erzirum, 778. k at the first well entertained by the Persian King, 779. e. his followers by the cunning of the fearefull Persian dispersed & slaine. 780. k. hee himselfe with his sonnes imprisoned, l. his miserable estate in prison, 781. f. with his foure sonnes at the instance of his father by the Persian strangled 782. b
Baiazet Bassa sent by Amurath against Mustapha the rebell, forsaken of his souldiours yeeldeth, 255. e. vpon a false surmise executed. f

Baldwin

Baldwin Countie of *Edessa*, and brother to *Godfrey* second King of *Ierusalem*, 25 *a.* winneth *Cæsaria* from the Infidels, *b.* ouerthroweth the Turkes hard by *Rama*, *c.* besiegeth *Ptolemais*, and in retiring thence is mortally wounded, *e.* besiegeth it againe, & hath it by composition yeelded vnto him, *e.* after many sharpe assaults winneth *Berythus*, 26 *h.* taketh *Sidon* by composition, and in vaine besiegeth *Tire*, *i.* maketh an expedition into *Ægypt*, and neere vnto *Laris* dieth, *m.*

Baldwin, surnamed *Brugensis*, county of *Edessa*, besiegeth *Carras*, & there taken prisoner, after fiue yeres captiuitie redeemeth himselfe, 25. *d.* after the death of *Baldwin* the first chosen King of *Ierusalem*, and called *Baldwin* the second, 27. *a.* ouerthroweth the Turkes, and ioyneth the principalitie of *Antioch* to his owne kingdome, *d.* by *Balac* the Persian Sultan ouerthrowne and taken prisoner: after 18 moneths captiuitie for the ransome of 100000 duckats set at libertie, 28 *l.* in three notable battels ouerthroweth the King of *Damasco*, 29 *a.* dieth, *h.*

Baldwin the third of that name crowned King of *Ierusalem*, 31 *a.* hardly distressed by *Noradin* the Turke, *b.* he fortifieth *Gaza*, and taketh *Ascalon* by composition, 34 *i.* in a set battell ouerthroweth *Noradin* the King of *Damasco* at the castle of *Suetta*, 35 *f.* falleth sicke and dieth, 36 *h.*

Baldwin the fourth of that name, 7 K. of *Ierusalem*, 58 *l.* with a great slaughter ouerthroweth *Saladin* inuading his kingdome, 59 *d.* putteth him with his great armie againe to flight, 60 *k.* resigneth the gouernmẽt of his Kingdome to *Guy Lusignan*, countie of *Ioppa* and *Ascalon*, 61 *b.* sendeth embassadors vnto the Christian princes of the West, and immediatly after dieth, 62 *i*

Baldwin the fift of that name, yet but a Boy, was crowned 8 King of *Ierusalem*, and within 7 moneths after dieth, 62 *i*

Baldwin countie of *Flaunders* & *Hainault*, chosen by the Latins emperor of Constantinople, and so solemnely crowned, 83 *c.* subdueth *Thracia*, and besiegeth *Hadrianople*, 85 *a.* ouerthrowne in battell by the Scythians, & taken prisoner, is by the commandement of their barbarous king most cruelly put to death, *d.*

Baldwin the second of that name, fift & last emperour of the Latines in Constantinople, 79 *a.* pawneth his sonne vnto the Bruges merchants for money, 112 *m.* flieth out of the citie of Constantinople, being surprized by *Alexius Strategopulus*, sent from *Michael Paleologus* the Greeke Emperour, 124 *m*

Balabanus sent by *Mahomet* against *Scanderbeg*, 393 *b.* put to flight, taketh diuers of *Scanderbegs* best captaines prisoners at *Alchria*, 396 *g.* with his armie ouerthrowne at *Oronycheum*, *l.* the third time ouerthrowne in the battell at *Sfetigrade*, 397 *b.* ouerthrowne by *Scanderbeg* the fourth time in the battell at *Valcha*, 389. *a.* left by *Mahomet* to continue the siege of *Croia*, 400. *l.* slaine. *c.*

Barbarussa succeedeth his brother *Horruccius* in the kingdome of *Algiers*, 636 *i.* his wonderful successe, *k* sent for by *Solyman*, *l.* enuied in the Turkes Court, 637 *b.* by *Solyman* himselfe reiected to *Abraham* the great Bassa. *d.* trauelleth by land vnto him into *Syria*, and by him commended to *Solyman*, *e.* his speech to *Solyman*, to perswade him to inuade the kingdome of *Tunes*, 638 *g.* he is made *Solymans* great admirall, 639 *d.* spoileth the coasts of *Italy*, 640 *m.* passeth ouer into *Africke*, and hath *Biserta* yeelded vnto him, 643 *b.* commeth to *Guletta*, deceiueth the citizens, and is receiued into *Tunes*. *f.* discomfiteth the citizens risen vp against him *b.* hath the Citie of *Tunes* yeelded vnto him, 645 *c.* is much discouraged with the comming of *Charls* the emperour into *Africk*, 656 *h.* in his rage executeth *Aloysius Presenda*. *i.* encourageth his souldiors. *l.* his chiefe captaines, 657 *b.* the Countie of *Sarne* his head and right hand by *Salec* sent vnto him for a present, 658 *l.* his fleet taken by *Charles* the Emperour at *Guletta*, 661 *a.* he rageth. *b.* calmed by *Sinan* the Iew. *c.* in field with his army against *Charles* the emperour, 665 *e.* flieth to *Tunes*, 666 *g.* dissuaded by *Sinan* the Iew from killing the Christian captiues, who shortly after breaking prison, driue the Turkes out of the castle of *Tunes*, 666 *l.* flieth to *Hippona*, and there comforteth his souldiours, 668 *k.* escapeth to *Algiers*, 669 *b.* sent by *Solyman* against the Venetians, 687 *a.* repulsed in Crete. *b.* reproued of cowardise by one of the Turks Eunuchs, 688 *h.* sicketh at the flight of *Auria*, 689 *e.* braueth the Christians at *Corcyra*, 690 *g.* suffereth shipwrack vpon the *Acroceraunean* rockes, *k.* with a great fleet sent by *Solyman* to aid the French King against *Charls* the Emperor, 735 *a.* burneth *Rhegium*, and taketh the castle, *b.* becommeth amorous of the Captaine of *Rhegium* his daughter, *c.* maketh them afraid in Rome, *d.* commeth to *Marseilles*, *f.* for lacke of imployment groweth discontented, 742. *l.* with the French besiegeth *Nice* in *Prouence*, 743. *c.* rageth against the French, and threateneth *Polinu*, 784. *b.* giueth ouer the siege of the castle of *Nice*, and setteth fire on the citie, *i.* derided by the Turkes Captaines, sharpely answereth their taunts, 744. *l.* rewarded and discharged by the French King, departeth out of *Prouence*, 749. *d.* requesteth of *Appianus* Gouernour of *Elba*, to haue a sonne of *Sinan* the Iews their prisoner, deliuered vnto him, *e.* spoileth the *Island*, and hath the young man deliuered vnto him, 750. *g.* in his return to Constantinople doth much harme vpon the coast of *Italie*, *m.* dieth 751. *c*

Barbadicus the *Venetian* Proueditour a notable man, 874. *l* slaine in the battell of *Lepanto* 680. *g*

Barbarous crueltie 909. *e*

the *Barbarous* manner of the Turkish Sultans, to murther their brethren in the beginning of their reigne, when and by whom first begun 201. *a*

Bare shift for mony 345. *e*

the Bassa of *Bosna* & his brother slaine, 1002. *i*

the Bassa of *Temesuar* ouerthrown by the Raseians and slaine 1138. *k*

the Bassa of *Buda* taken prisoner, 1110. *i*

the Bassa of *Bosna* slaine 1110. *k*

the Bassa of *Natolia* taken prisoner by the prince of *Sarcan*, 217. *c.* his stout answer to *Tamerlan*, *d.* by *Tamerlan* set at libertie, and rewarded, *e*

the Bassa of *Buda* slaine 1136. *l*

the Bassa of *Agria* with 10000 *Turkes* ouerthrowne by *Ferrant Gonzaga*, and chased to the gates of the citie, 1141. *g*

Basilicus a faithfull man vnto his prince 170. *b*

Battels.

A cruell Battell fought betwixt *Solyman* the Turke and the Christian princes going towards the Holy land. 161. an hundred thousand Turkes slaine in the battell neere vnto *Antioch*, betwixt *Corbanas* the Persian Sultans lieutenant, and the Christi-an

an princes, 20 b. 100000 Turkes and Sarasins slaine in the great battell not far from Ascalon, fought betwixt Goufrey of Buillon and the Turkes and Sarasins, 24 l. the great battell betwixt Amurath the first and Lazarus the Despot, fought in the plaines of Cossoua, 200 i. the battell of Nicopolis betwixt Baiazet the first and Sigismund king of Hungarie. 206 g. the great & mortall battell betwixt Baiazet and the great Tamerlan, 219 b. the battell of Vascape betwixt Huniades and Abedin Bassa, 273 e. the wofull battell of Varna betwixt king Uladislaus and Amurath the second, 297 b. the great battell of Cossoua fought three daies together betwixt Amurath and Huniades, 307 d. the battell betwixt Vsun-Cassanes the Persian king and Mahomet the great, 410 l. the battell of Tzurulum betwixt Baiazet and his son Selymus, 485 d. the great battell between Selymus and Hysmael, 510 m. the battell of Singa betwixt Selymus and Campson, 529 e. the battell betwixt Sinan Bassa & Gazelles, 535 e. the great battell of Rhodania betwixt Selymus and Tomombeius, 539 e. the great and dreadfull battell of Caire fought two dayes together betwix the Mamalukes & the Turks 545 e. the battell of Mohatchz, betwixt Solyman and king Lewis, 602 k. the battell of Toccaie betwixt the armies of K. Iohn & K. Ferdinand, 606 h. the memorable battell of Lepanto, betwixt Haly Bassa and Don Iohn, 878 h. the battell of Sancazan betwixt the Persian prince and the Turkes, Osman their Generall then lying sicke, 994 m. the battel of Alba Regalis betwixt the Imperials and the Turks, 1026 h. the battell of Strigonium, 1068 h. the battell of Agria betwixt Mahomet the third and Maximilian the Archduke, the Emperors brother 1097 d

Bedredin the counterfeit Prophet hanged 251 d

Begum the Persian queene made away 941 a

Belgrade besieged by Amurath the second, 263 c. notably defended by the Christians, 266 g. againe besieged by Mahomet the Great, 357 b. woon by Solyman 569 b

Belgrade in the confines of Epirus besieged by Scanderbeg 370 h

Blondie precepts left by Selymus vnto his sonne Solyman 562 b

Bodo constant to King Iohn 606 k

Bosna of a kingdom converted to a province of the Turks Empire 365 b

Bosna with some part of Sernia taken from the Turkes by Matthias K. of Hungarie 404 k

Bragadinus Gouernour of Famagusta encourageth his soldiors, 864 i. yeeldeth vnto the request of the citizens of Famagusta, in time to deliuer vp the citie, not now longer to be defended, 866 k. entreth into parley with the Turkes, l. comming to the false Bassa Mustapha vnto his faith, for his saftie before giuen, is by him most shamefully and horribly murthered, 867 a

Buda besieged by the L. Rogendorff, K. Ferdinand his lieutenant, 702 i. surprised by Solyman, 710 k. besieged, and the lower citie taken by the Lord Palfi, 1105 c. the castle by him battered, vndermined, and in vaine assaulted, 1105 c. the lower citie of Buda againe taken by the Christians. 1146 i. the vpper citie and castle besieged, 1174 b. in vaine assaulted f. the siege for feare of the Tartars giuen ouer by the Christians, 1149 c.

C

CAffa with the countrie of Taurica Chersonesus subdued by the Turks 412 l

Caire described, 542 m. taken by Selymus 545 i

Calo Ioannes after the death of Alexius his father succeedeth him in the Empire, 27 c. he taketh Tarsus in Cilicia, besiegeth Antioch, and vpon composition raiseth his siege, 30 g. wounded with a poysoned arrow, dyeth, k.

Calcis the chiefe citie of Eubœa besieged by the Turkes, 405 d. taken by the Turkes 406 h

Callipolis taken by the Turkes 186 g

Caly Bassa dissuadeth Mahomet from the siege of Constantinople, 344. l. Caly Bassa cruelly executed, 350 g

Calybeus Bassa and Cherseogles after a long and mortall battell taken by Vsbeg, and sent prisoners to Caytbeus 450 b

Campson Gaurus with what causes moued to fall out with Selymus, 522 g his moderat and happie gouernment 524 l. his answere vnto the embassadors of Selymus, 525 a. perplexed, 527 b. slaine, 530 i. his dead bodie laied out to bee seene of all men. 531 a

Canalis the Venetian Admirall doth the Turks great harme, 405 a. with his whole familie exiled 406 d

Camsia besieged by the Turks 1131 c cowardly yeelded, 1132 h. besieged by Ferdinand the Archduke, 1137. b. the siege by reason of tempest and extremitie of weether giuen ouer, 1138 k

Capcapus Gouernor of Damasco reuolteth from the Tartars to the Turkes, 126 i

Carasina yeelded vnto Orchanes, 184 h

Caragusa a Turke offereth a challenge vnto any of the souldiors in Scanderbegs armie 312 h

Caragoses Bassa Beglerbeg of Asia, in a great battell ouerthrowne by Techellis, 472 h. taken prisoner, 473 a horribly empaled by the high wayes side 474 g

Caramania by Baiazet vnited to the Othoman Empire 447 e

Caracoza the famous pyrat slain 881 e

Carazies Bassa slaine 357 d

Cardinall Bathor taketh vpon him the principalitie of Transyluania, 1109. f. in a great battell ouerthrowne by Michaell the Vayuod, 1113 c. his head sent for a present vnto the Emperor, e

Cassan Bassa slaine 510 m

the Castle of Buda by the garrison souldiors without the consent of their captaine yeelded to Solyman 610 g

Cassanes the Tartar inundeth Syria, 125 c. in a great battell ouerthroweth Melcenaser the Ægyptian Sultans lieutenant, d. repayreth Ierusalem, and giueth it to the Christians, hath Damasco yeelded vnto him, e

Castronouum taken from the Turks & by the Imperials vniustly detained from the Venetians, 690 g. recouered againe by Barbarussa 691 d

the Catalonians entertained by Andronicus the Emperour, for want of pay spoile his subiects, 151 a. take the spoile of Callipolis, and there fortifying themselues, doe great harme both by sea and land, d. aided by the Turkes, ouerthrowe Michaell the Emp. in plaine battell, 152 k. spoile a great part of Thracia, 153 a. seat themselues in the cities of Athens and Thebes 154 i

Caytbeius the Ægyptian Sultan sendeth embassadors to Baiazet in the behalf of Zemes, 440 l. dieth, 450 i

Cayerbeius Gouernour of Comagena bearing a grudge to Campson, hath intelligence with Selymus, 528 k. plaieth the cunning traitor, 529 d. by Selymus made Gouernour of Cayre and Ægypt 554 h

Cazia-

Cazianer Generall of King Ferdinands armie against the Turkes, 677.e. besiegeth Execk, 680.i. to retire with more hast, would haue broken his great ordnance, 681.c. a generall feare in his campe, 682.i. his dishonorable flight, 683.e. generally hated, 685.f. breaketh prison, 686.b shamefully murthered, and his head sent to King Ferdinand, i

Cephalenia taken from the Turks by the Venetians 460.k

Chamuzes Bassa and Catabolinus the Turks secretaries hanged by Wladus 361.d

Charles the French King inuadeth the kingdome of Naples, 453.d. receiued into the citie of Naples 455.d

Charls the Emp. his great preparation against Solyman, 616.h. his power at Vienna, 622.l. after the departure of Solyman returneth into Italy 626.g. his great preparation for the inuasion of Tunes, 654.m. he passeth ouer into Africk 656.g. landeth his armie at Guletta, 657.e. deserueth the Oken garland, 663.c. hee marcheth towards Tunes, 664.i. content to be commaunded by his lieutenant, 665.d. putteth Barbarussa to flight, f. hath Tunes yeelded vnto him, 667.e. restoreth it to Muleasses, now become his tributarie, 669.d. returneth to Italy, e. with the Venetians and the Bishop of Rome entreth into a confederation against Solyman, 686.l. inuadeth Algiers, 718.i. sendeth a messenger to Assan Aga Gouernour of Algiers for Barbarussa, m. his messenger and message scorned by Assan Aga the Eunuch, 719.b. his notable courage in staying the flight of his armie, 721.e. most part of his fleet lost by tempest, 722.b. the miserie of his armie, 723.a. horses good meat in his campe, c. raiseth his siege and departeth from Algiers, d. drowneth his horses of great price, to make roome for his common souldiers 724.b. after many troubles arriueth at length at new Carthage in Spaine, 725.a. resigneth his empire vnto his brother Ferdinand, and shortly after dieth 783.a

Charles Countie Mansfelt sent by the K. of Spaine out of the Low countries with 2000 horse and 6000 foot to aid the Emperour in his warres against the Turke, 1061.d. by the Emperour appointed lieutenant Generall of his armie in the lower Hungarie vnder Matthias the Archduke, and created one of the princes of the Empire, 1061.e. with seueritie appeaseth the mutinous Germanes, 1064.g. remoueth suddenly with his armie from Dotis to Strigonium, 1065.b. in a great battell ouerthroweth the Bassa of Buda comming to the reliefe of Strigonium, 1068.i. dieth at Komara 1070.k

Charzin three and twentie daies fortified by the Turks 943.f

Chasan Chelife and Schach-Culi, two hypocriticall Persians, authors of the sect of the Cuselbassas or Readheads among the Turks, 495.e. stirre vp a great rebellion, 469.e. Chasan Chelife slaine 474.i

Chendemus Bassa by many graue reasons dissuadeth Selymus from inuading the Persian, 506.h. hee is by the commandment of Selymus vnworthily slaine 507.b

Cherseogles Bassa what he was, and why he turned Turke, 484.g. a fauourer of learning, i. the onely of great man faithfull to Baiazet, persuadeth him to giue battell vnto his rebellious son Selymus 483.d

Chios taken by the Turkes 819.c

Chiroche dissuadeth the Bassaes Partan & Haly from giuing battell vnto the Christians at Lepanto, 875.b. encounteth with Contarenus, 880.i. slaine, and his gallie taken, l

Christians fight against Christians, to the confusion of themselues, and benefit of the Turke, 340.k. in seeking too greedily after the spoile, ouerthrowne and discomfited in the battell at Karesta 1089.g

Cicala Bassa by the appointment of Osman the Visier Bassa commaundeth the Turkes great armie after his death in the returne thereof from Tauris, 995.c. discharged the army at Van, 996.h. afraid to giue aid to Giaffer Bassa at Tauris, 998.l. restoreth the battell before lost at Karesta, 1098. with a great fleet commeth to see his mother the ladie Lucretia at Messina 1107.b

Columnius the Popes Admirall interposeth himselfe as a mediatour betwixt Don Iohn and Venerius the Venetian Admirall, and so well appeaseth the matter 874.g

Comparison betwixt Baiazet and Tamerlan 227.c

Confederation hard to trust vpon, 840.b

Conrade Marquesse of Montferrat slain by two desperat ruffians 17.d

Conrade the third Emperor of Germany taketh vpon him an expedition into the Holie land. 31.c. cannot be suffered to enter into Constantinople, but is treacherously dealt withall by the Greeke Emperor, 32. with a notable speech encourageth his souldiours to aduenture the riuer Meander, 33.a. with a great slaughter ouerthroweth the Turkes, 34.g. besiegeth Iconium, and so returneth, b.

Constantine prince of Bulgaria with the Tartars inuade the territories of Paleologus the Greeke Emperour, and spoileth Thracia. 1176

Constantine the Despot sent by the old Emperour Andronicus his brother against young Andronicus his Nephew, 163.a. taken prisoner at Thessalonica, and miserably vsed, f.

Constantine the Greeke Emperour in vaine craueth aid of the other Christian princes, 340.h. at the winning of Constantinople by the Turks, troden to death. 347.b

Constantinople built by Pausanias, destroied by Seuerus, reedified by Constantine the Great, 342.a. how seated, 340.a. taken and spoiled by the Latines, 83.a. recouered from the Latines by Alexius Strategopulus, 115.d. betraied vnto the young Emperour Andronicus, 171.d. in vaine besieged by Amurath the second, 257.f. againe besieged by Mahomet the Great, 340.k. assaulted by the Turks, 346.k. woon, 347.c

Contarenus the Venetian Admirall slaine, 413.e

Corcutus saluted Emperour before his father Baiazet, 437.d. kindly resigneth the Empire to his father, 438.g giuen to the studie of Philosophie, and therefore not beloued of the Ianizaries, 478.k. commeth to Constantinople, 491.d. his notable speech vnto his father, to perswade him to resigne vnto him the Empire before the comming of his brother Selymus, 491.e. comforted by his father, and put in hope of the Empire, 492.m. flieth to Magnesia, 495.a. sought after by Selymus, hideth himselfe in a caue, 501.f. is found and taken, 522.g. by the commandement of Selymus strangled. h.

Cortug-Ogli the pyrat perswadeth Solyman to besiege the Rhodes, 570.g

Corone, Pylus, and Crissenm, cities of Peloponesus belonging to the Venetians, yeelded vnto the Turks, 460.h

Corone besieged by the Turkes, 627.f. relieued by Auria, 629.d. abandoned and forsaken by the Spaniards, 631.c.

Cornea and Serbellio two ancient Spanish captaines perswade the giuing of battaile vnto the Turks at Lepanto, 872.i.

Costly dishes, 745.d

Cowardise

Cowardise punished 1093.e
Crete described 868.h
Croia besieged by Amurath the second, 323.b in vaine assaulted, 324.k. besieged by Mahomet the great, 400.i relieued, 401.c. againe besieged by Mahomet, 402.h. the third time besieged, 413.d. yeelded to the Turks 417.a
Cubates Selymus his embassador commeth to Venice, 839.f. but homely entertained there, 840.f. his speech in the Senate of Venice, k. for feare of the people secretly conueyed away, 842.g
Curzola foraken by the men, defended by women 869.e
Cusahin Bassa of Caramania riseth vp in rebellion against Mahomet the third, 1114.k. ouerthroweth the Sanzacks sent to haue oppressed him l. at the comming of Mehemet the Visier Bassa, sent against him, flyeth, 1115.b. forsaken of his followers, is taken and tortured to death at Constantinople, d
the Cuselbassas, when and how they begun amongst the Turks 465.f
Cyprus described, 843.b. how that kingdome came to the Venetians, e. taken from them by Selymus the second, 867.f
Cyrene yeelded vnto the Turks 852.i
Czarnieuiche corrupted, giueth the Turkes passage ouer the Danubius into Valachia, 911.d. reuolteth vnto the Turkes 912.k

D

Damasco betraied to Saladin Sultan of Ægypt, 58.m. taken and sacked by the Tartars, 113.e. yeelded to Selymus 532.m
Damiata, and the description thereof, 89.a. taken by the Christians, being before vnpeopled by the plague, 92.m.
Dandalus Admirall of the Venetian fleet 85.a
Dauid and Alexius Comneni, nephews to Andronicus the Emperour, erect vnto themselues a new Empire in Trapezond 84.l
Dauid the last Emp. of Trapezond put to death by Mahomet the Great, and that empire subuerted 36.m
Daut Chan for his good seruice reuarded by Amurath the third 996.i
Dearth in the Turkes armie at Triala, 970.b
Debreus slaine, and his armie ouerthrowne by Scanderbeg 367.c
Dedesmet the Georgian widow with her sonne Alexander, submit themselues to Mustapha the great Bassa 937.e
Delimenthes with fiue thousand Persians pursueth the Turkes armie, 652.k. assaileth their campe by night, and maketh of them a great slaughter m.
Demetrius submitteth himselfe vnto Mahomet the Great 355.b
Demetrius the Rhodian traitor slaine, 329.a
Desdrot Gouernour of Stellusa, to the terrour of the Turkes in Sfetigarde, before their faces executed 287.a
Didymotichum yeelded vnto the Turks 189.e
Diogenes the Emperor discomfiteth the Turks, 8.h. himselfe by the treason of Iohn Ducas by them againe ouerthrowne, 9.e. taken prisoner, 10.g. honourably vsed by the Turkes Sultan, h. ouerthrowne and taken prisoner by Andronicus, hath his eyes put out, whereof he dyeth, m
Dissention among the Turkes, about the succession, after the death of Mahomet the Great 437.b
Dissention betwixt Don Iohn and Venerius the Venetian Admirall 873.e
Diuma castle of the Venetians in the East Indies in vaine assaulted by the Turkes 670.l
Doganes Aga of the Ianizaries whipt, and displaced 339.b
Dotis taken by the Turkes 1099.c
Dragut a most famous Pyrat of the Turkes by Auria driuen out of the citie of Africa in the Kingdome of Tunes, 752.i. commeth to the siege of Malta, 797.b. his souldiours enforced shamfully to retire, 799. slaine 801.b
Dracula Vayuod of Valachia dissuadeth K. Vladislaus from further proceeding in his wars against Amurath 205.e. aideth him with his sonne and 4000 horse, 296.h. his last farwell vnto the King, i
the Drusian people what they are, 982.i
Dulcigno, Antiuari, and Budua, strong townes of the Venetians vpon the coasts of Epyrus and Dalmatia, yeelded to the Turke 869.a
the Duke of Muscouie his letters and presents sent vnto the Emperour, 1071.a
Duke Mercurie Generall of the Emperours forces in the lower Hungarie, commeth in vaine to relieue Canisia. 1131.e. in retiring looseth 3000 of his men, with certaine pieces of great ordnance and his baggage, 1132.g. besiegeth Alba Regalis. 1134.m. winneth it, 1135.f. enforceth Assan the Turkes Generall with the losse of 6000 of his Turks to retire 1136.l
Dyrrhachium now called Durazo taken by the Turks 461.c

E

Earthquake most terrible in Constantinople 476.b
Edward, eldest sonne to Henry the third King of England, taketh vpon him an expedition into the Holy land, and arriueth at Tunes, 119.c. arriueth at Ptolemais, 120.g. taketh Nazareth, and putteth the Turks to flight h. by a desperat Sarasin dangerously wounded with an enuenomed knife, k. cured of his wound, maketh peace with the Sultan, and returneth into England 121.a
the Egiptians diuersly affected towards the Mamalukes 542.i
Eimases Bassa hath his eyes burnt out. 258.m
Elpis the Ægyptian Sultan besiegeth Tripolis, and taketh it by force, 122.l. winneth Sidon and Berythus, and raseth them, taketh Tyre by composition, and winneth all the strong holds in Syria and Palestine from the Christians, except only the strong citie of Ptolemais, 122.m. maketh peace with the remainder of the Christians, m
Emanuel the Greeke Emperour with a great power inuadeth the dominions of the Sultan of Iconium. 38.h. looseth a great part of his armie, 39.c. in danger to haue been taken, notably defendeth himselfe, 40.l. in his greatest distresse hath peace offered him by the Sultan, which he gladly accepteth. 42.i. hee vanquisheth Atapacke the Sultans Generall. m. falleth sicke and dyeth 43.e
Emanuell the Greeke Emperour vpon hard conditions obtaineth peace of Baiazet the Great Turke, and becommeth his tributarie, 206.l. by his embassadours offereth his Empire vnto Tamerlan, and so to become his vassale, 221.d. commeth himselfe vnto him at Prusa, 222.b. honorably entertaineth him comming in priuate ouer to Constantinople, i
Embassadors sent from Tamas the Persian King to Selymus, 836.h. honorably entertained by the Turkes at Hadrianople, 837.b. the Persian embassador in going to visit Muhamet the Visier Bassa, in danger to haue beene slaine, d. the rich presents by him giuen to Selymus 838.g
Emir Hamze the Persian Prince commeth into Syrnan, 939.c. killeth Caitau Bassa, and recouereth Eres, d. ouerthroweth the Tartars, and taketh

taketh Abdilcheray, 940.g. recouereth Sumachia, i. returneth to Casbin, k. ouerthroweth the vauward of the Turkes armie, 990.l. in a great battaile ouerthroweth Cicala Bassa and the Bassa of Caraemit, 993.b dareth Osman the Turkes Generall to battell, c. with his own hand killeth the Bassa of Caraemit, f. killeth also the Bassa of Trapezonde, with twentie thousand Turkes moe, 994.g. ouerthroweth twenty thousand of the Turkes in the battell of Sanoazan, 995.b. ouercommeth the rebellious Turcomans, and executeth their leaders, 998.h. sacketh Salmas, 1000.k. putteth the Bassa of Reiuan to flight, l. slaine by one of his Eunuchs 1002.h

Emir Chan hauing his eyes put out, dieth miserably in prison 973.c

the Emperor, the French king, and the king of Polonia intangled in their leagues with the Turk, refuse to giue aid vnto the Venetians against him 842.k

the Empire of Trapezond ouerthrowne and subuerted by Mahomet the Great 361.a

Ertogrul with his brother Dunder and foure hundred families of the Turks stay in their returne towards Persia, 133.f. by his good seruice obtaineth of Sultan Aladin a place at Suguta for himselfe and his Turkes to dwell in, 434.k. taketh the castle of Cara-Chisar from the Christians 135.a

Eubœa taken from the Venetians by Mahomet the Great 406.k

Eurenoses his rich present vnto Amurath at the mariage of his sonne Baiazet 193.b

Eudocia the Empresse contrarie to her oath desirous to marie, dealeth cunningly with the Patriarch to dispence with her oath, 7.d. marrieth Diogenes Romanus, a prisoner condemned to die, and maketh him Emperor, f. she is deposed by the traitors, Iohn Ducas, Psellus, and others, and thrust into a Monasterie 10.i

Eustace Gouernour of the kingdome of Ierusalem, discomfiteth the Sarasins in a great battell neere vnto Ascalon, and not long after dieth 28.i

F

FAmagusta besieged by the Turkes, 852.k. hath a new supplie put into it by Quirinus, 855.c. described, 863.b the number of the defendants in it, c. twice assaulted and notably defended by the Christians, d. e. vndermined, 865.a. furiously by the Turkes assaulted, and valiantly by the Christians defended, b. a great part of the wall blowne vp, and the citie againe assaulted, 866.g. yeelded vp to the Turkes, m

Famine in Scodra 426.g

Faulconers & Huntsmen in great number in the Turks Court 338.k

Ferat Bassa sent by Solyman against Alis Beg the mountaine Prince, 600.i trecherously murthereth him and his foure sonnes, l.

Ferat Bassa by Amurath chosen Generall of his armie against the Persians in stead of Sinan, 963.d. in the space of fifteene daies buildeth a fort at Reiuan, as he was by Amurath commaunded, 966.i. breaketh vp his armie at Erzirum, 967.d. raiseth a new armie, f. fortifieth Lori, 968.k. buildeth a fort vpon the strait of Tomanis, 969.a. reproueth Veis Bassa of Aleppo, 970.k. is himselfe reuiled by the Ianizaries and Spahi, l. by them disobeyed and threatened, 971.d. his stout answer to his mutinous souldiours, f. his tents ouerthrowne, and he againe threatened, 972.g. disgraced, breaketh vp his armie at Ardachan, k. grieuously complained of to Amurath, 973.e by Amurath againe made Generall against the Persians, 999.b. commeth to Van, 1000.g. putteth succourt into Tauris, 1001.d. taketh Genge, 1004.m. sent by Mahomet Generall of his armie into Hungarie, 1060.l. disgraced at his first comming to the armie, m. ouerthrowne in Valachia, 1062.h. sent for to Constantinople, and there strangled, 1073.b

Ferdinand K. of Bohemia layeth claim to the kingdome of Hungarie, 605.b taketh Buda, c. crowned King of Hungarie, 606.k. seeketh for the fauour of Solyman. 608.i. by him reiected and threatened k. persuaded by the Hungarian fugitiues to inuade Hungarie, 698.g. dissuaded by Lascus k. sendeth Lascus to Solyman, and other embassadours to the queene of Hungarie, to demaund of her that kingdome, 699.b he inuadeth Hungarie, 700.g. taketh Pesth and Vacia, and besieged Buda, h. dieth 191.d

Fileck taken by the Christians 1027.c

Foscarus a graue Senatour, 693.f. vnworthily disgraced by the multitude 694.g

Fourteen wagons loaded with the heads of the slaine Christians 1017.c

Francis the French King the more to trauble the emperor sollicited Solyman to inuade his territories 725.c

Francis Accianoli duke of Thebes by the commandment of Mahomet murthered 354.l

Frederick the Emperour taketh vpon him an expedition into the Holy land 66.h

Fredericke duke of Suevia the Emperors sonne, in his fathers stead chosen Generall of the Christians armie, 66.m. hath Antioch deliuered vnto him, 67.d. dieth of the plague, and is buried by his father in the Cathedrall Church at Tyre 68.g

Fredericke the Germane Emperor vndertaketh an expedition into the Holy land, 98.l. crowned king of Ierusalem, which is by him repaired, 99.e

the Frenchmen and Wallons in mutinie at Pappa, 1116.k. compact with the Turks to deliuer to them the towne, 1117.a. seeking secretly to haue fled, are most of them slaine, and the rest that were taken put to most horrible tortures 1119.b

Friuli part of the Venetian territorie miserably spoiled by the Turks, 414.l. againe spoyled by Scander Bassa and the Turks 458.h

the Frontires of the Emperors territories grieuously spoyled by the Tartars 1150.k

the Frugalitie of the Turkes 713.f

Fulke Countie of Thurin, Maine and Anioy, taketh vpon him an expedition into the Holy land, 19.h. dieth of a fall off his horse in hunting, and is buried at Ierusalem 30.m

Fuscarinus, in his absence, by the generall consent of the Venetian Senate chosen Admirall, 887.f. encourageth the confederats to giue the Turkes battaile, 890.l. in vaine persuadeth the confederats to take the aduantage of the Turkes dispersed fleet, 893.a. earnestly dissuadeth Don Iohn and the Spaniards from returning without giuing the Turkes battaile 899.a

G

GAlilee spoyled, and the castle of Burie taketh by the Turks, 60.i

Garzias of Toledo, Viceroy of Sicilia, after long delay at last setteth forward with his fleet to relieue the besieged at Malta, 814.k. by tempest driuen into the Iland Ægusa, 815.e. arriueth at Malta, and landeth his men 816.i

Gazelles his wholesome counsell vnto Campson, for protracting the warre against Selymus, 527.c. comming to

to haue oppressed Sinan Bassa at Gaza, is by him himselfe ouerthrowne 534.i. his notable speech in submitting himselfe to Selymus, 546.m. by Selymus made Gouernour of Syria, 560.l. rebelleth against Solyman, 568.b.slaine, l.

Gaza yeelded vnto Sinan Bassa. 534.g

George the Despot of Seruia a man of no religion, 356.i.driuē out of his kingdome by Amurath, 262.g. restored by king Vladislaus, 289.b.denieth passage vnto Scanderbeg through his countrie, 295.b. glad to craue aid of Huniades, whom hee had before euill entreated, 310.his death 356.i

George Bishop of Varadium a notable man, 697.c. murthered in his owne house, 756.i

Georgiron the physitian notably deludeth the Ianizaries and Spahi of the court 252.k

George Basta by the Emperour appointed lieutenant Generall for his wars in the vpper Hungarie, 1104.m.cōmaunded by Matthias the Archduke to giue aide vnto Michaell the Vaynod against the Transyuanians, aideth them against him, 1124.b.in a great battaile ouerthroweth the Vaynod, 1126.b. his stout speech to the Chiaki and the rest of the nobilitie of Transyluania, 1129.b. his errour, 1130.g.receiued by the Transylnanians as the Emperours lieutenant, vntill farther order were by him taken for the gouernment of that prouince, l. suddenly taken prisoner by the Transylnanians, 1139.c.set at liberty and aided by Michael the Vaynod, with a great slaughter ouerthroweth Sigismund the Transylnanian prince, and driueth him out of his countrie, 1140.i. conspireth the death of Michael the Vaynod, 1141.a. taketh in most part of the countrie of Transylnania for the emperor, c. for feare of Sigismund and the Transylnanians flyeth, f. in battell ouerthroweth Zachell Moyses the Transylnanian princes lieutenant, & bringeth that countrie againe vnder the emperors obeisance 1143.e

Germaise Rogers an English man commended for his good seruice at the siege of the Rhodes, 430.k

Gerasimus the Patriarch dealeth vnfaithfully with the old emperor Andronicus, 161.b

Giafler captaine of the Ianizaries slain 659.f

Giaffer the Eunuch Bassa of Tripolis by Osman Bassa with a garrison of twelue thousand souldiours left Gouernour of Tauris, 994.i. besieged by the Persian prince, 997.e.prayeth aid of Cicala Bassa, 998.k. put to flight 197.a

Godfrey duke of Lorrain with other the Christian princes with an armie of 300000 fighting men vndertaketh the first expedition into the Holy land, 14.i.concludeth a league with Alexius the Greeke Emperour, 15 a. besiegeth Nice and taketh it, 16.g in a great battell ouerthroweth Sultan Solyman with his Turkes, taketh Antiochia in Pisidia, Iconium, and Heraclea, winneth Cilicia, Armenia and Capadocia, 17.a.c. putteth the Turkes to flight at the riuer Orantes, 18.g.after long siege taketh Antioche in Syria, 20.m.winneth Ierusalem by assault, 22,d. is chosen king of Ierusalem, 23.his letters to Bohemund king of Antioche, 24. i. in a great and mortall battell ouerthroweth the Turks at Ascalon, 24.l.crowned king of Ierusalem, and dieth of the plague, m.

the Gouernour of Alba Regalis taken, 824.k. his sharp answere vnto a Spaniard, l.

Great treasure found by the Turkes at the winning of Constantinople, 347.e

a Greeke priest his notable speech, persuading the Great Master of the Rhodes to yeeld vp the citie, 594 h with the most resolute aunswere of a common souldiour to the contrarie, 595.a. and that his speech notably refelled by a Greeke, & the yeelding of the citie vrged, e.

the Greeke Church by Michaell Palaeologus the Emperour subiected to the Church of Rome, and why. 114.l

the Greekes carelesse of the Turks first small footing in Chersonesus, least thereat, 185.f

the Guise, Lord graund Prior of the Knights of S. Iohns in France, Admirall of Malta, taketh certaine of the Turks gallies, 767.d

Gulletta how situated, 657.c. besieged by Charles the Emperor, 658.g.furiously battered, 660.k. assaulted and woon, 661.a.besieged by the Turkes, 914.l. taken from the Christians, 915.a

Guy countie of Ioppa and Ascalon, the ninth and last king of Ierusalem, 62 l.in battell ouerthrown & taken prisoner by Saladin, 63.e.set at libertie, besiegeth Ptolemais, and fighteth a great battell with Saladin, 65.f

H

HAalon, brother to Mango the great Cham of Tartaria, with a great armie inuadeth the Turkes, 113.a.his great victories against the Turks, c.d

Hadrianople yeelded vnto the Turkes, 189.f. by Amurath the first made the royall seat of his kingdom in Europe, 191.b

Haider marrieth Martha the daughter of the great king Vsun-Cassanes by Despina, and hath by her Hysmael, afterwards King of Persia, 464.l

Haider murthered by Iacup the Persian king, 484.a

Haly Bassa slaine, 881.c. his two sonnes taken in the battell of Lepanto, f. the Greeke that slue him honourably rewarded, 884.g

Hamon the Iew for his treacherie iustly rewarded by Selymus, 496.i

Hardeck Gouernour of Rab corrupted, yeeldeth the citie vnto the Turkes, 1044.l,executed at Vienna, 1046.h

Hassan Bassa relieueth the distressed Turkes in garrison at Teflis, 944.l breaketh promise with Alicuii Chan 945.c.rewarded for his good seruice 946.g.sent by Ferat Bassa to the reliefe of Teflis, 967.a. againe rewarded by Amurath, b. left by Ferat with a garrison of 8000 souldiors in the new fort at Tomanis, 970.b. Generall of Sultan Mahomets armie in Hungarie, commeth out of season to reliene Alba Regalis. 1136.i

Hassan Bassa the queenes Eunuch sent Gouernor to Caire. 980.b. cast in prison at Constantinople, and his euill gotten goods confiscated, 981.d. his life spared at the intercession of the queene, and he set at libertie, e

Hassan Bassa of Bosna inciteth Amurath to make war vpon the Emperor 1014.l.taketh Wihitz, the metropoliticall citie of Croatia, 1015.lodeth sixe wagons with the heads of the slaine Christians, 1016.g. spoileth Turopolis, l. deceiued by the Abbot of Siseg, 1021.e. his threatning letters vnto the Abbot, d. besiegeth Siseg, 1022, g. in a great battell ouerthrowne, 1023.a.drowned, b.

Hatwan besieged by the Christians, 1093.d.taken by assault, 1094.g.againe forsaken by the Christians, i

Henrie brother to Baldwin chosen second Emperor of the Latines in Constantinople, 58.f

Henrie duke of Saxony with a great armie sent into the Holy land by Henrie the sixt Emperour of Germanie, goeth accompanied with many great princes, 73.e.falling sicke of feauer, dieth, 74.b

Henrie the French king by his embassadour

Sadour ſolliciteth Solyman to inuade the King of Spaine his territories, 767.c

Heraclius the Greeke Emperour by the helpe of the Arabians recouereth Siria and the holie citie from Chosroe the Persian king. 22.g

Hoccata the Tartar by his captaines ſubdueth Armenia the greater, Colchis, and Iberia, 76.i. ſucceeding his father Zingis, inuadeth the East and West part of Asia, ſubdueth the East Indies, and buildeth Cambalu, 75.e. driueth the Turkes out of Persia, and ſubdueth many countries. 76.g

Horruccius and Hariadenus, how they of baſe pyrats aſpired to the kingdome of Algiers, 635.c. Horruccius his ſucceſſe, ſ. ſlaine, and his head in triumph carried about in Spaine. 636.h

Hungarie diuided into two factions vpon the choice of Vladiſlaus King of Polonia, 163.a. againe diuided vpon the diſſention betwixt king Ferdinand and king Iohn, 605.c. becommeth a prey vnto Solyman, and by him couerted into the forme of a prouince of the Turkiſh Empire. 713.a.

Huniades by King Uladiſlaus made Vayuod of Tranſyluania. 266.l. in a great battell ouerthroweth Iſa Beg Amurath his lieutenant in Seruia, 267.d. ouerthroweth Meſites Baſſa, and killeth him with twentie thouſand Turkes moe. 269.e. of the ſpoyle of the Turkes ſendeth a preſent vnto King Vladiſlaus and the Deſpot of Seruia. 270.g. his moſt Chriſtian ſpeech to encourage his ſouldiours againſt the Turkes, 271. d. in a great and mortall battell ouerthroweth Abedin Baſſa with his armie at Vaſcape. 274. l. with ten thouſand horſemen ouerthroweth a great armie of the Turkes by night. 277.f. eight times repulſeth the Turkes purſuing him in his retreat downe the mountaine Hemus, 279. d. with a great ſlaughter diſcomfiteth Carambey the Baſſa of Romania, and taketh him priſoner. 280.k. flying out of the battell of Varna, taken priſoner by Dracula Vaynod of Valachia. 298.i. by generall conſent choſen Gouernour of Hungarie in the minoritie of king Ladiſlaus, 304 l. goeth againſt the Turke. 305. b. with a notable ſpeech encourageth his ſouldiors againſt the Turks. 306 i. fighteth three dayes together with Amurath in the plaines of Coſſoua. 307.d. ouercome, flyeth, 309.b. falleth into the hands of two notable theeues. e. in doubt of a ſheapheard, is by him relieued, 310.g. taken priſoner by the falſe Deſpot. g. ſet at libertie, reuengeth himſelfe vpon him. i. requeſted, gineth him aid againſt the Turkes, 311.a. his moſt Chriſtian like death. 358.l

Hyſmaell after the death of his father Haider flyeth to his fathers friend Pyrchales, 465.b. his behauior in the time of his exile, 466.g. recouereth his inheritance, k taketh Sumachia. l. obtaineth Tauris, 467.b. ouercommeth Eluan the Persian King, and killeth him. 468.g. peaceably receiued into Scyras. h. preacheth his fathers doctrine. i. putteth Moratchamus to flight, & obtaineth the kingdome of Persia. 469.b. the inſcription of his ceine. d. commeth to his army at Coy. 508.m. ſendeth an herauld vnto Selymus. 509.b. with 30000 Persians gineth battaile to Selymus with 300000 Turkes. 510.i. wounded, retyreth. 512.g. the cauſe why he came with ſo ſmall an armie againſt Selymus. 517.d. his large territories. 518.h. the reaſon why he inuaded not Selymus, wholly buſied in the Ægyptian wars. 560.b

I

Iacup Arnaut ſlaine, and his armie diſcomfited by Scanderbeg. 399.d

the Ianizaries firſt inſtituted by Amurath the firſt, 191.e. ſtand vpon their gard, and reuiling Baiazet their Emperour, refuſe to receiue him amongſt them, 445.f. in mutinie againſt Selymus. 512.m. vp in armes againſt Solyman for the vnworthie death of the noble Muſtapha. 764. i. vnwilling to go in the quarell of Selymus againſt his brother Baiazet. 773.f. their inſolent and threatening ſpeech vnto Ferat Baſſa their Generall. 970.l. in a tumult at Conſtantinople. 1005.d. in an vprore with the Saphi. 1104.b. threaten the depoſing of their Emperour, 1115.c. in mutinie at Conſtantinople. 1142.k

Iathatines Sultan of Iconium ſucceedeth his father Aladin. 86.i. beſieging Antiochia, is ſlaine by Theodorus Laſcaris the Greeke Emperour, 87, c

Iathatines the ſecond of that name Sultan of Iconium, maketh great preparations againſt the Tartars. 109.b. ouerthrowne, flieth to the Greek emperour Theodorus for aid. e. maketh peace with the Tartars, and yeeldeth them a yearely tribute, 109.f. againe by them oppreſſed, flyeth to Paleologus the Emperor at Nice. 114.l. dieth in exile. 117.e

Ibrahim Baſſa by Amurath made Gouernour of Caire. 980.l. oppreſſeth the people, and inricheth himſelfe. 981.e. goeth againſt the Druſians. 982.g. ſpoileth the countrie of Man Ogli the Druſian lord. 986.h. with fire and ſword deſtroyeth the country of Seraphadin. 987.a. createth Aly Ebnecarſis Baſſa of the Druſians, b the rich preſents by him giuen to Amurath and the Ladies of the court. 688.h. in danger to haue bin taken. 1095.d. flieth out of the battell of Agria. 1097.e. ſent againe Generall into Hungarie. 1104.l. commeth to Buda. 1112.b. purpoſing war, entreateth of peace. i. with a great army beſiegeth Caniſia. 1131.b. hath the towne yeelded vnto him. 1132.b. his letters vnto Countie Serinus. 1133. b. returneth with his armie to Belgrade, c. dieth. 1134.l

Imailer, what men they bee among the Turks. 477.b

Imirza ſtirreth vp Solyman againſt his brother Tamas the Persian King. 751.d. betrayed to his brother Tamas, and by him murthered in priſon. 752.g

Innocencie of great force. 782.i

Iohn Batazes made Emperour of the Greekes in Aſia. 97.d. taketh in many iſlands of the Ægeum, and forrageth the countrie of Thracia euen to the gates of Conſtantinople, being very aged dyeth. 108.g

Iohn Countie de Brenne by Innocentius the Pope appointed King of Ieruſalem 87.e. in diriſion called, Roy ſans ville. 88.g

Iohn Caſtriot prince of Epyrus for feare giueth his fiue ſonnes in hoſtage vnto Amurath. 260.l

Iohn Sepuſius Vaynod of Tranſyluania choſen and crowned king of Hungarie. 605.a. after the battell of Toccay flieth into Polonia. 606.i. by Laſcus his embaſſadour craueth aid of Solyman. 607.c. commeth to Solyman at Belgrade. 609.b. by him reſtored to the kingdome of Hungarie. 614.l in his old yeres marieth Iſabella the daughter of king Sigiſmund. 693.d. dieth. 696.k

Don Iohn of Auſtria generall of the confederat princes forces. 860.k. in a terrible fight encountreth with Haly Baſſa in the battell of Lpanto. 881. b. killeth him. c. deLaith the Venetians. 889.d. in doubt whether to ſend them aid or not. 890.k. ſendeth word vnto the confederats to meet him at Zacynthus. 893.f. faileth them. 894 i. meeteth them at Corcyra. 895.a. offe-

offereth the Turks battell. d. refuseth to follow the counsell of the Venetian Admirall, 896.k. breaketh promise with him, and returneth to Messana. 901.a
Iohn the Vayuod of Moldauia falleth into suspition with the Turkes, 906. g. his notable speech vnto his nobilitie and subiects concerning the Turkes demaund. 907.a. in vaine craueth aid of the K. of Polonia, 908.g. with a great slaughter ouerthroweth the Palatine and the Turks, 909. a. giueth the Turkes a second ouerthrow 910. h. betrayed by Czarnieniche, 911. ouerthrowne by the Turkes, 912.m. shamefully and perfideously by them murthered, 913.e
Ionima, Ballabanus his brother & Hedar his son taken prisoner by Scanderbeg. 401.b
Ionuses Bassa sent against Techellis, putteth him to flight, 475.e. hurt at the winning of Caire, 545.f. enuieth at the vnworthy prefermēt of Cayerbeius, 554.l. is himselfe secretly hated of Selymus, 555.b. put to death 556.i.
Irene the faire Greeke beheaded by Mahomet the Great, 353.d
Isa after the captuitie of his father Baiazet seiseth vpon the citie of Prusa, 232.h. ouerthrowne in battell by his brother Mahomet, 238.i. with a great armie sent by his brother Solyman against Mahomet. 240.i. burneth Prusa, l. dieth in obscuritie 241.c
Ismael last of the Isfendiars yeeldeth his principalitie of Castamona and Sinope to Mahomet the Great, 359.f
Isbender Bassa ouerthrown by Aladeules, taken, and sent prisoner to Caitbeius to Caire, 383.f
Islan of a prisoner made a king, 975.e
Ismael the sonne of king Tamas saluted king of Persia, 922.l. murthereth eight of his younger brethren, altereth the Persian religion, and tyranniseth, m. by the deuise of his sister Periaconcona himselfe murthered, 921.b
the Italians left by the Emperor for the aid of K. Ferdinand in his warres in Hungarie, arise in mutinie, 623.f. eight thousand of them forsake their captaines and returne into Italie, 625.d
Iulia Gonzaga a faire ladie of Italie, put in great feare by Barbarussa, 641.c
Iulian the Cardinall sent by Pope Vrban to appease the dissension in Hungary, and to stirre vp the Hungarians against the Turks, 275.d. his effectuall speech in parliament to persuade the warre, e. cunningly persuadeth king Vladislaus to breake the honourable and solemne league hee had before made with Amurath, 290.k. disanulleth the league, absoluing the king and the rest from their oath before giuen to Amurath, 291.i. himselfe slaine, 298.k

K

the Kingdome of Hungarie by Solyman conuerted into a prouince of the Turkish empire, 713.a
the Knights of Malta craue aid of Garzias the viceroy of Sicilia, 805.a. his cold answere, b
Komara besieged by Sinan Bassa, 1045.b.
Koppan surprised by the Christians, 1002.l

L

Ladislaus a child crowned K. of Hungarie at Alba Regalis, 236.a
Lazarus Despot of Sernia becommeth tributarie vnto Amurath the first, 193.e. purposing to make warre against Amurath, craueth aid of the K. of Bosna, 197 c. in a mortall battell ouerthrowne in the plains of Cossona and slaine 200.i
Lepanto yeelded to the Turkes. 459.c
Lewis the 8 of that name, the French King, making an expedition into the Holy land, is by the malice of Emanuell the Greeke Emperour therein much hindered, 34. m. he besiegeth Damasco, where by the enuie of the other Christian princes hee was enforced to raise his siege, and so to returne home into his countrie, 35.b
Lewis the ninth the Freneh king making an expedition towards the Holy land, arriueth at Damiata, 102.m. taketh the citie forsakē by the Turks 113.b. with his whole armie ouerthrowne, and himselfe taken prisoner, 115.a vndertaketh a second expedition toward the Holy land with his sonnes and most of his nobilitie, 118 k. ouerthroweth the Moores, and besiegeth Tunes, 119.a. falleth sicke of the bloudie flix, and dieth, b.
Lewis the eleuenth the French king giueth aid vnto the Venetians against the Turks 461.c
Lewis king of Hungarie with an armie of fiue and twenty thousand fondly goeth against Solyman, being two hundred and sixtie thousand strong, 602 b. ouerthrowne, in his flight drowned in a ditch. 603.a
Liscanus the couetous Spaniard, dealeth vncourteously with Perknus, 732.k. is himselfe in like sort serued, and merrily stripped of his wealth by Halis captaine of the Ianizaries, 738.l
Lissa taken by the Turks, and the bones of Scanderbeg digged vp, & by them worne for iewels, 425.e
Lodronius encourageth his souldiours, 685.h. iested at by an old souldiour, k. slaine and his head with the heads of two other captaines in a siluer bason presented to Solyman at Constantinople 685.e

M

Mahomet the first sendeth spies into Tamerlan his campe, 232 l. becommeth famous in Tamerlans Court, 234.i. in battell ouerthroweth his brother Isa, 238.i. honourably burieth the bodie of his father Baiazet at Prusa, l. againe ouerthroweth his brother Isa, supported by his brother Solyman, 240.m. giueth him a third ouerthrow, together with the other Mahometan princes his confederats, 241.e. besieged by his brother Solyman in Amasia, 242.i. vpon report of his brother Musa his euill gouernment, goeth against him into Europe, 246.k. ouerthrowne, flieth backe againe into Asia, 247.a commeth againe into Europe, 248.g besiegeth Hadrianople, h. ouerthroweth his brother Musa in battell, and causeth him being taken prisoner to b. strangled, 249.c wholly possesseth the Othoman kingdome, both in Europe and Asia, d. oppresseth Orchanes his brother Solymans sonne, and putteth out his eyes, 250.b. taketh the Caramanian king and his sonne prisoners, k. enforceth the Valachian prince to become his tributarie, l. dieth at Hadrianople, 251.f. his death cunningly concealed by the three great Bassaes, 252.g. he worthily accounted the restorer of the Othoman kingdome, almost quite ouerthrowne by Tamerlan, l
Mahomet the second, surnamed the Great, an Atheist, of no religion, 337.d. murthereth his brethren, 338 g. reformeth the Turkes commonweale, i. subdueth Menteśia, 339.b. winneth Constantinople, 347. b, solemniseth his feasts in Constantinople with the bloud of the Grecian nobilitie, 348.k. notably dissembleth his hatred against Caly Bassa, 349.d. first Emperour of the Turkes, 350.i. amorem of the faire Greeke

Irene. l. with his owne hand striketh off her head, 353 *d.* beſiegeth Belgrade, 357 *b.* wounded and carried away for dead, 358 *i.* falſifieth his faith with Dauid the Emperour of Tpapezond, 360 *i.* ſeeketh to entrap Wladus prince of Valachia, 361 *b.* in daunger to haue beene ſlaine by Wladus Dracula his Ganymede, 363 *b.* his letters to Scanderbeg, 384 *k.* ſueth to Scanderbeg to haue the league renewed betwixt them, 390 *h.* commeth himſelfe in perſon to the ſiege of Croia, 400 *i.* forſaketh the ſiege of Croia, 402 *i.* breaketh his faith with Paulus Ericus Gouernour of Chalcis, 406 *i.* he is no leſſe troubleſome vnto the Mahometan princes than to the Chriſtians, 408 *i.* commeth himſelfe to the ſiege of Scodra, 417 *c.* notably encourageth his captaines and ſouldiours to a generall aſſault, 418 *m.* melancholy for the repulſe of his men, 420 *l.* blaſphemeth 423 *d.* curſeth Epirus, and ſo returneth to Conſtantinople, 425 *e.* by Meſites Palæologus, one of his great Baſſaes, beſiegeth the Rhodes, 429 *b.* inuadeth Italie, and by Achmetes his great captaine taketh Otranto, 432 *i.* going againſt the Caramanian king, dieth by the way, at Giſilſen in Bythinia, not without ſuſpition of poyſon, and lyeth buried at Conſtantinople. 433 *a*

Mahometes one of the Viſier Baſſaes, by the mutinous Ianizaries ſlaine, 437 *c.*

Mahometes the ſon of Caitbeius with foure Sultans moe one after another ſlaine by the Mamalukes. 450 *l*

Mahometes Solymans ſon diſguiſed goeth to ſee his brother Achomates, 477 *c.* as a ſea-faring man commeth diſguiſed to Conſtantinople, and ſo into his fathers Court, *e.* by the commaundement of his ſuſpitious father poiſoned, dieth. 478 *i*

Mahometes Gouernour of Belgrade, aided by the other Sanziackes, maketh head againſt Cazzianer, Generall of King Ferdinands armie, 677 *f.* wiſely refuſeth battell offered him by Cazzianer, and by temporiſing, diſtreſſeth the armie of the Chriſtians, 680 *k.* troubleth the Chriſtians in their retreat, 682 *g.* giueth them a great ouerthrow, 684 *l.* commeth to the reliefe of Belgrade 705 *e.* his vehement Oration vnto Solyman, to perſwade him to take the kingdome of Hungarie into his owne hands, and ſo to vnite it vnto his own Empire. 711 *c*

Mahomet the Tartar King with his two ſons ſtrangled by Oſman Baſſa, 975 *f.*

Mahomet Baſſa in deſpight of Sinan ſent Generall of his armie for the reliefe of his garriſons in Chars and Teflis, 957 *e.* diſcomfited by the Georgians, and his prouiſion of money and victuals taken from him, 959 *a.* with his diſcomfited armie arriueth at Teflis, *b.* his heauie Oration in the caſtle of Teflis, *c.* maketh a purſe for the reliefe of the diſtreſſed garriſon, 960. plotteth the death of Manucchiar the Georgian, *m.* himſelfe in daunger to haue beene by the Georgian ſlaine. 961 *d*

Mahomet the third ſaluted Emperour of the Turkes, 1056 *i.* murthereth his brethren, and cauſeth certaine of his fathers wiues and concubines to be drowned, *k.* with much adoe appeaſeth the mutinous Ianizaries, *l.* ſendeth embaſſadors vnto the Tranſyluanian prince, 1602. careſull of Strigonium, beſieged by the Chriſtians, 1066 *h.* perplexed, 1087 *e.* cauſeth the continuation of his warres againſt the Emperour and the Tranſyluanian to be proclaimed at Conſtantinople, 1089 *a.* commeth to Buda with an armie of two hundred thouſand men, 1094 *h.* beſiegeth Agria, *l.* furiouſly aſſaulteth it, 1095 *a.* hath it yeelded vnto him, 1096 *h.* with Ibrahim the great Baſſa flieth out of the battell of Kareſta, 1097 *e* by the Tranſyluanians and Valachians troubled in his returne to Conſtantinople, 1098 *m.* his Embaſſadour euill intreated by the Perſian King. 1134 *h*

the Mahometane princes of the leſſer Aſia oppreſſed by Baiazet, diſguiſed flie vnto Tamerlan for reliefe, 210 *h*

Malta deſcribed, 795 *b.* inuaded by the Turks. 796 *k*

Mamulukes, the beginning of their kingdome in Ægypt, 524 *g.* their imperious gouernment in Ægypt, Iudea, and Syria, 523 *c.* their kingdome vtterly ſubuerted by Selymus, 554 *h.* the Mamalukes in priſon at Alexandria, by the commaundement of Selymus murthered, 553 *f.*

Manto cruelly ſlaine by her iealous huſband Ionuſes. 557 *d*

Man-Ogli his letters to Ibrahim Baſſa. 983 *f.* ſendeth him priſoner, 985 *b.*

Manucchiar his ſpeech to Muſtapha the Viſier Baſſa, 931 *f.* with his brother Alexander by Muſtapha ſent to Amurath, 938 *h.* turneth Turke, and hath his elder brothers princi-

palitie giuen him, 941 *l.* in daunger to haue beene betraied by Mahomet Baſſa. 960 *l.* notably reuengeth himſelfe of the treacherie by the Baſſa intended againſt him, 961 *c.* reuolteth from the Turkes, and doth them great harme 967. *a*

Marqueſſe S. Crucis taketh ten of the Turkes galies in ſight of their whole fleet 897 *d*

the Maſſagets entertained by Andronicus againſt the Turkes, ſpoile his countries in Aſia, 149. *e.* in their returne homeward, themſelues ſpoyled by the Catalonians and Turcopuli, 152. *l*

Maſut the Sultan of Iconium diuideth his kingdome among his three ſonnes 36. *k*

Matthias the Archduke, the emperors lieutenant, taketh Nonigrad from the Turkes, 1030. *l.* beſiegeth Strigonium. 1033. *c.* raiſeth his ſiege, 1037. *d.* ſhamefully put to flight by the the Turkes 1043 *b*

Matthias Corninus of a priſoner choſen K. of Hungarie, 394. *k.* at the requeſt of the Senat taketh a great part of the Venetian territorie into his protection againſt the Turkes, 364. *m.* relieueth the Vayuod of Tranſyluania, 426 *m.* no leſſe dreadfull vnto the Turkes than was his father Huniades 404 *l*

Maximilian choſen K. of the Romans and after crowned King of Hungarie 789. *a.* hee and Solyman both deſirous of peace, 829. *a.* he ſendeth embaſſadors to Solyman, *f.* preſents giuen by the embaſſadours vnto the Baſſa of Buda, 830. *k.* his embaſſadours honourably receiued by the Turkes at Conſtantinople, 831. *c* preſents giuen by the embaſſadours vnto the great Baſſaes, *e.* preſents ſent to Selymus, 832. *i.* a homely feaſt giuen to the embaſſadours followers in the Turkes Court, 833. *c.* the embaſſadours brought in vnto Selymus, with the manner of the entertainment of them and their followers, 834. *g.* a peace concluded betwixt Maximilian and Selymus, 835. *e*

Maximilian the Archduke by the emperour his brother appointed Generall of his armie in Hungarie, 1093. *c.* marcheth but ſlowly to the reliefe of Agria, 1095. *c.* flyeth out of the battell of Kareſta. 1098. *i*

Maylat treacherouſly taken priſoner by Peter the Moldauian 716. *i*

Melchalus a notable traitor perſuadeth Mahomet to beſiege the Rhodes, 427. *c*

327 c. his worthie death, c.
Meledin Sultan of Ægypt, and Corradin Sultan of Damasco, send Embassadors for peace to the Christian princes at the siege of Damiata, 90 m. recouereth Damiata, before taken by the Christians, 95 e. ouerthroweth the Christians, and raseth Ierusalem, 101. dieth. 103 c
Melechsala Sultan of Ægypt ouerthroweth Robert Earle of Arthoise, the French kings brother, 104 l. taketh Lewis the French King prisoner, and ouerthroweth his armie, 105 e. maketh peace with the French King, and is suddenly slaine by two Mamalukes. 106
Melech the Ægyptian Sultan inuadeth Syria, and winneth Damasco from the Tartars. 114
Melechsares the Ægyptian Sultan determining to root out all the Christians in Syria and the land of Palestine, is by sudden death taken away. 122 k
Meleehsala, Sultan of Damasco, by the treason of his nobilitie dispossessed of his kingdome. 58 m
Mesites Bassa sent by Amurath to inuade Transyluania, 267 f. he with 20000 Turkes moe slaine by Huniades. 269 e
Michael Ducas the Greeke Emperour by Nicephorus Botoniates deposed of his Empire, after he had raigned six yeares and six moneths. 11 e
Michael Palæologus flieth to the Sultan of Iconium, 109 a. called home againe by the Emperour Theodorus and made great Constable, f. aspireth and by common consent made Tutor vnto the young Emperour, 111 e. himselfe proclaimed Emperour and crowned, 112 h. by Alexius Cæsar his lieutenant surprizeth Constantinople, 115 e. repaireth the decayed citie, 116 h. causeth the yong Emperours eies to be put out, 117 a. his armie ouerthrowne by the Turks in Paphlagonia, 118 g. submitteth the Greeke Church vnto the Latine, and for what cause, 144 l. perswadeth his subiects to accept of the alteration of their religion and ceremonies, 145 a. raiseth persecution in the Greeke Church, c. hindered by domesticall troubles, hath no leisure to attend vnto the danger arising from the Turkes in Asia, d. obscurely buried, e.
Michael Cossi by Otboman taken prisoner, by him againe set at libertie, 136 m. father of the honourable family of the Michael-Oglies among the Turkes, 137 a. discouereth vnto Osman the treason intended against him, 140 l. enforced rather than perswaded by Othoman, turneth Turke, 144 h.
Michaell the young Emperour ouerthrown by the Catalonians & Turks in danger to haue beene taken, 152 k. againe ouerthrowne by the Turks at Chersonesus. 155 e
Michaell Horwat by Amurath created Vayuod of Walachia 1051 a. perswaded by the Transyluanian prince, reuolteth from the Turke, and killeth all the Turks and Iewes in his countrey, 1052 b. killeth one of the Turks proud Emirs with all his followers, 1053 b. doth the Turkes great harme, c. suffereth the Turkes embassadeurs vnto the king of Polonia by his subiects to be slain, 1060 k spoileth the Turkes frontiers, 1061 a. yeeldeth his obeisance againe vnto the Turke, yet refus. th to aid him against the Christians, 1099 d. weary of the Turke, submitteth himselfe with his people to the Emperors protection, 1100 l. sacketh Nicopolis, 1107 d. with a great armie entreth into Transyluania, 1112 l. in a great battell ouerthrowzth the Cardinall Bathor, 1113 c. sendeth his head for a present to the Emperour, f. hath the gouernment of Transyluania by the Emperor confirmed vnto him, 1120 i. receiueth presents from the Turke, l. in a great battell ouerthroweth Sigismund the late Transyluanian prince, with the Vayuod of Moldauia, 1122 i. tyranizeth in Transylunania, 1123 a. inforced by the Transyluanians to flye, craueth aid of George Basta the Emperors lieutenant in the vpper Hungarie b. by Basta and the Transyluanians in a great battell ouerthrown at Miriflo 1126 h. reconcileth himselfe to Basta 1127 a. for feare of being betraied vnto the Polonians, taketh his flight into the mountaines, d. by Zamoschie the great Chancelor driuen out of Valachia, and another Vayuod there placed in his stead, 1128. h. submitteth himselfe vnto the Emperor, 1139. b. returning into Valachia, giueth aid vnto Basta against Sigismund the Transyluanian, 1140. g. hauing with Basta driuen the prince out of Transyluania, with great insolencie vseth his victorie, k. his presumptuous speech to Basta, l. suddenly slaine in his owne tent 1141. a
the Miserie of the captiue Constantinopolitanes 348. h
Mitylene yeelded vnto the Turk 364. g
Modon taken by the Turkes 460. g
Moyses Golemus corrupted, reuolteth vnto the Turke, 372. h. with an armie of the Turks by Mahomet sent into Epyrus against Scanderbeg, k. ouercome and put to flight by Scanderbeg, 374. g. contemned of the Turks, flyeth from Constantinople, and againe submitteth himselfe to Scanderbeg, m. he with diuers others of Scanderbegs best captains by Balabanus taken prisoners, and by Mahomet slaine quicke 396. i
Muhomet and Partau, two of the Visier Bassaes, by the insolent Ianiries foully entreated, 823. f. Muhamet for feare of them for a time refraineth to come into the Diuano, 824. g. dissuadeth Selymus from the inuading of Cyprus, 839. b. as a secret friend vnto the Venetians putteth them in hope of peace, 857. b. cunningly dissuadeth Selymus from the massacring of the Christians, filling his head with more necessarie considerations. 886. b. strangely murthered 950. l
Muleasset King of Tunes cruel and vnthankefull, 642. g. for feare of Barbarussa flyeth out of Tunes, 643. e. sumptuous in his fare, 645. d. commeth to Charles the Emperour, 661 d. his speech vnto the Emperour, e. his behauiour, 662. b. his opinion concerning the present warre, l. three things by him especially lamented, in the spoile made by the Christians in the castle of Tunes, 668. b. fearing the comming of Barbarussa, departeth from Tunes into Italie, to craue aid of Charles the Emperor, 745. c. shut out of his kingdome in the meane time by his son Amida, e. returneth into Africke to Guletta, 746. g. going to Tunes, is by the way ouerthrowne, taken prisoner, and hath his eyes put out by his vnnaturall sonne, 747. d. at the request of Touares is sent to Guletta, 748 l. by Charles the Emperor sent into Sicilie, there to be kept of the common charge, 749. b. refuseth to kisse the Popes foot, c.
Murzufle by the tumultuous people created Emperour, attempteth to burne the Venetian fleet, 81. b. with his owne hands strangleth the young prince Alexis. d. encourageth his soldiors, e. being in despaire, flyeth, 82. i
Musa sonne to Baiazet the first, his speech vnto his brother Mahomet, 243, c. marrieth the prince of Valachia his daughter, e. in the absence of his brother Solyman, receiued at Hadrianople as King. f. goeth against his brother Solyman, 244 i. fighteth with

with his brother Mahomet, 246 l. his chiefe captaines reuolt to Mahomet, 248 l. taken, and strangled, 249 b. c.
Musachius a Christian captaine contendeth with a Turke his prisoner for his ransome, 367 d. is afterward slaine, 370 m
Mustapha the supposed sonne of Baiazet, raiseth rebellion against Amurath, 255 c. being in fear flieth, 256 m. is shamefully hanged. 257 c
Mustapha the younger sonne of Mahomet, raiseth new troubles against Amurath, 258 k. is betraied and strangled, l.
Mustapha Bassa sent by Amurath against Scanderbeg, 302 m. being assaulted in his campe, flyeth, 303 d. desirous to redeeme his former disgrace, craueth leaue of Amurath to enter into Epirus, & obtaineth it, 311 d. Amuraths letters of aduertisemẽt to Mustapha, e. fighteth with Scanderbeg the second time, 313 a. is ouerthrowne and taken prisoner, b. and afterwards ransomed, c.
Mustapha Bassa perswadeth Solyman to the besieging of the Rhodes, 569 e. vpon the euill successe of the siege falleth into disgrace with Solyman, 585 c. in danger with Pyrrhus Bassa to haue beene executed, 188 k. made Gouernour of Caire, 589 d. by Solyman sent as Generall of his armie to Malta, 794 l. landeth at the port Marza Siroc in the isle of Malta, 796 k. besiegeth the castle S. Elmo, 797 a. assaulteth the castle, e. in vaine giueth a second assault, 798 g. with losse assaulteth it the third time, m. in most furious manner battereth it by the space of eighteene daies, and assaulteth it the fourth time, 799 c. with great furie giueth the fift, and most terrible assault vnto the castle, 801 a. with all his army giueth the sixt and last assault, 802 i. winneth the castle, 803 a. exerciseth most barbarous cruelties vpõ the bodies of the slain knights b. in vaine assaulteth the castle S. Michael, 809 e. at one time assaulteth the new citie and the castle S. Michael, 810 i. hee by messengers certifieth Solyman of the successe of the siege, 811 a. leaueth nothing vnattempted, 812 i. at once assaulteth the towns S. Angelo and S. Michael, and in both places notably repulsed, 813 a. giueth a fresh assault and entreth the new city 814 g. with a great slaughter driuen out againe, i. desperatly assaulteth the towne of S. Michael, 815 c. repulsed, rayseth his siege, 817 a. put to flight by the Christians, c. hauing lost about foure and twentie thousand of his Turkes at the siege, departed from Malta, d. hee with Piall Bassa impugneth the counsell of Muhamet, the chiefe of the Visier Bassaes, and perswadeth Selymus to inuade Cyprus, 839 c. for his hatred against the Christians made Generall of his armie for the inuasiõ of Cyprus, 846 g. his letters vnto the Venetians in the isle of Cyprus, i. hee landeth his armie in Cyprus, m. besiegeth Nicosia, 848 c. in vaine perswadeth thẽ of Nicosia to yeeld 850 k. he encourageth his souldiours, and giueth a most terrible assault, 851 a. winneth the citie, e. besiegeth Famagusta, 852. raiseth his siege, b. returneth againe to the siege, 862 m. after many assaults hath the citie by compositiõ yeelded vnto him, 866 m. shamefully and contrarie to his faith before giuen murthereth the valiant Gouernour Bragadinus, 867 b. tyrannizeth vpon his dead bodie, d. by Amurath made Generall of his armie against the Persians, 929 d. cõmeth to Erzirum, e. mustereth his armie, in number an hundred and ten thousand strong, 930 g. releeueth his soldiors distressed by the Persians, 931 c. maketh a bulwarke of the heads of the slaine Persians, d. hee surueieth his armie at Archichelec, & lacketh fortie thousand of his men, 932 k. fortifieth Teflis, 933 a. looseth ten thousand of his forragers, 934 b. reuengeth their death, l. his notable answer vnto his mutinous souldiours 935 b. looseth eight thousand of his men in passing the riuer Canac, c. famin in his hoast, e. he fortifieth Eres, 936 g. sendeth Osman Bassa to take in Sumachia and Derbent b. releeueth his distressed garrison at Teflis, m. his armie in great miserie in passing the straits of Georgia, 937 c. cõmeth to Erzirum, and dischargeth his armie, 938 g. maketh preparation for the next yeares warres, 942 k. assembleth his armie at Erzirum, 943 d. in three and twentie dayes fortifieth Chars, f. sendeth succours to Teflis, 944 c. returneth to Erzirum, and there dischargeth his army 945 d. discharged of his Generalship, and called home to Constantinople, 946 l. maligned by Sinan, 949 a. dealeth warily with the messengers sent of purpose to haue strangled him d. appeaseth the displeasure of Amurath, e. dieth suddenly, 952 k
Mustapha, Solyman his eldest sonne in great estimation with the people 757 b. sent Gouernour into Caramania, d. maligned by Roxolana, e. in danger to haue beene poysoned, 760 k. sent for by his father, and warned of his present daunger, e. conferreth with his doctor, 762 g. troubled with melancholy dreame k. commeth to his fathers tent, 763 a. in the sight of his father most cruelly strangled, c. his sonne Mahomet strangled also, d. a prouerbe taken from his death, 765 c.
Mutius Tortona a Spanish captain raiseth a mutinie in the Christian fleet at Paxo, 873 c. Tortona and his ancient hanged, d.
Muzalo by Theodorus the Emperour appointed Gouernour to his yong son Iohn, 100 g. enuied by the nobilitie, is traiterously murthered in the Church. 1114

N

NAupactum, otherwise called Lepanto, in vaine besieged by the Turkes, 413 b. yeelded to Baiazet, 459 c.
Neapolis the first regall seat of the Othoman kings. 143 b
Negligence seuerely punished. 856 g
Neocastrum built by Mahomet the Great. 339 d
Neritos, now called S. Maura, taken by the Venetians. 462 k
Nice taken by the Turkes, 142 k. recouered againe by the Christians, 180 g. againe surprised by the Turks, 181 c. by Orchanes made the regall seat of his kingdome. 183 e
Nicholaus Cataluzius prince of Mistylene, turneth Turke, and is executed 364 k
Nicholas Karetschen corrupted, betraieth Giula to the Turkes, 824. i. the traitor iustly rewarded, k
Nicephorus Botoneatus displaceth his master the Emperor Michael Ducas, and taketh vpon him the Empire 11. e
Nicomedia yeelded vnto the Turkes, 183. c
Nouigrade yeelded vnto the Christians, 1030. l

O

OThoman of greater courage and spirit than his other brethren, the sonnes of old Ertogrul, 135. d. amorous of Malhatun a countrie maid, f. in daunger for his loue, 136. k. by generall consent chosen Gouernour of the Oguzian Turks, 137. d. surpriseth the castle of Calce, 138. h. fighteth a battell with the Christians at

at Opficium, k. winneth the castle of Cara Chisar, and killeth the captain m. setteth in order his little commonweale, 139 c. killeth the captaine of Cupri-Chisar, e. his death contriued by the captaine of Bilezuga, 140 i. turneth the treacherie deuised against himselfe vpon the head of the captain that deuised it, whom he killeth, and surpriseth his castle, 141 e. surpriseth the castle of Iar-Chisar, e. taketh the castle of Einegioll, and cruelly executeth the captain, 142 g. by the good administration of iustice strengtheneth his gouernment, h. taketh the citie of Nice, k. taketh vpon him the honor of a king or Sultan, 143 a. maketh Neapolis his regall seat, b. in a great battell ouerthroweth the Christians, 143 c. besiegeth Prusa, d. whilest the Greekes are at discord among thẽselues, laieth the foundation of the great Othoman empire that now is, 162 g. 166 k. dieth, and lieth buried at Prusa, 177 a. the wealth hee left vnto his sonnes Orchanes and Aladin, 179 c.

Orchanes, his father Othoman yet liuing, manageth the Turks kingdom, 179 c. surpriseth the castle of Tzupri-Chisar, 180 g. fighteth a doubtfull battell with Andronicus the Greeke Emperour at Philocrene, m. surpriseth Nice, 181 e. hath Nicomedia yielded vnto him, 183 c. committeth the gouernment thereof vnto his sonne Solyman, c. first of the Turkes that built Monasteries, e. subdueth the countrey of Carasina, 184 h. dieth. 187 b

Orchanes and Mahometes two of Baiazet his nephewes ouerthrown by Chelise and Techellis the rebels, 471 c.

Osman Bassa by Mustapha made Gouernor of Siruan, taketh Sumachia, 936 h. hath Derbent yeelded vnto him, i. by the Persian prince driuen out of Sumachia, flieth to Derbent, 940 h. killeth Sahawall his father in law, 941 d. is by Amurath sent for into Siruan, 974 h. laid in wait for by Mahomet the Tartar king, 975 b. ouercommeth the Tartars lying in wait for him, c. by Amurath made chiefe Visier & Generall of his wars against the Persians, 976 k. raiseth a great armie, 989 c. wisely appeaseth his mutinous soldiors, vnwilling to go for Tauris, 990 g. commeth to Tauris, 991 b. taketh the citie, e. in thirtie daies buildeth there a strong castle, 992 i. giueth the citie to bee spoyled by his souldiours k. leaueth Giaffer the Eunuch Bassa of Trpolis with a garrison of 12000 souldiours Gouernour of Tauris, 994 i. dieth, 995 c. much lamented for at Constantinople. 996 h.

P

Paleapolis by Sultan Aladin giuen to Othoman, 138 l

Palotta yeelded to the Turks, 1025 d

Pantogles with the Turks fleet cõmeth to the siege of Constantinople, 342 l displaced, 344 k

Paphlagonia and Pontus, with a great part of Cappadocia woon by Mahomet the Great, 360 l

Partan the Visier Bassa sent by Solymã against the supposed Mustapha, brought him to Constantinople, 769 e. sent by Solyman to haue brought Baiazet to Amasia, is by him with good words sent backe againe, 773 e standeth indifferent for giuing or not giuing of battell vnto the Christians at Lepanto, 875 e. encourageth his soldiors, 876 i. flieth himselfe out of the battell. 879 c

Paradiser executed for yeelding vp of Canisa vnto the Turks. 1233 e

Peace concluded betwixt K. Uladislaus and Amurath the second, 289 b. by the persuasion of Iulian the Cardinal vnfortunately broken by Uladislaus, 295 d.

Peace concluded betwixt Mahomet and Scanderbeg, 386 i. betwixt Baiazet and Cayibeius, 450 i. betwixt Baiazet and the Venetians, 463 a. betwixt the Venetians and Solyman, 694 l. betwixt the Venetians and Selymus the second, 904 k. betwixt Amurath the third, and Mahomet the Persian king. 1005 b

Poloponesus described, 353 e. made tributarie to the Turke, 354 h. subdued by the Turks. 355 e

Pera yeelded vnto the Turks. 349 c

Perenus the noble Hungarian vpon the suspition of aspiring, apprehended, 732. k. matters surmised against him, 733. a. he, Valentinus, & Maylat, three of the cheife of the Hungarian nobility, vnworthy kept in perpetuall prison 734. h

Persecution in the Greeke Church for matters of Religion 145. e

Persians better horsmen than the Turks 517. b

Pesth taken by Cason Admirall of the Turks fleet vpon the Danubius, 709, a. besieged by the Marques of Brandenburg, 729. e. in vaine assaulted, 713. c. the siege giuen ouer, 732. h. taken by the Christians 1146. e

Peter a French Hermit going on pilgrimage to Ierusalem, obserueth the miseries of the Christians vnder the Turkes and Sarasins, 12. l. in the Counsell of Claremont deliuereth his message in the behalfe of the poore oppressed Christians, 14. g. hee with Gualter Sensauier the first that set forward in the great expedition of the Christians into the Holy land, 14. k. looseth greatest part of his armie, 15. d. discouraged, about to haue stolne home, brought backe, and enforced to take a new oath for his fidelitie and perseuerance in the war 18. k

Perter Damboyse Grand master of the Rhodes, a carefull Gouernour, 427. e. his cheerefull speech vnto the rest of his knights and soldiors 428. h

Peter Emus for his barbarous crueltie beheaded at Venice 978. l

Petralba yeelded to Scanderbeg, 285. d

Petrella yeelded 285. e

Petrinia taken by the Christians, 1074. k

Philaretus the Greeke Emperors lieutenant put to flight by the Turkes, 8. l

Philadelphia taken by Baiazet, 204. b

Philes a deuont man, but no souldiour, vndertaketh the defence of the Greeke Empire against the Turkes, 156. i. in plaine battell ouerthroweth them 157. e

Philip the second of that name, the French King, in going towards the Holy land, suffereth shipwrecke vpon the coast of Sicilia, 68. i. arriueth at Ptolemais, m. his speech vnto Richard King of England, and the other Christian princes, in his sickenesse, 70. i. he sweareth vnto King Richard, not to inuade his territories in France, and so returneth home, k

Phocas by killing of Mauritius the Emperour with his children, possesseth himselfe of the Greeke Empire, 22. g. slaine afterwards by them of his owne gard, g

Piall Bassa Solymans Admirall sent to remoue the Christians out of Zerbi, 784. b. in disgrace with Solyman, shunneth to come to Constantinople, 787. a. by Selymus the second sent against the Venetians, 845. e. in vaine attempteth the Island of Tenos, 846. g

Pisaurius the Venetian Admirall doth verie great harme vnto the Turks, 460. l

Plague and famine among the Turkes, 1060. m

Plague in the Venetian fleet 849. a

Polinus the French embassadour with presents from Francis the French K. mee-

meeteth Solyman comming from Buda, 725.d. his requeſt to Solyman, e. returneth into France, 726.g. ſent backe againe to Solyman, by the way ſolliciteth the Venetians to take vp armes againſt Charles the emperor, h. grieued, not to find the Turke ſo readie to ſend his fleet in the aid of the King his maſter, as he had before hoped, m. is ſharpely ſhaken vp by Solyman Baſſa, 727.c. brought to the ſpeech of Solyman himſelfe, 728.a. by him reiected vntill the next Spring, k. ſetteth forward with Barbaruſſa and the Turks fleet, 735.a. by his letters from Oſtia comforteth the Popes Legat in Rome, d

Podolia and Ruſcia inuaded by the Turks 457.a

the Pope and the King of Spaine fearing leaſt the Venetians ſhould make peace with the Turke, haſten their confederation with that ſtate, long before by them delayed, 859.a. a perpetuall league concluded betwixt the Pope, the King of Spaine, and the Venetians, 860.h. the league proclaimed, m

the Popes letters vnto the K. of Polonia, to diſſuade him from inuading of Moldauia, to the troble of the Tranſyluanian prince 1081.b

Preianes commeth to the Rhodes, 581.c

Preſents of great value ſent by the Perſian King vnto Selymus 817.f

Prince Ciarcan ſlaine 219.b

Princes of Germanie ioine their forces with King Ferdinand againſt the Turke in Hungarie 728.l

Pruſa yeelded vnto the Turks, 176.l burnt by Iſa, 240.l. repaired by Mahomet, 241.a. againe burnt by the Caramanian King 249.f

Q

Qveene Iſabella with child, 695.e. deliuered of a ſon, 696.i. that ſonne by the name of Stephen crowned K. of Hungarie, 697.a. her anſwere vnto the embaſſador of K. Ferdinand, demaunding of her the kingdome of Hungary, 699.d. inuaded by K. Ferdinand, craueth aid of Solyman, 701 b. by the commandement of Solyman departeth with her young ſonne out of Buda, 713.e. yeeldeth vp to K. Ferdinand all the right ſhe had in Tranſyluania and Hungarie, 756.h

Quinquæ Eccleſiæ yeelded vnto the Turks 736.h

Quinſay in the prouince of Mangi, of all the cities of the world the greateſt 75.f

R

RAb beſieged by Sinan Baſſa, 1041 b. battered and aſſaulted, 1044 h. by treaſon yeelded vnto the Baſſa. l. notably againe ſurpriſed by the Chriſtians 1103.b

Rama forſaken by the Turkes 21.l

Ramadan Baſſa ſlain by the inſolent Ianizaries 978.m

Rayſchachius for ſorrow of his ſon ſlaine by the Turkes, ſuddenly dyeth, 760.k

Rhode: by the Knights hoſpitalers recouered from the Turkes in the yeare 1308, 162.h. beſieged by Meſites Palæologus, 428.l. for feare of the Turkes the Rhodians deſtroy their ſuburbes and places of pleaſure without the citie, 578.l. the Rhodes deſcribed, 581.d. beſieged by Solyman, 584.g. in fiue places at once by the Turkes aſſaulted, 587.b. the diſtreſſed eſtate of the Rhodians, and their reſolution therein, 592.g. the Rhodes yeelded vnto Solyman, 600.i

Richard the firſt, King of England, ſetteth forward toward the Holy land, 68.h. reuengeth the iniuries done to him by the Cypriots, and taketh priſoner Iſaack Comnenus their King, 69.a. arriueth at Ptolemais, c. cauſeth all the Turks his priſoners in the ſight of Saladins armie to be executed, 71.a. giueth Cyprus to Guy in exchange for the titular kingdome of Ieruſalem, f. with great ſlaughter ouerthroweth Saladin in plaine battell, 72.h. returning homeward, taken priſoner by Leopold duke of Auſtria 73.b

Rodolph the Emperor prayeth aid of the Germane princes againſt the Turks 1017.e. his embaſſadour ſent vp cloſe in his houſe at Conſtantinople, 1018.l. his letters to Amurath, 1019.a. his letters to Sinan Baſſa, d. preſented with the ſpoile of the Turks ouerthrow at Alba Regalis, 1029.b requeſteth aid of the great duke of Muſcouia, the K. of Polonia, and of the prince of Tranſyluania, 1031.b. holdeth a Diet of the empire at Ratisbone for the withſtanding of the Turkes, 1038.m. receiueth aid from the Pope, the K. of Spaine, and the princes of Italie 1134.k

Robert duke of Normandie by generall conſent choſen K. of Ieruſalem, which honour he refuſeth 22.f

Robert ſonne to Peter fourth Emperor of the Latins in Conſtantinople, 96.l goeth to Rome, and in his returne death in Achaia, 97.a.

Rogendorff his name terrible vnto the Turkes, 613.a. with K. Ferdinands armie entreth into Hungarie, and beſiegeth Buda, 702.a. threateneth the queene, k. derided by the biſhop, l. in vaine aſſaulteth Buda, 703.d. in raiſing of his ſiege by night reuieueth a great ouerthrow, 708.k. conueyed vp the riuer to Komara, there dyeth, 709.b

Ronzerius, ſometime a notable pyrat, entertained by Andronicus the Emperour againſt the Turkes, 150.k. relieueth Philadelphia, l. for lacke of pay ſpoyleth the Emperours territories in Aſia, 151.a. ſuddenly ſlaine, c

Roſcetes riſeth againſt his brother Muleaſſes K. of Tunes, 642.l flyeth to Barbaruſſa, and by him carried to Conſtantinople 643.a

Rouerius robbeth Dautius, Baiazet the great Turks embaſſador to Pope Alexander 451.e

Roxolana conſpireth with Ruſtan Baſſa againſt the noble Muſtapha, and faineth her ſelf religious, 758.g. ſent for by Solyman, refuſeth to come, i. plotteth the confuſion of Muſtapha 759.f. bringeth him into ſuſpition with his father, 760.g. ſhe with Ruſtan put Solyman in feare of his life and Empire by his ſonne Muſtapha, 761.a. loueth her younger ſon Baiazet better than her eldeſt ſon Selymus, 768.g. entreateth Solyman for Baiazet, and obtaineth his pardon, 770.i. comforteth him going in feare vnto his father 771.a

Ruſtan Baſſa a man of a miſchieuous nature, 757.e. furthereth the deuiſes of Roxolana for the deſtruction of Noble Muſtapha, 760.g. ſent by Solyman with an armie into Aſia, to haue taken or ſlaine Muſtapha, 761 c. returneth in haſt, & with falſe ſuggeſtions ſtirreth vp Solyman himſelf againſt his ſon, d. his exceeding treacherie at the comming of Muſtapha to his fathers camp, 762.i. diſgraced by Solyman, flyeth to Roxolana at Conſtantinople, 765.a. by her meanes reſtored againe vnto his former honours, dyeth afterwards of a dropſie 765.e

S

SAhib after the death of Sultan Aladin his maſter taking vpon him the gouernment, is by the nobilitie thruſt out, and the Turkes kingdome in Aſia rent in ſunder amongſt them 127.c

Sahamel the Georgian cutteth off the head of Aidor, 922 i. submitteth himself to Mustapha the great Bassa, 936 k. slaine by Osman Bassa his some in law, 941 d
Saladin the Turke chosen Sultan of Ægypt killeth the Caliphe & all his posteritie, 57 e. inuadeth the kingdome of Ierusalem, and by Baldwin suddenly sallying out of Ascalon ouerthrowne, 59 d. besiegeth Beritus both by sea and land, taketh Edessa and Carras, 60 l. spoileth the Holy land at his pleasure, 61 c. in vaine besiegeth Ptolemais, 63 b. besiegeth Tiberias, and by the treason of the countie of Tripolis ouerthroweth Guy the king, coming to the reliefe thereof, and taketh him prisoner, 63 e. winneth Ierusalem, with all the other cities and townes in the Holy land, except Tripolis, Tire, and Antioch, 64 g. besiegeth Tire, and with the losse of his best souldiours and of his tents retyreth, l. taketh Antioch, with all the prouinces and townes thereunto belonging, 65 a. putteth to death the Christian captiues, 71 a dieth, and forbiddeth any funerall pompe to be vsed at his buriall, 73 c
Saluagus a worthie knight, 797 c
Salazar a Spanish captaine goeth as a spie into the Turks camp at the siege of Malta, 811 d
Sanguin the Turke ouerthroweth king Fulke, comming to the reliefe of the castle of Mont Ferand, and hath the castle yeelded vnto him, 30 h. taketh Edessa, and there vseth all manner of crueltie against the Christians, 31 a besieging Cologenbar, is there stabbed by one of his owne friends, and slaine, b.
Sarmentus slaine, 691 d
Sarugatin, Osmans brother slaine, and accounted of the Turkes for a saint, 138 k.
Scanderbeg with his brethren by their father Iohn Castriot giuen in hostage vnto Amurath, 260 l. wisely dissembleth his desire for the deliuerie of himselfe and his countrey, 283 d. by great policie recouereth the citie of Croia out of the hands of the Turks, 284 i. hath the strong cities of Epirus yeelded vnto him, 285 c. spoyleth Macedonia, 287 c. in a great battell ouerthroweth Alis Bassa with two and twentie thousand of his Turkes, 288 l. going to the aid of king Vladislaus, is by the faithlesse Despot denied passage through Seruia, 295 b. spoyleth the Despots countrey, and so returneth into Epirus, 299 c. his resolute answer vnto Amurath his melancholy letters, 301 d. putteth Ferises to flight, 302 l. ouerthroweth Mustapha the second time, and taketh him prisoner, 313 b. carefully setteth all things in order against the cõming of Amurath, 314 g. his effectuall speech vnto the souldiors and citizens of Sfetigrade to encourage thẽ against the coming of the Turke, 315 b. cunningly entrappeth some of the forerunners of Amuraths army, 316 l. troubleth his great campe, 319 a. with his own hand killeth Feri Bassa, 320 g. troubleth Amurath his great armie at the siege of Croia, 324 l. in danger to haue beene slaine or taken, m. deceiueth Mahomet the yong prince in his own deuice, 326 h. flieth by night into Epirus, 371 c. his answere by letters vnto the letters of Mahomet, 385 c. his answere vnto Mahomets letters cõcerning the renuing of the league, 391 a. in danger 398 h. Scanderbeg dieth, 402 m. buried at Lissa, 403 a. his bones digged vp by the Turkes, and of them greatly honoured, 404 h
Scodra besieged by Solyman Bassa, 411 e. relieued by Matthias K. of Hungarie, 412 h. a yearely fee appointed by Mahomet to one, to put him daily in mind of the siege of Scodra, i. Scodra the second time besieged by Mahomet the Great, 415 e. sore battered, 418 i. the fourth time assaulted, 419 e. 12000 Turkes slaine in this last assault, 420 m. most furiously the fifth time assaulted by the Turks 421. by composition yeelded vnto the Turke, 426 k
the Scriuano rebelleth against the Turke in Caramania, and giueth Mehemet Bassa a notable ouerthrow, 1134 g. in a great battell ouerthroweth him againe the next yere with an army of 50000 Turks, 1142 h. hauing ouerrun a great part of the Turks dominions in Asia, dieth, 1150 g. his younger brother steppeth vp in his stead, & in a great battell ouerthroweth Hassan Bassa, and killeth him, 1150 h
Selymus ambitious and of a turbulent spirit, and therfore of the Ianizaries and men of warre better beloued thã his other brother, 478 l. aided by Mahometes the Tartar King, riseth against his aged father, 479 b. coloureth his rebellious purpose with the inuasion of Hungarie, 480 g. marcheth with his armie towards Hadrianople, 482 e. in a great battell ouerthrowne and put to flight by his father Baiazet at Tzurulum, 486 h. by the perswasion of th. Bassaes by his father sent for home, 491 c. chosen Generall by his father to go against his rebellious brother Achomates, is by and by after by the Ianizaries saluted Emperor, 494 g. causeth his father to be poysoned, 495 d. putteth three of his fathers pages to death, for mourning for their master, 496 h. bountifully rewardeth the souldiors of the Court, 499 c. murthereth fiue of his brothers sonnes, 500 g. causeth Corcutu his brother to be strangled, 502 h. treason intended against him, discouered, 503 a. craueth aid of Aladeules and the other mountaine princes against the Persians, 507 c. Selymus perplexed, 508 i. receiueth great losse in passing the riuer Euphrates, 513 e. he and Hysmael compared together, 515 d. Selymus with a great armie entreth into Armenia, & taketh Ciamassum a citie of the Persian Kings, 518 k. vanquisheth Aladeules the mountaine king, putteth him to death, and conuerteth his Kingdome into the forme of a Prouince, 520 l. inuadeth Hungarie, 521 b. sendeth his embassadors with presents to Campson the Ægyptian Sultan, 525 f. encourageth his souldiours to goe against the Mamalukes, 526 h. passeth the mountaine Amanus, and commeth into Comagena, l. in the battell of Singa ouerthroweth the Mamalukes, 530 g. in doubt least Sinan Bassa had been lost, becommeth exceeding melancholie, 536 k. meeteth with Sinan Bassa at Gaza, 537 c. passeth the sandie desarts, and meeteth with Tomombeius at Rhodanus, 538 e. giueth him battell, and putteth him to flight, 540 m. encourageth his souldiors to the winning of Caire, 544 l. fighteth a great and mortall battell with the Mamalukes in the citie of Caire, 545 b. causeth the citie to be set on fire, e. putteth Tomombeius & the Mamalukes to flight, and so taketh the citie, 546 i. his embassadors sent to Tomombeius slaine by the Mamalukes, 548 k. ouerthroweth Tomombeius againe at the riuer of Nilus, 550 h. causeth him being taken to be tortured and put to death, l. cunningly reduceth the Arabians to his obediẽce, 553 b. purposing to turne his forces vpon the Christians, is strucke in the backe with a canker, 561 a. his death concealed by Ferat Bassa, 567 c
Selymus the second by the Ianizaries saluted Emperour, 827 c. appeaseth the tumultuous Ianizaries, 828 g. sendeth Cubates his embassadour to Venice

Venice to demand Cyprus of the Senat, 841 *c. rageth to haue it denied him*, 842 *m. he inuadeth the Venetians*, 845 *e. in his rage about to haue put to death all the Christians in his dominions*, 885 *f. sendeth out Uluzales his Admirall with* 200 *gallies against the Christians*, 888 *l. desirous of peace, cõcludeth the same with the Venetiant*, 904 *k. by his Bassaes taketh Guletta frõ the Spaniards, and the citie of Tunes*, 915 *d. dieth, e.*

Serinus Gouernour of Sigeth, 821 *e. his comfortable and resolute speech vnto his souldiors*, 822 *g. burneth the new towne, not now to be longer defẽded, and retyreth into the old, i. his last speech vnto his souldiors*, 823 *d. slaine, and his head sent to Countie Salma, f.*

the Seruians in mutine amongst themselues, are with a great slaughter ouerthrowne by the Turks, 192 *i.*

Seruia becommeth tributarie vnto the Turks, 192. *wholly yeelded vnto the Turks*, 356.

Sfetigrade besieged by Amurath, 316 *l. in vaine diuers times by the Turkes assaulted*, 319 *b. by the working of a traitor Amurath hath the strong citie yeelded vp vnto him*, 321 *f.*

Sigismund King of Hungarie with the Christian princes his cõfederats with a great armie inuadeth the Turkes dominions, 205 *b. his proud speech vpon the greatnesse of his armie, d. in a great battell ouerthrown by Baiazet at Nicopolis*, 206 *h. hardly escapeth himselfe by flight, i.*

Sigismund Prince of Transyluania in danger by his owne subiects to haue bin betraied vnto the Tartars, 1046 *l. the conspirators apprehended and executed*, 1047 *d. giueth his subiects leaue to spoile the Turks, e. entreth into a confederation with the Emperour*, 1048 *k. persuadeth Michael the Vayuod of Valachia, and Aaron the Palatine of Moldauia to reuolt from the Turke*, 1049 *e. sendeth Aaron the Palatine with his wife and sonne prisoners to Prage*, 1062 *l. marrieth Maria Christina the late archduke Charls his daughter*, 1072 *k. ouerthroweth* 30000 *Turks, comming as vnbidden ghests to his marriage, l. in a great battaile ouerthroweth Sinan Bassa with his Turks*, 1073 *e. receiueth the Zaculians into his protection, and hath from them great aid*, 1074 *m. putteth Sinan Bassa to flight*, 1075 *d. by force taketh Tergouista from the Turkes, f. taketh also Bucaresta*, 1076 *i. goeth vnto the Emperour at Prage*, 1088 *g. besiegeth Temeswar*, 1092 *g. with* 18000 *men commeth to the aid of Maximilian the Archduke going to haue relieued Agria*, 1096 *l. doubting the power of the Turke, resigneth his principalitie of Transyluania vnto the Emperour*, 1100 *k. repenting himselfe, returneth again into Transyluania, and taketh vpon him the gouernmẽt*, 1106 *g. by his embassadors offereth againe his principalitie vnto the Emperour*, 1109 *d. in a great battel ouerthrown together with the Moldauian by Michael the Vayuod of Valachia*, 1122 *h. by the fauour of the Nobilitie recouereth his state againe to Transyluania*, 1139 *d. in battaile ouerthrowne by Basta and Michael the Vayuod, flieth out of Transyluania*, 1140 *i. by the fauour of his subiects & countenance of the Polonians recouereth again his state*, 1142 *g. doubting him to be able to hold it against the Imperials, yeeldeth it by composition vnto Basta the Emperours Lieutenant, and goeth himself vnto the Emperour*, 1143 *e.*

Sigismund King of Polonia his letters vnto Amurath, 1003 *e.*

Simon County of Montford sent by Philip the French King into the Holy land, represseth the furie of the Turkes, and so concludeth a peace with them for ten yeares, 74 *k.*

Sinan Bassa the Eunuch ouerthrown by Achomates, 503 *c. restoreth Selymus his battell against Campson, before almost lost*, 530 *g. by Selymus sent before into Iudea*, 533 *c. hath Gaza yeelded vnto him*, 534 *g. discomfiteth Gazelles, cõming to haue oppressed him at Gaza*, 535 *c. slaine in the battell at Rhodania*, 540 *g.*

Sinan the Iew his short answere to Barbarussa, 661 *b*

Sinan Bassa by Amurath chosen Generall for the Persian warres, 951 *b. relieueth Teflis*, 954 *l. looseth* 7000 *of his souldiors*, 955 *b. derided of his owne souldiors*, 956 *g. his proud answer to Amurath*, 962 *h. displaced, and cast into exile, l. againe receiued into fauour*, 1003 *d. ouerthrowne in the vpper Hungarie*, 1006 *h. his letters vnto the Emperour*, 1020 *g. sent Generall of the Turks armie against the Emperour*, 1023 *f. taketh Vesprinium*, 1025 *c. hath Palotta yeelded vnto him, d. with an armie of* 150000 *men commeth againe into Hungarie*, 1040 *i. taketh Dotis and S. Martins, l. besiegeth Rab*, 1041 *b. in assaulting therof looseth* 12000 *of his men*, 1044 *h. by corrupting of the Gouernour hath the citie yeelded vnto him, l. besiegeth Komara*, 1045 *b. raiseth his siege, and breaketh vp his armie, d. craftily seeketh to trie the Emperours mind concerning peace*, 1058 *l. sendeth for home to the Court*, 1060 *l. by Sultan Mahomet appointed Generall of the warres against the Emperour*, 1073 *b. inuadeth Valachia, d. in a great battell ouerthrowne by the prince of Transyluania, e. in flying, in danger to haue bin drowned, f. with a great army commeth again into Valachia*, 1075 *b. seeing the generall feare of his armie vpon the comming of the Transyluanians, flieth, d. for feare delayeth his comming to Constantinople, vntill his peace were made, and there shortly after dieth*, 1087 *d.*

Siseg by the Turkes besieged, 1022 *g. notably relieued*, 1023 *a. againe besieged and taken by the Turkes*, 1024 *l.*

Solyman, Orchanes his sonne, by his father made Gouernor of Nicomedia, 183 *c. taketh the castle of Zembenic in Europe*, 185 *b. hee the first that brought the Turks ouer into Europe, with purpose there to conquer & inhabit, d. taketh the castle of Maditus, e. winneth Calipolis*, 186 *g. dieth*, 187 *a.*

Solyman the vnfortunate, Baiazet his eldest sonne, by the great Bassaes set vp in his fathers stead at Hadrianople, 221 *b. goeth ouer with a great army against his brother Mahomet*, 241 *e. by policie taketh the castle of Prusa*, 242 *i. besiegeth his brother in Amasia, i. returneth into Europe to appease the stirres there raised by his brother Musa, and recouereth Hadrianople*, 244 *h. in his excesse regardeth not the approch of his brother Musa, k. forsaken of his souldiors, flieth, l. taken prisoner, is by the commandement of his brother Musa strangled*, 245 *a.*

Solyman the Eunuch Bassa dealeth treacherously with the kings of Arabia, 670 *m.*

Solyman hardly persuaded that his father was dead, 567 *d. saluted Emperor by the Ianizaries, f. his letters to Villerius Great Master of the Rhodes*, 571 *b. his Oration to his men of warre, declaring his purpose for the besieging of the Rhodes, e. he maketh great preparation for the siege*, 573 *a. his threatening letters vnto the of the Rhodes*, 578 *h. commeth himselfe in person to the siege*, 583 *b. his chaericke Oration to his souldiors, d. displaceth his Admirall, and*

and punisheth him like a [illegible], 589 a. about to haue forsaken the siege, b. comforteth his discouraged soldiours, perswading them with patience to continue the [illegible], f. his letters to the Great Master and the Rhodians, sent by their owne Embassadors, 593 d. his speech vnto the Great Master at his comming to yeeld vp the citie, 598 l. hee entreth into the Rhodes vpon Christmasse day in the yeare 1522. 600 i. Solyman vpon the discord of the Christian princes, and disordered state of Hungarie, taketh occasion to inuade that kingdome, 601 b. commeth into Hungarie against K. Lewes with an armie of 200000 men, c. ouerthroweth him in battell at Mohatz, 602 k. commeth to Buda, 603 a. Solyman in the quarrell of K. Iohn against K. Ferdinand, commeth into Hungarie with an armie of 150000 men, 609 a. without resistance entreth into Buda, and besiegeth the castle, 609 d. laieth siege to Vienna, 610 k. without ransome releaseth certaine Christian prisoners, 612 g. looseth his great Ordnance vpon the Danubius, k. burieth 8000 of his Turkes in the mines, l. hauing lost 80000 of his Turks, raiseth his siege, and returneth to Buda, 614 i. he restoreth the kingdome of Hungarie vnto K. Iohn, k. returneth himselfe to Constantinople, 615 a. maketh great preparation for the subduing of the territories belonging to the house of Austria, as also for the conquest of Germanie, with the short time hee prefined vnto himself for the performance therof, 615 c. Solymã with a mightie armie commeth againe into Hungarie, 618 e. besiegeth Gunza, i. his proud letters to Charles the Emperor, m. shunneth to meet him at Vienna, and so turneth out of the way into Corinthia, 621 a. the causes mouing him so to do, b. returns towards Constantinople, 623 d. Solyman perswaded by Abraham Bassa, resolueth to go against the Persians, 649 a. commeth with his armie to Tauris, f. followeth Tamas the Persian King into Sultania, 650 g. his armie strangely distressed by tempest, k. hath Babylon with the countries of Mesopotamia and Assyria yeelded vnto him, 651 a. hee ransacketh Tauris, l. discouraged by the harme done him by Delymenthes, giueth ouer his warres in Persia, and returneth to Constantinople, 653 c. he with a wonderfull charge prepareth a great fleet at Swetia against the Portugals in the East Indies, 670 h. Solyman by the French Embassadour incited to inuade Italy with an armie of 200000 men, commeth to Aulona, 671 c. sendeth Lutzis Bassa and Barbarussa with his fleet before him into Italie, d. conuerteth his forces prepared for Italie against the Venetians, 673 b. in danger to haue beene slaine in his tent in the middest of his armie, 673 d. inuadeth Corcyra, e. carrieth away aboue 16000 prisoners, and doth good iustice vpon such Turks as had violated their faith at Castrum, 674 k. Solyman angrie with the secret confederation between K. Ferdinand and K. Iohn, 695 c. promiseth to protect the Queene and her sonne, 701 c. with a great armie commeth to Buda, 709 b. sendeth for the young King into his campe, c. courteously receiueth him, 710 h. craftily surpriseth the citie of Buda, i. detaineth the Nobilitie of Hungarie, l. diuersly perswaded by his Bassaes for the disposing of that kingdome, 711 b. he sacrificeth after the Mahometan manner in Buda, 712 m. pronounceth the doome of Hungarie, and conuerteth it from a kingdome into a prouince of his Empire, 713 a. his proud answere vnto King Ferdinand his Embassadors, 714 k. he returneth to Constantinople, 715 b. sendeth his fleet to Barbarussa, his Admirall to aid the French King against the Emperour, 734 k. Solyman with a great armie commeth againe into Hungarie, 736 g. taketh Strigonium, 738. entreth into the citie, and there setteth vp the Mahometane superstition, m. winneth Alba Regalis, 742. h. returneth to Constantinople, k. by the instigation of Dragut the pyrat sendeth out Sinan Bassa with a great fleet to reuenge the wrong done vnto him by Auria, 752 l. Solyman amorous of Roxolana, 757 c. manumiseth her, 758. h. marrieth her, l. by her persuaded, resolueth to put to death his eldest son, the Noble Mustapha, 761. d. goeth himselfe with a great armie into Asia, to kill his sonne, e. sendeth for Mustapha, who comming, is cruelly strangled in his sight, 763. c. his stout speech vnto the Ianizaries, vp in armes for the vnworthie death of Mustapha, 764. k. hee glad to yeeld vnto the Ianizaries m. Solyman desirous with as little stirre as might bee to appease the grudges betwixt his two sonnes Selymus and Baiazet, sendeth Partan and Mehemet two of his Vsier Bassaes to bring them to the prouinces by him appointed for them, 773. d. maketh preparation against Baiazet, and sendeth aid to Selymus, e. for countenancing of Selymus, goeth himselfe in person with his armie ouer into Asia, 776. l. dissembleth with Baiazet, 778. g. seeketh to stop his flight into Persia, deceiued of his purpose, procureth to haue him and his foure sonnes strangled in prison in Persia, 791. d. Solyman by his embassador Abraham Strotza confirmeth his league with Ferdinand the Emperour for eight yeres, 789. b. his proud letters vnto the Emperor Ferdinand, c. his presents sent vnto the Emperour, 791. d. he maketh preparation against the knights of Malta, 793. a. his oration vnto his captaines for the inuasion of Malta, b. his fleet arriueth at Malta, 795. a. with shame returneth, 817. c. Solyman purposing now the seuenth time himselfe in person to inuade Hungarie, causeth a bridge of a mile long with incredible labor to be made ouer the great riuer Sauus and the deepe fennes toward Sigeth, 821. besiegeth Sigeth, e. commeth himselfe with a great power into the campe, 822. h. winneth the old towne, l. falleth sicke & dieth of the bloudie flix at Quinque Ecclesiæ, 882. m. his death by Muhamet Bassa concealed, and the siege continued, 813. a. his body with great solemnitie by his son Selymus buried at Constantinople 828. h

the Spaniards reioicing at the ouerthrow of the Italians by Salec, are thẽselues foyled by Tabacces 658. m

Stellusa with Desdrot the Gouernour therof deliuered to Scãderbeg 285. f

Stephen Rozwan in stead of Aaron by the Transyluanian Prince placed Vayuod of Moldania, 1062. l thrust out by Zamoschie, Chancelor of Polonia, 1080. g. taken prisoner, and put to death 1081. a

Stephen Vayuod of Transyuania vpon the commendation of Amurath chosen king of Polonia 921. a

Stiria forraged by the Turks 1132

Strigonium in vaine besieged by King Iohn, 616. k. besieged by Solyman, 736. i. diuers times by the Turks in vain assaulted, c. the strength therof by a fugitiue Christian discouered, d. yeelded vnto the Turk, 738. h. besieged by the Christians, 1033. c. fiue times in vaine assaulted, with the losse of 5000 men, 1034. l. the siege by Matthias the Archduke giuen ouer. 1037. d. besieged by Countie Mans-

Mansfelt, 1065.b. *twice in vaine assaulted, e. the lower towne taken* 1070.g. *yeelded vnto the Archduke Matthias* 1072.h

Suguta by Sultan Aladin giuen to Ertogrul 134.k

Sumachia taken by Osman Bassa, 936. h. *recouered by the Persian prince*, 940.i

Swartzenburg by two Italian prisoners flying out of Rab, is enformed of the state of the towne, 1102.g. *consulteth with the lord Palsi*, h. *surpriseth that strong towne*, 1103.b. *in vaine attempteth to haue surprised Buda*, 1110.h. *commeth to Pappa to appease the Freneh and Wallons there in mutinie*, 1117.a. *besiegeth the towne*, 1118. *slaine*, i

Syrgiannes appointed by Andronicus the emperor to obserue the doings of yong Andronicus his nephew, trecherously discouereth the same vnto him 159.c. *cunningly coloureth his treason*, 160. h. *contemned of the younger Andronicus, reuolteh againe vnto his grandfather*, 162.l. *apprehended, imprisoned, and his house rased* 164.l

T

TAmas the Persian King hearing of the comming of Solyman to Tauris, flyeth into Hercania, 651.d. *in feare of Baiazet, killeth his followers, and imprisoneth him with his sonnes*, 780.l. *sendeth embassadours with presents to Solyman*, 781.a. *the cause why hee would not by any meanes let Baiazet goe out of his hands*, d. *his answere vnto the Venetian embassador, persuading him to take vp armes against the Turke* 862.k

Tamerlan his reasonable and modest answere vnto the other Mahometan princes, craning his aid against Baiazet, 210.k. *in their behalfe sendeth embassadours with presents to Baiazet*, l. *prouoked by the proud answer of Baiazet, the solicitation of the oppressed princes, & the persuasion of Axalla, resolueth to make warre vpon him*, 211.b. *his honourable parentage and aunce stors*, 212.i. *the causes why some report him to haue bin a sheepheard or heardsman*, k. *he himselfe not delighted in bloud*, m. *marrieth the daughter and heire of the Great Cham of Tartarie, the ground of his greatnesse*, 213.a. *setteth forward against Baiazet*, 214.k *his great campe still like vnto a well gouerned citie*, 215.b. *the number of his great armie*, c. *he taketh Sebastia, and burieth all the people quick* 216.h. *stayeth the comming of Baiazet*, 217.a. *disposeth of the order of his battell*, 218.k. *fighteth a great and mortall battell with Baiazet*, 219.b *taking him prisoner, causeth him like a wild beast to be shut vp in an yron cage*, 220.m. *refuseth the Empire of Constantinople, offred him by Emanuell the Emperors embassadors*, 221.e. *goeth priuatly himselfe to Constantinople*, 222.i. *much delighted with the situation and pleasures of that citie*, k. *spoyleth the Turks dominions in Asia*, l. *restoreth vnto the poore Mahometane princes oppressed by Baiazet all their auncient inheritances*, 223.b. *in a great battell ouerthroweth the Sultan of Ægypt neere vnto Aleppo*, c. *winneth Damasco*, d. *commeth to Ierusalem*, f. *taketh Damiata*, 224.b. *assaulteth Caire*, 225.a. *driueth the Sultan out of Caire*, d. *pursueth him to Alexandria*, 226.g. *chaseth him into Lybia*; h. *leaueth Calibes to gouerne the countries of Ægypt and Syria*, l. *conquereth Mesopotamia and Babylon, with the kingdome of Persia*, 227.a. *returneth to Samarcand*, b. *the great power he continually kept*, 235.c. *his death*, e

Tangrolipix the Turke sent to aid the Persian Sultan, 4.g. *by consent of the souldiors chosen Sultan of Persia*, l. *first Sultan of the Turkes*, m. *hauing slaine Pisasiris Caliph of Babylon in battell ioineth his dominions vnto his owne*, 5.b. *inuadeth the Greeke Emperors dominions*, f. *putteth to death his brother Habramie* 6.i

Tancred created prince of Galliley, winneth Apamea and Laodicea, 25.c. *after the death of young Bohemund created King of Antioch* 263

Tarsus in Cilicia yeelded vnto Baiazet 446.m

Tartar Han his letters vnto the K. of Polonia 1083.c

Tauris yeelded to Selymus, 512.c. *who contrarie to his promise exacteth a great summe of money from the Taurisians, and so departeth*, 513.a. *sacked by Solyman*, 651.f. *taken by the Turks*, 991.d. *hath a new castle ther in built by the Turks in six and thirtie daies*, 992.i. *miserably spoiled*, l

Taurica Chersonesus, with the Tartars Precopenses and Destenses subdued by the Turks 412.m

Techellis inuadeth the Turkes dominions, 469.e. *ouerthroweth Orchanes and Mahometes, Baiazet his nephewes*, 471. *discomfiteth Caragoses the Viceroy of Natolia*, 472.i. *killeth Alis Bassa*, 474.l. *flyeth into Armenia*, 475.e. *robbeth a Caranan of merchandize, and therefore burnt at Tauris* 476.b

Temeswar taken by the Turks 756.g

Temurtases, Baiazets lieutenant in Asia, taken prisoner by Aladin the young King of Caramania, 208.k. *againe set at libertie, becometh the Caramanian King*, m

Teuffenbach taketh Sabatska, 1024.k *winneth Fileck*, 1027.e. *besieged Hatwan*, 1032.g. *ouerthroweth the Bassa of Buda*, h. *giueth the same Bassa a second ouerthrow* 1037.f

Theobald King of Nauarre maketh an vnfortunat expedition into the Holy land, 99.f. *with Lewis the French King goeth against the Moores*, 118 k. *in his returne dieth of the plague in Sicilia*, l

Theodorus Lascaris flyeth into Bythinia, and possessing himselfe of many countries, taketh vpon him the name of the Greeke Emperor at Nice, 84. l. *hee killeth Iathatines the Turkish Sultan* 87.c

Theodorus Lascaris, sonne to Iohn Batases, chosen Emperor, 108.m. *aideth the Sultan of Iconium*, 109, e. *falleth sicke and dyeth* 110.g

Theupulus Earle of Paphos vnworthily hanged by the faithlesse Bassa Mustapha 867.d

Thracia spoiled by the Turks 256.g

Temombeius by the generall consent of the Mamalukes chosen Sultan of Ægypt, 533.d. *maketh great preparation against the Turks, and seeketh to entrap them*, 538.g. *his deuices discouered*, i. *hee fighteth a great battell with Selymus, and is put to the worse*, 540.m *raiseth new forces at Caire*, 541.c. *fortifieth Caire*, 542.k. *fighteth a great battell in the citie*, 545.b. *ouercome, flieth*, 546.h. *driuen out of Caire, raiseth new forces in Segesta*, 547.d. *distresseth the Turks in passing the bridge made ouer Nilus*, 549.b. *giueth a notable attempt to haue gained the bridge*, f. *repulsed and put to flight*, 550.i. *taken and brought to Selymus*, l. *tortured, and shamefully put to death*, m

Trapezonde yeelded to Mahomet the Great 360.k

Transyluania giuen by Solymin to the child K. Iohn his sonne 716.l

Tripolis in Barbarie besieged by Sinan Bassa, 753.a. *battered*, b. *the weakest places thereof and fittest to be battered, by a fugitiue Christian discouered to the Turk*, d. *vpon hard conditions yeelded to the proud and faithlesse Bassa* 755.d

Tunes

Tunes beſieged by Lewis the French King, 119.a. *yeelded to Charles the Emperor,* 667.c. *by him vpon an eaſie tribute againe reſtored to Muleſie tribute againe yeelded to the Turkes,* 669.d. 915.d

Turks their ſmall beginning diuerſly reported, 2.b. *diſcended from the Scythians,* 2.b. *the cauſes why they left their ancient and naturall ſeats in Scythia, to ſeek for other in countries more Southerly,* 2.d. *where they firſt ſeated themſelues in Aſia, after their departure out of Scythia,* 3.b. *their firſt kingdome erected in Perſia by Tangrolipix their firſt Sultan;* 4.d. *the Turks firſt called into Europe by the Catalonians,* 152.g. *they differ not from the Perſian about the interpretation of their law, but about the true ſucceſſor of their falſe Prophet Mahomet only* 462.i

Turqueminus choſen Sultan of Ægipt 106.b

Tzihanger refuſeth the noble Muſtapha his brothers wealth and treaſure offered him by his father Solyman, and for ſorrow killeth himſelfe, 763.e

V

VAlachia, when firſt ſpoiled by the Turks, 204.g. *inuaded by Mahomet the Great,* 362.g. *oppreſſed by the Turks,* 1050.h. *in great troubles* 1143.d

Valmes fortified by Mahomet the great 402.g

Valetta the Grand maſter of Malta aduertiſed of Solymans purpoſe for the inuaſion of him and his Knights, 793.f. *his effectuall ſpeech vnto his Knights* 794.g *his great preparation againſt the Turks comming,* k. *his whole ſtrength,* 796.g. *he certifieth Garzias et Toledo, Viceroy of Sicilia, of his eſtate,* l. *ſendeth a new ſupplie into the caſtle S. Elmo, twice before aſſaulted by the Turkes,* 798.g. *diſappointed of a ſupplie to haue bin brought him by his own gallies,* h. *his letters to Garzias the Viceroy of Sicilia,* 800.g. *he ſendeth three of his Knights to know the ſtate of them in the caſtle S. Elmo,* 801.e. *encourageth his ſoldiors after the loſſe of the caſtle,* 803.c. *his Chriſtianlike letters to the Gouernour of the citie of Melita,* e. *his reſolute anſwere to the meſſengers ſent vnto him from the great Baſſa,* 804.i. *he receiueth a ſmall ſupplie from Sicilia,* 805.f. *maketh hard ſhift to ſend news of his diſtreſſe to the Viceroy of Sicilia,* 808.l *his comfortable ſpeech vnto his ſouldiors, at ſuch time as the Turks were entred the new citie,* 814.h. *his great carefulneſſe,* 817.e. *his letters to the Grand Prior of Almaine concerning the manner of the Turks proceedings in the ſiege of Malta* 818.g

Venerius the Venetian Admirall and Barbadicus their Prouiditour perſuade the reſt of the Chriſtian confederates to giue battaile vnto the Turkes at Lepanto, 871.d. *comming to the reliefe of Don Iohn, is encountred by Partau Baſſa,* 879.a. *in danger,* b. *at the requeſt of the Spaniards diſplaced, but not diſgraced,* 887.e

the Venetians with a great fleet ſpoyle the coaſts of Lycia, Pamphilia, and Cilicia, 19.a. *in the diuiſion of the Greeke Empire amongſt the Latins had for their ſhare all the rich iſlands of the Ægeum and Ionian, with the famous iſland of Candie or Crete,* 84.b. *enter into confederation with other Chriſtian princes againſt the Turke,* 389.e. *they with their confederats do the Turks great harme,* 407.d. *receiue a great ouerthrow from the Turkes at the riuer of Sontium,* 414.k. *their merchants in Syria impriſoned by Campſon Gaurus the Ægyptian Sultan,* 471.b. *their Senatours diuerſly affected towards the confederation with the Emperor and the French King againſt Solyman,* 693.d. *they refuſe to yeeld vp Cyprus vnto Selymus, demanding the ſame,* 841.e. *make great preparation for their owne defence, and craue aid of the other Chriſtian princes,* 842.k. *what princes promiſed them aid,* l. *wearie of the delayes and croſſe dealings of the Spaniards their confederats, conclude a peace with Selymus without their knowledge,* 904.k

Veradinum beſieged by the Turks, 1106.h. *relieued by the lord Baſta,* l

Veſprinium taken by the Turks 1025.c

Vfegi Baſſa taken priſoner, 500.l. *put to death* 501.b

Vicegrade taken by the Chriſtians, 1072.i

Victor Capella with a notable ſpeech perſuadeth the Venetians to take vp armes againſt Mahomet the Great 387.a

Vienna by Solyman beſieged, 610.k. *badly fortified,* 611.a. *the wals blown vp,* 612.m. *thrice aſſaulted,* f. *worthily defended,* 614.g. *Solyman glad to forſake the ſiege,* i

Villerius choſen Great maſter of the Rhodes, 569.d. *his letters to Solyman* 571.d. *his carefull prouiſion for defence of his citie,* 573.b. 575.e. *his notable ſpeech vnto the Rhodians,* 576.g. *his worthie commendation,* 581. *in vaine craueth aide of the Chriſtian princes,* b. *recouereth the Spaniſh bulwark taken by the Turks,* 588.g. *his reſolute opinion concerning Solymans demand for the yeelding vp of the Rhodes,* 594.g. *his anſwere vnto Solyman, offering vnto him moſt honourable entertainment,* 599.b. *he departeth from the Rhodes with his Knights vpon New yeares day* 600.g

Uladiſlaus King of Polonia choſen alſo King of Hungarie, 262.i. *ſendeth embaſſadours vnto Amurath lying at the ſiege of Belgrade,* 263.e. *goeth himſelfe in perſon againſt the Turkes,* 277.b. *taketh Sophia,* c. *ſpoileth Bulgaria,* d. *highly commendeth Huniades for his good ſeruice* 278.i. *enforced with the difficultie of the paſſage of the mountaine Hemus, retyreth with his armie,* 279.b. *by the perſuaſion of Huniades and others retireth, and in vaine ſeeketh to haue opened the mountaine paſſage,* 281.d. *in his retreat much troubled with the Turkes,* 282.h. *in great triumph returneth to Buda,* m. *vpon moſt honourable conditions concludeth a peace with Amurath for ten yeares,* 289.b. *by ſolemne oath confirmeth the league he had made with Amurath,* c. *abſolued of that his oath by Iulian the Cardinal of S. Angell, reſolueth for the proſecution of his wars againſt the Turke,* 292.i *by his embaſſadours and letters craueth aid of Scanderbeg,* 293.a. *ſetteth forward againſt the Turks,* 295.e. *fighteth the great and vnfortunat battell at Varna,* 297.b. *is there himſelfe ſlaine.* 298.b

Vluzales in the battell of Lepanto taketh twelue of the Venetian gallies, 882.i. *ſeeing the reſt of the Turks fleet diſcomfited, flyeth himſelfe,* m. *is by Selymus the next yeare ſent out with 200 gallies againſt the Venetians and their confederats,* 888.l *meaning nothing leſſe, maketh ſhew of battell,* 892.b. *cunningly retyreth,* i. *flyeth from Nauarinum into the bay of Modon,* 895. *returneth with his weake fleet to Conſtantinople,* 902.m

Vranacontes by Scanderbeg appointed Gouernour of Croia againſt the comming of Amurath, 322.l. *with cheerefull ſpeech encourageth his ſoldiors,* e. *reiecteth Amurath his preſents, and threateneth the Baſſa by whom they were ſent* 329.d

Ostref Bassa of Van inciteth Amurath to make warre against the Persians, 925.a.by Amurath commaunded to begin the war, which he readily performeth 926.b

Ozun-Cassanes the Persian King sendeth embassadors with presents to Mahomet the Great, 359.b. marieth Despina, the daughter of Calo Ioannes, Emperor of Teapezond, 409.b. in a great battell ouerthroweth Zenza the Persian K. and killeth Cariasuphius his sonne, the last of the posterie of the mightie Tamerlan, 409.g. in a great battell ouerthrown by Mahomet the Great, 410.l. his death 411.a

W

WAlpo trecherously yelded vnto the Turks, and the traitors iustly rewarded 736.h

Warres by Amurath the third proclaimed against the Emperour Rodolph, 1123.f

Waswood, an old Ianizarie, his presumptuous speech vnto Mahomet the great Sultan, 1063.b. taken out of prison by the rest of the Ianizaries, e

Water deare sold 665.b

Wbitz the metropoliticall citie of Croatia taken by the Turks 1015.e

William K. of Sicilia inuadeth the tyrant Andronicus his dominions, taketh the citie of Dyrrhachiū, passeth through Macedonia, and spoileth the countrie, meeteth with his fleet at Thessalonica, which he also taketh by force and spoileth 51.b

William Long-Espie Earle of Sarisburie with a band of tall soldiors goeth into the Holy land, 102.l his stout answer vnto earle Robert the French Kings brother, 104.k. valiantly fighting, is slaine 105.a

Wladus prince of Valachia putteth Mahomet the great in feare, 362.k. Wladus cruell, m. dieth in battell against the Turks 363.

Wne for a space running downe the streets of Constantinople, as if it had beene water after a shower of raine, 1142.l

Wolfgangius Hoder vpon the Danubius doth good seruice against the Turks 612.k

X

XAycus, paymaster of the Rhodes entrapped by the Turks, and sent prisoner to be tortured at Constantinople 575.c

Xene the faire Empresse, the young Emperour Alexius his mother, maliously accused of treason, & so wrongfully condemned, 47.f. by the commaundement of Andronicus strangled in prison, and so poorely buried, 48.k

Xhilinus by Alexius sent ouer to Andronicus, dealeth vnfaithfully in his message 45.c

Y

YOlan daughter to K. Iohn crowned Queen of Ierusalem, after by her father given in marriage to Fredericke the Emperor 96.g

Z

ZAcharia Guppa fighteth a combat with Abeze a Turke, 373.a

Zachell Moyses the Transyluanian princes lieutenant, battell ouerthrowne by Basta 1143.e. flyeth vnto the Turkes 1145.e

Zacinthus, Nerita and Cephalenia taken by Achmat Bassa 426.l

Zamoschie the great Chancelor of Polonia stayeth the Tartars from the inuading of Moldauia 1079.c. inuadeth Moldauia himselfe, 1080.g. his letters vnto Clement the Pope, in defence of himself and of that he had done in Moldauia, 1084.k. driueth Michaell the Vayuod out of Valachia, & placeth another in his stead, 1128.b

Zanius the Venetian Admirall with a fleet of 12 saile commeth to Constantinople, 849.b. ioyneth with the confederats steth forward towards Cyprus, d. pon the foule assagreement of the reat commaunders returneth, 853. e. discharged of his office, and put in bonds to Venice 854.b

Zembenic castle the place where the Turkes first began to settle themselues in Europe 185.b

Zemes riseth in rebellion against his elder brother Baiazet, 438.b. ouerthrowne in battell by his brother, flieth to Caitbeius the Sultan of Ægypt, 439.b. he with the Caramanian King goeth against his brother Baiazet, 441.b. flieth to sea, 442.g. deliuered vnto Pope Innocent the eight, 446.b. by Pope Alexander deliuered to Charles the French King, 452.b. dieth within three daies after, being before by the Pope poysoned, as is supposed, i. his dead bodie sent to Constantinople, and honourably afterwards buried at Prusa, 452.k

Zenza the Persian King in a great battell ouerthrowne and slaine by Vsun. Cassanes 409.e

Zerbi island inuaded by the Christian fleet, set forth for the recouerie of the citie of Tripolis in Barbarie, 783.e. the castle of Zerbi yeelded vnto the Spaniards, f. a great part of the Christian fleet oppressed at Zerbi by the suddaine comming of Piall Bassa the Turks Admiral, 784.m. the castle of Zerbi besieged by the Turke, 785.b. yeelded vnto the Turkes, d. the Turkes in triumph returne with victorie to Constantinople 786.k

Zimisca[illegible] conquereth Mycasus and Taurus, conquereth the Turkes dominions 75.e

Zoganes Bassa by the deuice of a baptized Christian bringeth seuentie of the Turks galies eight miles vpon land into the hauen of Constantinople 343 f. perswadeth Mahomet to continue his siege 35.a

Zolnock a strong fortresse of the christians in the vpper Aungaria ken by the Turks 56

FINIS.